NATIONAL LIBRARY OF MEDICINE

NLM 00099267 0

SURGEON GENERAL'S OFFICE

LIBRARY

Section .....

Form 113c
W.D., S.G.O. No. 240393

U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1934

DUE TWO WEEKS FROM LAST DATE

DEC 9 19[illegible]

GPO 248116

CAT. NO. 1102

QB719
1
97131
War.
69 D

ANATOMY,

DESCRIPTIVE AND SURGICAL.

BY

HENRY GRAY, F.R.S.,

FELLOW OF THE ROYAL COLLEGE OF SURGEONS; LECTURER ON ANATOMY AT ST. GEORGE'S HOSPITAL MEDICAL SCHOOL, LONDON.

EDITED BY

T. PICKERING PICK, F.R.C.S.,

CONSULTING SURGEON TO ST. GEORGE'S HOSPITAL AND TO THE VICTORIA HOSPITAL FOR CHILDREN, LONDON; H. M. INSPECTOR OF ANATOMY IN ENGLAND AND WALES,

AND

ROBERT HOWDEN, M.A., M.B., C.M.,

PROFESSOR OF ANATOMY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF DURHAM; EXAMINER IN ANATOMY IN THE UNIVERSITIES OF DURHAM AND EDINBURGH, AND TO THE BOARD OF EDUCATION, SOUTH KENSINGTON.

NEW AMERICAN EDITION.

THOROUGHLY REVISED AND RE-EDITED WITH ADDITIONS

BY

JOHN CHALMERS DaCOSTA, M.D.,

PROFESSOR OF PRINCIPLES OF SURGERY AND PROFESSOR OF CLINICAL SURGERY IN JEFFERSON MEDICAL COLLEGE, PHILADELPHIA; SURGEON TO THE PHILADELPHIA HOSPITAL; CONSULTING SURGEON TO ST JOSEPH'S HOSPITAL

ILLUSTRATED WITH 1132 ELABORATE ENGRAVINGS.

APR 9 1921
SURGEON GEN'L'S OFFICE

LEA BROTHERS & CO.,
PHILADELPHIA AND NEW YORK.
1905.

SURGEON GEN'L'S OFFICE
240393
LIBRARY

Annex
QS
4
9G779an
1905

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1905, by
LEA BROTHERS & CO.,
in the office of the Librarian of Congress at Washington. All rights reserved.

Film no. 11065, Item 1

DORNAN, PRINTER.

THIS

NEW AMERICAN EDITION OF GRAY'S ANATOMY

IS DEDICATED TO

WILLIAM W. KEEN, M.D., LL.D., Hon. F.R.C.S. Eng. and Scot.

THE DISTINGUISHED PROFESSOR OF SURGERY IN JEFFERSON MEDICAL COLLEGE

AS AN EVIDENCE OF

THE ADMIRATION, THE AFFECTION AND THE GRATITUDE OF HIS COLLEAGUE

AND FORMER ASSISTANT

THE EDITOR

PREFACE.

In this revision of Gray's *Anatomy*, the Editor has endeavored to reflect the development of the subject since the appearance of the last edition, and has sought to accomplish this without sacrificing those practical and didactic characteristics that have ever been the most notable features of the book. Radical innovations were undesirable, and original exposition was neither desirable nor possible. The Editor is responsible for some eliminations, many alterations, and a great number of additions; and it has been deemed unwise even to attempt to designate, by brackets or any other device, so great a number of changes and additions.

In order that its pages might represent the world's best knowledge, American, English, French, and German text-books, monographs, and journal-articles have been freely consulted. In using statements from these numerous sources, the aim has been to give, in every instance, proper credit to the author. If, in some cases, this has not been done, the failure is the result of accident, and never of design.

Among the many works thus utilized may be mentioned the three composite treatises edited by Gerrish, Cunningham, and Morris, respectively; Poirier and Charpy, Testut, Spalteholz (which has recently been translated into English and edited by Professor Barker); Hughes's *Practical Anatomy*, edited and completed by Keith; McClellan's *Regional Anatomy;* Deaver's *Surgical Anatomy;* Treves's *Applied Anatomy;* Owens's *Manual of Anatomy;* Eisendrath's *Clinical Anatomy;* Byron Robinson, on the *Peritoneum;* and the text-books of Quain and MacAllister. Special credit is due to the chapter on the "Lymphatics" in Poirier and Charpy (translated and edited by Leaf); to the admirable section on the "Nervous System," written by Professor Cunningham in his text-book; and to Professor Santee's extremely valuable monograph on the *Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord.*

The Latin, new or international nomenclature has been introduced in parentheses, following the names still currently used in English-speaking countries. This system of coupling the current and the new names answers the needs of all students, and will facilitate the much-to-be-desired adoption of the new nomenclature. The Latin nomenclature was recommended by an international committee, was published by Wilhelm His, and has been generally accepted by anatomists. Owing to its accuracy and its simplicity, it seems destined eventually to succeed the older methods of designation; but in this country at least, the older nomenclature is still too firmly fixed to be entirely and suddenly abandoned.

Gray's *Anatomy* has been noted for the extent and the elaborate nature of its illustrations. This new edition exceeds its predecessor in the number of engravings and in the use of colors. The series now aggregates over eleven hundred, of which about five hundred are new in this edition. Particular acknowledgment for originals is due to Spalteholz, Cunningham, Poirier and Charpy, Testut, Gerrish, Byron Robinson, and the *Atlas of Human Anatomy* by Carl Toldt, assisted by

A. D. Rosa (recently translated into English and edited by M. Eden Paul). The pictures taken from these various sources have been re-engraved, and in some instances have been modified.

In this edition the special articles on "Histology" and "Embryology," hitherto placed at the end of the book, have been eliminated. The extent, the importance, and the technical nature of these great subjects have led to the creation of special chairs for their teaching; and it seems desirable that the text-books used by the students should be those written by men devoted to these specialties. No single volume, in these days, can offer adequate instruction on anatomy, histology, and embryology; and to attempt it would be unwise. The bearings of histology and embryology upon anatomy are close and highly important. The Editor has set forth the essential points of these subjects when the elucidation of the text demanded it by means of *résumés*. For these, he has drawn chiefly upon the excellent sections in the previous edition of Gray (which were edited by Robert Howden), supplementing them from the *Histology and Microscopic Anatomy* by Szymonowicz (translated by John Bruce MacCallum), the text-book of *Histology* by Bohm and von Davidoff (edited by G. Carl Huber), and the text-book of *Embryology* by John Clement Heisler. The clear and instructive surgical notes of Mr. Pick have, of course, been retained; although, here and there, they have been modified or added to, in accordance with the views of the day. Because of an oversight the foot-notes, thirty-five in number, from page 49 to page 497 inclusive, are not credited to the Editors of the 15th English edition. Subsequent to page 497 proper credit is given for foot-notes from the English editors.

The Editor desires cordially to express his sense of indebtedness and gratitude to Dr. Howard Dehoney, Senior Assistant Demonstrator of Anatomy in the Jefferson Medical College, for his able and conscientious aid and collaboration. When a book has been edited many times by many men, the views and the style of the author are sure to be more or less obscured. The Editor of this edition hopes that Gray's *Anatomy* has not suffered too many things at his hands.

JOHN CHALMERS DA COSTA.

PHILADELPHIA, 1905.

PUBLISHERS' NOTE.

HENRY GRAY died young, but left in his masterpiece imperishable evidence of his two-fold genius, on the one hand a profound capacity to grasp the structure of the human body, and on the other an equal insight into the mind and the best method of imparting knowledge. His work immediately attained its merited pre-eminence, a position which the many excellent treatises of the past fifty years have only rendered more conspicuous.

During this period frequent revisions have kept *Gray* always abreast of the active development of its subject. Among its editors it has numbered many of the ablest anatomists on both sides of the Atlantic. The services of Dr. Da Costa were sought by the Publishers by reason of his combined qualifications as an anatomist, a teacher and a surgeon. He has borne in mind the Author's original purpose, namely, to facilitate to the utmost the work of instructors and students, and to afford the physician and surgeon the assistance necessary in practice. He has revised every page, elaborating the text where necessary to cover the latest developments, and to ensure due proportion, and has greatly enriched the illustrations both in number and in the use of colors. The names of the parts are engraved directly upon them, a feature original with *Gray* and peculiar to his work. The advantage is obvious. Ample directions are given for dissection. The new nomenclature has been introduced in parentheses following the names still in common use, an arrangement preferable to either system alone. The book is thoroughly organized in its headings and with heavy type catchwords in the text, so that the student readily gains a knowledge of the parts in their anatomical dependence.

From the foregoing outline it is not difficult to appreciate the reasons for the fact often observed that *Gray* is the easiest work from which to teach, to learn, to prepare for examinations for collegiate degrees and state licenses, and to use for reference in the practice of medicine and surgery.

CONTENTS.

DESCRIPTIVE AND SURGICAL ANATOMY

OSTEOLOGY—THE SKELETON.

	PAGE
The Skeleton	33
Number of the Bones	33
Form of Bones	33
Long Bones	33
Short Bones	33
Flat Bones	34
Irregular Bones	34
Surfaces of Bones	34
Structure of Bone	34
Bloodvessels of Bone	39
Chemical Composition of Bone	41
Ossification and Growth of Bone	42

THE VERTEBRAL OR SPINAL COLUMN.

General Characters of a Vertebra.

The Cervical Vertebræ	49
Atlas	50
Axis	52
Seventh Cervical	53
The Thoracic or Dorsal Vertebræ	53
Peculiar Dorsal Vertebræ	55
The Lumbar Vertebræ	56
Structure of the Vertebræ	58
Development of the Vertebræ	58
Development of the Atlas	59
Development of the Axis	59
Development of the Seventh Cervical	60
Development of the Lumbar Vertebræ	60
Progress of Ossification in the Spine Generally	60
The Sacral and Coccygeal Vertebræ	61
Sacrum	61
Differences in the Sacrum of the Male and Female	64
Peculiarities of the Sacrum	64
Coccyx	65
The Vertebral Column or Spine in General	67
Surface Form of the Vertebral Column	69
Surgical Anatomy of the Vertebral Column	69

THE SKULL.

The Cerebral Cranium.

The Occipital Bone	71
The Parietal Bone	76
The Frontal Bone	79
Vertical Portion of the Frontal Bone	79
Horizontal or Orbital Portion of the Frontal Bone	81
The Temporal Bone	83
Squamous Portion of the Temporal Bone	83
The Mastoid Portion of the Temporal Bone	85
The Petrous Portion of the Temporal Bone	88
The Sphenoid Bone	92
The Body of the Sphenoid Bone	92
The Greater or Temporal Wings of the Sphenoid Bone	95
The Lesser or Orbital Wings of the Sphenoid Bone	96
The Pterygoid Processes of the Sphenoid Bone	96
The Sphenoidal Spongy Bone	97
The Ethmoid Bone	98
The Horizontal Lamina or Cribriform Plate of the Ethmoid Bone	99
The Vertical or Perpendicular Lamina or Plate of the Ethmoid Bone	100
The Lateral Mass or Labyrinth of the Ethmoid Bone	100
Development of the Cranium	102
The Fontanelles	102
Supernumerary or Wormian Bones	103
Congenital Fissures and Gaps	104

Bones of the Face.

The Nasal Bones	104
The Superior Maxillary Bones	105
The Body of the Superior Maxilla	105
The Processes of the Superior Maxillæ	109
Malar Process of the Superior Maxilla	109
Nasal Process of the Superior Maxilla	109
Alveolar Process of the Superior Maxilla	109
Palate Process of the Superior Maxilla	110
Changes Produced in the Upper Jaw by Age	112
The Lachrymal Bone	112
The Malar Bone	113
The Palate Bone	115
The Horizontal Plate of the Palate Bone	116
The Vertical or Perpendicular Plate of the Palate Bone	117
The Inferior Turbinated Bone	119
The Vomer	120
The Maxillary Bone, Inferior Maxilla, Mandible or Lower Jaw	122
The Horizontal Portion or Body of the Mandible	122
The Perpendicular Portion or Rami of the Mandible	124
Changes Produced in the Lower Jaw by Age	125
The Sutures	127

The Skull as a Whole.

The Vertex of the Skull	129
The Base of the Skull	130

PAGE

The Lateral Region of the Skull . . . 136
The Temporal Fossa 137
The Mastoid Portion 138
The Zygomatic or Infratemporal Fossa 138
The Spheno-maxillary or Pterygo-palatine Fossa 139
The Anterior Region of the Skull . . . 139
Orbits, Orbital Cavities or Orbital Fossæ 140
The Nasal Cavity 142
Difference in Size and Form of the Cranium 146
Surface Form of the Skull 147
Fixed Points for Measurement of the Skull 149
Surgical Anatomy of the Skull 149
The Hyoid or Lingual Bone 153

THE THORAX.

The Sternum 155
The Ribs 159
Common Characters of the Ribs . . 161
Peculiar Ribs 162
The Costal Cartilages 164
Surface Form of the Chest 165
Surgical Anatomy of the Chest 165

THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The Shoulder Girdle.

The Clavicle 167
Surface Form of the Clavicle . . . 170
Surgical Anatomy of the Clavicle . . 170
The Scapula 171
Surface Form of the Scapula . . . 176
Surgical Anatomy of the Scapula . . 177

The Arm.

The Humerus 177
Surface Form of the Humerus . . . 183
Surgical Anatomy of the Humerus . 183

The Forearm.

The Ulna 184
Surface Form of the Ulna 189
The Radius 190
Surface Form of the Radius . . . 192
Surgical Anatomy of the Radius and Ulna 192

The Hand.

The Carpus 193
Common Characters of the Carpal Bones 193
Bones of the Upper Row 195
Scaphoid or Navicular Bone . . 195
Semilunar Bone 196
Cuneiform Bone 197
Pisiform Bone 197
Bones of the Lower Row 198
Trapezium 198
Trapezoid 198
Os Magnum 199
Unciform 199

PAGE

The Metacarpus 200
Common Characters of the Metacarpal Bones 200
Peculiar Characters of the Metacarpal Bones 201
The Phalanges of the Hand 204
Surface Form of the Bones of the Hand . 204
Surgical Anatomy of the Bones of the Hand 205
Development of the Bones of the Hand . 205

THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The Pelvic Girdle.

The Os Innominatum 207
The Ilium 207
The Ischium 210
The Pubis 212
The Cotyloid Cavity or Acetabulum . 213
The Obturator or Thyroid Foramen . 214
The Pelvis 215
The False Pelvis 215
The True Pelvis 216
Position of the Pelvis 218
Axes of the Pelvis 218
Differences between the Male and the Female Pelvis 219
Surface Form of the Pelvis 220
Surgical Anatomy of the Pelvis . . 220

The Thigh.

The Femur or Thigh Bone 221
Surface Form of the Femur . . . 229
Surgical Anatomy of the Femur . . 229

The Leg.

The Patella or Knee-cap 230
Surface Form of the Patella . . . 231
Surgical Anatomy of the Patella . . 231
The Tibia or Shin Bone 233
Surface Form of the Tibia 236
The Fibula or Calf Bone 237
Surface Form of the Fibula . . . 239
Surgical Anatomy of Bones of the Leg 239

The Foot.

The Tarsus 242
The Calcaneus or Heel Bone . . . 242
The Astragalus or Ankle Bone . . . 244
The Cuboid 245
Scaphoid or Navicular Bone . . . 246
Cuneiform or Wedge Bones 247
The Metatarsal Bones 249
Common Characters of Metatarsal Bones 249
Peculiar Characters of Metatarsal Bones 249
The Phalanges of the Foot 252
Development of the Foot 253
Construction of the Foot as a Whole . . 254
Surface Form of the Foot 255
Surgical Anatomy of the Foot 256
Sesamoid Bones 257

THE ARTICULATIONS OR JOINTS.

Structures Composing the Joints . . . 259
Bone 259
Cartilage 259
Ligaments 261
Synovial Membranes 262
Forms of Articulation:
Synarthrosis 264
Amphiarthrosis 264
Diarthrosis 265
The Kinds of Movement Admitted in Joints 266
Ligamentous Action of Muscles 268

ARTICULATIONS OF THE TRUNK.

Articulations of the Vertebral Column . . 269
Articulations of the Atlas with the Axis . 274

Articulations of the Spine with the Cranium.

Articulation of the Atlas with the Occipital Bone 276
Articulation of the Axis with the Occipital Bone 278
Surgical Anatomy of Articulations of the Spine 279

PAGE

Articulation of the Lower Jaw or the Temporo-mandibular Articulation . . 280
Surface Form 282
Surgical Anatomy 282
Articulations of the Ribs with the Vertebræ or the Costo-vertebral Articulations . . 283
Articulation of the Cartilages of the Ribs with the Sternum, etc., or the Costo-sternal Articulations 287
Articulations of the Cartilages of the Ribs with Each Other or the Interchondral Articulations 289
Articulations of the Ribs with their Cartilages or the Costo-chondral Articulations 290
Articulations of the Sternum 290
Articulations of the Vertebral Column with the Pelvis 290
Articulations of the Pelvis 292
Articulation of the Sacrum and Ilium . 292
Ligaments passing between the Sacrum and Ischium 292
Articulation of the Sacrum and Coccyx 294
Articulation of the Ossa Pubis 296

ARTICULATIONS OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

Sterno-clavicular Articulation 297
Surface Form 299
Surgical Anatomy 299
Acromio-clavicular Articulation or Scapulo-clavicular Articulation 299
Surface Form 301
Surgical Anatomy 301
Proper Ligaments of the Scapula . . . 301
The Shoulder-joint 303
Surface Form of the Shoulder-joint . 307
Surgical Anatomy of the Shoulder-joint 307
The Elbow-joint 308
Surface Form of the Elbow-joint . . 312
Surgical Anatomy of the Elbow-joint . 312
Radio-ulnar Articulation 313
Superior or Proximal Radio-ulnar Articulation 314
Surface Form 314
Surgical Anatomy 314
Middle Radio-ulnar Ligaments . . . 314
Inferior or Distal Radio-ulnar Articulation 315
Surface Form 317
Radio-carpal or Wrist-joint 317
Surface Form of Wrist-joint . . . 318
Surgical Anatomy of Wrist-joint . . 318
Articulations of the Carpus 319
Articulations of the First Row of Carpal Bones 319
Articulations of the Second Row of Carpal Bones 319
Articulations of the Two Rows of Carpal Bones 320

PAGE

Carpo-metacarpal Articulations 321
Articulation of the Metacarpal Bone of the Thumb with the Trapezium . 321
Articulations of the Metacarpal Bones of the Four Inner Fingers with the Carpus 322
Articulations of the Metacarpal Bones with Each Other 324
Metacarpo-phalangeal Articulations . . 324
Surface Form of Metacarpo-phalangeal Articulations 324
Articulations of the Phalanges 325

ARTICULATIONS OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The Hip-joint 325
Surface Form of the Hip-joint . . . 333
Surgical Anatomy of the Hip-joint . 333
The Knee-joint 334
Surface Form of the Knee-joint . . 343
Surgical Anatomy of the Knee-joint . 343
Tibio-fibular Articulation 345
Superior Tibio-fibular Articulation . 345
Middle Tibio-fibular Ligament or Interosseous Membrane 346
Inferior Tibio-fibular Articulation . . 346
The Tibio-tarsal Articulation or Ankle-joint 347
Surface Form of Ankle-joint . . . 351
Surgical Anatomy of Ankle-joint . . 351
Articulations of the Tarsus 352
Articulation of the Os Calcis and Astragalus or the Calcaneo-astragaloid Articulation 352
Articulation of the Os Calcis with the Cuboid or the Calcaneo-cuboid Articulation 353
The Ligaments connecting the Os Calcis and Scaphoid or the Calcaneo-scaphoid Articulation Ligaments 353
Surgical Anatomy 354
Articulation of the Astragalus with the Scaphoid Bone or the Astragalo-scaphoid Articulation 354
The Articulation of the Scaphoid with the Cuneiform Bones 355
The Articulation of the Scaphoid with the Cuboid 355
The Articulations of the Cuneiform Bones with Each Other or the Intercuneiform Articulations 355
The Articulation of the External Cuneiform Bone with the Cuboid . 356
Surgical Anatomy 356
Tarso-metatarsal Articulations 357
Articulations of the Metatarsal Bones with Each Other 358
The Synovial Membranes in the Tarsal and Metatarsal Joints 358
Metatarso-phalangeal Articulations . . 359
Articulations of the Phalanges 359
Surface Form 360
Surgical Anatomy 360

THE MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ.

General Description of Muscles 361
General Description of Tendons . . . 363
General Description of Aponeuroses . . 363
General Description of Fasciæ 364

MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE CRANIUM AND FACE.

Subdivision into Groups 365
The Cranial Region 366
Dissection 366
Superficial Fascia 366
Surgical Anatomy 367
The Occipito-frontalis 367
Surgical Anatomy 368
The Auricular Region 369
Dissection 369
Attrahens Auriculam or Aurem . . 369
Attollens Auriculam or Aurem . . . 369
Retrahens Auriculam or Aurem . . . 369
The Palpebral Region 370
Dissection 370
Orbicularis Palpebrarum 370
Corrugator Supercilii 371
Levator Palpebræ 371
Tensor Tarsi or Horner's Muscle . . 371
The Orbital Region 372
Levator Palpebræ Superioris . . . 372
Superior Rectus 373
Inferior Rectus 373

PAGE

The Orbital Region—
External Rectus 373
Superior Oblique 373
Inferior Oblique 374
Fasciæ of the Orbit 374
Surgical Anatomy 575
The Nasal Region 575
Pyramidalis Nasi 575
Levator Labii Superioris Alæque Nasi 375
Dilator Naris Posterior 376
Dilator Naris Anterior 376
Compressor Nasi 376
Compressor Narium Minor 376
Depressor Alæ Nasi 376
The Superior Maxillary Region 376
Levator Labii Superioris 376
Levator Anguli Oris 377
Zygomaticus Major 377
Zygomaticus Minor 377
The Mandibular Region 377
Dissection 377
Levator Labii Inferioris or Levator Menti 378
Depressor Labii Inferioris or Quadratus Menti 378
Depressor Anguli Oris or Triangularis Menti 378
The Intermaxillary Region 378
Dissection 378
Orbicularis Oris 378
Buccinator 380
Risorius or Santorini's Muscle . . . 380
The Temporo-mandibular Region . . . 381
Masseteric Fascia 381
Masseter Muscle 381
Temporal Fascia 381
Dissection 382
Temporal Muscle 382
The Pterygo-mandibular Region . . . 383
Dissection 383
External Pterygoid Muscle 383
Internal Pterygoid Muscle 383
Surface Form of Muscles of Head and Face 385

Muscles and Fasciæ of the Neck.

Subdivision in Groups 385
The Superficial Cervical Region 386
Dissection 386
Superficial Cervical Fascia 386
Platysma Myoides 386
Deep Cervical Fascia 387
Surgical Anatomy 389
Sterno-mastoid or Sterno-cleido-mastoid 389
Surface Form 391
Surgical Anatomy 391
The Infra-hyoid Region 391
Dissection 391
Sterno-hyoid 391
Sterno-thyroid 392
Thyro-hyoid 392
Omo-hyoid 393
The Supra-hyoid Region 393
Dissection 393
Digastric 393
Stylo-hyoid 394
Mylo-hyoid 394
Dissection 395
Genio-hyoid 395
The Lingual Region 396
Dissection 396
Genio-hyo-glossus 396
Hyo-glossus 397
Chondro-glossus 397
Stylo-glossus 397
Palato-glossus or Constrictor Isthmi Faucium 398
Muscular Substance of the Tongue . 398
Surgical Anatomy 400

PAGE

The Pharyngeal Region 400
Dissection 400
Inferior Constrictor 400
Middle Constrictor 401
Superior Constrictor 401
Stylo-pharyngeus 403
The Palatal Region 403
Dissection 403
Levator Palati 403
Circumflexus or Tensor Palati . . . 404
Palatine Aponeurosis 404
Azygos Uvulæ 405
Palato-glossus or Constrictor Isthmi Faucium 405
Palato-pharyngeus 405
Salpingo-pharyngeus 405
Surgical Anatomy 406
The Anterior Vertebral Region 406
Rectus Capitis Anticus Major or Longus Capitis 406
Rectus Capitis Anticus Minor . . . 407
Rectus Capitis Lateralis 407
Longus Colli 407
The Lateral Vertebral Region 408
Scalenus Anticus 408
Scalenus Posticus 409
Surface Form of Muscles of the Neck . 409

Muscles and Fasciæ of the Trunk.

Subdivision into Groups 410

Muscles of the Back.

Subdivision into Groups 410
The First Layer 410
Dissection 410
Superficial Fascia 411
Deep Fascia 411
Trapezius 411
Ligamentum Nuchæ 413
Latissimus Dorsi 413
The Second Layer 414
Dissection 414
Levator Anguli Scapulæ 414
Rhomboideus Minor 414
Rhomboideus Major 414
The Third Layer 415
Dissection 415
Serratus Posticus Superior 415
Serratus Posticus Inferior 415
Vertebral Aponeurosis 416
Lumbar Fascia or Aponeurosis . . . 416
Splenius 416
Splenius Capitis 416
Splenius Colli 416
The Fourth Layer 417
Dissection 417
Erector Spinæ 417
Ilio-costalis or Sacro-lumbalis . . . 419
Musculus Accessorius ad Ilio-costalem 419
Cervicalis Ascendens 419
Longissimus Dorsi 419
Transversalis Cervicis or Transversalis Colli 419
Trachelo-mastoid 419
Spinalis Dorsi 419
Spinalis Colli 420
Complexus 420
The Fifth Layer 420
Dissection 420
Semispinalis Dorsi 421
Semispinalis Colli 421
Multifidus Spinæ 421
Rotatores Spinæ 421
Supraspinales 421
Interspinales 421
Extensor Coccygis 422
Intertransversales 422
Rectus Capitis Posticus Major . . . 422

PAGE

The Fifth Layer—
Rectus Capitis Posticus Minor . . . 422
Obliquus Capitis Inferior 422
Obliquus Capitis Superior 422
Surface Form of Muscles of the Back . . 424

Muscles and Fasciæ of the Thorax.

Intercostal Fascia 424
Intercostal Muscles 425
External Intercostals 425
Internal Intercostals 425
Infracostales 425
Triangularis Sterni 425
Levatores Costarum 426
Diaphragm 427
Ligamentum Arcuatum Internum . . 427
Ligamentum Arcuatum Externum . 427
Central Tendon of the Diaphragm . . 429
The Openings of the Diaphragm . . 429
Muscles of Inspiration and Expiration 432

Muscles of the Abdomen.

The Superficial Muscles of the Abdomen . 432
Dissection 432
Superficial Fascia 433
Deep Fascia 433
External or Descending Oblique . . 433
Aponeurosis of External Oblique . 434
External Abdominal Ring . . . 436
External Pillar or Inferior Crus . 436
Internal Pillar or Superior Crus . 436
Intercolumnar Fibres 436
Poupart's Ligament 436
Gimbernat's Ligament . . . 437
Triangular Fascia or Colles's Ligament 437
Ligament of Cooper 437
Suspensory Ligament of the Penis 437
Suspensory Ligament of the Clitoris 437
Internal or Ascending Oblique . . . 437
Aponeurosis of Internal Oblique . 439
Cremaster Muscle 439
Transversalis 442
Dissection 442
Rectus Abdominis 442
Pyramidalis 444
The Linea Alba 444
The Lineæ Semilunares . . . 445
The Lineæ Transversæ 445
The Transversalis Fascia 445
Internal or Deep Abdominal Ring . 446
The Inguinal or Spermatic Canal . . 448
The Deep Crural Arch 448
Cooper's Ligament 448
Surface Forms of Muscles of the Abdomen 448
The Deep Muscles of the Abdomen . . 449
The Fascia Covering the Quadratus Lumborum 449
Quadratus Lumborum 449

Muscles of the Pelvic Outlet.

The Muscles of the Ischio-rectal Region . 449
The Corrugator Cutis Ani 449
External Sphincter Ani 450
Internal Sphincter Ani 451
Levator Ani 451
Pubococcygeus Muscle 452
Iliococcygeus Muscle 454
Coccygeus 455
The Muscles and Fasciæ of the Perinæum in the Male 455
Superficial Fascia 455
The Central Tendinous Point of the Perinæum 456
Transversus Perinei Superficialis . . 457
Accelerator Urinæ 457
Erector Penis 458
Triangular Ligament 458
Compressor or Constrictor Urethræ . 460

PAGE

The Muscles of the Perinæum in the Female 460
Transversus Perinei Superficialis . . 460
Sphincter Vaginæ 461
Erector Clitoridis 461
Triangular Ligament 462
Compressor Urethræ 462

MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

Subdivision into Groups 462
Dissection of Pectoral Region and Axilla . 463

The Muscles and Fasciæ of the Thoracic Region.

The Anterior Thoracic Region 463
Superficial Fascia 463
Deep Fascia 463
Pectoralis Major 464
Dissection 467
Costo-coracoid Membrane or Clavipectoral Fascia 467
Pectoralis Minor 468
Subclavius 468
The Lateral Thoracic Region 468
Serratus Magnus 468
Surgical Anatomy 469
Dissection 470

Muscles and Fasciæ of Shoulder and Arm.

Superficial Fascia 470
Deep Fascia 470
The Acromial Region 470
Deep Fascia 470
Deltoid 470
Surgical Anatomy 471
The Anterior Scapular Region 471
Dissection 471
The Subscapular Fascia 471
Subscapularis 471
The Posterior Scapular Region 472
Dissection 472
Supraspinatus Fascia 472
Supraspinatus Muscle 472
Infraspinatus Fascia 472
Infraspinatus Muscle 472
Teres Minor 473
Teres Major 474

The Muscles and Fasciæ of the Arm.

The Anterior Humeral Region 474
Dissection 474
Deep Fascia 474
Coraco-brachialis 475
Biceps or Biceps Flexor Cubiti . . . 475
Brachialis Anticus 476
The Posterior Humeral Region 477
Triceps or Triceps Extensor Cubiti . 477
Subanconeus 478
Surgical Anatomy 478

Muscles and Fasciæ of the Forearm.

Dissection 478
Deep Fascia 478
The Anterior Radio-ulnar Region . . . 479
The Superficial Layer 479
Pronator Radii Teres 479
Surgical Anatomy 479
Flexor Carpi Radialis 479
Palmaris Longus 480
Flexor Carpi Ulnaris 480
Flexor Sublimis Digitorum . . 481
The Deep Layer 482
Dissection 482
Flexor Profundus Digitorum . . 482
Flexor Longus Pollicis 482
Pronator Quadratus 483
Surgical Anatomy 484

PAGE

The Radial Region 484
Dissection 484
Supinator Longus 484
Extensor Carpi Radialis Longior . . 485
Extensor Carpi Radialis Brevior . . 485
The Posterior Radio-ulnar Region . . . 486
The Superficial Layer 486
Extensor Communis Digitorum . 486
Extensor Minimi Digiti . . . 487
Extensor Carpi Ulnaris . . . 487
Anconeus 487
The Deep Layer 487
Supinator Radii Brevis . . . 487
Extensor Ossis Metacarpi Pollicis 489
Extensor Brevis Pollicis . . . 489
Extensor Longus Pollicis . . . 489
Extensor Indicis 490
Surgical Anatomy 490

Muscles and Fasciæ of the Hand.

Dissection 491
Ligamentum Carpi Volare 491
Anterior Annular Ligament 491
The Synovial Membranes of the Flexor Tendons at the Wrist 492
Surgical Anatomy 492
Bursæ about the Hand and Wrist . . . 492
Posterior Annular Ligament 493
The Deep Palmar Fascia 493
The Superficial Transverse Ligament of the Fingers 494
Surgical Anatomy 494
The Radial Region 495
Abductor Pollicis 495
Opponens Pollicis 496
Flexor Brevis Pollicis 497
Adductor Obliquus Pollicis 497
Adductor Transversus Pollicis . . . 497
The Ulnar Region 498
Palmaris Brevis 498
Abductor Minimi Digiti 498
Flexor Brevis Minimi Digiti . . . 498
Opponens Minimi Digiti 498
The Middle Palmar Region 499
Lumbricales 499
Interossei 499
Surface Form of Muscles of the Upper Extremity 500
Surgical Anatomy of Muscles of the Upper Extremity 503

Muscles and Fasciæ of the Lower Extremity.

Subdivision into Groups 507

Muscles and Fasciæ of the Iliac Region.

Dissection 508
Iliac Fascia 508
Psoas Magnus 509
Psoas Parvus 510
Iliacus 510
Surgical Anatomy 511

Muscles and Fasciæ of the Thigh.

The Anterior Femoral Region 512
Dissection 512
Superficial Fascia 512
Deep Fascia or Fascia Lata . . . 513
Surgical Anatomy 515
Tensor Fasciæ Femoris 515
Sartorius 516
Quadriceps Extensor 516
Rectus Femoris 516
Vastus Externus 517
Vastus Internus 517
Crureus 517
Subcrureus 518
Surgical Anatomy 518

PAGE

The Internal Femoral Region 519
Dissection 519
Gracilis 519
Pectineus 519
Adductor Longus 519
Adductor Brevis 520
Adductor Magnus 520
Hunter's Canal 521
Surgical Anatomy 522

The Muscles and Fasciæ of the Hip.

The Gluteal Region 522
Dissection 522
Gluteus Maximus 523
Gluteus Medius 523
Gluteus Minimus 523
Pyriformis 524
Obturator Internus 525
Gemelli 526
Gemellus Superior 526
Gemellus Inferior 527
Quadratus Femoris 527
Obturator Externus 528
Surgical Anatomy 528
The Posterior Femoral Region 529
Dissection 529
Biceps or Biceps Flexor Cruris . . . 529
Semitendinosus 530
Semimembranosus 530
Surgical Anatomy 531

Muscles and Fasciæ of the Leg.

The Anterior Tibio-fibular Region . . . 531
Dissection 532
Deep Fascia of the Leg 532
Tibialis Anticus 532
Extensor Proprius Hallucis 532
Extensor Longus Digitorum . . . 533
Peroneus Tertius 534
The Posterior Tibio-fibular Region . . . 534
Dissection 534
The Superficial Layer 534
Gastrocnemius 534
Soleus 535
Tendo-Achillis 535
The Deep Layer 537
Dissection 537
Deep Transverse Fascia . . . 537
Popliteus 537
Flexor Longus Hallucis . . . 538
Flexor Longus Digitorum . . . 538
Tibialis Posticus 538
The Fibular Region 539
Dissection 539
Peroneus Longus 539
Peroneus Brevis 540
Surgical Anatomy of Tendons around Ankle 541

Muscles and Fasciæ of the Foot.

Dissection 541
Anterior Annular Ligament 541
Internal Annular Ligament 542
External Annular Ligament 542
Dissection of the Sole of the Foot . . . 542
Plantar Fascia 542
Central Portion of Plantar Fascia . . 542
Lateral Portions of Plantar Fascia . . 543
Bursæ about the Ankle and Foot . . . 543
Surgical Anatomy 543
The Dorsal Region 543
Fascia 543
Extensor Brevis Digitorum 543
The Plantar Region 544
The First Layer 544
Dissection 544
Abductor Hallucis 544
Flexor Brevis Digitorum . . . 544
Fibrous Sheaths of the Flexor Tendons 545
Abductor Minimi Digiti . . . 545

PAGE

The Plantar Region—
The Second Layer 546
Flexor Accessorius 546
Lumbricales 546
The Third Layer 546
Flexor Brevis Hallucis 546
Adductor Obliquus Hallucis . . 546
Flexor Brevis Minimi Digiti . . 547
Adductor Transversus Hallucis . 548
The Plantar Region—
The Fourth Layer 548
Interossei Muscles 548
Dorsal Interossei 548
Plantar Interossei 548
Surface Form of Muscles of the Lower Extremity 549
Surgical Anatomy of Muscles of the Lower Extremity 551

THE BLOOD-VASCULAR SYSTEM.

The Circulation of the Blood 555
The Cavity of the Thorax 556
The Upper Opening of the Thorax . . . 556
The Lower Opening of the Thorax . . . 556

THE PERICARDIUM.

Structure of the Pericardium 558
Fibrous Layer 558
Serous Pericardium 560
Arteries of the Pericardium 561
Nerves of the Pericardium 561
The Vestigial Fold of the Pericardium 561
Surgical Anatomy of the Pericardium . . 561

THE HEART.

Position of the Heart 562
Size and Weight of the Heart 564
Capacity of the Cavities of the Heart . . 564
Fat upon the Heart 564
Component Parts of the Heart 565
Right Auricle 565
Left Auricle 568
Right Ventricle 569
Left Ventricle 571
Structure of the Heart 574
Endocardium 574
Myocardium 574
Muscular Structure of the Heart . . 575
Fibres of the Auricles 575
Fibres of the Ventricles . . . 575
Vessels and Nerves of the Heart . . . 577
Surface Form of the Heart 577
Surgical Anatomy of the Heart 578
Peculiarities of Vascular System in Fœtus. 578
The Foramen Ovale 578
The Eustachian Valve 578
The Ductus Arteriosus 579
The Umbilical Arteries 579
Fœtal Circulation 579
Changes in the Vascular System at Birth . 581

THE ARTERIES.

Distribution of the Arteries 583
Anastomosis of the Arteries 583
Histology of the Capillaries and Arteries . 584
Blood-vessels of the Blood-vessel Wall . 586
Lymphatics of Arteries 586
Nerves of Arteries 586
Arterial Sheath 586

PULMONARY ARTERY.

Right Pulmonary Artery 587
Left Pulmonary Artery 587

THE AORTA.

The Ascending Aorta.

Relations of the Ascending Aorta . . . 589
Branches of the Ascending Aorta . . . 590
The Coronary Arteries 590
Right Coronary Artery 590
Left Coronary Artery 590
Peculiarities of Coronary Arteries . . 591

The Arch of the Aorta.

Relations of the Arch of the Aorta . . . 591
Peculiarities of the Arch of the Aorta . . 591
Surgical Anatomy of the Arch of the Aorta 592
Branches of the Arch of the Aorta . . . 593
Peculiarities of the Branches . . 593
The Innominate Artery 593
Relations 593
Branches 594
Thyroidea Ima 594
Peculiarities 594
Surgical Anatomy 594

ARTERIES OF THE HEAD AND NECK.

The Common Carotid Artery.

Relations of the Common Carotid Artery . 596
Peculiarities of the Common Carotid Artery 598
Surface Marking of the Common Carotid Artery 598
Surgical Anatomy of the Common Carotid Artery 598
The External Carotid Artery 600
Relations 600
Surface Marking 601
Surgical Anatomy 601
Branches 601
Superior Thyroid Artery . . . 601
Branches 602
Surgical Anatomy 603
Lingual Artery 603
Relations 603
Branches 603
Surgical Anatomy 604
Facial or External Maxillary Artery 604
Relations 605
Branches 605
Peculiarities 607
Surgical Anatomy 607
Occipital Artery 608
Branches 609
Posterior Auricular Artery . . 609
Branches 610
Ascending Pharyngeal Artery . 610
Branches 610
Surgical Anatomy 611
Superficial Temporal Artery . 611
Branches 611
Surgical Anatomy 612
Internal Maxillary Artery . . 612
Branches of First Portion . 613
Surgical Anatomy . . 614
Branches of Second Portion . 614
Branches of Third Portion . 615
Surgical Anatomy . . 615
Surgical Anatomy of the Triangles of the Neck 616
Anterior Triangle of the Neck . . 616
Posterior Triangle of the Neck . . 618

PAGE

The Internal Carotid Artery 619
Cervical Portion 620
Relations 620
Petrous Portion 620
Cavernous Portion 621
Cerebral Portion 621
Peculiarities 621
Surgical Anatomy 621
Branches 621
Tympanic 622
Arteriæ Receptaculi 622
Anterior Meningeal 622
Ophthalmic 622
Branches 622
Anterior Cerebral 626
Branches 626
Middle Cerebral 627
Branches 628
Posterior Communicating . . . 628
Anterior Choroid 628

The Bloodvessels of the Brain.

The Central Ganglionic System 630
The Cortical Arterial System 631

ARTERIES OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The Subclavian Artery.

First Part of the Right Subclavian Artery . 632
Relations 632
First Part of the Left Subclavian Artery . 633
Relations 633
Second and Third Parts of Subclavian Artery 633
Relations 634
Third Portion of the Subclavian Artery . 634
Peculiarities of the Subclavian Artery . . 635
Surface Marking of the Subclavian Artery . 635
Surgical Anatomy of the Subclavian Artery 635
Branches of the Subclavian Artery . . . 637
Vertebral Artery 637
Relations 637
Branches 638
Surgical Anatomy 639
Basilar Artery 639
Branches 639
Circle of Willis 640
Thyroid Axis 640
Branches 641
Internal Mammary Artery 643
Relations 644
Branches 644
Surgical Anatomy 644
Superior Intercostal Artery 645
Deep Cervical Branch 645
Surgical Anatomy of the Axilla 645
Boundaries 645
Contents 646
Surgical Anatomy 646

The Axillary Artery.

Relations of the Axillary Artery . . . 648
Peculiarities of the Axillary Artery . . 649
Surface Marking of the Axillary Artery . 649
Surgical Anatomy of the Axillary Artery . 649
Branches of the Axillary Artery . . . 650
Superior Thoracic Artery 650
Acromial Thoracic Artery or Thoracic Axis 651
Branches 651
Long Thoracic or External Mammary Artery 651
Alar Thoracic Artery 651
Subscapular Artery 651
Circumflex Arteries 651

The Brachial Artery.

Relations of the Brachial Artery . . . 652
Surgical Anatomy of the Bend of the Elbow 653
Peculiarities of the Brachial Artery . . 653
Surface Marking of the Brachial Artery . 654
Surgical Anatomy of the Brachial Artery . 654

PAGE

Branches of the Brachial Artery . . . 655
Superior Profunda Artery 655
Nutrient Artery 656
Inferior Profunda Artery 656
Anastomotica Magna 656
Muscular Branches 656
The Anastomosis around the Elbow-joint 657
The Radial Artery 657
Relations 657
The Deep Palmar Arch 658
Peculiarities 658
Surface Marking 658
Surgical Anatomy 658
Branches 659
Radial Recurrent 659
Muscular Branches 659
Anterior Radial Carpal 659
Superficialis Volæ 659
Posterior Radial Carpal 659
Dorsalis Pollicis 659
Dorsalis Indicis 659
Princeps Pollicis 660
Radialis Indicis 660
Perforating Arteries 660
Palmar Interosseous 660
Palmar Recurrent Branches . . 660
The Ulnar Artery 660
Relations 661
Peculiarities 661
Surface Marking 661
Surgical Anatomy 661
Branches 662
Anterior Ulnar Recurrent . . . 662
Posterior Ulnar Recurrent . . . 662
Interosseous Artery 662
Muscular Branches 663
Anterior Carpal 663
Posterior Carpal 663
Deep Palmar Arch 664
Superficial Palmar Arch . . . 664
Relations 664
Branches 664
Surface Marking 665
Surgical Anatomy 665

ARTERIES OF THE TRUNK.

The Descending Aorta.

The Thoracic Aorta 665
Relations 665
Surface Marking 666
Surgical Anatomy 666
Branches 666
Bronchial Arteries 666
Œsophageal Arteries 666
Pericardiac Arteries 666
Posterior Mediastinal Arteries . 666
Intercostal Arteries and Branches 667
Surgical Anatomy 668
The Abdominal Aorta 668
Relations 669
Surface Marking 670
Surgical Anatomy 670
Branches 671
The Cœliac Axis or Artery . . 671
Relations 671
Branches 671
Surgical Anatomy 674
The Superior Mesenteric Artery . 675
Branches 675
Blood-supply of the Right Iliac Fossa 676
The Inferior Mesenteric Artery . 677
Suprarenal Artery 678
The Renal Arteries 678
The Spermatic Arteries 679
The Ovarian Arteries 680
The Inferior Phrenic Arteries . . 680
The Lumbar Arteries 680
Branches 681

PAGE

The Common Iliac Arteries.

Branches of Common Iliac Arteries . . 682
Peculiarities of Common Iliac Arteries. . 682
Surface Marking of Common Iliac Arteries 682
Surgical Anatomy of Common Iliac Arteries 682
The Internal Iliac Artery 683
Relations 683
Peculiarities 685
Surgical Anatomy 685
Branches 686
Superior Vesical Artery . . . 686
Middle Vesical Artery 686
Inferior Vesical Artery 686
Middle Hæmorrhoidal Artery . 687
Uterine Artery 687
Vaginal Artery 687
Surgical Anatomy 688
Obturator Artery 688
Branches 688
Peculiarities 689
Internal Pudic Artery 689
Relations 690
Peculiarities 690
Surgical Anatomy 690
Branches 690
Sciatic Artery 692
Branches 693
Lateral Sacral Artery 693
Branches 693
Gluteal Artery 694
Branches 694
Surface Marking 694
Surgical Anatomy 694
The External Iliac Artery 694
Relations 694
Surface Marking 695
Surgical Anatomy 695
Branches 696
Internal or Deep Epigastric Artery 696
Branches 696
Peculiarities 696
Surgical Anatomy 697
Deep Circumflex Iliac Artery . . 697

ARTERIES OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The Femoral Artery.

Scarpa's Triangle 697
Hunter's Canal or the Adductor Canal . 698
The Common Femoral Artery 699
Relations 700
The Superficial Femoral Artery 700
Relations 700
Peculiarities 700
Surface Marking 701
Surgical Anatomy 701
Branches 704
Superficial Epigastric 704
Superficial Circumflex Iliac . . 704
Superficial External Pudic . . 704
Deep External Pudic 704
Deep Femoral or Profunda Femoris 704
Relations 704
Branches 705

PAGE

The Superficial Femoral Artery—
Muscular Branches 707
Anastomotica Magna 707
Branches 707

The Popliteal Artery.

The Popliteal Space 707
Dissection 707
Boundaries 707
Position of Contained Parts . . 708
Peculiarities 709
Surface Marking 709
Surgical Anatomy 709
Branches 710
Superior Muscular Branches . . 710
Inferior Muscular Branches . . 710
Cutaneous Branches 710
Superior Articular Arteries . . 710
Azygos Articular Artery . . . 711
Inferior Articular Arteries . . 711
Circumpatellar Anastomosis . . 711
The Anterior Tibial Artery 711
Relations 711
Peculiarities 712
Surface Marking 712
Surgical Anatomy 712
Branches 712
Posterior Recurrent Tibial . . 713
Superior Fibular 713
Anterior Recurrent Tibial . . . 713
Muscular Branches 713
Malleolar Arteries 713
The Dorsalis Pedis Artery 714
Relations 714
Peculiarities 715
Surface Marking 715
Surgical Anatomy 715
Branches 715
Cutaneous Branches 715
Tarsal Artery 715
Metatarsal Artery 715
Communicating Artery . . . 716
The Posterior Tibial Artery 716
Relations 716
Peculiarities 717
Surface Marking 717
Surgical Anatomy 717
Branches 717
Peroneal Artery 717
Relations 718
Peculiarities 718
Branches 718
Cutaneous Branches 718
Nutrient Artery 719
Muscular Branches 719
Communicating Branch . . . 719
Malleolar or Internal Malleolar Artery 719
Internal Calcanean Arteries . . 719
Internal Plantar Artery . . . 719
External Plantar Artery . . . 720
Surface Marking 720
Surgical Anatomy 720
Branches 720

THE VEINS.

Subdivisions of the Veins 721
Anastomosis of Veins 722
Histology of the Veins 723
The Superficial or Cutaneous Veins . . . 723
The Deep Veins 723

THE PULMONARY VEINS.

THE SYSTEMIC VEINS.

Veins of the Head and Neck.

Veins of the Exterior of the Head and Face 725

Veins of the Exterior of the Head and Face—
Frontal Vein 725
Supraorbital Vein 726
Angular Vein 726
Anterior Facial Vein 726
Common Facial Vein 726
Superficial Temporal Vein 727
The Pterygoid Plexus and the Internal Maxillary Vein 727
Temporo-maxillary Vein 727
Posterior Auricular Vein 727
Occipital Vein 727

PAGE

The Veins of the Neck 728
External Jugular Vein 728
Posterior External Jugular Vein . . 728
Anterior Jugular Vein 728
Internal Jugular Vein 729
Lingual Veins 729
Pharyngeal Veins 730
Superior Thyroid Vein 730
Middle Thyroid Vein 730
Veins of the Thyroid Gland . . 731
Surgical Anatomy 732
Vertebral Vein 732
Anterior Vertebral or Anterior Deep Cervical Vein 733
Posterior Vertebral or Posterior Deep Cervical Vein 733
The Veins of the Diploë 733
The Meningeal Veins 734
The Cerebral Vein 734
Superficial or Cortical Cerebral Veins . 735
Superior Cerebral Veins . . . 735
Median Cerebral Veins 735
Inferior Cerebral Veins . . . 735
Deep Cerebral, Central or Ventricular Veins, Veins of Galen . . . 735
Vena Corporis Striati 735
Choroid Vein 735
Basilar Vein 735
Superficial Cerebellar Veins 736
Deep Cerebellar Veins 736
Veins of the Pons Varoli . . . 736
Veins of the Medulla Oblongata . 736
The Sinuses of the Dura Mater, Ophthalmic Veins and Emissary Veins . . . 736
Superior Longitudinal Sinus . . 736
Torcular Herophili 737
Inferior Longitudinal Sinus 738
Straight Sinus 738
Lateral Sinus 738
Surgical Anatomy 739
Occipital Sinus 739
Cavernous Sinus 739
Surgical Anatomy 740
Spheno-parietal Sinus or Sinus Alæ Parvæ 740
Ophthalmic Veins 740
Circular Sinus 742
Superior Petrosal Sinus 742
Inferior Petrosal Sinus 742
Transverse or Basilar Sinus . . . 743
Emissary Veins 743
Surgical Anatomy 743

Veins of the Upper Extremity and Thorax.

The Superficial Veins of Upper Extremity . 745
Superficial Veins of the Hand and Fingers 745
Anterior Ulnar Vein 745
Posterior or Dorsal Ulnar Vein . . 745
Common Ulnar Vein 745
Radial Vein 745
Median Vein 745
Median Cephalic Vein 746
Median Basilic Vein 746
Basilic Vein 746
Cephalic Vein 747
The Deep Veins of the Upper Extremity . 747
Interosseous Veins 747
Deep Palmar Veins 747
Brachial Veins 747
Axillary Vein 747
Branches 748
Surgical Anatomy 748
Subclavian Vein 749
Innominate or Brachio-cephalic Veins 750
Right Innominate Vein 750
Left Innominate Vein 750
Peculiarities 750

PAGE

The Deep Veins of the Upper Extremity—
Internal Mammary Vein 750
Inferior Thyroid Veins 751
Intercostal Veins 752
Superior Vena Cava 752
Relations 752
Azygos Veins 752
Surgical Anatomy 753
Bronchial Veins 753
The Spinal Veins 753
Dorsi-spinal Veins 753
Meningo-rachidian Veins 754
Veins of the Bodies of the Vertebræ or Venæ Basis Vertebrarum 755
Veins of the Spinal Cord or Medullispinal Veins 755

Veins of the Lower Extremity, Abdomen and Pelvis.

The Superficial Veins of the Lower Extremity 756
The Superficial Veins of the Foot . 756
Internal or Long Saphenous Vein . 756
External or Short Saphenous Vein . 756
Surgical Anatomy 757
The Deep Veins of the Lower Extremity . 758
The Deep Veins of the Foot . . . 758
Posterior Tibial Veins 758
Anterior Tibial Veins 758
Popliteal Vein 758
Femoral Vein 758
External Iliac Vein 759
Deep Epigastric Vein 759
Deep Circumflex Iliac Vein . . . 759
Hypogastric or Internal Iliac Vein . 760
Surgical Anatomy 761
Obturator Vein 761
Sciatic Veins 761
Gluteal Veins 761
Superior Vesical Plexus 761
Prostatic or Prostatico-vesical Plexus . 761
Inferior Vesical Plexus 762
Surgical Anatomy 762
The Dorsal Veins of the Penis . . . 762
The Vaginal Plexuses and Veins . . 763
The Uterine Plexuses and Veins . . 763
Common Iliac Vein 764
Peculiarities 764
Ascending or Inferior Vena Cava . . 764
Relations 764
Peculiarities 764
Lumbar Veins 765
Spermatic Veins 765
Surgical Anatomy 766
Ovarian Veins 766
Renal Veins 767
Suprarenal Veins 767
Phrenic Veins 767
Hepatic Veins 767

THE PORTAL SYSTEM OF VEINS.

Superior Mesenteric Vein 768
Splenic Vein 768
Inferior Mesenteric Vein 768
Gastric Veins 768
Cystic Vein 769
Portal Vein 769

The Cardiac Veins.

Great Cardiac or Left Coronary Vein . 770
Posterior or Middle Cardiac Vein . . 771
Left Cardiac Vein 771
Anterior Cardiac Vein 771
Right Cardiac or Small Coronary Vein . 771
Coronary Sinus 771
Venæ Thebesii 771

THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM.

PAGE

Subdivision into Superficial and Deep Sets 773
Lymphatic or Conglobate Glands . . . 774

THE THORACIC DUCT AND THE RIGHT LYMPHATIC DUCT.

Radicals of Origin and Tributaries of Thoracic Duct 777
Structure of the Thoracic Duct 778
The Right Lymphatic Duct 778
Tributaries 779

LYMPHATICS OF THE CRANIAL REGION, FACE AND NECK.

The Lymphatic Glands of the Head and Face 780
The Occipital or Suboccipital Glands . 780
The Posterior Auricular, Retro-auricular or Mastoid Glands 780
Parotid Lymph Glands 781
The Subparotid Glands 782
The Internal Maxillary or Zygomatic Glands 782
The Facial Glands or Genial Glands . 782
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Cranial Region 782
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Face, the Interior of the Nose, Tongue, Floor of the Mouth, Pharynx, Larynx and Thyroid Gland 782
The Lymphatic Glands of the Neck . . 784
The Superficial Cervical Glands . . 784
The Submaxillary or Lateral Suprahyoid Glands 784
The Submental or Median Suprahyoid Glands 785
The Retro-pharyngeal or Post-pharyngeal Glands 785
The Deep Cervical, Carotid, or Sternomastoid Glands 786
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Neck . . 787
Surgical Anatomy 787

THE LYMPHATICS OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The Lymphatic Glands of the Upper Extremity 788
The Superficial Lymphatic Glands . 788
The Deep Lymphatic or the Axillary Glands 790
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Upper Extremity 792
The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Upper Extremity 792
The Deep Lymphatic Vessels of the Upper Extremity 792
Surgical Anatomy 792

THE LYMPHATICS OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The Lymphatic Glands of the Lower Extremity 793
The Superficial Inguinal Lymphatic Glands 793
Surgical Anatomy 794
The Deep Lymphatic Glands of the Lower Extremity 795
The Deep Inguinal or Deep Femoral Lymphatic Glands . . . 795
The Anterior Tibial Gland . . 795
The Popliteal Glands 795
The Gluteal and Ischiatic Glands 797
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Lower Extremity 797
The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Lower Extremity 797
The Deep Lymphatic Vessels of the Lower Extremity 797

PAGE

THE LYMPHATICS OF THE PELVIS AND ABDOMEN.

The Iliac or Ilio-pelvic Glands 797
The External Iliac Glands 797
The Internal Iliac or Hypogastric Glands 799
The Common Iliac Gland 799
The Abdomino-aortic Glands 799
The Right Juxta-aortic Glands . . 800
The Left Juxta-aortic Glands . . . 800
The Retro-aortic Glands 800
The Pre-aortic Glands 800
The Glands along the Mesenteric Arteries 800
The Glands connected with the Cœliac Axis and its Branches . 800
The Gastric Glands 800
The Splenic Glands 800
The Hepatic Glands 801
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Abdomen and Pelvis 801
The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Walls of the Abdomen . . 801
The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Gluteal Region . . . 801
The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Scrotum and Perinæum . 801
The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Penis 801
The Deep Lymphatic Vessels of the Abdominal Wall 801
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Umbilicus 802
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Peritoneum 802
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Bladder 802
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Prostate Gland 803
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Male Urethra 803
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Female Urethra 803
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Uterus 803
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Fallopian Tube 804
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Ovary 804
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Vagina 804
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Testicle 804
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Vas Deferens 804
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Seminal Vesicles 804
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Kidney, Ureter, and Suprarenal Capsule 804
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Liver 805
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Bile-ducts 806
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Stomach 806
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Pancreas 807
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Spleen 807

THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM OF THE INTESTINES.

The Lymphatic Glands of the Small Intestine 807
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Small Intestine 808
The Lymphatic Glands of the Large Intestine 808
The Colic Glands 808
The Rectal Glands 809

PAGE

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Large Intestine 809
Lymphatics of the Anus and Rectum . . 809

The Lymphatics of the Thorax.

The Lymphatic Glands of the Thoracic Wall or the Parietal Lymphatics . . . 810
The Internal Mammary Glands . . 810
The Intercostal Glands 810
The Diaphragmatic Lymphatics . . 810
The Visceral Lymphatics 811
The Anterior Mediastinal Glands . 811
The Posterior Mediastinal Glands 812
The Peritracheo-bronchial Glands 812
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Thoracic Wall 812
The Cutaneous Lymphatics . . . 812
Lymphatics of the Mammary Gland . 812
Lymphatics of the Great Pectoral Muscle 814
Surgical Anatomy 814
The Pulmonary Lymphatics . . . 815
The Pleural Lymphatics . . . 815
The Cardiac Lymphatics 815
The Thymic Lymphatic Vessels . . 815
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Œsophagus 815
The Lymphatic Vessels of the Thoracic Trachea 815

THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

Structure of the Cerebro-spinal Nervous System 817
Nerve-cells or the Cell-bodies of the Neurones 818
Unipolar cells 820
Bipolar cells 820
Multipolar cells 821
The Axone 821
The Dendrites 821
The Theory of Neurones 821
Nerve-fibres 822
Development of Nerve-cells and Fibres . 823
Chemical Composition of Nervous Tissue . 824
Origin and Termination of Nerves . . . 826
Peripheral Termination of Nerves . . 826
Termination in Fibrillæ 827
Neuro-tendinous Spindles 829
Neuro-muscular Spindles 829

The Cerebro-spinal Axis.

The Spinal Cord and its Membranes.

Dissection 832

Membranes of the Cord.

The Spinal Dura Mater 832
Structure 834
The Arachnoid Membrane 834
Structure 834
The Pia Mater of the Cord 835
Structure 835
Surgical Anatomy 836

The Spinal Cord.

Fissures and Grooves 837
Columns of the Cord 838
Structures of the Cord 839
Blood Supply of the Cord 840
Minute Anatomy of the Cord 840

The Meninges or Meningeal Membranes of the Brain.

Dissection 847
The Dura Mater of the Brain 847
Structure 848
Processes of the Dura Mater . . . 849
The Arachnoid Membrane 851
The Subarachnoid Space 852
Structure 853
Glandulæ Pacchioni, Luschka's Villi or the Arachnoid Villi 854
The Pia Mater of the Brain 854
The Velum Interpositum or the Tela Chorioidea Superior 854

The Brain.

The Development of the Brain 857
General Considerations and Divisions . . 864
The Hemispheres of the Cerebrum . . . 864
The Constituent Parts of the Hemisphere 864
The Hemispheres of the Cerebrum—
The Surface of the Cerebrum . . . 865
Fissures and Sulci of the Outer Surface of the Hemisphere 865
The Lobes on the External Surface . 869
The Fissures, Sulci and Lobes of the Mesial and Tentorial Surfaces . . 869
The Frontal Lobe 872
The Parietal Lobe 875
The Occipital Lobe 876
The Temporal Lobe 877
The Central Lobe or Island of Reil (Insula) 878
Limbic Lobe 878
The Olfactory Lobe or Rhinencephalon 880
Under Surface or Base of Encephalon . 881
General Arrangement of the Parts composing the Cerebrum 885
Fibres of the Internal Capsule . . . 892
The Inter-brain 901
The Third Ventricle 901
The Optic Thalamus 903
The Pineal Body, Epiphysis Cerebri, Conarium or Pineal Gland . . . 905
The Mid-brain 906
Crusta or Pes 907
The Tegmentum 908
The Substantia Nigra 910
The Corpora or Tubercula Quadrigemina 911
The Corpora Geniculata 911
The Aqueduct of Sylvius or Iter a Tertio ad Quartum Ventriculum . . . 912
Subthalamic region 913
Structure of the Cerebrum 913
The Hind-brain 922
Pons Varolii 923
The Cerebellum or Little Brain . . 926
The Medulla Oblongata 938
The Pyramid 939
The Lateral Column or Lateral Area . 940
The Olive, Olivary Body or Olivary Eminence 941
The Funiculus or Fasciculus of Rolando 941
The Cuneate Fasciculus 941
The Fasciculus Gracilis 941
The Restiform Body 941
The Posterior Surface of the Medulla Oblongata 942
The Fourth Ventricle 942
The Roof or Posterior Wall . . . 943
The Floor or Anterior Wall . . . 944
The Internal Structure of the Medulla Oblongata 945
The Posterior Area 946
The Lower Part of the Medulla . . 946
The Upper Part of the Medulla . . 948

Cerebral Localization and Topography.

Cranio-cerebral Topography 954

PAGE

THE NERVE-PATHS.

The Motor, Efferent or Descending Tract . 959
The Sensory, Afferent or Ascending Tract . 961

THE SPINAL NERVES.

The Roots of the Spinal Nerves . . . 965
The Anterior or Ventral Root . . . 965
The Posterior or Dorsal Root . . . 965
The Ganglia of the Spinal Nerves . . . 966
Distribution of the Spinal Nerves . . . 967
Points of Emergence of the Spinal Nerve . 967

The Cervical Nerves.

The Roots of the Cervical Nerves . . . 968
The Posterior or Dorsal Division of the Cervical Nerves 968
The Anterior Division of the Cervical Nerves 971
The Cervical Plexus 972
Superficial Branches 972
Deep Branches, Internal Series . 974
Surgical Anatomy 976
Deep Branches, External Series . 976
Surgical Anatomy 977
The Brachial Plexus 977
Relations 980
Branches 981
Surgical Anatomy 991

The Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves.

The Roots of the Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves 993
The Posterior Divisions of the Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves 993
The Internal Branches 993
The External Branches 993
The Cutaneous Branches 993
The Anterior Divisions of the Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves or the Intercostal Nerves 993
The Anterior Division of the First Thoracic or First Dorsal Nerve . . 995
The Anterior Divisions of the Upper Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves . . . 995
The Anterior Divisions of the Lower Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves . . . 996
The Last Thoracic or Dorsal Nerve . 996
Surgical Anatomy 996

The Lumbar Nerves.

The Roots of the Lumbar Nerves . . . 997
The Posterior Divisions of the Lumbar Nerves 997
Internal Branches 998
External Branches 998
The Anterior Divisions of the Lumbar Nerves 998
The Lumbar Plexus 998
Branches 999

The Sacral and Coccygeal Nerves.

The Roots of the Upper Sacral Nerves . 1006
The Posterior Divisions of the Sacral Nerves 1006
The Upper Sacral Nerves 1006
The Lower Sacral Nerves 1007
The Anterior Divisions of the Sacral Nerves 1007
The Posterior Divisions of the Coccygeal Nerve 1008
The Anterior Division of the Coccygeal Nerve 1009
The Sacral or Sciatic Plexus and the Pudic or Pudendal Plexus 1009
Branches 1010
Surgical Anatomy 1017

THE CEREBRAL OR CRANIAL NERVES.

The First or Olfactory Nerve.

Surgical Anatomy 1021

PAGE

The Second or Optic Nerve.

The Optic Tract 1021
The Optic Commissure 1021
The Optic Path 1022
Surgical Anatomy 1022

The Third or Motor Oculi Nerve.

Surgical Anatomy 1025

The Fourth or Trochlear Nerve.

Branches of Communication 1026
Branches of Distribution 1026
Surgical Anatomy 1026

The Fifth, Trigeminal or Trifacial Nerve.

The Gasserian or Semilunar Ganglion . . 1027
Ophthalmic Nerve 1028
Branches 1028
The Superior Maxillary Nerve 1031
Branches 1032
The Mandibular or Inferior Maxillary Nerve 1036
Branches 1036
Surface Marking 1041
Surgical Anatomy 1041

The Sixth or Abducent Nerve.

Branches of Communication 1043
Surgical Anatomy 1044

The Seventh or Facial Nerve.

Branches of Communication 1046
Branches of Distribution 1046
Surgical Anatomy 1049

The Eighth or Auditory Nerve.

The Origin of the Eighth Nerve . . . 1050
The Auditory Paths 1053
Surgical Anatomy 1054

The Ninth or Glosso-Pharyngeal Nerve.

The Superior or Jugular Ganglion . . . 1056
The Inferior or Petrous Ganglion . . . 1056
Branches of Communication . . . 1056
Branches of Distribution 1056
The Gustatory Path 1056
Surgical Anatomy 1057

The Tenth or Pneumogastric Nerve.

The Ganglion of the Root of the Pneumogastric Nerve 1059
Connecting Branches 1059
The Ganglion of the Trunk of the Pneumogastric Nerve 1059
Connecting Branches 1059
Surgical Anatomy 1062

The Eleventh or Spinal Accessory Nerve.

The Bulbar or Accessory Part of the Spinal Accessory Nerve 1063
The Spinal Portion of the Spinal Accessory Nerve 1063
Surgical Anatomy 1063

The Twelfth or Hypoglossal Nerve.

Branches of Communication 1065
Branches of Distribution 1066
Surgical Anatomy 1066

THE SYMPATHETIC NERVE.

Structure of the Sympathetic System . . 1068

The Gangliated Cord.

The Cervical Portion of the Gangliated Cord 1071
The Superior Cervical Ganglion . . 1072
The Inferior Cervical Ganglion . . 1077
Surgical Anatomy 1077

PAGE

The Thoracic Portion of the Gangliated Cord 1078
The Lumbar Portion of the Gangliated Cord 1079
The Pelvic or Sacral Portion of the Gangliated Cord 1080

The Great Plexuses of the Sympathetics.

The Cardiac Plexus 1081
The Great or Deep Cardiac Plexus . 1081
The Cardiac Plexus—
The Superficial or Anterior Cardiac Plexus 1081
The Pulmonary Plexus 1081
The Œsophageal Plexus 1082
The Epigastric or Solar Plexus 1083
The Hypogastric Plexus 1085
The Pelvic or Sacral Plexus 1086

THE ORGANS OF SPECIAL SENSE.

The Tongue.

The Body 1087
The Base or Root 1087
The Apex or Tip 1087
The Margin of the Tongue 1087
The Under or Inferior Surface 1087
Structure of the Tongue 1088
Surgical Anatomy 1093

The Nose.

The Outer Nose.

Structure 1096

The Nasal Fossæ.

The Anterior Nares 1098
The Posterior Nares 1098
Outer Wall 1099
The Inner Wall 1100
Surgical Anatomy 1102

The Eye.

The Fascia or Capsule of Ténon . . . 1103

The Tunics of the Eye.

The Fibrous or External Coat: The Sclerotic and Cornea 1107
The Sclera or Sclerotic Coat . . . 1107
The Cornea 1108
Dissection 1111
The Choroid, Ciliary Body, and Iris: the Tunica Media; the Uveal Tract . . 1111
The Choroid 1111
The Ciliary Body 1115
The Iris 1117
The Tunica Interna or Retina 1120

The Refracting Media.

The Aqueous Humor 1128
The Vitreous Body 1129
The Crystalline Lens 1130
Surgical Anatomy of the Eye 1134

The Appendages of the Eye.

The Eyebrow 1137
The Eyelid 1137
The Meibomian or Tarsal Glands . . 1139
The Conjunctiva 1140
The Lachrymal Apparatus 1141
The Lachrymal Glands 1141
The Lachrymal Sac 1142
The Nasal Duct 1142
Surface Form 1142
Surgical Anatomy 1143

The Ear.

The External Ear.

The Pinna or Auricle 1144
Structure of the Pinna 1146
The External Auditory Canal 1148
The Cartilaginous Portion 1148
The Osseous Portion 1149
Surface Form 1150

The Middle Ear, Drum or Tympanum.

The Tympanic Cavity 1150
The Drumhead or Membrana Tympani . 1155
The Ossicles of the Tympanum 1158
The Malleus or Hammer 1158
The Incus or Anvil 1159
The Stapes or Stirrup 1160

The Internal Ear or Labyrinth.

The Osseous Labyrinth 1164
The Vestibule 1164
The Semicircular Canals 1165
The Cochlea 1165
The Membranous Labyrinth 1169
The Utricle 1169
The Saccule 1170
The Membranous Semicircular Canals . 1170
Surgical Anatomy 1176

The Skin.

The Corium, Cutis Vera, Dermis or True Skin 1180
The Cuticle, Scarf Skin or Epidermis . . 1181
The Appendages of the Skin 1185
The Nails 1185
The Hairs 1187
The Sudoriferous or Sweat-glands . . 1190
The Sebaceous Glands 1191

THE ORGANS OF DIGESTION.

The Alimentary Canal.

The Mouth, Oral or Buccal Cavity.

The Vestibule 1194
The Cavity of the Mouth Proper . . . 1194
The Lips 1194
The Cheeks 1195
The Gums 1195
The Teeth 1195
General Characters 1195
Temporary, Deciduous or Milk Teeth . 1196
Permanent Teeth 1196
Arrangement of the Teeth 1198
Structure of the Teeth 1200
Development of the Teeth 1204
The Palate 1210
The Hard Palate 1210
The Palate—
The Soft Palate or Velum Pendulum Palati 1211
The Tonsil or Amygdala 1213
The Salivary Glands 1214
The Parotid Gland 1214
Surface Form 1215
The Submaxillary Gland 1216
The Sublingual Gland 1217
Structure of Salivary Glands . . . 1217
Surface Form 1219

The Pharynx.

The Nasal Part 1221
The Oral Part 1221
The Laryngeal Part 1222
Structure 1222

PAGE

Surgical Anatomy of the Mouth, Cheeks, Lips, Gums, Tonsils, Palate, Salivary Glands and Pharynx 1224

The Œsophagus.

Relations 1227
Anomalies 1228
Structure 1228
Movements and Innervations of the Œsophagus 1230
Surgical Anatomy 1230

THE ABDOMEN.

Boundaries 1231
Development of the Alimentary Canal, Viscera and Peritoneum 1235
Development of the Alimentary Canal . . 1236

The Peritoneum.

Structure of the Peritoneum 1245
Retro-peritoneal Fossæ 1260
Surgical Anatomy 1264

The Stomach.

Relations of the Stomach 1269
Surfaces 1269
The Cardia 1270
The Pylorus 1270
Alterations in Position 1271
Supports of the Stomach 1272
Structure 1273
Movements and Innervation of Stomach . 1280
Surface Form 1280
Surgical Anatomy 1280

The Small Intestine.

The Duodenum 1282
The First or Superior Portion . . . 1284
The Second or Descending Portion . 1285
The Third, Pre-aortic, Horizontal or Transverse Portion 1285
The Fourth or Ascending Portion . 1286
The Jejunum and Ileum 1289
Differences between the Jejunum and Ileum 1289
The Jejunum 1289
The Ileum 1289
Structure of the Small Intestine, including the Duodenum 1290

PAGE

The Large Intestine.

The Cæcum 1300
The Vermiform Appendix 1303
The Ileo-cæcal Valve or the Valve of Bauhin 1308
The Colon 1309
The Ascending Colon 1309
The Transverse Colon 1309
The Descending Colon 1309
The Sigmoid Flexure, Pelvic Colon or Sigmoid Colon 1311
The Rectum 1312
The Common Anal Canal 1315
Structure of the Large Intestine . . . 1316
Movements and Innervations of the Intestines 1322
Surface Form of the Intestines 1323
Surgical Anatomy of the Intestines . . 1324

The Liver.

The Superior Area or Surface 1327
The Anterior Area or Surface 1327
The Lateral or Right Area or Surface . . 1329
The Under or Visceral Area or Surface . 1329
The Posterior Area or Surface 1329
Fissures of the Liver 1331
Lobes of the Liver 1332
Supports and Movability of the Liver . . 1334
Abnormalities of the Liver 1335
Structure of the Liver 1337
The Excretory Apparatus of the Liver . 1342
The Hepatic Duct 1342
The Gall-bladder 1342
The Cystic Duct 1344
Surface Relations of the Liver 1346
Surgical Anatomy of the Liver 1346

The Pancreas.

Dissection 1348
The Right Extremity or Head of the Pancreas 1348
The Neck of the Pancreas 1350
The Body and Tail of the Pancreas . . 1350
Structure of the Pancreas 1352
Surface Form 1353
Surgical Anatomy 1353

The Spleen.

Surface of the Spleen 1354
Supports and Movability of the Spleen . 1356
Surface Form 1359
Surgical Anatomy 1359

ORGANS OF VOICE AND RESPIRATION.

THE LARYNX.

The Cartilages of the Larynx 1362
The Thyroid Cartilage 1362
The Cricoid Cartilage 1363
The Arytenoid Cartilages 1364
The Cornicula Laryngis or Cartilages of Santorini 1365
The Cuneiform Cartilages or Cartilages of Wrisberg 1365
The Epiglottis or the Cartilage of Epiglottis 1365
Structure of the Larynx 1365
Interior of the Larynx 1368

THE TRACHEA AND BRONCHI.

Relations 1376
The Right Bronchus 1376
The Left Bronchus 1378
Structure of the Trachea 1378
Surface Form of Larynx 1380
Surgical Anatomy of Larynx and Trachea . 1381

THE PLEURÆ.

Reflections of the Pleura 1384
Structure of the Pleura 1387
Surgical Anatomy 1387

THE MEDIASTINAL SPACE, INTERPLEURAL SPACE OR MEDIASTINUM.

The Superior Mediastinum 1388
The Anterior Mediastinum 1389
The Middle Mediastinum 1389
The Posterior Mediastinum 1389

THE LUNGS.

Apex of the Lungs 1390
Base of the Lungs 1391
Surfaces of the Lungs 1391
Borders of the Lungs 1392
Lobes of the Lungs 1392

PAGE

The Root of the Lung 1394
The Fœtal Lung 1394
Structure of the Lung 1394
The Bronchus 1395
Changes in the Structure of the Bronchi in the Lungs 1395
Surface Form of the Lungs 1397
Surgical Anatomy of the Lungs 1397

THE DUCTLESS GLANDS.

THE THYROID BODY OR GLAND.

Accessory Thyroids 1403
Structure of the Thyroid 1403
Surgical Anatomy 1405
Parathyroids 1406
Structure of 1406

THE THYMUS GLAND.

Structure of the Thymus Gland . . . 1408

THE CAROTID GLAND OR CAROTID BODY.

Surgical Anatomy 1409

THE COCCYGEAL GLAND OR COCCYGEAL BODY 1410

THE URINARY ORGANS.

THE KIDNEYS.

Surfaces of the Kidneys 1412
Borders of the Kidneys 1415
General Structure of the Kdney . . . 1415
Surface Form 1425
Surgical Anatomy 1425

THE URETER.

The Ureter Proper 1426
Relations of the Ureter 1427
Structure of the Ureter 1427
Surgical Anatomy 1428

THE SUPRARENAL CAPSULE OR GLAND.

Relations of the Suprarenal Capsule . 1428
Accessory Suprarenal Glands 1430
Structure of Suprarenal Glands . . . 1430

THE CAVITY OF THE PELVIS.

Boundaries 1431
Contents 1431

The Urinary Bladder.

Surfaces 1433
The Fundus or Base 1433
The Summit or Apex 1435
The Urachus or Middle Umbilical Ligament 1435
Structure of the Bladder 1437
Objects Seen on the Inner Surface of Bladder 1438
Surface Form 1440
Surgical Anatomy 1440

The Male Urethra.

The First or Prostatic Portion 1441
The Second, Muscular or Membranous Portion 1442
The Third, Penile, Pendulous, Cavernous or Spongy Portion 1443
Structure of Male Urethra 1444
Surgical Anatomy 1445

The Female Bladder and Urethra.

The Female Urethra 1446
Structure 1446

THE MALE ORGANS OF GENERATION.

THE PROSTATE GLAND.

The Base 1451
The Apex 1451
Surfaces 1451
The Lateral Lobes 1451
The So-called Middle Lobe 1451
Structure 1452
Surgical Anatomy 1452

COWPER'S GLANDS.

Structure 1453

THE PENIS.

The Root 1454
The Body of the Penis 1455
Structure of the Penis 1455
Surgical Anatomy 1460

THE TESTICLES AND THEIR COVERINGS.

Descent of the Testis.

Surgical Anatomy 1462

The Coverings of the Testicle.

The Testicular Bag or Scrotum 1462
The Intercolumnar or Spermatic Fascia . 1463
The Cremasteric Fascia 1464
The Infundibuliform Fascia 1464
The Tunica Vaginalis 1465

The Spermatic Cord.

Structure 1466
Surgical Anatomy 1468

The Testicles.

Structure of the Testicle and Epididymis . 1471
Surgical Anatomy 1473

THE SEMINAL VESICLES.

The Ejaculatory Ducts 1476
Structure 1476

THE FEMALE ORGANS OF GENERATION.

EXTERNAL ORGANS.

The Mons Veneris 1477
The Large Lips or Labia Majora . . . 1477
The Small Lips, Nymphæ or Labia Minora 1478
The Clitoris 1479
The Vestibule 1481
The Orifice of the Urethra or the Meatus Urinarius 1481
The Hymen 1481
Glands of Bartholin 1482
The Vaginal Bulb or Bulb of the Vestibule 1483

PAGE

INTERNAL ORGANS.

The Vagina.

Relations 1484
Structure 1484

The Womb or Uterus.

The Fundus 1487
The Body of the Uterus 1487
The Neck or Cervix Uteri 1488
Folds and Ligaments 1489
The Cavity of the Uterus 1491
The Cavity of the Cervix or Cervical Canal 1491
Surgical Anatomy 1496

THE ADNEXA OR APPENDAGES OF UTERUS.

The Fallopian Tube.

Structure of the Fallopian Tube . . . 1498

PAGE

The Epo-ophoron, Parovarium or Organ of Rosenmüller 1499
The Paro-ophoron 1499

The Ovary.

Supports and Connections of the Ovary . 1500
Descent of the Ovary 1501
The Ovary at Different Ages . . . 1501
Structure 1501
Surgical Anatomy of the Appendages . 1503

The Mammary Gland.

Description of a Well-developed Breast . 1503
The Nipple 1504
Prolongation of Mammary Tissue . . . 1505
Structure of Mammary Gland and Nipple . 1505
Surgical Anatomy 1508
The Male Breast 1509
Surgical Anatomy 1509

THE SURGICAL ANATOMY OF INGUINAL AND FEMORAL HERNIA.

Dissection 1511

Inguinal Hernia.

Oblique Inguinal Hernia 1520
Congenital Hernia 1523
Infantile and Encysted Hernia . . 1523
Hernia into Funicular Process 1523
Direct Inguinal Hernia 1523

Femoral Hernia.

Varieties of Femoral Hernia 1534

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE PERINÆUM.

Dissection 1535

Ischio-rectal Region.

Dissection 1536

The Perinæum Proper in the Male.

Position of the Viscera at the Outlet of the Pelvis 1540
Surgical Anatomy 1541

The Female Perinæum.

The Pelvic Fascia 1544
The Obturator Fascia 1546
The Recto-vesical Fascia or the Visceral Layer of the Pelvic Fascia 1546

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE OF THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE FŒTUS 1547

INDEX 1549

DESCRIPTIVE AND SURGICAL ANATOMY.

OSTEOLOGY—THE SKELETON.

THE entire skeleton in the adult consists of 200 distinct bones. These are:

The spine or vertebral column (sacrum and coccyx included)	26
Cranium	8
Face	14
Hyoid bone, sternum, and ribs	26
Upper extremities	64
Lower extremities	62
	200

In this enumeration the patellæ are included as separate bones, but the smaller sesamoid bones and the ossicula auditūs are not reckoned. The teeth belong to the tegumentary system. Different anatomists make different computations as to the number of bones in the skeleton. Some describe the skeleton as containing 206 distinct bones, adding the ossicles of the ear to the previously stated number. By adding the epipteric bones, the sphenoidal turbinal bones, the sesamoid bones, and others, the number may be greatly augmented.

Bones are divisible, according to their shape, into four classes: *long*, *short*, *flat*, and *irregular*.

Long Bones.—The long bones are found in the limbs, where they form a system of levers, which sustain the weight of the trunk and confer the power of locomotion. A long bone consists of a shaft and two extremities. The **shaft** is a hollow cylinder, contracted and narrowed to afford greater space for the bellies of the muscles; the walls consist of dense, compact tissue of great thickness in the middle, but becoming thinner toward the extremities; the spongy tissue is scanty, and the bone is hollowed out in its interior to form the **medullary canal**. The **extremities** are generally somewhat expanded for greater convenience of mutual connection, for the purpose of articulation, and to afford a broad surface for muscular attachment. Here the bone is made up of spongy tissue with only a thin coating of compact substance. The long bones are not straight, but curved, the curve generally taking place in two directions, thus affording greater strength to the bone. The bones belonging to this class are the **clavicle, humerus, radius, ulna, femur, tibia, fibula, metacarpal** and **metatarsal** bones, and the **phalanges**.

Short Bones.—Where a part of the skeleton is intended for strength and compactness, and its motion is at the same time slight and limited, it is divided into a number of small pieces united together by ligaments, and the separate bones are short and compressed, such as the bones of the **carpus** and **tarsus**. These bones, in their structure, are spongy throughout, excepting at their surface, where

there is a thin crust of compact substance. The **patellæ** also, together with the other sesamoid bones, are by some regarded as short bones.

Flat Bones.—Where the principal requirement is either extensive protection or the provision of broad surfaces for muscular attachment, we find the osseous structure expanded into broad, flat plates, as is seen in the bones of the skull and the shoulder-blades. Flat bones are composed of two thin layers of compact tissue enclosing between them a variable quantity of cancellous tissue. In the cranial bones these layers of compact tissue are familiarly known as the **tables of the skull**; the outer table is thick and tough; the inner table is thinner, denser, and more brittle, and hence is termed the **vitreous table.** The intervening cancellous tissue is called the **diploe.** The flat bones are: the **occipital, parietal, frontal, nasal, lachrymal, vomer, scapula, os innominatum, sternum, ribs,** and **patella.**

Irregular Bones.—The irregular or mixed bones are such as, from their peculiar form, cannot be grouped under either of the preceding heads. Their structure is similar to that of other bones, consisting of a layer of compact tissue externally and of spongy, cancellous tissue within. The irregular bones are: the **vertebræ, sacrum, coccyx, temporal, sphenoid, ethmoid, malar, superior maxilla, inferior maxilla, palate, inferior turbinated,** and **hyoid.**

Surfaces of Bones.—If the surface of any bone is examined, certain eminences and depressions are seen, to which descriptive anatomists have given the following names.

These eminences and depressions are of two kinds: **articular** and **non-articular.** Well-marked examples of articular eminences are found in the heads of the humerus and femur and of articular depressions in the glenoid cavity of the scapula and the acetabulum. Non-articular eminences are designated according to their form. Thus a broad, rough, uneven elevation is called a **tuberosity**; a small, rough prominence, a **tubercle**; a sharp, slender, pointed eminence, a **spine**; a narrow, rough elevation, running some way along the surface, a **ridge, line,** or **crest.**

The non-articular depressions are also of very variable form, and are described as **fossæ, grooves, furrows, fissures, notches, sulci,** etc. These non-articular eminences and depressions may receive blood-vessels, nerves, tendons, ligaments, or portions of organs, or may serve to increase the extent of surface for the *attachment* of ligaments and muscles. They are usually well marked in proportion to the muscular development of the subject.

A prominent process projecting from the surface of a bone which it has never been separate from or movable upon is termed an **apophysis** (from *ἀπόφυσις*, an excrescence); but if such process is developed as a separate piece from the rest of the bone, to which it is afterward joined, it is termed an **epiphysis** (from *ἐπίφυσις*, an accretion). The main part of the bone, or shaft, which is formed from the primary centre of ossification, is termed the **diaphysis,** and is separated, during growth, from the epiphysis by a layer of cartilage, at which growth in length of the bone takes place. Some bones are hollow and contain **sinuses,** which are spaces for air. **Canals** or **foramina** are channels or openings in bone through which nerves or vessels pass.

Structure of Bone.—Bone is a highly specialized form of connective tissue. In reality, it is white fibrous tissue, calcified and structurally modified until it becomes osseous tissue. Bone is not simply a crude mass resulting from the calcification of cartilage or fibrous tissue; it is a distinct tissue, of a definite structure, the constituent parts of which are arranged symmetrically. Its structure varies somewhat in different vertebrates.[1]

[1] Arquitectura del Aparato de Sustentación en los Vertebrados. Por el Dr. Saturnino Garcia Hurtado. Our description applies to human bone.

There are two varieties of bone: **dense** or **compact bone** (*substantia compacta*), and **cancellous, loose,** or **spongy bone** (*substantia spongiosa*).

Compact Bone is dense, like ivory, and is always placed upon the exterior of bones. Even this apparently compact tissue is porous; it differs from cancellous bone in the greater density of its tissue and in the arrangement of its osseous plates into Haversian systems. Compact bone is surrounded by periosteum.

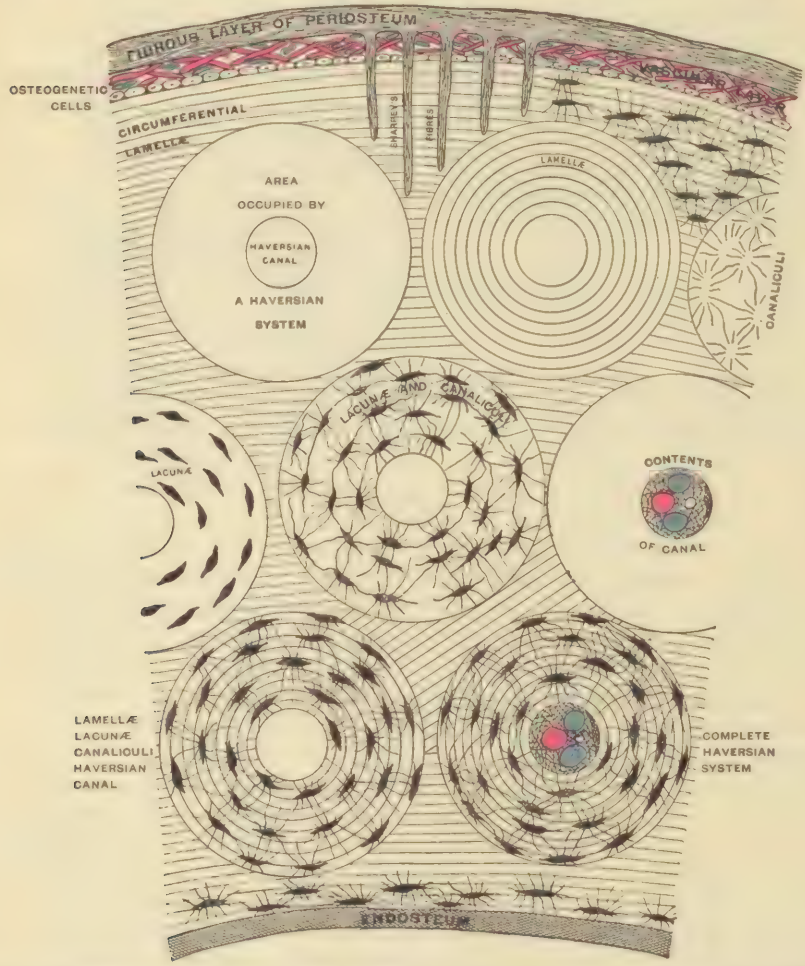


FIG. 1.—Diagram of the structure of osseous tissue. A small part of a transverse section of the shaft of a long bone is shown. At the uppermost part is the periosteum covering the outside of the bone; at the lowermost part is the endosteum lining the marrow-cavity. Between these is the compact tissue, consisting largely of a series of Haversian systems, each being circular in outline and perforated by a central canal. In the first one is shown only the area occupied by a system; in the second is seen the concentric arrangement of the lamellæ; and in the others, respectively, canaliculi; lacunæ; lacunæ and canaliculi; the contents of the canal, artery, vein, lymphatic and areolar tissue; lamellæ, lacunæ, and canaliculi; and, finally, all of the structures composing a complete system. Between the systems are circumferential and intermediate lamellæ, only a few of which are represented as lodging lacunæ, though it is to be understood that the lacunæ are in all parts. The periosteum is seen to be made up of a fibrous layer and a vascular layer, and to have upon its attached surface a stratum of cells. From the fibrous layer project inward the rivet-like fibres of Sharpey. (F. H. Gerrish.)

The outer portion of the wall of a long bone, the cortex of the head of a bone, and the outer and inner layers of a flat bone are composed of compact osseous tissue, which is the hardest substance in the body with the exception of dentine and enamel; it is tough and elastic, and much force is required to break it.

Cancellous Bone is found in the interior of bones. The name, which means **lattice-work,** indicates the structure, which consists of slender fibres and lamellæ joined to form a reticulum, the small meshes of which are marrow-spaces. The

spicules of cancellous bone contain lacunæ and canaliculi, but no Haversian systems. In some regions the inner portion of the wall of a long bone, about the marrow-cavity, is composed of cancellous bone. Toward each extremity of the shaft the amount of cancellous tissue increases, the marrow-cavity diminishes in size, and the cancellous tissue is arranged in lines that approach each other toward the extremity, like the sides of an arch, and form a support for the epiphysis (Fig. 131). In the epiphysis the bone-plates are, as a rule, at right angles to the plane of the articular surface (the lines of greatest pressure); and they are bound together or strengthened by other bone-fibres, which are usually in correspondence with the planes of the articulation (the lines of greatest tension) (Fig. 163). The nearer the bone-spicules are to the medullary cavity the stronger they are (Hurtado).

In the **flat** and the **irregular bones**, the cancellous tissue is between the layers of compact bone, and is called the **diploë**.

A **Short Bone** is composed chiefly of cancellous tissue, which is encased in a thin coat of compact substance (*substantia corticalis*).

A **Long Bone** consists of a **shaft**, or **diaphysis**, and two **extremities**, or **epiphyses**. The shaft is an osseous tube, the outer layer of which is compact, and the inner layer of which is cancellous. It surrounds the **medullary cavity** (*cavum medullare*), which, in the recent condition, contains the **medulla**, or **marrow** (*medulla ossium*), which substance enters into the nearest Haversian canals. This cavity is widest at the centre of the shaft, and narrows toward the ends, where it is encroached upon by the cancellous layer which lies within the compact layer.

There are two varieties of marrow: **Yellow marrow** (*medulla ossium flava*) is found in the medullary cavities of the shafts of the long bones. It is composed of a network of fibrous tissue carrying many blood-vessels, fat-cells, and a few large nucleated masses of protoplasm—the **true marrow-cells**, or **myelocytes**. The yellow color of the marrow is due to fat. Yellow marrow is derived from red marrow by an increase in fat and diminution in marrow elements; it plays no part in blood-formation. At the periphery of the marrow cavity the fibrous tissue of the network forms a firm, fibrous membrane lining the cavity. This represents an inner periosteum, and is called the **endosteum**.

Red marrow (*medulla ossium rubra*) is found in the diploë of the cranial bones, in the cancellous tissue of the vertebræ, ribs, and sternum, and in the articular ends of the long bones. Red marrow contains much less fat and is less solid than yellow marrow. It consists of a delicate network of connective tissue, supporting a dense capillary plexus; some fat; and numerous cellular elements. The delicate fibrous membrane surrounding red marrow is called the **endosteum**. The cellular elements of red marrow (Fig. 2) comprise, first, **marrow-cells**, or **myelocytes**, which are protoplasmic masses, capable of amœboid movements, and containing large nuclei. They are not found in normal blood, but are abundant in leukæmia; second, small, nucleated, reddish cells called **erythroblasts**, resembling the nucleated red cells of the blood of the embryo, and eventually by the loss of their nuclei becoming red blood-corpuscles; third, non-nucleated red blood-corpuscles; fourth, giant-cells containing one or more nuclei. They are varieties of *leukocytes*. The leukocyte group also contains the **osteoclasts**, **eosinophiles**, and **mast-cells**.

Gelatinous or **mucoid marrow** is formed by the absorption of the fat and the cellular elements of yellow marrow, and by the serous infiltration of the intercellular substance. It is produced by starvation, old age, and certain pathological conditions.

Each extremity of a long bone is separated from the shaft by a layer of cartilage known as the **cambium layer**, the **epiphysial cartilage**, or the **epiphysial disk** (Fig. 8). Growth from the cartilages causes an increase in the length of the bone. The cartilages ossify during development, and effect a bony union

between the shaft and the head of the bone. Certain bony processes are separated from the bone by cartilage, which later ossifies.

A **Flat Bone** is composed of two layers of compact bone with a layer of cancellous bone (the diploë) interposed. There is no general marrow-cavity; but the spaces between the bone-spicules intercommunicate and contain marrow.

FIG. 2.—Cells of red marrow of the guinea-pig. *a-d.* Myelo-plaques. *e-i.* Marrow-cells proper. *j-t.* Erythroblasts—some in process of division. (Schäfer.)

The **Periosteum** is a fibrous membrane adhering to the surface of the bone in nearly every part except at the cartilage-covered extremities. When strong tendons or ligaments are attached to the bone, the periosteum is incorporated with them. By means of the periosteum many vessels reach and enter the hard bone through Volkmann's canals. This is shown by stripping the periosteum from the surface of living bone, when small bleeding points are seen, each of which marks the entrance of a vessel from the periosteum. It thus becomes obvious that the loosening of the periosteum, by depriving a portion of the bone of its nourishment, may produce necrosis. The membrane is firmly attached to the bone by trabeculæ of fibrous tissue, which penetrate the bone at right angles to its surface, and carry blood-vessels. These trabeculæ are called the **fibres of Sharpey** (Fig. 3). They do not directly enter the Haversian systems, but only the circumferential and intermediate lamellæ—parts that are formed by periosteal action. Prolongations from some of these vessels reach the Haversian canals, and even the bone-marrow. In the extremities of a long bone, vessels from the periosteum penetrate the layer of compact bone and reach the cancellous tissue. In the newborn and in the young the periosteum is composed of three layers: an **outer** or **fibrous layer,** containing some blood-vessels, and composed of bundles of white fibrous tissue; a **middle** or **fibro-elastic layer,** containing some blood-vessels, fibrous tissue, and much elastic tissue; and an **inner** or **osteogenetic layer,** which is very vascular and contains numerous cells, which are converted into osteoblasts. These are the cells that form osseous tissue.

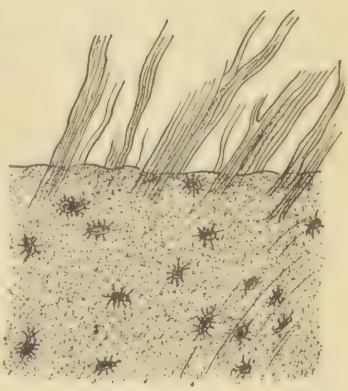


FIG. 3.—Fibres of Sharpey from the parietal bone (adult man) isolated by dissociation. (After Kölliker.)

Transverse Section of Compact Bone (Figs. 1, 4, and 6).—As previously stated, dense bone differs from cancellous bone in the fact that the bone-plates of the former are arranged in Haversian systems, so named from the anatomist Havers. A Haversian system consists of a central canal, running in a more or less longitudinal or slightly curved or spiral direction and called the **Haversian canal**; from five to ten bone-plates, or lamellæ, arranged concentrically around the canal; gaps, called **lacunæ**, between the lamellæ, which spaces contain bone-corpuscles; minute channels, or canaliculi, radiating from the lacunæ and passing through the lamellæ—some reaching other lacunæ, some reaching the Haversian canal, and others passing to adjacent Haversian systems. The canaliculi contain processes from the bone-corpuscle. From a study of transverse sections it would be thought that the lamellæ always run longitudinally in straight lines or in curves determined by pressure and tension; but Prof. Dixon proved that in the human femur many of the bone-plates are arranged spirally, and thus increased strength is obtained. The same is probably true of other bones.

FIG. 4.—Transverse section of compact tissue of bone. Magnified about 150 diameters. (Sharpey.)

There are four varieties of lamellæ: (1) the **periosteal, peripheral, superficial,** or **external**; (2) the **Haversian,** or **concentric**; (3) the **interstitial, ground,** or **intermediate**; and (4) the **perimedullary,** or **internal.** The periosteal lamellæ are sometimes called **primary**, as they are the first to appear, and are formed by the direct transformation of the inner layer of the periosteum into bone. In the shaft of a long bone there are several layers of periosteal lamellæ, but no one layer is extensive enough to surround the bone completely.

In the outer surface of the layer of periosteal lamellæ depressions exist that are known as **Howship's foveolæ,** or **lacunæ.** These depressions are made by large cells, called **osteoclasts,** which destroy bone. There are no Haversian canals in this outer layer, but there are some large channels that convey blood-vessels into the bone, and are known as **Volkmann's canals.** Many small arteries from the periosteum enter the periphery of the shaft, and also of the epiphyses. A large trunk enters the shaft by the **nutrient foramen** (*foramen nutricius*), pass along the **nutrient canal** (*canalis nutricius*), and reaches the medullary canal. This vessel is called the **nutrient artery.**

The Haversian or concentric lamellæ are circular layers arranged around a central space, or canal, known as the Haversian canal. There is no fixed number of these layers, there being usually from five to ten. The layers of each system are parallel to one another, but the layers of different systems cross at various

angles. Between these layers are small, irregular spaces, called **lacunæ**; and extending radially out from the lacunæ and piercing the various lamellæ are delicate canals, known as **canaliculi**, which connect the lacunæ. The lacuna nearest to the Haversian canal communicates with it by means of canaliculi; and canaliculi also communicate with other Haversian systems. The Haversian canal contains blood-vessels—an artery or a vein, or both an artery and a vein—and a nerve. The vessel in the canal is covered with endothelial cells, and the canal itself is lined with them. The space thus formed is a lymph-space, and into these lymph-spaces the canaliculi empty. Beneath the periosteum and at the periphery of the medullary cavity there are lymph-spaces that are in direct communication with the canaliculi of the Haversian systems. In each lacuna is a bone-cell—a corpuscle that almost fills the space, and sends arms, or processes, out into the canaliculi (Fig. 5). This bone-cell is an **osteoblast**.

The interstitial or intermediate lamellæ occupy the spaces between the Haversian systems. They represent the remains of peripheral lamellæ. They are usually short and very irregular, but possess lacunæ and canaliculi, which are arranged as in the Haversian systems. The perimedullary lamellæ are irregular and few in number.

FIG. 5.—Nucleated bone-cells and their processes, contained in the bone-lacunæ and their canaliculi, respectively. From a section through the vertebra of an adult mouse. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

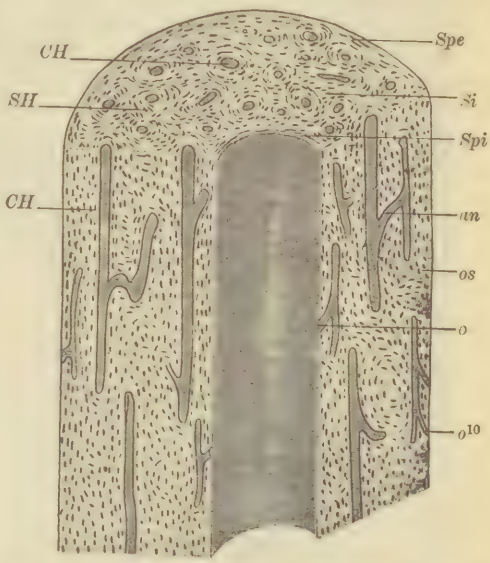


FIG. 6.—Combined transverse and longitudinal section of compact bone. *CH.* Longitudinal Haversian canal and anastomosing canals. *o.* Communicating with medullary cavity. *Si.* Intermediate systems. *Spe.* Circumferential lamellæ. *Spi.* Perimedullary lamellæ. *os.* Osteoblasts. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **osteoblasts** are irregular, flattened, stellate masses of protoplasm, possessing a number of processes. The protoplasm is granular, and each cell contains a large and distinct nucleus. Osteoblasts are met with in the deeper layer of the periosteum, in the endosteum, and in the lacunæ.

Longitudinal Section of Compact Bone (Figs. 6 and 7).—We do not see concentric rings, as in a transverse section, but rows of lacunæ parallel to the course of the Haversian canals—and these canals appear like half-tubes instead of circular spaces. The tubes are seen to branch and communicate, so that each separate Haversian canal runs only a short distance. In other respects the structure closely resembles that of a transverse section.

Lamellæ of Cancellous Bone.—There are no Haversian canals, and canaliculi open into the medullary spaces, which act as do the Haversian canals in compact bone.

Blood-vessels of Bone.—Small arteries derived from the periosteum enter the minute orifices of the compact bone (Volkmann's canals) and reach the

Haversian canals of the bony substance. Prolongations from these vessels reach the marrow and communicate with branches from the nutrient artery. The cancellous tissue is supplied by fewer but larger vessels, which are derived from the periosteum, and which often penetrate the cortex of compact bone and ramify in the cavities of the spongy tissue.

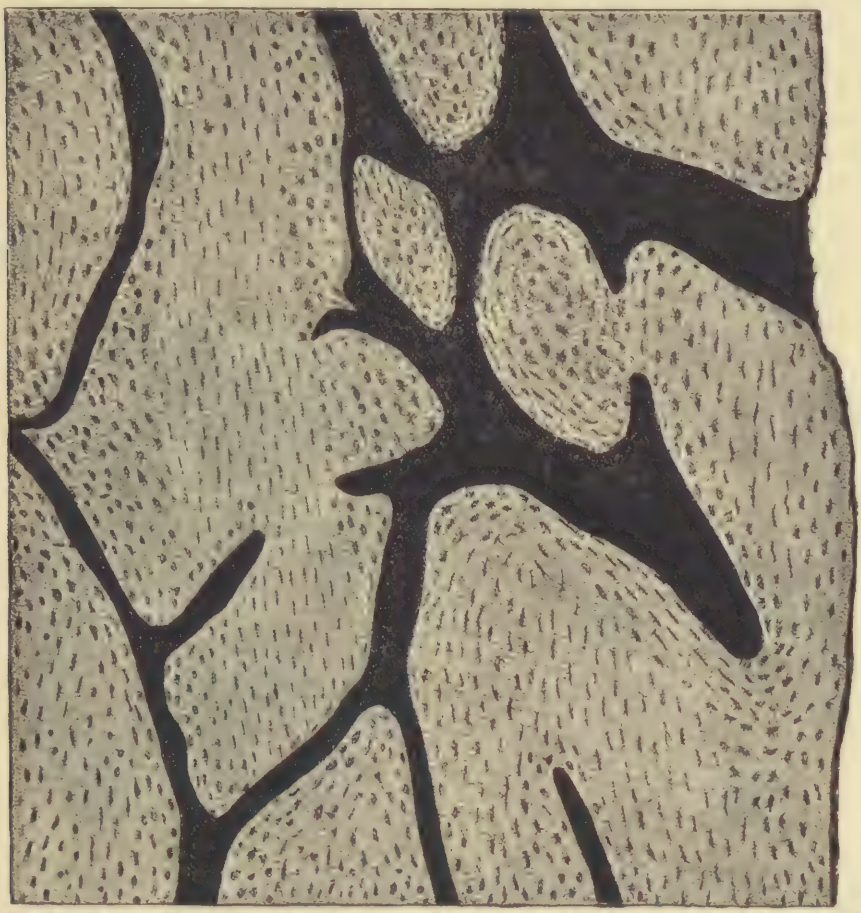


FIG. 7. From a ground longitudinal section through the diaphysis of the human ulna. All canals are filled with pigment, which is here black. Haversian canals are cut longitudinally. × 90. (Szymonowicz.)

The medullary canal of a long bone is supplied by a large artery (sometimes more than one) called the **nutrient artery**. It enters the bone by the nutrient foramen, which is usually near the centre of the shaft, runs in an oblique canal through the compact structure, giving off branches to this structure, and enters the medullary cavity, and sends branches upward and downward. These branches communicate with branches from the periosteal vessels and subdivide into capillaries, which pass into comparatively large vessels. The walls of the vessels are very thin, and in some places deficient; the venous blood enters the spaces of the red marrow, and the current becomes extremely slow. Small veins collect the venous blood and emerge from the bone.

In the humerus the nutrient canal is directed toward the elbow-joint; in the radius and the ulna the nutrient canals are directed toward the elbow-joint; in the femur, the canal is directed toward the hip-joint; and in the tibia and the fibula, the canals are directed toward the ankle-joint. As Professor Cunningham states it: "In the upper limb the vessels flow toward the elbow; while in the

lower limb they pass from the knee." The red marrow of the extremities and the medulla of the entire shaft, and the bone of the shaft, except the circumferential lamellæ, are supplied by the nutrient artery. The circumferential lamellæ, wholly, and the cancellous tissue of the extremities, in part, and the medulla of the shaft to a very small extent are supplied by vessels from the periosteum. The extremities of a bone also receive articular arteries. In most of the flat bones, and in some of the short bones, one or more large apertures exist for the passage of blood-vessels to the central parts of the bone.

Veins emerge from the long bones in three places: 1. One or two large veins accompany the nutrient artery. 2. Numerous veins emerge at the articular extremities. 3. Many small veins arise in and emerge from compact substance. The latter two classes do not accompany arteries. The veins in the marrow and in the bone are devoid of valves; but immediately after emerging from the bone they have numerous valves.

In the flat cranial bones the veins are numerous and large; as seen in diploic canals, the walls of which are composed of osseous tissue, perforated, here and there, for branches from adjacent cancelli. In all cancellous tissue the venous channels are similarly arranged, and the veins have very thin coats and are without valves. When the bone is divided, the vessels remain open; they do not retract into their bony canals, and readily absorb any septic matter that may be present.

The **lymphatics** are chiefly periosteal; but some enter the bone, along with the vessels. Cruikshank has traced them into the substance of the bone and Klein has described them as running in the Haversian canals. The perivascular spaces of the Haversian canals are lymph-spaces.

Nerves are partly medullated and partly non-medullated, are distributed freely to the periosteum, and some of the fibres terminate in this structure as Pacinian corpuscles. Nerves accompany the nutrient arteries into the interior of the bone, and also reach the marrow from the periosteum by way of Volkmann's canals and the Haversian canals. They certainly supply the arterial coats. It is not, as yet, determined whether nerves do or do not terminate in bone-tissue. Ströh maintains that occasionally they terminate in bone-corpuscles. According to Kölliker nerves are most numerous in the articular extremities of the long bones, in the vertebræ, and the large flat bones.

Chemical Composition of Bone.—Bone consists of an animal and an earthy part intimately combined.

The animal part may be obtained by immersing the bone for a considerable time in dilute mineral acid, after which process the bone comes out exactly the same shape as before, but perfectly flexible, so that a long bone (one of the ribs, for example) can easily be tied into a knot. If now a transverse section is made, the same general arrangement of the Haversian canals, lamellæ, lacunæ, and canaliculi is seen, though not so plainly, as in the ordinary section.

The earthy part may be obtained separate by calcination, by which the animal matter is completely burned out. The bone will still retain its original form, but it will be white and brittle, will have lost about one-third of its original weight, and will crumble with the slightest force. The earthy matter confers on bone its hardness and rigidity, and the animal matter its tenacity.

The mineral matter consists of phosphate, carbonate, and fluoride of calcium, chloride of sodium, and phosphate of magnesium.

The animal basis is largely composed of **ossein**, or **fat collagen**. When boiled with water, especially under pressure, fat collagen is almost entirely resolved into gelatin.

The organic matter of bone forms about *one-third;* the inorganic matter, *two-thirds*. The exact composition, according to Professor Cunningham, is, of

organic matter, 31.04 parts; of inorganic matter, 68.97 parts. Of the earthy matter, five-sixths is calcium phosphate. Even after the removal of all the marrow a small percentage of fat is still found in bone.

Some of the diseases to which bones are liable mainly depend on the disproportion between the two constituents of bone. Thus in the disease called *rickets*, so common in the children of the poor, the bones become bent and curved, either from the superincumbent weight of the body or under the action of certain muscles. This depends upon some defect of nutrition by which bone becomes deprived of its normal proportion of earthy matter, while the animal matter is of unhealthy quality. In the vertebræ of a rickety subject Bostock found in 100 parts 79.75 animal and 20.25 earthy matter. *Osteomalacia* is a disease of adults characterized by the decalcification of existing bone and by the failure in calcification of new osteoid material. In this disease the bone shows a diminution in inorganic and an increase in organic material. *Senile atrophy* renders bones porous and brittle, and portions of bone may actually be absorbed, as is seen in the disappearance of the alveolæ in old age. In senile atrophy of the calvaria the outer table becomes very thin, porous, and brittle, and the inner table often becomes rough and thicker from the formation of new bone. In senile atrophy of a long bone there is absorption of bone from the surface by osteoclasts in Howship's lacunæ, and absorption of the inner surface. The bone becomes porous and the medulla becomes more fatty. This change is not, as was so long taught, a decrease in organic matter and an increase in mineral matter, but is an actual alteration in the structure of the bone.

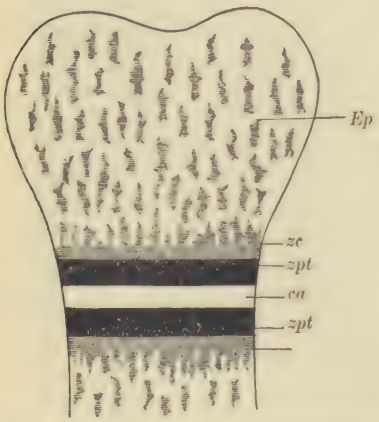


FIG. 8. Schematic diagram, showing epiphysis and diaphysis and line of ossification. *Ep.* Epiphysis of endochondral bone. *zpt.* Zone of proliferation. *zc.* Zone of calcification. *ca.* Cartilage. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Ossification and Growth of Bone.—For the early development of the skeleton the reader is referred to text-books on embryology. Embryonic connective-tissue cells of the mesoblast develop membrane. Membrane may become bone directly or cartilage may be deposited, which cartilage by the process of ossification is formed into bone. The tissue which is eventually to become bone contains cellular elements which evolve into **osteoblasts**, or bone-forming cells. Osteoblasts exist in the connective tissues which become bone by intramembranous ossification, and in the deeper layers of the tissue called perichondrium which invests cartilage and which becomes the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum. In view of the fact that in the fœtal skeleton some bones are preceded by membrane (parietal bones, frontal bone, upper part of tabular surface of occipital bone, most of bones of the face), and others are preceded by rods of cartilage (the long bones), two kinds of ossification are described—viz., the **intramembranous** and the **intracartilaginous**. Professor Cunningham says all true bone may be correctly regarded as of membranous origin, though its appearance is preceded in some instances by the deposition of cartilage; in this case calcification of the cartilage is an essential stage in the process of bone formation, but the ultimate conversion into true bone, with characteristic Haversian systems, leads to the absorption and disappearance of this primitive calcified cartilage. Intramembranous ossification forms **membrane bones**, that is, forms bone directly from fibrous tissue, there being no intermediate cartilaginous stage.

Intracartilaginous ossification consists in the ossification of cartilage.

Intramembranous Ossification.—In the case of bones which are developed in membrane no cartilaginous mould precedes the appearance of the bone-tissue. The membrane, which occupies the place of the future bone, is of the nature of connective tissue, and ultimately forms the periosteum. At this stage it is seen to be composed of fibres and granular cells in a matrix. The outer portion is more fibrous, while internally the cells or osteoblasts predominate; the whole tissue is richly supplied with blood-vessels. At the outset of the process of bone-formation a little network of bony spiculæ is first noticed radiating from the point or centre of ossification. When these rays of growing bone are examined with a microscope, they are found to consist at their growing point of a network of fine, clear fibres and granular corpuscles, with an intervening ground substance (Fig. 9). The fibres are termed **osteogenetic fibres**, and are made up of fine fibrils

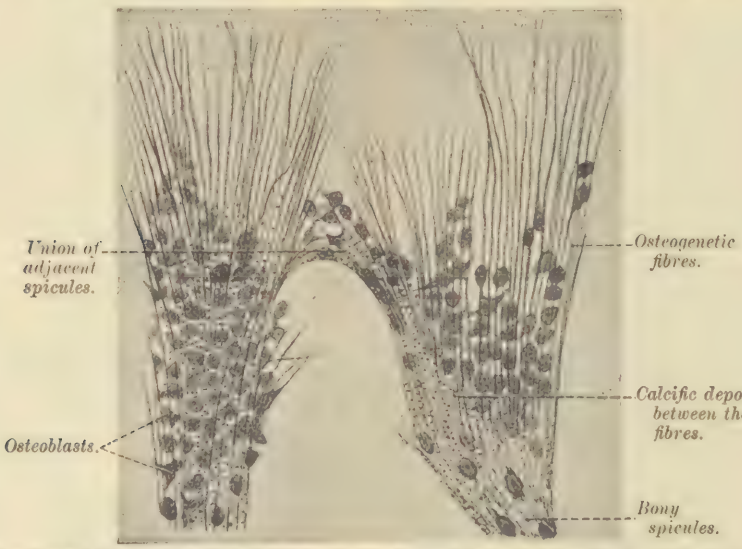


FIG. 9.—Part of the growing edge of the developing parietal bone of a fœtal cat. (After J. Lawrence.)

differing little from those of white fibrous tissue. Like them, they are probably deposited in the matrix through the influence of the cells—in this case the osteoblasts. The osteogenetic fibres soon assume a dark and granular appearance from the deposition of calcareous granules in the fibres and in the intervening matrix, and as they calcify they are found to enclose some of the granular corpuscles or osteoblasts. By the fusion of the calcareous granules the bony tissue again assumes a more transparent appearance, but the fibres are no longer so distinctly seen. The involved osteoblasts form the corpuscles of the future bone, the spaces in which they are enclosed constituting the lacunæ. As the osteogenetic fibres grow out to the periphery they continue to calcify, and give rise to fresh bone-spicules. Thus a network of bone is formed, the meshes of which contain the blood-vessels and a delicate connective tissue crowded with osteoblasts. The bony trabeculæ thicken by the addition of fresh layers of bone formed by the osteoblasts on their surface, and the meshes are correspondingly encroached upon. Subsequently successive layers of bony tissue are deposited under the periosteum and around the larger vascular channels, which become the Haversian canals, so that the bone increases much in thickness.

Intracartilaginous Ossification.—Just before ossification begins the bone is entirely cartilaginous, and in the long bone, which may be taken as an example, the process commences in the centre and proceeds toward the extremities, which for some time remain cartilaginous. Subsequently a similar process commences in one

or more places in those extremities and gradually extends through them. The extremities do not, however, become joined to the shaft by bony tissue until growth has ceased, but are attached to it by a layer of cartilaginous tissue termed the **epiphysial cartilage** (Fig. 8).

The first step in the ossification of the cartilage is that the cartilage-cells, at the point where ossification is commencing and which is termed a **centre of ossification**, enlarge and arrange themselves in rows (Fig. 10). The matrix in which they are embedded increases in quantity, so that the cells become further separated from each other. A deposit of calcareous material now takes place in this matrix,

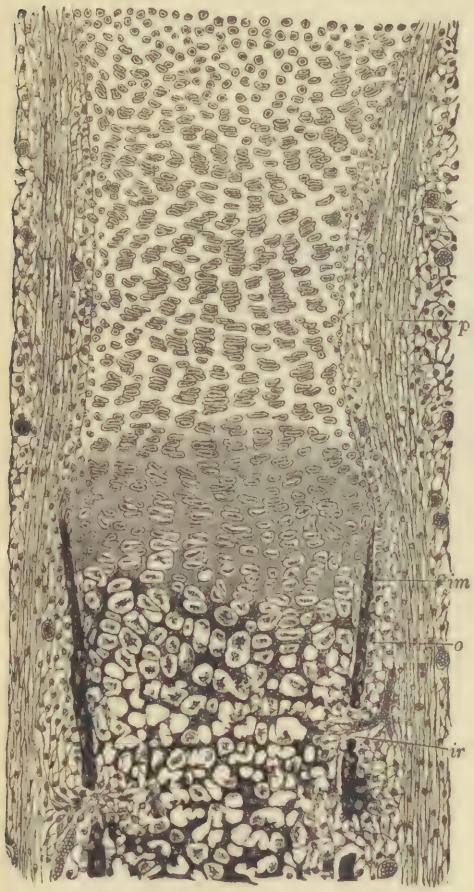


FIG. 10.—Section of fœtal bone of cat. *ir*. Irruption of the subperiosteal tissue. *p*. Fibrous layer of the periosteum. *o*. Layer of osteoblasts. *im*. Subperiosteal bony deposit. (From Quain's Anatomy, E. A. Schäfer.)

FIG. 11.—Part of a longitudinal section of the developing femur of a rabbit. *a*. Flattened cartilage-cells. *b*. Enlarged cartilage-cells. *c*, *d*. Newly formed bone. *e*. Osteoblasts. *f*. Giant-cells or osteoclasts. *g*, *h*. Shrunken cartilage-cells. (From Atlas of Histology, Klein and Noble Smith.)

between the rows of cells, so that they become separated from each other by longitudinal columns of calcified matrix, presenting a granular and opaque appearance. Here and there the matrix between two cells of the same row also becomes calcified, and transverse bars of calcified substance stretch across from one calcareous column to another. Thus there are longitudinal groups of the cartilage-cells enclosed in oblong cavities, the walls of which are formed of calcified matrix, which cuts off all nutrition from the cells, and they, in consequence, waste, leaving spaces called the **primary areolæ** (Sharpey).

At the same time that this process is going on in the centre of the solid bar of cartilage of which the fœtal bone consists, certain changes are taking place on

its surface. This is covered by a very vascular membrane, the **perichondrium**, entirely similar to the embryonic connective tissue already described as constituting the basis of membrane-bone, on the inner surface of which, that is to say, on the surface in contact with the cartilage, are gathered the formative cells, the **osteoblasts**. By the agency of these cells a thin layer of bony tissue is being formed between the perichondrium and the cartilage, by the *intramembranous* mode of ossification just described. There are, then, in this first stage of ossification, two processes going on simultaneously: in the centre of the cartilage the formation of a number of oblong spaces, formed of calcified matrix and containing the withered cartilage-cells, and on the surface of the cartilage the formation of a layer of true membrane-bone. The second stage consists in the prolongation into the cartilage of processes of the deeper or osteogenetic layer of the perichondrium, which has now become periosteum (Fig. 10, *ir*). The processes consist of blood-vessels and cells—**osteoblasts**, or **bone-formers**, and **osteoclasts**, or **bone-destroyers**. The latter are similar to the giant-cells (myelo-plaques) found in marrow, and they excavate passages through

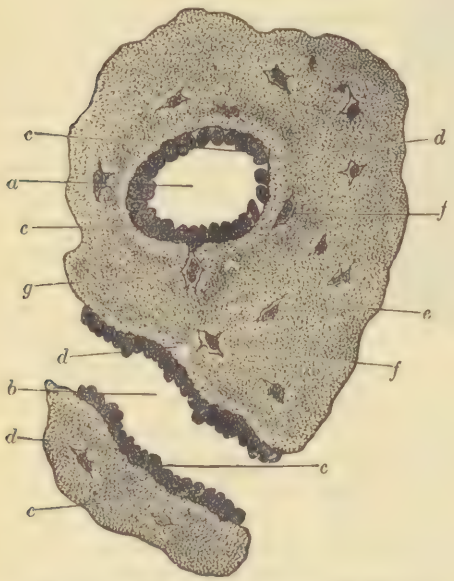


FIG. 12.—Transverse section from the femur of a human embryo about eleven weeks old. *a*. A medullary sinus cut transversely, and *b*, another, longitudinally. *c*. Osteoblasts. *d*. Newly formed osseous substance of a lighter color. *e*. That of greater age. *f*. Lacunæ with their cells. *g*. A cell still united to an osteoblast.

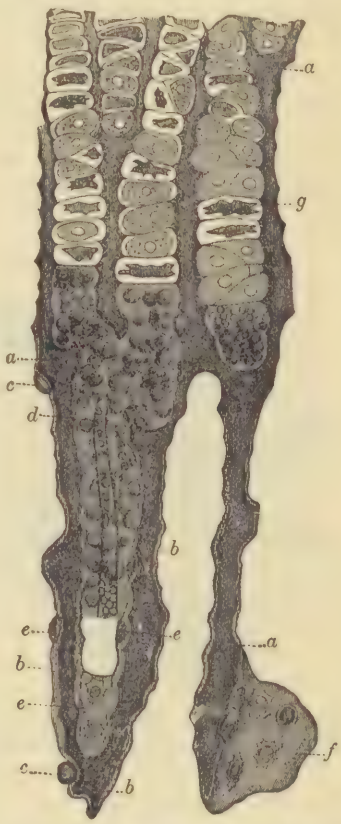


FIG. 13.—Vertical section from the edge of the ossifying portion of the diaphysis of a metatarsal bone from a fœtal calf. *a*. Ground-mass of the cartilage. *b*. Of the bone. *c*. Newly formed bone-cells in profile, more or less embedded in intercellular substance. *d*. Medullary canal in process of formation, with vessels and medullary cells. *e, f*. Bone-cells on their broad aspect. *g*. Cartilage-capsules arranged in rows, and partly with shrunken cell-bodies. (After Müller.)

the new-formed bony layer by absorption, and pass through it into the calcified matrix (Fig. 10). Wherever these processes come in contact with the calcified walls of the primary areolæ they absorb it, and thus cause a fusion of the original cavities and the formation of larger spaces, which are termed the **secondary areolæ** (Sharpey), or **medullary spaces** (Müller). In these secondary spaces the original cartilage-cells, having disappeared, become filled with embryonic marrow, consisting of osteoblasts and vessels, and derived in

the manner described above, from the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum (Fig. 11).

Thus far there has been traced the formation of enlarged spaces (secondary areolæ), the perforated walls of which are still formed by calcified cartilage-matrix, containing an embryonic marrow, derived from the processes sent in from the osteogenetic layer of the periosteum, and consisting of blood-vessels and round-cells, osteoblasts (Fig. 11). The walls of these secondary areolæ are at this time of only inconsiderable thickness, but they become thickened by the deposition of layers of new bone on their interior. This process takes place in the following manner: Some of the osteoblasts of the embryonic marrow, after undergoing rapid division, arrange themselves as an epithelioid layer on the surface of the wall of the space (Fig. 12). This layer of osteoblasts form a bony stratum, and thus the wall of the space becomes gradually covered with a layer of true osseous substance. On this a second layer of osteoblasts arrange themselves, and in their turn form an osseous layer. By the repetition of this process the original cavity becomes very much reduced in size, and at last only remains as a small circular hole in the centre, containing the remains of the embryonic marrow—that is, a blood-vessel and a few osteoblasts. This small cavity constitutes the Haversian canal of the perfectly ossified bone. The successive layers of osseous matter which have been laid down and which encircle this central canal constitute the lamellæ of which, as we have seen, each Haversian system is made up. As the successive layers of osteoblasts form osseous tissue, certain of the osteoblastic cells remain included between the various bony layers. These persist as the corpuscles of the future bone, the spaces enclosing them forming the lacunæ (Figs. 12 and 14). The **canaliculi**, at first extremely short, are supposed to be extended by absorption, so as to meet those of neighboring lacunæ.

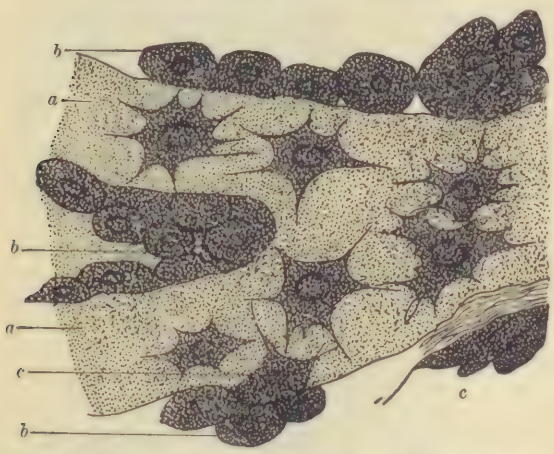


FIG. 14.—Osteoblasts from the parietal bone of a human embryo thirteen weeks old. *a*. Bony septa with the cells of the lacunæ. *b*. Layers of osteoblasts. *c*. The latter in transition to bone-corpuscles. (After Gegenbauer.)

Such are the changes which may be observed at one particular point, the centre of ossification. While they have been going on here a similar process has been set up in the surrounding parts and has been gradually proceeding toward the end of the shaft, so that in the ossifying bone all the changes described above may be seen in different parts, from the true bone in the centre of the shaft to the hyaline cartilage at the extremities. The bone thus formed differs from the bone of the adult in being more spongy and less regularly lamellated.

Thus far, then, we have followed the steps of a process by which a solid bony mass is produced, having vessels running into it from the periosteum, Haversian canals in which those vessels run, medullary spaces filled with fœtal marrow, lacunæ with their contained bone-cells, and canaliculi growing out of these lacunæ.

This process of ossification, however, is not the origin of the whole of the skeleton, for even in those bones in which the ossification proceeds in a great measure from a single centre, situated in the cartilaginous shaft of a long bone, a considerable part of the original bone is formed by intramembranous ossification

beneath the perichondrium or periosteum; so that the girth of the bone is increased by bony deposit from the deeper layer of this membrane. The shaft of the bone is at first solid, but a tube is hollowed out in it by absorption around the vessels passing into it, which becomes the medullary canal. This absorption is supposed to be brought about by large "giant-cells," the so-called osteoclasts of Kölliker (Fig. 11). They vary in shape and size, and are known by containing a large number of clear nuclei, sometimes as many as twenty. The occurrence of similar cells in some tumors of bones has led to such tumors being denominated "myeloid."

As more and more bone is removed by this process of absorption from the interior of the bone to form the medullary canal, so more and more bone is deposited on the exterior from the periosteum, until at length the bone has attained the shape and size which it is destined to retain during adult life. As the ossification of the cartilaginous shaft extends toward the articular ends it carries with it, as it were, a layer of cartilage, or the cartilage grows as it ossifies, and thus the bone is increased in length. During this period of growth the articular end, or epiphysis, remains for some time entirely cartilaginous; then a bony centre appears in it, and it commences the same process of intracartilaginous ossification; but this process never extends to any great distance. The epiphyses remain separated from the shaft by a narrow cartilaginous layer for a definite time (Fig. 8). This layer ultimately ossifies, the distinction between shaft and epiphysis is obliterated, and the bone assumes its completed form and shape. The same remarks also apply to the processes of bone which are separately ossified, such as the trochanters of the femur. The bones, having been formed, continue to grow until the body has acquired its full stature. They increase in length by ossification continuing to extend in the epiphysial cartilage, which goes on growing in advance of the ossifying process. They increase in circumference by deposition of new bone, from the deeper layer of the periosteum, on their external surface, and at the same time an absorption takes place within, by which the medullary cavity is increased.

The medullary spaces which characterize the cancellous tissue are produced by the absorption of the original fœtal bone in the same way as the original medullary canal is formed. The distinction between the cancellous and compact tissue appears to depend essentially upon the extent to which this process of absorption has been carried; and we may perhaps remind the reader that in morbid states of the bone inflammatory absorption produces exactly the same change, and converts portions of bone naturally compact into cancellous tissue.

The number of ossific centres is different in different bones. In most of the short bones ossification commences by a single point in the centre, and proceeds toward the circumference. In the long bones there is a central point of ossification for the shaft or diaphysis; and one or more for each extremity, the epiphysis. That for the shaft is the first to appear. The union of the epiphyses with the shaft takes place in the reverse order to that in which their ossification began, with the exception of the fibula, and appears to be regulated by direction of the nutrient artery of the bone. Thus the nutrient arteries of the bones of the arm and forearm are directed toward the elbow, and the epiphyses of the bones forming this joint become united to the shaft before those at the shoulder and wrist. In the lower limb, on the other hand, the nutrient arteries pass in a direction from the knee; that is, upward in the femur, downward in the tibia and fibula; and in them it is observed that the upper epiphysis of the femur and the lower epiphysis of the tibia and fibula become first united to the shaft.

Where there is only one epiphysis, the medullary artery is directed toward that end of the bone where there is no additional centre, as toward the acromial end of the clavicle, toward the distal end of the metacarpal bone of the thumb

and great toe, and toward the proximal end of the other metacarpal and metatarsal bones.

Besides these epiphyses for the articular ends, there are others for projecting parts or processes, which are formed separately from the bulk of the bone. For an account of these the reader is referred to the description of the individual bones in the sequel.

A knowledge of the exact periods when the epiphyses become joined to the shaft is often of great importance in medico-legal inquiries. It also aids the surgeon in the diagnosis of many of the injuries to which the joints are liable; for it not infrequently happens that on the application of severe force to a joint the epiphysis becomes separated from the shaft, and such an injury may be mistaken for a fracture or dislocation.

THE VERTEBRAL OR SPINAL COLUMN (THE SPINE) (COLUMNA VERTEBRALIS).

The spine is a flexuous and flexible column formed of a series of bones called **vertebræ** (from *vertere*, to turn).

The vertebræ are thirty-three in number, and have received the names **cervical, dorsal** or **thoracic, lumbar, sacral,** and **coccygeal,** according to the position which they occupy; seven being found in the cervical region, twelve in the dorsal, five in the lumbar, five in the sacral, and four in the coccygeal.

This number is sometimes increased by an additional vertebra in one region, or the number may be diminished in one region, the deficiency being supplied by an additional vertebra in another. These observations do not apply to the cervical portion of the spine, the number of bones forming which is seldom increased or diminished.

The vertebræ in the upper three regions of the spine remain separate throughout life, and are known as **true** or **movable** vertebræ; but those found in the sacral and coccygeal regions are in the adult firmly united, so as to form two bones—five entering into the formation of the upper bone or **sacrum,** and four into the terminal bone of the spine or **coccyx.** The fused vertebræ are known as **false** or **immovable** vertebræ.

GENERAL CHARACTERS OF A VERTEBRA.

Each vertebra consists of two essential parts—an anterior solid segment, the **body,** or **centrum,** and a posterior segment, the **arch** (*arcus vertebræ*), or the **neural arch.** The neural arch is formed of **two pedicles** and **two laminæ,** supporting **seven processes**—viz., four **articular,** two **transverse,** and one **spinous.**

The bodies of the vertebræ are piled one upon the other, forming a strong pillar for the support of the cranium and trunk; the arches forming a hollow cylinder behind the bodies for the protection of the spinal cord (**spinal canal** or **neural canal**). The different vertebræ are connected together by means of the articular processes and the intervertebral fibrocartilages; while the transverse and spinous processes serve as levers for the attachment of muscles which move the different parts of the spine. Lastly, between each pair of vertebræ apertures exist through which the spinal nerves pass from the cord. Each of these constituent parts must now be separately examined.

Body, or Centrum (*corpus vertebræ*).—The body is the largest part of a vertebra. Above and below it is flattened; its upper and lower surfaces are rough for the attachment of the intervertebral fibro-cartilages, and each presents a rim around its circumference. In front it is convex from side to side, concave from above downward. Behind it is flat from above downward and slightly concave from

side to side. Its anterior surface is perforated by a few small apertures, for the passage of nutrient vessels; while on the posterior surface is a single large, irregular aperture, or occasionally more than one, for the exit of veins from the body of the vertebra—the **venæ basis vertebræ.**

Pedicles.—The pedicles are two short, thick pieces of bone, which project backward, one on each side, from the upper part of the body of the vertebra, at the line of junction of its posterior and lateral surfaces. Each pedicle (*radix arcus vertebræ*) is a root of the vertebral arch. The concavities above and below the pedicles are the **superior** and **inferior intervertebral notches** or **grooves** (*incisura vertebralis superior et inferior*); they are four in number, two on each side, the inferior ones being generally the deeper. When the vertebræ are articulated the notches of each contiguous pair of bones form the **intervertebral foramina** (*foramina intervertebralia*), which communicate with the spinal canal and transmit the spinal nerves and bloodvessels.

Laminæ.—The laminæ are two broad plates of bone which complete the neural arch by fusing together in the middle line behind. They enclose a foramen, the **spinal** or **vertebral foramen** (*foramen vertebrale*), which serves for the protection of the spinal cord. When the vertebræ are joined they form, with their ligaments, the **vertebral canal** (*spinal* or *neural canal*, *canalis vertebralis*). The laminæ are connected to the body by means of the pedicles. Their upper and lower borders are rough, for the attachment of the ligamenta subflava.

Processes. Spinous Process (*processus spinosus*).—The spinous process projects backward from the junction of the two laminæ, and serves for the attachment of muscles and ligaments.

Articular Processes.—The articular processes (*zygapophyses*), four in number, two on each side, spring from the junction of the pedicles with the laminæ. Each **superior process** (*processus articularis superior*) projects upward, its **articular surface** (*facies articularis superior*) being directed more or less backward; each **inferior process** (*processus articularis inferior*) projects downward, its **articular surface** (*facies articularis inferior*) looking more or less forward.[1]

Transverse Processes (*processus transversi*).—The transverse processes, two in number, project one at each side from the point where the lamina joins the pedicle, between the superior and inferior articular processes. They also serve for the attachment of muscles and ligaments.

The Cervical Vertebræ (Vertebræ Cervicales) (Fig. 15).

The cervical vertebræ are smaller than those in any other region of the spine, and may be readily distinguished by the foramen in the transverse process, which does not exist in the transverse process of either a dorsal or lumbar vertebra.

Body.—The body (*centrum*) is small, comparatively dense, and broader from side to side than from before backward. The *anterior* and *posterior surfaces* are flattened and of equal depth; the former is placed on a lower level than the latter, and its inferior border is prolonged downward, so as to overlap the upper and fore part of the vertebra below. Its *upper surface* is concave transversely, and presents a projecting lip on each side; its *lower surface* is convex from side to side, concave from before backward, and presents laterally a shallow concavity which receives the corresponding projecting lip of the adjacent vertebra.

Pedicles.—The pedicles are directed outward and backward, and are attached to the body midway between the upper and lower borders, so that the superior intervertebral notch is as deep as the inferior, but it is, at the same time, narrower.

[1] It may, perhaps, be as well to remind the reader that the direction of a surface is determined by that of a line drawn at right angles to it.

Laminæ.—The laminæ are narrow, long, thinner above than below, and overlap each other, enclosing the spinal foramen, which is very large, and of a triangular form.

Processes. Spinous Process.—The spinous process is short, and bifid at the extremity, to afford greater extent of surface for the attachment of muscles, the two divisions being often of unequal size. They increase in length from the fourth to the seventh vertebra.

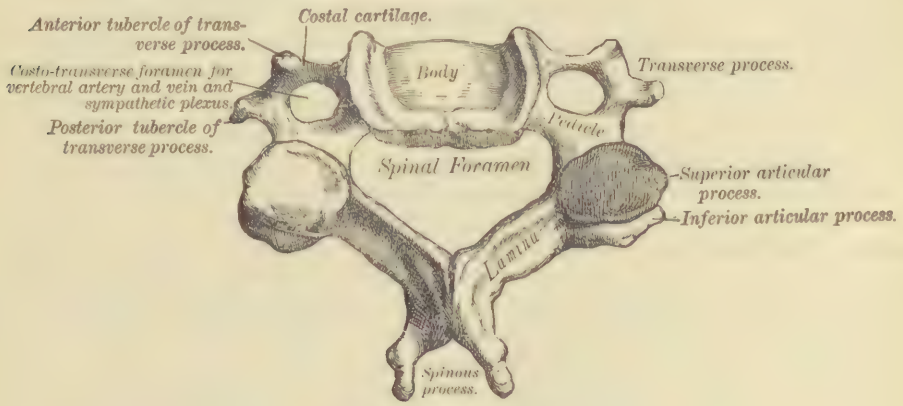


FIG. 15.—Cervical vertebra.

Articular Processes.—The articular processes are flat, oblique, and of an oval form: the superior are directed backward and upward; the inferior forward and downward.

Transverse Processes.—The transverse processes are short, directed downward, outward, and forward, bifid at their extremity, and marked by a groove along their upper surface, which runs downward and outward from the superior intervertebral notch and serves for the transmission of one of the cervical nerves. They are situated in front of the articular processes and on the outer side of the pedicles. The transverse processes are pierced at their base by a foramen, for the transmission of the vertebral artery, vein, and a plexus of sympathetic nerves. This foramen is known as the **transverse foramen**, the **costo-transverse foramen**, and the **vertebrarterial foramen** (*foramen transversarium*). Each process is formed by two roots: the anterior root, sometimes called the **costal process**, arising from the side of the body, and is the homologue of the rib in the dorsal region of the spine; the posterior root springs from the junction of the pedicle with the lamina, and corresponds with the transverse process in the dorsal region. It is by the junction of the two that the foramen for the vertebral vessels is formed. The extremity of each of the anterior roots forms the **anterior tubercle** (*tuberculum anterius*) and the extremity of each of the posterior roots the **posterior tubercle** (*tuberculum posterius*) of the transverse processes.[1]

The peculiar vertebræ in the cervical regions are the *first*, or **atlas**; the *second*, or **axis**; and the *seventh*, or **vertebra prominens**. The great modifications in the form of the atlas and axis are designed to admit of the nodding and rotatory movements of the head.

Atlas.—The atlas (Fig. 16) is so named from supporting the globe of the head. The chief peculiarities of this bone are that it has neither body nor spinous process. The body is detached from the rest of the bone, and forms the odontoid process of

[1] The anterior tubercle of the transverse process of the sixth cervical vertebra is of large size, and is sometimes known as "Chassaignac's" or the "carotid tubercle" (*tuberculum caroticum*). It is in close relation with the carotid artery, which lies in front and a little external to it; so that, as was first pointed out by Chassaignac, the vessel can with ease be compressed against it.

the second vertebra; while the parts corresponding to the pedicles join in front to form the anterior arch. The atlas is ring-like, and consists of an anterior arch, a posterior arch, and two lateral masses. The **anterior arch** (*arcus anterior*) forms about one-fifth of the ring; its anterior surface is convex, and presents about its centre a **tubercle** (*tuberculum anterius*), for the attachment of the Longus colli muscle; posteriorly it is concave, and marked by a smooth, oval facet, called the **circular facet** (*fovea dentis*), covered with cartilage, for articulation with the odontoid process of the

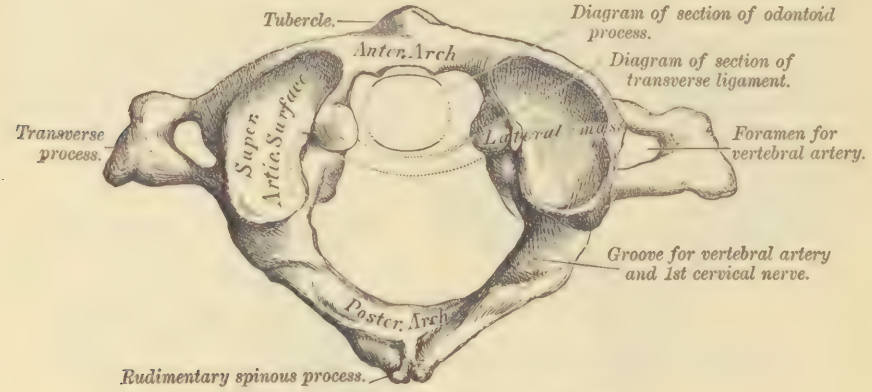


FIG. 16.—First cervical vertebra, or atlas.

axis. The upper and lower borders give attachment to the anterior occipito-atlantal and the anterior atlanto-axial ligaments, which connect it with the occipital bone above and the axis below. The **posterior arch** (*arcus posterior*) forms about two-fifths of the circumference of the bone; it terminates behind in a tubercle (*tuberculum posterius*), which is the rudiment of a spinous process, and gives origin to the Rectus capitis posticus minor. The diminutive size of this process prevents any interference in the movements between the atlas and the cranium. The posterior part of the arch presents above and behind a rounded edge for the attachment of the posterior occipito-atlantal ligament, while in front, immediately behind each superior articular process, is a groove (*sulcus arteriæ vertebralis*), sometimes converted into a foramen by a delicate bony spiculum, which arches backward from the posterior extremity of the superior articular process. These grooves represent the superior intervertebral notches, and are peculiar from being situated behind the articular processes, instead of in front of them, as in the other vertebræ. They serve for the transmission of the vertebral artery, which, ascending through the foramen in the transverse process, winds round the lateral mass in a direction backward and inward. They also transmit the suboccipital (first spinal) nerve. On the under surface of the posterior arch, in the same situation, are two other grooves, placed behind the lateral masses, and representing the inferior intervertebral notches of other vertebræ. They are much less marked than the superior. The lower border also gives attachment to the posterior atlanto-axial ligament, which connects it with the axis. The **lateral masses** (*massæ laterales*) are the most bulky and solid parts of the atlas, in order to support the weight of the head; they present two articulating surfaces above, and two below. Each **superior process** (*fovea articularis superior*) is of large size, oval, concave, and approaches its companion in front, but diverges from it behind; it is directed upward, inward, and a little backward, forming a kind of cup for the corresponding condyle of the occipital bone. The two processes are admirably adapted to the nodding movements of the head. Not infrequently they are partially subdivided by a more or less deep indentation, which encroaches upon each lateral margin. Each **inferior articular process** (*facies articularis inferior*)

is circular in form, flattened or slightly concave, and directed downward and inward, articulating with the axis. The inferior processes permit the rotatory movements. Just below the inner margin of each superior articular surface is a small tubercle, for the attachment of the transverse ligament, which, stretching across the ring of the atlas, divides it into two unequal parts or arches; the anterior or smaller segment receiving the odontoid process of the axis, the posterior allowing the transmission of the spinal cord and its membranes. This part of the spinal canal is of considerable size, to afford space for the spinal cord; and hence lateral displacement of the atlas may occur without compression of this structure. The **transverse processes** are of large size, project directly outward and downward from the lateral masses, and serve for the attachment of special muscles which assist in rotating the head. They are long, not bifid, and perforated at their base by a canal for the vertebral artery, which is directed from below, upward, and backward.

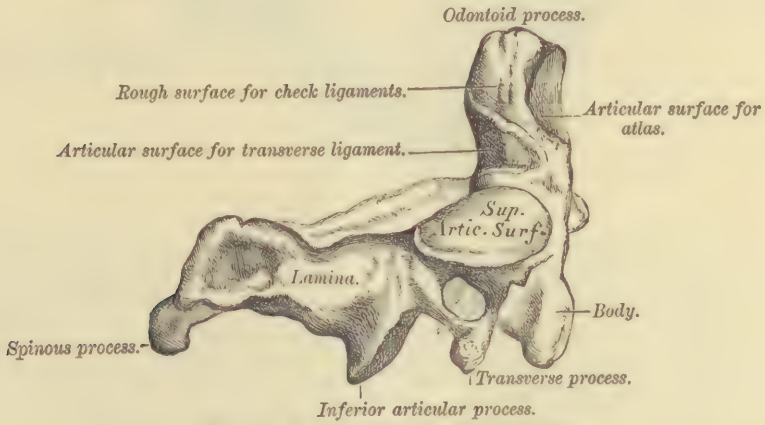


FIG. 17.—Second cervical vertebra, or axis.

Axis.—The axis (*epistropheus*) (Fig. 17) is the pivot upon which the first vertebra, carrying the head, rotates, hence the name, axis. The most distinctive character of this bone is the strong, prominent process, tooth-like in form (hence the name **odontoid process,** or *dens*), which rises perpendicularly from the upper surface of the body. The **body** is deeper in front than behind, and prolonged downward anteriorly so as to overlap the upper and fore part of the next vertebra. It presents in front a median longitudinal ridge, separating two lateral depressions, for the attachment of the Longus colli muscle of either side. The odontoid process presents two articulating surfaces covered with cartilage: one in front, of an oval form, for articulation with the atlas (*facies articularis anterior*); another behind (*facies articularis posterior*), for the transverse ligament —the latter frequently encroaching on the sides of the process. The **apex** is pointed, and gives attachment to the **middle odontoid ligament** (*ligamentum apicis dentis*). Below the apex the process is somewhat enlarged, and presents on either side a rough impression for the attachment of the lateral fasciculi of the odontoid or check ligaments, which connect it to the occipital bone; the **base** of the process, where it is attached to the body, is constricted, so as to prevent displacement from the transverse ligament, which binds it in this situation to the anterior arch of the atlas. Sometimes, however, this process does become displaced, especially in children, in whom the ligaments are more relaxed: instant death is the result of this accident. The internal structure of the odontoid process is more compact than that of the body. The **pedicles** are broad and strong, especially their anterior extremities, which coalesce with the sides of the body and the

root of the odontoid process. The **laminæ** are thick and strong, and the spinal foramen large, but smaller than that of the atlas. The **transverse processes** are very small, not bifid, and each is perforated by the foramen for the vertebral artery, which is directed obliquely upward and outward. The **superior articular surfaces** (*facies articulares superiores*) are round, slightly convex, directed upward and outward, and are peculiar in being supported on the body, pedicles, and transverse processes. The **inferior articular surfaces** (*facies articulares inferiores*) have the same direction as those of the other cervical vertebræ. The **superior intervertebral notches** are very shallow, and lie behind the articular processes; the inferior in front of them, as in the other cervical vertebræ. The **spinous process** is of large size, very strong, deeply channelled on its under surface, and presents a bifid, tubercular extremity for the attachment of muscles which serve to rotate the head upon the spine.

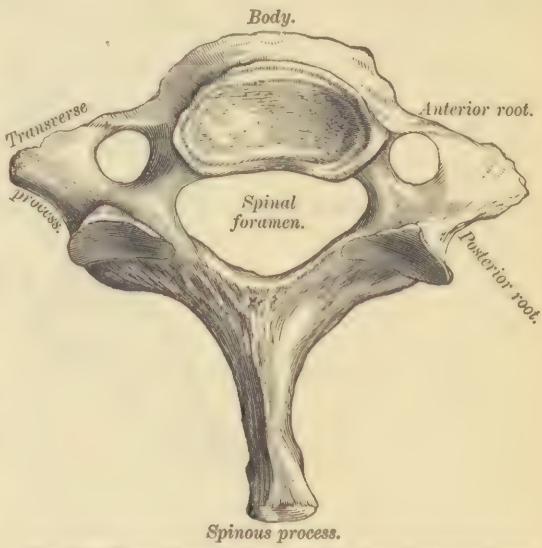


FIG. 18.—Seventh cervical vertebra, or vertebra prominens.

Seventh Cervical (Fig. 18).—The most distinctive character of this vertebra is the existence of a very long and prominent spinous process; hence the name **vertebra prominens**. This process is thick, nearly horizontal in direction, not bifurcated, and has attached to it the lower end of the ligamentum nuchæ. The **transverse process** is usually of large size, its posterior tubercles are large and prominent, while the anterior are small and faintly marked; its upper surface has usually a hollow groove, and it seldom presents more than a trace of bifurcation at its extremity. The foramen in the transverse process is sometimes as large as in the other cervical vertebræ, but is usually smaller on one or both sides, and is sometimes wanting. On the left side it occasionally gives passage to the vertebral artery; more frequently the vertebral vein traverses it on both sides; but the usual arrangement is for both artery and vein to pass in front of the transverse process, and not through the foramen. Occasionally the anterior root of the transverse process exists as a separate bone, and attains a large size. It is then known as a **cervical rib**.

The Thoracic or Dorsal Vertebræ (Vertebræ Thoracales).

The dorsal vertebræ are intermediate in size between those in the cervical and those in the lumbar region, and increase in size from above downward, the upper vertebræ in this segment of the spine being much smaller than those in the lower part of the region. The dorsal vertebræ may be at once recognized by the presence on the sides of the body of one or more facets or half-facets for the heads of the ribs.

Bodies.—The bodies of the dorsal vertebræ resemble those in the cervical and lumbar regions at the respective ends of this portion of the spine; but in the middle of the dorsal region their form is very characteristic, being heart-shaped, and as broad in the anteroposterior as in the lateral direction. They are thicker behind than in front, flat above and below, convex and prominent in front, deeply con-

cave behind, slightly constricted in front and at the sides, and marked on each side, near the root of the pedicle, by two demi-facets, one above, the other below (*fovea costalis superior et inferior*). These are covered with cartilage in the recent state, and, when articulated with the adjoining vertebræ, form, with the intervening fibro-cartilage, oval surfaces for the reception of the heads of the corresponding ribs. The tenth, eleventh, and twelfth dorsal vertebræ each possesses one complete facet for the head of the rib, instead of two demi-facets.

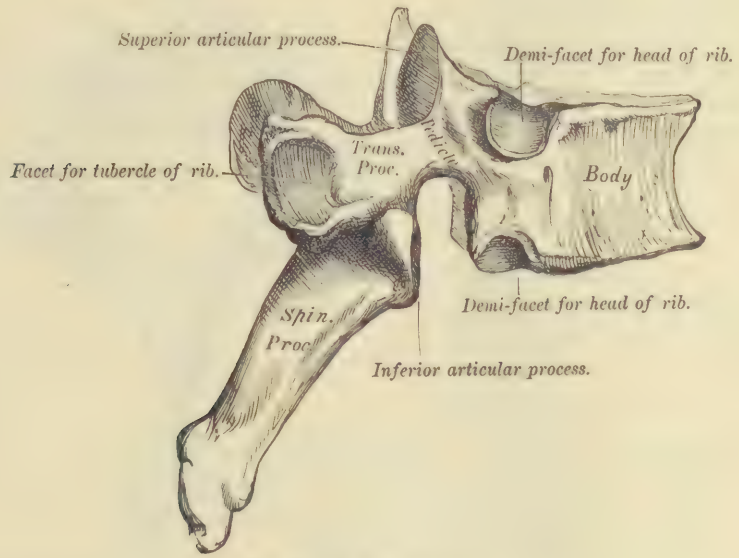


FIG. 19.—A dorsal vertebra.

Pedicles.—The pedicles are directed backward, and the inferior intervertebral notches are of large size, and deeper than in any other region of the spine.

Laminæ.—The laminæ are broad, thick, and imbricated—that is to say, overlapping one another like tiles on a roof. The spinal foramen is small, and of a circular form.

Processes. Spinous Processes.—Each spinous process is long, triangular on transverse section, directed obliquely downward, and terminates in a tubercular extremity. They overlap one another from the fifth to the eighth vertebra, but are less oblique in direction above and below.

Articular Processes.—The articular processes are flat, nearly vertical in direction, and project from the upper and lower part of the pedicles; the superior being directed backward and *slightly* outward and upward, the inferior forward and a little inward and downward.

Transverse Processes.—The transverse processes arise from the same parts of the arch as the posterior roots of the transverse processes in the neck, and are situated behind the articular processes and pedicles; they are thick, strong, and of great length, directed obliquely backward and outward, presenting a clubbed extremity, which is tipped on its anterior part by a small concave surface, for articulation with the tubercle of a rib (*fovea costalis transversalis*). The twelfth, the eleventh, and sometimes the tenth dorsal vertebra has no facet on the transverse process. Besides the articular facet for the rib, three indistinct tubercles may be seen arising from the transverse processes: one at the upper border, one at the lower border, and one externally. In man they are comparatively of small size, and serve only for the attachment of muscles. But in some animals they attain considerable magnitude, either for the purpose of more closely

connecting the segments of this portion of the spine or for muscular and ligamentous attachment.

The peculiar dorsal vertebræ are the *first*, *ninth*, *tenth*, *eleventh*, and *twelfth* (Fig. 20).

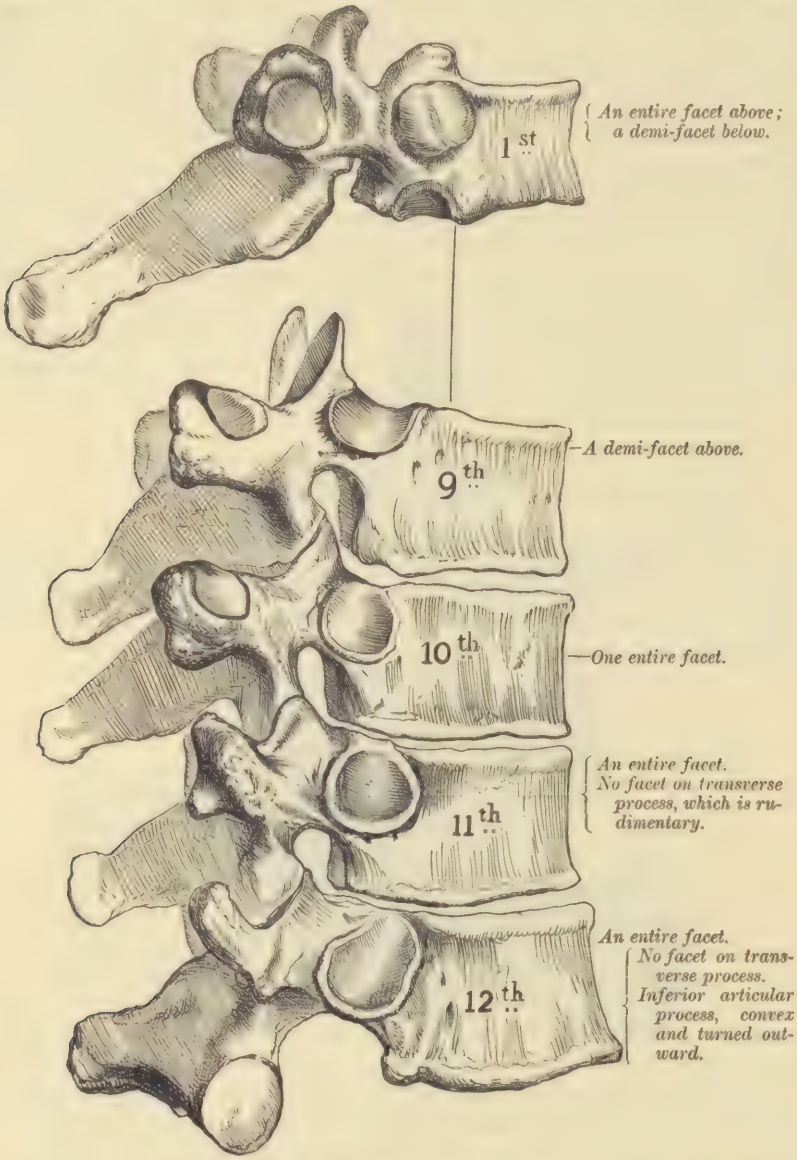


FIG. 20.—Peculiar dorsal vertebræ.

First Dorsal Vertebra.—The first dorsal vertebra presents, on each side of the **body**, a single entire articular facet for the head of the first rib and a half facet for the upper half of the second. The body is like that of a cervical vertebra, being broad transversely its upper surface is concave, and lipped on each side. The **articular surfaces** are oblique, and the **spinous process** thick, long, and almost horizontal.

Ninth Dorsal Vertebra.—The ninth dorsal has no demi-facet below. In some subjects, however, the ninth has two demi-facets on each side; when this occurs the tenth has only a demi-facet at the upper part.

Tenth Dorsal Vertebra.—The tenth dorsal has (except in the cases just mentioned) an entire articular facet on each side, above, which is partly placed on the outer surface of the pedicle. It has no demi-facet below.

Eleventh Dorsal Vertebra.—In the eleventh dorsal the body approaches in its form and size to the lumbar. The articular facets for the heads of the ribs, one on each side, are of large size, and placed chiefly on the pedicles, which are thicker and stronger in this and the next vertebra than in any other part of the dorsal region. The **spinous process** is short, and nearly horizontal in direction. The **transverse processes** are very short, tubercular at their extremities, and have no articular facets for the tubercles of the ribs.

Twelfth Dorsal Vertebra.—The twelfth dorsal has the same general characters as the eleventh, but may be distinguished from it by the inferior articular processes, being convex and turned outward, like those of the lumbar vertebræ; by the general form of the body, laminæ, and spinous process, approaching to that of the lumbar vertebræ; and by the transverse processes being shorter, and marked by three elevations, the superior, inferior, and external tubercles, which correspond to the mammillary, accessory, and transverse processes of the lumbar vertebræ. Traces of similar elevations are usually to be found upon the other dorsal vertebræ (*vide ut supra*).

The Lumbar Vertebræ (Vertebræ Lumbales).

The lumbar vertebræ (Fig. 21) are the largest segments of the vertebral column, and can at once be distinguished by the absence of the foramen in the transverse process, the characteristic point of the cervical vertebræ, and by the absence of any articulating facet on the side of the body, the distinguishing mark of the dorsal vertebræ.

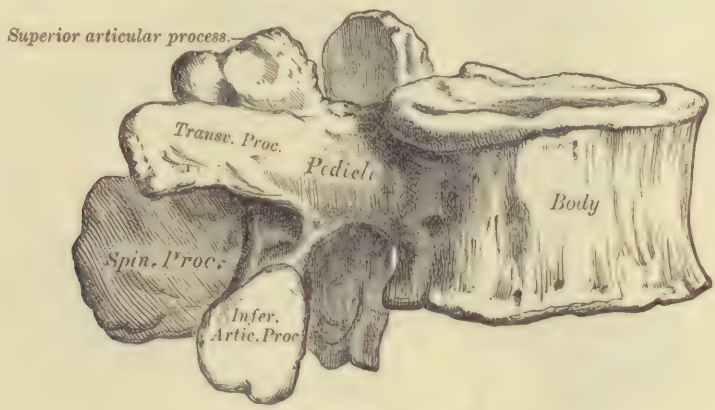


Fig. 21.—Lumbar vertebra.

Body.—The body is large, and has a greater diameter from side to side than from before backward, slightly thicker in front than behind, flattened or slightly concave above and below, concave behind, and deeply constricted in front and at the sides, presenting prominent margins, which afford a broad basis for the support of the superincumbent weight.

Pedicles.—The pedicles are very strong, directed backward from the upper part of the bodies; consequently, the inferior intervertebral notches are of considerable depth.

Laminæ.—The laminæ are broad, short, and strong, and the spinal foramen triangular, larger than in the dorsal, smaller than in the cervical, region.

Processes. Spinous Processes.—The spinous processes are thick and broad, somewhat quadrilateral, horizontal in direction, thicker below than above, and terminating by a rough, uneven border.

Articular Processes.—The superior articular processes are concave, and look backward and inward; the inferior are convex, and look forward and outward; the former are separated by a much wider interval than the latter, embracing the lower articulating processes of the vertebra above.

Transverse Processes.—The transverse processes are long, slender, directed transversely outward in the upper three lumbar vertebræ, slanting a little upward in the lower two. They are situated in front of the articular processes, instead of behind them, as in the dorsal vertebræ, and are homologous with the ribs. Of the three tubercles noticed in connection with the transverse processes of the twelfth dorsal vertebra, the superior one on each side becomes connected in this region with the back part of the superior articular process, and has received the

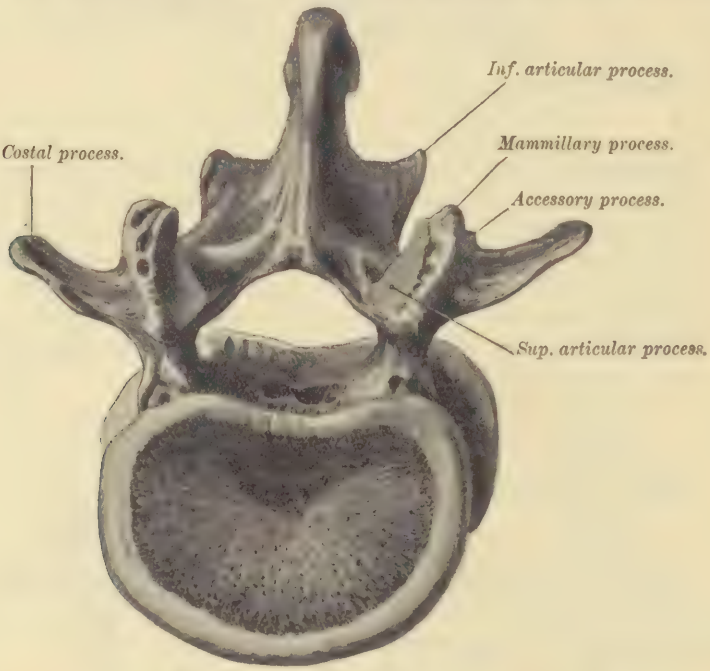


FIG. 22.—Lumbar vertebra.

name of **mammillary process** (*processus mammillaris*); the inferior is represented by a small process pointing downward, situated at the back part of the base of the transverse process, and called the **accessory process** (*processus accessorius*): these are the true transverse processes, which are rudimental in this region of the spine. The external one is the so-called transverse process, the homologue of the rib, and hence sometimes called the **costal process** (*processus costarius*) (Fig. 22). Although in man the costal processes are comparatively small, in some animals they attain considerable size, and serve to lock the vertebræ more closely together.

Fifth Lumbar Vertebra.—The fifth lumbar vertebra is characterized by having the body much thicker in front than behind, which accords with the prominence of the sacro-vertebral articulation; by the smaller size of its spinous process; by the wide interval between the inferior articulating processes; and by the greater size and thickness of its transverse processes, which spring from the body as well as from the pedicles.

Structure of the Vertebræ.—The body is composed of light, spongy, cancellous tissue, having a thin coating of compact tissue on its external surface perforated by numerous orifices, some of large size, for the passage of vessels; its interior is traversed by one or two large canals, for the reception of veins, which converge toward a single large, irregular aperture or several small apertures at the posterior part of the body of each bone. The arch and processes projecting from it have, on the contrary, an exceedingly thick covering of compact tissue (Fig. 23).

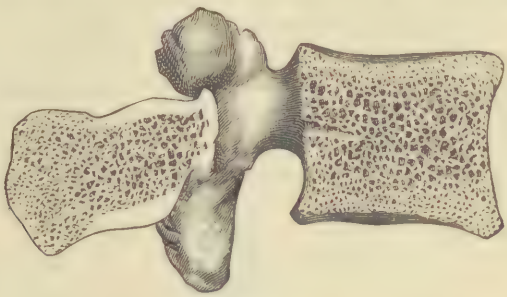


Fig 23.—Bony structure of a lumbar vertebra. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Development.—Each vertebra is formed of four primary centres of ossification (Fig. 24), one for each lamina and its processes, and two for the body.[1] Ossification commences in the laminæ about the sixth week of fœtal life, in the situation where the transverse processes afterward project, the ossific granules shooting backward to the spine, forward into the pedicles, and outward into the transverse and articular processes. Ossification in the body commences in the middle of the cartilage about the eighth week by two closely approximated centres, which

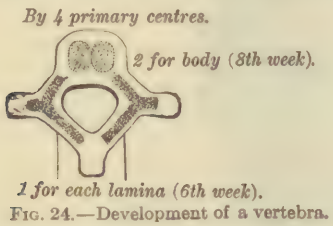


Fig. 24.—Development of a vertebra.

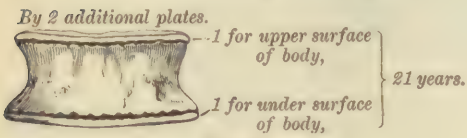


Fig. 25.

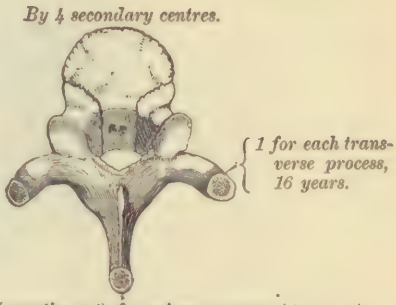


Fig. 26.

speedily coalesce to form one central ossific point. According to some authors, ossification commences in the laminæ only in the upper vertebræ—*i. e.*, in the cervical and upper dorsal. The first ossific points in the lower vertebræ are those which are to form the body, the osseous centres for the laminæ appearing at a subsequent period. At birth these three pieces are perfectly separate. During the first year the laminæ become united behind, the union taking place first in the lumbar region and then extending upward through the dorsal and lower cervical regions. About the third year the body is joined to the arch on each side in such a manner that the body is formed from the three original centres of ossifica-

[1] By many observers it is asserted that the bodies of the vertebra are developed from a single centre which speedily becomes bilobed, so as to give the appearance of two nuclei; but that there are two centres, at all events sometimes, is evidenced by the fact that the two halves of the body of the vertebra may remain distinct throughout life and be separated by a fissure through which a protrusion of the spinal membrane may take place, constituting an anterior spina bifida.

tion, the amount contributed by the pedicles increasing in extent from below upward. Thus the bodies of the sacral vertebræ are formed almost entirely from the central nuclei; the bodies of the lumbar are formed laterally and behind by the pedicles; in the dorsal region the pedicles advance as far forward as the articular depressions for the head of the ribs, forming these cavities of reception; and in the neck the lateral portions of the bodies are formed entirely by the advance of the pedicles. The line along which union takes place between the body and the neural arch is named **neuro-central suture.** Before puberty no other changes occur, excepting a gradual increase in the growth of these primary centres; the upper and under surfaces of the bodies and the ends of the transverse and spinous processes being tipped with cartilage, in which ossific granules are not as yet deposited. At sixteen years (Fig. 26) three secondary centres appear, one for the tip of each transverse process, and one for the extremity of the spinous process. In some of the lumbar vertebræ, especially the first, second, and third, a second ossifying centre appears at the base of the spinous process. At twenty-one years (Fig. 25) a thin, circular, epiphysial plate of bone is formed in the layer of cartilage situated on the upper and under surfaces of the body, the former being the thicker of the two. All these become joined, and the bone is completely formed between the twenty-fifth and thirtieth year of life.

Exceptions to this mode of development occur in the first, second, and seventh cervical, and in the vertebræ of the lumbar region.

Atlas (Fig. 27).—The number of centres of ossification of the atlas is very variable. It may be developed from two, three, four, or five centres. The most frequent arrangement is by three centres. Two of these are destined for the two lateral or neural masses, the ossification of which commences about the seventh week near the articular processes, and extend backward; these portions of bone are separated from one another behind, at birth, by a narrow interval filled in with cartilage. Between the third and fourth years they unite either directly or through the medium of a separate centre developed in the cartilage in the middle line. The anterior arch, at birth, is altogether cartilaginous, and in this a separate nucleus appears about the end of the first year after birth, and, extending laterally, joins the neural processes in front of the pedicles. Sometimes there are two nuclei developed in the cartilage, one on either side of the median line, which join to form a single mass. And occasionally there is no separate centre, but the anterior arch is formed by the gradual extension forward and ultimate junction of the two neural processes.

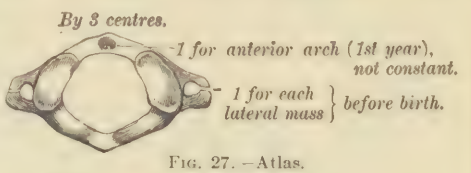


Fig. 27.—Atlas.

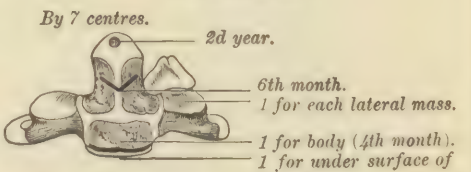


Fig. 28.—Axis.

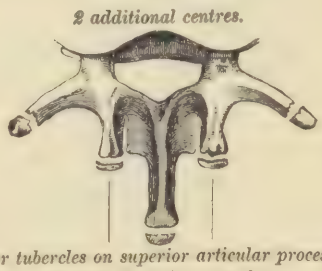


Fig. 29.—Lumbar vertebra.

Exceptional cases.

Axis.—The axis (Fig. 28) is developed by seven centres. The body and arch of this bone are formed in the same manner as the corresponding parts in the other vertebræ: one centre (or two, which speedily coalesce) for the lower part of the body, and one for each lamina. The centres for the laminæ appear about the

seventh or eighth week, that for the body about the fourth month. The odontoid process consists originally of an extension upward of the cartilaginous mass in which the lower part of the body is formed. At about the sixth month of fœtal life two osseous nuclei make their appearance in the base of this process; they are placed laterally, and join before birth to form a conical bilobed mass deeply cleft above; the interval between the cleft and the summit of the process is formed by a wedge-shaped piece of cartilage, the base of the process being separated from the body by a cartilaginous interval, which gradually becomes ossified at its circumference, but remains cartilaginous in its centre until advanced age.[1] Finally, as Humphry has demonstrated, the apex of the odontoid process has a separate nucleus, which appears in the second year and joins about the twelfth year. In addition to these there is a secondary centre for a thin epiphysial plate on the under surface of the body of the bone. J. Bland Sutton and others maintain that the odontoid process is the "dissociated body of the atlas."[2]

Seventh Cervical.—The anterior or costal part of the transverse process of the seventh cervical is developed from a separate osseous centre at about the sixth month of fœtal life, and joins the body and posterior division of the transverse process between the fifth and sixth years. Sometimes this process continues as a separate piece, and, becoming lengthened outward, constitutes what is known as a cervical rib. This separate ossific centre for the costal process has also been found in the fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebræ.

Lumbar Vertebræ.—The lumbar vertebræ (Fig. 29) have two additional centres (besides those peculiar to the vertebræ generally) for the mammillary tubercles, which project from the back part of the superior articular processes. The transverse process of the first lumbar is sometimes developed as a separate piece, which may remain permanently unconnected with the remaining portion of the bone, thus forming a lumbar rib—a peculiarity that is rarely met with.

Progress of Ossification in the Spine Generally.—Ossification of the laminæ of the vertebræ commences in the cervical region of the spine, and proceeds gradually downward. Ossification of the bodies, on the other hand, commences a little below the centre of the spinal column (about the ninth or tenth dorsal vertebra), and extends both upward and downward. Although the ossific nuclei make their first appearance in the lower dorsal vertebræ, the lumbar and first sacral vertebræ are those in which these nuclei are largest at birth.

Attachment of Muscles.—To the **Atlas** are attached nine pairs: the Longus colli, Rectus capitis anticus minor, Rectus lateralis, Obliquus capitis superior and inferior, Splenius colli, Levator anguli scapulæ, First Intertransverse, and Rectus capitis posticus minor.

To the **Axis** are attached eleven pairs: the Longus colli, Levator anguli scapulæ, Splenius colli, Scalenus medius, Transversalis colli, Intertransversales, Obliquus capitis inferior, Rectus capitis posticus major, Semispinalis colli, Multifidus spinæ, Interspinales.

To the remaining vertebræ, generally, are attached thirty-five pairs and a single muscle: **anteriorly**, the Rectus capitis anticus major, Longus colli, Scalenus anticus medius and posticus, Psoas magnus and parvus, Quadratus lumborum, Diaphragm, Obliquus abdominis internus, and Transversalis abdominis; **posteriorly**, the Trapezius, Latissimus dorsi, Levator anguli scapulæ, Rhomboideus major and minor, Serratus posticus superior and inferior, Splenius, Erector spinæ, Ilio-costalis, Longissimus dorsi, Spinalis dorsi, Cervicalis ascendens, Transversalis colli, Trachelo-mastoid, Complexus, Biventer cervicis, Semispinalis dorsi and colli, Multifidus spinæ, Rotatores spinæ, Interspinales, Supraspinales, Intertransversales, Levatores costarum.

[1] See Cunningham, Jour. Anat., vol. xx. p. 238.

[2] Ligaments: their Nature and Morphology.

The Sacral and Coccygeal Vertebræ (False or Immovable Vertebræ).

The sacral and coccygeal vertebræ consist, at an early period of life, of nine separate pieces, which are united in the adult so as to form two bones, five entering into the formation of the sacrum, four into that of the coccyx. Occasionally, the coccyx consists of five bones.[1]

Sacrum (*os sacrum*).—The os sacrum (*sacer*, sacred), the sacred bone. So called, according to some, because it was the part selected in sacrifices. Another view is that the name is derived from an opinion of the Jewish rabbis, that this part of the skeleton strongly resists decay and becomes the germ from which the new body will be raised. The sacrum is a large, triangular bone (Fig. 30), situated at the lower part of the vertebral column, and at the upper and back part of the pelvic cavity, where it is inserted like a wedge between the two innominate bones; its upper part or base articulating with the last lumbar vertebra, its apex with the coccyx. It is composed of five segments of bone (**sacral vertebræ**, or *vertebræ sacrales*). The sacrum is curved upon itself, and placed very obliquely, its upper extremity projecting forward, and forming, with the last lumbar vertebra, a very prominent angle, called the **promontory** (*promontorium*), or **sacro-vertebral angle**; while its central part is directed backward, so as to give increased capacity to the pelvic cavity. It presents for examination an anterior and posterior surface, two lateral surfaces, a base, an apex, and a central canal.

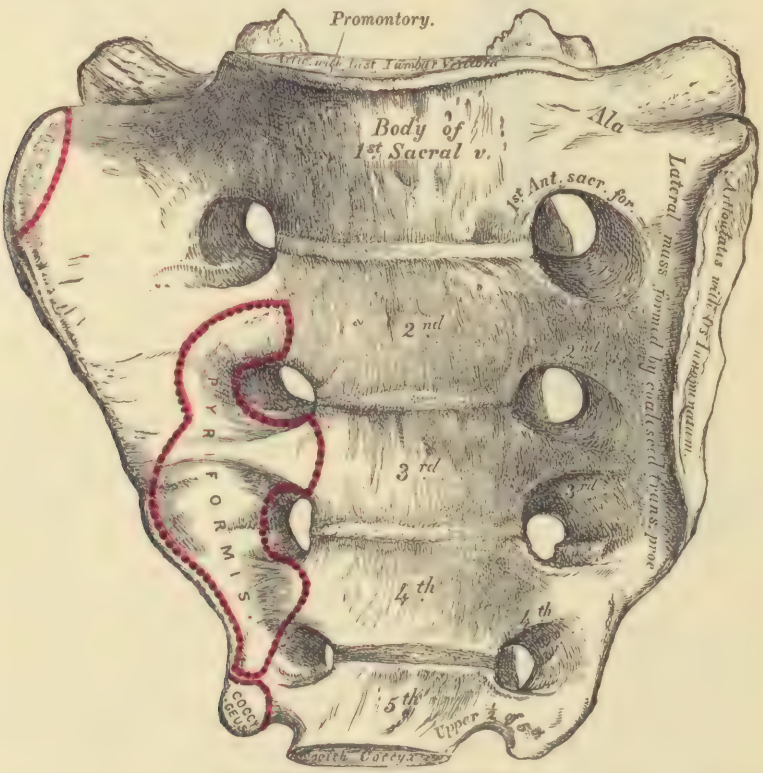


FIG. 30.—Sacrum, anterior surface.

Surfaces. **Anterior** or **Pelvic Surface** (*facies pelvina*).—The anterior surface is concave from above downward, and slightly so from side to side. In the middle are seen four **transverse ridges** (*lineæ transversæ*), indicating the original division of the bone into five separate pieces. The portions of bone intervening

[1] Sir George Humphry describes this as the usual composition of the coccyx. On the Skeleton, p. 456.

between the ridges correspond to the bodies of the vertebræ. The body of the first segment is of large size, and in form resembles that of a lumbar vertebra; the succeeding ones diminish in size from above downward, are flattened from before backward, and curved so as to accommodate themselves to the form of the sacrum, being concave in front, convex behind. At each end of the ridges above mentioned are seen the **anterior sacral foramina** (*foramina sacralia anteriora*), analogous to the intervertebral foramina, four in number on each side, somewhat rounded in form, diminishing in size from above downward, and directed outward and forward; they transmit the anterior branches of the sacral nerves and the lateral sacral arteries. External to these foramina is the **lateral mass** (*pars lateralis*), consisting at an early period of life of separate segments; these become blended, in the adult, with the bodies, with each other, and with the posterior transverse processes. Each lateral mass is traversed by four broad, shallow grooves, which lodge the anterior sacral nerves as they pass outward, the grooves being separated by prominent ridges of bone, which give attachment to the slips of the Pyriformis muscle.

Fig. 31.—Vertical section of the sacrum.

If a vertical section is made through the centre of the sacrum (Fig. 31), the bodies are seen to be united at their circumference by bone, a wide interval being left centrally, which, in the recent state, is filled by intervertebral substance. In some bones this union is more complete between the lower segments than between the upper ones.

Posterior or Dorsal Surface (*facies dorsalis*).—The posterior surface (Fig. 32) is convex and much narrower than the anterior. In the middle line are three or four tubercles, which represent the rudimentary spinous processes of the sacral vertebræ. Of these tubercles, the first is usually prominent, and perfectly distinct from the rest; the second and third are either separate or united into a **tubercular ridge** (*crista sacralis media*), which diminishes in size from above downward; the fourth usually, and the fifth always, remaining undeveloped. The gap which results from failure of the laminæ to meet in the mid-line is called the **hiatus sacralis**. External to the spinous processes on each side are the **laminæ**, broad and well marked in the first three pieces; sometimes the fourth, and generally the fifth, are only partially developed and fail to meet in the middle line. These partially developed laminæ are prolonged downward as rounded processes, the **sacral cornua** (*cornua sacralia*), and are connected to the cornua of the coccyx. Between them the bony wall of the lower end of the sacral canal is imperfect. External to the laminæ is a linear series of indistinct tubercles representing the **articular processes** (*cristæ sacrales articulares*), the upper pair are large, well developed, and correspond in shape and direction to the superior articulating processes of a lumbar vertebra; the second and third are small; the fourth and fifth (usually blended together) are situated on each

side of the sacral canal and assist in forming the sacral cornua. External to the articular processes are the four **posterior sacral foramina** (*foramina sacralia posteriora*); they are smaller in size and less regular in form than the anterior, and transmit the posterior branches of the sacral nerves. On the outer side of

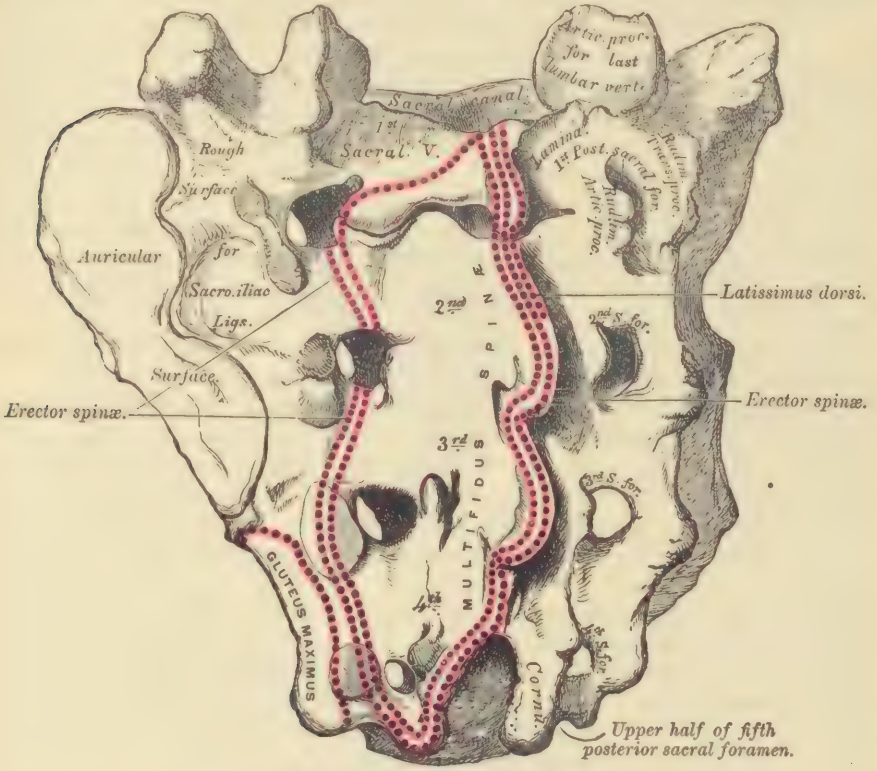


FIG. 32.—Sacrum, posterior surface.

the posterior sacral foramina is a series of tubercles, the rudimentary **transverse processes** of the sacral vertebræ (*cristæ sacrales laterales*). The first pair of transverse tubercles are large, very distinct, and correspond with each superior angle of the bone; they together with the second pair, which are of small size, give attachment to the horizontal part of the sacro-iliac ligament; the third gives attachment to the oblique fasciculi of the posterior sacro-iliac ligaments; and the fourth and fifth to the great sacro-sciatic ligaments. The interspace between the spinous and transverse processes on the back of the sacrum presents a wide, shallow concavity, called the **sacral groove**: it is continuous above with the vertebral groove, and lodges the origin of the Multifidus spinæ.

Lateral Surface.—The lateral surface, broad above, becomes narrowed into a thin edge below. Its upper half presents in front a broad, ear-shaped surface for articulation with the ilium. This is called the **auricular surface** (*facies auricularis*), and in the fresh state is coated with fibro-cartilage. It is bounded posteriorly by deep and uneven impressions, for the attachment of the posterior sacro-iliac ligaments. The chief prominence is called the **tuberosity** (*tuberositas sacralis*). The lower half is thin and sharp, and terminates in a projection called the **inferior lateral angle**; below this angle is a notch, which is converted into a foramen by articulation with the transverse process of the upper piece of the coccyx, and transmits the anterior division of the fifth sacral nerve. This lower, sharp border gives attachment to the greater and lesser sacro-sciatic ligaments, and to some fibres of the Gluteus maximus posteriorly, and to the Coccygeus in front.

Base (*basis oss. sacri*).—The base of the sacrum, which is broad and expanded, is directed upward and forward. In the middle is seen a large oval articular surface, which is connected with the under surface of the body of the last lumbar vertebra by a fibro-cartilaginous disk. It is bounded behind by the large, triangular orifice of the sacral canal. The orifice is formed behind by the laminæ and spinous process of the first sacral vertebra: the superior articular processes project from it on each side; they are oval, concave, directed backward and inward, like the superior articular processes of a lumbar vertebra; and in front of each articular process is an intervertebral notch, which forms the lower part of the foramen between the last lumbar and first sacral vertebra. Lastly, on each side of the large oval articular plate is a broad and flat triangular surface of bone, which extends outward, supports the Psoas magnus muscle and lumbo-sacral cord, and is continuous on each side with the iliac fossa. This is called the **ala of the sacrum** (*ala sacralis*), and gives attachment to a few of the fibres of the Iliacus muscle. The posterior part of the ala represents the transverse process of the first sacral segment.

Apex (*apex oss. sacri*).—The apex, directed downward and slightly forward, presents a small, oval, concave surface for articulation with the coccyx.

Spinal Canal.—The spinal canal in this region is called the **sacral canal** (*canalis sacralis*). It runs throughout the greater part of the bone; it is large and triangular in form above, small and flattened, from before backward, below. In this situation its posterior wall is incomplete, from the non-development of the laminæ and spinous processes (*hiatus sacralis*). It lodges the sacral nerves, and is perforated by the anterior and posterior sacral foramina, through which these pass out.

Structure.—It consists of much loose, spongy tissue within, invested externally by a thin layer of compact tissue.

Differences in the Sacrum of the Male and Female.—The sacrum in the female is shorter and wider than in the male; the lower half forms a greater angle with the upper, the upper half of the bone being nearly straight, the lower half presenting the greatest amount of curvature. The bone is also directed more obliquely backward, which increases the size of the pelvic cavity; but the sacro-vertebral angle projects less. In the male the curvature is more evenly distributed over the whole length of the bone, and is altogether greater than in the female.

Peculiarities of the Sacrum.—This bone, in some cases, consists of six pieces; occasionally, the number is reduced to four. Sometimes the bodies of the first and second segments are not joined or the laminæ and spinous processes have not coalesced. Occasionally, the upper pair of transverse tubercles are not joined to the rest of the bone on one or both sides; and, lastly, the sacral canal may be open for nearly the lower half of the bone, in consequence of the imperfect development of the laminæ and spinous processes. The sacrum, also, varies considerably with respect to its degree of curvature. From the examination of a large number of skeletons it would appear that in one set of cases the anterior surface of this bone was nearly straight, the curvature, which was very slight, affecting only its lower end. In another set of cases the bone was curved throughout its whole length, but especially toward its middle. In a third set the degree of curvature was less marked, and affected especially the lower third of the bone.

Development (Fig. 33).—The sacrum, formed by the union of five vertebræ, has *thirty-five* centres of ossification.

The **bodies** of the sacral vertebræ have each three ossific centres: one for the central part, and one for the epiphysial plates on its upper and under surface. Occasionally the primary centres for the bodies of the first and second piece of the sacrum are double.

The **arch** of each sacral vertebra is developed by two centres, one for each lamina. These unite with each other behind, and subsequently join the body.

The **lateral masses** have six additional centres, two for each of the first three vertebræ. These centres make their appearance above and to the outer side of the anterior sacral foramina (Fig. 33), and are developed into separate segments (Fig. 34); they are subsequently blended with each other, and with the bodies and transverse processes to form the lateral mass.

Lastly, each **lateral surface** of the sacrum is developed by two epiphysial plates (Fig. 35): one for the auricular surface, and one for the remaining part of the thin lateral edge of the bone.

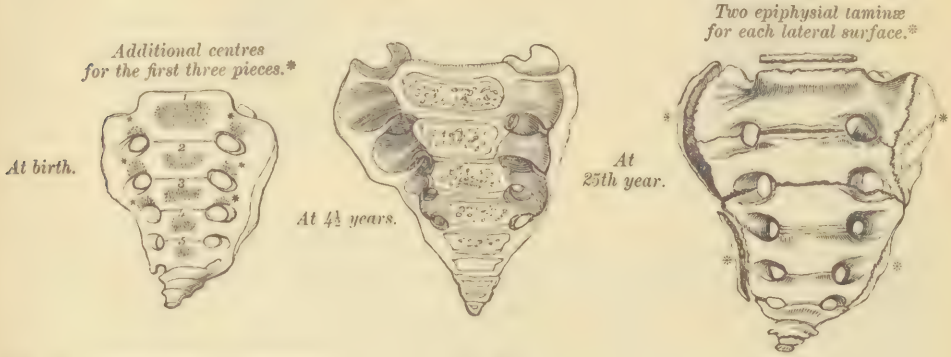


Fig. 33.—Development of the sacrum. Fig. 34. Fig. 35.

Period of Development.—At about the eighth or ninth week of fœtal life ossification of the central part of the bodies of the first three vertebræ commences, and at a somewhat later period that of the last two. Between the sixth and eighth months ossification of the laminæ takes place; and at about the same period the centres for the lateral masses for the first three sacral vertebræ make their appearance. The period at which the arch becomes completed by the junction of the laminæ with the bodies in front and with each other behind varies in different segments. The junction between the laminæ and the bodies takes place first in the lower vertebræ as early as the second year, but is not affected in the uppermost until the fifth or sixth year. About the sixteenth year the epiphyses for the upper and under surfaces of the bodies are formed, and between the eighteenth and twentieth years those for each lateral surface of the sacrum make their appearance. The bodies of the sacral vertebræ are, during early life, separated from each other by intervertebral disks. But about the eighteenth year the two lowest segments become joined together by ossification extending through the disk. This process gradually extends upward until all the segments become united, and the bone is completely formed from the twenty-fifth to the thirtieth year of life.

Articulations.—With four bones: the last lumbar vertebra, coccyx, and the two innominate bones.

Attachment of Muscles.—To eight pairs: in front, the Pyriformis and Coccygeus, and a portion of the Iliacus to the base of the bone; behind, the Gluteus maximus, Latissimus dorsi, Multifidus spinæ, and Erector spinæ, and sometimes the Extensor coccygis.

Coccyx (*os coccygis*).—The coccyx (*κόκκυξ, cuckoo*), so called from having been compared to a cuckoo's beak (Fig. 36), is usually formed of four small segments of bone, the most rudimentary parts of the vertebral column (**vertebræ coccygeæ** or **caudate vertebræ**). In each of the first three segments may be traced a rudimentary body, articular and transverse processes; the last piece (some-

times the third) is a mere nodule of bone, without distinct processes. All the segments are destitute of pedicles, laminæ, and spinous processes, and, consequently, of intervertebral foramina and spinal canal. The first segment is the largest; it resembles the lowermost sacral vertebra, and often exists as a separate

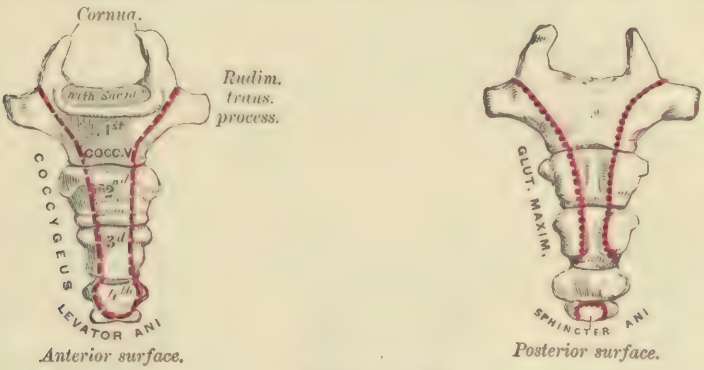


Fig. 36.—Coccyx.

piece; the last three, diminishing in size from above downward, are usually blended together so as to form a single bone. The gradual diminution in the size of the pieces gives this bone a triangular form, the base of the triangle joining the end of the sacrum. It presents for examination an anterior and posterior surface, two borders, a base, and an apex.

Surfaces. **Anterior Surface.**—The anterior surface is slightly concave, and marked with three transverse grooves, indicating the points of junction of the different pieces. It has attached to it the anterior sacro-coccygeal ligament and Levator ani muscle, and supports the lower end of the rectum.

Posterior Surface.—The posterior surface is convex, marked by transverse grooves similar to those on the anterior surface; and presents on each side a lineal row of tubercles, the rudimentary articular processes of the coccygeal vertebræ. Of these, the superior pair are large, and are called the **cornua of the coccyx** (*cornua coccygea*); they project upward, and articulate with the cornua of the sacrum, the junction between these two bones completing the fifth posterior sacral foramen for the transmission of the posterior division of the fifth sacral nerve.

Borders.—The lateral borders are thin, and present a series of small eminences, which represent the transverse processes of the coccygeal vertebræ. Of these, the first on each side is the largest, flattened from before backward, and often ascends to join the lower part of the thin lateral edge of the sacrum, thus completing the fifth anterior sacral foramen for the transmission of the anterior division of the fifth sacral nerve; the others diminish in size from above downward, and are often wanting. The borders of the coccyx are narrow, and give attachment on each side to the sacro-sciatic ligaments, to the Coccygeus muscles in front of the ligaments, and to the Gluteus maximus behind them.

Base.—The base presents an oval surface for articulation with the sacrum. This articulation is known as the **sacro-coccygeal symphysis** (*symphysis sacro-coccygea*).

Apex.—The apex is rounded, and has attached to it the tendon of the external Sphincter muscle. It is occasionally bifid, and sometimes deflected to one or other side.

Development.—The coccyx is developed by *four* centres, one for each piece. Occasionally one of the first three pieces of this bone is developed by two centres, placed side by side. The ossific nuclei make their appearance in the following order: in the first segment, shortly after birth; in the second piece, at from five

to ten years; in the third, from ten to fifteen years; in the fourth, from fifteen to twenty years. As age advances these various segments become united with each other from below upward, the union between the first and second segments being frequently delayed until after the age of twenty-five or thirty. At a late period of life, especially in females, the coccyx often becomes joined to the end of the sacrum.

Articulation.—With the sacrum.

Attachment of Muscles.—To four pairs and one single muscle: on either side, the Coccygeus; behind, the Gluteus maximus and Extensor coccygis, when present; at the apex, the Sphincter ani; and in front, the Levator ani.

The Vertebral Column or Spine in General.

The spinal column (*columna vertebralis*), formed by the junction of the vertebræ, is situated in the median line, at the posterior part of the trunk; its average length is about two feet two or three inches, measuring along the curved anterior surface of the column. Of this length the cervical part measures about five, the dorsal about eleven, the lumbar about seven inches, and the sacrum and coccyx the remainder. The female spine is about one inch less than that of the male.

Viewed in front, the **ventral surface** presents two pyramids joined together at their bases, the upper one being formed by all the vertebræ from the second cervical to the last lumbar, the lower one by the sacrum and coccyx. When examined more closely, the upper pyramid is seen to be formed of three smaller pyramids. The uppermost of these consists of the six lower cervical vertebræ, its apex being formed by the axis or second cervical, its base by the first dorsal. The second pyramid, which is inverted, is formed by the four upper dorsal vertebræ, the base being at the first dorsal, the smaller end at the fourth. The third pyramid commences at the fourth dorsal, and gradually increases in size to the fifth lumbar.

Viewed laterally (Fig. 37), the spinal column presents several curves which correspond to the different regions of the column, and are called cervical, dorsal, lumbar, and pelvic. The **cervical curve** commences at the apex of the odontoid process, and terminates at the

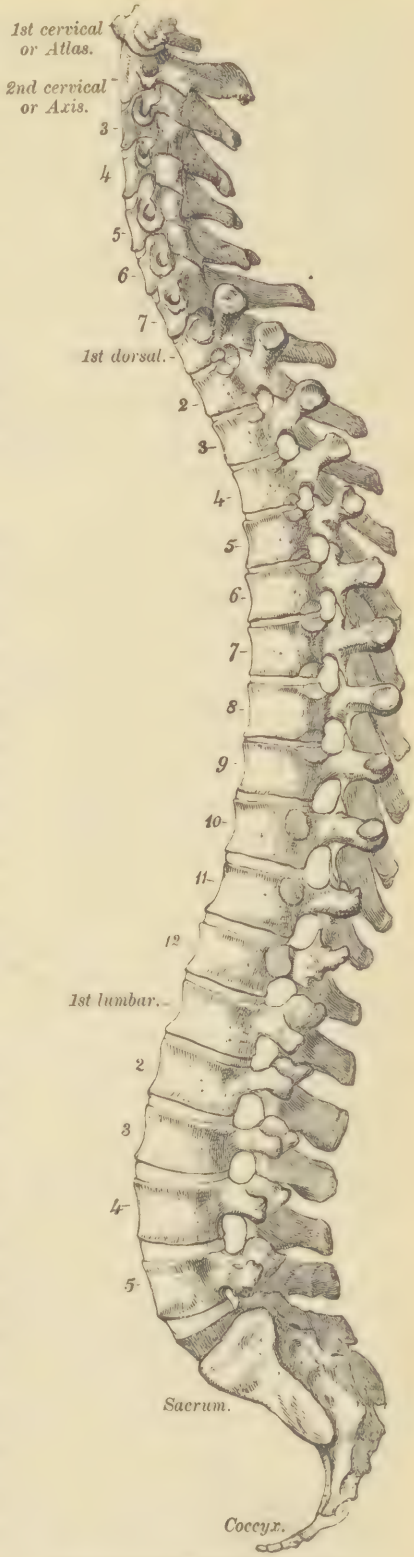


FIG. 37.—Lateral view of the spine.

middle of the second dorsal vertebra; it is convex in front, and is the least marked of all the curves. The **dorsal curve**, which is concave forward, commences at the middle of the second, and terminates at the middle of the twelfth dorsal vertebra. Its most prominent point behind corresponds to the spine of the seventh dorsal vertebra. The **lumbar curve** commences at the middle of the last dorsal vertebra, and terminates at the sacro-vertebral angle. It is convex anteriorly; the convexity of the lower three vertebræ being much greater than that of the upper two. The **pelvic curve** commences at the sacro-vertebral articulation and terminates at the point of the coccyx. It is concave anteriorly. The dorsal and pelvic curves are the primary curves, and begin to be formed at an early period of fœtal life, and are due to the shape of the bodies of the vertebræ. The cervical and lumbar curves are compensatory or secondary, and are developed after birth in order to maintain the erect position. They are due mainly to the shape of the intervertebral disks.

Some writers teach that the spine has a normal deviation to the right side. Quain, Hyrtl, and others maintain this view. The curve is said to be in the dorsal region. Bichat assigned muscular action as the chief cause of the curve. Most persons use the right arm in preference to the left, especially in making long-continued efforts, when the body is curved to the right side. In support of this explanation is the observation made by Béclard that in some individuals who were left-handed the lateral curvature was directed to the left side. Sappey and others deny the existence of this curve.

The movable part of the spinal column presents for examination an anterior, a posterior, and two lateral surfaces; a base, a summit, and the spinal canal.

Surfaces. Anterior Surface.—The anterior or **ventral** surface presents the bodies of the vertebræ separated in the recent state by the intervertebral disks. The bodies are broad in the cervical region, narrow in the upper part of the dorsal, and broadest in the lumbar region. The whole of this surface is convex transversely, concave from above downward in the dorsal region, and convex in the same direction in the cervical and lumbar regions.

Posterior Surface.—The posterior or **dorsal** surface presents in the median line the spinous processes. These are short, horizontal, with bifid extremities, in the cervical region. In the dorsal region they are directed obliquely above, assume almost a vertical direction in the middle, and are horizontal below, as are also the spines of the lumbar vertebræ. They are separated by considerable intervals in the loins, by narrower intervals in the neck, and are closely approximated in the middle of the dorsal region. Occasionally one of these processes deviates a little from the median line—a fact to be remembered in practice, as irregularities of this sort are attendant also on fractures or displacements of the spine. On either side of the spinous processes, extending the whole length of the column, is the **vertebral groove** formed by the laminæ in the cervical and lumbar regions, where it is shallow, and by the laminæ and transverse processes in the dorsal region, where it is deep and broad. In the recent state these grooves lodge the deep muscles of the back. External to each vertebral groove are the articular processes, and still more externally is the transverse process. In the dorsal region the latter processes stand backward, on a plane considerably posterior to the same processes in the cervical and lumbar regions. In the cervical region the transverse processes are placed in front of the articular processes, and on the outer side of the pedicles, between the intervertebral foramina. In the dorsal region they are posterior to the pedicles, intervertebral foramina, and articular processes. In the lumbar region they are placed also in front of the articular processes, but behind the intervertebral foramina.

Lateral Surfaces.—The lateral surfaces are separated from the posterior surface by the articular processes in the cervical and lumbar regions, and by the trans-

verse processes in the dorsal region. These surfaces present in front the sides of the bodies of the vertebræ, marked in the dorsal region by the facets for articulation with the heads of the ribs. More posteriorly are the intervertebral foramina, formed by the juxtaposition of the intervertebral notches, oval in shape, smallest in the cervical and upper part of the dorsal regions, and gradually increasing in size to the last lumbar vertebra. They are situated between the transverse processes in the neck, and in front of them in the back and loins, and transmit the spinal nerves.

Base.—The base of that portion of the vertebral column formed by the twenty-four movable vertebræ is formed by the under surface of the body of the fifth lumbar vertebra; and the **summit** by the upper surface of the atlas.

Spinal Canal (*canalis vertebralis*).—The vertebral or spinal canal follows the different curves of the spine; it is largest in those regions in which the spine enjoys the greatest freedom of movement, as in the neck and loins, where it is wide and triangular; and is narrow and rounded in the back, where motion is more limited. The centre of gravity of the spine is in the upper lumbar region, slightly to the right of the median plane (Struthers).

Surface Form.—The only parts of the vertebral column which lie closely under the skin, and so directly influence surface form, are the apices of the spinous processes. These are always distinguishable at the bottom of a median furrow, which, more or less evident, runs down the mesial line of the back from the external occipital protuberance above to the middle of the sacrum below. In the cervical region the furrow is between the Trapezii muscles; in the back and loins it is between the Erector spinæ muscles. In the neck the furrow is broad, and terminates in a conspicuous projection, which is caused by the spinous process of the seventh cervical vertebra (vertebra prominens). Above this the spinous process of the sixth cervical vertebra may sometimes be seen to form a projection; the other cervical spines are sunken, and are not visible, though the spine of the axis can be felt, and generally also the spines of the third, fourth, and fifth cervical vertebræ. In the dorsal region the furrow is shallow, and during stooping disappears, and then the spinous processes become more or less visible. The markings produced by these spines are small and close together. In the lumbar region the furrow is deep, and the situation of the lumbar spines is frequently indicated by little pits or depressions, especially if the muscles in the loins are well developed and the spine incurved. They are much larger and farther apart than in the dorsal region. In the sacral region the furrow is shallower, presenting a flattened area which terminates below at the most prominent part of the posterior surface of the sacrum, formed by the spinous process of the third sacral vertebra. At the bottom of the furrow may be felt the irregular posterior surface of the bone. Below this, in the deep groove leading to the anus, the coccyx may be felt. The only other portions of the vertebral column which can be felt from the surface are the transverse processes of three of the cervical vertebræ—viz., the first, the sixth, and the seventh. The transverse process of the atlas can be felt as a rounded nodule of bone just below and in front of the apex of the mastoid process, along the anterior border of the sternomastoid. The transverse process of the sixth cervical vertebra is of surgical importance. If deep pressure be made in the neck in the course of the carotid artery, opposite the cricoid cartilage, the prominent anterior tubercle of the transverse process of the sixth cervical vertebra can be felt. This has been named **Chassaignac's tubercle**, and against it the carotid artery may be most conveniently compressed by the finger. The transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra can also often be felt. Occasionally the anterior root, or costal process, is large and segmented off, forming a cervical rib.

Surgical Anatomy. It is frequently necessary to locate certain vertebræ. Several of them can be easily found and identified. The seventh cervical spine is conspicuously prominent, and when the skin above it has been marked with a blue pencil the spine of the sixth cervical above and of the first dorsal below may be located. The spine of the third dorsal vertebra is on a level with the root of the spine of the scapula. The spine of the fourth lumbar vertebra is on a level with the highest point of the iliac crest. When one or two vertebræ have been definitely recognized the other ones can be found by counting the spines from a fixed point or from fixed points. Over the fifth lumbar spine there is no prominence, but a depression. The third sacral spine is on a level with the posterior superior spines of the ilium. The level at which the spinal cord terminates should be known to the surgeon if he proposes to tap the dural sac (*lumbar puncture*), for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes or as a preliminary to the injection of cocaine or eucaine (*spinal anæsthesia*). In an adult the cord terminates at the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra, and the dural sac terminates opposite the body of the third sacral vertebra. In a child the cord terminates opposite the body of the third lumbar vertebra, and the dural sac ends at

about the same level as in an adult. Hence, in either a child or an adult, a puncture below the level of the fourth lumbar vertebra will inflict no injury upon the cord. In children the puncture is made just beneath the vertebral spine, and in adults about one-half an inch to either side of the vertebral spine, although, even in adults, the needle is made to enter the dura in the middle line. In either case the needle is directed upward and forward. As previously pointed out, the surgical anatomy of an infant's spine is not identical with the surgical anatomy of an adult's spine. An infant's spine is larger comparatively than an adult's spine, because the lower limbs are less developed in the former (A. H. Tubby). The umbilicus of an infant is opposite the body of the fourth lumbar vertebra; in an adult it is opposite the spine of the third lumbar vertebra. In an infant the base of the sternum is on a level with the top of the seventh cervical spine, and in an adult of the second dorsal spine (A. H. Tubby).

Occasionally the coalescence of the laminæ is not completed, and consequently a cleft is left in the arches of the vertebræ, through which a protrusion of the spinal membranes (dura mater and arachnoid), and sometimes of the spinal cord itself, takes place, constituting a malformation known as *spina bifida* or hydrorrhachitis. This disease is most common in the lumbosacral region; but it may occur in the dorsal or cervical region, or the arches throughout the whole length of the canal may remain unapproximated. In some rare cases, in consequence of the non-coalescence of the two primary centres from which the body is formed, a similar condition may occur in front of the canal, the bodies of the vertebræ being found cleft and the tumor projecting into the thorax, abdomen, or pelvis, between the lateral halves of the bodies affected.

The construction of the spinal column of a number of pieces, securely connected together and enjoying only a slight degree of movement between any two individual pieces, though permitting of a very considerable range of movement as a whole, allows a sufficient degree of mobility without any material diminution of strength. The main joints of which the spine is composed, together with the very varied movements to which it is subjected, render it liable to *sprains*, which may complicate other injuries or may exist alone; but so closely are the individual vertebræ articulated that these sprains are seldom severe, and an amount of violence sufficiently great to produce tearing of the ligaments would tend to cause a dislocation or fracture. The further safety of the column and its less liability to injury is provided for by its disposition in curves instead of in one straight line. For it is an elastic column, and must first bend before it breaks: under these circumstances, being made up of three curves, it represents three columns, and greater force is required to produce bending of a short column than of a longer one that is equal to it in breadth and material. Again, the safety of the column is provided for by the interposition of the intervertebral disks between the bodies of the vertebræ, which act as admirable buffers in counteracting the effects of violent jars or shocks. *Fracture dislocation* of the spine may be caused by direct or indirect violence, or by a combination of the two, as when a person, falling from a height, strikes against some prominence and is doubled over it. The fractures from indirect violence are the more common, and here the bodies of the vertebræ are compressed, whilst the arches are torn asunder; whilst in fractures from direct violence the arches are compressed and the bodies of the vertebræ separated from each other. It will therefore be seen that in both classes of injury the spinal marrow is the part least likely to be injured, and may escape damage even where there has been considerable lesion of the bony framework. For, as Mr. Jacobson states, "being lodged in the centre of the column, it occupies neutral ground in respect to forces which might cause fracture. For it is a law in mechanics that when a beam, as of timber, is exposed to breakage and the force does not exceed the limits of the strength of the material, one division resists compression, another laceration of the particles, while the third, between the two, is in a negative condition."[1] Applying this principle to the spine it will be seen that, whether the fracture dislocation be produced by direct violence or by indirect force, one segment, either the anterior or posterior, will be exposed to compression, the other to laceration, and the intermediate part, where the cord is situated, will be in a neutral state. When a fracture dislocation is produced by indirect violence the displacement is almost always the same, the upper segment being driven forward on the lower, so that the cord is compressed between the body of the vertebra below and the arch of the vertebra above.

The parts of the spine most liable to be injured are (1) the dorso-lumbar region, for this part is near the middle of the column, and there is therefore a greater amount of leverage, and moreover the portion above is comparatively fixed, and the vertebræ which form it, though much smaller, have nevertheless to bear almost as great a weight as those below; (2) the cervico-dorsal region, because here the flexible cervical portion of the spine joins the more fixed dorsal region; and (3) the atlanto-axial region, because it enjoys an extensive range of movement, and, being near the skull, is influenced by violence applied to the head. In fracture dislocation spinous processes and portions of the laminæ may be removed (*laminectomy*) in order to free the cord from pressure, and to permit the surgeon to explore, to arrest hemorrhage, to remove bone fragments, or to apply sutures. Laminectomy is also resorted to in some cases of *paraplegia* due to *Pott's disease* of the spine.

[1] Holmes's System of Surgery, vol. i. p. 529, 1883.

THE SKULL.

The skeleton of the head is called the **skull**. The **cranium** is the skull without the mandible. The **calvaria** or **cerebral cranium** is the skull without the bones of the face. The skull is supported on the summit of the vertebral column, and is of an oval shape, wider behind than in front. It is composed of a series of flattened or irregularly shaped bones which, with one exception (the lower jaw), are immovably joined together. It is divided into two parts, the **cerebral cranium** or **calvaria** and the **visceral cranium** or **face**, the former of which constitutes a case for the accommodation and protection of the brain, while opening on the face are the orifices of the nose and mouth; between the cerebral cranium above and the face below the orbital cavities are situated. The **cerebral cranium** (*κράνος*, a helmet) is composed of *eight* bones—viz., the **occipital**, two **parietal**, **frontal**, two **temporal**, **sphenoid**, and **ethmoid**. The face is composed of *fourteen* bones—viz., the two **nasal**, two **superior maxillary**, two **lachrymal**, two **malar**, two **palate**, two **inferior turbinated**, **vomer**, and **inferior maxillary** or **mandible**. The **ossiculi auditus**, the **teeth**, and **Wormian bones** are not included in this enumeration.

- *Skull*, 22 *bones*
  - *Cranium*, 8 *bones*
    - Occipital.
    - Two Parietal.
    - Frontal.
    - Two Temporal.
    - Sphenoid.
    - Ethmoid.
  - *Face*, 14 *bones*
    - Two Nasal.
    - Two Superior Maxillary.
    - Two Lachrymal.
    - Two Malar.
    - Two Palate.
    - Two Inferior Turbinated.
    - Vomer.
    - Inferior Maxillary or Mandible.

The Hyoid Bone, situated at the root of the tongue and attached to the base of the skull by ligaments, has also to be considered in this section.

THE CEREBRAL CRANIUM (CRANIUM CEREBRALE) (THE CALVARIA).

The Occipital Bone (Os Occipitale).

The occipital bone (*ob*, *caput*, against the head) is situated at the back part and base of the cranium, is trapezoid in shape and is much curved on itself (Fig. 38). It presents at its front and lower part a large oval aperture, the **foramen magnum** (*foramen occipitale magnum*), by which the cranial cavity communicates with the spinal canal. The portion of bone behind this opening is flat and expanded and forms the **tabula**, **tabular portion**, or **squamous part** (*squama occipitalis*); the portion in front is a thick, elongated mass of bone, the **basilar process** (*pars basilaris*); while on each side of the foramen is situated a **lateral** or **condylic portion** (*pars lateralis*), bearing the condyle, by which the bone articulates with the atlas. The bone presents for examination two surfaces, four borders, and four angles.

Surfaces. **External Surface.**—The external surface is convex. Midway between the summit of the bone and the posterior margin of the foramen magnum is a prominent tubercle, the **inion** or **external occipital protuberance** (*protuberantia*

occipitalis externa, and, descending from it as far as the foramen, a vertical ridge, the **external occipital crest** (*crista occipitalis externa*). This protuberance and crest give attachment to the ligamentum nuchæ, and vary in prominence in different skulls. Passing outward from the occipital protuberance is a semicircular ridge on each side, the **superior curved** or **superior nuchal line** (*linea nuchæ superior*). Above this line there is often a second less distinctly marked ridge, called the **highest curved line** (*linea nuchæ suprema*); to it the epicranial aponeurosis is attached. The bone between these two lines is smoother and denser than the rest of the surface. Running parallel with these from the middle of the crest is another semicircular ridge on each side, the **inferior curved** or **inferior nuchal line** (*linea nuchæ inferior*). The surface of the bone above the linea suprema is rough and porous, and in the recent state is covered by the

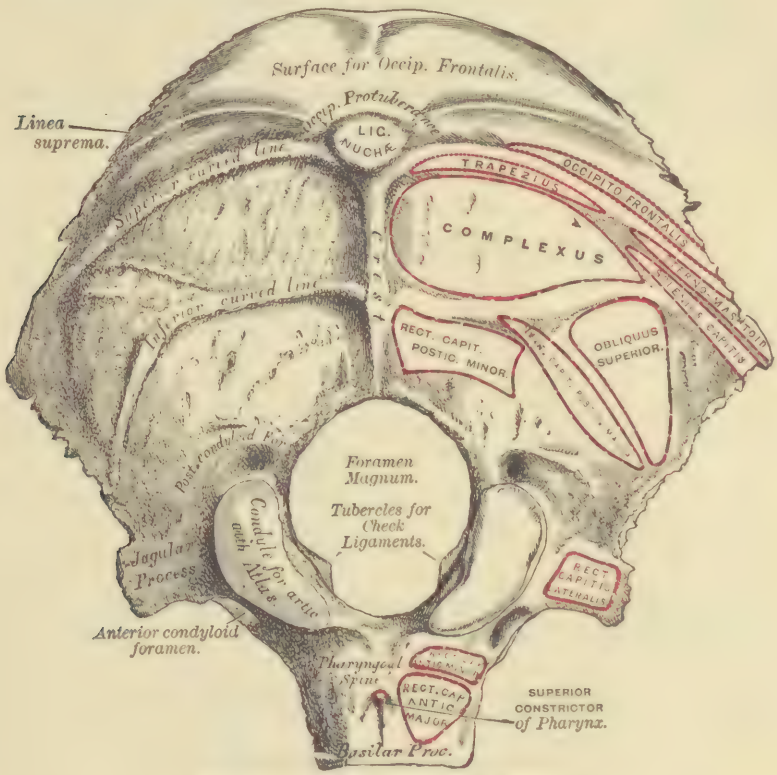


FIG. 38.—Occipital bone. Outer surface.

Occipito-frontalis muscle. It is called the **occipital portion** or the *planum occipitale*. The superior and inferior curved lines, together with the surfaces of bone between and below them, serve for the attachment of several muscles. The superior curved line gives attachment internally to the Trapezius, externally to the muscular origin of the Occipito-frontalis, and to the Sterno-cleido-mastoid to the extent shown in Fig. 38; the depressions between the curved lines to the Complexus internally, the Splenius capitis and Obliquus capitis superior externally. The inferior curved line and the depressions below it afford insertion to the Rectus capitis posticus, major and minor. The portion of the tabula below the superior curved line is called the **nuchal plane** (*planum nuchale*), and it gives attachment to certain of the neck muscles.

The **foramen magnum** (*foramen occipitale magnum*) is a large, oval aperture, its long diameter extending from before backward. It transmits the lower portion

of the medulla oblongata and its membranes, the spinal accessory nerves, the vertebral arteries, the anterior and posterior spinal arteries, and the occipito-axial ligaments. Its back part is wide for the transmission of the medulla, and the corresponding margin rough for the attachment of the dura mater enclosing it; the fore part is narrower, being encroached upon by the condyles; it has projecting toward it, from below, the odontoid process, and its margins are smooth and bevelled internally to support the medulla oblongata. The middle of the anterior wall of the foramen magnum is called by Broca the **basion.** The **lateral or condylic portions** (*partes laterales*) are on either side of the foramen magnum and bear the condyles for articulation with the atlas. Each condyle (*condylus occipitalis*) is convex, oval, or reniform in shape, and directed downward and outward. The condyles converge in front, and encroach slightly upon the anterior segment of the foramen. On the inner border of each condyle is a rough tubercle for the attachment of the ligaments (*check*) which connect this bone with the odontoid process of the axis; while external to them is a rough tubercular prominence, the **transverse** or **jugular process** (*processus jugularis*), channelled in front by a deep notch (*incisura jugularis*), which forms part of the **jugular foramen** or *foramen lacerum posterius*. The under surface of this process presents an eminence (*processus intrajugularis*) which represents the paramastoid process of some mammals. The eminence is occasionally large, and extends as low as the transverse process of the atlas. This surface affords attachment to the Rectus capitis lateralis muscle and to the lateral occipito-atlantal ligament; its upper or cerebral surface presents a deep groove which lodges part of the lateral sinus, while its external surface is marked by a quadrilateral rough facet, covered with cartilage in the fresh state, and articulating with a similar surface on the petrous portion of the temporal bone. On the outer side of each condyle, near its fore part, is a foramen, the **anterior condyloid foramen** (*canalis hypoglossi* or the *hypoglossal canal*); it is directed downward, outward, and forward, and transmits the hypoglossal nerve, and occasionally a meningeal branch of the ascending pharyngeal artery. This foramen is sometimes double. Behind each condyle is a fossa[1] (*fossa condyloidea*), sometimes perforated at the bottom by a foramen, the **posterior condyloid foramen** (*canalis condyloideus*), for the transmission of a vein to the lateral sinus. The **basilar process** (*pars basilaris*) is a strong quadrilateral plate of bone, which is wider behind than in front, and is situated in front of the foramen magnum. Its under surface, which is rough, presents in the median line a tubercular ridge, the **pharyngeal spine** or **tubercle** (*tuberculum pharyngeum*), for the attachment of the tendinous raphé and Superior constrictor of the pharynx; and on each side of it rough depressions for the attachment of the Rectus capitis anticus, major and minor.

Internal Surface.—The internal or cerebral surface (Fig. 39) is deeply concave. The posterior or tabular part is divided by a **crucial ridge** into four fossæ. The two superior fossæ receive the occipital lobes of the cerebrum, and present slight eminences and depressions corresponding to their convolutions. The two inferior, which receive the hemispheres of the cerebellum, are larger than the former, and comparatively smooth; both are marked by slight grooves for the lodgement of arteries. At the point of meeting of the four divisions of the crucial ridge is an eminence, the **internal occipital protuberance** (*protuberantia occipitalis interna*). It nearly corresponds to that on the outer surface, though it is often on a slightly higher level, and is perforated by one or more large vascular foramina. From this eminence the superior division of the crucial ridge runs upward to the superior angle of the bone; it presents a deep groove, the **sagittal sulcus** (*sulcus sagit-*

[1] This fossa presents many variations in size. It is usually shallow, and the foramen small; occasionally wanting on one or both sides. Sometimes both fossa and foramen are large, but confined to one side only; more rarely, the fossa and foramen are very large on both sides.

talis), for the superior longitudinal sinus. The margins of the groove give attachment to the falx cerebri. The inferior division, the **internal occipital crest** (*crista occipitalis interna*), runs to the posterior margin of the foramen magnum, on the edge of which it becomes gradually lost; this ridge, which is bifurcated below, serves

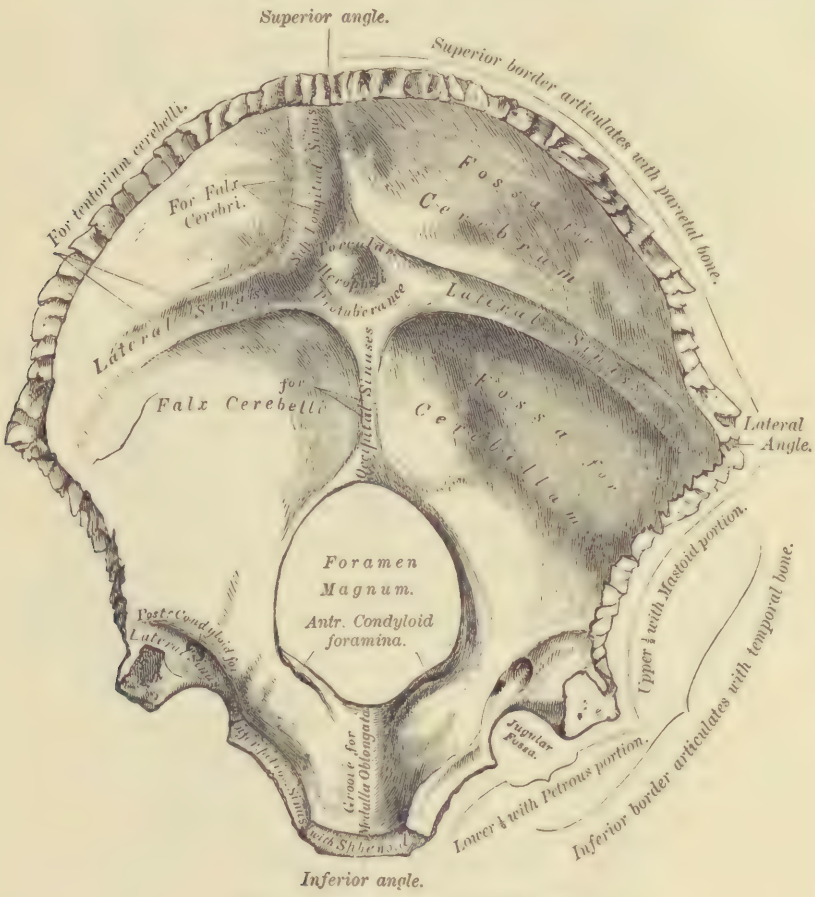


FIG. 39.—Occipital bone. Inner surface.

for the attachment of the falx cerebelli. It is usually marked by a single groove, which commences at the back part of the foramen magnum and lodges the occipital sinus. Occasionally the groove is double where two sinuses exist. A **transverse groove** (*sulcus transversus*) passes outward on each side to the lateral angle. The grooves are deep channels for the lodgement of the lateral sinuses, their prominent margins affording attachment to the tentorium cerebelli.[1] At the point of meeting of these grooves is a depression, the **torcular Herophili**,[2] placed a little to one or the other side of the internal occipital protuberance. More anteriorly is the foramen magnum, and on each side of it, but nearer its anterior than its posterior part, the internal openings of the anterior condyloid foramen. On the superior aspect of the lateral portion of the bone the **jugular tubercle** (*tuberculum jugulare*) is seen. This corresponds to the portion of bone which roofs in the anterior condyloid foramen. The internal openings of the posterior condyloid

[1] Usually one of the transverse grooves is deeper and broader than the other; occasionally, both grooves are of equal depth and breadth, or both equally indistinct. The broader of the two transverse grooves is nearly always continuous with the vertical groove for the superior longitudinal sinus.

[2] The columns of blood coming in different directions were supposed to be *pressed* together at this point (*torcular*, a wine-press).

foramina are a little external and posterior to the openings of the anterior condyloid foramina, protected by a small arch of bone. At this part of the internal surface there is a very deep groove in which the posterior condyloid foramen, when it exists, has its termination. This groove is continuous, in the complete skull, with the transverse groove on the posterior part of the bone, and lodges the end of the same sinus, the lateral. In front of the foramen magnum is the basilar process, presenting a shallow depression, the **basilar groove** (*clivus*), which slopes from behind, upward and forward, and supports the medulla oblongata and part of the pons Varolii, and on each side of the basilar process is a narrow channel, which, when united with a similar channel on the petrous portion of the temporal bone, forms a groove (*sulcus petrosus inferior*) which lodges the inferior petrosal sinus.

Borders. **Superior Border.**—The superior border, **lambdoidal margin** (*margo lambdoideus*), extends on each side from the superior to the lateral angle, is deeply serrated for articulation with the parietal bone, and forms, by this union, the **lambdoid suture.**

Inferior Border.—The inferior border extends from the lateral to the inferior angle; its upper half, **mastoid margin** (*margo mastoideus*), is rough, and articulates with the mastoid portion of the temporal, forming the **masto-occipital suture**; the inferior half articulates with the petrous portion of the temporal, forming the **petro-occipital suture**; these two portions are separated from one another by the **jugular process.** In front of this process is a deep notch, which, with a similar one on the petrous portion of the temporal, forms the **jugular foramen** (*foramen lacerum posterius*). This notch is occasionally subdivided into two parts by a small process of bone (*processus intrajugularis*), and it generally presents an aperture at its upper part, the internal opening of the posterior condyloid foramen.

Angles. **Superior Angle.**—The superior angle is received into the interval between the posterior superior angles of the two parietal bones; it corresponds with that part of the skull in the fœtus which is called the **posterior fontanelle** (*lambda*).

Inferior Angle.—The inferior angle is represented by the square-shaped surface of the basilar process. At an early period of life a layer of cartilage separates this part of the bone from the sphenoid, but in the adult the union between them is osseous.

Lateral Angles.—The lateral angles correspond to the outer ends of the transverse grooves, and are received into the interval between the posterior inferior angles of the parietal and the mastoid portion of the temporal. The junction of the occipital, parietal, and temporal bones was named the **asterion** by Broca.

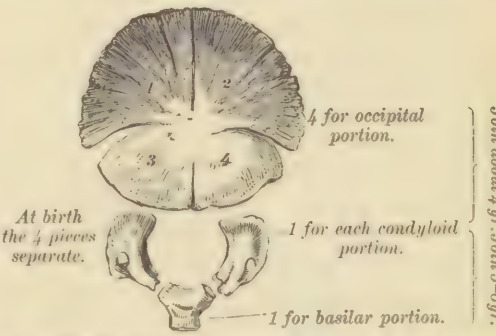


Fig. 40.—Development of occipital bone. By seven centres.

Structure. — The occipital bone consists of two compact laminæ, called the **outer** and **inner tables,** having between them the diploic tissue; this bone is especially thick at the ridges, protuberances, condyles, and anterior part of the basilar process; while at the bottom of the fossæ, especially the inferior, it is thin, semitransparent, and destitute of diploë.

Development (Fig. 40).—At birth the bone consists of four distinct parts: a **tabular squamous** or **expanded portion,** which lies behind the foramen magnum; two **condylic** parts, which form the sides of the foramen; and a **basilar** part, which lies

in front of the foramen. The number of nuclei for the tabular part vary. As a rule, there are four, but there may be only one (Blandin) or as many as eight (Meckel). They appear about the eighth week of fœtal life, and soon unite to form a single piece, which is, however, fissured in the direction indicated in Fig. 40. The basilar and two condyloid portions are each developed from a single nucleus, which appears a little later. The upper portion of the tabular surface —that is to say, the portion above the transverse fissure—is developed from membrane, and may remain separated from the rest of the bone throughout life, when it constitutes the **interparietal bone,** which is called the **os incae,** because of its frequent occurrence in Peruvian skulls. The rest of the bone is developed from cartilage. At about the fourth year the tabular and the two condyloid pieces join, and about the sixth year the bone consists of a single piece. At a later period, between the eighteenth and twenty-fifth years, the occipital and sphenoid become united, forming a single bone.

Articulations.—With six bones: two parietal, two temporal, sphenoid, and atlas.

Attachment of Muscles.—To twelve pairs: to the superior curved line are attached the Occipito-frontalis, Trapezius, and Sterno-cleido-mastoid. To the space between the curved lines, the Complexus,[1] Splenius capitis, and Obliquus capitis superior; to the inferior curved line, and the space between it and the foramen magnum, the Rectus capitis posticus, major and minor; to the transverse process, the Rectus capitis lateralis; and to the basilar process, the Rectus capitis anticus, major and minor, and Superior constrictor of the pharynx.

The Parietal Bone (Os Parietale).

The parietal bones (*paries*, a wall) are paired bones and form, by their union, the sides and roof of the cerebral cranium. Each bone is of an irregular quadrilateral form, and presents for examination two surfaces, four borders, and four angles.

Surfaces. External Surface (*facies parietalis*).—The external surface (Fig. 41) is convex, smooth, and marked about its centre by an eminence called the **parietal eminence** (*tuber parietale*), which indicates the point where ossification commenced. Crossing the middle of the bone in an arched direction are two well-marked curved lines or ridges, the **upper** and **lower temporal lines** or **ridges** (*linea temporalis superior et inferior*); the former gives attachment to the temporal fascia, while the latter indicates the upper limit of the origin of the Temporal muscle. These lines form the **temporal crest.** Above these ridges the surface of the bone is rough and porous, and covered by the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis; between them the bone is smoother and more polished than the rest; below them the bone forms part of the **temporal fossa.** This portion of bone is called the **planum temporale,** and affords attachment to the Temporal muscle. The **superior stephanion** is the intersection of the upper temporal ridge with the coronal suture. The **inferior stephanion** is the intersection of the lower temporal ridge with the coronal suture. At the back part of the superior border, close to the sagittal suture, is a small foramen, the **parietal foramen** (*foramen parietale*), which transmits the emissary vein of Santorini from the scalp to the superior longitudinal sinus. It sometimes also transmits a small branch of the occipital artery. Its existence is not constant, and its size varies considerably. The point on the sagittal suture, between the parietal foramina, is the **obelion.**

Internal or Cerebral Surface (*facies cerebralis*).—The internal surface (Fig. 42) is concave, presents depressions for lodging the convolutions of the cerebrum and numerous furrows, for the ramifications of the middle meningeal artery; the

[1] To these the Biventer cervicis should be added, if it is regarded as a separate muscle.

FIG. 41.—Left parietal bone. External surface.

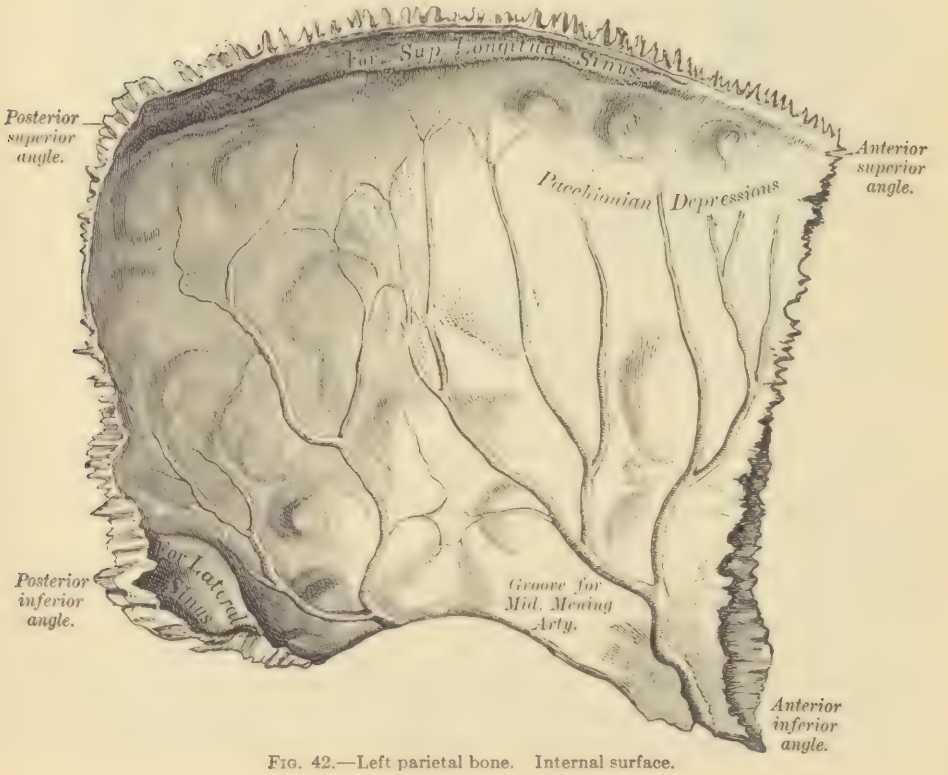


FIG. 42.—Left parietal bone. Internal surface.

latter runs upward and backward from the anterior inferior angle and from the central and posterior part of the lower border of the bone. The depression for the middle meningeal artery at the anterior and inferior portions of the cerebral surface of the bone is called the *sulcus arteriosus*. Sometimes a distinct canal exists for the artery, but it never remains a canal for a long distance. Along the upper margin of the bone is part of a shallow groove, which, when joined to the opposite parietal, forms a channel for the **superior longitudinal sinus** (the *sulcus sagittalis*). The elevated edges of the groove afford attachment to the falx cerebri. Near the groove are seen several depressions, **Pacchionian depressions** (*foveolæ granulares* [*Pacchioni*]). They are most frequently found in the skulls of old persons, and lodge the Pacchionian bodies. The internal opening of the parietal foramen is also seen when that aperture exists. On the inner surface of the posterior inferior portion of the bone is a portion of the groove for the lodgement of the lateral sinus (*sulcus transversus*).

Borders. Superior Border.—The superior border, **sagittal margin** (*margo sagittalis*), the longest and thickest, is dentated to articulate with its fellow of the opposite side, forming the **sagittal suture.**

Inferior Border.—The inferior border, **squamous margin** (*margo squamosus*), is divided into three parts: of these, the anterior is thin and pointed, bevelled at the expense of the outer surface, and overlapped by the tip of the great wing of the sphenoid; the middle portion is arched, bevelled at the expense of the outer surface, and overlapped by the squamous portion of the temporal; the posterior portion is thick and serrated for articulation with the mastoid portion of the temporal.

Anterior Border.—The anterior border, **frontal margin** (*margo frontalis*), deeply serrated, is bevelled at the expense of the outer surface above and of the inner below; it articulates with the frontal bone, forming the **coronal suture.**

Posterior Border.—The posterior border, **occipital margin** (*margo occipitalis*), deeply denticulated, articulates with the occipital, forming the **lambdoid suture.**

Angles. Anterior Superior Angle (*angulus frontalis*).—The anterior superior or frontal angle, thin and pointed, corresponds with that portion of the skull which in the fœtus is membranous, and is called the **anterior fontanelle** (*bregma*).

Anterior Inferior Angle (*angulus sphenoidalis*).—The anterior inferior or sphenoidal angle is thin and lengthened, being received in the interval between the great wing of the sphenoid and the frontal. Its inner surface is marked by a deep groove, sometimes a canal, for the anterior branch of the middle meningeal artery. At the anterior inferior angle the parietal, temporal, and frontal bones and the greater wing of the sphenoid bone meet. This spot is called the **pterion.**

Posterior Superior Angle (*angulus occipitalis*).—The posterior superior or occipital angle corresponds with the junction of the sagittal and lambdoid sutures. In the fœtus this part of the skull is membranous, and is called the **posterior fontanelle** (*lambda*).

Posterior Inferior Angle (*angulus mastoideus*.—The posterior inferior or mastoid angle articulates with the mastoid portion of the temporal bone, and generally presents on its inner surface a broad, shallow groove for lodging part of the lateral sinus.

Development.—The parietal bone is formed in membrane, being developed by one centre, which corresponds with the parietal eminence, and makes its first appearance about the seventh or eighth week of fœtal life. Ossification gradually extends from the centre to the circumference of the bone: the angles are consequently the parts last formed, and it is in their situation that the fontanelles exist previous to the completion of the growth of the bone. Occasionally the parietal bone is divided into two parts, upper and lower, by an antero-posterior suture.

Articulations.—With five bones: the opposite parietal, the occipital, frontal, temporal, and sphenoid.

Attachment of Muscles.—One only, the Temporal.

The Frontal Bone (Os Frontale).

The frontal bone (*frons*, the forehead) resembles a cockle-shell in form, and consists of two portions—a **vertical** or **frontal** portion, situated at the anterior part of the cranium, forming the forehead; and a **horizontal** or **orbital** portion, which enters into the formation of the roof of the orbits and nasal fossæ.

Vertical Portion of the Frontal Bone (Pars Frontalis).

Surfaces. **External Surface** (*facies frontalis*) (Fig. 43).—In the median line, traversing the bone from the upper to the lower part, is occasionally seen a slightly elevated ridge, and in young subjects a suture, the **frontal** (*metopic*) **suture,** which represents the line of union of the two lateral halves of which the

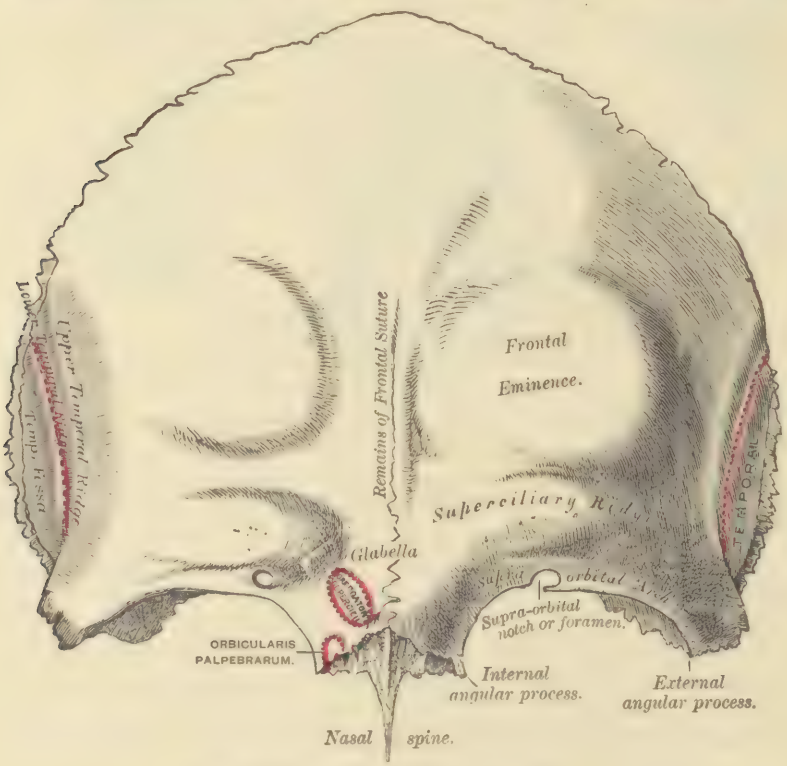


Fig. 43.—Frontal bone. Outer surface.

bone consists at an early period of life; in the adult this suture is usually obliterated and the bone forms one piece; traces of the obliterated suture are, however, generally perceptible at the lower part. On either side of this ridge, a little below the centre of the bone, is a rounded eminence, the **frontal eminence** (*tuber frontale*). These eminences vary in size in different individuals, and are occasionally unsymmetrical in the same subject. They are especially prominent in cases of well-marked cerebral development. The whole surface of the bone above this part is smooth, and covered by the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis muscle. Below the frontal eminence and separated from it by a slight

groove is the **superciliary ridge** (*arcus superciliaris*), broad internally, where it is continuous with the nasal eminence, but less distinct as it arches outward. These ridges are caused by the projection outward of the frontal air sinuses,[1] and give attachment to the Orbicularis palpebrarum and Corrugator supercilii. Between the two superciliary ridges is a smooth, flat surface, the **glabella.** Nearly corresponding with the glabella is the *ophryon*, a point in the mid-line on a level with the upper border of the eyebrows, which is the centre of the narrowest transverse diameter of the forehead. Beneath the superciliary ridge is the **orbital margin** or **supraorbital arch** (*margo supraorbitalis*), a curved and prominent margin, which forms the upper boundary of the orbit and separates the vertical from the horizontal portion of the bone. The outer part of the arch is sharp and prominent, affording to the eye, in that situation, considerable protection from injury; the inner part is less prominent. At the junction of the internal and middle third of this arch is a notch, sometimes converted into a foramen, and called the **supraorbital notch** or **foramen** (*incisura supraorbitalis* or *foramen supraorbitale*). It transmits the supraorbital artery, vein, and nerve. A small aperture is seen in the upper part of the notch, which transmits a vein from the diploë to join the supraorbital vein. To the median side of the supraorbital notch there is often a notch (*incisura frontalis*) for the passage of the frontal artery and frontal nerve. The supraorbital arch terminates externally in the **external angular process** (*processus zygomaticus*) and internally in the **internal angular process.** The external angular process is strong, prominent, and articulates with the malar bone; running upward and backward from it are two well-marked lines, which, commencing together from the external angular process as the **temporal ridge, crest** or **line** (*linea temporalis*), soon diverge from each other and run in a curved direction across the bone. These are the **upper** and **lower temporal ridges**; the upper gives attachment to the temporal fascia, the lower to the Temporal muscle. Beneath them is a slight concavity that forms the anterior part of the temporal fossa and gives origin to the Temporal muscle. The internal angular processes are less marked than the external, and articulate with the lachrymal bones. Between the internal angular processes is a rough, uneven interval, the **nasal notch,** which articulates in the middle line with the nasal bone, and on either side with the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone. From the concavity of this notch projects a process, the **nasal process,** which extends beneath the nasal bones and nasal processes of the superior maxillary bones and supports the bridge of the nose. On the under surface of this is a long, pointed process, the **nasal** or **frontal spine** (*spina nasalis* or *frontalis*), and on either side a small grooved surface enters into the formation of the roof of the nasal fossa. The nasal spine forms part of the septum of the nose, articulating in front with the nasal bones and behind with the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid. The junction of the nasal and frontal bones is called the **nasion.**

Internal Surface (*cerebral surface, facies cerebralis*) (Fig. 44).—Along the middle line is a vertical groove, the **sulcus sagittalis,** the edges of which unite below to form a ridge, the **frontal crest** (*crista frontalis*); the groove lodges the superior longitudinal sinus, whilst its margins afford attachment to the falx cerebri. The crest terminates below at a small notch which is converted into a foramen by articulation with the ethmoid. It is called the **foramen cæcum,** and varies in size in different subjects: it is sometimes partially or completely impervious,

[1] Some confusion is occasioned to students commencing the study of anatomy by the name "sinuses" having been given to two perfectly different kinds of spaces connected with the skull. It may be as well, therefore, to state here at the outset, that the "sinuses" in the interior of the cranium which produce the grooves on the inner surface of the bones are venous channels along which the blood runs in its passage back from the brain, while the "sinuses" external to the cranial cavity (the frontal sphenoidal, ethmoidal, and maxillary) are hollow spaces in the bones themselves which communicate with the nostrils, and contain air.

lodges a process of the falx cerebri, and when open transmits a vein from the lining membrane of the nose to the superior longitudinal sinus. On either side of the groove the bone is deeply concave, presenting depressions for the convolutions of the brain, and numerous small furrows for lodging the rami-

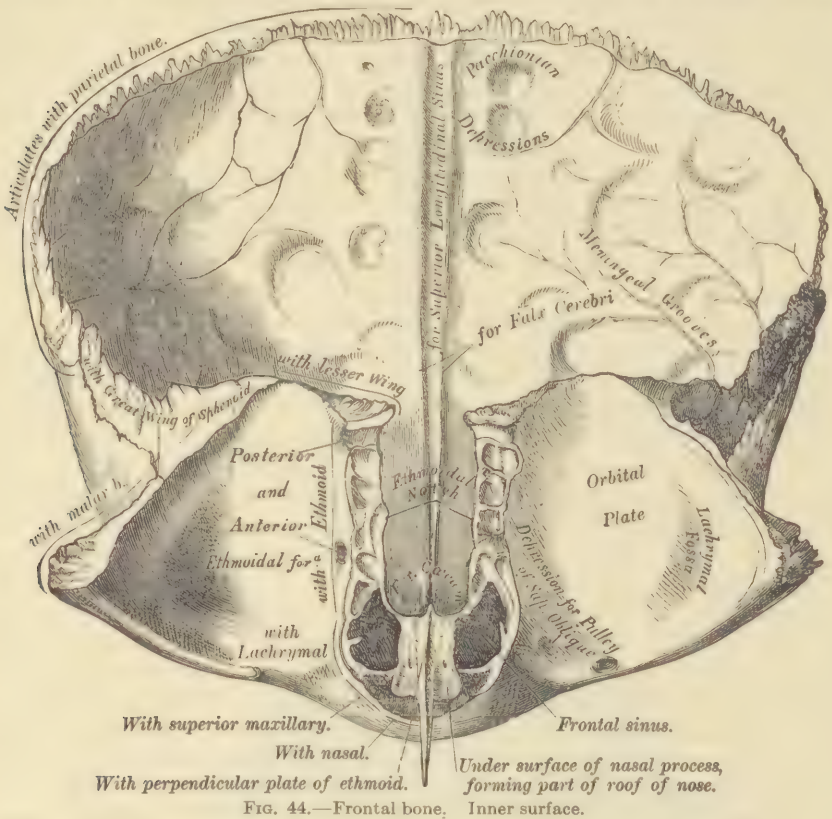


FIG. 44.—Frontal bone. Inner surface.

fications of the anterior branches of the middle meningeal arteries. Several small irregular fossæ are seen also on either side of the groove, for the reception of the Pacchionian bodies.

Border.—The border of the vertical portion is thick, strongly serrated, bevelled at the expense of the internal table above, where it rests upon the parietal bones, and at the expense of the external table at each side, where it receives the lateral pressure of those bones; this border is continued below into a triangular rough surface which articulates with the great wing of the sphenoid.

Structure.—The vertical portion and external angular processes are very thick, consisting of diploic tissue contained between two compact laminæ.

Horizontal or Orbital Portion of the Frontal Bone (Pars Orbitalis).

This portion of the bone consists of two thin plates, the **orbital plates**, which form the vault of the orbit, separated from one another by a median gap, the **ethmoidal notch**.

Surfaces. External Surface.—The inferior or external surface of each orbital plate (*facies orbitalis*) consists of a smooth, concave, triangular lamina of bone, marked at its anterior and external part (immediately beneath the external angular process) by a shallow depression, the **lachrymal fossa** (*fossa glandulæ lacrimalis*) for lodging the lachrymal gland; and at its anterior and internal part

by a depression (sometimes a small tubercle), the **trochlear fossa** (*fovea trochlearis*), for the attachment of the cartilaginous pulley of the Superior oblique muscle of the eye. The **ethmoidal notch** (*incisura ethmoidalis*) separates the two orbital plates; it is quadrilateral, and filled up, when the bones are united, by the cribriform plate of the ethmoid. The margins of this notch present several half-cells, which, when united with corresponding half-cells on the upper surface of the ethmoid, complete the **ethmoidal cells**; two grooves are also seen crossing these edges transversely; they are converted into canals by articulation with the ethmoid, and are called the **anterior** and **posterior ethmoidal foramina** or **canals** (*foramen ethmoidale anterius* and *foramen ethmoidale posterius*): they open on the inner wall of the orbit. The anterior one transmits the nasal nerve and anterior ethmoidal vessels, the posterior one the posterior ethmoidal vessels. In front of the ethmoidal notch, on each side of the nasal spine, is the opening of the **frontal air sinus** (*sinus frontalis*). These are two irregular cavities, which extend upward and outward, a variable distance, between the two tables of the skull, and are separated from one another by a thin, bony septum (*septum sinuum frontalium*), which is often displaced to one side. Within the sinuses imperfect trabeculæ of bone often exist. The sinuses are beneath and give rise to the prominences above the supraorbital arches called the **superciliary ridges** (*arcus superciliares*). The frontal air sinuses are absent at birth, become apparent about the seventh year of life, and from this period until the age of twenty increase gradually in size. Sometimes, however, the sinuses remain very small or never develop at all—or one side may be large and the other small—or one may exist on one side and be absent on the other.[1] The right sinus is usually the larger. These cavities are larger in men than in women. The floor of each sinus is very thin and is over the orbit and the upper border of the lateral mass of the ethmoid. The thinnest portion of the floor is at the upper and inner angle of the orbit, and at this point pus is apt to point in cases of empyema of the sinus. The frontal sinuses are lined by mucous membrane and each sinus communicates with the middle meatus of the nose by the infundibulum and part of the semilunar hiatus. In some cases the sinuses communicate with each other by means of an aperture in the septum and occasionally join the sinus in the crista galli of the ethmoid.[2]

Internal Surface (*cerebral surface, facies cerebralis*).—The internal surface of the horizontal portion presents the convex upper surfaces of the orbital plates, separated from each other in the middle line by the ethmoidal notch, and marked by eminences and depressions for the convolutions of the frontal lobes of the brain.

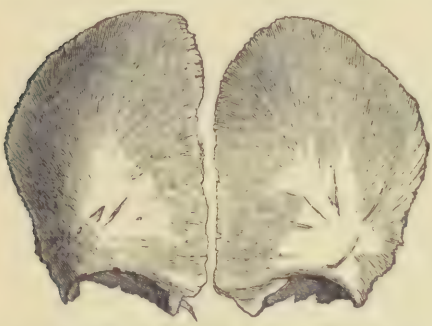


Fig. 45.—Frontal bone at birth. Developed by two lateral halves.

Border.—The border of the horizontal portion is thin, serrated, and articulates with the lesser wing of the sphenoid.

Structure.—The horizontal portion is thin, translucent, and composed entirely of compact tissue; hence the facility with which instruments can penetrate the cranium through this part of the orbit.

Development (Fig. 45).—The frontal bone is formed in membrane, being developed by two centres, one for each lateral half, which make their appearance about the seventh or eighth week, above the orbital arches. From this point ossification extends, in a radiating manner, upward into the forehead and back-

[1] Dr. D. Kerfoot Shute. Article on the Skull, in Reference Handbook of the Medical Sciences. [2] Ibid.

ward over the orbit. At birth the bone consists of two pieces, which afterward become united, along the middle line, by a suture which runs from the vertex to the root of the nose. This suture usually becomes obliterated within a few years after birth; but it occasionally remains throughout life, constituting the **metopic** suture. Secondary centres of ossification appear for the nasal spine—one on either side of the internal angular process where it articulates with the lachrymal bone; and sometimes there is one on either side at the lower end of the coronal suture. This latter centre sometimes remains ununited, and is known as the **pterion ossicle**, or it may join with the parietal, sphenoid, or temporal bone.

Articulations.—With twelve bones: two parietal, the sphenoid, the ethmoid, two nasal, two superior maxillary, two lachrymal, and two malar.

Attachment of Muscles.—To three pairs: the Corrugator supercilii, Orbicularis palpebrarum, and Temporal, on each side.

The Temporal Bone (Os Temporale).

The temporal ones (*tempus*, time) are paired bones, situated at the sides and base of the skull. Each presents for examination a **squamous**, **mastoid**, and **petrous** portion.

Squamous Portion of the Temporal Bone (Squama Temporalis).

The squamous portion (*squama*, a scale), the anterior and upper part of the bone, is scale-like in form, and thin and translucent in texture (Fig. 46).

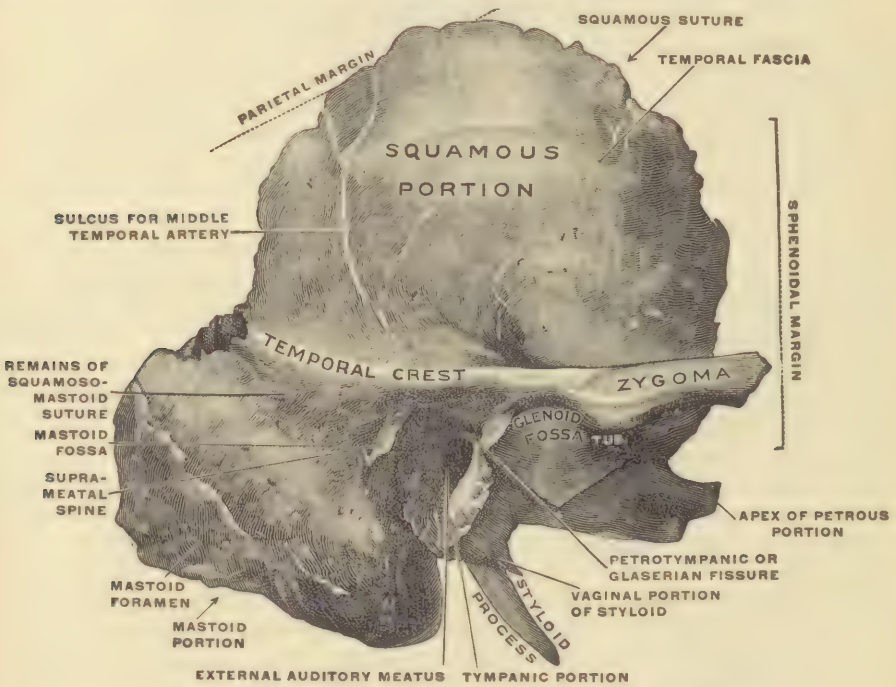


FIG. 46.—Right temporal bone, from without. (Spalteholz.)

Surfaces. **Outer Surface** (*facies temporalis*).—Its outer surface is smooth, convex, and grooved at its back part for the middle or deep temporal artery (*sulcus a. temporalis mediæ*); it affords attachment to the Temporal muscle and forms part of the temporal fossa. At its back part may be seen a curved ridge—part of the temporal ridge or line; it serves for the attachment of the temporal fascia and

limits the origin of the Temporal muscle. The boundary between the squamous and mastoid portions of the bone, as indicated by traces of the original suture, lies fully half an inch below this ridge. Projecting from the lower part of the squamous portion is a long, arched process of bone, the **zygoma** or **zygomatic process** (*processus zygomaticus*). This process is at first directed outward, its two surfaces looking upward and downward; it then appears as if twisted upon itself, and runs forward, its surfaces now looking inward and outward. The superior border of the process is long, thin, and sharp, and serves for the attachment of the temporal fascia. The inferior, short, thick, and arched, has attached to it some fibres of the Masseter muscle. Its outer surface is convex and subcutaneous; its inner is concave, and also affords attachment to the Masseter. The extremity, broad and deeply serrated, articulates with the malar bone. The zygomatic process is connected to the temporal bone by three divisions, called its **roots**—an anterior, middle, and posterior. The anterior, which is short, but broad and strong, is directed inward, to terminate in a rounded eminence, the **eminentia articularis** or **articular eminence** (*tuberculum articulare*) (Fig. 46). This eminence forms the front boundary of the **glenoid** or **mandibular fossa** (*fossa mandibularis*), and in the recent state is covered with cartilage. The middle root is known as the **post-glenoid process** or **tubercle**, and is very prominent in young bones. It separates the mandibular portion of the glenoid fossa from the external auditory meatus, and terminates at the commencement of a well-marked fissure, the **Glaserian** (*petro-tympanic*) **fissure** (*fissura petro-tympanica* [*Glaseri*]). The posterior root, which is strongly marked, runs from the upper border of the zygoma backward over the external auditory meatus. It is termed the **supramastoid** or **temporal crest**, and forms part of the lower temporal ridge. At the junction of the anterior root with the zygoma is a projection, called the **tubercle**, for the attachment of the external lateral ligament of the lower jaw; and between the anterior and middle roots is an oval depression, forming part of the **glenoid** (*mandibular*) **fossa** (γλήνη, a socket), for the reception of the condyle of the lower jaw. This fossa is bounded, in front, by the eminentia articularis; behind, by the tympanic plate, which separates it from the external auditory meatus; it is divided into two parts by a narrow slit, the **Glaserian** or **petro-tympanic fissure**. The anterior or mandibular part, formed by the squamous portion of the bone, is smooth, covered in the recent state with cartilage, and articulates with the condyle of the lower jaw. This part of the glenoid fossa presents posteriorly a small conical eminence, the post-glenoid process, already referred to. This process is the representative of a prominent tubercle which, in some of the mammalia, descends behind the condyle of the jaw, and prevents it being displaced backward during mastication (Humphry). The posterior part of the glenoid fossa, which lodges a portion of the parotid gland, is formed chiefly by the tympanic plate, which constitutes the anterior wall of the tympanum and external auditory meatus. The plate of bone terminates above in the Glaserian fissure, and below forms a sharp edge, the **vaginal process of the styloid** (*vagina processus styloidei*), which gives origin to some of the fibres of the Tensor palati muscle. The Glaserian fissure, which leads into the tympanum, lodges the processus gracilis of the malleus, and transmits the tympanic branch of the internal maxillary artery. The chorda tympani nerve passes through a separate canal, parallel to the Glaserian fissure, the **canal of Huguier** (*canaliculus chordæ tympani*), on the outer side of the Eustachian tube, in the retiring angle between the squamous and petrous portions of the temporal bone.[1] Between the posterior bony wall of the external auditory meatus

[1] This small fissure must not be confounded with the large canal which lies above the Eustachian tube and transmits the Tensor tympani muscle.

and the posterior root of the zygoma is the area called the **suprameatal triangle** of Prof. Macewen. Through this space the surgeon pushes the gauge in order to carry it into the antrum of the mastoid process.

Internal Surface (*cerebral surface, facies cerebralis*).—The internal surface of the squamous portion (Fig. 47) is concave, presents numerous eminences and depressions for the convolutions of the cerebrum, and two well-marked grooves for the branches of the middle meningeal artery.

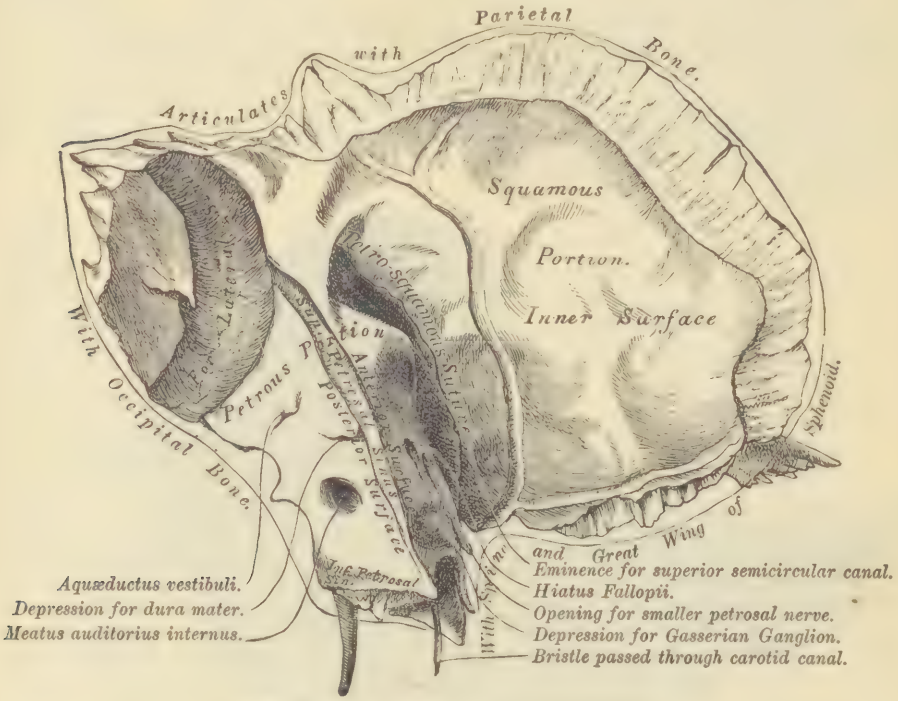


Fig. 47.—Left temporal bone. Inner surface.

Borders. **Superior Border.**—The superior border, **parietal margin** (*margo parietalis*), is thin, bevelled at the expense of the internal surface, so as to overlap the lower border of the parietal bone, forming the **squamous suture.**

Anterior Inferior Border.—The anterior inferior border, **sphenoidal margin** (*margo sphenoidalis*), is thick, serrated, and bevelled, alternately at the expense of the inner and outer surfaces, for articulation with the great wing of the sphenoid.

Posterior Inferior Border.—The posterior inferior border, **occipital margin** (*margo occipitalis*), is serrated and articulates with the occipital bone.

The Mastoid Portion of the Temporal Bone (Pars Mastoidea).

The mastoid portion (*μαστός*, a nipple or teat) is situated at the posterior part of the bone (Figs. 46, 48, and 49).

Surfaces. **Outer Surface.**—The outer surface of the mastoid is rough, and gives attachment to the Occipito-frontalis and Retrahens aurem muscles. It is perforated by numerous foramina; one of these, of large size, situated at the posterior border of the bone, is termed the **mastoid foramen** (*foramen mastoideum*); it transmits a vein to the lateral sinus and a small artery from the occipital to supply the dura mater. The position and size of this foramen are very variable. It is not always present; sometimes it is situated in the occipital bone or in the suture between the temporal and the occipital. The mastoid portion is con-

tinued below into a conical projection, the **mastoid process** (*processus mastoideus*), the size and form of which vary somewhat. The mastoid process begins to develop during the second year and does not attain full size until after puberty. This process serves for the attachment of the Sterno-mastoid, Splenius capitis, and Trachelo-mastoid muscles. On the inner side of the mastoid process is a deep groove, the **digastric fossa** (*incisura mastoidea*), for the attachment of the Digastric muscle; and, running parallel with it, but more internal, the **occipital groove** (*sulcus a. occipitalis*), which lodges the occipital artery. The **suprameatal triangle** of Prof. Macewen is bounded by the posterior root of the zygoma, the posterior bony wall of the external auditory meatus, and an imaginary line joining these two. Through this triangle the surgeon enters his instrument in order to reach the mastoid antrum. Behind the suprameatal spine is a depression known as the **mastoid fossa** (*fossa mastoidea*), which contains numerous small openings for bloodvessels.

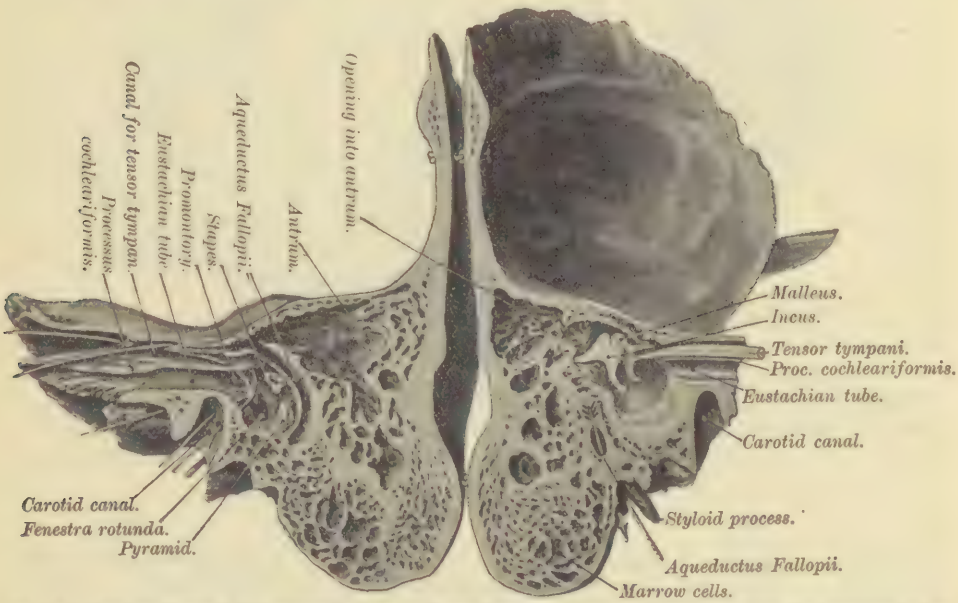


FIG. 48.—Section through the petrous and mastoid portions of the temporal bone, showing the communication of the cavity of the tympanum with the mastoid antrum.

Internal Surface.—The internal surface of the mastoid portion presents a deep, curved groove, the **sigmoid fossa** or **sulcus** (*sulcus sigmoideus*), which lodges part of the lateral sinus; and into it may be seen opening the mastoid foramen, which transmits an emissary vein from the lateral sinus to the posterior auricular or occipital vein and a small artery, the mastoid branch of the occipital artery (*ramus mastoideus*). The groove for the lateral sinus is separated from the innermost of the mastoid air-cells by only a thin lamina of bone, and even this may be partly deficient. A section of the mastoid process (Figs. 48 and 49) shows it to be hollowed out into a number of cellular spaces, communicating with each other, called the **mastoid cells** (*cellulæ mastoideæ*), which exhibit the greatest possible variety as to their size and number, and which do not exist at birth, but develop with the growth of the mastoid process. At the upper and front part of the bone these cells are large and irregular, and contain air. They diminish in size toward the lower part of the bone, those situated at the apex of the mastoid process being quite small and usually containing marrow. These **pneumatic cells** extend far beyond the mastoid. Some may reach the floor of the Eustachian

canal; others the jugular portion of the occipital bone; others the roof of the external auditory canal, and some pass up toward the squamous portion.[1] Occasionally they are entirely absent, and the mastoid is solid throughout. In addition to these pneumatic cells may be seen a large, irregular cavity (Figs. 48 and 49), situated at the upper and front part of the section. It is called the **mastoid** or **tympanic antrum** (*antrum tympanicum*), and must be distinguished from the mastoid cells, though it communicates with them. The mastoid cells are not developed until after puberty, but the mastoid antrum is almost as large at birth as it is in the adult.

It is filled with air, and is lined with a prolongation of the mucous membrane of the tympanum, which extends into it through an opening, by which it communicates with the cavity of the tympanum. The mastoid antrum is bounded above by a thin plate of bone, the **tegmen tympani**, which separates it from the middle fossa of the base of the skull on the anterior surface of the petrous portion

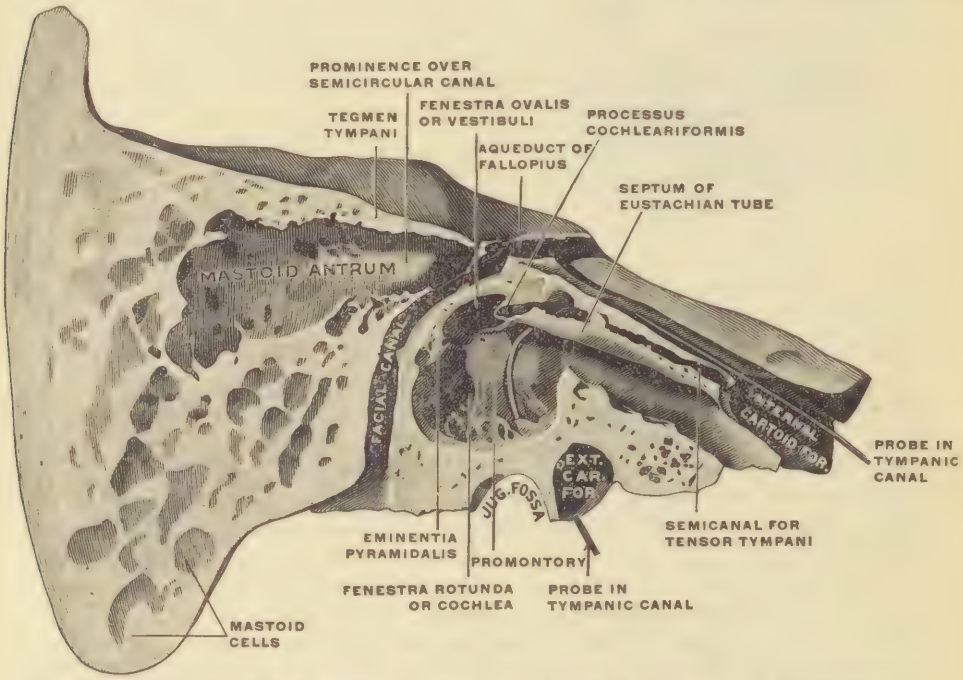


FIG. 49.—Right temporal bone cut open. Lateral view of medial half of bone. × 2. (Spalteholz.)

of the temporal bone; below by the mastoid process; externally by the squamous portion of the bone just below the supramastoid crest; and internally by the external semicircular canal of the internal ear, which projects into its cavity. The opening by which it communicates with the tympanum is situated at the superior internal angle of the posterior wall of that cavity; it is a triangular opening into that portion of the tympanic cavity which is known as the **tympanic attic** or **epitympanic recess** or **space** (*aditus ad antrum*)—that is to say, that portion of the tympanum which is above the level of the membrana tympani.

In consequence of the communication which exists between the tympanum and mastoid cells, inflammation of the lining membrane of the former cavity may easily travel backward to that of the antrum, leading to caries and necrosis of their walls and the risk of transference of the inflammation to the lateral sinus or encephalon.

[1] Dr. D. Kerfoot Shute, in Reference Handbook of the Medical Sciences.

Borders. **Superior Border.**—The superior border of the mastoid portion is broad and rough, its serrated edge sloping outward, for articulation with the posterior inferior angle of the parietal bone.

Posterior Border.—The posterior border, also, uneven and serrated, articulates with the inferior border of the occipital bone between its lateral angle and jugular process.

The Petrous Portion of the Temporal Bone (Pars Petrosa [Pyramis]) (Fig. 47).

The petrous portion (πέτρος, a stone), so named from its extreme density and hardness, is a pyramidal process of bone wedged in at the base of the skull between the sphenoid and occipital bones. Its direction from without is inward, forward, and a little downward. It presents for examination a **base**, an **apex**, three **surfaces**, and three **borders**, and contains, in its interior, the essential parts of the organ of hearing.

Base.—The base is applied against the internal surface of the squamous and mastoid portions, its upper half being concealed; but its lower half is exposed by the divergence of those two portions of the bone, which brings into view the oval, expanded orifice of a canal leading into the tympanum, the **meatus auditorius externus** (*meatus acusticus externus*). The curved **tympanic plate** or **part** (*pars tympanica*) forms the anterior wall, the floor, and a part of the posterior wall of this meatus, while the squamous portion of the temporal completes it above and behind. The entrance to the meatus is bounded throughout the greater part of its circumference by the **auditory process**, which is the name applied to the free rough margin of the tympanic plate, and which gives attachment to the cartilaginous portion of the meatus. Superiorly the entrance to the meatus is limited by the posterior root of the zygoma. At the upper and posterior portion of the bony meatus is a spine of bone known as the **suprameatal spine** or **spine of Henle** (*spina suprameatum*), which is a valuable surgical landmark. In most skulls it is distinctly marked.

Apex (*apex pyramidis*).—The apex of the petrous portion, rough and uneven, is received into the angular interval between the posterior border of the greater wing of the sphenoid and the basilar process of the occipital; it presents the anterior or internal orifice of the carotid canal (*foramen caroticum internum*), and forms the posterior and external boundary of the foramen lacerum medium.

Surfaces. **Anterior Surface** (*facies anterior pyramidis*).—The anterior surface of the petrous portion (Fig. 47) forms the posterior part of the middle fossa of the skull. This surface is continuous with the squamous portion, to which it is united by a suture, the **petro-squamous suture**, the remains of which are distinct even at a late period of life. It presents six points for examination: (1) An **eminence** (*eminentia arcuata*) near the centre, which indicates the situation of the superior semicircular canal. (2) In front and a little to the outer side of this eminence a depression indicating the position of the tympanum; here the layer of bone which separates the tympanum from the cranial cavity is extremely thin, and is known as the **tegmen tympani**. (3) A shallow groove, sometimes double, leading outward and backward to an oblique opening, the **hiatus Fallopii** (*hiatus canalis facialis*), for the passage of the greater petrosal nerve and the petrosal branch of the middle meningeal artery. (4) A smaller opening (*apertura superior canaliculi tympanici*), occasionally seen external to the latter, for the passage of the smaller petrosal nerve. (5) Near the apex of the bone, the termination of the carotid canal, the **internal carotid foramen** (*foramen caroticum internum*), the wall of which in this situation is deficient in front. (6) Above the canal a shallow depression, the **trigeminal depression** (*impressio trigemini*), for the reception of the Gasserian ganglion.

Posterior Surface (*facies posterior pyramidis*).—The posterior surface forms the front part of the posterior fossa of the skull, and is continuous with the inner surface of the mastoid portion of the bone. It presents three points for examination: 1. About its centre, a large orifice, the **meatus auditorius internus** (*meatus acusticus internus*), whose size varies considerably; its margins are smooth and rounded, and it leads into a short canal, about four lines in length, which runs directly outward and is closed by a vertical plate, the **lamina cribrosa,** which is divided by a horizontal crest, the **falciform crest** (*crista falciformis*), into two unequal portions (Fig. 50). Each portion is subdivided by a little vertical crest into two parts, named, respectively, anterior and posterior. The lower portion presents three sets of foramina: one group just below the posterior part of the crest, the **area cribrosa media,** consisting of a number of small openings for the nerves to the saccule; below and posterior to this, the **foramen singulare,** or opening for the nerve to the posterior semicircular canal; in front and below the first, the **tractus spiralis foraminosus,** consisting of a number of small, spirally arranged openings which terminate in the **canalis centralis cochleæ** and transmit the nerve to the cochlea; the upper portion, that above the crista, presents behind a series of small openings the **area cribrosa superior,** for the passage of filaments to the utricle and superior and external semicircular canal, and, in front, one large opening, the commencement of the **aquæductus Fallopii** (*canalis facialis*), for the passage of the facial nerve. 2. Behind the meatus auditorius, a small slit (*apertura externa aquæductus vestibuli*), almost hidden by a thin plate of bone, leading to a canal, the **aquæductus vestibuli,** which transmits the **ductus endolymphaticus** together with a small artery and vein. In the interval between these two openings, but above them, is an angular depression (*fossa subarcuata*) which lodges a process of the dura mater, and transmits a small vein into the cancellous tissue of the bone. In the child this depression is represented by a large fossa, the **floccular fossa,** which extends backward as a blind tunnel under the superior semicircular canal.

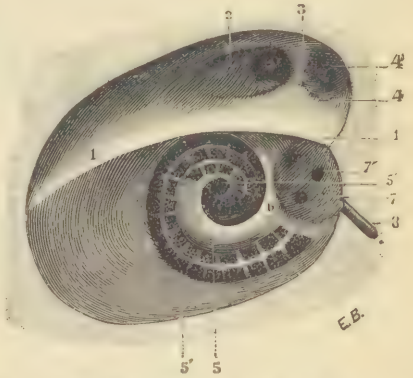


FIG. 50.—Diagrammatic view of the fundus of the internal auditory meatus: 1. Falciform crest. 2. Anterior superior cribriform area. 2′. Internal opening of the aquæductus Fallopii. 3. Vertical crest which separates the anterior and posterior superior cribriform areas. 4. Posterior superior cribriform area, with (4′) openings for nerve-filaments. 5. Anterior inferior cribriform area. 5′. Spirally arranged, sieve-like openings for the nerves to the cochlea. 5″. Opening of the central canal of the cochlea. 6. Crest which separates the anterior and posterior inferior cribriform areas. 7. Posterior inferior cribriform area. 7′. Orifices for the branches of the nerve to the saccule. 8. Foramen singulare of Morgagni, with the anterior portion of the canal which gives passage to the nerve to the posterior semicircular canal. (Testut)

Inferior Surface (*facies inferior pyramidis*).—The inferior or basilar surface (Fig. 51) is rough and irregular, and forms part of the base of the skull. Passing from the apex to the base, this surface presents eleven points for examination: 1. A rough surface, quadrilateral in form, which serves partly for the attachment of the Levator palati and Tensor tympani muscles. 2. The large, circular aperture of the carotid canal, the **external carotid foramen** (*foramen caroticum externum*); the canal ascends at first vertically, and then, making a bend, runs horizontally forward and inward; it transmits the internal carotid artery and the carotid plexus. Within the carotid canal are several openings (*canaliculi carotico tympanici*) which transmit tympanic branches of the internal carotid artery and of the carotid plexus. 3. The opening of the **aquæductus cochleæ** (*apertura externa canaliculi cochleæ*), a small triangular opening, lying on the inner side of the latter, close to the posterior border of the petrous portion; it transmits a vein from the cochlea, which joins the internal jugular. 4. Behind these openings a deep depression, the **jugular fossa**

(*fossa jugularis*), which varies in depth and size in different skulls; it lodges the lateral sinus, and, with a similar depression on the margin of the jugular process of the occipital bone, forms the foramen lacerum posterius or jugular foramen. 5. A foramen which is the opening of a small canal (*canaliculus tympanicus*), for the

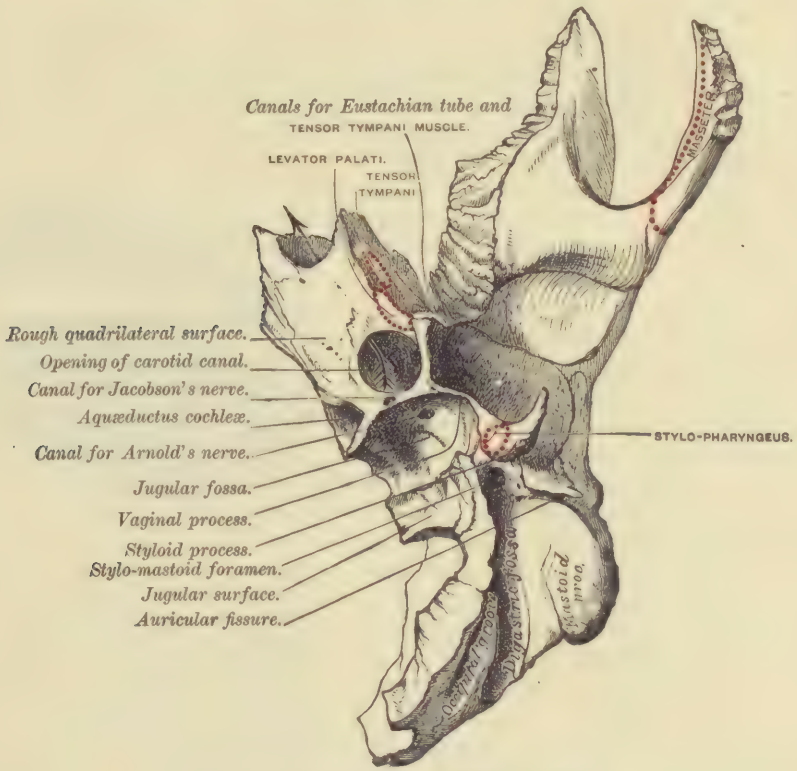


Fig. 51.—Petrous portion. Inferior surface.

passage of Jacobson's nerve (the tympanic branch of the glosso-pharyngeal); this foramen is seen in front of the bony ridge dividing the carotid canal from the jugular fossa. 6. A small foramen on the wall of the jugular fossa, for the entrance of the auricular branch of the pneumogastric (*Arnold's*) nerve. 7. Behind the jugular fossa a smooth, square-shaped facet, the **jugular surface**; it is covered with cartilage in the recent state, and articulates with the jugular process of the occipital bone. 8. The **vaginal process** (*vagina processus styloidea*), a very broad, sheath-like plate of bone, which extends backward from the carotid canal and gives attachment to part of the Tensor palati muscle; this plate divides behind into two laminæ, the outer of which is continuous with the tympanic plate, the inner with the jugular process. 9. Between these laminæ is the ninth point for examination, the **styloid process** (*processus styloideus*), a sharp spine, about an inch in length; it is directed downward, forward, and inward, varies in size and shape, and sometimes consists of several pieces united by cartilage; it affords attachment to three muscles, the Stylo-pharyngeus, Stylo-hyoideus, and Stylo-glossus, and two ligaments, the stylo-hyoid and stylo-maxillary. 10. The **stylo-mastoid foramen** (*foramen stylomastoideum*), a rather large orifice, placed between the styloid and mastoid processes; it is the termination of the aquæductus Fallopii, and transmits the facial nerve and stylo-mastoid artery. 11. The **auricular fissure** (*fissura tympanomastoidea*), situated between the tympanic plate and mastoid processes, for the exit of the auricular branch of the pneumogastric nerve

(Arnold's nerve). This fissure is the external opening of the *canaliculus mastoideus*, which passes to the aqueduct of Fallopius.

Borders. **Superior Border** (*angulus superior pyramidis*).—The superior, the longest, is grooved for the superior petrosal sinus, and has attached to it the tentorium cerebelli; at its inner extremity is a semilunar notch, upon which the fifth nerve lies.

Posterior Border (*angulus posterior pyramidis*).—The posterior border is intermediate in length between the superior and the anterior. Its inner half is marked by a groove, which, when completed by its articulation with the occipital, forms the channel for the inferior petrosal sinus. Its outer half presents a deep excavation, the **jugular fossa** (*fossa jugularis*), which, with a similar notch on the occipital, forms the foramen lacerum posterius. A projecting eminence of bone occasionally stands out from the centre of the notch, and divides the foramen into two parts.

Anterior Border (*angulus anterior pyramidis*).—The anterior border is divided into two parts—an outer, joined to the squamous portion by a suture, the remains of which are distinct; an inner, free, articulating with the spinous process of the sphenoid. At the angle of junction of the petrous and squamous portions is seen the opening of the *canalis musculotubarius*. This canal is completely or partially divided into two canals, separated from one another by a thin plate of bone, the **processus cochleariformis** (*septum canalis musculotubarii*); they both lead into the tympanum, the upper one (*semicanalis m. tensoris tympani*) transmitting the Tensor tympani muscle, the lower one (*semicanalis tubæ auditivæ*) forming the bony part of the Eustachian tube or canal.

Structure.—The squamous portion is like that of the other cranial bones: the mastoid portion, cellular; and the petrous portion, dense and hard.

Development (Fig. 52).—The temporal bone is developed by ten centres, exclusive of those for the internal ear and the ossicula—viz., one of the squamous portion including the zygoma, one for the tympanic plate, six for the petrous and mastoid parts, and two for the styloid process. Just before the close of fœtal life the temporal bone consists of four parts: 1. The **squamo-zygomatic** part, ossified in membrane from a single nucleus, which appears at its lower part about the second month. 2. The **tympanic plate**, an imperfect ring, in the concavity of which is a groove, the **sulcus tympanicus**, for the attachment of the circumference of the tympanic membrane. This is also ossified from a single centre, which appears about the third month. 3. The **petro-mastoid** part is developed from six centres, which appear about the fifth or sixth month. Four of these are for the petrous portion, and are placed around the labyrinth, and two for the mastoid (Vrolik). According to Huxley, the centres are more numerous, and are disposed so as to form three portions: (1) including most of the labyrinth, with a part of the petrous and mastoid, he has named **prootic**; (2) the rest of the petrous, the **opisthotic**; and (3) the remainder of the mastoid, the **epiotic**. The petro-mastoid is ossified in cartilage. 4. The **styloid process** is also ossified in cartilage from two centres: one for the base, which appears before birth, and is termed the

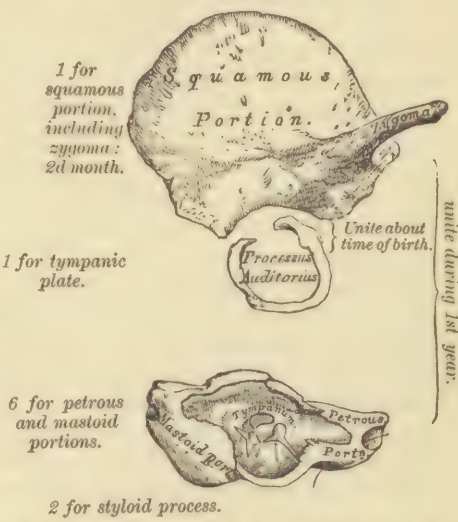


Fig. 52.—Development of the temporal bone. By ten centres.

tympanohyal; the other, comprising the rest of the process, is named the **stylohyal**, and does not appear until after birth. Shortly before birth the tympanic plate joins with the squamous. The petrous and mastoid join with the squamous during the first year, and the tympanohyal portion of the styloid process about the same time. The stylohyal does not join the rest of the bone until after puberty, and in some skulls never becomes united. The subsequent changes in this bone are, that the tympanic plate extends outward and backward, so as to form the **meatus auditorius**. The extension of the tympanic plate, however, does not take place at an equal rate all around the circumference of the ring, but occurs most rapidly on its anterior and posterior portions, and these outgrowths meet and blend, and thus, for a time, there exists in the floor of the meatus a foramen, the **foramen of Huschke**; this foramen may persist throughout life. The glenoid cavity is at first extremely shallow, and looks outward as well as downward; it becomes deeper and is ultimately directed downward. Its change in direction is accounted for as follows: the part of the squamous temporal which supports it lies at first *below* the level of the zygoma. As, however, the base of the skull increases in width, this lower part of the squama is directed horizontally inward to contribute to the middle fossa of the skull, and its surfaces therefore come to look upward and downward. The mastoid portion is at first quite flat, and the stylo-mastoid foramen and rudimentary styloid process lie immediately behind the entrance to the auditory meatus. With the development of the air-cells the outer part of the mastoid portion grows downward and forward to form the mastoid process, and the styloid process and stylo-mastoid foramen now come to lie on the under surface. The descent of the foramen is necessarily accompanied by a corresponding lengthening of the aqueduct of Fallopius.

The downward and forward growth of the mastoid process also pushes forward the tympanic plate, so that the portion of it which formed the original floor of the meatus and containing the foramen of Huschke is ultimately found in the anterior wall. With the gradual increase in size of the petrous portion the floccular fossa or tunnel under the superior semicircular canal becomes filled up and almost obliterated.

Articulations.—With five bones—occipital, parietal, sphenoid, inferior maxillary, and malar.

Attachment of Muscles.—To fifteen: to the squamous portion, the Temporal; to the zygoma, the Masseter; to the mastoid portion, the Occipito-frontalis, Sterno-mastoid, Splenius capitis, Trachelo-mastoid, Digastricus, and Retrahens aurem; to the styloid process, the Stylo-pharyngeus, Stylo-hyoideus, and Stylo-glossus; and to the petrous portion, the Levator palati, Tensor tympani, Tensor palati, and Stapedius.

The Sphenoid Bone (Os Sphenoidale).

The sphenoid bone (*σφήν*, a wedge) is situated at the anterior part of the base of the skull, articulating with all the other cranial bones, which it binds firmly and solidly together. In its form it somewhat resembles a bat with its wings extended; and is divided into a **central portion** or **body**, two **greater** and two **lesser wings** extending outward on each side of the body, and two processes—the **pterygoid processes**—which project from it below.

The Body of the Sphenoid Bone.

The body (*corpus*) is of large size and hollowed out in its interior so as to form a mere shell of bone. It presents for examination *four* surfaces—a superior, an inferior, an anterior, and a posterior.

Surfaces. **Superior Surface** (*facies cerebralis*) (Fig. 53).—In front is seen a prominent spine, the **ethmoidal spine,** for articulation with the cribriform plate of the ethmoid; behind this a smooth surface presenting, in the median line, a slight longitudinal eminence, with a depression on each side for lodging the olfactory lobes. This surface is bounded behind by a ridge, which forms the anterior border of a narrow, transverse groove, the **optic groove** (*sulcus chiasmatis*), behind which lies the optic chiasm; the groove is continuous on each side with the **optic foramen** (*foramen opticum*), for the passage of the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery. Behind the

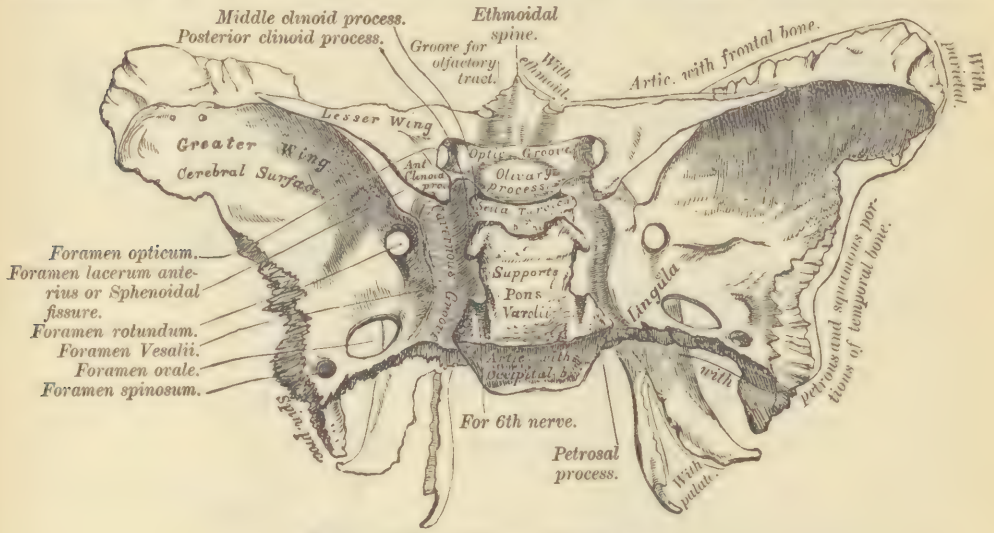


FIG. 53.—Sphenoid bone. Superior surface.

optic groove is a small eminence, olive-like in shape, the **olivary process** or **eminence** (*tuberculum sellæ*); and still more posteriorly, a deep depression, the **pituitary fossa,** or **sella turcica** (*fossa hypophyseos*), which lodges the circular sinus and the pituitary body (*hypophysis*). This fossa is perforated by numerous foramina, for the transmission of nutrient vessels into the substance of the bone. It is bounded in front by the **olivary eminence**, and also by two small eminences, one on either side, called the **middle clinoid processes** (*processus clinoidei medii*) (*κλίνη*, a bed), which are sometimes connected by a spiculum of bone to the anterior clinoid processes. It is bounded behind by a square-shaped plate of bone, the **dorsum ephippii** or **dorsum sellæ,** terminating at each superior angle in a tubercle, the **posterior clinoid process** (*processus clinoideus posterior*). The size and form of these processes vary considerably in different individuals. They deepen the pituitary fossa, and serve for the attachment of prolongations from the tentorium cerebelli. The sides of the dorsum ephippii are notched for the passage of the sixth pair of nerves, and below present a sharp process, the **petrosal process,** which is joined to the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, forming the inner boundary of the middle lacerated foramen. Behind this plate the bone presents a shallow depression, which slopes obliquely backward, and is continuous with the basilar groove of the occipital bone; it is called the **clivus,** and supports the upper part of the pons Varolii. On either side of the body is a broad groove, curved something like the italic letter *f;* it lodges the internal carotid artery and the cavernous sinus, and is called the **carotid** or **cavernous groove** (*sulcus caroticus*). Along the outer margin of this groove, at its posterior part, is a ridge of bone in the angle between the body and greater wing, called the **lingula** (*lingula sphenoidalis*).

Posterior Surface.—The posterior surface, quadrilateral in form, is joined to the basilar process of the occipital bone. During childhood these bones are separated

by a layer of cartilage; but in after-life (between the eighteenth and twenty-fifth years) this becomes ossified, ossification commencing above and extending downward; and the two bones then form one piece.

Anterior Surface.—The anterior surface (Fig. 54) presents, in the middle line, a vertical ridge of bone, the **ethmoidal** or **sphenoidal crest** (*crista sphenoidalis*), which articulates in front with the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid, forming part of the septum of the nose. On either side of it are irregular openings leading into the **sphenoidal cells** or **sinuses** (*sinus sphenoidales*). These are two large, irregular cavities hollowed out of the interior of the body of the sphenoid bone, often

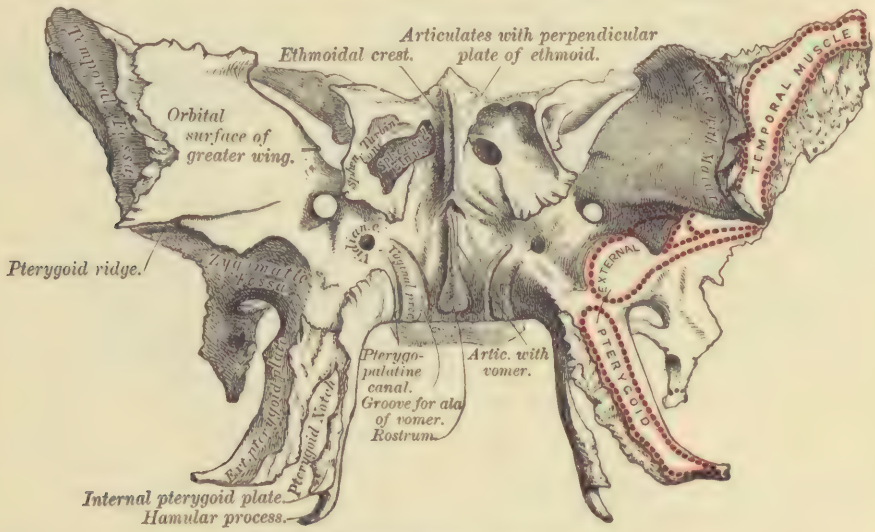


FIG. 54.—Sphenoid bone. Anterior surface.[1]

extending into the pterygoid processes and base of the greater wings of the bone, and separated from one another by a more or less complete perpendicular bony septum (*septum sinuum sphenoidalium*). Occasionally they extend into the basilar process of the occipital nearly as far as the foramen magnum. Their form and size vary considerably; they are seldom symmetrical, and are often partially subdivided by irregular, osseous laminæ. One sinus or both sinuses may be absent. The septum is seldom quite vertical, being commonly bent to one or the other side. These sinuses do not exist in very young children, but appear, according to Laurent, in the seventh year, and, according to Tillaux, not until the twentieth year. After once appearing they increase in size as age advances. They are partially closed, in front and below, by two thin, curved plates of bone, the **sphenoidal, spongy**, or **turbinated bones** (*conchæ sphenoidales*). At the upper part of each is a round opening (*apertura sinus sphenoidalis*) by which the sinus communicates with the upper and back part of the nose, and occasionally with the posterior ethmoidal cells or sinuses. The lateral margins of this surface present a serrated edge, which articulates with the os planum of the ethmoid, completing the posterior ethmoidal cells; the lower margin, also rough and serrated, articulates with the orbital process of the palate bone, and the upper margin with the orbital plate of the frontal bone.

Inferior Surface.—The inferior surface presents, in the middle line, a triangular spine, the **rostrum** (*rostrum sphenoidalis*), which is continuous with the sphenoidal crest on the anterior surface, and is received into a deep fissure between the alæ

[1] In this figure, both the anterior and inferior surfaces of the body of the sphenoid bone are shown, the bone being held with the pterygoid processes almost horizontal.

of the vomer. On each side may be seen a projecting lamina of bone, which runs horizontally inward from near the base of the pterygoid process: these plates, termed the **vaginal processes,** articulate with the edges of the vomer. Close to the root of the pterygoid process is a groove (*sulcus pterygopalatinus*), formed into a complete canal when articulated with the sphenoidal process of the palate bone; it is called the **pterygo-palatine canal,** and transmits the pterygo-palatine vessels and pharyngeal nerve.

The Greater or Temporal Wings of the Sphenoid Bone (Alæ Magnæ).

The greater wings are two strong processes of bone which arise from the sides of the body, and are curved in a direction upward, outward, and backward, each being prolonged behind into a sharp-pointed extremity, the **alar** or **sphenoidal spine** (*spina angularis*). Each wing presents three surfaces and a circumference.

Surfaces. Superior Surface (*facies cerebralis*).—The superior or cerebral surface (Fig. 53) forms part of the middle fossa of the skull; it is deeply concave, and presents eminences and depressions for the convolutions of the brain. At its anterior and internal part is seen a circular aperture, the **foramen rotundum,** for the transmission of the second division of the fifth nerve. Behind and external to this is a large, oval foramen, the **foramen ovale,** for the transmission of the third division of the fifth nerve, the small meningeal artery, and sometimes the small petrosal nerve.[1] At the inner side of the foramen ovale a small aperture may occasionally be seen opposite the root of the pterygoid process; it is the **foramen Vesalii,** transmitting a small vein. Lastly, in the posterior angle, near to the spine of the sphenoid, is a short canal, sometimes double, the **foramen spinosum**; it transmits the middle meningeal artery.

External Surface.—The external surface (Fig. 54) is convex and divided by a transverse ridge, the **pterygoid ridge** or **infratemporal crest** (*crista infratemporalis*), into two portions. The superior or larger, convex from above downward, concave from before backward, enters into the formation of the **temporal fossa,** and gives attachment to part of the Temporal muscle. The inferior portion, smaller in size and concave, enters into the formation of the **zygomatic fossa,** and affords attachment to the External pterygoid muscle. It presents, at its posterior part, a sharp-pointed eminence of bone, the **spine,** to which are connected the internal lateral ligament of the lower jaw and the Tensor palati muscle. The pterygoid ridge, dividing the temporal and zygomatic portions, gives attachment to part of the External pterygoid muscle. At its inner and anterior extremity is a triangular spine of bone, which serves to increase the extent of origin of this muscle.

Anterior Surface (*facies orbitalis*).—The anterior or orbital surface, smooth and quadrilateral in form, assists in forming the outer wall of the orbit. It is bounded above by a serrated edge, for articulation with the frontal bone; below, by a rounded border which enters into the formation of the **spheno-maxillary fissure.** Internally, it presents a sharp border, which forms the lower boundary of the sphenoidal fissure, and has projecting from about its centre a little tubercle of bone, which gives origin to one head of the External rectus muscle of the eye; and at its upper part is a notch for the transmission of a recurrent branch of the lachrymal artery; externally it presents a serrated margin for articulation with the malar bone. One or two small foramina may occasionally be seen for the passage of branches of the deep temporal arteries; they are called the **external orbital foramina.**

Circumference (Fig. 53).—Commencing from behind, that portion of the circumference from the body of the sphenoid to the spine is serrated and articulates by its outer half with the petrous portion of the temporal bone, while the inner half forms the anterior boundary of the foramen lacerum medium, and presents

[1] The small petrosal nerve sometimes passes through a special foramen between the foramen ovale and foramen spinosum.

the posterior aperture of the **Vidian canal** (*canalis pterygoideus*) for the passage of the Vidian nerve and artery. In front of the spine the circumference of the great wing presents a serrated edge, bevelled at the expense of the inner table below and of the external above, which articulates with the squamous portion of the temporal bone. At the tip of the great wing a triangular portion is seen, bevelled at the expense of the internal surface, for articulation with the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone. Internal to this is a triangular, serrated surface, for articulation with the frontal bone; this surface is continuous internally with the sharp inner edge of the orbital plate, which assists in the formation of the sphenoidal fissure, and externally with the serrated margin for articulation with the malar bone.

The Lesser or Orbital Wings of the Sphenoid Bone (Alæ Parvæ).

The lesser wings (*processes of Ingrassias*) are two thin, triangular plates of bone which arise from the upper and lateral parts of the body of the sphenoid, and, projecting transversely outward, terminate in a sharp point (Fig. 53). The *superior surface* of each is smooth, flat, broader internally than externally, and supports part of the frontal lobe of the brain. The *inferior surface* forms the back part of the roof of the orbit and the upper boundary of the **orbital** or **sphenoidal fissure** or **foramen lacerum anterius** (*fissura orbitalis superior*). This fissure is of a triangular form, and leads from the cavity of the cranium into the orbit; it is bounded internally by the body of the sphenoid—above, by the lesser wing; below, by the internal margin of the orbital surface of the great wing—and is converted into a foramen by the articulation of this bone with the frontal. It transmits the third, the fourth, the three branches of the ophthalmic division of the fifth, the sixth nerve, some filaments from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic, the orbital branch of the middle meningeal artery, a recurrent branch from the lachrymal artery to the dura mater and the ophthalmic vein. The *anterior border* of the lesser wing is serrated for articulation with the frontal bone; the *posterior border*, smooth and rounded, is received into the fissure of Sylvius of the brain. Each inner extremity of this border forms an **anterior clinoid process** (*processus clinoideus anterior*). The lesser wing is connected to the side of the body by two roots, the upper thin and flat, the lower thicker, obliquely directed, and presenting on its outer side, near its junction with the body, a small tubercle, for the attachment of the common tendon of origin of three of the muscles of the eye. Between the two roots is the **optic foramen** (*foramen opticum*), for the transmission of the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery.

The Pterygoid Processes of the Sphenoid Bone (Processus Pterygoidei).

The pterygoid processes (*πτέρυξ*, a wing; *εἶδος*, likeness), one on each side, descend perpendicularly from the point where the body and greater wing unite (Fig. 55). Each process consists of an external and an internal lamina or plate, which are joined together by their anterior borders above, but are separated below, leaving an angular cleft, the **pterygoid notch** or **fissure** (*fissura pterygoidea*), in which the pterygoid process or tuberosity of the palate bone is received. The two plates diverge from each other from their line of connection in front, so as to form a V-shaped fossa, the **pterygoid fossa** (*fossa pterygoidea*). The **external pterygoid plate** (*lamina lateralis processus pterygoidei*) is broad and thin, turned a little outward, and, by its outer surface, forms part of the inner wall of the zygomatic fossa, giving attachment to the External pterygoid; its inner surface forms part of the pterygoid fossa, and gives attachment to the Internal pterygoid. The **internal pterygoid plate** (*lamina medialis processus pterygoidei*) is much narrower and longer, curving outward, at its extremity, into a hook-like process of bone, the **hamular process**

(*hamulus pterygoideus*), around which turns the tendon of the Tensor palati muscle. The outer surface of this plate forms part of the pterygoid fossa, the inner surface forming the outer boundary of the posterior aperture of the nares. On the *posterior surface* of the base of the process, above the pterygoid fossa, is a small, oval, shallow depression, the **scaphoid fossa** (*fossa scaphoidea*), from which arises the Tensor palati, and above which is seen the posterior orifice of the Vidian canal (*canalis pterygoideus* [Vidii]). Below and to the inner side of the Vidian

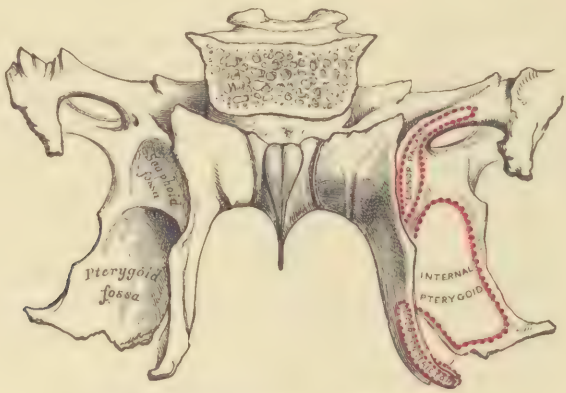


FIG. 55.—Sphenoid bone. Posterior surface.

canal, on the posterior surface of the base of the internal plate, is a little prominence, which is known by the name of the **pterygoid tubercle.** The Superior constrictor of the pharynx is attached to the posterior edge of the internal plate. The *anterior surface* of the pterygoid process is very broad at its base, and forms the posterior wall of the spheno-maxillary fossa. It supports Meckel's ganglion. It presents, above, the anterior orifice of the Vidian canal; and below, a rough margin, which articulates with the perpendicular plate of the palate bone.

The Sphenoidal Spongy Bone.

The sphenoidal spongy, turbinal or turbinated bones (the *bones of Bertin*, *conchæ sphenoidales*) are two thin, curved plates of bones, which exist as separate pieces until puberty, and occasionally are not joined to the sphenoid in the adult. They are situated at the anterior and inferior part of the body of the sphenoid, an aperture (*apertura sinus sphenoidalis*) of variable size being left in the anterior wall of each, through which the sphenoidal sinuses open into the nasal fossæ. They are irregular in form and taper to a point behind, being broader and thinner in front. Their upper surface, which looks toward the cavity of the sinus, is concave; their under surface convex. Each bone articulates in front with the ethmoid, externally with the palate; its pointed posterior extremity is placed above the vomer, and is received between the root of the pterygoid process on the outer side and the rostrum of the sphenoid on the inner.[1]

Development.—Up to about the eighth month of fœtal life the sphenoid bone consists of two distinct parts: a **posterior** or **post-sphenoid** part, which comprises the pituitary fossa, the greater wings, and the pterygoid processes; and an **anterior** or **pre-sphenoid** part, to which the anterior part of the body and lesser wings belong. It is developed by fourteen centres: eight for the posterior sphenoid division, and six for the anterior sphenoid. The eight centres for the posterior

[1] A small portion of the sphenoidal turbinated bone sometimes enters into the formation of the inner wall of the orbit, between the os planum of the ethmoid in front, the orbital plate of the palate below, and the frontal above.—Cleland, Roy. Soc. Trans., 1862.

sphenoid are: one for each greater wing and external pterygoid plate, one for each internal pterygoid plate, two for the posterior part of the body, and one on each side for the lingula. The six for the anterior sphenoid are: one for each lesser wing, two for the anterior part of the body, and one for each sphenoidal turbinated bone.

Post-sphenoid Division.—The first nuclei to appear are those for the greater wings (*ali-sphenoids*). They make their appearance between the foramen rotundum and foramen ovale about the eighth week, and from them the external pterygoid plates are also formed. Soon after, the nuclei for the posterior part of the body appear, one on either side of the sella turcica, and become blended together about the middle of fœtal life. About the fourth month the remaining four centres appear, those for the internal pterygoid plates being ossified in membrane and becoming joined to the external pterygoid plate about the sixth month. The centres for the lingulæ speedily become joined to the rest of the bone.

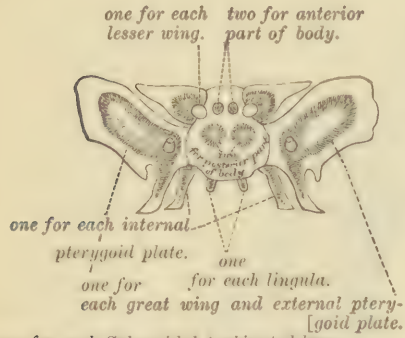


FIG. 56.—Plan of development of the sphenoid. By fourteen centres.

Pre-sphenoid Division.—The first nuclei to appear are those for the lesser wings (*orbito-sphenoids*). They make their appearance about the ninth week, at the outer borders of the optic foramina. A second pair of nuclei appear on the inner side of the foramina shortly after, and, becoming united, form the front part of the body of the bone. The remaining two centres for the sphenoidal turbinated bones make their appearance about the fifth month. At birth they consist of small triangular laminæ, and it is not till the third year that they become hollowed out and cone-shaped. About the fourth year they become fused with the lateral masses of the ethmoid, and hence, from an embryological point of view, may be regarded as belonging to the ethmoid.

The pre-sphenoid is united to the body of the post-sphenoid about the eighth month, so that at birth the bone consists of three pieces—viz., the body in the centre, and on each side the great wings with the pterygoid processes. The lesser wings become joined to the body at about the time of birth. At the first year after birth the greater wings and body are united. From the tenth to the twelfth year the spongy bones are partially united to the sphenoid, their junction being complete by the twentieth year. Lastly, the sphenoid joins the occipital from the eighteenth to the twenty-fifth year.

Articulations.—The sphenoid articulates with *all* the bones of the cranium, and five of the face—the two malar, the two palate, and vomer; the exact extent of articulation with each bone is shown in the accompanying figures.[1]

Attachment of Muscles.—To eleven pairs: the Temporal, External pterygoid, Internal pterygoid, Superior constrictor, Tensor palati, Levator palpebræ, Obliquus oculi superior, Superior rectus, Internal rectus, Inferior rectus, External rectus.

The Ethmoid Bone (Os Ethmoidale).

The ethmoid (ἠθμός, a sieve) is an exceedingly light, spongy bone, of a cubical form, situated at the anterior part of the base of the cranium, between the two orbits at the root of the nose, and contributing to form each of these cavities.

[1] It also sometimes articulates with the tuberosity of the superior maxilla.

It consists of three parts: a **horizontal plate**, which forms part of the base of the cranium; a **perpendicular plate**, which forms part of the septum nasi; and two **lateral masses** of cells.

The **Horizontal Lamina** or **Cribriform Plate** (*lamina cribrosa*) (Fig. 57) forms part of the anterior fossa of the base of the skull, and is received into the ethmoid notch of the frontal bone between the two orbital plates. Projecting upward from the middle line of this plate is a thick, smooth, triangular process of bone, the **crista galli**, so called from its fancied resemblance to a cock's comb. Its base joins the cribriform plate. Its posterior border, long, thin, and slightly curved, serves for the attachment of the falx cerebri. Its anterior border, short and thick, articulates with the frontal bone, and presents two small projecting **alæ** (*processus alares*), which are received into corresponding depressions in the frontal, completing the **foramen cæcum** behind. Its sides are smooth and sometimes bulging; in which case it is found to enclose a small sinus.[1] On each side of the crista galli the cribriform plate is narrow and deeply grooved, to support the bulb of the olfactory tract, and is perforated by foramina for the passage of the olfactory nerves. These foramina are arranged in three rows: the innermost, which are the largest and least numerous, are lost in grooves on the upper part of the septum; the foramina of the outer row are continued on to the surface of the upper spongy bone. The foramina of the middle row are the smallest; they perforate the bone and transmit nerves to the roof of the nose. At the front part of the cribriform plate, on each

Fig. 57.—Ethmoid bone. Outer surface of right lateral mass (enlarged).

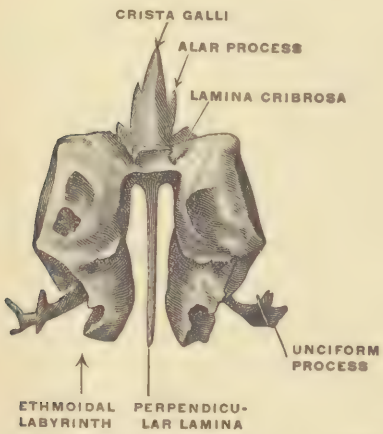


Fig. 58.—Ethmoid bone from behind, somewhat schematic. (Spalteholz.)

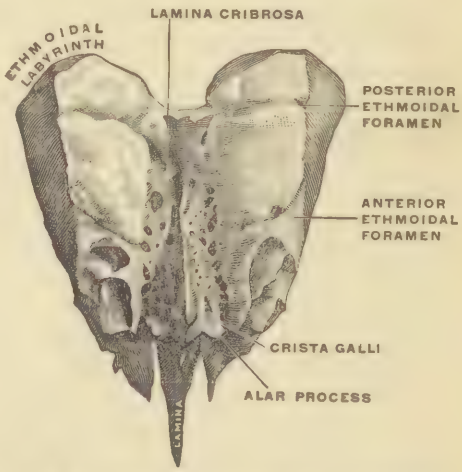


Fig. 59.—Ethmoid bone from above. (Spalteholz.)

[1] Sir George Humphry states that the crista galli is commonly inclined to one side, usually the opposite to that toward which the lower part of the perpendicular plate is bent.—The Human Skeleton, 1858, p. 277.

side of the crista galli, is a small fissure, which transmits the nasal branch of the ophthalmic nerve; and at its posterior part a triangular notch, which receives the ethmoidal spine of the sphenoid.

The **Vertical** or **Perpendicular Lamina** or **Plate** (*lamina perpendicularis* or *mesethmoid*) (Fig. 60) is a thin, flattened lamella of bone, which descends from the under surface of the cribriform plate, and assists in forming the septum of the nose. It is much thinner in the middle than at the circumference, and is generally deflected a little to one side. Its anterior border articulates with the nasal spine of the frontal bone and crest of the nasal bones. Its posterior border, divided into two parts, articulates by its upper half with the sphenoidal crest of the sphenoid, by its lower half with the vomer. The inferior border serves for the attachment of the triangular cartilage of the nose. On each side of the perpendicular plate numerous grooves and canals are seen, leading from the foramina on the cribriform plate; they lodge filaments of the olfactory nerves.

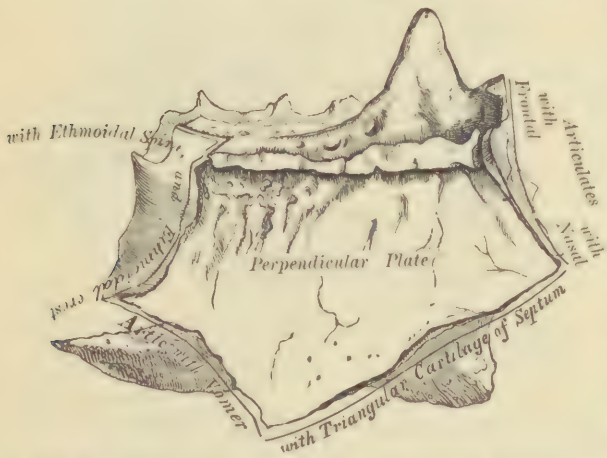


FIG. 60.—Perpendicular plate of ethmoid (enlarged), shown by removing the right lateral mass.

The **Lateral Mass** or **Labyrinth** (*labyrinthus ethmoidalis*) of the ethmoid consists of a number of thin-walled cellular cavities, the **ethmoidal cells** (*cellulæ ethmoidales*) interposed between two vertical plates of bone, the outer one of which forms part of the orbit, and the inner one part of the nasal fossa of the corresponding side. There are two lateral masses, one on each side. The ethmoidal cells are not present at birth, but appear during the fifth year. In the disarticulated bone many of these cells appear to be broken; but when the bones are articulated they are closed in at every part, except where they open into the nasal fossæ. The *upper surface* of each lateral mass presents a number of apparently half-broken cellular spaces; these are closed in, when articulated, by the edges of the ethmoidal notch of the frontal bone. Crossing this surface are two grooves on each side, converted into canals by articulation with the frontal; they are the **anterior** and **posterior ethmoidal canals** (*canalis ethmoidale anterius* and *posterius*), and open on the inner wall of the orbit. The *posterior surface* also presents large, irregular cellular cavities, which are closed in by articulation with the sphenoidal turbinated bones and the orbital process of the palate. The cells at the anterior surface are completed by the lachrymal bone and nasal process of the superior maxillary, and those below also by the superior maxillary. The *outer surface* of each lateral mass is formed of a thin, smooth, oblong plate of bone, called the **os planum** (*lamina papyracea*); it forms part of the inner wall of the orbit, and articulates, above, with the orbital plate of the frontal; below, with the superior maxillary; in front, with the lachrymal; and behind, with the sphenoid and orbital process of the palate.

From the *inferior part* of each lateral mass, immediately beneath the os planum, there projects downward and backward an irregular lamina of bone, called the **unciform process** (*processus uncinatus*), from its hook-like form; it serves to close in the upper part of the orifice of the antrum, and articulates with the ethmoidal

process of the inferior turbinated bone. It is often broken in disarticulating the bones.

The *inner surface* of each lateral mass forms part of the outer wall of the nasal fossa of the corresponding side. It is formed of a thin lamella of bone, which descends from the under surface of the cribriform plate, and terminates below in a free, convoluted margin, the **middle turbinated** or the **inferior ethmoidal turbinate bone** (*concha nasalis media*). The middle turbinated bone may contain a cell or cells, which are really ethmoidal cells. Howard A. Lothrop[1] studied 1000 specimens, and found cells in 9 per cent. of them. He never found cells in children. As a rule, a turbinate cell communicates with a posterior ethmoidal cell, but may join an anterior ethmoidal cell. The cells may open into the superior meatus or into the middle meatus. The whole of this surface is rough and marked above by numerous grooves, which run nearly vertically downward from the cribriform plate; they lodge branches of the olfactory nerve, which are distributed on the mucous membrane covering the bone. The back part of this surface is subdivided by a narrow oblique fissure, the **superior meatus of the nose** (*meatus nasi superior*), bounded above by a thin, curved plate of bone, the **superior turbinated bone** (*concha nasalis superior*). By means of an orifice at the upper part of this fissure the posterior ethmoidal cells open into the nose. Below, and in front of the superior meatus, is seen the convex surface of the middle turbinated bone. It extends along the whole length of the inner surface of each lateral mass; its lower margin is free and thick, and its concavity, directed outward, assists in forming the middle meatus. It is by a large orifice at the upper and front part of the middle meatus that the anterior ethmoidal cells, and through them the frontal sinuses, communicate with the nose by means of a funnel-shaped canal, the **infundibulum** (*infundibulum ethmoidale*). The cellular cavities of each lateral mass, thus walled in by the os planum on the outer side and by the other bones already mentioned, are divided by a thin transverse bony partition into two sets, which do not communicate with each other; they are termed the **anterior** and **posterior ethmoidal cells** or **sinuses**. The former, more numerous, communicate with the frontal sinuses above and the middle meatus below by means of a long, flexuous canal, the **infundibulum**; the posterior, less numerous, open into the superior meatus and communicate (occasionally) with the sphenoidal sinuses. In some cases the ethmoidal sinuses communicate with the maxillary sinus. In some cases the os planum never develops, and the ethmoidal sinuses are separated from the orbit merely by membrane.

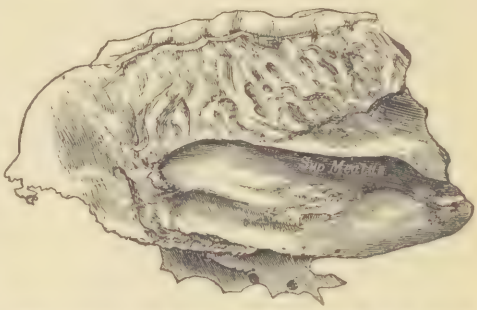


FIG. 61.—Ethmoid bone. Inner surface of right lateral mass (enlarged).

Development.—By *three* centres: one for the perpendicular lamella, and one for each lateral mass. The lateral masses are first developed, ossific granules making their appearance in the os planum between the fourth and fifth months of fœtal life, and extending into the spongy bones. At birth the bone consists of the two lateral masses, which are small and ill-developed. During the first year after birth the perpendicular plate and crista galli begin to ossify, from a single nucleus, and become joined to the lateral masses about the beginning of the second year. The cribriform plate is ossified partly from the perpendicular plate and partly from the lateral masses. The formation of the ethmoidal cells, which completes the bone, does not commence until the end of the fourth year.

[1] Annals of Surgery, May, 1903.

Articulations.—With fifteen bones: the sphenoid, two sphenoidal turbinated, the frontal, and eleven of the face—the two nasal, two superior maxillary, two lachrymal, two palate, two inferior turbinated, and the vomer. No muscles are attached to this bone.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE CRANIUM.

The cerebral vesicles became enclosed by an envelope of membrane derived from the embryonic connective tissue about the head end of the chorda. This sac from the mesoderm is converted into fibrous tissue, and is known as the **membranous cranium.** In adult life the dura mater represents the membranous cranium.

In mammals the base and part of the sides of the membranous cranium become cartilaginous, but the roof and the remaining part of the sides remain membranous. Ossification commences in the roof and begins at a later period in the base. Although ossification begins in the membrane bones before it does in the cartilage bones, and the bones of the roof appear before the bones of the base and make considerable progress in their growth, at birth ossification is more advanced in the base, this portion of the skull forming a solid, immovable groundwork.

The Skull at Different Ages. The skull at birth is relatively of large size as compared with the body. The cerebral cranium is large and the face is small. The fontanelles are open (see below). There are no sutures, but the margins of adjacent bones are widely separated by fibrous tissue which runs from the periosteum to the dura mater. The bones of the vault have no diploë and digital impressions are absent on the cranial surfaces. The parietal eminences and the frontal eminences are very distinct.[1]

The orbits and parietal bones are large. If the base is examined it is noted that the mastoid processes are absent, that the lower border of the symphysis of the jaw is on a level with the condyles of the occipital bone, and that the pterygoid plates form "a large angle with the skull base, whereas in the adult the angle is almost a right one."[2] The lower jaw at birth is shown in Fig. 91.

The development of individual bones is considered under the appropriate headings. At puberty various pneumatic cells develop in bone and alter the form of the head and face.

After the eruption of the first set of teeth the age can be determined with reasonable certainty, and the degree of obliteration of the sutures will also give valuable information. In the vast majority of individuals the metopic suture becomes a mere trace during the fifth or sixth years. Ossification at the junction of the coronal and sagittal sutures and osseous union of the sphenoid and basilar portion of the occipital occur during maturity. The lower jaw of an adult is shown in Fig. 93.

In old age much of the diploë disappears and the bones become thinner and more porous. The alveolar surfaces of the jaws are absorbed if the teeth are lost, and the lower jaw alters its form (Fig. 94).

Sexual Differences.—It is not always possible to tell with certainty a woman's skull from a man's, but certain features are of value in reaching a conclusion. Virchow maintained that in non-European races it is very difficult to determine the sex from the skull, though among some savage races the differences may be great.[3] It is always to be borne in mind that a woman's skull *may be* of the masculine type and a man's skull *may be* of the feminine type. There is no constant characteristic significant of the male or female skull. As a general rule, the female skull is smaller than the male; it is lighter, the muscular ridges and processes are less distinct, the mastoid processes are of less size, the orbital margins are thin and sharp (Cunningham), the forehead is more vertical and the vertex is more flattened (Cunningham), and the edge of the tympanic plate is "rounder and more tuberculous" (Cunningham). The frontal air sinuses are smaller in women than in men, one reason why the glabella is more prominent in men. The flattening of the vertex in women, previously referred to, causes the top of the head to be at a more marked angle with the forehead than in men (Ecker). This characteristic was recognized by the Greek sculptors (Havelock Ellis). The cephalic index, which shows the relation of skull breadth to skull length, is of doubtful value in determining sex.

The Fontanelles (Fonticuli).

Before birth the bones at the vertex and side of the skull are separated from each other by membranous intervals in which bone is deficient. These intervals are principally found at the four angles of the parietal bones. Hence there are six fontanelles. Their formation is due to the wave of ossification being circular and the bones quadrilateral; the ossific matter first meets at the margins of the bones, at the points nearest to their centres of ossification, and vacuities

[1] J. Bland Sutton in Henry Morris' Human Anatomy. [2] Ibid.
[3] Man and Woman, by Havelock Ellis.

or spaces are left at the angles, which are called **fontanelles,** so named from the pulsations of the brain, which are perceptible at the anterior fontanelle, were likened to the rising of water in a fountain. The **anterior** or **bregmatic fontanelle** (*fonticulus frontalis*) is the largest; it is lozenge-shaped, and corresponds to the junction of the sagittal and coronal sutures; the **posterior fontanelle** (*fonticulus occipitalis*), of smaller size, is triangular, and is situated at the junction of the sagittal and lambdoid sutures; the remaining ones, the **antero-lateral** and the **postero-lateral fontanelles** (*fonticulus sphenoidalis et fonticulus mastoideus*), are situated at the inferior angles of each parietal bone. The latter are closed soon after birth; the two at the two superior angles remain open longer; the posterior being closed in a few months after birth; the anterior remaining open until the first or second year. These spaces are gradually filled in by an extension of the ossifying process or by the development of a Wormian bone. Sometimes the anterior fontanelle remains open beyond two years, and is occasionally persistent throughout life.

Supernumerary, Wormian,[1] Sutural or Epactal Bones (Ossa Triquetra).

In addition to the constant centres of ossification of the skull, additional ones are occasionally found in the course of the sutures. These form irregular, isolated bones, interposed between the cranial bones, and have been termed **Wormian bones** or **ossa triquetra.** They are most

FIG. 62.—Skull at birth, showing the anterior and posterior fontanelles.

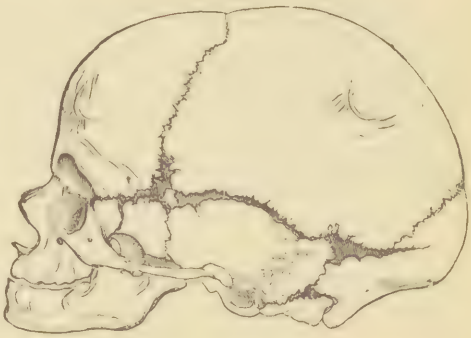


FIG. 63.—The lateral fontanelles.

frequently found in the course of the lambdoid suture, but occasionally also occupy the situation of the fontanelles, especially the posterior and, more rarely, the anterior. Frequently one is found between the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone and the greater wing of the

FIG. 64.—Wormian bones.

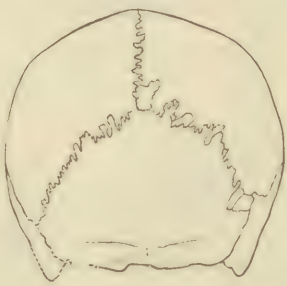


FIG. 65.

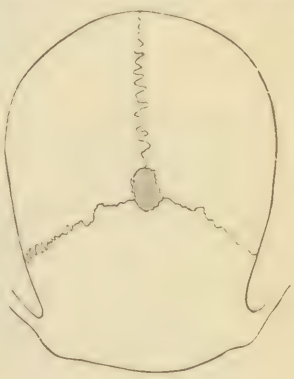


FIG. 66.

sphenoid, the **epicteric bone** or the **pterion ossicle** (Fig. 63). They have a great tendency to be symmetrical on the two sides of the skull, and they vary much in size, being in some cases not larger than a pin's head, and confined to the outer table; in other cases so large that one pair of these bones may form the whole of the occipital bone above the superior curved lines, as described

[1] Wormius, a physician of Copenhagen, is said to have given the first detailed description of these bones.

by Béclard and Ward. Their number is generally limited to two or three, but more than a hundred have been found in the skull of an adult hydrocephalic skeleton. In their development, structure, and mode of articulation they resemble the other cranial bones.

Congenital Fissures and Gaps.

An arrest in the ossifying process may give rise to deficiencies or gaps; or to fissures, which are of importance in a medico-legal point of view, as they are liable to be mistaken for fractures. The fissures generally extend from the margins toward the centre of the bone, but the gaps may be found in the middle as well as at the edges. In course of time they may become covered with a thin lamina of bone.

BONES OF THE FACE (OSSA FACIEI).

The Facial Bones are fourteen in number—viz., the

Two Nasal.	Two Palate.
Two Superior Maxillæ.	Two Inferior Turbinated.
Two Lachrymal.	Vomer.
Two Malar.	Inferior Maxilla or Mandible.

"Of these, the upper and lower jaws are the fundamental bones for mastication, and the others are accessories; for the chief function of the facial bones is to provide an apparatus for mastication, while subsidiary functions are to provide for the sense organs (eye, nose, tongue) and a vestibule to the respiratory and vocal organs. Hence the variations in the shape of the face in man and the lower animals depend chiefly on the question of the character of their food and their mode of obtaining it."[1]

The Nasal Bones (Ossa Nasalia).

The nasal (*nasus*, the nose) are two small oblong bones, varying in size and form in different individuals; they are placed side by side at the middle and upper

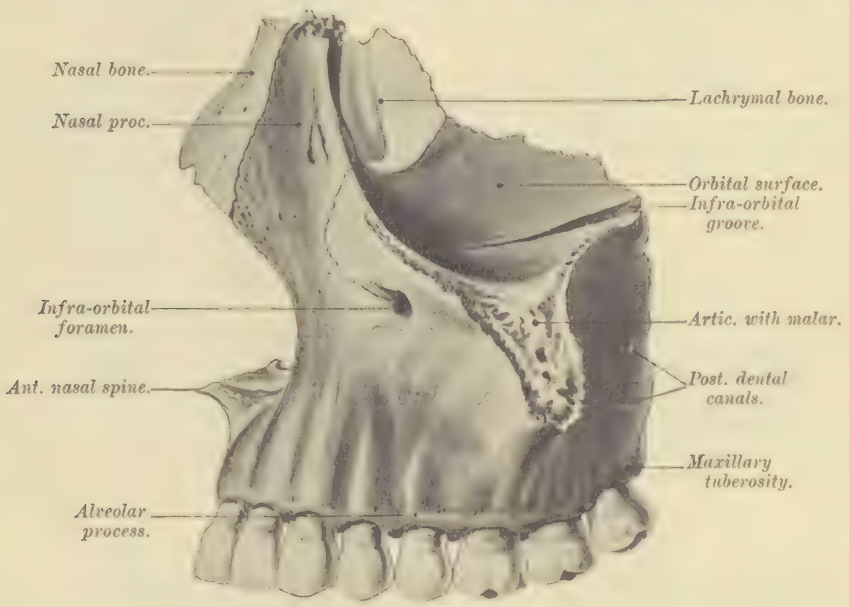


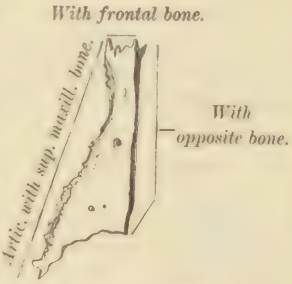
Fig. 67.—Nasal and lachrymal bones *in situ*.

part of the face, forming, by their junction, "the bridge" of the nose (Fig. 67). Each bone presents for examination two surfaces and four borders.

[1] W. W. Keen, American edition, 1887, p. 185.

Surfaces. **Outer Surface.**—The outer surface is concave from above downward, convex from side to side; it is covered by the Pyramidalis and Compressor nasi muscles, and gives attachment at its upper part to a few fibres of the Occipito-frontalis muscle (Theile). It is marked by numerous small arterial furrows, and perforated about its centre by a foramen (*foramen nasale*), sometimes double, for the transmission of a small vein.

Inner Surface.—The inner surface is concave from side to side, convex from above downward; in which direction it is traversed by a longitudinal groove (sometimes a canal), for the passage of a branch of the nasal nerve.



Outer Surface.

Fig. 68.—Right nasal bone.

Inner Surface.

Fig. 69.—Left nasal bone.

Borders. **Superior Border.**—The superior border is narrow, thick, and serrated, for articulation with the nasal notch of the frontal bone.

Inferior Border.—The inferior border is broad, thin, sharp, inclined obliquely downward, outward, and backward, and serves for the attachment of the lateral cartilage of the nose. This border presents, about its middle, a notch, through which passes the branch of the nasal nerve above referred to, and is prolonged at its inner extremity into a sharp spine, which, when articulated with the opposite bone, forms the **nasal angle.**

External Border.—The external border is serrated, bevelled at the expense of the internal surface above and of the external below, to articulate with the nasal process of the superior maxillary.

Internal Border.—The internal border, thicker above than below, articulates with its fellow of the opposite side, and is prolonged behind into a vertical crest, which forms part of the septum of the nose; this crest articulates above downward with the nasal spine of the frontal above, and the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid, and the triangular septal cartilage of the nose.

Development.—By *one* centre for each bone, which appears about the eighth week.

Articulations.—With four bones: two of the cranium, the frontal and ethmoid, and two of the face, the opposite nasal and the superior maxillary.

Attachment of Muscles.—A few fibres of the Occipito-frontalis muscle.

The Superior Maxillary Bones (Upper Jaw Bones or Maxillæ).

The superior maxillæ (*maxilla*, the jaw bone) are the most important bones of the face from a surgical point of view, on account of the number of diseases to which some of their parts are liable. Their careful examination becomes, therefore, a matter of considerable interest. They are the largest bones of the face, excepting the lower jaw, and form, by their union, the whole of the upper jaw. Each maxilla assists in the formation of three cavities, the roof of the mouth, the floor and outer wall of the nasal fossæ, and the floor of the orbit, and also enters into the formation of two fossæ, the zygomatic and spheno-maxillary, and two fissures, the spheno-maxillary and pterygo-maxillary. The bone presents for examination a **body** and four processes—**malar, nasal, alveolar,** and **palate.**

The Body of the Superior Maxilla (Corpus Maxillæ).

The body is somewhat cuboid and is hollowed out in its interior to form a large cavity, the **antrum of Highmore** (*sinus maxillaris*). Its surfaces are four—

an external or facial, a posterior or zygomatic, a superior or orbital, and an internal or nasal.

Surfaces. External Surface (*facies anterior*).—The external anterior or **facial** surface (Fig. 70) is directed forward and outward. It presents at its lower part a series of eminences corresponding to the position of the anterior five alveoli (*juga alveolaria*). Just above those for the incisor teeth is a depression, the **incisive** or **myrtiform fossa,** which gives origin to the Depressor alæ nasi; and below it to the alveolar border is attached a slip of the Orbicularis oris. Above and a little external to it the Compressor nasi arises. More external is another depression, the **canine fossa** (*fossa canina*), larger and deeper than the incisive fossa, from which it is separated by a vertical ridge, the **canine eminence,** corresponding to the socket of the canine tooth. The canine fossa gives origin to the Levator anguli oris. Above the canine fossa is the **infraorbital foramen** (*foramen infraorbitale*), the termination

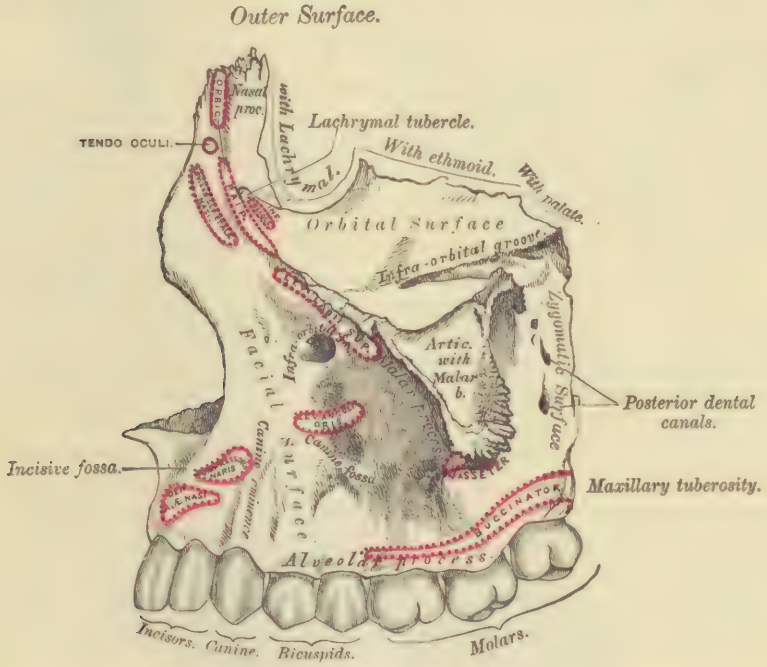


Fig. 70.—Left superior maxilla. Outer surface.

of the infraorbital canal; it transmits the infraorbital vessels and nerve. Sometimes the infraorbital canal opens by two, very rarely by three, orifices on the face. Above the infraorbital foramen is the **margin of the orbit** (*margo infraorbitalis*), which affords partial attachment to the Levator labii superioris proprius. To the sharp margin of bone which bounds this surface in front and separates it from the internal surface is attached the Dilator naris posterior.

Posterior Surface (*facies infratemporalis*).—The posterior or **zygomatic** or **infratemporal** surface is convex, directed backward and outward, and forms part of the **zygomatic fossa.** It is separated from the facial surface by a strong ridge of bone, the **malar process,** which extends upward from the socket of the second molar tooth. It presents about its centre several apertures leading to canals in the substance of the bone; they are termed the **posterior dental canals** (*foramina alveolaria*), and transmit the posterior dental vessels and nerves. At the lower part of this surface is a rounded eminence, the **maxillary tuberosity** (*tuber maxillare*), especially prominent after the growth of the wisdom-tooth, rough on its inner

side for articulation with the tuberosity of the palate bone, and sometimes with the external pterygoid plate. It gives attachment to a few fibres of origin of the Internal pterygoid muscle. Immediately above this is a smooth surface, which forms the anterior boundary of the spheno-maxillary fossa; it presents a groove which, running obliquely downward, is converted into a canal by articulation with the palate bone, forming the **posterior palatine** or **palato-maxillary canal** for the descending palatine artery and great palatine nerve.

Superior Surface (*facies orbitalis*).—The superior or **orbital** surface is thin, smooth, triangular, and forms part of the floor of the orbit. It is bounded internally by an irregular margin which in front presents a notch, the **lachrymal notch** (*incisura lacrimalis*), which receives the lachrymal bone; in the middle articulates with the os planum of the ethmoid, and behind with the orbital process of the palate bone; bounded externally by a smooth, rounded edge which enters into the formation of the spheno-maxillary fissure, and which sometimes articulates at its anterior extremity with the orbital plate of the sphenoid; bounded in front by part of the circumference of the orbit, which is continuous on the inner side with the nasal, on the outer side with the malar process. Along the middle line of the orbital surface is a deep groove, the **infraorbital groove** (*sulcus infraorbitalis*), for the passage of the infraorbital vessels and nerve. The groove commences at the middle of the outer border of this surface, and, passing forward, terminates in a canal, which subdivides into two branches. One of the canals, the **infraorbital canal** (*canalis infraorbitalis*), opens just below the margin of the orbit; the other, which is smaller, runs downward in the substance of the anterior wall of the antrum; it is called the **anterior dental canal,** and transmits the anterior dental vessels and nerve to the front teeth of the upper jaw. From the back part of the infraorbital canal a second small canal is sometimes given off, which runs downward in the outer wall of the antrum, and conveys the middle dental nerve to the bicuspid teeth. Occasionally this canal is derived from the anterior dental. At the inner and fore part of the orbital surface, just external to the lachrymal groove for the nasal duct, is a depression which gives origin to the Inferior oblique muscle of the eye.

Internal Surface (*facies nasalis*).—The internal or **nasal** surface (Fig. 71) is unequally divided into two parts by a horizontal projection of bone, the **palate process** (*processus palatinus*): the portion above the palate process forms part of the outer wall of the nasal fossæ; that below it forms part of the cavity of the mouth. The superior division of this surface presents a large, irregular opening, the **maxillary hiatus** (*hiatus maxillaris*), leading into the antrum of Highmore. At the upper border of this aperture are numerous broken cellular cavities, which in the articulated skull are closed in by the ethmoid and lachrymal bones. Below the aperture is a smooth concavity which forms part of the inferior meatus of the nasal fossæ, and behind it is a rough surface which articulates with the perpendicular plate of the palate bone, traversed by a groove which, commencing near the middle of the posterior border, runs obliquely downward and forward, and forms, when completed by its articulation with the palate bone, the **posterior palatine** or **palato-maxillary canal.** In front of the opening of the antrum is a deep groove, converted into a canal (*canalis nasolacrimalis*) by the lachrymal and inferior turbinated bones. The groove is called the **lachrymal groove** (*sulcus lacrimalis*), and lodges the nasal duct. More anteriorly is a well-marked rough ridge, the **inferior turbinated crest** (*crista conchalis*), for articulation with the inferior turbinated bone. The shallow concavity above this ridge forms part of the middle meatus of the nose, while that below it forms part of the inferior meatus. The portion of this surface below the palate process is concave, rough, and uneven, and perforated by numerous small foramina for the passage of nutrient vessels. It enters into the formation of the roof of the mouth.

The **Antrum of Highmore, Maxillary Antrum,** or **Maxillary Sinus** (*sinus maxillaris*), is a pyramidal cavity hollowed out of the body of the maxillary bone. It varies much in size. It is in most cases a large cavity, but in some is very small. The apex of the antrum, directed outward, is formed by the malar process;

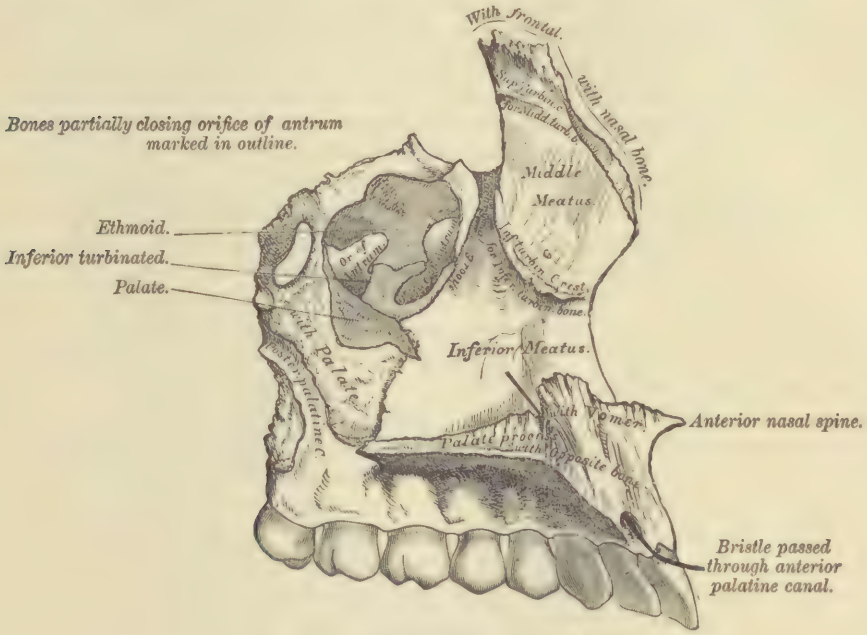


FIG. 71.—Left superior maxilla. Internal surface.

its base by the outer wall of the nose. Its walls are everywhere exceedingly thin, and correspond to the orbital, facial, and zygomatic surfaces of the body of the bone. The antral floor is, in most persons, on a level with the floor of the nasal fossa, but in some individuals it is on a lower level. Not unusually the inner wall of the antrum will be found to contain depressions or pockets. In rare instances an antral cavity is made into two by a bony septum. Its inner wall or base presents, in the disarticulated bone, a large, irregular aperture (*hiatus maxillaris*), which communicates with the nasal fossa. The margins of this aperture are thin and ragged, and the aperture itself is much contracted by its articulation with the ethmoid above, the inferior turbinated below, and the palate bone behind.[1] In the articulated skull this cavity communicates with the middle meatus of the nasal cavity, generally by two small apertures left between the above-mentioned bones. In the recent state usually only one small opening exists, near the upper part of the cavity, sufficiently large to admit the end of a probe, the other being closed by the lining membrane of the sinus. That the opening into the nasal fossa does not afford the best drainage is demonstrated, when we note that it is at the highest and not at the lowest point of the antrum. "In rare instances the antrum communicates with the anterior ethmoidal cells, or the orbital and posterior ethmoidal cells and sphenoidal sinuses."[2] At birth the antrum exists, though in a rudimentary state. It attains its full size from the twelfth to the fourteenth year.

Crossing the cavity of the antrum are often seen several projecting laminæ of bone, similar to those seen in the sinuses of the cranium; and on its posterior wall

[1] In some cases, at any rate, the lachrymal bone encroaches slightly on the anterior superior portion of the opening, and assists in forming the inner wall of the antrum.
[2] D. Kerfoot Shute, in the Reference Handbook of the Medical Sciences.

are the posterior dental canals, transmitting the posterior dental vessels and nerves to the teeth. Projecting into the floor are several conical processes, corresponding to the roots of the first and second molar teeth;[1] in some cases the floor is perforated by the teeth in this situation.

It is from the extreme thinness of the walls of this cavity that we are enabled to explain how a tumor growing from the antrum encroaches upon the adjacent parts, pushing up the floor of the orbit, and displacing the eyeball, projecting inward into the nose, protruding forward on to the cheek, and making its way backward into the zygomatic fossa and downward into the mouth.

The Processes of the Superior Maxillæ.

Malar Process (*processus zygomaticus*).—The malar process is a rough, triangular eminence, situated at the angle of separation of the facial from the zygomatic surface. In front it is concave, forming part of the facial surface; behind it is also concave, and forms part of the zygomatic fossa; above it is rough and serrated for articulation with the malar bone; whilst below a prominent ridge marks the division between the facial and zygomatic surfaces. A small part of the Masseter muscle arises from this process.

Nasal Process (*processus frontalis*).—The nasal process is a strong, triangular plate of bone, which projects upward, inward, and backward by the side of the nose, forming part of its lateral boundary. Its *external surface* is concave, smooth, perforated by numerous foramina, and gives attachment to the Levator labii superioris alæque nasi, the Orbicularis palpebrarum, and Tendo oculi. Its *internal surface* forms part of the outer wall of the nasal fossæ; at its upper part it presents a rough, uneven surface, which articulates with the ethmoid bone, closing in the anterior ethmoidal cells; below this is a transverse ridge, the **superior turbinated crest** (*crista ethmoidalis*), for articulation with the middle turbinated bone of the ethmoid, bounded below by a shallow, smooth concavity which forms part of the middle meatus; below this again is the inferior turbinated crest (already described), where the process joins the body of the bone. Its upper border articulates with the frontal bone. The *anterior border* of the nasal process is thin, directed obliquely downward and forward, and presents a serrated edge for articulation with the nasal bone; its *posterior border* is thick, and hollowed into a groove, the **lachrymal groove** (*sulcus lacrimalis*), for the naso-lachrymal duct: of the two margins of this groove, the inner one articulates with the lachrymal bone; the outer one forms part of the circumference of the orbit. Just where the latter joins the orbital surface is a small tubercle, the **lachrymal tubercle**; this serves as a guide to the position of the lachrymal sac in the operation for fistula lachrymalis. The lachrymal groove in the articulated skull is converted into a canal (*canalis lacrimalis*) by the lachrymal bone and lachrymal process of the inferior turbinated; it is directed downward, and a little backward and outward, is about the diameter of a goose-quill, slightly narrower in the middle than at either extremity, and terminates below in the inferior meatus. It lodges the nasal duct.

Alveolar Process (*processus alveolaris*).—The alveolar process is the thickest and most spongy part of the bone, broader behind than in front, and excavated into deep cavities for the reception of the teeth (*alveoli dentales*). These cavities are eight in number, and vary in size and depth according to the teeth they contain. That for the canine tooth is the deepest; those for the molars are the widest, and subdivided into minor cavities by septa; those for the incisors are single, but deep and narrow. The *limbus alveolaris* is the broad inferior margin of the alveolar process. On the anterior surface are five projections correspond-

[1] The number of teeth whose fangs are in relation to the floor of the antrum is variable. The antrum "may extend so as to be in relation to all the teeth of the true maxilla, from the canine to the *dens sapientiæ*." (See Mr. Salter on Abscess of the Antrum, in a System of Surgery, edited by T. Holmes, 2d ed., vol. iv. p. 356).

ing to the five anterior alveoli. They are called *juga alveolaria*. The cavities for the teeth are separated by *septa interalveolaria*. The Buccinator muscle arises from the outer surface of this process as far forward as the first molar tooth.

Palate Process (*processus palatinus*).—The palate process, thick and strong, projects horizontally inward from the inner surface of the bone. It is much thicker in front than behind, and forms a considerable part of the floor of the nostril and the roof of the mouth. Its *inferior surface* (Fig. 72) is concave, rough and uneven, contains numerous little cavities for the glands of the mucous membrane, and forms part of the roof of the mouth. This surface is perforated by numerous foramina for the passage of the nutrient vessels, channelled at the back part of its alveolar border by a longitudinal groove, sometimes a canal, for the transmission of the posterior palatine vessels, and the great posterior palatine nerve from Meckel's ganglion, and presents little depressions for the lodgement of the palatine glands. When the two superior maxillæ bones are articulated together, a large orifice may be seen in the middle line, immediately behind the incisor teeth. This is the **anterior palatine fossa** (*foramen incisivum*). On examining the bottom of this fossa four canals are seen: two branch off laterally to the right and left nasal fossæ, and two, one in front and one behind, lie in the middle line. The former pair of these openings are named the **incisor foramina** or **foramina of Stenson**; they are the openings of the forking **incisor canal** (*canalis incisivus*), through which pass the anterior or terminal branches of the descending or posterior palatine arteries, which ascend from the mouth to the nasal fossæ, and they contain the remains of Jacobson's organ. The canals in the middle line are termed the **foramina of Scarpa**, and transmit the naso-palatine nerves, the left passing through the anterior, and the right through the posterior, canal. Occasionally in adults' skulls, often in children's skulls, on the palatal surface of the process a delicate linear suture may sometimes be seen extending from the anterior palatine fossa to the interval between the lateral incisor and the canine tooth. This marks out the **intermaxillary** or **pre-maxillary bones** or the **incisive bone** (*os incisivum*) on each side. It is the portion of the upper jaw which is in front of the anterior palatine foramen, and which in some animals exists permanently as a separate piece. It includes the whole thickness of the alveolus, the corresponding part of the floor of the nose, and the anterior nasal spine, and contains the sockets of the incisor teeth. The pre-maxillary bone has a separate centre of ossification and develops in association with the vertical plate of the ethmoid and the vomer. The incisive bones, which are always present in the fœtus, usually join the rest of the bone

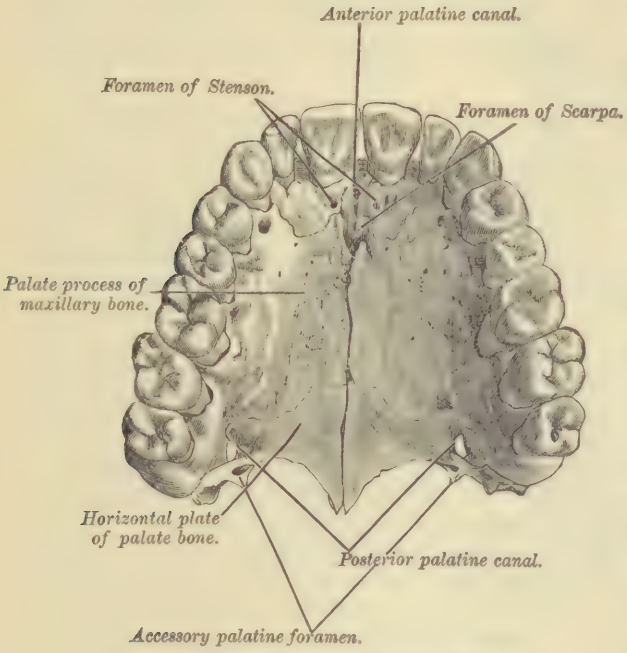


FIG. 72.—The palate and alveolar arch.

early in development, more or less well-marked sutures (*sutura incisiva*) indicating the lines of union. In double hare-lip the incisive bones covered by the median part of the lip are frequently not joined to the palate processes of the superior maxillary bones, but are fixed to the nasal septum. Albrecht maintains that instead of two intermaxillary segments or incisive bones, each carrying two incisor teeth, there are originally four, each carrying the rudiment of one tooth and each of a triangular shape, the apices approaching at the anterior palatine canal. The segments are separated by five sutures. The maxilla is called the **exo-gnathion**, each mesial segment is called an **endo-gnathion**, and each lateral segment a **meso-gnathion**. In hare-lip the cleft may be purely in the soft parts, but may pass into the nostril, the alveolar portion of the maxilla, or through the palate bone (*cleft palate*). In hare-lip with cleft palate (*alveolar hare-lip*) Kölliker believes that the cleft is between the maxilla and the intermaxillary bone; that is, between the exo-gnathion and the meso-gnathion. Albrecht is of the opinion that the cleft is between the endo-gnathion and the meso-gnathion. In some cases of double hare-lip the pre-maxillary segment contains the germs of four incisors, and in such a case the cleft must be between the exo-gnathion and the meso-gnathion. In other cases it contains but two, and in such a case the cleft must be as indicated by Albrecht, as Fergusson's explanation is not in accordance with our knowledge of development. Fergusson believed that if the germs of four incisors are not present the missing ones were lost in the gap. The *upper surface* of the palate process is concave from side to side, smooth, and forms part of the floor of the nose. It presents the upper orifices of the foramina of

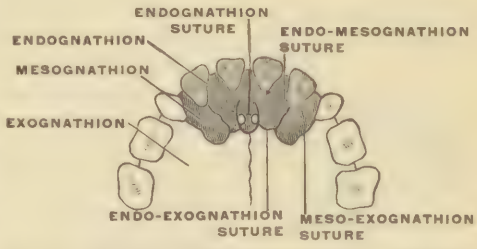


FIG. 73.—The pre-maxilla and its sutures. (Albrecht.)

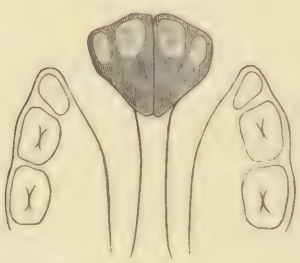


FIG. 74.—Kölliker's theory of alveolar hare-lip. (Poirier and Charpy.)

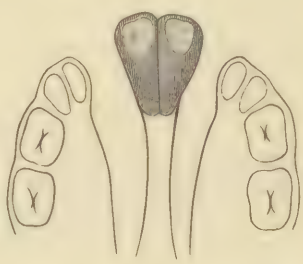


FIG. 75.—Alveolar hare-lip according to the theory of Albrecht. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Stenson and Scarpa, the former being on each side of the middle line, the latter being situated in the intermaxillary suture, and therefore not visible unless the two bones are placed in apposition. The *outer border* of the palate process is incorporated with the rest of the bone. The *inner border* is thicker in front than behind, and is raised above into a ridge, the **nasal crest** (*crista nasalis*), which, with the corresponding ridge in the opposite bone, forms a groove for the reception of the vomer. In front this crest rises to a considerable height, and this portion is named the **incisor crest.** The *anterior margin* is bounded by the thin, concave border of the opening of the nose, prolonged forward internally into a sharp process, forming, with a similar process of the opposite bone, the **anterior nasal spine** (*spina nasalis anterior*). The *posterior border* is serrated for articulation with the horizontal plate of the palate bone.

Development.—This bone commences to ossify at a very early period, and ossification proceeds in it with great rapidity, so that it is difficult to ascertain with certainty its precise number of centres. It appears, however, probable that it is ossified from four centres, which are deposited in membrane. 1. One which forms that portion of the body of the bone which lies internal to the infraorbital canal, including the floor of the orbit, the outer wall of the nasal fossa, and the nasal process. 2. A second which gives origin to that portion of the bone which lies external to the infraorbital canal and the malar process. 3. A third from which is developed the palatine process posterior to Stenson's canal and the adjoining part of the nasal wall. 4. And a fourth for the front part of the alveolus which carries the incisor teeth and corresponds to the pre-maxillary bone of the lower animals. These centres appear about the eighth week, and by the tenth week the three first-named centres have become fused together and the bone consists of two portions, one the maxilla proper, and the other the pre-maxillary portion. The suture between these two portions on the palate persists till middle life, but is not to be seen on the facial surface. This is believed by Callender to be due to the fact that the front wall of the sockets of the incisive teeth is not formed by the pre-maxillary bone, but by an outgrowth from the facial part of the superior maxilla. The antrum appears as a shallow groove on the inner surface of the bone at an earlier period than any of the other nasal sinuses, its development commencing about the fourth month of fœtal life. The sockets for the teeth are formed by the growing downward of two plates from the dental groove, which subsequently becomes divided by partitions jutting across from the one to the other. If the two palate processes fail to unite partially or completely, a partial or complete cleft palate results.

FIG. 76. Development of superior maxillary bone. At birth.

Articulations.—With *nine* bones: two of the cranium, the frontal and ethmoid, and seven of the face—viz., the nasal, malar, lachrymal, inferior turbinated, palate, vomer, and its fellow of the opposite side. Sometimes it articulates with the orbital plate of the sphenoid, and sometimes with its external pterygoid plate.

Attachment of Muscles.—To twelve: the Orbicularis palpebrarum, Obliquus oculi inferior, Levator labii superioris alæque nasi, Levator labii superioris proprius, Levator anguli oris, Compressor nasi, Depressor alæ nasi, Dilatator naris posterior, Masseter, Buccinator, Internal pterygoid, and Orbicularis oris.

CHANGES PRODUCED IN THE UPPER JAW BY AGE.

At birth and during infancy the diameter of the bone is greater in an antero-posterior than in a vertical direction. Its nasal process is long, its orbital surface large, and its tuberosity well marked. In the adult the vertical diameter is the greater, owing to the development of the alveolar process and the increase in size of the antrum. In old age the bone approaches again in character to the infantile condition: its height is diminished, and after the loss of the teeth the alveolar process is absorbed, and the lower part of the bone contracted and diminished in thickness.

The Lachrymal Bone (Os Lacrimale).

The lachrymal (*lachryma*, a tear) is the smallest and most fragile bone of the face. There are two lachrymal bones. They are situated at the front part of the inner wall of the orbit (Fig. 67), and resemble somewhat in form, thinness,

and size a finger-nail; hence they are termed the **ossa unguis**. Each bone presents for examination two surfaces and four borders.

Surfaces. **External Surface.**—The external or **orbital** surface (Fig. 77) is divided by a vertical ridge, the **lachrymal crest** (*crista lacrimalis posterior*), into two parts. The portion of bone in front of this ridge, the **lachrymal sulcus** (*sulcus lacrimalis*), presents a smooth, concave, longitudinal groove, the free margin of which unites with the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone, completing the **lachrymal groove.** The upper part of this groove (*fossa sacci lacrimalis*) lodges the lachrymal sac; the lower part (*sulcus lacrimalis*) lodges the nasal duct. The portion of bone behind the ridge is smooth, slightly concave, and forms part of the inner wall of the orbit. The ridge, with a part of the orbital surface immediately behind it, affords attachment to the Tensor tarsi muscle: it terminates below in a small, hook-like projection, the **hamular process** (*hamulus lacrimalis*), which articulates with the lachrymal tubercle of the superior maxillary bone, and completes the upper orifice of the lachrymal groove. It sometimes exists as a separate piece, which is then called the **lesser lachrymal bone.**

Fig. 77. Left lachrymal bone. External surface. (Slightly enlarged.)

Internal Surface.—The internal or **nasal** surface presents a depressed furrow, corresponding to the ridge on its outer surface. The surface of bone in front of this forms part of the middle meatus, and that behind it articulates with the ethmoid bone, filling in the anterior ethmoidal cells.

Borders.—Of the four borders, the *anterior* is the longest, and articulates with the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone. The *posterior*, thin and uneven, articulates with the os planum of the ethmoid. The *superior*, the shortest and thickest, articulates with the internal angular process of the frontal bone. The *inferior* is divided by the lower edge of the vertical crest into two parts; the posterior part articulates with the orbital plate of the superior maxillary bone; the anterior portion is prolonged downward into a pointed process, which articulates with the lachrymal process of the inferior turbinated bone and assists in the formation of the lachrymal groove.

Development.—By a single centre, which makes its appearance soon after ossification of the vertebræ has commenced.

Articulations.—With *four* bones: two of the cranium, the frontal and ethmoid, and two of the face, the superior maxillary and the inferior turbinated.

Attachment of Muscles.—To one muscle, the Tensor tarsi.

The Malar Bone (Os Zygomaticum).

The name malar is derived from *mala*, the cheek. The malar or **yoke** bone is also called the **cheek bone.** There are two malar bones. Each is a small, quadrangular bone, situated at the upper and outer part of the face. They form the prominence of the cheek, part of the outer wall and floor of the orbit, and part of the temporal and zygomatic fossæ (Fig. 78). Each bone presents for examination an external and an internal surface; four processes, the **frontal, orbital, maxillary,** and **zygomatic processes**; and four borders.

Surfaces. **External or Malar Surface** (*facies malaris*).—The external surface (Fig. 79) is smooth, convex, perforated near its centre by a small aperture, the **malar foramen** (*foramen zygomaticofaciale*), for the passage of nerves and vessels from the orbit. The malar surface is covered by the Orbicularis palpebrarum muscle, and affords attachment to the Zygomaticus major and minor muscles.

Internal or Temporal Surface (*facies temporalis*).—The internal surface (Fig. 80), directed backward and inward, is concave, presenting internally a rough, triangular surface, for articulation with the superior maxillary bone; and externally, a smooth concave surface, which above forms the anterior boundary of

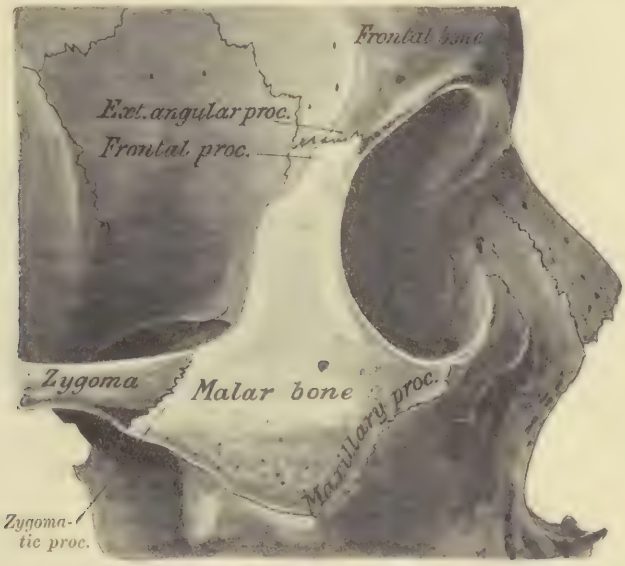


Fig. 78.—Malar bone *in situ*.

the temporal fossa, and below, where it is wider, forms part of the zygomatic fossa. This surface presents, a little above its centre, the aperture of a **malar canal** (*foramen zygomaticotemporale*), and affords attachment to a portion of the Masseter muscle at its lower part.

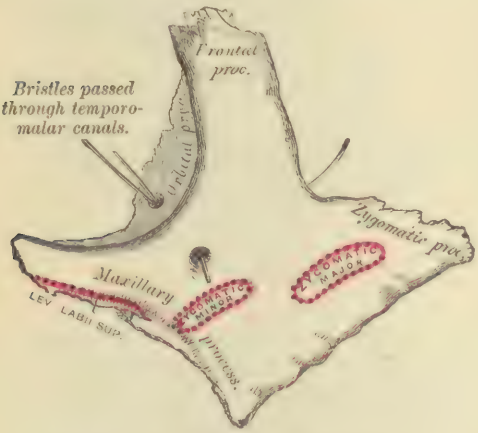


Fig. 79.—Left malar bone. Outer surface.

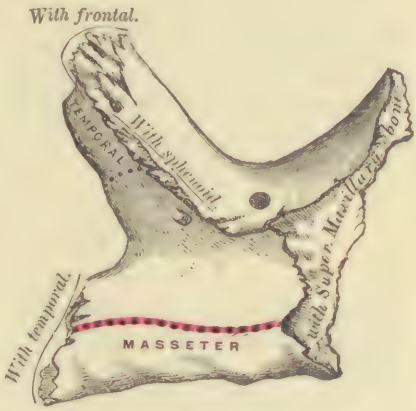


Fig. 80.—Left malar bone. Inner surface.

Processes. Frontal Process (*processus frontosphenoidalis*).—Of the four processes, the frontal is thick and serrated, and articulates with the external angular process of the frontal bone. To its orbital margin is attached the external tarsal ligament.

Orbital Process. The orbital process is a thick and strong plate, which projects backward from the orbital margin of the bone. Its *supero-internal surface* (*facies*

orbitalis), smooth and concave, forms, by its junction with the orbital surface of the superior maxillary bone and with the great wing of the sphenoid, part of the floor and outer wall of the orbit. Its *infero-external surface*, smooth and convex, forms part of the zygomatic and temporal fossæ. Its *anterior margin* is smooth and rounded, forming part of the circumference of the orbit. Its *superior margin*, rough and directed horizontally, articulates with the frontal bone behind the external angular process. Its *posterior margin* is rough and serrated for articulation with the sphenoid; *internally* it is also serrated for articulation with the orbital surface of the superior maxillary. At the angle of junction of the sphenoidal and maxillary portions a short, rounded, non-articular margin is generally seen; this forms the anterior boundary of the spheno-maxillary fissure: occasionally no such non-articular margin exists, the fissure being completed by the direct junction of the maxillary and sphenoid bones or by the interposition of a small Wormian bone in the angular interval between them. On the *upper surface* of the orbital process are seen a single or double **temporo-malar foramen** (*foramen zygomaticoorbitale*), the entrance of the temporo-malar canal. This canal may be bifurcated, or there may be two canals from the beginning; one of these usually opens on the posterior surface, the other (occasionally two) on the facial surface: they transmit filaments (**temporo-malar**) of the orbital branch of the superior maxillary nerve.

Maxillary Process.—The maxillary process is a rough, triangular surface which articulates with the malar process of the superior maxillary bone.

Zygomatic Process (*processus temporalis*).—The zygomatic process, long, narrow, and serrated, articulates with the zygomatic process of the temporal bone.

Borders.—Of the four borders, the *antero-superior* or *orbital border* is smooth, arched, and forms a considerable part of the circumference of the orbit. The *antero-inferior* or *maxillary border* is rough, and bevelled at the expense of its inner table, to articulate with the superior maxillary bone; affording attachment by its margin to the Levator labii superioris proprius, just at its point of junction with the superior maxillary. The *postero-superior* or *temporal border*, curved like an italic letter *f*, is continuous above with the commencement of the temporal ridge; below, with the upper border of the zygomatic arch: it affords attachment to the temporal fascia. The *postero-inferior* or *zygomatic border* is continuous with the lower border of the zygomatic arch, affording attachment by its rough edge to the Masseter muscle.

Development.—The malar bone ossifies generally from three centres, which appear about the eighth week—one for the zygomatic and two for the orbital portion—and fuse about the fifth month of fœtal life. The bone is sometimes, after birth, seen to be divided by a horizontal suture into an upper and larger and a lower and smaller division. In some quadrumana the malar bone consists of two parts, an orbital and a malar, which are ossified by separate centres.

Articulations.—With four bones: three of the cranium, frontal, sphenoid, and temporal; and one of the face, the superior maxillary.

Attachment of Muscles.—To four: the Levator labii superioris proprius, Zygomaticus major and minor, and Masseter.

The Palate Bone (Os Palatinum).

The palate bones (*palatum*, the palate) are situated at the back part of the nasal fossæ: they are wedged in between the superior maxillary bones and the pterygoid processes of the sphenoid (Fig. 81). Each bone assists in the formation of three cavities: the floor and outer wall of the nose, the roof of the mouth, and the floor of the orbit, and enters into the formation of two fossæ, the **spheno-maxillary** (*fossa pterygopalatina*) and **pterygoid fossæ** (*fossa pterygoidea*); and one fissure, the **spheno-maxillary fissure** (*fissura orbitalis inferior*). In form the palate

bone somewhat resembles the letter L, and may be divided into an inferior or horizontal plate and a superior or vertical plate.

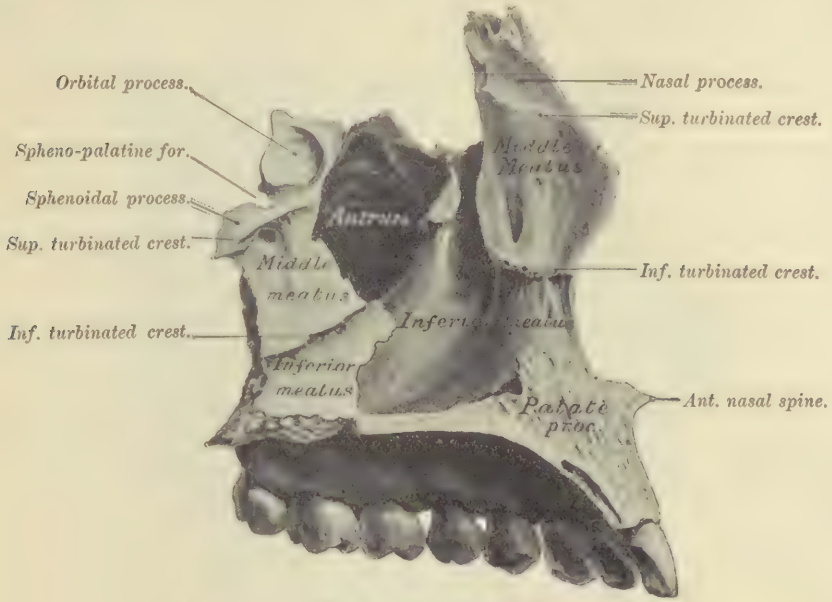


FIG. 81.—Palate bone *in situ*.

The Horizontal Plate of the Palate Bone (Pars Horizontalis) (Fig. 83).

The horizontal plate is of a quadrilateral form, and presents two surfaces and four borders.

Surfaces. **Superior Surface** (*facies nasalis*).—The superior or **nasal** surface, concave from side to side, forms the back part of the floor of the nasal cavity.

Inferior Surface (*facies palatina*).—The inferior or **palatine** surface, slightly concave and rough, forms the back part of the hard palate. At its posterior part may be seen a transverse ridge, more or less marked, for the attachment of part of the aponeurosis of the Tensor palati muscle. At the outer extremity of this ridge is a deep groove, the **pterygopalatine groove** (*sulcus pterygopalatinus*), converted into a canal by its articulation with the tuberosity of the superior maxillary bone, and forming the lower end of the **posterior palatine canal** (*canalis pterygopalatinus*), the opening of which is called the **great palatine foramen** (*foramen palatinum majus*). Near this groove the orifices (*foramina palatina minora*) of one or two small canals, **accessory posterior palatine canals** (*canales palatini*) may be seen. Through the posterior palatine canal emerge the descending palatine artery and the great posterior palatine nerve.

Borders.—The *anterior border* is serrated, bevelled at the expense of its inferior surface, and articulates with the palate process of the superior maxillary bone. The *posterior border* is concave, free, and serves for the attachment of the soft palate. Its inner extremity is sharp and pointed, and, when united with the opposite bone, forms a projecting process, the **posterior nasal** or **palatine spine** (*spina nasalis posterior*), for the attachment of the Azygos uvulæ muscle. The *external border* is united with the lower part of the perpendicular plate almost at right angles. The *internal border*, the thickest, is serrated for articulation with its fellow of the opposite side; its superior edge is raised into a ridge, which, united with the opposite bone, forms a **crest** (*crista nasalis*) into which the vomer is received.

The Vertical or Perpendicular Plate of the Palate Bone (Pars Perpendicularis).

The vertical or perpendicular plate (Figs. 82 and 83) is thin, of an oblong form, and directed upward and a little inward. It presents two surfaces, an external and an internal, and four borders.

Surfaces. Internal, Medial, or Nasal Surface (*facies nasalis*).—The internal surface presents at its lower part a broad, shallow depression, which forms part of the **inferior meatus** of the nose. Immediately above this is a well-marked horizontal ridge, the **inferior turbinated crest** (*crista conchalis*), for articulation with the inferior turbinated bone; above this, a second broad, shallow depression, which forms part of the **middle meatus**, surmounted above by a horizontal ridge less prominent than the inferior, the **superior turbinated crest** (*crista ethmoidalis*), for articulation with the middle turbinated bone. Above the superior turbinated crest is a narrow, horizontal groove, which forms part of the **superior meatus**.

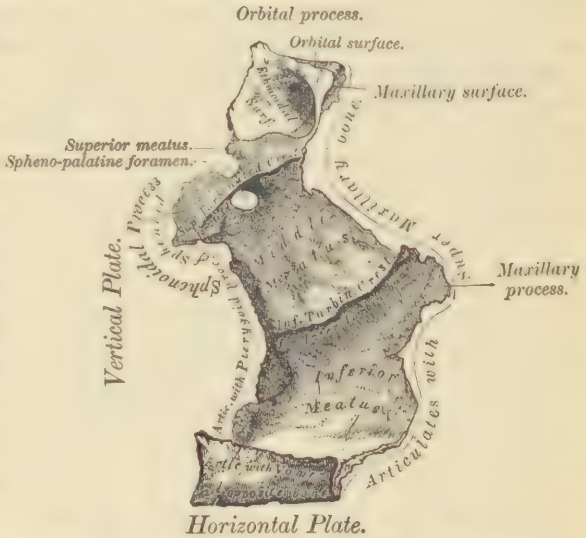


FIG. 82.—Left palate bone. Internal view. (Enlarged.)

External, Lateral, or Maxillary Surface (*facies maxillaris*).—The external surface is rough and irregular throughout the greater part of its extent, for articulation with the inner surface of the superior maxillary bone, its upper and back part being smooth where it enters into the formation of the spheno-maxillary fossa; it is also smooth in front, where it covers the orifice of the antrum. Toward the back part of this surface is a deep groove, the **pterygo-palatine groove**, converted into a canal, the **posterior palatine canal**, by its articulation with the superior maxillary bone. It transmits the posterior or descending palatine vessels and the great posterior palatine nerve from Meckel's ganglion.

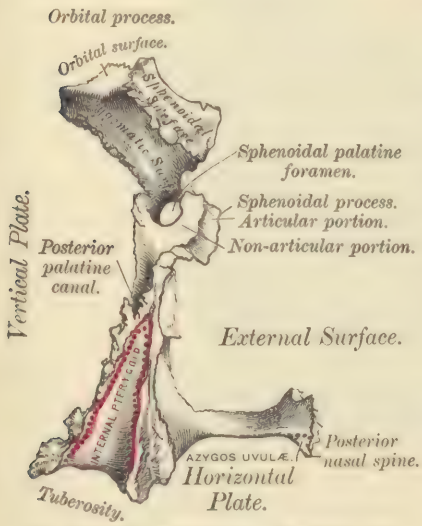


FIG. 83.—Left palate bone. Posterior view. (Enlarged.)

Borders. Anterior Border (Fig. 82).—The anterior border is thin, irregular, and presents opposite the inferior turbinated crest a pointed, projecting lamina, the **maxillary process** (*processus maxillaris*), which is directed forward, and closes in the lower and back part of the opening of the antrum.

Posterior Border.—The posterior border (Fig. 83) presents a deep groove, the edges of which are serrated for articulation with the pterygoid process of the sphenoid. At the lower part of this border is seen a pyramidal process of bone, the **pterygoid process** or **tuberosity of the palate** (*processus pyramidalis*), which is received into the angular interval between the two pterygoid

plates of the sphenoid at their inferior extremity. This process presents at its back part a median groove and two lateral surfaces. The groove is smooth, and forms part of the pterygoid fossa, affording attachment to the Internal pterygoid muscle; whilst the lateral surfaces are rough and uneven, for articulation with the anterior border of each pterygoid plate. A few fibres of the Superior constrictor arise from the tuberosity of the palate bone. The base of this process, continuous with the horizontal portion of the bone, presents the aperture of the accessory descending palatine canals, through which pass the two smaller descending branches of Meckel's ganglion; whilst its outer surface is rough for articulation with the inner surface of the body of the superior maxillary bone.

Superior Border.—The superior border of the vertical plate presents two well-marked processes separated by an intervening notch or foramen. The anterior, or larger, is called the **orbital process**; the posterior, the **sphenoidal process.**

Processes. Orbital Process (*processus orbitalis*).—The orbital process, directed upward and outward, is placed on a higher level than the sphenoidal. It presents five surfaces, which enclose a hollow cellular cavity, and is connected with the perpendicular plate by a narrow, constricted neck. Of these five surfaces, three are articular, two non-articular or free surfaces. The three articular are the *anterior* or *maxillary surface*, which is directed forward, outward, and downward, is of an oblong form, and rough for articulation with the superior maxillary bone. The *posterior* or *sphenoidal surface* is directed backward, upward, and inward. It ordinarily presents a small, open cell, the **orbital sinus** (*sinus orbitalis*), which communicates with the sphenoidal cells, and the margins of which are serrated for articulation with the vertical part of the sphenoidal turbinated bone. "The orbital may communicate not only with the sphenoidal sinus and the ethmoidal cells, but, in rare instances, with the maxillary antrum."[1] The *internal* or *ethmoidal surface* is directed inward, upward, and forward, and articulates with the lateral mass of the ethmoid bone. In some cases the cellular cavity opens on the internal surface of the bone; it then communicates with the posterior ethmoidal cells. More rarely it opens on both surfaces, and then communicates with both the posterior ethmoidal and the sphenoidal cells. The non-articular or free surfaces are the *superior* or *orbital surface*, directed upward and outward, of triangular form, concave, smooth, and forming the back part of the floor of the orbit; and the *external* or *zygomatic surface*, directed outward, backward, and downward, of an oblong form, smooth, lying in the spheno-maxillary fossa, and looking into the zygomatic fossa. The latter surface is separated from the orbital by a smooth, rounded border, which enters into the formation of the spheno-maxillary fissure.

Sphenoidal Process (*processus sphenoidalis*).—The sphenoidal process of the palate bone is a thin, compressed plate, much smaller than the orbital, and directed upward and inward. It presents three surfaces and two borders. The *superior surface*, the smallest of the three, articulates with the under surface of the sphenoidal turbinated bone; it presents a groove, which contributes to the formation of the pterygo-palatine canal. The *internal surface* is concave, and forms part of the outer wall of the nasal fossa. The *external surface* is divided into an articular and a non-articular portion: the former is rough, for articulation with the inner surface of the internal pterygoid plate of the sphenoid; the latter is smooth, and forms part of the spheno-maxillary fossa. The *anterior border* forms the posterior boundary of the spheno-palatine notch. The *posterior border*, serrated at the expense of the outer table, articulates with the inner surface of the internal pterygoid plate.

The orbital and sphenoidal processes are separated from one another by a deep notch, the **spheno-palatine notch** (*incisura sphenopalatinum*), which is converted

[1] Dr. D. Kerfoot Shute, in the Reference Handbook of the Medical Sciences.

into a foramen, the **spheno-palatine foramen** (*foramen sphenopalatinum*), by articulation with the under surface of the body of the sphenoid bone. Sometimes the two processes are united above, and form between them a complete foramen (Figs. 82 and 83), or the notch is crossed by one or more spiculæ of bone, so as to form two or more foramina. In the articulated skull this foramen is seen to pass from the spheno-maxillary fossa into the back part of the superior meatus. It transmits the spheno-palatine vessels and the superior nasal and naso-palatine nerves.

Development.—From a single centre, which makes its appearance about the second month at the angle of junction of the two plates of the bone. From this point ossification spreads inward to the horizontal plate, downward into the tuberosity, and upward into the vertical plate. In the fœtus the horizontal plate is much larger than the vertical, and even after it is fully ossified the whole bone is at first remarkable for its shortness.

Articulations.—With *six* bones: the sphenoid, ethmoid, superior maxillary, inferior turbinated, vomer, and opposite palate.

Attachment of Muscles.—To four: the Tensor palati, Azygos uvulæ, Internal pterygoid, and Superior constrictor of the pharynx.

The Inferior Turbinated Bone (Concha Nasalis Inferior).

The inferior turbinal or turbinated bones (*turbo*, a whirl) are situated one on each side of the outer wall of the nasal fossæ. Each inferior turbinated bone (*concha nasalis inferior*) consists of a layer of thin, spongy bone, curled upon

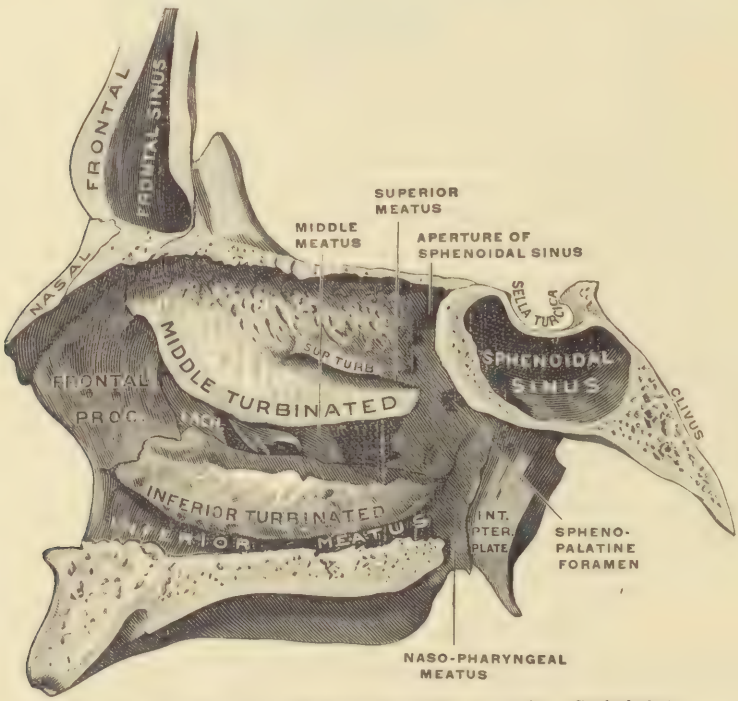


Fig. 84.—Nasal cavity, right lateral wall, from the left. (Spalteholz.)

itself like a scroll—hence its name "turbinated"—and extends horizontally along the outer wall of the nasal fossa, immediately below the orifice of the antrum (Fig. 84). Each bone presents two surfaces, two borders, and two extremities.

Surfaces.—The *internasal surface* (Fig. 85) is convex, perforated by numerous apertures, and traversed by longitudinal grooves and canals for the lodgement of arteries and veins. In the recent state it is covered by the lining membrane of the nose. The *external surface* is concave (Fig. 86), and forms part of the inferior meatus.

Fig. 85.—Right inferior turbinated bone. Internal surface.

Fig. 86.—Right inferior turbinated bone. External surface.

Borders.—Its *upper border* is thin, irregular, and connected to various bones along the outer wall of the nose. It may be divided into three portions: of these, the anterior articulates with the inferior turbinated crest of the superior maxillary bone; the posterior with the inferior turbinated crest of the palate bone; the middle portion of the superior border presents three well-marked processes, which vary much in their size and form. Of these, the anterior and smallest is situated at the junction of the anterior fourth with the posterior three-fourths of the bone: it is small and pointed, and is called the **lachrymal process** (*processus lacrimalis*); it articulates by its apex with the anterior inferior angle of the lachrymal bone, and by its margins with the groove on the back of the nasal process of the superior maxillary, and thus assists in forming the canal for the nasal duct. At the junction of the two middle fourths of the bone, but encroaching on its posterior fourth, a broad, thin plate, the **ethmoidal process** (*processus ethmoidalis*), ascends to join the unciform process of the ethmoid; from the lower border of this process a thin lamina of bone curves downward and outward, hooking over the lower edge of the orifice of the antrum, which it narrows below: it is called the **maxillary process** (*processus maxillaris*), and fixes the bone firmly to the outer wall of the nasal fossa. The *inferior border* is free and thick, more especially in the middle of the bone. Bone extremities are more or less narrow and pointed, the posterior being the more tapering. If the bone is held so that its outer concave surface is directed backward (*i. e.*, toward the holder), and its superior border, from which the lachrymal and ethmoidal processes project, upward, the lachrymal process will be directed to the side to which the bone belongs.[1] In a study of 1000 specimens, Howard A. Lothrop[2] did not discover cells in the inferior turbinated bone.

Development.—By a single centre, which makes its appearance about the middle of fœtal life.

Articulations.—With four bones: one of the cranium, the ethmoid, and three of the face, the superior maxillary, lachrymal, and palate.

No muscles are attached to this bone.

The Vomer (Ploughshare Bone).

The vomer (*vomer*, a ploughshare) is a single bone, situated vertically at the back part of the nasal fossæ, forming part of the septum of the nose (Fig. 87). It is thin, somewhat like a ploughshare in form; but it varies in different individuals, being frequently bent to one or the other side; it presents for examination two surfaces and four borders.

[1] If the lachrymal process is broken off, as is often the case, the side to which the bone belongs may be known by recollecting that the maxillary process is nearer the back than the front of the bone.

[2] Annals of Surgery, May, 1903.

Surfaces.—The *lateral surfaces* are smooth, marked by small furrows for the lodgement of blood-vessels, and by a groove on each side, sometimes a canal, the **naso-palatine groove** or **canal**, which runs obliquely downward and forward to the intermaxillary suture; it transmits the naso-palatine nerve.

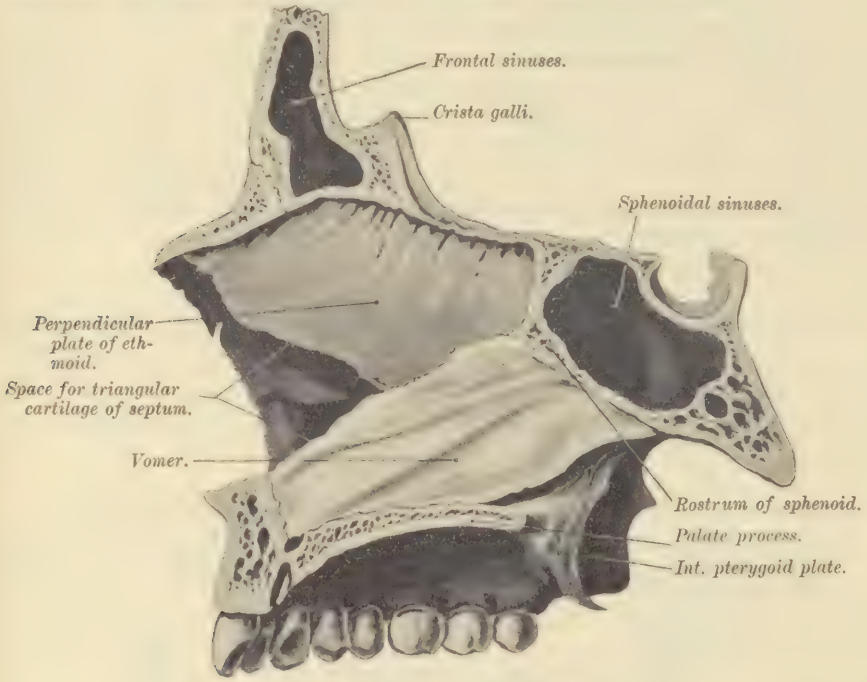


FIG. 87.—Vomer *in situ*.

Borders.—The *superior border*, the thickest, presents a deep groove, bounded on each side by a horizontal projecting leaf of bone; these leaves are the **alæ** (*alæ vomeris*). The groove formed by the alæ receives the rostrum of the sphenoid, while the alæ are overlapped and retained by the vaginal processes, which project from the under surface of the body of the sphenoid at the base of the pterygoid processes. At the front of the groove a fissure is left for the transmission of blood-vessels to the substance of the bone. The *inferior border*, the longest, is broad and uneven in front, where it articulates with the two superior maxillary bones; thin and sharp behind, where it joins with the palate bones. The upper half of the *anterior border* usually consists of two laminæ of bone, in the groove between which is received the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid; the lower half, also separated into two lamellæ, receives between them the lower margin of the septal cartilage of the nose. The *posterior border* is free, concave, and separates the nasal fossæ behind. It is thick and bifid above, thin below.

FIG. 88.—The vomer.

The surfaces of the vomer are covered by mucous membrane, which is intimately connected with the periosteum, with the intervention of very little, if any,

submucous connective tissue. Hence polypi are rarely found growing from this surface, though they frequently grow from the outer wall of the nasal fossæ, where the submucous tissue is abundant.

Development.—The vomer at an early period consists of two laminæ, separated by a very considerable interval, and enclosing between them a plate of cartilage, the **vomerine cartilage**, which is prolonged forward to form the remainder of the septum. Ossification commences in the membrane at the postero-inferior part of this cartilage by two centres, one on each side of the middle line, which extend to form the two laminæ. They begin to coalesce at the lower part, but their union is not complete until after puberty.

Articulations.—With *six* bones: two of the cranium, the sphenoid and ethmoid; and four of the face, the superior maxillary and the two palate bones; and with the cartilage of the septum.

The vomer has no muscles attached to it.

The Maxillary Bone, Inferior Maxilla, Mandible or Lower Jaw (Mandibula).

The mandible, the largest and strongest bone of the face, serves for the reception of the lower teeth. It consists of a curved, horizontal portion, the **body**, and two perpendicular portions, the **rami**, which join the back part of the body nearly at right angles.

The Horizontal Portion or Body of the Mandible (Corpus Mandibulæ).

The horizontal portion or body (Fig. 89) is convex in its general outline, and curved somewhat like a horseshoe. It presents for examination two surfaces and two borders.

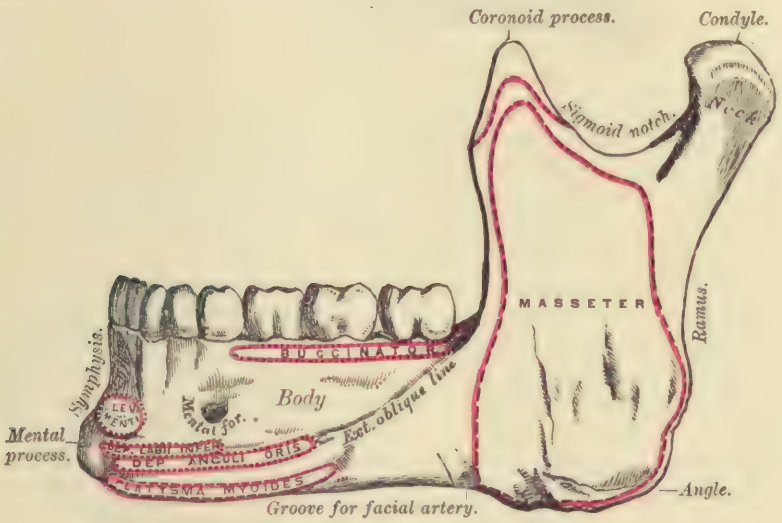


Fig. 89.—The mandible. Outer surface. Side view.

Surfaces. **External Surface.**—The external surface is convex from side to side, concave from above downward. In the median line is a vertical ridge, the **symphysis**, which extends from the upper to the lower border of the bone, and indicates the point of junction of the two pieces of which the bone is composed at an early period of life. The lower part of the ridge terminates in a prominent triangular eminence, the **mental process** or **protuberance** (*protuberantia mentalis*). This eminence is rounded below, and often presents a median depression separating two processes, the **mental tubercles** (*tubera mentalia*). It forms the chin, a feature peculiar to the human skull. On either side of the symphysis, just below the

cavities for the incisor teeth, is a depression, the **incisive** or **incisor fossa**, for the attachment of the Levator menti (or Levator labii inferioris); more externally is attached a portion of the Orbicularis oris (*accessorii orbicularis inferioris*), and, still more externally, a foramen, the **mental foramen** (*foramen mentale*), for the passage of the mental vessels and nerve. This foramen is placed just below the interval between the two bicuspid teeth. Running outward from the base of the mental process on each side is a ridge, the **external oblique line** (*linea obliqua*). The ridge is at first nearly horizontal, but afterward inclines upward and backward, and is continuous with the anterior border of the ramus: it affords attachment to the Depressor labii inferioris and Depressor anguli oris; below it the Platysma myoides is attached.

Internal Surface.—The internal surface (Fig. 90) is concave from side to side, convex from above downward. In the middle line is an indistinct linear depres-

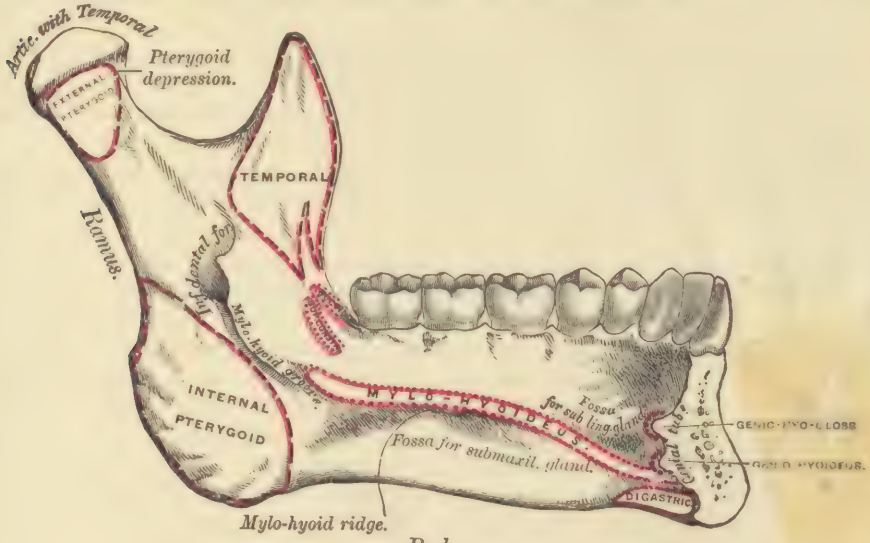


FIG. 90.—The mandible. Inner surface. Side view.

sion, corresponding to the symphysis externally; on either side of this depression just below its centre, are four prominent tubercles, placed in pairs, two above and two below; they are called the **genial tubercles** or **mental spines** (*spinæ mentales*), and afford attachment, the upper pair to the Genio-hyo-glossi, the lower pair to the Genio-hyoidei, muscles. Sometimes the tubercles on each side are blended into one; at others they all unite into an irregular eminence; or, again, nothing but an irregularity may be seen on the surface of the bone at this part. On either side of the genial tubercles is an oval depression, the **sublingual fossa** (*fovea sublingualis*), for lodging the sublingual gland; and beneath the fossa a rough depression on each side which gives attachment to the anterior belly of the Digastric muscle, the **digastric fossa** (*fossa digastrica*). At the back part of the sublingual fossa the **internal oblique line** or **mylo-hyoid ridge** (*linea mylohyoidea*) commences; it is at first faintly marked, but becomes more distinct as it passes upward and outward, and is especially prominent opposite the last two molar teeth; it affords attachment throughout its whole extent to the Mylo-hyoid muscle; the Superior constrictor of the pharynx with the pterygo-maxillary ligament being attached above its posterior extremity, near the alveolar margin. The portion of the bone above this ridge is smooth and covered by the mucous membrane of the mouth; the portion below presents an oblong depression, the **submaxillary fossa** (*fovea submaxillaris*), wider behind than in front, for the lodgement of the submaxillary

gland. The external oblique line and the internal or mylo-hyoidean line divide the body of the bone into a superior or alveolar and an inferior or basilar portion.

Borders.—The *superior* or *alveolar portion* of the body (*pars alveolaris*) has above a narrow border which is wider and the margins of which are thicker behind than in front. Its narrow margin is called the **limbus alveolaris**. It is hollowed into numerous cavities (*alveoli dentales*), for the reception of the teeth; these cavities are sixteen in number, and vary in depth and size according to the teeth which they contain. The cavities are separated from one another by *septa interalveolaria*. The *juga alveolaria* are prominences on the outer surface over the three front alveoli. To the outer side of the alveolar border the Buccinator muscle is attached upon the **buccinator crest** (*crista buccinatoria*) as far forward as the first molar tooth. The *inferior* or *basilar portion* (*basis mandibulæ*) is rounded, longer than the superior, and thicker in front than behind; it presents a shallow groove, just where the body joins the ramus, over which the facial artery turns.

The Perpendicular Portions or Rami of the Mandible (Rami Mandibulæ).

The perpendicular portions or rami are of a quadrilateral form. Each presents for examination two surfaces, four borders, and two processes.

Surfaces. External Surface.—The external surface is flat, marked with ridges, and gives attachment throughout nearly the whole of its extent to the Masseter muscle.

Internal Surface.—The internal surface presents about its centre an **oblique foramen** (*foramen mandibulare*) **of the inferior dental canal** (*canalis mandibulæ*), for the passage of the inferior dental vessels and nerve. The margin of this opening is irregular; it presents in front a prominent ridge, surmounted by a sharp spine, the **lingula** (*lingula mandibulæ*), which gives attachment to the internal lateral ligament of the lower jaw, and at its lower and back part a notch leading to a groove, the **mylo-hyoidean groove** (*sulcus mylohyoideus*), which runs obliquely downward to the [illegible] part of the submaxillary fossa, and lodges the mylo-hyoid vessels and nerve. Behind the groove is a rough surface, for the insertion of the Internal pterygoid muscle. The **inferior dental canal** runs obliquely downward and forward in the substance of the ramus, and then horizontally forward in the body; it is here placed under the alveoli, with which it communicates by small openings. On arriving at the incisor teeth, it turns back to communicate with the mental foramen, giving off two small canals, which run forward, to be lost in the cancellous tissue of the bone beneath the incisor teeth. This canal, in the posterior two-thirds of the bone, is situated nearer the internal surface of the jaw; and in the anterior third, nearer its external surface. Its walls are composed of compact tissue at either extremity, and of cancellous in the centre. It contains the inferior dental vessels and nerve, from which branches are distributed to the teeth through small apertures at the bases of the alveoli.

Borders.—The *lower border* of the ramus is thick, straight, and continuous with the body of the bone. At its junction with the posterior border is the **angle of the jaw** (*angulus mandibulæ*). The outer portion of the angle is called the **gonion**. The angle is either inverted or everted, and marked by rough, oblique ridges on each side, for the attachment of the Masseter externally, and the Internal pterygoid internally; the stylo-maxillary ligament is attached to the angle between these muscles. The *anterior border* is thin above, thicker below, and continuous with the external oblique line. The *posterior border* is thick, smooth, rounded, and covered by the parotid gland. The *upper border* of the ramus is thin, and presents two processes, separated by a deep concavity, the **sigmoid notch** (*incisura mandibulæ*). Of these processes, the anterior is the **coronoid**, the posterior the **condyloid**.

Coronoid Process (*processus coronoideus*).—The coronoid process is a thin, flattened, triangular eminence of bone, which varies in shape and size in different subjects, and serves chiefly for the attachment of the Temporal muscle. Its *external surface* is smooth, and affords attachment to the Temporal and Masseter muscles. Its *internal surface* gives attachment to the Temporal muscle and presents the commencement of a longitudinal ridge, which is continued to the posterior part of the alveolar process. On the outer side of this ridge is a deep groove, continued below on the outer side of the alveolar process; this ridge and part of the groove afford attachment, above, to the Temporal; below, to the Buccinator muscle.

Condyloid Process (*processus condyloideus*).—The condyloid process, shorter but thicker than the coronoid, consists of two portions: the **condyle** (*capitulum mandibulæ*), and the constricted portion which supports the condyle, the **neck** (*collum mandibulæ*). The condyle is of an oblong form, its long axis being transverse, and set obliquely on the neck in such a manner that its outer end is a little more forward and a little higher than its inner. It is convex from before backward and from side to side, the articular surface extending farther on the posterior than on the anterior aspect. At its outer extremity is a small tubercle for the attachment of the external lateral ligament of the temporo-mandibular joint. The neck of the condyle is flattened from before backward, and strengthened by ridges which descend from the fore part and sides of the condyle. Its lateral margins are narrow, the external one giving attachment to part of the external lateral ligament. Its posterior surface is convex; its anterior is hollowed out on its inner side by a depression, the **pterygoid depression** (*fovea pterygoidea*), for the attachment of the External pterygoid muscle.

The **Sigmoid Notch** (*incisura mandibulæ*), separating the two processes, is a deep semilunar depression, crossed by the masseteric vessels and nerve.

Development.—The lower jaw is developed principally from membrane, but partly from cartilage. The process of ossification commences early—earlier than in any other bone except the clavicle. The greater part of the bone is formed from a centre of ossification (*dentary*), which appears between the fifth and sixth week in the membrane on the outer surface of Meckel's cartilage. A second centre (*splenial*) appears in the membrane on the inner surface of the cartilage, and from this centre the inner wall of the sockets of the teeth is formed; this terminates above in the lingula. The anterior extremity of Meckel's cartilage becomes ossified, forming the body of the bone on each side of the symphysis. Two supplemental patches of cartilage appear at the condyle and at the angle, in each of which a centre of ossification for these parts appears; the coronoid process is also ossified from a separate centre. At birth the bone consists of two halves, united by a fibrous symphysis, in which ossification takes place during the first year.

Articulation.—With the glenoid fossæ of the two temporal bones.

Attachment of Muscles.—To fifteen pairs: to its external surface, commencing at the symphysis, and proceeding backward: Levator menti, Depressor labii inferioris, Depressor anguli oris, Platysma myoides, Buccinator, Masseter; a portion of the Orbicularis oris (Accessorii orbicularis inferioris) is also attached to this surface. To its internal surface, commencing at the same point: Genio-hyo-glossus, Genio-hyoideus, Mylo-hyoideus, Digastric, Superior constrictor, Temporal, Internal pterygoid, External pterygoid.

CHANGES PRODUCED IN THE LOWER JAW BY AGE.

The changes which the lower jaw undergoes after birth relate (1) to the alterations effected in the body of the bone by the first and second dentitions, the loss of the teeth in the aged, and the subsequent absorption of the alveoli; (2) to the size and situation of the dental canal; and (3) to the angle at which the ramus joins with the body.

Side View of the Lower Jaw at Different Periods of Life.

At birth (Fig. 91) the bone consists of lateral halves, united by fibrous tissue. The body is a mere shell of bone, containing the sockets of the two incisor, the canine, and the two temporary molar teeth, imperfectly partitioned from one another. The dental canal is of large size, and runs near the lower border of the bone, the mental foramen opening beneath the socket of the first molar. The angle is obtuse (175 degrees), and the condyloid portion nearly in the same horizontal line with the body; the neck of the condyle is short, and bent backward. The coronoid process is of comparatively large size, and situated at right angles with the rest of the bone.

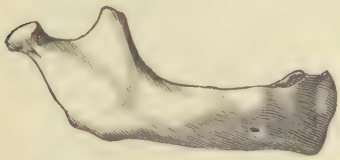


Fig. 91.—Lower jaw bone in newborn. (Spalteholz.)

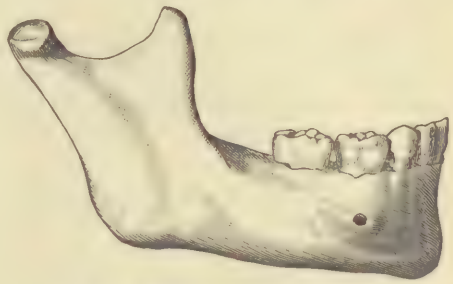


Fig. 92.—In child six to seven years of age. (Spalteholz.)

After birth (Fig. 92) the two segments of the bone become joined at the symphysis, from below upward, in the first year; but a trace of separation may be visible in the beginning of the second year near the alveolar margin. The body becomes elongated in its whole length, but more especially behind the mental foramen, to provide space for the three additional teeth developed in this part. The depth of the body becomes greater, owing to increased growth of the alveolar part, to afford room for the fangs of the teeth, and by thickening of the subdental portion, which enables the jaw to withstand the powerful action of the masticatory muscles; but the alveolar portion is the deeper of the two, and, consequently, the chief part of the body lies above the oblique line. The dental canal after the second dentition is situated just above the level of the mylo-hyoid ridge, and the mental foramen occupies the position usual to it in the adult. The angle becomes less obtuse, owing to the separation of the jaws by the teeth. (About the fourth year it is 140 degrees.)

Fig. 93.—In the adult. (Spalteholz.)

In the adult (Fig. 93) the alveolar and basilar portions of the body are usually of equal depth. The mental foramen opens midway between the upper and lower border of the bone,

and the dental canal runs nearly parallel with the mylo-hyoid line. The ramus is almost vertical in direction, and joins the body nearly at right angles.

In old age (Fig. 94) the bone becomes greatly reduced in size; for with the loss of the teeth the alveolar process is absorbed, and the basilar part of the bone alone remains, consequently,

FIG. 94.—In old age. (Spalteholz.)

the chief part of the bone is *below* the oblique line. The dental canal, with the mental foramen opening from it, is close to the alveolar border. The rami are oblique in direction, the angle obtuse, and the neck of the condyle more or less bent backward.

The Sutures.

The bones of the cranium and face are connected to each other by means of **sutures.** That is, the articulating surfaces or edges of the bones are more or less roughened or uneven, and are closely adapted to each other, a small amount of intervening fibrous tissue, the **sutural ligament,** fastening them together. The cranial sutures may be divided into three sets: 1. Those at the vertex of the skull. 2. Those at the side of the skull. 3. Those at the base.

The sutures at the vertex of the skull are four: the **metopic,** the **sagittal,** the **coronal,** and the **lambdoid.**

The **Metopic** or **Frontal Suture** (*sutura frontalis*) is usually noted in adults as a trivial fissure, just above the glabella. At birth the two halves of the frontal bone are separated by the suture. This suture is, as a rule, almost completely or completely closed during the fifth or sixth year, but occasionally it remains intact (in about 8 per cent. of Europeans according to Prof. Cunningham).

The **Interparietal** or **Sagittal Suture** (*sutura sagittalis*) is formed by the junction of the two parietal bones, and extends from the middle of the frontal bone backward to the superior angle of the occipital. This suture is sometimes perforated, near its posterior extremity, by the parietal foramen; and in front, where it joins the coronal suture, a space is occasionally left which encloses a large Wormian bone.

The **Fronto-parietal** or **Coronal Suture** (*sutura coronalis*) extends transversely across the vertex of the skull, and connects the frontal with the parietal bones. It commences at the extremity of the greater wing of the sphenoid on one side, and terminates at the same point on the opposite side. The dentations of the suture are more marked at the sides than at the summit, and are so constructed that the frontal rests on the parietal above, whilst laterally the frontal supports the parietal.

The **Occipito-parietal** or **Lambdoid Suture** (*sutura lambdoidea*), so called from its resemblance to the Greek letter Λ, connects the occipital with the parietal bones. It commences on each side at the mastoid portion of the temporal bone, and inclines upward to the end of the sagittal suture. The dentations of this suture are very deep and distinct, and are often interrupted by several small Wormian bones.

The sutures at the side of the skull extend from the external angular process of the frontal bone to the lower end of the lambdoid suture behind. The *anterior portion* is formed between the lateral part of the frontal bone above and the malar and great wing of the sphenoid below, forming the **fronto-malar suture** (*sutura zygomatico-frontalis*) and **fronto-sphenoidal suture** (*sutura sphenofrontalis*). These sutures can also be seen in the orbit, and form part of the so-called **transverse facial suture.** The *posterior portion* is formed between the parietal bone above and the great wing of the sphenoid, the squamous and mastoid portions of the temporal bone below, forming the **spheno-parietal, squamo-parietal,** and **masto-parietal sutures.**

The **spheno-parietal** (*sutura sphenoparietalis*) is very short; it is formed by the tip of the great wing of the sphenoid, which overlaps the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone.

The **squamo-parietal** or **squamous suture** (*sutura squamosa*) is arched. It is formed by the squamous portion of the temporal bone overlapping the middle division of the lower border of the parietal.

The **masto-parietal** (*sutura parietomastoidea*) is a short suture, deeply dentated, formed by the posterior inferior angle of the parietal and the superior border of the mastoid portion of the temporal.

The sutures at the base of the skull are the **basilar** in the centre, and on each side the **petro-occipital,** the **masto-occipital,** the **petro-sphenoidal,** and the **squamo-sphenoidal.**

The **Basilar Suture** (*fissura sphenooccipitalis*) is formed by the junction of the basilar surface of the occipital bone with the posterior surface of the body of the sphenoid. At an early period of life a thin plate of cartilage exists between these bones, but in the adult they become fused into one (*synchondrosis spheno-occipitalis*). Between the outer extremity of the basilar suture and the termination of the lambdoid an irregular suture exists, which is subdivided into two portions. The inner portion, formed by the union of the petrous part of the temporal with the occipital bone, is termed the **petro-occipital fissure** (*fissura petrooccipitalis*). The outer portion, formed by the junction of the mastoid part of the temporal with the occipital, is called the **masto-occipital suture** (*sutura occipitomastoidea*). Between the bones forming the petro-occipital suture a thin plate of cartilage exists; in the masto-occipital is occasionally found the opening of the mastoid foramen. Between the outer extremity of the basilar suture and the spheno-parietal an irregular suture may be seen, formed by the union of the sphenoid with the temporal bone. The inner and smaller portion of this suture is termed the **petro-sphenoidal fissure** (*fissura sphenopetrosa*); it is formed between the petrous portion of the temporal and the great wing of the sphenoid; the outer portion, of greater length and arched, is formed between the squamous portion of the temporal and the great wing of the sphenoid; it is called the **squamo-sphenoidal suture** (*sutura sphenosquamosa*).

The cranial bones are connected with those of the face, and the facial bones with each other, by numerous sutures, which, though distinctly marked, have received no special names. The only remaining suture deserving especial consideration is the **transverse suture.** This extends across the upper part of the face, and is formed by the junction of the frontal with the facial bones: it extends from the external angular process of one side to the same point on the opposite side, and connects the frontal with the malar, the sphenoid, the ethmoid, the lachrymal,

the superior maxillary, and the nasal bones on each side (*sutura zygomaticofrontalis*; the orbital portion of the *sutura sphenofrontalis*, *sutura frontoethmoidalis*, *sutura frontolacrimalis*, *sutura frontomaxillaris*, *sutura nasofrontalis*).

The sutures remain separate for a considerable period after the complete formation of the skull. It is probable that they serve the purpose of permitting the growth of the bones at their margins, while their peculiar formation, together with the interposition of the sutural ligament between the bones forming them, prevents the dispersion of blows or jars received upon the skull. Humphry remarks, "that, as a general rule, the sutures are first obliterated at the parts in which the ossification of the skull was last completed—viz., in the neighborhood of the fontanelles; and the cranial bones seem in this respect to observe a similar law to that which regulates the union of the epiphyses to the shafts of the long bones." The same author remarks that the time of their disappearance is extremely variable: they are sometimes found well marked in skulls edentulous with age, while in others which have only just reached maturity they can hardly be traced. The obliteration of the sutures takes place sooner on the inner than on the outer surface of the skull. The sagittal and coronal sutures are as a rule the first to become ossified—the process starting near the posterior extremity of the former and the lower ends of the latter.

THE SKULL AS A WHOLE.

The skull, formed by the union of the several cranial and facial bones already described, when considered as a whole is divisible into five regions: a superior region or **vertex**, an inferior region or **base**, two **lateral regions**, and an anterior region, the **face**.

The Vertex of the Skull.

The superior region, or *vertex*, presents two surfaces, an external and an internal.

Surfaces. External Surface. (This surface as seen from above is called the **norma verticalis**.)—The external surface is bounded, in front, by the glabella and supraorbital ridges; behind, by the occipital protuberance and superior curved lines of the occipital bone; laterally, by an imaginary line extending from the outer end of the superior curved line, along the temporal ridge, to the external angular process of the frontal bone. This surface includes the greater part of the vertical portion of the frontal, the greater part of the parietal, and the superior third of the occipital bone; it is smooth, convex, of an elongated oval form, crossed transversely by the coronal suture, and from before backward by the sagittal, which terminates behind in the lambdoid. The point of junction of the coronal and sagittal sutures is named the **bregma**, and is represented by a line drawn vertically upward from the external auditory meatus, the head being in its normal position. The point of junction of the sagittal and lambdoid sutures is called the **lambda**, and is about 2¾ inches above the external occipital protuberance. From before backward may be seen the frontal eminences and remains of the suture connecting the two lateral halves of the frontal bone; on each side of the sagittal suture are the parietal foramen and parietal eminence, and still more posteriorly the convex surface of the occipital bone. In the neighborhood of the parietal foramen the skull is often flattened, and the name of **obelion** is sometimes given to that point of the sagittal suture which lies exactly opposite to the parietal foramen.

Internal or Cerebral Surface.—The internal surface is concave, presents depressions for the convolutions of the cerebrum, and numerous furrows for the lodgement of branches of the meningeal arteries. Along the middle line of this

surface is a longitudinal groove, narrow in front, where it commences at the frontal crest, but broader behind, where it lodges the superior longitudinal sinus, and by its margin affords attachment to the falx cerebri. On either side of it are several depressions for the Pacchionian bodies, and at its back part the internal openings of the parietal foramina. This surface is crossed, in front, by the coronal suture; from before backward by the sagittal; behind, by the lambdoid.

The Base of the Skull (the Skull being without the Mandible).

The inferior region, or base of the skull, presents two surfaces—an internal or cerebral, and an external or basilar.

Surfaces. Internal Upper or Cerebral Surface.—The internal or cerebral surface (Fig. 95) presents three fossæ, called the **anterior, middle,** and **posterior fossæ** of the cranium.

Anterior Fossa (*fossa cranii anterior*).—The anterior fossa is formed by the orbital plates of the frontal, the cribriform plate of the ethmoid, the anterior third of the superior surface of the body, and the upper surface of the lesser wings of the sphenoid bone. It is the most elevated of the three fossæ, convex externally where it corresponds to the roof of the orbit, concave in the median line in the situation of the cribriform plate of the ethmoid. It is traversed by three sutures, the ethmo-frontal, ethmo-sphenoidal, and fronto-sphenoidal, and lodges the frontal lobe of the cerebrum. It presents, in the median line, from before backward, the commencement of the groove for the **superior longitudinal sinus** and the **frontal crest** for the attachment of the falx cerebri; the **foramen cæcum,** an aperture formed between the frontal bone and the crista galli of the ethmoid, which, if pervious, transmits a small vein from the nose to the superior longitudinal sinus; behind the foramen cæcum, the **crista galli,** the posterior margin of which affords attachment to the falx cerebri; on either side of the crista galli, the **cribriform plate,** which supports the olfactory bulb, and presents three rows of foramina for the transmission of its nervous filaments, and in front a slit-like opening for the nasal branch of the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve. On the outer side of each olfactory groove are the internal openings of the **anterior** and **posterior ethmoidal foramina**; the former, situated about the middle of the outer margin of the olfactory groove, transmits the anterior ethmoidal vessels and the nasal nerve, which latter runs in a depression along the surface of the ethmoid to the slit-like opening above mentioned; while the posterior ethmoidal foramen opens at the back part of this margin under cover of the projecting lamina of the sphenoid, and transmits the posterior ethmoidal vessels. Farther back in the middle line is the **ethmoidal spine,** bounded behind by a slight elevation, separating two shallow longitudinal grooves which support the olfactory lobes. Behind this is a transverse sharp ridge, running outward on either side to the anterior margin of the optic foramen, and separating the anterior from the middle fossa of the base of the skull. The anterior fossa presents, laterally, depressions for the convolutions of the brain and grooves for the lodgement of the anterior meningeal arteries.

Middle Fossa (*fossa cranii media*).—The middle fossa, deeper than the preceding, is narrow in the middle line, but becomes wider at the side of the skull. It is bounded in front by the posterior margin of the lesser wing of the sphenoid, the anterior clinoid process, and the ridge forming the anterior margin of the optic groove; behind, by the superior border of the petrous portion of the temporal and the dorsum ephippii; externally by the squamous portion of the temporal anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone, and greater wing of the sphenoid. It is traversed by four sutures, the squamo-parietal, spheno-parietal, squamo-sphenoidal, and petro-sphenoidal. In the middle line, from before backward, is the **optic**

groove, behind which lies the **optic commissure**; the groove terminates on each side in the **optic foramen,** for the passage of the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery;

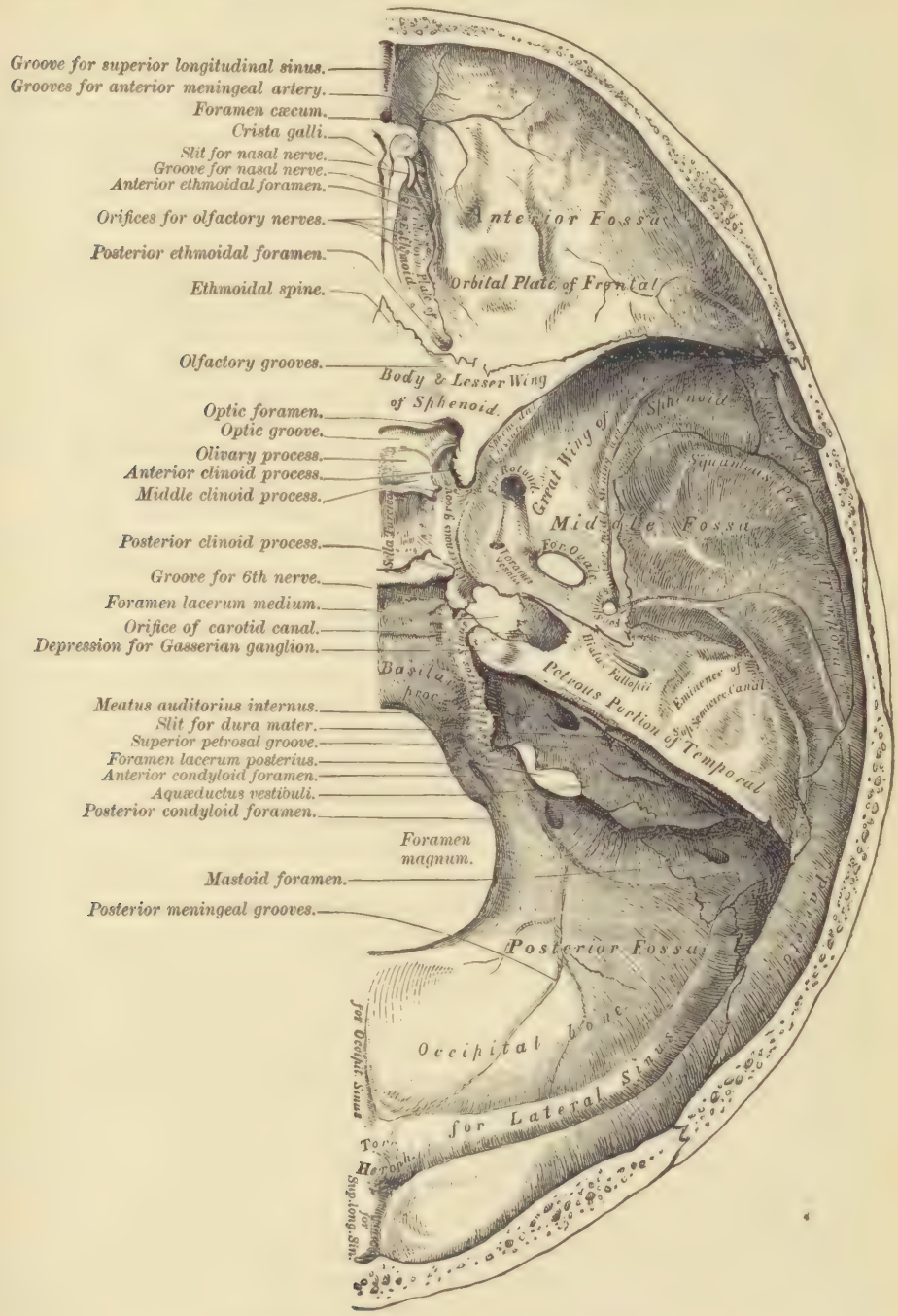


FIG. 95.—Base of the skull. Inner or cerebral surface.

behind the optic groove is the **olivary process** and laterally the **anterior clinoid processes,** to which are attached processes of the tentorium cerebelli. Farther back is the **sella turcica,** a deep depression which lodges the pituitary gland, bounded in

front by a small eminence on either side, the **middle clinoid process**, and behind by a broad, square plate of bone, the **dorsum ephippii**, surmounted at each superior angle by a tubercle, the **posterior clinoid process**; beneath the latter process is a notch, for the sixth nerve. On each side of the sella turcica is the **cavernous groove**: it is broad, shallow, and curved somewhat like the italic letter *f;* it commences behind at the foramen lacerum medium, and terminates on the inner side of the anterior clinoid process, and presents along its outer margin a ridge of bone. This groove lodges the cavernous sinus, the internal carotid artery, and the nerves of the orbit. The sides of the middle fossa are of considerable depth; they present depressions for the convolutions of the brain and grooves for the branches of the middle meningeal artery; the latter commence on the outer side of the foramen spinosum, and consist of two large branches, an anterior and a posterior; the former passing upward and forward to the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone, the latter passing upward and backward. The following foramina may also be seen from before backward: Most anteriorly is the **foramen lacerum anterius**, or **sphenoidal fissure** (*fissura orbitalis superior*), formed above by the lesser wing of the sphenoid; below, by the greater wing; internally, by the body of the sphenoid; and sometimes completed externally by the orbital plate of the frontal bone. It transmits the third, the fourth, the three branches of the ophthalmic division of the fifth, the sixth nerve, some filaments from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic, the orbital branch of the middle meningeal artery, a recurrent branch from the lachrymal artery to the dura mater, and the ophthalmic vein. Behind the inner extremity of the sphenoidal fissure is the **foramen rotundum**, for the passage of the second division of the fifth or the superior maxillary nerve; still more posteriorly is seen a small orifice, the **foramen Vesalii**, an opening situated between the foramen rotundum and ovale, a little internal to both: it varies in size in different individuals, and is often absent; when present it transmits a small vein. It opens below into the pterygoid fossa, just at the outer side of the scaphoid depression. Behind and external to the latter opening is the **foramen ovale**, which transmits the third division of the fifth or the inferior maxillary nerve, the small meningeal artery, and the small petrosal nerve.[1] On the outer side of the foramen ovale is the **foramen spinosum**, for the passage of the middle meningeal artery; and on the inner side of the foramen ovale is the **foramen lacerum medium**. The lower part of this aperture is filled with cartilage in the recent state. The Vidian nerve and a meningeal branch from the ascending pharyngeal artery pierce this cartilage. On the anterior surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone is seen, from without inward, the eminence caused by the projection of the superior semicircular canal; in front of and a little outside this is a depression corresponding to the roof of the tympanum; the groove leading to the hiatus Fallopii, for the transmission of the petrosal branch of the Vidian nerve and the petrosal branch of the middle meningeal artery; beneath it, the smaller groove, for the passage of the lesser petrosal nerve; and, near the apex of the bone, the depression for the Gasserian ganglion; and the internal orifice of the carotid canal (*foramen caroticum internum*), for the passage of the internal carotid artery and carotid plexus of nerves.

Posterior Fossa (*fossa cranii posterior*).—The posterior fossa, deeply concave, is the largest of the three, and situated on a lower level than either of the preceding. It is formed by the posterior third of the superior surface of the body of the sphenoid, by the occipital, the petrous and mastoid portions of the temporal, and the posterior inferior angle of the parietal bone; it is crossed by four sutures, the petro-occipital, the masto-occipital, the masto-parietal, and the basilar; and lodges the cerebellum, pons Varolii, and medulla oblongata. It is separated from the middle

[1] See footnote, p. 95.

fossa in the median line by the dorsum ephippii, and on each side by the superior border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. This border serves for the attachment of the tentorium cerebelli, is grooved for the superior petrosal sinus, and at its inner extremity presents a notch, upon which rests the fifth nerve. The circumference of the fossa is bounded posteriorly by the grooves for the lateral sinuses. In the centre of this fossa is the **foramen magnum**, bounded on either side by a rough tubercle, which gives attachment to the odontoid or check ligaments; and a little above these are seen the internal openings of the **anterior condyloid foramina**, through which pass the hypoglossal nerves and meningeal branches from the ascending pharyngeal arteries. In front of the foramen magnum is a grooved surface, formed by the basilar process of the occipital bone and by the posterior third of the superior surface of the body of the sphenoid, which supports the medulla oblongata and pons Varolii, and articulates on each side with the petrous portion of the temporal bone, forming the **petro-occipital suture**, the anterior half of which is grooved for the inferior petrosal sinus, the posterior half being encroached upon by the **foramen lacerum posterius** or **jugular foramen** (*foramen jugulare*). This foramen presents three compartments: through the anterior passes the inferior petrosal sinus; through the posterior, the lateral sinus and some meningeal branches from the occipital and ascending pharyngeal arteries; and through the middle, the glosso-pharyngeal, pneumogastric, and spinal accessory nerves. Above the jugular foramen is the **internal auditory meatus**, for the facial and auditory nerves and auditory artery; behind and external to this is the slit-like opening leading into the **aquæductus vestibuli**, which lodges the ductus endolymphaticus; while between the two latter, and near the superior border of the petrous portion, is a small, triangular depression, the remains of the **floccular fossa**, which lodges a process of the dura mater and occasionally transmits a small vein into the substance of the bone. Behind the foramen magnum are the **inferior occipital fossæ**, which lodge the hemispheres of the cerebellum, separated from one another by the **internal occipital crest**, which serves for the attachment of the falx cerebelli and lodges the occipital sinus. The posterior fossæ are surmounted above by the deep transverse grooves for the lodgement of the lateral sinuses. These channels, in their passage outward, groove the occipital bone, the posterior inferior angle of the parietal, the mastoid portion of the temporal, and the jugular process of the occipital, and terminate at the back part of the jugular foramen. Where this sinus grooves the mastoid portion of the temporal bone the orifice of the **mastoid foramen** may be seen. Just previous to the termination of the groove the **posterior condyloid foramen** opens into it. Neither foramen is constant.

External Under or Basilar Surface (the view from below is called the **norma basalis**).—The external surface of the base of the skull (Fig. 96) is extremely irregular. It is bounded in front by the incisor teeth in the upper jaw; behind by the superior curved lines of the occipital bone; and laterally by the alveolar arch, the lower border of the malar bone, the zygoma, and an imaginary line extending from the zygoma to the mastoid process and extremity of the superior curved line of the occiput. It is formed by the palate processes of the superior maxillary and palate bones, the vomer, the pterygoid processes, under surface of the great wing, spinous processes and part of the body of the sphenoid, the under surface of the squamous, mastoid, and petrous portions of the temporal, and the under surface of the occipital bone. The anterior part of the base of the skull is raised above the level of the rest of this surface (when the skull is turned over for the purpose of examination), surrounded by the alveolar process, which is thicker behind than in front, and excavated by sixteen depressions for lodging the teeth of the upper jaw, the cavities varying in depth and size according to the teeth they contain. Immediately behind the incisor teeth is the **anterior palatine fossa** (*foramen incisivum*). At the bottom of this fossa may usually be seen four apertures:

two placed laterally, the **foramina of Stenson**, which open above, one in the floor of each nostril, and transmit the anterior branch of the posterior palatine vessels, and

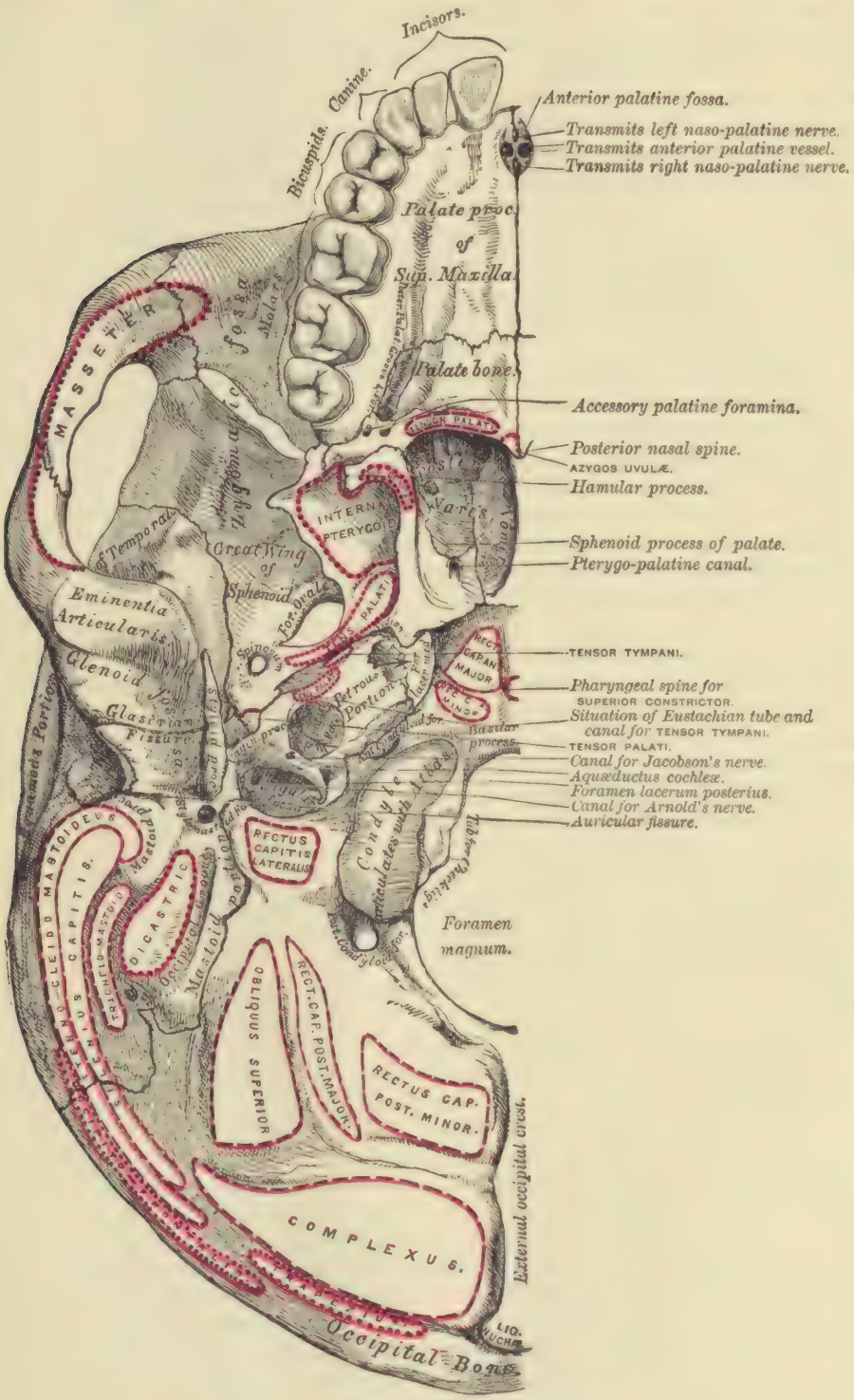


FIG. 96.—Base of the skull. External surface.

two in the median line in the intermaxillary suture, the **foramina of Scarpa,** one in front of the other, the anterior transmitting the left, and the posterior (the larger) the right, naso-palatine nerve. These two lateral canals are sometimes wanting, or they may join to form a single one, or one of them may open into one of the lateral canals above referred to. The palatine vault is concave, uneven, perforated by numerous foramina, marked by depressions for the palatine glands, and crossed by a crucial suture, formed by the junction of the four bones of which it is composed. At the front part of this surface a delicate linear suture may frequently be seen, passing outward and forward from the anterior palatine fossa to the interval between the lateral incisor and canine teeth, and marking off the **pre-maxillary portion** of the bone. At each posterior angle of the hard palate is the **posterior palatine foramen,** for the transmission of the posterior palatine vessels and great descending palatine nerve; and running forward and inward from it a groove, for the same vessels and nerve. Behind the posterior palatine foramen is the **tuberosity of the palate bone,** perforated by one or more **accessory posterior palatine canals,** and marked by the commencement of a ridge which runs transversely inward, and serves for the attachment of the tendinous expansion of the Tensor palati muscle. Projecting backward from the centre of the posterior border of the hard palate is the **posterior nasal spine,** for the attachment of the Azygos uvulæ muscle. Behind and above the hard palate is the posterior aperture of the nares, divided into two parts by the **vomer,** bounded above by the body of the sphenoid, below by the horizontal plate of the palate bone, and laterally by the internal pterygoid plate of the sphenoid. Each aperture measures about an inch in the vertical and about half an inch in the transverse direction. At the base of the vomer may be seen the expanded alæ of this bone, receiving between them, on each side, the **rostrum of the sphenoid.** Near the lateral margins of the vomer, at the root of the pterygoid processes, are the **pterygo-palatine canals.** The pterygoid process, which bounds the posterior nares on each side, presents near its base the **pterygoid** or **Vidian canal** (*canalis pterygoideus*), for the Vidian nerve and artery. Each process consists of two plates, which bifurcate at the extremity to receive the tuberosity of the palate bone, and are separated behind by the pterygoid fossa, which lodges the Internal pterygoid muscle. The internal plate is long and narrow, presenting on the outer side of its base the **scaphoid fossa,** for the origin of the Tensor palati muscle, and at its extremity the **hamular process,** around which the tendon of this muscle turns. The external pterygoid plate is broad, forms the inner boundary of the **zygomatic fossa,** and affords attachment by its outer surface to the External pterygoid muscle.

Behind the nasal fossæ in the middle line is the basilar surface of the occipital bone, presenting in its centre the **pharyngeal spine,** for the attachment of the Superior constrictor muscle of the pharynx, with depressions on each side for the insertion of the Rectus capitis anticus major and minor. At the base of the external pterygoid plate is the **foramen ovale,** for the transmission of the third division of the fifth nerve, the small meningeal artery, and sometimes the small petrosal nerve; behind this, the **foramen spinosum,** which transmits the middle meningeal artery, and the prominent spinous process of the sphenoid, which gives attachment to the internal lateral ligament of the lower jaw and the Tensor palati muscle. External to the spinous process is the **glenoid fossa,** divided into two parts by the Glaserian fissure (page 84), the anterior portion concave, smooth, bounded in front by the **eminentia articularis,** and serving for the articulation of the condyle of the lower jaw; the posterior portion rough, bounded behind by the **tympanic plate,** and serving for the reception of part of the parotid gland. Emerging from between the laminæ of the vaginal process of the tympanic plate is the **styloid process,** and at the base of this process is the **stylo-mastoid foramen,** for the exit of the facial nerve and entrance of the stylo-mastoid artery. External to the stylo-

mastoid foramen is the **auricular fissure**, for the auricular branch of the pneumogastric, bounded behind by the mastoid process. Upon the inner side of the mastoid process is a deep groove, the **digastric fossa**; and a little more internally the **occipital groove**, for the occipital artery. At the base of the internal pterygoid plate is a large and somewhat triangular aperture, the **foramen lacerum medium**, bounded in front by the great wing of the sphenoid, behind by the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, and internally by the body of the sphenoid and basilar process of the occipital bone: it presents in front the posterior orifice of the Vidian canal; behind, the aperture of the carotid canal. The basilar surface of this opening is filled in the recent state by fibro-cartilaginous substance; across its upper or cerebral aspect passes the internal carotid artery. External to this aperture the **petro-sphenoidal suture** is observed, at the outer termination of which is seen the orifice of the canal for the Eustachian tube and that for the Tensor tympani muscle. Behind this suture is seen the under surface of the **petrous portion of the temporal bone**, presenting, from within outward, the quadrilateral, rough surface, part of which affords attachment to the Levator palati and Tensor tympani muscles; external to this surface the orifices of the **carotid canal** (*foramen caroticum externum*) and the **aquæductus cochleæ**, the former transmitting the internal carotid artery and the ascending branches of the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, the latter serving for the passage of a small artery and vein to the cochlea. Behind the carotid canal is a large aperture, the **jugular foramen**, formed in front by the petrous portion of the temporal, and behind by the occipital; it is generally larger on the right than on the left side, and is divided into three compartments by processes of dura mater. The anterior is for the passage of the inferior petrosal sinus; the posterior, for the lateral sinus and some meningeal branches from the occipital and ascending pharyngeal arteries; the central one, for the glosso-pharyngeal, pneumogastric, and spinal accessory nerves. On the ridge of bone dividing the carotid canal from the jugular foramen is the small foramen for the transmission of Jacobson's nerve; and on the wall of the jugular foramen, near the root of the styloid process, is the small aperture for the transmission of Arnold's nerve. Behind the basilar surface of the occipital bone is the **foramen magnum**, bounded on each side by the condyles, rough internally for the attachment of the check or odontoid ligaments, and presenting externally a rough surface, the **jugular process**, which serves for the attachment of the Rectus capitis lateralis muscle and the lateral occipito-atlantal ligament. On either side of each condyle anteriorly is the **anterior condyloid fossa**, perforated by the **anterior condyloid foramen**, for the passage of the hypoglossal nerve and often a meningeal branch of the ascending pharyngeal artery. Behind each condyle is the **posterior condyloid fossa**, perforated by the **posterior condyloid foramen**, for the transmission of a vein to the lateral sinus. Behind the foramen magnum is the **external occipital crest**, terminating above at the **external occipital protuberance**, whilst on each side are seen the **superior** and **inferior curved lines**; these, as well as the surfaces of bone between them, are rough for the attachment of the muscles, which are enumerated on page 76.

The Lateral Region of the Skull.

The view of the lateral region of the skull from the side is known as the **norma lateralis**. The lateral region is of a somewhat triangular form, the base of the triangle being formed by a line extending from the external angular process of the frontal bone along the temporal ridge backward to the outer extremity of the superior curved line of the occiput; and the sides by two lines, the one drawn downward and backward from the external angular process of the frontal bone to the angle of the lower jaw, the other from the angle of the jaw upward and back-

ward to the outer extremity of the superior curved line. This region is divisible into three portions—**temporal fossa, mastoid portion,** and **zygomatic** or **infratemporal fossa.**

The Temporal Fossa (*fossa temporalis*).—The temporal fossa is bounded above and behind by the temporal ridges, which extend from the external angular process of the frontal upward and backward across the frontal and parietal bones, curving downward behind to terminate in the posterior root of the zygomatic process, **supra-**

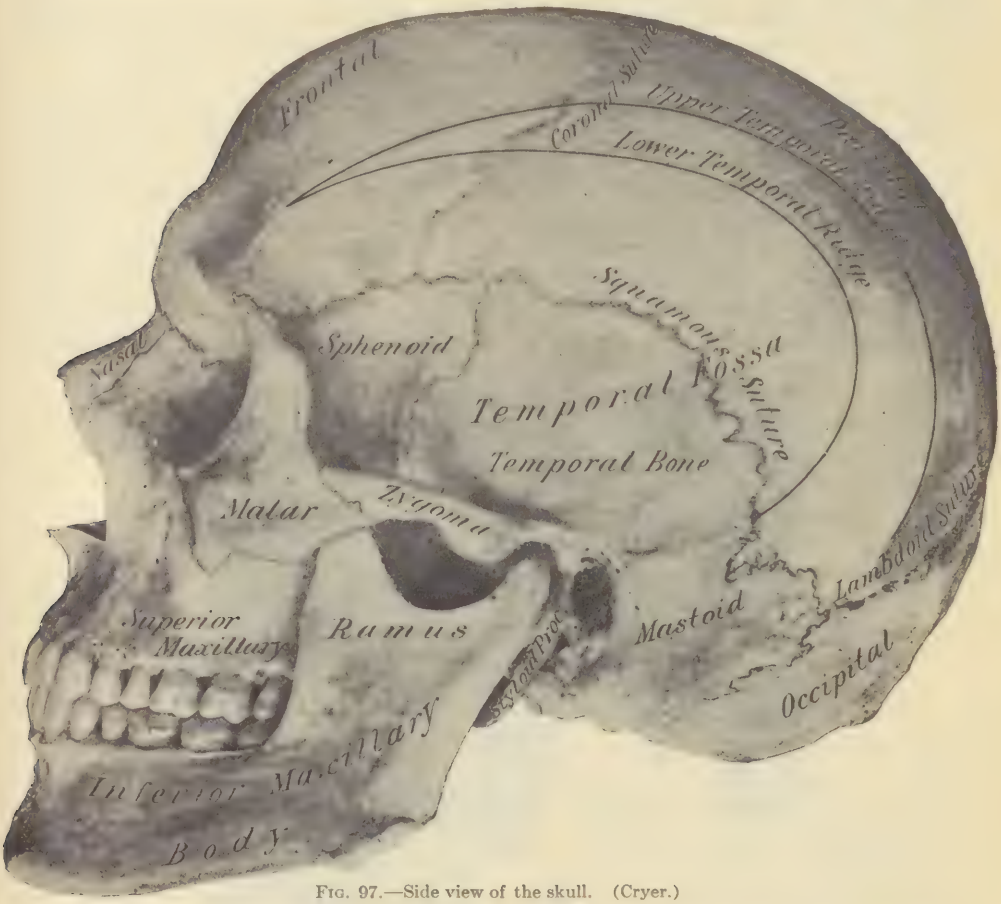


FIG. 97.—Side view of the skull. (Cryer.)

mastoid crest. In front it is bounded by the frontal, malar, and great wing of the sphenoid; externally by the zygomatic arch formed conjointly by the malar and temporal bones; below, it is separated from the zygomatic fossa by the **pterygoid ridge,** seen on the outer surface of the great wing of the sphenoid. This fossa is formed by five bones, part of the frontal, great wing of the sphenoid, parietal, squamous portion of the temporal and malar bones, and is traversed by six sutures, part of the transverse facial, spheno-malar, coronal, spheno-parietal, squamo-parietal, and squamo-sphenoidal. The point where the coronal suture crosses the superior temporal ridge is sometimes named the **stephanion**; and the region where the four bones, the parietal, the frontal, the squamous, and the greater wing of the sphenoid, meet, at the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone, is named the **pterion.** This point is about on a level with the external angular process of the frontal bone and about one and a half inches behind it. This fossa is deeply concave in front, convex behind, traversed by grooves which lodge branches of the deep temporal arteries, and filled by the Temporal muscles.

The Mastoid Portion.—The mastoid portion of the side of the skull is bounded in front by the tubercle of the zygoma; above, by a line which runs from the posterior root of the zygoma to the end of the mastoid-parietal suture; behind and below by the masto-occipital suture. It is formed by the mastoid and part of the squamous and petrous portions of the temporal bone; its surface is convex and rough for the attachment of muscles, and presents, from behind forward, the **mastoid foramen,** the **mastoid process,** the **external auditory meatus** surrounded by the **tympanic plate,** and, most anteriorly, the **temporo-maxillary articulation.** The point where the posterior inferior angle of the parietal meets the occipital bone and mastoid portion of the temporal is named the **asterion.**

The Zygomatic or Infratemporal Fossa (*fossa infratemporalis*).—The zygomatic fossa is an irregularly shaped cavity, situated below and on the inner side of the zygoma; bounded in front by the zygomatic surface of the superior maxillary bone and the ridge which descends from its malar process; behind, by the posterior border of the external pterygoid plate and the eminentia articularis; above, by the pterygoid ridge on the outer surface of the great wing of the sphenoid and the under part of the squamous portion of the temporal; below, by the alveolar border of the superior maxilla; internally, by the external pterygoid plate; and externally, by the zygomatic arch and ramus of the lower jaw (Fig. 98).

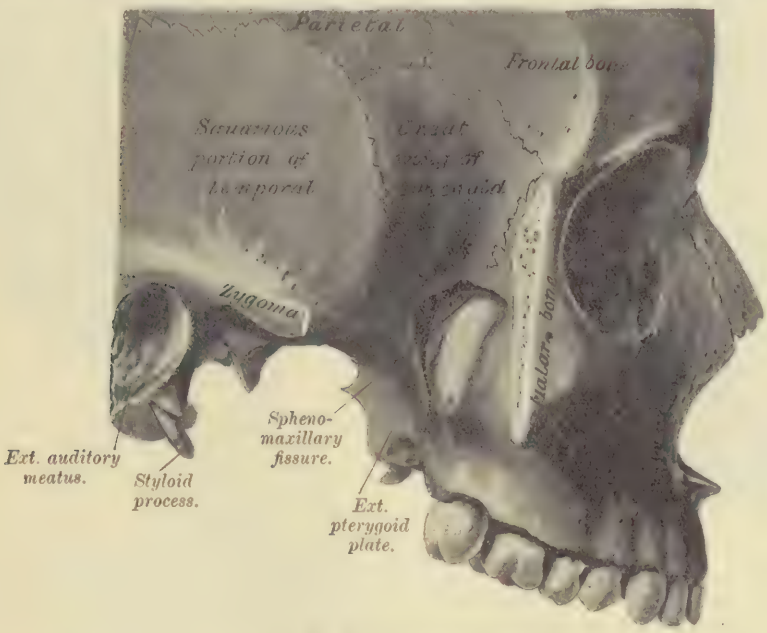


Fig. 98.—Zygomatic fossa.

It contains the lower part of the Temporal, the External and Internal pterygoid muscles, the internal maxillary artery and vein, and inferior maxillary nerve and their branches. At its upper and inner part may be observed two fissures, the **spheno-maxillary** and **pterygo-maxillary fissures.**

The **Spheno-maxillary Fissure** (*fissura orbitalis inferior*), horizontal in direction, opens into the outer and back part of the orbit. It is formed above by the lower border of the orbital surface of the great wing of the sphenoid; below, by the external border of the orbital surface of the superior maxilla and a small part of the palate bone; externally, by a small part of the malar bone;[1] internally, it joins at

[1] Occasionally the superior maxillary bone and the sphenoid articulate with each other at the anterior extremity of this fissure; the malar is then excluded from entering into its formation.

right angles with the pterygo-maxillary fissure. This fissure opens a communication from the orbit into three fossæ—the **temporal, zygomatic,** and **spheno-maxillary fossa**; it transmits the superior maxillary nerve and its orbital branch, the infraorbital vessels, and ascending branches from the spheno-palatine or Meckel's ganglion.

The **Pterygo-maxillary Fissure** is vertical, and descends at right angles from the inner extremity of the preceding; it is a V-shaped interval, formed by the divergence of the superior maxillary bone from the pterygoid process of the sphenoid. It serves to connect the spheno-maxillary fossa with the zygomatic fossa, and transmits the internal maxillary artery.

The Spheno-maxillary or Pterygo-palatine Fossa (*fossa pterygopalatina*).—The spheno-maxillary fossa is a small, triangular space situated at the angle of junction of the spheno-maxillary and pterygo-maxillary fissures, and placed beneath the apex of the orbit. It is formed above by the under surface of the body of the sphenoid and by the orbital process of the palate bone; in front, by the superior maxillary bone; behind, by the anterior surface of the base of the pterygoid process and lower part of the anterior surface of the great wing of the sphenoid; internally, by the vertical plate of the palate. This fossa has three fissures terminating in it—the **sphenoidal, spheno-maxillary,** and **pterygo-maxillary**; it communicates with the orbit by the spheno-maxillary fissure; with the nasal fossæ by the spheno-palatine foramen, and with the zygomatic fossa by the pterygo-maxillary fissure. It also communicates with the cavity of the cranium, and has opening into it five foramina. Of these, there are three on the posterior wall: the **foramen rotundum** above; below and internal to this, the **Vidian canal**; and still more inferiorly and internally, the **pterygo-palatine canal**. On the inner wall is the **spheno-palatine foramen,** by which the spheno-maxillary communicates with the nasal fossa; and below is the superior orifice of the **posterior palatine canal,** besides occasionally the orifices of the accessory posterior palatine canals. The fossa contains the superior maxillary nerve and Meckel's ganglion, and the termination of the internal maxillary artery.

The Anterior Region of the Skull.

The view of the anterior region of the skull from the front is known as the **norma frontalis.** It forms the face, is of an oval form, presents an irregular surface, and is excavated for the reception of two of the organs of sense, the eye and the nose. It is bounded above by the glabella and margins of the orbit; below, by the prominence of the chin; on each side by the malar bone and anterior margin of the ramus of the jaw. In the median line are seen from above downward the **glabella,** and diverging from it are the **superciliary ridges,** which indicate the situation of the frontal sinuses and supports the eyebrow. Beneath the glabella is the fronto-nasal suture, the mid-point of which is termed the **nasion,** and below this is the arch of the nose, formed by the nasal bones, and the nasal processes of the superior maxillary. The nasal arch is convex from side to side, concave from above downward, presenting in the median line the **internasal suture** (*sutura internasalis*), formed between the nasal bones, laterally the **naso-maxillary suture** (*sutura nasomaxillaris*), formed between the nasal bone and the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone. Below the nose is seen the opening of the **anterior nares,** which is heart-shaped, with the narrow end upward, and presents laterally the thin, sharp margins serving for the attachment of the lateral cartilages of the nose, and in the middle line below a prominent process, the **anterior nasal spine,** bounded by two deep notches. Below this is the **intermaxillary suture** (*sutura intermaxillaris*), and on each side of it the **incisive fossa.** Beneath this fossa are the alveolar processes of the upper and lower jaws, containing the incisor teeth, and at the lower part of the

median line the symphysis of the chin, the **mental process**, with its two mental tubercles, separated by a median groove, and the **incisive fossa** of the lower jaw.

On each side, proceeding from above downward, is the **supraorbital ridge**, terminating externally in the **external angular process** at its junction with the malar, and internally in the **internal angular process**; toward the inner third of this ridge is the **supraorbital notch** or **foramen**, for the passage of the supraorbital vessels and nerve. Beneath the supraorbital ridge is the opening of the orbit, bounded externally by the orbital ridge of the malar bone; below, by the orbital ridge formed by the malar and superior maxillary bones; internally, by the nasal process of the superior maxillary and the internal angular process of the frontal bone. On the outer side of the orbit is the quadrilateral anterior surface of the malar bone, perforated by one or two small malar foramina. Below the inferior margin of the orbit is the **infraorbital foramen**, the termination of the **infraorbital canal**, and beneath this the **canine fossa**, which gives attachment to the Levator anguli oris; still lower are the **alveolar processes**, containing the teeth of the upper and lower jaws. Beneath the alveolar arch of the lower jaw is the **mental foramen**, for the passage of the mental vessels and nerve, the **external oblique line**, and at the lower border of the bone, at the point of junction of the body with the ramus, a shallow groove for the passage of the facial artery.

Orbits, Orbital Cavities, or Orbital Fossæ.—The orbits (from *orbis*, a circle) (Fig. 99) are two quadrilateral pyramidal cavities, situated at the upper and anterior

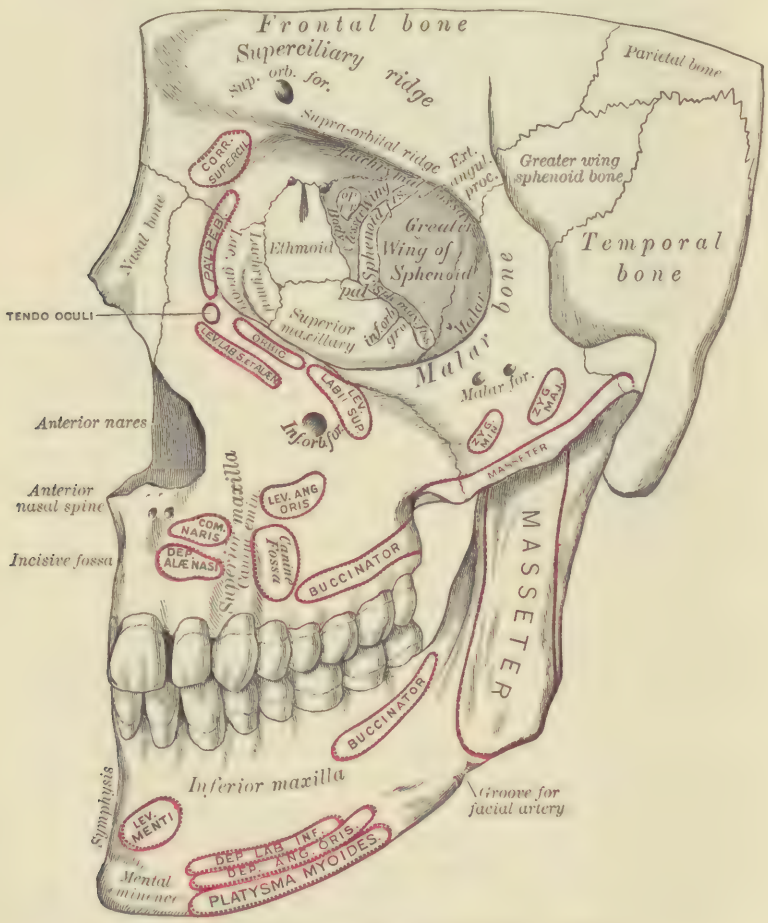


FIG. 99.—Antero-lateral region of the skull. (Cryer.)

part of the face, their bases being directed forward and outward, and their apices backward and inward, so that the axes of the two, if continued backward, would meet over the body of the sphenoid bone. The wide **orbital opening** or **mouth** is called the *aditus orbitæ*. The orbit is lined with **periosteum**, the *periorbita*. Each orbit (*orbita*) is formed of *seven* bones, the frontal, sphenoid, ethmoid, superior maxillary, malar, lachrymal, and palate; but three of these, the frontal, ethmoid, and sphenoid, enter into the formation of *both* orbits, so that the two cavities are formed of *eleven* bones only. Each cavity presents for examination a **roof**, a **floor**, an **inner** and an **outer wall**, four **angles**, a **circumference** or **base**, and an **apex**.

The Roof (*paries superior*).—The roof is concave, directed downward and slightly forward, and formed in front by the orbital plate of the frontal; behind, by the lesser wing of the sphenoid. This surface presents internally the depression for the cartilaginous pulley of the Superior oblique muscle; externally, the depression for the lachrymal gland; and posteriorly, the suture connecting the frontal and lesser wing of the sphenoid.

The Floor (*paries inferior*).—The floor is directed upward and outward, and is of less extent than the roof; it is formed chiefly by the orbital process of the superior maxillary; in front, to a small extent, by the orbital process of the malar, and behind, by the superior surface of the orbital process of the palate. This surface presents at its anterior and internal part, just external to the lachrymal groove, a depression for the attachment of the Inferior oblique muscle; externally, the suture between the malar and superior maxillary bones; near its middle, the **infra-orbital groove**; and posteriorly, the suture between the maxillary and palate bones.

Inner or Medial Wall (*paries medialis*).—The inner wall is flattened, nearly vertical, and formed from before backward by the nasal process of the superior maxillary, the lachrymal, os planum of the ethmoid, and a small part of the body of the sphenoid. This surface presents the **lachrymal groove** and **crests of the lachrymal bone**, and the sutures connecting the lachrymal with the superior maxillary, the ethmoid with the lachrymal in front, and the ethmoid with the sphenoid behind.

Outer or Lateral Wall (*paries lateralis*).—The outer wall is directed forward and inward, and is formed in front by the orbital process of the malar bone; behind, by the orbital surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid. On it are seen the orifices of one or two malar canals, and the suture connecting the sphenoid and malar bones.

Angles.—The *superior external angle* is formed by the junction of the upper and outer walls; it presents from before backward, the suture connecting the frontal with the malar in front and with the great wing of the sphenoid behind; quite posteriorly is the foramen lacerum anterius, or sphenoidal fissure, which transmits the third, the fourth, the three branches of the ophthalmic division of the fifth, the sixth nerve, some filaments from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic, the orbital branch of the middle meningeal artery, a recurrent branch from the lachrymal artery to the dura mater, and the ophthalmic vein. The *superior internal angle* is formed by the junction of the upper and inner wall, and presents the suture connecting the frontal bone with the lachrymal in front and with the ethmoid behind. The point of junction of the *anterior* border of the lachrymal with the frontal has been named the **dacryon**. This angle presents two foramina, the **anterior** and **posterior ethmoidal foramina**, the former transmitting the anterior ethmoidal vessels and nasal nerve, the latter the posterior ethmoidal vessels. The *inferior external angle*, formed by the junction of the outer wall and floor, presents the **spheno-maxillary fissure**, which transmits the superior maxillary nerve and its orbital branches, the infraorbital vessels, and the ascending branches from the spheno-palatine or Meckel's ganglion. The *inferior internal angle* is formed by the union of the lachrymal bone and the os planum of the ethmoid with the superior maxillary and palate bones.

Circumference.—The circumference or **base** of the orbit, quadrilateral in form, is bounded above (*margo supraorbitalis*) by the supraorbital ridge; below (*margo infraorbitalis*), by the anterior border of the orbital plate of the malar and superior maxillary bones; externally, by the external angular process of the frontal and malar bones; internally, by the internal angular process of the frontal and the nasal process of the superior maxillary. The circumference is marked by three sutures, the fronto-maxillary internally, the fronto-malar externally, and the malo-maxillary below; it contributes to the formation of the lachrymal groove, and presents, above, the supraorbital notch (or foramen), for the passage of the supraorbital vessels and nerve.

Apex.—The apex, situated at the back of the orbit, corresponds to the **optic foramen,**[1] a short circular canal which transmits the optic nerve and ophthalmic artery. It will thus be seen that there are *nine* openings communicating with each orbit—viz., the optic foramen, sphenoidal fissure, spheno-maxillary fissure, supraorbital foramen, infraorbital canal, anterior and posterior ethmoidal foramina, malar foramina, and the canal for the nasal duct.

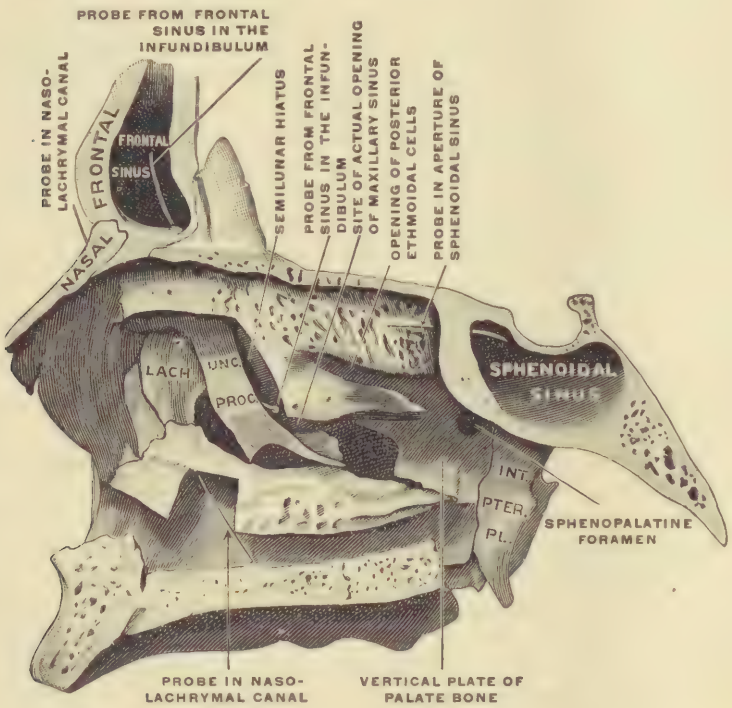


FIG. 100.—Nasal cavity, right lateral wall, from the left. (Spalteholz.)

The Nasal Cavity (*cavum nasi*).—The nasal cavities or **nasal fossæ** (Figs. 84 and 100) are two large, irregular cavities situated on either side of the middle line of the face, extending from the base of the cranium to the roof of the mouth, and separated from each other by a thin vertical septum, the **septum of the nose** (*septum nasi osseum*), formed by the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid and by the vomer. Each cavity communicates by a large aperture, the **anterior nasal aperture** (*apertura pyriformis*),[2] with the front of the face, and by the two **posterior nares** (*choanæ*) with the naso-pharynx behind. These fossæ are much

[1] Quain, Testut, and others give the apex of the orbit as corresponding with the inner end of the sphenoidal fissure. It seems better, however, to adopt the statement in the text, since the muscles of the eyeball take origin around the optic foramen, and diverge from it to the globe of the eye.

[2] In the skull freed of soft parts, the anterior nasal cavities open in front by the apertura pyriformis. In the skull with the soft parts in place they open by the anterior nares

narrower above than below, and in the middle than at the anterior or posterior openings; their depth, which is considerable, is much greater in the middle than at either extremity. "The nasal fossæ are surrounded by four other fossæ—above is the **cranial fossa**; laterally, the **orbital fossæ**; and below, the **cavity of the mouth.**"[1] Each nasal fossa communicates with four sinuses, the frontal above, the sphenoidal behind, and the maxillary and ethmoidal on the outer wall. Each fossa also communicates with four cavities: with the orbit by the **lachrymal groove**, with the mouth by the **anterior palatine canal**, with the cranium by the **olfactory foramina**, and with the spheno-maxillary fossa by the **spheno-palatine foramen**; and they occasionally communicate with each other by an aperture in the septum. The bones entering into their formation are fourteen in number: three of the cranium, the frontal, sphenoid, and ethmoid, and all the bones of the face, excepting the malar and lower jaw. Each cavity is bounded by a **roof**, a **floor**, an **inner** and an **outer wall.**

Upper Wall.—The upper wall, or **roof** (Fig. 101), is long, narrow, and horizontal in its centre, but slopes downward at its anterior and posterior extremities; it is formed in front by the nasal bones and nasal spine of the frontal, which are directed downward and forward; in the middle, by the cribriform plate of the ethmoid, which is horizontal; and behind, by the under surface of the body of the sphenoid and sphenoidal turbinated bones, the ala of the vomer and the sphenoidal process of the palate bone, which are directed downward and backward. This surface presents, from before backward, the internal aspect of the nasal bones; on their outer side, the suture formed between the nasal bone and the nasal process of the superior maxillary; on their inner side, the elevated crest which receives the nasal spine of the frontal and the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid, and articulates with its fellow of the opposite side; whilst the surface of the bones is perforated by a few small vascular apertures, and presents the longitudinal groove for the nasal nerve; farther back is the **transverse suture**, connecting the frontal with the nasal in front, and the ethmoid behind, the **olfactory foramina** and **nasal slit** on the under surface of the cribriform plate, and the suture between it and the sphenoid behind; quite posteriorly are seen the **sphenoidal turbinated bones**, the orifices of the **sphenoidal sinuses**, and the articulation of the **alæ of the vomer** with the under surface of the body of the sphenoid.

Floor (Figs. 84, 100, and 101).—The floor is flattened from before backward, concave from side to side, and wider in the middle than at either extremity. It is formed in front by the palate process of the superior maxillary; behind, by the palate process of the palate bone. This surface presents, from before backward, the **anterior nasal spine**; behind this, the upper orifices of the **anterior palatine canal**; internally, the elevated crest which articulates with the vomer; and behind, the suture between the palate and superior maxillary bones, and the **posterior nasal spine.**

Inner or Medial Wall.—The inner wall, or **septum** (Figs. 101 and 103), is a thin vertical partition which separates the nasal fossæ from each other; it is occasionally perforated, so that the fossæ communicate, and it is frequently deflected considerably to one side.[2] It is formed, in front, by the crest of the nasal bones and nasal spine of the frontal; in the middle, by the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid; behind, by the vomer and rostrum of the sphenoid; below, by the crests of the superior maxillary and palate bones. It presents, in front, a large, triangular notch, which receives the septal cartilage of the nose; and behind, the grooved edge of the vomer. Its surface is marked by numerous vascular and nervous canals and the groove for the naso-palatine nerve, and is traversed by sutures connecting the bones of which it is formed.

Outer or Lateral Wall.—The outer wall (Figs. 84 and 101) is formed, in front, by the nasal process of the superior maxillary and lachrymal bones; in the middle,

[1] Howard A. Lothrop, in Annals of Surgery, May, 1903.

[2] See footnote, p. 99.

by the ethmoid and inner surface of the body of the superior maxillary and inferior turbinated bones; behind, by the vertical plate of the palate bone and the internal pterygoid plate of the sphenoid. Upon this outer wall are two marked projections

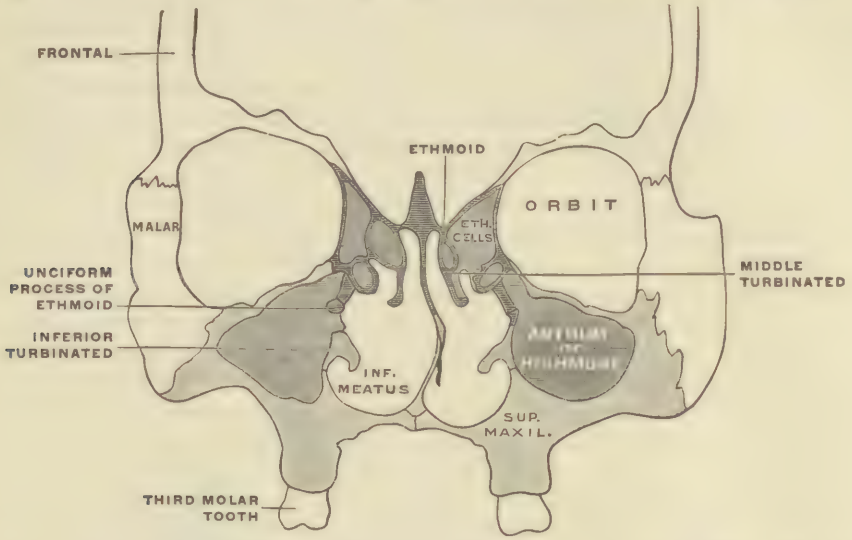


FIG. 101.—Coronal section of the face, passing through the third molar tooth. (Poirier and Charpy.)

of bone (Figs. 84 and 101). One is known as the **inferior turbinated bone** and the other as the **middle turbinated bone.** The **superior turbinated bones** or **bodies** appear

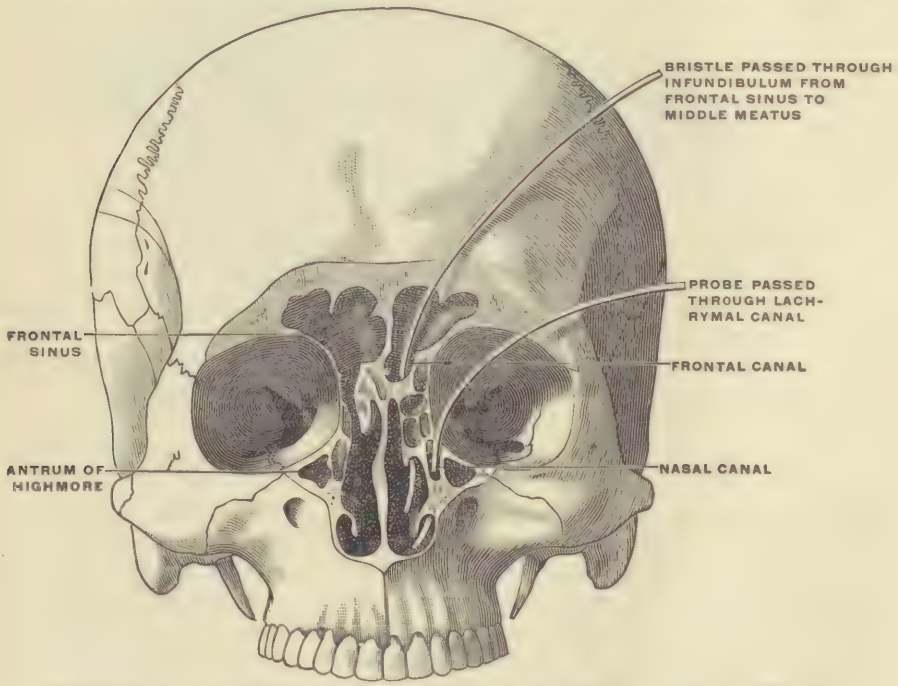


FIG. 102.—Cranial section through the frontal sinus and nasal fossa. (Poirier and Charpy.)

as less distinct bony projections. This surface presents three irregular longitudinal passages, or meatuses, termed the superior, middle, and inferior meatuses of the nose (Figs. 84, 101, and 102). The **superior meatus** (*meatus nasi superior*), the

smallest of the three, is situated at the upper and back part of each nasal fossa, occupying the posterior third of the outer wall. It is situated between the superior turbinated bone, and has opening into it two foramina, the **spheno-palatine foramina** at the back of its outer wall, and the **posterior ethmoidal cells** at the front part of the outer wall. The sphenoidal sinus opens into a recess, the **spheno-ethmoidal recess** (*recessus sphenoethmoidalis*), which is situated above and behind the superior turbinated bone. The **middle meatus** (*meatus nasi medius*) is situated external to the middle turbinated bone, and above the inferior turbinated bone, and extends from the anterior end of the inferior turbinated bone to the spheno-palatine foramen of the outer wall of the nasal fossa. Anteriorly it terminates in a depression, the **atrium of the nasal meatus.** The **bulla ethmoidalis,** an elevated area disclosed by removing the middle turbinated bone. Below and in front of the bulla is a groove, the **semilunar hiatus** (*hiatus semilunaris*), into which open the antrum and the anterior ethmoidal cells. The middle meatus presents in front the orifice of the **infundibulum** (*infundibulum ethmoidale*), by which the middle meatus communicates with the anterior ethmoidal cells, and through these with

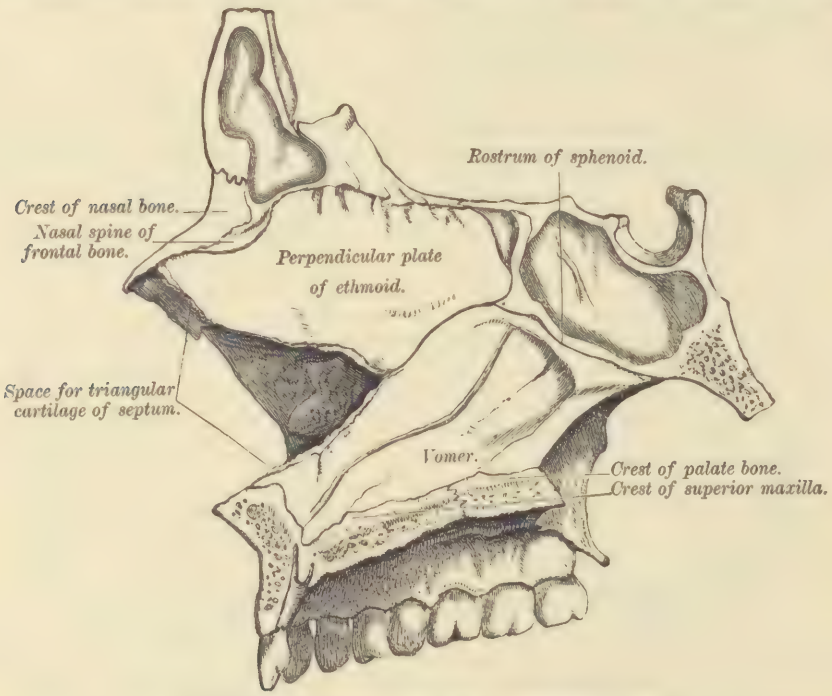


FIG. 103.—Inner wall of nasal fossæ, or septum of nose.

the frontal sinuses. The middle ethmoidal cells also open into this meatus, while at the centre of the outer wall is the **orifice of the maxillary antrum** (*hiatus maxillaris*), which varies somewhat as to its exact position in different skulls. The **inferior meatus** (*meatus nasi inferior*), the largest of the three, is the space between the inferior turbinated bone and the floor of the nasal fossa. It extends along the entire length of the outer wall of the nose, is broader in front than behind, and presents anteriorly the lower **orifice of the canal for the nasal duct** (*canalis nasolacrimalis*). The **anterior nares** present a heart-shaped or pyriform opening (*apertura piriformis*) whose long axis is vertical and narrow extremity upward. This opening in the recent state is much contracted by the cartilages of the nose. It is bounded above by the inferior border of the nasal bone; laterally by the thin, sharp margin which separates the facial from the nasal surface of the superior

maxillary bone; and below by the same border, where it slopes inward to join its fellow of the opposite side at the anterior nasal spine. The **posterior nares**, or *choanæ*, are the two posterior oval openings of the nasal fossæ, by which they communicate with the upper part of the naso-pharynx. They are situated immediately in front of the basilar process, and are bounded above by the under surface of the body of the sphenoid and alæ of the vomer; below, by the posterior border of the horizontal plate of the palate bone; externally, by the inner surface of the internal pterygoid plate; and internally, in the middle line, they are separated from each other by the posterior border of the vomer.

Difference in Size and Form of the Cranium.—These differences are thus set forth by Mr. Arthur Thomson in Professor D. J. Cunningham's *Text-book of Anatomy:*

Microcephalic skulls have a capacity of less than 1350 c.c. Mesocephalic skulls have a capacity of from 1350 c.c. to 1450 c.c. Megacephalic skulls have a capacity over 1450 c.c.

What is known as the cephalic index is the proportion borne by the greatest breadth of the skull to the greatest length, assuming that the latter is equal to 100. Thomson gives the following formula:

$$\frac{\text{Maximum breadth} \times 100}{\text{maximum length}} = \text{cephalic index.}$$

The cephalic index is used to determine the form of the skull: Dolichocephalic (long antero-posterior diameter) (Figs. 105 and 107), having a cephalic index

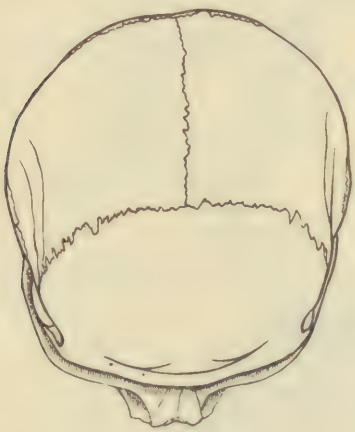


Fig. 104.—Brachycephalic cranium. (Poirier and Charpy.)

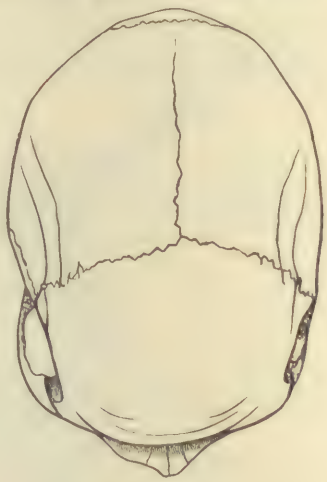


Fig. 105.—Dolichocephalic cranium. (Poirier and Charpy.)

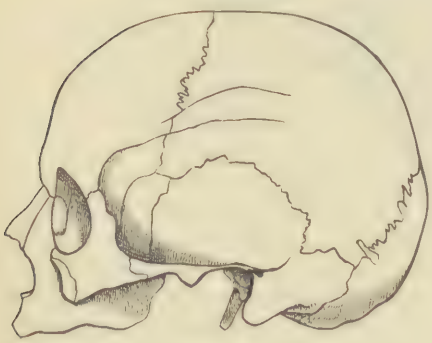


Fig. 106.—Brachycephalic cranium. (Poirier and Charpy.)

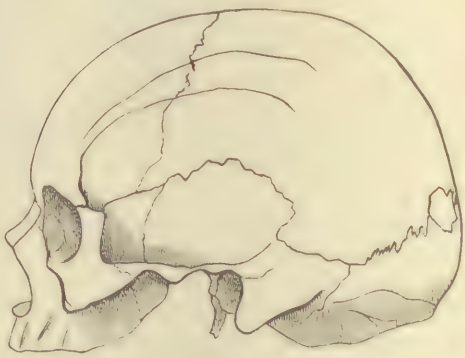


Fig. 107.—Dolichocephalic cranium. Poirier and Charpy.)

below 75. Mesaticephalic (median head), having a cephalic index from 75 to 80. Brachycephalic (short antero-posterior diameter) (Figs. 104 and 106), having a cephalic index over 80.

Surface Form.—The various bony prominences or landmarks which are to be easily felt and recognized in the head and face, and which afford the means of mapping out the important structures comprised in this region, are as follows:

1. Supraorbital arch.
2. Internal angular process.
3. External angular process.
4. Zygomatic arch.
5. Mastoid process.
6. External occipital protuberance.
7. Superior curved line of occipital bone.
8. Parietal eminences.
9. Temporal ridge.
10. Frontal eminences.
11. Superciliary ridges.
12. Nasal bones.
13. Lower margin of orbit.
14. Lower jaw.

1. The **supraorbital arches** are to be felt throughout their entire extent, covered by the eyebrows. They form the upper boundary of the circumference or base of the orbit, and separate the face from the forehead. They are strong and arched, and terminate internally on each side of the root of the nose in the internal angular process, which articulates with the lachrymal bone. Externally they terminate in the external angular process, which articulates with the malar bone. This arched ridge is sharper and more defined in its outer than in its inner half, and forms an overhanging process which protects and shields the lachrymal gland. It thus protects the eye in its most exposed situation and in the direction from which blows are most likely to descend. The supraorbital arch varies in prominence in different individuals. It is more marked in the male than in the female, and in some races of mankind than others. In the less civilized races, as the forehead recedes backward, the supraorbital arch becomes more prominent, and approaches more to the characters of the monkey tribe, in which the supraorbital arches are very largely developed, and acquire additional prominence from the oblique direction of the frontal bone. 2. The **internal angular process** is scarcely to be felt. Its position is indicated by the angle formed by the supraorbital arch with the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone and the lachrymal bone at the inner side of the orbit. Between the internal angular processes of the two sides is a broad surface which assists in forming the root of the nose, and immediately above this a broad, smooth, somewhat triangular surface, the **glabella,** situated between the superciliary ridges. 3. The **external angular process** is much more strongly marked than the internal, and is plainly to be felt. It is formed by the junction or confluence of the supraorbital and temporal ridges, and, articulating with the malar bone, it serves to a very considerable extent to support the bones of the face. In carnivorous animals the external angular process does not articulate with the malar, and therefore this lateral support to the bones of the face is not present. 4. The **zygomatic arch** is plainly to be felt throughout its entire length, being situated almost immediately under the skin. It is formed by the malar bone and the zygomatic process of the temporal bone. At its anterior extremity, where it is formed by the malar bone, it is broad and forms the prominence of the cheek; the posterior part is narrower, and terminates just in front and a little above the tragus of the external ear. The lower border is more plainly to be felt than the upper, in consequence of the dense temporal fascia being attached to the latter, which somewhat obscures its outline. Its shape differs very much in individuals and in different races of mankind. In the most degraded type of skull—as, for instance, in the skull of the negro of the Guinea Coast—the malar bones project forward and not outward, and the zygoma at its posterior extremity extends farther outward before it is twisted on itself to be prolonged forward. This makes the zygomatic arch stand out in bold relief, and affords greater space for the Temporal muscle. In skulls which have a more pyramidal shape, as in the Esquimaux or Greenlander, the malar bones do not project forward and downward under the eyes, as in the preceding form, but take a direction outward, forming with the zygoma a large, rounded sweep or segment of a circle. Thus it happens that if two lines are drawn from the zygomatic arches, touching the temporal ridges, they meet above the top of the head, instead of being parallel, or nearly so, as in the European skull, in which the zygomatic arches are not nearly so prominent. This gives to the face a more or less oval type. 5. Behind the ear is the **mastoid portion of the temporal bone,** plainly to be felt, and terminating below in a nipple-shaped process. Its anterior border can be traced immediately behind the concha, and its apex is on about a level with the lobule of the ear. It is rudimentary in infancy, but gradually develops in childhood, and is more marked in the negro than in the European. 6. The **external occipital protuberance** is always plainly to be felt just at the level where the skin of the neck joins that of the head. At this point the skull is thick for the purposes of safety, while radiating from it are numerous curved arches or buttresses of bone which give to this portion of the skull further security. 7. Running outward on either side from the external occipital protuberance is an arched ridge of bone, which can be more or less plainly perceived. This is the **superior curved line of the occipital bone,** and gives attachment to some of the muscles which

keep the head erect on the spine; accordingly, we find it more developed in the negro tribes, in whom the jaws are much more massive, and therefore require stronger muscles to prevent their extra weight carrying the head forward. Below this line the surface of bone at the back of the head is obscured by the overlying muscles. Above it, the vault of the cranium is thinly covered with soft structures, so that the form of this part of the head is almost exactly that of the upper portion of the occipital, the parietal, and the frontal bones themselves; and in bald persons, even the lines of junction of the bones, especially the junction of the occipital and parietal at the lambdoid suture, may be defined as a slight depression, caused by the thickening of the borders of the bones in this situation. 8. In the line of the greatest transverse diameter of the head, on each side of the middle line, are generally to be found the **parietal eminences,** one on each side of the middle line, though sometimes these eminences are not situated at the point of the greatest transverse diameter, which is at some other prominent part of the parietal region. They denote the point where ossification of the parietal bone began. They are much more prominent and well-marked in early life, in consequence of the sharper curve of the bone at this period, so that it describes the segment of a smaller circle. Later in life, as the bone grows, the curve spreads out and forms the segment of a larger circle, so that the eminence becomes less distinguishable. In consequence of this sharp curve of the bone in early life, the whole of the vault of the skull has a squarer shape than it has in later life, and this appearance may persist in some rickety skulls. The eminence is more apparent in the negro's skull than in that of the European. This is due to greater flattening of the temporal fossa in the former skull to accommodate the larger Temporal muscle which exists in these races. The parietal eminence is particularly exposed to injury from blows or falls on the head, but fracture is to a certain extent prevented by the shape of the bone, which forms an arch, so that the force of the blow is diffused over the bone in every direction. 9. At the side of the head may be felt the **temporal ridge.** Commencing at the external angular process, it may be felt as a curved ridge, passing upward and then curving backward, on the frontal bone, separating the forehead from the temporal fossa. It may then be traced passing backward in a curved direction, over the parietal bone, and, though less marked, still generally to be recognized. Finally, the ridge curves downward, and terminates in the posterior root of the zygoma, which separates the squamous from the subcutaneous mastoid portion of the temporal bone. Sir Victor Horsley has recently shown in an article on the "Topography of the Cerebral Cortex," that the second temporal ridge (see page 76) can be made out on the living body. 10. The **frontal eminences** vary a good deal in different individuals, being considerably more prominent in some than in others, and they are often not symmetrical on the two sides of the body, the one being much more pronounced than the other. This is often especially noticeable in the skull of the young child or infant, and becomes less marked as age advances. The prominence of the frontal eminences depends more upon the general shape of the whole bone than upon the size of the protuberances themselves. As the skull is more highly developed in consequence of increased intellectual capacity, so the frontal bone becomes more upright and the frontal eminences stand out in bolder relief. Thus they may be considered as affording, to a certain extent, an indication of the development of the hemispheres of the brain beneath, and of the mental powers of the individual. They are not so much exposed to injury as the parietal eminences. In falls forward the upper extremities are involuntarily thrown out, and break the force of the fall, and thus shield the frontal bone from injury. 11. Below the frontal eminences on the forehead are the **superciliary ridges,** which denote the position of the frontal sinuses, and vary according to the size of the sinuses in different individuals, being, as a rule, small in the female, absent in children, and sometimes unusually prominent in the male, when the frontal sinuses are largely developed. They commence on either side of the glabella, and at first present a rounded form, which gradually fades away at their outer ends. 12. The **nasal bones** form the prominence of the nose. They vary much in size and shape, and to them is due the varieties in the contour of this organ and much of the character of the face. Thus, in the Mongolian or Ethiopian they are flat, broad, and thick at their base, giving to these races the flattened nose by which they are characterized, and differing very decidedly from the Caucasian, in whom the nose, owing to the shape of the nasal bones, is narrow, elevated at the bridge, and elongated downward. Below, the nasal bones are thin and connected with the cartilages of the nose, and the angle or arch formed by their union serves to throw out the bridge of the nose, and is much more marked in some individuals than others. 13. The **lower margin of the orbit,** formed by the superior maxillary bone and the malar bone, is plainly to be felt throughout its entire length. It is continuous internally with the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone, which forms the inner boundary of the orbit. At the point of junction of the lower margin of the orbit with the nasal process is to be felt a little tubercle of bone, which can be plainly perceived by running the finger along the bone in this situation. This tubercle serves as a guide to the position of the lachrymal sac, which is situated above and behind it. 14. The outline of the **lower jaw** is to be felt throughout its entire length. Just in front of the tragus of the external ear, and below the zygomatic arch, the condyle can be made out. When the mouth is opened this prominence of bone can be perceived advancing out of the glenoid fossa on to the eminentia articularis, and receding again

when the mouth is closed. From the condyle the posterior border of the ramus can be felt extending down to the angle. A line drawn from the condyle to the angle would indicate the exact position of this border. From the angle to the symphysis of the chin the lower, rounded border of the body of the bone is plainly to be felt. At the point of junction of the two halves of the bone is a well-marked triangular eminence, the **mental process,** which forms the prominence of the chin.

Fixed Points for Measurement.—In order to determine the location of regions of surgical importance within the skull (bony spaces, vessels, fissures, centres, and convolutions of the brain) and in order to estimate cranial capacity, measurements are made and these measurements are taken from fixed points. The following are the chief fixed points:

The Nasion. The middle of the naso-frontal suture.

The Glabella. Midway between the two superciliary ridges.

The Obelion. A point in the sagittal suture between the parietal foramina.

The Inion. The external occipital protuberance.

The Basion. The middle of the anterior edge of the foramen magnum.

The Opisthion. The middle of the posterior edge of the foramen magnum.

The Lambda. The point of junction of the sagittal and lambdoid sutures.

The Pterion. The site of the antero-lateral fontanelle, where the frontal, parietal, squamous portion of the temporal and greater wing of the sphenoid are in relation.

The Asterion. The region of the postero-lateral fontanelle, at the posterior inferior margin of the parietal bone.

The Bregma. The site of the anterior fontanelle, where the sagittal and coronal sutures meet.

The Superior Stephanion. The point where the superior temporal ridge meets the coronal suture.

The Inferior Stephanion. The point where the inferior temporal ridge meets the coronal suture.

The Gonion. The outer surface of the angle of the mandible.

The Ophryon. The middle of the narrowest transverse diameter of the forehead.

The Vertex. The highest point of the vault of the skull.

Besides these points we use the mastoid process, the nasal spine, the zygomatic arch, the frontal eminences, the parietal eminences, the supraorbital ridges, the superciliary ridges, the mental process, suprameatal spine, the external and internal angular processes, and the canine fossa.

Surgical Anatomy.—The thickness of the skull varies greatly in different regions of the same skull and in different individuals. The average thickness of the skull-cap is about one-fifth of an inch. The thickest portions are the occipital protuberance, the inferior portion of the frontal bone, and the mastoid process. The thinnest portions are the occipital fossæ, the squamous portion of the temporal bone, and over certain sinuses and arteries. An arrest in the ossifying process may give rise to deficiencies or gaps, or to fissures, which are of importance in a medico-legal point of view, as they are liable to be mistaken for fractures. The fissures generally extend from the margin toward the centre of the bone, but gaps may be found in the middle as well as at the edges. In course of time they may become covered with a thin lamina of bone.

Occasionally a protrusion of the brain or its membranes may take place through one of these gaps in an imperfectly developed skull. When the protrusion consists of membranes only, and is filled with cerebro-spinal fluid, it is called a **meningocele**; when the protrusion consists of brain as well as membranes, it is termed an **encephalocele** and when the protruded brain is a prolongation from one of the ventricles, and is distended by a collection of fluid from an accumulation in the ventricle, it is termed an **hydrencephalocele.** This latter condition is sometimes found at the root of the nose, where a protrusion of the anterior horn of the lateral ventricle takes place through a deficiency of the fronto-nasal suture. These malformations are usually found in the middle line, and most frequently at the back of the head, the protrusion taking place through the fissures which separate the four centres of ossification from which the tabular portion of the occipital bone is originally developed (see page 75). They most frequently occur through the upper part of the vertical fissure, which is the last to ossify, but not uncommonly through the lower part, when the foramen magnum may be incomplete. More rarely these protrusions have been met with in other situations than those above mentioned, both through normal fissures, as the sagittal, lambdoid, and other sutures, and also through abnormal gaps and deficiencies at the sides, and even at the base of the skull. Force may be responsible in a young person for *separating a suture*. This accident, seldom met with even in the young, is only occasionally encountered in older persons.

Fractures of the skull may be divided into those of the *vault* and those of the *base*. Fractures of the vault are usually produced by direct violence. This portion of the skull varies in thickness and strength in different individuals, but, as a rule, is sufficiently strong to resist a very considerable amount of violence without being fractured. This is due to several causes: the

rounded shape of the head and its construction of a number of secondary elastic arches, each made up of a single bone; the fact that it consists of a number of bones, united, at all events in early life, by a sutural ligament, which acts as a sort of buffer and interrupts the continuity of any violence applied to the skull; the presence of arches or ridges, both on the inside and outside of the skull, which materially strengthen it; and the mobility of the head upon the spine, which further enables it to withstand violence. The elasticity of the bones of the head is especially marked in the skull of the child, and this fact, together with the wide separation of the individual bones from each other, and the interposition between them of other and softer structures render fracture of the bones of the head a very uncommon event in infants and quite young children; as age advances and the bones become joined, fracture is more common, though still less liable to occur than in the adult. Fractures of the vault may, and generally do, involve the *whole thickness* of the bone; but sometimes one table may be fractured without any corresponding injury to the other. Thus, the *outer table* of the skull may be splintered and driven into the diploë, or in the frontal or mastoid regions into the frontal or mastoid cells, without any injury to the internal table. And on the other hand, the *internal table* has been fractured, and portions of it depressed and driven inward, without any fracture of the outer table. As a rule, in fractures of the skull the inner table is more splintered and comminuted than the outer, and this is due to several causes. It is thinner and more brittle; the force of the violence as it passes inward becomes broken up, and is more diffused by the time it reaches the inner table; the bone, being in the form of an arch, bends as a whole and spreads out, and thus presses the particles together on the convex surface of the arch -*i. e.*, the outer table -and forces them asunder on the concave surface or inner table; and, lastly, there is nothing firm under the inner table to support it and oppose the force. *Fractures of the vault* may be *simple fissures* or *starred* and *comminuted fractures*, and these may be *depressed* or *elevated*. These latter cases of fracture with elevation of the fractured portion are uncommon, and can only be produced by direct wound. In comminuted fracture a portion of the skull is broken into several pieces, the lines of fracture radiating from a centre where the chief impact of the blow was felt; if depressed, a fissure circumscribes the radiating line, enclosing a portion of skull. If this area is circular, it is termed a **pond fracture**, and would in all probability have been caused by a round instrument, as a life-preserver or hammer; if elliptical in shape, it is termed a **gutter fracture**, and would owe its shape to the instrument which had produced it, as a poker. A fracture may take place along the line of an ossified or partly ossified suture. When a surgeon explores the vault of the skull through a wound he must not mistake a Wormian bone for a fragment produced by a fracture. A Wormian bone which may lead to mistake is encountered at the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone. Wormian bones are most frequently found along the lambdoid suture.

Fractures of the base are most frequently produced by the extension of a fissure from the vault, as in falls on the head, where the fissure starts from the part of the vault which first struck the ground. Sometimes, however, they are caused by direct violence, when foreign bodies have been forced through the thin roof of the orbit, through the cribriform plate of the ethmoid from being thrust up the nose, or through the roof of the pharynx. Other cases of fracture of the base occur from indirect violence, as in fracture of the occipital bone from impaction of the spinal column against its condyles in falls on the buttocks, knees, or feet, or in cases where the glenoid cavity has been fractured by the violent impact of the condyle of the lower jaw against it from blows on the chin.

The most common place for fracture of the base to occur is through the middle fossa, and here the fissure usually takes a fairly definite course. Starting from the point struck, which is generally somewhere in the neighborhood of the parietal eminence, it runs downward through the parietal bone and the squamous portion of the temporal bone and across the petrous portion of this bone, frequently traversing and implicating the internal auditory meatus, to the middle lacerated foramen. From this it may pass across the body of the sphenoid, through the pituitary fossa to the middle lacerated foramen of the other side, and may indeed travel round the whole cranium, so as to completely separate the anterior from the posterior part. The course of the fracture should be borne in mind, as it explains the symptoms to which fracture in this region may give rise; thus, if the fissure pass across the internal auditory meatus, injury to the facial and auditory nerves may result, with consequent facial paralysis and deafness; or the tubular prolongation of the arachnoid around these nerves in the meatus may be torn, and thus permit of the escape of the cerebro-spinal fluid should there be a communication between the internal ear and the tympanum and the membrana tympani be ruptured, as is frequently the case; again, if the fissure passes across the pituitary fossa and the muco-periosteum covering the under surface of the body of the sphenoid is torn, blood will find its way into the pharynx and be swallowed, and after a time vomiting of blood will result. Fractures of the anterior fossa, involving the bones forming the roof of the orbit and nasal fossa, are generally the results of blows on the forehead; but fracture of the cribriform plate of the ethmoid may be a complication of fracture of the nasal bone. When the fracture implicates the roof of the orbit, the blood finds its way into this cavity, and, travelling forward, appears as a subconjunctival ecchymosis. Subcon-

junctival ecchymosis can also be caused by fracture of the malar bone. If the roof of the nasal fossa be fractured, the blood escapes from the nose. In rare cases there may be also escape of cerebro-spinal fluid from the nose where the dura mater and arachnoid have been torn. In fractures of the posterior fossa extravasation of blood takes place beneath the deep fascia and discoloration of the skin is soon observed in the course of the posterior auricular artery, the discoloration first appearing in the skin over the tip of the mastoid process of the temporal bone (**Battle's sign**). Some of the blood which was extravasated beneath the deep fascia approaches the surface through the openings in the deep fascia for the passage of vessels and nerves.

The bones of the skull are frequently the seat of **nodes,** and not uncommonly necrosis results from this cause, also from injury. Necrosis may involve the entire thickness of the skull, but is usually confined to the external table. Necrosis of the internal table alone is rarely met with. The bones of the skull are also sometimes the seat of *sarcomatous tumor.*

The skull in *rickets* is peculiar: the forehead is high, square, and projecting, and the antero-posterior diameter of the skull is long in relation to the transverse diameter. The bones of the face are small and ill-developed, and this gives the appearance of a larger head than actually exists. The bones of the head are often thick, especially in the neighborhood of the sutures, and the anterior fontanelle is late in closing, sometimes remaining unclosed till the fourth year. The condition of **craniotabes** has by some been also believed to be the result of rickets, by others is believed to be due to inherited syphilis. In all probability it is due to both. In these cases the bone undergoes atrophic changes in patches, so that it becomes greatly thinned in places, generally where there is pressure, as from the pillow or nurse's arm. It is, therefore, usually met with in the parietal bone and vertical plate of the occipital bone.

In *congenital syphilis* deposits of porous bone are often found at the angles of the parietal bones and two halves of the frontal bone which bound the anterior fontanelle. These deposits are separated by the coronal and sagittal sutures, and give to the skull an appearance like a **hot cross bun.** They are known as *Parrot's nodes*, and such a skull has received the name of **natiform,** from its fancied resemblance to the buttocks. When the surgeon wishes to effect an entrance into the interior of the *mastoid antrum* (Fig. 108) he applies his bur or gouge in the *suprameatal triangle* 1 cm. posterior to the suprameatal spine, being careful to keep below the posterior root of the zygoma and the level of the superior wall of the bony meatus. If the instrument is entered at a higher level it will open the cerebral cavity; the instrument should be carried inward, forward, and a little upward, that is, in the direction of the auditory canal. The antrum is usually reached after the penetration of from 1 to 1½ cm. of bone. The depth at which the antrum is situated is not constant. "It is safe to say that if the instrument penetrates deeper than 1½ cm. and be directed too far forward or downward, the horizontal semicircular canal or the aquæductus Fallopii will be encountered. If the former were opened in a purulent otitis media the pus would travel along it to the vestibule and from there into the internal auditory meatus, producing a pachymeningitis or extradural (epidural) abscess of the posterior fossa of the skull; or from the vestibule through the perpendicular semicircular canal, which if accompanied by erosion of its bony covering would lead to involvement of the meninges of the middle fossa; the same would hold good for the posterior semicircular canal, affecting the posterior fossa. If the latter (the aquæductus Fallopii) were opened an inflammation of the facial nerve which is contained therein would result, producing paralysis of that side of the face. The inflammatory process might also find its way through the entire canal to the internal auditory meatus, causing a pachymeningitis or extradural abscess as mentioned above; or, travelling along the nerve to its cerebral attachment, would produce a meningitis or subdural (intradural) abscess. The direction of the penetrating instrument must also be forward, in order to avoid injuring the lateral sinus" ("Anatomy and Surgery of the Temporal Bone," by A. E. Schmitt, M.D., *American Journal of the Medical Sciences*, April, 1903). In the operation for infective thrombosis of the lateral sinus the sinus is deliberately exposed and opened (Fig. 108).

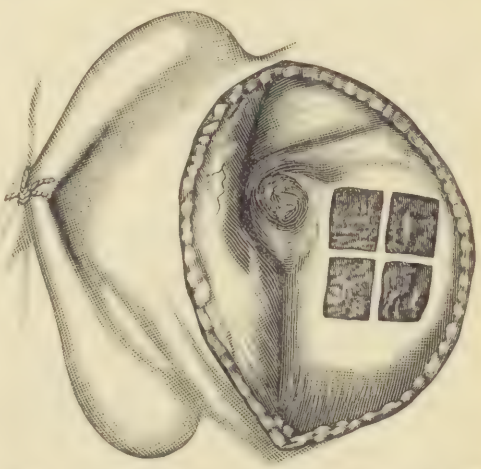


FIG. 108.—Division of the mastoid process into four equal parts. An opening in the upper anterior quadrant reaches the mastoid antrum; into the upper posterior quadrant reaches the lateral sinus; the lower anterior quadrant into mastoid cells; a superficial opening into the lower posterior quadrant reaches mastoid cells; a deep opening reaches the descending limb of the lateral sinus. (A. E. Schmitt.)

Hartley divides the mastoid process into four parts as follows: The upper margin is the posterior root of the zygoma. The anterior margin is the anterior border of the mastoid. The posterior margin is a vertical line dropped from the masto-occipital junction. The lower margin is an imaginary line backward from the mastoid tip. This space is divided into four equal parts. Points upon it may be designated as on a map. Take the left side for demonstration. An opening in the N. W. quadrant enters the antrum, one into the N. E. quadrant exposes the lateral sinus, one into the S. W. quadrant enters mastoid cells, and a superficial one into the S. E. quadrant enters mastoid cells, but a deep one exposes the descending portion of the lateral sinus.

When pus breaks through the mastoid process it may enter the sheath of the digastric or sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle and point a considerable distance away from the bone, **Bezold's abscess.**

In connection with the bones of the face a common malformation is **cleft palate,** owing to the non-union of the palatal processes of the maxillary or pre-oral arch. This cleft may involve the whole or only a portion of the hard palate, and usually involves the soft palate also. The cleft is in the middle line, except it involves the alveolus in front, when it follows the suture between the main portion of the bone and the pre-maxillary bone. Sometimes the cleft runs on either side of the pre-maxillary bone, so that this bone is quite isolated from the maxillary bones and hangs from the end of the vomer. In such a case the pre-maxillary bone usually contains the germs of the central incisors only. In some cases there is no pre-maxillary bone and the great gap in the lip is in the median line. Cleft palate (Fig. 92) is usually associated with hare-lip, which, when single, is almost always on one side, corresponding to the position of the suture between the lateral incisor and canine tooth. Some few cases of median hare-lip have been described. In double hare-lip there is a cleft on each side of the middle line (see page 111).

The outlines and the height of the arch of the palate vary greatly in different persons. A narrow palate with a high arch is common in idiots and certain degenerates.

The bones of the face are sometimes fractured as the result of direct violence. The two most commonly broken are the nasal bone and the mandible, and of these the latter is by far the most frequently fractured of all the bones of the face. Fracture of the *nasal* bone is for the most part transverse, and takes place about half an inch from the free margin. The broken portion may be displaced backward or more generally to one side by the force which produced the lesion, as there are no muscles here which can cause displacement. The *malar* bone is probably never broken alone; that is to say, unconnected with a fracture of the other bones of the face. The *zygomatic arch* is occasionally fractured, and when this occurs from direct violence, as is usually the case, the fragments may be displaced inward. This lesion is often attended with great difficulty or even inability to open and shut the mouth, and this has been stated to be due to the depressed fragments perforating the temporal muscle, but would appear rather to be caused by the injury done to the bony origin of the Masseter muscle. *Fractures of the superior maxilla* may vary much in degree, from the chipping off of a portion of the alveolar arch, a frequent accident when the "old key" instrument was used for the extraction of teeth, to an extensive comminution of the whole bone from severe violence, as the kick of a horse. The most common situation for a *fracture of the mandible* bone is in the neighborhood of the canine tooth, as at this spot the jaw is weakened by the deep socket for the fang of this tooth; it is next most frequently fractured at the angle; then at the symphysis, and finally the neck of the condyle or the coronoid process may be broken. Occasionally a double fracture may occur, one in either half of the bone. The fractures are usually compound, from laceration of the mucous membrane covering the gums. The displacement is mainly the result of the same violence as produced the injury, but may be further increased by the action of the muscles passing from the neighborhood of the symphysis to the hyoid bone.

The superior and inferior maxillary bones are both of them frequently the seat of *necrosis*, though the disease affects the lower much more frequently than the upper jaw. It may be the result of periostitis, from tooth irritation, injury, or the action of some specific poison, as syphilis, or from salivation by mercury; it not infrequently occurs in children after attacks of the exanthematous fevers, and a special form occurs from the action of the fumes of phosphorus in persons engaged in the manufacture of matches.

Tumors attack the jaw bones not infrequently, and these may be either innocent or malignant: in the upper jaw cysts may occur in the antrum, constituting the so-called dropsy of the antrum; or, again, cysts may form in either jaw in connection with the teeth: either cysts connected with the roots of fully developed teeth, the "dental cyst;" or cysts connected with imperfectly developed teeth, the "dentigerous cyst." Solid innocent tumors include the fibroma, the chondroma, and the osteoma. Of malignant tumors there are the endotheliomata, the sarcomata, and the epitheliomata. The sarcomata are of various kinds, the spindle-celled, the round-celled, which are of a very malignant character, and the myeloid sarcomata, principally affecting the alveolar margin of the bone. Of the epitheliomata we find the squamous variety spreading to the bone from the palate or gum, and the cylindrical epithelioma originating in the antrum or nasal fossæ.

Both superior and inferior maxillary bones occasionally require **excision** for tumors and in some other conditions. The upper jaw is removed by an incision from the inner canthus of the eye, along the side of the nose, round the ala, and down the middle line of the upper lip. A second incision is carried outward from the inner canthus of the line along the lower margin of the orbit as far as the prominence of the malar bone. The flap thus formed is reflected outward and the surface of the bone exposed, and the central incisor of the diseased side is removed. The connections of the bone to the other bones of the face are then divided with a narrow saw and bone-cutting forceps. They are (1) the junction with the malar bone, passing into the spheno-maxillary fissure; (2) the nasal process; a small portion of its upper extremity, connected with the nasal bone in front, the lachrymal bone behind, and the frontal bone above, being left; (3) the connection with the bone on the opposite side and the palate in the roof of the mouth. The bone is now firmly grasped with lion-jaw forceps, and by means of a rocking movement upward and downward the remaining attachments of the orbital plate with the ethmoid and the back of the bone with the palate, broken through. The soft palate is first separated from the hard with a scalpel, and is not removed. Occasionally in removing the upper jaw it will be found that the orbital plate can be spared, and this should always be done if possible. A horizontal saw-cut is to be made just below the infraorbital foramen and the bone cut through with a chisel and mallet. Lockwood has pointed out that in removing the upper jaw the surgeon must be careful in dividing the nasal process of the superior maxilla to preserve the internal orbital or palpebral ligament (Tendo oculi), because this ligament arises from the palpebral fascia, and if it is interfered with the eye will inevitably drop downward. Removal of one-half of the lower jaw is sometimes required. If possible, the section of the bone should be made to one side of the symphysis, so as to save the genial tubercles and the origin of the genio-hyoglossus muscle, as otherwise the tongue tends to fall backward and may produce suffocation. Having extracted the central or preferably the lateral incisor tooth, a vertical incision is made down to the bone, commencing at the free margin of the lip, and carried to the lower border of the bone; it is then carried along its lower border to the angle and up the posterior margin of the ramus to a level with the lobule of the ear. The flap thus formed is raised by separating all the structures attached to the outer surface of the bone. The jaw is now sawn through at the point where the tooth has been extracted, and the knife passed along the inner side of the jaw, separating the structures attached to this surface. The jaw is then grasped by the surgeon and strongly depressed, so as to bring down the coronoid process and enable the operator to sever the tendon of the Temporal muscle. The jaw can be now further depressed, care being taken not to evert it nor rotate it outward, which would endanger the internal maxillary artery, and the External pterygoid muscle is torn through or divided. The capsular ligament is now opened in front and the lateral ligaments divided, and the jaw removed with a few final touches of the knife.

The antrum of Highmore occasionally requires tapping for suppuration. This may be done through the socket of a tooth, preferably the first molar, the fangs of which are most intimately connected with the antrum, or through the facial aspect of the bone above the alveolar process. This latter method does not perhaps afford such efficient drainage, but there is less chance of food finding its way into the cavity. The operation may be performed by incising the mucous membrane above the second molar tooth, and driving a trocar or any sharp-pointed instrument into the cavity.

THE HYOID OR LINGUAL BONE (OS HYOIDEUM).

The hyoid bone (Fig. 109) is named from its resemblance to the Greek upsilon; it is also called the *lingual bone*, because it supports the tongue and gives attachment to its numerous muscles. It is a bony arch, shaped like a horseshoe, and consisting of five segments: a **body**, two **greater cornua**, and two **lesser cornua**. It is suspended from the tip of the styloid processes of the temporal bone by ligamentous bands, the **stylo-hyoid ligaments**.

Body (*corpus ossei hyoidei*).—The body, or **basi-hyal**, forms the central part of the bone, and is of a quadrilateral form.

Surfaces.—Its *anterior surface* (Fig. 109), convex, directed forward and upward, is divided into two parts by a vertical ridge which descends along the median line and is crossed at right angles by a horizontal ridge, so that this surface is divided into four spaces or depressions. At the point of meeting of these two lines is a prominent elevation, the **tubercle**. The portion above the horizontal ridge is directed upward, and is sometimes described as the superior border. The anterior surface gives attachment to the Genio-hyoid in the greater part of its extent; above,

to the Genio-hyo-glossus; below, to the Mylo-hyoid, Stylo-hyoid, and aponeurosis of the Digastric (suprahyoid aponeurosis); and between these to part of the Hyo-glossus. The *posterior surface* is smooth, concave, directed backward and downward, and separated from the epiglottis by the thyro-hyoid membrane and by a quantity of loose areolar tissue. The *lateral surfaces* after middle life are joined to the greater cornua. In early life they are connected to the cornua by cartilaginous surfaces, and held together by ligaments, and occasionally a synovial membrane is found between them.

Borders.—The *superior border* is rounded, and gives attachment to the thyro-hyoid membrane, part of the Genio-hyo-glossi and Chondro-glossi muscles. The *inferior border* gives attachment, in front, to the Sterno-hyoid; behind, to the Omo-hyoid and to the part of the Thyro-hyoid at its junction with the great cornu. It also gives attachment to the Levatore glandulæ thyroideæ when this muscle is present.

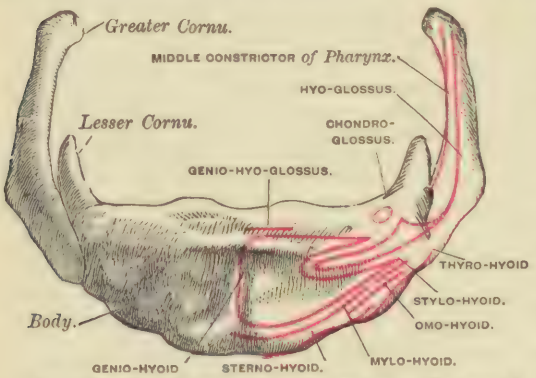


FIG. 109.—Hyoid bone. Anterior surface. (Enlarged.)

Greater Cornua (*cornua majora*).—The greater cornua or **thyro-hyals** project backward from the lateral surfaces of the body; they are flattened from above downward, diminish in size from before backward, and terminate posteriorly in a tubercle for the attachment of the lateral thyro-hyoid ligament. The outer surface gives attachment to the Hyo-glossus, their upper border to the Middle constrictor of the pharynx, their lower border to part of the Thyro-hyoid muscle.

Lesser Cornua (*cornua minora*).—The lesser cornua, or **cerato-hyals**, are two small, conical-shaped eminences attached by their bases to the angles of junction between the body and greater cornua, and giving attachment by their apices to the stylo-hyoid ligaments.[1] The smaller cornua are connected to the body of the bone by a distinct diarthrodial joint, which usually persists throughout life, but occasionally becomes ankylosed.

Development.—By *five* centres: one for the body, and one for each cornu. Ossification commences in the body about the eighth month, and in the greater cornua toward the end of fœtal life. Ossification of the lesser cornua commences some years after birth. Sometimes there are two centres for the body.

Attachment of Muscles.—Sterno-hyoid, Thyro-hyoid, Omo-hyoid, aponeurosis of the Digastric, Stylo-hyoid, Mylo-hyoid, Genio-hyoid, Genio-hyo-glossus, Chondro-glossus, Hyo-glossus, Middle constrictor of the pharynx, and occasionally a few fibres of the Inferior lingualis. It also gives attachment to the thyro-hyoidean membrane and the stylo-hyoid, thyro-hyoid, and hyo-epiglottic ligaments.

Surface Form.—The hyoid bone can be felt in the receding angle below the chin, and the finger can be carried along the whole length of the bone to the greater cornu, which is situated just below the angle of the jaw. This process of bone is best perceived by making pressure on one cornu, and so pushing the bone over to the opposite side, when the cornu of this side will be distinctly felt immediately beneath the skin. This process of bone is an important landmark in ligature of the lingual artery.

Surgical Anatomy.—The hyoid bone is occasionally *fractured*, generally from direct violence, as in the act of garroting or throttling. It is frequently found broken in those who have been hung. The great cornu is the part of the bone most frequently broken, but sometimes the fracture takes place through the body of the bone. In consequence of the muscles of the

[1] These ligaments in many animals are distinct bones, and in man are occasionally ossified to a certain extent.

tongue having important connections with this bone, there is great pain upon any attempt being made to move the tongue, as in speaking or swallowing.

THE THORAX.

The thorax, or **chest**, is an osseo-cartilaginous cage the cavity of which (*cavum thoracis*) contains and protects the principal organs of respiration and circulation. It is conical in shape, being narrow above and broad below, flattened from before backward, and longer behind than in front. It is somewhat reniform on transverse section.

Boundaries.—The *posterior surface* is formed by the twelve dorsal vertebræ and the posterior part of the ribs. It is concave from above downward, and presents on each side of the middle line a deep groove, the **vertebral groove**, in consequence of the direction backward and outward which the ribs take from their vertebral extremities to their angles. The *anterior surface* is flattened or slightly convex, and inclined forward from above downward. It is formed by the sternum and costal cartilages. The *lateral surfaces* are convex; they are formed by the ribs, separated from each other by spaces. Each space is called an **intercostal space** (*spatium intercostale*). These are eleven in number, and are occupied by the intercostal muscles.

The **superior** or **upper opening** or **aperture** of the thorax, the **inlet** (*apertura thoracis superior*), is reniform in shape, being broader from side to side than from before backward. It is formed by the first dorsal vertebra behind, the upper margin of the sternum in front, and the first rib on each side. It slopes downward and forward, so that the anterior part of the ring is on a lower level than the posterior. The antero-posterior diameter is about two inches, and the transverse about four. The **inferior** or **lower opening** (*apertura thoracis inferior*) is formed by the twelfth dorsal vertebra behind, by the twelfth rib at the sides, and in front by the cartilages of the eleventh, tenth, ninth, eighth, and seventh ribs, which ascend on either side and form an angle, the **subcostal angle** (*angulus infrasternalis*), from the apex of which the ensiform cartilage projects. It is wider transversely than from before backward. It slopes obliquely downward and backward, so that the cavity of the thorax is much deeper behind than in front. The Diaphragm closes in the opening forming the floor of the thorax.

In the female the thorax differs as follows from the male: 1. Its general capacity is less. 2. The sternum is shorter. 3. The upper margin of the sternum is on a level with the lower part of the body of the third dorsal vertebra, whereas in the male it is on a level with the lower part of the body of the second dorsal vertebra. 4. The upper ribs are more movable, and so allow a greater enlargement of the upper part of the thorax than in the male.

The Sternum or Breast Bone.

The sternum (*στέρνον*, the chest), or breast bone (Figs. 110, 111), is a flat, narrow bone, situated in the median line of the front of the chest, and consisting, in the adult, of three portions. It has been likened to an ancient sword; the upper piece, representing the handle, is termed the **manubrium sterni** (*presternum*); the middle and largest piece, which represents the chief part of the blade, is termed the **gladiolus** (*mesosternum* or *corpus sterni*); and the inferior piece, which is likened to the point of the sword, is termed the **ensiform** or **xiphoid process** or **appendix** (*processus xiphoideus* or *metasternum*). In early youth the sternum is composed of six pieces or **sternebræ**. In adult life the upper piece remains as the manubrium; the inferior piece remains as the xiphoid; and the other four pieces fuse together to form the gladiolus. In its

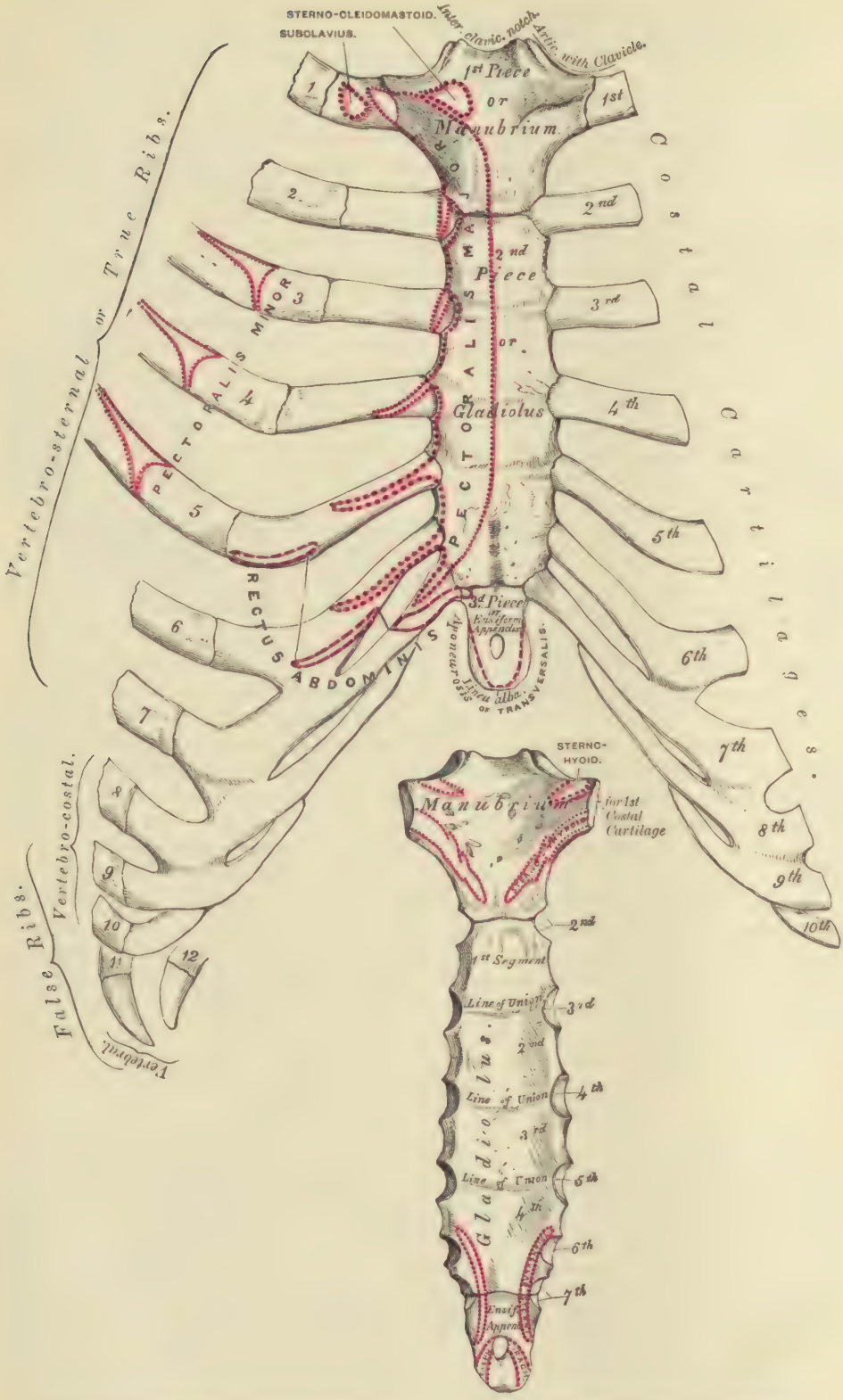


FIG. 110.—Sternum and costal cartilages.

FIG. 111.—Posterior surface of sternum.

natural position its inclination is oblique from above downward and forward. It is slightly convex in front, concave behind, broad above, becoming narrowed at the point where the first and second pieces are connected, after which it again widens a little, and is pointed at its extremity. Its average length in the adult is about seven inches, being rather longer in the male than in the female. At the junction of the manubrium and gladiolus is a distinct angle, the **angulus sterni** (*angle of Ludovic* or *angle of Louis*), the manubrium looking forward, the gladiolus also looking forward, but to a less degree. This angle is on a level with the second rib, and is produced by retraction of the upper portion of the thorax.

First Piece.—The first piece of the sternum, or the **manubrium sterni** (*presternum*), is of a somewhat triangular form, broad and thick above, narrow below at its junction with the middle piece.

Surfaces.—Its *anterior surface*, convex from side to side, concave from above downward, is smooth, and affords attachment on each side to the Pectoralis major and sternal origin of the Sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle. In well-marked bones the ridges limiting the attachment of these muscles are very distinct. Its *posterior surface*, concave and smooth, affords attachment on each side to the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles.

Borders.—The *superior border*, the thickest, presents at its centre the **pre-sternal notch** (*incisura jugularis*), and on each side an oval articular surface, the **clavicular facet** (*incisura clavicularis*), directed upward, backward, and outward, for articulation with the sternal end of the clavicle. The *inferior border* presents an oval, rough surface, covered in the recent state with a thin layer of cartilage, for articulation with the second portion of the bone (*synchondrosis sternalis*). The junction of the manubrium with the gladiolus is marked by a transverse ridge, which corresponds to the attachment on each side of the cartilage of the second rib. The *lateral borders* are marked above by a depression (*incisura costalis I*) for the first costal cartilage, and below by a small facet, which, with a similar facet on the upper angle of the middle portion of the bone, forms a notch (*incisura costalis II*) for the reception of the costal cartilage of the second rib. These articular surfaces are separated by a narrow, curved edge, which slopes from above downward and inward.

Second Piece.—The second piece of the sternum, the *corpus sterni* or **gladiolus** (*mesosternum*), considerably longer, narrower, and thinner than the first piece, is broader below than above.

Surfaces.—Its *anterior surface* (*planum sternale*) is nearly flat, directed upward and forward, and marked by three transverse lines which cross the bone opposite the third, fourth, and fifth articular depressions. These lines are produced by the union of the four separate pieces of which this part of the bone consists at an early period of life. At the junction of the third and fourth pieces is occasionally seen an orifice, the **sternal foramen**; it varies in size and form in different individuals, and pierces the bone from before backward. This surface affords attachment on each side to the sternal origin of the Pectoralis major. The *posterior surface*, slightly concave, is also marked by three transverse lines, but they are less distinct than those in front: this surface affords attachment below, on each side, to the Triangularis sterni muscle, and occasionally presents the posterior opening of the sternal foramen.

Borders.—The *superior border* presents an oval surface for articulation with the manubrium. The *inferior border* is narrow, and articulates with the ensiform appendix. Each *lateral border* presents, at each superior angle, a small facet, which, with a similar facet on the manubrium, forms a cavity for the cartilage of the second rib; the four succeeding angular depressions receive the cartilages of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth ribs; whilst each inferior angle presents a small

facet, which, with a corresponding one on the ensiform appendix, forms a notch for the cartilage of the seventh rib. These articular depressions are known as *incisuræ costales*. They are separated by a series of curved interarticular intervals, which diminish in length from above downward, and correspond to the intercostal spaces. Most of the cartilages belonging to the true ribs, as will be seen from the foregoing description, articulate with the sternum at the line of junction of two of its primitive component segments. This is well seen in many of the lower animals, where the separate parts of the bone remain ununited longer than in man. In this respect a striking analogy exists between the mode of connection of the ribs with the vertebral column and the connection of the costal cartilages with the sternum.

Third Piece.—The third piece of the sternum, the **ensiform** or **xiphoid appendix** (*processus xiphoideus* or *metasternum*), is the smallest of the three; it is thin and elongated in form, cartilaginous in structure in youth, but more or less ossified at its upper part in the adult.

Surfaces.—Its *anterior surface* affords attachment to the chondro-xiphoid ligament; its *posterior surface*, to some of the fibres of the Diaphragm and Triangularis sterni muscles; its *lateral borders*, to the aponeurosis of the abdominal muscles. Above it articulates with the lower end of the gladiolus, and at each superior angle presents a facet (*incisura costalis VII*), for the lower half of the cartilage of the seventh rib; below, by its pointed extremity, it gives attachment to the linea alba. This portion of the sternum is very various in appearance, being sometimes pointed, broad, and thin, sometimes bifid or perforated by a round hole, occasionally curved or deflected considerably to one or the other side.

Structure.—The bone is composed of delicate cancellous structure, covered by a thin layer of compact tissue, which is thickest in the manubrium between the articular facets for the clavicles.

Development.—The cartilaginous sternum originally consists of two bars, situated one on either side of the mesial plane and connected with the rib cartilages of its own side. These two bars fuse with each other along the middle line, and the bone, including the ensiform appendix, is developed by six centres: one for the first piece or manubrium, four for the second piece or gladiolus, and one for the ensiform appendix. Up to the middle of fœtal life the sternum is entirely car-

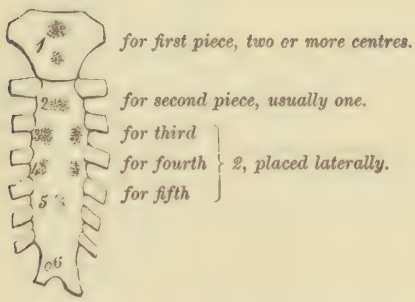


Fig. 112.—Development of the sternum by six centres. Time of appearance.

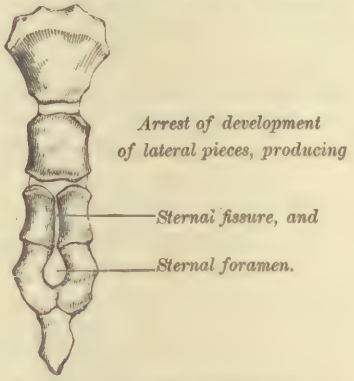


Fig. 113.—Time of union of sternum.

tilaginous, and when ossification takes place the ossific granules are deposited in the middle of the intervals between the articular depressions for the costal cartilages, in the following order (Fig. 112): In the first piece, between the fifth and sixth months; in the second and third, between the sixth and seventh months; in the fourth piece, at the ninth month; in the fifth, within the first year or between the first and second years after birth; and in the ensiform appendix, between the

second and the seventeenth or eighteenth years, by a single centre which makes its appearance at the upper part and proceeds gradually downward. To these may be added the occasional existence, as described by Breschet, of two small episternal centres, which make their appearance one on each side of the pre-sternal notch. They are probably vestiges of the episternal bone of the monotremata and lizards. It occasionally happens that some of the segments are formed from more than one centre, the number and position of which vary (Fig. 114). Thus, the first piece may have two, three, or even six centres. When two are present, they are generaly situated one above the other, the upper one being the larger;[1] the second piece has seldom more than one; the third, fourth, and fifth pieces are often formed from two centres placed laterally, the irregular union of which will serve to explain the occasional occurrence of the sternal foramen (Fig. 113),

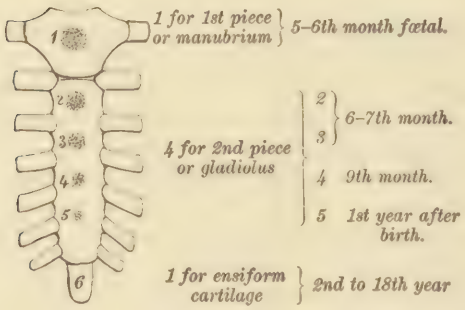


Fig. 114.—Peculiarities in number of centres of sternum.

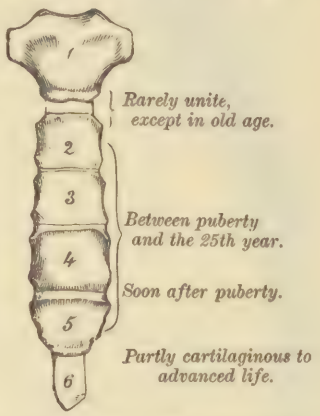


Fig. 115.—Peculiarities in mode of union of sternum.

or of the vertical fissure which occasionally intersects this part of the bone (Fig. 113), and which is further explained by the manner in which the cartilaginous matrix, in which ossification takes place, is formed. Union of the various centres of the gladiolus commences about puberty, from below, and proceeds upward, so that by the age of twenty-five they are all united, and this portion of bone consists of one piece. The ensiform cartilage becomes joined to the gladiolus about forty. The manubrium is occasionally but seldom joined to the gladiolus in advanced life by bone. When this union takes place, however, it is generally only superficial, a portion of the centre of the sutural cartilage remaining unossified.

Articulations.—With the clavicles and seven costal cartilages on each side.

Attachment of Muscles.—To nine pairs and one single muscle: the Pectoralis major, Sterno-cleido-mastoid, Sterno-hyoid, Sterno-thyroid, Triangularis sterni, aponeuroses of the Obliquus externus, Obliquus internus, Transversalis, Rectus muscles, and Diaphragm.

The Ribs (Costæ).

The ribs are elastic arches of bone, which form the chief part of the thoracic walls. They are twelve in number on each side; but this number may be increased by the development of a cervical or lumbar rib, or may be diminished to eleven. The first seven are connected behind with the spine and in front with the sternum, through the intervention of the costal cartilages; they are called **true, sternal,** or **vertebro-sternal ribs** (*costæ veræ*).[2] The remaining five are **false ribs** (*costæ*

[1] Sir George Humphry states that this is "probably the more complete condition."

[2] Sometimes the eighth rib cartilage articulates with the sternum; this condition occurs more frequently on the right than on the left side.

spuriæ); of these, the first three have their cartilages attached to the cartilage of the rib above, and are called the **vertebro-chondral ribs**; the last two are free at their anterior extremities; they are termed **floating** or **vertebral ribs.** The ribs vary in their direction, the upper ones being less oblique than the lower. The extent of obliquity reaches its maximum at the ninth rib, and gradually decreases from that rib to the twelfth. The ribs are situated one below the other in such a manner that spaces are left between them. Each space is called an **intercostal space** (*spatium intercostale*). The length of these spaces corresponds to the length of the ribs and their cartilages; their breadth is greater in front than behind, and between the upper than between the lower ribs. The ribs increase in length from the first to the seventh, when they again diminish to the twelfth. In breadth they decrease from above downward; in the upper ten the greatest breadth is at the sternal extremity.

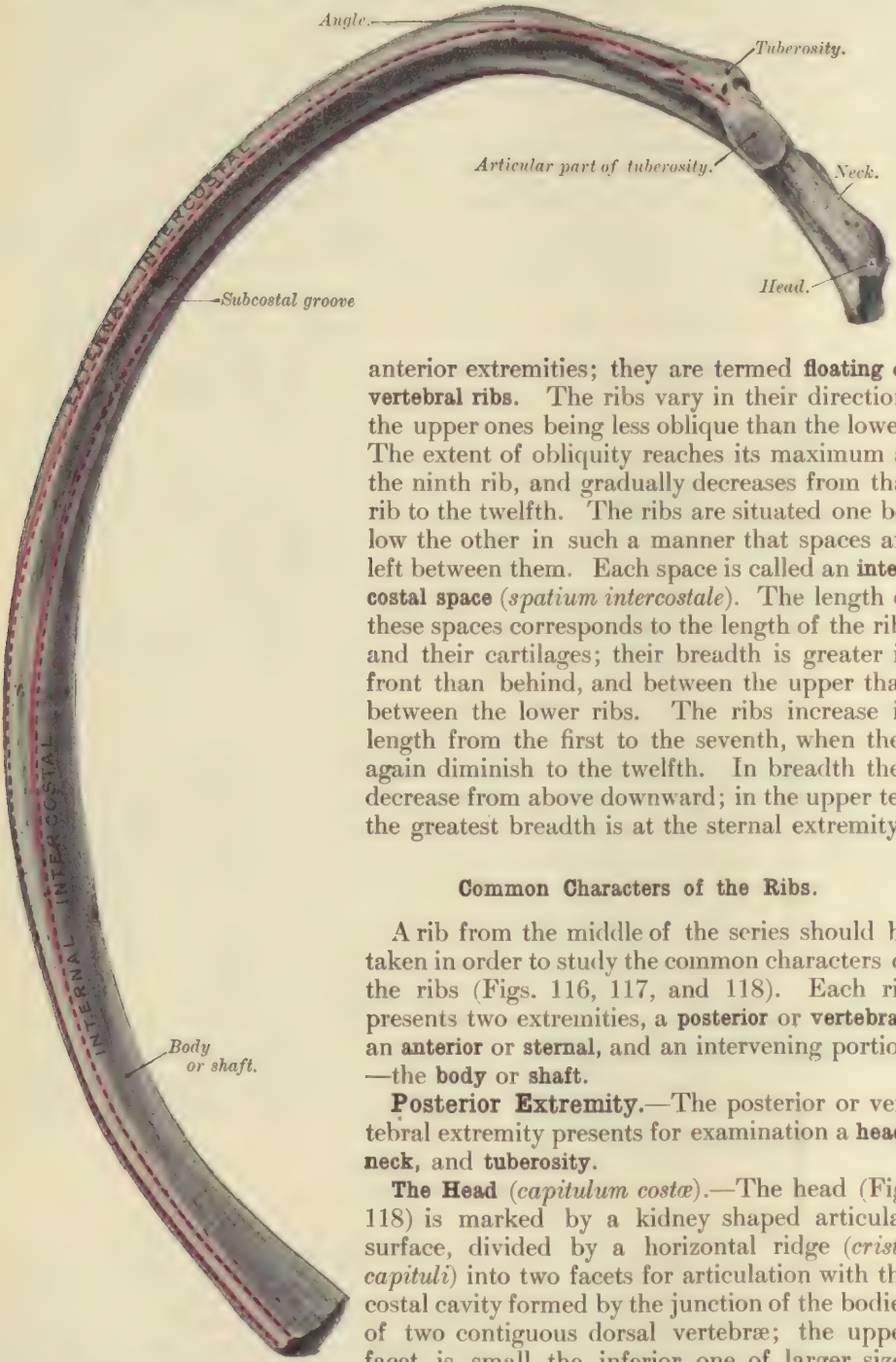


FIG. 116.—A central rib of right side.

Common Characters of the Ribs.

A rib from the middle of the series should be taken in order to study the common characters of the ribs (Figs. 116, 117, and 118). Each rib presents two extremities, a **posterior** or **vertebral,** an **anterior** or **sternal,** and an intervening portion —the **body** or **shaft.**

Posterior Extremity.—The posterior or vertebral extremity presents for examination a **head, neck,** and **tuberosity.**

The Head (*capitulum costæ*).—The head (Fig. 118) is marked by a kidney shaped articular surface, divided by a horizontal ridge (*crista capituli*) into two facets for articulation with the costal cavity formed by the junction of the bodies of two contiguous dorsal vertebræ; the upper facet is small, the inferior one of larger size; the ridge separating them serves for the attachment of the interarticular ligament.

The Neck (*collum costæ*).—The neck is that flattened portion of the rib which extends outward from the head; it is about an inch long, and is placed in front

of the transverse process of the lower of the two vertebræ with which the head articulates. Its *anterior surface* is flat and smooth, its *posterior surface* is rough for the attachment of the middle costo-transverse ligament, and is perforated by numerous foramina, the direction of which is less constant than those found on the inner surface of the shaft. Of its two borders the *superior border* presents a rough crest (*crista colli costæ*) for the attachment of the anterior costo-transverse ligament; its *inferior border* is rounded. On the posterior surface of the neck, just where it joins the shaft, and nearer the lower than the upper border, is an eminence —the **tuberosity**, or **tubercle**.

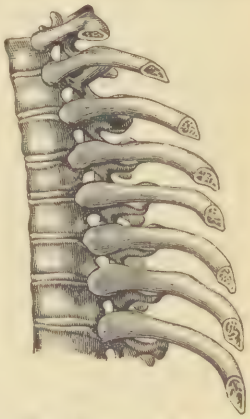


Fig. 117.—Ribs and articulations of the vertebræ. (Sappey.)

Tuberosity (*tuberculum costæ*).—The tuberosity, or tubercle, consists of an articular and a non-articular portion. The **articular portion** (*facies articularis tuberculi costæ*), the more internal and inferior of the two, presents a small, oval surface for articulation with the extremity of the transverse process of the lower of the two vertebræ to which the head is connected. The **non-articular portion** is a rough elevation, which affords attachment to the posterior costo-transverse ligament. The tubercle is much more prominent in the upper than in the lower ribs.

Anterior Extremity.—The anterior or sternal extremity is flattened, and presents a porous, oval, concave depression, into which the costal cartilage is received.

The Shaft (*corpus costæ*).—The shaft is thin and flat, so as to present two surfaces, an external and an internal, and two borders, a superior and an inferior.

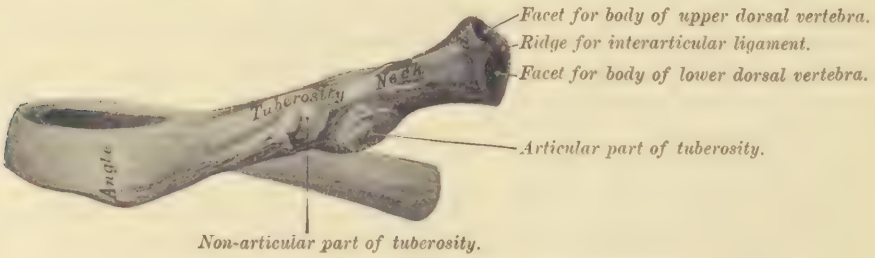


Fig. 118.—Vertebral extremity of a rib. External surface.

Surfaces.—The *external surface* is convex, smooth and marked at its back part, a little in front of the tuberosity, by a prominent line, directed obliquely from above downward and outward; this gives attachment to a tendon of the Ilio-costalis muscle or of one of its accessory portions, and is called the **angle** (*angulus costæ*). At this point the rib is bent in two directions. If the rib is laid upon its lower border, it will be seen that the portion of the shaft in front of the angle rests upon this border, while the portion of the shaft behind the angle is bent inward and at the same time tilted upward. The interval between the angle and the tuberosity increases gradually from the second to the tenth rib. The portion of bone between these two parts is rounded, rough, and irregular, and serves for the attachment of the Longissimus dorsi muscle. The portion of bone between the tubercle and sternal extremity is also slightly twisted upon its own axis, the external surface looking downward behind the angle, a little upward in front of it. This surface presents, toward its sternal extremity, an oblique line, the **anterior angle**. The *internal surface* is concave, smooth, directed a little upward behind the angle, a little downward in front of it. This surface is marked by a ridge which com-

mences at the lower extremity of the head; it is strongly marked as far as the inner side of the angle, and gradually becomes lost at the junction of the anterior with the middle third of the bone. The interval between it and the inferior border presents a groove, **subcostal groove** (*sulcus costæ*), for the intercostal vessels and nerve. At the back part of the bone this groove belongs to the inferior border, but just in front of the angle, where it is deepest and broadest, it corresponds to the internal surface. The superior edge of the groove is rounded; it serves for the attachment of the Internal intercostal muscle. The inferior edge corresponds to the lower margin of the rib and gives attachment to the External intercostal muscle. Within the groove are seen the orifices of numerous small foramina which traverse the wall of the shaft obliquely from before backward.

Borders.—The *superior border*, thick and rounded, is marked by an external and an internal lip, more distinct behind than in front; they serve for the attachment of the External and Internal intercostal muscles. The *inferior border*, thin and sharp, has attached to it the External intercostal muscle.

Peculiar Ribs.

The ribs which require especial consideration are five in number—viz., the **first, second, tenth, eleventh,** and **twelfth.**

First Rib.—The first rib (Fig. 119) is the shortest and the most curved of all the ribs; it is broad and flat, its surface looking upward and downward, and its borders inward and outward. The *head* is of small size, rounded, and presents only a single articular facet for articulation with the body of the first dorsal vertebra. The *neck* is narrow and rounded. The *tuberosity*, thick and prominent, rests on the outer border. There is no angle, but in this situation the rib is slightly bent, with the convexity of the bend upward, so that the head of the bone is directed downward. The *upper surface* of the shaft is marked by two shallow depressions, separated by a small rough surface (*tuberculum scaleni*) for the attachment of the Scalenus anticus muscle—the shallow groove in front of it transmitting the subclavian vein, the deeper groove behind it (*sulcus subclaviæ*) the subclavian artery. Between the groove for the subclavian artery and the tuberosity is a rough surface, for the attachment of the Scalenus medius muscle. The *under surface* is smooth, and destitute of the groove observed on the other ribs. The *outer border* is convex, thick, and rounded, and at its posterior part gives attachment to the first serration of the Serratus magnus; the *inner* is concave, thin, and sharp, and marked about its centre by the commencement of the rough surface for the Scalenus anticus. The *anterior extremity* is larger and thicker than any of the other ribs.

Second Rib.—The second rib (Fig. 120) is much longer than the first, but bears a very considerable resemblance to it in the direction of its curvature. The non-articular portion of the tuberosity is occasionally only slightly marked. The *angle* is slight and situated close to the tuberosity, and the *shaft* is not twisted, so that both ends touch any plane surface upon which it may be laid; but there is a similar though slighter bend, with its convexity upward, to that found in the first rib. The shaft is not horizontal, like that of the first rib, its *outer surface*, which is convex, looking upward and a little outward. It presents, near the middle, a rough eminence, **tuberositas costæ II,** for the attachment of the second and third digitations of the Serratus magnus; behind and above which is attached the Scalenus posticus. The *inner surface*, smooth and concave, is directed downward and a little inward; it presents a short groove toward its posterior part.

Tenth Rib.—The tenth rib (Fig. 121) has only a single articular facet on its head.

Eleventh and Twelfth Ribs.—The eleventh and twelfth ribs (Figs. 122 and 123) have each a single articular facet on the head, which is of rather large size;

they have no neck or tuberosity, and are pointed at the extremity. The eleventh has a slight angle and a shallow groove on the lower border. The twelfth has neither, and is much shorter than the eleventh, and the head has a slight inclination downward. Sometimes the twelfth rib is even shorter than the first.

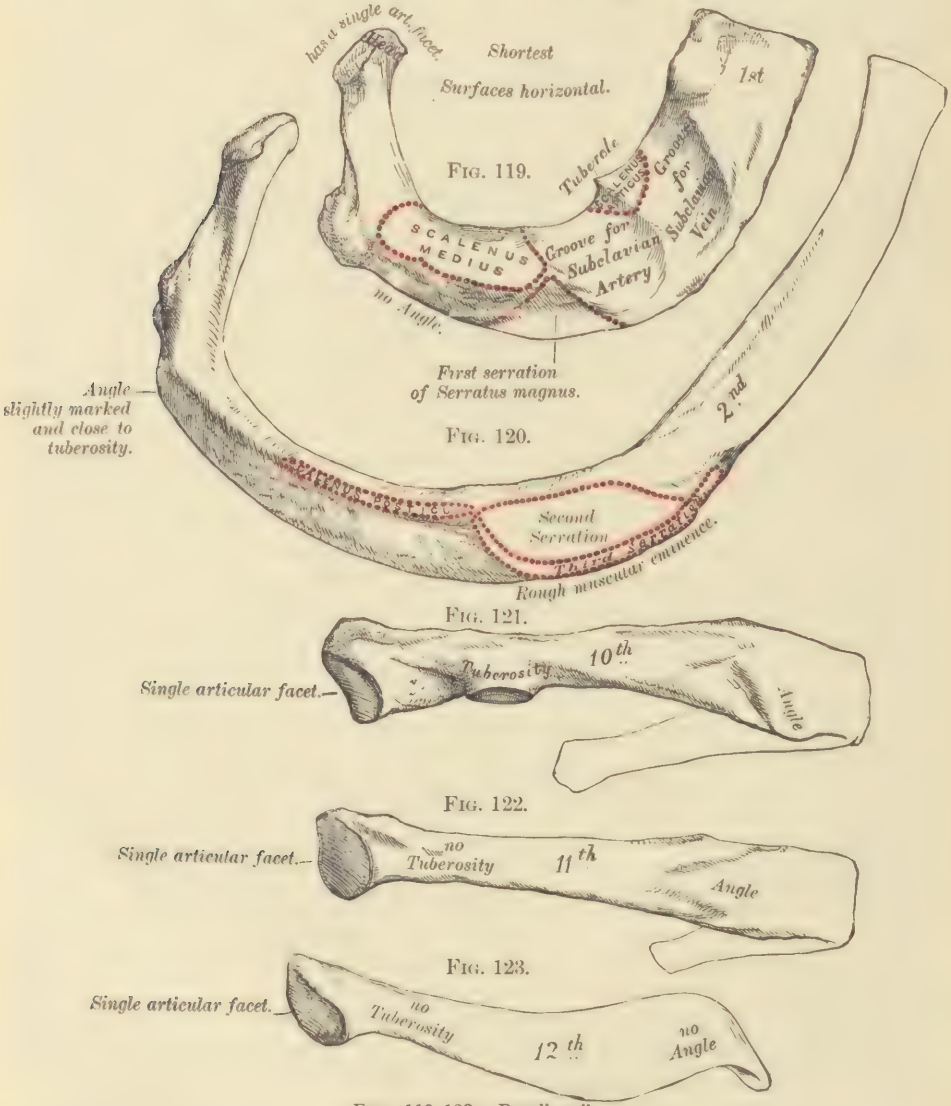


Fig. 119.

Fig. 120.

Fig. 121.

Fig. 122.

Fig. 123.

Figs. 119–123.—Peculiar ribs.

Structure.—The ribs consist of cancellous tissue enclosed in a thin, compact layer.

Development.—Each rib, with the exception of the last two, is developed by three centres: one for the shaft, one for the head, and one for the tubercle. The last two have only two centres, that for the tubercle being wanting. Ossification commences in the shaft of the ribs at a very early period, before its appearance in the vertebræ. The epiphysis of the head, which is of slightly angular shape, and that for the tubercle, of a lenticular form, make their appearance between the sixteenth and twentieth years, and are not united to the rest of the bone until about the twenty-fifth year.

Attachment of Muscles.—To nineteen: The Internal and External intercostals, Scalenus anticus, Scalenus medius, Scalenus posticus, Pectoralis minor, Serratus magnus, Obliquus externus, Quadratus lumborum, Diaphragm, Latissimus dorsi, Serratus posticus superior, Serratus posticus inferior, Ilio-costalis, Musculus accessorius ad ilio-costalem, Longissimus dorsi, Cervicalis ascendens, Levatores costarum, and Infracostales.

The Costal Cartilages.

The costal cartilage (*cartilago costalis*) (Fig. 110) is white, hyaline cartilage. The cartilages serve to prolong the ribs forward to the front of the chest, and they contribute very materially to the elasticity of its walls. The first seven are connected with the sternum, the next three with the lower border of the cartilage of the preceding rib. The cartilages of the last two ribs have pointed extremities, which terminate in free ends in the walls of the abdomen. Like the ribs, the costal cartilages vary in their length, breadth, and direction. They increase in length from the first to the seventh, then gradually diminish to the last. They diminish in breadth, as well as the intervals between them, from the first to the last. They are broad at their attachment to the ribs, and taper toward their sternal extremities, excepting the first two, which are of the same breadth throughout, and the sixth, seventh, and eighth, which are enlarged where their margins are in contact. In direction they also vary: the first descends a little, the second is horizontal, the third ascends slightly, while all the rest follow the course of the ribs for a short extent, and then ascend to the sternum or preceding cartilage. Each costal cartilage presents two surfaces, two borders, and two extremities.

Surfaces.—The *anterior surface* is convex, and looks forward and upward: that of the first gives attachment to the costo-clavicular ligament and the Subclavius muscle; that of the second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth, at their sternal ends, to the Pectoralis major.[1] The others are covered by, and give partial attachment to, some of the great flat muscles of the abdomen. The *posterior surface* is concave, and directed backward and downward, the first giving attachment to the Sterno-thyroid, the third to the sixth inclusive to the Triangularis sterni, and the six or seven inferior ones to the Transversalis muscle and the Diaphragm.

Borders.—Of the two borders, the *superior border* is concave, the *inferior* convex; they afford attachment to the internal Intercostal muscles, the upper border of the sixth giving attachment to the Pectoralis major muscle. The contiguous borders of the sixth, seventh, and eighth, and sometimes the ninth and tenth, costal cartilages present small, smooth, oblong-shaped facets at the points where they articulate.

Extremities.—Of the two extremities, the *outer extremity* is continuous with the osseous tissue of the rib to which it belongs. The *inner extremity* of the first is continuous with the sternum; the six succeeding ones have rounded extremities, which are received into shallow concavities on the lateral margins of the sternum. The inner extremities of the eighth, ninth, and tenth costal cartilages are pointed, and are connected with the cartilage above. Those of the eleventh and twelfth are free and pointed.

The costal cartilages are most elastic in youth, those of the false ribs being more so than the true. In old age they become of a deep yellow color, and are prone to calcify.

Attachment of Muscles.—To nine: the Subclavius, Sterno-thyroid, Pectoralis major, Internal oblique, Transversalis, Rectus, Diaphragm, Triangularis sterni, and Internal intercostals.

[1] The first and seventh also, occasionally, give origin to the same muscle.

Surface Form.—The bones of the chest are to a very considerable extent covered by muscles, so that in the strongly developed muscular subject they are for the most part concealed. In the emaciated subject, on the other hand, the ribs, especially in the lower and lateral region, stand out as prominent ridges with the sunken, intercostal spaces between them.

In the middle line, in front, the superficial surface of the sternum is to be felt throughout its entire length, at the bottom of a deep median furrow situated between the two great pectoral muscles and called the **sternal furrow.** These muscles overlap the anterior surface somewhat, so that the whole of the sternum in its entire width is not subcutaneous; and this overlapping is greater opposite the centre of the bone than above and below, so that the furrow is wider at its upper and lower parts, but narrower in the middle. The centre of the upper border of the sternum is visible, constituting the **pre-sternal notch,** but the lateral parts of this border are obscured by the tendinous origins of the Sterno-mastoid muscles, which present themselves as oblique tendinous cords, which narrow and deepen the notch. Lower down on the subcutaneous surface a well-defined transverse ridge, the **angle of Ludovic,** is always to be felt. This denotes the line of junction of the manubrium and body of the bone, and is a useful guide to the second costal cartilage, and thus to the identity of any given rib. The second rib being found through its costal cartilage, it is easy to count downward and find any other. From the middle of the sternum the furrow spreads out, and, exposing more of the surface of the body of the bone, terminates below in a sudden depression, the **infrasternal depression** or **pit of the stomach** (*scrobiculus cordis*), which corresponds to the ensiform cartilage. This depression lies between the cartilages of the seventh ribs, and in it the ensiform cartilage may be felt. The sternum in its vertical diameter presents a general convexity forward, the most prominent point of which is at the joint between the manubrium and gladiolus.

On each side of the sternum the costal cartilages and ribs on the front of the chest are partially obscured by the great pectoral muscles; through which, however, they are to be felt as ridges, with yielding intervals between them, corresponding to the intercostal spaces. Of these spaces, the one between the second and third ribs is the widest, the next two somewhat narrower, and the remainder, with the exception of the last two, comparatively narrow.

The lower border of the Pectoralis major muscle corresponds to the fifth rib, and below this, on the front of the chest, the broad, flat outline of the ribs, as they begin to ascend, and the more rounded outline of the costal cartilages, are often visible. The lower boundary of the front of the thorax, the **abdomino-thoracic arch,** which is most plainly seen by arching the body backward, is formed by the ensiform cartilage and the cartilages of the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth ribs, and the extremities of the eleventh and twelfth ribs or their cartilages.

On each side of the chest, from the axilla downward, the flattened external surfaces of the ribs may be defined in the form of oblique ridges, separated by depressions corresponding to the intercostal spaces. They are, however, covered by muscles, which obscure their outline to a certain extent in the strongly developed. Nevertheless, the ribs, with the exception of the first, can generally be followed over the front and sides of the chest without difficulty. The first rib, being almost completely covered by the clavicle and scapula, can only be distinguished in a small portion of its extent. At the back the angles of the ribs form a slightly-marked oblique line on each side of and some distance from the vertebral spines. This line diverges somewhat as it descends, and external to it is a broad, convex surface caused by the projection of the ribs beyond their angles. Over this surface, except where covered by the scapula, the individual ribs can be distinguished.

Surgical Anatomy.—*Malformations of the sternum* present nothing of surgical importance beyond the fact that abscesses of the mediastinum may sometimes escape through the sternal foramen. *Fractures of the sternum* are by no means common, owing, no doubt, to the elasticity of the ribs and their cartilages, which support it like so many springs. When broken it is frequently associated with fracture of the spine, and may be caused by forcibly bending the body either backward or forward until the chin becomes impacted against the top of the sternum. It may also be fractured by direct violence or by muscular action. The fracture usually occurs in the upper half of the body of the bone. *Dislocation* of the gladiolus from the manubrium also takes place, and is sometimes described as a fracture.

The bone, cancellous in structure and being subcutaneous, is frequently the seat of *gummatous tumors*, and not uncommonly is affected with *caries*. Occasionally the bone, and especially its ensiform appendix, becomes altered in shape and driven inward by the pressure, in workmen, of tools against the chest.

The *ribs* are frequently *broken*, though from their connections and shape they are able to withstand great force, yielding under the injury and recovering themselves like a spring. The middle of the series are the ones most liable to fracture. The first, and to a less extent the second, being protected by the clavicle, are rarely fractured; and the eleventh and twelfth, on account of their loose and floating condition, enjoy a like immunity. The fracture generally occurs from indirect violence, from forcible compression of the chest-wall, and the bone then gives way at its weakest part—*i. e.*, just in front of the angle. But the ribs may also be broken by direct violence, when the bone gives away and is driven inward at the point struck, or they

may be broken by muscular action. It seems probable, however, that in the latter case the bone has undergone some atrophic changes. Fracture of the ribs is frequently complicated with some injury to the viscera contained within the thorax or upper part of the abdominal cavity, and this is most likely to occur in fractures from direct violence.

Fracture of the costal cartilages may also take place, though it is a comparatively rare injury.

The thorax is frequently found to be altered in shape in certain diseases.

The shape of the *rickety* thorax is produced chiefly by atmospheric pressure. The balance between the air on the inside of the chest and the outside during some stage of respiration is not equal, the preponderance being in favor of the air outside; and this, acting on the softened ribs, causes them to be forced in at the junction of the cartilages with the bones, which is the weakest part. In consequence of this the sternum projects forward, with a deep depression on either side caused by the sinking in of the softened ribs. The depression is less on the left side, on account of the ribs being supported by the heart. The condition is known as *pigeon-breast*. The lower ribs, however, are not involved in this deformity, as they are prevented from falling in by the presence of the stomach, liver, and spleen. And when the liver and spleen are enlarged, as they sometimes are in rickets, the lower ribs may be pushed outward: this causes a transverse constriction just above the costal arch. The anterior extremities of the ribs are usually enlarged in rickets, giving rise to what has been termed the *rickety rosary*. The *phthisical chest* is often long and narrow, flattened from before backward, and with great obliquity of the ribs and projection of the scapulæ. In *pulmonary emphysema* the chest is enlarged in all its diameters, and presents on section an almost circular outline. It has received the name of the *barrel-shaped chest*. In severe cases of *lateral curvature of the spine* the thorax becomes much distorted. In consequence of the rotation of the bodies of the vertebræ which takes place in this disease the ribs opposite the convexity of the dorsal curve become extremely convex behind, being thrown out and bulging, and at the same time flattened in front, so that the two ends of the same rib are almost parallel. Coincident with this, the ribs on the opposite side, on the concavity of the curve, are sunk and depressed behind and bulging and convex in front. In addition to this the ribs become occasionally welded together by bony material.

The ribs are frequently the seat of *caries* leading to abscesses and sinuses, which may burrow to a considerable extent over the wall of the chest. The only special anatomical point in connection with abscesses and sinuses is that care must be taken in dealing with them that the intercostal space is not punctured and the pleural cavity opened or the intercostal vessels wounded, as the necrosed portion of bone is generally situated on the internal surface of the rib.

In cases of *empyema* the chest requires opening to evacuate the pus. There is considerable difference of opinion as to the best position to do this. Probably the best place for intercostal drainage is between the fifth and sixth ribs, in or a little in front of the mid-axillary line. This is the last part of the cavity to be closed by the expansion of the lung; it is not thickly covered by soft parts; the space between the two ribs is sufficiently great to allow of the introduction of a fair-sized drainage-tube, and when the patient is confined to bed he does not lie upon the drainage-tube as he does when the opening is posterior. Better than intercostal drainage in the vast majority of cases is rib resection and drainage. A portion of the fifth or sixth rib should be removed in the mid-axillary line. In *chronic empyema* the lung becomes shrunken and adherent and simple drainage will not bring about a cure. It is necessary in such cases to do an operation that will permit of collapse of the chest wall. *Estlander's operation* consists in resecting a portion of every rib which overlies the cavity of the empyema. *Schede's operation* consists in removing ribs from the second rib down over the empyema cavity. The ribs are removed from cartilages to angles, and intercostal muscles and the parietal layer of the pleura are also taken away. Fowler and de Lorme not only practice extensive rib resection and remove the parietal layer of the pleura, but also remove the pulmonary pleura (*total pleurectomy* or *pulmonary decortication*).

THE EXTREMITIES.

The extremities, or limbs, are those long, jointed appendages of the body which are connected with the trunk by one end and free in the rest of their extent. They are *four* in number: an **upper** or **thoracic pair**, connected with the thorax through the intervention of the shoulder, and subservient mainly to prehension; and a **lower pair**, connected with the pelvis, intended for support and locomotion. Both pairs of limbs are constructed after one common type, so that they present numerous analogies, while at the same time certain differences are observed between the upper and lower pair, dependent on the peculiar offices they have to perform.

The bones by which the upper and lower limbs are attached to the trunk are named respectively the **shoulder** and **pelvic girdles**, and they are constructed on the same general type, though presenting certain modifications relating to the different uses to which the upper and lower limbs are respectively applied. The shoulder girdle is formed by the **scapulæ** and **clavicles**, and is imperfect in front and behind. In front, however, the girdle is completed by the upper end of the sternum, with which the inner extremities of the clavicle articulate. Behind, the girdle is widely imperfect and the scapula is connected to the trunk by muscles only. The pelvic girdle is formed by the **innominate bones**, and is completed in front through the symphysis pubis, at which the two innominate bones articulate with each other. It is imperfect behind, but the intervening gap is filled in by the upper part of the sacrum. The pelvic girdle, therefore, presents, with the sacrum, a complete ring, comparatively fixed, and presenting an arched form which confers upon it a solidity manifestly intended for the support of the trunk, and in marked contrast to the lightness and mobility of the shoulder girdle.

With regard to the morphology of these girdles, the blade of the scapula is generally believed to correspond to the ilium; but with regard to the clavicles there is some difference of opinion: formerly it was believed that they corresponded to the ossa pubis, meeting at the symphysis, but it is now generally taught that the clavicle has no homologue in the pelvic girdle, and that the os pubis and ischium are represented by the small coracoid process in man and most mammals.

THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The bones of the upper extremity consist of those of the **shoulder girdle**, of the **arm**, the **forearm**, and the **hand**.

THE SHOULDER GIRDLE.

The shoulder girdle consists of the **clavicle** and the **scapula**.

The Clavicle or Collar Bone (Clavicula).

The clavicle or **key bone** (*clavis*, a key) obtains it name from its supposed resemblance to the key used by the Romans. It forms the anterior portion of the shoulder girdle. It is a long bone, curved somewhat like the italic letter *f*, and placed nearly horizontally at the upper and anterior part of the thorax, immediately above the first rib. It articulates by its inner extremity with the upper border of the sternum, and by its outer extremity with the acromion process of the scapula, serving to sustain the upper extremity in the various positions which it assumes, whilst at the same time it allows of great latitude of motion in the arm.[1] It presents a double curvature when looked at in front, the convexity being forward at the sternal end and the concavity at the scapular end. Its outer third is flattened from above downward, and extends, in the natural position of the bone, from a point opposite the coracoid process to the acromion. Its inner two-thirds are of a prismatic form, and extend from the sternum to a point opposite the coracoid process of the scapula.

Outer, External, or Flattened Portion.—The *outer third* is flattened from above downward, so as to present two surfaces, an upper and a lower; and two borders, an anterior and a posterior.

[1] The clavicle acts especially as a fulcrum to enable the muscles to give lateral motion to the arm. It is accordingly absent in those animals whose fore limbs are used only for progression, but is present for the most part in those animals whose anterior extremities are clawed and used for prehension, though in some of them—as, for instance, in a large number of the carnivora—it is merely a rudimentary bone suspended among the muscles, and not articulating with the scapula or sternum.

Surfaces.—The *upper surface* is flattened, rough, marked by impressions for the attachment of the Deltoid in front and the Trapezius behind; between these two impressions, externally, a small portion of the bone is subcutaneous. The *under surface* is flattened. At its posterior border, a little external to the point where the prismatic joins with the flattened portion, is a rough eminence, the **conoid tubercle** (*tuberositas coracoidea*); this, in the natural position of the bone, surmounts the coracoid process of the scapula and gives attachments to the conoid ligament. From this tubercle an oblique line, occasionally a depression, passes forward and outward to near the outer end of the anterior border; it is called the **oblique line** or **trapezoid ridge**, and affords attachment to the trapezoid ligament.

Borders.—The *anterior border* is concave, thin, and rough, and gives attachment to the Deltoid; it occasionally presents, at its inner end, at the commencement of the deltoid impression, a tubercle, the **deltoid tubercle**, which is sometimes to be felt in the living subject. The *posterior border* is convex, rough, broader than the anterior, and gives attachment to the Trapezius.

Inner, Internal, or Prismatic Portion.—The prismatic portion forms the *inner two-thirds* of the bone. It is curved so as to be convex in front, concave behind, and is marked by three borders, separating three surfaces.

Borders.—The *anterior border* is continuous with the anterior margin of the flat portion. At its commencement it is smooth, and corresponds to the interval between the attachment of the Pectoralis major and Deltoid muscles; at the inner half of the clavicle it forms the lower boundary of an elliptical space for the attachment of the clavicular portion of the Pectoralis major, and approaches the posterior border of the bone. The *superior border* is continuous with the posterior margin of the flat portion, and separates the anterior from the posterior surface. At its commencement it is smooth and rounded, becomes rough toward the inner third for the attachment of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, and terminates at the upper angle of the sternal extremity. The *posterior* or *subclavian border* separates the posterior from the inferior surface, and extends from the conoid tubercle to the rhomboid impression. It forms the posterior boundary of the groove for the Subclavius muscle, and gives attachment to a layer of cervical fascia covering the Omo-hyoid muscle.

Surfaces.—The *anterior surface* is included between the superior and anterior borders. It is directed forward and a little upward at the sternal end, outward and still more upward at the acromial extremity, where it becomes continuous with the upper surface of the flat portion. Externally, it is smooth, convex, nearly subcutaneous, being covered only by the Platysma; but, corresponding to the inner half of the bone, it is divided by a more or less prominent line into two parts: a lower portion, elliptical in form, rough, and slightly convex, for the attachment of the Pectoralis major; and an upper part, which is rough, for the attachment of the Sterno-cleido-mastoid. Between the two muscular impressions is a small subcutaneous interval. The *posterior* or *cervical surface* is smooth, flat, and looks backward toward the root of the neck. It is limited, above, by the superior border; below, by the subclavian border; internally, by the margin of the sternal extremity; externally, it is continuous with the posterior border of the flat portion. It is concave from within outward, and is in relation, by its lower part, with the suprascapular vessels. This surface, at about the junction of the inner and outer curves, is also in close relation with the brachial plexus and subclavian vessels. It gives attachment, near the sternal extremity, to part of the Sterno-hyoid muscle; and presents, at or near the middle, a foramen, **nutrient foramen** (*foramen nutricium*). It opens into a canal, **nutrient canal** (*canalis nutricius*), which is directed obliquely outward and transmits the chief nutrient artery of the bone. Sometimes there are two foramina on the posterior surface, or one on the posterior, and one on the inferior surface. The *inferior* or *subclavian surface*

is bounded, in front, by the anterior border; behind, by the subclavian border. It is narrow internally, but gradually increases in width externally, and is continuous with the under surface of the flat portion. Commencing at the sternal extremity may be seen a small facet, the **costal facet,** for articulation with the cartilage of the first rib. This is continuous with the articular surface

FIG. 124.—Left clavicle. Superior surface.

at the sternal end of the bone. External to this is a broad, rough surface, the **rhomboid impression** (*tuberositas costalis*), rather more than an inch in length, for the attachment of the costo-clavicular (rhomboid) ligament. The remaining part of this surface is occupied by a longitudinal groove, the **subclavian groove,** broad and smooth externally, narrow and more uneven internally; it gives attachment to the Subclavius muscle, and by its margins to the costo-coracoid membrane, which splits to enclose the muscle. Not infrequently this groove is subdivided into two parts by a longitudinal line, which gives attachment to the intermuscular septum of the Subclavius muscle.

FIG. 125.—Left clavicle. Inferior surface.

Internal or Sternal Extremity (*extremitas sternalis*).—The internal or sternal extremity of the clavicle is triangular in form, directed inward and a little downward and forward; and presents an **articular facet** (*facies articularis sternalis*), concave from before backward, convex from above downward, which articulates with the sternum through the intervention of an interarticular fibro-cartilage; the circumference of the articular surface is rough, for the attachment of numerous ligaments. The *posterior border* of this surface is prolonged backward, so as to increase the size of the articular facet; the *upper border* gives attachment to the interarticular fibro-cartilage, and the *lower border* is continuous with the costal facet on the inner end of the inferior or subclavian surface, which articulates with the cartilage of the first rib.

Outer or Acromial Extremity (*extremitas acromialis*).—The outer or acromial extremity, directed outward and forward, presents a small, flattened, oval facet,

acromial surface (*facies articularis acromialis*), which looks obliquely downward, for articulation with the acromion process of the scapula. The circumference of the articular facet is rough, especially above, for the attachment of the acromio-clavicular ligaments.

Peculiarities of the Bone in the Sexes and in Individuals.—In the female the clavicle is generally shorter, thinner, less curved, and smoother than in the male. In those persons who perform considerable manual labor, which brings into constant action the muscles connected with this bone, it becomes thicker and more curved, its ridges for muscular attachment become prominently marked. The right clavicle is generally longer, thicker, and rougher than the left.

Structure.—The shaft, as well as the extremities, consists of cancellous tissue, invested in a compact layer much thicker in the middle than at either end. The clavicle is highly elastic, by reason of its curves. From the experiments of Mr. Ward it has been shown that it possesses sufficient longitudinal elastic force to project its own weight nearly two feet on a level surface when a smart blow is struck on it; and sufficient transverse elastic force, opposite the centre of its anterior convexity, to throw its own weight about a foot. This extent of elastic power must serve to moderate very considerably the effect of concussions received upon the point of the shoulder.

Development.—By *two* centres: one for the shaft and outer extremity and one for the sternal extremity. The centre for the shaft appears very early, before any other bone—according to Béclard, as early as the thirtieth day. The centre for the sternal end makes its appearance about the eighteenth or twentieth year, and unites with the rest of the bone about the twenty-fifth year.

Articulations.—With the sternum, scapula, and cartilage of the first rib.

Attachment of Muscles.—To six: the Sterno-cleido-mastoid, Trapezius, Pectoralis major, Deltoid, Subclavius, and Sterno-hyoid.

Surface Form.—The clavicle can be felt throughout its entire length, even in persons who are very fat. Commencing at the inner end, the enlarged sternal extremity, where the bone projects above the upper margin of the sternum, can be felt, forming with the sternum and the rounded tendon of the Sterno-mastoid a V-shaped notch, the **pre-sternal notch**. Passing outward, the shaft of the bone can be felt immediately under the skin, with its convexity forward in the inner two-thirds, the surface partially obscured above and below by the attachments of the Sterno-mastoid and Pectoralis major muscles. In the outer third it forms a gentle curve backward, and terminates at the outer end in a somewhat enlarged extremity which articulates with the acromial process of the scapula. The direction of the clavicle is almost, if not quite, horizontal when the arm is lying quietly by the side, though in well-developed subjects it may incline a little upward at its outer end. Its direction is, however, very changeable, altering with the varying movements of the shoulder-joint.

Surgical Anatomy. The clavicle is the most frequently *fractured* of any single bone in the body. This is due to the fact that it is much exposed to violence, and is the only bony connection between the upper limb and the trunk. The bone, moreover, is slender, and is very superficial. The bone may be broken by direct or indirect violence or by muscular action. The most common cause is, however, from indirect violence, and the bone then gives way at the junction of the fixed outer one-third with the movable inner two-thirds of the bone. This is the weakest and most slender part of the bone. The fracture is generally oblique, and the displacement of the outer fragments is inward, away from the surface of the body; hence compound fracture of the clavicle is of rare occurrence. The inner fragment as a rule is little displaced (page 503). Beneath the bone the main vessels of the upper limb and the great nerve-cords of the brachial plexus lie on the first rib, and are liable to be wounded in fracture, especially in fracture from direct violence, when the force of the blow drives the broken ends inward. Fortunately, the Subclavius muscle is interposed between these structures and the clavicle, and this often protects them from injury.

The clavicle is not uncommonly the seat of *sarcomatous tumors*, rendering the operation of excision of the entire bone necessary. This operation is best performed by exposing the bone freely, disarticulating at the acromial end, and turning it inward. The removal of the outer part is comparatively easy, but resection of the inner part is fraught with difficulty, the main danger being the risk of wounding the great veins which are in relation with its under surface.

The Scapula or Shoulder Blade.

The scapula (*σκαπάνη*, a spade), or **blade bone**, forms the back part of the shoulder girdle. It is a large, flat bone, triangular in shape, situated at the posterior aspect and side of the thorax, between the second and seventh, or sometimes the eighth, ribs, its internal border or base being about an inch from and nearly but not quite parallel with the spinous processes of the vertebræ, so that it is rather closer to them above than below. It presents for examination two surfaces, three borders, and three angles.

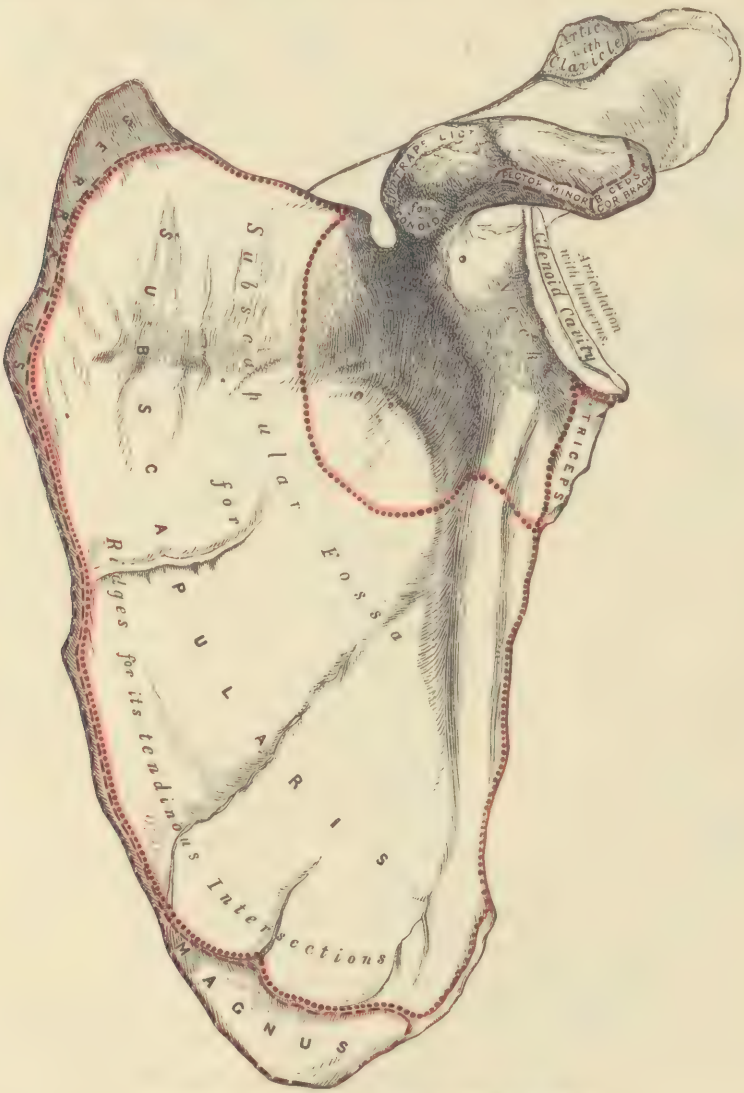


Fig. 126.—Left scapula. Anterior surface or venter.

Surfaces. **Anterior or Costal Surface, Ventral Aspect or Venter** (*facies costalis*).—The anterior surface (Fig. 126) presents a broad concavity, the **subscapular fossa** (*fossa subscapularis*). It is marked, in the inner two-thirds, by several **oblique ridges** (*lineæ musculares*), which pass from behind outward and upward; the outer third is smooth. The oblique ridges give attachment to the tendinous intersections, and the surfaces between them to the fleshy fibres, of the Sub-

scapularis muscle. The anterior third of the fossa, which is smooth, is covered by, but does not afford attachment to, the fibres of this muscle. The venter is separated from the internal border by a smooth, triangular margin at the superior and inferior angles, and in the interval between these by a narrow edge which is often deficient. This marginal surface affords attachment throughout its entire extent to the Serratus magnus muscle. The subscapular fossa presents a transverse depression at its upper part, where the bone appears to be bent on itself, forming a considerable angle, called the **subscapular angle** (*angulus subscapularis*), thus giving greater strength to the body of the bone from its arched form, whilst the summit of the arch serves to support the spine and acromion process. It is in this situation that the fossa is deepest, so that the thickest part of the Subscapularis muscle lies in a line perpendicular to the plane of the glenoid cavity, and must consequently operate most effectively on the head of the humerus, which is contained in that cavity. The portion of bone between the suprascapular notch and the infraglenoid tubercle is sometimes called the **surgical neck.**

Posterior or Dorsal Surface or Dorsum (*facies dorsalis*).—The posterior or dorsal surface (Fig. 127) is arched from above downward, alternately concave and convex from side to side. It is subdivided unequally into two parts by the **spine**; the portion above the spine is called the **supraspinous fossa,** and that below it the **infraspinous fossa.**

The **supraspinous fossa** (*fossa supraspinata*), the smaller of the two, is concave, smooth, and broader at the vertebral than at the humeral extremity. It affords attachment by its inner two-thirds to the Supraspinatus muscle.

The **infraspinous fossa** (*fossa infraspinata*) is much larger than the preceding; toward its vertebral margin a shallow concavity is seen at its upper part; its centre presents a prominent convexity, whilst toward the axillary border is a deep groove which runs from the upper toward the lower part. The inner two-thirds of this surface affords attachment to the Infraspinatus muscle; the outer third is only covered by it, without giving origin to its fibres. This surface is separated from the axillary border by an elevated ridge, which runs from the lower margin of the glenoid cavity downward and backward to the posterior border, about an inch above the inferior angle. The ridge serves for the attachment of a strong aponeurosis which separates the Infraspinatus from the two Teres muscles. The surface of bone between this line and the axillary border is narrow in the upper two-thirds of its extent, and traversed near its centre by a groove for the passage of the dorsalis scapulæ vessels; it affords attachment to the Teres minor muscle. Its lower third presents a broader, somewhat triangular surface, which gives origin to the Teres major, and over which the Latissimus dorsi glides; sometimes the latter muscle takes origin by a few fibres from this part. The broad and narrow portions of bone above alluded to are separated by an oblique line which runs from the axillary border, downward and backward, to meet the elevated ridge: to it is attached the aponeurosis separating the two Teres muscles from each other.

The **spine** (*spina scapulæ*) is a prominent plate of bone which crosses obliquely the inner four-fifths of the dorsum of the scapula at its upper part, and separates the supra-from the infraspinous fossa: it commences at the vertebral border by a smooth, triangular surface, over which the Trapezius glides, separated from the bone by a bursa, and, gradually becoming more elevated as it passes outward, terminates in the acromion process, which overhangs the shoulder-joint. The spine is triangular and flattened from above downward, its apex corresponding to the vertebral border, its base (which is directed outward) to the neck of the scapula. It presents two surfaces and three borders. Its *superior surface* is concave, assists in forming the supraspinous fossa, and affords attachment to part of the Supraspinatus muscle. Its *inferior surface* forms part of the infraspinous fossa, gives origin to part of the Infraspinatus muscle, and presents near its centre the orifice

of a **nutrient canal**. Of the three borders, the *anterior* is attached to the dorsum of the bone; the *posterior*, or *crest* of the spine, is broad, and presents two lips and an intervening rough interval. To the superior lip is attached the Trapezius to the extent shown in the figure. A rough tubercle is generally seen occupying that portion of the spine which receives the insertion of the middle and inferior fibres of this muscle. To the inferior lip, throughout its whole length, is attached

FIG. 127.—Left scapula. Posterior surface or dorsum.

the Deltoid. The intervals between the lips is also partly covered by the tendinous fibres of these muscles. The *external border*, or *base*, the shortest of the three, is slightly concave, its edge thick and round, continuous above with the under surface of the acromion process, below with the neck of the scapula. The narrow portion of bone external to this border, and separating it from the glenoid cavity, is called the **great scapular notch**, and serves to connect the supra- and infraspinous fossæ.

The **acromion process** (*acromion*), so called from forming the summit of the shoulder (*ἄκρον*, a summit; *ὦμος*, the shoulder), is a large and somewhat triangular or oblong process, flattened from behind forward, directed at first a little outward, and then curving forward and upward, so as to overhang the glenoid cavity. Its *upper surface*, directed upward, backward, and outward, is convex, rough, and gives attachment to some fibres of the Deltoid, and in the rest of its extent it is subcutaneous. Its *under surface* is smooth and concave. Its *outer border* is thick and irregular, and presents three or four tubercles for the tendinous origins of the Deltoid muscle. Its *inner margin*, shorter than the outer, is concave, gives attachment to a portion of the Trapezius muscle, and presents about its centre a small oval surface for articulation with the acromial end of the clavicle. Its *apex*, which corresponds to the point of meeting of these two borders in front, is thin, and has attached to it the coraco-acromial ligament.

Margins or Borders of the Scapula. **Superior Border** (*margo superior*).—Of the three borders of the scapula, the superior is the shortest and thinnest; it is concave and extends from the superior angle to the coracoid process. At its outer part is a deep, semicircular notch, the **suprascapular notch** (*incisura scapulæ*), formed partly by the base of the coracoid process. This notch is converted into a foramen by the transverse ligament, and serves for the passage of the suprascapular nerve. Sometimes this foramen is entirely surrounded by bone. The adjacent margin of the superior border affords attachment to the Omo-hyoid muscle.

External or Axillary Border (*margo axillaris*).—The external or axillary border is the thickest of the three. It commences above at the lower margin of the glenoid cavity, and inclines obliquely downward and backward to the inferior angle. Immediately below the glenoid cavity is a rough impression, the **infraglenoid tubercle** (*tuberositas infraglenoidalis*), about an inch in length, which affords attachment to the long head of the Triceps muscle; in front of this is a longitudinal groove, which extends as far as the lower third of the axillary border and affords origin to part of the Subscapularis muscle. The inferior third of this border, which is thin and sharp, serves for the attachment of a few fibres of the Teres major behind and the Subscapularis in front.

Internal or Vertebral Border (*margo vertebralis*).—The internal or vertebral border, also named the **base**, is the longest of the three, and extends from the superior to the inferior angle of the bone. It is arched, is intermediate in thickness between the superior and the external borders, and the portion of it above the spine is bent considerably outward, so as to form an obtuse angle with the lower part. The vertebral border presents an anterior lip, a posterior lip, and an intermediate space. The *anterior lip* affords attachment to the Serratus magnus; the *posterior lip*, to the Supraspinatus above the spine, the Infraspinatus below; the interval between the two lips, to the Levator anguli scapulæ above the triangular surface at the commencement of the spine, the Rhomboideus minor to the edge of that surface; the Rhomboideus major being attached by means of a fibrous arch connected above to the lower part of the triangular surface at the base of the spine, and below to the lower part of the posterior border.

Angles. **Superior or Mesial Angle** (*angulus medialis*).—Of the three angles, the superior, formed by the junction of the superior and internal borders, is thin, smooth, rounded, somewhat inclined outward, and gives attachment to a few fibres of the Levator anguli scapulæ muscle.

Inferior Angle (*angulus inferior*).—The inferior angle, thick and rough, is formed by the union of the vertebral and axillary borders, its outer surface affording attachment to the Teres major and frequently to a few fibres of the Latissimus dorsi.

Anterior or Lateral Angle (*angulus lateralis*).—The anterior angle is the thickest part of the bone, and forms what is called the **head** of the scapula. The head

presents a shallow, pyriform, articular surface, the **glenoid surface** or **cavity** (*cavitas glenoidalis*, from γλήνη, a socket), whose longest diameter is from above downward, and its direction outward and forward. It is broader below than above. Just above it is a rough surface, the **supraglenoid tubercle** or **tuberosity** (*tuberositas supraglenoidalis*), to which is attached the long tendon of the Biceps muscle. The glenoid cavity is covered with cartilage in the recent state; and its margins are slightly raised and give attachment to a fibro-cartilaginous structure, the **glenoid ligament**, by which its cavity is deepened. The **anatomical neck** of the scapula (*collum scapulæ*) is the slightly depressed surface which surrounds the head; it is more distinct on the posterior than on the anterior surface, and below than above. In the latter situation it has arising from it a thick prominence, the **coracoid process**.

The **coracoid process** (*processus coracoideus*), so called from its fancied resemblance to a crow's beak (κόραξ, a crow), is a thick, curved process of bone which arises by a broad base from the upper part of the neck of the scapula; it is directed at first upward and inward, then, becoming smaller, it changes its direction and passes forward and outward. The ascending portion, flattened from before backward, presents in front a smooth, concave surface over which passes the Subscapularis muscle. The horizontal portion is flattened from above downward, its upper surface is convex and irregular, and gives attachment to the Pectoralis minor; its under surface is smooth; its inner border is rough, and gives attachment to the Pectoralis minor; its outer border is also rough for the coraco-acromial ligament, while the apex is embraced by the conjoined tendon of origin of the short head of the Biceps and of the Coraco-brachialis and gives attachment to the costo-coracoid ligament. At the inner side of the root of the coracoid process is a rough impression for the attachment of the conoid ligament; and running from it obliquely forward and outward on the upper surface of the horizontal portion, an elevated ridge for the attachment of the trapezoid ligament.

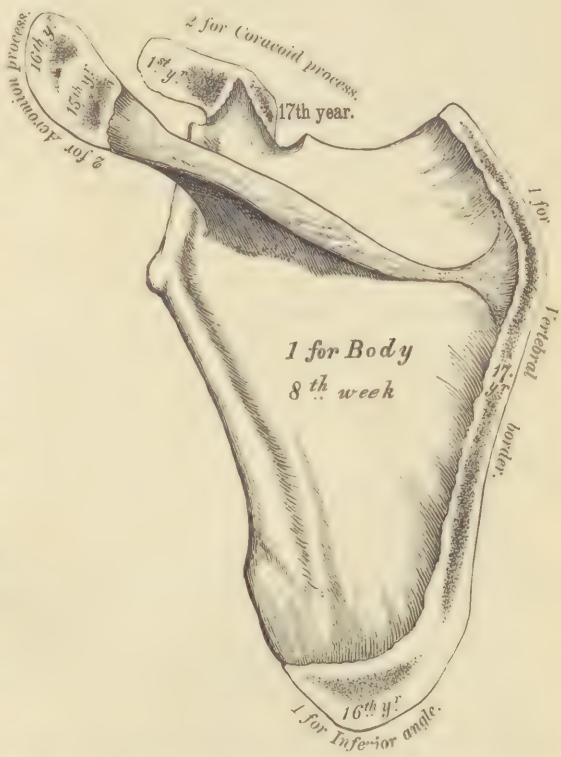


FIG. 128.—Plan of the development of the scapula. By seven centres. The epiphyses (except one for the coracoid process) appear from fifteen to seventeen years, and unite between twenty-two and twenty-five years of age.

Structure.—In the head, processes, and all the thickened parts of the bone the scapula is composed of cancellous tissue, while in the rest of its extent it is composed of a thin layer of dense, compact tissue. The centre part of the supraspinous fossa and the upper part of the infraspinous fossa, but especially the former, are usually so thin as to be semitransparent; occasionally the bone is found wanting in this situation, and the adjacent muscles come into contact.

Development (Fig. 128).—By *seven* or more centres: one for the body, two for the coracoid process, two for the acromion, one for the vertebral border, and one

for the inferior angle. Ossification of the body of the scapula commences about the second month of fœtal life by the formation of an irregular quadrilateral plate of bone immediately behind the glenoid cavity. This plate extends itself so as to form the chief part of the bone, the spine growing up from its posterior, surface about the third month. At birth a large part of the scapula is osseous, but the glenoid cavity, coracoid and acromion processes, the posterior border, and inferior angle are cartilaginous. From the fifteenth to the eighteenth month after birth ossification takes place in the middle of the coracoid process, which usually becomes joined with the rest of the bone at the time when the other centres make their appearance. Between the fourteenth and twentieth years ossification of the remaining centres takes place in quick succession, and in the following order: first, in the root of the coracoid process, in the form of a broad scale; secondly, near the base of the acromion process; thirdly, in the inferior angle and contiguous part of the posterior border; fourthly, near the extremity of the acromion; fifthly, in the posterior border. The acromion process, besides being formed of two separate nuclei, has its base formed by an extension into it of the centre of ossification which belongs to the spine, the extent of which varies in different cases. The two separate nuclei unite, and then join with the extension from the spine. These various epiphyses become joined to the bone between the ages of twenty-two and twenty-five years. Sometimes failure of union between the acromion process and spine occurs, the junction being effected by fibrous tissue or by an imperfect articulation; in some cases of supposed fracture of the acromion with ligamentous union it is probable that the detached segment was never united to the rest of the bone. The upper third of the glenoid cavity is usually ossified from a separate centre (subcoracoid) which makes its appearance between the tenth and eleventh years. Very often, in addition, an epiphysis appears for the lower part of the glenoid cavity.

Articulations.—With the humerus and clavicle.

Attachment of Muscles.—To seventeen: to the anterior surface, the Subscapularis; posterior surface, Supraspinatus, Infraspinatus; spine, Trapezius, Deltoid; superior border, Omo-hyoid; vertebral border, Serratus magnus, Levator anguli scapulæ, Rhomboideus minor and major; axillary border, Triceps, Teres minor, Teres major; apex of glenoid cavity, long head of the Biceps; coracoid process, short head of the Biceps, Coraco-brachialis, Pectoralis minor; and to the inferior angle occasionally a few fibres of the Latissimus dorsi.

Surface Form. The only parts of the scapula which are truly subcutaneous are the spine and acromion process, but, in addition to these, the coracoid process, the internal or vertebral border and inferior angle, and, to a less extent, the axillary border, may be defined. The acromion process and spine of the scapula are easily felt throughout their entire length, forming, with the clavicle, the arch of the shoulder. The acromion can be ascertained to be connected to the clavicle at the acromio-clavicular joint by running the finger along it, its position being often indicated by an irregularity or bony outgrowth from the clavicle close to the joint. The acromion can be felt forming the point of the shoulder, and from this can be traced backward to join the spine of the scapula. The place of junction is usually denoted by a prominence, which is sometimes called the **acromial angle.** From here the spine of the scapula can be felt as a prominent ridge of bone, marked on the surface as an oblique depression, which becomes less and less distinct, and terminates a little external to the spinous processes of the vertebræ. Its termination is usually indicated by a slight dimple in the skin on a level with the interval between the third and fourth dorsal spines. Below this point the vertebral border of the scapula may be traced, running downward and outward, and thus diverging from the vertebral spines, to the inferior angle of the bone, which can be recognized, although covered by the Latissimus dorsi muscle. From this angle the axillary border can usually be traced through this thick muscular covering, forming, with the muscles, the posterior fold of the axilla. The coracoid process may be felt about an inch below the junction of the middle and outer thirds of the clavicle. Here it is covered by the anterior border of the deltoid and lies a little to the outer side of a slight depression which corresponds to the interval between the Pectoralis major and Deltoid muscles. When the arms are hanging by the side, the upper angle of the scapula corresponds to the upper border of the

second rib or the interval between the first and second dorsal spines, the inferior angle to the upper border of the eighth rib or the interval between the seventh and eighth dorsal spines.

Surgical Anatomy. *Fractures* of the body of the scapula are rare, owing to the mobility of the bone, the thick layer of muscles by which it is encased on both surfaces, and the elasticity of the ribs on which it rests. Fracture of the neck of the bone is also uncommon. The most frequent course of a line of fracture of the neck is from the suprascapular notch to the infraglenoid tubercle (*surgical neck*), and it derives its principal interest from its simulation to a subglenoid dislocation of the humerus. The diagnosis can be made by noting the alteration in the position of the coracoid process. A fracture of the neck external to, and not including, the coracoid process (*anatomical neck*) is said to occur, but it is exceedingly doubtful whether such an accident ever takes place. The acromion process is more frequently broken than any other part of the bone, and there is sometimes, in young subjects, a separation of the epiphysis. It is believed that many of the cases of supposed fracture of the acromion, with fibrous union, which have been found on post-mortem examination are really cases of imperfectly united epiphysis. Sir Astley Cooper believed that most fractures of this bone united by fibrous tissue, and the cause of this mode of union was the difficulty there was in keeping the fractured ends in constant apposition. The coracoid process is occasionally broken off, either from direct violence or perhaps, rarely, from muscular action.

Tumors of various kinds grow from the scapula. Of the innocent form of tumors probably the osteomata are the most common. When an osteoma grows from the venter of the scapula, as it sometimes does, it is of the compact variety, such as usually grows from membrane-formed bones, as the bones of the skull. This would appear to afford evidence that this portion of the bone is formed from membrane, and not, like the rest of the bone, from cartilage. Sarcomatous tumors sometimes grow from the scapula, and may necessitate removal of the bone, with or without amputation of the upper limb. Removal of the upper limb with the scapula and the outer two-thirds of the clavicle is known as the *interscapulo-thoracic amputation*. The scapula may be partially resected or completely excised. There are several methods of complete excision. The bone may be excised by a T-shaped incision, and, the flaps being reflected, the removal is commenced from the posterior or vertebral border, so that the subscapular vessels which lie along the axillary border are among the last structures divided, and can be at once secured.

THE ARM.

The arm is that portion of the upper extremity which is situated between the shoulder and the elbow. Its skeleton consists of a single bone, the **humerus**.

The Humerus or Upper Arm Bone (Figs. 129, 130).

The humerus (from *humerus*, or more correctly *umerus*, the shoulder) is the longest and largest bone of the upper extremity; it presents for examination a shaft and two extremities.

Upper Extremity.—The upper extremity presents a large, rounded **head**, joined to the shaft by a constricted portion, called the **neck**, and two other eminences, the **greater** and **lesser tuberosities**.

The Head (*caput humeri*).—The head, nearly hemispherical in form,[1] is directed upward, inward, and slightly backward, and articulates with the glenoid cavity of the scapula; its surface is smooth and coated with cartilage in the recent state. The circumference of its articular surface is slightly constricted, and is termed the **anatomical neck**, in contradistinction to the constriction which exists below the tuberosities. The latter is called the **surgical neck** (*collum chirurgicum*), from its often being the seat of fracture. It should be remembered, however, that fracture of the *anatomical neck* does sometimes, though rarely, occur.

Anatomical Neck (*collum anatomicum*).—The anatomical neck is obliquely directed, forming an obtuse angle with the shaft. It is more distinctly marked in the lower half of its circumference than in the upper half, where it presents a narrow groove, separating the head from the tuberosities. Its circumference affords

[1] Though the head is nearly hemispherical in form, its margin, as Sir G. Humphry has shown, is by no means a true circle. Its greatest measurement is from the top of the bicipital groove in a direction downward, inward, and backward. Hence it follows that the greatest elevation of the arm can be obtained by rolling the articular surface in this direction—that is to say, obliquely upward, outward, and forward.

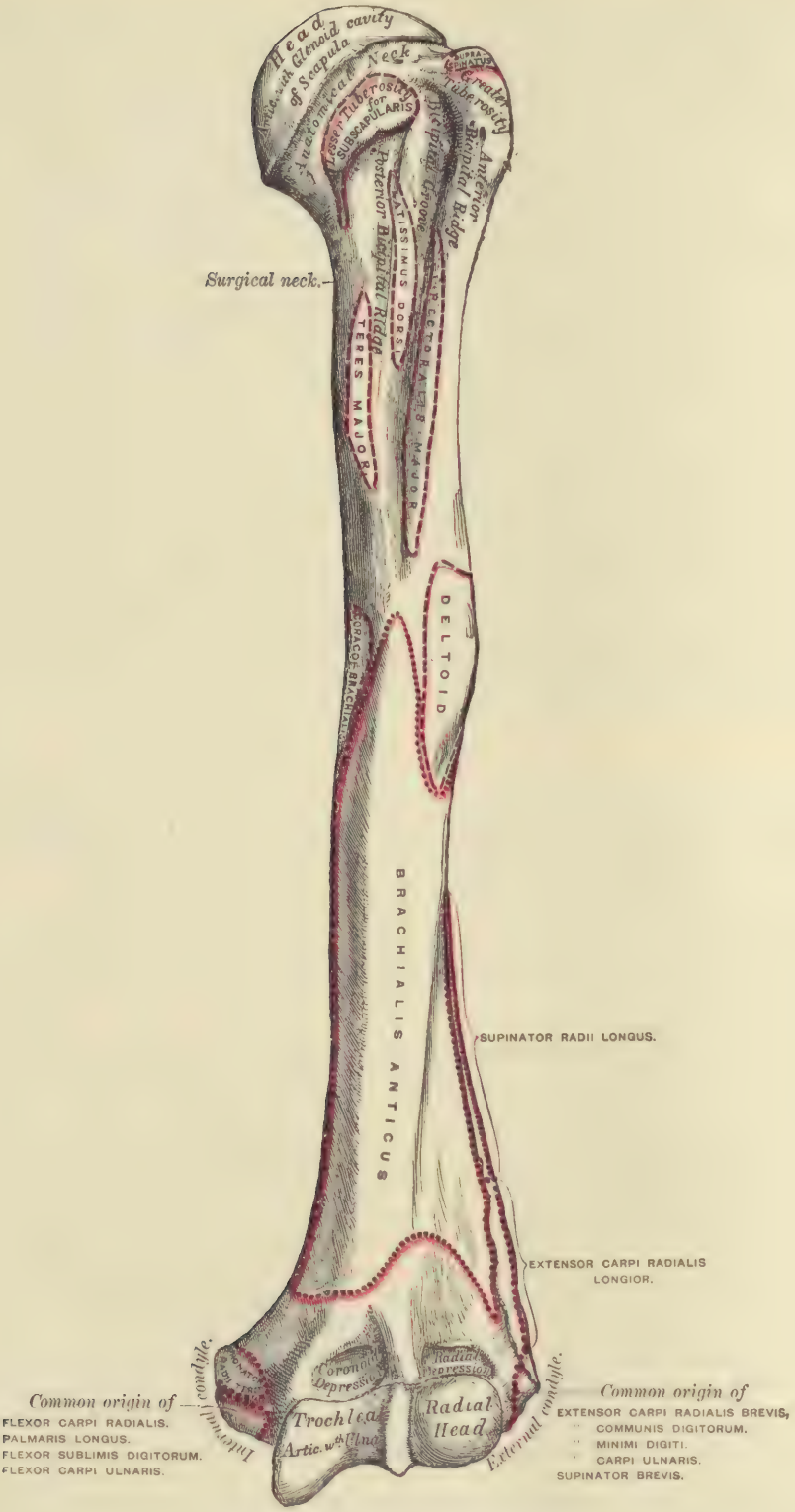


FIG. 129.—Left humerus. Anterior view.

attachment to the capsular ligament and is perforated by numerous vascular foramina.

Greater Tuberosity (*tuberculum majus*).—The greater tuberosity is situated on the outer side of the head and lesser tuberosity. Its upper surface is rounded and marked by three flat facets, separated by two slight ridges: the highest facet gives attachment to the tendon of the Supraspinatus; the middle one, to the Infraspinatus; the inferior facet and the shaft of the bone below it, to the Teres minor. The outer surface of the great tuberosity is convex, rough, and continuous with the outer side of the shaft.

Lesser Tuberosity (*tuberculum minus*).—The lesser tuberosity is more prominent, although smaller than the greater: it is situated in front of the head, and is directed inward and forward. Its summit presents a prominent facet for the insertion of the tendon of the Subscapularis muscle. The tuberosities are separated from one another by a deep groove, the **bicipital groove** (*sulcus intertubercularis*). This groove lodges the long tendon of the Biceps muscle, with which runs a branch of the anterior circumflex artery. It commences above between the two tuberosities, passes obliquely downward and a little inward, and terminates at the junction of the upper with the middle third of the bone. It is deep and narrow at the commencement, and becomes shallow and a little broader as it descends. Its borders are called, respectively, the **external** or **posterior bicipital ridge** (*crista tuberculi majoris*) and the **internal** or **anterior bicipital ridge** (*crista tuberculi minoris*), and form the upper part of the anterior and internal borders of the shaft of the bone. In the recent state it is covered with a thin layer of cartilage, lined by a prolongation of the synovial membrane of the shoulder-joint, and receives the tendon of insertion of the Latissimus dorsi muscle.

The Shaft (*corpus humeri*).—The shaft of the humerus is almost cylindrical in the upper half of its extent, prismatic and flattened below, and presents three borders and three surfaces for examination.

Anterior Border.—The anterior border runs from the front of the great tuberosity above to the coronoid depression below, separating the internal from the external surface. Its upper part is very prominent and rough, and forms the outer lip of the bicipital groove. It is sometimes called the **posterior bicipital, external bicipital,** or **pectoral ridge** (*crista tuberculi majoris*), and serves for the attachment of the tendon of the Pectoralis major. About its centre it forms the anterior boundary of the rough **deltoid eminence** or **impression** (*tuberositas deltoidea*); below, it is smooth and rounded, affording attachment to the Brachialis anticus muscle.

External Border (*margo lateralis*).—The external border runs from the back part of the greater tuberosity to the external condyle, and separates the external from the posterior surface. It is rounded and indistinctly marked in its upper half, serving for the attachment of the lower part of the insertion of the Teres minor muscle, and below this of the external head of the Triceps muscle; its centre is traversed by a broad but shallow, oblique depression, the **musculo-spiral groove** (*sulcus nervi radialis*); its lower part is marked by a prominent, rough margin, a little curved from behind forward, the **external supracondylar** or **epicondylic ridge** (*margo lateralis*), which presents an anterior lip for the attachment of the Supinator longus above and Extensor carpi radialis longior below, a posterior lip for the Triceps, and an intermediate space for the attachment of the external intermuscular septum.

Internal Border (*margo medialis*).—The internal border extends from the lesser tuberosity to the internal condyle. Its upper third is marked by a prominent ridge, forming the posterior lip of the bicipital groove, and gives attachment to the tendon of the Teres major. About its centre is an impression for the attachment of the Coracobrachialis, and just below this is seen the entrance of the

FIG. 130.—Left humerus. Posterior surface.

nutrient canal, directed downward. Sometimes there is a second canal situated at the commencement of the musculo-spiral groove, for a nutrient artery derived from the superior profunda branch of the brachial artery. The inferior third of this border is raised into a slight ridge, the **internal supracondylar** or **epicondylic ridge** (*margo medialis*), which becomes very prominent below; it presents an anterior lip for the attachment of the Brachialis anticus muscle, a posterior lip for the internal head of the Triceps muscle, and an intermediate space for the attachment of the internal intermuscular septum.

External Surface (*facies anterior lateralis*).—The external surface is directed outward above, where it is smooth, rounded, and covered by the Deltoid muscle; forward and outward below, where it is slightly concave from above downward, and gives origin to part of the Brachialis anticus muscle. About the middle of this surface is seen a rough, triangular impression for the insertion of the Deltoid muscle, **deltoid impression** (*tuberositas deltoidea*); and below it the musculo-spiral groove, directed obliquely from behind, forward and downward, and transmitting the musculo-spiral nerve and superior profunda artery.

Internal Surface (*facies anterior medialis*).—The internal surface, less extensive than the external, is directed inward above, forward and inward below; at its upper part it is narrow and forms the floor of the bicipital groove: to it is attached the Latissimus dorsi. The middle part of this surface is slightly rough for the attachment of some of the fibres of the tendon of insertion of the Coraco-brachialis; its lower part is smooth, concave from above downward, and gives attachment to the Brachialis anticus muscle.[1] A little below the middle of the shaft is the **nutrient foramen** (*foramen nutricium*).

[1] A small, hook-shaped process of bone, the *supracondylar process*, varying from $^1/_{10}$ to $^3/_4$ of an inch in length, is not infrequently found projecting from the inner surface of the shaft of the humerus two inches above the internal condyle. It is curved downward, forward, and inward, and its pointed extremity is connected to the internal border, just above the inner condyle, by a ligament or fibrous band, which gives origin to a portion of the Pronator radii teres; through the arch completed by this fibrous band the median nerve and brachial artery pass when these structures deviate from their usual course. Sometimes the nerve alone is transmitted through it, or the nerve may be accompanied by the ulnar artery in cases of high division of the brachial. A well-marked groove is usually found behind the process in which the nerve and artery are lodged. This space is analogous to the supracondyloid foramen in many animals, and probably serves in them to protect the nerve and artery from compression during the contraction of the muscles in this region. A detailed account of this process is given by Dr. Struthers, in his Anatomical and Physiological Observations, p. 202. An accessory portion of the Coraco-brachialis muscle is frequently connected with this process, according to Mr. J. Wood (Journal of Anat. and Phys., No. 1, November, 1866, p. 47).

This leads into a **nutrient canal** (*canalis nutricius*), which is directed toward the elbow-joint (distally).

Posterior Surface (*facies posterior*).—The posterior surface (Fig. 130) appears somewhat twisted, so that its upper part is directed a little inward, its lower part backward and a little outward. Nearly the whole of this surface is covered by the external and internal heads of the Triceps, the former of which is attached to its upper and outer part, the latter to its inner and back part, the two being separated by the musculo-spiral groove.

Lower Extremity.—The lower extremity is flattened from before backward, and curved slightly forward; it terminates below in a broad, articular surface which is divided into two parts by a slight ridge. Projecting on either side are the **external** and **internal condyles** (*epicondylus lateralis* and *epicondylus medialis*). By some anatomists the external condyle is called the **external epicondyle** and the internal condyle is called the **internal epicondyle.** Others call the internal condyle the **epitrochlea.** The articular surface extends a little lower than the condyles, and is curved slightly forward, so as to occupy the more anterior part of the bone; its greatest breadth is in the transverse diameter, and it is obliquely directed, so that its inner extremity occupies a lower level than the outer. The outer portion of the articular surface presents a smooth, rounded eminence, which has received the name of the **capitellum,** or **radial head** of the humerus (*capitulum humeri*); it articulates with the cup-shaped depression on the head of the radius, and is limited to the front and lower part of the bone, not extending as far back as the other portion of the articular surface. On the inner side of this eminence is a shallow groove, in which is received the inner margin of the head of the radius. Above the front part of the capitellum is a slight depression, the **radial fossa** (*fossa radialis*), which receives the anterior border of the head of the radius when the forearm is flexed. The inner portion of the articular surface, the **trochlea** (*trochlea humeri*), presents a deep depression between two well-marked borders. This surface is convex from before backward, concave from side to side, and occupies the anterior, lower, and posterior parts of the bone. The *external border*, less prominent than the internal, corresponds to the interval between the radius and the ulna. The *internal border* is thicker, more prominent, and consequently of greater length, than the external. The grooved portion of the articular surface fits accurately within the greater sigmoid cavity of the ulna: it is broader and deeper on the posterior than on the anterior aspect of the bone, and is inclined obliquely from behind forward and from without inward. Above the front part of the trochlear surface is seen a smaller depression, the **coronoid fossa** (*fossa coronoidea*), which receives the coronoid process of the ulna during flexion of the forearm. Above the back part of the trochlear surface is a deep, triangular depression, the **olecranon fossa** (*fossa olecrani*), in which is received the summit of the olecranon process in extension of the forearm. These fossæ are separated from one another by a thin, transparent lamina of bone, which is sometimes perforated by a foramen, the **supratrochlear foramen**; their upper margins afford attachment to the anterior and posterior ligaments of the elbow-joint, and they are lined, in the recent state, by the synovial membrane of this articulation. The articular surfaces, in the recent state, are covered with a thin layer of cartilage. The **external epicondyle** (*epicondylus lateralis*) is a small, tubercular eminence, less prominent than the internal, curved a little forward, and giving attachment to the external lateral ligament of the elbow-joint, and to a tendon common to the origin of some of the extensor and supinator muscles. The **internal epicondyle** (*epitrochlea* or *epicondylus medialis*), larger and more prominent, and therefore more liable to fracture, than the external, is directed a little backward: it gives attachment to the internal lateral ligament, to the Pronator radii teres, and to a tendon common

to the origin of some of the flexor muscles of the forearm. The ulnar nerve runs in a groove, the **ulnar groove** (*sulcus nervi ulnaris*), at the back of the internal condyle, or between it and the olecranon process. These condyles are directly continuous above with the external and internal supracondylar ridges.

Structure.—The extremities consist of cancellous tissue, covered with a thin compact layer; the shaft is composed of a cylinder of compact tissue, thicker at the centre than at the extremities, and hollowed out by a large medullary canal, which extends along its whole length. In the head of the humerus the plates of the cancellous tissue are arranged in curves (Fig. 131) known as **pressure curves**. Most of the bone-plates are at right angles to the plane of the articular surface (the lines of greatest pressure), and they are bound together by other bone-fibres, which usually correspond to the plane of the articulation (the lines of greatest tension). This arch-like arrangement strengthens the head of the bone, and it is further strengthened by the binding fibres.

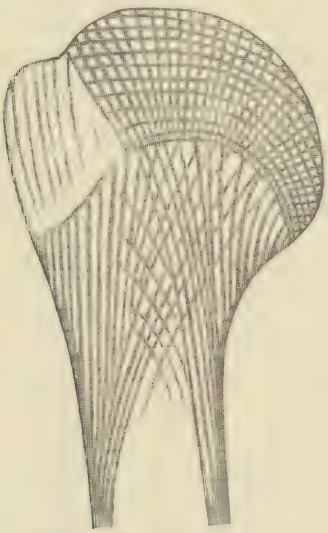


Fig. 131.—Diagram showing the architecture of the superior extremity of the humerus. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Fig. 132.—Plan of the development of the humerus by seven centres.

Development.—By *seven*, or occasionally *eight*, centres (Fig. 132): one for the shaft, one for the head, one for the tuberosities, one for the radial head, one for the trochlear portion of the articular surface, and one for each condyle. The nucleus for the shaft appears near the centre of the bone in the eighth week, and soon extends toward the extremities. At birth the humerus is ossified nearly in its whole length, the extremities remaining cartilaginous. During the first year, sometimes even before birth, ossification commences in the head of the bone, and during the third year the centre for the tuberosities makes its appearance, usually by a single ossific point, but sometimes, according to Béclard, by one for each tuberosity, that for the lesser being small and not appearing until the fifth year. By the sixth year the centres for the head and tuberosities have increased in size and become joined, so as to form a single large epiphysis.

The lower end of the humerus is developed in the following manner: At the end of the second year ossification commences in the capitellum, and from this point extends inward, so as to form the chief part of the articular end of the bone,

the centre for the inner part of the trochlea not appearing until about the age of twelve. Ossification commences in the internal condyle about the fifth year, and in the external one not until about the thirteenth or fourteenth year. About sixteen or seventeen years the outer condyle and both portions of the articulating surface (which have already joined) unite with the shaft; at eighteen years the inner condyle becomes joined; while the upper epiphysis, although the first formed, is not united until about the twentieth year.

Articulations.—With the glenoid cavity of the scapula and with the ulna and radius.

Attachment of the Muscles.—To twenty-four: to the greater tuberosity, the Supraspinatus, Infraspinatus, and Teres minor; to the lesser tuberosity, the Subscapularis; to the anterior bicipital ridge, the Pectoralis major; to the posterior bicipital ridge, the Teres major; to the bicipital groove, the Latissimus dorsi; to the shaft, the Deltoid, Coraco-brachialis, Brachialis anticus, external and internal heads of the Triceps; to the internal condyle, the Pronator radii teres, and common tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis, Palmaris longus, Flexor sublimis digitorum, and Flexor carpi ulnaris; to the external condyloid ridge, the Supinator longus and Extensor carpi radialis longior; to the external condyle, the common tendon of the Extensor carpi radialis brevior, Extensor communis digitorum, Extensor minimi digiti, Extensor carpi ulnaris, and Supinator brevis; to the back of the external condyle, the Anconeus.

Surface Form.—The humerus is almost entirely clothed by the muscles which surround it, and the only parts of this bone which are strictly subcutaneous are small portions of the internal and external condyles. In addition to these, the tuberosities and a part of the head of the bone can be felt under the skin and muscles by which they are covered. Of these the greater tuberosity forms the most prominent bony point of the shoulder, extending beyond the acromion process and covered by the Deltoid muscle. It influences materially the surface form of the shoulder. It is best felt while the arm is lying loosely by the side; if the arm be raised, it recedes from under the finger. The lesser tuberosity, directed forward and inward, is to be felt to the inner side of the greater tuberosity, just below the acromio-clavicular joint. Between the two tuberosities lies the bicipital groove. This can be defined by placing the finger and making firm pressure just internal to the greater tuberosity; then, by rotating the humerus, the groove will be felt to pass under the finger as the bone is rotated. With the arm abducted from the side, by pressing deeply in the axilla the lower part of the head of the bone is to be felt. On each side of the elbow-joint, and just above it, the internal and external condyles of the bone are to be felt. Of these the internal is the more prominent, but the ridge passing upward from it, the internal condyloid ridge, is much less marked than the external, and, as a rule, is not to be felt. Occasionally, however, we find along this border the hook-shaped process mentioned above. The external condyle is most plainly to be seen during semiflexion of the forearm, and its position is indicated by a depression between the attachment of the adjacent muscles. From it is to be felt a strong bony ridge running up the outer border of the shaft of the bone. This is the external supracondylar ridge; it is concave forward, and corresponds with the curved direction of the lower extremity of the humerus.

Surgical Anatomy.—There are several points of surgical interest connected with the humerus. First, as regards its development. The upper end, though the first to ossify, is the last to join the shaft, and the length of the bone is mainly due to growth from this upper epiphysis. Hence, in cases of *amputation of the arm* in young subjects the humerus continues to grow considerably, and the end of the bone, which immediately after the operation was covered with a thick cushion of soft tissue, begins to project, thinning the soft parts and rendering the *stump conical*. This may necessitate another operation, which consists in the removal of a couple of inches or so of the bone, and even after this operation a recurrence of the conical stump may take place.

There are several points of surgical interest in connection with *fractures*. First, as regard their causation: the bone may be broken by direct or indirect violence like the other long bones, but, in addition to this, it is probably more frequently fractured by muscular action than any other of this class of bone in the body. It is usually the shaft, just below the insertion of the Deltoid, which is thus broken. Mr. Pick has seen the accident happen from throwing a stone, and in an apparently healthy adult from cutting a piece of hard "cake tobacco" on a table. In this latter case there was no disease of the bone that could be discovered. Fractures of the upper end may take place through the anatomical neck, through the surgical neck, or separation of the

Capsular – Supra-sp., Infra-sp., subscap., teres minor.
Axillary – Pect. maj., Lati dorsi, Teres maj.
Subpensory – Deltoid, Biceps, Coraco-brach.
Antico-post. – Brach. ant., Triceps.

greater tuberosity may occur. Fracture of the anatomical neck is a very rare accident; in fact, it is doubted by some whether it ever occurs. These fractures are usually considered to be *intracapsular*, but they are probably partly within and partly without the capsule, as the lower part of the capsule is inserted some little distance below the anatomical neck, while the upper part is attached to it. They may be *impacted* or *non-impacted*. In most cases there is little or no displacement on account of the capsule, in whole or in part, remaining attached to the lower fragment. But occasionally a very remarkable alteration in position takes place; the upper fragment turns on its own axis, so that the cartilaginous surface of the head rests against the upper end of the lower fragment. When the fractured end is entirely separated from all its surroundings, its vascular supply must be entirely cut off, and one would expect it, theoretically, to necrose. But this must be exceedingly rare, for Gurlt was unable to find a single authenticated case recorded. Separation of the *upper epiphysis* of the humerus sometimes occurs in the young subject, and is marked by a characteristic deformity by which the lesion may be at once recognized. This consists in the presence of an abrupt projection at the front of the joint some short distance below the coracoid process, caused by the upper end of the lower fragment. In fractures of the *shaft of the humerus* the lesion may take place at any point, but appears to be more common in the lower than in the upper part of the bone. The points of interest in connection with these fractures are: (1) That the musculo-spiral nerve may be injured as it lies in the groove on the bone, or may become involved in the callus which is subsequently thrown out; and (2) the frequency of non-union. This is believed to be more common in the humerus than in any other bone, and various causes have been assigned for it. It would seem most probably to be due to the difficulty that there is in fixing the shoulder-joint and the upper fragment, and possibly the elbow-joint and lower fragment also. Other causes which have been assigned for the non-union are: (1) That in attempting passive motion of the elbow-joint to overcome any rigidity which may exist, the movement does not take place at the articulation, but at the seat of fracture; or that the patient, in consequence of the rigidity of the elbow, in attempting to flex or extend the forearm moves the fragment and not the joint. (2) The presence of small portions of muscular tissue between the broken ends. (3) Want of support to the elbow, so that the weight of the arm tends to drag the lower fragment away from the upper. An important distinction to make in fractures of the *lower end of the humerus* is between those that involve the elbow-joint and those which do not; the former are always serious, as they may lead to stiffness of the joint and impairment of the utility of the limb. They include the T-shaped fracture and oblique fractures which involve the articular surface. The fractures which do not involve the joint are the transverse above the condyles and the so-called epitrochlear fracture, in which the tip of the internal condyle is broken off, generally by direct violence.

Under the head of *separation of the lower epiphysis* two separate injuries have been described: One where the whole of the four ossific centres which form the lower extremity of the bone are separated from the shaft; and secondly, where the articular portion is alone separated, the two condyles remaining attached to the shaft of the bone. The *epiphysial line* between the shaft and lower end runs across the bone just above the tips of the condyles, a point to be borne in mind in performing the operation of excision.

Tumors originating from the humerus are of frequent occurrence. A not uncommon place for a *chondroma* to grow from is the shaft of the bone somewhere in the neighborhood of the insertion of the deltoid. *Sarcomata* frequently grow from this bone.

THE FOREARM.

The forearm is that portion of the upper extremity which is situated between the elbow and the wrist. Its skeleton is composed of two bones, the **ulna** and **radius**.

The Ulna or Elbow Bone.

The ulna (Figs. 133 and 134), so called from its forming the elbow (*ὠλένη*), is a long bone, prismatic in form, placed at the inner side of the forearm, parallel with the radius. It is the larger and longer of the two bones. Its upper extremity, of great thickness and strength, forms a large part of the articulation of the elbow-joint; it diminishes in size from above downward, its lower extremity being very small, and excluded from the wrist-joint by the interposition of an interarticular fibro-cartilage. It is divisible into a **shaft** and **two extremities.**

Upper Extremity.—The upper extremity, the strongest part of the bone, presents for examination two large, curved processes, the **olecranon process** and

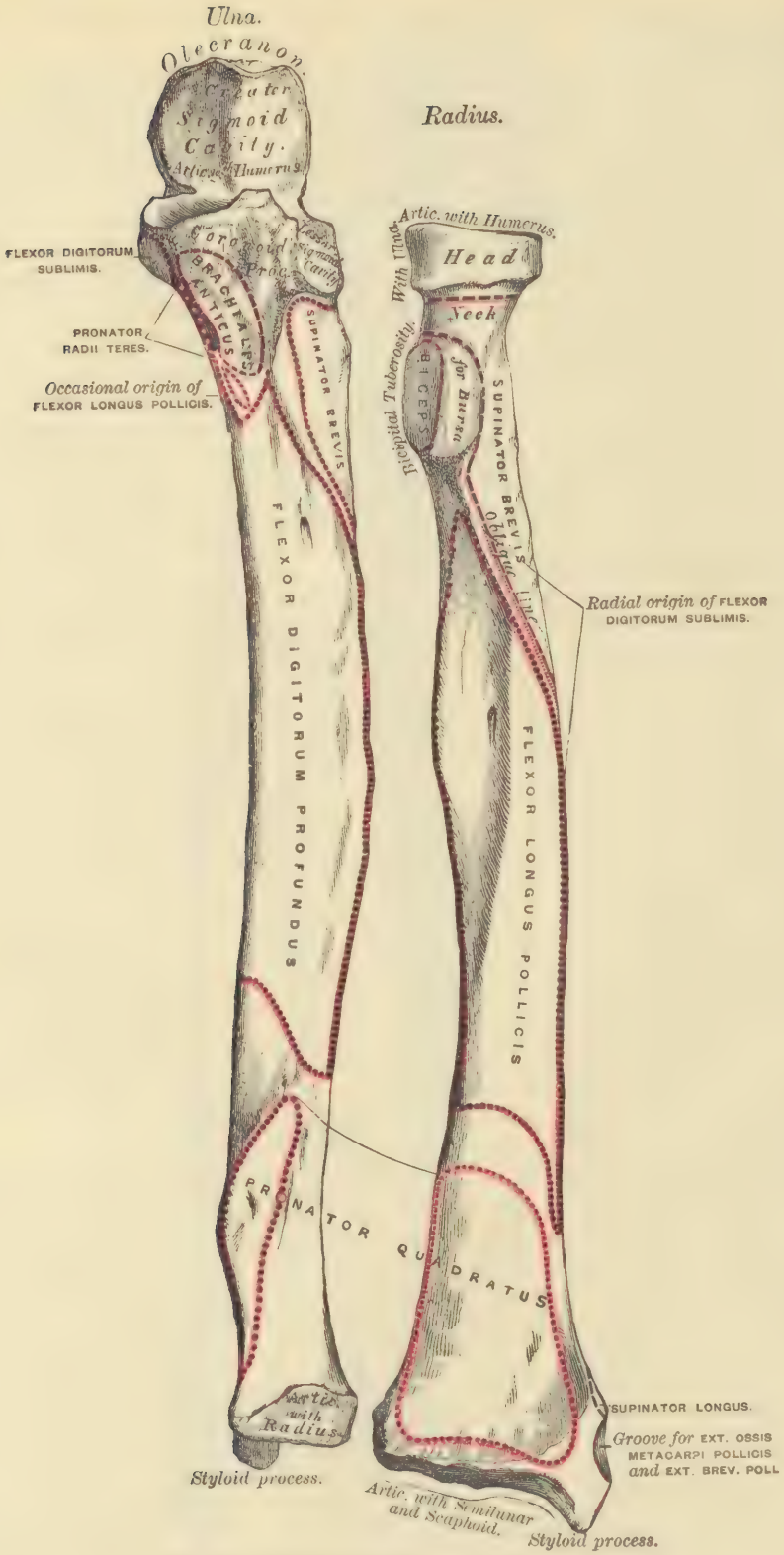


FIG. 133.—Bones of the left forearm. Anterior surface.

the **coronoid process**; and two concave, articular cavities, the **greater** and **lesser sigmoid cavities.**

Olecranon Process (*olecranon*).—The olecranon process (ὠλένη, elbow; κρανίον, head) is a large, thick, curved eminence situated at the upper and back part of the ulna. It is curved forward at the summit so as to present a prominent tip which is received into the olecranon fossa of the humerus in extension of the forearm; its base being contracted where it joins the shaft. This is the narrowest part of the upper end of the ulna, and, consequently, the most usual seat of fracture. The *posterior surface* of the olecranon, directed backward, is triangular, smooth, subcutaneous, and covered by a bursa. Its *upper surface* is of a quadrilateral form, marked behind by a rough impression for the attachment of the Triceps muscle; and in front, near the margin, by a slight transverse groove for the attachment of part of the posterior ligament of the elbow-joint. Its *interior surface* is smooth, concave, covered with cartilage in the recent state, and forms the upper and back part of the great sigmoid cavity. The *lateral borders* present a continuation of the same groove that was seen on the margin of the superior surface; they serve for the attachment of ligaments—viz., the back part of the internal lateral ligament internally, the posterior ligament externally. To the *inner border* is also attached a part of the Flexor carpi ulnaris, while to the *outer border* is attached the Anconeus muscle.

Coronoid Process (*processus coronoideus*).—The coronoid process (κορώνη, anything hooked like a crow's beak) is a triangular eminence of bone which projects horizontally forward from the upper and front part of the ulna. Its *base* is continuous with the shaft, and of considerable strength; so much so that fracture of it is an accident of rare occurrence. Its *apex* is pointed, slightly curved upward, and is received into the coronoid depression of the humerus in flexion of the forearm. Its *upper surface* is smooth, concave, and forms the lower part of the greater sigmoid cavity. The *under surface* is concave. At the junction of this surface with the shaft is a rough eminence, the **tubercle of the ulna** (*tuberositas ulnæ*), for the attachment of the oblique ligament of the superior radio-ulnar articulation and the Brachialis anticus muscle. Its outer surface presents a narrow, oblong, articular depression, the **lesser sigmoid cavity**. The *inner surface*, by its prominent, free margin, serves for the attachment of part of the internal lateral ligament. At the front part of this surface is a small, rounded eminence for the attachment of one head of the Flexor sublimis digitorum; behind the eminence, a depression for part of the origin of the Flexor profundus digitorum; and, descending from the eminence, a ridge which gives attachment to one head of the Pronator radii teres. Generally, the Flexor longus pollicis has an origin from the lower part of the coronoid process by a rounded bundle of muscular fibres.

Greater Sigmoid Cavity (*incisura semilunaris*).—The greater sigmoid cavity, so called from its resemblance to the old shape of the Greek letter Σ, is a semilunar depression of large size, formed by the olecranon and coronoid processes, and serving for articulation with the trochlear surface of the humerus. About the middle of either lateral border of this cavity is a notch which contracts it somewhat, and serves to indicate the junction of the two processes of which it is formed. The cavity is concave from above downward, and divided into two lateral parts by a smooth, elevated ridge which runs from the summit of the olecranon to the tip of the coronoid process. Of these two portions, the internal is the larger, and is slightly concave transversely; the external portion is convex above, slightly concave below. The articular surface, in the recent state, is covered with a thin layer of cartilage.

Lesser Sigmoid Cavity (*incisura radialis*).—The lesser sigmoid cavity is a narrow, oblong, articular depression, placed on the outer side of the coronoid process, and receives the lateral articular surface of the head of the radius. It is concave from

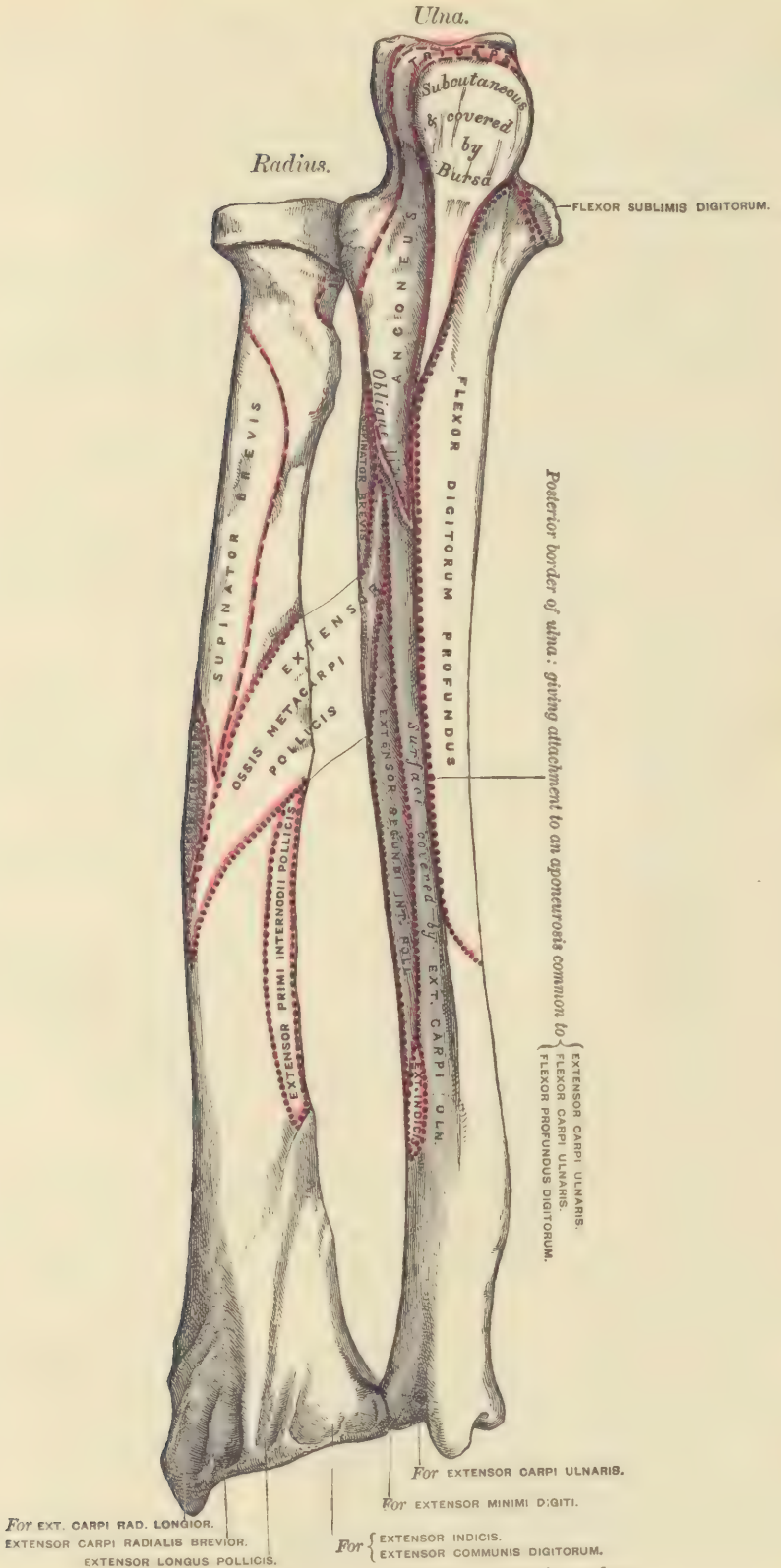


FIG. 134.—Bones of the left forearm. Posterior surface.

before backward, and its extremities, which are prominent, serve for the attachment of the orbicular ligament. In the recent state it is covered with a thin layer of cartilage.

The Shaft (*corpus ulnæ*).—The shaft, at its upper part, is prismatic in form, and curved from behind forward and from without inward, so as to be convex behind and externally; its central part is quite straight; its lower part rounded, smooth, and bent a little outward; it tapers gradually from above downward, and presents for examination three borders and three surfaces.

Anterior or Palmar Border (*margo volaris*).—The anterior border commences above at the prominent inner angle of the coronoid process, and terminates below in front of the styloid process. It is well marked above, smooth and rounded in the middle of its extent, and affords attachment to the Flexor profundus digitorum: its lower fourth, marked off from the rest of the border by the commencement of an oblique ridge on the anterior surface, serves for the attachment of the Pronator quadratus. It separates the anterior from the internal surface.

Posterior or Dorsal Border (*margo dorsalis*).—The posterior border commences above at the apex of the triangular subcutaneous surface at the back part of the olecranon, and terminates below at the back part of the styloid process; it is well marked in the upper three-fourths, and gives attachment to the aponeurosis common to the Flexor carpi ulnaris, the Extensor carpi ulnaris, and the Flexor profundus digitorum muscles; its lower fourth is smooth and rounded. This border separates the internal from the posterior surface.

External or Interosseous Border (*crista interossea*).—The external or interosseous border commences above by the union of two lines, which converge one from each extremity of the lesser sigmoid cavity, enclosing between them a triangular space for the attachment of part of the Supinator brevis. The external line is the *crista m. supinatoris*. The interosseous border of the ulna terminates below at the middle of the head of the ulna. Its two middle fourths are very prominent; its lower fourth is smooth and rounded. This border gives attachment to the interosseous membrane, and separates the anterior from the posterior surface.

Anterior or Palmar Surface (*facies volaris*).—The anterior surface, much broader above than below, is concave in the upper three-fourths of its extent, and affords attachment to the Flexor profundus digitorum; its lower fourth, also concave, is covered by the Pronator quadratus. The lower fourth is separated from the remaining portion of the bone by a prominent ridge, directed obliquely from above downward and inward; this ridge, the **oblique** or **pronator ridge**, marks the extent of attachment of the Pronator quadratus. At the junction of the upper with the middle third of the bone is the **nutrient foramen** (*foramen nutricium*). It opens into the **nutrient canal** (*canalis nutricius*), which is directed obliquely upward and inward (proximally).

Posterior or Dorsal Surface (*facies dorsalis*).—The posterior surface, directed backward and outward, is broad and concave above, somewhat narrower and convex in the middle of its course, narrow, smooth, and rounded below. It presents, above, an oblique ridge, which runs from the posterior extremity of the lesser sigmoid cavity, downward to the posterior border; the triangular surface above this ridge receives the insertion of the Anconeus muscle, whilst the upper part of the ridge itself affords attachment to the Supinator brevis. The surface of bone below this is subdivided by a longitudinal ridge, sometimes called the **perpendicular line**, into two parts; the internal part is smooth, and covered by the Extensor carpi ulnaris; the external portion, wider and rougher, gives attachment from above downward to part of the Supinator brevis, the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, the Extensor longus pollicis, and the Extensor indicis muscles.

Internal Surface (*facies medialis*).—The internal surface is broad and concave above, narrow and convex below. It gives attachment by its upper three-fourths

to the Flexor profundus digitorum muscle: its lower fourth is subcutaneous. The anterior and the inner surfaces constitute the **flexor surface**.

Lower Extremity.—The lower extremity of the ulna is of small size, and excluded from the articulation of the wrist-joint. It presents for examination two eminences, the outer and larger of which is a rounded, articular eminence, termed the **head of the ulna** (*capitulum ulnæ*), the inner, narrower and more projecting, is a non-articular eminence, the **styloid process** (*processus styloideus*). The **head** presents an articular facet, part of which, of an oval or semilunar form, is directed downward, and articulates with the upper surface of the interarticular fibro-cartilage which separates it from the wrist-joint; the remaining portion, directed outward, is narrow, convex, and received into the sigmoid cavity of the radius. The peripheral margin of the portion of the head which articulates with the ulna is called the **articular circumference** (*circumferentia articularis*). The **styloid process** projects from the inner and back part of the bone, and descends a little lower than the head, terminating in a rounded summit, which affords attachment to the internal lateral ligament of the wrist. The head is separated from the styloid process by a depression for the attachment of the triangular interarticular fibro-cartilage; and behind, by a shallow groove for the passage of the tendon of the Extensor carpi ulnaris.

Structure.—Similar to that of the other long bones.

Development.—By *three* centres: one for the shaft, one for the inferior extremity, and one for the olecranon (Fig. 135). Ossification commences near the middle of the shaft about the eighth week, and soon extends through the greater part of the bone. At birth the ends are cartilaginous. About the fourth year a separate osseous nucleus appears in the middle of the head, which soon extends into the styloid process. About the tenth year ossific matter appears in the olecranon near its extremity, the chief part of this process being formed from an extension of the shaft of the bone into it. At about the sixteenth year the upper epiphysis becomes joined, and at about the twentieth year the lower one.

FIG. 135.—Plan of the development of the ulna. By three centres.

Articulations.—With the humerus and radius.

Attachment of Muscles.—To sixteen: to the olecranon, the Triceps, Anconeus, and one head of the Flexor carpi ulnaris. To the coronoid process, the Brachialis anticus, Pronator radii teres, Flexor sublimis digitorum, and Flexor profundus digitorum; generally also the Flexor longus pollicis. To the shaft, the Flexor profundus digitorum, Pronator quadratus, Flexor carpi ulnaris, Extensor carpi ulnaris, Anconeus, Supinator brevis, Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, Extensor longus pollicis, and Extensor indicis.

Surface Form.—The most prominent part of the ulna on the surface of the body is the olecranon process, which can always be felt at the back of the elbow-joint. When the forearm is flexed, the upper quadrilateral surface can be felt, directed backward; during extension it recedes into the olecranon fossa, and the contracting fibres of the triceps prevent its being perceived. At the back of the olecranon is the smooth, triangular, subcutaneous surface, which below is continuous with the posterior border of the shaft of the bone, and felt in every position of the forearm. During extension the upper border of the olecranon is slightly above the level of the internal condyle, and the process itself is nearer to this condyle than the outer one. Running down the back of the forearm, from the apex of the triangular surface which forms the posterior

surface of the olecranon, is a prominent ridge of bone, the posterior border of the ulna. This is to be felt throughout the entire length of the shaft of the bone, from the olecranon above to the styloid process below. As it passes down the forearm it pursues a sinuous course and inclines to the inner side, so that, though it is situated in the middle of the back of the limb above, it is on the inner side of the wrist at its termination. It becomes rounded off in its lower third, and may be traced below to the small, subcutaneous surface of the styloid process. Internal to this border the lower fourth of the inner surface is to be felt. The styloid process is to be felt as a prominent tubercle of bone, continuous above with the posterior subcutaneous border of the ulna, and terminating below in a blunt apex, which lies a little internal and behind, but on a level with, the wrist-joint. The styloid process is best felt when the hand is in the same line as the bones of the forearm, and in a position midway between supination and pronation. If the forearm is pronated while the finger is placed on the process, it will be felt to recede, and another prominence of bone will appear just behind and above it. This is the head of the ulna, which articulates with the lower end of the radius and the triangular interarticular fibro-cartilage, and now projects between the tendons of the Extensor carpi ulnaris and the Extensor minimi digiti muscles.

The Radius.

The radius (*radius*, a ray, or spoke of a wheel) is so called because it is the rotary bone of the forearm. It is situated on the outer side of the forearm, lying side by side with the ulna, which exceeds it in length and size (Figs. 133 and 134). Its upper end is small, and forms only a small part of the elbow-joint; but its lower end is large, and forms the chief part of the wrist. It is one of the long bones, prismatic in form, slightly curved longitudinally, and, like other long bones, has a **shaft** and **two extremities.**

Upper Extremity.—The upper extremity presents a **head, neck,** and **tuberosity.**

The Head.—The head (*capitulum radii*) is of a cylindrical form, depressed on its upper surface into a shallow cup (*fovea capituli radii*), which articulates with the capitellum or radial head of the humerus. In the recent state it is covered with a layer of cartilage which is thinnest at its centre. Around the circumference of the head is a smooth, articular surface (*circumferentia articularis*), broad internally where it articulates with the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna; narrow in the rest of its circumference, where it rotates within the orbicular ligament. It is coated with cartilage in the recent state. The head is supported on a round, smooth, and constricted portion of bone, called the **neck** (*collum radii*), which presents, behind, a slight ridge, for the attachment of part of the Supinator brevis. Beneath the neck, at the inner and front aspect of the bone, is a rough eminence, the **bicipital tuberosity** (*tuberositas radii*). Its surface is divided into two parts by a vertical line—a posterior, rough portion, for the insertion of the tendon of the Biceps muscle; and an anterior, smooth portion, on which a bursa is interposed between the tendon and the bone.

The Shaft (*corpus radii*).—The shaft of the bone is prismoid in form, narrower above than below, and slightly curved, so as to be convex outward. It presents three surfaces, separated by three borders.

Anterior or Palmar Border (*margo volaris*).—The anterior border extends from the lower part of the tuberosity above to the anterior part of the base of the styloid process below. It separates the anterior from the external surface. Its upper third is very prominent; and from its oblique direction, downward and outward, has received the name of the **oblique line of the radius.** It gives attachment externally to the Supinator brevis, internally to the Flexor longus pollicis, and between these to the Flexor sublimis digitorum. The middle third of the anterior border is indistinct and rounded. Its lower fourth is sharp, prominent, affords attachment to the Pronator quadratus and to the posterior annular ligament of the wrist, and terminates in a small tubercle at the base of the styloid process, into which is inserted the tendon of the Supinator longus.

Posterior or Dorsal Border (*margo dorsalis*).—The posterior border commences above at the back part of the neck of the radius, and terminates below at the posterior part of the base of the styloid process; it separates the posterior from the external surface. It is indistinct above and below, but well marked in the middle third of the bone.

Internal or Interosseous Border (*crista interossea*).—The internal or interosseous border commences above at the back part of the tuberosity, where it is rounded and indistinct, becomes sharp and prominent as it descends, and at its lower part divides into two ridges, which descend to the anterior and posterior margins of the sigmoid cavity. This border separates the anterior from the posterior surface, and has the interosseous membrane attached to it throughout the greater part of its extent.

Anterior or Palmar or Flexor Surface (*facies volaris*).—The anterior surface is concave for its upper three-fourths, and gives attachment to the Flexor longus pollicis muscle; it is broad and flat for its lower fourth, and gives attachment to the Pronator quadratus. A prominent ridge limits the attachment of the Pronator quadratus below, and between this and the inferior border is a triangular rough surface for the attachment of the anterior ligament of the wrist-joint. At the junction of the upper and middle third of this surface is the **nutrient foramen** (*foramen nutricium*), the opening of the **nutrient canal** (*canalis nutricius*), which is directed obliquely upward (proximally).

Posterior or Dorsal or Extensor Surface (*facies dorsalis*).—The posterior surface is rounded, convex, and smooth in the upper third of its extent, and covered by the Supinator brevis muscle. Its middle third is broad, slightly concave, and gives attachment to the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis above, the Extensor brevis pollicis below. Its lower third is broad, convex, and covered by the tendons of the muscles, which subsequently run in the grooves on the lower end of the bone.

External Surface (*facies lateralis*).—The external surface is rounded and convex throughout its entire extent. Its upper third gives attachment to the Supinator brevis muscle. About its centre is seen a rough ridge, for the insertion of the Pronator radii teres muscle. Its lower part is narrow, and covered by the tendons of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis and Extensor brevis pollicis muscles.

Lower Extremity.—The lower extremity of the radius is large, of quadrilateral form, and provided with two articular surfaces—one at the extremity, for articulation with the carpus, and one at the inner side of the bone, for articulation with the ulna. The **carpal articular surface** (*facies articularis carpea*) is of triangular form, concave, smooth, and divided by a slight antero-posterior ridge into two parts. Of these, the external is of a triangular form, and articulates with the scaphoid bone; the inner is quadrilateral and articulates with the semilunar bone. The articular surface for the head of the ulna is called the **sigmoid cavity of the radius** (*incisura ulnaris*); it is narrow, concave, smooth, and articulates with the head of the ulna. The circumference of this end of the bone presents three surfaces—an anterior, external, and posterior. The *anterior surface*, rough and irregular, affords attachment to the anterior ligament of the wrist-joint. The *external surface* is prolonged obliquely downward into a strong, conical projection, the **styloid process** (*processus styloideus*), which gives attachment by its base to the tendon of the Supinator longus, and by its apex to the external lateral ligament of the wrist-joint. The outer surface of this process is marked by a flat groove, which runs obliquely downward and forward, and gives passage to the tendons of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis and the Extensor brevis pollicis. The *posterior surface* is convex, affords attachment to the posterior ligament of the wrist, and is marked by three grooves. Proceeding from without inward, the first groove is broad but shallow, and subdivided into two by a slightly elevated ridge: the outer of these two transmits the tendon of the Extensor carpi radialis

longior, the inner the tendon of the Extensor carpi radialis brevior. The second, which is near the centre of the bone, is a deep but narrow groove, bounded on its outer side by a sharply-defined ridge; it is directed obliquely from above, downward and outward, and transmits the tendon of the Extensor longus pollicis. The third, lying most internally, is a broad groove, for the passage of the tendons of the Extensor indicis and Extensor communis digitorum.

Structure.—Similar to that of the other long bones.

Development (Fig. 136).—By *three* centres: one for the shaft and one for each extremity. That for the shaft makes its appearance near the centre of the bone, about the eighth week of fœtal life. About the end of the second year ossification commences in the lower epiphysis, and about the fifth year in the upper end. At the age of seventeen or eighteen the upper epiphysis becomes joined to the shaft, the lower epiphysis becoming united about the twentieth year.

FIG. 136.—Plan of the development of the radius. By three centres.

Articulation.—With four bones: the humerus, ulna, scaphoid, and semilunar.

Attachment of Muscles.—To nine: to the tuberosity, the Biceps, to the oblique ridge, the Supinator brevis, Flexor sublimis digitorum, and Flexor longus pollicis: to the shaft (its anterior surface), the Flexor longus pollicis and Pronator quadratus; (its posterior surface), the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis and Extensor brevis pollicis; (its outer surface), the Pronator radii teres; and to the styloid process, the Supinator longus.

Surface Form.—Just below and a little in front of the posterior surface of the external condyle a part of the head of the radius may be felt, covered by the orbicular and external lateral ligaments. There is in this situation a little dimple in the skin, which is most visible when the arm is extended, and which marks the position of the head of the bone. If the finger is placed on this dimple and the forearm pronated and supinated, the head of the bone will be distinctly perceived rotating in the lesser sigmoid cavity. The upper half of the shaft of the radius cannot be felt, as it is surrounded by the fleshy bellies of the muscles arising from the external condyle. The lower half of the shaft can be readily examined, though covered by tendons and muscles and not strictly subcutaneous. If traced downward, the shaft will be felt to terminate in a lozenge-shaped, convex surface on the outer side of the base of the styloid process. This is the only subcutaneous part of the bone, and from its lower extremity the apex of the styloid process will be felt bending inward toward the wrist. About the middle of the posterior aspect of the lower extremity of the bone is a well-marked ridge, best perceived when the hand is slightly flexed on the wrist. It forms the outer boundary of the oblique groove on the posterior surface of the bone, through which the tendon of the Extensor longus pollicis runs, and serves to keep that tendon in place.

Surgical Anatomy of the Radius and Ulna.—The two bones of the forearm are more often broken together than is either the radius or ulna separately. It is therefore convenient to consider *fractures* of both bones in the first instance, and subsequently to mention the principal fractures which take place in each bone individually. These fractures may be produced by either direct or indirect violence, though more commonly by direct violence. When indirect force is applied to the forearm the radius generally alone gives way, though both bones may suffer. The fracture from indirect force generally takes place somewhere about the middle of the bones; fracture from direct violence may occur at any part, more often, however, in the lower half of the bone. The fracture is usually transverse, but may be more or less oblique. A point of interest in connection with these fractures is the tendency that there is for the two bones to unite across the interosseous membrane; the limb should therefore be put up in a position midway between supination and pronation, which is not only the most comfortable position, but also separates the bones most widely from each other, and therefore diminishes the risk of the bones

becoming united across the interosseous membrane. The splints, anterior and posterior, which are applied in these cases should be rather wider than the limb, so as to prevent any lateral pressure on the bones. In these cases there is a greater liability to gangrene from the pressure of the splints than in other parts of the body. This is no doubt due principally to two causes: (1) the flexion of the forearm compressing to a certain extent the brachial artery and retarding the flow of blood to the limb; and (2) the superficial position of the two main arteries of the forearm in a part of their course, and their liability to be compressed by the splints. The special fractures of the ulna are—(1) Fracture of the olecranon. This may be caused by direct violence, falls on the elbow, with the forearm flexed, or by muscular action by the sudden contraction of the triceps. The most common place for the fracture to occur is at the constricted portion where the olecranon joins the shaft of the bone, and the fracture may be either transverse or oblique; but any part may be broken, even a thin shell may be torn off. Fractures from direct violence are occasionally comminuted. The displacement is sometimes very slight, owing to the fibrous structures around the process not being torn. (2) Fracture of the coronoid process sometimes occurs as a complication of dislocation backward of the bones of the forearm, but it is doubtful if it ever occurs as an uncomplicated injury. (3) Fractures of the shaft of the ulna may occur at any part, but usually takes place at the middle of the bone or a little below it. They are almost always the result of direct violence. (4) The styloid process may be knocked off by direct violence. Fractures of the radius consist of—(1) Fracture of the head of the bone; this generally occurs in conjunction with some other lesion, but may occur as an uncomplicated injury. (2) Fracture of the neck may also take place, but is generally complicated with other injury. (3) Fractures of the shaft of the radius are very common, and may take place at any part of the bone. They may take place from either direct or indirect violence. In fractures of the upper third of the shaft of the bone, that is to say, above the insertion of the Pronator radii teres, the displacement is very great. The upper fragment is strongly supinated by the Biceps and Supinator brevis, and flexed by the Biceps; while the lower fragment is pronated and drawn toward the ulna by the two pronators. If such a fracture is put up in the ordinary position, midway between supination and pronation, the fracture will unite with the upper fragment in a position of supination, and the lower one in the mid-position, and thus considerable impairment of the movements of the hand will result. The limb should be put up with the forearm supinated. (4) The most important fracture of the radius is that of the lower end (*Colles's fracture*). The fracture is transverse, and generally takes place about an inch from the lower extremity. It is caused by falls on the palm of the hand, and is an injury of advanced life, occurring more frequently in the female than the male. In consequence of the manner in which the fracture is caused, the upper fragment becomes driven into the lower, and impaction is the result; or else the lower fragment becomes split up into two or more pieces, so that no fixation occurs. Separation of the lower epiphysis of the radius may take place in the young. This injury and Colles's fracture may be distinguished from other injuries in this neighborhood—especially dislocation, with which it is liable to be confounded—by observing the relative positions of the styloid processes of the ulna and radius. In the natural condition of parts, with the arm hanging by the side, the styloid process of the radius is on a lower level than that of the ulna; that is to say, nearer the ground. After fracture or separation of the epiphysis this process is on the same or a higher level than that of the ulna, whereas it would be unaltered in position in dislocation.

THE HAND.

The skeleton of the hand is subdivided into three segments—the **carpus** or **wrist bones**; the **metacarpus** or **bones of the palm**; and the **phalanges** or **bones of the digits**.

The Carpus (Ossa Carpi) (Figs. 137, 138).

The bones of the carpus (*καρπός*, the wrist), eight in number, are arranged in two rows. Those of the upper row, enumerated from the radial to the ulnar side, are the **scaphoid, semilunar, cuneiform,** and **pisiform**; those of the lower row, enumerated in the same order, are the **trapezium, trapezoid, os magnum,** and **unciform.**

Common Characters of the Carpal Bones.—Each bone (excepting the pisiform) presents six surfaces. Of these the *anterior*, *palmar*, or *volar*, and the *posterior* or *dorsal* are rough for ligamentous attachment, the dorsal surface being the broader, except in the scaphoid and semilunar. The *superior* or *proximal* and *inferior* or *distal* are articular, the superior generally convex, the inferior concave; and the

internal and *external* are also articular when in contact with contiguous bones, otherwise rough and tubercular. The structure in all is similar, consisting of

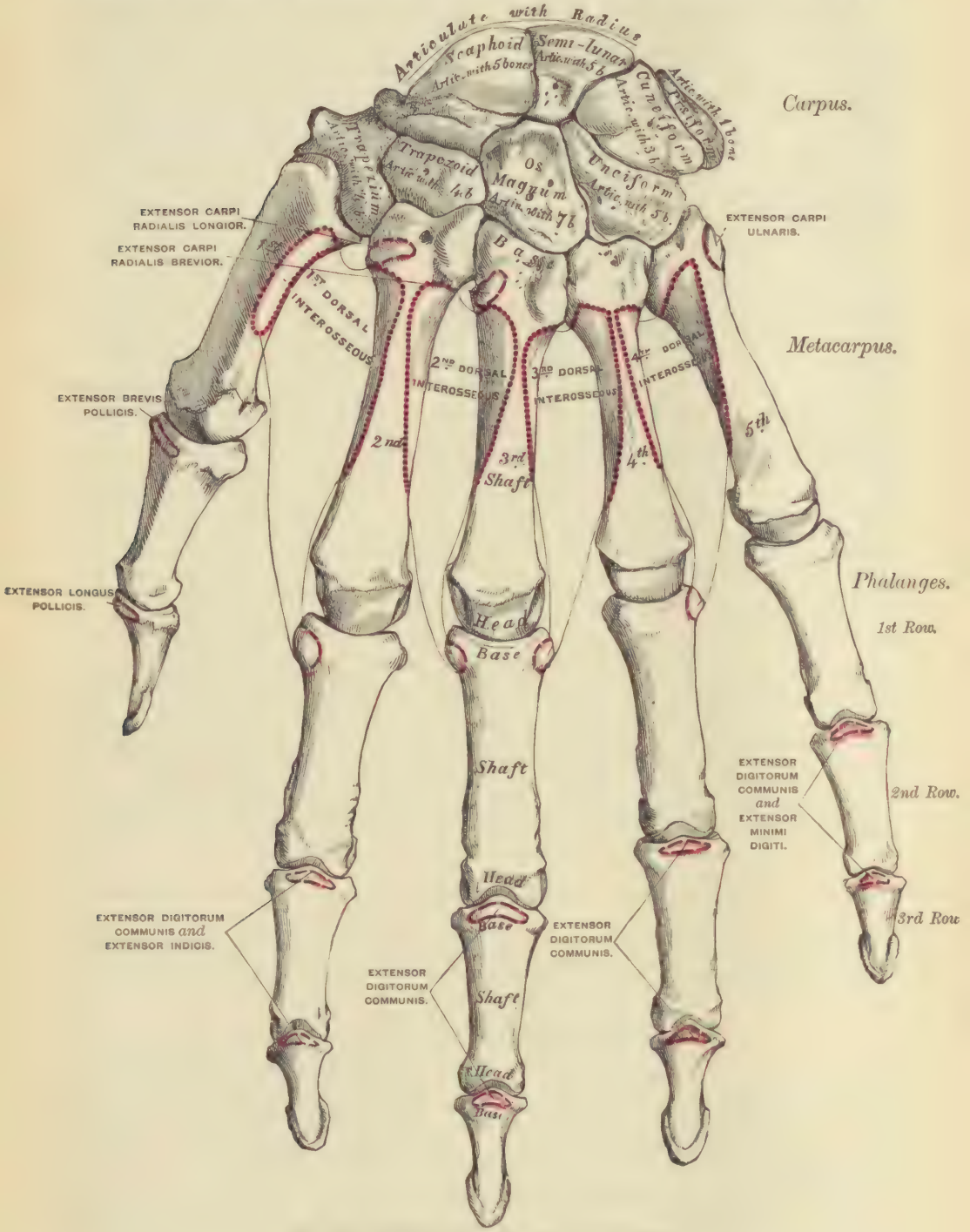


FIG. 137.—Bones of the left hand. Dorsal surface.

cancellous tissue enclosed in a layer of compact bone. Each bone is also developed from a single centre of ossification.

Bones of the Upper Row.

Scaphoid or Navicular Bone (*os naviculare manus*, the *boat-like bone*) (Fig. 139).—The scaphoid (σκάφη, a boat, εἶδος, like) is the largest bone of the first

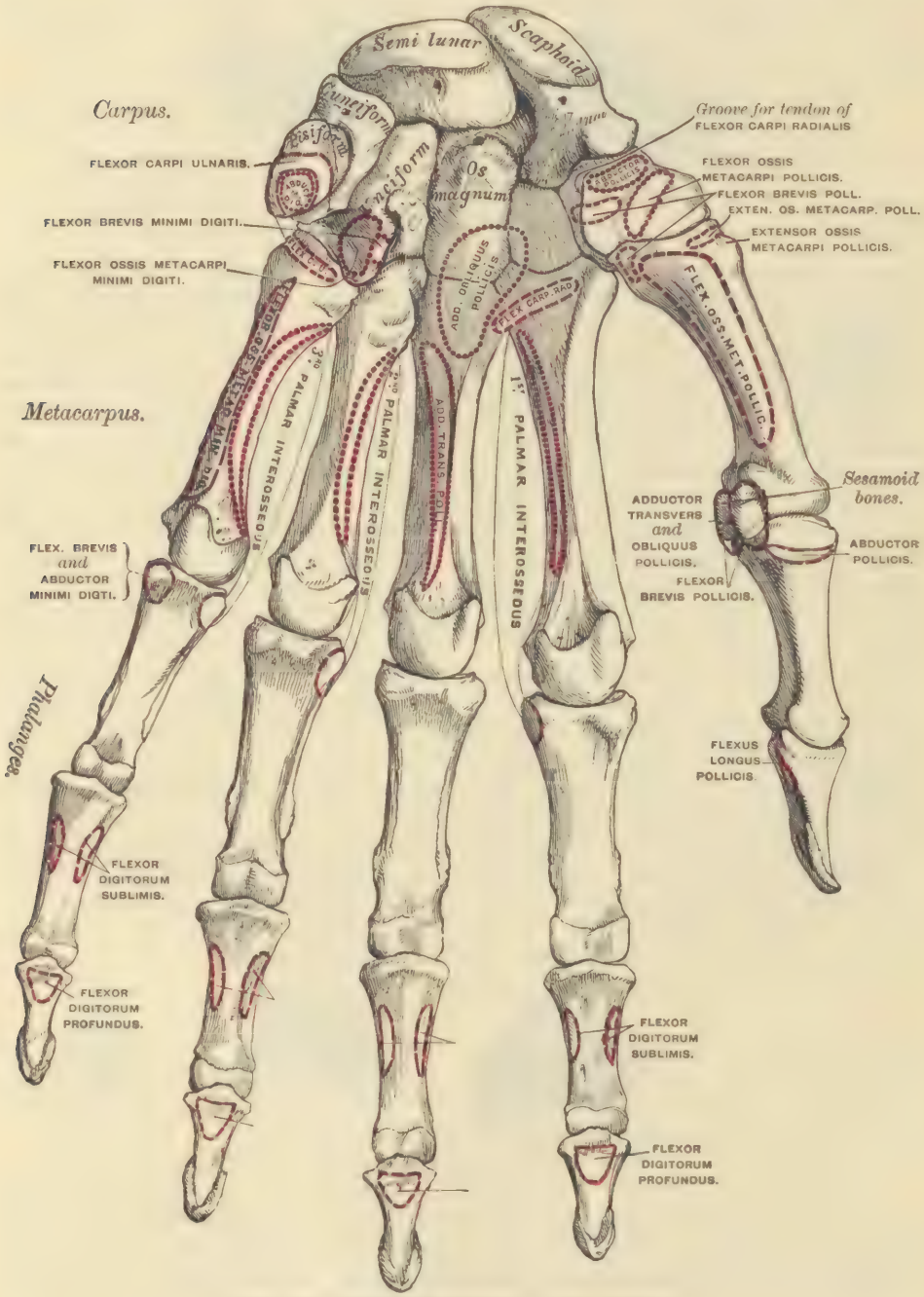


FIG. 138.—Bones of the left hand. Palmar surface.

row. It has received its name from its fancied resemblance to a boat, being broad at one end and narrowed like a prow at the opposite. It is situated at

the upper and outer part of the carpus, its long axis being from above downward, outward, and forward.

Surfaces.—The *superior surface* is convex, smooth, of triangular shape, and articulates with the lower end of the radius. The *inferior surface*, directed

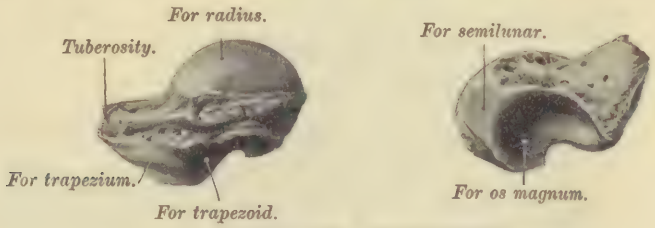


Fig. 139.—The left scaphoid.

downward, outward, and backward, is smooth, convex, also triangular, and divided by a slight ridge into two parts, the external of which articulates with the trapezium, the inner with the trapezoid. The *posterior* or *dorsal surface* presents a narrow, rough groove which runs the entire length of the bone and serves for the attachment of ligaments. The *anterior* or *palmar surface* is concave above, and elevated at its lower and outer part into a prominent rounded **tuberosity** (*tuberculum ossis navicularis*), which projects forward from the front of the carpus and gives attachment to the anterior annular ligament of the wrist and sometimes a few fibres of the Abductor pollicis. The *external surface* is rough and narrow, and gives attachment to the external lateral ligament of the wrist. The *internal surface* presents two articular facets: of these, the superior or smaller one is flattened, of semilunar form, and articulates with the semilunar; the inferior or larger is concave, forming, with the semilunar bone, a concavity for the head of the os magnum.

To ascertain to which side the bone belongs, hold it with the superior or radial convex, articular surface upward, and the posterior surface—*i. e.*, the narrow, non-articular, grooved surface—toward you. The tubercle on the outer surface points to the side to which the bone belongs.[1]

Articulations.—With *five* bones: the radius above, trapezium and trapezoid below, os magnum and semilunar internally.

Attachment of Muscles.—Occasionally a few fibres of the Abductor pollicis.

Semilunar (*os lunatum*) (Fig. 140).—The semilunar (*semi*, half; *luna*, moon) bone may be distinguished by its deep concavity and crescentic outline. It is

Fig. 140.—The left semilunar.

situated in the centre of the upper row of the carpus, between the scaphoid and cuneiform.

Surfaces.—The *superior surface*, convex, smooth, and bounded by four edges, articulates with the radius. The *inferior surface* is deeply concave, and of greater

[1] In these directions each bone is supposed to be placed in its natural position—that is, such a position as it would occupy when the arm is hanging by the side, the forearm in a position of supination, the thumb being directed outward, and the palm of the hand looking forward.

extent from before backward than transversely: it articulates with the head of the os magnum and by a long, narrow facet (separated by a ridge from the general surface) with the unciform bone. The *anterior* or *palmar* and *posterior* or *dorsal surfaces* are rough, for the attachment of ligaments, the former being the broader and of a somewhat rounded form. The *external surface* presents a narrow, flattened, semilunar facet for articulation with the scaphoid. The *internal surface* is marked by a smooth, quadrilateral facet, for articulation with the cuneiform.

Hold it with the convex articular surface for the radius upward, and the narrowest non-articular surface toward you. The semilunar facet for the scaphoid will be on the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations.—With *five* bones: the radius above, os magnum and unciform below, scaphoid and cuneiform on either side.

Cuneiform (*os triquetrum*, the *wedge-shaped bone*) (Fig. 141).—The cuneiform (*cuneus*, a wedge; *forma*, likeness) may be distinguished by its pyramidal shape, and by its having an oval, isolated facet for articulation with the pisiform bone. It is situated at the upper and inner side of the carpus.

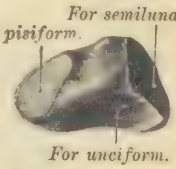


Fig. 141.—The left cuneiform.

Surfaces.—The *superior surface* presents an internal, rough, non-articular portion, and an external or articular portion, which is convex, smooth, and articulates with the triangular interarticular fibro-cartilage of the wrist. The *inferior surface*, directed outward, is concave, sinuously curved, and smooth for articulation with the unciform. The *posterior* or *dorsal surface* is rough, for the attachment of ligaments. The *anterior* or *palmar surface* presents, at its inner side, an oval facet, for articulation with the pisiform; and is rough externally, for ligamentous attachment. The *external surface*, the base of the pyramid, is marked by a flat, quadrilateral, smooth facet, for articulation with the semilunar. The *internal surface*, the summit of the pyramid, is pointed and roughened, for the attachment of the internal lateral ligament of the wrist.

Hold the bone with the surface supporting the pisiform facet away from you, and the concavo-convex surface for the unciform downward. The base of the wedge (*i. e.*, the broad end of the bone) will be on the side to which it belongs.

Articulations.—With *three* bones: the semilunar externally, the pisiform in front, the unciform below; and with the triangular, interarticular fibro-cartilage which separates it from the lower end of the ulna.

Pisiform (*os pisiforme*) (Fig. 142).—The pisiform (*pisum*, a pea; *forma*, likeness) may be known by its small size and by its presenting a single articular facet. It is situated on a plane anterior to the other bones of the carpus; it is spheroidal in form, with its long diameter directed vertically.

Fig. 142. The left pisiform.

Surfaces.—Its *posterior surface* is a smooth, oval facet, for articulation with the cuneiform. This facet approaches the superior, but not the inferior border of the bone. The *anterior* or *palmar surface* is rounded and rough, and gives attachment to the anterior annular ligament and to the Flexor carpi ulnaris and Abductor minimi digiti muscles. The *outer* and *inner surfaces* are also rough, the former being concave, the latter usually convex.

Hold the bone with the posterior surface—that which presents the articular facet—toward you, in such a manner that the faceted portion of the surface is uppermost. The outer, concave surface will point to the side to which it belongs.

Articulations.—With *one* bone, the cuneiform.

Attachment of Muscles.—To two: the Flexor carpi ulnaris and Abductor minimi digiti; and to the anterior annular ligament.

Bones of the Lower Row.

Trapezium (*os multangulum majus*) (Fig. 143).—The trapezium (*τράπεζα*, a table) is of very irregular form. It may be distinguished by a deep groove, for

Fig. 143.—The left trapezium.

the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis muscle. It is situated at the external and inferior part of the carpus between the scaphoid and first metacarpal bone.

Surfaces.—The *superior surface*, concave and smooth, is directed upward and inward, and articulates with the scaphoid. The *inferior surface*, directed downward and inward, is oval, concave from side to side, convex from before backward, so as to form a saddle-shaped surface, for articulation with the base of the first metacarpal bone. The *anterior* or *palmar surface* is narrow and rough. At its upper part is a deep groove running from above obliquely downward and inward; it transmits the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis, and is bounded externally by a prominent ridge, the **oblique ridge of the trapezium** (*tuberculum ossis multanguli majoris*). This surface gives attachment to the Abductor pollicis, Flexor ossis metacarpi pollicis, and Flexor brevis pollicis muscles, and the anterior annular ligament. The *posterior* or *dorsal surface* is rough. The *external surface* is also broad and rough, for the attachment of ligaments. The *internal surface* presents two articular facets: the upper one, large and concave, articulates with the trapezoid; the lower one, small and oval, with the base of the second metacarpal bone.

Hold the bone with the saddle-shaped surface downward and the grooved surface away from you. The prominent, rough, non-articular surface points to the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations.—With *four* bones: the scaphoid above, the trapezoid and second metacarpal bones internally, the first metacarpal below.

Attachment of Muscles.—Abductor pollicis, Flexor ossis metacarpi pollicis, and part of the Flexor brevis pollicis.

Trapezoid (*os multangulum minus*) (Fig. 144).—The trapezoid is the smallest bone in the second row. It may be known by its wedge-shaped form, the broad

Fig. 144.—The left trapezoid.

end of the wedge forming the dorsal, the narrow end the palmar, surface, and by its having four articular surfaces touching each other and separated by sharp edges.

Surfaces.—The *superior surface*, quadrilateral in form, smooth, and slightly concave, articulates with the scaphoid. The *inferior surface* articulates with the upper

end of the second metacarpal bone; it is convex from side to side, concave from before backward, and subdivided by an elevated ridge into two unequal lateral facets. The *posterior* or *dorsal* and *anterior* or *palmar surfaces* are rough, for the attachment of ligaments, the former being the larger of the two. The *external surface*, convex and smooth, articulates with the trapezium. The *internal surface* is concave and smooth in front, for articulation with the os magnum; rough behind, for the attachment of an interosseous ligament.

Hold the bone with the larger, non-articular surface toward you, and the smooth, quadrilateral articular surface upward. The convex articular surface will point to the side to which the bone belongs.[1]

Articulations.—With *four* bones: the scaphoid above, second metacarpal bone below, trapezium externally, os magnum internally.

Os Magnum (*os capitatum*) (Fig. 145).—The os magnum is the largest bone of the carpus, and occupies the centre of the wrist. It presents, above, a rounded

FIG. 145.—The left os magnum.

portion or head, which is received into the concavity formed by the scaphoid and semilunar bones; a constricted portion or neck; and, below, the body.

Surfaces.—The *superior surface* is rounded, smooth, and articulates with the semilunar. The *inferior surface* is divided by two ridges into three facets for articulation with the second, third, and fourth metacarpal bones, that for the third (the middle facet) being the largest of the three. The *posterior* or *dorsal surface* is broad and rough; the *anterior* or *palmar*, narrow, rounded, and also rough, for the attachment of ligaments and a part of the Adductor obliquus pollicis. The *external surface* articulates with the trapezoid by a small facet at its anterior inferior angle, behind which is a rough depression for the attachment of an interosseous ligament. Above this is a deep and rough groove, which forms part of the neck and serves for the attachment of ligaments, bounded superiorly by a smooth, convex surface, for articulation with the scaphoid. The *internal surface* articulates with the unciform by a smooth, concave, oblong facet which occupies its posterior and superior parts, and is rough in front, for the attachment of an interosseous ligament.

Hold the bone with the broader, non-articular surface toward you, and the head upward. The small, articular facet at the anterior inferior angle of the external surface will point to the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations.—With *seven* bones: the scaphoid and semilunar above; the second, third, and fourth metacarpal below; the trapezoid on the radial side; and the unciform on the ulnar side.

Attachment of Muscles.—Part of the Adductor obliquus pollicis.

Unciform (*os hamatum*) (Fig. 146).—The unciform or **hook bone** (*uncus*, a hook; *forma*, likeness) may be readily distinguished by its wedge-shaped form and the hook-like process that projects from its palmar surface. It is situated at the inner

[1] Occasionally in a badly marked bone there is some difficulty in ascertaining to which side the bone belongs; the following method will sometimes be found useful: Hold the bone with its broader, non-articular surface upward, so that its sloping border is directed toward you. The border will slope to the side to which the bone belongs.

and lower angle of the carpus, with its base downward, resting on the two inner metacarpal bones, and its apex directed upward and outward.

Surfaces.—The *superior surface*, the apex of the wedge, is narrow, convex, smooth, and articulates with the semilunar. The *inferior surface* articulates with

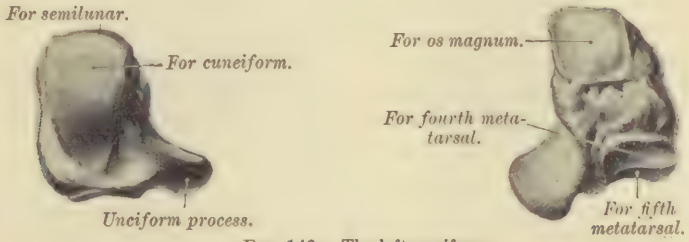


FIG. 146.—The left unciform.

the fourth and fifth metacarpal bones, the concave surface for each being separated by a ridge which runs from before backward. The *posterior* or *dorsal surface* is triangular and rough, for ligamentous attachment. The *anterior* or *palmar surface* presents, at its lower and inner side, a curved, hook-like process of bone, the **unciform process** (*hamulus ossis hamati*), directed from the palmar surface forward and outward. It gives attachment by its apex to the annular ligament and Flexor carpi ulnaris; by its inner surface to the Flexor brevis minimi digiti and the Opponens minimi digiti; and is grooved on its outer side, for the passage of the Flexor tendons into the palm of the hand. This is one of the four eminences on the front of the carpus to which the anterior annular ligament is attached, the others being the pisiform internally, the oblique ridge of the trapezium and the tuberosity of the scaphoid externally. The *internal surface* articulates with the cuneiform by an oblong facet cut obliquely from above, downward and inward. The *external surface* articulates with the os magnum by its upper and posterior part, the remaining portion being rough, for the attachment of ligaments.

Hold the bone with the hooked process away from you, and the articular surface, divided into two parts, for the metacarpal bones, downward The concavity of the process will be on the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations.—With *five* bones: the semilunar above, the fourth and fifth metacarpal below, the cuneiform internally, the os magnum externally.

Attachment of Muscles.—To three: the Flexor brevis minimi digiti, the Opponens minimi digiti, the Flexor carpi ulnaris.

The Metacarpus (Ossa Metacarpalia) (Figs. 137, 138).

The metacarpal bones are five in number, and they are numbered from 1 to 5 inclusive, the first being the metacarpal bone of the thumb, the fifth the metacarpal bone of the index finger. They are long, cylindrical bones, presenting for examination a shaft and two extremities.

Common Characters of the Metacarpal Bones. The Shaft (*corpus*).—The shaft is prismoid in form and curved longitudinally, so as to be convex in the longitudinal direction behind, concave in front. It presents three surfaces: two lateral and one posterior. The two lateral surfaces constitute the **palmar** or **volar surface**. The *lateral surfaces* are concave, for the attachment of the Interossei muscles, and separated from one another by a prominent anterior ridge. The *posterior* or *dorsal surface* presents in its distal half a smooth, triangular, flattened area which is covered, in the recent state, by the tendons of the Extensor muscles. This triangular surface is bounded by two lines, which commence in

small tubercles situated on the dorsal aspect on either side of the digital extremity, and, running backward, converge to meet together a little behind the centre of the bone and form a ridge which runs along the rest of the dorsal surface to the carpal extremity. This ridge separates two lateral, sloping surfaces for the attachment of the Dorsal interossei muscles.[1] To the tubercles on the digital extremities are attached the lateral ligaments of the metacarpo-phalangeal joints. On the palmar surface of each metacarpal bone is a **nutrient foramen** (*foramen nutricium*), which opens into a **nutrient canal** (*canalis nutricius*). In the thumb metacarpal the direction of this foramen is toward the periphery (distally). In each of the other metacarpals it is from the periphery (proximally).

Carpal or Proximal Extremity or Base (*basis*).—The carpal extremity, or base, is of a cuboidal form, and broader behind than in front; it articulates above with the carpus, and on each side with the adjoining metacarpal bones; its *dorsal* and *palmar surfaces* are rough, for the attachment of tendons and ligaments.

Digital or Distal Extremity or Head (*capitulum*).—The digital extremity, or head, presents an oblong surface, markedly convex from before backward, less so from side to side, and flattened laterally; it articulates with the proximal phalanx; it is broader and extends farther forward on the palmar than on the dorsal aspect. It is longer in the antero-posterior than in the transverse diameter. On either side of the head is a tubercle for the attachment of the lateral ligament of the metacarpo-phalangeal joint. The *posterior surface*, broad and flat, supports the Extensor tendons; the *anterior surface* is grooved in the middle line for the passage of the Flexor tendons, and marked on each side by an articular eminence continuous with the terminal articular surface. The **metacarpal spaces** (*spatia interossea metacarpi*) are the intervals between the metacarpal bones. They are occupied by the Interossei muscles. The broadest space is between the metacarpal bones of the thumb and index finger.

Peculiar Characters of the Metacarpal Bones.—The **Metacarpal Bone of the Thumb** (*os metacarpale I*) (Fig. 147) is shorter and wider than the rest, diverges to a greater degree from the carpus, and its *palmar surface* is directed inward toward the palm. The **shaft** is flattened and broad on its dorsal aspect, and does not present the ridge which is found on the other metacarpal bones; it is concave from above downward, on its palmar surface. The **carpal extremity**, or **base**, presents a concavo-convex surface, for articulation with the trapezium; it has no lateral facets, but presents externally a tubercle for the insertion of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis. The **digital extremity** is less convex than that of the other metacarpal bones, broader from side to side than from before backward. It presents on its palmar aspect two distinct articular eminences for the two sesamoid bones in the tendons of the Flexor brevis pollicis, the outer one being the larger of the two.

FIG. 147. The first metacarpal. (Left.)

The side to which this bone belongs may be known by holding it in the position it occupies in the hand, with the carpal extremity upward and the dorsal surface backward; the tubercle for the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis will point to the side to which it belongs.

Attachment of Muscles.—To *four*: the Flexor ossis metacarpi pollicis, the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, the Flexor brevis pollicis, and the First dorsal interosseous.

[1] By these sloping surfaces the metacarpal bones of the hand may be at once differentiated from the metatarsal bone of the foot.

The **Metacarpal Bone of the Index Finger** (*os metacarpale II*) (Fig. 148) is the longest and its base the largest of the other four. Its **carpal extremity** is prolonged upward and inward, forming a prominent ridge. The dorsal and palmar surfaces of this extremity are rough, for the attachment of tendons and ligaments. It presents four articular facets: three on the upper aspect of the base: the middle one of the three is the largest, concave from side to side, convex from before backward, for articulation with the trapezoid; the external one is a small, flat, oval facet, for articulation with the trapezium; the internal one on the summit of the ridge is long and narrow, for articulation with the os magnum. The fourth facet is on the inner or ulnar side of the extremity of the bone, and is for articulation with the third metacarpal bone.

The side to which this bone belongs is indicated by the absence of the lateral facet on the outer (radial) side of its base, so that if the bone is placed with the base toward the student and the palmar surface upward, the side on which there is no lateral facet will be that to which it belongs.

FIG. 148.—The second metacarpal. (Left.)

FIG. 149.—The third metacarpal. (Left.)

Attachment of Muscles.—To *six*: Flexor carpi radialis, Extensor carpi radialis longior, Adductor obliquus pollicis, First and Second dorsal interosseous, and First palmar interosseous.

The **Metacarpal Bone of the Middle Finger** (*os metacarpale III*) (Fig. 149) is a little smaller than the preceding: it presents a pyramidal eminence, the **styloid process** (*processus styloideus*), on the radial side of its base (dorsal aspect), which extends upward behind the os magnum; immediately below this, on the dorsal aspect, is a rough surface for the attachment of the Extensor carpi radialis brevior. The carpal, articular facet is concave behind, flat in front, and articulates with the os magnum. On the radial side is a smooth, concave facet, for articulation with the second metacarpal bone, and on the ulnar side two small, oval facets, for articulation with the fourth metacarpal.

The side to which this bone belongs is easily recognized by the styloid process on the radial side of its base. With the palmar surface uppermost and the base toward the student, this process points toward the side to which the bone belongs.

Attachment of Muscles.—To *six:* Extensor carpi radialis brevior, Flexor carpi radialis, Adductor transversus pollicis, Adductor obliquus pollicis, and Second and Third dorsal interosseous.

The **Metacarpal Bone of the Ring Finger** *(os metacarpale IV)* (Fig. 150) is shorter and smaller than the preceding, and its base small and quadrilateral; the carpal surface of the base presenting two facets, a large one externally, for articulation with the unciform, and a small one internally, for the os magnum. On the radial side are two oval facets, for articulation with the third metacarpal bone; and on the ulnar side a single concave facet, for the fifth metacarpal.

If this bone is placed with the base toward the student and the palmar surface upward, the radial side of the base, which has two facets for articulation with the third metacarpal bone, will be on the side to which it belongs. If, as sometimes happens in badly marked bones, one of these facets is indistinguishable, the side may be known by selecting the surface on which the larger articular facet is present. This facet is for the fifth metacarpal bone, and would therefore be situated on the ulnar side—that is, the one to which the bone does *not* belong.

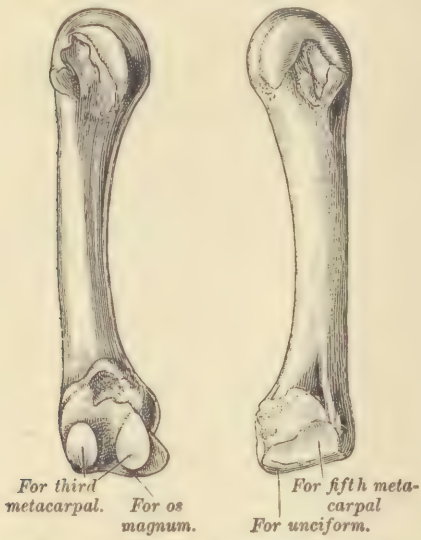


FIG. 150.—The fourth metacarpal. (Left.)

FIG. 151.—The fifth metacarpal. (Left.)

Attachment of Muscles.—To *three:* the Third and Fourth dorsal and Second palmar interosseous.

The **Metacarpal Bone of the Little Finger** *(os metacarpale V)* (Fig. 151) presents on its base one facet, which is concavo-convex, and which articulates with the unciform bone, and one lateral, articular facet, which articulates with the fourth metacarpal bone. On its ulnar side is a prominent tubercle, for the insertion of the tendon of the Extensor carpi ulnaris. The dorsal surface of the shaft is marked by an oblique ridge which extends from near the ulnar side of the upper extremity to the radial side of the lower. The outer division of this surface serves for the attachment of the Fourth dorsal interosseous muscle; the inner division is smooth and covered by the Extensor tendons of the little finger.

If this bone is placed with its base toward the student and its palmar surface upward, the side of the head which has a lateral facet will be that to which the bone belongs.

Attachment of Muscles.—To *five:* the Extensor carpi ulnaris, Flexor carpi ulnaris, Flexor ossis metacarpi minimi digiti, Fourth dorsal, and Third palmar interosseous.

Articulations.—Besides the phalangeal articulations, the first metacarpal bone articulates with the trapezium; the second with the trapezium, trapezoid, os magnum, and third metacarpal bones; the third with the os magnum and second and fourth metacarpal bones; the fourth with the os magnum, unciform, and third and fifth metacarpal bones; and the fifth with the unciform and fourth metacarpal.

The *first* has no lateral facets on its carpal extremity; the *second* has no lateral facet on its radial side, but one on its ulnar side; the third has one on its radial and two on its ulnar side; the fourth has two on its radial and one on its ulnar side; and the fifth has only one on its radial side.

The Phalanges of the Hand (Phalanges Digitorum Manus).

The phalanges (*internodia*) are the bones of the fingers; they are fourteen in number, three for each finger, and two for the thumb. In numbering them the proximal bone is designated as the first phalanx (*phalanx I*). They are long bones, and present for examination a shaft and two extremities. The **shaft** (*corpus phalangis*) tapers from above downward, is convex posteriorly, concave in front from above downward, flat from side to side, and marked laterally by rough ridges, which give attachment to the fibrous sheaths of the Flexor tendons. A nutrient foramen on the palmar surface leads into a nutrient canal which runs toward the periphery (*distalward*). The **metacarpal extremity** or **base** (*basis phalangis*) of each phalanx in the first row presents an oval, concave, articular surface, broader from side to side than from before backward; and the same extremity in the other two rows, a double concavity, separated by a longitudinal median ridge, extending from before backward. The **distal extremity** of the first phalanx of the thumb and of the first and second phalanx of each of the fingers is smaller than the base, and terminates in two small, lateral condyles, separated by a slight groove (*trochlea phalangis*); the articular surface being prolonged farther forward on the palmar than on the dorsal surface, especially in the first row.

The **Ungual Phalanges** (*distal*) are convex on their dorsal, flat on their palmar, surfaces; they are recognized by their small size and by a roughened, elevated surface of a horseshoe form on the palmar aspect of their ungual extremity (*tuberositas unguicularis*), which serves to support the sensitive pulp of the finger.

Articulations.—The first row, with the metacarpal bones and the second row of phalanges; the second row, with the first and third; the third, with the second row.

Attachment of Muscles.—To the base of the first phalanx of the thumb, five muscles: the Extensor brevis pollicis, Flexor brevis pollicis, Abductor pollicis, Adductor transversus and Obliquus pollicis. To the second phalanx, two: the Flexor longus pollicis and the Extensor longus pollicis. To the base of the first phalanx of the index finger, the First dorsal and the First palmar interosseous; to that of the middle finger, the Second and Third dorsal interosseous; to that of the ring finger, the Fourth dorsal and the Second palmar interosseous; and to that of the little finger, the Third palmar interosseous, the Flexor brevis minimi digiti, and Abductor minimi digiti. To the second phalanges, the Extensor sublimis digitorum, Extensor communis digitorum, and, in addition, the Extensor indicis to the index finger, the Extensor minimi digiti to the little finger. To the third phalanges, the Flexor profundus digitorum and Extensor communis digitorum.

Surface Form.—On the front of the wrist are two subcutaneous eminences, one on the radial side, the larger and flatter, due to the tuberosity of the scaphoid and the ridge on the trapezium; the other, on the ulnar side, caused by the pisiform bone. The tubercle of the scaphoid is to be felt just below and in front of the apex of the styloid process of the radius. It is best perceived by extending the hand on the forearm. Immediately below is to be felt another prominence, better marked than the tubercle; this is the ridge on the trapezium which gives attachment to some of the short muscles of the thumb. On the inner side of the front of

the wrist the pisiform bone is to be felt, forming a small but prominent projection in this situation. It is some distance below the styloid process of the ulna, and may be said to be just below the level of the styloid process of the radius. The rest of the front of the carpus is covered by tendons and the annular ligament, and entirely concealed, with the exception of the hooked process of the unciform, which can only be made out with difficulty. The back of the carpus is convex and covered by the Extensor tendons, so that none of the posterior surfaces of the bones are to be felt, with the exception of the cuneiform on the inner side. Below the carpus the dorsal surfaces of the metacarpal bones, except the fifth, are covered by tendons, and are scarcely visible except in very thin hands. The dorsal surface of the fifth is, however, subcutaneous throughout almost its whole length, and is plainly to be perceived and felt. In addition to this, slightly external to the middle line of the hand, is a prominence, frequently well marked, but occasionally indistinct, formed by the base of the metacarpal of the middle finger. The heads of the metacarpal bones are plainly to be felt and seen, rounded in contour and standing out in bold relief under the skin, when the fist is clenched. It should be borne in mind that when the fingers are flexed on the hand, the articular surfaces of the first phalanges glide off the heads of the metacarpal bones on to their anterior surfaces, so that the head of these bones form the prominence of the knuckles and receive the force of any blow which may be given. The head of the third metacarpal bone is the most prominent, and receives the greater part of the shock of the blow. This bone articulates with the os magnum, so that the concussion is carried through this bone to the scaphoid and semilunar, with which the head of the os magnum articulates, and by these bones is transferred to the radius, along which it may be carried to the capitellum of the humerus. The enlarged extremities of the phalanges are to be plainly felt: they form the joints of the fingers. When the digits are bent the proximal phalanges of the joints form prominences, which in the joint between the first and second phalanges is slightly hollowed, in accordance with the grooved shape of their articular surfaces, whilst at the last row the prominence is flattened and square-shaped. In the palm of the hand the four inner metacarpal bones are covered by muscles, tendons, and the palmar fascia, and no part of them but their heads is to be distinguished. With regard to the thumb, on the dorsal aspect the base of the metacarpal bone forms a prominence below the styloid process of the radius; the shaft is to be felt, covered by tendons, terminating at its head in a flattened prominence, in front of which can be felt the sesamoid bones.

Surgical Anatomy.—The carpal bones are not very liable to *fracture*, except from extreme violence, when the parts may be so comminuted as to necessitate amputation. Occasionally they are the seat of *tuberculous* disease. The metacarpal bones and the phalanges are not unfrequently broken by direct violence. The first metacarpal bone is the one most commonly fractured; then the second, the fourth, and the fifth, the third being the one least frequently broken. There are two diseases of the metacarpal bones and phalanges which require special mention on account of the frequency of their occurrence. One is *tuberculous dactylitis*, consisting in a deposit of tuberculous material in the medullary canal, expanding the bone, with subsequent caseation and resulting necrosis. The other is *chondroma*, which is perhaps more frequently found in connection with the metacarpal bones and phalanges than with any other bones. When chondromatous growth takes place there are usually multiple tumors, and they may spring either from the medullary canal or from the periosteum.

Development of the Bones of the Hand.

The **Carpal Bones** are each developed by a *single* centre. At birth they are all cartilaginous. Ossification proceeds in the following order (Fig. 152): In the os magnum and unciform an ossific point appears during the first year, the former preceding the latter; in the cuneiform, at the third year; in the trapezium and semilunar, at the fifth year, the former preceding the latter; in the scaphoid, at the sixth year; in the trapezoid, during the eighth year; and in the pisiform, about the twelfth year.

Occasionally an additional bone, the *os centrale*, is found in the carpus, lying between the scaphoid, trapezoid, and os magnum. During the second month of fœtal life it is represented by a small cartilaginous nodule, which, however, fuses with the cartilaginous scaphoid about the third month. Sometimes the styloid process of the third metacarpal is detached and forms an additional ossicle.

The **Metacarpal Bones** are each developed by *two* centres: one for the shaft and one for the digital extremity for the four inner metacarpal bones; one for the shaft and one for the base for the metacarpal bone of the thumb, which in this

respect resembles the phalanges.[1] Ossification commences in the centre of the shaft about the eighth or ninth week, and gradually proceeds to either end of the bone: about the third year the digital extremities of the four inner metacarpal bones and the base of the first metacarpal begin to ossify, and they unite about the twentieth year.

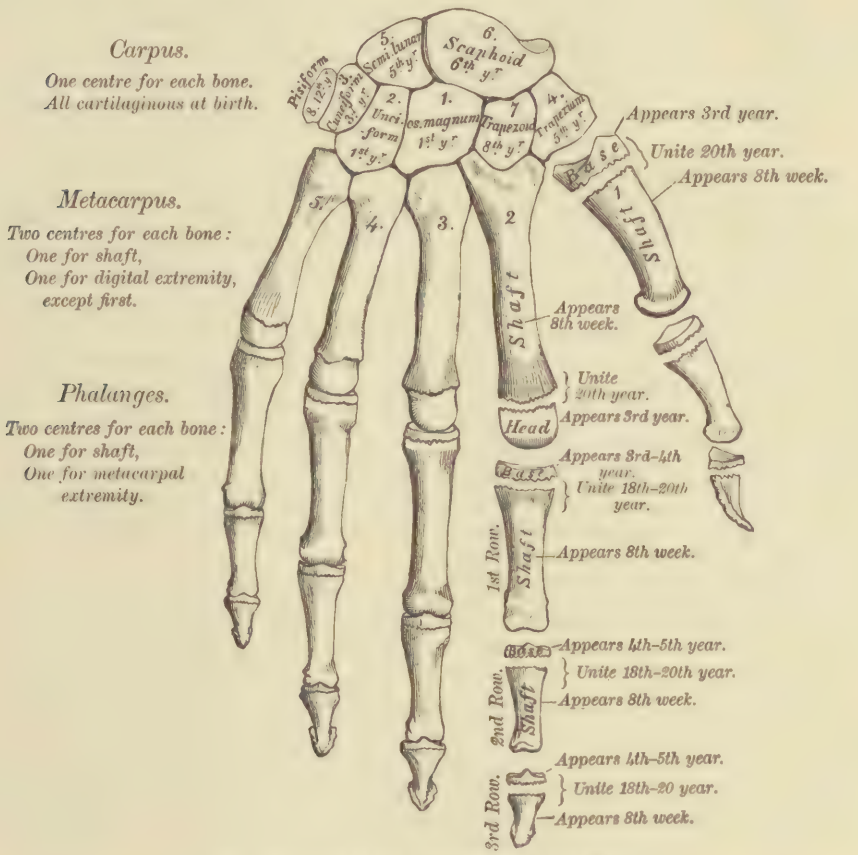


Fig. 152.—Plan of the development of the hand.

The **Phalanges** are each developed by *two* centres; one for the shaft and one for the base. Ossification commences in the shaft, in all three rows, at about the eighth week, and gradually involves the whole of the bone excepting the upper extremity. Ossification of the base commences in the first row between the third and fourth years, and a year later in those of the second and third rows. The two centres become united, in each row, between the eighteenth and twentieth years.

In the ungual phalanges the centre for the shaft appears at the distal extremity of the phalanx, instead of at the middle of the shaft, as is the case with the other phalanges.

THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The bones of the lower extremity consist of those of the **pelvic girdle**, of the **thigh**, of the **leg**, and of the **foot**.

[1] Allan Thomson has demonstrated the fact that the first metacarpal bone is often developed from three centres; that is to say, there is a separate nucleus for the distal end, forming a distinct epiphysis, visible at the age of seven or eight years. He also states that there are traces of a proximal epiphysis in the second metacarpal bone.—Journal of Anatomy, 1869.

THE PELVIC GIRDLE.

The pelvic girdle consists of a single bone, the **os innominatum**, by which the thigh is connected to the trunk.

The Os Innominatum, called also Os Coxæ, Hip Bone, Haunch Bone, the Nameless Bone (Figs. 153, 154).

The os innominatum (*in*, not; *nomino*, I name) is so called from bearing no resemblance to any known object. It is a large, irregularly shaped, flat bone, constricted in the centre and expanded above and below. With its fellow of the opposite side it forms the sides and anterior wall of the pelvic cavity. In young subjects it consists of three separate parts, which meet and form the large, cup-like cavity, the **acetabulum**, situated near the middle of the outer surface of the bone; and, although in the adult these have become united, it is usual to describe the bone as divisible into three portions—the **ilium**, the **ischium**, and the **pubis**.

The **ilium**, so called from its supporting the flank (*ilium* or *ileum*, the flank), is the superior, broad, and expanded portion which runs upward from the acetabulum and forms the prominence of the hip.

The **ischium** (*ἰσχίον*, the hip) is the inferior and strongest portion of the bone; it proceeds downward from the acetabulum, expands into a large tuberosity, and then, curving forward, forms, with the descending ramus of the os pubis, a large aperture, the obturator foramen.

The **os pubis** is that portion which extends inward and downward from the acetabulum to articulate in the middle line with the bone of the opposite side: it forms the front of the pelvis, supports the external organs of generation, and has received its name from the skin over it being covered with hair (**pubes**).

The Ilium (*os ilium*).—The lower or constricted part of the ilium is thick, though narrower than the expanded portion. It aids in the formation of the acetabulum and is called the **body** (*corpus ossis ilium*). The broad expanded portion of the ilium is thin in many places. It is called the **ala** (*ala ossis ilium*). The ilium presents for examination two surfaces, an external and an internal; a crest, and two borders, an anterior and a posterior.

External Surface or Dorsum of the Ilium (Fig. 153).—The posterior part of this surface is directed backward and outward; its front part, downward and outward. It is smooth, convex in front, deeply concave behind; bounded above by the crest, below by the upper border of the acetabulum; in front and behind by the anterior and posterior borders. This surface is crossed in an arched direction by three semicircular lines—the superior, middle, and inferior curved lines. The **superior curved line**, or the **posterior gluteal line** (*linea glutæa posterior*), the shortest of the three, commences at the crest, about two inches in front of its posterior extremity; it is at first distinctly marked, but as it passes downward and backward to the upper part of the great sacro-sciatic notch, where it terminates, it becomes less marked, and is often altogether lost. Behind this line is a narrow semilunar surface, the upper part of which is rough and affords attachment to part of the Gluteus maximus; the lower part is smooth and has no muscular fibres attached to it. The **middle curved line**, or the **anterior gluteal line** (*linea glutæa anterior*), the longest of the three, commences at the crest, about an inch behind its anterior extremity, and, taking a curved direction downward and backward, terminates at the upper part of the great sacro-sciatic notch. The space between the superior and middle curved lines and the crest is concave, and affords attachment to the Gluteus medius muscle. Near the central part of this line may often be observed the orifice of a nutrient foramen. The **inferior**

curved or **inferior gluteal line** (*linea glutæa inferior*), the least distinct of the three, commences in front at the notch on the anterior border, and, taking a curved direction backward and downward, terminates at the middle of the great sacro-sciatic notch. The surface of bone included between the middle and inferior

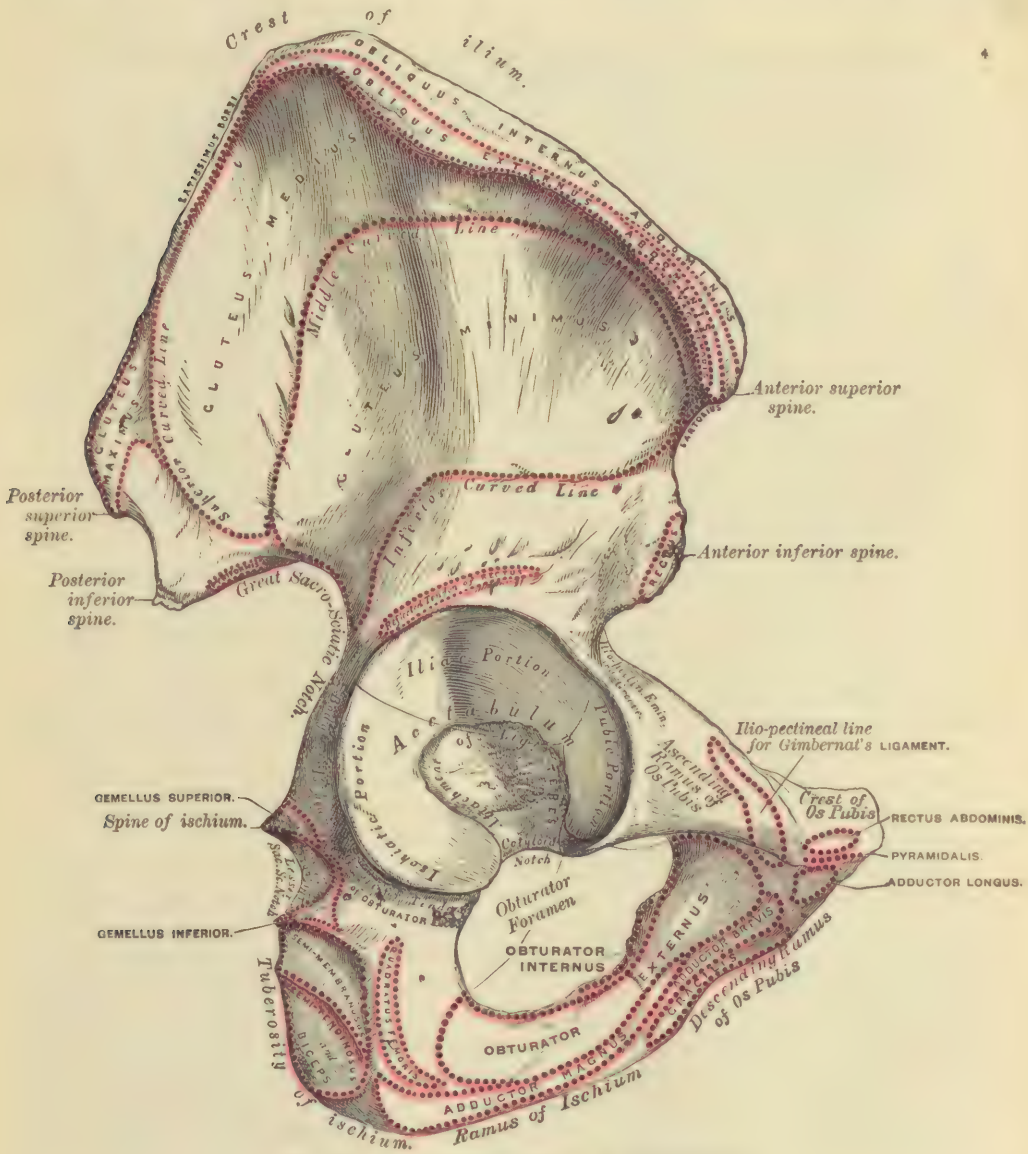


FIG. 153.—Right os innominatum. External surface.

curved lines is concave from above downward, convex from before backward, and affords attachment to the Gluteus minimus muscle. Beneath the inferior curved line, and corresponding to the upper part of the acetabulum, is a roughened surface (sometimes a depression), to which is attached the reflected tendon of the Rectus femoris muscle.

Internal Surface.—The internal surface (Fig. 154) of the ilium is bounded above by the crest; below it is continuous with the pelvic surface of the os pubis and ischium, a faint line only indicating the place of union; and before and behind it

is bounded by the anterior and posterior borders. It presents a large, smooth, concave surface, called the **iliac fossa**, or **venter ilii** (*fossa iliaca*), which lodges the Iliacus muscle, and presents at its lower part the orifice of a **nutrient canal** (*foramen nutricium*); and below this a smooth, rounded border, the **ilio-pectineal line**

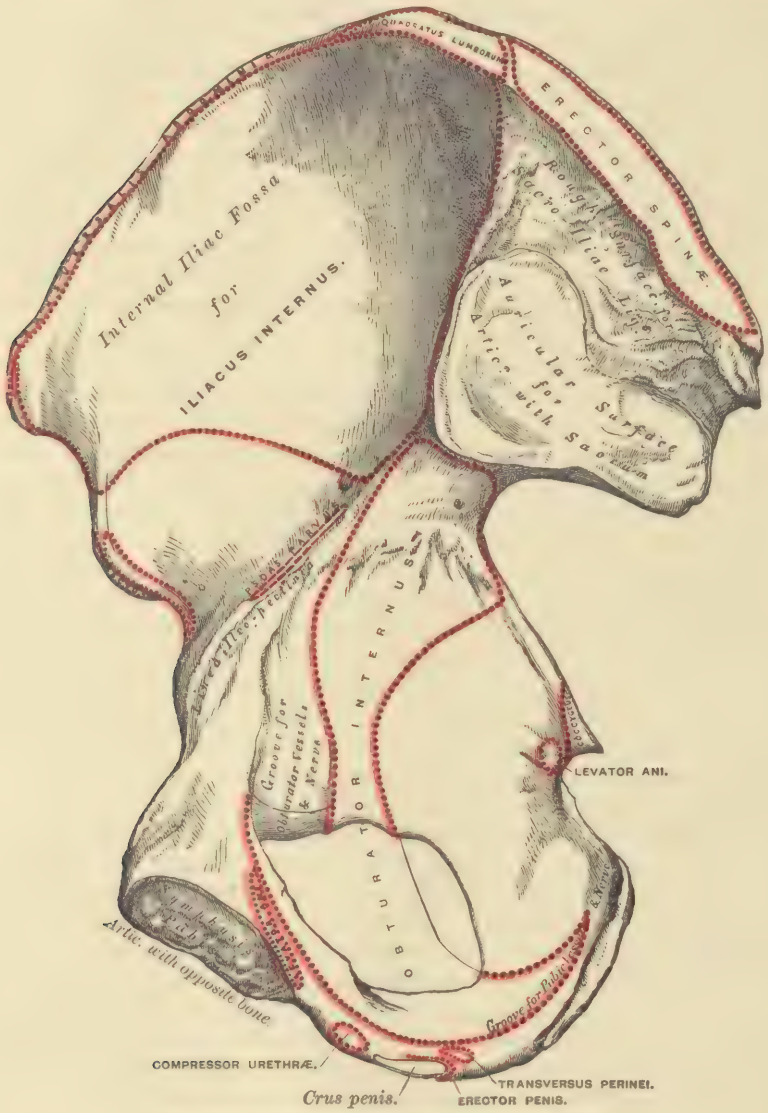


FIG. 154.—Right os innominatum. Internal surface.

or the **linea ilio-pectinea** (*linea arcuata*), which separates the iliac fossa from that portion of the internal surface which enters into the formation of the true pelvis, and which gives attachment to part of the Obturator internus muscle. Behind the iliac fossa is a rough surface divided into two portions, an anterior and a posterior. The **anterior** or **auricular surface** (*facies auricularis*), so called from its resemblance in shape to the ear, is coated with cartilage in the recent state, and articulates with a surface of similar shape on the side of the sacrum. The **posterior portion** (*tuberositas iliaca*) is rough, for the attachment of the posterior sacro-iliac ligaments and for a part of the origin of the Erector and Multifidus

spinæ. In many bones a furrow exists in front, under and behind the auricular surface. This furrow is the **paraglenoid sulcus** (*sulcus paraglenoidalis*), and it affords attachment to the sacro-sciatic ligaments.

The Crest of the Ilium (*crista iliaca*).—The crest of the ilium is convex in its general outline and sinuously curved, being concave inward in front, concave outward behind. It is longer in the female than in the male, very thick behind, and thinner at the centre than at the extremities. It terminates at either end in a prominent eminence, the **anterior superior** and **posterior superior spinous process** (*spina iliaca anterior superior et spina iliaca posterior superior*). The surface of the crest is broad, and divided into an **external lip** (*labium externum*), an **internal lip** (*labium internum*), and an **intermediate space** (*linea intermedia*). About two inches behind the anterior superior spinous process there is a prominent tubercle on the outer lip. To the external lip is attached the Tensor fasciæ femoris, Obliquus externus abdominis, and Latissimus dorsi, and along its whole length, the fascia lata; to the space between the lips, the Internal oblique; to the internal lip, the Transversalis, Quadratus lumborum, and Erector spinæ, the Iliacus, and the fascia iliaca.

Anterior Border.—The anterior border of the ilium is concave. It presents two projections, separated by a notch. Of these, the uppermost, situated at the junction of the crest and anterior border, is called the **anterior superior spinous process of the ilium** (*spina iliaca anterior superior*), the outer border of which gives attachment to the fascia lata and the origin of the Tensor fasciæ femoris (*tensor vaginæ femoris*); its inner border, to the Iliacus; while its extremity affords attachment to Poupart's ligament and the origin of the Sartorius. Beneath this eminence is a notch which gives attachment to the Sartorius muscle, and across which passes the external cutaneous nerve. Below the notch is the **anterior inferior spinous process** (*spina iliaca anterior inferior*), which terminates in the upper lip of the acetabulum; it gives attachment to the straight tendon of the Rectus femoris muscle and the ilio-femoral ligament. On the inner side of the anterior inferior spinous process is a broad, shallow groove, over which passes the Ilio-psoas muscle. This groove is bounded internally by an eminence, the **ilio-pectineal eminence** (*eminentia iliopectinea*), which marks the point of union of the ilium and os pubis.

Posterior Border.—The posterior border of the ilium, shorter than the anterior, also presents two projections separated by a notch, the **posterior superior spinous process** (*spina iliaca posterior superior*) and the **posterior inferior spinous process** (*spina iliaca posterior inferior*). The former corresponds with that portion of the inner surface of the ilium which serves for the attachment of the oblique portion of the sacro-iliac ligaments and the Multifidus spinæ muscle; the latter, to the auricular portion which articulates with the sacrum. Below the posterior inferior spinous process is a deep notch, the **great sciatic, ilio-sciatic,** or the **great sacro-sciatic notch** (*incisura ischiadica major*).

The Ischium (*os ischii*).—The ischium forms the lower and back part of the os innominatum. It is divisible into a thick and solid portion—the **body**; a large, rough eminence, on which the trunk rests in sitting—the **tuberosity**; and a thin part which passes forward and slightly upward—the **ramus**.

The Body (*corpus ossis ischii*).—The body, somewhat triangular in form, presents three surfaces, external, internal, and posterior; and three borders, external, internal, and posterior. The *external surface* corresponds to that portion of the acetabulum formed by the ischium; it is smooth and concave, and forms a little more than two-fifths of the acetabular cavity; its outer margin is bounded by a prominent rim or lip, the external border, to which the cotyloid fibro-cartilage is attached. Below the acetabulum, between it and the tuberosity, is a deep groove, along which the tendon of the Obturator externus muscle runs

as it passes outward to be inserted into the digital fossa of the femur. The *internal surface* is smooth, concave, and enters into the formation of the lateral boundary of the true pelvic cavity. This surface is perforated by two or three large, vascular foramina, and affords attachment to part of the Obturator internus muscle. The *posterior surface* is quadrilateral in form, broad and smooth. Below, where it joins the tuberosity, it presents a groove, the **obturator groove** (*sulcus obturatorius*), continuous with that on the external surface, for the tendon of the Obturator externus muscle. The lower edge of this groove is formed by the tuberosity of the ischium, and affords attachment to the Gemellus inferior muscle. This surface is limited, externally, by the margin of the acetabulum; behind, by the posterior border; it supports the Pyriformis, the two Gemelli, and the Obturator internus muscles in their passage outward to the great trochanter. The *external border* forms the prominent rim of the acetabulum, and separates the posterior from the external surface. To it is attached the cotyloid fibrocartilage. The *internal border* is thin, and forms the outer circumference of the obturator foramen. The *posterior border* of the body of the ischium presents, a little below the centre, a thin and pointed, triangular eminence, the **spine of the ischium** (*spina ischiadica*), more or less elongated in different subjects; its external surface gives attachment to the Gemellus superior, its internal surface to the Coccygeus and Levator ani; whilst to the pointed extremity is connected the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament. Above the spine is a notch of large size, the **great sacro-sciatic notch** (*incisura ischiadica major*), converted into a foramen, the **great sacro-sciatic foramen** (*foramen ischiadicum majus*), by the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament; it transmits the Pyriformis muscle, the gluteal vessels, and superior and inferior gluteal nerves; the sciatic vessels, the greater and lesser sciatic nerves, the internal pudic vessels and nerve, and the nerves to the Obturator internus and Quadratus femoris. Of these, the gluteal vessels and superior gluteal nerve pass out above the Pyriformis muscle, the other structures, below it. Below the spine is a smaller notch, the **lesser sacro-sciatic notch** (*incisura ischiadica minor*); it is smooth, coated in the recent state with cartilage, the surface of which presents two or three ridges corresponding to the subdivisions of the tendon of the Obturator internus, which winds over it. It is converted into a foramen, the **lesser sacro-sciatic foramen** (*foramen ischiadicum minus*), by the sacro-sciatic ligaments, and transmits the tendon of the Obturator internus, the nerve which supplies that muscle, and the internal pudic vessels and nerve.

The Tuberosity of the Ischium (*tuber ischiadicum*).—The tuberosity of the ischium is the portion of bone between the body and the ascending ramus. Some anatomists name this portion of bone the **descending** or **superior ramus** (*ramus superior ossis ischii*), and restrict the term tuberosity to the surface of the bone which is rough, and is directed backward and outward. The tuberosity presents for examination three surfaces: external, internal, and posterior. The *external surface* is quadrilateral in shape, and rough for the attachment of muscles. It is bounded above by the groove for the tendon of the Obturator externus; in front it is limited by the posterior margin of the obturator foramen, and below it is continuous with the ramus of the bone; behind, it is bounded by a prominent margin which separates it from the posterior surface. In front of this margin the surface gives attachment to the Quadratus femoris, and anterior to this to some of the fibres of origin of the Obturator externus. The lower part of the surface gives origin to part of the Adductor magnus. The *internal surface* forms part of the bony wall of the true pelvis. In front it is limited by the posterior margin of the obturator foramen. Behind, it is bounded by a sharp ridge, for the attachment of a falciform prolongation of the great sacro-sciatic ligament; it sometimes presents a groove on the inner side of this ridge for the lodgement of the internal pudic vessels and nerve; and, more anteriorly, has

attached the Transversus perinæi and Erector penis muscles. The *posterior surface* is divided into two portions—a lower rough, somewhat triangular part, and an upper smooth, quadrilateral portion. The anterior portion is subdivided by a prominent vertical ridge, passing from base to apex, into two parts; the outer one gives attachment to the Adductor magnus; the inner to the great sacro-sciatic ligament. The upper portion is subdivided into two facets by an oblique ridge which runs downward and outward; from the upper and outer facet arises the Semimembranosus; from the lower and inner, the Biceps and Semitendinosus.

The Ramus or Inferior Ramus or Ascending Ramus of the Ischium (*ramus inferior ossis ischii*).—The ramus is the thin, flattened part of the ischium which ascends from the tuberosity upward and inward, and joins the descending ramus of the os pubis, their point of junction being indicated in the adult by a rough line. The outer surface of the ramus is rough, for the attachment of the Obturator externus muscle, and also some fibres of the Adductor magnus; its inner surface forms part of the anterior wall of the pelvis. Its inner border is thick, rough, slightly everted, forms part of the outlet of the pelvis, and presents two ridges and an intervening space. The ridges are continuous with similar ones on the descending ramus of the os pubis: to the outer one is attached the deep layer of the superficial perineal fascia, and to the inner, the superficial layer of the triangular ligament of the urethra. If these two ridges are traced downward, they will be found to join with each other just behind the point of origin of the Transversus perinæi muscle; here the two layers of fascia are continuous behind the posterior border of the muscle. To the intervening space, just in front of the point of junction of the ridges, is attached the Transversus perinæi muscle, and in front of this a portion of the crus penis vel clitoridis and the Erector penis vel clitoridis muscle. Its outer border is thin and sharp, and forms part of the inner margin of the obturator foramen.

The Pubis (*os pubis*).—The os pubis forms the anterior part of the os innominatum, and, with the bone of the opposite side, forms the front boundary of the true pelvic cavity. It is divisible into a **body**, an **ascending** and a **descending ramus.**

The Body (*corpus ossis pubis*).—The body is the broad portion of bone formed by the junction of the two rami. It is somewhat quadrilateral in shape, and presents for examination two surfaces and three borders. The *anterior surface* is rough, directed downward and outward, and serves for the attachment of various muscles. To the upper and inner angle, immediately below the crest, is attached the Adductor longus; lower down, from without inward, are attached the Obturator externus, the Adductor brevis, and the upper part of the Gracilis. The *posterior surface*, convex from above downward, concave from side to side, is smooth, and forms part of the anterior wall of the pelvis. It gives attachment to the Levator ani, Obturator internus, a few muscular fibres prolonged from the bladder, and the pubo-prostatic ligaments. The *upper border* presents for examination a prominent tubercle, which projects forward and is called the **spine** (*tuberculum pubicum*); to it are attached the outer pillar of the external abdominal ring and Poupart's ligament. Passing upward and outward from this is a prominent ridge, forming part of the **ilio-pectineal line** (*linea arcuata*), and called the **pecten ossis pubis.** It marks the brim of the true pelvis: to it are attached a portion of the conjoined tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis muscles, Gimbernat's ligament, and the triangular fascia of the abdomen. Internal to the spine of the os pubis is the **crest,** which extends from this process to the inner extremity of the bone. It affords attachment, anteriorly, to the conjoined tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis; and posteriorly, to the Rectus and Pyramidalis muscles. The point of junction of the crest with the inner border of the bone (symphysis) is called the **angle**; to it, as well as to the symphysis, is attached the internal pillar of the external abdominal ring. The

internal border is articular; it is oval, covered by eight or nine transverse ridges, or a series of nipple-like processes arranged in rows, separated by grooves; they serve for the attachment of a thin layer of cartilage, placed between it and the central fibro-cartilage. The *outer border* presents a sharp margin, which forms part of the circumference of the obturator foramen and affords attachment to the obturator membrane.

The Ascending or Superior Ramus of the Pubis (*ramus superior ossis pubis*).—The ascending or superior ramus extends from the body to the point of junction of the os pubis with the ilium, and forms the upper part of the circumference of the obturator foramen. It presents for examination a superior, inferior, and posterior surface, and an outer extremity. The *superior surface* presents a continuation of the ilio-pectineal line, already mentioned as commencing at the pubic spine. In front of this ridge the surface of bone is triangular in form, wider externally than internally, smooth, and is covered by the Pectineus muscle. The surface is bounded externally by a rough eminence, the **ilio-pectineal eminence** (*eminentia iliopectinea*), which serves to indicate the point of junction of the ilium and os pubis, and gives attachment to the Psoas parvus, when this muscle is present. The triangular surface is bounded below by a prominent ridge, the **obturator crest** (*crista obturatoria*), which extends from the cotyloid notch to the spine of the os pubis. The *inferior surface* forms the upper boundary of the obturator foramen, and presents externally a broad and deep oblique groove, the **obturator groove** (*sulcus obturatorius*), for the passage of the obturator vessels and nerve; and internally a sharp margin which forms part of the circumference of the obturator foramen, and to which the obturator membrane is attached. The *posterior surface* forms part of the anterior boundary of the true pelvis. It is smooth, convex from above downward, and affords attachment to some fibres of the Obturator internus. The *outer extremity*, the thickest part of the ramus, forms one-fifth of the cavity of the acetabulum.

The Descending or Inferior Ramus of the Pubis (*ramus inferior ossis pubis*).—The descending or inferior ramus of the os pubis is thin and flattened. It passes outward and downward, becoming narrower as it descends, and joins with the ramus of the ischium. Its *anterior surface* is rough, for the attachment of muscles —the Gracilis along its inner border; a portion of the Obturator externus where it enters into the formation of the foramen of that name; and between these two muscles the Adductores brevis and magnus from within outward. The *posterior surface* is smooth, and gives attachment to the Obturator internus, and, close to the inner margin, to the Compressor urethræ. The *inner border* is thick, rough, and everted, especially in females. It presents two ridges, separated by an intervening space. The ridges extend downward, and are continuous with similar ridges on the ascending ramus of the ischium; to the external one is attached the deep layer of the superficial perineal fascia, and to the internal one the superficial layer of the triangular ligament of the urethra. The *outer border* is thin and sharp, forms part of the circumference of the obturator foramen, and gives attachment to the obturator membrane.

The Cotyloid Cavity or Acetabulum.—The cotyloid cavity, or acetabulum, is a deep, cup-shaped, hemispherical depression, directed downward, outward, and forward; formed internally by the os pubis, above by the ilium, behind and below by the ischium, a little less than two-fifths being formed by the ilium, a little more than two-fifths by the ischium, and the remaining fifth by the pubic bone. It is bounded by a prominent, uneven rim, which is thick and strong above, and serves for the attachment of the cotyloid ligament, which contracts its orifice and deepens the surface for articulation. It presents below a deep notch, the **cotyloid notch** (*incisura acetabuli*), which is continuous with a circular depression, the **fossa of the acetabulum** (*fossa acetabuli*), at the bottom of the cavity: this depression is

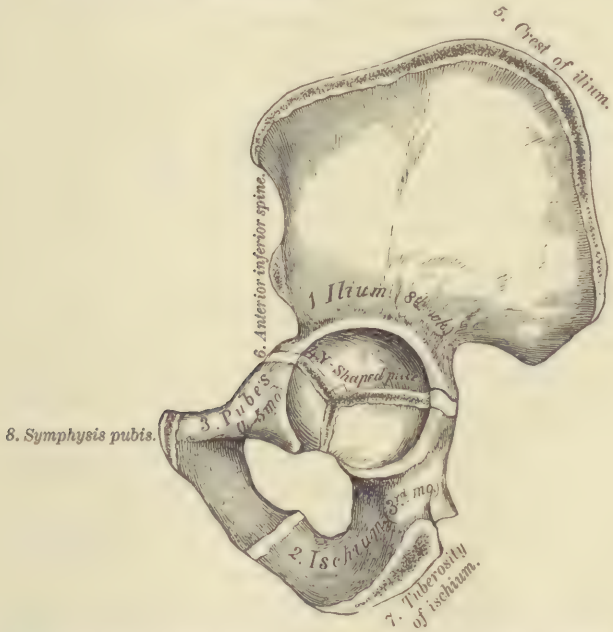
perforated by numerous apertures, lodges a mass of fat, and its margins, as well as those of the notch, serve for the attachment of the ligamentum teres. In front, above and behind the fossa acetabuli, is a concave rim of bone (*facies lunata*). The cotyloid notch is converted, in the natural state, into a foramen by a dense ligamentous band which passes across it. Through this foramen the nutrient vessels and nerves enter the joint.

The Obturator or Thyroid Foramen (*foramen obturatum*).—The obturator or thyroid foramen is a large aperture situated between the ischium and os pubis. In the male it is large, of an oval form, its longest diameter being obliquely from before backward; in the female it is smaller and more triangular. It is bounded by a thin, uneven margin, to which a strong membrane is attached, and presents, anteriorly, a deep groove, the **obturator groove** (*sulcus obturatorius*), which runs from the pelvis obliquely inward and downward. This groove is converted into a foramen by the obturator membrane, and transmits the obturator vessels and nerve.

Structure.—This bone consists of much cancellous tissue, especially where it is thick, enclosed between two layers of dense, compact tissue. In the thinner parts of the bone, as at the bottom of the acetabulum and centre of the iliac fossa, it is usually semitransparent, and composed entirely of compact tissue.

Development (Fig. 155).—By *eight* centres: three primary—one for the ilium, one for the ischium, and one for the os pubis; and *five* secondary—one for the

By eight centres { *Three primary (Ilium, Ischium, and Os Pubis).*
Five secondary.



The three primary centres unite through a Y*-shaped piece about puberty. Epiphyses appear about puberty, and unite about the twenty-fifth year.*

Fig. 155.—Plan of the development of the os innominatum.

crest of the ilium, one for the anterior inferior spinous process (said to occur more frequently in the male than in the female), one for the tuberosity of the ischium, one for the symphysis pubis (more frequent in the female than the male), and one or more for the Y-shaped piece at the bottom of the acetabulum. These various centres appear in the following order: First, in the ilium, at the lower part of

the bone, immediately above the sciatic notch, at about the eighth or ninth week; secondly, in the body of the ischium, at about the third month of fœtal life; thirdly, in the body of the os pubis, between the fourth and fifth months. At birth the three primary centres are quite separate, the crest, the bottom of the acetabulum, the ischial tuberosity, and the rami of the ischium and pubes being still cartilaginous. At about the seventh or eighth year the rami of the os pubis and ischium are almost completely united by bone. About the thirteenth or fourteenth year the three divisions of the bone have extended their growth into the bottom of the acetabulum, being separated from each other by a Y-shaped portion of cartilage, which now presents traces of ossification, often by two or more centres. One of these, the os acetabuli, appears about the age of twelve, between the ilium and os pubis, and fuses with them about the age of eighteen. It forms the pubic part of the acetabulum. The ilium and ischium then become joined, and lastly the os pubis to the ischium, through the intervention of this Y-shaped portion. At about the age of puberty ossification takes place in each of the remaining portions, and they become joined to the rest of the bone between the twentieth and twenty-fifth years. Separate centres are frequently found for the pubic and ischial spines

Articulations.—With its fellow of the opposite side, the sacrum, and femur.

Attachment of Muscles.—To the *ilium*, sixteen. To the outer lip of the crest, the Tensor vaginæ femoris, Obliquus externus abdominis, and Latissimus dorsi; to the internal lip, the Iliacus, Transversalis, Quadratus lumborum, and Erector spinæ; to the interspace between the lips, the Obliquus internus. To the outer surface of the ilium, the Gluteus maximus, Gluteus medius, Gluteus minimus, reflected tendon of the Rectus; to the upper part of the great sacro-sciatic notch, a portion of the Pyriformis; to the internal surface, the Iliacus; to that portion of the internal surface below the linea ilio-pectinea, the Obturator internus to the internal surface of the posterior superior spine, and the Multifidus spinæ; to the anterior border, the Sartorius and straight tendon of the Rectus. To the *ischium*, thirteen. To the outer surface of the ramus, the Obturator externus and Adductor magnus; to the internal surface, the Obturator internus and Erector penis. To the spine, the Gemellus superior, Levator ani, and Coccygeus. To the tuberosity, the Biceps, Semitendinosus, Semimembranosus, Quadratus femoris, Adductor magnus, Gemellus inferior, Transversus perinæi, Erector penis. To the *pubis*, sixteen: Obliquus externus, Obliquus internus, Transversalis, Rectus, Pyramidalis, Psoas parvus, Pectineus, Adductor magnus, Adductor longus, Adductor brevis, Gracilis, Obturator externus and internus, Levator ani, Compressor urethræ, and occasionally a few fibres of the Accelerator urinæ.

The Pelvis (Figs. 156, 157).

The pelvis, so called from its resemblance to a basin (L. *pelvis*), is stronger and more massively constructed than either the cranial or thoracic cavity; it is a bony ring, interposed between the lower end of the spine, which it supports, and the lower extremities, upon which its rests. It is composed of four bones: the two **ossa innominata**, which bound it on either side and in front, and the **sacrum** and **coccyx**, which complete it behind. The pelvis is divided by an oblique plane passing through the prominence of the sacrum, the linea ilio-pectinea, and the upper margin of the symphysis pubis into the **false** and **true pelvis.**

The False Pelvis (*pelvis major*).—The false pelvis is the expanded portion of the pelvic cavity which is situated above this plane. It is bounded on each side by the ossa ilii; in front it is incomplete, presenting a wide interval between the spinous processes of the ilia on either side, which is filled up in the recent state by the parietes of the abdomen; behind, in the middle line, is a deep notch. This

broad, shallow cavity is fitted to support the intestines and to transmit part of their weight to the anterior wall of the abdomen, and is, in fact, really a portion of the abdominal cavity. The term false pelvis is incorrect, and this space ought

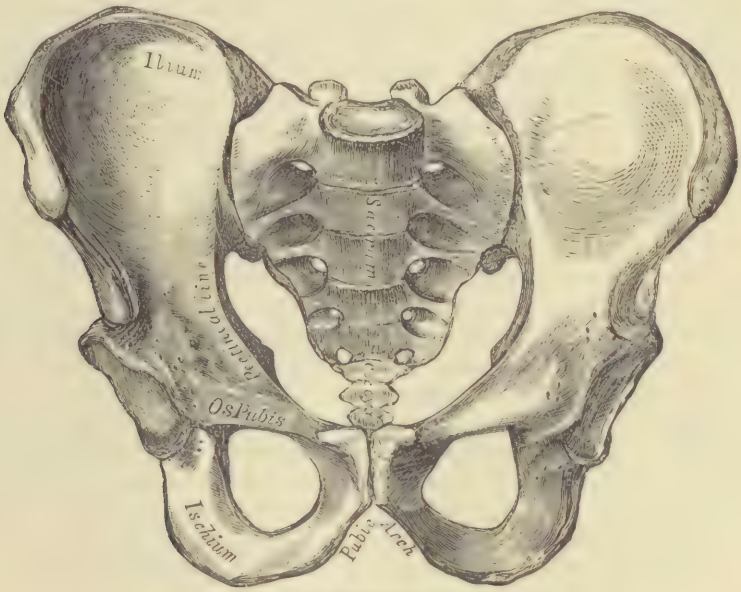


Fig. 156.—Male pelvis (adult).

more properly to be regarded as part of the hypogastric and iliac regions of the abdomen.

The True Pelvis (*pelvis minor*).—The true pelvis is that part of the pelvic cavity which is situated beneath the plane. It is smaller than the false pelvis,

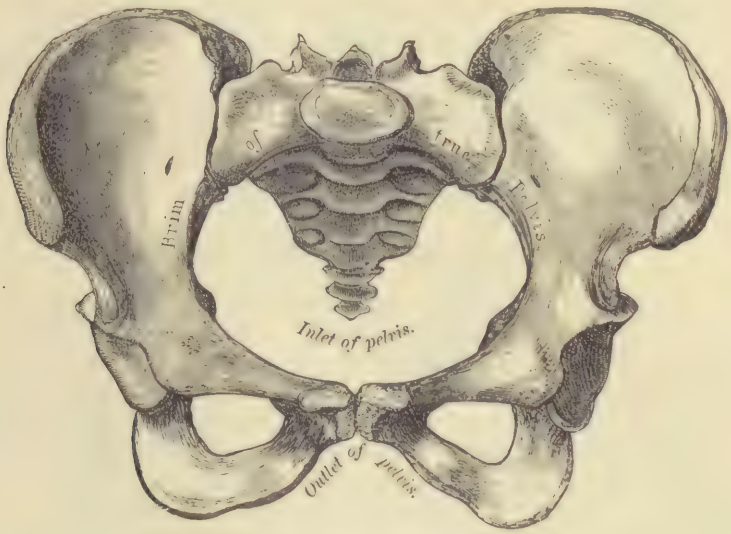


Fig. 157.—Female pelvis (adult).

but its walls are more perfect. For convenience of description it is divided into a **superior circumference** or **inlet**, an **inferior circumference** or **outlet**, and a **cavity.**

The Superior Circumference or Inlet (*apertura pelvis superior*).—The superior circumference forms the **brim of the pelvis,** the included space being called the **inlet.** It is formed by the linea ilio-pectinea, completed in front by the crests of the pubic bones, and behind by the anterior margin of the base of the sacrum and sacro-vertebral angle. The **brim of the pelvis** is the name often given to the margin of the inlet. The inlet of the pelvis is somewhat heart-shaped, obtusely pointed in front, diverging on either side, and encroached upon behind by the projection forward of the promontory of the sacrum. It has three principal diameters: antero-posterior (sacro-pubic), transverse, and oblique. The **antero-posterior** or **conjugate diameter** (*conjugata*) extends from the sacro-vertebral angle to the symphysis pubis. The **anatomical conjugate** (*conjugata anatomica*) is the distance between the sacro-vertebral angle and the top of the symphysis pubis. Its average measurement is four inches in the male and four and three-fifths inches in the female. The true, available, or **obstetric conjugate** (*conjugata gynæcologica*) is the distance between the sacro-vertebral angle and the nearest point upon the symphysis. This point is a little behind and below the upper margin (Webster). The average distance in women is four and three-eighths inches. The **diagonal conjugate** (*diagonalconjugata*) is measured from the sacro-vertebral angle to the subpubic ligament. The distance exceeds the true conjugate by one-half or two-thirds of an inch. The **transverse diameter** (*diameter transversa*) extends across the greatest width of the inlet, from the middle of the brim on one side to the same point on the opposite; its average measurement is five inches in the male, five and one-fourth inches in the female. The **oblique diameter** (*diameter obliqua*) extends from the margin of the pelvis, corresponding to the ilio-pectineal eminence on one side, to the sacro-iliac articulation on the opposite side; its average measurement is four and a quarter inches in the male and five in the female. The oblique diameters are named right or left oblique, according to the sacro-iliac joint from which the measurement is taken.

The Cavity.—The cavity of the true pelvis is bounded in front by the symphysis pubis; behind, by the concavity of the sacrum and coccyx, which, curving forward above and below, contracts the inlet and outlet of the canal; and laterally it is bounded by a broad, smooth, quadrangular surface of bone, corresponding to the inner surface of the body of the ischium and that part of the ilium which is below the ilio-pectineal line. The cavity is shallow in front, measuring at the symphysis an inch and a half in depth, three inches and a half in the middle, and four inches and a half posteriorly. From this description it will be seen that the cavity of the pelvis is a short, curved canal, considerably deeper on its posterior than on its anterior wall. This cavity contains, in the recent subject, the rectum, bladder, and part of the organs of generation. The rectum is placed at the back of the pelvis, and corresponds to the curve of the sacro-coccygeal column; the bladder in front, behind the symphysis pubis. In the female the uterus and vagina occupy the interval between these viscera.

The Lower Circumference or Outlet (*apertura pelvis inferior*).—The lower circumference of the pelvis is very irregular, and forms what is called the **outlet.** It is bounded by three prominent eminences: one posterior, formed by the point of the coccyx; and one on each side, the tuberosities of the ischia. These eminences are separated by three notches; one in front, the **pubic arch** (*arcus pubis*), formed by the convergence of the rami of the ischia and pubic bones on each side. The other notches, one on each side, are formed by the sacrum and coccyx behind, the ischium in front, and the ilium above; they are called the **sacro-sciatic notches;** in the natural state they are converted into foramina by the lesser and greater sacro-sciatic ligaments. In the recent state, when the ligaments are *in situ*, the outlet of the pelvis is lozenge-shaped, bounded in front by the subpubic ligament and the rami of the os pubis and ischium; on each side by the tuber-

osities of the ischia; and behind by the great sacro-sciatic ligaments and the tip of the coccyx.

The diameters of the outlet of the pelvis are two, antero-posterior and transverse. The *antero-posterior (conjugate) diameter (diameter recta of the outlet)* extends from the tip of the coccyx to the lower part of the symphysis pubis; its average measurement is three and three-quarter inches in the male and four and one-half inches in the female. The antero-posterior diameter varies with the length of the coccyx, and is capable of increase or diminution on account of the mobility of that bone. During labor the coccyx may be bent back so that the conjugate is increased one inch, or even one and one-fourth inches. The *transverse diameter* extends from the posterior part of one ischiatic tuberosity to the same point on the opposite side: the average measurement is three and a half inches in the male and four and three-fourths in the female.[1]

Oblique diameters are not employed, as there are no fixed points from which to measure them.

Position of the Pelvis.—In the erect posture the pelvis is placed obliquely with regard to the trunk of the body: the bony ring, which forms the brim of the true pelvis, is placed so as to form an angle of about 60 to 65 degrees with the ground on which we stand (*inclinatio pelvis*). The pelvic surface of the symphysis pubis looks upward and backward, the concavity of the sacrum and coccyx downward and forward, the base of the sacrum in well-formed female bodies being nearly four inches above the upper border of the symphysis pubis, and the apex of the coccyx a little more than half an inch above its lower border. In consequence of the obliquity of the pelvis the line of gravity of the head, which passes through the middle of the odontoid process of the axis and through the points of junction of the curves of the vertebral column to the sacro-vertebral angle, descends toward the front of the cavity, so that it bisects a line drawn transversely through the middle of the heads of the thigh bones. And thus the centre of gravity of the head is placed immediately over the heads of the thigh bones on which the trunk is supported.

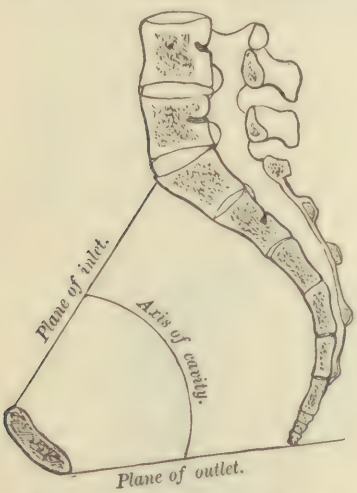


FIG. 158.—Vertical section of the pelvis, with lines indicating the axis of the pelvis.

Axes of the Pelvis (Fig. 158).—The **plane of the inlet** of the true pelvis will be represented by a line drawn from the base of the sacrum to the upper margin of the symphysis pubis. A line carried at right angles with this at its middle would correspond at one extremity with the umbilicus, and at the other with the middle of the coccyx: the **axis of the inlet** is therefore directed downward and backward. The **axis of the outlet**, produced upward, would touch the base of the sacrum, and is therefore directed downward and forward. The **axis of the cavity** is curved like the cavity itself: this curve corresponds to the concavity of the sacrum and coccyx, the extremities being indicated by the central points of the inlet and

[1] The measurements of the pelvis given above are, I believe, fairly accurate, but different measurements are given by various authors, no doubt due in a great measure to differences in the physique and stature of the population from whom the measurements have been taken. The accompanying chart has been formulated to show the measurements of the pelvis which are adopted by many obstetricians.—ED.

DIAMETERS OF THE TRUE PELVIS IN WOMAN.

	Antero-posterior.	*Oblique.*	*Transverse.*
Of inlet . .	4⅘ inches (118 mm.)	5 inches (127 mm.)	5¼ inches (135 mm.)
Of outlet . .	4½ inches (115 mm.)		4¾ inches (120 mm.)

outlet. A knowledge of the direction of these axes serves to explain the course of the fœtus in the passage through the pelvis during parturition. It is also important to the surgeon, as indicating the direction of the force required in the removal of calculi from the bladder by the sub-pubic operation, and as determining the direction in which instruments should be used in operations upon the pelvic viscera.

Differences between the Male and the Female Pelvis.—The female pelvis, looked at as a whole, is distinguished from the male by the bones being more delicate, by its width being greater and its depth smaller. The whole pelvis is less massive, and its bones are lighter and more slender, and its muscular impressions are slightly marked. The iliac fossæ are shallow, and the anterior iliac spines widely separated; hence the greater prominence of the hips. The **inlet** in the female is larger than in the male; it is more nearly circular, and the sacro-vertebral angle projects less forward. The **cavity** is shallower and wider; the sacrum is shorter, wider, and less curved; the obturator foramina are triangular, and smaller in size than in the male. The **outlet** is larger and the coccyx more movable. The spines of the ischia project less inward. The tuberosities of the ischia and the acetabula are wider apart. The **pubic arch** is wider and more rounded than in the male, where it is an angle rather than an arch. In consequence of this the width of the fore part of the pelvic outlet is much increased and the passage of the fœtal head facilitated.

The size of the pelvis varies, not only in the two sexes, but also in different members of the same sex. This does not appear to be influenced in any way by

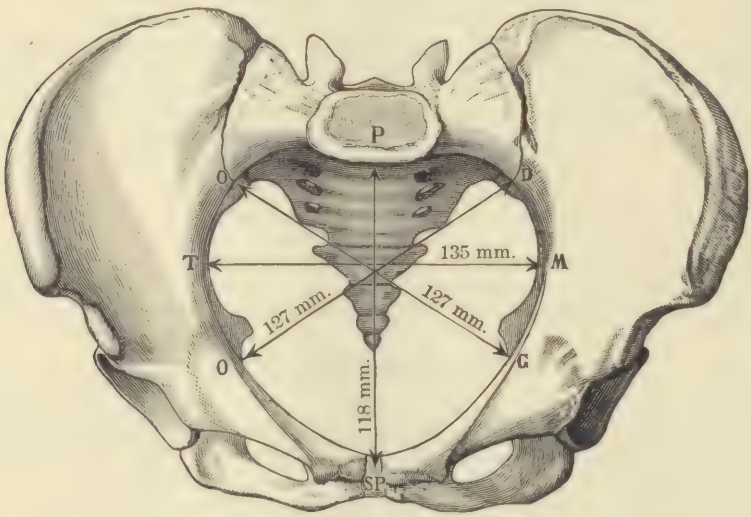


Fig. 159.—Diameters of the pelvic inlet.

the height of the individual. Women of short stature, as a rule, have broad pelves. Occasionally the pelvis is equally contracted in all its dimensions, so much so that all its diameters measure an inch less than the average, and this even in women of average height and otherwise well formed. The principal divergences, however, are found at the inlet, and affect the relation of the antero-posterior to the transverse diameter. Thus we may have a pelvis the inlet of which is elliptical either in a transverse or antero-posterior direction; the transverse diameter in the former and the antero-posterior in the latter greatly exceeding the other diameters. Again, the inlet of the pelvis in some instances is seen to be almost circular. The same differences are found in various races. European women are said to have the

most roomy pelves. That of the negress is smaller, circular in shape, and with a narrow pubic arch. The Hottentots and Bushwomen possess the smallest pelves.

In the **fœtus** and for several years after birth the pelvis is small in proportion to that of the adult. The cavity is deep, and the projection of the sacro-vertebral angle less marked. The generally accepted opinion that the female pelvis does not acquire its sexual characters until after puberty has been shown by recent

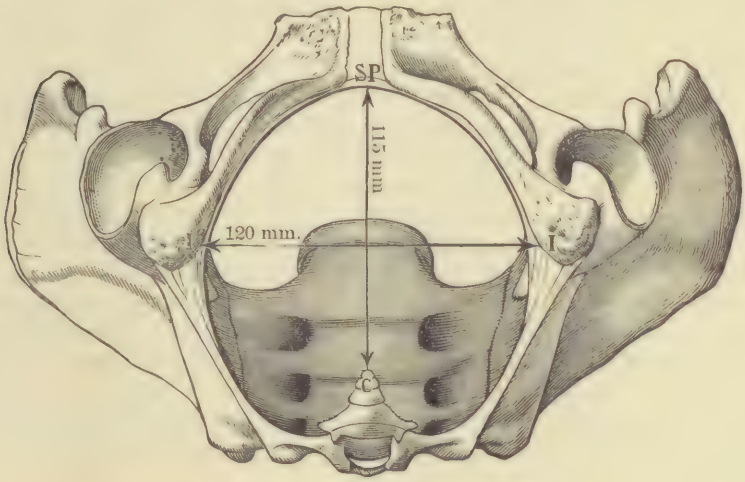


FIG. 160.—Diameters of the pelvic outlet.

observations[1] to be erroneous, the characteristic differences between the male and female pelvis being distinctly indicated as early as the fourth month of fœtal life. At birth these differences are distinct (Romiti), the female pelvis possessing less straight ilia, a broader subpubic arch, and less height than the male.

Surface Form.—The pelvic bones are so thickly covered with muscles that it is only at certain points that they approach the surface and can be felt through the skin. In front, the anterior superior spinous process is easily recognized; a portion of it is subcutaneous, and in thin subjects may be seen to stand out as a prominence at the outer extremity of the fold of the groin. In fat subjects its position is marked by an oblique depression amongst the surrounding fat, at the bottom of which the bony process may be felt. Proceeding upward and outward from this process, the crest of the ilium may be traced throughout its whole length, sinuously curved. It is represented, in muscular subjects, on the surface, by a groove or furrow, the **iliac furrow,** caused by the projection of fleshy fibres of the External oblique muscles of the abdomen; the iliac furrow lies slightly below the level of the crest. It terminates behind in the posterior superior spinous process, the position of which is indicated by a slight depression on a level with the spinous process of the second sacral vertebra. Between the two posterior superior spinous processes, but at a lower level, is to be felt the spinous process of the third sacral vertebra (see page 69). Another part of the bony pelvis easily accessible to touch is the tuberosity of the ischium, situated beneath the gluteal fold, and, when the hip is flexed, it is easily felt, as it is then to a great extent uncovered by muscle. Finally, the spine of the os pubis can always be readily felt, and constitutes an important surgical guide, especially in connection with the subject of hernia. It is nearly in the same horizontal line with the upper edge of the great trochanter. In thin subjects it is very apparent, but in the obese it is obscured by the pubic fat. It can, however, be detected by following up the tendon of origin of the Adductor longus muscle.

Surgical Anatomy.—There is arrest of development in the bones of the pelvis in cases of *extroversion of the bladder:* the anterior part of the pelvic girdle being deficient, the bodies of the pubic bones imperfectly developed, and the symphysis absent. The pubic bones are separated to the extent of from two to four inches, the superior rami shortened and directed forward, and the obturator foramen diminished in size, narrowed, and turned outward. The

[1] Fehling, Zeitschr. für Geburt. u. Gynaek., Bd. ix. und x.; and Arthur Thomson, Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, vol. xxxiii.

iliac bones are straightened out more than normal. The sacrum is very peculiar. The lateral curve, instead of being concave, is flattened out or even convex, with the ilio-sacral facets turned more outward than normal, while the vertical curve is straightened.[1]

Fractures of the pelvis are divided into fractures of the false pelvis and of the true pelvis. Fractures of the false pelvis vary in extent: a small portion of the iliac crest may be broken or one of the spinous processes may be torn off, and this may be the result of muscular action; or the bone may be extensively comminuted. This latter accident is the result of some crushing violence, and may be complicated with fracture of the true pelvis. These cases may be accompanied by injury to the intestine as it lies in the hollow of the bone, or to the iliac vessels as they course along the margin of the true pelvis. Fractures of the true pelvis generally occur through the ascending ramus of the os pubis and the ramus of the ischium, as this is the weakest part of the bony ring, and may be caused either by crushing violence applied in an antero-posterior direction, when the fracture occurs from direct force, or by compression laterally, when the acetabula are pressed together, and the bone gives way in the same place from indirect violence. Occasionally the injury may be double, a break occurring on both sides of the body. In fracture of the true pelvis the contained viscera are liable to be damaged: the small intestines, the urethra, the bladder, the rectum, the vagina, and even the uterus, in the female, have all been lacerated by a displaced fragment. Fractures of the acetabulum are occasionally met with: either a portion of the rim may be broken off, or a fracture may take place through the bottom of the cavity, and the head of the femur may be driven inward and project into the pelvic cavity. Separation of the Y-shaped cartilage at the bottom of the acetabulum may also occur in the young subject, dispersing the bone into its three anatomical portions.

The *sacrum* is seldom broken. The cause is direct violence—*i. e.*, blows, kicks, or falls on the part. The lesion may be complicated with injury to the nerves of the sacral plexus, leading to paralysis and loss of sensation in the lower extremity or to incontinence of fæces from paralysis of the Sphincter ani.

The pelvic bones often undergo important deformity in *rickets*, the effect of which in the adult woman may interfere seriously with childbearing. The deformity is due mainly to the weight of the spine and trunk, which presses on the sacro-vertebral angle and greatly increases it, so that the antero-posterior diameter of the pelvis is diminished. But, in addition to this, the weight of the viscera on the venter ilii causes those bones to expand and the tuberosities of the ischia to incurve. In *osteomalacia* also great deformity may occur. The weight of the trunk causes an increase in the sacro-vertebral angle and a lessening of the antero-posterior diameter of the inlet, and at the same time the pressure of the acetabula on the heads of the thigh-bones causes these cavities, with the adjacent bone, to be pushed upward and backward, so that the oblique diameters of the pelvis are also diminished, and the cavity of the pelvis assumes a triradiate shape, with the symphysis pubis pushed forward.

THE THIGH.

The thigh is that portion of the lower extremity which is situated between the pelvis and the knee. It consists in the skeleton of a single bone, the **femur.**

The Femur, or Thigh Bone (Figs. 161, 162).

The femur (*femur*, the thigh) is the longest,[2] largest, and strongest bone in the skeleton, and almost perfectly cylindrical throughout the greater part of its extent. In the erect posture it is not vertical, being separated from its fellow above by a considerable interval, which corresponds to the entire breadth of the pelvis, but inclining gradually downward and inward, so as to approach its fellow toward its lower part, for the purpose of bringing the knee-joint near the line of gravity of the body. The degree of this inclination varies in different persons, and is greater in the female than the male, on account of the greater breadth of the pelvis. The femur, like other long bones, is divisible into a **shaft** and two **extremities.**

Upper Extremity.—The upper extremity presents for examination a **head,** a **neck,** and a **great** and **lesser trochanters.**

Head of the Femur (*caput femoris*).—The head, which is globular, and forms rather more than a hemisphere, is directed upward, inward, and a little

[1] Wood. Heath's Dictionary of Practical Surgery, i., 426.
[2] In a man six feet high it measures eighteen inches—one-fourth of the whole body.

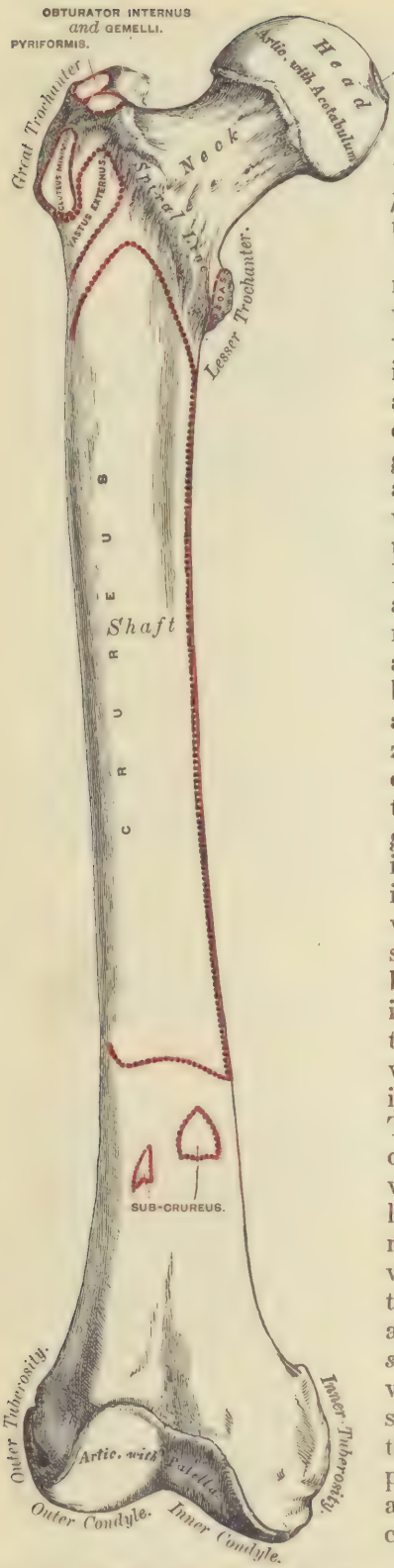


FIG. 161.—Right femur. Anterior surface.

forward, the greater part of its convexity being above and in front. Its surface is smooth, coated with cartilage in the recent state, except at a little behind and below its centre, where is an **ovoid depression** (*fovea capitis femoris*), for the attachment for the Ligamentum teres.

The Neck of the Femur (*collum femoris*).—The neck is a flattened pyramidal process of bone which connects the head with the shaft. It varies in length and obliquity at various periods in life and under different circumstances. The angle is widest in infancy, and becomes lessened during growth, so that at puberty it forms a gentle curve from the axis of the shaft. In the adult it forms an angle of about 130 degrees with the shaft, but varies in inverse proportion to the development of the pelvis and the stature. In consequence of the prominence of the hips and widening of the pelvis in the female, the neck of the thigh bone forms more nearly a right angle with the shaft than it does in man. It has been stated that the angle diminishes in old age and the direction of the neck becomes horizontal, but this statement is founded on insufficient evidence. Sir George Humphry states that the angle decreases during the period of growth, but after full growth has been attained it does not usually undergo any change, even in old age. He further states that the angle varies considerably in different persons of the same age. It is smaller in short than in long bones, and when the pelvis is wide.[1] The neck is flattened from before backward, contracted in the middle, and broader at its outer extremity, where it is connected with the shaft, than at its summit, where it is attached to the head. The vertical diameter of the outer half is increased by the thickening of the lower edge, which slopes downward to join the shaft at the lesser trochanter, so that the outer half of the neck is flattened from before backward, and its vertical diameter measures one-third more than the antero-posterior. The inner half is smaller and of a more circular shape. The *anterior surface* of the neck is perforated by numerous vascular foramina. The *posterior surface* is smooth, and is broader and more concave than the anterior; it gives attachment to the posterior part of the capsular ligament of the hip-joint, about half an inch above the posterior intertrochanteric line. The *superior border* is short and

[1] Journal of Anatomy and Physiology.

thick, and terminates externally at the great trochanter; its surface is perforated by large foramina. The *inferior border*, long and narrow, curves a little backward, to terminate at the lesser trochanter.

The Trochanters.—The trochanters (*τροχάω*, to run or roll) are prominent processes of bone which afford leverage to the muscles which rotate the thigh on its axis. They are two in number, the greater and the lesser.

The **great trochanter** (*trochanter major*) is a large, irregular, quadrilateral eminence, situated at the outer side of the neck, at its junction with the upper part of the shaft. It is directed a little outward and backward, and in the adult is about three-quarters of an inch lower than the head. It presents for examination two surfaces and four borders. The *external surface*, quadrilateral in form, is broad, rough, convex, and marked by a prominent diagonal impression, which extends from the posterior superior to the anterior inferior angle, and serves for the attachment of the tendon of the Gluteus medius. Above the impression is a triangular surface, sometimes rough for part of the tendon of the same muscle, sometimes smooth for the interposition of a bursa between that tendon and the bone. Below and behind the diagonal line is a smooth, triangular surface, over which the tendon of the Gluteus maximus muscle plays, a bursa being interposed. The *internal surface* is of much less extent than the external, and presents at its base a deep depression, the **digital** or **trochanteric fossa** (*fossa trochanterica*), for the attachment of the tendon of the Obturator externus muscle: above and in front of this an impression for the attachment of the Obturator internus and Gemelli. The *superior border* is free; it is thick and irregular, and marked near the centre by an impression for the attachment of the Pyriformis. The *inferior border* corresponds to the point of junction of the base of the trochanter with the outer surface of the shaft; it is marked by a rough, prominent, slightly curved ridge, which gives attachment to the upper part of the Vastus externus muscle. The *anterior border* is prominent, somewhat irregular, as well as the surface of bone immediately below it; it affords attachment at its outer part to the Gluteus minimus. The *posterior border* is very prominent, and appears as a free, rounded edge, which forms the back part of the digital fossa.

The **lesser trochanter** (*trochanter minor*) is a conical eminence which varies in size in different subjects; it projects from the lower and back parts of the base of the neck. Its base is triangular, and connected with the adjacent parts of the bone by three well-marked borders: two of these are above—the *internal border*, continuous with the lower border of the neck, the *external border* with the posterior intertrochanteric line—while the *inferior border* is continuous with the middle division of the linea aspera. Its summit, which is directed inward and backward, is rough, and gives insertion to the tendon of the Ilio-psoas. The Iliacus is also inserted into the shaft below the lesser trochanter between the Vastus internus in front and the Pectineus behind.

A well-marked prominence of variable size, which projects from the upper and front part of the neck at its junction with the great trochanter, is called the **tubercle of the femur**; it is the point of meeting of five muscles: the Gluteus minimus externally, the Vastus externus below, and the tendon of the Obturator internus and Gemelli above. Running obliquely downward and inward from the tubercle is the **spiral line of the femur**, or **anterior intertrochanteric line** (*linea intertrochanterica*); it winds round the inner side of the shaft, below the lesser trochanter, and terminates in the linea aspera, about two inches below this eminence. Its upper half is rough, and affords attachment to the ilio-femoral ligament of the hip-joint; its lower half is less prominent, and gives attachment to the upper part of the Vastus internus. Running obliquely downward and inward from the summit of the great trochanter on the posterior surface of the neck is a very prominent, well-marked ridge, the **posterior intertrochanteric line** (*crista intertrochanterica*). Its upper half forms the posterior border of the great trochanter, and its lower

Fig. 162.—Right femur. Posterior surface.

half runs downward and inward to the upper and back part of the lesser trochanter. A slight ridge sometimes commences about the middle of the posterior intertrochanteric line, and passes vertically downward for about two inches along the back part of the shaft: it is called the **linea quadrati**, and gives attachment to the Quadratus femoris and a few fibres of the Adductor magnus muscles.[1]

The Shaft of the Femur (*corpus femoris*).—The shaft, almost cylindrical in form, is a little broader above than in the centre, and somewhat flattened below, from before backward. It is slightly arched, so as to be convex in front and concave behind, where it is strengthened by a prominent longitudinal ridge, the **linea aspera**. It presents for examination three borders, separating three surfaces. Of the three borders, one, the linea aspera, is posterior; the other two are placed laterally.

The Linea Aspera.—The linea aspera (Fig. 162) is a prominent longitudinal ridge or crest, on the middle third of the bone, presenting an **external lip** (*labium laterale*), an **internal lip** (*labium mediale*), and a rough intermediate space. Above, this crest is prolonged by three ridges. The most **external ridge** is very rough, and is continued almost vertically upward to the base of the great trochanter. It is sometimes termed the **gluteal ridge** (*tuberositas glutæa*), and gives attachment to part of the Gluteus maximus muscle; its upper part is sometimes elongated into a roughened crest, on which is a more or less well-marked, rounded tubercle, a **rudimental third trochanter** (*trochanter tertius*). The **middle ridge** (*linea pectinea*), the least dis-

[1] Generally there is merely a slight thickening about the centre of the intertrochanteric line, marking the point of attachment of the Quadratus femoris. This is termed by some anatomists the *tubercle of the Quadratus*.

tinct, is continued to the base of the trochanter minor, and the **internal ridge** is lost above in the spiral line of the femur. Below, the linea aspera is prolonged by two ridges, which pass to the condyles and enclose between them a triangular space, the **popliteal surface** (*planum popliteum*), upon which rests the popliteal artery. Of these two ridges, the *outer* one is the more prominent, and descends to the summit of the outer condyle. The *inner* one is less marked, especially at its upper part, where it is crossed by the femoral artery. It terminates, below, at the summit of the internal condyle, in a small tubercle, the **adductor tubercle**, which affords attachment to the tendon of the Adductor magnus. To the inner lip of the linea aspera and its inner prolongation above and below is attached the Vastus internus, and to the outer lip and its outer prolongation above is attached the Vastus externus. The Adductor magnus is attached to the linea aspera, to its outer prolongation above and its inner prolongation below. Between the Vastus externus and the Adductor magnus are attached two muscles —viz., the Gluteus maximus above, and the short head of the Biceps below. Between the Adductor magnus and the Vastus internus four muscles are attached: the Iliacus and Pectineus above, the Adductor brevis and Adductor longus below. A little below the centre of the linea aspera is the **nutrient foramen** (*foramen nutricium*), the orifice of the **nutrient canal** (*canalis nutricius*), which is directed obliquely upward (proximally).

Lateral Borders. – The two lateral borders of the femur are only slightly marked, the outer one extending from the anterior inferior angle of the great trochanter to the anterior extremity of the external condyle; the inner one from the spiral line at a point opposite the trochanter minor, to the anterior extremity of the internal condyle. The internal border marks the limit of attachment of the Crureus muscle internally.

Anterior Surface.—The anterior surface includes that portion of the shaft which is situated between the two lateral borders. It is smooth, convex, broader above and below than in the centre, slightly twisted, so that its upper part is directed forward and a little outward, its lower part forward and a little inward. To the upper three-fourths of this surface the Crureus is attached; the lower fourth is separated from the muscle by the intervention of the synovial membrane of the knee-joint and a bursa, and affords attachment to the Subcrureus to a small extent.

External Surface.—The external surface includes the portion of bone between the external border and the outer lip of the linea aspera: it is continuous above with the outer surface of the great trochanter, below with the outer surface of the external condyle; to its upper three-fourths is attached the outer portion of the Crureus muscle.

Internal Surface.—The internal surface includes the portion of bone between the internal border and the inner lip of the linea aspera; it is continuous above with the lower border of the neck, below with the inner side of the internal condyle: it is covered by the Vastus internus muscle.

Lower Extremity.—The lower extremity, larger than the upper, is of a cuboid form, flattened from before backward, and divided into two large eminences, the **condyles** (*condyli*, from κόνδυλος, a knuckle), by an interval which presents a smooth depression in front called the **trochlea** (*facies patellaris*), and a notch of considerable size behind—the **intercondyloid notch** (*fossa intercondyloidea*). The **external condyle** (*condylus lateralis*) is the more prominent anteriorly, and is the broader both in the antero-posterior and transverse diameters. The **internal condyle** (*condylus medialis*) is the narrower, longer, and more prominent inferiorly. This difference in the length of the two condyles is only observed when the bone is perpendicular and depends upon the obliquity of the thigh bones, in consequence of their separation above at the articulation with the pelvis. If the femur is held obliquely, the surfaces of the two condyles will be seen to be nearly hori-

zontal. The two condyles are directly continuous in front, and form a smooth, trochlear surface, the **trochlea**, which articulates with the patella. It presents a median groove, which extends downward and backward to the intercondyloid notch; and two lateral convexities, of which the external is the broader, more prominent, and prolonged farther upward upon the front of the outer condyle. The external border of this articular surface is also more prominent, and ascends higher than the internal one. The intercondyloid notch lodges the crucial ligaments; it is bounded laterally by the opposed surfaces of the two condyles, and in front by the lower end of the shaft. Between the popliteal surface and the floor of the intercondyloid notch is an elevation (*linea intercondyloidea*), which affords attachment to the posterior ligament of the knee-joint.

Outer or External Condyle (*condylus lateralis*).—The *outer surface* of the external condyle presents, a little behind its centre, an eminence, the **outer tuberosity** (*epicondylus lateralis*); it is less prominent than the inner tuberosity, and gives attachment to the external lateral ligaments of the knee. Immediately beneath it is a *groove*, the **popliteal groove** (*sulcus popliteus*), which commences at a depression a little behind the centre of the lower border of this surface: the front part of this depression gives origin to the Popliteus muscle, the tendon of which is lodged in the groove during flexion of the knee. The groove is smooth, covered with cartilage in the recent state, and runs upward and backward to the posterior extremity of the condyle. The *inner surface* of the outer condyle forms one of the lateral boundaries of the intercondyloid notch, and gives attachment, by its posterior part, to the anterior crucial ligament. The *inferior surface* is convex, smooth, and broader than that of the internal condyle. The posterior extremity is convex and smooth: just above and to the outer side of the articular surface is a depression for the tendon of the outer head of the Gastrocnemius, above which is the origin of the Plantaris.

Inner or Internal Condyle (*condylus medialis*).—The *inner surface* of the inner condyle presents a convex eminence, the **inner tuberosity** (*epicondylus medialis*), rough for the attachment of the internal lateral ligament. The *outer side* of the inner condyle forms one of the lateral boundaries of the intercondyloid notch, and gives attachment, by its anterior part, to the posterior crucial ligament. Its *inferior* or *articular surface* is convex, and presents a less extensive surface than the external condyle. Just above the articular surface of the condyle, behind, is a depression for the tendon of origin of the inner head of the Gastrocnemius.

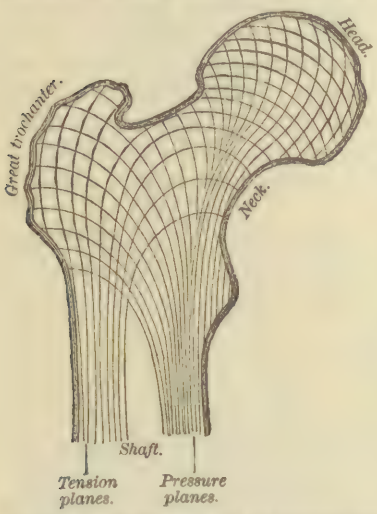


Fig. 163. Diagram showing the arrangement of the bone-fibres of the neck of the femur.

Structure.—The shaft of the femur is a cylinder of compact tissue, hollowed by a large medullary canal. The cylinder is of great thickness and density in the middle third of the shaft, where the bone is narrowest and the medullary canal well formed; but above and below this the cylinder gradually becomes thinner, owing to a separation of the layers of the bone into cancelli, which project into the medullary canal and finally obliterate it, so that the upper and lower ends of the shaft, and the articular extremities more especially, consist of cancellated tissue invested by a thin, compact layer.

The arrangement of the cancelli in the ends of the femur is remarkable. In the upper end they are arranged in two sets. One, starting from the top of the

head, the upper surface of the neck, and the great trochanter, converge to the inner circumference of the shaft (Figs. 163 and 164); these are placed in the direction of greatest pressure, and serve to support the vertical weight of the body. The second set are planes of lamellæ intersecting the former nearly at right angles, and are

FIG. 164.—Right femur, upper extremity, ground frontal section, from in front. (Spalteholz.)

situated in the line of the greatest tension—that is to say, along the lines in which the muscles and ligaments exert their traction. In the head of the bone these planes are arranged in a curved form, in order to strengthen the bone when exposed to pressure in all directions. In the midst of the cancellous tissue of the neck is a vertical plane of compact bone, the **femoral spur** (*calcar femorale*), which com-

mences at the point where the neck joins the shaft midway between the lesser trochanter and the internal border of the shaft of the bone, and extends in the direction of the digital fossa (Fig. 165). This materially strengthens this portion of the bone. Another point in connection with the structure of the neck of the femur requires mention, especially on account of its influence on the production of fracture in this situation. It will be noticed that a considerable portion of the great trochanter lies behind the level of the posterior surface of the neck; and if a section be made through the trochanter at this level, it will be seen that the posterior wall of the neck is prolonged into the trochanter. This prolongation is termed by Bigelow the **true neck**,[1] and forms a thin, dense plate of bone, which passes beneath the posterior intertrochanteric ridge toward the outer surface of the bone. In the lower end the cancelli spring on all sides from the inner surface of the cylinder, and descend in a perpendicular direction to the articular surface,

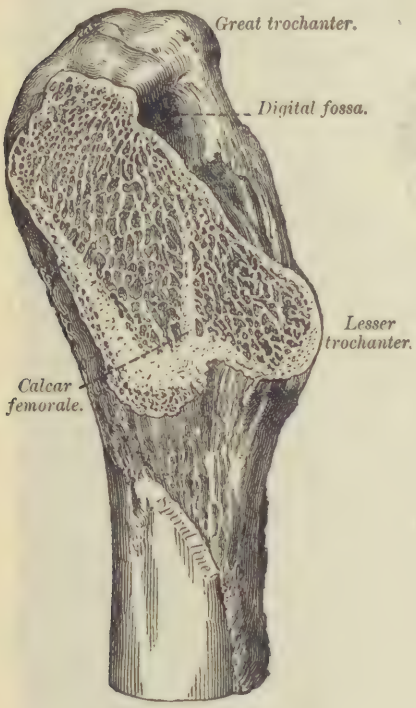


Fig. 165.—Calcar femorale.

Fig. 166.—Plan of the development of the femur. By five centres.

the cancelli being strongest and having a more accurately perpendicular course above the condyles. In addition to this, however, horizontal planes of cancellous tissue are to be seen, so that the spongy tissue in this situation presents an appearance of being mapped out into a series of rectangular areas.

Articulations.—With three bones: the os innominatum, tibia, and patella.

Development (Fig. 166).—The femur is developed by *five* centres: one for the shaft, one for each extremity, and one for each trochanter. Of all the long bones, except the clavicle, it is the first to show traces of ossification: this commences in the shaft, at about the seventh week of fœtal life, the centres of ossification in the epiphyses appearing in the following order: First, in the lower end of the bone, at the ninth month of fœtal life[2] (from this the condyles and tuberosities are

[1] Bigelow on the Hip, p. 121.

[2] This is said to be the only epiphysis in which ossification begins before birth; though according to some observers, the centre for the upper epiphysis of the tibia also appears before birth.

formed); in the head at the end of the first year after birth; in the great trochanter, during the fourth year; and in the lesser trochanter, between the thirteenth and fourteenth. The order in which the epiphyses are joined to the shaft is the reverse of that of their appearance: their junction does not commence until after puberty, the lesser trochanter being first joined, then the great, then the head, and, lastly, the inferior extremity (the first in which ossification commenced), which is not united until the twentieth year.

Attachment of Muscles.—To twenty-three. To the great trochanter: the Gluteus medius, Gluteus minimus, Pyriformis, Obturator internus, Obturator externus, Gemellus superior, Gemellus inferior, and Quadratus femoris. To the lesser trochanter: the Psoas magnus and the Iliacus below it. To the shaft: the Vastus externus, Gluteus maximus, short head of the Biceps, Vastus internus, Adductor magnus, Pectineus, Adductor brevis, Adductor longus, Crureus, and Subcrureus. To the condyles: the Gastrocnemius, Plantaris, and Popliteus.

Surface Form.—The femur is covered with muscles, so that in fairly muscular subjects the shaft is not to be detected through its fleshy covering, and the only parts accessible to the touch are the outer surface of the great trochanter and the lower expanded end of the bone. The external surface of the great trochanter is to be felt, especially in certain positions of the limb. Its position is generally indicated by a depression, owing to the thickness of the Gluteus medius and minimus, which project above it. When, however, the thigh is flexed, and especially if crossed over the opposite one, the trochanter produces a blunt eminence on the surface. The upper border is about on a line with the spine of the os pubis, and its exact level is indicated by a line drawn from the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium, over the outer side of the hip, to the most prominent point of the tuberosity of the ischium. This is known as **Nélaton's line.** The outer and inner condyles of the lower extremity are easily to be felt. The outer one is more subcutaneous than the inner one and readily felt. The tuberosity on it is comparatively little developed, but can be more or less easily recognized. The inner condyle is more thickly covered, and this gives a general convex outline to this part, especially when the knee is flexed. The tuberosity on it is easily felt, and at the upper part of the condyle the sharp tubercle for the insertion of the tendon of the Adductor magnus can be recognized without difficulty. When the knee is flexed, and the patella situated in the interval between the condyles and the upper end of the tibia, a part of the trochlear surface of the femur can be made out above the patella.

Surgical Anatomy.—There are one or two points about the ossification of the femur bearing on practice to which allusion must be made. It has been stated above that the lower end of the femur is the only epiphysis in which ossification has commenced at the time of birth. The presence of the ossific centre in newly born children found dead is, therefore, a proof that the child has arrived at the full period of utero-gestation, and is always relied upon in medico-legal investigations. The position of the *epiphysial line* should be carefully noted. It is on a level with the adductor tubercle, and the epiphysis does not, therefore, form the whole of the cartilage-clad portion of the lower end of the bone. It is essential to bear this point in mind in performing *excision of the knee*, since growth in length of the femur takes place chiefly from the lower epiphysis, and any interference with the epiphysial cartilage in a young child would involve such ultimate shortening of the limb, from want of growth, as to render it almost useless. Separation of the *lower epiphysis* may take place up to the age of twenty, at which time it becomes completely joined to the shaft of the bone; but, as a matter of fact, few cases occur after the age of sixteen or seventeen. The epiphysis of the head of the femur is of interest principally on account of its being the seat of origin of a large number of cases of *tuberculous disease of the hip-joint.* The disease commences in the majority of cases in the highly vascular and growing tissue in the neighborhood of the epiphysis, and from here extends into the joint. In the condition known as *coxa vara* the head of the femur falls to a lower level than normal. The angle between the neck and shaft is greatly diminished and may become a right angle or the head may actually descend to a lower level than that of the trochanter. The neck is also bent with a convexity forward; coxa vara is due to rickets.

Fractures of the femur are divided, like those of the other long bones, into fractures of the upper end; of the shaft; and of the lower end. The fractures of the upper end may be classified into (1) fracture of the neck; (2) fracture at the junction of the neck with the great trochanter; (3) fracture of the great trochanter; and (4) separation of the epiphysis, either of the head or of the great trochanter. The first of these, *fracture of the neck*, is usually termed *intracapsular fracture*, but this is scarcely a correct designation, as owing to the attachment of the capsular ligament, the fracture may be partly within and partly without the capsule, when the fracture occurs at the lower part of the neck. It generally occurs in old people, principally women, and usually from a very slight degree of indirect violence. Probably the main cause of the fracture

taking place in old people is in consequence of the degenerative changes which the bone has undergone. Merkel believes that it is mainly due to the absorption of the calcar femorale. These fractures are occasionally impacted. As a rule they unite by fibrous tissue, and frequently no union takes place, and the surfaces of the fracture become smooth and eburnated. The lack of reparative power in intracapsular fracture is due to lack of apposition of the fragments and diminution in the amount of blood sent to the smaller fragment. The head of the bone receives blood from the neck through the reflected portions of the capsule and through the Ligamentum teres. A fracture cuts off the supply by the neck and by the reflected portions of the capsule.

Fractures at the junction of the neck with the great trochanter are usually termed *extra-capsular*, but this designation is also incorrect, as the fracture is partly within the capsule, owing to its attachment in front to the anterior intertrochanteric line, which is situated below the line of fracture. These fractures are produced by direct violence to the great trochanter, as from a blow or fall laterally on the hip. From the manner in which the accident is caused, the neck of the bone is driven into the trochanter, where it may remain impacted or the trochanter may be split up into two or more fragments, and thus no fixation takes place.

Fractures of the great trochanter may be either 'oblique fracture through the trochanter major, without implicating the neck of the bone'' (Astley Cooper), or separation of the great trochanter. Most of the recorded cases of this latter injury occurred in young persons, and were probably cases of separation of the epiphysis of the great trochanter. Separation of the epiphysis of the head of the femur has been said to occur, but has probably never been verified by post-mortem examination.

Fractures of the shaft may occur at any part, but the most usual situation is at or near the centre of the bone. They may be caused by direct or indirect violence or by muscular action. Fractures of the upper third of the shaft are almost always the result of indirect violence, whilst those of the lower third are the result, for the most part, of direct violence. In the middle third fractures occur from both forms of injury in about equal proportions. Fractures of the shaft are generally oblique, but they may be transverse, longitudinal, or spiral. The transverse fracture occurs most frequently in children. The fractures of the lower end of the femur include transverse fracture above the condyles, the most common; and this may be complicated by a vertical fracture between the condyles, constituting the T-*shaped fracture*. In these cases the popliteal artery is in danger of being wounded. Oblique fracture, separating either the internal or external condyle, and a longitudinal incomplete fracture between the condyles, may also take place.

The femur and also the bones of the leg are frequently the seat of *acute osteomyelitis* in young children. This is no doubt due to their greater exposure to injury, which is often the exciting cause of this disease. *Tumors* not unfrequently are found growing from the femur: the most common forms being sarcoma, which may grow either from the periosteum or from the medullary tissue within the interior of the bone; and *exostosis*, which is commonly found originating in the neighborhood of the epiphysial cartilage of the lower end.

Genu varum is a form of *bow-leg* in which the tibia and femur are curved outward, the knees being widely separated. Both extremities are usually affected. In early life the disease is due to rickets. In elderly people it may be due to arthritis deformans. *Genu valgum* (*knock-knee*) is a condition in which the knees are close together, the feet are wide apart, and the internal lateral ligament of the knee-joint is stretched. It is due to excessive growth of the inner condyle of the femur, the shaft of the femur curving inward. It may be due to rickets, attitude of an occupation, or flat-foot, and one or both knees may be affected.

THE LEG.

The skeleton of the leg consists of three bones: the **patella**, a large sesamoid bone, placed in front of the knee; the **tibia**; and the **fibula**.

The Patella, or Knee-cap (Figs. 167, 168).

The patella (*patella*, a small pan), the knee-cap or knee-pan, is a flat, triangular bone, situated at the anterior part of the knee-joint. It is usually regarded as a sesamoid bone, developed in the tendon of the Quadriceps extensor. It resembles these bones (1) in its being developed in a tendon; (2) in its centre of ossification presenting a knotty or tuberculated outline; (3) in its structure being composed mainly of dense cancellous tissue, as in the other sesamoid bones. It serves to protect the front of the joint, and increases the leverage of the Quadriceps extensor by making it act at a greater angle. It presents an anterior and a posterior surface, three borders, and an apex.

Surfaces. Anterior Surface.—The anterior surface is convex, perforated by small apertures, for the passage of nutrient vessels, and marked by numerous rough, longitudinal striæ. This surface is covered, in the recent state, by an expansion from the tendon of the Quadriceps extensor, which is continuous below with the superficial fibres of the ligamentum patellæ. It is separated from the integument by a bursa.

Fig. 167.—Right patella. Anterior surface.

Fig. 168. Right patella. Posterior surface.

Posterior Surface.—The posterior surface presents a smooth, oval-shaped, articular surface (*facies articularis*), covered with cartilage in the recent state, and divided into two facets by a vertical ridge, which descends from the superior border toward the inferior angle of the bone. The ridge corresponds to the groove on the trochlear surface of the femur, and the two facets to the articular surfaces of the two condyles; the outer facet, for articulation with the outer condyle, being the broader and deeper. This character serves to indicate the side to which the bone belongs. Below the articular surface is a rough, convex, non-articular depression, the lower half of which gives attachment to the ligamentum patellæ, the upper half being separated from the head of the tibia by adipose tissue.

Borders. Superior Border.—The superior border (*basis patellæ*) is thick, and sloped from behind, downward and forward: it gives attachment to that portion of the Quadriceps extensor which is derived from the Rectus and Crureus muscles.

Lateral Borders.—The lateral borders are thinner, converging below. They give attachment to that portion of the Quadriceps extensor derived from the external and internal Vasti muscles.

The Apex (*apex patellæ*).—The apex is pointed, and gives attachment to the ligamentum patellæ.

Structure.—It consists of a nearly uniform, dense cancellous tissue covered by a thin compact lamina. The cancelli immediately beneath the anterior surface are arranged parallel with it. In the rest of the bone they radiate from the posterior articular surface toward the other parts of the bone.

Development.—By a single centre, which makes its appearance, according to Béclard, about the third year. In two instances Mr. Pick has seen this bone cartilaginous throughout, at a much later period (six years). More rarely, the bone is developed by two centres, placed side by side. Ossification is completed about the age of puberty.

Articulations.—With the two condyles of the femur.

Attachment of Muscles.—To four: the Rectus, Crureus, Vastus internus, and Vastus externus. These muscles, joined at their insertion, constitute the Quadriceps extensor cruris.

Surface Form.—The external surface of the patella can be seen and felt in front of the knee. In the extended position of the limb the internal border is a little more prominent than the outer, and if the Quadriceps extensor is relaxed the bone can be moved from side to side and appears to be loosely fixed. If the joint is flexed, the patella recedes into the hollow between the condyles of the femur and the upper end of the tibia, and becomes firmly fixed against the femur.

Surgical Anatomy.—The main surgical interest about the patella is in connection with *fractures*, which are of common occurrence. They may be produced by muscular action; that is to say, by violent contraction of the Quadriceps extensor while the limb is in a position of semi-flexion, so that the bone is snapped across the condyles; or by direct violence, such as

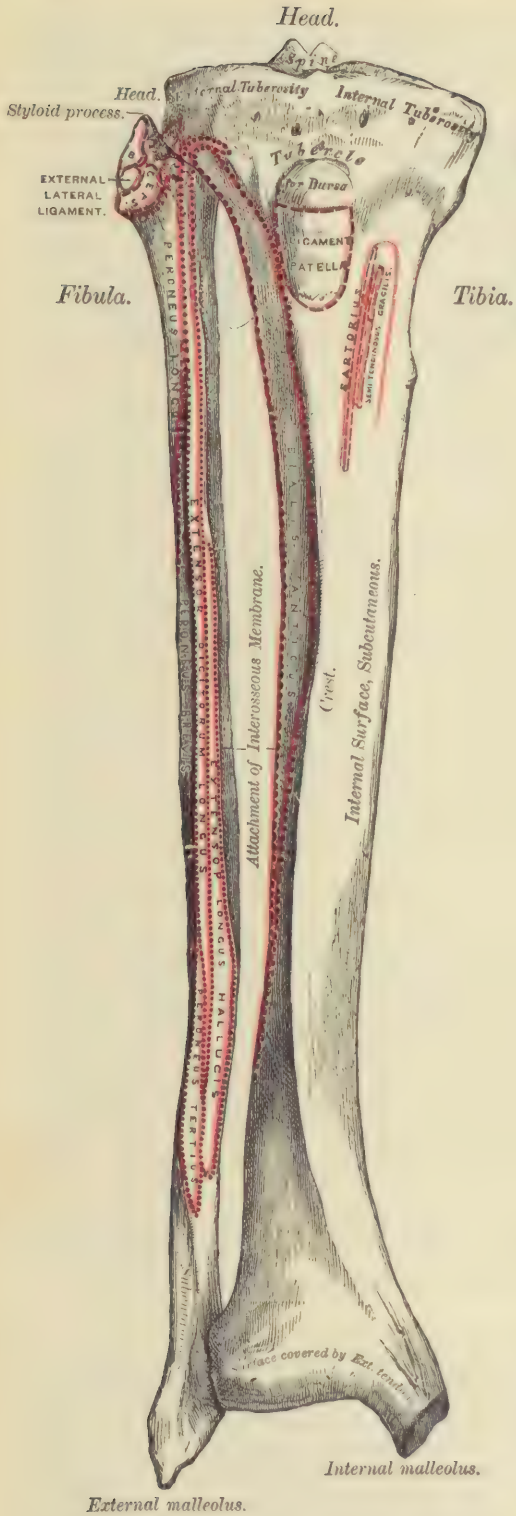


Fig. 169.—Bones of the right leg. Anterior surface.

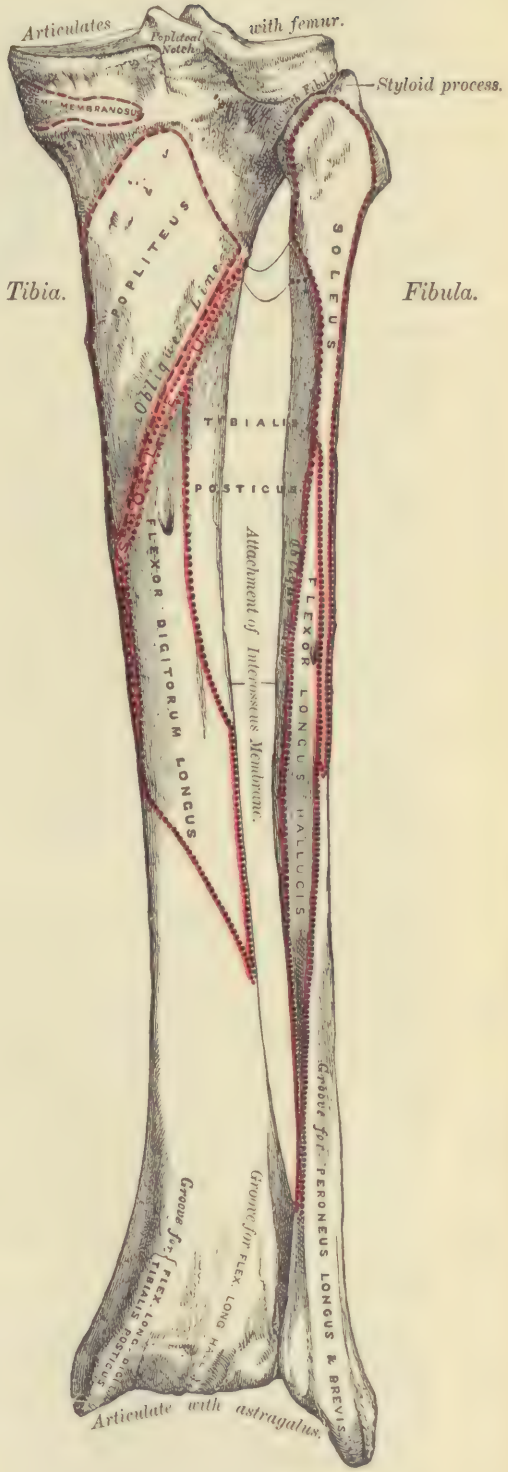


Fig. 170.—Bones of the right leg. Posterior surface.

falls on the knee. Most fractures are due to muscular action; in fact, the patella is more often broken by muscular action than is any other bone. In fractures by muscular action the line of fracture is transverse. In fractures by direct force the line of fractuure may be oblique, longitudinal, stellate, or the bone variously comminuted. The principal interest in these cases attaches to their treatmennt. Owing to the wide separation of the fragments, and the difficulty there is in maintaining them in apposition, union takes place by fibrous tissue, and this may subsequently stretch, producing wide separation of the fragments and permanent lameness. Various plans, including opening the joint and suturing the fragments, have been advocated for overcoming this difficulty. In many cases a portion of fascia or capsule gets between the fragments. In such a condition operation is necessary.

In the larger number of cases of fracture of the patella the knee-joint is involved, the cartilage which covers its posterior surface being torn, the synovial membrane lacerated, the lateral fibrous expansions ruptured, and the patellar bursa torn open. In cases of fracture from direct violence, however, this need not necessarily happen, the lesion may involve only the superficial part of the bone; and, as Morris has pointed out, it is an anatomical possibility, in complete fracture, if the lesion involve only the lower and non-articular part of the bone, for it to take place without injury to the synovial membrane.

The Tibia, or Shin Bone (Figs. 169, 170).

The tibia (*tibia*, a flute or pipe) is situated at the front and inner side of the leg, and, excepting the femur, is the longest and largest bone in the skeleton. It is prismoid in form, expanded above, where it enters into the knee-joint, more slightly enlarged below. In the male its direction is vertical and parallel with the bone of the opposite side; but in the female it has a slightly oblique direction downward and outward, to compensate for the oblique direction of the femur inward. It presents for examination a **shaft** and two **extremities.**

Upper Extremity.—The upper extremity, or **head**, is large, and expanded on each side into two lateral eminences, the **internal** and **external tuberosities** (*condylus medialis* and *condylus lateralis*). *Superiorly*, each tuberosity presents a smooth, concave surface (*facies articularis superior*), which articulates with

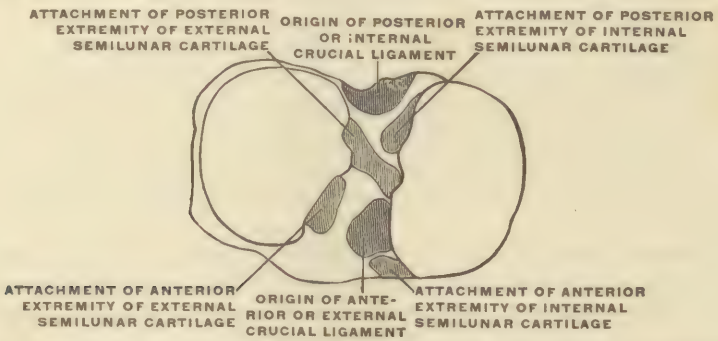


FIG. 171.—Upper articular surface of the tibia, showing the attachments of the ligaments. (Poirier and Charpy.)

a condyle of the femur. The internal, articular surface is longer, deeper, and narrower than the external, oval from before backward, to articulate with the internal condyle; the external one is broader and more circular, concave from side to side, but slightly convex from before backward, especially at its posterior part, where it is prolonged on to the posterior surface for a short distance, to articulate with the external condyle. Between the two articular surfaces, and nearer the posterior than the anterior aspect of the bone, is an eminence, the **spinous process of the tibia** (*eminentia intercondyloidea*); surmounted by a prominent tubercle on each side (the *tuberculum intercondyloideum mediale* and the *tuberculum intercondyloideum laterale*), on to the lateral aspect of which the facets just described are prolonged; in front and behind the spinous process is a rough depression

(*fossa intercondyloidea anterior* and the *fossa intercondyloidea posterior*) for the attachment of the anterior and posterior crucial ligaments and the semilunar fibro-cartilages (Fig. 171).

The anterior surfaces of the tuberosities are continuous with one another, forming a single large surface, which is somewhat flattened: it is triangular, broad above, and perforated by large vascular foramina; narrow below, where it terminates in a prominent oblong elevation of large size, the **tubercle of the tibia** (*tuberositas tibiæ*); the lower half of this tubercle is rough, for the attachment of the ligamentum patellæ; the upper half presents a smooth facet supporting, in the recent state, a *bursa* which separates the ligament from the bone. *Posteriorly* the tuberosities are separated from each other by a shallow depression, the **popliteal notch** (*incisura poplitea*), which gives attachment to part of the posterior crucial ligament and part of the posterior ligament of the knee-joint. The *inner tuberosity* presents posteriorly a deep transverse groove, for the insertion of one of the fasciculi of the tendon of the Semi-membranosus. Its lateral surface is convex, rough, and prominent, and gives attachment to the internal lateral ligament. The *outer tuberosity* presents posteriorly a flat articular facet (*facies articularis fibularis*), nearly circular in form, directed downward, backward, and outward, for articulation with the fibula. Its lateral surface is convex and rough, more prominent in front than the internal, and presents a prominent rough eminence, situated on a level with the upper border of the tubercle of the tibia at the junction of its anterior and outer surfaces, for the attachment of the **ilio-tibial band**. Just below this the Extensor longus digitorum and a slip from the Biceps are attached. The **infraglenoid margin** (*margo infraglenoidalis*) is at the outer edge of the superior articular surface. From this point the bone rapidly narrows distally.

Shaft of the Tibia (*corpus tibiæ*).—The shaft of the tibia is of a triangular prismoid form, broad above, gradually decreasing in size to its most slender part, at the commencement of its lower fourth, where fracture most frequently occurs; it then enlarges again toward its lower extremity. It presents for examination three borders and three surfaces.

Anterior Border.—The anterior border, the most prominent of the three, is called the **crest of the tibia** (*crista anterior*), or, in popular language, the **shin**; it commences above at the tubercle, and terminates below at the anterior margin of the inner malleolus. This border is very prominent in the upper two-thirds of its extent, smooth and rounded below. It presents a very flexuous course, being usually curved outward above and inward below; it gives attachment to the deep fascia of the leg.

Internal Border (*margo medialis*).—The internal border is smooth and rounded above and below, but more prominent in the centre; it commences at the back part of the inner tuberosity, and terminates at the posterior border of the internal malleolus; its upper part gives attachment to the internal lateral ligament of the knee to the extent of about two inches, and to some fibres of the Popliteus muscle, and its middle third to some fibres of the Soleus and Flexor longus digitorum muscles.

External Border (*crista interossea*).—The external border, or **interosseous ridge**, is thin and prominent, especially its central part, and gives attachment to the interosseous membrane; it commences above in front of the fibular articular facet, and bifurcates below, to form the boundaries of a triangular rough surface, for the attachment of the interosseous ligament connecting the tibia and fibula.

Internal Surface (*facies medialis*).—The internal surface is smooth, convex, and broader above than below; its upper third, directed forward and inward, is covered by the aponeurosis derived from the tendon of the Sartorius, and by the tendons of the Gracilis and Semitendinosus, all of which are inserted nearly as far forward as the anterior border; in the rest of its extent it is subcutaneous.

External Surface (*facies lateralis*).—The external surface is narrower than the internal; its upper two-thirds presents a shallow groove for the attachment of the Tibialis anticus muscle; its lower third is smooth, convex, curves gradually forward to the anterior aspect of the bone, and is covered from within outward by the tendons of the following muscles: Tibialis anticus, Extensor proprius hallucis, Extensor longus digitorum.

Posterior Surface (*facies posterior*).—The posterior surface (Fig. 170) presents, at its upper part, a prominent ridge, the **popliteal line** or the **oblique line of the tibia** (*linea poplitea*), which extends from the back part of the articular facet for the fibula obliquely downward, to the internal border, at the junction of its upper and middle thirds. It marks the lower limit for the insertion of the Popliteus muscle, and serves for the attachment of the popliteal fascia and part of the Soleus, Flexor longus digitorum, and Tibialis posticus muscles; the triangular concave surface, above and to the inner side of this line, gives attachment to the Popliteus muscle. The middle third of the posterior surface is divided by a vertical ridge into two lateral halves: the ridge is well marked at its commencement at the oblique line, but becomes gradually indistinct below; the inner and broader half gives attachment to the Flexor longus digitorum, the outer and narrower to part of the Tibialis posticus. The remaining part of the bone presents a smooth surface covered by the Tibialis posticus, Flexor longus digitorum, and Flexor longus hallucis muscles. Immediately below the oblique line is the **nutritive foramen** (*foramen nutricium*), which is large and directed obliquely downward. It is the opening of the nutrient canal, which is directed toward the periphery.

Lower Extremity.—The lower extremity, much smaller than the upper, presents five surfaces; it is prolonged downward, on its inner side, to a strong process, the **internal malleolus** (*malleolus medialis*).

Inferior Surface (*facies articularis inferior*).—The inferior surface of the bone is quadrilateral, and smooth for articulation with the astragalus. This surface is concave from before backward, and broader in front than behind. It is traversed from before backward by a slight elevation, separating two lateral depressions. It is narrow internally, where the articular surface becomes continuous with that on the inner malleolus (*facies articularis malleolaris*).

Anterior Surface.—The anterior surface of the lower extremity is smooth and rounded above, and covered by the tendons of the Extensor muscles of the toes; its lower margin presents a rough transverse depression, for the attachment of the anterior ligament of the ankle-joint.

Posterior Surface.—The posterior surface presents a superficial groove directed obliquely downward and inward, continuous with a similar groove on the posterior surface of the astragalus, and serving for the passage of the tendon of the Flexor longus hallucis.

External Surface.—The external surface presents a triangular rough depression for the attachment of the interior interosseous ligament, connecting it with the fibula; the lower part of this depression, the **fibular notch** (*incisura fibularis*), is smooth, covered with cartilage in the recent state, and articulates with the fibula. This surface is bounded by two prominent borders, continuous above with the interosseous ridge; they afford attachment to the anterior inferior and posterior inferior tibio-fibular ligaments.

Internal Surface.—The internal surface of the lower extremity is prolonged downward to form a strong pyramidal process, flattened from without inward—the **internal malleolus** (*malleolus medialis*). The *inner surface* of this process is convex and subcutaneous; its *outer surface* is smooth and slightly concave, and articulates with the astragalus; its *anterior border* is rough, for the attachment of the anterior fibres of the internal lateral or Deltoid ligament; its *posterior border*

presents a broad and deep groove (*sulcus malleolaris*), directed obliquely downward and inward, which is occasionally double: this groove transmits the tendons of the Tibialis posticus and Flexor longus digitorum muscles. The *summit* of the internal malleolus is marked by a rough depression behind, for the attachment of the internal lateral ligament of the ankle-joint.

Structure.—Like that of the other long bones. At the junction of the middle and lower third, where the bone is smallest, the wall of the shaft is thicker than in other parts, in order to compensate for the smallness of the calibre of the bone.

Development.—By *three* centres (Fig. 172): one for the shaft and one for each extremity. Ossification commences in the centre of the shaft about the seventh week, and gradually extends toward either extremity. The centre for the upper epiphysis appears before or shortly after birth; it is flattened in form, and has a thin, tongue-shaped process in front which forms the tubercle. That for the lower epiphysis appears in the second year. The lower epiphysis joins the shaft at about the eighteenth, and the upper one about the twentieth year. Two additional centres occasionally exist—one for the tongue-shaped process of the upper epiphysis, which forms the tubercle, and one for the inner malleolus.

Fig. 172.—Plan of the development of the tibia. By three centres.

Articulations.—With three bones: the femur, fibula, and astragalus.

Attachment of Muscles.—To twelve: to the inner tuberosity, the Semimembranosus; to the outer tuberosity, the Tibialis anticus and Extensor longus digitorum and Biceps; to the shaft, its internal surface, the Sartorius, Gracilis, and Semitendinosus; to its external surface, the Tibialis anticus; to its posterior surface, the Popliteus, Soleus, Flexor longus digitorum, and Tibialis posticus; to the tubercle, the ligamentum patellæ, by which the Quadriceps extensor muscle is inserted into the tibia. In addition to these muscles, the Tensor fasciæ femoris is inserted indirectly into the tibia, through the ilio-tibial band, and the Peroneus longus occasionally derives a few fibres of origin from the outer tuberosity.

Surface Form.—A considerable portion of the tibia is subcutaneous and easily to be felt. At the upper extremity the tuberosities are to be recognized just below the knee. The internal one is broad and smooth, and merges into the subcutaneous surface of the shaft below. The external one is narrower and more prominent, and on it, about midway between the apex of the patella and the head of the fibula, may be felt a prominent tubercle for the insertion of the **ilio-tibial band.** In front of the upper end of the bone, between the tuberosities, is the tubercle of the tibia, forming an oval eminence which is continuous below with the anterior border or crest of the bone. This border can be felt, forming the prominence of the shin, in the upper two-thirds of its extent as a sharp and flexuous ridge, curved outward above and inward below. In the lower third of the leg the border disappears, and the bone is concealed by the tendons of the muscles on the front of the leg. Internal to the anterior border is to be felt the broad internal surface of the tibia, slightly encroached upon by the muscles in front and behind. It commences above at the wide expanded inner tuberosity, and terminates below at the internal malleolus. The internal malleolus is a broad prominence situated on a higher level and somewhat farther forward than the external malleolus. It overhangs the inner border of the arch of the foot. Its anterior border is nearly straight; its posterior border presents a sharp edge which forms the inner margin of the groove for the tendon of the Tibialis posticus muscle.

The Fibula, or Calf Bone (Figs. 169, 170).

The fibula (*fibula*, a clasp) is situated at the outer side of the leg. It is the smaller of the two bones, and, in proportion to its length, the most slender of all the long bones; it is placed on the outer side of the tibia, with which it is connected above and below. Its upper extremity is small, placed toward the back of the head of the tibia and below the level of the knee-joint, and excluded from its formation; the lower extremity inclines a little forward, so as to be on a plane anterior to that of the upper end, projects below the tibia, and forms the outer ankle. It presents for examination a **shaft** and two **extremities**.

Upper Extremity.—The upper extremity, or **head** (*capitulum fibulæ*), is of an irregular quadrate form, presenting above a flattened articular facet, directed upward, forward, and inward, for articulation with a corresponding facet on the external tuberosity of the tibia. On the outer side is a thick and rough prominence, continued behind into a pointed eminence, the **styloid process of the fibula** (*apex capituli fibulæ*), which projects upward from the posterior part of the head. The *prominence* gives attachment to the tendon of the Biceps muscle and to the long external lateral ligament of the knee, the ligament dividing the tendon into two parts. The *summit* of the styloid process gives attachment to the short external lateral ligament. The remaining part of the circumference of the head is rough, for the attachment of muscles and ligaments. It presents in front a tubercle for the origin of the upper and anterior part of the Peroneus longus, and the adjacent surface gives attachment to the anterior superior tibio-fibular ligament; and behind, another tubercle for the attachment of the posterior superior tibio-fibular ligament and the upper fibres of the Soleus muscle.

Shaft of the Fibula (*corpus fibulæ*).—The shaft presents four borders—the antero-external, the antero-internal, the postero-external, and the postero-internal; and four surfaces—anterior, posterior, internal, and external.

Antero-external Border (*crista anterior*).—The antero-external border commences above in front of the head, runs vertically downward to a little below the middle of the bone, and then, curving somewhat outward, bifurcates so as to embrace the triangular subcutaneous surface immediately above the outer surface of the external malleolus. This border gives attachment to an intermuscular septum, which separates the extensor muscles on the anterior surface of the leg from the Peroneus longus and brevis muscles on the outer surface.

Antero-internal Border (*crista interossea*).—The antero-internal border, or **interosseous ridge**, is situated close to the inner side of the preceding, and runs nearly parallel with it in the upper third of its extent, but diverges from it so as to include a broader space in the lower two-thirds. It commences above, just beneath the head of the bone (sometimes it is quite indistinct for about an inch below the head), and terminates below at the apex of a rough triangular surface immediately above the articular facet of the external malleolus. It serves for the attachment of the interosseous membrane, which separates the extensor muscles in front from the flexor muscles behind.

Postero-external Border (*crista lateralis*).—The postero-external border is prominent; it commences above at the base of the styloid process, and terminates below in the posterior border of the outer malleolus. It is directed outward above, backward in the middle of its course, backward and a little inward below, and gives attachment to an aponeurosis which separates the Peronei muscles on the outer surface of the shaft from the flexor muscles on its posterior surface.

Postero-internal Border (*crista medialis*).—The postero-internal border, sometimes called the **oblique line**, commences above at the inner side of the head, and terminates by becoming continuous with the antero-internal border or inter-

osseous ridge at the lower fourth of the bone. It is well marked and prominent at the upper and middle parts of the bone. It gives attachment to an aponeurosis which separates the Tibialis posticus from the Soleus above and the Flexor longus hallucis below.

Anterior Surface (*facies anterior*).—The anterior surface is the interval between the antero-external and antero-internal borders. It is extremely narrow and flat in the upper third of its extent; broader and grooved longitudinally in its lower third; it serves for the attachment of three muscles, the Extensor longus digitorum, Peroneus tertius, and Extensor proprius hallucis.

External Surface (*facies lateralis*).—The external surface is the space between the antero-external and postero-external borders. It is much broader than the preceding, and often deeply grooved, is directed outward in the upper two-thirds of its course, backward in the lower third, where it is continuous with the posterior border of the external malleolus. This surface is completely occupied by the Peroneus longus and brevis muscles.

Internal Surface (*facies medialis*).—The internal surface is the interval included between the antero-internal and the postero-internal borders. It is directed inward, and is grooved for the attachment of the Tibialis posticus muscle.

Posterior Surface (*facies posterior*).—The posterior surface is the space included between the postero-external and the postero-internal borders, it is continuous below with the rough triangular surface above the articular facet of the outer malleolus; it is directed backward above, backward and inward at its middle, directly inward below. Its upper third is rough, for the attachment of the Soleus muscle; its lower part presents a triangular rough surface, connected to the tibia by a strong interosseous ligament, and between these two points the entire surface is covered by the fibres of origin of the Flexor longus hallucis muscle. At about the middle of this surface is the **nutrient foramen** (*foramen nutricium*). It opens into the **nutrient canal** (*canalis nutricius*), which is directed downward.

Lower Extremity.—The lower extremity, or **external malleolus** (*malleolus lateralis*), is of a pyramidal form, somewhat flattened from without inward, and is longer, and descends lower than the internal malleolus. Its *external surface* is convex, subcutaneous, and continuous with the triangular (also subcutaneous) surface on the outer side of the shaft. The *internal surface* presents in front a smooth triangular facet (*facies articularis malleoli*), broader above than below, and convex from above downward, which articulates with a corresponding surface on the outer side of the astragalus. Behind and beneath the articular surface is a rough depression which gives attachment to the posterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament of the ankle. The *anterior border* is thick and rough, and marked below by a depression for the attachment of the anterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament. The *posterior border* is broad and marked by a shallow groove (*sulcus malleolaris*), for the passage of the tendons of the Peroneus longus and brevis muscles. The *summit* is rounded, and gives attachment to the middle fasciculus of the external lateral ligament.

In order to distinguish the side to which the bone belongs, hold it with the lower extremity downward and the broad groove for the Peronei tendons backward—*i. e.*, toward the holder; the triangular subcutaneous surface will then be directed to the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations.—With two bones: the tibia and astragalus.

Development.—By *three* centres (Fig. 173): one for the shaft, and one for each extremity. Ossification commences in the shaft about the eighth week of fœtal life, a little later than in the tibia, and extends gradually toward the extremities. At birth both ends are cartilaginous. Ossification commences in the lower end in the second year, and in the upper one about the fourth year. The lower epiphysis, the first in which ossification commences, becomes united to the shaft

about the twentieth year; the upper epiphysis joins about the twenty-fifth year. Ossification appearing first in the lower epiphysis is contrary to the rule which prevails with regard to the commencement of ossification in epiphyses—viz., that epiphysis toward which the nutrient artery is directed commences to ossify last; but it follows the rule which prevails with regard to the union of epiphyses, by uniting first.

Attachment of Muscles.—To nine: to the head, the Biceps, Soleus, and Peroneus longus; to the shaft, its anterior surface, the Extensor longus digitorum, Peroneus tertius, and Extensor proprius hallucis; to the internal surface, the Tibialis posticus; to the posterior surface, the Soleus and Flexor longus hallucis; to the external surface, the Peroneus longus and brevis.

FIG. 173.—Plan of the development of the fibula. By three centres.

Surface Form.—The only parts of the fibula which are to be felt are the head and the lower part of the external surface of the shaft and the external malleolus. The head is to be seen and felt behind and to the outer side of the outer tuberosity of the tibia. It presents a small, prominent triangular eminence slightly above the level of the tubercle of the tibia. The external malleolus presents a narrow elongated prominence, situated on a plane posterior to the internal malleolus and reaching to a lower level. From it may be traced the lower third or half of the external surface of the shaft of the bone in the interval between the Peroneus tertius in front and the other two Peronei tendons behind.

Surgical Anatomy.—In *fractures of the bones of the leg* both bones are usually fractured, but either bone may be broken separately, the fibula more frequently than the tibia. Fracture of both bones may be caused either by direct or indirect violence. When it occurs from indirect force, the fracture in the tibia is usually at the junction of the middle and lower third of the bone. Many causes conduce to render this the weakest part of the bone. The fracture of the fibula is usually at rather a higher level. These fractures present great variety, both as regards their direction and condition. They may be oblique, transverse, longitudinal, or spiral. When oblique, they are usually the result of indirect violence, and the direction of the fracture is from behind, downward, forward, and inward in many cases, but may be downward and outward or downward and backward. When transverse, the fracture is often at the upper part of the bone, and is the result of direct violence. The spiral fracture usually commences as a vertical fissure, involving the ankle-joint, and is associated with fracture of the fibula higher up. It is the result of torsion, from twisting of the body whilst the foot is fixed.

Fractures of the tibia alone are almost always the result of direct violence, except where the malleolus is broken off by twists of the foot. Fractures of the fibula alone may arise from indirect or direct force, those of the lower end being usually the result of the former, and those higher up being caused by a direct blow on the part.

The tibia and fibula, like the femur, are frequently the seat of *acute osteomyelitis*. *Tuberculous abscess* is more frequently met with in the cancellous tissue of the head and lower end of the tibia than in any other bone of the body. The abscess is of small size, very chronic, and probably the result of tuberculous osteitis in the highly vascular growing tissue at the end of the shaft near the epiphysial cartilage in the young subject. Such an abscess in bone is called *Brodie's abscess*.

The tibia is the bone which is most frequently and most extensively distorted in *rickets*. It gives way at the junction of the middle and lower third, its weakest part, and presents a curve forward and outward. Bow-leg is due to outward curvature of the femur, tibia, and fibula, the bend being about the junction of the shafts and lower extremities.

THE FOOT (Figs. 174, 175).

The skeleton of the foot consists of three divisions: the **tarsus**, **metatarsus**, and **phalanges**.

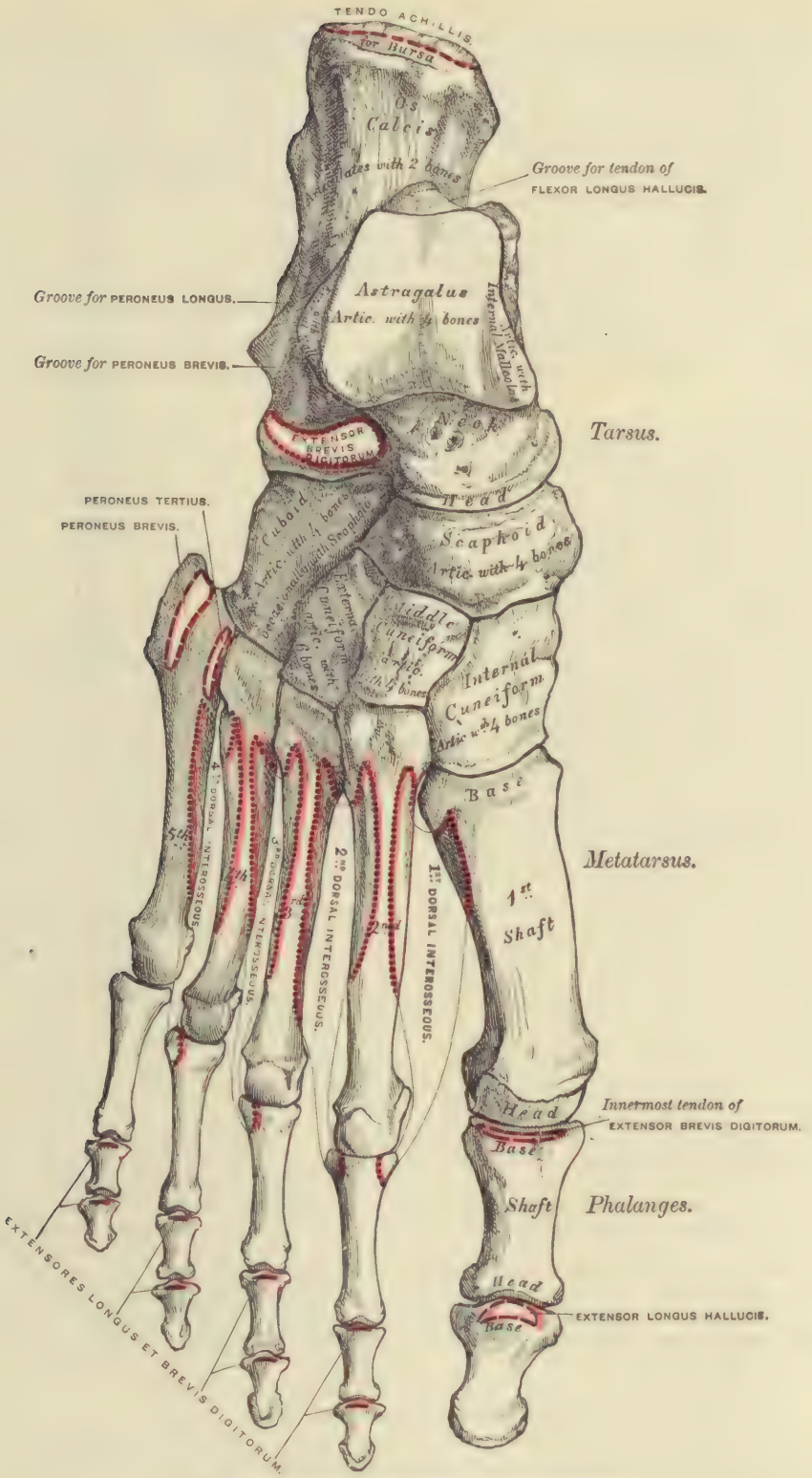


FIG. 174.—Bones of the right foot. Dorsal surface.

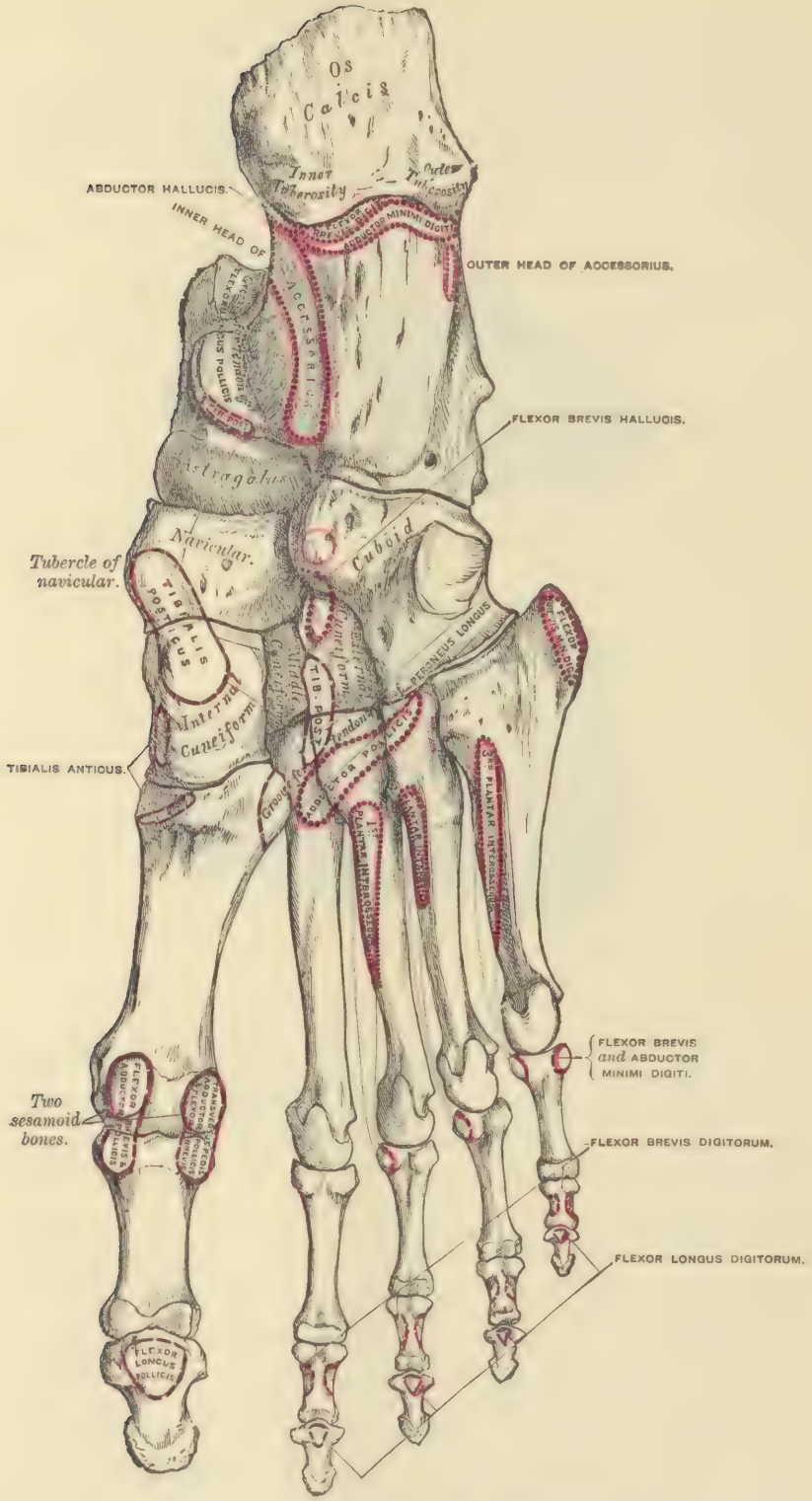


FIG. 175.—Bones of the right foot. Plantar surface.

The Tarsus (Ossa Tarsi).

The bones of the tarsus are seven in number—viz., the **calcaneus** or **os calcis, astragalus, cuboid, scaphoid, internal, middle,** and **external cuneiform**.

The Calcaneus, or Heel Bone (Fig. 176).—It is also called the **os calcis.** The name is derived from *calx*, the heel. The heel bone is the largest and strongest of the tarsal bones. It is irregularly cuboidal in form, having its long axis directed for-

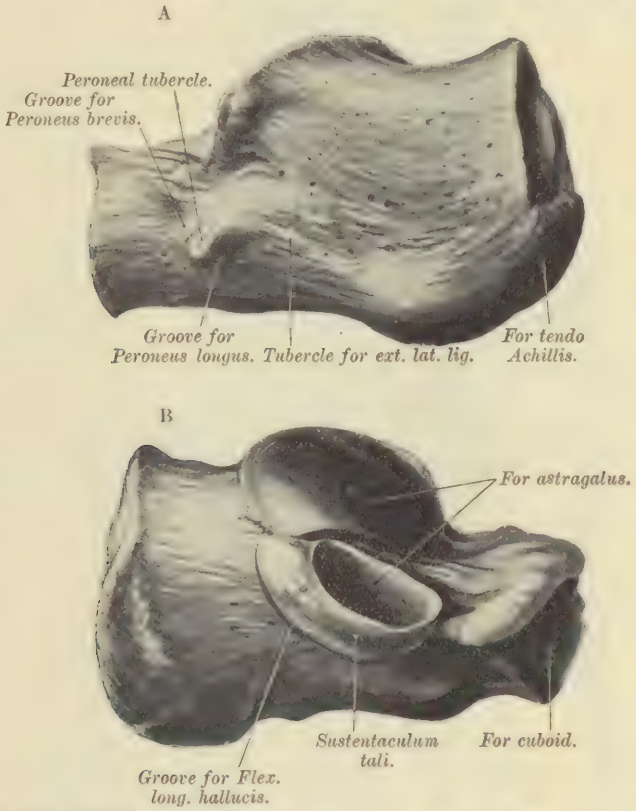


Fig. 176.—The left os calcis. A. Postero-external view. B. Antero-internal view.

ward and outward. It is situated at the lower and back bart of the foot, serving to transmit the weight of the body to the ground, and forming a strong lever for the muscles of the calf. It is composed of a **body** (*corpus calcanei*), an **anterior extremity** or **greater process,** and a **posterior extremity** or **tuberosity** (*tuber calcanei*). It presents for examination six surfaces: superior, inferior, external, internal, anterior, and posterior.

Superior Surface.—The superior surface is formed behind by the upper aspect of that part of the os calcis which projects backward to form the heel. It varies in length in different individuals; is convex from side to side, concave from before backward, and corresponds above to a mass of adipose substance placed in front of the tendo Achillis. In the middle of the superior surface are two (sometimes three) articular facets, separated by a broad shallow groove (*sulcus calcanei*), which is directed obliquely forward and outward, and is rough for the attachment of the interosseous ligament connecting the astragalus and os calcis. When the calcaneus is in contact with the astragalus this groove is converted into a canal (*sinus tarsi*). Of the articular surfaces, the **external** or **posterior articular surface** (*facies articularis calcanea posterior*) is the larger, and is situated on the body

of the bone: it is of an oblong form, wider behind than in front, and convex from before backward. The **internal** or **anterior articular surface** is usually divided into two facets. The anterior facet is the *facies articularis calcanea anterior*, and it supports the head of the astragalus. The more posteriorly situated facet is the *facies articularis calcanea media*. It articulates with the middle facet on the under surface of the astragalus. The internal articular surface is supported on a projecting process of bone, called the **lesser process of the calcaneus** (*sustentaculum tali*); it is also oblong, concave longitudinally, and sometimes subdivided into two parts, which differ in size and shape. More anteriorly is seen the upper surface of the **greater process of the calcaneus**, marked by a rough depression for the attachment of numerous ligaments, and a tubercle for the origin of the Extensor brevis digitorum muscle.

Inferior Surface.—The inferior surface is narrow, rough, uneven, wider behind than in front and convex from side to side; it is bounded posteriorly by two tubercles separated by a rough depression; the **external tubercle** (*processus lateralis tuberis calcanei*), small, prominent, and rounded, gives attachment to part of the Abductor minimi digiti: the **internal tubercle** (*processus medialis tuberis calcanei*), broader and larger, for the support of the heel, gives attachment, by its prominent inner margin, to the Abductor hallucis, and in front to the Flexor brevis digitorum muscles and plantar fascia; the depression between the tubercles gives attachment to the Abductor minimi digiti. The rough surface in front of the tubercles gives attachment to the long plantar ligament and to the outer head of the Flexor accessorius muscle; while to a prominent tubercle nearer the anterior part of this surface, as well as to a transverse groove in front of it, is attached the short plantar ligament.

External Surface.—The external surface is broad, flat, and almost subcutaneous; it presents near its centre a tubercle, for the attachment of the middle fasciculus of the external lateral ligament. At its upper and anterior part this surface gives attachment to the external calcaneo-astragaloid ligament; and in front of the tubercle it presents a narrow surface marked by two oblique grooves, separated by an elevated ridge which varies much in size in different bones; it is named the **peroneal spine** or **tubercle** (*processus trochlearis*), and gives attachment to a fibrous process from the external annular ligament. The *superior groove* transmits the tendon of the Peroneus brevis; the *inferior groove* the tendon of the Peroneus longus.

Internal Surface.—The internal surface is deeply concave; it is directed obliquely downward and forward, and serves for the transmission of the plantar vessels and nerves into the sole of the foot; it affords attachment to part of the Flexor accessorius muscle. At its upper and fore part it presents an eminence of bone, the **lesser process of the calcaneum** (*sustentaculum tali*), which projects horizontally inward, and to it a slip of the tendon of the Tibialis posticus is attached. This process is concave above, and supports the anterior articular surface of the astragalus; below, it is grooved for the tendon of the Flexor longus hallucis. Its free margin is rough, for the attachment of part of the internal lateral ligament of the ankle-joint.

Anterior Surface (*facies articularis cuboidea*).—The anterior surface, of a somewhat triangular form, articulates with the cuboid. It is concave from above downward and outward, and convex in the opposite direction. Its *inner border* gives attachment to the inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament.

Posterior Surface.—The posterior surface is rough, prominent, convex, and wider below than above. The posterior extremity is the projection of the heel. It is called the **tuberosity** (*tuber calcanei*). Its lower part is rough, for the attachment of the tendo Achillis and the tendon of the Plantaris muscle; its upper part is smooth, and is covered by a bursa which separates the tendons from the bone.

Articulations.—With two bones: the astragalus and cuboid.

Attachment of Muscles.—To *eight:* part of the Tibialis posticus, the tendo Achillis, Plantaris, Abductor hallucis, Abductor minimi digiti, Flexor brevis digitorum, Flexor accessorius, and Extensor brevis digitorum.

The Astragalus, or Ankle Bone (*talus*) (Fig. 177).—The astragalus (*ἀστράγαλος*, a die) is the largest of the tarsal bones, next to the os calcis. It occupies the middle and upper part of the tarsus, supporting the tibia above, articulating with the malleoli on either side, resting below upon the os calcis, and joined in front to the scaphoid. This bone may easily be recognized by its large rounded head, by the broad articular facet on its upper convex surface, and by the two articular facets separated by a deep groove on its under concave surface. It

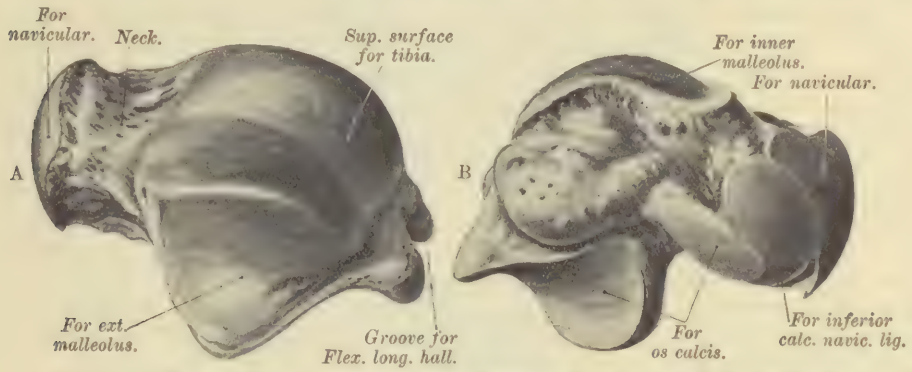


FIG. 177.—The left astragalus. A. Superior and external view. B. Inferior and internal view.

is divided into a **body** (*corpus tali*), which supports the trochlear surface; the **head** (*caput tali*), which is in front of the body; and the **neck** (*collum tali*), the constricted part between the head and body. The astragalus presents six surfaces for examination.

Superior Surface.—The superior surface presents, behind, a broad smooth **trochlear surface** (*trochlea tali*) for articulation with the tibia. The trochlea is broader in front than behind, convex from before backward, slightly concave from side to side; in front of it is the upper surface of the neck of the astragalus, rough for the attachment of ligaments.

Inferior Surface.—The inferior surface presents two articular facets separated by a deep groove (*sulcus tali*). The groove runs obliquely forward and outward, becoming gradually broader and deeper in front: it corresponds with a similar groove upon the upper surface of the calcaneus, and forms, when articulated with that bone, a canal (*sinus tarsi*), filled up in the recent state by the interosseous calcaneo-astragaloid ligament. Of the two articular facets, the **posterior articular facet** (*facies articularis calcanea posterior*) is the larger, of an oblong form and deeply concave from side to side; the **anterior articular facet** is shorter and narrower, of an elongated oval form, convex longitudinally, and often subdivided into two by an elevated ridge; of these, the **posterior** (*facies articularis calcanea media*) articulates with the lesser process of the os calcis; the *anterior* (*facies articularis calcanea anterior*), with the upper surface of the inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament.

Internal Surface.—The internal surface presents at its upper part a pear-shaped articular facet (*facies malleolaris medialis*) for the inner malleolus, continuous above with the trochlear surface; below the articular surface is a rough depression, for the attachment of the deep portion of the internal lateral ligament.

External Surface.—The external surface presents a large triangular facet (*facies malleolaris lateralis*), covered with cartilage and concave from above downward

for articulation with the external malleolus; it is called the **external process** (*processus lateralis tali*), and passes outward and downward from the triangular facet. The triangular facet is continuous above with the trochlear surface; and in front of it is a rough depression for the attachment of the anterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament of the ankle-joint.

Anterior Surface (*facies articularis navicularis*).—The anterior surface of the head of the astragalus is convex and rounded, smooth, of an oval form, and directed obliquely inward and downward; it articulates with the scaphoid. On its under and inner surface is a small facet, continuous in front with the articular surface of the head, and behind with the smaller facet for the os calcis. This rests on the inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament, being separated from it by the synovial membrane, which is prolonged from the anterior calcaneo-astragaloid joint to the astragalo-scaphoid joint. The head is surrounded by a constricted portion, the **neck of the astragalus** (*collum tali*).

Posterior Surface.—The posterior surface is narrow, and traversed by a groove (*sulcus m. flexoris hallucis longi*), which runs obliquely downward and inward, and transmits the tendon of the Flexor longus hallucis, external to which is the prominent **external tubercle** (*processus posterior tali*), to which the posterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament is attached. This tubercle is sometimes separated from the rest of the astragalus, and is then known as the **os trigonum**. To the inner side of the groove is the less marked **internal tubercle**.

To ascertain to which foot the bone belongs, hold it with the broad articular surface upward, and the rounded head forward; the lateral triangular articular surface for the external malleolus will then point to the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations.—With four bones: tibia, fibula, os calcis, and scaphoid.

The Cuboid (*os cuboideum*) (Fig. 178).—The cuboid, from κύβος, a cube; εἶδος, like, is placed on the outer side of the foot, in front of the os calcis, and

FIG. 178.—The left cuboid. A. Antero-internal view. B. Postero-external view.

behind the fourth and fifth metatarsal bones. It is of a pyramidal shape, its base being directed inward, its apex outward. It may be distinguished from the other tarsal bones by the existence of a deep groove on its under surface, for the tendon of the Peroneus longus muscle. It presents for examination six surfaces: three articular and three non-articular.

Non-articular Surfaces.—The non-articular surfaces are the superior, inferior, and external. The *superior* or *dorsal surface*, directed upward and outward, is rough, for the attachment of numerous ligaments. The *inferior* or *plantar surface* presents in front a deep groove, the **peroneal groove** (*sulcus m. peronæi longi*), which runs obliquely from without, forward and inward; it lodges the tendon of the Peroneus longus, and is bounded behind by a prominent ridge, to which is attached the long calcaneo-cuboid ligament. The ridge terminates externally in an eminence, the **tuberosity of the cuboid** (*tuberositas ossis cuboidei*), the surface of which presents a convex facet, for articulation with the sesamoid bone

of the tendon contained in the groove. The surface of bone behind the groove is rough, for the attachment of the short plantar ligament, a few fibres of the Flexor brevis hallucis, and a fasciculus from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus. The *external surface*, the smallest and narrowest of the three, presents a deep notch formed by the commencement of the peroneal groove.

Articular Surfaces.—The articular surfaces are the posterior, anterior, and internal. The *posterior surface* is smooth, triangular, and concavo-convex, for articulation with the anterior surface of the os calcis. The *anterior surface*, of smaller size, but also irregularly triangular, is divided by a vertical ridge into two facets; the inner one, quadrilateral in form, articulates with the fourth metatarsal bone; the outer one, larger and more triangular, articulates with the fifth metatarsal. The *internal surface* is broad, rough, irregularly quadrilateral, presenting at its middle and upper part a smooth oval facet, for articulation with the external cuneiform bone; and behind this (occasionally) a smaller facet, for articulation with the navicular; it is rough in the rest of its extent, for the attachment of strong interosseous ligaments.

To ascertain to which foot the bone belongs, hold it so that its under surface, marked by the peroneal groove, looks downward, and the large concavo-convex articular surface backward toward the holder: the narrow non-articular surface, marked by the commencement of the peroneal groove, will point to the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations.—With four bones: the os calcis, external cuneiform, and the fourth and fifth metatarsal bones; occasionally with the scaphoid.

Attachment of Muscles.—Part of the Flexor brevis hallucis and a slip from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus.

Scaphoid or Navicular Bone (*os naviculare pedis*) (Fig. 179).—The scaphoid is situated at the inner side of the tarsus, between the astragalus behind and

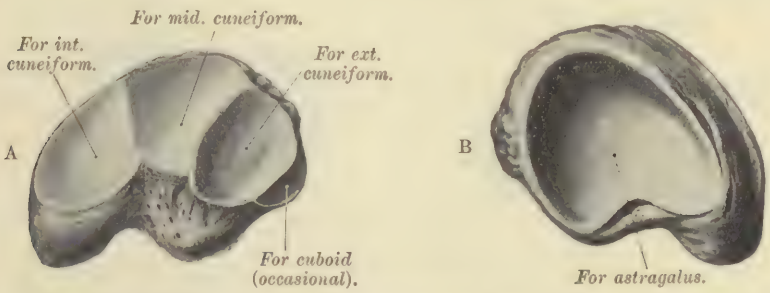


FIG. 179.—The left scaphoid. A. Antero-external view. B. Postero-internal view.

the three cuneiform bones in front. It may be distinguished by its form, being concave behind, convex and subdivided into three facets in front.

Surfaces.—The *anterior surface*, of an oblong form, is convex from side to side, and subdivided by two ridges into three facets, for articulation with the three cuneiform bones. The *posterior surface* is oval, concave, broader externally than internally, and articulates with the rounded head of the astragalus. The *superior surface* is convex from side to side, and rough for the attachment of ligaments. The *inferior* is irregular, and also rough for the attachment of ligaments. The *internal surface* presents a rounded tubercular eminence, the **tuberosity** (*tuberositas ossis navicularis*), the lower part of which projects, and gives attachment to part of the tendon of the Tibialis posticus. The *external surface* is rough and irregular, for the attachment of ligamentous fibres, and occasionally presents a small facet for articulation with the cuboid bone.

To ascertain to which foot the bone belongs, hold it with the concave articular surface backward, and the convex dorsal surface upward; the external surface—*i. e.*, the surface opposite the tubercle—will point to the side to which the bone belongs.

Articulations.—With four bones: astragalus and three cuneiform; occasionally also with the cuboid.

Attachment of Muscles.—Part of the Tibialis posticus.

Cuneiform or Wedge Bones.—The cuneiform bones have received their name from their wedge-like shape (*cuneus*, a wedge; *forma*, likeness). They form, with the cuboid, the anterior row of the tarsus, being placed between the scaphoid behind, the three innermost metatarsal bones in front, and the cuboid externally. They are called the **first, second,** and **third,** counting from the inner to the outer side of the foot, and, from their position, **internal, middle,** and **external.**

Internal or First Cuneiform (*os cuneiforme primum*) (Fig. 180).—The internal cuneiform is the largest of the three. It is situated at the inner side of the foot, between the scaphoid behind and the base of the first metatarsal in front. It may be distinguished from the other two by its large size, and by its not presenting such a distinct wedge-like form. Without the others it may be known by the large, kidney-shaped anterior articulating surface and by the prominence on the inferior or plantar surface for the attachment of the Tibialis posticus. It presents for examination six surfaces.

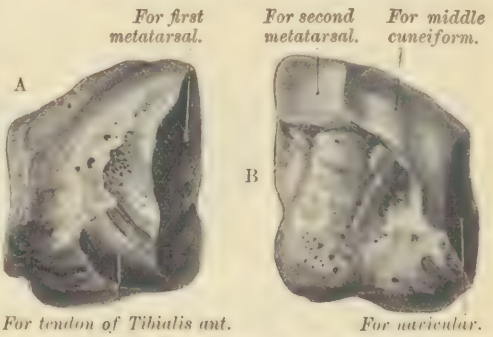


FIG. 180.—The left internal cuneiform. A. Antero-internal view. B. Postero-external view.

Surfaces.—The *internal surface* is subcutaneous, and forms part of the inner border of the foot; it is broad, quadrilateral, and presents at its anterior inferior angle a smooth oval facet, into which the tendon of the Tibialis anticus is partially inserted; in the rest of its extent it is rough, for the attachment of ligaments. The *external surface* is concave, presenting, along its superior and posterior borders, a narrow, reversed, L-shaped surface, for articulation with the middle cuneiform behind and second metatarsal bone in front; in the rest of its extent it is rough, for the attachment of ligaments and part of the tendon of the Peroneus longus. The *anterior surface*, kidney-shaped, much larger than the posterior, articulates with the metatarsal bone of the great toe. The *posterior surface* is triangular, concave, and articulates with the innermost and largest of the three facets on the anterior surface of the scaphoid. The *inferior* or *plantar surface* is rough, and presents a prominent tuberosity at its back part for the attachment of part of the tendon of the Tibialis posticus. It also gives attachment in front to part of the tendon of the Tibialis anticus. The *superior surface* is the narrow-pointed end of the wedge, which is directed upward and outward; it is rough for the attachment of ligaments.

To ascertain to which side the bone belongs, hold it so that its superior narrow edge looks upward, and the long, kidney-shaped, articular surface forward; the external surface, marked by its vertical and horizontal articular facets, will point to the side to which it belongs.

Articulations.—With four bones: scaphoid, middle cuneiform, first and second metatarsal bones.

Attachment of Muscles.—To *three:* the Tibialis anticus and posticus, and Peroneus longus.

Middle or Second Cuneiform (*os cuneiforme secundum*) (Fig. 181).—The middle cuneiform, the smallest of the three, is of very regular wedge-like form, the broad extremity being placed upward, the narrow end downward. It is situated between the other two bones of the same name, and articulates with the scaphoid behind and the second metatarsal in front. It is smaller than the external cuneiform bone, from which it may be further distinguished by the L-shaped articular facet, which runs round the upper and back part of its inner surface.

Surfaces.—The *anterior surface*, triangular in form and narrower than the posterior, articulates with the base of the second metatarsal bone. The *posterior surface*, also triangular, articulates with the scaphoid. The *internal surface* presents a reversed L-shaped articular facet, running along the superior and posterior borders, for articulation with the internal cuneiform, and is rough in the rest of its extent, for the attachment of ligaments. The *external surface* presents posteriorly a smooth facet for articulation with the external cuneiform bone. The *superior surface* forms the base of the wedge; it is quadrilateral, broader behind than in front, and rough for the attachment of ligaments. The *inferior surface*, pointed and tubercular, is also rough for ligamentous attachment and for the insertion of a slip from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus.

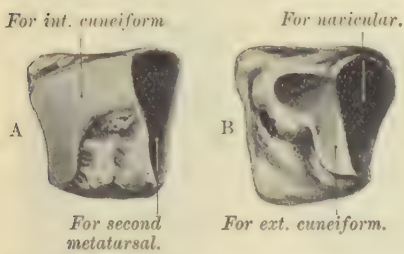


Fig. 181.—The left middle cuneiform. A. Antero-internal view. B. Postero-external view.

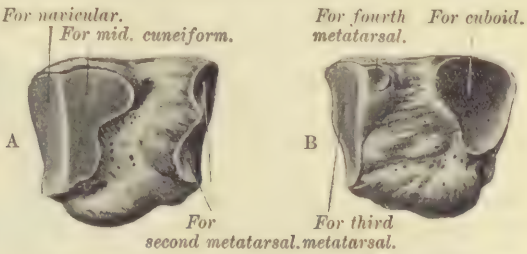


Fig. 182.—The left external cuneiform. A. Postero-internal view. B. Antero-external view.

To ascertain to which foot the bone belongs, hold its superior or dorsal surface upward, the broadest edge being toward the holder: the smooth facet (limited to the posterior border) will then point to the side to which it belongs.

Articulations.—With four bones: scaphoid, internal and external cuneiform, and second matatarsal bone.

Attachment of Muscles.—A slip from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus is attached to this bone.

External or Third Cuneiform (*os cuneiforme tertium*) (Fig. 182).—The external cuneiform, intermediate in size between the two preceding, is of a very regular wedge-like form, the broad extremity being placed upward, the narrow end downward. It occupies the centre of the front row of the tarsus, between the middle cuneiform internally, the cuboid externally, the scaphoid behind, and the third metatarsal in front. It is distinguished from the internal cuneiform bone by its more regular wedge-like shape and by the absence of the kidney-shaped articular surface: from the middle cuneiform, by the absence of the reversed L-shaped facet, and by the two articular facets which are present on both its inner and outer surfaces. It has six surfaces for examination.

Surfaces.—The *anterior surface*, triangular in form, articulates with the third metatarsal bone. The *posterior surface* articulates with the most external facet of the scaphoid, and is rough below for the attachment of ligamentous fibres. The *internal surface* presents two articular facets, separated by a rough depression; the anterior one, sometimes divided into two, articulates with the outer side of the base of the second metatarsal bone; the posterior one skirts the posterior border and articulates with the middle cuneiform; the rough depression between

the two gives attachment to an interosseous ligament. The *external surface* also presents two articular facets, separated by a rough non-articular surface; the anterior facet, situated at the superior angle of the bone, is small, and articulates with the inner side of the base of the fourth metatarsal; the posterior and larger one articulates with the cuboid; the rough, non-articular surface serves for the attachment of an interosseous ligament. The three facets for articulation with the three metatarsal bones are continuous with one another, and covered by a prolongation of the same cartilage; the facets for articulation with the middle cuneiform and scaphoid are also continuous, but that for articulation with he cuboid is usually separate. The *superior* or *dorsal surface* is of an oblong square form, its posterior external angle being prolonged backward. The *inferior* or *plantar surface* is an obtuse rounded margin, and serves for the attachment of part of the tendon of the Tibialis posticus, part of the Flexor brevis hallucis, and ligaments.

To ascertain to which side the bone belongs, hold it with the broad dorsal surface upward, the prolonged edge backward; the separate articular facet for the cuboid will point to the proper side.

Articulations.—With six bones: the scaphoid, middle cuneiform, cuboid, and second, third, and fourth metatarsal bones.

Attachment of Muscles.—To *two:* part of the Tibialis posticus, and Flexor brevis hallucis.

The number of tarsal bones may be reduced owing to congenital ankylosis which may occur between the os calcis and cuboid, the os calcis and scaphoid, the os calcis and astragalus, or the astragalus and scaphoid.

The Metatarsal Bones (Ossa Metatarsalia).

The metatarsal bones are five in number, and are numbered one to five, in accordance with their position from within outward; they are long bones, and present for examination a shaft and two extremities.

Common Characters.—The **shaft** (*corpus*) is prismoid in form, tapers gradually from the tarsal to the phalangeal extremity, and is slightly curved longitudinally, so as to be concave below, slightly convex above. On the plantar surface of the shaft of each bone is a nutrient foramen corresponding to the nutrient foramen in each metacarpal bone. The **posterior** or **proximal extremity,** or **base** (*basis*), is wedge-shaped, articulating by its terminal surface with the tarsal bones, and by its lateral surfaces with the contiguous metatarsal bones, its dorsal and plantar surfaces being rough for the attachment of ligaments. The **anterior** or **distal extremity,** or **head** (*capitulum*), presents a terminal rounded articular surface, oblong from above downward, and extending farther backward below than above. Its sides are flattened and present a depression, surmounted by a tubercle, for ligamentous attachment. Its under surface is grooved in the middle line for the passage of the Flexor tendon, and marked on each side by an articular eminence continuous with the terminal articular surface.

Peculiar Characters. First Metatarsal Bone or the Metatarsal Bone of the Great Toe (*os metatarsale I*).—The first (Fig. 183) is remarkable for its great thickness, but is the shortest of all the metatarsal bones. The shaft is strong and of well-marked prismoid form. The posterior extremity presents, as a rule, no lateral articular facet, but occasionally on the outer side there is an oval facet by which it articulates with the second metatarsal bones. Its terminal articular surface is of large size and kidney-shaped; its circumference is grooved, for the tarso-metatarsal ligaments, and internally gives attachment to part of the tendon of the Tibialis anticus muscle; its inferior angle presents a rough oval prominence, the **tuberosity** (*tuberositas ossis metatarsalis I*), for the insertion of the tendon of the Peroneus

longus. The head is of large size; on its plantar surface are two grooved facets, over which glide sesamoid bones; the facets are separated by a smooth elevated ridge.

This bone is known by the single kidney-shaped articular surface on its base, the deeply grooved appearance of the plantar surface of its head, and its great thickness relatively to its length. When it is placed in its natural position, the concave border of the kidney-shaped articular surface on its base points to the side to which the bone belongs.

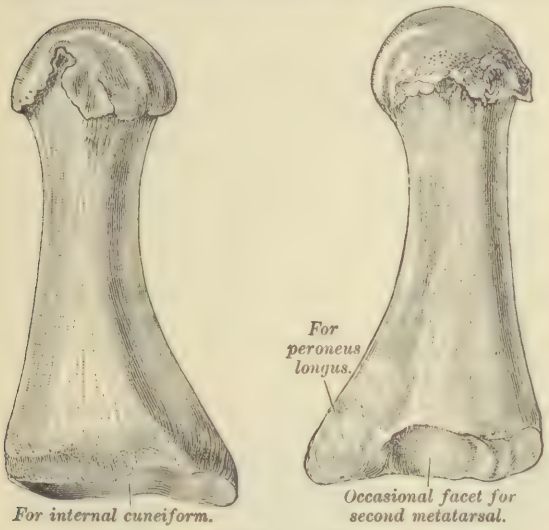


Fig. 183.—The first metatarsal. (Left.)

Attachment of Muscles.—To *three*: part of the Tibialis anticus, the Peroneus longus, and the First dorsal interosseous.

Second Metatarsal (*os metatarsale II*).—The second (Fig. 184) is the longest and largest of the remaining metatarsal bones, being prolonged backward into the recess formed between the three cuneiform bones. Its *tarsal extremity* is broad above, narrow and rough below. It presents four articular surfaces: one behind, of a triangular form, for articulation with the middle cuneiform; one at the upper part of its internal lateral surface, for articulation with the internal cunei-

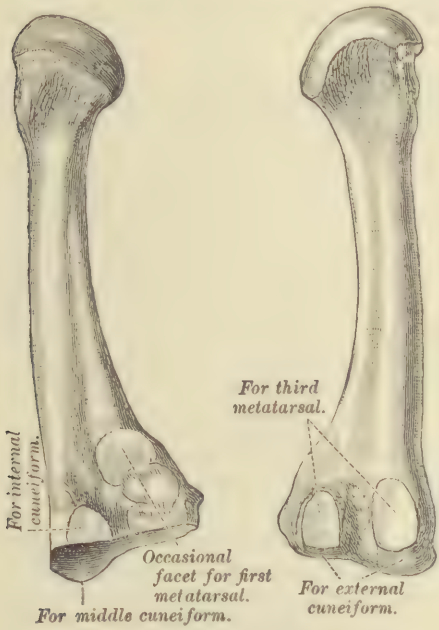


Fig. 184.—The second metatarsal. (Left.)

Fig. 185.—The third metatarsal. (Left.)

form; and two on its external lateral surface—an upper and a lower, separated by a rough non-articular interval. Each of these articular surfaces is divided by a vertical ridge into two facets, thus making four facets; the two anterior of these

articulate with the third metatarsal; the two posterior (sometimes continuous) with the external cuneiform. In addition to these articular surfaces there is occasionally a fifth when this bone articulates with the first metatarsal bone. It is oval in shape, and is situated on the inner side of the shaft near the base.

The facets on the tarsal extremity of the second metatarsal bone serve at once to distinguish it from the rest, and to indicate the foot to which it belongs; there being one facet at the upper angle of the internal surface, and two facets, each subdivided into two parts, on the external surface, pointing to the side to which the bone belongs. The fact that the two posterior subdivisions of these external facets sometimes run into one should not be forgotten.

Attachment of Muscles.—To *four:* the Adductor obliquus hallucis, First and Second dorsal interosseous, and a slip from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus; occasionally also a slip from the Peroneus longus.

Third Metatarsal (*os metatarsale III*).—The third metatarsal (Fig. 185) articulates behind, by means of a triangular smooth surface, with the external cuneiform; on its inner side, by two facets, with the second metatarsal; and on its outer side, by a single facet, with the fourth metatarsal. The latter facet is of circular form and situated at the upper angle of the base.

The third metatarsal is known by its having at its tarsal end two undivided facets on the inner side, and a single facet on the outer. This distinguishes it from the second metatarsal, in which the two facets, found on one side of its tarsal end, are each subdivided into two. The single facet (when the bone is put in its natural position) is on the side to which the bone belongs.

Attachment of Muscles.—To *five:* Adductor obliquus hallucis, Second and Third dorsal, and First plantar interosseous, and a slip from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus.

Fourth Metatarsal (*os metatarsale IV*).—The fourth metatarsal (Fig. 186) is smaller in size than the preceding; its *tarsal extremity* presents a terminal quad-

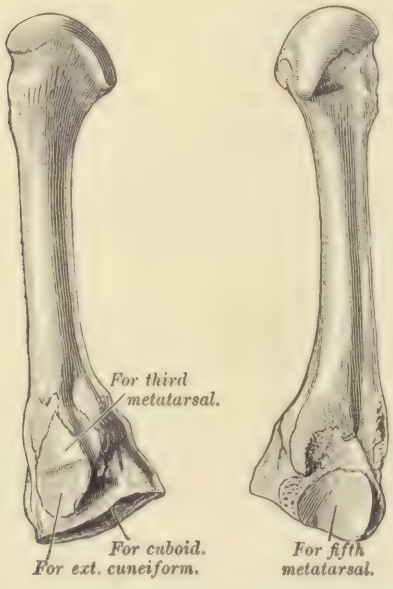


FIG. 186.—The fourth metatarsal. (Left.)

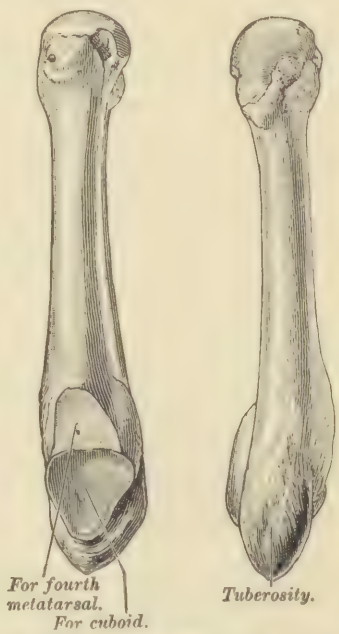


FIG. 187.—The fifth metatarsal. (Left.)

rilateral surface, for articulation with the cuboid; a smooth facet on the inner side, divided by a ridge into an anterior portion for articulation with the third

metatarsal, and a posterior portion for articulation with the external cuneiform; on the outer side a single facet, for articulation with the fifth metatarsal.

The fourth metatarsal is known by its having a single facet on either side of the tarsal extremity, that on the inner side being divided into two parts. If this subdivision be not recognizable, the fact that its tarsal end is bent somewhat outward will indicate the side to which it belongs.

Attachment of Muscles.—To *five:* Adductor obliquus hallucis, Third and Fourth dorsal, and Second plantar interosseous, and a slip from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus.

Fifth Metatarsal Bone, or the Metatarsal Bone of the Little Toe (*os metatarsale V*). —The fifth metatarsal (Fig. 187) is recognized by the **tubercle** (*tuberositas ossis metatarsalis V*) on the outer side of its base. It articulates behind, by a triangular surface cut obliquely from without inward, with the cuboid, and internally with the fourth metatarsal.

The projection on the outer side of this bone at its tarsal end at once distinguishes it from the others, and points to the side to which it belongs.

Attachment of Muscles.—To *six:* the Peroneus brevis, Peroneus tertius, Flexor brevis minimi digiti, Adductor transversus hallucis, Fourth dorsal, and Third plantar interossei.

Articulations.—Each bone articulates with the tarsal bones by one extremity, and by the other with the first row of phalanges. The number of tarsal bones with which each metatarsal articulates is one for the first, three for the second, one for the third, two for the fourth, and one for the fifth.

The Phalanges of the Foot (Phalanges Digitorum Pedis).

The phalanges of the foot, both in number and general arrangement, resemble those in the hand; there being two in the great toe and three in each of the other toes. The nutritive foramina correspond to those in the phalanges of the hand.

The **first** or **proximal phalanx** (*phalanx prima*) resembles closely the corresponding bone of the hand. The *shaft* also is compressed from side to side, convex above, concave below. The *posterior extremity* is concave; and the *anterior extremity* presents a trochlear surface, for articulation with the second phalanx.

The **second phalanx** (*phalanx secunda*) is remarkably small and short, but rather broader than the first phalanx.

The **ungual** or **distal phalanx** (*phalanx tertia*) in form resembles the bone of the corresponding finger, but is smaller, flattened from above downward, presenting a broad base for articulation with the second phalanx, and an expanded extremity for the support of the nail and end of the toe.

Articulation.—The first row, with the metatarsal bones behind and second phalanges in front; the second row of the four outer toes, with the first and third phalanges; of the great toe, with the first phalanx; the third row of the four outer toes, with the second phalanges.

Attachment of Muscles.—To the first phalanges. Great toe, five muscles: innermost tendon of Extensor brevis digitorum, Abductor hallucis, Adductor obliquus hallucis, Flexor brevis hallucis, Adductor transversus hallucis. Second toe, three muscles: First and Second dorsal interosseous and First lumbrical. Third toe, three muscles: Third dorsal and First plantar interosseous and Second lumbrical. Fourth toe, three muscles: Fourth dorsal and Second plantar interosseous and Third lumbrical. Fifth toe, four muscles: Flexor brevis minimi digiti, Abductor minimi digiti, and Third plantar interosseous, and Fourth lumbrical.—Second phalanges. Great toe; Extensor longus hallucis, Flexor longus hallucis. Other toes; Flexor brevis digitorum, one slip of the common

tendon of the Extensor longus and brevis digitorum.[1]—Third phalanges: two slips from the common tendon of the Extensor longus and Extensor brevis digitorum, and the Flexor longus digitorum.

Development of the Foot (Fig. 188).

The **Tarsal Bones** are each developed by a *single* centre, excepting the os calcis which has an epiphysis for its posterior extremity. The centres make their appearance in the following order: os calcis, at the sixth month of fœtal life; astragalus,

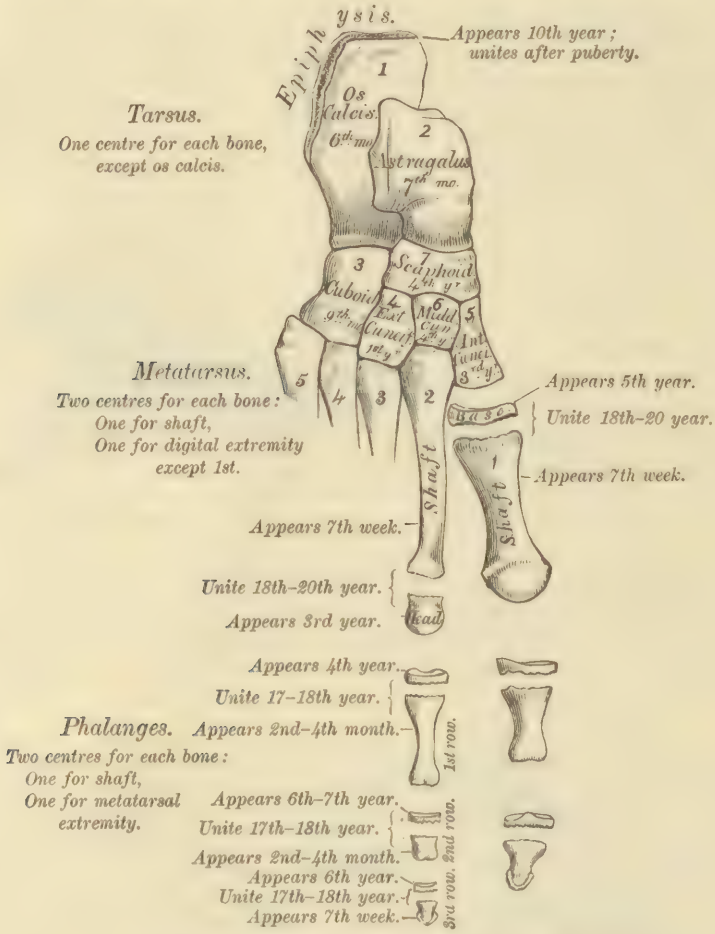


FIG. 188.—Plan of the development of the foot.

about the seventh month; cuboid, at the ninth month; external cuneiform, during the first year; internal cuneiform in the third year; middle cuneiform and scaphoid in the fourth year. The epiphysis for the posterior tuberosity of the os calcis appears at the tenth year, and unites with the rest of the bone soon after puberty.

The **Metatarsal Bones** are each developed by *two* centres: one for the shaft and one for the digital extremity in the four outer metatarsal; one for the shaft and one for the base in the metatarsal bone of the great toe.[2] Ossification com-

[1] Except the second phalanx of the fifth toe, which receives no slip from the Extensor brevis digitorum.
[2] As was noted in the first metacarpal bone, so in the first metatarsal, there is often to be observed a tendency to the formation of a second epiphysis in the distal extremity.

mences in the centre of the shaft about the ninth week, and extends toward either extremity. The centre in the proximal end of the first metatarsal bone appears about the third year, the centre in the distal end of the other bones between the fifth and eighth years; they become joined between the eighteenth and twentieth years.

The **Phalanges** are developed by *two* centres for each bone: one for the shaft and one for the metatarsal extremity. The centre for the shaft appears about the tenth week, that for the epiphysis between the fourth and tenth years; they join the shaft about the eighteenth year.

Construction of the Foot as a Whole (Figs. 189, 190).

The foot is constructed on the same principles as the hand, but modified to form a firm basis of support for the rest of the body when in the erect position. It is more solidly constructed, and its component parts are less movable on each other than in the hand. This is especially the case with the great toe, which has

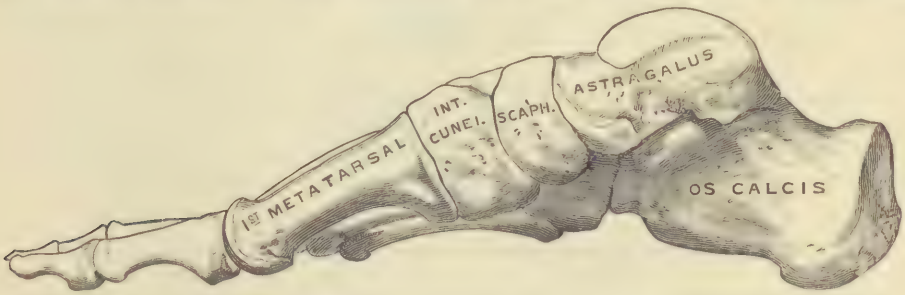


FIG. 189.—Skeleton of the foot, internal border. (Poirier and Charpy.)

to assist in supporting the body, and is therefore constructed with greater solidity; it lies parallel with the other toes, and has a very limited degree of mobility, whereas the thumb, which is occupied in numerous and varied movements, is constructed in such a manner as to permit of great mobility. Its metacarpal bone

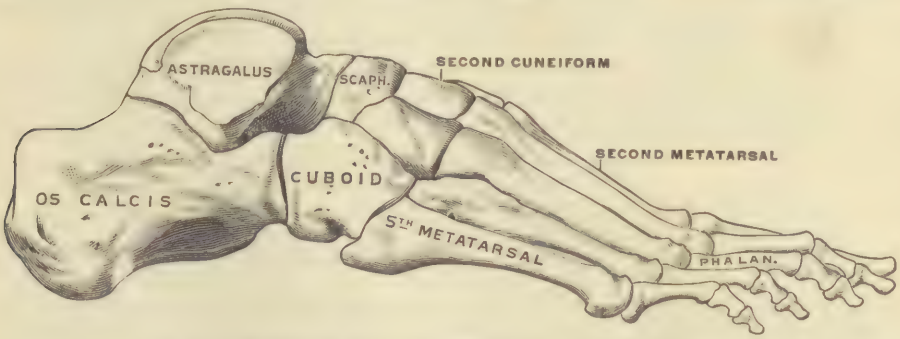


FIG. 190.—Skeleton of the foot, external border. (Poirier and Charpy.)

is directed away from the others, so as to form an acute angle with the second, and it enjoys a considerable range of motion at its articulation with the carpus. The foot is placed at right angles to the leg —a position which is almost peculiar to man, and has relation to the erect position which he maintains. In order to allow of its supporting the weight of the whole body in this position with the least expenditure of material, it is constructed in the form of an arch. This **antero-posterior** or **longitudinal arch** is made up of two unequal limbs. The

hinder one, which is made up of the os calcis and the posterior part of the astragalus, is about half the length of the anterior limb, and measures about three inches. The anterior limb consists of the rest of the tarsal and the metatarsal bones, and measures about seven inches. It may be said to consist of two parts, an inner segment made up of the head of the astragalus, the scaphoid, the three cuneiform, and the three inner metatarsal bones; and an outer segment composed of the os calcis, the cuboid, and the two outer metatarsal bones. The summit of the arch is at the superior articular surface of the astragalus; and its two extremities—that is to say, the two piers on which the arch rests in standing—are the tubercles on the under surface of the os calcis posteriorly, and the heads of the metatarsal bones anteriorly. The weakest part of the arch is the joint between the astragalus and scaphoid, and here it is more liable to yield in those who are overweighted, and in those in whom the ligaments which complete and preserve the arch are relaxed. This weak point in the arch is braced on its concave surface by the inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament, which is more elastic than most other ligaments, and thus allows the arch to yield from jars or shocks applied to the anterior portion of the foot and quickly restores it to its pristine condition. This ligament is supported internally by blending with the Deltoid ligament, and inferiorly by the tendon of the Tibialis posticus muscle, which is spread out into a fan-shaped insertion, and prevents undue tension of the ligament or such an amount of stretching as would permanently elongate it.

In addition to this longitudinal arch the foot presents a **transverse arch**, at the anterior part of the tarsus and hinder part of the metatarsus. This, however, can scarcely be described as a true arch, but presents more the character of a half-dome. The inner border of the central portion of the longitudinal arch is elevated from the ground, and from this point the bones arch over to the outer border, which is in contact with the ground, and, assisted by the longitudinal arch, produce a sort of rounded niche on the inner side of the foot, which gives the appearance of a transverse as well as a longitudinal arch.

The line of the foot, from the point of the heel to the toes, is not quite straight, but is directed a little outward, so that the inner border is a little convex and the outer border concave. This disposition of the bones becomes more marked when the longitudinal arch of the foot is lost, as in the disease known under the name of "flat-foot."

Surface Form.—On the dorsum of the foot the individual bones are not to be distinguished with the exception of the head of the astragalus, which forms a rounded projection in front of the ankle-joint when the foot is forcibly extended. The whole surface forms a smooth convex outline, the summit of which is the ridge formed by the head of the astragalus, the scaphoid, the middle cuneiform, and the second metatarsal bones; from this it gradually inclines outward and more rapidly inward. On the inner side of the foot, the **internal tuberosity of the os calcis** and the ridge separating the inner from the posterior surface of the bone may be felt most posteriorly. In front of this, and below the internal malleolus, may be felt the projection of the **sustentaculum tali.** Passing forward is the well-marked tuberosity of the scaphoid bone, situated about an inch or an inch and a quarter in front of the internal malleolus. Further toward the front, the ridge formed by the base of the first metatarsal bone can be obscurely felt, and from this the shaft of the bone can be traced to the expanded head articulating with the base of the first phalanx of the great toe. Immediately beneath the base of this phalanx, the internal sesamoid bone is to be felt. Lastly, the expanded ends of the bones forming the last joint of the great toe are to be felt. On the outer side of the foot the most posterior bony point is the outer tuberosity of the os calcis, with the ridge separating the posterior from the outer surface of the bone. In front of this the greater part of the external surface of the os calcis is subcutaneous; on it, below and in front of the external malleolus, may be felt the peroneal ridge, when this process is present. Farther forward, the base of the fifth metatarsal bone forms a prominent and well-defined landmark, and in front of this the shaft of the bone, with its expanded head, and the base of the first phalanx may be defined. The sole of the foot is almost entirely covered by soft parts, so that but few bony parts are to be made out, and these somewhat obscurely. The hinder part of the under surface of the os calcis and the heads of the metatarsal

bones, with the exception of the first, which is concealed by the sesamoid bones, may be recognized.

Surgical Anatomy.—Considering the injuries to which the foot is subjected, it is surprising how seldom the tarsal bones are fractured. This is no doubt due to the fact that the tarsus is composed of a number of bones, articulated by a considerable extent of surface and joined together by very strong ligaments, which serve to mitigate the intensity of violence applied to this part of the body. When *fracture* does occur, these bones, being composed for the most part of a soft cancellous structure, covered only by a thin shell of compact tissue, are often extensively comminuted, especially as most of the fractures are produced by direct violence. As the bones have only a very scanty amount of soft parts over them, fractures are very often compound, and amputation is frequently necessary.

When fracture occurs in the *anterior group of tarsal bones*, it is almost invariably the result of direct violence; but fractures of the posterior group, that is, of the *calcaneum* and *astragalus*, are most frequently produced by falls from a height on to the feet; though *fracture of the os calcis* may be caused by direct violence or by muscular action. The posterior part of the bone, that is, the part behind the articular surfaces, is almost always the seat of the fracture, though some few cases of *fracture of the sustentaculum tali* and of vertical fracture between the two articulating facets have been recorded. The neck of the astragalus, being the weakest part of the bone, is most frequently fractured, though fractures may occur in any part and almost in any direction, either associated or not with fracture of other bones.

In cases of *club-foot*, especially in congenital cases, the bones of the tarsus become altered in shape and size, and displaced from their proper positions. This is especially the case in *congenital equino-varus*, in which the astragalus, particularly about the head, becomes twisted and atrophied, and a similar condition may be present in the other bones, more especially the *scaphoid*. The tarsal bones are peculiarly liable to become the seat of *tuberculous caries*, and this condition may arise after comparatively trivial injuries. There are several reasons to account for this. They are composed of a delicate cancellated structure, surrounded by intricate synovial membranes. They are situated at the farthest point from the central organ of the circulation and exposed to vicissitudes of temperature; and, moreover, on their dorsal surface are thinly clad with soft parts which have but a scanty blood-supply. And finally, after slight injuries, they are not maintained in a condition of rest to the same extent as structures suffering from similar injuries in some other parts of the body. Caries of the calcaneus or astragalus may remain limited to the one bone for a long period, but when one of the other bones is affected, the remainder frequently become involved, in consequence of the disease spreading through the large and complicated synovial membrane which is more or less common to these bones.

Amputation of the whole or a part of the foot is frequently required either for injury or disease. The principal amputations are as follows: (1) *Syme's: amputation* at the ankle-joint by a heel-flap, with removal of the malleoli and a thin slice from the lower end of the tibia. (2) *Roux's: amputation* at the ankle-joint by a large internal flap. (3) *Pirogoff's amputation:* removal of the whole of the tarsal bones, except the posterior part of the os calcis.. A thin slice is sawn from the tibia and fibula, including the two malleoli. The sawn surface of the os calcis is then turned up and united to the similar surface of the tibia. (4) *Subastragaloid amputation:* removal of the foot below the astragalus through the joint between it and the os calcis. This operation has been modified by *Hancock*, who leaves the posterior third of the os calcis and turns it up against the denuded surface of the astragalus. This latter operation is of doubtful utility and is rarely performed. (5) *Chopart's* or *medio-tarsal:* removal of the anterior part of the foot with all the tarsal bones except the os calcis and astragalus; disarticulation being effected through the astragalo-scaphoid and calcaneo-cuboid joints. (6) *Lisfranc's: amputation* of the anterior part of the foot through the tarso-metatarsal joints. This was modified by *Hey*, who disarticulated through the joints of the four outer metatarsal bones with the tarsus, and sawed off the projecting internal cuneiform; and by *Skey*, who sawed off the base of the second metatarsal bone and disarticulated the others.

The bones of the tarsus occasionally require removal individually. This is especially the case with the astragalus and os calcis for disease limited to the one bone, or again the astragalus may require *excision* in cases of subastragaloid dislocation, or, as recommended by M.r Lund, in cases of *inveterate talipes*. The cuboid has been removed for the same reason by Mr. Solly. But the latter two operations have fallen into disuse, and have been superseded by resection of a wedge-shaped piece of bone from the outer side of the tarsus. Finally, Mickulicz and Watson have devised operations for the removal of more extensive portions of the tarsus. *Mickulicz's operation* consists in the removal of the os calcis and astragalus, along with the articular surfaces of the tibia and fibula, and also of the scaphoid and cuboid. The remaining portion of the tarsus is then brought into contact with the sawn surfaces of the tibia and fibula, and fixed there. The result is a position of the shortened foot resembling talipes equinus. *Watson's operation* is adapted to those cases where the disease is confined to the anterior tarsal bones. By two lateral incisions he saws through the bases of the metatarsal

bones in front and opens up the joints between the scaphoid and astragalus, and the cuboid and os calcis, and removes the intervening bones.

Fractures of the metatarsal bones and phalanges are nearly always due to direct violence, and in many cases the injury is the result of severe crushing accidents, necessitating amputation. The metatarsal bones, and especially the metatarsal bone of the great toe, are frequently diseased, either in tuberculous subjects or in *perforating ulcer* of the foot.

Sesamoid Bones (Ossa Sesamoidea) (Figs. 191, 192).

These are small rounded masses, cartilaginous in early life, osseous in the adult, which are developed in those tendons which exert a great amount of pressure upon the parts over which they glide. It is said that they are more commonly found in the male than in the female, and in persons of an active muscular habit than in those who are weak and debilitated. They are invested throughout their whole surface by the fibrous tissue of the tendon in which they are found, excepting upon that side which lies in contact with the part over which they play, where they present a free articular facet. They may be divided into two kinds: those which glide over the articular surfaces of the joints, and those which play over the cartilaginous facets found on the surfaces of certain bones.

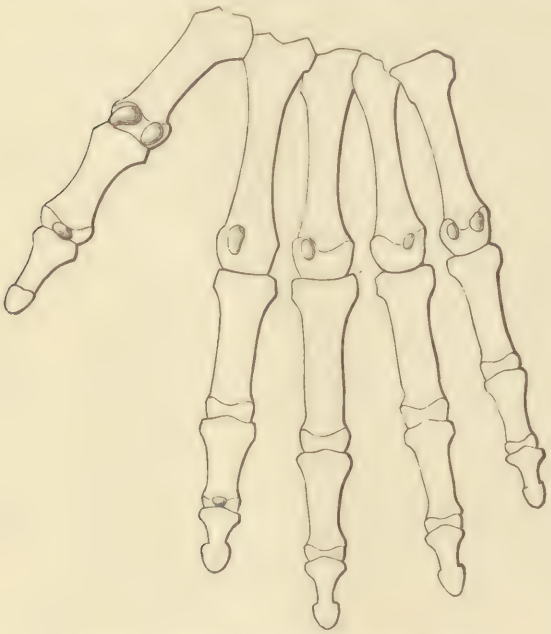


FIG. 191.—Sesamoid bones of the hand. (Poirier and Charpy.)

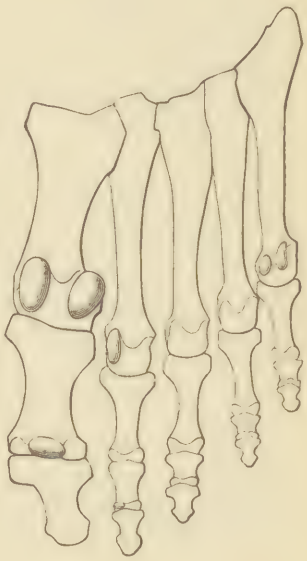


FIG. 192.—Sesamoid bones of the foot. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The sesamoid bones of the joints in the upper extremity are two on the palmar surface of the metacarpo-phalangeal joint in the thumb, developed in the tendons of the Flexor brevis pollicis; one on the palmar surface of the interphalangeal joint of the thumb; occasionally one or two opposite the metacarpo-phalangeal articulations of the fore and little fingers; and, still more rarely, one opposite the same joints of the third and fourth fingers. In the lower extremity, the patella, which is developed in the tendon of the Quadriceps extensor; two small sesamoid bones, found in the tendons of the flexor brevis hallucis, opposite the metatarso-phalangeal joint of the great toe; one sometimes over the interphalangeal joint of the great toe; and occasionally one in the metatarso-phalangeal joint of the second toe, the little toe, and, still more rarely, the third and fourth toes.

Those found in the tendons which glide over certain bones occupy the following situations: one sometimes found in the tendon of the Biceps cubiti, opposite the tuberosity of the radius: one in the tendon of the Peroneus longus, where it glides through the groove in the cuboid bone; one appears late in life in the tendon of the Tibialis anticus, opposite the smooth facet of the internal cuneiform bone; one is found in the tendon of the Tibialis posticus, opposite the inner side of the head of the astragalus; one in the outer head of the Gastrocnemius, behind the outer condyle of the femur; and one in the conjoined tendon of the Psoas and Iliacus, where it glides over the os pubis. Sesamoid bones are found occasionally in the tendon of the Gluteus maximus, as it passes over the great trochanter, and in the tendons which wind round the inner and outer malleoli.

THE ARTICULATIONS OR JOINTS.

THE various bones of which the Skeleton consists are connected together at different parts of their surfaces, and such a connection is designated by the name of **joint** or **articulation. Arthrology** is the branch of anatomy which treats of the joints. If the joint is *immovable*, as between the cranial and most of the facial bones, the adjacent margins of the bones are applied in almost close contact, a thin layer of fibrous membrane, the **sutural ligament**, and, at the base of the skull, in certain situations, a thin layer of cartilage, being interposed. Where slight movement is required, combined with great strength, the osseous surfaces are united by tough and elastic **fibro-cartilages,** as in the joints between the vertebral bodies and interpubic articulations; but in the *movable* joints the bones forming the articulation are generally expanded for greater convenience of mutual connection, covered by **cartilage,** held together by strong bands or *capsules* of fibrous tissue called **ligaments,** and partially lined by a membrane, the **synovial membrane,** which secretes a fluid to lubricate the various parts of which the joint is formed; so that the structures which enter into the formation of a joint are **bone, cartilage, fibro-cartilage, ligament,** and **synovial membrane.**

Bone.—Bone constitutes the fundamental element of all the joints. In the long bones the extremities are the parts which form the articulations; they are generally somewhat enlarged, consisting of spongy cancellous tissue, with a thin coating of compact substance. In the flat bones the articulations usually take place at the edges, and, in the short bones, at various parts of their surface. The layer of compact bone which forms the articular surface, and to which the cartilage is attached, is called the **articular lamella.** It is of a white color, extremely dense, and varies in thickness. Its structure differs from ordinary bone-tissue in this respect, that it contains no Haversian canals, and its lacunæ are much larger than in ordinary bone and have no canaliculi. The vessels of the cancellous tissue, as they approach the articular lamella, turn back in loops, and do not perforate it; this layer is consequently more dense and firmer than ordinary bone, and is evidently designed to form a firm and unyielding support for the articular cartilage.

Cartilage.—Cartilage is material which is a transition stage of connective tissue into bone. When boiled it yields chondrin. Cartilage is not vascular and is found in various parts of the body; in adult life chiefly in the joints, in the parietes of the thorax, and in various tubes, which are to be kept permanently open, such as the air passages, nostrils, and ears. In the fœtus in an early period the greater part of the skeleton is cartilaginous. As this cartilage is replaced by bone, it is called **temporary** in contradistinction to that which remains unossified during life, and which is called **permanent.** Cartilage is divided into:

1. Hyaline cartilage.
2. Elastic cartilage.
3. Fibro-cartilage.

Hyaline Cartilage.—This structure is found in the nose, larynx, trachea, bronchi, and in symphyses and synchondroses; costal cartilage and epiphyseal cartilage are composed of it, and as **articular cartilage** (*cartilago articularis*) it covers joint

surfaces. It is a bluish or pearly hued substance, in reality a modified connective tissue, but much harder than most connective tissues. The investing membrane, the **perichondrium**, is composed of two layers: an outer fibrous layer which carries blood-vessels and an inner or chondrogenetic layer, which contains cartilage-forming cells (chondroblasts).

Cartilage does not contain blood-vessels except in regions of very active growth or of ossification. In such regions vessels may be formed. Hyaline cartilage is composed of round or oval cells and intercellular substance. Each cell contains granular protoplasm and a nucleus, and the nucleus contains one or two nucleoli. The cells are placed in the so-called **cartilage spaces** of the ground substance, and the ground substance immediately surrounding a space is called a **cartilage capsule**. The cells are placed in groups and near the surface are arranged in rows, and in some regions are flattened by pressure. The intercellular or ground substance (matrix) is an apparently homogeneous and structureless material between the cartilage spaces. By certain methods, however, fibres can be demonstrated in it. These fibrils in general are parallel. In some of the lower animals canals have been demonstrated. In man it has not been proved that canals exist, and it has been suggested that the fibrils act as paths of conduction for nutritive fluid.

Articular cartilage forms a thin incrustation upon the joint-surfaces of the bones, and its elasticity enables it to break the force of any concussion, while its smoothness affords ease and freedom of movement. It varies in thickness according to the shape of the articular surface on which it lies; where this is convex the cartilage is thickest at the centre, where the greatest pressure is received; and the reverse is the case on the concave articular surfaces. Articular cartilage appears to derive its nutriment partly from the vessels of the neighboring synovial membrane, partly from those of the bone upon which it is implanted. Toynbee has shown that the minute vessel of the cancellous tissue as they approach the articular lamella dilate and form arches, and then return into the substance of the bone.

The hyaline cartilages, especially in adult and advanced life, are prone to calcify—that is to say, to have their matrix permeated by the salts of lime without any appearance of true bone. The process of calcification occurs also, and still more frequently, according to Rollett, in such cartilages as those of the trachea and in the costal cartilages, which are prone afterward to conversion into true bone.

Elastic Cartilage.—In this structure there are elastic fibres in the matrix, which fibres at the periphery of the cartilage enter into the perichondrium. Such cartilage is not blue-white in color, but is a very light yellow, and is not to be regarded as identical with elastic fibrous tissue. Elastic cartilage is found in the epiglottis and the cartilages of the larynx.

Fibro-cartilage is composed of white fibrous tissue and cartilage in varying proportions; it is to the first of these two constituents that its flexibility and toughness are chiefly owing, and to the latter its elasticity; the cells are fewer in number, but are possessed of more definite capsules than are those of hyaline cartilage, and they are usually arranged in groups surrounded by small islands of hyaline matrix, which may be concentrically striated. The hyaline islands are separated from one another by bundles of white fibrous tissue that pursue a markedly wavy course.

Fibro-cartilage is found at the point of insertion of the ligamentum teres into the head of the femur, in the intervertebral disks, in the pubic symphysis, and in the interarticular cartilages.

The fibro-cartilages admit of arrangement into four groups: interarticular, connecting, circumferential, and stratiform.

1. The **interarticular fibro-cartilages** (*menisci*) are flattened, fibro-cartilaginous plates, of a round, oval, triangular, or sickle-like form, interposed between the

articular cartilages of certain joints. They are free on both surfaces, thinner toward their centre than at their circumference, and held in position by the attachment of their margins and extremities to the surrounding ligaments. The synovial membrane of the joint is prolonged over them a short distance from their attached margins. They are found in the temporo-mandibular, sterno-clavicular, acromio-clavicular, wrist- and knee-joints. These cartilages are usually found in those joints which are most exposed to violent concussion and subject to frequent movement. Their use is to maintain the apposition of the opposed surfaces in their various motions; to increase the depth of the articular surfaces and give ease to the gliding movement; to moderate the effects of great pressure and deaden the intensity of the shocks to which the parts may be subjected. Humphry has pointed out that these interarticular fibro-cartilages serve an important purpose in increasing the variety of movements in a joint. Thus, in the knee-joint there are two kinds of motion—viz., angular movement and rotation—although it is a hinge joint, in which, as a rule, only one variety of motion is permitted; the former movement takes place between the condyles of the femur and the interarticular cartilage, the latter between the cartilage and the head of the tibia. So, also, in the temporo-mandibular joint, the upward and downward movement of opening and shutting the mouth takes place between the fibro-cartilage and the jaw-bone, the grinding movement between the glenoid cavity and the fibro-cartilage, the latter moving with the jaw-bone.

Interarticular cartilages may divide the joint into two distinct cavities, as in the temporo-maxillary articulation. The periphery of an articular cartilage is attached particularly to the capsule and may also be attached to the non-articular portion of the bone. The semilunar cartilages of the knee resemble tendon more than they do cartilage. The fibres are arranged in dense, more or less parallel bundles, separated by small, scattered hyaline cells, and the disks are attached to the bone by thin layers of hyaline cartilage.

2. The **connecting fibro-cartilages** are interposed between the bony surfaces of those joints which admit of only slight mobility, as between the bodies of the vertebræ and between the pubic bones. They form disks which adhere closely to both of the opposed surfaces, and are composed of concentric rings of fibrous tissue, with cartilaginous laminæ interposed, the former tissue predominating toward the circumference, the latter toward the centre.

3. The **circumferential fibro-cartilages** consist of a rim of fibro-cartilage, which surrounds the margin of some of the articular cavities, as the cotyloid cavity of the hip and the glenoid cavity of the shoulder; they serve to deepen the articular surface, and to protect its edges.

4. The **stratiform fibro-cartilages** are those which form a thin coating to osseous grooves through which the tendons of certain muscles glide. Small masses of fibro-cartilages are developed also in the tendons of some muscles, where they glide over bones, as in tendons of the Peroneus longus and the Tibialis posticus.

Ligaments.—Ligaments consist of bands of various forms, serving to connect together the articular extremities of bones, and are composed mainly of coarse bundles of very dense **white fibrous tissue** placed parallel with, or closely interlaced with, one another, and presenting a white, shining, silvery aspect. These bundles are called **fasciculi**. They are held together by a cement substance containing cells which resemble those of tendon. A ligament is pliant and flexible, so as to allow of the most perfect freedom of movement, but it is strong, tough, and inextensile, so as not readily to yield under the most severely applied force; it is consequently well adapted to serve as the connecting medium between the bones. Some ligaments consist entirely of **yellow elastic tissue** (*elastic fibrous tissue*), the elastic fibres branching considerably, but maintaining in general a parallel course. The fibres are in bundles, between which

areolar connective tissue lies. The **ligamenta subflava**, which connect together the adjacent arches of the vertebræ in man and the **ligamentum nuchæ** in the lower animals are composed of yellow elastic tissue. In these cases it will be observed that the elasticity of the ligament is intended to act as a substitute for muscular power.

Synovial Membranes.—These membranes are serous in character. A synovial membrane consists of loose connecting tissue (subendothelial tissue), containing fat, vessels, and nerves, its inner surface being lined with a single layer of flat endothelial cells. The endothelial cells are polyhedral, and each cell possesses a flattened oval nucleus. The cells are held together by intercellular cement. It is believed by some that little openings occur at intervals in the intercellular cement, but it is held by many that the supposed openings are artifacts. Synovial cavities contain a little fluid. A non-articular synovial membrane does not actually secrete fluid, but it is moistened by lymph which passes through the membrane and into the cavity by osmosis.

Joint cavities and bursæ communicating with joints contain a characteristic fluid which is a secretion of the membrane. It is yellowish-white or slightly reddish, somewhat cloudy, viscid like the white of an egg, having a strongly alkaline reaction and a slightly saline taste. It consists of fats, salts, albumins, extractives from lymph, a mucinous body known as **synovin**,[1] and another mucin-like body, which is rich in phosphorus (Simon). The nature of synovin is uncertain, but it is neither a nucleo-albumin nor a mucin (Simon). The second mucin-like body is probably a nucleo-albumin (Simon). The quantitative composition of synovial fluid varies with motion and rest (Frerichs, Simon). During exercise the mucin-like bodies, the albumins, and the extractives increase, and the salts and water diminish.[2] The synovial membranes found in the body admit of subdivision into three kinds—**articular, bursal,** and **vaginal.**

Articular Synovial Membrane.—Articular synovial membrane is found in every freely movable joint. It lines the capsule of the joint and is reflected upon the non-articular intracapsular portion of the bones which enter into the formation of the joint. In the fœtus this membrane is said, by Toynbee, to be continued over the surface of the cartilages; but in the adult it merely encroaches for a short distance upon the margins of the cartilages, to which it is firmly attached; it then invests the inner surface of the capsular or other ligaments enclosing the joint, and is reflected over the surface of any tendons passing through its cavity, as the tendon of the Popliteus in the knee and the tendon of the Biceps in the shoulder. Hence the articular synovial membrane may be regarded as a short wide tube, attached by its open ends to the margins of the articular cartilages, and covering the inner surface of the various ligaments which connect the articular surfaces, so that along with the cartilages it completely encloses the joint-cavity. In some of the joints the synovial membrane is thrown into folds, which pass across the cavity. They are called **synovial ligaments,** and are especially distinct in the knee. In some joints there are flattened folds, subdivided at their margins into fringe-like processes (**synovial villi**), the vessels of which have a convoluted arrangement. These latter generally project from the synovial membrane near the margin of the cartilage and lie flat upon its surface. They consist of connective tissue covered with endothelium, and contain fat-cells in variable quantities, and, more rarely, isolated cartilage-cells. The larger folds often contain considerable quantities of fat. They were described by Clopton Havers as **mucilaginous glands,** and as the source of the synovial secretion. Under certain diseased conditions similar processes are found covering the entire surface of the synovial membrane, forming a

[1] Simon's Physiological Chemistry.
[2] Frerichs' analysis, in Simon's Physiological Chemistry.

mass of pedunculated fibro-fatty growths which project into the joint. Similar structures are also found in some of the bursal and vaginal synovial membranes.

Bursal Synovial Membrane.—The bursal synovial membranes are sacs interposed between surfaces which move upon each other, producing friction, as in the gliding of a tendon or of the integument over projecting bony surfaces. There are two groups of synovial bursæ designated according to situation: 1. Those situated between the integument and a prominent process of bone. Such a bursa is called a **subcutaneous synovial bursa** (*bursa mucosa subcutanea*) (Fig. 246). Subcutaneous bursæ are found between the integument and the front of the patella, over the olecranon, the malleoli, and other prominent parts. 2. Those situated between tendons or muscles and the bony or cartilaginous surfaces over which the tendons or muscles glide (Figs. 193 and 194). Such a bursa is called a

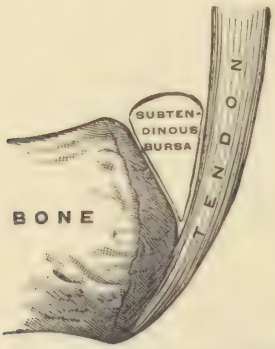


FIG. 193.—Scheme of a serous bursa. (Poirier and Charpy.)

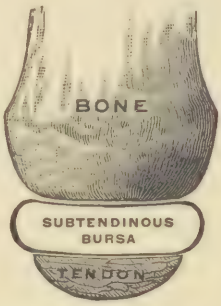


FIG. 194.—Scheme of a serous bursa. (Poirier and Charpy.)

subtendinous synovial bursa (*bursa mucosa subtendinea*). For example, a bursa is placed between the Glutei muscles and the surface of the great trochanter. Subtendinous bursæ are found often about joints and not unusually communicate directly with the cavity of the joint by means of an opening in the joint capsule, the synovial membrane of the joint being continuous with the synovial membrane of the bursa. For instance, the bursa between the tendon of the Psoas and Iliacus muscles and the capsular ligament of the hip communicates with the hip-joint; and the bursa between the under surface of the Subscapularis muscle and the neck of the scapula communicates with the shoulder-joint. Bursæ consist of a thin wall of connective tissue, partially covered by patches of cells, and contain a viscid fluid.

Vaginal Synovial Membrane (Fig. 326).—A vaginal synovial membrane (*synovial sheath, thecal synovial bursa, vagina mucosa tendinis*) serves to facilitate the gliding of a tendon in the osseo-fibrous canal through which it passes. The membrane is here arranged in the form of a sheath, one layer of which adheres to the wall of the canal, and the other is reflected upon the surface of the contained tendon, the space between the two free surfaces of the membrane containing synovia. These sheaths are chiefly found surrounding the tendons of the Flexor and Extensor muscles of the fingers and toes as they pass through the osseo-fibrous canals in the hand or foot. A vaginal sheath covers the long head of the biceps muscle from its origin to the surgical neck of the humerus (Fig. 222).

Pads of adipose tissue (*synovial fat pads*) are found in certain joints between the synovial membrane and the surface beneath it. These pads fill up certain joint intervals, and by adapting themselves to changes of position maintain the form of the joint during movement.

The articulations are divided into three classes: **synarthrosis**, or immovable; **amphiarthrosis**, or mixed; and **diarthrosis**, or movable joints.

Synarthrosis (Immovable Articulation).

Synarthrosis includes all those articulations in which the surfaces of the bones are in almost direct contact, being fastened together by an intervening mass of connective tissue, and in which there is no joint cavity and no appreciable motion. Examples of synarthrosis are the joints between the bones of the cranium and of the face, excepting those of the lower jaw. The varieties of synarthrosis are four in number: **sutura, schindylesis, gomphosis,** and **synchondrosis.**

Sutura.—Sutura (a seam) is that form of articulation met with only in the skull, where the contiguous margins of flat bones are apparently but not really in immediate contact, a thin layer of fibrous tissue, **sutural membrane,** being interposed. This membrane is continuous externally with the pericranium and internally with the dura mater. In some of the sutures the sutural membrane gradually disappears as age advances and the two bones form an osseous fusion. Where the articulating surfaces are connected by a series of processes and indentations interlocked together, it is termed a *true suture* or **sutura vera,** of which there are three varieties: **sutura dentata, serrata,** and **limbosa.** The **sutura dentata** (*dens*, a tooth) is so called from the tooth-like form of the projecting articular processes, as in the suture between the parietal bones. In the **sutura serrata** (*serra*, a saw) the edges of the two bones forming the articulation are serrated like the teeth of a fine saw, as between the two portions of the frontal bone. In the **sutura limbosa** (*limbus*, a selvage), besides the dentated processes, there is a certain degree of bevelling of the articular surfaces, so that the bones overlap one another, as in the suture between the parietal and frontal bones. When the articulation is formed by roughened surfaces placed in apposition with one another, it is termed the **false suture** (*sutura notha*), of which there are two kinds: the **sutura squamosa** (*squama*, a scale), formed by the overlapping of two contiguous bones by broad bevelled margins, as in the squamo-parietal (squamous) suture; and the **sutura harmonia** (*ἁρμονία*, a joining together), where there is simple apposition of two contiguous, rough, bony surfaces, as in the articulation between the two superior maxillary bones or of the horizontal plates of the palate bones.

Schindylesis.—Schindylesis (*σχινδύλησις*, a fissure) is that form of articulation in which a thin plate of bone is received into a cleft or fissure formed by the separation of two laminæ in another bone, as in the articulation of the rostrum of the sphenoid and perpendicular plate of the ethmoid with the vomer, or in the reception of the latter in the fissure between the superior maxillary and palate bones.

Gomphosis.—Gomphosis (*γόμφος*, a nail) is an articulation formed by the insertion of a conical process into a socket, as a nail is driven into a board; this is not illustrated by any articulation between bones, properly so called, but is seen in the articulation of the teeth with the alveoli of the maxillary bones.

Synchondrosis.—Where the connecting medium is cartilage the joint is termed a synchondrosis. This is a temporary form of joint, because the hyaline cartilage becomes converted into bone before adult life. Such a joint is found between the epiphyses and shafts of long bones. Another example of a synchondrosis is the occipito-sphenoid articulation.

Amphiarthrosis (Mixed Articulation).

In this form of articulation the contiguous osseous surfaces may be connected together by broad flattened disks of fibro-cartilage, of a more or less complex structure, which adhere to the end of each bone, as in the articulation between the bodies of the vertebræ and the pubic symphyses. This is termed **symphysis.** In a symphysis there is a partial joint cavity which may exhibit an incomplete synovial membrane. Each constituent bone is coated with hyaline cartilage and

the bones are held together by ligaments and intervening fibro-cartilage. The bony surfaces of an amphiarthrodial joint may be united by an interosseous ligament, as in the inferior tibio-fibular articulation. To such an articulation the term **syndesmosis** is applied. A mixed articulation permits limited motion.

Diarthrosis (Movable Articulation).

This form of articulation includes the greater number of the joints in the body, mobility being their distinguishing character. They are formed by the approximation of two contiguous bony surfaces covered with cartilage, connected by ligaments and lined by synovial membrane. The varieties of joints in this class have been determined by the kind of motion permitted in each. There are two varieties in which the movement is uniaxial; that is to say, all movements take place around one axis. In one form, the **ginglymus** or **hinge-joint,** this axis is, practically speaking, transverse; in the other, the **trochoid** or **pivot-joint,** it is longitudinal. There are two varieties where the movement is **biaxial** or around two horizontal axes at right angles to each other or at any intervening axis between the two. These are the **condyloid-joint** and the **saddle-joint.** There is one form of joint where the movement is **polyaxial,** the **enarthrosis** or **ball-and-socket joint.** And finally there are the **arthrodia** or **gliding joints.** In a diarthrosis there is always a joint cavity lined with synovial membrane—the articular surfaces of the bones are covered with hyaline cartilage and the bones are held in contact by ligaments.

Ginglymus or Hinge-joint (*γίγλυμος*, a hinge).—In this form of joint the articular surfaces are moulded to each other in such a manner as to permit motion only in one plane, forward and backward; the extent of motion at the same time being considerable. The direction which the distal bone takes in this motion is never in the same plane as that of the axis of the proximal bone, and there is always a certain amount of alteration from the straight line during flexion. The articular surfaces are connected together by strong lateral ligaments, which form their chief bond of union. The most perfect forms of ginglymus are the interphalangeal joints and the joint between the humerus and ulna; the knee and ankle are less perfect, as they allow a slight degree of rotation or lateral movement in certain positions of the limb.

Trochoid or Pivot-joint or Rotary-joint.—Where the movement is limited to rotation, the joint is formed by a pivot-like process turning within a ring, or the ring on the pivot, the ring being formed partly of bone, partly of ligament. In the superior radio-ulnar articulation the ring is formed partly by the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna; in the rest of its extent, by the orbicular ligament; here the head of the radius rotates within the ring. In the articulation of the odontoid process of the axis with the atlas the ring is formed in front by the anterior arch of the atlas; behind, by the transverse ligament; here the ring rotates round the odontoid process.

Condyloid or Biaxial Articulation.—In this form of joint an ovoid articular head, or condyle, is received into an elliptical cavity in such a manner as to permit of flexion and extension, adduction and abduction and circumduction, but no axial rotation. The articular surfaces are connected together by anterior, posterior, and lateral ligaments. An example of this form of joint is found in the wrist.

Articulation by Reciprocal Reception or Saddle-joint.—In this variety the articular surfaces are concavo-convex; that is to say, they are inversely convex in one direction and concave in the other. The movements are the same as in the preceding form; that is to say, there is flexion, extension, adduction, abduction, and circumduction, but no axial rotation. The articular surfaces are connected

by a capsular ligament. The best example of this form of joint is the carpo-metacarpal joint of the thumb.

Enarthrosis, or **Ball-and-socket-joint,** is that form of joint in which the distal bone is capable of motion around an indefinite number of axes which have one common centre. It is formed by the reception of a globular head into a deep cup-like cavity (hence the name "ball-and-socket"), the parts being kept in apposition by a capsular ligament strengthened by accessory ligamentous bands. Examples of this form of articulation are found in the hip and shoulder.

Arthrodia.—Arthrodia is that form of joint which admits of a gliding movement; it is formed by the approximation of plane surfaces or one slightly concave, the other slightly convex, the amount of motion between them being limited by the ligaments, or osseous processes, surrounding the articulation; as in the articular processes of the vertebræ, the carpal joints, except that of the os magnum with the scaphoid and semilunar bones, and the tarsal joints with the exception of the joint between the astragalus and the scaphoid.

Below, in tabular form, are the names, distinctive characters, and examples of the different kinds of articulations.

The Kinds of Movement Admitted in Joints.

The movements admissible in joints may be divided into four kinds: gliding, angular movement, circumduction, and rotation. These movements are often, however, more or less combined in the various joints, so as to produce an infinite variety, and it is seldom that we find only one kind of motion in any particular joint.

- *Synarthrosis,* or Immovable Joint. Surfaces separated by fibrous membrane or by line of cartilage, without any intervening synovial cavity, and immovably connected with each other. As in joints of cranium and face (except lower jaw).
  - *Sutura.* Articulation by processes and indentations interlocked together.
    - *Sutura vera* (true), articulate by indented borders.
      - *Dentata,* having tooth-like processes. As in interparietal suture.
      - *Serrata,* having serrated edges like the teeth of a saw. As in interfrontal suture.
      - *Limbosa,* having bevelled margins and dentated processes. As in fronto-parietal suture.
    - *Sutura notha* (false), articulate by rough surfaces.
      - *Squamosa,* formed by thin bevelled margins, overlapping each other. As in squamo-parietal suture.
      - *Harmonia,* formed by the apposition of contiguous rough surfaces. As in intermaxillary suture.
  - *Schindylesis.*—Articulation formed by the reception of a thin plate of one bone into a fissure of another. As in articulation of rostrum of sphenoid with vomer.
  - *Gomphosis.*—Articulation formed by the insertion of a conical process into a socket: the teeth.

Amphiarthrosis, Mixed Articulation.

Symphysis.—Surfaces connected by fibro-cartilage. There is a partial joint cavity and may be an incomplete synovial membrane. Has limited motion. As in joints between bodies of vertebræ.

Syndesmosis.—Surfaces united by an interosseous ligament. As in the inferior tibio-fibular articulation.

Diarthrosis, Movable Joint.

Ginglymus.—Hinge-joint; motion limited to two directions, forward and backward. Articular surfaces fitted together so as to permit of movement in one plane. As in the interphalangeal joints and the joint between the humerus and the ulna.

Trochoides, or Pivot-joint.—Articulation by a pivot process turning within a ring or ring around a pivot. As in superior radio-ulnar articulation and atlanto-axial joint.

Condyloid.—Ovoid head received into elliptical cavity. Movements in every direction except axial rotation. As the wrist-joint.

Reciprocal Reception (saddle-joint).—Articular surfaces inversely convex in one direction and concave in the other. Movement in every direction except axial rotation. As in the carpo-metacarpal joint of the thumb.

Enarthrosis.—Ball-and-socket joint; capable of motion in all directions. Articulations by a globular head received into a cup-like cavity. As in hip- and shoulder-joints.

Arthrodia.—Gliding joint; articulations by plane surfaces, which glide upon each other. As in carpal and tarsal articulations.

Gliding movement is the most simple kind of motion that can take place in a joint, one surface gliding or moving over another without any angular or rotatory movement. It is common to all movable joints, but in some, as in the articulations of the carpus and tarsus, it is the only motion permitted. This movement is not confined to plane surfaces, but may exist between any two contiguous surfaces, of whatever form, limited by the ligaments which enclose the articulation. Gliding over a wide range, as is seen in the sliding of the patella over the femur, is called **coaptation.**

Angular movement occurs only between the long bones, and by it the angle between the two bones is increased or diminished. It may take place in four directions: forward and backward, constituting **flexion** or **bending** and **extension** or **straightening,** or inward toward and outward from the mesial line of the body, constituting **adduction** and **abduction.** Abduction of a limb is movement away from the mesial line of the body. Adduction of a limb is movement toward the mesial line of the body. In the fingers and toes the significance of the terms are different; abduction means movement of the fingers away from the middle finger or of the toes away from the second toe; adduction means movement of fingers toward the middle finger or of the toes toward the second toe. The strictly ginglymoid or hinge-joints admit of flexion and extension only. Abduction and adduction, combined with flexion and extension, are met with in the more movable joints; as in the hip-, shoulder-, and metacarpal-joint of the thumb, and partially in the wrist. When two anterior surfaces are brought nearer together, as by bending the elbow or wrist, we speak of the movement as **ventral, anterior,** or **palmar flexion.** If two posterior surfaces are brought nearer together, as by bending the knee or wrist, we speak of the movement as **posterior** or **dorsal flexion.**

At the wrist-joint the bending of the ulnar margin of the hand toward the ulnar side of the forearm is **ulnar flexion**; the bending of the radial margin of the hand toward the radial side of the forearm is **radial flexion.**

Circumduction is that limited degree of motion which takes place between the head of the bone and its articular cavity, whilst the extremity and sides of the limb are made to circumscribe a conical space, the base of which corresponds with the inferior extremity of the limb, the apex with the articular cavity; this kind of motion is best seen in the shoulder- and hip-joints.

Rotation is the movement of a bone upon an axis, which is the axis of the pivot on which the bone turns, as in the articulation between the atlas and axis, when the odontoid process serves as a pivot around which the atlas turns; or else is the axis of a pivot-like process which turns within a ring, as in the rotation of the radius upon the humerus.

Ligamentous Action of Muscles.—The movements of the different joints of a limb are combined by means of the long muscles which pass over more than one joint, and which, when relaxed and stretched to their greatest extent, act as elastic ligaments in restraining certain movements of one joint, except when combined with corresponding movements of the other, these latter movements being usually in the opposite direction. Thus the shortness of the hamstring muscles prevents complete flexion of the hip, unless the knee-joint is also flexed, so as to bring their attachments nearer together. The uses of this arrangement are threefold: 1. It co-ordinates the kinds of movement which are the most habitual and necessary, and enables them to be performed with the least expenditure of power. "Thus in the usual gesture of the arms, whether in grasping or rejecting, the shoulder and the elbow are flexed simultaneously, and simultaneously extended," in consequence of the passage of the Biceps and Triceps cubiti over both joints. 2. It enables the short muscles which pass over only one joint to act upon more than one. "Thus, if the Rectus femoris remain tonically of such length that, when stretched over the extended hip, it compels extension of the knee, then the Gluteus maximus becomes not only an extensor of the hip, but an extensor of the knee as well." 3. It provides the joints with ligaments which, while they are of very great power in resisting movements to an extent incompatible with the mechanism of the joint, at the same time spontaneously yield when necessary. "Taxed beyond its strength, a ligament will be ruptured, whereas a contracted muscle is easily relaxed; also, if neighboring joints be united by ligaments, the amount of flexion or extension of each must remain in constant proportion to that of the other; while, if the union be by muscles, the separation of the points of attachment of those muscles may vary considerably in different varieties of movement, the muscles adapting themselves tonically to the length required." The quotations are from a very interesting paper by Dr. Cleland in the *Journal of Anatomy and Physiology*, No. 1, 1866, p. 85; by whom I believe this important fact in the mechanism of joints was first clearly pointed out, though it has been independently observed afterward by other anatomists. Dr. W. W. Keen points out how important it is "that the surgeon should remember this ligamentous action of muscles in making passive motion—for instance, at the wrist after Colles's fracture. If the fingers be extended, the wrist can be flexed to a right angle. If, however, they be first flexed, as in 'making a fist,' flexion at the wrist is quickly limited to from 40 to 50 degrees in different persons, and is very painful beyond that point. Hence passive motion here should be made with the fingers extended. In the leg, when flexing the hip, the knee should be flexed." Dr. Keen further points out that "a beautiful illustration of this is seen in the perching of birds, whose toes are forced to clasp the perch by just such a passive ligamentous action so soon as they stoop. Hence they can go to sleep and not fall off the perch."

The articulations may be arranged into those of the trunk, those of the upper extremity, and those of the lower extremity.

ARTICULATIONS OF THE TRUNK.

These may be divided into the following groups, viz.:

I. Of the vertebral column.
II. Of the atlas with the axis.
III. Of the atlas with the occipital bone.
IV. Of the axis with the occipital bone.
V. Of the lower jaw.
VI. Of the ribs with the vertebræ.
VII. Of the cartilages of the ribs with the sternum and with each other.
VIII. Of the sternum.
IX. Of the vertebral column with the pelvis.
X. Of the pelvis.

I. Articulations of the Vertebral Column.

The different segments of the spine are connected together by **spinal ligaments** (*ligamenta columnæ vertebralis*), which may be divided into five sets: 1. Those connecting the **bodies** of the vertebræ. 2. Those connecting the **laminæ**. 3. Those connecting the **articular processes**. 4. Those connecting the **spinous processes**. 5. Those of the **transverse processes**.

The articulations of the bodies of the vertebræ with each other form a series of amphiarthrodial joints; those between the articular processes form a series of arthrodial joints.

1. The Ligaments of the Vertebral Bodies or Centra (Intercentral Ligaments).

Anterior Common Ligament (*anterior longitudinal ligament*).
Posterior Common Ligament (*posterior longitudinal ligament*).
Intervertebral Substance (*intervertebral disk, fibro-cartilage*).

The **Anterior Common** or **Anterior Longitudinal Ligament** (*ligamentum longitudinale anterius*) (Figs. 197, 199, and 203) is a broad and strong band of longitudinal fibres which extends along the anterior (*ventral*) surface of the bodies of the vertebræ from the axis to the sacrum. It is broader below than above, thicker in the dorsal than in the cervical or lumbar regions, and somewhat thicker opposite the front of the body of each vertebra than opposite the intervertebral substance. It is attached, above, to the body of the axis by a pointed process, where it is continuous with the anterior atlanto-axial ligament, is connected with the tendon of insertion of the Longus colli muscle, and extends down as far as the upper bone of the sacrum. It consists of dense longitudinal fibres, which are intimately adherent to the intervertebral substance and the prominent margins of the vertebræ, but less closely to the middle of the bodies. In the latter situation the fibres are exceedingly thick, and serve to fill up the concavities on their front surface and to make the anterior surface of the spine more even. This ligament is composed of several layers of fibres, which vary in length, but are closely interlaced with each other. The most superficial or longest fibres extend between four or five vertebræ. A second subjacent set extends between two or three vertebræ, whilst a third set, the shortest and deepest, extends from one vertebra to the next. At the side of the bodies the ligament consists of a few short fibres, which pass from one vertebra to the next, separated from the median portion by large oval apertures for the passage of vessels.

The **Posterior Common** or **Posterior Longitudinal Ligament** (*ligamentum longitudinale posterius*) (Figs. 195, 197, 202, and 203) is situated within the spinal canal, and extends along the posterior (*dorsal*) surface of the bodies of the vertebræ from the body of the axis above, where it is continuous with the posterior occipito-axial ligament, to the sacrum below. It can be separated from the posterior occipito-axial ligament, as is shown in Fig. 203, and may be regarded as really arising from the clivus. It is broader above than below, and thicker in the dorsal than in the cervical or lumbar regions. In the situation of the intervertebral substance and contiguous margins of the vertebræ, where the ligament is more intimately adherent, it is broad, and presents a series of dentations with intervening concave margins; but it is narrow and thick over the centre of the bodies, from which it is separated by the venæ basis vertebræ. This ligament is composed of smooth, shining, longitudinal fibres, denser and more compact than those of the anterior ligament, and formed of a superficial layer occupying the interval between three or four vertebræ, and of a deeper layer which extends between one vertebra and the next adjacent to it. It is separated from the dura mater of the spinal cord by some loose connective tissue, which is very liable to serous infiltration.

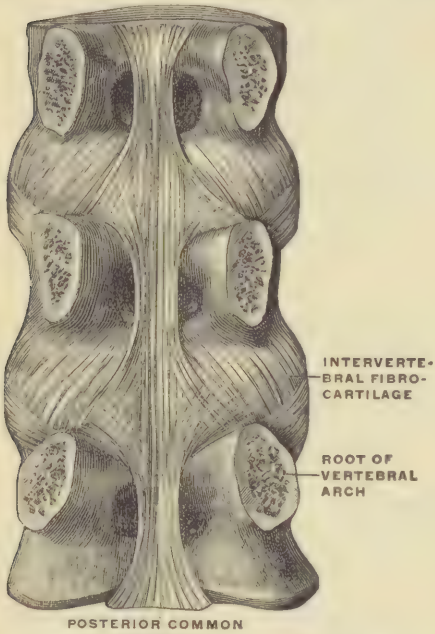


Fig. 195.—Vertebral bodies with ligaments, from behind. (Spalteholz.)

Fig. 196.—Intervertebral disk, with the adjacent vertebral bodies, from in front. (Spalteholz.)

The Intervertebral Fibro-cartilages, Disks, or Substances (*fibrocartilagines intervertebrales*) (Figs. 196 and 197).—Each fibrocartilaginous disk is of lenticular form and of composite structure. The disks are interposed between the adjacent surfaces of the bodies of the vertebræ from the axis to the sacrum, and form the chief bonds of connection between those bones. In young children intervertebral substance exists in the coccyx. These disks vary in shape, size, and thickness in different parts of the spine. In *shape* they accurately correspond with the surfaces of the bodies between which they are placed, being oval in the cervical and lumbar regions, and circular in the dorsal. Their *size* is greatest in the lumbar region. In *thickness* they vary not only in the different regions of the spine, but in different parts of the same disk: thus, they are thicker in front than behind in the cervical and lumbar regions, while they are uniformly thick in the dorsal region. The intervertebral disks form about one-fourth of the spinal column, exclusive of the first two vertebræ; they are not equally distributed, however, between the various bones; the dorsal portion of the spine

having, in proportion to its length, a much smaller quantity than in the cervical and lumbar regions, which necessarily gives to the latter parts greater pliancy and freedom of movement. The intervertebral disks are adherent, by their surfaces, to a thin layer of hyaline cartilage which covers the upper and under surfaces of the bodies of the vertebræ, and in which, in early life, the epiphysial plate develops, and by their circumference are closely connected in front to the anterior, and behind to the posterior common ligament; whilst in the dorsal region they are connected laterally, by means of the interarticular ligament, to the heads of those ribs which articulate with two vertebræ; they, consequently, form part of the articular cavities in which the heads of these bones are received.

FIG. 197.—Median section of a piece of the lumbar spinal column, right half of sections viewed from the left. (Spalteholz.)

Structure of the Intervertebral Substance.—The outer portion of the intervertebral substance is composed of many layers of fibrous connective tissue. This enveloping portion is called the **annulus fibrosus**. The central portion of the disk is composed of soft, pulpy, highly elastic fibro-cartilage, containing some bands of connective tissue. It is called the **nucleus pulposus**, is of a yellowish color, and rises up considerably above the surrounding level when the disk is divided horizontally. This pulpy substance, which is especially well developed in the lumbar region, is the remains of the chorda dorsalis, and, according to Luschka, contains a small synovial cavity in its centre. The outer layers of the disk are arranged concentrically one within the other, the outermost consisting of ordinary fibrous tissue, but the others and more numerous consisting of white fibro-cartilage. These plates are not quite vertical in their direction, those near the circumference being curved outward and closely approximated; whilst those nearest the centre curve in the opposite direction, and are somewhat more widely separated. The fibres of which each plate is composed are directed, for the most part, obliquely from above downward, the fibres of adjacent plates passing in opposite directions and varying in every layer; so that the fibres of one layer are directed across those of another, like the limbs of the letter X. This laminar arrangement belongs to about the outer half of each disk. The pulpy substance presents no concentric arrangement, and consists of a fine fibrous matrix, containing angular cells, united to form a

reticular structure. J. Bland Sutton[1] calls attention to the fact that in the human fœtus a transverse ligamentous band crosses the dorsal aspect of the intervertebral disk and is continuous with the interosseous ligaments of the heads of the ribs; and also that a fœtal ligamentous band exists in the ventral surface of the intervertebral disk which, after development, becomes the middle fasciculus of the stellate ligament. These bands are named by Sutton the **posterior conjugal ligaments** and the **anterior conjugal ligaments.**

Interneural Articulations include the ligaments of the **laminæ; articular processes, spinous processes,** and **transverse processes.**

2. Ligaments connecting the Laminæ.

Ligamenta Subflava.

The **Ligamenta Subflava** (*ligamenta flava, ligamenta intercruralia*) (Figs. 197 and 198) are interposed between the laminæ of the vertebræ, from the axis to the sacrum. They are most distinct when seen from the interior of the spinal canal; when viewed from the outer surface they appear short, being overlapped by the laminæ. Each ligamentum subflavum consists of two lateral portions, which commence on each side at the root of either articular process, and pass backward to the point where the laminæ converge to form the spinous process, where their margins are in contact and to a certain extent united; slight intervals being left for the passage of small vessels. These ligaments consist of yellow elastic tissue, the fibres of which, almost perpendicular in direction, are attached to the anterior surface of the laminæ above, some distance from its inferior margin, and to the posterior surface, as well as to the margin of the lamina below. In the cervical region they are thin in texture, but very broad and long; they become thicker in the dorsal region, and in the lumbar acquire very considerable thickness. Their highly elastic property serves to preserve the upright posture and to assist in resuming it after the spine has been flexed. These ligaments do not exist between the occiput and atlas or between the atlas and axis.

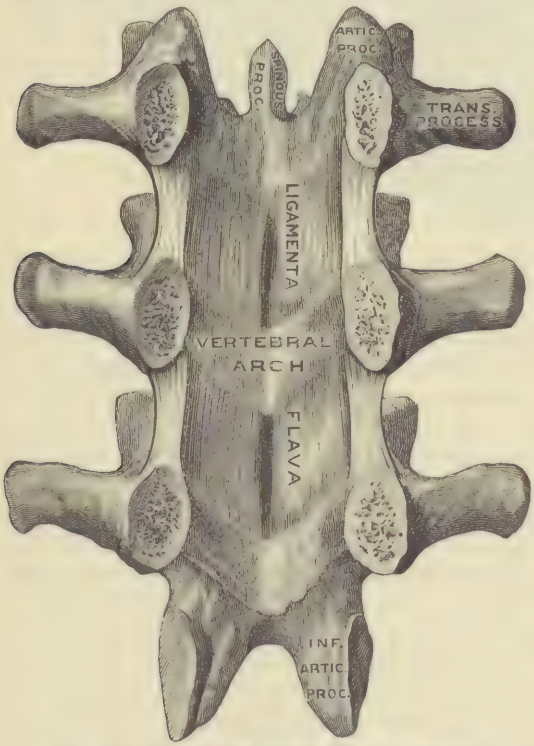


Fig. 198. Vertebral arches with ligamenta flava. (Spalteholz.)

3. Ligaments connecting the Articular Processes.

Capsular Ligaments.

The **Capsular Ligaments** (*capsulæ articulares*) (Fig. 198) are thin and loose ligamentous sacs, attached to the contiguous margins of the articulating processes of each vertebra through the greater part of their circumference, and completed internally by the ligamenta

[1] J. Bland Sutton. Ligaments: Their Nature and Morphology.

subflava. They are longer and looser in the cervical than in the dorsal or lumbar regions. The capsular ligaments are lined on their inner surface by synovial membrane.

4. Ligaments connecting the Spinous Processes.

Supraspinous Ligament. Interspinous Ligaments.

The **Supraspinous Ligament** (*ligamentum supraspinale*) (Fig. 197) is a strong fibrous cord, which connects together the apices of the spinous processes from the seventh cervical to the spinous processes of the sacrum. It is thicker and broader in the lumbar than in the dorsal region, and intimately blended, in both situations, with the neighboring aponeurosis. The most superficial fibres of this ligament connects three or four vertebræ; those deeper-seated pass between two or three vertebræ; whilst the deepest connect the contiguous extremities of neighboring vertebræ. It is continued upward to the external occipital protuberance as the **ligamentum nuchæ**, which, in the human subject, is thin and forms merely an intermuscular septum.

The **Interspinous Ligaments** (*ligamenta interspinalia*) (Fig. 197), thin and membranous, are interposed between the spinous processes. Each ligament extends from the root to the summit of each spinous process and connects together their adjacent margins. They meet the ligamenta subflava in front and the supraspinous ligament behind. They are narrow and elongated in the dorsal region; broader, quadrilateral in form, and thicker in the lumbar region; and only slightly developed in the neck.

5. Ligaments connecting the Transverse Processes.

Intertransverse Ligaments.

The **Intertransverse Ligaments** (*ligamenta intertransversaria*) (Fig. 210) consist of bundles of fibres interposed between the transverse processes. In the cervical region they consist of a few irregular, scattered fibres; in the dorsal, they are rounded cords intimately connected with the deep muscles of the back; in the lumbar region they are thin and membranous.

Actions.—The movements permitted in the spinal column are, *flexion*, *extension*, *lateral movement*, *circumduction*, and *rotation*.

In **flexion** (*forward flexion*), or movement of the spine forward, the anterior common ligament is relaxed, and the intervertebral substances are compressed in front, while the posterior common ligament, the ligamenta subflava, and the inter- and supra-spinous ligaments are stretched, as well as the posterior fibres of the intervertebral disks. The interspaces between the laminæ are widened, and the inferior articular processes of the vertebræ above glide upward upon the articular processes of the vertebræ below. Flexion is the most extensive of all the movements of the spine.

In **extension** (*backward flexion*), or movement of the spine backward, an exactly opposite disposition of the parts takes place. This movement is not extensive, being limited by the anterior common ligament and by the approximation of the spinous processes.

Flexion and extension are free in the lower part of the lumbar region between the third and fourth and fourth and fifth lumbar vertebræ; above the third they are much diminished, and reach their minimum in the middle and upper part of the back. They increase again in the neck, the capability of motion backward from the upright position being in this region greater than that of the motion forward, whereas in the lumbar region the reverse is the case.

In **lateral flexion**, the sides of the intervertebral disks are compressed, the extent of motion being limited by the resistance offered by the surrounding liga-

ments and by the approximation of the transverse processes. This movement may take place in any part of the spine, but is most free in the neck and loins.

Circumduction is very limited, and is produced merely by a succession of the preceding movements.

Rotation is produced by the twisting of the intervertebral substances; this, although only slight between any two vertebræ, produces a considerable extent of movement when it takes place in the whole length of the spine, the front of the upper part of the column being turned to one or the other side. This movement takes place only to a slight extent in the neck, but is freer in the upper part of the dorsal region, and is altogether absent in the lumbar region.

It is thus seen that the *cervical region* enjoys the greatest extent of each variety of movement, flexion and extension especially being very free. In the *dorsal region* the three movements of flexion, extension, and circumduction are permitted only to a slight extent, while rotation is very free in the upper part and ceases below. In the lumbar region there is free flexion, extension, and lateral movement, but no rotation.

As Sir George Humphry has pointed out, the movements permitted are mainly due to the shape and position of the articulating processes. In the loins the inferior articulating processes are turned outward and are embraced by the superior; this renders rotation in this region of the spine impossible, while there is nothing to prevent a sliding upward and downward of the surfaces on each other, so as to allow of flexion and extension. In the dorsal region, on the other hand, the articulating processes, by their direction and mutual adaptation, especially at the upper part of the series, permit of rotation, but prevent extension and flexion, while in the cervical region the greater obliquity and lateral slant of the articular processes allow not only flexion and extension, but also rotation.

The principal muscles which produce *flexion* are the Sterno-mastoid, Rectus capitis anticus major, and Longus colli; the Scaleni; the abdominal muscles and the Psoas magnus. *Extension* is produced by the fourth layer of the muscles of the back, assisted in the neck by the Splenius, Semispinalis dorsi et colli, and the Multifidus spinæ. *Lateral* motion is produced by the fourth layer of the muscles of the back, by the Splenius and the Scaleni, the muscles of one side only acting; and *rotation* by the action of the following muscles of one side only—viz. the Sterno-mastoid, the Rectus capitis anticus major, the Scaleni, the Multifidus spinæ, the Complexus, and the abdominal muscles.

II. Articulation of the Atlas with the Axis (Articulatio Atlantoepistrophica).

The articulation of the atlas with the axis is of a complicated nature, comprising no fewer than four distinct joints. There is a pivot articulation between the odontoid process of the axis and the ring formed between the anterior arch of the atlas and the transverse ligament (see Fig. 201). Here there are two joints: one in front between the posterior surface of the anterior arch of the atlas and the front of the odontoid process, the **atlanto-odontoid joint of Cruveilhier**; the other between the anterior surface of the transverse ligament and the back of the process, the **syndesmo-odontoid joint**. Between the articular processes of the two bones there is a double arthrodia or gliding joint. The ligaments which connect these bones are the

Anterior Atlanto-axial.	Transverse.
Posterior Atlanto-axial.	Two Capsular.

The **Anterior Atlanto-axial** or the **Anterior Atlo-axoid Ligament** (Figs. 199 and 203) is a strong, membranous layer, attached, above, to the lower border of the anterior arch of the atlas; below, to the base of the odontoid process and to the front of

the body of the axis. It is strengthened in the middle line by a rounded cord, which is attached, above, to the tubercle on the anterior arch of the atlas, and below to the body of the axis, being a continuation upward of the anterior common ligament of the spine. Some anatomists regard this ligament as being a part of the anterior common ligament. The ligament is in relation, in front, with the Recti antici majores.

The **Posterior Atlanto-axial** or the **Posterior Atlo-axoid Ligament** (Figs. 200 and 203) is a broad and thin membranous layer, attached, above, to the lower border of the posterior arch of the atlas; below, to the upper edge of the laminæ of the axis. This ligament supplies the place of the ligamenta subflava, and is in relation, behind, with the Inferior oblique muscles.

The **Transverse Ligament of the Atlas**[1] (*ligamentum transversum atlantis*) (Figs. 201, 202, and 203) is a thick, strong band, which arches across the ring of the atlas, and serves to retain the odontoid process in firm connection with its anterior arch. This ligament is flattened from before backward, broader and thicker in the middle than at either extremity, and firmly attached on each side to a small tubercle on the inner surface of the lateral mass of the atlas. As it crosses the odontoid process, a small fasciculus is derived from its upper, and another from its lower, border; the former passing upward, to be inserted into the anterior sur-

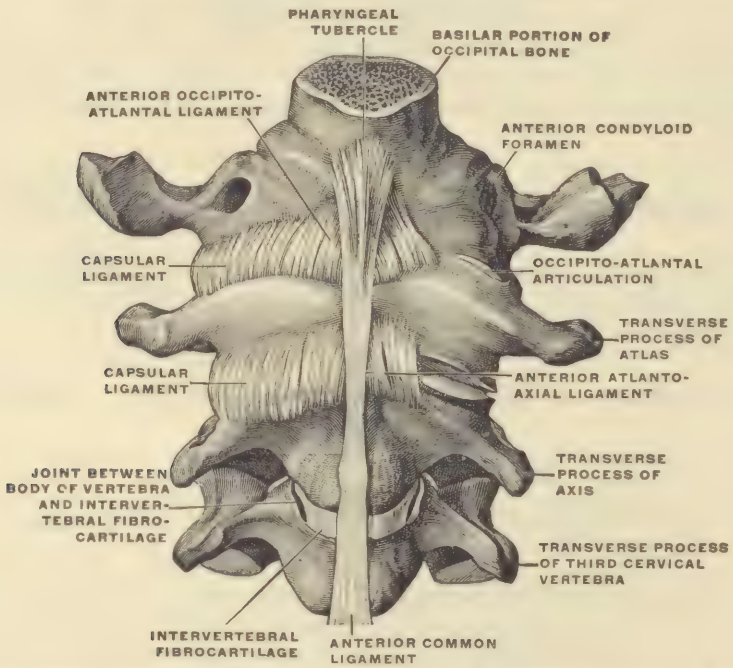


FIG. 199.—Occipital bone and first three cervical vertebræ with ligaments, from in front. (Spalteholz.)

face of the foramen magnum of the occipital bone; the latter, downward, to be attached to the posterior surface of the body of the axis; hence, the whole ligament has received the name of **cruciform ligament** (*ligamentum cruciatum atlantis*). A synovial surface is interposed between the odontoid process and the transverse ligament, and one is placed between the anterior surface of the odontoid process and the anterior arch of the atlas. The transverse ligament divides the

[1] It has been found necessary to describe the transverse ligament with those of the atlas and axis; but the student must remember that it is really a portion of the mechanism by which the movements of the head on the spine are regulated; so that the connections between the atlas and axis ought always to be studied together with those between the latter bones and the skull.

ring of the atlas into two unequal parts: of these, the posterior and larger serves for the transmission of the cord and its membranes and the spinal accessory nerves; the anterior and smaller contains the odontoid process. Since the space between the anterior arch of the atlas and the transverse ligament is smaller at the lower part than the upper (because the transverse ligament embraces tightly the narrow neck of the odontoid process), this process is retained in firm connection with the atlas after all the other ligaments have been divided.

The **Capsular Ligaments** (*capsulæ articulares*) (Figs. 199, 200, and 202) are two thin and loose capsules, connecting the lateral masses of the atlas with the superior articular surfaces of the axis, the fibres being strengthened at the posterior and inner part of each articulation by an **accessory ligament**, which is attached below to the body of the axis near the base of the odontoid process.

Synovial Membranes (Fig. 201).—There are *four* synovial membranes in this articulation: one lining the inner surface of each of the capsular ligaments; one between the anterior surface of the odontoid process and the anterior arch of the atlas, the **atlanto-odontoid joint**; and one between the posterior surface of the odontoid process and the transverse ligament, the **syndesmo-odontoid joint.** The latter often communicates with those between the condyles of the occipital bone and the articular surfaces of the atlas.

Actions.—This joint allows the rotation of the atlas (and, with it, of the cranium) upon the axis, the extent of rotation being limited by the odontoid ligaments.

The principal muscles by which this action is produced are the Sterno-mastoid and Complexus of one side, acting with the Rectus capitis anticus major, Splenius, Trachelo-mastoid, Rectus capitis posticus major, and Inferior oblique of the other side.

ARTICULATIONS OF THE SPINE WITH THE CRANIUM.

The ligaments connecting the spine with the cranium may be divided into two sets—those connecting the occipital bone with the atlas, and those connecting the occipital bone with the axis.

III. Articulation of the Atlas with the Occipital Bone (Articulatio Atlantooccipitalis).

This articulation is a double condyloid joint. Its ligaments are the

Anterior Occipito-atlantal. Posterior Occipito-atlantal.
Two Capsular.

The **Anterior Occipito-atlantal Ligament** or **Membrane** (*membrana atlantooccipitalis anterior, anterior occipito-atloid ligament*) (Figs. 199 and 203) is a broad membranous layer, composed of densely woven fibres, which passes between the anterior margin of the foramen magnum above, and the whole length of the upper border of the anterior arch of the atlas below. Laterally, it is continuous with the capsular ligaments. In the middle line in front it is strengthened by a strong, narrow, rounded cord, which is attached, above, to the basilar process of the occiput, and, below, to the tubercle on the anterior arch of the atlas, and which is a continuation of the anterior common ligament. This ligament is in relation, in front, with the Recti antici minores; behind, with the odontoid ligaments.

The **Posterior Occipito-atlantal Ligament** or **Membrane** (*membrana atlantooccipitalis posterior, posterior occipito-atloid ligament*) (Figs. 200 and 203) is a very broad but thin membranous lamina intimately blended with the dura mater. It is connected, above, to the posterior margin of the foramen magnum; below, to the upper border

of the posterior arch of the atlas. This ligament is incomplete at each side, and forms, with the superior intervertebral notch, an opening for the passage of the vertebral artery and suboccipital nerve. The fibrous band which arches over the artery and nerve sometimes becomes ossified. The ligaments are in relation, behind, with the Recti postici minores and Obliqui superiores; in front, with the dura mater of the spinal canal, to which they are intimately adherent.

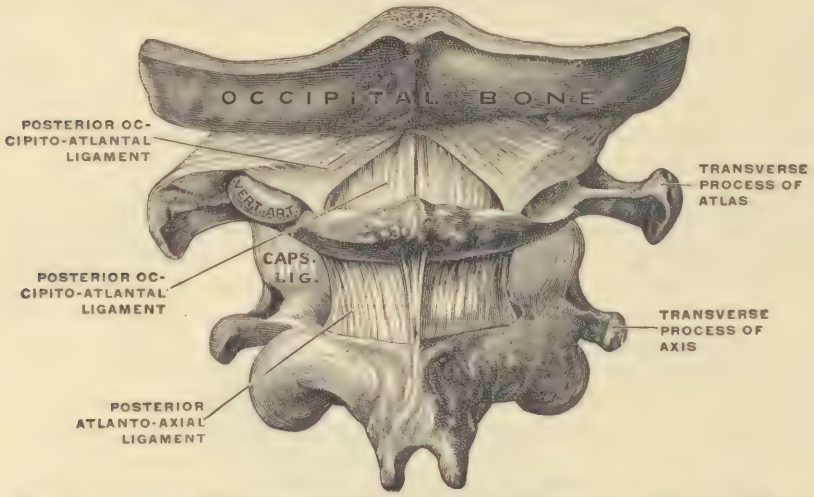


FIG. 200.—Occipital bone, first and second cervical vertebræ with ligaments from behind. (Spalteholz.)

The **Capsular Ligaments** (*capsulæ articulares*) (Fig. 202) surround the condyles of the occipital bone, and connect them with the articular processes of the atlas; they consist of thin and loose capsules, which enclose the synovial membranes of the articulations.

Synovial Membranes.—There are *two* synovial membranes in this articulation, one lining the inner surface of each of the capsular ligaments. These occasionally communicate with that between the posterior surface of the odontoid process and the transverse ligament.

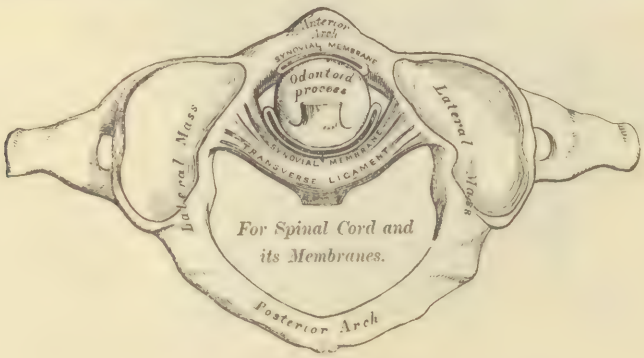


FIG. 201.—Articulation between odontoid process and atlas.

Actions.—The movements permitted in this joint are flexion and extension, which give rise to the ordinary forward and backward nodding of the head. Slight lateral motion to one or the other side may also take place. When either of these actions is carried beyond a slight extent, the whole of the cervical portion of the spine assists in its production. *Flexion* is mainly produced by the action of the Rectus capitis anticus major et minor and the Sterno-mastoid muscles; *extension* by the

Rectus capitis posticus major et minor, the Superior oblique, the Complexus, Splenius, and upper fibres of the Trapezius. The Recti laterales are concerned in the lateral movement, assisted by the Trapezius, Splenius, Complexus, and the Sternomastoid of the same side, all acting together. According to Cruveilhier, there is a slight motion of rotation in this joint.

IV. Articulation of the Axis with the Occipital Bone.

The ligaments of this articulation are the

Occipito-axial. Three Odontoid.

To expose these ligaments the spinal canal should be laid open by removing the posterior arch of the atlas, the laminæ and spinal process of the axis, and the portion of the occipital bone behind the foramen magnum, as seen in Fig. 192.

The **Posterior Occipito-axial Ligament** (*posterior occipito-axoid ligament, membrana tectoria, apparatus ligamentosus colli*) (Figs. 202 and 203) is situated within the spinal canal. It is a broad, strong band, which covers the odontoid process and its ligaments, and appears to be a prolongation upward of or a membrane due to fusion with the posterior common ligament of the spine. It is attached, below, to the posterior surface of the body of the axis, and, becoming expanded as it ascends, is inserted into the basilar groove of the occipital bone, in front of the foramen magnum, where it becomes blended with the dura mater of the skull.

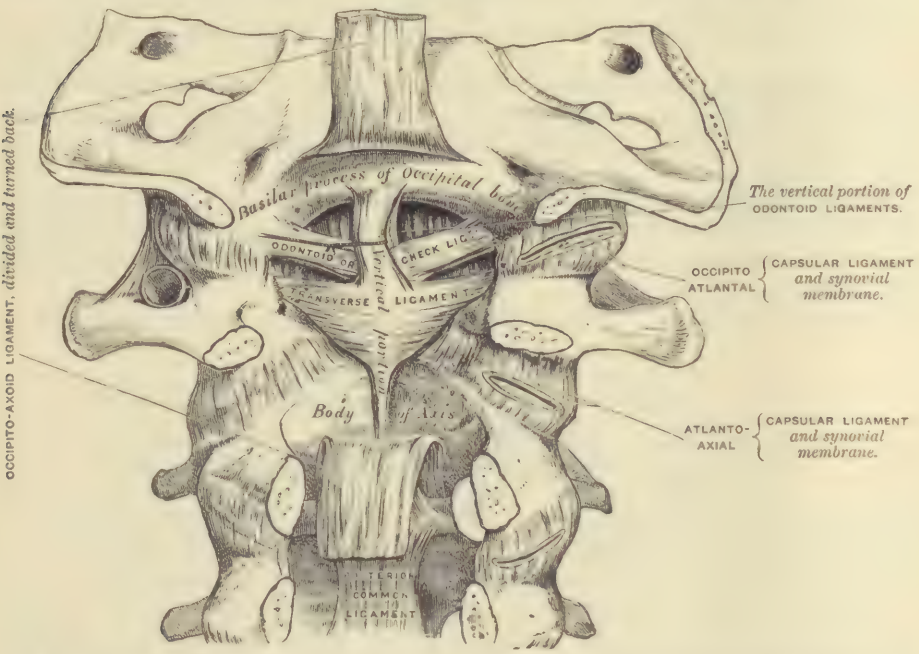


Fig. 202.—Occipito-axial and atlanto-axial ligaments. Posterior view, obtained by removing the arches of the vertebræ and the posterior part of the skull.

Relations.—By its anterior surface with the transverse ligament; by its posterior surface with the posterior common ligament.

The **Lateral Odontoid** or **Check Ligaments** (*ligamenta alaria*) (Figs. 202 and 203) are strong, rounded, fibrous cords, which arise one on either side of the upper part of the odontoid process, and, passing obliquely upward and outward, are inserted into the rough depressions on the inner side of the condyles of the

occipital bone. In the triangular interval left between these ligaments another strong fibrous cord, **ligamentum suspensorium**, or **middle odontoid ligament** (*ligamentum apicis dentis*), may be seen, which passes almost perpendicularly from the apex of the odontoid process to the anterior margin of the foramen magnum, being intimately blended with the deep portion of the anterior occipito-atlantal ligament and upper fasciculus of the transverse ligament of the atlas.

Actions.—The odontoid ligaments serve to limit the extent to which rotation of the cranium may be carried; hence, they have received the name of **check ligaments.**

In addition to these ligaments, which connect the atlas and axis to the skull, the **ligamentum nuchæ** must be regarded as one of the ligaments by which the spine is connected with the cranium. It is described on page 273.

Surgical Anatomy.—The ligaments which unite the component parts of the vertebræ together are so strong, and these bones are so interlocked by the arrangement of their articulating processes, that *dislocation* is very uncommon, and, indeed, unless accompanied by *fracture*, seldom occurs, except in the upper part of the neck. Dislocation of the occiput from the atlas

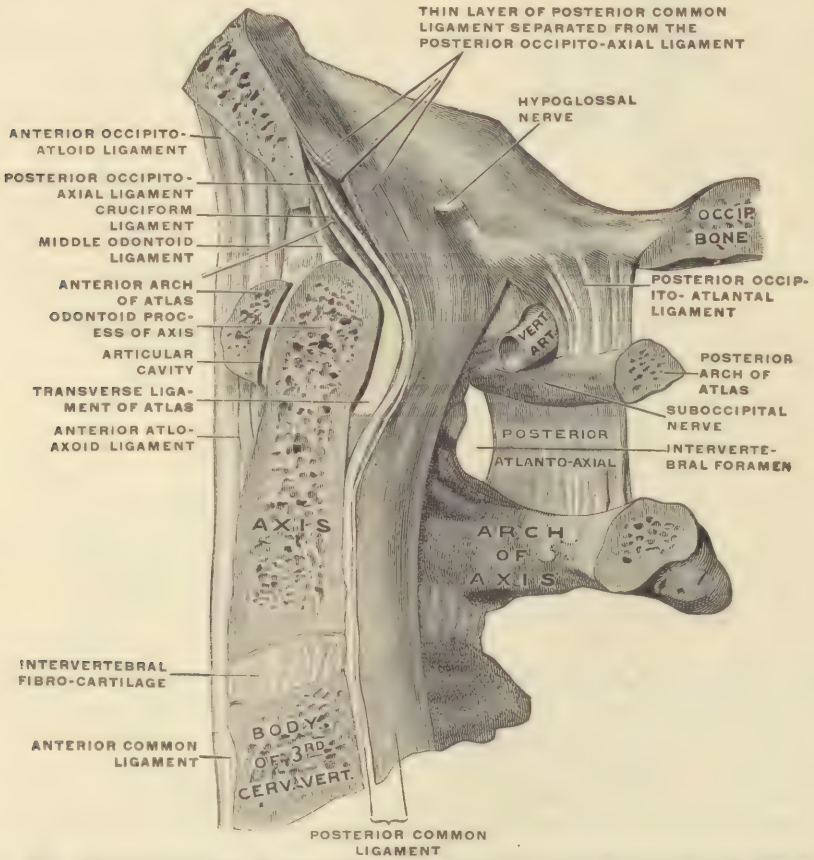


FIG. 203.—Median section through the occipital bone and first three cervical vertebræ with ligaments. (Spalteholz.)

has only been recorded in one or two cases; but dislocation of the atlas from the axis, with rupture of the transverse ligament, is much more common: it is the mode in which death is produced in many cases of execution by hanging. Occipito-atloid dislocation is certainly fatal. Recoveries are on record after atlo-axoid dislocation. Immediate death occurs if the transverse ligament is torn or the odontoid process is broken. In the lower part of the neck—that is, below the third cervical vertebra—dislocation unattended by fracture occasionally takes place.

V. Articulation of the Lower Jaw, or the Temporo-mandibular Articulation (Articulatio Mandibularis).

This is a ginglymo-arthrodial joint: the parts entering into its formation on each side are, *above*, the anterior part of the glenoid cavity of the temporal bone and the eminentia articularis; and, *below*, the condyle of the lower jaw. The ligaments are the following:

External Lateral.	Stylo-mandibular.
Internal Lateral.	Capsular.
Interarticular Fibro-cartilage.	

The **External Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum temporomandibulare*) (Fig. 204) is a short, thin, and narrow fasciculus, attached, above, to the outer surface of the zygoma and to the tubercle on its lower border; below, to the outer surface and posterior border of the neck of the lower jaw. It is broader above than below; its fibres are

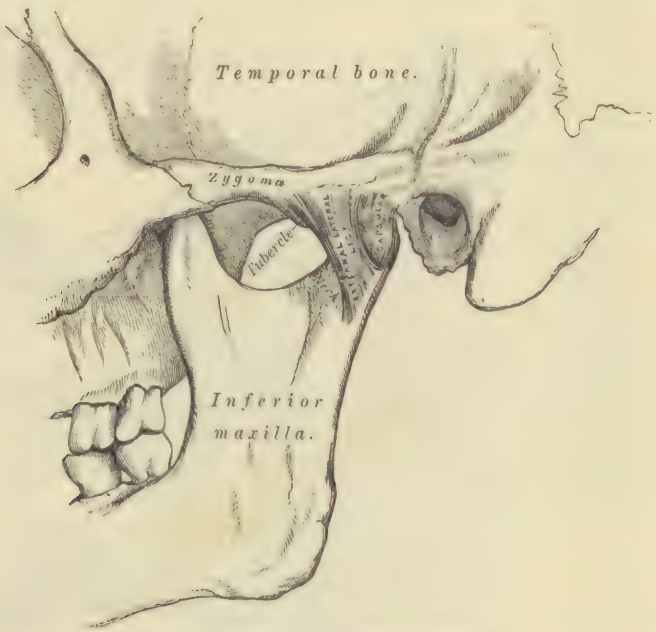


Fig. 204.—Temporo-mandibular articulation.

placed parallel with one another, and directed obliquely downward and backward. Externally, it is covered by the parotid gland and by the integument. Internally it is in relation with the capsular ligament, of which it is an accessory band, and from which it is not separable.

The **Internal Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum sphenomandibulare*) (Fig. 205) is a flat, thin band which is attached above to the spinous process of the sphenoid bone, and, becoming broader as it descends, is inserted into the margin of the mandibular or dental foramen and the portion of bone, the **lingula**, which overhangs the foramen in front. Its outer surface is in relation, above, with the External pterygoid muscle; lower down it is separated from the neck of the condyle by the internal maxillary artery; and still more inferiorly, the inferior dental vessels and nerve separate it from the ramus of the jaw. The inner surface is in relation with the Internal pterygoid. It is really the fibrous covering of a part of Meckel's cartilage.

The **Stylo-mandibular** or **Stylo-maxillary Ligament** (*ligamentum stylomandibulare*) (Fig. 205) is a specialized band of the cervical fascia, which extends from near the apex of the styloid process of the temporal bone to the angle and posterior border of the ramus of the lower jaw, between the Masseter and Internal pterygoid muscles. This ligament separates the parotid from the submaxillary gland, and has attached to its inner side part of the fibres of origin of the Stylo-glossus muscle. Although usually classed among the ligaments of the jaw, it can be considered only as an accessory to the articulation.

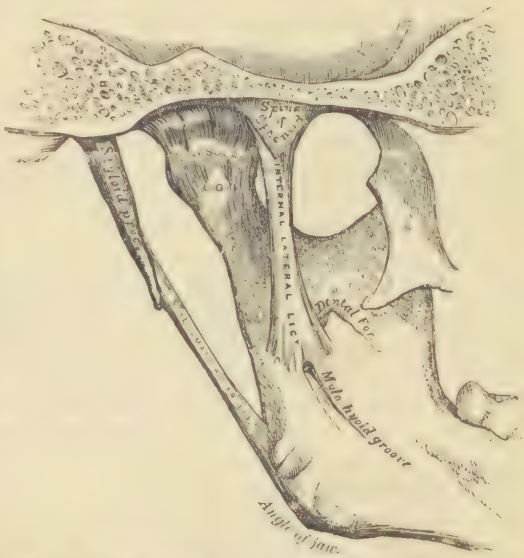


FIG. 205.—Temporo-mandibular articulation. Internal view

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) (Figs. 204 and 205) forms a thin and loose capsule, passing from the circumference of the glenoid cavity and the articular surface immediately in front to the upper margin of the articular disk, and from the lower margin of the articular disk to the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw. It consists of very thin fibres, and is complete. It forms two joint cavities, distinct from each other, and separated by the articular disk. So thin is it that it is hardly to be considered as a distinct ligament; it is thickest at the back part, and thinnest on the inner side of the articulation.[1]

The **Interarticular Fibro-cartilage** or **Meniscus** (*discus articularis*) (Fig. 206) is a thin plate of an oval form, placed horizontally between the condyle of the jaw and the glenoid cavity. Its upper surface is concavo-convex from before backward, and a little convex transversely, to accommodate itself to the form of the glenoid cavity. Its under surface, where it is in contact with the condyle, is concave. Its circumference is connected to the capsular ligament, and in front to the tendon of the External pterygoid muscle. It is thicker at its circumference, especially behind, than at its centre. The fibres of which it is composed have a concentric arrangement, more apparent at the circumference than at the centre. Its surfaces are smooth. It divides the joint into two cavities, each of which is furnished with a separate synovial membrane from the capsular ligament.

FIG. 206.—Vertical section of temporo-mandibular articulation.

Synovial Membranes (Fig. 206).—The synovial membranes, *two* in number, are placed, one above, and the other below, the fibro-cartilage. The *upper one*, the larger and looser of the two, is continued from the margin of the cartilage covering

[1] Sir G. Humphry describes the internal portion of the capsular ligament separately as the short internal lateral ligament: and it certainly seems as deserving of a separate description as is the external lateral ligament.

the glenoid cavity and eminentia articularis on to the upper surface of the fibro-cartilage. The *lower one* passes from the under surface of the fibro-cartilage to the neck of the condyle of the jaw, being prolonged downward a little farther behind than in front. The interarticular cartilage is sometimes perforated in its centre; the two synovial sacs then communicate with each other.

The **nerves** of this joint are derived from the auriculo-temporal and masseteric branches of the inferior maxillary. The **arteries** are derived from the temporal branch of the external carotid.

Actions.—The movements possible in this articulation are very extensive. Thus, the jaw may be depressed or elevated, or it may be carried forward or backward. It must be borne in mind that there are two distinct joints in this articulation—that is to say, one between the condyle of the jaw and the interarticular fibro-cartilage, and another between the fibro-cartilage and the glenoid fossa; when the jaw is depressed, as in opening the mouth, the movements which take place in these two joints are not the same. In the lower compartment, that between the condyle and the fibro-cartilage, the movement is of a ginglymoid or hinge-like character, the condyle rotating on a transverse axis on the fibro-cartilage; while in the upper compartment the movement is of a gliding character, the fibro-cartilage, together with the condyle, gliding forward on to the eminentia articularis. These two movements take place simultaneously—the condyle and fibro-cartilage move forward on the eminence, and at the same time the condyle revolves on the fibro-cartilage. In the opposite movement of shutting the mouth the reverse action takes place; the fibro-cartilage glides back, carrying the condyle with it, and this at the same time revolves back to its former position. When the jaw is carried horizontally forward, as in protruding the lower incisors in front of the upper, the movement takes place principally in the upper compartment of the joint: the fibro-cartilage, carrying with it the condyle, glides forward on the glenoid fossa. This is because this movement is mainly effected by the External pterygoid muscles, which are inserted into both condyle and interarticular fibro-cartilage. The grinding or chewing movement is produced by the alternate movement of one condyle, with its fibro-cartilage, forward and backward, while the other condyle moves simultaneously in the opposite direction; at the same time the condyle undergoes a vertical rotation on its own axis on the fibro-cartilage in the lower compartment. One condyle advances and rotates, the other condyle recedes and rotates, in alternate succession.

The lower jaw is *depressed* by its own weight, assisted by the Platysma, the Digastric, the Mylo-hyoid, and the Genio-hyoid muscles. It is *elevated* by the anterior part of the Temporal, Masseter, and Internal pterygoid. It is drawn *forward* by the simultaneous action of the External pterygoid and the superficial fibres of the Masseter; and it is drawn *backward* by the deep fibres of the Masseter and the posterior fibres of the Temporal muscle. The grinding movement is caused by the alternate action of the two External pterygoids.

Surface Form.—The temporo-mandibular articulation is quite superficial, situated below the base of the zygoma, in front of the tragus and external auditory meatus, and behind the posterior border of the upper part of the Masseter muscle. Its exact position can be at once ascertained by feeling for the condyle of the jaw, the working of which can be distinctly felt in the movements of the lower jaw in opening and shutting the mouth. When the mouth is opened wide, the condyle advances out of the glenoid fossa on to the eminentia articularis, and a depression is felt in the situation of the joint.

Surgical Anatomy.—Genuine *dislocation* of the lower jaw is always forward. Croker, King, and Theim, however, have reported posterior displacement. Dislocation is caused by violence or muscular action. When the mouth is open, the condyle is situated on the eminentia articularis, and any sudden violence, or even a sudden muscular spasm, as during a convulsive yawn, may displace the condyle forward into the zygomatic fossa. The displacement may be unilateral or bilateral, according as one or both of the condyles are displaced. The latter of

the two is the more common. The interarticular fibro-cartilage adheres to the condyle till it passes over the eminentia articularis, but at this point remains behind.

Sir Astley Cooper described a condition which he termed "*subluxation*." It occurs principally in delicate women, and is believed by some to be due to the relaxation of the ligaments, permitting too free movement of the bone. Others believe it is due to displacement of the interarticular fibro-cartilage. Still others attribute the symptoms to gouty or rheumatic changes in the joint. In close relation to the condyle of the jaw is the external auditory meatus and the tympanum; any force, therefore, applied to the bone is liable to be attended with damage to these parts, or inflammation in the joint may extend to the ear, or on the other hand inflammation of the middle ear may involve the articulation and cause its destruction, thus leading to ankylosis of the joint. In children, arthritis of this joint may follow the exanthemata, and in adults it occurs as the result of some constitutional conditions, as rheumatism or gout. The temporo-mandibular joint is also occasionally the seat of *osteo-arthritis*, leading to great suffering during efforts of mastication. A peculiar affection sometimes attacks the neck and condyle of the lower jaw, consisting in *hypertrophy* and elongation of these parts and consequent protrusion of the chin to the opposite side.

VI. Articulations of the Ribs with the Vertebræ or the Costo-vertebral Articulations (Articulationes Costovertebrales).

The articulations of the ribs with the vertebral column may be divided into two sets: 1. Those which connect the heads of the ribs with the bodies of the vertebræ; **costo-central.** 2. Those which connect the necks and tubercles of the ribs with the transverse processes; **costo-transverse.**

1. Articulations between the Heads of the Ribs and the Bodies of the Vertebræ or the Costo-central Articulations (Articulationes Capitulorum) (Figs. 207 and 208).

These constitute a series of arthrodial joints, formed by the articulation of the heads of the ribs with the cavities on the contiguous margins of the bodies of the

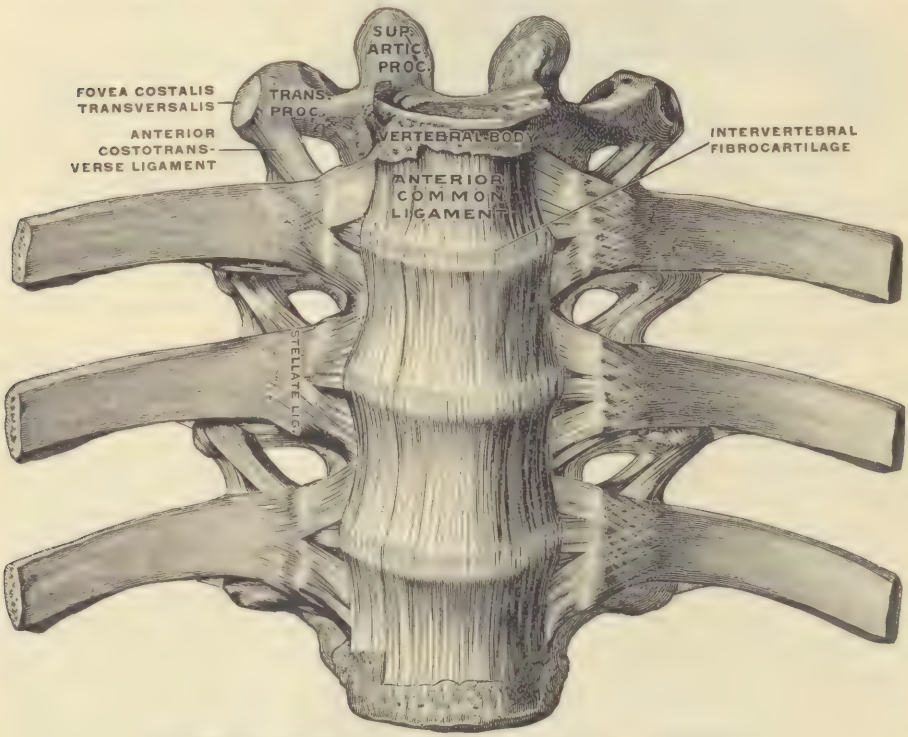


Fig. 207.—Spinal column with ligament, from in front. (Spalteholz.)

dorsal vertebræ and the intervertebral substance between them, except in the case of the first, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth ribs, where the cavity is formed by a single vertebra. The bones are connected by the following ligaments:

Anterior Costo-vertebral or Stellate.
Capsular. Interarticular.

The **Anterior Costo-vertebral** or **Stellate Ligament** (*ligamentum capituli costæ radiatum*) (Figs. 207 and 210) connects the anterior part of the head of each rib with the sides of the bodies of two vertebræ and the intervertebral disk between them. It consists of three flat bundles of ligamentous fibres, which are attached to the anterior part of the head of the rib, just beyond the articular surface. The superior fibres pass upward to be connected with the body of the vertebra above; the inferior one descends to the body of the vertebra below; and the middle one, the smallest and least distinct, passes horizontally inward, to be attached to the intervertebral substance.

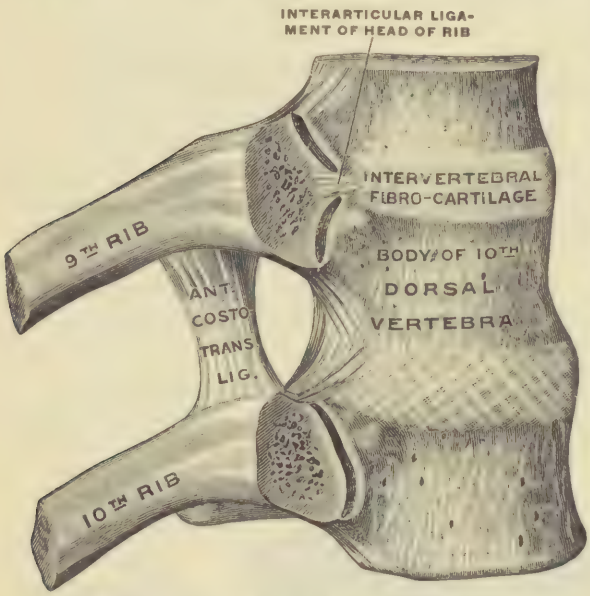


FIG. 208.—Ribs and corresponding vertebral bodies with their ligaments, viewed from the right. (Spalteholz.)

Relations.—In **front**, with the thoracic ganglia of the sympathetic, the pleura, and, on the right side, with the vena azygos major; **behind**, with the interarticular ligament and synovial membranes.

On the first rib, which articulates with a single vertebra, this ligament does not present a distinct division into three fasciculi; its fibres, however, radiate, and are attached to the body of the last cervical vertebra, as well as to the body of the vertebra with which the rib articulates. In the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth ribs also, which likewise articulate with a single vertebra, the division does not exist; but the fibres of the ligament in each case radiate and are connected with the vertebra above, as well as that with which the ribs articulate.

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) is a thin and loose ligamentous bag, which surrounds the joint between the head of the rib and the articular cavity formed by the intervertebral disk and the adjacent vertebra. It is very thin, firmly connected with the anterior ligament, and most distinct at the upper and lower parts of the articulation. Behind, some of its fibres pass through the intervertebral foramen to the back of the intervertebral disk. This is the analogue of the **ligamentum conjugale** of some mammals, which unites the heads of opposite ribs across the back of the intervertebral disk.

The **Interarticular Ligament** (*ligamentum capituli costæ interarticulare*) (Figs. 208 and 209) is situated in the interior of the joint. It consists of a short band of fibres, flattened from above downward, attached by one extremity to the sharp crest which separates the two articular facets on the head of the rib, and by the other to the intervertebral disk. It divides the joint into two cavities, which have no communication with each other. In the first, tenth, eleventh, and

twelfth ribs the interarticular ligament does not exist; consequently there is but one synovial membrane.

Synovial Membranes (Figs. 208 and 209).—There are *two* synovial membranes in each of the articulations in which there is an interarticular ligament, one on each side of this structure.

2. Articulations of the Necks and Tubercles of the Ribs with the Transverse Processes or the Costo-transverse Articulations (Articulationes Costotransversariæ) (Fig. 209).

The articular portion of the tubercle of the rib and adjacent transverse process form an arthrodial joint.

In the *eleventh* and *twelfth ribs* this articulation is wanting.

The ligaments connecting these parts are the

Anterior Superior Costo-transverse.	Posterior Costo-transverse
Middle Costo-transverse (Interosseous).	Capsular.

The **Anterior Superior** or **Long Costo-transverse Ligament** (*ligamentum costo-transversarium anterius*) (Figs. 207, 208, 209, and 210) consists of two sets of fibres: the one (**anterior**) is attached below to the sharp crest on the upper border

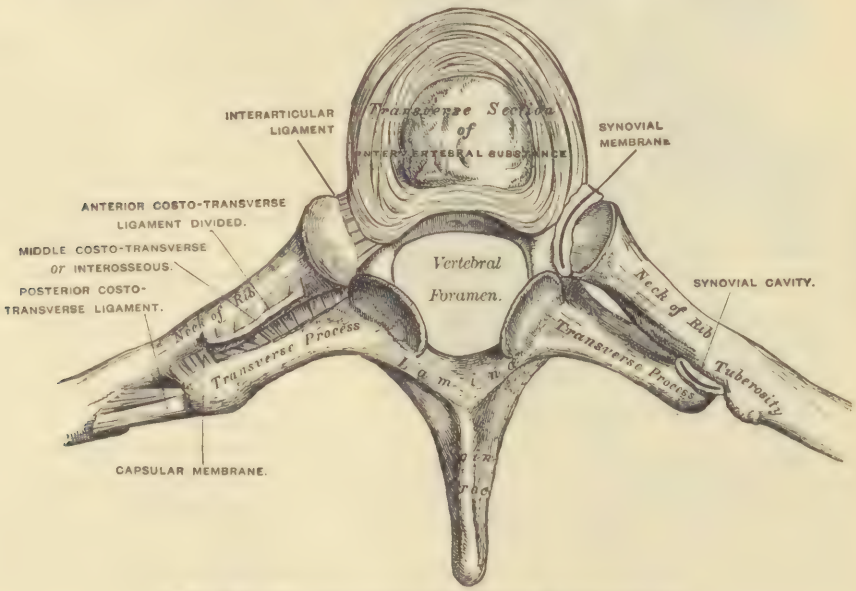


Fig. 209.—Costo-transverse articulation. Seen from above.

of the neck of each rib, and passes obliquely upward and outward to the lower border of the transverse process immediately above; the other (**posterior**) is attached below to the neck of the rib, and passes upward and inward to the base of the transverse process and outer border of the lower articular process of the vertebra above. This ligament is in relation, in front, with the intercostal vessels and nerves; behind, with the Longissimus dorsi muscle. Its *internal border* is thickened and free, and bounds an aperture through which pass the posterior branches of the intercostal vessels and nerves. Its *external border* is continuous with a thin aponeurosis which covers the External intercostal muscle.

The *first rib* has no anterior costo-transverse ligament. In the twelfth rib the ligament is absent or is a mere vestige.

The **Middle Costo-transverse** or **Interosseous Ligament** (*ligamentum colli costæ*) (Fig. 209) consists of short but strong fibres which pass between the rough surface on the posterior part of the neck of each rib and the anterior surface of the adjacent transverse process. In order fully to expose this ligament, a horizontal section should be made across the transverse process and corresponding part of the rib; or the rib may be forcibly separated from the transverse process and the fibres of the ligament put on the stretch.

In the *eleventh* and *twelfth ribs* this ligament is quite rudimentary or wanting.

The **Posterior Costo-transverse Ligament** (*ligamentum costotransversarium posterius*) (Fig. 209) is a short but thick and strong fasciculus which passes obliquely from the summit of the transverse process to the rough non-articular portion of the tubercle of the rib. This ligament is shorter and more oblique in the upper than in the lower ribs. Those corresponding to the superior ribs ascend, while those of the inferior ribs descend slightly.

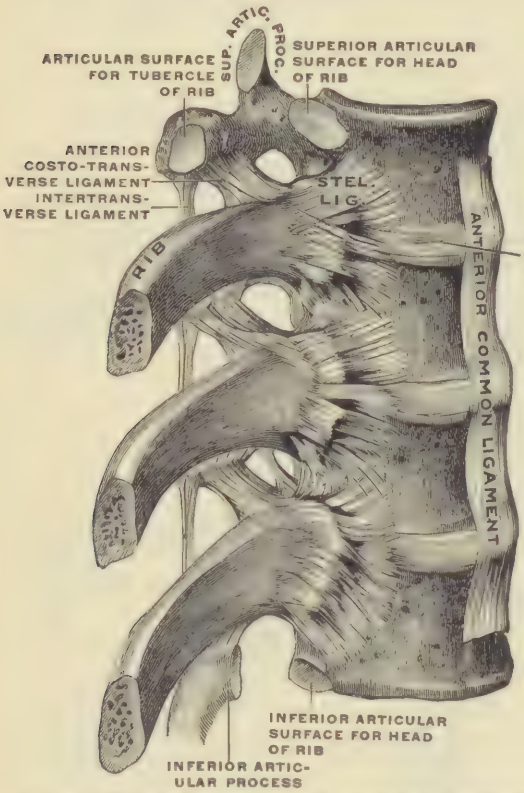


FIG. 210.—Ribs and corresponding vertebræ with ligaments, viewed from the right. (Spalteholz.)

In the *eleventh* and *twelfth ribs* this ligament is wanting.

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) is a thin, membranous sac attached to the circumference of the articulari surfaces, and enclosing a small synovial membrane.

In the *eleventh* and *twelfth ribs* this ligament is absent.

Actions.—The heads of the ribs are so closely connected to the bodies of the vertebræ by the stellate and interarticular ligaments, and the necks and tubercles of the ribs to the transverse processes, that only a slight sliding movement of the articular surfaces on each other can take place in these articulations. The result of this gliding movement with respect to the six upper ribs consists in an elevation of the front and middle portion of the rib, the hinder part being prevented from performing any upward movement by its close connection with the spine. In this gliding movement the rib rotates on an axis corresponding with a line drawn through the two articulations, **costo-central** and **costo-transverse**, which the rib forms with the spine. With respect to the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth ribs, each one, besides rotating in a similar manner to the upper six, also rotates on an axis corresponding with a line drawn from the head of the rib to the sternum. By the first movement—that of rotation of the rib on an axis corresponding with a line drawn through the two articulations which this bone forms with the spine—an elevation of the anterior part of the rib takes place, and a consequent enlargement of the antero-posterior diameter of the chest. None of the ribs lie in

a truly horizontal plane; they are all directed more or less obliquely, so that their anterior extremities lie on a lower level than their posterior, and this obliquity increases from the first to the seventh, and then again decreases. If we examine any one rib—say, that in which there is the greatest obliquity—we shall see that it is obvious that as its sternal extremity is carried upward, it must also be thrown forward; so that the rib may be regarded as a radius moving on the vertebral joint as a centre, and causing the sternal attachment to describe an arc of a circle in the vertical plane of the body. Since all the ribs are oblique and connected in front to the sternum by the elastic costal cartilages, they must have a tendency to thrust the sternum forward, and so increase the antero-posterior diameter of the chest. By the *second* movement—that of the rotation of the rib on an axis corresponding with a line drawn from the head of the rib to the sternum—an elevation of the middle portion of the rib takes place, and consequently an increase in the transverse diameter of the chest. For the ribs not only slant downward and forward from their vertebral attachment, but they are also oblique in relation to their transverse plane—that is to say, their middle is on a lower level than either their vertebral or sternal extremities. It results from this that when the ribs are raised, the centre portion is thrust outward, somewhat after the fashion in which the handle of a bucket is thrust away from the side when raised to a horizontal position, and the lateral diameter of the chest is increased (see Fig. 211). The mobility of the different ribs varies very much. The first rib is more fixed than the others, on account of the weight of the upper extremity and the strain of the ribs beneath; but on the freshly dissected thorax it moves as freely as the others. From the same causes the movement of the second rib is also not very extensive. In the other ribs this mobility increases successively down to the last two, which are very movable. The ribs are generally more movable in the female than in the male.

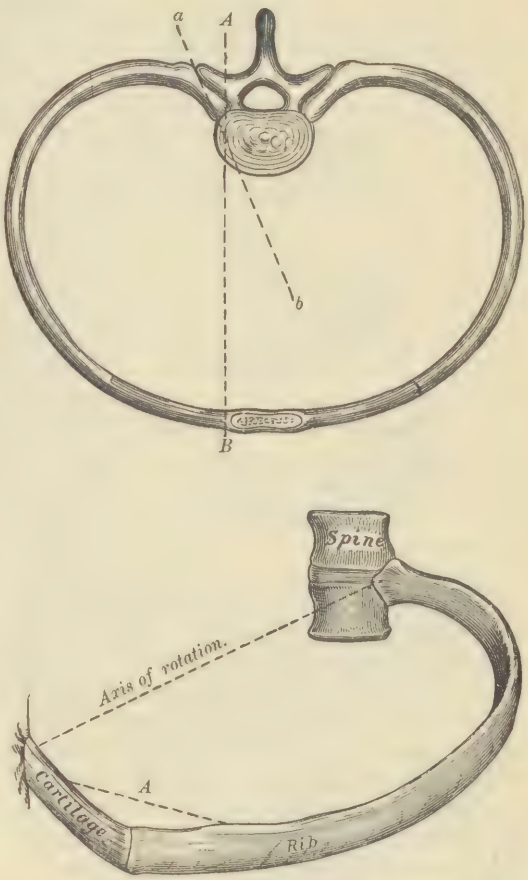


FIG. 211.—Diagrams showing the axis of rotation of the ribs in the movements of respiration. The one axis of rotation corresponds with the line drawn through the two articulations which the rib forms with the spine (*a*, *b*), and the other with a line drawn from the head of the rib to the sternum (*A*, *B*). (From Kirke's *Handbook of Physiology*.)

VII. Articulation of the Cartilages of the Ribs with the Sternum, etc., or the Costo-sternal Articulations (Articulationes Sternocostales) (Fig. 212).

The articulations of the cartilages of the true ribs with the sternum are arthrodial joints, with the exception of the first, in which the cartilage is almost always

directly united with the sternum, and which must therefore be regarded as a synarthrodial articulation. The ligaments connecting them are the

Anterior Chondro-sternal.	Capsular.
Posterior Chondro-sternal.	Interarticular Chondro-sternal.
Chondro-xiphoid.	

The **Anterior Chondro-sternal** or **Sterno-costal Ligament** (*ligamentum sternocostale radiatum*) (Fig. 212) is a broad and thin membranous band that radiates from the front of the inner extremity of the cartilages of the true ribs to the anterior surface of the sternum. It is composed of fasciculi which pass in different directions. The **superior fasciculi** ascend obliquely, the **inferior fasciculi** pass obliquely downward, and the **middle fasciculi** pass horizontally. The superficial fibres of this ligament are the longest: they intermingle with the fibres of the ligaments above and below them, with those of the opposite side, and with the tendinous fibres of origin of the Pectoralis major, forming a thick fibrous membrane which covers the surface of the sternum (*membrana sterni*). This is more distinct at the lower than at the upper part. According to the modern nomenclature, this ligament and the posterior chondro-sternal ligament are called **ligamenta sternocostalia radiata.** The two chondro-sternal ligaments form a sheath for the sternum anteriorly and posteriorly, the **membrana sterni.**

The **Posterior Chondro-sternal** or **Sterno-costal Ligament** (*ligamentum sternocostale radiatum*), less thick and distinct than the anterior, is composed of fibres which radiate from the posterior surface of the sternal end of the cartilages of the true ribs to the posterior surface of the sternum, becoming blended with the periosteum.

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) surrounds the joint formed between the cartilage of a true rib and the sternum. It is very thin, intimately blended with the anterior and posterior ligaments, and strengthened at the upper and lower part of the articulation by a few fibres which pass from the cartilage to the side of the sternum. These ligaments protect the synovial membranes.

The Interarticular Chondro-sternal or **Sterno-costal Ligament** (*ligamentum sternocostale interarticulare*) (Fig. 212).—This is found between the second costal cartilage and the sternum. The cartilage of the second rib is connected with the sternum by means of an interarticular ligament attached by one extremity to the cartilage of the second rib, and by the other extremity to the cartilage which unites the first and second pieces of the sternum. This articulation is provided with *two* synovial membranes. The cartilage of the third rib is also connected with the sternum by means of an interarticular ligament which is attached by one extremity to the cartilage of the third rib, and by the other extremity to the point of junction of the second and third pieces of the sternum. This articulation may be provided with *two* synovial membranes. In the other joints interarticular ligaments may exist, but they rarely completely divide the joint into two cavities.

The Anterior Chondro-xiphoid or Costo-xiphoid Ligament (*ligamentum costoxiphoidea*) (Fig. 212).—This is a band of ligamentous fibres which connects the anterior surface of the seventh costal cartilage, and occasionally also that of the sixth, to the anterior surface of the ensiform appendix. It varies in length and breadth in different subjects. A similar band of fibres on the internal or posterior surface, though less thick and distinct, may be demonstrated. It is spoken of as the **posterior chondro-xiphoid** or **costo-xiphoid ligament.**

Synovial Membranes (Fig. 212).—There is *no* synovial membrane between the first costal cartilage and the sternum, as this cartilage is directly continuous with the sternum. There are *two* synovial membranes, both in the articulation of the second and third costal cartilages to the sternum. There is generally *one* synovial membrane in each of the joints between the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh

costal cartilages to the sternum; but it is sometimes absent in the sixth and seventh chondro-sternal joints. Thus there are usually *eight* synovial cavities on each side in the articulations between the costal cartilages of the true ribs and the sternum. After middle life the articular surfaces lose their polish, become

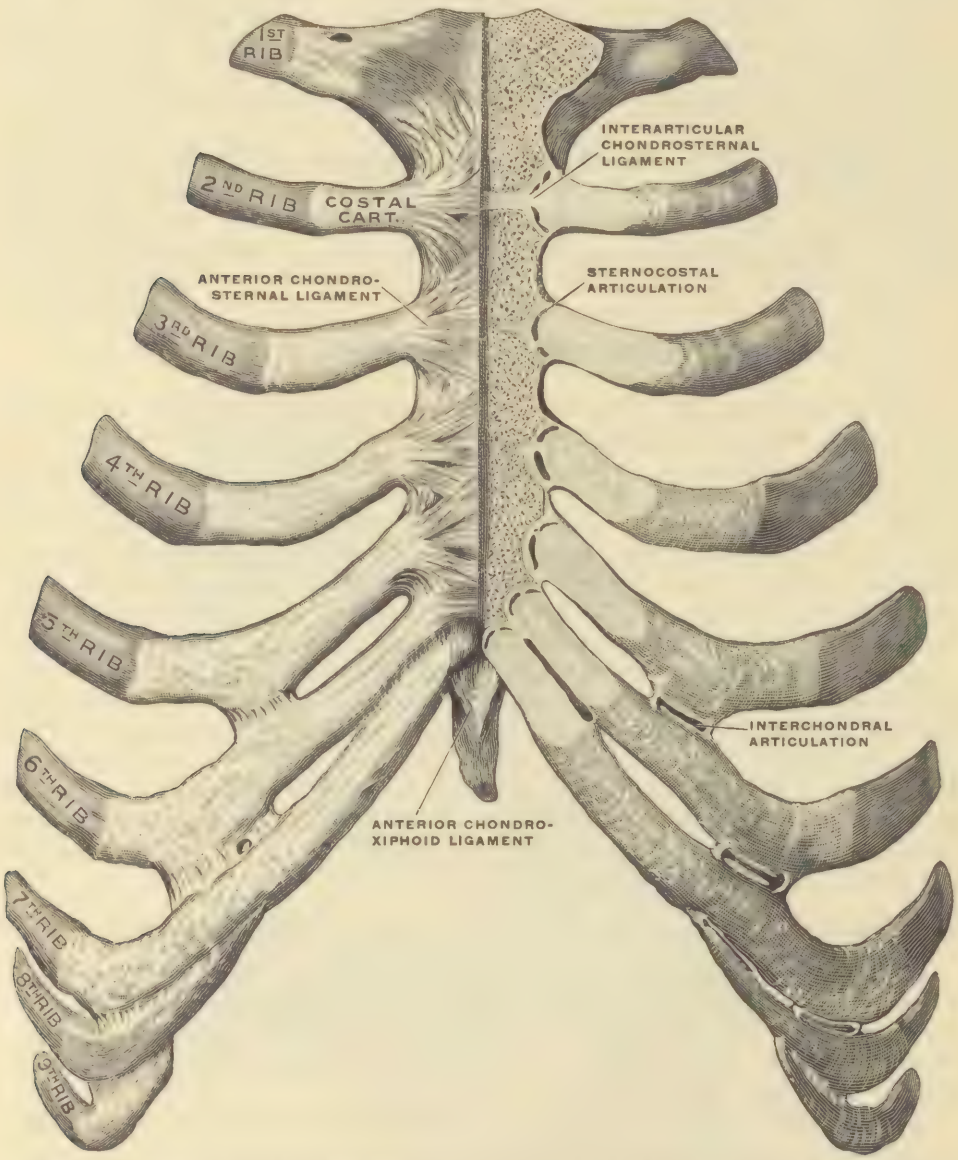


FIG. 212.—Sternum and ribs with ligaments, from in front. In the left half of the figure the most anterior layer has been removed and the joint slits have been opened; the parts are separated somewhat from one another on the left side. (Spalteholz.)

roughened, and the synovial membranes appear to be wanting. In old age the articulations do not exist, the cartilages of most of the ribs becoming continuous with the sternum.

Actions.—The movements which are permitted in the chondro-sternal articulations are limited to *elevation* and *depression*, and these only to a slight extent.

Articulations of the Cartilages of the Ribs with Each Other or the Interchondral Articulations (*articulationes interchondrales*) (Fig. 212).—The con-

tiguous borders of the sixth, seventh, and eighth, and sometimes the ninth and tenth, costal cartilages articulate with each other by small, smooth, oblong-shaped facets. Each articulation is enclosed in a thin **capsular ligament** lined by **synovial membrane**, and strengthened externally and internally by ligamentous fibres, **external** and **internal interchondral ligaments** (*ligamenta intercostalia externa et interna*), which pass from one cartilage to the other. Sometimes the fifth costal cartilage, more rarely that of the ninth, articulates, by its lower border, with the adjoining cartilage by a small oval facet; more frequently they are connected together by a few ligamentous fibres. Occasionally the articular surfaces above mentioned are wanting.

Articulations of the Ribs with their Cartilages or the Costo-chondral Articulations (Fig. 212).—The outer extremity of each costal cartilage is received into a depression in the sternal ends of the ribs, and the two are held together by the periosteum. There is no real joint. Occasionally a synovial membrane exists between the first rib and the corresponding cartilage.

VIII. Articulations of the Sternum (Fig. 212).

The first piece of the sternum is united to the second either by an amphiarthrodial joint—a single piece of true fibro-cartilage uniting the segments—or by a diarthrodial joint, in which each bone is clothed with a distinct lamina of cartilage, adherent on one side, free and lined with synovial membrane on the other. In the latter case the cartilage covering the gladiolus is continued without interruption on to the cartilages of the second ribs. Mr. Rivington has found the diarthrodial form of joint in about one-third of the specimens examined by him; Mr. Maisonneuve more frequently. It appears to be rare in childhood, and is formed, in Mr. Rivington's opinion, from the amphiarthrodial form by absorption. The diarthrodial joint seems to have no tendency to ossify at any age, while the amphiarthrodial is more liable to do so, and has been found ossified as early as thirty-four years of age. Professor Cunningham[1] says: "It is not usual to find the manubri-gladiolar joint obliterated by the ossification of the two bony segments. Even in advanced life it remains open, and the joint partakes of the nature of an amphiarthrosis, although a joint cavity is not found under any circumstances in the plate of fibro-cartilage which intervenes between the manubrium and the gladiolus." The two segments are further connected by an

Anterior Intersternal Ligament. Posterior Intersternal Ligament.

The **Anterior Intersternal Ligament** consists of a layer of fibres, having a longitudinal direction; it blends with the fibres of the anterior chondro-sternal ligaments on both sides (*membrani sterni*), and with the tendinous fibres of origin of the Pectoralis major muscle. This ligament is rough, irregular, and much thicker below than above.

The **Posterior Intersternal Ligament** is disposed in a somewhat similar manner on the posterior surface of the articulation.

IX. Articulation of the Vertebral Column with the Pelvis.

The ligaments connecting the last lumbar vertebra with the sacrum are similar to those which connect the segments of the spine with each other—viz.: 1. The continuation downward of the anterior and posterior common ligaments. 2. The intervertebral substance connecting the flattened oval surfaces of the two bones

[1] Text-book of Anatomy, p. 264.

and forming an amphiarthrodial joint. 3. Ligamenta subflava, connecting the arch of the last lumbar vertebra with the posterior border of the sacral canal. 4. Capsular ligaments connecting the articulating processes and forming a double arthrodia. 5. Inter- and supraspinous ligaments.

The two proper ligaments connecting the pelvis with the spine are the **lumbo-sacral** and **ilio-lumbar**.

The **Lumbo-sacral Ligament** (Fig. 213) is a short, thick, triangular fasciculus, which is connected above to the lower and front part of the transverse process of the last lumbar vertebra, passes obliquely outward, and is attached below to the lateral surface of the base of the sacrum. It is closely blended with the anterior sacro-iliac ligament and with the ilio-lumbar ligament, and is to be regarded as a portion of the ilio-lumbar ligament. This ligament is in relation, in front, with the Psoas muscle. The internal border of the lumbo-sacral ligament margins the foramen of the last lumbar nerve.

The **Ilio-lumbar Ligament** (*ligamentum iliolumbale*) (Fig. 213) passes horizontally outward from the apex of the transverse process of the last lumbar vertebra

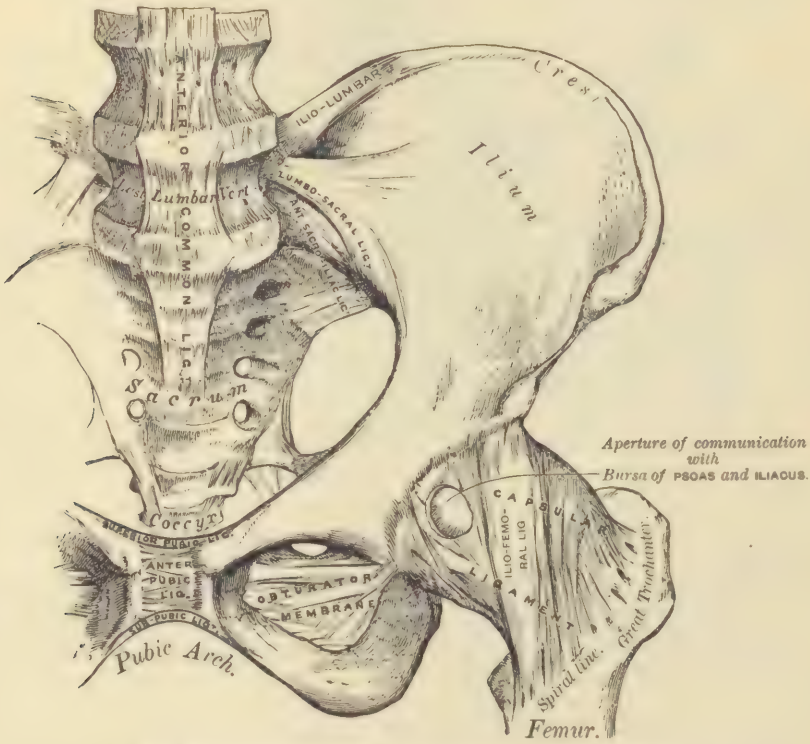


Fig. 213.—Articulations of the pelvis and hip. Anterior view.

to the crest of the ilium immediately in front of the sacro-iliac articulation. It is of a triangular form, thick and narrow internally, broad and thinner externally. It is in relation, in front, with the Psoas muscle; behind, with the muscles occupying the vertebral groove; above, with the Quadratus lumborum. It blends in places with the lumbo-sacral ligament, and its crescentic inner margin marks the limit of the foramen for the fourth lumbar nerve. These ligaments are thick prolongations from the anterior layer of the lumbar fascia.

X. Articulations of the Pelvis.

The ligaments connecting the bones of the pelvis with each other may be divided into four groups: 1. Those connecting the **sacrum** and **ilium**. 2. Those passing between the **sacrum** and **ischium**. 3. Those connecting the **sacrum** and **coccyx**. 4. Those between the two **pubic bones**.

1. Articulation of the Sacrum and Ilium (Articulatio Sacroiliaca.)

The sacro-iliac articulation is an amphiarthrodial joint, formed between the lateral surfaces of the sacrum and ilium. The anterior or auricular portion of each articular surface is covered with a thin plate of cartilage, thicker on the sacrum than on the ilium. These are in close contact with each other, and to a certain extent united together by irregular patches of softer fibro-cartilage, and at their upper and posterior part by fine fibres of interosseous fibrous tissue. Throughout a considerable part of their extent, especially in advanced life, they are not connected together, but are separated by a space containing a synovial-like fluid, and hence the joint presents the characters of a diarthrosis.

The ligaments connecting these surfaces are the

Anterior Sacro-iliac. Posterior Sacro-iliac.
Interosseous.

The **Anterior Sacro-iliac Ligaments** (*ligamenta sacroiliaca anteriora*) (Fig. 213) consists of numerous thin bands which connect the anterior surfaces of the sacrum and ilium.

The **Posterior Sacro-iliac Ligament** (*ligamentum sacroiliacum posterius*) (Fig. 214) is a strong interosseous ligament, situated in a deep depression between the sacrum and ilium behind, and forming the chief bond of connection between those bones. It consists of numerous strong fasciculi which pass between the bones in various directions. Three of these are of large size: the *two superior fasciculi* constitute the **short sacro-iliac ligament** (*ligamentum sacroiliacum posterius breve*). They are nearly horizontal in direction, arise from the first and second transverse tubercles on the posterior surface of the sacrum, and are inserted into the rough, uneven surface at the posterior part of the inner surface of the ilium. The *third fasciculus*, oblique in direction, is attached by one extremity to the third transverse tubercle on the posterior surface of the sacrum, and by the other to the posterior superior spine of the ilium; it is sometimes called the **long** or **oblique sacro-iliac ligament** (*ligamentum sacroiliacum posterius longum*).

The **Interosseous Ligaments** (*ligamenta sacroiliaca interossea*) are completely covered by the posterior sacro-iliac ligament, and are not visible when the joint is unopened. The fibres are short and run obliquely and completely fill the hollow which exists posterior to the joint.

The position of the sacro-iliac joint is indicated by the posterior superior spine of the ilium. This process is immediately behind the centre of the articulation.

2. Ligaments passing between the Sacrum and Ischium (Fig. 214).

The Great Sacro-sciatic (Posterior).
The Lesser Sacro-sciatic (Anterior).

The **Great** or **Posterior Sacro-sciatic Ligament** (*ligamentum sacrotuberosum*) (Figs. 214 and 215) is situated at the lower and back part of the pelvis. It is flat, and triangular in form; narrower in the middle than at the extremities; attached by its broad base to the posterior inferior spine of the ilium, to the fourth and fifth trans-

verse tubercles of the sacrum, and to the lower part of the lateral margin of that bone and the coccyx. Passing obliquely downward, outward, and forward, it becomes narrow and thick, and at its insertion into the inner margin of the tuberosity of the ischium it increases in breadth, and is prolonged forward along the inner margin of the ramus, forming what is known as the **falciform process** of the great sacro-sciatic ligament or the **falciform ligament** (*processus falciformis*). The free concave edge of this prolongation has attached to it the **obturator fascia**, with which it forms a kind of groove, protecting the internal pudic vessels and nerve. One of its surfaces is turned toward the perinæum, the other toward the Obturator internus muscle.

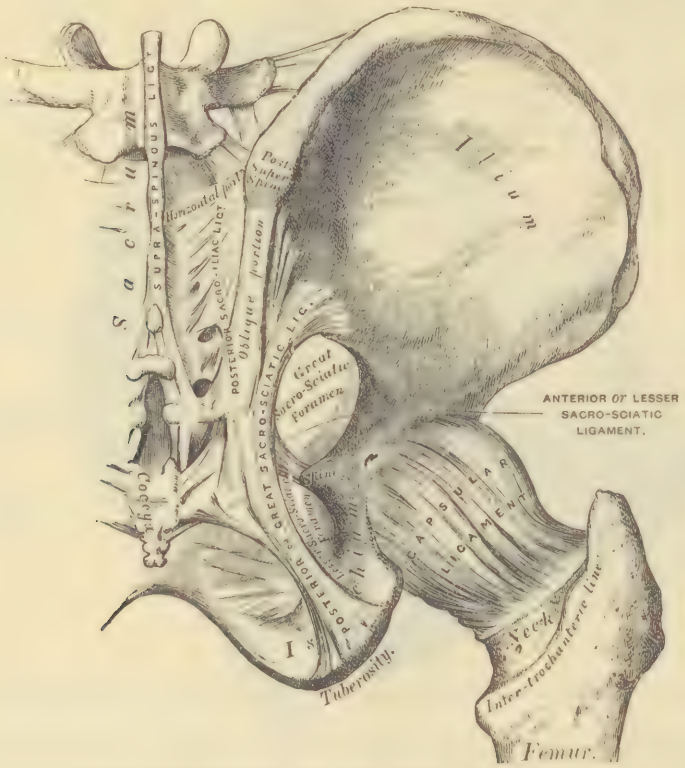


Fig. 214.—Articulations of pelvis and hip. Posterior view.

The *posterior surface* of this ligament gives origin, by its whole extent, to fibres of the Gluteus maximus muscle. Its *anterior surface* is united to the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament. Its *external border* forms, above, the posterior boundary of the great sacro-sciatic foramen, and, below, the posterior boundary of the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen. Its *lower border* forms part of the boundary of the perinæum. It is pierced by the coccygeal branch of the sciatic artery and the coccygeal nerve.

The **Lesser** or **Anterior Sacro-sciatic Ligament** (*ligamentum sacrospinosum*) (Figs. 214 and 215), much shorter and smaller than the preceding, is thin, triangular in form, attached by its apex to the spine of the ischium, and internally, by its broad base, to the lateral margin of the sacrum and coccyx, anterior to the attachment of the great sacro-sciatic ligament, with which its fibres are intermingled.

It is in relation, *anteriorly*, with the Coccygeus muscle; *posteriorly*, it is covered by the great sacro-sciatic ligament and crossed by the internal pudic vessels and nerve. Its *superior border* forms the lower boundary of the great sacro-sciatic foramen; its *inferior border*, part of the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen.

These two ligaments convert the sacro-sciatic notches into foramina. The **superior** or **great sacro-sciatic foramen** (*foramen ischiadicum majus*) (Figs. 214 and 215) is bounded, in front and above, by the posterior border of the os innominatum; behind, by the great sacro-sciatic ligament; and below, by the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament. It is partially filled up, in the recent state, by the Pyriformis muscle, which passes through it. Above this muscle the gluteal vessels and superior gluteal nerve emerge from the pelvis, and, below it, the sciatic vessels and nerves, the internal pudic vessels and nerve, the inferior gluteal nerve, and the nerves to the obturator internus and quadratus femoris. The **inferior** or **lesser sacro-sciatic foramen** (*foramen ischiadicum minus*) (Figs. 214 and 215) is bounded, in front, by the

FIG. 215.—Side view of pelvis, showing the greater and lesser sacro-sciatic ligaments.

tuber ischii; above, by the spine and lesser sacro-sciatic ligament; behind, by the greater sacro-sciatic ligament. It transmits the tendon of the Obturator internus muscle, its nerve, and the internal pudic vessels and nerve.

3. ARTICULATION OF THE SACRUM AND COCCYX (SYMPHYSIS SACROCOCCYGEA).

This articulation is an amphiarthrodial joint, formed between the oval surface at the apex of the sacrum and the base of the coccyx. It is analogous to the joints between the bodies of the vertebræ. The ligaments are the

Anterior Sacro-coccygeal.	Lateral Sacro-coccygeal.
Posterior Sacro-coccygeal.	Interposed Fibro-cartilage.

The **Anterior Sacro-coccygeal Ligament** (*ligamentum sacrococcygeum anterius*) consists of a few irregular fibres which descend from the anterior surface of the sacrum to the front of the coccyx, becoming blended with the periosteum. It is a continuation of the anterior common ligament.

The **Posterior Sacro-coccygeal Ligament** (*ligamentum sacrococcygeum posterius*) (Fig. 216) is divided into two portions, the *deep* and the *superficial*. The **deep**

portion of the posterior sacro-coccygeal ligament (*ligamentum sacrococcygeum posterius profundum*), which is a continuation of the posterior common ligament, is a flat band of a pearly tint, which arises from the margin of the lower orifice of the sacral canal, and descends to be inserted into the posterior surface of the coccyx. This ligament completes the lower and back part of the sacral canal. Its superficial fibres are much longer than the more deeply seated. This ligament is in relation, behind, with the Gluteus maximus.

The **superficial portion of the posterior sacro-coccygeal ligament** (*ligamentum sacrococcygeum posterius superficiale*) is composed of longitudinal fibrous bands which extend from the lower portion of the middle sacral ridge to the posterior surface of the coccyx and closes partly the hiatus sacralis; and of fibrous bands which extend from the sacral cornua to the coccygeal cornua. A portion of this ligament corresponds to the ligamenta subflava and the balance to the capsular ligament.

A **Lateral Sacro-coccygeal** or **Intertransverse Ligament** (*ligamentum sacrococcygeum laterale*) (Fig. 216) connects the transverse process of the coccyx to the lower lateral angle of the sacrum on each side.

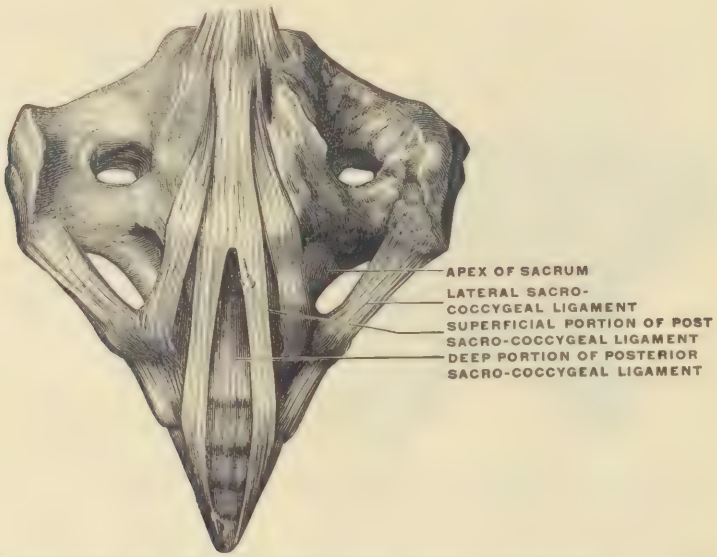


FIG. 216.—Ligaments between the sacrum and the coccyx. (Spalteholz.)

A **Fibro-cartilage** is interposed between the contiguous surfaces of the sacrum and coccyx; it differs from that interposed between the bodies of the vertebræ in being thinner, and its central part firmer in texture. It is somewhat thicker in front and behind than at the sides. Occasionally, a synovial membrane is found and the coccyx is freely movable. This is especially the case during pregnancy.

The different **segments of the coccyx** are connected together by an extension downward of the anterior and posterior sacro-coccygeal ligaments, a thin annular disk of fibro-cartilage being interposed between each of the bones. In the adult male all the pieces become ossified, but in the female this does not commonly occur until a later period of life. The separate segments of the coccyx are first united, and at a more advanced age the joint between the sacrum and coccyx is obliterated.

Actions.—The movements which take place between the sacrum and coccyx, and between the different pieces of the latter bone, are *forward* and *backward*, and are very limited. Their extent increases during pregnancy.

4. Articulation of the Ossa Pubis (Symphysis Ossium Pubis) (Figs. 213, 217).

The articulation between the pubic bones is an amphiarthrodial joint, formed by the junction of the two oval articular surfaces of the ossa pubis. The ligaments of this articulation are the

Anterior Pubic. Superior Pubic.
Posterior Pubic. Inferior Pubic.
Interpubic Disk.

The **Anterior Pubic Ligament** (*ligamentum pubicum anterius*) (Fig. 213) consists of several superimposed layers which pass across the front of the articulation. The superficial fibres pass obliquely from one bone to the other, decussating and forming an interlacement with the fibres of the aponeurosis of the External oblique and the tendon of the Rectus muscles. The deep fibres pass transversely across the symphysis, and are blended with the fibro-cartilage.

The **Posterior Pubic Ligament** (*ligamentum pubicum posterius*) consists of a few thin, scattered fibres which unite the two pubic bones posteriorly.

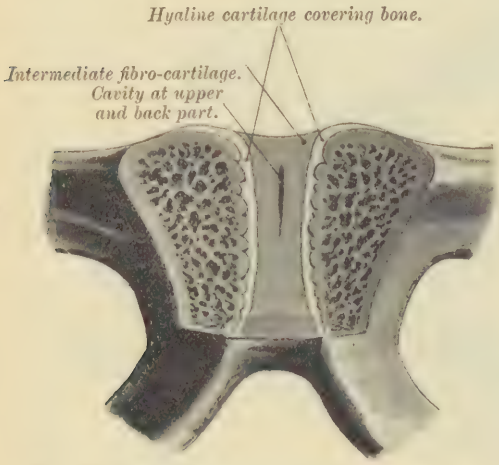


Fig. 217.—Vertical section of the symphysis pubis. Made near its posterior surface.

The **Superior Pubic Ligament** (*ligamentum pubicum superius*) (Fig. 213) is a band of fibres which connects together the two pubic bones superiorly.

The **Inferior Pubic** or **Subpubic Ligament** (*ligamentum arcuatum pubis*) (Fig. 213) is a thick, triangular arch of ligamentous fibres, connecting together the two pubic bones below and forming the upper boundary of the pubic arch. Above, it is blended with the interarticular fibro-cartilage; laterally it is united with the descending rami of the pubis. Its fibres are closely connected and have an arched direction. Its lower margin is separated from the triangular ligament of the perinæum by a gap, through which runs the dorsal vein of the penis.

The **Interpubic Disk** (*lamina fibrocartilaginea interpubica*) (Fig. 217) consists of a disk of cartilage and fibro-cartilage connecting the surfaces of the pubic bones in front. Each of the two surfaces is covered by a thin layer of hyaline cartilage which is firmly connected to the bone by a series of nipple-like processes which accurately fit within corresponding depressions on the osseous surfaces. These opposed cartilaginous surfaces are connected together by an intermediate stratum of fibrous tissue and fibro-cartilage which varies in thickness in different subjects. It often contains a cavity (*cavum articulare*) in its centre, probably formed by the softening and absorption of the fibro-cartilage, since it rarely appears before the tenth year of life, and is not lined by synovial membrane. It is larger in the female than in the male, but it is very questionable whether it enlarges, as was formerly supposed, during pregnancy. It is most frequently limited to the upper and back part of the joint, but it occasionally reaches to the front, and may extend the entire length of the cartilage. This cavity may be easily demonstrated by making a vertical section of the symphysis pubis near its posterior surface (Fig. 217).

The **Obturator Ligament** is more properly regarded as analogous to the muscular fasciæ, with which it will be described.

ARTICULATIONS OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The articulations of the upper extremity may be arranged in the following groups:

I. Sterno-clavicular Articulation.
II. Acromio-clavicular Articulation.
III. Ligaments of the Scapula.
IV. Shoulder-joint.
V. Elbow-joint.
VI. Radio-ulnar Articulations.
VII. Wrist-joint.
VIII. Articulations of the Carpal Bones.
IX. Carpo-metacarpal Articulations.
X. Metacarpo-phalangeal Articulations.
XI. Articulations of the Phalanges.

I. Sterno-clavicular Articulation (Articulatio Sternoclavicularis) (Fig. 218).

The sterno-clavicular is regarded by most anatomists as an arthrodial joint, but Cruveilhier considers it to be an articulation by reciprocal reception. Probably

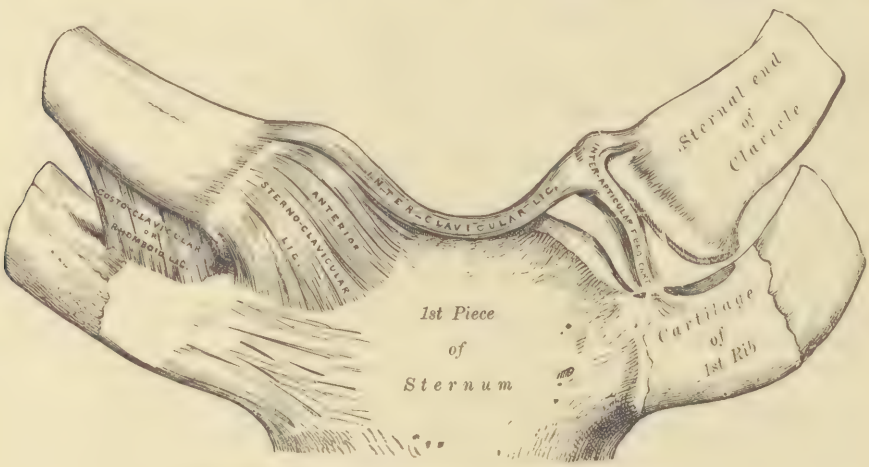


FIG. 218.—Sterno-clavicular articulation. Anterior view.

the former opinion is the correct one, the varied movement which the joint enjoys being due to the interposition of an interarticular fibro-cartilage between the joint surfaces. The parts entering into its formation are the sternal end of the clavicle, the upper and lateral part of the first piece of the sternum, and the cartilage of the first rib. The articular surface of the sternum is covered with cartilage. The articular surface of the clavicle is much larger than that of the sternum, and invested with a layer of cartilage[1] which is considerably thicker than that on the latter bone. The ligaments of this joint are the

Capsular.	Interclavicular.
Anterior Sterno-clavicular.	Costo-clavicular.
Posterior Sterno-clavicular.	Interarticular Fibro-cartilage.

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) completely surrounds the articulation, consisting of fibres of varying degrees of thickness and strength. Those in front and behind are of considerable thickness, and form the anterior and posterior sterno-clavicular ligaments; but those above and below, especially in the latter situation, are thin and scanty, and partake more of the character of connective tissue than true fibrous tissue.

[1] According to Bruch, the sternal end of the clavicle is covered by a tissue which is rather fibrous than cartilaginous in structure.

The **Anterior Sterno-clavicular Ligament** (*ligamentum sternoclaviculare*) (Fig. 218) is a part of the capsule. It is a broad band of fibres which covers the anterior surface of the articulation, being attached, above, to the upper and front part of the inner extremity of the clavicle, and, passing obliquely downward and inward, is attached, below, to the upper and front part of the first piece of the sternum. This ligament is covered, in front, by the sternal portion of the Sterno-cleido-mastoid and the integument; behind, it is in relation with the interarticular fibro-cartilage and the two synovial membranes.

The **Posterior Sterno-clavicular Ligament**, also a part of the capsule, is a band of fibres which covers the posterior surface of the articulation, being attached, above, to the upper and back part of the inner extremity of the clavicle, and, passing obliquely downward and inward, is attached, below, to the upper and back part of the first piece of the sternum. It is in relation, in front, with the interarticular fibro-cartilage and synovial membranes; behind, with the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles.

The **Interclavicular Ligament** (*ligamentum interclaviculare*) (Fig. 218) is a flattened band which varies considerably in form and size in different individuals; it passes in a curved direction from the upper part of the inner extremity of one clavicle to the other, and is also attached to the upper margin of the sternum. It is in relation, in front, with the integument; behind, with the Sterno-thyroid muscles.

The **Costo-clavicular** or **Rhomboid Ligament** (*ligamentum costoclaviculare*) (Fig. 218) is short, flat, and strong; it is of a rhomboid form, attached, below, to the upper and inner part of the cartilage of the first rib: it ascends obliquely backward and outward, and is attached, above, to the rhomboid depression on the under surface of the clavicle. It is in relation, in front, with the tendon of origin of the Subclavius; behind, with the subclavian vein.

The **Interarticular Fibro-cartilage** (*discus articularis*) (Fig. 218) is a flat and nearly circular meniscus, interposed between the articulating surfaces of the sternum and clavicle. It is attached, above, to the upper and posterior border of the articular surface of the clavicle; below, to the cartilage of the first rib, at its junction with the sternum; and by its circumference, to the anterior and posterior sterno-clavicular and the interclavicular ligaments. It is thicker at the circumference, especially its upper and back part, than at its centre or below. It divides the joint into two cavities, each of which is furnished with a separate synovial membrane.

Synovial Membrane.—Of the *two* synovial membranes found in this articulation, one is reflected from the sternal end of the clavicle over the adjacent surface of the fibro-cartilage and cartilage of the first rib; the other is placed between the articular surface of the sternum and adjacent surface of the fibro-cartilage; the latter is the larger of the two.

Actions.—This articulation is the centre of the movements of the shoulder, and admits of a limited amount of motion in nearly every direction—upward, downward, backward, forward—as well as circumduction. When these movements take place in the joint, the clavicle in its motion carries the scapula with it, this bone gliding on the outer surface of the chest. This joint therefore forms the centre from which all movements of the supporting arch of the shoulder originate, and is the only point of articulation of this part of the skeleton with the trunk. "The movements attendant on elevation and depression of the shoulder take place between the clavicle and the interarticular fibro-cartilage, the bone rotating upon the ligament on an axis drawn from before backward through its own articular facet. When the shoulder is moved forward and backward, the clavicle, with the interarticular fibro-cartilage, rolls to and fro on the articular surface of the sternum, revolving, with a sliding movement, round an axis drawn nearly vertically through the sternum. In the circumduction of the shoulder, which is compounded

of these two movements, the clavicle revolves upon the interarticular fibro-cartilage, and the latter, with the clavicle, rolls upon the sternum."[1] Elevation of the clavicle is principally limited by the costo-clavicular ligament; depression by the interclavicular. The muscles which *raise* the clavicle, as in shrugging the shoulder, are the upper fibres of the Trapezius, the Levator anguli scapulæ, the clavicular head of the Sterno-mastoid, assisted to a certain extent by the two Rhomboids, which pull the vertebral border of the Scapula backward and upward, and so raise the clavicle. The *depression* of the clavicle is principally effected by gravity, assisted by the Subclavius, Pectoralis minor, and lower fibres of the Trapezius. It is drawn *backward* by the Rhomboids and the middle and lower fibres of the Trapezius; and *forward* by the Serratus magnus and Pectoralis minor.

Surface Form.—The position of the sterno-clavicular joint may be easily ascertained by feeling the enlarged sternal end of the collar-bone just external to the long, cord-like, sternal origin of the Sterno-mastoid muscle. If this muscle is relaxed by bending the head forward, a depression just internal to the end of the clavicle, and between it and the sternum, can be felt, indicating the exact position of the joint, which is subcutaneous. When the arm hangs by the side, the cavity of the joint is V-shaped. If the arm is raised, the bones become more closely approximated, and the cavity becomes a mere slit.

Surgical Anatomy. The strength of this joint mainly depends upon its ligaments, and it is because of the ligaments and because the force of a blow is generally transmitted along the long axis of the clavicle, that dislocation so rarely occurs, and that the bone is generally broken rather than displaced. When *dislocation* does occur, the course which the displaced bone takes depends more upon the direction in which the violence was applied than upon the anatomical construction of the joint; it may be either forward, backward, or upward. A complete upward dislocation is also inward. A complete forward or backward dislocation is also inward and downward. The chief point worthy of note, as regards the construction of the joint, in regard to dislocations, is the fact that, owing to the shape of the articular surfaces being so little adapted to each other, and that the strength of the joint mainly depends upon the ligaments, the displacement when reduced is very liable to recur, and hence it is extremely difficult to keep the end of the bone in its proper place, and it may be necessary to incise the soft parts and wire the bone in place.

II. Acromio-clavicular Articulation or Scapulo-clavicular Articulation (Articulatio Acromioclavicularis) (Fig. 219).

The acromio-clavicular is an arthrodial joint formed between the outer extremity of the clavicle and the inner margin of the acromion process of the scapula. The ligaments which surround the joint form a capsule. The ligaments of this articulation are the

Superior Acromio-clavicular.		Trapezoid.
Inferior Acromio-clavicular.	Coraco-clavicular	and
Interarticular Fibro-cartilage.		Conoid.

The **Superior Acromio-clavicular Ligament** (*ligamentum acromioclaviculare*) (Figs. 219 and 220) is a portion of the joint capsule. It is a quadrilateral band which covers the superior part of the articulation, extending between the upper part of the outer end of the clavicle and the adjoining part of the upper surface of the acromion. It is composed of parallel fibres which interlace with the aponeurosis of the Trapezius and Deltoid muscles; below, it is in contact with the interarticular fibro-cartilage (when it exists) and the synovial membranes.

The **Inferior Acromio-clavicular Ligament,** somewhat thinner than the preceding, and like it a portion of the capsule, covers the under part of the articulation, and is attached to the adjoining surfaces of the two bones. It is in relation, above, with the synovial membranes, and in rare cases with the interarticular fibro-cartilage; below, with the tendon of the Supraspinatus. These two liga-

[1] Humphry. On the Human Skeleton, p. 402.

ments are continuous with each other in front and behind, and form a complete capsule round the joint.

The **Interarticular Fibro-cartilage** (*discus articularis*) is frequently absent in this articulation. When the meniscus exists it is generally incomplete and only partially separates the articular surfaces, and occupies the upper part of the articulation. More rarely it completely separates the joint into two cavities.

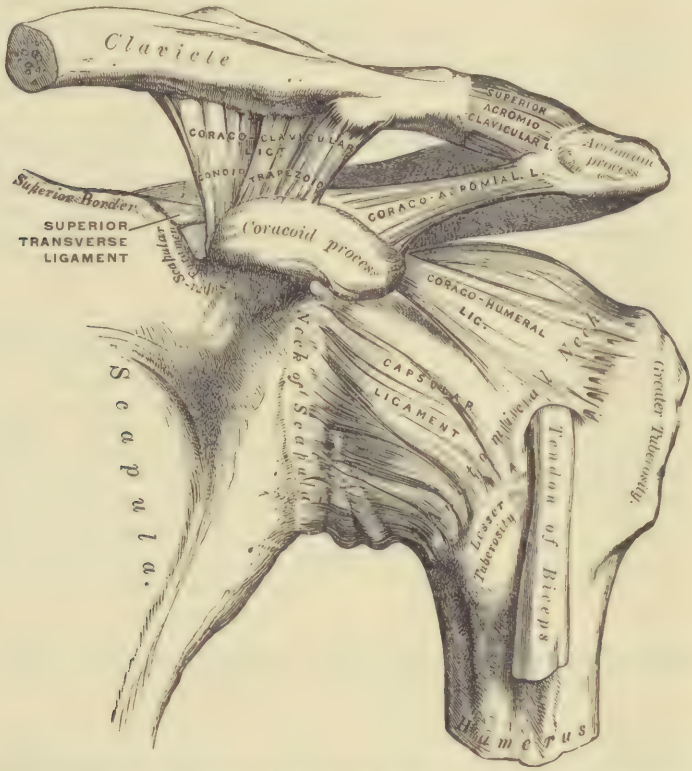


FIG. 219.—The left shoulder-joint, scapulo-clavicular articulations, and proper ligaments of scapula.

The Synovial Membrane.—There is usually only *one* synovial membrane in this articulation, but when a complete interarticular fibro-cartilage exists there are two synovial membranes.

The **Coraco-clavicular Ligament** (*ligamentum coracoclaviculare*) (Figs. 219 and 220) serves to connect the clavicle with the coracoid process of the scapula. It does not properly belong to this articulation, but as it forms a most efficient means in retaining the clavicle in contact with the acromial process, it is usually described with it. It consists of two fasciculi, called the **trapezoid** and **conoid ligaments**.

The **trapezoid ligament** (*ligamentum trapezoideum*), the anterior and external fasciculus, is broad, thin, and quadrilateral; it is placed obliquely between the coracoid process and the clavicle. It is attached, below, to the upper surface of the coracoid process; above, to the oblique line on the under surface of the clavicle. Its anterior border is free; its posterior border is joined with the conoid ligament, the two forming by their junction a projecting angle.

The **conoid ligament** (*ligamentum conoideum*), the posterior and internal fasciculus, is a dense band of fibres, conical in form, the base being directed upward, the summit downward. It is attached by its apex to a rough impression at the base of the coracoid process, internal to the preceding; above, by its expanded

base, to the conoid tubercle on the under surface of the clavicle, and to a line proceeding internally from it for half an inch. These ligaments are in relation, in front, with the Subclavius and Deltoid; behind, with the Trapezius. They serve to limit rotation of the scapula, the Trapezoid limiting rotation forward, and the Conoid backward.

Actions.—The movements of this articulation are of two kinds: 1. A gliding motion of the articular end of the clavicle on the acromion. 2. Rotation of the scapula forward and backward upon the clavicle, the extent of this rotation being limited by the two portions of the coraco-clavicular ligament.

The acromio-clavicular joint has important functions in the movements of the upper extremity. It has been well pointed out by Sir George Humphry that if there had been no joint between the clavicle and scapula the circular movement of the scapula on the ribs (as in throwing both shoulders backward or forward) would have been attended with a greater alteration in the direction of the shoulder than is consistent with the free use of the arm in such position, and it would have been impossible to give a blow straight forward with the full force of the arm; that is to say, with the combined force of the scapula, arm, and forearm. "This joint," as he happily says, "is so adjusted as to enable either bone to turn in a hinge-like manner upon a vertical axis drawn through the other, and it permits the surfaces of the scapula, like the baskets in a roundabout swing, to look the same way in every position or nearly so." Again, when the whole arch formed by the clavicle and scapula rises and falls (in elevation or depression of the shoulders), the joint between these two bones enables the scapula still to maintain its lower part in contact with the ribs.

Surface Form.—The position of the acromio-clavicular joint can generally be ascertained by the slightly enlarged extremity of the outer end of the clavicle, which causes it to project above the level of the acromion process of the scapula. Sometimes this enlargement is so considerable as to form a rounded eminence, which is easily to be felt. The joint lies in the plane of a vertical line passing up the middle of the front of the arm.

Surgical Anatomy. Owing to the slanting shape of the articular surfaces of this joint, the commonest *dislocation* is the passing of the acromion process of the scapula under the outer end of the clavicle; but dislocations in the opposite direction have been described. The first form of dislocation is produced by violent force applied to the scapula so as to drive the shoulder forward. The displacement in acromio-clavicular dislocation is often incomplete, on account of the strong coraco-clavicular ligaments which remain untorn. The same difficulty exists, as in the sterno-clavicular dislocation, in maintaining the ends of the bone in apposition after reduction, and it may become necessary to wire them in place after incision of the soft parts.

III. Proper Ligaments of the Scapula (Figs. 219, 220).

The proper ligaments of the scapula pass between portions of that bone, but are not parts of an articulation. They are the

Coraco-acromial. Superior Transverse.
Inferior Transverse.

The **Coraco-acromial Ligament** (*ligamentum coracoacromiale*) is a strong triangular band, extending between the coracoid and acromial processes. It is attached, by its apex, to the summit of the acromion just in front of the articular surface for the clavicle, and by its broad base to the whole length of the outer border of the coracoid process. Its posterior fibres are directed inward, its anterior fibres forward and inward. This ligament completes the vault formed by the coracoid and acromion processes for the protection of the head of the humerus. It is in relation, above, with the clavicle and under surface of the Deltoid muscle; below, with the tendon of the Supraspinatus muscle, a bursa being interposed. Its outer border is continuous with a dense lamina that passes beneath the Deltoid upon the tendons

of the Supra- and Infraspinatus muscles. This ligament is sometimes described as consisting of two marginal bands and a thinner intervening portion, the two bands being attached respectively to the apex and base of the coracoid process, and joining together at their attachment into the acromion process. When the Pectoralis minor is inserted, as sometimes is the case, into the capsule of the shoulder-joint instead of into the coracoid process, it passes between these two bands, and the intervening portion is then deficient.

The **Superior Transverse, Coracoid** or **Suprascapular Ligament** (*ligamentum transversum scapulæ superius*) (Figs. 219, 220, and 222) converts the suprascapular

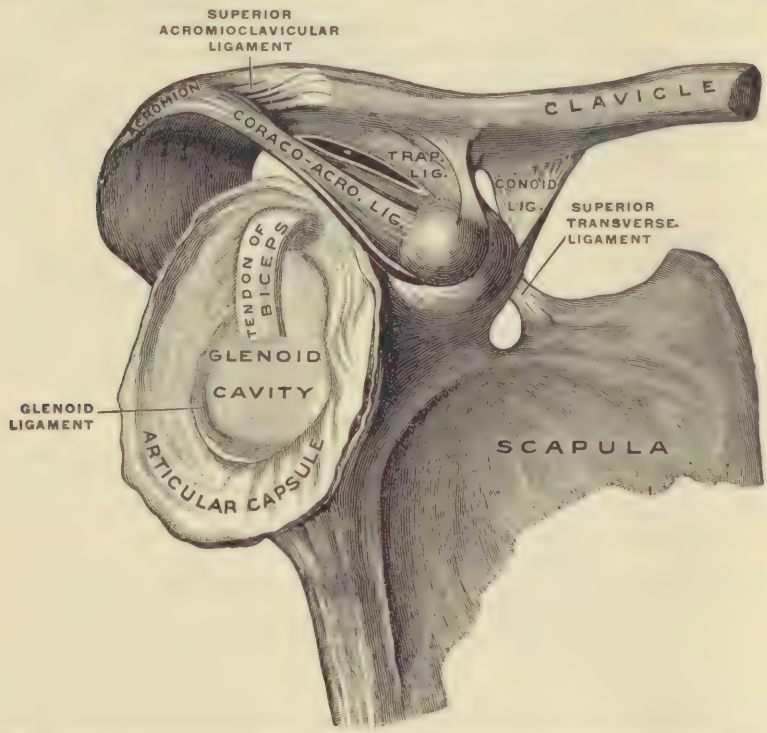


FIG. 220.—Right clavicle and shoulder-blade with ligament, from without and somewhat from in front. (Spalteholz.)

notch into a foramen. It is a thin and flat fasciculus, narrower at the middle than at the extremities, attached by one end to the base of the coracoid process, and by the other to the inner extremity of the scapular notch. The suprascapular nerve passes through the foramen; the suprascapular vessels pass over the ligament.

An additional ligament, the **Inferior Transverse** or **Spino-glenoid Ligament** (*ligamentum transversum scapulæ inferius*), is sometimes found on the scapula, stretching from the outer border of the spine to the margin of the glenoid cavity. When present, it forms an arch under which the suprascapular vessels and nerve pass as they enter the infraspinous fossa.

Movements of Scapula.—The scapula is capable of being moved upward and downward, forward and backward, or, by a combination of these movements, circumducted on the wall of the chest. The muscles which *raise* the scapula are the upper fibres of the Trapezius, the Levator anguli scapulæ, and the two Rhomboids; those which *depress* it are the lower fibres of the Trapezius, the Pectoralis minor, and, through the clavicle, the Subclavius. The scapula is drawn *backward* by the Rhomboids and the middle and lower fibres of the Trapezius, and *forward*

by the Serratus magnus and Pectoralis minor, assisted, when the arm is fixed, by the Pectoralis major. The mobility of the scapula is very considerable, and greatly assists the movements of the arm at the shoulder-joint. Thus, in raising the arm from the side the Deltoid and Supraspinatus can only lift it to a right

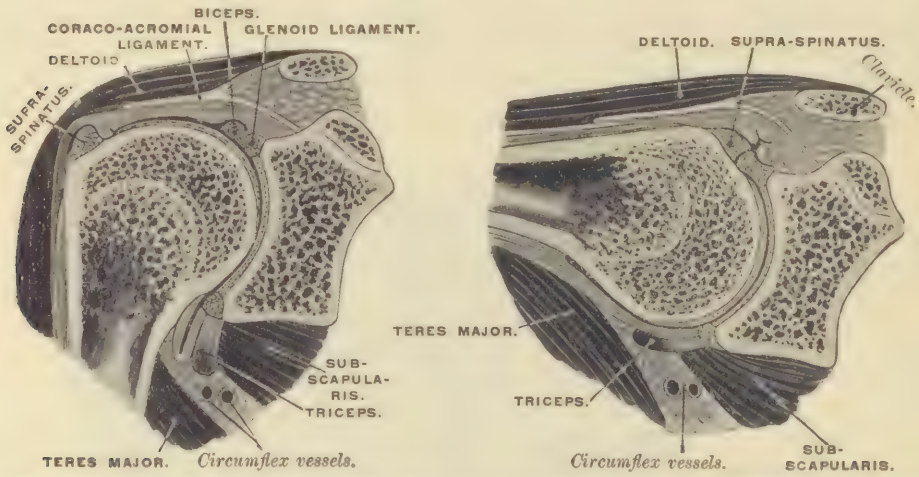


FIG. 221.—Vertical sections through the shoulder-joint, the arm being vertical and horizontal. (After Henle.)

angle with the trunk, the further elevation of the limb being effected by the Trapezius and Serratus magnus moving the scapula on the wall of the chest. This mobility is of special importance in ankylosis of the shoulder-joint, the movement of this bone compensating to a very great extent for the immobility of the joint.

IV. The Shoulder-joint (Articulatio Humeri) (Figs. 219, 220, 221, 222).

The shoulder is an enarthrodial or ball-and-socket joint. The bones entering into its formation are the large globular head of the humerus, which is received into the shallow glenoid cavity of the scapula—an arrangement which permits of very considerable movement, whilst the joint itself is protected against displacement by the tendons which surround it and by atmospheric pressure. The ligaments do not maintain the joint surfaces in apposition, because when they alone remain the humerus can be separated to a considerable extent from the glenoid cavity; their use, therefore, is to limit the amount of movement. Above, the joint is protected by an arched vault, formed by the under surfaces of the coracoid and acromion processes, and the coraco-acromial ligament. The articular surfaces are covered by a layer of cartilage: that on the head of the humerus is thicker at the centre than at the circumference, the reverse being the case in the glenoid cavity. The ligaments of the shoulder are the

Capsular.	Transverse humeral.
Coraco-humeral.	Glenoid.[1]

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) (Figs. 219, 220, and 222) completely encircles the articulation, being attached, above, to the circumference of the glenoid cavity beyond the glenoid ligament, below, to the anatomical neck of the humerus, approaching nearer to the articular cartilage above than in the rest of its extent. It is thicker above and below than elsewhere, and is remarkably loose and lax, and

[1] The long tendon of origin of the Biceps muscle also acts as one of the ligaments of this joint. See the observations on p. 268 on the function of the muscles passing over more than one joint.

much larger and longer than is necessary to keep the bones in contact, allowing them to be separated from each other more than an inch—an evident provision for that extreme freedom of movement which is peculiar to this articulation. Its superficial surface is strengthened, above, by the Supraspinatus; below, by the long head of the Triceps; behind, by the tendons of the Infraspinatus and Teres minor; and in front, by the tendon of the Subscapularis. The capsular ligament usually presents three openings: One anteriorly, below the coracoid process, establishes a communication between the synovial membrane of the joint and a

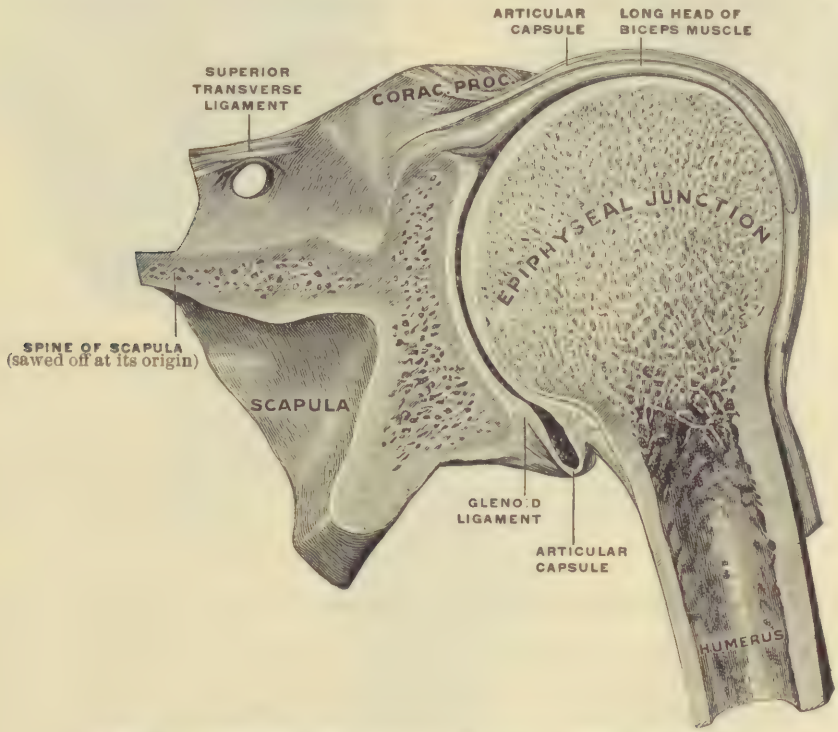


FIG. 222.—Right shoulder-joint, frontal section, from behind. (Spalteholz.)

bursa beneath the tendon of the Subscapularis muscle. The second, which is not constant, is at the posterior part, where a communication sometimes exists between the joint and a bursal sac belonging to the Infraspinatus muscle. The third is seen between the two tuberosities, for the passage of the long tendon of the Biceps muscle. It transmits a sac-like prolongation of the synovial membrane, which ends as a blind pouch opposite the surgical neck of the bone. This synovial sac is called the **vagina mucosa intertubercularis.**

The **Coraco-humeral Ligament** (*ligamentum coracohumerale*) (Fig. 219) is a broad band which strengthens the upper part of the capsular ligament. It arises from the outer border of the coracoid process, and passes obliquely downward and outward to the front of the great tuberosity of the humerus, being blended with the tendon of the Supraspinatus muscle. This ligament is intimately united to the capsular ligament throughout the greater part of its extent.

Supplemental Bands of the Capsular Ligament.—In addition to the coraco-humeral ligament, the capsular ligament is strengthened by supplemental bands in the interior of the joint. One of these bands is situated on the inner side of the joint, and passes from the inner edge of the glenoid cavity to the lower part of the lesser tuberosity of the humerus. This is sometimes known as **Flood's ligament,**

and is supposed to correspond with the ligamentum teres of the hip-joint. A second of these bands is situated at the lower part of the joint, and passes from the under edge of the glenoid cavity to the under part of the neck of the humerus, and is known as **Schlemm's ligament.** A third, called the **gleno-humeral ligament,** is situated at the upper part of the joint, and projects into its interior, so that it can be seen only when the capsule is opened. It is attached above to the apex of the glenoid cavity, close to the root of the coracoid process, and, passing downward along the inner edge of the tendon of the Biceps, is attached below to the lesser tuberosity of the humerus, where it forms the inner boundary of the upper part of the bicipital groove. It is a thin, ribbon-like band, occasionally quite free from the capsule.

The **Transverse Humeral Ligament** is a prolongation of the capsular ligament. It is a broad band of fibrous tissue passing from the lesser to the greater tuberosity of the humerus, and always limited to that portion of the bone which lies above the epiphysial line. It converts the bicipital groove into an osseo-aponeurotic canal, and is the analogue of the strong process of bone which connects the summits of the two tuberosities in the musk ox.

The **Glenoid Ligament** (*labrum glenoidale*) (Figs. 220 and 222) is a fibro-cartilaginous rim, attached round the margin of the glenoid cavity. It is triangular on section, the thickest portion being fixed to the circumference of the cavity, the free edge being thin and sharp. It is continuous above with the long tendon of the Biceps muscle, which bifurcates at the upper part of the cavity into two fasciculi, and becomes continuous with the fibrous tissue of the glenoid ligament. This ligament deepens the cavity for articulation, and protects the edges of the bone. It is lined by the synovial membrane.

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 222).—The synovial membrane is reflected from the margin of the glenoid cavity over the fibro-cartilaginous rim surrounding it: it is then reflected over the internal surface of the capsular ligament, covers the lower part and sides of the anatomical neck of the humerus as far as the cartilage covering the head of the bone. The long tendon of the Biceps muscle which passes through the capsular ligament is enclosed in a tubular sheath of synovial membrane (*vagina mucosa intertubercularis*), which is reflected upon it at the point where it perforates the capsule, and is continued around it as far as the level of the surgical neck of the humerus. The tendon of the Biceps is thus enabled to traverse the articulation, but it is not contained in the interior of the synovial cavity.

Bursæ.—A large bursa exists between the joint capsule and the tendon of the Subscapularis muscle. It is called the **subscapular bursa.** This sac communicates with the shoulder-joint by means of an opening at the inner side of the capsular ligament. The subscapular bursa is constant. Occasionally another and smaller bursa exists beneath the tendon of the infraspinatus. It is called the **infraspinatus bursa,** and communicates with the shoulder-joint by means of an opening in the outer surface of the capsule. The **subdeltoid** or **subacromial bursa** is placed between the under surface of the Deltoid muscle and the outer surface of the capsule. It does not communicate with the joint. The **subcutaneous acromial bursa** is between the surface and the summit of the acromion process. There is a bursa beneath the Coraco-brachialis muscle—one beneath the teres major—and one beneath the tendinous portion of the latissimus dorsi. There is also a bursa between the tendon of insertion of the Pectoralis major muscle and the long head of the biceps.

The **Muscles** in relation with the joint are, *above*, the Supraspinatus; *below*, the long head of the Triceps; in *front*, the Subscapularis; *behind*, the Infraspinatus and Teres minor; *within*, the long tendon of the Biceps. The Deltoid is placed most externally, and covers the articulation on its outer side, as well as in front and behind.

The **Arteries** supplying the joint are articular branches of the anterior and posterior circumflex, and the suprascapular.

The **Nerves** are derived from the circumflex and suprascapular.

Actions.—The shoulder-joint is capable of movement in every direction, forward, backward, abduction, adduction, circumduction, and rotation. The humerus is drawn *forward* by the Pectoralis major, anterior fibres of the Deltoid, Coracobrachialis, and by the Biceps when the forearm is flexed; *backward*, by the Latissimus dorsi, Teres major, posterior fibres of the Deltoid, and by the Triceps when the forearm is extended; it is *abducted* (elevated) by the Deltoid and Supraspinatus; it is *adducted* (depressed) by the Subscapularis, Pectoralis major, Latissimus dorsi, and Teres major; it is *rotated outward* by the Infraspinatus and Teres minor; and it is *rotated inward* by the Subscapularis, Latissimus dorsi, Teres major, and Pectoralis major.

The most striking peculiarities in this joint are: 1. The large size of the head of the humerus in comparison with the depth of the glenoid cavity, even when supplemented by the glenoid ligament. 2. The looseness of the capsule of the joint. 3. The intimate connection of the capsule with the muscles attached to the head of the humerus. 4. The peculiar relation of the biceps tendon to the joint.

It is in consequence of the relative size of the two articular surfaces that the joint enjoys such free movement in every possible direction. When these movements of the arm are arrested in the shoulder-joint by the contact of the bony surfaces and by the tension of the corresponding fibres of the capsule, together with that of the muscles acting as accessory ligaments, they can be carried considerably farther by the movements of the scapula, involving, of course, motion at the acromio- and sterno-clavicular joints. These joints are therefore to be regarded as accessory structures to the shoulder-joint.[1] The extent of these movements of the scapula is very considerable, especially in extreme elevation of the arm, which movement is best accomplished when the arm is thrown somewhat forward and outward, because the margin of the head of the humerus is by no means a true circle; its greatest diameter is from the bicipital groove downward, inward, and backward, and the greatest elevation of the arm can be obtained by rolling its articular surface in the direction of the measurement. The great width of the central portion of the humeral head also allows of very free horizontal movement when the arm is raised to a right angle, in which movement the arch formed by the acromion, the coracoid process, and the coraco-acromial ligament constitutes a sort of supplemental articular cavity for the head of the bone.

The looseness of the capsule is so great that the arm will fall about an inch from the scapula when the muscles are dissected from the capsular ligament and an opening made in it to remove the atmospheric pressure. The movements of the joint, therefore, are not regulated by the capsule so much as by the surrounding muscles and by the pressure of the atmosphere—an arrangement which "renders the movements of the joint much more easy than they would otherwise have been, and permits a swinging, pendulum-like vibration of the limb when the muscles are at rest" (Humphry). The fact, also, that in all ordinary positions of the joint the capsule is not put on the stretch enables the arm to move freely in all directions. Extreme movements are checked by the tension of appropriate portions of the capsule, as well as by the interlocking of the bones. Thus it is said that "abduction is checked by the contact of the great tuberosity with the upper edge of the glenoid cavity, adduction by the tension of the coraco-humeral ligament" (Beaunis et Bouchard). Cleland[2] maintains that the limitations of movement at the shoulder-joint are due to the structure of the joint itself, the glenoid ligament fitting, in different positions of the elevated arm, into the anatomical neck of the humerus.

[1] See p. 301.

[2] Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, 1884, vol. xviii.

Cathcart[1] has pointed out that in abducting the arm and raising it above the head, the scapula rotates throughout the whole movement with the exception of a short space at the beginning and at the end; that the humerus moves on the scapula not only from the hanging to the horizontal position, but also in passing upward as it approaches the vertical above; that the clavicle moves not only during the second half of the movement but in the first as well, though to a less extent—*i. e.*, the scapula and clavicle are concerned in the first stage as well as in the second; and that the humerus is partly involved in the second as well as chiefly in the first.

The intimate union of the tendons of the four short muscles with the capsule converts these muscles into elastic and spontaneously acting ligaments of the joint, and it is regarded as being also intended to prevent the folds into which all portions of the capsule would alternately fall in the varying positions of the joint from being driven between the bones by the pressure of the atmosphere.

The peculiar relations of the Biceps tendon to the shoulder-joint appear to subserve various purposes. In the first place, by its connection with both the shoulder and elbow the muscle harmonizes the action of the two joints, and acts as an elastic ligament in all positions, in the manner previously adverted to.[2] Next, it strengthens the upper part of the articular cavity, and prevents the head of the humerus from being pressed up against the acromion process, when the Deltoid contracts, instead of forming the centre of motion in the glenoid cavity. By its passage along the bicipital groove it assists in rendering the head of the humerus steady in the various movements of the arm. When the arm is raised from the side it assists the Supra- and Infraspinatus in rotating the head of the humerus in the glenoid cavity. It also holds the head of the bone firmly in contact with the glenoid cavity, and prevents its slipping over its lower edge, or being displaced by the action of the Latissimus dorsi and Pectoralis major, as in climbing and many other movements.

Surface Form.—The direction and position of the shoulder-joint may be indicated by a line drawn from the middle of the coraco-acromial ligament, in a curved direction, with its convexity inward, to the innermost part of that portion of the head of the humerus which can be felt in the axilla when the arm is forcibly abducted from the side. When the arm hangs by the side, not more than one-third of the head of the bone is in contact with the glenoid cavity, and three-quarters of its circumference is in front of a vertical line drawn from the anterior border of the acromion process.

Surgical Anatomy.—Owing to the construction of the shoulder-joint and the freedom of movement which it enjoys, as well as in consequence of its exposed situation, it is more frequently *dislocated* than any other joint in the body. Dislocations of the shoulder contribute about forty per cent. of the cases in tables of dislocations. *Dislocation* occurs when the arm is thrown into extreme abduction, and when, therefore, the head of the humerus presses against the lower and front part of the capsule, which is the thinnest and least supported part of the ligament. The rent in the capsule almost invariably takes place in this situation, between the tendon of the Subscapularis and the Triceps, and through it the head of the bone escapes, so that the dislocation in most instances is primarily subglenoid. The head of the bone does not usually remain in this situation, but generally assumes some other position, which varies according to the direction and amount of force producing the dislocation and the relative strength of the muscles in front and behind the joint. In consequence of the muscles at the back being weaker than those in front, and especially on account of the long head of the Triceps preventing the bone passing backward, dislocation forward is much more common than backward. The most frequent position which the head of the humerus ultimately assumes is on the front of the neck of the scapula, beneath the coracoid process, and hence named subcoracoid dislocation. Occasionally, in consequence probably of a greater amount of force being brought to bear on the limb, the head is driven farther inward, and rests on the upper part of the front of the chest, beneath the clavicle (subclavicular). If the head of the bone passes under the Subscapularis muscle and also under the Teres major or the lower border of the Pectoralis major, the arm remains abducted, or even with the elbow raised above the head (*luxatio erecta*). Sometimes the humerus remains in the position in which it was primarily displaced, resting on the axillary border of the scapula (sub-

[1] Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, 1884, vol. xviii.

[2] See p. 268

glenoid), and rarely it passes backward and remains in the infraspinatous fossa beneath the spine (subspinous). If *dislocation* frequently recurs the condition may be amended in some cases by exposing the capsule and putting tucks in it by means of sutures.

An old unreduced dislocation is sometimes treated by incising the soft parts and returning the head of the humerus into the glenoid cavity. In other cases the head of the humerus is excised. *Dislocation* of the long tendon of the *Biceps muscle* from the bicipital groove is a rare accident. When it occurs the arm is rigid in abduction, but the head of the humerus is found to be in the glenoid cavity. It is reduced by flexion of the elbow and rotation of the arm. *Rupture* of the long tendon of the biceps is more common than dislocation of the tendon.

After this injury the belly of the muscle is relaxed and is nearer than normal to the elbow; flexion of the forearm is much weakened, and is weaker in supination than it is in pronation. The head of the humerus passes forward and inward, and the condition is often mistaken for dislocation of the bone.

If we desire to *aspirate* the shoulder-joint, place the arm against the side, flex the forearm at a right angle to the arm, carry the forearm across the front of the chest, and enter the trocar below the acromion (De Vos).

The shoulder-joint is sometimes the seat of all those *inflammatory affections*, both acute and chronic, which attack joints, though perhaps it suffers less frequently than some other joints of equal size and importance. *Acute synovitis* may result from injury, rheumatism, or pyæmia, or may follow secondarily on the so-called acute epiphysitis of infants. It is attended with effusion into the joint, and when this occurs the capsule is evenly distended and the contour of the joint rounded. Special projections may occur at the site of the openings in the capsular ligament. Thus a swelling may appear just in front of the joint, internal to the lesser tuberosity, from effusion into the bursa beneath the Subscapularis muscle; or, again, a swelling which is sometimes bilobed may be seen in the interval between the Deltoid and Pectoralis major muscles, from effusion into the diverticulum, which runs down the bicipital groove with the tendon of the biceps. The effusion into the synovial membrane can be best ascertained by examination from the axilla, where a soft, elastic, fluctuating swelling can usually be felt. The *bursa* beneath the *deltoid* is sometimes ruptured by violence, and sometimes inflames, suppurates, or becomes tuberculous.

Tuberculous arthritis not unfrequently attacks the shoulder-joint, and may lead to total destruction of the articulation, when ankylosis may result or long-protracted suppuration may necessitate excision. This joint is also one of those which is most liable to be the seat of *osteo-arthritis*, and may also be affected in gout and rheumatism; or in locomotor ataxia, when it occasionally becomes the seat of *Charcot's disease*.

Excision of the shoulder-joint may be required in cases of arthritis (especially the tuberculous form) which have gone on to destruction of the articulation; in *compound dislocations* and *fractures*, particularly those arising from gunshot injuries, in which there has been extensive injury to the head of the bone; in some cases of old *unreduced dislocation*, where there is much pain; and possibly in some few cases of growth connected with the upper end of the bone. The operation is best performed by making an incision from the middle of the coraco-acromial ligament down the arm for about three inches: this will expose the bicipital groove and the tendon of the Biceps, which may be either divided or hooked out of the way, according as to whether it is implicated in the disease or not. The capsule is then freely opened, and the muscles attached to the greater and lesser tuberosities of the humerus divided. The head of the bone can then be thrust out of the wound and sawn off, or divided with a narrow saw *in situ* and subsequently removed. The section should be made, if possible, just below the articular surface, so as to leave the bone as long as possible. The glenoid cavity must then be examined, and gouged if carious.

V. The Elbow-joint (Articulatio Cubiti) (Figs. 223, 224, 225, 226).

The elbow is a ginglymus or hinge-joint. The bones entering into its formation are the trochlea of the humerus, which is received into the greater sigmoid cavity of the ulna (*articulatio humeroulnaris*), and admits of the movements peculiar to this joint—viz., flexion and extension; whilst the capitellum or radial head of the humerus articulates with the cup-shaped depression on the head of the radius (*articulatio humeroradialis*); the circumference of the head of the radius articulates with the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna (*articulatio radio-ulnaris proximalis*), allowing of the movement of rotation of the radius on the ulna, the chief action of the superior radio-ulnar articulation. The articular surfaces are covered with a thin layer of cartilage, and connected together by a **capsular ligament** (*capsula articularis*) (Fig. 225) of unequal thickness, being especially thickened on its two sides and, to a less extent, in front and behind.

These thickened portions are usually described as distinct ligaments under the following names:

Anterior.	Internal Lateral
Posterior.	External Lateral.

The *orbicular ligament* of the upper radio-ulnar articulation must also be reckoned among the ligaments of the elbow.

The **Anterior Ligament** (Fig. 223) is a broad and thin fibrous layer which covers the anterior surface of the joint. It is attached to the front of the internal condyle and to the front of the humerus immediately above the coronoid and radial fossæ; below, to the anterior surface of the coronoid process of the ulna and to the orbicular ligament, being continuous on each side with the lateral ligaments. Its

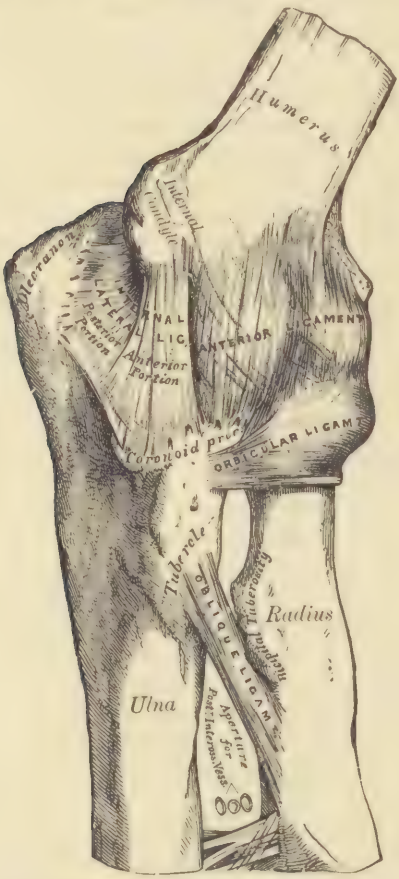


Fig. 223.—Left elbow-joint, showing anterior and internal ligaments.

Fig. 224.—Left elbow-joint, showing posterior and external ligaments.

superficial fibres pass obliquely from the inner condyle of the humerus outward to the orbicular ligament. The middle fibres, vertical in direction, pass from the upper part of the coronoid depression and become partly blended with the preceding, but are mainly inserted into the anterior surface of the coronoid process. The deep or transverse set intersects these at right angles. This ligament is in relation, in front, with the Brachialis anticus muscle, except at its outermost part; behind, it is in relation with the synovial membrane.

The **Posterior Ligament** (Fig. 224) is a thin and loose membranous fold, attached, above, to the lower end of the humerus, above and at the sides of the olecranon

fossa; below, to the groove on the upper and outer surfaces of the olecranon. The superficial or transverse fibres pass between the adjacent margins of the olecranon fossa. The deeper portion consists of vertical fibres, some of which, thin and weak, pass from the upper part of the olecranon fossa to the margin of the olecranon; others, thicker and stronger, pass from the back of the capitellum of the humerus to the posterior border of the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna. This ligament is in relation, behind, with the tendon of the Triceps muscle and the Anconeus muscle; in front, with the synovial membrane.

The **Internal Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum collaterale ulnare*) (Fig. 223) is a thick triangular band consisting of two portions, an anterior and posterior, united by a thinner intermediate portion. The **anterior portion**, directed obliquely forward, is attached, above, by its apex, to the front part of the internal condyle of the humerus; and, below, by its broad base, to the inner margin of the coronoid process. The **posterior portion**, also of triangular form, is attached, above, by its apex, to the lower and back part of the internal condyle; below, to the inner margin of the olecranon. Between these two bands a few intermediate fibres descend from the internal condyle to blend with a transverse band of ligamentous tissue which bridges across the notch between the olecranon and coronoid processes. This ligament is in relation, internally, with the Triceps and Flexor carpi ulnaris muscles and the ulnar nerve, and gives origin to part of the Flexor sublimis digitorum muscle.

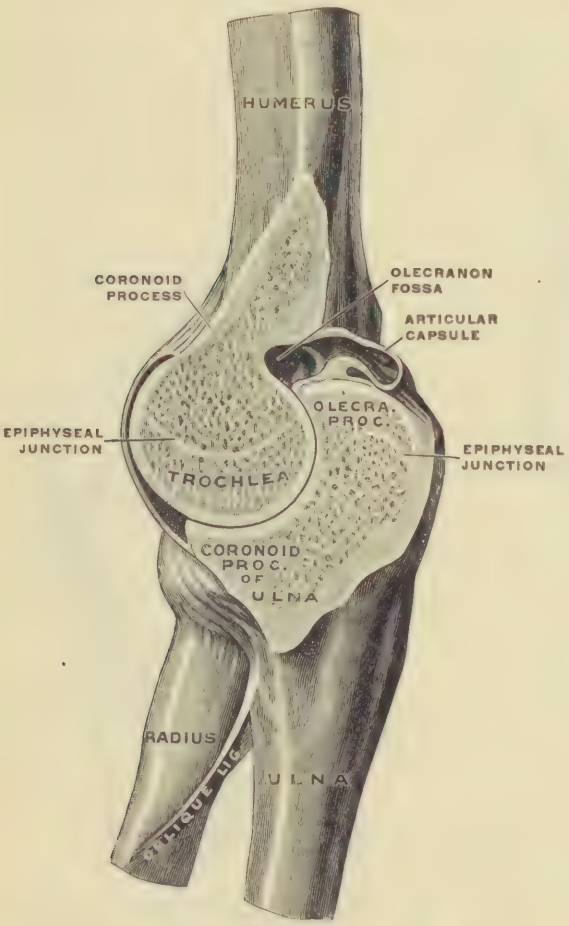


FIG. 225.—Right elbow-joint, cut through at right angles to the axis of the trochlea humeri, from the ulnar side. (Spalteholz.)

The **External Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum collaterale radiale*) (Fig. 224) is a short and narrow fibrous band less distinct than the internal, attached, above, to a depression below the external condyle of the humerus; below, to the orbicular ligament, some of its most posterior fibres passing over that ligament, to be inserted into the outer margin of the ulna. This ligament is intimately blended with the tendon of origin of the Supinator brevis muscle.

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 225).—The synovial membrane is very extensive. It covers the margin of the articular surface of the humerus, and lines the coronoid and olecranon fossa on that bone; from these points it is reflected over the anterior, posterior, and lateral ligaments, and forms a **pouch** (*recessus sacciformis*) between the lesser sigmoid cavity, the internal surface of the orbicular ligament, and the

circumference of the head of the radius. Projecting into the cavity is a crescentic fold of synovial membrane, between the radius and ulna, suggesting the division of the joint into two: one the humero-radial, the other the humero-ulnar.

Between the capsular ligament and the synovial membrane are three masses of fat: one, the largest, above the olecranon fossa, which is pressed into the fossa by the Triceps during flexion; a second, over the coronoid fossa; and a third, over the radial fossa. The two last-named pads are pressed into their respective fossæ during extension.

The **muscles** (Fig. 226) in relation with the joint are, in *front*, the Brachialis anticus; *behind*, the Triceps and Anconeus; *externally*, the Supinator brevis and the common tendon of origin of the Extensor muscles; *internally*, the common tendon of origin of the Flexor muscles, and the Flexor carpi ulnaris, with the ulnar nerve.

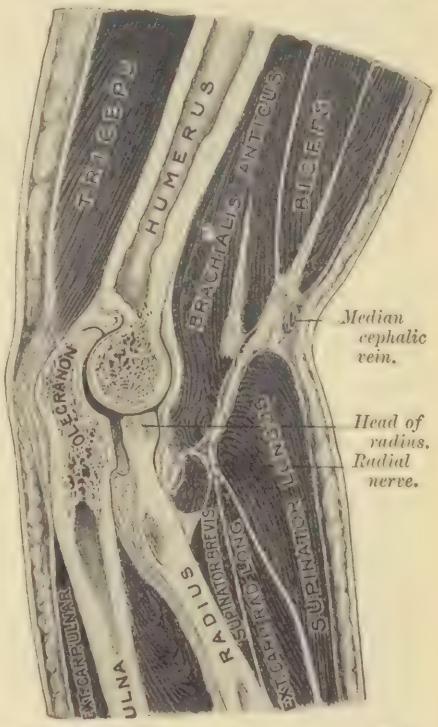


FIG. 226.—Sagittal section of the right elbow-joint, taken somewhat obliquely and seen from the radial aspect. (After Braune.)

The **arteries** supplying the joint are derived from the anastomosis between the superior profunda, inferior profunda, and anastomotica magna, branches of the brachial, with the anterior, posterior, and interosseous recurrent branches of the ulnar and the recurrent branch of the radial. These vessels form a complete chain of inosculation around the joint.

The **nerves** are derived from the ulnar as it passes between the internal condyle and the olecranon; a filament from the musculo-cutaneous (Rüdinger), and two filaments from the median (Macalister).

Bursæ.—The **olecranon bursa** (*bursa subcutaneous olecrani*) is placed between the olecranon process and the cutaneous surface. A bursa exists between the tendon of the Biceps and the tubercle of the radius (*bursa bicipitoradialis*)—another between the Triceps tendon and the olecranon process (*bursa subtendinea olecrani*)—another between the cutaneous surface and the external condyle (*bursa subcutanea epicondyli humeri lateralis*)—another between the cutaneous surface and the internal condyle (*bursa subcutanea epicondyli humeri medialis*—another within the Triceps tendon at its insertion on the olecranon (*bursa intratendinea olecrani*).

Actions.—The elbow-joint comprises three different portions—viz., the joint between the ulna and humerus, that between the head of the radius and the humerus, and the superior radio-ulnar articulation, described below. All these articular surfaces are invested by a common synovial membrane, and the movements of the whole joint should be studied together. The combination of the movements of flexion and extension of the forearm with those of pronation and supination of the hand, which is ensured by the two being performed at the same joint, is essential to the accuracy of the various minute movements of the hand.

The portion of the joint between the ulna and humerus is a simple hinge-joint, and allows of movements of flexion and extension only. Owing to the obliquity of the trochlear surface of the humerus, this movement does not take

place in a straight line: so that when the forearm is extended and supinated the axis of the arm and forearm is not in the same line, but the one portion of the limb forms an angle with the others, and the hand, with the forearm, is directed outward. During flexion, on the other hand, the forearm and the hand tend to approach the middle line of the body, and thus enable the hand to be easily carried to the face. The shape of the articular surface of the humerus, with its prominences and depressions accurately adapted to the opposing surfaces of the olecranon, prevents any lateral movement. *Flexion* is produced by the action of the Biceps and Brachialis anticus, assisted by the muscles arising from the internal condyle of the humerus and the Supinator longus; *extension*, by the Triceps and Anconeus, assisted by the extensors of the wrist and by the Extensor communis digitorum and Extensor minimi digiti.

The joint between the head of the radius and the capitellum or radial head of the humerus is an arthrodial joint. The bony surfaces would of themselves constitute an enarthrosis, and allow of movement in all directions were it not for the orbicular ligament by which the head of the radius is bound down firmly to the sigmoid cavity of the ulna, and which prevents any separation of the two bones laterally. It is to the same ligament that the head of the radius owes its security from dislocation, which would otherwise constantly occur as a consequence of the shallowness of the cup-like surface on the head of the radius. In fact, but for this ligament the tendon of the biceps would be liable to pull the head of the radius out of the joint.[1] In complete extension the head of the radius glides so far back on the outer condyle that its edge is plainly felt at the back of the articulation. Flexion and extension of the elbow-joint are limited by the tension of the structures on the front and back of the joint, the limitation of flexion being also aided by the soft structures of the arm and forearm coming in contact.

In combination with any position of flexion or extension the head of the radius can be rotated in the upper radio-ulnar joint, carrying the hand with it. The hand is directly articulated to the lower surface of the radius only, and the concave or sigmoid surface on the lower end of the radius travels round the lower end of the ulna. The latter bone is excluded from the wrist-joint (as will be seen in the sequel) by the interarticular fibro-cartilage. Thus, rotation of the head of the radius round an axis which passes through the centre of the radial head of the humerus imparts circular movement to the hand through a very considerable arc.

Surface Form.—If the forearm be slightly flexed on the arm, a curved crease or fold with its convexity downward may be seen running across the front of the elbow, extending from one condyle to the other. The centre of this fold is some slight distance above the line of the joint. The position of the radio-humeral portion of the joint can be at once ascertained by feeling for a slight groove or depression between the head of the radius and the capitellum of the humerus at the back of the articulation.

Surgical Anatomy.—From the great breadth of the joint, and the manner in which the articular surfaces are interlocked, and also on account of the strong lateral ligaments and the support which the joint derives from the mass of muscles attached to each condyle of the humerus, *lateral displacement* of the bones is very uncommon, whereas *antero-posterior dislocation*, on account of the shortness of the antero-posterior diameter, the weakness of the anterior and posterior ligaments, and the want of support of muscles, much more frequently takes place, dislocation backward taking place when the forearm is in a position of extension, and forward when in a position of flexion. For, in the former position, that of extension, the coronoid process is not interlocked into the coronoid fossa, and loses its grip to a certain extent, whereas the olecranon process is in the olecranon fossa, and entirely prevents displacement forward. On the other hand, during flexion, the coronoid process is in the coronoid fossa, and prevents dislocation backward, while the olecranon loses its grip and is not so efficient, as during extension, in preventing a forward displacement. When lateral dislocation does take place, it is generally incomplete.

[1] Humphry, op cit., p. 419.

Dislocation of the elbow-joint is of common occurrence in children, far more common than dislocation of any other articulation, for, as a rule, fracture of a bone more frequently takes place, under the application of any severe violence, in young persons than dislocation. In lesions of this joint there is often very great difficulty in ascertaining the exact nature of the injury. *Sprain* of the elbow is a very common injury in childhood. Injury to the radio-humeral joint is frequently produced by lifting a child by the hand, as in swinging it over a gutter. The supinator brevis, which under normal circumstances would retain the head of the radius against the capitellum of the humerus, is unable to do so, the radio-humeral articulation receives the force and the orbicular ligament undergoes upward displacement, is caught between the head of the radius and the capitellum and jams the joint.[1] This injury is often called *subluxation of the head of the radius.*

The elbow-joint is occasionally the seat of *acute synovitis.* The synovial membrane then becomes distended with fluid, the bulging showing itself principally around the olecranon process; that is to say, on its inner and outer sides and above, in consequence of the laxness of the posterior ligament. Occasionally a well-marked, triangular projection may be seen on the outer side of the olecranon, from bulging of the synovial membrane beneath the Anconeus muscle. Again, there is often some swelling just above the head of the radius, in the line of the radio-humeral joint. There is generally not much swelling at the front of the joint, though sometimes deep-seated fulness beneath the Brachialis anticus may be noted. When suppuration occurs the abscess usually points at one or other border of the Triceps muscle; occasionally the pus discharges itself in front, near the insertion of the Brachialis anticus muscle. *Chronic synovitis,* usually of tuberculous origin, is of common occurrence in the elbow-joint: under these circumstances the forearm tends to assume the position of semi-flexion, which is that of greatest ease and relaxation of ligaments. It should be borne in mind that should ankylosis occur in this or the extended position, the limb will not be nearly so useful as if it becomes ankylosed in a position of rather less than a right angle. *Loose cartilages* are sometimes met with in the elbow-joint, not so commonly, however, as in the knee; nor do they, as a rule, give rise to such urgent symptoms. They rarely require operative interference. The elbow-joint is also sometimes affected with *osteo-arthritis,* but this affection is less common in this articulation than in some other of the larger joints. *Bursitis* about the elbow is not uncommon. Enlargement of the subcutaneous bursa over the olecranon is known as *miners' elbow.* Enlargement of any one of the bursæ may occur.

Excision of the elbow is principally required for one of three conditions—viz., tuberculous arthritis, injury and its results, and ankylosis in a position which greatly impairs the usefulness of the limb; but may be necessary for some other rarer conditions, such as disorganizing arthritis after pyæmia, unreduced dislocation, and osteo-arthritis. The results of the operation are, as a rule, more favorable than those of excision of any other joint, and it is one, therefore, that the surgeon should never hesitate to perform, especially in the first three of the conditions mentioned above. The operation is best performed by a single vertical incision down the back of the joint, a transverse incision, over the outer condyle, being added if the parts are much thickened and fixed. A straight incision is made about four inches long, the mid-point of which is on a level with and a little to the inner side of the tip of the olecranon. This incision is made down to the bone, through the substance of the Triceps muscle. The operator with the point of his knife, and guarding the soft parts with his thumb-nail, separates them from the bone. In doing this there are two structures which he should carefully avoid: the ulnar nerve, which lies parallel to his incision, but a little internal, as it courses down between the internal condyle and the olecranon process, and the prolongation of the Triceps into the deep fascia of the forearm over the Anconeus muscle. Having cleared the bones and divided the lateral and posterior ligaments, the forearm is strongly flexed and the ends of the bone turned out and sawn off. The section of the humerus should be through the base of the condyles, that of the ulna and radius should be just below the level of the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna and the neck of the radius. In this operation the object is to obtain such fibrous union as shall allow free motion of the bones of the forearm; and, therefore, passive motion must be commenced early, that is to say, about the tenth day.

VI. Radio-ulnar Articulation (Articulatio Radioulnaris).

The articulation of the radius with the ulna is effected by ligaments which connect together both extremities as well as the shafts of these bones. It may, consequently, be subdivided into three articulations: (1) the **superior radio-ulnar,** which is a portion of the elbow-joint; (2) the **middle radio-ulnar**; and (3) the **inferior radio-ulnar** articulations.

[1] Mr. Jonathan Hutchinson, Jr., in Annals of Surgery, August, 1885.

1. Superior or Proximal Radio-ulnar Articulation (Articulatio Radioulnaris Proximalis).

This articulation is a trochoid or pivot-joint. The bones entering into its formation are the inner side of the circumference of the head of the radius rotating within the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna. Its only ligament is the **annular** or **orbicular**.

The **Orbicular** or **Annular Ligament** (*ligamentum annulare radii*) (Figs. 223, 224, and 227) is a strong, flat band of ligamentous fibres which surrounds the head of the radius and retains it in firm connection with the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna. It forms about four-fifths of an osseo-fibrous ring, attached by each end to the extremities of the lesser sigmoid cavity, and is smaller at the lower part of its circumference than above, by which means the head of the radius is more securely held in its position. Its *outer surface* is strengthened by the external lateral ligament of the elbow, and affords origin to part of the Supinator brevis muscle. Its *inner surface* is smooth, and lined by synovial membrane. The synovial membrane is continuous with that which lines the elbow-joint.

Actions.—The movement which takes place in this articulation is limited to rotation of the head of the radius within the orbicular ligament, and upon the lesser sigmoid cavity of the ulna, rotation forward being called *pronation;* rotation backward, *supination*. Supination is performed by the Biceps and Supinator brevis, assisted to a slight extent by the Extensor muscles of the thumb and, in certain positions, by the Supinator longus. Pronation is performed by the Pronator radii teres and the Pronator quadratus, assisted, in some positions, by the Supinator longus.

Surface Form.—The position of the superior radio-ulnar joint is marked on the surface of the body by the little dimple on the back of the elbow which indicates the position of the head of the radius.

Surgical Anatomy.—*Dislocation* of the head of the radius alone is not an uncommon accident, and occurs most frequently in young persons from falls on the hand when the forearm is extended and supinated, the head of the bone being displaced forward. It is attended by rupture of the orbicular ligament. Occasionally a peculiar injury, which is supposed to be a subluxation, occurs in young children in lifting them from the ground by the hand or forearm. It is believed that the head of the radius is displaced downward or the orbicular ligament upward, and the upper border of the ligament becomes folded over the head of the radius, between it and the capitellum of the humerus.

2. Middle Radio-ulnar Ligaments.

The interval between the shafts of the radius and ulna is occupied by two ligaments.

Oblique. Interosseous.

The **Oblique** or **Round Ligament** (*chorda obliqua*) (Figs. 223 and 225) is a small, flattened fibrous band which extends obliquely downward and outward from the tubercle of the ulna at the base of the coronoid process to the radius a little below the bicipital tuberosity. Its fibres run in the opposite direction to those of the interosseous ligament, and it appears to be placed as a substitute for it in the upper part of the interosseous interval. This ligament is sometimes wanting.

The **Interosseous Membrane** (*membrana interossea antibrachii*) (Fig. 227) is a broad and thin plane of fibrous tissue descending obliquely downward and inward, from the interosseous ridge on the radius to that on the ulna. It is deficient above, commencing about an inch beneath the tubercle of the radius; is broader in the middle than at either extremity; and presents an oval aperture just above its lower margin for the passage of the anterior interosseous vessels to the back of the forearm. This ligament serves to connect the bones and to increase the extent of surface for the attachment of the deep muscles. Between its upper

border and the oblique ligament an interval exists through which the posterior interosseous vessels pass to the dorsum of the forearm. Two or three fibrous bands are occasionally found on the posterior surface of this membrane which descend obliquely from the ulna toward the radius, and which have consequently a direction contrary to that of the other fibres. It is in relation, *in front*, by its upper three-fourths with the Flexor longus pollicis on the outer side, and with the Flexor profundus digitorum on the inner, lying upon the interval between which are the anterior interosseous vessels and nerve; by its lower fourth, with the Pronator quadratus; *behind*, with the Supinator brevis, Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, Extensor brevis pollicis, Extensor longus pollicis, Extensor indicis; and, near the wrist, with the anterior interosseous artery and posterior interosseous nerve.

3. Inferior or Distal Radio-ulnar Articulation (Articulatio Radioulnaris Distalis).

This is a pivot-joint, formed by the sigmoid cavity at the inner side of the lower end of the radius receiving the head of the ulna. The articular surfaces are covered by a thin layer of cartilage, and connected together by a capsule (*capsula articularis*), portions of which are usually described as distinct ligaments. The ligaments of the articulation are:

Anterior Radio-ulnar.
Posterior Radio-ulnar.
Triangular Interarticular Fibrocartilage.

The **Anterior Radio-ulnar Ligament** (Fig. 228) is a narrow band of fibres extending from the anterior margin of the sigmoid cavity of the radius to the anterior surface of the head of the ulna.

The **Posterior Radio-ulnar Ligament** (Fig. 229) extends between similar points on the posterior surface of the articulation.

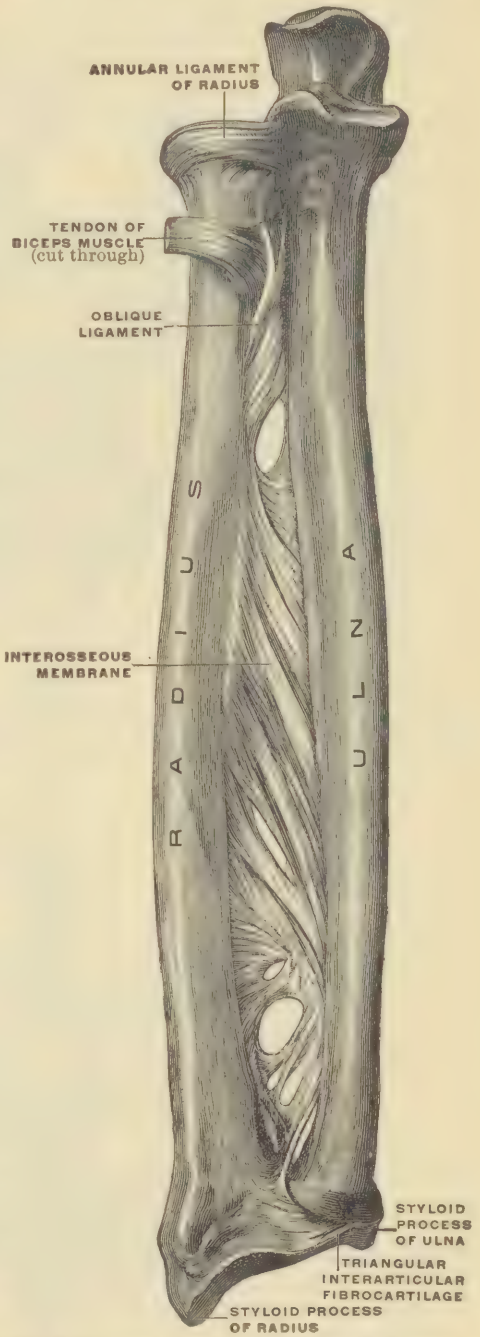


Fig. 227.—Bones of the right forearm, with ligaments from the volar surface. (Spalteholz.)

The **Triangular Interarticular Fibro-cartilage** (*discus articularis*) (Figs. 227 and 231) is triangular in shape, and is placed transversely beneath the head of the ulna, binding the lower end of this bone and the radius firmly together. Its periphery

is thicker than its centre, which is thin and occasionally perforated. It is attached by its apex to a depression which separates the styloid process of the ulna from the head of that bone; and by its base, which is thin, to the prominent edge of

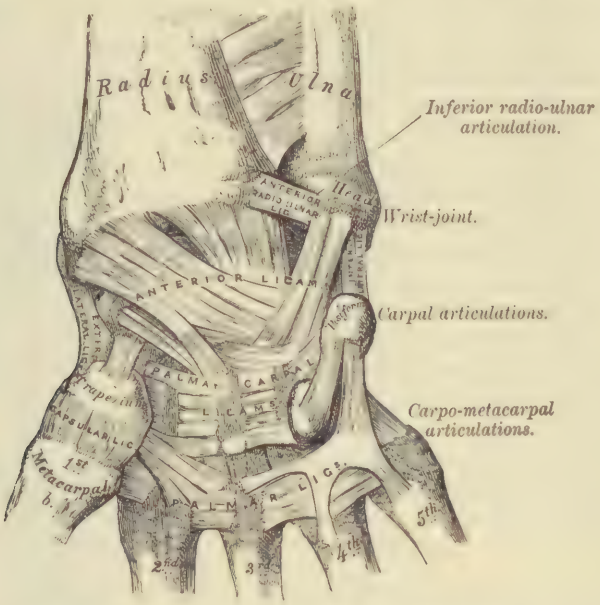


FIG. 228.—Ligaments of wrist and hand. Anterior view.

the radius, which separates the sigmoid cavity from the carpal articulating surface. Its margins are united to the ligaments of the wrist-joint. Its *upper surface*, smooth and concave, articulates with the head of the ulna, forming an

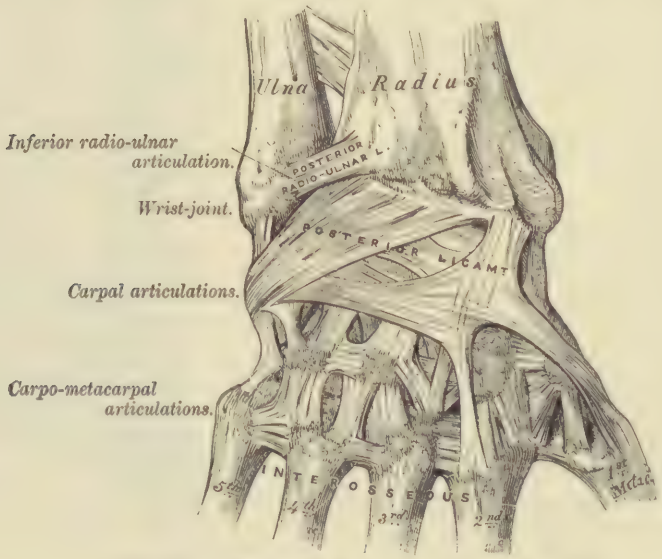


FIG. 229.—Ligaments of wrist and hand. Posterior view.

arthrodial joint; its *under surface*, also concave and smooth, forms part of the wrist-joint and articulates with the cuneiform and inner part of the semilunar bone. Both surfaces are lined by a synovial membrane—the upper surface, by

one peculiar to the radio-ulnar articulation; the under surface, by the synovial membrane of the wrist.

Synovial Membrane.—The synovial membrane (Fig. 231) of this articulation has been called, from its extreme looseness, the **membrana sacciformis.** It projects horizontally inward between the head of the ulna and the interarticular fibro-cartilage, and upward between the radius and the ulna, forming a very loose cul-de-sac (*recessus sacciformis*). The quantity of synovia which it contains is usually considerable. The inferior radio-ulnar joint does not communicate with the wrist-joint.

Actions.—The movement in the inferior radio-ulnar articulation is just the reverse of that in the superior radio-ulnar joint. It consists of a movement of rotation of the lower end of the radius round an axis which corresponds to the centre of the head of the ulna. When the radius rotates forward, *pronation* of the forearm and hand is the result; and when backward, *supination*. It will thus be seen that in pronation and supination of the forearm and hand the radius describes a segment of a cone, the axis of which extends from the centre of the head of the radius to the middle of the head of the ulna. In this movement, however, the ulna is not quite stationary, but rotates a little in the opposite direction. So that it also describes the segment of a cone, though of smaller size than that described by the radius. The movement which causes this alteration in the position of the head of the ulna takes place principally at the shoulder-joint by a rotation of the humerus, but possibly also to a slight extent at the elbow-joint.[1]

Surface Form.—The position of the inferior radio-ulnar joint may be ascertained by feeling for a slight groove at the back of the wrist, between the prominent head of the ulna and the lower end of the radius, when the forearm is in a state of almost complete pronation.

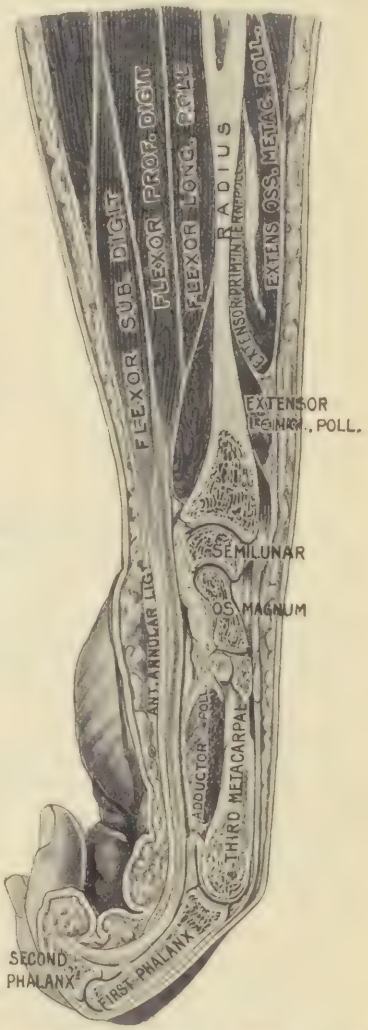


Fig. 230.—Longitudinal section of the right forearm, hand, and third finger, viewed from the ulnar aspect. (After Braune.)

VII. Radio-carpal or Wrist-joint (Articulatio Radiocarpea) (Figs. 228, 229, 231).

The wrist is a condyloid articulation. The parts entering into its formation are the lower end of the radius and under surface of the interarticular fibro-cartilage, which form together the receiving cavity, and the scaphoid, semilunar, and the cuneiform bones, which form the condyle. The articular surface of the radius and the under surface of the interarticular fibro-cartilage are the receiving cavity, forming together a transversely elliptical concave surface. The articular surfaces of the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones form together a smooth, convex surface, the condyle, which is received into the concavity above mentioned. All the bony surfaces of the articulation are covered with cartilage, and

[1] See Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, vol. xix., parts ii., iii., and iv.

connected together by a loose capsule (*capsula articularis*), which is divided into the following ligaments:

External Lateral.	Anterior.
Internal Lateral.	Posterior.

The **External Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum collaterale carpi radiale*) (Fig. 228) extends from the summit of the styloid process of the radius to the outer side of the scaphoid, some of its fibres being prolonged to the trapezium and annular ligament.

The **Internal Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum collaterale carpi ulnare*) (Fig. 228) is a rounded cord, attached, above, to the extremity of the styloid process of the ulna, and dividing below into two fasciculi, which are attached, one to the inner side of the cuneiform bone, the other to the pisiform bone and annular ligament.

The **Anterior** or **Volar Ligament** (*ligamentum radiocarpeum volare*) (Fig. 228) is a broad, membranous band, attached, above, to the anterior margin of the lower end of the radius, its styloid process, and the ulna: its fibres pass downward and inward to be inserted into the palmar surface of the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones, some of the fibres being continued to the os magnum. In addition to this broad membrane there is a distinct rounded fasciculus, superficial to the rest, which passes from the base of the styloid process of the ulna to the semilunar and cuneiform bones. This ligament is perforated by numerous apertures for the passage of vessels, and is in relation, in *front*, with the tendons of the Flexor profundus digitorum and Flexor longus pollicis; *behind*, with the synovial membrane of the wrist-joint.

The **Posterior** or **Dorsal Ligament** (*ligamentum radiocarpeum dorsale*) (Fig. 229), less thick and strong than the anterior, is attached, above, to the posterior border of the lower end of the radius; its fibres pass obliquely downward and inward, to be attached to the dorsal surface of the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones, being continuous with those of the dorsal carpal ligaments. This ligament is in relation, *behind*, with the extensor tendons of the fingers; in *front*, with the synovial membrane of the wrist.

Synovial Membrane.—The synovial membrane (Fig. 231) lines the inner surface of the ligaments above described, extending from the lower end of the radius and interarticular fibro-cartilage above to the articular surfaces of the carpal bones below. It is loose and lax, and presents numerous folds, especially behind.

Relations.—The wrist-joint is covered in front by the flexor and behind by the extensor tendons (Fig. 230); it is also in relation with the radial and ulnar arteries.

The **arteries** supplying the joint are the anterior and posterior carpal branches of the radial and ulnar, the anterior and posterior interosseous, and some ascending branches from the deep palmar arch.

The **nerves** are derived from the ulnar and posterior interosseous.

Actions.—The movements permitted in this joint are *flexion*, *extension*, *abduction*, *adduction*, and *circumduction*. Its actions will be further studied with those of the carpus, with which they are combined.

Surface Form.—The line of the radio-carpal joint is on a level with the apex of the styloid process of the ulna.

Surgical Anatomy.—The wrist-joint is rarely *dislocated*, its strength depending mainly upon the numerous strong tendons which surround the articulation. Its security is further provided for by the number of small bones of which the carpus is made up, and which are united by very strong ligaments. The slight movement which takes place between the several bones serves to break the jars that result from falls or blows on the hand. Dislocation backward, which is the more common dislocation, simulates to a considerable extent Colles's fracture of the radius, and is liable to be mistaken for it. The diagnosis can be easily made out by observing the relative position of the styloid processes of the radius and the ulna. In the natural condition

the styloid process of the radius is on a lower level—*i. e.*, nearer the ground—when the arm hangs by the side, than that of the ulna, and the same would be the case in dislocation. In Colles's fracture, on the other hand, the styloid process of the radius is on the same or even a higher level than that of the ulna.

The wrist-joint is occasionally the seat of *acute synovitis*, the result of traumatism or arising in the rheumatic or pyæmic state. When the synovial sac is distended with fluid, the swelling is greatest on the dorsal aspect of the wrist, showing a general fulness, with some bulging between the tendons. The inflammation is prone to extend to the intercarpal joints and to attack also the sheaths of the tendons in the neighborhood. *Chronic inflammation* of the wrist is generally tuberculous, and often leads to similar disease in the synovial sheaths of adjacent tendons and of the intercarpal joints. The disease, therefore, when progressive, often leads to necrosis of the carpal bones, and the result is often unsatisfactory.

VIII. Articulations of the Carpus (Articulatio Intercarpea) (Figs. 228, 229, 231).

These articulations may be subdivided into three sets:

1. The Articulations of the First Row of Carpal Bones.
2. The Articulations of the Second Row of Carpal Bones.
3. The Articulations of the Two Rows with each other.

1. Articulations of the First Row of Carpal Bones.

These are arthrodial joints. The ligaments connecting the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones are—

Dorsal. Palmar.
Two Interosseous

The **Dorsal Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercarpea dorsalia*) are placed transversely behind the bones of the first row; they connect the scaphoid and semilunar and the semilunar and cuneiform.

The **Palmar** or **Volar Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercarpea volaria*) connect the scaphoid and semilunar and the semilunar and cuneiform bones; they are less strong than the dorsal, and placed very deeply below the anterior ligament of the wrist.

The **Interosseous Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercarpea interossea*) (Fig. 231) are two narrow bundles of fibrous tissue connecting the semilunar bone on one side with the scaphoid, and on the other with the cuneiform. They are on a level with the superior surfaces of these bones, and close the upper part of the spaces between them. Their upper surfaces are smooth, and form with the bones the convex articular surfaces of the wrist-joint.

The ligaments connecting the pisiform bone are—

Capsular. Two Palmar Ligaments.

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) is a thin membrane which connects the pisiform bone to the cuneiform. It is lined with a separate synovial membrane.

The **Two Palmar Ligaments** are two strong fibrous bands which connect the pisiform to the unciform, the **piso-uncinate ligament** (*ligamentum pisohamatum*), and to the base of the fifth metacarpal bone, the **piso-metacarpal ligament** (*ligamentum pisometacarpeum*).

2. Articulations of the Second Row of Carpal Bones.

These are also arthrodial joints. The articular surfaces are covered with cartilage, and connected by the following ligaments:

Dorsal. Palmar.
Three Interosseous.

The **Dorsal Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercarpea dorsalia*) extend transversely from one bone to another on the dorsal surface, connecting the trapezium with the trapezoid, the trapezoid with the os magnum, and the os magnum with the unciform.

The **Palmar** or **Volar Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercarpea volaria*) have a similar arrangement on the palmar surface.

The **Three Interosseous Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercarpea interossea*) (Fig. 231) much thicker than those of the first row, are placed one between the os magnum and the unciform, a second between the os magnum and the trapezoid, and a third between the trapezium and trapezoid. The first of these is much the strongest, and the third is sometimes wanting.

3. Articulations of the Two Rows of Carpal Bones with Each Other (Figs. 228, 229, 231).

The joint between the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform, and the second row of the carpus, or the **mid-carpal joint,** is made up of three distinct portions; in the centre the head of the os magnum and the superior surface of the unciform articulate with the deep, cup-shaped cavity formed by the scaphoid and semilunar bones, and constitute a sort of ball-and-socket joint. On the outer side the trapezium and trapezoid articulate with the scaphoid, and on the inner side the unciform articulates with the cuneiform, forming gliding joints.

The ligaments are:

Anterior.	External Lateral.
Posterior.	Internal Lateral.

The **Anterior, Palmar,** or **Volar Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercarpea volaria*) consist of short fibres, which pass, for the most part, from the palmar surface of the bones of the first row to the front of the os magnum.

The **Posterior** or **Dorsal Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercarpea dorsalia*) consist of short, irregular bundles of fibres passing between the bones of the first and second row on the dorsal surface of the carpus.

The **Lateral Ligaments** are very short: they are placed, one on the radial, the other on the ulnar side of the carpus; the former, the stronger and more distinct, connecting the scaphoid and trapezium bones, the latter the cuneiform and unciform; they are continuous with the lateral ligaments of the wrist-joint. In addition to these ligaments, a slender interosseous band sometimes connects the os magnum and the scaphoid.

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 231).—The synovial membrane of the carpus is very extensive: it passes from the under surface of the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform bones to the upper surface of the bones of the second row, sending upward two prolongations—between the scaphoid and semilunar and the semilunar and cuneiform; sending downward three prolongations between the four bones of the second row, which are further continued onward into the carpo-metacarpal joints of the four inner metacarpal bones, and also for a short distance between the metacarpal bones. There is a separate synovial membrane between the pisiform and cuneiform bones.

Actions.—The articulation of the hand and wrist, considered as a whole, is divided into three parts: (1) the radius and the interarticular fibro-cartilage; (2) the meniscus, formed by the scaphoid, semilunar, and cuneiform, the pisiform bone having no essential part in the movements of the hand; (3) the hand proper, the metacarpal bones with the four carpal bones on which they are supported—viz., the trapezium, trapezoid, os magnum, and unciform. These three elements form two joints: (1) the superior, **wrist-joint proper,** between the meniscus and bones of the forearm; (2) the inferior, between the hand and meniscus, **transverse** or **mid-carpal joint.**

(1) The articulation between the forearm and carpus is a true condyloid articulation, and therefore all movements but rotation are permitted. Flexion and extension are the most free, and of these a greater amount of extension than flexion is permitted on account of the articulating surfaces extending farther on the dorsal than on the palmar aspect of the carpal bones. In this movement the carpal bones rotate on a transverse axis drawn between the tips of the styloid processes of the radius and ulna. A certain amount of adduction (or ulnar flexion) and abduction (or radial flexion) is also permitted. Of these the former is considerably greater in extent than the latter. In this movement the carpus revolves upon an antero-posterior axis drawn through the centre of the wrist. Finally, circumduction is permitted by the consecutive movements of adduction, extension, abduction, and flexion, with intermediate movements between them. There is no rotation, but this is provided for by the supination and pronation of the radius on the ulna. The movement of *flexion* is performed by the Flexor carpi radialis, the Flexor carpi ulnaris, and the Palmaris longus; *extension*, by the Extensor carpi radialis longior et brevior and the Extensor carpi ulnaris; *adduction* (ulnar flexion), by the Flexor carpi ulnaris and the Extensor carpi ulnaris; and *abduction* (radial flexion), by the Extensors of the thumb and the Extensor carpi radialis longior et brevior and the Flexor carpi radialis.

(2) The chief movements permitted in the transverse or mid-carpal joint are flexion and extension and a slight amount of rotation. In *flexion* and *extension*, which is the movement most freely enjoyed, the trapezium and trapezoid on the radial side and the unciform on the ulnar side glide forward and backward on the scaphoid and cuneiform respectively, while the head of the os magnum and the superior surface of the unciform rotate in the cup-shaped cavity of the scaphoid and semilunar. Flexion at this joint is freer than extension. A very trifling amount of *rotation* is also permitted, the head of the os magnum rotating round a vertical axis drawn through its own centre, while at the same time a slight gliding movement takes place in the lateral portions of the joint.

IX. Carpo-metacarpal Articulations (Articulationes Carpometacarpeæ) (Figs. 228, 229, 231).

1. Articulation of the Metacarpal Bone of the Thumb with the Trapezium (Articulatio Carpometacarpea Pollicis).

This is a joint of reciprocal reception, and enjoys great freedom of movement, on account of the configuration of its articular surfaces, which are saddle-shaped, so that, on section, each bone appears to be received into a cavity in the other, according to the direction in which they are cut. The joint is surrounded by a capsular ligament.

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) is thick and fibrous, but loose, and passes from the circumference of the upper extremity of the metacarpal bone to the rough edge bounding the articular surface of the trapezium; it is thickest externally and behind, and lined by a separate synovial membrane.

Movements.—In the articulation of the metacarpal bone of the thumb with the trapezium the movements permitted are *flexion*, *extension*, *adduction*, *abduction*, and *circumduction*. When the joint is flexed the metacarpal bone is brought in front of the palm and the thumb is gradually turned to the fingers. It is by this peculiar movement that the tip of the thumb is opposed to the other digits; for by slightly flexing the fingers the palmar surface of the thumb can be brought in contact with their palmar surfaces one after another.

2. Articulations of the Metacarpal Bones of the Four Inner Fingers with the Carpus (Articulationes Carpometacarpeæ).

The joints formed between the carpus and four inner metacarpal bones are arthrodial joints. The ligaments are—

Dorsal. Palmar.
Interosseous.

The **Dorsal Ligaments** (*ligamenta carpometacarpea dorsalia*), the strongest and most distinct, connect the carpal and metacarpal bones on their dorsal surface.

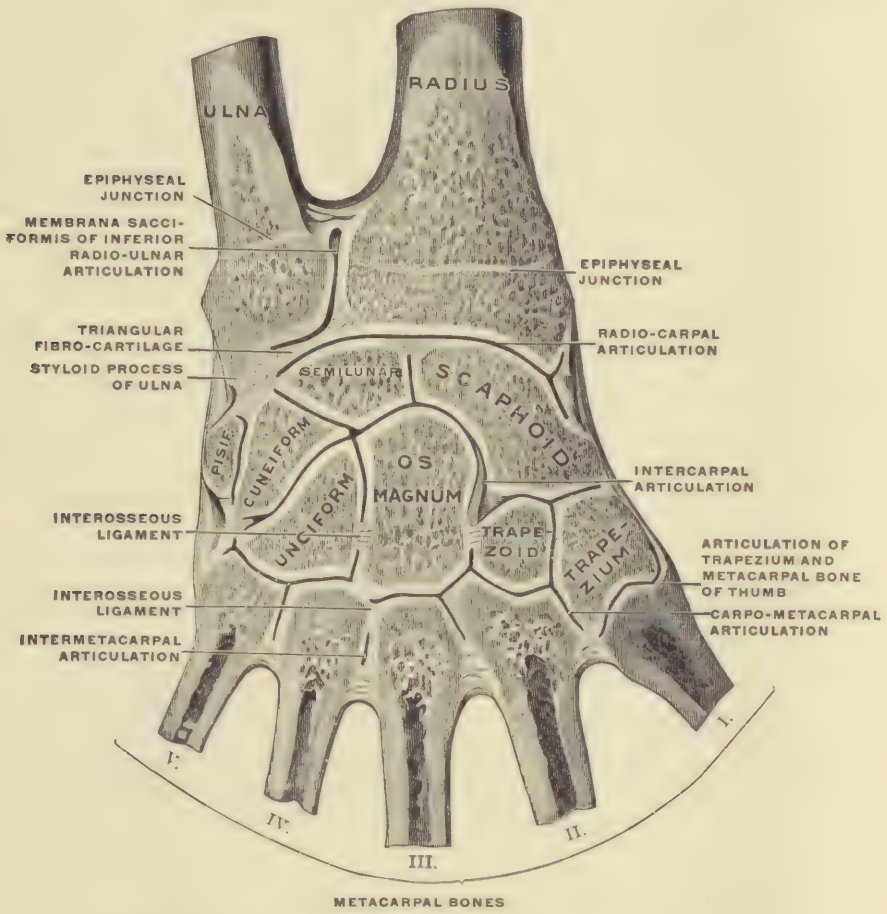


Fig. 231.—Joints of the right hand, from the back of the hand. (Spalteholz.)

The second metacarpal bone receives two fasciculi—one from the trapezium, the other from the trapezoid; the third metacarpal receives two—one from the trapezoid and one from the os magnum; the fourth two—one from the os magnum and one from the unciform; the fifth receives a single fasciculus from the unciform bone, which is continuous with a similar ligament on the palmar surface, forming an incomplete capsule.

The **Palmar** or **Volar Ligaments** (*ligamenta carpometacarpea volaria*) have a somewhat similar arrangement on the palmar surface, with the exception of the third metacarpal, which has three ligaments—an external one from the

trapezium, situated above the sheath of the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis; a middle one, from the os magnum; and an internal one, from the unciform.

The **Interosseous Ligaments** consist of short, thick fibres, which are limited to one part of the carpo-metacarpal articulation; they connect the contiguous inferior angles of the os magnum and unciform with the adjacent surfaces of the third and fourth metacarpal bones.

Synovial Membrane.—The synovial membrane is a continuation of that between the two rows of carpal bones. Occasionally, the articulation of the unciform with the fourth and fifth metacarpal bones has a separate synovial membrane.

The synovial membranes of the wrist and carpus (Fig. 231) are thus seen to be five in number. The *first*, the **membrana sacciformis** or the **recessus sacciformis** of the inferior radio-ulnar articulation, passes from the lower end of the ulna to

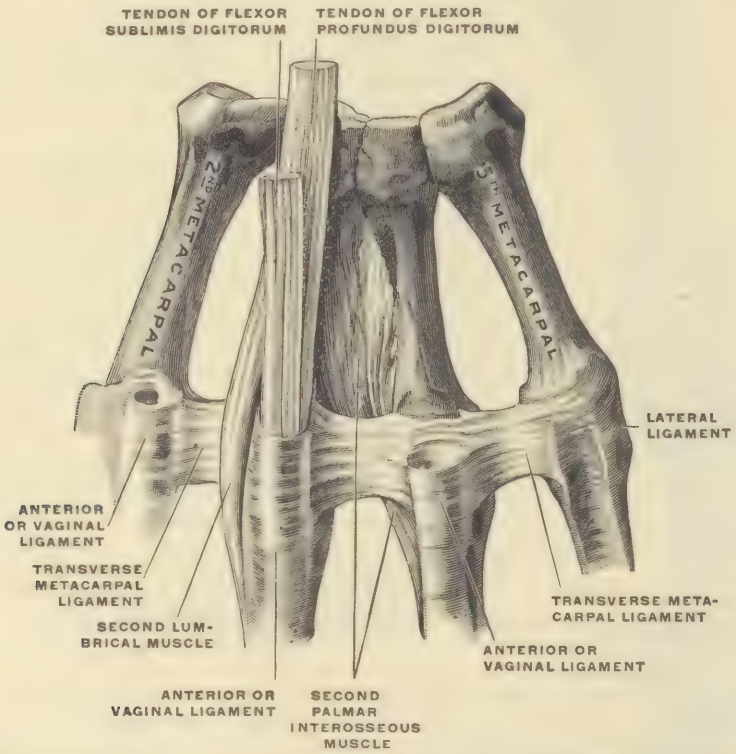


FIG. 232.—Metacarpal bones and first phalanges of the second to the fifth finger of the right hand, with ligaments, from the volar surface. (Spalteholz.)

the sigmoid cavity of the radius, and lines the upper surface of the interarticular fibro-cartilage. The *second* passes from the lower end of the radius and interarticular fibro-cartilage above to the bones of the first row below. The *third*, the most extensive, passes between the contiguous margins of the two rows of carpal bones—between the bones of the second row to the carpal extremities of the four inner metacarpal bones. The *fourth*, from the margin of the trapezium to the metacarpal bone of the thumb. The *fifth*, between the adjacent margins of the cuneiform and pisiform bones.

Actions.—The movement permitted in the carpo-metacarpal articulations of the four inner fingers is limited to a slight gliding of the articular surfaces upon each other, the extent of which varies in the different joints. Thus the articulation of the metacarpal bone of the little finger is most movable, then that of the ring finger. The metacarpal bones of the index and middle fingers are almost immovable.

3. Articulations of the Metacarpal Bones with Each Other (Articulationes Intermetacarpeæ (Figs. 228, 229, 231).

The carpal extremities of the four inner metacarpal bones articulate with one another at each side by small surfaces covered with cartilages, and connected together by **dorsal, palmar,** and **interosseous** ligaments.

The **Dorsal Ligaments** (*ligamenta basium oss. metacarp. dorsalia*) and **Palmar Ligaments** (*ligamenta basium oss. metacarp. volaria*) pass transversely from one bone to another on the dorsal and palmar surfaces.

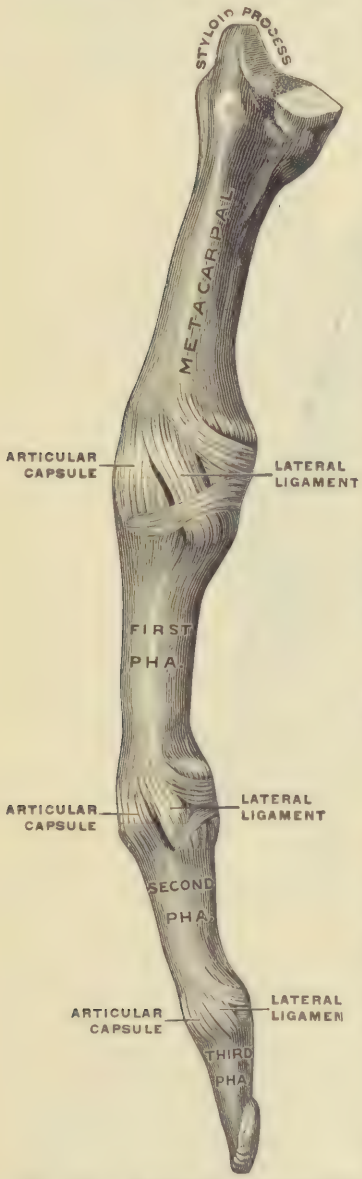


Fig. 233. — Metacarpal bones and first phalanges of the third finger of the right hand, with ligaments, from the radial side. (Spalteholz.)

The **Interosseous Ligaments** (*ligamenta basium oss. metacarp. interossea*) pass between their contiguous surfaces, just beneath their lateral articular facets.

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 231).—The synovial membrane between the lateral facets is a reflection from that between the two rows of carpal bones.

The **Transverse Metacarpal Ligament** (*ligamentum capitulorum oss. metacarpalium transversum*) (Fig. 232) is a narrow, fibrous band which passes transversely across the anterior surfaces of the digital extremities of the four inner metacarpal bones, connecting them together. It is blended anteriorly with the palmar ligaments of the metacarpo-phalangeal articulations. To its posterior border is connected the fascia which covers the Interossei muscles. Its anterior surface is concave where the flexor tendons pass over it. Behind it the tendons of the Interossei muscles pass to their insertion.

X. Metacarpo-phalangeal Articulations (Articulationes Metacarpo-phalangeæ) (Figs. 232, 233).

These articulations are of the condyloid kind, formed by the reception of the rounded head of the metacarpal bone into a shallow cavity in the extremity of the first phalanx. The expansion of the extensor tendon acts as a dorsal ligament. There is a capsular ligament which at certain points has strengthening ligaments. The ligaments are—

Anterior. Two Lateral.

The **Anterior, Palmar,** or **Vaginal Ligament** (*glenoid ligament of Cruveilhier, ligamentum vaginale*) is a thick, dense, fibrous structure, placed on the palmar surface of the joint in the interval between the lateral ligaments, to which it is connected; it is loosely united to the metacarpal bone, but very firmly to the base of the first phalanx. Its palmar surface is intimately blended with the transverse metacarpal ligament, and presents a

groove for the passage of the flexor tendons, the sheath surrounding which is connected to each side of the groove. By its deep surface it forms part of the articular surface for the head of the metacarpal bone, and is lined by a synovial membrane.

The **Lateral** or **Collateral Ligaments** (*ligamenta collateralia*) are strong, rounded cords placed one on each side of the joint, each being attached by one extremity to the posterior tubercle on the side of the head of the metacarpal bone, and by the other to the contiguous extremity of the phalanx.

Actions. — The movements which occur in these joints are *flexion*, *extension*, *adduction*, *abduction*, and *circumduction;* the lateral movements are very limited.

Surface Form.—The prominences of the knuckles do not correspond to the position of the joints either of the metacarpo-phalangeal or interphalangeal articulations. These prominences are invariably formed by the distal ends of the proximal bone of each joint, and the line indicating the position of the joint must be sought considerably in front of the middle of the knuckle. The usual rule for finding these joints is to flex the distal phalanx on the proximal one to a right angle; the position of the joint is then indicated by an imaginary line drawn along the middle of the lateral aspect of the proximal phalanx.

XI. Articulations of the Phalanges (Articulationes Digitorum Manus) (Fig. 233).

These are ginglymus joints. Each joint has a capsule, and certain accentuated portions are regarded as definite ligaments. These ligaments are—

Anterior or Palmar. Two Lateral (*ligamenta collateralia*).

The arrangement of these ligaments is similar to those in the metacarpo-phalangeal articulations; the extensor tendon supplies the place of a dorsal ligament.

Actions.—The only movements permitted in the phalangeal joints are *flexion* and *extension;* these movements are more extensive between the first and second phalanges than between the second and third. The movement of flexion is very considerable, but extension is limited by the anterior and lateral ligaments.

ARTICULATIONS OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The articulations of the Lower Extremity comprise the following groups:

I. The Hip-joint.
II. The Knee-joint.
III. The Articulations between the Tibia and Fibula.
IV. The Ankle-joint.
V. The Articulations of the Tarsus.
VI. The Tarso-metatarsal Articulations.
VII. Articulations of the Metatarsal Bones with each other.
VIII. The Metatarso-phalangeal Articulations.
IX. The Articulations of the Phalanges.

I. The Hip-joint (Articulatio Coxæ) (Figs. 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239).

This articulation is an enarthrodial or ball-and-socket joint, formed by the reception of the head of the femur into the cup-shaped cavity of the acetabulum. The articulating surfaces are covered with cartilage, that on the head of the femur being thicker at the centre than at the circumference, and covering the entire surface, with the exception of a depression just below its centre for the ligamentum teres; that covering the acetabulum is much thinner at the centre than at the circumference. It forms an incomplete cartilaginous ring of a horseshoe shape, being deficient below, where there is a circular depression, which is occu-

pied in the recent state by a mass of fat covered by synovial membrane. The ligaments of the joints are the

Capsular.	Teres.
Ilio-femoral.	Cotyloid.
Transverse.	

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) (Figs. 234, 235, 237, and 239) is a strong, dense, ligamentous capsule, embracing the margin of the acetabulum above and surrounding the neck of the femur below. Its *upper circumference*

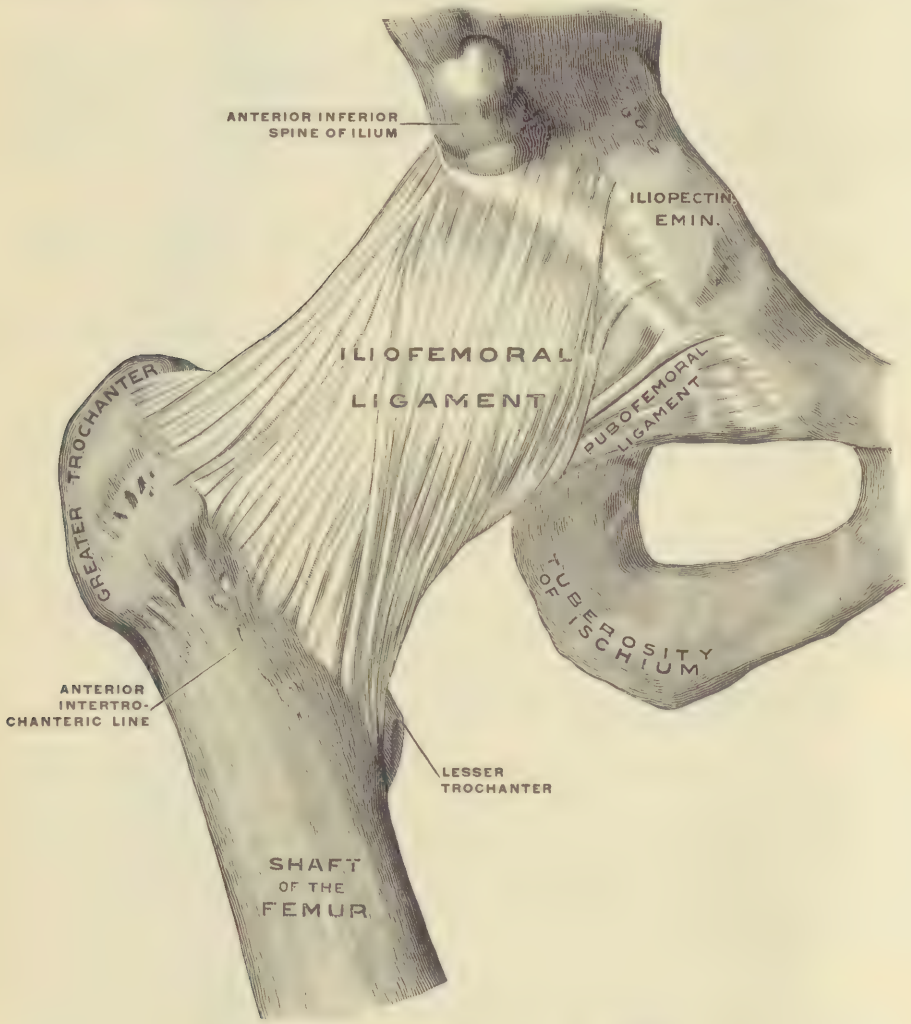


FIG. 234.—Right hip-joint, from in front. (Spalteholz.)

is attached to the acetabulum, above and behind, two or three lines external to the cotyloid ligament; but in front it is attached to the outer margin of this ligament, and opposite to the notch, where the margin of this cavity is deficient, it is connected to the transverse ligament, and by a few fibres to the edge of the obturator foramen. Its *lower circumference* surrounds the neck of the femur, being attached, in front, to the spiral or anterior intertrochanteric line; above, to the base of the neck; behind, to the neck of the bone, about half

an inch above the posterior intertrochanteric line. From this insertion the fibres are reflected upward over the neck of the femur, forming a sort of tubular sheath, the **cervical reflection**, which blends with the periosteum and can be traced as far as the articular cartilage. On the surface of the neck of the femur some of these reflected fibres are raised into longitudinal folds, termed **retinacula**. It is much thicker at the upper and forepart of the joint, where the greatest amount of

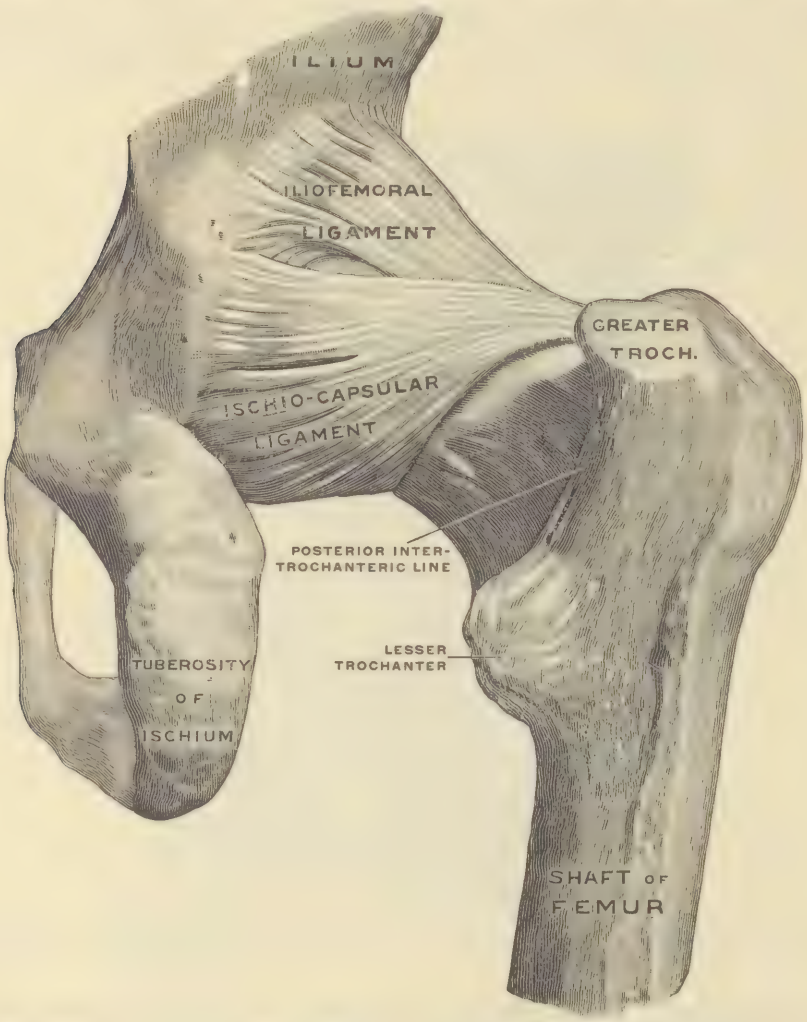


FIG. 235.—Right hip-joint, from behind. (The joint capsule, except for the strengthening ligaments, has been removed.) (Spalteholz.)

resistance is required, than below and internally, where it is thin, loose, and longer than in any other part. It consists of two sets of fibres, circular and longitudinal. The circular fibres, **zona orbicularis** (Fig. 237), are most abundant at the lower and back part of the capsule, and form a sling or collar around the neck of the femur. Anteriorly they blend with the deep surface of the ilio-femoral ligament, and through its medium reach the anterior inferior spine of the ilium. The longitudinal fibres are greatest in amount at the upper and front part of the capsule, where they form distinct bands or accessory ligaments, of which the most important is the **ilio-femoral**. Other accessory bands are known as the **pubo-**

femoral or **pubo-capsular ligament** (*ligamentum pubocapsulare*), passing from the outer portion of the horizontal pubic ramus, the ilio-pectineal eminence, the obturator crest and the obturator membrane, to the front of the capsule; and **ischio-capsular ligament** or **ligament of Bertin** (*ligamentum ischiocapsulare*), passing from the ischium, just below the acetabulum, to blend with the circular fibres at the lower part of the joint. The *external surface* is rough, covered by numerous muscles, and separated in front from the Psoas and Iliacus muscles by a synovial bursa, which not infrequently communicates, by a circular aperture, with the cavity of the joint. It differs from the capsular ligament of the shoulder in being much less loose and lax, and in not being perforated for the passage of a tendon.

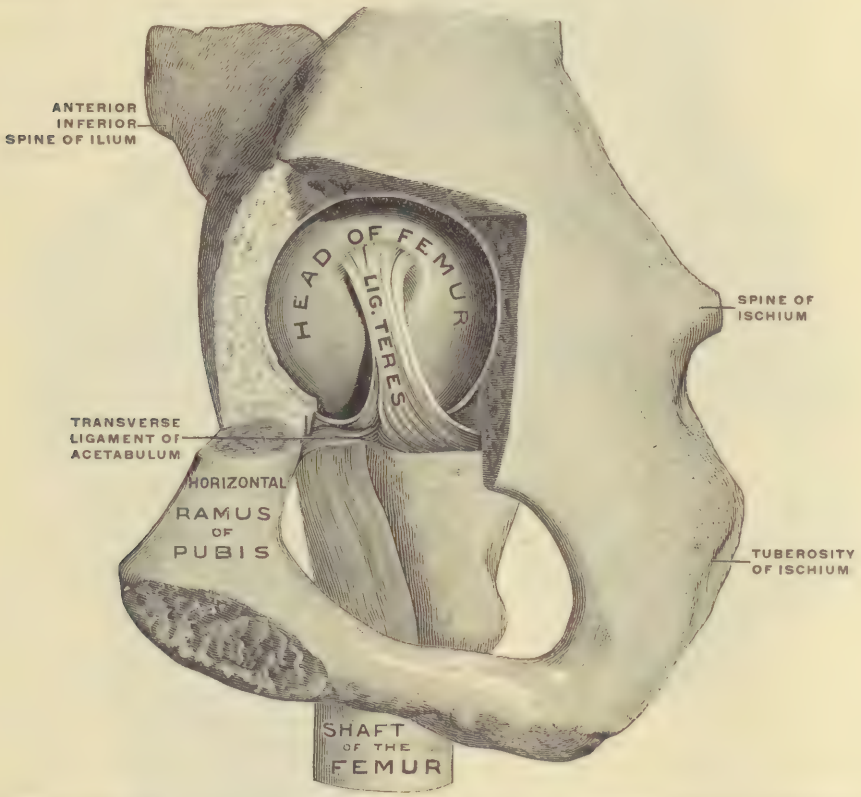


FIG. 236.—Right hip-joint from the medial side. (The bottom of the acetabulum has been chiselled away sufficiently to make the head of the femur visible.) (Spalteholz.)

The **Ilio-femoral** or **Y-ligament** or **Ligament of Bigelow** (*ligamentum ilio-femorale*) (Figs. 234, 235, 237, and 238) is an accessory band of fibres extending obliquely across the front of the joint; it is intimately connected with the capsular ligament, and serves to strengthen it in this situation. It is attached, above, to the lower part of the anterior inferior spine of the ilium and the adjacent rim of the acetabulum; and, diverging below, forms two bands, of which one passes downward to be inserted into the lower part of the anterior intertrochanteric line; the other passes downward and outward to be inserted into the upper part of the same line and the adjacent part of the neck of the femur. Between the two bands is a thinner part of the capsule. Sometimes there is no division, but the ligament spreads out into a flat, triangular band, which is attached below into the whole length of the anterior intertrochanteric line. This ligament is frequently called the **Y-shaped ligament of Bigelow**; and

the outer or upper of the two bands is sometimes described as a separate ligament, under the name of the **ilio-trochanteric ligament.**

The **Ligamentum Teres,** or the **Interarticular Ligament** (*ligamentum teres femoris*) (Figs. 236, 237, and 239) is a triangular band implanted by its apex into the depression a little behind and below the centre of the head of the femur, and by its broad base into the margins of the cotyloid notch, becoming blended with the transverse ligament. It is formed of connective tissue, surrounded by a tubular sheath of synovial membrane. Sometimes only the synovial fold exists. Very rarely it is absent. The ligament is made tense when the hip is semiflexed,

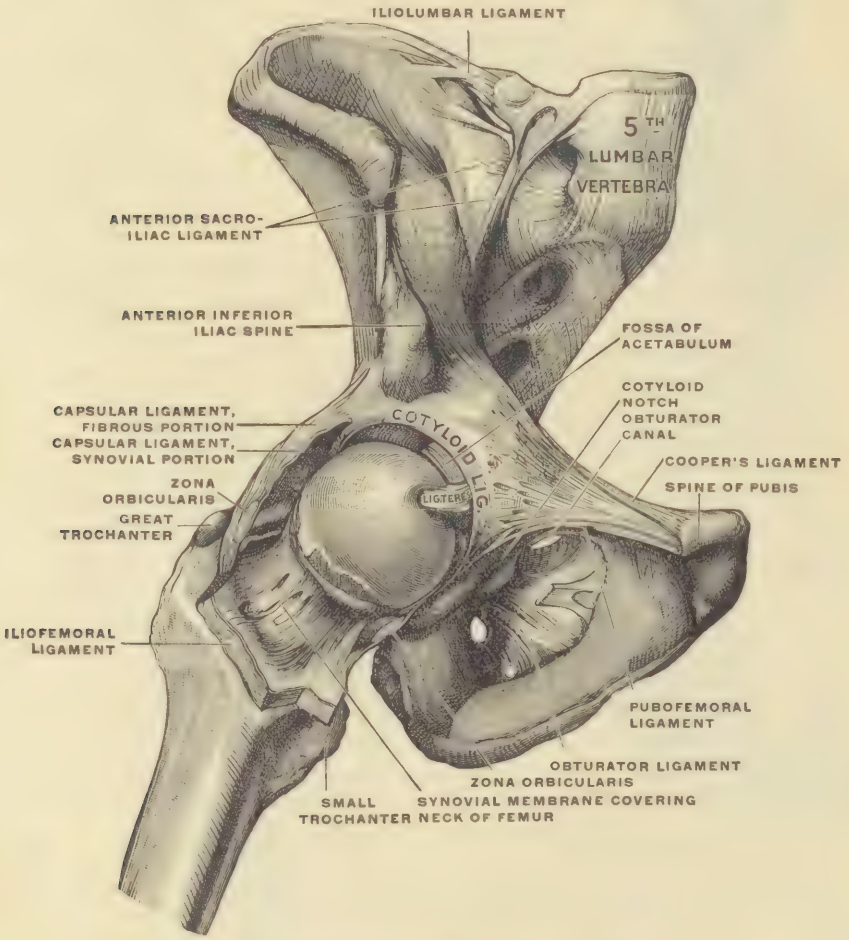


FIG. 237.—The right hip-joint, seen from before. (Toldt.)

and the limb adducted and rotated outward; it is, on the other hand, relaxed when the limb is abducted. It has, however, but little influence as a ligament, though it may to a certain extent limit movement, and would appear to be merely a "vestigial and practically useless ligament."[1] It is probably a modification of the folds which in other joints fringe the margins of reflection of synovial membranes.

The **Cotyloid Ligament** (*labrum glenoidale*) (Fig. 239) is a fibro-cartilaginous rim attached to the margin of the acetabulum, the cavity of which it deepens; at the

[1] J. Bland Sutton. Ligaments: Their Nature and Morphology.

same time it protects the edges of the bone and fills up the inequalities on its surface. It bridges over the notch as the **transverse ligament of the acetabulum**, and thus forms a complete circle, which closely surrounds the head of the femur, and assists in holding it in its place, acting as a sort of valve. It is prismoid on section, its base being attached to the margin of the acetabulum and its opposite edge being free and sharp; whilst its two surfaces are invested by synovial membrane, the external one being in contact with the capsular ligament, the internal one being inclined inward, so as to narrow the acetabulum and embrace the cartilaginous surface of the head of the femur. It is much thicker above and behind than below and in front, and consists of close, compact fibres, which arise from different points of the circumference of the acetabulum and interlace with each other at very acute angles.

Fig. 238.—Hip-joint, showing the ilio-femoral ligament. (After Bigelow.)

The **transverse ligament of the acetabulum** (*ligamentum transversum acetabuli*) (Figs. 236 and 239) is in reality a portion of the cotyloid ligament, though differing from it in having no cartilage-cells amongst its fibres. It consists of strong, flattened fibres, which cross the notch at the lower part of the acetabulum and convert it into a foramen. Thus an interval is left beneath the ligament for the passage of nutrient vessels to the joint.

Synovial Membrane (Figs. 237 and 239).—The synovial membrane is very extensive. Commencing at the margin of the cartilaginous surface of the head of the femur, it covers all that portion of the neck which is contained within the joint; from the neck it is reflected on the internal surface of the capsular ligament, covers both surfaces of the cotyloid ligament and the mass of fat contained in the depression at the bottom of the acetabulum, and is prolonged in the form of a tubular sheath around the ligamentum teres, as far as the head of the femur. It sometimes communicates through a hole in the capsular ligament between the inner band of the Y-shaped ligament and the pubo-femoral ligament with a bursa situated on the under surface of the Ilio-psoas muscle.

The **muscles** in relation with the joint (Fig. 240) are, in *front*, the Psoas and Iliacus, separated from the capsular ligament by a synovial bursa; *above*, the reflected head of the Rectus and Gluteus minimus, the latter being closely adherent to the capsule; *internally*, the Obturator externus and Pectineus; *behind*, the Pyriformis, Gemellus superior, Obturator internus, Gemellus inferior, Obturator externus, and Quadratus femoris.

The **arteries** supplying the joint are derived from the obturator, sciatic, internal circumflex, and gluteal.

The **nerves** are articular branches from the sacral plexus, great sciatic, obturator, accessory obturator, and a filament from the branch of the anterior crural supplying the rectus.

Bursæ.—Numerous bursæ exist in the neighborhood of the hip-joint. Some anatomists have counted twenty-one (Synnestredt). The chief ones are: 1. The **ilio-pectineal bursa** (*bursa iliopectinea*) (Fig. 240), between the ilio-psoas tendon and the capsule of the joint. It often communicates with the hip-joint. 2. The

subtendinous iliac bursa (*bursa iliaca subtendinea*), between the tendon of the psoas and iliacus and the lesser trochanter. 3. The **ischio-gluteal bursa** (*bursa ischiadica m. glutæi maximi*), between the Gluteus maximus muscle and the tuberosity of the ischium (not constant). 4. The **bursa of the great trochanter** (*bursa trochanterica m. glutæi maximi*), between the great trochanter and the Gluteus maximus muscle near the muscular insertion. 5. Two or three **gluteo-femoral bursæ** (*bursæ glutæofemorales*) below. 6. The **obturator bursa** (*bursa m. obturatorii interni*), between the margin of the great sacro-sciatic notch and the tendon of the Obturator internus muscle. 7. The **subcutaneous trochanteric bursa** (*bursa tro-*

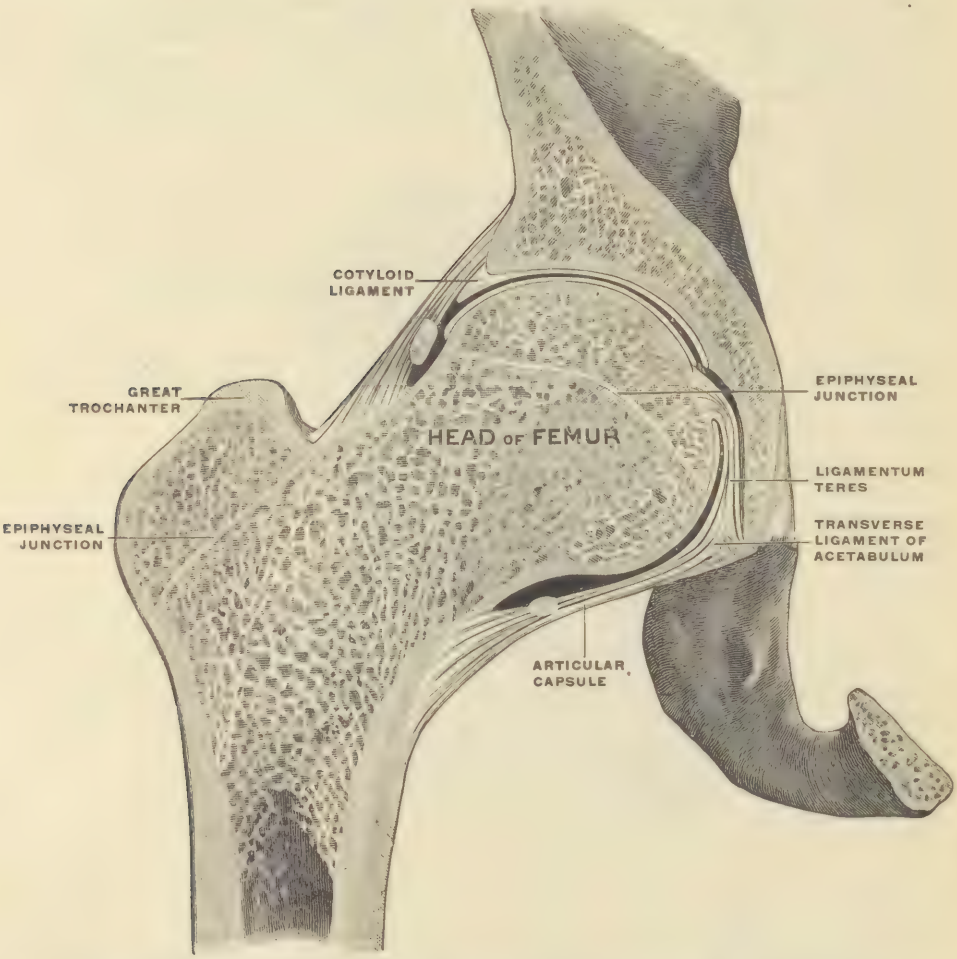


FIG. 239.—Right hip-joint. Frontal section. Posterior half, viewed from in front. (The joint surfaces have been somewhat pulled apart.) (Spalteholz.)

chanterica subcutanea), between the cutaneous surface and the great trochanter. Besides these there is a bursa between the great trochanter and the anterior part of the Gluteus medius—between the great trochanter and the posterior part of the Gluteus medius—between the great trochanter and the Gluteus minimus—beneath the Pyriformis muscle—between the small trochanter and the Quadratus femoris muscle, and there are bursæ beneath the Biceps femoris muscle.

Actions.—The movements of the hip are very extensive, and consist of flexion, extension, adduction, abduction, circumduction, and rotation.

The hip-joint presents a very striking contrast to the shoulder-joint in the much more complete mechanical arrangements for its security and for the limitation of its movements. In the shoulder, as we have seen, the head of the humerus is not adapted at all in size to the glenoid cavity, and is hardly restrained in any of its ordinary movements by the capsular ligament. In the hip-joint, on the contrary, the head of the femur is closely fitted to the acetabulum for a distance extending over nearly half a sphere, and at the margin of the bony cup it is still more closely embraced by the cotyloid ligament, so that the head of the femur is held in its place by that ligament even when the fibres of the capsule have been quite divided (Humphry). The anterior portion of the capsule, described as the ilio-femoral ligament, is the strongest of all the ligaments in the body, and is put on the stretch by any attempt to extend the femur beyond a straight line with the trunk. That is to say, this ligament is the chief agent in maintaining the erect position without muscular fatigue; for a vertical line passing through the centre of gravity of the trunk falls behind the centres of rotation in the hip-joints, and

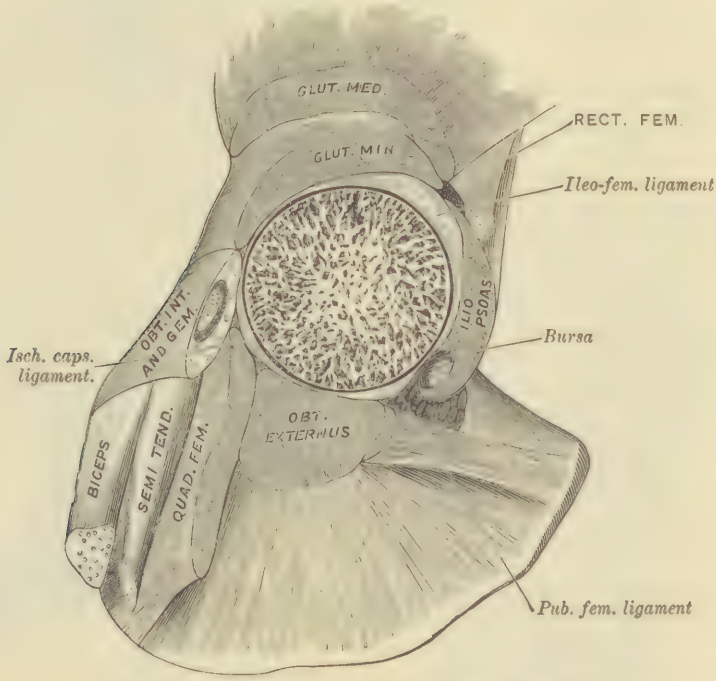


FIG. 240.—Relation of muscles to hip-joint. (Henle.)

therefore the pelvis tends to fall backward, but is prevented by the tension of the ilio-femoral and capsular ligaments. The security of the joint may be also provided for by the two bones being directly united through the ligamentum teres; but it is doubtful whether this so-called ligament can have much influence upon the mechanism of the joint. Flexion of the hip-joint is arrested by the soft parts of the thigh and abdomen being brought into contact when the leg is flexed on the thigh; and by the action of the hamstring muscles when the leg is extended;[1] extension, by the tension of the ilio-femoral ligament and front of the capsule; adduction, by the thighs coming into contact; adduction, with flexion by the outer band of the ilio-femoral ligament, the outer part of the capsular ligament;

[1] The hip-joint cannot be completely flexed, in most persons, without at the same time flexing the knee, on account of the shortness of the hamstring muscles.—Cleland, Jour. of Anat. and Phys., No. 1, Old Series, p. 87.

abduction, by the inner band of the ilio-femoral ligament and the pubo-femoral band; rotation outward, by the outer band of the ilio-femoral ligament; and rotation inward, by the ischio-capsular ligament and the hinder part of the capsule. The muscles which *flex* the femur on the pelvis are the Psoas, Iliacus, Rectus, Sartorius, Pectineus, Adductor longus and brevis, and the anterior fibres of the Gluteus medius and minimus. *Extension* is mainly performed by the Gluteus maximus, assisted by the hamstring muscles. The thigh is *adducted* by the Adductor magnus, longus, and brevis, the Pectineus, the Gracilis, and lower part of the Gluteus maximus, and *abducted* by the Gluteus medius and minimus and upper part of the Gluteus maximus. The muscles which *rotate* the thigh *inward* are the anterior fibres of the Gluteus medius, the Gluteus minimus, and the Tensor fasciæ femoris; while those which rotate it *outward* are the posterior fibres of the Gluteus medius, the Pyriformis, Obturator externus and internus, Gemellus superior and inferior, Quadratus femoris, Iliacus, Gluteus maximus, the three Adductors, the Pectineus, and the Sartorius.

Surface Form.—A line drawn from the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium to the most prominent part of the tuberosity of the ischium (*Nélaton's line*) runs through the centre of the acetabulum, and would, therefore, indicate the level of the hip-joint; or, in other words, the upper border of the great trochanter, which lies on Nélaton's line, is on a level with the centre of the hip-joint.

Surgical Anatomy.—*Inflammation of bursæ* about the hip-joint gives rise to confusing symptoms. Inflammation of one of the bursæ over the great trochanter is not uncommon. Great pain is produced if any movement of the gluteal muscles is permitted.

Enlargement of the bursa over the ischial tuberosity was long called *weaver's button*. Enlargement of the bursa beneath the ilio-psoas may produce a large swelling. Bursal inflammation is not unusually mistaken for hip-joint disease

In *dislocation of the hip* "the head of the thigh bone may rest at any point around its socket" (Bryant); but whatever position the head ultimately assumes, the primary displacement is generally downward and inward, the capsule giving way at its weakest—that is, its lower and inner—part. The situation that the head of the bone subsequently assumes is determined by the degree of flexion or extension, and of outward or inward rotation of the thigh at the moment of luxation, influenced, no doubt, by the ilio-femoral ligament, which is not easily ruptured. When, for instance, the head is forced backward, this ligament forms a fixed axis, round which the head of the bone rotates, and the head is thus driven on to the dorsum of the ilium. The ilio-femoral ligament also influences the position of the thigh in the various dislocations: in the dislocations backward it is tense, and produces inversion of the limb; in the dislocation on to the pubes it is relaxed, and therefore allows the external rotators to evert the thigh; while in the thyroid dislocation it is tense and produces flexion. The muscles inserted into the upper part of the femur, with the exception of the Obturator internus, have very little direct influence in determining the position of the bone. But Bigelow has endeavored to show that the Obturator internus is the principal agent in determining whether in the backward dislocations the head of the bone shall be ultimately lodged on the dorsum of the ilium or in or near the sciatic notch. In both dislocations the head passes, in the first instance, in the same direction; but, as Bigelow asserts, in the displacement on to the dorsum, the head of the bone travels up behind the acetabulum, in front of the muscle; while in the dislocation into the sciatic notch, the head passes behind the muscle, and is therefore prevented from reaching the dorsum, in consequence of the tendon of the muscle arching over the neck of the bone, and so remains in the neighborhood of the sciatic notch. Bigelow, therefore, distinguishes these two forms of dislocation by describing them as dislocations backward, "above and below," the Obturator internus.

The ilio-femoral ligament is rarely torn in dislocations of the hip, and this fact is taken advantage of by the surgeon in reducing these dislocations by manipulation. It is made to act as a fulcrum to a lever, of which the long arm is the shaft of the femur, and the short arm the neck of the bone.

The hip-joint is rarely the seat of *acute synovitis* from injury, on account of its deep position and its thick covering of soft parts. *Acute inflammation* may, and does, frequently occur as the result of constitutional conditions, as rheumatism, pyæmia, etc. When, in these cases, effusion takes place, and the joint becomes distended with fluid, the swelling is not very easy to detect on account of the thickness of the capsule and the depth of the articulation. It is principally to be found on the front of the joint, just internal to the ilio-femoral ligament; or behind, at the lower and back part. In these two places the capsule is thinner than elsewhere. Disease of the hip-joint is much more frequently of a chronic character and is usually of *tuberculous* origin. It begins either in the bones or in the synovial membrane, more frequently in the

former, and probably, in most cases, in the growing, highly vascular tissue in the neighborhood of the epiphysial cartilage. In this respect it differs very materially from tuberculous arthritis of the knee, where the disease often commences in the synovial membrane. The reasons why hip-disease so frequently begins near the epiphysial cartilage are twofold: first, this part being the centre of rapid growth, its nutrition is unstable and inflammation is easily awakened; and, secondly, great strain is thrown upon it, from the frequency of falls and blows upon the hip, which causes crushing of the epiphysial cartilage or the cancellous tissue in its neighborhood, with the results likely to follow such an injury. In addition to these, the depth of the joint protects it from the causes of synovitis.

In *chronic hip-disease* the affected limb assumes an altered position, the cause of which it is important to understand. In the early stage of a typical case the limb is flexed, abducted, and rotated outward. In this position all the ligaments of the joint are relaxed: the front of the capsule by flexion; the outer band of the ilio-femoral ligament by abduction; and the inner band of this ligament and the back of the capsule by rotation outward. It is, therefore, the position of the greatest ease. The condition is not quite obvious at first upon examining a patient. If the patient is laid in the supine position, the affected limb will be found to be extended and parallel with the other. But it will be found that the pelvis is tilted downward on the diseased side and the limb apparently longer than its fellow, and that the lumbar spine is arched forward (lordosis). If now the thigh is abducted and flexed, the tilting downward and the arching forward of the pelvis disappears. The condition is thus explained. A limb which is flexed and abducted is obviously useless for progression, and, to overcome the difficulty, the patient depresses the affected side of his pelvis in order to produce parallelism of his limbs, and at the same time rotates his pelvis on its transverse horizontal axis, so as to direct the limb downward instead of forward. In the latter stages of the disease the limb becomes flexed, adducted, and inverted. The position probably depends upon muscular action, at all events as regards the adduction. The Adductor muscles are supplied by the obturator nerve, which also largely supplies the joint. These muscles are therefore thrown into reflex action by the irritation of the peripheral terminations of this nerve in the inflamed articulation. *Osteo-arthritis* is not uncommon in the hip-joint, and it is said to be more common in the male than in the female, in whom the knee-joint is more frequently affected. It is a disease of middle age or more advanced period of life.

Congenital dislocation is more commonly met with in the hip-joint than in any other articulation. The displacement usually takes place on to the dorsum ilii. It gives rise to extreme lordosis, and a waddling gait is noticed as soon as the child commences to walk.

Excision of the hip may be required for disease or for injury, especially for gunshot wound. It may be performed either by an anterior or an external incision. The former one entails less interference with important structures, especially muscles, than the posterior one, but permits of less efficient drainage. In these days, however, when the surgeon aims at securing healing of his wound without suppuration, this second advantage is not of so much importance. In the operation in front the surgeon makes an incision three or four inches in length, starting immediately below and external to the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium, downward and inward between the Sartorius and Tensor fasciæ femoris, to the neck of the bone, dividing the capsule at its upper part. A narrow-bladed saw now divides the neck of the femur, and the head of the bone is extracted with sequestrum forceps. All diseased tissue is carefully removed with a sharp spoon or scissors, and the cavity thoroughly flushed with a hot aseptic fluid.

The external method consists in making an incision three or four inches long, commencing midway between the top of the great trochanter and the anterior superior spine, and ending over the shaft, just below the trochanter. The muscles are detached from the great trochanter, and the capsule opened freely. The head and neck are freed from the soft parts and the bone sawn through just below the top of the trochanter with a narrow saw. The head of the bone is then levered out of the acetabulum. In both operations, if the acetabulum is eroded, it must be freely gouged.

II. The Knee-joint (Articulatio Genu).

The knee-joint was formerly described as a ginglymus or hinge-joint, but is really of a much more complicated character. It must be regarded as consisting of three articulations in one: one between each condyle of the femur and the corresponding tuberosity of the tibia, which are condyloid joints, and one between the patella and the femur, which is partly arthrodial, but not completely so, since the articular surfaces are not mutually adapted to each other, so that the movement is not a simple gliding one. This view of the construction of the knee-joint receives confirmation from the study of the articulation in some of the lower mammals,

where three synovial membranes are sometimes found, corresponding to these three subdivisions, either entirely distinct or only connected together by small communications. This view is further rendered probable by the existence of the two crucial ligaments within the joint, which must be regarded as the external and internal lateral ligaments of the inner and outer joints respectively. The existence of the ligamentum mucosum would further indicate a tendency to separation of the synovial cavity into two minor sacs, one corresponding to each joint.

The bones entering into the formation of the knee-joint are the condyles of the femur above, the head of the tibia below, and the patella in front. The bones are connected together by ligaments, some of which are placed on the exterior of the joint, while others occupy its interior.

External Ligaments.	*Interior Ligaments.*
Anterior, or Ligamentum Patellæ.	Anterior, or External Crucial.
Posterior.	Posterior, or Internal Crucial.
Internal Lateral.	Two Semilunar Fibro-cartilages.
Two External Lateral. (The long external ligament is constant. The short external ligament is not always present.)	Transverse.
	Coronary.
Capsular.	Ligamentum mucosum. } Processes of Synovial Membrane.
	Ligamenta alaria. }

The **Anterior Ligament**, or **Ligamentum Patellæ** (Figs. 241, 245, and 246), is the central portion of the common tendon of the Extensor muscles of the thigh, which is continued from the patella to the tubercle of the tibia, supplying the place of an anterior ligament. It is a strong, flat, ligamentous band about three inches in length, attached, above, to the apex of the patella and the rough depression on its posterior surface; below, to the lower part of the tubercle of the tibia, its superficial fibres being continuous over the front of the patella with those of the tendon of the Quadriceps extensor. The lateral portions of the tendon of the Extensor muscles pass down on either side of the patella, and are attached to the borders of this bone. The deep fascia and the quadriceps extensor muscle are inserted into the patella. Prolongations from the fascia and from the fibrous expansion of the muscle pass from the edges of the patella and from the ligament of the patella to the upper extremity of the tibia on each side of the tubercle; externally, and to the head of the fibula. They are termed **lateral patellar ligaments** (*retinaculum patellæ mediale* and *retinaculum patellæ laterale*), and merge into the capsule. The posterior surface of the ligamentum patellæ is separated from the front of the capsular ligament by a mass of fat.

The **Posterior Ligament** (*ligamentum popliteum obliquum*) (Fig. 241) is a broad, flat, fibrous band, formed of fasciculi separated from one another by apertures for the passage of vessels and nerves. It is attached, above, to the upper margin of the intercondyloid notch of the femur, and, below, to the posterior margin of the head of the tibia. Superficial to the main part of the ligament and forming a portion of it is a strong fasciculus derived from the tendon of the Semimembranosus, and passing from the back part of the inner tuberosity of the tibia obliquely upward and outward to the back part of the outer condyle of the femur. This expansion from the tendon of the Semimembranosus muscle is called the **posterior ligament of Winslow** (*ligamentum posticum Winslowii*), and it merges with the posterior ligament. The posterior ligament forms part of the floor of the popliteal space, and the popliteal artery rests upon it.

The **Internal Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum collaterale tibiale*) (Figs. 241 and 242) is a broad, flat, membranous band, thicker behind than in front, and situated

nearer to the back than the front of the joint. It is attached, above, to the inner tuberosity of the femur; below, to the inner tuberosity and inner surface of the shaft of the tibia to the extent of about two inches. It is crossed, at its lower part, by the tendons of the Sartorius, Gracilis, and Semitendinosus muscles, a synovial bursa being interposed. Its *deep surface* covers the anterior portion of the tendon of the Semimembranosus, with which it is connected by a few fibres, the synovial membrane of the joint, and the inferior internal articular vessels and nerve; it is intimately adherent to the internal semilunar fibro-cartilage.

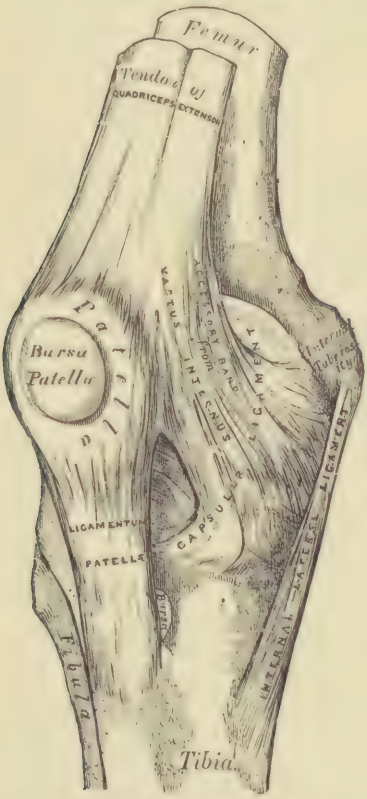


Fig. 241.—Right knee-joint. Anterior view.

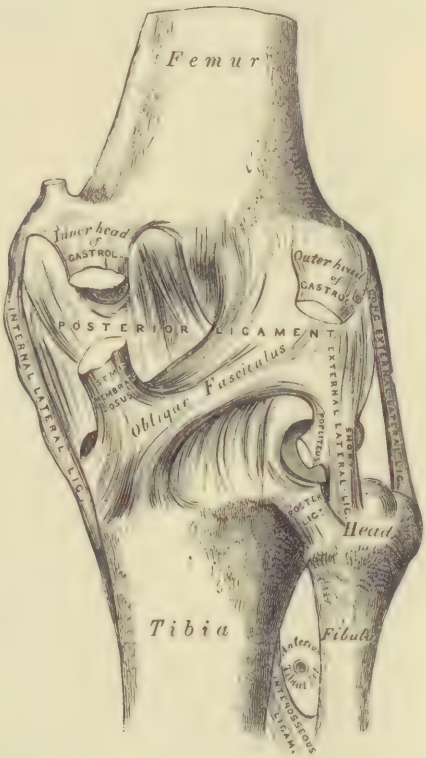


Fig. 242.—Right knee-joint. Posterior view.

The **External Lateral** or **Long External Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum collaterale fibulare*) (Figs. 242 and 246) is a strong, rounded, fibrous cord situated nearer to the back than the front of the joint. It is attached, above, to the back part of the outer tuberosity of the femur; below, to the outer part of the head of the fibula. Its *outer surface* is covered by the tendon of the Biceps, which divides at its insertion into two parts, separated by the ligament. The ligament has, passing beneath it, the tendon of the Popliteus muscle and the inferior external articular vessels and nerve.

The **Short External Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum laterale externum breve seu posticum*) (Fig. 242) is not a constant structure. It is an accessory bundle of fibres placed behind and parallel with the preceding, attached, above, to the lower and back part of the outer tuberosity of the femur; below, to the summit of the styloid process of the fibula. This ligament is intimately connected with the capsular ligament, and has, passing beneath it, the tendon of the Popliteus muscle and the inferior external articular vessels and nerve.

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) (Fig. 241) consists of an exceedingly thin but strong, fibrous membrane which fills in the intervals left between the stronger bands above described, and is inseparably connected with them. In front it blends with and forms part of the lateral patellar ligaments and fills in the interval between the anterior and lateral ligaments of the joints, with which latter structures it is closely connected. It is deficient above the joint and beneath the tendon of the quadriceps extensor. Behind, it is formed chiefly of vertical fibres, which arise above from the condyles and intercondyloid notch of the femur, and is connected below with the back part of the head of the tibia, being closely united with the origins of the Gastrocnemius, Plantaris, and Popliteus muscles. It passes in front of, but is inseparably connected with, the posterior ligament.

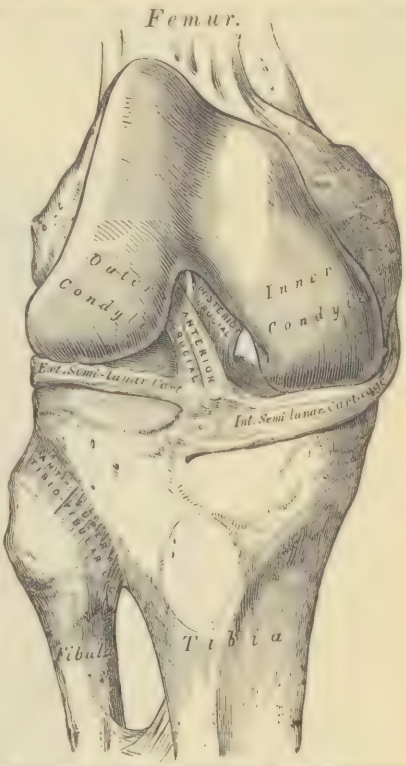


FIG. 243.—Right knee-joint. Showing internal ligaments.

The **Crucial Ligaments** (*ligamenta cruciata genu*) (Figs. 171, 243, and 244) are two interosseous ligaments of considerable strength situated in the interior of the joint, nearer its posterior than its anterior part. They are called crucial because they cross each other somewhat like the lines of the letter X; and have received the names **anterior crucial** and **posterior crucial**, from the position of their attachment to the tibia.

The **anterior** or **external crucial ligament** (*ligamentum cruciatum anterius*) (Fig. 243) is attached to the depression in front of the spine of the tibia, being blended with the anterior extremity of the external semilunar fibro-cartilage, and, passing obliquely upward, backward, and outward, is inserted into the inner and back part of the outer condyle of the femur.

The **posterior** or **internal crucial ligament** (*ligamentum cruciatum posterius*) is stronger, but shorter and less oblique in its direction than the anterior. It is attached to the back part of the depression behind the spine of the tibia, to the popliteal notch, and to the posterior extremity of the external semilunar fibro-cartilage; and passes upward, forward, and inward, to be inserted into the outer and forepart of the inner condyle of the femur. It is in relation, in *front*, with the anterior crucial ligament; *behind*, with the capsular ligament.

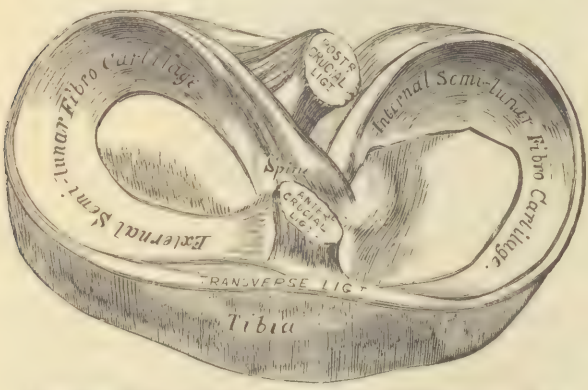


FIG. 244.—Head of tibia, with semilunar cartilages, etc. Seen from above. Right side.

The **Semilunar Fibro-cartilages** (*menisic*) (Figs. 171, 243, 244, 245, and 246) are two crescentic lamellæ which serve to deepen the surface of the head of the tibia, for articulation with the condyles of the femur. The

circumference of each cartilage is thick, convex, and attached to the inside of the capsule of the knee; the inner border is thin, concave, and free. Their *upper surfaces* are concave, and in relation with the condyles of the femur; their *lower surfaces* are flat, and rest upon the head of the tibia. Each cartilage covers nearly the outer two-thirds of the corresponding articular surface of the tibia, leaving the inner third uncovered; both surfaces are smooth and invested by synovial membrane.

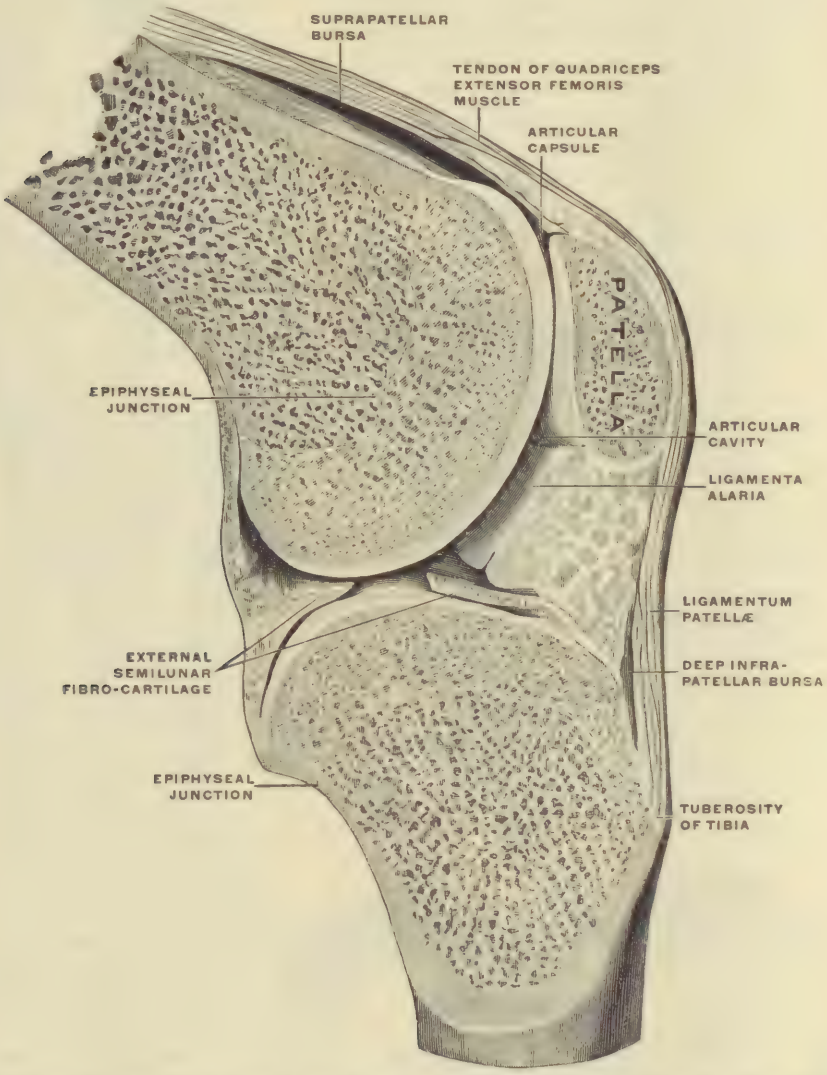


FIG. 245.—Right knee-joint. Sagittal section through the external condyle of the femur. Medial half of section, from the lateral side. (The knee is slightly flexed; the joint surfaces have been pulled a little apart.) (Spalteholz.)

The **internal semilunar fibro-cartilage** (*meniscus medialis*) is nearly semicircular in form, a little elongated from before backward, and broader behind than in front; its *anterior extremity*, thin and pointed, is attached to a depression on the anterior margin of the head of the tibia, in front of the anterior crucial ligament; its *posterior extremity* is attached to the depression behind the spine, between the attachments of the external semilunar fibro-cartilage and the posterior crucial ligaments.

The **external semilunar fibro-cartilage** (*meniscus lateralis*) forms nearly an entire circle, covering a larger portion of the articular surface than the internal one. It is grooved on its outer side for the tendon of the Popliteus muscle. Its extremities, at their insertion, are interposed between the two extremities of the internal semilunar fibro-cartilage; the *anterior extremity* being attached in front of the spine of the tibia to the outer side of, and behind, the anterior crucial

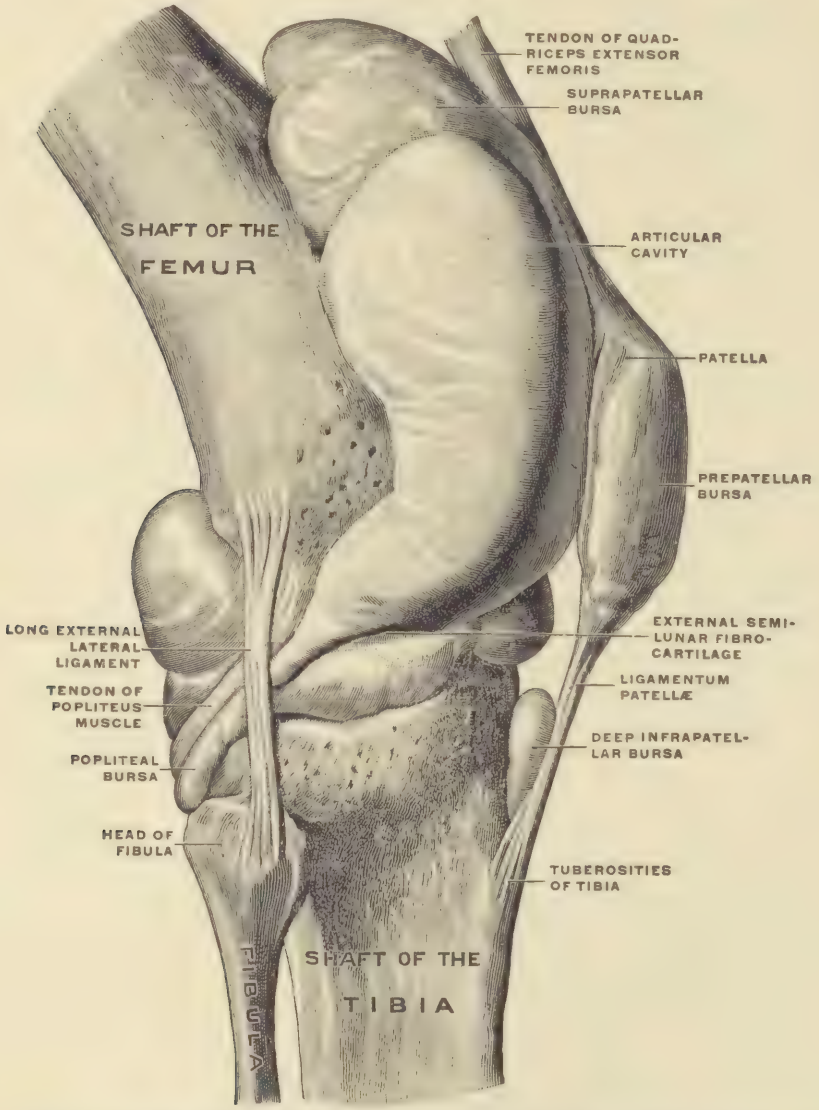


FIG. 246.—Right knee-joint, from the lateral surface. (The joint cavity and several bursæ have been injected with a stiffening medium and then dissected out.) (Spalteholz.)

ligament, with which it blends; the *posterior extremity* being attached behind the spine of the tibia, in front of the posterior extremity of the internal semilunar fibro-cartilage. Just before its insertion posteriorly it gives off a strong fasciculus, the **ligament of Wrisberg**, which passes obliquely upward and outward, to be inserted into the inner condyle of the femur, close to the attachment of the posterior crucial ligament. Occasionally a small fasciculus is given off which passes forward to be inserted into the back part of the anterior crucial ligament. The

external semilunar fibro-cartilage gives off from its anterior convex margin a fasciculus which forms the transverse ligament.

The **Transverse Ligament** (*ligamentum transversum genu*) (Fig. 244) is a band of fibres which passes transversely from the anterior convex margin of the external semilunar fibro-cartilage to the anterior convex margin of the internal semilunar fibro-cartilage; its thickness varies considerably in different subjects, and it is sometimes absent altogether.

The **Coronary Ligaments** (*ligamenta coronaria*) are merely portions of the capsular ligament, which connect the circumference of each of the semilunar fibro-cartilages with the margin of the head of the tibia.

Synovial Membrane (Figs. 245 and 246).—The synovial membrane encloses the **articular cavity** (*cavum articulare*) of the knee-joint. It is the largest and most extensive synovial membrane in the body. Commencing above the upper border of the patella, it forms a short *cul-de-sac* beneath the Quadriceps extensor tendon of the thigh, on the lower part of the front of the shaft of the femur; this communicates, by an orifice of variable size, with a synovial bursa interposed between the tendon and the front of the femur (*bursa suprapatellaris*). On each side of the patella the synovial membrane extends beneath the aponeurosis of the Vasti muscles, and more especially beneath that of the Vastus internus. Below the patella it is separated from the anterior ligament by the anterior part of the capsule and a considerable quantity of adipose tissue, known as the **infrapatellar pad** (Fig. 245). In this situation the synovial membrane sends off a triangular prolongation, containing a few ligamentous fibres, which extends from the anterior part of the joint below the patella to the front of the intercondyloid notch. This fold has been termed the **ligamentum mucosum** (*plica synovialis patellaris*). It also sends off two fringe-like folds, called the **ligamenta alaria** (*plicæ alares*) (Fig. 245), which extend from the sides of the ligamentum mucosum, upward and laterally between the patella and femur. On either side of the joint it passes downward from the femur, lining the capsule to its point of attachment to the semilunar cartilages; it may then be traced over the upper surfaces of these cartilages to their free borders, and from thence along their under surfaces to the tibia. At the back part of the external one it forms a *cul-de-sac* between the groove on its surface and the tendon of the Popliteus; it surrounds the crucial ligaments and lines the inner surface of the ligaments which enclose the joint. The pouch of synovial membrane between the Extensor tendon and front of the femur is supported, during the movements of the knee, by a small muscle, the Subcrureus, which is inserted into the upper part of the capsular ligament.

The folds of synovial membrane and the fatty processes contained in them act, as it seems, mainly in padding to fill up interspaces and obviate concussions. Sometimes the bursa beneath the Quadriceps extensor is completely shut off from the rest of the synovial cavity, thus forming a closed sac between the Quadriceps and the lower part of the front of the femur; sometimes it communicates with the synovial cavity by a minute aperture; usually the two cavities are incompletely separated by a synovial fold.

Bursæ.—The bursæ about the knee-joint are the following: In front there are *four* bursæ: one is interposed between the patella and the skin. It is known as the **prepatellar bursa** (*bursa præpatellaris subcutanea*); another, of small size, between the upper part of the tuberosity of the tibia and the ligamentum patellæ is called the **deep infrapatellar bursa** (*bursa infrapatellaris profunda*); and a third between the lower part of the tuberosity of the tibia and the skin, the **subcutaneous tibial bursa** (*bursa subcutanea tuberositatis tibiæ*). A fourth bursa exists in front, the **suprapatellar bursa** (*bursa suprapatellaris*). It lies between the anterior surface of the lower end of the femur and the posterior surface of the quadriceps femoris. Spalteholz says that the supra-

patellar bursa is closely connected with the quadriceps tendon and is usually incompletely shut off from the cavity of the joint.[1] Occasionally there is a bursa between the expansion of the fascia lata and the Quadriceps and the patella (*bursa præpatellaris subfascialis*), and sometimes one between the tendon of the quadriceps and the anterior surface of the patella (*bursa præpatellaris subtendinea*). On the outer side there are *four* bursæ: (1) one beneath the outer head of the Gastrocnemius (which sometimes communicates with the joint); (2) one above the external lateral ligament between it and the tendon of the Biceps; (3) one beneath the external lateral ligament between it and the tendon of the Popliteus (this is sometimes only an expansion from the next bursa); (4) one beneath the tendon of the Popliteus (*bursa musculi poplitei*) between it and the condyle of the femur, which is almost always an extension from the synovial membrane of the joint. On the inner side there are *five* bursæ: (1) one beneath the inner head of the Gastrocnemius, which sends a prolongation between the tendons of the Gastrocnemius and Semimembranosus: this bursa often communicates with the joint; (2) one above the internal lateral ligament between it and the tendons of the Sartorius, Gracilis, and Semitendinosus; (3) one beneath the internal lateral ligament between it and the tendon of the Semimembranosus: this is sometimes only an expansion from the next bursa; (4) one beneath the tendon of the Semimembranosus, between it and the head of the tibia; (5) sometimes there is a bursa between the tendons of the Semimembranosus and of the Semitendinosus.

Structures around the Joint.—In *front* and *at the sides*, the Quadriceps extensor; on the *outer side*, the tendons of the Biceps and the Popliteus and the external popliteal nerve; on the *inner side*, the Sartorius, Gracilis, Semitendinosus, and Semimembranosus; *behind*, an expansion from the tendon of the Semimembranosus, the popliteal vessels, and the internal popliteal nerve, the Popliteus, the Plantaris, and the inner and outer heads of the Gastrocnemius, some lymphatic glands, and fat.

The **arteries** supplying the joint are derived from the anastomotica magna branch of the femoral, articular branches of the popliteal, anterior and posterior recurrent branches of the anterior tibial, and a descending branch from the external circumflex of the Profunda.

The **nerves** are derived from the obturator, anterior crural, and external and internal popliteal.

Actions.—The knee-joint permits of movements of *flexion* and *extension*, and, in certain positions, of *slight rotation* inward and outward. The movement of flexion and extension does not, however, take place in a simple, finger-like manner, as in other joints, but is a complicated movement, consisting of a certain amount of gliding and rotation; so that the same part of one articular surface is not always applied to the same part of the other articular surface, and the axis of motion is not a fixed one. If the joint is examined while in a condition of extreme flexion, the posterior part of the articular surfaces of the tibia will be found to be in contact with the posterior rounded extremities of the condyles of the femur; and if a simple hinge-like movement were to take place, the axis, round which the revolving movement of the tibia occurs, would be in the back part of the condyle. If the leg is now brought forward into a position of semiflexion, the upper surface of the tibia will be seen to glide over the condyles of the femur, so that the middle part of the articular facets are in contact, and the axis of rotation must therefore have shifted forward to nearer the centre of the condyles. If the leg is now brought into the extended position, a still further gliding takes place and a further shifting forward of the axis of rotation. This

[1] Spalteholz's Hand Atlas of Human Anatomy. Translated by Lewellys F. Barker.

is not, however, a simple movement, but is accompanied by a certain amount of rotation outward round a vertical axis drawn through the centre of the head of the tibia. This rotation is due to the greater length of the internal condyle, and to the fact that the anterior portion of its articular surface is inclined obliquely outward. In consequence of this it will be seen that toward the close of the movement of extension—that is to say, just before complete extension is effected—the tibia glides obliquely upward and outward over this oblique surface on the inner condyle, and the leg is therefore necessarily rotated outward. In flexion of the joint the converse of these movements takes place: the tibia glides backward round the end of the femur, and at the commencement of the movement the tibia is directed downward and inward along the oblique curve of the inner condyle, thus causing an inward rotation to the leg.

During flexion and extension the patella moves on the lower end of the femur, but this movement is not a simple gliding one; for if the articular surface of this bone is examined, it will be found to present on each side of the central vertical ridge two less marked transverse ridges, which divide the surface, except a small portion along the inner border, which is cut off by a slight vertical ridge into six facets (see Fig. 247), and therefore does not present a uniform curved surface as would be the case if a simple gliding movement took place. These six facets—three on each side of the median vertical ridge—correspond to and denote the parts of the bone respectively in contact with the condyles of the femur during flexion, semiflexion, and extension. In flexion only the upper facets on the patella are in contact with the condyles of the femur; the lower two-thirds of the bone rests upon the mass of fat which occupies the space between the femur and tibia. In the semiflexed position of the joint the middle facets on the patella rest upon the most prominent portion of the condyles, and thus afford greater leverage to the Quadriceps by increasing its distance from the centre of motion. In complete extension the patella is drawn up, so that only the lower facets are in contact with the articular surfaces of the condyles. The narrow strip along the inner border is in contact with the outer aspect of the internal condyle when the leg is fully flexed at the knee-joint. As in the elbow, so it is in the knee—the axis of rotation in flexion and extension is not precisely at right angles to the axis of the bone, but during flexion there is a certain amount of alteration of plane; so that, whereas in flexion the femur and tibia are in the same plane, in extension the one bone forms an angle of about 10 degrees with the other. There is, however, this difference between the two extremities: that in the upper, during extension, the humeri are parallel and the bones of the forearm diverge; in the lower, the femora converge below and the tibia are parallel.

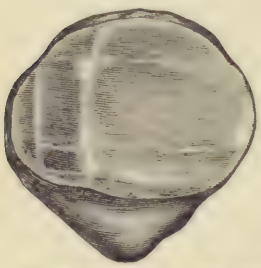


Fig. 247. View of the posterior surface of the patella, showing diagrammatically the areas of contact with the femur in different positions of the knee.

In addition to the slight rotation during flexion and extension, the tibia enjoys an independent rotation on the condyles of the femur in certain positions of the joint. This movement takes place between the interarticular fibro-cartilages and the tibia, whereas the movement of flexion and extension takes place between the interarticular fibro-cartilages and the femur. So that the knee may be said to consist of two joints, separated by the fibro-cartilages: an upper, **menisco-femoral,** in which flexion and extension take place; and a lower, **menisco-tibial,** allowing of a certain amount of rotation. This latter movement can only take place in the semiflexed position of the limb, when all the ligaments are relaxed.

During *flexion* the ligamentum patellæ is put upon the stretch, as is also the posterior crucial ligament in extreme flexion. The other ligaments are all relaxed

by flexion of the joint, though the relaxation of the anterior crucial ligament is very trifling. During life flexion is checked by the contact of the leg with the thigh. In the act of extending the leg upon the thigh the ligamentum patellæ is tightened by the Quadriceps extensor; but when the leg is fully extended, as in the erect posture, the ligament becomes relaxed, so as to allow free lateral movement to the patella, which then rests on the front of the lower end of the femur. The other ligaments, with the exception of the posterior crucial, which is partly relaxed, are all on the stretch. When the limb has been brought into a straight line, extension is checked mainly by the tension of all the ligaments except the posterior crucial and ligamentum patellæ. The movements of *rotation* of which the knee is capable are permitted in the semiflexed condition by the partial relaxation of both crucial ligaments, as well as of the lateral ligaments. Rotation inward appears to be limited by the tension of the anterior crucial ligament, and by the interlocking of the two ligaments; but rotation outward does not appear to be checked by either crucial ligament, since they uncross during the execution of this movement, but it is checked by the lateral ligaments, especially the internal. The main function of the crucial ligaments is to act as a direct bond of union between the tibia and femur, preventing the former bone from being carried too far backward or forward. Thus the anterior crucial ligament prevents the tibia being carried too far forward by the extensor tendons, and the posterior crucial checks too great movement backward by the flexors. They also assist the lateral ligaments in resisting any lateral bending of the joint. The interarticular cartilages are intended, as it seems, to adapt the surface of the tibia to the shape of the femur to a certain extent, so as to fill up the intervals which would otherwise be felt in the varying positions of the joint, and to interrupt the jars which would be so frequently transmitted up the limb in jumping or falls on the feet; also to permit of the two varieties of motion, flexion and extension, and rotation, as explained above. The patella is a great defence to the knee-joint from any injury inflicted in front, and it distributes upon a large and tolerably even surface during kneeling the pressure which would otherwise fall upon the prominent ridges of the condyles; it also affords leverage to the Quadriceps extensor muscle when it acts upon the tibia; and Mr. Ward has pointed out[1] how this leverage varies in the various positions of the joint, so that the action of the muscles produces velocity at the expense of force in the commencement of extension, and, on the contrary, at the close of extension tends to diminish velocity, and therefore the shock to the ligaments at the moment tension of the structures takes place.

Extension of the leg on the thigh is performed by the Quadriceps extensor; *flexion* by the hamstring muscles, assisted by the Gracilis and Sartorius, and, indirectly, by the Gastrocnemius, Popliteus, and Plantaris; *rotation outward*, by the Biceps; and *rotation inward* by the Popliteus, Semitendinosus, and, to a slight extent, the Semimembranosus, the Sartorius, and the Gracilis.

Surface Form.—The interval between the two bones entering into the formation of the knee-joint can always easily be felt. If the limb is extended, it is situated on a slightly higher level than the apex of the patella; but if the limb is slightly flexed, a knife carried horizontally backward immediately below the apex of the patella would pass directly into the joint. When the knee-joint is distended with fluid, the outline of the synovial membrane at the front of the knee may be fairly well mapped out.

Surgical Anatomy. The *bursæ* about the knee are frequently the seat of inflammation. Enlargement of the *prepatellar bursa* constitutes *housemaid's knee*. The bursa beneath the *Semimembranosus* may enlarge greatly. It communicates with the knee-joint and can frequently be made to disappear by pressure when the knee is flexed. Treves points out that enlargement of the bursa between the biceps tendon and the external lateral ligament causes great pain because the peroneal nerve crosses the sac.[2]

From a consideration of the construction of the knee-joint it would at first sight appear to be

[1] Human Osteology, p. 405.

[2] Applied Anatomy.

one of the least secure of any of the joints in the body. It is formed between the two longest bones, and therefore the amount of leverage which can be brought to bear upon it is very considerable; the articular surfaces are but ill adapted to each other, and the range and variety of motion which it enjoys is great. All these circumstances tend to render the articulation very insecure; but, nevertheless, on account of the very powerful ligaments which bind the bones together, the joint is one of the strongest in the body, and *dislocation from traumatism* is of very rare occurrence. When, on the other hand, the ligaments have been softened or destroyed by disease, *partial displacement* is very liable to occur, and is frequently brought about by the mere action of the muscles displacing the articular surfaces from each other. The tibia may be dislocated in any direction from the femur—forward, backward, inward, or outward; or a combination of two of these dislocations may occur—that is, the tibia may be dislocated forward and laterally, or backward and laterally, and any of these dislocations may be complete or incomplete. As a rule, however, the antero-posterior dislocations are complete, the lateral ones incomplete.

One or other of the *semilunar cartilages* may become displaced and nipped between the femur and tibia. The accident is produced by a twist of the leg when the knee is flexed, and is accompanied by a sudden pain and fixation of the knee in a flexed position. The cartilage may be displaced either inward or outward: that is to say, either inward toward the tibial spine, so that the cartilage becomes lodged in the intercondyloid notch; or outward, so that the cartilage projects beyond the margin of the articular surface. *Acute synovitis*, the result of traumatism or exposure to cold, is very common in the knee, on account of its superficial position. When distended with fluid, the swelling shows itself above and at the sides of the patella, reaching about an inch or more above the trochlear surface of the femur, and extending a little higher under the Vastus internus than the Vastus externus. Occasionally the swelling may extend two inches or more. At the sides of the patella the swelling extends lower at the inner side than it does on the outer side. The lower level of the synovial membrane is just above the level of the upper part of the head of the fibula. In the middle line it covers the upper third of the ligamentum patellæ, being separated from it, however, by the capsule and a pad of fat. *Chronic synovitis* principally shows itself in the form of pulpy degeneration of the synovial membrane, the result of *tuberculous arthritis*. The reasons why tuberculous disease of the knee so often commences in the synovial membrane appear to be the complex and extensive nature of this sac; the extensive vascular supply to it; and the fact that injuries are generally diffused and applied to the front of the joint rather than to the ends of the bones. *Syphilitic disease* not unfrequently attacks the knee-joint. In the hereditary form of the disease it is usually symmetrical, attacking both joints, which become filled with synovial effusion, and is very intractable and difficult to cure. In the tertiary stage of acquired syphilis gummatous infiltration of the synovial membrane may take place. The knee is one of the joints most commonly affected with *osteo-arthritis*, and is said to be more frequently the seat of this disease in women than in men. The occurrence of the so-called *loose cartilage* is almost confined to the knee, though loose cartilages are occasionally met with in the elbow, and, rarely, in some other joints. Many of them occur in cases of osteo-arthritis, in which calcareous or cartilaginous material is formed in one of the synovial fringes and constitutes the foreign body, and may or may not become detached, in the former case only meriting the usual term, "loose" cartilage. In other cases they have their origin in the exudation of inflammatory lymph, and possibly, in some rare instances, a portion of the articular cartilage or one of the semilunar cartilages becomes detached and constitutes the foreign body.

Genu valgum, or *knock-knee*, is a common deformity of childhood, in which, owing to changes in and about the joint, the angle between the outer border of the tibia and femur is diminished, so that as the patient stands the two internal condyles of the femora are in contact, but the two internal malleoli of the tibiæ are more or less widely separated from each other. When, however, the knees are flexed to a right angle, the two legs are practically parallel with each other. At the commencement of the disease there is a yielding of the internal lateral ligament and other fibrous structures on the inner side of the joint; as a result of this there is a constant undue pressure of the outer tuberosity of the tibia against the outer condyle of the femur. This extra pressure causes arrest of growth and, possibly, wasting of the outer condyle, and a consequent tendency for the tibia to become separated from the internal condyle. To prevent this the internal condyle becomes depressed; probably, as was first pointed out by Mikulicz, by an increased growth of the lower end of the diaphysis on its inner side, so that the line of the epiphysis becomes oblique instead of transverse to the axis of the bone, with a direction downward and inward. It is often said that the deformity is produced by undue length of the inner condyle, but in reality the condyle grows as the deformity progresses.

Excision of the knee-joint is most frequently required for tuberculous disease of this articulation, but is also practised in cases of disorganization of the knee after rheumatic fever, pyæmia, etc., in osteo-arthritis, and in ankylosis. It is also occasionally called for in cases of injury, gunshot or otherwise. The operation is best performed either by a horseshoe incision, starting from one condyle, descending as low as the tubercle of the tibia, where it crosses the leg, and is then carried upward to the other condyle; or by a transverse incision across the patella. In this

latter incision the patella is either removed or sawn across, and the halves subsequently sutured together. The bones having been cleared, and in those cases where the operation is performed for tuberculous disease all pulpy tissue having been carefully removed, the section of the femur is first made. This should never include, in children, more than, at the most, two-thirds of the articular surface, otherwise the epiphysial cartilage will be involved, with disastrous results as regards the growth of the limb. Afterward a thin slice should be removed from the upper end of the tibia, not more than half an inch. If any diseased tissue still appears to be left in the bones, it should be removed with the gouge rather than by making a further section of the bones.

III. Tibio-fibular Articulation (Articulatio Tibiofibularis).

The articulations between the tibia and fibula are effected by ligaments which connect both extremities, as well as the shafts of the bones. It may, consequently, be subdivided into three articulations: 1. The **superior tibio-fibular** articulation. 2. The **middle tibio-fibular** ligament or interosseous membrane. 3. The **inferior tibio-fibular** articulation.

1. Superior Tibio-fibular Articulation (Articulatio Tibiofibularis).

This articulation is an arthrodial joint. The contiguous surfaces of the bones present two flat, oval facets covered with cartilage, and connected together by the following ligaments:

Capsular.
Anterior Superior Tibio-fibular.
Posterior Superior Tibio-fibular.

The **Capsular Ligament** (*capsula articularis*) consists of a membranous bag which surrounds the articulation, being attached around the margins of the articular facets on the tibia and fibula, and is much thicker in front than behind.

The new nomenclature considers the anterior and posterior ligaments as one ligament (*ligamentum capituli fibulæ*).

The **Anterior Superior Ligament** (Fig. 248) consists of two or three broad and flat bands which pass obliquely upward and inward from the front of the head of the fibula to the front of the outer tuberosity of the tibia.

The **Posterior Superior Ligament** (Fig. 241) is a single thick and

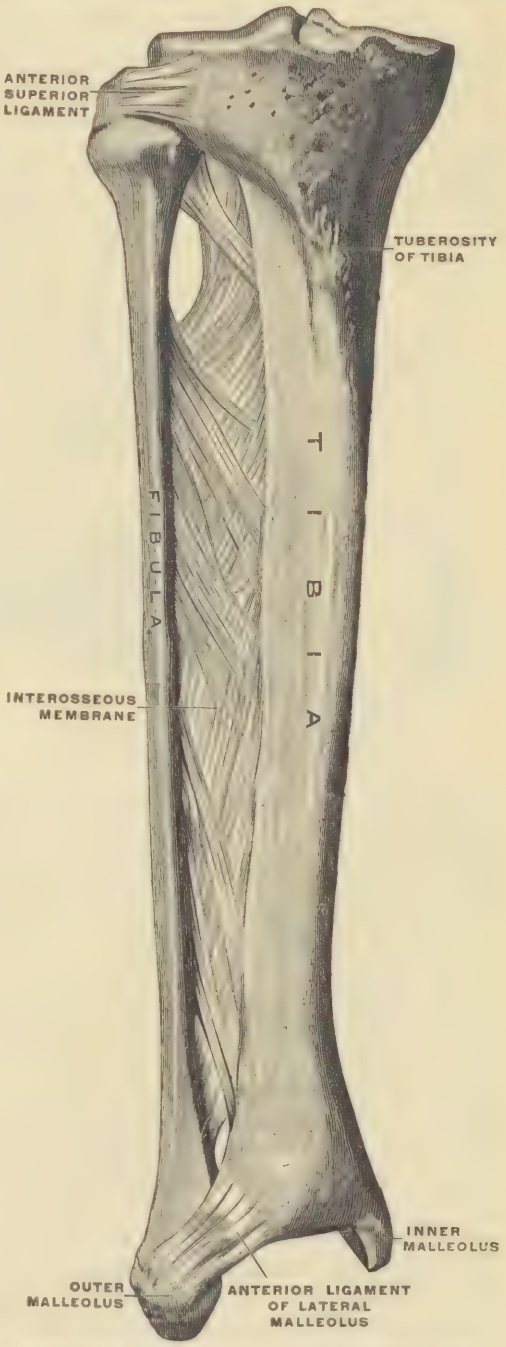


Fig. 248.—Ligaments of the right leg, from in front. (Spalteholz.)

broad band which passes upward and inward from the back part of the head of the fibula to the back part of the outer tuberosity of the tibia. It is covered by the tendon of the Popliteus muscle.

Synovial Membrane.—A synovial membrane lines this articulation, which at its upper and back part is occasionally continuous with that of the knee-joint.

2. Middle Tibio-fibular Ligament or Interosseous Membrane (Membrana Interossea Cruris) (Fig. 248).

An interosseous membrane extends between the contiguous margins of the tibia, and fibula and separates the muscles on the front from those on the back of the leg. It consists of a thin, aponeurotic lamina composed of oblique fibres which for the most part pass downward and outward between the interosseous ridges on the two bones; some few fibres, however, pass in the opposite direction, downward and inward. It is broader above than below. Its upper margin does not quite reach the superior tibio-fibular joint, but presents a free concave border, above which is a large, oval aperture for the passage of the anterior tibial vessels forward to the anterior aspect of the leg. At its lower part is an opening for the passage of the anterior peroneal vessels. It is continuous below with the inferior interosseous ligament, and is perforated in numerous places for the passage of small vessels. It is in relation, in *front*, with the Tibialis anticus, Extensor longus digitorum, Extensor proprius hallucis, Peroneus tertius, and the anterior tibial vessels and nerve; *behind*, with the Tibialis posticus and Flexor longus hallucis.

3. Inferior Tibio-fibular Articulation (Syndesmosis Tibiofibularis) (Figs. 250, 251, 252).

This articulation is formed by the rough, convex surface of the inner side of the lower end of the fibula, connected with a concave rough surface on the outer side of the tibia. Below, to the extent of about two lines, these surfaces are smooth, and covered with cartilage, which is continuous with that of the ankle-joint. The ligaments of this joint are—

Anterior Inferior Tibio-fibular.	Transverse or Inferior.
Posterior Inferior Tibio-fibular.	Inferior Interosseous.

The **Anterior Inferior Ligament** (*ligamentum malleoli lateralis anterius*) (Figs. 248 and 252) is a flat, triangular band of fibres, broader below than above, which extends obliquely downward and outward, between the adjacent margins of the tibia and fibula, on the front aspect of the articulation. It is in relation, in *front*, with the Peroneus tertius, the aponeurosis of the leg, and the integument; *behind*, with the inferior interosseous ligament; and lies in contact with the cartilage covering the astragalus.

The **Posterior Inferior Ligament** (*ligamentum malleoli lateralis posterius*) (Fig. 252), smaller than the preceding, is disposed in a similar manner on the posterior surface of the articulation.

The **Transverse Ligament** or **Inferior Ligament** lies under cover of the posterior ligament, and is a strong, thick band of yellowish fibres which passes transversely across the back of the joint, from the external malleolus to the posterior border of the articular surface of the tibia, almost as far as its malleolar process. This ligament projects below the margin of the bones, and forms part of the articulating surface for the astragalus.

The **Inferior Interosseous Ligament** (Fig. 250) consists of numerous short, strong, fibrous bands which pass between the contiguous rough surfaces of the tibia and fibula, and constitute the chief bond of union between the bones. This ligament is continuous above with the interosseous membrane.

Synovial Membrane.—The synovial membrane lining the articular surface is derived from that of the ankle-joint (Fig. 250).

Actions.—The movement permitted in these articulations is limited to a very slight gliding of the articular surfaces one upon another.

IV. The Tibio-tarsal Articulation or Ankle-joint (Articulatio Talocruralis) (Figs. 249, 250, 251, 252).

The ankle is a ginglymus or hinge-joint. The bones entering into its formation are the lower extremity of the tibia and its malleolus and the external malleolus

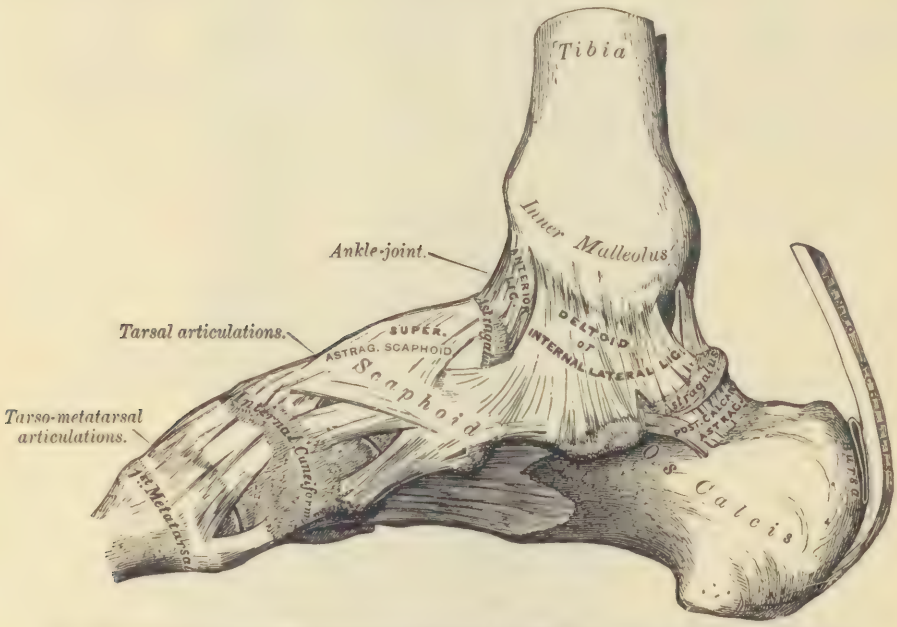


FIG. 249.—Ankle-joint: tarsal and tarso-metatarsal articulations. Internal view. Right side.

of the fibula, which forms a mortise (Fig. 248) to receive the upper convex surface of the astragalus and its two lateral facets. The bony surfaces are covered with cartilage and connected together by a **capsule** (*capsula articularis*), which in places forms thickened bands constituting the following ligaments:

Anterior.	Internal Lateral.
Posterior.	External Lateral.

The **Anterior Tibio-tarsal Ligament** (*ligamentum talotibiale anterius*) is a broad, thin, membranous layer, attached, above, to the anterior margin of the lower extremity of the tibia; below, to the margin of the astragalus, in front of its articular surface. It is in relation, in front, with the Extensor tendons of the toes, with the tendons of the Tibialis anticus and Peroneus tertius, and the anterior tibial vessels and nerve; behind, it lies in contact with the synovial membrane.

The **Posterior Tibio-tarsal Ligament** (*ligamentum talotibiale posterius*) is very thin, and consists principally of transverse fibres. It is attached, above, to the margin of the articular surface of the tibia, blending with the transverse tibiofibular ligament; below, to the astragalus, behind its superior articular facet. Externally, where a somewhat thickened band of transverse fibres is attached to the hollow on the inner surface of the external malleolus, it is thicker than internally.

The **Internal Lateral or Deltoid Ligament** (*ligamentum calcaneotibiale* or *ligamentum deltoideum*) (Figs. 249, 250, and 251) is a strong, flat, triangular band, attached, above, to the apex and anterior and posterior borders of the inner malleolus. The most anterior fibres pass forward to be inserted into the scaphoid bone and the inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament; the middle descend almost perpendicularly to be inserted into the sustentaculum tali of the os calcis; and the posterior fibres pass backward and outward to be attached to the inner side of the astragalus. This ligament is covered by the tendons of the Tibialis posticus and Flexor longus digitorum muscles.

The **External Lateral Ligament** (*ligamenta talofibularia et calcaneofibulare*) (Figs. 251 and 252) consists of three distinctly specialized fasciculi of the capsule, taking different directions and separated by distinct intervals; for which reason it is described by some anatomists as three distinct ligaments.[1]

The **anterior fasciculus** (*ligamentum talofibulare anterius*), the shortest of the three, passes from the anterior margin of the external malleolus forward and inward to the astragalus, in front of its external articular facet.

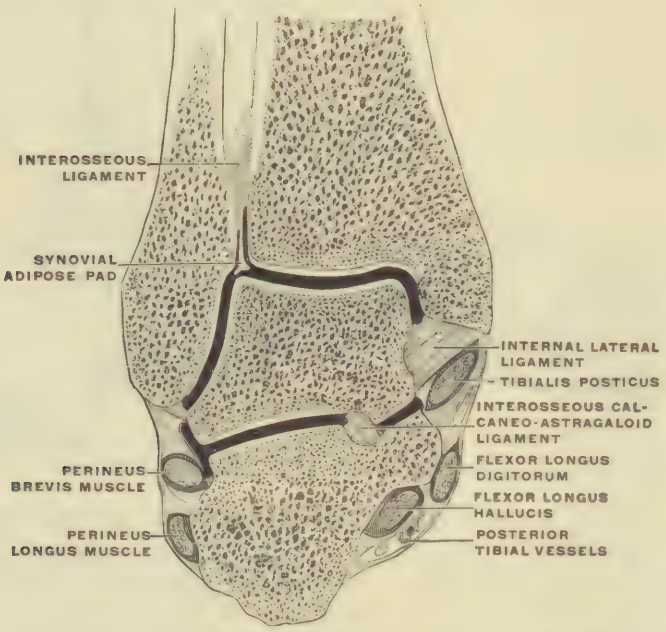


FIG. 250.—Frontal section through the ankle-joint and the calcaneo-astragaloid articulation. (Poirier and Charpy).

The **posterior fasciculus** (*ligamentum talofibulare posterius*), the most deeply seated, passes inward from the depression at the inner and back part of the external malleolus to a prominent tubercle on the posterior surface of the astragalus. Its fibres are almost horizontal in direction.

The **middle fasciculus** (*ligamentum calcaneofibulare*) (Figs. 251 and 252), the longest of the three, is a narrow, rounded cord passing from the apex of the external malleolus downward and slightly backward to a tubercle on the outer surface of the os calcis. It is covered by the tendons of the Peroneus longus and brevis.

Synovial Membrane.—The synovial membrane (Fig. 250) invests the inner surface of the ligaments, and sends a duplicature upward between the lower extremities of the tibia and fibula for a short distance.

[1] Humphry. On the Skeleton, p. 559.

Relations.—The tendons, vessels, and nerves in connection with the joint are, in *front*, from within outward, the Tibialis anticus, Extensor proprius hallucis, anterior tibial vessels, anterior tibial nerve, Extensor longus digitorum, and Peroneus tertius; *behind*, from within outward, the Tibialis posticus, Flexor longus

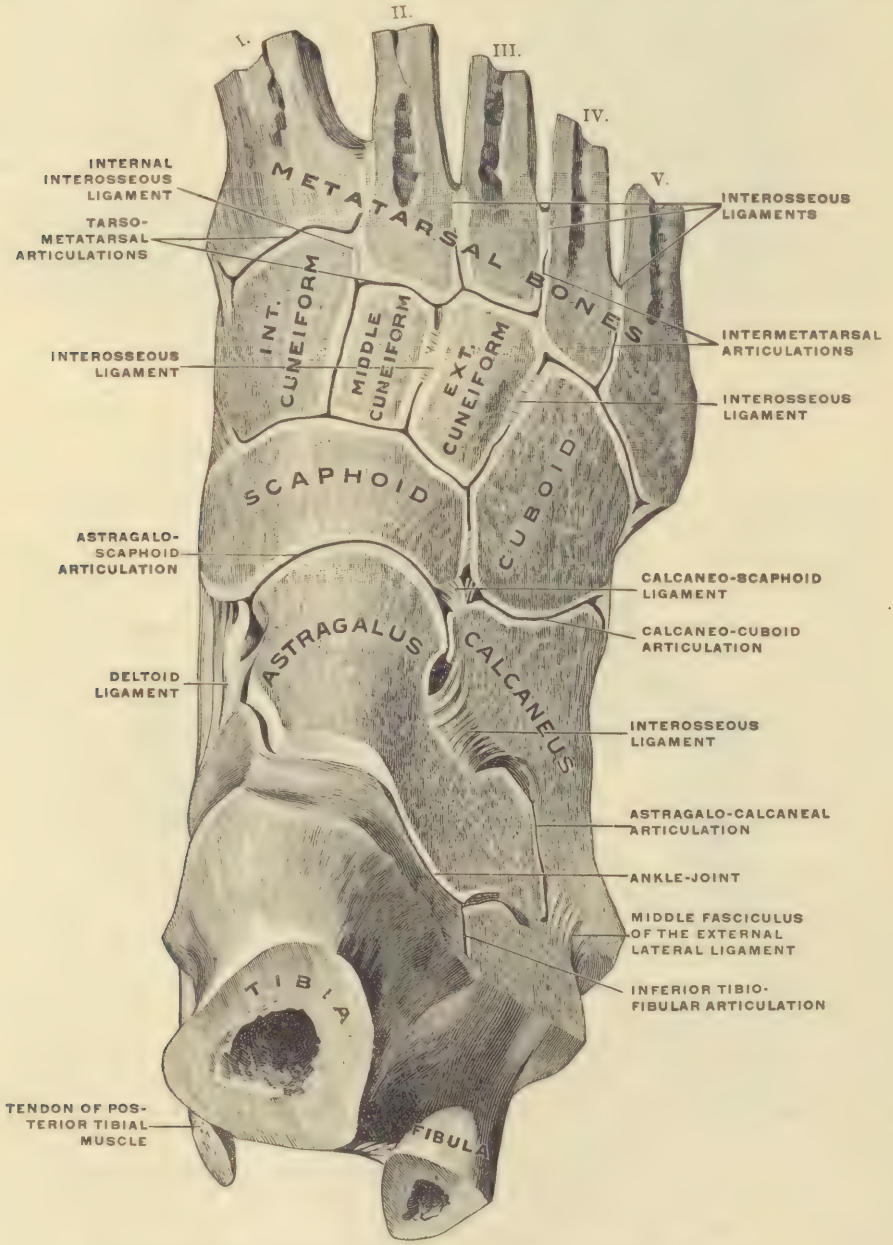


FIG. 251.—Joints of the right foot, from the back of the foot. (Spalteholz.)

digitorum, posterior tibial vessels, posterior tibial nerve, Flexor longus hallucis; and in the groove behind the external malleolus, the tendons of the Peroneus longus and brevis.

The **arteries** supplying the joint are derived from the malleolar branches of the anterior tibial and the peroneal.

The **nerves** are derived from the anterior and posterior tibial.

Actions.—The movements of the joint are those of *flexion* and *extension*. Flexion consists in the approximation of the dorsum of the foot to the front of the leg, while in extension the heel is drawn up and the toes pointed downward. The malleoli tightly embrace the astragalus in all positions of the joint, so that any slight degree of lateral movement which may exist is simply due to stretching of the inferior tibio-fibular ligaments and slight bending of the shaft of the fibula. Of the ligaments, the internal, or deltoid, is of very great power—so much so that it usually resists a force which fractures the process of bone to which it is attached. Its middle portion, together with the middle fasciculus of the external lateral ligament, binds the bones of the leg firmly to the foot and resists displacement in every direction. Its anterior and posterior fibres limit extension and flexion of the foot respectively, and the anterior fibres also limit abduction. The posterior portion of the external lateral ligament assists the middle portion in resisting the displacement of the foot backward, and deepens the cavity for the

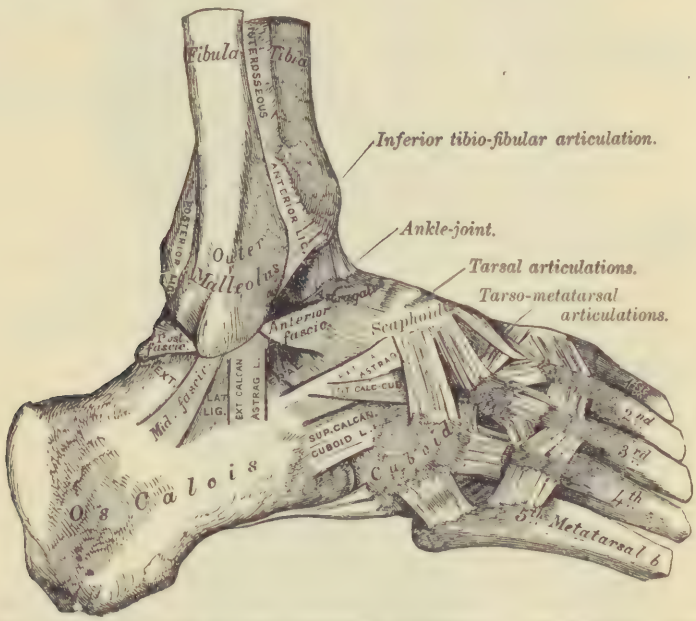


FIG. 252.—Ankle-joint: tarsal and tarso-metatarsal articulations. External view. Right side.

reception of the astragalus. The anterior fasciculus is a security against the displacement of the foot forward, and limits extension of the joint. The movements of *inversion* and *eversion* of the foot, together with the minute changes in form by which it is applied to the ground or takes hold of an object in climbing, etc., are mainly effected in the tarsal joints, the one which enjoys the greatest amount of motion being that between the astragalus and os calcis behind and the scaphoid and cuboid in front. This is often called the **transverse** or **medio-tarsal joint**, and it can, with the subordinate joints of the tarsus, replace the ankle-joint in a great measure when the latter has become ankylosed.

Extension of the tarsal bones upon the tibia and fibula is produced by the Gastrocnemius, Soleus, Plantaris, Tibialis posticus, Peroneus longus and brevis, Flexor longus digitorum, and Flexor longus hallucis; *flexion*, by the Tibialis anticus, Peroneus tertius, Extensor longus digitorum, and Extensor proprius hallucis[1]

[1] The student must bear in mind that the Extensor longus digitorum and Extensor proprius hallucis are *extensors* of the toes, but *flexors* of the ankle, and that the Flexor longus digitorum and Flexor longus hallucis are *flexors* of the toes, but *extensors* of the ankle.

(Fig. 251); *inversion*, in the extended position, is produced by the Tibialis anticus and posticus; and *eversion* by the Peronei.

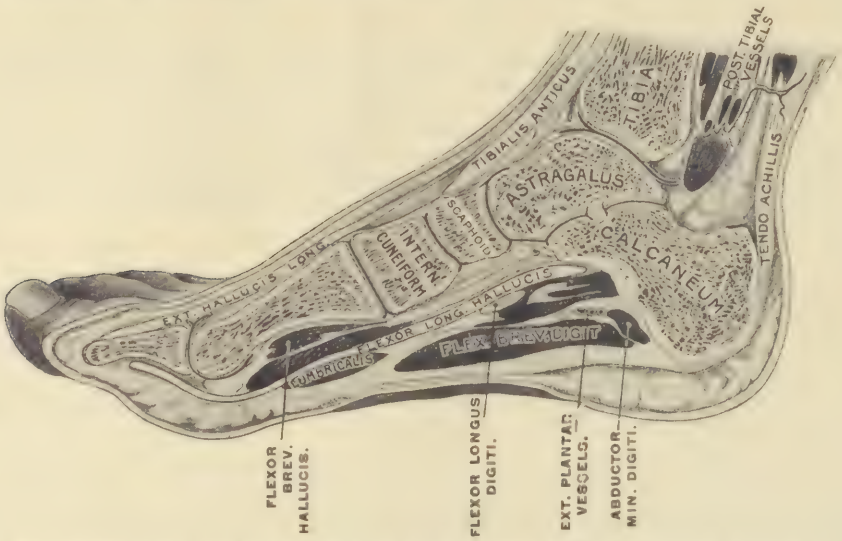


FIG. 253.—Section of the right foot near its inner border, dividing the tibia, astragalus, scaphoid, internal cuneiform, and first metatarsal bone, and the first phalanx of the great toe. (After Braune.)

Surface Form.—The line of the ankle-joint may be indicated by a transverse line drawn across the front of the lower part of the leg, about half an inch above the level of the tip of the internal malleolus.

Surgical Anatomy. *Displacement* of the trochlear surface of the astragalus from the tibio-fibular mortise is not of common occurrence, as the ankle-joint is a very strong and powerful articulation, and great force is required to produce dislocation. Nevertheless, dislocation does occasionally occur, both in an antero-posterior and a lateral direction. In the latter, which is the most common, fracture is a necessary accompaniment of the injury. The dislocation in these cases is somewhat peculiar, and is not a displacement in a horizontally lateral direction, such as usually occurs in lateral dislocations of ginglymoid joints, but the astragalus undergoes a partial rotation round an antero-posterior axis drawn through its own centre, so that the superior surface, instead of being directed upward, is inclined more or less inward or outward according to the variety of the displacement.

The ankle-joint is more frequently sprained than any joint in the body, and this may lead to *acute synovitis*. In these cases, when the synovial sac is distended with fluid, the bulging appears principally in the front of the joint, beneath the anterior tendons, and on either side, between the tibialis anticus and the internal lateral ligament on the inner side, and between the Peroneus tertius and the external lateral ligament on the outer side. In addition to this, bulging frequently occurs posteriorly, and a fluctuating swelling may be detected on either side of the tendo Achillis.

Chronic synovitis may result from frequent sprains, and when once this joint has been sprained it is more liable to a recurrence of the injury than it was before; chronic synovitis may be tuberculous in its origin, the disease usually commencing in the astragalus and extending to the joint, though it may commence as a synovitis the result probably of some slight strain in a tuberculous subject.

Excision of the ankle-joint is not often performed for two reasons. In the first place, disease of the articulation for which this operation is indicated is frequently associated with disease of the tarsal bones, which prevents its performance; and, secondly, the foot after excision is frequently of very little use; far less, in fact, than after a Syme's amputation, which is often, therefore, a preferable operation in these cases. Excision may, however, be attempted in a case of tuberculous arthritis in a young and otherwise healthy subject, where the disease is limited to the bones forming the joint. It may also be required after injury where the vessels and nerves have not been damaged and the patient is young and free from visceral disease. The excision is best performed through two lateral incisions. One commencing two and a half inches above the external malleolus, carried down the posterior border of the fibula, round the end of the bone, and then forward and downward as far as the calcaneo-cuboid joint, midway between the tip of the external malleolus and the tuberosity on the fifth metatarsal bone. Through this incision

the fibula is cleared, the external lateral ligament is divided, and the bone sawn through about half an inch above the level of the ankle-joint and removed. A similar curved incision is now made on the inner side of the foot, commmencing two and a half inches above the lower end of the tibia, carried down the posterior border of the bone, round the internal malleolus, and forward and downward to the tuberosity of the scaphoid bone. Through this incision the tibia is cleared in front and behind, the internal lateral, the anterior and posterior ligaments divided, and the end of the tibia protruded through the wound by displacing the foot outward, and sawn off sufficiently high to secure a healthy section of bone. The articular surface of the astragalus is now to be sawn off or the whole bone removed. In cases where the operation is performed for tuberculous arthritis the latter course is probably preferable, as the injury done by the saw is frequently the starting point of fresh caries; and after removal of the whole bone the shortening is not appreciably increased, and the result as regards union appears to be as good as when two sawn surfaces of bone are brought into apposition.

V. Articulations of the Tarsus (Articulationes Intertarseæ) (Figs. 249, 251, 252, 254, 255).

1. Articulation of the Os Calcis and Astragalus or the Calcaneo-astragaloid Articulation (Articulatio Talocalcanea) (Fig. 251).

The articulations between the os calcis and astragalus are two in number—anterior and posterior. They are arthrodial joints. The bones are connected together by a **capsule** (*capsula articularis*), which is at certain points accentuated into definite ligaments. There are five ligaments in this articulation:

External Calcaneo-astragaloid. Anterior Calcaneo-astragaloid.
Internal Calcaneo-astragaloid. Posterior Calcaneo-astragaloid.
Interosseous.

The **External Calcaneo-astragaloid Ligament** (*ligamentum talocalcaneum laterale*) (Fig. 252) is a short, strong, fasciculus passing from the outer surface of the astragalus, immediately beneath its external malleolar facet, to the outer surface of the os calcis. It is placed in front of the middle fasciculus of the external lateral ligament of the ankle-joint, with the fibres of which it is parallel.

The **Internal Calcaneo-astragaloid Ligament** (*ligamentum talocalcaneum mediale*) is a band of fibres connecting the internal tubercle of the back of the astragalus with the back of the sustentaculum tali. Its fibres blend with those of the inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament.

The **Anterior Calcaneo-astragaloid Ligament** (*ligamentum talocalcaneum anterius*) passes from the front and outer surface of the neck of the astragalus to the superior surface of the os calcis.

The **Posterior Calcaneo-astragaloid Ligament** (*ligamentum talocalcaneum posterius*) connects the external tubercle of the astragalus with the upper and inner part of the os calcis; it is a short band, the fibres of which radiate from their narrow attachment to the astragalus.

The **Interosseous Ligament** (*ligamentum talocalcaneum interosseum*) (Figs. 250, 251, and 255) forms the chief bond of union between the bones. It consists of numerous vertical and oblique fibres attached by one extremity to the groove between the articulating facets on the under surface of the astragalus; by the other to a corresponding depression on the upper surface of the os calcis. It is very thick and strong, being at least an inch in breadth from side to side, and serves to unite the os calcis and astragalus solidly together.

Synovial Membrane.—The synovial membranes (Fig. 255) are *two* in number: one for the posterior calcaneo-astragaloid articulation; a second for the anterior calcaneo-astragaloid joint. The latter synovial membrane is continued forward between the contiguous surfaces of the astragalus and scaphoid bones.

Actions.—The movements permitted between the astragalus and os calcis are limited to a gliding of the one bone on the other in a direction from before backward, and from side to side.

2. Articulation of the Os Calcis with the Cuboid or the Calcaneo-cuboid Articulation (Articulatio Calcaneocuboidea) (Fig. 251).

In this joint the articular capsule (*capsula articularis*) is strengthened at certain points by definite ligaments.

The ligaments connecting the os calcis with the cuboid are four in number:

Dorsal or Superior Calcaneo-cuboid.
The Internal Calcaneo-cuboid.
Two Plantar { Long Calcaneo-cuboid. / Short Calcaneo-cuboid.

The **Superior Calcaneo-cuboid Ligament** (*ligamentum calcaneocuboideum dorsale*) (Fig. 252) is a broad portion of the capsule which passes between the contiguous surfaces of the os calcis and cuboid on the dorsal surface of the joint.

The **Internal Calcaneo-cuboid** or the **Interosseous Ligament** (*pars calcaneo-cuboidea ligamenti bifurcati*) is a short but thick and strong band of fibres arising from the os calcis, in the deep hollow which intervenes between it and the astragalus, and closely blended, at its origin, with the superior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament. These two ligaments are often regarded as a single bifurcated ligament (*ligamentum bifurcatum*). The internal calcaneo-cuboid ligament is inserted into the inner side of the cuboid bone. This ligament forms one of the chief bonds of union between the first and second rows of the tarsus.

The **Long Calcaneo-cuboid** or **Long Plantar** or **Superficial Long Plantar Ligament** (*ligamentum plantare longum*) (Fig. 254), the more superficial of the two plantar ligaments, is the longest of all the ligaments of the tarsus: it is attached to the under surface of the os calcis, from near the tuberosities, as far forward as the anterior tubercle; its fibres pass forward to be attached to the ridge on the under surface of the cuboid bone, the more superficial fibres being continued onward to the bases of the second, third, and fourth metatarsal bones. This ligament crosses the groove on the under surface of the cuboid bone, converting it into a canal for the passage of the tendon of the Peroneus longus.

The **Short Calcaneo-cuboid** or **Short Plantar Ligament** (*ligamentum calcaneo-cuboideum plantare*) (Fig. 254) lies nearer the bones than the preceding, from which it is separated by a little areolar tissue. It is exceedingly broad, about an inch in length, and extends from the tubercle and the depression in front of it, on the forepart of the under surface of the os calcis, to the inferior surface of the cuboid bone behind the peroneal groove.

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 255).—The synovial membrane in this joint is distinct. It lines the inner surface of the ligaments.

Actions.—The movements permitted between the os calcis and cuboid are limited to a slight gliding upon each other.

3. The Ligaments Connecting the Os Calcis and Scaphoid or the Calcaneo-scaphoid Articulation Ligaments.

Though these two bones do not directly articulate, they are connected together by two ligaments:

Superior or External Calcaneo-scaphoid.
Inferior or Internal Calcaneo-scaphoid.

The **Superior** or **External Calcaneo-scaphoid** or **Calcaneo-navicular** (*pars calcanconavicularis ligamenti bifurcati*) arises, as already mentioned, with the internal calcaneo-cuboid in the deep hollow between the astragalus and os calcis,

constituting a part of the ligamentum bifurcatum; it passes forward from the upper surface of the anterior extremity of the os calcis to the outer side of the scaphoid bone. These two ligaments resemble the letter Y, being blended together behind, but separated in front.

The **Inferior** or **Internal Calcaneo-scaphoid** or **Calcaneo-navicular** (*ligamentum calcaneonaviculare plantare*) (Fig. 254) is by far the larger and stronger of the two ligaments between these bones; it is a broad and thick band of fibres, which passes forward and inward from the anterior margin of the sustentaculum tali of the os calcis to the under surface of the scaphoid bone. This ligament not only serves to connect the os calcis and scaphoid, but supports the head of the astragalus, forming part of the articular cavity in which it is received. The *upper surface* presents a fibro-cartilaginous facet, lined by the synovial membrane continued from the anterior calcaneo-astragaloid articulation, upon which a portion of the head of the astragalus rests. Its *under surface* is in contact with the tendon of the Tibialis posticus muscle;[1] its *inner border* is blended with the forepart of the Deltoid ligament, thus completing the socket for the head of the astragalus.

FIG. 254.—Ligaments of the plantar surface of the foot.

Surgical Anatomy.—The inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament, by supporting the head of the astragalus, is principally concerned in maintaining the arch of the foot, and when it yields the head of the astragalus is pressed downward, inward, and forward by the weight of the body, and the foot becomes flattened, expanded, and turned outward, constituting the disease known as **flat-foot**. This ligament contains a considerable amount of elastic fibre, so as to give elasticity to the arch and spring to the foot; hence it is sometimes called the "spring" ligament. It is supported, on its under surface, by the tendon of the Tibialis posticus, which spreads out at its insertion into a number of fasciculi which are attached to most of the tarsal and metatarsal bones; this prevents undue stretching of the ligament and is a protection against the occurrence of flat-foot.

4. Articulation of the Astragalus with the Scaphoid Bone or the Astragalo-scaphoid Articulation (Articulatio Talonavicularis) (Fig. 251).

The articulation between the astragalus and scaphoid is an arthrodial joint: the rounded head of the astragalus being received into the concavity formed by the posterior surface of the scaphoid, the anterior articulating surface of the calcaneum, and the upper surface of the inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament, which fills up the triangular interval between these bones. The only ligament of this joint is the **superior astragalo-scaphoid** (Fig. 249). It is a broad band, which passes obliquely forward from the neck of the astragalus to the superior surface of the scaphoid bone. It is thin, and weak in texture, and covered by the Extensor tendons. The inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament supplies the place of an inferior astragalo-scaphoid ligament.

[1] Mr. Hancock describes an extension of this ligament upward on the inner side of the foot, which completes the socket of the joint in that direction (Lancet, 1866, vol. i. p. 618).

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 255).—The synovial membrane which lines the joint is continued forward from the anterior calcaneo-astragaloid articulation.

Actions.—This articulation permits of considerable mobility, but its feebleness is such as to allow occasionally of dislocation of the other bones of the tarsus from the astragalus.

The **transverse tarsal** or **medio-tarsal joint** (*articulatio tarsi transversa* [*Choparti*]) (Figs. 251 and 256) is formed by the articulation of the os calcis with the cuboid, and by the articulation of the astragalus with the scaphoid. The movement which takes place in this joint is more extensive than that in the other tarsal joints, and consists of a sort of rotation by means of which the sole of the foot may be slightly flexed and extended or carried inward (*inverted*) and outward (*everted*).

5. The Articulation of the Scaphoid with the Cuneiform Bones (Articulatio Cuneonavicularis) (Fig. 251).

The scaphoid is connected to the three cuneiform bones by

Dorsal and Plantar ligaments.

The **Dorsal Ligaments** (*ligamenta naviculari-cuneiformia dorsalia*) (Figs. 249 and 251) are small, longitudinal bands of fibrous tissue arranged as three bundles, one to each of the cuneiform bones. That bundle of fibres which connects the scaphoid with the internal cuneiform is continued round the inner side of the articulation to be continuous with the plantar ligament which connects these two bones.

The **Plantar Ligaments** (*ligamenta naviculari-cuneiformia plantaria*) (Fig. 254) have a similar arrangement to those on the dorsum. They are strengthened by processes given off from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus.

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 255).—The synovial membrane of these joints is part of the great tarsal synovial membrane.

Actions.—The movements permitted between the scaphoid and cuneiform bones are limited to a slight gliding upon each other.

6. The Articulation of the Scaphoid with the Cuboid (Articulatio Cubonavicularis).

The scaphoid bone is connected with the cuboid by

Dorsal, Plantar, and Interosseous ligaments.

The **Dorsal Ligament** (*ligamentum cuboideonaviculare dorsale*) (Fig. 252) consists of a band of fibrous tissue which passes obliquely forward and outward from the scaphoid to the cuboid bone.

The **Plantar Ligament** (*ligamentum cuboideonaviculare plantare*) consists of a band of fibrous tissue which passes nearly transversely between these two bones.

The **Interosseous Ligament** (Figs. 251 and 255) consists of strong transverse fibres which pass between the rough non-articular portions of the lateral surfaces of these two bones.

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 255).—The synovial membrane of this joint is part of the great tarsal synovial membrane.

Actions.—The movements permitted between the scaphoid and cuboid bones are limited to a slight gliding upon each other.

7. The Articulations of the Cuneiform Bones with Each Other or the Intercuneiform Articulations (Fig. 251).

These bones are connected together by

Dorsal, Plantar, and Interosseous ligaments.

The **Dorsal Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercuneiformia dorsalia*) consist of two bands of fibrous tissue which pass transversely, one connecting the internal with the middle cuneiform, and the other connecting the middle with the external cuneiform.

The **Plantar Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercuneiformia plantaria*) have a similar arrangement to those on the dorsum. They are strengthened by the processes given off from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus.

The **Interosseous Ligaments** (*ligamenta intercuneiformia interossea*) consist of strong transverse fibres which pass between the rough non-articular portions of the lateral surfaces of the first and second and the second and third cuneiform bones. The outer portion of the third cuneiform is attached to the cuboid by the *ligamentum cuneocuboideum interosseum.*

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 255).—The synovial membrane of these joints is part of the great tarsal synovial membrane.

Actions.—The movements permitted between the cuneiform bones are limited to a slight gliding upon each other.

8. The Articulation of the External Cuneiform Bone with the Cuboid (Fig. 251).

These bones are connected together by

Dorsal, Plantar, and Interosseous ligaments.

The **Dorsal Ligament** (*ligamentum cuneocuboideum dorsale*) (Fig. 252) consists of a band of fibrous tissue which passes transversely between these two bones.

The **Plantar Ligament** (*ligamentum cuneocuboideum plantare*) has a similar arrangement. It is strengthened by a process given off from the tendon of the Tibialis posticus.

The **Interosseous Ligament** (*ligamentum cuneocuboideum interosseum*) (Fig. 251) consists of strong transverse fibres which pass between the rough non-articular portions of the lateral surfaces of the adjacent sides of these two bones.

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 255).—The synovial membrane of this joint is part of the great tarsal synovial membrane.

Actions.—The movements permitted between the external cuneiform and cuboid are limited to a slight gliding upon each other.

Nerve-supply.—All the joints of the tarsus are supplied by the anterior tibial nerve.

Surgical Anatomy.—In spite of the great strength of the ligaments which connect the tarsal bones together, *dislocation* at some of the tarsal joints does occasionally occur; though, on account of the spongy character of the bones, they are more frequently broken than dislocated, as the result of violence. When dislocation does occur, it is most commonly in connection with the astragalus; for not only may this bone be dislocated from the tibia and fibula at the ankle-joint, but the other bones may be dislocated from it, the trochlear surface of the bone remaining *in situ* in the tibio-fibular mortise. This constitutes what is known as the *subastragaloid dislocation.* Or, again, the astragalus may be dislocated from all its connections—from the tibia and fibula above, the os calcis below, and the scaphoid in front—and may even undergo a rotation, either on a vertical or horizontal axis. In the former case the long axis of the bone becoming directed across the joint, so that the head faces the articular surface on one or other malleolus; or, in the latter, the lateral surfaces becoming directed upward and downward, so that the trochlear surface faces to one or the other side. Finally, dislocation may occur at the medio-tarsal joint, the anterior tarsal bones being luxated from the astragalus and calcaneum. The other tarsal bones are also, occasionally, though rarely, dislocated from their connections.

Pes planus, *flat-foot*, or *splay-foot* is a condition in which there is abduction, eversion, and loss of both the longitudinal and the transverse arch. The head of the astragalus passes downward and inward; the anterior portion of the foot is turned outward and the inner side of the foot is lengthened and broadened. Deformity is increased when standing. In severe cases

the patient walks on the inner side of the foot. The condition is due to yielding of the tarsal ligaments. Abduction is permitted by yielding of the internal lateral and calcaneo-astragaloid ligaments. Yielding of the calcaneo-scaphoid ligament permits the head of the astragalus to pass downward and forward, and the entire arch falls. Further deformity is induced by the yielding of the ligaments.

VI. Tarso-metatarsal Articulations (Articulationes Tarsometatarseæ [Lisfranci]) (Figs. 249, 251, 252, 254, 257).

These are arthrodial joints. The bones entering into their formation are four tarsal bones—viz., the internal, middle, and external cuneiform and the cuboid—which articulate with the metatarsal bones of the five toes. The metatarsal bone of the great toe articulates with the internal cuneiform; that of the second is deeply wedged in between the internal and external cuneiform, resting against the middle cuneiform, and being the most strongly articulated of all the metatarsal bones; the third metatarsal articulates with the extremity of the external cuneiform; the fourth, with the cuboid and external cuneiform; and the fifth, with the cuboid. The articular surfaces are covered with cartilage, lined by synovial membrane, and connected together by capsules and by the following ligaments:

Dorsal. Plantar. Interosseous.

The **Dorsal Ligaments** (*ligamenta tarsometatarsea dorsalia*) consist of strong, flat, fibrous bands, which connect the tarsal with the metatarsal bones. The first metatarsal is connected to the internal cuneiform by a single broad, thin, fibrous band; the second has three dorsal ligaments, one from each cuneiform bone; the third has one from the external cuneiform; the fourth has two, one from the external cuneiform and one from the cuboid; and the fifth, one from the cuboid.

The **Plantar Ligaments** (*ligamenta tarsometatarsea plantaria*) consist of longitudinal and oblique fibrous bands connecting the tarsal and metatarsal bones, but disposed with less regularity than on the dorsal surface. Those for the first and second metatarsal are the most strongly marked; the second and third metatarsal receive strong fibrous bands which pass obliquely across from the internal cuneiform; the plantar ligaments of the fourth and fifth metatarsal consist of a few scanty fibres derived from the cuboid.

The **Interosseous Ligaments** (*ligamenta cuneometatarsea interossea*) are *three* in number—internal, middle, and external. The **internal** one is the strongest of the three, and passes from the outer extremity of the internal cuneiform to the adjacent angle of the second metatarsal. The **middle** one, less strong than the preceding, connects the external cuneiform with the adjacent angle of the second metatarsal. The **external** interosseous ligament connects the outer angle of the external cuneiform with the adjacent side of the third metatarsal.

Synovial Membrane (Fig. 255).—The synovial membrane between the internal cuneiform bone and the first metatarsal bone is a distinct sac. The synovial membrane between the middle and external cuneiform behind, and the second and third metatarsal bones in front, is part of the great tarsal synovial membrane. Two prolongations are sent forward from it—one between the adjacent sides of the second and third metatarsal bones, and one between the third and fourth metatarsal bones. The synovial membrane between the cuboid and the fourth and fifth metatarsal bones is a distinct sac. From it a prolongation is sent forward between the fourth and fifth metatarsal bones.

Actions.—The movements permitted between the tarsal and metatarsal bones are limited to a slight gliding upon each other.

VII. Articulations of the Metatarsal Bones with Each Other (Articulationes Intermetatarseæ) (Figs. 251, 252, 254).

The base of the first metatarsal bone is not connected with the second metatarsal bone by any ligaments; in this respect it resembles the thumb.

The bases of the four outer metatarsal bones are connected together by dorsal, plantar, and interosseous ligaments.

The **Dorsal Ligaments** (*ligamenta basium* [*oss. metatars.*] *dorsalia*) consist of bands of fibrous tissue which pass transversely between the adjacent metatarsal bones.

The **Plantar Ligaments** (*ligamenta basium* [*oss. metatars.*] *plantaria*) have a similar arrangement to those on the dorsum.

The **Interosseous Ligaments** (*ligamenta basium* [*oss. metatars.*] *interossea*) consist of strong transverse fibres which pass between the rough non-articular portions of the lateral surfaces.

Synovial Membrane.—The synovial membrane between the second and third and the third and fourth metatarsal bones is part of the great tarsal synovial membrane. The synovial membrane between the fourth and fifth metatarsal bones is a prolongation of the synovial membrane of the cubo-metatarsal joint (Fig. 255).

Actions.—The movement permitted in the tarsal ends of the metatarsal bones is limited to a slight gliding of the articular surfaces upon one another.

The Synovial Membranes in the Tarsal and Metatarsal Joints.

The synovial membranes (Fig. 255) found in the articulations of the tarsus and metatarsus are *six* in number; one for the posterior calcaneo-astragaloid

Fig. 255.—Oblique section of the articulations of the tarsus and metatarsus. Showing the six synovial membranes.

articulation; a second for the anterior calcaneo-astragaloid and astragalo-scaphoid articulations; a third for the calcaneo-cuboid articulation; and a fourth for the articulations of the scaphoid with the three cuneiform, the three cuneiform with each other, the external cuneiform with the cuboid, and the middle and external cuneiform with the bases of the second and third metatarsal bones, and the lateral surfaces of the second, third, and fourth metatarsal bones with each other; a fifth for the internal cuneiform with the metatarsal bone of the great toe; and a sixth for the articulation of the cuboid with the fourth and fifth metatarsal bones. A small synovial membrane is sometimes found between the contiguous surfaces of the scaphoid and cuboid bones.

Nerve-supply.—The nerves supplying the tarso-metatarsal joints are derived from the anterior tibial.

The **digital extremities** of all the metatarsal bones are connected together by the **transverse metatarsal ligament.**

The **Transverse Metatarsal Ligament** is a narrow fibrous band which passes transversely across the anterior extremities of all the metatarsal bones, connecting them together. It is blended anteriorly with the plantar (*glenoid*) ligament of each metatarso-phalangeal articulation. To its posterior border is connected the fascia covering the Interossei muscles. Its inferior surface is concave where the Flexor tendons pass over it. Above it the tendons of the Interossei muscles pass to their insertion. It differs from the transverse metacarpal ligament in that it connects the metatarsal bone of the great toe with the rest of the metatarsal bones.

VIII. Metatarso-phalangeal Articulations (Articulationes Metatarso-phalangeæ).

The metatarso-phalangeal articulations are of the condyloid kind, formed by the reception of the rounded head of the metatarsal bone into a superficial cavity in the extremity of the first phalanx. Each joint has a capsule and certain other ligaments.

These ligaments are—

Plantar. Two Lateral.

The **Plantar Ligaments** or the **Glenoid Ligaments of Cruveilhier** (*ligamenta accessoria plantaria*) are thick, dense, fibrous structures. Each is placed on the plantar surface of the joint in the interval between the lateral ligaments, to which it is connected. The plantar ligaments are loosely united to the metatarsal bones, but very firmly to the bases of the first phalanges. The plantar surface of each is intimately blended with the transverse metatarsal ligament, and, except in the great toe, presents a groove for the passage of the Flexor tendons, the sheath surrounding which is connected to each side of the groove. The plantar ligament of the great toe contains two large sesamoid bones. By their deep surface they form part of the articular surface for the head of the metatarsal bone, and are lined by synovial membrane.

The **Lateral Ligaments** (*ligamenta collateralia*) are strong, rounded cords, placed one on each side of the joint, each being attached, by one extremity, to the posterior tubercle on the side of the head of the metatarsal bone; and, by the other, to the contiguous extremity of the phalanx.

The place of a **Posterior Ligament** is supplied by the extensor tendon over the back of the joint.

Actions.—The movements permitted in the metatarso-phalangeal articulations are flexion, extension, abduction, and adduction.

IX. Articulations of the Phalanges (Articulationes Digitorum Pedis).

The articulations of the phalanges are ginglymoid joints. Besides the capsular the ligaments are—

Plantar. Two Lateral (*ligamenta collateralia*).

The arrangement of these ligaments is similar to those in the metatarso-phalangeal articulations; the extensor tendon supplies the place of a posterior ligament.

Actions.—The only movements permitted in the phalangeal joints are *flexion* and *extension;* these movements are more extensive between the first and second phalanges than between the second and third. The movement of flexion is very considerable, but extension is limited by the plantar and lateral ligaments.

Surface Form. –The principal joints which it is necessary to distinguish, with regard to the surgery of the foot, are the *medio-tarsal* and the *tarso-metatarsal*. The joint between the astragalus and the scaphoid is best found by means of the *tubercle of the scaphoid*, for the line of the joint is immediately behind this process. If the foot is grasped and forcibly extended, a rounded prominence, the *head of the astragalus*, will appear on the inner side of the dorsum in front of the ankle-joint, and if a knife is carried downward, just in front of this prominence and behind the line of the scaphoid tubercle, it will enter the astragalo-scaphoid joint. The calcaneo-cuboid joint is situated midway between the external malleolus and the prominent end of the fifth metatarsal bone. The plane of the joint is in the same line as that of the astragalo-scaphoid. The position of the joint between the fifth metatarsal bone and the cuboid is easily found by the projection of the fifth metatarsal bone, which is the guide to it. The direction of the line of the joint is very oblique, so that, if continued onward, it would pass through the head of the first metatarsal bone. The joint between the fourth metatarsal bone and the cuboid and external cuneiform is the direct continuation inward of the previous joint, but its plane is less oblique; it would be represented by a line drawn from the outer side of the articulation to the middle of the first metatarsal bone. The plane of the joint between the third metatarsal bone and the external cuneiform is almost transverse. It would be repre-

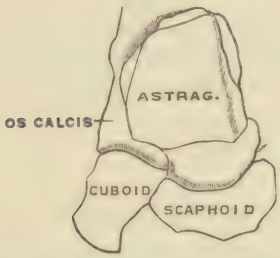


Fig. 256.—Line of Chopart's amputation. (Poirier.)

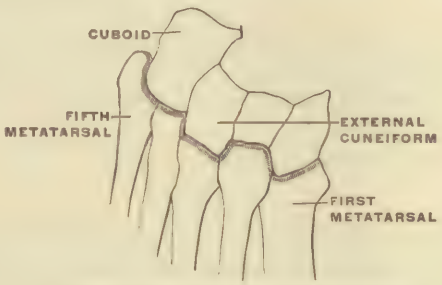


Fig. 257.—Line of Lisfranc's amputation. (Poirier.)

sented by a line drawn from the outer side of the joint to the base of the first metatarsal bone. The tarso-metatarsal articulation of the great toe corresponds to a groove which can be felt by making firm pressure on the inner side of the foot one inch in front of the tubercle on the scaphoid bone; and the joint between the second metatarsal bone and the middle cuneiform is to be found on the dorsum of the foot, half an inch behind the level of the tarso-metatarsal joint of the great toe. The line of the joints between the metatarsal bones and the first phalanges is about an inch behind the webs of the corresponding toes.

Surgical Anatomy.—Chopart's amputation passes through the middle tarsal joint (astragalo-scaphoid and calcaneo-cuboid articulation). Fig. 256 shows the line of Chopart. Lisfranc amputated at the tarso-metatarsal articulation. Fig. 257 shows the line of Lisfranc. In Hey's amputation the fifth, fourth, third, and second metatarsal bones are disarticulated from the tarsus and the internal cuneiform is sawn through. In the operation of Forbes, of Toledo, the cuneiform bones are disarticulated from the scaphoid, the cuboid is sawn through on a line with the surface exposed by the disarticulation.

THE MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ.[1]

MYOLOGY is the branch of anatomy which treats of the muscles. The muscles are formed of bundles of reddish fibres, endowed with the property of contractility. The two principal kinds of muscular tissue found in the body are **voluntary** and **involuntary**. The former of these, from the characteristic appearances which its fibres exhibit under the microscope, is known as **striated** or **striped muscle**, and from the fact that it is capable of being put into action and controlled by the will, as **voluntary muscle**. The fibres of the latter do not present any cross-striped appearance, and for the most part are not under the control of the will; hence they are known as **unstriated, unstriped,** or **involuntary muscle**. The muscular fibres of the heart differ in certain particulars from both these groups, and they are therefore separately described as **cardiac muscular fibres.**

Thus it will be seen that there are three varieties of muscular fibres: (1) Transversely striated muscular fibres, which are for the most part voluntary and under the control of the will, but some of which are not so, such as the muscles of the pharynx and upper part of the œsophagus. This variety of muscle is sometimes called **skeletal.** (2) Transversely striated muscular fibres, which are not under the control of the will—*i. e.*, the cardiac muscles. (3) Plain or unstriped muscular fibres, which are involuntary and controlled by a different part of the nervous system from that which controls the activity of the voluntary muscles. Such are the muscular walls of the stomach and intestine, of the uterus and bladder, of the blood-vessels, etc.

In this section we treat of the skeletal or voluntary muscles only. A muscle is composed of numerous long, narrow muscle cells which shorten when stimulated. The wall of a muscle cell is called the **sarcolemma.** Muscle cells end either by blending with tendon or aponeurosis or else by rounded or tapering extremities, which are connected to neighboring cells by means of the sarcolemma. Each muscle is composed of **bundles** or **fasciculi of cells** or **fibres.** These bundles are connected together by a connective tissue which is known as the **epimysium** or **external perimysium** (*perimysium externum*), and which is continuous with the sheath of the muscle. Each bundle of muscle fibres is surrounded by the **internal perimysium** (*perimysium internum*). The internal perimysium joins the external perimysium externally and the sarcolemma, or tubular sheath, of each fibre internally.

Each muscle cell (*fibre*) contains numerous nuclei and also fibrillated striated protoplasm. A muscle cell may be 10 cm. in length, and may even extend the entire length of a small muscle (Szymonowicz). The diameter of a cell is from 40μ to 60μ. The striated portion of a cell is differentiated protoplasm, each cell is a portion of unchanged protoplasm (*sarcoplasm*). In man most muscles are of

[1] The Muscles and Fasciæ are described conjointly, in order that the student may consider the arrangement of the latter in his dissection of the former. It is rare for the student of anatomy in this country to have the opportunity of dissecting the fasciæ separately; and it is for this reason, as well as from the close connection that exists between the muscles and their investing sheaths, that they are considered together. Some general observations are first made on the histology and anatomy of the muscles and fasciæ, the special description being given in connection with the different regions.

the *red* type, but some (mixed muscles) contain red and white fibres. A red muscle fibre contains a considerable quantity of sarcoplasm, and the nuclei are toward the centre of the cell; in a white muscle fibre there is less sarcoplasm, the nuclei are toward the periphery, and striation is very distinct.[1] Striation is due to alteration in the parts of the fibre, so that the altered material has a different refractive index and stains differently from the unaltered portions of the cell.

The **Arteries** of voluntary muscles pierce the external perimysium and form superficial and deep plexuses that anastomose with each other. These vessels follow the trabeculæ between the bundles. Branches enter the bundles and form capillary plexuses, which here and there possess dilatations for the relief of tension during muscular action.

Veins accompany the arteries, and even the smaller ones possess valves (Spalteholz).

The **Nerve Endings** in voluntary muscle comprise both motor and sensory terminations. A motor nerve pierces the external perimysium and breaks up into numerous branches to form an interfascicular plexus in the internal perimysium. From this plexus nerve fibrils arise and usually one nerve fibril passes to each muscle fibre. The nerve fibril pierces the sarcolemma, the neurilemma and medullary sheath disappearing before the nerve fibril reaches the muscle fibre, and probably being lost by fusing with the sarcolemma. The naked axis-cylinder beneath the sarcolemma of a fibre continues to the surface of the muscle fibre and undergoes arborization to form an end organ. Around the end organ is a quantity of granular sarcoplasm, which, with the nerve end organ, constitutes a **sole-plate**. A sensory nerve takes origin from a **muscle spindle**, which consists of a bundle of encapsuled muscle fibre about sensory nerve twigs. From a muscle spindle arise from two to eight large medullated nerve fibres.

The muscles are connected with the bones, cartilages, ligaments, and skin, either directly or through the intervention of fibrous structures called **tendons** or **aponeuroses**. Where a muscle is attached to bone or cartilage, the fibres terminate in blunt extremities upon the periosteum or perichondrium, and do not come into direct relation with the osseous or cartilaginous tissue. Where muscles are connected with the skin, they either lie as a flattened layer beneath it, or are connected with its areolar tissue by larger or smaller bundles of fibres, as in the muscles of the face. The direct continuation of the tendon of a muscle is known as the **belly** or **venter**. The origin of a muscle is its **head** (*caput*).

The muscles vary extremely in their form. In the limbs they are of considerable length, especially the more superficial ones, the deep ones being generally broad; they surround the bones and form an important protection to the various joints. In the trunk they are broad, flattened, and expanded, forming the parietes of the cavities which they enclose; hence the reason of the terms *long*, *broad*, *short*, etc., used in the description of a muscle.

There is a considerable variation in the arrangement of the fibres of certain muscles with reference to the tendons to which they are attached. In some, the fibres are parallel and run directly from their origin to their insertion; these are **quadrilateral muscles**, such as the Thyro-hyoid. A modification of these is found in the **fusiform muscles** (*m. fusiformis*), in which the fibres are not quite parallel, but slightly curved, so that the muscle tapers at each end; in their action, however, they resemble the quadrilateral muscles. Secondly, in other muscles the fibres are convergent; arising by a broad origin, they converge to a narrow or pointed insertion. This arrangement of fibres is found in the **triangular muscles**—*e. g.*, the Temporal. In some muscles, which otherwise would belong to the quadrilateral or triangular type, the origin and insertion are not in the same plane, but the plane of the line

[1] A Text-book of Histology. By Dr. Ladislaus Szymonowicz. Translated and edited by Dr. John Bruce MacCallum.

of origin intersects that of their insertion; such is the case in the Pectineus muscle. Thirdly, in some muscles the fibres are oblique and converge, like the plumes of a pen, to one side of a tendon, which runs the entire length of the muscle. Such a muscle is **rhomboidal** or **penniform** (*m. unipennatus*), as the Peronei. A modification of these rhomboidal muscles is found in those cases where oblique fibres converge to both sides of a central tendon which runs down the middle of the muscle; these are called **bipenniform** (*m. bipennatus*), and an example is afforded in the Rectus femoris. Finally, we have muscles in which the fibres are arranged in curved bundles in one or more planes, as in an **orbicular muscle** (*m. orbicularis*) and in that variety of orbicular muscle called a **sphincter muscle** (*m. sphincter*). The arrangement of the muscular fibres is of considerable importance in respect to their relative strength and range of movement. Those muscles where the fibres are long and few in number have great range, but diminished strength; where, on the other hand, the fibres are short and more numerous, there is great power, but lessened range.

Muscles differ much in size: the Gastrocnemius forms the chief bulk of the back of the leg, and the fibres of the Sartorius are nearly two feet in length, whilst the Stapedius, a small muscle of the internal ear, weighs about a grain, and its fibres are not more than two lines in length.

The names applied to the various muscles have been derived—1, from their situation, as the Tibialis, Radialis, Ulnaris, Peroneus; 2, from their direction, as the Rectus abdominis, Obliquus capitis, Transversalis; 3, from their uses, as Flexors, Extensors, Abductors, etc.; 4, from their shape, as the Deltoid, Trapezius, Rhomboideus; 5, from the number of their divisions, as the Biceps, the Triceps; 6, from their points of attachment, as the Sterno-cleido-mastoid, Sterno-hyoid, Sterno-thyroid.

In the description of a muscle the term **origin** is meant to imply its more fixed or central attachment, and the term **insertion**, the movable point to which the force of the muscle is directed; but the origin is absolutely fixed in only a very small number of muscles, such as those of the face, which are attached by one extremity to the bone and by the other to the movable integument; the greater number of muscles can be made to act from either extremity.

In the dissection of the muscles the student should pay especial attention to the exact *origin*, *insertion*, and *actions* of each, and its more important *relations* with surrounding parts. An accurate knowledge of the points of attachment of the muscles is of great importance in the determination of their action. By a knowledge of the action of the muscles the surgeon is able to explain the causes of displacement in various forms of fracture and the causes which produce distortion in various deformities, and, consequently, to adopt appropriate treatment in each case. The relations, also, of some of the muscles, especially those in immediate apposition with the larger blood-vessels, and the surface-markings they produce, should be especially remembered, as they form useful guides to the surgeon who operates to expose and ligate them.

Tendons.—Tendons are white, glistening, fibrous cords, varying in length and thickness, sometimes round, sometimes flattened, of considerable strength, and devoid of elasticity. They consist almost entirely of white fibrous tissue, the fibrils of which have an undulating course parallel with each other and are firmly united together. They are very sparingly supplied with blood-vessels, the smaller tendons presenting in their interior not a trace of them. Nerves also are not present in the smaller tendons, but the larger ones, as the tendo Achillis, receive nerves which accompany nutrient vessels. The tendons consist principally of a substance which yields gelatin.

Aponeuroses.—Aponeuroses are flattened or ribbon-shaped tendons, of a pearly-white color, iridescent, glistening, and similar in structure to the tendons.

They are destitute of nerves, and the thicker ones are only sparingly supplied with blood-vessels.

The tendons and aponeuroses are connected, on the one hand, with the muscles, and, on the other hand, with movable structures, as the bones, cartilages, ligaments, fibrous membranes (for instance, the sclerotic). Where the muscular fibres are in a direct line with those of the tendon or aponeurosis, the two are directly continuous, the muscular fibre being distinguishable from that of the tendon only by its striation. But where the muscular fibres join the tendon or aponeurosis at an oblique angle the former terminate, according to Kölliker, in rounded extremities, which are received into corresponding depressions on the surface of the latter, the connective tissue between the fibres being continuous with that of the tendon. The latter mode of attachment occurs in all the penniform and bipenniform muscles, and in those muscles the tendons of which commence in a membranous form, as the Gastrocnemius and Soleus.

Fasciæ.—The fasciæ (*fascia*, a bandage) are fibro-areolar or aponeurotic laminæ of variable thickness and strength, found in all regions of the body, investing the softer and more delicate organs. The fasciæ have been subdivided, from the situation in which they are found, into two groups, **superficial** and **deep**.

Superficial Fascia (*panniculus adiposus*).—The superficial fascia is found immediately beneath the integument over almost the entire surface of the body. It connects the skin with the deep or aponeurotic fascia, and consists of fibro-areolar tissue, containing in its meshes pellicles of fat in varying quantity. In the eyelids and scrotum, where adipose tissue is rarely deposited, this tissue is very liable to serous infiltration. The superficial fascia varies in thickness in different parts of the body: in the groin it is so thick as to be capable of being subdivided in several laminæ. Beneath the fatty layer of the superficial fascia, which is immediately subcutaneous, there is generally another layer of the same structure, comparatively devoid of adipose tissue, in which the trunks of the subcutaneous vessels and nerves are found, as the superficial epigastric vessels in the abdominal region, the radial and ulnar veins in the forearm, the saphenous veins in the leg and thigh, and the superficial lymphatic glands; certain cutaneous muscles also are situated in the superficial fascia, as the Platysma myoides in the neck, and the Orbicularis palpebrarum around the eyelids. This fascia is most distinct at the lower part of the abdomen, the scrotum, perinæum, and extremities; is very thin in those regions where muscular fibres are inserted into the integument, as on the side of the neck, the face, and around the margin of the anus. It is very dense in the scalp, in the palms of the hands and soles of the feet, forming a fibro-fatty layer which binds the integument firmly to the subjacent structure. The superficial fascia connects the skin to the subjacent parts, facilitates the movement of the skin, serves as a soft medium for the passage of vessels and nerves to the integument, and retains the warmth of the body, since the fat contained in its areolæ is a bad conductor of heat.

Deep Fascia.—The deep or **aponeurotic** fascia is a dense, inelastic, unyielding fibrous membrane, forming sheaths for the muscles and affording them broad surfaces for attachment. It consists of shining tendinous fibres, placed parallel with one another, and connected together by other fibres disposed in a rectilinear manner. It is usually exposed on the removal of the superficial fascia, forming a strong investment, which not only binds down collectively the muscles in each region, but gives a separate sheath to each, as well as to the vessels and nerves. The fasciæ are thick in unprotected situations, as on the outer side of a limb, and thinner on the inner side. The deep fasciæ assist the muscles in their action by the degree of tension and pressure they make upon their surface; and in certain situations this is increased and regulated by muscular action; as, for instance, by

the Tensor fasciæ femoris and Gluteus maximus in the thigh, by the Biceps in the upper and lower extremities, and Palmaris longus in the hand. In the limbs the fasciæ not only invest the entire limb, but give off septa which separate the various muscles, and are attached beneath to the periosteum: these prolongations of fasciæ are usually spoken of as intermuscular septa.

The Muscles and Fasciæ may be arranged, according to the general division of the body, into those of the **cranium, face,** and **neck**; those of the **trunk**; those of the **upper extremity**; and those of the **lower extremity.**

MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE CRANIUM AND FACE.

The muscles of the cranium and face consist of ten groups, arranged according to the region in which they are situated:

1. Cranial Region.
2. Auricular Region.
3. Palpebral Region.
4. Orbital Region.
5. Nasal Region
6. Maxillary Region.
7. Mandibular Region.
8. Intermaxillary Region.
9. Temporo-mandibular Region.
10. Pterygo-mandibular Region.

The muscles contained in each of these groups are the following:

1. *Cranial Region.*

Occipito-frontalis.

2. *Auricular Region.*

Attrahens auriculam.
Attollens auriculam.
Retrahens auriculam.

3. *Palpebral Region.*

Orbicularis palpebrarum.
Corrugator supercilii.
Tensor tarsi.

4. *Orbital Region.*

Levator palpebræ.
Rectus superior.
Rectus inferior.
Rectus internus.
Rectus externus.
Obliquus superior.
Obliquus inferior.

5. *Nasal Region.*

Pyramidalis nasi.
Levator labii superioris alæque nasi.
Dilatator naris posterior.
Dilatator naris anterior.
Compressor nasi.
Compressor narium minor.
Depressor alæ nasi.

6. *Maxillary Region.*

Levator labii superioris.
Levator anguli oris.
Zygomaticus major.
Zygomaticus minor.

7. *Mandibular Region.*

Levator labii inferioris.
Depressor labii inferioris.
Depressor anguli oris.

8. *Intermaxillary Region.*

Buccinator.
Risorius.
Orbicularis oris.

9. *Temporo-mandibular Region.*

Masseter.
Temporal.

10. *Pterygo-mandibular Region.*

Pterygoideus externus.
Pterygoideus internus.

1. The Cranial Region.

Occipito-frontalis.

Dissection (Fig. 258).—The head being shaved, and a block placed beneath the back of the neck, make a vertical incision through the skin from before backward, commencing at

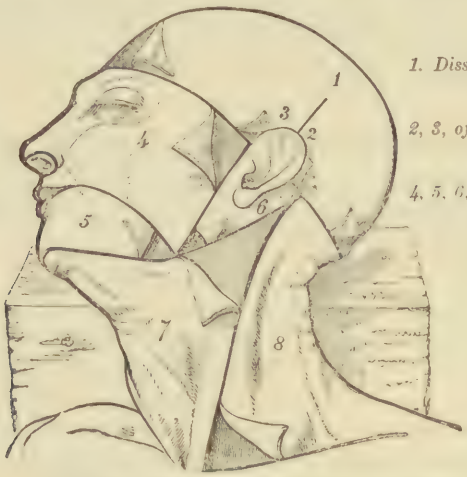


Fig. 258.—Dissection of the head, face, and neck.

the root of the nose in front, and terminating behind at the occipital protuberance; make a second incision in a horizontal direction along the forehead and round the side of the head, from the anterior to the posterior extremity of the preceding. Raise the skin in front, from the subjacent muscle, from below upward; this must be done with extreme care, removing the integument from the outer surface of the vessels and the nerves which lie immediately beneath the skin.

The Skin of the Scalp.—This is thicker than in any other part of the body. It is intimately adherent to the superficial fascia, which attaches it firmly to the underlying aponeurosis and muscle. Movements of the muscle move the skin. The hair-follicles are very closely set together, and extend throughout the whole thickness of the skin. It also contains a number of sebaceous glands.

Fig. 259.—Epicranial aponeurosis. Antero-posterior section. (Schematic.) (Poirier and Charpy.)

Superficial Fascia.—The superficial fascia in the cranial region is a firm, dense, fibro-fatty layer, intimately adherent to the integument, and to the occipito-frontalis and its tendinous aponeurosis; it is continuous, behind, with the super-

ficial fascia at the back part of the neck; and, laterally, is continued over the temporal fascia. It contains between its layers the superficial vessels and nerves and much granular fat.

Surgical Anatomy.—The subcutaneous tissue is composed of bands of fibrous tissue enclosing spaces filled with fat. The fibrous character of this tissue greatly limits discoloration and swelling when inflammation occurs. The edges of a wound which does not involve the aponeurosis or muscle do not retract, hence the wound does not gap. The blood-vessels run practically in the skin, and as they lie in very dense tissue and are adherent to it, wounds bleed profusely, the arteries being unable to freely contract and retract. It is very difficult or impossible to pick up with forceps a vessel in the skin of the scalp, and bleeding must be arrested by suture ligatures or by the stitches which close the wound. Sebaceous glands in the skin of the scalp may develop into *sebaceous cysts* (wens).

The Occipito-frontalis (*m. epicranius*) (Fig. 260).—The Occipito-frontalis is a broad musculo-fibrous layer, which covers the whole of one side of the

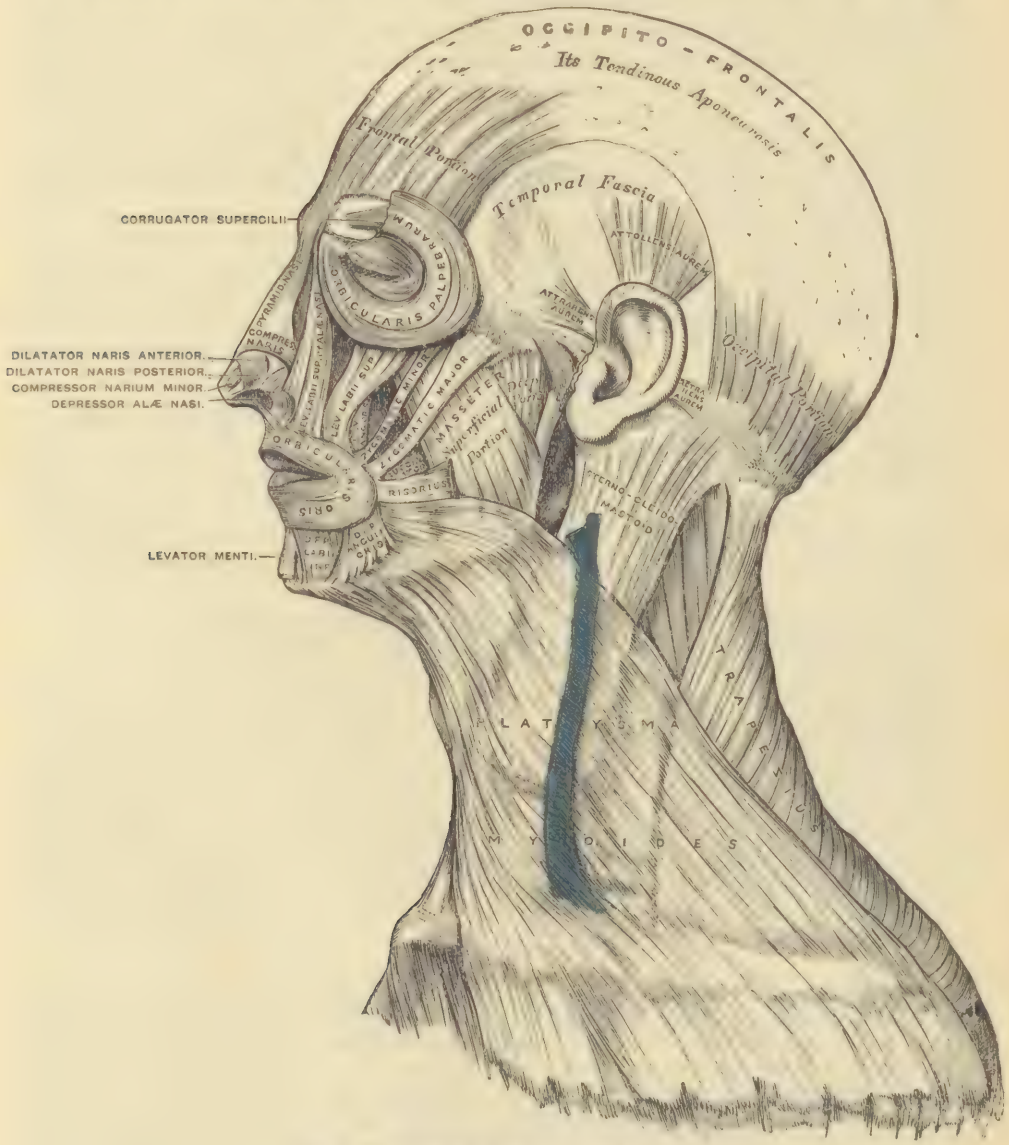


FIG. 260.—Muscles of the head, face, and neck.

vertex of the skull, from the occiput to the eyebrow. It consists of two muscular slips, separated by an intervening tendinous aponeurosis. The occipital portion, the **occipitalis muscle** (*m. occipitalis*), is thin, quadrilateral in form, and about an inch and a half in length; it arises from the outer two-thirds of the superior curved line of the occipital bone, and from the mastoid portion of the temporal bone. Its fibres of origin are tendinous, but they soon become muscular, and ascend in a parallel direction to terminate in a tendinous aponeurosis. The frontal portion, the **frontalis muscle** (*m. frontalis*), is thin, of a quadrilateral form, and intimately adherent to the superficial fascia. It is broader, its fibres are longer, and their structure paler than the occipital portion. Its internal fibres are continuous with those of the Pyramidalis nasi. Some anatomists consider the Pyramidalis muscle as simply the lower fibres of the frontalis, and give these bundles of muscle fibre the name of **musculus procerus.** Its middle fibres become blended with the Corrugator supercilii and Orbicularis palpebrarum; and the outer fibres are also blended with the latter muscle over the external angular process. According to Theile, the innermost fibres are attached to the nasal bones, the outer to the external angular process of the frontal bone. From these attachments the fibres are directed upward, and join the aponeurosis below the coronal suture. The inner margins of the frontal portions of the two muscles are joined together for some distance above the root of the nose; but between the occipital portions there is a considerable, though variable, interval, which is occupied by the aponeurosis.

The middle portion of the Occipito-frontalis muscle or the **aponeurosis** (*epicranial aponeurosis, Galea aponeurotica*) covers the upper part of the vertex of the skull, being continuous across the middle line with the aponeurosis of the opposite muscle. Behind, it is attached, in the interval between the occipital origins, to the occipital protuberance and highest curved lines of the occipital bone; in front, it forms a short and narrow prolongation between the frontal portions; and on each side it has connected with it the Attollens and Attrahens auriculam muscles. This aponeurosis is closely connected to the integument by the firm, dense, fibro-fatty layer which forms the superficial fascia; it is connected with the pericranium by loose cellular tissue, which allows of a considerable degree of movement of the integument. It is continuous with the temporal fascia below the temporal ridge, and it is in reality the representative of the deep fascia.

Nerves.—The frontal portion of the Occipito-frontalis is supplied by the facial nerve; its occipital portion by the posterior auricular branch of the facial.

Actions.—The frontal portion of the muscle raises the eyebrows and the skin over the root of the nose, and at the same time draws the scalp forward, throwing the integument of the forehead into transverse wrinkles. The posterior portion draws the scalp backward. By bringing alternately into action the frontal and occipital portions the entire scalp may be moved forward and backward. In the ordinary action of the muscles, the eyebrows are elevated, and at the same time the aponeurosis is fixed by the posterior portion, thus giving to the face the expression of surprise: if the action is more exaggerated, the eyebrows are still further raised, and the skin of the forehead thrown into transverse wrinkles, as in the expression of fright or horror.

Surgical Anatomy.—The skull is covered by the *scalp* (Fig. 259). This consists of five layers: (1) the pericranium; (2) a layer of connective tissue beneath the Occipito-frontalis aponeurosis (subaponeurotic tissue); (3) the Occipito-frontalis muscle and aponeurosis; (4) subcutaneous fat; (5) skin. If a wound involves the muscle or aponeurosis, it gaps widely, the greatest amount of gaping being observed in transverse wounds. The space between the aponeurosis and the pericranium is called by Treves *the dangerous area of the scalp.* It contains a layer of connective tissue and suppuration in this tissue spreads widely. An *abscess* in the dangerous area

should be opened above the superior curved line of the occipital bone, above the eyebrow or above the zygoma. In a wound or contusion above the aponeurosis but little blood can be, effused in the tissue because the fibrous structure prevents it, and abscesses do not tend to spread widely. Between the aponeurosis and the pericranium a great amount of blood can be effused. An effusion of blood beneath the pericranium is called a *cephalhæmatoma*. Such a condition may occur from pressure during birth. An extravasation beneath the pericranium is limited to the surface of one bone. The pericranium is tightly attached to the sutures, but adheres lightly to the surface of the bone, and abscess beneath the pericranium is restricted to the surface of one bone.

2. The Auricular Region (Fig. 260).

Attrahens auriculam. Attollens auriculam.
Retrahens auriculam.

These three small muscles are placed immediately beneath the skin around the external ear. In man, in whom the external ear is almost immovable, they are rudimentary. They are the analogues of large and important muscles in some of the mammalia.

Dissection.—This requires considerable care, and should be performed in the following manner: To expose the Attollens auriculam, draw the pinna, or broad part of the ear, downward, when a tense band will be felt beneath the skin, passing from the side of the head to the upper part of the concha; by dividing the skin over this band in a direction from below upward, and then reflecting it on each side, the muscle is exposed. To bring into view the Attrahens auriculam, draw the helix backward by means of a hook, when the muscle will be made tense, and may be exposed in a similar manner to the preceding. To expose the Retrahens auriculam, draw the pinna forward, when the muscle, being made tense, may be felt beneath the skin at its insertion into the back part of the concha, and may be exposed in the same manner as the other muscles.

The **Attrahens Auriculam** or **Aurem** (*m. auricularis anterior*), the smallest of the three, is thin, fan-shaped, and its fibres pale and indistinct; they *arise* from the lateral edge of the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis, and converge to be *inserted* into a projection on the front of the helix.

Relations.—*Superficially*, with the skin; *deeply*, with the areolar tissue derived from the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis, beneath which are the temporal artery and vein and the temporal fascia.

The **Attollens Auriculam** or **Aurem** (*m. auricularis superior*), the largest of the three, is thin and fan-shaped: its fibres *arise* from the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis and converge to be *inserted* by a thin, flattened tendon into the upper part of the cranial surface of the pinna.

Relations.—*Superficially*, with the integument; *deeply*, with the areolar tissue derived from the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis, beneath which is the temporal fascia.

The **Retrahens Auriculam** or **Aurem** (*m. auricularis posterior*) consists of two or three fleshy fasciculi, which *arise* from the mastoid portion of the temporal bone by short aponeurotic fibres. They are *inserted* into the lower part of the cranial surface of the concha.

Relations.—*Superficially*, with the integument; *deeply*, with the mastoid portion of the temporal bone and the posterior auricular artery and nerve.

Nerves.—The Attrahens and Attollens auriculam are supplied by the temporal branch of the facial; the Retrahens auriculam is supplied by the posterior auricular branch of the same nerve.

Actions.—In man, these muscles possess very little action: the Attrahens auriculam draws the ear forward and upward; the Attollens auriculam slightly raises it; and the Retrahens auriculam draws it backward.

3. The Palpebral Region (Fig. 260).

Orbicularis palpebrarum.	Levator palpebræ.
Corrugator supercilii.	Tensor tarsi.

Dissection (Fig. 257).—In order to expose the muscles of the face, continue the longitudinal incision made in the dissection of the Occipito-frontalis down the median line of the face to the tip of the nose, and from this point onward to the upper lip; and carry another incision along the margin of the lip to the angle of the mouth, and transversely across the face to the angle of the jaw. Then make an incision in front of the external ear, from the angle of the jaw upward, to join the transverse incision made in exposing the Occipito-frontalis. These incisions include a square-shaped flap, which should be removed in the direction marked in the figure, with care, as the muscles at some points are intimately adherent to the integument.

The **Orbicularis Palpebrarum** (*m. orbicularis oculi*) is a sphincter muscle, which surrounds the circumference of the orbit and eyelids. It *arises* from the internal angular process of the frontal bone, from the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone in front of the lachrymal groove for the nasal duct, and from the anterior surface and borders of a short tendon, the **tendo oculi**, or **internal tarsal ligament**, placed at the inner angle of the orbit. From this origin the fibres are directed outward, forming a broad, thin, and flat layer, which covers the eyelids, surrounds the circumference of the orbit, and spreads out over the temple and downward on the cheek. The **internal** or **palpebral portion** (*pars palpebralis*) of the Orbicularis is thin and pale; it *arises* from the bifurcation of the tendo palpebrarum, and forms a series of concentric curves, which are on the outer side of the eyelids inserted into the **external tarsal ligament**. The **external** or **orbital portion** (*pars orbitalis*) is thicker and of a reddish color: its fibres are well developed, and form complete ellipses. The upper fibres of this portion blend with the Occipito-frontalis and Corrugator supercilii.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument. By its *deep surface*, above, with the Occipito-frontalis and Corrugator supercilii, with which it is intimately blended, and with the supraorbital vessels and nerve; below, it covers the lachrymal sac, and the origin of the Levator labii superioris alæque nasi, the Levator labii superioris, and the Zygomaticus minor muscles. *Internally*, it is occasionally blended with the Pyramidalis nasi. *Externally*, it lies on the temporal fascia. On the eyelids it is separated from the conjunctiva by the Levator palpebræ, the tarsal ligaments, the tarsal plates, and the Meibomian glands.

The **tendo oculi** or **internal tarsal ligament** (*ligamentum palpebrale mediale*) is a short tendon, about two lines in length and one in breadth, attached to the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone in front of the lachrymal groove. Crossing the lachrymal sac, it divides into two parts, each division being attached to the inner extremity of the corresponding tarsal plate. As the tendon crosses the lachrymal sac, a strong aponeurotic lamina is given off from the posterior surface, which expands over the sac, and is attached to the ridge on the lachrymal bone. This is the **reflected aponeurosis** of the tendo oculi.

The **external tarsal ligament** (*raphe palpebralis lateralis*) is a much weaker structure than the tendo oculi. It is attached to the margin of the frontal process of the malar bone, and passes inward to the outer commissure of the eyelids; it connects together the outer extremities of the two tarsal cartilages.

Use of Tendo Oculi.—Besides giving attachment to part of the Orbicularis palpebrarum and to the tarsal plates, it serves to suck the tears into the lachrymal sac, by its attachment to the sac. Thus, each time the eyelids are closed, the tendo oculi becomes tightened, through the action of the Orbicularis, and draws the wall of the lachrymal sac outward and forward, so that a vacuum is made in the sac, and the tears are sucked along the lachrymal canals into it.

The **Corrugator Supercilii** (Figs. 259 and 260) is a small narrow, pyramidal muscle, placed at the inner extremity of the eyebrow, beneath the Occipito-frontalis and Orbicularis palpebrarum muscles. It *arises* from the inner extremity of the superciliary ridge, from whence its fibres pass upward and outward, and are *inserted* into the deep surface of the skin, opposite the middle of the orbital arch.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface* with the Occipito-frontalis and Orbicularis palpebrarum muscles; by its *posterior surface*, with the frontal bone and supra-trochlear nerve.

The **Levator Palpebræ** will be described with the muscles of the orbital region.

The **Tensor Tarsi** or **Horner's Muscle** (*pars lacrimalis of the orbicularis palpebrarum*) (Fig. 261) is a small thin muscle about three lines in breadth and six in length, situated at the inner side of the orbit, behind the tendo oculi. It is usually considered to be composed of fibres derived from the Orbicularis palpebrarum. It *arises* from the crest and adjacent part of the orbital surface of the

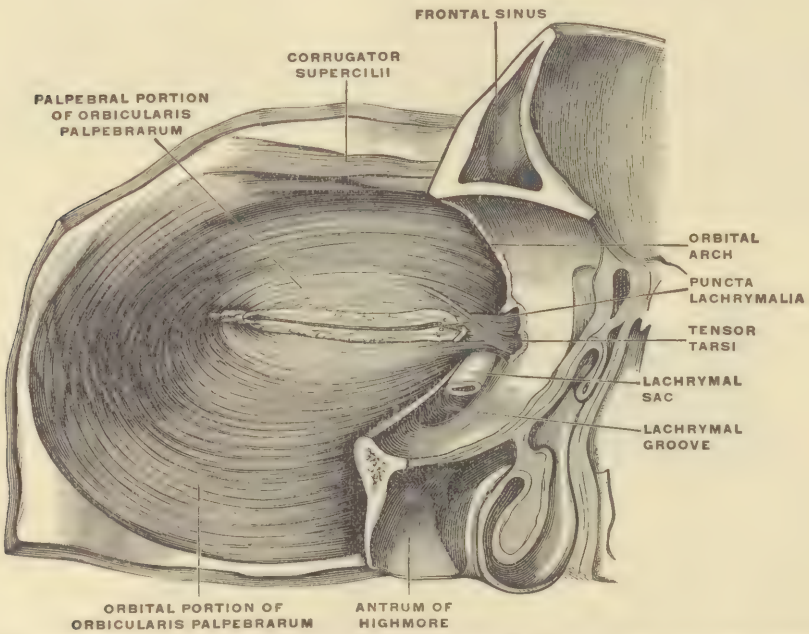


FIG. 261.—The three portions of the Orbicularis palpebrarum muscle, and the relation of this muscle to the Corrugator supercilii muscle, seen from behind. (Left side.) (Toldt.)

lachrymal bone, and, passing across the lachrymal sac, divides into two slips, which cover the lachrymal canals and are inserted into the tarsal plates internal to the puncta lachrymalia. Its fibres appear to be continuous with those of the palpebral portion of the Orbicularis palpebrarum; it is occasionally very indistinct.

Nerves.—The Orbicularis palpebrarum, Corrugator supercilii, and Tensor tarsi are supplied by the facial nerve. Recent investigations tend to show that the Orbicularis palpebrarum, Corrugator supercilii, and frontal part of the Occipito-frontalis are in reality supplied by fibres of the third nerve, which descend through the pons varolii to join the facial nerve.

Actions.—The Orbicularis palpebrarum is the sphincter muscle of the eyelids. The palpebral portion acts involuntarily, closing the lids gently, as in sleep or in blinking; the orbicular portion is subject to the will. When the entire muscle is brought into action, the skin of the forehead, temple, and cheek is drawn inward toward the inner angle of the orbit, and the eyelids are firmly closed as in photo-

phobia. When the skin of the forehead, temple, and cheek is thus drawn inward by the action of the muscle it is thrown into folds, especially radiating from the outer angle of the eyelids, which give rise in old age to the so-called "crow's feet." The Levator palpebræ is the direct antagonist of this muscle; it raises the upper eyelid and exposes the globe. The Corrugator supercilii draws the eyebrow downward and inward, producing the vertical wrinkles of the forehead. It is the "frowning" muscle, and may be regarded as the principal agent in the expression of suffering. The Tensor tarsi draws the eyelids inward and compresses the eyelids and the extremities of the lachrymal canals against the surface of the globe of the eye; thus placing the canals in the most favorable situation for receiving the tears. It serves, also, to compress the lachrymal sac.

4. The Orbital Region (Fig. 262).

Levator palpebræ superioris. Rectus internus.
Rectus superior. Rectus externus.
Rectus inferior. Obliquus oculi superior.
Obliquus oculi inferior.

Dissection.—To open the cavity of the orbit, remove the skull-cap and brain; then saw through the frontal bone at the inner extremity of the supraorbital ridge, and externally at its junction with the malar. Break in pieces the thin roof of the orbit by a few slight blows of the hammer, and take it away; drive forward the superciliary portion of the frontal bone

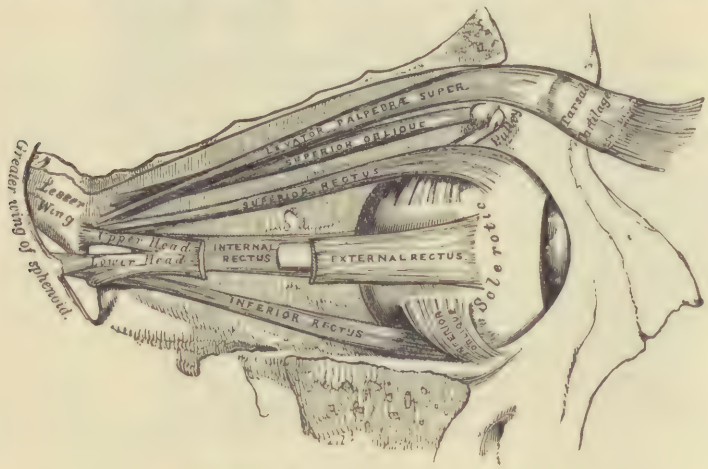


Fig. 262.—Muscles of the right orbit.

by a smart stroke, but do not remove it, as that would destroy the pulley of the Obliquus superior. When the fragments are cleared away, the periosteum of the orbit will be exposed; this being removed, together with the fat which fills the cavity of the orbit, the several muscles of this region can be examined. The dissection will be facilitated by distending the globe of the eye. In order to effect this, puncture the optic nerve near the eyeball with a curved needle, and push the needle onward into the globe; insert the point of a blowpipe through this aperture, and force a little air into the cavity of the eyeball; then apply a ligature round the nerve so as to prevent the air escaping. The globe being now drawn forward, the muscles will be put upon the stretch.

The **Levator Palpebræ Superioris** is thin, flat, and triangular in shape. It *arises* from the under surface of the lesser wing of the sphenoid, above and in front of the optic foramen, from which it is separated by the origin of the Superior rectus (Fig. 263). At its origin it is narrow and tendinous, but soon becomes broad and fleshy, and finally terminates in a wide aponeurosis, which is inserted into the upper margin of the superior tarsal plate. From this aponeurosis a thin expansion is continued onward, passing between the fibres of the Orbicularis

to be *inserted* into the skin of the lid, and some deeper fibres blend with an expansion from the sheath of the Superior rectus muscle, and are with it prolonged into the conjunctiva.

Relations.—By its *upper surface*, with the frontal nerve and supraorbital artery, the periosteum of the orbit and lachrymal gland; and, in the lid, with the inner surface of the tarsal ligament; by its *under surface*, with the Superior rectus, and, in the lid, with the conjunctiva. A small branch of the third nerve enters its under surface.

The **Superior Rectus** (*m. rectus superior*), the thinnest and narrowest of the four Recti, *arises* from the upper margin of the optic foramen (Fig. 263) beneath the Levator palpebræ, and from the fibrous sheath of the optic nerve; and is *inserted* by a tendinous expansion into the sclerotic coat, about three or four lines from the margin of the cornea.

Relations.—By its *upper surface*, with the Levator palpebræ; by its *under surface*, with the optic nerve, the ophthalmic artery, the nasal nerve, and the branch of the third nerve which supplies it; and, in front, with the tendon of the Superior oblique and the globe of the eye.

The **Inferior Rectus** (*m. rectus inferior*) and the **Internal Rectus** (*m. rectus medialis*) *arise* by a common tendon, the **ligament of Zinn**[1] (*annulus tendineus communis*), which is attached round the circumference of the optic foramen, except at its upper and outer part (Fig. 263).

The **External Rectus** (*m. rectus lateralis*) has two heads: the upper one *arises* from the outer margin of the optic foramen immediately beneath the Superior rectus; the lower head, partly from the ligament of Zinn and partly from a small pointed process of bone on the lower margin of the sphenoidal fissure (Fig. 263). Each muscle passes forward in the position implied by its name, to be inserted by a tendinous expansion, the **tunica albuginea**, into the sclerotic coat, about three or four lines from the margin of the cornea. Between the two heads of the External rectus is a narrow interval, through which passes the third, the nasal branch of the ophthalmic division of the fifth and sixth nerves, and the ophthalmic vein. Although nearly all of these muscles present a common origin and are *inserted* in a similar manner into the sclerotic coat, there are certain differences to be observed in them as regards their length and breadth. The Internal rectus is the broadest, the External is the longest, and the Superior is the thinnest and narrowest.

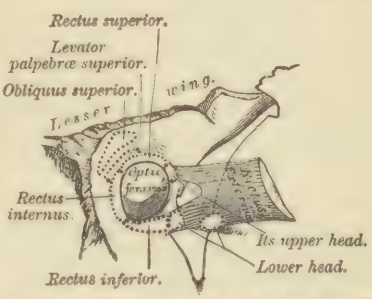


FIG. 263.—The relative position and attachment of the muscles of the left eyeball.

The **Superior Oblique** (*m. obliquus superior*) is a fusiform muscle placed at the upper and inner side of the orbit, internal to the Levator palpebræ. It *arises* about a line above the inner margin of the optic foramen (Fig. 263), and, passing forward to the inner angle of the orbit, terminates in a rounded tendon, which plays in a ring or pulley, the **trochlea** (*trochlea m. obliqui superioris*), formed by a cartilaginous tissue attached to a depression beneath the internal angular process of the frontal bone, the contiguous surfaces of the tendon and ring being lined by a delicate synovial membrane and enclosed in a thin fibrous investment. The tendon is reflected backward, outward, and downward beneath the Superior rectus to the outer part of the globe of the eye, and is *inserted* into

[1] The ligament of Zinn ought, perhaps more appropriately, to be termed the *aponeurosis* or *tendon of Zinn*. Mr. C. B. Lockwood has described a somewhat similar structure on the under surface of the Superior rectus muscle, which is attached to the lesser wing of the sphenoid, forming the upper and outer margin of the optic foramen. This *superior tendon* gives origin to the Rectus superior, the superior head of the External rectus, and the upper part of the Internal rectus.—Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, vol. xx. part i. p. 1.

the sclerotic coat, behind the equator of the eyeball, the insertion of the muscle lying between the Superior and External recti.

Relations.—By its *upper surface*, with the periosteum covering the roof of the orbit and the fourth nerve: the tendon, where it lies on the globe of the eye, is covered by the Superior rectus; by its *under surface*, with the nasal nerve, ethmoidal arteries, and the upper border of the internal rectus.

The **Inferior Oblique** (*m. obliquus inferior*) is a thin, narrow muscle placed near the anterior margin of the orbit. It *arises* from a depression on the orbital plate of the superior maxillary bone, external to the lachrymal groove (Fig. 262). Passing outward, backward, and upward between the Inferior rectus and the floor of the orbit, and then between the eyeball and the External rectus, it is *inserted* into the outer part of the sclerotic coat between the Superior and External recti, near to, but somewhat behind, the tendon of insertion of the Superior oblique.

Relations.—By its *ocular surface*, with the globe of the eye and with the Inferior rectus; by its *orbital surface*, with the periosteum covering the floor of the orbit, and with the External rectus. Its borders look forward and backward; the posterior one receives a branch of the third nerve.

The **orbital muscle** or **Müller's muscle** (*musculus orbitalis*), which spans the spheno-maxillary fissure and infraorbital groove, is composed of non-striated fibres, and is a rudimentary structure continuous with the periosteum of the orbit.[1]

Nerves.—The Levator palpebræ, Inferior oblique, and all the Recti excepting the External, are supplied by the third nerve; the Superior oblique, by the fourth; the External rectus, by the sixth.

Actions.—The Levator palpebræ raises the upper eyelid, and is the direct antagonist of the Orbicularis palpebrarum. The four Recti muscles are attached in such a manner to the globe of the eye that, acting singly, they will turn it either upward, downward, inward, or outward, as expressed by their names. The movement produced by the Superior or Inferior rectus is not quite a simple one, for, inasmuch as they pass obliquely outward and forward to the eyeball, the elevation or depression of the cornea must be accompanied by a certain deviation inward, with a slight amount of rotation, which, however, is corrected by the Oblique muscles, the Inferior oblique correcting the deviation inward of the Superior rectus, and the Superior oblique that of the Inferior rectus. The contraction of the External and Internal recti, on the other hand, produces a purely horizontal movement. If any two contiguous recti of one eye act together, they carry the globe of the eye in the diagonal of these directions—viz., upward and inward, upward and outward, downward and inward, or downward and outward. The movement of circumduction, as in looking round a room, is performed by the alternate action of the four Recti. The Oblique muscles rotate the eyeball on its *antero-posterior axis*, this kind of movement being required for the correct viewing of an object when the head is moved laterally, as from shoulder to shoulder, in order that the picture may fall in all respects on the same part of the retina of each eye.[2] It should be noted that sometimes the corresponding Recti and sometimes the opposite ones of the two eyes act together; for instance, the two superior and inferior Recti carry both eyeballs upward and downward, respectively. In looking toward the right the right External and left Internal recti act together, the reverse being the case in looking toward the left. In turning both eyes toward the middle line, as in directing our vision toward an object less than twenty feet distant, the two internal recti act together.

Fasciæ of the Orbit.—The connective tissue of the orbit is in various places condensed into thin membranous layers, which may be conveniently described as

[1] See F. Grover, in the Vienna Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften, 1903, Band cxii.

[2] On the Oblique Muscles of the Eye in Man and Vertebrate Animals, by John Struthers, M.D., in Anatomical and Physiological Observations. For a fuller account of the various co-ordinate actions of the muscles of a single eye and of both eyes than our space allows see Dr. M. Foster's Text-book of Physiology.

(1) the orbital fascia; (2) the sheaths of the muscles; and (3) the covering of the eyeball.

(1) **The Orbital Fascia.**—This forms the periosteum of the orbit. It is loosely connected to the bones, from which it can be readily separated. *Behind*, it is connected with the dura mater by processes which pass through the optic foramen and sphenoidal fissure, and with the sheath of the optic nerve. *In front* it is connected with the periosteum at the margin of the orbit, and sends off a process which assists in forming the palpebral fascia. From its internal surface two processes are given off—one to enclose the lachrymal gland, the other to hold the pulley of the Superior oblique muscle in position.

(2) **The Sheaths of the Muscles.**—The sheaths of the muscles give off expansions to the margins of the orbit which limit the action of the muscles.

(3) **The Covering of the Eyeball**—*Tênon's capsule*—surrounds the posterior two-thirds of the eyeball; it will be described in the sequel.

Surgical Anatomy.—The position and exact point of insertion of the tendons of the Internal and External recti muscles into the globe should be carefully examined from the front of the eyeball, as the surgeon is often required to divide the one or the other muscle for the cure of *strabismus* (squint). In convergent strabismus, which is the more common form of the disease, the eye is turned inward, requiring the division of the Internal rectus. In the divergent form, which is more rare, the eye is turned outward, the External rectus being especially implicated. The deformity produced in either case is to be remedied by division of one or the other muscle. The operation is thus performed: The lids are to be well separated; the eyeball being rotated outward or inward, the conjunctiva should be raised by a pair of forceps and divided immediately beneath the lower border of the tendon of the muscle to be divided, a little behind its insertion into the sclerotic; the submucous areolar tissue is then divided, and into the small aperture thus made a blunt hook is passed upward between the muscle and the globe, and the tendon of the muscle and conjunctiva covering it divided by a pair of blunt-pointed scissors. Or the tendon may be divided by a subconjunctival incision, one blade of the scissors being passed upward between the tendon and the conjunctiva, and the other between the tendon and the sclerotic. The student, when dissecting these muscles, should remove on one side of the subject the conjunctiva from the front of the eye, in order to see more accurately the position of the tendons, while on the opposite side the operation may be performed. Inflammation of the synovial membrane lining the trochlea of the Superior oblique may lead to the formation of a *cyst* of considerable size.

In performing *enucleation of the eyeball* the conjunctiva is clipped with scissors near the cornea and the capsule of Tênon is divided with it. One rectus muscle after another is caught up on a blunt hook and divided. The scissors are now pushed well in along the outer orbital wall and the optic nerve is divided. Finally the oblique muscles, the ciliary vessels and nerves, and fragments of tissue helping to retain the globe are cut and the eyeball is enucleated.

An *orbital abscess* is evacuated by making an incision close to the border of the orbit, above or below the eyeball.

5. The Nasal Region (Fig. 260).

Pyramidalis nasi.
Lævator labii superioris alæque nasi.
Dilatator naris posterior.
Dilatator naris anterior.
Compressor nasi.
Compressor narium minor.
Depressor alæ nasi.

The **Pyramidalis Nasi** is a small pyramidal slip placed over the nasal bone. Its *origin* is by tendinous fibres from the fascia covering the lower part of the nasal bone and upper part of the cartilage, where it blends with the Compressor nasi, and it is *inserted* into the skin over the lower part of the forehead between the two eyebrows, its fibres decussating with those of the Occipito-frontalis (see page 368).

Relations.—By its *upper surface*, with the skin; by its *under surface*, with the frontal and nasal bones.

The **Levator Labii Superioris Alæque Nasi** is a thin triangular muscle placed by the side of the nose, and extending between the inner margin of the orbit and

upper lip. It *arises* by a pointed extremity from the upper part of the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone, and, passing obliquely downward and outward, divides into two slips, one of which is *inserted* into the cartilage of the ala of the nose and the under surface of the skin over the ala; the other is prolonged into the upper lip, becoming attached to the under surface of the skin and blended with the Orbicularis oris and Levator labii superioris proprius.

Relations.—In *front*, with the integument, and with a small part of the Orbicularis palpebrarum above.

The **Dilatator Naris Posterior** is a small muscle which is placed partly beneath the elevator of the nose and lip. It *arises* from the margin of the nasal notch of the superior maxilla and from the sesamoid cartilages, and is *inserted* into the skin near the margin of the nostril.

The **Dilatator Naris Anterior** is a thin delicate fasciculus passing from the cartilage of the ala of the nose to the integument near its margin. This muscle is situated in front of the preceding.

The **Compressor Nasi** is a small, thin, triangular muscle *arising* by its apex from the superior maxillary bone, above and a little external to the incisive fossa; its fibres proceed upward and inward, expanding into a thin aponeurosis which is attached to the fibro-cartilage of the nose and is continuous on the bridge of the nose with that of the muscle of the opposite side and with the aponeurosis of the Pyramidalis nasi. His uses the term **musculus nasalis** to include the Compressor nasi (transverse portion of the nasal muscle), and the Dilatator naris posterior and the Dilatator naris anterior (alar portion of the nasal muscle).

The **Compressor Narium Minor** is a small muscle attached by one end to the alar cartilage, and by the other to the integument at the end of the nose.

The **Depressor Alæ Nasi** (*depressor septi*) is a short radiated muscle *arising* from the incisive fossa of the superior maxilla; its fibres ascend to be *inserted* into the septum and back part of the ala of the nose. This muscle lies between the mucous membrane and muscular structure of the lip.

Nerves.—All of the muscles of this group are supplied by the facial nerve.

Actions.—The Pyramidalis nasi draws down the inner angle of the eyebrows and produces transverse wrinkles over the bridge of the nose. The Levator labii superioris alæque nasi draws upward the upper lip and ala of the nose; its most important action is upon the nose, which it dilates to a considerable extent. The action of this muscle produces a marked influence over the countenance, and it is the principal agent in the expression of contempt and disdain. The two Dilatatores nasi enlarge the aperture of the nose. Their action in ordinary breathing is to resist the tendency of the nostrils to close from atmospheric pressure, but in difficult breathing they may be noticed to be in violent action, as well as in some emotions, as anger. The Depressor alæ nasi is a direct antagonist of the other muscles of the nose, drawing the ala of the nose downward, and thereby constricting the aperture of the nares. The Compressor nasi depresses the cartilaginous part of the nose and compresses the alæ together.

6. The Superior Maxillary Region (Fig. 260).

Levator labii superioris.	Zygomaticus major.
Levator anguli oris.	Zygomaticus minor.

By the term musculus quadratus labii superioris, His includes three muscles. The caput angulare is called in this book the Levator labii superioris alæque nasi. The caput infraorbitale is called the Levator labii superioris. The caput zygomaticum is called the Zygomaticus minor.

The **Levator Labii Superioris** (*proprius*) is a thin muscle of a quadrilateral form. It *arises* from the lower margin of the orbit immediately above the infra-

orbital foramen, some of its fibres being attached to the superior maxilla, others to the malar bone; its fibres converge to be *inserted* into the muscular substance of the upper lip.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface* above, with the lower segment of the Orbicularis palpebrarum; below, it is subcutaneous. By its *deep surface* it conceals the origin of the Compressor nasi and Levator anguli oris muscles, and the infraorbital vessels and nerve, as they escape from the infraorbital foramen.

The **Levator Anguli Oris** (*m. caninus*) *arises* from the canine fossa immediately below the infraorbital foramen; its fibres incline downward and a little outward, to be *inserted* into the deep surface of the skin and into the subcutaneous tissue near the angle of the mouth and intermingles with the fibres of the Zygomaticus major, the Depressor anguli oris, and the Orbicularis.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Levator labii superioris and the infraorbital vessels and nerves; by its *deep surface*, with the superior maxilla, the Buccinator, and the mucous membrane.

The **Zygomaticus Major** (*m. zygomaticus*) is a slender fasciculus which *arises* from the malar bone, in front of the zygomatic suture, and, descending obliquely downward and inward, is *inserted* into the deep surface of the skin and subcutaneous tissue at the outer portion of the upper lip and into the angle of the mouth, where it blends with the fibres of the Levator anguli oris, the Orbicularis oris, and the Depressor anguli oris.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the subcutaneous adipose tissue; by its *deep surface*, with the Masseter and Buccinator muscles and the facial artery and vein.

The **Zygomaticus Minor**, which is often absent, *arises* from the malar bone immediately behind the maxillary suture, and, passing downward and inward, is inserted into the deep surface of the skin and the adjacent muscles at the upper margin of the exposed vermilion surface of the lip midway between the middle line of the lip and the angle of the mouth. It is continuous with the Orbicularis oris at the outer margin of the Levator labii superioris. It lies in front of the preceding.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument and the Orbicularis palpebrarum above; by its *deep surface*, with the Masseter, Buccinator, and Levator anguli oris, and the facial artery and vein.

Nerves.—This group of muscles is supplied by the facial nerve.

Actions.—The Levator labii superioris is the proper elevator of the upper lip, carrying it at the same time a little forward. It assists in forming the **naso-labial ridge**, which passes from the side of the nose to the upper lip and gives to the face an expression of sadness. The Levator anguli oris raises the angle of the mouth and draws it inward, and assists the Levator labii superioris in producing the naso-labial ridge. The Zygomaticus major draws the angle of the mouth backward and upward, as in laughing; whilst the Zygomaticus minor, being inserted into the outer part of the upper lip and not into the angle of the mouth, draws it backward, upward, and outward, and thus gives to the face an expression of sadness.

7. The Mandibular Region (Fig. 260).

Levator labii inferioris. Depressor labii inferioris.
Depressor anguli oris.

Dissection.—The muscles in this region may be dissected by making a vertical incision through the integument from the margin of the lower lip to the chin; a second incision should then be carried along the margin of the lower jaw as far as the angle, and the integument carefully removed in the direction shown in Fig. 258.

The **Levator Labii Inferioris** or **Levator Menti** (*m. mentalis*) is to be dissected by everting the lower lip and raising the mucous membrane. It is a small conical fasciculus placed on the side of the frænum of the lower lip. It *arises* from the incisive fossa, external to the symphysis of the lower jaw; its fibres descend to be inserted into the integument of the chin.

Relation.—On its *inner surface*, with the mucous membrane; in the *median line*, it is blended with the muscle of the opposite side; and on its *outer side*, with the Depressor labii inferioris.

The **Depressor Labii Inferioris** or **Quadratus Menti** (*m. quadratus labii inferioris*) (Fig. 264) is a small quadrilateral muscle. It *arises* from the external oblique line of the lower jaw, between the symphysis and mental foramen, and passes obliquely upward and inward, to be inserted into the integument of the lower lip, its fibres blending with the Orbicularis oris and with those of its fellow of the opposite side. It is continuous with the fibres of the Platysma at its origin. This muscle contains much yellow fat intermingled with its fibres.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with part of the Depressor anguli oris and with the integument, to which it is closely connected; by its *deep surface*, with the mental vessels and nerves, the mucous membrane of the lower lip, the labial glands, and the Levator menti, with which it is intimately united.

The **Depressor Anguli Oris** or **Triangularis Menti** (*m. triangularis*) (Fig. 260) is triangular in shape, *arising*, by its broad base, from the external oblique line of the lower jaw, from whence its fibres pass upward, to be *inserted*, by a narrow fasciculus, into the angle of the mouth. It is continuous with the Platysma at its origin and with the Orbicularis oris and Risorius at its insertion, and some of its fibres are directly continuous with those of the Levator anguli oris. Muscular fibres connecting the two muscles below the chin are occasionally met with; they constitute the **Musculus transversus menti** of His and Waldeyer.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument; by its *deep surface*, with the Depressor labii inferioris and Buccinator.

Nerves.—This group of muscles is supplied by the facial nerve.

Actions.—The Levator labii inferioris raises the lower lip and protrudes it forward, and at the same time wrinkles the integument of the chin, expressing doubt or disdain. The Depressor labii inferioris draws the lower lip directly downward and a little outward, as in the expression of irony. The Depressor anguli oris depresses the angle of the mouth, being the antagonist to the Levator anguli oris and Zygomaticus major; acting with these muscles, it will draw the angle of the mouth directly backward.

8. The Intermaxillary Region.

Orbicularis oris. Buccinator. Risorius.

Dissection.—The dissection of these muscles may be considerably facilitated by filling the cavity of the mouth with tow, so as to distend the cheeks and lips; the mouth should then be closed by a few stitches and the integument carefully removed from the surface.

The **Orbicularis oris** (Figs. 260 and 264) is not a sphincter muscle, like the Orbicularis palpebrarum, but consists of numerous strata of muscular fibres, having different directions, which surround the orifice of the mouth. These fibres are partially derived from the other facial muscles which are inserted into the lips, and are partly fibres proper to the lips themselves. Of the former, a considerable number are derived from the Buccinator and form the deeper stratum of the Orbicularis. Some of them—namely, those near the middle of the muscle—decussate at the angle of the mouth, those arising from the upper jaw passing to the lower lip, and those from the lower jaw to the upper lip. Other fibres of the muscle, situated at

its upper and lower part, pass across the lips from side to side without decussation. Superficial to this stratum is a second, formed by the Levator and Depressor anguli oris, which cross each other at the angle of the mouth, those from the Depressor passing to the upper lip, and those from the Levator to the lower lip, along which they run to be inserted into the skin near the median line. In addi-

FIG. 264.—Temporal and deep muscles about the mouth. (Testut.)

tion to these there are fibres from the other muscles inserted into the lips—the Levator labii superioris, the Levator labii superioris alæque nasi, the Zygomatici, and the Depressor labii inferioris; these intermingle with the transverse fibres above described, and have principally an oblique direction. The proper fibres of the lips are oblique, and pass from the under surface of the skin to the mucous membrane through the thickness of the lip. And in addition to these are fibres

by which the muscle is connected directly with the maxillary bones and the septum of the nose. These consist, in the upper lip, of four bands, two of which (*m. incisivus superior*) arise from the alveolar border of the superior maxilla, opposite the lateral incisor tooth, and, arching outward on each side, are continuous at the angles of the mouth with the other muscles inserted into this part. The two remaining muscular slips, called the **Nasolabialis**, connect the upper lip to the back of the septum of the nose: as they descend from the septum an interval is left between them. It is this interval which forms the depression seen on the surface of the skin beneath the septum of the nose, which is called the **philtrum**. The additional fibres for the lower segment (*m. incisivus inferior*) arise from the inferior maxilla, externally to the Levator labii inferioris, and arch outward to the angles of the mouth, to join the Buccinator and the other muscles attached to this part.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument, to which it is closely connected; by its *deep surface*, with the buccal mucous membrane, the labial glands, and coronary vessels; by its *outer circumference* it is blended with the numerous muscles which converge to the mouth from various parts of the face. Its *inner circumference* is free, and covered by the mucous membrane.

The **Buccinator** (Fig. 264) is a broad, thin muscle, quadrilateral in form, which occupies the interval between the jaws at the side of the face. It *arises* from the outer surface of the alveolar processes of the upper and lower jaws, corresponding to the three molar teeth, and, behind, from the anterior border of the pterygo-maxillary ligament. The fibres converge toward the angle of the mouth, where the central fibres intersect each other, those from below being continuous with the upper segment of the Orbicularis oris, and those from above with the inferior segment; the highest and lowest fibres continue forward uninterruptedly into the corresponding segment of the lip, without decussation.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, behind, with a large mass of fat, the **sucking** or **suctorial pad** (*corpus adiposum buccæ*), which separates it from the ramus of the lower jaw, the Masseter, and a small portion of the Temporal muscle. The sucking pad is much more developed relatively in children than in adults. It assists sucking by aiding the cheek to resist atmospheric pressure. The buccinator muscle is in relation, anteriorly, with the Zygomatici, Risorius, Levator anguli oris, Depressor anguli oris, and Stenson's duct, which pierces it opposite the second molar tooth of the upper jaw; the facial artery and vein cross it from below upward; it is also crossed by the branches of the facial and buccal nerves; by its *internal surface*, with the buccal glands and mucous membrane of the mouth.

The **Pterygo-maxillary** or **Pterygo-mandibular Ligament** (*raphe pterygomandibularis*) separates the Buccinator muscle from the Superior constrictor of the pharynx. It is a tendinous thickening of the **bucco-pharyngeal fascia**, attached by one extremity to the apex of the internal pterygoid plate, and by the other to the posterior extremity of the internal oblique line of the lower jaw. Its *inner surface* corresponds to the cavity of the mouth, and is lined by mucous membrane. Its *outer surface* is separated from the ramus of the jaw by a quantity of adipose tissue. Its *posterior border* gives attachment to the Superior constrictor of the pharynx; its *anterior border*, to the fibres of the Buccinator.

The **Bucco-pharyngeal fascia** (*fascia buccopharyngea*) is a thin fascia covering the external surface of the Buccinator muscle. It is gradually lost in front of the angle of the mouth. Posteriorly it is continued over the external surface of the throat muscles. Its thickened cord-like portion is the stylo-mandibular ligament.

The **Risorius** or **Santorini's Muscle** (*m. risorius*) (Fig. 260) consists of a narrow bundle of fibres which *arises* in the fascia over the Masseter muscle, and, passing horizontally forward, is inserted with the Depressor anguli oris into the subcutaneous and muscular tissue at the angle of the mouth. It is placed

superficial to the Platysma, and is broadest at its outer extremity. This muscle varies much in its size and form.

Nerves.—The muscles in this group are all supplied by the facial nerve. The buccal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve pierces the Buccinator muscle, and by some anatomists is regarded as partly supplying this muscle. Probably it merely pierces it on its way to the mucous membrane of the cheek.

Actions.—The Orbicularis oris in its ordinary action produces the direct closure of the lips; by its deep fibres, assisted by the oblique ones, it closely applies the lips to the alveolar arch. The superficial part, consisting principally of the decussating fibres, brings the lips together and also protrudes them forward. The Buccinators contract and compress the cheeks, so that, during the process of mastication, the food is kept under the immediate pressure of the teeth. When the cheeks have been previously distended with air, the Buccinator muscles expel it from between the lips, as in blowing a trumpet. Hence the name (*buccina*, a trumpet). The Risorius retracts the angles of the mouth, and produces the unpleasant expression which is sometimes seen in tetanus, and is known as **risus sardonicus**, the **sardonic laugh.**

9. The Temporo-mandibular Region.

Masseter. Temporal.

The **Masseteric Fascia** (*fascia parotideomasseterica*) covers the outer and inner surfaces of the parotid gland as a thick membrane, called the **parotid fascia.** It passes forward, and becomes thinner to cover the Masseter muscle, to which it is firmly connected. It is derived from the deep cervical fascia. *Above*, this fascia is attached to the lower border of the zygoma. It is lost in front below the Risorius and Platysma.

The **Masseter Muscle** is exposed by the removal of this fascia (Fig. 260); it is a short, thick muscle, somewhat quadrilateral in form, consisting of two portions, superficial and deep. The **superficial portion**, the larger, *arises* by a thick, tendinous aponeurosis from the malar process of the superior maxilla, and from the anterior two-thirds of the lower border of the zygomatic arch: its fibres pass downward and backward, to be *inserted* into the angle and lower half of the outer surface of the ramus of the jaw. The **deep portion** is much smaller and more muscular in texture; it *arises* from the posterior third of the lower border and the whole of the inner surface of the zygomatic arch; its fibres pass downward and forward, to be *inserted* into the upper half of the ramus and outer surface of the coronoid process of the jaw. The deep portion of the muscle is partly concealed, in front by the superficial portion; behind, it is covered by the parotid gland. The fibres of the two portions are united at their insertion.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Zygomatici, the parotid gland and Socia parotidis, and Stenson's duct; the branches of the facial nerve and the transverse facial vessels, which cross it; the masseteric fascia; the Risorius, Platysma myoides, and the integument; by its *deep surface*, with the Temporal muscle at its insertion, the ramus of the jaw, the Buccinator and the long buccal nerve, from which it is separated by a mass of fat (suctorial or sucking pad). The masseteric nerve and artery enter in on its under surface. Its *posterior margin* is overlapped by the parotid gland. Its *anterior margin* projects over the Buccinator muscle, and the facial vein lies on it below.

Temporal Fascia (*fascia temporalis*).—The temporal fascia is seen, at this stage of a dissection, covering in the Temporal muscle. It is a strong, fibrous investment, covered, on its outer surface, by the Attrahens and Attollens auriculam muscles, the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis, and by part of the Orbicularis palpebrarum. The temporal vessels and the auriculo-temporal nerve cross it from below upward. *Above*, it is a single layer, attached to the entire extent of the upper tem-

poral ridge; but *below*, where it is attached to the zygoma, it consists of two layers, one of which is inserted into the outer, and the other into the inner, border of the zygomatic arch. A small quantity of fat, the orbital branch of the temporal artery, and a filament from the orbital, or temporo-malar, branch of the superior maxillary nerve are contained between these two layers. It affords attachment by its inner surface to the superficial fibres of the Temporal muscle.

Dissection.—In order to expose the Temporal muscle, remove the temporal fascia, which may be effected by separating it at its attachment along the upper border of the zygoma, and dissecting it upward from the surface of the muscle. The zygomatic arch should then be divided in front at its junction with the malar bone, and behind near the external auditory meatus, and drawn downward with the Masseter, which should be detached from its insertion into the ramus and angle of the jaw. The whole extent of the Temporal muscle is then exposed.

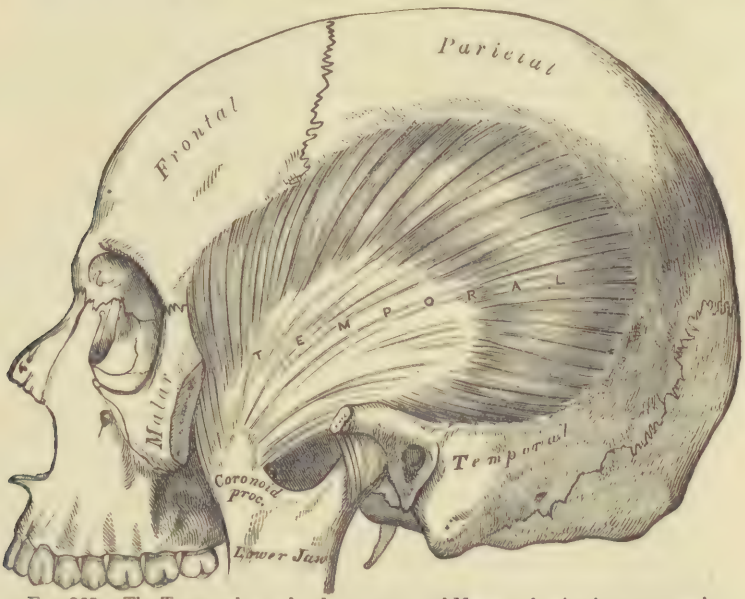


FIG. 265.—The Temporal muscle, the zygoma and Masseter having been removed.

The **Temporal Muscle** (*m. temporalis*) (Figs. 264 and 265) is a broad, radiating muscle situated at the side of the head and occupying the entire extent of the temporal fossa. It *arises* from the whole of the temporal fossa except that portion of it that is formed by the malar bone. Its attachment extends from the external angular process of the frontal in front to the mastoid portion of the temporal behind, and from the curved line on the frontal and parietal bones above to the pterygoid ridge on the great wing of the sphenoid below. It is also attached to the inner surface of the temporal fascia. Its fibres converge as they descend, and terminate in an aponeurosis, the fibres of which, radiated at its commencement, converge into a thick and flat tendon, which is *inserted* into the inner surface, apex, and anterior border of the coronoid process of the jaw, nearly as far forward as the last molar tooth.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument, the Attrahens and Attollens auriculam muscles, the temporal vessels and nerves, the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis, the temporal fascia, the zygoma, and Masseter; by its *deep surface*, with the temporal fossa, the External pterygoid and part of the Buccinator muscles, the internal maxillary artery and its deep temporal branches, and the deep temporal nerves. Behind the tendon are the masseteric vessels and nerve, and in front of it the buccal vessels and nerve. Its anterior border is separated from the malar bone by a mass of fat.

Nerves.—Both muscles are supplied by the inferior maxillary nerve.

10. The Pterygo-mandibular Region (Figs. 266, 267).

External pterygoid. Internal pterygoid.

Dissection.—The Temporal muscle having been examined, saw through the base of the coronoid process, and draw it upward, together with the Temporal muscle, which should be detached from the surface of the temporal fossa. Divide the ramus of the jaw just below the condyle, and also, by a transverse incision extending across the middle, just above the dental foramen; remove the fragment, and the Pterygoid muscles will be exposed.

The **External Pterygoid Muscle** (*m. pterygoideus externus*) is a short, thick muscle, somewhat conical in form, which extends almost horizontally between the zygomatic fossa and the condyle of the jaw. It *arises* by two heads, separated by a slight interval: the **upper head** *arises* from the inferior surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid and from the pterygoid ridge, which separates the zygomatic from the temporal fossa; the **lower head** from the outer surface of the external pterygoid plate. Its fibres pass horizontally backward and outward, to be *inserted* into a depression in front of the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw and into the corresponding part of the interarticular fibro-cartilage.

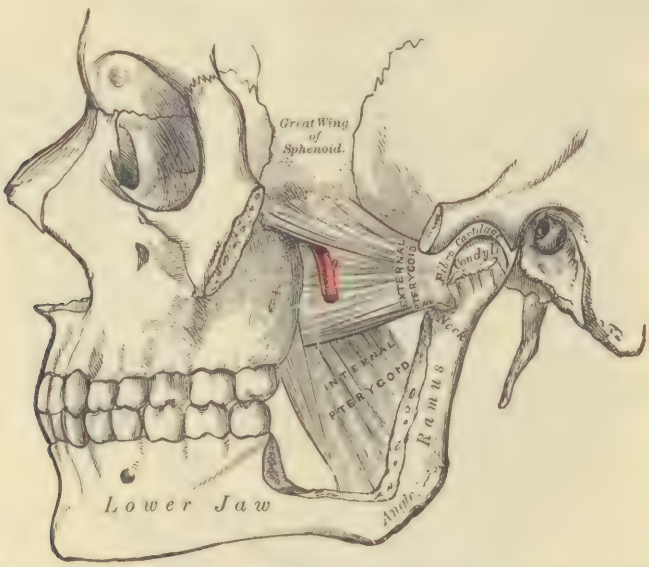


Fig. 266.—The Pterygoid muscles, the zygomatic arch, and a portion of the ramus of the jaw having been removed.

Relations.—By its *external surface*, with the ramus of the lower jaw, the internal maxillary artery, which crosses it,[1] the tendon of the Temporal muscle, and the Masseter; by its *internal surface* it rests against the upper part of the Internal pterygoid muscle, the internal lateral ligament, the middle meningeal artery, and inferior maxillary nerve; by its *upper border* it is in relation with the temporal and masseteric branches of the inferior maxillary nerve; by its *lower border* it is in relation with the inferior dental and gustatory nerves. Through the interval between the two portions of the muscle, the buccal nerve emerges and the internal maxillary artery passes, when the trunk of this vessel lies on the muscle.

The **Internal Pterygoid Muscle** (*m. pterygoideus internus*) is a thick, quadrilateral muscle, and resembles the Masseter in form. It *arises* from the pterygoid fossa, being attached to the inner surface of the external pterygoid plate and to

[1] This is the usual relation, but in many cases the artery will be found below the muscle.

the grooved surface of the tuberosity of the palate bone, and by a second slip from the outer surface of the tuberosities of the palate and superior maxillary bones; its fibres pass downward, outward, and backward, to be *inserted*, by a strong, tendinous lamina, into the lower and back part of the inner side of the ramus and angle of the lower jaw, as high as the dental foramen.

Relations.—By its *external surface*, with the ramus of the lower jaw, from which it is separated, at its upper part, by the External pterygoid muscle, the internal lateral ligament, the internal maxillary artery, the dental vessels and nerves, and the lingual nerve, and a process of the parotid gland. By its *internal surface*, with the Tensor palati, being separated from the Superior constrictor of the pharynx by a cellular interval.

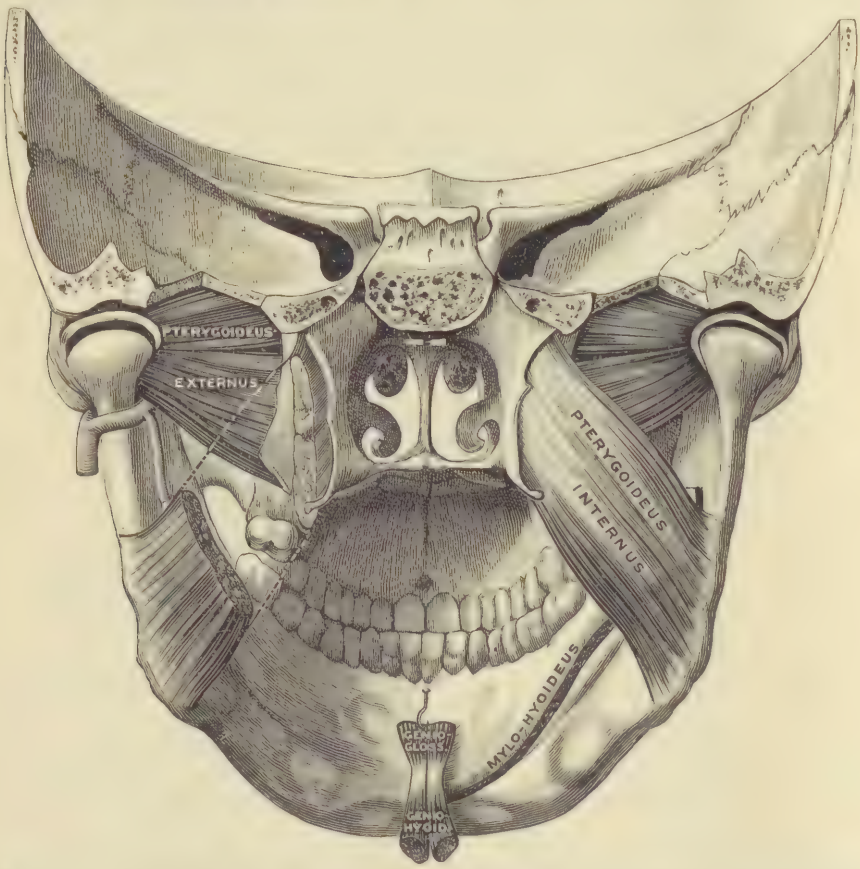


Fig. 267.—Pterygoid muscles, viewed from behind, the back portion of the skull having been removed. (Testut.)

Nerves.—These muscles are supplied by the inferior maxillary nerve.

Actions.—The Temporal and Masseter and Internal pterygoid raise the lower jaw against the upper with great force. The superficial portion of the Masseter assists the External pterygoid in drawing the lower jaw forward upon the upper, the jaw being drawn back again by the deep fibres of the Masseter and posterior fibres of the Temporal. The External pterygoid muscles are the direct agents in the trituration of the food, drawing the lower jaw directly forward, so as to make the lower teeth project beyond the upper. If the muscle of one side acts, the corresponding side of the jaw is drawn forward, and, the other condyle remaining fixed, the symphysis deviates to the opposite side. The alternation of these movements on the two sides produces trituration.

Surface Form.—The outline of the muscles of the head and face cannot be traced on the surface of the body, except in the case of two of the masticatory muscles. Those of the head are thin, so that the outline of the bone is perceptible beneath them. Those in the face are small, covered by soft skin, and often by a considerable layer of fat, so that their outline is concealed, but they serve to round off and smooth prominent borders and to fill up what would be otherwise unsightly angular depressions. Thus, the Orbicularis palpebrarum rounds off the prominent margin of the orbit, and the Pyramidalis nasi fills in the sharp depression beneath the glabella, and thus softens and tones down the abrupt depression which is seen on the unclothed bone. In like manner, the labial muscles, converging to the lips and assisted by the superimposed fat, fill in the sunken hollow of the lower part of the face. Although the muscles of the face are usually described as arising from the bones and inserted into the nose, lips, and corners of the mouth, they have fibres inserted into the skin of the face along their whole extent, so that almost every point of the skin of the face has its muscular fibre to move it; hence it is that when in action the facial muscles produce alterations in the skin-surface, giving rise to the formation of various folds or wrinkles, or otherwise altering the relative position of the parts, so as to produce the varied expressions with which the face is endowed; hence these muscles are termed the **muscles of expression**. The only two muscles in this region which greatly influence surface form are the Masseter and the Temporal. The Masseter is a quadrilateral muscle, which imparts fulness to the hinder part of the cheek. When the muscle is firmly contracted, as when the teeth are clenched, its outline is plainly visible; the anterior border forms a prominent vertical ridge, behind which is a considerable fulness, especially marked at the lower part of the muscle; this fulness is entirely lost when the mouth is opened and the muscle no longer in a state of contraction. The Temporal muscle is fan-shaped, and fills the Temporal fossa, substituting for it a somewhat convex form, the anterior part of which, on account of the absence of hair over the temple, is more marked than the posterior, and stands out in strong relief when the muscle is in a state of contraction.

MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE NECK.

The muscles of the neck may be arranged into groups corresponding with the region in which they are situated.

These groups are nine in number:

1. Superficial Cervical Region.
2. Depressors of the Os Hyoideum and Larynx.
3. Elevators of the Os Hyoideum and Larynx.
4. Muscles of the Tongue.
5. Muscles of the Pharynx.
6. Muscles of the Soft Palate.
7. Muscles of the Anterior Vertebral Region.
8. Muscles of the Lateral Vertebral Region.
9. Muscles of the Larynx.

The muscles contained in each of these groups are the following:

1. *Superficial Region.*
   - Platysma myoides.
   - Sterno-cleido-mastoid.

Infra-hyoid Region.

2. *Depressors of Os hyoideum and Larynx.*
   - Sterno-hyoid.
   - Sterno-thyroid.
   - Thyro-hyoid.
   - Omo-hyoid.

Supra-hyoid Region.

3. *Elevators of Os hyoideum and Larynx.*
   - Digastric.
   - Stylo-hyoid.
   - Mylo-hyoid.
   - Genio-hyoid.

Lingual Region.

4. *Muscles of the Tongue.*
   - Genio-hyo-glossus.
   - Hyo-glossus.
   - Chondro-glossus.
   - Stylo-glossus.
   - Palato-glossus.

5. *Muscles of the Pharynx.*
   - Inferior constrictor.
   - Middle constrictor.
   - Superior constrictor.
   - Stylo-pharyngeus.
   - Palato-pharyngeus.

6. *Muscles of the Soft Palate.*
Levator palati.
Tensor palati.
Azygos uvulæ.
Palato-glossus.
Palato-pharyngeus.
Salpingo-pharyngeus.

7. *Muscles of the Anterior Vertebral Region.*
Rectus capitis anticus major.
Rectus capitis anticus minor.
Rectus capitis lateralis.
Longus colli.

8. *Muscles of the Lateral Vertebral Region.*
Scalenus anticus.
Scalenus medius.
Scalenus posticus.

9. *Muscles of the Larynx.*
Included in description of the Larynx.

1. The Superficial Cervical Region.

Platysma myoides. Sterno-cleido-mastoid.

Dissection.—A block having been placed at the back of the neck, and the face turned to the side opposite that to be dissected, so as to place the parts upon the stretch, make two transverse incisions: one from the chin, along the margin of the lower jaw, to the mastoid process, and the other along the upper border of the clavicle. Connect these by an oblique incision made in the course of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, from the mastoid process to the sternum; the two flaps of integument having been removed in the direction shown in Fig. 257, the superficial fascia will be exposed.

Superficial Cervical Fascia.—The superficial cervical fascia is a thin, aponeurotic lamina which is hardly demonstrable as a separate membrane. Beneath it is found the Platysma myoides muscle.

The **Platysma Myoides** (*m. platysma*) (Fig. 260) is a broad, thin plane of muscular fibres placed immediately beneath the superficial fascia on each side of the neck. It *arises* by thin, fibrous bands from the fascia covering the upper part of the Pectoral and Deltoid muscles; its fibres pass over the clavicle and proceed obliquely upward and inward along the side of the neck. The anterior fibres interlace, below and behind the symphysis menti, with the fibres of the muscle of the opposite side; the posterior fibres pass over the lower jaw, some of them being attached to the bone below the external oblique line, others passing on to be inserted into the skin and subcutaneous tissue of the lower part of the face, many of these fibres blending with the muscles about the angle and lower part of the mouth. Sometimes fibres can be traced to the Zygomatic muscles or to the margin of the Orbicularis oris. Beneath the Platysma the external jugular vein may be seen descending in a line from the angle of the jaw to the middle of the clavicle.

Relations.—By its *external surface*, with the integument, to which it is united more closely below than above; by its *internal surface*, with the Pectoralis major and Deltoid, and with the clavicle. In the *neck*, with the external and anterior jugular veins, the deep cervical fascia, the superficial branches of the cervical plexus, the Sterno-mastoid, Sterno-hyoid, Omo-hyoid, and Digastric muscles; behind the Sterno-mastoid muscle it covers in the posterior triangle of the neck. On the *face* it is in relation with the parotid gland, the facial artery and vein, and the Masseter and Buccinator muscles.

Nerves.—The lower division of the facial nerve chiefly innervates this muscle, and superficial branches from the cervical plexus also reach it.

Action.—The Platysma myoides produces a slight wrinkling of the surface of the skin of the neck, in an oblique direction, when the entire muscle is brought into action. Its anterior portion, the thickest part of the muscle, depresses the lower jaw; it also serves to draw down the lower lip and angle of the mouth on each side, being one of the chief agents in the expression of melancholy. In the pressure upon the blood-vessels of the neck induced by strong inspiratory effort,

this muscle draws away the skin and fascia, and by so doing, greatly diminishes the pressure on the veins.

Deep Cervical Fascia (*fascia colli*) (Fig. 268).—The deep cervical fascia lies under cover of the Platysma myoides muscle and constitutes a complete investment for the neck. It also forms a sheath for the carotid vessels, and, in addition, is prolonged deeply in the shape of certain processes or lamellæ, which come into close relation with the structures situated in front of the vertebral column.

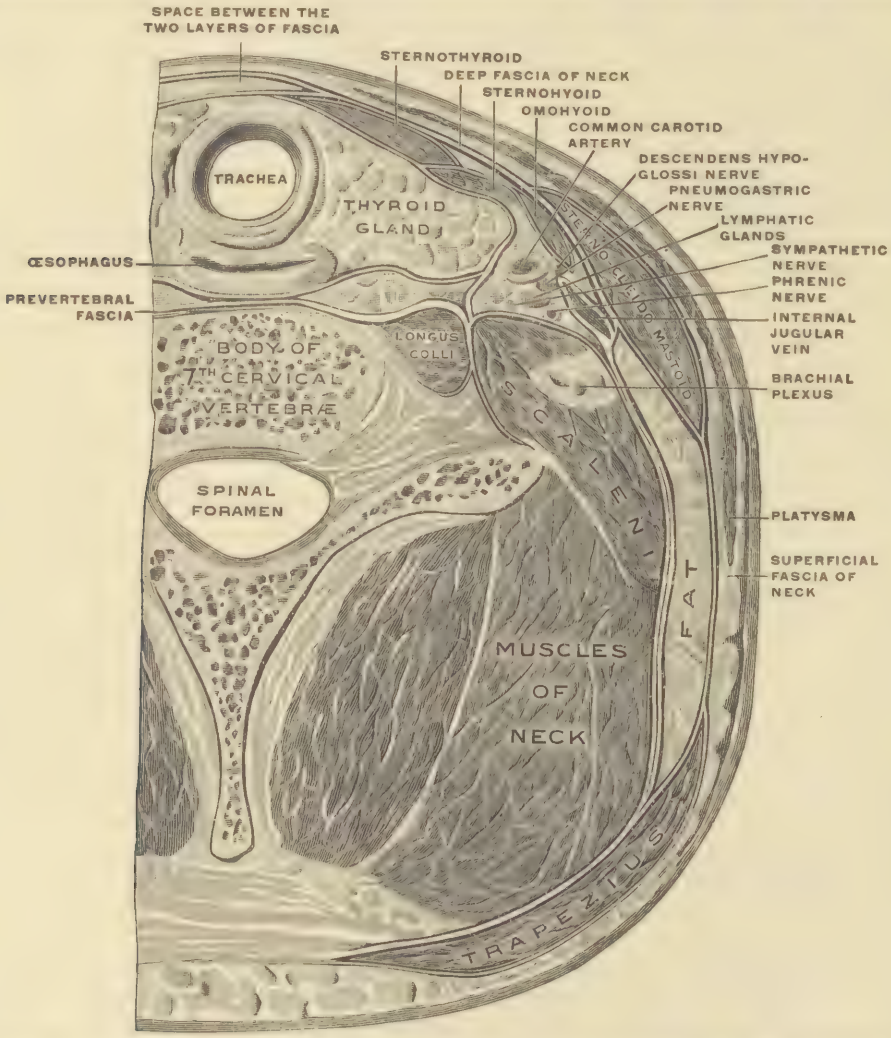


Fig. 268.—Transverse section through the neck at the level of the seventh cervical vertebra. (Spalteholz.)

The investing portion of the fascia is attached, *behind*, to the ligamentum nuchæ and to the spine of the seventh cervical vertebra. Along this line it splits to enclose the Trapezius muscle, at the anterior border of which the two enclosing lamellæ unite and form a strong membrane, which extends forward so as to roof in the posterior triangle of the neck. Along the hinder edge of the Sterno-mastoid the membrane divides to enclose this muscle, at the anterior edge of which it once more forms a single lamellæ, which roofs in the anterior triangle of the neck, and, reaching forward to the middle line, is continuous with the corresponding part from the opposite side of the neck. In the middle line of the neck it is attached to the symphysis menti and to the body of the hyoid bone.

Above, the fascia is attached to the superior curved line of the occiput, to the mastoid process of the temporal, and to the whole length of the body of the jaw. Opposite the angle of the jaw the fascia is very strong, and binds the anterior edge of the Sterno-mastoid firmly to that bone. Between the jaw and the mastoid process it ensheaths the parotid gland—the layer which covers the gland extending upward under the name of the **parotid fascia** to be fixed to the zygomatic arch. The parotid fascia is prolonged forward to cover the masseter muscle, the *masseteric fascia*. From the layer which passes under the parotid a strong band, the **stylo-mandibular ligament**, reaches from the styloid process to the angle of the jaw. The parotid and masseteric fasciæ constitute the **fascia parotideo-masseterica.**

Below, the cervical fascia is attached to the acromion process, the clavicle, and to the manubrium sterni. Some little distance above the last-named point, however, it splits into two layers, **superficial** and **deep**. The former is attached to the anterior border of the manubrium, the latter to its posterior border and to the interclavicular ligament. Between these two layers is a slit-like interval, the **suprasternal space** or **space of Burns** (*spatium suprasternale*). It contains a small quantity of areolar tissue, and sometimes a lymphatic gland; the lower portions of the anterior jugular veins and their transverse connecting branch; and also the sternal heads of the Sterno-mastoid muscles.

The fascia which lines the deep aspect of the Sterno-mastoid gives off certain important processes, viz.: (1) A process to envelop the tendon of the Omo-hyoid, and bind it down to the sternum and first costal cartilage. (2) A strong sheath, the **carotid sheath**, for the large vessels of the neck, enclosed within which are the carotid artery, internal jugular vein, the vagus, and descendens hypoglossi nerves. (3) The **prevertebral fascia** (*fascia prævertebralis*), which extends inward behind the carotid vessels, where it assists in forming their sheath, and passes in front of the prevertebral muscles. It thus forms the posterior limit of a fibrous compartment which contains the larynx and trachea, the thyroid gland, and the pharynx and œsophagus. The prevertebral fascia is fixed above to the base of the skull, while below it is continued into the thorax in front of the Longus colli muscles. Parallel to the carotid vessels and along their inner aspect it gives off a thin lamina, the **bucco-pharyngeal fascia** (*fascia buccopharyngea*), which closely invests the constrictor muscles of the pharynx, and is continued forward from the Superior constrictor on to the Buccinator. It is attached to the prevertebral layer by loose connective tissue only, and thus an easily distended space, the **retro-pharyngeal space** (*spatium retropharyngea*), is found between them. This space is limited above by the base of the skull, while below it extends behind the œsophagus into the thorax, where it is continued into the posterior mediastinum. The prevertebral fascia is prolonged downward and outward behind the carotid vessels and in front of the Scaleni muscles, and forms a sheath for the brachial plexus of nerves and for the subclavian vessels in the posterior triangle of the neck, and, continuing under the clavicle as the axillary sheath, is attached to the deep surface of the costo-coracoid membrane. Immediately above the clavicle an areolar space exists between the investing layer and the sheath of the subclavian vessels, and in it are found the lower part of the external jugular vein, the descending clavicular nerves, the suprascapular and transversalis colli vessels, and the posterior belly of the Omo-hyoid muscle. This space extends downward behind the clavicle, and is limited below by the fusion of the costo-coracoid membrane with the anterior wall of the axillary sheath. (4) The **pre-tracheal fascia**, which extends inward in front of the carotid vessels, and assists in forming the carotid sheath. It is further continued behind the Depressor muscles of the hyoid bone, and, after enveloping the thyroid body, is prolonged in front of the trachea to meet the corresponding layer of the opposite side. Above, it is fixed to the hyoid

bone, while below it is carried downward in front of the trachea and large vessels at the root of the neck, and ultimately blends with the fibrous pericardium.

Surgical Anatomy.—The cervical fascia is of considerable importance from a surgical point of view. As will be seen from the foregoing description, it may be divided into three layers: (1) A superficial layer; (2) a layer passing in front of the trachea, and forming with the superficial layer a sheath for the depressors of the hyoid bone; (3) a prevertebral layer passing in front of the bodies of the cervical vertebræ, and forming with the second layer a space in which are contained the trachea, œsophagus, etc. The superficial layer forms a complete investment for the neck. It is attached behind to the ligamentum nuchæ and the spine of the seventh cervical vertebra; above it is attached to the external occipital protuberance, to the superior curved line of the occiput, to the mastoid process, to the zygoma and the lower jaw; below it is attached to the manubrium sterni, the clavicle, the acromion process, and the spine of the scapula; in front it blends with the fascia of the opposite side. This layer opposes the extension of *abscesses* or new-growths toward the surface, and pus forming beneath it has a tendency to extend laterally. If pus is in the posterior triangle, it might extend backward under the Trapezius, forward under the Sterno-mastoid, or downward under the clavicle for some distance, until stopped by the junction of the cervical fascia to the Costo-coracoid membrane. If the pus is contained in the anterior triangle, it might find its way into the anterior mediastinum, being situated in front of the layer of fascia which passes down into the thorax to become continuous with the pericardium; but owing to the lesser density and thickness of the fascia in this situation it more frequently finds its way through it and points above the sternum. The second layer of fascia is connected above with the hyoid bone. It passes down beneath the depressors and in front of the thyroid body and trachea to become continuous with the fibrous layer of the pericardium. Laterally it invests the great vessels of the neck and is connected with the superficial layer beneath the Sterno-mastoid. Pus forming beneath this layer would in all probability find its way into the posterior mediastinum. The third layer (the prevertebral fascia) is connected above to the base of the skull. Pus forming beneath this layer, in cases, for instance, of caries of the bodies of the cervical vertebræ, might extend toward the posterior and lateral part of the neck and point in this situation, or might perforate this layer of fascia and the pharyngeal fascia and point into the pharynx (*retro-pharyngeal abscess*).

In cases of *cut throat* the cervical fascia is of considerable importance. When the wound involves only the superficial layer the injury is usually trivial, the only special danger being injury to the external jugular vein, and the only special complication being diffuse cellulitis. But where the second of the two layers has been opened up, important structures may have been injured, which may lead to serious results.

It may be worth while mentioning that in Burns's space is contained the sternal head of origin of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, so that this space is opened in division of this tendon. The anterior jugular vein is also contained in the same space.

The **Sterno-mastoid** or **Sterno-cleido-mastoid** (*m. sternocleidomastoideus*) (Fig. 269) is a large, thick muscle, which passes obliquely across the side of the neck, being enclosed between two layers of the deep cervical fascia. It is thick and narrow at its central part, but is broader and thinner at each extremity. It *arises*, by two heads, from the sternum and clavicle. The **sternal portion** is a rounded fasciculus, tendinous in front, fleshy behind, which *arises* from the upper and anterior part of the first piece of the sternum, and is directed upward, outward, and backward. The **clavicular portion** *arises* from the inner third of the superior border and anterior surface of the clavicle, being composed of fleshy and aponeurotic fibres; it is directed almost vertically upward. These two portions are separated from one another, at their origin, by a triangular cellular interval, but become gradually blended, below the middle of the neck, into a thick, rounded muscle, which is *inserted*, by a strong tendon, into the outer surface of the mastoid process of the temporal bone, from its apex to its superior border, and by a thin aponeurosis into the outer half of the superior curved line of the occipital bone. The Sterno-mastoid varies much in its extent of attachment to the clavicle: in one case the clavicular may be as narrow as the sternal portion; in another, the former may be as much as three inches in breadth. When the clavicular origin is broad, it is occasionally subdivided into numerous slips separated by narrow intervals. More rarely, the corresponding margins of the Sterno-mastoid and Trapezius have been found in contact. In the application of a ligature

to the third part of the subclavian artery it will be necessary, where the Sterno-mastoid and Trapezius come close together, to divide a portion of one or of both.

This muscle divides the quadrilateral space at the side of the neck into two triangles, an anterior and a posterior. The boundaries of the **anterior triangle** are, in front, the median line of the neck; above, the lower border of the body of the jaw, and an imaginary line drawn from the angle of the jaw to the mastoid process; behind, the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle. The apex of the triangle is at the upper border of the sternum. The boundaries of the **posterior triangle** are, in front, the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid; below, the middle third of the clavicle; behind, the anterior margin of the Trapezius.[1] The apex corresponds with the meeting of the Sterno-mastoid and Trapezius on the occipital bone.

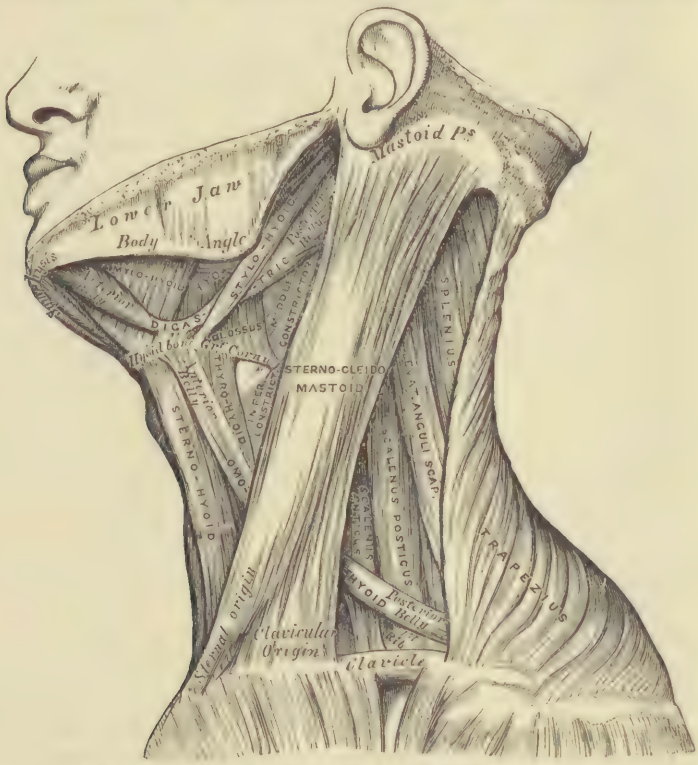


FIG. 269.—Muscles of the neck and boundaries of the triangles.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument and Platysma, from which it is separated by the external jugular vein, the superficial branches of the cervical plexus, and the anterior layer of the deep cervical fascia. By its *deep surface* it is in relation with the Sterno-clavicular articulation; a process of the deep cervical fascia; the Sterno-hyoid, Sterno-thyroid, Omo-hyoid, posterior belly of the Digastric, Lævator anguli scapulæ, Splenius and Scaleni muscles; common carotid artery, internal and anterior jugular veins, commencement of the internal and external carotid arteries, the occipital, subclavian, transversalis colli, and suprascapular arteries and veins; the phrenic, pneumogastric, hypoglossal, descendens and communicans hypoglossi nerves; the spinal accessory nerve, which pierces its upper third; the cervical plexus, parts of the thyroid and parotid glands, and deep lymphatic glands.

Nerves.—The Sterno-cleido-mastoid is supplied by the spinal accessory nerve and deep branches of the cervical plexus.

[1] The anatomy of these triangles will be more exactly described with that of the vessels of the neck.

Actions.—When only one Sterno-mastoid muscle acts, it draws the head toward the shoulder of the same side, assisted by the Splenius and the Obliquus capitis inferior of the opposite side. At the same time it rotates the head so as to carry the face toward the opposite side. When the two muscles act together they flex the head upon the neck. If the head is fixed, the two muscles assist in elevating the thorax in forced inspiration.

Surface Form.—The anterior edge of the muscle forms a very prominent ridge beneath the skin, which it is important to notice, as it forms a guide to the surgeon in making the necessary incisions for ligature of the common carotid artery and for œsophagotomy.

Surgical Anatomy.—The relations of the sternal and clavicular parts of the Sterno-mastoid should be carefully examined, as the surgeon is sometimes required to divide one or both portions of the muscle in *wry-neck* (*torticollis*). One variety of this distortion is produced by spasmodic contraction or rigidity of the Sterno-mastoid; the head being carried down toward the shoulder of the same side, and the face turned to the opposite side and fixed in that position. When there is permanent shortening, *subcutaneous division* of the muscle is resorted to by some surgeons. This is performed by introducing a tenotomy knife beneath it, close to its origin, and dividing it from behind forward whilst the muscle is put well upon the stretch. There is seldom any difficulty in dividing the sternal portion by making a puncture on the inner side of the tendon, and then pushing a blunt tenotome behind it, and cutting forward. In dividing the clavicular portion care must be taken to avoid wounding the external jugular vein, which runs parallel with the posterior border of the muscle in this situation, or the anterior jugular vein, which crosses beneath it. If the external jugular vein lies near the muscle, it is safer to make the first puncture at the outer side of the tendon, and introduce a blunt tenotome from without inward. Many surgeons prefer dividing the muscle by open incision, because by this method all of the contracted fibres, muscular and facial, can be certainly and safely divided. An incision is made over the origin of the muscle, the origin is exposed, a director is passed underneath it, and it is then divided. With care and attention to asepsis this plan of treatment is devoid of risk, and in this way the accidental division of vessels can be avoided. Some of the fibres of the Sterno-mastoid muscle are occasionally torn during birth, especially in breech presentations; this is accompanied by hemorrhage and formation of a swelling within the substance of the muscle. This by some is believed to be one of the causes of wry-neck, the scar tissue which is formed contracting and shortening the muscle.

2. The Infra-hyoid Region (Figs. 269, 270).

Depressors of the Os Hyoideum and Larynx.

Sterno-hyoid.	Thyro-hyoid.
Sterno-thyroid.	Omo-hyoid.

Dissection.—The muscles in this region may be exposed by removing the deep fascia from the front of the neck. In order to see the entire extent of the Omo-hyoid it is necessary to divide the sterno-mastoid at its centre, and turn its ends aside, and to detach the Trapezius from the clavicle and scapula. This, however, should not be done until the Trapezius has been dissected.

The **Sterno-hyoid** (*m. sternohyoideus*) is a thin, narrow, ribbon-like muscle, which *arises* from the inner extremity of the clavicle, the posterior sterno-clavicular ligament, and the upper and posterior part of the first piece of the sternum; passing upward and inward, it is *inserted*, by short, tendinous fibres, into the lower border of the body of the hyoid bone. This muscle is separated, below, from its fellow by a considerable interval; but the two muscles come into contact with one another in the middle of their course, and from this upward lie side by side. It sometimes presents, immediately above its origin, a transverse tendinous intersection, like those in the Rectus abdominis. As a rule, two bursæ, the **sterno-hyoid bursæ** (*bursæ sternohyoidii*), lie between the crico-thyroid membrane, on one hand, and the Sterno-hyoid muscle and the cervical fascia, on the other. Sometimes there is one large median bursa instead of two lateral bursæ. Not unusually there is no bursa at all.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, below, with the sternum, the sternal end of the clavicle, and the Sterno-mastoid; and above, with the Platysma and deep cervical fascia; by its *deep surface*, with the Sterno-thyroid, Crico-thyroid, and

Thyro-hyoid muscles, the thyroid gland, the superior thyroid vessels, the thyroid cartilage, the crico-thyroid and thyro-hyoid membranes.

The **Sterno-thyroid** (*m. sternothyreoideus*) is situated beneath the preceding muscle, but is shorter and wider than it. It *arises* from the posterior surface of the first piece of the sternum, below the origin of the Sterno-hyoid, and from the edge of the cartilage of the first rib, occasionally of the second rib also, and is *inserted* into the oblique line on the side of the ala of the thyroid cartilage. This muscle is in close contact with its fellow at the lower part of the neck, and is occasionally traversed by a transverse or oblique tendinous intersection, like those in the Rectus abdominis.

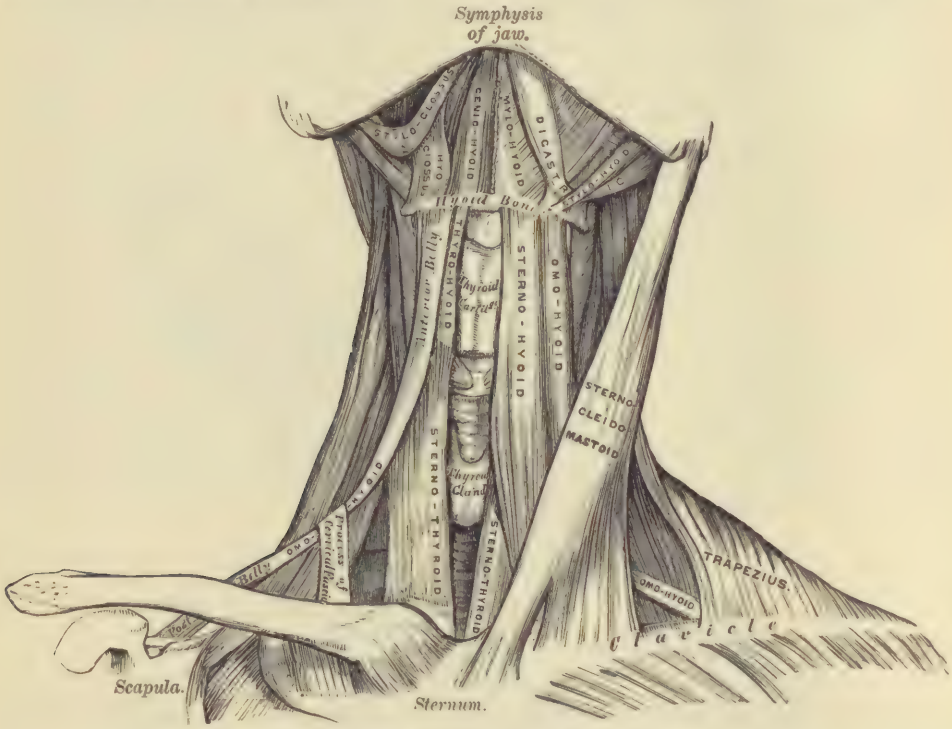


Fig. 270.—Muscles of the neck. Anterior view.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the Sterno-hyoid, Omo-hyoid, and Sterno-mastoid; by its *posterior surface*, from below upward, with the trachea, vena innominata, common carotid (and on the right side the arteria innominata), the thyroid gland and its vessels, and the lower part of the larynx and pharynx. The inferior thyroid vein lies along its inner border, a relation which it is important to remember in the operation of tracheotomy. On the left side the deep surface of the muscle is in relation to the œsophagus.

The **Thyro-hyoid** (*m. thyreohyoideus*) is a small, quadrilateral muscle appearing like a continuation of the Sterno-thyroid. It *arises* from the oblique line on the side of the thyroid cartilage, and passes vertically upward to be *inserted* into the lower border of the body and greater cornu of the hyoid bone. The **thyro-hyoid bursæ** (*bursæ thyreohyoidii*) lie inferior to the greater cornua of the hyoid bone and upon the thyro-hyoid membrane. There is one bursa on each side beneath the corresponding Thyro-hyoid muscle.

Relations.—By its *external surface*, with the Sterno-hyoid and Omo-hyoid muscles; by its *internal surface*, with the thyroid cartilage, the thyro-hyoid membrane, and the superior laryngeal vessels and nerve.

The **Omo-hyoid** (*m. omohyoideus*) passes across the side of the neck, from the scapula to the hyoid bone. It consists of two fleshy bellies, united by a central tendon. It *arises* from the upper border of the scapula, and occasionally from the transverse ligament which crosses the suprascapular notch, its extent of attachment to the scapula varying from a few lines to an inch. From this origin the **posterior belly** (*venter inferior*) forms a flat, narrow fasciculus, which inclines forward and slightly upward across the lower part of the neck, behind the Sterno-mastoid muscle, where it becomes tendinous; it then changes its direction, forming an obtuse angle, and terminates in the **anterior belly** (*venter superior*), which passes almost vertically upward, close to the outer border of the Sterno-hyoid, to be *inserted* into the lower border of the body of the hyoid bone, just external to the insertion of the Sterno-hyoid. The central tendon of this muscle, which varies much in length and form, is held in position by a process of the deep cervical fascia, which includes it in a sheath. This process is prolonged down, to be attached to the clavicle and first rib. It is by this means that the angular form of the muscle is maintained.

This muscle subdivides each of the two large triangles at the side of the neck into two smaller triangles; the two posterior ones being the **posterior superior** or **occipital triangle**, and the **posterior inferior** or **subclavian triangle**; the two anterior, the **anterior superior** or **superior carotid triangle**, and the **anterior inferior** or **inferior carotid triangle.**

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Trapezius, the Sterno-mastoid, deep cervical fascia, Platysma, and integument; by its *deep surface*, with the Scaleni muscles, phrenic nerve, lower cervical nerves, which go to form the brachial plexus, the suprascapular vessels and nerve, sheath of the common carotid artery and internal jugular vein, the Sterno-thyroid and Thyro-hyoid muscles.

Nerves.—The Thyro-hyoid is supplied by the hypoglossal; the other muscles of this group by branches from the loop of communication between the descendens and communicans hypoglossi.

Actions.—These muscles depress the larynx and hyoid bone, after they have been drawn up with the pharynx in the act of deglutition. The Omo-hyoid muscles not only depress the hyoid bone, but carry it backward and to one side. It is concerned especially in prolonged inspiratory efforts; for by tensing the lower part of the cervical fascia it lessens the inward suction of the soft parts, which would otherwise compress the great vessels and the apices of the lungs. This action is synergistic with that of the Platysma. The Thyro-hyoid may act as an elevator of the thyroid cartilage when the hyoid bone ascends, drawing upward the thyroid cartilage, behind the hyoid bone. The Sterno-thyroid acts as a depressor of the thyroid cartilage.

3. The Supra-hyoid Region (Figs. 269, 270).

Elevators of the Os Hyoideum—Depressors of the Lower Jaw.

Digastric.	Mylo-hyoid.
Stylo-hyoid.	Genio-hyoid.

Dissection.—To dissect these muscles a block should be placed beneath the back of the neck, and the head drawn backward and retained in that position. On the removal of the deep fascia the muscles are at once exposed.

The **Digastric** (*m. digastricus*) consists of two fleshy bellies united by an intermediate, rounded tendon. It is a small muscle, situated below the side of the body of the lower jaw, and extending, in a curved form, from the side of the head to the symphysis of the jaw. The **posterior belly** (*venter posterior*), longer than the anterior, *arises* from the digastric groove on the inner side of the mastoid process of the temporal bone, and passes downward, forward, and inward.

The **anterior belly** (*venter anterior*) *arises* from a depression on the inner side of the lower border of the jaw, close to the symphysis, and passes downward and backward. The two bellies terminate in the central tendon which perforates the Stylo-hyoid, and is held in connection with the side of the body and the greater cornu of the hyoid bone by a fibrous loop, lined by a synovial membrane. A broad aponeurotic layer is given off from the tendon of the Digastric on each side, which is attached to the body and great cornu of the hyoid bone: this is termed the **supra-hyoid aponeurosis.** It forms a strong layer of fascia between the anterior portion of the two muscles, and a firm investment for the other muscles of the supra-hyoid region which lie deeper.

The Digastric muscle divides the anterior superior triangle of the neck into two smaller triangles; the **upper,** or **submaxillary triangle,** being bounded, above, by the lower border of the body of the jaw, and a line drawn from its angle to the mastoid process; below, by the posterior belly of the Digastric and the Stylo-hyoid muscles; in front, by the middle line of the neck and the anterior belly of the Digastric, the **lower** or **superior carotid triangle** being bounded above by the posterior belly of the Digastric, behind by the Sterno-mastoid, below by the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the mastoid process, the Platysma, Sterno-mastoid, part of the Splenius, Trachelo-mastoid, and Stylo-hyoid muscles, and the parotid gland. By its *deep surface*, the anterior belly lies on the Mylo-hyoid; the posterior belly on the Stylo-glossus, Stylo-pharyngeus, and Hyo-glossus muscles, the external carotid artery and its occipital, lingual, facial, and ascending pharyngeal branches, the internal carotid artery, internal jugular vein, and hypoglossal nerve.

The **Stylo-hyoid** (*m. stylohyoideus*) is a small, slender muscle, lying in front of, and above, the posterior belly of the Digastric. It *arises* from the back and outer surface of the styloid process of the temporal bone, near the base; and, passing downward and forward, is *inserted* into the body of the hyoid bone, just at its junction with the greater cornu, and immediately above the Omo-hyoid. This muscle is perforated, near its insertion, by the tendon of the Digastric.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface* above with the parotid gland and deep cervical fascia; below it is superficial, being situated immediately beneath the deep cervical fascia. By its *deep surface*, with the posterior belly of the Digastric, the external carotid artery, with its lingual and facial branches, the Hyo-glossus muscle, and the hypoglossal nerve.

The Stylo-hyoid Ligament (*ligamentum stylohyoideus*).—In connection with the Stylo-hyoid muscle may be described a ligamentous band, the **stylo-hyoid ligament.** It is a fibrous cord, often containing a little cartilage in its centre, which continues the styloid process down to the hyoid bone, being attached to the tip of the former and the small cornu of the latter. It is often more or less ossified, and in many animals forms a distinct bone, the **epihyal.**

The anterior belly of the Digastric should be removed, in order to expose the next muscle.

The **Mylo-hyoid** (*m. mylohyoideus*) (Fig. 271) is a flat, triangular muscle, situated immediately beneath the anterior belly of the Digastric, and forming, with its fellow of the opposite side, a muscular floor for the cavity of the mouth. It *arises* from the whole length of the mylo-hyoid ridge of the lower jaw, extending from the symphysis in front to the last molar tooth behind. The posterior fibres pass inward and slightly downward, to be inserted into the body of the hyoid bone. The middle and anterior fibres are inserted into a median fibrous raphé, extending from the symphysis of the lower jaw to the hyoid bone, where they join at an angle with the fibres of the opposite muscle. The median raphé

is sometimes wanting; the muscular fibres of the two sides are then directly continuous with one another.

Relations.—By its *cutaneous* or *under surface*, with the Platysma, the anterior belly of the Digastric, the supra-hyoid aponeurosis, the submaxillary gland, submental vessels, and mylo-hyoid vessels and nerve; by its *deep* or *superior surface*, with the Genio-hyoid, part of the Hyo-glossus and Stylo-glossus muscles, the hypoglossal and lingual nerves, the submaxillary ganglion, the sublingual gland, the deep portion of the submaxillary gland, and Wharton's duct; the sublingual and ranine vessels, and the buccal mucous membrane.

Dissection.—The Mylo-hyoid should now be removed, in order to expose the muscles which lie beneath; this is effected by reflecting it from its attachments to the hyoid bone and jaw, and separating it by a vertical incision from its fellow of the opposite side.

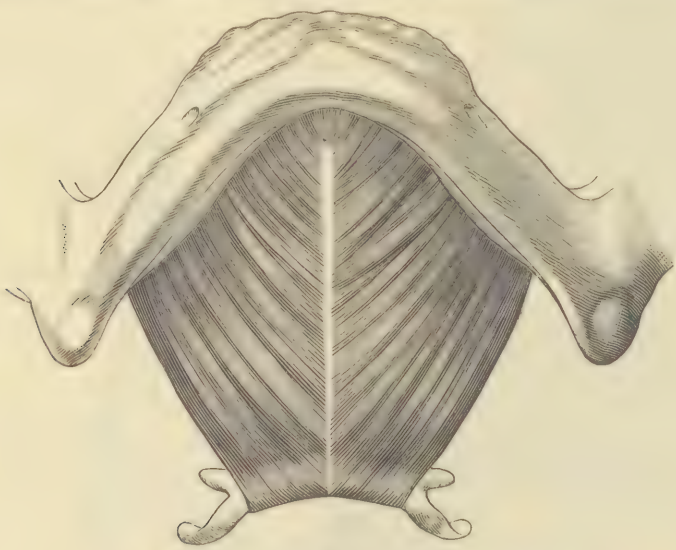


Fig. 271.—Mylo-hyoid muscle. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **Genio-hyoid** (*m. geniohyoideus*) (Fig. 272) is a narrow, slender muscle, situated immediately beneath[1] the inner border of the preceding. It *arises* from the inferior genial tubercle on the inner side of the symphysis of the jaw, and passes downward and backward, to be *inserted* into the anterior surface of the body of the hyoid bone. This muscle lies in close contact with its fellow of the opposite side, and increases slightly in breadth as it descends.

Relations.—It is covered by the Mylo-hyoid and lies along the lower border of the Genio-hyo-glossus.

Nerves.—The anterior belly of the Digastric is supplied by the mylo-hyoid branch of the inferior dental; its posterior belly, by the facial; the Stylo-hyoid is supplied by the facial; the Mylo-hyoid, by the mylo-hyoid branch of the inferior dental; the Genio-hyoid, by the hypoglossal.

Actions.—This group of muscles performs two very important actions. They raise the hyoid bone, and with it the base of the tongue, during the act of deglutition; or, when the hyoid bone is fixed by its depressors and those of the larynx, they depress the lower jaw. During the first act of deglutition, when the mass is being driven from the mouth into the pharynx, the hyoid bone, and with it the tongue, is carried upward and forward by the anterior belly of the Digastric, the Mylo-hyoid, and Genio-hyoid muscles. In the second act, when the mass is pass-

[1] This refers to the depth of the muscles from the skin in the order of dissection. In the erect position of the body the Genio-hyoid is above the Mylo-hyoid.

ing through the pharynx, the direct elevation of the hyoid bone takes place by the combined action of all the muscles; and after the food has passed, the hyoid bone is carried upward and backward by the posterior belly of the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, which assist in preventing the return of the morsel into the mouth.

4. The Lingual Region (Figs. 272, 273, 274).

Genio-hyo-glossus. Stylo-glossus.
Hyo-glossus. Palato-glossus.
Chondro-glossus.

Dissection.—After completing the dissection of the preceding muscles, saw through the lower jaw just external to the symphysis. Then draw the tongue forward, and attach it, by a stitch, to the nose; when its muscles, which are thus put on the stretch, may be examined.

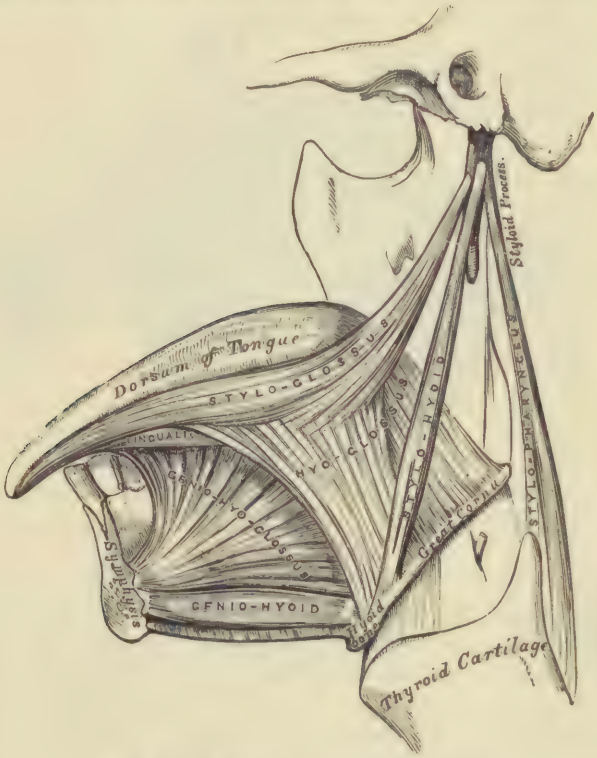


Fig. 272.—Muscles of the tongue. Left side.

The **Genio-hyo-glossus** (*m. genioglossus*) has received its name from its triple attachment to the jaw, hyoid bone, and tongue, but it is better to name it the **Genio-glossus,** since its attachment to the hyoid bone is very slight or altogether absent. It is a flat, triangular muscle, placed vertically on either side of the middle line, its apex corresponding with its point of attachment to the lower jaw, its base with its insertion into the tongue and hyoid bone. It *arises* by a short tendon from the superior genial tubercle on the inner side of the symphysis of the jaw, immediately above the Genio-hyoid; from this point the muscle spreads out in a fan-like form, a few of the inferior fibres passing downward, to be attached by a thin aponeurosis into the upper part of the body of the hyoid bone, a few fibres passing between the Hyo-glossus and Chondro-glossus to blend with the Constrictor muscles of the pharynx; the middle fibres passing backward, and the superior ones upward and forward, to enter the whole length of the under surface of the tongue, from the base to the apex. The two muscles lie on either side of the median plane;

behind (Fig. 273), they are quite distinct from each other, and are separated at their insertion into the under surface of the tongue by a tendinous raphé, which extends through the middle of the organ; in front, the two muscles are more or less blended: distinct fasciculi are to be seen passing off from one muscle, crossing the middle line, and intersecting with bundles of fibres derived from the muscle on the other side.

Relations.—By its *internal surface* it is in contact with its fellow of the opposite side; by its *external surface*, with the Inferior lingualis, the Hyo-glossus, the lingual artery and hypoglossal nerve, the lingual nerve, and sublingual gland; by its *upper border*, with the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth (frænum linguæ); by its *lower border* with the Genio-hyoid.

Fig. 273.—Muscles of the tongue from below. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

The **Hyo-glossus** (*m. hyoglossus*) is a thin, flat, quadrilateral muscle which *arises* from the side of the body and whole length of the greater cornu of the hyoid bone, and passes almost vertically upward to enter the side of the tongue, between the Stylo-glossus and Lingualis. Those fibres of this muscle which arise from the body are directed upward and backward, overlapping those arising from the greater cornu, which are directed upward and forward.

Relations.—By its *external surface*, with the Digastric, the Stylo-hyoid, Stylo-glossus, and Mylo-hyoid muscles, the submaxillary ganglion, the lingual and hypo-glossal nerves, Wharton's duct, the ranine vein, the sublingual gland, and the deep portion of the submaxillary gland. By its *deep surface*, with the Stylo-hyoid ligament, the Genio-hyo-glossus, Lingualis, and Middle constrictor, the lingual vessels, and the glosso-pharyngeal nerve.

The **Chondro-glossus** (*m. chondroglossus*) is a distinct muscular slip, though it is sometimes described as a part of the Hyo-glossus, from which, however, it is separated by the fibres of the Genio-hyo-glossus, which pass to the side of the pharynx. It is about three-quarters to an inch in length, and *arises* from the inner side and base of the lesser cornu and contiguous portion of the body of the hyoid bone, and passes directly upward to blend with the intrinsic muscular fibres of the tongue, between the Hyo-glossus and Genio-hyo-glossus. A small slip of muscular fibre is occasionally found, arising from the cartilago triticia in the thyro-hyoid ligament, and passing upward and forward to enter the tongue with the hindermost fibres of the Hyo-glossus.

The **Stylo-glossus** (*m. styloglossus*), the shortest and smallest of the three styloid muscles, *arises* from the anterior and outer side of the styloid process, near its apex, and from the stylo-mandibular ligament, to which its fibres, in most cases, are attached by a thin aponeurosis. Passing downward and forward between the internal and external carotid arteries, and becoming nearly horizontal in its direction, it divides upon the side of the tongue into two portions: one longitudinal, which enters the side of the tongue near its dorsal surface, blending with the fibres of the Lingualis in front of the Hyo-glossus; the other oblique, which overlaps the Hyoglossus muscle and decussates with its fibres.

Relations.—By its *external surface*, from above downward, with the parotid gland, the Internal pterygoid muscle, the lingual nerve, and the mucous membrane of the mouth; by its *internal surface*, with the tonsil, the Superior constrictor, and the Hyo-glossus muscle.

The **Palato-glossus** or **Constrictor Isthmi Faucium** (*m. glossopalatinus*), although it is one of the muscles of the tongue, serving to draw its base upward during the act of deglutition, is more nearly associated with the soft palate, both in its situation and function; it will consequently be described with that group of muscles.

Nerves.—The Palato-glossus is probably innervated by the spinal accessory nerve, through the pharyngeal plexus; the remaining muscles of this group, by the hypo-glossal.

Muscular Substance of the Tongue (Figs. 273, 274, and 275).—The muscular fibres of the tongue run in various directions. These fibres are divided into two sets—Extrinsic and Intrinsic. The **extrinsic muscles** of the tongue are those which have their origin external, and only their terminal fibres contained in the substance of the organ. They are: the Stylo-glossus, the Hyo-glossus, the Palato-glossus, the Genio-hyo-glossus, and part of the Superior constrictor of the pharynx (Pharyngeo-glossus). The **intrinsic muscles** are those which are contained entirely within the tongue, and form the greater part of its muscular structure.

Fig. 274.—Muscles on the dorsum of the tongue.

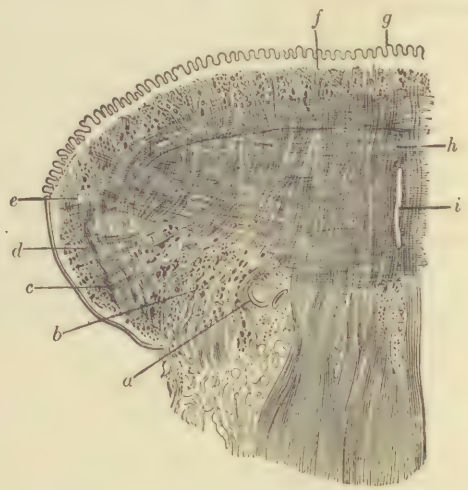


Fig. 275.—Coronal section of tongue. Showing intrinsic muscles. *a*, lingual artery; *b*, Inferior lingualis, cut through; *c*, fibres of Hyo-glossus; *d*, oblique fibres of Stylo-glossus; *e*, insertion of Transverse lingualis; *f*, Superior lingualis; *g*, papillæ to tongue; *h*, vertical fibres of Genio-hyo-glossus intersecting Transverse lingualis; *i*, septum. (Altered from Krause.)

The tongue consists of symmetrical halves separated from each other in the middle line by a **fibrous septum** (*septum linguæ*). Each half is composed of muscular fibres arranged in various directions, containing much interposed fat, and supplied by vessels and nerves.

To demonstrate the various fibres of the tongue, the organ should be subjected to prolonged boiling, in order to soften the connective tissue; the dissection may then be commenced from the dorsum (Figs. 274 and 275). Immediately beneath the mucous membrane is a *submucous, fibrous* layer, into which the muscular fibres which terminate on the surface of the tongue are inserted. Upon removing this,

with the mucous membrane, the first stratum of muscular fibres is exposed. This belongs to the group of intrinsic muscles, and has been named the **Superior lingualis** (*m. longitudinalis superior*). It consists of a thin layer of oblique and longitudinal fibres which arise from the submucous fibrous layer, close to the Epiglottis, and from the fibrous septum, and pass forward and outward to the edges of the tongue. Between its fibres pass some vertical fibres derived from the Genio-hyo-glossus and from the vertical intrinsic muscle, which will be described later on. Beneath this layer is the second stratum of muscular fibres, derived principally from the extrinsic muscles. In front it is formed by the fibres derived from the Stylo-glossus, running along the side of the tongue, and sending one set of fibres over the dorsum which run obliquely forward and inward to the middle line, and another set of fibres seen at a later period of the dissection, on to the under surface of the sides of the anterior part of the tongue, which run forward and inward, between the fibres of the Hyo-glossus, to the middle line. Behind this layer of fibres, derived from the Stylo-glossus, are fibres derived from the Hyo-glossus, assisted by some few fibres of the Palato-glossus. The Hyo-glossus, entering the side of the under surface of the tongue, between the Stylo-glossus and Inferior lingualis, passes round its margin and spreads out into a layer on the dorsum, which occupies the middle third of the organ, and runs almost transversely inward to the septum. It is reinforced by some fibres from the Palato-glossus; other fibres of this muscle pass more deeply and intermingle with the next layer. The posterior part of the second layer of the muscular fibres of the tongue is derived from those fibres of the Hyo-glossus which arise from the lesser cornu of the hyoid bone, and are here described as a separate muscle—the **Chondro-glossus.** The fibres of this muscle are arranged in a fan-shaped manner, and spread out over the posterior third of the tongue. Beneath this layer is the great mass of the intrinsic muscles of the tongue, intersected at right angles by the terminal fibres of one of the extrinsic muscles—the Genio-hyo-glossus. This portion of the tongue is paler in color and softer in texture than that already described, and is sometimes designated the medullary portion in contradistinction to the firmer superficial part, which is termed the cortical portion. It consists largely of transverse fibres, the **Transverse lingualis** (*m. transversus linguæ*), and of vertical fibres, the **Vertical lingualis** (*m. verticalis linguæ*). The Transverse lingualis forms the largest portion of the third layer of muscular fibres of the tongue. The fibres arise from the median septum, and pass outward to be inserted into the submucous fibrous layer at the sides of the tongue. Intermingled with these transverse intrinsic fibres are transverse extrinsic fibres derived from the Palato-glossus and the Superior constrictor of the pharynx. These transverse extrinsic fibres, however, run in the opposite direction, passing inward toward the septum. Intersecting the transverse fibres are a large number of vertical fibres derived partly from the Genio-hyo-glossus and partly from intrinsic fibres, the Vertical lingualis. The fibres derived from the Genio-hyo-glossus enter the under surface of the tongue on each side of the median septum from base to apex. They ascend in a radiating manner to the dorsum, being inserted into the submucous fibrous layer covering the tongue on each side of the middle line. The Vertical lingualis is found only at the borders of the forepart of the tongue, external to the fibres of the Genio-hyo-glossus. Its fibres extend from the upper to the under surface of the organ, decussating with the fibres of the other muscles, and especially with the Transverse lingualis. The fourth layer of muscular fibres of the tongue consists partly of extrinsic fibres derived from the Stylo-glossus, and partly of intrinsic fibres, the **Inferior lingualis** (*m. longitudinalis inferior*). At the sides of the under surface of the organ are some fibres derived from the Stylo-glossus, which, as it runs forward at the side of the tongue, gives off fibres which, passing forward and inward between the fibres of the Hyo-glossus, form an inferior oblique stratum which joins in front with the

anterior fibres of the Inferior lingualis. The Inferior lingualis is a longitudinal band, situated on the under surface of the tongue, and extending from the base to the apex of the organ. Behind, some of its fibres are connected with the body of the hyoid bone. It lies between the Hyo-glossus and the Genio-hyo-glossus, and in front of the Hyo-glossus it enters into relation with the Stylo-glossus, with the fibres of which it blends. It is in relation by its under surface with the ranine artery.

Surgical Anatomy.—The fibrous septum which exists between the two halves of the tongue is very complete, so that the anastomosis between the two lingual arteries is not very free, a fact often illustrated by injecting one-half of the tongue with colored size, while the other half is left uninjected or is injected with size of a different color.

This is a point of considerable importance in connection with removal of one-half of the tongue for cancer, an operation which is now frequently resorted to when the disease is strictly confined to one side of the anterior portion of the tongue. If the mucous membrane is divided longitudinally exactly in the middle line, the tongue can be split into halves along the median raphé without any appreciable hemorrhage, and the diseased half can then be removed.

Actions.—The movements of the tongue, although numerous and complicated, may be understood by carefully considering the direction of the fibres of its muscles. The Genio-hyo-glossi muscles, by means of their posterior fibres, draw the base of the tongue forward, so as to protrude the apex from the mouth. The anterior fibres draw the tongue back into the mouth. The whole length of these two muscles, acting along the middle line of the tongue, draw it downward, so as to make it concave from side to side, forming a channel along which fluids may pass toward the pharynx, as in sucking. The Hyo-glossi muscles depress the tongue and draw down its sides, so as to render it convex from side to side. The Stylo-glossi muscles draw the tongue upward and backward. The Palato-glossi muscles draw the base of the tongue upward. With regard to the intrinsic muscles, both the Superior and Inferior linguales tend to shorten the tongue, but the former, in addition, turn the tip and sides upward so as to render the dorsum concave, while the latter pull the tip downward and cause the dorsum to become convex. The Transverse lingualis narrows and elongates the tongue, and the Vertical lingualis flattens and broadens it. The complex arrangement of the muscular fibres of the tongue, and the various directions in which they run, give to this organ the power of assuming the various forms necessary for the enunciation of the different consonantal sounds; and Dr. Macalister states that "there is reason to believe that the musculature of the tongue varies in different races owing to the hereditary practice and habitual use of certain motions required for enunciating the several vernacular languages."

5. The Pharyngeal Region (Figs. 276, 277, 278).

Inferior constrictor.
Middle constrictor.
Palato-pharyngeus. } (See next section.)
Salpingo-pharyngeus. }
Superior constrictor.
Stylo-pharyngeus.

Dissection (Fig. 276).—In order to examine the muscles of the pharynx, cut through the trachea and œsophagus just above the sternum, and draw them upward by dividing the loose areolar tissue connecting the pharynx with the front of the vertebral column. The parts being drawn well forward, apply the edge of the saw immediately behind the styloid processes, and saw the base of the skull through from below upward. The pharynx and mouth should then be stuffed with tow, in order to distend its cavity and render the muscles tense and easier of dissection.

The **Inferior Constrictor** (*m. constrictor pharyngis inferior*), the most superficial and thickest of the three constrictors, *arises* from the sides of the cricoid and thyroid cartilages. To the cricoid cartilage it is attached in the interval between

the Crico-thyroid muscle in front and the articular facet for the thyroid cartilage behind. To the thyroid cartilage it is attached to the oblique line on the side of the great ala, the cartilaginous surface behind it, nearly as far as its posterior border, and to the inferior cornu. From these attachments the fibres spread backward and inward, to be *inserted* into the fibrous raphé in the posterior median line of the pharynx. The inferior fibres are horizontal, and continuous with the fibres of the œsophagus: the rest ascend, increasing in obliquity, and overlap the Middle constrictor.

Relations.—It is covered by a thin membrane which surrounds the entire pharynx, **bucco-pharyngeal fascia** (*fascia buccopharyngea*). *Behind*, it is in relation with the vertebral column and the prevertebral fascia and muscles; *laterally*, with the thyroid gland, the common carotid artery, and the Sterno-thyroid muscle; by its *internal surface*, with the Middle constrictor, the Stylo-pharyngeus, Palato-pharyngeus, the fibrous coat and mucous membrane of the pharynx. The internal laryngeal nerve and the laryngeal branch of the Superior Thyroid artery pass near the upper border, and the inferior, or recurrent laryngeal nerve, and the laryngeal branch of the Inferior Thyroid artery, beneath the lower border of this muscle, previous to their entering the larynx.

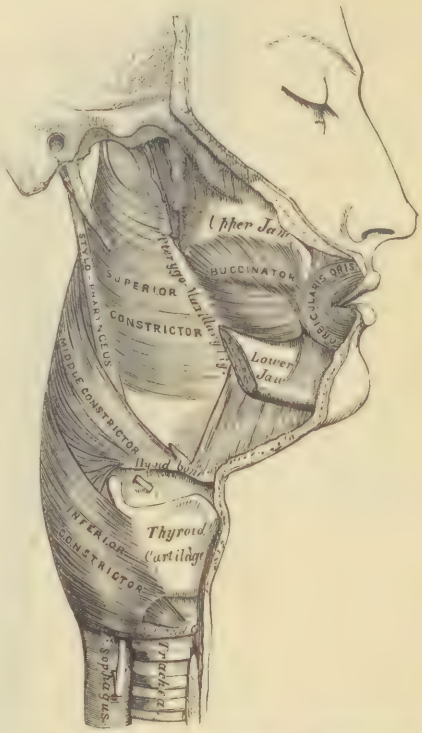


FIG. 276.—Muscles of the pharynx. External view.

The **Middle Constrictor** (*m. constrictor pharyngis medius*) is a flattened, fan-shaped muscle, smaller than the preceding. It *arises* from the whole length of the upper border of the greater cornu of the hyoid bone, from the lesser cornu, and from the stylo-hyoid ligament. The fibres diverge from their origin, the lower ones descending beneath the Inferior constrictor, the middle fibres passing transversely, and the upper fibres ascending and overlapping the Superior constrictor. The muscle is *inserted* into the posterior median fibrous raphé, blending in the middle line with the one of the opposite side.

Relations.—Between this muscle and the Superior constrictor are the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, the Stylo-pharyngeus muscle and the stylo-hyoid ligament; and between it and the Inferior constrictor is the superior laryngeal nerve. *Behind*, it lies on the vertebral column, the Longus colli, and the Rectus capitis anticus major. *On each side* it is in relation with the carotid vessels, the pharyngeal plexus, and some lymphatic glands. Near its origin it is covered by the Hyo-glossus, the lingual vessels being placed between the two muscles. It lies upon the Superior constrictor, the Stylo-pharyngeus, the Palato-pharyngeus, the fibrous coat, and the mucous membrane of the larynx.

The **Superior Constrictor** (*m. constrictor pharyngis superior*) is a quadrilateral muscle, thinner and paler than the other constrictors, and situated at the upper part of the pharynx. It *arises* from the lower third of the posterior margin of the internal pterygoid plate and its hamular process, from the contiguous portion of the

palate bone and the reflected tendon of the Tensor palati muscle, from the pterygo-maxillary ligament, from the alveolar process above the posterior extremity of the mylo-hyoid ridge, and by a few fibres from the side of the tongue. From these points the fibres curve backward, to be *inserted* into the median raphé, being also prolonged by means of a fibrous aponeurosis to the pharyngeal spine on the basilar process of the occipital bone. The superior fibres arch beneath the Levator palati and the Eustachian tube, the interval between the upper border of the muscle and the basilar process being deficient in muscular fibres and closed by a portion of the **pharyngeal aponeurosis** (*fascia pharyngobasilaris*). This interval is known as the **sinus of Morgagni**.

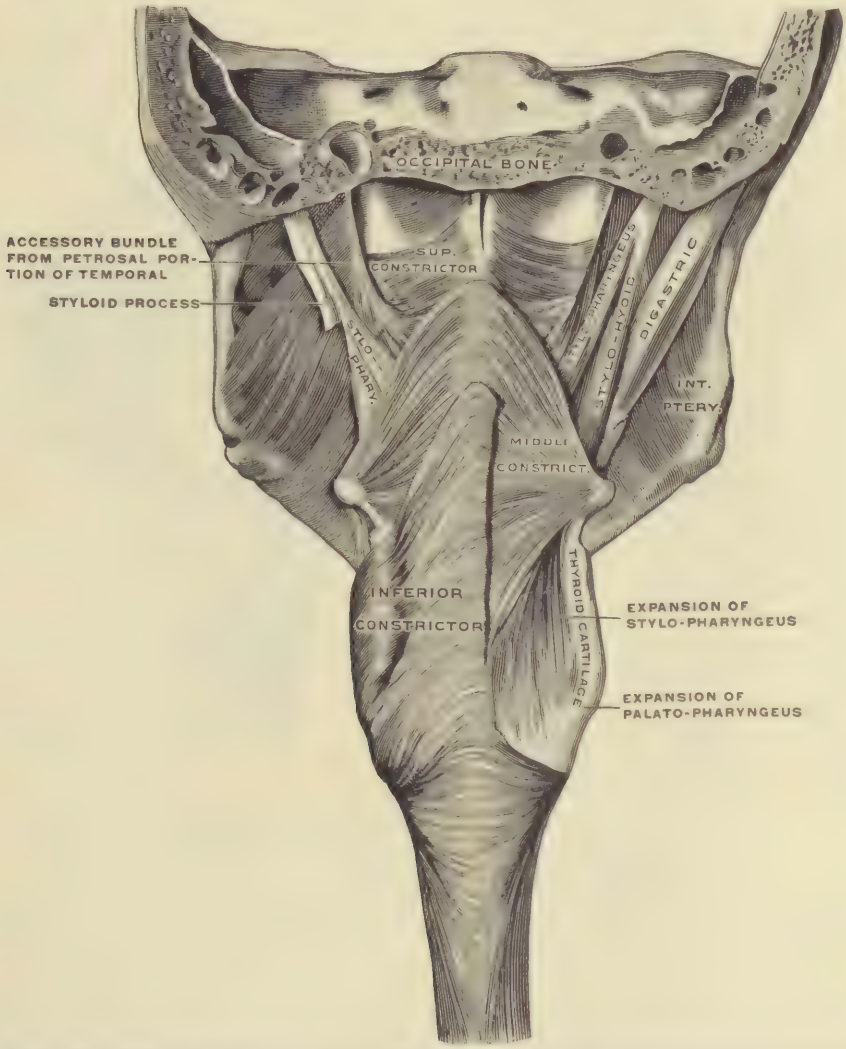


FIG. 277.—The muscles of the pharynx. On the right side most of the inferior constrictor has been removed, on the left side the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid have been removed. (Spalteholz.)

Relations.—By its *outer surface*, with the prevertebral fascia and muscles, the vertebral column, the internal carotid and ascending pharyngeal arteries, the internal jugular vein and pharyngeal venous plexus, the glosso-pharyngeal, pneumogastric, spinal accessory, hypoglossal, lingual, and sympathetic nerves, the Middle constrictor and Internal pterygoid muscles, the Styloid process, the Stylo-

hyoid ligament, and the Stylo-pharyngeus. By its *internal surface*, with the Palato-pharyngeus, the tonsil, the fibrous coat and mucous membrane of the pharynx.

The **Stylo-pharyngeus** (*m. stylopharyngeus*) is a long, slender muscle, round above, broad and thin below. It *arises* from the inner side of the base of the styloid process of the temporal bone, passes downward along the side of the pharynx between the Superior and Middle constrictors, and spreads out beneath the mucous membrane, where some of its fibres are lost in the Constrictor muscles; and others, joining with the Palato-pharyngeus, are *inserted* into the posterior border of the thyroid cartilage. The glosso-pharyngeal nerve runs on the outer side of this muscle, and crosses over it in passing forward to the tongue.

Relations.—*Externally*, with the Stylo-glossus muscle, the parotid gland, the external carotid artery, and the Middle constrictor; *internally*, with the internal carotid, the internal jugular vein, the Superior constrictor, Palato-pharyngeus, and mucous membrane.

Nerves.—The Constrictors are supplied by branches from the pharyngeal plexus. The Inferior constrictor also receives an additional branch from the external laryngeal nerve and one from the recurrent laryngeal. The Stylo-pharyngeus is supplied by the glosso-pharyngeal nerve.

Actions.—When deglutition is about to be performed, the pharynx is drawn upward and dilated in different directions, to receive the morsel propelled into it from the mouth. The Stylo-pharyngei, which are much farther removed from one another at their origin than at their insertion, draw the sides of the pharynx upward and outward, and so increase its transverse diameter, its breadth in the antero-posterior direction being increased by the larynx and tongue being carried forward in their ascent. As soon as the morsel is received in the pharynx, the Elevator muscles relax, the bag descends, and the Constrictors contract upon the morsel, and convey it gradually downward into the œsophagus. Besides its action in deglutition, the pharynx also exerts an important influence in the modulation of the voice, especially in the production of the higher tones.

6. The Palatal Region (Fig. 278.)

Levator palati.	Palato-glossus.
Tensor palati.	Palato-pharyngeus.
Azygos uvulæ.	Salpingo-pharyngeus.

Dissection (Fig. 278).—Lay open the pharynx from behind by a vertical incision extending from its upper to its lower part, and partially divide the occipital attachment by a transverse incision on each side of the vertical one; the posterior surface of the soft palate is then exposed. Having fixed the uvula so as to make it tense, the mucous membrane and glands should be carefully removed from the posterior surface of the soft palate, and the muscles of this part are at once exposed.

The **Levator Palati** (*m. levator veli palatini*) is a long, thick, rounded muscle, placed on the outer side of the posterior nares. It *arises* from the under surface of the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, and from the inner surface of the cartilaginous portion of the Eustachian tube; after passing into the pharynx, above the upper concave margin of the Superior constrictor, it passes obliquely downward and inward, its fibres spreading out in the soft palate as far as the middle line, where they blend with those of the opposite side.

Relations.—*Externally*, with the Tensor palati and Superior constrictor and Eustachian tube; *internally*, with the mucous membrane of the pharynx; *posteriorly*, with the posterior fasciculus of the Palato-pharyngeus, the Azygos uvulæ, and the mucous lining of the soft palate.

The **Circumflexus** or **Tensor Palati** (*m. tensor veli palatini*) is a broad, thin, ribbon-like muscle, placed on the outer side of the Levator palati, and consisting of a vertical and a horizontal portion. The **vertical portion** *arises* by a flat lamella from the scaphoid fossa at the base of the internal pterygoid plate; from the spine of the sphenoid and the outer side of the cartilaginous portion of the Eustachian tube: descending vertically between the internal pterygoid plate and the inner surface of the Internal pterygoid muscle, it terminates in a tendon, which winds round the hamular process, being retained in this situation by some of the fibres of origin of the Internal pterygoid muscle. Between the hamular process and the tendon is a small bursa (*bursa m. tensoris veli palati*). The **tendon** or **horizontal portion** then

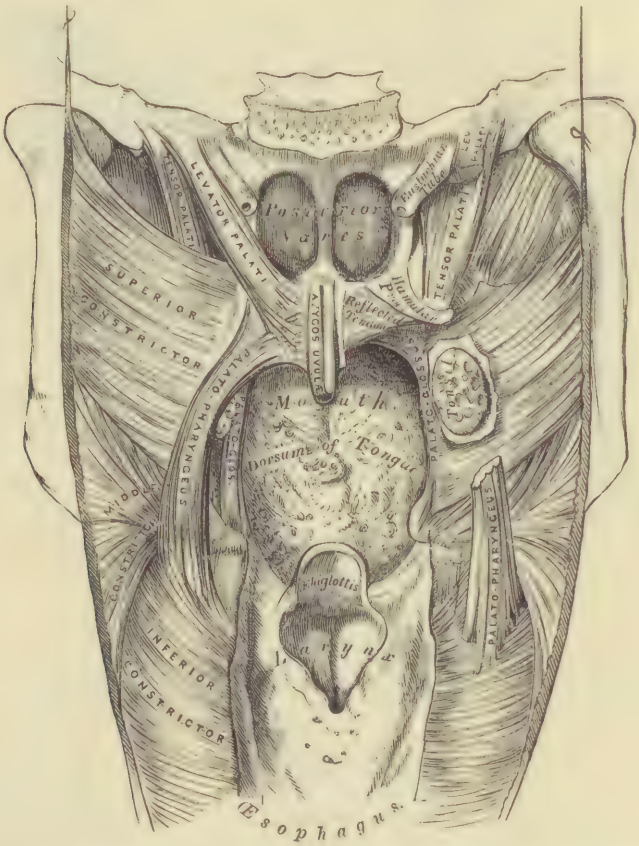


Fig. 278.—Muscles of the soft palate, the pharynx being laid open from behind.

passes horizontally inward, and is inserted into a broad aponeurosis, the **palatine aponeurosis**, and into the transverse ridge on the horizontal portion of the palate bone.

Relations.—*Externally*, with the Internal pterygoid; *internally*, with the Levator palati, from which it is separated by the Eustachian tube and Superior constrictor and with the internal pterygoid plate. In the soft palate its tendon and the palatine aponeurosis are anterior to those of the Levator palati, being covered by the Palato-glossus and the mucous membrane.

Palatine Aponeurosis. Attached to the posterior border of the hard palate is a thin, firm, fibrous lamella which supports the muscles and gives strength to the soft palate. It is thicker above than below, where it becomes very thin and difficult to define. Laterally, it is continuous with the pharyngeal aponeurosis.

The **Azygos Uvulæ** (*m. uvulæ*) is not a single muscle, as would be inferred from its name, but a pair of narrow cylindrical fleshy fasciculi placed on either side of the median line of the soft palate. Each muscle *arises* from the posterior nasal spine of the palate bone and from the contiguous tendinous aponeurosis of the soft palate, and descends to be inserted into the uvula.

Relations.—*Interiorly*, with the tendinous expansion of the Levatores palati; *behind*, with the posterior fasciculus of the Palato-pharyngeus and the mucous membrane.

The next two muscles are exposed by removing the mucous membrane from the pillars of the fauces throughout nearly their whole extent.

The **Palato-glossus** or the **Constrictor Isthmi Faucium** (*m. glossopalatinus*) is a small fleshy fasciculus, narrower in the middle than at either extremity, forming, with the mucous membrane covering its surface, the anterior pillar of the soft palate. It *arises* from the anterior surface of the soft palate on each side of the uvula, and, passing downward, forward, and outward in front of the tonsil, is inserted into the side of the tongue, some of its fibres spreading over the dorsum, and others passing deeply into the substance of the organ to intermingle with the Transverse lingualis. In the soft palate the fibres of this muscle are continuous with those of the muscle of the opposite side.

The **Palato-pharyngeus** (*m. pharyngopalatinus*) is a long, fleshy fasciculus, narrower in the middle than at either extremity, forming, with the mucous membrane covering its surface, the posterior pillar of the soft palate. It is separated from the Palato-glossus by an angular interval, in which the tonsil is lodged. It *arises* from the soft palate by an expanded fasciculus, which is divided into two parts by the Levator palati and Azygos uvulæ. The **posterior fasciculus** lies in contact with the mucous membrane, and also joins with the corresponding muscle in the middle line; the **anterior fasciculus**, the thicker, lies in the soft palate between the Levator and Tensor, and joins in the middle line the corresponding part of the opposite muscle. Passing outward and downward behind the tonsil, the Palato-pharyngeus joins the Stylo-pharyngeus, and is *inserted* with that muscle into the posterior border of the thyroid cartilage, some of its fibres being lost on the side of the pharynx, and others passing across the middle line posteriorly to decussate with the muscle of the opposite side.

Relations.—In the soft palate its *posterior surface* is covered by mucous membrane, from which it is separated by a layer of palatine glands. By its *anterior surface* it is in relation with the Tensor palati. Where it forms the posterior pillar of the fauces it is covered by mucous membrane, excepting on its outer surface. In the *pharynx* it lies between the mucous membrane and the Constrictor muscles.

The **Salpingo-pharyngeus** *arises* from the inferior part of the Eustachian tube near its orifice; it passes downward and blends with the posterior fasciculus of the Palato-pharyngeus.

In a dissection of the soft palate from its posterior or nasal surface to its anterior or oral surface, the muscles would be exposed in the following order—viz., the posterior fasciculus of the Palato-pharyngeus, covered over by the mucous membrane reflected from the floor of the nasal fossæ; the Azygos uvulæ; the Levator palati; the anterior fasciculus of the Palato-pharyngeus; the aponeurosis of the Tensor palati, and the Palato-glossus, covered over by a reflection from the oral mucous membrane.

Nerves.—The Tensor palati is supplied by a branch from the otic ganglion; the remaining muscles of this group are in all probability supplied by the internal branch of the spinal accessory, whose fibres are distributed along with certain branches of the pneumogastric through the pharyngeal plexus.[1] It is possible,

[1] Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, vol. xxiii. p. 523.

however, that the Levator palati may be supplied by the facial through the Petrosal branch of the Vidian.

Actions.—During the *first stage* of deglutition the morsel of food is driven back into the fauces by the pressure of the tongue against the hard palate, the base of the tongue being, at the same time, retracted, and the larynx raised with the pharynx, and carried forward under it. During the *second stage* the entrance to the larynx is closed, not, as was formerly supposed, by the folding backward of the epiglottis over it, but, as Anderson Stuart has shown, by the drawing forward of the arytenoid cartilages toward the cushion of the epiglottis—a movement produced by the contraction of the External thyro-arytenoid, the Arytenoid, and Aryteno-epiglottidean muscles.

The morsel of food after leaving the tongue passes on to the posterior or laryngeal surface of the epiglottis, and glides along this for a certain distance;[1] then the Palato-glossi muscles, the constrictors of the fauces, contract behind the food; the soft palate is slightly raised by the Levator palati, and made tense by the Tensor palati; and the Palato-pharyngei, by their contraction, pull the pharynx upward over the morsel of food, and at the same time come nearly together, the uvula filling up the slight interval between them. By these means the food is prevented passing into the upper part of the larynx or the posterior nares; at the same time the latter muscles form an inclined plane, directed obliquely downward and backward, along the under surface of which the morsel descends into the lower part of the pharynx. The Salpingo-pharyngeus raises the upper and lateral part of the pharynx—*i. e.*, that part which is above the point where the Stylo-pharyngeus is attached to the pharynx.

Surgical Anatomy.—The muscles of the soft palate should be carefully dissected, the relations they bear to the surrounding parts especially examined, and their action attentively studied upon the dead subject, as the surgeon is required to divide one or more of these muscles in the operation of staphylorraphy. Sir W. Fergusson was the first to show that in the congenital deficiency called *cleft palate* the edges of the fissure are forcibly separated by the action of the Levatores palati and Palato-pharyngei muscles, producing very considerable impediment to the healing process after the performance of the operation for uniting their margins by adhesion; he consequently recommended the division of these muscles as one of the most important steps in the operation. This he effected by an incision made with a curved knife introduced behind the soft palate. The incision is to be half-way between the hamular process and Eustachian tube and perpendicular to a line drawn between them. This incision perfectly accomplishes the division of the Levator palati. The Palato-pharyngeus may be divided by cutting across the posterior pillar of the soft palate, just below the tonsil, with a pair of blunt-pointed curved scissors; and the anterior pillar may be divided also. To divide the Levator palati the plan recommended by Mr. Pollock is to be greatly preferred. The soft palate being put upon the stretch, a double-edged knife is passed through it just on the inner side of the hamular process and above the line of the Levator palati. The handle being now alternately raised and depressed, a sweeping cut is made along the posterior surface of the soft palate, and the knife withdrawn, leaving only a small opening in the mucous membrane on the anterior surface. If this operation is performed on the dead body and the parts afterward dissected, the Levator palati will be found completely divided. In the present day, however, this division of the muscles, as part of the operation of staphylorraphy, is not so much insisted upon. All tension is prevented by making longitudinal incisions on either side, parallel to the cleft and just internal to the hamular process, in such a position as to avoid the posterior palatine artery.

7. The Anterior Vertebral Region (Fig. 279).

Rectus capitis anticus major.	Rectus capitis lateralis.
Rectus capitis anticus minor.	Longus colli.

The **Rectus Capitis Anticus Major** or the **Longus Capitis,** broad and thick above, narrow below, appears like a continuation upward of the Sca-

[1] We now know that normal deglutition can be carried out when the epiglottis is so small that it cannot cover the opening into the larynx, or when it has been removed surgically. In such cases the sphincter muscles which surround the laryngeal aperture contract during swallowing and prevent the entrance of foreign bodies into the larynx.—Ed.

lenus anticus. It *arises* by four tendinous slips from the anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebræ, and ascends, converging toward its fellow of the opposite side, to be *inserted* into the basilar process of the occipital bone.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the pharynx, the sympathetic nerve, and the sheath enclosing the internal and common carotid artery, internal jugular vein, and pneumogastric nerve; by its *posterior surface*, with the Longus colli, the Rectus capitis anticus minor, and the upper cervical vertebræ.

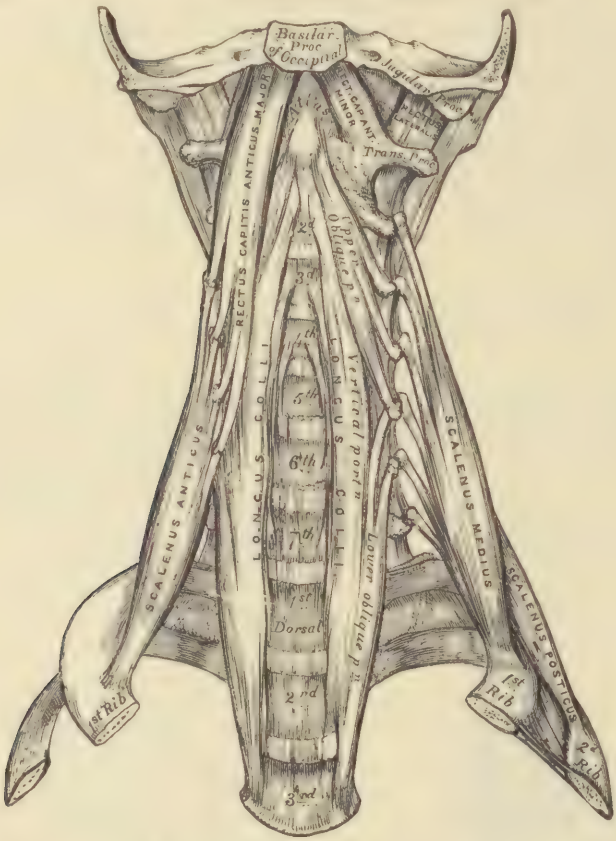


FIG. 279.—The prevertebral muscles.

The **Rectus Capitis Anticus Minor** is a short, flat muscle, situated immediately behind the upper part of the preceding. It *arises* from the anterior surface of the lateral mass of the atlas and from the root of its transverse process, and, passing obliquely upward and inward, is *inserted* into the basilar process immediately behind the preceding muscle.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the Rectus capitis anticus major; by its *posterior surface*, with the front of the occipito-atlantal articulation.

The **Rectus Capitis Lateralis** is a short, flat muscle, which *arises* from the upper surface of the transverse process of the atlas, and is *inserted* into the under surface of the jugular process of the occipital bone.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the internal jugular vein; by its *posterior surface*, with the vertebral artery. On its *outer side* lies the occipital artery; on its *inner side*, the suboccipital nerve.

The **Longus Colli** is a long, flat muscle, situated on the anterior surface of the spine, between the atlas and the third dorsal vertebra. It is broad in the middle,

narrow and pointed at each extremity, and consists of three portions: a superior oblique, an inferior oblique, and a vertical portion. The **superior oblique portion** *arises* from the anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the third, fourth, and fifth cervical vertebræ, and, ascending obliquely inward, is *inserted* by a narrow tendon into the tubercle on the anterior arch of the atlas. The **inferior oblique portion**, the smallest part of the muscle, *arises* from the front of the bodies of the first two or three dorsal vertebræ, and, ascending obliquely outward, is *inserted* into the anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the fifth and sixth cervical vertebræ. The **vertical portion** lies directly on the front of the spine; it *arises*, below, from the front of the bodies of the upper three dorsal and lower three cervical vertebræ, and is *inserted* above into the front of the bodies of the second, third, and fourth cervical vertebræ.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the prevertebral fascia, the pharynx, the œsophagus, sympathetic nerve, the sheath of the great vessels of the neck, the inferior thyroid artery, and recurrent laryngeal nerve; by its *posterior surface*, with the cervical and dorsal portions of the spine. Its *inner border* is separated from the opposite muscle by a considerable interval below, but they approach each other above.

8. The Lateral Vertebral Region (Figs. 279, 280).

Scalenus anticus. Scalenus medius. Scalenus posticus.

The **Scalenus Anticus** (*m. scalenus anterior*) is a conical-shaped muscle, situated deeply at the side of the neck, behind the Sterno-mastoid. It *arises* from the anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebræ, and, descending almost vertically, is *inserted* by a narrow, flat tendon into the **Scalene tubercle** on the inner border and upper surface of the first rib. The lower part of this muscle separates the subclavian artery and vein, the latter being in front, and the former, with the brachial plexus, behind.

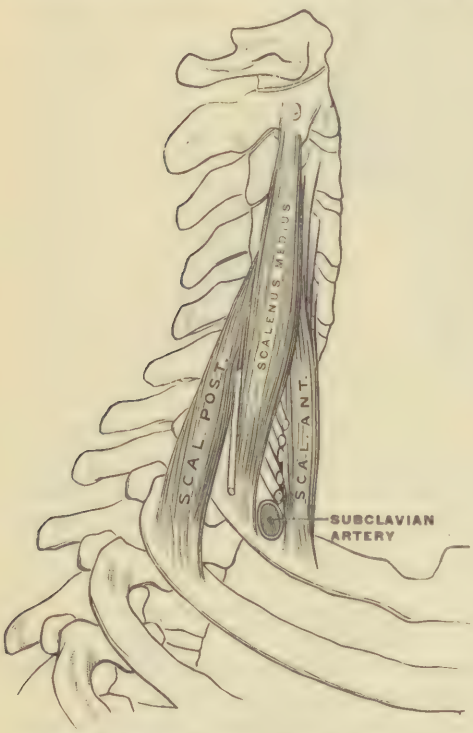


Fig. 280.—Scaleni muscles. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Relations.—*In front*, with the clavicle, the Subclavius, Sterno-mastoid, and Omo-hyoid muscles, the Transversalis colli, the suprascapular and ascending cervical arteries, the subclavian vein, and the phrenic nerve; by its *posterior surface*, with the Scalenus medius, pleura, subclavian artery, and brachial plexus of nerves. It is separated from the Longus colli, on the inner side, by the vertebral artery. On the anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the cervical vertebræ, between the attachments of the Scalenus anticus and Longus colli, lies the ascending cervical branch of the inferior thyroid artery.

The **Scalenus Medius**, the largest and longest of the three Scaleni, *arises* from the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the lower six cervical vertebræ,

and, descending along the side of the vertebral column, is *inserted* by a broad attachment into the upper surface of the first rib, behind the groove for the subclavian artery, as far back as the tubercle. It is separated from the Scalenus anticus by the subclavian artery below and the cervical nerves above. The posterior thoracic, or nerve of Bell, is formed in the substance of the Scalenus medius and emerges from it. The nerve to the Rhomboids also pierces it.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the Sterno-mastoid; it is crossed by the clavicle, the Omo-hyoid muscle, subclavian artery, and cervical nerves. To its *outer side* is the Levator anguli scapulæ and the Scalenus posticus muscle.

The **Scalenus Posticus** (*m. scalenus posterior*), the smallest of the three Scaleni, *arises*, by two or three separate tendons, from the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the lower two or three cervical vertebræ, and, diminishing as it descends, is *inserted* by a thin tendon into the outer surface of the second rib, behind the attachment of the Serratus magnus. This is the most deeply placed of the three Scaleni, and is occasionally blended with the Scalenus medius.

Nerves.—The Rectus capitis anticus major and minor and the Rectus lateralis are supplied by the first cervical nerve, and from the loop formed between it and the second; the Longus colli and Scaleni, by branches from the anterior divisions of the lower cervical nerves (fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth) before they form the brachial plexus. The Scalenus medius also receives a filament from the deep external branches of the cervical plexus.

Actions.—The Rectus anticus major and minor are the direct antagonists of the muscles at the back of the neck, serving to restore the head to its natural position after it has been drawn backward. These muscles also serve to flex the head, and, from their obliquity, rotate it, so as to turn the face to one or the other side. The Longus colli flexes and slightly rotates the cervical portion of the spine. The Scaleni muscles, when they take their fixed point from above, elevate the first and second ribs, and are, therefore, inspiratory muscles. When they take their fixed point from below, they bend the spinal column to one or the other side. If the muscles of both sides act, lateral movement is prevented, but the spine is slightly flexed. The Rectus lateralis, acting on one side, bends the head laterally.

Surface Form.—The muscles in the neck, with the exception of the Platysma myoides, are invested by the deep cervical fascia, which softens down their form, and is of considerable importance in connection with deep cervical abscesses and tumors, modifying the direction of the growth of tumors and of the enlargement of abscesses, and causing them to extend laterally instead of toward the surface. The *Platysma myoides* does not influence surface form except when in action, when it produces wrinkling of the skin of the neck, which is thrown into oblique ridges parallel with the fasciculi of the muscle. Sometimes this contraction takes place suddenly and repeatedly as a sort of spasmodic twitching, the result of a nervous habit. The *Sterno-cleido-mastoid* is the most important muscle of the neck as regards its surface form. If the muscle is put into action by drawing the chin downward and to the opposite shoulder, its surface form will be plainly outlined. The sternal origin will stand out as a sharply-defined ridge, while the clavicular origin will present a flatter and not so prominent an outline. The fleshy middle portion will appear as an oblique roll or elevation, with a thick rounded anterior border gradually becoming less marked above. On the opposite side—*i. e.*, on the side to which the head is turned—the outline is lost, its place being occupied by an oblique groove in the integument. When the muscle is at rest its anterior border is still visible, forming an oblique rounded ridge, terminating below in the sharp outline of the sternal head. The posterior border of the muscle does not show above the clavicular head. The anterior border is defined by drawing a line from the tip of the mastoid process to the sterno-clavicular joint. It is an important surface-marking in the operation of ligature of the common carotid artery and in some other operations. Between the sternal and clavicular heads is a slight depression, most marked when the muscle is in action. This is bounded below by the prominent sternal extremity of the clavicle. Between the sternal origins of the two muscles is a V-shaped space, the *suprasternal notch*, more pronounced below, and becoming toned down above, where the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, lying upon the trachea, become more prominent. Above the hyoid bone, in the middle line, the anterior belly of the *Digastric* to a certain extent influences surface form. It corresponds to a line drawn from the symphysis of the lower jaw to

the side of the body of the hyoid bone, and renders this part of the hyo-mental region convex. In the posterior triangle of the neck, the posterior belly of the *Omo-hyoid*, when in action, forms a conspicuous object, especially in thin necks, presenting a cord-like form running across this region, almost parallel with, and a little above, the clavicle.

MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE TRUNK.

The muscles of the Trunk may be arranged in four groups, corresponding with the region in which they are situated.

I. The Back.
II. The Thorax.
III. The Abdomen.
IV. The Perinæum.

I. MUSCLES OF THE BACK.

The muscles of the Back are very numerous, and may be subdivided into five layers:

First Layer.

Trapezius.
Latissimus dorsi.

Second Layer.

Levator anguli scapulæ.
Rhomboideus minor.
Rhomboideus major.

Third Layer.

Serratus posticus superior.
Serratus posticus inferior.
Splenius capitis.
Splenius colli.

Fourth Layer.

Sacral and Lumbar Regions.

Erector spinæ.

Dorsal Region.

Ilio-costalis.
Musculus accessorius ad ilio-costalem.
Longissimus dorsi.
Spinalis dorsi.

Cervical Region.

Cervicalis ascendens.
Transversalis cervicis.
Trachelo-mastoid.
Complexus.
Biventer cervicis.
Spinalis colli.

Fifth Layer.

Semispinalis dorsi.
Semispinalis colli.
Multifidus spinæ.
Rotatores spinæ.
Supraspinales.
Interspinales.
Extensor coccygis.
Intertransversalis.
Rectus capitis posticus major.
Rectus capitis posticus minor.
Obliquus capitis inferior.
Obliquus capitis superior.

The First Layer (Fig. 282).

Trapezius. Latissimus dorsi.

Dissection (Fig. 281).—Place the body in a prone position, with the arms extended over the sides of the table, and the chest and abdomen supported by several blocks, so as to render the muscles tense. Then make an incision along the middle line of the back from the occipital protuberance to the coccyx. Make a transverse incision from the upper end of this to the mastoid process, and a third incision from its lower end, along the crest of the ilium to about its middle. This large intervening space should, for convenience of dissection, be subdivided by a fourth incision, extending obliquely from the spinous process of the last dorsal vertebra, upward and outward, to the acromion process. This incision corresponds with the lower border of the Trapezius muscle. The flaps of integument are then to be removed in the direction shown in the figure.

Superficial Fascia.—The superficial fascia is exposed upon removing the skin from the back. It forms a layer of considerable thickness and strength, in which a quantity of granular pinkish fat is contained. It is continuous with the superficial fascia in other parts of the body.

Deep Fascia.—The deep fascia is a dense fibrous layer attached to the occipital bone, the spines of the vertebræ, the crest of the ilium, and the spine of the scapula. It covers over the superficial muscles, forming sheaths for them, and in the neck forms the posterior part of the deep cervical fascia; in the thorax it is continuous with the deep fascia of the axilla and chest, and in the abdomen with that covering the abdominal muscles. In the back of the thoracic region the deep fascia is called the **vertebral aponeurosis** or the **aponeurosis of the latissimus dorsi muscle.** It covers the erector spinæ muscles, and is the posterior layer of the lumbar fascia.

FIG. 281.—Dissection of the muscles of the back.

The **Trapezius** is a broad, flat, triangular muscle, placed immediately beneath the skin and fascia, and covering the upper and back part of the neck and shoulders. It *arises* from the external occipital protuberance and the inner third of the superior curved line of the occipital bone; from the ligamentum nuchæ, the spinous process of the seventh cervical, and the spinous processes of all the dorsal vertebræ; and from the corresponding portion of the supraspinous ligament. From this origin the superior fibres proceed downward and outward, the inferior ones upward and outward, and the middle fibres horizontally, and are *inserted,* the superior ones into the outer third of the posterior border of the clavicle; the middle fibres into the inner margin of the acromion process, and into the superior lip of the posterior border or crest of the spine of the scapula; the inferior fibres converge near the scapula, and terminate in a triangular aponeurosis, which glides over a smooth surface at the inner extremity of the spine, to be inserted into a tubercle at the outer part of this smooth surface. The Trapezius is fleshy in the greater part of its extent, but tendinous at its origin and insertion. At its occipital origin it is connected to the bone by a thin fibrous lamina, firmly adherent to the skin, and wanting the lustrous, shining appearance of aponeuroses. At its origin from the spines of the vertebræ it is connected to the bones by means of a broad semi-elliptical aponeurosis, which occupies the space between the sixth cervical and the third dorsal vertebræ, and forms, with the aponeurosis of the opposite muscle, a tendinous ellipse. The rest of the muscle arises by numerous short tendinous fibres. If the Trapezius is dissected on both sides, the two muscles resemble a trapezium or diamond-shaped quadrangle; two angles corresponding to the shoulders; a third to the occipital protuberance; and the fourth to the spinous process of the last dorsal vertebra. The clavicular insertion of this muscle varies as to the extent of its attachment; it sometimes advances as far as the middle of the clavicle, and may even become blended with the posterior edge of the Sterno-mastoid or overlap it. This should be borne in mind in the operation for tying the third part of the subclavian artery.

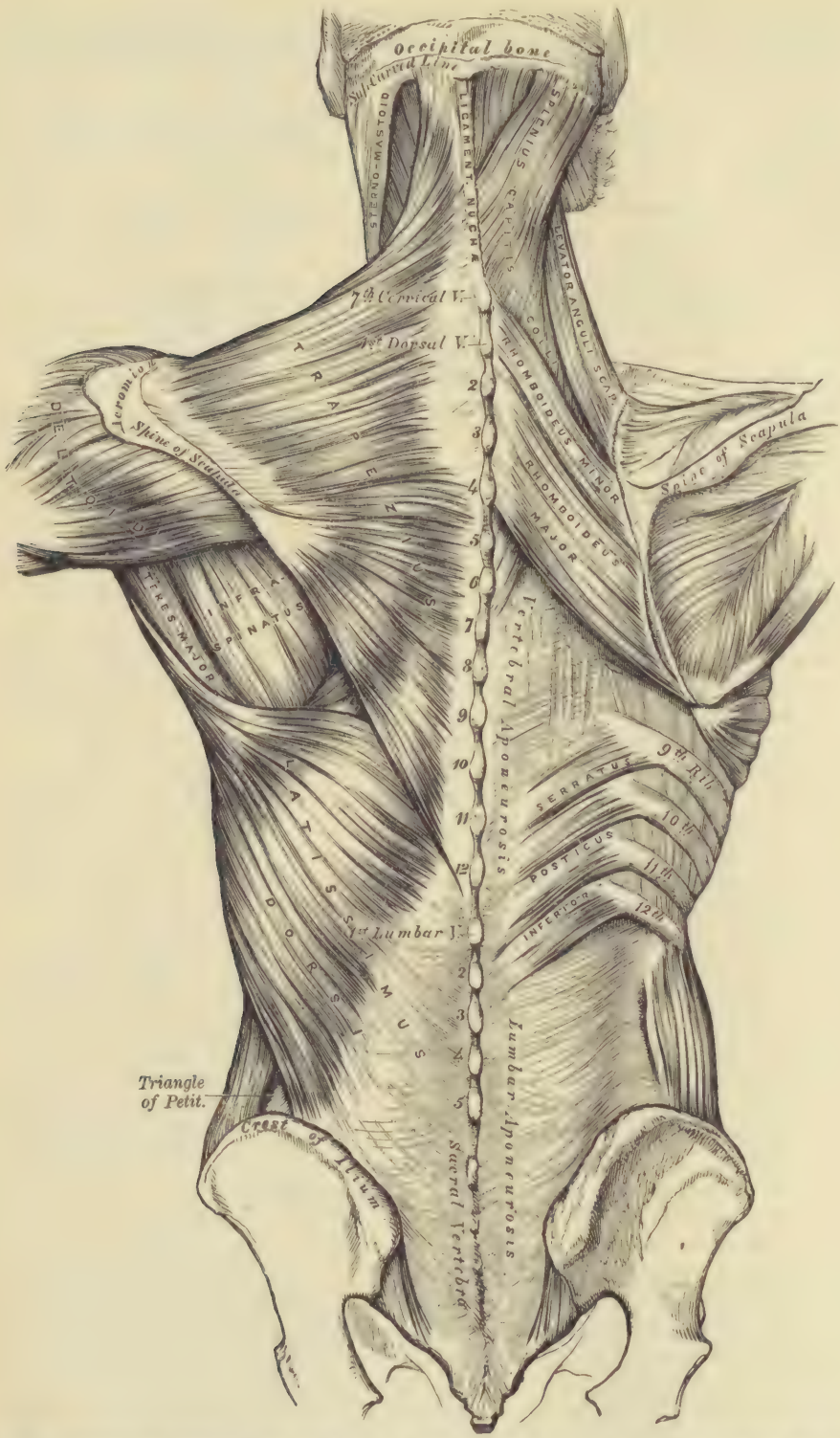


Fig. 282.—Muscles of the back. On the left side is exposed the first layer; on the right side, the second layer and part of the third.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument; by its *deep surface*, in the neck, with the Complexus, Splenius, Levator anguli scapulæ, and Rhomboideus minor; in the back, with the Rhomboideus major, Supraspinatus, Infraspinatus, and Vertebral aponeurosis (which separates it from the prolongations of the Erector spinæ), and the Latissimus dorsi. The spinal accessory nerve and the superficial cervical artery and branches from the third and fourth cervical nerves pass beneath the anterior border of this muscle. The anterior margin of its cervical portion forms the posterior boundary of the posterior triangle of the neck, the other boundaries being the Sterno-mastoid in front and the clavicle below.

The **Ligamentum nuchæ** (Fig. 282) is a fibrous membrane, which, in the neck, represents the supraspinous and interspinous ligaments of the lower vertebræ. It extends from the external occipital protuberance to the spinous process of the seventh cervical vertebra. From its anterior border a fibrous lamina (*fascia nuchæ*) is given off, which is attached to the external occipital crest, the posterior tubercle of the atlas, and the spinous process of each of the cervical vertebræ, so as to form a septum between the muscles on each side of the neck. In man it is merely the rudiment of an important elastic ligament, which, in some of the lower animals, serves to sustain the weight of the head.

The **Latissimus Dorsi** is a broad flat muscle, which covers the lumbar and the lower half of the dorsal regions, and is gradually contracted into a narrow fasciculus at its insertion into the humerus. It *arises* by tendinous fibres from the spinous processes of the six inferior dorsal vertebræ and from the posterior layer of the lumbar fascia (see page 416), by which it is attached to the spines of the lumbar and sacral vertebræ and to the supraspinous ligament. It also arises from the external lip of the crest of the ilium, behind the origin of the External oblique, and by fleshy digitations from the three or four lower ribs, which are interposed between similar processes of the External oblique muscle (Fig. 289, page 434). From this extensive origin the fibres pass in different directions, the upper ones horizontally, the middle obliquely upward, and the lower vertically upward, so as to converge and form a thick fasciculus, which crosses the inferior angle of the scapula, and occasionally receives a few fibres of origin from it. The muscle then curves around the lower border of the Teres major, and is twisted upon itself so that the superior fibres become at first posterior and then inferior, and the vertical fibres at first anterior and then superior. It then terminates in a short quadrilateral tendon, about three inches in length, which, passing in front of the tendon of the Teres major, is *inserted* into the bottom of the bicipital groove of the humerus, its insertion extending higher on the humerus than that of the tendon of the Pectoralis major. The lower border of the tendon of this muscle is united with that of the Teres major, the surfaces of the two being separated by a bursa; another bursa is sometimes interposed between the muscle and the inferior angle of the scapula. This muscle at its insertion gives off an expansion to the deep fascia of the arm.

A muscular slip, the **axillary arch,** varying from 3 to 4 inches in length, and from $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch in breadth, occasionally arises from the upper edge of the Latissimus dorsi about the middle of the posterior fold of the axilla, and crosses the axilla in front of the axillary vessels and nerves, to join the under surface of the tendon of the Pectoralis major, the Coraco-brachialis, or the fascia over the Biceps. The position of this abnormal slip is a point of interest in its relation to the axillary artery, as it crosses the vessel just above the spot usually selected for the application of a ligature, and may mislead the surgeon during the operation. It may be easily recognized by the transverse direction of its fibres. Dr. Struther found it, in 8 out of 105 subjects, occurring seven times on both sides. In most subjects there is a fibrous axillary arch, in only a few is the arch muscular.

There is usually a fibrous slip which passes from the lower border of the tendon of the Latissimus dorsi, near its insertion, to the long head of the Triceps. This is occasionally muscular, and is the representative of the Dorso-epitrochlearis muscle of apes.

Relations.—Its *superficial surface* is subcutaneous, excepting at its upper part, where it is covered by the Trapezius, and at its insertion, where its tendon is crossed by the axillary vessels and the brachial plexus of nerves. By its *deep surface* it is in relation with the lumbar fascia, the Serratus posticus inferior, the lower External intercostal muscles and ribs, inferior angle of the scapula, Rhomboideus major, Infraspinatus, and Teres major. Its outer margin is separated below from the External oblique by a small triangular interval, the **triangle of Petit** (*trigonum lumbale* [*Petiti*]); and another triangular interval exists between its upper border and the margin of the Trapezius, in which the Rhomboideus major muscle is exposed.

Nerves.—The Trapezius is supplied by the spinal accessory, and by branches from the anterior divisions of the third and fourth cervical nerves: the Latissimus dorsi, by the middle or long subscapular nerve.

The Second Layer (Fig. 282).

Levator anguli scapulæ. Rhomboideus minor.
Rhomboideus major.

Dissection.—The Trapezius must be removed, in order to expose the next layer; to effect this, detach the muscle from its attachment to the clavicle and spine of the scapula, and turn it back toward the spine.

The **Levator Anguli Scapulæ** (*m. levator scapulæ*) is situated at the back part and side of the neck. It *arises* by tendinous slips from the transverse process of the atlas, and from the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the second, third, and fourth cervical vertebræ; these, becoming fleshy, are united so as to form a flat muscle, which, passing downward and backward, is *inserted* into the posterior border of the scapula, between the superior angle and the triangular smooth surface at the root of the spine.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument, Trapezius, and Sterno-mastoid; by its *deep surface*, with the Splenius colli, Transversalis cervicis, Cervicalis ascendens, and Serratus posticus superior muscles, and with the posterior scapular artery and the nerve to the Rhomboids.

The **Rhomboideus Minor** *arises* from the ligamentum nuchæ and spinous processes of the seventh cervical and first dorsal vertebræ. Passing downward and outward, it is *inserted* into the margin of the triangular smooth surface at the root of the spine of the scapula. This small muscle is usually separated from the Rhomboideus major by a slight cellular interval.

Relations.—By its *superficial* (*posterior*) *surface*, with the Trapezius; by its *deep* (*anterior*) *surface*, with the same structures as the Rhomboideus major.

The **Rhomboideus Major** is situated immediately below the preceding, the adjacent margins of the two being occasionally united. It *arises* by tendinous fibres from the spinous processes of the four or five upper dorsal vertebræ and the supraspinous ligament, and is inserted into a narrow tendinous arch attached above to the lower part of the triangular surface at the root of the spine; below, to the inferior angle, the arch being connected to the border of the scapula by a thin membrane. When the arch extends, as it occasionally does, but a short distance, the muscular fibres are *inserted* into the scapula itself.

Relations.—By its *superficial* (*posterior*) *surface*, with the Latissimus dorsi; by its *deep* (*anterior*) *surface*, with the Serratus posticus superior, posterior scapular artery, the vertebral aponeurosis which separates it from the prolongations from the Erector spinæ, the Intercostal muscles, and ribs.

Nerves.—The Rhomboid muscles are supplied by branches from the anterior division of the fifth cervical nerve; the Levator anguli scapulæ, by the anterior

divisions of the third and fourth cervical nerves, and frequently by a branch from the nerve to the Rhomboids.

Actions.—The movements effected by the preceding muscles are numerous, as may be conceived from their extensive attachment. The whole of the Trapezius when in action retracts the scapula and braces back the shoulder; if the head is fixed, the upper part of the Trapezius will elevate the point of the shoulder, as in supporting weights; when the lower fibres are brought into action, they assist in depressing the bone. The middle and lower fibres of the muscle rotate the scapula, causing elevation of the acromion process. If the shoulders are fixed, both Trapezii, acting together, will draw the head directly backward; or if only one acts the head is drawn to the corresponding side. The Latissimus dorsi, when it acts upon the humerus, depresses it, draws it backward, adducts, and at the same time rotates it inward. It is the muscle which is principally employed in giving a downward blow, as in felling a tree or in sabre practice. If the arm is fixed, the muscle may act in various ways upon the trunk; thus, it may raise the lower ribs and assist in forcible inspiration; or, if both arms are fixed, the two muscles may assist the Abdominal and great Pectoral muscles in suspending and drawing the whole trunk forward, as in climbing or walking on crutches. The Levator anguli scapulæ raises the superior angle of the scapula, and by so doing depresses the point of the shoulder. It assists the Trapezius in bearing weights and in shrugging the shoulders. If the shoulder be fixed, the Levator anguli scapulæ inclines the neck to the corresponding side and rotates it in the same direction. The Rhomboid muscles carry the inferior angle backward and upward, thus producing a slight rotation of the scapula upon the side of the chest, the Rhomboideus major acting especially on the lower angle of the scapula through the tendinous arch by which it is inserted. The Rhomboid muscles, acting together with the middle and inferior fibres of the Trapezius, will draw the scapula directly backward toward the spine.

The Third Layer.

Serratus posticus superior. Serratus posticus inferior.

Splenius { Splenius capitis. / Splenius colli.

Dissection.—To bring into view the third layer of muscles, remove the whole of the second, together with the Latissimus dorsi, by cutting through the Levator anguli scapulæ and Rhomboid muscles near their origin, and reflecting them downward, and by dividing the Latissimus dorsi in the middle by a vertical incision carried from its upper to its lower part, and reflecting the two halves of the muscle.

The **Serratus Posticus Superior** (*m. serratus posterior superior*) is a thin, flat, quadrilateral muscle situated at the upper and back part of the thorax. It *arises* by a thin and broad aponeurosis from the ligamentum nuchæ, and from the spinous processes of the last cervical and two or three upper dorsal vertebræ and from the supraspinous ligament. Inclining downward and outward, it becomes muscular, and is *inserted*, by four fleshy digitations into the upper borders of the second, third, fourth, and fifth ribs, a little beyond their angles.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Trapezius, Rhomboidei, and Levator anguli scapulæ; by its *deep surface*, with the Splenius and the vertebral aponeurosis, which separates it from the prolongations of the Erector spinæ, and with the Intercostal muscles and ribs.

The **Serratus Posticus Inferior** (*m. serratus posterior inferior*) (Fig. 282) is situated at the junction of the dorsal and lumbar regions; it is of an irregularly quadrilateral form, broader than the preceding, and separated from it by a considerable interval. It *arises* by a thin aponeurosis from the spinous processes of the last two dorsal and two or three upper lumbar vertebræ, and from the supra-

spinous ligaments. Passing obliquely upward and outward, it becomes fleshy, and divides into four flat digitations, which are *inserted* into the lower borders of the four lower ribs, a little beyond their angles. The thin aponeurosis of origin is intimately blended with the lumbar fascia.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Latissimus dorsi. By its *deep surface*, with the Erector spinæ, ribs, and Intercostal muscles. Its upper margin is continuous with the vertebral aponeurosis.

The **vertebral aponeurosis** is a thin, fibrous lamina, extending along the whole length of the back part of the thoracic region, serving to bind down the long Extensor muscles of the back which support the spine and head, and separate them from those muscles which connect the spine to the upper extremity. It consists of longitudinal and transverse fibres blended together, forming a thin lamella, which is attached in the median line to the spinous processes of the dorsal vertebræ; externally, to the angles of the ribs; and below, to the upper border of the Serratus posticus inferior and a portion of the lumbar fascia, which gives origin to the Latissimus dorsi; above, it passes beneath the Serratus posticus superior and the Splenius, and blends with the deep fascia of the neck.

The **lumbar fascia** or **aponeurosis** (Figs. 282 and 295), which may be regarded as the posterior aponeurosis of the Transversalis abdominis muscle, consists of three laminæ, which are attached as follows: the **posterior layer**, to the spines of the lumbar and sacral vertebræ and their supraspinous ligaments; the **middle layer**, to the tips of the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebræ and their intertransverse ligaments; the **anterior layer**, to the roots of the lumbar transverse processes. The posterior layer is continued above as the vertebral aponeurosis, while inferiorly it is fixed to the outer lip of the iliac crest. With this layer are blended the aponeurotic origin of the Serratus posticus inferior and part of that of the Latissimus dorsi. The middle layer is attached above to the last rib, and below to the iliac crest; the anterior layer is fixed below to the ilio-lumbar ligament and iliac crest; while above it is thickened to form the external arcuate ligament of the Diaphragm, and stretches from the tip of the last rib to the transverse process of the first or second lumbar vertebra. These three layers, together with the vertebral column, enclose two spaces, the posterior of which is occupied by the Erector spinæ muscle, and the anterior by the Quadratus lumborum.

Now detach the Serratus posticus superior from its origin, and turn it outward, when the Splenius muscle will be brought into view.

The **Splenius** (Fig. 282) is situated at the back of the neck and upper part of the dorsal region. At its origin it is a single muscle, which soon after its origin becomes broad, and divides into two portions, which have separate insertions. It *arises*, by tendinous fibres, from the lower half of the ligamentum nuchæ, from the spinous processes of the last cervical and of the six upper dorsal vertebræ, and from the supraspinous ligament. From this origin the fleshy fibres proceed obliquely upward and outward, forming a broad flat muscle, which divides as it ascends into two portions, the **Splenius capitis** and **Splenius colli**.

The **Splenius capitis** (*m. splenius capitis*) is *inserted* into the mastoid process of the temporal bone, and into the rough surface on the occipital bone just beneath the superior curved line.

The **Splenius colli** (*m. splenius cervicis*) is *inserted*, by tendinous fasciculi, into the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the two or three upper cervical vertebræ.

The Splenius is separated from its fellow of the opposite side by a triangular interval, in which is seen the Complexus.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Trapezius, from which it is separated below by the Rhomboidei and the Serratus posticus superior. It is covered

at its insertion by the Sterno-mastoid, and at the lower and back part of the neck by the Levator anguli scapulæ; by its *deep surface*, with the Spinalis dorsi, Longissimus dorsi, Semispinalis colli, Complexus, Trachelo-mastoid, and Transversalis cervicis.

Nerves.—The Splenius is supplied from the external branches of the posterior divisions of the cervical nerves; the Serratus posticus superior is supplied by the external branches of the posterior divisions of the upper dorsal nerves; the Serratus posticus inferior by the external branches of the posterior divisions of the lower dorsal nerves.

Actions.—The Serrati are respiratory muscles. The Serratus posticus superior elevates the ribs; it is therefore an inspiratory muscle; while the Serratus inferior draws the lower ribs downward and backward, and thus elongates the thorax. It also fixes the lower ribs, thus aiding the downward action of the diaphragm and resisting the tendency which it has to draw the lower ribs upward and forward. It must therefore be regarded as a muscle of inspiration. This muscle is also probably a tensor of the vertebral aponeurosis. The Splenii muscles of the two sides, acting together, draw the head directly backward, assisting the Trapezius and Complexus; acting separately, they draw the head to one or the other side, and slightly rotate it, turning the face to the same side. They also assist in supporting the head in the erect position.

The Fourth Layer (Fig. 283).

I. Erector spinæ.

a. Outer Column.	*b. Middle Column.*
Ilio-costalis.	Longissimus dorsi.
Musculus accessorius.	Transversalis cervicis.
Cervicalis ascendens.	Trachelo-mastoid.

c. Inner Column.

Spinalis dorsi. Spinalis colli.

II. Complexus.

Dissection.—To expose the muscles of the fourth layer, remove entirely the Serrati and the vertebral and lumbar fasciæ. Then detach the Splenius by separating its attachment to the spinous processes and reflecting it outward.

The **Erector Spinæ** (*m. sacrospinalis*) and its prolongations in the dorsal and cervical regions fill up the vertebral groove on each side of the spine. It is covered in the lumbar region by the lumbar fascia; in the dorsal region, by the Serrati muscles and the vertebral aponeurosis; and in the cervical region, by a layer of cervical fascia continued beneath the Trapezius and the Splenius. This large muscular and tendinous mass varies in size and structure at different parts of the spine. In the sacral region the Erector spinæ is narrow and pointed, and its origin chiefly tendinous in structure. In the lumbar region the muscle becomes enlarged, and forms a large fleshy mass. In the dorsal region it subdivides into two parts, which gradually diminish in size as they ascend to be inserted into the vertebræ and ribs.

The Erector spinæ *arises* from the anterior surface of a very broad and thick tendon, which is attached, internally, to the spines of the sacrum, to the spinous processes of the lumbar and the eleventh and twelfth dorsal vertebræ, and the supraspinous ligament; externally, to the back part of the inner lip of the crest of the ilium, and to the series of eminences on the posterior part of the sacrum, which represents the transverse processes, where it blends with the great sacro-sciatic and posterior sacro-iliac ligaments. Some of its fibres are continuous with the fibres

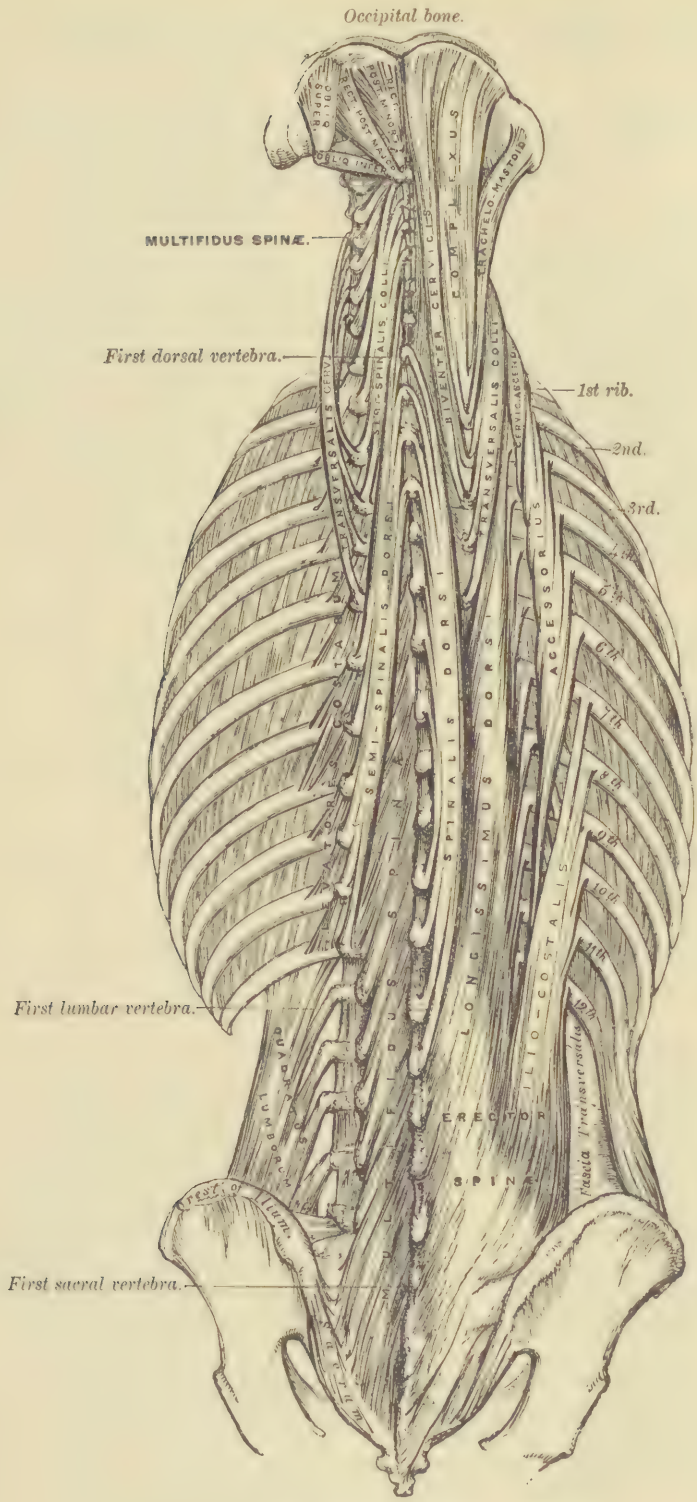


FIG. 283.—Muscles of the back. Deep layers.

of origin of the Gluteus maximus. The muscular fibres form a single large fleshy mass, bounded in front by the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebræ and by the middle lamella of the lumbar fascia. Opposite the last rib it divides into two parts, the **Ilio-costalis** and the **Longissimus dorsi**; the Spinalis dorsi is given off from the latter in the upper dorsal region.

The **Ilio-costalis** or **Sacro-lumbalis** (*m. iliocostalis lumborum*), the external portion of the Erector spinæ, is *inserted*, generally, by six or seven flattened tendons into the inferior borders of the angles of the six or seven lower ribs. The number of the tendons of this muscle is, however, very variable, and therefore the number of ribs into which it is inserted vary. Frequently it is found to possess nine or ten tendons, and sometimes as many tendons as there are ribs, and is then inserted into the angles of all the ribs. If this muscle is reflected outward, it will be seen to be reinforced by a series of muscular slips which arise from the angles of the ribs; by means of these the Ilio-costalis is continued upward to the upper ribs and cervical portion of the spine. The accessory portions form two additional muscles, the **Musculus accessorius** and the **Cervicalis ascendens.**

The **Musculus accessorius ad ilio-costalem** (*m. iliocostalis dorsi*) *arises*, by separate flattened tendons, from the upper borders of the angles of the six lower ribs: these become muscular, and are finally *inserted*, by separate tendons, into the upper borders of the angles of the six upper ribs and into the back of the transverse processes of the seventh cervical vertebra.

The **Cervicalis ascendens**[1] (*m. iliocostalis cervicis*) is the continuation of the Accessorius upward into the neck; it is situated on the inner side of the tendons of the Accessorius, *arising* from the angles of the four or five upper ribs, and is *inserted* by a series of slender tendons into the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebræ.

The **Longissimus dorsi** is the middle and largest portion of the Erector spinæ. In the lumbar region, where it is as yet blended with the Ilio-costalis, some of the fibres are attached to the whole length of the posterior surface of the transverse processes and the accessory processes of the lumbar vertebræ, and to the middle layer of the lumbar fascia. In the dorsal region, the Longissimus dorsi is *inserted*, by long thin tendons, into the tips of the transverse processes of all the dorsal vertebræ, and into from seven to eleven of the lower ribs between their tubercles and angles. This muscle is continued upward to the cranium and cervical portion of the spine by means of two additional muscles, the **Transversalis cervicis** and **Trachelo-mastoid.**

The **Transversalis cervicis** or **Transversalis colli** (*m. longissimus cervicis*), placed on the inner side of the Longissimus dorsi, *arises* by long thin tendons from the summits of the transverse processes of the six upper dorsal vertebræ, and is inserted by similar tendons into the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the cervical vertebræ, from the second to the sixth inclusive.

The **Trachelo-mastoid** (*m. longissimus capitis*) lies on the inner side of the preceding, between it and the Complexus muscle. It *arises*, by tendons, from the transverse processes of the five or six upper dorsal vertebræ, and the articular processes of the three or four lower cervical. The fibres form a small muscle, which ascends to be *inserted* into the posterior margin of the mastoid process, beneath the Splenius and Sterno-mastoid muscles. This small muscle is almost always crossed by a tendinous intersection near its insertion into the mastoid process.[2]

The **Spinalis dorsi** connects the spinous processes of the upper lumbar and the dorsal vertebræ together by a series of muscular and tendinous slips which are

[1] This muscle is sometimes called "Cervicalis descendens." The student should remember that these long muscles take their fixed point from above or from below, according to circumstances.

[2] These two muscles (Transversalis cervicis and Trachelo-mastoid) are sometimes described as one, having a common origin, but dividing above at their insertion. The Trachelo-mastoid is then termed the *Transversalis capitis*.

intimately blended with the Longissimus dorsi. It is situated at the inner side of the Longissimus dorsi, *arising*, by three or four tendons, from the spinous processes of the first two lumbar and the last two dorsal vertebræ: these, uniting, form a small muscle, which is *inserted*, by separate tendons, into spinous processes of the dorsal vertebræ, the number varying from four to eight. It is intimately united with the Semispinalis dorsi, which lies beneath it.

The **Spinalis colli** (*m. spinalis cervicis*) is a small muscle, connecting together the spinous processes of the cervical vertebræ, and analogous to the Spinalis dorsi in the dorsal region. It varies considerably in its size and in its extent of attachment to the vertebræ, not only in different bodies, but on the two sides of the same body. It usually *arises* by fleshy or tendinous slips, varying from two to four in number, from the spinous processes of the fifth, sixth, and seventh cervical vertebræ, and occasionally from the first and second dorsal, and is *inserted* into the spinous process of the axis, and occasionally into the spinous processes of the two vertebræ below it. This muscle was found absent in five cases out of twenty-four.

Relations.—The Erector spinæ and its prolongations are bound down to the vertebræ and ribs in the lumbar and dorsal regions by the lumbar fascia and the vertebral aponeurosis. The inner part of these muscles covers the muscles of the fifth layer. In the neck they are in relation, by their *superficial surface*, with the Trapezius and Splenius; by their *deep surface*, with the Semispinalis dorsi et colli and the Recti and Obliqui.

The **Complexus** (*m. semispinalis capitis*) is a broad thick muscle, situated at the upper and back part of the neck, beneath the Splenius, and internal to the Transversalis cervicis and Trachelo-mastoid. It *arises*, by a series of tendons, from the tips of the transverse processes of the upper six or seven dorsal and the last cervical vertebræ, and from the articular processes of the three cervical above this. The tendons, uniting, form a broad muscle, which passes obliquely upward and inward, and is *inserted* into the innermost depression between the two curved lines of the occipital bone. This muscle, about its middle, is traversed by a transverse tendinous intersection. The **biventer cervicis** is a small fasciculus, situated on the inner side of the preceding, and in the majority of cases blended with it; it has received its name from having a tendon intervening between two fleshy bellies. It is sometimes described as a part of the Complexus. It *arises* by from two to four tendinous slips, from the transverse processes of as many of the upper dorsal vertebræ, and is *inserted*, on the inner side of the Complexus, into the superior curved line of the occipital bone.

Relations.—The Complexus is covered by the Splenius and the Trapezius. It lies on the Rectus capitis posticus major and minor, the Obliquus capitis superior and inferior, and on the Semispinalis colli, from which it is separated by the profunda cervicis artery, the princeps cervicis artery, and branches of the posterior primary divisions of the cervical nerves. The Biventer cervicis is separated from its fellow of the opposite side by the ligamentum nuchæ.

The Fifth Layer (Fig. 283).

Semispinalis dorsi.	Extensor coccygis.
Semispinalis colli.	Intertransversales.
Multifidus spinæ.	Rectus capitis posticus major.
Rotatores spinæ.	Rectus capitis posticus minor.
Supraspinales.	Obliquus capitis inferior.
Interspinales.	Obliquus capitis superior.

Dissection.—Remove the muscles of the preceding layer by dividing and turning aside the Complexus; then detach the Spinalis and Longissimus dorsi from their attachments, divide the Erector spinæ at its connection below to the sacral and lumbar spines and turn it outward. The muscles filling up the interval between the spinous and transverse processes are then exposed.

The **Semispinalis Dorsi** consists of thin, narrow, fleshy fasciculi interposed between tendons of considerable length. It *arises* by a series of small tendons from the transverse processes of the lower dorsal vertebræ, from the tenth or eleventh to the fifth or sixth; and is *inserted*, by five or six tendons, into the spinous processes of the upper four dorsal and lower two cervical vertebræ.

The **Semispinalis Colli** (*m. semispinalis cervicis*), thicker than the preceding, *arises* by a series of tendinous and fleshy fibres from the transverse processes of the upper five or six dorsal vertebræ, and is *inserted* into the spinous processes of four cervical vertebræ, from the axis to the fifth cervical. The fasciculus connected with the axis is the largest, and chiefly muscular in structure.

Relations.—By their *superficial surface*, from below upward, with the Spinalis dorsi, Longissimus dorsi, Splenius, Complexus, the profunda cervicis artery, the princeps cervicis artery, and the internal branches of the posterior divisions of the first, second, and third cervical nerves; by their *deep surface*, with the Multifidus spinæ.

The **Multifidus Spinæ** (*m. multifidus*) consists of a number of fleshy and tendinous fasciculi which fill up the groove on either side of the spinous processes of the vertebræ, from the sacrum to the axis. In the sacral region these fasciculi *arise* from the back of the sacrum, as low as the fourth sacral foramen, and from the aponeurosis of origin of the Erector spinæ; from the inner surface of the posterior superior spine of the ilium and posterior sacro-iliac ligaments; in the lumbar regions, from the articular processes; in the dorsal region, from the transverse processes; and in the cervical region, from the articular processes of the three or four lower vertebræ. Each fasciculus, passing obliquely upward and inward, is *inserted* into the whole length of the spinous process of one of the vertebræ above. These fasciculi vary in length: the most superficial, the longest, pass from one vertebra to the third or fourth above; those next in order pass from one vertebra to the second or third above; whilst the deepest connect two contiguous vertebræ.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Longissimus dorsi, Spinalis dorsi, Semispinalis dorsi, and Semispinalis colli; by its *deep surface*, with the laminæ and spinous processes of the vertebræ, and with the Rotatores spinæ in the dorsal region.

The **Rotatores Spinæ** (*mm. rotatores*) are found only in the dorsal region of the spine, beneath the Multifidus spinæ; they are eleven in number on each side. Each muscle is small and somewhat quadrilateral in form; it *arises* from the upper and back part of the transverse process, and is *inserted* into the lower border and outer surface of the lamina of the vertebra above, the fibres extending as far inward as the root of the spinous process. The first is found between the first and second dorsal; the last, between the eleventh and twelfth. Sometimes the number of these muscles is diminished by the absence of one or more from the upper or lower end.

The **Supraspinales** consist of a series of fleshy bands which lie on the spinous processes in the cervical region of the spine.

The **Interspinales** are short muscular fasciculi, placed in pairs between the spinous processes of the contiguous vertebræ, one on each side of the interspinous ligament. In the **cervical region** they are most distinct, and consist of six pairs, the first being situated between the axis and third vertebra, and the last between the last cervical and the first dorsal. They are small narrow bundles, attached, above and below, to the apices of the spinous processes. In the **dorsal region** they are found between the first and second vertebræ, and occasionally between the second and third; and below, between the eleventh and twelfth. In the **lumbar region** there are four pairs of these muscles in the intervals between the five lumbar vertebræ. There is also occasionally one in the interspinous space, between the last dorsal and first lumbar, and between the fifth lumbar and the sacrum.

The **Extensor Coccygis** is a slender muscular fasciculus, occasionally present, which extends over the lower part of the posterior surface of the sacrum and coccyx. It *arises* by tendinous fibres from the last bone of the sacrum or first piece of the coccyx, and passes downward to be *inserted* into the lower part of the coccyx. It is a rudiment of the Extensor muscle of the caudal vertebræ of the lower animals.

The **Intertransversales** (*mm. intertransversarii*) are small muscles placed between the transverse processes of the vertebræ. In the **cervical region** they are most developed, consisting of rounded muscular and tendinous fasciculi, which are placed in pairs, passing between the anterior and the posterior tubercles of the transverse processes of two contiguous vertebræ, separated from one another by the anterior division of the cervical nerve, which lies in the groove between them. In this region there are seven pairs of these muscles, the first pair being between the atlas and axis, and the last pair between the seventh cervical and first dorsal vertebræ. In the **dorsal region** they are least developed, consisting chiefly of rounded tendinous cords in the intertransverse spaces of the upper dorsal vertebræ; but between the transverse processes of the lower three dorsal vertebræ, and between the transverse processes of the last dorsal and the first lumbar, they are muscular in structure. In the **lumbar region** they are arranged in pairs, on either side of the spine, one set occupying the entire interspace between the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebræ, the **intertransversales laterales** (*mm. intertransversarii laterales*); the other set, **intertransversales mediales** (*mm. intertransversarii mediales*), passing from the accessory process of one vertebra to the mammillary process of the next.

The **Rectus Capitis Posticus Major** (*m. rectus capitis posterior major*) *arises* by a pointed tendinous origin from the spinous process of the axis, and, becoming broader as it ascends, is *inserted* into the inferior curved line of the occipital bone and the surface of bone immediately below it. As the muscles of the two sides pass upward and outward, they leave between them a triangular space, in which are seen the Recti capitis postici minores muscles.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Complexus, and, at its insertion, with the Superior oblique; by its *deep surface*, with part of the Rectus capitis posticus minor, the posterior arch of the atlas, the posterior occipito-atlantal ligament, and part of the occipital bone.

The **Rectus Capitis Posticus Minor** (*m. rectus capitis posterior minor*), the smallest of the four muscles in this region, is of a triangular shape; it *arises* by a narrow pointed tendon from the tubercle on the posterior arch of the atlas, and, becoming broader as it ascends, is *inserted* into the rough surface beneath the inferior curved line, nearly as far as the foramen magnum, nearer to the middle line than the preceding.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Complexus and the Rectus capitis posticus major; by its *deep surface*, with the posterior occipito-atlantal ligament.

The **Obliquus Capitis Inferior**, the larger of the two Oblique muscles, *arises* from the apex of the spinous process of the axis, and passes outward and slightly upward, to be *inserted* into the lower and back part of the transverse process of the atlas.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Complexus and with the posterior division of the second cervical nerve, which crosses it; by its *deep surface*, with the vertebral artery and posterior atlanto-axial ligament.

The **Obliquus Capitis Superior**, narrow below, wide and expanded above, *arises* by tendinous fibres from the upper surface of the transverse process of the atlas, joining with the insertion of the preceding, and, passing obliquely upward and inward, is *inserted* into the occipital bone, between the two curved lines, external to the Complexus.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Complexus and Trachelo-mastoid and occipital artery. By its *deep surface*, with the posterior occipito-atlantal ligament.

Between the two oblique muscles and the Rectus capitis posticus major a triangular interval exists, the **suboccipital triangle**. This triangle is bounded, above and internally, by the Rectus capitis posticus major; above and externally, by the Obliquus capitis superior; below and externally, by the Obliquus capitis inferior. It is covered in by a layer of dense fibro-fatty tissue, situated beneath the Complexus muscle. The floor is formed by the posterior occipito-atlantal ligament and the posterior arch of the atlas. It contains the vertebral artery, as it runs in a deep groove on the upper surface of the posterior arch of the atlas, and the posterior division of the suboccipital nerve.

Nerves.—The third, fourth, and fifth layers of the muscles of the back are supplied by the posterior primary divisions of the spinal nerves.

Actions.—When both the Spinales dorsi contract, they extend the dorsal region of the spine; when only one muscle contracts, it helps to bend the dorsal portion of the spine to one side. The Erector spinæ, comprising the Ilio-costalis and the Longissimus dorsi with their accessory muscles, serves, as its name implies, to maintain the spine in the erect posture; it also serves to bend the trunk backward when it is required to counterbalance the influence of any weight at the front of the body, as, for instance, when a heavy weight is suspended from the neck, or when there is any great abdominal distention, as in pregnancy or dropsy; the peculiar gait under such circumstances depends upon the spine being drawn backward by the counterbalancing action of the Erector spinæ muscles. The muscles which form the continuation of the Erector spinæ upward steady the head and neck, and fix them in the upright position. If the Ilio-costalis and Longissimus dorsi of one side act, they serve to draw down the chest and spine to the corresponding side. The Cervicales ascendens, taking their fixed points from the cervical vertebræ, elevate those ribs to which they are attached; taking their fixed points from the ribs, both muscles help to extend the neck; while one muscle bends the neck to its own side. The Transversalis cervicis, when both muscles act, taking their fixed point from below, bend the neck backward. The Trachelo-mastoid, when both muscles act, taking their fixed point from below, bend the head backward; while, if only one muscle acts, the face is turned to the side on which the muscle is acting, and then the head is bent to the shoulder. The two Recti muscles draw the head backward. The Rectus capitis posticus major, owing to its obliquity, rotates the cranium, with the atlas, round the odontoid process, turning the face to the same side. The Multifidus spinæ acts successively upon the different parts of the spine; thus, the sacrum furnishes a fixed point from which the fasciculi of this muscle act upon the lumbar region; these then become the fixed points for the fasciculi moving the dorsal region, and so on throughout the entire length of the spine; it is by the successive contraction and relaxation of the separate fasciculi of this and other muscles that the spine preserves the erect posture without the fatigue that would necessarily have been produced had this position been maintained by the action of a single muscle. The Multifidus spinæ, besides preserving the erect position of the spine, serves to rotate it, so that the front of the trunk is turned to the side opposite to that from which the muscle acts, this muscle being assisted in its action by the Obliquus externus abdominis. The Complexi draw the head directly backward: if one muscle acts, it draws the head to one side, and rotates it so that the face is turned to the opposite side. The Superior oblique draws the head backward, and, from the obliquity in the direction of its fibres, will slightly rotate the cranium, turning the face to the opposite side. The Obliquus capitis inferior rotates the atlas, and with it the cranium, round the odontoid process, turning the face to the same side. The Semispinales, when the muscles of the two sides act together, help to extend the

spine; when the muscles of one side only act, they rotate the dorsal and cervical parts of the spine, turning the body to the opposite side. The Supraspinales and Interspinales by approximating the spinous processes help to extend the spine. The Intertransversales approximate the transverse processes, and help to bend the spine to one side. The Rotatores spinæ assist the Multifidus spinæ to rotate the spine, so that the front of the trunk is turned to the side opposite to that from which the muscle acts.

Surface Forms.—The surface forms produced by the muscles of the back are numerous and difficult to analyze unless they are considered in systematic order. The most superficial layer, consisting of large strata of muscular substance, influences to a certain extent the surface form, and at the same time reveals the forms of the layers beneath. The *Trapezius* at the upper part of the back, and in the neck, covers over and softens down the outline of the underlying muscles. Its anterior border forms the posterior boundary of the posterior triangle of the neck. It forms a slight undulating ridge which passes downward and forward from the occiput to the junction of the middle and outer third of the clavicle. The tendinous ellipse formed by a part of the origin of the two muscles at the back of the neck is always to be seen as an oval depression, more marked when the muscle is in action. A slight dimple on the skin opposite the interval between the spinous processes of the third and fourth dorsal vertebræ marks the triangular aponeurosis by which the inferior fibres are inserted into the root of the spine of the scapula. From this point the inferior border of the muscle may be traced as an undulating ridge to the spinous process of the twelfth dorsal vertebra. In like manner the *Latissimus dorsi* softens down and modulates the underlying structures at the lower part of the back and lower part of the side of the chest. In this way it modulates the outline of the Erector spinæ; of the Serratus posticus inferior, which is sometimes to be discerned through it, and is sometimes entirely obscured by it; of part of the Serratus magnus and Superior oblique, which it covers; and of the convex oblique ridges formed by the ribs with the intervening intercostal spaces. The anterior border of the muscle is the only part which gives a distinct surface form. This border may be traced, when the muscle is in action, as a rounded edge, starting from the crest of the ilium, and passing obliquely forward and upward to the posterior border of the axilla, where it combines with the Teres major in forming a thick rounded fold, the posterior boundary of the axillary space. The muscles in the second layer influence to a very considerable extent the surface form of the back of the neck and upper part of the trunk. The *Levator anguli scapulæ* reveals itself as a prominent divergent line, running downward and outward, from the transverse processes of the upper cervical vertebræ to the angle of the scapula, covered over and toned down by the overlying Trapezius. The *Rhomboidei* produce, when in action, a vertical eminence between the vertebral border of the scapula and the spinal furrow, varying in intensity according to the condition of contraction or relaxation of the Trapezius muscle, by which they are for the most part covered. The lowermost part of the Rhomboideus major is uncovered by the Trapezius, and forms on the surface an oblique ridge running upward and inward from the inferior angle of the scapula. Of the muscles of the third layer of the back, the *Serratus posticus superior* does not in any way influence surface form. The *Serratus posticus inferior*, when in strong action, may occasionally be revealed as an elevation beneath the Latissimus dorsi. The *Splenii* by their divergence serve to broaden out the upper part of the back of the neck and produce a local fulness in this situation, but do not otherwise influence surface form. Beneath all these muscles those of the fourth layer—the *Erector spinæ* and its continuations—influence the surface form in a decided manner. In the loins, the Erector spinæ, bound down by the lumbar fascia, forms a rounded vertical eminence, which determines the depth of the spinal furrow, and which below tapers to a point on the posterior surface of the sacrum and becomes lost there. In the back it forms a flattened plane which gradually becomes lost. In the neck the only part of this group of muscles which influences surface form is the *Trachelo-mastoid*, which produces a short convergent line across the upper part of the posterior triangle of the neck, appearing from under cover of the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid and being lost below beneath the Trapezius.

II. MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE THORAX.

The muscles belonging exclusively to this region are few in number. They are the

Intercostales externi.	Triangularis sterni.
Intercostales interni.	Levatores costarum.
Infracostales.	Diaphragm.

Intercostal Fascia.—A thin but firm layer of fascia covers the outer surface of the External intercostal and the inner surface of the Internal intercostal muscles;

and a third layer, more delicate, is interposed between the two planes of muscular fibres. These are the **intercostal fasciæ,** *external*, *middle*, and *internal;* they are best marked in those situations where the muscular fibres are deficient, as between the External intercostal muscles and sternum, in front, and between the Internal intercostals and spine, behind.

The **Intercostal Muscles** (Figs. 291 and 315) are two thin planes of muscular and tendinous fibres, placed one over the other, filling up the intercostal spaces, and being directed obliquely between the margins of the adjacent ribs. They have received the name **external** and **internal** from the position they bear to one another. The tendinous fibres are longer and more numerous than the muscular; hence the walls of the intercostal spaces possess very considerable strength, to which the crossing of the muscular fibres materially contributes.

The **External Intercostals** (*mm. intercostales externi*) are eleven in number on each side. They extend from the tubercles of the ribs, behind, to the commencement of the cartilages of the ribs, in front, where they terminate in a thin membrane, the *anterior intercostal membrane*, which is continued forward to the sternum. They *arise* from the lower border of the rib above, and are *inserted* into the upper border of the rib below. In the two lowest spaces they extend to the ends of the cartilages, and in the upper two or three spaces they do not quite extend to the ends of the ribs. Their fibres are directed obliquely downward and forward, in a similar direction with those of the External oblique muscle of the abdomen. They are thicker than the Internal intercostals.

Relations.—By their *outer surface*, with the muscles which immediately invest the chest—viz., the Pectoralis major and minor, Serratus magnus, and Rhomboideus major, Serratus posticus superior and inferior, Scalenus posticus, Iliocostalis, Longissimus dorsi, Cervicalis ascendens, Transversalis cervicis, Levatores costarum, Obliquus externus abdominis, and the Latissimus dorsi; by their *internal surface*, with the middle intercostal fascia, which separates them from the intercostal vessels and nerve and the Internal intercostal muscles, and, behind, from the pleura.

The **Internal Intercostals** (*mm. intercostales interni*) are also eleven in number on each side. They commence anteriorly at the sternum in the interspaces between the cartilages of the true ribs, and from the anterior extremities of the cartilages of the false ribs, and extend backward as far as the angles of the ribs, whence they are continued to the vertebral column by a thin aponeurosis, the *posterior intercostal membrane*. They *arise* from the ridge on the inner surface of the rib above, as well as from the corresponding costal cartilage, and are *inserted* into the upper border of the rib below. Their fibres are directed obliquely downward and backward, passing in the opposite direction to the fibres of the External intercostal muscle.

Relations.—By their *external surface*, with the intercostal vessels and nerves and the External intercostal muscles; near the sternum, with the anterior intercostal membrane and the Pectoralis major. By their *internal surface*, with the pleura costalis, Triangularis sterni, and Diaphragm.

The **Infracostales** (*mm. subcostales*) consist of muscular and aponeurotic fasciculi, which vary in number and length; they are placed on the inner surface of the ribs, where the Internal intercostal muscles cease; they *arise* from the inner surface of one rib, and are *inserted* into the inner surface of the first, second, or third rib below. Their direction is most usually oblique, like the Internal intercostals. They are most frequent between the lower ribs.

The **Triangularis Sterni** (*m. transversus thoracis*) (Fig. 284) is a thin plane of muscular and tendinous fibres, situated upon the inner wall of the front of the chest. It *arises* from the lower third of the posterior surface of the sternum, from the posterior surface of the ensiform cartilage, and from the sternal ends of the costal

cartilages of the three or four lower true ribs. Its fibres diverge upward and outward, to be *inserted* by digitations into the lower borders and inner surfaces of the costal cartilages of the second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth ribs. The lowest fibres of this muscle are horizontal in their direction, and are continuous with those of the Transversalis; those which succeed are oblique, whilst the superior fibres are almost vertical. This muscle varies much in its attachment, not only in different bodies, but on opposite sides of the same body.

Relations.—*In front*, with the sternum, ensiform cartilage, costal cartilages, Internal intercostal muscles, and internal mammary vessels; *behind*, with the pleura, pericardium, and anterior mediastinum.

FIG. 284.—Posterior surface of sternum and costal cartilages, showing Triangularis sterni muscle. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

The **Levatores Costarum** (Fig. 283), twelve in number on each side, are small tendinous and fleshy bundles which *arise* from the extremities of the transverse processes of the seventh cervical and eleven upper dorsal vertebræ, and, passing obliquely downward and outward, are *inserted* into the upper border of the rib below them, between the tubercle and the angle. The Inferior levatores divide into two fasciculi, one of which is inserted as above described; the other fasciculus passes down to the second rib below its origin; thus, each of the lower ribs receives fibres from the transverse processes of two vertebræ.

Nerves.—The muscles of this group are supplied by the intercostal nerves.

The **Diaphragm** (*diaphragma*, from *διάφραγμα, a partition wall*) (Figs. 285, 286, and 287) is a thin, musculo-fibrous septum, consisting of muscular fibres externally, which *arise* from the circumference of the thoracic cavity and pass upward and inward to converge to a central tendon. It is placed obliquely at the junction of the upper with the middle third of the trunk, and separates the thorax from the abdomen, forming the floor of the former cavity and the roof of the latter. It is elliptical, its longest diameter being from side to side; is somewhat fan-shaped, the broad elliptical portion being horizontal, the narrow part, the **crura**, which represents the handle of the fan, vertical, and joined at right angles to the former. It is from this circumstance that some anatomists describe it as consisting of two portions, the upper or great muscle of the Diaphragm, and the lower or lesser muscle. It *arises* from the whole of the internal circumference of the thorax, being attached, in front, by fleshy fibres to the ensiform cartilage, **sternal portion of the Diaphragm** (*pars sternalis*); on either side, to the inner surface of the cartilages and bony portions of the six or seven inferior ribs, **costal portion** (*pars costalis*), interdigitating with the Transversalis; and behind, to two aponeurotic arches, named the **ligamentum arcuatum externum** and the **ligamentum arcuatum internum**, and by the **crura**, to the lumbar vertebræ, **lumbar portion** (*pars lumbalis*). The fibres from these sources vary in length: those arising from the ensiform appendix are very short and occasionally aponeurotic; those from the ligamenta arcuata, and more especially those from the cartilages of the ribs at the side of the chest, are longer, describe well-marked curves as they ascend, and finally converge to be inserted into the circumference of the central tendon. Between the sides of the muscular slip from the ensiform appendix and the cartilages of the adjoining ribs the fibres of the Diaphragm are deficient, the interval being filled by areolar tissue, covered on the thoracic side by the pleuræ; on the abdominal, by the peritoneum. This is, consequently, a weak point, and a portion of the contents of the abdomen may protrude through it into the chest, forming a **phrenic** or **diaphragmatic hernia**, or a collection of pus in the mediastinum may descend through it, so as to point at the epigastrium. A triangular gap is sometimes seen between the fibres springing from the internal and those arising from the external arcuate ligament. When it exists, the kidney is separated from the pleura only by fatty and areolar tissue.

A congenital deficiency in the Diaphragm may produce diaphragmatic hernia; in deficiency of the central tendon the hernia passes into the pericardial sac; in deficiency of one of the lateral portions the hernia passes into the pleural sac.

There are five arcuate ligaments, **two internal, two external,** and **one middle.**

The **Ligamentum Arcuatum Internum** (*arcus lumbocostalis medialis*) is a tendinous arch, thrown across the upper part of the Psoas magnus muscle, on each side of the spine. It is connected, by one end, to the outer side of the body of the first or second lumbar vertebra, being continuous with the outer side of the tendon of the corresponding crus; and, by the other end, to the front of the transverse process of the first, and sometimes also to that of the second, lumbar vertebra.

The **Ligamentum Arcuatum Externum** (*arcus lumbocostalis lateralis*) is the thickened upper margin of the anterior lamella of the lumbar fascia; it arches across the upper part of the Quadratus lumborum, being attached, by one extremity, to the front of the transverse process of the first lumbar vertebra, and, by the other, to the apex and lower margin of the last rib.

The arch of fibrous tissue which connects the crura of the diaphragm in front of the aorta is sometimes called the **middle arcuate ligament.** The Diaphragm is connected to the spine by two **crura** or **pillars**, which are situated on the bodies of lumbar vertebræ, on each side of the aorta. The crura, at their origin, are tendinous in structure; the right **crus**, larger and longer than the left, arising from the anterior common ligament and intervertebral substances of the three or four

upper lumbar vertebræ; the left, from the two upper lumbar vertebræ. These tendinous portions of the crura pass forward and inward, and gradually con-

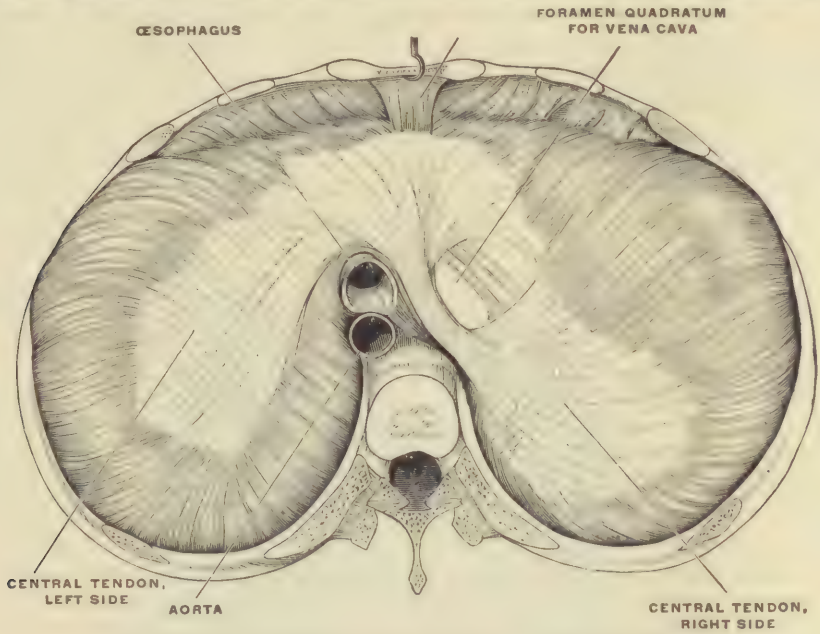


FIG. 285.—The Diaphragm, seen from above. (Poirier and Charpy.)

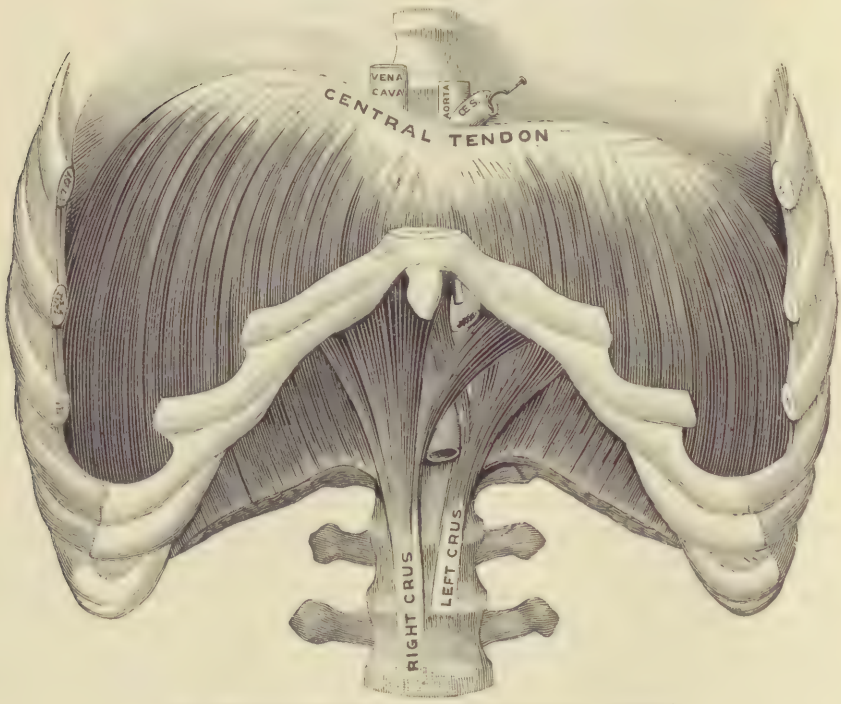


FIG. 286.—The Diaphragm, viewed from in front. (Testut.)

verge to meet in the middle line, forming an arch, beneath which passes the aorta, vena azygos major, and thoracic duct. From this tendinous arch muscular fibres arise, which diverge, the outermost portion being directed upward and

outward to the **central tendon**; the innermost decussating in front of the aorta and then diverging, so as to surround the œsophagus before ending in the central tendon. The fibres derived from the right crus are the most numerous and pass in front of those derived from the left. His and Spalteholz teach that three crura exist on each side—viz., the **crus mediale**, arising from the third and fourth lumbar vertebræ; the **crus intermedium**, from the second and third lumbar vertebræ; and the **crus laterale**, from the second or first lumbar vertebræ, and from the band of fascia which is stretched between the lateral part of the body of the first lumbar vertebra and the transverse process of the second lumbar vertebra in front of the Psoas muscle.

The **Central** or **Cordiform Tendon of the Diaphragm** (*centrum tendineum*) is a thin but strong tendinous aponeurosis, situated at the centre of the vault formed by the muscle, immediately below the pericardium, with which it is partly blended. It is shaped somewhat like a trefoil leaf, consisting of three divisions, or leaflets,

FIG. 287.—The Diaphragm, viewed from below. (Testut.)

separated from one another by slight indentations. The right leaflet is the largest; the middle one, directed toward the ensiform cartilage, the next in size; and the left, the smallest. In structure, the tendon is composed of several planes of fibres which intersect one another at various angles, and unite into straight or curved bundles—an arrangement which affords it additional strength.

The Openings.—The openings connected with the Diaphragm are three large and several smaller apertures. The former are the **aortic**, the **œsophageal**, and the opening for the **vena cava**.

The **Aortic Opening** (*hiatus aorticus*) is the lowest and the most posterior of the three large apertures connected with this muscle, being at the level of the first lumbar vertebra. It is situated slightly to the left of the middle line, immediately in front of the bodies of the vertebræ; and is, therefore, *behind* the Diaphragm, not in it. It is an osseo-aponeurotic aperture, formed by a tendinous arch thrown across the front of the bodies of the vertebræ, from the crus on one side to that on the other, and transmits the aorta, vena azygos major, and thoracic duct. Sometimes the vena azygos major is transmitted upward through the right crus.

Occasionally some tendinous fibres are prolonged across the bodies of the vertebræ from the inner part of the lower end of the crura, passing behind the aorta, and thus converting the opening into a fibrous ring.

The **Œsophageal Opening** (*hiatus œsophageus*) is situated at the level of the tenth dorsal vertebræ; it is elliptical in form, oblique in direction, muscular in structure, and, formed by the decussating fibres of the two crura, is placed above, and, at the same time, anterior, and a little to the left of the preceding. It transmits the œsophagus and pneumogastric nerves and some small œsophageal arteries. The anterior margin of this aperture is occasionally tendinous, being formed by the margin of the central tendon. The posterior and lateral margins are thick and the gullet is in contact with them for about half an inch. The right margin of the œsophageal opening is particularly prominent and lies in the **œsophageal groove** on the posterior surface of the left lobe of the liver.

The **Opening for the Vena Cava** or the **Foramen Quadratum** (*foramen venæ cavæ*) is the highest opening, being about on the level of the disk between the eighth and ninth dorsal vertebræ; it is quadrilateral in form, tendinous in structure, and placed at the junction of the right and middle leaflets of the central tendon, its margins being adherent to the wall of the inferior vena cava.

The **right crus** transmits the greater and lesser splanchnic nerves of the right side; the **left crus** transmits the greater and lesser splanchnic nerves of the left side, and the vena azygos minor. The gangliated cords of the sympathetic usually enter the abdominal cavity by passing behind the internal arcuate ligaments.

Serous Membranes.—The serous membranes in relation with the Diaphragm are four in number: three lining its upper or thoracic surface; one, its abdominal. The three serous membranes on its upper surface are the pleura on either side and the pericardium, which covers the middle portion of the tendinous centre. The serous membrane covering the under surface of the Diaphragm is a portion of the general peritoneal membrane of the abdominal cavity.

The Diaphragm is arched, being convex toward the chest and concave toward the abdomen. The **right portion** forms a complete arch from before backward, being accurately moulded over the convex surface of the liver, and having resting upon it the concave base of the right lung. The **left portion** is arched from before backward in a similar manner; but the arch is narrower in front, being encroached upon by the pericardium, and lower than the right, at its summit, by about three-quarters of an inch. It supports the base of the left lung, and covers the great end of the stomach, the spleen, and left kidney. At its circumference the Diaphragm is higher in the mesial line of the body than at either side; but in the middle of the thorax the central portion, which supports the heart, is on a lower level than the two lateral portions.

Nerves.—The Diaphragm is supplied by the phrenic nerves, the lower intercostal nerves and the phrenic plexus of the sympathetic.

Actions.—The Intercostals are the chief agents in the movement of the ribs in ordinary respiration. When the first rib is elevated and fixed by the Scaleni, the External intercostals raise the other ribs, especially their forepart, and so increase the capacity of the chest from before backward; at the same time they evert their lower borders, and so enlarge the thoracic cavity transversely. The Internal intercostals, at the side of the thorax, depress the ribs and invert their lower borders, and so diminish the thoracic cavity; but at the forepart of the chest these muscles assist the External intercostals in raising the cartilages.[1] The Levatores

[1] The view of the action of the Intercostal muscles given in the text is that which is taught by Hutchinson (Cycl. of Anat. and Phys., art. Thorax), and is usually adopted in our schools. It is, however, much disputed. Hamberger believed that the External intercostals act as elevators of the ribs, or muscles of inspiration, while the internal act in expiration. Haller taught that both sets of muscles act in common—viz., as muscles of inspiration—and this view is adopted by many of the best anatomists of the Continent, and appears sup-

costarum assist the External intercostals in raising the ribs. The Triangularis sterni draws down the costal cartilages; it is therefore an expiratory muscle.

The Diaphragm is the principal muscle of **inspiration.** When in a condition of rest the muscle presents a domed surface, concave toward the abdomen; and consists of a circumferential muscular and a central tendinous part. When the muscular fibres contract, they become less arched, or nearly straight, and thus cause the central tendon to descend, and in consequence the level of the chest-wall is lowered, the vertical diameter of the chest being proportionally increased. In this descent the different parts of the tendon move unequally. The left leaflet descends to the greatest extent; the right to a less extent, on account of the liver; and the central leaflet the least, because of its connection to the pericardium. In descending the Diaphragm presses on the abdominal viscera, and so to a certain extent causes a projection of the abdominal wall; but in consequence of these viscera not yielding completely, the central tendon becomes a fixed point, and enables the circumferential muscular fibres to act *from* it, and so elevate the lower ribs and expand the lower part of the thoracic cavity; and Duchenne has shown that the Diaphragm has the power of elevating the ribs, to which it is attached, by its contraction, if the abdominal viscera are *in situ*, but that if these organs are removed, this power is lost. When at the end of inspiration the Diaphragm relaxes, the thoracic walls return to their natural position in consequence of their elastic reaction and of the elasticity and weight of the displaced viscera.[1]

In all expulsive acts the Diaphragm is called into action, to give additional power to each expulsive effort. Thus, before sneezing, coughing, laughing, and crying, before vomiting, previous to the expulsion of the urine and fæces, or of the fœtus from the womb, a deep inspiration takes place.

The height of the Diaphragm is constantly varying during **respiration,** the muscle being carried upward or downward from the average level; its height also varies according to the degree of distention of the stomach and intestines, and the size of the liver. After a forced expiration, the right arch is on a level, in front, with the fourth costal cartilage; at the side, with the fifth, sixth, and seventh ribs; and behind, with the eighth rib, the left arch being usually from one to two ribs' breadth below the level of the right one. In a forced inspiration, it descends from one to two inches; its slope would then be represented by a line drawn from the ensiform cartilage toward the tenth rib. Prof. Wm. S. Forbes[2] is of the opinion that the Diaphragm is an appendage of the circulatory apparatus rather than the chief agent in respiration. He maintains that the opening in the vena cava is stationary and holds a constant relation to the ninth dorsal vertebra. He emphasizes the fact that the base of the pericardium is attached to the central tendon of the Diaphragm, and on the anterior and left side. The muscular fibres of the Diaphragm ascend upon and are attached to the pericardium. Prolongations of the fibrous pericardium pass upward as the pericardial ligaments. These ligaments form fibrous planes reaching from each side of the central tendon of the Diaphragm to the "bony apex of the thoracic line" and to the fascia stretched across the thoracic apex, and they may be called the "superior tendinous crura." It is thus evident that the deep cervical fascia is connected to the lateral and superior parts of the pericardium. At birth the muscular

ported by many observations made on the human subject under various conditions of disease, and on living animals after the muscles have been exposed under chloroform. The reader may consult an interesting paper by Dr. Cleland in the Journal of Anat. and Phys., No. II., May, 1867, p. 209, On the Hutchinsonian Theory of the Action of the Intercostal Muscles, who refers also to Henle, Luschka, Budge, and Baumler, Observations on the Action of the Intercostal Muscles, Erlangen, 1860. (In New Syd. Soc.'s Year-book for 1861, p. 69.) Dr. W. W. Keen has come to the conclusion, from experiments made upon a criminal executed by hanging, that the External intercostals are muscles of expiration, as they pulled the ribs down, while the Internal intercostals pulled the ribs up and are muscles of inspiration (Trans. Coll. Phys., Philadelphia, Third Series, vol. i., 1875, p. 97).

[1] For a detailed description of the general relations of the Diaphragm, and its action, refer to Dr. Sibson's Medical Anatomy.

[2] American Journal of the Medical Sciences, July, 1880.

fibres of the Diaphragm contract at the first inspiration. The ductus arteriosus is lodged in an elliptical opening of a tendinous scaffolding. The contractions of the Diaphragm cause the tendinous scaffolding to compress the ductus arteriosus "and eventually close it." The chief agents in the compression are the muscular fibres which pass from the Diaphragm to the pericardium. When the lateral wings of the Diaphragm descend they tend to form a vacuum in the thorax and thus assist the venous circulation.

"The descent of the Diaphragm is not necessary to respiration," but it "is necessary in order to protect the heart from the movement of surrounding viscera, and in order to promote the free circulation of the blood through the vessels forming the cardiac roots."

Muscles of Inspiration and Expiration.—The muscles which assist the action of the Diaphragm in ordinary tranquil inspiration are the Intercostals and the Levatores costarum, as above stated, and the Scaleni. When the need for more forcible action exists, the shoulders and the base of the scapula are fixed, and then the powerful muscles of forced inspiration come into play; the chief of these are the Trapezius, the Pectoralis minor, the Serratus posticus superior and inferior, and the Rhomboidei. The lower fibres of the Serratus magnus may possibly assist slightly in dilating the chest by raising and everting the ribs. The Sterno-mastoid also, when the head is fixed, assists in forced inspiration by drawing up the sternum and by fixing the clavicle, and thus affording a fixed point for the action of the muscles of the chest. The Ilio-costalis and Quadratus lumborum assist in forced inspiration by fixing the last rib.

The ordinary action of expiration is hardly effected by muscular force, but results from a return of the walls of the thorax to a condition of rest, owing to their own elasticity and to that of the lungs. Forced expiratory actions are performed mainly by the flat muscles (Obliqui and Transversalis) of the abdomen, assisted by the Rectus. Other muscles of forced expiration are the Internal intercostals and Triangularis sterni (as above mentioned).[1]

III. MUSCLES OF THE ABDOMEN.

The muscles of the abdomen may be divided into two groups: 1. The **superficial muscles of the abdomen.** 2. The **deep muscles of the abdomen.**

1. The Superficial Muscles of the Abdomen.

The Muscles in this region are, the

External Oblique. Transversalis.
Internal Oblique. Rectus.
Pyramidalis.

Dissection (Fig. 288). To dissect the abdominal muscles, make a vertical incision from the ensiform cartilage to the symphysis pubis; a second incision from the umbilicus obliquely upward and outward to the outer surface of the chest, as high as the lower border of the fifth or sixth rib; and a third, commencing midway between the umbilicus and pubes, transversely outward to the anterior superior iliac spine, and along the crest of the ilium as far as its posterior third. Then reflect the three flaps included between these incisions from within outward, in the lines of direction of the muscular fibres. If necessary, the abdominal muscles may be made tense by inflating the peritoneal cavity through the umbilicus.

[1] A. M. Patterson (article on Myology, in D. J. Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy) states that the movement of expiration is performed by the elasticity of the lungs, the weight of the chest-wall, the elevation of the Diaphragm, the action of the Triangularis sterni and muscles of the abdominal wall, possibly aided by the interosseous fibres of the Internal intercostal muscles. The same author states that the movement of inspiration is performed ordinarily by the descent of the Diaphragm and the action of this muscle in elevating the ribs, the action of the External intercostals and Levatores costarum, probably the action of the whole of each Internal intercostal, of the Scaleni, and of the Serrati postici. The accessory muscles of respiration are employed when voluntary respiratory effort is necessary. Patterson names them as follows: The Quadratus lumborum, Pectorales, Serratus magnus, Sterno-mastoid, Latissimus dorsi, Infra-hyoid muscles, Extensors of the spine.

Superficial Fascia.—The superficial fascia of the abdomen consists, over the greater part of the abdominal wall, of a single layer of fascia, which contains a variable amount of fat; but as this layer approaches the groin it is easily divisible into two layers, between which are found the superficial vessels and nerves and the superficial inguinal lymphatic glands. The **superficial layer of the superficial fascia,** or the **fascia of Camper,** is thick, areolar in texture, containing adipose tissue in its meshes, the quantity of which varies in different subjects. Below it passes over Poupart's ligament, and is continuous with the outer layer of the superficial fascia of the thigh. In the male this fascia is continued over the penis and outer surface of the cord to the scrotum, where it helps to form the **dartos.** As it passes to the scrotum it changes its character, becoming thin, destitute of adipose tissue, and of a pale hue, it has a reddish color, and in the scrotum it acquires some involuntary muscular fibres. From the scrotum it may be traced backward to be continuous with the superficial fascia of the perinæum. In the female this fascia is continued into the labia majora. The **deep layer of the superficial fascia** or the **fascia of Scarpa,** is thinner and more membranous in character than the superficial layer. In the middle line it is intimately adherent to the linea alba and to the symphysis pubis, and is prolonged on to the dorsum of the penis, forming the **suspensory ligament of the penis**; above, it joins the superficial layer and is continuous with the superficial fascia over the rest of the trunk; below, it blends with the fascia lata of the thigh a little below Poupart's ligament; and below and internally it is continued over the penis and spermatic cord to the scrotum, where it helps to form the dartos. From the scrotum it may be traced backward to be continuous with the deep layer of the superficial fascia of the perinæum. In the female it is continued into the labia majora.

3. Dissection of inguinal hernia.

FIG. 288.—Dissection of abdomen.

Deep Fascia.—The deep fascia invests the external oblique muscle, but is so thin over the aponeurosis of the muscle as to be scarcely recognizable.

The **External** or **Descending Oblique Muscle** (*m. obliquus externus abdominis*) (Fig. 289) is situated on the side and forepart of the abdomen; being the largest and the most superficial of the three flat muscles in this region. It is broad, thin, and irregularly quadrilateral, its muscular portion occupying the side, its aponeurosis the anterior wall, of the abdomen. It *arises*, by eight fleshy digitations, from the external surface and lower borders of the eight inferior ribs; these digitations are arranged in an oblique line running downward and backward; the upper ones being attached close to the cartilages of the corresponding ribs; the lowest, to the apex of the cartilage of the last rib; the intermediate ones, to the ribs at some distance from their cartilages. The five superior serrations increase in size from above downward, and are received between corresponding processes of the Serratus magnus; the three lower ones diminish in size from above downward, receiving between them corresponding processes from the Latissimus dorsi. From these attachments, the fleshy fibres proceed in various directions. Those from the lowest ribs pass nearly vertically downward, to be *inserted* into the anterior half of the outer lip of the crest of the ilium; the middle and upper fibres, directed downward and forward, terminate in an aponeurosis, oppo-

site a line drawn from the prominence of the ninth costal cartilage to the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium.

Aponeurosis of External Oblique.—The aponeurosis of the external oblique is a thin, but strong membranous aponeurosis, the fibres of which are directed obliquely downward and inward. It is joined with that of the opposite muscle along the median line, covers the whole of the front of the abdomen; *above*, it is connected with the lower border of the Pectoralis major; *below*, its fibres are closely

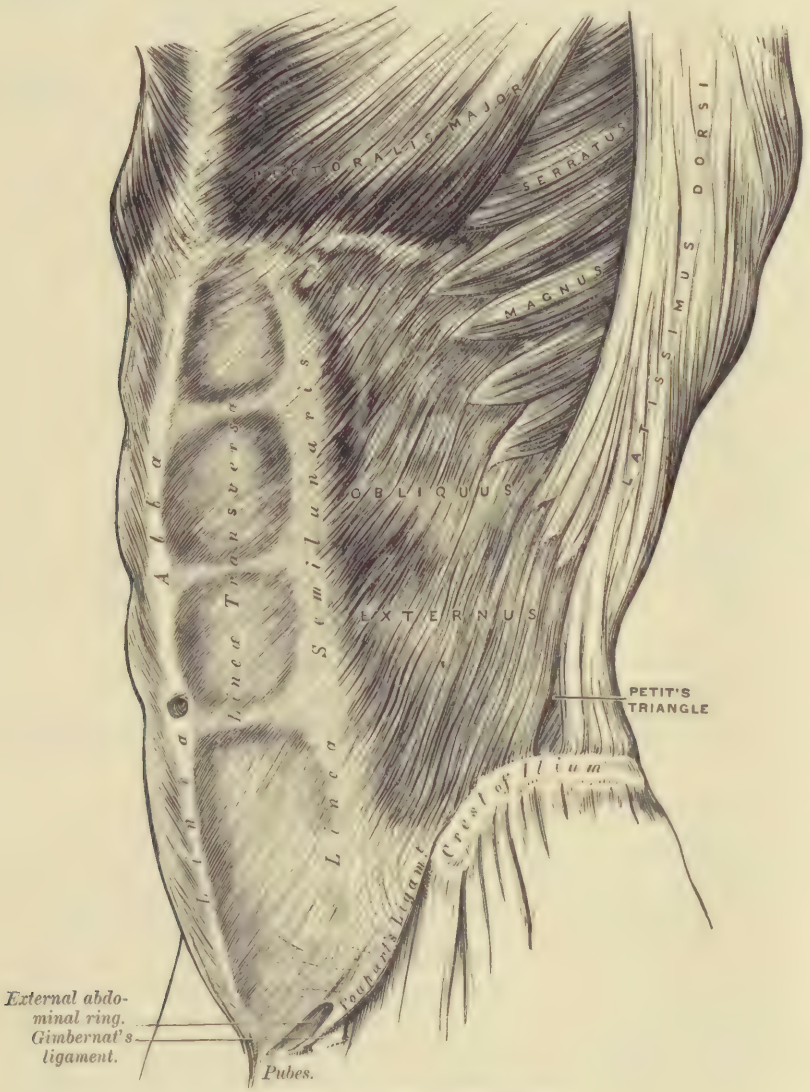


FIG. 289.—The External oblique muscle.

aggregated together, and extend obliquely across from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the spine of the os pubis and the linea ilio-pectinea. In the *median line* it interlaces with the aponeurosis of the opposite muscle, forming the **linea alba**, which extends from the ensiform cartilage to the symphysis pubis.

That portion of the aponeurosis which extends between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the spine of the os pubis is a broad band, folded inward, and continuous below with the fascia lata; it is called **Poupart's ligament** or the

ligament of Fallopius. The portion which is reflected from Poupart's ligament at the spine of the os pubis along the pectineal line is called **Gimbernat's ligament**. From the point of attachment of the latter to the pectineal line, a few fibres pass upward and inward, behind the inner pillar of the ring, to the linea alba. They diverge as they ascend, and form a thin, triangular, fibrous layer, which is called the **triangular fascia of the abdomen** or **Colles's ligament** (*ligamentum inguinale reflexum*). The point of the triangle is at the origin of Colles's ligament; the base is at the linea alba. Colles's ligament is in front of the conjoined tendon, the Rectus muscle, and the Pyramidalis muscle.

In the aponeurosis of the External oblique, immediately above the crest of the os pubis, is a triangular opening, the **external abdominal ring**, formed by a separation of the fibres of the aponeurosis in this situation.

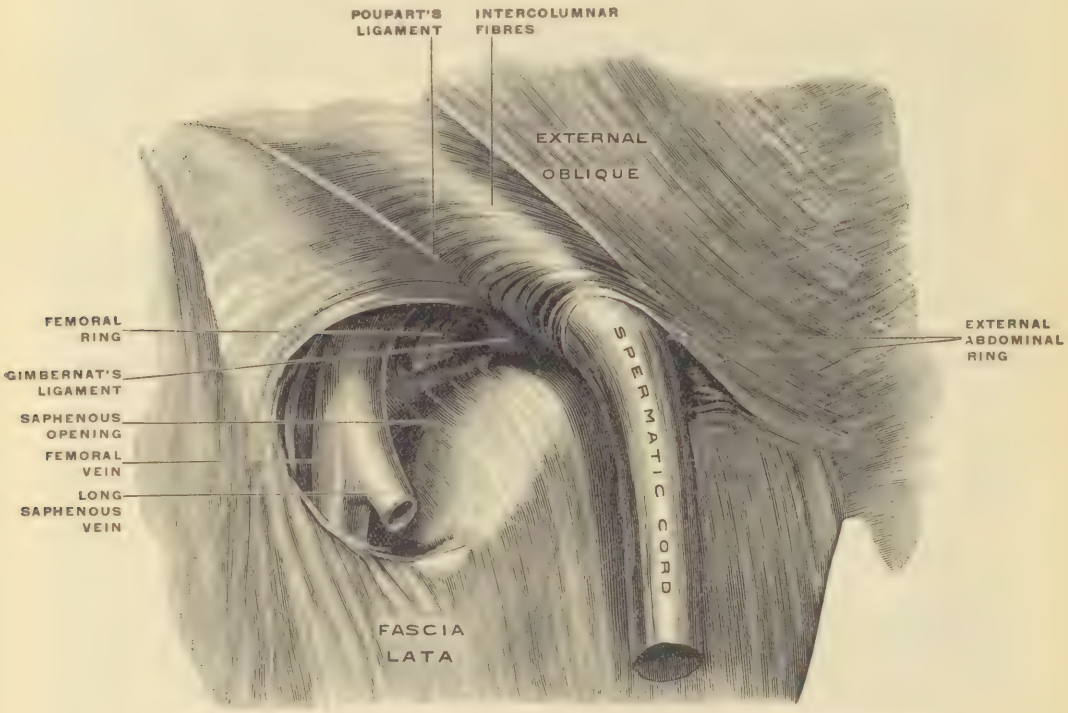


Fig. 290.—Right external abdominal ring and saphenous opening in the male. (Spalteholz.)

Relations.—By its *external surface*, with the superficial fascia, superficial epigastric and circumflex iliac vessels, and some cutaneous nerves; by its *internal surface*, with the Internal oblique, the lower part of the eight inferior ribs, and Intercostal muscles, the Cremaster, the spermatic cord in the male, and round ligament in the female. Its *posterior border*, extending from the last rib to the crest of the ilium, is fleshy throughout and free; it is occasionally overlapped by the Latissimus dorsi, though generally a triangular interval exists between the two muscles near the crest of the ilium, in which is seen a portion of the internal oblique. This triangle, **Petit's triangle** (*trigonum lumbale*), is therefore bounded in front by the External oblique, behind by the Latissimus dorsi, below by the crest of the ilium, while its floor is formed by the Internal oblique (Fig. 289).

The following parts of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle require to be further described—viz., the **external abdominal ring**, the **intercolumnar fibres** and **fascia**, **Poupart's ligament**, **Gimbernat's ligament**, and the **triangular fascia of the abdomen**.

The External Abdominal Ring (*annulus inguinalis subcutaneous*) (Fig. 290).—Just above and to the outer side of the crest of the os pubis an interval is seen in the aponeurosis of the External oblique, called the external abdominal ring. The aperture is oblique in direction, somewhat triangular in form, and corresponds with the course of the fibres of the aponeurosis. It usually measures from base to apex about an inch, and transversely about half an inch. It is bounded below by the crest of the os pubis; above, by a series of curved fibres, the **external spermatic**, or the **intercolumnar fibres** (*fibræ intercrurales*), which pass across the upper angle of the ring, so as to increase its strength; and on each side, by the margins of the opening in the aponeurosis, which are called the **columns** or **pillars of the ring**.

The **External Pillar** or **inferior crus** (*crus inferius*) is inferior from the obliquity of its direction. It is stronger than the internal pillar; it is formed by that portion of Poupart's ligament which is inserted into the spine of the os pubis; it is curved so as to form a kind of groove, upon which the spermatic cord rests.

The **Internal Pillar** or **superior crus** (*crus superius*) is a broad, thin, flat band, which is attached to the front of the symphysis pubis, interlacing with its fellow of the opposite side.

The external abdominal ring gives passage to the **spermatic cord in the male** (*funiculus spermaticus*) and **round ligament in the female** (*ligamentum teres uteri*): it is much larger in men than in women, on account of the large size of the spermatic cord, and hence the greater frequency of inguinal hernia in men.

Intercolumnar Fibres (*fibræ intercrurales*) (Fig. 290).—The intercolumnar fibres are a series of curved tendinous fibres, which arch across the lower part of the aponeurosis of the External oblique. They have received their name from stretching across between the two pillars of the external ring, describing a curve with the convexity downward. They are much thicker and stronger at the outer margin of the external ring, where they are connected to the outer third of Poupart's ligament, than internally, where they are inserted into the linea alba. They are more strongly developed in the male than in the female. The intercolumnar fibres increase the strength of the lower part of the aponeurosis, and prevent the divergence of the pillars from one another.

These intercolumnar fibres as they pass across the external abdominal ring are themselves connected together by delicate fibrous tissue, thus forming a fascia, which as it is attached to the pillars of the ring covers it in, and is called the **intercolumnar fascia** or the **external spermatic fascia**. This intercolumnar fascia is continued down as a tubular prolongation around the outer surface of the cord and testis or of the round ligament, and encloses them in a distinct sheath.

The sac of an inguinal hernia, in passing through the external abdominal ring, receives an investment from the intercolumnar fascia.

If the finger is introduced a short distance into the external abdominal ring and the limb is then extended and rotated outward, the aponeurosis of the External oblique, together with the iliac portion of the fascia lata, will be felt to become tense, and the external ring much contracted; if the limb is, on the contrary, flexed upon the pelvis and rotated inward, this aponeurosis will become lax and the external abdominal ring sufficiently enlarged to admit the finger with comparative ease; hence the patient should always be put in the latter position when the taxis is applied for the reduction of an inguinal hernia in order that the abdominal walls may be relaxed as much as possible.

Poupart's Ligament (*ligamentum inguinale*).—The portion of Poupart's ligament in front of the crural ring is called the **superficial crural arch**. Poupart's ligament is the lower border of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle, and extends from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the pubic spine. From this latter point it is reflected outward to be attached to the pectineal line for about

half an inch, forming **Gimbernat's ligament.** Its general direction is curved downward toward the thigh, where it is continuous with the fascia lata. Its outer half is rounded and oblique in direction. Its inner half gradually widens at its attachment to the os pubis, is more horizontal in direction, and lies beneath the spermatic cord. Nearly the whole of the space included between the crural arch and the innominate bone is filled in by the parts which descend from the abdomen into the thigh (Fig. 298). These will be referred to again on a subsequent page.

Gimbernat's Ligament (*ligamentum lacunare*) (Figs. 290 and 298).—Gimbernat's ligament is that part of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle which is reflected upward and outward from the spine of the os pubis to be inserted into the pectineal line. It is about half an inch in length, larger in the male than in the female, almost horizontal in direction in the erect posture, and of a triangular form with the base directed outward. Its base, or outer margin, is concave, thin, and sharp, and lies in contact with the crural sheath, forming the inner boundary of the **femoral** or **crural ring** (*annulus femoralis*). Its apex corresponds to the spine of the os pubis. Its posterior margin is attached to the pectineal line, and is continuous with the pubic portion of the fascia lata. Its anterior margin is continuous with Poupart's ligament. Its surfaces are directed upward and downward.

Triangular Fascia or **Colles's Ligament** (*ligamentum inguinal reflexum*).—The triangular fascia of the abdomen is a layer of tendinous fibres of a triangular shape, which is attached by its apex to the pectineal line, where it is continuous with Gimbernat's ligament. It passes inward beneath the spermatic cord, and expands into a somewhat fan-shaped fascia, lying behind the inner pillar of the external abdominal ring, and in front of the conjoined tendon, and interlaces with the ligament of the other side at the linea alba.

Ligament of Cooper (Fig. 298).—This is a strong ligamentous band, which was first described by Sir Astley Cooper. It extends upward and backward from the base of Gimbernat's ligament along the ilio-pectineal line, to which it is attached. It is strengthened by the fascia transversalis, by the pectineal aponeurosis, and by a lateral expansion from the lower attachment of the linea alba (*adminiculum lineæ albæ*).

Suspensory Ligament of the Penis (*ligamentum fundiforme penis*).—The suspensory ligament of the penis arises from the linea alba, the anterior portion of the sheath of the Rectus muscle, and the superficial fascia. It splits into two portions, blends with the inserting fascia of the penis, and passes into the scrotum.

Suspensory Ligament of the Clitoris (*ligamentum fundiforme clitoridis*).—The suspensory ligament of the clitoris corresponds in the female to the suspensory ligament of the penis in the male.

Dissection Detach the External oblique by dividing it across, just in front of its attachment to the ribs, as far as its posterior border, and separate it below from the crest of the ilium as far as the anterior superior spine; then separate the muscle carefully from the Internal oblique, which lies beneath, and turn it toward the opposite side.

The Internal or Ascending Oblique Muscle (*m. obliquus internus abdominis*) (Fig. 291), thinner and smaller than the preceding, beneath which it lies, is of an irregularly quadrilateral form, and is situated at the side and forepart of the abdomen. It *arises*, by fleshy fibres, from the outer half of Poupart's ligament, being attached to the groove on its upper surface; from the anterior two-thirds of the middle lip of the crest of the ilium, and from the posterior lamella of the lumbar fascia (Fig. 295). From this origin the fibres diverge: those from Poupart's ligament, few in number and paler in color than the rest, arch downward and inward across the spermatic cord in the male and the round ligament in the female, and, becoming tendinous, are inserted, conjointly with those of the Transversalis, into the crest of the os pubis and pectineal line, to the extent of half an inch or more, forming what is known as the conjoined tendon of the Internal oblique and

Transversalis; those from the anterior third of the iliac origin are horizontal in their direction, and, becoming tendinous along the lower fourth of the linea semilunaris, pass in front of the Rectus muscle to be inserted into the linea alba; those which arise from the middle third of the origin from the crest of the ilium pass obliquely upward and inward, and terminate in an aponeurosis which divides at the outer border of the Rectus muscle into two lamellæ (Fig. 296), which are continued forward, in front and behind this muscle, to the linea alba, the posterior lamella being also connected to the cartilages of the seventh, eighth, and ninth ribs; the most posterior fibres pass almost vertically upward, to be inserted into the lower borders of the cartilages of the three lower ribs, being continuous with the Internal intercostal muscles.

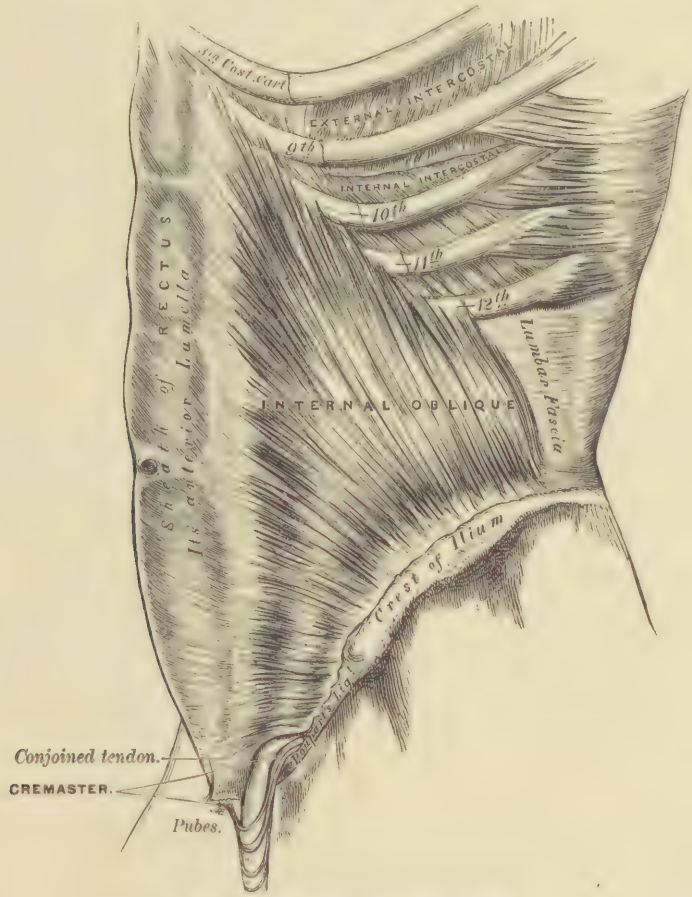


Fig. 291.—The Internal oblique muscle.

The **conjoined tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis** is *inserted* into the crest of the os pubis and pectineal line, immediately behind the external abdominal ring, serving to protect what would otherwise be a weak point in the abdominal wall. Sometimes this tendon is insufficient to resist the pressure from within, and is carried forward in front of a protrusion through the external ring, forming one of the coverings of direct inguinal hernia; or the hernia forces its way through the fibres of the conjoined tendon. The conjoined tendon is sometimes divided into an outer and an inner portion—the former being termed the **ligament of Hesselbach** (*ligamentum interfoveolare*); the latter, the **ligament of Henle** (Fig. 292).

Aponeurosis of Internal Oblique.—The aponeurosis of the Internal oblique is continued forward to the middle line of the abdomen, where it joins with the aponeurosis of the opposite muscle at the linea alba, and extends from the margin of the thorax to the os pubis. At the outer margin of the Rectus muscle this aponeurosis, for the upper three-fourths of its extent, divides into two lamellæ, which pass, one in front and the other behind the muscle, enclosing it in a kind of sheath, and reuniting on its inner border of the linea alba; the anterior layer is blended with the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle; the posterior layer with that of the Transversalis. Along the lower fourth the aponeurosis passes altogether in front of the Rectus without any separation. Where the aponeurosis

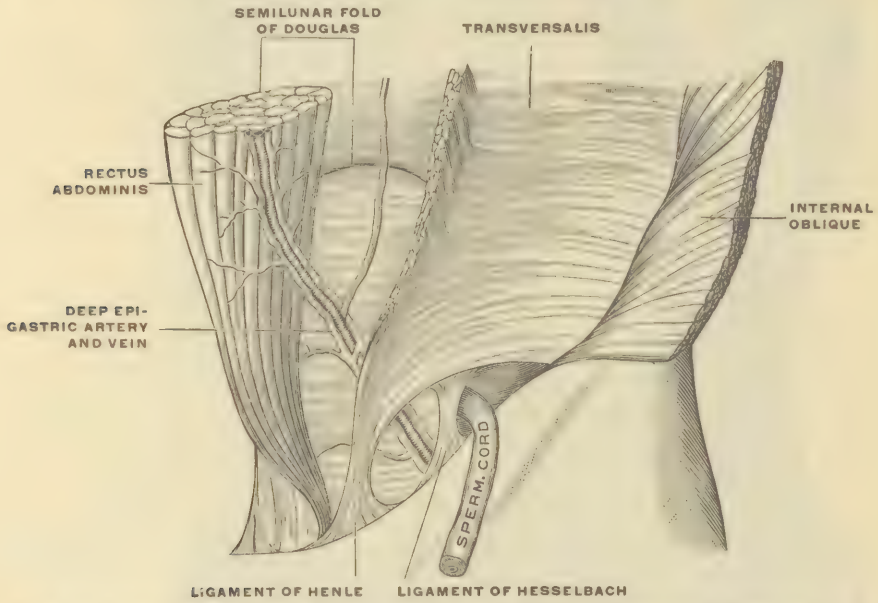


FIG. 292.—The deep epigastric artery and veins, ligament of Henle and ligament of Hesselbach, seen from in front. (Modified from Braune.)

ceases to split, and passes altogether in front of the Rectus muscle, a deficiency is left in the sheath of the muscle behind; this is marked above by a sharp lunated margin having its concavity downward. This is known as the **semilunar fold of Douglas** (*linea semicircularis*) (Fig. 293).

Relations.—By its *external surface*, with the External oblique, Latissimus dorsi, spermatic cord, and external ring; by its *internal surface*, with the Transversalis muscle, the lower intercostal vessels and nerves, the ilio-hypogastric and the ilio-inguinal nerves. Near Poupart's ligament it lies on the fascia transversalis, internal ring, and spermatic cord. Its lower border forms the upper boundary of the inguinal canal.

The **Cremaster muscle** (Fig. 291) is a thin, muscular layer, composed of a number of fasciculi which arise from the inner part of Poupart's ligament, where its fibres are continuous with those of the Internal oblique and also occasionally with the Transversalis. It passes along the outer side of the spermatic cord, descends with it through the external abdominal ring upon the front and sides of the cord, and forms a series of loops which differ in thickness and length in different subjects. Those at the upper part of the cord are exceedingly short, but they become in succession longer and longer, the longest reaching down as low as the testicle, where a few are inserted into the tunica vaginalis. These loops are united together by areolar tissue, and form a thin covering over the cord and testis, the **middle**

spermatic fascia (*fascia cremasterica*). The fibres ascend along the inner side of the cord, and are inserted by a small pointed tendon into the crest of the os pubis and front of the sheath of the Rectus muscle.

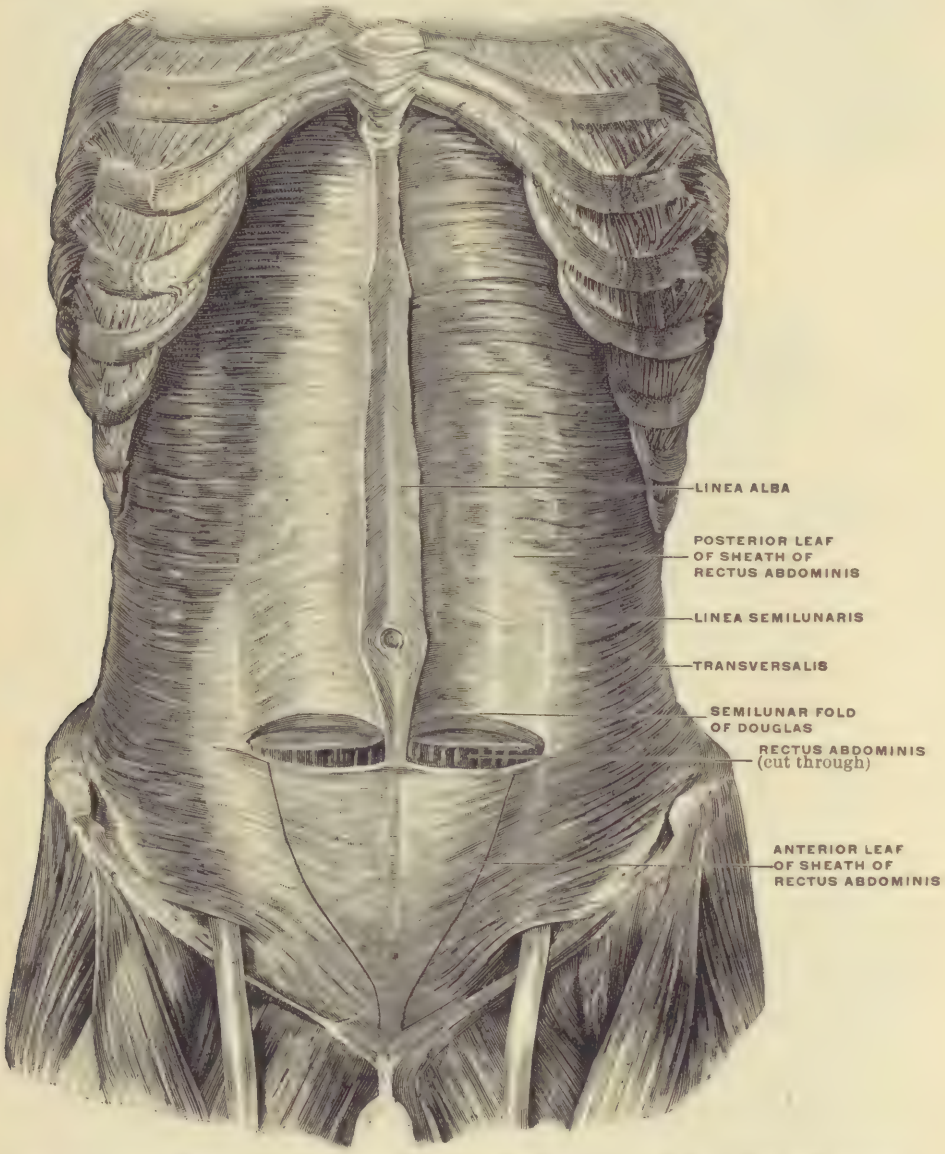


FIG. 293.—The muscles of the abdomen, showing the semilunar fold of Douglas. Viewed from in front. (Spalteholz.)

It will be observed that the origin and insertion of the Cremaster is precisely similar to that of the lower fibres of the Internal oblique. This fact affords an easy explanation of the manner in which the testicle and cord are invested by this muscle. At an early period of fœtal life the testis is placed at the lower and back part of the abdominal cavity, but during its descent toward the scrotum, which takes place before birth, it passes beneath the arched fibres of the Internal oblique. In its passage beneath this muscle some fibres are derived from its lower part which accompany the testicle and cord into the scrotum. It occasionally happens

that the loops of the Cremaster surround the cord, some lying behind as well as in front. It is probable that under these circumstances the testis, in its descent, passed through instead of beneath the fibres of the Internal oblique.

In the descent of an oblique inguinal hernia, which takes the same course as the spermatic cord, the Cremaster muscle forms one of its coverings. This muscle becomes largely developed in cases of hydrocele and large old scrotal hernia. The Cremaster muscle is found only in the male, but almost constantly in the female

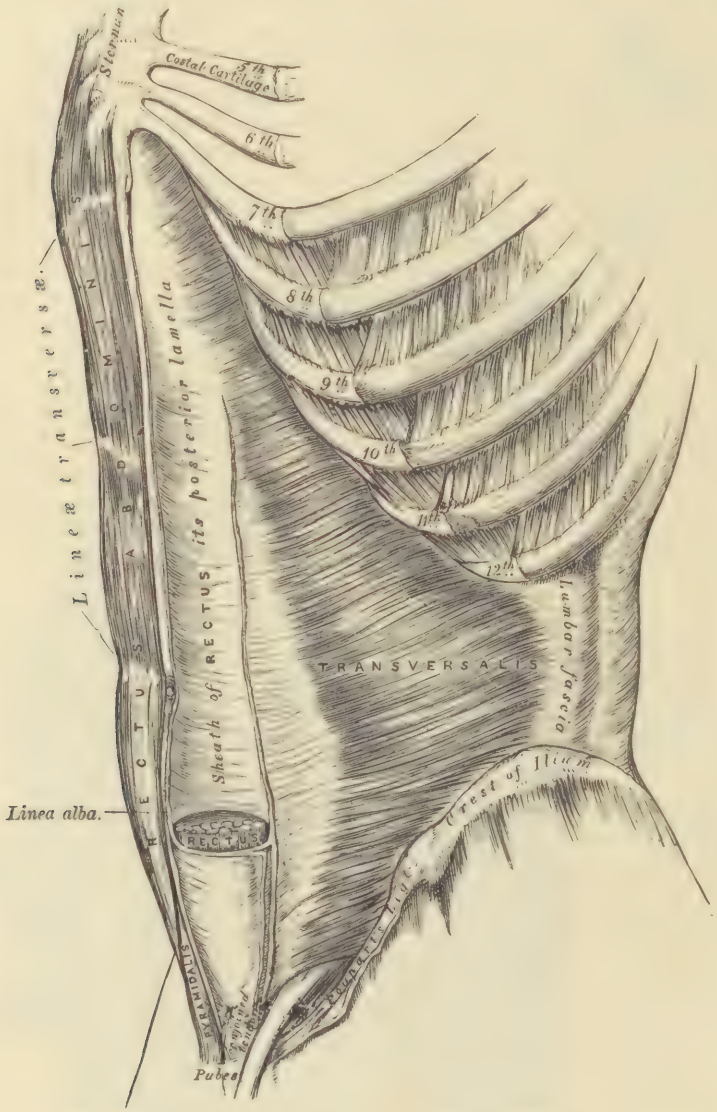


FIG. 294.—The Transversalis, Rectus, and Pyramidalis muscles.

a few muscular fibres may be seen on the surface of the round ligament, which correspond to this muscle, and in cases of oblique inguinal hernia in the female a considerable amount of muscular fibre may be found covering the sac.

Dissection.—Detach the Internal oblique in order to expose the Transversalis beneath. This may be effected by dividing the muscle, above, at its attachment to the ribs; below, at its connection with Poupart's ligament and the crest of the ilium; and behind, by a vertical incision

extending from the last rib to the crest of the ilium. The muscle should previously be made tense by drawing upon it with the fingers of the left hand, and if its division is carefully effected, the cellular interval between it and the Transversalis, as well as the direction of the fibres of the latter muscle, will afford a clear guide to their separation; along the crest of the ilium the circumflex iliac vessels are interposed between them, and form an important guide in separating them. The muscle should then be thrown inward toward the linea alba.

The **Transversalis Muscle** (*m. transversus abdominis*) (Fig. 294), so called from the direction of its fibres, is the most internal flat muscle of the abdomen, being placed immediately beneath the Internal oblique. It *arises* by fleshy fibres from the outer third of Poupart's ligament; from the inner lip of the crest of the ilium for its anterior three-fourths; from the inner surface of the cartilages of the six lower ribs, interdigitating with the Diaphragm; and from the lumbar fascia (Fig. 295), which may be regarded as the posterior aponeurosis of the muscle. The muscle terminates in front in a broad aponeurosis, the lower fibres of which curve downward and inward, and are *inserted*, together with those of the Internal oblique, into the lower part of the linea alba, the crest of the os pubis and pectineal line forming what is known as the conjoined tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis. The lowermost fibres help to form the posterior wall of the inguinal canal. Throughout the rest of its extent the aponeurosis passes horizontally inward, and is *inserted* into the linea alba, its upper three-fourths passing behind the Rectus muscle, blending with the posterior lamella of the Internal oblique; its lower fourth passing in front of the Rectus. The external portion of the lower fibres of the conjoined tendon is known as the **ligament of Hesselbach**; the internal portion as the **ligament of Henle.**

Relations.—By its *external surface*, with the Internal oblique, the lower intercostal nerves, and the inner surface of the cartilages of the lower ribs; by its *internal surface*, with the fascia transversalis, which separates it from the peritoneum. Its lower border forms the upper boundary of the inguinal canal.

Dissection.—To expose the Rectus muscle, open its sheath by a vertical incision extending from the margin of the thorax to the os pubis, and then reflect the two portions from the surface of the muscle, which is easily done, excepting at the lineæ transversæ, where so close an adhesion exists that the greatest care is requisite in separating them. Now raise the outer edge of the muscle, in order to examine the posterior layer of the sheath. By dividing the muscle in the centre, and turning its lower part downward, the point where the posterior wall of the sheath terminates in a thin curved margin will be seen.

The **Rectus Abdominis** (Figs. 292, 294 and 296) is a long flat muscle, which extends along the whole length of the front of the abdomen, being separated from its fellow of the opposite side by the linea alba. It is much broader, but thinner, above than below, and *arises* by two tendons, the external or larger being attached to the crest of the os pubis, the internal, smaller portion interlacing with its fellow of the opposite side, and being connected with the ligaments covering the front of the symphysis pubis. The fibres ascend, and the muscle is inserted by three portions of unequal size into the cartilages of the fifth, sixth, and seventh ribs. The upper portion, attached principally to the cartilage of the fifth rib, usually has some fibres of insertion into the anterior extremity of the rib itself. Some fibres are occasionally connected with the costo-xiphoid ligaments and side of the ensiform cartilage.

The Rectus muscle is traversed by tendinous intersections, three in number, which have received the name of **lineæ transversæ**. One of these is usually situated opposite the umbilicus, and two above that point; of the latter, one corresponds to the extremity of the ensiform cartilage, and the other to the interval between the ensiform cartilage and the umbilicus. These intersections pass transversely or obliquely across the muscle in a zigzag course; they rarely extend completely through its substance, sometimes they pass only half-way across it, and are intimately adherent in front to the sheath in which the muscle is enclosed.

Sometimes one or two additional lines may be seen, one usually below the umbilicus; the position of the other, when it exists, is variable. These additional lines are for the most part incomplete.

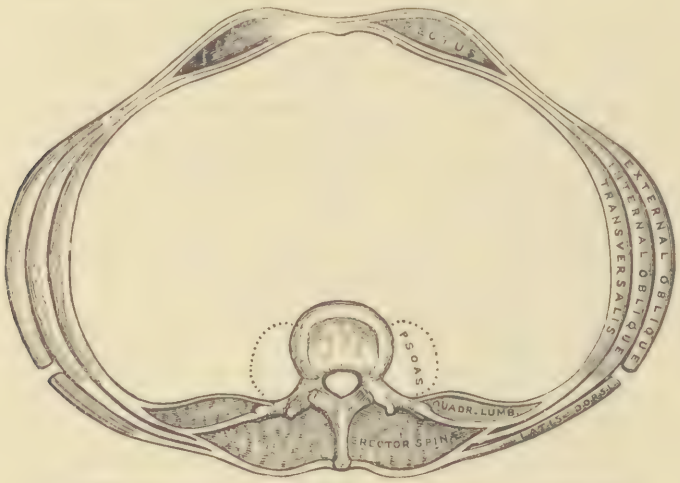


FIG. 295.—A transverse section of the abdomen in the lumbar region.

The Rectus is enclosed in a sheath, the **rectus sheath** (*vagina m. recti abdominis*) (Figs. 295 and 296), formed by the aponeurosis of the Oblique and Transversalis

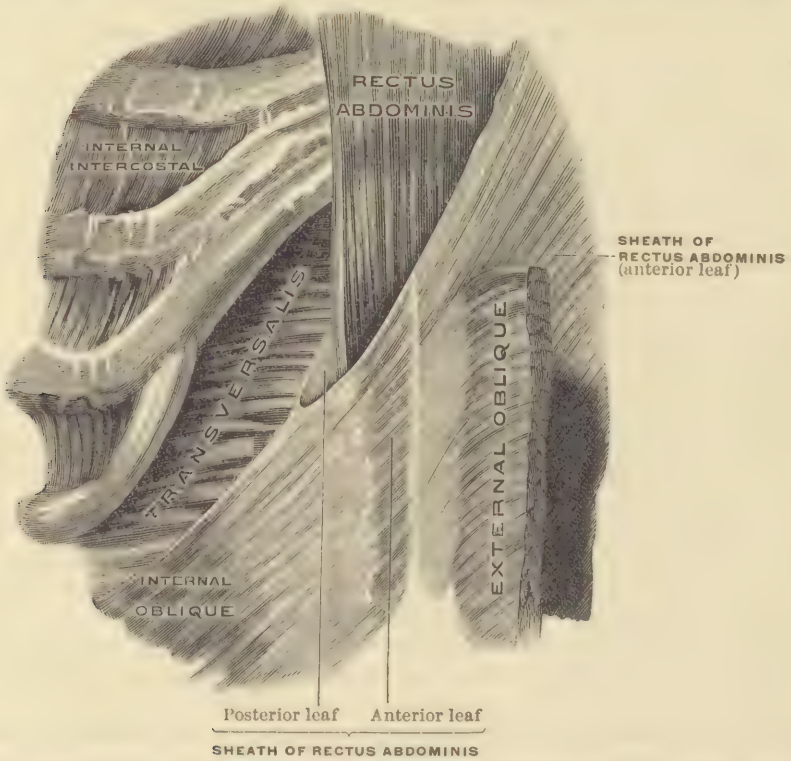


FIG. 296.—Transition of the tendon of the right internal oblique into the sheath of the rectus. (Spalteholz.)

muscles, which are arranged in the following manner. When the aponeurosis of the Internal oblique arrives at the outer margin of the Rectus it divides into two lamellæ,

one of which passes in front of the Rectus, blending with the aponeurosis of the External oblique; the other, behind it, blending with the aponeurosis of the Transversalis; and these, joining again at its inner border, are inserted into the linea alba. This arrangement of the aponeuroses exists along the upper three-fourths of the muscle: at the commencement of the lower fourth, the posterior wall of the sheath terminates in a thin curved margin, the **semilunar fold of Douglas** (*linea semicircularis*) (Fig. 293), the concavity of which looks downward toward the pubes; the aponeuroses of all three muscles passing in front of the Rectus without any separation. A very thin aponeurotic layer does pass behind the lower one-fourth of the muscle, but it is trivial as compared with the thickness of the layer behind the upper three-fourths of the muscle. This sudden thinning causes the semilunar fold of Douglas. The extremities of the fold of Douglas descend as pillars to the os pubis. The inner pillar is attached to the symphysis pubis; the outer pillar passes downward as a distinct band on the inner side of the internal abdominal ring to join with the outer fibres of the conjoined tendon, and assist to form the **ligament of Hesselbach**. There its fibres divide into two sets, internal and external; the internal fibres are attached to the ascending ramus of the os pubis and the pectineal fascia; the external ones pass to the Psoas fascia, to the deep surface of Poupart's ligament, and to the tendon of the Transversalis on the outer side of the ring. The Rectus muscle, in the situation where its sheath is deficient, is separated from the peritoneum by the transversalis fascia. The convex outer border of the Rectus muscle corresponds to the linea semilunaris.

The **Pyramidalis** is a small muscle, triangular in shape, placed at the lower part of the abdomen, in front of the Rectus, and contained in the same sheath with that muscle. It *arises* by tendinous fibres from the front of the os pubis and the anterior pubic ligament; the fleshy portion of the muscle passes upward, diminishing in size as it ascends, and terminates by a pointed extremity, which is *inserted* into the linea alba, midway between the umbilicus and the os pubis. This muscle is sometimes found wanting on one or both sides; the lower end of the Rectus then becomes proportionately increased in size. Occasionally it has been found double on one side, or the muscles of the two sides are of unequal size. Sometimes its length exceeds what is stated above.

Besides the Rectus and Pyramidalis muscles, the sheath of the Rectus contains the superior and deep epigastric arteries, the terminations of the lumbar arteries and of the lower intercostal arteries and nerves.

Nerves.—The abdominal muscles are supplied by the lower intercostal nerves. The Transversalis and Internal oblique also receive filaments from the hypogastric branch of the ilio-hypogastric and sometimes from the ilio-inguinal. The Cremaster is supplied by the genital branch of the Genito-crural.

In the description of the abdominal muscles mention has frequently been made of the **linea alba, lineæ semilunares,** and **lineæ transversæ**; when the dissection of the muscles is completed these structures should be examined.

The Linea Alba (Figs. 293 and 296).—The linea alba is a tendinous raphé seen along the middle line of the abdomen, extending from the ensiform cartilage to the symphysis pubis, to which it is attached. It is placed between the inner borders of the Recti muscles, and is formed by the blending of the aponeuroses of the Obliqui and Transversales muscles. It is narrow below, corresponding to the narrow interval existing between the Recti; but broader above, as these muscles diverge from one another in their ascent, becoming of considerable breadth when there is great distention of the abdomen from pregnancy or ascites. It presents numerous apertures for the passage of vessels and nerves: the largest of these is the **umbilicus** (Fig. 297). The umbilicus is a fibrous ring formed by the fibres of the aponeurosis of the linea alba, is filled with scar tissue; in the fœtus transmits the umbilical vein, the two hypogastric arteries, the allantoic duct, and the vitello-intestinal duct; but in the

adult is obliterated, the cicatrix being stronger than the neighboring parts; hence umbilical hernia occurs in the adult *near* the umbilicus, whilst in the fœtus it occurs *at* the umbilicus. The remains of the fœtal structures are cord-like in character, and they diverge from the umbilicus within the abdomen. The remains of the umbilical vein constitute the round ligament of the liver, and this cord passes upward (Fig. 297). The remains of the hypogastric arteries pass downward (Fig. 297). The remains of the allantois become the urachus, which passes to the summit of the bladder (Fig. 297). The depression of the umbilicus was created by the urachus. The linea alba is in relation, in *front*, with the integument, to which it is adherent, especially at the umbilicus; *behind*, it is separated from the peritoneum by the transversalis fascia; and *below*, by the urachus, and the bladder when that organ is distended.

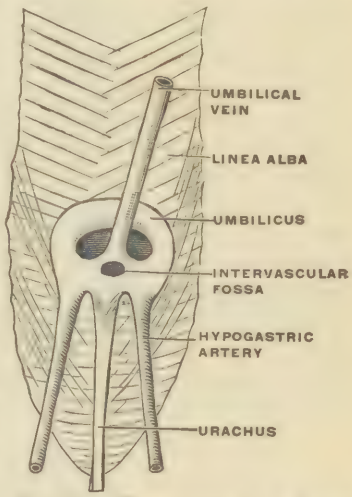


FIG. 297. The umbilicus of the fœtus seen from within the abdomen. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The Lineæ Semilunares (Fig. 289).—The lineæ semilunares are two curved tendinous lines placed one on each side of the linea alba. Each corresponds with the outer border of the Rectus muscle, extends from the cartilage of the ninth rib to the pubic spine, and is formed by the aponeurosis of the Internal oblique at its point of division to enclose the Rectus, where it is reinforced in front by the External oblique and behind by the Transversalis.

The Lineæ Transversæ (*inscriptiones tendineæ*) (Fig. 289).—The lineæ transversæ are narrow transverse lines which intersect the Recti muscles, as already mentioned; they connect the lineæ semilunares with the linea alba.

Actions.—The abdominal muscles perform a threefold action:

When the pelvis and thorax are fixed, they compress the abdominal viscera, by constricting the cavity of the abdomen, in which action they are materially assisted by the descent of the Diaphragm. By these means the fœtus is expelled from the uterus, the fæces from the rectum, the urine from the bladder, and the contents of the stomach in vomiting.

If the pelvis and spine are fixed, these muscles compress the lower part of the thorax, materially assisting expiration. If the pelvis alone is fixed, the thorax is bent directly forward when the muscles of both sides act, or to either side when those of the two sides act alternately, rotation of the trunk at the same time taking place to the opposite side.

If the thorax is fixed, these muscles, acting together, draw the pelvis upward, as in climbing; or, acting singly, they draw the pelvis upward, and bend the vertebral column to one side or the other. The Recti muscles, acting from below, depress the thorax, and consequently flex the vertebral column; when acting from above, they flex the pelvis upon the vertebral column. The Pyramidalis are tensors of the linea alba.

The Transversalis Fascia (*fascia transversalis*).—The fascia transversalis is a thin aponeurotic membrane which lies between the inner surface of the Transversalis muscle and the extra-peritoneal fat. It forms part of the general layer of fascia which lines the interior of the abdominal and pelvis cavities, and is directly continuous with the iliac and pelvic fasciæ. In the inguinal region the transversalis fascia is thick and dense in structure, and joined by fibres from the aponeurosis of the Transversalis muscle, but it becomes thin and cellular as it ascends to the Diaphragm, and blends with the fascia covering this muscle. In *front*, it unites across the middle line with the fascia on the opposite side of the body, and behind it becomes

lost in the fat which covers the posterior surfaces of the kidneys. *Below*, it has the following attachments: posteriorly, it is connected to the whole length of the crest of the ilium, between the attachments of the Transversalis and Iliacus muscles; between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the femoral vessels it is connected to the posterior margin of Poupart's ligament, and is there continuous with the iliac fascia. Internal to the femoral vessels it is thin and attached to the os pubis and pectineal line, behind the conjoined tendon, with which it is united; and, corresponding to the point where the femoral vessels pass into the thigh, this fascia descends in front of them, forming the anterior wall of the crural sheath. Beneath Poupart's ligament it is strengthened by a band of fibrous tissue, which is only loosely connected to Poupart's ligament, and is specialized as the **deep crural arch**. The spermatic cord in the male and the round ligament in the female pass through this fascia; the point where they pass through is called the **internal abdominal ring**. This opening is not visible externally, owing to a prolongation of the transversalis fascia on these structures, forming the **infundibuliform fascia.**

The **internal** or **deep abdominal ring** (*annulus inguinalis abdominis*) (Figs. 292 and 298) is situated in the transversalis fascia, midway between the anterior

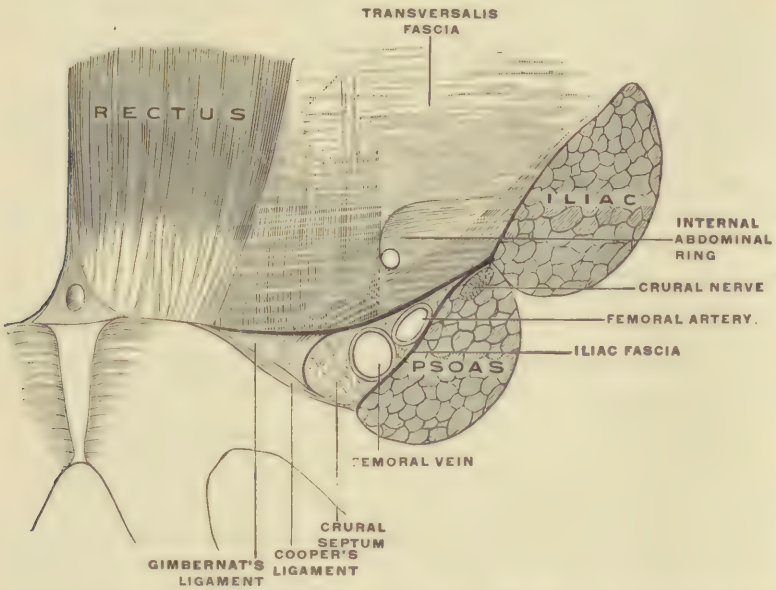


FIG. 298.—The relation of the femoral and internal abdominal rings, seen from within the abdomen after removal of the peritoneum. (Poirier and Charpy.)

superior spine of the ilium and the symphysis pubis, and about half an inch above Poupart's ligament. It is of an oval form, the extremities of the oval directed upward and downward, varies in size in different subjects, and is much larger in the male than in the female. Its lower border is strengthened by the collection of fibres called **Hesselbach's ligament**, lying directly in front of the deep epigastric artery. It is the outer portion of the conjoined tendon fused with the outer pillar of the semilunar fold of Douglas. The internal ring is bounded, above and externally, by the arched fibres of the Transversalis; below and internally, by the deep epigastric vessels. It transmits the spermatic cord in the male and the round ligament in the female. From its circumference a thin funnel-shaped membrane, the **infundibuliform** or **internal spermatic fascia,** is continued round the cord and testis, enclosing them in a distinct pouch.

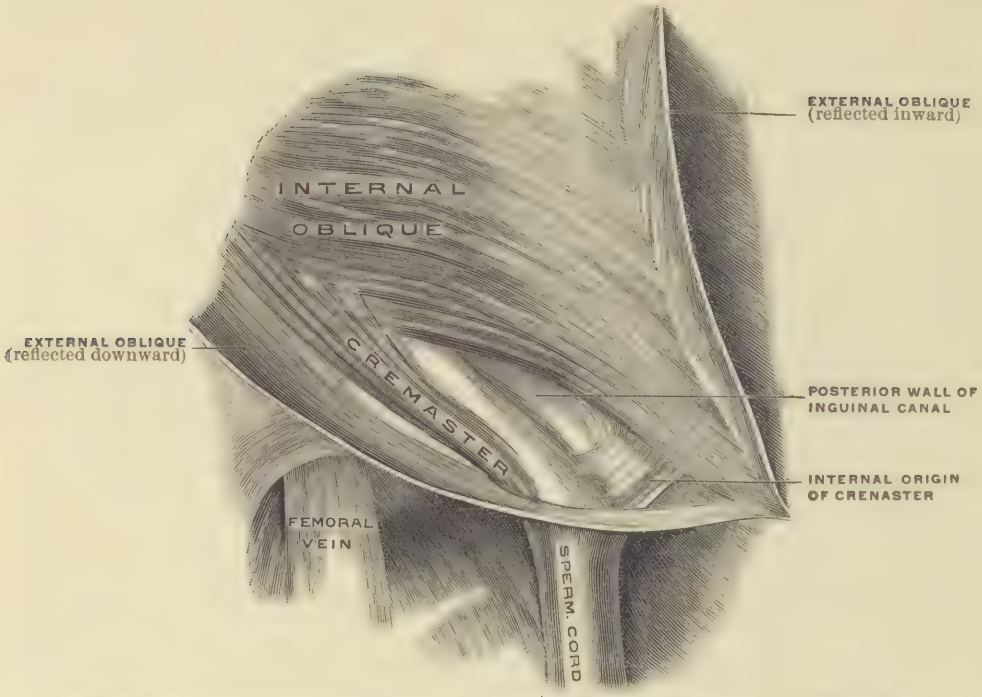


FIG. 299.—The right inguinal canal in the male, second layer, viewed from in front. (The first layer is shown in Fig. 290.) (Spalteholz.)

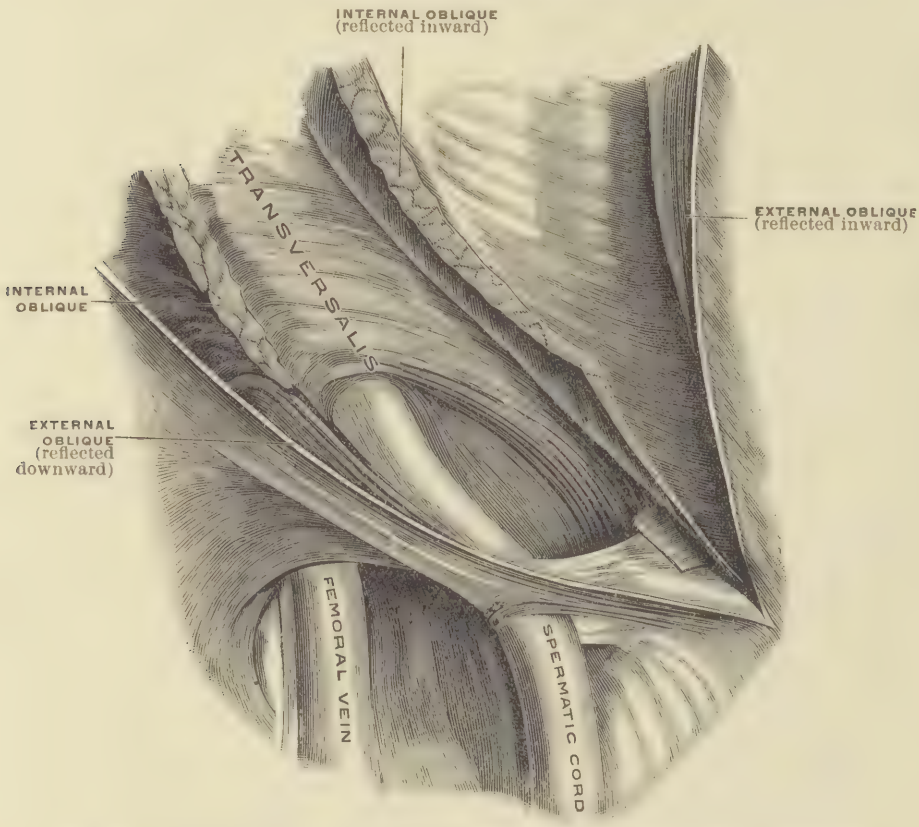


FIG. 300.—The right inguinal canal in the male, third layer, viewed from in front. (Spalteholz.)

When the sac of an oblique inguinal hernia passes through the internal or deep abdominal ring, the infundibuliform process of the transversalis fascia forms one of its coverings.

The Inguinal or Spermatic Canal (*canalis inguinalis*) (Figs. 299 and 300).—The inguinal or spermatic canal contains the **spermatic cord** (*funiculus spermaticus*) in the male and the **round ligament** (*ligamentum teres uteri*) in the female. It is an oblique canal about an inch and a half in length, directed downward and inward, and placed parallel to and a little above Poupart's ligament. It commences above at the internal or deep abdominal ring, which is the point where the cord enters the spermatic canal, and terminates below at the external ring. It is bounded in front by the integument and superficial fascia, by the aponeurosis of the External oblique throughout its whole length, and by the Internal oblique for its outer third; behind, by the triangular fascia, the conjoined tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis, transversalis fascia, and the subperitoneal fat and peritoneum; above, by the arched fibres of the Internal oblique and Transversalis; below, by Gimbernat's ligament, and by the union of the fascia transversalis with Poupart's ligament. The median aspect of the floor of the canal is strengthened by dense fibres which are attached to the pubis and to the Rectus muscle. These fibres constitute the **falx inguinalis.** The deep epigastric artery passes upward and inward behind the canal lying close to the inner side of the internal abdominal ring (Fig. 292). The interval between this artery and the outer edge of the Rectus is named **Hesselbach's triangle,** the base of which is formed by Poupart's ligament.

That form of protrusion in which the intestine follows the course of the spermatic cord along the spermatic canal is called oblique inguinal hernia.

The Deep Crural Arch.—Curving over the vessels, just at the point where they become femoral, on the abdominal side of Poupart's ligament and loosely connected with it, is a thickened band of fibres called the deep crural arch. It is apparently a thickening of the fascia transversalis, joining externally to the centre of Poupart's ligament, and arching across the front of the crural sheath to be inserted by a broad attachment into the spine of the os pubis and ilio-pectineal line, behind the conjoined tendon. In some subjects this structure is not very prominently marked, and not infrequently it is altogether wanting.

Cooper's Ligament or the **Reflected Tendon of Cooper** (Fig. 298) is a small reflection from the tendon of the Transversalis which passes downward and outward behind Gimbernat's ligament.

Surface Form. The only two muscles of this group which have any considerable influence on surface form are the External oblique and Rectus muscles of the abdomen. With regard to the External oblique, the upper digitations of its origin from the ribs are well marked, intermingled with the serrations of the Serratus magnus; the lower digitations are not visible, being covered by the thick border of the Latissimus dorsi. Its attachment to the crest of the ilium, in conjunction with the Internal oblique, forms a thick oblique roll, which determines the *iliac furrow*. Sometimes on the front of the lateral region of the abdomen an undulating outline marks the spot where the muscular fibres terminate and the aponeurosis commences. The outer border of the Rectus is defined by the *linea semilunaris*, which may be exactly defined by putting the muscle into action. It corresponds with a curved line, with its convexity outward, drawn from the end of the cartilage of the ninth rib to the spine of the os pubis, so that the centre of the line, at or near the umbilicus, is three inches from the median line. The inner border of the Rectus corresponds to the *linea alba*, marked on the surface of the body by a groove, the **abdominal furrow,** which extends from the infrasternal fossa to, or to a little below, the umbilicus, where it gradually becomes lost. The surface of the Rectus presents three transverse furrows, the **lineæ transversæ.** The upper two of these, one opposite or a little below the tip of the ensiform cartilage, and another, midway between this point and the umbilicus, are usually well marked; the third, opposite the umbilicus, is not so distinct. The umbilicus, situated in the linea alba, varies very much in position as regards its level. It is always situated above a zone drawn round the body opposite the highest point of the crest of the ilium, generally being about three-quarters of an inch to an inch above this line. It usually corresponds, therefore, to the fibro-cartilage between the third and fourth lumbar vertebræ.

2. The Deep Muscles of the Abdomen.

Psoas magnus.	Iliacus.
Psoas parvus.	Quadratus lumborum.

The Psoas magnus, the Psoas parvus, and the Iliacus muscles, with the fascia covering them, will be described with the Muscles of the Lower Extremity.

The Fascia Covering the Quadratus Lumborum (Fig. 295).—This is the most anterior of the three layers of the lumbar fascia. It is a thin layer of fascia, which, passing over the anterior surface of the Quadratus lumborum, is attached, internally, to the bases of the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebræ; below, to the ilio-lumbar ligament; and above, to the apex and lower border of the last rib.

The portion of this fascia which extends from the transverse process of the first lumbar vertebra to the apex and lower border of the last rib constitutes the **ligamentum arcuatum externum.**

The **Quadratus Lumborum** (Fig. 283) is situated in the lumbar region. It is irregularly quadrilateral in shape, and broader below than above. It *arises* by aponeurotic fibres from the ilio-lumbar ligament and the adjacent portion of the crest of the ilium for about two inches, and is *inserted* into the lower border of the last rib for about half its length, and by four small tendons, into the apices of the transverse processes of the four upper lumbar vertebræ. Occasionally a second portion of this muscle is found situated in front of the preceding. This arises from the upper borders of the transverse processes of three or four of the lower lumbar vertebræ, and is inserted into the lower margin of the last rib. The Quadratus lumborum is contained in a sheath formed by the anterior and middle lamellæ of the lumbar fasciæ.

Relations.—Its *anterior surface* (or rather the fascia which covers its anterior surface) is in relation with the colon, the kidney, the Psoas muscle, and the Diaphragm. Between the fascia and the muscle are the last dorsal, ilio-hypogastric, and ilio-inguinal nerves. Its *posterior surface* is in relation with the middle lamella of the lumbar fascia, which separates it from the Erector spinæ. The Quadratus lumborum extends, however, beyond the outer border of the Erector spinæ.

Nerve-supply.—The anterior branches of the last dorsal and first lumbar nerves; sometimes also a branch from the second lumbar nerve.

Actions.—The Quadratus lumborum draws down the last rib. It acts as a muscle of inspiration by helping to fix the origin of the Diaphragm. If the thorax and spine are fixed, it may act upon the pelvis, raising it toward its own side when only one muscle is put in action; and when both muscles act together, either from below or above, they flex the trunk.

IV. MUSCLES OF THE PELVIC OUTLET.

The muscles of this region are situated at the pelvic outlet in the ischio-rectal region and the perinæum. They include the following:

1. Muscles of the ischio-rectal region.
2. Muscles of the perinæum in the male.
3. Muscles of the perinæum in the female.

1. The Muscles of the Ischio-rectal Region.

Corrugator cutis ani.	Internal sphincter ani.
External sphincter ani.	Levator ani.

Coccygeus.

The Corrugator Cutis Ani.—Around the anus is a thin stratum of involuntary muscular fibre, which radiates from the orifice. Internally, the fibres fade off

into the submucous tissue, while externally they blend with the true skin. By its contraction it raises the skin into ridges around the margin of the anus.

The **External Sphincter Ani** (*m. sphincter ani externus*) (Figs. 301, 306, 307, and 308) is a thin, flat plane of muscular fibres, elliptical in shape and intimately adher-

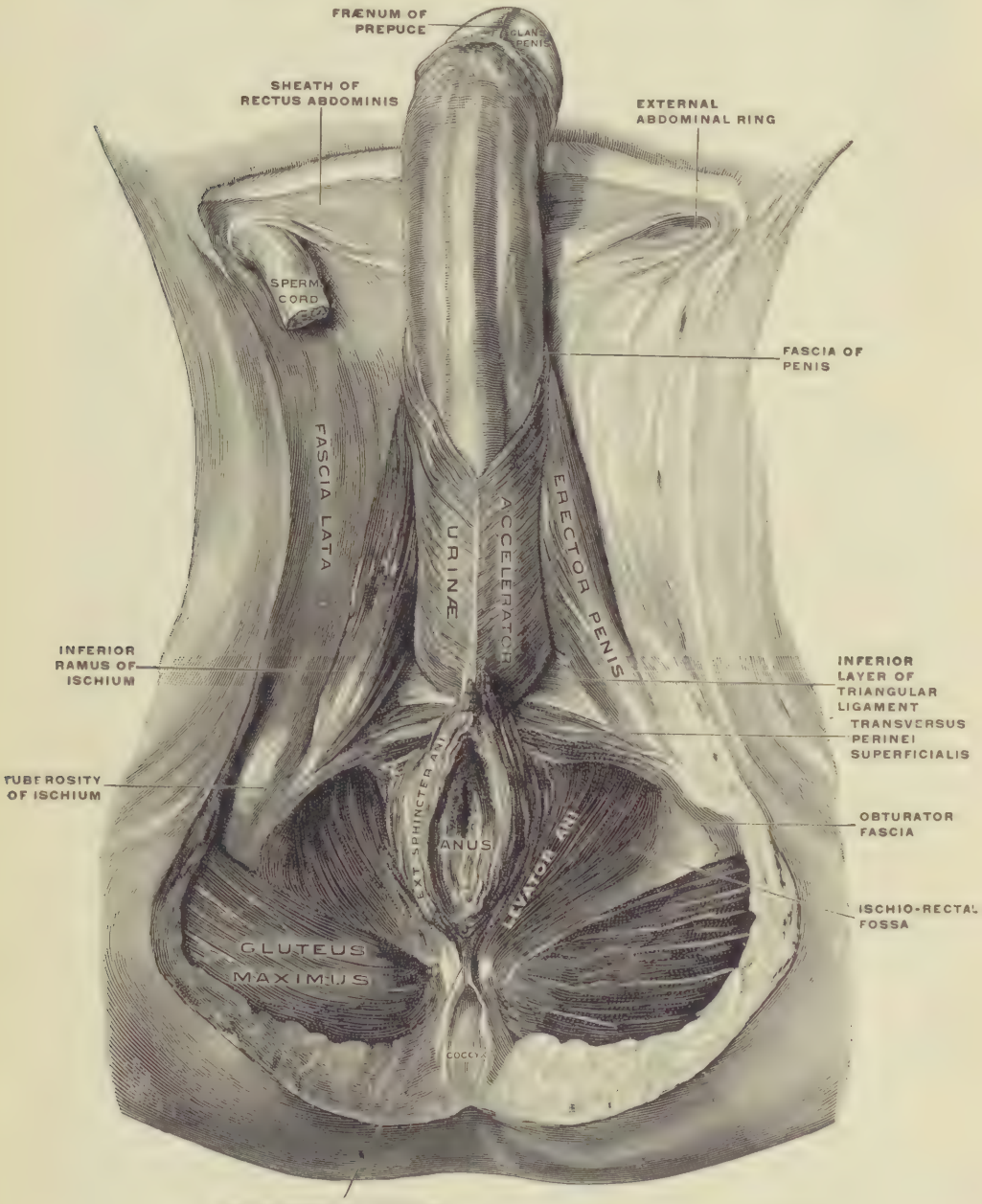


FIG. 301.—The muscles of the male perinæum, viewed from below. (Spalteholz.)

ent to the integument surrounding the margin of the anus. It measures about three or four inches in length from its anterior to its posterior extremity, being about an inch in breadth opposite the anus. It arises from the tip and back of the coccyx by a narrow tendinous band, and from the superficial fascia in front

of that bone; and is inserted into the raphé of the Accelerator urinæ muscle and into the central tendinous point of the perinæum, joining with the two Superficial transverse perineal, the Levator ani, and the Accelerator urinæ muscles. Many of the fibres are continuous with the Accelerator urinæ in the male and with the Sphincter vaginæ in the female. Often some of the fibres are continuous with the Transverse perineal muscles. It is continuous above with the Levator ani. Like other sphincter muscles, it consists of two planes of muscular fibre, which surround the margin of the anus and join in a commissure in front and behind, some fibres crossing from side to side in front and behind the anus.

Nerve-supply.—A branch from the anterior division of the fourth sacral and the inferior hæmorrhoidal branch of the internal pudic.

Actions.—The action of this muscle is peculiar: 1. It is, like other sphincter muscles, always in a state of tonic contraction, and having no antagonistic muscle, it keeps the anal orifice closed. 2. It can be put into a condition of greater con-

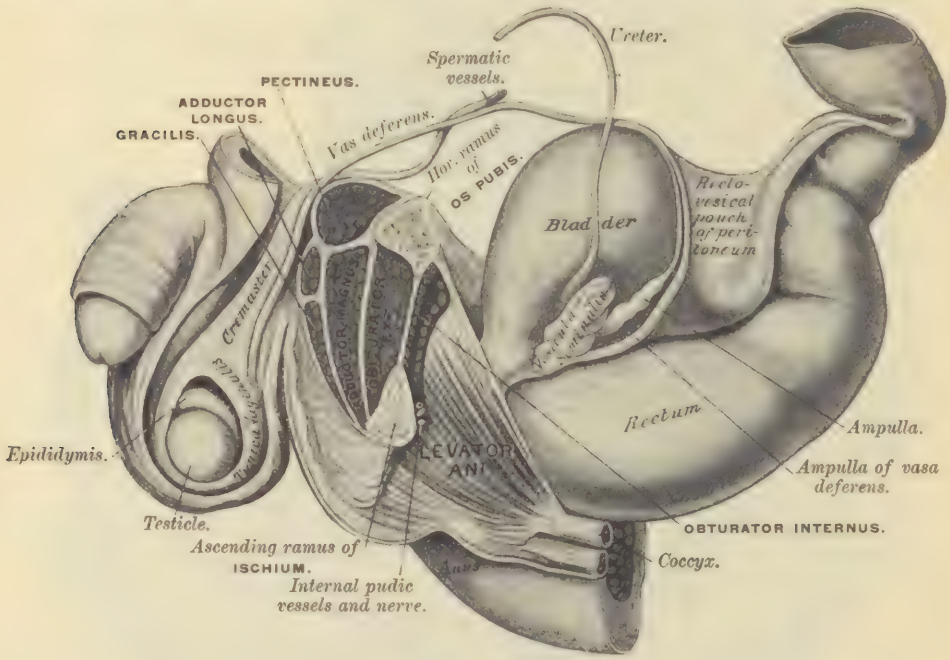


FIG. 302.—Side view of pelvis, showing Levator ani. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons.)

traction under the influence of the will, so as to occlude more firmly the anal aperture in expiratory efforts unconnected with defecation. 3. Taking its fixed point at the coccyx, it helps to fix the central point of the perinæum, so that the Accelerator urinæ may act from this fixed point.

The **Internal Sphincter Ani** (*m. sphincter ani internus*) is a muscular ring which surrounds the lower extremity of the rectum for about an inch, its inferior border being contiguous to, but quite separate from, the External sphincter. This muscle is about two lines in thickness, and is formed by an aggregation of the involuntary circular fibres of the intestine. It is paler in color and less coarse in texture than the External sphincter.

Actions.—Its action is entirely involuntary. It helps the External sphincter to occlude the anal aperture.

The **Levator Ani** (Figs. 302, 303, 304, and 305) is a broad, thin muscle, situated on each side of the pelvis. It is attached to the inner surface of the

sides of the true pelvis, and, descending, unites with its fellow of the opposite side to form the floor of the pelvic cavity. It supports the viscera in this cavity and surrounds the various structures which pass through it. It is usually possible to detect an interval between the fibres rising from the pubis and those rising from the pelvic fascia, and this interval marks the fact that the muscle described as one is really two. The pubic fibres constitute the **Pubococcygeus muscle** and the other fibres the **Iliococcygeus muscle.**[1]

The **Pubococcygeus muscle** takes origin from the posterior aspect of the ramus of the pubis and from the most anterior portion of the tendinous arch of the Levator ani muscle. The fibres of origin from the pubis surround anteriorly the origin of the Internal obturator muscle. The muscle is a band, about one inch in width, thickest at its outer border, where it overlaps the Iliococcygeus. It passes backward, downward, and inward, "near the prostate in the male, the urethra and vagina in the female,"[2] and near to the rectum. Most of the fibres pass back

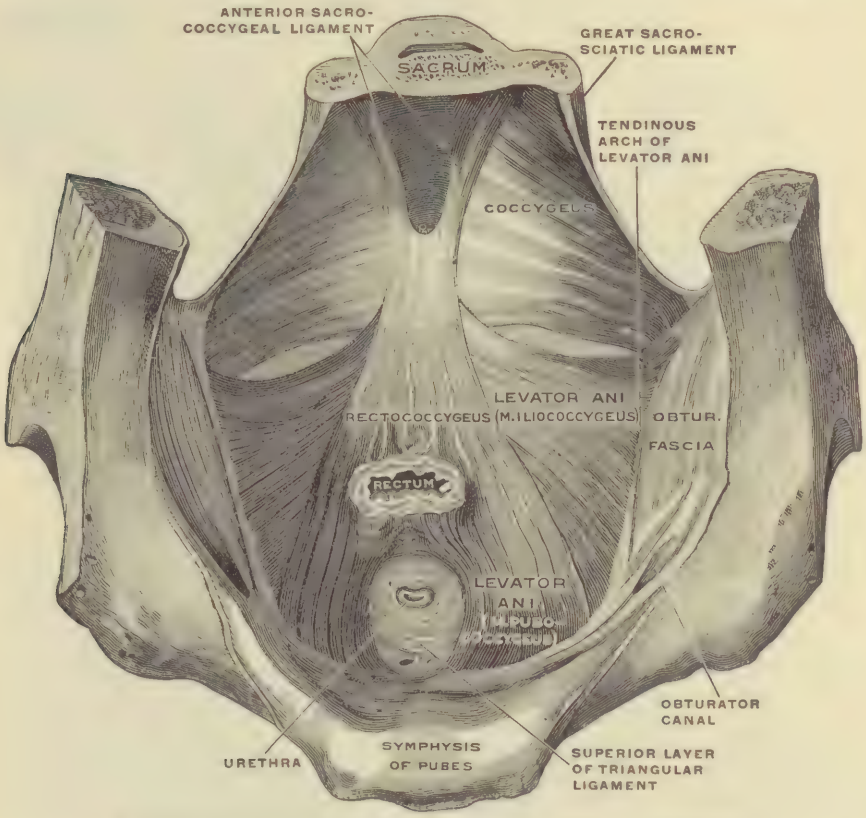


Fig. 303.—The Levator ani of the male, viewed from above. (Spalteholz.)

of the rectum, where they meet and join with the corresponding fibres of the opposite side. These united fibres form a thick, tendinous aponeurosis. "This is continued upward in front of the coccyx for some distance, and finally divides into two lateral portions, which have been named the **ligamenta sacro-coccygea anterior.** They are situated on either side of the middle sacral artery, and are finally inserted into the last one or two pieces of the sacrum and the first piece of the coccyx."[3] A few of the fibres of the Pubococcygeus muscle pass to the

[1] Peter Thompson. The Myology of the Pelvic Floor.
[2] Spalteholz's Atlas. Translated and edited by Barker.
[3] Peter Thompson. The Myology of the Pelvic Floor.

central tendon of the perinæum, come in contact with but do not terminate in the rectal wall, descend in front of and close to the anterior rectal wall, and terminate in the anterior portion of the sphincter ani and in the skin of the anus (Peter Thompson).

Luschka and others believe that these anterior fibres descend among the longitudinal fibres of the rectum. It is certain that the most anterior fibres of the

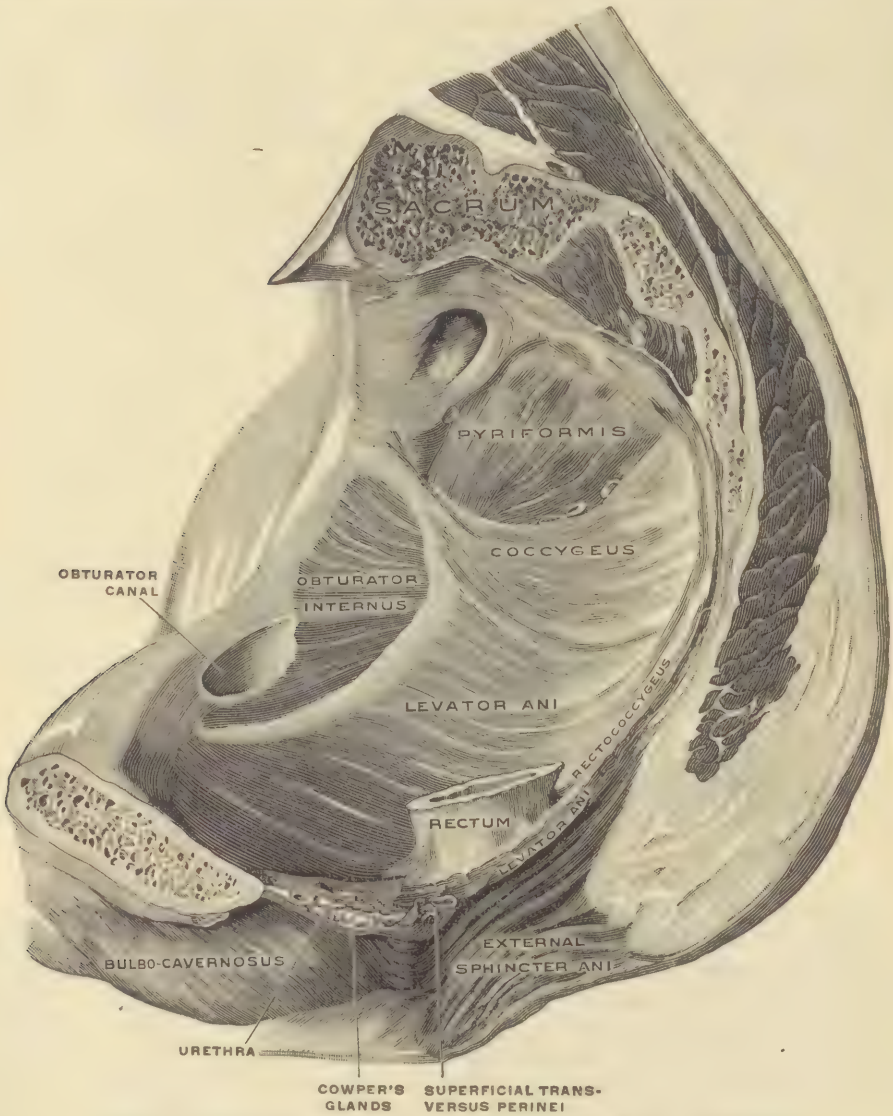


FIG. 304.—The right Levator ani in the male, viewed from the left. (Spalteholz.)

Pubococcygeus muscle pass to the central point of the perinæum. They pass "backward and downward on the side of the prostate, and in some cases on the side of the urethra immediately it emerges from the prostate."[1] These anterior fibres in the female descend upon the side of the vagina. The anterior fibres are the **preanal fibres of the Levator ani.** They constitute what Santorini named

[1] Peter Thompson. The Myology of the Pelvic Floor.

the **levator prostatæ**, because he regarded them as constituting a distinct muscle, which surrounds the prostate as a sling. Krause calls these fibres the **levator urethræ**; Testut, the **fibres pré-rectales**, and Prout, the **Recto-urethralis muscle.**

The **Iliococcygeus muscle** *arises* from the **tendinous arch of the Levator ani muscle** (*arcus tendineus m. levatoris ani*). This arch is concave upward. The anterior end of the arch begins on the posterior surface of the superior ramus of the pubis. "The posterior end can be followed as far as the linea arcuata of the ilium, between these two points it descends for a variable distance, but always leaves the canalis obturatorius free."[1] The fibres, coursing internally and downward, pass below the posterior portion of the Pubococcygeus. The anterior fibres join the fibres of the other side, between the anus and the tip of the coccyx in a median raphé.

The posterior fibres are inserted into the sides of the last two pieces and into the tip of the coccyx. Peter Thompson points out that the Iliococcygeus muscle is liable to variations. It is strongly developed in but few, is usually thin, the muscular bundles being separated by membranous intervals; it may be replaced by fibrous tissue and may even be absent.[2]

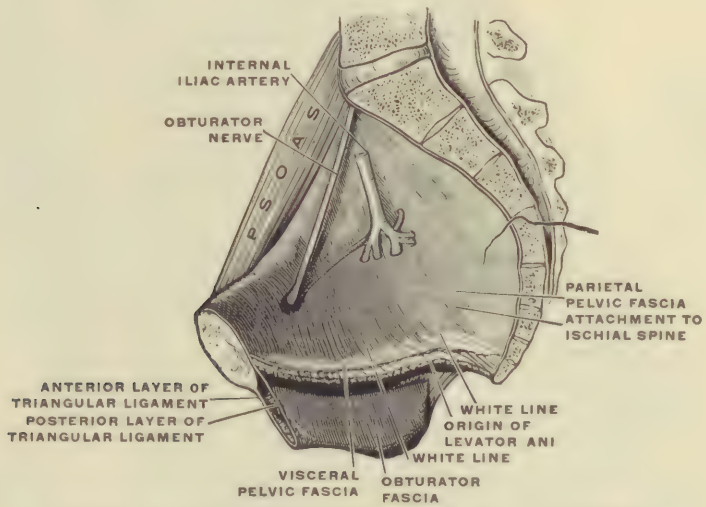


FIG. 305.—The outer wall of the pelvis (pelvic fascia). (Cunningham.)

Relations of the Levator Ani.—By its *inner* or *pelvic surface*, with the recto-vesical fascia, which separates it from the viscera of the pelvis and from the peritoneum. By its *outer* or *perineal surface*, it forms the inner boundary of the ischio-rectal fossa, and is covered by a thin layer of fascia, the **ischio-rectal** or **anal fascia**, given off from the obturator fascia. Its *posterior border* is free and separated from the Coccygeus muscle by a cellular interspace. Its *anterior border* is separated from the muscle of the opposite side by a triangular space, through which the urethra, and in the female the vagina, passes from the pelvis.

Nerve-supply.—A branch from the anterior division of the fourth sacral nerve and a branch from the pudic nerve, which is sometimes derived from the perineal and sometimes from the inferior hemorrhoidal division.

Actions.—The entire Levator ani muscle enters into the formation of the diaphragm of the pelvis and aids in supporting the rectum, vagina, and bladder.

[1] Spalteholz's Atlas. Translated and edited by Barker.

[2] Myology of Muscles.

The two parts of the muscle have different functions. The Iliococcygei have no other function than that of supporting the viscera. In early life they flex the vertebræ of the coccyx on one another and flex the coccyx on the sacrum, but do not act directly at any age on the rectum or pelvic viscera (Peter Thompson). The Pubococcygei, especially in the female, have most important functions. They are the most influential supports of the pelvic floor and restore the pelvic floor to its proper position after the depression induced by parturition, defecation, and efforts at urination.[1] Normally, they pull the perinæum upward after the descending head has pulled it down. In some cases the contraction of the muscles actually obstructs the descent of the head (Peter Thompson). The muscles are strongly developed in females, and, acting with the Sphincter vaginæ, they aid in contracting the vaginal canal. The muscles constrict the rectum and also lift the rectum with the pelvic floor. During defecation the position of the rectal contents is maintained by intra-abdominal pressure, the muscles lift the perinæum over the fecal matter (Goffe). The Levator ani is also a muscle of forced expiration.

The **Coccygeus** is a flat, triangular muscle situated behind and parallel with the preceding. It is a triangular plane of muscular and tendinous fibres, *arising*, by its apex, from the spine of the ischium, the obturator fascia, the edge of the great sacro-sciatic notch, and from the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament, and *inserted*, by its base, into the side of the lower two vertebræ of the sacrum and the upper two vertebræ of the coccyx. It assists the Levator ani and Pyriformis in closing in the back part of the outlet of the pelvis.

Relations.—By its *inner* or *pelvic surface*, with the rectum. By its *external surface*, with the lesser sacro-sciatic ligament. The *lower border* is in relation with the posterior border of the Levator ani, but separated from it by a cellular interval: its *upper border* is in relation with the lower border of the Pyriformis, but separated from it by the sciatic and internal pudic vessels and nerve.

Nerve-supply.—A branch from the fourth and fifth sacral nerves.

Action.—The Coccygei muscles raise and support the coccyx, after it has been pressed backward during defecation or parturition.

2. The Muscles and Fasciæ of the Perinæum in the Male (Figs. 301, 306, 307, 308).

Transversus perinei superficialis.	Erector penis.
Accelerator urinæ.	Compressor urethræ.

Superficial Fascia (*fascia superficialis perinei*).—The superficial fascia of the perinæum consists of two layers, superficial and deep, as in other regions of the body. The superficial fascia over the posterior portion of the perinæum is arranged in fatty layers which fill the ischio-rectal fossa on each side of the rectum and anus. The superficial fascia over the *anterior portion* of the perinæum (*urethral region*) requires fuller consideration.

The **Superficial Layer** is thick, loose, areolar in texture, and, except toward the scrotum, contains much adipose tissue in its meshes, the amount of which varies in different subjects. In front, it is continuous with the dartos of the scrotum; behind, it is continuous with the subcutaneous areolar tissue surrounding the anus; and, on either side, with the same fascia on the inner side of the thighs. In the middle line it is adherent to the skin of the raphé and to the deep layer of

[1] Peter Thompson. The Myology of the Pelvic Floor.

the superficial fascia. This layer should be carefully removed after it has been examined, when the deep layer will be exposed.

The **Deep Layer of Superficial Fascia** or the **Fascia of Colles** is thin, aponeurotic in structure, and of considerable strength, serving to bind down the muscles of the root of the penis. It is continuous, in front, with the deep fascia of the penis, and the dartos of the scrotum, the fascia of the spermatic cord, and Scarpa's fascia upon the anterior portion of the abdomen; on either side it is firmly attached to the margins of the rami of the os pubis and ischium, external to the crus penis, and as far back as the tuberosity of the ischium; posteriorly, it curves down behind the Superficial transverse perineal muscles (**reflected portion of fascia**) to join the lower margin of the triangular ligament, which structure is a prolongation of the deep layer of the superficial fascia. The deep layer is attached to the superficial layer in the median line and to the

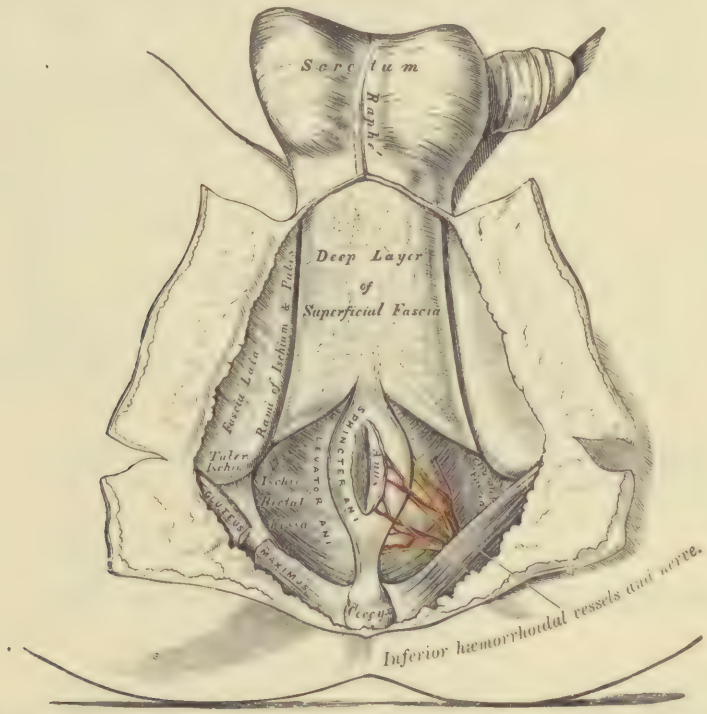


FIG. 306.—The perinæum. The integument and superficial layer of superficial fascia reflected.

median septum of the Accelerator urinæ muscle. At the central tendon of the perinæum the reflected portion of the fascia becomes blended with the insertions of the External anal sphincter, the two Superficial transverse perineal muscles, and the Accelerator urinæ. This fascia not only covers the muscles in this region, but sends upward a vertical septum from its deep surface, which separates the back part of the subjacent space into two, the septum being incomplete in front.

The Central Tendinous Point of the Perinæum.—This is a fibrous point in the middle line of the perinæum, between the urethra and the rectum, being about half an inch in front of the anus. At this point four muscles converge and are attached—viz., the External sphincter ani, the Accelerator urinæ, and the two Superficial transverse perineal; so that by the contraction of these muscles, which extend in opposite directions, it serves as a fixed point of support.

The **Transversus Perinei Superficialis** is a narrow muscular slip, which passes more or less transversely across the back part of the perineal space. It *arises* by a small tendon from the inner and forepart of the tuberosity of the ischium, and, passing inward, is inserted into the central tendinous point of the perinæum, joining in this situation with the muscle of the opposite side, the External sphincter ani behind, and the Accelerator urinæ in front. The base of the triangular ligament lies just beneath this muscle.

Nerve-supply.—The perineal branch of the internal pudic.

Actions.—By their contraction they serve to fix the central tendinous point of the perinæum.

The **Accelerator Urinæ**, called also the **Ejaculator seminis** and the **Ejaculator urinæ** (*m. bulbocavernosus*), is placed in the middle line of the perinæum, immediately in front of the anus. It consists of two symmetrical halves, united along the median line by a tendinous raphé. It *arises* from the central tendon

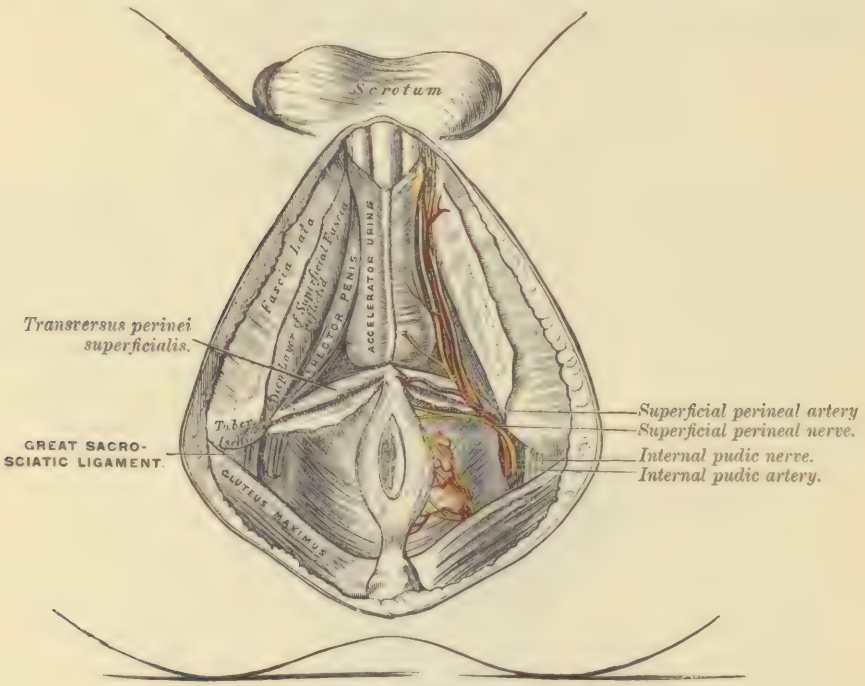


FIG. 307.—The superficial muscles and vessels of the perinæum.

of the perinæum, and from the median raphé in front. From this point its fibres diverge like the plumes of a pen; the most posterior form a thin layer, which is lost on the anterior surface of the triangular ligament; the middle fibres encircle the bulb and adjacent parts of the corpus spongiosum, and join with the fibres of the opposite side, on the upper part of the corpus spongiosum, in a strong aponeurosis; the anterior fibres, the longest and most distinct, spread out over the sides of the corpus cavernosum, to be *inserted* partly into that body, anterior to the Erector penis, occasionally extending to the os pubis; partly terminating in a tendinous expansion, which covers the dorsal vessels of the penis. The latter fibres are best seen by dividing the muscle longitudinally, and dissecting it outward from the surface of the urethra. Many fibres of the External sphincter ani and of the Superficial transverse perineal muscles pass into this muscle.

Action.—This muscle serves to empty the canal of the urethra, after the bladder has expelled its contents; during the greater part of the act of micturition

its fibres are relaxed, and it only comes into action at the end of the process. The middle fibres are supposed, by Krause, to assist in the erection of the corpus spongiosum, by compressing the erectile tissue of the bulb. The anterior fibres, on each side, which are known as Houston's muscles, according to Tyrrel, also contribute to the erection of the penis, as they are inserted into, and continuous with, the fascia of the penis, compressing the dorsal vein during the contraction of the muscle.

The **Erector Penis** (*m. ischiocavernosus*) covers part of the crus penis. It is an elongated muscle, broader in the middle than at either extremity, and situated on either side of the lateral boundary of the perinæum. It *arises* by tendinous and fleshy fibres from the inner surface of the tuberosity of the ischium, behind the crus penis, from the surface of the crus, and from the adjacent portion of the ramus of the ischium. From these points fleshy fibres succeed, which end in an aponeurosis which is *inserted* into the sides and under surface of the crus penis.

Nerve-supply.—The perineal branch of the internal pudic.

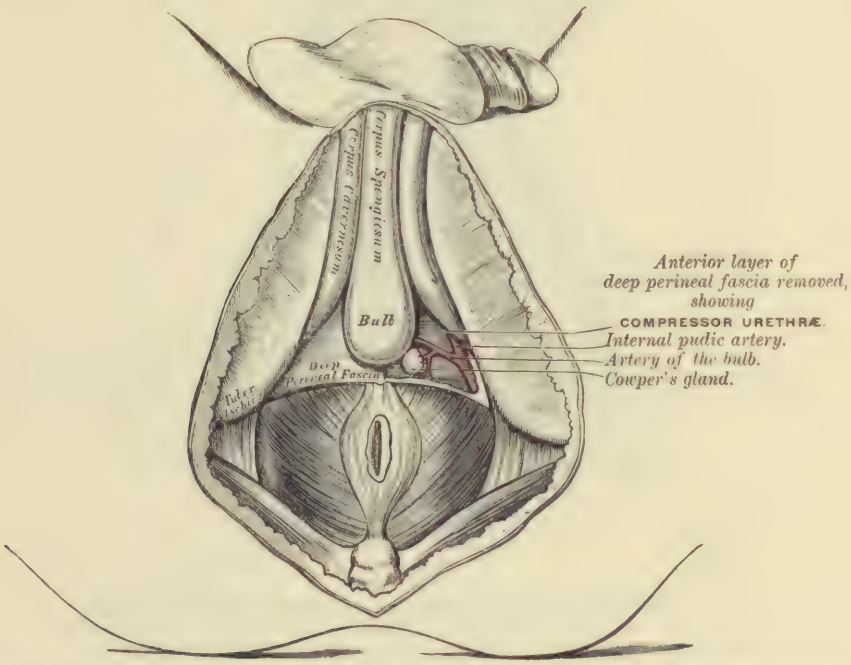


FIG. 308.—Triangular ligament or deep perineal fascia. On the left side the anterior layer has been removed.

Actions.—It compresses the crus penis and retards the return of the blood through the veins, and thus serves to maintain the organ erect.

Between the muscles just examined a triangular space exists, bounded internally by the Accelerator urinæ, externally by the Erector penis, and behind by the Transversus perinei superficialis. The floor of this space is formed by the triangular ligament of the urethra (deep perineal fascia), and running from behind forward in it are the superficial perineal vessels and nerves, the long pudendal nerve, and the transverse perineal artery coursing along the posterior boundary of the space on the Transversus perinei superficialis.

The **Triangular Ligament** or the **Deep Perineal Fascia** (*trigonum* or *diaphragma urogenitale*) (Figs. 305, 309, a d 310) is stretched almost horizontally across the pubic arch, so as to close in the front part of the outlet of the pelvis. It con-

sists of two dense musculo-membranous laminæ, which are united along their posterior borders, but are separated in front by intervening structures. The superficial of these two layers, the **superficial, anterior,** or **inferior layer** of the triangular ligament (*fascia trigoni urogenitalis inferior*), is triangular in shape and about an inch and a half in depth. Its apex is directed forward, and is separated from the subpubic ligament by an oval opening for the transmission of the dorsal vein of the penis. The apex of the triangular ligament is called the

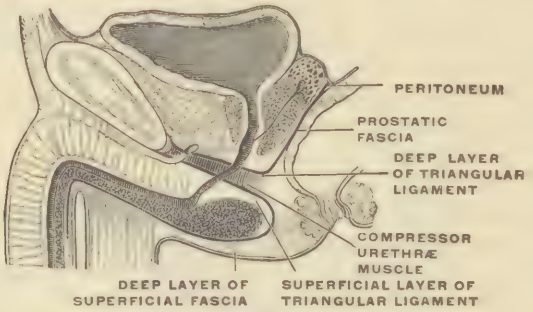


FIG. 309.—The aponeurosis of the perinæum. (Denonvilliers.)

transverse perineal or **transverse pelvic ligament** (*ligamentum transversum pelvis*). The lateral margins of the inferior layer of the triangular ligament are attached on each side to the rami of the ischium and os pubis, above the crura penis. The fusion of the two leaves posteriorly takes place beneath the Superficial transverse perineal muscles. The region of fusion of the two leaflets posteriorly is called the **base.** The base is directed toward the rectum, and connected to

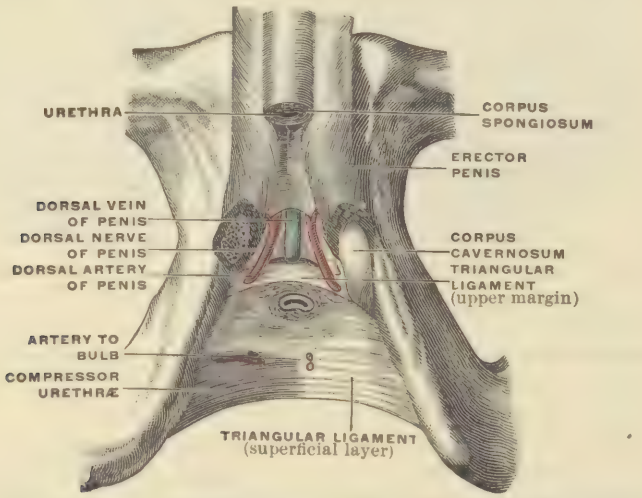


FIG. 310.—The superficial layer of the triangular ligament. The Compressor urethræ muscle lies behind the superficial layer of the triangular ligament and is shown in the figure for convenience. (Poirier and Charpy.)

the central tendinous point of the perinæum. It is continuous with the deep layer of the superficial fascia behind the Superficial transverse perineal muscles, and with a thin fascia which covers the cutaneous surface of the Levator ani muscle, the **anal** or **ischio-rectal fascia.**

This layer of the triangular ligament is perforated, about an inch below the symphysis pubis, by the urethra, the aperture for which is circular in form and

about three or four lines in diameter; by the arteries to the bulb and the ducts of Cowper's glands close to the urethral orifice; by the arteries to the corpora cavernosa—one on each side, close to the pubic arch and about half-way along the attached margin of the ligament; by the dorsal arteries and nerves of the penis near the apex of the ligament. Its base is also perforated by the superficial perineal vessels and nerves, while between its apex and the subpubic ligament the dorsal nerve of the penis and the dorsal vein of the penis passes upward into the pelvis.

If this superficial or inferior layer of the triangular ligament is detached on either side, the following structures will be seen between it and the deeper layer: the dorsal vein of the penis; the membranous portion of the urethra, and the Compressor urethræ muscle; Cowper's glands and their ducts; the pudic vessels and dorsal nerve of the penis; the artery and nerve of the bulb, and a plexus of veins. The two layers join the urethral wall and vagina medianward.

The **deep, posterior,** or **superior layer** (*fascia trigoni urogenitalis superior*) of the triangular ligament is derived from the obturator fascia and stretches across the pubic arch. If the obturator fascia is traced inward after covering the Obturator internus muscle, it will be found to be attached by some of its deeper or anterior fibres to the inner margin of the ischio-pubic ramus, while its superficial or posterior fibres pass over this attachment to become the superior layer of the triangular ligament. Behind, this layer of the fascia is continuous with the inferior layer and with the fascia of Colles, and in front it is separated from the apex of the prostate gland through the intervention of a prolongation of the recto-vesical fascia. It is pierced by the urethra, or rather consists of two halves which are separated in the middle line by the urethra passing between them.

The **Compressor** or **Constrictor Urethræ** (*m. constrictor urethræ*) in the male surrounds the whole length of the membranous portion of the urethra, and is contained between the two layers of the triangular ligament. It *arises*, by aponeurotic fibres, from the junction of the rami of the os pubis and ischium, to the extent of half or three-quarters of an inch: the point where the crura penis joins the transverse ligament of the perineum and the layers of the triangular ligament; each segment of the muscle passes inward, and divides into two fasciculi, which surround the membranous urethra and unite, at the upper and lower surfaces of this tube, with the muscle of the opposite side by means of a tendinous raphé. The Compressor urethræ is continuous posteriorly with the *m. prostaticus* and is continuous anteriorly with the circular fibres of the cavernous portion of the urethra. This muscle is frequently in two portions, an **anterior** and a **posterior,** separated by a distinct interval. In such cases the posterior fibres are called the **transversus perinei profundus,** and the anterior fibres are called the **sphincter urethræ membranaceæ.**

Nerve-supply.—The perineal branch of the internal pudic.

Actions.—The muscles of both sides act together as a sphincter, compressing the membranous portion of the urethra. During the transmission of fluids they, like the Acceleratores urinæ, are relaxed, and come into action only at the end of the process, to eject the last drops of the fluid.

3. The Muscles of the Perinæum in the Female (Fig. 311).

Transversus perinei superficialis.	Erector clitoridis.
Sphincter vaginæ.	Compressor urethræ.

The **Transversus Perinei Superficialis** in the **female** is a narrow muscular slip, which passes more or less transversely across the back part of the perineal space.

It *arises* by a small tendon from the inner and forepart of the tuberosity of the ischium, and, passing inward, is *inserted* into the central point of the perinæum, joining in this situation with the muscle of the opposite side, the External sphincter ani behind, and the Sphincter vaginæ in front.

Nerve-supply.—The perineal branch of the internal pudic.

Actions.—By their contraction they serve to fix the central tendinous point of the perinæum.

The **Sphincter Vaginæ** (*m. bulbocavernosus*) surrounds the orifice of the vagina, and is analogous to the Accelerator urinæ in the male. It is attached posteriorly to the central tendinous point of the perinæum, where it blends with

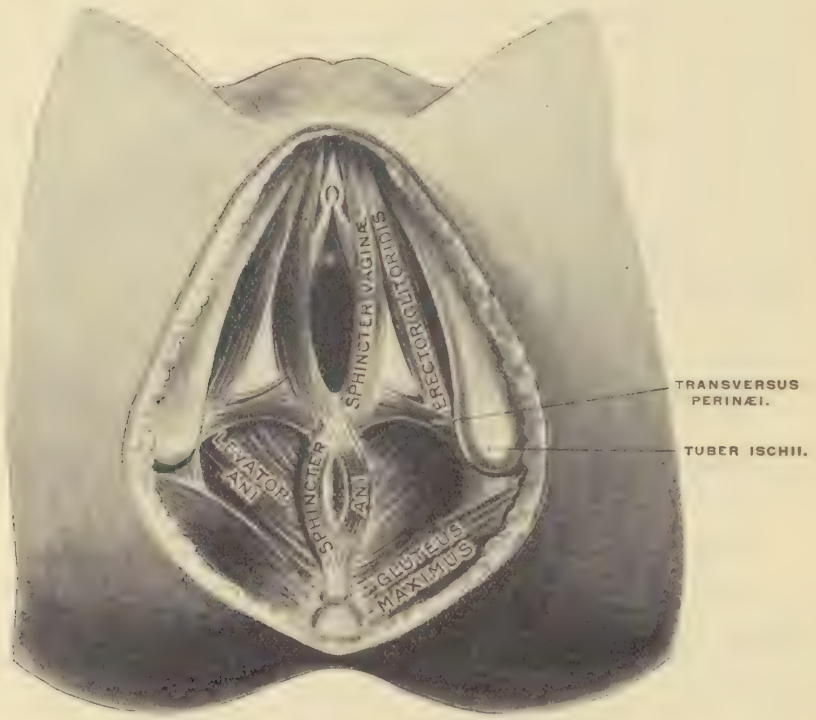


FIG. 311.—Muscles of the female perinæum.

the External sphincter ani. Its fibres pass forward on each side of the vagina, to be *inserted* into the corpora cavernosa of the clitoris, a fasciculus crossing over the body of the organ so as to compress the dorsal vein.

Nerve-supply.—The perineal branch of the internal pudic.

Actions.—It diminishes the orifice of the vagina. The anterior fibres contribute to the erection of the clitoris, as they are inserted into and are continuous with the fascia of the clitoris; compressing the dorsal vein during the contraction of the muscle.

The **Erector Clitoridis** (*m. ischiocavernosus*) resembles the Erector penis in the male, but is smaller than it. It covers the unattached part of the crus clitoridis. It is an elongated muscle, broader at the middle than at either extremity, and situated on either side of the lateral boundary of the perinæum. It *arises* by tendinous and fleshy fibres from the inner surface of the tuberosity of the ischium, behind the crus clitoridis from the surface of the crus, and from the adjacent portion of the ramus of the ischium. From these points fleshy fibres succeed,

which end in an aponeurosis, which is *inserted* into the sides and under surface of the crus clitoridis.

Nerve-supply.—The perineal branch of the internal pudic.

Actions.—It compresses the crus clitoridis and retards the return of blood through the veins, and thus serves to maintain the organ erect.

The **Triangular Ligament** (*trigonum urogenitale*) in the female is not so strong as in the male. It is divided in the middle line by the aperture of the vagina, with the external coat of which it becomes blended, and in front of this is perforated by the urethra. Its posterior border is continuous, as in the male, with the deep layer of the superficial fascia around the Transversus perinei muscle.

Like the triangular ligament in the male, it consists of two layers, between which are to be found the following structures: the dorsal vein of the clitoris, a portion of the urethra and the Compressor urethræ muscle, the glands of Bartholin and their ducts; the pudic vessels and the dorsal nerve of the clitoris; the arteries of the bulbi vestibuli, and a plexus of veins.

The **Compressor Urethræ** (*m. constrictor urethræ*) *arises* on each side from the margin of the descending ramus of the os pubis. The fibres, passing inward, divide into two sets: those of the forepart of the muscle are directed across the subpubic arch in front of the urethra to blend with the muscular fibres of the opposite side; while those of the hinder and larger part pass inward to blend with the wall of the vagina behind the urethra.

Nerve-supply.—The perineal branch of the internal pudic.

MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The muscles of the Upper Extremity are divisible into groups, corresponding with the different regions of the limb.

I. Of the Thoracic Region.

1. *Anterior Thoracic Region.*

Pectoralis major. Pectoralis minor.
Subclavius.

2. *Lateral Thoracic Region.*

Serratus magnus.

II. Of the Shoulder and Arm.

3. *Acromial Region.*

Deltoid.

4. *Anterior Scapular Region.*

Subscapularis.

5. *Posterior Scapular Region.*

Supraspinatus. Teres minor.
Infraspinatus. Teres major.

6. *Anterior Humeral Region.*

Coraco-brachialis. Biceps.
Brachialis anticus.

7. *Posterior Humeral Region.*

Triceps. Subanconeus.

III. Of the Forearm.

8. *Anterior Radio-ulnar Region.*

Superficial Layer.
- Pronator radii teres.
- Flexor carpi radialis.
- Palmaris longus.
- Flexor carpi ulnaris.
- Flexor sublimis digitorum.

Deep Layer.
- Flexor profundus digitorum.
- Flexor longus pollicis.
- Pronator quadratus.

9. *Radial Region.*

Supinator longus.
Extensor carpi radialis longior.
Extensor carpi radialis brevior.

10. *Posterior Radio-Ulnar Region.*

Superficial Layer.
- Extensor communis digitorum.
- Extensor minimi digiti.
- Extensor carpi ulnaris.
- Anconeus.
- Supinator brevis.

Deep Layer.
- Extensor ossis metacarpi pollici.
- Extensor brevis pollicis.
- Extensor longus pollicis.
- Extensor indicis.

IV. Of the Hand.

11. *Radial Region.*

- Abductor pollicis.
- Flexor ossis metacarpi pollicis (Opponens pollicis).
- Flexor brevis pollicis.
- Adductor obliquus pollicis.
- Adductor transversus pollicis.

12. *Ulnar Region.*

- Palmaris brevis.
- Abductor minimi digiti.
- Flexor brevis minimi digiti.
- Flexor ossis metacarpi minimi digiti (Opponens minimi digiti).

13. *Middle Palmar Region.*

- Lumbricales.
- Interossei palmares.
- Interossei dorsales.

Dissection of Pectoral Region and Axilla (Fig. 312).—The arm being drawn away from the side nearly at right angles with the trunk and rotated outward, make a vertical incision through the integument in the median line of the chest, from the upper to the lower part of the sternum; a second incision along the lower border of the Pectoral muscle, from the ensiform cartilage to the inner side of the axilla; a third, from the sternum along the clavicle, as far as its centre; and a fourth, from the middle of the clavicle obliquely downward, along the interspace between the Pectoral and Deltoid muscles, as low as the fold of the armpit. The flap of integument is then to be dissected off in the direction indicated in the figure, but not entirely removed, as it should be replaced on completing the dissection. If a transverse incision is now made from the lower end of the sternum to the side of the chest, as far as the posterior fold of the armpit, and the integument reflected outward, the axillary space will be more completely exposed.

I. THE MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE THORACIC REGION.

1. The Anterior Thoracic Region.

Pectoralis major. Pectoralis minor. Subclavius.

Superficial Fascia.—The superficial fascia of the thoracic region is a loose cellulo-fibrous layer enclosing masses of fat in its spaces. It is continuous with the superficial fascia of the neck and upper extremity above, and of the abdomen below. Opposite the mamma it divides into two layers, one of which passes in front, the other behind, that gland; and from both of these layers numerous septa pass into its substance, supporting its various lobes: from the anterior layer fibrous processes pass forward to the integument and nipple. These processes were called by Sir A. Cooper the **suspensory ligaments** (*ligamenta suspensoria*), from the support they afford to the gland in this situation.

Deep Fascia.—The deep thoracic fascia is a thin aponeurotic lamina, covering the surface of the great Pectoral muscle, and sending numerous prolongations between its fasciculi: it is attached, in the middle line, to the front of the sternum, and above to the clavicle; externally and below it becomes continuous with the fascia over the shoulder, axilla, and thorax. It is very thin over the upper part of the muscle, thicker in the interval between the Pectoralis major and Latissimus dorsi, where it closes in the axillary space, and is known as the **axillary fascia** (*fascia axillaris*). It passes behind into the fascia of the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major, in front into the fascia of the deltoid and outward into the brachial fascia. The fascia of the Latissimus dorsi divides at the outer margin of the muscle into two layers, one of which passes in front and the other behind it; these proceed as far as the spinous processes of the dorsal vertebræ, to which they are

attached. As the axillary fascia leaves the lower edge of the Pectoralis major to pass across the floor of the axilla it sends a layer upward under cover of the muscle, **deep pectoral fascia**: this lamina splits to envelop the Pectoralis minor, at the upper edge of which it becomes continuous with the **costo-coracoid membrane**, or the **clavi-pectoral fascia**. The hollow of the armpit, seen when the arm is abducted, is mainly produced by the traction of this fascia on the axillary floor, the **axillary fascia** *(fascia axillaris)*, and hence it is sometimes named the **suspensory ligament of the axilla**. The axillary fascia (Fig. 313) is not a distinct and complete rigid floor of the axillary space. Like all other fasciæ, it follows muscular planes, and splits to encompass vessels, nerves, and muscles. In it are numerous perforations. In this fascia is a curved arch which often contains muscular fibres and which passes from the tendon of the great Pectoral,

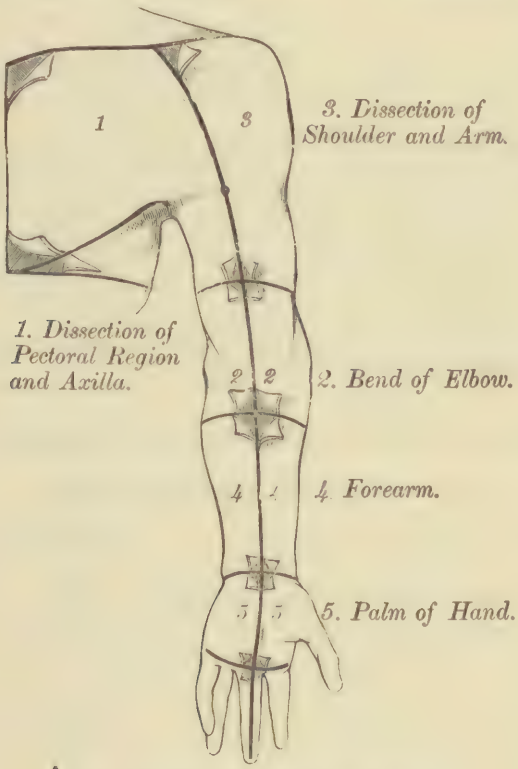


FIG. 312.—Dissection of upper extremity.

the Coraco-brachialis or the fascia over the biceps to the tendon of the Latissimus dorsi. This is called the **axillary arch**. Langer showed many years ago that there is an opening in the centre of the dense axillary fascia, the **foramen of Langer**. Through this opening axillary glands not unusually protrude. The axillary arch is the inner margin of the foramen of Langer. At the lower part of the thoracic region the deep thoracic fascia is well developed, and is continuous with the fibrous sheath of the Recti muscles.

The **Pectoralis Major** (Fig. 314) is a broad, thick, triangular muscle, situated at the upper and forepart of the chest, in front of the axilla. It *arises* from the anterior surface of the sternal half of the clavicle; from half the breadth of the anterior surface of the sternum, as low down as the attachment of the cartilage of the sixth or seventh rib; this portion of its origin consists of aponeurotic fibres, which intersect with those of the opposite muscle; it also arises from the carti-

lages of all true ribs, with the exception, frequently, of the first or of the seventh, or both; and from the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle of the abdomen. The fibres from this extensive origin converge toward its insertion, giving to the muscle a radiated appearance. Those fibres which arise from the clavicle pass obliquely outward and downward and are usually separated from the rest by a cellular interval: those from the lower part of the sternum, and the cartilages of the lower true ribs, pass upward and outward, whilst the middle fibres pass horizontally. They all terminate in a flat tendon, about two inches broad, which is inserted into the outer bicipital ridge of the humerus. This tendon consists of two laminæ, placed one in front of the other, and usually blended together below. The anterior, the thicker, receives the clavicular and upper half of the sternal portion of the muscle; and its fibres are inserted in the same order as that in which they arise; that is to say, the outermost fibres of origin from the clavicle are

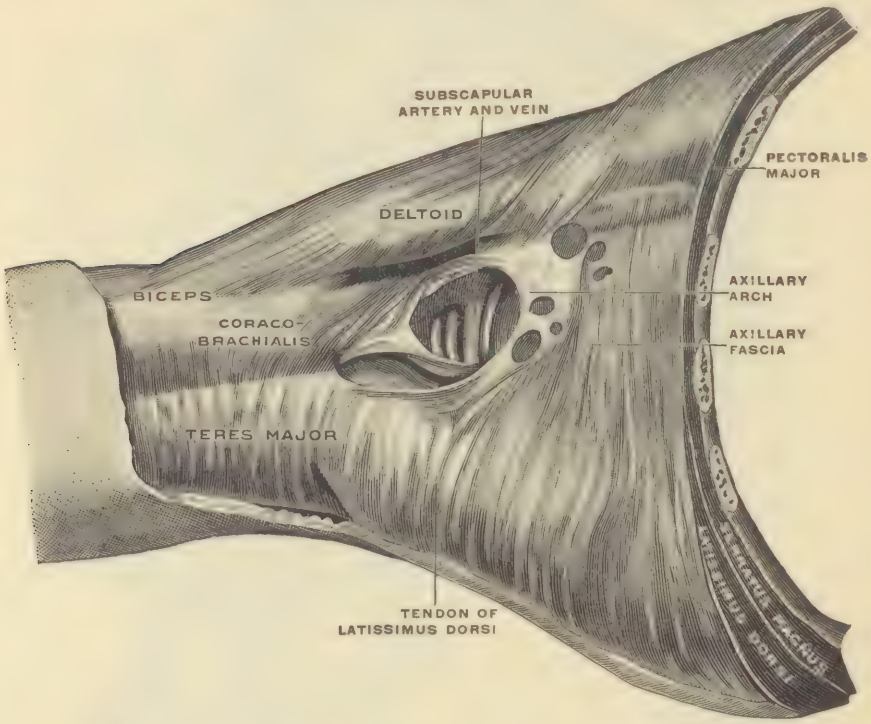


FIG. 313.—The fascia of the right axilla, viewed from below. (Spalteholz.)

inserted at the uppermost part of the tendon; the upper fibres of origin from the sternum pass down to the lowermost part of this anterior lamina of the tendon and extend as low as the tendon of the Deltoid and join with it. The posterior lamina of the tendon receives the attachment of the lower half of the sternal portion and the deeper part of the muscle from the costal cartilages. These deep fibres, and particularly those from the lower costal cartilages, ascend, the higher, turning backward successively behind the superficial and upper ones, so that the tendon appears to be twisted. The posterior lamina reaches higher on the humerus than does the anterior one, and from it an expansion is given off which covers the bicipital groove and blends with the capsule of the shoulder-joint. From the deepest fibres of this lamina at its insertion an expansion is given off which lines the bicipital groove of the humerus, while from the lower border of the tendon a third expansion passes downward to the fascia of the arm. Between the poste-

rior surface of the tendon of the great pectoral and the anterior surface of the long head of the biceps there is usually a bursa (*bursa m. pectoralis majoris*).

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the integument, the superficial fascia, the Platysma, some of the branches of the descending cervical nerves, the mammary gland, and the deep fascia; by its *posterior surface:* its *thoracic portion*, with the sternum, the ribs and costal cartilages, the costo-coracoid membrane, the Subclavius, Pectoralis minor, Serratus magnus, and the Intercostals; its *axillary por-*

Fig. 314.—Muscles of the chest and front of the arm. Superficial view.

tion forms the anterior wall of the axillary space, and covers the axillary vessels and nerves, the Biceps and Coraco-brachialis muscles. Its *upper border* lies parallel with the Deltoid, from which it is separated by a slight interspace in which lie the cephalic vein and humeral branch of the acromial thoracic artery. Its *lower border* forms the anterior margin of the axilla, being at first separated from the Latissimus dorsi by a considerable interval; but both muscles gradually converge toward the outer part of the space.

Dissection.—Detach the Pectoralis major by dividing the muscle along its attachment to the clavicle, and by making a vertical incision through its substance a little external to its line of attachment to the sternum and costal cartilages. The muscle should then be reflected outward, and its tendon carefully examined. The Pectoralis minor is now exposed, and immediately above it, in the interval between its upper border and the clavicle, a strong fascia, the costo-coracoid membrane.

The **Costo-coracoid Membrane** or the **Clavipectoral Fascia** is a strong fascia, situated under cover of the clavicular portion of the Pectoralis major muscle. It occupies the interval between the Pectoralis minor and Subclavius muscle, and protects the axillary vessels and nerves. Traced upward, it splits to enclose the Subclavius muscle, and its two layers are attached to the clavicle, one in front of and the other behind the muscle; the latter layer fuses with the deep cervical fascia and

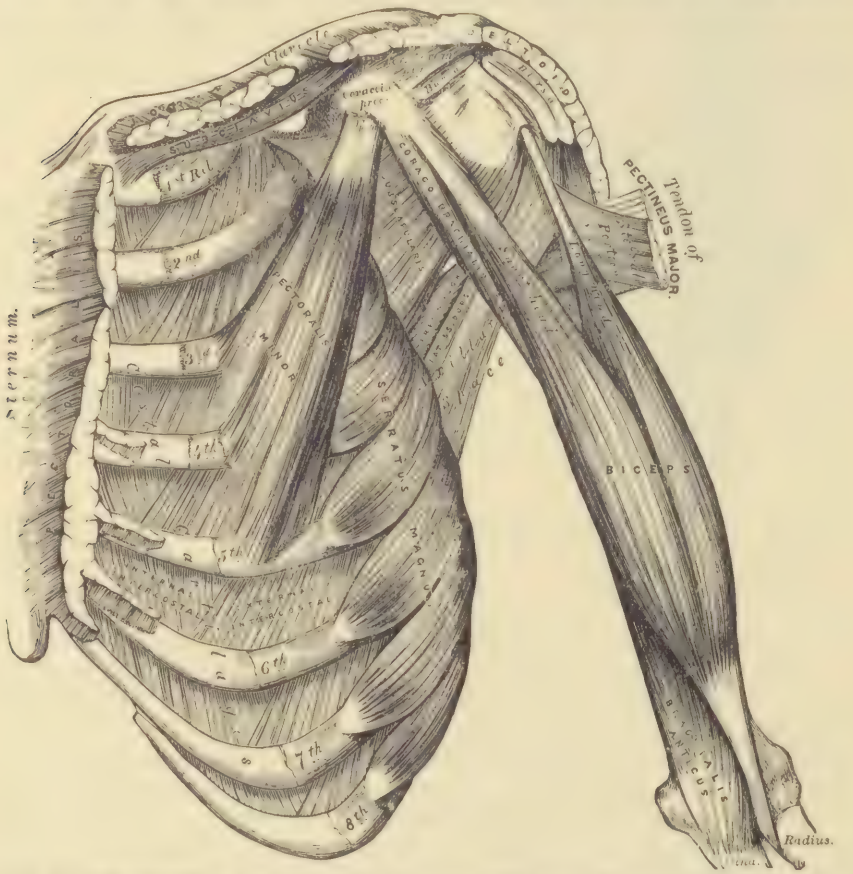


Fig. 315.—Muscles of the chest and front of the arm, showing some of the boundaries of the axilla.

with the sheath of the axillary vessels. Internally, it blends with the fascia covering the first two intercostal spaces, and is attached also to the first rib internal to the origin of the Subclavius muscle. Externally it is very thick and dense, and is attached to the coracoid process. The portion extending from its attachment to the first rib to the coracoid process is often whiter and denser than the rest; this is sometimes called the **costo-coracoid ligament**. Below, it is thin, and at the upper border of the Pectoralis minor it splits into two layers to invest the muscle; from the lower border of the Pectoralis minor it is continued downward to join the axillary fascia, and outward to join the fascia over the short head of the Biceps. The costo-coracoid membrane is pierced by the cephalic vein, the acromial thoracic artery and vein, superior thoracic artery, and anterior thoracic nerves.

The **Pectoralis Minor** (Fig. 315) is a thin, flat, triangular muscle, situated at the upper part of the thorax, beneath the Pectoralis major. It *arises* by three tendinous digitations from the upper margin and outer surface of the third, fourth, and fifth ribs, near their cartilages, and from the aponeurosis covering the Intercostal muscles; the fibres pass upward and outward, and converge to form a flat tendon, which is *inserted* into the inner border and upper surface of the coracoid process of the scapula.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the Pectoralis major and the thoracic branches of the acromial thoracic artery. By its *posterior surface*, with the ribs, Intercostal muscles, Serratus magnus, the axillary space, and the axillary vessels and brachial plexus of nerves. Its upper border is separated from the clavicle by a triangular interval, broad internally, narrow externally, which is occupied by the costo-coracoid membrane. This space contains the first part of the axillary vessels and the axillary nerves. Running parallel to the lower border of the muscle is the long thoracic artery.

The costo-coracoid membrane should now be removed, when the Subclavius muscle will be seen.

The **Subclavius** is a small triangular muscle, placed in the interval between the clavicle and the first rib. It *arises* by a short, thick tendon from the first rib and its cartilage at their junction, in front of the rhomboid ligament; the fleshy fibres proceed obliquely upward and outward, to be *inserted* into a deep groove on the under surface of the clavicle. An extension from the aponeurosis of this muscle lies upon the subclavian vein.

Relations.—By its *upper surface*, with the clavicle. By its *deep surface* it is separated from the first rib by the subclavian vessels and brachial plexus of nerves. Its *anterior surface* is separated from the Pectoralis major by the costo-coracoid membrane, which, with the clavicle, forms an osseo-fibrous sheath in which the muscle is enclosed.

If the costal attachment of the Pectoralis minor is divided across, and the muscle reflected outward, the axillary vessels and nerves are brought fully into view, and should be examined.

Nerves.—The Pectoral muscles are supplied by the anterior thoracic nerves; the Pectoralis major through these nerves receives filaments from all the spinal nerves entering into the formation of the brachial plexus; the Pectoralis minor receives its fibres from the eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves. The Subclavius is supplied by a filament from the fifth cervical nerve.

Actions.—If the arm has been raised by the Deltoid, the Pectoralis major will, conjointly with the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major, depress it to the side of the chest. If acting alone, it adducts and draws forward the arm, bringing it across the front of the chest, and at the same time rotates it inward. The Pectoralis minor depresses the point of the shoulder, drawing the scapula downward and inward to the thorax, and throwing the inferior angle backward. The Subclavius depresses the shoulder, drawing the clavicle downward and forward. When the arms are fixed, all three muscles act upon the ribs, drawing them upward and expanding the chest, and thus becoming very important agents in forced inspiration. Asthmatic patients always assume an attitude which fixes the shoulders, so that all these muscles may be brought into action to assist in dilating the cavity of the chest.

2. The Lateral Thoracic Region.

Serratus magnus.

The **Serratus Magnus** (*m. serratus anterior*) (Figs. 315 and 316) is a thin, irregularly quadrilateral muscle, situated between the ribs and the scapula at the upper

and lateral part of the chest. It *arises* by nine digitations or slips from the outer surface and upper border of the eight upper ribs (the second rib giving origin to two slips), and from the aponeurosis covering the corresponding intercostal muscles. From this extensive attachment the fibres pass backward, closely applied to the chest-wall, and reach the vertebral border of the scapula, and are inserted into its ventral aspect in the following manner. The upper two digitations—*i. e.*, the one from the first rib and the higher of the two from the second rib—converge to be inserted into a triangular area on the ventral aspect of the superior angle. The next two digitations spread out to form a thin triangular sheet, the base of which is directed backward and is inserted into nearly the whole length of the ventral aspect of the vertebral border. The lower five digitations converge, as they pass backward from the ribs, to form a fan-shaped structure, the apex of which is inserted, partly by muscular and partly by tendinous fibres, into a triangular impression on the ventral aspect of the inferior angle. The lower four slips interdigitate at their origin with the upper five slips of the External oblique muscle of the abdomen.

FIG. 316. Serratus magnus. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

Relations.—This muscle is partly covered, in front, by the Pectoral muscles; behind, by the Subscapularis. The axillary vessels and nerves lie upon its upper part, while its *deep surface* rests upon the ribs and intercostal muscles.

Nerve.—The Serratus magnus is supplied by the posterior thoracic nerve, which is derived from the fifth, sixth, and generally the seventh cervical nerves.

Actions.—The Serratus magnus, as a whole, carries the scapula forward, and at the same time raises the vertebral border of the bone. It is therefore concerned in the action of pushing. Its lower and stronger fibres move forward the lower angle and assist the Trapezius in rotating the bone round an axis through its centre, and thus assists this muscle in raising the acromion and supporting weights upon the shoulder. It is also an assistant to the Deltoid in raising the arm, inasmuch as during the action of this latter muscle it fixes the scapula and so steadies the glenoid cavity on which the head of the humerus rotates. After the Deltoid has raised the arm to a right angle with the trunk, the Serratus magnus and the Trapezius, by rotating the scapula, raise the arm into an almost vertical position. It is possible that when the shoulders are fixed the lower fibres of the Serratus magnus may assist in raising and everting the ribs; but it is not the important inspiratory muscle which it was formerly believed to be.

Surgical Anatomy.—When the muscle is paralyzed, the vertebral border, and especially the lower angle of the scapula, leaves the ribs and stands out prominently on the surface, giving a peculiar "winged" appearance to the back. The patient is unable to raise the arm, and an

attempt to do so is followed by a further projection of the lower angle of the scapula from the back of the thorax.

Dissection. After completing the dissection of the axilla, if the muscles of the back have been dissected, the upper extremity should be separated from the trunk. Saw through the clavicle at its centre, and then cut through the muscles which connect the scapula and arm with the trunk—viz., the Pectoralis minor in front, Serratus magnus at the side, and the Levator anguli scapulæ, the Rhomboids, Trapezius, and Latissimus dorsi behind. These muscles should be cleaned and traced to their respective insertions. Then make an incision through the integument, commencing at the outer third of the clavicle, and extending along the margin of that bone, the acromion process, and spine of the scapula; the integument should be dissected from above downward and outward, when the fascia covering the Deltoid is exposed (Fig. 312, No. 3).

II. MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE SHOULDER AND ARM.

Superficial Fascia.—The superficial fascia of the upper extremity is a thin cellulo-fibrous layer, containing the superficial veins and lymphatics, and the cutaneous nerves. It is most distinct in front of the elbow, and contains very large superficial veins and nerves; in the hand it is hardly demonstrable, the integument being closely adherent to the deep fascia by dense fibrous bands. Small subcutaneous bursæ are found in this fascia over the acromion, the olecranon, and the knuckles.

Deep Fascia.—The deep fascia of the upper extremity comprises the aponeurosis of the shoulder, arm, and forearm, the anterior and posterior annular ligaments of the carpus, and the palmar fascia. These will be considered in the description of the muscles of the several regions.

3. The Acromial Region.

Deltoid.

Deep Fascia.—The deep fascia covering the Deltoid, and known as the *deltoid aponeurosis*, is a fibrous layer which covers the outer surface of the muscle, thick and strong behind, where it is continuous with the infraspinatus fascia, thinner over the rest of its extent. It sends down numerous prolongations between the fasciculi of the muscle. In front, it is continuous with the fascia covering the great Pectoral muscle; behind, with that covering the Infraspinatus; above, it is attached to the clavicle, the acromion, and spine of the scapula; below, it is continuous with the deep fascia of the arm.

The **Deltoid** (*m. deltoideus*) (Fig. 314) is a large, thick, triangular muscle, which gives the rounded outline to the shoulder, and has received its name from its resemblance to the Greek letter Δ reversed. It surrounds the shoulder-joint in the greater part of its extent, covering it on its outer side, and in front and behind. It *arises* from the outer third of the anterior border and upper surface of the clavicle; from the outer margin and upper surface of the acromion process, and from the lower lip of the posterior border of the spine of the scapula, as far back as the triangular surface at its inner end. From this extensive origin the fibres converge toward their insertion, the middle passing vertically, the anterior obliquely backward, the posterior obliquely forward; they unite to form a thick tendon, which is inserted into a rough triangular prominence on the middle of the outer side of the shaft of the humerus. At its *insertion* the muscle gives off an expansion to the deep fascia of the arm. This muscle is remarkably coarse in texture, and the arrangement of its muscular fibres is somewhat peculiar; the central portion of the muscle—that is to say, the part arising from the acromion process—consists of oblique fibres, which arise in a bipenniform manner from the sides of tendinous intersections, generally four in number, which are attached above to the acromion process and pass downward parallel to one another in the substance of the muscle. The

oblique muscular fibres thus formed are inserted into similar tendinous intersections, generally three in number, which pass upward from the insertion of the muscle into the humerus and alternate with the descending septa. The portions of the muscle which arise from the clavicle and spine of the scapula are not arranged in this manner, but pass from their origin above, to be inserted into the margins of the inferior tendon.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument, the superficial and deep fasciæ, Platysma, and supra-acromial nerves. Its *deep surface* is separated from the head of the humerus by a large sacculated synovial bursa, the **subdeltoid bursa** (*bursa subdeltoidea*). It often communicates with the **subacromial bursa** (*bursa subacromialis*), which is between the acromial process and the coraco-acromial ligament above and the capsule of the shoulder-joint and the Supraspinatus muscle below. The deep surface of the deltoid covers the coracoid process, coraco-acromial ligament, Pectoralis minor, Coraco-brachialis, both heads of the Biceps, the tendon of the Pectoralis major, the insertions of the Supraspinatus, Infraspinatus, and Teres minor, the scapular and external heads of the Triceps, the circumflex vessels and nerve, and the humerus. Its *anterior border* is separated at its upper part from the Pectoralis major by a cellular interspace, which lodges the cephalic vein and humeral branch of the acromial thoracic artery: lower down the two muscles are in close contact. Its *posterior border* rests on the Infraspinatus and Triceps muscles.

Nerves.—The Deltoid is supplied by the fifth and sixth cervical through the circumflex nerve.

Actions.—The Deltoid raises the arm directly from the side, so as to bring it at right angles with the trunk, but this act cannot be performed without the aid of the Serratus magnus, which muscle steadies the lower angle of the scapula. Its anterior fibres, assisted by the Pectoralis major, draw the arm forward; and its posterior fibres, aided by the Teres major and Latissimus dorsi, draw it backward.

Surgical Anatomy.—The Deltoid is very liable to atrophy, and when in this condition simulates dislocation of the shoulder-joint, as there is flattening of the shoulder and apparent prominence of the acromion process; upon examination, however, it will be found that the relative position of the great tuberosity of the humerus to the acromion and coracoid process is unchanged. Atrophy of the Deltoid may be due to disuse or loss of trophic influence, either from injury to the circumflex nerve or cord lesions, as in infantile paralysis.

4. The Anterior Scapular Region.

Subscapularis.

Dissection.—Divide the Deltoid across, near its upper part, by an incision carried along the margin of the clavicle, the acromion process and spine of the scapula, and reflect it downward, when the structures under cover of it will be seen.

The Subscapular Fascia (*fascia subscapularis*).—The subscapular fascia is a thin membrane attached to the entire circumference of the subscapular fossa, and affording attachment by its inner surface to some of the fibres of the Subscapularis muscle: when this is removed, the Subscapularis muscle is exposed.

The **Subscapularis** (Fig. 315) is a large triangular muscle which fills up the subscapular fossa, *arising* from its internal two-thirds, with the exception of a narrow margin along the posterior border, and the surfaces at the superior and inferior angles which afford attachment to the Serratus magnus: it also arises from the lower two-thirds of the groove on the axillary border of the bone. Some fibres arise from tendinous laminæ, which intersect the muscle, and are attached to ridges on the bone; and others from an aponeurosis, which separates the muscles from the Teres major and the long head of the Triceps. The fibres pass outward, and, gradually converging, terminate in a tendon, which is inserted into the lesser

tuberosity of the humerus. Those fibres which arise from the axillary border of the scapula are inserted into the neck of the humerus to the extent of an inch below the tuberosity. The tendon of the muscle is in close contact with the anterior part of the capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint, and glides over a large bursa, the **bursa of the subscapularis muscle** (*bursa m. subscapularis*, which separates it from the base of the coracoid process. This bursa communicates with the cavity of the joint by an aperture in the capsular ligament.

Relations.—Its *anterior surface* forms a considerable part of the posterior wall of the axilla, and is in relation with the Serratus magnus, Coraco-brachialis, and Biceps, the axillary vessels and brachial plexus of nerves, and the subscapular vessels and nerves. By its *posterior surface*, with the scapula and the capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint. Its *lower border* is contiguous with the Teres major and Latissimus dorsi.

Nerves.—It is supplied by the fifth and sixth cervical nerves through the upper and lower subscapular nerves.

Actions.—The Subscapularis rotates the head of the humerus inward; when the arm is raised, it draws the humerus forward and downward. It is a powerful defence to the front of the shoulder-joint, preventing displacement of the head of the bone.

5. The Posterior Scapular Region (Fig. 317).

Supraspinatus.	Teres minor.
Infraspinatus.	Teres major.

Dissection.—To expose these muscles, and to examine their mode of insertion into the humerus, detach the deltoid and Trapezius from their attachment to the spine of the scapula and acromion process. Remove the clavicle by dividing the ligaments connecting it with the coracoid process, and separate it at its articulation with the scapula: divide the acromion process near its root with a saw. The fragments being removed, the tendons of the posterior Scapular muscles will be fully exposed, and can be examined. A block should be placed beneath the shoulder-joint, so as to make the muscles tense.

The Supraspinatus Fascia (*fascia supraspinata*).—The supraspinatus fascia is a thick and dense membranous layer, which completes the osseo-fibrous case in which the Supraspinatus muscle is contained, affording attachment, by its inner surface, to some of the fibres of the muscle. It is thick internally, but thinner externally under the coraco-acromial ligament. When this fascia is removed, the Supraspinatus muscle is exposed.

The **Supraspinatus Muscle** occupies the whole of the supraspinatus fossa, *arising* from its internal two-thirds and from the strong fascia which covers its surface. The muscular fibres converge to a tendon which passes across the upper part of the capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint, to which it is intimately adherent, and is *inserted* into the highest of the three facets on the great tuberosity of the humerus.

Relations.—By its *upper surface*, with the Trapezius, the clavicle, the acromion, the coraco-acromial ligament, and the Deltoid; by its *under surface*, with the scapula, the suprascapular vessels and nerve, and upper part of the shoulder-joint.

The Infraspinatus Fascia (*fascia infraspinata*).—The infraspinatus fascia is a dense fibrous membrane, covering in the Infraspinatus muscle and attached to the circumference of the infraspinatus fossa; it affords attachment, by its inner surface, to some fibres of that muscle. At the point where the Infraspinatus commences to be covered by the Deltoid, this fascia divides into two layers: one layer passes over the Deltoid muscle, helping to form the Deltoid fascia already described; the other passes beneath the Deltoid to the capsule of the shoulder-joint.

The **Infraspinatus** is a thick, triangular muscle, which occupies the chief part of the infraspinatus fossa, *arising* by fleshy fibres from its internal two-thirds, and

by tendinous fibres from the ridges on its surface: it also arises from a strong fascia which covers it externally, and separates it from the Teres major and minor. The fibres converge to a tendon which glides over the external border of the spine of the scapula, and, passing across the posterior part of the capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint, is inserted into the middle facet on the great tuberosity of the humerus. The tendon of this muscle has interposed between it and the joint capsule a synovial bursa, the **bursa of the Infraspinatus muscle** (*bursa m. infraspinati*), which communicates with the synovial cavity of the shoulder-joint.

Relations.—By its *posterior surface*, with the Deltoid, the Trapezius, Latissimus dorsi, and the integument; by its *anterior surface*, with the scapula, from which it is separated by the suprascapular and dorsalis scapulæ vessels, and with the

FIG. 317.—Muscles on the dorsum of the Scapula and the Triceps.

capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint. Its *lower border* is in contact with the Teres minor, occasionally united with it, and with the Teres major.

The **Teres Minor** is a narrow, elongated muscle, which *arises* from the dorsal surface of the axillary border of the scapula for the upper two-thirds of its extent, and from two aponeurotic laminæ, one of which separates this muscle from the Infraspinatus, the other from the Teres major; its fibres pass obliquely upward and outward, and terminate in a tendon which is *inserted* into the lowest of the three facets on the great tuberosity of the humerus, and, by fleshy fibres, into the humerus immediately below it. The tendon of this muscle passes across the posterior part of the capsular ligament of the shoulder-joint.

Relations.—By its *posterior surface*, with the Deltoid and the integument; by its *anterior surface*, with the scapula and dorsal branch of the subscapular artery, the long head of the Triceps, and the shoulder-joint; by its *upper border*,

with the Infraspinatus; by its *lower border*, with the Teres major, from which it is separated anteriorly by the long head of the Triceps.

The **Teres Major** is a thick but somewhat flattened muscle, which *arises* from the oval surface on the dorsal aspect of the inferior angle of the scapula, and from the fibrous septa interposed between it and the Teres minor and Infraspinatus; the fibres are directed upward and outward, and terminate in a flat tendon, about two inches in length, which is *inserted* into the inner bicipital ridge of the humerus. The tendon of this muscle, at its insertion into the humerus, lies behind that of the Latissimus dorsi, from which it is separated by a synovial bursa, the **bursa of the Latissimus dorsi muscle** (*bursa m. latissimi dorsi*), the two tendons being, however, united along their lower borders for a short distance. Between the tendon of the Teres major and the bone is the *bursa m. teretis majoris.*

Relations.—By its *posterior surface*, with the Latissimus dorsi below, and the long head of the Triceps above. By its *anterior surface*, with the Subscapularis, Latissimus dorsi, Coraco-brachialis, short head of the Biceps, the axillary vessels, and brachial plexus of nerves. Its *upper border* is at first in relation with the Teres minor, from which it is afterward separated by the long head of the Triceps. Its *lower border* forms, in conjunction with the Latissimus dorsi, part of the posterior boundary of the axilla. The Latissimus dorsi at first covers the origin of the Teres major, then wraps itself obliquely round its lower border, so that its tendon ultimately comes to lie in front of that of the Teres major.

Nerves.—The Supra- and Infraspinatus muscles are supplied by the fifth and sixth cervical nerves through the suprascapular nerve; the Teres minor, by the fifth cervical, through the circumflex; and the Teres major, by the fifth and sixth cervical, through the lower subscapular.

Actions.—The Supraspinatus assists the Deltoid in raising the arm from the side, and fixes the head of the humerus in the glenoid cavity. The Infraspinatus and Teres minor rotate the head of the humerus outward: when the arm is raised, they assist in retaining it in that position and carrying it backward. One of the most important uses of these three muscles is the great protection they afford to the shoulder-joint, the Supraspinatus supporting it above, and preventing displacement of the head of the humerus upward, while the Infraspinatus and Teres minor protect it behind, and prevent dislocation backward. The Teres major assists the Latissimus dorsi in drawing the humerus downward and backward, when previously raised, and rotating it inward; when the arm is fixed, it may assist the Pectoral and Latissimus dorsi muscles in drawing the trunk forward.

THE MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE ARM.

6. The Anterior Humeral Region (Fig. 315).

Coraco-brachialis. Biceps. Brachialis anticus.

Dissection.—The arm being placed on the table, with the front surface uppermost, make a vertical incision through the integument along the middle line, from the clavicle to about two inches below the elbow-joint, where it should be joined by a transverse incision, extending from the inner to the outer side of the forearm; the two flaps being reflected on either side, the fascia should be examined (Fig. 312).

Deep Fascia (*fascia brachii*).—The deep fascia of the arm is continuous with that covering the Deltoid and the great Pectoral muscles, by means of which it is attached, above, to the clavicle, acromion, and spine of the scapula, and is also continuous with the axillary fascia. It forms a thin, loose, membranous sheath investing the muscles of the arm, sending down septa between them, and composed of fibres disposed in a circular or spiral direction, and connected together by vertical and oblique fibres. It differs in thickness at different parts, being

thin over the Biceps, but thicker where it covers the Triceps, and over the condyles of the humerus; it is strengthened by fibrous aponeuroses, derived from the Pectoralis major and Latissimus dorsi on the inner side, and from the Deltoid externally. On either side it gives off a strong **intermuscular septum**, which is attached to the supracondylar ridge and condyle of the humerus. These septa serve to separate the muscles of the anterior from those of the posterior brachial region. The **external intermuscular septum** (*septum intermusculare laterale*) extends from the lower part of the anterior bicipital ridge, along the external supracondylar ridge, to the outer condyle; it is blended with the tendon of the Deltoid, gives attachment to the Triceps behind, to the Brachialis anticus, Supinator longus, and Extensor carpi radialis longior, in front, and is perforated by the musculo-spiral nerve and superior profunda artery. The **internal intermuscular septum** (*septum intermusculare mediale*), thicker than the preceding, extends from the lower part of the posterior lip of the bicipital groove below the Teres major, along the internal supracondylar ridge to the inner condyle; it is blended with the tendon of the Coraco-brachialis, and affords attachment to the Triceps behind, and the Brachialis anticus in front. It is perforated by the ulnar nerve and the inferior profunda and anastomotic arteries. At the elbow the deep fascia is attached to all the prominent points round the joint—viz., the condyles of the humerus and the olecranon process of the ulna—and is continuous with the deep fascia of the forearm. Just below the middle of the arm, on its inner side, in front of the intermuscular septum, is an oval opening in the deep fascia which transmits the basilic vein and some lymphatic vessels. On the removal of this fascia the muscles, vessels, and nerves of the anterior humeral region are exposed.

The **Coraco-brachialis,** the smallest of the three muscles in this region, is situated at the upper and inner part of the arm. It *arises* by fleshy fibres from the apex of the coracoid process, in common with the short head of the Biceps, and from the intermuscular septum between the two muscles; the fibres pass downward, backward, and a little outward, to be inserted by means of a flat tendon into an impression at the middle of the inner surface and internal border of the shaft of the humerus between the origins of the Triceps and Brachialis anticus. It is perforated by the musculo-cutaneous nerve. The inner border of the muscle forms a guide to the position of the brachial artery in tying the vessel in the upper part of its course. Between the tendon of the subscapularis, the coracoid process and the tendon of the Coraco-brachialis, is the **bursa of the Coraco-brachialis muscle** (*bursa m. coracobrachialis*).

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the Pectoralis major above, and at its insertion with the brachial vessels and median nerve which cross it; by its *posterior surface*, with the tendons of the Subscapularis, Latissimus dorsi, and Teres major, the inner head of the Triceps, the humerus, and the anterior circumflex vessels; by its *inner border*, with the brachial artery, and the median and musculo-cutaneous nerves; by its *outer border*, with the short head of the Biceps and Brachialis anticus.

The **Biceps** or the **Biceps Flexor Cubiti** (*m. biceps brachii*) is a long fusiform muscle, occupying the whole of the anterior surface of the arm, and divided above into two portions or heads, from which circumstance it has received its name. The **short head** (*caput breve*) *arises* by a thick flattened tendon from the apex of the coracoid process, in common with the Coraco-brachialis. The **long head** (*caput longum*) *arises* from the upper margin of the glenoid cavity, and is continuous with the glenoid ligament. This tendon arches over the head of the humerus, being enclosed in a special sheath of the synovial membrane of the shoulder-joint; it then passes through an opening in the capsular ligament at its attachment to the humerus, and descends in the bicipital groove, in which it is retained by a fibrous prolongation from the tendon of the Pectoralis major. Each tendon is succeeded by an

elongated muscular belly, and the two bellies, although closely applied to each other, can readily be separated until within about three inches of the elbow-joint. Here they end in a flattened tendon, which is inserted into the back part of the tuberosity of the radius, a synovial bursa (*bursa bicipito-radialis*), being interposed between the tendon and the front of the tuberosity, and another bursa (*bursa cubitalis interossea*) is often interposed between the ulna and the tendon. As the tendon of the muscle approaches the radius it becomes twisted upon itself, so that its anterior surface becomes external and is applied to the tuberosity of the radius at its insertion: opposite the bend of the elbow the tendon gives off, from its inner side, a broad aponeurosis, the **bicipital** or **semilunar fascia** (*lacertus fibrosus*), which passes obliquely downward and inward across the brachial artery, and is continuous with the deep fascia of the forearm (Fig. 314). The inner border of this muscle forms a guide to the position of the vessel in tying the brachial artery in the middle of the arm.[1]

Relations.—Its *anterior surface* is overlapped above by the Pectoralis major and Deltoid; in the rest of its extent it is covered by the superficial and deep fasciæ and the integument. Its *posterior surface* rests above on the shoulder-joint and upper part of the humerus; below it rests on the Brachialis anticus, with the musculo-cutaneous nerve intervening between the two, and on the Supinator brevis. Its *inner border* is in relation with the Coraco-brachialis, and overlaps the brachial vessels and median nerve; its *outer border*, with the Deltoid and Supinator longus.

The **Brachialis Anticus** (*m. brachialis*) is a broad muscle, which covers the elbow-joint and the lower half of the front of the humerus. It is somewhat compressed from before backward, and is broader in the middle than at either extremity. It *arises* from the lower half of the outer and inner surfaces of the shaft of the humerus, and commences above at the insertion of the Deltoid, which it embraces by two angular processes. Its origin extends below, to within an inch of the margin of the articular surface, and is limited on each side by the external and internal borders of the shaft of the humerus. It also arises from the intermuscular septa on each side, but more extensively from the inner than the outer, from which it is separated below by the Supinator longus and Extensor carpi radialis longior. Its fibres converge to a thick tendon, which is *inserted* into a rough depression on the anterior surface of the coronoid process of the ulna, being received into an interval between two fleshy slips of the Flexor profundus digitorum.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the Biceps, the brachial vessels, musculo-cutaneous, and median nerves; by its *posterior surface*, with the humerus and front of the elbow-joint; by its *inner border*, with the Triceps, ulnar nerve, and Pronator radii teres, from which it is separated by the intermuscular septum; by its *outer border*, with the musculo-spiral nerve, radial recurrent artery, the Supinator longus, and Extensor carpi radialis longior.

Nerves.—The muscles of this group are supplied by the musculo-cutaneous nerve. The Brachialis anticus usually receives an additional filament from the musculo-spiral. The Coraco-brachialis receives its supply primarily from the seventh cervical, the Biceps and Brachialis anticus from the fifth and sixth cervical nerves.

Actions.—The Coraco-brachialis draws the humerus forward and inward, and at the same time assists in elevating it toward the scapula. The Biceps is a flexor of the forearm; it is also a powerful supinator, and serves to render tense the deep fascia of the forearm by means of the broad aponeurosis given off from

[1] A third head to the Biceps is occasionally found (Theile says as often as once in eight or nine subjects), arising at the upper and inner part of the Brachialis anticus, with the fibres of which it is continuous, and inserted into the bicipital fascia and inner side of the tendon of the Biceps. In most cases this additional slip passes behind the brachial artery in its course down the arm. Occasionally the third head consists of two slips which pass down, one in front, the other behind the artery, concealing the vessel in the lower half of the arm.

its tendon. The Brachialis anticus is a flexor of the forearm, and forms an important defence to the elbow-joint. When the forearm is fixed, the Biceps and Brachialis anticus flex the arm upon the forearm, as is seen in efforts at climbing.

7. The Posterior Humeral Region.

Triceps. Subanconeus.

The **Triceps** or the **Triceps Extensor Cubiti** (*m. triceps brachii*) (Fig. 317) is situated on the back of the arm, extending the entire length of the posterior surface of the humerus. It is of large size, and divided above into three parts; hence its name. These three portions have been named (1) the **middle, scapular,** or **long head**; (2) the **external** or **long humeral head**; and (3) the **internal** or **short humeral head**.

The **Middle, Long,** or **Scapular Head** (*caput longum*) *arises*, by a flattened tendon, from a rough triangular depression on the scapula, immediately below the glenoid cavity, being blended at its upper part with the capsular ligament; the muscular fibres pass downward between the two other portions of the muscle, and join with them in the common tendon of insertion.

The **External Head** (*caput laterale*) *arises* from the posterior surface of the shaft of the humerus, between the insertion of the Teres minor and the upper part of the musculo-spiral groove; from the external border of the humerus and the external intermuscular septum: the fibres from this origin converge toward the common tendon of insertion.

The **Internal Head** (*caput mediale*) *arises* from the posterior surface of the shaft of the humerus, below the groove for the musculo-spiral nerve; commencing above, narrow and pointed, below the insertion of the Teres major, and extending to within an inch of the trochlear surface: it also arises from the internal border of the humerus, and from the back of the whole length of the internal and lower part of the external intermuscular septum. The fibres of this portion of the muscle are directed, some downward to the olecranon, whilst others converge to the common tendon of insertion.

The **Common Tendon of the Triceps** commences about the middle of the back part of the muscle: it consists of two aponeurotic laminæ, one of which is subcutaneous and covers the posterior surface of the muscle for the lower half of its extent; the other is more deeply seated in the substance of the muscle: after receiving the attachment of the muscular fibres, they join together above the elbow, and are *inserted*, for the most part, into the back part of the upper surface of the olecranon process; a band of fibres is, however, continued downward, on the outer side, over the Anconeus, to blend with the deep fascia of the forearm. A small bursa (*bursa subtendinea olecrani*) occasionally multilocular, is situated on the front part of this surface, beneath the tendon. The **subcutaneous olecranon bursa** (*bursa subcutanea olecrani*) is situated between the olecranon process and the skin. Within the tendon of the triceps is often found the *bursa intratendinea olecrani*.

The long head of the Triceps descends between the Teres minor and Teres major, dividing the triangular space between these two muscles and the humerus into two smaller spaces, one triangular, the other quadrangular (Fig. 317). The **triangular space** contains the dorsalis scapulæ vessels; it is bounded by the Teres minor above, the Teres major below, and the scapular head of the Triceps externally: the **quadrangular space** transmits the posterior circumflex vessels and the circumflex nerve; it is bounded by the Teres minor above, the Teres major below, the scapular head of the Triceps internally, and the humerus externally.

Relations.—By its *posterior surface*, with the Deltoid above: in the rest of its extent it is subcutaneous; by its *anterior surface*, with the humerus, musculo-spiral nerve, superior profunda vessels, and back part of the elbow-joint. Its

middle or *long head* is in relation, behind, with the Deltoid and Teres minor; in front, with the Subscapularis, Latissimus dorsi, and Teres major.

The **Subanconeus** (*m. anconæus*) is a name given to a few fibres from the under surface of the lower part of the Triceps muscle, which are *inserted* into the posterior ligament of the elbow-joint. By some authors it is regarded as the analogue of the Subcrureus in the lower limb, but it is not a separate muscle.

Nerves.—The Triceps is supplied by the seventh and eighth cervical nerves through the musculo-spiral nerve.

Actions.—The Triceps is the great extensor muscle of the forearm, serving, when the forearm is flexed, to extend the elbow-joint. It is the direct antagonist of the Biceps and Brachialis anticus. When the arm is extended the long head of the muscles may assist the Teres major and Latissimus dorsi in drawing the humerus backward and in adducting it to the thorax. The long head of the Triceps protects the under part of the shoulder-joint, and prevents displacement of the head of the humerus downward and backward. The Subanconeus draws up the posterior ligament during extension of the forearm.

Surgical Anatomy.—The existence of the band of fibres from the Triceps to the fascia of the forearm is of importance in excision of the elbow, and should always be carefully preserved from injury by the operator, as by means of these fibres the patient is enabled to extend the forearm, a movement which would otherwise mainly be accomplished by gravity; that is to say, allowing the forearm to drop from its own weight.

III. MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE FOREARM.

Dissection.—To dissect the forearm, place the limb in the position indicated in Fig. 312, make a vertical incision along the middle line from the elbow to the wrist, and a transverse incision at the extremity of this; the superficial structures being removed, the deep fascia of the forearm is exposed.

Deep Fascia (*fascia antibrachii*).—The deep fascia of the forearm, continuous above with that enclosing the arm, is a dense, highly glistening aponeurotic investment, which forms a general sheath enclosing the muscles in this region; it is attached, behind, to the olecranon and posterior border of the ulna, and gives off from its inner surface numerous **intermuscular septa**, which enclose each muscle separately. Below, it is continuous in front with the **anterior annular ligament** (*ligamentum carpi volare*), and forms a sheath for the tendon of the Palmaris longus muscle, which passes over the annular ligament to be inserted into the palmar fascia. Behind, near the wrist-joint, it becomes much thickened by the addition of many transverse fibres, and forms the **posterior annular ligament** (*ligamentum carpi dorsale*). It consists of circular and oblique fibres, connected together by numerous vertical fibres. It is much thicker on the dorsal than on the palmar surface, and at the lower than at the upper part of the forearm, and is strengthened above by tendinous fibres derived from the Brachialis anticus and Biceps in front, and from the Triceps behind. Its deep surface gives origin to muscular fibres, especially at the upper part of the inner and outer sides of the forearm, and forms the boundaries of a series of conical-shaped cavities, in which the muscles are contained. Besides the **vertical septa** separating each muscle, **transverse septa** are given off on the anterior and posterior surfaces of the forearm, separating the deep from the superficial layer of muscles. Numerous apertures exist in the fascia for the passage of vessels and nerves; one of these, of large size, situated at the front of the elbow, serves for the passage of a communicating branch between the superficial and deep veins.

The muscles of the forearm may be subdivided into groups corresponding to the region they occupy. One group occupies the inner and anterior aspect of the forearm, and comprises the Flexor and Pronator muscles. Another group occupies its outer side, and a third its posterior aspect. The two latter groups include all the Extensor and Supinator muscles.

8. The Anterior Radio-ulnar Region.

The muscles in this region are divided for convenience of description into two groups or layers, **superficial** and **deep**.

The Superficial Layer.

Pronator radii teres. Palmaris longus.
Flexor carpi radialis. Flexor carpi ulnaris.
Flexor sublimis digitorum.

These muscles take origin from the internal condyle of the humerus by a common tendon.

The **Pronator Radii Teres** (*m. pronator teres*) *arises* by two heads. One, the larger and more superficial, **humeral head** (*caput humerale*), *arises* from the humerus, immediately above the internal condyle, and from the tendon common to the origin of the other muscles; also from the fascia of the forearm and the intermuscular septum between it and the Flexor carpi radialis. The other head, the **ulnar head** (*caput ulnare*), is a thin fasciculus which arises from the inner side of the coronoid process of the ulna, joining the preceding at an acute angle. Between the two heads the median nerve enters the forearm. The muscle passes obliquely across the forearm from the inner to the outer side, and terminates in a flat tendon, which turns over the outer margin of the radius, and is *inserted* into a rough impression at the middle of the outer surface of the shaft of that bone.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, throughout the greater part of its extent, with the deep fascia; at its insertion it is crossed by the radial vessels and nerve, and is covered by the Supinator longus; by its *posterior surface*, with the Brachialis anticus, Flexor sublimis digitorum, the median nerve, and ulnar artery, the small or deep head being interposed between the two latter structures. Its *outer border* forms the inner boundary of a triangular space in which are placed the brachial artery, median nerve, and tendon of the Biceps muscle. Its *inner border* is in contact with the Flexor carpi radialis.

Surgical Anatomy. This muscle, when suddenly brought into very active use, as in the game of lawn tennis, is apt to be strained, producing slight swelling and tenderness, and pain on putting the muscle into action. This is known as *lawn-tennis arm*.

The **Flexor Carpi Radialis** lies on the inner side of the preceding muscle. It *arises* from the internal condyle by the common tendon, from the fascia of the forearm, and from the intermuscular septa between it and the Pronator radii teres, on the outside, the Palmaris longus internally, and the Flexor sublimis digitorum beneath. Slender and aponeurotic in structure at its commencement, it increases in size, and terminates in a tendon which forms rather more than the lower half of its length. This tendon passes through a canal on the outer side of the annular ligament, runs through a groove in the os trapezium (which is converted into a canal by a fibrous sheath, and is lined by a synovial membrane), and is *inserted* into the base of the metacarpal bone of the index finger, and by a slip into the base of the metacarpal bone of the middle finger. The radial artery lies between the tendon of this muscle and the Supinator longus, and may easily be tied in this situation. In the hand a bursa (*bursa m. flexoris carpi radialis*) lies between the base of the second metacarpal bone and the tendon (Spalteholz).

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the deep fascia and the integument; by its *deep surface*, with the Flexor sublimis digitorum, Flexor longus pollicis, and wrist-joint; by its *outer border*, with the Pronator radii teres and the radial vessels; by its *inner border*, with the Palmaris longus above and the median nerve below.

The **Palmaris Longus** (Fig. 318) is a slender, fusiform muscle lying on the inner side of the preceding. It *arises* from the inner condyle of the humerus by the common tendon, from the deep fascia, and the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles. It terminates in a slender flattened tendon, which passes over the upper part of the annular ligament, to end in the central part of the palmar fascia and lower part of the annular ligament, frequently sending a tendinous slip to the short muscles of the thumb. This muscle is often absent, and is subject to very considerable variations; it may be tendinous above and muscular below; or it may be muscular in the centre, with a tendon above and below; or it may present two muscular bundles with a central tendon; or finally it may consist simply of a mere tendinous band.

Fig. 318.—Front of the left forearm. Superficial muscles.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the deep fascia. By its *deep surface*, with the Flexor sublimis digitorum. *Internally*, with the Flexor carpi ulnaris. *Externally*, with the Flexor carpi radialis. The median nerve lies close to the tendon, just above the wrist, on its inner and posterior side.

The **Flexor Carpi Ulnaris** (Fig. 318) lies along the ulnar side of the forearm. It *arises* by two heads, connected by a tendinous arch, beneath which pass the ulnar nerve and posterior ulnar recurrent artery. One head arises from the inner condyle of the humerus, **humeral head** (*caput humerale*), by the common tendon; the other from the inner margin of the olecranon and from the upper two-thirds of the posterior border of the ulna, **ulnar head** (*caput ulnare*), by an aponeurosis, common to it and the Extensor carpi ulnaris and Flexor profundus digitorum; and from the intermuscular septum between it and the Flexor sublimis digitorum. The fibres terminate in a tendon which occupies the anterior part of the lower half of the muscle, and is *inserted* into the pisiform bone, and is prolonged from this to the fifth metacarpal and unciform bones, by the **piso-metacarpal** and **piso-uncinate ligaments**: it is also attached by a few fibres to the annular ligament. The ulnar artery lies on the outer side of the tendon of this muscle, in the lower two-thirds of the forearm, the tendon forming a guide in tying the vessel in this situation. A bursa (*bursa m. flexoris carpi ulnaris*) is placed between the tendon and a part of the pisiform bone.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the deep fascia, with which it is intimately connected for a considerable extent; by its *deep surface*, with the Flexor sublimis digitorum, the Flexor profundus digitorum, the Pronator quadratus, and the ulnar vessels and nerve; by its *outer* or *radial border*, with the Palmaris longus above and the ulnar vessels and nerve below.

The **Flexor Sublimis Digitorum** (*m. flexor digitorum sublimis*) (Fig. 318) is placed beneath the preceding muscles, which therefore must be removed in order to bring its attachment into view. It is the largest of the muscles of the superficial layer, and arises by three heads. One head, the **humeral head** (*caput humerale*), *arises* from the internal condyle of the humerus by the common tendon, from the internal lateral ligament of the elbow-joint, and from the intermuscular septum common to it and the preceding muscles. The second head, **ulnar head** (*caput ulnare*), *arises* from the inner side of the coronoid process of the ulna, above the ulnar origin of the Pronator radii teres (Fig. 133, p. 185). The third head, **radial head** (*caput radiale*), *arises* from the oblique line of the radius, extending from the tubercle to the insertion of the Pronator radii teres. The fibres pass vertically downward, forming a broad and thick muscle, which speedily divides into two planes of muscular fibres, superficial and deep: the superficial plane divides into two parts which end in tendons for the middle and ring fingers; the deep plane also divides into two parts, which end in tendons for the index and little fingers, but previously to having done so it gives off a muscular slip, which joins that part of the superficial plane which is intended for the ring finger. As the four tendons thus formed pass beneath the annular ligament into the palm of the hand, they are arranged in pairs, the superficial pair corresponding to the middle and ring fingers, the deep pair to the index and little fingers. The tendons diverge from one another as they pass onward. Opposite the bases of the first phalanges each tendon divides into two slips (*chiasma tendinum*) to allow of the passage of the corresponding tendon of the Flexor profundus digitorum; the two portions of the tendon then unite and form a grooved channel for the reception of the accompanying deep flexor tendon. Finally they subdivide a second time, to be inserted into the sides of the second phalanges about their middle. The insertion in the index finger is shown in Fig. 324. After leaving the palm the tendons of the superficial flexor, accompanied by the deep flexor tendons, lie in osseo-aponeurotic canals (Fig. 320). Each canal or **theca** extends from the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation to the proximal end of the distal phalanx (Fig. 231). It is formed by strong fibrous bands, which arch across the tendons, and are attached on each side to the margins of the phalanges. Opposite the middle of the proximal and second phalanges the sheath is very strong, and the fibres pass transversely; but opposite the joints it is much thinner, and the fibres pass obliquely. It is very thin over the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation. It is absent over the distal phalanx. Each sheath is lined by a synovial membrane, which is reflected on the contained tendons.

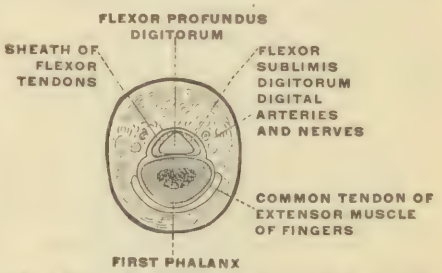


FIG. 319. Section passing through the middle third of the first phalanx of the middle finger (frozen section). The tendon of the Flexor sublimis digitorum is divided into two small bands, which spread laterally and engage themselves between the osseous plane and the Flexor profundus digitorum. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Relations.—In the forearm, by its *superficial surface*, with the deep fascia and all the preceding superficial muscles; by its *deep surface*, with the Flexor profundus digitorum, Flexor longus pollicis, the ulnar vessels and nerve, and the median nerve. In the hand its tendons are in relation, *in front*, with the palmar fascia, superficial palmar arch, and the branches of the median nerve; *behind*, with the tendons of the deep Flexor and the Lumbricales.

The Deep Layer (Fig. 320).

Flexor profundus digitorum. Flexor longus pollicis.
Pronator quadratus.

Dissection.—Divide each of the superficial muscles at its centre, and turn either end aside; the deep layer of muscles, together with the median nerve and ulnar vessels, will then be exposed.

The **Flexor Profundus Digitorum** (*m. flexor digitorum profundus*) (Fig. 320) is situated on the ulnar side of the forearm, immediately beneath the superficial Flexors. It *arises* from the upper three-fourths of the anterior and inner surfaces of the shaft of the ulna, embracing the insertion of the Brachialis anticus above, and extending, below, to within a short distance of the Pronator quadratus. It also arises from a depression on the inner side of the coronoid process; by an aponeurosis from the upper three-fourths of the posterior border of the ulna, in common with the Flexor and Extensor carpi ulnaris; and from the ulnar half of the interosseous membrane. The fibres form a fleshy belly of considerable size, which divides into four tendons: these pass under the annular ligament beneath the tendons of the Flexor sublimis digitorum. Opposite the first phalanges the tendons pass through the openings in the two slips of the tendons of the Flexor sublimis digitorum, and are finally inserted into the bases of the last phalanges. The portion of the muscle for the index finger (Fig. 324) is usually distinct throughout, but the tendons for the three inner fingers are connected together by cellular tissue and tendinous slips as far as the palm of the hand. The tendons of this muscle and those of the Flexor sublimis digitorum, whilst contained in the osseo-aponeurotic canals of the fingers, are invested in a synovial sheath, and are connected to each other and to the phalanges by slender tendinous filaments, called **vincula accessoria tendinum** (*vinculum tendinum*). One of these connects the deep tendon to the bone before it passes through the superficial tendon; a second connects the two tendons together, after the deep tendons have passed through; and a third connects the deep tendon to the head of the second phalanx. This last consists largely of yellow elastic tissue, and may assist in drawing down the tendon after flexion of the finger.[1]

Four small muscles, the Lumbricales, are connected with the tendons of the Flexor profundus in the palm. They will be described with the muscles in that region.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, in the forearm, with the Flexor sublimis digitorum, the Flexor carpi ulnaris, the ulnar vessels and nerve, and the median nerve; and in the hand, with the tendons of the superficial Flexor; by its *deep surface*, in the forearm, with the ulna, the interosseous membrane, the Pronator quadratus; and in the hand, with the Interossei, Adductor pollicis, and deep palmar arch; by its *ulnar border*, with the Flexor carpi ulnaris; by its *radial border*, with the Flexor longus pollicis, the anterior interosseous vessels and nerve being interposed.

The **Flexor Longus Pollicis** (*m. flexor pollicis longus*) (Fig. 320) is situated on the radial side of the forearm, lying on the same plane as the preceding. It *arises* from the grooved anterior surface of the shaft of the radius, commencing above, immediately below the tuberosity and oblique line, and extending below to within a short distance of the Pronator quadratus. It also arises from the adjacent part of the interosseous membrane and generally by a fleshy slip from the inner border of the coronoid process or from the internal condyle of the humerus. The fibres pass downward, and terminate in a flattened tendon which passes beneath the annular ligament, is then lodged in the interspace between the outer head of the Flexor brevis pollicis and the Adductor obliquus pollicis, and, entering an osseo-aponeurotic canal similar to those for the other flexor tendons, is inserted into the base of the last phalanx of the thumb.

[1] Marshall, Brit. and For. Med -Chir. Rev., 1853.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Flexor sublimis digitorum, Flexor carpi radialis, Supinator longus, and radial vessels; by its *deep surface*, with the radius, interosseous membrane, and Pronator quadratus; by its *ulnar border*, with the Flexor profundus digitorum, from which it is separated by the anterior interosseous vessels and nerve.

The **Pronator Quadratus** (Figs. 320 and 329) is a small, flat, quadrilateral muscle, extending transversely across the front of the radius and ulna, above their carpal extremities. It *arises* from the oblique or pronator ridge on the lower part of the anterior surface of the shaft of the ulna; from the lower fourth of the anterior surface and the anterior border of the ulna; and from a strong aponeurosis which covers the inner third of the muscle. The fibres pass outward and slightly downward, to be *inserted* into the lower fourth of the anterior surface and anterior border of the shaft of the radius.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Flexor profundus digitorum, the Flexor longus pollicis, Flexor carpi radialis, and the radial vessels; by its *deep surface*, with the radius, ulna, and interosseous membrane.

Nerves. — All the muscles of the superficial layer are supplied by the median nerve, excepting the Flexor carpi ulnaris, which is supplied by the ulnar nerve. The Pronator radii teres and the Flexor carpi radialis derive their supply primarily from the sixth cervical; the Palmaris longus from the eighth cervical; the Flexor sublimis digitorum from the seventh and eighth cervical and first dorsal, and the Flexor carpi ulnaris from the eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves. Of the deep layer, the Flexor profundus digitorum is supplied by the eighth cervical and first dorsal through the ulnar and anterior interosseous branch of the median. The remaining two muscles, the

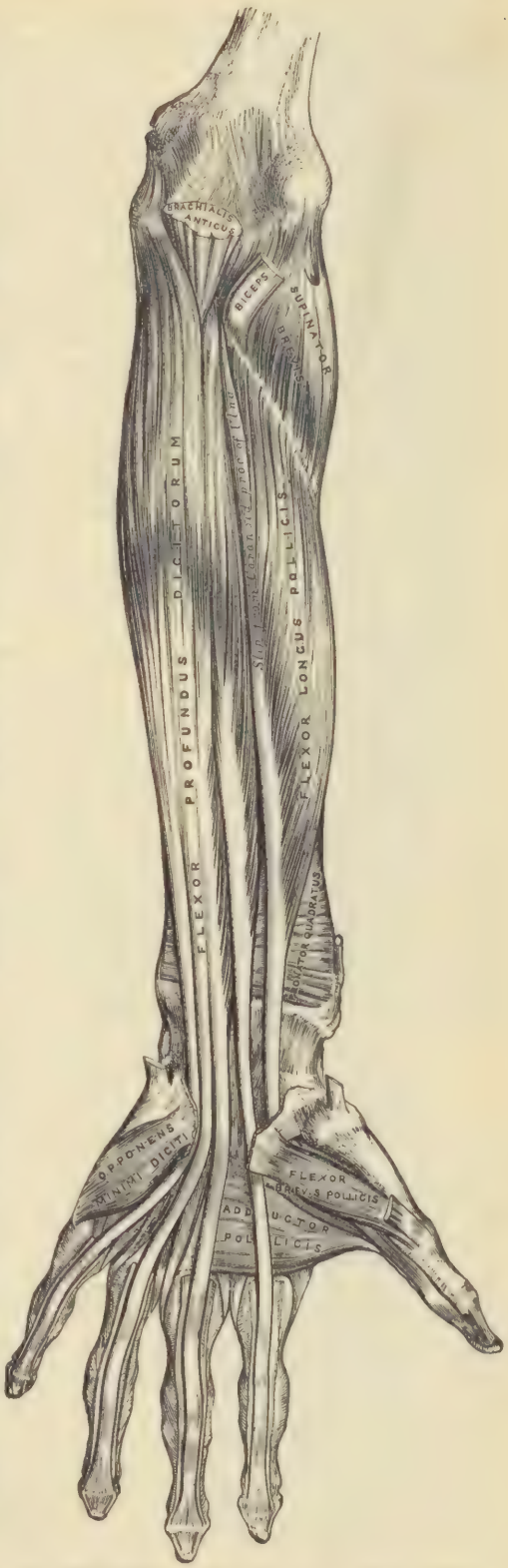


FIG. 320.—Front of the left forearm. Deep muscles.

Flexor longus pollicis and Pronator quadratus, are also supplied by the eighth cervical and first dorsal through the anterior interosseous branch of the median.

Actions.—These muscles act upon the forearm, the wrist, and hand. The Pronator radii teres helps to rotate the radius upon the ulna, rendering the hand prone: when the radius is fixed it assists the other muscles in flexing the forearm. The Flexor carpi radialis is one of the flexors of the wrist; when acting alone it flexes the wrist, inclining it to the radial side. It can also assist in pronating the forearm and hand, and, by continuing its action, in bending the elbow. The Flexor carpi ulnaris is one of the flexors of the wrist: when acting alone it flexes the wrist, inclining it to the ulnar side (adducts the wrist), and, by continuing to contract, it bends the elbow. The Palmaris longus is a tensor of the palmar fascia, and tension of this fascia protects the parts beneath it. It also assists in flexing the wrist and elbow. The Flexor sublimis digitorum flexes the middle phalanx and then assists in flexing the wrist and elbow. The Flexor profundus digitorum is the flexor of the distal phalanx. After the Flexor sublimis has bent the second phalanx, the Flexor profundus flexes the terminal one, but it cannot do so until after the contraction of the superficial muscle. After flexing the distal phalanx, it assists in flexing the middle phalanx, the proximal phalanx, and the wrist. The Flexor longus pollicis is the flexor of the distal phalanx of the thumb. When the thumb is fixed it also assists in flexing the wrist. The Pronator quadratus helps to rotate the radius upon the ulna, rendering the hand prone.

Surgical Anatomy.—When a finger is amputated so that the fibrous sheath of the flexor tendons is divided in a region in which it is firm and dense, the tendon contracts but the theca does not, and the rigid theca constitutes a permeable passage to the palm. If the parts should be infected the theca will draw pus toward the palm. Hence it is best to close the theca by sutures. "Over the terminal phalanx, and over the joint between the middle and terminal phalanges, there is no fibrous sheath. In front of the metacarpo-phalangeal joint it is scarcely evident. Over the first and second (proximal and middle) phalanges, and in front of the joint between these bones, the fibrous sheath is well marked, and appears as a rigid tube when cut across. As the sheath crosses the metacarpo-phalangeal and first interphalangeal joints, it is adherent to the glenoid ligament, and is easily closed by two fine catgut sutures passed vertically—*i. e.*, from the dorsal to the palmar wall. Opposite the shafts of the first and second phalanges, however, there is much difficulty in effecting closure, since the sheath is united to the periosteum, and that membrane is very thin. In these situations the periosteum should be stripped up a little from the palmar aspect of the bone, and the orifice of the tube secured by two fine sutures passed either vertically or transversely, as may appear the more convenient. This stripping off of periosteum should be effected before the bone is divided."[1]

9. The Radial Region (Figs. 318, 321, 322).

Supinator longus. Extensor carpi radialis longior.
Extensor carpi radialis brevior.

Dissection.—Divide the integument in the same manner as in the dissection of the anterior brachial region, and, after having examined the cutaneous vessels and nerves and deep fascia, remove all those structures. The muscles will then be exposed. The removal of the fascia will be considerably facilitated by detaching it from below upward. Great care should be taken to avoid cutting across the tendons of the muscles of the thumb, which cross obliquely the larger tendons running down the back of the radius.

The **Supinator Longus** (*m. brachioradialis*) (Fig. 318) is the most superficial muscle on the radial side of the forearm; it is fleshy for the upper two-thirds of its extent, tendinous below. It *arises* from the upper two-thirds of the external supracondylar ridge of the humerus, and from the external intermuscular septum, being limited above by the musculo-spiral groove. The fibres terminate above the middle of the forearm in a flat tendon, which is inserted into the outer side of the base of the styloid process of the radius.

[1] Operative Surgery. By Sir Frederick Treves.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument and fascia for the greater part of its extent; near its insertion it is crossed by the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis and the Extensor brevis pollicis; by its *deep surface*, with the humerus, the Extensor carpi radialis longior and brevior, the insertion of the Pronator radii teres, and the Supinator brevis; by its *inner border*, above the elbow, with the Brachialis anticus, the musculo-spiral nerve, and the radial recurrent artery; and in the forearm with the radial vessels and nerve.

The **Extensor Carpi Radialis Longior** (*m. extensor carpi radialis longus*) (Fig. 321) is placed partly beneath the preceding muscle. It *arises* from the lower third of the external supracondylar ridge of the humerus, and from the external intermuscular septum by a few fibres from the common tendon of origin of the Extensor muscles of the forearm. The fibres terminate at the upper third of the forearm in a flat tendon, which runs along the outer border of the radius, beneath the extensor tendons of the thumb; it then passes through a groove common to it and the Extensor carpi radialis brevior, immediately behind the styloid process, and is *inserted* into the base of the metacarpal bone of the index finger, on its radial side.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Supinator longus and fascia of the forearm; its *outer side* is crossed obliquely by the extensor tendons of the thumb; by its *deep surface*, with the elbow-joint, the Extensor carpi radialis brevior, and back part of the wrist.

The **Extensor Carpi Radialis Brevior** (*m. extensor carpi radialis brevis*) (Fig. 321) is shorter, as its name implies, and thicker than the preceding muscle, beneath which it is placed. It *arises* from the external condyle of the humerus by a tendon common to it and the three following muscles; from the external lateral ligament of the elbow-joint, from a strong aponeurosis which covers its

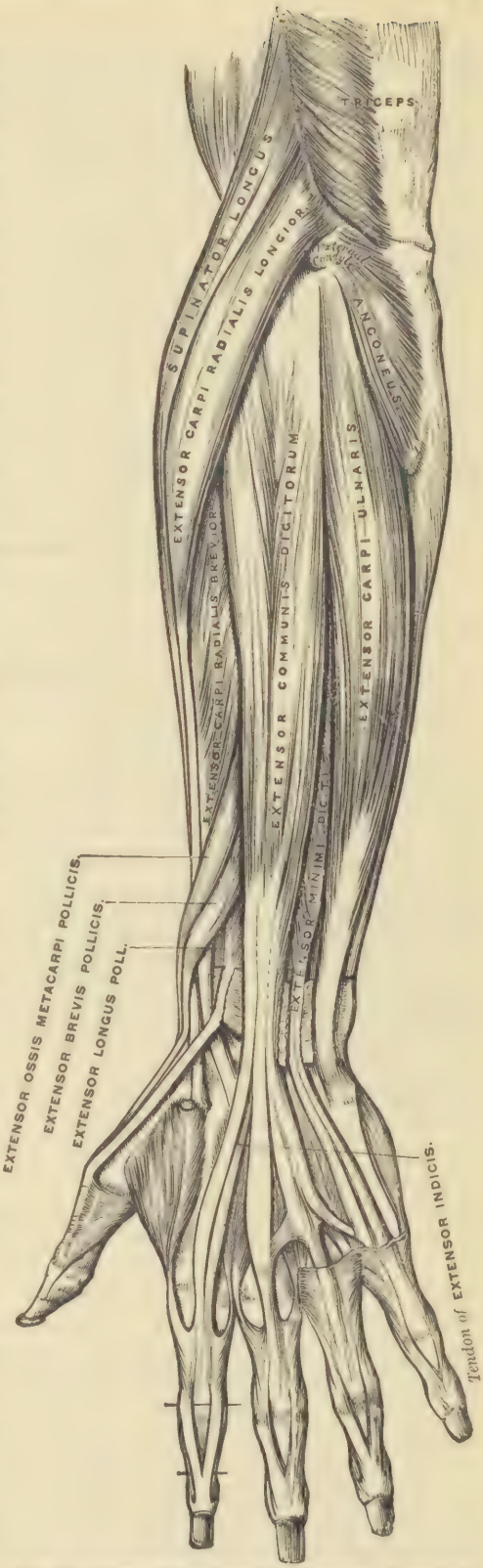


FIG. 321.—Posterior surface of the forearm. Superficial muscles.

surface, and from the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles. The fibres terminate about the middle of the forearm in a flat tendon which is closely connected with that of the preceding muscle, and accompanies it to the wrist, lying in the same groove on the posterior surface of the radius; it passes beneath the extensor tendons of the thumb, then beneath the annular ligament, and, diverging somewhat from its fellow, is *inserted* into the base of the metacarpal bone of the middle finger, on its radial side. There is often a bursa (*bursa m. extensoris carpi radialis brevis*) between a portion of the base of the bone and the tendon.

The tendons of the two preceding muscles pass through the same compartment of the annular ligament, and are lubricated by a single synovial membrane, but are separated from each other by a small vertical ridge of bone as they lie in the groove at the back of the radius.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Extensor carpi radialis longior, and with the Extensor muscles of the thumb which cross it; by its *deep surface*, with the Supinator brevis, tendon of the Pronator radii teres, radius, and wrist-joint; by its *ulnar border*, with the Extensor communis digitorum.

10. The Posterior Radio-ulnar Region (Fig. 321).

The muscles in this region are divided for purposes of description into two groups or layers, **superficial** and **deep**.

The Superficial Layer.

Extensor communis digitorum.	Extensor carpi ulnaris.
Extensor minimi digiti.	Anconeus.

The **Extensor Communis Digitorum** (*m. extensor digitorum communis*) is situated at the back part of the forearm. It *arises* from the external condyle of the humerus by the common tendon, from the deep fascia, and the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles. Just below the middle of the forearm it divides into three fleshy masses, from which tendons proceed; these pass, together with the Extensor indicis, through a separate compartment of the annular ligament, lubricated by a synovial membrane. The tendons then diverge, the innermost one dividing into two; and all, after passing across the back of the hand, are inserted into the second and third phalanges of the fingers in the following manner: the outermost tendon, accompanied by the Extensor indicis, goes to the index finger (Figs. 321, 323, and 324); the second tendon is sometimes connected to the first by a thin transverse band, and receives a slip from the third tendon (Fig. 321); it goes to the middle finger; the third tendon gives off the slip to the second (Fig. 321), and receives a very considerable part of the fourth tendon; the fourth, or innermost tendon, divides into two parts: one goes to join the third tendon; the other, reinforced by the Extensor minimi digiti, goes to the little finger. Each tendon opposite the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation becomes narrow and thickened, and gives off a thin fasciculus upon each side of the joint, which blends with the lateral ligaments and serves as the posterior ligament; after having passed the joint it spreads out into a broad aponeurosis, which covers the whole of the dorsal surface of the first phalanx, being reinforced, in this situation, by the tendons of the Interossei and Lumbricales. Opposite the first phalangeal joint this aponeurosis divides into three slips, a middle and two lateral: the former is inserted into the base of the second phalanx; and the two lateral, which are continued onward along the sides of the second phalanx, unite by their contiguous margins, and are inserted into the dorsal surface of the last phalanx. As the tendons cross the phalangeal joints they furnish them with posterior ligaments. The accessory slips or **lateral vincula** which join the tendon

of the ring finger to the tendon of the little finger and the tendon of the middle finger are constant. If the middle and little fingers are held flexed the lateral vincula greatly limit the range of extension possible in the ring finger—a limitation which interferes with a piano-player (Prof. William S. Forbes).

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the fascia of the forearm and hand, the posterior annular ligament, and integument; by its *deep surface*, with the Supinator brevis, the Extensor muscles of the thumb and index finger, the posterior interosseous vessels and nerve, the wrist-joint, carpus, metacarpus, and phalanges; by its *radial border*, with the Extensor carpi radialis brevior; by its *ulnar border*, with the Extensor minimi digiti and Extensor carpi ulnaris.

The **Extensor Minimi Digiti** (*m. extensor digiti quinti proprius*) is a slender muscle placed on the inner side of the Extensor communis, with which it is generally connected. It *arises* from the common tendon by a thin, tendinous slip, and from the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles. Its tendon runs through a separate compartment in the annular ligament behind the inferior radio-ulnar joint, then divides into two as it crosses the hand, the outermost division being joined by the slip from the innermost tendon of the common extensor. The two slips thus formed spread into a broad aponeurosis, which after receiving a slip from the Abductor minimi digiti is *inserted* into the second and third phalanges. The tendon is situated on the ulnar side of, and somewhat more superficial than, the common extensor.

The **Extensor Carpi Ulnaris** is the most superficial muscle on the ulnar side of the forearm. It *arises* from the external condyle of the humerus by the common tendon; by an aponeurosis from the posterior border of the ulna in common with the Flexor carpi ulnaris and the Flexor profundus digitorum; and from the deep fascia of the forearm. This muscle terminates in a tendon which runs through a groove behind the styloid process of the ulna, passes through a separate compartment in the annular ligament, and is *inserted* into the prominent tubercle on the ulnar side of the base of the metacarpal bone of the little finger.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the deep fascia of the forearm; by its *deep surface*, with the ulna and the muscles of the deep layer.

The **Anconeus** (*m. anconæus*) is a small triangular muscle placed behind and below the elbow-joint, and appears to be a continuation of the external portion of the Triceps. It *arises* by a separate tendon from the back part of the outer condyle of the humerus, and is *inserted* into the side of the olecranon and upper fourth of the posterior surface of the shaft of the ulna; its fibres diverge from their origin, the upper ones being directed transversely, the lower obliquely inward.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with a strong fascia derived from the Triceps; by its *deep surface*, with the elbow-joint, the orbicular ligament, the ulna, and a small portion of the Supinator brevis.

The Deep Layer (Fig. 323).

Supinator radii brevis. Extensor brevis pollicis.
Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis. Extensor longus pollicis.
Extensor indicis.

The **Supinator Radii Brevis** (*m. supinator*) (Figs. 322 and 323) is a broad muscle, of hollow cylindrical form, curved round the upper third of the radius. It consists of two distinct planes of muscular fibres, between which lies the posterior interosseous nerve (Fig. 322). The two planes *arise* in common: the superficial one by tendinous, and the deeper by muscular, fibres from the external condyle of the humerus; from the external lateral ligament of the elbow-joint and the orbicular ligament of the radius; from the ridge on the ulna, which runs obliquely downward from the

posterior extremity of the lesser sigmoid cavity; from the triangular depression in front of it; and from a tendinous expansion which covers the surface of the muscle.

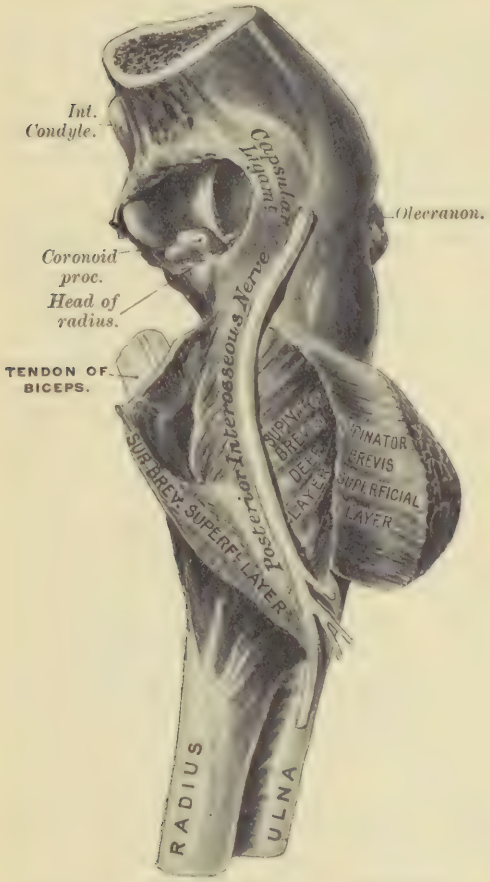


Fig. 322.—Supinator brevis. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

Fig. 323.—Posterior surface of the forearm. Deep muscles.

The superficial fibres surround the upper part of the radius, and are *inserted* into the outer edge of the bicipital tuberosity and into the oblique line of the radius, as low down as the insertion of the Pronator radii teres. The upper fibres of the deeper plane form a sling-like fasciculus, which encircles the neck of the radius above the tuberosity and is attached to the back part of its inner surface: the greater part of this portion of the muscle is inserted into the posterior and external surface of the shaft, midway between the oblique line and the head of the bone. Between the insertion of the two planes the posterior interosseous nerve lies on the shaft of the bone (Fig. 322).

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the superficial Extensor and Supinator muscles, and the radial vessels and nerve; by its *deep surface*, with the elbow-joint, the interosseous membrane, and the radius.

The **Extensor Ossis Metacarpi Pollicis** (*m. abductor pollicis longus*) is the most external and the largest of the deep extensor muscles: it lies immediately below the Supinator brevis, with which it is sometimes united. It *arises* from the outer part of the posterior surface of the shaft of the ulna below the insertion of the Anconeus, from the interosseous membrane, and from the middle third of the posterior surface of the shaft of the radius. Passing obliquely downward and outward, it terminates in a tendon which runs through a groove on the outer side of the styloid process of the radius, accompanied by the tendon of the Extensor brevis pollicis, and is *inserted* into the base of the metacarpal bone of the thumb. It occasionally gives off two slips near its insertion—one to the Trapezium, and the other to blend with the origin of the Abductor pollicis.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Extensor communis digitorum, Extensor minimi digiti, and fascia of the forearm, and with the branches of the posterior interosseous artery and nerve which cross it; by its *deep surface*, with the ulna, interosseous membrane, radius, the tendons of the Extensor carpi radialis longior and brevior, which it crosses obliquely, and, at the outer side of the wrist, with the radial vessels; by its *upper border*, with the Supinator brevis; by its *lower border*, with the Extensor brevis pollicis.

The **Extensor Brevis Pollicis**, often called the **extensor primi internodii pollicis** (*m. extensor pollicis brevis*), the smallest muscle of this group, lies on the inner side of the preceding. It *arises* from the posterior surface of the shaft of the radius, below the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, and from the interosseous membrane. Its direction is similar to that of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, its tendon passing through the same groove on the outer side of the styloid process, to be *inserted* into the base of the first phalanx of the thumb.

Relations.—The same as those of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis.

The **Extensor Longus Pollicis**, often called the **extensor secundi internodii pollicis** (*m. extensor pollicis longus*) is much larger than the preceding muscle, the origin of which it partly covers in. It *arises* from the outer part of the posterior surface of the shaft of the ulna, below the origin of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, and from the interosseous membrane. It terminates in a tendon which passes through a separate compartment in the annular ligament, lying in a narrow, oblique groove at the back part of the lower end of the radius. It then crosses obliquely the tendons of the Extensor carpi radialis longior and brevior, being separated from the other extensor tendons of the thumb by a triangular interval, in which the radial artery is found, and is finally *inserted* into the base of the last phalanx of the thumb.

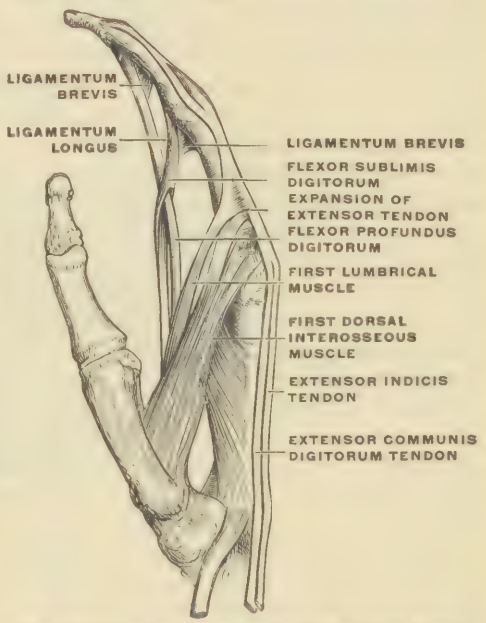


FIG. 324.—The tendons attached to the index finger. (Cunningham.)

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the same parts as the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis; by its *deep surface*, with the ulna, interosseous membrane, the

posterior interosseous nerve, radius, the wrist, the radial vessels, and metacarpal bone of the thumb.

The **Extensor Indicis** (*m. extensor indicis proprius*) (Figs. 321, 323, and 324) is a narrow, elongated muscle placed on the inner side of, and parallel with, the preceding. It *arises* from the posterior surface of the shaft of the ulna, below the origin of the Extensor longus pollicis and from the interosseous membrane. Its tendon passes with the Extensor communis digitorum through the same canal in the annular ligament, and subsequently joins the tendon of the Extensor communis which belongs to the index finger, opposite the lower end of the corresponding metacarpal bone, lying to the ulnar side of the tendon from the common extensor.

Relations.—The relations are similar to those of the preceding muscles.

Nerves.—The Supinator longus is supplied by the sixth, the Extensor carpi radialis longior by the sixth and seventh, and the Anconeus by the seventh and eighth cervical nerves, all through the musculo-spiral nerve; the remaining muscles of the radial and posterior brachial region are supplied through the posterior interosseous nerve, the Supinator brevis being supplied by the sixth cervical, the Extensor carpi radialis brevior by the sixth and seventh cervical, and all the other muscles by the seventh cervical.

Actions.—The muscles of the radial and posterior brachial regions, which comprise all the extensor and supinator muscles, act upon the forearm, wrist, and hand; they are the direct antagonists of the pronator and flexor muscles. The Anconeus assists the Triceps in extending the forearm. The chief action of the Supinator longus is that of a flexor of the elbow-joint, but in addition to this it may act both as a supinator or a pronator; that is to say, if the forearm is forcibly pronated it will act as a supinator, and bring the bones into a position midway between supination and pronation; and *vice versa*, if the arm is forcibly supinated, it will act as a pronator, and bring the bones into the same position, midway between supination and pronation. The action of the muscle is therefore to throw the forearm and hand into the position they naturally occcupy when placed across the chest. The Supinator brevis is a supinator; that is to say, when the radius has been carried across the ulna in pronation and the back of the hand is directed forward, this muscle carries the radius back again to its normal position on the outer side of the ulna, and the palm of the hand is again directed forward. The Extensor carpi radialis longior extends the wrist and abducts the hand. It may also assist in bending the elbow-joint; at all events, it serves to fix or steady this articulation. The Extensor carpi radialis brevior assists the Extensor carpi radialis longior in extending the wrist, and may also act slightly as an abductor of the hand. The Extensor carpi ulnaris helps to extend the hand, but when acting alone inclines it toward the ulnar side; by its continued action it extends the elbow-joint. The Extensor communis digitorum extends the phalanges, then the wrist, and finally the elbow. It acts principally on the proximal phalanges, the middle and terminal phalanges being extended by the Interossei and Lumbricales. It has also a tendency to separate the fingers as it extends them. The Extensor minimi digiti extends similarly the little finger, and by its continued action it assists in extending the wrist. It is owing to this muscle that the little finger can be extended or pointed whilst the others are flexed. The chief action of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis is to carry the thumb outward and backward from the palm of the hand, and hence it has been called the **abductor pollicis longus**. By its continued action it helps to extend and abduct the wrist. The Extensor brevis pollicis extends the proximal phalanx of the thumb. By its continued action it helps to extend and abduct the wrist. The Extensor longus pollicis extends the terminal phalanx of the thumb. By its continued action it helps to extend and abduct the wrist. The Extensor indicis extends the index finger, and

by its continued action assists in extending the wrist. It is owing to this muscle that the index finger can be extended or pointed while the others are flexed.

Surgical Anatomy. The tendons of the extensor muscles of the thumb are liable to become strained and their sheaths inflamed after excessive exercise, producing a sausage-shaped swelling along the course of the tendon, and giving a peculiar creaking sensation to the finger when the muscle acts. In consequence of its often being caused by such movements as wringing clothes, it is known as *washerwoman's sprain*. In piano-players the slips which join the tendons of the Extensor communis digitorum may limit freedom of motion in individual fingers. "When the middle finger and little finger of the hand are brought down by the flexor muscles, and their balls are held down firmly against the keys of a musical instrument, as in performing on a piano for the purpose of producing continuous sounds, and when at the same time it is necessary to extend and then to flex the ring-finger in order to produce accompanying sounds, it will be found that in the still-flexed position of the middle and little fingers, the *ring finger* can be but very slightly extended. Its complete extension, without operative interference, can only be brought about by long-continued exertion in practice, when elongation of certain accessory, but restricting, tendons is made by nutritive growth."[1] If there is much limitation division of the hindering slips is proper. This was suggested by Prof. William S. Forbes in 1857.

IV. MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE HAND.

The muscles of the hand are subdivided into three groups: 1. Those of the thumb, which occupy the radial side and produce the **thenar eminence**. 2. Those of the little finger, which occupy the ulnar side and give rise to the **hypothenar eminence**. 3. Those in the middle of the palm and within the interosseous spaces.

Dissection (Fig. 312).—Make a transverse incision across the front of the wrist, and a second across the heads of the metacarpal bones: connect the two by a vertical incision in the middle line, and continue it through the centre of the middle finger. The anterior and posterior annular ligaments and the palmar fascia should then be dissected.

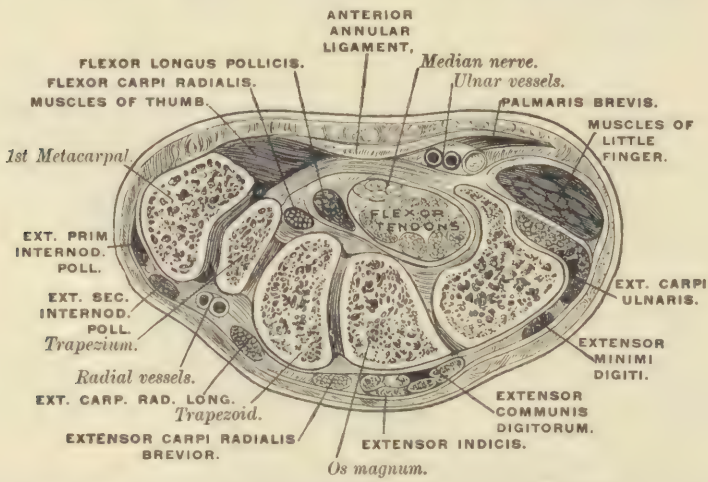


FIG. 325.—Transverse section through the carpus, showing the relative positions of the tendons, vessels, and nerves. (Henle.)

The **Ligamentum Carpi Volare** is a thickening of the deep fascia of the forearm (*fascia antibrachii*) by deep fibres just above the wrist (Fig. 330). It covers the flexor muscles and joins the anterior annular ligament.

The **Anterior Annular Ligament** (*ligamentum carpi transversum*) (Fig. 325) is a strong, fibrous band which arches over the carpus, converting the deep groove on the front of the carpal bones into a canal, beneath which pass the flexor tendons of the fingers. It is attached, internally, to the pisiform bone and

[1] Prof. William S. Forbes in the Philadelphia Medical Journal, January 15, 1898.

the hook of the unciform bone (*eminentia carpi ulnaris*), and externally to the tuberosity of the scaphoid and to the inner part of the anterior surface and the ridge of the trapezium (*eminentia carpi radialis*). It is continuous, above, with the deep fascia of the forearm, of which it may be regarded as a thickened portion, and, below, with the palmar fascia. It is crossed by the ulnar vessels and nerve and the cutaneous branches of the median and ulnar nerves. At its outer extremity is the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis, which lies in the groove on the trapezium between the attachments of the annular ligaments to the bone. It has inserted into its anterior surface a part of the tendon of the Palmaris longus and part of the tendon of the Flexor carpi ulnaris, and has arising from it, below, the small muscles of the thumb and little finger. Beneath it pass the tendons of the Flexor sublimis and Profundus digitorum, the Flexor longus pollicis, and the median nerve.

Fig. 326.—Diagram showing the arrangement of the synovial sheaths of the palm and fingers.

The Synovial Membranes of the Flexor Tendons at the Wrist.—There are two vaginal synovial membranes which enclose all the tendons as they pass beneath this ligament—one for the Flexor sublimis and Profundus digitorum, the other for the Flexor longus pollicis. They extend up into the forearm for about an inch above the annular ligament, and downward about half-way along the metacarpal bone, where they terminate in a blind diverticulum around each pair of tendons, with the exception of that of the thumb and those of the little finger—in each of these two digits the diverticulum is continued on, and communicates with the synovial sheath of the tendons in the fingers. In the other three fingers the synovial sheath of the tendons begins as a blind pouch without communication with the large synovial sac (Fig. 326).

Surgical Anatomy.—This arrangement of the synovial sheaths explains the fact that thecal abscess in the thumb and little finger is liable to be followed by abscesses in the forearm, from extension of the inflammation along the continuous synovial sheaths. Tuberculous inflammation is apt to occur in this situation, constituting *compound palmar ganglion;* it presents an hour-glass outline, with a swelling in front of the wrist and in the palm of the hand, and a constriction corresponding to the annular ligament between the two. The fluid can be forced from the one swelling to the other under the ligament.

Bursæ about the Hand and Wrist.—Bursæ usually exist between the distal extremities of the metacarpal bones (*bursæ intermetacarpophalangeæ*), and a subcutaneous bursa often exists over the dorsal surface of the head of the fifth metacarpal bone. Subcutaneous digital dorsal bursæ occur "almost constantly in the first finger-joints (between the first and second phalanx), occasionally in the second joint of the second and fourth fingers"[1] (*bursæ subcutaneæ digitorum dorsales*). A bursa exists between the tendon of the Extensor carpi radialis brevior and the base of the third metacarpal bone; another between the Flexor carpi ulnaris and the pisiform bone; another between the Flexor carpi radialis and the base of the second metacarpal bone.

[1] Hand Atlas of Human Anatomy. By Werner Spalteholz. Translated and edited by Lewellys F. Barker.

The **Posterior Annular Ligament** (*ligamentum carpi dorsale*) is a strong fibrous band extending obliquely downward and inward across the back of the wrist, and consisting of the deep fascia of the back of the forearm, strengthened by the addition of some transverse fibres. It binds down the extensor tendons in their passage to the fingers, being attached, internally, to the styloid process of the ulna, the cuneiform and pisiform bones; externally, to the margin of the radius; and, in its passage across the wrist, to the elevated ridges on the posterior surface of the radius. It presents six compartments for the passage of tendons, each of which is lined by a separate synovial membrane (Fig. 327). These are, from without inward: 1. On the outer side of the styloid process, for the tendons of the Extensor ossis metacarpi and Extensor brevis pollicis. 2. Behind the styloid process, for the tendons of the Extensor carpi radialis longior and brevior. 3. About the middle of the posterior surface of the radius, for the tendon of the Extensor longus pollicis. 4. To the inner side of the latter, for the tendons of the Extensor communis digitorum and Extensor indicis. 5. Opposite the interval between the radius and ulna, for the Extensor minimi digiti. 6. Grooving the back of the ulna, for the tendon of the Extensor carpi ulnaris. The synovial membranes lining these sheaths are usually very extensive, reaching from above the annular ligament down upon the tendons for a variable distance on the back of the hand.

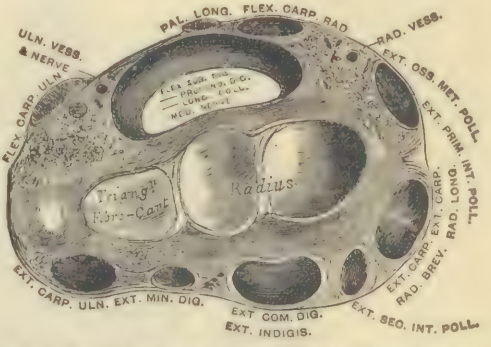


FIG. 327.—Transverse section through the wrist, showing the annular ligaments and the canals for the passage of the tendons.

The Deep Palmar Fascia (*aponeurosis palmaris*).—The deep palmar fascia (Fig. 328) forms a common sheath which invests the muscles of the hand. It consists of a **central** and **two lateral portions**.

The **Central Portion** occupies the middle of the palm, is triangular in shape, of great strength and thickness, and binds down the tendons and protects the vessels and nerves in this situation. It is narrow above, where it is attached to the lower margin of the annular ligament, and receives the expanded tendon of the Palmaris longus muscle. Below, it is broad and expanded, and divides into four slips for the four fingers. Each slip gives off superficial fibres, which are inserted into the skin of the palm and finger, those to the palm joining the skin at the furrow corresponding to the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation, and those to the fingers passing into the skin at the transverse fold at the base of the fingers. The deeper part of each slip subdivides into two processes, which are inserted into the lateral margins of the anterior (glenoid) ligament of the metacarpo-phalangeal joint. From the sides of these processes offsets are sent backward, to be attached to the borders of the lateral surfaces of the metacarpal bones at their distal extremities. By this arrangement short channels are formed on the front of the lower ends of the metacarpal bones, through which the flexor tendons pass. Dr. W. W. Keen describes a fifth slip as frequently found passing to the thumb. The intervals left in the fascia between the four fibrous slips transmit the digital vessels and nerves and the tendons of the Lumbricales. At the points of division of the palmar fascia into the slips above mentioned numerous strong, transverse fibres bind the separate processes together. The palmar fascia is intimately adherent to the integument by dense fibro-areolar tissue, forming the superficial palmar fascia, and gives origin by its inner margin to the Palmaris brevis: it covers the superficial palmar arch, the tendons of the flexor muscles, and the branches of

the median and ulnar nerves, and on each side it gives off a vertical septum, which is continuous with the interosseous aponeurosis and separates the lateral from the middle palmar group of muscles.

The **Lateral Portions of the Palmar Fascia** are thin, fibrous layers, which cover, on the radial side, the muscles of the ball of the thumb, and, on the ulnar side, the muscles of the little finger; they are continuous with the dorsal fascia, and in the palm with the central portion of the palmar fascia.

FIG. 328.—Palmar fascia. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

The **Superficial Transverse Ligament of the Fingers** is a thin, fibrous band which stretches across the roots of the four fingers, and is closely attached to the skin of the clefts, and internally to the fifth metacarpal bone, forming a sort of rudimentary web. Beneath it the digital vessels and nerves pass onward to their destination.

Surgical Anatomy.—The palmar fascia is liable to undergo contraction, producing a very inconvenient deformity known as *Dupuytren's contraction*. The ring and little fingers are most frequently implicated, but the middle, index, and the thumb may be involved. The proximal phalanx is drawn down and cannot be straightened, and the two distal phalanges become similarly flexed as the disease advances.

11. The Radial Region (Figs. 329, 330).

Abductor pollicis. Flexor brevis pollicis.
Opponens pollicis. Adductor obliquus pollicis.
Adductor transversus pollicis.

The **Abductor Pollicis** (*m. abductor pollicis brevis*) (Fig. 330) is a thin, flat muscle, placed immediately beneath the integument. It *arises* from the anterior annular ligament, the tuberosity of the scaphoid, and the ridge of the trapezium,

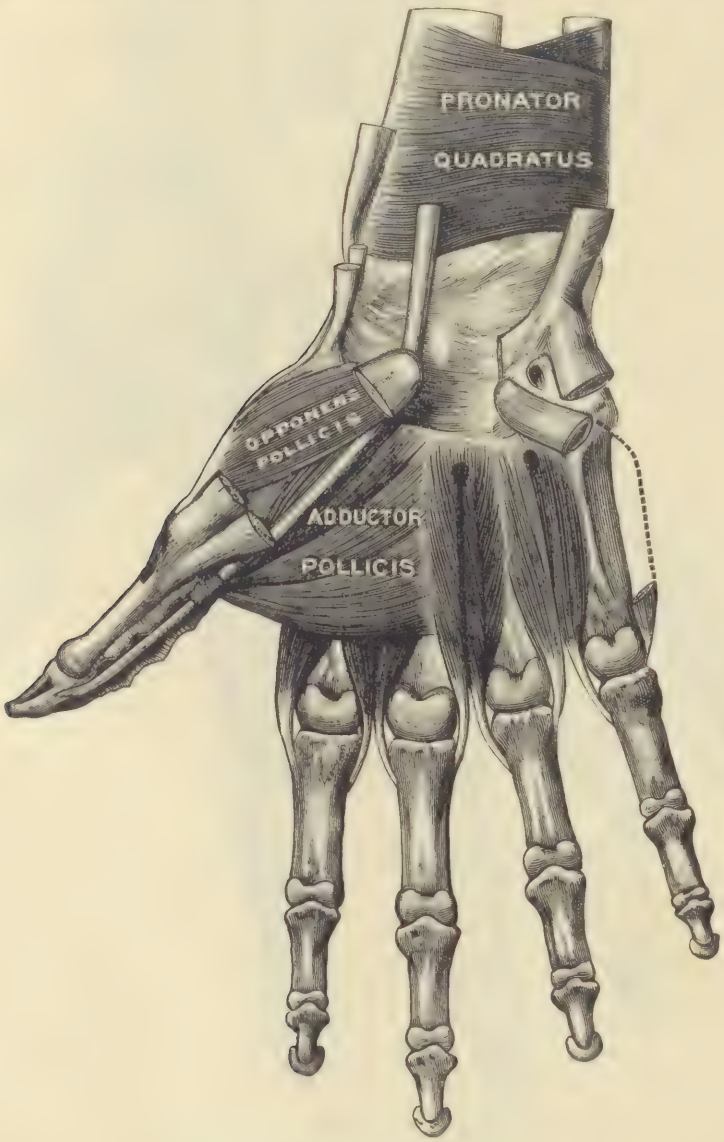


FIG. 329.—Adductor pollicis, Opponens pollicis, and Pronator quadratus. (Testut.)

frequently by two distinct slips; and, passing outward and downward, is *inserted* by a thin, flat tendon into the radial side of the base of the first phalanx of the thumb, sending a slip to join the tendon of the Extensor longus pollicis.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the palmar fascia and superficialis volæ artery, which frequently perforates it. By its *deep surface*, with the Opponens pollicis, from which it is separated by a thin aponeurosis. Its *inner border* is separated from the Flexor brevis pollicis by a narrow cellular interval.

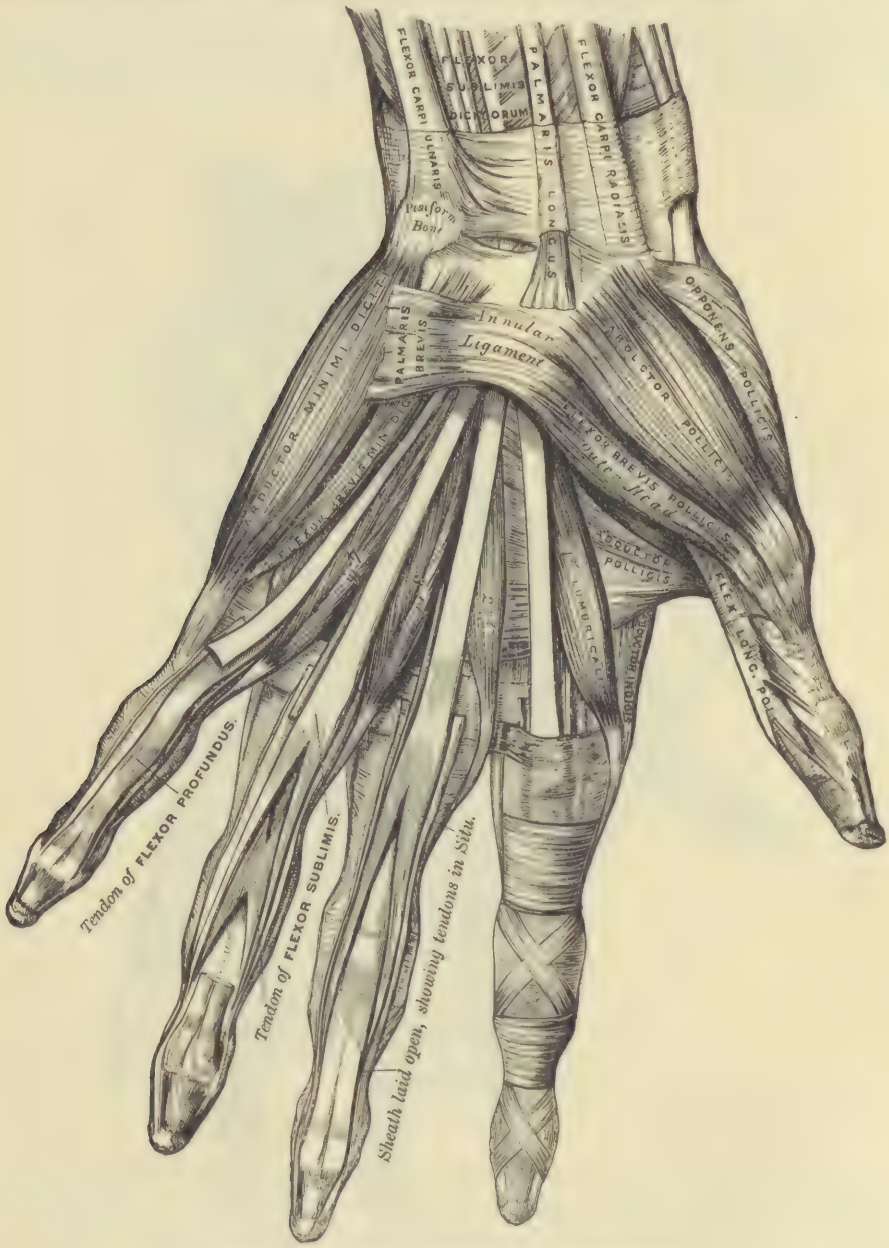


FIG. 330.—Muscles of the left hand. Palmar surface.

The **Opponens Pollicis** (Figs. 329 and 330), often called the **flexor ossis metacarpi pollicis**, is a small, triangular muscle, placed beneath the preceding. It *arises* from the palmar surface of the ridge on the trapezium and from the annular ligament, passes downward and outward, and is *inserted* into the whole length of the metacarpal bone of the thumb on its radial side.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Abductor and Flexor brevis pollicis. By its *deep surface*, with the trapezio-metacarpal articulation. By its *inner border*, with the Adductor obliquus pollicis.

The **Flexor Brevis Pollicis** (*m. flexor pollicis brevis*) (Fig. 330) consists of two portions, outer and inner. The **outer** and more **superficial portion** *arises* from the outer two-thirds of the lower border of the anterior annular ligament, and passes along the outer side of the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis; and, becoming tendinous, has a sesamoid bone developed in its tendon, and is *inserted* into the outer side of the base of the first phalanx of the thumb. The **inner** and **deeper portion** of the muscle is very small, and *arises* from the ulnar side of the first metacarpal bone beneath the Adductor obliquus pollicis, and is *inserted* into the inner side of the base of the first phalanx with this muscle.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the palmar fascia. By its *deep surface*, with the tendon of the Flexor longus pollicis. By its *external surface*, with the Opponens pollicis. *Behind*, with the Adductor obliquus pollicis.

The **Adductor Obliquus Pollicis** (*m. adductor pollicis*) (Figs. 329 and 330) arises by several slips from the os magnum, the bases of the second and third metacarpal bones, the anterior carpal ligaments, and the sheath of the tendon of the Flexor carpi radialis. From this origin the greater number of fibres pass obliquely downward and converge to a tendon, which, uniting with the tendons of the deeper portion of the Flexor brevis pollicis and the Adductor transversus, is inserted into the inner side of the base of the first phalanx of the thumb, a sesamoid bone being developed in the tendon of insertion. A considerable fasciculus, however, passes more obliquely outward beneath the tendon of the long flexor to join the superficial portion of the short flexor and the Abductor pollicis.[1]

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Flexor longus pollicis and the outer head of the Flexor brevis pollicis. Its *deep surface* is in relation with the deep palmar arch, which passes between the two adductors.

The **Adductor Transversus Pollicis** (Figs. 329 and 330) is the most deeply seated of this group of muscles. It is of a triangular form, *arising*, by its broad base, from the lower two-thirds of the metacarpal bone of the middle finger on its palmar surface; the fibres, proceeding outward, converge to be inserted, with the inner part of the Flexor brevis pollicis, and the Adductor obliquus pollicis, into the ulnar side of the base of the first phalanx of the thumb. From the common tendon of insertion a slip is prolonged to the Extensor longus pollicis. The name **adductor pollicis** is frequently used to mean both of the adductors (Figs. 329 and 330).

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Adductor obliquus pollicis, the tendons of the Flexor profundus, and the Lumbricales. Its *deep surface* covers the first two interosseous spaces, from which it is separated by a strong aponeurosis.

Three of these muscles of the thumb, the Abductor, the Adductor transversus, and the Flexor brevis pollicis, at their *insertions* give off fibrous expansions which join the tendon of the Extensor longus pollicis. This permits of flexion of the proximal phalanx and extension of the terminal phalanx at the same time. These expansions, originally figured by Albinus, have been more recently described by M. Duchenne.[2]

Nerves.—The Abductor, Opponens, and outer head of the Flexor brevis pollicis are supplied by the sixth cervical through the median nerve; the inner head of the Flexor brevis, and the Adductors, by the eighth cervical through the ulnar nerve.

[1] This muscle is described by some as the deep portion of the Flexor brevis pollicis.
[2] Physiologie des Mouvements.

Actions.—The actions of the muscles of the thumb are almost sufficiently indicated by their names. This segment of the hand is provided with three extensors —an extensor of the metacarpal bone, an extensor of the first, and an extensor of the second phalanx; these occupy the dorsal surface of the forearm and hand. There are also three flexors on the palmar surface—a flexor of the metacarpal bone, a flexor of the proximal, and a flexor of the terminal phalanx; there is also an Abductor and two Adductors. The Abductor pollicis moves the metacarpal bone of the thumb outward; that is, away from the index finger. The Flexor ossis metacarpi pollicis flexes the metacarpal bone—that is, draws it inward over the palm—and at the same time rotates the bone, so as to turn the ball of the thumb toward the fingers, thus producing the movement of opposition. The Flexor brevis pollicis flexes and adducts the proximal phalanx of the thumb. The Adductores pollicis move the metacarpal bone of the thumb inward; that is, toward the index finger. These muscles give to the thumb its extensive range of motion. It will be noticed, however, that in consequence of the position of the first metacarpal bone, these movements differ from the corresponding movements of the metacarpal bones of the other fingers. Thus extension of the thumb more nearly corresponds to the motion of abduction in the other fingers, and flexion to adduction.

12. The Ulnar Region (Fig. 330).

Palmaris brevis.	Flexor brevis minimi digiti.
Abductor minimi digiti.	Opponens minimi digiti.

The **Palmaris Brevis** is a thin quadrilateral muscle placed beneath the integument on the ulnar side of the hand. It *arises* by tendinous fasciculi from the anterior annular ligament and palmar fascia; the fleshy fibres pass inward, to be *inserted* into the skin on the inner border of the palm of the hand.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the integument, to which it is intimately adherent, especially by its inner extremity; by its *deep surface*, with the inner portion of the palmar fascia, which separates it from the ulnar vessels and nerve, and from the muscles of the ulnar side of the hand.

The **Abductor Minimi Digiti** (*m. abductor digiti quinti*) is situated on the ulnar border of the palm of the hand. It *arises* from the pisiform bone and from the tendon of the Flexor carpi ulnaris, and terminates in a flat tendon, which divides into two slips; one is *inserted* into the ulnar side of the base of the first phalanx of the little finger. The other slip is *inserted* into the ulnar border of the aponeurosis of the Extensor minimi digiti.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the inner portion of the palmar fascia and the Palmaris brevis; by its *deep surface*, with the Opponens minimi digiti; by its *outer border*, with the Flexor brevis minimi digiti.

The **Flexor Brevis Minimi Digiti** (*m. flexor digiti quinti brevis*) lies on the same plane as the preceding muscle, on its radial side. It *arises* from the convex aspect of the hook of the unciform bone and anterior surface of the annular ligament, and is *inserted* into the inner side of the base of the first phalanx of the little finger. It is separated from the Abductor at its origin by the deep branches of the ulnar artery and nerve. This muscle is sometimes wanting; the Abductor is then, usually, of large size.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the internal portion of the palmar fascia and the Palmaris brevis; by its *deep surface*, with the Opponens. The deep branch of the ulnar artery and the corresponding branch of the ulnar nerve pass between the Abductor and Flexor brevis minimi digiti muscles.

The Opponens Minimi Digiti (*m. opponens digiti quinti*).—This muscle is sometimes called the **flexor ossis metacarpi** (Fig. 320), is of a triangular form, and placed immediately beneath the preceding muscles. It *arises* from the convexity

of the hook of the unciform bone and the contiguous portion of the anterior annular ligament; its fibres pass downward and inward, to be *inserted* into the whole length of the metacarpal bone of the little finger, along its ulnar margin.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Flexor brevis and Abductor minimi digiti; by its *deep surface*, with the Interossei muscles in the fourth metacarpal space, the metacarpal bone, and the Flexor tendons of the little finger.

Nerves.—All the muscles of this group are supplied by the eighth cervical nerve through the ulnar nerve.

Actions.—The Abductor minimi digiti abducts the little finger from the middle line of the hand. It corresponds to a dorsal interosseous muscle. It also assists in flexing the proximal phalanx and extending the second and third phalanges. The Flexor brevis minimi digiti abducts the little finger from the middle line of the hand. It also assists in flexing the proximal phalanx. The Opponens minimi digiti draws forward the fifth metacarpal bone, so as to deepen the hollow of the palm. The Palmaris brevis corrugates the skin on the inner side of the palm of the hand and probably serves to protect the ulnar nerve and artery from damage by the pressure of grasping a hard object.

13. The Middle Palmar Region.

Lumbricales. Interossei dorsales.
Interossei palmares.

The **Lumbricales** (Fig. 330) are four small fleshy fasciculi, accessories to the deep Flexor muscle. They *arise* from the tendons of the deep Flexor: the first and second, from the radial side and palmar surface of the tendons of the index and middle fingers respectively; the third, from the contiguous sides of the tendons of the middle and ring fingers; and the fourth, from the contiguous sides of the tendons of the ring and little fingers. They pass to the radial side of the corresponding fingers and opposite the metacarpo-phalangeal articulation each tendon is *inserted* into the tendinous expansion of the Extensor communis digitorum, covering the dorsal aspect of each finger.

The **Interossei Muscles** (Figs. 331 and 332) are so named from occupying the intervals between the metacarpal bones, and are divided into two sets, dorsal and palmar.

The **Dorsal interossei** (*mm. interossei dorsales*) are four in number, larger than the palmar, and occupy the intervals between the metacarpal bones. They are bipenniform muscles, *arising* by two heads from the adjacent sides of the metacarpal bones, but more extensively from the metacarpal bone of the finger into which the muscle is inserted. They are *inserted* into the bases of the first phalanges and into the aponeurosis of the common Extensor tendon. Between the double origin of each of these muscles is a narrow triangular interval, through the first of which passes the radial artery; through each of the other three passes a perforating branch from the deep palmar arch.

The **First dorsal interosseous muscle** or **Abductor indicis** is larger than the others. It is flat, triangular in form, and *arises* by two heads, separated by a fibrous arch, for the passage of the radial artery from the dorsum to the palm of the hand. The **outer head** *arises* from the upper half of the ulnar border of the first metacarpal bone; the **inner head**, from almost the entire length of the radial border of the second metacarpal bone; the tendon is inserted into the radial side of the index finger. The **second** and **third dorsal interossei** are *inserted* into the middle finger, the former into its radial, the latter into its ulnar side. The **fourth** is *inserted* into the ulnar side of the ring finger.

The **Palmar interossei** (*mm. interossei volares*), three in number, are smaller than the Dorsal, and placed upon the palmar surface of the metacarpal bones, rather

than between them. Each muscle *arises* from the entire length of the metacarpal bone of one finger, and is *inserted* into the side of the base of the first phalanx and aponeurotic expansion of the common extensor tendon of the same finger. The **first** *arises* from the ulnar side of the second metacarpal bone, and is *inserted* into the same side of the first phalanx of the index finger. The **second** *arises* from the radial side of the fourth metacarpal bone, and is *inserted* into the

FIG. 331.—The Dorsal interossei of left hand.

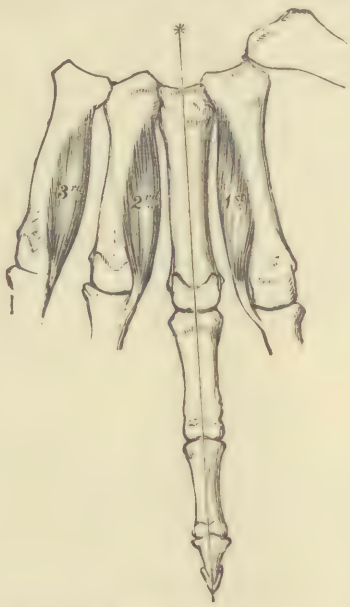


FIG. 332.—The Palmar interossei of left hand.

same side of the ring finger. The **third** *arises* from the radial side of the fifth metacarpal bone, and is *inserted* into the same side of the little finger. From this account it may be seen that each finger is provided with two Interosseous muscles, with the exception of the little finger, in which the Abductor muscle takes the place of one of the pair.

Nerves.—The two outer Lumbricales are supplied by the sixth cervical nerve, through the third and fourth digital branches of the median nerve: the two inner Lumbricales and all the Interossei are supplied by the eighth cervical nerve, through the deep palmar branch of the ulnar nerve. Brooks states that the third lumbrical received a twig from the median in twelve out of twenty-one cases.

Actions.—The Palmar interossei muscles adduct the fingers to an imaginary line drawn longitudinally through the centre of the middle finger; and the Dorsal interossei abduct the fingers from that line. In addition to this, the Interossei, in conjunction with the Lumbricales, *flex the first phalanges* at the metacarpo-phalangeal joints, and extend the second and third phalanges in consequence of their insertion into the expansion of the extensor tendons. The Extensor communis digitorum is believed to act almost entirely on the first phalanges.

SURFACE FORM OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The **Pectoralis major muscle** largely influences surface form and conceals a considerable part of the thoracic wall in front. Its sternal origin presents a festooned border which bounds and determines the width of the sternal furrow. Its clavicular origin is somewhat depressed and flattened, and between the two portions of the muscle is often an oblique depression which differentiates the one from the other. The outer margin of the muscle is generally well marked above, and bounds the *infraclavicular fossa*, a triangular interval which separates the Pectoralis major

from the Deltoid. It gradually becomes less marked as it approaches the tendon of insertion, and becomes more closely blended with the Deltoid muscle. The lower border of the Pectoralis major forms the rounded *anterior axillary fold*, and corresponds with the direction of the fifth rib. The **Pectoralis minor muscle** influences surface form. When the arm is raised its lowest slip of origin produces a local fulness just below the border of the anterior fold of the axilla, and so serves to break the sharp line of the lower border of the Pectoralis major muscle, which is produced when the arm is in this position. The origin of the **Serratus magnus muscle** produces a very characteristic surface marking. When the arm is raised from the side in a well-developed subject, the five or six lower serrations are plainly discernible, forming a zigzag line, caused by the series of digitations, which diminish in size from above downward, and have their apices arranged in the form of a curve. When the arm is lying by the side, the first serration to appear, at the lower margin of the Pectoralis major, is the one attached to the fifth rib. The **Deltoid muscle,** with the prominence of the upper extremity of the humerus, produces the rounded outline of the shoulder. It is rounder and fuller in front than behind, where it presents a somewhat flattened form. Its anterior border, above, presents a rounded, slightly curved eminence, which bounds externally the infraclavicular fossa; below, it is closely united with the Pectoralis major. Its posterior border is thin, flattened, and scarcely marked above; below, it is thicker and more prominent. When the muscle is in action, the middle portion becomes irregular, presenting alternate longitudinal elevations and depressions, the elevations corresponding to the fleshy portions, the depressions to the tendinous intersections of the muscle. The insertion of the Deltoid is marked by a depression on the outer side of the middle of the arm. Of the scapular muscles, the only one which materially influences surface form is the **Teres major,** which assists the Latissimus dorsi in forming the thick, rounded fold of the *posterior boundary of the axilla*. When the arm is raised, the **Coraco-brachialis** reveals itself as a long, narrow elevation which emerges from under cover of the anterior fold of the axilla and runs downward, internal to the shaft of the humerus. When the arm is hanging by the side, its front and inner part presents the prominence of the **Biceps,** bounded on either side by an intermuscular depression. This muscle determines the contour of the front of the arm, and extends from the anterior margin of the axilla to the bend of the elbow. Its upper tendons are concealed by the Pectoralis major and the Deltoid, and its lower tendon sinks into the space at the bend of the elbow. When the muscle is in a state of complete contraction—that is to say, when the forearm has been flexed and supinated—it presents a rounded convex form, bulged out laterally, and its length is diminished. On each side of the Biceps, at the lower part of the arm, the **Brachialis anticus** is discernible. On the outer side it forms a narrow eminence which extends some distance up the arm along the border of the Biceps. On the inner side it shows itself only as a little fulness just above the elbow. On the back of the arm the long head of the **Triceps** may be seen as a longitudinal eminence emerging from under cover of the Deltoid, and gradually merging into the longitudinal flattened plane of the tendon of the muscle on the lower part of the back of the arm. The tendon of insertion of the muscle extends about halfway up the back of the arm, where it forms an elongated flattened plane when the muscle is in action. Under similar conditions the surface forms produced by the three heads of the muscle are well seen. On the anterior aspect of the elbow are to be seen two muscular elevations, one on each side, separated above and converging below so as to form a triangular space. Of these, the inner elevation, consisting of the flexors and pronator, forms the prominence along the inner side and front of the forearm. It is a fusiform mass, pointed above at the internal condyle and gradually tapering off below. The **Pronator radii teres,** the innermost muscle of the group, forms the boundary of the triangular space at the bend of the elbow. It is shorter, less prominent, and more oblique than the outer boundary. The most prominent part of the eminence is produced by the **Flexor carpi radialis,** the muscle next in order on the inner side of the preceding one. It forms a rounded prominence above, and can be traced downward to its tendon, which can be felt lying on the front of the wrist, nearer to the radial than to the ulnar border, and to the inner side of the radial artery. The **Palmaris longus** presents no surface marking above, but below is the most prominent tendon on the front of the wrist, standing out, when the muscle is in action, as a sharp, tense cord beneath the skin. The **Flexor sublimis digitorum** does not directly influence surface form. The position of its four tendons on the front of the lower part of the forearm is indicated by an elongated depression between the tendons of the Palmaris longus and the Flexor carpi ulnaris. The **Flexor carpi ulnaris** occupies a small part of the posterior surface of the forearm, and is separated from the extensor and supinator group, which occupies the greater part of this surface, by the ulnar furrow, produced by the subcutaneous posterior border of the ulna. Its tendon can be perceived along the ulnar border of the front of the forearm, and is most marked when the hand is flexed and adducted. The deep muscles of the front of the forearm have no direct influence on surface form. The external group of muscles of the forearm, consisting of the extensors and supinators, occupy the outer and a considerable portion of the posterior surface of this region. It has a fusiform outline, which is altogether on a higher level than the pronato-flexor group. Its apex emerges from between the Triceps and Brachialis anticus muscles some distance above the

elbow-joint, and acquires its greatest breadth opposite the external condyle, and thence gradually shades off into a flattened surface. About the middle of the forearm it divides into two longitudinal eminences which diverge from each other, leaving a triangular interval between them. The outer of these two groups of muscles consists of the Supinator longus and the Extensor carpi radialis longior et brevior, which form a longitudinal eminence descending from the external condylar ridge in the direction of the styloid process of the radius. The other and more posterior group consists of the Extensor communis digitorum, the Extensor minimi digiti, and the Extensor carpi ulnaris. It commences above as a tapering form at the external condyle of the humerus, and is separated behind at its upper part from the Anconeus by a well-marked furrow, and below, from the pronato-flexor mass, by the ulnar furrow. In the triangular interval left between these two groups the extensors of the thumb and index finger are seen. The only two muscles of this region which require special mention as independently influencing surface form are the Supinator longus and the Anconeus. The inner border of the **Supinator longus** forms the outer boundary of the triangular space at the bend of the elbow. It commences as a rounded border above the condyle, and is longer, less oblique, and more prominent than the inner boundary. Lower down, the muscle forms a full fleshy mass on the outer side of the upper part of the forearm, and below tapers into a tendon, which may be traced down to the styloid process of the radius. The **Anconeus** presents a well-marked and characteristic surface form in the shape of a triangular, slightly elevated surface, immediately external to the subcutaneous posterior surface of the olecranon, and differentiated from the common extensor group by a well-marked oblique longitudinal depression. The upper angle of the triangle corresponds to the external condyle, and is marked by a depression or dimple in this situation. In the interval caused by the divergence from each other of the two groups of muscles into which the extensor and supinator group is divided at the lower part of the forearm an oblique elongated eminence is seen, caused by the emergence of two of the extensors of the thumb from their deep origin at the back of the forearm. This eminence, full above and becoming flattened out and partially subdivided below, runs downward and outward over the back and outer surface of the radius to the outer side of the wrist-joint, where it forms a ridge, especially marked when the thumb is extended, which passes onward to the posterior aspect of the thumb. The tendons of most of the extensor muscles are to be seen and felt at the level of the wrist-joint. Most externally are the tendons of the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis and the Extensor brevis pollicis, forming a vertical ridge over the outer side of the joint from the styloid process of the radius to the thumb. Internal to this is the oblique ridge produced by the tendon of the Extensor longus pollicis, very noticeable when the muscle is in action. The Extensor carpi radialis longior is scarcely to be felt, but the Extensor carpi radialis brevior can be distinctly perceived as a vertical ridge emerging from under the inner border of the tendon of the Extensor longus pollicis, when the hand is forcibly extended at the wrist. Internal to this, again, can be felt the tendons of the Extensor indicis, Extensor communis digitorum, and Extensor minimi digiti; the latter tendon being separated from those of the common extensor by a slight furrow. The muscles of the hand are principally concerned, as far as regards surface-form, in producing the **thenar** and **hypothenar eminences,** and individually are not to be distinguished, on the surface, from each other. The **Adductor transversus pollicis** is, however, an exception to this; its anterior border gives rise to a ridge across the web of skin connecting the thumb to the rest of the hand. The *thenar eminence* is much larger and rounder than the *hypothenar* one, which presents a longer and narrower eminence along the ulnar side of the hand. When the **Palmaris brevis** is in action it produces a wrinkling of the skin over the hypothenar eminence, and a deep dimple on the ulnar border of the hand. The anterior extremities of the **Lumbrical muscles** help to produce the soft eminences just behind the clefts of the fingers, separated from each other by depressions corresponding to the flexor tendons in their sheaths. Between the thenar and hypothenar eminences, at the wrist-joint, is a slight groove or depression, widening out as it approaches the fingers; beneath this we have the strong central part of the palmar fascia. Here we have some furrows, which are pretty constant in their arrangement, and bear some resemblance to the letter M. One of these furrows passes obliquely outward from the groove between the thenar and hypothenar regions near the wrist to the head of the metacarpal bone of the index finger. A second passes inward, with a slight inclination upward, from the termination of the first to the ulnar side of the hand. A third runs nearly parallel with the second and about three-quarters of an inch below it. Lastly, crossing these two latter furrows, is an oblique furrow parallel with the first. The skin of the palm of the hand differs considerably from that of the forearm. At the wrist it suddenly becomes hard and dense, and covered with a thick layer of cuticle. The skin in the thenar region presents these characteristics less than elsewhere. In spite of this hardness and density, the skin of the palm is exceedingly sensitive and very vascular. It is destitute of hair, and no sebaceous follicles have been found in this region. Over the fingers the skin again becomes thinner, especially at the flexures of the joints, and over the terminal phalanges it is thrown into numerous ridges in consequence of the arrangement of the papillæ in it. These ridges form, in different individuals, distinctive and permanent patterns, which may be used for purposes of identification. The **superficial fascia** in the palm

is made up of dense fibro-fatty tissue. This tissue binds down the skin so firmly to the deep palmar fascia that very little movement is permitted between the two. On the back of the hand the **Dorsal interossei** produce elongated swellings between the metacarpal bones. The first dorsal interosseous (Abductor indicis), when the thumb is closely adducted to the hand, forms a prominent fusiform bulging; the other interossei are not so marked.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The student, having completed the dissection of the muscles of the upper extremity, should consider the effects likely to be produced by the action of the various muscles in fracture of the bones.

In considering the actions of the various muscles upon fractures of the upper extremity, the most common forms of injury have been selected both for illustration and description.

Fracture of the *middle of the clavicle* (Fig. 333) is always attended with considerable displacement; the inner end of the outer fragment is displaced inward and backward, while the outer end of the same fragment is rotated forward. The whole outer fragment is somewhat depressed. The deformity is described by saying that the shoulder goes downward, forward, and inward.

The displacement is produced as follows: *inward*, by the muscles passing from the chest to the outer fragment of the clavicle, to the scapula, and to the humerus—viz., the Subclavius and the Pectoralis minor, and, to a less extent, the Pectoralis major and the Latissimus dorsi; *backward*, in consequence of the rotation of the outer fragment. The Serratus magnus causes the scapula to rotate on the wall of the chest; this carries the acromion and outer end of the outer fragment of the clavicle forward and causes the piece of bone to rotate round a vertical axis through its centre, and so carries the inner end of the outer portion backward. The depression of the whole outer fragment is produced by the weight of the arm and by the contraction of the Deltoid. The outer end of the inner fragment appears to be elevated, the skin being drawn tensely over it; this is owing to the depression of the outer fragment, as the inner fragment is usually kept fixed by the costo-clavicular ligament and by the antagonism between the Sternomastoid and Pectoralis major muscles. But it may be raised by an unusually strong Sterno-mastoid, or by the inner end of the outer fragment getting below and behind it. The causes of displacement having been ascertained, it is easy to apply the appropriate treatment. The outer fragment is to be drawn outward, and, together with the scapula, raised upward to a level with the inner fragment, and retained in that position. The formula for correcting the deformity is as follows: carry the shoulder upward, outward, and backward.

FIG. 333.—Fracture of the middle of the clavicle.

In fracture of the *acromial end of the clavicle*, between the conoid and trapezoid ligaments, only slight displacement occurs, as these ligaments, from their oblique insertion, serve to hold both portions of the bone in apposition. Fracture, also, of the *sternal end*, internal to the costoclavicular ligament, is attended with only slight displacement, this ligament serving to retain the fragments in close apposition.

Fracture of the *acromion process* usually arises from violence applied to the upper and outer part of the shoulder; it is generally known by the rotundity of the shoulder being lost, from the Deltoid drawing the fractured portion downward and forward; and the displacement may easily be discovered by tracing the margin of the clavicle outward, when the fragment will be found resting on the front and upper part of the head of the humerus. In order to relax the anterior and outer fibres of the Deltoid (the opposing muscle), the arm should be drawn forward across the chest and the elbow well raised, so that the head of the bone may press the acromion process upward and retain it in its position.

Fracture of the *coracoid process* is an extremely rare accident, and is usually caused by a sharp blow on the point of the shoulder. Displacement is here produced by the combined actions of the Pectoralis minor, short head of the Biceps, and Coraco-brachialis, the former muscle drawing the fragment inward, and the latter muscles directly downward, the amount of displacement being limited by the connection of this process to the acromion by means of the coraco-acromial ligament. In many cases there appears to have been little or no displacement.

from the fact that the coraco-clavicular ligament has remained intact, and has kept the separated fragment from displacement. In order to relax these muscles and replace the fragments in close apposition, the forearm should be flexed so as to relax the Biceps, and the arm drawn forward and inward across the chest, so as to relax the Coraco-brachialis; the humerus should then be pushed upward against the coraco-acromial ligament, and the arm retained in that position.

Fracture of the *surgical neck of the humerus* (Fig. 334) is very common, is attended with considerable displacement, and its appearances correspond somewhat with those of dislocation of the head of the humerus into the axilla. The upper fragment is slightly elevated under the coraco-acromial ligament by the muscles attached to the greater and lesser tuberosities; the lower fragment is drawn inward by the Pectoralis major, Latissimus dorsi, and Teres major; and the humerus is thrown obliquely outward from the side by the Deltoid, and occasionally elevated so as to cause the upper end of the lower fragment to project beneath and in front of the coracoid process. The deformity is reduced by fixing the shoulder, and drawing the arm outward and downward. To counteract the opposing muscles, and to keep the fragments in position, a conical-shaped pad should be placed with the apex in the axilla; while the forearm is flexed to an angle of 90 degrees the shoulder is padded with cotton, a shoulder-cap of plaster-of-Paris is applied to cover the shoulder, a portion of the chest and back, and the arm down to the external condyle (Scudder). The arm, with the elbow slightly forward, is bandaged to the side. In some cases a splint is placed between the axillary pad and the inner side of the arm.

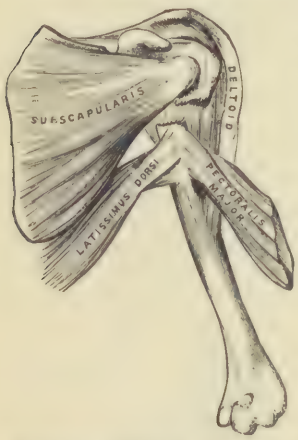


Fig. 334.—Fracture of the surgical neck of the humerus.

In fracture of the *shaft of the humerus* below the insertion of the Pectoralis major, Latissimus dorsi, and Teres major, and above the insertion of the Deltoid, there is also considerable deformity, the upper fragment being drawn inward by the first-mentioned muscles, and the lower fragment upward and outward by the Deltoid, producing shortening of the limb and a considerable prominence at the seat of fracture, from the fractured ends of the bone riding over one another, especially if the fracture takes place in an oblique direction. The fragments may be brought into apposition by extension from the elbow, and are retained in that position by adopting the same means as in the preceding injury, or by the use of an internal angular splint with three short humeral splints.

In fractures of the *shaft of the humerus* immediately below the insertion of the Deltoid, the amount of deformity depends greatly upon the direction of the fracture. If it occurs in a transverse direction, only slight displacement takes place, the upper fragment being drawn a little forward; but in oblique fracture the combined actions of the Biceps and Brachialis anticus muscles in front and the Triceps behind draw upward the lower fragment, causing it to glide over the upper fragment, either backward or forward, according to the direction of the fracture. Simple extension reduces the deformity, and the application of an internal angular splint and three short humeral splints will retain the fragments in apposition. Care should be taken not to raise the elbow, but the forearm and hand may be supported in a sling.

Fracture of the *humerus* (Fig. 335) *above the condyle* deserves very attentive consideration, as the general appearances correspond somewhat with those produced by separation of the epiphysis of the humerus, and with those of dislocation of the radius and ulna backward. If the direction of the fracture is oblique from above, downward and forward, the lower fragment is drawn upward by the Brachialis anticus and Biceps in front and the Triceps behind; and at the same time is drawn backward behind the upper fragment by the Triceps. This injury may be diagnosticated from dislocation by the increased mobility in fracture, the existence of crepitus, and the fact of the deformity being remedied by extension, on the discontinuance of which it is reproduced. The age of the patient is of importance in distinguishing this form of injury from separation of the epiphysis. If fracture occurs in the opposite direction to that shown in Fig. 335, the lower fragment is drawn upward and forward, causing a considerable prominence in front, and the upper fragment projects backward beneath the tendon of the Triceps muscle.

Fractures of the lower extremity of the humerus are spoken of as *fractures in the neighborhood of the elbow-joint*. The term includes fracture of the external condyle, of the internal condyle, at the base of the condyles, and T- or Y-shaped fracture, the two condyles being separated from each other and from the shaft of the humerus. Such injuries are followed by great and rapid swelling. Whenever possible the *x*-rays are used to aid in diagnosis, and the patient is placed under ether, to set and dress the fracture.

In fracture of the inner condyle the fragment with the ulna passes up and back, and when

the forearm is extended the ulna projects posteriorly. The "carrying function" of the arm is lost, because the forearm deviates to the ulnar side.

In all cases of fracture of the lower end of the humerus, except fracture at the base of the condyles, effect reduction by traction upon the forearm, and supination, extension, and bending the forearm slowly into acute flexion. In transverse fracture above the condyles draw the forearm and the lower fragment downward and forward and push the upper fragment back. A case can be treated by maintaining a position of acute flexion (Jones's position) or by using an anterior angular splint. Allis and others treat in extension.

Fracture of the *olecranon process* (Fig. 336) is a frequent accident. The detached fragment is displaced upward, by the action of the Triceps muscle, from half an inch to two inches; the prominence of the elbow is consequently lost, and a deep hollow is felt at the back part of the joint, which is much increased on flexing the limb. The patient at the same time loses, more or less, the power of extending the forearm. The treatment consists in relaxing the Triceps by extending the limb, and retaining it in the extended position by means of a long straight splint applied to the front of the arm; the fragments are thus brought into close apposition, and may be further approximated by drawing down the upper fragment. Union is generally ligamentous.

Fracture of the *neck of the radius* is an exceedingly rare accident, and is generally caused by direct violence. Its diagnosis is somewhat obscure, on account of the slight deformity visible, the injured part being surrounded by a large number of muscles; but the movements of pronation and supination are entirely lost. The upper fragment is drawn outward by the Supinator

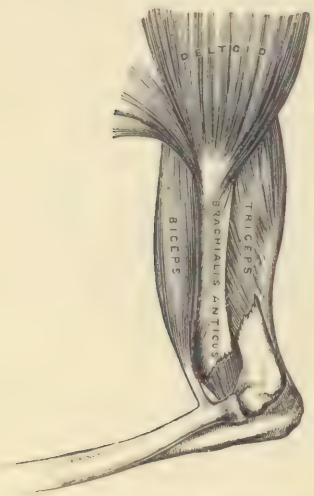


FIG. 335.—Fracture of the humerus above the condyles.

FIG. 336.—Fracture of the olecranon.

brevis, the extent of displacement being limited by the attachment of the orbicular ligament. The lower fragment is drawn forward and slightly upward by the Biceps, and inward by the Pronator radii teres, its displacement forward and upward being counteracted in some degree by the Supinator brevis. The treatment essentially consists in relaxing the Biceps, Supinator brevis, and Pronator radii teres muscles by flexing the forearm, and placing it in a position midway between pronation and supination, extension having been previously made so as to bring the parts in apposition.

In fracture of the *radius* below the insertion of the Biceps, but above the insertion of the Pronator radii teres, the upper fragment is strongly supinated by the Biceps and Supinator brevis, and at the same time drawn forward and flexed by the Biceps; the lower fragment is pronated and drawn inward toward the ulna by the pronators. Thus there is extreme displacement with very little deformity. In treating such a fracture the arm must be put up in a position of supination, otherwise union will take place with great impairment of the movements of the hand. In fractures of the radius below the insertion of the Pronator radii teres (Fig. 337), the upper fragment is drawn upward by the Biceps and inward by the Pronator radii teres, holding a position midway between pronation and supination, and a degree of fulness in the upper half of the forearm is thus produced; the lower fragment is drawn downward and inward toward the ulna by the Pronator quadratus, and thrown into a state of pronation by the same muscle; at the same time, the Supinator longus, by elevating the styloid process, into which

it is inserted, will serve to depress the upper end of the lower fragment still more toward the ulna. In order to relax the opposing muscles the forearm should be bent, and the limb placed in a position midway between pronation and supination; the fracture is then easily reduced by extension from the wrist and elbow: well-padded splints should be applied on both sides of the forearm from the elbow to the wrist; the hand being allowed to fall, will, by its own weight, counteract the action of the Pronator quadratus and Supinator longus, and elevate the lower fragment to the level of the upper one.

In fracture of the *shaft of the ulna* the upper fragment retains its usual position, but the lower fragment is drawn outward toward the radius by the Pronator quadratus, producing a well-marked depression at the seat of fracture and some fulness on the dorsal and palmar surfaces of the forearm. The fracture is easily reduced by extension from the wrist and forearm. The forearm should be flexed, and placed in a position midway between pronation and supination, and well-padded splints applied from the elbow to the ends of the fingers.

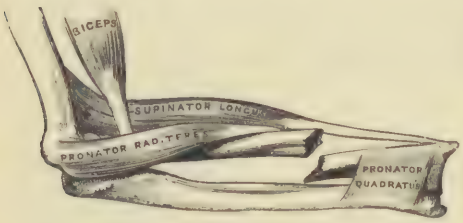


FIG. 337.—Fracture of the shaft of the radius.

In fracture of the *shafts of the radius and ulna together* the lower fragments are drawn upward, sometimes forward, sometimes backward, according to the direction of the fracture, by the combined actions of the Flexor and Extensor muscles, producing a degree of fulness on the dorsal or palmar surface of the forearm; at the same time the two fragments are drawn into contact by the Pronator quadratus, the radius being in a state of pronation: the upper fragment of the radius is drawn upward and inward by the Biceps and Pronator radii teres to a higher level than the ulna; the upper portion of the ulna is slightly elevated by the Brachialis anticus. The fracture may be reduced by extension from the wrist and elbow, and the forearm should be placed in the same position as in fracture of the ulna.

In fracture of the *lower end of the radius* (*Colles' fracture*) (Fig. 338) the displacement which is produced is very considerable, and bears some resemblance to dislocation of the carpus backward, from which it should be carefully distinguished. The lower fragment is displaced backward and upward, but this displacement is probably due to the force of the blow driving the portion of the bone into this position and not to any muscular influence. The upper fragment projects forward, often lacerating the substance of the Pronator quadratus, and is drawn by this muscle into close contact with the lower end of the ulna, causing a

FIG. 338.—Fracture of the lower end of the radius.

projection on the anterior surface of the forearm, immediately above the carpus, from the flexor tendons being thrust forward. This fracture may be distinguished from dislocation by the deformity being removed on making sufficient extension, when crepitus may be occasionally detected; at the same time, on extension being discontinued, the parts immediately resume their deformed appearance. The age of the patient will also assist in determining whether the injury is fracture or separation of the epiphysis. Reduction is effected by hyperextension, longitudinal traction, and forced flexion.[1] The posterior straight splint with suitable pads is the best dressing.

[1] R. J. Levis.

MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The Muscles of the Lower Extremity are subdivided into groups corresponding with the different regions of the limb.

I. Iliac Region.

Psoas magnus.
Psoas parvus.
Iliacus.

II. Thigh.

1. *Anterior Femoral Region.*

Tensor fasciæ Femoris.
Sartorius.
Quadriceps extensor.
- Rectus.
- Vastus externus.
- Vastus internus.
- Crureus.

Subcrureus.

2. *Internal Femoral Region.*

Gracilis.
Pectineus.
Adductor longus.
Adductor brevis.
Adductor magnus.

3. *Gluteal Region.*

Gluteus maximus.
Gluteus medius.
Gluteus minimus
Pyriformis.
Obturator internus.
Gemellus superior.
Gemellus inferior.
Quadratus femoris.
Obturator externus.

4. *Posterior Femoral Region.*

Biceps.
Semitendinosus.
Semimembranosus.

III. Leg.

5. *Anterior Tibio-fibular Region.*

Tibialis anticus.
Extensor proprius hallucis.
Extensor longus digitorum.
Peroneus tertius.

6. *Posterior Tibio-fibular Region.*

Superficial Layer.

Gastrocnemius.
Soleus.
Plantaris.

Deep Layer.

Popliteus.
Flexor longus hallucis.
Flexor longus digitorum.
Tibialis posticus.

7. *Fibular Region.*

Peroneus longus.
Peroneus brevis.

IV. Foot.

8. *Dorsal Region.*

Extensor brevis digitorum.

9. *Plantar Region.*

First Layer.

Abductor hallucis.
Flexor brevis digitorum.
Abductor minimi digiti.

Second Layer.

Flexor accessorius.
Lumbricales.

Third Layer.

Flexor brevis hallucis.
Adductor obliquus hallucis.
Flexor brevis minimi digiti.
Adductor transversus hallucis.

Fourth Layer.

The Interossei.

I. MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE ILIAC REGION.

Psoas magnus. Psoas parvus. Iliacus.

Dissection.—No detailed description is required for the dissection of these muscles. On the removal of the viscera from the abdomen they are exposed, covered by the peritoneum and a thin layer of fascia, the iliac fascia.

Iliac Fascia (*fascia iliaca*).—The iliac fascia[1] is the aponeurotic layer which lines the back part of the abdominal cavity, and covers the Psoas and Iliacus muscles throughout their whole extent. It is thin above, and becomes gradually thicker below as it approaches the crural arch.

The **Portion Covering the Psoas** is attached, above, to the ligamentum arcuatum internum; internally, by a series of arched processes to the intervertebral substances and prominent margins of the bodies of the vertebræ, and to the upper part of the sacrum, the intervals so left, opposite the constricted portions of the bodies,

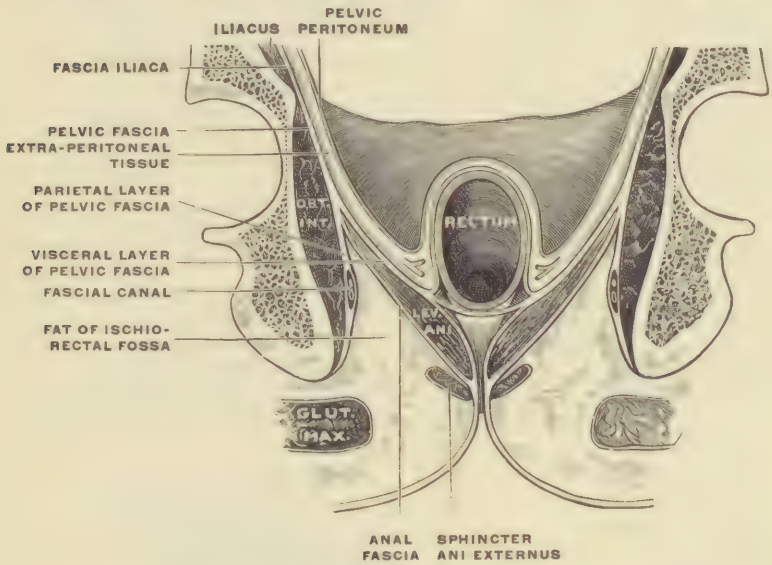


FIG. 339.—Oblique section across the pelvis, to show the disposition of the pelvic fascia and the boundaries of the ischio-rectal fossa. (Cunningham.)

transmitting the lumbar arteries and veins and filaments of the sympathetic cord. Externally, above the crest of the ilium, this portion of the iliac fascia is continuous with the anterior lamella of the lumbar fascia, but below the crest of the ilium it is continuous with the fascia covering the Iliacus.

The **Portion Investing the Iliacus** is connected externally to the whole length of the inner border of the crest of the ilium, and internally to the brim of the true pelvis, where it is continuous with the periosteum; and at the ilio-pectineal eminence it receives the tendon of insertion of the Psoas parvus, when that muscle exists. External to the femoral vessels, this fascia is intimately connected to the posterior margin of Poupart's ligament, and is continuous with the fascia transversalis. Immediately to the outer side of the femoral vessels the fascia iliaca is prolonged backward and inward from Poupart's ligament as a band, the **ilio-pectineal ligament,** which is attached to the ilio-pectineal eminence. This ligament divides the space between Poupart's ligament and the innominate bone into two parts, the inner of which (*lacuna vasorum*) transmits the femoral vessels, and contains the

[1] The student must not confound this fascia with the *iliac portion of the fascia lata* (see p. 515).

margin of Gimbernat's ligament and also the femoral ring; the outer (*lacuna musculorum*) the ilio-psoas and the anterior crural nerve (Fig. 340). Internal to the vessels the iliac fascia is attached to the ilio-pectineal line behind the conjoined tendon, where it is again continuous with the transversalis fascia; and, corresponding to the point where the femoral vessels pass into the thigh, this fascia descends behind them, forming the posterior wall of the femoral sheath. This portion of the iliac fascia which passes behind the femoral vessels is also attached to the ilio-pectineal line beyond the limits of the attachment of the conjoined tendon; at this part it is continuous with the pubic portion of the fascia lata of the thigh. The external iliac vessels lie in front of the iliac fascia, but all the branches of the lumbar plexus behind it; it is separated from the peritoneum by a quantity of loose areolar tissue. The **femoral** or **crural sheath** (*fascia cruris*) is

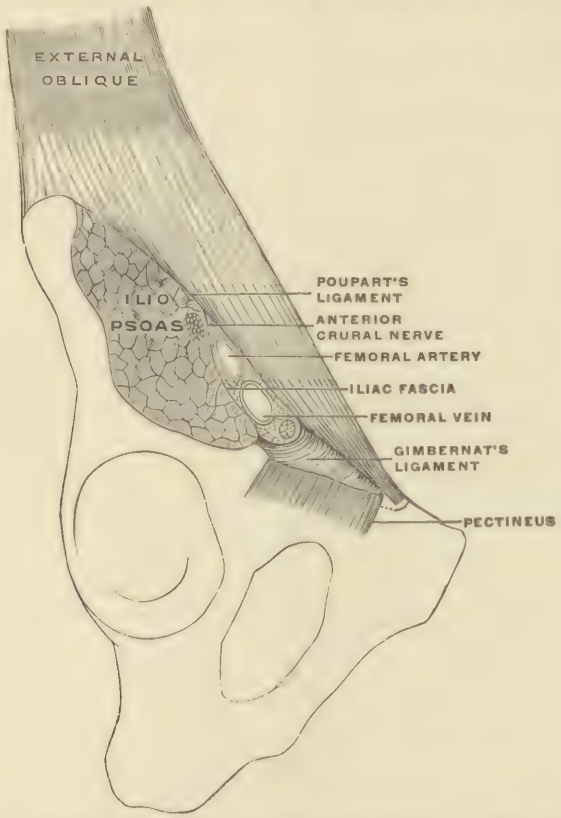


FIG. 340.—Poupart's ligament and the relation of the parts passing beneath it. (Poirier and Charpy.)

formed by the transversalis fascia in front of the vessels and the iliac fascia back of them. The fasciæ join to the inner side of the femoral vein, a space, the **femoral canal**, intervening between the vein and the junction.

Between the femoral vein and the edge of Gimbernat's ligament is the **femoral** or **crural ring** (*annulus femoralis*) (Fig. 342). The **crural** or **femoral canal** (*canalis femoralis*) is the interval between the femoral vein and the inner wall of the femoral (crural) sheath. This canal extends from the femoral ring to the saphenous opening. The femoral ring is closed by the **septum crurale of Cloquet** (*septum femorale* [*Cloqueti*]), which is a process of transversalis fascia.

The **Psoas Magnus** (*m. psoas major*) (Fig. 343) is a long fusiform muscle placed on the side of the lumbar region of the spine and the margin of the pelvis. It *arises* from the front of the bases and lower borders of the transverse processes of the

lumbar vertebræ by five fleshy slips; also from the sides of the bodies and the corresponding intervertebral substances of the last dorsal and all the lumbar vertebræ. The muscle is connected to the bodies of the vertebræ by five slips; each slip is attached to the upper and lower margins of two vertebræ, and to the intervertebral substance between them, the slips themselves being connected by the tendinous arches which extend across the constricted part of the bodies, and beneath which pass the lumbar arteries and veins and filaments of the sympathetic cord. These tendinous arches also give origin to muscular fibres, and protect the blood-vessels and nerves from pressure during the action of the muscle. The first slip is attached to the contiguous margins of the last dorsal and first lumbar vertebræ; the last to the contiguous margins of the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebræ, and to the intervertebral substance. From these points the muscle descends across the brim of the pelvis, and, diminishing gradually in size, passes beneath Poupart's ligament, and terminates in a tendon which, after receiving nearly the whole of the fibres of the Iliacus, is *inserted* into the lesser trochanter of the femur.

Relations.—In the **lumbar region**: by its *anterior surface*, which is placed behind the peritoneum, with the iliac fascia, the ligamentum arcuatum internum, the kidney, Psoas parvus, renal vessels, ureter, spermatic vessels, genito-crural nerve, and the colon. In many cases the vermiform appendix rests upon the Psoas muscle (page 511). By its *posterior surface*, with the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebræ and the Quadratus lumborum muscle, from which it is separated by the anterior lamella of the lumbar fascia. The lumbar plexus is situated in the posterior part of the substance of the muscle. By its *inner side* the muscle is in relation with the bodies of the lumbar vertebræ, the lumbar arteries, the ganglia of the sympathetic nerve, and their branches of communication with the spinal nerves; the lumbar glands; the vena cava inferior on the right and the aorta on the left side, and along the brim of the pelvis with the external iliac artery. In the **thigh** it is in relation, in *front*, with the fascia lata; *behind*, with the capsular ligament of the hip, from which it is separated by a synovial bursa (*bursa ilio-pectinea*), which frequently communicates with the cavity of the joint through an opening of variable size; between the tendon and part of the lesser trochanter is the *bursa iliaca subtendinea*; by its *inner border*, with the Pectineus and internal circumflex artery, and also with the femoral artery, which slightly overlaps it: by its *outer border*, with the anterior crural nerve and Iliacus muscle.

The **Psoas Parvus** (*m. psoas minor*) (Fig. 343) is a long slender muscle placed in front of the Psoas magnus. It *arises* from the sides of the bodies of the last dorsal and first lumbar vertebræ and from the intervertebral substance between them. It forms a small flat muscular bundle, which terminates in a long flat tendon *inserted* into the ilio-pectineal eminence, and, by its outer border, into the iliac fascia. This muscle is often absent, and, according to Cruveilhier, is sometimes double.

Relations.—It is covered by the peritoneum, and, at its origin, by the ligamentum arcuatum internum; it rests on the Psoas magnus.

The **Iliacus** (Fig. 343) is a flat, triangular muscle which fills up the whole of the iliac fossa. It *arises* from the upper two-thirds of this fossa and from the inner margin of the crest of the ilium; behind, from the ilio-lumbar ligament and base of the sacrum; in front, from the anterior superior and anterior inferior spinous processes of the ilium, from the notch between them. The fibres converge to be *inserted* into the outer side of the tendon of the Psoas, some of them being prolonged on to the shaft of the femur for about an inch below and in front of the lesser trochanter.[1] The most external fibres are inserted into the capsule of the

[1] The Psoas magnus, Psoas parvus, and Iliacus are regarded by His and others as a single muscle, the *Ilio-psoas* (Fig. 340).

hip-joint. If these fibres are separate they constitute the **Ilio-capsularis muscle** or the **Iliacus minor**.

Relations.—Within the **abdomen**: by its *anterior surface*, with the iliac fascia, which separates the muscle from the peritoneum, and with the external cutaneous nerve; on the right side, with the cæcum; on the left side, with the sigmoid flexure of the colon; by its *posterior surface*, with the iliac fossa; by its *inner border*, with the Psoas magnus and anterior crural nerve. In the **thigh**, it is in relation, by its *anterior surface*, with the fascia lata, the Rectus and Sartorius muscles, and the profunda femoris artery; *behind*, with the capsule of the hip-joint, a synovial bursa common to it and the Psoas magnus being interposed.

Nerves.—The Psoas magnus is supplied by the anterior branches of the second and third lumbar nerves; the Psoas parvus, when it exists, is supplied by the anterior branch of the first lumbar nerve; and the Iliacus by the anterior branches of the second and third lumbar nerves through the anterior crural.

Actions.—The Psoas and Iliacus muscles, acting from above, flex the thigh upon the pelvis. Acting from below, the femur being fixed, the muscles of both sides bend the lumbar portion of the spine and pelvis forward. They also serve to maintain the erect position, by supporting the spine and pelvis upon the femur, and assist in raising the trunk when the body is in the recumbent posture.

The **Psoas parvus** is a tensor of the iliac fascia. It assists in flexing the lumbar spine laterally, the pelvis being its fixed point.

Surgical Anatomy.—There is no definite septum between the portions of the iliac fascia covering the Psoas and Iliacus respectively, and the fascia is only connected to the subjacent muscles by a quantity of loose connective tissue. When an *abscess* forms beneath this fascia, as it is very apt to do, the matter is contained in an osseo-fibrous cavity, which is closed on all sides within the abdomen, and is open only at its lower part, where the fascia is prolonged over the muscle into the thigh.

Abscess within the sheath of the Psoas muscle (*psoas abscess*) is generally due to tuberculous caries of the bodies of the lower dorsal or of the lumbar vertebræ. When the disease is in the dorsal region, the matter tracts down the posterior mediastinum, in front of the bodies of the vertebræ, and, passing beneath the ligamentum arcuatum internum, enters the sheath of the Psoas muscle, down which it passes as far as the pelvic brim; it then gets beneath the iliac portion of the fascia and fills up the iliac fossa. In consequence of the attachment of the fascia to the pelvic brim, it rarely finds its way into the pelvis, but passes by a narrow opening under Poupart's ligament into the thigh, to the outer side of the femoral vessels. It thus follows that a Psoas abscess may be described as consisting of four parts: (1) a somewhat narrow channel at its upper part, in the Psoas sheath; (2) a dilated sac in the iliac fossa; (3) a constricted neck under Poupart's ligament; and (4) a dilated sac in the upper part of the thigh. When the lumbar vertebræ are the seat of the disease, the matter finds its way directly into the substance of the muscle. If a Psoas abscess forms the muscular fibres are destroyed, and the nervous cords contained in the abscess are isolated and exposed in its interior; the femoral vessels which lie in front of the fascia remain intact, and the peritoneum seldom becomes implicated. All Psoas abscesses do not, however, pursue this course: the matter may leave the muscle above the crest of the ilium, and, tracking backward, may point in the loin (*lumbar abscess*); or it may point above Poupart's ligament in the inguinal region; or it may follow the course of the iliac vessels into the pelvis, and, passing through the great sacro-sciatic notch, discharge itself on the back of the thigh; it may open into the bladder or find its way into the perinæum, or it may pass down the thigh to the popliteal space or even lower. *Strain* of the Psoas muscle is not unusual, and induces pain which may be mistaken for appendicitis. The *bursa* beneath the tendon of the Psoas and Iliacus and the hip-joint or that between the tendon and the lesser trochanter may greatly enlarge and produce pain and disablement. Byron Robinson[1] pointed out that trauma of the Psoas muscle may be an important factor in the etiology of appendicitis, trauma may induce periappendicular adhesions and adhesions interfere with the circulation of blood and fæces. Robinson says, in the previously quoted article, that in 46 per cent. of men and in 20 per cent. of women the appendix rests on the Psoas muscle.

[1] Annals of Surgery, April, 1901.

II. MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE THIGH.

1. The Anterior Femoral Region.

Tensor fasciæ femoris.	Quadriceps extensor.	Rectus.
Sartorius.		Vastus externus.
		Vastus internus.
		Crureus.

Subcrureus.

Dissection.—To expose the muscles and fasciæ in this region, make an incision along Poupart's ligament, from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the spine of the os pubis; a vertical incision from the centre of this, along the middle of the thigh to below the knee-joint; and a transverse incision from the inner to the outer side of the leg, at the lower end of the vertical incision. The flaps of integument having been removed, the superficial and deep fasciæ should be examined. The more advanced student should commence the study of this region by an examination of the anatomy of femoral hernia and Scarpa's triangle, the incisions for the dissection of which are marked out in Fig. 341.

Superficial Fascia.—The superficial fascia forms a continuous layer over the whole of the thigh. It consists of areolar tissue, containing in its meshes much fat, and is capable of being separated into two or more layers, between which are found the superficial vessels and nerves. It varies in thickness in different parts of the limb: in the groin it is thick, and the two layers are separated from one another by the superficial inguinal lymphatic glands, the internal saphenous vein, and several smaller vessels. One of these two layers, the superficial, is continuous above with the superficial fascia of the abdomen and the back. Internally it is continuous with the superficial fascia of the perineum. The deep layer of the superficial fascia is a very thin fibrous layer, best marked on the inner side of the long saphenous vein and below Poupart's ligament. It is placed beneath the subcutaneous vessels and nerves and upon the surface of the fascia lata. It is intimately adherent to the fascia lata a little below Poupart's ligament. It covers the saphenous opening (Fig. 342) in the fascia lata, being closely united to the margins of the opening, and is connected to the sheath of the femoral vessels by its under surface. The portion of the fascia covering this aperture is perforated by the internal saphenous vein and by numerous blood- and lymphatic vessels; hence it has been termed the **cribriform fascia** (*fascia cribrosa*), the openings for these vessels having been likened to the holes in a sieve. The cribriform fascia adheres closely both to the superficial fascia and to the fascia lata, so that it is described by some anatomists as part of the fascia lata, but is usually considered (as in this work) as belonging to the superficial fascia. It is not until the cribriform fascia has been cleared away that the saphenous opening is seen, so that this opening does not in ordinary cases exist naturally, but is the result of dissection. Mr.

Fig. 341.—Dissection of lower extremity. Front view.

Callender, however, speaks of cases in which, probably as the result of pressure from enlarged inguinal lymphatic glands, the fascia has become atrophied, and a saphenous opening exists independent of dissection. A femoral hernia in passing through the saphenous opening receives the cribriform fascia as one of its coverings. A large **subcutaneous bursa** (*bursa præpatellaris subcutanea*) is found in the superficial fascia over the patella, and another (*bursa trochanterica subcutanea*) in the superficial fascia over the great trochanter.

Deep Fascia or **Fascia Lata** (Fig. 342).—The deep fascia of the thigh is exposed on the removal of the superficial fascia, and is named, from its great extent, the **fascia lata**; it forms a uniform investment for the whole of this region of the limb, but varies in thickness in different parts; thus, it is thicker in the upper and outer part of the thigh, where it receives a fibrous expansion from the Gluteus maximus muscle, and the Tensor fasciæ femoris is inserted between its layers: it is very thin behind, and at the upper and inner part where it covers the Adductor muscles, and again

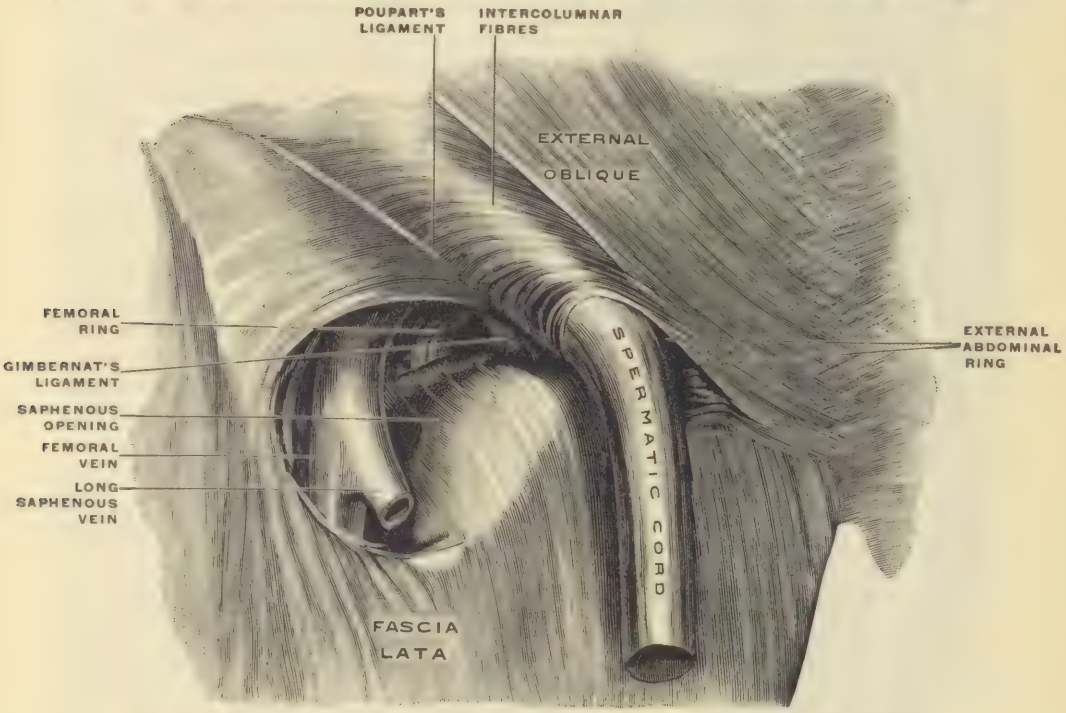


FIG. 342.—Right external abdominal ring and saphenous opening in the male. (Spalteholz).

becomes stronger around the knee, receiving fibrous expansions from the tendon of the Biceps externally, from the Sartorius internally, and from the Quadriceps extensor in front. The fascia lata is attached, above and behind, to the back of the sacrum and coccyx; externally, to the crest of the ilium; in front, to Poupart's ligament and to the body of the os pubis; and internally, to the descending ramus of the os pubis, to the ramus and tuberosity of the ischium, and to the lower border of the great sacro-sciatic ligament. From its attachment to the crest of the ilium it passes down over the Gluteus medius muscle to the upper border of the Gluteus maximus, where it splits into two layers, one passing superficial to and the other beneath this muscle. At the lower border of the muscle the two layers reunite. Externally the fascia lata receives the greater part of the tendon of insertion of the Gluteus maximus, and becomes proportionately thickened. The portion of the fascia lata arising from the front part of the crest of the ilium, cor-

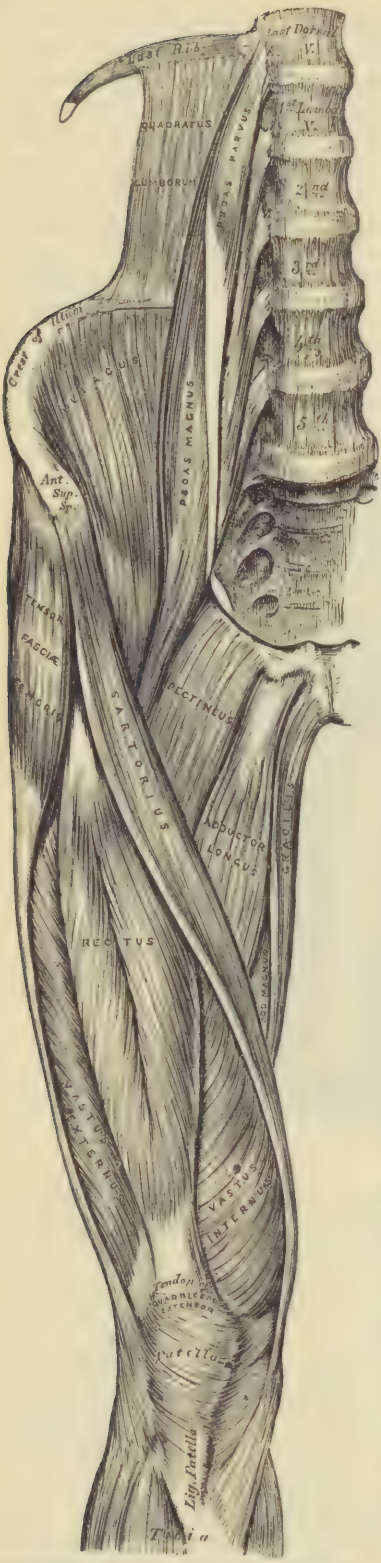


FIG. 343.—Muscles of the iliac and anterior femoral region.

responding to the origin of the Tensor fasciæ femoris, passes down the outer side of the thigh as two layers, one superficial to and the other beneath this muscle. The deep layer is a continuation of the tendinous fibres of the Gluteus maximus muscle and the superficial layer is chiefly a continuation of the tendinous fibres of the Tensor fasciæ femoris, but receives some fibres from the fascia covering the Gluteus medius muscle.[1] These layers at the lower end of the muscle become blended into a thick and strong band, having first received the insertion of the muscle. This band is continued downward, under the name of the **ilio-tibial band** (*tractus iliotibialis* [*Maissiati*]), to be inserted into the external tuberosity of the tibia. A strengthening band of transverse fibres is placed in the **gluteal groove** or **sulcus** (*sulcus glutæus*) and another is placed across the roof of the **popliteal space**. Below, the fascia lata is attached to all the prominent points around the knee-joint—viz., the condyles of the femur, tuberosities of the tibia, and head of the fibula. On each side of the patella it is strengthened by transverse fibres given off from the lower part of the Vasti muscles, which are attached to and support this bone. Of these the outer fibres are the stronger, and are continuous with the ilio-tibial band. From the inner surface of the fascia lata are given off two strong **intermuscular septa**, which are attached to the whole length of the linea aspera and its prolongations above and below: the **external intermuscular septum** (*septum intermusculare laterale*) is the stronger. It extends from the insertion of the Gluteus maximus to the outer condyle, separates the Vastus externus in front from the short head of the Biceps behind, and gives partial origin to these muscles; the **internal intermuscular septum** (*septum intermusculare mediale*), the thinner of the two, separates the Vastus internus from the Adductor and Pectineus muscles. Besides these there are numerous smaller septa, separating the individual muscles and enclosing each in a distinct sheath. At the upper and inner part of the thigh, a little below Poupart's ligament, a large oval-shaped aperture is observed after the superficial fascia has been cleared off: it transmits the internal saphenous vein and other smaller vessels, and is termed the **saphenous opening** (*fossa ovalis*) (Fig. 342). This opening is covered by a portion of the deep layer of the

[1] Werner Spalteholz's Hand Atlas of Human Anatomy. Edited and translated by Lewellys F. Barker.

superficial fascia, the **cribriform fascia.** In order more correctly to consider the mode of formation of this aperture, the fascia lata in this part of the thigh is described as consisting of two portions—an iliac portion and a pubic portion.

Iliac Portion.—The iliac portion, the **superficial layer of the fascia lata** or the **Sartorial portion of the fascia lata,** is all that part of the fascia lata on the outer side of the saphenous opening. It is attached, externally, to the crest of the ilium and its anterior superior spine, to the whole length of Poupart's ligament as far internally as the spine of the os pubis, and to the pectineal line in conjunction with Gimbernat's ligament. From the spine of the os pubis it is reflected downward and outward, forming an arched margin, the **falciform process** or the **falciform margin of Burns** (*margo falciformis*), or the **superior cornu of the saphenous opening** (*cornu superius*). This margin overlies and is adherent to the anterior layer of the sheath of the femoral vessels: to its edge is attached the cribriform fascia; and, below, it is continuous with the pubic portion of the fascia lata. The **femoral ligament,** or the **ligament of Hey,** is the point at which the falciform process joins the base of Gimbernat's ligament.

Pubic Portion.—The pubic portion, or the **pectineal portion,** or the **deep layer of the fascia lata,** is situated at the inner side of the saphenous opening: at the lower margin of this aperture it is continuous with the iliac portion. The lower concave margin of the saphenous opening where the two layers of fascia are continuous is called the **inferior cornu** (*cornu inferius*). Traced upward, the pubic portion covers the surface of the Pectineus, Adductor longus, and Gracilis muscles, and, passing behind the sheath of the femoral vessels, to which it is closely united, is continuous with the sheath of the Psoas and Iliacus muscles, and is attached above to the ilio-pectineal line, where it becomes continuous with the iliac fascia. From this description it may be observed that the iliac portion of the fascia lata passes in front of the femoral vessels, and the pubic portion behind them, so that an apparent aperture exists between the two, through which the internal saphenous joins the femoral vein.[1]

Surgical Anatomy.—The *ilio-tibial* band at a point between the crest of the ilium and the great trochanter is so tense that it is impossible to sink the fingers in deeply in this region. Dr. Allis points out that in fracture of the neck of the femur the great trochanter mounts toward the iliac crest, the ilio-tibial band relaxes, and the fingers can be sunk deeply into the space between the great trochanter and the iliac crest—*Allis's sign.* Allis's sign indicates shortening. A *Psoas abscess* usually points at the termination of the Psoas muscle, but the tuberculous matter may be directed down the thigh beneath the fascia lata, and it may reach the popliteal space or even lower.

The fascia should now be removed from the surface of the muscles. This may be effected by pinching it up between the forceps, dividing it, and separating it from each muscle in the course of its fibres.

The **Tensor Fasciæ Femoris** (*m. tensor fasciæ latæ, m. tensor vaginæ femoris*) (Fig. 343) *arises* from the anterior part of the outer lip of the crest of the ilium, and from the outer surface of the anterior superior spinous process, and part of the outer border of the notch below it, between the Gluteus medius and Sartorius, and from the surface of the fascia covering the Gluteus medius. It is *inserted* between two layers of the fascia lata, about one-fourth down the outer side of the thigh. From the point of insertion the fascia is continued downward to the external tuberosity of the tibia as a thickened band, the **ilio-tibial band.**

Relations.—By its *superficial surface,* with the fascia lata and the integument; by its *deep surface,* with the Gluteus medius, Rectus femoris, and Vastus externus muscles, and the ascending branches of the external circumflex artery; by its *anterior border,* with the Sartorius, from which it is separated below by a triangular

[1] These parts will be again more particularly described with the anatomy of Hernia.

space, in which is seen the Rectus femoris; by its *posterior border*, with the Gluteus medius.

The **Sartorius** (Fig. 343), the longest muscle in the body, is flat, narrow, and ribbon-like; it *arises* by tendinous fibres from the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium and the upper half of the notch below it, passes obliquely across the upper and anterior part of the thigh, from the outer to the inner side of the limb, then descends vertically, as far as the inner side of the knee, passing behind the inner condyle of the femur, and terminates in a tendon which, curving obliquely forward, expands into a broad aponeurosis, *inserted* in front of the Gracilis and Semitendinosus, into the upper part of the inner surface of the shaft of the tibia, nearly as far forward as the crest. The upper part of the tendon is curved backward over the upper edge of the tendon of the Gracilis so as to be *inserted* behind it. An offset is derived from the upper margin of this aponeurosis, which blends with the fibrous capsule of the knee-joint, and another, given off from its lower border, blends with the fascia on the inner side of the leg.

The relations of this muscle to the femoral artery should be carefully examined, as it constitutes the chief guide in tying the vessel. In the upper third of the thigh it forms the outer side of a triangular space, **Scarpa's triangle** (*trigonum femorale*), the inner side of which is formed by the inner border of the Adductor longus, and the base, which is turned upward, by Poupart's ligament; the femoral artery passes perpendicularly through the middle of this space from its base to its apex. In the middle third of the thigh the femoral artery lies first along the inner border, and then behind the Sartorius.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the fascia lata and integument; by its *deep surface*, with the Rectus, Iliacus, Vastus internus, anterior crural nerve, sheath of the femoral vessels, Adductor longus, Adductor magnus, Gracilis, Semitendinosus, long saphenous nerve, and internal lateral ligament of the knee-joint. Frequently there is a **bursa** (*bursa m. sartorii propria*) between the tendon of the Sartorius and the tendons of the Gracilis and Semimembranosus. It may be in communication with the bursa anserina.

The **Quadriceps Extensor** (*m. quadriceps femoris*) (Fig. 343) includes the four remaining muscles on the front of the thigh. It is the great Extensor muscle of the leg, forming a large fleshy mass which covers the front and sides of the femur, being united below into a single tendon, attached to the patella, and above subdivided into separate portions, which have received distinct names. Of these, one occupying the middle of the thigh, connected above with the ilium, is called the **Rectus femoris**, from its straight course. The other divisions lie in immediate connection with the shaft of the femur, which they cover from the trochanters to the condyles. The portion on the outer side of the femur is termed the **Vastus externus**; that covering the inner side, the **Vastus internus**; and that covering the front of the femur, the **Crureus**.

The **Rectus Femoris** is situated in the middle of the anterior region of the thigh; it is fusiform in shape, and its superficial fibres are arranged in a bipenniform manner, the deep fibres running straight down to the deep aponeurosis. It *arises* by two tendons: one, the anterior or straight, from the anterior inferior spinous process of the ilium; the other, the posterior or reflected tendon, from a groove above the brim of the acetabulum; the two unite at an acute angle and spread into an aponeurosis, which is prolonged downward on the anterior surface of the muscle and from which the muscular fibres arise.[1] The muscle terminates in a broad and thick aponeurosis, which occupies the lower two-thirds of its posterior surface, and, gradually becoming narrowed into a flattened tendon, is *inserted*

[1] Mr. W. R. Williams, in an interesting paper in the Journ. of Anat. and Phys., vol. xiii. p. 204, points out that the reflected tendon is the real origin of the muscle, and is alone present in early fœtal life. The direct tendon is merely an accessory band of condensed fascia. The paper will well repay perusal, though in some particulars I think the description in the text more generally accurate.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

into the patella in common with the Vasti and Crureus. Beiween the tendon of origin and the acetabulum there is often a **bursa** (*bursa m. recti femoris*).

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the anterior fibres of the Gluteus minimus, the Tensor fasciæ femoris, the Sartorius, and the Iliacus; by its lower three-fourths, with the fascia lata. By its *posterior surface*, with the hip-joint, the external circumflex vessels, branches of the anterior crural nerve, and the Crureus and Vasti muscles.

The **Vastus Externus** (*m. vastus lateralis*) is the largest part of the Quadriceps extensor. It *arises* by a broad aponeurosis, which is attached to the upper half of the anterior intertrochanteric line, to the anterior and inferior borders of the root of the great trochanter, to the outer lip of the gluteal ridge, and to the upper half of the outer lip of the linea aspera; this aponeurosis covers the upper three-fourths of the muscle, and from its inner surface many fibres take origin. A few additional fibres arise from the tendon of the Gluteus maximus, and from the external intermuscular septum between the Vastus externus and short head of the Biceps. The fibres form a large fleshy mass, which is attached to a strong aponeurosis, placed on the under surface of the muscle at its lower part: this becomes contracted and thickened into a flat tendon, which is *inserted* into the outer border of the patella, blending with the great Extensor tendon, and giving an expansion to the capsule of the knee-joint. Some of the fibres run down by the side of the patella to the condyle of the tibia, and are called the **retinacula patellæ laterale.**

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Rectus, the Tensor fasciæ femoris, the fascia lata, and the tendon of the Gluteus maximus, from which it is separated by a synovial bursa. By its *deep surface*, with the Crureus, some large branches of the external circumflex artery and anterior crural nerve being interposed.

The **Vastus Internus** and **Crureus** appear to be inseparably united, but when the Rectus femoris has been reflected, a narrow interval will be observed extending upward from the inner border of the patella between the two muscles. Here they can be separated, and the separation should be continued upward as far as the lower part of the anterior intertrochanteric line, where, however, the two muscles are frequently continuous.

The **Vastus Internus** (*m. vastus medialis*) *arises* from the lower half of the anterior intertrochanteric line, the spiral line, the inner lip of the linea aspera, the upper part of the internal supra-condylar line, and the tendon of the Adductor magnus and the internal intermuscular septum. Its fibres are directed downward and forward, and are chiefly attached to an aponeurosis which lies on the deep surface of the muscle and is inserted into the inner border of the patella and the Quadriceps extensor tendon, an expansion being sent to the capsule of the knee-joint. Some of the fibres run down by the side of the patella to the condyle of the tibia and are called the **retinacula patellæ mediale.**

The **Crureus** (*m. vastus intermedius*) *arises* from the front and outer aspect of the shaft of the femur in its upper two-thirds and from the lower part of the external intermuscular septum. Its fibres end in a superficial aponeurosis, which forms the deep part of the Quadriceps extensor tendon.

Relations.—The inner edge of the Crureus is in contact with the anterior edge of the Vastus internus, but when separated from each other, as directed above, the latter muscle is seen merely to overlap the inner aspect of the femoral shaft without taking any fibres of origin from it. The Vastus internus is partly covered by the Rectus and Sartorius, but where these separate near the knee it becomes superficial, and produces a well-marked prominence above the inner aspect of the knee. In the middle third of the thigh it forms the outer wall of **Hunter's canal** (*canalis adductorius* [*Hunteri*]), which contains the femoral vessels and the long saphenous nerve—the roof of the canal being formed by a strong fascia which extends from

the Vastus internus to the Adductores longus and magnus. The Crureus is almost completely hidden by the Rectus femoris and Vastus externus. The deep surface of the two muscles is in relation with the femur and Subcrureus muscles. A synovial **bursa** (*bursa suprapatellaris*) is situated between the femur and the portion of the Quadriceps extensor tendon above the patella; in the adult it communicates with the synovial cavity of the knee-joint.

The **tendons** of the different portions of the Quadriceps extensor unite at the lower part of the thigh, so as to form a single strong tendon, which is inserted into the upper part of the patella, some few fibres passing over it to blend with the Ligamentum patellæ. More properly, the patella may be regarded as a sesamoid bone, developed in the tendon of the Quadriceps; and the Ligamentum patellæ, which is continued from the lower part of the patella to the tuberosity of the tibia, as the proper tendon of insertion of the muscle. A synovial bursa, the **deep patellar bursa** (*bursa infrapatellaris profunda*), is interposed between the tendon and the upper part of the tuberosity of the tibia; and another, the **pre-patellar bursa** (*bursa præpatellaris subcutanea*), is placed over the patella itself. This latter bursa often becomes enlarged, constituting "housemaid's knee."

The **Subcrureus** (*m. articularis genu*) is a small muscle, usually distinct from the Crureus, but occasionally blended with it, which *arises* from the anterior surface of the lower part of the shaft of the femur, and is *inserted* into the upper part of the *cul-de-sac* of the capsular ligament which projects upward beneath the Quadriceps for a variable distance. It sometimes consists of several separate muscular bundles.

Nerves.—The Tensor fasciæ femoris is supplied by the fourth and fifth lumbar and first sacral nerves through the superior gluteal nerve; the other muscles of this region, by the second, third, and fourth lumbar nerves, through branches of the anterior crural.

Actions.—The Tensor fasciæ femoris is a tensor of the fascia lata; continuing its action, the oblique direction of its fibres enables it to abduct and to rotate the thigh inward. In the erect posture, acting from below, it will serve to steady the pelvis upon the head of the femur, and by means of the ilio-tibial band it steadies the condyles of the femur on the articular surfaces of the tibia, and assists the Gluteus maximus in supporting the knee in the extended position. The Sartorius flexes the leg upon the thigh, and, continuing to act, flexes the thigh upon the pelvis; it next rotates the thigh outward. It was formerly supposed to adduct the thigh, so as to cross one leg over the other, and hence received its name of Sartorius, or tailor's muscle (*sartor*, a tailor), because it was supposed to assist in crossing the legs in the squatting position. When the knee is bent the Sartorius assists the Semitendinosus, Semimembranosus, and Popliteus in rotating the tibia inward. Taking its fixed point from the leg, it flexes the pelvis upon the thigh, and, if one muscle acts, assists in rotating the pelvis. The Quadriceps extensor extends the leg upon the thigh. The Rectus muscle assists the Psoas and Iliacus in supporting the pelvis and trunk upon the femur. It also assists in flexing the thigh on the pelvis, or if the thigh is fixed it will flex the pelvis. The Vastus internus draws the patella inward as well as upward.

Surgical Anatomy.—A few fibres of the Rectus muscle are liable to be ruptured from severe strain. This accident is especially liable to occur during the games of football and cricket, and is sometimes known as *cricket thigh*. The patient experiences a sudden pain in the part, as if he had been struck, and the Rectus muscle stands out and is felt to be tense and rigid. The accident is often followed by considerable swelling from inflammatory effusion. Occasionally the Quadriceps extensor may be torn away from its insertion into the patella, or the tendon of the quadriceps may be ruptured about an inch above the bone. This accident is caused in the same manner that fracture of the patella by muscular action is produced—viz., by a violent muscular effort to prevent falling whilst the knee is in a position of semiflexion. A distinct gap can be

felt above the patella, and, owing to the retraction of the muscular fibres, union may fail to take place. Sudden and powerful contraction of the Quadriceps extensor femoris is the cause of transverse fracture of the patella.

2. The Internal Femoral Region.

Gracilis. Adductor longus.
Pectineus. Adductor brevis.
Adductor magnus.

Dissection.—These muscles are at once exposed by removing the fascia from the forepart and inner side of the thigh. The limb should be abducted, so as to render the muscles tense and easier of dissection.

The **Gracilis** (Figs. 343, 346, and 349) is the most superficial muscle on the inner side of the thigh. It is thin and flattened, broad above, narrowing and tapering below. It *arises* by a thin aponeurosis from the lower half of the margin of the symphysis and the anterior half of the pubic arch. The fibres pass vertically downward, and terminate in a rounded tendon which passes behind the internal condyle of the femur, and, curving round the inner tuberosity of the tibia, becomes flattened, and is *inserted* into the upper part of the inner surface of the shaft of the tibia, below the tuberosity. A few of the fibres of the lower part of the tendon are prolonged into the deep fascia of the leg. The tendon of this muscle is situated immediately above that of the Semitendinosus, and its upper edge is overlapped by the tendon of the Sartorius, with which it is in part blended. As it passes across the internal lateral ligament of the knee-joint it is separated from it by a **synovial bursa** (*bursa anserina*) common to it and the Semitendinosus muscle.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the fascia lata and the Sartorius below: the internal saphenous vein crosses it obliquely near its lower part, lying superficial to the fascia lata; the internal saphenous nerve emerges between its tendon and that of the Sartorius; by its *deep surface*, with the Adductor brevis and the Adductor magnus and the internal lateral ligament of the knee-joint.

The **Pectineus** (Fig. 343) is a flat, quadrangular muscle, situated at the anterior part of the upper and inner aspect of the thigh. It *arises* from the linea ilio-pectinea, and to a slight extent from the surface of the bone in front of it between the pectineal eminence and spine of the os pubis, and from the fascia covering the anterior surface of the muscle; the fibres pass downward, backward, and outward, to be *inserted* into a rough line leading from the lesser trochanter to the linea aspera.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the pubic portion of the fascia lata, which separates it from the femoral vessels and internal saphenous vein; by its *posterior surface*, with the capsular ligament of the hip-joint, the Adductor brevis and Obturator externus muscles, the obturator vessels and nerve being interposed; by its *outer border*, with the Psoas, a cellular interval separating them, through which pass the internal circumflex vessels; by its *inner border*, with the margin of the Adductor longus. There is usually a **bursa** (*bursa m. pectinei*) between the pectineus and the tendon of the psoas and iliacus.

The **Adductor Longus** (Figs. 343 and 344), the most superficial of the three Adductors, is a flat triangular muscle lying on the same plane as the Pectineus. It *arises*, by a flat narrow tendon, from the front of the os pubis, at the angle of junction of the crest with the symphysis; and soon expands into a broad fleshy belly, which, passing downward, backward, and outward, is *inserted*, by an aponeurosis, into the linea aspera, between the Vastus internus and the Adductor magnus, with both of which it is usually blended.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the fascia lata, the Sartorius, and, near its insertion, with the femoral artery and vein; by its *posterior surface*, with the Adductor brevis and magnus, the anterior branches of the obturator nerve, and

with the profunda artery and vein near its insertion; by its *outer border*, with the Pectineus; by its *inner border*, with the Gracilis.

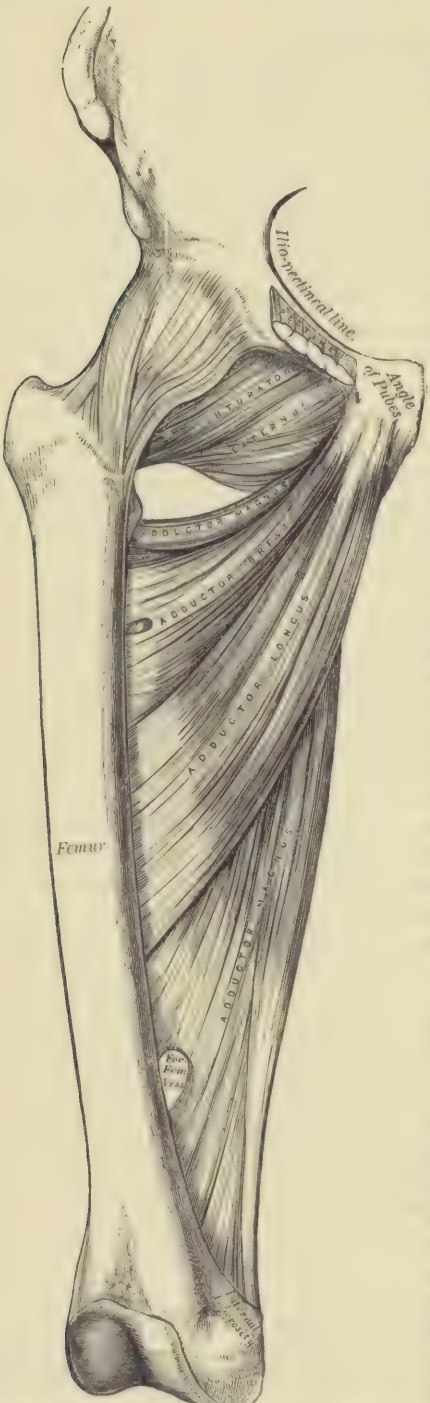


Fig. 344.—Deep muscles of the internal femoral region.

The Pectineus and Adductor longus should now be divided near their origin, and turned downward, when the Adductor brevis and Obturator externus will be exposed.

The **Adductor Brevis** (Fig. 344) is situated immediately behind the two preceding muscles. It is somewhat triangular in form, and *arises* by a narrow origin from the outer surface of the body and descending ramus of the os pubis, between the Gracilis and Obturator externus. Its fibres passing backward, outward, and downward, are *inserted*, by an aponeurosis, into the lower part of the line leading from the lesser trochanter to the linea aspera and the upper part of the same line, immediately behind the Pectineus and upper part of the Adductor longus.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the Pectineus, Adductor longus, profunda femoris artery, and anterior branches of the obturator nerve; by its *posterior surface*, with the Adductor magnus and posterior branch of the obturator nerve; by its *outer border*, with the internal circumflex artery, the Obturator externus, and conjoined tendon of the Psoas and Iliacus; by its *inner border*, with the Gracilis and Adductor magnus. This muscle is pierced, near its insertion, by the second or by the first and second perforating branches of the profunda femoris artery.

The Adductor brevis should now be cut away near its origin, and turned outward, when the entire extent of the Adductor magnus will be exposed.

The **Adductor Magnus** (Fig. 344) is a large triangular muscle forming a septum between the muscles on the inner and those on the back of the thigh. It *arises* from a small part of the descending ramus of the os pubis, from the ramus of the ischium, and from the outer margin of the inferior part of the tuberosity of the ischium. Those fibres which arise from the ramus of the os pubis are very short, horizontal in direction, and are inserted into the rough line leading from the great trochanter to the linea aspera, internal to the Gluteus maximus. They are considered by some a distinct muscle and called the **Adductor minimus.** The fibres taking origin from the ramus of the ischium are directed downward and outward

with different degrees of obliquity, to be *inserted*, by means of a broad aponeurosis, into the linea aspera and the upper part of its internal prolongation below. The **internal portion** of the muscle, consisting principally of those fibres which *arise* from the tuberosity of the ischium, forms a thick fleshy mass consisting of coarse bundles which descend almost vertically, and terminate about the lower third of the thigh in a rounded tendon, which is *inserted* into the Adductor tubercle on the inner condyle of the femur, being connected by a fibrous expansion to the line leading upward from the tubercle to the linea aspera. Between the two portions of the muscle an interval is left, tendinous in front, fleshy behind, for the passage of the femoral vessels from Hunter's canal into the popliteal space. The **external portion** of the muscle at its attachment to the femur presents three or four osseo-aponeurotic openings, formed by tendinous arches attached to the bone, from which muscular fibres arise. The three superior of these apertures are for the three perforating arteries, and the fourth, when it exists, is for the terminal branch of the profunda.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the Pectineus, Adductor brevis, Adductor longus, and the femoral and profunda vessels and obturator nerve; by its *posterior surface*, with the great sciatic nerve, the Gluteus maximus, Biceps, Semitendinosus, and Semimembranosus. By its *superior* or *shortest border* it lies parallel with the Quadratus femoris, the internal circumflex artery passing between them; by its *internal* or *longest border*, with the Gracilis, Sartorius, and fascia lata; by its *external* or *attached border* it is inserted into the femur behind the Adductor brevis and Adductor longus, which separate it from the Vastus internus, and in front of the Gluteus maximus and short head of the Biceps, which separate it from the Vastus externus.

Nerves. The three Adductor muscles and the Gracilis are supplied by the third and fourth lumbar nerves through the obturator nerve; the Adductor magnus receiving an additional branch from the sacral plexus through the great sciatic. The Pectineus is supplied by the second, third, and fourth lumbar nerves through the anterior crural, and by the accessory obturator, from the third lumbar, when it exists. Occasionally it receives a branch from the obturator nerve.[1]

Actions.—The Pectineus and three Adductors adduct the thigh powerfully; they are especially used in horse exercise, the flanks of the horse being grasped between the knees by the actions of these muscles. In consequence of the obliquity of their insertion into the linea aspera they rotate the thigh outward, assisting the external Rotators, and when the limb has been abducted they draw it inward, carrying the thigh across that of the opposite side. The Pectineus and Adductor brevis and longus assist the Psoas and Iliacus in flexing the thigh upon the pelvis. In progression, also, all these muscles assist in drawing forward the hinder limb. The Gracilis assists the Sartorius in flexing the leg and rotating it inward; it is also an adductor of the thigh. If the lower extremities are fixed, these muscles may take their fixed point from below and act upon the pelvis, serving to maintain the body in an erect posture, or, if their action is continued, to flex the pelvis forward upon the femur.

Hunter's Canal (*canalis adductorius* [*Hunteri*]) extends from the apex of Scarpa's triangle to the opening in the Adductor magnus muscle. The antero-internal boundary or roof of Hunter's canal is the Sartorius and the aponeurotic expansion from the Adductors to the Vastus internus. It is bounded externally by the Vastus internus. The Adductor longus and Magnus constitute its floor or the postero-internal boundary. The canal contains the femoral artery, femoral vein, the long saphenous nerve, and the nerve to the Vastus internus. The anterior opening of Hunter's canal is called the **hiatus tendineus**.

[1] Professor Paterson describes the Pectineus as consisting of two incompletely separated strata, of which the outer or dorsal stratum, which is constant, is supplied by the anterior crural nerve, or in its absence by the accessory obturator, with which it is intimately related; while the inner or ventral stratum, when present, is supplied by the obturator nerve. Journ. of Anat. and Phys., vol. xxvi. p. 43. Ed. of 15th English edition.

Surgical Anatomy.—The Adductor longus is liable to be severely *strained* in those who ride much on horseback, or its tendon to be *ruptured* by suddenly gripping the saddle. Occasionally, especially in cowboys and cavalry soldiers, the tendon of insertion of the Adductor magnus may become ossified, constituting the *rider's bone*.

THE MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE HIP.

3. The Gluteal Region (Figs. 346, 347).

Gluteus maximus.
Gluteus medius.
Gluteus minimus.
Pyriformis.
Obturator internus.
Gemellus superior.
Gemellus inferior.
Quadratus femoris.
Obturator externus.

Dissection (Fig. 345).—The subject should be turned on its face, a block placed beneath the pelvis to make the buttocks tense, and the limbs allowed to hang over the end of the table, with the foot inverted and the thigh abducted. Make an incision through the integument along the crest of the ilium to the middle of the sacrum, and thence downward to the tip of the coccyx, and carry a second incision from that point obliquely downward and outward to the outer side of the thigh, four inches below the great trochanter. The portion of integument included between these incisions is to be removed in the direction shown in the figure.

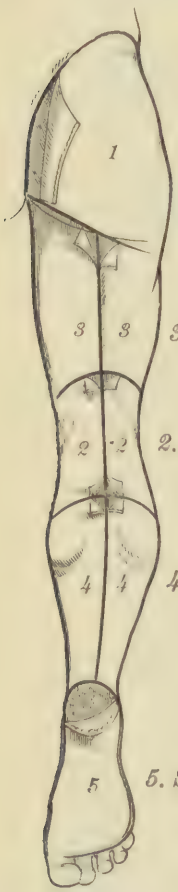


Fig. 345.—Dissection of lower extremity. Posterior view.

The **Gluteus Maximus** (*m. glutæus maximus*) (Fig. 346), the most superficial muscle in the gluteal region, is a very broad and thick, fleshy mass of a quadrilateral shape, which forms the prominence of the buttock. Its large size is one of the most characteristic points in the muscular system of man, connected as it is with the power he has of maintaining the trunk in the erect posture. In structure the muscle is remarkably coarse, being made up of muscular fasciculi lying parallel with one another, and collected together into large bundles, separated by deep cellular intervals. It *arises* from the superior curved line of the ilium and the portion of bone, including the crest, immediately above and behind it; from the posterior surface of the lower part of the sacrum, the side of the coccyx, the aponeurosis of the Erector spinæ muscle, the great sacro-sciatic ligament, and the fascia covering the Gluteus medius. The fibres are directed obliquely downward and outward; those forming the upper and large portion of the muscle, together with the superficial fibres of the lower portion, terminate in a thick tendinous lamina, which passes across the great trochanter and is *inserted* into the fascia lata covering the outer side of the thigh; the deeper fibres of the lower portion of the muscles are inserted into the rough line leading from the great trochanter to the linea aspera between the Vastus externus and Adductor magnus.

Several **synovial bursæ** are found in relation with this muscle. One of these (*bursa trochanterica m. glutæi maximi*), of large size, and generally multilocular, separates it from the great trochanter. A second (*bursa ischiadica m. glutæi maximi*), often wanting, is situated on the tuberosity of the ischium. A third bursa is found between the tendon of this muscle and the Vastus externus. Two or three small bursæ (*bursæ glutæofemorales*) are placed between the tendon of the muscle and the gluteal ridge.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with a thin fascia, which separates it from the subcutaneous tissue; by its *deep surface*, from above downward, with the ilium, sacrum, coccyx, and great sacro-sciatic ligament, part of the Gluteus medius, Pyriformis, Gemelli, Obturator internus, Quadratus femoris, the tuberosity of the ischium, great trochanter, the origin of the Biceps, Semitendinosus, Semimembranosus, and Adductor magnus muscles. The superficial part of the gluteal artery reaches the deep surface of the muscle by passing between the Pyriformis and the Gluteus medius; the sciatic and internal pudic vessels and nerves and muscular branches from the sacral plexus issue from the pelvis below the Pyriformis. The first perforating artery and the terminal branches of the internal circumflex artery are also found under cover of the muscle. Its *upper border* is thin, and connected with the Gluteus medius by the fascia lata. Its *lower border* is free and prominent.

Dissection.—Divide the Gluteus maximus near its origin by a vertical incision carried from its upper to its lower border; a cellular interval will be exposed, separating it from the Gluteus medius and External rotator muscles beneath. The upper portion of the muscle is to be altogether detached, and the lower portion turned outward; the loose areolar tissue filling up the interspace between the trochanter major and tuberosity of the ischium being removed, the parts already enumerated as exposed by the removal of this muscle will be seen.

The **Gluteus Medius** (*m. glutæus medius*) (Fig. 346) is a broad, thick, radiated muscle, situated on the outer surface of the pelvis. Its posterior third is covered by the Gluteus maximus; its anterior two-thirds by the fascia lata, which separates it from the integument. It *arises* from the outer surface of the ilium, between the superior and middle curved lines, and from the outer lip of that portion of the crest which is between them; it also arises from the dense fascia, the **gluteal aponeurosis**, covering its outer surface. The fibres converge to a strong flattened tendon which is *inserted* into the oblique line which traverses the outer surface of the great trochanter. A **synovial bursa** (*bursa trochanterica m. glutæi medii anterior*) separates the tendon of the muscle from the summit of the great trochanter. There is frequently a bursa (*bursa trochanterica m. glutæi medii posterior*) between the tendons of the Gluteus medius and Pyriformis.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Gluteus maximus behind, the Tensor fasciæ femoris and deep fascia in front; by its *deep surface*, with the Gluteus minimus and the gluteal vessels and superior gluteal nerve. Its *anterior border* is blended with the Gluteus minimus. Its *posterior border* lies parallel with the Pyriformis, the gluteal vessels intervening.

This muscle should now be divided near its insertion and turned upward, when the Gluteus minimus will be exposed.

The **Gluteus Minimus** (*m. glutæus minimus*) (Fig. 346), the smallest of the three Glutei, is placed immediately beneath the preceding. It is fan-shaped, *arising* from the outer surface of the ilium, between the middle and inferior curved lines, and behind, from the margin of the great sacro-sciatic notch; the fibres converge to the deep surface of a radiated aponeurosis, which, terminating in a tendon, is *inserted* into an impression on the anterior border of the great trochanter.

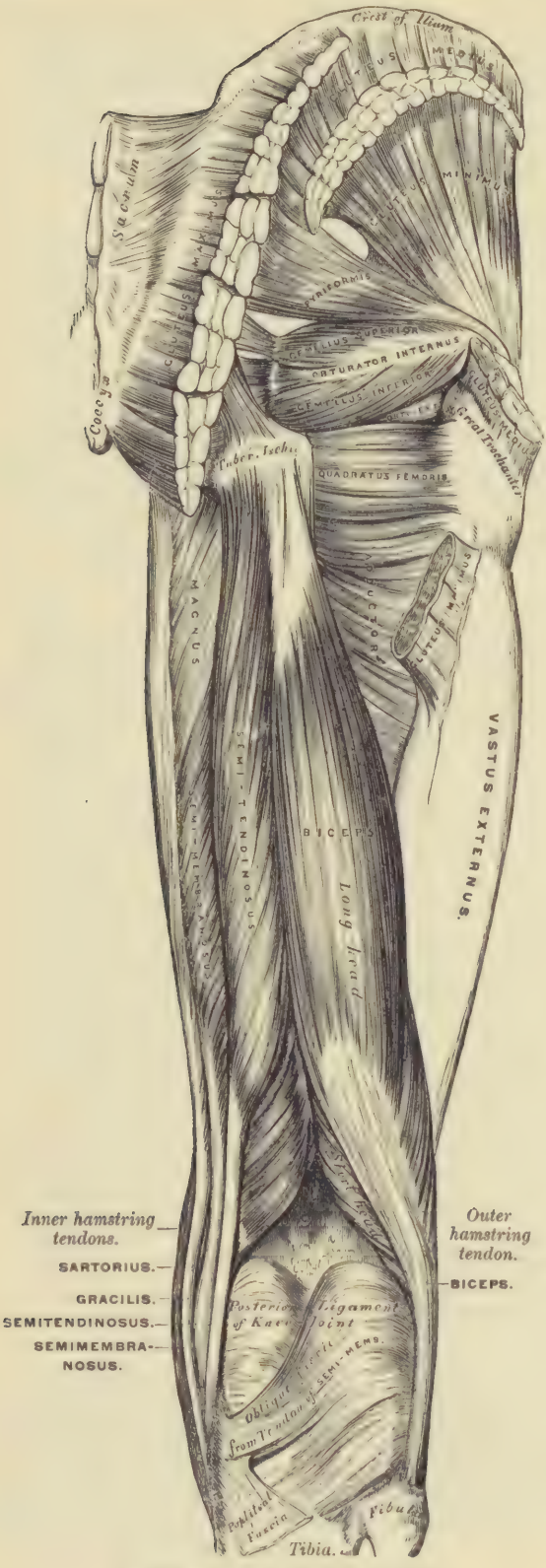


FIG. 346.—Muscles of the hip and thigh.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Gluteus medius and the gluteal vessels and superior gluteal nerve; by its *deep surface*, with the ilium, the reflected tendon of the Rectus femoris, and the capsular ligament of the hip-joint. Its *anterior margin* is blended with the Gluteus medius; its *posterior margin* is in contact and sometimes joined with the tendon of the Pyriformis. There is a synovial **bursa** (*bursa m. glutæi minimi*) between the tendon of the Gluteus minimus and the great trochanter.

The **Pyriformis** (*m. piriformis*) (Figs. 346 and 347) is a flat muscle, pyramidal in shape, lying almost parallel with the posterior margin of the Gluteus medius. It is situated partly within the pelvis at its posterior part and partly at the back of the hip-joint. It *arises* from the front of the sacrum by three fleshy digitations attached to the portions of bone between the first, second, third, and fourth anterior sacral foramina, and also from the groove leading from the foramina: a few fibres also arise from the margin of the great sacro-sciatic foramen and from the anterior surface of the great sacro-sciatic ligament. The muscle passes out of the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen, the upper part of which it fills, and is *inserted* by a rounded tendon into the upper border of the great trochanter, behind, but often partly blended with, the tendon of the Obturator internus and Gemelli muscles.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface, within the pelvis*, with the Rectum (especially on the left side), the sacral plexus of nerves, and the branches of the internal iliac vessels; *external to the pelvis*, with the posterior

surface of the ischium and the capsular ligament of the hip-joint; by its *posterior surface, within the pelvis*, with the sacrum, and *external to it*, with the Gluteus maximus; by its *upper border*, with the Gluteus medius, from which it is separated by the gluteal vessels and superior gluteal nerve; by its *lower border*, with the Gemellus superior and Coccygeus, the sciatic vessels and nerves, the internal pudic vessels and nerve, and muscular branches from the sacral plexus, passing from the pelvis in the interval between the two muscles. There is usually a **bursa** (*bursa m. piriformis*) between the tendon of the pyriformis and the ilium.

The **Obturator Membrane** (*membrana obturatoria*) (Fig. 215) is a thin layer of interlacing fibres which closes almost completely the obturator foramen. It is attached, externally, to the margin of the foramen; internally, to the posterior surface of the ischio-pubic ramus, below and internal to the margin of the foramen. It presents at its upper and outer part a small canal, **obturator canal** (*canalis obturatorius*) for the passage of the obturator vessels and nerve. Both obturator muscles are connected with this membrane.

Dissection.—The next muscle, as well as the origin of the Pyriformis, can only be seen when the pelvis is divided and the viscera removed.

The **Obturator Internus** (Figs. 346 and 347), like the preceding muscle, is situated partly within the cavity of the pelvis, and partly at the back of the hip-joint. It *arises* from the inner surface of the anterior and external wall of the pelvis, where it surrounds the greater part of the obturator foramen, being attached to the descending ramus of the os pubis and the ramus of the ischium, and at the side to the inner surface of the innominate bone below and behind the pelvic brim, reaching from the upper part of the great sacro-sciatic foramen above and behind to the thyroid foramen below and in front. It also arises from the inner surface of the obturator membrane except at its posterior part, from the tendinous arch which completes the canal for the passage of the obturator vessels and nerve and to a slight extent from the obturator layer of the pelvic fascia, which covers it. The fibres converge rapidly, and are directed backward and downward, and terminate in four or five tendinous bands, which are found on its deep surface; these bands are reflected at a right angle over the inner surface of the tuberosity of the ischium, which is grooved for their reception; the groove is covered with cartilage, and lined by a synovial **bursa** (*bursa m. obturatoris interni*). The muscle leaves the pelvis by the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen; and the tendinous bands unite into a single flattened tendon, which passes horizontally outward, and, after receiving the attachment of the Gemelli, is *inserted* into the forepart of the inner surface of the great trochanter in front of the Obturator externus. A synovial **bursa**, narrow and elongated in form, is usually found between the tendon of this muscle and the capsular ligament of the hip: it occasionally communicates with the bursa between the tendon and the tuberosity of the ischium, the two forming a single sac.

In order to display the peculiar appearances presented by the tendon of this muscle, it must be divided near its insertion and reflected inward.

Relations.—*Within the pelvis* this muscle is in relation, by its *anterior surface*, with the obturator membrane and inner surface of the anterior wall of the pelvis; by its *posterior surface*, with the pelvic and obturator fasciæ, which separate it from the Levator ani; and it is crossed by the internal pudic vessels and nerve. This surface forms the outer boundary of the ischio-rectal fossa (Fig. 339). *External to the pelvis* it is covered by the Gluteus maximus, is crossed by the great sciatic nerve, and rests on the back part of the hip-joint. As the tendon of the Obturator internus emerges from the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen it is over-

lapped by the two Gemelli, while nearer its insertion the Gemelli pass in front of it and form a groove in which the tendon lies.

The **Gemelli** (Fig. 346) are two small muscular fasciculi, accessories to the tendon of the Obturator internus, which is received into a groove between them. They are called **superior** and **inferior.**

The **Gemellus Superior,** the smaller of the two, *arises* from the outer surface of the spine of the ischium, and, passing horizontally outward, becomes blended

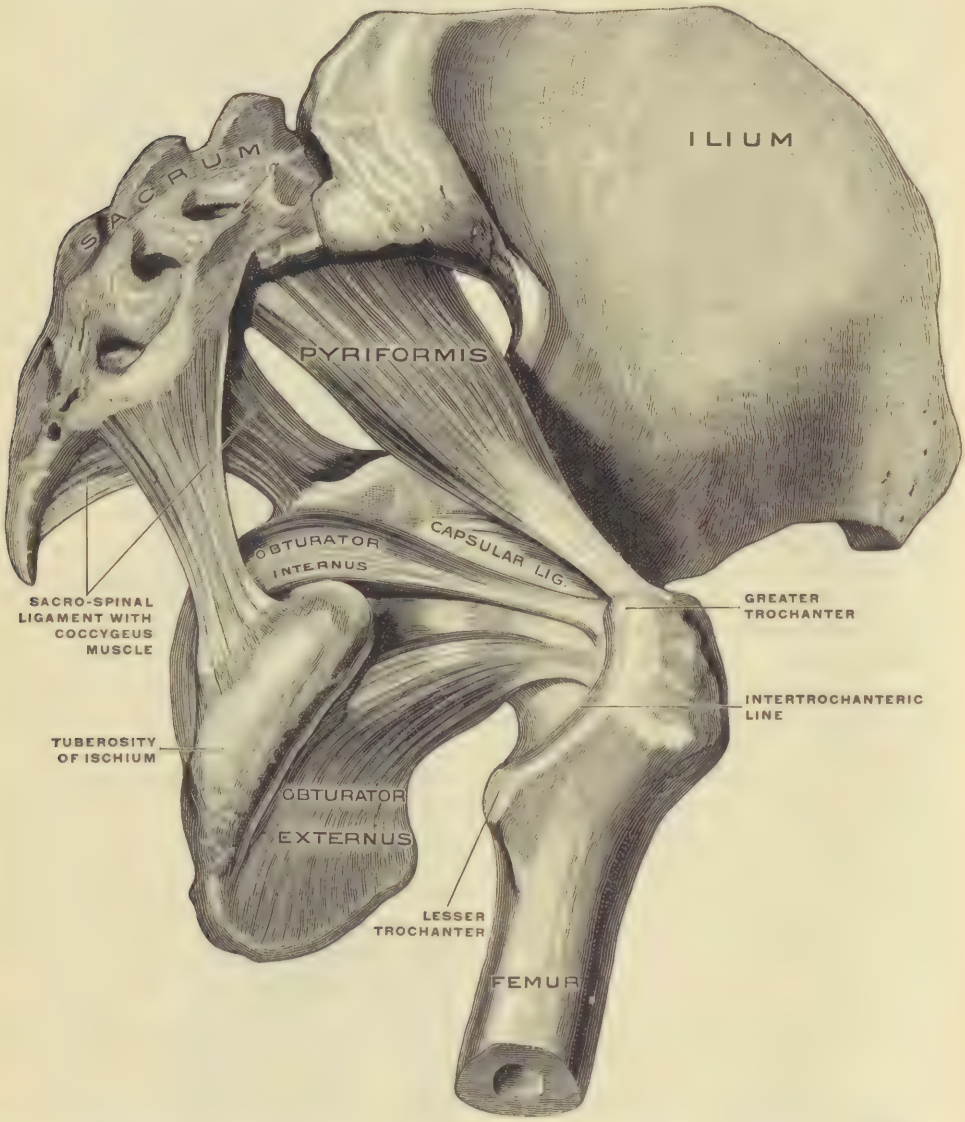


FIG. 347.—Muscles of the small or true pelvis on the right side, viewed from without and below. (Spalteholz.)

with the upper part of the tendon of the Obturator internus, and is *inserted* with it into the inner surface of the great trochanter. This muscle is sometimes wanting.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Gluteus maximus and the sciatic vessels and nerves; by its *deep surface*, with the capsule of the hip-joint; by its

upper border, with the lower margin of the Pyriformis; by its *lower border*, with the tendon of the Obturator internus.

The **Gemellus Inferior** *arises* from the upper part of the tuberosity of the ischium, where it forms the lower edge of the groove for the Obturator internus tendon, and, passing horizontally outward, is blended with the lower part of the tendon of the Obturator internus, and is *inserted* with it into the inner surface of the great trochanter.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Gluteus maximus and the sciatic vessels and nerves; by its *deep surface*, with the scapular ligament of the hip-joint; by its *upper border*, with the tendon of the Obturator internus; by its *lower border*, with the tendon of the Obturator externus and Quadratus femoris.

The **Quadratus Femoris** (Fig. 346) is a short, flat muscle, quadrilateral in shape (hence its name), situated between the Gemellus inferior and the upper margin of the Adductor magnus. It *arises* from the upper part of the external lip of the tuberosity of the ischium, and, proceeding horizontally outward, is *inserted* into the upper part of the linea quadrata; that is, the line which crosses the posterior intertrochanteric line. A synovial **bursa** is often found between the under surface of this muscle and the lesser trochanter, which it covers.

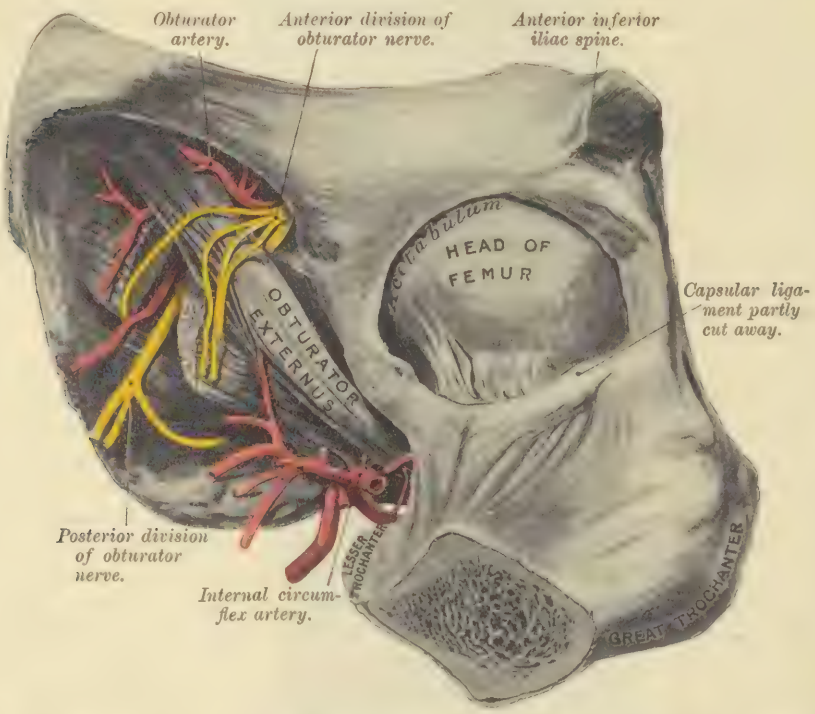


Fig. 348.—Obturator externus muscle. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

Relations.—By its *posterior surface*, with the Gluteus maximus and the sciatic vessels and nerves; by its *anterior surface*, with the tendon of the Obturator externus and trochanter minor and with the capsule of the hip-joint; by its *upper border*, with the Gemellus inferior. Its *lower border* is separated from the Adductor magnus by the terminal branches of the internal circumflex vessels.

Dissection.—In order to expose the next muscle (the Obturator externus) it is necessary to remove the Psoas, Iliacus, Pectineus, and Adductor brevis and longus muscles from the front

and inner side of the thigh, and the Gluteus maximus and Quadratus femoris from the back part. Its dissection should, consequently, be postponed until the muscles of the anterior and internal femoral regions have been explained.

The **Obturator Externus** (Figs. 347 and 348) is a flat, triangular muscle, which covers the outer surface of the anterior wall of the pelvis. It *arises* from the margin of bone immediately around the inner side of the obturator foramen—viz., from the body and ramus of the os pubis and the ramus of the ischium; it also arises from the inner two-thirds of the outer surface of the obturator membrane, and from the tendinous arch which completes the canal for the passage of the obturator vessels and nerves. The fibres from the pubic arch extend on to the inner surface of the bone, from which they obtain a narrow origin between the margin of the foramen and the attachment of the membrane. The fibres converging pass backward, outward, and upward, and terminate in a tendon which runs across the back part of the hip-joint, and is *inserted* into the digital fossa of the femur.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the Psoas, Iliacus, Pectineus, Adductor magnus, and Adductor brevis; and more externally, with the neck of the femur and capsule of the hip-joint. The obturator artery and vein lie between this muscle and the obturator membrane; the superficial part of the obturator nerve lies above the muscle, and the deep branch perforates it; by its *posterior surface*, with the obturator membrane and Quadratus femoris.

Nerves.—The Gluteus maximus is supplied by the fifth lumbar and first and second sacral nerves through the inferior gluteal nerve from the sacral plexus; the Gluteus medius and minimus, by the fourth and fifth lumbar and first sacral nerves through the superior gluteal; the Pyriformis is supplied by the first and second sacral nerves; the Gemellus inferior and Quadratus femoris by the last lumbar and first sacral nerve; the Gemellus superior and Obturator internus by the fifth lumbar and first and second sacral nerves, and the Obturator externus by the second, third, and fourth lumbar nerves through the obturator.

Actions.—The Gluteus maximus, when it takes its fixed point from the pelvis, extends the femur and brings the bent thigh into a line with the body. Taking its fixed point from below, it acts upon the pelvis, supporting it and the whole trunk upon the head of the femur, which is especially obvious in standing on one leg. Its most powerful actions are to hold the head of the femur in close approximation to the acetabulum in walking and to cause the body to regain the erect position after stooping by drawing the pelvis backward, being assisted in this action by the Biceps, Semitendinosus, and Semimembranosus. The Gluteus maximus is a tensor of the fascia lata, and by its connection with the ilio-tibial band it steadies the femur on the articular surface of the tibia during standing, when the Extensor muscles are relaxed. The lower part of the muscle also acts as an adductor and external rotator of the limb. The Gluteus medius and minimus abduct the thigh when the limb is extended, and are principally called into action in supporting the body on one limb, in conjunction with the Tensor fasciæ femoris. Their anterior fibres, by drawing the great trochanter forward, rotate the thigh inward, in which action they are also assisted by the Tensor fasciæ femoris. The remaining muscles are powerful rotators of the thigh outward. In the sitting posture, when the thigh is flexed upon the pelvis, their action as rotators cease, and they become abductors, with the exception of the Obturator externus, which still rotates the femur outward. When the femur is fixed, the Pyriformis and Obturator muscles serve to draw the pelvis forward if it has been inclined backward, and assist in steadying it upon the head of the femur.

Surgical Anatomy.—The fascia over the gluteal region is extremely dense and an abscess beneath it may pass far down into the thigh.

4. The Posterior Femoral Region.

Biceps. Semitendinosus. Semimembranosus.

(*Hamstring muscles.*)

Dissection (Fig. 345).—Make a vertical incision along the middle of the back of the thigh, from the lower fold of the buttock to about three inches below the back of the knee-joint, and there connect it with a transverse incision, carried from the inner to the outer side of the leg. Make a third incision transversely at the junction of the middle with the lower third of the thigh. The integument having been removed from the back of the knee, and the boundaries of the popliteal space having been examined, the removal of the integument from the remaining part of the thigh should be continued, when the fascia and muscles of this region will be exposed.

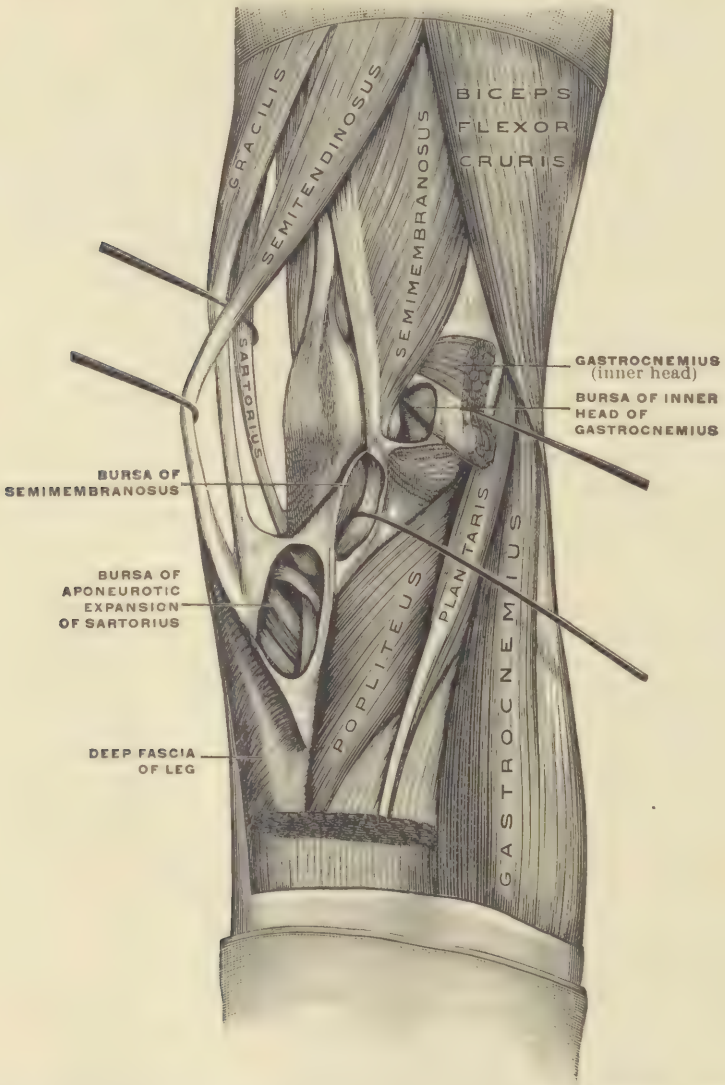


FIG. 349.—Region of the knee, seen obliquely from behind and within. Right limb. (Toldt.)

The **Biceps** or **Biceps Flexor Cruris** (*m. biceps femoris*) is a large muscle, of considerable length, situated on the posterior and outer aspect of the thigh (Figs. 346 and 349). It *arises* by two heads. One, the **long head** (*caput longum*), *arises* from the lower and inner impression on the back part of the tuberosity

of the ischium, by a tendon common to it and the Semitendinosus, and from the lower part of the great sacro-sciatic ligament. Between this tendon of origin and the Semimembranosus there is often a bursa (*bursa m. bicipitis femoris superior*). The **femoral**, or **short head** (*caput breve*), *arises* from the outer lip of the linea aspera, between the Adductor magnus and Vastus externus, extending up almost as high as the insertion of the Gluteus maximus; from the outer prolongation of the linea aspera to within two inches of the outer condyle, and from the external intermuscular septum. The fibres of the long head form a fusiform belly, which, passing obliquely downward and a little outward, terminates in an aponeurosis which covers the posterior surface of the muscle, and receives the fibres of the short head: this aponeurosis becomes gradually contracted into a tendon, which is *inserted* into the outer side of the head of the fibula, and by a small slip into the lateral surface of the external tuberosity of the tibia. At its insertion the tendon divides into two portions, which embrace the long external lateral ligament of the knee-joint. From the posterior border of the tendon a thin expansion is given off to the fascia of the leg. The tendon of this muscle forms the **outer hamstring**. Sometimes there is a bursa (*bursa bicipitogastrocnemialis*) between the tendon of insertion of the Biceps and the origin of the Gastrocnemius, and there is a bursa (*bursa m. bicipitis femoris inferior*) between the tendon of the biceps and the external lateral ligament.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Gluteus maximus and the small sciatic nerve, the fascia lata, and integument. By its *deep surface*, with the Semimembranosus, Adductor magnus, and Vastus externus, the great sciatic nerve, and, near its insertion, with the external head of the Gastrocnemius, the Plantaris, the superior external articular artery, and the external popliteal nerve.

The **Semitendinosus** (Figs. 346 and 349), remarkable for the great length of its tendon, is situated at the posterior and inner aspect of the thigh. It *arises* from the lower and inner impression on the tuberosity of the ischium by a tendon common to it and the long head of the Biceps; it also arises from an aponeurosis which connects the adjacent surfaces of the two muscles to the extent of about three inches after their origin. There is a bursa (*bursa m. bicipitis femoris superior*) between the tendons of origin of the Biceps and Semitendinosus on one side and the tendon of origin of the Semimembranosus on the other. The Semitendinosus is a fusiform muscle, which, passing downward and inward, terminates a little below the middle of the thigh in a long round tendon which lies along the inner side of the popliteal space, then curves around the inner tuberosity of the tibia, and is *inserted* into the upper part of the inner surface of the shaft of that bone nearly as far forward as its anterior border. At its insertion it gives off from its lower border a prolongation to the deep fascia of the leg. This tendon lies behind the tendon of the Sartorius, and below that of the Gracilis, to which it is united. A tendinous intersection is usually observed about the middle of the muscles. The **bursa anserina** lies between the tendon of the Semitendinosus and the tibia. This bursa was referred to in speaking of the Gracilis, p. 519.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Gluteus maximus and fascia lata; by its *deep surface*, with the Semimembranosus, Adductor magnus, inner head of the Gastrocnemius, and internal lateral ligament of the knee-joint.

The **Semimembranosus** (Figs. 346 and 349), so called from its membranous tendon of origin, is situated at the back part and inner side of the thigh. It *arises* by a thick tendon from the upper and outer impression on the back part of the tuberosity of the ischium, above and to the outer side of the Biceps and Semitendinosus, and is *inserted* into the groove on the inner and back part of the inner tuberosity of the tibia, beneath the internal lateral ligament. The tendon of the muscle at its origin expands into an aponeurosis which covers the upper part

of its anterior surface: from this aponeurosis muscular fibres arise, and converge to another aponeurosis, which covers the lower part of its posterior surface and contracts into the tendon of insertion. The tendon of the muscle at its insertion gives off certain fibrous expansions; one of these, of considerable size, passes upward and outward to be *inserted* into the back part of the outer condyle of the femur, forming part of the posterior ligament of the knee-joint; a second is continued downward to the fascia which covers the Popliteus muscle. The tendon also sends a few fibres to join the internal lateral ligament of the joint.

The tendons of the two preceding muscles, with that of the Gracilis, form the **inner hamstrings**.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Gluteus maximus, Semitendinosus, Biceps, and fascia lata; by its *deep surface*, with the origin of the Quadratus femoris, popliteal vessels, Adductor magnus, and inner head of the Gastrocnemius; by its *inner border*, with the Gracilis; by its *outer border*, with the great sciatic nerve, and its internal popliteal branch. There is a **bursa** between the Gastrocnemius and Semimembranosus and another **bursa** between the Semimembranosus and the inner condyle of the tibia. The first bursa usually communicates with the knee-joint. These two **bursæ** are in communication and in reality constitute a **double bursa** (*bursa m. semimembranosi*).

Nerves.—The muscles of this region are supplied by the first, second, and third sacral nerves through the great sciatic nerve.

Actions.—The hamstring muscles flex the leg upon the thigh. When the knee is semiflexed, the Biceps, in consequence of its oblique direction downward and outward, rotates the leg slightly outward; and the Semitendinosus, and to a slight extent the Semimembranosus, rotate the leg inward, assisting the Popliteus. Taking their fixed point from below, these muscles, especially the Semimembranosus, serve to support the pelvis upon the head of the femur and to draw the trunk directly backward, as in raising it from the stooping position or in feats of strength, when the body is thrown backward in the form of an arch. When the leg is extended on the thigh, they limit the amount of flexion of the trunk on the lower limbs.

Surgical Anatomy.—The hamstring tendons are occasionally *ruptured*. In disease of the knee-joint the hamstrings may *contract*, flexing the knee, drawing the tibia backward, and sometimes causing incomplete dislocation. The tendons of these muscles occasionally require *subcutaneous division* in some forms of *spurious ankylosis* of the knee-joint dependent upon permanent contraction and rigidity of the Flexor muscles, or from stiffening of the ligamentous and other tissues surrounding the joint, the result of disease. Division of a tendon is effected by putting the tendon upon the stretch, and inserting a narrow sharp-pointed knife between it and the skin: the cutting edge being then turned toward the tendon, it should be divided, taking great care that the wound in the skin is not at the same time enlarged. The relation of the external popliteal nerve to the tendon of the Biceps must always be borne in mind in dividing this tendon.

III. MUSCLES AND FASCIÆ OF THE LEG.

These may be divided into three groups: those on the **anterior**, those on the **posterior**, and those on the **outer side of the leg**.

5. The Anterior Tibio-fibular Region (Fig. 350).

Tibialis anticus.	Extensor longus digitorum.
Extensor proprius hallucis.[1]	Peroneus tertius.

[1] There is no such word as "Hallux, -cis." It is the result of some ignorant blunder, copied until it has become established by usage; it has been thought better, therefore, to retain it. According to Lewis and Short, the word is ALLEX, masculine; genitive, ALLICIS, the great toe, and the correct rendering would be Extensor proprius allicis. It is a rare word, and is sometimes spelt, but not so correctly, "Hallex." It is used by Plautus, in the "Pœnulus," V., v. 31, of a little man, as we might say "a hop-o'-my-thumb." "Tunc hic amator audes esse, *allex* viri" (To think of you daring to make up to her, you hop-o'-my-thumb!). The word "alex," sometimes spelt "allex," a fish sauce, is probably a different word altogether. It is used by Horace and Pliny. —ED. of 15th English edition.

Dissection (Fig. 341).—The knee should be bent, a block placed beneath it, and the foot kept in an extended position; then make an incision through the integument in the middle line of the leg to the ankle, and continue it along the dorsum of the foot to the toes. Make a second incision transversely across the ankle, and a third in the same direction across the bases of the toes; remove the flaps of integument included between these incisions in order to examine the deep fascia of the leg.

The **Deep Fascia of the Leg** (*fascia cruris*) forms a complete investment to the muscles, but is not continuous over the subcutaneous surfaces of the bones. It is continuous above with the fascia lata, receiving an expansion from the tendon of the Biceps on the outer side, and from the tendons of the Sartorius, Gracilis, and Semitendinosus on the inner side; in front it blends with the periosteum covering the subcutaneous surface of the tibia, and with that covering the head and external malleolus of the fibula; below it is continuous with the annular ligaments of the ankle. It is thick and dense in the upper and anterior part of the leg, and gives attachment, by its deep surface, to the Tibialis anticus and Extensor longus digitorum muscles, but is thinner behind, where it covers the Gastrocnemius and Soleus muscles. Over the popliteal space it is much strengthened by transverse fibres which stretch across from the inner to the outer hamstring muscles, and it is here perforated by the external saphenous vein. Its deep surface gives off, on the outer side of the leg, two strong intermuscular septa which enclose the Peronei muscles, and separate them from the muscles of the anterior and posterior tibial regions. It also gives off several smaller and more slender processes which enclose the individual muscles in each region; at the same time a broad transverse intermuscular septum, called the **deep transverse fascia of the leg**, intervenes between the superficial and deep muscles in the posterior tibio-fibular region.

Remove the fascia by dividing it in the same direction as the integument, excepting opposite the ankle, where it should be left entire. Commence the removal of the fascia from below, opposite the tendons, and detach it in the line of direction of the muscular fibres.

The **Tibialis Anticus** (*m. tibialis anterior*) is situated on the outer side of the tibia; it is thick and fleshy at its upper part, tendinous below. It *arises* from the outer tuberosity and upper two-thirds of the external surface of the shaft of the tibia; from the adjoining part of the interosseous membrane; from the deep surface of the fascia; and from the intermuscular septum between it and the Extensor longus digitorum: the fibres pass vertically downward, and terminate in a tendon which is apparent on the anterior surface of the muscle at the lower third of the leg. After passing through the innermost compartment of the anterior annular ligament, it is *inserted* into the inner and under surface of the internal cuneiform bone and base of the metatarsal bone of the great toe. There is usually a **bursa** (*bursa subtendinea m. tibialis anterioris*) between the tendon of the tibialis anticus and the internal cuneiform bone.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the fascia and with the annular ligament; by its *posterior surface*, with the interosseous membrane, tibia, ankle-joint, and inner side of the tarsus: this surface also overlaps the anterior tibial vessels and nerve in the upper part of the leg. By its *inner surface*, with the tibia; by its *outer surface*, with the Extensor longus digitorum and Extensor proprius hallucis, and the anterior tibial vessels and nerve.

The **Extensor Proprius Hallucis** (*m. extensor hallucis longus*) is a thin, elongated, and flattened muscle situated between the Tibialis anticus and Extensor longus digitorum. It *arises* from the anterior surface of the fibula for about the middle two-fourths of its extent, its origin being internal to that of the Extensor longus digitorum; it also arises from the interosseous membrane to a similar extent. The fibres pass downward, and terminate in a tendon which occupies

the anterior border of the muscle, passes through a distinct compartment in the lower portion of the annular ligament, crosses the anterior tibial vessels near the bend of the ankle, and is *inserted* into the base of the last phalanx of the great toe. Opposite the metatarso-phalangeal articulation the tendon gives off a thin prolongation on each side, which covers the surface of the joint. It usually sends an expansion from the inner side of the tendon, to be inserted into the base of the first phalanx.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the fascia and the anterior annular ligament; by its *posterior surface*, with the interosseous membrane, fibula, tibia, and ankle-joint; by its *outer side*, with the Extensor longus digitorum above, the dorsalis pedis vessels, anterior tibial nerve, and Extensor brevis digitorum below; by its *inner side*, with the Tibialis anticus and the anterior tibial vessels above. The muscle is external to the anterior tibial vessels in the upper part of the leg; but in the lower third its tendon crosses over them, so that it lies internal to them on the dorsum of the foot.

The **Extensor Longus Digitorum** (*m. extensor digitorum longus*) is an elongated, flattened, penniform muscle situated the most externally of all the muscles on the forepart of the leg. It *arises* from the outer tuberosity of the tibia; from the upper three-fourths of the anterior surface of the shaft of the fibula; from the interosseous membrane; from the deep surface of the fascia; and from the intermuscular septa between it and the Tibialis anticus on the inner and the Peronei on the outer side. The tendon enters a canal in the annular ligament with the Peroneus tertius, and divides into four slips, which run across the dorsum of the foot and are *inserted* into the second and third phalanges of the four lesser toes. The mode in which the tendons are inserted is the following: Each of the three inner tendons opposite the metatarso-phalangeal articulation is joined, on its outer side, by a tendon from the Extensor brevis digitorum. The outer tendon does not receive such a tendinous slip. They all receive a fibrous expansion from the Interossei and Lumbricales, and then spread out into a broad aponeurosis, which covers the dorsal surface of the first phalanx: this aponeurosis, at the articulation of the first with the second phalanx, divides into three slips—a middle one, which is inserted into the base of the second phalanx, and two lateral slips, which, after uniting on the dorsal surface of the second phalanx, are continued onward, to be inserted into the base of the third.

Relations.—By its *anterior surface*, with the fascia and the annular ligament; by its *posterior surface*,

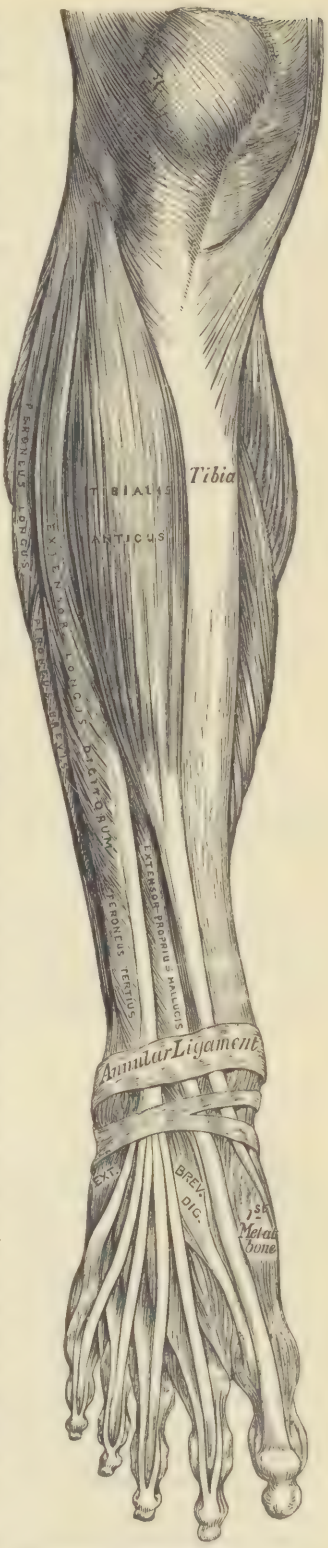


FIG. 350.—Muscles of the front of the leg.

with the fibula, interosseous membrane, ankle-joint, and Extensor brevis digitorum; by its *inner side*, with the Tibialis anticus, Extensor proprius hallucis, and anterior tibial vessels and nerve; by its *outer side*, with the Peroneus longus and brevis.

The **Peroneus Tertius** (*m. peronæus tertius*) is a part of the Extensor longus digitorum, and might be described as its fifth tendon. The fibres belonging to this tendon *arise* from the lower fourth of the anterior surface of the fibula, from the lower part of the interosseous membrane, and from an intermuscular septum between it and the Peroneus brevis. The tendon, after passing through the same canal in the annular ligament as the Extensor longus digitorum, is inserted into the dorsal surface of the base of the metatarsal bone of the little toe. This muscle is sometimes wanting.

Nerves.—These muscles are supplied by the fourth and fifth lumbar and first sacral nerves through the anterior tibial nerve.

Actions.—The Tibialis anticus and Peroneus tertius are the direct flexors of the foot at the ankle-joint; the former muscle, when acting in conjunction with the Tibialis posticus, raises the inner border of the foot (*i. e.*, inverts the foot); and the latter, acting with the Peroneus brevis and longus, draws the outer border of the foot upward and the sole outward (*i. e.*, everts the foot). The Extensor longus digitorum and Extensor proprius hallucis extend the phalanges of the toes, and, continuing their action, flex the foot upon the leg. Taking their fixed point from below, in the erect posture, all these muscles serve to fix the bones of the leg in the perpendicular position, and give increased strength to the ankle-joint.

6. The Posterior Tibio-fibular Region (Figs. 349, 352).

Dissection (Fig. 345).—Make a vertical incision along the middle line of the back of the leg, from the lower part of the popliteal space to the heel, connecting it below by a transverse incision extending between the two malleoli; the flaps of integument being removed, the fascia and muscles should be examined.

The muscles in this region of the leg are subdivided into two layers—**superficial** and **deep**. The superficial layer constitutes a powerful muscular mass, forming the calf of the leg. Their large size is one of the most characteristic features of the muscular apparatus in man, and bears a direct connection with his ordinary attitude and mode of progression.

The Superficial Layer.

Gastrocnemius. Soleus. Plantaris.

The **Gastrocnemius** is the most superficial muscle, and forms the greater part of the calf. It *arises* by two heads, which are connected to the condyles of the femur by two strong flat tendons. The **inner** and larger **head** (*caput mediale*) *arises* from a depression at the upper and back part of the inner condyle and from the adjacent part of the femur. There is a **bursa** (*bursa m. gastrocnemii medialis*) between the tendon of origin and the inner condyle. The **outer head** (*caput laterale*) *arises* from an impression on the outer side of the external condyle and from the posterior surface of the femur immediately above the condyle. There is a **bursa** (*bursa m. gastrocnemii lateralis*) between the tendon of origin and the outer condyle. Both heads, also, arise by a few tendinous and fleshy fibres from the ridges which are continued upward from the condyles to the linea aspera. Each tendon spreads out into an aponeurosis, which covers the posterior surface of that portion of the muscle to which it belongs; the muscular fibres of the inner head being thicker and extending lower than those of the outer. From the anterior surface of these tendinous expansions muscular fibres are given off.

The fibres in the median line, which correspond to the accessory portions of the muscle derived from the bifurcations of the linea aspera, unite at an angle upon a median tendinous raphé below: the remaining fibres converge to an aponeurosis which covers the anterior surface of the muscle, and this, gradually contracting, unites with the tendon of the Soleus, and forms with it the tendo Achillis.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the fascia of the leg, which separates it from the external saphenous vein and nerve; by its *deep surface*, with the posterior ligament of the knee-joint, the Popliteus, Soleus, Plantaris, popliteal vessels, and internal popliteal nerve. The tendon of the inner head corresponds with the back part of the inner condyle, from which it is separated by a synovial bursa, which, in some cases, communicates with the cavity of the knee-joint. The tendon of the outer head contains a sesamoid fibro-cartilage (rarely osseous) where it plays over the corresponding outer condyle; and one is occasionally found in the tendon of the inner head.

The Gastrocnemius should be divided across, just below its origin, and turned downward, in order to expose the next two muscles.

The **Soleus** is a broad flat muscle situated immediately beneath the Gastrocnemius. It has received its name from its resemblance in shape to a sole-fish. It *arises* by tendinous fibres from the back part of the head of the fibula and from the upper third of the posterior surface of its shaft; from the oblique line of the tibia and from the middle third of its internal border; some fibres also arise from a tendinous arch placed between the tibial and fibular origins of the muscle, beneath which the popliteal vessels and internal popliteal nerve pass. The fibres pass backward to an aponeurosis which covers the posterior surface of the muscle, and this, gradually becoming thicker and narrower, joins with the tendon of the Gastrocnemius, and forms with it the tendo Achillis.

The *triceps suræ* is the designation in the new nomenclature of the Gastrocnemius and Soleus.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Gastrocnemius and Plantaris; by its *deep surface*, with the Flexor longus digitorum, Flexor longus hallucis, Tibialis posticus, and posterior tibial vessels and nerve, from which it is separated by the transverse intermuscular septum or deep transverse fascia of the leg.

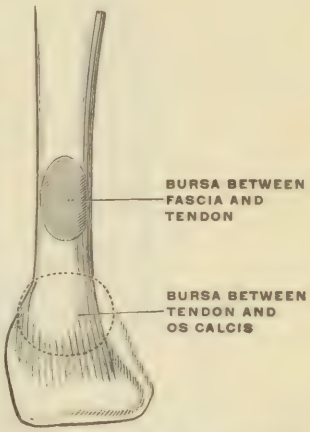


FIG. 351.—Bursæ of the tendo Achillis. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **Tendo Achillis** (*tendo calcaneus*), the common tendon of the Gastrocnemius and Soleus,[1] is the thickest and strongest tendon in the body. It is about six inches in length, and commences about the middle of the leg, but receives fleshy fibres on its anterior surface nearly to its lower end. Gradually becoming contracted below, it is inserted into the lower part of the posterior surface of the os calcis, a synovial **bursa**, the *retro-calcanean bursa* (*bursa tendinis calcanei* [*Achillis*]) (Fig. 351), being interposed between the tendon and the upper part of this surface. The tendon spreads out somewhat at its lower end, so that its narrowest part is usually about an inch and a half above its insertion. The tendon is covered by the fascia and the integument, a **bursa** (*bursa subcutanea calcanea*) (Fig. 351) being often interposed between the tendon and the fascia. The tendon

[1] These two muscles with a common tendon are by some anatomists classed together as one muscle, the *Triceps suræ*, the two heads of origin of the Gastrocnemius and the Soleus constituting the three heads of the Triceps, and the tendo Achillis the single tendon of insertion.—ED. of 15th English edition.

is separated from the deep muscles and vessels by a considerable interval filled up with areolar and adipose tissue. Along its outer side, but superficial to it, is the external saphenous vein.

FIG. 352.—Muscles of the back of the leg. Superficial layer.

FIG. 353.—Muscles of the back of the leg. Deep layer.

The **Plantaris** is an extremely diminutive muscle placed between the Gastrocnemius and Soleus, and remarkable for its long and delicate tendon. It *arises*

from the lower part of the outer prolongation of the linea aspera and from the posterior ligament of the knee-joint. It forms a small fusiform belly, about three or four inches in length, terminating in a long slender tendon which crosses obliquely between the two muscles of the calf, and, running along the inner border of the tendo Achillis, is *inserted* with it into the posterior part of the os calcis. This muscle is occasionally double, and is sometimes wanting. Occasionally its tendon is lost in the internal annular ligament or in the fascia of the leg.

Nerves.—The Gastrocnemius is supplied by the first and second sacral nerves, and the Plantaris by the fourth and fifth lumbar and first sacral nerves through the internal popliteal. The Soleus is supplied by the fifth lumbar and first and second sacral nerves through the internal popliteal and posterior tibial.

Actions.—The muscles of the calf are the chief extensors of the foot at the ankle-joint. They possess considerable power, and are constantly called into use in standing, walking, dancing, and leaping; hence the large size they usually present. In walking these muscles draw powerfully upon the os calcis, raising the heel, and with it the entire body, from the ground; the body being thus supported on the raised foot, the opposite limb can be carried forward. In standing, the Soleus, taking its fixed point from below, steadies the leg upon the foot, and prevents the body from falling forward, to which there is a constant tendency from the superincumbent weight. The Gastrocnemius, acting from below, serves to flex the femur upon the tibia, assisted by the Popliteus. The Plantaris is the rudiment of a large muscle which exists in some of the lower animals and is continued over the os calcis to be inserted into the plantar fascia. In man it is an accessory to the Gastrocnemius, extending the ankle if the foot is free, or bending the knee if the foot is fixed. Possibly, acting from below, by its attachment to the posterior ligament of the knee-joint, it may pull that ligament backward during flexion, and so protect it from being compressed between the two articular surfaces.

The Deep Layer (Fig. 353).

Popliteus.	Flexor longus digitorum.
Flexor longus hallucis.	Tibialis posticus.

Dissection.—Detach the Soleus from its attachment to the fibula and tibia, and turn it downward, when the deep layer of muscles is exposed, covered by the deep transverse fascia of the leg.

Deep Transverse Fascia.—The deep transverse fascia of the leg is a transversely placed, intermuscular septum, between the superficial and deep muscles in the posterior tibio-fibular region. On either side it is connected to the margins of the tibia and fibula. Above, where it covers the Popliteus, it is thick and dense, and receives an expansion from the tendon of the Semimembranosus; it is thinner in the middle of the leg, but below, where it covers the tendons passing behind the malleoli, it is thickened and continuous with the internal annular ligament.

This fascia should now be removed, commencing from below opposite the tendons, and detaching it from the muscles in the direction of their fibres.

The **Popliteus** (Fig. 349) is a thin, flat, triangular muscle, which forms part of the floor of the popliteal space. It *arises* by a strong tendon, about an inch in length, from a deep depression on the outer side of the external condyle of the femur, and from the posterior ligament of the knee-joint. A **bursa** (*bursa m. poplitei*) is placed between the condyle and the muscle. The muscle is *inserted* into the inner two-thirds of the triangular surface above the oblique line on the posterior surface of the shaft of the tibia, and into the tendinous expansion covering the surface of the muscle. The tendon of the muscle is covered by that of the Biceps and by the external lateral ligament of the knee-joint; it grooves

the posterior border of the external semilunar fibro-cartilage, and is invested by the synovial membrane of the knee-joint.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the fascia covering it, which separates it from the Gastrocnemius, Plantaris, popliteal vessels, and internal popliteal nerve; by its *deep surface*, with the knee-joint and back of the tibia.

The **Flexor Longus Hallucis** (*m. flexor hallucis longus*) is situated on the fibular side of the leg, and is the most superficial and largest of the three next muscles. It *arises* from the lower two-thirds of the posterior surface of the shaft of the fibula, with the exception of an inch at its lowest part; from the lower part of the interosseous membrane; from an intermuscular septum between it and the Peronei, externally; and from the fascia covering the Tibialis posticus internally. The fibres pass obliquely downward and backward, and terminate in a tendon which occupies nearly the whole length of the posterior surface of the muscle. This tendon occupies a groove on the posterior surface of the lower end of the tibia; it then lies in a second groove on the posterior surface of the astragalus, and finally in a third groove, beneath the sustentaculum tali of the os calcis, and passes into the sole of the foot, where it runs forward between the two heads of the Flexor brevis hallucis, and is *inserted* into the base of the last phalanx of the great toe (Fig. 355). The grooves in the astragalus and os calcis, which contain the tendon of the muscle, are converted by tendinous fibres into distinct canals lined by synovial membrane; and as the tendon crosses the sole of the foot, it is connected to the common flexor by a tendinous slip.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Soleus and tendo Achillis, from which it is separated by the deep transverse fascia; by its *deep surface*, with the fibula, Tibialis posticus, the peroneal vessels, the lower part of the interosseous membrane, and the ankle-joint; by its *outer border*, with the Peronei; by its *inner border*, with the Tibialis posticus and posterior tibial vessels and nerve. In the sole of the foot it lies above the Abductor hallucis and Flexor longus digitorum.

The **Flexor Longus Digitorum** (*m. flexor digitorum longus*) is situated on the tibial side of the leg. At its origin it is thin and pointed, but gradually increases in size as it descends. It *arises* from the posterior surface of the shaft of the tibia, immediately below the oblique line to within three inches of its extremity, internal to the tibial origin of the Tibialis posticus; some fibres also arise from the fascia covering the Tibialis posticus. The fibres terminate in a tendon which runs nearly the whole length of the posterior surface of the muscle. This tendon passes behind the internal malleolus in a groove, common to it and the Tibialis posticus, but separated from the latter by a fibrous septum, each tendon being contained in a special sheath lined by a separate synovial membrane. It then passes obliquely forward and outward, superficial to the internal lateral ligament, into the sole of the foot (Fig. 355), where, crossing superficially to the tendon of the Flexor longus hallucis,[1] to which it is connected by a strong tendinous slip, it becomes expanded, is joined by the Flexor accessorius, and finally divides into four tendons which are *inserted* into the bases of the last phalanges of the four lesser toes, each tendon passing through a fissure in the tendon of the Flexor brevis digitorum opposite the base of the first phalanges (Fig. 354).

Relations.—*In the leg:* by its *superficial surface*, with the posterior tibial vessels and nerve, and the deep transverse fascia, which separates it from the Soleus muscle; by its *deep surface*, with the Tibia and Tibialis posticus. *In the foot* it is covered by the Abductor hallucis and Flexor brevis digitorum, and crosses superficial to the Flexor longus hallucis.

The **Tibialis Posticus** (*m. tibialis posterior*) lies between the two preceding muscles, and is the most deeply seated of all the muscles in the leg. It com-

[1] That is, in the order of dissection of the sole of the foot.

mences above by two pointed processes, separated by an angular interval, through which the anterior tibial vessels pass forward to the front of the leg. It *arises* from the whole of the posterior surface of the interosseous membrane, excepting its lowest part, from the outer portion of the posterior surface of the shaft of the tibia, between the commencement of the oblique line above, and the junction of the middle and lower third of the shaft below; and from the upper two-thirds of the internal surface of the fibula; some fibres also arise from the deep transverse fascia and from the intermuscular septa, separating it from the adjacent muscles on each side. This muscle, in the lower fourth of the leg, passes in front of the Flexor longus digitorum, and terminates in a tendon which passes through a groove behind the inner malleolus with the tendon of that muscle, but enclosed in a separate sheath; it then passes through another sheath, over the internal lateral ligament into the foot, and then beneath the inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament, and is *inserted* into the tuberosity of the scaphoid and internal cuneiform bones (Fig. 356). The tendon of this muscle contains a sesamoid fibro-cartilage as it passes over the scaphoid bone, and gives off fibrous expansions, one of which passes backward to the sustentaculum tali of the os calcis, others outward to the middle and external cuneiform and cuboid, and some forward to the base of the second, third, and fourth metatarsal bones (Fig. 355).

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Soleus, from which it is separated by the deep transverse fascia, the Flexor longus digitorum, the posterior tibial vessels and nerve, and the peroneal vessels; by its *deep surface*, with the interosseous ligament, the tibia, fibula, and ankle-joint.

Nerves.—The Popliteus is supplied by the fourth and fifth lumbar and first sacral nerves, through the internal popliteal; the Flexor longus digitorum and Tibialis posticus by the fifth lumbar and first sacral; and the Flexor longus hallucis by the fifth lumbar and first and second sacral nerves through the posterior tibial.

Actions.—The Popliteus assists in flexing the leg upon the thigh; when the leg is flexed, it will rotate the tibia inward. It is especially called into action at the commencement of the act of bending the knee, inasmuch as it produces a slight inward rotation of the tibia, which is essential in the early stage of this movement. The Tibialis posticus is a direct extensor of the foot at the ankle-joint; acting in conjunction with the Tibialis anticus, it turns the sole of the foot inward (*i. e.*, inverts the foot), antagonizing the Peronei, which turn it outward (evert it). In the sole of the foot the tendon of the Tibialis posticus lies directly below the inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament, and is therefore an important factor in maintaining the arch of the foot. The Flexor longus digitorum and Flexor longus hallucis are the direct flexors of the phalanges, and, continuing their action, extend the foot upon the leg; they assist the Gastrocnemius and Soleus in extending the foot, as in the act of walking or in standing on tiptoe. In consequence of the oblique direction of the tendon of the long flexor the toes would be drawn inward were it not for the Flexor accessorius muscle, which is inserted into the outer side of its tendon and draws it to the middle line of the foot during its action. Taking their fixed point from the foot, these muscles serve to maintain the upright posture by steadying the tibia and fibula perpendicularly upon the ankle-joint. They also serve to raise these bones from the oblique position they assume in the stooping posture.

7. The Fibular Region (Fig. 353).

Peroneus longus. Peroneus brevis.

Dissection.—The muscles are readily exposed by removing the fascia covering their surface, from below upward, in the line of direction of their fibres.

The **Peroneus Longus** (*m. peronæus longus*) is situated at the upper part of the outer side of the leg, and is the more superficial of the two muscles. It *arises*

from the head and upper two-thirds of the outer surface of the shaft of the fibula, from the deep surface of the fascia, and from the intermuscular septa between it and the muscles on the front, and those on the back of the leg, occasionally also by a few fibres from the outer tuberosity of the tibia. Between its attachment to the head and to the shaft of the fibula there is a small interval of bone from which no muscular fibres arise; through this gap the external popliteal nerve passes beneath the muscle. The muscle terminates in a long tendon, which passes behind the outer malleolus, in a groove common to it and the tendon of the Peroneus brevis, behind which it lies, the groove being converted into a canal by a fibrous band, and the tendons being invested by a common synovial membrane; it is then reflected obliquely forward across the outer side of the os calcis, below its peroneal tubercle, being contained in a separate fibrous sheath, lined by a prolongation of the synovial membrane which lines the groove behind the malleolus. Having reached the outer side of the cuboid bone, it runs in a groove on the under surface of that bone, which is converted into a canal by the long calcaneocuboid ligament, and is lined by a synovial membrane: the tendon then crosses the sole of the foot obliquely, and is *inserted* into the outer side of the base of the metatarsal bone of the great toe and the internal cuneiform bone (Figs. 355 and 356). Occasionally it sends a slip to the base of the second metatarsal bone. The tendon changes its direction at two points: first, behind the external malleolus; secondly, on the outer side of the cuboid bone; in both of these situations the tendon is thickened, and in the latter a sesamoid fibro-cartilage, or sometimes a bone, is usually developed in its substance.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the fascia and integument; by its *deep surface*, with the fibula, external popliteal nerve, the Peroneus brevis, os calcis, and cuboid bone; by its *anterior border*, with an intermuscular septum, which intervenes between it and the Extensor longus digitorum; by its *posterior border*, with an intermuscular septum, which separates it from the Soleus above and the Flexor longus hallucis below.

The **Peroneus Brevis** (*m. peronæus brevis*) lies beneath the Peroneus longus, and is shorter and smaller than it. It *arises* from the lower two-thirds of the external surface of the shaft of the fibula, internal to the Peroneus longus, and from the intermuscular septa separating it from the adjacent muscles on the front and back part of the leg. The fibres pass vertically downward, and terminate in a tendon which runs in front of that of the preceding muscle through the same groove, behind the external malleolus, being contained in the same fibrous sheath and lubricated by the same synovial membrane. It then passes through a separate sheath on the outer side of the os calcis, above that for the tendon of the Peroneus longus, the two tendons being here separated by the peroneal tubercle, and is finally *inserted* into the tuberosity at the base of the metatarsal bone of the little toe, on its outer side.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Peroneus longus and the fascia of the leg and foot; by its *deep surface*, with the fibula and outer side of the os calcis.

Nerves.—The Peroneus longus and brevis are supplied by the fourth and fifth lumbar and first sacral nerves through the musculo-cutaneous branch of the external popliteal nerve.

Actions.—The Peroneus longus and brevis extend the foot upon the leg, in conjunction with the Tibialis posticus, antagonizing the Tibialis anticus and Peroneus tertius, which are flexors of the foot. The Peroneus longus also everts the sole of the foot; hence the extreme eversion occasionally observed in fracture of the lower end of the fibula, where that bone offers no resistance to the action of this muscle. From the oblique direction of the Peroneus longus tendon across the sole of the foot it is an important agent in the maintenance of the transverse

arch of the foot. Taking their fixed point below, the Peronei serve to steady the leg upon the foot. This is especially the case in standing upon one leg, when the tendency of the superincumbent weight is to throw the leg inward: the Peroneus longus overcomes this tendency by drawing on the outer side of the leg, and thus maintains the perpendicular direction of the limb.

Surgical Anatomy.—The student should now consider the position of the tendons of the various muscles of the leg, their relation with the ankle-joint and surrounding blood-vessels, and especially their action upon the foot, as their rigidity and contraction give rise to one or other of the kinds of deformity known as club-foot. The most simple and common deformity, and one that is rarely, if ever, congenital, is the *talipes equinus*, the heel being raised by rigidity and contraction of the Gastrocnemius muscle, and the patient walking upon the ball of the foot. In the *talipes varus* the foot is forcibly adducted and the inner side of the sole raised, sometimes to a right angle with the ground, by the action of the Tibialis anticus and posticus. In the *talipes valgus* the outer edge of the foot is raised by the Peronei muscles, and the patient walks on the inner ankle. In the *talipes calcaneus* the toes are raised by the Extensor muscles, the heel is depressed, and the patient walks upon it. Other varieties of deformity are met with, as the *talipes equino-varus*, *equino-valgus*, and *calcaneo-valgus*, whose names sufficiently indicate their nature. Of these, the talipes equino-varus is the most common congenital form: the heel is raised by the tendo Achillis, the inner border of the foot drawn upward by the Tibialis anticus, the anterior two-thirds twisted inward by the Tibialis posticus, and the arch increased by the contraction of the plantar fascia, so that the patient walks on the middle of the outer border of the foot. Each of these deformities may sometimes be successfully relieved by division of the opposing tendons and fascia; by this means the foot regains its proper position, and the tendons subsequently heal. The operation is easily performed by putting the contracted tendon upon the stretch, and dividing it by means of a narrow, sharp-pointed knife inserted beneath it. *Pes cavus* or hollow foot is accentuation of the longitudinal arch. *Pes planus* or *flat-foot* has been discussed elsewhere.

Rupture of a few of the fibres of the Gastrocnemius may take place. *Rupture of the Plantaris tendon* not uncommonly occurs, especially in men somewhat advanced in life, from some sudden exertion, and frequently occurs during the game of lawn tennis, and is hence known as *lawn-tennis leg*. The accident is accompanied by a sudden pain, and produces a sensation as if the individual had been struck a violent blow on the part. The tendo Achillis is also sometimes ruptured. It is stated that John Hunter ruptured his tendo Achillis whilst dancing at the age of forty. The *retro-calcaneal bursa* is interposed between the posterior surface of the os calcis and the tendo Achillis, just above the point of insertion of the tendon. If it inflames it produces disabling pain (*achillodynia*, or *Albert's disease*, *retro-calcaneal bursitis*). This bursa may become cartilaginous or osteophytes may form on the surface toward the os calcis.

IV. MUSCLES AND FASCIA OF THE FOOT.

The fibrous bands, or thickened portions of the fascia of the leg, which bind down the tendons in front of and behind the ankle in their passage to the foot should now be examined; they are termed the annular ligaments, and are three in number **anterior, internal,** and **external.**

The **Anterior Annular Ligament** (Fig. 350) consists of a **superior** or **transverse portion** (*ligamentum transversum cruris*) which binds down the Extensor tendons as they descend on the front of the tibia and fibula; and an **inferior** or **Y-shaped portion** (*ligamentum cruciatum cruris*), which retains them in connection with the tarsus, the two portions being connected by a thin intervening layer of fascia. The transverse portion is attached externally to the lower end of the fibula and internally to the tibia; above it is continuous with the fascia of the leg; it contains only one synovial sheath, for the tendon of the Tibialis anticus; the other tendons and the anterior tibial vessels and nerve passing beneath it, but without any distinct synovial sheath. The Y-shaped portion is placed in front of the ankle-joint, the stem of the Y, the **fundiform ligament of Retzius,** being attached externally to the upper surface of the os calcis, in front of the depression for the interosseous ligament; it is directed inward, as a double layer, one lamina passing in front, and the other behind, the tendons of the Peroneus tertius and Extensor longus digitorum. At the inner border of the latter tendon these two layers join together,

forming a sort of loop or sheath in which the tendons are enclosed, surrounded by a synovial membrane. From the inner extremity of this loop the two limbs of the Y diverge: one passes upward and inward, to be attached to the internal malleolus, passing over the Extensor proprius hallucis and the vessels and nerves, but enclosing the Tibialis anticus and its synovial sheath by a splitting of its fibres. The other limb extends downward and inward to be attached to the inner border of the plantar fascia, and passes over the tendons of the Extensor proprius hallucis and Tibialis anticus and also the vessels and nerves. These two tendons are contained in separate synovial sheaths situated beneath the ligament.

The **Internal Annular Ligament** (*ligamentum laciniatum*) is a strong fibrous band which extends from the inner malleolus above to the internal margin of the os calcis below, converting a series of grooves in this situation into canals for the passage of the tendons of the Flexor muscles and vessels into the sole of the foot. It is continuous by its upper border with the deep fascia of the leg, and by its lower border with the plantar fascia and the fibres of origin of the Abductor hallucis muscle. The four canals which it forms transmit, counting from before backward, first, the tendon of the Tibialis posticus; second, the tendon of the Flexor longus digitorum; third, the posterior tibial vessels and nerve, which run through a broad space beneath the ligament; lastly, in a canal formed partly by the astragalus, the tendon of the Flexor longus hallucis. The canals for the tendons are lined by a separate synovial membrane.

The **External Annular Ligament** is divided into two portions; **a superior portion** (*retinaculum mm. peronæorum superius*), which extends from the extremity of the outer malleolus to the outer surface of the os calcis: it binds down the tendons of the Peroneus longus and brevis muscles in their passage behind the external malleolus. The two tendons are enclosed in one synovial sac. An **inferior portion** (*retinaculum mm. peronæorum inferius*), which bridges the Peronei on the side of the os calcis and is attached to the bone above and below them.

Dissection of the Sole of the Foot.—The foot should be placed on a high block with the sole uppermost, and firmly secured in that position. Carry an incision round the heel and along the inner and outer borders of the foot to the great and little toes. This incision should divide the integument and thick layer of granular fat beneath until the fascia is visible; the skin and fat should then be removed from the fascia in a direction from behind forward, as seen in Fig. 345.

Plantar Fascia (*aponeurosis plantaris*).—The plantar fascia, the densest of all the fibrous membranes, is of great strength, and consists of pearly-white glistening fibres, disposed, for the most part, longitudinally: it is divided into a central and two lateral portions.

Central Portion.—The central portion, the thickest, is narrow behind and attached to the inner tubercle of the os calcis, posterior to the origin of the Flexor brevis digitorum, and, becoming broader and thinner in front, divides near the heads of the metatarsal bones into five processes, one for each of the toes. Each of these processes divides opposite the metatarso-phalangeal articulation into two strata, superficial and deep. The superficial stratum is inserted into the skin of the transverse sulcus which divides the toes from the sole. The deeper stratum divides into two slips which embrace the sides of the flexor tendons of the toes, and blend with the sheaths of the tendons, and laterally with the transverse metatarsal ligament, thus forming a series of arches through which the tendons of the short and long flexors pass to the toes. The intervals left between the five processes allow the digital vessels and nerves and the tendons of the Lumbricales muscles to become superficial. At the point of division of the fascia into processes and slips numerous transverse fibres are superadded, which serve to increase the strength of the fascia at this part by binding the processes

together and connecting them with the integument. The central portion of the plantar fascia is continuous with the lateral portions at each side, and sends upward into the foot, at their point of junction, two strong vertical intermuscular septa, broader in front than behind, which separate the middle from the external and internal plantar group of muscles; from these, again, thinner transverse septa are derived, which separate the various layers of muscles in this region. The upper surface of this fascia gives attachment behind to the Flexor brevis digitorum muscle.

Lateral Portions.—The lateral portions of the plantar fascia are thinner than the central piece, and cover the sides of the foot. The **outer portion** covers the under surface of the Abductor minimi digiti; it is thick behind, thin in front, and extends from the os calcis, forward, to the base of the fifth metatarsal bone, into the outer side of which it is attached; it is continuous internally with the middle portion of the plantar fascia, and externally with the dorsal fascia. The **inner portion** is very thin, and covers the Abductor hallucis muscle; it is attached behind to the internal annular ligament, and is continuous around the side of the foot with the dorsal fascia, and externally with the middle portion of the plantar fascia

Bursæ about the Ankle and Foot.—(1) A subcutaneous bursa on the sole of the foot, beneath the tuberosity of the os calcis. (2) A subcutaneous bursa over the tendo Achillis (*bursa subcutanea calcanea*). (3) The retrocalcaneal bursa, between the posterior surface of the os calcis and the insertion of the tendo Achillis (*bursa tendinis calcanei* [*Achillis*]). (4) A bursa between the internal cuneiform bone and the tendon of the Tibialis anticus (*bursa subtendinea m. tibialis anterioris*). (5) Bursæ between the heads of the metatarsal bones (*bursæ intermetatarsophalangeæ*). (6) A subcutaneous bursa over the internal malleolus (*bursa subcutanea malleoli medialis*). (7) Bursæ between the scaphoid and middle cuneiform bones on the one hand and the tendon of the Tibialis posticus on the other (*bursa subtendinea m. tibialis posterioris*). (8) Bursæ between the Lumbricales and the transverse ligaments (*bursæ mm. lumbricalium pedis*). (9) A bursa over the external malleolus (*bursa subcutanea malleoli lateralis*). (10) A bursa over the head of the first metatarsal bone. Various muscles have tendon-sheaths lined with synovial membrane (**vaginal sheaths**).

Surgical Anatomy.—The dense plantar fascia aids powerfully in maintaining the arch of the foot. When this fascia stretches or gives way *flat-foot* forms. In some forms of club-foot the plantar fascia is contracted. This contraction is usually a secondary change.

When inflammation causes tenderness and enlargement of the bursa over the metatarsophalangeal articulation of the great toe, the enlargement is called a *bunion*. Enlargement of the retro-calcaneal bursa is known as *Albert's disease*, or *achillodynia*.

8. The Dorsal Region (Fig. 350).

Extensor brevis digitorum.

Fascia (*fascia dorsalis pedis*).—The fascia on the dorsum of the foot is a thin membranous layer continuous above with the anterior margin of the annular ligament; it becomes gradually lost opposite the heads of the metatarsal bones, and on each side blends with the lateral portions of the plantar fascia; it forms a sheath for the tendons placed on the dorsum of the foot. On the removal of this fascia the muscles and tendons of the dorsal region of the foot are exposed.

The **Extensor Brevis Digitorum** (*m. extensor digitorum brevis*) (Fig. 350) is a broad thin muscle which *arises* from the forepart of the upper and outer surfaces of the os calcis, in front of the groove for the Peroneus brevis, from the external calcaneo-astragaloid ligament, and from the common limb of the Y-shaped portion of the anterior annular ligament. It passes obliquely

across the dorsum of the foot, and terminates in four tendons. The innermost, which is the largest, is *inserted* into the dorsal surface of the base of the first phalanx of the great toe, crossing the dorsalis pedis artery; the other three, into the outer sides of the long extensor tendons of the second, third, and fourth toes.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the fascia of the foot, the tendons of the Extensor longus digitorum and Peroneus tertius; by its *deep surface*, with the tarsal and metatarsal arteries and bones and the Dorsal interossei muscles.

Nerves.—It is supplied by the anterior tibial nerve.

Actions.—The Extensor brevis digitorum is an accessory to the long Extensor, extending the phalanges of the four inner toes, but acting only on the first phalanx of the great toe. The obliquity of its direction counteracts the oblique movement given to the toes by the long Extensor, so that, both muscles acting together, the toes are evenly extended.

9. The Plantar Region (Figs. 354, 355, 356, 357, 358).

The muscles in the plantar region of the foot may be divided into three groups, in a similar manner to those in the hand. Those of the internal plantar region are connected with the great toe, and correspond with those of the thumb; those of the external plantar region are connected with the little toe, and correspond with those of the little finger; and those of the middle plantar region are connected with the tendons intervening between the two former groups. But in order to facilitate the dissection of these muscles it will be found more convenient to divide them into four layers, as they present themselves, in the order in which they are successively exposed.

The First Layer.

Abductor hallucis. Flexor brevis digitorum.
Abductor minimi digiti.

Dissection.—Remove the fascia on the inner and outer sides of the foot, commencing in front over the tendons and proceeding backward. The central portion should be divided transversely in the middle of the foot, and the two flaps dissected forward and backward.

The **Abductor Hallucis** lies along the inner border of the foot. It *arises* from the inner tubercle on the under surface of the os calcis; from the internal annular ligament; from the plantar fascia; and from the intermuscular septum between it and the Flexor brevis digitorum. The fibres terminate in a tendon which is *inserted*, together with the innermost tendon of the Flexor brevis hallucis, into the inner side of the base of the first phalanx of the great toe.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the plantar fascia; by its *deep surface*, with the Flexor brevis hallucis, the Flexor accessorius, and the tendons of the Flexor longus digitorum and Flexor longus hallucis, the Tibialis anticus and posticus, the plantar vessels and nerves. Its *outer border* is in relation to the Flexor brevis digitorum.

The **Flexor Brevis Digitorum** (*m. flexor digitorum brevis*) lies in the middle of the sole of the foot, immediately beneath[1] the plantar fascia, with which it is firmly united. It *arises* by a narrow tendinous process, from the inner tubercle of the os calcis, from the central part of the plantar fascia, and from the intermuscular septa between it and the adjacent muscles. It passes forward, and divides into four tendons, one for each of the four outer toes. Opposite the bases of the first phalanges each tendon divides into two slips, to allow of the passage of the corresponding tendon of the Flexor longus digitorum:

[1] That is, in order of dissection of the sole of the foot.

the two portions of the tendon then unite and form a grooved channel for the reception of the accompanying long flexor tendon. Finally, they divide a second time, to be *inserted* into the sides of the second phalanges about their middle. The mode of division of the tendons of the Flexor brevis digitorum and their insertion into the phalanges is analogous to the division and insertion of the Flexor sublimis digitorum in the hand.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the plantar fascia; by its *deep surface*, with the Flexor accessorius, the Lumbricales, the tendons of the Flexor longus digitorum, and the external plantar vessels and nerve, from which it is separated by a thin layer of fascia. The *outer* and *inner borders* are separated from the adjacent muscles by means of vertical prolongations of the plantar fascia.

Fibrous Sheaths of the Flexor Tendons.—These are not so well marked as in the fingers. The flexor tendons of the toes as they run along the phalanges are retained against the bones by a fibrous sheath, forming osseo-aponeurotic canals. These sheaths are formed by strong fibrous bands which arch across the tendons and are attached on each side to the margins of the phalanges. Opposite the middle of the proximal and second phalanges the sheath is very strong, and the fibres pass transversely, but opposite the joints it is much thinner, and the fibres pass obliquely. Each sheath is lined by a synovial membrane which is reflected on the contained tendon.

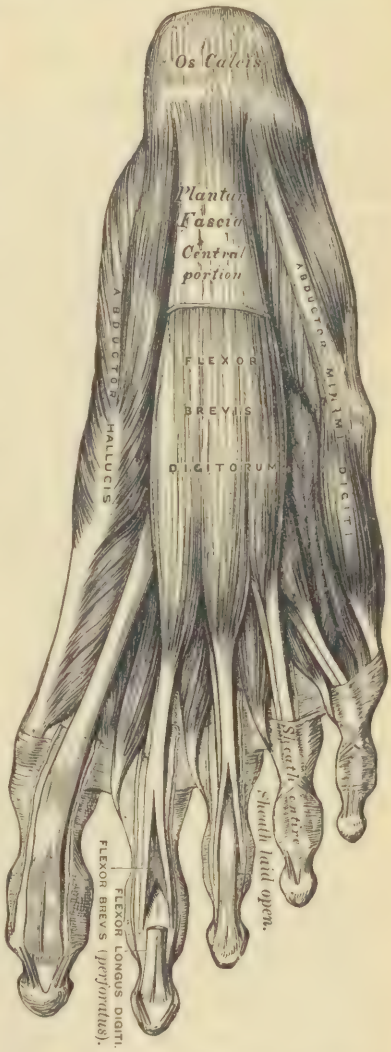


Fig. 354.—Muscles of the sole of the foot. First layer.

The **Abductor Minimi Digiti** (*m. abductor digiti quinti*) lies along the outer border of the foot. It arises, by a very broad origin, from the outer tubercle of the os calcis, from the under surface of the os calcis between the two tubercles, from the forepart of the inner tubercle, from the plantar fascia and the intermuscular septum, between it and the Flexor brevis digitorum. Its tendon, after gliding over a smooth facet on the under surface of the base of the fifth metatarsal bone, is *inserted* with the short Flexor of the little toe into the outer side of the base of the first phalanx of this toe.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the plantar fascia; by its *deep surface*, with the Flexor accessorius, the Flexor brevis minimi digiti, the long plantar ligament, and the tendon of the Peroneus longus. On its *inner side* are the external plantar vessels and nerve, and it is separated from the Flexor brevis digitorum by a vertical septum of fascia.

Dissection.—The muscles of the superficial layer should be divided at their origin by inserting the knife beneath each, and cutting obliquely backward, so as to detach them from the bone; they should then be drawn forward, in order to expose the second layer, but not cut away at their insertion. The two layers are separated by a thin membrane, the *deep plantar fascia*,

on the removal of which is seen the tendon of the Flexor longus digitorum, the Flexor accessorius, the tendon of the Flexor longus hallucis, and the Lumbricales. The long flexor tendons diverge from each other at an acute angle; the Flexor longus hallucis runs along the inner side of the foot, on a plane superior to that of the Flexor longus digitorum, the direction of which is obliquely outward.

The Second Layer.

Flexor accessorius. Lumbricales.

The **Flexor Accessorius** (*m. quadratus plantæ*) arises by two heads, which are separated from each other by the long plantar ligament: the **inner** or **larger head**, which is muscular, being attached to the inner concave surface of the os calcis below the groove which lodges the tendon of the Flexor longus digitorum; the **outer head**, flat and tendinous, to the outer surface of the os calcis, in front of its lesser tubercle, and to the long plantar ligament; the two portions join at an acute angle, and are inserted into the outer margin and upper and under surfaces of the tendon of the Flexor longus digitorum, forming a kind of groove in which the tendon is lodged.[1]

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the muscles of the superficial layer, from which it is separated by the external plantar vessels and nerves; by its *deep surface*, with the os calcis and long calcaneo-cuboid ligament.

The **Lumbricales** are four small muscles accessory to the tendons of the Flexor longus digitorum: they *arise* from the tendons of the long Flexor, as far back as their angle of division, each arising from two tendons, except the internal one. Each muscle terminates in a tendon, which passes forward on the inner side of the four lesser toes and is *inserted* into the expansion of the long Extensor tendon on the dorsum of the first phalanx of the corresponding toe.

Dissection.—The flexor tendons should be divided at the back part of the foot, and the Flexor accessorius at its origin, and drawn forward, in order to expose the third layer.

The Third Layer.

Flexor brevis hallucis. Flexor brevis minimi digiti.
Adductor obliquus hallucis. Adductor transversus hallucis.

The **Flexor Brevis Hallucis** (*m. flexor hallucis brevis*) arises, by a pointed tendinous process, from the inner part of the under surface of the cuboid bone, from the contiguous portion of the external cuneiform, and from the prolongation of the tendon of the Tibialis posticus, which is attached to that bone. The muscle divides, in front, into two portions, which are inserted into the inner and outer sides of the base of the first phalanx of the great toe, a sesamoid bone being developed in each tendon at its insertion. The **inner portion** of this muscle is blended with the Abductor hallucis previous to its insertion, the **outer portion** with the Adductor obliquus hallucis, and the tendon of the Flexor longus hallucis lies in a groove between them.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the Abductor hallucis and the tendon of the Flexor longus hallucis; by its *deep surface*, with the tendon of the Peroneus longus and metatarsal bone of the great toe; by its *inner border*, with the Abductor hallucis; by its *outer border*, with the Adductor obliquus hallucis.

The **Adductor Obliquus Hallucis** is a large, thick, fleshy mass passing obliquely across the foot and occupying the hollow space between the four inner metatarsal bones. It *arises* from the tarsal extremities of the second, third, and fourth metatarsal bones, and from the sheath of the tendon of the Peroneus longus,

[1] According to Turner, the fibres of the Flexor accessorius end in aponeurotic bands, which contribute slips to the second, third, and fourth digits.

and is *inserted*, together with the outer portion of the Flexor brevis hallucis, into the outer side of the base of the first phalanx of the great toe.

The small muscles of the great toe, the Abductor, Flexor brevis, Adductor obliquus, and Adductor transversus, like the similar muscles of the thumb, give off fibrous expansions, at their insertions, to blend with the long Extensor tendon.

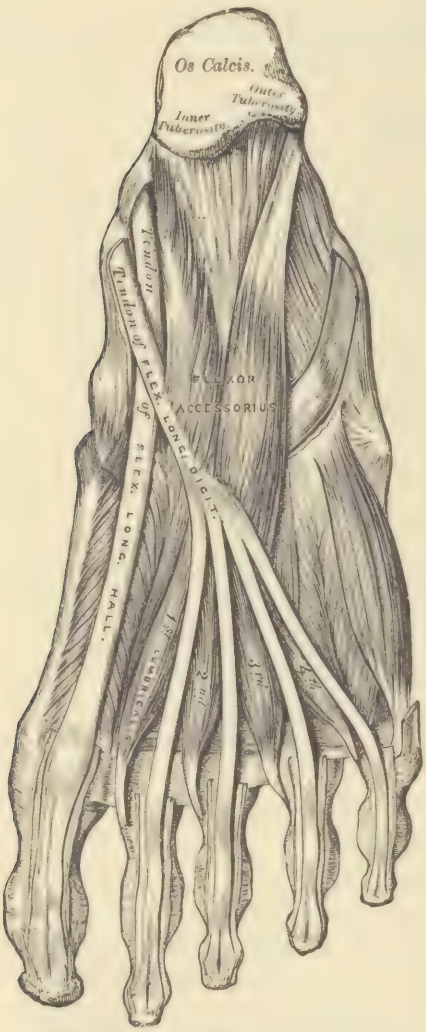


FIG. 355.—Muscles of the sole of the foot. Second layer.

FIG. 356.—Muscles of the sole of the foot. Third layer.

The **Flexor Brevis Minimi Digiti** (*m. flexor digiti quinti brevis*) lies on the metatarsal bone of the little toe, and much resembles one of the Interossei. It *arises* from the base of the metatarsal bone of the little toe, and from the sheath of the Peroneus longus; its tendon is *inserted* into the base of the first phalanx of the little toe on its outer side. Occasionally some of the deeper fibres of the muscle are inserted into the outer part of the distal half of the fifth metatarsal bone; these are described by some as a distinct muscle, the Opponens minimi digiti.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the plantar fascia and tendon of the Abductor minimi digiti; by its *deep surface*, with the fifth metatarsal bone.

The **Adductor Transversus Hallucis** (*m. transversus pedis*) is a narrow, flat, muscular fasciculus, stretched transversely across the heads of the metatarsal bones, between them and the flexor tendons. It *arises* from the inferior metatarso-phalangeal ligaments of the three outer toes, sometimes only from the third and fourth and from the transverse ligament of the metatarsus; and is inserted into the outer side of the first phalanx of the great toe, its fibres being blended with the tendon of insertion of the Adductor obliquus hallucis.

Relations.—By its *superficial surface*, with the tendons of the long and short Flexors and Lumbricales; by its *deep surface*, with the Interossei.

The Fourth Layer.

The Interossei.

The **Interossei Muscles** in the foot are similar to those in the hand, with this exception, that they are grouped around the middle line of the *second* toe, instead of the middle line of the *third* finger, as in the hand. They are seven in number, and consist of two groups, Dorsal and Plantar.

Fig. 357.—The Dorsal interossei. Left foot.

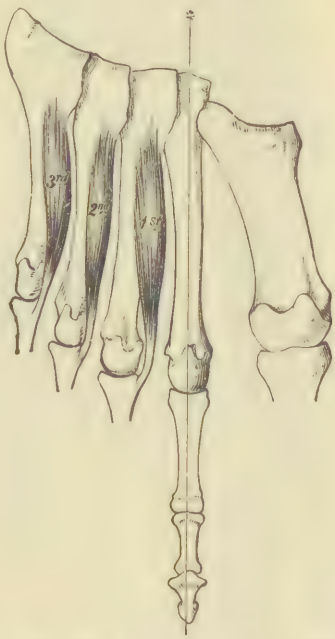


Fig. 358.—The Plantar interossei. Left foot.

The **Dorsal Interossei** (*m. interossei dorsales*), four in number, are situated between the metatarsal bones. They are bipenniform muscles, *arising* by two heads from the adjacent sides of the metatarsal bones, between which they are placed; their tendons are *inserted* into the bases of the first phalanges, and into the aponeurosis of the common extensor tendon. In the angular interval left between the heads of each muscle at its posterior extremity the perforating arteries pass to the dorsum of the foot, except in the First interosseous muscle, where the interval allows the passage of the communicating branch of the dorsalis pedis artery. The First dorsal interosseous muscle is inserted into the inner side of the second toe; the other three are inserted into the outer sides of the second, third, and fourth toes.

The **Plantar Interossei** (*m. interossei plantares*), three in number, lie beneath, rather than between, the metatarsal bones. They are single muscles, and are each connected with but one metatarsal bone. They *arise* from the base and

inner sides of the shaft of the third, fourth, and fifth metatarsal bones, and are *inserted* into the inner sides of the bases of the first phalanges of the same toes, and into the aponeurosis of the common extensor tendon.

Nerves.—The Flexor brevis digitorum, the Flexor brevis and Abductor hallucis, and the innermost Lumbrical[1] are supplied by the internal plantar nerve. All the other muscles in the sole of the foot by the external plantar. The first dorsal interosseous muscle frequently receives an extra filament from the internal branch of the anterior tibial nerve on the dorsum of the foot, and the second dorsal interosseous a twig from the external branch of the same nerve.

Actions.—All the muscles of the foot act upon the toes, and for purposes of description as regard their action may be grouped as Abductors, Adductors, Flexors, or Extensors. The *Abductors* are the Dorsal interossei, the Abductor hallucis, and the Abductor minimi digiti. The Dorsal interossei are abductors from an imaginary line passing through the axis of the second toe, so that the first muscle draws the second toe inward, toward the great toe; the second muscle draws the same toe outward; the third draws the third toe, and the fourth draws the fourth toe, in the same direction. Like the interossei in the hand, they also flex the proximal phalanges and extend the two terminal phalanges. The Abductor hallucis abducts the great toe from the others, and also flexes the proximal phalanx of this toe. And in the same way the action of the Abductor minimi digiti is twofold—as an abductor of this toe from the others, and also as a flexor of the proximal phalanx. The *Adductors* are the Plantar interossei, the Adductor obliquus hallucis, and the Adductor transversus hallucis. The Plantar interosseous muscles adduct the third, fourth, and fifth toes toward the imaginary line passing through the second toe, and by means of their insertion into the aponeurosis of the extensor tendon they, with the dorsal interossei, flex the proximal phalanges and extend the two terminal phalanges. The Adductor obliquus hallucis is chiefly concerned in adducting the great toe toward the second one, but also assists in flexing this toe. The Adductor transversus hallucis approximates all the toes, and thus increases the curve of the transverse arch of the metatarsus. The *Flexors* are the Flexor brevis digitorum, the Flexor accessorius, the Flexor brevis hallucis, the Flexor brevis minimi digiti, and the Lumbricales. The Flexor brevis digitorum flexes the second phalanges upon the first, and, continuing its action, may flex the first phalanges also and bring the toes together. The Flexor accessorius assists the Long flexor of the toes, and converts the oblique pull of the tendons of that muscle into a direct backward pull upon the toes. The Flexor brevis hallucis flexes and slightly adducts the first phalanx of the great toe. The Flexor brevis minimi digiti flexes the little toe and draws its metatarsal bone downward and inward. The Lumbricales, like the corresponding muscles in the hand, assist in flexing the proximal phalanx, and by their insertion into the long Extensor tendon aid in straightening the two terminal phalanges. The only muscle in the *Extensor* group is the Extensor brevis digitorum. It extends the first phalanx of the great toe, and assists the long Extensor in extending the next three toes, and at the same time gives to the toes an outward direction when they are extended.

SURFACE FORM OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

Of the muscles of the thigh, those of the iliac region have no influence on surface form, while those of the anterior femoral region, being to a great extent superficial, largely contribute to the surface form of this part of the body. The **Tensor fasciæ femoris** pro-

[1] Formerly the two inner Lumbricales were described as being supplied by the internal plantar nerve. Brooks (Journal of Anatomy, vol. xxi. p. 575) in ten dissections found that in nine of them only the inner Lumbrical obtained its nerve supply from this source. In the tenth instance the first and second Lumbricales were supplied by both external and internal plantar.

duces a broad elevation immediately below the anterior portion of the crest of the ilium and behind the anterior superior spinous process. From its lower border a longitudinal groove, corresponding to the ilio-tibial band, may be seen running down the outer side of the thigh to the outer side of the knee-joint. The **Sartorius** muscle, when it is brought into action by flexing the leg on the thigh and the thigh on the pelvis, and rotating the thigh outward, presents a well-marked surface form. At its upper part, where it constitutes the outer boundary of Scarpa's triangle, it forms a prominent oblique ridge, which becomes changed into a flattened plane below, and this gradually merges in a general fulness on the inner side of the knee-joint. When the Sartorius is not in action, a depression exists between the **Quadriceps extensor** and the Adductor muscles, running obliquely downward and inward from the apex of Scarpa's triangle to the inner side of the knee, which depression corresponds to this muscle. In the depressed angle formed by the divergence of the Sartorius and Tensor fasciæ femoris muscles, just below the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium, the **Rectus femoris** muscle appears, and, below this, determines to a great extent the convex form of the front of the thigh. In a well-developed subject the borders of the muscle, when in action, are clearly to be defined. The **Vastus externus** forms a long flattened plane on the outer side of the thigh, traversed by the longitudinal groove formed by the ilio-tibial band. The **Vastus internus,** on the inner side of the lower half of the thigh, gives rise to a considerable prominence, which increases toward the knee and terminates somewhat abruptly in this situation with a full, curved outline. The **Crureus** and **Subcrureus** are completely hidden, and do not directly influence surface form. The Adductor muscles, constituting the internal femoral group, are not to be individually distinguished from each other, with the exception of the upper tendon of the Adductor longus and the lower tendon of the Adductor magnus. The upper tendon of the **Adductor longus,** when the muscle is in action, stands out as a prominent ridge, which runs obliquely downward and outward from the neighborhood of the pubic spine, and forms the inner boundary of a flattened triangular space on the upper part of the front of the thigh, known as Scarpa's triangle. The lower tendon of the **Adductor magnus** can be distinctly felt as a short ridge extending down to the Adductor tubercle on the internal condyle, between the Sartorius and Vastus internus. The Adductor group of muscles fills in the triangular space at the upper part of the thigh, formed between the oblique femur and the pelvic wall, and to them is due the contour of the inner border of the thigh, the **Gracilis** largely contributing to the smoothness of the outline. These muscles are not marked off on the surface from those of the posterior femoral region by any intermuscular marking; but on the outer side of the thigh these latter muscles are defined from the Vastus externus by a distinct marking, corresponding to the external intermuscular septum. The **Gluteus maximus** and a part of the **Gluteus medius** are the only muscles of the buttock which influence surface form. The other part of the Gluteus medius, the Gluteus minimus, and the External rotators are completely hidden. The Gluteus maximus forms the full rounded outline of the buttock; it is more prominent behind, compressed in front, and terminates at its tendinous insertion in a depression immediately behind the great trochanter. Its lower border does not correspond to the gluteal fold, but is much more oblique, being marked by a line drawn from the side of the coccyx to the junction of the upper with the lower two-thirds of the thigh on the outer side. From beneath the lower margin of this muscle the Hamstring muscles appear, at first narrow and not well marked, but as they descend becoming more prominent and widened out, and eventually dividing into two well-marked ridges, which constitute the upper boundaries of the popliteal space, and are formed by the tendons of the inner and outer hamstring muscles respectively. In the upper part of the thigh these muscles are not to be individually distinguished from each other, but lower down the separation between the Semitendinosus and Semimembranosus is denoted by a slight intermuscular marking. The external hamstring tendon formed by the **Biceps** is seen as a thick cord running down to the head of the fibula. The inner hamstring tendons comprise the Semitendinosus, the Semimembranosus, and the Gracilis. The **Semitendinosus** is the most internal of these, and can be felt, in certain positions of the limb, as a sharp cord; the **Semimembranosus** is thick, and the Gracilis is situated a little farther forward than the other two. All the muscles on the front of the leg appear to a certain extent somewhere on the surface, but the form of this region is mainly dependent upon the Tibialis anticus and the Extensor longus digitorum. The **Tibialis anticus** is well marked, and presents a fusiform enlargement at the outer side of the tibia, and projects beyond the crest of the shin-bone. From the muscular mass its tendons may be traced downward, standing out boldly, when the muscle is in action, on the front of the tibia and ankle-joint, and coursing down to its insertion along the inner border of the foot. A well-marked groove separates this muscle externally from the **Extensor longus digitorum,** which fills up the rest of the space between the upper part of the shaft of the tibia and fibula. It does not present so bold an outline as the Tibialis anticus, and its tendon below, diverging from the tendon of the Tibialis anticus, forms with the latter a sort of plane, in which may be seen the tendon of the Extensor proprius hallucis. A groove on the outer side of the extensor longus digitorum, seen most plainly when the muscle is in action, separates the tendon from a slight eminence corresponding to the **Peroneus tertius.** The fleshy fibres of the **Peroneus longus** are strongly marked at the upper part of the outer

side of the leg, especially when the muscle is in action. It forms a bold swelling, separated by furrows from the Extensor longus digitorum in front and the Soleus behind. Below, the fleshy fibres terminate abruptly in a tendon which overlaps the more flattened form of the **Peroneus brevis.** At the external malleolus the tendon of the Peroneus brevis is more marked than that of the Peroneus longus. On the dorsum of the foot the tendons of the Extensor muscles, emerging from beneath the anterior annular ligament, spread out and can be distinguished in the following order: The most internal and largest is the **Tibialis anticus,** then the **Extensor proprius hallucis;** next comes the **Extensor longus digitorum,** dividing into four tendons to the four outer toes; and lastly, most externally, is the **Peroneus tertius.** The flattened form of the dorsum of the foot is relieved by the rounded outline of the fleshy belly of the **Extensor brevis digitorum,** which forms a soft fulness on the outer side of the tarsus in front of the external malleolus, and by the Dorsal interossei, which bulge between the metatarsal bones. At the back of the knee is the popliteal space, bounded above by the tendons of the hamstring muscle; below, by the two heads of the Gastrocnemius. Below this space is the prominent fleshy mass of the calf of the leg, produced by the **Gastrocnemius** and **Soleus.** When these muscles are in action, as in standing on tiptoe, the borders of the Gastrocnemius are well defined, presenting two curved lines, which converge to the tendon of insertion. Of these borders, the inner is more prominent than the outer. The fleshy mass of the calf terminates somewhat abruptly below in the tendo Achillis, which stands out prominently on the lower part of the back of the leg. It presents a somewhat tapering form in the upper three-fourths of its extent, but widens out slightly below. When the muscles of the calf are in action, the lateral portions of the **Soleus** may be seen, forming curved eminences, of which the outer is the longer, on either side of the Gastrocnemius. Behind the inner border of the lower part of the shaft of the tibia a well-marked ridge, produced by the tendon of the **Tibialis posticus,** is visible when this muscle is in a state of contraction. On the sole of the foot the superficial layer of muscles influences surface form; the **Abductor minimi digiti** most markedly. This muscle forms a narrow rounded elevation along the outer border of the foot, while the **Abductor hallucis** does the same, though to a less extent, on the inner side. The **Flexor brevis digitorum,** bound down by the plantar fascia, is not very apparent; it produces a flattened form, covered by the thickened skin of the sole, which is here thrown into numerous wrinkles.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The student should now consider the effects produced by the action of the various muscles in fractures of the bones of the lower extremity. The more common forms of fractures are selected for illustration and description.

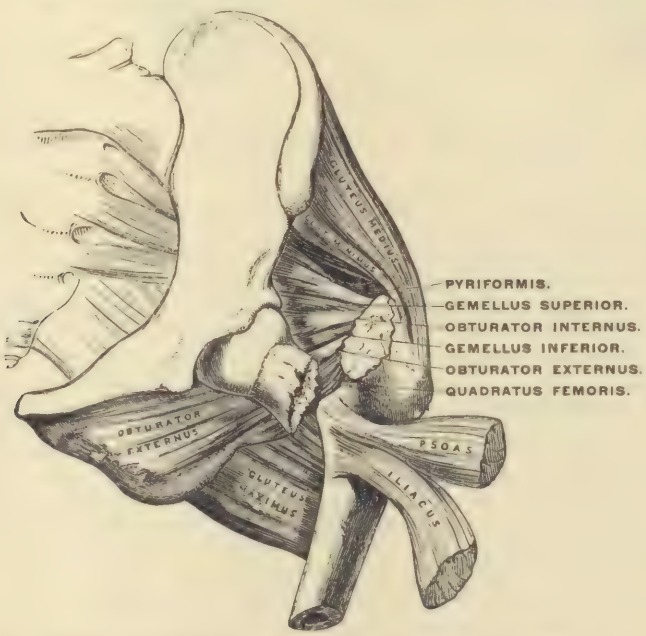


FIG. 359.—Fracture of the neck of the femur within the capsular ligament.

In *fracture of the neck of the femur internal to the capsular ligament* (Fig. 359) the characteristic marks are slight shortening of the limb and eversion of the foot, neither of which symp-

toms occurs, however, in some cases until some time after the injury. The eversion is caused by the weight of the limb rotating it outward. The shortening is produced by the action of the Glutei, and by the Rectus femoris in front and the Biceps, Semitendinosus, and Semimembranosus behind. The treatment is extension by means of adhesive plaster and weights and counter-extension by raising the foot of the bed, eversion being corrected by sand-bags. In some cases Thomas's splint is used.

In *fracture of the femur just below the trochanters* (Fig. 360) the upper fragment, the portion chiefly displaced, is tilted forward almost at right angles with the pelvis by the combined action of the Psoas and Iliacus, and, at the same time, everted and drawn outward by the External rotator and Glutei muscles, causing a marked prominence at the upper and outer side of the thigh, and much pain from the bruising and laceration of the muscles. The limb is shortened, in consequence of the lower fragment being drawn upward by the rectus in front, and the Biceps, Semimembranosus, and Semitendinosus behind, and is at the same time everted. This fracture may be reduced by direct relaxation of all the opposing muscles, to effect which the limb should be put up in such a manner that the thigh is flexed on the pelvis and the leg on the thigh, the extremity being placed upon a double inclined plane and extension being made in the axis of the partly flexed thigh by means of adhesive plaster and weights. In some cases it is necessary to incise and wire the fragments together.

Fig. 360.—Fracture of the femur below the trochanters.

Fig. 361.—Fracture of the femur above the condyles.

Fig. 362.—Fracture of the patella

Oblique fracture of the femur immediately above the condyles (Fig. 361) is a formidable injury, and attended with considerable displacement. On examination of the limb the lower fragment may be felt deep in the popliteal space, being drawn backward by the Gastrocnemius and Plantaris muscles, and upward by the Hamstring and Rectus muscles. The pointed end of the upper fragment is drawn inward by the Pectineus and Adductor muscles, and tilted forward by the Psoas and Iliacus, piercing the Rectus muscle and occasionally the integument. Relaxation of these muscles and direct approximation of the broken fragments are effected by placing the limb on a double inclined plane. The greatest care is requisite in keeping the pointed extremity of the upper fragment in proper position; otherwise, after union of the fracture, the power of extension of the limb is partially destroyed from the Rectus muscle being held down by the fractured end of the bone, and from the patella, when elevated, being drawn upward against the projecting fragment.

In *fracture of the patella* (Fig. 362) the fragments are separated by the effusion which takes place into the joint, and by the action of the Quadriceps extensor; the extent of separation of the two fragments depending upon the degree of laceration of the ligamentous structures around the bone. Some cases may be treated by a posterior straight splint, the fragments being pulled together by strips of adhesive plaster. In many cases it is advisable to incise, remove intervening pieces of fibrous tissue and wire the fragments together.

The *tibia is fractured* most commonly by indirect force at the junction of the middle third with the lower third of the shaft. Compound fractures are more common in the leg than in any other region of the body because the tibia is such a superficial bone and is so much exposed to injury. Most fractures from indirect force are oblique.

In *oblique fracture of the shaft of the tibia* (Fig. 363), if the fracture has taken place obliquely from above, downward and forward, the fragments ride over one another, the lower fragments being drawn backward and upward by the powerful action of the muscles of the calf; the pointed extremity of the upper fragment projects forward immediately beneath the integument, often protruding through it and rendering the fracture a compound one. If the direction of the fracture is the reverse of that shown in the figure, the pointed extremity of the lower fragment projects forward, riding upon the lower end of the upper one. By bending the knee,

FIG. 363.—Oblique fracture of the shaft of the tibia.

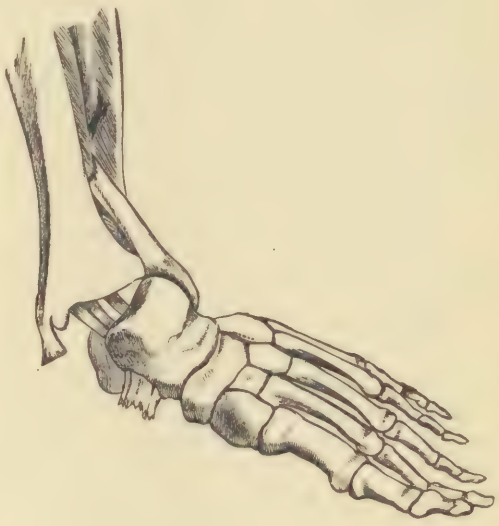


FIG. 364.—Fracture of the fibula with dislocation of the foot outward—"Pott's fracture."

which relaxes the opposing muscles, and making extension from the ankle and counter-extension at the knee, the fragments may be brought into apposition. It is often necessary, however, in a compound fracture, to remove a portion of the projecting bone with the saw before complete adaptation can be effected.

Fracture of the fibula with dislocation of the foot outward (Fig. 364), commonly known as *Pott's fracture*, is one of the most frequent injuries of the ankle-joint. The fibula is fractured about three inches above the ankle; in addition to this the internal malleolus is broken off, or the deltoid ligament torn through, and the end of the tibia displaced from the corresponding surface of the astragalus. The foot is markedly everted, and the sharp edge of the upper end of the fractured malleolus presses strongly against the skin; at the same time, the heel is drawn up by the muscles of the calf. This injury can generally be reduced by flexing the leg at right angles with the thigh, which relaxes all the opposing muscles, and by making extension from the ankle and counter-extension at the knee.

THE BLOOD-VASCULAR SYSTEM.

ANGIOLOGY is the branch of anatomy which treats of the blood-vessels. The blood-vascular system comprises the heart and blood-vessels with their contained fluid, the blood.

The Heart is the central organ of the entire system, and is a hollow muscle; by its contraction the blood is pumped to all parts of the body through a complicated series of tubes, termed **arteries**. The arteries undergo almost infinite ramification in their course throughout the body, and end in very minute vessels, called **arterioles**, which in their turn open into a close-meshed network of microscopic vessels, termed **capillaries**. After the blood has passed through the capillaries it enters into minute vessels called **venules** and from them it is collected into a series of larger vessels, called **veins**, by which it is returned to the heart. The passage of the blood through the heart and blood-vessels constitutes what is termed the **circulation of the blood**, of which the following is an outline.

The human heart is divided by a septum into two halves, **right** and **left**, each half being further constricted into two cavities, the upper of the two being termed the **auricle** and the lower the **ventricle**. The heart therefore consists of four chambers or cavities, two forming the right half, the right auricle and right ventricle; and two the left half, the left auricle and left ventricle. The right half of the heart contains venous or impure blood; the left, arterial or pure blood. From the cavity of the left ventricle the pure blood is carried into a large artery, the **aorta**, through the numerous branches of which it is distributed to all parts of the body, with the exception of the lungs. In its passage through the capillaries of the body the blood gives up to the tissues the materials necessary for their growth and nourishment, and at the same time receives from the tissues the waste products resulting from their metabolism, and in doing so becomes changed from arterial or pure blood into venous or impure blood, which is collected by the veins and through them returned to the right auricle of the heart. From this cavity the impure blood passes into the right ventricle, from which it is conveyed through the *pulmonary arteries* to the lungs. In the capillaries of the lungs it again becomes arterialized, and is then carried to the left auricle by the *pulmonary veins*. From this cavity it passes into that of the left ventricle, from which the cycle once more begins.

The course of the blood from the left ventricle through the body generally to the right side of the heart constitutes the **greater** or **systemic circulation**, while its passage from the right ventricle through the lungs to the left side of the heart is termed the **lesser** or **pulmonary circulation**.

It is necessary, however, to state that the blood which circulates through the spleen, pancreas, stomach, small intestine, and the greater part of the large intestine is not returned directly from these organs to the heart, but is collected into a large vein, termed the **portal vein**, by which it is carried to the liver. In the liver this vein divides, after the manner of an artery, and ultimately ends in capillary vessels, from which the rootlets of a series of veins, called the **hepatic veins**, arise; these carry the blood into the inferior vena cava, which conveys it to the right auricle.

From this it will be seen that the blood contained in the portal vein passes through two sets of capillary vessels: (1) those in the spleen, pancreas, stomach, etc., and (2) those in the liver.

Speaking generally, the arteries may be said to contain pure, and the veins impure, blood. This is true of the systemic, but not of the pulmonary, vessels, since it has been seen that the impure blood is conveyed from the heart to the lungs by the pulmonary arteries, and the pure blood returned from the lungs to the heart by the pulmonary veins. Arteries, therefore, must be defined as vessels which convey blood *from* the heart, and veins as vessels which return blood *to* the heart.

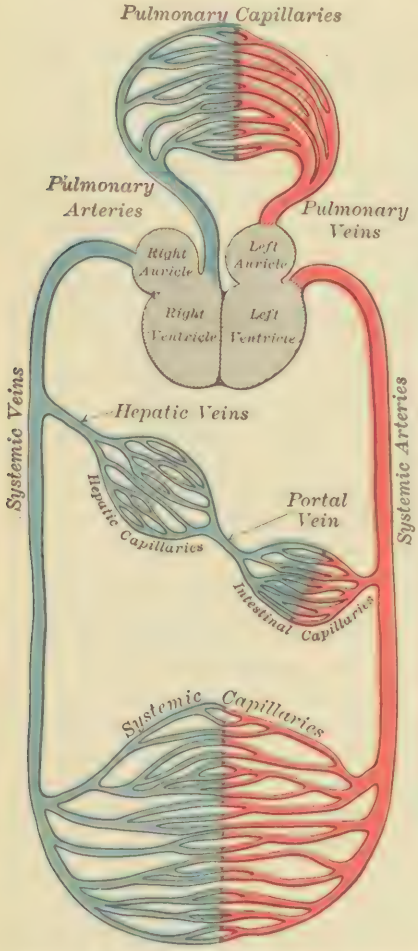


FIG. 365.—Diagram to show the course of the circulation of the blood.

The heart and lungs are contained within the cavity of the thorax, the walls of which afford them protection (Fig. 366). The heart lies between the two lungs, and is there enclosed within a sero-membranous bag, the **pericardium**, while each lung is invested by a serous membrane, the **pleura**. The skeleton of the thorax was described on page 155.

The Cavity of the Thorax (*cavum thoracis*).—The capacity of the cavity of the thorax does not correspond with its apparent size externally, because (1) the space enclosed by the lower ribs is occupied by some of the abdominal viscera; and (2) the cavity extends above the first rib into the neck. The size of the cavity of the thorax is constantly varying during life, with the movements of the ribs and diaphragm, and with the degree of distention of the abdominal viscera. From the collapsed state of the lungs, as seen when the thorax is opened, in the dead body, it would appear as if the viscera only partly filled the cavity of the thorax, but during life there is no vacant space, that which is seen after death being filled up during life by the expanded lungs.

The Upper Opening of the Thorax (*apertura thoracis superior*).—The parts which pass through the upper opening of the thorax are, from before backward in or near the middle line, the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the remains of the thymus gland, the trachea, œsophagus, thoracic duct, the inferior thyroid veins, and the Longus colli muscle of each side; at the sides, the innominate artery, the left common carotid, and left subclavian arteries, the internal mammary and superior intercostal arteries, the right and left innominate veins, the pneumogastric, cardiac, phrenic, and sympathetic nerves, the anterior branch of the first dorsal nerve, and the recurrent laryngeal nerve of the left side. The apex of each lung, covered by the pleura, also projects through this aperture, a little above the margin of the first rib.

The **Lower Opening of the Thorax** (*apertura thoracis inferior*) is wider transversely than from before backward. It slopes obliquely downward and backward, so that the cavity of the thorax is much deeper behind than in front. The

Diaphragm (see page 427) closes in the opening, forming the floor of the thorax. The floor is flatter at the centre than at the sides, and is higher on the right side than on the left, corresponding in the dead body to the upper border of the fifth

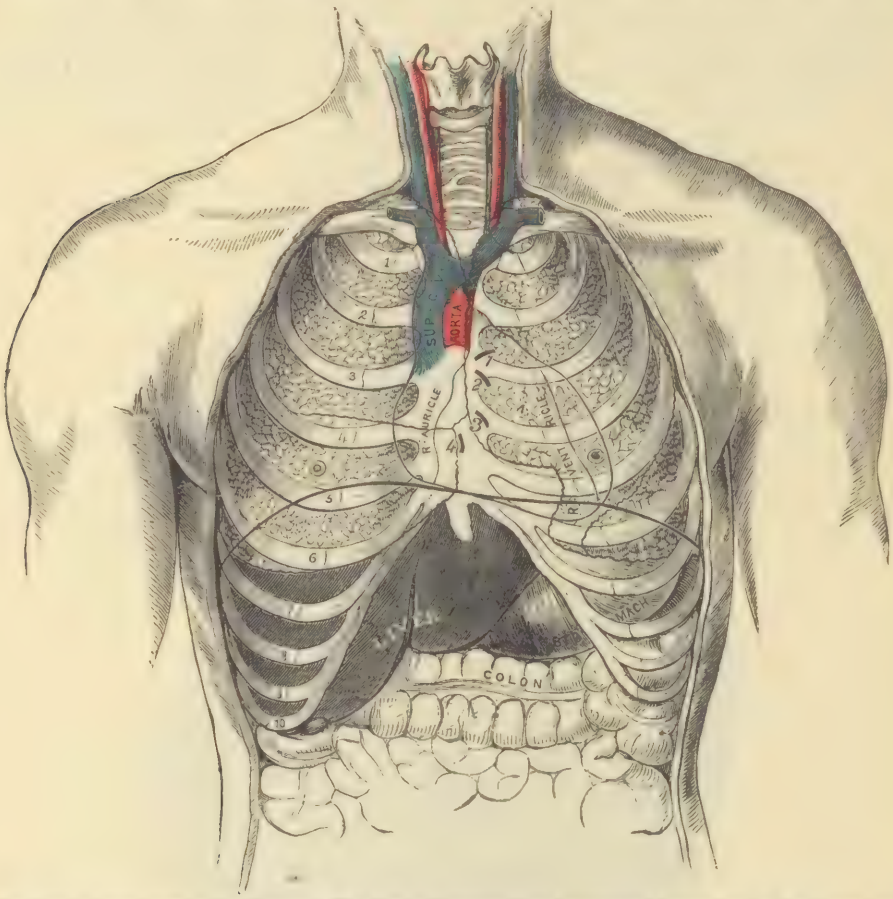


FIG. 366.—Front view of the thorax. The ribs and sternum are represented in relation to the lungs, heart, and other internal organs. 1. Pulmonary orifice. 2. Aortic orifice. 3. Left auriculo-ventricular orifice. 4. Right auriculo-ventricular orifice.

costal cartilage on the former, and to the corresponding part of the sixth costal cartilage on the latter. From the highest point on each side the floor slopes suddenly downward to the attachment of the Diaphragm to the ribs; this is more marked behind than in front, so that only a narrow space is left between it and the wall of the thorax.

THE PERICARDIUM.

The pericardium (Figs. 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, and 372) is a conical sero-membranous sac, placed in the middle mediastinum. In this sac the heart and the commencement of the great vessels are contained. It is placed behind the sternum and the cartilages of the third, fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh ribs of the left side, in the interval between the pleuræ.

Its **apex** is directed upward, and surrounds the great vessels about two inches above their origin from the base of the heart. Its **base** is attached to the central tendon and to the left part of the adjoining muscular structure of the Diaphragm. In **front** it is separated from the sternum by the remains of the thymus gland

above and a little loose areolar tissue below, and is covered by the margins of the lungs, especially the left. **Behind,** it rests upon the bronchi, the œsophagus, and the descending aorta. **Laterally,** it is covered by the pleuræ, and is in relation to the inner surface of the lungs; the phrenic nerve with its accompanying vessels descends between the pericardium and pleura on either side (Fig. 371).

Structure of the Pericardium.—The pericardium is a fibro-serous membrane, and consists, therefore, of two layers, an external fibrous and an internal serous.

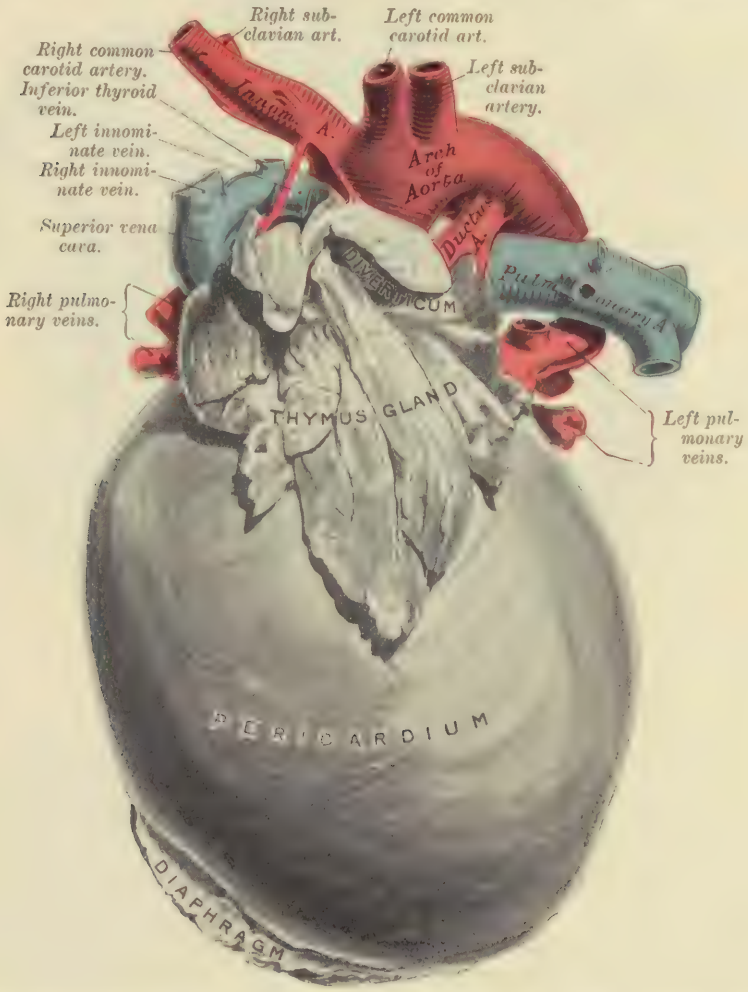


FIG. 367.—Pericardium from in front. The sac has been distended with plaster. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

The **Fibrous Layer** is a strong, dense, connective-tissue membrane. Above, it surrounds the great vessels arising from the base of the heart, on which it is continued in the form of tubular prolongations which are gradually lost upon their external coat, the strongest being that which encloses the aorta. The pericardium may be traced over these vessels, to become continuous with the deep layer of the cervical fascia. The prolongations to the cervical fascia constitute the **vertebro-pericardial ligaments** (Fig. 370). In front the pericardium is connected to the posterior surface of the sternum by two fibrous bands, the **superior** and **inferior sterno-pericardiac ligaments** or **ligaments of Luschka** *(ligamenta sternopericardiaca)* (Fig. 370). The superior sterno-pericardial ligament, called also the **sternocosto-**

pericardial ligament (Fig. 370), passes to the manubrium. The inferior sterno-pericardial ligament, called also the **xipho-pericardial ligament** (Fig. 370), passes to the ensiform cartilage. On each side of the ascending aorta the pericardium sends upward a diverticulum: the one on the left side, somewhat conical in shape, passes upward and outward, between the arch of the aorta and the pulmonary artery, as far as the ductus arteriosus, where it terminates in a cæcal extremity, which is attached by loose connective tissue to the obliterated duct (Fig. 367). The one on the right side passes upward and to the right, between the ascending aorta and

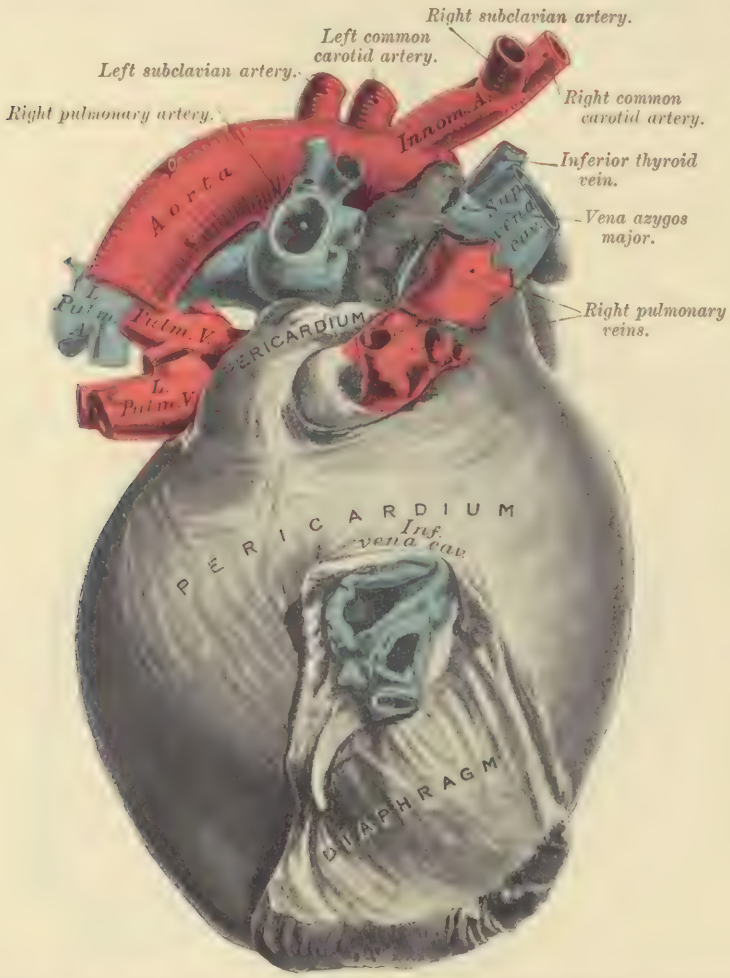


FIG. 368.—Pericardium from behind. (From the same preparation as the preceding figure.)

vena cava superior, and also terminates in a cæcal extremity. Below, the fibrous layer is attached to the central tendon of the Diaphragm, and on the left side to its muscular fibres. The pericardium is fixed to the Diaphragm by the **anterior phreno-pericardial ligament** and by the **lateral phreno-pericardial ligaments** (Fig. 370).

The vessels receiving fibrous prolongations from this membrane are the aorta the superior vena cava, the right and left pulmonary arteries, and the four pulmonary veins. The inferior vena cava enters the pericardium through the central tendon of the Diaphragm, and consequently it receives no covering from the fibrous layer (Fig. 371).

The **Serous Pericardium** invests the heart, and is then reflected on the inner surface of the fibrous pericardium. It consists, therefore, of a **visceral layer** (*epicardium*) and a **parietal layer**. The former invests the surface of the heart, and the commencement of the great vessels, to the extent of an inch and a half from their origin; from these it is reflected upon the inner surface of the fibrous layer. The serous membrane encloses the aorta and pulmonary artery in a single tube, so that a passage, termed the **great transverse sinus of the pericardium** (*sinus transversus pericardii*), exists between these vessels in front and the auricle behind. This sinus is closed above and below but often to the right and left. The membrane only partially covers the superior vena cava and the four pulmonary veins,

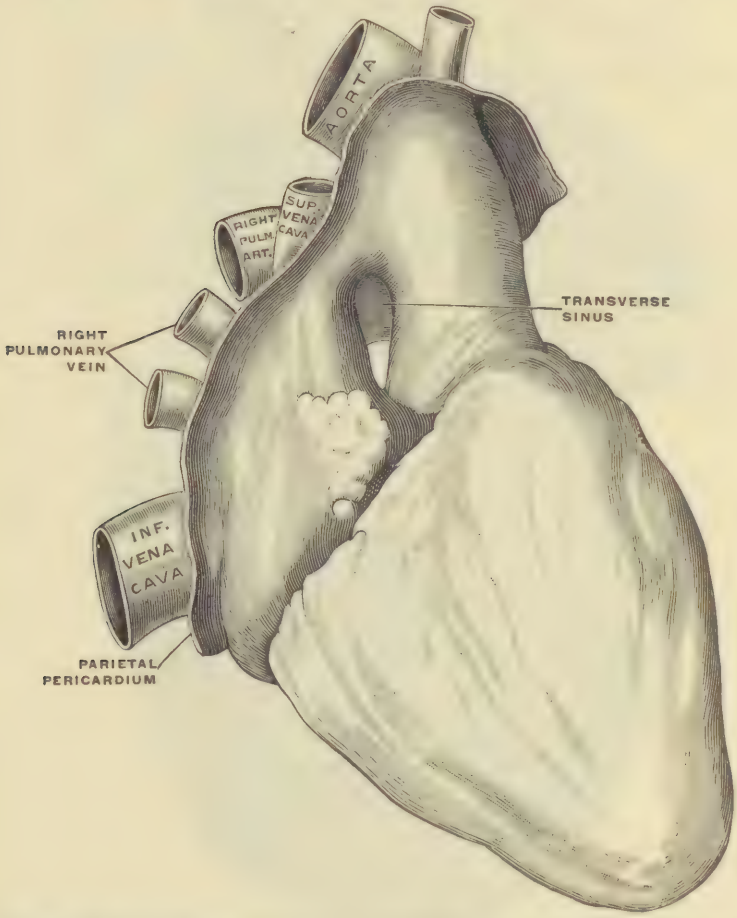


FIG. 369.—The line of reflection of the serous pericardium. (Modified from Poirier and Charpy.)

and scarcely covers the inferior cava, as this vessel enters the heart almost directly after it has passed through the Diaphragm. A deep blind recess formed by the serous pericardium is found behind the heart when that organ is raised up. This recess runs backward between the left auricle and the posterior portion of the fibrous pericardium, and forms a diverticulum between the heart and the œsophagus. This recess is called the **oblique sinus.** It passes upward between the inferior vena cava and the lower left pulmonary vein and terminates between the right and left pulmonary veins. The inner surface of the pericardium is covered with endothelium, which rests upon a mixture of fibrous and elastic tissue, which is smooth and glistening, and secretes a serous fluid (*liquor*

pericardii), which serves to facilitate the movements of the heart. In the serous layer of the pericardium are many blood-vessels, lymph vessels, and nerves.

Arteries of the Pericardium.—These are derived from the internal mammary and its musculo-phrenic branch, and from the descending thoracic aorta.

Nerves of the Pericardium.—These are branches from the vagus, the phrenic, and the sympathetic.

The Vestigial Fold of the Pericardium.—Between the left pulmonary artery and subjacent pulmonary vein and behind the left extremity of the transverse sinus is a triangular fold of the serous pericardium; it is known as the **vestigial fold of Marshall** (*ligamentum v. cavæ sinistræ*). It is formed by the duplicature of the serous layer over the remnant of the lower part of the **left superior vena cava**

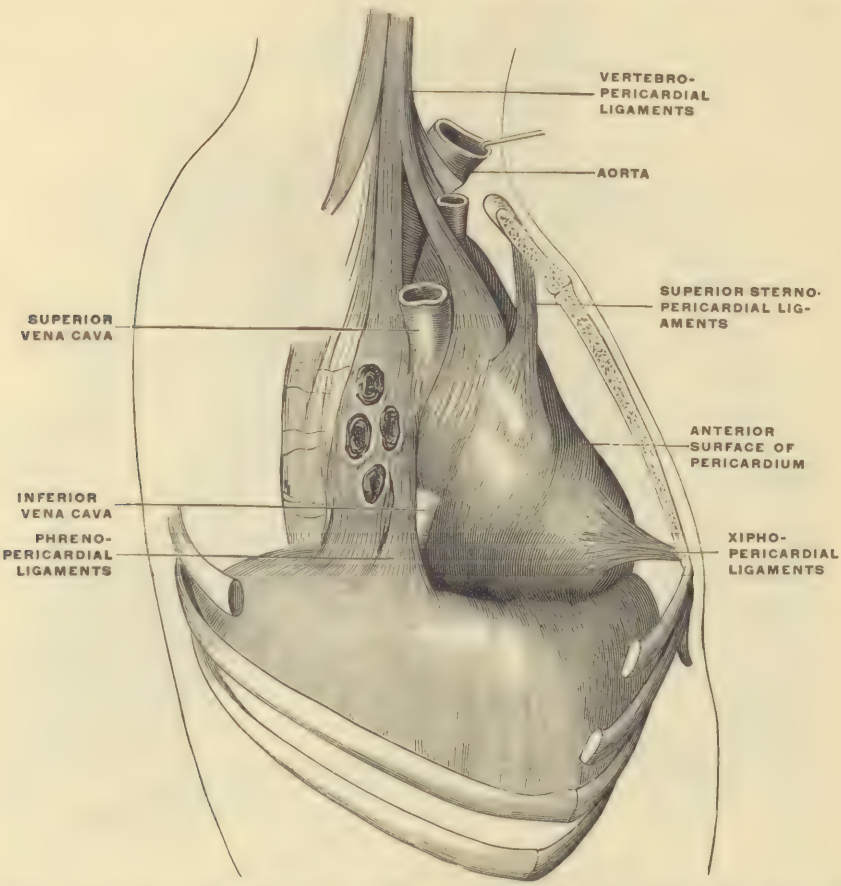


FIG. 370.—Ligaments of the pericardium. (Modified from Teutleben.) Right lateral view, showing the right vertebra—pericardial ligaments, the right phreno-pericardial, and the superior and inferior sterno-pericardial ligaments. (Poirier and Charpy.)

(*v. cava sinistra*) or the **duct of Cuvier**, which, after birth, becomes obliterated, and remains as a fibrous band stretching from the left superior intercostal vein to the left auricle, where it is continuous with a small vein, the **oblique vein of Marshall** (*v. obliqua atrii sinistri* [*Marshalli*]), which opens into the coronary sinus and is a remnant of the fœtal left superior vena cava.

Surgical Anatomy.—*Aspiration* of the pericardium (*paracentesis* of the pericardium) is occasionally though seldom performed. It is only to be thought of when pericardial effusion endangers life. The operation is very dangerous, because the effusion lifts the heart and pushes it forward,

and the needle is apt to wound the heart or even enter one of the cavities. There is also danger of wounding the internal mammary artery. The operation is never to be thought of in purulent pericarditis. The safest way to aspirate is to introduce the needle in the fifth interspace two inches to the left of the sternum and push it straight backward.

A better operation, even in a case of serous effusion, and one invariably selected in purulent pericarditis, is *incision* (*pericardotomy*). A portion of the cartilage of the fifth rib of the left side is excised. The pericardium is exposed and is punctured, to learn the nature of the contained fluid, and is then incised. By this method the surgeon avoids opening the pleural cavity, and can obtain free drainage if pus is found.

Porter maintains that by "reason of the uncertain and varying relations of the pleura, and also of the anterior position of the heart, whenever the pericardial sac is distended with fluid, aspiration of the pericardium is a much more dangerous procedure than open incision when done by skilled hands."

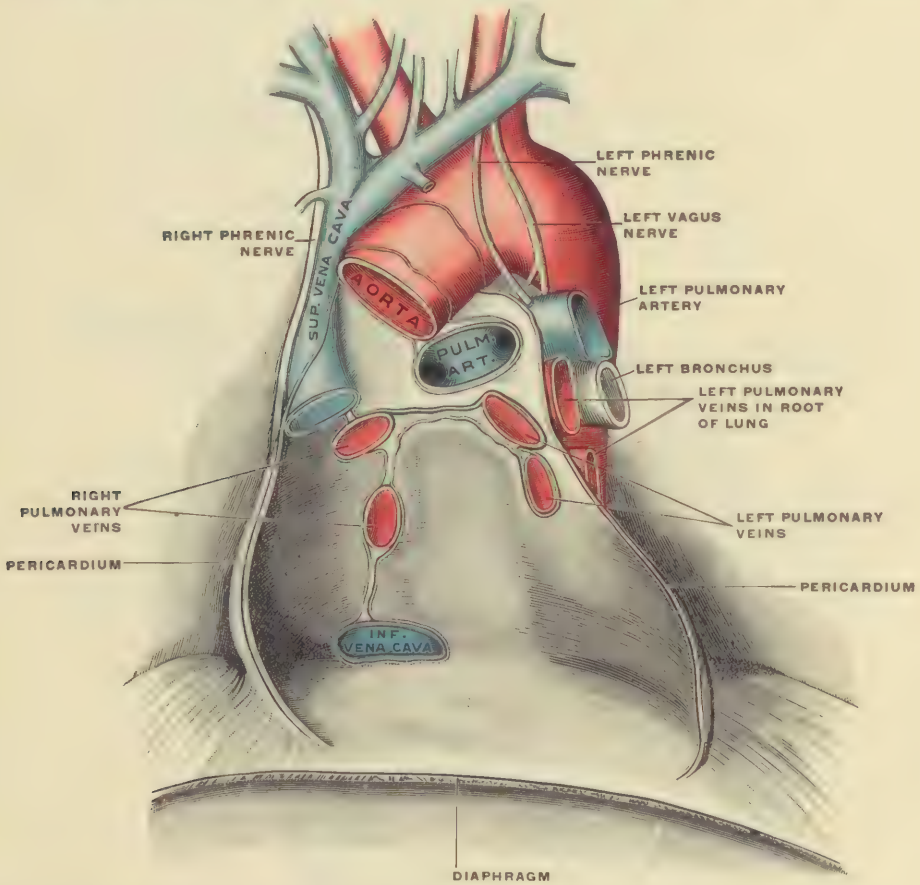


FIG. 371.—Posterior wall of the pericardium, after the removal of the heart, showing the relation of the serous pericardium to the great vessels. (From a formalin preparation by Prof. Birmingham.) (Cunningham.)

THE HEART (COR).

The heart is a hollow muscular organ of a conical form, placed between the lungs, and enclosed in the cavity of the pericardium.

Position (Fig. 372).—The heart is placed obliquely in the chest: the broad attached end, or base (*basis cordis*), is directed upward, backward, and to the right, and corresponds with the dorsal vertebræ, from the fifth to the eighth inclusive; the **apex** (*apex cordis*) is directed downward, forward, and to the left, and corresponds to the space between the cartilages of the fifth and sixth ribs, three-quarters of an

inch to the inner side, and an inch and a half below the left nipple, or about three and a half inches from the middle line of the sternum. The heart is placed behind the sternum, and projects farther into the left than into the right half of the cavity of the chest, extending from the median line about three inches in the former direction, and only one and a half in the latter; about one-third of the heart lies to the right and two-thirds to the left of the mesial plane. The **antero-superior surface** (*facies sternocostalis*) is round and convex, directed upward and forward, is formed chiefly by the right auricle and ventricle, together with a small part of the left ventricle. It lies behind the middle portion of the sternum and the costal cartilages of the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth ribs on both sides. On account of

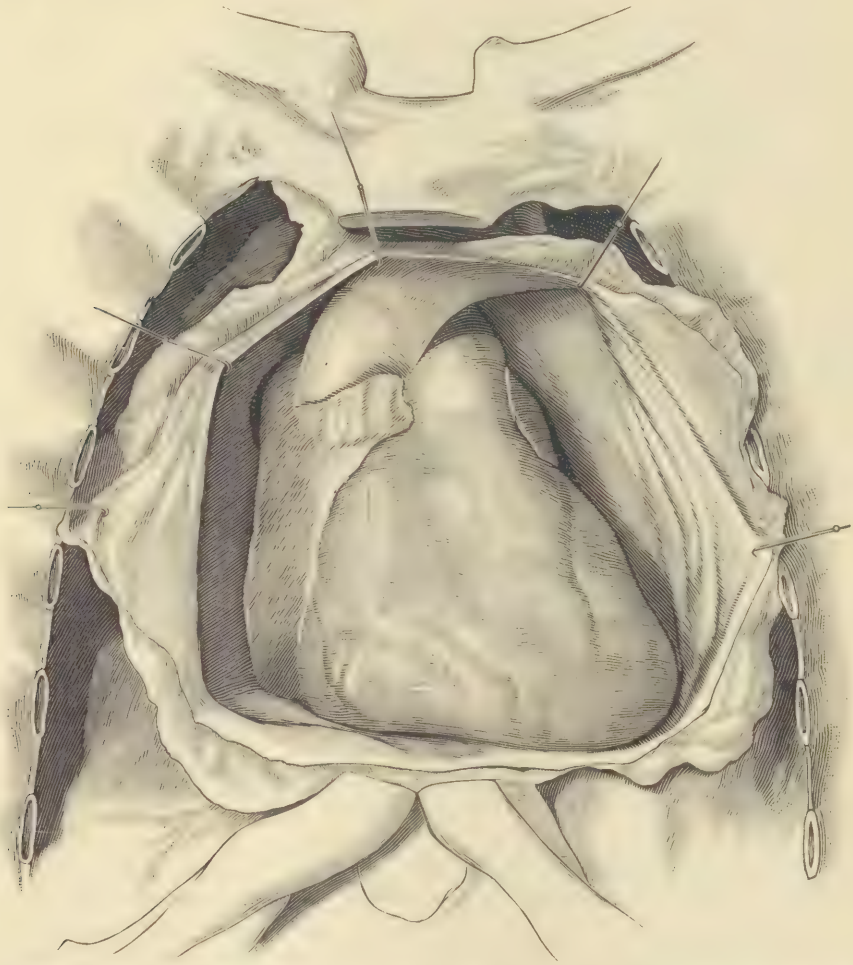


FIG. 372.—Position of the heart. The pericardium laid open. Adult male. (Poirier and Charpy.)

the heart's inclination to the left side, only a small part of it lies behind the cartilages of the right ribs. Lying in front of the heart, between it and the anterior chest-wall, is the thin anterior margin of the lungs, covered by the pleura. On the left side, however, owing to the notch in the anterior margin of the left lung (*incisura cardiaca*), there is a portion of the pericardium lying in contact with the Triangularis sterni muscle. This area is called the **area of greatest** or of **absolute cardiac dulness** or the **area of superficial cardiac dulness.** The **postero-inferior surface** of the heart (*facies diaphragmatica*), which looks downward rather

than backward, is flattened and rests upon the Diaphragm, and is formed chiefly by the left ventricle. The right or lower border is long, thin, and sharp; the left or upper border short, but thick and round.

Size and Weight.—The heart, in the adult, measures five inches in length, three inches and a half in breadth in the broadest part, and two inches and a half in thickness. The prevalent weight, in the male, varies from ten to twelve ounces; in the female, from eight to ten: its proportions to the body being as 1 to 169 in males; 1 to 149 in females. The heart continues increasing in weight, and also in length, breadth, and thickness, up to an advanced period of life: this increase is more marked in men than in women.

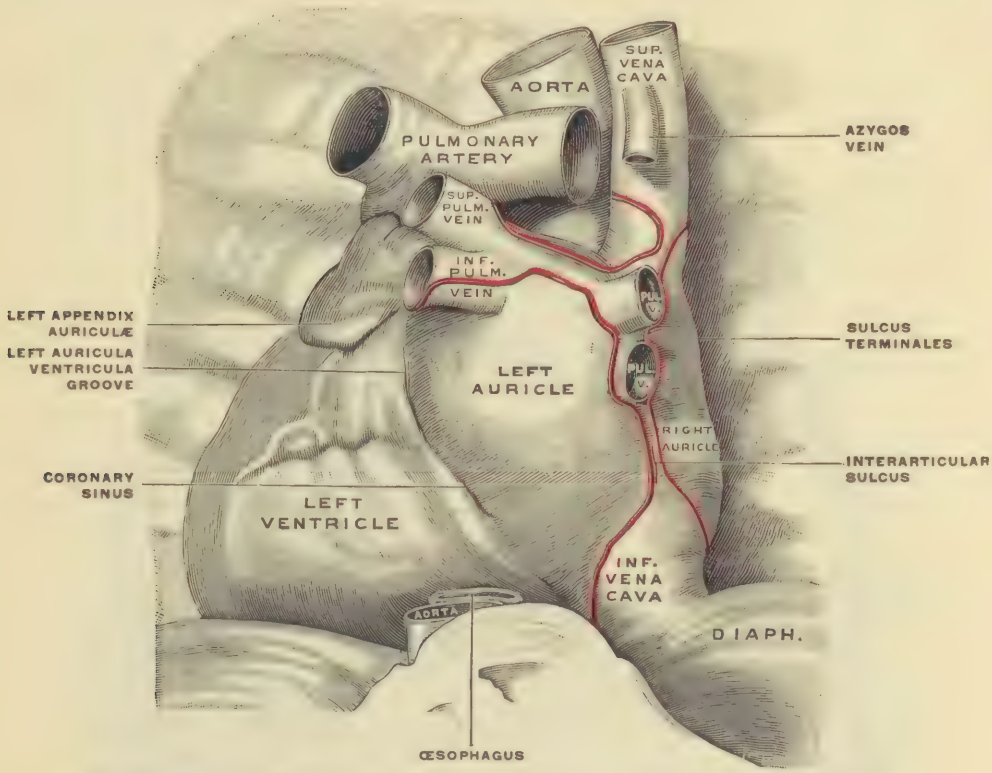


FIG. 373.—Base of the heart in place. The attachments of the pericardium are outlined in red. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Capacity of the Cavities of the Heart.—This matter is in dispute. Professor Cunningham believes that during life the capacity of the ventricles is nearly identical, each holding about four ounces of blood. Each auricle holds a little less than four ounces. Stewart maintains that at each heart beat each ventricle throws out only eighty-seven grams of blood. Morrant Baker[1] says that, "taking the mean of various estimates, it may be inferred that each ventricle is able to contain four to six ounces of blood."

Fat upon the Heart.—Normally there is a certain amount of fat upon the surface of the heart. This begins to appear in the early weeks of life and increases in amount as age advances. It is found upon the surface of the muscles and along the course of the vessels. Poirier is of the opinion that the cardiac fat on the anterior surface of the heart is arranged in three movable

[1] Kirke's Physiology, 10th ed., p. 156.

pads, which act as valves and fill vacant spaces about the heart created during the cardiac contractions.[1]

Component Parts.—The heart is subdivided by a muscular septum into two lateral halves, which are named respectively the **right** or **pulmonary heart** and the **left** or **systemic heart**; and a transverse constriction subdivides each half of the organ into two cavities, the upper cavity on each side being called the **auricle**, the lower the **ventricle**. The course of the blood through the heart cavities and blood-vessels has already been described (page 555).

The division of the heart into four cavities is indicated by grooves upon its surface. The groove separating the auricles from the ventricles is called the **auriculoventricular groove** (*sulcus coronarius*). It is deficient, in front, where it is crossed by the root of the pulmonary artery. It contains the trunks of the nutrient vessels of the heart. The auricular portion occupies the base of the heart, and is subdivided into two cavities by a median septum. The two ventricles are also separated into a right and left by two furrows, the **interventricular grooves** (*sulci longitudinales*), which are situated one on the anterior (*sulcus longitudinalis anterior*), the other on the posterior (*sulcus longitudinalis posterior*) surface; these extend from the base of the ventricular portion to near the apex of the organ; the former being situated nearer to the left border of the heart, and the latter to the right. It follows, therefore, that the right ventricle forms the greater portion of the anterior surface of the heart, and the left ventricle more of its posterior surface. The internal surface of the heart is lined with endocardium.

The **auricular portion** occupies the base of the heart and is subdivided into two cavities or **auricles** (*atria*) by a septum. As before stated, this portion of the heart corresponds to the middle segment of the dorsal spine. Its form is quadrilateral in shape, and has two processes extending upward from its two upper angles, called the **auricular appendices** (*appendices auriculæ*), between which are found the aorta and the pulmonary artery. The greater part of the base of the heart is formed by the left auricle. Its boundaries are, above, the pulmonary artery; below, the coronary sinus; on the left it is bounded by the left superior and inferior pulmonary veins, while on the right side it is limited by the *sulcus terminalis*. The latter corresponds to a ridge in the interior of the auricle, called the **crista terminalis**. Running vertically on this surface, just to the left of the openings of the two venæ cavæ, is the **interauricular furrow**, which exactly indicates the proportion of the base of the heart formed by each auricle.

Each of the cavities should now be separately examined.

The **Right Auricle**[2] (*atrium dextrum*) is a little larger than the left, its walls somewhat thinner, measuring about one line. It consists of two parts: a principal cavity, the **sinus venosus**, situated posteriorly, and an anterior, smaller portion, the **appendix auriculæ**. The right auricle is separated from the left auricle by the **interauricular septum** (*septum atriorum*). Part of this septum is muscular; part is composed of connective tissue.

The **sinus venosus** (*sinus venarum*) is the large quadrangular cavity, placed between the two venæ cavæ; its walls are extremely thin; it is connected below with the right ventricle, and internally with the left auricle, being free in the rest of its extent. It is derived from a portion of the **sinus reuniens** of the fœtal heart.

The **right auricular appendix** (*auricula dextra*), so-called from its fancied resemblance to a dog's ear, is a small conical muscular pouch, the margins of which present a dentated edge. It projects from the sinus forward and to the left side, overlapping the root of the aorta.

[1] L'appariel sero-graisseux. La Presse Médicale, December 7, 1904.
[2] In the new nomenclature the auricle is called the atrium, and auricular appendix is called the auricle.

To examine the interior of the right auricle, an incision should be made along its right border, from the entrance of the superior vena cava to that of the inferior. A second cut is to be made from the centre of this first incision to the tip of the auricular appendix, and the flaps raised.

The internal surface of the right auricle is smooth, except in the appendix and adjacent part of the anterior wall of the sinus venosus, where the muscular wall is thrown into parallel ridges resembling the teeth of a comb and hence named the **musculi pectinati**. These end behind on a vertical smooth ridge, the

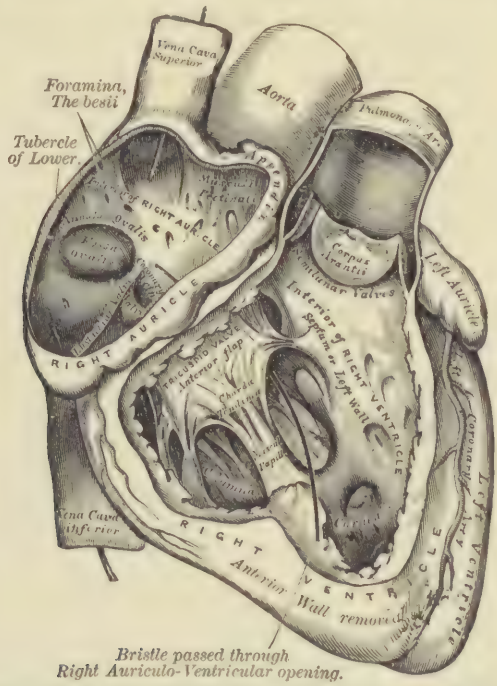


FIG. 374.—The right auricle and ventricle laid open, the anterior walls of both being removed.

crista terminalis of His, the position of which is indicated on the surface of the distended auricle by a furrow, the **sulcus terminalis of His**. The sulcus terminalis passes from in front of the superior vena cava to the left of the inferior vena cava. It represents the line of fusion of the sinus venosus of the embryo with the primitive auricle proper.

The right auricle presents the following parts for examination:

Openings: Superior cava. Inferior cava. Coronary sinus. Foramini Thebesii. Auriculo-ventricular.

Valves: Eustachian. Coronary.

Fossa ovalis.
Annulus ovalis.
Tuberculum Loweri.
Musculi pectinati.

The **superior vena cava** returns the blood from the upper half of the body, and opens into the upper and back part of the auricle, the direction of its orifice being downward and forward. The superior vena cava does not possess valves.

The **inferior vena cava**, larger than the superior, returns the blood from the lower half of the body, and opens into the lowest part of the auricle near the

septum, the direction of its orifice being upward and inward. The direction of a current of blood through the superior vena cava would consequently be toward the auriculo-ventricular orifice, whilst the direction of the blood through the inferior cava would be toward the auricular septum. This is the normal direction of the two currents in fœtal life. The inferior vena cava does not possess valves until its termination at the right auricle.

The **coronary sinus** (*sinus coronarius*) opens into the auricle, between the inferior vena cava and the auriculo-ventricular opening. It returns the blood from the substance of the heart, and is protected by a semicircular fold of the lining membrane of the auricle, the **coronary valve** or **valve of Thebesius**. The sinus, before entering the auricle, is considerably dilated—nearly to the size of the end of the little finger. Its wall is partly muscular, and at its junction with the great coronary vein it is somewhat constricted and is furnished with a valve consisting of two unequal segments.

The **foramini Thebesii** (*foramina venarum minimarum*) are numerous minute fossæ or apertures on various parts of the inner surface of the auricle. Many of these foramina have at their points the minute openings of small veins (*venæ minimæ cordis*). They return the blood directly from the muscular substance of the heart. Some of these foramina are minute depressions in the walls of the heart, presenting a closed extremity.

The **right auriculo-ventricular opening** or the **tricuspid orifice** (*ostium venosum dextrum*) is the large oval aperture of communication between the right auricle and the ventricle, to be presently described.

The **Eustachian valve** (*valvula venæ cavæ inferioris* [*Eustachii*]) is situated between the anterior margin of the inferior vena cava and the auriculo-ventricular orifice. It is semilunar in form, its convex margin being attached to the wall of the vein; its concave margin, which is free, terminating in two cornua, of which the left is attached to the anterior edge of the annulus ovalis, the right being lost on the wall of the auricle. The valve is formed by a duplicature of the lining membrane of the auricle and contains a few muscular fibres.

In the fœtus this valve is of large size, and serves to direct the blood from the inferior vena cava, through the foramen ovale, into the left auricle.

In the adult it is occasionally large, and may assist in preventing the reflux of blood into the inferior vena cava; more commonly it is small, and its free margin presents a cribriform or filamentous appearance; occasionally it is altogether wanting.

The **coronary valve** or **valve of Thebesius** (*valvulæ sinus coronarii* [*Thebesii*]) is a semicircular fold of the lining membrane of the auricle, protecting the orifice of the coronary sinus. It prevents the regurgitation of blood into the sinus during the contraction of the auricle. This valve is occasionally double.

The **fossa ovalis** is an oval depression corresponding to the situation of the **foramen ovale** in the fœtus. It is situated at the lower part of the **septum atriorum**, above and to the left of the orifice of the inferior vena cava. In fœtal life an opening, the **foramen ovale**, exists at this point between the two auricles; almost immediately after birth the valve-like edge is pressed down by the increased pressure in the left auricle and by the tenth day it passes to the annulus and closes the opening.

The **annulus ovalis** (*limbus fossæ ovalis* [*Vieussenii*]) is a prominent oval margin which surrounds anteriorly and superiorly the fossa ovalis. It is most distinct above and at the sides; below, it is deficient. A small slit-like valvular opening is occasionally found, at the upper margin of the fossa ovalis, which leads upward beneath the annulus into the left auricle, and is the remains of the aperture between the two auricles in the fœtus.

The **tubercle of Lower** (*tuberculum intervenosum* [*Loweri*]) is a small projection on the interauricular septum between the fossa ovalis and the opening of the superior vena cava. It is most distinct in the hearts of quadrupeds; in man it is scarcely visible. It was supposed by Lower to direct the blood from the superior cava toward the auriculo-ventricular opening.

The **Left Auricle** (*atrium sinistrum*) is rather smaller than the right; its walls are thicker, measuring about one line and a half; and it consists, like the right, of two parts, a principal cavity, or **sinus**, and an **appendix auriculæ**.

The **sinus** is cuboidal in form, and concealed in front by the pulmonary artery and aorta; internally, it is separated from the right auricle by the **septum auricularum** (*septum atriorum*); behind, it receives on each side two pulmonary veins, being free in the rest of its extent.

The **left auricular appendix** (*auricula sinistra*) is somewhat constricted at its junction with the auricle; it is longer, narrower, and more curved than that of the right side, and its margins are more deeply indented, presenting a kind of foliated appearance. Its direction is forward and toward the right side, overlapping the root of the pulmonary artery.

Within the auricle the following parts present themselves for examination:

The openings of the four pulmonary veins.
Auriculo-ventricular opening.
Musculi pectinati.
Foramina Thebesii.

The **pulmonary veins**, four in number, open, two into the right and two into the left side of the auricle. The two left veins frequently terminate by a common opening. They are not provided with valves.

The **auriculo-ventricular opening** or **mitral orifice** (*ostium venosum ventriculi sinistri*) is the large oval aperture of communication between the left auricle and the left ventricle. It is rather smaller than the corresponding opening on the opposite side (see note, page 569).

The **musculi pectinati** are fewer in number and smaller than on the right side; they are confined to the inner surface of the auricular appendix.

On the inner surface of the septum atriorum may be seen a lunated impression bounded below by a crescentic ridge the concavity of which is turned upward. The depression is just above the fossa ovalis in the right auricle. The inner surface of the auricle shows **foramini Thebesii** and **venæ minimis cordis**.

To examine the interior of the left ventricle, make an incision a little to the left of the anterior interventricular groove from the base to the apex of the heart, and carry it up from thence, a little to the left of the posterior interventricular groove, nearly as far as the auriculo-ventricular groove.

The **ventricular portion of the heart** is conical in shape with its base extending backward and upward and fitting against the atrii of the auricles. Its apex constitutes the **apex of the heart** (*apex cordis*) and extends to the fifth intercostal space three and a quarter inches to the left of the middle line. The ventricles are thick and muscular and have an **antero-superior surface** (*facies sternalis*) and a **postero-inferior surface** (*facies diaphragmatica*) and two borders, a right and a left border. The antero-superior surface is composed mainly of the right ventricle; coursing on this surface, nearer the left border than the right from the auriculo-ventricular groove to the apex, is the **anterior interventricular groove** (*sulcus longitudinalis anterior*). The inferior surface rests on the diaphragm and is chiefly made by the left ventricle; it is also traversed by a groove called the **inferior** or **posterior interventricular groove** (*sulcus longitudinalis posterior*). The two grooves meet in a groove (*incisura apicis cordis*) at the right side of the

apex of the heart. Of the two borders of the ventricular portion the right is sharp and thin (*margo acutus*) and is a continuation of the sulcus terminalis of the base of the heart. It extends from right to left. The left border is thick and rounded (*margo obtusus*). The base of the ventricles is perforated by four large openings, namely, the aorta, the pulmonary artery, the right and left auriculo-ventricular openings.

The **Right Ventricle** (*ventriculus dexter*) is triangular in form, and extends from the right auricle to near the apex of the heart. Its antero-superior surface is rounded and convex, and forms the larger part of the front of the heart. Its inferior surface is flattened, rests upon the Diaphragm, and forms only a small part of the back of the heart. Its posterior wall is formed by the partition between the two ventricles, the **interventricular septum** (*septum ventriculorum*), so that a transverse section of the cavity presents a semilunar outline. The surface of the septum is convex and bulges into the cavity of the right ventricle. The upper and inner angle of the ventricle is prolonged into a conical pouch, the **infundibulum** (*conus arteriosus*), from which the pulmonary artery arises. The balance of the ventricle, the **body**, is the portion into which the auriculo-ventricular orifice opens. The conus arteriosus is marked off from the body of the ventricle by a muscular projection (*crista supraventricularis*). The walls of the right ventricle are thinner than those of the left, the proportion between them being as 1 to 3. The wall is thickest at the base, and gradually becomes thinner toward the apex.

To examine the interior of the right ventricle, its anterior wall should be turned downward and to the right in the form of a triangular flap. This is accomplished by making two incisions: (1) from the pulmonary artery to the apex of the ventricle parallel to, but a little to the right of, the anterior interventricular furrow; (2) another, starting from the upper extremity of the first and carried outward parallel to, but a little below, the auriculo-ventricular furrow, care being taken not to injure the auriculo-ventricular valve.

The following parts present themselves for examination:

Openings { Auriculo-ventricular. / Opening of the pulmonary artery.

Valves { Tricuspid. / Semilunar.

And a muscular and tendinous apparatus connected with the tricuspid valve:

Columnæ carneæ. Chordæ tendineæ.

The **right auriculo-ventricular opening** or the **tricuspid orifice** (*ostium venosum ventriculi dextri*) is the large oval aperture of communication between the auricle and ventricle. It is situated at the base of the ventricle, near the right border of the heart. It is about an inch and a half in diameter,[1] oval from side to side, surrounded by a fibrous ring and covered by the lining membrane of the heart; it is considerably larger than the corresponding aperture on the left side, being sufficient to admit the ends of four fingers. It is guarded by the tricuspid valve.

The **opening of the pulmonary artery** (*ostium arteriosum*) is circular in form, and is situated at the summit of the conus arteriosus, close to the septum ventriculorum. It is placed above and on the left side of the auriculo-ventricular

[1] In the Pathological Transactions, vol. vi. p. 119, Dr. Peacock has given some careful researches upon the weight and dimensions of the heart in health and disease. He states, as a result of his investigations, that in the healthy adult heart the right auriculo-ventricular aperture has a mean circumference of 54.4 lines, or $4^{26}/_{24}$ inches; the left auriculo-ventricular aperture a mean circumference of 44.3 lines, or $3^{8}/_{24}$ inches; the pulmonic orifice of 40 lines, or $3^{13}/_{24}$ inches; and the aortic orifice of 35.5 lines, or $3^{23}/_{24}$ inches; but the dimensions of the orifices varied greatly in different cases, the right auriculo-ventricular aperture having a range of from 40 to 50 lines, and the others in the same proportion.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

opening, upon the anterior aspect of the heart. Its orifice is guarded by the pulmonary semilunar valves.

The **tricuspid valve** (*valvula tricuspidalis*) consists of three **segments** or **cusps** (*cuspides*) of a triangular or trapezoidal shape, each formed by a duplicature of the lining membrane of the heart, strengthened by a layer of fibrous tissue, which contains, according to Kürschner and Senac, muscular fibres. These segments are connected by their bases to the oval fibrous ring surrounding the auriculo-ventricular orifice (*annulus fibrosus dexter*), and by their sides with one another, so as to form a continuous annular membrane, which is attached round the margin of the auriculo-ventricular opening, their free margins and ventricular surfaces affording attachment to a number of delicate tendinous cords, the **chordæ tendineæ**. The largest and most movable segment is placed toward the left side of the auriculo-ventricular opening, and is interposed between that opening and the infundibulum; hence it is called the **left** or **infundibular cusp** (*cuspis medialis*). Another segment corresponds to the right part of the front of the ventricle, the **right** or **marginal cusp** (*cuspis anterior*), and a third to its posterior wall, the **posterior** or **septal cusp** (*cuspis posterior*). The central part of each segment is thick and strong: the lateral margins are thin and translucent. The chordæ tendineæ are connected with the adjacent margins of the principal segments of the valve, and are further attached to each segment in the following manner: 1. Three or four reach the attached margin of each segment, where they are continuous with the auriculo-ventricular tendinous ring. 2. Others, four to six in number, are attached to the central thickened part of each segment. 3. The most numerous and finest are connected with the marginal portion of each segment.

The **columnæ carneæ** (*trabeculæ carneæ*) are the rounded muscular columns which project from nearly the whole of the inner surface of the ventricle, excepting near the opening of the pulmonary artery, where the wall is smooth. They may be classified, according to their mode of connection with the ventricle, into three sets. The first set merely forms prominent ridges on the inner surface of the ventricle, being attached by their entire length on one side, as well as by their extremities. The second set are attached by their two extremities, but are free in the rest of their extent; while the third set (*musculi papillares*) are attached by one extremity to the wall of the heart, the opposite extremity giving attachment to the **chordæ tendineæ**. There are two papillary muscles, the **anterior** and the **posterior**: of these, the anterior is the larger; its chordæ tendinæ are connected with the right and left segments of the tricuspid valve. The posterior is not always single, but sometimes consists of two or three muscular columns; its chordæ tendineæ are connected with the posterior and the right segments of the tricuspid valve. In addition to these, some few chordæ may be seen springing directly from the ventricular septum, or from small eminences on it, and passing to the left and posterior segments. A fleshy band, well marked in the ox and some other animals, is frequently seen passing from the base of the anterior papillary muscle to the interventricular septum. From its attachments it may assist in preventing overdistention of the auricle, and so has been named the **moderator band**.

The right auriculo-ventricular orifice allows the blood to pass freely from the right auricle into the right ventricle, and it will be noted that the surface of the tricuspid valve next the blood-current is quite smooth. When the right ventricle contracts to force the blood into the pulmonary artery, the segments of the tricuspid valve come together and close the auriculo-ventricular opening, and so prevent the blood from passing back into the auricle. The papillary muscles and chordæ tendineæ moor the segments of the valve and prevent their being forced through into the auricle by the weight of blood behind them.

The **semilunar valves** (*valvulæ semilunares a. pulmonalis*), three in number,[1] guard the orifice of the pulmonary artery. They consist of three semicircular folds: two of which are **anterior** and one of which is **posterior**. They are formed by duplicatures of the lining membrane of the ventricle, strengthened by fibrous tissue. They are attached, by their convex margins, to the wall of the artery, at its junction with the ventricle, the straight border being free, and directed upward in the lumen of the vessel. The free margin of each is somewhat thicker than the rest of the valve, is strengthened by a bundle of tendinous fibres, and presents, at its middle, a small projecting thickened nodule, consisting of bundles of interlacing connective-tissue fibres with branched connective-tissue cells and some few elastic fibres. Such a nodule is called the **corpus Arantii** or **body of Arangi** (*nodulus valvulæ semilunaris* [*Arantii*]). From this nodule tendinous fibres radiate through the valve to its attached margin, and these fibres form a constituent part of its substance throughout its whole extent, excepting two narrow lunated portions, the **lunulæ** (*lunulæ valvularum semilunarium*), placed one on each side of the nodule immediately adjoining the free margin; here the valve is thin, and formed merely by the lining membrane. During the passage of the blood along the pulmonary artery these valves are opened, and the course of the blood along the tube is uninterrupted; but during the ventricular diastole, when the current of blood along the pulmonary artery is checked and partly thrown back by its elastic walls, these valves become immediately expanded, and effectually close the entrance of the tube. When the valves are closed, the lunated portions of each are brought into contact with one another by their opposed surfaces, the three corpora Arantii filling up the small triangular space that would be otherwise left by the approximation of the three semilunar valves.

Between the semilunar valves and the commencement of the pulmonary artery are three pouches or dilatations, one behind each valve. These are the **pulmonary sinuses of Valsalva**. Similar sinuses exist between the semilunar valves and the commencement of the aorta; they are larger than the pulmonary sinuses. The blood, in its regurgitation toward the heart, finds its way into these sinuses, and so shuts down the valve-flaps.

In order to examine the interior of the left auricle, make an incision on the posterior surface of the auricle from the pulmonary veins on one side to those on the other, the incision being carried a little way into the vessels. Make another incision from the middle of the horizontal one to the appendix.

The **Left Ventricle** (*ventriculus sinister*) is longer and more conical in shape than the right ventricle, and on transverse section its cavity presents an oval or nearly circular outline. It forms a small part of the anterior surface of the heart and a considerable part of its posterior surface. It also forms the apex of the heart by its projection beyond the right ventricle. Its walls are much thicker than those of the right side, the proportion being as 3 to 1. They are thickest opposite the widest part of the ventricle, becoming gradually thinner toward the base, and also toward the apex, which is the thinnest part.

The following parts present themselves for examination:

Openings	Auriculo-ventricular. Aortic.	Valves	Mitral. Semilunar.
	Chordæ tendineæ.		Columnæ carneæ.

The **left auriculo-ventricular opening** or the **mitral orifice** (*ostium venosum ventriculi sinistri*) is placed below and to the left of the aortic orifice. It is a little

[1] The pulmonary semilunar valves have been found to be two in number instead of three (Dr. Hand, of St. Paul, Minn., in North Western Med. and Surg. Journ., July, 1873), and the same variety is more frequently noticed in the aortic semilunar valves.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

smaller than the corresponding aperture of the opposite side, admitting only two fingers; but, like it, is broader in the transverse than in the antero-posterior diameter. Its right, posterior, and left sides are surrounded by a dense horseshoe-shaped fibrous ring (*annulus fibrosus sinister*). The orifice is guarded by the mitral valves, which are covered with endocardium.

The **aortic opening** (*ostium arteriosum*) is a circular aperture, in front and to the right side of the auriculo-ventricular opening, from which it is separated by one of the segments of the mitral valve. Its orifice is guarded by the semilunar valves. The portion of the ventricle immediately below the aortic orifice is often termed the **aortic vestibule of Sibson**. It possesses fibrous instead of muscular walls, and so does not collapse during the ventricular diastole; it thus gives space for the segments of the aortic valve during its closure.

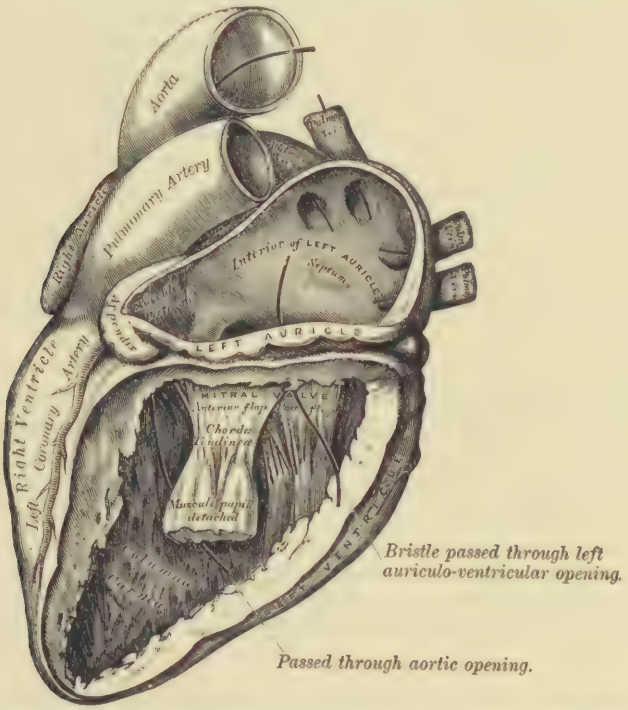


FIG. 375.—The left auricle and ventricle laid open, the posterior walls of both being removed.

The **mitral** or **bicuspid valve** (*valvula bicuspidalis*) is attached to the circumference of the auriculo-ventricular orifice in the same way that the tricuspid valve is on the opposite side. It is formed by a duplicature of the lining membrane, strengthened by fibrous tissue, and contains a few muscular fibres. It is larger in size, thicker, and altogether stronger than the tricuspid, and consists of two segments of unequal size. The larger segment, the **anterior** or **aortic cusp** (*cuspis anterior*), is placed in front and to the right between the auriculo-ventricular and aortic orifices, the smaller, the **posterior** or **marginal cusp** (*cuspis posterior*), is placed to the left and behind the opening, close to the wall of the ventricle. Two smaller segments are usually found at the angles of junction of the larger. The mitral valve-flaps are furnished with chordæ tendineæ, the mode of attachment of which is precisely similar to those on the right side; but they are thicker, stronger, and less numerous.

The **aortic semilunar valves** (*valvulæ semilunares aortæ*) surround the orifice of the aorta; one is posterior (*valvula semilunaris posterior*); one right (*valvula*

semilunaris dextra), and one left (*valvula semilunaris sinistra*): they are similar in structure and in their mode of attachment to those of the pulmonary artery. They are, however, larger, thicker, and stronger than those of the right side; the **lunulæ** are more distinct and the **corpora Arantii** larger and more prominent. Opposite each segment the wall of the aorta presents a slight dilatation or bulging, the **sinus of Valsalva.**

The **columnæ carneæ** admit of a subdivision into three sets, like those upon the right side; but they are smaller, more numerous, and present a dense interlacement, especially at the apex, and upon the posterior wall. Those attached by one extremity only, the **musculi papillares,** are two in number, being connected

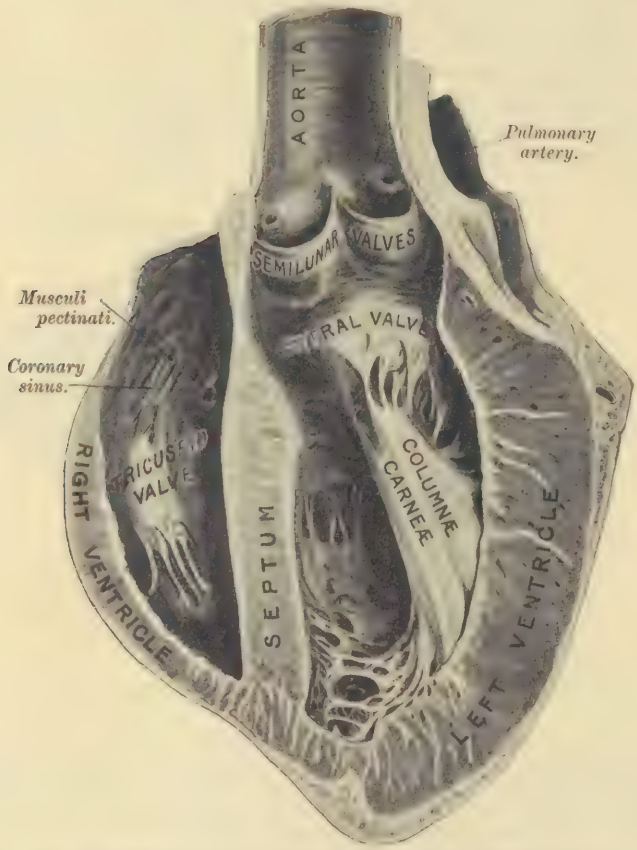


FIG. 376.—Section of the heart, showing the interventricular septum.

one to the **anterior**, the other to the **posterior wall**; they are of large size, and terminate by free rounded extremities, from which the **chordæ tendineæ** arise.

The **septum between the two ventricles** (*septum ventriculorum*) is thick and muscular, especially below (Fig. 376). At its upper part it suddenly tapers off, becomes destitute of muscular fibres, and consists only of fibrous tissue, covered by two layers of endocardium; and on the right side also covered, during diastole, by one of the flaps of the tricuspid valve. This upper portion is termed the **undefended** or **membranous part of the septum** (*septum membranaceum ventriculorum*), and is continued upward and forms the septum between the aortic vestibule and the right auricle. It is derived from the lower part of the aortic septum of the fœtus, and an abnormal communication may exist at this part, owing to defective development of this septum.

Structure of the Heart.—The heart is a hollow muscular organ and its walls are divisible into three layers: the **endocardium**, **myocardium**, and **visceral layer of the pericardium** (page 560).

The **Endocardium** is the lining membrane of the heart. It is composed of endothelial cells resting upon a connective-tissue membrane which contains unstriated muscle cells and elastic tissue. This connective-tissue membrane of the endocardium is attached to the myocardium by loose elastic tissue. The endothelial layer of the endocardium is continuous with the endothelial coat of the blood-vessels. The endocardium is more opaque on the left than on the right side of the heart, thicker in the auricles than in the ventricles, and thickest in the left auricle. It is thin on the musculi pectinati and on the columnæ carneæ, but thicker on the smooth parts of the auricular and ventricular walls and on the tips of the musculi papillares.

The **Fibrous Rings** (*annuli fibrosi*) surround the auriculo-ventricular and arterial orifices; they are stronger upon the left than on the right side of the heart. The auriculo-ventricular rings serve for the attachment of the muscular fibres of the auricles and ventricles, and also for the mitral and tricuspid valves; the ring on the

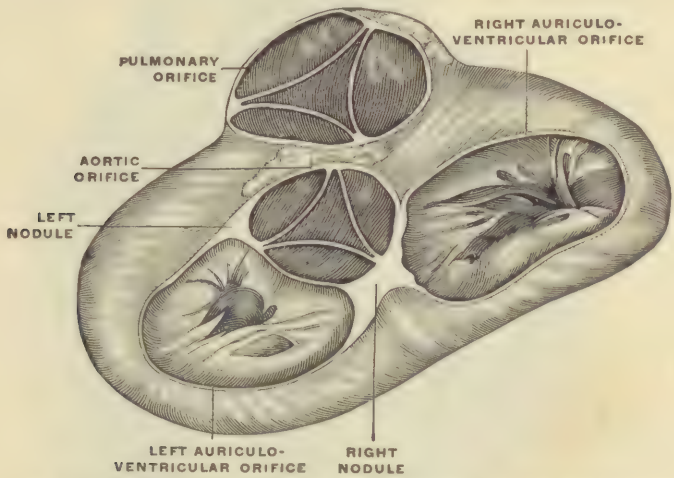


FIG. 377.—Fibrous zones at the base of the ventricles. (Poirier and Charpy.)

left side is closely connected by its right margin with the aortic arterial ring. Between these and the right auriculo-ventricular ring is a mass of fibrous tissue, and in some of the larger animals, as the ox and elephant, a nodule of bone, the *os cordis*.

The fibrous rings surrounding the arterial orifices serve for the attachment of the great vessels and semilunar valves. Each ring receives, by its ventricular margin, the attachment of the muscular fibres of the ventricles; its opposite margin presents three deep semicircular notches, within which the middle coat of the artery (which presents three convex semicircular segments) is firmly fixed, the attachment of the artery to its fibrous ring being strengthened by the thin cellular coat and serous membrane externally and by the endocardium within. It is opposite the margins of these semicircular notches, in the arterial rings, that the endocardium by its reduplication forms the semilunar valves, the fibrous structure of the ring being continued into each of the segments of the valve at this part. The middle coat of the artery in this situation is thin, and the sides of the vessel are dilated to form the sinuses of Valsalva.

The **Myocardium** is composed of muscle fibres which differ from ordinary striated muscle fibres, and are called cardiac fibres. Between individual fibres and between bundles of fibres is connective tissue carrying capillaries.

The **Muscular Structure** of the heart consists of bands of fibres which present an exceedingly intricate interlacement. They are of a deep red color and marked with transverse striæ.

The muscular fibres of the heart admit of a subdivision into two groups, those of the auricles and those of the ventricles, which are quite independent of one another.

Fibres of the Auricles (Fig. 378).—These are disposed in two layers—a superficial layer common to both cavities, and a deep layer proper to each. The **superficial fibres** are more distinct on the anterior surface of the auricles, across the bases of which they run in a transverse direction, forming a thin but incomplete layer. Some of these fibres pass into the septum atriorum. The **internal** or **deep fibres** proper to each auricle consist of two sets, looped and annular fibres. The **looped fibres** pass upward over each auricle, being attached by two extremities to the corresponding auriculo-ventricular rings in front and behind. The **annular fibres** surround the whole extent of the auricular appendices, and are continued upon the walls of the venæ cavæ and coronary sinus on the right side, and upon the pulmonary veins on the left side, at their connection with the heart. In the appendices they interlace with the longitudinal fibres.

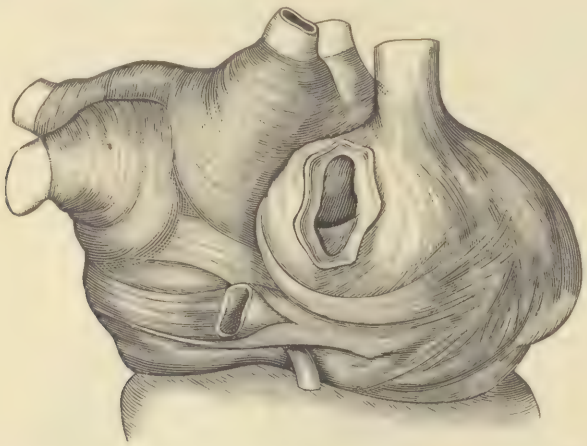


Fig. 378.—The arrangement of the muscles of the auricles. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Fibres of the Ventricles.—These are arranged in an exceedingly complex manner, and the accounts given by various anatomists differ considerably. This is probably due partly to the fact that the various layers of muscular fibres of which the heart is said to be composed are not independent, but their fibres are interlaced to a considerable extent, and therefore any separation into layers must be to a great extent artificial; and also partly to the fact, pointed out by Henle, that there are varieties in the arrangement due to individual differences. If the epicardium and the subjacent fat are removed from a heart which has been subjected to prolonged boiling, so as to dissolve the connective tissues, the superficial fibres of the ventricles will be exposed. They will be seen to commence at the base of the heart, where they are attached to the tendinous rings around the orifices, and to pass obliquely downward toward the apex, with a direction from right to left. At the apex the fibres turn suddenly inward into the interior of the ventricle, forming what is called the **vortex** (Fig. 379). On the back of the heart it will be seen that the fibres pass continuously from one ventricle to the other over the interventricular groove; and the same thing will be noticed on the front of the heart at the upper and lower end of the anterior interventricular groove, but in the middle portion of this groove the fibres passing from one ventricle to the other are inter-

rupted by fibres emerging from the septum along the groove; many of the superficial fibres pass in also at this groove to the septum. The vortex is produced, as stated above, by the sudden turning inward of the superficial fibres in a peculiar spiral manner into the deepest portion of the wall of the ventricle. Those fibres which descended on the posterior surface of the heart enter the left ventricle at the vortex, and, ascending, form the posterior part of the inner layer of muscular fibres lining this cavity and the right (posterior) musculus papillaris; those fibres which descend on the front of the heart to reach the apex also pass, at the vortex, into the interior of the ventricle, where they form the remainder of the innermost layer of the ventricle and the left (anterior) musculus papillaris. The fibres forming the inner layer of the wall of the ventricle ascend to be attached to the fibrous rings around the orifices.

FIG. 379. The muscular arrangement of the apex of the heart. (Poirier and Charpy.)

By dissection these superficial fibres may be removed as a thin stratum, and it will then be found that the ventricles are made up of **oblique fibres** (Fig. 380), super-

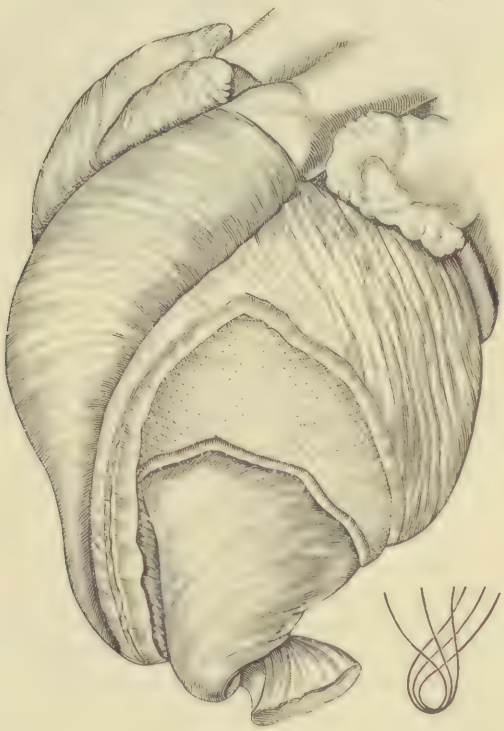


FIG. 380.—The muscular arrangement of the ventricle. (Poirier and Charpy.)

imposed in layers one on the top of another, and assuming gradually a less oblique direction as they pass to the middle of the thickness of the ventricular wall, so that

in the centre of the wall the fibres are transverse. Internal to this central transverse layer the fibres become oblique again, but in the opposite direction to the external ones. This division into distinct layers is, however, to a great extent artificial, as the fibres pass across from one layer to another, and have therefore to be divided in the dissection, and the change in the direction of the fibres is very gradual. These oblique fibres commence above at the fibrous rings at the base of the heart, and, descending toward the apex, they enter the septum near its lower end. In the septum the fibres which form the left ventricle may be traced in three directions: 1. Some pass upward to be attached to the central mass of fibrous tissue. 2. Others pass through the septum to become continuous with the fibres of the right ventricle. 3. The remainder pass through the septum to encircle the ventricle as annular fibres. Of the fibres of the right ventricle, some on entering the septum pass upward to be attached to the central mass of fibrous tissue; some, entering the septum from behind, pass forward to become continuous with the fibres on the anterior surface of the left ventricle; and others, entering in front, pass backward to join the fibres on the posterior wall of the left ventricle. The septum therefore consists of *three* varieties of fibres—viz., **annular fibres,** special to the left ventricle; **ascending fibres,** derived from both ventricles and ascending through the septum to the central fibro-cartilage; and **decussating fibres,** derived from the anterior wall of one ventricle and passing to the posterior wall of the other ventricle, or from the posterior wall of the right ventricle and passing to the anterior wall of the left. In addition to these fibres there are a considerable number which appear to encircle both ventricles and which pass across the septum without turning into it.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** supplying the heart are the **right** and **left coronary** from the aorta. Branches from the coronary vessels supply the muscular structure, the subendocardial, and the subepicardial tissue. There are no vessels in the endocardium. The valves contain no vessels unless they contain muscle, in which case minute vessels enter them. There are numerous capillary networks about the muscular fibres.

The **veins** accompany the arteries. They are: the **anterior** or **great,** the **posterior,** the **left,** and the **anterior cardiac veins,** the **right** or **small,** and the **left** or **great, coronary sinuses.** The coronary sinus receives most of the veins of the heart and empties into the right auricle. Some few small veins open directly into the right and left auricles and into the ventricles. They are the **venæ minimæ cordis.** The oblique vein of the left auricle is known as the **oblique vein of Marshall.**

The **lymphatics** are arranged in two networks: one in the muscle beneath the endocardium, another in the muscle beneath the epicardium. The deep empties into the superficial network, the anterior collecting trunks from the subepicardial network pass to the tracheo-bronchial glands. The posterior collecting trunk terminates in the same group of glands.[1]

The **nerves** are derived from the **superficial** and **deep cardiac plexuses,** and from these plexuses obtain fibres of the pneumogastric, spinal accessory, and sympathetic. The superficial cardiac plexus lies under the arch of the aorta. The deep cardiac plexus is in front of the tracheal bifurcation. The nerves from the plexuses are freely distributed both on the surface and in the substance of the heart, the separate filaments being furnished with small ganglia.

Surface Form. - In order to show the extent of the heart in relation to the front of the chest, draw a line from the lower border of the second left costal cartilage, one inch from the sternum, to the upper border of the third right costal cartilage, half an inch from the sternum. This represents the base-line or upper limit of the organ. Take a point an inch and a half below and three-quarters of an inch internal to the left nipple—that is, about three and a half inches to the left of the median line of the body. This represents the apex of the heart. Draw a line

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

from this apex-point, with a slight convexity downward, to the junction of the seventh right costal cartilage to the sternum. This represents the lower limit of the heart. Join the right extremity of the first line —that is, the base-line— with the right extremity of this line —that is, to the seventh right chondro-sternal joint —with a slight curve outward, so that it projects about an inch and a half from the middle line of the sternum. Lastly, join the left extremity of the base-line and the apex-point by a line curved slightly to the left.

The position of the various orifices is as follows —viz., the pulmonary orifice is situated in the upper angle formed by the articulation of the third left costal cartilage with the sternum; the aortic orifice is a little below and internal to this, behind the left border of the sternum, close to the articulation of the third left costal cartilage to this bone. The left auriculo-ventricular opening is behind the sternum, rather to the left of the median line, and opposite the fourth costal cartilages. The right auriculo-ventricular opening is a little lower, opposite the fourth interspace and in the middle line of the body (Fig. 366).

A portion of the area of the heart thus mapped out is uncovered by lung, and therefore gives a dull note on percussion; the remainder, being overlapped by the lung, gives a more or less resonant note. The former is known as the *area of superficial cardiac dulness;* the latter as the *area of deep cardiac dulness.* The area of superficial cardiac dulness is included between a line drawn from the centre of the sternum, on a level with the fourth costal cartilages, to the apex of the heart and a line drawn from the same point down the lower third of the middle line of the sternum. Below, this area merges into the dulness which corresponds to the liver. Dr. McClellan states that the area of superficial cardiac dulness may be mapped out "by drawing a line from the middle of the sternum opposite the fourth left costal cartilage to the point of junction of the fifth rib and its cartilage, and from this point horizontally back to the mid-sternal line."

Surgical Anatomy. —*Wounds* of the heart are often immediately fatal, but not necessarily so. They may be non-penetrating, when death may occur from hemorrhage, if one of the coronary vessels has been wounded, or subsequently from pericarditis; or, on the other hand, the patient may recover. Even a penetrating wound is not necessarily fatal, if the wound is a small one. An attempt should be made to save the patient by means of a surgical operation. A trap-door flap comprising the whole thickness of the thoracic wall should be made. The hinges of the trap-door are the rib cartilages. The pericardium is exposed and opened freely, clots are removed, the wound in the heart is sought for, and when discovered is sutured. In a penetrating wound the sutures include the whole thickness of the heart, except the endocardium. Interrupted sutures should be used, and each one had better be tied during diastole. A number of successful operations of this character have been performed.

Peculiarities in the Vascular System of the Fœtus (Fig. 382).

The chief peculiarities in the heart of the fœtus are the direct communication between the two auricles through the foramen ovale, and the large size of the Eustachian valve. There are also several minor peculiarities. Thus, the position of the heart is vertical until the fourth month, when it commences to assume an oblique direction. Its size is also very considerable as compared with the body, the proportion at the second month being 1 to 50; at birth it is as 1 to 120; whilst in the adult the average is about 1 to 160. At an early period of fœtal life the auricular portion of the heart is larger than the ventricular, the right auricle being more capacious than the left; but toward birth the ventricular portion becomes the larger. The thickness of both ventricles is at first about equal, but toward birth the left becomes much the thicker of the two.

The **foramen ovale** (Fig. 381) is situated at the lower and back part of the septum atriorum, forming a communication between the auricles. It remains as a free oval opening until the middle period of fœtal life. About this period a fold grows up from the posterior wall of the auricle to the left of the foramen ovale, and advances over the opening so as to form a sort of valve, which allows the blood to pass only from the right to the left auricle, and not in the opposite direction.

The **Eustachian valve** (Fig. 381) is directed upward on the left side of the opening of the inferior vena cava, and serves to direct the blood from this vessel through the foramen ovale into the left auricle.

The peculiarities in the arterial system of the fœtus are the communication between the pulmonary artery and the descending aorta by means of the **ductus**

arteriosus, and the communication between the internal iliac arteries and the placenta by means of the **umbilical arteries.**

The Ductus Arteriosus (Fig. 382).—The ductus arteriosus is a short tube, about half an inch in length at birth, and of the diameter of a goose-quill. In the early condition it forms the continuation of the pulmonary artery, and opens into the descending aorta just below the origin of the left subclavian artery, and so conducts the chief part of the blood from the right ventricle into this vessel. When the branches of the pulmonary artery have become larger relatively to the ductus arteriosus, the latter is chiefly connected to the left pulmonary artery; and the fibrous cord (*ligamentum arteriosum*), which is all that remains of the ductus arteriosus in later life, will be found to be attached to the root of that vessel.

The Umbilical Arteries.—The umbilical or **hypogastric arteries** arise from the internal iliacs, in addition to the branches given off from those vessels in the adult. Ascending along the sides of the bladder to its apex, they pass out of the abdomen at the umbilicus and are continued along the umbilical cord to the placenta, coiling round the umbilical vein. They carry to the placenta the blood which has circulated in the system of the fœtus.

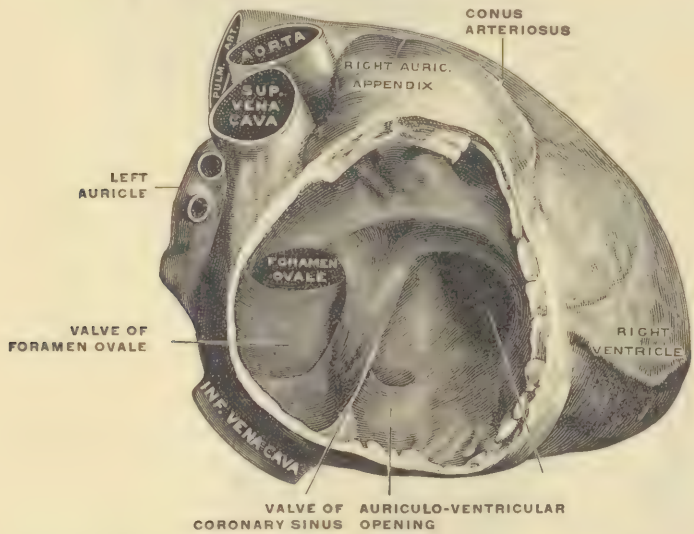


FIG. 381.—The right auricle of a fœtal heart (eighth month). Enlarged. (Spalteholz.)

The peculiarity in the venous system of the fœtus is the communication established between the placenta and the liver and portal vein through the umbilical vein, and the inferior vena cava through the ductus venosus.

Fœtal Circulation.—The blood destined for the nutrition of the fœtus is returned from the placenta to the fœtus by the umbilical vein. This vein enters the abdomen at the umbilicus, and passes upward along the free margin of the suspensory ligament of the liver to the under surface of that organ, where it gives off two or three branches to the left lobe, one of which is of large size, and others to the lobus quadratus and lobulus Spigelii. At the transverse fissure it divides into two branches: of these, the larger is joined by the portal vein and enters the right lobe; the smaller branch continues outward, under the name of the ductus venosus, and joins the left hepatic vein at the point of junction of that vessel with the inferior vena cava. The blood, therefore, which traverses the umbilical vein reaches the inferior vena cava in three different ways: the greater quantity circulates through the liver with the portal venous blood before entering the vena

cava by the hepatic veins; some enters the liver directly, and is also returned to the inferior cava by the hepatic veins; the smaller quantity passes directly into the vena cava by the junction of the ductus venosus with the left hepatic vein.

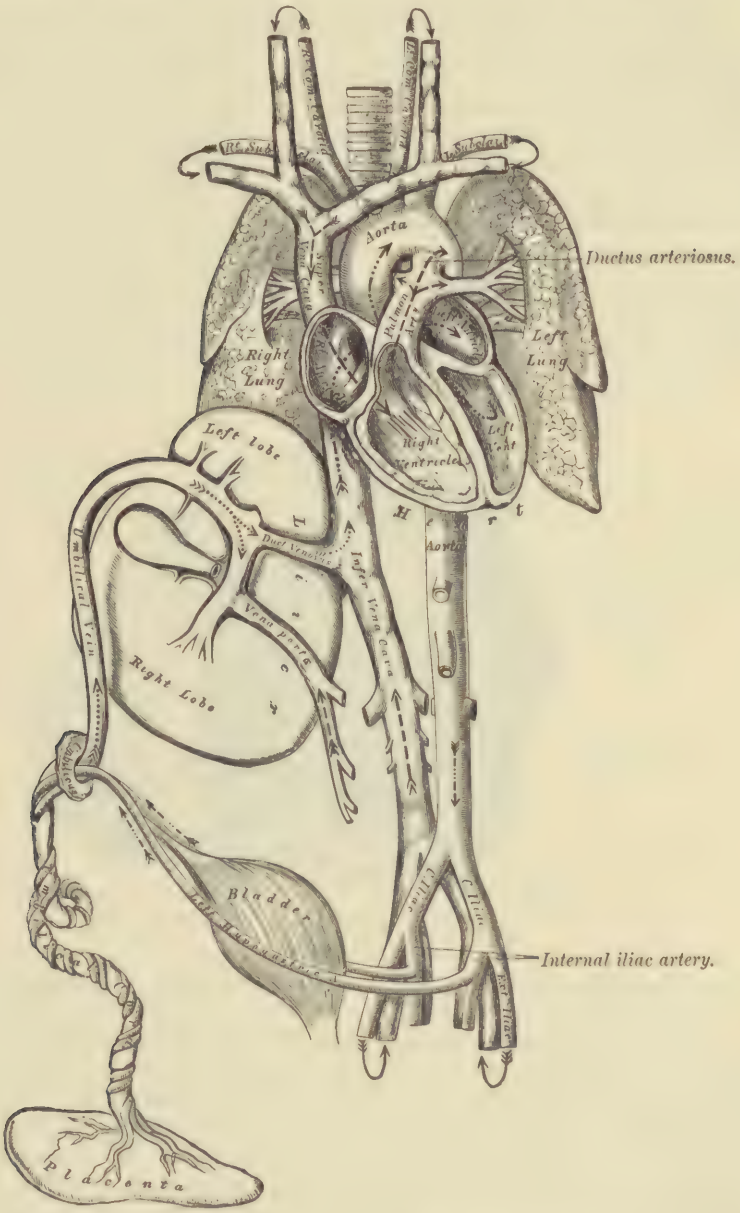


FIG. 382.—Plan of the fœtal circulation. In this plan the figured arrows represent the kind of blood, as well as the direction which it takes in the vessels. Thus, arterial blood is figured >>—·····—> ; venous blood, >>————>; mixed (arterial and venous) blood, >> ·· — ·· —>.

In the inferior cava the blood carried by the ductus venosus and hepatic veins becomes mixed with that returning from the lower extremities and wall of the abdomen. It enters the right auricle, and, guided by the Eustachian valve, passes through the foramen ovale into the left auricle, where it becomes mixed with a small quantity of blood returned from the lungs by the pulmonary veins. From the left auricle it passes into the left ventricle, and from the left ventricle into

the aorta, by means of which it is distributed almost entirely to the head and upper extremities, a small quantity being probably carried into the descending aorta. From the head and upper extremities the blood is returned by the tributaries of the superior vena cava to the right auricle, where it becomes mixed with a small portion of the blood from the inferior cava. From the right auricle it descends over the Eustachian valve into the right ventricle, and from the right ventricle passes into the pulmonary artery. The lungs of the fœtus being inactive, only a small quantity of the blood of the pulmonary artery is distributed to them by the right and left pulmonary arteries, and is returned by the pulmonary veins to the left auricle; the greater part passes through the ductus arteriosus into the commencement of the descending aorta, where it becomes mixed with a small quantity of blood transmitted by the left ventricle into the aorta. Through this vessel it descends to supply the lower extremities and viscera of the abdomen and pelvis, the chief portion being, however, conveyed by the umbilical arteries to the placenta.

From the preceding account of the circulation of the blood in the fœtus it will be seen—

1. That the placenta serves the purposes of nutrition and excretion, receiving the impure blood from the fœtus, and returning it charged with additional nutritive material.

2. That nearly the whole of the blood of the umbilical vein traverses the liver before entering the inferior cava; hence the large size of this organ, especially at an early period of fœtal life.

3. That the right auricle is the point of meeting of a double current, the blood in the inferior cava being guided by the Eustachian valve into the left auricle, whilst that in the superior cava descends into the right ventricle. At an early period of the fœtal life it is highly probable that the two streams are quite distinct, for the inferior cava opens almost directly into the left auricle, and the Eustachian valve would exclude the current along the vein from entering the right ventricle. At a later period, as the separation between the two auricles becomes more distinct, it seems probable that some mixture of the two streams must take place.

4. The pure blood carried from the placenta to the fœtus by the umbilical vein, mixed with the blood from the portal vein and inferior cava, passes almost directly to the arch of the aorta, and is distributed by the branches of that vessel to the head and upper extremities; hence the large size and perfect development of those parts at birth.

5. The blood contained in the descending aorta, chiefly derived from that which has already circulated through the head and upper limbs, together with a small quantity from the left ventricle, is distributed to the lower extremities; hence the small size and imperfect development of these parts at birth.

Changes in the Vascular System at Birth.

At birth, when respiration is established, an increased amount of blood from the pulmonary artery passes through the lungs, which now perform their office as respiratory organs, and at the same time the placental circulation is cut off. Almost immediately after birth the foramen ovale is closed by the valvular edge being pressed against the annulus ovalis, the pressure being due to respiration, which increases the pressure in the left auricle. The structures fuse, and closure is complete by about the tenth day after birth. The valvular fold above mentioned becomes adherent to the margins of the foramen for the greater part of its circumference, but above a slit-like opening is left between the two auricles which sometimes remains persistent.

The *ductus arteriosus* begins to contract immediately after respiration is established, becomes completely closed from the fourth to the tenth day, and ultimately degenerates into an impervious cord which serves to connect the left pulmonary artery to the descending aorta. When respiration begins, the caval opening of the diaphragm being fixed and the balance of the muscle rising and falling, the ductus arteriosus is compressed by the muscular structures which pass from the diaphragm to the pericardium, is narrowed, and is finally obliterated (Forbes).

Of the *umbilical* or *hypogastric arteries*, the portion continued on to the bladder from the trunk of the corresponding internal iliac remains pervious as the superior vesical artery, and the part extending from the side of the bladder to the umbilicus becomes obliterated between the second and fifth days after birth, and projects as a fibrous cord toward the abdominal cavity, carrying on it a fold of peritoneum and separating two of the fossæ of the peritoneum spoken of in the section on the surgical anatomy of direct inguinal hernia.

The *umbilical vein* and the *ductus venosus* become completely obliterated between the second and fifth days after birth, and ultimately dwindle to fibrous cords, the former becoming the round ligament of the liver, the latter the fibrous cord, which in the adult may be traced along the fissure of the ductus venosus.

THE ARTERIES.

The Arteries are cylindrical tubular vessels which serve to convey blood from both ventricles of the heart to every part of the body. These vessels were named arteries (ἀήρ, air; τηρεῖν, to contain) from the belief entertained by the ancients that they contained air. To Galen is due the honor of refuting this opinion; he showed that these vessels, though for the most part empty after death, contain blood in the living body.

The distribution of the systemic arteries is like a highly ramified tree, the common trunk of which, formed by the aorta, commences at the left ventricle of the heart, the smallest ramifications corresponding to the circumference of the body and the contained organs. The arteries are found in nearly every part of the body, with the exception of the hairs, nails, epidermis, cartilages, and cornea; and the larger trunks usually occupy the most protected situations, running, in a limb, along the flexor side, where they are less exposed to injury.

There is considerable variation in the mode of division of the arteries: occasionally a short trunk subdivides into several branches at the same point, as we observe in the cœliac and thyroid axes; or the vessel may give off several branches in succession, and still continue as the main trunk, as is seen in the arteries of the limbs; but the usual division is dichotomous; as, for instance, the aorta dividing into the two common iliacs, and the common carotid into the external and internal carotids.

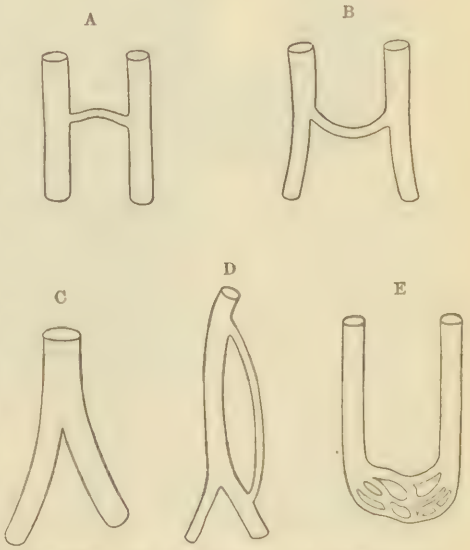


Fig. 383. Diagram showing the anastomosis of arteries. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The branches of arteries arise at very variable angles: some, as the superior intercostal arteries from the aorta, arise at an obtuse angle: others, as the lumbar arteries, at a right angle; or, as the spermatic, at an acute angle. An artery from below the point at which a branch is given off is smaller in size than before. It retains a uniform diameter until a second branch is derived from it. A branch of an artery is smaller than the trunk from which it arises; but if an artery divides into two branches, the combined area of the two vessels is, in nearly every instance, somewhat greater than that of the trunk; and the combined area of all the arterial branches greatly exceeds the area of the aorta; so that the arteries collectively may be regarded as a cone, the apex of which corresponds to the aorta, the base to the capillary system.

The arteries, in their distribution, communicate with one another, forming what is called an **anastomosis** (ἀνά, between; στόμα, mouth) or **inosculation** (Fig. 383); and this communication is very free between the larger as well as between the

smaller branches. An anastomosis between trunks of equal size is found where great activity of the circulation is requisite, as at the base of the brain; here the two vertebral arteries unite to form the basilar, and the two internal carotid arteries are connected by a short communicating trunk; it is also found in the abdomen, the intestinal arteries having very ample anastomoses between their larger branches. In the limbs the anastomoses are most numerous and of largest size around the joints, the branches of an artery above inosculating with branches from the vessels below; these anastomoses are of considerable interest to the surgeon, as it is by their enlargement that a **collateral circulation** is established after the application of a ligature to an artery for the cure of aneurism. The smaller branches of arteries anastomose more frequently than the larger, and between the smallest twigs these inosculations become so numerous as to constitute a close network that pervades nearly every tissue of the body. A **terminal artery** is one which forms no anastomoses. Such vessels are found in the brain, spleen, kidneys, lungs, and mesentery.

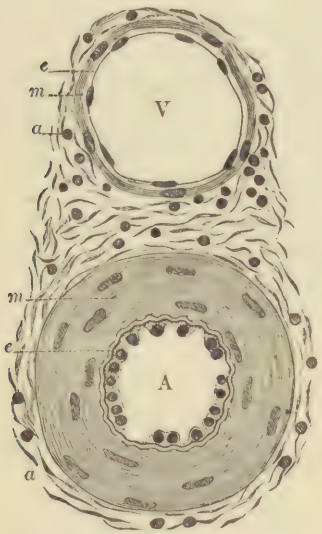


FIG. 384.—Transverse section through a small artery and vein of the mucous membrane of the epiglottis of a child. Magnified about 350 diameters. *A*, artery, showing the nucleated endothelium *e*, which lines it: the vessel being contracted, the endothelial cells appear very thick. Underneath the endothelium is the wavy elastic intima. The chief part of the wall of the vessel is occupied by the circular muscle-coat *m;* the staff-shaped nuclei of the muscle-cells are well seen. Outside this is *a*, part of the adventitia. This is composed of bundles of connective-tissue fibres, shown in section, with the nuclei of the connective-tissue corpuscles. The adventitia gradually merges into the surrounding connective-tissue. *V*, vein showing a thin endothelial membrane *e*, raised accidentally from the intima, which on account of its delicacy is seen as a mere line on the media *m*. This latter is composed of a few circular unstriped muscle-cells ; *a*, the adventitia, similar in structure to that of an artery. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

Throughout the body generally the larger arterial branches pursue a perfectly straight course, but in certain situations they are tortuous; thus the facial arteries in their course over the face, and the arteries of the lips, are extremely tortuous in their course, to accommodate themselves to the movements of the parts. The uterine arteries are also tortuous, to accommodate themselves to the increase of size which the organ undergoes during pregnancy. Again, the internal carotid and vertebral arteries, previous to their entering the cavity of the skull, describe a series of curves, which are evidently intended to diminish the velocity of the current of blood by increasing the extent of surface over which it moves and adding to the resistance which is produced by friction.

The arteries are dense in structure, of considerable strength, highly elastic, and, when divided, they preserve, although empty, their cylindrical form.

Histology of the Capillaries and Arteries. The Capillaries (Fig. 386).—The capillaries are very small endothelial tubes which connect the venous system with the arterial system. In diameter they vary from $\frac{1}{3000}$ to $\frac{1}{2000}$ of an inch, in length from $\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{30}$ of an inch. The nucleated endothelial cells which constitute the wall of a capillary are flat, irregular in outline, and are united by a cement material. Small openings (stomata) are frequently noted between these cells, but they are probably artifacts and do not exist during life.

The capillaries anastomose and form vast networks. When an artery is about to become a capillary the muscular coat disappears. The endothelial coat which constitutes the capillaries extends as a system of endothelial tubes throughout the entire blood-vascular system. The heart is a great muscular thickening around a portion of the system of endothelial tubes. An artery consists of an endothelial

tube covered by certain accessory coats. The wall of an artery diminishes greatly in thickness (Fig. 387) and is found to be composed of endothelial cells and scattered unstriated muscle-fibres, covered merely by thin connective tissue or elastic-tissue sheath (*adventitia capillaris*). Such a structure is known as an **arteriole** or a **precapillary artery**. By the loss of its thin sheath of connective or elastic tissue it becomes a capillary. A capillary takes on a thin sheath and becomes a **venule** or **precapillary vein**. Nerves do not terminate in capillaries, but networks of nerve-filaments often encompass these small vessels.

An artery consists of an **internal coat** or **tunica intima**, a **middle coat** or **tunica media**, and an **external coat** or **tunica adventitia** (Figs. 384 and 385).

The **Inner Coat** (*tunica intima*) consists of endothelial cells and yellow elastic tissue. In some cases the elastic fibres are arranged longitudinally, but, as a rule, they form a distinct fenestrated membrane known as the **fenestrated membrane of**

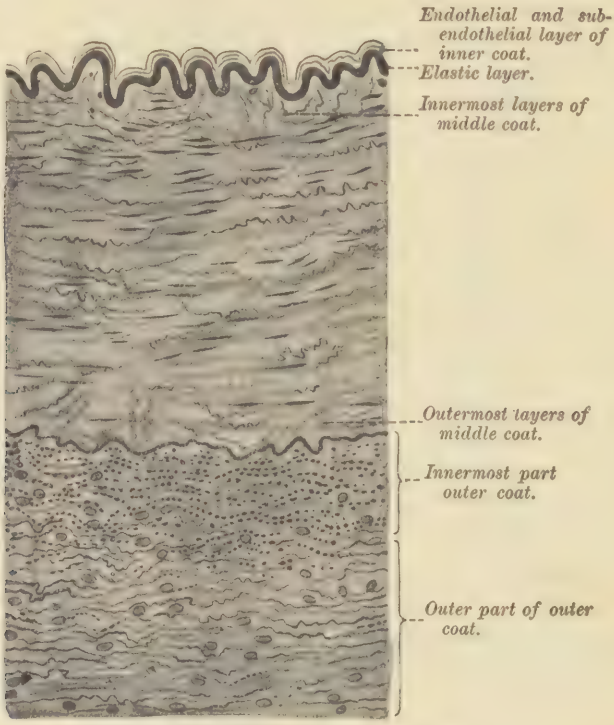


FIG. 385.—Section of a medium-sized artery. (After Grünstein.)

Henle, or the **internal elastic coat**. In medium-sized vessels the elastic layer of the intima is separated from the endothelial layer by a layer of connective tissue. In the large arteries the interposed layer of connective tissue is thicker and contains elastic fibres.

The **Middle Coat** (*tunica media*) consists of muscle, elastic tissue, and white fibrous tissue, and it is often called the elastomuscular coat. The arterioles contain scattered unstriated muscle fibres. In the small arteries they constitute a thin but definite coat. In larger arteries the muscular coat is much thicker. The muscle is unstriated and the fibres are arranged circularly, and in the larger vessels form layers which are separated by elastic fibres. Here and there longitudinally-disposed muscle-fibres exist. The larger the artery the greater is the amount of elastic tissue existing in the middle coat. In the aorta and in some of the very large arteries the amount of elastic tissue exceeds the amount of

muscular tissue. "In the first part of the aorta, in the pulmonary artery and in the arteries of the retina, the muscular fibres are entirely replaced by elastic tissue."[1] The arteries within the skull have no elastic tissue in the media, although they have some in the adventitia.

The **External Coat** (*tunica adventitia*) is called the fibrous coat. It contains fibrous connective tissue, elastic tissues, and in some arteries fibres of unstriated muscle arranged longitudinally. The circular elastic membrane which separates the outer coat from the middle coat is known as the **external elastic membrane.**

Blood-vessels of the Blood-vessel Wall.—Many small blood-vessels course in the external and middle coats of arteries of large and of moderate size. They are mostly in the adventitia. They may arise from the vessel to which they are distributed or take origin from an adjacent vessel. These small arteries are called the **vasa vasorum.** The blood is returned from the walls of the vessels by small veins.

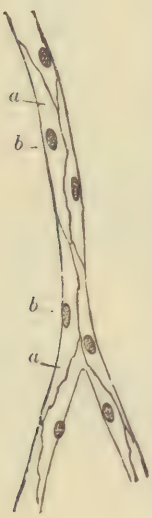


FIG. 386.—Capillaries from the mesentery of a guinea-pig after treatment with solution of nitrate of silver. *a*, cells; *b*, their nuclei.

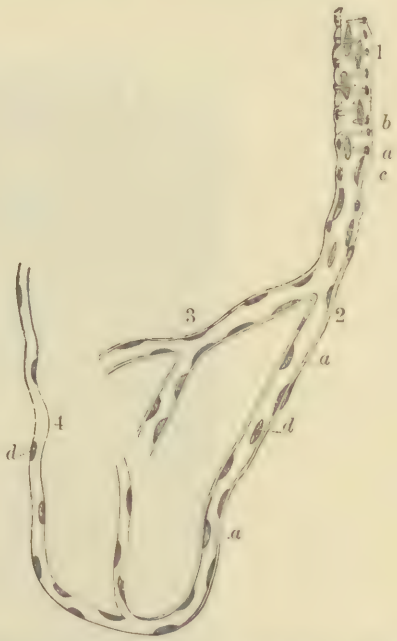


FIG. 387.—Finest vessels on the arterial side. From the human brain. Magnified 300 times. 1, small artery; 2, transition vessel; 3, coarser capillaries; 4, finer capillaries; *a*, structureless membrane still with some nuclei, representative of the tunica adventitia; *b*, nuclei of the muscular fibre-cells; *c*, nuclei within the small artery, perhaps appertaining to an endothelium; *d*, nuclei in the transition vessels.

Lymphatics.—Distinct lymphatic vessels may exist in the adventitia, but are not found in either of the other coats. Lymph-capillaries often surround small blood-vessels or a small blood-vessel may lie in a **perivascular lymph-space.**

Nerves.—Arteries are supplied with nerves, medullated and non-medullated. A network of nerve-fibres may surround a vessel and usually capillaries are so surrounded. In the arteries a network of nerves exists in the media. These nerves supply the muscle-fibres and are called *vasomotor nerves.*

The **Arterial Sheath** (*vagina vasis*) surrounds the artery. It is composed of connective tissue and is attached to the vessel at numerous points by fibrous tissue.

[1] D. J. Cunningham. Text-book of Anatomy.

PULMONARY ARTERY (A. PULMONALIS) (Fig. 389, 391).

In the description of the arteries we shall first consider the efferent trunk of the pulmonic circulation, the pulmonary artery, and then the efferent trunk of the systemic circulation, the aorta and its branches.

The pulmonary artery conveys the venous blood from the right side of the heart to the lungs. It is a short, wide vessel, about 2 inches in length and $1\frac{1}{5}$ inches (30 mm.) in diameter, *arising* from the left side of the **base** (*conus arteriosus*) **of the right ventricle,** in front of the aorta. It extends obliquely upward and backward, passing at first in front of and then to the left of the ascending aorta, as far as the under surface of the arch, where it divides, about on a level with the intervertebral substance between the fifth and sixth dorsal vertebræ, into two branches of nearly equal size, the **right** and **left pulmonary arteries.**

The **Right Pulmonary Artery** (*ramus dexter a. pulmonalis*), longer and larger than the left, runs horizontally outward to the root of the right lung, where it divides into two branches, of which the lower and larger supplies the middle and lower lobes; the upper and smaller is distributed to the upper lobe. It has in front of it the ascending aorta, the superior vena cava, and the right phrenic nerve. It has behind it the right bronchus. Above it is the transverse portion of the arch of the aorta. Below it is the right auricle.

The **Left Pulmonary Artery** (*ramus sinister a. pulmonalis*), shorter and somewhat smaller than the right, passes horizontally to the root of the left lung, where it divides into two branches for the two lobes. In front of it and below it are the pulmonary veins of the left side. Behind are the descending aorta and the left bronchus. Above it are the arch of the aorta, the left recurrent laryngeal nerve, and the ductus arteriosus. The left bronchus in a portion of its course lies below as well as behind.

Relations.—The whole of the vessel is contained, together with the ascending aorta, in the pericardium. It is enclosed with the aorta in a single tube of the serous pericardium, which is continued upward upon them from the base of the heart and connects them together. The fibrous layer of the pericardium becomes gradually lost upon the external coats of its two branches. In *front*, the pulmonary artery is separated from the anterior extremity of the second left intercostal space by the pleura and left lung, in addition to the pericardium; it rests at first upon the ascending aorta, and higher up lies in front of the left auricle on a plane posterior to the ascending aorta. On *each side* of its origin is the appendix of the corresponding auricle and a coronary artery, the left coronary artery passing, in the first part of its course, behind the vessel.

The root of the left pulmonary artery is connected to the under surface of the arch of the aorta by a short fibrous cord, the **ligamentum arteriosum**; this is the remains of a vessel peculiar to fœtal life, the **ductus arteriosus.**

The terminal branches of the pulmonary artery will be described with the anatomy of the lung.

THE AORTA (Figs. 388, 389, 390, 391).

The aorta or **arteria magna** (ἀορτή) is the main trunk of a series of vessels which convey the oxygenated blood to the tissues of the body for their nutrition. This vessel commences at the upper part of the left ventricle, where it is about one and one-eighth inches in diameter, and, after ascending for a short distance, arches backward and to the left side, over the root of the left lung, then descends within the thorax on the left side of the vertebral column, passes through the aortic opening in the Diaphragm, and, entering the abdominal cavity, terminates, consider-

ably diminished in size (about seven-tenths of an inch in diameter), opposite the lower border of the fourth lumbar vertebra, where it divides into the right and left common iliac arteries. Hence it is divided into the **ascending aorta**, the **arch of the aorta**, and the **descending aorta**, which last is again divided into the **thoracic aorta** and the **abdominal aorta**, from the position of these parts.

THE ASCENDING AORTA (AORTA ASCENDENS).

The ascending aorta is about two inches in length. It commences at the upper part of the left ventricle, on a level with the lower border of the third costal cartilage, behind the left half of the sternum; it passes obliquely upward, forward, and to the right, in the direction of the heart's axis, as high as the

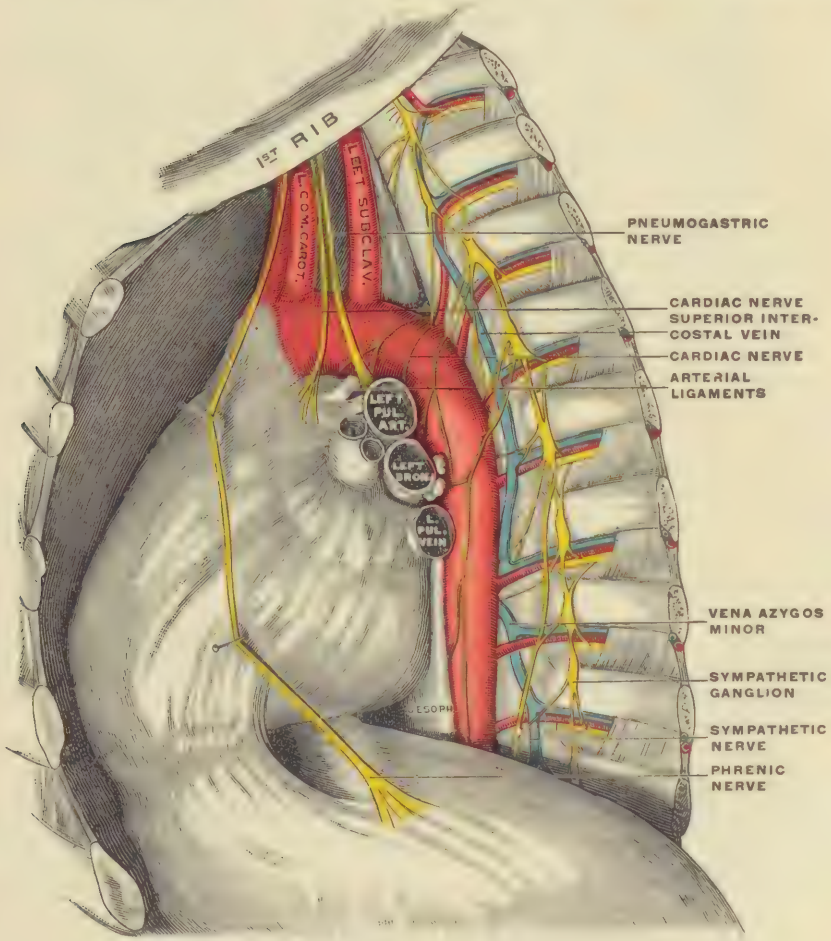


FIG. 388.—Arch of the aorta and its relations. (Poirier and Charpy.)

upper border of the second right costal cartilage, describing a slight curve in its course, and being situated, when distended, about a quarter of an inch behind the posterior surface of the sternum. A little above its commencement it is somewhat enlarged (*bulbus aortæ*), and presents three small dilatations, one of which is anterior, two of which are posterior, which are called the **sinuses of Valsalva** (*sinus aortæ*). Opposite to the sinuses are attached the three semilunar valves (Fig. 376),

which serve the purpose of preventing any regurgitation of blood into the cavity of the ventricle. These valves are placed one in front and two behind. At the union of the ascending with the transverse part of the aorta the calibre of the vessel is increased, owing to a bulging outward of its right wall. This dilatation is termed the **great sinus of the aorta**. A section of the aorta opposite this part has a somewhat oval figure; but below the attachment of the valves it is circular. This portion of the aorta is contained in the cavity of the pericardium, and, together with the pulmonary artery, is invested in a tube of serous membrane, continued on to them from the surface of the heart.

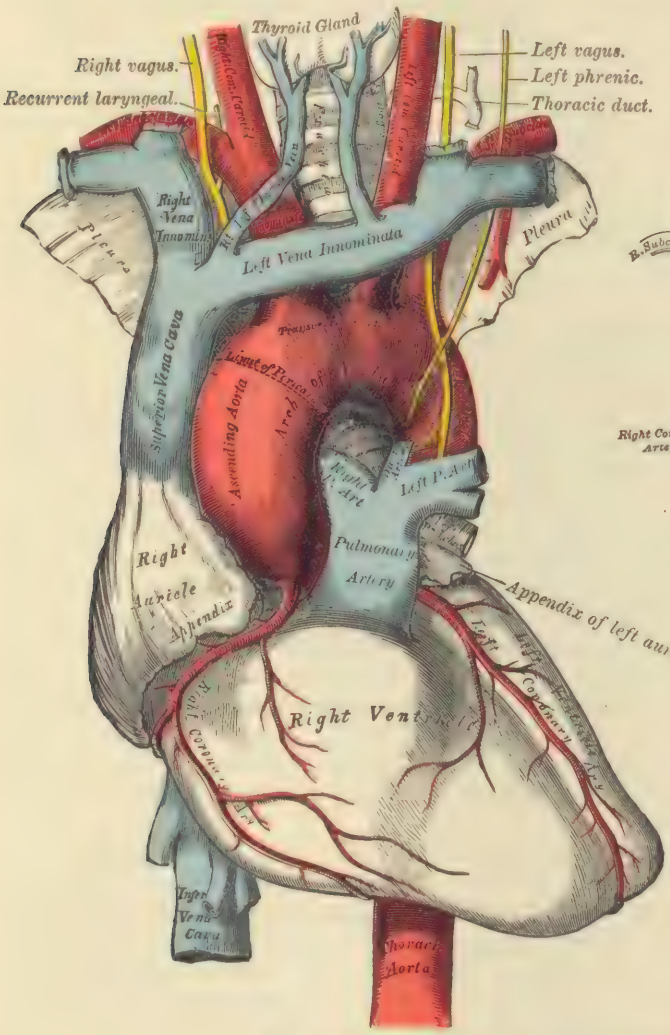


FIG. 389.—The arch of the aorta and its branches.

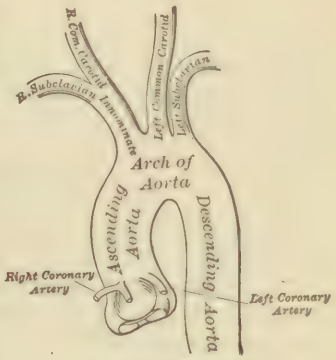


FIG. 390.—Plan of the branches.

Relations.—The ascending aorta is covered at its commencement by the trunk of the pulmonary artery and the right auricular appendix, and, higher up, is separated from the sternum by the pericardium, the right pleura, and anterior margin of the right lung, some loose areolar tissue, and the remains of the thymus gland; *behind*, it rests upon the right pulmonary artery, left auricle, and the right bronchus. On the *right side* it is in relation with the superior vena cava and right auricle; on the *left side*, with the pulmonary artery.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE ASCENDING AORTA.

In front.
Pulmonary artery.
Right auricular appendix.
Pericardium.
Right pleura and lung.
Remains of the thymus gland.

Right side.
Superior vena cava.
Right auricle.

Left side.
Pulmonary artery.

Behind.
Right pulmonary artery.
Left auricle.
Right bronchus.

Branches—The only branches of the ascending aorta are the **coronary arteries.** They supply the heart, and are two in number, right and left, arising near the commencement of the aorta, immediately above the free margin of the semilunar valves.

The Coronary Arteries (Fig. 389).

The **Right Coronary Artery** (*a. coronaria* [*cordis*] *dextra*), about the size of a crow's quill, *arises* from the anterior sinus of Valsalva. It passes forward between the pulmonary artery and the right auricular appendix, then runs obliquely to the right side, in the groove between the right auricle and ventricle, and, curving around the right border of the heart, runs to the left along its posterior surface as far as the posterior interventricular groove, where it divides into two branches, one of which, the **transverse,** continues onward in the groove between the left auricle and ventricle, and anastomoses with the left coronary; the other, the **descending** (*ramus descendens posterior a. coronariæ* [*cordis*] *dextræ*), courses along the posterior interventricular furrow, supplying branches to both ventricles and to the septum, and anastomosing at the apex of the heart with the descending branches of the left coronary. This vessel sends a large branch, the **marginal,** along the thin margin of the right ventricle to the apex, which in its course gives off numerous small branches to the anterior and posterior surfaces of the ventricle. It also gives off a branch, the **infundibular,** which ramifies over the front part of the conus arteriosus of the right ventricle.

The **Left Coronary Artery** (*a. coronaria* [*cordis*] *sinistra*), larger than the former, *arises* from the left posterior sinus of Valsalva; it passes forward between the pulmonary artery and the left auricular appendix, and divides into two branches. Of these, one, the **transverse,** passes transversely outward in the left auriculo-ventricular groove, and winds around the left border of the heart to its posterior surface, where it anastomoses with the transverse branch of the right coronary; the other, the **descending** (*ramus descendens anterior a. coronariæ* [*cordis*] *sinistræ*), passes along the anterior interventricular groove to the apex of the heart, where it anastomoses with the descending branches of the right coronary. The left coronary supplies the left auricle and its appendix, gives branches to both ventricles, and numerous small branches to the pulmonary artery and commencement of the aorta.[1]

[1] According to Dr. Samuel West, there is a very free and complete anastomosis between the two coronary arteries (Lancet, June 2, 1883, p. 945). This, however, is not the view generally held by anatomists, for, with the exception of the anastomosis mentioned above in the auriculo-ventricular and interventricular grooves, it is believed that the two arteries only communicate by very small vessels in the substance of the heart. ED. of 15th English edition.

Peculiarities.—These vessels occasionally arise by a common trunk, or their number may be increased to three, the additional branch being of small size. More rarely there are two additional branches.

THE ARCH OF THE AORTA.

The arch, or transverse aorta (*arcus aortæ*), commences at the upper border of the second chondro-sternal articulation of the right side, and passes at first upward and backward and from right to left, and then from before backward, to the left side of the lower border of the fourth dorsal vertebra behind. Its upper border is usually about an inch below the upper margin of the sternum.

Between the origin of the left subclavian artery and the attachment of the ductus arteriosus the lumen of the fœtal aorta is considerably narrowed, forming what is termed the **aortic isthmus** (*isthmus aortæ*), while immediately beyond the ductus arteriosus the vessel presents a fusiform dilatation which His has named the **aortic spindle** (*aortenspindel*)—the point of junction of the two parts being marked in the concavity of the arch by an indentation or angle. These conditions persist, to some extent, in the adult, where His found that the average diameter of the spindle exceeded that of the isthmus by 3 mm. (about one-eighth of an inch).

Relations.—Its *anterior surface* is covered by the pleuræ and lungs (much more by the left lung than by the right) and the remains of the thymus gland, and crossed toward the left side by the left pneumogastric and phrenic nerves and superficial cardiac branches of the left sympathetic and vagus, and by the left superior intercostal vein. Its *posterior surface* lies on the trachea, just above its bifurcation, on the great, or deep, cardiac plexus, the œsophagus, thoracic duct, and left recurrent laryngeal nerve. Its *upper border* is in relation with the left innominate vein, and from its upper part are given off the innominate, left common carotid and left subclavian arteries. Its *lower border* is in relation with the bifurcation of the pulmonary artery, the remains of the ductus arteriosus, which is connected with the left division of that vessel, and the superficial cardiac plexus; the left recurrent laryngeal nerve winds round it from before backward, whilst the left bronchus passes below it.

Plan of the Relations of the Arch of the Aorta.

Above.
Left innominate vein.
Innominate artery.
Left carotid.
Left subclavian.

In Front.
Pleuræ and lungs.
Remains of thymus gland.
Left pneumogastric nerve.
Left phrenic nerve.
Superficial cardiac nerves.
Left superior intercostal vein.

Behind.
Trachea.
Deep cardiac plexus.
Œsophagus.
Thoracic duct.
Left recurrent nerve.

Below.
Bifurcation of pulmonary artery.
Remains of ductus arteriosus.
Superficial cardiac plexus.
Left recurrent nerve.
Left bronchus.

Peculiarities.—The height to which the aorta rises in the chest is usually about an inch below the upper border of the sternum; but it may ascend nearly to the top of that bone. Occasionally it is found an inch and a half, more rarely two or even three inches, below this point.

In Direction.—Sometimes in man, as is normal in birds, the aorta arches over the root of the right instead of the left lung, and passes down on the right side of the spine. In such cases all of the viscera of the thoracic and abdominal cavities are transposed. Less frequently, the aorta, after arching over the root of the right lung, is directed to its usual position on the left side of the spine, this peculiarity not being accompanied by any transposition of the viscera.

In Conformation.—The aorta occasionally divides, as in some quadrupeds, into an ascending and descending trunk, the former of which is directed vertically upward, and subdivides into three branches, to supply the head and upper extremities. Sometimes the aorta subdivides soon after its origin into two branches, which soon reunite. In one of these cases the œsophagus and trachea were found to pass through the interval left by the division of the aorta; this is the normal condition of the vessel in the reptilia.

Surgical Anatomy.—Of all the vessels of the arterial system, the aorta, and more especially its arch, is most frequently the seat of disease, hence it is important to consider some of the consequences that may ensue from *aneurism* of this part.

It will be remembered that the ascending aorta is continued in the pericardium, just behind the sternum, being crossed at its commencement by the pulmonary artery and right auricular appendix, and having the right pulmonary artery behind, the vena cava on the right side, and the pulmonary artery and left auricle on the left side.

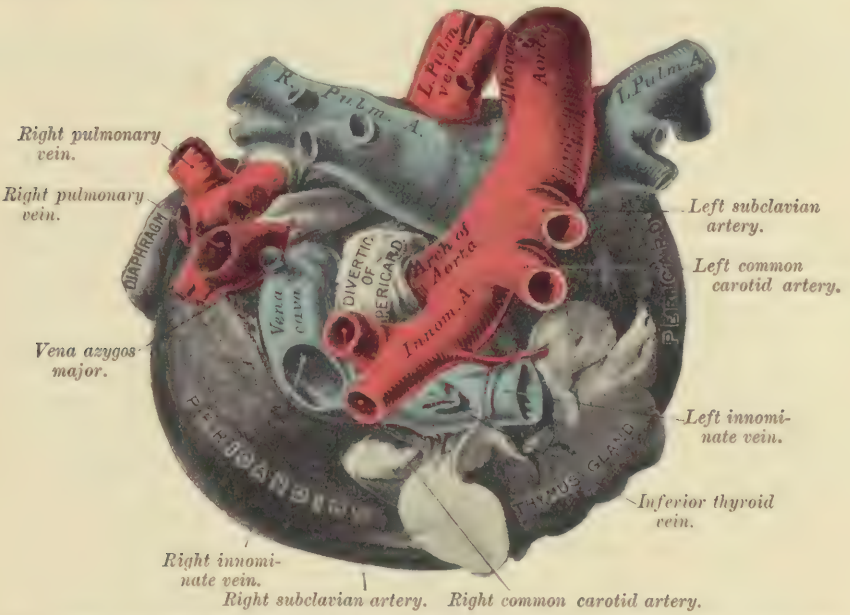


Fig. 391.—Relation of great vessels at base of heart, seen from above. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

Aneurism of the ascending aorta, in the situation of the sinuses of Valsalva, in the great majority of cases, affects the anterior sinus; this is mainly owing to the fact that the regurgitation of blood upon the sinuses takes place chiefly on the anterior aspect of the vessel. As the aneurismal sac enlarges it may compress any or all of the structures in immediate proximity to it, but chiefly projects toward the right anterior side, and, consequently, interferes mainly with those structures that have a corresponding relation with the vessel. In the majority of cases it bursts into the cavity of the pericardium, the patient suddenly drops dead, and, upon a post-mortem examination, the pericardial sac is found full of blood; or it may compress the right auricle, or the pulmonary artery and adjoining part of the right ventricle, and open into one or the other of these parts, or may press upon the superior vena cava.

Aneurism of the ascending aorta, originating above the sinuses, most frequently implicates the right anterior wall of the vessel, where, as has been explained, there exists a normal dilatation, the great sinus of the aorta; this is probably mainly owing to the blood being impelled against this part. The direction of the aneurism is also chiefly toward the right of the median line. It attains a large size and projects forward, it may absorb the sternum and the cartilages of the ribs, usually on the right side, and appear as a pulsating tumor on the front of the chest, just below the manubrium; or it may burst into the pericardium, or may compress or open into the right lung, the trachea, bronchi, or œsophagus.

Regarding the *transverse aorta*, the student is reminded that the vessel lies on the trachea, the œsophagus, and thoracic duct; that the recurrent laryngeal nerve winds around it; and that from its upper part are given off three large trunks, which supply the head, neck, and upper extremities. An aneurismal tumor, taking origin from the posterior part of the vessel, its most usual site, may press upon the trachea, impede the breathing, or produce cough, hæmoptysis, or stridulous breathing, or it may ultimately burst into that tube, producing fatal hæmorrhage. Again, its pressure on the laryngeal nerves may give rise to symptoms which so accurately resemble those of laryngitis that the operation of tracheotomy has in some cases been resorted to, from the supposition that disease existed in the larynx; or it may press upon the thoracic duct and destroy life by inanition; or it may involve the œsophagus, producing dysphagia; or may burst into the œsophagus, when fatal hemorrhage will occur. Again, the innominate artery, or the subclavian, or left carotid, may be so obstructed by clots as to produce a weakness, or even a disappearance, of the pulse in one or the other wrist or in the left temporal artery; or the tumor may present itself at or above the manubrium, generally either in the median line or to the right of the sternum, and may simulate an aneurism of one of the arteries of the neck.

Branches (Figs. 389 and 390).—The branches given off from the arch of the aorta are three in number: the **innominate**, the **left common carotid**, and the **left subclavian arteries**.

Peculiarities. Position of the Branches.—The branches, instead of arising from the highest part of the arch (their usual position), may be moved more to the right, arising from the commencement of the transverse or upper part of the ascending portion; or the distance from one another at their origin may be increased or diminished, the most frequent change in this respect being the approximation of the left carotid toward the innominate artery.

The Number of the primary branches may be reduced to a single vessel, or more commonly two: the left carotid arising from the innominate artery, or (more rarely) the carotid and subclavian arteries of the left side arising from the innominate artery. But the number may be increased to four, from the right carotid and subclavian arteries arising directly from the aorta, the innominate being absent. In most of these latter cases the right subclavian has been found to arise from the left end of the arch; in other cases it was the second or third branch given off instead of the first. Another common form in which there are four primary branches is that in which the left vertebral artery arises from the arch of the aorta between the left carotid and subclavian arteries. Lastly, the number of trunks from the arch may be increased to five or six; in these instances, the external and internal carotids arise separately from the arch, the common carotid being absent on one or both sides. In some cases, where six branches have been found, it has been due to a separate origin of the vertebral on both sides.

Number as Usual, Arrangement Different.—When the aorta arches over to the right side, the three branches have an arrangement the reverse of what is usual, the innominate supplying the left side, and the carotid and subclavian (which arise separately) the right side. In other cases, where the aorta takes its usual course, the two carotids may be joined in a common trunk, and the subclavians arise separately from the arch, the right subclavian generally arising from the left end of the arch.[1]

In some instances other arteries are found to arise from the arch of the aorta. Of these the most common are the bronchial, one or both, and the thyroidea ima; but the internal mammary and the inferior thyroid have been seen to arise from this vessel.

The Innominate Artery (A. Anonyma) (Figs. 389, 390, 391).

The innominate or *brachio-cephalic* artery is the largest branch given off from the arch of the aorta. It *arises*, on a level with the upper border of the second right costal cartilage, from the commencement of the arch of the aorta in front of the left carotid, and, ascending obliquely to the upper border of the right sterno-clavicular articulation, divides into the right common carotid and right subclavian arteries. This vessel varies from an inch and a half to two inches in length.

Relations.—*In front*, it is separated from the first piece of the sternum by the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the remains of the thymus gland, the left innominate and right inferior thyroid veins which cross its root, and sometimes the inferior cervical cardiac branch of the right pneumogastric. *Behind*, it

[1] The anomalies of the aorta and its branches are minutely described by Krause in Henle's Anatomy (Brunswick, 1868), vol. iii. p. 203 *et seq.*—Ed. of 15th English edition

lies upon the trachea, which it crosses obliquely, and continuing upward it lies in the right pleura. On the *right side* is the right innominate vein, right pneumogastric nerve, and the pleura; and on the *left side*, the remains of the thymus gland, the origin of the left carotid artery, the left inferior thyroid vein, and the trachea.

Branches.—The innominate usually gives off no branches, but occasionally a small branch, the **thyroidea ima,** is given off from this vessel. It also sometimes gives off a **thymic** or **bronchial branch.**

The **Thyroidea Ima** (*a. thyroidea ima*), which is occasionally present, ascends in front of the trachea to the lower part of the thyroid body, which it supplies. It varies greatly in size, and appears to compensate for the deficiency or absence of one of the other thyroid vessels. It occasionally is found to arise from the right common carotid or from the aorta, the subclavian, or internal mammary vessels.

Plan of the Relations of the Innominate Artery.

In front.

Sternum.
Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles.
Remains of the thymus gland.
Left innominate and right inferior thyroid veins.
Inferior cervical cardiac branch from right pneumogastric nerve.

Right side.
Right innominate vein.
Right pneumogastric nerve.
Pleura.

Left side.
Remains of thymus.
Left carotid.
Left inferior thyroid vein.
Trachea.

Behind.
Trachea.
Right pleura.

Peculiarities in Point of Division. When the bifurcation of the innominate artery varies from the point above mentioned it sometimes ascends a considerable distance above the sternal end of the clavicle; less frequently it divides below it. In the former class of cases its length may exceed two inches, and in the latter be reduced to an inch or less. These are points of considerable interest for the surgeon to remember in connection with the operation of tying this vessel.

Position.—When the aorta arches over to the right side, the innominate is directed to the left side of the neck instead of the right.

Collateral Circulation.—Allan Burns demonstrated, on the dead subject, the possibility of the establishment of the collateral circulation after ligature of the innominate artery, by tying and dividing that artery, after which, he says, "Even coarse injection, impelled into the aorta, passing freely by the anastomosing branches into the arteries of the right arm, filling them and all the vessels of the head completely."[1] The branches by which this circulation would be carried on are very numerous; thus, all the communications across the middle line between the branches of the carotid arteries of opposite sides would be available for the supply of blood to the right side of the head and neck; while the anastomosis between the superior intercostal of the subclavian and the first aortic intercostal (see *infra* on the collateral circulation after obliteration of the thoracic aorta) would bring the blood, by a free and direct course, into the right subclavian: the numerous connections, also, between the intercostal arteries and the branches of the axillary and internal mammary arteries would, doubtless, assist in the supply of blood to the right arm, while the deep epigastric, from the external iliac, would, by means of its anastomosis with the internal mammary, compensate for any deficiency in the vascularity of the wall of the chest.

Surgical Anatomy.—The innominate artery has been *tied* at least thirty times and in six instances, according to Mr. Jacobson, the patient survived. Mott's patient, however, on whom the operation was first performed, lived nearly four weeks, and Graefe's more than two months. In 1895 Burrell, of Boston, resected the right sterno-clavicular articulation with the upper end of the sternum and tied the innominate. The patient lived 104 days. The

[1] Surgical Anatomy of the Head and Neck, p. 62.

ligation was first successfully performed by A. W. Smyth, of New Orleans, in 1864, for subclavian aneurism. The patient died ten years later of the original aneurism, which was reformed by the collaterals. The chief danger of the operation appears to be the frequency of secondary hemorrhage; but in the present day, with the practice of aseptic surgery and our greater knowledge of the use of the ligature, more favorable results may be anticipated. Other causes of death after operation are pleurisy, pericarditis, and suppurative cellulitis. The main obstacles to the operation are, as the student will perceive from his dissection of this vessel, the deep situation of the artery behind and beneath the sternum, and the number of important structures which surround it in every part.

In order to apply a ligature to this vessel, the patient is to be placed upon his back, with the thorax slightly raised, the head bent a little backward, and the shoulder on the side of the aneurism strongly depressed, so as to draw out the artery from behind the sternum into the neck. An incision three or more inches long is then made along the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, terminating at the sternal end of the clavicle. From this point a second incision is carried about the same length along the upper border of the clavicle. The skin is then dissected back, and the Platysma divided on a director: the sternal end of the Sterno-mastoid is now brought into view, and, a director being passed beneath it and close to its under surface, so as to avoid any small vessels, it is to be divided; in like manner the clavicular origin is to be divided throughout the whole or greater part of its attachment. By pressing aside any loose cellular tissue or vessels that may now appear the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles will be exposed, and must be divided, a director being previously passed beneath them. The inferior thyroid veins may come into view, and must be carefully drawn, either upward or downward, by means of a blunt hook, or tied with double ligatures and divided. After tearing through a strong fibro-cellular lamina, the right carotid is brought into view, and, being traced downward, the arteria innominata is arrived at. The left innominate vein should now be depressed; the right innominate vein, the internal jugular vein, and the pneumogastric nerve drawn to the right side; and a curved aneurism needle may then be passed around the vessel, close to its surface, and in a direction from below upward and inward, care being taken to avoid the right pleural sac, the trachea, and cardiac nerves. The ligature should be applied to the artery as high as possible, in order to allow room between it and the aorta for the formation of the coagulum. The importance of avoiding the thyroid plexus of veins during the primary steps of the operation, and the pleural sac whilst including the vessel in the ligature, should be most carefully borne in mind. After the artery has been secured, the common carotid should be tied about half an inch above its origin, and also the thyroidea ima if the vessel is of any size. The several muscles are united by buried sutures. An easier and safer plan than the above is that employed by Burrell—viz., resection of the right sterno-clavicular articulation and of the upper end of the sternum.

ARTERIES OF THE HEAD AND NECK.

The chief artery which supplies the head and neck is the **common carotid**: it ascends in the neck and divides into two branches: the External Carotid, supplying the superficial parts of the head and face and the greater part of the neck; and the Internal Carotid, supplying to a great extent the parts within the cranial cavity.

THE COMMON CAROTID ARTERY (A. CAROTIS COMMUNIS) (Figs. 388, 389, 390, 392).

The common carotid arteries, although occupying a nearly similar position in the neck, differ in position, and, consequently, in their relation at their origin. The **right common carotid** (*a. carotis communis dextra*) *arises* from the innominate artery, behind the right sterno-clavicular articulation. The **left common carotid** (*a. carotis communis sinistra*) *arises* from the highest part of the arch of the aorta, and is, consequently, longer, and at its origin is contained within the thorax. The course and relations of that portion of the left carotid which intervenes between the arch of the aorta and the left sterno-clavicular articulation will first be described. (See Figs. 388, 389, and 390.)

The left carotid within the thorax ascends obliquely outward from the arch of the aorta to the root of the neck. *In front*, it is separated from the first piece of the sternum by the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the left innomi-

nate vein, and the remains of the thymus gland; *behind*, it lies on the trachea, œsophagus, thoracic duct, and the left recurrent laryngeal nerve. *Internally*, it is in relation with the innominate artery, inferior thyroid veins and remains of the thymus gland; *externally*, with the left pneumogastric nerve, left pleura, and left lung. The left subclavian artery is posterior and slightly external to it.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE LEFT COMMON CAROTID.
THORACIC PORTION.

In front.
Sternum.
Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles.
Left innominate vein.
Remains of the thymus gland.

Internally.
Innominate artery.
Inferior thyroid veins.
Remains of the thymus gland.

Externally.
Left pneumogastric nerve.
Left pleura and lung.
Left subclavian artery.

Behind.
Trachea.
Œsophagus.
Thoracic duct.
Left recurrent laryngeal nerve.

In the neck the two common carotids resemble each other so closely that one description will apply to both. Each vessel passes obliquely upward from behind the sterno-clavicular articulation to a level with the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, opposite the fourth cervical vertebra, where it divides into the **external** and **internal carotid**; these names being derived from the distribution of the arteries to the external parts of the head and face and to the internal parts of the cranium and orbit respectively.

At the lower part of the neck the two common carotid arteries are separated from each other by a small interval, which contains the trachea; but at the upper part, the thyroid body, the larynx and pharynx project forward between the two vessels, and give the appearance of their being placed farther back in this situation. The common carotid artery is contained in a sheath derived from the deep cervical fascia, which also encloses the internal jugular vein and pneumogastric nerve, the vein lying on the outer side of the artery, and the nerve between the artery and vein, on a plane posterior to both. On opening the sheath these three structures are seen to be separated from one another, each being enclosed in a separate fibrous investment.

Relations.—At the lower part of the neck the common carotid artery is very deeply seated, being covered by the integument, superficial fascia, Platysma, and deep cervical fascia, the Sterno-mastoid, Sterno-hyoid, and Sterno-thyroid muscles, and by the Omo-hyoid, opposite the cricoid cartilage; but in the upper part of its course, near its termination, it is more superficial, being covered merely by the integument, the superficial fascia, Platysma, deep cervical fascia, and inner margin of the Sterno-mastoid, and, when the latter is drawn backward, it is seen to be contained in a triangular space, bounded behind by the Sterno-mastoid, above by the posterior belly of the Digastric, and below by the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid. This part of the artery is crossed obliquely, from within outward, by the sterno-mastoid artery; it is crossed also by the superior and middle thyroid veins, which terminate in the internal jugular; and, descending on its sheath in front, is seen the descendens hypoglossi nerve, this filament being joined by one or two branches from the cervical nerves, which cross the vessel from without inward.

Sometimes the descendens hypoglossi is contained within the sheath. The middle thyroid vein crosses the artery about its middle, and the anterior jugular vein below; the latter, however, is separated from the artery by the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles. *Behind*, the artery is separated from the transverse processes of the vertebræ by the Longus colli and Rectus capitis anticus major muscles, the sympathetic nerve being interposed between it and the muscles. The recurrent

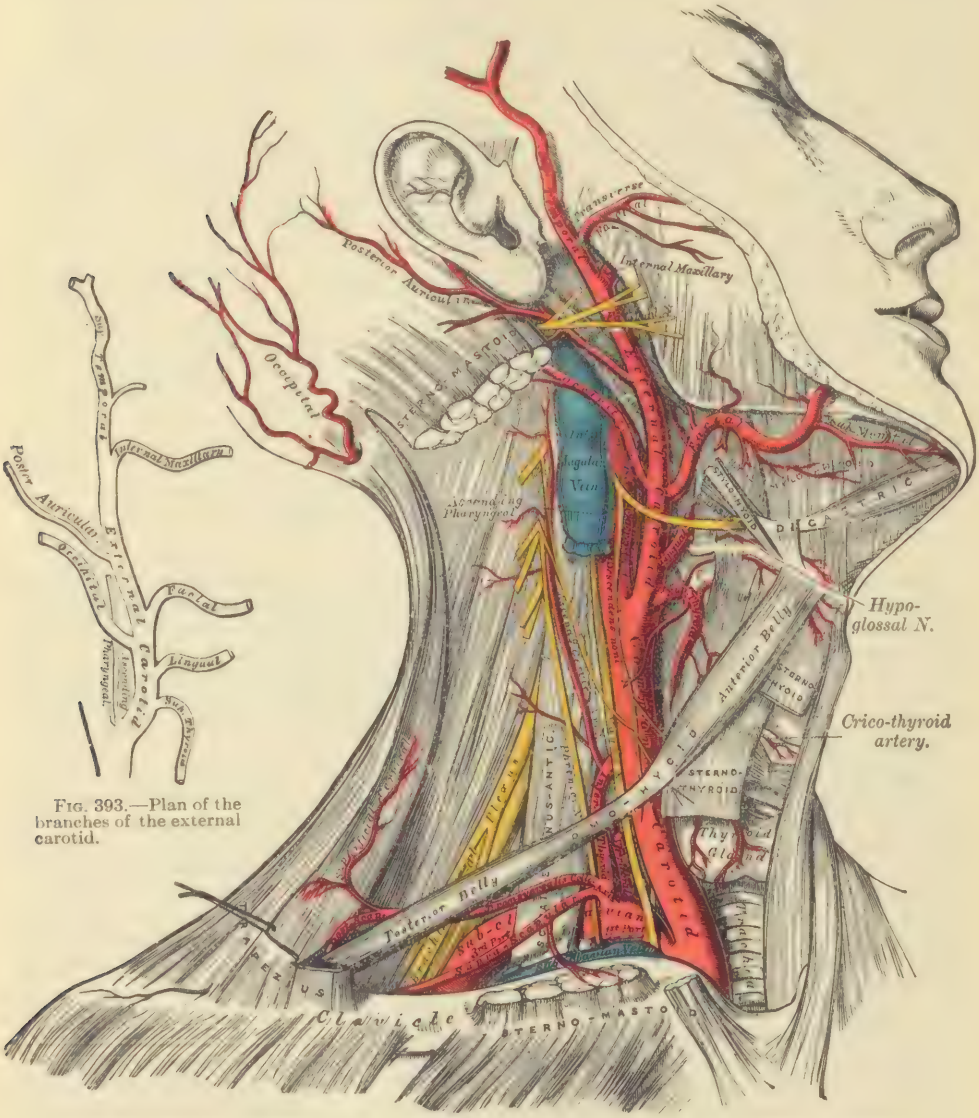


FIG. 393.—Plan of the branches of the external carotid.

FIG. 392.—Surgical anatomy of the arteries of the neck, showing the carotid and subclavian arteries.

laryngeal nerve and inferior thyroid artery cross behind the vessel at its lower part. *Internally*, it is in relation with the trachea and thyroid gland, the latter overlapping it, the inferior thyroid artery and recurrent laryngeal nerve being interposed: higher up, with the larynx and pharynx. On its *outer side* are placed the internal jugular vein and pneumogastric nerve. At the lower part of the neck the internal jugular vein on the right side diverges from the artery, but on the left side it

approaches it, and often overlaps its lower part. This is an important fact to bear in mind during the performance of any operation on the lower part of the left common carotid artery. In this region the relation which the right and left recurrent laryngeal nerves bear to the arteries is not identical. The left recurrent laryngeal nerve lies behind the thoracic portion of the left common carotid artery and internal to the cervical portion of the vessel. The right nerve passes obliquely upward and inward behind the right common carotid to reach its inner side.

Plan of the Relations of the Common Carotid Artery.

In front.

Integument and superficial fascia.
Deep cervical fascia.
Platysma.
Sterno-mastoid.
Sterno-hyoid.
Sterno-thyroid.
Omo-hyoid.
Descendens and Communicans hypoglossi nerves.
Sterno-mastoid artery.
Superior and middle thyroid veins.
Anterior jugular vein.

Externally.

Internal jugular vein.
Pneumogastric nerve.

Internally.

Trachea.
Thyroid gland.
Recurrent laryngeal nerve.
Inferior thyroid artery.
Larynx.
Pharynx.

Behind.

Longus colli.
Rectus capitis anticus major.
Sympathetic nerve.
Inferior thyroid artery.
Recurrent laryngeal nerve.

Peculiarities as to Origin.—The right common carotid may arise above or below the upper border of the sterno-clavicular articulation. This variation occurs in one out of about eight cases and a half, and the origin is more frequently below than above; or the artery may arise as a separate branch from the arch of the aorta or in conjunction with the left carotid. The *left common carotid* varies more frequently in its origin than the right. In the majority of abnormal cases it arises with the innominate artery, or, if the innominate artery is absent, the two carotids arise usually by a single trunk. It rarely joins with the left subclavian, except in cases of transposition of the arch.

Peculiarities as to Point of Division.—The most important peculiarities of this vessel, in a surgical point of view, relate to its place of division in the neck. In the majority of abnormal cases this occurs higher than usual, the artery dividing into two branches opposite the hyoid bone, or even higher; more rarely it occurs below, opposite the middle of the larynx or the lower border of the cricoid cartilage; and one case is related by Morgagni where the common carotid, only an inch and a half in length, divided at the root of the neck. Very rarely the common carotid ascends in the neck without any subdivision, the internal carotid being wanting; and in a few cases the common carotid has been found to be absent, the external and internal carotids arising directly from the arch of the aorta. This peculiarity existed on both sides in some instances, on one side in others.

Occasional Branches.—The common carotid usually gives off no branch previous to its bifurcation; but it occasionally gives origin to the superior thyroid or its laryngeal branch, the ascending pharyngeal, the inferior thyroid, or, more rarely, the vertebral artery.

Surface Marking.—The carotid arteries are covered throughout their entire extent by the Sterno-mastoid muscle, but their course does not correspond to the anterior border of the muscle, which passes in a somewhat curved direction from the mastoid process to the sterno-clavicular joint. The course of the artery is indicated more exactly by a line drawn from the sternal end of the clavicle below, to a point midway between the angle of the jaw and the mastoid process above. That portion of the line below the level of the upper border of the thyroid cartilage would represent the course of the vessel.

Surgical Anatomy.—The operation of tying the common carotid artery may be necessary in a case of wound of that vessel or its branches, in aneurism, or in a case of pulsating tumor of the orbit or skull. If the wound involves the trunk of the common carotid, it will be necessary to tie the artery through the wound above and below the wounded part. If the wound is too small to admit of safe and rapid work it must be enlarged. In cases of aneurism, or where one of

the branches of the common carotid is wounded in an inaccessible situation, it may be judged necessary to tie the trunk. In such cases the whole of the artery is accessible, and any part may be tied except close to either end. When the case is such as to allow of a choice being made, the lower part of the carotid should never be selected as the spot upon which to place a ligature, for not only is the artery in this situation placed very deeply in the neck, but it is covered by three layers of muscles, and, on the left side, in the great majority of cases, the internal jugular vein passes obliquely in front of it. Neither should the upper end be selected, for here the superior thyroid vein and its tributaries would give rise to very considerable difficulty in the application of a ligature. The point most favorable for the operation is that part of the vessel which is at the level of the cricoid cartilage. It occasionally happens that the carotid artery bifurcates below its usual position: if the artery be exposed at its point of bifurcation, both divisions of the vessel should be tied near their origin, in preference to tying the trunk of the artery near its termination; and if, in consequence of the entire absence of the common carotid or from its early division, two arteries, the external and internal carotids, are met with, the ligature should be placed on that vessel which is found on compression to be connected with the disease.

Ligation of the Carotid at the Level of the Cricoid Cartilage (*Ligation in the Triangle of Election*).—The triangle of election is bounded posteriorly by the anterior edge of the sterno-cleido-mastoid; is bounded above by the posterior belly of the digastric; is bounded below by the anterior belly of the omohyoid. In this operation the direction of the vessel and the inner margin of the Sterno-mastoid are the chief guides to its performance. The patient should be placed on his back with the head thrown back and turned slightly to the opposite side: an incision is to be made, three inches long, in the direction of the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, so that the centre corresponds to the level of the cricoid cartilage; after dividing the integument, superficial fascia, and Platysma, the deep fascia must be cut through on a director, so as to avoid wounding numerous small veins that are usually found beneath. The head may now be brought forward so as to relax the parts somewhat, and the margins of the wound are held asunder by retractors. The descendens hypoglossi nerve may now be exposed, and must be avoided, and, the sheath of the vessel having been raised by forceps, is to be opened to a small extent over the artery at its inner side. The internal jugular vein may present itself alternately distended and relaxed; this should be compressed both above and below, and drawn outward, in order to facilitate the operation. The aneurism needle is passed from the outside, care being taken to keep the needle in close contact with the artery, and thus avoid the risk of injuring the internal jugular vein or including the vagus nerve. Before the ligature is tied it should be ascertained that nothing but the artery is included in it.

Ligation of the Common Carotid at the Lower Part of the Neck (*Ligation in the Triangle of Necessity*).—The triangle of necessity is bounded above by the anterior belly of the omo-hyoid; is bounded behind by the anterior margin of the sterno-cleido-mastoid; is bounded in front by the mid-line of the neck. This operation is sometimes required in cases of aneurism of the upper part of the carotid, especially if the sac is of large size. It is best performed by dividing the sternal origin of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, but may be done in some cases, if the aneurism is not of very large size, by an incision along the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, extending down to the sterno-clavicular articulation, and by then retracting the muscle. The easiest and best plan, however, is to make an incision two or three inches long down the lower part of the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle to the sterno-clavicular joint, and a second incision, starting from the termination of the first, along the upper border of the clavicle for about two inches. This incision is made through the superficial and deep fascia, and the sternal origin of the muscle is exposed. This is to be divided on a director, and turned up, with the superficial structures, as a triangular flap. Some loose connective tissue is to be divided or torn through, and the outer border of the Sterno-hyoid muscle exposed. In doing this care must be taken not to wound the anterior jugular vein, which crosses the muscle to reach the external jugular or subclavian vein. The Sterno-hyoid, and with it the Sterno-thyroid, are to be drawn inward by means of a retractor, and the sheath of the vessel is exposed. This must be opened with great care on its inner or tracheal side, so as to avoid the internal jugular vein. This is especially necessary on the left side, where the artery is commonly overlapped by the vein. On the right side there is usually an interval between the artery and the vein, and not the same risk of wounding the latter.

The common carotid artery, being a long vessel without any branches, is particularly suitable for the performance of Brasdor's operation for the cure of an aneurism of the lower part of the vessel. Brasdor's procedure consists in ligaturing the artery on the distal side of the aneurism, and in the case of the common carotid there are no branches given off from the vessel between the aneurism and the site of the ligature; hence the flow of blood through the sac of the aneurism is diminished and cure takes place in the usual way, by the deposit of laminated fibrin.

Collateral Circulation.—After ligature of the common carotid the collateral circulation can be perfectly established, by the free communication which exists between the carotid arteries of opposite sides, both without and within the cranium, and by enlargement of the branches of the subclavian artery on the side corresponding to that on which the vessel has been tied—the

chief communication outside the skull taking place between the superior thyroid from the external carotid and the inferior thyroid from the subclavian, the profunda cervicis from the subclavian and the superior intercostal with the arteria princeps cervicis of the occipital; the vertebral taking the place of the internal carotid within the cranium.

Sir A. Cooper had an opportunity of dissecting, thirteen years after the operation, the case in which he first successfully tied the common carotid (the second case in which he performed the operation).[1] The injection, however, does not seem to have been a successful one. It showed merely that the arteries at the base of the brain (circle of Willis) were much enlarged on the side of the tied artery, and that the anastomosis between the branches of the external carotid on the affected side and those of the same artery on the sound side was free, so that the external carotid was pervious throughout.

The **Intercarotid Body** (*carotid gland, retrocarotid corpuscle*) (see the Ductless Glands).

The External Carotid Artery (A. Carotis Externa) (Figs. 392, 393, 394).

The external carotid artery commences opposite the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, and, taking a slightly curved course, passes upward and forward, and then inclines backward to the space between the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw and the external meatus, where it divides into the superficial temporal and internal maxillary arteries. It rapidly diminishes in size in its course up the neck, owing to the number and large size of the branches given off from it. In the child it is somewhat smaller than the internal carotid, but in the adult the two vessels are of nearly equal size. At its commencement this artery is more superficial, and placed nearer the middle line than the internal carotid, and is contained in the triangular space bounded by the Sterno-mastoid behind, the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid below, and the posterior belly of the Digastric and the Stylo-hyoid above.

Relations.—It is covered by the skin, superficial fascia, Platysma, deep fascia and anterior margin of the Sterno-mastoid, and is crossed by the hypoglossal nerve, and by the lingual and facial veins; it is afterward crossed by the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, and higher up passes deeply into the substance of the parotid gland, where it lies beneath the facial nerve and the junction of the temporal and internal maxillary veins. *Internally* is the hyoid bone, wall of the pharynx, the superior laryngeal nerve, and the ramus of the jaw, from which it is separated by a portion of the parotid gland. *Externally*, in the lower part of its course, is the internal carotid artery. *Behind* it, near its origin, is the superior laryngeal nerve; and higher up, it is separated from the internal carotid by the Stylo-glossus and Stylo-pharyngeus muscles, the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, and part of the parotid gland.

Plan of the Relations of the External Carotid.

In front.
Skin, superficial fascia.
Platysma and deep fascia.
Anterior border of Sterno-mastoid.
Hypoglossal nerve.
Lingual and facial veins.
Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles.
Parotid gland with facial nerve and temporo-maxillary vein in its substance.

Internally.
Hyoid bone.
Pharynx.
Superior laryngeal nerve.
Parotid gland.
Ramus of jaw.

Externally.
Internal carotid artery.

[1] Guy's Hospital Reports, i., 56.

Behind.

Superior laryngeal nerve.
Stylo-glossus.
Stylo-pharyngeus.
Glosso-pharyngeal nerve.
Parotid gland.

Surface Marking.—The position of the external carotid artery may be marked out with sufficient accuracy by a line drawn from the front of the meatus of the external ear to the side of the cricoid cartilage, slightly arching the line forward.

Surgical Anatomy.—The application of a ligature to the external carotid may be required in case of wounds of this vessel, or of its branches when these cannot be tied, and in some cases of pulsating tumor of the scalp or face. The operation has not received the attention which it deserves, owing to the fear which surgeons have entertained of secondary hemorrhage, on account of the number of branches given off from the vessel. This fear, however, has been shown by Mr. Cripps not to be well founded.[1] Ligation is often very useful as a means of preventing excessive hemorrhage in operations about the face, jaws, and mouth. It is sometimes employed with the hope of lessening the growth of tumors by cutting off the blood supply, but ligation is useless for this purpose. Ligation of one external carotid artery arrests the circulation for only a brief period, and within a very few days the circulation is practically freely re-established. This result is seen to be inevitable when we recall the numerous branches of the external carotid, their free anastomoses, and the fact that a very great number of extremely minute vessels in the middle line join the external carotid system of one side to that of the other side. Robert H. M. Dawbarn points out that ligation of both external carotids produces only temporary anæmia, for "inside of a week or ten days thereafter the pulse can again be felt in the temporals and facials upon both sides."[2] Dawbarn points out that even after excision of the external carotids, with separate ligation of each of the eight branches, blood can still reach the nose, tongue, etc., from outside systems by twenty-nine distinct routes. Whereas ligation of even both carotids will not prevent the growth of a malignant tumor, excision of each external carotid, with separate control of its eight branches, will sometimes prove of great value in retarding the progress of a growth. It "starves" the growth and may cause it to shrink (Dawbarn's operation). To tie the external carotid near its origin, below the point where it is crossed by the Digastric, an incision about three inches in length should be made along the margin of the Sterno-mastoid, from the angle of the jaw to the upper border of the thyroid cartilage. The ligature should be applied between the lingual and superior thyroid branches. To tie the vessel above the Digastric, between it and the parotid gland, an incision should be made, from the lobe of the ear to the great cornu of the os hyoides, dividing successfully the skin, Platysma, and fascia. By drawing the Sterno-mastoid outward, the posterior belly of the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles downward, and separating them from the parotid gland, the vessel will be exposed, and a ligature may be applied to it. The circulation is at once re-established by the free communication between most of the large branches of the artery (facial, lingual, superior thyroid, occipital) and the corresponding arteries of the opposite side and by the anastomosis of its branches with those of the internal carotid, and of the occipital with the branches of the subclavian, etc.

Branches.—The external carotid artery gives off eight branches, which, for convenience of description, may be divided into four sets. (See Fig. 393, Plan of the Branches.)

Anterior.	*Posterior.*	*Ascending.*	*Terminal.*
Superior Thyroid.	Occipital.	Ascending Pharyngeal.	Superficial Temporal.
Lingual.	Posterior Auricular.		Internal Maxillary.
Facial.			

The student is here reminded that many variations are met with in the number, origin, and course of these branches in different subjects; but the above arrangement is that which is found in the great majority of cases.

The **Superior Thyroid Artery** (*a. thyreoidea superior*) (Figs. 392, 393, and 396) is the first branch given off from the external carotid, being derived from that vessel just below the great cornu of the hyoid bone. At its commencement it is quite superficial, being covered by the integument, fascia, and Platysma, and is contained

[1] Med.-Chir Trans., lxi., 229.

[2] The Treatment of Certain Malignant Growths.

in the triangular space bounded by the Sterno-mastoid, Digastric, and Omo-hyoid muscles. After running upward and inward for a short distance, it curves downward and forward, in an arched and tortuous manner, to the upper part of the thyroid gland, passing beneath the Omo-hyoid, Sterno-hyoid, and Sterno-thyroid muscles, and supplying them. It distributes numerous branches to the upper part of the gland, anastomosing with its fellow of the opposite side and with the inferior thyroid arteries. The terminal branches supplying the gland are generally two in number: one, the largest, the **anterior branch** (*ramus anterior*), descends at the anterior border of the lateral lobe of the gland, reaches the upper border of the isthmus, and then passes in the substance of the isthmus to the middle line of the neck, where it anastomoses with the corresponding artery of the opposite side: the **posterior branch** (*ramus posterior*) descends along the posterior border of the lateral lobe of the gland, the anterior and posterior branches anastomose with each other and with branches of the inferior thyroid, and both of them send branches to the thyroid gland (*rami glandulares*). Besides the arteries distributed to the muscles by which it is covered and to the substance of the gland, the branches of the superior thyroid are the following:

Hyoid.	Superior Laryngeal.
Superficial Descending Branch (Sterno-mastoid).	Crico-thyroid.

The **Hyoid** or **Infra-hyoid** (*ramus hyoideus*) is a small branch which runs along the lower border of the os hyoides beneath the Thyro-hyoid muscle; after supplying the muscles connected to that bone, it forms an arch, by anastomosing with the vessel of the opposite side.

The **Superficial Descending** or **Sterno-mastoid Branch** (*ramus sternocleidomastoideus*) runs downward and outward across the sheath of the common carotid artery, and supplies the Sterno-mastoid and neighboring muscles and integument. There is frequently a separate branch from the external carotid distributed to the Sterno-mastoid muscle.

The **Superior Laryngeal** (*a. laryngea superior*), larger than either of the preceding, accompanies the internal laryngeal nerve, beneath the Thyro-hyoid muscle: it pierces the thyro-hyoid membrane, and supplies the muscles, mucous membrane, and glands of the larynx, anastomosing with the branch from the opposite side.

The **Crico-thyroid** (*ramus cricothyreoideus*) is a small branch which runs transversely across the crico-thyroid membrane, communicating with the artery of the opposite side.

Arteries of the Thyroid Gland.—The thyroid gland is supplied by the two superior thyroids from the external carotid; the two inferior thyroids from the subclavian, and sometimes also by the thyreoidea ima from the innominate.

The superior thyroid joins the gland at the summit of the upper horn, passes down the posterior surface of the gland toward the inner surface of the upper horn, comes forward to the anterior margin of the inner surface, descends to the isthmus, and on the superior border of the isthmus anastomoses with the artery from the other side. The superior thyroid artery sends numerous branches across the anterior surface of the gland.

The inferior thyroid artery is larger than the superior artery. It passes to the posterior surface of the gland and divides into branches. Some of the branches enter the hilus; others track across the posterior surface of the gland. The inferior thyroid artery is close to the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The artery, as a rule, passes behind the nerve before it divides into branches. It may divide first and then one or two branches may be in front of the nerve. In unusual cases the artery before division is in front of the nerve, or all the branches are in front.[1]

[1] Berry. Diseases of the Thyroid Gland.

The thyreoidea ima passes to the lower portion of the gland. Berry points out that the thyroid arteries communicate very freely with each other; only the small branches pass into the interior of the gland; the larger branches "ramify on the surface of the gland, just beneath the capsule."[1]

Surgical Anatomy.—The superior thyroid, or one of its branches, is often divided in cases of cut throat, giving rise to considerable hemorrhage. In such cases the artery should be secured, the wound being enlarged for that purpose, if necessary. The operation may be easily performed, the position of the artery being very superficial, and the only structures of importance covering it being a few small veins. The operation of tying the superior thyroid artery to lessen the size of a bronchocele has been performed in numerous instances with partial or temporary success. When, however, the collateral circulation between this vessel and the artery of the opposite side, and the inferior thyroid, is completely re-established, the tumor usually regains its former size, and hence the operation has been given up, especially as better results are obtained by other means. Both thyroid arteries on the same side, and indeed all the four thyroid arteries, have been tied in enlarged thyroid. The superior and inferior thyroid arteries of the involved side are ligated before extirpating a goitrous lobe of the thyroid.

The position of the superficial descending branch is of importance in connection with the operation of ligation of the common carotid artery. It crosses and lies on the sheath of this vessel, and may chance to be wounded in opening the sheath. The position of the crico-thyroid branch should be remembered, as it may prove the source of troublesome hemorrhage during the operation of laryngotomy. In performing the operation of quick laryngotomy the crico-thyroid membrane should be incised transversely in order to avoid this vessel.

The **Lingual Artery** (*a. lingualis*) (Figs. 392 and 393) *arises* from the external carotid between the superior thyroid and facial; it first runs obliquely upward and inward to the great cornu of the hyoid bone; it then curves downward and forward, forming a loop which is crossed by the hypoglossal nerve, and, passing beneath the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, it runs horizontally forward, beneath the Hyo-glossus, and finally, ascending almost perpendicularly to the tongue, turns forward on its under surface as far as the tip, under the name of the **ranine artery.**

Relations.—Its *first*, or *oblique*, *portion* is superficial, being contained in the same triangular space as the superior thyroid artery, resting upon the middle constrictor of the pharynx, and covered by the Platysma and fascia of the neck. Its *second*, or *curved*, *portion* also lies upon the middle constrictor, being covered at first by the tendon of the Digastric and the Stylo-hyoid muscle, and afterward by the Hyo-glossus, the latter muscle separating it from the hypoglossal nerve. Its *third*, or *horizontal*, *portion* lies between the Hyo-glossus and Genio-hyo-glossus muscles. The *fourth*, or *terminal*, *part*, under the name of the **ranine**, runs along the under surface of the tongue to its tip: it is very superficial, being covered only by the mucous membrane, and rests on the Lingualis on the outer side of the Genio-hyo-glossus. The hypoglossal nerve crosses the lingual artery, and then becomes separated from it, in the second part of its course, by the Hyo-glossus muscle.

Branches.—The branches of the lingual artery are—the

Hyoid.	Sublingual.
Dorsalis Linguæ.	Ranine.

The **Hyoid** or **Supra-hyoid Branch** (*ramus hyoideus*) runs along the upper border of the hyoid bone, supplying the muscles attached to it and anastomosing with its fellow of the opposite side.

The **Dorsalis Linguæ** (*ramus dorsalis linguæ*) (Fig. 445) *arises* from the lingual artery beneath the Hyo-glossus muscle (which, in the figure, has been partly cut away, to show the vessel); it ascends to the dorsum of the tongue, and supplies the mucous membrane, the tonsil, soft palate, and epiglottis, anastomosing with its

[1] Berry. Diseases of the Thyroid Gland

fellow from the opposite side. This artery is frequently represented by two or three small branches.

The **Sublingual** (*a. sublingualis*), which may be described as a branch of bifurcation of the lingual artery, *arises* at the anterior margin of the Hyo-glossus muscle, and runs forward between the Genio-hyo-glossus and the sublingual gland. It supplies the substance of the gland, giving branches to the Mylo-hyoid and neighboring muscles, the mucous membrane of the mouth and gums. One branch runs behind the alveolar process of the lower jaw in the substance of the gum to anastomose with a similar artery from the other side.

The **Ranine** or **Deep Lingual** (*a. profunda linguæ*) may be regarded as the other branch of bifurcation. It is usually described as the continuation of the lingual artery; it runs along the under surface of the tongue, resting on the Inferior lingualis, and covered by the mucous membrane of the mouth; it lies on the outer side of the Genio-hyo-glossus, accompanied by the lingual nerve. On arriving at the tip of the tongue it is said to anastomose with the artery of the opposite side, but this is denied by Hyrtl. These vessels in the mouth are placed one on each side of the frænum.

Surgical Anatomy.—The lingual artery may be divided near its origin in cases of *cut throat*, a complication that not unfrequently happens in this class of wounds; or *severe hemorrhage* which cannot be restrained by ordinary means may ensue from a wound or deep ulcer of the tongue. In the former case the primary wound may be enlarged if necessary, and the bleeding vessels secured. In the latter case it has been suggested that the lingual artery should be tied near its origin. Ligature of the lingual artery is also occasionally practised, as a palliative measure, in cases of *cancer of the tongue*, in order to check the progress of the disease by starving the growth, and it is sometimes tied as a preliminary measure to *removal of the tongue*. The operation is a somewhat difficult one, on account of the depth of the artery, the number of important structures by which it is surrounded, the loose and yielding nature of the parts upon which it is supported, and its occasional irregularity of origin. An incision is to be made in a curved direction from a point one finger's breadth external to the symphysis of the jaw downward to the cornu of the hyoid bone, and then upward to near the angle of the jaw. Care must be taken not to carry this incision too far backward, for fear of endangering the facial vein. In the first incision the skin, superficial fascia, and Platysma will be divided, and the deep fascia exposed. The deep fascia is then to be incised and the submaxillary gland exposed and pulled upward by retractors. A triangular space is now exposed, *Lesser's triangle*, bounded internally by the posterior border of the Mylo-hyoid muscle: below and externally, by the tendon of the Digastric; and above, by the hypoglossal nerve. The floor of the space is formed by the Hyo-glossus muscle, beneath which the artery lies. The fibres of this muscle are now to be cut through horizontally and the vessel exposed, care being taken, while near the vessel, not to open the pharynx.

Troublesome hemorrhage may occur in the *division of the frænum* in children if the ranine arteries, which lie on each side of it, are wounded. The student should remember that the operation is always to be performed with a pair of blunt-pointed scissors, and the mucous membrane only is to be divided by a very superficial cut, which cannot endanger any vessel. The scissors, also, should be directed away from the tongue. Any further liberation of the tongue which may be necessary can be effected by tearing.

The **Facial** or **External Maxillary Artery** (*a. maxillaris externa*) (Figs. 392, 393, 394, and 395) *arises* a little above the lingual, and passes obliquely upward, beneath the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, and frequently beneath the hypoglossal nerve; it now runs forward under cover of the body of the lower jaw, lodged in a groove on the posterior surface of the submaxillary gland; this may be called the **cervical part** of the artery. It then curves upward over the body of the jaw at the anterior inferior angle of the Masseter muscle; passes forward and upward across the cheek to the angle of the mouth, then upward along the side of the nose, and terminates at the inner canthus of the eye, under the name of the **angular artery** (*a. angularis*). The facial artery, both in the neck and on the face, is remarkably tortuous: in the former situation its tortuosity enables it to accommodate itself to the movements of the pharynx in deglutition, and in the latter to the movements of the jaw and the lips and cheeks.

Relations.—*In the neck* its origin is superficial, being covered by the integument, Platysma, and fascia; it then passes beneath the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles and part of the submaxillary gland. It lies upon the middle constrictor of the pharynx, and is separated from the Stylo-glossus and Hyo-glossus muscles by a portion of the submaxillary gland. *On the face*, where it passes over the body of the lower jaw, it is comparatively superficial, lying immediately beneath the Platysma. In this situation its pulsation may be distinctly felt, and compression of the vessel against the bone can be effectually made. In its course over the face it is covered by the integument, the fat of the cheek, and, near the angle of the

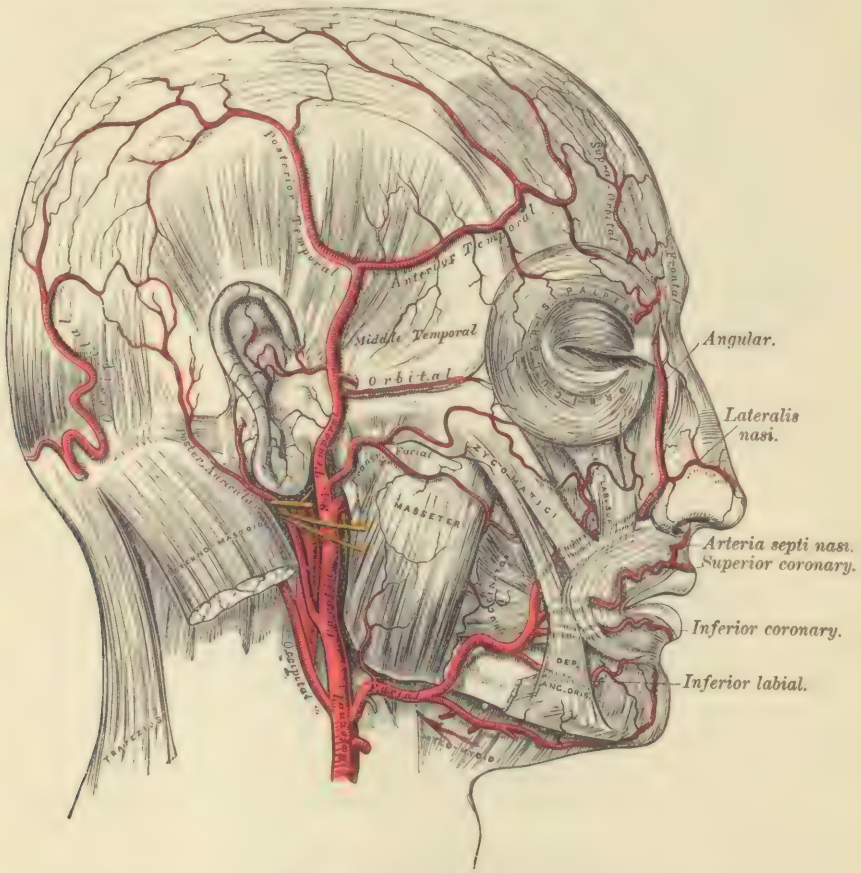


FIG. 394.—The arteries of the face and scalp.[1]

mouth, by the Platysma, Risorius, and Zygomatic muscles. It rests on the Buccinator, the Levator anguli oris, and the Levator labii superioris (sometimes piercing or else passing under this last muscle). The facial vein lies to the outer side of the artery, and takes a more direct course across the face, where it is separated from the artery by a considerable interval. In the neck it lies superficial to the artery. The branches of the facial nerve cross the artery, and branches of the infraorbital nerve lie beneath it.

Branches.—The branches of this vessel may be divided into two sets: those given off below the jaw (cervical), and those on the face (facial).

[1] The muscular tissue of the lips must be supposed to have been cut away, in order to show the course of the coronary arteries

Cervical Branches.	*Facial Branches.*
Inferior or Ascending Palatine.	Muscular.
Tonsillar.	Inferior Labial.
Submaxillary.	Inferior Coronary.
Submental.	Superior Coronary.
Muscular.	Lateral Nasal.
	Angular.

The **Inferior** or **Ascending Palatine** (*a. palatine ascendens*) passes up between the Stylo-glossus and Stylo-pharyngeus to the outer side of the pharynx, along which it is continued between the Superior constrictor and the Internal pterygoid to near the base of the skull. It supplies the neighboring muscles, the tonsil, and Eustachian tube, and divides, near the Levator palati, into two branches: one follows the course of the Levator palati, and, winding over the upper border of the Superior constrictor, supplies the soft palate and the palatine glands, anastomosing with its fellow of the opposite side and with the posterior palatine branch of the internal maxillary artery; the other pierces the Superior constrictor and supplies the tonsil, anastomosing with the tonsillar and ascending pharyngeal arteries.

The **Tonsillar** (*ramus tonsillaris*) passes up between the Internal pterygoid and Stylo-glossus, and then ascends along the side of the pharynx, perforating the Superior constrictor, to ramify in the substance of the tonsil and root of the tongue.

Fig. 395.—The coronary arteries, the glands of the lips, and the nerves of the right side seen from the posterior surface after removal of the mucous membrane. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **Submaxillary** or **Glandular Branches** (*rami glandulares*) consist of three or four large vessels, which supply the submaxillary gland, some being prolonged to the neighboring muscles, lymphatic glands, and integument.

The **Submental** (*a. submentalis*) (Fig. 392), the largest of the cervical branches, is given off from the facial artery just as that vessel quits the submaxillary gland: it runs forward upon the Mylo-hyoid muscle, just below the body of the jaw and beneath the Digastric; after supplying the surrounding muscles, and anastomosing with the sublingual artery by branches which perforate the Mylo-hyoid muscle, it arrives at the symphysis of the chin, where it turns over the border of the jaw and divides into a superficial and a deep branch; the former passes between the integument and Depressor labii inferioris, supplies both, and anastomoses with the inferior labial. The deep branch passes between the latter muscle and the bone, supplies the lip, and anastomoses with the inferior labial and mental arteries.

The **Muscular Branches** are distributed to the Internal pterygoid and Stylo-hyoid in the neck, and to the Masseter and Buccinator on the face.

The **Inferior Labial** (*a. labialis inferior*) (Fig. 394) passes beneath the Depressor anguli oris, to supply the muscles and integument of the chin and lower lip, anastomosing with the inferior coronary and submental branches of the facial, and with the mental branch of the inferior dental artery.

The **Inferior Coronary** (Figs. 394 and 395) is derived from the facial artery, near the angle of the mouth: it passes upward and inward beneath the depressor anguli oris, and, penetrating the Orbicularis oris muscle, runs in a tortuous course along the edge of the lower lip between this muscle and the mucous membrane, inosculating with the artery of the opposite side. This artery supplies the labial glands, the mucous membrane, and muscles of the lower lip, and anastomoses with the inferior labial from the facial and the mental branch of the inferior dental artery.

The **Superior Coronary** (*a. labialis superior*) (Figs. 394 and 395) is larger and more tortuous in its course than the preceding. It follows the same course along the edge of the upper lip, lying between the mucous membrane and the Orbicularis oris, and anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side. It supplies the textures of the upper lip, and gives off in its course two or three vessels which ascend to the nose. One, named the **inferior artery of the septum**, ramifies on the septum of the nostrils as far as the point of the nose, and there anastomoses with the naso-palatine artery; another, the **artery of the ala**, supplies the ala of the nose.

The **Lateralis Nasi** is derived from the facial, as that vessel is ascending along the side of the nose; it supplies the ala and dorsum of the nose, anastomosing with its fellow, the nasal branch of the ophthalmic, the inferior artery of the septum, the artery of the ala, and the infraorbital.

The **Angular Artery** (*a. angularis*) is the termination of the trunk of the facial; it ascends to the inner angle of the orbit, embedded in the fibres of the Levator labii superioris alæque nasi, and accompanied by a large vein, the **angular vein**; it distributes some branches on the cheek which anastomose with the infraorbital. After supplying the lachrymal sac and Orbicularis palpebrarum muscle, the angular artery terminates by anastomosing with the nasal branch of the ophthalmic artery.

The anastomoses of the facial artery are very numerous, not only with the vessel of the opposite side, but, in the neck, with the sublingual branch of the lingual; with the ascending pharyngeal; and with the posterior palatine, a branch of the internal maxillary, by its inferior or ascending palatine and tonsillar branches; on the face, with the mental branch of the inferior dental as it emerges from the mental foramen, with the transverse facial, a branch of the temporal; with the infraorbital, a branch of the internal maxillary, and with the nasal branch of the ophthalmic.

Peculiarities.—The facial artery not unfrequently arises by a common trunk with the lingual. This vessel is also subject to some variations in its size and in the extent to which it supplies the face. It occasionally terminates as the submental, and not unfrequently supplies the face only as high as the angle of the mouth or nose. The deficiency is then supplied by enlargement of one of the neighboring arteries.

Surgical Anatomy.—The passage of the facial artery over the body of the jaw would appear to afford a favorable position for the application of pressure in case of hemorrhage from the lips, the result either of an accidental wound or during an operation; but its application is useless, except for a very short time, on account of the free communication of this vessel with its fellow and with numerous branches from different sources. In a *wound involving the lip* it is better to seize the part between the fingers, and evert it, when the bleeding vessel may be at once secured with pressure-forceps. In order to *prevent hemorrhage* in cases of removal of diseased growths from the part, the lip should be compressed on each side between the fingers and thumb or by a pair of specially devised clamp-forceps, whilst the surgeon excises the diseased part. In order to stop hemorrhage where the lip has been divided in an operation, it is necessary, in uniting the edges of the wound, to pass the sutures through the cut edges from the skin almost as deep as the mucous surface; by these means not only are the cut surfaces more neatly and securely adapted to each other, but the possibility of hemorrhage is prevented by including in the suture

the divided artery. If the suture is, on the contrary, passed through merely the cutaneous portion of the wound, hemorrhage occurs into the cavity of the mouth. The student should, lastly, observe the relation of the angular artery to the lachrymal sac, and it will be seen that, as the vessel passes up along the inner margin of the orbit, it ascends on its nasal side. In operating for *fistula lacrimalis* the sac should always be opened on its outer side, in order that this vessel may be avoided.

The **Occipital Artery** (*a. occipitalis*) (Figs. 392, 393, 394, and 396) *arises* from the posterior part of the external carotid, opposite the facial, near the lower margin

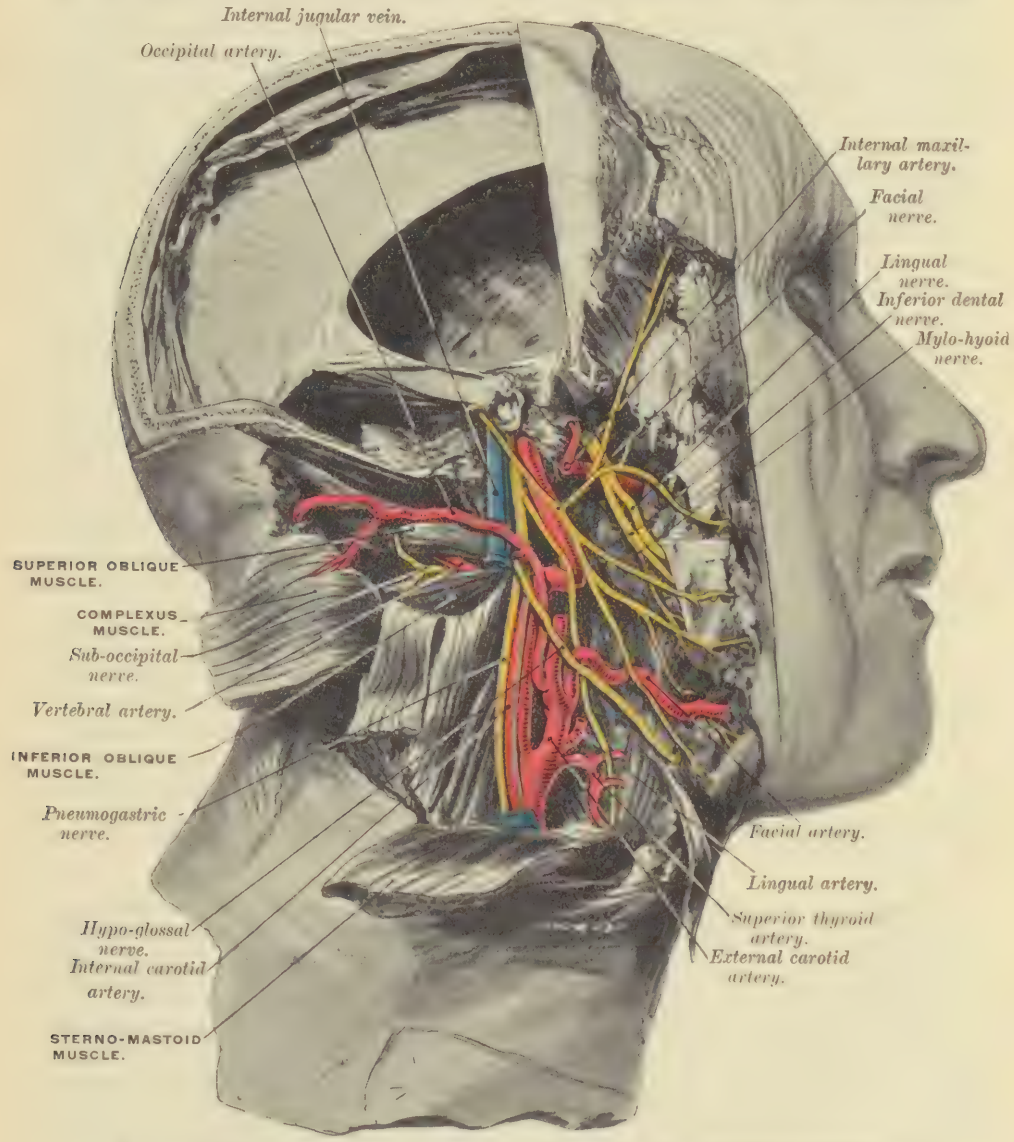


FIG. 396.—The occipital artery and its relations. (From a dissection by Mr. Gerald S. Hughes.)

of the Digastric muscle. At its origin it is covered by the posterior belly of the Digastric muscle and the Stylo-hyoid muscle, and the hypoglossal nerve winds around it from behind forward; higher up, it passes across the internal carotid artery, the internal jugular vein, and the pneumogastric and spinal accessory nerves;

it then ascends to the interval between the transverse process of the atlas and the mastoid process of the temporal bone, and passes horizontally backward, grooving the surface of the latter bone, being covered by the Sterno-mastoid, Splenius, Trachelo-mastoid, and Digastric muscles, and resting upon the Rectus lateralis, the Superior oblique, and Complexus muscles; it then changes its course and passes vertically upward, pierces the fascia which connects the cranial attachment of the Trapezius with the Sterno-mastoid, and ascends in a tortuous course over the occiput, as high as the vertex, where it divides into numerous branches (*rami occipitales*). It is accompanied in the latter part of its course by the great occipital nerve, and occasionally by a cutaneous filament from the suboccipital nerve.

Branches.—The branches given off from this vessel are—

Muscular.	Meningeal.
Sterno-mastoid.	Mastoid.
Auricular.	Arteria Princeps Cervicis.

The **Muscular Branches** (*rami musculares*) supply the Digastric, Stylo-hyoid, Splenius, and Trachelo-mastoid muscles.

The **Sterno-mastoid** (*a. sternocleidomastoidea*) is a large and constant branch, generally arising from the artery close to its commencement, but sometimes springing directly from the external carotid. It first passes downward and backward over the hypoglossal nerve, and enters the substance of the muscle in company with the spinal accessory nerve.

The **Auricular Branch** (*ramus auricularis*) supplies the back part of the concha. It frequently gives off a branch, which enters the skull through the mastoid foramen and supplies the dura mater, the diploë, and the mastoid cells.

The **Meningeal Branch** (*ramus meningeus*) ascends with the internal jugular vein, and enters the skull through the foramen lacerum posterius, or through the anterior condyloid foramen, to supply the dura mater in the posterior fossa.

The **Mastoid Branch** (*ramus mastoideus*) is a small vessel, by no means constant. It passes into the skull through the mastoid foramen and is distributed upon the dura mater of the posterior fossa.

The **Arteria Princeps Cervicis** (*ramus descendens*), the largest branch of the occipital, descends along the back part of the neck and divides into a superficial and a deep portion. The former runs beneath the Splenius, giving off branches which perforate that muscle to supply the Trapezius, which anastomose with the superficial cervical artery, a branch of the Transversalis colli: the latter passes beneath the Complexus between it and the Semispinalis colli, and anastomoses with branches from the vertebral and with the deep cervical artery, a branch of either the superior intercostal or the subclavian. The anastomosis between these vessels serves mainly to establish the collateral circulation after ligation of the carotid or subclavian artery.

The **cranial branches** (*rami occipitales*) of the occipital artery are distributed upon the occiput; they are very tortuous, and lie between the integument and Occipito-frontalis, anastomosing with the artery of the opposite side, the posterior auricular and temporal arteries. They supply the back part of the Occipito-frontalis muscle, the integument, and pericranium.

The **Posterior Auricular Artery** (*a. auricularis posterior*) (Figs. 392, 393, and 394) is a small vessel which *arises* from the external carotid, above the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, opposite the apex of the styloid process. It ascends, under cover of the parotid gland, on the styloid process of the temporal bone, to the groove between the cartilage of the ear and the mastoid process, immediately above which it divides into its two terminal branches, the **auricular** and **mastoid.** Just before arriving at the mastoid process, this artery is crossed by the facial nerve, and has beneath it the spinal accessory nerve.

Branches.—Besides several small branches to the Digastric, Stylo-hyoid, and Sterno-mastoid muscles and to the parotid gland, this vessel gives off three branches:

Stylo-mastoid. Auricular. Mastoid.

The **Stylo-mastoid Branch** (*a. stylomastoidea*) enters the stylo-mastoid foramen, and supplies the tympanum, mastoid cells, and semicircular canals. In the young subject a branch from this vessel forms, with the tympanic branch from the internal maxillary, a vascular circle, which surrounds the membrana tympani, and from which delicate vessels ramify on that membrane. It anastomoses with the petrosal branch of the middle meningeal artery by a twig, which enters the hiatus Fallopii.

The **Auricular Branch** (*ramus auricularis*), one of the terminal branches, ascends behind the ear, beneath the Retrahens auriculam muscle, and is distributed to the back part of the cartilage of the ear, upon which it ramifies minutely, some branches curving round the margin of the fibro-cartilage, others perforating it, to supply its anterior surface. It anastomoses with the posterior branch of the superficial temporal and also with the anterior auricular branches.

The **Mastoid Branch** (*ramus mastoideus*) passes backward, over the Sterno-mastoid muscle, to the scalp above and behind the ear. It supplies the posterior belly of the Occipito-frontalis muscles and the scalp in this situation. It anastomoses with the occipital artery.

The **Ascending Pharyngeal Artery** (*a. pharyngea ascendens*) (Figs. 392 and 393), the smallest branch of the external carotid, is a long, slender vessel, deeply seated in the neck, beneath the other branches of the external carotid and the Stylopharyngeus muscle. It arises from the back part of the external carotid, near the commencement of that vessel, and ascends vertically between the internal carotid and the side of the pharynx, to the under surface of the base of the skull, lying on the Rectus capitis anticus major muscle.

Branches.—Its branches may be subdivided into four sets:

Prevertebral. Pharyngeal. Tympanic. Meningeal.

The **Prevertebral Branches** are numerous small vessels which supply the Recti capitis antici and Longus colli muscles, the sympathetic, hypoglossal, and pneumogastric nerves, and the lymphatic glands. They anastomose with the ascending cervical artery.

The **Pharyngeal Branches** (*rami pharyngei*) are three or four in number. Two of these descend to supply the middle and inferior Constrictors and the Stylopharyngeus, ramifying in the substance of the muscles and in the submucous tissue of the mucous membrane lining them. The largest of the pharyngeal branches passes inward, running upon the Superior constrictor, and sends ramifications to the soft palate and tonsil, which take the place of the ascending palatine branch of the facial artery when that vessel is of small size. A twig from this branch supplies the Eustachian tube.

The **Tympanic Branch** (*a. tympanica inferior*) is a small artery which passes through a minute foramen in the petrous portion of the temporal bone, in company with the tympanic branch of the Glosso-pharyngeal nerve to supply the inner wall of the tympanum and anastomose with the other tympanic arteries.

The **Meningeal Branches** consist of several small vessels, which pass through foramina in the base of the skull, to supply the dura mater. One, the **posterior meningeal** (*a. meningea posterior*), enters the cranium through the foramen lacerum posterius; a second passes through the foramen lacerum medium; and occasionally a third through the anterior condyloid foramen. They are all distributed to the dura mater.

Surgical Anatomy.—The ascending pharyngeal artery has been wounded from the throat, as in the case in which the stem of a tobacco-pipe was driven into the vessel, causing fatal hemorrhage. After removal of the tonsil there is sometimes severe bleeding. This is almost never due to wounding of the internal carotid artery, as the latter vessel, if normally placed, is too far away to be damaged. The bleeding comes from branches of the ascending pharyngeal, tonsillar, or ascending palatine arteries.

The **Superficial Temporal Artery** (*a. temporalis superficialis*) (Fig. 392, 393, and 394), the smaller of the two terminal branches of the external carotid, appears, from its direction, to be the continuation of that vessel. It commences in the substance of the parotid gland, in the interspace between the neck of the lower jaw and the external auditory meatus, crosses over the posterior root of the zygoma, passes beneath the Attrahens auriculam muscle, lying on the temporal fascia, and divides, about two inches above the zygomatic arch, into two branches, an **anterior** and a **posterior**. This vessel is accompanied by the auriculo-temporal nerve.

The **Anterior Temporal** runs tortuously upward and forward to the forehead, supplying the muscles, integument, and pericranium in this region, and anastomoses with the supra-orbital and frontal arteries. The terminal portion of the anterior branch is called the **frontal artery** (*ramus frontalis*).

The **Posterior Temporal**, larger than the anterior, curves upward and backward along the side of the head, lying superficial to the temporal fascia, and inosculates with its fellow of the opposite side, and with the posterior auricular and occipital arteries. The terminal portion of the posterior branch is named the **parietal artery** (*ramus parietalis*).

The superficial temporal artery, as it crosses the zygoma, is covered by the Attrahens auriculam muscle, and by a dense fascia given off from the parotid gland: it is crossed by the temporo-facial division of the facial nerve and one or two veins, and is accompanied by the auriculo-temporal nerve, which lies behind it. Besides some twigs to the parotid gland, the articulation of the jaw, and the Masseter muscle.

Branches.—The branches of the superficial temporal artery are the—

Transverse Facial.	Orbital.
Middle Temporal.	Anterior Auricular.

The **Transverse Facial Branch** (*a. transversa faciei*) is given off from the temporal before that vessel quits the parotid gland; running forward through its substance, it passes transversely across the face, between Stenson's duct and the lower border of the zygoma, and divides on the side of the face into numerous branches, which supply the parotid gland, the Masseter muscle, and the integument, anastomosing with the facial, masseteric, and infra-orbital arteries. This vessel rests on the Masseter, and is accompanied by one or two branches of the facial nerve. It is sometimes a branch of the external carotid.

The **Middle Temporal Artery** (*a. temporalis media*) *arises* immediately above the zygomatic arch, and, perforating the temporal fascia, gives branches to the Temporal muscle, anastomosing with the deep temporal branches of the internal maxillary. It occasionally gives off an **orbital** branch, which runs along the upper border of the zygoma, between the two layers of the temporal fascia, to the outer angle of the orbit. This branch, which may arise directly from the superficial temporal artery, supplies the Orbicularis palpebrarum, and anastomoses with the lachrymal and palpebral branches of the ophthalmic artery.

The **Orbital Artery** (*a. zygomaticoorbitalis*) comes off from the temporal just above the zygoma and is distributed to the upper orbital margin.

The **Anterior Auricular Branches** (*rami auriculares anteriores*) are distributed to the anterior portion of the pinna, the lobule, and part of the external meatus, anastomosing with branches of the posterior auricular.

Surgical Anatomy. Formerly the operation of *arteriotomy* was performed upon this vessel in cases of inflammation of the eye or brain, but at the present time the operation is obsolete. If the student will consider the relations of the trunk of the vessels as it crosses the zygomatic arch, with the surrounding structures, he will observe that it is covered by a thick and dense fascia, crossed by one of the main divisions of the facial nerve and one or two veins, and accompanied by the auriculo-temporal nerve. The anterior branch, on the contrary, is subcutaneous, and is a large vessel.

The **Internal Maxillary Artery** (*a. maxillaris interna*) (Figs. 397 and 398), the larger of the two terminal branches of the external carotid, *arises* from that vessel opposite the neck of the condyle of the lower jaw, and is at first imbedded in the

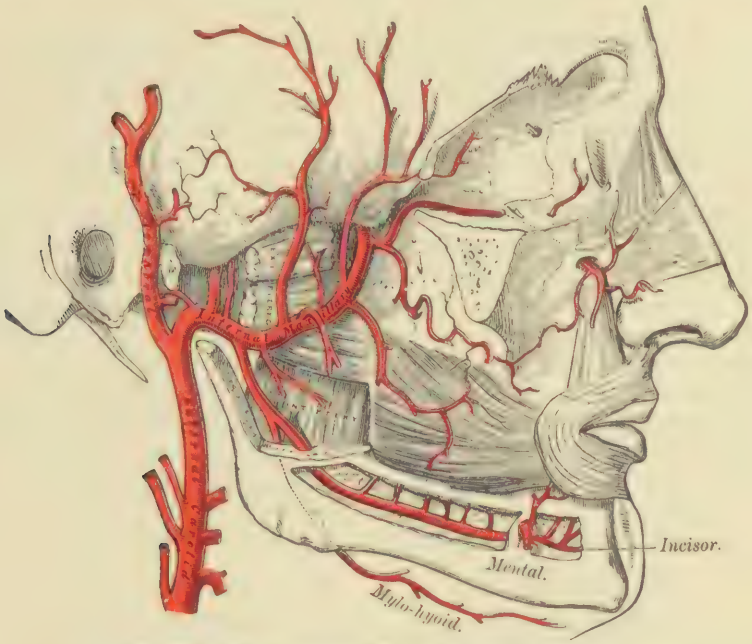


Fig. 397.—The internal maxillary artery and its branches.

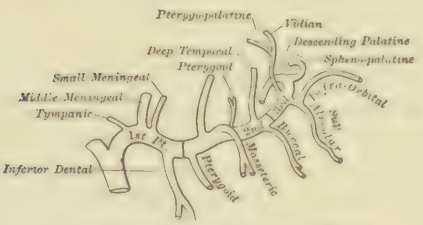


Fig. 398.—Plan of the branches.

substance of the parotid gland; it passes inward between the ramus of the jaw and the internal lateral ligament, and then upon the outer surface of the External pterygoid muscle to the spheno-maxillary fossa, to supply the deep structures of the face. For convenience of description it is divided into three portions: a **maxillary**, a **pterygoid**, and **spheno-maxillary**.

In the first part of its course, the **maxillary portion**, the artery passes horizontally forward and inward, between the ramus of the jaw and the internal lateral ligament. The artery here lies parallel to and a little below the auriculo-temporal nerve; it crosses the inferior dental nerve, and lies along the lower border of the External pterygoid muscle.

In the second part of its course, the **pterygoid portion**, it runs obliquely forward, and upward upon the outer surface of the External pterygoid muscle, being covered by the ramus of the lower jaw and lower part of the Temporal muscle; or it may pass on the inner surface of the External pterygoid muscle to reach the interval between its two heads, between which it passes to reach the spheno-maxillary fossa.

In the third part of its course, the **spheno-maxillary portion**, it approaches the superior maxillary bone, and enters the spheno-maxillary fossa in the interval between the two heads of the External pterygoid muscle, where it lies in relation with Meckel's ganglion, and gives off its terminal branches.

The branches of this vessel may be divided into three groups, corresponding with its three divisions.

Branches of the First or Maxillary Portion (Fig. 398):

Anterior Tympanic.
Deep Auricular.
Middle Meningeal.
Small Meningeal.
Inferior Dental.

The **Anterior Tympanic Branch** (*a. tympanica anterior*) passes upward behind the articulation of the lower jaw, enters the tympanum through the Glaserian fissure, and ramifies upon the membrana tympani, forming a vascular circle around the membrane with the stylo-mastoid artery, and anastomosing with the Vidian and the tympanic branch from the internal carotid.

The **Deep Auricular Branch** (*a. auricularis profunda*) often *arises* in common with the preceding. It passes upward in the substance of the parotid gland, behind the temporo-maxillary articulation, pierces the cartilaginous or bony wall of the external auditory meatus, and supplies its cuticular lining and the outer surface of the membrana tympani.

The **Middle Meningeal Branch** (*a. meningea media*) is the largest of the branches which supply the dura mater. It *arises* from the internal maxillary, between the internal lateral ligament and the neck of the jaw, and passes vertically upward between the two roots of the auriculo-temporal nerve to the foramen spinosum of the sphenoid bone. On entering the cranium it divides into two branches, anterior and posterior. The **anterior branch**, the larger, crosses the great ala of the sphenoid, and reaches the groove, or canal, in the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone; it then divides into two branches which spread out between the dura mater and internal surface of the cranium, one passing upward over the parietal bone as far as the vertex, and sending rami backward to the occipital bone, the other passing front to the inner surface of the frontal bone. The **posterior branch** crosses the squamous portion of the temporal, and on the inner surface of the parietal bone divides into branches which supply the posterior part of the dura mater and cranium. The branches of this vessel are distributed partly to the dura mater, but chiefly to the bones; they anastomose with the arteries of the opposite side, and with the anterior and posterior meningeal arteries.

The middle meningeal on entering the cranium gives off the following collateral branches: 1. Numerous small vessels to the Gasserian ganglion, and to the dura mater in this situation. 2. A branch, the **petrosal branch** (*ramus petrosus superficialis*), which enters the hiatus Fallopii, supplies the facial nerve, and anastomoses with the stylo-mastoid branch of the posterior auricular artery. 3. A minute **superior tympanic branch** (*a. tympanica superior*), which runs in the canal for the Tensor tympani muscle, and supplies this muscle and the lining membrane of the canal. 4. **Orbital branches**, which pass through the sphenoidal fissure, or through separate canals in the great wing of the sphenoid to anastomose with the lachrymal or other branches of the ophthalmic artery. 5. **Temporal or anastomotic branches**, which pass through foramina in the great wing of the

sphenoid bone and anastomose in the temporal fossa with the deep temporal arteries.

Surgical Anatomy.—The middle meningeal is an artery of considerable surgical importance, as it may be injured in *fractures of the temporal region* of the skull. The vessel may be ruptured by traumatism, even though the skull escapes fracture. *Rupture of the middle meningeal artery* will be followed by considerable hemorrhage between the bone and dura mater, which may cause compression of the brain and require the operation of trephining for its relief. This artery crosses the anterior inferior angle of the parietal bone at a point 1½ inches behind the external angular process of the frontal bone, and 1¾ inches above the zygoma. From this point the anterior branch passes upward and slightly backward to the sagittal suture, lying about ½ inch to ¾ inch behind the coronal suture. The posterior branch passes upward and backward over the squamous portion of the temporal bone. In order to expose the artery as it lies in the groove in the parietal bone, a semilunar incision, with its convexity upward, should be made, commencing an inch behind the external angular process, and carried backward for two inches. The structures cut through are: (1) skin; (2) superficial fascia, with branches of the superficial temporal vessels and nerves; (3) the fascia continued down from the aponeurosis of the Occipito-frontalis; (4) the two layers of the temporal fascia; (5) the temporal muscle; (6) the deep temporal vessels; (7) the pericranium. The bone is trephined, the clot removed, and the vessel secured by ligatures, suture ligatures, or gauze packing.

The **Small Meningeal Branch** (*ramus meningeus accessorius*) is sometimes derived from the preceding, usually from the internal maxillary. It enters the skull through the foramen ovale, and supplies the Gasserian ganglion and dura mater.

The **Mandibular, Inferior Alveolar** or **Inferior Dental Branch** (*a. alveolaris inferior*) descends with the inferior dental nerve to the foramen on the inner side of the ramus of the jaw. It runs along the *dental canal* in the substance of the bone, accompanied by the nerve, and opposite the first bicuspid tooth divides into two branches, the incisor and mental; the **incisor branch** is continued forward beneath the incisor teeth as far as the symphysis, where it anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side; the **mental branch** (*a. mentalis*) escapes with the nerve at the mental foramen, supplies the structures composing the chin, and anastomoses with the submental, inferior labial and inferior coronary arteries. Near its origin the inferior dental artery gives off a **lingual branch**, which descends with the lingual (gustatory) nerve and supplies the mucous membrane of the mouth. As the inferior dental artery enters the foramen it gives off a **mylo-hyoid branch** (*ramus mylohyoideus*), which runs in the mylo-hyoid groove, and ramifies on the under surface of the Mylo-hyoid muscle. The dental and incisor arteries during their course through the substance of the bone give off a few twigs which are lost in the cancellous tissue, and a series of branches which correspond in number to the roots of the teeth: these enter the minute apertures at the extremities of the fangs and supply the pulp of the teeth.

Branches of the Second or Pterygoid Portion (Fig. 398):

Deep Temporal.	Masseteric.
Pterygoid.	Buccal.

These branches are distributed, as their names imply, to the muscles in the maxillary region.

The **Deep Temporal Branches**, two in number, **anterior** (*a. temporalis profunda anterior*) and **posterior** (*a. temporalis profunda posterior*), each occupy that part of the temporal fossa indicated by its name. Ascending between the Temporal muscle and pericranium, they supply that muscle and anastomose with the middle temporal artery. The anterior branch communicates with the lachrymal artery through small branches which perforate the malar bone and great wing of the sphenoid.

The **Pterygoid Branches** (*rami pterygoidei*), irregular in their number and origin, supply the Pterygoid muscles.

The **Masseteric** (*a. masseterica*) is a small branch which passes outward, above the sigmoid notch of the lower jaw, to the deep surface of the Masseter muscle. It supplies that muscle, and anastomoses with the masseteric branches of the facial and with the transverse facial artery.

The **Buccal** (*a. buccinatoria*) is a small branch which runs obliquely forward between the Internal pterygoid and the ramus of the jaw, to the outer surface of the Buccinator, to which it is distributed, anastomosing with branches of the facial artery.

Branches of the Third or Spheno-maxillary Portion (Fig. 398):

Superior Alveolar or Alveolar.	Vidian.
Infraorbital.	Pterygo-palatine.
Descending or Posterior Palatine.	Naso- or Spheno-palatine.

The **Superior Alveolar, Alveolar** or **Posterior Dental Branch** (*a. alveolaris superior posterior*) is given off from the internal maxillary by a common branch with the infraorbital, and just as the trunk of the vessel is passing into the spheno-maxillary fossa. Descending upon the tuberosity of the superior maxillary bone, it divides into numerous branches, some of which enter the posterior dental canals, to supply the upper molar and bicuspid teeth and the lining of the antrum, and others are continued forward on the alveolar process to supply the gums of the upper jaw.

The **Infraorbital** (*a. infraorbitalis*) appears, from its direction, to be the continuation of the trunk of the internal maxillary. It *arises* from that vessel by a common trunk with the preceding branch, and runs along the infra-orbital canal with the superior maxillary nerve, emerging upon the face at the infra-orbital foramen, beneath the Levator labii superioris muscle. Whilst contained in the canal, it gives off branches which ascend into the orbit, and assist in supplying the Inferior rectus and Inferior oblique muscles and the lachrymal gland. Other branches, **anterior dental** (*aa. alveolares superiores anteriores*), descend through the anterior dental canals in the bone, to supply the mucous membrane of the antrum and the front teeth of the upper jaw. On the face, some branches pass upward to the inner angle of the orbit and the lachrymal sac, anastomosing with the angular branch of the facial artery; other branches pass inward toward the nose, anastomosing with the nasal branch of the ophthalmic; and other branches descend beneath the Levator labii superioris muscle, and anastomose with the transverse facial and buccal arteries.

The four remaining branches arise from that portion of the internal maxillary which is contained in the spheno-maxillary fossa.

The **Descending** or **Posterior Palatine** (*a. palatina descendens*) descends through the posterior palatine canal with the anterior palatine branch of Meckel's ganglion, and, emerging from the posterior palatine foramen, runs forward in a groove on the inner side of the alveolar border of the hard palate to the anterior palatine canal, where the terminal branch of the artery passes upward through the foramen of Stenson to anastomose with the naso-palatine artery. Its branches are distributed to the gums, the mucous membrane of the hard palate, and the palatine glands. Whilst it is contained in the palatine canal it gives off branches which descend in the accessory palatine canals to supply the soft palate and tonsil, anastomosing with the ascending palatine artery.

Surgical Anatomy.—The position of the descending palatine artery on the hard palate should be borne in mind in performing an operation for the closure of a cleft in the hard palate, as the vessel is in danger of being wounded, and may give rise to formidable hemorrhage. In case it should be wounded it may be necessary to plug the posterior palatine canal in order to arrest the bleeding. This artery may bleed furiously in the operation of resection of the upper jaw.

The **Vidian Branch** (*a. canalis pterygoidei*) passes backward along the Vidian canal with the Vidian nerve. It is distributed to the upper part of the pharynx and Eustachian tube, sending a small branch into the tympanum, which anastomoses with the other tympanic arteries.

The **Pterygo-palatine** is a very small branch, which passes backward through the pterygo-palatine canal with the pharyngeal nerve, and is distributed to the upper part of the pharynx and Eustachian tube.

The **Naso-** or **Spheno-palatine** (*a. sphenopalatina*) passes through the spheno-palatine foramen into the cavity of the nose, at the back part of the superior meatus, and divides into two branches: one **internal**, the **naso-palatine** or **artery of the septum**, passes obliquely downward and forward along the septum nasi, supplies the mucous membrane, and anastomoses in front with the terminal branch of the descending palatine and the inferior artery of the septum, which is a branch of the superior coronary. The **external branches**, two or three in number, supply the mucous membrane covering the lateral wall of the nose, the antrum, and the ethmoid and sphenoid cells.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE TRIANGLES OF THE NECK (Fig. 269).

The student having considered the relative anatomy of the large arteries of the neck and their branches, and the relations they bear to the veins and nerves, should now examine these structures collectively, as they present themselves in certain regions of the neck, in each of which important operations are constantly being performed.

The side of the neck presents a somewhat quadrilateral outline, limited, *above*, by the lower border of the body of the jaw, and an imaginary line extending from the angle of the jaw to the mastoid process; *below*, by the prominent upper border of the clavicle; in *front*, by the median line of the neck; *behind*, by the anterior margin of the Trapezius muscle. This space is subdivided into two large triangles by the Sterno-mastoid muscle, which passes obliquely across the neck, from the sternum and clavicle below to the mastoid process above. The triangular space in front of this muscle is called the **anterior triangle**; and that behind it, the **posterior triangle.**

Anterior Triangle of the Neck.—The anterior triangle is bounded in *front*, by an imaginary line extending from the chin to the sternum; *behind*, by the anterior margin of the Sterno-mastoid; its *base*, directed upward, is formed by the lower border of the body of the jaw and an imaginary line extending from the angle of the jaw to the mastoid process; its apex is below, at the sternum. This space is subdivided into three smaller triangles by the Digastric muscle above and the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid below. These smaller triangles are named, from below upward, the **inferior carotid**, the **superior carotid**, and the **submaxillary triangle.**

The **Inferior Carotid Triangle** or the **Triangle of Necessity** is bounded, in *front*, by the median line of the neck; *behind*, by the anterior margin of the Sterno-mastoid; *above*, by the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid; and is covered by the integument, superficial fascia, Platysma, and deep fascia, ramifying between which are some of the descending branches of the superficial cervical plexus. Beneath these superficial structures are the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, which, together with the anterior margin of the Sterno-mastoid, conceal the lower part of the common carotid artery.[1] The floor of this triangle is formed

[1] Therefore the common carotid artery and internal jugular vein are not, strictly speaking, contained in this triangle, since they are covered by the Sterno-mastoid muscle, that is to say, lie behind the anterior border of that muscle, which forms the posterior border of the triangle. But, as they lie very close to the structures which are really contained in the triangle, and whose position it is essential to remember in operating on this part of the artery, it has seemed expedient to study the relations of all these parts together.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

by the Longus colli muscle below and by the Scalenus anticus muscle above, between which muscles the vertebral artery and vein will be found passing into the foramen of the transverse process of the sixth cervical vertebra. A small portion of the origin of the Rectus capitis anticus major may also be seen on the floor of the space.

The common carotid artery is enclosed within its sheath, together with the internal jugular vein and pneumogastric nerve; the vein lying on the outer side of the artery on the right side of the neck, but overlapping it below on the left side; the nerve lying between the artery and vein, on a plane posterior to both. In front of the sheath are a few filaments descending from the loop of communication between the Descendens and communicans hypoglossi; behind the sheath are seen the inferior thyroid artery, the recurrent laryngeal nerve, and the sympathetic nerve; and on its inner side, the trachea, the thyroid gland—much more prominent in the female than in the male—and the lower part of the larynx. By cutting into the upper part of this space and slightly displacing the Sterno-mastoid muscle the common carotid artery may be tied below the Omo-hyoid muscle.

The **Superior Carotid Triangle** or the **Triangle of Election** is bounded, *behind*, by the Sterno-mastoid; *below*, by the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid; and *above*, by the posterior belly of the Digastric muscle. It is covered by the integument, superficial fascia, Platysma, and deep fascia, ramifying between which are branches of the facial and superficial cervical nerves. Its floor is formed by parts of the Thyro-hyoid and Hyo-glossus muscles, and the Inferior and Middle constrictor muscles of the pharynx. This space, when dissected, is seen to contain the upper part of the common carotid artery, which bifurcates opposite the upper border of the thyroid cartilage into the external and internal carotid. These vessels are occasionally somewhat concealed from view by the anterior margin of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, which overlaps them. The external and internal carotid lie side by side, the external being the more anterior of the two. The following branches of the external carotid are also met with in this space: the superior thyroid, running forward and downward; the lingual, directly forward; the facial, forward and upward; the occipital, backward; and the ascending pharyngeal directly upward on the inner side of the internal carotid. The veins met with are: the internal jugular, which lies on the outer side of the common and internal carotid arteries, and veins corresponding to the above-mentioned branches of the external carotid—viz., the superior thyroid, the lingual, facial, ascending pharyngeal, and sometimes the occipital, all of which accompany their corresponding arteries and terminate in the internal jugular. The nerves in this space are the following: In front of the sheath of the common carotid is the descendens hypoglossi. The hypoglossal nerve crosses both the internal and external carotids above, curving round the occipital artery at its origin. Within the sheath, between the artery and vein, and behind both, is the pneumogastric nerve; behind the sheath, the sympathetic. On the outer side of the vessels the spinal accessory nerve runs for a short distance before it pierces the Sterno-mastoid muscle; and on the inner side of the external carotid, just below the hyoid bone, may be seen the internal laryngeal nerve; and, still more inferiorly, the external laryngeal nerve. The upper part of the larynx and lower part of the pharynx are also found in the front part of this space.

The **Submaxillary Triangle** corresponds to the part of the neck immediately beneath the body of the jaw. It is bounded, *above*, by the lower border of the body of the jaw and a line drawn from its angle to the mastoid process; *below*, by the posterior belly of the Digastric muscle and the Stylo-hyoid muscle; in *front*, by the anterior belly of the Digastric. It is covered by the integument, superficial fascia, Platysma, and deep fascia, ramifying between which are branches of the facial and ascending filaments of the superficial cervical nerves. Its floor is formed by the Mylo-hyoid and Hyo-glossus muscles. This space contains, in front, the sub-

maxillary gland, superficial to which is the facial vein, while imbedded in it are the facial artery and its glandular branches; beneath this gland, on the surface of the Mylo-hyoid muscle, are the submental artery and the mylo-hyoid artery and nerve. The posterior part of this triangle is separated from the anterior part by the stylo-maxillary ligament: it contains the external carotid artery, ascending deeply in the substance of the parotid gland: this vessel here lies in front of, and superficial to, the internal carotid, being crossed by the facial nerve, and gives off in its course the posterior auricular, temporal, and internal maxillary branches: more deeply are the internal carotid artery, the internal jugular vein, and the pneumogastric nerve, separated from the external carotid by the Stylo-glossus and Stylo-pharyngeus muscles and the glosso-pharyngeal nerve.[1]

Posterior Triangle of the Neck.—The posterior triangle is bounded, in *front*, by the Sterno-mastoid muscle; *behind*, by the anterior margin of the Trapezius; its *base* corresponds to the middle third of the clavicle; its *apex*, to the occiput. The space is crossed, about an inch above the clavicle, by the posterior belly of the Omo-hyoid, which divides it unequally into two, an **upper** or **occipital** and a **lower** or **subclavian triangle.**

The **Occipital Triangle**, the larger division of the posterior triangle, is bounded, in *front*, by the Sterno-mastoid; *behind*, by the Trapezius; *below*, by the Omo-hyoid. Its floor is formed from above downward by the Splenius, Levator anguli scapulæ, and the Middle and posterior scaleni muscles. It is covered by the integument, the Platysma below, the superficial and deep fasciæ; the spinal accessory nerve is directed obliquely across the space from the Sterno-mastoid, which it pierces, to the under surface of the Trapezius; below, the descending branches of the cervical plexus and the transversalis colli artery and vein cross the space. A chain of lymphatic glands is also found running along the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, from the mastoid process to the root of the neck.

The **Subclavian Triangle**, the smaller of the two posterior triangles, is bounded, *above*, by the posterior belly of the Omo-hyoid; *below*, by the clavicle, its base, directed forward, being formed by the Sterno-mastoid. The size of the subclavian triangle varies according to the extent of attachment of the clavicular portion of the Sterno-mastoid and Trapezius muscles, and also according to the height at which the Omo-hyoid crosses the neck above the clavicle. Its height also varies much according to the position of the arm, being much diminished by raising the limb, on account of the ascent of the clavicle, and increased by drawing the arm downward, when that bone is depressed. This space is covered by the integument, the Platysma, the superficial and deep fasciæ, and crossed by the descending branches of the cervical plexus. Just above the level of the clavicle the third portion of the subclavian artery curves outward and downward from the outer margin of the Scalenus anticus, across the first rib, to the axilla. Sometimes this vessel rises as high as an inch and a half above the clavicle, or to any point intermediate between this and its usual level. Occasionally it passes in front of the Scalenus anticus or pierces the fibres of that muscle. The subclavian vein lies behind the clavicle, and is usually not seen in this space; but it occasionally rises as high up as the artery, and has even been seen to pass with that vessel behind the Scalenus anticus. The brachial plexus of nerves lies above the artery, and in close contact with it. Passing transversely behind the clavicle are the suprascapular vessels, and traversing its upper angle in the same direction, the transversalis colli artery and vein. The external jugular vein runs vertically downward behind the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, to terminate in the

[1] The same remark will apply to this triangle as was made about the inferior carotid triangle. The structures enumerated as contained in the back part of the space lie, strictly speaking, beneath the muscles which form the posterior boundary of the triangle; but as it is very important to bear in mind their close relation to the parotid gland and its boundaries (on account of the frequency of surgical operations on this gland), all these parts are spoken of together.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

subclavian vein; it receives the transverse cervical and suprascapular veins, which occasionally form a plexus in front of the artery, and a small vein which crosses the clavicle from the cephalic. The small nerve to the Subclavius muscle also crosses this triangle about its middle. A lymphatic gland is also found in the space. Its floor is formed by the first rib with the first digitation of the Serratus magnus.

The Internal Carotid Artery (A. Carotis Interna).

The internal carotid artery supplies the anterior part of the brain, the eye, and its appendages, and sends branches to the forehead and nose. Its size in the adult is equal to that of the external carotid, though in the child it is larger than that vessel. It is remarkable for the number of curvatures that it presents in different parts of its course. It occasionally has one or two flexures

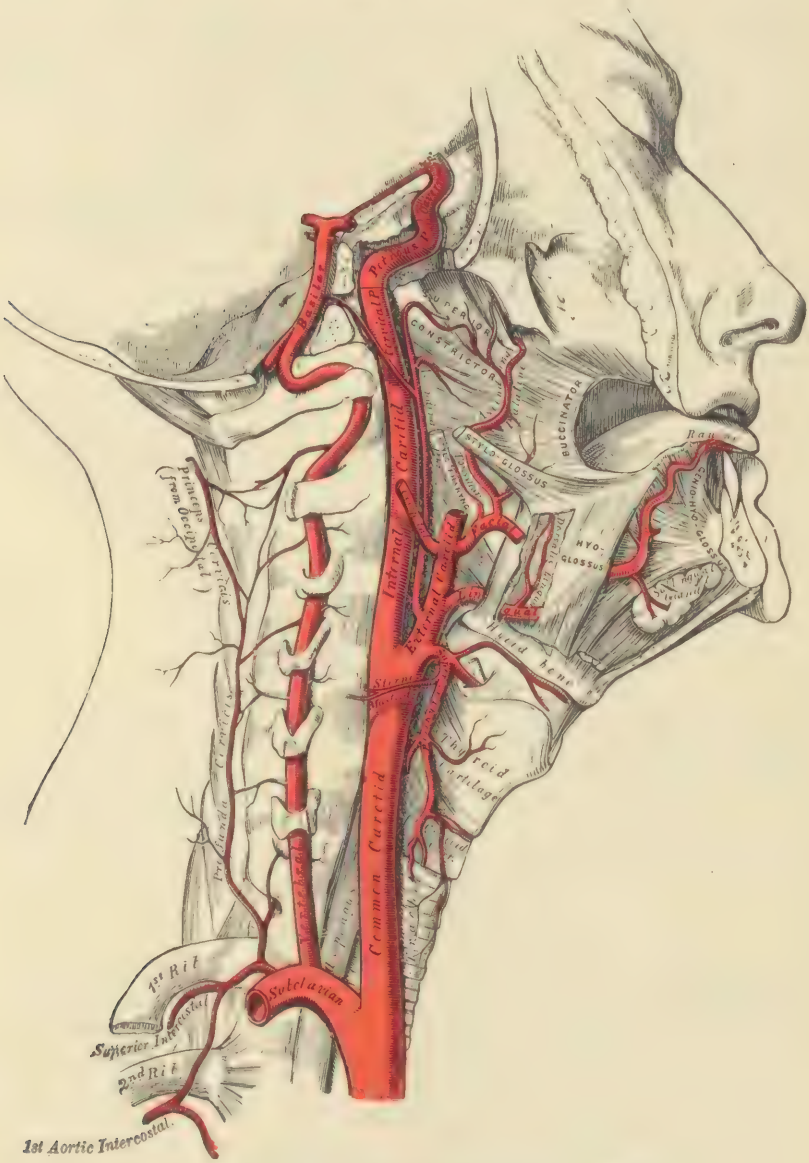


FIG. 399.—The internal carotid and vertebral arteries. Right side.

near the base of the skull, whilst in its passage through the carotid canal and along the side of the body of the sphenoid bone it describes a double curve which resembles somewhat the letter S placed horizontally. These curvatures most probably diminish the velocity of the current of blood, by increasing the extent of surface over which it moves and adding to the impediment produced from friction.

In considering the course and relations of this vessel it may be conveniently divided into four portions: the **cervical, petrous, cavernous,** and **cerebral portions.**

Cervical Portion.—This portion of the internal carotid commences at the bifurcation of the common carotid, opposite the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, and runs perpendicularly upward, in front of the transverse processes of the three upper cervical vertebræ, to the carotid canal in the petrous portion of the temporal bone. It is superficial at its commencement, being contained in the superior carotid triangle, and lying on the same level as the external carotid, but behind that artery overlapped by the Sterno-mastoid and covered by the deep fascia, Platysma, and integument: it then passes beneath the parotid gland, being crossed by the hypoglossal nerve, the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles, and the occipital and posterior auricular arteries. Higher up, it is separated from the external carotid by the Stylo-glossus and Stylo-pharyngeus muscles, the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, and pharyngeal branch of the pneumogastric.

Relations.—It is in relation, *behind*, with the Rectus capitis anticus major, the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, and superior laryngeal nerve; *externally*, with the internal jugular vein and pneumogastric nerve, the nerve lying on a plane posterior to the artery; *internally*, with the pharynx, tonsil, the superior laryngeal nerve, and ascending pharyngeal artery. At the base of the skull the glosso-pharyngeal, vagus, spinal accessory, and hypoglossal nerves lie between the artery and the internal jugular vein.

Plan of the Relations of the Internal Carotid Artery in the Neck.

In front.
Skin, superficial and deep fasciæ.
Platysma.
Sterno-mastoid.
Occipital and posterior auricular arteries.
Hypoglossal nerve.
Parotid gland.
Stylo-glossus and Stylo-pharyngeus muscles.
Glosso-pharyngeal nerve.
Pharyngeal branch of the pneumogastric.

Externally.
Internal jugular vein.
Pneumogastric nerve.

Internally.
Pharynx.
Superior laryngeal nerve.
Ascending pharyngeal artery.
Tonsil.

Behind.
Rectus capitis anticus major.
Sympathetic.
Superior laryngeal nerve.

Petrous Portion.—When the internal carotid artery enters the canal in the petrous portion of the temporal bone, it first ascends a short distance, then curves forward and inward, and again ascends as it leaves the canal to enter the cavity of the skull between the lingula and petrosal process. In this canal the artery lies at first in front of the cochlea and tympanum; from the latter cavity it is separated by a thin, bony lamella, which is cribriform in the young subject, and is often absorbed in old age. Farther forward it is separated from the Gasserian ganglion by a thin plate of bone, which forms the floor of the fossa for the ganglion and the roof of the horizontal portion of the canal. Frequently this bony plate is more

or less deficient, and then the ganglion is separated from the artery by a fibrous membrane. The artery is separated from the bony wall of the carotid canal by a prolongation of dura mater, and is surrounded by a number of small veins and by filaments of the carotid plexus, derived from the ascending branch of the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic.

Cavernous Portion.—The internal carotid artery in this part of its course is situated between the layers of the dura mater forming the cavernous sinus, but is covered by the lining membrane of the sinus. It at first ascends to the posterior clinoid process, then passes forward by the side of the body of the sphenoid bone, and again curves upward on the inner side of the anterior clinoid process, and perforates the dura mater, forming the roof of the sinus. In this part of its course it is surrounded by filaments of the sympathetic nerve, and has in relation with it externally the sixth nerve.

Cerebral Portion.—Having perforated the dura mater, on the inner side of the anterior clinoid process, the internal carotid passes between the second and third cranial nerves to the anterior perforated spot at the inner extremity of the fissure of Sylvius, where it gives off its terminal or cerebral branches. This portion of the artery has the optic nerve on its inner side, and the third nerve externally.

Peculiarities.—The length of the internal carotid varies according to the length of the neck, and also according to the point of bifurcation of the common carotid. Its origin sometimes takes place from the arch of the aorta; in such rare instances this vessel has been found to be placed nearer the middle line of the neck than the external carotid, as far upward as the larynx, when the latter vessel crossed the internal carotid. The course of the vessel, instead of being straight, may be very tortuous. A few instances are recorded in which this vessel was altogether absent: in one of these the common carotid passed up the neck, and gave off the usual branches of the external carotid, the cranial portion of the internal carotid being replaced by two branches of the internal maxillary, which entered the skull through the foramen rotundum and the foramen ovale and joined to form a single vessel.

Surgical Anatomy. The cervical part of the internal carotid is very rarely wounded. Mr. Cripps, in an interesting paper in the *Medico-Chirurgical Transactions*, compares the rareness of a wound of the internal carotid with one of the external carotid or its branches. It is, however, sometimes injured by a *stab or gunshot wound in the neck*, or even occasionally by a *stab from within the mouth*, as when a person receives a thrust from the end of a parasol or falls down with a tobacco-pipe in his mouth. It used to be believed that the internal carotid was occasionally wounded in the removal of the tonsil. Such an accident cannot happen if the artery is normally placed. The severe and sometimes fatal hemorrhage which has followed this operation in a few instances probably had as its source enlarged branches of the ascending pharyngeal, tonsillar, or ascending palatine arteries. Recently, however, Dr. Gwilym G. Davis, of Philadelphia, demonstrated a specimen in which the internal carotid could have been wounded by incision of the tonsil. The indications for ligature are *wounds*, when the vessel should be exposed by a careful dissection and tied above and below the bleeding point; and *aneurism*, which if non-traumatic may be treated by ligature of the common carotid, but if traumatic in origin by exposing the sac and tying the vessel above and below. The incision for ligature of the cervical portion of the internal carotid should be made along the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, from the angle of the jaw to the upper border of the thyroid cartilage. The superficial structures being divided and the Sterno-mastoid defined and drawn outward, the cellular tissue must be carefully separated and the posterior belly of the Digastric muscle and the hypoglossal nerve sought for as guides to the vessel. When the artery is found the external carotid should be drawn inward and the Digastric muscles upward, and the aneurism needle passed from without inward.

Branches.—The branches given off from the internal carotid artery are—

From the Petrous portion . .	Tympanic (internal or deep).
From the Cavernous portion . .	Arteriæ Receptaculi. Anterior Meningeal. Ophthalmic.
From the Cerebral portion . .	Anterior Cerebral. Middle Cerebral. Posterior Communicating. Anterior Choroid.

The cervical portion of the internal carotid gives off no branches.

The **Tympanic** (*ramus caroticotympanicus*) is a small branch from the petrous portion, which enters the cavity of the tympanum through a minute foramen in the carotid canal, and anastomoses with the tympanic branch of the internal maxillary, and with the stylo-mastoid artery.

The **Arteriæ Receptaculi** are numerous small vessels, derived from the internal carotid in the cavernous sinus; they supply the pituitary body, the Gasserian ganglion, and the walls of the cavernous and inferior petrosal sinuses. Some of these branches anastomose with branches of the middle meningeal.

The **Anterior Meningeal** (*a. meningea anterior*) is a small branch which passes over the lesser wing of the sphenoid to supply the dura mater of the anterior fossa; it anastomoses with the meningeal branch from the posterior ethmoidal artery.

The **Ophthalmic Artery** (*a. ophthalmica*) *arises* from the internal carotid, just as that vessel is emerging from the cavernous sinus, on the inner side of the anterior clinoid process, and enters the orbit through the optic foramen, below and

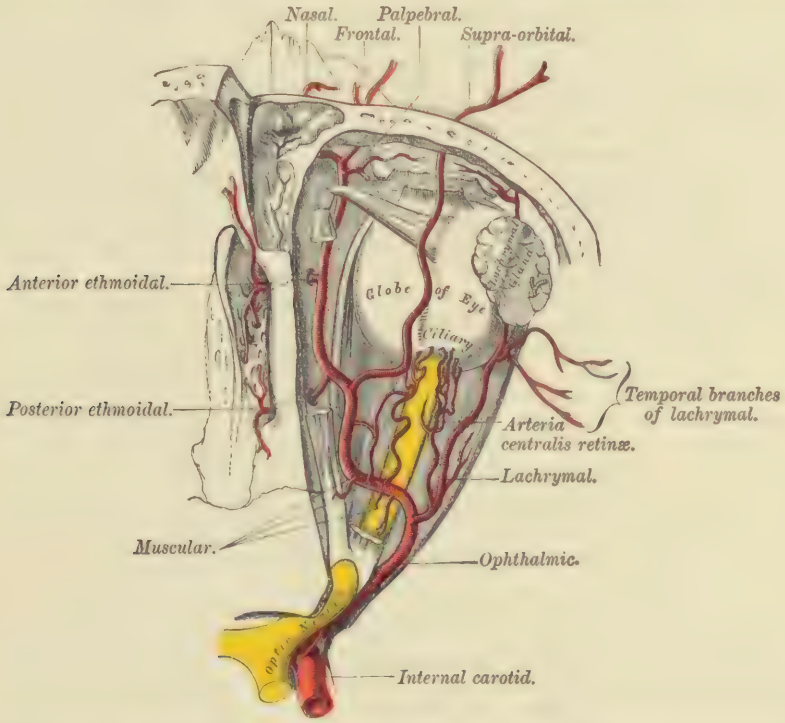


FIG. 400.—The ophthalmic artery and its branches, the roof of the orbit having been removed.

on the outer side of the optic nerve. It then passes over the nerve to the inner wall of the orbit, and thence horizontally forward, beneath the lower border of the Superior oblique muscle, to a point behind the internal angular process of the frontal bone, where it divides into two terminal branches, the **frontal** and **nasal branches.** As the artery crosses the optic nerve it is accompanied by the nasal nerve, and is separated from the frontal nerve by the Rectus superior and Levator palpebræ superioris muscles.

Branches.—The branches of this vessel may be divided into an **orbital group,** which are distributed to the orbit and surrounding parts, and an **ocular group,** which supply the muscles and globe of the eye:

Orbital Group.	*Ocular Group.*
Lachrymal.	Short Ciliary.
Supraorbital.	Long Ciliary.
Posterior Ethmoidal.	Anterior Ciliary.
Anterior Ethmoidal.	Arteria Centralis Retinæ.
Internal Palpebral.	Muscular.
Frontal.	
Nasal.	

The **Lachrymal** (*a. lachrimalis*) is one of the largest branches derived from the ophthalmic, arising close to the optic foramen; not infrequently it is given off from the ophthalmic artery before it enters the orbit. It accompanies the lachrymal nerve along the upper border of the External rectus muscle, and is distributed to the lachrymal gland. Its terminal branches, escaping from the gland, are distributed to the eyelids and conjunctiva: of those supplying the eyelids, two are of considerable size and are named the **external palpebral**; they run inward in the upper and lower lids respectively, and anastomose with the *internal palpebral arteries*, forming an arterial circle in this situation. The lachrymal artery gives off one or two **malar branches**, one of which passes through a foramen in the malar bone, to reach the temporal fossa, and anastomoses with the deep temporal arteries; the other appears on the cheek through the malar foramen, and anastomoses with the transverse facial. A branch, the **recurrent**, is also sent backward through the sphenoidal fissure to the dura mater, which anastomoses with a branch of the middle meningeal artery.

Peculiarities.—The lachrymal artery is sometimes derived from one of the anterior branches of the middle meningeal artery.

The **Supraorbital Artery** (*a. supraorbitalis*) *arises* from the ophthalmic as that vessel is crossing over the optic nerve. Ascending so as to arise above all the muscles of the orbit, it passes forward, with the supraorbital nerve, between the periosteum and Levator palpebræ muscle; and, passing through the supraorbital foramen, divides into a superficial and deep branch, which supply the integument, the muscles, and the pericranium of the forehead, anastomosing with the frontal, the anterior branch of the temporal, and the supraorbital artery of the opposite side. This artery in the orbit supplies the Superior rectus and the Levator palpebræ muscles, and sends a branch inward, across the pulley of the Superior oblique muscle, to supply the parts at the inner canthus. At the supraorbital foramen it frequently transmits a branch to the diploë.

The **Ethmoidal Branches** are two in number—**posterior** (*a. ethmoidalis posterior*) and **anterior** (*a. ethmoidalis anterior*). The former, which is the smaller, passes through the posterior ethmoidal foramen, supplies the posterior ethmoidal cells, and, entering the cranium, gives off a meningeal branch, which supplies the adjacent dura mater, and nasal branches which descend into the nose through apertures in the cribriform plate, anastomosing with branches of the spheno-palatine. The anterior ethmoidal artery accompanies the nasal nerve through the anterior ethmoidal foramen, supplies the anterior ethmoidal cells and frontal sinuses, and, entering the cranium, gives off a meningeal branch, which supplies the adjacent dura mater and nasal branches, which descend into the nose, through the slit by the side of the crista galli, and, running along the groove on the under surface of the nasal bone, supply the skin of the nose.

The **Internal Palpebral Arteries** (*aa. palpebrales mediales*), two in number, **superior** and **inferior**, *arise* from the ophthalmic, opposite the pulley of the Superior oblique muscle; they leave the orbit to encircle the eyelids near their free margin, forming a **superior tarsal arch** (*arcus tarseus superior*) and an **inferior tarsal arch** (*arcus tarseus inferior*), which lie between the Orbicularis muscle and the tarsal plates;

the superior palpebral inosculating at the outer angle of the orbit with the orbital branch of the temporal artery, and with the upper of the two external palpebral branches from the lachrymal artery—the inferior palpebral inosculating, at the outer angle of the orbit, with the lower of the two external palpebral branches

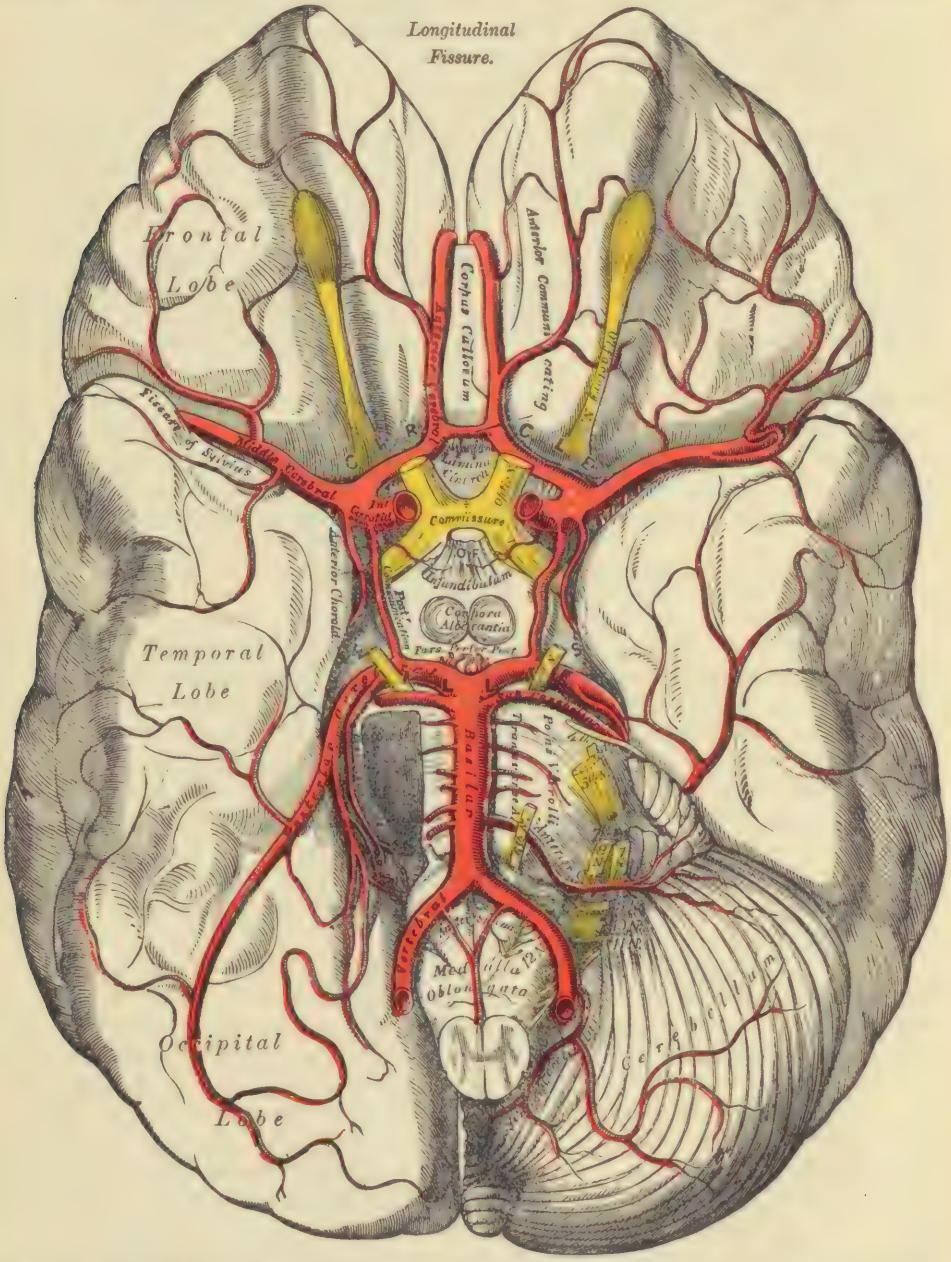


FIG. 401.—The arteries of the base of the brain. The right half of the cerebellum and pons have been removed. N. B.—It will be noticed that the two anterior cerebral arteries have been drawn at a considerable distance from each other: this makes the anterior communicating artery appear very much longer than it really is.

from the lachrymal and with the transverse facial artery, and at the inner side of the lid with a branch from the angular artery. From this last anastomosis a branch passes to the nasal duct, ramifying in its mucous membrane, as far as the inferior meatus.

The **Frontal Artery** (*a. frontalis*), one of the terminal branches of the ophthalmic, passes from the orbit at its inner angle, and, ascending on the forehead, supplies the integument, muscles, and pericranium, anastomosing with the supraorbital artery and with the frontal artery of the opposite side.

The **Nasal Artery** (*a. dorsalis nasi*), the other terminal branch of the ophthalmic, emerges from the orbit above the tendo oculi, and, after giving a branch to the upper part of the lachrymal sac, divides into two branches, one of which crosses the root of the nose, the **transverse nasal**, and anastomoses with the angular artery; the other, the **dorsalis nasi**, runs along the dorsum of the nose, supplies its outer surface, and anastomoses with the artery of the opposite side and with the lateral nasal branch of the facial.

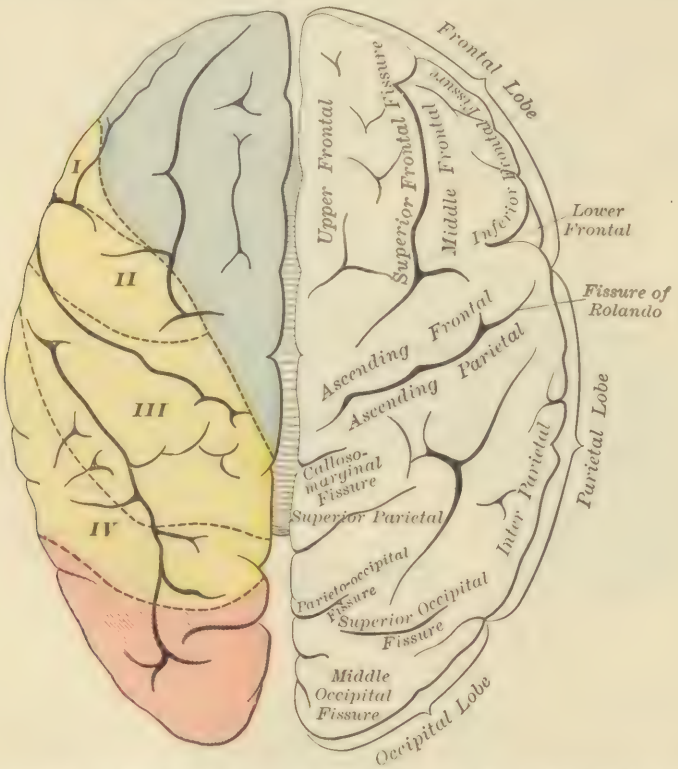


FIG. 402.—Vascular area of the upper surface of the cerebrum. I. The part supplied by the external and inferior frontal artery. II. The part supplied by the ascending frontal. III. The part supplied by the ascending parietal. IV. The part supplied by the parieto-sphenoidal artery. (After Duret.)

The **Ciliary Arteries** (*a. ciliares*) are divisible into three groups, the **short, long,** and **anterior.** The **short ciliary arteries** (*aa. ciliaris posteriores breves*), from six to twelve in number, *arise* from the ophthalmic or some of its branches; they surround the optic nerve as they pass forward to the posterior part of the eyeball, pierce the sclerotic coat around the entrance of the nerve, and supply the choroid coat and ciliary processes. The **long ciliary arteries** (*aa. ciliares posteriores longæ*), two in number, pierce the posterior part of the sclerotic at some little distance from the optic nerve, and run forward, along each side of the eyeball, between the sclerotic and choroid, to the ciliary muscle, where they divide into two branches; these form an arterial circle, the **circulus major**, around the circumference of the iris, from which numerous radiating branches pass forward, in its substance, to its free margin, where they form a second arterial circle, the **circulus minor**, around its pupillary margin. The **anterior ciliary arteries** (*aa. ciliares anteriores*) are

derived from the muscular branches; they pass to the front of the eyeball in company with the tendons of the Recti muscles, form a vascular zone beneath the conjunctiva, and then pierces the sclerotic a short distance from the cornea and terminate in the circulus major of the iris.

The **Arteria Centralis Retinæ** is the first and one of the smallest branches of the ophthalmic artery. It runs for a short distance within the dural sheath of the optic nerve, but about half an inch behind the eyeball it pierces the optic nerve obliquely, and runs forward in the centre of its substance, and enters the globe of the eye through the porus opticus. Its mode of distribution will be described in the account of the anatomy of the eye.

The **Muscular Branches** (*rami musculares*), two in number, **superior** and **inferior**, frequently spring from a common trunk. The **superior**, the smaller, often wanting, supplies the Levator palpebræ, Superior rectus, and Superior oblique. The **inferior**, more constant in its existence, passes forward, between the optic nerve and the Inferior rectus muscle, and is distributed to the External, Internal, and Inferior recti, and Inferior oblique. This vessel gives off most of the anterior ciliary arteries. Additional muscular branches are given off from the lachrymal and supraorbital arteries or from the ophthalmic itself.

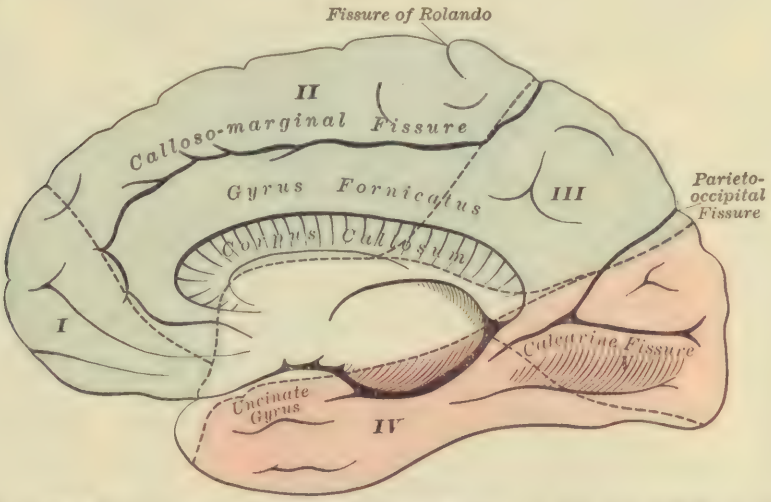


FIG. 403.—Vascular area of the internal surface of the cerebrum. I. The part supplied by the anterior internal frontal. II. The part supplied by the middle internal frontal. III. The part supplied by the posterior internal frontal. IV. The part supplied by the posterior temporal. V. The part supplied by the occipital, both terminal branches of the posterior cerebral. (After Duret.)

The **Anterior Cerebral** (*a. cerebri anterior*) *arises* from the internal carotid at the inner extremity of the fissure of Sylvius. It passes forward and inward across the anterior perforated space, above the optic nerve, to the commencement of the great longitudinal fissure. Here it comes into close relationship with the anterior cerebral artery of the opposite side, and the two vessels are connected together by a short anastomosing trunk, about two lines in length, the **anterior communicating artery**. From this point the two vessels run side by side in the longitudinal fissure, curve round the genu of the corpus callosum, and, turning backward, continue along its upper surface to its posterior part, where they terminate by anastomosing with the posterior cerebral arteries.

Branches.—In their course the anterior cerebral arteries give off the following branches:

Antero-median ganglionic. Anterior internal frontal.
Inferior internal frontal. Middle internal frontal.
Posterior internal frontal.

The **Antero-median Ganglionic** is a group of small arteries which *arise* at the commencement of the anterior cerebral artery; they pierce the anterior perforated space and lamina cinerea, and supply the head of the caudate nucleus.

The **Inferior Internal Frontal Branches** or the **Internal Orbital Arteries,** two or three in number, are distributed to the orbital surface of the frontal lobe, where they supply the olfactory lobe, gyrus rectus, and internal orbital convolution.

The **Anterior Internal Frontal** supplies a part of the marginal convolution, and sends branches over the edge of the hemisphere to the superior and middle frontal convolutions and upper part of the ascending frontal convolution.

The **Middle Internal Frontal** supplies the corpus callosum, the convolution of the corpus callosum, the inner surface of the first frontal convolution, and the upper part of the ascending frontal convolution.

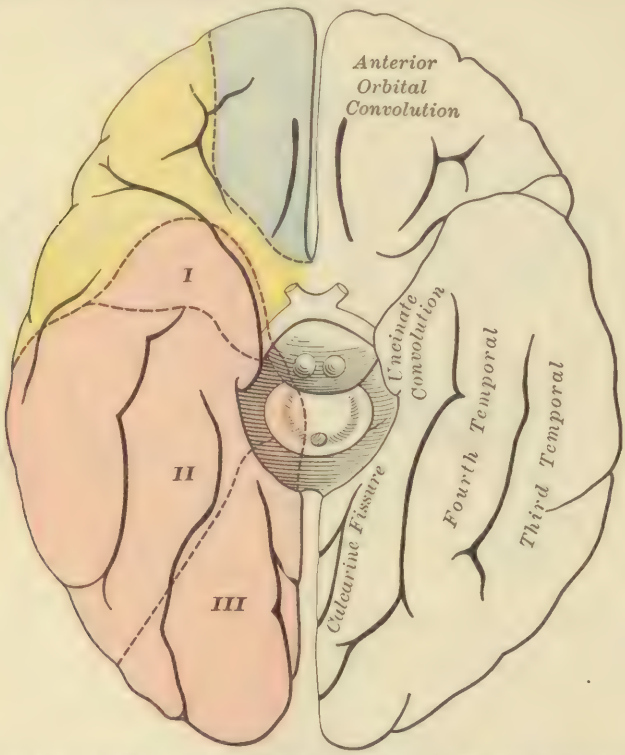


FIG. 404.—Vascular area of the inferior surface of the cerebrum. I. The part supplied by the anterior temporal from the posterior cerebral artery. II. The part supplied by the posterior temporal from the posterior cerebral artery. III. The part supplied by the occipital from the posterior cerebral artery. (After Duret.)

The **Posterior Internal Frontal** supplies the lobus quadratus and adjacent outer surface of the hemisphere.

The **Anterior Communicating Artery** (*a. communicans anterior*) is a short branch, about two lines in length, but of moderate diameter, connecting together the two anterior cerebral arteries across the longitudinal fissure. Sometimes this vessel is wanting, the two arteries joining together to form a single trunk, which afterward divides. Or the vessel may be wholly or partially divided into two; frequently it is longer and smaller than usual. It gives off some of the antero-median ganglionic group of vessels, which are, however, principally derived from the anterior cerebral.

The **Middle Cerebral Artery** (*a. cerebri media*) (Fig. 405), the largest branch of the internal carotid, passes obliquely outward along the fissure of Sylvius, and opposite the island of Reil divides into its terminal branches.

Branches.—The branches of the middle cerebral artery are—

Antero-lateral ganglionic.
Inferior external frontal.
Ascending frontal.
Ascending parietal.
Parieto-temporal.

The **Antero-lateral Ganglionic Branches** are a group of small arteries which *arise* at the commencement of the middle cerebral artery; they pierce the anterior perforated space and supply the greater part of the caudate nucleus, the lenticular nucleus, the internal capsule, and a part of the optic thalamus. One artery of this group (one of the **lenticulo-striate arteries**) is of larger size than the rest, and is of special importance, as being the artery in the brain most frequently ruptured; it has been termed by Charcot the **artery of cerebral hemorrhage.** It passes up between the lenticular nucleus and the external capsule, and ultimately ends in the caudate nucleus.

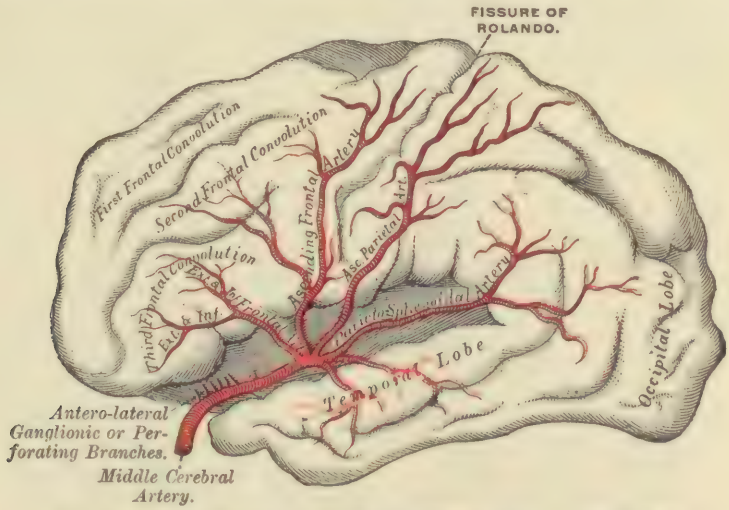


FIG. 405.—The distribution of the middle cerebral artery. (After Charcot.)

The **Inferior External Frontal** supplies the third or inferior frontal convolution, **Broca's convolution,** and the outer part of the orbital surface of the frontal lobe.

The **Ascending Frontal** supplies the ascending frontal convolution.

The **Ascending Parietal** supplies the ascending parietal convolution and the lower part of the superior parietal convolution.

The **Parieto-temporal** or **Parieto-sphenoidal** supplies the supramarginal, the superior, and part of the middle temporal convolutions, and the angular gyrus. It sends branches to the temporal lobe.

The **Posterior Communicating Artery** (*a. communicans posterior*) *arises* from the back part of the internal carotid, runs directly backward, and anastomoses with the posterior cerebral, a branch of the basilar. This artery varies considerably in size, being sometimes small, and occasionally so large that the posterior cerebral may be considered as arising from the internal carotid rather than from the basilar. It is frequently larger on one side than on the other side. From the posterior half of this vessel are given off a number of small branches, the **postero-median ganglionic branches,** which, with similar vessels from the posterior cerebral, pierce the posterior perforated space and supply the internal surfaces of the optic thalami and the walls of the third ventricle.

The **Anterior Choroid** (*a. chorioidea*) is a small but constant branch which arises from the back part of the internal carotid, near the posterior communicating artery. Passing backward and outward between the temporal lobe and the crus

cerebri, it enters the descending horn of the lateral ventricle through the transverse fissure and ends in the choroid plexus. It is distributed to the hippocampus major, corpus fimbriatum, velum interpositum, and choroid plexus.

THE BLOOD-VESSELS OF THE BRAIN.

Recent investigations have tended to show that the mode of distribution of the vessels of the brain has an important bearing upon a considerable number of the anatomical lesions of which this part of the nervous system may be the seat; it therefore becomes important to consider a little more in detail the way in which the cerebral vessels are distributed.

The cerebral arteries are derived from the internal carotid and the vertebral, which at the base of the brain form a remarkable anastomosis known as the **circle**

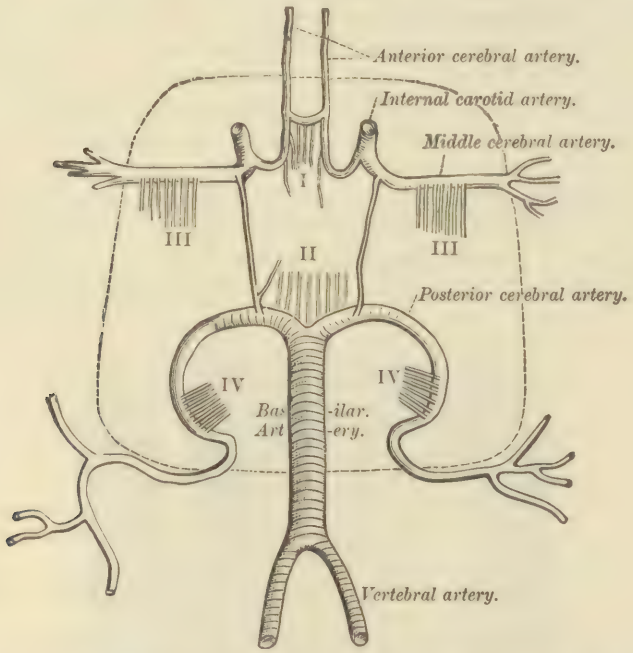


FIG. 406.—Diagram of the arterial circulation at the base of the brain. I. Antero-median group of ganglionic branches. II. Postero-median group. III. Right and left antero-lateral group. IV. Right and left postero-lateral group. The dotted line shows the limit of the ganglionic circle. (After Charcot.)

of Willis (*circulus arteriosus* [*Willisi*]). The tortuosity of the constituent vessels of the anastomosis lessens the impact of the circulation and saves the brain from damage. The outline of the vessels forming the so-called circle is said by Sappey to be hexagonal, and by Testut to be heptagonal. The circle of Willis is formed in front by the anterior cerebral arteries, branches of the internal carotid, which are connected together by the anterior communicating; behind by the two posterior cerebrals, branches of the basilar which are connected on each side to the internal carotid by the posterior communicating (Fig. 401). The parts of the brain included within this arterial circle are the lamina cinerea, the commissure of the optic nerves, the infundibulum, the tuber cinereum, the corpora albicantia, and the posterior perforated space. This arrangement of the vessels of the circle of Willis is not invariable; according to Windle it is maintained in little more than half the recorded cases. In the other cases there are various anomalies.

From the circle of Willis arise the three trunks which together supply each cerebral hemisphere. From its anterior part proceed the two anterior cerebrals, from its antero-lateral part the middle cerebrals, and from its posterior part the posterior cerebrals. Each of these principal arteries gives origin to two very different systems of secondary vessels. One of these systems has been named the **central ganglionic system**, and the vessels belonging to it supply the central ganglia of the brain; the other has been named the **cortical arterial system**, and its vessels ramify in the pia mater and supply the cortex and subjacent medullary matter. These two systems, though they have a common origin, do not communicate at any point of their peripheral distribution, and are entirely independent of each other. Though some of the arteries of the cortical system approach, at their terminations, the regions supplied by the central ganglionic system, no communication between the two sets of vessels takes place, and there is between the parts supplied by the two systems a borderland of diminished nutritive activity, where, it is said, softening is especially liable to occur in the brains of old people.

The Central Ganglionic System.—All the vessels belonging to this system are given off from the circle of Willis or from the vessels immediately after their origin from it, so that if a circle is drawn at a distance of about an inch from the circle of Willis, it will include the origin of all the arteries belonging to this system (Fig. 406). The vessels of this system form six principal groups: (I.) the **antero-median group**, derived from the anterior cerebrals and anterior communicating; (II.) the **postero-median group**, from the posterior cerebrals and posterior communicating; (III.) the right and left **antero-lateral group**, from the middle cerebrals; and (IV.) the right and left **postero-lateral group**, from the posterior cerebrals, after they have wound round the crura cerebri. The vessels belonging to this system are

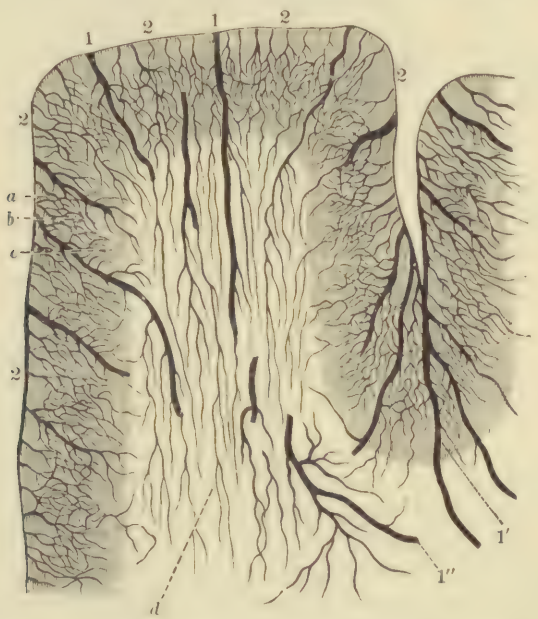


FIG. 407.—Distribution of the cortical arteries. 1. Medullary arteries. 1′. Group of medullary arteries in the sulcus between two adjacent convolutions. 1″. Arteries situated among the short association fibres. 2, 2. Cortical arteries. *a*. Capillary network with fairly wide meshes, situated beneath the pia mater. *b*. Network with more compact, polygonal meshes, situated in the cortex. *c*. Transitional network with wider meshes. *d*. Capillary network in the white matter. (After Charcot.)

larger than those of the cortical system, and are what Cohnheim has termed **terminal arteries**; that is to say, vessels which from their origin to their termination neither supply nor receive any anastomotic branches, so that by one of the small

vessels only a limited area of the central ganglia can be injected; and the injection cannot be driven beyond the area of the part supplied by the particular vessel which is the subject of the experiment.

The Cortical Arterial System.—The vessels forming this system are the terminal branches of the anterior, middle, and posterior cerebral arteries, described above. These vessels divide and ramify in the substance of the pia mater, and give off nutrient arteries which penetrate the cortex perpendicularly. These nutrient vessels are divisible into two classes—the long and short. The **long**—or, as they are sometimes called, the **medullary**—**arteries** pass through the gray matter to penetrate the centrum ovale to the depth of about an inch and a half, without intercommunicating otherwise than by very fine capillaries, and thus constitute so many independent small systems. The **short vessels** are confined to the cortex, where they form with the long vessels a compact network in the middle zone of the gray matter, the outer and inner zones being sparingly supplied with blood (Fig. 407). The vessels of the cortical arterial system are not so strictly terminal as those of the central ganglionic system, but they approach this type very closely, so that injection of one area from the vessel of another area, though it may be possible, is frequently very difficult, and is only effected through vessels of small calibre. As a result of this, obstruction of one of the main branches or its divisions may have the effect of producing softening in a very limited area of the cortex.[1]

ARTERIES OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The artery which supplies the upper extremity continues as a single trunk from its commencement down to the elbow, but different portions of it have received different names according to the region through which it passes. That part of the vessel which extends from its origin to the outer border of the first rib is termed the **subclavian artery**; beyond this point to the lower border of the axilla it is termed the **axillary artery**; and from the lower margin of the axillary space to the bend of the elbow it is termed the **brachial artery**; here the single trunk terminates by dividing into two branches, the radial and ulnar—an arrangement precisely similar to what occurs in the lower limb.

THE SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY (A. SUBCLAVIA) (Fig. 408).

The subclavian artery on the right side *arises* from the innominate artery opposite the right sterno-clavicular articulation; on the left side it arises from the arch of the aorta. It follows, therefore, that these two vessels must, in the first part of their course, differ in their length, their direction, and their relation with neighboring parts.

In order to facilitate the description of these vessels, more especially from a surgical point of view, each subclavian artery has been divided into three parts. The first portion, on the right side, passes upward and outward from the origin of the vessel to the inner border of the Scalenus anticus. On the left side it ascends nearly vertically, to gain the inner border of that muscle. The second part passes outward, behind the Scalenus anticus; and the third part passes from the outer margin of that muscle, beneath the clavicle, to the outer border of the first rib, where it becomes the axillary artery. The first portion of these two vessels differs so much in its course and in its relations with neighboring parts that it will be described separately. The second and third parts are alike on the two sides.

[1] The student who desires further information on this subject is referred to Charcot's Localization of Cerebral and Spinal Diseases, p. 42 *et seq.*, whence the facts above given have been principally derived. Ed. of 15th English edition.

First Part of the Right Subclavian Artery (Figs. 389, 390, 392, 408).

On the right side the subclavian artery *arises* from the arteria innominata, opposite the upper part of the right sterno-clavicular articulation, and passes upward and outward to the inner margin of the Scalenus anticus muscle (Figs. 389, 390, and 408). In this part of its course it ascends a little above the clavicle, the extent to which it does so varying in different cases.

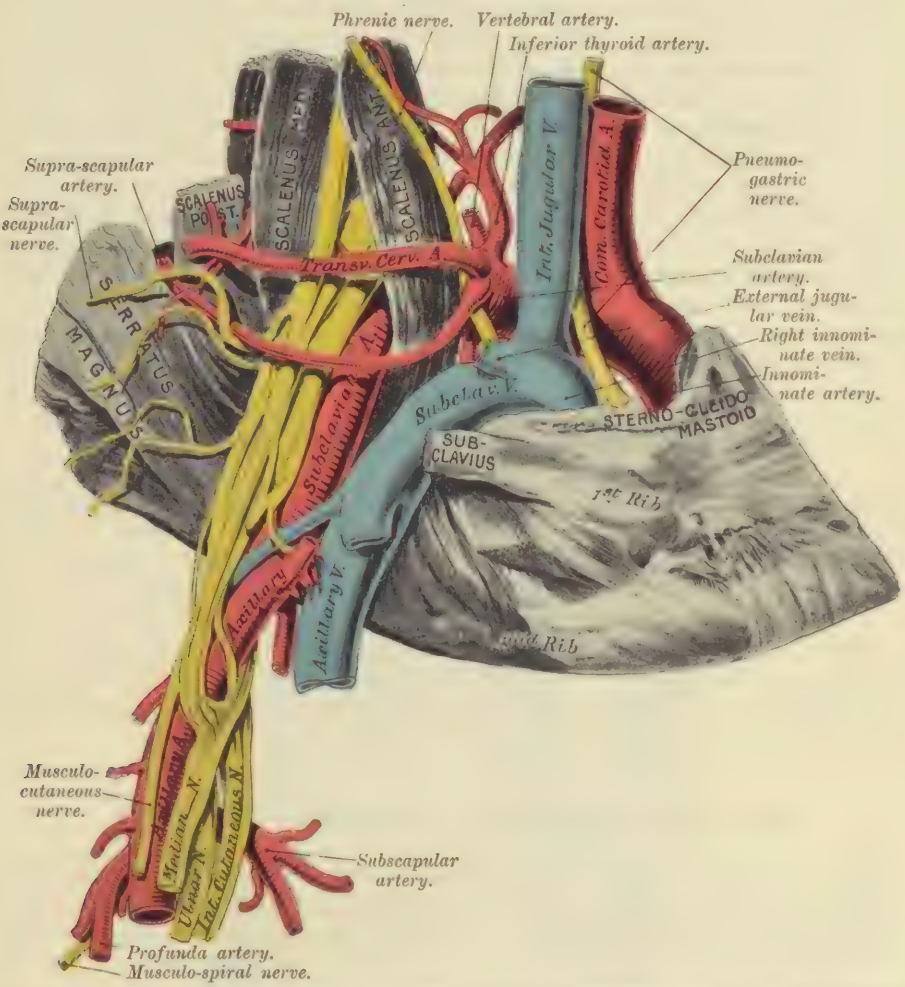


FIG. 408.—The subclavian artery, showing its relations. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

Relations.—It is covered, *in front*, by the integument, superficial fascia, Platysma, deep fascia, the clavicular origin of the Sterno-mastoid, the Sterno-hyoid, and Sterno-thyroid muscles, and a second layer of deep fascia. It is crossed by the internal jugular and vertebral veins, and by the pneumogastric nerve and the cardiac branches of the sympathetic nerve. A loop of the sympathetic nerve itself also crosses the artery, forming a ring around the vessels. The anterior jugular vein passes outward in front of the artery but is not in contact with it, being separated from it by the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles. Below and behind the artery is the pleura, which separates it from the apex of the lung; *behind* is the cord of the sympathetic nerve; the recurrent laryngeal nerve winds round the lower and back part of the vessel.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF FIRST PORTION OF THE RIGHT SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

In front.
Skin, superficial fascia.
Platysma, deep fascia.
Clavicular origin of Sterno-mastoid.
Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid.
Anterior jugular, Internal jugular, and vertebral veins.
Pneumogastric and cardiac nerves.
Loop from the sympathetic.

Beneath.
Pleura.
Recurrent laryngeal nerve.

Behind.
Recurrent laryngeal nerve.
Sympathetic.
Pleura and apex of lung.

First Part of the Left Subclavian Artery (Figs. 388, 389).

The left subclavian artery *arises* from the end of the arch of the aorta, opposite the fourth dorsal vertebra, and ascends nearly vertically to the inner margin of the Scalenus anticus muscle. This part of the vessel is, therefore, longer than the right, is situated deeply in the cavity of the chest, and is directed nearly vertically upward, instead of arching outward like the vessel of the opposite side.

Relations.—It is in relation, *in front*, with the pneumogastric, cardiac, and phrenic nerves, which lie parallel with it, the left carotid artery, left internal jugular and vertebral veins, and the commencement of the left innominate vein and is covered by the Sterno-thyroid, Sterno-hyoid, and Sterno-mastoid muscles; *behind*, it is in relation with the œsophagus, thoracic duct, inferior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, and Longus colli muscle; higher up, however, the œsophagus and thoracic duct lie to its right side; the latter ultimately arching over the vessel to join the angle of union between the subclavian and internal jugular veins. To its *inner side* are the œsophagus, trachea, and thoracic duct; to its *outer side*, the left pleura and lung.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF FIRST PORTION OF THE LEFT SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

In front.
Pneumogastric, cardiac, and phrenic nerves.
Left carotid artery.
Thoracic duct.
Left internal jugular, vertebral, and innominate veins.
Sterno-thyroid, Sterno-hyoid, and Sterno-mastoid muscles.

Inner side.
Trachea.
Œsophagus.
Thoracic duct.

Outer side.
Pleura and left lung.

Behind.
Œsophagus and thoracic duct.
Inferior cervical ganglion of sympathetic.
Longus colli.

Second and Third Parts of the Subclavian Artery (Figs. 392, 408).

The **Second Portion of the Subclavian Artery** lies behind the Scalenus anticus muscle; it is very short, and forms the highest part of the arch described by that vessel.

Relations.—It is covered, *in front*, by the skin, superficial fascia, Platysma, deep cervical fascia, the Sterno-mastoid and the Scalenus anticus muscles. On the right side the phrenic nerve is separated from the second part of the artery by the Scalenus anticus muscle, while on the left side the nerve crosses the first part of the artery immediately to the inner edge of the muscle. *Behind*, it is in relation with the pleura and the Scalenus medius muscle. *Above*, with the brachial plexus of nerves. *Below*, with the pleura. The subclavian vein lies below and in front of the artery, separated from it by the Scalenus anticus muscle.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF SECOND PORTION OF SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

In front.
Skin and superficial fascia.
Platysma and deep cervical fascia.
Sterno-mastoid.
Phrenic nerve.
Scalenus anticus.
Subclavian vein.

Above.
Brachial plexus.

Below.
Pleura.

Behind.
Pleura and Middle Scalenus.

The **Third Portion of the Subclavian Artery** passes downward and outward from the outer margin of the Scalenus anticus muscle to the outer border of the first rib, where it becomes the axillary artery. This portion of the vessel is the most superficial, and is contained in the subclavian triangle (see page 618).

Relations.—It is covered, in *front*, by the skin, the superficial fascia, the Platysma the descending clavicular branches of the cervical plexus, and the deep cervical fascia; by the clavicle, the Subclavius muscle, the suprascapular artery and vein, and the transverse cervical vein; the nerve to the Subclavius muscle passes vertically downward in front of the artery. The external jugular vein crosses the artery at its inner side, and receives the suprascapular and transverse cervical veins, which frequently form a plexus in front of it. The subclavian vein is below and in front of the artery, lying close behind the clavicle. *Behind*, it lies on the Middle scalenus muscle and the lowest cord of the brachial plexus, formed by the union of the last cervical and first dorsal nerves. *Above* it, and to its outer side, is the brachial plexus and Omo-hyoid muscle. *Below*, it rests on the upper surface of the first rib.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THIRD PORTION OF SUBCLAVIAN ARTERY.

In front.
Skin and superficial fascia.
Platysma and deep cervical fascia.
Descending branches of cervical plexus. Nerve to Subclavius muscle.
Subclavius muscle, suprascapular artery, and vein.
The external jugular and transverse cervical veins.
The clavicle.

Above.
Brachial plexus.
Omo-hyoid.

Below.
First rib.

Behind.
Scalenus medius.
Lower cord of brachial plexus.

Peculiarities.—The subclavian arteries vary in their origin, their course, and the height to which they rise in the neck.

The origin of the right subclavian from the innominate takes place, in some cases, above the sterno-clavicular articulation, and occasionally, but less frequently, in the cavity of the thorax, below that point. Or the artery may arise as a separate trunk from the arch of the aorta. In such cases it may be either the first, second, third, or even the last branch derived from that vessel; in the majority of cases it is the first or last, rarely the second or third. When it is the first branch, it occupies the ordinary position of the innominate artery; when the second or third, it gains its usual position by passing behind the right carotid; and when the last branch, it arises from the left extremity of the arch, at its upper or back part, and passes obliquely toward the right side, usually behind the trachea, œsophagus, and right carotid, sometimes between the œsophagus and trachea to the upper border of the first rib, whence it follows its ordinary course. In very rare instances this vessel arises from the thoracic aorta, as low down as the fourth dorsal vertebra. Occasionally it perforates the Scalenus anticus muscle; more rarely it passes in front of that muscle. Sometimes the subclavian vein passes with the artery behind the Scalenus anticus muscle. The artery may ascend as high as an inch and a half above the clavicle or any intermediate point between this and the upper border of the bone, the right subclavian usually ascending higher than the left.

The left subclavian is occasionally joined at its origin with the left carotid.

Surface Marking.—The course of the subclavian artery in the neck may be mapped out by describing a curve, with its convexity upward at the base of the posterior triangle. The inner end of this curve corresponds to the sterno-clavicular joint, the outer end of the centre of the lower border of the clavicle. The curve is to be drawn with such an amount of convexity that its mid-point reaches half an inch above the upper border of the clavicle. The left subclavian artery is more deeply placed than the right in the first part of its course, and, as a rule, does not reach quite as high a level in the neck. It should be borne in mind that the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle corresponds to the outer border of the Scalenus anticus muscle, so that the third portion of the artery, that part most accessible for operation, lies immediately external to the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle.

Surgical Anatomy.—The relations of the subclavian arteries of the two sides having been examined, the student should direct his attention to a consideration of the best position in which compression of the vessel may be effected, or in what situation a ligature may be best applied in cases of aneurism or wound.

Compression of the subclavian artery is required in cases of operations about the shoulder, in the axilla, or at the upper part of the arm; and the student will observe that there is only one situation in which it can be effectually applied—viz., where the artery passes across the upper surface of the first rib. In order to compress the vessel in this situation, the shoulder should be depressed, and the surgeon, grasping the side of the neck, should press with his thumb in the angle formed by the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid with the upper border of the clavicle, downward, backward, and inward against the rib; if from any cause the shoulder cannot be sufficiently depressed, pressure may be made from before backward, so as to compress the artery against the Scalenus medius muscle and the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra. In appropriate cases, a preliminary incision may be made through the cervical fascia, and the finger may be pressed down directly upon the artery.

Ligature of the subclavian artery may be required in cases of wounds or of aneurism in the axilla, or in cases of aneurism on the cardiac side of the point of ligature; and the third part of the artery is that which is most favorable for an operation, on account of its being comparatively superficial and most remote from the origin of the large branches. In those cases where the clavicle is not displaced, this operation may be performed with comparative facility; but where the clavicle is pushed up by a large aneurismal tumor in the axilla the artery is placed at a great depth from the surface, which materially increases the difficulty of the operation. Under these circumstances it becomes a matter of importance to consider the height to which this vessel reaches above the bone. In ordinary cases its arch is about half an inch above the clavicle, occasionally it is as high as an inch and a half, and sometimes so low as to be on a level with the upper border of the clavicle. If the clavicle is displaced, these variations will necessarily make the operation more or less difficult according as the vessel is more or less accessible.

The chief points in the operation of tying the third portion of the subclavian artery are as follows: The patient being placed on a table in the supine position, with the head drawn over to the opposite side and the shoulder depressed as much as possible, the integument should be drawn downward over the clavicle, and an incision made through it, upon that bone, from the anterior border of the Trapezius to the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, to which may be added a short vertical incision meeting the inner end of the preceding. The object in drawing the skin downward is to avoid any risk of wounding the external jugular vein, for as it perforates the deep fascia above the clavicle, it cannot be drawn downward with the skin. The soft parts should now be allowed to glide up, and the cervical fascia should be divided upon a director, and if the interval between the Trapezius and Sterno-mastoid muscles be insufficient for the per-

formance of the operation, a portion of one or both may be divided. The external jugular vein will now be seen toward the inner side of the wound: this and the suprascapular and transverse cervical veins, which terminate in it, should be held aside. If the external jugular vein is at all in the way and exposed to injury, it should be tied in two places and divided. The suprascapular artery should be avoided, and the Omo-hyoid muscle held aside if necessary. In the space beneath this muscle careful search must be made for the vessel: a deep layer of fascia and some connective tissue having been divided carefully, the outer margin of the Scalenus anticus muscle must be felt for, and, the finger being guided by it to the first rib, the pulsation of the subclavian artery will be felt as it passes over the rib. The sheath of the vessels having been opened, the aneurism needle may then be passed around the artery from above downward and inward, so as to avoid including any of the branches of the brachial plexus. If the clavicle is so raised by the tumor that the application of the ligature cannot be effected in this situation, the artery may be tied above the first rib, or even behind the Scalenus anticus muscle; the difficulties of the operation in such a case will be materially increased, on account of the greater depth of the artery and the alteration in position of the surrounding parts.

The second part of the subclavian artery, from being that portion which rises highest in the neck, has been considered favorable for the application of the ligature when it is difficult to tie the artery in the third part of its course. There are, however, many objections to the operation in this situation. It is necessary to divide the Scalenus anticus muscle, upon which lies the phrenic nerve, and at the inner side of which is situated the internal jugular vein; and a wound of either of these structures might lead to the most dangerous consequences. Again, the artery is in contact, below, with the pleura, which must also be avoided; and, lastly, the proximity of so many of its large branches arising internal to this point must be a still further objection to the operation. In cases, however, where the sac of an axillary aneurism encroaches on the neck, it may be necessary to divide the outer half or two-thirds of the Scalenus anticus muscle, so as to place the ligature on the vessel at a greater distance from the sac. The operation is performed exactly in the same way as a ligature of the third portion, until the Scalenus anticus is exposed, when it is to be divided on a director (never to a greater extent than its outer two-thirds), and it immediately retracts. The operation is therefore merely an extension of ligature of the third portion of the vessel.

In those cases of aneurism of the axillary or subclavian artery in which the aneurism encroaches upon the outer portion of the Scalenus muscle to such an extent that a ligature cannot be applied in that situation, it may be deemed advisable, as a last resource, to tie the first portion of the subclavian artery. On the left side this operation has been regarded as almost impracticable; the great depth of the artery from the surface, its intimate relation with the pleura, and its close proximity to the thoracic duct and to so many important veins and nerves, present a series of difficulties which it is very difficult to overcome. Nevertheless, Professor Halsted and Schumpert have each tied successfully the first portion of the left subclavian for aneurism. J. K. Rodgers, of New York, also did it successfully. On the right side the operation is practicable, and has been performed. Dr. Nassau, of Philadelphia, successfully ligated the first part of the right subclavian. The main objection to the operation in this situation is the smallness of the interval which usually exists between the commencement of the vessel and the origin of the nearest branch. The operation may be performed in the following manner: The patient being placed on the table in the supine position with the neck extended, an incision should be made along the upper border of the inner part of the clavicle, and a second along the inner border of the Sterno-mastoid, meeting the former at an angle. The attachment of both heads of the Sterno-mastoid must be divided on a director and turned outward; a few small arteries and veins, and occasionally the anterior jugular vein, must be avoided, or, if necessary, ligatured in two places and divided, and the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles are to be divided in the same manner as the preceding muscle. After tearing through the deep fascia with the finger-nail, the internal jugular vein will be seen crossing the subclavian artery; this should be pressed aside and the artery secured by passing the needle from below upward, by which the pleura is more effectually avoided. The exact position of the vagus, the recurrent laryngeal, the phrenic and sympathetic nerves should be remembered, and the ligature should be applied near the origin of the vertebral, in order to afford as much room as possible for the formation of a coagulum between the ligature and the orgin of the vessel. It should be remembered that the right subclavian artery is occasionally deeply placed in the first part of its course when it arises from the left side of the aortic arch, and passes in such cases behind the œsophagus or between it and the trachea.

Collateral Circulation.—After ligature of the third part of the subclavian artery the collateral circulation is mainly established by three sets of vessels, thus described in a dissection:

"1. A posterior set, consisting of the suprascapular and posterior scapular branches of the subclavian, anastomosing with the subscapular from the axillary.

"2. An internal set produced by the connection of the internal mammary on the one hand, with the superior and long thoracic arteries, and the branches from the subscapular on the other.

"3. A middle or axillary set, which consisted of a number of small vessels derived from branches of the subclavian, above, and, passing through the axilla, terminated either in the main trunk or some of the branches of the axillary below. This last set presented most conspicuously the peculiar character of the newly formed or, rather, dilated arteries, being excessively tortuous, and forming a complete plexus.

"The chief agent in the restoration of the axillary artery below the tumor was the subscapular artery, which communicated most freely with the internal mammary, suprascapular, and posterior scapular branches of the subclavian, from all of which is received so great an influx of blood as to dilate it to three times its natural size."[1]

When a ligature is applied to the first part of the subclavian aretry, the collateral circulation is carried on by 1, the anastomosis between the superior and inferior thyroid; 2, the anastomosis of the two vertebrals; 3, the anastomosis of the internal mammary with the deep epigastric and the aortic intercostals; 4, the superior intercostal anastomosing with the aortic intercostals; 5, the profunda cervicis anastomosing with the princeps cervicis; 6, the scapular branches of the thyroid axis anastomosing with the branches of the axillary; and 7, the thoracic branches of the axillary anastomosing with the aortic intercostals.

Branches.—The branches given off from the subclavian artery are:

Vertebral.	Internal mammary.
Thyroid axis.	Superior intercostal.

On the left side all four branches generally *arise* from the first portion of the vessel; but on the right side, the superior intercostal usually arises from the second portion of the vessel. On both sides of the body the first three branches arise close together at the inner margin of the Scalenus anticus; in the majority of cases a free interval of from half an inch to an inch exists between the commencement of the artery and the origin of the nearest branch; in a smaller number of cases an interval of more than an inch exists, but it never exceeds an inch and three-quarters. In a very few instances the interval has been found to be less than half an inch. The vertebral artery arises from the upper and posterior part of the subclavian artery, the internal mammary from the lower part of the artery; the thyroid axis from in front and the superior intercostal from behind.

The **Vertebral Artery** (*a. vertebralis*) (Fig. 399) is generally the first and largest branch of the subclavian; it *arises* from the upper and back part of the first portion of the vessel, and, passing upward, enters the foramen in the transverse process of the sixth cervical vertebra,[2] and ascends through the foramina in the transverse processes of all the vertebræ above this. Above the upper border of the axis it inclines outward and upward to the foramen in the transverse process of the atlas, through which it passes; it then winds backward behind its articular process, runs in a deep groove on the upper surface of the posterior arch of this bone (Fig. 16), and, passing beneath the posterior occipito-atlantal ligament (Figs. 199 and 202), pierces the dura mater and arachnoid, and enters the skull through the foramen magnum. It then passes forward and upward, inclining from the lateral aspect to the front of the medulla oblongata. It unites in the middle line with the vessel of the opposite side at the lower border of the pons Varolii to form the **basilar artery** (Fig. 401).

Relations.—At its origin it is situated behind the internal jugular and vertebral veins, and is crossed by the inferior thyroid artery: it lies between the Longus colli and Scalenus anticus muscles, having the thoracic duct in front of it on the left side. It rests on the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra and the sympathetic nerve. Within the foramina formed by the transverse processes of the vertebræ it is accompanied by a plexus of nerves from the inferior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, and is surrounded by a dense plexus of veins which unite to form the vertebral vein at the lower part of the neck. It is situated in

[1] Guy's Hospital Reports, vol. i., 1836: case of axillary aneurism, in which Mr. Aston Key had tied the subclavian artery on the outer edge of the Scalenus muscle twelve years previously.

[2] The vertebral artery sometimes enters the foramen in the transverse process of the fifth vertebra. Dr. Smyth, who tied this artery in the living subject, found it, in one of his dissections, passing into the foramen in the seventh vertebra.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

front of the cervical nerves, as they issue from the intervertebral foramina. While winding round the articular process of the atlas, it is contained in a triangular space, the **suboccipital triangle**, formed by the Rectus capitis posticus major, the Superior oblique and the Inferior oblique muscles; and at this point is covered by the Complexus muscle (Fig. 283). The suboccipital nerve here lies between the artery and the bone. Within the skull, as the artery winds round the medulla oblongata, it is placed between the hypoglossal nerve and the anterior root of the suboccipital nerve, beneath the first digitation of the ligamentum denticulatum, and finally ascends between the basilar process of the occipital bone and the anterior surface of the medulla oblongata.

Branches.—These may be divided into two sets—those given off in the neck and those within the cranium.

Cervical Branches.	*Cranial Branches.*
Lateral Spinal.	Posterior Meningeal.
Muscular.	Anterior Spinal.
	Posterior Spinal.
	Posterior Inferior Cerebellar.
	Bulbar.

The **Lateral Spinal Branches** (*rami spinales*) enter the spinal canal through the intervertebral foramina and divide into two branches. Of these, one passes along the roots of the nerves to supply the spinal cord and its membranes, anastomosing with the other arteries of the spinal cord; the other divides into an ascending and a descending branch, which unite with similar branches from the artery above and below, so that two lateral anastomotic chains are formed on the posterior surface of the bodies of the vertebræ near the attachment of the pedicles. From these anastomotic chains branches are given off to supply the periosteum and the bodies of the vertebræ, and to communicate with similar branches from the opposite side; from these communicating branches small branches are given off which join similar branches above and below, so that a central anastomotic chain is formed on the posterior surface of the bodies of the vertebræ.

Muscular Branches are given off to the deep muscles of the neck, where the vertebral artery curves round the articular process of the atlas. They anastomose with the occipital and with the ascending and deep cervical arteries.

The **Posterior Meningeal** (*ramus meningeus*) is a small branch given off from the vertebral opposite the foramen magnum. It ramifies between the bone and dura mater in the cerebellar fossæ, and supplies the falx cerebelli.

The **Anterior Spinal** (*a. spinalis anterior*) is a small branch which *arises* near the termination of the vertebral, and, descending in front of the medulla oblongata, unites with its fellow on the opposite side at about the level of the foramen magnum. One of these vessels is usually larger than the other, but occasionally they are about equal in size. The single trunk thus formed descends on the front of the spinal cord, and is reinforced by a succession of small branches which enter the spinal canal through the intervertebral foramina; these branches are derived from the vertebral artery and the ascending cervical branch of the inferior thyroid artery in the neck; from the intercostal in the dorsal region; and from the lumbar, ilio-lumbar, and lateral sacral arteries in the lower part of the spine. They unite, by means of ascending and descending branches, to form a single anterior median artery, which extends as far as the lower part of the spinal cord. This vessel is placed in the pia mater along the anterior median fissure; it supplies that membrane and the substance of the cord, and sends off branches at its lower part to be distributed to the cauda equina, and ends on the central fibrous prolongation of the cord.

The **Posterior Spinal** (*a. spinalis posterior*) *arises* from the vertebral at the side of the medulla oblongata: passing backward to the posterior aspect of the spinal cord, it descends on each side, lying behind the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, and is reinforced by a succession of small branches which enter the spinal canal through the intervertebral foramina, and by which it is continued to the lower part of the cord and to the cauda equina. Branches from these vessels form a free anastomosis round the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, and communicate, by means of very tortuous transverse branches, with the vessel of the opposite side. At its commencement it gives off an ascending branch, which terminates on the side of the fourth ventricle.

The **Posterior Inferior Cerebellar Artery** (*a. cerebelli inferior posterior*) (Fig. 401), the largest branch of the vertebral, winds backward round the upper part of the medulla oblongata, passing between the origin of the pneumogastric and spinal accesssory nerves, over the restiform body to the under surface of the cerebellum, where it divides into two branches—an *internal*, which is continued backward to the notch between the two hemispheres of the cerebellum; and an *external*, which supplies the under surface of the cerebellum as far as its outer border, where it anastomoses with the anterior inferior cerebellar and the superior cerebellar branches of the basilar artery. Branches from this artery supply the choroid plexus of the fourth ventricle.

The **Bulbar Arteries** comprise several minute vessels which spring from the vertebral and its branches and are distributed to the medulla oblongata.

Surgical Anatomy.—The vertebral artery has been tied in several instances: 1, for wounds or traumatic aneurism; 2, after ligation of the innominate, either immediately to prevent hemorrhage, or later on to arrest bleeding where it has occurred at the seat of ligation; and 3, in epilepsy. In these latter cases the treatment has been recommended by Dr. Alexander, of Liverpool, in the hope that by diminishing the supply of blood to the posterior part of the brain and the spinal cord a diminution or cessation of the epileptic fits would result. But, on account of the uncertainty as to what cases, if any, derived benefit from the operation, it has now been abandoned as a treatment for epilepsy. The *operation of ligation of the vertebral* is performed by making an incision along the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, just above the clavicle. The muscle is pulled to the inner side, and the anterior tubercle of the transverse process of the sixth cervical vertebra is sought for. A deep layer of fascia being now divided, the interval between the Scalenus anticus and the Longus colli muscles just below their attachment to the tubercle is defined, and the artery and vein are found in the interspace. The vein is to be drawn to the outer side, and the aneurism needle is passed from without inward. Drs. Ramskill and Bright have pointed out that severe pain at the back of the head may be symptomatic of disease of the vertebral artery just before it enters the skull. This is explained by the close connection of the artery with the suboccipital nerve in the groove on the posterior arch of the atlas. Disease of the same artery has been also said to affect speech, from pressure on the hypoglossal nerve where it is in relation with the vessel, leading to paralysis of the muscles of the tongue.

The **Basilar Artery** (*a. basilaris*) (Fig. 401), so named from its position at the base of the skull, is a single trunk formed by the junction of the two vertebral arteries; it extends from the posterior to the anterior border of the pons Varolii, lying in the median pontine groove, under cover of the arachnoid. It ends by dividing into the two **posterior cerebral arteries.**

Branches.—Its branches are, on each side, the following:

Transverse.	Anterior Inferior Cerebellar.
Internal Auditory.	Superior Cerebellar.
	Posterior Cerebral.

The **Transverse** or **Pontal Branches** (*rami ad pontem*) supply the substance of the pons Varolii.

The **Internal Auditory** (*a. auditiva interna*) accompanies the auditory nerve into the internal auditory meatus. It supplies the internal ear.

The **Anterior Inferior Cerebellar Artery** (*a. cerebelli inferior anterior*) passes backward across the crus cerebelli, to be distributed to the anterior border of the under surface of the cerebellum, anastomosing with the posterior inferior cerebellar branch of the vertebral.

The **Superior Cerebellar Artery** (*a. cerebelli superior*) on each side *arises* near the termination of the basilar. It passes outward, immediately behind the third nerve, which separates it from the posterior cerebral, winds round the crus cerebri, close to the fourth nerve, and, arriving at the upper surface of the cerebellum, divides into branches which ramify in the pia mater and, reaching the circumference of the cerebellum, anastomose with the branches of the inferior cerebellar arteries. Several branches are given to the pineal gland, the valve of Vieussens, and the velum interpositum.

The **Posterior Cerebral Artery** (*a. cerebri posterior*) (Figs. 401, 403, 404, and 406), on each side, is the terminal branch of the basilar. It is larger than the preceding, from which it is separated near its origin by the third nerve. Passing outward, parallel to the superior cerebellar artery, and receiving the posterior communicating from the internal carotid, it winds round the crus cerebri, and passes to the under surface of the occipital lobes of the cerebrum, and break up into branches for the supply of the temporal and occipital lobes. The **branches** of the posterior cerebral artery are:

Postero-median ganglionic.		Anterior temporal.
Posterior choroid.	Three terminal	Posterior temporal.
Postero-lateral ganglionic.		Occipital.

The **postero-median ganglionic branches** (Fig. 406) are a group of small arteries which arise at the commencement of the posterior cerebral artery; these, with similar branches from the posterior communicating, pierce the posterior perforated space, and supply the internal surfaces of the optic thalamus and the walls of the third ventricle. The **posterior choroid** enters the interior of the brain beneath the splenium of the corpus callosum, and supplies the velum interpositum and the choroid plexus. The **postero-lateral ganglionic branches** are a group of small arteries which arise from the posterior cerebral artery, after it has turned round the crus cerebri; they supply a considerable portion of the optic thalamus. The **terminal branches** are distributed as follows: the **first**, or the **anterior temporal branches**, to the under surface of the anterior portion of the temporal lobe; the **second**, or the **posterior temporal branches**, to the external occipital and the third temporal convolutions; and the **third**, or the **occipital branches**, to the inner and outer surfaces of the occipital lobe.

Circle of Willis (*circulus arteriosus* [*Willisi*]).—The remarkable anastomosis which exists between the branches of the internal carotid and vertebral arteries at the base of the brain constitutes the circle of Willis. It is formed in *front*, by the anterior cerebral arteries, branches of the internal carotid, which are connected together by the anterior communicating; *behind*, by the two posterior cerebrals, branches of the basilar, which are connected on each side with the internal carotid by the posterior communicating arteries (Fig. 401). It is by this anastomosis that the cerebral circulation is equalized, and provision made for effectually carrying it on if one or more of the branches are obliterated. The parts of the brain included within this arterial circle are—the lamina cinerea, the commissure of the optic nerves, the infundibulum, the tuber cinereum, the corpora albicantia, and the posterior perforated space.

The **Thyroid Axis** (*truncus thyreocervicalis*) (Figs. 392 and 410) is a short thick trunk which *arises* from the forepart of the first portion of the subclavian artery, close to the inner border of the Scalenus anticus muscle, and divides, almost immediately after its origin, into three branches—the **inferior thyroid, suprascapular,** and **transversalis colli.**

The **Inferior Thyroid Artery** (*a. thyreoidea inferior*) (Fig. 392) passes upward, in front of the vertebral artery and Longus colli muscle; then turns inward behind the sheath of the common carotid artery and internal jugular vein, and also behind the sympathetic nerve, the middle cervical ganglion resting upon the vessel, and reaching the lower border of the lateral lobe of the thyroid gland it divides into two branches, which supply the posterior and under part of the organ, and anastomose in its substance with the superior thyroid and with the corresponding artery of the opposite side. (See page 602.) The recurrent laryngeal nerve passes upward, generally behind but occasionally in front of the artery. Its **branches** are:

Inferior Laryngeal. Œsophageal.
Tracheal. Ascending Cervical.
Muscular.

The **inferior laryngeal branch** (*a. laryngea inferior*) ascends upon the trachea to the back part of the larynx, in company with the recurrent laryngeal nerve, and supplies the muscles and mucous membrane of this part, anastomosing with the laryngeal branch from the superior thyroid artery and with the inferior laryngeal branch from the opposite side. The **tracheal branches** (*rami tracheales*) are distributed upon the trachea, anastomosing below with the bronchial arteries. The **œsophageal branches** (*rami œsophagei*) are distributed to the œsophagus, and anastomose with the œsophageal branches of the aorta. The **ascending cervical** (*a. cervicalis ascendens*) is a small branch which arises from the inferior thyroid just where that vessel is passing behind the common carotid artery, and runs up on the anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of the cervical vertebræ in the interval between the Scalenus anticus and Rectus capitis anticus major muscles. It gives **muscular branches** (*rami musculares*) to the muscles of the neck, which anastomose with branches of the vertebral, and sends one or two branches (*rami spinales*) into the spinal canal through the intervertebral foramina to be distributed to the spinal cord and its membranes, and to the bodies of the vertebræ in the same manner as the lateral spinal branches from the vertebral. It anastomoses with the ascending pharyngeal and occipital arteries. The muscular branches supply the depressors of the hyoid bone, the Longus colli, the Scalenus anticus, and the Inferior constrictor of the pharynx. One of the muscular branches passes between the transverse processes of the fourth and fifth cervical vertebræ and reaches the deep muscles of the neck. It is called the **ramus profundus**.

Surgical Anatomy.—The inferior thyroid artery has been tied, in conjunction with the superior thyroid, in cases of bronchocele. An incision is made along the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid down to the clavicle. After the deep fascia has been divided, the Sterno-mastoid and carotid vessels are drawn outward and the *carotid tubercle* (*Chassaignac's tubercle*) sought for. The vessel will be found just below this tubercle, between the carotid sheath on the outer side of the trachea and œsophagus on the inner side. In passing the ligature great care must be exercised to avoid including the recurrent laryngeal nerve, which is occasionally found crossing in *front* of the vessel. Before extirpating a goitrous lobe of the thyroid the superior and inferior thyroid arteries of the diseased side are to be ligated.

The **Suprascapular** or **Transversalis Humeri Artery** (*a. transversa scapulæ*) (Figs. 392 and 409), smaller than the tranversalis colli, passes obliquely from within outward, across the root of the neck. It at first passes downward and outward across the Scalenus anticus muscle and phrenic nerve, being covered by the Sterno-mastoid; it then crosses the subclavian artery and the cords of the brachial plexus, and runs outward, behind and parallel with the clavicle and Subclavius muscle, and beneath the posterior belly of the Omo-hyoid, to the superior border of the scapula, where it passes over the transverse ligament of the scapula, which separates it from the suprascapular nerve, and reaches the supraspinous fossa. In this situation it lies close to the bone, and ramifies between it and the Supraspinatus muscle, to which it

supplies branches. It then passes downward behind the neck of the scapula, to reach the infraspinous fossa, where it anastomoses with the dorsalis scapulæ branch of the subscapular artery and branches of the posterior scapular arteries. Besides distributing branches to the Sterno-mastoid, Subclavius, and neighboring muscles, it gives off a **suprasternal branch,** which crosses over the sternal end of the clavicle to the skin of the upper part of the chest; and a **supra-acromial branch** (*ramus acromialis*), which, piercing the Trapezius muscle, supplies the skin over the acromion, anastomosing with the acromial thoracic artery. As the artery passes over the transverse ligament of the scapula, a branch descends into the subscapular fossa, ramifies beneath the subscapular muscle, and anastomoses with the posterior and subscapular arteries. The suprascapular artery also sends branches to the acromio-clavicular and shoulder joints, and a nutrient artery to the clavicle.

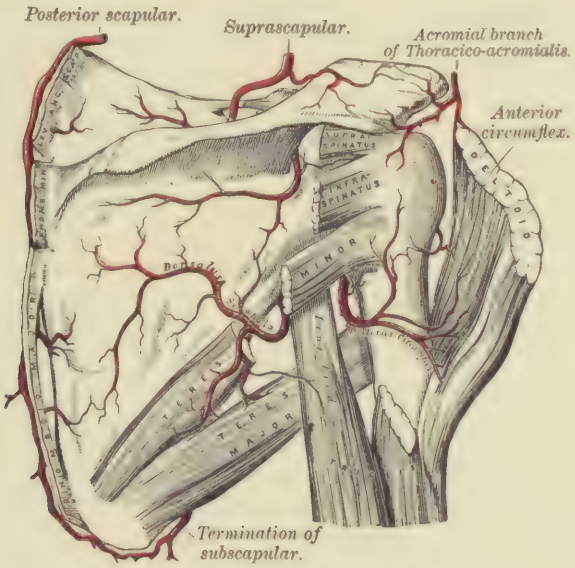


FIG. 409.—The scapular and circumflex arteries.

The **Transverse Cervical** or **Transversalis Colli Artery** (*a. transversa colli*) (Fig. 392) passes transversely outward, across the upper part of the subclavian triangle, to the anterior margin of the Trapezius muscle, beneath which it divides into two branches, the **superficial cervical** and the **posterior scapular.** In its passage across the neck it crosses in front of the phrenic nerve, Scaleni muscles, and the brachial plexus, between the divisions of which it sometimes passes, and is covered by the Platysma, Sterno-mastoid, Omo-hyoid, and Trapezius muscles. The **superficial cervical** (*ramus ascendens*) ascends beneath the anterior margin of the Trapezius, distributing branches to it and to the neighboring muscles and glands in the neck, and anastomosing with the superficial branch of the arteria princeps cervicis. The **posterior scapular** (*ramus descendens*) (Fig. 409) passes beneath the Levator anguli scapulæ muscle to the superior angle of the scapula, and then descends along the posterior border of that bone as far as the inferior angle. In its course it is covered by the Rhomboid muscles, supplying them and the Latissimus dorsi and Trapezius, and anastomosing with the suprascapular and subscapular arteries, and with the posterior branches of some of the intercostal arteries.

Peculiarities. The superficial cervical frequently arises as a separate branch from the thyroid axis; and the posterior scapular, from the third, more rarely from the second, part of the subclavian.

The **Internal Mammary** (*a. mammaria interna*) (Fig. 410) *arises* from the under surface of the first portion of the subclavian artery, opposite the thyroid

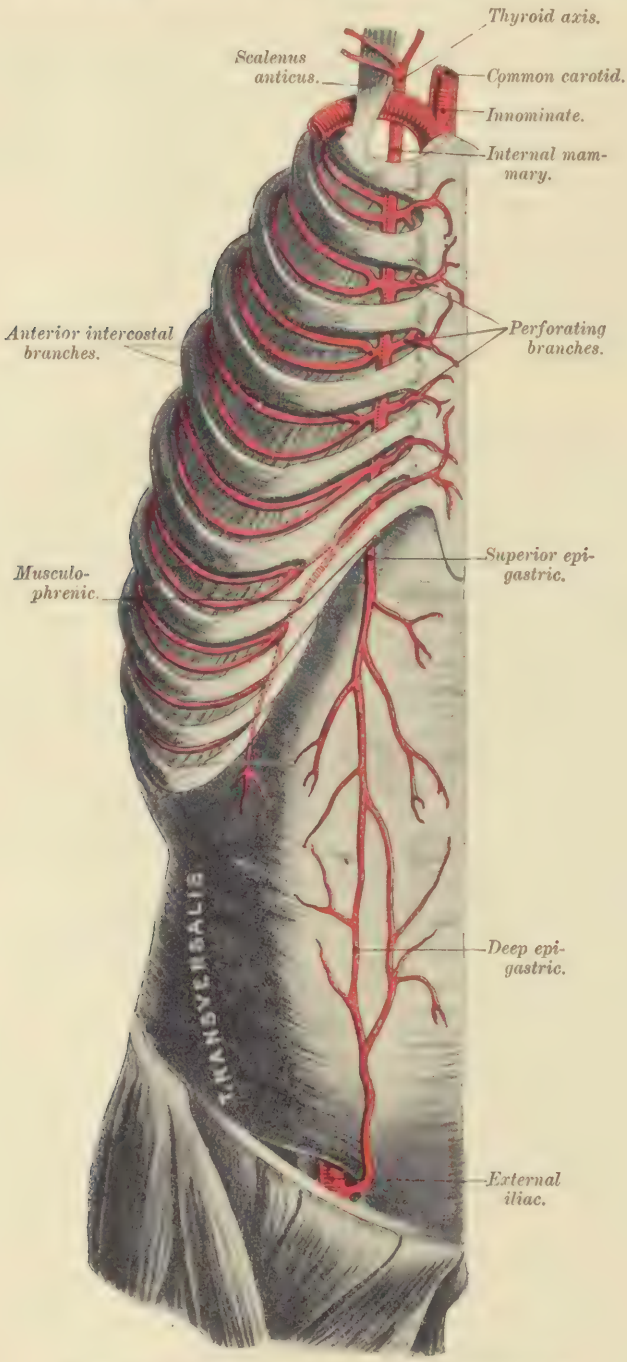


FIG. 410.—The internal mammary artery and its branches.

axis. It passes downward and inward behind the costal cartilage of the first rib to the inner surface of the anterior wall of the chest, resting against the costal cartilages about half an inch from the margin of the sternum; and, at the interval

between the sixth and seventh cartilages, divides into two branches, the **musculo-phrenic** and **superior epigastric.**

Relations.—At its origin it is covered by the internal jugular and subclavian veins, and as it enters the thorax is crossed from without inward by the phrenic nerve, and then passes forward close to the outer side of the innominate vein. In the upper part of the thorax it lies behind the costal cartilages and Internal intercostal muscles, and is crossed by the terminations of the upper six intercostal nerves. At first it lies upon the pleura, but at the lower part of the thorax the Triangularis sterni separates the artery from this membrane. It has two venæ comites; these unite into a single vein, which joins the innominate vein of its own side.

Branches.—The branches of the internal mammary are—

Comes Nervi Phrenici (Superior Phrenic).	Anterior Intercostal.
Mediastinal.	Perforating.
Pericardiac.	Musculo-phrenic.
Sternal.	Superior Epigastric.

The **Comes Nervi Phrenici** or **Superior Phrenic** (*a. pericardiacophrenica*) is a long slender branch which accompanies the phrenic nerve, between the pleura and pericardium, to the Diaphragm. It gives branches to the pericardium and is distributed upon the Diaphragm, anastomosing with the other phrenic branches from the internal mammary and with phrenic branches of the abdominal aorta.

The **Mediastinal Branches** (*aa. mediastinales anteriores*) are small vessels which are distributed to the areolar tissue and lymphatic glands in the anterior mediastinum and to the remains of the thymus gland.

The **Pericardiac Branches** supply the upper part of the anterior surface of the pericardium, the lower part receiving branches from the musculo-phrenic artery.

The **Sternal Branches** (*rami sternales*) are distributed to the Triangularis sterni and to the posterior surface of the sternum.

The mediastinal, pericardiac, and sternal branches, together with some twigs from the comes nervi phrenici, anastomose with branches from the intercostal and bronchial arteries, and form a minute plexus beneath the pleura, which has been named by Turner the **subpleural mediastinal plexus.**

The **Anterior Intercostal Arteries** (*rami intercostales*) supply the five or six upper intercostal spaces. The branch corresponding to each space soon divides into two, or the two branches may come off separately from the parent trunk. The small vessels pass outward in the intercostal spaces, one, the larger, lying near the lower margin of the rib above, and the other, the smaller, near the upper margin of the rib below, and anastomose with the intercostal arteries from the aorta. They are at first situated between the pleura and the Internal intercostal muscles, and then between the Internal and External intercostal muscles. They supply the Intercostal muscles, and, by branches which perforate the External intercostal muscle, reach the Pectoral muscles and the mammary gland.

The **Perforating** or **Anterior Perforating Arteries** (*rami perforantes*) correspond to the five or six upper intercostal spaces. They arise from the internal mammary, pass forward through the intercostal spaces, and, curving outward, supply the Pectoralis major and the integument. Those which correspond to the second, third, and fourth spaces are distributed to the mammary gland. In females, during lactation, these branches are of large size.

The **Musculo-phrenic Artery** (*a. musculophrenica*) is directed obliquely downward and outward, behind the cartilages of the false ribs, perforating the Diaphragm at the eighth or ninth rib, and terminating, considerably reduced in size, opposite the last intercostal space. It gives off anterior intercostal arteries to each of the intercostal spaces across which it passes; these diminish in size as the

spaces decrease in length, and are distributed in a manner precisely similar to the anterior intercostals from the internal mammary. The musculo-phrenic also gives branches to the lower part of the pericardium, and others which run backward to the Diaphragm and downward to the abdominal muscles.

The **Superior Epigastric** (*a. epigastrica superior*) continues in the original direction of the internal mammary; it descends through the cellular interval between the costal and sternal attachments of the Diaphragm, and enters the sheath of the Rectus abdominis muscle, at first lying behind the muscle, and then perforating it and supplying it, and anastomosing with the deep epigastric artery from the external iliac. Some branches perforate the sheath of the Rectus, and supply the muscles of the abdomen and the integument, and a small branch, which passes inward upon the side of the ensiform appendix, anastomoses in front of that cartilage with the superior epigastric artery of the opposite side. It also gives some twigs to the Diaphragm, while from the artery of the right side small branches extend into the falciform ligament of the liver and anastomose with the hepatic artery.

Surgical Anatomy.—The course of the internal mammary artery may be defined by drawing a line across the six upper intercostal spaces half an inch from and parallel with the sternum. The position of the vessel must be remembered, as it is liable to be wounded in stabs of the chest-wall. It is most easily reached by a transverse incision in the second intercostal space.

The **Superior Intercostal** (*truncus costocervicalis*) (Figs. 399 and 416) *arises* from the upper and back part of the subclavian artery, behind the Scalenus anticus muscle on the right side and to the inner side of that muscle on the left side. Passing backward, it gives off the **deep cervical branch,** and then descends behind the pleura in front of the necks of the first two ribs, and inosculates with the first aortic intercostal. As it crosses the neck of the first rib it lies to the inner side of the anterior division of the first dorsal nerve and to the outer side of the first thoracic ganglion of the sympathetic. In the first intercostal space it gives off a branch which is distributed in a manner similar to the distribution of the aortic intercostals. The branch for the second intercostal space usually joins with one from the highest aortic intercostal. Each intercostal gives off a branch to the posterior spinal muscles, and a small branch which passes through the corresponding intervertebral foramen to the spinal cord and its membranes.

The **Deep Cervical Branch** (*a. cervicalis profunda*) *arises*, in most cases, from the superior intercostal, and is analogous to the posterior branch of an aortic intercostal artery; occasionally it arises as a separate branch from the subclavian artery. Passing backward, above the eighth cervical nerve and between the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra and the first rib, it runs up the back part of the neck, between the Complexus and Semispinalis colli muscles, as high as the axis vertebra, supplying these and adjacent muscles, and anastomosing with the deep branch of the arteria princeps cervicis of the occipital, and with branches which pass outward from the vertebral. It gives off a special branch which enters the spinal canal through the intervertebral foramen between the seventh cervical and first dorsal vertebræ.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE AXILLA.

The axilla is a pyramidal space, situated between the upper and lateral part of the chest and the inner side of the arm.

Boundaries.—Its *apex*, which is directed upward toward the root of the neck, corresponds to the interval between the first rib, the upper edge of the scapula, and the clavicle, through which the axillary vessels, the brachial plexus of nerves, and the long thoracic nerve pass. This interval is the **cervico-axillary passage.**

The *base*, directed downward, is formed by the integument and a thick layer of fascia, the **axillary fascia** (*fascia axillaris*) (Fig. 313), extending between the lower border of the Pectoralis major in front and the lower border of the Latissimus dorsi behind (page 463). The axillary fascia is perforated at several points. The large central opening is called the **foramen of Langer**. The inner margin of the foramen of Langer is dense and constitutes a part of the **axillary arch**, which is a fibro-muscular slip derived from the latissimus dorsi. The axilla is broad internally at the chest, but narrow and pointed externally at the arm. The *anterior boundary* is formed by the Pectoralis major and minor muscles, the former covering the whole of the anterior wall of the axilla, the latter covering only its central part, the costo-coracoid membrane, the clavicle, and the Subclavius muscle. The *posterior boundary*, which extends somewhat lower than the anterior, is formed by the Subscapularis above, the Teres major and Latissimus dorsi below. On the *inner side* are the first four ribs with their corresponding Intercostal muscles, and part of the Serratus magnus. On the *outer side*, where the anterior and posterior boundaries converge, the space is narrow, and bounded by the humerus, the Coraco-brachialis and Biceps muscles.

Contents.—This space contains the axillary vessels and brachial plexus of nerves, with their branches, some branches of the intercostal nerves, and a large number of lymphatic glands, all connected together by a quantity of fat and loose areolar tissue.

Position of the Contents.—The axillary artery and vein, with the brachial plexus of nerves, extend obliquely along the outer boundary of the axillary space, from its apex to its base, and are placed much nearer the anterior than the posterior wall, the vein lying to the inner or thoracic side of the artery and partially concealing it. At the forepart of the axillary space, in contact with the Pectoral muscles, and along the anterior margin are the thoracic branches of the axillary artery, and along the lower margin of the Pectoralis minor the long thoracic artery extends to the side of the chest. At the back part, in contact with the lower margin of the Subscapularis muscle, are the subscapular vessels and nerves; winding around the outer border of this muscle is the dorsalis scapulæ artery and veins; and, close to the neck of the humerus, the posterior circumflex vessels and the circumflex nerve are seen curving backward to the shoulder.

Along the inner or thoracic side no vessel of any importance exists, the upper part of the space being crossed merely by a few small branches from the superior thoracic artery. There are some important nerves, however, in this situation – viz., the posterior thoracic or external respiratory nerve, descending on the surface of the Serratus magnus, to which it is distributed; and perforating the upper and anterior part of this wall, the intercosto-humeral nerve or nerves, passing across the axilla to the inner side of the arm.

The cavity of the axilla is filled by a quantity of loose areolar tissue and a large number of small arteries and veins, all of which are, however, of inconsiderable size, and numerous lymphatic glands, the position and arrangement of which are described on a subsequent page.

Surgical Anatomy. The axilla is a space of considerable surgical importance. It transmits the large vessels and nerves to the upper extremity, and these may be the seat of injury or disease: it contains numerous lymphatic glands which may require removal when diseased; in it is a quantity of loose connective and adipose tissue which may be readily infiltrated with blood or pus. The axilla may be the seat of rapidly growing tumors. Moreover, it is covered at its base by thin skin, largely supplied with sebaceous and sweat glands, which is frequently the seat of small cutaneous *abscesses* and *boils*, and of eruptions due to irritation.

In *suppuration* in the axilla the arrangement of the fasciæ plays a very important part in the direction which the pus takes. As described on page 464, the costo-coracoid membrane, after covering in the space between the clavicle and the upper border of the Pectoralis minor, splits

to enclose this muscle, and, reblending at its lower border, becomes incorporated with the axillary fascia at the anterior fold of the axilla. This is known as the *clavi-pectoral fascia*. Suppuration may take place either superficial to or beneath this layer of fascia; that is, either between the Pectorals or below the Pectoralis minor: in the former case, the pus would point either at the anterior border of the axillary fold or in the groove between the Deltoid and the Pectoralis major; in the latter, the pus would have a tendency to surround the vessels and nerves and ascend into the neck, that being the direction in which there is least resistance. Its progress toward the skin is prevented by the axillary fascia; its progress backward, by the Serratus magnus; forward, by the clavi-pectoral fascia; inward, by the wall of the thorax; and outward, by the upper limb. The pus in these cases, after extending into the neck, has been known to spread through the superior opening of the thorax into the mediastinum.

In opening an *axillary abscess* the knife should be entered in the floor of the axilla, midway between the anterior and posterior margins and near the thoracic side of the space. It is well to use a director and dressing forceps after an incision has been made through the skin and fascia in the manner directed by the late Mr. Hilton.

The student should attentively consider the relation of the vessels and nerves in the several parts of the axilla, for it is the universal plan, at the present day, to remove the glands from the axilla in operating for *cancer of the breast*. In performing such an operation it will be necessary to proceed with much caution in the direction of the outer wall and apex of the space,

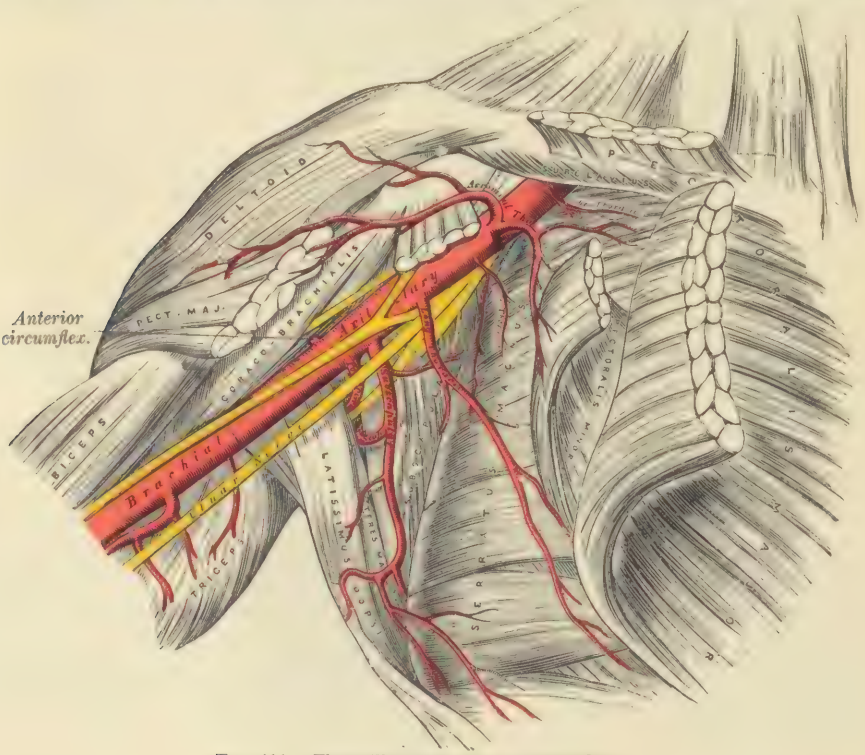


FIG. 411.—The axillary artery and its branches.

as here the axillary vessels will be in danger of being wounded. Toward the posterior wall it will be necessary to avoid the subscapular, dorsalis scapulæ, and posterior circumflex vessels. Along the anterior wall it will be necessary to avoid the thoracic branches. In clearing out the axilla the axillary vein should be first defined and cleared up to the apex of the axilla. When the apex of the space is reached, all fat and glands must be carefully removed and the whole axilla cleared by separating the tissues along the inner and posterior walls, so that when the proceeding is completed, the axilla is cleared of all its contents except the main vessels and nerves.

THE AXILLARY ARTERY (A. AXILLARIS) (Fig. 411).

The axillary artery, the continuation of the subclavian, commences at the outer border of the first rib, and terminates at the lower border of the tendon

of the Teres major muscle, where it takes the name of brachial. Its direction varies with the position of the limb: when the arm lies by the side of the chest, the vessel forms a gentle curve, the convexity being upward and outward; when the arm is directed at right angles with the trunk, the vessel is nearly straight; and when the arm is elevated still higher, the arteries describe a curve the concavity of which is directed upward. At its commencement the artery is very deeply situated, but near its termination it is superficial, being covered only by the skin and fascia. The description of the relations of this vessel is facilitated by its division into three portions, the first portion being above the Pectoralis minor; the second portion behind; and the third below that muscle.

Relations.—The **first portion** of the axillary artery is in relation, *in front*, with the clavicular portion of the Pectoralis major, the costo-coracoid membrane, the external anterior thoracic nerve, and the acromio-thoracic and cephalic veins; *behind*, with the first intercostal space, the corresponding Intercostal muscle, the second and a portion of the third digitation of the Serratus magnus, and the posterior thoracic and internal anterior thoracic nerves; on its *outer side*, with the brachial plexus, from which it is separated by a little cellular interval; on its *inner* or thoracic side, with the axillary vein, which overlaps the artery.

Relations of the First Portion of the Axillary Artery.

In front.
Pectoralis major.
Costo-coracoid membrane.
External anterior thoracic nerve.
Acromio-thoracic and cephalic veins.

Outer side.
Brachial plexus.

Inner side.
Axillary vein.

Behind.
First Intercostal space and Intercostal muscle.
Second and third digitations of Serratus magnus.
Posterior thoracic and Internal anterior thoracic nerves.

The **second portion** of the axillary artery lies beyond the Pectoralis minor. It is covered, *in front*, by the Pectoralis major and minor muscles; *behind*, it is separated from the Subscapularis by a cellular interval; on the *inner side* is the axillary vein, separated from the artery by the inner cord of the plexus and the internal anterior thoracic nerve. The brachial plexus of nerves surrounds the artery on three sides, and separates it from direct contact with the vein and adjacent muscles.

Relations of the Second Portion of the Axillary Artery.

In front.
Pectoralis major and minor.

Outer side.
Outer cord of plexus.

Inner side.
Axillary vein.
Inner cord of plexus.
Internal anterior thoracic nerve.

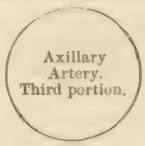
Behind.
Subscapularis.
Posterior cord of plexus.

The **third portion** of the axillary artery lies below the Pectoralis minor. It is in relation, *in front*, with the lower part of the Pectoralis major above, being covered only by the integument and fascia below, where it is crossed by the inner head of the median nerve; *behind*, with the lower part of the Subscapularis and the tendons of the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major; on its *outer side*, with the Coraco-brachialis; on its *inner* or thoracic side, with the axillary vein. The nerves of the brachial plexus bear the following relation to the artery in this part of its course: on the *outer side* is the median nerve, and the musculo-cutaneous for a short distance; on the *inner side*, the ulnar nerve (between the vein and artery) and the lesser internal cutaneous nerve (to the inner side of the vein); in *front* is the internal cutaneous nerve, and *behind*, the musculo-spiral and circumflex, the latter extending only to the lower border of the Subscapularis muscle.

RELATIONS OF THE THIRD PORTION OF THE AXILLARY ARTERY.

In front.
Integument and fascia.
Pectoralis major.
Inner head of median nerve.
Internal cutaneous nerve.

Outer side.
Coraco-brachialis.
Median nerve.
Musculo-cutaneous nerve.



Inner side.
Ulnar nerve.
Axillary vein.
Lesser internal cutaneous nerve.

Behind.
Subscapularis.
Tendons of Latissimus dorsi and Teres major.
Musculo-spiral and circumflex nerves.

Peculiarities.—The axillary artery, in about one case out of every ten, gives off a large branch, which forms either one of the arteries of the forearm or a large muscular trunk. In the first set of cases this artery is most frequently the radial (1 in 33), sometimes the ulnar (1 in 72), and, very rarely, the interosseous (1 in 506). In the second set of cases the trunk has been found to give origin to the subscapular, circumflex, and profunda arteries of the arm. Sometimes only one of the circumflex, or one of the profunda arteries, arose from the trunk. In these cases the brachial plexus surrounded the trunk of the branches and not the main vessel.

Surface Marking.—The course of the axillary artery may be marked out by raising the arm to a right angle with the body and drawing a line from the middle of the clavicle to the point where the tendon of the Pectoralis major crosses the prominence caused by the Coraco-brachialis as it emerges from under cover of the anterior fold of the axilla. The third portion of the artery can be felt pulsating beneath the skin and fascia, at the junction of the anterior with the middle third of the space between the anterior and posterior folds of the axilla, close to the inner border of the Coraco-brachialis muscle.

Surgical Anatomy.—The student, having carefully examined the relations of the axillary artery in its various parts, should now consider in what situation compression of this vessel may be most easily effected, and the best position for the application of a ligature to it when necessary.

Compression of the vessel may be required in the removal of tumors or in amputation of the upper part of the arm; and the only situation in which this can be effectually made is in the lower part of its course; by pressing on it in this situation from within outward against the humerus the circulation may be effectually arrested.

The axillary artery is perhaps more frequently lacerated than any other artery in the body, with the exception of the popliteal, by violent movements of the extremity, especially in those cases where its coats are diseased. It has occasionally been *ruptured* in attempts to reduce old dislocations of the shoulder-joint. This accident is most likely to occur during the preliminary breaking down of adhesions, in consequence of the artery having become fixed to the capsule of the joint. *Aneurism of the axillary artery* is of frequent occurrence, a large percentage of the cases being traumatic in their origin, due to the violence to which the vessel is exposed in the varied, extensive, and often violent movements of the limb.

The application of a ligature to the axillary artery may be required in cases of aneurism of the upper part of the brachial or as a distal operation for aneurism of the sub-

clavian; and there are only two situations in which the vessel can be secured—viz., in the first and in the third parts of its course; for the axillary artery at its central part is so deeply seated, and, at the same time, so closely surrounded with large nerve trunks, that the application of a ligature to it in that situation would be almost impracticable.

In the *third part* of its course the operation is most simple, and may be performed in the following manner: The patient being placed on a bed and the arm separated from the side, with the hand supinated, an incision about two inches in length is made through the integument forming the floor of the axilla, the cut being a little nearer to the anterior than the posterior fold of the axilla. After carefully dissecting through the areolar tissue and fascia, the median nerve and axillary vein are exposed; the former having been displaced to the outer and the latter to the inner side of the arm, the elbow being at the same time bent, so as to relax the structures and facilitate their separation, the ligature may be passed round the artery from the ulnar to the radial side.

This portion of the artery is occasionally crossed by a muscular slip, the *axillary arch*, derived from the Latissimus dorsi, which may mislead the surgeon during an operation. The occasional existence of this muscular fasciculus was spoken of in the description of the muscles. It may easily be recognized by the transverse direction of its fibres.

The *first portion* of the axillary artery may be tied in cases of aneurism encroaching so far upward that a ligature cannot be applied in the lower part of its course. Notwithstanding that this operation has been performed in some few cases, and with success, its performance is attended with much difficulty and danger. The student will remark that in this situation it would be necessary to divide a thick muscle, and, after incising the costo-coracoid membrane, the artery would be exposed at the bottom of a more or less deep space, with the cephalic and axillary veins in such relation with it as must render the application of a ligature to this part of the vessel particularly hazardous. Under such circumstances it is an easier, and at the same time more advisable, operation to tie the subclavian artery in the third part of its course.

The vessel in the first part of its course can best be secured through a curved incision the convexity of which is downward. This incision passes from a point half an inch external to the sterno-clavicular joint to a point half an inch internal to the coracoid process. The limb is to be well abducted and the head inclined to the opposite side, and this incision is carried through the superficial structures, care being taken to avoid the cephalic vein at the outer angle of the incision. The clavicular origin of the Pectoralis major is then divided in the whole extent of the wound. The arm is now to be brought to the side, and the upper edge of the Pectoralis minor defined and drawn downward. The costo-coracoid membrane is to be carefully divided close to the coracoid process, and the axillary sheath exposed; this is to be opened with especial care on account of the vein overlapping the artery. The needle should be passed from below, so as to avoid wounding the vein.

In a case of wound of the vessel the general practice of cutting down upon and tying it above and below the wounded point should be adopted in all cases.

Collateral Circulation after Ligature of the Axillary Artery.—If the artery be tied above the origin of the acromial thoracic, the collateral circulation will be carried on by the same branches as after the ligature of the subclavian; if at a lower point, between the acromial thoracic and subscapular arteries, the latter vessel, by its free anastomoses with the other scapular arteries, branches of the subclavian, will become the chief agent in carrying on the circulation, to which the long thoracic, if it be below the ligature, will materially contribute by its anastomoses with the intercostal and internal mammary arteries. If the point included in the ligature be below the origin of the subscapular artery, it will most probably also be below the origins of the circumflex arteries. The chief agents in restoring the circulation will then be the subscapular and the two circumflex arteries anastomosing with the superior profunda from the brachial, which will be afterward referred to as performing the same office after ligation of the brachial. The cases in which the operation has been performed are few in number, and no published account of dissections of the collateral circulation appears to exist.

Branches.—The branches of the axillary artery are—

From first part { Superior Thoracic. / Acromial Thoracic. } *From second part* { Long Thoracic. / Alar Thoracic. }

From third part { Subscapular. / Posterior Circumflex. / Anterior Circumflex. }

The **Superior Thoracic** (*a. thoracalis suprema*) is a small artery which *arises* from the axillary separately or by a common trunk with the acromial thoracic. Running forward and inward along the upper border of the Pectoralis minor, it

passes between it and the Pectoralis major to the side of the chest. It supplies these muscles and the parietes of the thorax, anastomosing with the internal mammary and intercostal arteries.

The **Acromial Thoracic** or the **Thoracic Axis** (*a. thoracoacromialis*) is a short trunk which *arises* from the forepart of the axillary artery, its origin being generally overlapped by the upper edge of the Pectoralis minor. Projecting forward to the upper border of the Pectoralis minor, it divides into four sets of branches—**thoracic, acromial, descending,** and **clavicular.**

The **Thoracic Branches** (*rami pectorales*), two or three in number, are distributed to the Serratus magnus and Pectoral muscles, anastomosing with the intercostal branches of the internal mammary.

The **Acromial Branch** (*ramus acromialis*) is directed outward toward the acromion, supplying the Deltoid muscle, and anastomosing, on the surface of the acromion, with the suprascapular and posterior circumflex arteries.

The **Descending** or **Humeral Branch** (*ramus deltoideus*) passes in the space between the Pectoralis major and Deltoid, in the same groove as the cephalic vein, and supplies both muscles.

The **Clavicular Branch** (*ramus clavicularis*), which is very small, passes upward to the Subclavius muscle.

The **Long Thoracic** or the **External Mammary** (*a. thoracalis lateralis*) passes downward and inward along the lower border of the Pectoralis minor to the side of the chest, supplying the Serratus magnus, the Pectoral muscles, and mammary gland, and sending branches across the axilla to the axillary glands and Subscapularis; it anastomoses with the internal mammary and intercostal arteries.

The **Alar Thoracic** is a small branch which supplies the glands and areolar tissue of the axilla. Its place is frequently supplied by branches from some of the other thoracic arteries.

The **Subscapular** (*a. subscapularis*), the largest branch of the axillary artery, *arises* opposite the lower border of the Subscapularis muscle, and passes downward and backward along its lower margin to the inferior angle of the scapula, where it anastomoses with the long thoracic and intercostal arteries and with the posterior scapular, a branch of the transversalis colli, from the thyroid axis of the subclavian. About an inch and a half from its origin it gives off a large branch, the **dorsalis scapulæ,** and terminates by supplying branches to the muscles in the neighborhood.

The **Dorsalis Scapulæ** (*a. circumflexa scapulæ*) is given off from the subscapular about an inch and a half from its origin, and is generally larger than the continuation of the vessel. It curves round the axillary border of the scapula, leaving the axilla through the space between the Teres minor above, the Teres major below, and the long head of the Triceps externally (Fig. 409), and enters the infraspinous fossa by passing under cover of the Teres minor, where it anastomoses with the posterior scapular and suprascapular arteries. In its course it gives off two sets of branches: one enters the subscapular fossa beneath the Subscapularis, which it supplies, anastomosing with the posterior scapular and suprascapular arteries; the other is continued along the axillary border of the scapula, between the Teres major and minor, and, at the dorsal surface of the inferior angle of the bone, anastomoses with the posterior scapular. In addition to these, small branches are distributed to the back part of the Deltoid muscle and the long head of the Triceps, anastomosing with an ascending branch of the superior profunda of the brachial.

The **Circumflex Arteries** wind round the surgical neck of the humerus. The **posterior circumflex** (*a. circumflexa humeri posterior*) (Fig. 409), the larger of the two, *arises* from the back part of the axillary opposite the lower border of the Subscapularis muscle, and, passing backward with the circumflex veins and nerve

through the quadrangular space bounded by the Teres major and minor, the scapular head of the Triceps and the humerus, winds round the neck of that bone and is distributed to the Deltoid muscle and shoulder-joint, anastomosing with the anterior circumflex and acromial thoracic arteries, and with the superior profunda branch of the brachial artery. The **anterior circumflex** (*a. circumflexa humeri anterior*) (Figs. 409 and 411), considerably smaller than the preceding, *arises* nearly opposite that vessel from the outer side of the axillary artery. It passes horizontally outward beneath the Coraco-brachialis and short head of the Biceps, lying upon the forepart of the neck of the humerus, and, on reaching the bicipital groove, gives off an ascending branch which passes upward along the groove to supply the head of the bone and the shoulder-joint. The trunk of the vessel is then continued outward beneath the Deltoid, which it supplies, and anastomoses with the posterior circumflex artery.

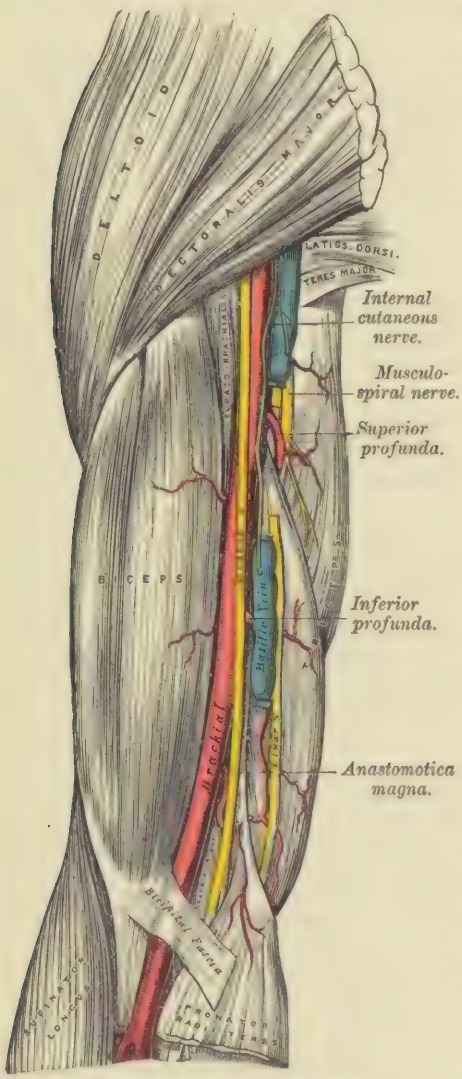


FIG. 412.—The brachial artery.

THE BRACHIAL ARTERY (A. BRACHIALIS) (Fig. 412).

The brachial artery (*a. brachialis*) commences at the lower margin of the tendon of the Teres major, and, passing down the inner and anterior aspect of the arm, terminates about half an inch below the bend of the elbow, where it divides into the **radial** and **ulnar arteries**. At first the brachial artery lies internal to the humerus; but as it passes down the arm it gradually gets in front of the bone, and at the bend of the elbow it lies midway between the two condyles.

Relations.—This artery is superficial throughout its entire extent, being covered, *in front*, by the integument, the superficial and deep fasciæ; the bicipital fascia separates it opposite the elbow from the median basilic vein; the median nerve crosses it at its middle; *behind*, it is separated from the long head of the Triceps by the musculo-spiral nerve and superior profunda artery. It then lies upon the inner head of the Triceps, next upon the insertion of the Coraco-brachialis, and lastly on the Brachialis anticus; by its *outer side*, it is in relation with the commencement of the median nerve and the Coraco-brachialis and Biceps muscles, which overlap the artery to a considerable extent; by its *inner side*, its upper half is in relation with the internal cutaneous and ulnar nerves, its lower half with the median nerve. The basilic vein lies on the inner side of the artery, but is separated from it in the lower part of the arm by the deep fascia. The brachial artery is accompanied by

two venæ comites, which lie in close contact with the artery, being connected together at intervals by short transverse communicating branches.

Plan of the Relations of the Brachial Artery.

In front.

Integument and fasciæ.
Bicipital fascia, median basilic vein.
Median nerve.
Overlapped by Coraco-brachialis and Biceps.

Outer side.
Median nerve (above).
Coraco-brachialis.
Biceps.

Brachial Artery.

Inner side.
Internal cutaneous and Ulnar nerves.
Median nerve (below).
Basilic vein.

Behind.

Triceps (long and inner heads).
Musculo-spiral nerve.
Superior profunda artery.
Coraco-brachialis.
Brachialis anticus.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE BEND OF THE ELBOW.

At the bend of the elbow the brachial artery sinks deeply into a triangular interval, the **antecubital space**, the base of which is directed upward, and may be represented by a line connecting the two condyles of the humerus; the sides are bounded, externally, by the inner edge of the Supinator longus; internally, by the outer margin of the Pronator radii teres; its floor is formed by the Brachialis anticus and Supinator brevis. This space contains the brachial artery with its accompanying veins, the radial and ulnar arteries, the median and musculo-spiral nerves, and the tendon of the Biceps. The brachial artery occupies the middle line of this space, and divides opposite the neck of the radius into the radial and ulnar arteries; it is covered, *in front*, by the integument, the superficial fascia, and the median basilic vein, the vein being separated from direct contact with the artery by the bicipital fascia. *Behind*, it lies on the Brachialis anticus, which separates it from the elbow-joint. The median nerve lies on the inner side of the artery, close to it above, but separated from it below by the coronoid origin of the Pronator radii teres. The tendon of the Biceps lies to the outer side of the space, and the musculo-spiral nerve still more externally, situated upon the Supinator brevis and partly concealed by the Supinator longus.

Peculiarities of the Brachial Artery as Regards its Course.—The brachial artery, accompanied by the median nerve, may leave the inner border of the Biceps and descend toward the inner condyle of the humerus, where it usually curves round a prominence of bone, the supracondylar process. From this process, in most subjects, a fibrous arch is thrown over the artery. The vessel then inclines outward, beneath or through the substance of the Pronator radii teres muscle, to the bend of the elbow. The variation bears considerable analogy to the normal condition of the artery in some of the carnivora: it has been referred to in the description of the humerus (page 180).

As Regards its Division.—Occasionally, the artery is divided for a short distance at its upper part into two trunks, which are united above and below. A similar peculiarity occurs in the main vessel of the lower limb.

The point of bifurcation may be above or below the usual point, the former condition being by far the more frequent. Out of 481 examinations recorded by Mr. Quain, some made on the right and some on the left side of the body, in 386 the artery bifurcated in its normal position. In one case only was the place of division lower than usual, being two or three inches below the elbow-joint. "In 94 cases out of 481, or about 1 in 5¼, there were two arteries instead of one in some part or in the whole of the arm."

There appears, however, to be no correspondence between the arteries of the two arms with respect to their irregular division; for in 61 bodies it occurred on one side only in 43; on both sides, in different positions, in 13; on both sides, in the same position, in 5.

The point of bifurcation takes place at different parts of the arm, being most frequent in the upper part, less so in the lower part, and least so in the middle, the most usual point for the application of a ligature; under any of these circumstances two large arteries would be found in the arm instead of one. The most frequent (in three out of four) of these peculiarities is the high origin of the radial. That artery often arises from the inner side of the brachial, and runs parallel with the main trunk to the elbow, where it crosses it, lying beneath the fascia; or it may perforate the fascia and pass over the artery immediately beneath the integument.

The ulnar sometimes arises from the brachial high up, and accompanies that vessel to the lower part of the arm, and descends toward the inner condyle. In the forearm it generally lies beneath the deep fascia, superficial to the flexor muscles; occasionally between the integument and deep fascia, and very rarely beneath the flexor muscles.

The interosseous artery sometimes arises from the upper part of the brachial or axillary; as it passes down the arm it lies behind the main trunk, and at the bend of the elbow regains its usual position.

In some cases of high origin of the radial the remaining trunk (ulnar interosseous) occasionally passes, together with the median nerve, along the inner margin of the arm to the inner condyle, and then passing from within outward, beneath or through the Pronator radii teres, regains its usual position at the bend of the elbow.

Occasionally the two arteries representing the brachial are connected at the bend of the elbow by a short transverse branch, and are even sometimes reunited.

Sometimes, long slender vessels, **vasa aberrantia**, connect the brachial or axillary arteries with one of the arteries of the forearm or a branch from them. These vessels usually join the radial.

Varieties in Muscular Relations.[1] —The brachial artery is occasionally concealed in some part of its course by muscular or tendinous slips derived from the Coraco-brachialis, Biceps, Brachialis anticus, and Pronator radii teres muscles.

Surface Marking. The direction of the brachial artery is marked by a line drawn along the inner edge of the Biceps from the junction of the anterior and middle thirds of the axillary outlet to the middle of the front of the elbow-joint.

Surgical Anatomy. Compression of the brachial artery is required in cases of amputation and some other operations in the arm and forearm; and it will be observed that it may be effected in almost any part of the course of the artery. If pressure is made in the upper part of the limb, it should be directed from within outward; and if in the lower part, from before backward, as the artery lies on the inner side of the humerus above and in front of the humerus below. The most favorable situation is about the middle of the arm, where it lies on the tendon of the Coraco-brachialis on the inner flat side of the humerus.

The application of a ligature to the brachial artery may be required in case of wound of the vessel and in some cases of wound of the palmar arch. It is also sometimes necessary in cases of aneurism of the brachial, the radial, ulnar, or interosseous arteries. The artery may be secured in any part of its course. The chief guides in determining its position are the surface markings produced by the inner margin of the Coraco-brachialis and Biceps, the known course of the vessel, and its pulsation, which should be carefully felt for before any operation is performed, as the vessel occasionally deviates from its usual position in the arm. In whatever situation the operation is performed, great care is necessary, on account of the extreme thinness of the parts covering the artery and the intimate connection which the vessel has throughout its whole course with important nerves and veins. Sometimes a thin layer of muscular fibre is met with concealing the artery; if such is the case, it must be cut across in order to expose the vessel.

In the upper third of the arm the artery may be exposed in the following manner: The patient being placed supine upon a table, the affected limb should be raised from the side and the hand supinated. An incision about two inches in length should be made on the inner side of the Coraco-brachialis muscle, and the subjacent fascia cautiously divided, so as to avoid wounding the internal cutaneous nerve or basilic vein, which sometimes runs on the surface of the artery as high as the axillary. The fascia having been divided, it should be remembered that the ulnar and internal cutaneous nerves lie on the inner side of the artery, the median on the outer side, the latter nerve being occasionally superficial to the artery in this situation, and that the venæ comites are also in relation with the vessel, one on either side. These being carefully separated, the aneurism needle should be passed round the artery from the inner to the outer side.

If two arteries are present in the arm in consequence of a high division, they are usually placed side by side: and if they are exposed in an operation, the surgeon should endeavor to

[1] See Struther's Anatomical and Physiological Observations.

ascertain, by alternately pressing on each vessel, which of the two communicates with the wound or aneurism, when a ligature may be applied accordingly; or if pulsation or hemorrhage ceases only when both vessels are compressed, both vessels may be tied, as it may be concluded that the two communicate above the seat of disease or are reunited.

It should also be remembered that two arteries may be present in the arm in a case of high division, and that one of these may be found along the inner intermuscular septum, in a line toward the inner condyle of the humerus, or in the usual position of the brachial, but deeply placed beneath the common trunk: a knowledge of these facts will suggest the precautions necessary in every case, and indicate the measures to be adopted when anomalies are met with.

In the middle of the arm the brachial artery may be exposed by making an incision along the inner margin of the Biceps muscle. The forearm being bent so as to relax the muscle, it should be drawn slightly aside, and, the fascia being carefully divided, the median nerve will be exposed lying upon the artery (sometimes beneath); this being drawn inward and the muscle outward, the artery should be separated from its accompanying veins and secured. In this situation the inferior profunda may be mistaken for the main trunk, especially if enlarged, from the collateral circulation having become established; this may be avoided by directing the incision externally toward the Biceps, rather than inward or backward toward the Triceps.

The lower part of the brachial artery is of interest in a surgical point of view, on account of the relation which it bears to the veins most commonly opened in venesection. Of these vessels, the median basilic is the largest and most prominent, and, consequently, the one usually selected for the operation. It should be remembered that this vein runs parallel with the brachial artery, from which it is separated by the bicipital fascia, and that care should be taken in opening the vein not to carry the incision too deeply, so as to endanger the artery.

Collateral Circulation. After the application of a ligature to the brachial artery in the upper third of the arm, the circulation is carried on by branches from the circumflex and subscapular arteries, anastomosing with ascending branches from the superior profunda. If the brachial is tied *below* the origin of the profunda arteries, the circulation is maintained by the branches of the profundæ, anastomosing with the recurrent radial, ulnar, and interosseous arteries. In two cases described by Mr. South,[1] in which the brachial artery had been tied some time previously, in one "a long portion of the artery had been obliterated, and sets of vessels are descending on either side from above the obliteration, to be received into others which ascend in a similar manner from below it. In the other the obliteration is less extensive, and a single curved artery about as big as a crow-quill passes from the upper to the lower open part of the artery."

Branches.—The branches of the brachial artery are—the

Superior Profunda.	Inferior Profunda.
Nutrient.	Anastomotica Magna.
Muscular.	

The **Superior Profunda Artery** (*a. profunda brachii*) *arises* from the inner and back part of the brachial, just below the lower border of the Teres major, and passes backward to the interval between the outer and inner heads of the Triceps muscle; accompanied by the musculo-spiral nerve it winds around the back part of the shaft of the humerus in the spiral groove, between the outer head of the Triceps and the bone, to the outer side of the humerus, where it reaches the external intermuscular septum and divides into two terminal branches. One of these pierces the external intermuscular septum, and descends, in company with the musculo-spiral nerve, to the space between the Brachialis anticus and Supinator longus, where it anastomoses with the recurrent branch of the radial artery; while the other, much the larger of the two, descends along the back of the external intermuscular septum to the back of the elbow-joint, where it anastomoses with the posterior interosseous recurrent, and across the back of the humerus with the posterior ulnar recurrent, the anastomotica magna, and inferior profunda (Fig. 415). The superior profunda supplies the Triceps muscle and gives off a nutrient artery which enters the bone at the upper end of the musculo-spiral groove. Near its commencement it sends off a branch which passes upward between the external and long heads of the Triceps muscle to anastomose with the posterior circumflex

[1] Chelius's Surgery, vol. ii. p. 254. See also White's engravings, referred to by Mr. South, of the anastomosing branches after ligature of the brachial, in White's Cases in Surgery. Porta also gives a case (with drawings) of the circulation after ligature of both brachial and radial (Alterazioni Patoligiche delle Arterie).—Ed. of 15th English edition.

artery, and, while in the groove, a small branch which accompanies a branch of the musculo-spiral nerve through the substance of the Triceps muscle and ends in the Anconeus below the outer condyle of the humerus.

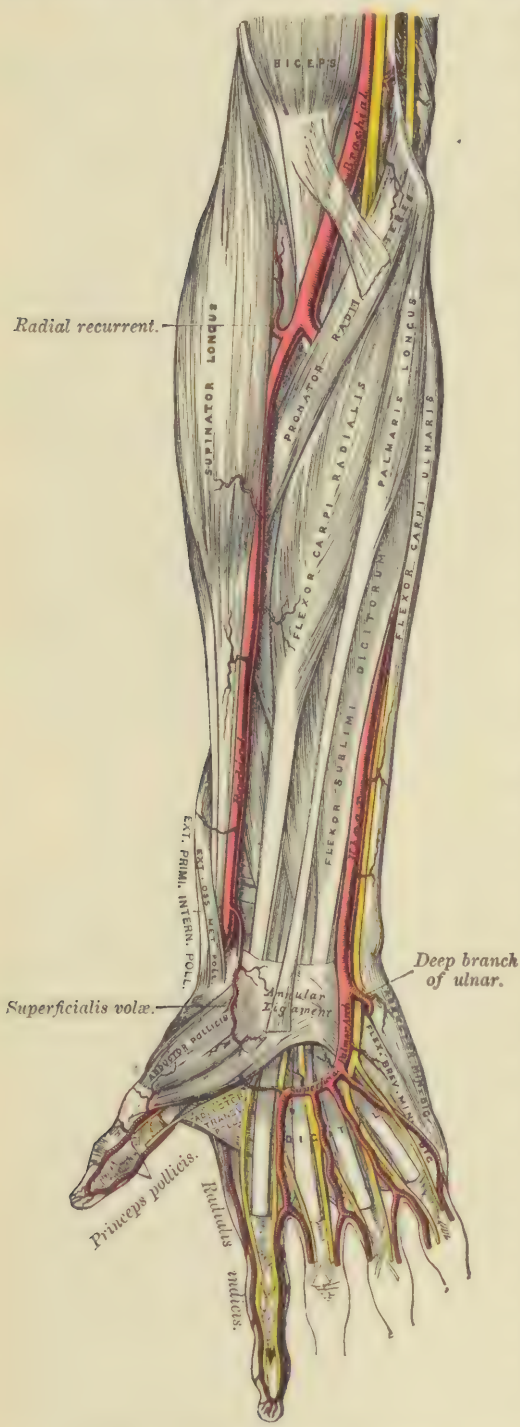


FIG. 413.—The radial and ulnar arteries.

The **Nutrient Artery** (*a. nutricia humeri*) of the shaft of the humerus *arises* from the brachial, about the middle of the arm. Passing downward it enters the nutrient canal of that bone near the insertion of the Coraco-brachialis muscle.

The **Inferior Profunda** (*a. collateralis ulnaris superior*), of small size, *arises* from the brachial, a little below the middle of the arm; piercing the internal intermuscular septum, it descends on the surface of the inner head of the Triceps muscle to the space between the inner condyle and olecranon, accompanied by the ulnar nerve, and terminates by anastomosing with the posterior ulnar recurrent and anastomotica magna. It sometimes supplies a branch to the front of the internal condyle, which anastomoses with the anterior ulnar recurrent.

The **Anastomotica Magna** (*a. collateralis ulnaris inferior*) *arises* from the brachial about two inches above the elbow-joint. It passes transversely inward upon the Brachialis anticus, and, piercing the internal intermuscular septum, winds round the back of the humerus between the Triceps and the bone, forming an arch above the olecranon fossa by its junction with the posterior articular branch of the superior profunda. As this vessel lies on the Brachialis anticus, branches ascend to join the inferior profunda, and others descend in front of the inner condyle to anastomose with the anterior ulnar recurrent. Behind the internal condyle an offset is given off which anastomoses with the inferior profunda and posterior ulnar recurrent arteries and supplies the Triceps.

The **Muscular** (*rami musculares*) are three or four large branches, which are distributed to the muscles in the course of the artery. They supply the Coraco-brachialis, Biceps, and Brachialis anticus muscles.

The Anastomosis around the Elbow-joint (Fig. 415).—The vessels engaged in this anastomosis may be conveniently divided into those situated *in front* and *behind* the internal and external condyles. The branches anastomosing *in front* of the internal condyle are the anastomotica magna, the anterior ulnar recurrent, and the anterior terminal branch of the inferior profunda. Those *behind* the internal condyle are the anastomotica magna, the posterior ulnar recurrent, and the posterior terminal branch of the inferior profunda. The branches anastomosing *in front* of the external condyle are the radial recurrent and the anterior terminal branch of the superior profunda. Those *behind* the external condyle (perhaps more properly described as being situated between the external condyle and the olecranon) are the anastomotica magna, the interosseous recurrent, and the posterior terminal branch of the superior profunda. There is also a large arch of anastomosis above the olecranon, formed by the interosseous recurrent, joining with the anastomotica magna and posterior ulnar recurrent.

From this description it will be observed that the anastomotica magna is the vessel most engaged, the only part of the anastomosis in which it is not employed being that *in front* of the external condyle.

The Radial Artery (A. Radialis) (Figs. 413, 414).

The radial artery appears, from its direction, to be the continuation of the brachial, but in size it is smaller than the ulnar. It commences at the bifurcation of the brachial, just below the bend of the elbow, and passes alongthe radial side of the forearm to the wrist; it then winds backward, round the outer side of the carpus, beneath the extensor tendons of the thumb, to the upper end of the space between the metacarpal bones of the thumb and index finger, and finally passes forward, between the two heads of the First dorsal interosseous muscle, into the palm of the hand, where it crosses the metacarpal bones to the ulnar border of the hand, to form the **deep palmar arch**. At its termination it inosculates with the deep branch of the ulnar artery. The relations of this vessel may thus be conveniently divided into three parts—viz., in the forearm, at the back of the wrist, and in the hand.

Relations.—In the forearm this vessel extends from opposite the neck of the radius to the forepart of the styloid process, being placed to the inner side of the shaft of the bone above and in front of it below. It is overlapped in the upper part of its course by the fleshy belly of the Supinator longus muscle; throughout the rest of its course it is superficial, being covered by the integument, the superficial and deep fasciæ. In its course downward it lies upon the tendon of the Biceps, the Supinator brevis, the Pronator radii teres, the radial origin of the Flexor sublimis digitorum, the Flexor longus pollicis, the Pronator quadratus, and the lower extremity of the radius. In the upper third of its course it lies between the Supinator longus and the Pronator radii teres; in the lower two-thirds, between the tendons of the Supinator longus and the Flexor carpi radialis. The radial nerve lies close to the outer side of the artery in the middle third of its course, and some filaments of the musculo-cutaneous nerve, after piercing the deep fascia, run along the lower part of the artery as it winds round the wrist. The vessel is accompanied by venæ comites throughout its whole course.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE RADIAL ARTERY IN THE FOREARM.

In front.
Skin, superficial and deep fasciæ.
Supinator longus.

Inner side.
Pronator radii teres.
Flexor carpi radialis.

Outer side.
Supinator longus.
Radial nerve (middle third).

Behind.

Tendon of Biceps.
Supinator brevis.
Pronator radii teres.
Flexor sublimis digitorum.
Flexor longus pollicis.
Pronator quadratus.
Radius.

At the wrist, as it winds round the outer side of the carpus from the styloid process to the first interosseous space, it lies upon the external lateral ligament, and then upon the scaphoid bone and trapezium, being covered by the extensor tendons of the thumb, subcutaneous veins, some filaments of the radial nerve, and the integument. It is accompanied by two veins and a filament of the musculo-cutaneous nerve.

In the hand it passes from the upper end of the first interosseous space, between the heads of the Abductor indicis or First dorsal interosseous muscle, transversely across the palm, to the base of the metacarpal bone of the little finger, where it inosculates with the communicating branch from the ulnar artery, forming the **deep palmar arch.**

The Deep Palmar Arch (*arcus volaris profundus*) (Fig. 414).—It lies upon the carpal extremities of the metacarpal bones and the Interossei muscles, being covered by the Adductor obliquus pollicis, the flexor tendons of the fingers, the Lumbricales, the Opponens, and Flexor brevis minimi digiti. Alongside of it is the deep branch of the ulnar nerve, but running in the opposite direction; that is to say, from within outward. The branches of the deep palmar arch are the palmar interosseous, perforating and palmar recurrent vessels (page 660).

Peculiarities.—The origin of the radial artery, according to Quain, is, in nearly one case in eight, higher than usual; more frequently arising from the axillary or upper part of the brachial than from the lower part of this vessel. The variations in the position of this vessel in the arm and at the bend of the elbow have been already mentioned. In the forearm it deviates less frequently from its position than the ulnar. It has been found lying over the fascia instead of beneath it. It has also been observed on the surface of the Supinator longus, instead of under its inner border; and in turning round the wrist it has been seen lying over, instead of beneath, the extensor tendons of the thumb.

Surface Marking.—The position of the radial artery in the forearm is represented by a line drawn from the outer border of the tendon of the Biceps in the centre of the hollow in front of the elbow-joint with a straight course to the inner side of the forepart of the styloid process of the radius.

Surgical Anatomy.—The radial artery is much exposed to injury in its lower third, and is frequently wounded by the hand being driven through a pane of glass, by the slipping of a knife or chisel held in the other hand, and similar accidents. The injury is often followed by a *traumatic aneurism*, for which the operation of extirpating or laying open the sac after securing the vessel above and below is required.

The operation of *tying the radial artery* is required in cases of wounds either of its trunk or of some of its branches, or for aneurism; and it will be observed that the vessel may be exposed in any part of its course through the forearm without the division of any muscular fibres. The operation in the middle or inferior third of the forearm is easily performed, but in the upper third, near the elbow, it is attended with some difficulty, from the greater depth of the vessel and from its being overlapped by the Supinator longus muscle.

To tie the artery in the upper third an incision three inches in length should be made through the integument, in a line drawn from the centre of the bend of the elbow to the front of the styloid process of the radius, avoiding the branches of the median vein; the fascia of the arm being divided and the Supinator longus drawn a little outward, the artery will be exposed. The venæ comites should be carefully separated from the vessel, and the ligature passed from the radial to the ulnar side.

In the middle third of the forearm the artery may be exposed by making an incision of similar length on the inner margin of the Supinator longus. In this situation the radial nerve lies in close relation with the outer side of the artery, and should, as well as the veins, be carefully avoided.

In the lower third the artery is easily secured by dividing the integument and fascia in the interval between the tendons of the Supinator longus and Flexor carpi radialis muscles.

Branches (Figs. 413, 414, and 415).—The branches of the radial artery may be divided into three groups, corresponding with the three regions in which the vessel is situated.

- *In the Forearm*
  - Radial Recurrent.
  - Muscular.
  - Anterior Radial Carpal.
  - Superficialis Volæ.
- *Wrist*
  - Posterior Radial Carpal.
  - Metacarpal.
  - Dorsales Pollicis.
  - Dorsalis Indicis.
- *Hand*
  - Princeps Pollicis.
  - Radialis Indicis.
  - Perforating.
  - Palmar Interosseous.
  - Palmar Recurrent.

The **Radial Recurrent** (*a. recurrens radialis*) (Fig. 414) is given off immediately below the elbow. It ascends between the branches of the musculo-spiral nerve lying on the Supinator brevis, and then between the Supinator longus and Brachialis anticus, supplying these muscles and the elbow-joint, and anastomosing with the terminal branches of the superior profunda.

The **Muscular Branches** (*rami musculares*) are distributed to the muscles on the radial side of the forearm.

The **Anterior Radial Carpal** (*ramus carpeus volaris*) (Fig. 414) is a small vessel which *arises* from the radial artery near the lower border of the Pronator quadratus, and, running inward in front of the radius, anastomoses with the anterior carpal branch of the ulnar artery. In this way an arterial anastomosis, the **anterior carpal arch** (*rete carpi volare*), is formed in front of the wrist; it is joined by branches from the anterior interosseous above, and by recurrent branches from the deep palmar arch below, and gives off branches which descend to supply the articulations of the wrist and carpus.

The **Superficialis Volæ** (*ramus volaris superficialis*) (Fig. 414) *arises* from the radial artery, just where this vessel is about to wind round the wrist. Running forward, it passes between, occasionally over, the muscles of the thumb, which it supplies, and sometimes anastomoses with the palmar portion of the ulnar artery, completing the superficial palmar arch. This vessel varies considerably in size: usually it is very small, and terminates in the muscles of the thumb; sometimes it is as large as the continuation of the radial.

The **Posterior Radial Carpal** (*ramus carpeus dorsalis*) (Fig. 415) is a small vessel which *arises* from the radial artery beneath the extensor tendons of the thumb; crossing the carpus transversely to the inner border of the hand, it anastomoses with the posterior carpal branch of the ulnar, forming the **posterior carpal arch** (*rete carpi dorsale*), which is joined by the termination of the anterior interosseous artery. From this arch are given off descending branches, the **dorsal interosseous arteries** (*aa. metacarpeæ dorsales*) for the second, third, and fourth interosseous spaces, which run forward on the Second, Third, and Fourth dorsal interossei muscles, and divide into **dorsal digital branches** (*aa. digitales dorsales*), which supply the adjacent sides of the index, middle, ring, and little fingers respectively, communicating with the digital arteries of the superficial palmar arch. The dorsal interosseous arteries anastomose with the perforating branches from the deep palmar arch (*rami perforantes*).

The **Dorsales Pollicis** (Fig. 415) are two vessels which run along the sides of the dorsal aspect of the thumb. They *arise* separately, or occasionally by a common trunk, near the base of the first metacarpal bone.

The **Dorsalis Indicis** (Fig. 415), also a small branch, runs along the radial side of the back of the index finger, sending a few branches to the Abductor indicis.

The **Princeps Pollicis** (*a. princeps pollicis*) (Fig. 414) *arises* from the radial just as it turns inward to the deep part of the hand; it descends between the Abductor indicis and Adductor obliquu pollicis, then between the Adductor transversus pollicis and Adductor obliquus pollicis, along the ulnar side of the metacarpal bone of the thumb, to the base of the first phalanx, where it divides into two branches, which run along the sides of the palmar aspect of the thumb, and form an arch on the palmar surface of the last phalanx, from which branches are distributed to the integument and pulp of the thumb.

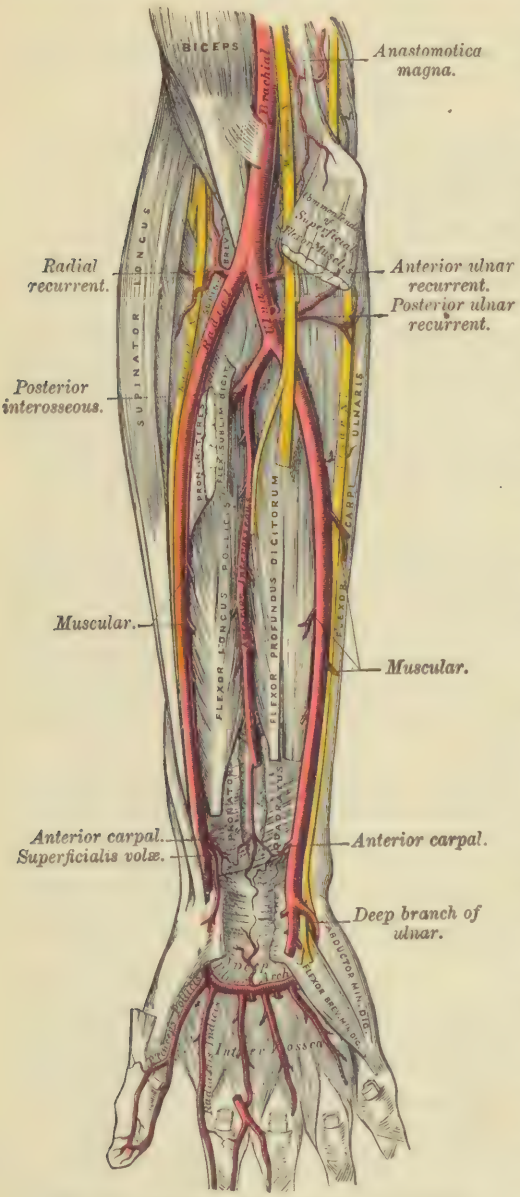


FIG. 414.—Ulnar and radial arteries. Deep view.

The **Radialis Indicis** (*a. volaris indicis radialis*) (Fig. 414) *arises* close to the preceding, descends between the Abductor indicis and Adductor transversus pollicis, and runs along the radial side of the index finger to its extremity, where it anastomoses with the collateral digital artery from the superficial palmar arch. At the lower border of the Adductor transversus pollicis this vessel anastomoses with the princeps pollicis, and gives a communicating branch to the superficial palmar arch.

The **Perforating Arteries** (*rami perforantes*) (Fig. 414), three in number, pass backward from the deep palmar arch between the heads of the last three Dorsal interossei muscles, to inosculate with the dorsal interosseous arteries.

The **Palmar Interosseous** (*aa. metacarpeæ volares*) (Fig. 414), three or four in number, *arise* from the convexity of the deep palmar arch; they run forward upon the Interossei muscles, and anastomose at the clefts of the fingers with the digital branches of the superficial arch.

The **Palmar Recurrent Branches** *arise* from the concavity of the deep palmar arch. They pass upward in front of the wrist, supplying the carpal articulations and anastomosing with the anterior carpal arch.

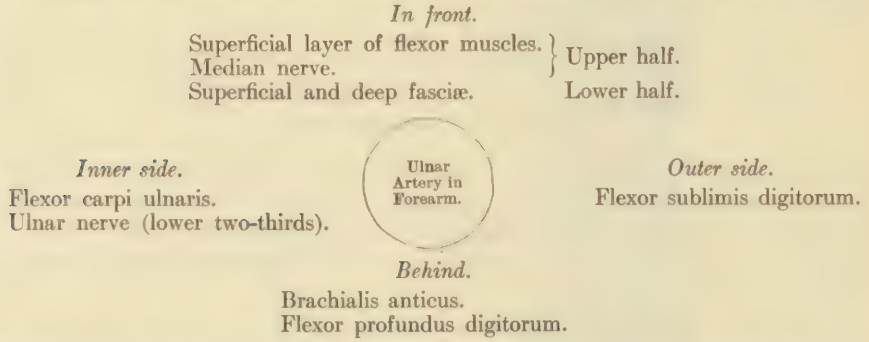
The Ulnar Artery (A. Ulnaris) (Figs. 413, 414).

The ulnar artery, the larger of the two terminal branches of the brachial, commences a little below the bend of the elbow, and crosses obliquely the

inner side of the forearm to the commencement of its lower half; it then runs along its ulnar border to the wrist, crosses the annular ligament on the radial side of the pisiform bone, and immediately beyond this bone divides into two branches which enter into the formation of the superficial and deep palmar arches.

Relations. In the Forearm.—In its *upper half* it is deeply seated, being covered by all the superficial Flexor muscles, excepting the Flexor carpi ulnaris; the median nerve is in relation with the inner side of the artery for about an inch and then crosses the vessel, being separated from it by the deep head of the Pronator radii teres; it lies upon the Brachialis anticus and Flexor profundus digitorum muscles. In the *lower half* of the forearm it lies upon the Flexor profundus, being covered by the integument, the superficial and deep fasciæ, and is placed between the Flexor carpi ulnaris and Flexor sublimis digitorum muscles. It is accompanied by two venæ comites; the ulnar nerve lies on its inner side for the lower two-thirds of its extent, and a small branch from the nerve descends on the lower part of the vessel to the palm of the hand.

PLAN OF RELATIONS OF THE ULNAR ARTERY IN THE FOREARM.



At the wrist (Fig. 413) the ulnar artery is covered by the integument and fascia, and lies upon the anterior annular ligament. On its inner side is the pisiform bone. The ulnar nerve lies at the inner side, and somewhat behind the artery; here the nerve and artery are crossed by a band of fibres, which extends from the pisiform bone to the anterior annular ligament.

Peculiarities.—The ulnar artery has been found to vary in its origin nearly in the proportion of one in thirteen cases, in one case arising lower than usual, about two or three inches below the elbow, and in all other cases much higher, the brachial being a more frequent source or origin than the axillary.

Variations in the position of this vessel are more frequent than in the radial. When its origin is normal the course of the vessel is rarely changed. When it arises high up it is almost invariably superficial to the Flexor muscles in the forearm, lying commonly beneath the fascia, more rarely between the fascia and integument. In a few cases its position was subcutaneous in the upper part of the forearm, subaponeurotic in the lower part.

Surface Marking.—On account of the curved direction of the ulnar artery the line on the surface of the body which indicates its course is somewhat complicated. First, draw a line from the front of the internal condyle of the humerus to the radial side of the pisiform bone; the lower two-thirds of this line represents the course of the middle and lower third of the ulnar artery. Secondly, draw a line from the centre of the antecubital space to the junction of the upper and middle third of the first line; this represents the course of the upper third of the artery.

Surgical Anatomy.—The application of a ligature to this vessel is required in cases of wound of the artery or of its branches, or in consequence of aneurism. In the upper half of the forearm the artery is deeply seated beneath the superficial flexor muscles, and the application of a ligature in this situation is attended with some difficulty. An incision is to be made in the course of a line drawn from the front of the internal condyle of the humerus to the outer side

of the pisiform bone, so that the centre of the incision is three fingers' breadth below the internal condyle. The skin and superficial fascia having been divided and the deep fascia exposed, the white line which separates the Flexor carpi ulnaris from the other flexor muscles is to be sought for, and the fascia incised in this line. The Flexor carpi ulnaris is now to be carefully separated from the other muscles, when the ulnar nerve will be exposed, and must be drawn aside. Some little distance below the nerve the artery will be found accompanied by its venæ comites, and it may be ligatured by passing the needle from within outward. In the middle and lower third of the forearm this vessel may be easily secured by making an incision on the radial side of the tendon of the Flexor carpi ulnaris: the deep fascia being divided, and the Flexor carpi ulnaris and its companion muscle, the Flexor sublimis, being separated from each other, the vessel will be exposed, accompanied by its venæ comites, the ulnar nerve lying on its inner side. The veins being separated from the artery, the ligature should be passed from the ulnar to the radial side, taking care to avoid the ulnar nerve.

Branches (Figs. 413, 414, and 415).—The branches of the ulnar artery may be arranged in the following groups:

Forearm	Anterior Ulnar Recurrent.
	Posterior Ulnar Recurrent.
	Interosseous: Anterior Interosseous. / Posterior Interosseous.
	Muscular.
Wrist	Anterior Carpal.
	Posterior Carpal.
Hand	Deep Palmar or Communicating.
	Superficial Palmar Arch.

The **Anterior Ulnar Recurrent** (*a. recurrentes ulnaris anterior*) (Fig. 414) *arises* immediately below the elbow-joint, passes upward and inward between the Brachialis anticus and Pronator radii teres, supplies twigs to those muscles, and, in front, of the inner condyle anastomoses with the anastomotica magna and inferior profunda.

The **Posterior Ulnar Recurrent** (*a. recurrentes ulnaris posterior*) (Figs. 414 and 415) is much larger, and *arises* somewhat lower than the preceding. It passes backward and inward, beneath the Flexor sublimis, and ascends behind the inner condyle of the humerus. In the interval between this process and the olecranon it lies beneath the Flexor carpi ulnaris, and ascending between the heads of that muscle, in relation with the ulnar nerve; it supplies the neighboring muscles and joint, and anastomoses with the inferior profunda, anastomotica magna, and interosseous recurrent arteries.

The **Interosseous Artery** (*a. interossea communis*) (Fig. 414) is a short trunk about half an inch in length, and of considerable size, which *arises* immediately, below the tuberosity of the radius, and, passing backward to the upper border of the interosseous membrane, divides into two branches, the **anterior** and **posterior interosseous.**

The **Anterior Interosseous** (*a. interossea volaris*) (Fig. 414) passes down the forearm on the anterior surface of the interosseous membrane, to which it is connected by a thin aponeurotic arch. It is accompanied by the interosseous branch of the median nerve, and overlapped by the contiguous margins of the Flexor profundus digitorum and Flexor longus pollicis muscles, giving off in this situation muscular branches and the nutrient arteries of the radius and ulna. At the upper border of the Pronator quadratus a branch, **anterior communicating artery,** descends beneath the muscle to anastomose in front of the carpus with the anterior carpal arch. The continuation of the artery passes behind the Pronator quadratus, and, piercing the interosseous membrane, reaches the back of the forearm, and anastomoses with the posterior interosseous artery (Fig. 415). It then descends to the back of the wrist to join the posterior carpal arch. The anterior interosseous gives

off a long, slender branch, the **median artery** or **artery comes nervi mediana** (*a. mediana*), which accompanies the median nerve and gives offsets to its substance. This artery is sometimes much enlarged, and accompanies the nerve into the palm of the hand.

The **Posterior Interosseous Artery** (*a. interossea dorsalis*) (Figs. 414 and 415) passes backward through the interval between the oblique ligament and the upper border of the interosseous membrane. It appears between the contiguous borders of the Supinator brevis and the Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, and runs down the back part of the forearm, between the superficial and deep layer of muscles, to both of which it distributes branches. At the lower part of the forearm it anastomoses with the termination of the anterior interosseous artery. Then, continuing its course over the head of the ulna, it joins the posterior carpal branch of the ulnar artery. This artery gives off, near its origin, the **interosseous recurrent** branch.

The **interosseous recurrent artery** (*a. interossea recurrens*) (Fig. 415) is a large vessel which ascends to the interval between the external condyle and olecranon, on or through the fibres of the Supinator brevis, but beneath the Anconeus, anastomosing with a branch from the superior profunda, and with the posterior ulnar recurrent and anastomotica magna.

The **Muscular Branches** (*rami musculares*) are distributed to the muscles along the ulnar side of the forearm.

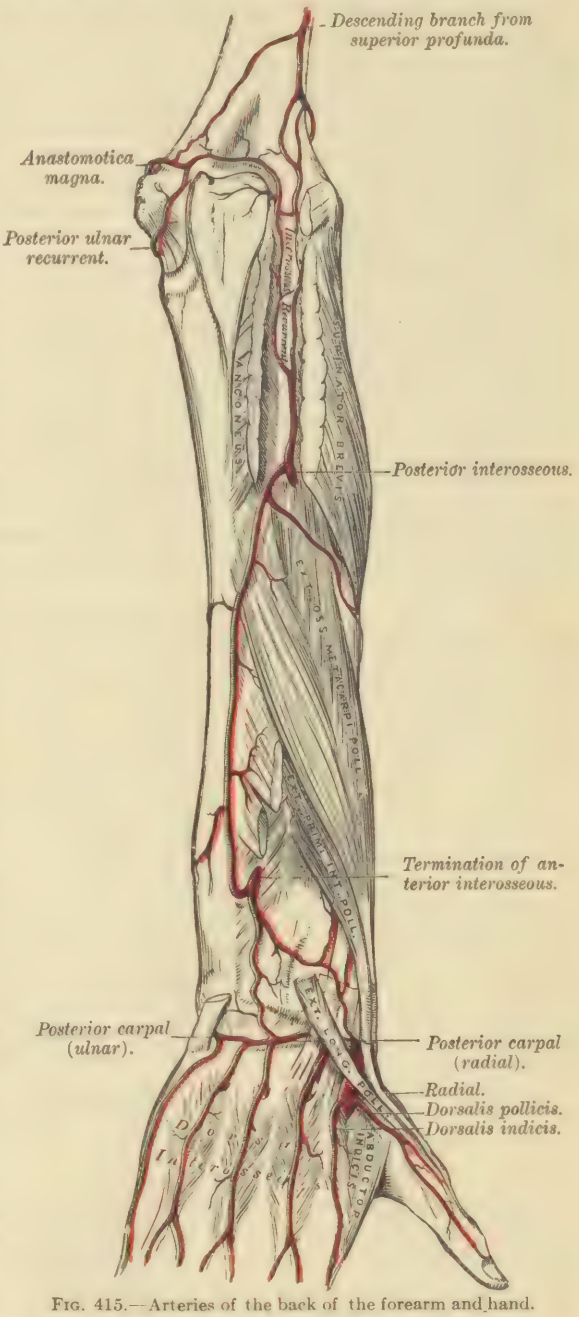


FIG. 415.—Arteries of the back of the forearm and hand.

The **Anterior Carpal** (*ramus carpeus volaris*) (Fig. 414) is a small vessel which crosses the front of the carpus beneath the tendons of the Flexor profundus, and inosculates with a corresponding branch of the radial artery.

The **Posterior Carpal** (*ramus carpeus dorsalis*) (Fig. 415) *arises* immediately above the pisiform bone, and winds backward beneath the tendon of the Flexor carpi ulnaris: it passes across the dorsal surface of the carpus beneath the extensor

tendons, anastomosing with a corresponding branch of the radial artery, and forming the **posterior carpal arch** (*rete carpi dorsale*) (Fig. 415). Immediately after its origin it gives off a small branch which runs along the ulnar side of the metacarpal bone of the little finger, forming one of the **metacarpal arteries**, and supplies the ulnar side of the dorsal surface of the little finger.

The **Deep** or **Communicating Branch** to the **Deep Palmar Arch** (*ramus volaris profundus*) (Fig. 414) passes deeply inward between the Abductor minimi digiti and Flexor brevis minimi digiti, near their origins; it anastomoses with the termination of the radial artery, completing the deep palmar arch.

The continuation of the trunk of the ulnar artery in the hand forms the greater part of the superficial palmar arch.

The **Superficial Palmar Arch** (*arcus volaris superficialis*) (Fig. 413) is formed by the ulnar artery in the hand, and is completed on the outer side by this vessel anastomosing with a branch from the radialis indicis, though sometimes the arch is completed by the ulnar anastomosing with the superficialis volæ or the princeps pollicis of the radial artery. The arch passes across the palm, describing a curve, with its convexity forward, to the space between the ball of the thumb and the index finger, where the above-mentioned anastomosis takes place.

Relations.—The superficial palmar arch is covered by the skin, the Palmaris brevis, and the palmar fascia. It lies upon the annular ligament, the Flexor brevis of the little finger, the tendons of the superficial flexor of the fingers, and the divisions of the median and ulnar nerves.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE SUPERFICIAL PALMAR ARCH.

In front.

Skin.
Palmaris brevis.
Palmar fascia.

Superficial Palmar Arch.

Behind.

Annular ligament.
Flexor brevis of little finger.
Superficial flexor tendons.
Divisions of median and ulnar nerves.

Branches.—The branches of the Superficial Palmar Arch are the

Digital.

The **Digital Branches** (*aa. digitales volares communes*) (Fig. 413), four in number, are given off from the convexity of the superficial palmar arch. They supply the ulnar side of the little finger and the adjoining sides of the little, ring, middle, and index fingers, the radial side of the index finger and thumb being supplied from the radial artery. The digital arteries at first lie superficial to the flexor tendons, but as they pass forward with the digital nerves to the clefts between the fingers they lie between them, and are there joined by the interosseous branches from the deep palmar arch. The digital arteries on the sides of the fingers lie beneath the digital nerves; and about the middle of the last phalanx the two branches for each finger form an arch, from the convexity of which branches pass to supply the pulp of the finger.

Surface Marking.—The superficial palmar arch is represented by a curved line, starting from the outer side of the pisiform bone and carried downward as far as the middle third of the palm, and then curved outward on a level with the upper end of the cleft between the thumb and index finger. The deep palmar arch is situated about half an inch nearer to the carpus.

Surgical Anatomy.—*Wounds of the palmar arches* are of special interest, and are always difficult to deal with. When the superficial arch is wounded it is generally possible, by enlarging the wound if necessary, to secure the vessel and tie it; or in cases where it is found impossible to encircle the vessel with a ligature, a pair of hæmostatic forceps may be applied and left on for twenty-four or forty-eight hours. Wounds of the deep arch are not so easily dealt with. It may be possible to secure the vessel by ligature or by forcipressure forceps, which may be left on; or, failing in this, the wound may be carefully plugged with gauze and an outside dressing carefully bandaged on. The plug should be allowed to remain untouched for three or four days. In wounds of the deep palmar arch a ligature may be applied to the bleeding points from the dorsum of the hand by resection of the upper part of the third metacarpal bone. It is useless in these cases to ligate one of the arteries of the forearm alone, and indeed simultaneous ligation of both radial and ulnar arteries above the wrist is often unsuccessful, on account of the anastomosis carried on by the carpal arches. Therefore, if unable to ligate the divided ends of the arch, upon the failure of pressure to arrest hemorrhage, it is expedient to apply a ligature to the brachial artery.

ARTERIES OF THE TRUNK.

THE DESCENDING AORTA (Figs. 416, 417).

The descending aorta is divided into two portions, the **thoracic** and **abdominal**, in correspondence with the two great cavities of the trunk in which it is situated.

The Thoracic Aorta (Aorta Thoracalis) (Fig. 416).

The thoracic aorta commences at the lower border of the fourth dorsal vertebra, on the left side, and terminates at the aortic opening in the Diaphragm, in front of the lower border of the last dorsal vertebra. At its commencement it is situated on the left side of the spine; it approaches the median line as it descends, and at its termination lies directly in front of the spinal column. The direction of this vessel being influenced by the spine, upon which it rests, it describes a curve which is concave forward in the dorsal region. As the branches given off from it are small, the diminution in the size of the vessel is inconsiderable. It is contained in the back part of the posterior mediastinum.

Relations.—It is in relation, *in front*, from above downward, with the root of the left lung, the pericardium, the œsophagus, and the Diaphragm: *behind*, with the vertebral column and the venæ azygos minor; on the *right side*, with the vena azygos major and thoracic duct; on the *left side*, with the left pleura and lung. The œsophagus, with its accompanying nerves, lies on the right side of the aorta *above;* but at the lower part of the thorax it gets in front of the aorta, and close to the Diaphragm is situated to its left side.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE THORACIC AORTA.

In front.
Root of left lung.
Pericardium.
Œsophagus.
Diaphragm.

Right side.
Œsophagus (above).
Vena azygos major.
Thoracic duct.

Left side.
Pleura.
Left lung.
Œsophagus (below).

Behind.
Vertebral column.
Superior and inferior azygos minor veins.

The aorta is occasionally found to be obliterated at a particular spot—viz., at the junction of the arch with the thoracic aorta just below the ductus arteriosus. Whether this is the result of disease or of congenital malformation is immaterial to our present purpose; it affords an interesting opportunity of observing the resources of the collateral circulation. The course of the anastomosing vessels, by which the blood is brought from the upper to the lower part of the artery, will be found well described in an account of two cases in the *Pathological Transactions*, vols. viii. and x. In the former (p. 162) Mr. Sydney Jones thus sums up the detailed description of the anastomosing vessels: "The principal communications by which the circulation was carried on, were—Firstly, the internal mammary, anastomosing with the intercostal arteries, with the phrenic of the abdominal aorta by means of the musculo-phrenic and comes nervi phrenici, and largely with the deep epigastric. Secondly, the superior intercostal, anastomosing anteriorly by means of a large branch with the first aortic intercostal, and posteriorly with the posterior branch of the same artery. Thirdly, the inferior thyroid, by means of a branch about the size of an ordinary radial, formed a communication with the first aortic intercostal. Fourthly, the transversalis colli, by means of very large communications with the posterior branches of the intercostals. Fifthly, the branches (of the subclavian and axillary) going to the side of the chest were large, and anastomosed freely with the lateral branches of the intercostals." In the second case also (vol. x. p. 97) Mr. Wood describes the anastomoses in a somewhat similar manner, adding the remark that "the blood which was brought into the aorta through the anastomoses of the intercostal arteries appeared to be expended principally in supplying the abdomen and pelvis, while the supply to the lower extremities had passed through the internal mammary and epigastrics."

Surgical Anatomy.—The student should now consider the effects likely to be produced by *aneurism of the thoracic aorta*, a disease of common occurrence. When we consider the great depth of the vessel from the surface and the number of important structures which surround it on every side, it may easily be conceived what a variety of obscure symptoms may arise from disease of this part of the arterial system, and how they may be liable to be mistaken for those of other affections. Aneurism of the thoracic aorta most usually extends backward along the left side of the spine, producing absorption of the bodies of the vertebræ, with curvature of the spine; whilst the irritation or pressure on the cord will give rise to pain, either in the chest, back, or loins, with radiating pain in the left upper intercostal spaces, from pressure on the intercostal nerves; at the same time the tumor may project backward on each side of the spine, beneath the integument, as a pulsating swelling, simulating abscess connected with diseased bone, or it may displace the œsophagus and compress the lung on one or the other side. If the tumor extend forward, it may press upon and displace the heart, giving rise to palpitation and other symptoms of disease of that organ; or it may displace, or even compress, the œsophagus, causing pain and difficulty of swallowing, as in stricture of that tube; and ultimately even open into it by ulceration, producing fatal hemorrhage. If the disease extends to the right side, it may press upon the thoracic duct; or it may burst into the pleural cavity or into the trachea or lung; and, lastly, it may open into the posterior mediastinum.

Branches.—Branches of the thoracic aorta supply the thoracic viscera. They are known as **rami viscerales**. The rami viscerales are the **bronchial, œsophageal, pericardial,** and **mediastinal arteries**. Other branches of the thoracic aorta supply the walls of the chest. They are known as **rami parietales** or **intercostal arteries**.

The **Bronchial Arteries** (*aa. bronchiales*) are the nutrient vessels of the lungs, and vary in number, size, and origin. That of the right side arises from the first aortic intercostal, or by a common trunk with the left bronchial from the front of the thoracic aorta. Those of the left side, usually two in number, arise from the thoracic aorta, one a little lower than the other. Each vessel is directed to the back part of the corresponding bronchus along which it runs, dividing and subdividing along the bronchial tube, supplying them, the cellular tissue of the lungs, the bronchial glands, and the œsophagus.

The **Œsophageal Arteries** (*aa. œsophageæ*), usually four or five in number, *arise* from the front of the aorta, and pass obliquely downward to the œsophagus, forming a chain of anastomoses along that tube, anastomosing with the œsophageal branches of the inferior thyroid arteries above, and with ascending branches from the phrenic and gastric arteries below.

The **Pericardiac** (*rami pericardiaci*) are a few small vessels, irregular in their origin, distributed to the pericardium.

The **Posterior Mediastinal Arteries** (*rami mediastinales*) are numerous small vessels which supply the glands and loose areolar tissue in the mediastinum.

The lower mediastinal branches are known as the **superior phrenic arteries** (*aa. phrenicæ superiores*), and are distributed to the posterior portion of the Diaphragm.

The **Intercostal Arteries** (*aa. intercostales*) (Fig. 416) *arise* from the back of the aorta. The aortic intercostals are usually nine in number on each side, the two superior intercostal spaces being supplied by the superior intercostal, a branch of the subclavian. The second space usually receives a considerable branch from the first aortic intercostal, which joins with the branch from the superior intercostal of the subclavian. The branch which runs along the lower border of the last rib is named the **subcostal artery**. The right intercostals are longer than the left, on account of the position of the aorta on the left side of the spine: they pass outward, across the bodies of the vertebræ, to the intercostal spaces, being covered by the pleura, the œsophagus, thoracic duct, sympathetic nerve, and the vena azygos major; the left, passing outward, are crossed by the sympathetic; the upper two are also crossed by the superior intercostal vein, the lower by the azygos minor veins. In each intercostal space the artery passes outward, the External intercostal muscle being behind, the pleura and a thin fascia being in front. It then passes between the two layers of Intercostal muscles, and, having ascended obliquely to the lower border of the rib above it, is continued forward in the groove on its lower border and anastomoses with the anterior intercostal branches of the internal mammary. The first aortic intercostal anastomoses with the superior intercostal branch of the subclavian, and the last three intercostals pass between the abdominal muscles, inosculating with the epigastric in front and with the phrenic and lumbar arteries. Each intercostal artery is accompanied by a vein and nerve, the former being above, and the latter below, except in the upper intercostal spaces, where the nerve is at first above the artery. The arteries are protected from pressure during the action of the Intercostal muscles by fibrous arches thrown across, and attached by each extremity to the bone. The lower intercostal arteries are continued anteriorly from the intercostal spaces into the abdominal wall, except the *subcostal*, which lies throughout its whole course in the abdominal wall, since it is placed below the last rib. They pass behind the costal cartilages between the Internal oblique and Transversalis muscle to the sheath of the Rectus, where they anastomose with the internal mammary and the deep epigastric arteries. Behind, the subcostal artery anastomoses with the first lumbar artery.

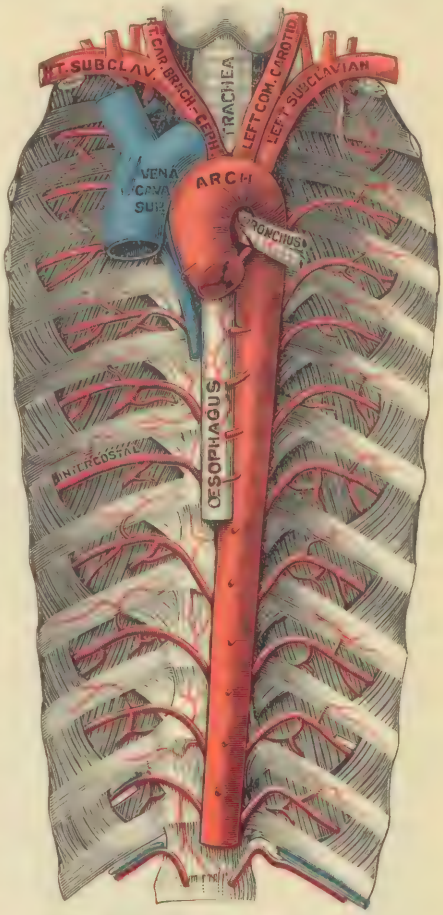


FIG. 416.—Thoracic aorta. (Testut.)

Branches.—Each intercostal artery gives off numerous muscular branches (*rami musculares*).

Lateral cutaneous.
Posterior or dorsal branch.
Muscular.
Collateral intercostal.

Lateral Cutaneous Branches (*rami cutanei laterales*) come off from each intercostal and take a similar course to that of the lateral cutaneous branch of the intercostal nerve. These arteries are distributed to the walls of the chest and to the mammary gland (*rami mammarii laterales*).

Small branches pass to the mammary gland through the fourth, fifth, and sixth interspaces (*rami mammarii medialis*), and to the skin to the inner side of the nipple (*rami cutanei arteriores*).

The portion of the artery considered here as the prolongation of the main trunk is called by Spalteholz and others the **anterior branch** (*ramus anterior*).

The **Posterior** or **Dorsal Branch** (*ramus posterior*) of each intercostal artery passes backward to the inner side of the anterior costo-transverse ligament, and divides into an **external branch** (*ramus cutaneus lateralis*), and an **internal branch** (*ramus cutaneus medialis*), which are distributed to the muscles and integument of the back. **Muscular branches** (*rami musculares*) are given off by the dorsal branch soon after its origin. A **spinal branch** (*ramus spinalis*) comes off from the dorsal branch of the intercostal. It traverses the vertebral arches and enters the spinal canal through the intervertebral foramen, is distributed to the spinal cord and its membranes, and to the bodies of the vertebræ in the same manner as the lateral spinal branches from the vertebral. It gives off three branches, the **neural,** which accompanies the spinal nerve-roots, and is distributed to the membranes of the spinal cord. The **post-central branch** divides into ascending and descending branches, which, anastomosing with similar branches above and below, form a series of vertical arches in the back of the bodies of the vertebræ.[1] The **prelaminar branch** is distributed to "the posterior wall of the spinal canal."[2]

The **Collateral Intercostal Branch** comes off from the intercostal artery near the angle of the rib, and descends to the upper border of the rib below, along which it courses to anastomose with the anterior intercostal branch of the internal mammary or its branch, the musculo-phrenic.

The two lower intercostals on each side have not constant collateral branches. Even when present they are of small size and end in the wall of the abdomen. Each collateral intercostal branch gives off muscular branches.

Surgical Anatomy.—The position of the intercostal vessels should be borne in mind in performing the operation of *paracentesis thoracis*. The puncture should never be made nearer the middle line posteriorly than the angle of the rib, as the artery crosses the space internal to this point. In the lateral portion of the chest, where the puncture is usually made, the artery lies at the upper part of the intercostal space, and therefore the puncture should be made just above the upper border of the rib forming the lower boundary of the space.

The Abdominal Aorta (Aorta Abdominalis) (Fig. 417).

The abdominal aorta commences at the aortic opening of the Diaphragm, in front of the lower border of the body of the last dorsal vertebra, and, descending a little to the left side of the vertebral column, terminates on the body of the fourth lumbar vertebra, commonly a little to the left of the middle line,[3] where it divides into the two common iliac arteries. It diminishes rapidly in size, in consequence of the many large branches which it gives off. As it lies upon the bodies of the vertebræ, the curve which it describes is convex forward, the greatest convexity corresponding to the third lumbar vertebra, which is a little above and to the left side of the umbilicus.

[1] Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy. [2] Ibid.

[3] Lord Lister, having accurately examined 30 bodies in order to ascertain the exact point of termination of this vessel, found it "either absolutely, or almost absolutely, mesial in 15, while in 13 it deviated more or less to the left, and in 2 was slightly to the right" (System of Surgery, edited by T. Holmes, 2d ed., vol. v. p. 652). —Ed. of 15th English edition.

Relations.—It is covered, *in front*, by the lesser omentum and stomach, behind which are the branches of the cœliac axis and the solar plexus; below these, by the splenic vein, the pancreas, the left renal vein, the transverse portion of the duodenum, the mesentery, and aortic plexus. *Behind*, it is separated from the lumbar vertebræ and intervening disks by the anterior common ligament and left

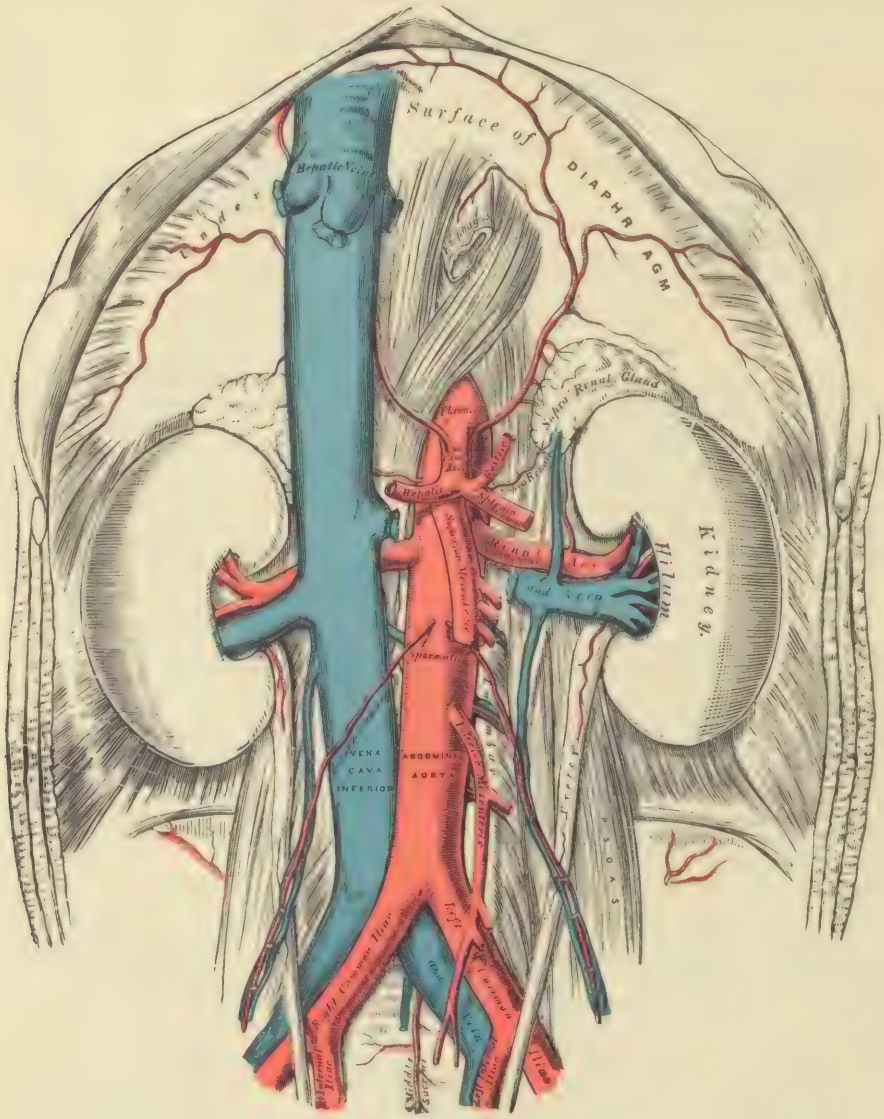


FIG. 417.—The abdominal aorta and its branches.

lumbar veins. On the *right side* it is in relation with the inferior vena cava (the right crus of the Diaphragm being interposed above), the vena azygos major, thoracic duct, and right semilunar ganglion; on the *left side*, with the sympathetic nerve and left semilunar ganglion.

Plan of the Relations of the Abdominal Aorta.

In front.

Lesser omentum and stomach.
Branches of the cœliac axis and solar plexus.
Splenic vein.
Pancreas.
Left renal vein.
Transverse duodenum.
Mesentery.
Aortic plexus.

Right side.

Right crus of Diaphragm.
Inferior vena cava.
Vena azygos major.
Thoracic duct.
Right semilunar ganglion.

Left side.

Sympathetic nerve.
Left semilunar ganglion.

Behind.

Left lumbar veins.
Vertebral column.

Surface Marking.—In order to map out the abdominal aorta on the surface of the abdomen, a line must be drawn from the middle line of the body, on a level with the distal extremity of the seventh costal cartilage, downward and slightly to the left, so that it just skirts the umbilicus, to a zone drawn round the body opposite the highest point of the crest of the ilium. This point is generally half an inch below and to the left of the umbilicus, but as the position of this structure varies with the obesity of the individual, it is not a reliable landmark as to the situation of the bifurcation of the aorta.

Surgical Anatomy.—*Aneurisms of the abdominal aorta* near the cœliac axis communicate in nearly equal proportion with the anterior and posterior parts of the artery.

When an aneurismal sac is connected with the back part of the abdominal aorta, it usually produces absorption of the bodies of the vertebræ, and forms a pulsating tumor that presents itself in the left hypochondriac or epigastric regions, and is accompanied by symptoms of disturbance in the alimentary canal. Pain is invariably present, and is usually of two kinds—a fixed and constant pain in the back, caused by the tumor pressing on or displacing the branches of the solar plexus and splanchnic nerves; and a sharp lancinating pain, radiating along those branches of the lumbar nerves which are pressed on by the tumor; hence the pain in the loins, the testes, the hypogastrium, and in the lower limb (usually of the left side). This form of aneurism usually bursts into the peritoneal cavity or behind the peritoneum in the left hypochondriac region; or it may form a large aneurismal sac, extending down as low as Poupart's ligament; hemorrhage in these cases being generally very extensive, but slowly produced, and not rapidly fatal.

When an aneurismal sac is connected with the front of the aorta near the cœliac axis it forms a pulsating tumor in the left hypochondriac or epigastric regions, usually attended with symptoms of disturbance of the alimentary canal, as sickness, dyspepsia, or constipation, and is accompanied by pain, which is constant, but nearly always fixed in the loins, epigastrium, or some part of the abdomen; the radiating pain being rare, as the lumbar nerves are seldom implicated. This form of aneurism may burst into the peritoneal cavity or behind the peritoneum, between the layers of the mesentery, or, more rarely, into the duodenum; it seldom extends backward so as to affect the spine.

The abdominal aorta has been tied 15 times, and although none of the patients permanently recovered, still, as Prof. Keen's lived 48 days, the possibility of the re-establishment of the circulation is proved. In the lower animals this artery has been often successfully tied. The vessel may be reached in several ways. In the original operation, performed by Sir A. Cooper, in 1817, an incision was made in the linea alba, the peritoneum opened in front, the finger carried down amongst the intestines toward the spine, the peritoneum again opened behind by scratching through the mesentery, and the vessel thus reached. Or either of the operations described below for securing the common iliac artery may, by extending the dissection a sufficient distance upward, be made use of to expose the aorta. The chief difficulty in the dead subject consists in isolating the artery in consequence of its great depth; but in the living subject the embarrassment resulting from the proximity of the aneurismal tumor, and the great probability of disease in the vessel itself, add to the dangers and difficulties of this formidable operation so greatly that it is very doubtful whether it ought ever to be performed.

The collateral circulation would be carried on by the anastomosis between the internal mam-

mary and the deep epigastric; by the free communication between the superior and inferior mesenterics if the ligature were placed above the latter vessel; or by the anastomosis between the inferior mesenteric and the internal pudic when (as is more common) the point of ligature is below the origin of the inferior mesenteric; and possibly by the anastomoses of the lumbar arteries with the branches of the internal iliac.

During an amputation at the hip the circulation through the abdominal aorta may be commanded by an assistant, who throws the entire weight of his body upon his rigidly extended forearm, the fist of which lies directly upon the patient's aorta (Macewen's method). The abdominal tourniquet is no longer used, as modern methods enable the surgeon to do a practically bloodless hip-joint amputation (Wyeth's method, Senn's method, McBurney's method).

Branches (Fig. 417).—The branches of the abdominal aorta are—the

Phrenic		Superior Mesenteric.	Ovarian in female.
Cœliac Axis	Gastric.	Suprarenal.	Inferior Mesenteric.
	Hepatic.	Renal.	Lumbar.
	Splenic.	Spermatic in male.	Sacra Media.

Branches.—The branches of the abdominal aorta may be divided into two sets: 1. Those supplying the **viscera** (*rami viscerales*). 2. Those distributed to the walls of the **abdomen** (*rami parietales*).

Visceral Branches.	*Parietal Branches.*
Cœliac Axis: Gastric.	
Cœliac Axis: Hepatic.	Inferior Phrenic.
Cœliac Axis: Splenic.	Lumbar.
Superior Mesenteric.	Sacra Media.
Inferior Mesenteric.	
Suprarenal.	
Renal.	
Spermatic or Ovarian.	

To expose the cœliac axis raise the liver, draw down the stomach, and then tear through the layers of the lesser omentum.

The Cœliac Axis or Artery (*a. cœliaca*) (Figs. 417, 418, and 419).—The cœliac axis is a short thick trunk, about half an inch in length, which *arises* from the aorta, close to the margin of the opening in the Diaphragm, behind the posterior parietal peritoneum, above the pancreas, and below the twelfth dorsal vertebra, and, passing nearly horizontally forward (in the erect posture), divides into three large branches, the **gastric**, **hepatic**, and **splenic**, occasionally giving off one of the phrenic arteries.

Relations.—It is covered by the lesser omentum. On the *right side* it is in relation with the right semilunar ganglion and the lobus Spigelii; on the *left side*, with the left semilunar ganglion and cardiac end of the stomach. *Below*, it rests upon the upper border of the pancreas.

The **Gastric** or **Coronary Artery** (*a. gastrica sinistra*) (Figs. 418 and 419), the smallest of the three branches of the cœliac axis, passes upward and to the left side, behind the peritoneum of the lesser peritoneal cavity, raising this portion of the peritoneum into a fold, known as the **left** or **secondary pancreatico-gastric fold**. It continues this course until it nearly reaches the lesser curvature of the stomach just below the cardia. It then turns to the front and curves forward to the cardiac orifice of the stomach, distributing branches to the œsophagus which anastomose with the aortic œsophageal arteries; others supply the cardiac end of the stomach, inosculating with branches of the splenic artery; it then passes from left to right, along and upon the lesser curvature of the stomach and beneath the peritoneum to the pylorus, lying in its course between the layers of the lesser omentum, and sometimes dividing into two vessels, which run along each side

of the lesser curvature. One vascular arch gives branches to the anterior wall of the stomach and the other to the posterior wall (Fig. 886), and both give them to the lesser omentum or the single artery gives branches to both surfaces of the organ and to the lesser omentum: at its termination it anastomoses with the pyloric branch or the two pyloric branches of the hepatic. It gives off **gastric branches** to both the anterior and posterior surfaces of the stomach, branches to the lesser omentum, **a small hepatic branch**, to the left lobe of the liver and **œsophageal branches** (*rami œsophagei*) which anastomose with œsophageal branches from the thoracic aorta and the inferior phrenic.

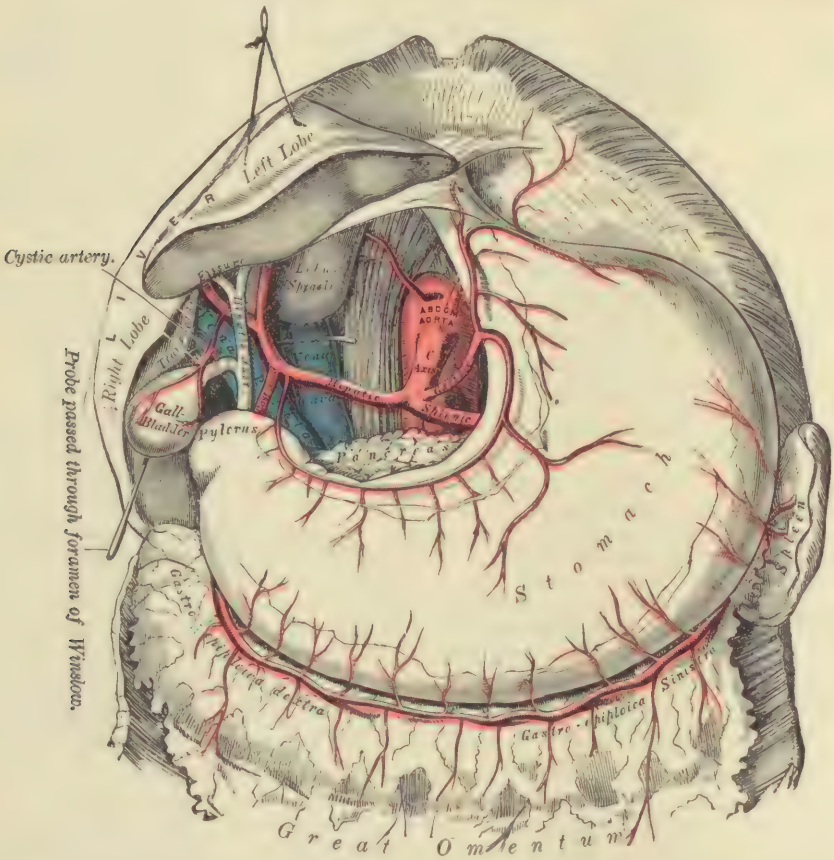


Fig. 418.—The cœliac axis and its branches, the liver having been raised and the lesser omentum removed.

The **Hepatic Artery** (*a. hepatica*) (Figs. 418 and 419) in the adult is intermediate in size between the gastric and splenic; in the fœtus it is the largest of the three branches of the cœliac axis. It is first directed forward and to the right, in the right pancreatico-gastric fold, to the upper margin of the pyloric end of the stomach, forming the lower boundary of the foramen of Winslow. It then passes upward between the layers of the lesser omentum, and in front of the foramen of Winslow, to the transverse fissure of the liver, where it divides into two branches, right and left, which supply the corresponding lobes of that organ, accompanying the ramifications of the vena portæ and hepatic duct. The hepatic artery, in its course along the right border of the lesser omentum, is in relation with the ductus communis choledochus and portal veins, the duct lying to the right of the artery and the vena portæ behind.

Its **branches** (Figs. 418 and 419) are—the

Pyloric.

Gastro-duodenalis { Gastro-epiploica Dextra. / Pancreatico-duodenalis Superior

Cystic.

The **pyloric** or **superior pyloric branch** (*a. gastrica dextra*) arises from the hepatic, above the pylorus, descends between the layers of the lesser omentum to the pyloric end of the stomach, and passes from right to left along its lesser curvature, supplying it with branches and inosculating with the gastric branches of the coronary artery. The vessel often divides into two vascular arches to anastomose with two vascular arches from the gastric.

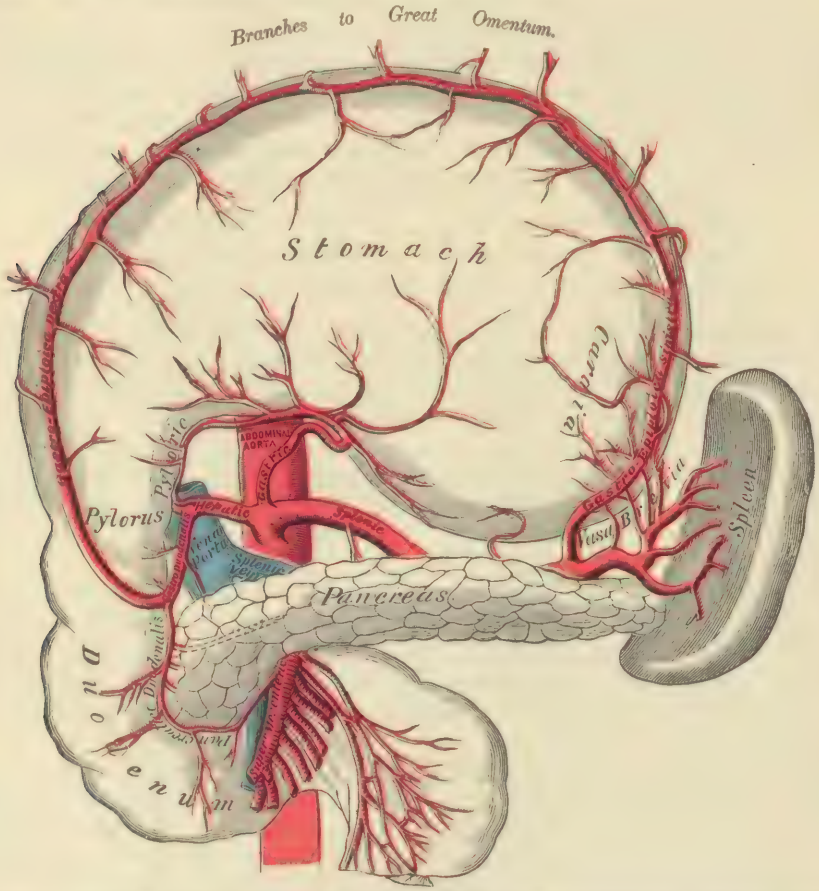


FIG. 419.—The cœliac axis and its branches, the stomach having been raised and the transverse mesocolon removed (semi-diagrammatic).

The **gastro-duodenalis** (Fig. 419) is a short but large branch, which descends near the pylorus, behind the first portion of the duodenum, and divides at the lower border of this viscus into two branches, the **gastro-epiploica dextra** and the **pancreatico-duodenalis superior**. Previous to its division, it gives off two or three small **inferior pyloric branches**, to the pyloric end of the stomach and pancreas.

The **gastro-epiploica dextra** runs from right to left along but distinctly below the greater curvature of the stomach, between the layers of the great omentum, anastomosing about the middle of the lower border of the stomach with the gastro-epiploica sinistra from the splenic artery. This vessel gives off numerous branches,

some of which ascend to supply both surfaces of the stomach, whilst others descend to supply the great omentum (*rami epiploici*).

The **pancreatico-duodenalis superior** descends between the contiguous margins of the duodenum and pancreas. It supplies the head of the pancreas by means of the *rami pancreatica*, and the duodenum by means of the *rami duodenalis*, and anastomoses with the inferior pancreatico-duodenal branch of the superior mesenteric artery and with the pancreatic branches of the splenic.

The **cystic artery** (*a. cystica*) (Fig. 418), usually a branch of the right hepatic, passes downward and forward along the cystic duct to the gall-bladder, and divides into two branches, one of which ramifies on its free surface beneath the peritoneum, the other between the gall-bladder and the substance of the liver.

The **Splenic Artery** (*a. lienalis*) (Figs. 418 and 419), in the adult, is the largest of the three branches of the cœliac axis, and is remarkable for the extreme tortuosity of its course. It passes horizontally to the left side, behind the peritoneum and along the upper border of the pancreas, accompanied by the splenic vein, which lies below it, and on arriving near the spleen divides into branches, some of which enter the hilum of that organ to be distributed to its structure, whilst others are distributed to the pancreas and great end of the stomach. Its **branches** are—the

Pancreaticæ Parvæ.	Gastric (Vasa Brevia).
Pancreatica Magna.	Gastro-epiploica Sinistra.
Rami Lienalis.	

The **pancreatic branches** (*rami pancreatici*) are numerous small branches derived from the splenic as it runs behind the upper border of the pancreas, supplying its middle and left parts. One of these, larger than the rest, is given off from the splenic near the left extremity of the pancreas; it runs from left to right near the posterior surface of the gland, following the course of the pancreatic duct, and is called the **pancreatica magna**. The others are called the *pancreaticæ parvæ*. These vessels anastomose with the pancreatic branches of the pancreatico-duodenal arteries, derived from the hepatic on the one hand and superior mesenteric on the other.

The **gastric branches** or **vasa brevia** (*aa. gastricæ breves*) consists of from five to seven small branches, which arise either from the termination of the splenic artery or from its terminal branches, and, passing from left to right, between the layers of the gastro-splenic omentum, are distributed to the great curvature of the stomach, anastomosing with branches of the gastric and gastro-epiploica sinistra arteries.

The **gastro-epiploica sinistra,** the largest branch of the splenic, runs from left to right along but distinctly below the great curvature of the stomach, between the layers of the great omentum, and anastomoses with the gastro-epiploica dextra. In its course it distributes several branches to the stomach, which ascend upon both surfaces; others descend to supply the omentum.

The **rami lienales** leave the splenic artery in the hilum and pass into the spleen.

Surgical Anatomy.—The operation of *pylorectomy* can be made an almost bloodless procedure by tying the gastric, the pyloric, and the right and left gastro-epiploic arteries. "The gastric is doubly tied about one inch below the cardiac orifice at a point where it joins the lesser curvature and is divided between the ligatures. The superior pyloric is doubly tied and divided. The fingers are passed beneath the pylorus, raising the gastro-colic omentum from the transverse mesocolon, and in this way safe ligation behind the pylorus of the right gastro-epiploic artery, or in most cases its parent vessel, the gastro-duodenal, is secured. The left gastro-epiploic is now tied at an appropriate point, and the necessary amount of gastro-colic omentum doubly tied and cut."[1]

[1] William J. Mayo. Annals of Surgery, March, 1904.

The Superior Mesenteric Artery (*a. mesenterica superior*) (Figs. 417 and 420).—The superior mesenteric artery supplies the whole length of the small intestine, except the first part of the duodenum; it also supplies the cæcum and the ascending and transverse colon; it is a vessel of large size, *arising* from the forepart of the aorta about a quarter of an inch below the cœliac axis; being covered at its origin by the splenic vein and pancreas. It passes forward, between the pancreas and the transverse portion of the duodenum, crosses in front of this portion of the intestine, and descends between the layers of the mesentery to the right iliac fossa, where, considerably diminished in size, it anastomoses with one of its own branches—viz., the ileo-colic. In its course it forms an arch, the convexity of which is directed forward and downward to the left side, the concavity backward and upward to the right. It is accompanied by the superior mesenteric vein, and is surrounded by the superior mesenteric plexus of nerves.

In order to expose the superior mesenteric artery raise the great omentum and transverse colon, draw down the small intestines, and cut through the peritoneum where the transverse mesocolon and mesentery join; the artery will then be exposed just as it issues from beneath the lower border of the pancreas

Branches.—Its branches are—the

Inferior Pancreatico-duodenal.	Ileo-colic.
Vasa Intestini Tenuis.	Right Colic.
Middle Colic.	

The **Inferior Pancreatico-duodenal** (*a. pancreaticoduodenalis inferior*) is given off from the superior mesenteric, or from its first intestinal branch behind the pancreas. It courses to the right between the head of the pancreas and duodenum, and then ascends to anastomose with the superior pancreatico-duodenal artery. It distributes branches to the head of the pancreas and to the transverse and descending portions of the duodenum.

The **Vasa Intestini Tenuis** (*aa. intestinales*) arise from the convex side of the superior mesenteric artery. They are usually from twelve to fifteen in number, and are distributed to the jejunum (*aa. jejunales*) and ileum (*aa. ileæ*). They run parallel with one another between the layers of the mesentery, each vessel dividing into two branches, which unite with similar branches on each side, forming a series of arches the convexities of which are directed toward the intestine. From this first set of arches branches arise, which again unite with similar branches from either side, and thus a second series of arches is formed; and from these latter, a third and a fourth, or even a fifth, series of arches is constituted, diminishing in size the nearer they approach the intestine. From the terminal arches numerous small straight vessels arise which encircle the intestine, upon which they are distributed, ramifying between its coats. Throughout their course small branches are given off to the glands and other structures between the layers of the mesentery. (See the description of the vascular loops in the section upon the Intestines. The form and arrangement of the loops have been studied by Monks, of Boston.)

The **Ileo-colic Artery** (*a. ileocolica*) is the lowest branch given off from the concavity of the superior mesenteric artery. It descends between the layers of the mesentery to the right iliac fossa, where it divides into two branches. Of these, the inferior division inosculates with the termination of the superior mesenteric artery, forming with it an arch, from the convexity of which branches proceed to supply the termination of the ileum, the cæcum, the vermiform appendix, and the ileo-cæcal valve. The superior division inosculates with the colica dextra and supplies the commencement of the colon.

The **Right Colic Artery** (*a. colica dextra*) *arises* from about the middle of the concavity of the superior mesenteric artery, and, passing behind the peritoneum

to the middle of the ascending colon, divides into two branches—a **descending branch,** which inosculates with the ileo-colic, and an **ascending branch,** which anastomoses with the colica media. These branches form arches, from the convexity of which vessels are distributed to the ascending colon. The branches of this vessel are covered with peritoneum only on their anterior aspect.

The **Middle Colic Artery** (*a. colica media*) *arises* from the upper part of the concavity of the superior mesenteric, and, passing forward between the layers of the transverse mesocolon, divides into two branches, the one on the right side inosculating with the colica dextra; that on the left side, with the colica sinistra, a branch of the inferior mesenteric. From the arches formed by their inosculation branches are distributed to the transverse colon. The branches of this vessel lie between the two layers of the transverse mesocolon.

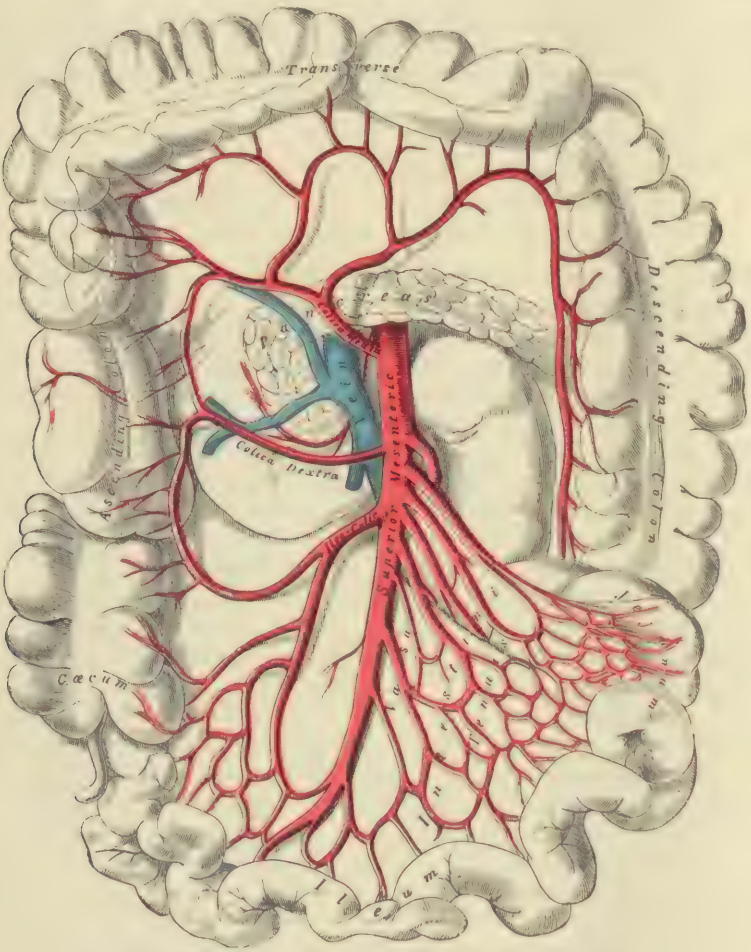


FIG. 420.—The superior mesenteric artery and its branches.

Blood-supply of the Right Iliac Fossa.—The descending branch of the right colic artery by anastomosing with the ascending branch of the ileo-colic artery forms a vascular loop. The union of the descending branch of the ileo-colic artery with the terminal vessel of the superior mesenteric artery forms another vascular loop. These two loops give off secondary loops, and from the secondary loops come the vessels which supply the appendix, the cæcum, and the lower end of the ileum. The branch which goes to the appendix is called the **appendicular artery** (*a. appendicularis*). If there is a distinct meso-appendix the artery passes along its unattached edge. If there is a rudimentary meso-appendix or no meso-appendix the artery

usually lies upon the appendix from base to tip beneath the peritoneal covering. In females the appendix may receive an additional vessel from the ovarian, which vessel lies in the appendiculo-ovarian ligament.

The Inferior Mesenteric Artery (*a. mesenterica inferior*) (Figs. 417 and 421).—The inferior mesenteric artery supplies the descending colon, the sigmoid flexure of the colon and the greater part of the rectum. It is smaller than the superior mesenteric, and *arises* from the left side of the aorta, between one and two inches above the division of that vessel into the common iliacs. It passes downward to the left iliac fossa, and then descends between the layers of the mesorectum,

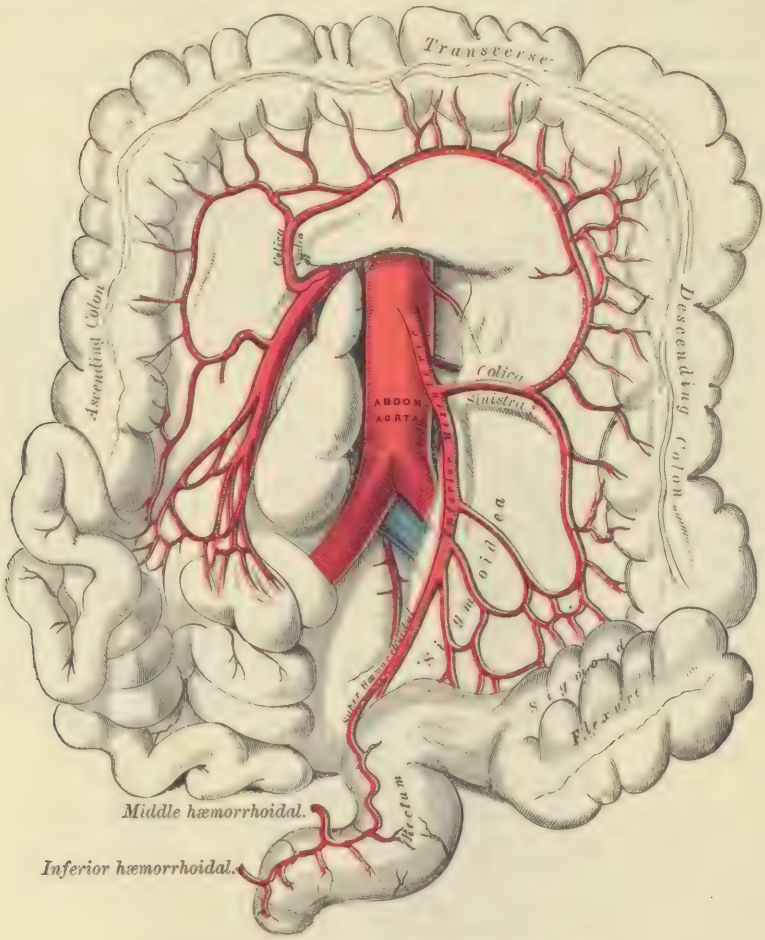


FIG. 421.—The inferior mesenteric and its branches.

into the pelvis, under the name of the **superior hæmorrhoidal artery**. It lies at first in close relation with the left side of the aorta, and then passes as the superior hæmorrhoidal in front of the left common iliac artery.

In order to expose the inferior mesenteric artery draw the small intestines and mesentery over to the right side of the abdomen, raise the transverse colon toward the thorax, and divide the peritoneum covering the front of the aorta.

Branches.—Its branches are—the

Left Colic. Sigmoid.

Superior Hæmorrhoidal.

The **Left Colic Artery** (*a. colica sinistra*) passes behind the peritoneum, in front of the left kidney, to reach the descending colon, and divides into two branches—an ascending branch, which inosculates with the colica media; and a descending branch, which anastomoses with the sigmoid artery. From the arches formed by these inosculations branches are distributed to the descending colon.

The Sigmoid Arteries (*aa. sigmoideæ*).—As a rule there are two of these vessels, but may be three. They run obliquely downward across the Psoas muscle to the sigmoid flexure of the colon, and divide into branches which supply that part of the intestine, anastomosing above with the left colic, and below with the superior hæmorrhoidal artery.

The **Superior Hæmorrhoidal Artery** (*a. hæmorrhoidalis superior*) (Figs. 421 and 424), the continuation of the inferior mesenteric, descends into the pelvis between the layers of the mesorectum, crossing, in its course, the ureter and left common iliac vessels. Opposite the middle of the sacrum it divides into two branches, which descend one on each side of the rectum, and about five inches from the anus break up into several small branches, which pierce the muscular coat of the bowel and run downward, as straight vessels, placed at regular intervals from each other in the wall of the gut between its muscular and mucous coat, to the level of the internal sphincter; here they form a series of loops around the lower end of the rectum, and communicate with the middle hæmorrhoidal arteries which are branches of the internal iliac and with the inferior hæmorrhoidal branches of the internal pudic.

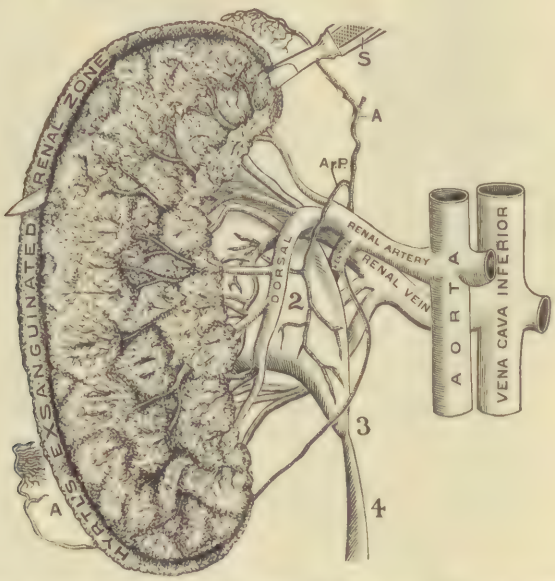


FIG. 422.—Corrosion anatomy. Hyrtl's exsanguinated renal zone. (Byron Robinson.)

The Suprarenal Artery (*a. suprarenalis media*) (Fig. 417).—A suprarenal or capsular artery *arises*, one on each side of the aorta, opposite the superior mesenteric artery. It is a small vessel which passes obliquely upward and outward, over the crura of the Diaphragm, to the under surface of the suprarenal capsule, to which it is distributed, anastomosing with capsular branches from the phrenic and renal arteries. In the adult these arteries are of small size; in the fœtus they are as large as the renal arteries.

The Renal Arteries (*aa. renales*) (Fig. 417).—The renal arteries are two large trunks which *arise* from the sides of the aorta immediately below the superior

mesenteric artery. Each is directed outward across the crus of the Diaphragm, so as to form nearly a right angle with the aorta. The right is longer than the left, on account of the position of the aorta; it passes behind the inferior vena cava. The left is somewhat higher than the right. Before reaching the hilum of the kidney, each artery usually divides into four branches. Two of these vessels enter the anterior portion and two the posterior portion of the kidney. There may be but one renal artery; there may be two, three, four, or five branches. The greater number of the branches generally lie between the renal vein and ureter, the vein being in front of the arteries, the ureter behind. The anterior branches supply three-fourths of the kidney, the posterior supply one-fourth. Each vessel gives off a small branch to the suprarenal capsule (*a. suprarenalis inferior*) and branches to the ureter, **ureteral branches**, and to the surrounding cellular tissue and muscles, **perirenal branches**. Hyrtl, in 1870, pointed out that the renal artery gives off a branch which divides and supplies the dorsal or posterior portion of the kidney and

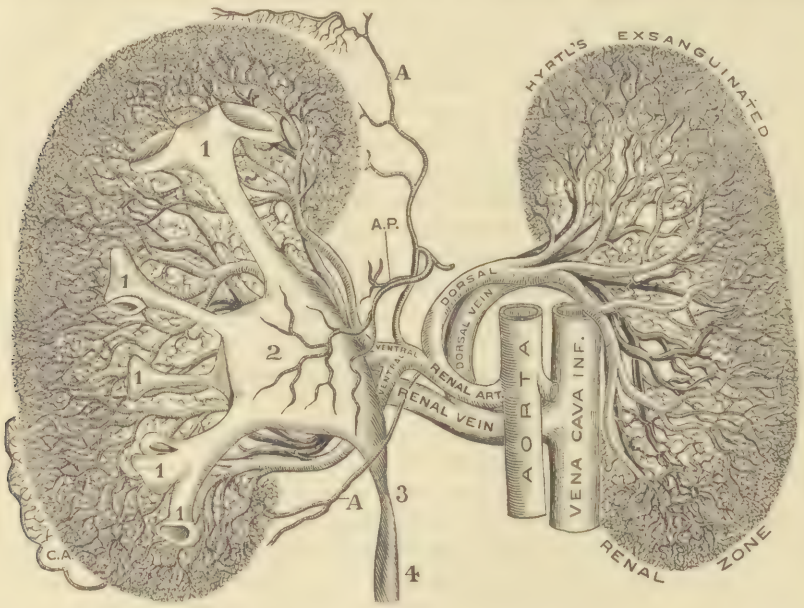


FIG. 423.—Corrosion anatomy. The renal vascular blades opened like a book. (Byron Robinson.)

its pelvis, and a branch which divides and supplies the ventral or anterior portion of the kidney and its pelvis. The two circulations are distinct and do not anastomose even at the periphery. Between these two sets of vessels is a bloodless zone called by Byron Robinson the **exsanguinated renal zone of Hyrtl**, which does not correspond to the median line, but is "one-half inch dorsal to the lateral longitudinal renal border."[1] The ventral or anterior segment is much the larger. In very rare instances the bloodless zone corresponds to the median line (Kümmel). An incision of the middle third of the kidney exactly at the junction of the two segments does not divide vessels. As the incision approaches either pole there is danger of cutting a branch (Schede). Frequently there is a second renal artery, which is given off from the abdominal aorta either above or below the renal artery proper, the former being the more common position. Instead of entering the kidney at the hilum, an accessory renal artery usually pierces the upper or the lower part of the gland.

The Spermatic Arteries (*aa. spermaticæ internæ*) (Fig. 417).—The internal spermatic arteries are distributed to the testes. They are two slender vessels of

[1] Byron Robinson. The Circulation of the Kidney, American Journal of Surgery.

considerable length, which *arise* from the front of the aorta a little below the renal arteries. Each artery passes obliquely outward and downward behind the peritoneum, resting on the Psoas muscle, the right spermatic lying in front of the inferior vena cava, the left behind the sigmoid flexure of the colon. It then crosses obliquely over the ureter (to which it sends a few branches) and the lower part of the external iliac artery to reach the internal abdominal ring, through which it passes, and accompanies the other constituents of the spermatic cord along the inguinal canal to the scrotum, where it becomes tortuous and is prolonged as the *testicular artery*, which accompanies the vas deferens, anastomosing with the *artery of the vas deferens* and is distributed to the epididymis, the back part of the tunica albuginea, and the substance of the testes. The spermatic artery in the inguinal canal gives off **cremasteric branches** to supply the Cremaster muscle. In the canal and scrotum the artery lies behind the pampiniform plexus and in front of the vas deferens.

The Ovarian Arteries (*aa. ovaricæ*).—The ovarian arteries (Fig. 425) are the corresponding arteries in the female to the spermatic in the male. They supply the ovaries, are shorter than the spermatic, and do not pass out of the abdominal cavity. The origin and course of the first part of the artery are the same as the spermatic in the male, but on arriving at the margin of the pelvis the ovarian artery passes inward, between the two layers of the broad ligament of the uterus, to be distributed to the ovary, **ovarian branches**. Branches go to the Fallopian tube, **tubal branches**, the ureter, **ureteral branches**, and the broad ligament, **ligamentous branches**. A branch passes on to the side of the uterus and anastomoses with the uterine arteries, **uterine branch**. Other offsets are continued along the round ligament through the inguinal canal, to the integument of the labium and groin.

At an early period of fœtal life, when the testes or ovaries lie by the side of the spine below the kidneys, the spermatic or ovarian arteries are short; but as these organs descend from the abdomen into the scrotum or pelvis, the arteries become gradually lengthened.

The Inferior Phrenic Arteries (*aa. phrenicæ inferiores*)(Fig. 417).—The inferior phrenic arteries are two small vessels which present much variety in their origin. They may *arise* separately from the front of the aorta, immediately above the cœliac axis, or by a common trunk, which may spring either from the aorta or from the cœliac axis. Sometimes one is derived from the aorta, and the other from one of the renal arteries. In only one out of thirty-six cases examined did these arteries arise as two separate vessels from the aorta. They diverge from one another across the crura of the Diaphragm, and then pass obliquely upward and outward upon the under surface of the Diaphragm. The **left phrenic** passes behind the œsophagus and runs forward on the left side of the œsophageal opening. The **right phrenic** passes behind the inferior vena cava, and ascends along the right side of the aperture for transmitting that vein. Near the back part of the central tendon each vessel divides into two branches. The **internal branch** runs forward to the front of the thorax, supplying the Diaphragm and anastomosing with its fellow of the opposite side, and with the **musculo-phrenic** and **comes nervi phrenici** branches of the internal mammary. The **external branch** passes toward the side of the thorax and inosculates with the **intercostal arteries**. The internal branch of the right phrenic gives off a few vessels to the inferior vena cava, and the left one some branches to the œsophagus. Each vessel also sends **capsular branches** (*rami suprarenales superior*) to the suprarenal capsule of its own side. The spleen on the left side and the liver on the right also receive a few branches from these vessels.

The Lumbar Arteries (*aa. lumbales*).—The lumbar arteries are analogous to the intercostals. They are usually four in number on each side, and *arise* from the back part of the aorta, nearly at right angles with that vessel. They pass

outward and backward, around the sides of the bodies of the lumbar vertebræ, behind the sympathetic nerve and the Psoas magnus muscle, those on the right side being covered by the inferior vena cava, and the two upper ones on each side by the crura of the Diaphragm. In the interval between the transverse processes of the vertebræ each artery gives off a **dorsal branch.**

After the formation of the dorsal branch the artery passes outward, having a variable relation to the Quadratus lumborum muscle. Most frequently the first lumbar passes in front of the muscle and the others behind it; sometimes the order is reversed and the lowest lumbar passes in front of the muscle. At the outer border of the Quadratus they are continued between the abdominal muscles, anastomose with branches of the epigastric and internal mammary *in front*, the intercostals *above*, and branches of the ilio-lumbar and circumflex iliac *below*. The lumbar arteries are also distributed to the skin of the sides of the abdomen.

The **Dorsal Branch** (*ramus dorsalis*) gives off, immediately after its origin, a **spinal branch,** which enters the spinal canal. The dorsal branch then continues its course backward between the transverse processes, and is distributed to the muscles and integument of the back, anastomosing with similar branches of the adjacent lumbar arteries and with the posterior branches of the intercostal arteries.

The **Spinal Branch** (*ramus spinalis*) enters the spinal canal through the intervertebral foramen, to be distributed to the spinal cord and its membranes and to the bodies of the vertebræ in the same manner as the lateral spinal branches from the vertebral (see page 638).

The Middle Sacral Artery (*a. sacralis media*) (Fig. 424).—The middle sacral artery is a small vessel, which *arises* from the back part of the aorta just at its bifurcation. It descends upon the last lumbar vertebra, and along the middle line of the front of the sacrum, to the upper part of the coccyx, where it anastomoses with the lateral sacral arteries, and terminates in a minute branch, which runs down to the situation of the body described as Luschka's gland. It gives off on each side opposite the body of the fifth lumbar vertebra a branch known as the *a. lumbalis ima*. From the middle sacral artery branches arise which run through the mesorectum to supply the posterior surface of the rectum. Other branches are given off on each side, which anastomose with the lateral sacral arteries, and send off small offsets which enter the anterior sacral foramina.

The artery is the representative of the caudal prolongation of the aorta of animals, and its lateral branches correspond to the intercostal and lumbar arteries in the dorsal and lumbar regions.

THE COMMON ILIAC ARTERIES (AA. ILIACÆ COMMUNES) (Figs. 417, 424).

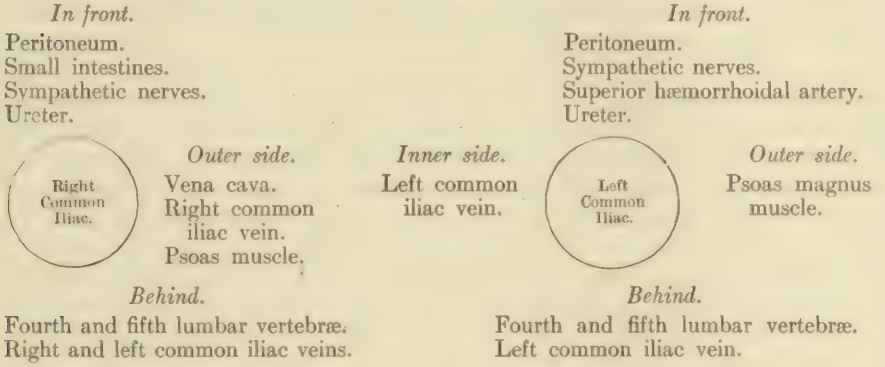
The abdominal aorta divides into the two **common iliac arteries.** The bifurcation usually takes place on the left side of the body of the fourth lumbar vertebra. The common iliac arteries are about two inches in length; diverging from the termination of the aorta, they pass downward and outward to the margin of the pelvis, each divides opposite the intervertebral substance, between the last lumbar vertebra and the sacrum, into two branches, the **internal** and **external iliac arteries,** the latter supplying the lower extremity; the former, the viscera and parietes of the pelvis.

The **right common iliac** is somewhat longer than the left, and passes more obliquely across the body of the last lumbar vertebra. In *front* of it are the peritoneum, the small intestines, branches of the sympathetic nerve, and, at its point of division, the ureter. *Behind*, it is separated from the fourth and fifth

lumbar vertebræ, with the intervening intervertebral disk, by the two common iliac veins. On its *outer side*, it is in relation with the inferior vena cava and the right common iliac vein, above, and the Psoas magnus muscle below.

The **left common iliac** is in relation, in *front*, with the peritoneum, branches of the sympathetic nerve, and the superior hæmorrhoidal artery; and is crossed at its point of bifurcation by the ureter. It rests on the bodies of the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebræ, with the intervening intervertebral disk. The left common iliac vein lies partly on the inner side, and partly beneath the artery; on its outer side, the artery is in relation with the Psoas magnus muscle.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE COMMON ILIAC ARTERIES.



Branches.—The common iliac arteries give off small branches to the peritoneum, Psoas magnus, ureters, and the surrounding cellular tissue, and occasionally give origin to the ilio-lumbar or renal arteries.

Peculiarities.—The *point of origin* varies according to the bifurcation of the aorta. In three-fourths of a large number of cases the aorta bifurcated either upon the fourth lumbar vertebra or upon the intervertebral disk between it and the fifth, the bifurcation being, in one case out of nine below, and in one out of eleven above, this point. In ten out of every thirteen cases the vessel bifurcated within half an inch above or below the level of the crest of the ilium, more frequently below than above.

The point of division is subject to great variety. In two-thirds of a large number of cases it was between the last lumbar vertebra and the upper border of the sacrum, being above that point in one case out of eight and below it in one case out of six. The left common iliac artery divides lower down more frequently than the right.

The *relative length*, also, of the two common iliac arteries varies. The right common iliac was the longer in sixty-three cases, the left in fifty-two, whilst they were both equal in fifty-three. The length of the arteries varied in five-sevenths of the cases examined from an inch and a half to three inches; in about half of the remaining cases the artery was longer and in the other half shorter, the minimum length being less than half an inch, the maximum four and a half inches. In two instances the right common iliac has been found wanting, the external and internal iliacs arising directly from the aorta.

Surface Marking.—Draw a zone around the body opposite the highest part of the crest of the ilium; in this line take a point half an inch to the left of the middle line. From this draw two lines to points midway between the anterior superior spines of the ilium and the symphysis pubis. These two diverging lines will represent the course of the common and external iliac arteries. Draw a second zone round the body corresponding to the level of the anterior superior spines of the ilium: the portion of the diverging lines between the two zones will represent the course of the common iliac artery; the portion below the lower zone, that of the external iliac artery.

Surgical Anatomy.—The application of a ligature to the common iliac artery may be required on account of aneurism or hemorrhage implicating the external or internal iliacs. Now that the surgeon no longer dreads opening the peritoneal cavity, there can be no question that the easiest and best method of tying the artery is by a transperitoneal route. The abdomen is opened by an incision in either the semilunar line or the linea alba; the intestines are drawn to one side and the peritoneum covering the artery divided. The sheath is then opened, and the needle passed from within outward. On the right side great care must be exercised in

passing the needle, since both the common iliac veins lie behind the artery. After the vessel has been tied the incision in the peritoneum over the artery should be sutured. Formerly there were two different methods by which the common iliac artery was tied without opening the peritoneal cavity: 1, an anterior or iliac incision, by which the vessel is approached more directly from the front; and 2, a posterior abdominal or lumbar incision, by which the vessel is reached from behind. If the surgeon select the iliac region, a curved incision, from five to eight inches in length, according to the amount of fat, is made, commencing just outside the middle of Poupart's ligament and a finger's breadth above it, and carried outward toward the anterior superior iliac spine, then upward toward the ribs, and finally curving inward toward the umbilicus. The abdominal muscles and transversalis fascia are divided, and the peritoneum raised upward and inward until the Psoas is reached. The artery will be found on the inner side of this muscle, and is to be cleared with a director, especial care being taken on the right side, as here the common iliac veins lie behind the artery. The aneurism needle is to be passed from within outward. But if the aneurismal tumor should extend high up in the abdomen, along the external iliac, it is better to select the posterior or lumbar route, making an incision partly in the abdomen, partly in the loin. The incision is commenced at the anterior extremity of the last rib, proceeding directly downward to the ilium; it is then curved forward along the crest of the ilium and a little above it to the anterior superior spine of that bone. The abdominal muscles having been cautiously divided in succession, the transversalis fascia must be carefully cut through, and the peritoneum, together with the ureter, separated from the artery and pushed aside; the sacro-iliac articulation must then be felt for, and upon it the vessel will be felt pulsating, and may be fully exposed in close connection with the accompanying vein. On the right side both common iliac veins, as well as the inferior vena cava, are in close connection with the artery, and must be carefully avoided. On the left side the vein usually lies on the inner side and behind the artery; but it occasionally happens that the two common iliac veins are joined on the left instead of the right side, which would add much to the difficulty of an operation in such a case. The common iliac artery may be so short that danger may be apprehended from secondary hemorrhage if a ligature is applied to it. It would be preferable, in such a case, to tie both the external and internal iliacs near their origin.

Collateral Circulation.—The principal agents in carrying on the collateral circulation after the application of a ligature to the common iliac are—the anastomoses of the hæmorrhoidal branches of the internal iliac with the superior hæmorrhoidal from the inferior mesenteric; the anastomoses of the uterine and ovarian arteries and of the vesical arteries of opposite sides; of the lateral sacral with the middle sacral artery; of the epigastric with the internal mammary, inferior intercostal, and lumbar arteries; of the circumflex iliac with the lumbar arteries; of the ilio-lumbar with the last lumbar artery; of the obturator artery, by means of its pubic branch, with the vessel of the opposite side and with the deep epigastric.

Compression of the Common Iliac Arteries. The common iliac arteries may be compressed by Davy's lever. The instrument consists of a gum-elastic tube about two feet long, in which fits a round wooden "lever" considerably longer than the tube. A small quantity of olive oil having been injected into the rectum, the gum-elastic tube, softened in hot water, is passed into the bowel sufficiently far to permit its pressing upon the common iliac artery as it lies in the groove between the last lumbar vertebra and the Psoas muscle. The wooden lever is then inserted into the tube, and the projecting end carried toward the opposite thigh and raised, when it acts as a lever of the first order, the anus being the fulcrum. In cases where the mesorectum is abnormally short it may be impossible, without unjustifiable force, to compress the artery on the right side. In amputation of the hip-joint the common iliac can be compressed most certainly and safely by opening the abdomen and compressing the vessel by means of the fingers against the Psoas muscle (McBurney's method).

The Internal Iliac Artery (Figs. 417, 424).

The internal iliac or **hypogastric artery** (*a. hypogastrica*) supplies the walls and viscera of the pelvis, the generative organs, and inner side of the thigh. It is a short thick vessel, smaller in the adult than the external iliac, and about an inch and a half in length. It *arises* at the point of bifurcation of the common iliac, and, passing downward to the upper margin of the great sacro-sciatic foramen, divides into two large trunks, an **anterior** and **posterior**; from its anterior division a partially obliterated cord, a part of the **fœtal hypogastric artery**, extends forward to the bladder.

Relations.—*In front*, with the ureter, which is between the artery and the peritoneum. *Behind*, with the internal iliac vein, the lumbo-sacral cord, and Pyriformis muscle. By its *outer side*, near its origin, with the Psoas magnus muscle.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE INTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY.

In front.
Peritoneum.
Ureter.

Outer side.
Psoas magnus.

Internal Iliac.

Behind.
Internal iliac vein.
Lumbo-sacral cord.
Pyriformis muscle.

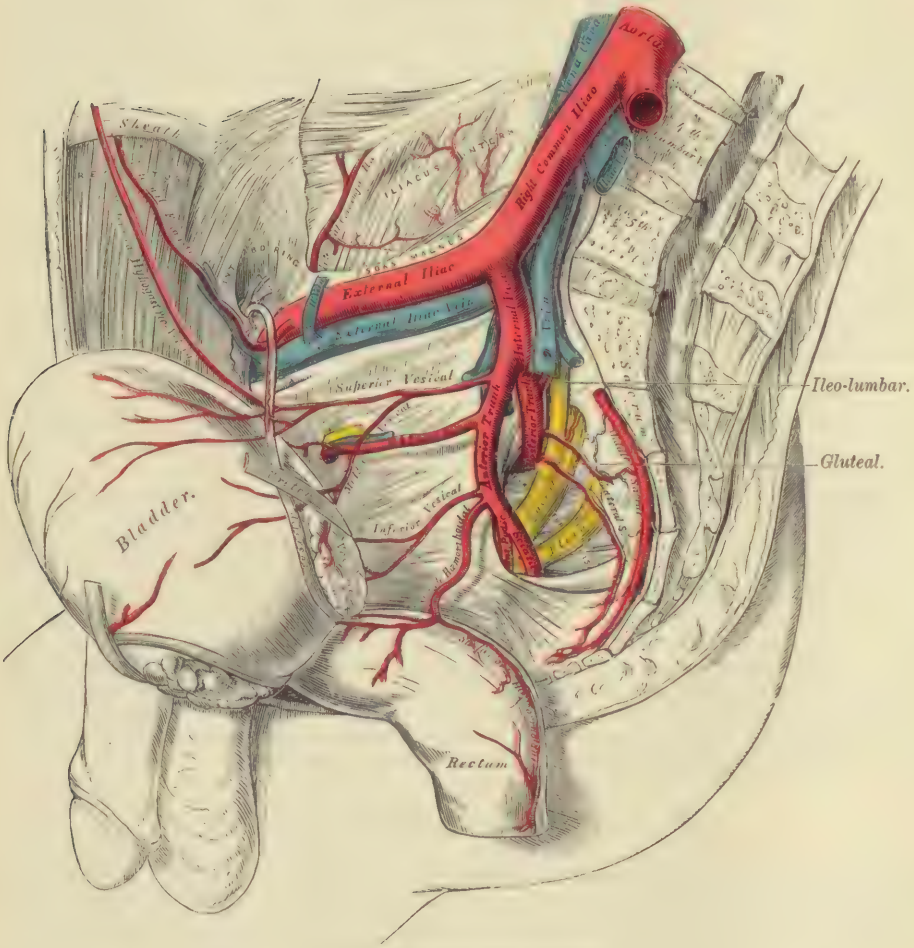


FIG. 424.—Arteries of the pelvis.

In the fœtus the hypogastric artery is twice as large as the external iliac, and appears to be the continuation of the common iliac. Instead of dipping into the pelvis, it passes forward to the bladder, and ascends along the sides of that viscus to its summit, to which it gives branches; it then passes upward along the back part of the anterior wall of the abdomen to the umbilicus, converging toward its fellow of the opposite side. Having passed through the umbilical

opening, the two arteries twine round the umbilical vein in the umbilical cord, and ultimately ramify in the placenta. The portion of the vessel within the abdomen is called the **hypogastric artery**; the portion external to that cavity, the **umbilical artery**.

At birth, when the placental circulation ceases, the upper portion of the hypogastric artery, extending from the summit of the bladder to the umbilicus, contracts, and ultimately dwindles to a solid fibrous cord; but the lower portion, extending from its origin (in what is now the internal iliac artery) for about an inch and a half to the wall of the bladder, and thence to the summit of that organ, is not totally impervious, though it becomes considerably reduced in size, and serves to convey blood to the bladder under the name of the **superior vesical artery**.

Peculiarities as Regards Length.—In two-thirds of a large number of cases the length of the internal iliac varied between an inch and an inch and a half; in the remaining third it was more frequently longer than shorter, the maximum length being three inches, the minimum half an inch.

The lengths of the common and internal iliac arteries bear an inverse proportion to each other, the internal iliac artery being long when the common iliac is short, and *vice versa*.

As Regards its Place of Division.—The place of division of the internal iliac varies between the upper margin of the sacrum and the upper border of the sacro-sciatic foramen.

The arteries of the two sides in a series of cases often differed in length, but neither seemed constantly to exceed the other.

Surgical Anatomy. The application of a ligature to the internal iliac artery may be required in cases of aneurism or hemorrhage affecting one of its branches. The vessel may be secured by making an incision through the abdominal parietes in the iliac region in a direction and to an extent similar to that for securing the common iliac; the transversalis fascia having been cautiously divided, and the peritoneum pushed inward from the iliac fossa toward the pelvis, the finger may feel the pulsation of the external iliac at the bottom of the wound, and by tracing this vessel upward the internal iliac is arrived at, opposite the sacro-iliac articulation. It should be remembered that the vein lies behind and on the right side, a little external to the artery, and in close contact with it; the ureter and peritoneum, which lie in front, must also be avoided. The degree of facility in applying a ligature to this vessel will mainly depend upon the length of the vessel. It has been seen that in the great majority of the cases examined the artery was short, varying from an inch to an inch and a half; in these cases the artery is deeply seated in the pelvis; when, on the contrary, the vessel is longer, it is found partly above that cavity. If the artery is very short, as occasionally happens, it would be preferable to apply a ligature to the common iliac or to both the external and internal iliacs at their origin.

A better method of tying the internal iliac artery is by an abdominal section in the median line and reaching the vessel through the peritoneal cavity. This plan has been advocated by Dennis, of New York, on the following grounds: (1) It in no way increases the danger of the operation; (2) it prevents a series of accidents which have occurred during ligature of the artery by the older methods; (3) it enables the surgeon to ascertain the exact extent of disease in the main arterial trunk, and select his spot for the application of the ligature; and (4) it occupies much less time.

Collateral Circulation.—In Professor Owen's dissection of a case in which the internal iliac artery had been tied by Stevens ten years before death for aneurism of the sciatic artery, the internal iliac was found impervious for about an inch above the point where the ligature had been applied, but the obliteration did not extend to the origin of the external iliac, as the iliolumbar artery arose just above this point. Below the point of obliteration the artery resumed its natural diameter, and continued so for half an inch, the obturator, lateral sacral, and gluteal arising in succession from the latter portion. The obturator artery was entirely obliterated. The lateral sacral artery was as large as a crow's quill, and had a very free anastomosis with the artery of the opposite side and with the middle sacral artery. The sciatic artery was entirely obliterated as far as its point of connection with the aneurismal tumor, but on the distal side of the sac it was continued down along the back of the thigh nearly as large in size as the femoral, being pervious about an inch below the sac by receiving an anastomosing vessel from the profunda.[1] The circulation was carried on by the anastomoses of the uterine and ovarian arteries; of the opposite vesical arteries; of the hemorrhoidal branches of the internal iliac with those from the inferior mesenteric; of the obturator artery, by means of its pubic branch, with the vessel of the opposite side and with the epigastric and internal circumflex; of the circumflex

[1] Medico-Chirurgical Transactions, vol. xvi.

and perforating branches of the profunda femoris with the sciatic; of the gluteal with the posterior branches of the sacral arteries; of the ilio-lumbar with the last lumbar; of the lateral sacral with the middle sacral; and of the circumflex iliac with the ilio-lumbar and gluteal.

Branches (Fig. 424).—The branches of the internal iliac are:

From the Anterior Trunk.	*From the Posterior Trunk.*
Superior Vesical.	Ilio-lumbar.
Middle Vesical.	Lateral Sacral.
Inferior Vesical.	Gluteal.
Middle Hæmorrhoidal.	
Obturator.	
Internal Pudic.	
Sciatic.	
In female { Uterine.	
In female { Vaginal.	

The **Superior Vesical** (*a. vesicalis superior*) (Fig. 424) is that part of the fœtal hypogastric artery, which remains pervious after birth. It extends to the side of the bladder, distributing numerous branches to the apex and body of the organ. From one of these a slender vessel is derived which accompanies the vas deferens in its course to the testis, where it anastomoses with the spermatic artery. This is the **artery of the vas deferens**. Other branches supply the ureter.

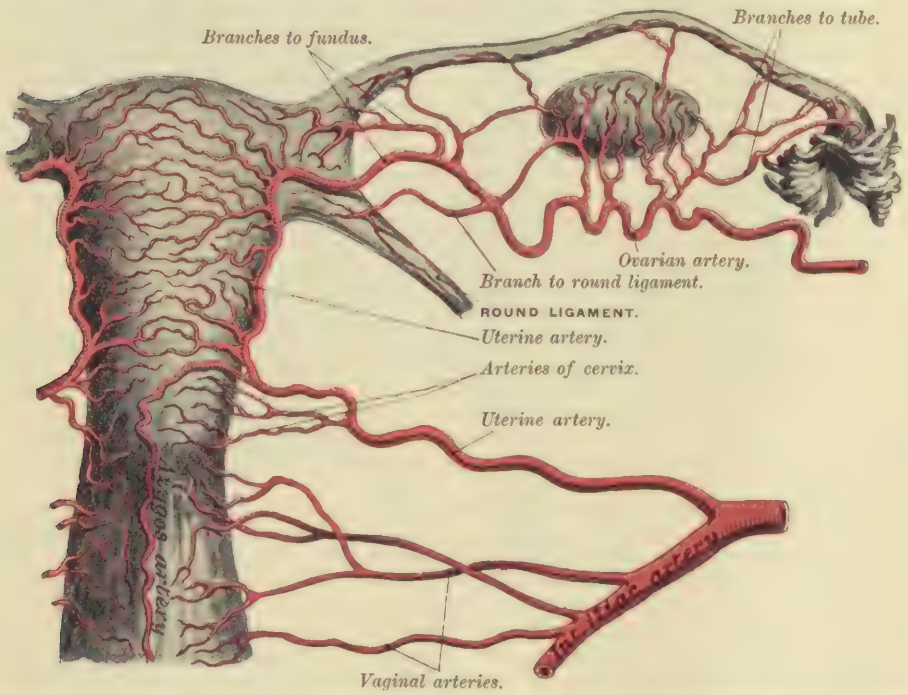


FIG. 425.—The arteries of the internal organs of generation of the female, seen from behind. (After Hyrtl.)

The **Middle Vesical** (*a. vesicalis medialis*) (Fig. 424), usually a branch of the superior, is distributed to the base of the bladder and under surface of the vesiculæ seminales.

The **Inferior Vesical** (*a. vesicalis inferior*) (Fig. 424) *arises* from the anterior division of the internal iliac, frequently in common with the middle hemorrhoidal, and is distributed to the base of the bladder, the prostate gland, and vesiculæ

seminales. The branches distributed to the prostate communicate with the corresponding vessel of the opposite side.

The **Middle Hæmorrhoidal Artery** (*a. hæmorrhoidalis media*) (Fig. 424) usually arises together with the preceding vessel. It supplies the anus and parts outside the rectum, anastomosing with the other hemorrhoidal arteries.

The **Uterine Artery** (*a. uterina*) (Fig. 425) passes inward from the anterior trunk of the internal iliac to the neck of the uterus. Ascending in a tortuous course on the side of this viscus, between the layers of the broad ligament, it distributes branches to its substance and to the round ligament and the Fallopian tube (*ramus tubarius*), anastomosing, near its termination, with the ovarian artery. It gives a branch to the ovary (*ramus ovarii*), which anastomoses with a branch from the ovarian branches to the cervix uteri (*cervico-uteri*), and a branch which descends

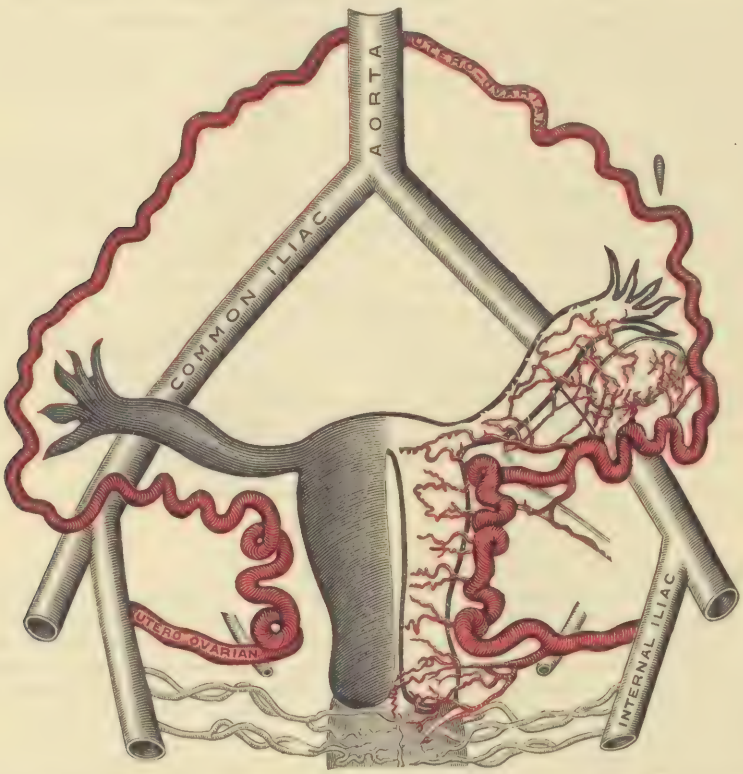


FIG. 426.—The utero-ovarian artery forming the circle described by Byron Robinson.

on the vagina (*cervico-vaginal*), and, joining with branches from the vaginal arteries, form a median longitudinal vessel both in front and behind; these descend on the anterior and posterior surfaces of the vagina, and are named the **azygos arteries of the vagina.**

The **Vaginal Artery** (*a. vaginalis*) (Fig. 426) is analogous to the inferior vesical in the male; it descends upon the vagina, supplying its mucous membrane, and sending branches to the neck of the bladder and contiguous part of the rectum. There may be several vaginal arteries. The vaginal artery assists in forming the **azygos arteries** of the vagina, which are anterior and posterior vessels, running longitudinally, and due to anastomoses of the branches of the vaginal from each side and the cervico-vaginal artery.

Luschka, Hyrtl, Waldeyer, Byron Robinson, and others, instead of describing the ovarian and uterine arteries as two distinct vessels, regard them as constituting

the chief parts of one vessel, the **arteria uterina ovarica**. What has been called "the circle of Byron Robinson" is composed of a spiral segment (the arteria uterina ovarica), with a portion of the abdominal aorta, common iliacs, and internal iliacs (Fig. 426).

Byron Robinson[1] has made a careful study of this vascular circle; he shows that it is of great importance in certain surgical procedures, and that its remarkable "capacity for extension" saves it from damage when the uterus is enormously distended by pregnancy, or when it is "drawn through the pudendum with traction forceps for palpation, inspection, or repair."

The author just quoted says further that the utero-ovarian artery has three origins, because it develops from the Wolffian body: The **ovarian segment** *arises* from the abdominal aorta. The **uterine segment** *arises* from the anterior branch of the internal iliac artery. The **artery of the round ligament** *arises* from the deep epigastric. The arteria uterina ovarica artery secures nutrition to the uterus by bringing blood from three sources. It is spiral throughout its entire course, in certain parts is convoluted or looped, and it is accompanied by the pampiniform plexus of veins.

The three origins of this vessel are freely united by anastomoses, and rami laterales are given off, which unite the bilateral vessels in the median line. Robinson describes three bifurcations of the utero-ovarian artery. The **distal bifurcation,** which is "about midway between the uterus and the pelvic wall," and forms an acute angle with the main vessel. This bifurcation indicates the point of division of the external from the internal genitals. The cervico-vaginal artery supplies the external genitals. The **proximal bifurcation** marks the situation of the ovary. The artery bifurcates at an acute angle into two branches to supply the ovary and Fallopian tube. The **middle bifurcation** consists of (1) the division of the uterine segment at the angle formed by the uterus and oviduct ("forming the ramus oviductus and ramus ovarii") and (2) "the bifurcation of the ramus oviductus forming the ramus oviductus and the ramus ligamenti teretis, or the segment of the round ligament."[2] The relations of the utero-ovarian artery and the ureter are shown in Fig. 426.

Surgical Anatomy.—As pointed out by Byron Robinson, the source of bleeding after vaginal hysterectomy is usually the torn and unclamped cervico-vaginal artery.

As previously pointed out, the spiral and convoluted shape of the utero-ovarian artery allows the uterus, ovary, and tube to be drawn into the vagina without injury to the vessels. Bryon Robinson points out that in vaginal hysterectomy the genital circle is not divided and only the rami laterales which go to the uterus are cut, the ovaries retaining a normal blood-supply and continuing to functionate.

The **Obturator Artery** (*a. obturatoria*) (Fig. 424) usually *arises* from the anterior trunk of the internal iliac; frequently from the posterior. It passes forward, below the brim of the pelvis, to the upper part of the obturator foramen, accompanied by the obturator nerve and vein, and, escaping from the pelvic cavity through a short canal formed by a groove on the under surface of the ascending ramus of the os pubis and the arched border of the obturator membrane, it divides into an **internal** and **external branch**. In the pelvic cavity this vessel lies upon the pelvic fascia, beneath the peritoneum, and a little below the obturator nerve.

Branches.—*Within the pelvis*, the obturator artery gives off an **iliac branch** (*ramus iliacus*) to the iliac fossa, which supplies the bone and the Iliacus muscle, and anastomoses with the ilio-lumbar artery; a **vesical branch** (*ramus vesicalis*), which runs backward to supply the bladder; and a **pubic branch** (*ramus pubicus*), which is given off from the vessel just before it leaves the pelvic cavity. This branch ascends upon the back of the os pubis, communicating with offsets from

[1] The Utero-ovarian Artery.

[2] Byron Robinson. The Utero-ovarian Artery.

the deep epigastric artery and with the corresponding vessel of the opposite side. It is placed on the inner side of the femoral ring. External to the pelvis, the obturator artery divides into an **internal** and an **external branch**, which are deeply situated beneath the Obturator externus muscle.

The **Internal Branch** (*ramus anterior*) curves downward along the inner margin of the obturator foramen, lying beneath the Obturator externus muscle; it distributes branches to the Obturator externus, Pectineus, Adductors, and Gracilis, and anastomoses with the external branch and with the internal circumflex artery.

The **External Branch** (*ramus posterior*) curves round the outer margin of the obturator foramen, also lying beneath the Obturator externus muscle, to the space between the Gemellus inferior and Quadratus femoris, where it divides into two branches: one, smaller, courses inward around the lower margin of the foramen and anastomoses with the internal branch and with the internal circumflex; the other inclines outward in the groove below the acetabulum (*a. acetabulis*), and supplies the muscles attached to the tuberosity of the ischium and anastomoses with the sciatic artery. It sends a branch to the hip-joint through the cotyloid notch, which ramifies on the round ligament as far as the head of the femur.

Peculiarities (Fig. 427). In two out of every three cases the obturator arises from the internal iliac; in one case in three and a half from the epigastric; and in about one in seventy-two cases by two roots from both vessels. It arises in about the same proportion from the external iliac artery. The origin of the obturator from the epigastric is not commonly found on both sides of the same body.

FIG. 427.—Variations in origin and course of the obturator artery.

When the obturator artery arises at the front of the pelvis from the epigastric, it descends almost vertically to the upper part of the obturator foramen. The artery in this course usually lies in contact with the external iliac vein and on the outer side of the femoral ring (Fig. 427, *A*); in such cases it would not be endangered in the operation for femoral hernia. Occasionally, however, it curves inward along the free margin of Gimbernat's ligament (Fig. 427, *B*), and under such circumstances would almost completely encircle the neck of a hernial sac (supposing a hernia to exist in such a case), and would be in great danger of being wounded if an operation was performed.

The **Internal Pudic Artery** (*a. pudenda interna*) (Figs. 424, 428, and 429) is the smaller of the two terminal branches of the anterior trunk of the internal iliac, and supplies the external organs of generation. Though the course of the artery is the same in the two sexes, the vessel is much smaller in the female than in the male, and the distribution of its branches somewhat different. The description of its arrangement in the male will first be given, and subsequently the differences which it presents in the female will be mentioned.

The **Internal Pudic Artery in the Male** passes downward and outward to the lower border of the great sacro-sciatic foramen, and emerges from the pelvis between the Pyriformis and Coccygeus muscles: it then crosses the spine of the ischium and re-enters the pelvis through the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen. The artery now crosses the Obturator internus muscle along the outer wall of the ischio-rectal fossa, being situated about an inch and a half above the lower margin of the ischial tuberosity. It is here contained in a sheath of the obturator fascia, and

gradually approaches the margin of the ramus of the ischium, along which it passes forward and upward, pierces the base of the superficial layer of the triangular ligament of the urethra, and runs forward along the inner margin of the ramus of the os pubis, and divides into its two terminal branches, the **dorsal artery of the penis** and the **artery of the corpus cavernosum.**

Relations.—In the first part of its course, within the pelvis, it lies in front of the Pyriformis muscle and sacral plexus of nerves, and the sciatic artery, and on the outer side of the rectum (on the left side). As it crosses the spine of the ischium it is covered by the Gluteus maximus and overlapped by the great sacro-sciatic ligament. Here the obturator nerve lies to the inner side and the nerve to the Obturator internus to the outer side of the vessel. In the pelvis it lies on the outer side of the ischio-rectal fossa, upon the surface of the Obturator internus muscle, contained in a fibrous canal, the **canal of Alcock,** formed by the splitting of the obturator fascia. It is accompanied by the pudic veins and the pudic nerve.

Peculiarities.—The internal pudic is sometimes smaller than usual, or fails to give off one or two of its usual branches; in such cases the deficiency is supplied by branches derived from an additional vessel, the *accessory pudic*, which generally arises from the internal pudic artery before its exit from the great sacro-sciatic foramen. It passes forward along the lower part of the bladder and across the side of the prostate gland to the root of the penis, where it perforates the triangular ligament and gives off the branches usually derived from the pudic artery. The deficiency most frequently met with is that in which the internal pudic ends as the artery of the bulb, the artery of the corpus cavernosum and arteria dorsalis penis being derived from the accessory pudic. Or the pudic may terminate as the superficial perineal, the artery of the bulb being derived, with the other two branches, from the accessory vessel. Occasionally the accessory pudic artery is derived from one of the other branches of the internal iliac, most frequently the inferior vesical or the obturator.

Surgical Anatomy.—The relation of the accessory pudic to the prostate gland and urethra is of the greatest interest in a surgical point of view, as this vessel is in danger of being wounded in the operation of *lateral lithotomy*. The student should also study the position of the internal pudic artery and its branches, when running a normal course with regard to the same operation. The superficial and the transverse perineal arteries are, of necessity, divided in this operation, but the hemorrhage from these vessels is seldom excessive; should a ligature be required, it can readily be applied on account of their superficial position. The artery of the bulb may be divided if the incision be carried too far forward, and injury of this vessel may be attended with serious or even fatal consequences. The main trunk of the internal pudic artery may be wounded if the incision be carried too far outward; but, being bound down by the strong obturator fascia and under cover of the ramus of the ischium, the accident is not very likely to occur unless the vessel runs an anomalous course.

Branches.—The branches of the internal pudic artery are—the

Muscular.	Transverse Perineal.
Inferior Hæmorrhoidal.	Artery of the Bulb.
Superficial Perineal.	Artery of the Corpus Cavernosum.

Dorsal Artery of the Penis.

The **Muscular Branches** consist of two sets—one given off in the pelvis, the other as the vessel crosses the ischial spine. The former are several small offsets which supply the Lævator ani, the Obturator internus, the Pyriformis, and the Coccygeus muscles. The branches given off outside the pelvis are distributed to the adjacent part of the Gluteus maximus and External rotator muscles. They anastomose with branches of the sciatic artery.

The **Inferior Hæmorrhoidal Artery** (*a. hæmorrhoidalis inferior*) *arises* from the internal pudic as it passes above the tuberosity of the ischium. Crossing the ischio-rectal fossa it is distributed by two or three terminal branches to the muscles and integument of the anal region. Instead of one inferior hemorrhoidal artery two or three small vessels may arise from the internal pudic.

The **Superficial Perineal Artery** (*a. perinei*) (Fig. 428) supplies the scrotum and the muscles and integument of the perinæum. It *arises* from the internal pudic in front

of the preceding branches, and turns upward, crossing either over or under the Transversus perinei superficialis muscle, and runs forward, parallel to the pubic arch, in the interspace between the Accelerator urinæ and Erector penis muscles, both of which it supplies, and is finally distributed to the skin and dartos of the scrotum. In its passage through the perinæum it lies beneath the superficial perineal fascia.

The **Transverse Perineal Artery** is a small branch which *arises* either from the internal pudic or from the superficial perineal artery as it crosses the Transversus perinæi muscle. It runs transversely inward along the cutaneous surface of the Transversus perinei superficialis muscle, which it supplies, as well as the structures between the anus and bulb of the urethra, and anastomoses with the like vessel of the opposite side.

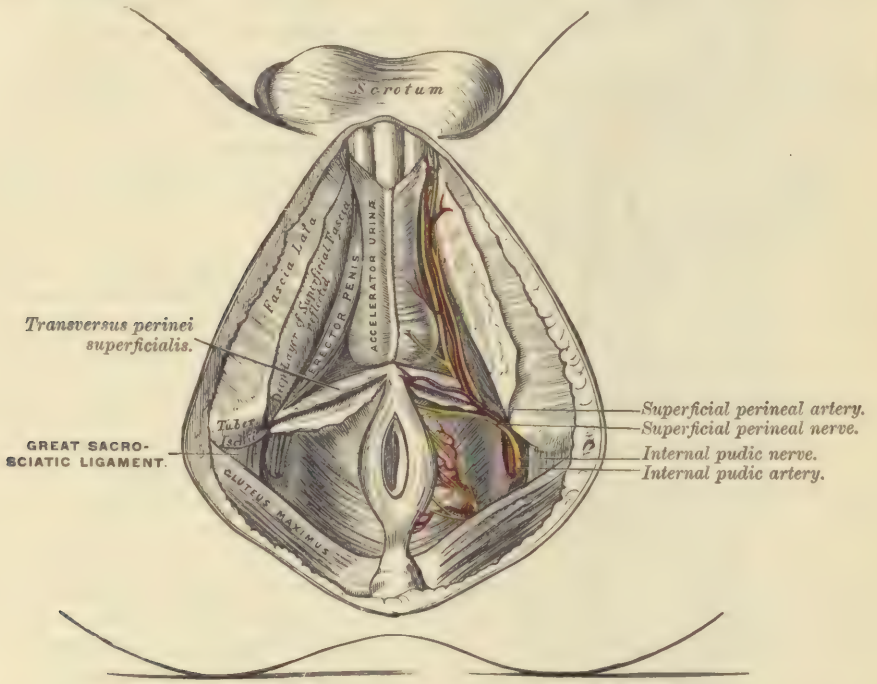


FIG. 428.—The superficial muscles and vessels of the perinæum.

The **Artery of the Bulb** (*a. bulbi urethræ*) is a large but very short vessel which *arises* from the internal pudic between the two layers of the triangular ligament, and, passing nearly transversely inward, between the fibres of the Compressor urethræ muscle, it pierces the bulb of the urethra, which it supplies, and continues anteriorly in the corpus spongiosum to the glans and anastomoses with its fellow of the opposite side. It gives off a small branch which descends to supply Cowper's gland.

Surgical Anatomy.—This artery is of considerable importance in a surgical point of view, as it is in danger of being wounded in the median or the lateral operation of lithotomy—an accident usually attended in the adult with alarming hemorrhage. The vessel is sometimes very small, occasionally wanting, or even double. It sometimes arises from the internal pudic earlier than usual, and crosses the perinæum to reach the back part of the bulb. In such a case the vessel could hardly fail to be wounded in the performance of the lateral operation of lithotomy. If, on the contrary, it should arise from an accessory pudic, it lies more forward than usual and is out of danger in the operation.

The **Artery of the Corpus Cavernosum** (*a. profunda penis*), one of the terminal branches of the internal pudic, *arises* from that vessel while it is situated between

the two layers of the triangular ligament; it pierces the superficial layer, and, entering the crus penis obliquely, it runs forward in the centre of the corpus cavernosum, to which its branches are distributed.

The **Dorsal Artery of the Penis** (*a. dorsalis penis*) ascends between the crus and pubic symphysis, and, piercing the triangular ligament, passes between the two layers of the suspensory ligament of the penis, and runs forward on the dorsum of the penis to the glans, where it divides into two branches which supply the glans and prepuce. On the dorsum of the penis it lies immediately beneath the integument, parallel with the dorsal vein and the corresponding artery of the opposite side. It supplies the integument and fibrous sheath of the corpus cavernosum, sending branches through the sheath to anastomose with the preceding vessel.

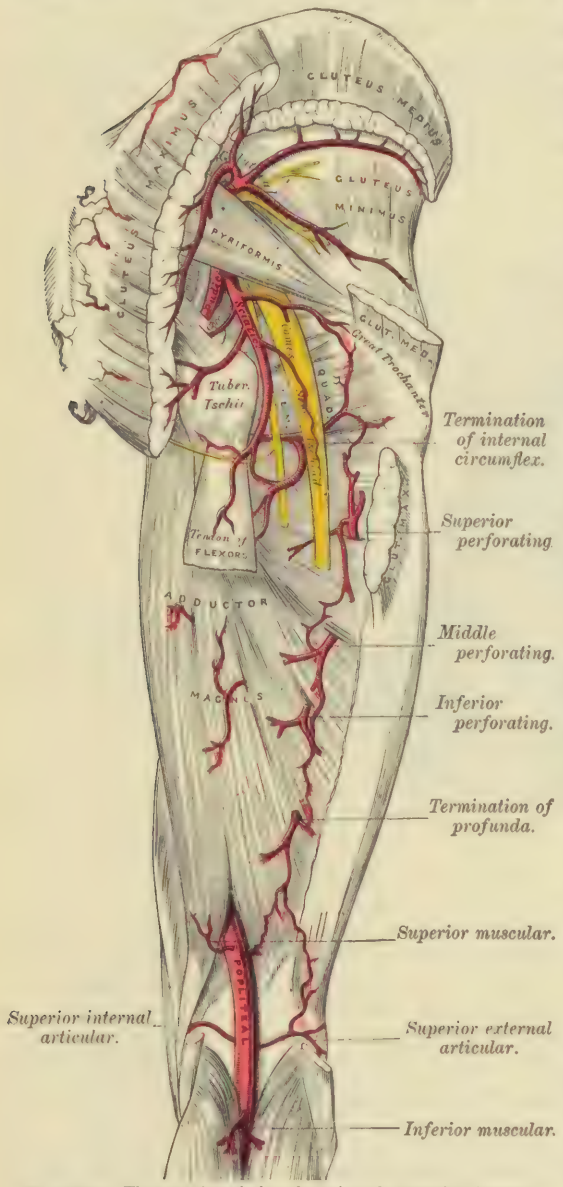


FIG. 429.— The arteries of the gluteal and posterior femoral regions.

The **Internal Pudic Artery in the Female** is smaller than in the male. Its origin and course are similar, and there is considerable analogy in the distribution of its branches. The superficial perineal artery supplies the labia pudendi; the artery of the bulb supplies the bulbi vestibuli and the erectile tissue of the vagina; the artery of the corpus cavernosum (*a. profunda clitoridis*) supplies the cavernous body of the clitoris; and the arteria dorsalis clitoridis supplies the dorsum of that organ, and terminates in the glans and in the membranous fold corresponding to the prepuce of the male.

The **Sciatic Artery** (*a. glutæa inferior*) (Fig. 429), the larger of the two terminal branches of the anterior trunk of the internal iliac, is distributed to the muscles at the back of the pelvis. It passes down to the lower part of the great sacro-sciatic foramen behind the internal pudic artery, resting on the sacral plexus of nerves and Pyriformis muscle, and escapes from the pelvis through this foramen between the Pyriformis and Coccygeus. It then descends in the interval between the trochanter major and tuberosity of the ischium, accompanied by the sciatic nerves, and covered by the Gluteus maximus, and is continued down the back of the thigh supplying the skin, and anastomosing with branches of the perforating arteries.

Within the pelvis it distributes branches to the Pyriformis, Coccygeus, and Levator ani muscles; some hemorrhoidal branches, which supply the rectum, and occasionally take the place of the middle hemorrhoidal artery; and vesical branches to the base and neck of the bladder, vesiculæ seminales, and prostate gland. *External to the pelvis* it gives off the following branches:

Coccygeal.	Muscular.
Inferior Gluteal.	Anastomotic.
Comes Nervi Ischiadici.	Articular.

The **Coccygeal Branch** runs inward, pierces the great sacro-sciatic ligament, and supplies the Gluteus maximus, the integument, and other structures on the back of the coccyx.

The **Inferior Gluteal Branches**, three or four in number, supply the Gluteus maximus muscle, anastomosing with the gluteal artery in the substance of the muscle.

The **Comes Nervi Ischiadici** (*a. comitans n. ischiadici*) is a long, slender vessel which accompanies the great sciatic nerve for a short distance; it then penetrates it and runs in its substance to the lower part of the thigh.

The **Muscular Branches** supply the Gluteus maximus, anastomosing with the gluteal artery in the substance of the muscle; the external rotators, anastomosing with the internal pudic artery; and the muscles attached to the tuberosity of the ischium, anastomosing with the external branch of the obturator and the internal circumflex arteries.

The **Anastomotic Artery** is directed downward across the external rotators and assists in forming the so-called **crucial anastomosis** by anastomosing with the superior perforating and the internal and external circumflex arteries.

The **Articular Branch**, generally derived from the anastomotic, is distributed to the capsule of the hip-joint.

The **Ilio-lumbar Artery** (*a. ilio lumbalis*), given off from the posterior trunk of the internal iliac, turns upward and outward between the obturator nerve and lumbo-sacral cord, to the inner margin of the Psoas muscle, behind which it divides into a **lumbar** and an **iliac branch**.

The **Lumbar Branch** (*ramus lumbalis*) supplies the Psoas and Quadratus lumborum muscles, anastomosing with the last lumbar artery, and sends a small **spinal branch** (*ramus spinalis*) through the intervertebral foramen, between the last lumbar vertebra and the sacrum, into the spinal canal, to supply the cauda equina.

The **Iliac Branch** (*ramus iliacus*) descends to supply the Iliacus muscle; some offsets, running between the muscle and the bone, anastomose with the iliac branch of the obturator; one of these enters an oblique canal to supply the diploë, whilst others run along the crest of the ilium, distributing branches to the Gluteal and Abdominal muscles, and anastomose in their course with the gluteal, circumflex iliac, and external circumflex arteries.

The **Lateral Sacral Artery** (*a. sacralis lateralis*) (Fig. 424) runs downward. It may be single, but usually there are two on each side, the **superior** and **inferior divisions.**

The **Superior Division**, which is of large size, passes inward, and, after anastomosing with branches from the middle sacral, enters the first or second anterior sacral foramen, gives **spinal branches** (*rami spinalis*) to the contents of the sacral canal, and, escaping by the corresponding posterior sacral foramen, supplies the skin and muscles on the dorsum of the sacrum, anastomosing with the gluteal.

The **Inferior Division** passes obliquely across the front of the Pyriformis muscle and sacral nerves to the inner side of the anterior sacral foramina, descends on the front of the sacrum, and anastomoses over the coccyx with the middle sacral and opposite lateral sacral arteries. In its course it gives off **spinal branches** which

enter the anterior sacral foramina (*rami spinales*); these, after supplying the contents of the sacral canal, escape by the posterior sacral foramina, and are distributed to the muscles and skin on the dorsal surface of the sacrum, anastomosing with the gluteal.

The **Gluteal Artery** (*a. glutæa superior*) (Fig. 429) is the largest branch of the internal iliac, and appears to be the continuation of the posterior division of that vessel. It is a short thick trunk, which passes out of the pelvis above the upper border of the Pyriformis muscle, and immediately divides into a **superficial** and **deep branch**. Within the pelvis it gives off a few muscular branches to the Iliacus, Pyriformis, and Obturator internus, and, just previous to emerging from that cavity, a nutrient artery, which enters the ilium.

The **Superficial Branch** passes beneath the Gluteus maximus and divides into numerous branches, some of which supply that muscle, whilst others perforate its tendinous origin, and supply the integument covering the posterior surface of the sacrum, anastomosing with the posterior branches of the sacral arteries.

The **Deep Branch** runs between the Gluteus medius and minimus, and subdivides into two. Of these, the **superior division** (*ramus superior*), continuing the original course of the vessel, passes along the upper border of the Gluteus minimus to the anterior superior spine of the ilium, anastomosing with the circumflex iliac and ascending branches of the external circumflex artery. The **inferior division** (*ramus inferior*) crosses the Gluteus minimus obliquely to the trochanter major, distributing branches to the Glutei muscles, and inosculates with the external circumflex artery. Some branches piece the Gluteus minimus to supply the hip-joint.

Surface Marking.—The position of the three main branches of the internal iliac, the sciatic, internal pudic, and gluteal, which may occasionally be the object of surgical interference, is indicated on the surface in the following way: A line is to be drawn from the posterior superior iliac spine to the posterior superior angle of the great trochanter, with the limb slightly flexed and rotated inward: the point of emergence of the gluteal artery from the upper part of the sciatic notch will correspond with the junction of the upper with the middle third of this line. A second line is to be drawn from the same point to the outer part of the tuberosity of the ischium; the junction of the lower with the middle third marks the point of emergence of the sciatic and pudic arteries from the great sciatic notch.

Surgical Anatomy.—Any of these three vessels may require *ligating* for a wound or for aneurism, which is generally traumatic. The gluteal artery is ligated by turning the patient two-thirds over on his face and making an incision from the posterior superior spine of the ilium to the upper and posterior angle of the great trochanter. This must expose the Gluteus maximus muscle, and its fibres are to be separated through the whole thickness of the muscle and pulled apart with retractors. The contiguous margins of the gluteus medius and Pyriformis are now to be separated from each other, and the artery will be exposed emerging from the sciatic notch. In ligation of the sciatic artery, the incision should be made parallel with that for ligation of the gluteal, but one inch and a half lower down. After the fibres of the Gluteus maximus have been separated, the vessel is to be sought for at the lower border of the Pyriformis; the great sciatic nerve, which lies just above it, forming the chief guide to the artery. The internal pudic can be reached through the incision used to reach the sciatic.

The External Iliac Artery (A. Iliaca Externa) (Fig. 424).

The external iliac artery is larger in the adult than is the internal iliac. It passes obliquely downward and outward along the inner border of the Psoas muscle, from the bifurcation of the common iliac to Poupart's ligament, where it enters the thigh and becomes the femoral artery.

Relations.—*In front*, with the peritoneum, subperitoneal areolar tissue or *Abernethy's fascia*, the termination of the ileum on the right side, and the sigmoid flexure on the left, and a thin layer of fascia derived from the iliac fascia, which surrounds the artery and vein. At its origin it is occasionally crossed by the ureter. The spermatic vessels descend for some distance upon it near its termination, and it is

crossed in this situation by the genital branch of the genito-crural nerve and the deep circumflex iliac vein; the vas deferens curves down along its inner side. *Behind*, it is in relation with the external iliac vein, which, at Poupart's ligament, lies at its inner side; on the left side the vein is altogether internal to the artery. *Externally*, it rests against the Psoas muscle, from which it is separated by the iliac fascia. The artery rests upon this muscle, near Poupart's ligament. Numerous lymphatic vessels and glands are found lying on the front and inner side of the vessel.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE EXTERNAL ILIAC ARTERY.

In front.
Peritoneum, intestines, and fascia.

Near Poupart's Ligament.
- Lymphatic vessels and glands.
- Spermatic vessels.
- Genito-crural nerve (genital branch).
- Deep circumflex iliac vein.

Outer side.
Psoas magnus.
Iliac fascia.

External Iliac.

Inner side.
External iliac vein and vas deferens near Poupart's ligament.

Behind.
External iliac vein.
Psoas magnus.

Surface Marking.—The surface line indicating the course of the external iliac artery has been already given (see page 682).

Surgical Anatomy.—The application of a *ligature* to the external iliac may be required in cases of aneurism of the femoral artery or for a wound of the artery. This vessel may be secured in any part of its course, excepting near its upper end, which is to be avoided on account of the proximity of the great stream of blood in the internal iliac, and near its lower end, which should also be avoided, on account of the proximity of the deep epigastric and circumflex iliac vessels. The patient having been placed in the supine position, an incision should be made, commencing below at a point about three-quarters of an inch above Poupart's ligament, and a little external to its middle, and running upward and outward, parallel to Poupart's ligament, to a point one inch internal and one inch above the anterior superior spine of the ilium. When the artery is deeply seated more room will be required, and may be obtained by curving the incision from the point last named inward toward the umbilicus for a short distance. Another mode of ligating the vessel is the plan advocated by Sir Astley Cooper, by making an incision close to Poupart's ligament from about half an inch outside of the external abdominal ring to one inch internal to the anterior superior spine of the ilium. This incision, being made in the course of the fibres of the aponeurosis of the external oblique, is less likely to be followed by a ventral hernia, but there is danger of wounding the epigastric artery, and only the lower end of the vessel can be ligated. Abernethy, who first tied this artery, made his incision in the course of the vessel. The abdominal muscles and transversalis fascia having been cautiously divided, the peritoneum should be separated from the iliac fossa and raised toward the pelvis; and on introducing the finger to the bottom of the wound, the artery may be felt pulsating along the inner border of the Psoas muscle. The external iliac vein is generally found on the inner side of the artery, and must be cautiously separated from it by the finger-nail or handle of the knife, and the aneurism needle should be introduced on the inner side, between the artery and the vein.

Ligation of the external iliac artery has recently been performed by a transperitoneal method. An incision four inches in length is made in the semilunar line, commencing about an inch below the umbilicus and carried through the abdominal wall into the peritoneal cavity. The intestines are then pushed upward and held out of the way by a broad abdominal retractor, and an incision is made through the peritoneum at the margin of the pelvis in the course of the artery, and the vessel is secured in any part of its course which may seem desirable to the operator. The advantages of this operation appear to be that if it is found necessary, the common iliac artery can be ligated instead of the external iliac without extension or modification of the incision; and secondly, that the vessel can be ligated without in any way interfering with the coverings of the sac of an aneurism. Possibly a disadvantage may exist in the greater risk of hernia after this method.

Collateral Circulation.—The principal anastomoses in carrying on the collateral circulation, after the application of a ligature to the external iliac, are the ilio-lumbar with the circumflex iliac; the gluteal with the external circumflex; the obturator with the internal circumflex; the sciatic with the superior perforating and circumflex branches of the profunda artery; and the internal pudic with the external pudic. When the obturator arises from the epigastric it is supplied with blood by branches, either from the internal iliac, the lateral sacral, or the internal pudic. The epigastric receives its supply from the internal mammary and inferior intercostal arteries, and from the internal iliac by the anastomoses of its branches with the obturator.

In the dissection of a limb eighteen years after the successful ligature of the external iliac artery by Sir A. Cooper, the report of which is to be found in *Guy's Hospital Reports*, vol. i. p. 50, the anastomosing branches are described in three sets: *An anterior set.*—1, a very large branch from the ilio-lumbar artery to the circumflex iliac; 2, another branch from the ilio-lumbar, joined by one from the obturator, and breaking up into numerous tortuous branches to anastomose with the external circumflex; 3, two other branches from the obturator, which passed over the brim of the pelvis, communicated with the epigastric, and then broke up into a plexus to anastomose with the internal circumflex. *An internal set.*—Branches given off from the obturator, after quitting the pelvis, which ramified among the adductor muscles on the inner side of the hip-joint, and joined most freely with branches of the internal circumflex. *A posterior set.*—1, three large branches from the gluteal to the external circumflex; 2, several branches from the sciatic around the great sciatic notch to the internal and external circumflex, and the perforating branches of the profunda.

Branches.—Besides several small branches to the Psoas muscle and the neighboring lymphatic glands, the external iliac gives off two branches of considerable size—the **deep epigastric** and **deep circumflex iliac arteries.**

The **Internal** or **Deep Epigastric Artery** (*a. epigastrica inferior*) (Fig. 424) *arises* from the external iliac a few lines above Poupart's ligament. It at first descends to reach this ligament, and then ascends obliquely along the inner margin of the internal abdominal ring, lying between the transversalis fascia and peritoneum, and, continuing its course upward, it pierces the transversalis fascia, and passing over the semilunar fold of Douglas, enters the sheath of the Rectus muscle. It then ascends on the posterior surface of the muscle, and finally divides into numerous branches which anastomose, above the umbilicus, with the superior epigastric branch of the internal mammary and with the inferior intercostal arteries (Fig. 410). The deep epigastric artery bears a very important relation to the internal abdominal ring as it passes obliquely upward and inward from its origin from the external iliac. In this part of its course it lies along the lower and inner margin of the ring and beneath the commencement of the spermatic cord. As it passes to the inner side of the internal abdominal ring it is crossed by the vas deferens in the male and the round ligament in the female.

Branches.—The branches of this vessel are the following: The **cremasteric** (*a. spermatica externa in the male, a. ligamenti teretis uteri in the female*), which accompanies the spermatic cord, and supplies the Cremaster muscle and other coverings of the cord, anastomosing with the spermatic artery in the male, and which accompanies the round ligament in the female; a **pubic branch** (*ramus pubicus*), which runs along Poupart's ligament, and then descends behind the os pubis to the inner side of the femoral ring, and anastomoses with offsets from the obturator artery; **muscular branches,** some of which are distributed to the abdominal muscles and peritoneum, anastomosing with the lumbar and circumflex iliac arteries; **cutaneous branches** perforate the tendon of the External oblique, and supply the integument, anastomosing with branches of the superficial epigastric.

Peculiarities. The origin of the deep epigastric may take place from any part of the external iliac between Poupart's ligament and two inches and a half above it, or it may arise below this ligament, from the common femoral or from the deep femoral.

Union with Branches.—It frequently arises from the external iliac by a common trunk with the obturator. Sometimes the epigastric arises from the obturator, the latter vessel being furnished by the internal iliac, or the epigastric may be formed by two branches, one derived from the external iliac, the other from the internal iliac.

Surgical Anatomy.—The deep epigastric artery follows a line drawn from the middle of Poupart's ligament toward the umbilicus; but shortly after this line crosses the linea semilunaris the direction changes, and the course of the vessel is directly upward in the line of junction of the inner third with the outer two-thirds of the Rectus muscle. It has important surgical relations, in addition to the fact that it is one of the principal means, through its anastomosis with the internal mammary, in establishing the collateral circulation after ligature of either the common or external iliac arteries. It lies close to the internal abdominal ring, and is therefore *internal* to an oblique inguinal hernia, but *external* to a direct inguinal hernia, as the hernia emerges from the abdomen. It forms the outer boundary of Hesselbach's triangle. It is in close relationship with the spermatic cord, which lies in front of it in the inguinal canal, separated only by the transversalis fascia. The vas deferens hooks round its outer side.

The **Deep Circumflex Iliac Artery** (*a. circumflexa ilium profunda*) (Fig. 424) *arises* from the outer side of the external iliac nearly opposite the epigastric artery. It ascends obliquely outward behind Poupart's ligament, contained in a fibrous sheath formed by the junction of the transversalis and iliac fascia, to the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium. It then runs along the inner surface of the crest of the ilium to about its middle, where it pierces the Transversalis, and runs backward between that muscle and the Internal oblique, to anastomose with the ilio-lumbar and gluteal arteries. Opposite the anterior superior spine of the ilium it gives off a large branch which ascends between the Internal oblique and Transversalis muscles, supplying them, and anastomosing with the lumbar and epigastric arteries. It also gives off cutaneous branches.

ARTERIES OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The artery which supplies the greater part of the lower extremity is the direct continuation of the external iliac. It continues as a single trunk from Poupart's ligament to the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, and here divides into two branches, the anterior and posterior tibial, an arrangement exactly similar to what occurs in the upper limb. For convenience of description, the upper part of the main trunk is named **femoral**, the lower part, **popliteal**.

THE FEMORAL ARTERY (A. FEMORALIS) (Figs. 430, 431, 432).

The femoral artery commences immediately behind Poupart's ligament, midway between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the symphysis pubis, and, passing down the forepart and inner side of the thigh, terminates at the opening in the Adductor magnus, at the junction of the middle with the lower third of the thigh, where it becomes the popliteal artery. The vessel, at the upper part of the thigh, lies in front of the hip-joint, just on a line with the innermost part of the head of the femur; in the lower part of its course it is in close relation with the inner side of the shaft of the bone, and between these two parts the vessel is some distance from the bone. In the upper third of the thigh it is contained in a triangular space called **Scarpa's triangle**. In the middle third of the thigh it is contained in an aponeurotic canal called **Hunter's canal**.

Scarpa's Triangle (*trigonum femorale*).—Scarpa's triangle corresponds to the depression seen immediately below the fold of the groin. It is a triangular space, the apex of which is directed downward, and the sides formed externally by the Sartorius, internally by the inner margin of the Adductor longus, and above by Poupart's ligament. The floor of the space is formed from without inward by the Iliacus, Psoas, Pectineus (in some cases a small part of the Adductor brevis), and the Adductor longus muscles; and it is divided into two nearly equal parts by the femoral vessels, which extend from the middle of its base to its apex, the artery

giving off in this situation its superficial and profunda branches, the vein receiving the deep femoral and internal saphenous. On the outer side of the femoral artery is the anterior crural nerve dividing into its branches. In the outer corner of the space is the external cutaneous nerve. Within the sheath of the artery, and lying upon the outer side of the vessel, is the crural branch of the genito-crural nerve. At the base of the triangle the vein is to the inner side of the artery; at the apex of the triangle it is passing behind the artery. Besides the vessels and nerves, this space contains some fat and lymphatics.

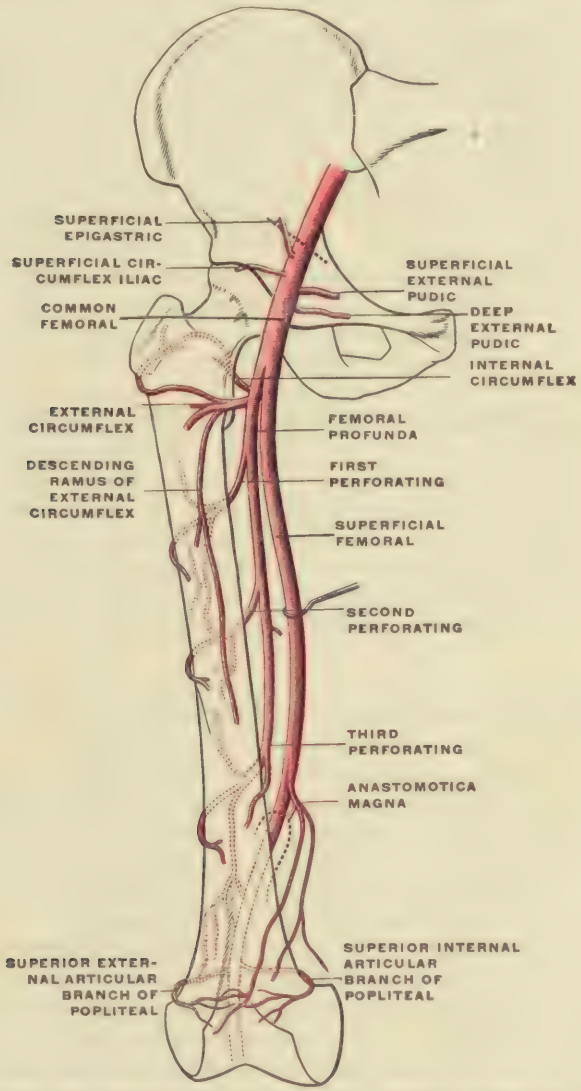


FIG. 430.—Scheme of the femoral artery. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Hunter's Canal or the Adductor Canal (*canalis adductorius* [*Hunteri*]).—This is the aponeurotic space in the middle third of the thigh, extending from the apex of Scarpa's triangle to the **femoral opening** in the Adductor magnus muscle. It is bounded, externally, by the Vastus internus; internally by the Adductors longus and magnus muscles; and is covered in by a strong aponeurosis which extends transversely from the Vastus internus across the femoral

vessels to the Adductor longus and magnus; lying on which aponeurosis is the Sartorius muscle. It contains the femoral artery and vein enclosed in their own sheath of areolar tissue, the vein being behind and on the outer side of the artery, and the internal or long saphenous nerve lying at first on the outer side and then in front of the vessels.

For convenience of description, and also in reference to its surgical anatomy, the femoral artery is divided into a short trunk, about an inch and a half or two inches long, which is known as the **common femoral artery**, while the remainder of the vessel is termed the **superficial femoral artery**, to distinguish it from the **deep femoral** (*profunda femoris*), a large branch given off from the common femoral at its termination, and which, by its derivation, from the parent trunk, marks the commencement of the superficial femoral artery.

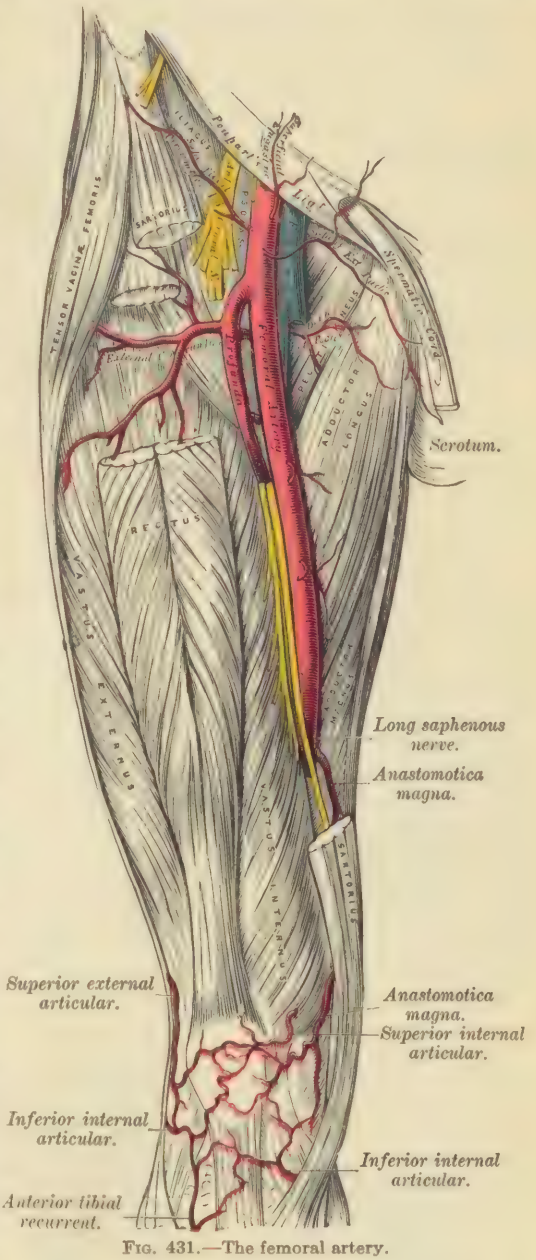


FIG. 431.—The femoral artery.

The Common Femoral Artery
(Figs. 430, 431, 432).

The common femoral artery is very superficial, being covered by the skin and superficial fascia, superficial inguinal lymphatic glands, the iliac portion of the fascia lata, and the prolongation downward of the transversalis fascia, which forms the anterior part of the sheath of the vessels. It has in front of it filaments from the crural branch of the genito-crural nerve, the superficial circumflex iliac vein, and occasionally the superficial epigastric vein. It rests on the inner margin of the Psoas muscle, which separates it from the capsular ligament of the hip-joint, and a little lower on the Pectineus muscle; and crossing behind it is the branch to the Pectineus from the anterior crural nerve. Separating the artery from the Pectineus muscles is the pubic portion of the fascia lata and the prolongation from the fascia covering the Iliacus muscle, which forms the posterior layer of the sheath of the vessels. The anterior crural nerve lies about half an inch to the outer side of the common femoral artery, being separated from the artery by a small part of the Psoas muscle. To the inner side of the artery is the femoral vein, between the margins of the Pectineus and Psoas muscles. The two vessels are

enclosed in a strong fibrous sheath formed by the proper sheath of the vessels, strengthened by fascia (see page 509); the artery and vein are separated, however, from one another by a thin fibrous partition.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE COMMON FEMORAL ARTERY.

In front.
Skin and superficial fascia.
Superficial inguinal glands.
Iliac portion of fascia lata.
Prolongation of transversalis fascia.
Crural branch of genito-crural nerve.
Superficial circumflex iliac vein.
Superficial epigastric vein.

Inner side.
Femoral vein.

Common Femoral Artery.

Outer side.
Small part of Psoas muscle, separating the artery from the anterior crural nerve.

Behind.
Prolongation of fascia covering the Iliacus muscle.
Pubic portion of fascia lata.
Nerve to Pectineus.
Psoas muscle.
Pectineus muscle.
Capsule of hip-joint.

The Superficial Femoral Artery (Figs. 430, 431, 432).

The superficial femoral artery is only superficial where it lies in Scarpa's triangle. Here it is covered by the skin, superficial and deep fascia, and crossed by the internal cutaneous branch of the anterior crural nerve. In Hunter's canal it is more deeply seated, being covered by the integument, the superficial and deep fascia, the Sartorius and the aponeurotic covering of Hunter's canal. The internal saphenous nerve crosses the artery from without inward. Behind, the artery lies at its upper part on the femoral vein and the profunda artery and vein, which separate it from the Pectineus muscle, and lower down on the Adductor longus and Adductor magnus muscles. To the outer side is the long saphenous nerve and the nerve to the Vastus internus, the Vastus internus muscle, and, at its lower part, the femoral vein. To the inner side is the Adductor longus above and the Adductor magnus and Sartorius below.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE SUPERFICIAL FEMORAL ARTERY.

In front.
Skin, superficial and deep fasciæ.
Internal cutaneous nerve.
Sartorius.
Aponeurotic covering of Hunter's canal.
Internal saphenous nerve.

Inner side.
Adductor longus.
Adductor magnus.
Sartorius.

Superficial Femoral Artery.

Outer side.
Long saphenous nerve.
Nerve to vastus internus.
Vastus internus.
Femoral vein (below).

Behind.
Femoral vein.
Profunda artery and vein.
Pectineus muscle.
Adductor longus.
Adductor magnus.

The **femoral vein**, at Poupart's ligament, lies close to the inner side of the artery, separated from it by a thin fibrous partition; but lower down it is behind it, and then to its outer side.

The **internal saphenous nerve** is situated on the outer side of the artery, in the middle third of the thigh, beneath the aponeurotic covering of Hunter's canal, but not usually within the sheath of the vessels. The internal cutaneous nerve passes obliquely across the upper part of the sheath of the femoral artery.

Peculiarities. Double Femoral Reunited.—Several cases are recorded in which the femoral artery divided into two trunks below the origin of the profunda, and became reunited near the opening of the Adductor magnus so as to form a single popliteal artery. One of them occurred in a patient operated upon for popliteal aneurism.

Change of Position.—A few cases have been recorded in which the femoral artery was situated at the back of the thigh, the vessel being continuous above with the internal iliac, escaping from the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen, and accompanying the great sciatic nerve to the popliteal space, where its division occurred in the usual manner. The external iliac in these cases was small, and terminated in the profunda.

Position of the Vein. The femoral vein is occasionally placed along the inner side of the artery, throughout the entire extent of Scarpa's triangle, or it may be slit so that a large vein is placed on each side of the artery for a greater or less extent.

Origin of the Profunda. This vessel occasionally arises from the inner side, and, more rarely, from the back of the common trunk; but the more important peculiarity, in a surgical point of view, is that which relates to the height at which the vessel arises from the femoral. In three-fourths of a large number of cases it arose between one or two inches below Poupart's ligament; in a few cases the distance was less than an inch; more rarely, opposite the ligament; and in one case, above Poupart's ligament, from the external iliac. Occasionally, the distance between the origin of the vessel and Poupart's ligament exceeds two inches, and in one case it was found to be as much as four inches.

Surface Marking.—The upper two-thirds of a line drawn from a point midway between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the symphysis pubis to the adductor tubercle on the inner condyle of the femur, with the thigh abducted and rotated outward, will indicate the course of the femoral artery.

Surgical Anatomy.—*Compression* of the femoral artery, which is constantly requisite in amputations and other operations on the lower limbs, and also for the cure of popliteal aneurisms, is most effectually made immediately below Poupart's ligament. In this situation the artery is very superficial, and is merely separated from the ascending ramus of the os pubis by the Psoas muscle; so that the surgeon, by means of his thumb or a compressor, may effectually control the circulation through it. This vessel may also be compressed in the middle third of the thigh by placing a compress over the artery, beneath the tourniquet, and directing the pressure from within outward, so as to compress the vessel against the inner side of the shaft of the femur.

The **application of a ligature** to the femoral artery may be required in the cases of wound or aneurism of the arteries of the leg, of the popliteal or femoral;[1] and the vessel may be exposed and tied in any part of its course. The great depth of this vessel at its lower part, its close connection with important structures, and the density of its sheath render the operation in this situation one of much greater difficulty than the application of a ligature at its upper part, where it is more superficial.

Ligature of the common femoral artery is usually considered unsafe, on account of the connection of large branches with it—viz., the deep epigastric and the deep circumflex iliac arising just above Poupart's ligament; on account of the number of small branches which arise from it in its short course; and on account of the uncertainty of the origin of the profunda femoris, which, if it arise high up, would be too close to the ligature for the formation of a firm coagulum. The profunda sometimes arises higher than the point above mentioned, and rarely between two or three inches (in one case four) below Poupart's ligament. It would appear, then, that the most favorable situation for the application of a ligature to the femoral is on the superficial femoral at the apex of Scarpa's triangle. In order to expose the artery in this situation, an incision between three and four inches long should be made in the course of the vessel, the patient lying in the recumbent position, with the limb slightly flexed and abducted, and rotated outward. A large vein is frequently met with, passing in the course of the artery to join the internal saphenous vein; this must be avoided, and the fascia lata having been cautiously divided and the Sartorius exposed, that muscle must be drawn outward in order to expose fully the sheath of the vessels. The finger being introduced into the wound and the pulsation of the artery felt, the sheath should be opened on the outer side of the vessel to a sufficient extent to allow of the

[1] Ligation of the femoral artery has been also recommended and performed for elephantiasis of the leg and acute inflammation of the knee-joint (Maunder, Clin. Soc. Trans., vol. ii. p. 37).—Ed. of 15th English edition.

introduction of the ligature, but no farther; otherwise the nutrition of the coats of the vessel may be interfered with, or muscular branches which arise from the vessel at irregular intervals may be divided. In this part of the operation the long saphenous nerve and the nerve to the Vastus internus, which is in close relation with the sheath, should be avoided. The aneurism needle must be carefully introduced and kept close to the artery, to avoid the femoral vein, which lies behind the vessel in this part of its course.

To expose the artery in Hunter's canal, an incision should be made between three and four inches in length, a finger's breadth internal to the line of the artery, in the middle of the thigh *i. e.*, midway between the groin and the knee. The integument is first divided. The fascia lata having been divided, and the outer border of the Sartorius muscle exposed, it should be drawn inward, when the strong fascia which is stretched across from the Adductors to the Vastus internus will be exposed, and must be freely divided; the sheath of the vessels is now seen, and must be opened, and the artery secured by passing the aneurism needle between the vein and artery in the direction from without inward. The femoral vein in this situation lies on the outer side of the artery and the long saphenous nerve on the anterior and outer side of the artery.

It has been seen that the femoral artery occasionally divides into two trunks below the origin of the profunda. If in the operation for tying the femoral two vessels are met with, the surgeon should alternately compress each, in order to ascertain which vessel is connected with the aneurismal tumor or with the bleeding from the wound, and that one only should be tied which controls the pulsation or hemorrhage. If, however, it is necessary to compress both vessels before the circulation in the tumor is controlled, both should be tied, as it would be probable that they became reunited, as in the instances referred to above.

In wounds of the femoral artery the question of the mode of treatment is of considerable importance. If the wound in the superficial structures is a large one, the injured vessel must be exposed and tied; but if the wound is a punctured one and the bleeding has ceased, the question will arise whether to cut down upon the artery or to trust to pressure. Mr. Cripps[1] advises that if the wound is in the "upper part of the thigh—that is to say, in a position where the femoral artery is comparatively superficial—the surgeon may enlarge the opening with a good prospect of finding the wounded vessel without an extensive or prolonged operation. If the wound be in the lower half of the thigh, owing to the greater depth of the artery and the possibility of its being the popliteal that is wounded, the search is rendered a far more severe and hazardous operation, and it should not be undertaken until a thorough trial of pressure has proved ineffectual."

Great care and attention are necessary for the successful application of pressure. The limb should be carefully bandaged from the foot upward to the wound, which is not covered, and then onward to the groin. The wound is then dusted with iodoform or boracic powder and a conical pad applied over the wound. Rollers the thickness of the index finger are then placed along the course of the vessel above and below the wound, and the whole carefully bandaged to a back splint with a foot-piece.

Collateral Circulation.—When the common femoral is tied the main channels for carrying on the circulation are the anastomoses of the gluteal and circumflex iliac arteries above with the external circumflex below; of the obturator and sciatic above with the internal circumflex below; and of the comes nervi ischiadici with the arteries in the ham.

The principal agents in carrying on the collateral circulation after ligature of the superficial femoral artery are, according to Sir A. Cooper, as follows:

"The arteria profunda formed the new channel for the blood. The first artery sent off passed down close to the back of the thigh-bone, and entered the two superior articular branches of the popliteal artery.

"The second new large vessel, arising from the profunda at the same part with the former, passed down by the inner side of the Biceps muscle to a branch of the popliteal which was distributed to the Gastrocnemius muscle; whilst a third artery, dividing into several branches, passed down with the sciatic nerve behind the knee-joint, and some of its branches united themselves with the inferior articular arteries of the popliteal, with some recurrent branches of those arteries, with arteries passing to the Gastrocnemii, and, lastly, with the origin of the anterior and posterior tibial arteries.

"It appears, then, that it is those branches of the profunda which accompany the sciatic nerve that are the principal supporters of the new circulation."[2]

In Porta's work[3] (tab. xii., xiii.) is a good representation of the collateral circulation after the ligature of the femoral artery. The patient had survived the operation three years. The lower part of the artery is at least as large as the upper; about two inches of the vessel appear to have been obliterated. The external and internal circumflex arteries are seen anastomosing by a great number of branches with the lower branches of the femoral (muscular and anasto-

[1] Heath's Dictionary of Practical Surgery, vol. i. p. 525.
[2] Med.-Chir. Trans., vol. ii., 1811.
[3] Alterazioni patologiche delle Arterie.

motica magna) and with the articular branches of the popliteal. The branches from the external circumflex are extremely large and numerous. One very distinct anastomosis can be traced between this artery on the outside and the anastomotica magna on the inside through the intervention of the superior external articular artery, with which they both anastomose; and blood reaches even the anterior tibial recurrent from the external circumflex by means of anastomosis with the same external articular artery. The perforating branches of the profunda are also seen bringing blood round the obliterated portion of the artery into long branches (muscular)

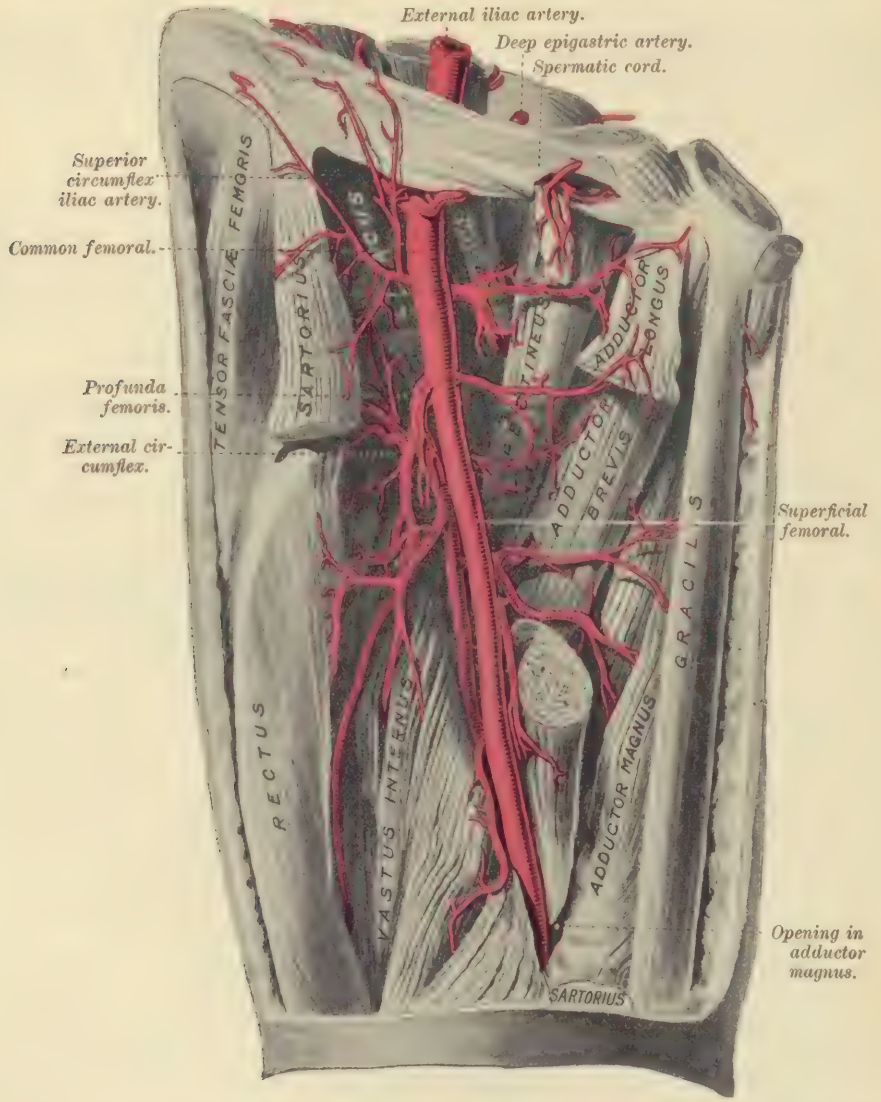


FIG. 432.—Femoral artery and its branches. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

which have been given off just below that portion. The termination of the profunda itself anastomoses most freely with the superior external articular. A long branch of anastomosis is also traced down from the internal iliac by means of the comes nervi ischiadici of the sciatic, which anastomoses on the popliteal nerves with branches from the popliteal and posterior tibial arteries. In this case the anastomosis had been too free, since the pulsation and growth of the aneurism recurred, and the patient died after ligature of the external iliac.

There is an interesting preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of a limb on which John Hunter had tied the femoral artery fifty years before the patient's death.

The whole of the superficial femoral and popliteal artery seems to have been obliterated. The anastomosis by means of the comes nervi ischiadici, which is shown in Porta's plate, is distinctly seen: the external circumflex and the termination of the profunda artery seem to have been the chief channels of anastomoses; but the injection has not been a very successful one.

Branches (Figs. 430, 431, and 432).—The branches of the femoral artery are—the

Superficial Epigastric.
Superficial Circumflex Iliac.
Superficial External Pudic.
Deep External Pudic.
Profunda Femoris { External Circumflex. Internal Circumflex. Three Perforating.
Muscular.
Anastomotica Magna.

The **Superficial Epigastric** (*a. epigastrica superficialis*) *arises* from the femoral about half an inch below Poupart's ligament, and, passing through the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, ascends on the abdomen, in the superficial fascia covering the External oblique muscle, nearly as high as the umbilicus. It distributes branches to the superficial inguinal glands, the superficial fascia, and the integument, anastomosing with branches of the deep epigastric.

The **Superficial Circumflex Iliac** (*a. circumflexa ilium superficialis*), the smallest of the cutaneous branches, *arises* close to the preceding, and, piercing the fascia lata, runs outward, parallel with Poupart's ligament, as far as the crest of the ilium, dividing into branches which supply the integument of the groin, the superficial fascia, and the superficial inguinal lymphatic glands, anastomosing with the deep circumflex iliac and with the gluteal and external circumflex arteries.

The **Superficial External Pudic** or the **Superior Superficial External Pudic** (*a. pudenda externa superficialis*) *arises* from the inner side of the femoral artery, close to the preceding vessels, and, after passing through the saphenous opening, courses inward, across the spermatic cord or round ligament, to be distributed to the integument on the lower part of the abdomen, the penis and scrotum in the male, and the labium in the female, anastomosing with branches of the internal pudic.

The **Deep External Pudic** or the **Deep Superficial External Pudic** (*a. pudenda externa profunda*), more deeply seated than the preceding, passes inward across the Pectineus and Adductor longus muscles, covered by the fascia lata, which it pierces at the inner border of the thigh, its branches being distributed, in the male, to the integument of the scrotum and perineum; and in the female to the labium, anastomosing with branches of the superficial perineal artery.

The **Deep Femoral** or the **Profunda Femoris** (*a. profunda femoris*) (Figs. 430, 431, and 432) nearly equals the size of the superficial femoral. It *arises* from the outer and back part of the femoral artery, from one to two inches below Poupart's ligament. It at first lies on the outer side of the superficial femoral, and then passes behind it and the femoral vein to the inner side of the femur, and, passing downward beneath the Adductor longus, terminates at the lower third of the thigh in a small branch which pierces the Adductor magnus (and from this circumstance is sometimes called the **fourth perforating artery**), and is distributed to the flexor muscles on the back of the thigh, anastomosing with branches of the popliteal and inferior perforating arteries.

Relations.—*Behind*, it lies first upon the Iliacus, and then on the Pectineus, Adductor brevis, and Adductor magnus muscles. *In front*, it is separated from the superficial femoral artery, above by the femoral and profunda veins, and below by the Adductor longus. On its *outer side* the origin of the Vastus internus separates it from the femur.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE PROFUNDA ARTERY.

In front.
Superficial femoral artery.
Femoral and profunda veins.
Adductor longus.

Outer side.
Vastus internus.

Profunda Femoris.

Behind.
Iliacus.
Pectineus.
Adductor brevis.
Adductor magnus.

Branches.—The profunda gives off the following named branches:

Muscular.	Internal circumflex.
External circumflex.	Four perforating.

Muscular Branches are given off in Scarpa's triangle, and also from the vessel as it lies between the Adductor muscles.

The **External Circumflex Artery** (*a. circumflexa femoris lateralis*) supplies the muscles on the front of the thigh. It *arises* from the outer side of the profunda, passes horizontally outward, between the divisions of the anterior crural nerve and behind the Sartorius and Rectus muscles, and divides into three sets of **branches—ascending, transverse,** and **descending.**

The **ascending branch** (*ramus ascendens*) passes upward, beneath the Tensor fasciæ femoris muscle, to the outer side of the hip, anastomosing with the terminal branches of the gluteal and deep circumflex iliac arteries. It sends out muscular branches. The **descending branch** (*ramus descendens*) passes downward, behind the Rectus, upon the Vasti muscles, to which its branches are distributed, one or two passing beneath the Vastus externus as far as the knee, anastomosing with the superior articular branches of the popliteal artery. These are accompanied by the branch of the anterior crural nerve to the Vastus externus. The **transverse branch,** the smallest, passes outward over the Crureus, pierces the Vastus externus, and winds round the femur to its back part, just below the great trochanter, anastomosing at the back of the thigh with the internal circumflex, sciatic, and superior perforating arteries.

The **Internal Circumflex Artery** (*a. circumflexa femoris medialis*), smaller than the external, *arises* from the inner and back part of the profunda, and winds round the inner side of the femur, between the Pectineus and Psoas muscles. On reaching the upper border of the Adductor brevis it gives off two **muscular branches,** one of which passes inward to be distributed to the Adductor muscles, the Gracilis, and Obturator externus, anastomosing with the obturator artery; the other descends, and passes beneath the Adductor brevis, to supply it and the great Adductor; while the continuation of the vessel passes backward and divides into an ascending and a transverse branch (Fig. 348). The **ascending branch** (*ramus profundus*) passes obliquely upward upon the tendon of the Obturator externus and under cover of the Quadratus femoris toward the digital fossa, where it anastomoses with twigs from the gluteal and sciatic arteries. The **transverse branch** (*ramus superficialis*), larger than the ascending, appears between the Quadratus femoris and upper border of the Adductor magnus, anastomosing with the sciatic, external circumflex, and superior perforating arteries, the **crucial anas-**

tomosis. Opposite the hip-joint the artery gives off an **articular vessel** (*ramus acetabuli*), which enters the joint beneath the transverse ligament; and, after supplying the adipose tissue, passes along the round ligament to the head of the bone.

The **Perforating Arteries** (Figs. 429, 430, and 431), usually three in number, are so called from their perforating the tendon of the Adductor magnus muscle to

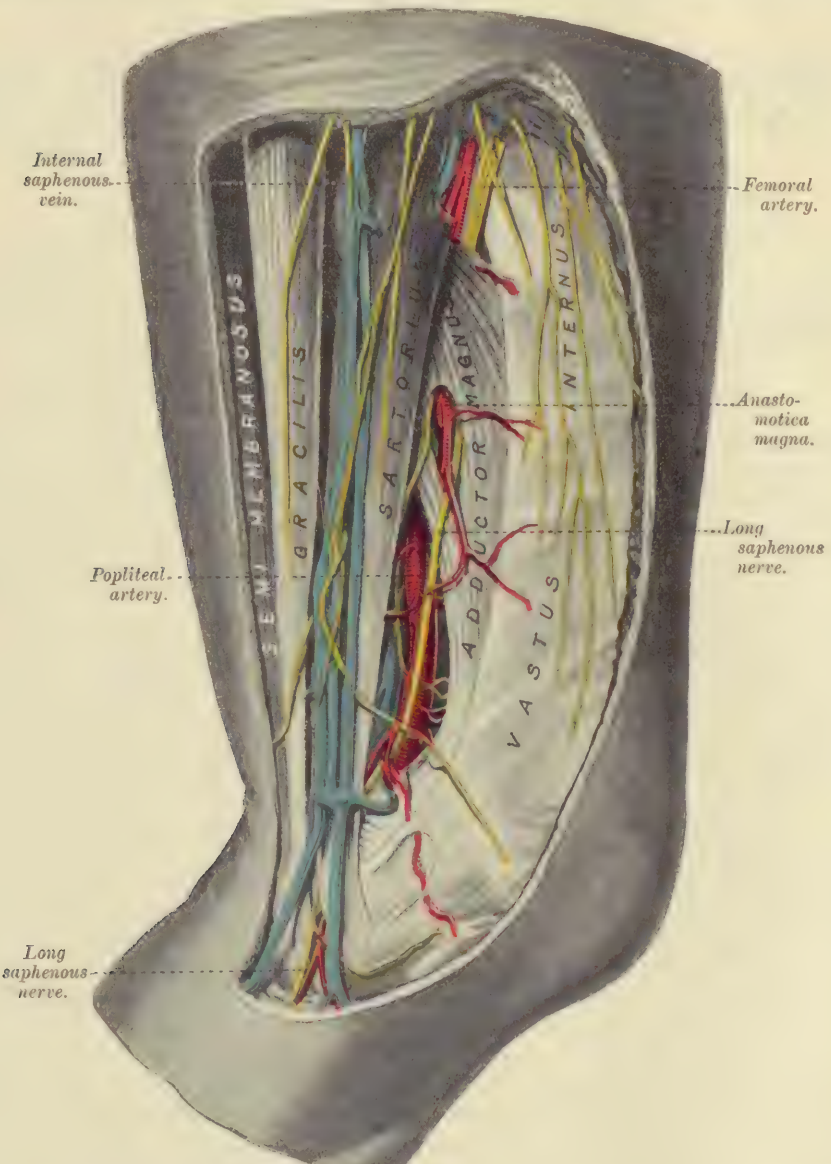


FIG. 433.—Side view of the popliteal artery. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

reach the back of the thigh. They pass backward close to the linea aspera of the femur, under cover of small tendinous arches in the Adductor magnus. The **first** is given off above the Adductor brevis, the **second** in front of that muscle, and the **third** immediately below it.

The **first perforating artery** (*a. perforans prima*) passes backward between the Pectineus and Adductor brevis (sometimes perforates the latter); it then pierces

the Adductor magnus close to the linea aspera. It gives off branches which supply the Adductor brevis, the Adductor magnus, the Biceps, and Gluteus maximus muscles, and anastomoses with the sciatic, internal and external circumflex, and middle perforating arteries. The **second perforating artery** (*a. perforans secunda*), larger than the first, pierces the tendons of the Adductor brevis and Adductor magnus muscles, and divides into ascending and descending branches, which supply the flexor muscles of the thigh, anastomosing with the first and third perforating arteries. The second artery frequently arises in common with the first. The **nutrient artery of the femur** is usually given off from this branch. The **third perforating artery** (*a. perforans tertia*) is given off below the Adductor brevis; it pierces the Adductor magnus, and divides into branches which supply the flexor muscles of the thigh; anastomosing above with the higher perforating arteries, and below with the terminal branches of the profunda and the muscular branches of the popliteal. A **fourth perforating artery** is represented by the termination of the profunda femoris artery.

The nutritive artery of the femur (*a. nutricia femoris*), if single, comes from the second perforating artery; if double, from the first and third perforating arteries. If double, one vessel is called **superior** and the other **inferior.**

Muscular Branches (*rami musculares*) are given off from the superficial femoral throughout its entire course. They vary from two to seven in number, and supply chiefly the Sartorius and Vastus internus.

The **Anastomotica Magna** (*a. genu suprema*) (Figs. 430, 431, and 433) arises from the femoral artery just before it passes through the tendinous opening in the Adductor magnus muscle, and immediately divides into a **superficial** and **deep branch.**

The **Superficial Branch** (*ramus saphenous*) pierces the aponeurotic covering of Hunter's canal, and accompanies the long saphenous nerve to the inner side of the thigh. It passes between the Sartorius and Gracilis muscles, and, piercing the fascia lata, is distributed to the integument of the upper and inner part of the leg, anastomosing with the inferior internal articular artery.

The **Deep Branch** (*ramus musculoarticularis*) descends in the substance of the Vastus internus, lying in front of the tendon of the Adductor magnus, to the inner side of the knee, where it anastomoses with the superior internal articular artery and the anterior recurrent branch of the anterior tibial. A branch from this vessel crosses outward above the articular surface of the femur, forming an anastomotic arch with the superior external articular artery, and supplies branches to the knee-joint.

THE POPLITEAL ARTERY (A. POPLITEA) (Figs. 429, 430, 433).

The popliteal artery commences at the termination of the femoral at the opening in the Adductor magnus, and, passing obliquely downward and outward behind the knee-joint to the lower border of the Popliteus muscle divides into the **anterior** and **posterior tibial arteries.** A portion of the artery lies in the popliteal space; but above and below, to a considerable extent, it is covered by the muscles which form the boundaries of the space, and is therefore beyond the confines of the hollow.

The Popliteal Space (Fig. 434).

Dissection. A vertical incision about eight inches in length should be made along the back part of the knee-joint, connected above and below by a transverse incision from the inner to the outer side of the limb. The flaps of integument included between these incisions should be reflected in the direction shown in Fig. 345, page 522.

Boundaries.—The popliteal space, or the **ham,** is a lozenge-shaped space, widest at the back part of the knee-joint, and deepest above the articular end of

the femur. It is bounded *externally, above the joint*, by the Biceps, and below the joint by the Plantaris and external head of the Gastrocnemius. *Internally, above the joint*, by the Semimembranosus, Semitendinosus, Gracilis, and Sartorius; below the joint, by the inner head of the Gastrocnemius.

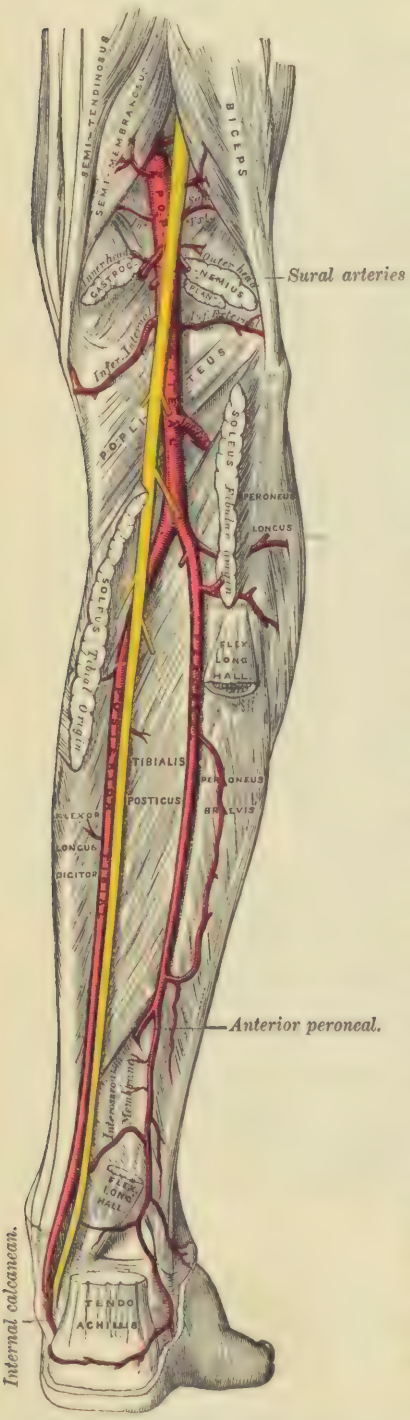


FIG. 434.—The popliteal, posterior tibial, and peroneal arteries.

Above, it is limited by the apposition of the inner and outer hamstring muscles; *below*, by the junction of the two heads of the Gastrocnemius. The floor is formed by the lower part of the posterior surface of the shaft of the femur, the posterior ligament of the knee-joint, the upper end of the tibia, and the fascia covering the Popliteus muscle, and the space is covered in by the fascia lata.

Contents.—It contains the popliteal vessels and their branches, together with the termination of the external saphenous vein, the internal and external popliteal nerves and some of their branches, the lower extremity of the small sciatic nerve, the articular branch from the obturator nerve, a few small lymphatic glands, and a considerable quantity of loose adipose tissue.

Position of Contained Parts.—The internal popliteal nerve descends in the middle line of the space lying superficial and crossing the artery from without inward. The external popliteal nerve descends on the outer side of the upper part of the space, lying close to the tendon of the Biceps muscle. More deeply at the bottom of the space are the popliteal vessels, the vein lying superficial to the artery, to which it is closely united by dense areolar tissue; it is a thick-walled vessel, and lies at first to the outer side of the artery, and then crosses it to gain the inner side below; sometimes the vein is double, the artery lying between the two venæ comites, which are usually connected by short transverse branches. More deeply and, at its upper part, close to the surface of the bone is the popliteal artery, and passing off from it at right angles are its articular branches. The articular branch from the obturator nerve descends upon the popliteal artery to supply the knee, and occasionally there is found deep in the space an articular filament from the great sciatic nerve.

The popliteal lymphatic glands, four or five in number, are found surrounding the artery; one usually lies superficial to the vessel; another is situated between it and the bone, and the rest are placed on either side of it.

The **Popliteal Artery**, in its course downward from the aperture in the Adductor magnus to the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, rests first on the inner surface of the femur, and is then separated by a little fat from the hollowed popliteal surface of the bone; in the middle of its course it rests on the posterior ligament of the knee-joint, and below on the fascia covering the Popliteus muscle. *Superficially*, it is covered above by the Semimembranosus; in the middle of its course, by a quantity of fat, which separates it from the deep fascia and integument; and below it is overlapped by the Gastrocnemius, Plantaris, and Soleus muscles, the popliteal vein, and the internal popliteal nerve. The popliteal vein, which is intimately attached to the artery, lies superficial and external to it above; it then crosses it and lies to its inner side. The internal popliteal nerve is still more superficial and external above, but below the joint it crosses the artery and lies on its inner side. *Laterally*, the artery is bounded by the muscles which are situated on either side of the popliteal space.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE POPLITEAL ARTERY.

In front.
Femur.
Ligamentum posticum.
Popliteus.

Inner side
Semimembranosus.
Internal condyle.
Gastrocnemius (inner head).

Outer side.
Biceps.
Outer condyle.
Gastrocnemius (outer head).
Plantaris.

Behind.
Semimembranosus.
Fascia.
Popliteal vein.
Internal popliteal nerve.
Gastrocnemius.
Plantaris.
Soleus.

Peculiarities in Point of Division.—Occasionally the popliteal artery divides prematurely into its terminal branches: this unusual division occurs most frequently opposite the knee-joint. The anterior tibial under these circumstances may pass in front of the Popliteus muscle.

Unusual Branches.—The artery sometimes divides into the anterior tibial and peroneal, the posterior tibial being wanting or very small. Occasionally the popliteal is found to divide into three branches, the anterior and posterior tibial and peroneal.

Surface Marking.—The course of the upper part of the popliteal artery is indicated by a line drawn from the outer border of the Semimembranosus muscle at the junction of the middle and lower third of the thigh obliquely downward to the middle of the popliteal space, exactly behind the knee-joint. From this point it passes vertically downward to the level of a line drawn through the lower part of the tubercle of the tibia.

Surgical Anatomy.—The popliteal artery is not infrequently the seat of injury. It may be torn by direct violence, as by the passage of a cart-wheel over the knee or by hyper-extension of the knee; and in the dead body, at all events, the middle and internal coats may be ruptured by extreme flexion. It may also be lacerated by fracture of the lower part of the shaft of the femur or by antero-posterior dislocation of the knee-joint. It has been torn in breaking down adhesions in cases of fibrous ankylosis of the knee, and is in danger of being wounded, and in fact has been wounded, in performing Macewen's operation of osteotomy of the lower end of the femur for genu valgum. In addition, Spencer records a case in which the popliteal artery was wounded from in front by a stab just below the knee, the knife passing through the interosseous space. The popliteal artery is more frequently the seat of aneurism than is any other artery in the body, with the exception of the thoracic aorta. This is due no doubt, in a great measure, to the amount of movement to which it is subjected, and to the fact that it is supported by loose and lax tissue only, and not by muscles, as is the case with most arteries.

Ligature of the popliteal artery is required in cases of wound of that vessel, but for aneurism of the posterior tibial it is preferable to tie the superficial femoral. The popliteal may be tied in the upper or lower part of its course; but in the middle of the ham the operation is attended

with considerable difficulty, from the great depth of the artery and from the extreme degree of tension of the lateral boundaries of the space.

In order to expose the vessel in the upper part of its course, the patient should be placed in the supine position, with the knee flexed and the thigh rotated outward, so that it rests on its outer surface; an incision three inches in length, beginning at the junction of the middle and lower third of the thigh, is to be made parallel to and immediately behind the tendon of the Adductor magnus, and the skin, superficial and deep fascia divided. The tendon of the muscle is thus exposed, and is to be drawn forward and the hamstring tendons backward. A quantity of fatty tissue will now be opened up, in which the artery will be felt pulsating. This is to be separated with the point of a director until the artery is exposed. The vein and nerve will not be seen, as they lie to the outer side of the artery. The sheath is to be opened and the aneurism needle passed from before backward, keeping its point close to the artery for fear of injuring the vein. The only structure to avoid is the long saphenous vein in the superficial incision. The upper part of the popliteal artery may also be tied by an incision on the back of the limb, along the outer margin of the Semimembranosus, but the operation is a more difficult one, as the internal popliteal nerve and the popliteal vein are first exposed, and great care has to be exercised in separating them from the artery.

To expose the vessel in the lower part of its course, where the artery lies between the two heads of the Gastrocnemius, the patient should be placed in the prone position with the limb extended. An incision should then be made through the integument in the middle line, commencing opposite the bend of the knee-joint, care being taken to avoid the external saphenous vein and nerve. After dividing the deep fascia and separating some dense cellular membrane, the artery, vein, and nerve will be exposed, descending between the two heads of the Gastrocnemius. Some muscular branches of the popliteal should be avoided if possible, or, if divided, tied immediately. The leg being now flexed, in order the more effectually to separate the two heads of the Gastrocnemius, the nerve should be drawn inward and the vein outward, and the aneurism needle passed between the artery and vein from without inward.

Branches.—The branches of the popliteal artery are—the

Muscular { Superior. Inferior or Sural.	Superior External Articular.
Cutaneous.	Azygos Articular.
Superior Internal Articular.	Inferior Internal Articular.
	Inferior External Articular.

The **Superior Muscular Branches,** two or three in number, *arise* from the upper part of the popliteal artery, and are distributed to the lower part of the Adductor magnus and flexor muscles of the thigh, anastomosing with the fourth perforating branch of the profunda.

The **Inferior Muscular** (*aa. surales*) are two large branches which are distributed to the two heads of the Gastrocnemius and to the Plantaris muscle. They *arise* from the popliteal artery opposite the knee-joint.

The **Cutaneous Branches** *arise* separately from the popliteal artery or from some of its branches; they descend between the two heads of the Gastrocnemius muscle, and, piercing the deep fascia, are distributed to the integument of the calf. One branch usually accompanies the short, or external, saphenous vein, the **superficial sural artery.**

The **Superior Articular Arteries,** two in number, *arise* one on each side of the popliteal, and wind round the femur immediately above its condyles to the front of the knee-joint. The **internal branch** (*a. genu superior medialis*) winds inward beneath the hamstring muscles, to which it supplies branches, above the inner head of the Gastrocnemius, and, passing beneath the tendon of the Adductor magnus, divides into two branches, one of which supplies the Vastus internus, inosculating with the anastomotica magna and inferior internal articular; the other ramifies close to the surface of the femur, supplying it and the knee-joint, and anastomosing with the superior external articular artery. This branch is frequently of small size, a condition which is associated with an increase in the size of the anastomotica magna. The **external branch** (*a. genu superior lateralis*) passes above the outer condyle, beneath the tendon of the Biceps, and divides into a superficial and deep branch: the superficial branch supplies the Vastus externus, and anasto-

moses with the descending branch of the external circumflex and the inferior external articular arteries; the deep branch supplies the lower part of the femur and knee-joint, and forms an anastomotic arch across the bone with the anastomotica magna and the inferior internal articular arteries.

The **Azygos Articular** (*a. genu media*) is a small branch arising from the popliteal artery opposite the bend of the knee-joint. It pierces the posterior ligament, and supplies the ligaments and synovial membrane in the interior of the articulation.

The **Inferior Articular Arteries,** two in number, *arise* from the popliteal beneath the Gastrocnemius, and wind round the head of the tibia below the joint. The **internal branch** (*a. genu inferior medialis*) first descends along the upper margin of the Popliteus muscle, to which it gives branches; it then passes below the inner tuberosity, beneath the internal lateral ligament, at the anterior border of which it ascends to the front and inner side of the joint, to supply the head of the tibia and the articulation of the knee, anastomosing with the inferior external articular and superior internal articular arteries. The **external branch** (*a. genu inferior lateralis*) passes outward above the head of the fibula, to the front of the knee-joint, passing in its course beneath the outer head of the Gastrocnemius, the external lateral ligament, and the tendon of the Biceps muscle, and divides into branches which anastomose with the inferior internal articular artery, the superior external articular artery, and the anterior recurrent branch of the anterior tibial.

Circumpatellar Anastomosis.—Around and above the patella, and on the contiguous ends of the femur and tibia, is a large network of vessels, forming a superficial and a deep plexus. The superficial plexus is situated between the fascia and skin round about the patella; the deep plexus, which forms a close network of vessels, lies on the surface of the lower end of the femur and upper end of the tibia around their articular surfaces, and sends numerous offsets into the interior of the joint. The arteries from which this plexus is formed are the two internal and two external articular branches of the popliteal, the anastomotica magna, the terminal branch of the profunda, the descending branch from the external circumflex and the anterior recurrent branch of the anterior tibial.

The Anterior Tibial Artery (A. Tibialis Anterior) (Fig. 435).

The anterior tibial artery commences at the bifurcation of the popliteal at the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, passes forward between the two heads of the Tibialis posticus, and through the large oval aperture above the upper border of the interosseous membrane to the deep part of the front of the leg; it here lies close to the inner side of the neck of the fibula; it then descends on the anterior surface of the interosseous membrane, gradually approaching the tibia; and at the lower part of the leg lies on this bone, and then on the anterior ligament of the ankle to the bend of the ankle-joint, where it lies more superficially, and becomes the **dorsalis pedis.**

Relations.—In the upper two-thirds of its extent it rests upon the interosseous membrane, to which it is connected by delicate fibrous arches thrown across it; in the lower third, upon the front of the tibia and the anterior ligament of the ankle-joint. In the upper third of its course it lies between the Tibialis anticus and Extensor longus digitorum; in the middle third, between the Tibialis anticus and Extensor proprius hallucis. At the bend of the ankle it is crossed by the tendon of the Extensor proprius hallucis, and lies between it and the innermost tendon of the Extensor longus digitorum. It is covered, in the upper two-thirds of its course, by the muscles which lie on either side of it and by the deep fascia ; in the lower third, by the integument, anterior annular ligament, and fascia.

The anterior tibial artery is accompanied by two veins, **venæ comites,** which lie one on each side of the artery; the anterior tibial nerve, coursing round the outer side of the neck of the fibula, comes into relation with the outer side of the artery shortly after it has passed through the opening in the interosseous membrane; about the middle of the leg it is placed superficial to it; at the lower part of the artery the nerve is generally again on the outer side.

Plan of the Relations of the Anterior Tibial Artery.

In front.

Integument, superficial and deep fasciæ.
Anterior tibial nerve.
Tibialis anticus (overlaps it in the upper part of the leg).
Extensor longus digitorum, Extensor proprius hallucis } (overlap it slightly).
Anterior annular ligament.

Inner side.
Tibialis anticus.
Extensor proprius hallucis (crosses it at its lower part).

Outer side.
Anterior tibial nerve.
Extensor longus digitorum.
Extensor proprius hallucis.

Behind.

Interosseous membrane.
Tibia.
Anterior ligament of ankle-joint.

Peculiarities in Size.—This vessel may be very small, may be deficient to a greater or less extent, or may be entirely wanting, its place being supplied by perforating branches from the posterior tibial or by the anterior division of the peroneal artery.

Course.—The artery occasionally deviates in its course toward the fibular side of the leg, regaining its usual position beneath the annular ligament at the front of the ankle. In two instances the vessel has been found to approach the surface in the middle of the leg, being covered merely by the integument and fascia below that point.

Surface Marking.—Draw a line from the inner side of the head of the fibula to midway between the two malleoli. In this line take a point one inch and a quarter below the head of the fibula, and the portion of the line below this point will mark the course of the artery.

Surgical Anatomy.—The anterior tibial artery may be tied in the upper or lower part of the leg. In the upper part the operation is attended with great difficulty, on account of the depth of the vessel from the surface. An incision, about four inches in length, should be made through the integument, midway between the spine of the tibia and the outer margin of the fibula, and the deep fascia exposed. The wound must now be carefully dried, its edges retracted, and the white line separating the Tibialis anticus from the Extensor longus digitorum sought for. When this has been clearly defined, the deep fascia is to be divided in this line, and the Tibialis anticus separated from adjacent muscles with the handle of the scalpel or a director until the interosseous membrane is reached. The foot is to be flexed in order to relax the muscles, and upon drawing them apart the artery will be found lying on the interosseous membrane with the nerve on its outer side or on the top of the artery. The nerve should be drawn outward, and the venæ comites separated from the artery and the needle passed round it.

To tie the vessel in the lower third of the leg above the ankle-joint an incision about three inches in length should be made through the integument between the tendons of the Tibialis anticus and Extensor proprius hallucis muscles, the deep fascia being divided to the same extent. The tendon on either side should be held aside, when the vessel will be seen lying upon the tibia, with the nerve on the outer side and one of the venæ comites on either side.

Branches.—The branches of the anterior tibial artery are—the

Posterior Recurrent Tibial.	Muscular.
Superior Fibular.	Internal Malleolar.
Anterior Recurrent Tibial.	External Malleolar.

The **Posterior Recurrent Tibial** (*a. recurrens tibialis posterior*) is not a constant branch, and is given off from the anterior tibial before that vessel passes through the interosseous space. It ascends beneath the Popliteus muscle, which it supplies, and anastomoses with the lower articular branches of the popliteal artery, giving off an offset to the superior tibio-fibular joint.

The **Superior Fibular** is sometimes given off from the anterior tibial, sometimes from the posterior tibial. It passes outward, round the neck of the fibula, through the Soleus, which it supplies, and ends in the substance of the Peroneus longus muscle.

The **Anterior Recurrent Tibial** (*a. recurrens tibialis anterior*) *arises* from the anterior tibial as soon as that vessel has passed through the interosseous space; it ascends in the Tibialis anticus muscle, and ramifies on the front and sides of the knee-joint, anastomosing with the articular branches of the popliteal, with the anastomotica magna, and the external articular branches of the popliteal, assisting in the formation of the circumpatellar plexus.

The **Muscular Branches** are numerous; they are distributed to the muscles which lie on each side of the vessel, some **cutaneous branches** piercing the deep fascia to supply the integument, others passing through the interosseous membrane, and anastomosing with branches of the posterior tibial and peroneal arteries.

The **Malleolar Arteries** supply the ankle-joint. The **internal branch** (*a. malleolaris anterior medialis*) *arises* about two inches above the articulation, and passes beneath the tendons of the Extensor proprius hallucis and Tibialis anticus to the inner ankle, upon which it ramifies, anastomosing with branches of the posterior tibial and internal plantar arteries and with the internal calcanean from the posterior tibial. The **external branch** (*a. malleolaris anterior lateralis*) passes beneath the tendons of the Extensor longus digitorum and Peroneus

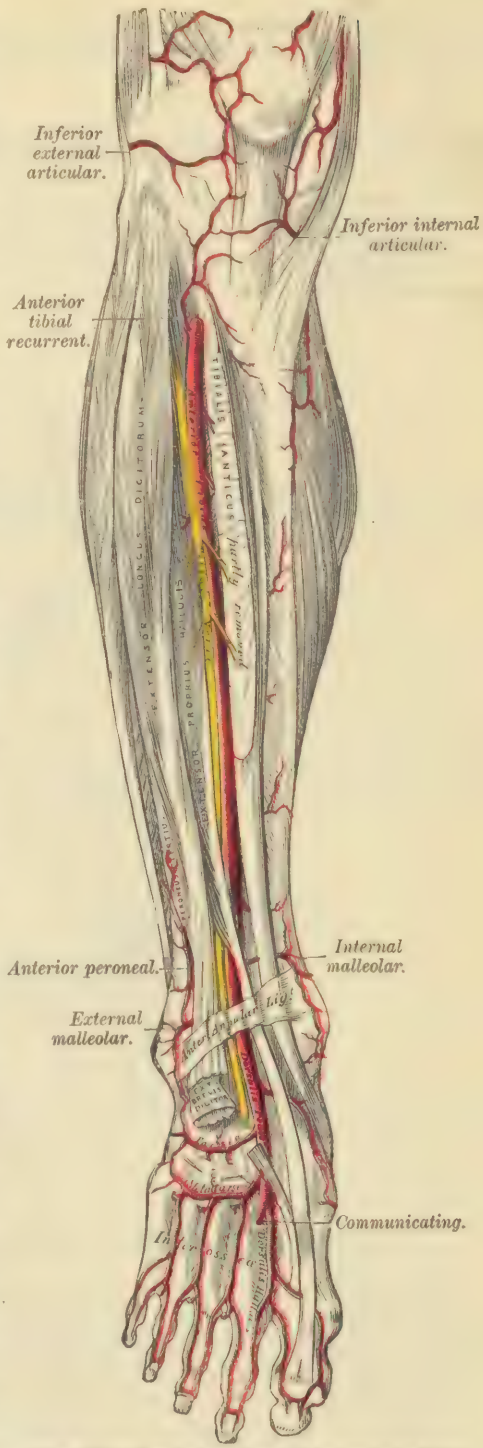


FIG. 435. Surgical anatomy of the anterior tibial and dorsalis pedis arteries.

tertius, and supplies the outer ankle, anastomosing with the anterior peroneal artery and with ascending branches from the tarsal branch of the dorsalis pedis.

The Dorsalis Pedis Artery (A. Dorsalis Pedis) (Figs. 435, 436).

The dorsalis pedis, the continuation of the anterior tibial, passes forward from the bend of the ankle along the tibial side of the foot to the back part of the first intermetatarsal space, where it divides into two branches, the **dorsalis hallucis** and **communicating.**

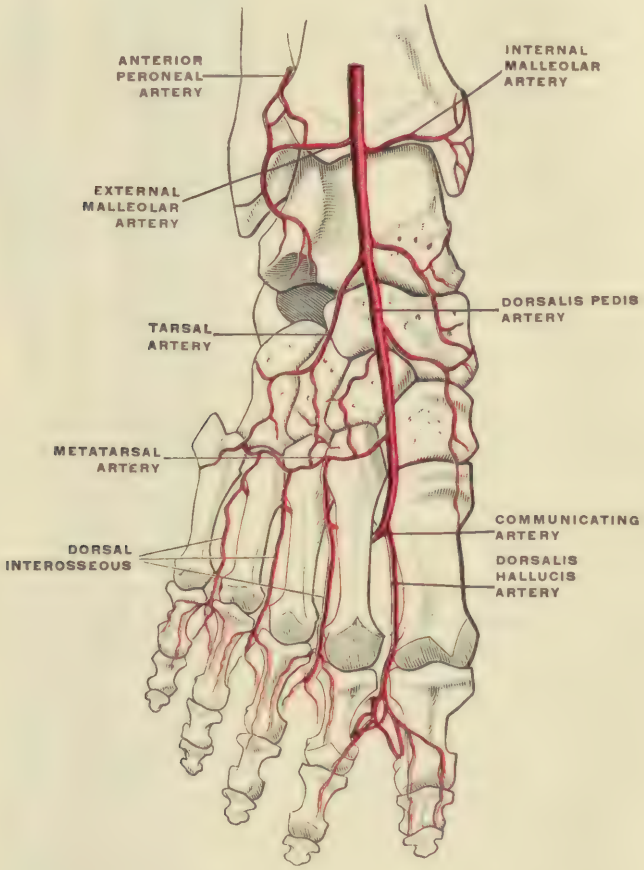


FIG. 436.—Diagram of the arteries of the dorsal surface of the foot. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Relations.—This vessel, in its course forward, rests upon the astragalus, navicular, and middle cuneiform bones and the ligaments connecting them, being covered by the integument and fascia, anterior annular ligament, and crossed near its termination by the innermost tendon of the Extensor brevis digitorum. On its *tibial side* is the tendon of the Extensor proprius hallucis; on its *fibular side*, the innermost tendon of the Extensor longus digitorum, and the termination of the anterior tibial nerve. It is accompanied by two veins.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE DORSALIS PEDIS ARTERY.

In front.
Integument and fascia.
Anterior annular ligament.
Innermost tendon of Extensor brevis digitorum.

Tibial side.
Extensor proprius hallucis.

Fibular side.
Extensor longus digitorum.
Anterior tibial nerve.

Behind.
Astragalus.
Navicular.
Middle cuneiform.
And their ligaments.

Peculiarities in Size.—The dorsal artery of the foot may be larger than usual, to compensate for a deficient plantar artery; or it may be deficient in its terminal branches to the toes, which are then derived from the internal plantar; or its place may be supplied altogether by a large anterior peroneal artery.

Position. This artery frequently curves outward, lying external to the line between the middle of the ankle and the back part of the first interosseous space.

Surface Marking.—The dorsalis pedis artery is indicated on the surface of the dorsum of the foot by a line drawn from the centre of the space between the two malleoli to the back of the first intermetatarsal space.

Surgical Anatomy. This artery may be tied, by making an incision through the integument between two and three inches in length, on the fibular side of the tendon of the Extensor proprius hallucis, in the interval between it and the inner border of the short Extensor muscle. The incision should not extend farther forward than the back part of the first intermetatarsal space, as the artery divides in that situation. The deep fascia being divided to the same extent, the artery will be exposed, the nerve lying upon its outer side.

Branches.—The branches of the dorsalis pedis are—the

Cutaneous.	Metatarsal—Interosseous.
Tarsal.	Dorsalis Hallucis.
Communicating.	

Cutaneous Branches go to the skin of the dorsum and inner surface of the foot.

The **Tarsal Artery** (*a. tarsea lateralis*) *arises* from the dorsalis pedis, as that vessel crosses the navicular bone; it passes in an arched direction outward, lying upon the tarsal bones, and covered by the Extensor brevis digitorum; it supplies that muscle and the articulations of the tarsus, and anastomoses with branches from the metatarsal, external malleolar, peroneal, and external plantar arteries.

The **Metatarsal** (*a. arcuata*) *arises* a little anterior to the preceding; it passes outward to the outer part of the foot, over the bases of the metatarsal bones, beneath the tendons of the short Extensor, its direction being influenced by its point of origin; and it anastomoses with the tarsal and external plantar arteries. This vessel gives off three branches, the **dorsal interosseous arteries** (*aa. metatarseæ dorsales*), which pass forward upon the three outer Dorsal interossei muscles, and, in the clefts between the toes, divide into two dorsal collateral branches for the adjoining toes (*aa. digitales dorsales*). At the back part of each interosseous space these vessels receive the posterior perforating branches from the plantar arch, and at the forepart of each interosseous space they are joined by the anterior perforating branches from the digital arteries. The outermost interosseous artery gives off a branch which supplies the outer side of the little toe.

The **Dorsalis Hallucis** or the **First Dorsal Interosseous** (*a. dorsalis hallucis*) is one of the terminal branches of the dorsalis pedis. It runs forward along the outer border of the first metatarsal bone, and at the cleft between the first and second toes divides into two branches, one of which passes inward, beneath the tendon of the Extensor proprius hallucis, and is distributed to the inner border of the great toe; the outer branch bifurcates, to supply the adjoining sides of the great and second toes.

The **Communicating Artery** (*ramus plantaris profundus*), the other terminal branch of the dorsalis pedis, dips down into the sole of the foot, between the two heads of the First dorsal interosseous muscle, and inosculates with the termination of the external plantar artery, to complete the plantar arch. It here gives off its plantar digital branch, which is named the *arteria magna hallucis*, or the **princeps hallucis**. This artery passes forward along the first interosseous space, and, after sending a branch along the inner side of the great toe, bifurcates for the supply of the adjacent sides of the great and second toes.

The Posterior Tibial Artery (A. Tibialis Posterior) (Fig. 434).

The posterior tibial is an artery of large size, which extends obliquely downward from the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, along the tibial side of the leg, to the fossa between the inner ankle and the heel, where it divides beneath the origin of the Abductor hallucis, on a level with a line drawn from the point of the internal malleolus to the centre of the convexity of the heel, into the **internal** and **external plantar arteries**. At its origin it lies opposite the interval between the tibia and fibula; as it descends, it approaches the inner side of the leg, lying behind the tibia, and, in the lower part of its course, is situated midway between the inner malleolus and the tuberosity of the os calcis.

Relations.—It lies successively upon the Tibialis posticus, the Flexor longus digitorum, the tibia, and the back part of the ankle-joint. It is *covered* by the deep transverse fascia, which separates it above from the Gastrocnemius and Soleus muscles: at its termination it is covered by the Abductor hallucis muscle. In the lower third, where it is more superficial, it is covered only by the integument and fascia, and runs parallel with the inner border of the tendo Achillis. It is accompanied by two veins and by the posterior tibial nerve, which lies at first to the inner side of the artery, but soon crosses it, and is, in the greater part of its course, on its outer side.

Plan of the Relations of the Posterior Tibial Artery.

In front.
Tibialis posticus.
Flexor longus digitorum.
Tibia.
Ankle-joint.

Inner side.
Posterior tibial nerve, upper third.

Outer side.
Posterior tibial nerve, lower two-thirds.

Behind.
Integument and fascia.
Gastrocnemius.
Soleus.
Deep transverse fascia.
Posterior tibial nerve.
Abductor hallucis.

Behind the inner ankle the tendons and blood-vessels are arranged, under cover of the internal annular ligament, in the following order, from within out-

ward: First, the tendons of the Tibialis posticus and Flexor longus digitorum, lying in the same groove, behind the inner malleolus, the former being the most internal. External to these is the posterior tibial artery, having a vein on either side: and, still more externally, the posterior tibial nerve. About half an inch nearer the heel is the tendon of the Flexor longus hallucis.

Peculiarities in Size.—The posterior tibial is not unfrequently smaller than usual, or absent, its place being supplied by a large peroneal artery which passes inward at the lower end of the tibia, and either joins the small tibial artery or continues alone to the sole of the foot.

Surface Marking.—The course of the posterior tibial artery is indicated by a line drawn from a point one inch below the centre of the popliteal space to midway between the tip of the internal malleolus and the centre of the convexity of the heel.

Surgical Anatomy.—The *application of a ligature* to the posterior tibial may be required in cases of wound of the sole of the foot attended with great hemorrhage, when the vessel should be tied at the inner ankle. In cases of wound of the posterior tibial it will be necessary to enlarge the opening so as to expose the vessel at the wounded point, excepting where the vessel is injured by a punctured wound from the front of the leg. In cases of aneurism from wound of the artery low down, the vessel should be tied in the middle of the leg. But in aneurism of the posterior tibial high up it would be better to tie the femoral artery.

To tie the posterior tibial artery at the ankle, a semilunar incision, convex backward, should be made through the integument, about two inches and a half in length, midway between the heel and the inner ankle or a little nearer the latter. The subcutaneous cellular tissue having been divided, a strong and dense fascia, the internal annular ligament, is exposed. This ligament is continuous above with the deep fascia of the leg, covers the vessels and nerves, and is intimately adherent to the sheaths of the tendons. This having been cautiously divided upon a director, the sheath of the vessels is exposed, and, being opened, the artery is seen with one of the venæ comites on each side. The aneurism needle should be passed round the vessel from the heel toward the ankle, in order to avoid the posterior tibial nerve, care being at the same time taken not to include the venæ comites.

The vessel may also be tied in the lower third of the leg by making an incision, about three inches in length, parallel with the inner margin of the tendo Achillis. The internal saphenous vein being carefully avoided, the lwo layers of fascia must be divided upon a director, when the artery is exposed along the outer margin of the Flexor longus digitorum, with one of its venæ comites on either side and the nerve lying external to it.

To tie the posterior tibial in the middle of the leg is a very difficult operation, on account of the great depth of the vessel from the surface. The patient being placed in the recumbent position, the injured limb should rest on its outer side, the knee being partially bent and the foot extended, so as to relax the muscles of the calf. An incision about four inches in length should then be made through the integument a finger's breadth behind the inner margin of the tibia, taking care to avoid the internal saphenous vein. The deep fascia having been divided, the margin of the Gastrocnemius is exposed, and must be drawn aside, and the tibial attachment of the Soleus divided, a director being previously passed beneath it. The artery may now be felt pulsating beneath the deep fascia about an inch from the margin of the tibia. The fascia having been divided, and the limb placed in such a position as to relax the muscles of the calf as much as possible, the veins should be separated from the artery, and the aneurism needle passed round the vessel from without inward, so as to avoid wounding the posterior tibial nerve.

Branches.—The branches of the posterior tibial artery are—the

Peroneal.	Cutaneous.
Nutrient.	Communicating.
Muscular.	Internal Calcanean.

Malleolar cutaneous.

The **Peroneal Artery** (*a. peronæa*) (Fig. 434) lies, deeply seated, along the back part of the fibular side of the leg. It arises from the posterior tibial about an inch below the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, passes obliquely outward to the fibula, and then descends along the inner border of that bone, contained in a fibrous canal between the Tibialis posticus and the Flexor longus hallucis, or in the substance of the latter muscle to the lower third of the leg, where it gives off the **anterior peroneal.** It then passes across the articulation between the tibia and fibula to the outer side of the os calcis, where it gives off its terminal branches, the **external calcanean.**

Relations.—This vessel rests at first upon the Tibialis posticus, and then, for the greater part of its course, in a fibrous canal between the origins of the Flexor longus hallucis and Tibialis posticus, covered or surrounded by the fibres of the Flexor longus hallucis. It is *covered*, in the upper part of its course, by the Soleus and deep transverse fascia; *below*, by the Flexor longus hallucis.

PLAN OF THE RELATIONS OF THE PERONEAL ARTERY.

In front.
Tibialis posticus.
Flexor longus hallucis.

Outer side.
Fibula.
Flexor longus hallucis.

Peroneal Artery.

Inner side.
Flexor longus hallucis.

Behind.
Soleus.
Deep transverse fascia.
Flexor longus hallucis.

Peculiarities in Origin.—The peroneal artery may arise three inches below the Popliteus, or from the posterior tibial high up, or even from the popliteal.

Its size is more frequently increased than diminished; and then it either reinforces the posterior tibial by its junction with it, or altogether takes the place of the posterior tibial in the lower part of the leg and foot, the latter vessel only existing as a short muscular branch. In those rare cases where the peroneal artery is smaller than usual a branch from the posterior tibial supplies its place, and a branch from the anterior tibial compensates for the diminished anterior peroneal artery. In one case the peroneal artery has been found entirely wanting.

The anterior peroneal is sometimes enlarged, and takes the place of the dorsal artery of the foot.

Branches.—The branches of the peroneal are—the

Muscular.	Communicating.
Nutrient.	Posterior Peroneal.
Anterior Peroneal.	External Calcanean.

Muscular Branches.—The peroneal artery in its course gives off branches to the Soleus, Tibialis posticus, Flexor longus hallucis, and Peronei muscles.

The **Nutrient Artery** (*a. nutritia fibulæ*) supplies the fibula.

The **Anterior Peroneal** (*ramus perforans*) (Fig. 436) pierces the interosseous membrane, about two inches above the outer malleolus, to reach the forepart of the leg, and, passing down beneath the Peroneus tertius to the outer ankle, ramifies on the front and outer side of the tarsus, anastomosing with the external malleolar and tarsal arteries.

The **Communicating** (*ramus communicans*) is given off from the peroneal about an inch from its lower end, and, passing inward, joins the communicating branch of the posterior tibial.

The **Posterior Peroneal** passes down behind the outer ankle to the back of the external malleolus, to terminate in branches which ramify on the outer surface and back of the os calcis.

External Calcanean (*ramus calcaneus lateralis*) are the terminal branches of the peroneal artery; they pass to the outer side of the heel, and communicate with the external malleolar, and, on the back of the heel, with the internal calcanean arteries.

Cutaneous Branches come from the posterior tibial and supply the skin of the inner side and back of the leg.

The **Nutrient Artery** of the tibia (*a. nutricia tibiæ*) *arises* from the posterior tibial near its origin, and, after supplying a few muscular branches, enters the nutrient canal of that bone, which it traverses obliquely from above downward. This is the largest nutrient artery of bone in the body.

The **Muscular Branches** of the posterior tibial are distributed to the Soleus and deep muscles along the back of the leg.

The **Communicating Branch** (*ramus communicans*), to join a similar branch of the peroneal, runs transversely across the back of the tibia, about two inches above its lower end, passing beneath the Flexor longus hallucis.

The **Malleolar** or **Internal Malleolar** (*a. malleolaris posterior medialis*) lies upon the tibia, sends branches over the inner ankle, and anastomoses with the inner malleolar branch of the anterior tibial.

The **Internal Calcanean** (*rami calcanei mediales*) are several large arteries which *arise* from the posterior tibial just before its division: they are distributed

FIG. 437.—The plantar arteries. Superficial view.

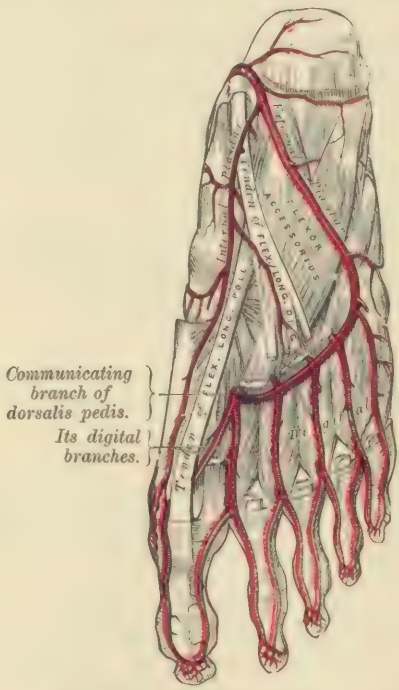


FIG. 438.—The plantar arteries. Deep view.

to the fat and integument behind the tendo Achillis and about the heel, and to the muscles on the inner side of the sole, anastomosing with the peroneal and internal malleolar, and, on the back of the heel, with the external calcanean arteries.

The **Internal Plantar Artery** (*a. plantaris medialis*) (Figs. 437 and 438), much smaller than the external, passes forward along the inner side of the foot. It is at first situated above[1] the Abductor hallucis, and then between it and the Flexor brevis digitorum, both of which it supplies. At the base of the first metatarsal bone, where it has become much diminished in size, it passes along the inner border of the great toe, inosculating with its digital branch. Small superficial digital branches accompany the digital branches of the internal plantar nerve and join the plantar digital arteries of the three inner spaces. In addition, this vessel gives off numerous cutaneous branches.

[1] This refers to the erect position of the body. In the ordinary position for dissection the artery is deeper than the muscle.

The **External Plantar Artery** (*a. plantaris lateralis*) (Figs. 437 and 438), much larger than the internal, passes obliquely outward and forward to the base of the fifth metatarsal bone. It then turns obliquely inward to the interval between the bases of the first and second metatarsal bones, where it anastomoses with the communicating branch from the dorsalis pedis artery, thus completing the **plantar arch** (*arcus plantaris*) (Fig. 438). As this artery passes outward, it is first placed between the os calcis and Abductor hallucis, and then between the Flexor brevis digitorum and Flexor accessorius, and as it passes forward to the base of the little toe it lies more superficially between the Flexor brevis digitorum and Abductor minimi digiti, covered by the deep fascia and integument. The remaining portion of the vessel is deeply situated: it extends from the base of the metatarsal bone of the little toe to the back part of the first interosseous space, and forms the plantar arch; it is convex forward, lies upon the Interossei muscles opposite the tarsal ends of the metatarsal bones, and is covered by the Adductor obliquus hallucis, the flexor tendons of the toes, and the Lumbricales.

Surface Marking.—The course of the internal plantar artery is represented by a line drawn from the mid-point between the tip of the internal malleolus and the centre of the convexity of the heel to the middle of the under surface of the great toe; the external plantar by a line from the same point to within a finger's breadth of the tuberosity of the fifth metatarsal bone. The plantar arch is indicated by a line drawn from this point—*i. e.*, a finger's breadth internal to the tuberosity of the fifth metatarsal bone transversely across the foot to the back of the first interosseous space.

Surgical Anatomy.—Wounds of the plantar arch are always serious, on account of the depth of the vessel and the important structures which must be interfered with in an attempt to ligate it. They must be treated on similar lines to those of wounds of the palmar arches (see page 665). Delorme has shown that the plantar arch may be ligated from the dorsum of the foot in almost any part of its course by removing a portion of one of the three middle metatarsal bones.

Branches.—The plantar arch, besides distributing numerous branches to the muscles, integument, and fasciæ in the sole, gives off the following branches:

Posterior Perforating. Digital.

The **Posterior Perforating** (*rami perforantes posteriores*) are three small branches which ascend through the back part of the three outer interosseous spaces, between the heads of the Dorsal interossei muscles, and anastomoses with the interosseous branches from the metatarsal artery.

The **Digital Branches** (*aa. metatarseæ plantares*) are four in number, and supply the three outer toes and half the second toe. It will be remembered that the arteria princeps hallucis is the plantar digital branch of the communicating arms in the first interosseous space and supplies the adjacent sides of the great and little toes. The *first digital branch* of the plantar arch passes outward from the outer side of the plantar arch, and is distributed to the outer side of the little toe, passing in its course beneath the Abductor and short Flexor muscles. The *second*, *third*, and *fourth* run forward along the interosseous spaces, and on arriving at the clefts between the toes divides into **collateral digital branches** (*aa. digitales plantares*), which supply the adjacent sides of the three outer toes and the outer side of the second. At the bifurcation of the toes each digital artery sends upward, through the forepart of the corresponding interosseous space, a small branch which inosculates with the interosseous branches of the metatarsal artery. These are the **anterior perforating branches** (*rami perforantes anteriores*).

From the arrangement already described of the distribution of the vessels to the toes it will be seen that both sides of the three outer toes and the outer side of the second toe are supplied by branches from the plantar arch; both sides of the great toe and the inner side of the second are supplied by the communicating branch of the dorsalis pedis.

THE VEINS.

THE Veins are the vessels which serve to return the blood from the capillaries of the different parts of the body to the heart. They consist of two distinct sets of vessels, the **pulmonary** and **systemic veins**, and an appendage to the systemic, the **portal system.**

The **Pulmonary Veins** are concerned in the circulation in the lungs. Unlike other vessels of this kind, they contain arterial blood, which they return from the lungs to the left auricle of the heart. The pulmonary veins are four in number.

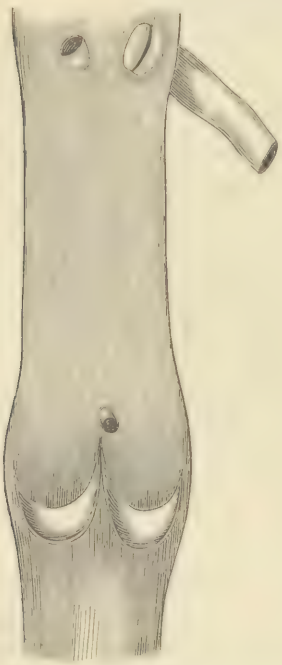


FIG. 439.—Valves of a vein. In the lower part of the figure is seen the parietal valves; the upper part shows the mouth of a vein guarded by a valve. (Poirier and Charpy.)

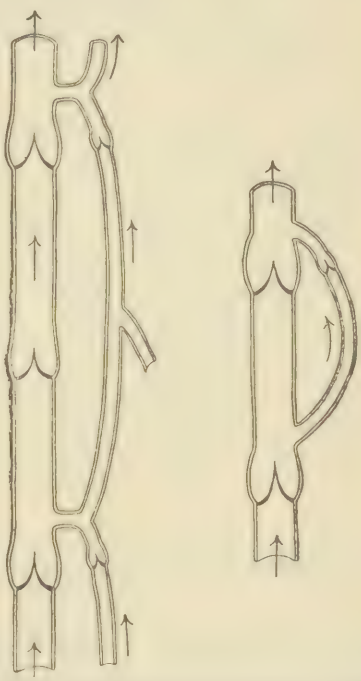


FIG. 440.—Collateral anastomosis of veins. The arrows indicate the direction of the flow of blood (schematic). (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **Systemic Veins** are concerned in the general circulation; they return the venous blood from the body generally to the right auricle of the heart. The systemic veins are the **superior vena cava**, the **inferior vena cava**, and the **coronary sinus.**

The **Portal Vein** constitutes the portal system. The portal system is in reality an appendage to the systemic venous system. It is confined to the abdominal cavity, returning the venous blood from the viscera of digestion, and carrying it to the liver by a single trunk of large size, the **portal vein** or **vena portæ.** This vessel ramifies in the substance of the liver and breaks up into a minute network

of capillaries. These capillaries then re-collect to form the **hepatic veins**, by which the blood is conveyed to the inferior vena cava.

The veins, like the arteries, are found in nearly every tissue of the body. They commence by minute plexuses which receive the blood from the capillaries. The branches which have their commencement in these plexuses unite together into trunks, and these, in their passage toward the heart, constantly increase in size as they receive tributaries or join other veins. The veins are larger and altogether more numerous than the arteries; hence the entire capacity of the venous system is much greater than that of the arterial, the pulmonary veins excepted, which only slightly exceed in capacity the pulmonary arteries. From the combined area of the smaller venous branches being greater than the main trunks, it results that the venous system represents a cone, the summit of which corresponds to the heart, its base to the circumference of the body. In form the veins are perfectly cylindrical, like the arteries, their walls being collapsed when empty, and the uniformity of their surface being interrupted at intervals by slight constrictions, which indicate the existence of valves in their interior (Fig. 439). They usually retain, however, about the same calibre as long as they receive no branches, but not so uniformly as do the arteries.

The veins communicate very freely with one another (Fig. 441), especially in certain regions of the body, and this communication exists between the larger trunks as well as between the smaller branches. Thus, in the cavity of the cranium and between the veins of the neck, where obstruction would be attended with imminent danger to the cerebral venous system, we find that the sinuses and larger veins have large and very frequent anastomoses (Fig. 440). The same free communication exists between the veins throughout the whole extent of the spinal canal, and between the veins composing the various venous plexuses in the abdomen and pelvis, as the spermatic, uterine, vesical, and prostatic.

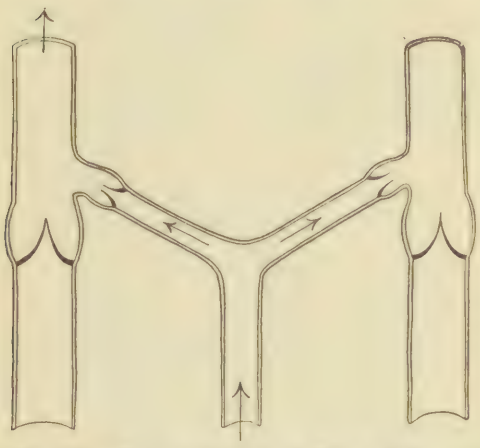


Fig. 441.—The venous circle of Braune (schematic). The arrows indicate the direction of the blood current. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Veins have thinner walls than arteries, the difference in thickness being due to the small amount of elastic and muscular tissues which the veins contain. The superficial veins usually have thicker coats than the deep veins, and the veins of the lower limb are thicker than those of the upper.

Histology of the Veins.—As previously stated, capillaries enter into **venules** or **precapillary veins.** The venules empty into larger veins. Vein walls are much thinner than arterial walls. A vein has a much thinner **media** and much less elastic tissue than an artery, and a very strongly developed **adventitia.** The **intima** is a connective-tissue layer containing a small number of elastic fibres and lined with endothelium. The media contains some circular muscle fibres and some fine elastic fibres. In some veins the media is thoroughly well developed (veins of the lower extremities), in others it is practically absent (veins of the retina, of the pia mater, of bone, the superior vena cava). The adventitia is dense and strong, and is composed of connective-tissue elastic fibres and non-striated muscle fibres placed longitudinally. Fig. 442 shows a transverse section of part of the wall of a vein. The vein valves (Fig. 439) are composed of intima and contain elastic fibres. The large veins and the veins of medium

size possess vasa vasorum, in the adventitia and to some extent in the media. The walls of veins contain vasomotor nerves. "Small blood-vessels are often surrounded by lymph capillaries and sometimes by endothelium-lined spaces which are in communication with the lymphatic system. These are called perivascular lymph spaces."[1]

The systemic veins are subdivided into three sets: **superficial, deep,** and **sinuses.**

The **Superficial** or **Cutaneous Veins** are found between the layers of the superficial fascia, immediately beneath the integument; they return the blood from these structures, and communicate with the deep veins by perforating the deep fascia.

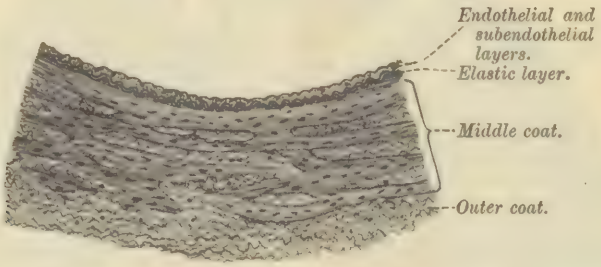


FIG. 442.—Transverse section of part of the wall of one of the posterior tibial veins. (After Schäfer.)

The **Deep Veins** accompany the arteries, and are usually enclosed in the same sheath with those vessels. With the smaller arteries—as the radial, ulnar, brachial, tibial, and peroneal—they exist generally in pairs, one lying on each side of the vessel, and are called **venæ comites.** The larger arteries—as the axillary, subclavian, popliteal, and femoral—have usually only one accompanying vein. In certain organs of the body, however, the deep veins do not accompany the arteries; for instance, the veins in the skull and spinal canal, the hepatic veins in the liver, and the larger veins returning blood from the osseous tissue.

Sinuses are venous channels which, in their structure and mode of distribution, differ altogether from the veins. They are found only in the interior of the skull, and consist of channels formed by a separation of the two layers of the dura mater, their outer coat consisting of fibrous tissue, their inner of an endothelial layer continuous with the lining membrane of the veins.

THE PULMONARY VEINS (V. PULMONALES) (Fig. 443).

The pulmonary veins return the arterial blood from the lungs to the left auricle of the heart. They are four in number, two for each lung. The pulmonary veins differ from other veins in several respects: 1. They carry arterial instead of venous blood. 2. They are destitute of valves. 3. They are only slightly larger than the arteries they accompany. 4. They accompany those vessels singly. They commence in a capillary network upon the walls of the air-cells, where they are continuous with the capillary ramifications of the pulmonary artery, and, uniting together, form one vessel for each lobule. These vessels, uniting successively, form a single trunk for each lobe, three for the right and two for the left lung. The vein from the middle lobe of the right lung generally unites with that from the upper lobe, forming two trunks on each side, which open separately into the left auricle. Occasionally they remain separate; there are then three

[1] Histology and Microscopic Anatomy. By Szymonowicz and MacCallum.

veins on the right side. Not unfrequently the two left pulmonary veins terminate by a common opening.

Within the lung, the branches of the pulmonary artery are *in front*, the veins *behind*, and the bronchi *between* the two.

At the root of the lung, the veins are *in front*, the artery *in the middle*, and the bronchus *behind*.

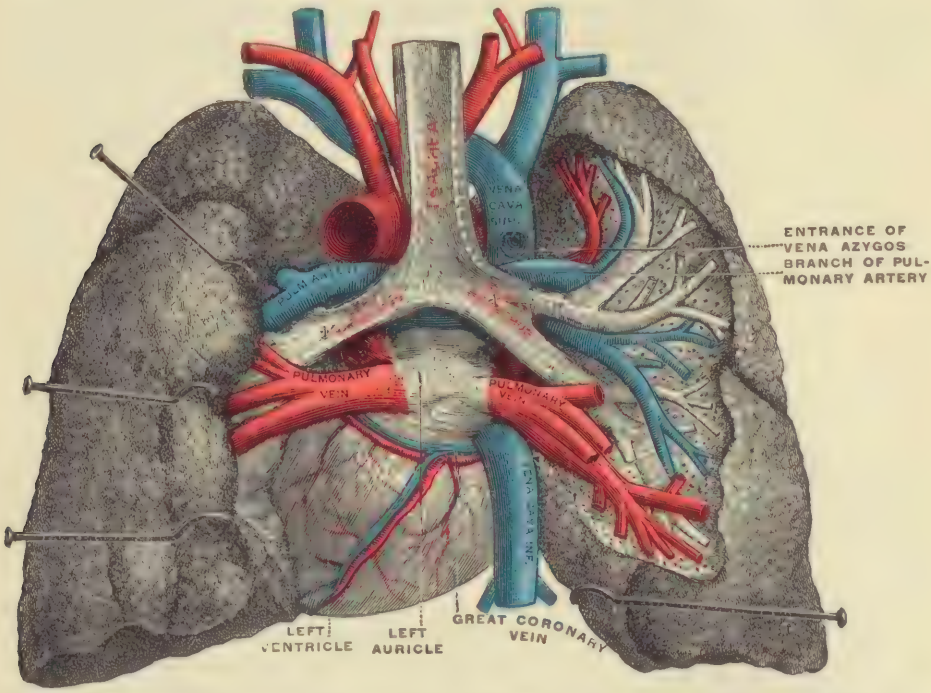


FIG. 443.—Pulmonary veins, seen in a dorsal view of the heart and lungs. The left lung is pulled to the left, and the right lung has been partly cut away to show the ramifications of the air-tubes and blood-vessels. (Testut.)

Within the pericardium, their anterior surface is invested by the serous layer of this membrane. The right pulmonary veins pass behind the right auricle and ascending aorta and superior vena cava; the left pass in front of the thoracic aorta with the left pulmonary artery.

THE SYSTEMIC VEINS.

The systemic veins may be arranged into three groups: 1. Those of the **head** and **neck, upper extremity,** and **thorax,** which terminate in the superior vena cava. 2. Those of the **lower extremity, abdomen,** and **pelvis,** which terminate in the inferior vena cava. 3. The **cardiac veins,** which open directly into the right auricle of the heart.

VEINS OF THE HEAD AND NECK.

The veins of the head and neck may be subdivided into three groups: 1. The veins of the **exterior of the head** and **face.** 2. The veins of the **neck.** 3. The veins of the **diploë** and **interior of the cranium.**

Veins of the Exterior of the Head and Face (Fig. 444).

The veins of the exterior of the head and face are—the

Frontal.	Temporal.
Supraorbital.	Internal Maxillary.
Angular.	Temporo-maxillary.
Facial.	Posterior Auricular.

Occipital.

The **Frontal Vein** (*v. frontalis*) *commences* on the anterior part of the skull by a venous plexus which communicates with the anterior tributaries of the temporal vein. The veins converge to form a single trunk, which runs downward near the

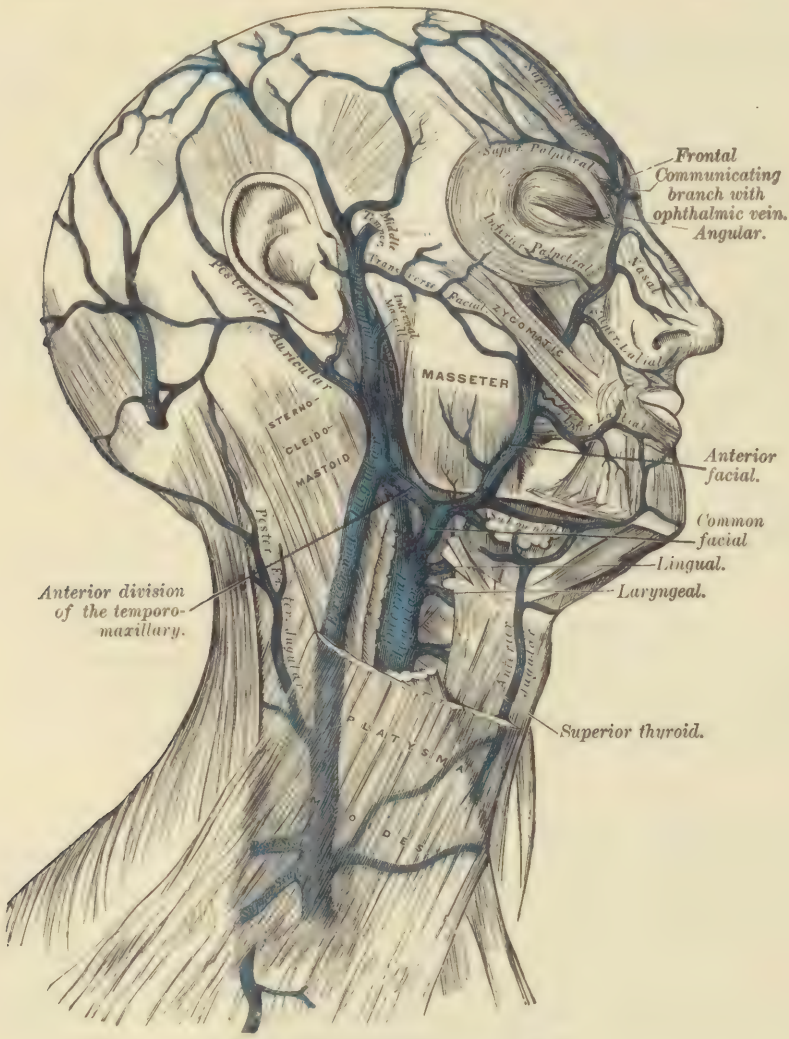


FIG. 444.—Veins of the head and neck.

middle line of the forehead parallel with the vein of the opposite side, and unites with it at the root of the nose by a transverse branch called the **nasal arch** (*v. naso-frontalis*). Occasionally the frontal veins join to form a single trunk, which

bifurcates at the root of the nose into the two angular veins. At the root of the nose the veins diverge and join the supraorbital vein, at the inner angle of the orbit, to form the angular vein.

The **Supraorbital Vein** (*v. supraorbitalis*) *commences* on the forehead, communicating with the anterior temporal vein, and runs downward and inward, superficial to the Occipito-frontalis muscle, receiving tributaries from the neighboring structures, and from the frontal vein of the diploë, and joins the frontal vein at the inner angle of the orbit to form the angular vein.

The **Angular Vein** (*v. angularis*), formed by the junction of the frontal and supraorbital veins, runs obliquely downward and outward on the side of the root of the nose, and receives the veins of the ala nasi on its inner side and the superior palpebral veins on its outer side; it moreover communicates with the ophthalmic vein, thus establishing an important anastomosis between this vessel and the cavernous sinus. Some small veins from the dorsum of the nose terminate in the nasal arch.

The **Anterior Facial Vein** (*v. facialis anterior*) commences at the side of the root of the nose, being a direct continuation of the angular vein, which is itself formed by the union of the frontal vein and the supraorbital vein. It lies behind and follows a less tortuous course than the facial artery. It passes obliquely downward and outward, beneath the Zygomaticus major and minor muscles, descends along the anterior border of the Masseter, crosses over the body of the lower jaw, with the facial artery to beneath the angle, and unites with the anterior division of the temporo-maxillary vein (*v. facialis posterior*) to form the common facial vein.

The **Common Facial Vein** (*v. facialis communis*) is formed by the union of the anterior facial and the anterior division of the temporo-maxillary vein, just beneath the angle of the mandible. The vein is covered by the Platysma myoid muscle, runs downward and backward beneath the Sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle, crosses the external carotid artery, and empties into the internal jugular vein at the level of the hyoid line. It receives a large branch at the anterior border of the Sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle, which comes from the anterior jugular vein in the supra-sternal fossa.

Tributaries of the Anterior and Common Facial Veins.—The anterior facial vein receives, near the angle of the mouth, communicating tributaries of considerable size, the deep facial or anterior internal maxillary vein, from the pterygoid plexus. It is also joined by the inferior palpebral, the superior and inferior labial veins, the buccal veins from the cheek, and the masseteric veins. The common facial vein receives the submental; the inferior palatine, which returns the blood from the plexus round the tonsil and soft palate; the submaxillary vein, which commences in the submaxillary gland; and, generally, the ranine vein.

Surgical Anatomy.—There are some points about the facial vein which render it of great importance in surgery. It is not so flaccid as are most superficial veins, and, in consequence of this, remains more patent when divided. It has, moreover, no valves. It communicates freely with the intracranial circulation, not only at its commencement by its tributaries, the angular and supraorbital veins, communicating with the ophthalmic vein, a tributary of the cavernous sinus, but also by its deep branch, which communicates through the pterygoid plexus with the cavernous sinus by branches which pass through the foramen ovale and foramen lacerum medium. These facts have an important bearing upon the surgery of some diseases of the face, for on account of its patency the facial vein favors septic absorption, and therefore any phlegmonous inflammation of the face following a poisoned wound is liable to set up thrombosis in the facial vein, and detached portions of the clot may give rise to purulent foci in other parts of the body. And on account of its communications with the cerebral sinuses these thrombi are apt to extend upward into them and so induce a fatal issue.

The **Superficial Temporal Vein** (*vv. temporales superficiales*) *commences* by a minute plexus on the side and vertex of the skull, which communicates with the frontal and supraorbital veins in front, the corresponding vein of the opposite side, and the posterior auricular and occipital veins behind. From this network anterior and posterior branches are formed which unite above the zygoma, forming the trunk of the vein. The trunk is joined in this situation by a large vein, the **middle temporal** (*v. temporalis media*), which receives blood from the substance of the Temporal muscle and pierces the fascia at the upper border of the zygoma. The junction of the superficial temporal and the middle temporal veins forms the **common temporal vein** (*v. temporalis communis*), which descends between the external auditory meatus and the condyle of the jaw, enters the substance of the parotid gland, and unites with the internal maxillary vein to form the **temporo-maxillary vein.**

Tributaries.—The common temporal vein receives in its course some parotid veins, an articular branch from the articulation of the jaw, anterior auricular veins from the external ear, and a vein of large size, the **transverse facial** (*v. transversa faciei*), from the side of the face. The middle temporal vein, previous to its junction with the temporal vein, receives a branch, the **orbital vein** (*v. orbitalis*), which is formed by some external palpebral branches, and passes backward between the layers of the temporal fascia.

The Pterygoid Plexus (*plexus pterygoideus*) **and the Internal Maxillary Vein.**—The internal maxillary vein is a vessel of considerable size, receiving branches which correspond with those of the internal maxillary artery. Thus it receives the two middle meningeal veins, the deep temporal, the pterygoid, masseteric, buccal, and alveolar veins, some palatine veins, the spheno-palatine and the inferior dental veins. The **deep temporal veins** (*vv. temporales profundæ*) come to the pterygoid plexus from the temporal muscle. These branches form a large plexus, the **pterygoid plexus,** which is placed between the Temporal and External pterygoid and partly between the Pterygoid muscles. This plexus is a tributary of the internal maxillary vein, and communicates very freely with the facial vein and with the cavernous sinus by branches through the foramen Vesalii, foramen ovale, and foramen lacerum medium, at the base of the skull. The trunk of the internal maxillary vein comes from the plexus, then passes backward behind the neck of the lower jaw, and unites with the temporal vein, forming the temporo-maxillary vein.

The **Temporo-maxillary Vein** (*v. facialis posterior*), formed by the union of the superficial temporal and internal maxillary veins, descends in the substance of the parotid gland on the outer surface of the external carotid artery, between the ramus of the jaw and the Sterno-mastoid muscle, and divides into two branches, an anterior, which passes inward to join the facial vein, and a posterior, which is joined by the posterior auricular vein and becomes the external jugular.

The **Posterior Auricular Vein** (*v. auricularis posterior*) *commences* upon the side of the head by a plexus which communicates with the tributaries of the temporal and occipital veins. The vein descends behind the external ear and joins the posterior division of the temporo-maxillary vein, forming the external jugular. This vessel receives the stylo-mastoid vein and some tributaries from the back part of the external ear.

The **Occipital Vein** (*v. occipitalis*) commences at the back part of the vertex of the skull by a plexus in a similar manner to the other veins. From the plexus comes one or two veins, which follow the course of the occipital artery, passing deeply beneath the muscles of the back part of the neck, and terminating in the suboccipital triangle by becoming continuous with the posterior vertebral vein. Sometimes they are more superficial, and in this case they are tributaries of the

external jugular vein. As the outermost occipital vein passes across the mastoid portion of the temporal bone, it receives the mastoid vein, which thus establishes a communication with the lateral sinus.

The Veins of the Neck (Fig. 444).

The veins of the neck, which return the blood from the head and face, are—the

External Jugular.	Anterior Jugular.
Posterior External Jugular.	Internal Jugular.
Vertebral.	

The **External Jugular Vein** (*v. jugularis externa*) receives the greater part of the blood from the exterior of the cranium and deep parts of the face, being formed by the junction of the posterior division of the temporo-maxillary and the posterior auricular veins. It commences in the substance of the parotid gland, on a level with the angle of the lower jaw, and runs perpendicularly down the neck in the direction of a line drawn from the angle of the jaw to the middle of the clavicle. In its course it crosses the Sterno-mastoid muscle, and runs parallel with its posterior border as far as its attachment to the clavicle, where it perforates the deep fascia, and terminates in the subclavian vein, on the outer side of, or in front of, the Scalenus anticus muscle. In the neck it is separated from the Sterno-mastoid by the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia, and is covered by the Platysma, the superficial fascia, and the integument. This vein is crossed about its middle by the superficialis colli nerve, and throughout the upper half of its course is accompanied by the auricularis magnus nerve. The external jugular vein varies in size, bearing an inverse proportion to that of the other veins of the neck; it is occasionally double. It is provided with two pairs of valves, the lower pair being placed at its entrance into the subclavian vein, the upper pair in most cases about an inch and a half above the clavicle. The portion of vein between the two sets of valves is often dilated, and is termed the **sinus**. These valves do not prevent the regurgitation of the blood or the passage of injection from below upward.[1]

Tributaries.—This vein receives the occipital occasionally, the posterior external jugular, and, near its termination, the suprascapular and transverse cervical veins. It communicates with the anterior jugular, and, in the substance of the parotid, receives a large branch of communication from the internal jugular.

The **Posterior External Jugular Vein** (*v. jugularis posterior*) commences in the occipital region, and returns the blood from the integument and superficial muscles in the upper and back part of the neck, lying between the Splenius and Trapezius muscles. It runs down the back part of the neck, and opens into the external jugular just below the middle of its course.

The **Anterior Jugular Vein** (*v. jugularis anterior*) commences near the hyoid bone from the convergence of the inferior coronary, the submental and the mental veins, and communicating branches. It passes down between the median line and the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, and at the lower part of the neck passes beneath that muscle to open into the termination of the external jugular or into the subclavian vein (Fig. 465). This vein varies considerably in size, bearing almost always an inverse proportion to the external jugular. Most frequently there are two anterior jugulars, a right and left, but occasionally only one. This vein receives some laryngeal veins, and occasionally a small thyroid vein. Just above the sternum the two anterior jugular veins communicate by a

[1] The student may refer to an interesting paper by Dr. Struthers, "On Jugular Venesection in Asphyxia, Anatomically and Experimentally Considered, including the Demonstration of Valves in the Veins of the Neck," in the Edinburgh Medical Journal for November, 1856. Ed. of 15th English edition.

transverse trunk, which receives tributaries from the inferior thyroid veins. It also communicates with the internal jugular. There are no valves in this vein.

The **Internal Jugular Vein** (*v. jugularis interna*) collects the blood from the interior of the cranium, from the superficial parts of the face, and from the neck. It *commences* just external to the jugular foramen, at the base of the skull, being formed by the coalescence of the lateral and inferior petrosal sinuses (Fig. 458). At its origin it is somewhat dilated, and this dilatation is called the **sinus** or **gulf of the internal jugular vein** (*bulbus v. jugularis superior*). It runs down the side of the neck in a vertical direction, lying at first on the outer side of the internal carotid artery, and then on the outer side of the common carotid artery, and at the root of the neck unites with the subclavian vein to form the innominate vein. Just before its termination it is distinctly dilated (*bulbus v. jugularis inferior*). The

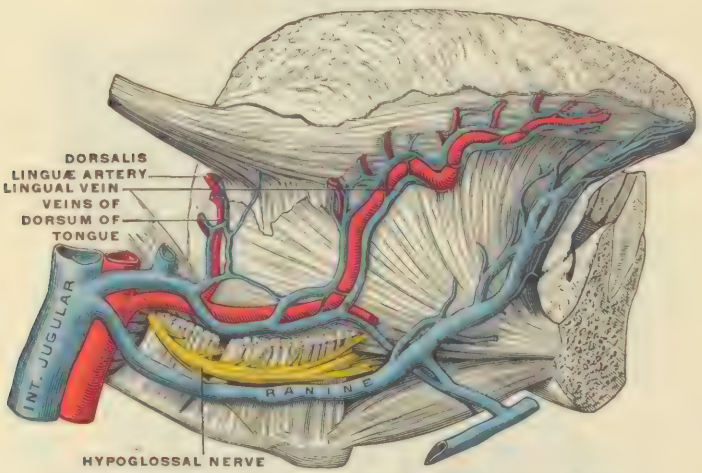


FIG. 445.—Veins of the tongue. (Testut, modified from Hirschfeld.)

internal jugular vein, at its *commencement*, lies upon the Rectus capitis lateralis, and behind the internal carotid artery and the nerves passing through the jugular foramen; lower down, the vein and artery lie upon the same plane, the glossopharyngeal and hypoglossal nerves passing forward between them; the pneumogastric descends between and behind them in the same sheath, and the spinal accessory passes obliquely outward, behind or in front of, the vein. At the root of the neck the vein of the right side is placed at a little distance from the artery; on the left side it usually lies over the artery at its lower part. The right internal jugular vein crosses the first part of the subclavian artery. The internal jugular vein is of considerable size, but varies in different individuals, the left one being usually the smaller. It is provided with a pair of valves, which are placed at its point of termination or from half to three-quarters of an inch above it.

Tributaries.—This vein receives in its course the facial, lingual, pharyngeal, superior, and middle thyroid veins. A branch from the cochlea opens into the sinus of the internal jugular vein. A venous plexus from the lateral sinus (*plexus venosus caroticus internus*) surrounds the internal carotid artery in the carotid canal and empties into the internal jugular vein. At its point of junction with the common facial vein it becomes increased in size. (See Facial Veins, p. 726.)

The **Lingual Veins** (*vv. linguale*) (Fig. 445) *commence* on the dorsum, sides, and under surface of the tongue, and, passing backward, following the course of the lingual artery and its branches, terminate in the internal jugular. Sometimes the **ranine vein**, which is a branch of considerable size commencing below the tip of the

tongue, joins the lingual. Generally, however, it passes backward, crosses the Hyo-glossus muscle in company with the hypoglossal nerve, and joins the internal jugular. The lingual vein receives the sublingual vein and the dorsalis linguæ veins.

The **Pharyngeal Veins** (*vv. pharyngeæ*) vary in number. They *commence* in a minute plexus, the **pharyngeal plexus** (*plexus pharyngeus*), at the back part and sides of the pharynx, and, after receiving meningeal tributaries, the **meningeal veins** (*vv. meningea*), the **Vidian veins** (*vv. canalis pterygoidei*), and the sphenopalatine veins, terminate in the internal jugular. They occasionally open into the facial, lingual, or superior thyroid vein.

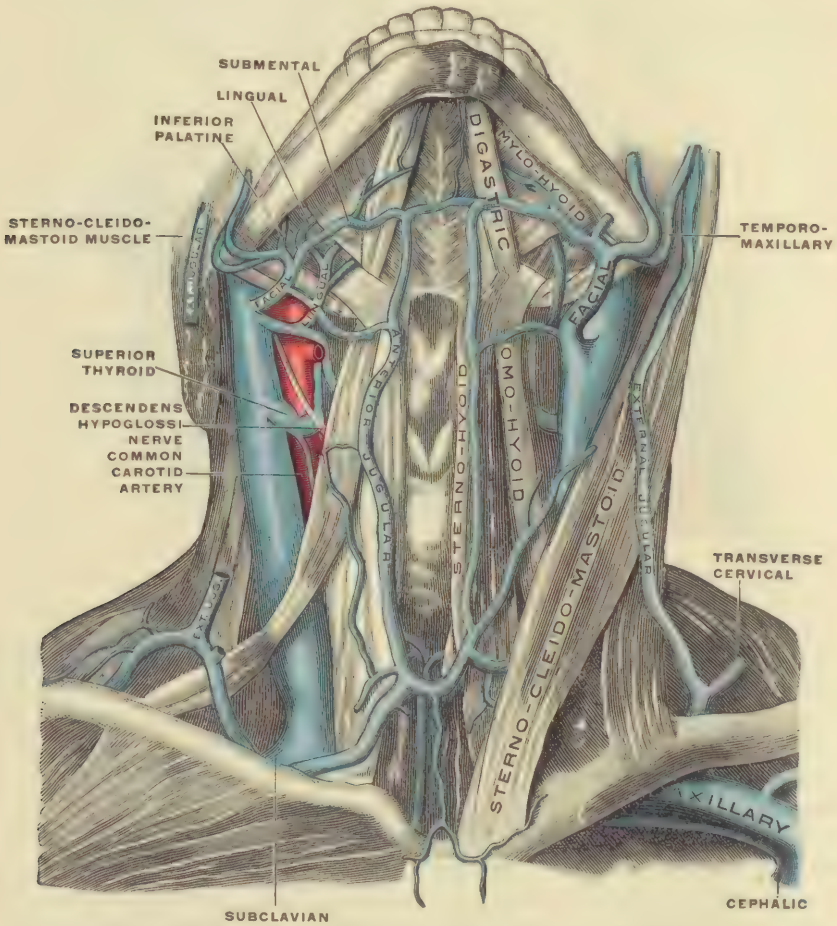


Fig. 446.—The veins of the neck, viewed from in front. (Spalteholz.)

The **Superior Thyroid Vein** (*v. thyreoidea superioris*) (Fig. 446) *commences* in the substance and on the surface of the thyroid gland by tributaries corresponding with the branches of the superior thyroid artery, and terminates in the upper part of the internal jugular vein. It receives the superior laryngeal and crico-thyroid veins. Some anatomists teach that there are two superior thyroid veins on each side, the upper vein being the one just considered, the lower vein being the one usually pointed out as the middle thyroid.

The **Middle Thyroid Vein** (Fig. 448) collects the blood from the lower part of the lateral lobe of the thyroid gland, and, being joined by some veins from the larynx and trachea, terminates in the lower part of the internal jugular vein. Often in

place of the middle thyroid vein there are two veins, the **superior** and **inferior accessory thyroid.** These veins pass into the internal jugular.

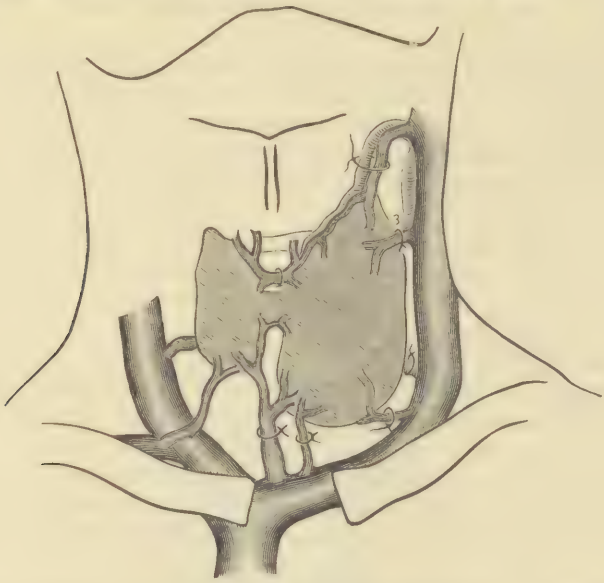


FIG. 447.—Diagram showing common arrangement of thyroid veins. (Kocher.)

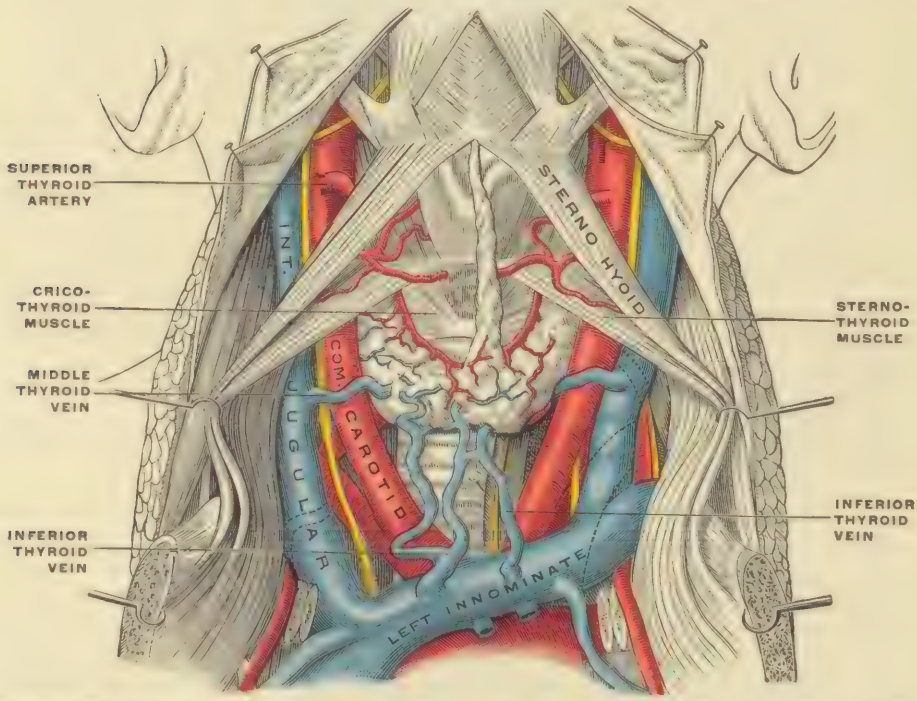


FIG. 448.—The fascia and middle thyroid veins. The veins here designated the inferior thyroid are called by Kocher the thyreoidea ima. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Veins of the Thyroid Gland[1] (Fig. 447).—On the surface of the thyroid glands the veins form a plexus between the capsule and the gland. A number of veins

[1] See Kocher's description in Langenbeck's Arch. f. klin. Chir., vol. xxix., and James Berry's description in his treatise on Diseases of the Thyroid Gland.

penetrate the capsule and pass into adjacent trunks. The most important veins coming from the gland are the **superior, middle,** and **inferior thyroids** (or instead of the middle thyroid the superior and inferior accessory thyroid) and the **thyreoidea ima.**

The **superior thyroid vein** emerges from the summit of the superior horn of the gland, runs along by the superior thyroid artery, and terminates in the internal jugular vein. A large branch which passes along the inner margin of the upper horn and across the upper surface of the isthmus joins the superior thyroid veins of each side. The **middle thyroid vein** when present emerges from the side of the gland and empties into the internal jugular. This single vein may be replaced by two veins, the superior and inferior accessory thyroid veins. The superior vein emerges from the outer surface of the upper horn somewhat below the apex. The inferior vein comes from the posterior and inferior portion of the gland. Both empty into the internal jugular. The lower surface of the isthmus and the inner side of each inferior horn is drained by two veins. Each vein is called the **thyreoidea ima** (Kocher). The left vein empties into the left innominate vein. The right vein empties into either the right or left innominate vein. These veins may be very small, may be absent, or may join and form one vein which empties into the left innominate. An inferior thyroid is often also present. It comes from the outer portion of the inferior horn of the gland and empties into the innominate vein.

The **facial** and **occipital veins** have been described on pages 726 and 727.

Surgical Anatomy.—The internal jugular vein occasionally requires ligature in cases of *septic thrombosis of the lateral sinus* from suppuration in the middle ear. This is done in order to prevent septic emboli being carried into the general circulation. This operation has been performed in a number of cases, with satisfactory results. The cases are generally those of chronic disease of the middle ear, with discharge of pus which perhaps has existed for many years. The patient is seized with acute septic inflammation, spreading to the mastoid cells, and, consequent on this, septic thrombosis of the lateral sinus extending to the internal jugular vein. Such cases are always extremely grave, for there is danger that a portion of the septic clot will be detached and cause septic embolism in the thoracic viscera. If thrombo-phlebitis of the sinus is suspected the mastoid should be opened and cleansed and the sinus should be at once exposed and explored. If the sinus is found to be thrombosed the surgeon should at once proceed to ligate the internal jugular vein, by an incision along the anterior border of the sterno-mastoid, the centre of which is on a level with the greater cornu of the hyoid bone. The vein should be ligated in two places and divided between. After the vessel has been secured and divided the lateral sinus is to be thoroughly cleared out, and, by removing the ligature from the upper end of the divided vein, all septic clots may be removed by syringing from the sinus through the vein. If hemorrhage occurs from the distal end of the sinus, it can be arrested by careful plugging with antiseptic gauze.

The thyroid veins are small vessels when the gland is of normal size, but become enormous when the gland is much enlarged.

In the operation of *thyroidectomy* the veins as well as the arteries are ligated before the gland, or rather before one lobe of it is extirpated.

The **Vertebral Vein** (*v. vertebralis*) (Fig. 449) *commences* by numerous small veins from the **intraspinal venous plexuses** (*plexus venosi vertebrales*); these pass outward and enter the foramen in the transverse process of the atlas, and descend, forming a dense plexus around the vertebral artery in the canal formed by the foramina in the transverse processes of the cervical vertebræ. The vessels of this plexus unite at the lower part of the neck into two main trunks, one of which emerges from the foramen in the transverse process of the sixth cervical vertebra, and the other through that of the seventh. Uniting, these two trunks form a single vessel which terminates at the root of the neck in the back part of the innominate vein near its origin, its mouth being guarded by a pair of valves. On the right side it crosses the first part of the subclavian artery.

Tributaries.—The vertebral vein receives in its course a vein from the inside of the skull through the posterior condyloid foramen. It anastomoses with the

occipital vein and receives muscular veins from the muscles in the prevertebral region; dorsi-spinal veins, from the back part of the cervical portion of the spine; meningo-rachidian veins, from the interior of the spinal canal; the anterior and posterior vertebral veins; and close to its termination it is joined by a small vein from the first intercostal space which accompanies the superior intercostal artery.

The **Anterior Vertebral** or **Anterior Deep Cervical Vein** *commences* in a plexus around the transverse processes of the upper cervical vertebræ, descends in company with the ascending cervical artery between the Scalenus anticus and Rectus capitis anticus major muscles, and opens into the vertebral vein just before its termination.

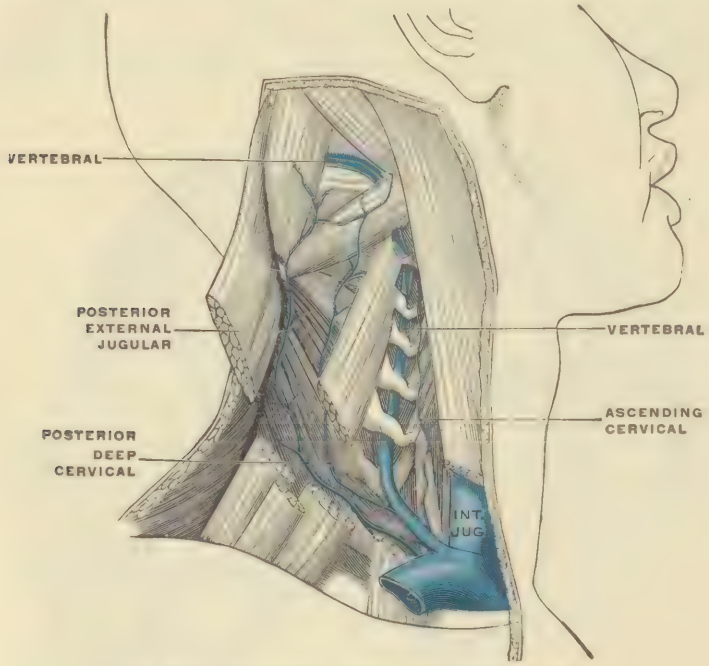


Fig. 449.—The vertebral vein. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **Posterior Vertebral** or **Posterior Deep Cervical Vein** (*v. cervicalis profunda*) (Fig. 449) accompanies the profunda cervicis artery, lying between the Complexus and Semispinalis colli. It *commences* in the suboccipital region by communicating branches from the occipital vein and tributaries from the deep muscles at the back of the neck. It receives tributaries from the plexuses around the spinous processes of the cervical vertebræ, and terminates in the lower end of the vertebral vein.

The Veins of the Diploë (Venæ Diploicæ) (Fig. 450).

The diploë of the cranial bones is channelled in the adult by a number of tortuous canals, the **diploic canals** or **canals of Breschet** (*canales diploici* [*Breschetî*]), which are lined by a more or less complete layer of compact tissue. The veins they contain are large and capacious, their walls being thin, and formed only of endothelium resting upon a layer of elastic tissue, and they present at irregular intervals pouch-like dilatations, or *culs-de-sac*, which serve as reservoirs for the blood. These are the veins of the diploë; they can only be displayed by removing the outer table of the skull.

In adult life, as long as the cranial bones are distinct and separable, these veins are confined to the particular bones; but in old age, when the sutures are

united, they communicate with each other and increase in size. These vessels communicate, in the interior of the cranium, with the meningeal veins and with the sinuses of the dura mater, and on the exterior of the skull with the veins of the pericranium. They are divided into the **frontal diploic vein** (*v. diploica frontalis*), which opens into the supraorbital vein by an aperture in the supraorbital notch and into the superior longitudinal sinus; the **anterior temporal diploic vein** (*v. diploica temporalis anterior*), which is confined chiefly to the frontal bone, communicates with the spheno-parietal sinus and, after escaping by an aperture in the great wing of the sphenoid, opens into one of the deep temporal veins; the **posterior temporal,** or **external parietal diploic vein** (*v. diploica temporalis posterior*), is between the emissarium parietale and the emissarium mastoideum; and the **occipital diploic vein** (*v. diploica occipitalis*), the largest of the four, which is confined to the occipital bone, and opens into the emissarium occipitale.

FIG. 450.—Veins of the diploë as displayed by the removal of the outer table of the skull.

The **Emissary Veins** are considered on page 743.

The Meningeal Veins (*vv. meningeæ*).—They are numerous in the dura mater, are without valves, anastomose freely with each other, do not increase in size as they reach the sinus which receives them, and bear no regular relation to the meningeal arteries. The middle meningeal artery has two venæ comites. The other meningeal arteries usually have two apiece, but may have but one. The **middle meningeal veins** (*vv. meningeæ mediæ*) accompany the middle meningeal artery, are united to the spheno-parietal sinus, pass through the foramen spinosum, and join the pterygoid plexus. The other meningeal veins empty into the superior longitudinal sinus and communicate with the plexus of the foramen ovale.

The Cerebral Veins (Venæ Cerebri).

The cerebral veins are remarkable for the absence of valves and for the extreme thinness of their coats. The coats are thin because they contain no muscular tissue. The cerebral veins may be divided into two sets: the **superficial veins,** which are placed on the surface, and the **deep veins,** which occupy the interior of the organ. The veins of the brain do not accompany associated arteries.

The **Superficial** or **Cortical Cerebral Veins** (*venæ cerebri externæ*) (Fig. 546) ramify upon the surface of the brain, being lodged in the sulci between the convolutions, a few running across the convolutions. They receive branches from the substance of the brain and terminate in the sinuses. They are named, from the position they occupy, **superior, median,** and **inferior cerebral veins.**

The **Superior Cerebral Veins** (*vv. cerebri superiores*), eight to twelve in number on each side, return the blood from the convolutions on the superior surface of the hemisphere; they pass forward and inward toward the great longitudinal fissure, where they receive the median cerebral veins; near their termination they become invested with a tubular sheath of the arachnoid membrane, and open into the superior longitudinal sinus in the opposite direction to the course of the current of the blood.

The **Median Cerebral Veins** (*v. cerebri mediana*) return the blood from the convolutions of the mesial surface of the corresponding hemisphere; they open into the superior cerebral veins, or occasionally into the inferior longitudinal sinus.

The **Inferior Cerebral Veins** (*vv. cerebri inferiores*) ramify on the lower part of the outer surface and on the under surface of the cerebral hemisphere. Some, collecting tributaries from the under surface of the anterior lobes of the brain, terminate in the cavernous sinus. One vein of large size, the **middle cerebral** or **superficial Sylvian vein** (*v. cerebri media*), commences on the under surface of the temporal lobe, and, running along a portion of the fissure of Sylvius, opens into the cavernous sinus. The **great anastomotic vein of Trolard** or the **superficial communicating vein** establishes a union between the sinuses of the vertex and those of the base of the brain. It comes from one of the superior cerebral veins, passes downward into the fissure of Sylvius, and, by means of the middle cerebral vein, effects a communication with the cavernous sinus. The **posterior anastomotic vein** connects the middle cerebral vein with the lateral sinus. Other veins commence on the under surface of the base of the brain, and unite to form from three to five veins, which open into the superior petrosal and lateral sinuses from before backward.

The **Deep Cerebral, Central,** or **Ventricular Veins, Veins of Galen** (*venæ Galeni, vv. cerebri internæ*) (Fig. 548), are two in number. Each is formed by the union of two veins, the **vena corporis striati,** and the **choroid vein,** on either side. The deep cerebral veins run backward, parallel with one another, between the layers of the velum interpositum, and in the region of the pineal body unite to form one vein, the **vena magna Galeni** (*v. cerebri magna*), which passes out of the brain at the great transverse fissure, between the posterior extremity, or splenium, of the corpus callosum and the tubercula quadrigemina, to enter the straight sinus. The two deep cerebral veins receive branches from the callosal region, from a portion of the occipital lobe, and just before their union each vein receives the basilar vein. The vena magna Galeni receives the **vermian vein** from the superficial cerebellar veins.

The **Vena Corporis Striati** on each side *commences* in the groove between the corpus striatum and thalamus opticus, receives numerous veins from both of these parts, and unites behind the anterior pillar of the fornix with the choroid vein to form one of the deep cerebral veins.

The **Choroid Vein** (*v. choroidea*) originates in the extreme end of the middle cornu of the lateral ventricle and runs along the whole length of the outer border of the choroid plexus, receiving veins from the hippocampus major, the fornix, and corpus callosum, and unites, at the anterior extremity of the choroid plexus, with the vein of the corpus striatum to form the deep cerebral vein of that side.

The **Basilar Vein** (*v. basalis*) *commences* at the anterior perforated space at the base of the brain by the union of a small anterior cerebral vein, which courses backward between the anterior lobes of the cerebrum, with the deep Sylvian vein, which descends through the lower part of the Sylvian fissure and receives veins from

the island of Reil. It passes backward over the crus cerebri, receiving the inferior striate vein from the corpus striatum, interpeduncular veins from the interpeduncular space, ventricular veins from the middle cornu of the lateral ventricles, and tributaries from the uncinate convolution, and enters the vein of Galen just before its junction with the vein of the opposite side.

The **Superficial Cerebellar Veins** (Fig. 546) occupy the surface of the cerebellum, and are disposed in two sets, **superior** and **inferior.**

The **Superior Superficial Cerebellar Veins** (*vv. cerebelli superiores*) pass partly forward and inward, across the superior vermiform process, to terminate in lateral branches which pass partly to the straight sinus and partly outward to the lateral and superior petrosal sinuses.

The **Inferior Superficial Cerebellar Veins** (*vv. cerebelli inferiores*), of large size, terminate in the lateral, inferior petrosal, and occipital sinuses.

The **Deep Cerebellar Veins** bring blood from the interior of the cerebellum to the superficial veins.

Veins of the Pons Varolii.—Veins come from the depth of the pons, the **deep veins,** and empty into a plexus of **superficial veins.** From this superficial venous plexus a **superior vein** passes to the basilar vein, and an **inferior vein** either into a cerebellar vein or into the superior petrosal sinus.

Veins of the Medulla Oblongata.—Veins pass from the depth of the medulla and end in a plexus on the surface. From this plexus comes an **anterior median vein,** which is a prolongation of a like vein of the spinal cord—a **posterior median vein** corresponding to a like vein of the cord—and small branches which pass with the roots of the ninth, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth cranial nerves, and empty into the occipital and the inferior petrosal sinuses.

The perivascular lymph-spaces are especially found in connection with the vessels of the brain. These vessels are enclosed in a sheath, which acts as a lymphatic channel, through which the lymph is carried to the subarachnoid and subdural spaces, from which it is returned into the general circulation.

The Sinuses of the Dura Mater (Sinus Duræ Matris) (Figs. 451, 452, 453, 456, 457) Ophthalmic Veins and Emissary Veins.

The sinuses of the dura mater are venous channels, analogous to the veins. The outer coat of a sinus is formed by the dura mater; the inner coat, by a continuation of the lining membrane of the veins. The thick walls of a sinus resist intracranial pressure.[1] They are divided into two sets: (1) those situated at the upper and back part of the skull; (2) those at the base of the skull. The former are—the

Superior Longitudinal Sinus.	Straight Sinus.
Inferior Longitudinal Sinus.	Lateral Sinuses.
Occipital Sinus.	

The **Superior Longitudinal Sinus** (*sinus sagittalis superior*) (Figs. 451, 452, and 453) occupies the attached margin of the falx cerebri. *Commencing* at the foramen cæcum, through which, in the child, it constantly communicates by a small branch with the veins of the nasal fossæ, it runs from before backward, grooving the inner surface of the frontal, the adjacent margins of the two parietal, and the superior division of the crucial ridge of the occipital bone, and terminates by opening into the torcular Herophili. The sinus is triangular on transverse section, is narrow in front, and gradually increases in size as it passes backward. On examining its inner surface it presents the internal openings of the superior cerebral veins, which run, for the most part, from behind forward, and open

[1] A. W. Hughes.

chiefly at the back part of the sinus, their orifices being concealed by fibrous folds; numerous fibrous bands, **chordæ Willisii** (Fig. 453), are also seen extending transversely across the inferior angle of the sinus; and some small, white, projecting bodies, the **glandulæ Pacchioni** (*granulationes arachnoidales*). This sinus communicates by numerous small apertures with spaces in the dura mater known as **lacunæ laterales** or **parasinoidal spaces** (Fig. 453). The

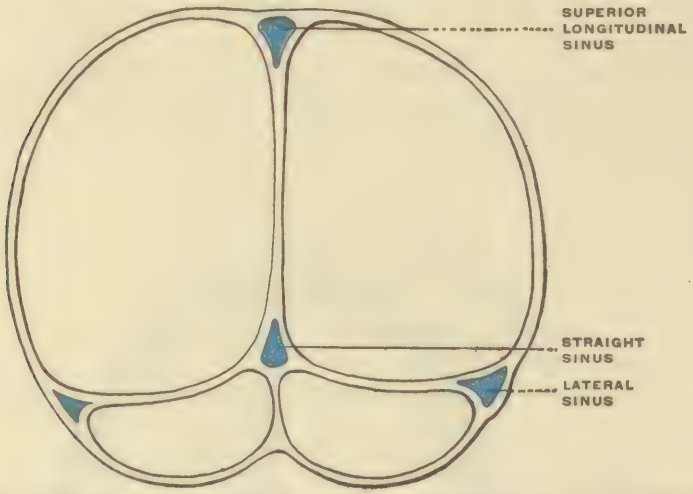


FIG. 451.—Coronal section of the skull to show the situations and shapes of the chief sinuses. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Pacchionian bodies project into these spaces. This sinus receives the superior cerebral veins, numerous veins from the diploë and dura mater, the outlets of the parasinoidal spaces, and, at the posterior extremity of the sagittal suture, veins from the pericranium, which pass through the parietal foramina. In children a twig from the longitudinal sinus passes through the foramen cæcum and into the nose.

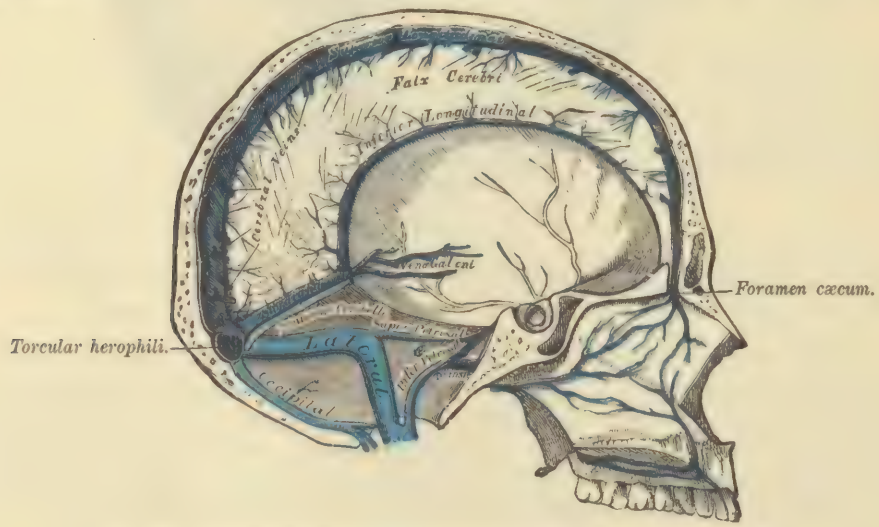


FIG. 452.—Vertical section of the skull, showing the sinuses of the dura mater.

The **Torcular Herophili** or the **confluence of the sinuses** (Figs. 452 and 456) is the dilated extremity of the superior longitudinal sinus. It is of irregular form, and

is lodged on one side (generally the right) of the internal occipital protuberance. From it the lateral sinus of the side to which it is deflected is derived. It receives also the blood from the occipital sinus.

The **Inferior Longitudinal Sinus** (*sinus sagittalis inferior*) (Fig. 452), more correctly described as the **inferior longitudinal vein**, is contained in the posterior part of the free margin of the falx cerebri. It is of a cylindrical form, increases in size as it passes backward, and terminates in the straight sinus. It receives several veins from the falx cerebri, and occasionally a few from the mesial surface of the hemispheres.

The **Straight Sinus** (*sinus rectus*) (Figs. 451 and 452) is situated at the line of junction of the falx cerebri with the tentorium. It is triangular in form, increases in size as it proceeds backward, and runs obliquely downward and backward from

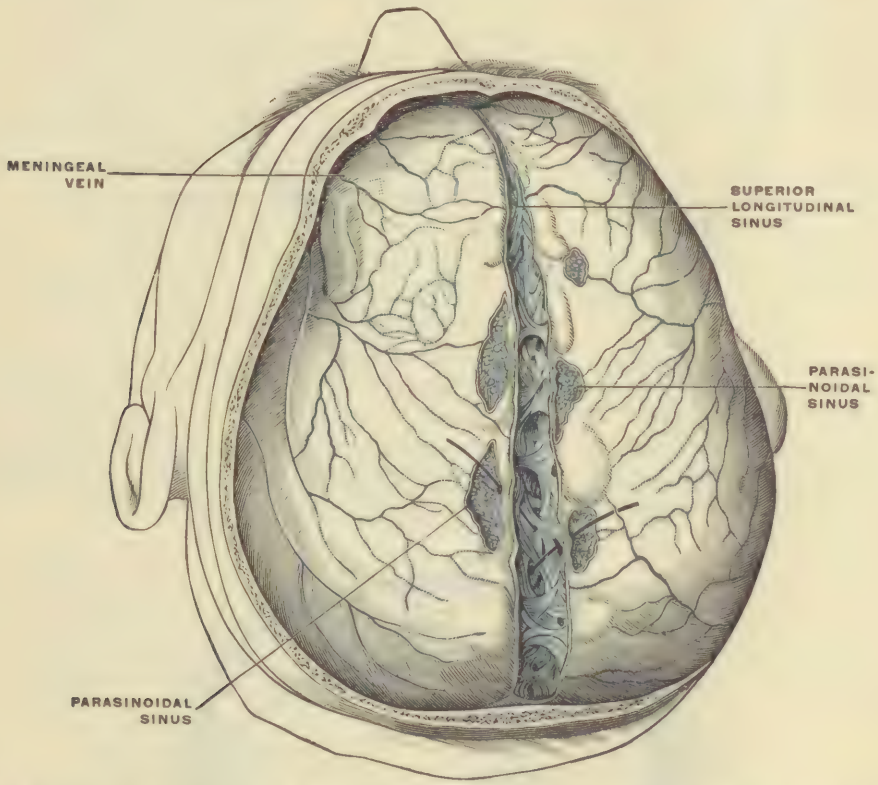


FIG. 453.—Superior longitudinal sinus seen from above after removal of the skull-cap. The chordæ Willisii are clearly visible. The para-sinoidal sinuses are also well shown. Probes passing from the latter to the longitudinal sinus show that they communicate. (Poirier and Charpy.)

the termination of the inferior longitudinal sinus to the lateral sinus of the opposite side to that into which the superior longitudinal sinus is prolonged. It communicates by a cross-branch with the torcular Herophili. Besides the inferior longitudinal sinus, it receives the vena magna Galeni and the superior cerebellar veins. A few transverse bands cross its interior. This sinus is usually considered to be formed by the union of the great vein of Galen and the inferior longitudinal sinus.

The **Lateral Sinus** (*sinus transversus*) (Figs. 451, 452, 456, and 457) is of large size. There are two lateral sinuses situated in the attached margin of the tentorium cerebelli throughout most of its extent. They commence at

the internal occipital protuberance, one, generally the right, being the direct continuation of the superior longitudinal sinus, the other of the straight sinus. Each passes outward and forward, describing a slight curve with its convexity upward, to the base of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, then, leaving the tentorium, curves downward and inward to reach the jugular foramen, where it terminates in the internal jugular vein. It rests, in its course, upon the inner surface of the occipital, the posterior inferior angle of the parietal, and the mastoid portion of the temporal bone, and on the occipital again, at the jugular process, just before its termination. The portion of the sinus resting on the mastoid process of the temporal and the jugular process of the occipital bone is not covered by the tentorium and is often called the **sigmoid sinus** because of its shape, which resembles the letter S. These sinuses are frequently of unequal size, that formed by the superior longitudinal sinus being the larger, and they increase in size as they proceed from behind forward. The horizontal portion is of a triangular form, the curved portion semicylindrical. Their inner surface is smooth, and not crossed by the fibrous bands found in the other sinuses. The lateral sinuses receive the blood from the superior petrosal sinuses at the base of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, and they unite with the inferior petrosal sinus, just external to the jugular foramen, to form the internal jugular vein (Fig. 457). They communicate with the veins of the pericranium by means of the mastoid and posterior condyloid veins, and they receive some of the inferior cerebral and inferior cerebellar veins, some veins from the diploë, and often veins from the internal ear (*vv. auditivæ internæ*), which come out of the internal auditory meatus. The **petro-squamous sinus**, when present, runs backward along the junction of the petrous and squamous portions of the temporal bone, and opens into the lateral sinus.

Surgical Anatomy.—The lateral sinus may, as a result of middle-ear disease, be attacked by suppurative inflammation, which leads to blocking (*septic thrombo-phlebitis*). In such a case the surgeon will be obliged to open the sinus to remove infected clot and tie the internal jugular vein to intercept thrombi. The lines overlying the sinus is as follows: Draw a line horizontally outward from the occipital protuberance to a point one inch posterior to a vertical line drawn through the external auditory meatus and from this point drop a second line to the mastoid process.

The **Occipital Sinus** (*sinus occipitalis*) (Fig. 452) is the smallest of the cranial sinuses. There is often but a single occipital sinus, but occasionally there are two. It is situated in the attached margin of the falx cerebelli. It commences by several small veins around the margin of the foramen magnum, one of which joins the termination of the lateral sinus; it communicates with the posterior spinal veins and terminates in the torcular Herophili.

The sinuses at the base of the skull are—the

Cavernous Sinuses.	Superior Petrosal Sinuses.
Spheno-parietal Sinuses.	Inferior Petrosal Sinuses.
Circular Sinus.	Transverse Sinus.

The **Cavernous Sinus** (*sinus cavernosus*) (Figs. 456 and 457) is named from presenting a reticulated structure, due to being traversed by numerous interlacing filaments (Fig. 454). There are two cavernous sinuses, of irregular form, larger behind than in front, and placed one on each side of the sella turcica, extending from the sphenoidal fissure to the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. Each receives anteriorly the ophthalmic vein through the sphenoidal fissure, and opens behind into the petrosal sinuses. On the inner wall of each sinus is found the internal carotid artery, accompanied by filaments of the carotid plexus and by the sixth nerve; and on its outer wall, the third, fourth, and ophthalmic division

of the fifth nerve (Fig. 454). These parts are separated from the blood flowing along the sinus by the lining membrane, which is continuous with the inner coat of the veins. The cavernous sinuses receive some of the cerebral veins, and also the spheno-parietal sinuses. They communicate with the lateral sinuses by means of the superior and inferior petrosal sinuses, and with the facial veins through the ophthalmic veins. They also communicate with each other by means of the circular sinus.

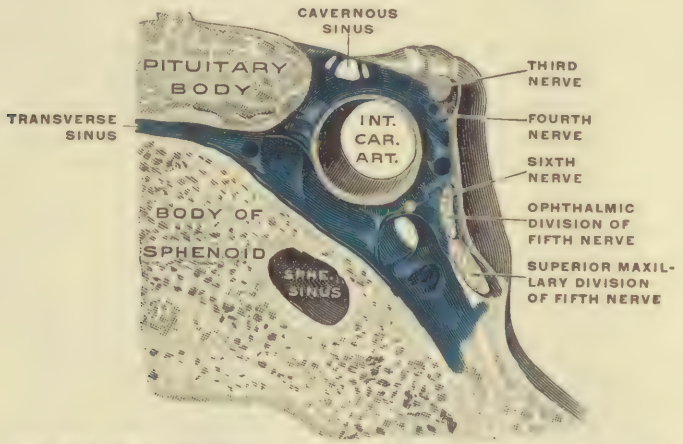


FIG. 454.—Frontal section through the right cavernous sinus. (Spalteholz.)

Surgical Anatomy.—An arterio-venous communication may be established between the cavernous sinus and the carotid artery, as it lies in it, giving rise to a *pulsating tumor* in the orbit. Such a communication may be the result of injury, such as a bullet wound, a stab, or a blow or fall sufficiently severe to cause a fracture of the base of the skull in this situation, or it may occur from the rupture of an aneurism or a diseased condition of the internal carotid artery. The disease begins with sudden noise and pain in the head, followed by exophthalmos, swelling and congestion of the lids and conjunctivæ. A pulsating tumor develops at the margin of the orbit, with thrill and the characteristic bruit; accompanying these symptoms there may be impairment of sight, paralysis of the iris and orbital muscles, and pain of varying intensity. In some cases the opposite orbit becomes affected by the passage of the arterial blood into the opposite sinus by means of the circular sinus. Or the arterial blood may find its way through the emissary veins into the pterygoid plexus, and thence into the veins of the face. Pulsating tumors of the orbit may also be due to traumatic aneurism of one of the orbital arteries, and symptoms resembling those of pulsating tumor may be produced by pressure on the ophthalmic vein, as it enters the sinus, by an aneurism of the internal carotid artery.

The Spheno-parietal Sinus or Sinus Alæ Parvæ (*sinus sphenoparietalis*).—Each of these sinuses is lodged in the dura mater on the under surface of the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone. It takes origin from one of the middle meningeal veins, usually receives blood from the diploë of the skull, passes inward, and ends in the anterior part of the cavernous sinus.

The **Ophthalmic Veins** are two in number, **superior** and **inferior.**

The **superior ophthalmic vein** (*v. ophthalmica superior*) (Fig. 455) begins as the **naso-frontal vein** (*v. nasofrontalis*), at the inner angle of the orbit, which communicates with the angular vein. It joins the angular vein with the cavernous sinus; it pursues the same course as the ophthalmic artery, and receives tributaries corresponding to the branches derived from that vessel. Forming a short single trunk, it passes through the inner extremity of the sphenoidal fissure, and terminates in the cavernous sinus. It anastomoses with the inferior ophthalmic vein and receives lachrymal, anterior, and posterior ethmoidal and muscular branches, and veins of the eyelids and of the bulbus oculi.

The **inferior ophthalmic vein** (*v. ophthalmica inferior*) (Fig. 455) *arises* in the veins of the eyelids and lachrymal sac, receives the veins from the floor of the orbit, and

FIG. 455.—Veins of the orbit. (Poirier and Charpy.)

from the portion of the nasal fossa supplied by the anterior and posterior ethmoidal arteries. It either passes out of the orbit through the spheno-maxillary fissure to join the pterygoid plexus of veins, or else, passing backward through the sphenoidal

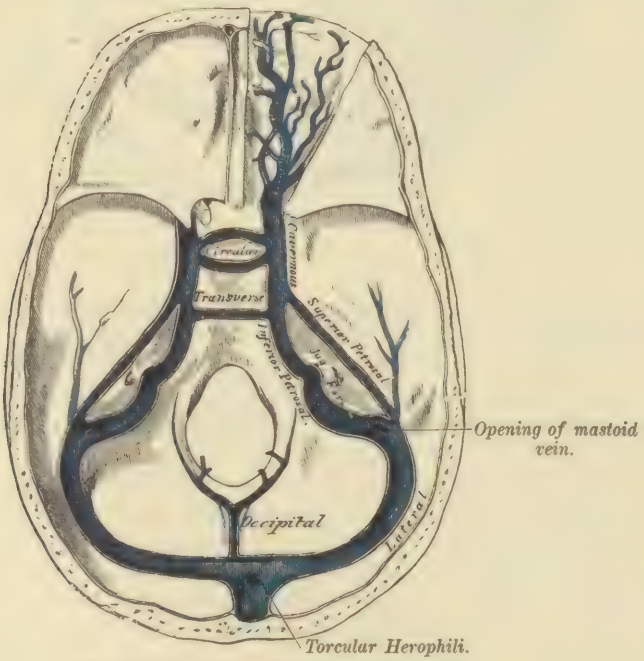


FIG. 456.—The sinuses at the base of the skull.

fissure, it enters the cavernous sinus, either by a separate opening, or, more frequently, in common with the superior ophthalmic vein. It receives muscular

branches and veins of the bulbus oculi, and anastomoses with the superior ophthalmic vein.

The **Circular Sinus** (*sinus circularis*) (Figs. 454 and 456) is formed by two transverse vessels, the **anterior** and **posterior intercavernous sinuses** (*sinus intercavernous anterior* and *sinus intercavernous posterior*), which connect together the two cavernous sinuses; the one passing in front and the other behind the pituitary body, and thus forming with the cavernous sinuses a venous circle around that body. The anterior one is usually the larger of the two, and one or other is occasionally found to be absent.

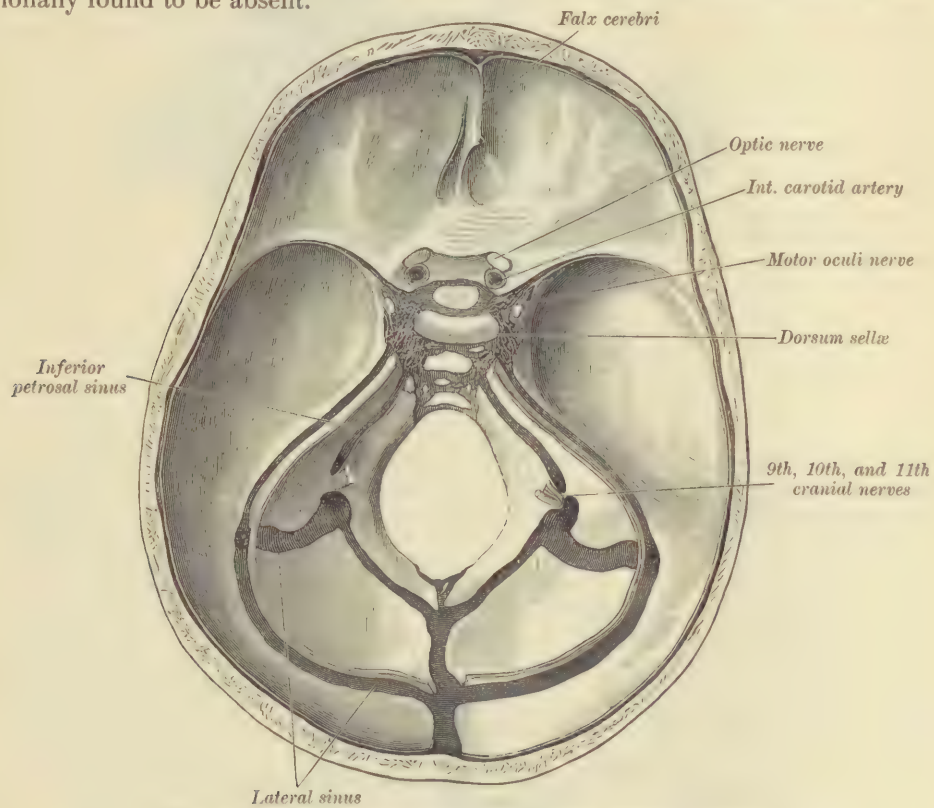


FIG. 457.—Relation of nerves to sinuses in jugular foramen. (Henle.)

The **Superior Petrosal Sinus** (*sinus petrosus superior*) (Figs. 452 and 456) is situated along the superior border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, in the front part of the attached margin of the tentorium. It is small and narrow, and connects together the cavernous and lateral sinuses at each side. It receives some cerebellar and inferior cerebral veins, and usually veins from the tympanic cavity (*vv. auditivæ internæ*).

The **Inferior Petrosal Sinus** (*sinus petrosus inferior*) (Figs. 452 and 456) is situated in the groove formed by the junction of the posterior border of the petrous portion of the temporal with the basilar process of the occipital bone. It *commences* in front at the termination of the cavernous sinus, and behind joins the lateral sinus after it has passed through the jugular foramen; the junction of these two sinuses forming the commencement of the internal jugular vein. The inferior petrosal sinus receives a vein from the internal ear and also veins from the medulla, pons, and under surface of the cerebellum.

The junction of the two sinuses takes place at the lower border of, or just external to, the jugular foramen. The exact relation of the parts to one another

in the foramen is as follows: The inferior petrosal sinus is in front, with the meningeal branch of the ascending pharyngeal artery, and is directed obliquely downward and backward; the lateral sinus is situated at the back part of the foramen with a meningeal branch of the occipital artery, and between the two are the glosso-pharyngeal, pneumogastric, and spinal accessory nerves (Fig. 457). These three sets of structures are divided from each other by two processes of fibrous tissue. The junction of the sinuses takes place superficial to the nerves, so that these latter lie a little internal to the venous channels in the foramen (see Fig. 457). These sinuses are semicylindrical in form.

The **Transverse** or **Basilar Sinus** (*plexus basilaris*) (Figs. 456 and 457) consists of several interlacing veins between the layers of the dura mater over the basilar process of the occipital bone, which serve to connect the two inferior petrosal sinuses. With them the anterior spinal veins communicate.

Emissary Veins (*emissaria*).—The emissary veins are vessels which pass through apertures in the cranial wall and establish communications between the sinuses inside the skull and the diploic veins in the diploë, and the veins external to the skull. Some of these are always present, others only occasionally so. They vary much in size in different individuals. The principal emissary veins are the following: 1. A vein, almost always present, which passes through the mastoid foramen (*emissarium mastoideum*) and connects the lateral sinus with the posterior auricular or with an occipital vein. 2. A constant vein which passes through the parietal foramen (*emissarium parietale*) and connects the superior longitudinal sinus with the veins of the scalp. 3. A plexus of minute veins which pass through the anterior condyloid foramen (*emissarium condyloideum*) and connect the occipital sinus with the vertebral vein and deep veins of the neck. 4. An inconstant vein which passes through the posterior condyloid foramen and connects the lateral sinus with the deep veins of the neck. 5. One or two veins of considerable size which pass through the foramen ovale and connect the cavernous sinus with the pterygoid and pharyngeal plexuses. 6. Two or three small veins which pass through the foramen lacerum medium and connect the cavernous sinus with the pterygoid and pharyngeal plexuses. 7. There is sometimes a small vein connecting the same parts and passing through the inconstant foramen of Vesalius at the root of the pterygoid process of the sphenoid bone. 8. A plexus of veins passing through the carotid canal and connecting the cavernous sinus with the internal jugular vein. 9. A small vein (*emissarium occipitale*) usually connects the occipital vein with the lateral sinus or the torcular Herophili and the occipital diploic vein.

Surgical Anatomy.—These emissary veins are of great importance in surgery. In addition to them there are, however, other communications between the intra- and extra-cranial circulation, as, for instance, the communication of the angular and supra-orbital veins with the ophthalmic vein at the inner angle of the orbit, and the communication of the veins of the scalp with the diploic veins. Through these communications inflammatory processes commencing on the outside of the skull may travel inward, leading to osteo-phlebitis of the diploë and inflammation of the membranes of the brain. To this in former days was to be attributed one of the principal dangers of scalp wounds and other injuries of the scalp.

By means of these emissary veins blood may be abstracted almost directly from the intracranial circulation. For instance, leeches applied behind the ear abstract blood almost directly from the lateral sinus by means of the vein passing through the mastoid foramen. Again, epistaxis in children will frequently relieve severe headache, the blood which flows from the nose being derived from the longitudinal sinus by means of the vein which passes through the foramen cæcum, which is another communication between the intracranial and extracranial circulation constantly found in children.

VEINS OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY AND THORAX.

The veins of the Upper Extremity are divided into two sets, **superficial** and **deep.**

The **Superficial Veins** are placed immediately beneath the integument between the layers of superficial fascia.

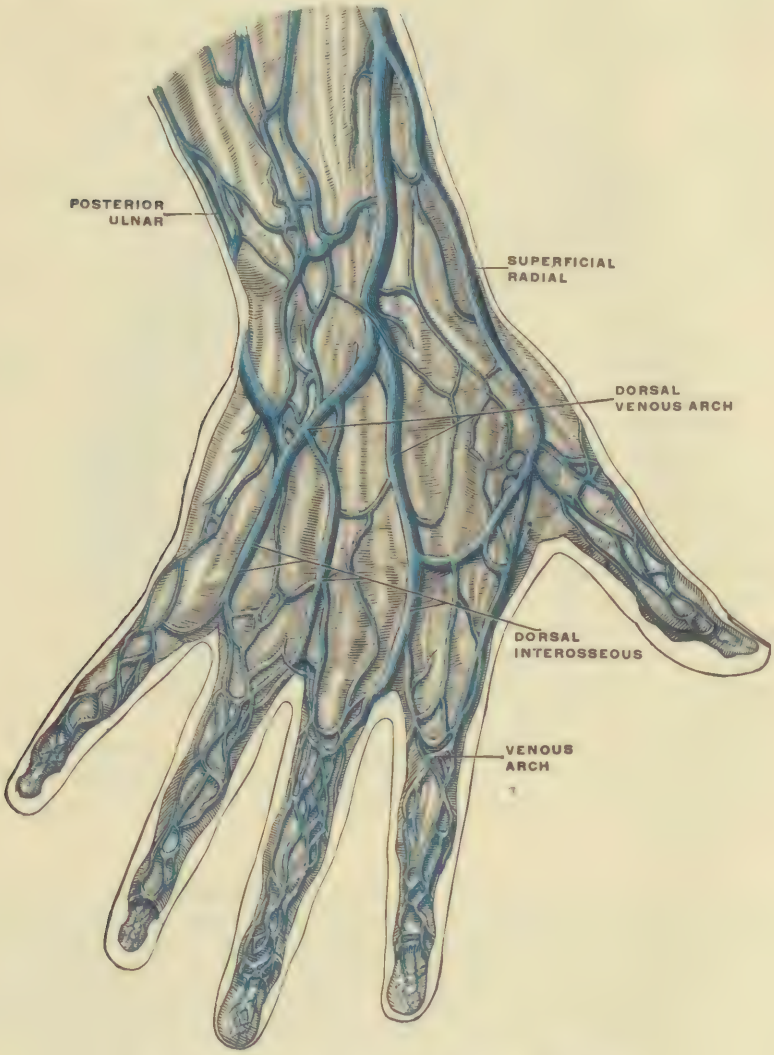


FIG. 458.—The veins on the dorsum of the hand. (Bourgery.)

The **Deep Veins** accompany the arteries, and constitute the venæ comites of those vessels.

Both sets of vessels are provided with valves, which are more numerous in the deep than in the superficial veins.

The Superficial Veins of the Upper Extremity (Fig. 459).

The superficial veins of the upper extremity are—the

Superficial Veins of the Hand.	Median.
Anterior Ulnar.	Median Cephalic.
Posterior Ulnar.	Median Basilic.
Common Ulnar.	Basilic.
Radial.	Cephalic.

The **Superficial Veins of the Hand and Fingers** (Figs. 458 and 459) are principally situated on the dorsal surface. These dorsal veins *begin* in each finger as a venous plexus, in which are distinct veins running in a longitudinal direction, and called **dorsal digital veins** (*vv. digitales dorsales propriæ*). The dorsal digital veins terminate over the first phalanges, in the **venous arches of the fingers** (*arcus venosi digitales*). From these arches take origin the four **dorsal interosseous** or the **interdigital veins** (*vv. metacarpeæ dorsales*). These veins form the **dorsal venous plexus of the hand** (*rete venosum dorsale manus*). This plexus lies in a line with the lower ends of the shafts of the metacarpal bones. It receives the dorsal interosseous veins, the radial digital vein of the index finger, and numerous superficial veins from the back of the hand. It gives origin to the superficial radial vein and the posterior ulnar vein. The superficial veins of the palmar surface are of less diameter than the dorsal veins. They arise from each of the phalanges by a plexus (*vv. digitales volares propriæ*). Vessels at the edges of the fingers take most of the blood to the dorsal veins. There are also veins in the finger webs (*vv. intercapitulares*), which take blood from the palm to the dorsum. A superficial plexus, the **palmar plexus**, lies upon the palmar fascia, the fascia of the thenar eminence, and the fascia of the hypothenar eminence.

The **Anterior Ulnar Vein** (*v. ulnaris anterior*) (Fig. 459) *commences* on the anterior surface of the ulnar side of the hand and wrist, and ascends along the anterior surface of the ulnar side of the forearm to the bend of the elbow, where it joins with the posterior ulnar vein to form the common ulnar. Occasionally it opens separately into the median basilic vein. It communicates with branches of the median vein in front and with the posterior ulnar behind.

The **Posterior** or **Dorsal Ulnar Vein** (*v. ulnaris posterior*) (Fig. 458) *commences* on the posterior surface of the ulnar side of the wrist. It runs on the posterior surface of the ulnar side of the forearm, and just below the elbow unites with the anterior ulnar vein to form the common ulnar, or else joins the median basilic and helps to form the basilic. It communicates with the deep veins of the palm by a branch which emerges from beneath the Abductor minimi digiti muscle.

The **Common Ulnar Vein** (*v. ulnaris communis*) (Fig. 459) is a short trunk which is not constant. When it exists it is *formed* by the junction of the two preceding veins, and, passing upward and outward, joins the median basilic to form the basilic vein. When it does not exist the anterior and posterior ulnar veins open separately into the median basilic vein.

The **Radial Vein** (*v. radialis*) (Figs. 459 and 460) *commences* upon the dorsal surface of the wrist, communicating with the deep veins of the palm by a branch which passes through the first interosseous space. The radial vein soon forms a large vessel, which ascends along the radial side of the forearm and receives numerous veins from both its surfaces. At the bend of the elbow it unites with the median cephalic to form the cephalic vein. Spalteholz considers the ulnar vein as a portion of the basilic and the radial vein a portion of the cephalic.

The **Median Vein** (*v. mediana cubiti*) (Fig. 459) ascends on the front of the forearm, and communicates with the anterior ulnar and radial veins. At the bend

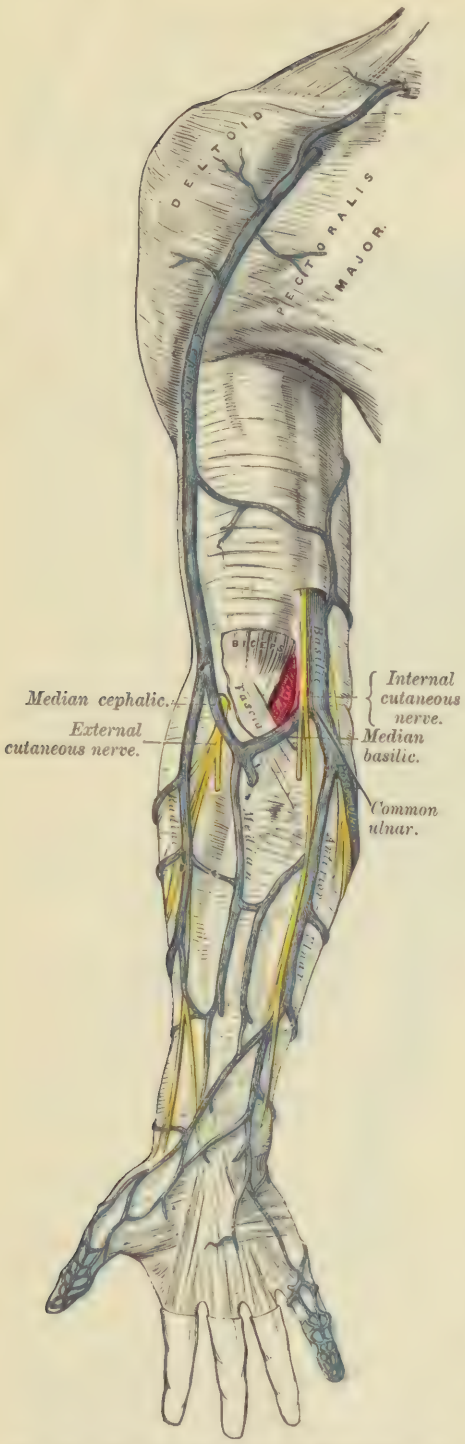


FIG. 459.—The superficial veins of the flexor aspect of the upper extremity.

of the elbow it receives a branch of communication from the deep veins, the **deep median vein**, and divides into two branches, the **median cephalic** and **median basilic**, which diverge from each other as they ascend.

The **Median Cephalic** (*v. mediana cephalica*) (Fig. 459), usually the smaller of the two, passes outward in the groove between the Supinator longus and Biceps muscles, and joins with the radial to form the cephalic vein. The branches of the external cutaneous nerve pass beneath this vessel.

The **Median Basilic Vein** (*v. mediana basilica*) (Fig. 459) passes obliquely inward, in the groove between the Biceps and Pronator radii teres muscles, and joins the common ulnar to form the basilic. This vein passes in front of the brachial artery, from which it is separated by a fibrous expansion, the **bicipital fascia**, which is given off from the tendon of the Biceps to the fascia covering the Flexor muscles of the forearm. Filaments of the internal cutaneous nerve pass in front as well as behind this vessel.[1]

Venesection is usually performed at the bend of the elbow, and as a matter of practice the largest vein in this situation is commonly selected. This is usually the median basilic, and there are anatomical advantages and disadvantages in selecting this vein. The advantages are, that in addition to its being the largest, and therefore yielding a greater supply of blood, it is the least movable and can be easily steadied on the bicipital fascia on which it rests. The disadvantages are, that it is in close relationship with the brachial artery, separated only by the bicipital fascia; and formerly, when venesection was frequently practised, arterio-venous aneurism was no uncommon result of this practice. Another disadvantage is, that the median basilic is crossed by some of the branches of the internal cutaneous nerve, and these may be divided in the operation, giving rise to "traumatic neuralgia of extreme intensity" (Tillaux).

The **Basilic Vein** (*v. basilica*) (Figs. 460 and 462) is of considerable size and is formed by the coalescence of the common ulnar vein with the median

[1] Cruveilhier says: "Numerous varieties are observed in the disposition of the veins of the elbow; sometimes the common median vein is wanting; but in those cases its two branches are furnished by the radial vein, and the cephalic is almost always in a rudimentary condition. In other cases only two veins are found at the bend of the elbow, the radial and ulnar, which are continuous, without any demarcation, with the cephalic and basilic."—ED. of 15th English edition.

basilic. It passes upward along the inner side of the Biceps muscle and pierces the deep fascia a little below the middle of the arm. The opening in the fascia is known as the **semilunar hiatus** (*hiatus semilunaris*). The vein ascends in the course of the brachial artery to the lower border of the tendons of the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major muscles, and is continued onward as the axillary vein.

The **Cephalic Vein** (*v. cephalica*) (Fig. 459) is formed by the union of the median cephalic and the radial veins. It courses along the outer border of the Biceps muscle, lying in the same groove with the upper external cutaneous branch of the musculo-spiral nerve, to the upper third of the arm; it then passes in the interval between the Pectoralis major and Deltoid muscles, lying in the same groove with the descending or humeral branch of the acromial-thoracic artery. It pierces the costo-coracoid membrane, and, crossing the axillary artery, terminates in the axillary vein just below the clavicle. This vein is occasionally connected with the external jugular or subclavian by a branch which passes from it upward in front of the clavicle.

The Deep Veins of the Upper Extremity (Fig. 460).

The deep veins of the upper extremity follow the course of the arteries, forming their **venæ comites** or **companion veins.** Usually there is one vein lying on each side of the corresponding artery, and they are connected at intervals by short transverse branches.

There are two **digital veins** accompanying each artery along the sides of the fingers: these, uniting at their base, pass along the interosseous spaces in the palm, and terminate in the two venæ comites which accompany the superficial palmar arch. Branches from these vessels on the radial side of the hand accompany the superficialis volæ, and on the ulnar side terminate in the **deep ulnar veins** (Fig. 460). The deep ulnar veins, as they pass in front of the wrist, communicate with the interosseous and superficial veins, and at the elbow unite with the deep radial veins to form the venæ comites of the brachial artery. The venæ comites of the brachial communicate by numerous transverse branches, which cross over or under the artery.

The **Interosseous Veins** (Fig. 460) accompany the anterior and posterior interosseous arteries. The anterior interosseous veins *commence* in front of the wrist, where they communicate with the deep radial and ulnar veins; at the upper part of the forearm they receive the posterior interosseous veins, and terminate in the venæ comites of the ulnar artery.

The **Deep Palmar Veins** accompany the deep palmar arch, being formed by tributaries which accompany the ramifications of that vessel. At the wrist they receive a dorsal and a palmar tributary from the thumb. The deep palmar veins communicate with the deep ulnar veins at the inner side of the hand, and on the outer side terminate in the **deep radial veins** (Fig. 460), which are the venæ comites of the radial artery. Accompanying the radial artery the deep radial veins terminate in the venæ comites of the brachial artery.

The **Brachial Veins** (*vv. brachiales*) (Fig. 460) are placed one on each side of the brachial artery, receiving tributaries corresponding with the branches given off from that vessel; at the lower margin of the Subscapularis muscle they join the axillary vein.

These deep veins have numerous anastomoses, not only with each other, but also with the superficial veins. One of the brachial veins empties into the axillary, the other, usually the smaller, generally unites with the basilic.

The **Axillary Vein** (*v. axillaris*) (Fig. 461) is of large size, and may be regarded as the continuation upward of the basilic vein, or as formed by the fusion of a brachial vein with the basilic vein. If the first view is accepted a brachial vein is described as one of the tributaries of the axillary vein. The axillary vein com-

mences at the lower border of the tendons of the Teres major and Latissimus dorsi muscles, increases in size as it ascends, by receiving tributaries corresponding with the branches of the axillary artery, and terminates immediately beneath the clavicle at the outer border of the first rib, where it becomes the subclavian vein. This vessel is covered in front by the Pectoral muscles and costocoracoid membrane, and lies on the thoracic side of the axillary artery, which it partially overlaps. It receives the brachial veins, the venæ comites of the axillary artery except the circumflex veins; and near its termination the cephalic vein. This vein is provided with a pair of valves opposite the lower border of the Subscapularis muscle; valves are also found at the termination of the cephalic and subscapular veins. The circumflex veins end in the subscapular or one of the brachial veins.

The **Long Thoracic Branch** (*v. thoracalis lateralis*) (Fig. 462) receives the **thoracico-epigastric vein** (*v. thoracoepigastrica*), which comes all the way from the superficial epigastric or from the femoral vein.

The **Costo-axillary Veins** (*vv. costoaxillares*) (Fig. 462) come from the first six intercostal spaces and bring blood from the intercostal veins to the axillary.

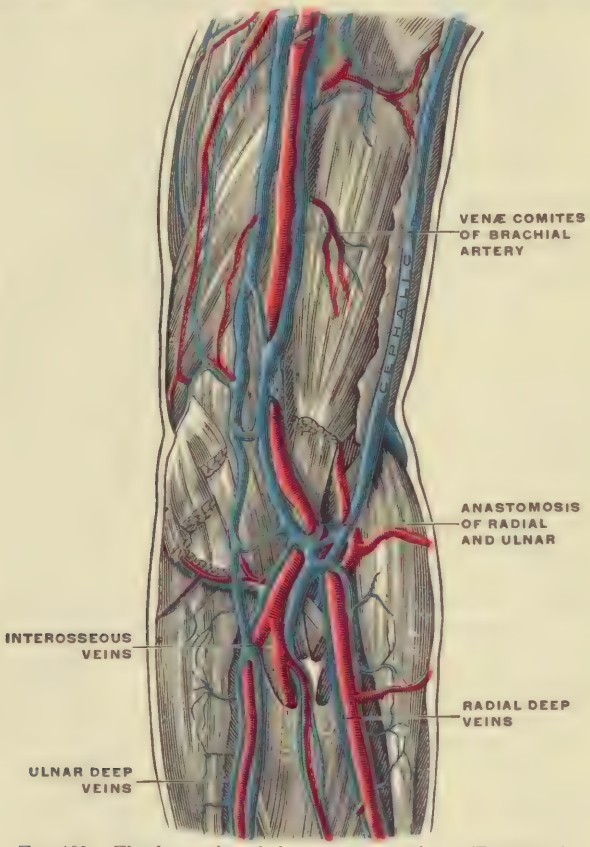


FIG. 460.—The deep veins of the upper extremity. (Bourgery.)

Surgical Anatomy.—There are several points of surgical interest in connection with the axillary vein. Being more superficial, larger, and slightly overlapping the axillary artery, it is more liable to be wounded in the operation of extirpation of the axillary glands, especially as these glands, when diseased, are apt to become adherent to the vessel. When wounded there is always danger of air being drawn into its interior, and death resulting. This is due not only to the fact that it is near the thorax, and therefore liable to be influenced by the respiratory movements, but also because it is adherent by its anterior surface to the costo-coracoid membrane, and therefore if wounded is likely to remain patulous and favor the chance of air being sucked in. This adhesion of the vein to the fascia prevents its collapsing, and therefore favors the furious bleeding which takes place in these cases.

To avoid wounding the axillary vein in the extirpation of glands from the axilla no undue force should be used in isolating the glands. If the vein is found to be so embedded in the malignant deposit that the latter cannot be removed without taking away a part of the vein, this must be done, the vessel having been first ligated above and below.

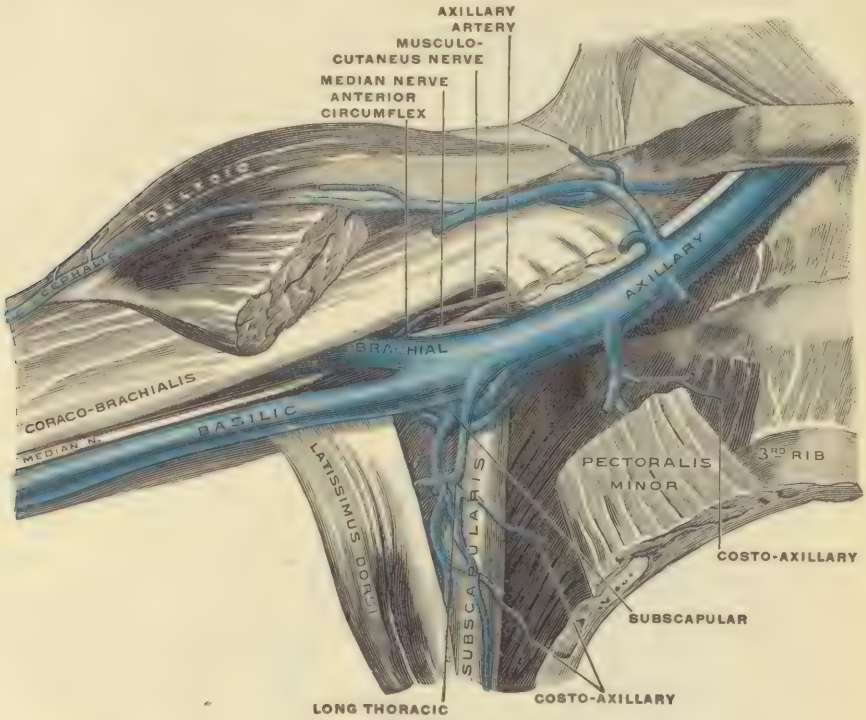


FIG. 461.—The veins of the right axilla, viewed from in front. (Spalteholz.)

The **Subclavian Vein** (*v. subclavia*) (Figs. 421 and 446), the continuation of the axillary, extends from the outer border of the first rib to the inner end of the clavicle, where it unites with the internal jugular to form the innominate vein. It is in relation, in *front*, with the clavicle and Subclavius muscle; *behind* and *above*, with the subclavian artery, from which it is separated internally by the Scalenus anticus muscle and phrenic nerve. *Below*, it rests in a depression on the first rib and upon the pleura. *Above*, it is covered by the cervical fascia and integument.

An expansion of the aponeurosis of the Subclavius muscle lies upon the vein (Fig. 462).

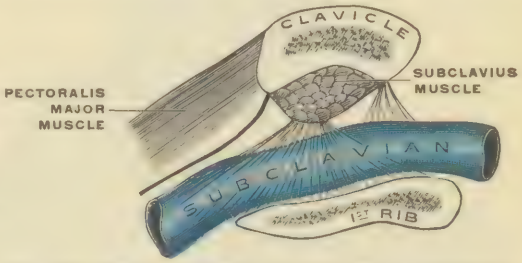


FIG. 462.—The aponeurotic expansion of the Subclavius muscle over the subclavian vein. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The subclavian vein occasionally rises in the neck to a level with the third part of the subclavian artery, and in two instances has been seen passing with this vessel behind the Scalenus anticus. This vessel is usually provided with valves about an inch from its termination in the innominate, just external to the entrance of the external jugular vein.

Tributaries.—It receives the external and anterior jugular veins and a small branch from the cephalic, outside the Scalenus, and on the inner side of that muscle the internal jugular vein. At the angle of junction with the internal

jugular the left subclavian vein receives the thoracic duct (Fig. 463), while the right subclavian vein receives the right lymphatic duct.

The **Innominate** or **Brachio-cephalic Veins** (*vv. anonymæ*) (Fig. 464) are two large trunks, placed one on each side of the root of the neck, and formed by the union of the internal jugular and subclavian veins of the corresponding side.

The **Right Innominate Vein** (*v. anonyma dextra*) is a short vessel, an inch in length, which *commences* at the inner end of the clavicle, and, passing almost vertically downward, joins with the left innominate vein just below the cartilage of the first rib, close to the right border of the sternum, to form the superior vena cava. It lies superficial and external to the innominate artery; on its right side is the phrenic nerve, and the pleura is here interposed between it and the apex of the lung. This vein, at the angle of junction of the internal jugular with the subclavian, receives the right vertebral vein, and, lower down, the right internal mammary, right inferior thyroid, and sometimes the right thyroidea ima and the right superior intercostal veins.

The **Left Innominate Vein** (*v. anonyma sinistra*), about two and a half inches in length, and larger than the right, passes from left to right across the upper and front part of the chest, at the same time inclining downward, and unites

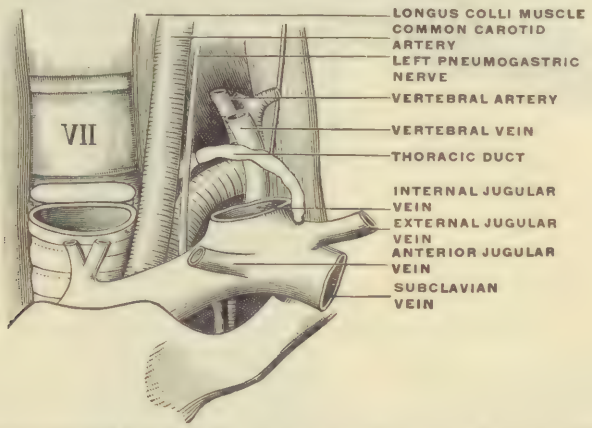


FIG. 463.—The bend of the thoracic duct at its termination in the subclavian vein. (Poirier and Charpy.)

with the right innominate vein to form the **superior vena cava.** It is in relation, in *front*, with the first piece of the sternum, from which it is separated by the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the thymus gland or its remains, and some loose areolar tissue. *Behind*, it lies across the roots of the three large arteries arising from the arch of the aorta. This vessel is joined by the left vertebral, left internal mammary, left inferior thyroid, left thyroidea ima, and the left superior intercostal veins, and occasionally some thymic and pericardiac veins, and the right thyroidea ima. There are no valves in the innominate veins.

Peculiarities.—Sometimes the innominate veins open *separately* into the right auricle; in such cases the right vein takes the ordinary course of the superior vena cava; but the left vein—the **left superior vena cava,** as it is termed—after communicating by a small branch with the right one, passes in front of the root of the left lung, and, turning to the back of the heart, receives the cardiac veins, and terminates in the back of the right auricle. This occasional condition in the adult is due to the persistence of the early fœtal condition, and is the normal state of things in birds and some mammalia.

The **Internal Mammary Vein** (*v. mammaria interna*) corresponds to the internal mammary artery, follows the course of that vessel, and receives branches corresponding with those derived from it. There are two internal mammary veins in the region of the Triangularis sterni muscle, but above this point the vein is single. The double vein is formed by the union of the venæ comites of the superior epigastric

artery (*vv. epigastricæ superiores*) and the venæ comites of the musculo-phrenic artery (*vv. musculophrenicæ*). It receives the twelve anterior intercostal veins from the upper six intercostal spaces of the corresponding side—six anterior perforating veins (*rami perforantes*)—veins from the surface of the sternum (*rami sternales*)—muscular veins, and vessels from the mediastinum and pleura. The two veins of each side unite into a single trunk, at the upper margin of the triangularis sterni muscle, which terminates in the innominate vein.

The Vertebral Vein (see p. 732).

The **Inferior Thyroid Veins** (*vv. thyreoideæ inferiores*) (Fig. 464), two, frequently three or four, in number, *arise* in the **venous plexus on the thyroid body** (*plexus thyreoideus impar*), communicating with the middle and superior thyroid veins. (See Kocher's views, pages 731 and 732.) Kocher states that two thyroidea ima veins are present, and that inferior thyroid veins may also be present. The veins from the lower portion of the gland form a plexus in front of the trachea, behind the Sterno-thyroid muscles. From this plexus a left vein descends and joins the left innominate trunk, and a right vein passes obliquely downward and outward across the innominate artery to open into the right innominate vein, just at its junction with the superior vena cava. The **thyroidea ima vein** (*v. thyreoidea ima*) passes downward in front of the trachea and terminates in the left innominate vein. These veins receive tributaries from the **tracheal veins** (*vv. tracheales*), from the **œsophageal veins** (*vv. œsophageæ*), from the **inferior laryngeal vein** (*v. laryngea inferior*).

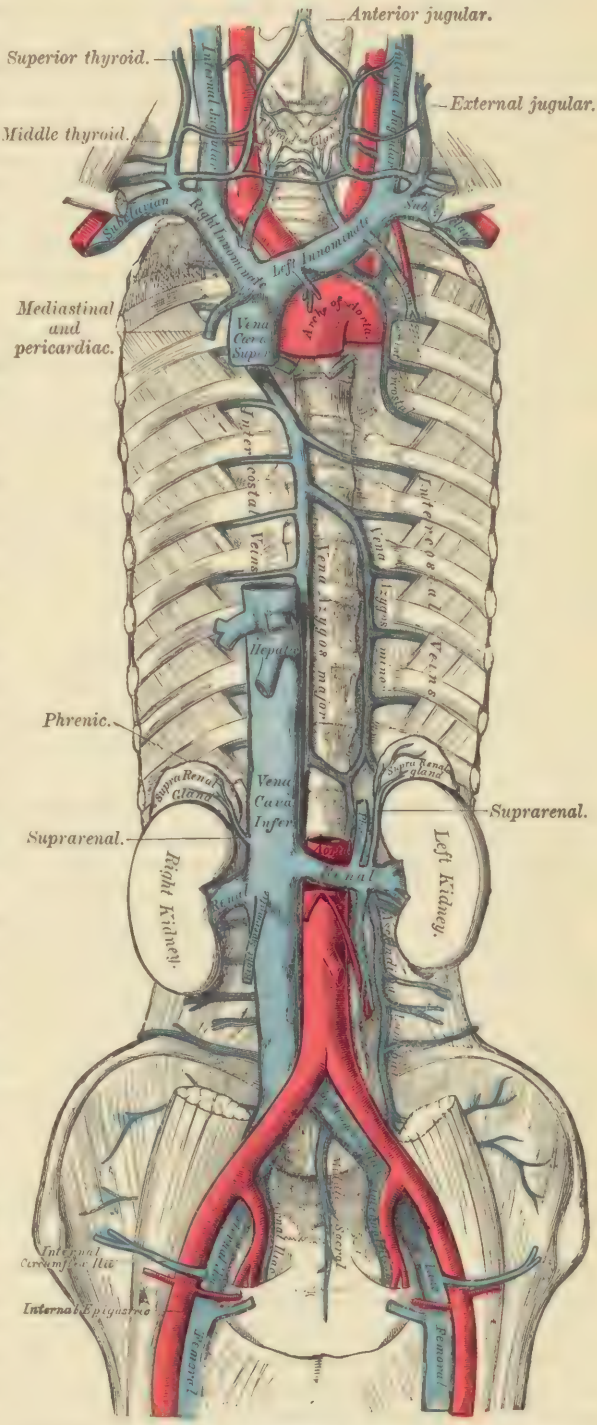


FIG. 464.—The venæ cavæ and azygos veins, with their formative branches.

The **Intercostal Veins** (*vv. intercostales*) are divided into anterior and posterior intercostals.

The **Anterior Intercostal Veins** are tributaries of the internal mammary or the musculo-phrenic veins (p. 731).

The **Posterior Intercostal Veins** (Fig. 464) number eleven on each side, there being one vein in each intercostal space. Each vein lies in the groove at the lower margin of the rib above the corresponding intercostal artery. On the right side the first posterior intercostal vein crosses the neck of the first rib anteriorly and opens into the vertebral vein or the innominate vein. The first posterior intercostal of the left side follows a like course, and empties into the vertebral or innominate vein. The posterior intercostals of the right side, from the fifth to the eleventh, inclusive, open individually into the vena azygos major. The left upper azygos vein receives the fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth posterior intercostals of the left side. The left lower azygos vein receives the ninth, tenth, and eleventh left posterior intercostals.

The **Right Superior Intercostal Vein** (*v. intercostalis suprema dextra*) is formed by the union of the second, third, and fourth right posterior intercostals. It passes downward and inward and opens into the vena azygos major.

The **Left Superior Intercostal Vein** (*v. intercostalis suprema sinister*) runs across the transverse aorta and opens into the left innominate vein. It usually receives the left bronchial and left superior phrenic vein, and communicates below with the vena azygos minor superior. Each posterior intercostal vein obtains branches from the ribs and muscles and also a dorsal branch, which receives blood from the muscles of the back, from in front of the vertebral bodies, from back of the vertebral arches, and from the spinal canal by way of a vein which passes through the intervertebral foramen.

The **Superior Vena Cava** (*v. cava superior*) (Fig. 464) receives the blood which is conveyed to the heart from the whole of the upper half of the body. It is a short trunk, varying from two inches and a half to three inches in length, formed by the junction of the two innominate veins. It *commences* immediately below the cartilage of the first rib close to the sternum on the right side, and, descending vertically, enters the pericardium about an inch and a half above the heart, and terminates in the upper part of the right auricle opposite the upper border of the third right costal cartilage. In its course it describes a slight curve, the convexity of which is turned to the right side.

Relations.—*In front*, with the pericardium and process of cervical fascia which is continuous with it: this separates it from the thymus gland and from the sternum; *behind*, with the root of the right lung; on its *right side*, with the phrenic nerve and right pleura; on its *left side*, with the commencement of the innominate artery and ascending part of the aorta. The portion contained within the pericardium is covered by the serous layer of that membrane in its anterior three-fourths. It receives the vena azygos major just before it enters the pericardium, and several small veins from the pericardium and parts in the mediastinum. The superior vena cava has no valves.

The **Azygos Veins** connect together the superior and inferior venæ cavæ, taking the place of those vessels in that part of the chest occupied by the heart.

The **Larger** or **Right Azygos Vein** or the **Vena Azygos Major** (*v. azygos*) (Fig. 464) *commences* opposite the first or second lumbar vertebra by a branch from the right lumbar veins, called the **right ascending lumbar vein** (*v. lumbalis ascendens dextra*); sometimes by a branch from the right renal vein or from the inferior vena cava. It enters the thorax through the aortic opening in the Diaphragm, and passes along the right side of the vertebral column to the fourth dorsal vertebra, where it arches forward over the root of the right lung, and terminates in the superior vena cava just before that vessel enters the pericardium. Whilst passing through the

aortic opening of the Diaphragm it lies with the thoracic duct on the right side of the aorta, and in the thorax it lies upon the intercostal arteries on the right side of the aorta and thoracic duct, and is partly covered by pleura.

Tributaries.—It receives the lower ten posterior intercostal veins of the right side, the upper two or three of these opening first of all into the right superior intercostal vein. It receives the azygos minor veins, several œsophageal, mediastinal, and pericardial veins; near its termination, the right bronchial vein; and generally the right superior intercostal vein. A few imperfect valves are found in this vein; but its tributaries are provided with complete valves.

The intercostal veins on the left side, below the three upper intercostal spaces, usually form two trunks, named the **left lower** and the **left upper azygos veins.**

The **Left Lower** or **Smaller Azygos Vein** or the **Vena Azygos Minor** (*v. hemiazygos*) (Fig. 464) commences in the lumbar region by a branch from one of the lumbar veins, **ascending lumbar** (*v. lumbalis ascendens*), or from the left renal. It passes into the thorax through the left crus of the Diaphragm, and, descending on the left side of the spine as high as the ninth dorsal vertebra, passes across the column, behind the aorta and thoracic duct, to terminate in the right azygos vein. It receives the four or five lower intercostal veins of the left side, and some œsophageal and mediastinal veins.

The **Left Upper Azygos Vein** (*v. hemiazygos accessoria*) varies inversely with the size of the left superior intercostal. It receives veins from the intercostal spaces between the left superior intercostal vein and highest tributary of the left lower azygos. They are usually three or four in number, usually the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh left posterior intercostal veins. They join to form a trunk which ends in the right azygos vein or in the left lower azygos. It sometimes receives the left bronchial vein. When this vein is small or altogether wanting, the left superior intercostal vein will extend as low as the fifth or sixth intercostal space.

Surgical Anatomy.—In obstruction of the inferior vena cava the azygos veins are one of the principal means by which the venous circulation is carried on, connecting as they do the superior and inferior venæ cavæ, and communicating with the common iliac veins by the ascending lumbar veins, and with many of the tributaries of the inferior vena cava.

The **Bronchial Veins** (*vv. bronchiales*) return the blood from the substance of the lungs, except from the smaller bronchial tubes and alveola. The blood from them is received by the pulmonary veins. The bronchial vein of the right side opens into the vena azygos major near its termination. The bronchial vein of the left side opens into the left superior intercostal vein or the left upper azygos vein. The bronchial veins are joined by veins from the trachea and mediastinum.

The Spinal Veins.

The numerous venous plexuses placed upon and within the spine may be arranged into four sets:

1. Those placed on the exterior of the spinal column, the **dorsi-spinal veins.**
2. Those situated in the interior of the spinal canal, between the vertebræ and the theca vertebralis, **meningo-rachidian veins.**
3. The veins of the bodies of the vertebræ, **venæ basis vertebrarum.**
4. The veins of the spinal cord, **medulli-spinal veins.**

1. The **Dorsi-spinal Veins** (*plexus venosi vertebrales externi*) commence by small branches which receive their blood from the integument of the back of the spine and from the muscles in the vertebral grooves. They constitute two plexuses: an **anterior plexus** (*plexus venosi vertebrales anteriores*) upon the vertebral bodies and a **posterior plexus** (*plexus venosi vertebrales posteriores*), which surrounds the spinous processes, the laminæ, and the transverse and articular processes of

all the vertebræ. At the bases of the transverse processes they communicate, by means of ascending and descending branches, with the veins surrounding the contiguous vertebræ, and they join with the veins in the spinal canal by branches which perforate the ligamenta subflava. Other branches pass obliquely forward, between the transverse processes, and communicate with the intraspinal veins through the intervertebral foramina (*vv. intervertebrales*). The dorsi-spinal veins terminate by joining the vertebral veins in the neck, the intercostal veins in the thorax, and the lumbar and sacral veins in the loins and pelvis.

FIG. 465.—Transverse section of a dorsal vertebra, showing the spinal veins.

2. The **Meningo-rachidian Veins** (*plexus venosi vertebrales interni*).—The principal veins contained in the spinal canal are situated between the theca vertebralis and the vertebræ. They consist of two longitudinal plexuses, one of which runs along the posterior surface of the bodies of the vertebræ, **anterior longitudinal spinal veins.** The other plexus, **posterior longitudinal spinal veins,** is placed on the inner or anterior surface of the laminæ of the vertebræ.

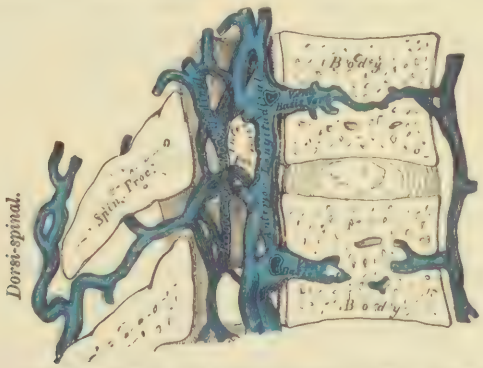


FIG. 466.—Vertical section of two dorsal vertebræ, showing the spinal veins.

The **Anterior Longitudinal Spinal Veins** (*sinus vertebrales longitudinales*) consist of two large, tortuous veins which extend along the whole length of the vertebral column, from the foramen magnum, where they communicate by a venous ring around that opening, to the base of the coccyx, being placed one on each side of the posterior surface of the bodies of the vertebræ along the margin of the posterior common ligament. These veins communicate together opposite each vertebra by

transverse trunks which pass beneath the ligament. Each transverse trunk receives the large **vena basis vertebræ** (*v. basivertebralis*) from the interior of the body of the vertebra. The anterior longitudinal spinal veins are least developed in the cervical and sacral regions. They are not of uniform size throughout, being alternately enlarged and constricted. At the intervertebral foramina they communicate with the dorsi-spinal veins, and with the vertebral veins in the neck, with the intercostal veins in the dorsal region, and with the lumbar and sacral veins in the corresponding regions.

The **Posterior Longitudinal Spinal Veins**, smaller than the anterior, are situated one on each side, between the inner surface of the laminæ and the theca vertebralis. They communicate (like the anterior) opposite each vertebra by transverse trunks, and with the anterior longitudinal veins by lateral transverse branches which pass from behind forward. The posterior longitudinal veins, by branches which perforate the ligamenta subflava, join with the dorsi-spinal veins. From them branches are given off which pass through the intervertebral foramina and join the vertebral, intercostal, lumbar, and sacral veins. The anterior and posterior longitudinal spinal veins join by numerous branches and really constitute one plexus, the plexus venosi vertebrales interni.

The **Intervertebral Veins** (*vv. intervertebrales*) accompany the spinal nerves in the intervertebral foramina, receive veins from the spinal cord, and join the meningo-rachidian and the dorsi-spinal veins.

3. The **Veins of the Bodies of the Vertebræ** or the **Venæ Basis Vertebrarum** (*vv. basivertebrales*) emerge from the foramen on the posterior surface of each vertebra and join the transverse trunk connecting the anterior longitudinal spinal veins. They are contained in large, tortuous channels in the substance of the bones, similar in every respect to those found in the diploë of the cranial bones. These canals lie parallel to the upper and lower surface of the bones. They *commence* by small openings on the front and sides of the bodies of the vertebræ, through which communicating branches from the veins external to the bone pass into its substance, and converge to the principal canal, which is sometimes double toward its posterior part. They open into the corresponding transverse branch uniting the anterior longitudinal veins. They become greatly developed in advanced age.

4. The **Veins of the Spinal Cord** or the **Medulli-spinal Veins** (*vv. spinales*) emerge from the cord substance and enter the pia mater plexus. The pia mater plexus is a minute, tortuous, venous plexus which covers the entire surface of the cord, being situated between the pia mater and arachnoid. "In this plexus there are six longitudinal channels—one antero-median, along the anterior fissure—two antero-lateral, immediately behind the anterior nerve roots—two postero-lateral, immediately behind the posterior nerve roots—and one postero-median, over the postero-septum."[1] These vessels are largest in the lumbar region. Near the base of the skull they unite and form two or three small trunks, which communicate with the vertebral veins, and terminate in the inferior cerebellar veins or in the inferior petrosal sinuses. Each of the spinal nerves is accompanied by a branch as far as the intervertebral foramina, where it joins the other veins from the spinal canal.

There are no valves in the spinal veins.

VEINS OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY, ABDOMEN, AND PELVIS

(Figs. 467, 468).

The Veins of the Lower Extremity are subdivided, like those of the upper, into two sets, **superficial** and **deep**, the superficial veins being placed beneath the

[1] D. J. Cunningham. A Text-book of Anatomy.

integument, between the two layers of superficial fascia, the deep veins accompanying the arteries, and forming the venæ comites of those vessels. Both sets of veins are provided with valves, which are more numerous in the deep than in the superficial set. These valves are also more numerous in the lower than in the upper limb.

The Superficial Veins of the Lower Extremity.

The Superficial Veins of the Foot.—On the sole of the foot there is a **subcutaneous venous plexus** (*rete venosum plantare cutaneum*), from which some branches go to the deep veins, but most of the branches pass around the margins to the dorsum of the foot. There is a transverse venous arch at the root of the toes which receives plantar vessels from the toes and sends branches between the toes (*vv. intercapitulares*) to the venous arch of the dorsum. On the dorsum of each toe the veins gather into two vessels, known as the **dorsal digital veins** (*vv. digitales pedis dorsales*). The dorsal digital veins from the opposed margins of two toes unite to form a dorsal interdigital vein. There are four **dorsal interdigital veins** (*vv. digitales communes pedis*), and they pass into the venous arch of the dorsum. The dorsal digital vein, from the inner surface of the great toe, passes directly into the internal saphenous vein, and the dorsal digital vein, from the outer surface of the little toe, passes directly into the external saphenous vein.

On the dorsum of the foot is a **venous arch** (*arcus venosus dorsalis pedis* [*cutaneus*]), situated in the superficial structures over the anterior extremities of the metatarsal bones. It has its convexity directed forward, and receives digital tributaries from the upper surface of the toes; at its concavity it is joined by numerous small veins which form a **plexus** on the dorsum of the foot (*rete venosum dorsale pedis cutaneum*). The arch terminates internally in the long saphenous, externally in the short saphenous vein.

The chief superficial veins of the lower extremity are the **internal** or **long saphenous** and the **external** or **short saphenous.**

The **Internal** or **Long Saphenous Vein** (*v. saphena magna*) (Figs. 467 and 470) *commences* at the inner side of the arch on the dorsum of the foot; it ascends in front of the inner malleolus and along the inner side of the leg, behind the inner margin of the tibia, accompanied by the internal saphenous nerve. At the knee it passes backward behind the inner condyle of the femur, ascends along the inside of the thigh, and, passing through the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, terminates in the femoral vein about an inch and a half below Poupart's ligament. This vein receives in its course cutaneous tributaries from the leg and thigh, and at the saphenous opening receives the superficial epigastric, superficial circumflex iliac, and external pudic veins. The veins from the inner and back part of the thigh frequently unite to form a large vessel, which enters the main trunk near the saphenous opening; and sometimes those on the outer side of the thigh join to form another large vessel; so that occasionally three large veins are seen converging from different parts of the thigh toward the saphenous opening. The internal saphenous vein communicates in the foot with the internal plantar vein; in the leg, with the posterior tibial veins by branches which perforate the tibial origin of the Soleus muscle, and also with the anterior tibial veins; at the knee, with the articular veins; in the thigh, with the femoral vein by one or more branches. The valves in this vein vary from two to six in number; they are more numerous in the thigh than in the leg.

The **External** or **Short Saphenous Vein** (*v. saphena parva*) (Fig. 468) *commences* at the outer side of the arch on the dorsum of the foot; it ascends behind the outer malleolus, and along the outer border of the tendo Achillis, across which it passes at an acute angle to reach the middle line of the posterior aspect of the leg.

Passing directly upward, it perforates the deep fascia in the lower part of the popliteal space, and terminates in the popliteal vein, between the heads of the

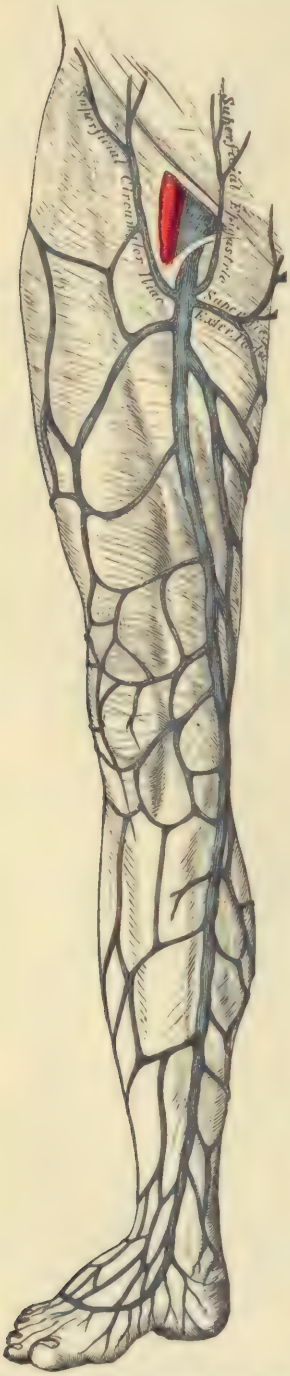


Fig. 467. — The internal or long saphenous vein and its branches.

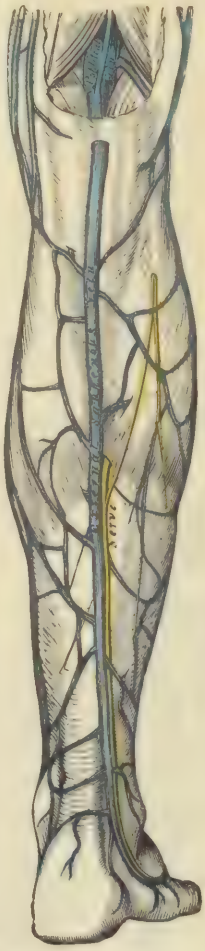


Fig. 468.—External or short saphenous vein.

Gastrocnemius muscle.[1] It receives numerous large tributaries from the back part of the leg, and communicates with the deep veins on the dorsum of the foot and behind the outer malleolus. Before it perforates the deep fascia it gives off a communicating branch, which passes upward and inward to join the internal saphenous vein. This vein has a variable number of valves, from three to nine (Gay), one of which is always found near its termination in the popliteal vein. The external saphenous nerve lies close beside this vein.

Surgical Anatomy.—The saphenous veins are of considerable surgical importance, since a *varicose* condition of these vessels is more frequently met with than of those in other parts

[1] Mr. Gay calls attention to the fact that the external saphenous vein often (he says invariably) penetrates the fascia at or about the point where the tendon of the Gastrocnemius commences, and runs below the fascia in the rest of its course, or sometimes among the muscular fibres, to join the popliteal vein. (See Gay on Varicose Disease of the Lower Extremities, p. 24, where there is also a careful and elaborate description of the branches of the saphena veins.)—Ed. of 15th English edition.

of the body, except perhaps the spermatic and hemorrhoidal veins. The course of the internal saphenous is in front of the tip of the inner malleolus, over the subcutaneous surface of the lower end of the tibia, and then along the internal border of this bone to the back part of the internal condyle of the femur, whence it follows the course of the Sartorius muscle, and is represented on the surface by a line drawn from the posterior border of the Sartorius on a level with the internal condyle to the saphenous opening. The external saphenous lies behind the external malleolus, and from this follows the middle line of the calf to just below the ham. It is not generally so apparent beneath the skin as the internal saphenous. Both these veins in the leg are accompanied by nerves, the internal saphenous being joined by its companion nerve just below the level of the knee-joint. No doubt much of the pain of varicose veins in the leg is due to this fact.

The Deep Veins of the Lower Extremity.

The deep veins of the lower extremity accompany the arteries and their branches and are called the **venæ comites** of those vessels. The venæ comites in the lower extremity pass into one trunk, the **popliteal vein**, whereas in the upper extremity the venæ comites continue with the artery to the axilla.

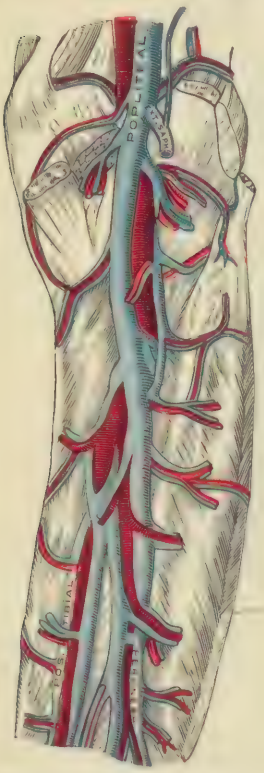


Fig. 469.—The popliteal vein. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The Deep Veins of the Foot.—The **plantar digital veins** (*vv. digitales plantares*) form the **plantar metatarsal veins** (*vv. metatarseæ plantares*), which communicate with the veins of the dorsum of the foot by perforating veins and also communicate with the deep venous arch of the sole of the foot (*arcus venosus plantaris profundus*). The plantar arch gives off **lateral** or **external plantar veins**, which unite with **median** or **internal plantar veins** to form the posterior tibial veins. On the dorsum of the foot the deep veins begin as the **dorsal metatarsal veins** (*vv. metatarseæ dorsales pedis*), which form the venæ comites of the dorsalis pedis artery.

The **Posterior Tibial Veins** (*vv. tibiales posteriores*) accompany the posterior tibial artery and are joined by the peroneal veins.

The **Anterior Tibial Veins** (*vv. tibiales anteriores*) are formed by a continuation upward of the venæ comites of the dorsalis pedis artery. They pass between the tibia and fibula, through the large oval aperture above the interosseous membrane, and form, by their junction with the posterior tibial, the popliteal vein.

The valves in the deep veins are very numerous.

The **Popliteal Vein** (*v. poplitea*) (Fig. 469) is formed by the junction of the anterior and posterior tibial veins; it ascends through the popliteal space to the aperture in the Adductor magnus, where it becomes the femoral vein. In the lower part of its course it is placed internal to the artery; between the heads of the Gastrocnemius it is superficial to that vessel; but above the knee-joint it is close to the outer side of the artery. It receives the **sural veins** from the Gastrocnemius muscle, the articular veins, and the external saphenous vein. The valves in this vein are usually four in number.

The **Femoral Vein** (*v. femoralis*) (Figs. 470 and 471) accompanies the femoral artery through the upper two-thirds of the thigh. In the lower part of its course it lies external to the artery; higher up it is behind it; and at Poupart's ligament it lies to its inner side and on the same plane. It receives numerous muscular tributaries, and about an inch and a half below Poupart's ligament it is joined by

the **profunda femoris** (*v. profunda femoris*); near its termination it is joined by the internal saphenous vein. The valves in this vein are four or five in number.

The **External Iliac Vein** (*v. iliaca externa*) (Figs. 464, 471, and 473) *commences* at the termination of the femoral, beneath the crural arch, and, passing upward along the brim of the pelvis, terminates opposite the sacro-iliac synchondrosis by uniting with the internal iliac to form the common iliac vein. On the right side it lies at first along the inner side of the external iliac artery, but as it passes upward gradually inclines behind it. On the left side it lies altogether on the inner side of the artery. It receives, immediately above Poupart's ligament, the deep epi-

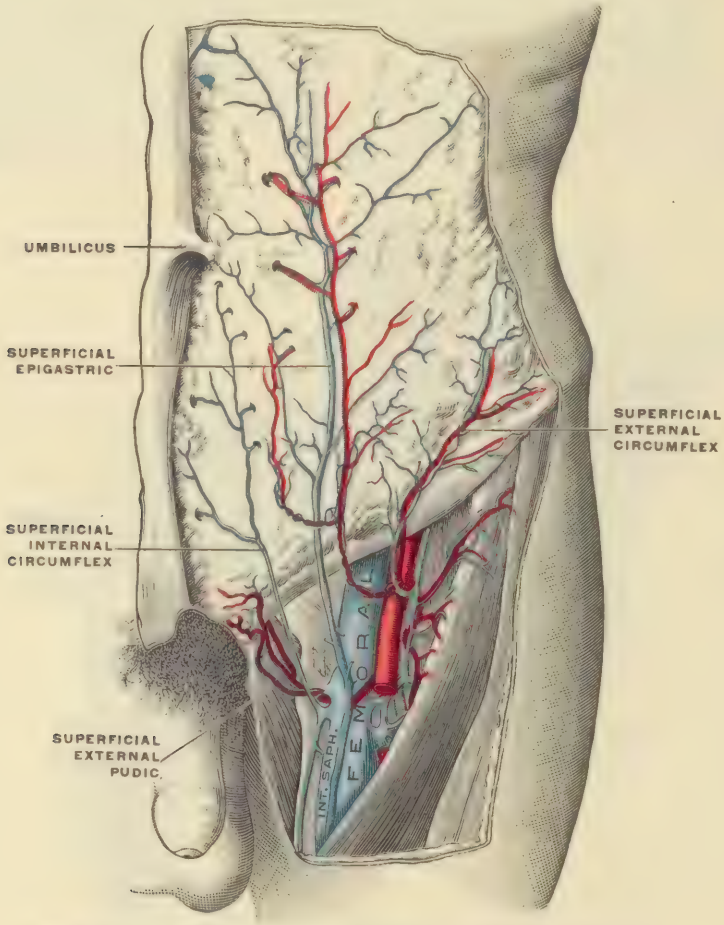


FIG. 470.—The femoral vein and its tributaries. (Poirier and Charpy.)

gastric and deep circumflex iliac veins and a small pubic vein, corresponding to the pubic branch of the obturator artery. According to Friedreich, it frequently contains one and sometimes two valves.

The **Deep Epigastric Vein** (*v. epigastrica inferior*) (Fig. 471).—Two veins accompany the deep epigastric artery; they usually unite into a single trunk before their termination in the external iliac vein.

The **Deep Circumflex Iliac Vein** (*v. circumflexa ilium profunda*) (Fig. 471).—Two veins accompany the deep circumflex iliac artery. These unite into a single trunk which crosses the external iliac artery just above Poupart's ligament and terminates in the external iliac vein.

The **Hypogastric** or **Internal Iliac Vein** (*v. iliaca interna* or *v. hypogastrica*) (Figs. 464, 471, and 473) is formed by the veins corresponding to all the branches of the internal iliac artery except the umbilical branch. It receives the blood from the exterior of the pelvis by the gluteal, sciatic, internal pudic, and obturator veins, and from the organs in the cavity of the pelvis by the middle hemorrhoidal veins, the superior vesical plexus and the prostatico-vesical plexus in the male, and the superior vesical, inferior vesical, uterine and vaginal plexuses in the female. The vessels forming these plexuses are remarkable for their large size, their frequent anastomoses, and the number of valves which they contain. The internal iliac vein lies at first on the inner side, and then behind the internal iliac artery, and terminates opposite the sacro-iliac articulation by uniting with the external iliac to form the common iliac vein. This vessel has no valves.

The **Internal Pudic Veins** (*vv. pudendæ internæ*) (Fig. 471) have the same course as the internal pudic artery. They receive tributaries corresponding to the branches of the artery, except the tributary corresponding to the dorsal artery of the penis; that is, the deep dorsal vein of the penis, which opens into the prostatico-vesical plexus.

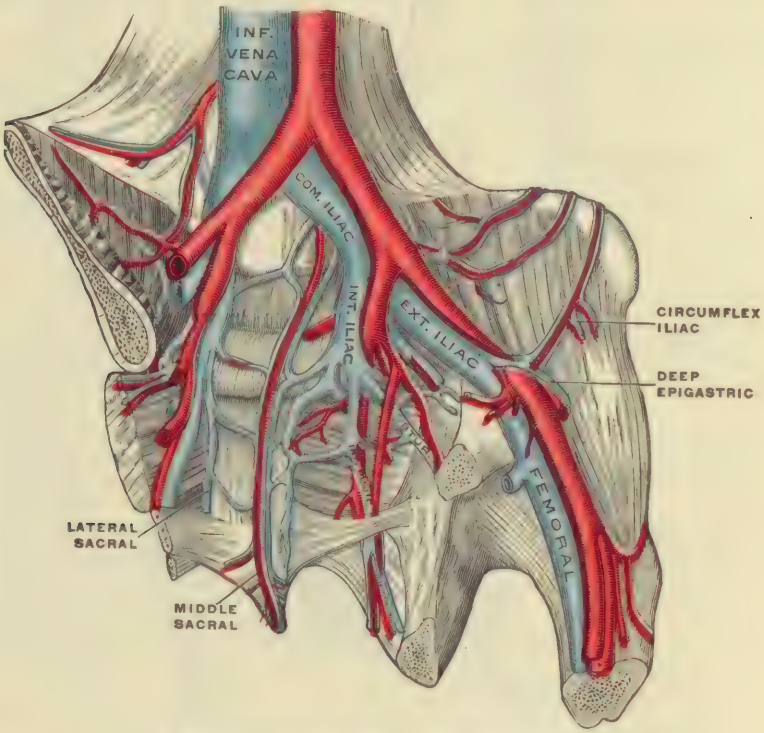


FIG. 471.—The iliac veins. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **Inferior** or **External Hæmorrhoidal Veins** (Figs. 472 and 473) collect blood from the anus. They pass outward over the External sphincter muscle, unite with numerous subcutaneous veins, and form larger vessels which join the internal pudic veins.

The **Middle Hæmorrhoidal Veins** (Figs. 472 and 473) help to form the hemorrhoidal plexus, perforate the rectal wall, and empty into the internal iliac vein. These veins, by their anastomoses in the hemorrhoidal plexus, establish a communication between the portal and systemic venous systems.

The **Lateral Sacral Veins** (*vv. sacrales laterales*) (Fig. 471) accompany the lateral sacral arteries and terminate in the internal iliac vein.

Surgical Anatomy.—The veins of the hemorrhoidal plexus are apt to become dilated and varicose, and form piles, *hemorrhoids*. This is due to several anatomical reasons: the vessels are contained in very loose, or connective tissue, so that they obtain less support from surrounding structures than most other veins, and are less capable of resisting increased blood pressure: the condition is favored by gravitation, being influenced by the erect posture, either sitting or standing, and by the fact that the superior hemorrhoidal and portal veins have no valves. The veins pass through muscular tissue and are liable to be compressed by its contraction, especially during the act of defecation, and they are affected by every form of portal obstruction.

The **Obturator Vein** (*v. obturatoriæ*) (Figs. 471 and 473) follows the course of the obturator artery, lying below the artery as it passes over the side of the pelvis; this vein empties into the front part of the internal iliac vein.

The **Sciatic Veins** are two in number; they accompany the sciatic artery in the upper part of the back of the thigh, and just before their termination in the internal iliac the two veins unite.

The **Gluteal Veins** (*vv. glutea*) are usually two in number, and return to the internal iliac vein the blood that has been distributed by the gluteal artery and its branches.

FIG. 472.—Scheme of the anastomosis of the veins of the rectum. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **Superior Vesical Plexus** (Fig. 473) is placed upon the fundus and lateral aspects of the bladder on the external aspect of the muscular coat. It receives vessels from the mucous membrane and from the muscular walls. It empties into the internal pudic vein: in the male it communicates with the prostatico-vesical plexus, and in the female with the inferior vesical plexus.

The **Prostatic** or the **Prostatico-vesical Plexus** (Fig. 473) surrounds the prostate gland and the neck of the bladder. It is contained between the recto-vesical fascia which surrounds the base and sides of the gland and the true capsule of the gland. It communicates with the superior vesical plexus behind and above, and receives the deep dorsal vein of the penis, which enters the pelvis between the subpubic and triangular ligaments. This plexus receives veins from the seminal vesicles and vasa deferentia. On each side one or more vessels pass

from the prostatico-vesical plexus to the internal iliac vein. The veins composing the prostatic plexus are very liable to become varicose, and often contain hard, earthy concretions called **phleboliths.**

The **Inferior Vesical Plexus** exists only in the female, and corresponds to the prostatico-vesical plexus in the male, and surrounds the neck of the bladder and the upper portion of the urethra. It receives the dorsal vein of the clitoris and sends efferents to the internal iliac vein.

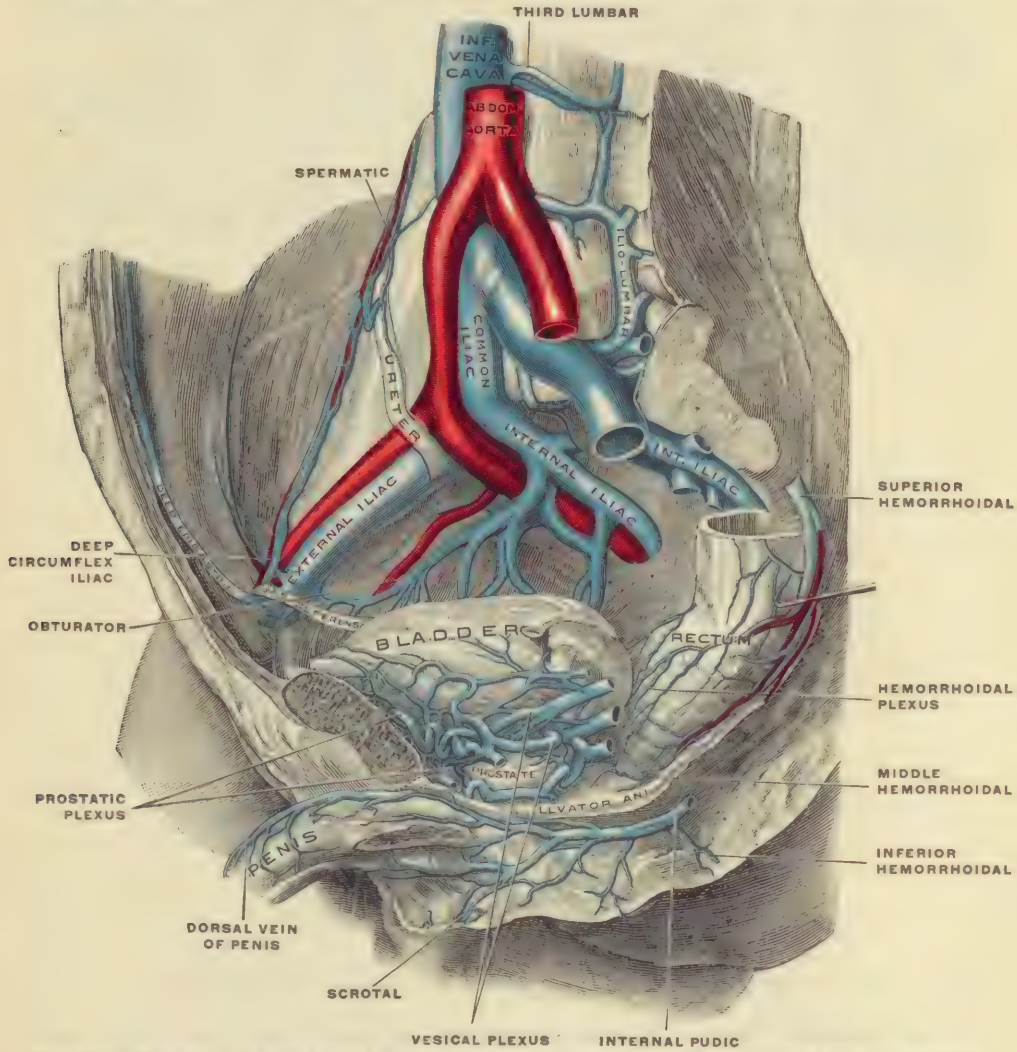


FIG. 473.—The veins of the male pelvis, right half, viewed from the left. The psoas muscle has been removed and the rectum drawn down somewhat to the side. (Spalteholz.)

Surgical Anatomy.—The prostatico-vesical plexus is wounded in the lateral operation of lithotomy, and it is through it that septic matter finds its way into the general circulation after this operation. In enucleating the prostate the gland is shelled out from its capsule of recto-vesical fascia. The veins of the plexus remain attached to the sheath.

The Dorsal Veins of the Penis.—The **Superficial Dorsal Vein of the Penis** (Fig. 474) receives blood from the prepuce and runs backward beneath the skin, and divides into two branches which terminate in the superficial external pudic vein.

The **Deep Dorsal Vein of the Penis** (*v. dorsalis penis*) (Figs. 473 and 474) is a vessel of large size which returns the blood from the body of that organ. At first it con-

sists of two branches, which are contained in the groove on the dorsum of the penis, and it receives numerous superficial veins and veins from the glans penis and the corpus spongiosum. These vessels unite into a single trunk, which passes between the two parts of the suspensory ligament of the penis, and through an aperture between the subpubic ligament and the apex of the triangular ligament, and divides into two branches, which enter the prostatico-vesical plexus. The dorsal vein of the clitoris corresponds in woman to the dorsal vein of the penis in man, and runs into the inferior vesical plexus.

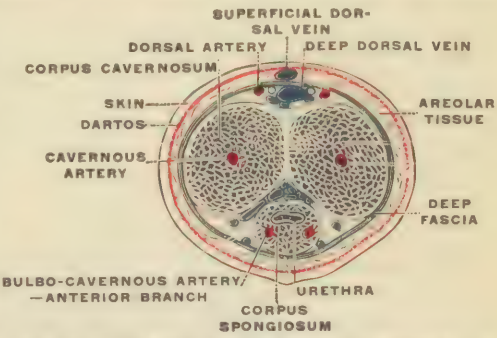


FIG. 474.—The penis in transverse section, showing the blood-vessels. (Testut.)

The Vaginal Plexuses and Veins (Fig. 475).—The vaginal plexuses are placed at the sides of the vagina, being especially developed at the orifice of the canal. They receive vessels from the vaginal walls. The plexuses communicate with the uterine plexus above, with the bulbar veins below, with the inferior vesical plexus in front and with the hemorrhoidal plexus behind. From the upper part of each vaginal plexus comes a **vaginal vein** which passes to the internal iliac.

The **Uterine Plexuses** (Fig. 475) are situated along the sides and superior angles of the uterus, between the layers of the broad ligament. They receive the veins from the uterus, which veins are without valves. During pregnancy these veins

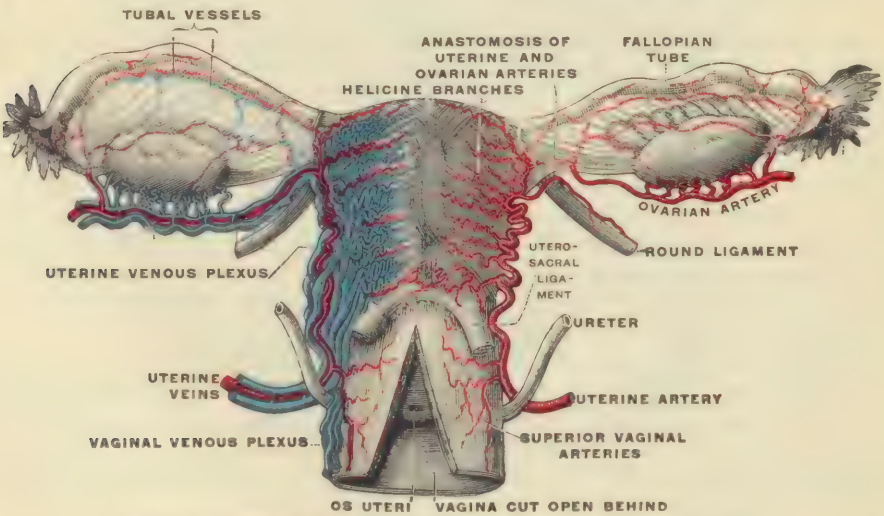


FIG. 475.—Vessels of the uterus and its appendages, rear view. (Testut.)

become large venous canals known as the **uterine sinuses**, and bring blood from the substance of the placenta. These veins join the ovarian above and the vaginal below, and anastomose with each other. They are not tortuous like the artery.

The **Uterine Veins** (*vv. uterinæ*) (Fig. 475) arise from the lower part of the plexus, and there are usually two veins on each side and they are without valves. These veins for the first portion of their course are placed in the base and inner portion of the broad ligament; they then pass back with the uterine artery in a peritoneal fold between the back of the broad ligament and the recto-uterine fold (Cunningham); they then pass upward and enter the internal iliac vein.

The **Common Iliac Vein** (*v. iliaca communis*) (Figs. 464, 471, and 473) on each side is formed by the union of the external and internal iliac veins in front of the sacro-iliac articulation: passing obliquely upward toward the right side, each vein terminates upon the intervertebral substance between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebræ, where the veins of the two sides unite at an acute angle to form the inferior vena cava. The **right common iliac** (*v. iliaca communis dextra*) is shorter than the left, nearly vertical in its direction, and ascends behind and then to the outer side of its corresponding artery. The **left common iliac** (*v. iliaca communis sinistra*), longer and more oblique in its course, is at first situated on the inner side of the corresponding artery, and then behind the right common iliac. Each common iliac receives the ilio-lumbar, and sometimes the lateral sacral, veins. The left receives, in addition, the middle sacral vein. No valves are found in these veins.

The **Middle Sacral Veins** (Figs. 471 and 472) accompany the corresponding artery along the front of the sacrum, and join to form a single vein (*v. sacralis media*), which terminates in the left common iliac vein; occasionally in the angle of junction of the two iliac veins. The middle sacral veins communicate with the inferior hemorrhoidal.

The **Ilio-lumbar Veins** (*vv. iliolumbales*) receive branches from the iliac fossæ, spinal muscles, and spinal canal. One vein on each side runs with the artery, passes posterior to the psoas muscle, and joins the common iliac vein.

Peculiarities.—The left common iliac vein, instead of joining with the right in its usual position, occasionally ascends on the left side of the aorta as high as the kidney, where, after receiving the left renal vein, it crosses over the aorta, and then joins with the right vein to form the vena cava. In these cases the two common iliacs are connected by a small communicating branch at the spot where they are usually united.[1]

The **Ascending** or **Inferior Vena Cava** (*v. cava inferior*) (Figs. 464 and 471) returns to the heart the blood from all the parts below the Diaphragm. It is formed by the junction of the two common iliac veins on the right side of the intervertebral substance between the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebræ. It passes upward along the front of the spine on the right side of the aorta, and, having reached the under surface of the liver, is contained in a groove on its posterior surface. It then perforates the central tendon of the Diaphragm, enters the pericardium, where it is covered for a very short distance by the serous layer of the pericardium, and terminates in the lower and back part of the right auricle. At its termination in the auricle it is provided with a valve, the **Eustachian valve** (*valvula v. cavæ [inferioris Eustachii]*), which is of large size during fœtal life.

Relations.—*In front*, from below upward, with the mesentery, right spermatic artery, transverse portion of the duodenum, the pancreas, portal vein, and the posterior surface of the liver, which, in most cases, partly and occasionally completely surrounds it; *behind*, with the vertebral column, the right crus of the Diaphragm, the right renal and lumbar arteries, and the right semilunar ganglion; on the *left side*, with the aorta.

Peculiarities. *In Position.*—This vessel is sometimes placed on the left side of the aorta, as high as the left renal veins, after receiving which it crosses over to its usual position on the right side; or it may be placed altogether on the left side of the aorta, as far upward as its termination in the heart: in such cases the abdominal and thoracic viscera, together with the great vessels, are all transposed.

Point of Termination.—Occasionally the inferior vena cava joins the right azygos vein, which is then of large size. In such cases the superior cava receives the whole of the blood from the body before transmitting it to the right auricle, except the blood from the hepatic veins, which passes directly into the right auricle.

[1] See two cases which have been described by Mr. Walsham in the St. Bartholomew's Hospital Reports, vols. xvi. and xvii.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

Tributaries.—It receives in its course the following veins:

Lumbar.	Suprarenal.
Right Spermatic.	Phrenic.
Renal.	Hepatic.

The **Lumbar Veins** (*vv. lumbales*), four in number on each side, collect the blood by dorsal tributaries from the muscles and integument of the loins and by abdominal tributaries from the walls of the abdomen, where they communicate with the epigastric veins. At the spine they receive veins from the spinal plexuses, and then pass forward, round the sides of the bodies of the vertebræ beneath the

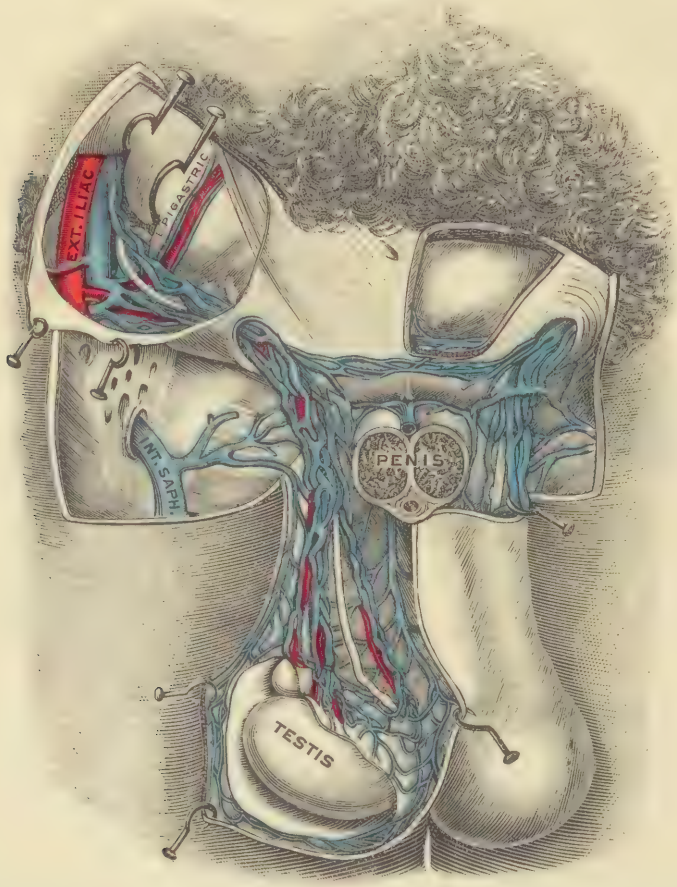


FIG. 476.—Spermatic veins. (Testut.)

Psoas magnus muscle, and terminate at the back part of the inferior cava. The left lumbar veins are longer than the right, and pass behind the aorta. The lumbar veins of a side are connected together by a longitudinal vein which passes in front of the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebræ, and is called the **ascending lumbar vein** (*v. lumbalis ascendens*) (Fig. 464). It forms the most frequent origin of the corresponding vena azygos, and serves to connect the common iliac, iliolumbar, lumbar, and azygos veins of the corresponding side of the body.

The **Spermatic Veins** (*vv. spermaticæ*) (Fig. 476) emerge from the back of the testis, and receive tributaries from the epididymis; they unite and form a convoluted plexus called the **spermatic plexus** (*plexus pampiniformis*), which forms the chief

mass of the cord: the vessels composing this plexus are very numerous, and ascend along the cord in front of the vas deferens; below the external abdominal ring they unite to form three or four veins, which pass along the inguinal canal, and, entering the abdomen through the internal abdominal ring, coalesce to form two veins, which ascend on the Psoas muscle behind the peritoneum, lying one on each side of the spermatic artery, and unite to form a single vein, which opens on the right side into the inferior vena cava at an acute angle; on the left side into the left renal vein at a right angle (Fig. 477). The termination of the left spermatic vein

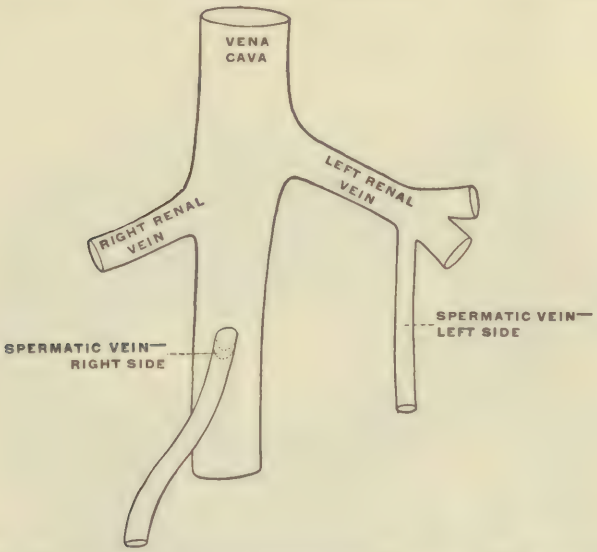


FIG. 477.—Terminations of the right and left spermatic veins. (Poirier and Charpy.)

is called the **emulgent vein**. Professor John H. Brinton pointed out that a valve is usually absent in the emulgent vein (Fig. 478), but regularly present in the right spermatic vein.[1] The left spermatic vein passes behind the sigmoid flexure of the colon, and is thus exposed to pressure from the contents of that bowel.

Surgical Anatomy.—The spermatic veins are very frequently *varicose*, constituting the disease known as *varicocele*. Though it is quite possible that the originating cause of this affection may be a congenital abnormality either in the size or number of the veins of the pampiniform plexus, still it must be admitted that there are many anatomical reasons why these veins should become varicose—viz., the imperfect support afforded to them by the loose tissue of the scrotum; their great length; their vertical course; their dependent position; their plexiform arrangement in the scrotum, with their termination in one small vein in the abdomen; their few and imperfect valves; and the fact that they may be subjected to pressure in their passage through the abdominal wall. The left veins more often become varicose than the right veins, probably, as Brinton suggests, because the right spermatic vein practically always has a valve and opens into the vena cava at an acute angle, whereas the left spermatic vein is not unusually destitute of a valve at its opening and passes into the left renal vein at a right angle.

The **Ovarian Veins** (*vv. ovaricæ*) (Fig. 475) are analogous to the spermatic in the male; they form a plexus near the ovary in the broad ligament and about the Fallopian tube, communicating with the uterine plexus. They terminate in the same way as the spermatic veins in the male. Valves are occasionally found in these veins. These vessels, like the uterine veins, become much enlarged during pregnancy.

[1] See John H. Brinton in the American Journal of the Medical Sciences, and also Handbuch der Topographischen Anatomie, von Joseph Hyrtl. Rivington maintains that a valve is usually found at the orifices of both the right and left spermatic veins. When no valves exist at the opening of the left spermatic vein into the left renal vein, valves are generally present in the left renal vein within a quarter of an inch from the orifice of the spermatic vein. (Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, vol. vii. p. 163).—ED. of 15th English edition.

The **Renal Veins** (*vv. renales*) (Fig. 465) are of large size, and are placed in front of the renal arteries.[1] The left is longer than the right, and passes in front of the aorta, just below the origin of the superior mesenteric artery. It receives the left spermatic, the left inferior, and, generally, the left suprarenal veins. It opens into the vena cava a little higher than the right. The *utero-venous triangle* of Byron Robinson is formed by the ureter, the renal veins, and the ovarian veins.

The **Suprarenal Veins** (*vv. suprarenales*) (Fig. 464) are two in number: that on the right side terminates in the vena cava; that on the left side, in the left renal or in the left phrenic vein.

The **Phrenic Veins** (*vv. phrenicæ*) follow the course of the phrenic arteries. The two **superior phrenic veins** (*vv. phrenicæ superiores*), of small size, accompany the phrenic nerve and comes nervi phrenici artery, and join the internal mammary vein. The two **inferior phrenic veins** (*vv. phrenicæ inferiores*) follow the course of the phrenic arteries, and terminate, the right in the inferior vena cava, the left in the left renal vein.

FIG. 478.—Dissection of the vena cava, emulgent and spermatic veins, showing the right spermatic valve and its accompanying sinus. *c*, vena cava; *e*, emulgent vein; *r*, right spermatic vein; *l*, left spermatic vein; *a*, aperture by which the right spermatic vein empties into the vena cava; *v*, right spermatic valve; *s*, sinus across which the valve is stretched; *f*, termination of the left spermatic vein in the emulgent vein. (John H. Brinton.)

The **Hepatic Veins** (*vv. hepaticæ*) *commence* in the substance of the liver, in the capillary terminations of the portal vein and hepatic artery, **intralobular veins**: these tributaries, gradually uniting into **sublobular veins**; usually form three large hepatic veins, which converge toward the posterior surface of the liver and open into the inferior vena cava, whilst that vessel is situated in the groove at the back part of this organ. Of these three veins, one from the right and another from

[1] The student may observe that all veins above the Diaphragm, which do not lie on the same plane as the arteries which they accompany, lie in front of them, and that all veins below the Diaphragm, which do not lie on the same plane as the arteries which they accompany, lie behind them, except the renal and profunda femoris vein.—ED. of 15th English edition.

the left lobe open obliquely into the inferior vena cava, that from the middle of the organ and lobulus Spigelii having a straight course. The hepatic veins run singly, and are in direct contact with the hepatic tissue. They are destitute of valves.

The Portal System of Veins (Fig. 479).

The portal venous system is composed of four large veins which collect the venous blood from the viscera of digestion (stomach, intestine, and pancreas) and from the spleen. The trunk formed by their union, the **Portal Vein** (*vena portæ*), enters the liver and ramifies throughout its substance after the manner of an artery and ends in capillaries, from which the blood is collected into the hepatic veins, which terminate in the inferior vena cava. The branches of this vein are in all cases single, and destitute of valves.

The veins forming the portal system are—the

Superior Mesenteric. Inferior Mesenteric.
Splenic. Gastric.
Cystic.

The **Superior Mesenteric Vein** (*v. mesenterica superior*) (Fig. 479) returns the blood from the small intestines and from the cæcum and ascending and transverse portions of the colon, corresponding with the distribution of the branches of the superior mesenteric artery. The large trunk formed by the union of these branches ascends along the right side and in front of the corresponding artery, passes in front of the transverse portion of the duodenum, and unites, behind the upper border of the pancreas, with the splenic vein to form the vena portæ. It receives the right gastro-epiploic vein. The **appendicular vein** is a tributary of the superior mesenteric vein.

The **Splenic Vein** (*v. lienalis*) (Fig. 479) *commences* by five or six large branches which return the blood from the substance of the spleen. These, uniting, form a single vessel, which passes from left to right, grooving the upper and back part of the pancreas below the artery, and terminates at its greater end by uniting at a right angle with the superior mesenteric to form the vena portæ. The splenic vein is of large size, and not tortuous like the artery. It receives the vasa brevia from the left extremity of the stomach, the left gastro-epiploic vein, pancreatic branches from the pancreas, the pancreatico-duodenal vein, and the inferior mesenteric vein.

The **Inferior Mesenteric Vein** (*v. mesenterica inferior*) (Fig. 479) returns the blood from the rectum, sigmoid flexure, and descending colon, corresponding with the ramifications of the branches of the inferior mesenteric artery. It lies to the left of the artery, and ascends beneath the peritoneum in the lumbar region; it passes behind the transverse portion of the duodenum and pancreas, and terminates in the splenic vein. Its hemorrhoidal branches, the **superior hæmorrhoidal veins,** inosculate with the middle hemorrhoidal branches of the internal iliac, and thus establish a communication between the portal and the general venous system.[1]

The **Gastric Veins** (*vv. gastricæ*) (Fig. 479) are two in number: one, a small vein, corresponds to the pyloric branch of the hepatic artery; the other, considerably larger, corresponds to the gastric artery. The former, the **pyloric vein** (*v. pylorica*), runs along the lesser curvature of the stomach toward the pyloric end, receives branches from the pylorus and duodenum, and ends in the vena portæ. The latter, the **gastric** or **coronary vein** (*v. coronaria ventriculi*), begins near the pylorus,

[1] Besides this anastomosis between the portal vein and the branches of the vena cava, other anastomoses between the portal and systemic veins are formed by the communication between the gastric veins and the œsophageal veins, which empty themselves into the vena azygos minor; between the left renal vein and the veins of the intestines, especially of the colon and duodenum; between the veins of the round ligament of the liver and the portal veins; and between the superficial branches of the portal veins of the liver and the phrenic veins, as pointed out by Mr. Kiernan. (See Physiological Anatomy, by Todd and Bowman, 1859, vol. ii. p. 348).—Ed. of 15th English edition.

runs along the lesser curvature of the stomach toward the œsophageal opening in the diaphragm, and then passes across the front of the spine from left to right to end in the vena portæ, at a point a little above the junction of the pyloric vein.

The **Cystic Vein** (*v. cystica*) (Fig. 479).—The vena portæ generally receives the cystic vein, although that vessel sometimes terminates in the right branch of the vena portæ.

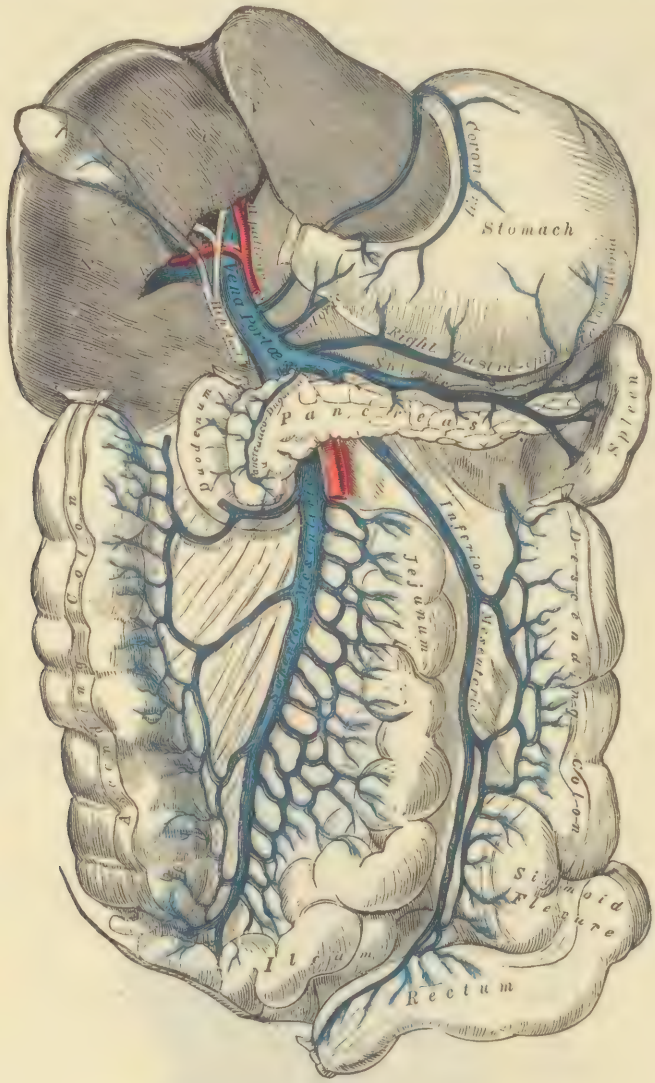


Fig. 479.—Portal vein and its branches.

Note.—In this diagram the right gastro-epiploic vein opens into the splenic vein; generally it empties itself into the superior mesenteric, close to its termination.

The **Portal Vein** (*vena portæ*) (Fig. 479) is formed by the junction of the superior mesenteric and splenic veins, their union taking place in front of the vena cava and behind the upper border of the head of the pancreas. Passing upward through the right border of the lesser omentum to the under surface of the liver, it enters the transverse fissure, where it is somewhat enlarged, forming the *sinus* of the portal vein, and divides into two branches which accompany the ramifications of the hepatic artery and hepatic duct throughout the substance of the liver. Of

these two branches, the right is the larger, but the shorter, of the two. The portal vein is about three or four inches in length, and, whilst contained in the lesser omentum, lies behind and between the common bile-duct and the hepatic artery, the former being to the right, the latter to the left. These structures are accompanied by filaments of the hepatic plexus of nerves and numerous lymphatics, and are surrounded by a quantity of loose areolar tissue, the **capsule of Glisson.**

The portal vein divides, in the substance of the liver, like an artery, and its minute ramifications end in capillaries, from which the blood is carried to the inferior vena cava by the hepatic veins; these veins also collect the blood which has been brought to the liver by the hepatic artery. It will therefore be seen that the blood which is carried to the liver by the portal vein passes through two sets of capillary vessels—viz.: (1) the capillaries in the stomach, intestine, pancreas, and spleen, and (2) the capillaries of the portal vein in the liver.

THE CARDIAC VEINS (Fig. 480).

The veins which return the blood from the substance of the heart are—the

Great Cardiac Vein.	Anterior Cardiac Veins.
Posterior Cardiac Vein.	Right or Small Coronary Vein.
Left Cardiac Veins.	Coronary Sinus.

Venæ Thebesii.

The **Great Cardiac** or **Left Coronary Vein** (*v. cordis magna*) is a vessel of considerable size, which *commences* at the apex of the heart, and ascends along the anterior interventricular groove to the base of the ventricles. It then curves

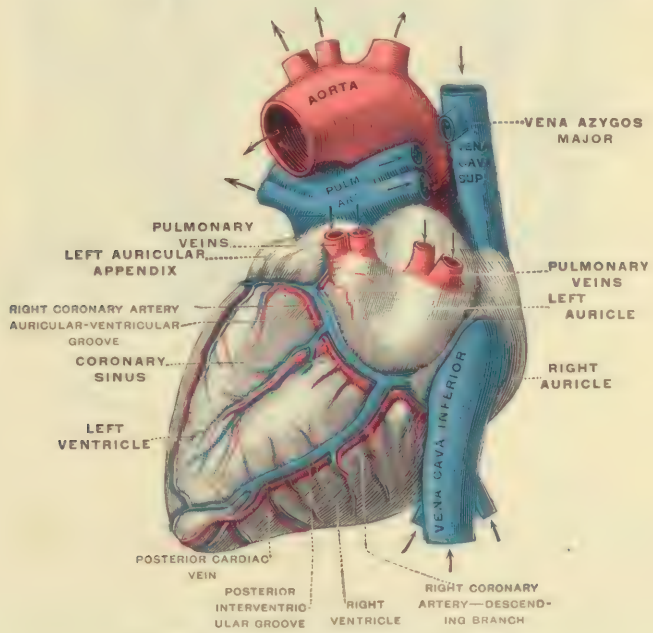


FIG. 480.—Cardiac veins, dorsal view. (Testut.)

to the left side, around the auriculo-ventricular groove, between the left auricle and ventricle, to the back part of the heart, and opens into the left extremity of the coronary sinus, its aperture being guarded by two valves. It receives, in

its course, tributaries from both ventricles, but especially from the left, and also from the left auricle; one of these ascending along the thick margin of the left ventricle is of considerable size, and is called the **left marginal vein**. The vessels joining the great cardiac vein are provided with valves.

The **Posterior** or **Middle Cardiac Vein** (*v. cordis media*) *commences* by small tributaries, at the apex of the heart, communicating with those of the preceding. It ascends along the posterior interventricular groove to the base of the heart, and terminates in the coronary sinus, its orifice being guarded by a valve. It receives veins from the posterior surface of both ventricles.

The **Left Cardiac Vein** (*v. posterior ventriculi sinistri*) receives three or four small vessels, which collect the blood from the posterior surface of the left ventricle. It opens into the lower border of the coronary sinus.

The **Anterior Cardiac Veins** (*vv. cordis anteriores*) are three or four small vessels, which collect the blood from the anterior surface of the right ventricle. One of these, the **vein of Galen**, larger than the rest, runs along the right border of the heart. They open separately into the lower part of the right auricle.

The **Right Cardiac** or **Small Coronary Vein** (*v. cordis parva*) runs along the groove between the right auricle and ventricle, to open into the right extremity of the coronary sinus. It receives blood from the back part of the right auricle and ventricle.

The **Coronary Sinus** (*sinus coronarius*) is that portion of the anterior or great cardiac vein which is situated in the posterior part of the left auriculo-ventricular groove. It is about an inch in length, presents a considerable dilatation, and is covered by the muscular fibres of the left auricle. It receives most of the veins of the heart. Besides those mentioned it receives the **oblique vein of Marshall** (*v. obliqua atrii sinistri*) from the back part of the left auricle, the remnant of the obliterated left Cuvierian duct of the fœtus, described by Mr. Marshall. The great coronary sinus terminates in the right auricle, between the inferior vena cava and the auriculo-ventricular aperture, its orifice being guarded by a semilunar fold of the lining membrane of the heart, the **Thebesian valve**. All the veins joining this vessel, excepting the oblique vein above mentioned, are provided with valves.

The **Venæ Thebesii** (*venæ cordis minimæ*) are numerous minute veins, which return the blood directly from the muscular substance, without entering the venous current. They open by minute orifices, **foramina Thebesii** (*foramina venarum minamarum*), chiefly on the inner surface of the right auricle.

THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM.

Lymph is obtained from the blood-plasma. From lymph the body cells obtain food, into lymph they discharge their waste materials, and there is a distinct lymphatic circulation, the constituents of the plasma passing into the perivascular lymph-spaces and returning to the heart by way of the lymphatics and certain veins.

The lymphatic system consists of **lymphatic glands**—**large lymph-vessels, small lymph-vessels** (*lymphatic capillaries*), the **perivascular lymph-spaces,** the **lymph canalicular system,** and the **body cavities.** To this system also belong the **lacteal** or **chyliferous vessels.** The lacteals are the lymphatic vessels of the small intestine, and differ in no respect from the lymphatics generally, excepting that during the process of digestion they contain a milk-white fluid, the **chyle,** which passes into the blood through the thoracic duct.

The **lymph canalicular system** is the system of spaces in areolar connective tissue. The spaces are called **lymph-spaces.** In these spaces lie the cells of the tissue. The larger spaces are lined with endothelium, the smaller spaces are not lined with endothelium; they form connections with each other by anastomotic channels and constitute a system of spaces and channels which probably join the lymphatic capillaries.

The **perivascular lymph-spaces** are found around certain blood-vessels. Each space is lined with endothelium, and is joined to other spaces by trabeculæ of connective tissue. The spaces form a system which joins the lymphatic capillaries. Perivascular lymph-spaces have been demonstrated in the Haversian canals and in the subdural space of the pia mater.

The **pleural, pericardial, peritoneal,** and **synovial cavities** belong to the lymphatic system. These cavities are lined by endothelial cells. Beneath the layer of lining cells are lymph-spaces or lymph-vessels, which communicate with the body cavity by means of numerous openings in the lining membrane. These openings are called **stomata.**

Lymph-capillaries are larger than blood-capillaries, but the diameter of a lymph-capillary is different at different points, at some places being much larger than at others. Lymph-capillaries are formed of flattened endothelial cells. In some situations networks of lymphatic capillaries surround the blood-vessels. The lymph-vessels are called the **lymphatics.**

The **lymphatics** have derived their name from the appearance of the fluid contained in their interior (*lympha*, water). They are also called **absorbents,** from the property they possess of absorbing certain materials from the tissues and conveying them into the circulation. Larger lymphatics are called **trunks** and the largest are called **ducts.**

The lymphatics are exceedingly delicate vessels, the coats of which are so transparent that the fluid they contain is readily seen through them, and they appear milky-white; hence the name Asellius gave them of **lacteal veins.** They retain a nearly uniform size, and may be cylindrical in shape, but usually are interrupted at intervals by constrictions which give them a knotted, beaded, or sac-like appearance. These constrictions are due to the presence of valves in the interior of the vessel. Lymphatic vessels do not invariably contain valves. Valves

are absent at the starting points of lymphatics, are absent in lymphatic capillaries, are not numerous in the largest ducts (thoracic duct), and are seldom found in visceral lymphatics. The valves are not found in fixed situations and vary in number. Between the ends of the fingers and the axillary glands Sappey counted from sixty to eighty. "They are arranged in pairs and resemble the aortic semilunar valves."[1] The lymphatic capillaries are composed purely of endothelium, but the collecting trunks possess not only an endothelial inner coat, but an investing elasto-muscular coat. Vessels in the subcutaneous connective tissue are devoid of muscle. Lymphatics have been found in nearly every texture and organ of the body which contains blood-vessels. Such non-vascular structures as cartilage, the nails, cuticle, and hair have none, but with these exceptions it is probable that eventually all parts will be found to be permeated by these vessels.

A larger lymphatic vessel is composed of three coats. The inner coat is composed of elastic tissue lined with endothelium. The middle coat is composed of elastic and muscular fibres. The external coat is composed of connective tissue intermixed with smooth muscular fibres longitudinally or obliquely placed.

The thoracic duct possesses a subendothelial layer of connective tissue like that found in the arteries, and in the middle coat there is a longitudinal layer of connective tissue. The wall of a smaller lymphatic contains no elastic and no muscular tissue, and consists merely of connective tissue lined with endothelium.

The lymphatics are arranged in **superficial** and **deep sets**. The **superficial lymphatics,** on the surface of the body, are placed immediately beneath the integument, accompanying the superficial veins; they join the deep lymphatics in certain situations by perforating the deep fascia. In the interior of the body the lymphatics lie in the submucous areolar tissue throughout the whole length of the gastro-pulmonary and genito-urinary tracts, and in the subserous tissue of the thoracic and abdominal cavities. In the cranial cavity the perivascular sheaths are lymph-spaces. A plexiform network of minute, closed, capillary lymphatics may be found interspersed among the proper elements and blood-vessels of the several tissues, the vessels composing which, as well as the meshes between them, are much larger than those of the capillary blood-vessel plexus. From these networks small collecting vessels emerge, pass to a neighboring gland, and divide into a capillary network in the gland. Numerous small vessels emerge from the gland, which unite into one lymphatic vessel, which joins a larger lymphatic trunk, which empties into a branch of the superior vena cava. The **deep lymphatics,** fewer in number and larger than the superficial, accompany the deep blood-vessels. Their mode of origin is probably similar to that of the superficial vessels. The lymphatics of any part or organ exceed the veins in number and in capacity, but in size they are much smaller. Their anastomoses also, especially those of the large trunks, are more frequent, and are effected by vessels equal in diameter to those which they connect. The continuous trunks retain the same diameter throughout. As the lymphatic vessels approach their point of discharge their number diminishes, but the calibre of the remainder does not increase in proportion.

The gaps in the connective tissue, the larger of which are lined with endothelium, the smaller of which are devoid of endothelial lining, and all of which communicate with the lymphatic capillaries, are known as **lymphatic spaces**. It is asserted by some, but is not proved, that the spaces are continuous with the lymph-capillaries. Some hold that lymph gets from the spaces into the capillaries by means of openings in intervening tissue. The perivascular spaces, the serous cavities, and the ventricles of the brain resemble in function lymphatic structures.

[1] Treatise on Anatomy. By P. Poirier and A. Charpy. Article on the Lymphatics. By G. Delamare, P. Poirier, and B. Cunéo.

The **lymphatic** or **absorbent glands** (*lymphoglandulae*), named also **conglobate glands** and **lymph-nodes**, are small, solid, glandular bodies situated in the course of the lymphatic and lacteal vessels. They vary from microscopic dimensions to the size of an olive, and their color, on section, is of a pinkish-gray tint, excepting the bronchial glands, which in the adult are mottled with black, the hepatic glands, which are yellow, and the splenic glands, which are brown. Each gland has a layer or capsule of cellular tissue investing it, from which prolongations dip into its substance, forming partitions. The lymphatic and lacteal vessels pass through these glands in their passage to the lymphatic ducts. A lymphatic or lacteal vessel, previous to entering a gland, divides into several small branches, which are named **afferent vessels** (*vasa afferentia*). As they enter the gland, the external coat of each becomes continuous with the capsule of the gland, and the vessels becoming much thinned, and consisting only of their internal or endothelial coat, pass into the gland, and branch out upon and in the tissue of the capsule, these branches opening into the **lymph-sinuses** of the gland. There is an extensive sinus beneath the capsule; from this **subcapsular sinus** numerous branches run inward to a **central sinus**. From both sinuses fine branches proceed to form a plexus, the vessels of which unite to form a single **efferent vessel** (*vas efferens*), which, on emerging from the gland, is again invested with an external coat from the gland capsule. The lymph-glands are filters through which lymph and chyle flow. Carcinoma cells are caught in them, and the dissemination of the disease is retarded. In the glands are masses of newly formed leukocytes which attack any bacteria in the lymph or chyle.

FIG. 481. — A lymph-node with its afferent and efferent vessels. (Testut.)

The size of the lymphatic glands decreases as age advances, and in very old individuals many glands actually disappear. It is impossible to estimate the number of macroscopic glands. Sappey estimated the number to be from 600 to 700. Glands are embedded in fat and are distinctly movable. Some of them are **superficial** (above the deep fascia); others are **deep** (below the deep fascia). Occasionally a gland exists alone, but, as a rule, they are assembled in communities or chains of from eight to twelve, or even more. They are usually arranged around vessels, and often are upon vessels. The glands have a plentiful blood-supply, and contain not only vascular nerves, but definite nerve-plexuses. Besides the glands, the body contains numerous lymphoid areas, which, in structure and function, are allied to lymph-glands (tonsils, Peyer's patches, etc.).

Surgical Anatomy. —In an operation for *cancer* it is not sufficient to cut wide of the growth and remove it; it is imperatively necessary to remove the lymphatic glands which receive lymph from the diseased area, and also, when possible, the lymphatic vessels between the cancer and the glands. Glands are diseased very early in cancer, long before they are palpably enlarged, and are usually infected by emboli of cancer cells. The rule is in any cancer, however recent, to regard the associated glands as diseased, whether enlarged or not, and to thoroughly remove them, if possible, in one piece, with the intervening lymph-vessels and the area of primary malignant growth.

THE THORACIC DUCT AND THE RIGHT LYMPHATIC DUCT.

The thoracic duct or the *left lymphatic* duct (*ductus thoracicus*) (Figs. 482 and 483) conveys the great mass of lymph and chyle into the blood. It is the common trunk of all the lymphatic vessels of the body below the Diaphragm, and usually, but not always, also receives the lymph from the left side of the body above the Diaphragm. It does not drain the right side of the head and neck, the right upper extremity, the right lung, right side of the heart, and the convex surface of the liver. It partly drains the right chest wall. It varies in length from fifteen to eighteen inches in the adult, and extends from the second lumbar vertebra to the root of the neck. It commences in the abdomen by a triangular dilatation, the **receptaculum chyli** or the **reservoir** or **cistern of Pecquet** (*cisterna chyli*), which is situated upon the front of the bodies of the first and of the second lumbar vertebræ, to the right side and behind the aorta, by the side of the right crus of the Diaphragm. The receptaculum is absent in some individuals. The thoracic duct ascends into the thorax through the aortic opening in the Diaphragm, lying to the right of the aorta, and is placed in the posterior mediastinum in front of the vertebral column, lying between the aorta and vena azygos major. Opposite the fourth dorsal vertebra it inclines toward the left side, and ascends behind the arch of the aorta on the left side of the œsophagus, and behind the first portion of the left subclavian artery, to the upper orifice of the thorax. Opposite the seventh cervical vertebra it turns outward and then curves downward over the subclavian artery and in front of the Scalenus anticus muscle, so as to form an arch, and terminates in the left subclavian vein at its angle of junction with the left internal jugular vein. It usually opens at the apex of the angle in the superior and outer surface, but may open on the posterior surface. Sometimes it terminates by two branches. Figs. 482

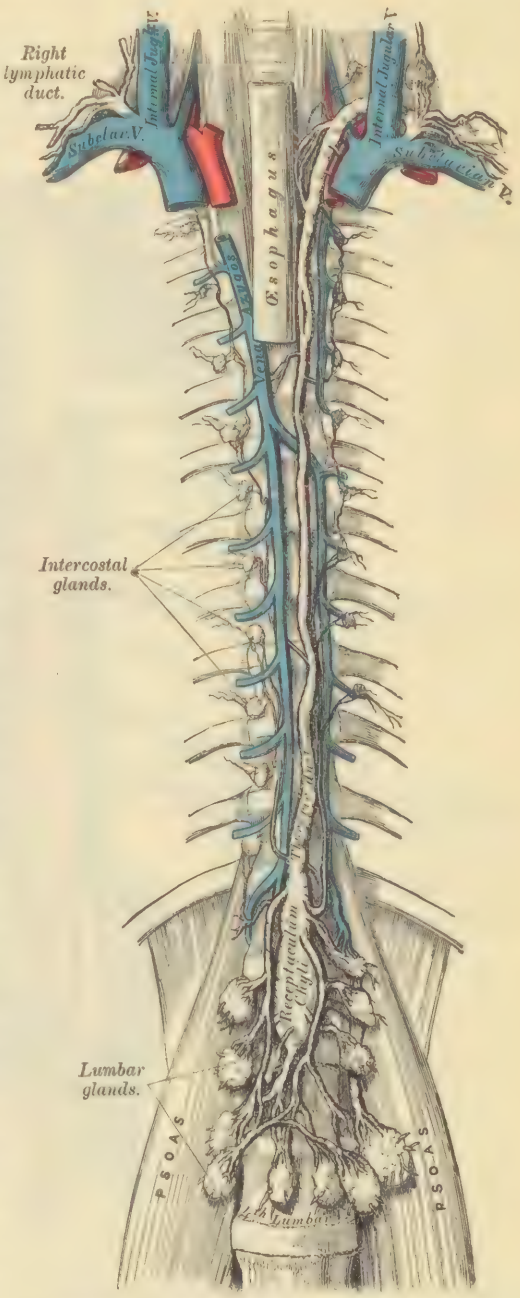


FIG. 482.—The thoracic and right lymphatic ducts.

and 485 show the termination of the thoracic duct. The thoracic duct, at its commencement, is about equal in diameter to that of a goose-quill, diminishes considerably in its calibre in the middle of the thorax, and is again dilated just before its termination, the **ampulla**. It is generally flexuous in its

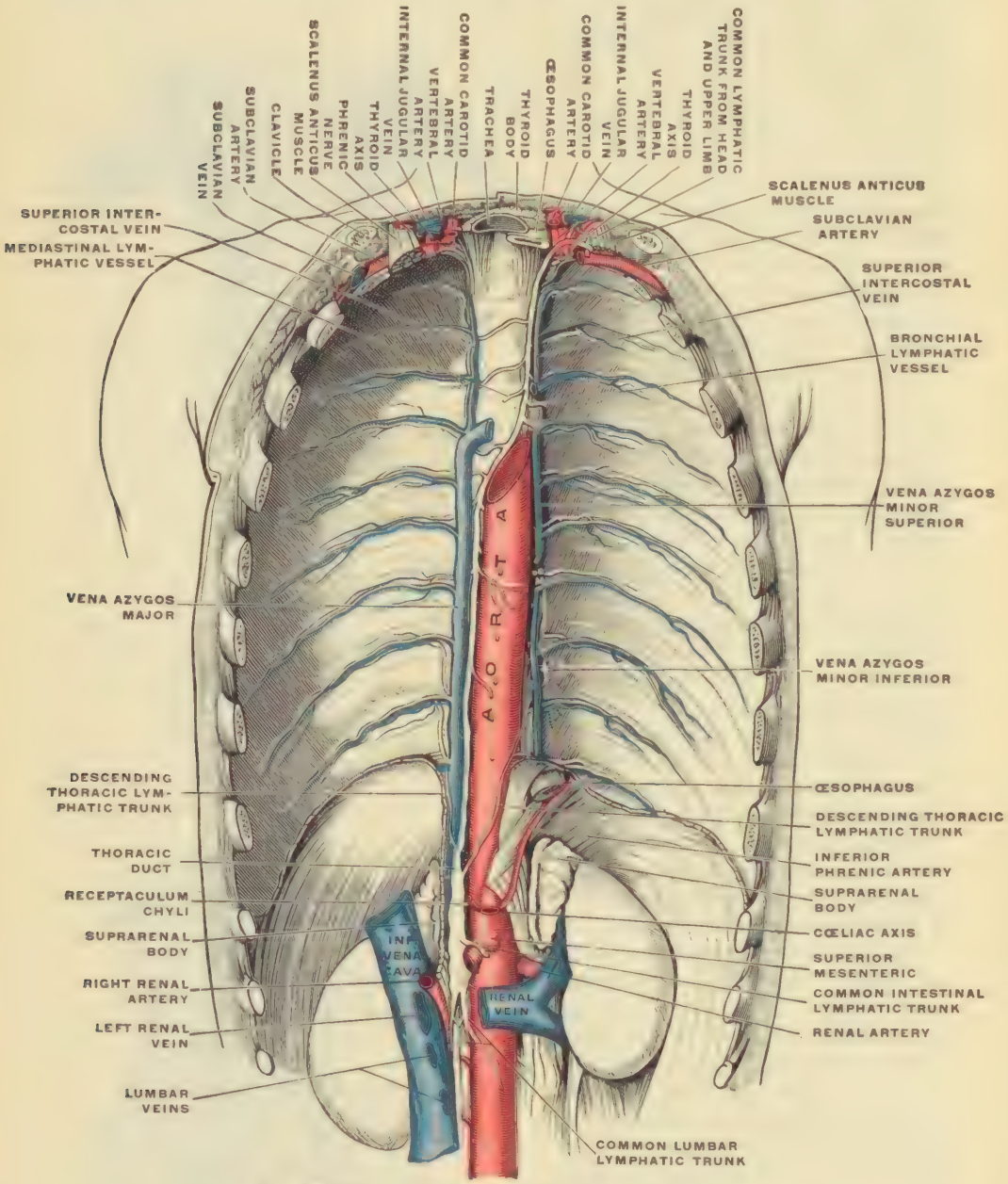


FIG. 483.—Thoracic duct and its tributaries. (Cunningham.)

course, the older the person the greater the flexuosity, and it is constricted at intervals so as to present a varicose appearance. The thoracic duct not infrequently divides in the middle of its course into two branches of unequal size, which soon reunite, or divides into several branches, which form a plexiform interlacement. It occasionally divides, at its upper part, into two branches, of which the

one on the left side terminates in the usual manner, while that on the right opens into the right subclavian vein, in connection with the right lymphatic duct. The thoracic duct has several valves throughout its whole course, but they are more numerous in the upper than in the lower part, and the lower valves are not competent; at its termination it is provided with a pair of competent valves, the free borders of which are turned toward the vein, so as to prevent the passage of venous blood into the duct.

The **common intestinal trunk** (*truncus intestinalis*) (Figs. 483, 484, and 511) empties into the receptaculum and brings lymph from the small intestine (lacteals), the stomach, the pancreas, and the spleen.

Radicals of Origin and Tributaries. In most individuals the **juxta-aortic glands** which are placed on each side of the aorta send a vessel upward and inward, which unite to form the thoracic duct. The right vessel is known as the **truncus lymphaticus lumbalis dextra.** The left vessel is known as the **truncus lymphaticus lumbalis sinistra.** A vessel from the glands in front of (*pre-aortic*) and back (*retro-aortic*) of the aorta empties into each of the above-named vessels. In some cases a large vessel forms from the glands in front of the aorta and helps form the duct. The receptaculum chyli receives the common intestinal lymphatic trunk, which conveys lymph from the small intestine, stomach, spleen, pancreas, and a portion of the liver.

FIG. 484.—Modes of origin of the thoracic duct. *a*, thoracic duct; *a'*, receptaculum chyli; *b*, common trunk of the efferents of the right juxta-aortic glands; *c*, common trunk of the efferents of the left juxta-aortic glands; *d*, one of these efferents passing through the left pillar of the diaphragm; *e*, right juxta-aortic gland; *f*, left juxta-aortic gland; *h*, retro-aortic gland; *i*, common trunk of the pre-aortic glands (truncus intestinalis); *j*, collecting trunks of the intercostal lymphatics, which reach the receptaculum chyli by taking the downward course. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The branches of the left lymphatic duct are (Fig. 483): 1. A descending trunk, which collects lymph from the posterior intercostal glands of the seven lower intercostal spaces. 2. A trunk is formed by vessels coming from the superior juxta-aortic glands beneath the Diaphragm. 3. The lymphatic vessels form the upper five intercostal spaces. 4. The lymphatic vessels form the posterior mediastinal glands and retrosternal glands. 5. The **left jugular trunk** (*truncus jugularis*), although this may open directly into the junction of the subclavian and internal jugular veins. 6. In rare cases the thoracic duct receives near its termination the **left subclavian trunk** (*truncus subclavius*) and a broncho-mediastinal trunk. As a rule, however, the two last-mentioned trunks empty into the jugulo-subclavian junction separately or as one duct.

The thoracic duct receives the lymph from the extremities, the deep portion of the abdominal wall and of the pelvic wall, the pelvic viscera, the kidneys and suprarenal capsules, the large intestine, the small intestine, the walls of the thoracic cavity, the under surface and anterior portion of the liver, the stomach,

the spleen, the pancreas, the sternal and intercostal glands, the left lung, left side of the heart, trachea, and œsophagus, and often, just before its termination, the lymphatics of the left side of the head and neck, and of the left upper extremity.

Structure.—The thoracic duct is composed of three coats, which differ in some respects from those of the lymphatic vessels. The **internal coat** consists of a single layer of flattened endothelial cells; of a subendothelial layer, similar to that found in the arteries; and an elastic fibrous coat, the fibres of which run in a longitudinal direction. Each endothelial cell is shaped like a lance-head and has serrated

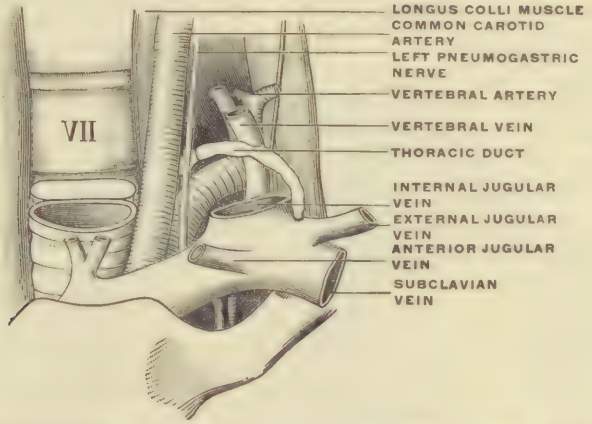


FIG. 485.—The bend of the thoracic duct at its termination in the subclavian vein. (Poirier and Charpy.)

borders. The **middle coat** consists of a longitudinal layer of white connective tissue with elastic fibres, external to which are several laminæ of muscular tissue, the fibres of which are for the most part disposed transversely, but some are oblique or longitudinal. The muscular fibres are intermixed with elastic fibres. The **external coat** is composed of areolar tissue, with elastic fibres and isolated fasciculi of muscular fibres.

The Right Lymphatic Duct (Ductus Lymphaticus Dexter)

(Figs. 482, 486, 487, 511).

A right lymphatic duct is frequently present. It is a short trunk, about half an inch in length and a line or a line and a half in diameter. It is formed by the union

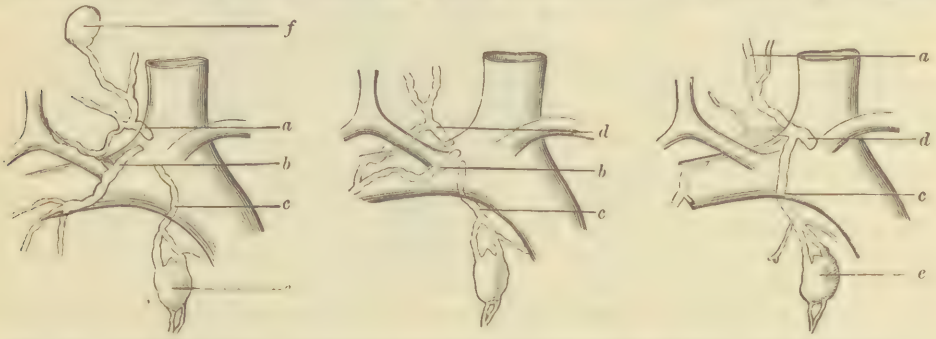


FIG. 486.—Terminal collecting trunks of the right half of the supra-diaphragmatic portion of the body. *a*, jugular trunk; *b*, subclavian trunk; *c*, broncho-mediastinal trunk; *d*, right lymphatic trunk; *e*, gland of the internal mammary chain; *f*, gland of the deep cervical chain. (Poirier and Charpy.)

of the right jugular, right broncho-mediastinal, and right subclavian trunks. Often on the right side the jugular, subclavian, and broncho-mediastinal trunks

are double. Usually they open into the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins separately. Sometimes they unite and open by one duct, and that is the right lymphatic duct. The orifice of the right lymphatic duct is guarded by two semilunar valves, which prevent the passage of venous blood into the duct.

Tributaries.—The right lymphatic duct, if present, receives lymph from the right side of the head and neck, the right upper extremity, the right side of the thorax, the right lung, and the right side of the heart, and from part of the convex surface of the liver.

LYMPHATICS OF THE CRANIAL REGION, FACE, AND NECK.

It is customary to divide the lymphatics of this region into **intracranial** and **extracranial lymphatics.** The statement is made by Poirier and Cunéo[1] that the

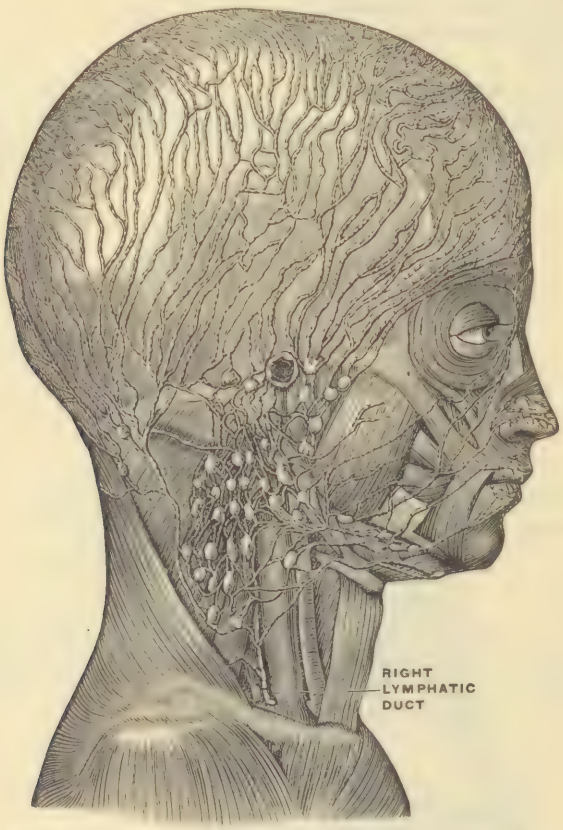


FIG. 487.—The lymphatics of the head and neck. (Sappey.)

brain and its membranes are without lymphatics. They state that there are spaces in the nervous centres comparable to lymphatic channels, but which are not truly lymphatic vessels and which are regarded by most as independent of the lymphatic system. Other writers[2] believe that there are **cerebral** and **meningeal lymphatic vessels.** It is highly probable that the perivascular spaces around the cerebral arteries are the beginning of a cerebral lymph system, and that these peri-

[1] Article on the Lymphatics in the Treatise on Human Anatomy. By Poirier and Charpy.
[2] Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

vascular lymph-channels pass out of the cranium with the arteries and the internal jugular vein and terminate in the superior deep cervical glands. It is also probable that lymph-spaces surround the meningeal blood-vessels and terminate in the superior deep cervical and the internal maxillary glands.

The **extracranial lymphatics** are divided into **superficial** and **deep**, and the two systems freely communicate. All of these vessels run into glands about the head and neck. The superficial lymphatics take origin in the subcutaneous tissue and superficial muscles. The deep vessels arise in the orbit, mouth, nose, pharynx, œsophagus, tongue, larynx, and the muscular, ligamentous, and osseous structures.

The Lymphatic Glands of the Head and Face.

The lymphatic glands of the head and face are as follows:

1. The Occipital.
2. The Posterior Auricular.
3. The Parotid and Subparotid.
4. The Internal Maxillary.
5. The Facial.

The Occipital or Suboccipital Glands (*lymphoglandulae occipitales*) (Figs. 488 and 493).—There are only two or three of these glands on each side. They are situated beneath the deep fascia, a little in front of the anterior edge of the

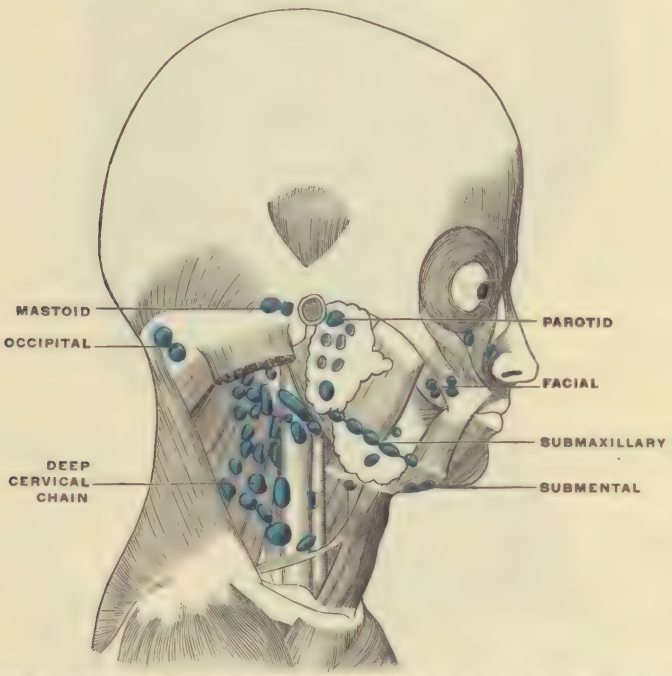


FIG. 488.—General arrangement of the lymphatic gland groups of the head and neck. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Trapezius muscle, near to but seldom upon the insertion of the Complexus muscle. They receive lymph from the occipital region of the scalp and from them it is sent to the upper deep cervical glands.

The Posterior Auricular Retro-auricular or Mastoid Glands (*lymphoglandulae auriculares posteriores*) (Figs. 488, 492, and 493).—There are two of these on each side. They are situated just beneath the lower margin of the Retrahens aurem muscle. They receive lymph from the parietal lymph-vessels, "from the internal

surface of the auricle, with the exception of the lobule, and from the posterior surface of the external auditory meatus."[1] The lymph-vessels from these glands empty into the upper deep cervical glands.

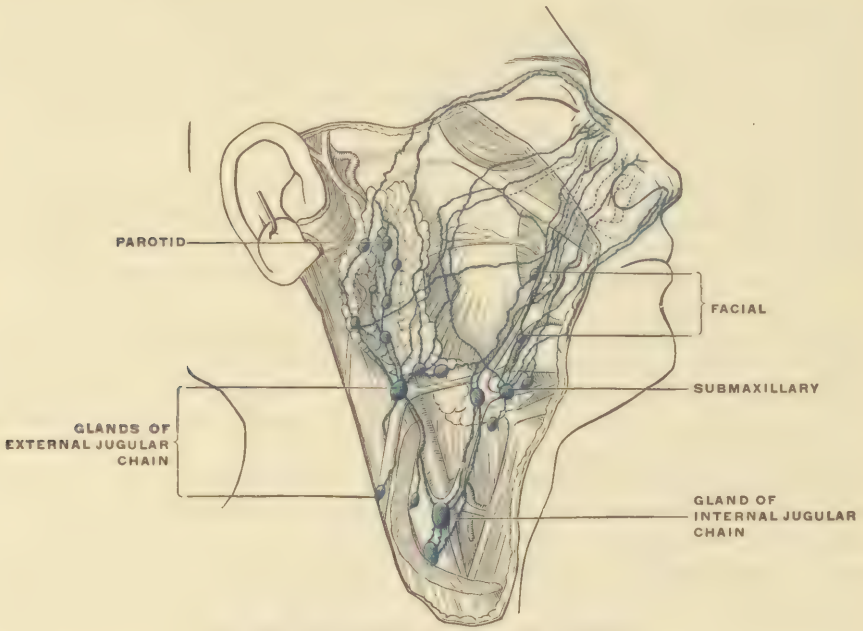


FIG. 489.—The lymphatics of the neck. (Küttner.)

The **Parotid Lymph-glands** (*lymphoglandulae auriculares anteriores*) (Figs. 488, 489, and 493) are divided into two groups, the superficial and the deep.

The Superficial Parotid or Pre-auricular Lymph-glands.—The superficial parotid lymph-glands are not the subcutaneous lymph-glands occasionally but very rarely

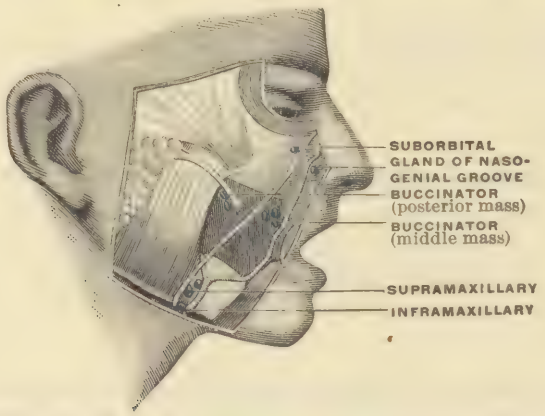


FIG. 490.—Facial glands. (Poirier and Charpy.)

found in this region, and which have been described by Richet, but are lymph-nodes situated between the parotid fascia and the parotid salivary gland. There may be three glands, two glands, or only one gland.

[1] The Lymphatics. By G. Delamare, P. Poirier, and B. Cunéo. English edition, translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

The Deep Parotid Lymph-glands.—The deep parotid lymph-glands are situated **within the parotid salivary gland. There are from fifteen to twenty of the deep glands.** The parotid glands receive lymph from the eyelids, eyebrows, the root of the nose, upper portion of the cheek, frontal portion of the scalp, temporal portion of the scalp, from the outer surface of the pinna, from the external auditory meatus, from the tympanum, and possibly from the mucous membrane of the nose, the posterior alveolar region of the superior maxillary bone, and the soft palate. Lymphatics pass from the superficial parotid glands into the superficial cervical and the upper deep cervical glands. Lymphatics pass from the deep parotid glands into the upper deep cervical glands.

The Subparotid Glands (*lymphoglandulae parotidae*).—The subparotid glands lie between the parotid salivary gland and the pharynx, and they are close to the internal carotid artery and the internal jugular vein. They receive lymph from the nasal fossæ, naso-pharynx, and Eustachian tube, and send vessels to the upper deep cervical glands.

The Internal Maxillary or Zygomatic Glands (*lymphoglandulae faciales profundae*) (Fig. 493).—The internal maxillary glands lie in the course of the internal maxillary artery in the anterior pharyngeal wall. They receive vessels from the naso-pharynx, palate, zygomatic fossa, temporal fossa, and orbit. From them vessels go to the upper deep cervical glands.

The Facial Glands or Genial Glands (*lymphoglandulae faciales*) (Figs. 488, 489, and 490).—The facial glands lie in three groups in the course of the lymphatic vessels which are passing to the submaxillary glands. According to Poirier and Cunéo the **supramaxillary** or **inferior group** (Fig. 490) lies upon the outer surface of the mandible, at the anterior margin of the Masseter muscle, and beneath the Platysma myoides. There may be only one or two glands in this group, but often there are ten or twelve. These glands lie about the facial artery and vein and are not constantly present. In many cases a salivary gland, the **inframaxillary** (Fig. 490), is interposed between the supramaxillary and submaxillary glands. The **buccinator, buccal,** or **middle group** (Figs. 490 and 493) is present in about one-third of the subjects and lies upon the outer surface of the Buccinator muscle external to the buccal fascia. Some of these glands are situated in the region where Steno's duct perforates the Buccinator muscle. Others are beneath the posterior fibres of the Zygomaticus major muscle.

The **superior group** of facial glands (Fig. 490) includes a malar gland, a suborbital gland, and a gland in the naso-genial groove.[1] An **anterior gland** is sometimes found, subcutaneous, on the outer surface of the Orbicularis oris muscle, the **commissural gland.**

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Cranial Region (Figs. 487, 493).

The lymphatic vessels of the cranial subcutaneous tissues are divided into anterior, lateral, and posterior. The **anterior** or **frontal** terminate in the parotid lymph-glands. The **lateral** or **parietal** terminate in the parotid and mastoid lymph-glands. The **posterior** or **occipital** terminate in the sterno-mastoid and occipital glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Face, the Interior of the Nose, Tongue, Floor of the Mouth, Pharynx, Larynx, and Thyroid Gland (Figs. 487, 489, 490, 491, 492, 494).

The lymphatic vessels of the face are more numerous than those of the cranial region, and commence over its entire surface. Those from the **frontal region** accompany the frontal vessels; they then pass obliquely across the face, running

[1] Article on the Lymphatics in the Treatise on Human Anatomy. By P. Poirier and B. Cunéo.

with the facial vein, pass through the glands on the buccal surface of the Buccinator muscle, and join the submaxillary lymphatic glands. The submaxillary lymph glands receive the lymphatic vessels from the **lips**, and are often found enlarged in cases of malignant disease of those parts.

The lymphatics of the **orbit** and of the **temporal** and **zygomatic fossæ** run with the branches of the internal maxillary artery to the maxillary glands, and afterward to the deep cervical glands.

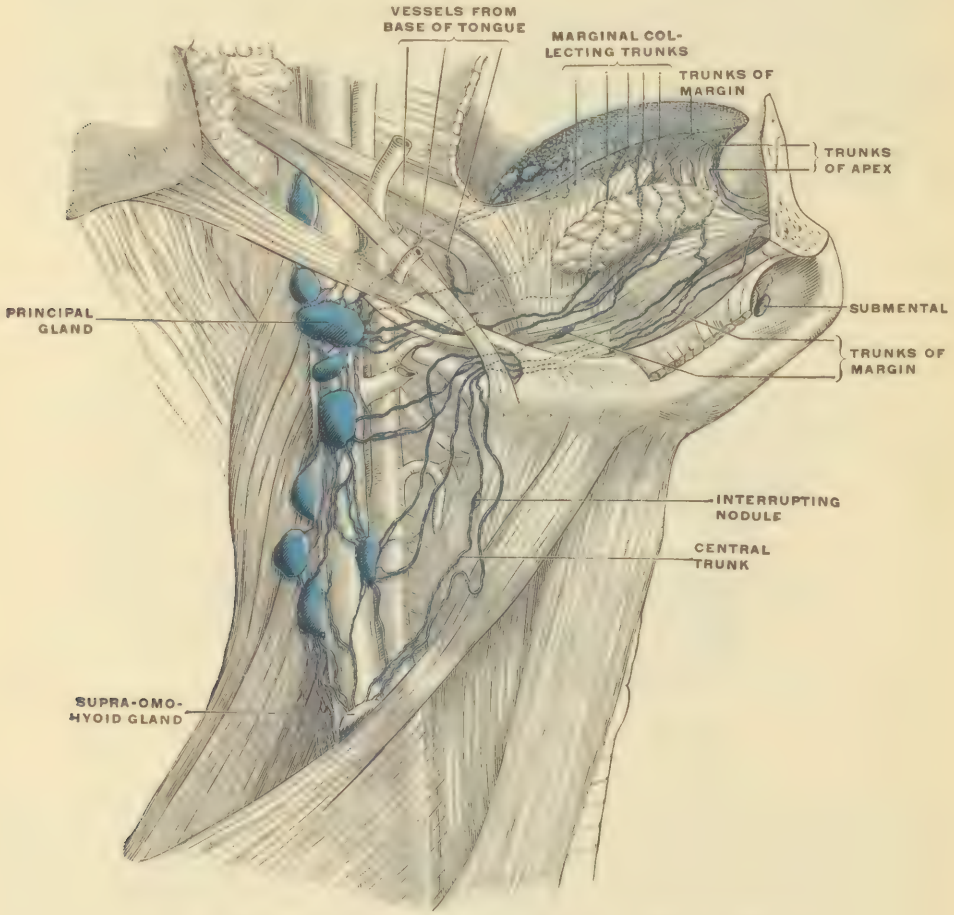


FIG. 491.—The lymphatics of the tongue; anterior view. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The lymphatics of the **nose** can be injected from the subdural and subarachnoid spaces. They terminate in the retro-pharyngeal and suprahyoid glands. The lymphatics of the **tongue** (Fig. 491) chiefly accompany the ranine vein first to the lingual glands and from these to the deep cervical glands. The lymphatics from the **anterior part of the tongue** and **floor of the mouth** pierce the Mylo-hyoid muscles and so reach the submaxillary lymph-glands (p. 1093). From the **upper part of the pharynx** the lymphatics pass to the retro-pharyngeal glands; from the **lower part of the pharynx** to the deep cervical glands. From the **larynx** two sets of vessels arise: an *upper*, piercing the thyro-hyoid membrane and joining the upper set of deep cervical glands; and a *lower*, perforating the crico-thyroid membrane to join the lower set of deep cervical glands. The lymphatics of the **thyroid gland** accompany the superior and inferior thyroid arteries, and open partly into the upper and partly into the lower set of deep cervical glands.

The Lymphatic Glands of the Neck.

The lymphatic glands of the neck are:

1. The Superficial Cervical, including the external jugular and the superficial anterior cervical.
2. The Submaxillary.
3. The Submental.
4. The Retro-pharyngeal.
5. The Deep Cervical, including the anterior deep cervical.

The Superficial Cervical Glands (*lymphoglandulae cervicales superficiales*) (Figs. 492 and 493).—The superficial cervical glands are composed of two groups, the **external jugular** and the **superficial anterior cervical glands.**

The External Jugular Glands (Figs. 489 and 492).—The external jugular glands are superficial to the Sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle. They are four to six in

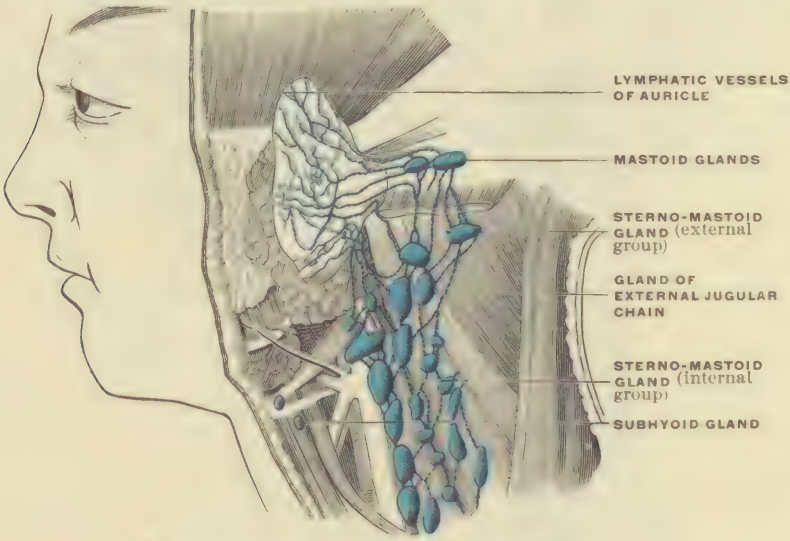


FIG. 492.—Deep cervical chain. (Poirier and Charpy.)

number and lie along the external jugular vein upon the outer surface of the deep cervical fascia, each gland occupying a depression in the fascia. The sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle is beneath them. They are usually gathered in a group a little below the parotid gland, but sometimes extend to the middle of the vein. They receive vessels from the occipital, the posterior auricular, the parotid, and the submaxillary lymph-glands, from the auricle, and from the skin and subcutaneous structures of the neck. From them lymphatic vessels pass to the upper deep cervical and to the lower deep cervical glands.

The Superficial Anterior Cervical Glands.—The superficial anterior cervical glands lie along the anterior jugular vein and from them vessels pass to the deep cervical glands.

The Submaxillary or Lateral Suprahyoid Glands (*lymphoglandulae submaxillares*) (Figs. 488, 489, and 493).—The submaxillary glands are in the submaxillary triangle beneath the deep fascia. They number three to six; are embedded in the superficial surface of the sheath of the submaxillary gland, but are not found within the sheath. Occasionally one or two are found in the deep portion of the sheath toward the floor of the mouth. The **middle gland of Stahr** is situated at the point where the submaxillary group is crossed by the facial artery. This is the largest gland of the group. The submaxillary glands receive vessels from the

"nose, the cheek, the upper lip, and the external part of the lower lip, almost the whole of the gums, and the anterior third of the lateral border of the tongue."[1] They also obtain lymph from the floor of the mouth and from the sublingual and submaxillary salivary glands.[2] They send vessels to the jugular and to the upper deep cervical glands.

The Submental or Median Suprahyoid Glands (Figs. 488, 491, and 493).—There are usually two glands situated between the anterior bellies of the two digastric muscles and upon the Mylo-hyoid muscle. They receive lymph from the cutaneous surface of the chin, from the cutaneous and mucous surfaces of the

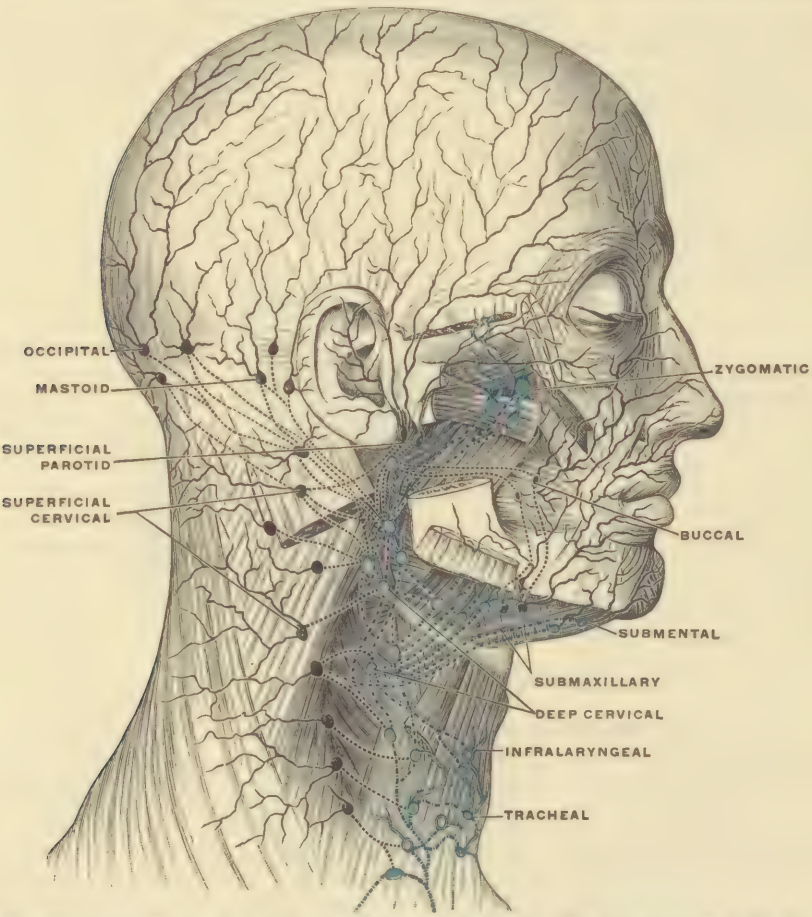


FIG. 493.—The lymphatic glands and vessels of the head and neck. The deep lymphatics are colored blue and the superficial black. In each set the afferent vessels are shown in continuous lines; the efferent and interglandular vessels are represented by dotted lines. (Cunningham.)

central portion of the lower lip, from the central portion of the gums, from the floor of the mouth, and from the tip of the tongue. They send some vessels to the submaxillary lymph-glands, and frequently a gland is interposed on the anterior belly of the Digastric muscle. They send other vessels to the upper deep cervical glands.

The Retro-pharyngeal or Post-pharyngeal Glands (Fig. 494).—The retro-pharyngeal glands are placed between the upper lateral portion of the posterior part of the pharynx and the first two cervical vertebræ. Leaf tells us that, as a

[1] The Lymphatics. By G. Delamare, P. Poirier, and B. Cunéo. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.
[2] Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

rule, there is but one gland on each side, though two may be present. The retro-pharyngeal glands lie upon the Rectus capitis anticus major muscle, which separates them from the vertebræ. They receive vessels from the muscles and fascia in front of the vertebræ, from the nasal fossæ and accessory cavities, from the naso-pharynx and Eustachian tube, and possibly from the cavity of the tympanum. They send vessels to the upper deep cervical glands.

The Deep Cervical, Carotid, or Sterno-mastoid Glands (*lymphoglandulae cervicales profundae*) (Figs. 488, 489, 491, 492, 493, and 494).—The deep cervical glands are divided into the **upper deep cervical** and the **lower deep cervical,** and are associated with certain accessory glands, including the **jugular** and **superficial anterior cervical,** which have been discussed under the head of superficial cervical glands; and the **anterior deep cervical** and the **recurrent glands,** which have not yet been studied. The deep cervical chain extends from the apex of the mastoid process of the temporal bone to the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins.

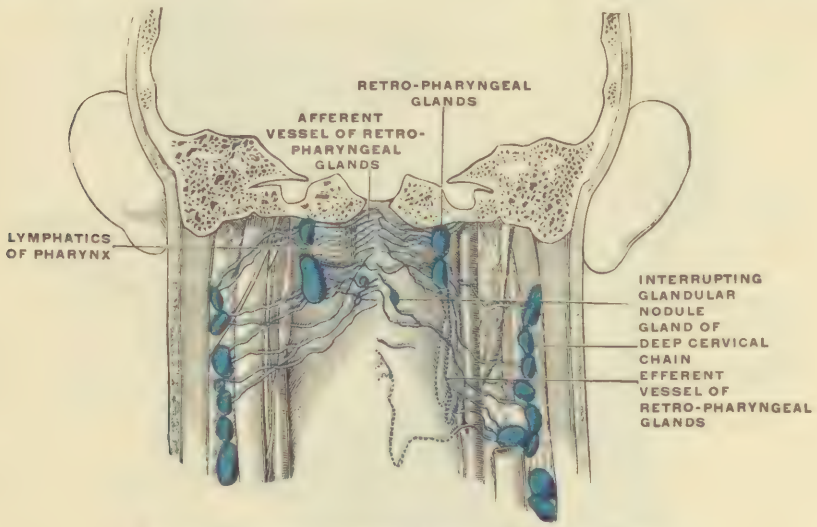


FIG. 494.—The retro-pharyngeal glands. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The Upper Deep Cervical or Substerno-mastoid Glands (*lymphoglandulae cervicales profundae superiores*).—The upper deep cervical glands extend from the tip of the mastoid process of the temporal bone to about the region where the common carotid artery is crossed by the Omo-hyoid muscle. One group, the **external group,** is placed external and posterior to the internal jugular vein. The glands are small and numerous, are embedded in the fatty tissue about the nerves from the deep cervical plexus, and at the posterior margin of the Sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle constitute a continuous mass passing to join the subclavian glands. Another group, known as the **internal group** or the **internal jugular glands,** lie directly upon or close by the outer border of the internal jugular vein. This group forms a chain along the internal jugular vein, and the glands are of larger size than those of the external group. Some glands of this group are beneath the vein. The glands of the internal jugular group communicate freely with each other and with the external group. The **external group** receives lymph-vessels from the posterior auricular, occipital, and external jugular glands, from the occipital region of the scalp, from the auricle, and from the skin, subcutaneous tissue, and muscles of the upper portion of the neck.[1] The **internal group** receives lymph-vessels from the retro-pharyngeal, parotid, subparotid, sub-

[1] The Lymphatics. By G. Delamare, P. Poirier, and B. Cunéo. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

maxillary, and submental glands, the anterior cervical glands (superficial and deep), and the recurrent glands, and from the tongue, naso-pharynx, larynx, soft palate, roof of the mouth, œsophagus (cervical portion), nasal fossæ, trachea (cervical portion), and the thyroid gland.[1] The external group terminates in the supraclavicular glands. The internal jugular group terminates in the jugular trunk, which, on the right side, helps to form the right lymphatic duct or empties directly into the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins, and on the left side empties directly into the venous junction or into the thoracic duct.

The Lower Deep Cervical or Supraclavicular Glands (*lymphoglandulae cervicales profundae inferiores*).—The lower deep cervical glands lie along the internal jugular vein in the lower part of its course. They receive lymph-vessels from the superficial cervical glands, the upper deep cervical glands, the axillary glands, the accessory chain, the occipital region of the scalp, the skin of the neck, the lower prevertebral muscles, the skin of the pectoral and mammary regions, and the skin of the arm. The supraclavicular glands send vessels which unite with the vessels of the upper deep glands to form the **jugular lymphatic trunk.** The jugular trunk on the right side may empty directly into the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins or may unite with the subclavian trunk to form the **right lymphatic duct.** On the left side it may empty into the thoracic duct or directly into the venous junction.

Accessory Chains to the Deep Cervical Glands.—The accessory chains to the deep cervical glands are: 1. The **external jugular glands** (p. 784). 2. The **superficial anterior cervical** (p. 784). 3. The **prelaryngeal** or **infralaryngeal glands** (Fig. 493) between the Crico-thyroid muscles. They receive lymph from the trachea, larynx, and thyroid gland, and send vessels to the pretracheal glands and to the upper deep cervical glands. 4. The **tracheal** or **pretracheal glands** (Fig. 493) lie upon the front of the trachea, receive vessels from the trachea, thyroid body, and prelaryngeal glands, and send vessels to the lower deep cervical glands. Some anatomists speak of the prelaryngeal and the pretracheal glands as the **anterior deep cervical glands.** 5. The **recurrent glands** lie on the sides of the œsophagus and trachea, by the recurrent laryngeal nerves. They receive vessels from the larynx, trachea, œsophagus, and thyroid gland, and send vessels to the upper and lower deep cervical glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Neck (Figs. 487, 491, 492, 493).

The superficial and deep cervical lymphatic vessels are continuations of those already described on the cranium and face. After traversing the glands in those regions, they pass through the chain of glands which lie along the sheath of the carotid vessels, being joined by the lymphatics from the pharynx, œsophagus, larynx, trachea, and thyroid gland. At the lower part of the neck, after receiving some lymphatics from the thorax, they unite to form the **jugular trunk** (Fig. 486), which often terminates, on the left side, in the thoracic duct, and on the right side, in the right lymphatic duct, but which may on either side open directly into the vein.

Surgical Anatomy.—In *secondary syphilis* there is general enlargement of the lymphatic glands, and in the posterior triangle of the neck the enlarged glands are distinctly palpable. The occipital glands may enlarge because of *inflammation* or *suppuration* about the *occipital region* of the *scalp*, and the posterior-auricular glands enlarge from *inflammation* or *suppuration* of the *temporal portion* of the *scalp*, the *external ear* (except the lobule), and the *external auditory meatus*. *Otorrhœa* sometimes causes them to enlarge.

The cervical glands are very frequently the seat of *tuberculous disease*. This condition is usually preceded by a lesion in those parts from which they receive their lymph. The lesion may be tuberculous or inflammatory. If tuberculous it furnishes bacilli directly to the lymph. If inflammatory it lessens tissue resistance and opens the portals to infection. The glands receive

[1] The Lymphatics. By G. Delamare, P. Poirier, and B. Cunéo. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

the lymph from the seat of primary disease and become tuberculous. It is very desirable, therefore, for the surgeon, in dealing with these cases, to possess a knowledge of the relation of the respective groups of glands to the periphery. Some years ago Sir Frederick Treves prepared a table to show to what glandular group lymph from each region is sent. The table is practically as follows:

Scalp.—Posterior part = suboccipital and mastoid glands. Frontal and parietal portions = parotid glands.

Lymphatic vessels from the scalp also enter the superficial cervical set of glands.

Skin of face and neck = submaxillary, parotid, and superficial cervical glands.

External ear = superficial cervical glands.

Lower lip = submaxillary and suprahyoid glands.

Buccal cavity = submaxillary and upper set of deep cervical glands.

Gums of lower jaw = submaxillary glands.

Tongue.—Anterior portion = suprahyoid and submaxillary glands. Posterior portion = upper set of deep cervical glands.

Tonsils and palate = upper set of deep cervical glands.

Pharynx.—Upper part = parotid and retro-pharyngeal glands. Lower part = upper set of deep cervical glands.

Larynx, orbit, and roof of mouth = upper set of deep cervical glands.

Nasal fossæ = retropharyngeal glands, upper set of deep cervical glands. Some lymphatic vessels from posterior part of the fossæ enter the parotid glands.

Treves's table indicates the glands usually involved, but the seat of primary disease cannot invariably be affirmed from a knowledge of the seat of glandular involvement, because the course of the lymphatic vessels is sometimes varied from that which usually maintains; for instance, in some cases lymphatics from the right side of the tongue pass to glands in the left side of the neck.

Glands may *enlarge* directly because of primary inflammation, injury, or tumor, but usually a glandular enlargement is secondary to a bacterial disease or to cancer involving the lymph-vessels which come to the gland. The seat of disease may be distant. Disease of the nasal fossæ may cause *retropharyngeal abscess* or enlargement of the submaxillary glands. *Cancer* of the *breast, stomach*, or *œsophagus* may be followed by disease of the cervical glands. Disease of the teeth, tongue, gums, floor of the mouth, and alveolar processes may cause enlargement of the submaxillary and other glands, and disease of the tonsil may lead to enlargement of the glands at the angle of the jaw.

The modern radical surgery of cancer depends on a knowledge of these glandular relations, and consists in thoroughly removing the growth and also the associated lymphatic glands, and, when possible, the lymph-vessels running from the tumor to the glands. The lower deep cervical glands occasionally enlarge secondarily to malignant growths of the abdomen or mediastinum, but this is not due to a direct flow of lymph, as the mediastinal glands do not send vessels to the supraclavicular glands. It is due to blocking of lymphatic vessels and reversal of the lymph-stream, so that lymph containing cancerous cells regurgitates.

A *retropharyngeal abscess* begins to the side of the pharynx. It enlarges toward the centre rather than from it, because the constrictions of the pharynx limit the outward progress of the pus.

The glands within the parotid salivary gland not unusually become tuberculous, and the surgeon may be led to believe that the salivary gland is the seat of primary disease.

Sometimes, though seldom, after the extensive removal of lymph-glands the region drained by their tributaries becomes the seat of persistent hard œdema (*lymph œdema*). It used to be thought that wounds of the thoracic duct were of necessity fatal, but it is now known that, unless close to the vein, they are seldom even very dangerous. It may be possible to suture a partly divided duct.[1] In an unsutured wound of the duct recovery follows if a collateral lymphatic circulation is established.[2]

THE LYMPHATICS OF THE UPPER EXTREMITY.

The Lymphatic Glands of the Upper Extremity.

The lymphatic glands of the upper extremity are divided into two sets, **superficial** and **deep**.

Superficial Lymphatic Glands (Figs. 495 and 503).—The superficial lymphatic glands of the upper extremity are few in number and small in size. They lie in the

[1] Dudley P. Allen's case. See Allen and Briggs, in American Medicine, September 21, 1901.
[2] Harvey Cushing, Annals of Surgery, June, 1898.

subcutaneous tissue. They are not receiving depots of great areas, but interrupt lymphatic vessels here and there. The glands in the axilla receive all of the lymphatic vessels, superficial and deep. There may be three sets of superficial glands.

One set, the **ante-cubital glands,** lies in front of the elbow. These glands are often absent. When these glands are present they receive vessels from the anterior portion of the forearm and the middle of the palm. The vessels from them pass upward along the front and inner aspect of the arm.

FIG. 495.—The superficial lymphatics and glands of the upper extremity.

Another superficial gland lies above the internal condyle. It is the **supratrochlear** or **supraepitrochlear gland** or **group of glands.** There is usually but one gland, but there may be two or more. It receives vessels from the inner portion of the hand, the three inner fingers, and the inner portion of the forearm, but, because of free anastomoses, also may receive lymph from any portion of the hand and forearm. Lymph-vessels from the supratrochlear gland pass up along the basilic vein to the axillary glands.

There are sometimes several small glands by the cephalic vein in the groove between the Deltoid and great Pectoral muscles. These are called **infraclavicular glands.** The lymph-tract from the infraclavicular glands does not terminate in the axillary glands, but ends in the subclavian glands.

The Deep Lymphatic Glands of the Upper Extremity or the Axillary Glands (*lymphoglandulae axillares*) (Figs. 495, 496, 497, 498, and 503).—The chief deep glands are situated adjacent to the axillary vessels. There are also a few small glands along the radial, ulnar, and brachial arteries which receive deep lymphatics from bones, muscles, and ligaments, and send lymphatics to the axillary glands. The axillary glands number from fifteen to thirty-five in each axilla. They are embedded in the axillary fat and receive the lymphatic vessels from the upper extremity, from the skin of the upper portion of the chest, from the Pectoral muscles, and from the mammary gland. The following division of the axillary glands is made by Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare:[1] 1. An **external group,** the

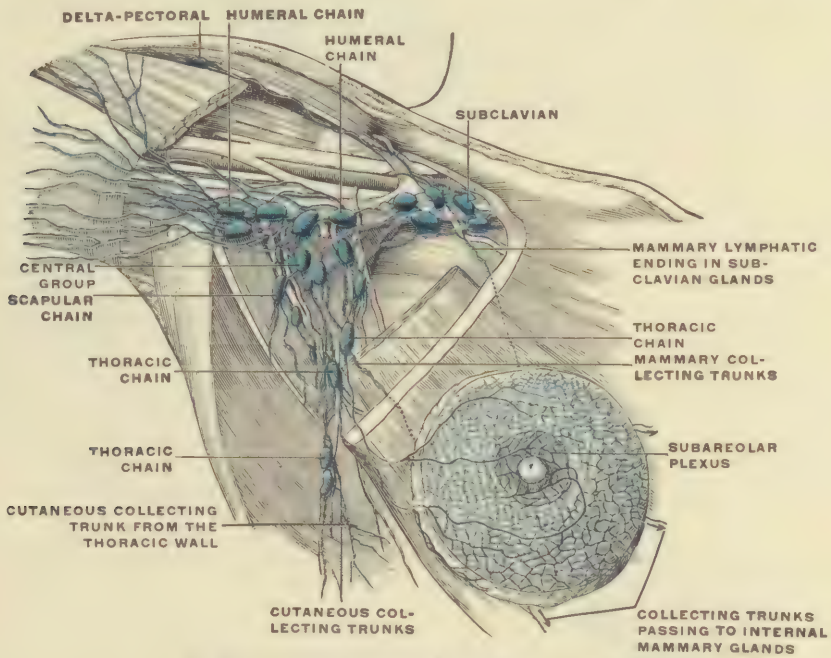


FIG. 496.—Axillary glands and lymphatics of the breast.

humeral chain, lying on the inner surface of the vessels and nerves, particularly the axillary vein, to the sheath of which they are adherent. Occasionally one or several of these glands are found beneath the vein. Some of the vessels from these glands pass into the central group of lymph-nodes; others enter the subclavian glands; others pass above the clavicle and terminate in glands situated in that region. 2. An **anterior group,** the **thoracic chain,** called also the **pectoral glands.** One mass of this chain, the **supero-internal,** is situated in the second or third intercostal space in front of the long thoracic artery and beneath the lower edge of the great Pectoral muscle. Another mass, the **infero-external,** is situated in the fourth and fifth intercostal spaces along the course of the long thoracic artery. The vessels from this chain end in the central group, and some few of them in the subclavian glands. 3. A **posterior group,** the **scapular chain,** lying along the dorsalis scapulæ artery in the groove between the Teres major and the Subscapularis muscles. They send vessels

[1] The Lymphatics. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

to the humeral and central chains. 4. A **central group**, the **intermediate glands**, placed near the base of the axilla, between the previously described chains. Their efferent

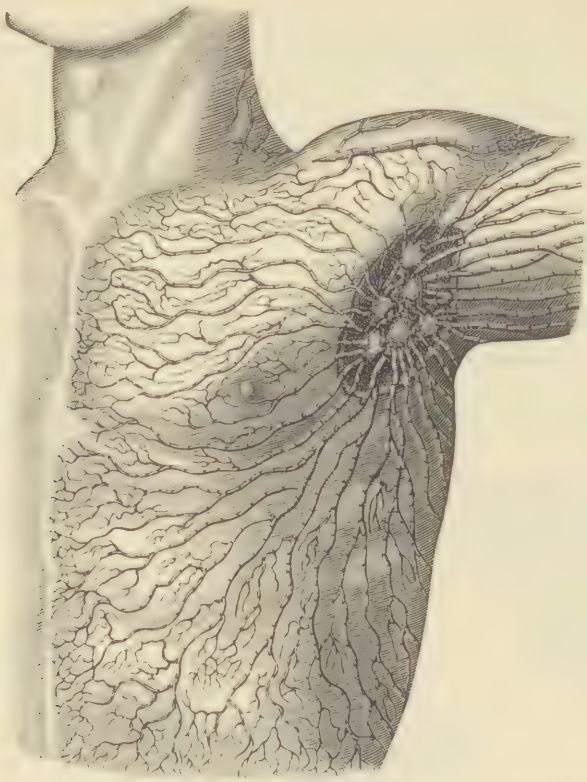


FIG. 497.—Lymphatics of the antero-lateral portion of the thorax. (Sappey.)

vessels end in the subclavian glands. The glands of the central group in many individuals protrude through the opening in the axillary fascia known as the **foramen**

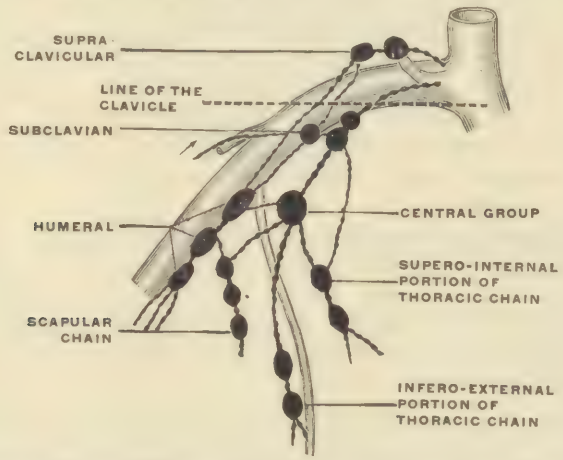


FIG. 498.—Scheme of the axillary glands. The dotted line indicates the position of the clavicle. (Poirier and Charpy.)

of Langer (Fig. 313). 5. A **subclavian group**, situated above the upper margin of the lesser Pectoral muscle. Most of them are internal to the axillary vein,

"between this vein and the first digitation of the Serratus magnus."[1] The humeral chain and the thoracic chain come together and form the **subclavian group of glands** situated at the apex of the axilla. From the axillary glands come many vessels which, by anastomosing, form the **infraclavicular plexus,** they then unite into a trunk, the **subclavian trunk,** which courses between the subclavian vein and Subclavius muscle. On the right side it empties into the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian vein or unites with the jugular trunk to form the right lymphatic duct. On the left side it may empty into the venous junction or into the thoracic duct.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Upper Extremity (Figs. 495, 496, 497, 498, 499).

The lymphatic vessels of the upper extremity are divided into the **superficial** and the **deep.**

The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Upper Extremity.—The superficial vessels begin as plexuses in the skin and form vessels which ascend in the subcutaneous tissue. These plexuses are particularly plentiful in the palm and palmar surface of the digits (Fig. 499). On each side of each finger two lymph-

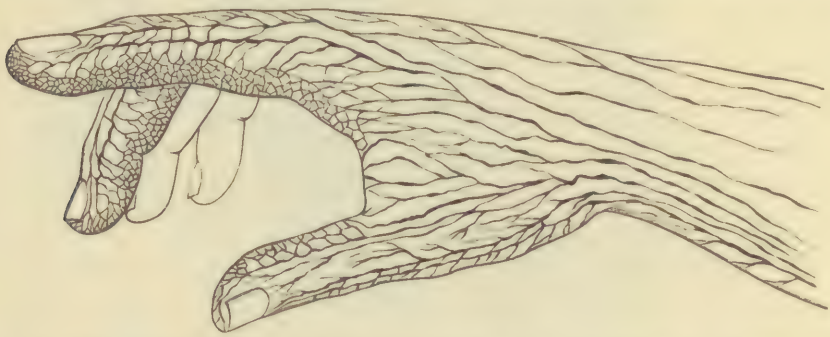


FIG. 499.—Superficial lymphatics of the digits and of the dorsal aspect of the hand. (Cunningham.)

vessels are formed; they ascend toward the hand, cross the dorsum, and anastomose frequently with each other. The vessels from the dorsum of the hand join the lymph-vessels of the forearm, which ascend chiefly along the superficial veins. The lymph-vessels which ascend with the superficial ulnar vein pass into the supratrochlear gland. The vessels which accompany the median veins pass into the ante-cubital or supratrochlear glands. Some of the lymph-vessels on the radial side of the forearm run up along the cephalic vein. All the other lymph-vessels of the upper extremity pass direct to the axillary glands. In the forearm there are about thirty vessels, in the middle of the arm there are from fifteen to eighteen (Sappey).

The Deep Lymphatic Vessels of the Upper Extremity.—The deep lymph-vessels convey the lymph from bone, periosteum, muscle, ligament, etc. They pass up the limb with the chief vessels, there usually being two trunks to each artery. In the arm there are two or three vessels. Some few vessels terminate in the small glands along the radial, ulnar, and brachial arteries, but most of them pass directly to the axillary glands.

Surgical Anatomy.—In *malignant diseases*, or other affections implicating the upper part of the back and shoulder, the front of the chest and mamma, the upper part of the front and side of the abdomen, or the hand, forearm, or arm, the axillary glands are liable to be found enlarged.

In *secondary syphilis* the supratrochlear gland is found to be enlarged. This gland is subcutaneous and readily palpable when enlarged. Normal axillary glands cannot be palpated.

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

The axilla is a passage-way for structures between the neck and the upper extremity, and purulent collections or tumors may extend from the neck into the axilla or from the axilla into the neck.

The axillary glands are involved early in cases of cancer of the mammary gland, and later the lower deep cervical glands are involved, and, as Snow has pointed out, regurgitation of lymph containing cancer cells leads to retrosternal involvement and to secondary cancer of the head of the humerus. In operating for cancer of the breast, follow the principle of Halsted and remove the breast, the skin over it, the muscles and fascia, the lymph-vessels, and the axillary glands in one piece. By this plan thorough removal is possible, and as lymph-vessels containing carcinoma cells are not cut across, the wound is not grafted with malignant epithelial cells. Diseased axillary glands are apt to adhere to the sheath of the vein. In removing cancerous glands, always excise the sheath of the vein.

THE LYMPHATICS OF THE LOWER EXTREMITY.

The Lymphatic Glands of the Lower Extremity.

The lymphatic glands of the lower extremity are divided into two sets, **superficial** and **deep.** The superficial are confined to the inguinal region, forming the **superficial inguinal lymphatic glands.**

The Superficial Inguinal Lymphatic Glands (*lymphoglandulae inguinales superficiales*) (Figs. 500, 501, 502, and 503).—The superficial inguinal lymphatic glands, placed immediately beneath the integument in Scarpa's triangle, are of

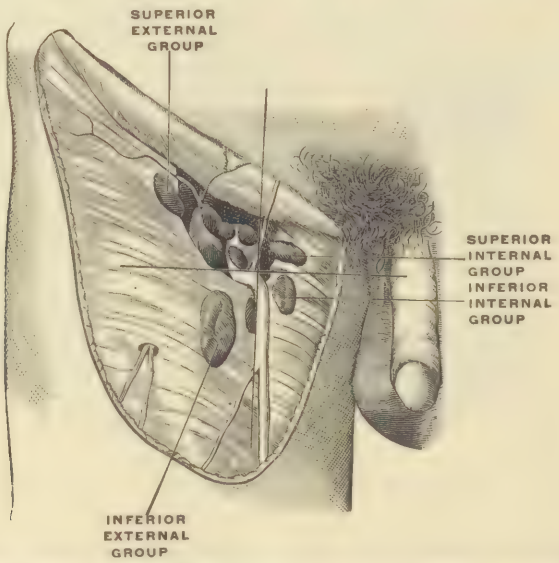


FIG. 500.—Superficial inguinal glands. Cribriform fascia has been removed so as to expose the femoral vessels. (Poirier and Charpy.)

large size, and vary in number from ten to twenty. It is customary to divide these glands into groups according to the region in which they are found. The following division is suggested by Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare:[1] A horizontal line carried through the saphenous opening divides the glands into two groups, a **superior group** and an **inferior group.** A vertical line through the saphenous opening divides each of the two groups into two secondary groups, an **external** and an **internal group.** We thus have an **external** and **superior group,** and **internal** and **superior group,** an **external** and **inferior group,** and an **internal** and **inferior group.**

[1] The Lymphatics. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

Directly in the saphenous opening there are often several glands constituting a **central group.**

Leaf points out that a gland usually exists near the saphenous opening, which is interposed between the superficial inguinal and deep inguinal glands. The superior group of glands, sometimes called the oblique group, is so placed that the glands lie with a certain regularity along and below Poupart's ligament, the long axis of each gland corresponding with the direction of the ligament. It is now known that each group of the superficial glands does not receive with regularity the lymph from and only from a definite and accurately determined area. Hence, it is not possible, as was once taught, to determine with certainty the exact situation of a lesion by the group of superficial glands involved. The superficial inguinal glands receive vessels from the skin of the lower extremity, gluteal region, peri-

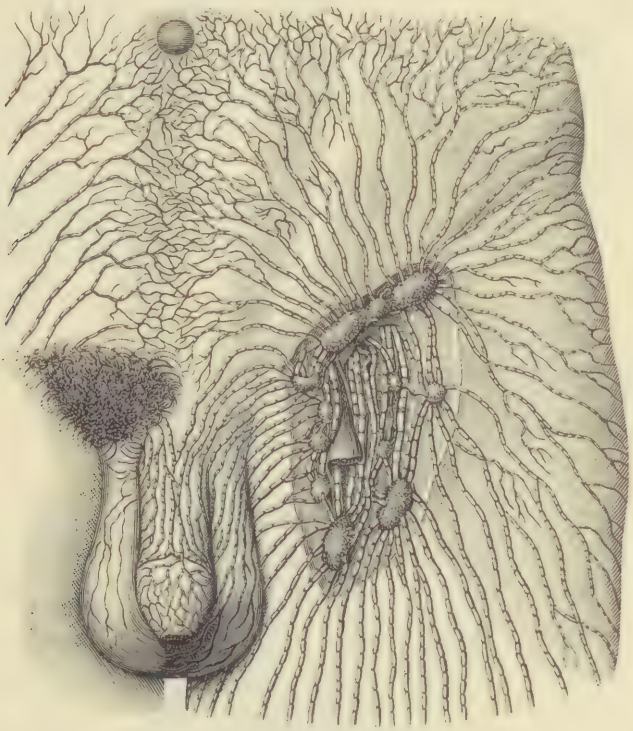


FIG. 501.—Glands of the inguinal region with the afferent and efferent lymphatics. (Poirier and Charpy.)

neum, abdominal wall, scrotum, anus, and from the prepuce of the clitoris and penis. Occasionally, though not normally, they receive vessels from the glans penis and glans clitoris. The superficial glands send vessels to the deep inguinal glands and to the external iliac glands, and these vessels penetrate the femoral sheath. The vessels which go to the iliac glands ascend with the femoral vessels. Leaf[1] figures some of the efferent vessels from these glands as terminating directly in the veins of this region.

Surgical Anatomy.—The superficial inguinal glands frequently become enlarged in diseases implicating the parts from which their lymphatics originate. Thus, in *malignant* or *syphilitic affections* of the prepuce and penis, or of the labia majora in the female, in cancer scroti, in abscess in the perinæum, and in other diseases affecting the integument and superficial structures

[1] The Surgical Anatomy of the Lymphatic Glands, 1898.

in those parts, or the subumbilical part of the abdominal wall or the gluteal region, the upper chain of glands is almost invariably enlarged, the lower chain being implicated in diseases affecting the lower limb.

The Deep Lymphatic Glands of the Lower Extremity.—The deep glands are the **inguinal, anterior tibial, popliteal, gluteal,** and **ischiatic.**

The Deep Inguinal or Deep Femoral Lymphatic Glands (*lymphoglandulae inguinales profundae*) (Fig. 503).—The deep inguinal lymphatic glands are beneath the deep fascia. There are only two or three of them, and they lie to the inner side of the femoral vein, the upper gland being in the crural canal and projecting into the pelvis. It is called the **gland of Cloquet** or the **gland of Rosenmuller.** The deep inguinal glands receive vessels from the superficial inguinal glands, deep lymphatics from along the femoral vessels, and vessels from the glans penis or clitoris. They send vessels to the ilio-pelvic glands.

The Anterior Tibial Gland (*lymphoglandula tibialis anterior*) (Fig. 503).—The anterior tibial gland is not constant in its existence. It is generally found by the side of the anterior tibial artery, upon the interosseous membrane at the upper part of the leg. Occasionally, two glands are found in this situation. It receives a deep anterior tibial lymphatic trunk and sends off a vessel to the popliteal glands.

The Popliteal Glands (*lymphoglandulae popliteae*).—The popliteal glands are embedded in the cellular tissue and fat of the popliteal space and about the perineal vessels The *juxta-articular* gland receives lymph-vessels from the knee-joint. The popliteal glands send vessels to the superficial and deep inguinal glands.

The popliteal glands are divided into three groups:[1] 1. A gland external to the termination of the external saphenous vein, the **external saphenous gland.** 2. A middle group of three or four glands on the sides of the popliteal vessels. The inferior glands of this group are the **intercondyloid glands of Leaf.** The superior glands are the **supracondyloid glands of Leaf.** 3. A gland adherent to the posterior

FIG. 502.—The superficial lymphatics and glands of the lower extremity.

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

ligament of the knee-joint, the **juxta-articular gland of Poirier and Cunéo.** The external saphenous gland receives vessels which ascend along the external saphenous

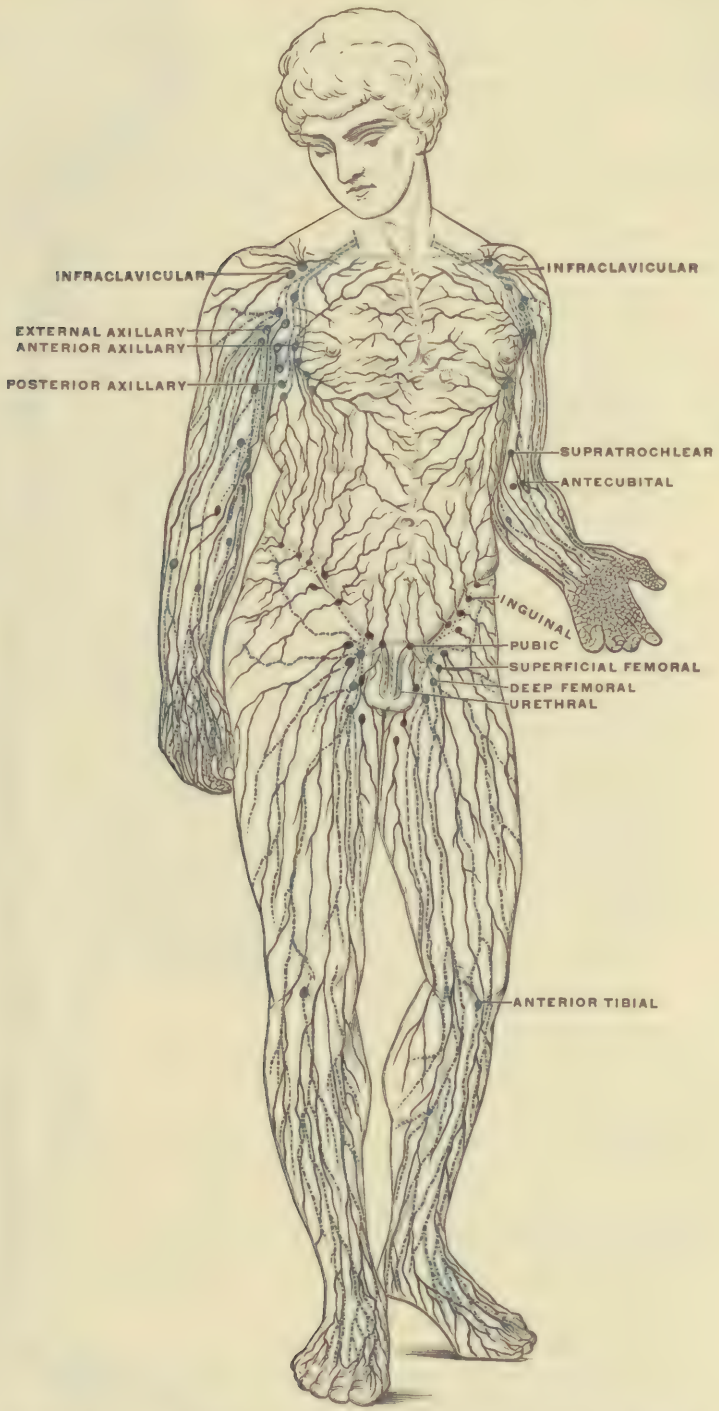


FIG. 503. — Superficial lymphatic vessels of the trunk, and the lymphatic glands and vessels, superficial and deep, of the limbs (diagrammatic). Afferent vessels are represented by continuous lines; efferent and interglandular vessels by dotted lines. (Cunningham.)

vein. The middle group receives vessels from the anterior tibial glands and deep lymphatic vessels which ascend with the posterior tibial.

The Gluteal and Ischiatic Glands.—The gluteal and ischiatic glands are placed, the former above, the latter below, the Pyriformis muscle, resting on their corresponding blood-vessels as they pass through the great sacro-sciatic foramen.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Lower Extremity (Figs. 502, 503).

The lymphatic vessels of the lower extremity, like the veins, may be divided into two sets, **superficial** and **deep**.

The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Lower Extremity.—The superficial lymphatic vessels are placed beneath the integument in the superficial fascia, and are divisible into three sets: trunks which follow the course of the internal saphenous vein, trunks which accompany the external saphenous vein, and trunks from the gluteal region. 1. Trunks which follow the course of the internal saphenous vein arise from a plexus on the dorsum of the foot, which plexus obtains lymphatics from all the toes, the sole, and both borders of the foot. The internal trunks, three or four in number, pass to the superficial inguinal glands. The external trunks run upward and inward and end in the internal trunks. 2. The trunks which follow the external saphenous vein number two or three, and they take origin from the heel and from the posterior half of the outer edge of the foot. They empty into the superficial inguinal glands. 3. The lymph-trunks from the gluteal region join vessels from the anus and enter the superficial inguinal glands.

The Deep Lymphatic Vessels of the Lower Extremity.—The deep lymphatic vessels of the lower extremity are few in number and accompany the deep blood-vessels. In the leg they consist of three sets, the anterior tibial, peroneal, and posterior tibial, which accompany the corresponding blood-vessels, two or three to each artery; they ascend with the blood-vessels and enter the lymphatic glands in the popliteal space; the efferent vessels from these glands accompany the femoral vein and join the deep inguinal glands; from these glands vessels pass beneath Poupart's ligament and communicate with the chain of glands surrounding the external iliac vessels. The deep lymphatic vessels of the gluteal and ischiatic regions follow the course of the blood-vessels, and join the gluteal and ischiatic glands at the great sacro-sciatic foramen.

THE LYMPHATICS OF THE PELVIS AND ABDOMEN.

The lymphatics of the pelvis and abdomen constitute a continuous chain, but for convenience of study it is customary to divide them into two groups, which we call, with Poirier and Cunéo,[1] the **ilio-pelvic glands** and the **abdomino-aortic glands**; the first group being below and the second above the level of the bifurcation of the aorta into the two common iliac arteries.

The Iliac or Ilio-pelvic Glands (Lymphoglandulae Iliacae) (Figs. 504, 505).

The ilio-pelvic glands are at the level of the inlet of or in the cavity of the pelvis. They follow the course of the blood-vessels and are divisible into the **external iliac**, the **internal iliac**, and the **common iliac chains**.

The External Iliac Glands.—The external iliac glands form chains around the external iliac vessels. There are three chains of these glands. An *external chain* of three or four glands lies between the artery and the Psoas muscle.

[1] Treatise on Human Anatomy.

The lowest gland of the external chain is called by Poirier and Cunéo the **external retro-crural gland** (Fig. 504). A *middle chain* of three glands lies upon the front surface of the external iliac vein. The lowest gland of this group is called by Poirier and Cunéo the **middle retro-crural gland.** An *internal chain* of three or four glands is placed to the inner side of the external iliac vein. The lowest gland of this chain is called the **internal retro-crural gland,** and is close to the upper gland of the deep inguinal chain, the **gland of Cloquet.** The **obturator gland** belongs to the inner chain of external iliac glands. The external iliac glands receive vessels from the superficial and deep iliac glands, from the glans penis or glans clitoris,

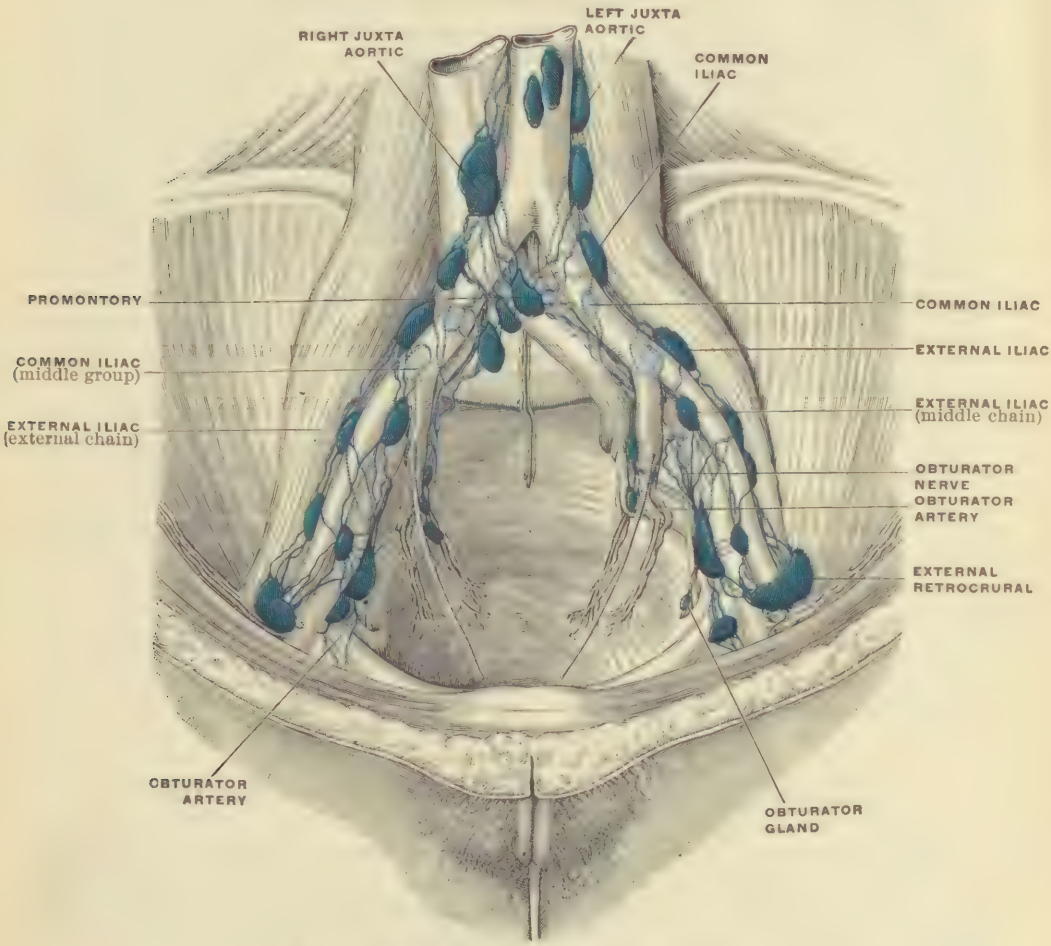


FIG. 504.—Ilio-pelvic glands. (Poirier and Charpy.)

deep lymphatics from the umbilicus and lower part of the belly wall, vessels from the superior portion of the vagina, the uterine neck, the prostate gland, the bladder, the membranous portion of the urethra, and the internal iliac glands, and the obturator gland receives deep lymph-vessels from along the course of the obturator vessels. The external iliac glands send vessels direct to the common iliac glands and also lymphatics to join vessels from the internal iliac glands on their way to the common iliac group. The glands along the deep epigastric artery and those along the deep circumflex iliac artery are accessory chains to the main group of external iliac glands.

The Internal Iliac or Hypogastric Glands.—The internal iliac glands are placed along the internal iliac artery and its branches. The gland on the middle hæmorrhoidal artery is called the **middle hæmorrhoidal gland**. The **lateral sacral gland** is on the lateral sacral artery. The internal iliac glands receive lymph from the pelvic viscera, perinæum, and penile portion of the urethra, deep tissues of the posterior portion of the thigh, and from the buttocks. They send vessels to the common iliac glands and also to the external iliac glands.

The Common Iliac Glands.—The common iliac glands are found about the common iliac artery and are divided into an *external group*, which lies upon the

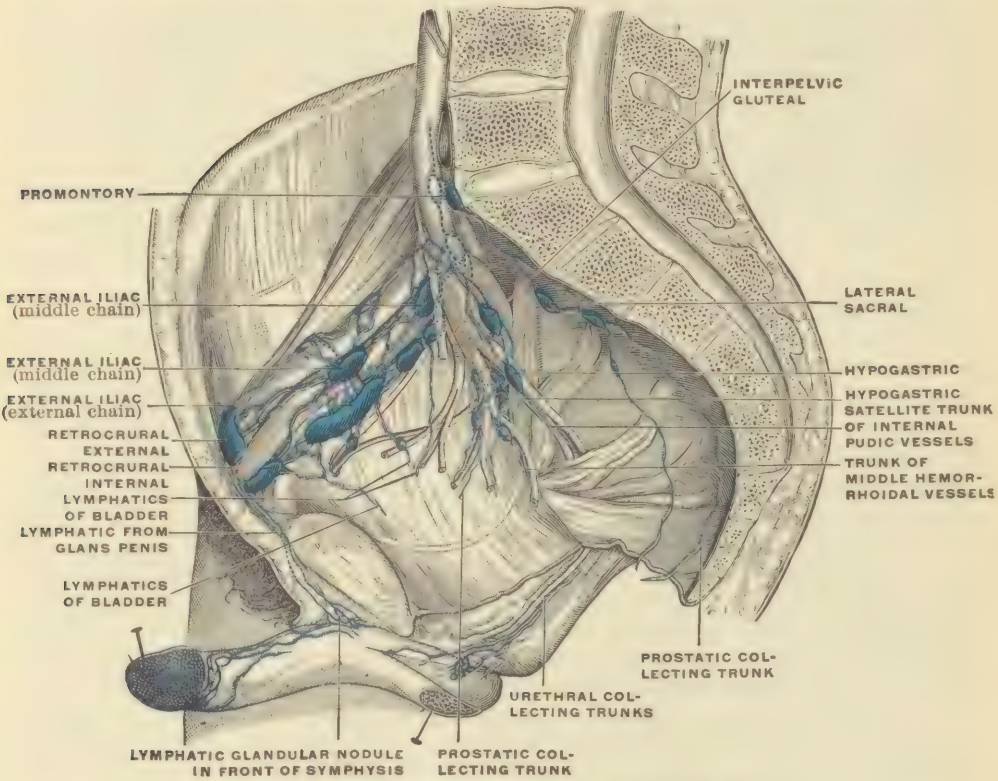


FIG. 505.—Ilio-pelvic glands (lateral view.) (Poirier and Charpy.)

inner edge of the Psoas muscle; a *middle group*, behind the artery, and an *internal group*, which lies upon the front of the body of the fifth lumbar vertebra or upon the sacro-vertebral junction. They receive vessels from the external and internal iliac glands and from the pelvic viscera, the vessels from the pelvic viscera ascending to the promontory of the sacrum and containing perhaps, here and there, interrupting glands, known as **sacral glands** (*lymphoglandulae sacrales*) (Fig. 511). They also receive lymph-vessels from the lumbo-sacral region. They send vessels to the aortic glands. Some anatomists place the common iliac glands and the glands about the lower portion of the aorta and vena cava in a group called the **lumbar glands** (*lymphoglandulae lumbales*) (Fig. 511).

The Abdomino-aortic Glands (Figs. 484, 511).

The abdomino-aortic glands are placed about the abdominal aorta. There are twenty-five or thirty of them. They are divided by Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare[1]

[1] The Lymphatics. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

into the **right** and **left juxta-aortic glands**, the **retro-aortic glands**, and the **pre-aortic glands.**

The Right Juxta-aortic Glands.—The right juxta-aortic glands are grouped in front of and behind the inferior vena cava, the posterior glands lying upon the Psoas muscle and the adjacent pillar of the Diaphragm. They receive lymph-vessels from the right common iliac glands, from the right testicle or the right half of the uterus, and the right tube, ovary, broad ligament, the right kidney and suprarenal capsule, and also lymph-vessels which pass along the lumbar arteries. They send vessels to the pre-aortic and the retro-aortic glands and the receptaculum chyli.

The Left Juxta-aortic Glands.—The left juxta-aortic glands lie by the side of the abdominal aorta, upon the Psoas muscle, and the left pillar of the Diaphragm. They receive tributaries from the left side corresponding to those received by the glands of the right side, and also send out corresponding efferent vessels, and several additional vessels which pass through the left pillar of the Diaphragm and empty into the thoracic duct.

The Retro-aortic Glands.—The retro-aortic glands are placed beneath the receptaculum chyli and in front of the bodies of the fourth and fifth lumbar vertebræ. They receive lymph-vessels from both juxta-aortic groups, and also from the pre-aortic glands, and they send vessels to the receptaculum chyli.

The Pre-aortic Glands.—The pre-aortic glands lie upon the front of the aorta, and in most subjects are divisible into three groups: an *inferior*, lying at the origin of the inferior mesenteric artery; a *middle*, at the origin of the superior mesenteric artery, and a *superior*, about the cœliac axis, the **cœliac glands** (*lymphoglandulae coeliacae*). Glands which are found along the course of all the branches of the abdominal aorta empty into and belong to the group of pre-aortic glands. The pre-aortic glands receive vessels from the juxta-aortic glands and from all the glands along the mesenteric vessels and the cœliac axis and its branches, and receive lymph from the stomach, intestines, liver, pancreas, and spleen. They anastomose with each other and send vessels to the retro-aortic glands and to the receptaculum chyli. Instead of the glands terminating in the receptaculum by separate vessels, the vessels may unite and form a common trunk, the **intestinal trunk** (*truncus intestinalis*), which runs along with the common trunk from the juxta-aortic glands, and empties into the receptaculum (Fig. 484).

1. **The Glands along the Mesenteric Arteries** (*lymphoglandulae mesentericae*) receive the lymph from the colon, cæcum, appendix, ileum, jejunum, duodenum, and perhaps also some from the stomach.

2. **The Glands Connected with the Cœliac Axis and its Branches.**—There are three groups of these glands: the **gastric** or **coronary**, the **splenic**, and the **hepatic** (including those of the bile-ducts).

The Gastric Glands (*lymphoglandulae gastricae*).—One group is situated in the gastro-pancreatic fold; another group is connected with the lesser curvature of the stomach (Fig. 508). Some of them are in the lesser omentum close to insertion of the thicker part upon the stomach, and lie near the ascending branches of the gastric artery, that is to say, upon the vertical portion of the lesser curvature. Others lie within the lesser omentum and accompany the descending branches of the gastric artery, and particularly gather near the point where the gastric artery comes toward the stomach wall. The gastric glands receive lymph from most of the stomach. They send lymph to the upper group of pre-aortic glands, the **cœliac glands.**

The Splenic Glands (*lymphoglandulae pancreaticolienales*).—The splenic glands accompany the splenic artery and lie upon the posterior surface of the spleen, between the spleen and pancreas. They receive lymph from the fundus of the stomach, from the spleen, and from the pancreas, and send it to the cœliac glands.

The Hepatic Glands (*lymphoglandulae hepaticae*).—These glands lie along the hepatic artery, some on the level of the floor of the foramen of Winslow, others by the left side of the portal vein.[1] The authors previously quoted point out that there is a secondary chain of hepatic glands about the right gastro-epiploic artery, the **gastro-epiploic chain**, and that this comprises a **subpyloric group** and a **retro-pyloric group**. The subpyloric group (Fig. 508) is placed in the great omentum below the pylorus, and is usually distinctly separated from it. The retro-pyloric group is not constant. It is placed along the gastro-duodenalis artery back of the pylorus. There is also a group of glands, secondary to the hepatic glands, to the right of or posterior to the cystic duct and the common bile-ducts. The hepatic glands proper receive lymph from the liver and send it to the cœliac glands. The subpyloric glands receive lymph from the inferior portion of the stomach and from the superior portion of the great omentum. They send lymph to the hepatic glands proper, the retro-pyloric glands, and sometimes also to the glands about the superior mesenteric artery. The retro-pyloric glands receive lymph from the subpyloric glands, from the upper surface and from the posterior surface of the pylorus, and from the duodenum. They send lymph to the hepatic glands proper and sometimes to the glands along the superior mesenteric artery. The glands along the gall-ducts empty into the hepatic glands proper.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Abdomen and Pelvis.

The lymphatic vessels of the abdomen and pelvis may be divided into two sets, **superficial** and **deep**.

The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Walls of the Abdomen.—The superficial lymphatic vessels of the walls of the abdomen follow the course of the superficial blood-vessels. The superficial lymphatics are derived from the integument. Those of the lower part of the abdomen below the umbilicus follow the course of the superficial epigastric vessels and converge to the superior group of the superficial inguinal glands (Figs. 501 and 503). Those from the costal margins of the abdomen terminate in the axillary glands (Fig. 497). The superficial lymphatics from the sides of the lumbar part of the abdominal wall wind around the crest of the ilium, accompanying the superficial circumflex iliac vessels, to join the superficial inguinal glands (Fig. 501).

The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Gluteal Region.—The superficial lymphatic vessels of the gluteal region turn horizontally around the outer side of the nates, and join the superficial inguinal glands.

The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Scrotum and Perinæum.—The superficial lymphatic vessels of the scrotum and perinæum terminate in the superficial inguinal glands.

The Superficial Lymphatic Vessels of the Penis.—The superficial lymphatic vessels of the penis occupy the sides and dorsum of the organ, the latter receiving the lymphatics from the prepuce; they all converge to the superficial inguinal glands. Lymph vessels from the glans penis empty into the deep inguinal and the external iliac glands.

In the female the lymphatic vessels of the vulva and prepuce of the clitoris pass to the superficial inguinal glands; those of the glans of the clitoris pass to the deep inguinal and the external iliac glands.

The Deep Lymphatic Vessels of the Abdominal Wall.—The deep lymphatic vessels of the abdominal wall take the course of the principal blood-vessels, and arise from muscular or aponeurotic layers. One set of lymph-vessels runs along with the deep epigastric artery and terminates in the external iliac glands. Another

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

accompanies the deep circumflex iliac artery, and also terminates in the external iliac glands. Several lymph-vessels accompany the lumbar arteries and empty into the juxta-aortic glands. A vessel accompanies the internal mammary artery and empties into the internal mammary glands. Lymph-vessels of the parietes of the pelvis, which accompany the gluteal, ischiatic, and obturator vessels, follow the course of the internal iliac artery, and ultimately join the external iliac, internal iliac, and common iliac glands, and the glands about the lower portions of the aorta and vena cava.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Umbilicus.—The lymphatics of the umbilicus are divided into three groups:[1] The **cutaneous lymphatics,** which are very superficial, and empty into the superficial inguinal glands. The **lymphatics of the fibrous nucleus,** which pass through the rectus sheath, reach the deep epigastric artery and join the deep lymphatics which come from the muscular and aponeurotic layers of the belly wall. The **lymphatics of the aponeurotic margin** are in two sets: An *anterior* set, some of which penetrate the rectus sheath and join the lymphatics from the fibrous nucleus; others of which pass outward, penetrate the external and internal oblique muscles, and join the posterior lymph-vessels from the aponeurotic margin. A *posterior* set, which forms a collection of vessels on the posterior aspect of the rectus sheath, from which several trunks emerge. One trunk passes outward, penetrates the Transversalis muscle, joins the anterior trunk from the aponeurotic margin, and empties into the external iliac glands.[2] Other ducts run along with the deep epigastric artery and pass into the external iliac glands. Glands lie along the lower portion of these lymph-ducts, and are known as the **superior epigastric glands,** and a gland may exist in the subperitoneal tissue beneath the umbilicus.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Peritoneum.—It seems probable that the peritoneal cavity is a lymph-sac and that lymphatics take origin from the peritoneum in several ways. Byron Robinson[3] points out three modes of origin: 1. By stomata between endothelial cells. These stomata are in direct communication with lymph-vessels. 2. By interstitial spaces in the subperitoneal tissue. 3. By a plexiform origin similar to interstitial spaces.

Surgical Anatomy.—The fact emphasized by Byron Robinson that the peritoneum is a great lymph-sac explains the quick absorption of septic material and the rapid spread of infectious processes. If the exudate clots and blocks the lymph-channels, absorption is slow and life may be saved. If it does not clot, absorption is rapid and death is certain. Whether it clots or not depends on the nature of the bacteria present.[4] Fowler, impressed by the fact that absorption takes place most rapidly from the diaphragmatic region and least rapidly from the pelvic region, advises placing the victim of peritonitis in bed, with his head and body elevated.[5]

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Bladder.—No lymphatics exist in the mucous membrane of the bladder, although they do exist in the mucous membrane of the prostate. There are some lymphatics in the bladder muscle, and numerous lymphatics in the subperitoneal tissue. The network of lymph-vessels in the muscles is connected with the network beneath the peritoneum and prevesical fascia, and collecting trunks come from both the anterior and posterior surfaces of the bladder. The anterior collecting trunks are divided into two sets. One set comes from the inferior portion of the anterior surface and passes outward to terminate in an external iliac gland "between the external iliac vein and the obturator nerve."[6] The other set comes from the superior and anterior vesical surface, runs upward and outward, and terminates in the external iliac glands. Each set of vessels possesses interrupting lymph-nodes, some of which are directly in front of the bladder.

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.
[2] Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. [3] The Peritoneum. [4] Byron Robinson. The Peritoneum.
[5] George Ryerson Fowler, on Diffuse Septic Peritonitis, in the Medical Record, April 14, 1900.
[6] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

The posterior collecting trunks are divided into four sets. The first set comes from the superior and posterior portion and passes outward, exhibiting interrupting nodes in its course. These trunks terminate in the external iliac glands. The second set runs directly back into the external iliac glands. The third set comes from the middle of the posterior portion of the bladder and terminates in the hypogastric glands. The fourth set comes from the vesical neck, passes back and then ascends and terminates in the glands in front of the sacral promontory. This fourth set joins with the lymphatics from the prostate and seminal vesicles.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Prostate Gland.—These vessels form a peri-prostatic plexus, which receives its afferents from the gland structure. This plexus is drained by four vessels, three of which commence on the posterior surface of the gland. Although these vessels begin on the posterior surface of the prostate, their termination in each case is different. One passes on the under surface of the bladder, crosses the superior vesical artery, runs outward, and ends in the middle chain of the external iliac group. Another passes upward, outward, and backward, and terminates in the hypogastric group. A third passes along the floor of the pelvis, runs by the side of the rectum, and ascends on the anterior surface of the sacrum to terminate in the lateral sacral glands and in the hypogastric group. Occasionally a fourth trunk is found on the anterior surface of the prostate, which descends and joins the vessels from the membranous urethra and ends in the hypogastric glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Male Urethra.—These vessels are divided into two groups: First, those of the penile portion of the urethra; second, those of the bulb and membranous portion. The lymphatics of the prostatic urethra belong to those of the prostate gland. The lymph-vessels of the penile urethra in front of the sulcus all run toward the frænum, at which point they bend backward to the sulcus; here they run to the dorsal surface of the penis and terminate in the same manner as the vessels from the glans. The trunks from the remainder of the penile urethra emerge from the inferior surface, run around the corpus cavernosa, and mostly unite with the vessels from the glans penis. One vessel, though, passes over the symphysis and enters in the internal retro-crural gland, whilst another passes beneath the symphysis and terminates with the vessels from the bulb and membranous portion of the urethra. The lymphatics of the bulb and membranous portions end in three trunks, one of which accompanies first the artery of the bulb and then the internal pudic artery, and ends in the hypogastric gland attached to the pelvic portion of this artery. A second trunk runs behind the pubes, to end in the internal retro-crural gland. A third trunk runs on the bladder, where it joins with vessels from this organ, to end in the internal chain of external iliac glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Female Urethra.—The lymphatics of the female urethra terminate in the same manner as do the lymphatics of the bulb and membranous portions of the male urethra

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Uterus.—These consist of three sets, each of which arises by a network of capillaries. There is a mucous network, a muscular network, and a peritoneal network. The vessels from these three regions of origin are collected in the subperitoneal tissue, from which area the collecting trunks take origin. From the *cervix*, according to Poirier and Cunéo, come from five to eight collecting trunks, which pass toward the sides of the body of the uterus, forming on each side, by twisting and dilatation, the **juxta-cervical lymphatic knot** of Cunéo. The cervical connecting trunks are divisible into three groups on each side. One group is composed of two vessels, which pass to the middle chain of the external iliac glands (superior and middle glands). Another group is composed of two vessels, which enter the hypogastric glands. A third group is composed of several vessels, some of which enter the lateral sacral glands, and the balance of which terminate

in the glands of the sacral promontory. From the **body of the uterus** come three groups on each side. One group is composed of four or five vessels which emerge below the uterine cornu, pass beneath the ovary, where they receive the ovarian lymphatics, and terminate in the juxta-aortic glands of the same side. One so-called accessory lymphatic pedicle terminates in the external iliac glands, the other in the inguinal glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Fallopian Tube.—The lymphatics of the Fallopian tube join with those of the uterus and ovary and terminate in the lateral aortic glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Ovary.—The ovary is extremely rich in lymphatics; they form a plexus which is superficial to the veins. The vessels leading from this plexus, four or five in number, pass upward in company with the ovarian vessels and end in the lateral aortic glands. Above the fifth lumbar vertebra these vessels anastomose with the lymphatics from the fundus of the uterus and Fallopian tube. Quite often there is a lymph-vessel which emerges from the ovary, passes downward and outward and ends in the middle chain of the internal iliac glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Vagina.—The lymphatics of the vagina are divided into those of the mucous coat and those of the muscular coat; these anastomose freely with each other and terminate in a peri-vaginal network, which is drained by three groups of trunks. One group drains the upper third of the vagina and passes to the middle chain of the external iliac glands. A second group is efferent to the middle third of the vagina and ends in the hypogastric glands. A third group carries the lymph from the lower third of the vagina to the gland of the promontory.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Testicle.—The lymphatic vessels of the testicle consist of two sets, **superficial** and **deep**; the former commence on the visceral surface of the tunica vaginalis, the latter in the epididymis and body of the testis. They form several large trunks which ascend with the spermatic cord, and, accompanying the spermatic vessels into the abdomen, terminate in the juxta-aortic and sometimes also in the pre-aortic glands; hence the enlargement of these glands in malignant disease of the testis.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Vas Deferens.—These lymphatics empty into the external iliac glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Seminal Vesicles.—A network exists on the surface of each vesicle, formed by a collection of lymph-vessels from the mucous lining and from the muscular structure of the vesicle. The trunks from this network empty into the external and internal iliac glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Kidney, Ureter, and Suprarenal Capsule.—Their courses and terminations differ on the two sides. They take origin from a superficial network just beneath the capsule of the kidney and a deep network in the interior of the organ. The superficial network is connected to the collecting vessels of the deep network at the hilum. From the superficial network numerous vessels penetrate the capsule of the kidney and join the lymphatics of the fatty capsule. According to Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare,[1] anterior and posterior trunks come off from the deep lymphatics of the right kidney. The anterior trunk usually terminates in the right juxta-aortic glands which lie upon the vena cava. The posterior trunks terminate in the juxta-aortic glands which lie behind the vena cava. On the left side all the collecting trunks terminate in the juxta-aortic glands of the left side of the aorta.

The lymphatics of the **fatty capsule of the kidney** communicate with the lymphatics of the kidney, and both terminate in the same glands. The lymphatics of the **suprarenal capsule** terminate in the juxta-aortic glands of the same side. From

[1] The Lymphatics. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

the **ureter** lymph-vessels come off and terminate in the juxta-aortic and adjacent glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Liver.—The lymphatic vessels of the liver are divisible into two sets, **superficial** and **deep**. The former arise in the lobules at the periphery of the liver and pass to the subperitoneal connective tissue over the entire organ. The latter arise from the deeper lobules, and emerge from the liver along the portal vein or the hepatic veins.

According to Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare,[1] three groups of superficial collecting trunks arise from the subperitoneal network. The *posterior trunks* divide into three groups. The single *right posterior trunk* terminates in a gland about the cœliac axis. The *middle posterior trunks* (five to seven in number) pass through the opening in the Diaphragm. The *left posterior trunks* pass into glands

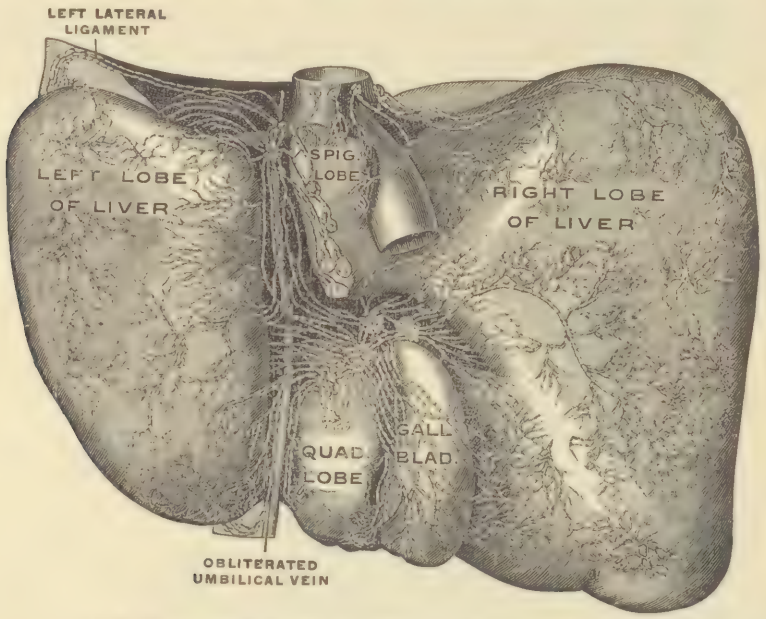


FIG. 506.—Lymphatics of the inferior surface of the liver. (Sappey.)

about the subdiaphragmatic portion of the œsophagus. The *anterior collecting trunks* terminate in the lymph-glands of the hilum of the liver. The *superior trunks* ascend. One of these trunks or a posterior trunk passes with the vena cava through the Diaphragm and terminates in glands about the vena cava. Another trunk, an anterior one, passes over the anterior border of the liver, runs for a time with the round ligament, and terminates in the hepatic glands. Numerous **middle trunks** ascend in the suspensory ligament, unite beneath the Diaphragm into a short trunk of large size, which passes through the Diaphragm and divides into several smaller ducts, which terminate in the glands back of the xiphoid cartilage. Trunks from the superficial lymphatic network also emerge from the inferior surface of the liver. The posterior trunks from the right lobe reach the vena cava and terminate in the glands about the intra-thoracic end of that vessel. The middle and anterior trunks from the right lobe reach the glands along the cystic duct. The trunks from the left lobe terminate in the glands along the hepatic artery. The trunks from the lobus Spigelii reach the glands of the hilum and the glands about the lower intra-thoracic portion of the vena cava. The trunks from the quadrate lobe terminate in the glands of the hilum. The *deep collecting trunks*

[1] The Lymphatics. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

are divisible into two groups. One group descends along the portal vein, the other ascends along the hepatic veins.

Sappey pointed out that the **deep descending trunks** accompany the bile passages and the branches of the portal vein, several anastomosing vessels accompanying each branch of the portal vein. The same authority affirmed that from fifteen to eighteen trunks emerge from the hilum and terminate in the adjacent glands. The *deep ascending trunks* surround as a sheath the branches of the hepatic vein (Sappey). As they approach the Diaphragm they diminish in number to five or six, pass through the opening for the vena cava, and terminate in the glands about the lower portion of the intra-thoracic cava.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Bile-ducts.—The lymphatics of the *bile-ducts* arise from the mucous membrane and from within the muscular tissue, and terminate in glands along the cystic and common ducts.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Stomach (Figs. 507 and 508).—The lymphatic vessels of the stomach consist of two sets, **superficial** and **deep**. The superficial arise from the outer (serous) and the middle (muscular) coats. The deep arise from the mucous membrane and form a network in the submucous tissue. Trunks from the submucous network pass through the muscular tunic and terminate in the trunks coming from the sero-muscular layers. These latter, the musculo-serous

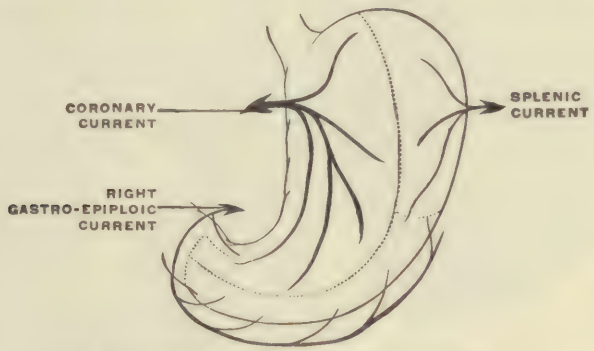


FIG. 507.—Lymphatic areas of the stomach. (Cunéo.)

collecting trunks, are divided into three groups. The first group is composed of six or eight vessels which pass toward the lesser curvature (Sappey). There are from three to ten glands upon the lesser curvature along the course of the gastric artery which receive these superior trunks. Vessels come to these glands from the cardia, from the body of the stomach, and from the pyloric end. In the lesser curvature the lymphatic vessels lie in the wall of the stomach. According to Cunéo, two-thirds of the stomach is drained by the lymph-vessels of group I. The second group comprises the trunks from the greater curvature which end in the subpyloric glands. The glands along the greater curvature are some distance from the stomach wall in the pyloric region, and lymph-streams flow from left to right, that is, toward the pylorus and not from it. These lymphatics drain one-third of the stomach. The first and second groups send lymph eventually to the cœliac glands and juxta-aortic glands. The third group comprises trunks which come from the fundus of the stomach and enter the lymphatic glands about the spleen.

Surgical Anatomy.—Mikulicz pointed out the early infection of the glands of the lesser curvature in pyloric cancer, and insisted that in operation for pyloric cancer the entire lesser curvature must be removed. Cunéo showed us that in pyloric cancer the fundus and two-thirds of the greater curvature usually remain free from disease, because the lymph-current is toward the pylorus and not from it. Of course, if the lymphatics become blocked, the lymph-current may be reversed (regurgitation), and then infection of these parts can occur. William J. Mayo has noted the "lymphatic isolation" of the dome of the stomach. In operating for cancer of the

pylorus, make the section of the stomach as directed by Hartmann, that is, a section which removes all of the lesser curvature and cuts the greater curvature well to the left of the subpyloric glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Pancreas.—The lymphatics of the pancreas arise from a network about the pancreatic lobules. The collecting trunks anastomose freely on the surface of the pancreas. Some of the trunks terminate in the splenic glands, which send vessels to the cœliac glands. Others terminate directly in the cœliac glands. The lymphatics of the head of the pancreas communicate with the duodenal lymphatics and the lymphatics of the lower end of the common duct. The pancreatic and splenic lymphatics probably communicate.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Spleen.—The lymphatics of the spleen consist of two sets, **superficial** and **deep**; the former are placed beneath its peritoneal covering, the latter in the substance of the organ; they accompany the blood-vessels, passing through a series of small glands, and pass into the splenic glands which are placed in the omentum between the spleen and pancreas. The gastro-splenic omentum contains no glands.

THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM OF THE INTESTINES.

The Lymphatic Glands of the Small Intestine (Fig. 509).—The lymphatic glands of the small intestine are placed between the layers of the mesentery, and are

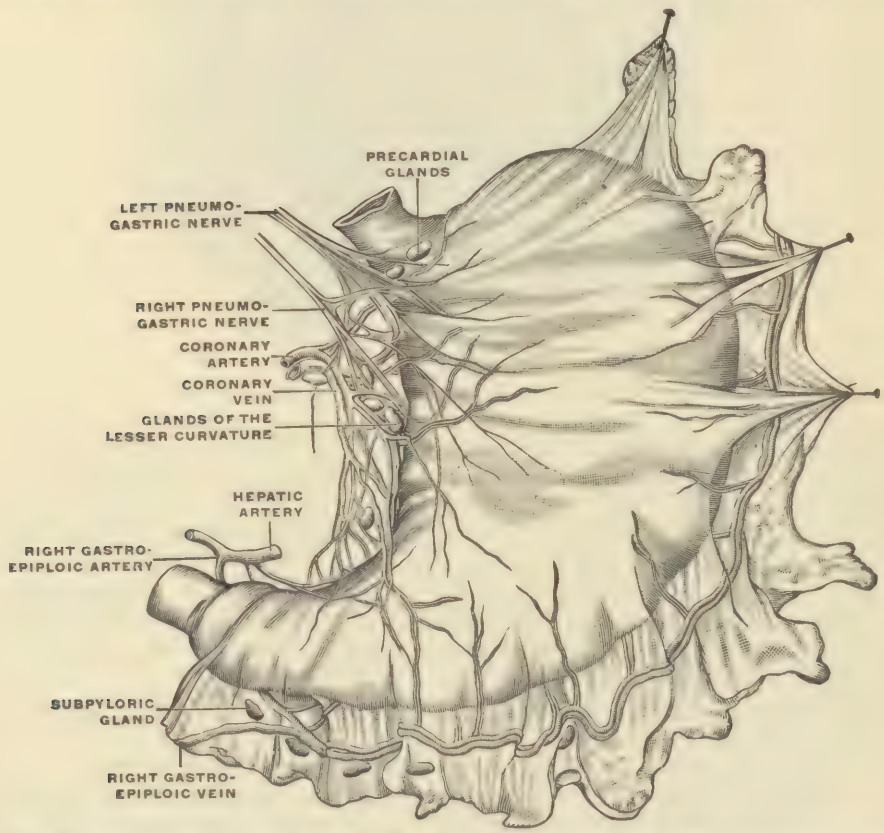


FIG. 508.—General view of the subperitoneal lymphatic plexus of the stomach prepared by the method of Gerota. (Cunéo.)

called **mesentery glands** (*lymphoglandulae mesentericae*). They vary in number from a hundred to a hundred and fifty, and in size from that of a pea to that of a small

almond.[1] These glands are most numerous and largest above, the glands of the jejunum being more numerous than those of the ileum. This latter group becomes enlarged and infiltrated with deposit in cases of fever accompanied with ulceration of the intestines. The glands diminish in number as we descend until the ileo-cæcal region is reached, when a number of glands appear about the ileo-cæcal artery. The mesenteric glands receive the lacteals and send out trunks to the receptaculum chyli. The chyle from the intestine passes through the glands on its way to the thoracic duct.

The glands may be divided into: I. A group of glands the members of which are chiefly found along the terminal vessels from the vascular loops of the intestinal branches of the superior mesenteric artery. Some glands of this group are placed upon "the anterior surface of the upper end of the jejunum."[2] II. A group of glands along the vascular loops of the superior mesenteric artery. Most of them are between the primary loops. Some of them are between the secondary and tertiary loops. III. A group of glands along the trunk of the superior mesenteric artery.

FIG. 509.—Lymphatics of the small intestine. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Small Intestine (Fig. 509).—The lymphatic vessels of the small intestine are called **lacteals**, from the milk-white fluid they usually contain. They take origin in the intestinal villi and in lymphatic sinuses around the bases of the solitary glands. Lymphatic plexuses exist in the submucous tissue, the muscular coat, and the subserous tissue. The lymphatic vessels pass between the layers of the mesentery, enter the mesenteric glands, and finally unite to form two or three large trunks which terminate separately in the receptaculum chyli; frequently, however, they first unite to form a single large trunk, termed the **intestinal lymphatic trunk** (Figs. 483, 484, and 511).

The Lymphatic Glands of the Large Intestine.—The lymphatic glands of the large intestine are divided into the **colic glands** and **rectal glands.**

The Colic Glands (*lymphoglandulae coliacae*).—The colic glands are subdivided into: 1. The ileo-colic or ileo-cæcal glands (Fig. 510), which lie along the course of the ileo-colic artery, one or two of the glands being placed upon the anterior surface of the cæcum. The mesoappendix also contains a gland which com-

[1] Leaf (Surgical Anatomy of the Lymphatic Glands) says it is very common to find not more than forty or fifty.

[2] The Surgical Anatomy of the Lymphatic Glands. By Cecil H. Leaf.

municates with glands in the mesocolon, and receives lymph from the appendix and, in the female, from the ovary. 2. Glands in the mesocolon along the right colic artery, which receive lymph from the ascending colon and the hepatic flexure. 3. Glands in the mesocolon along the middle colic artery, which receive lymph from the hepatic flexure and transverse colon. 4. Glands in the mesocolon along the left colic artery, which receive lymph from the descending colon and sigmoid flexure. The vessels from the colic glands pass to the pre-aortic glands.

The Rectal Glands.—The rectal glands lie in the mesorectum; they receive lymph from the anus and rectum and it passes from them to the lumbar and sacral glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Large Intestine.—The lymphatic vessels of the large intestine consist of three sets: those of the cæcum, ascending and transverse

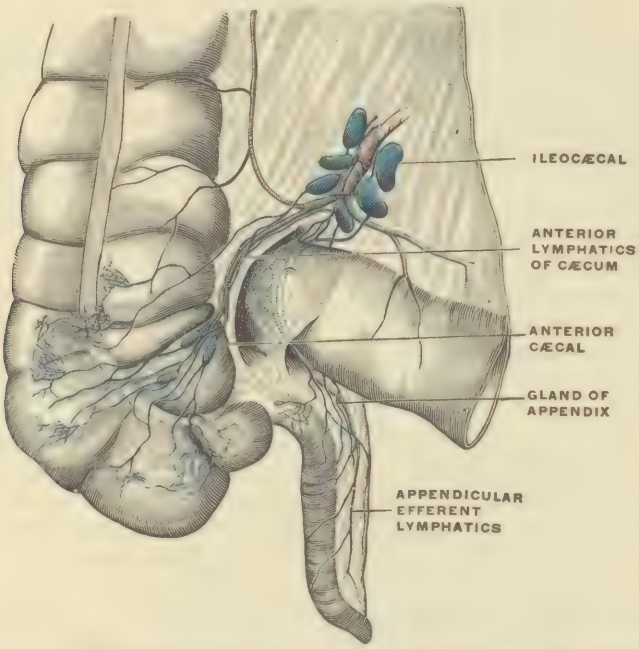


FIG. 510.—Anterior view of the lymphatics of the cæcum and appendix. (Poirier and Charpy.)

colon, which, after passing through their proper glands, enter the mesenteric glands; those of the descending colon and sigmoid flexure, which pass to the lumbar glands, and those of the rectum and anus, which pass to the sacral and superficial inguinal glands.

Lymphatics of the Anus and Rectum.—These vessels take origin from two networks, one from the skin and mucous membrane and the other from the muscular coat. The lymph-vessels from the skin at the anal margin pass to the superficial inguinal glands. Some vessels from the skin of the anus ascend and reach the submucous plexus of the rectum, from which region lymph-vessels pass to the rectal glands, to the glands along the middle hæmorrhoidal artery, and along the inferior hæmorrhoidal artery, and to a pelvic gland near the origin of the internal pudic artery.[1] The vessels from the anal mucous membrane and from the muscular wall of the rectum penetrate the muscular wall of the rectum with the arteries and reach the rectal glands.

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

THE LYMPHATICS OF THE THORAX.

The thoracic lymphatics are divided into the **deep lymphatics of the chest wall,** the **diaphragmatic lymphatics,** and the **visceral lymphatics.**

The Lymphatic Glands of the Thoracic Wall or the Parietal Lymphatics.

The lymphatic glands of the thoracic wall include the **internal mammary** and **intercostal glands.**

The Internal Mammary Glands.—The internal mammary, **retro-sternal,** or *sternal glands* form a chain of five or six glands on each side of the sternum along the course of the corresponding internal mammary artery, and back of the Internal intercostal muscles. The glands are separated from the pleura by cellular tissue. The internal mammary glands receive vessels from the diaphragmatic glands, the abdominal muscles above the umbilicus, the anterior ends of the intercostal spaces, the skin over the sternum, and the mammary gland. The vessels given off by each chain form a single trunk. On the right side this trunk terminates at the junction of the internal jugular and subclavian veins, unites with the subclavian lymph-trunk to form the right lymphatic duct, or empties directly into the subclavian trunk (Fig. 486). On the left side it empties either at the junction of the subclavian and internal jugular veins or into the thoracic duct.

The Intercostal Glands (*lymphoglandulae intercostales*) (Fig. 511).—The intercostal glands are small glands lying in the intercostal spaces along the intercostal arteries. In the posterior end of each space they are constantly found. These are called the **posterior glands,** and there are one, two, or three in each space. These glands are opposite the neck of the rib or over the articulation of the rib with the vertebra. The pleura is in front of them, and they lie upon the external intercostal muscles. In the middle of the intercostal spaces are inconstant glands which are called **lateral glands.** They are merely interrupting nodes in the trunks from the intercostal muscles. The intercostal glands receive vessels from the intercostal muscles and pleura. They send vessels back toward the spine, which unite with lymphatics from the back part of the thorax and spinal canal, and which pass down the spine and terminate in the thoracic duct.

The Diaphragmatic Lymphatics.—The diaphragmatic lymph-glands are distinct and numerous. These glands are on the convex surface of the Diaphragm and are divided into an anterior, a middle, and a posterior group. They receive vessels from the Diaphragm and liver and send vessels to the internal mammary and posterior mediastinal glands. The lymph-vessels of the Diaphragm take origin from a capillary network contained in the spaces between the muscular and tendinous fasciculi of the Diaphragm. Numerous lymph-vessels descend until they reach the subperitoneal tissues and then ascend. Others immediately ascend to beneath the pleura. The collecting trunks are all on the convex surface of the Diaphragm. The lymphatic vessels of the Diaphragm anastomose with the lymphatic vessels of the pleura and the peritoneum. This subperitoneal network is so extensive that absorption in this region is extremely rapid. Hence, after an abdominal operation, if salt solution has been left in the abdomen, it will be very rapidly absorbed if the foot of the bed is elevated. Influenced by the knowledge that the pelvic peritoneum absorbs comparatively slowly and the peritoneum in the upper abdomen very rapidly, and that septic processes in the upper abdomen are more rapidly fatal than septic processes in the pelvis, Fowler was led to recommend the elevation of the head of the bed after operations for abdominal infections. This posture causes poisonous fluids to gravitate away from the Diaphragm.

The Visceral Lymphatics.—The visceral lymphatics include the **anterior mediastinal glands**, the **posterior mediastinal glands**, and the **peritracheo-bronchial glands.**

The Anterior Mediastinal Glands (*lymphoglandulae mediastinales anteriores*).—The anterior mediastinal glands are in the upper portion of the anterior mediastinum, a group of six or seven glands lying above and upon the front of the transverse

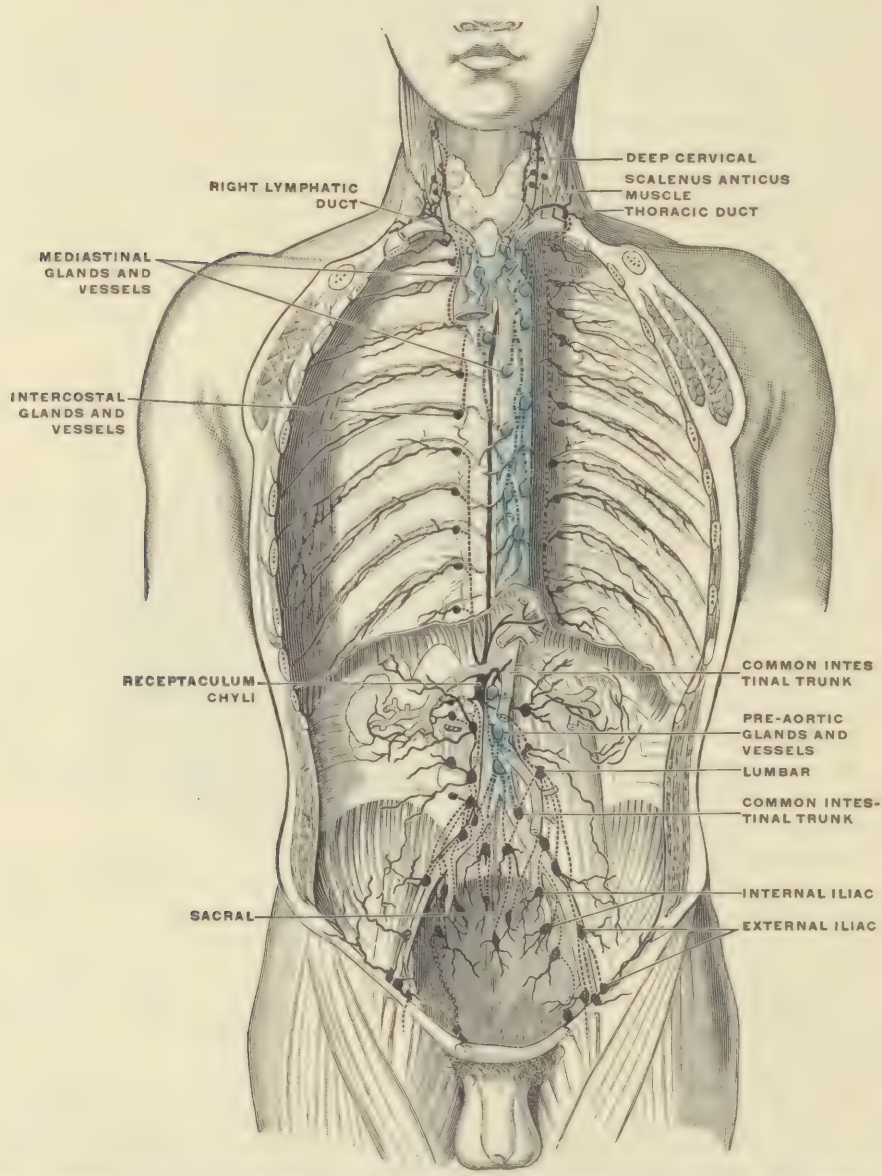


FIG. 511.—Deep lymphatic glands and vessels of the thorax and abdomen (diagrammatic). Afferent vessels are represented by continuous lines, and efferent and interglandular vessels by dotted lines. (Cunningham.)

portion of the arch of the aorta and sending glandular chains toward the neck. On the right side these glands are found between the innominate artery and vein and in front of the vein. On the left side they are in front of and behind the left common carotid and left subclavian arteries. They receive lymph from the heart, pericardium, thymus gland, and anterior mediastinum.

The Posterior Mediastinal Glands (*lymphoglandulae mediastinales posteriores*) (Fig. 511).—The posterior mediastinal glands are behind the pericardium and in front of the œsophagus. Occasionally one or two are placed back of the œsophagus. They receive vessels from the intercostal glands, aortic glands, deep cervical glands, and pleura, and send vessels to the thoracic duct.

The Peritracheo-bronchial Glands.—The peritracheo-bronchial glands are divided by Baréty into four groups. One group is in the angle formed by the junction of the trachea and right bronchus. Another group is in a corresponding situation on the left side. Another group is below the tracheal bifurcation. The glands of the fourth group are about the points of division of the larger bronchi. The peritracheo-bronchial glands receive lymph-vessels from the lung, heart, pericardium, œsophagus, trachea, and thymus.

In infancy these glands present the same appearance as the lymphatic glands in other situations. In early adult life they assume a brownish tinge, and in old age become deep black, because they arrest particles of carbon brought from the bronchi. This change is known as *anthracosis*, and the darkened glands are usually sclerotic. In fact, in old age these glands often lose all lymphatic characters and become fibrous masses. These glands enlarge from infection, and when very large may compress the bronchi, the pulmonary artery, etc. They are often the seat of *tuberculous deposits*.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Thoracic Wall.—The lymphatic vessels of the thoracic wall include the deep lymphatic vessels, **intercostal** and **internal mammary**, which have been described, the **cutaneous lymphatics**, and the **lymphatics of the mammary gland.**

The Cutaneous Lymphatics (Fig. 497).—The area drained by these lymphatics is very extensive. It is divided by Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare into three regions. The *anterior region* extends from over the middle of the sternum to the anterior axillary line. The trunks pass to the axilla and terminate in the thoracic chain of the axillary glands. From this anterior region some accessory trunks pass above the clavicle and reach the supra-clavicular glands, and trunks may arise to one side of the mid-sternal line and pass to the opposite axilla. From the *lateral region* the trunks ascend to the thoracic chain of axillary glands. This region is between the anterior and posterior axillary lines. The *posterior region* is back of the posterior axillary line, and includes the thorax to the mid-line, and the posterior portion of the root of the neck. The trunks from the posterior area empty into the scapular group of axillary glands.

Lymphatics of the Mammary Gland (Figs. 496 and 512).—There are two sets of lymphatics in this gland, the **cutaneous** or **superficial** and the **glandular** or **deep.**

The Peripheral Cutaneous Lymphatics of the Mammary Gland.—The peripheral cutaneous lymphatics do not arise from the nipple. Their collecting trunks are arranged as are other collecting trunks of the anterior portion of the thorax, and end in the thoracic group of axillary glands of the same side. Trunks arising from the sternal margin of the skin of the breast may run to the glands of the opposite axilla.

The Central Deep Lymphatics of the Mammary Gland.—The central lymphatics form a very extensive network in the nipple and areola, and from this network numerous vessels pass into a plexus beneath the areola, **Sappey's subareolar plexus;** most of the trunks coming from the gland also enter the subareolar plexus.

The Glandular Lymphatics of the Mammary Gland.—The glandular lymphatics arise from spaces about the lobules and from networks about the milk-ducts. We can distinguish a chief lymphatic channel and three accessory channels.

The chief lymphatic channel takes origin from collecting trunks which begin in the spaces about the lobules and in the lymph-capillaries about the milk-ducts. These collectors pass toward the nipple and terminate in the *subareolar plexus*, which plexus also receives the vessels from the areola and nipple. Two large

trunks take origin from the subareolar plexus: one from its inner side, the other from its outer side. "The internal trunk runs at first downward and then outward, turning round the inferior border of the subareolar plexus. It is thus directed toward the axilla and runs in the subcutaneous cellular tissue, along the lower border of the Pectoralis major, which it crosses at the level of the third rib to reach the base of the axilla. This collecting trunk constantly receives as afferents one or two fair-sized trunks coming directly from the inferior portion of the mammary gland. The external trunk, which is usually smaller than the preceding, runs directly outward toward the axilla. Before it reaches the latter it is augmented by a vessel coming from the superior part of the gland. At the base of the axilla these two collecting trunks perforate the axillary aponeurosis and terminate in one or two glands, placed on the inner wall of the axilla on the third digitation of the Serratus magnus muscle. These glands (the principal regional glands of the breast) may or may not be covered by the lower part of the Pec-

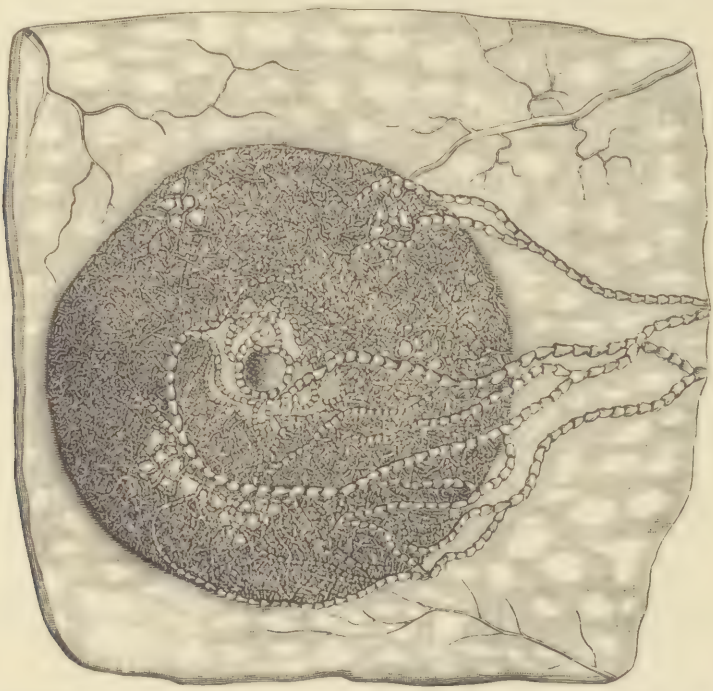


FIG. 512.—The vessels and lymphatics of the anterior face of the mammary glands. (Sappey.)

toralis major muscle according to the muscular development of the subject (Surgius)."[1] These glands constitute the supero-internal mass of the anterior axillary chain. An interrupting gland is sometimes found in the course of these two trunks, the **paramammary gland.**

The Accessory Channels from the Mammary Gland.—The accessory channels from the mammary gland, according to Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare, are three. They call one the **accessory axillary channel.** It is not constant, and there may be interrupting glands on its collectors. Its collectors come off from the inferior portion of the mammary gland and pass directly to the axillary glands. Another channel is the **subclavian channel.** Neither is it constant. It comes off from the posterior surface of the mammary gland, pierces the great Pectoral muscle, and ascends between the greater and lesser Pectorals to reach the subclavian glands. There

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

are usually interrupting glands along this channel, the **retro-pectoral glands.** The subclavian channel runs along the superior thoracic artery. They call the third accessory channel the **internal mammary channel.** The collecting trunks arise from the inner portion of the mammary gland and pass along the vessels sent off from the internal mammary artery to the gland. They pierce the Pectoral and Intercostal muscles and reach the internal mammary glands. This channel is constant and along it there may be interrupting glands.

Lymphatics of the Great Pectoral Muscle.—The lymphatics of the great Pectoral muscle end in the subclavian glands, the thoracic group of axillary glands, and the internal mammary glands.

Surgical Anatomy.—A knowledge of the lymphatics of the breast and of the glands into which the lymphatics drain is of the first importance to a surgeon. Certain surgical deductions from the anatomy of this region are perfectly obvious—viz.: 1. If the skin of the mammary gland is involved in carcinoma, the thoracic group of axillary glands of the same side is involved. If the skin over the sternal margin of the gland is involved, the glands of the opposite axilla may be cancerous, as from this point lymph-vessels rise and pass across the mid-line. If the skin of the sternal margin is involved the prognosis is worse than if it is free, the opposite axilla may be cancerous, and the opposite breast may become diseased. 2. When lymphatic ducts become blocked by cancer cells the lymph backs up, flows backward instead of in its proper direction, and may cause infecton in the most unsuspected situations. For instance, a block in the cutaneous lymphatics of a portion of the breast may lead to infection of the opposite breast and axilla, though, of course, it is not so likely to as is cancer of the skin of the sternal margin. By regurgitation of lymph the head of the humerus or the retro-sternal structures may become diseased in mammary cancer. 3. If the nipple or areola is cancerous, the entire gland is sure to be diseased, as the lymphatic network of this region empties into the subareolar plexus, and most of the trunks coming from the gland also enter this plexus. 4. If the mammary gland is cancerous, all of the axillary glands are regarded as diseased, as the main lymphatic channel from the breast reaches the glands on the inner wall of the axilla upon the third digitation of the Serratus magnus. Furthermore, in many cases an accessory lymph-channel comes off from the lower portion of the mammary gland and passes directly to the axilla. 5. The subclavian glands are to be regarded as diseased, because in a certain proportion of cases (the exact proportion being uncertain) an accessory lymph-channel comes off from the posterior surface of the mammary gland, passes through the great Pectoral muscle and ascends between the greater and lesser Pectorals to reach the subclavian glands. 6. The element which greatly interferes with the cure of mammary carcinoma is the existence of lymph-channels which arise from the inner portion of the mammary gland, pierce the greater Pectoral and Internal intercostal muscles, and reach the internal mammary glands. Mediastinal involvement is apt to be earlier in carcinoma of the inner portion of the breast than in carcinoma of other portions, and the prognosis is particularly bad in cancer of the inner portion of the breast. What is known as the *sternal symptom* of Snow is bulging of the sternum due to involvement of the thymus gland. 7. The sternal portion of the great Pectoral and the tissue between it and the lesser Pectoral muscle are to be regarded as diseased, because in some cases an accessory lymph-channel from the breast penetrates the greater Pectoral and ascends to the subclavian glands. This trunk has several interrupting or satellite glands, the **retro-pectoral glands,** in the tissue back of the great Pectoral muscle. 8. When the great Pectoral muscle is diseased, cancer cells soon spread widely through the sternal portion of the muscle, and this entire portion of the muscle becomes cancerous. The clavicular portion does not suffer early, but escapes until the cancer becomes extensive, as it is anatomically distinct from the sternal portion. If the fibres of the great Pectoral are extensively diseased, the thoracic group of axillary glands, the subclavian glands, and possibly the internal mammary glands are involved. 9. The only operation in cancer of the breast which offers any real hope of cure is one which is done early and is radical. 10. It must be done early, because delay permits involvement of the mediastinum, and if the disease has entered the mediastinum operation is hopeless. If the sternum is bulged operation is useless, and nothing short of amputation at the shoulder-joint could be of help if the head of the humerus is enlarged by the disease. Even this radical procedure is of no avail, because the mediastinum is certainly involved if the head of the humerus is diseased. 11. If the lymph-glands above the clavicle are extensively diseased operation is useless, as in such cases the mediastinum is sure to be involved. 12. A radical operation means the removal of the skin of the breast with the nipple and areola, the subcutaneous tissue of this region, the entire breast the sternal portion of the great Pectoral with its fascia, the retro-pectoral glands and tissue, all the contents of the axilla except vessels and nerves, the glands and cellular tissue beneath the anterior margin of the Latissimus dorsi, and the subclavian glands. It is probably always wisest to open above the clavicle as well as below to facilitate the removal of glands. It is seldom necessary

to remove the clavicular portion of the greater Pectoral. The lesser Pectoral does not require removal, but it should be taken away, because of the added safety and speed thus obtained in cleaning the great vessels and because its retention does not improve the functional result. The surgeon must remember that the breast is a much larger organ than we used to think, and all of its irregular projections and outlying lobules must be removed (p. 793). Formerly, surgeons did not completely remove the breast, but only got rid of a large portion of it.

The Pulmonary Lymphatics.—The pulmonary lymphatics arise from networks between the lobules, around the bronchi and under the mucous membrane. The collecting trunks are in two sets, **superficial** and **deep**: the former are placed beneath the pleura, forming a minute plexus which covers the outer surface of the lung; the latter accompany the blood-vessels and run along the bronchi; they both terminate at the root of the lungs in the tracheo-bronchial glands.

The Pleural Lymphatics.—The lymphatics of the pulmonary pleura pass into the superficial pulmonary trunks; those from the costal pleura enter the intercostal trunks; those from the diaphragmatic pleura enter the diaphragmatic trunks, and those from the mediastinal pleura enter the posterior mediastinal glands.[1]

The Cardiac Lymphatic Vessels.—The cardiac lymphatic vessels consist of two sets, **superficial** and **deep**: the former arise in the subpericardial areolar tissue of the surface, and the latter in the subendocardial tissue. From the network of deep lymphatics trunks pass to the superficial lymphatics. The superficial lymphatics follow the course of the coronary vessels. Two trunks are formed: an anterior, which lies in the anterior interventricular furrow, and an inferior, which lies in the inferior interventricular furrow. These two trunks collect the lymph from the ventricles and pass to the base of the heart, where they receive lymph from the auricles. The anterior or left trunk ascends between the left auricle and the pulmonary artery on the posterior surface of the artery, perforates the pericardium, and enters the glands about the tracheal bifurcation. The right, posterior or inferior trunk ascends between the aorta and pulmonary artery and terminates in the same group of glands as the left trunk.

The Thymic Lymphatic Vessels.—The thymic lymphatic vessels arise from the under surface of the thymus gland, and enter the anterior mediastinal, the internal mammary, and the peritracheo-bronchial glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Œsophagus.—The lymphatics of the thoracic œsophagus arise from two networks, one beneath the mucous membrane and one beneath the muscular fasciculi. The connecting trunks terminate in the peri-œsophageal glands.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Thoracic Trachea.—The lymphatics of the thoracic trachea take origin from a network in the submucous tissue. From this a number of collecting trunks pass through the trachea in the line of junction of the cartilaginous with the membranous portion. They terminate the peritracheo-bronchial glands.

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

THE NERVOUS SYSTEM.

THE nervous system consists of (1) the **cerebro-spinal nervous system** and (2) the **sympathetic nervous system.**

1. The **Cerebro-spinal Nervous System** is composed of the spinal cord and brain and of nerves joined to the brain and cord. The spinal cord and brain constitute the **cerebro-spinal axis,** or, as it is also called, the **encephalo-spinal axis,** the **neuraxis,** or the **central nervous system.** The nerves which join the cord and which join the brain constitute the **peripheral nervous system.** The term central nervous system is applied to structures contained altogether within the spinal and cranial cavities, but this narrow use is not strictly accurate. By far the greater part of the central nervous system is contained within those cavities, but any centre of energy must be regarded as a portion of the central system, and certain ganglia which are centres of energy lie along certain nerves and really belong to the central nervous system, though they are discussed with the peripheral nerves.

The term peripheral nervous system does not mean, as it would seem to, structures outside the spinal and cranial cavities. The chief part of the peripheral system is outside of the spinal and cerebral cavities, but peripheral nerves "sometimes run a considerable distance within these cavities."[1] The peripheral nervous system is composed of thirty-one pairs of **spinal nerves** and twelve pairs of **cranial nerves.** Each spinal nerve is joined to the spinal cord by two roots, an **anterior** and a **posterior root,** and the posterior root at one point has an enlargement called a **spinal ganglion.** The fifth cranial nerve, alone among cranial nerves, takes origin by two roots, as does a spinal nerve. Five of the cranial nerves possess ganglia similar to the ganglia on the posterior roots of the spinal nerves. The cranial nerves which possess ganglia are the trigeminal or fifth, the facial or seventh, the auditory or eighth, the glosso-pharyngeal or ninth, and the pneumo-gastric or tenth.

2. The **Sympathetic Nervous System** consists of a chain of ganglia on either side of the vertebral column. The ganglia of each chain are joined by cords of nervous matter. The sympathetic system contains, beside the gangliated cords, numerous nerve plexuses and ganglia in various regions. The sympathetic nervous system is closely connected at many points with the cerebro-spinal nervous system, and the two systems in all probability develop from a common origin.

Structure of the Cerebro-spinal Nervous System.—The spinal cord and brain contain **gray matter** and white matter. The gray matter is vascular and is composed chiefly of **nerve-cells**: the white matter is less vascular and is composed chiefly of **nerve-fibres.** Until recently it was the custom to regard nerve-cells and nerve-fibres as definitely distinct elements, but we now know that nerve-fibres are processes of nerve-cells. One process, several processes, or many processes come off from nerve-cells. If there is but one process from a cell, that process becomes **Deiters' process,** the **axis-cylinder** or **axone** of a nerve-fibre. If more than one process comes off from a cell, one of the processes becomes an axone, and the other processes are known as **protoplasmic** or **dendritic processes,** or, as His named

[1] The Nervous System and its Diseases. By Charles K. Mills.

them, **dendrites**. There are no nerve-fibres unconnected with cells. The nerve-cell, with its axone and its dendrites, constitutes what is called a **nerve-unit** or **neurone**. The nervous system is said to be composed of aggregations of multitudes of neurones. The term neurone was devised by Waldeyer in 1891.

Gray, vesicular, or **cineritious substance** is of a dark, reddish-gray color and of a soft consistence. It is found in the spinal cord, brain, and various ganglia, in some of the nerves of special sense, and in gangliform enlargements in the course of certain spinal nerves. It is composed of nerve-cells and contains blood-vessels, both the cells and vessels being embedded in a ground substance named by Virchow the **neuroglia.** The nerve-fibres and the vessels in the white substance are also embedded in neuroglia. Neuroglia consists of fibres and neuroglia cells. Some of the cells are stellate in shape and their fine processes become neuroglia-fibres, which extend radially and unbranched (Fig. 513 *B*) among the nerve-cells and fibres, which they aid in supporting. Other cells give off fibres, which branch repeatedly (Fig. 513 *A*).

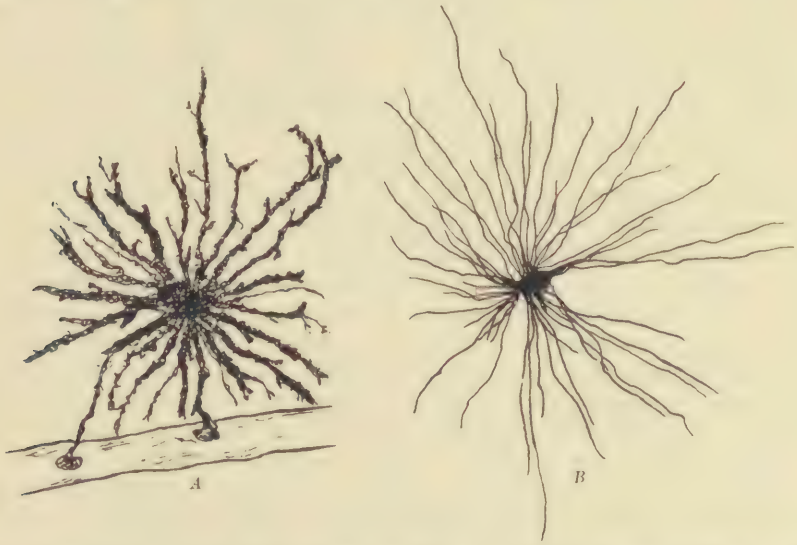


FIG. 513.—Neuroglia-cells of brain shown by Golgi's method. *A*. Cell with branched processes. *B*. Spider-cell with unbranched processes. (After Andriezen.) (Copied from Schäfer's Essentials of Histology.)

In addition to these fibres there are others which do not appear to be connected with the neuroglia-cells. They start from the *lining ependymal cells*, that is, the epithelial cells lining the ventricles of the brain and central canal of the spinal cord, and pass through the nervous tissue, branching repeatedly, to terminate in slight enlargements on the pia mater. Thus, neuroglia is evidently a connective tissue in function, though it is not in development; it is epiblastic in origin, whereas all true connective tissues are mesoblastic.

The **white** or **fibrous tissue** is composed of nerve-fibres, which, with blood-vessels, are embedded in neuroglia.

Nerve-cells or the Cell-bodies of the Neurones (Figs. 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, and 519).—Nerve-cells constitute the essential element of nervous tissue. They are the originators of nervous impulses and impressions. All nervous conduction is from nerve-cell to nerve-cell by contact (Mills), and the transmission of an impulse from one nerve-cell to another may be over a long distance. The nerve-cells of the brain and cord differ in origin, development, and connections from the nerve-cells of the spinal ganglia. They vary greatly in shape and size (Fig. 515). Some are so small that they become visible only under a microscope of high

power; some "almost come within the range of unaided vision."[1] The largest cells are found in the anterior cornua of the spinal cord, in the vesicular columns of Clarke, in the large pyramidal cell-layer of the cerebral cortex, and the Purkinjean cell-layer of the cerebellum. The smallest cells are in the olfactory bulbs, in the substantia gelatinosa Rolandi of the cord, and in the granular cortical layers of the cerebrum and cerebellum.

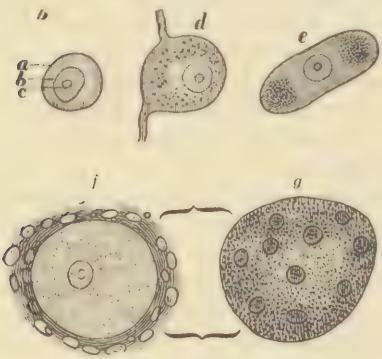


FIG. 514.—Nerve-cells from the Gasserian ganglion of the human subject. *a*. A globular one with defined border. *b*. Its nucleus. *c*. Its nucleolus. *d*. Caudate cell. *e*. Elongated cell with two groups of pigment-particles. *f*. Cell surrounded by its sheath or capsule of nucleated particles. *g*. The same, the sheath only being in focus. Magnified 300 diameters.

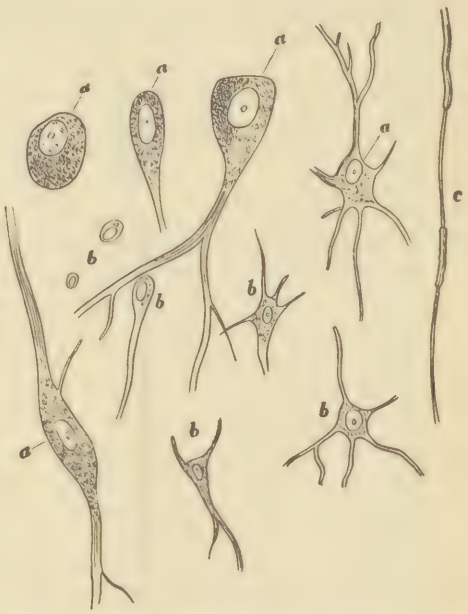


FIG. 515.—Nerve-cells from the inner part of the gray matter of the convolutions of the human brain. Nerve-cells: *a*. Larger. *b*. Smaller. *c*. Nerve-fibre with axis-cylinder. Magnified 350 times.

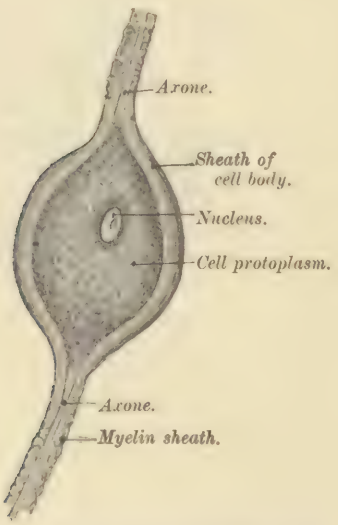


FIG. 516.—Bipolar nerve-cells from the spinal ganglion of the pike. (After Kölliker.)

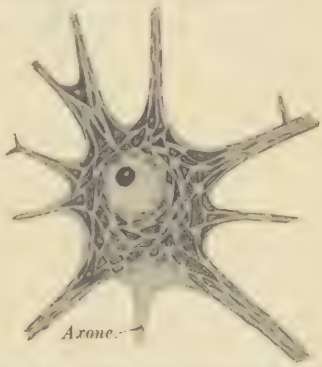


FIG. 517.—Motor nerve-cell from ventral horn of spinal cord of rabbit. The angular and spindle-shaped Nissl bodies are well shown. (After Nissl.)

The **Body** of the nerve-cell may possess a limiting membrane, as is seen in the cells of the spinal ganglia (Fig. 516) and sympathetic ganglia, and some of the cells of the Gasserian ganglion (Figs. 514, *f* and *g*), but may be devoid of any limiting membrane, as is seen in the motor cells of the anterior cornua of the cord (Fig. 517). All cell-bodies, like all cell-processes, show intracellular fibrillation, and the fibrils of the cell-body are continuous with those of the axone and run in

[1] Text-book of Anatomy. By Prof. D. J. Cunningham.

various directions. The cell-body is composed of protoplasm, which contains, besides fibrils, many fine spindle-shaped granules. The granules stain deeply and are called **chromatophile granules, Nissl's bodies,** or **trigoid bodies** (Fig. 517). They are probably nucleo-albumins (Held). Most nerve-cells, certainly most large nerve-cells, possess considerable pigmented material, a nucleus, and a nucleolus.

The nucleus (Fig. 514 *b*) is, as a rule, a large, well-defined, round, vesicular body, often presenting an intranuclear network. It contains a nucleolus (Fig. 514 *c*), which is peculiarly clear and brilliant. Pigment granules (Fig. 514 *e*), when present, lie by the side of the nucleus. Masses of pigment are present in the cells of the substantia nigra and locus cæruleus.

Nerve-cells are divided for purposes of study into three groups, according to the number of their processes.

1. **Unipolar Cells.**—The single process of such a cell, after a short course, divides in a T-shaped manner. Unipolar cells are found in the spinal ganglia of the adult and among the olfactory cells of mammals.

FIG. 518.—Pyramidal cell from the cerebral cortex of a mouse. (After Ramón y Cajal.)

FIG. 519.—Cell of Purkinje from the cerebellum of a cat. (After Ramón y Cajal.)

2. **Bipolar cells** (Fig. 516) are found in spinal ganglion-cells when the cells are in an embryonic condition. They are best demonstrated in the sympathetic ganglion-cells of a frog. Sometimes the processes come off from opposite poles of the cell, and the cell then assumes a spindle shape; in others they both emerge at the same point. In some cases where two fibres are apparently connected with a cell, one of the fibres is really derived from an adjoining nerve-cell and is passing to end in a ramification around the ganglion-cell, or, again, it may be coiled spirally around the nerve-process which is issuing from the cell.

3. **Multipolar cells** (Fig. 517) are caudate or stellate in shape, and are characterized by their large size and by the tail-like processes which issue from them. The processes are of two kinds: one of them is the axis-cylinder or axone; the others are the protoplasmic processes or dendrites.

The Axone (Figs. 515, 516, 517, 518, and 519).—The axone emerges from the nerve-cell by a slender stalk; it is smooth and free from Nissl's bodies; it maintains a uniform diameter for a considerable distance; it does not, as a rule, divide into branches, although it may possess collaterals, and it becomes the axis-cylinder of a nerve-fibre. Cerebro-spinal axones, as a rule, are medullated, except near their terminations. Sympathetic axones are non-medullated. Axones may be extremely short or may be several feet in length. The fibres of the pyramidal tract are axones of great length. Some short axones divide at their terminations into many branches. Short axones are called **dendraxones**, and the cells with dendraxones are called the **second type of Golgi cells**. An axone may remain throughout its entire course in the brain or cord or may enter into a spinal or cerebral nerve. Most cells possess but one axone, and such a neurone is called **monoaxonic**. A cell may possess two axones, the neurone being called **diaxonic**, or several axones, the neurone being called **polyaxonic**. The **collaterals** are branches given off from the neurone at right angles to it. Some axones have a number of collaterals; others do not have any. They are present everywhere in the central nervous system (Cajal, Kölliker). Some collaterals are medullated; others are not. They approach the dendrites of the nerve-cells of the neurones. Each axone and collateral ends in a button-like termination or **end-tuft**, or in a free arborization, the **end-brush**. If the termination is within the brain or cord, it may wrap around nerve-cells or arborize about dendrites. If the axone emerges from the cerebro-spinal axis, it terminates about muscle-cell or some other structure. The termination of the axone or the collateral is never continued into the structure about which it lies. It may surround that tissue; it may touch it; it may lie close against it, but the termination is free, and the relation is simply one of contact and not of continuity.

The Dendrites.—The dendrites are protoplasmic processes resembling in structure and staining reactions the protoplasm of the body of the cell. Each emerges by a thick base (**gemmule**), and divides into many fine branches, with free ends. They are not straight, are not smooth, and do not maintain the same diameter for a considerable distance as does the axis-cylinder. A dendrite may branch at any distance from the body of the cell, and the branches do not join. The dendrites from a single cell vary greatly in number, thickness, and length. Some cells are devoid of dendrites; some give off a few; some give off many. As a rule, they are non-medullated.

The Theory of Neurones.—This theory maintains that the nervous system is composed of a multitude of units called **neurones**. Each neurone consists of a cell and processes. The neurones in aggregation form cell groups and fibre systems. The connection of nerve-cells with other nerve-cells is not by continuity of structure. It is by contact and not by actual junction; it is physiological and not anatomical. "When fully developed in man, perhaps a very small number of neurones are united together by concrescence or protoplasmic bridges, but their predominant relation is certainly that of contact or synapsis."[1] Process comes in contact with process, or process with cell. The terminal tufts of the axone of a cortical motor-cell surround a cell in the anterior horn of the spinal cord, and this spinal cell sends out an axone, the termination of which reaches a muscle. Doubt has of late arisen as to the neurone theory, because of the investigations of Apáthy and others. Apáthy claims that ganglion cells join directly and that the ultimate

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Nervous System. By Harris E. Santee.

elements of the nervous system are **neurofibrils**, which pass from cell to cell. However, as stated by Szymonowicz,[1] Apáthy's observations, even if correct, do not disprove the neurone theory, but indicate that the nervous units or neurones are occasionally connected by neurofibrils.

Nerve-fibres.—Nerve-fibres serve to conduct nervous impulses and bring nerve-cells into relation with each other and into relation with other structures. Nerves are composed of numbers of nerve-fibres bound into bundles. There are two sorts of fibres: **medullated** or **white** and **non-medullated** or **gray**.

The **Medullated** fibres form the white part of the brain and spinal cord, and also the greater part of the cerebro-spinal nerves, and gives to these structures their opaque, white aspect. When perfectly fresh they appear to be homogeneous; but soon after removal from the body they present, when examined by transmitted light, a double outline or contour, as if consisting of two parts (Figs. 520 and 521). The central portion is named the **axis-cylinder of Purkinje** (Fig. 521); around this is a sort of sheath of fatty material, staining black with osmic

Fig. 520. White or medullated nerve-fibres showing the sinuous outline and double contours. (After Schäfer.)

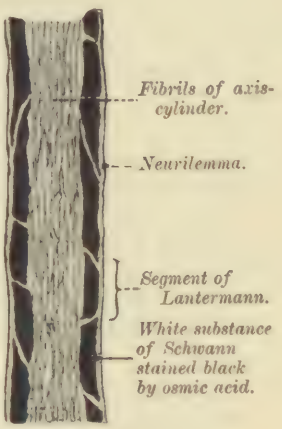


Fig. 521. Longitudinal section through a nerve-fibre from the sciatic nerve of a frog. × 830. (After Böhm and Davidoff.)

acid, named the **white substance of Schwann** (Fig. 521), which gives to the fibre its double contour, and the whole is enclosed in a delicate membrane, the **neurilemma, primitive sheath,** or **nucleated sheath of Schwann** (Fig. 521).

The **axis-cylinder** is the essential part of the nerve-fibre, and is always present; the other parts, the medullary sheath and the neurilemma, being occasionally absent, especially at the origin and termination of the nerve-fibre. It undergoes no interruption from its origin in the nerve-centre to its peripheral termination, and must be regarded as a direct prolongation of a nerve-cell. It constitutes about one-half or one-third of the nerve-tube, the whole substance being greater in proportion in the nerves than in the central organs. It is perfectly transparent, and is therefore indistinguishable in a perfectly fresh and natural state of the nerve. It is made up of exceedingly fine fibrils, which stain darkly with gold chloride (Fig. 521). At its termination the axis-cylinder of a nerve-fibre may be seen to break up into fibrillæ, confirming the accepted view of its structure. These fibrillæ have been termed the **primitive fibrillæ of Schultze**. The axis-cylinder is said

[1] Text-book of Histology and Microscopic Anatomy. By Dr. Ladislaus Szymonowicz. Translated and edited by John Bruce MacCallum, M.D.

by some to be enveloped in a special, reticular sheath, which separates it from the white matter of Schwann, and is composed of a substance called **neurokeratin**. The more common opinion is that this network or reticulum is contained in the white matter of Schwann, and by some it is believed to be produced by the action of the reagents employed to demonstrate it. The **medullary sheath** or **white substance of Schwann** (Fig. 521) is regarded as being fatty matter in a fluid state, which insulates and protects the essential part of the nerve—the axis-cylinder. The white matter varies in thickness to a very considerable extent, in some nerve-fibres forming a layer of extreme thinness, so as to be scarcely distinguishable; in others forming about one-half of the nerve-tube. The size of the nerve-fibres, which varies from $\frac{1}{2000}$ to $\frac{1}{120}$ of an inch, depends mainly upon the amount of the white substance, though the axis-cylinder also varies in size within certain limits. The white substance of Schwann does not always form a continuous sheath for the axis-cylinder, but undergoes interruptions in its continuity at regular intervals, giving to the fibre the appearance of constriction at these points. These constrictions were first described by Ranvier, and are known as the **nodes of Ranvier** (Fig. 522). The portion

FIG. 522.—A node of Ranvier of a medullated nerve-fibre, viewed from above, magnified about 750 diameters. The medullary sheath is discontinuous at the node, whereas the axis-cylinder passes from one segment into the other. At the node the sheath of Schwann appears thickened. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

of nerve-fibre between two nodes is called an **internodal segment**. The neurilemma or primitive sheath is not interrupted at the nodes, but passes over them as a continuous membrane. In addition to these interruptions oblique clefts may be seen in the medullary sheath, subdividing it into irregular portions, which are termed **medullary segments** or **segments of Lantermann** (Fig. 521). There is reason to believe that these clefts are artificially produced in the preparation of the specimens. Medullated nerve-fibres, when examined, frequently present a beaded or varicose appearance; this is due to manipulation and pressure causing the oily matter to collect into drops, and in consequence of the extreme delicacy of the primitive sheath, even slight pressure will cause the transudation of the fatty matter, which collects as drops of oil outside the membrane. This is, of course, promoted by the action of certain reagents.

The **neurilemma** or **primitive sheath**, sometimes called the **tubular membrane** or **sheath of Schwann** (Fig. 521), presents the appearance of a delicate, structureless membrane. Here and there beneath it, and situated in depressions in the white matter of Schwann, are nuclei surrounded by a small amount of protoplasm. The nuclei are oval and somewhat flattened, and bear a definite relation to the nodes of Ranvier; one nucleus generally lying in the centre of each internode. The primitive sheath is not present in all medullated nerve-fibres, being absent in those fibres which are found in the brain and spinal cord.

Non-medullated Fibres.—Most of the nerves of the sympathetic system, and some of the cerebro-spinal, consist of another variety of nervous fibres, which are called the **gray** or **gelatinous nerve-fibres**—**fibres of Remak** (Fig. 523). These consist of a central core or axis-cylinder enclosed in a nucleated sheath, which tends to split into fibrillæ, and is probably of the nature of neurokeratin. In external appearance the gelatinous nerves are semi-transparent and gray or yellowish-gray. The individual fibres vary in size, generally averaging about half the size of the medullated fibres.

Development of Nerve-cells and Fibres.—The nerve-cells are developed from certain of the cells which line the neural canal and form the neural crest of the embryo. Some of these cells assume a rounded form and are termed **neuroblasts**,

and from each neuroblast there grows out a process, the axis-cylinder process or axone, and subsequently the branching processes or dendrons. The axis-cylinders, at first naked, acquire their medullary sheaths, possibly by some metamorphosis of their outer layer. The neurilemma is thought to be derived from mesoblastic cells which become flattened and wrapped around the fibre, the cement-substance at their opposed ends forming the material which stains with silver nitrate at the nodes of Ranvier. Nerve-cells in the sympathetic and peripheral ganglia take their origin from small collections of neuroblasts, which are split off from the rudimentary spinal ganglia. Cells which are, originally, similar to neuroblasts seem to give rise to neuroglia-cells, numerous processes sprouting from the cell to form the neuroglial fibres.

Chemical Composition.—The amount of water in nervous tissue varies with the situation. Thus in the gray matter of the cerebrum it constitutes about 83 per cent., in the white matter from the same region about 70 per cent., while in the peripheral nerves, such as the sciatic, it may fall to 60 per cent. The solids consist of proteids (in the gray matter proteids constitute half the total solids), neurokeratin, nuclein, protagon, lecithin, cerebrosides, cholesterin, nitrogenous extractives, and salts, with some gelatin and fat from the adherent connective tissue.

FIG. 523.—A small nervous branch from the sympathetic of a mammal. *a*. Two medullated nerve-fibres among a number of gray nerve-fibres, *b*.

FIG. 524.—Transverse section through a microscopic nerve, representing a compound nerve-bundle, surrounded by perineurium. Magnified 120 diameters. The medullated fibres are seen as circles with a central dot—viz., medullary sheath and axis-cylinder—in transverse section. They are embedded in endoneurium, containing numerous nuclei, which belong to the connective-tissue cells of the latter. *p*. Perineurium, consisting of laminæ of fibrous connective tissues, alternating with flattened nucleated connective-tissue cells. *l*. Lymph-space between epineurium and surface of nerve-bundle. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The nervous structures are divided, as before mentioned, into two great systems —viz., the **cerebro-spinal,** comprising the spinal cord and brain, the nerves connected with these structures and the ganglia situated on them; and the **sympathetic,** consisting of a double chain of ganglia and the nerves connected with them. All these structures require separate consideration; they are composed of the two kinds of nervous tissue above described, intermingled in various proportions, and having, in some parts, a very intricate arrangement.

The **nerves** are round or flattened cords, formed of a number of nerve-fibres. They are connected at one end with the cerebro-spinal centre or with the ganglia, and are distributed at the other end to the various textures of the body; they are subdivided into two great classes—the **cerebro-spinal,** which proceed from the cerebro-spinal axis, and the **sympathetic** or **ganglionic nerves,** which proceed from the ganglia of the sympathetic. The **cerebro-spinal nerves** consist of numerous

nerve-fibres collected together and enclosed in a membranous sheath (Fig. 524). A small bundle of primitive fibres, enclosed in a tubular sheath, is called a **funiculus**: if the nerve is of small size, it may consist only of a single funiculus; but if large, the funiculi are collected together into larger bundles or fasciculi, which are bound together in a common membranous investment.

In structure the common membranous investment, or **sheath** of the whole nerve, which is called the **epineurium**, as well as the **septa** given off from it, and which separate the fasciculi, consists of connective tissue, composed of white and yellow elastic fibres, the latter existing in great abundance. The tubular sheath of the funiculi, called the **perineurium**, consists of a fine, smooth, transparent membrane, which may be easily separated, in the form of a tube, from the fibres it encloses; in structure it consists of connective tissue, which has a distinctly lamellar arrangement, being composed of several lamellæ, separated from each other by spaces containing lymph. The nerve-fibres are held together and supported within the funiculus by delicate connective tissue called the **endoneurium**. It is continuous with septa which pass inward from the innermost layer of the perineurium, and consists of a ground-substance in which are embedded fine bundles of fibrous connective tissue which run for the most part longitudinally. It serves to support the capillary vessels, which are arranged so as to form a network with elongated meshes. The cerebro-spinal nerves consist almost exclusively of medullated nerve-fibres the non-medullated existing in very small proportions.

The *blood-vessels* supplying a nerve terminate in a minute capillary plexus, the vessels composing which pierce the perineurium and run, for the most part, parallel with the fibres; they are connected together by short, transverse vessels, forming narrow, oblong meshes, similar to the capillary system of muscle. Fine non-medullated nerve-fibres accompany these capillary vessels, the **vaso-motor fibres**, and break up into elementary fibrils, which form a network around the vessel. Horsley has also demonstrated certain medullated fibres as running in the epineurium and terminating in small spheroidal tactile corpuscles or end-bulbs of Krause. These nerve-fibres, which Marshall believes to be sensory, and which he has termed **nervi nervorum**, are considered by him to have an important bearing upon certain neuralgic pains.

Nerves, in their course, subdivide into branches, and these frequently communicate with branches of a neighboring nerve.

The nerve-fibres, as far as is at present known, do not coalesce, but pursue an uninterrupted course from the centre to the periphery. In separating a nerve, however, into its component funiculi, it may be seen that they do not pursue a perfectly insulated course, but occasionally join at a very acute angle with other funiculi proceeding in the same direction; from this, branches are given off, to join again in like manner with other funiculi. It must be distinctly understood, however, that in these communications the nerve-fibres do not coalesce, but merely pass into the sheath of the adjacent nerve, become intermixed with its nerve-fibres, and again pass on, to become blended with the nerve-fibres in some adjoining funiculus.

The communications which take place between two or more nerves form what is called a **plexus**. Sometimes a plexus is formed by the primary branches of the trunks of the nerves—as the cervical, brachial, lumbar, and sacral plexuses—and occasionally by the terminal funiculi, as in the plexuses formed at the periphery of the body. In the formation of a plexus the component nerves divide, then join, and again subdivide in such a complex manner that the individual funiculi become interlaced most intricately; so that each branch leaving a plexus may contain filaments from each of the primary nervous trunks which form it. In the formation also of smaller plexuses at the periphery of the body there is a free interchange of the funiculi and primitive fibres. In each case, however, the

individual filaments remain separate and distinct, and do not inosculate with one another.

It is probable that through this interchange of fibres the different branches passing off from a plexus have a more extensive connection with the spinal cord than if they each had proceeded to be distributed without such connection with other nerves. Consequently the parts supplied by these nerves have more extended relations with the nervous centres; by this means, also, groups of muscles may be associated for combined action.

The **sympathetic nerves** are constructed in the same manner as the cerebro-spinal nerves, but consist mainly of non-medullated fibres, collected into funiculi, and enclosed in a sheath of connective tissue. There is, however, in these nerves a certain admixture of medullated fibres (Fig. 523), and the amount varies in different nerves, and may be known by their color. Those branches of the sympathetic which present a well-marked gray color are composed more especially of gelatinous nerve-fibres, intermixed with a few medullated fibres; while those of a white color contain more of the latter fibres and a few of the former. Occasionally, the gray and white cords run together in a single nerve, without any intermixture, as in the branches of communication between the sympathetic ganglia and the spinal nerves, or in the communicating cords between the ganglia.

The nerve-fibres, both of the cerebro-spinal and sympathetic system, convey impressions of a twofold kind. The sensory nerves, called also **centripetal** or **afferent nerves**, transmit to the nervous centres impressions made upon the peripheral extremities of the nerves, and in this way the mind, through the medium of the brain, becomes conscious of external objects. The **motor nerves**, called also **centrifugal** or **efferent nerves**, transmit impressions from the nervous centres to the parts to which the nerves are distributed, these impressions either exciting muscular contraction, or influencing the processes of nutrition, growth, and secretion.

Origin and Termination of Nerves.—By the expression "the termination of nerve-fibres" is signified their connection with the nerve-centres, and with the parts they supply. The former are sometimes called their **origin**, or **central termination**; the latter their **peripheral termination**. The origin in some cases is single—that is to say, the whole nerve emerges from the nervous centre by a single root; in other instances the nerve arises by two or more roots, which come off from different parts of the nerve-centre, sometimes widely apart from each other, and it often happens, when a nerve arises in this way by two roots, that the functions of these two roots are different; as, for example, in the spinal nerves, each of which arises by two roots, the anterior of which is motor and the posterior sensory. The point where the nerve-root or roots emerge from the nervous centre is named the **superficial** or **apparent origin**, but the fibres of which the nerve consists can be traced for a certain distance into the nervous centre to some portion of the gray substance, which constitutes the **deep** or **real origin** of the nerve.

The manner in which these fibres arise at their deep origin varies with their functions. The centrifugal or efferent nerve-fibres originate in the nerve-cells of the gray substance, the axis-cylinder processes of these cells being prolonged to form the fibres. In the case of the centripetal or afferent nerves the fibres grow inward either from nerve-cells in the organs of special sense (*e. g.*, the retina) or from nerve-cells in the ganglia. Having entered the nerve-centre, they branch and send their ultimate twigs among the cells, without, however, uniting with them.

Peripheral Terminations of Nerves.—Nerve-fibres terminate peripherally in various ways, and these may be conveniently studied in the sensory and motor nerves, respectively. **Sensory nerves** would appear to terminate either in minute primitive fibrillæ or networks of fibrillæ; or else in special terminal organs, which

have been termed **peripheral end-organs**, and of which there are several principal varieties—viz., the **end-bulbs of Krause**, the **tactile corpuscles of Wagner**, the **Pacinian corpuscles**, and the **neuro-tendinous** and **neuro-muscular spindles.**

Termination in Fibrillæ.—When a medullated nerve-fibre approaches its termination, the white matter of Schwann suddenly disappears, leaving only the axis-cylinder, surrounded by the neurilemma, and forming a non-medullated fibre. This, after a time, loses its neurilemma, and consists only of an axis-cylinder, which can be seen, in preparations stained with chloride of gold, to be made up of fine varicose fibrils. Finally, the axis-cylinder breaks up into its constituent primitive nerve-fibrillæ, which often present regular varicosities and anastomose with one another, thus forming a network. This network passes between the elements of the tissue to which the nerves are distributed, which is always epithelial, the nerve-fibrils lying in the interstitial substance between the epithelial cells, and there terminating, though some observers maintain that the actual terminations are within the cells. In this way nerve-fibres have been found to terminate in the epithelium of the skin and mucous membranes, and in the anterior epithelium of the cornea.

Fig. 525.—End-bulb of Krause. *a*. Medullated nerve-fibre. *b*. Capsule of corpuscle. (From Klein's Elements of Histology.)

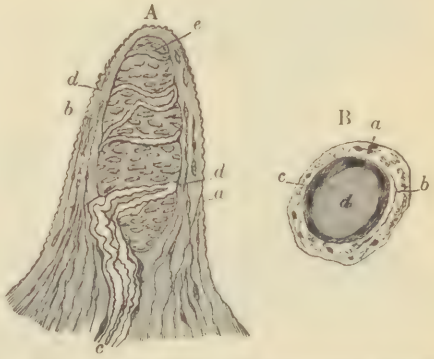


Fig. 526.—Tactile papilla of the hand treated with acetic acid. Magnified 350 times. A. Side view of a papilla of the hand. *a*. Cortical layer. *b*. Tactile corpuscle, with transverse nuclei. *c*. Small nerve of the papilla, with neurilemma. *d*. Its two nervous fibres running with spiral coils around the tactile corpuscle. *e*. Apparent termination of one of these fibres. B. A tactile papilla seen from above, so as to show its transverse section. *a*. Cortical layer *b*. Nerve-fibre. *c*. Outer layer of the tactile body, with nuclei. *d*. Clear interior substance.

The **End-bulbs of Krause** (Fig. 525) are minute cylindrical or oval bodies, consisting of a capsule formed by the expansion of the connective-tissue sheath of a medullated fibre, and containing a soft semifluid core in which the termination of the axis-cylinder is situated, ending either as a bulbous extremity, or in a coiled-up plexiform mass. End-bulbs are found in the conjunctiva of the eye, where they are spheroidal in shape in man, but cylindrical in most other animals, in the mucous membrane of the lips and tongue, and in the epineurium of nerve-trunks. They are also found in the genital organs of both sexes, the penis in the male, and the clitoris in the female. In this situation they have a mulberry-like appearance, from being constricted by connective-tissue septa into from two to six knob-like masses, and have received the name of **genital corpuscles.** Very similar corpuscles are found in the epineurium of nerve-trunks. In the synovial membrane of certain joints (*e. g.*, those of the fingers) rounded or oval end-bulbs have been found; these are designated **articular end-bulbs.**

Tactile Corpuscles, known as Grandry's corpuscles, have been described by Grandry as occurring in the papillæ of the beak and tongue of birds, and by Merkel as occurring in the papillæ and epithelium of the skin of man and animals,

especially in those parts of the skin devoid of hair. They consist of a capsule composed of a very delicate, nucleated membrane, and contain two or more granular, somewhat flattened cells, between which the medullated nerve-fibre, which enters the capsule by piercing its investing membrane, is supposed to terminate.

Meissner's corpuscles are the tactile corpuscles (Fig. 526), described by Wagner and Meissner. They are oval-shaped bodies, made up of connective tissue, and consisting of a capsule, and imperfect membranous septa, derived from it, which penetrate its interior. The axis-cylinder of the medullated fibres passes through the capsule, and having entered the corpuscle terminates in a small globular or pyriform enlargement, near the inner surface of the capsule. These tactile corpuscles have been described as occurring in the papillæ of the corium of the skin, hand, foot, front of the forearm, and skin of the lips, and the mucous membrane of the tip of the tongue, the palpebral conjunctiva, and the skin of the nipple. They are not found in all the papillæ, but from their existence in those parts in which the skin is highly sensitive, it is probable that they are especially concerned in the sense of touch, though their absence from the papillæ of other tactile parts shows that they are not essential to this sense. They may be regarded as end-bulbs.

Ruffini has described a special variety of nerve-ending in the subcutaneous tissue of the human finger (Fig. 527). These are usually known as **Ruffini's**

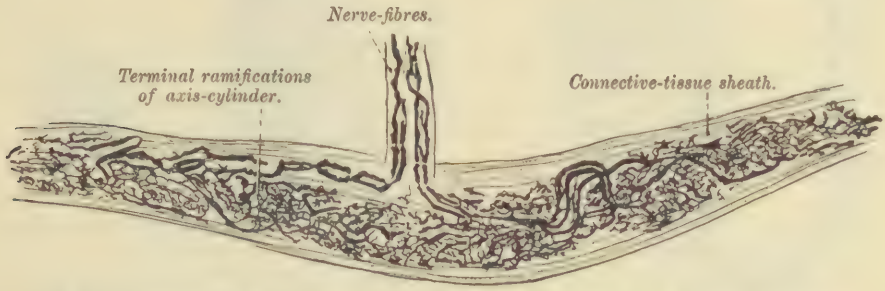


Fig. 527.—Nerve-ending of Ruffini. (After A. Ruffini, Arch. ital. de Biol., Turin, 1894, t. xxi.)

nerve-endings. They are principally situated at the junction of the corium with the subcutaneous tissue; they are oval in shape, and consist of a strong connective-tissue sheath, inside which the nerve-fibre divides into numerous branches, which show varicosities and end in small free knobs. They resemble the corpuscles of Golgi.

The **Pacinian Corpuscles** or **Corpuscles of Vater** (Fig. 528) are found in the human subject chiefly on the nerves of the palm of the hand and sole of the foot and in the genital organs of both sexes, lying in the subcutaneous tissue; but they have also been described as connected with the nerves of the joints, and in some other situations in the lower animals, as the mesentery of the cat and along the tibia of the rabbit. Each of these corpuscles is attached to and encloses the termination of a single nerve-fibre. The corpuscle which is perfectly visible to the naked eye (and which can be most easily demonstrated in the mesentery of a cat) consists of a number of lamellæ or capsules, arranged more or less concentrically around a central clear space, in which the nerve-fibre is contained. Each lamella is composed of bundles of fine connective-tissue fibres, and is lined on its inner surface by a single layer of cells. The central clear space, which is elongated or cylindrical in shape, is filled with a transparent material, in the middle of which is the single medullated fibre, which traverses the space to near its distal extremity. Here it terminates in a rounded knob or end, sometimes bifurcating previously, in which case each branch has a similar

arrangement. Todd and Bowman have described minute arteries as entering by the sides of the nerves and forming capillary loops in the intercapsular spaces, and even penetrating into the central space. Other authors describe the artery as entering the corpuscle at the pole opposite to the nerve-fibre.

Herbst has described a somewhat similar "nerve-ending" to the Pacinian corpuscle, as being found in the mucous membrane of the tongue of the duck and in some other situations. It differs, however, from the Pacinian corpuscles in being smaller, its capsules thinner and more closely approximated, and especially in the fact that the axis-cylinder in the central clear space is coated with a continuous row of nuclei. These bodies are known as the **corpuscles of Herbst.**

FIG. 528.—Pacinian corpuscle, with its system of capsules and central cavity. *a*. Arterial twig, ending in capillaries, which form loops in some of the intercapsular spaces, and one penetrates to the central capsule. *b*. The fibrous tissue of the stalk prolonged from the perineurium. *n*. Nerve-tube advancing to the central capsule, there losing the white matter, and stretching along the axis to the opposite end, where it is fixed by a tuberculous enlargement.

Neuro-tendinous Spindles.—The nerves supplying tendons have a special modification of the terminal fibres, especially numerous at the point where the tendon is becoming muscular. The tendon bundles become enlarged, and the nerve-fibres—one, two, or more in number—penetrate between the fasciculi of the tendon and spread out between the fibres to end in irregular disks or varicosities. A spindle-shaped body is thus formed, composed of tendon bundles and nerve-fibres, which is known as the **organ of Golgi** (Fig. 529).

Neuro-muscular Spindles. — In the majority of voluntary muscles there have been found special end-organs consisting of a small bundle of peculiar muscular fibres (intrafusal fibres), embryonic in type, invented by a capsule within which nerve-fibres, experimentally shown to be sensory in origin, terminate. These neuro-muscular spindles vary in length from $\frac{1}{30}$ to $\frac{1}{5}$ of an inch and have a distinctly fusiform appearance. The large medullated nerve-fibres passing to the end-organ are from one to three or four in number; entering the fibrous capsule

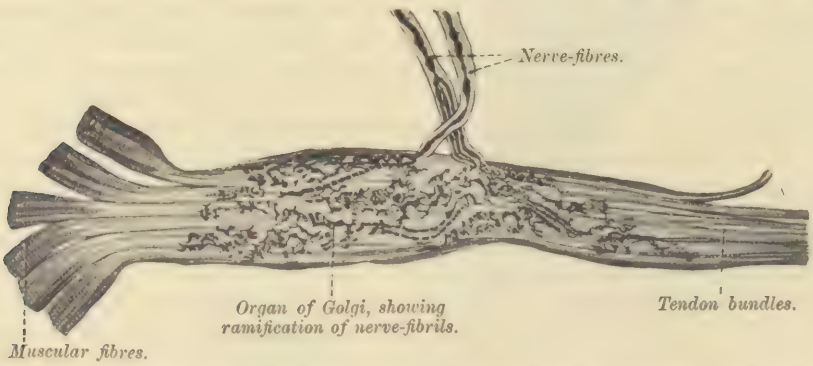


FIG. 529.—Organ of Golgi (neuro-tendinous spindle) from the human tendon Achillis. (After Ciaccio.)

they divide several times, and, losing their medulla, ultimately end in naked axis-cylinders encircling the intrafusal fibres by flattened expansions, or irregular ovoid

or rounded disks (Fig. 530). Neuro-muscular spindles have not yet been demonstrated in the tongue or eye muscles.

In the organs of **special sense** the nerves appear to terminate in cells which belong to the epithelial class, and have received the name of **sensory** or **nerve-epithelium cells**. This is not, however, the real state of the case; the nerve-fibre is in reality a process from the epithelial cell, and terminates by branching around a ganglion-cell. The stimulus carried by it is continued onward by an axis-cylinder, derived from the ganglion, to the brain. These nerve-epithelium cells must therefore be regarded as modified forms of nerve-cells. They will be more particularly described in connection with the description of the organs of special sense.

Motor nerves are to be traced either into unstriped or striped muscular fibres. In the **unstriped** or **involuntary muscles** the nerves are derived from the **sympa-**

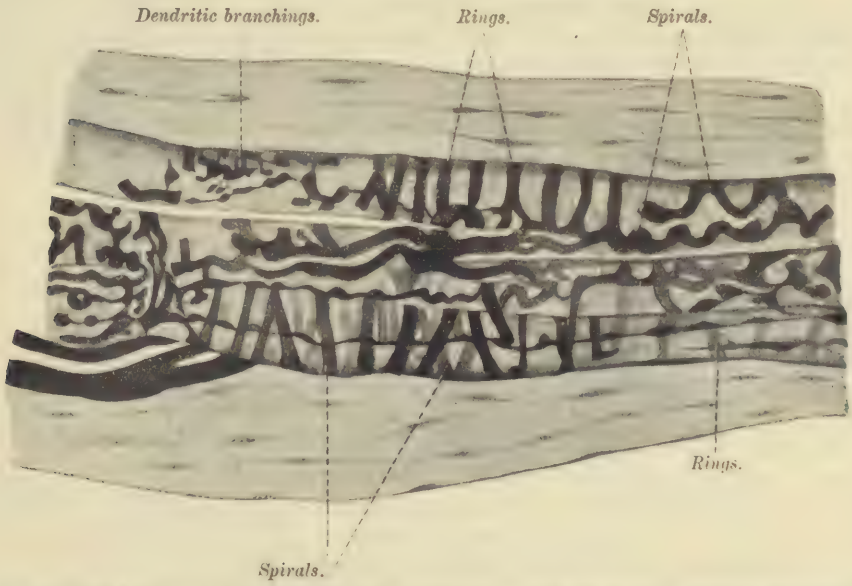


FIG. 530.—Middle third of a terminal plaque in the muscle spindle of an adult cat. (After Ruffini.)

thetic, and are composed mainly of the non-medullated fibres. Near their termination they divide into a number of branches, which communicate and form an intimate **plexus**. At the junction of the branches small triangular nuclear bodies, the ganglion-cells, are situated. From these plexuses minute branches are given off, which divide and break up into the **ultimate fibrillæ** of which the nerve is composed. These fibrillæ course between the involuntary muscle-cells, and, according to Elischer, terminate on the surface of the cell, opposite the nucleus, in a minute swelling. Arnold and Frankenhäuser believed that these ultimate fibrillæ penetrated the muscular cell and ended in the nucleus. More recent observation, however, has tended to disprove this.

In the **striped** or **voluntary muscle** the nerves supplying the muscular fibres are derived from the **cerebro-spinal nerves**, and are composed mainly of medullated fibres. The nerve, after entering the sheath of the muscle, breaks up into fibres, or bundles of fibres, which form **plexuses**, and gradually divide until, as a rule, a single nerve-fibre enters a single muscular fibre. Sometimes, however, if the muscular fibre is long, more than one nerve-fibre enters it. Within the muscular fibre the nerve-fibre terminates in a special expansion, called by Kuhne, who first

accurately described it, the **motorial end-plates** (Fig. 531).[1] The nerve-fibre, on approaching the muscular fibre, suddenly loses its white matter of Schwann, which abruptly terminates; the neurilemma becomes continuous with the sarco-

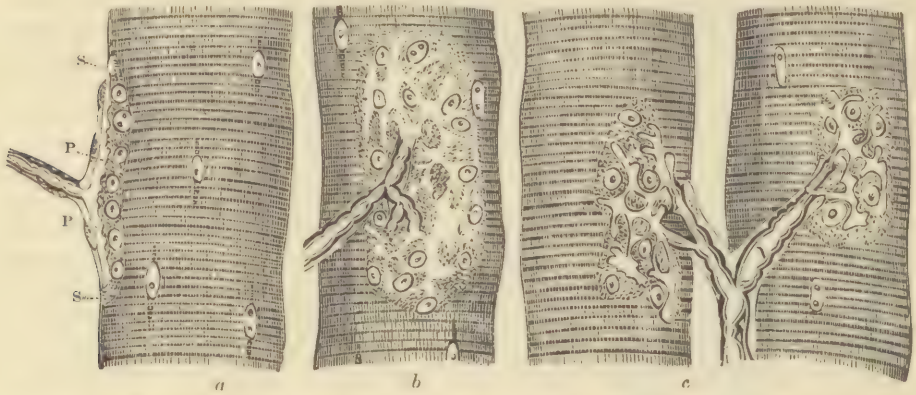


FIG. 531.—Muscular fibres of *Lacerta viridis* with the terminations of nerves. *a*. Seen in profile. P P. The nerve end-plates. S S. The base of the plate, consisting of a granular mass with nuclei. *b*. The same as seen in looking at a perfectly fresh fibre, the nervous ends being probably still excitable. (The forms of the variously divided plate can hardly be represented in a wood-cut by sufficiently delicate and pale contours to reproduce correctly what is seen in nature.) *c*. The same as seen two hours after death from poisoning by curare.

lemma of the muscle, and only the axis-cylinder enters the muscular fibre, where it immediately spreads out, ramifying like the roots of a tree, immediately beneath the sarcolemma, and is embedded in a layer of granular matter, containing a number of clear, oblong nuclei, the whole constituting an end-plate from which the contractile wave of the muscular fibre is said to start.

The **Ganglia** may be regarded as separate small aggregations of nerve-cells, connected with each other, with the cerebro-spinal axis, and with the nerves in various situations. They are found on the posterior root of each of the spinal nerves; on the posterior or sensory root of the fifth cranial nerve; on the facial and auditory nerves; and on the glosso-pharyngeal and pneumogastric nerves. They are also found in a connected series along each side of the vertebral column, forming the trunk of the sympathetic; and on the branches of that nerve, generally in the plexuses or at the point of junction of two or more nerves with each other or with branches of the cerebro-spinal system. On section they are seen to consist of a reddish-gray substance, traversed by numerous white nerve-fibres; they vary considerably in form and size; the largest are found in the cavity of the abdomen; the smallest, not visible to the naked eye, exist in considerable numbers upon the nerves distributed to the different viscera.

FIG. 532. Section through a microscopic ganglion. Magnified 300 diameters. *c*. Capsule of the ganglion. *n*. Nerve-fibres passing out of the ganglion. The nerve-fibres which entered the ganglion are not represented. The nerve-fibres are ordinary medullated fibres, but the details of their structure are not shown, owing to the low magnifying power. The ganglion-cells are invested by special capsules, lined by a few nuclei, which are here represented as if contained *in* the capsule. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

[1] They had, however, previously been noticed, though not accurately described, by Doyère, who named them "nerve-hillocks."—ED. of 15th English edition.

The ganglia are invested by a smooth and firm, closely adhering membranous envelope, consisting of dense areolar tissue; this sheath is continuous with the perineurium of the nerves, and sends numerous processes into the interior of the ganglion, which support the blood-vessels supplying its substance.

In structure all ganglia are essentially similar (Fig. 532), consisting of the same structural elements as the other nervous centres—viz., a collection of nerve-cells and nerve-fibres. Each nerve-cell has a nucleated sheath, which is continuous with the sheath of the nerve-fibre with which the cell is connected. The nerve-cells in the ganglia of the spinal nerves are pyriform in shape, and have only one process, the axis-cylinder or axone. A short distance from the cell, and while still within the ganglion, this process divides in a T-shaped manner, one limb of the cross-bar passing centrally and forming the central portion of a sensory nerve-fibre; the other limb passing peripherally to form the axis-cylinder process of the peripheral nerve-fibre. In the sympathetic ganglia the nerve-cells are multipolar and have one axis-cylinder process or axone and several protoplasmic processes or dendrons. The former of these emerges from the ganglion as a non-medullated nerve-fibre. Similar cells are found in the ganglia connected with the fifth cranial nerve, and these ganglia are therefore regarded by some as the cranial portions of the sympathetic system. The nerve-cells are disposed in the ganglia in groups of varying size, and these groups are separated from each other by bundles of nerve-fibres, some of which traverse the ganglia without being connected with the cells.

THE CEREBRO-SPINAL AXIS.

The cerebro-spinal axis consists of the **spinal cord** and the **brain** or **encephalon**, which are contained within the skull and spinal canal. The spinal cord and its coverings will be first considered, and then the brain and its membranes.

THE SPINAL CORD AND ITS MEMBRANES.

Dissection.—To dissect the cord and its membranes it will be necessary to lay open the whole length of the spinal canal. For this purpose the muscles must be separated from the vertebral grooves, so as to expose the spinous processes and laminæ of the vertebræ; and the latter must be sawed through on each side, close to the roots of the transverse processes, from the third or fourth cervical vertebra above to the sacrum below. The vertebral arches having been displaced by means of a chisel and the separate fragments removed, the dura mater will be exposed, covered by a plexus of veins and a quantity of loose areolar tissue, often infiltrated with serous fluid. The arches of the upper vertebræ are best divided by means of a strong pair of cutting bone-forceps.

MEMBRANES OF THE CORD.

The membranes which envelop the spinal cord are three in number. The most external is the **dura mater**, a strong fibrous membrane which forms a loose sheath around the cord. The most internal is the **pia mater**, a cellulo-vascular membrane which closely invests the entire surface of the cord. Between the two is the **arachnoid membrane**, a non-vascular membrane which envelops the cord and is connected to the pia mater by slender filaments of connective tissue.

The Spinal Dura Mater (Dura Mater Spinalis) (Figs. 533, 534, 535, 537).

The spinal dura mater represents only the meningeal or supporting layer of the cranial dura mater. The endocranial or endosteal layer ceases at the foramen magnum posteriorly, but reaches as low as the third cervical vertebra in front; below these levels its place is taken by the periosteum. The dura mater forms a

loose sheath which surrounds the cord and the cauda equina, and is loosely connected with the vertebral periosteum and the ligaments by a quantity of lax areolar tissue and a plexus of veins, the **meningo-rachidian veins** (*plexus venosi vertebrales interni*). The space containing the fat and veins is called the **epidural space** (*cavum epidurale*). The situation of the veins between the dura mater and the periosteum of the vertebræ corresponds therefore to that of the cranial sinuses between the endocranial and supporting layers. The dura is attached to the circumference of the foramen magnum and to the axis and third cervical vertebra; it is also fixed to the posterior common ligament, especially near the lower end of the spinal canal, by fibrous slips; it extends below as far as the second or third piece of the sacrum; here it becomes impervious, and, ensheathing the filum terminale, constitutes the **filum durae matris spinalis** (Fig. 537), and descends to the back of the coccyx, to blend with the periosteum. This part of the dura is called the **coccygeal ligament,**

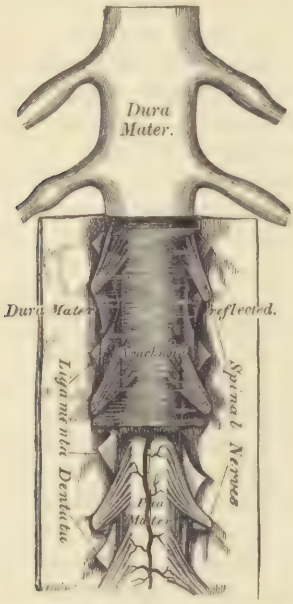


FIG. 533.—The spinal cord and its membranes.

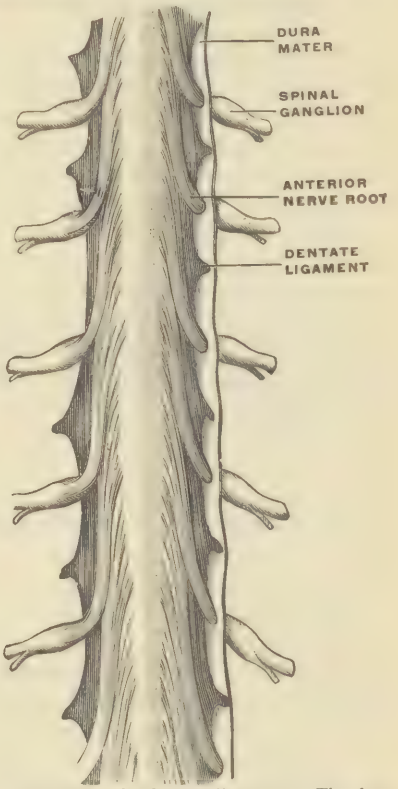


FIG. 534.—The dentate ligament. The dura mater has been opened and turned back. The anterior surface is seen. (Hirschfeld.)

(Fig. 537). The dura mater is much larger than is necessary for its contents, and its size is greater in the cervical and lumbar regions than in the dorsal. Its inner surface is smooth. On each side may be seen the double openings, which transmit the two roots of the corresponding spinal nerve, the fibrous layer of the dura mater being continued in the form of a tubular prolongation on them as they pass through these apertures. These prolongations of the dura mater are short in the upper part of the spine, but become gradually longer below, forming a number of tubes of fibrous membrane, which enclose the sacral nerves, and are contained in the spinal canal.

The chief peculiarities of the dura mater of the cord, as compared with that investing the brain, are the following:

The dura mater of the cord is not closely adherent to the bones of the spinal canal, and is not, as is the cerebral dura, the internal periosteum of the vertebræ. The vertebræ have an independent periosteum,

It does not send partitions into the fissures of the cord, as the cerebral dura sends partitions into certain fissures of the brain.

Its fibrous laminæ do not separate to form venous sinuses, as in the brain.

It contains no Pacchionian bodies.

Structure.—The dura mater consists of white fibrous and elastic tissue arranged in bands or lamellæ, which, for the most part, are parallel with one another and have a longitudinal arrangement. Each surface is covered by a layer of endothelial cells. It is sparingly supplied with vessels, and some few nerves have been traced into it.

The Arachnoid Membrane (Arachnoidea Spinalis) (Figs. 533, 535).

The arachnoid is exposed by slitting up the dura mater and reflecting that membrane to either side. It is a thin, delicate, tubular membrane which invests the surface of the cord, and is connected to the pia mater by slender filaments of connective tissue. Above, it is continuous with the cerebral arachnoid; on each side it is continued on the various nerves, so as to form a sheath for them as they pass outward to the intervertebral foramina. The outer surface of the arachnoid is in contact with the inner surface of the dura mater, and the two are, here and there, joined together by isolated connective-tissue trabeculæ. These trabeculæ are especially numerous on the posterior surface of the cord. For the most part, however, the membranes are not connected together, and the interval between them is named the **subdural space** (*cavum subdurale*). The subdural space contains a very small amount of lymph-like fluid. There is no communication between the subdural space and the subarachnoid space. The subdural space is prolonged outward for a short distance on each emerging nerve and communicates with the lymph tract of the nerve. The inner surface of the arachnoid is separated from the pia mater by a considerable interval, which is called the **subarachnoid** or **subarachnoidean space** (*cavum subarachnoideale*). The space is largest at the lower part of the spinal canal, and encloses the mass of nerves which form the cauda equina. Superiorly it is continuous with the cranial subarachnoid space, and communicates with the general ventricular cavity of the brain by means of openings in the pia mater, in the roof of the fourth ventricle, **foramen of Majendie** and **foramina of Key and Retzius** (p. 852). It contains an abundant serous secretion, the **cerebro-spinal fluid** (*liquor cerebro-spinalis*). This secretion is sufficient in amount to expand the arachnoid membrane, and thus to distend completely the whole of the space included in the dura mater. The subarachnoid space is occupied by trabeculæ of delicate endothelial covered connective tissue, connecting the pia mater on the one hand with the arachnoid membrane on the other. This is named **subarachnoid tissue.**

In addition to this the space is partially subdivided by a longitudinal membranous partition, the **septum posticum** or the **posterior fenestrated septum** (*septum subarachnoideale*), which serves to connect the arachnoid with the pia mater, opposite the posterior median fissure of the spinal cord. It is a partition, but an incomplete and cribriform partition, consists of bundles of white fibrous tissue interlacing with each other, and is coated with endothelium. The **ligamenta denticulata,** which run from the pia mater to the dura mater on either side of the cord, divide the subarachnoid space into an **anterior** and a **posterior space** (*cavum subarachnoideale anterius et posterius*), which join like spaces in the cavity of the cranium. The **medulli-spinal veins** (*venæ spinales externæ*) lie in the subarachnoid space.

Structure.—The arachnoid is a delicate membrane made up of closely arranged interlacing bundles of connective tissue in several layers. It con-

tains many elastic fibres, and is covered on each side by endothelial cells. The arachnoid contains neither vessels or nerves.

The Pia Mater of the Cord (Pia Mater Spinalis).

The pia mater of the cord is exposed on the removal of the arachnoid (Figs. 533 and 535). It covers the entire surface of the cord, to which it is very intimately adherent, forming its neurilemma, and sending a process downward into its anterior fissure. It also forms a sheath for each of the filaments of the spinal nerves, and invests the nerves themselves. A longitudinal fibrous band extends along the middle line on its anterior surface, called by Haller the **linea splendens**; and a somewhat similar band, the **ligamentum denticulatum**, is situated on each side. At the point where the cord terminates the pia mater becomes contracted, and is continued down as a long, slender filament, the **filum terminale** (Fig. 537), which descends within the sheath of the dura and the arachnoid and through the centre of the mass of nerves forming the *cauda equina*. It unites with the dura and arachnoid about the level of the third sacral vertebra, and as the **central ligament of the spinal cord**, the **coccygeal ligament**, or the **filum durae matris spinalis** the fused membranes extend downward as far as the base of the coccyx, where they blend with the periosteum. It assists in maintaining the cord in its position during the movements of the trunk. It contains a little gray nervous substance, which may be traced for some distance into its upper part, and is accompanied by a small artery and vein. At the upper part of the cord the pia mater presents a grayish, mottled tint, which is owing to yellow or brown pigment-cells scattered among the elastic fibres.

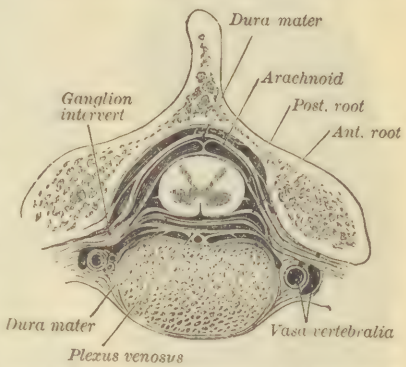


Fig. 535.—Transverse section of the spinal cord and its membranes. (Gegenbauer.)

Structure.—The pia mater of the cord is less vascular in structure, but thicker and denser, than the pia mater of the brain, with which it is continuous. It consists of two layers: an outer, resembling the arachnoid, composed of bundles of connective-tissue fibres, arranged for the most part longitudinally; and an inner (*intima pia*), consisting of stiff circular bundles of the same tissue, which present peculiar angular bends. It is covered on both surfaces by a layer of endothelium. Between the two layers are a number of cleft-like lymphatic spaces which communicate with the subarachnoid cavity, and a number of blood-vessels which are enclosed in a perivascular sheath, derived from the inner layer of the pia mater, into which the lymphatic spaces open. The pia mater contains the **anterior spinal artery** and its branches, the two **posterior spinal arteries**, and numerous veins which pass to the medulli-spinal veins. It is also supplied with nerves, which are derived in part from the **sympathetic** and in part from the **cerebro-spinal nerves**. These nerves supply the walls of the blood-vessels and enter the cord with the vessels.

The **Dentate Ligament** (*ligamentum denticulatum*) (Figs. 533 and 534) is a narrow fibrous band, situated on each side of the spinal cord, throughout its entire length, running from the pia mater to the dura mater, and separating the anterior from the posterior roots of the spinal nerves. It has received its name from the serrated appearance which it presents. Its inner border is continuous with the pia mater at the side of the cord. Its outer border presents a series of triangular, dentated serrations, the points of which are fixed at intervals to the dura mater. These

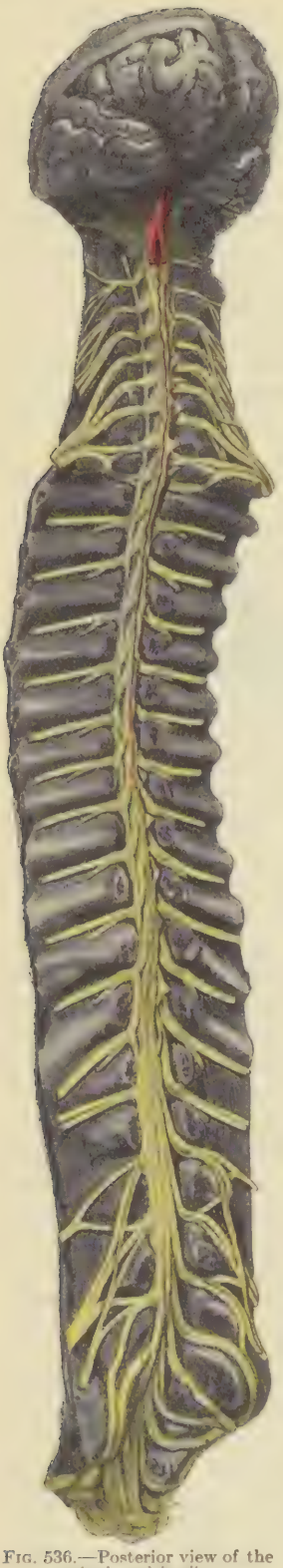


Fig. 536.—Posterior view of the spinal cord *in situ*.

serrations are twenty-one in number on each side, the first being attached to the dura mater, opposite the margin of the foramen magnum between the vertebral artery and the hypoglossal nerve, and the last near the lower end of the cord. Its use is to support the cord in the fluid by which it is surrounded.

Surgical Anatomy.—Evidence of value in the diagnosis of meningitis may be obtained by the operation of *lumbar puncture*, that is, by puncturing the theca of the cord and withdrawing some of the cerebro-spinal fluid, and the operation is regarded by some as curative, under the supposition that the draining away of the cerebro-spinal fluid relieves the patient by diminishing the intracranial pressure. Lumbar puncture may give important diagnostic aid after a head injury by disclosing bloody cerebro-spinal fluid. The operation is performed by inserting a trocar, of the smallest size, below the level of the fourth lumbar vertebra. In an adult the cord terminates at the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra, and in a child opposite the body of the third lumbar vertebra. The canal may be punctured below the fourth vertebra without any risk of injuring its contents. The point of puncture is indicated by laying the child on its side and dropping a perpendicular line from the highest point of the crest of the ilium; this will cross the upper border of the spine of the fourth lumbar vertebra. In a child the puncture is made just below the vertebral spine. In adults one-half an inch to one side of the end of the vertebral spine. However the preliminary puncture is made, the needle penetrates the dura in the middle line. In entering the needle it should be directed upward and forward in a child; upward, forward, and slightly inward in an adult.

THE SPINAL CORD (MEDULLA SPINALIS) (Fig. 536).

The spinal cord is the cylindrical, elongated part of the cerebro-spinal axis which is contained in the vertebral canal. Its length is usually about seventeen or eighteen inches, and its weight, when divested of its membranes and nerves, about one ounce and a half, its proportion to the encephalon being about 1 to 33. It does not nearly fill the canal in which it is contained, its investing membranes being separated from the surrounding walls by areolar tissue and a plexus of veins. It occupies, in the adult, the upper two-thirds of the vertebral canal, extending from the upper border of the atlas to the lower border of the body of the first lumbar vertebra, where it terminates in a slender filament of gray substance, which is continued for some distance into the filum terminale (Fig. 537). In the fœtus, before the third month, it extends to the bottom of the sacral canal, but after this period it gradually recedes from below, as the growth of the bones composing the canal is more rapid in proportion than that of the cord, so that in the child at birth the cord extends as far as the third lumbar vertebra. Its position varies also according to the degree of curvature of the spinal column, being raised somewhat in flexion of the spine. The spinal cord is cylindrical, being somewhat flattened

anteriorly and posteriorly (Fig. 538). On examining its surface it presents a difference in its diameter in different parts, being marked by two enlargements, an upper or cervical, and a lower or lumbar. The **cervical enlargement** (*intumescentia cervicalis*) extends from about the third cervical to the first or second dorsal vertebra; its greatest diameter is in the transverse direction (13 mm.), and it corresponds with the origin of the nerves which supply the upper extremities. The **lumbar enlargement** (*intumescentia lumbalis*) is situated opposite the last two or three dorsal vertebræ, and corresponds with the origin of the nerves which supply the lower extremities. Below the lumbar enlargement the cord gradually tapers to form a cone, the **conus terminalis** (*conus medullaris*), the apex of which is continuous with the filum terminale.

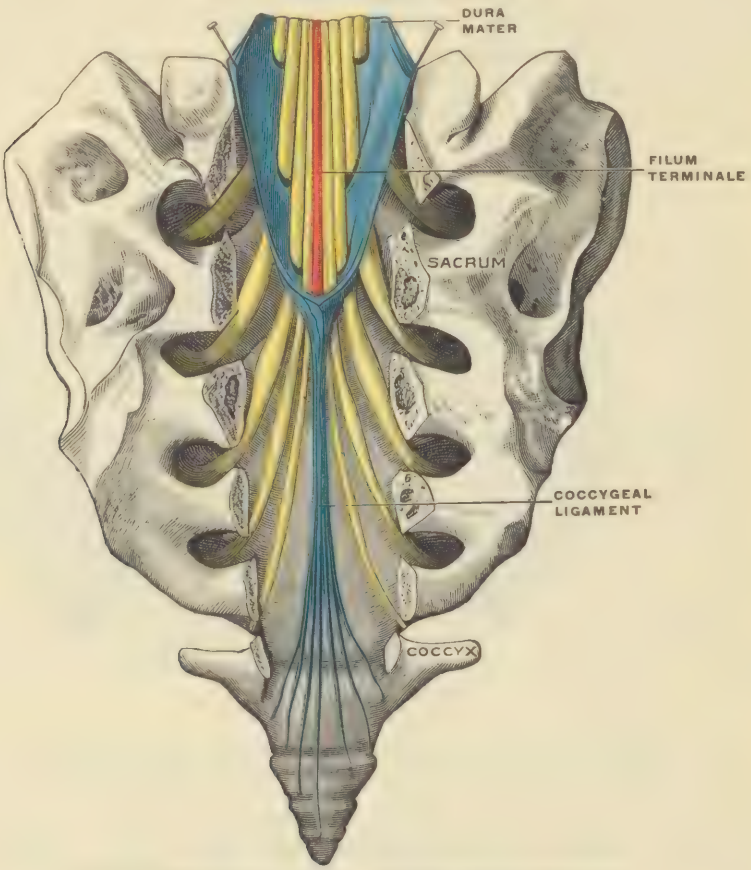


FIG. 537.—The filum terminale. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Fissures and Grooves (Fig. 538).—It presents on its anterior or ventral surface, along the middle line, a longitudinal fissure, the **anterior median** or **ventro-median fissure**, and on its posterior or dorsal surface another fissure, which also extends along the entire length of the cord, the **posterior median** or **dorso-median fissure** or **sulcus**. These fissures penetrate through the greater part of the thickness of the cord, and incompletely divide the cord into symmetrical halves, united in the middle line by a transverse band of nervous substance, the **commissure**.

The Anterior Median or Ventro-median Fissure (*fissura mediana anterior*) (Fig. 538).—The anterior median fissure is wider, but of less depth, than the posterior, extending into the cord for about one-third of its thickness, and is deepest at the

lower part of the cord. It contains a prolongation from the pia mater, and its floor is formed by the **anterior** or **white commissure**, which is perforated by numerous blood-vessels passing to the centre of the cord.

The Posterior Median or Dorso-median Fissure or Sulcus (*sulcus medianus posterior*) (Fig. 538).—The posterior median sulcus is not an actual fissure, as the space between the lateral halves of the posterior part of the cord is crossed by connective tissue and numerous blood-vessels, so that no actual hiatus exists, and there is consequently no prolongation of the pia mater into it. It extends into the cord to about one-half its width. The floor of the posterior median sulcus is formed by the **posterior or gray commissure**.

Lateral Fissures.—On each side of the posterior median fissure, along the line of attachment of the posterior roots of the nerves, a delicate fissure may be seen, leading down to the gray matter which approaches the surface in this situation; this is called the **postero-lateral** or **dorso-lateral sulcus** or **fissure of the spinal cord** (*sulcus lateralis posterior*). On the posterior surface of the spinal cord, between

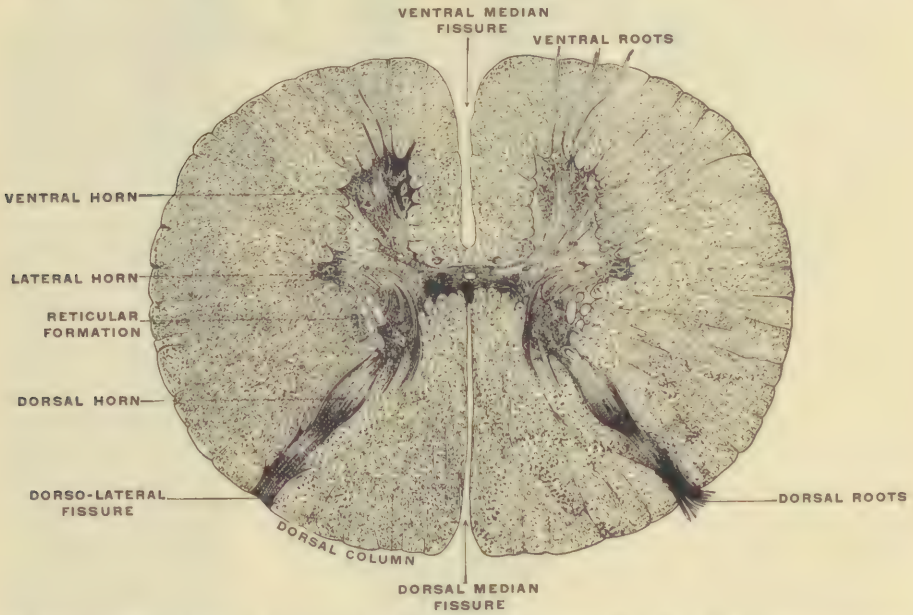


FIG. 538.—Transverse section of the spinal cord at the middle of the thoracic region. The neuroglia septum has been removed from between the dorsal columns. (Testut, after Pierret.)

the posterior median fissure and the postero-lateral fissure on each side, is a slight longitudinal furrow, the **posterior intermediate furrow** or the **posterior paramedian groove** (*sulcus intermedius posterior*), marking off two slender tracts, the **postero-median** and **postero-lateral columns**. These are most distinct in the cervical region, but are stated by Foville to exist throughout the whole length of the cord. On each side of the anterior median fissure the anterior roots of the spinal nerves emerge from the cord, not in one vertical line, but by separate bundles which occupy an area of some width. This is called, by some anatomists, the **antero-lateral fissure of the cord** (*sulcus lateralis anterior*), although no actual fissure exists in this situation.

Columns of the Cord (*funiculi medullae spinalis*) (Figs. 538 and 539).—Each half of the spinal cord is thus divided into four columns: an **anterior column**, a **lateral column**, a **posterior column**, and a **postero-median column**. This division, however, is very imperfect, since the limit between the so-called anterior and lateral columns cannot be defined on account of the bundles of the anterior roots being spread over

a considerable area. It is therefore customary to divide each half of the spinal cord into two columns, separated by the postero-lateral sulcus: (1) a small **posterior column** (*funiculus posterior*), which is bounded internally by the posterior median fissure, and externally by the postero-lateral sulcus, and the posterior column is subdivided by the posterior intermediate septum into an outer portion, the **column** or **tract of Burdach** (*fasciculus cuneatus*), and an inner portion, the **column** or **tract of Goll** (*fasciculus gracilis*); (2) a large **antero-lateral column,** which comprises the rest of the cord. The antero-lateral column is divided arbitrarily into the **lateral column** (*funiculus lateralis*) and the **anterior column** (*funiculus anterior*).

Structure of the Cord (Fig. 538).—If a transverse section of the spinal cord be made, it will be seen to consist of white and gray nervous substance. The white matter is situated externally, and constitutes the greater part. The gray substance occupies the centre, and is so arranged as to present on the surface of the section two crescentic masses, placed one in each lateral half of the cord, united together by a transverse band of gray matter, the **gray commissure.** Each crescentic mass has an **anterior** or **ventral horn** (*columna grisea anterior*) and a **posterior** or **dorsal horn** (*columna grisea posterior*). The **posterior horn** is long and narrow, and approaches the surface of the postero-lateral fissure, near which it presents a slight enlargement, the **caput cornu**; from this it tapers to form the **apex cornu** (*apex columna grisea posterior*), which at the surface of the cord becomes continuous with some of the fibres of the posterior roots of the spinal nerves. The constriction near the gray commissure is called the **cervix cornu** (*cervix columna grisea posterior*). The **anterior horn** is short and thick, and does not quite reach the surface, but extends toward the point of attachment of the anterior roots of the nerves. Its margin presents a dentate or stellate appearance. What is known as the **lateral horn** (*columna grisea lateralis*) projects from the outer aspect of the gray matter nearly on the line of the gray commissure. It is distinct in the upper dorsal region; in the cervical enlargement it is merged in the anterior horn, but it reappears in the upper cervical region. In the lumbar region it merges with the anterior horn. Owing to the projections toward the surface of the anterior and posterior horns of the gray matter, each half of the cord is divided by the gray matter, more or less completely, into three columns, anterior, middle, and posterior, the anterior and middle being joined to form the antero-lateral column, as the anterior horn does not quite reach the surface.

The Commissure of the Spinal Cord.—The commissure of the spinal cord is composed of white and gray matter, and is therefore divided into the **white** and **gray commissure.**

The **Anterior** or **White Commissure** (*commissura anterior alba*) is situated at the bottom of the anterior median fissure, and is formed of medullated nerve-fibres, which pass between the gray matter of the anterior horn and the anterior and lateral white columns of one side into similar parts on the other side. The fibres are oblique in direction; many which enter at the posterior part of the commissure on the one side leave it at the anterior part of the commissure on the other, and *vice versa*, a decussation taking place in the middle line.

The **Posterior** or **Gray Commissure** (*commissura grisea*), which connects the two crescentic masses of gray matter, is separated from the bottom of the anterior median fissure by the anterior white commissure. It consists of transverse medullated nerve-fibres, with a considerable quantity of neuroglia between them. The fibres when they reach the lateral crescents diverge: some pass backward to the posterior roots; others spread out, at various angles, into the crescent. The portion of the gray commissure in front of the central canal is called the **anterior gray commissure** (*commissura grisea anterior*); the portion behind the central canal is called the **posterior gray commissure** (*commissura grisea posterior*).

Running through the gray commissure of the whole length of the cord is a

minute canal, which is barely visible to the naked eye in the human cord, but is proportionately larger in some of the lower vertebrata. It is called the **central canal** (*canalis centralis*); it opens above into the fourth ventricle, and terminates below in a somewhat dilated extremity, the **inferior rhomboid fossa** (*fossa rhomboidea inferior*). It is surrounded by an area of neuroglia, which, in the recent state, has a gelatinous appearance, and in which there are no nerve-fibres. This is sometimes called the **substantia gelatinosa centralis**. When hardened in alcohol or chromic salts it has a finely reticulated appearance. The canal is lined in the fœtus by columnar ciliated epithelium, but in the adult the cilia have disappeared, and the canal is filled with their remains.

The mode of arrangement of the gray matter, and its amount in proportion to the white, vary in different parts of the cord. Thus, the posterior horns are long and narrow in the cervical region; short and narrower in the dorsal; short, but wider, in the lumbar region. In the cervical region the crescentic portions are small, and the white matter more abundant than in any other region of the cord. In the dorsal region the gray matter is least developed, the white matter being also small in quantity. In the lumbar region the gray matter is more abundant than in any other region of the cord. Toward the lower end of the cord the white matter gradually ceases. The crescentic portions of the gray matter soon blend into a single mass, which forms the only constituent of the extreme point of the cord.

Blood Supply of the Cord.—Spinal branches are given off by the **vertebral, ascending cervical, deep cervical, intercostal, lumbar, lumbar branches of the ilio-lumbar, lateral** and **middle sacral arteries.**[1] Many of these spinal arteries give branches to the cord and the branches reach the cord in the spinal nerve-roots and form three vascular chains in the cord. The **arteries** of the cord are the **anterior spinal** and the **two posterior spinal,** which take origin from the vertebral arteries (pp. 638 and 639). The anterior spinal lies at the surface of the anterior median fissure. The posterior spinal arteries descend on either side of the cord behind the posterior nerve-roots. The central supply of the cord is chiefly from the anterior spinal artery. It sends **sulcal branches** inward in the fissure toward the cord, and branches of these vessels enter the cord. The vessels of the cord are terminal arteries. The gray matter is chiefly supplied by the anterior spinal, partly by the posterior spinal. The white matter is supplied by both vessels. From the interior of the cord blood is brought by **fissural veins** (which emerge from the fissures), **root-veins** (which emerge with the fibres of the anterior and posterior roots), and a few veins which emerge from different parts of the surface of the cord. These vessels unite to form the **medulli-spinal plexus,** which is between the pia mater and the arachnoid membrane. (See Spinal Veins.)

Lymphatics.—There are no lymph-vessels in the cord, but lymph is collected by perivascular lymph-spaces and by spaces about the nerve-fibres.

Minute Anatomy of the Cord.—The cord consists of an outer part, composed of medullated nerve-fibres, which is the **white substance**; and of a central part, the **gray matter,** both supported in a stroma.

The **stroma** is composed of **connective tissue,** which is derived from the pia by ingrowth, and hence is of mesodermic origin, and of **neuroglia.**

The Neuroglia.—The neuroglia consists of a homogeneous transparent matrix, of a network of very delicate fibrillæ, and of small stellate or branched cells, the **neuroglia-cells.**

It takes origin from cells which were derived from the large columnar cells of the wall of the neural canal, and hence is of epithelial origin.

[1] A Manual of Practical Anatomy. By the late Prof. Alfred W. Hughes. Edited and completed by Arthur Keith, M.D.

In addition to forming a ground substance, in which the nerve-fibres, nerve-cells, and blood-vessels are embedded, a considerable accumulation of neuroglia takes place in three situations: (1) on the surface of the cord, beneath the pia mater; (2) around the central canal, the **substantia gelatinosa centralis**; and (3) as a cap over the extremity of the posterior horn, forming the **substantia cinerea gelatinosa.**

The White Substance of the Cord (*substantia alba*).—The white substance of the cord is placed at the periphery and in the anterior commissure. It consists of medullated nerve-fibres, mostly disposed longitudinally, with blood-vessels and neuroglia, sustained by a network of connective tissue from the pia. When stained with carmine it presents a very striking appearance on transverse section. It is seen to be studded all over with minute dots, surrounded by white areas. This is due to the longitudinal medullated fibres seen on section. Each dot is an axis-cylinder, the white area about it is the substance of Schwann. Externally, the neuroglia forms a sheath closely investing the outer surface of the cord immediately beneath the pia mater; from it numerous septa pass inward and separate the respective bundles of fibres and extend between the individual nerve-fibres, acting as a supporting medium, in which they are embedded. There are **transverse, oblique** or **dorso-ventral** and **longitudinal fibres** in the white substance.

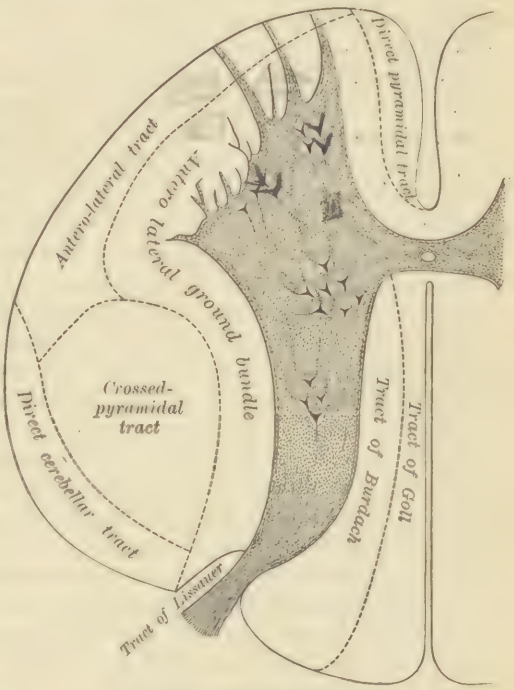


Fig. 539.—Columns of the cord.

Transverse Fibres.—These fibres pass between the longitudinal tracts of the cord and the gray matter. They constitute the anterior or white commissure, which joins the anterior and lateral white columns and the anterior gray horn of one side to like parts of the opposite side.

As previously stated, it is in front of the gray commissure, and is the floor of the anterior median fissure. It contains four sets of fibres: (1) those belonging to the direct pyramidal tract, (2) those belonging to the antero-lateral ground bundle, (3) those belonging to the antero-lateral ascending cerebellar tract, (4) crossed fibres to the anterior spinal nerve-roots.[1]

Oblique or Dorso-ventral Fibres.—These are the anterior root-fibres passing from the anterior gray horn to the periphery of the cord and the posterior root-fibres passing from the periphery of the cord to the posterior gray horn.

Longitudinal Fibres.—They constitute the *conducting tracts* (Fig. 539).

It is impossible to trace the course of the nerve-fibres in their passage through the cord; but the investigation of pathological lesions has shown that the white matter of the cord consists of certain **columns** or **tracts of fibres**; for it has been found that certain lesions are strictly limited to certain well-determined parts of the cord without involving neighboring regions. That these parts or fasciculi correspond to so many distinct anatomical systems, each endowed with special

[1] Santee. The Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord.

functions, seems abundantly proved by the researches of Flechsig and others on the development of the spinal cord during the later periods of utero-gestation and in the newly born infant. By these researches several tracts can be traced along the greater part of the cord and into or from the encephalon (Fig. 539). Thus (1) in the antero-lateral column of the cord, on either side of the anterior median fissure, a portion of the column may be divided off as the **uncrossed** or **direct pyramidal tract** or the **fasciculus of Turck** (*fasciculus cerebrospinalis anterior* [*ventralis*]). This tract is a continuation of the corresponding tract in the medulla. It is only found in the upper part of the cord; it gradually diminishes as it is traced downward, and disappears about the middle of the dorsal region. It consists of centrifugal or descending fibres which can be traced downward from the pyramid of the medulla of the same side, and are derived from the motor area of the cerebral cortex. The fibres of this tract decussate in their course down the cord, passing across the middle line through the anterior white commissure and terminating in the anterior gray horn of the opposite side; this explains the gradual diminution and eventual disappearance of the tract. (2) In the hinder part of the antero-lateral column is a somewhat triangular area, larger than the preceding, which is named the **crossed pyramidal tract** (*fasciculus cerebrospinalis lateralis*). In the cervical and dorsal regions the crossed pyramidal tract is overlaid by the direct cerebellar tract, but in the lumbar cord it is at the surface. This also consists of descending fibres, which are derived from the pyramid of the medulla of the opposite side, and which have crossed in the decussation of the pyramids. After crossing in the medulla the fibres descend and terminate about the cells in the anterior cornu of the same side as the column. The fibres are derived from the motor area of the cerebral cortex of the opposite side. Thus it will be seen that all the fibres from the motor area, which descend through the internal capsule, the crus cerebri, and the pons Varolii to the pyramidal body of the medulla, decussate. Some decussate in the lower part of the medulla, and descend through it as the crossed pyramidal tract. Others do not decussate in the medulla but descend as the direct pyramidal tract and cross through the anterior commissure of the cord to terminate in the anterior gray horn of the opposite side, where the fibres end by forming synapses around its cells. Investigations render it probable that the crossed pyramidal tract contains some fibres from the main pyramidal tract in the medulla, which have descended from the corresponding side of the brain undecussated and terminate about the cells of the gray cornu of the same side of the cord. The **crossed descending tract of the red nucleus** is found within the crossed pyramidal tract at the junction of its lateral and dorsal portions. This tract from the opposite red nucleus reaches the lumbar cord and ends in the gray matter. (3) The **antero-lateral tract** is an extensive crescent-shaped strand which skirts the circumference of the anterior three-quarters of the antero-lateral column of the cord. Behind, where it is thickest, it lies in the angle formed by the direct cerebellar and crossed pyramidal tracts, becoming narrower as it passes forward toward the direct pyramidal tract. It contains two sets of fibres, centripetal or ascending, and centrifugal or descending, and hence is divided into two tracts, the **antero-lateral ascending** and the **antero-lateral descending cerebellar tracts.** (*a*) The **antero-lateral ascending cerebellar tract** or the **column of Gowers** (*fasciculus anterolateralis superficialis ascendens*) is chiefly in the posterior part of the antero-lateral tract, although some of its fibres mingle with the descending tract. The axones which compose this tract arise from cells in the central gray matter and the gray matter of the base of the anterior horn, chiefly from the opposite side of the cord (Santee), most of the fibres crossing soon after their beginning by way of the anterior commissure. The fibres of the column of Gowers pass through the dorsal portion of the lateral region of the medulla (sending nerve fibres to the lateral nucleus) and the formatio reticularis of the pons, turn backward over the superior peduncle of the cerebellum, and

pass into the superior vermis through the valve of Vieussens (Santee, from Hoche). Between the ascending and descending tracts is the **olivary bundle of the cord** or the **triangular tract of Helwig** (*tractus triangularis* [*Helwigi*]). It arises in the lumbar cord and terminates in the olive of the medulla. (*b*) The **antero-lateral descending cerebellar tract** or the **column of Marchi** and **Lowenthal** (*fasciculus anterolateralis superficialis descendens*) is situated chiefly in the anterior portion of the antero-lateral tract, but some of its fibres are scattered among the fibres of Gowers' column. The axones of the descending tract are derived from Purkinjean cells in the cerebellar cortex. The fibres pass through the inferior peduncle of the cerebellum and the lateral region of the medulla and terminate in the anterior gray horn. (4) The **direct cerebellar** or **dorso-lateral cerebellar tract** (*fasciculus cerebellospinalis*) is situated at the circumference of the cord behind the preceding and external to the crossed pyramidal tract, occupying a narrow area which extends backward as far as the postero-lateral fissure or nearly so. It commences at the upper level of the lumbar cord. Below this level it is absent, and where it is absent the crossed pyramidal tract reaches the surface. As the direct cerebellar tract ascends it increases in size. It passes through the restiform body of the medulla and terminates in the superior vermis of the cerebellum. Its fibres are derived from the cells of the **posterior vesicular column of Clarke** in the gray matter of the cord. (5) Close to the point where the posterior roots enter the cord, in the antero-lateral column, is a small collection of fibres, which is known as the **marginal tract of Spitzka and Lissauer** (*fasciculus marginalis*); it is formed by some of the outer fibres of the posterior roots which run upward in the tract for a short distance, and end about the cell-bodies of the substantia gelatinosa (Santee). (6) The rest of the antero-lateral column of the spinal cord is occupied by the **antero-lateral ground bundle** (*fasciculus proprius anterolateralis*). It surrounds the anterior cornu and separates the antero-lateral tract and the crossed pyramidal tract from the gray matter of the cord. Nowhere does it reach the surface of the cord, but at one place it very closely approaches it. The direct pyramidal tract separates it from the antero-median fissure. The fibres are very short and are commissural and associative. The portion of the ground bundle in the anterior column is chiefly commissural, its fibres passing between the anterior cornua. The portion in the lateral column is chiefly for association, its fibres joining different areas of the cord on the same side. It consists of (*a*) longitudinal fibres. An **anterior longitudinal bundle** (*fasciculus longitudinalis medialis*), which ascends to reach the motor nuclei of cranial nerves and the subthalamic region. A **posterior longitudinal bundle** (*fasciculus ventralis*), passing to the posterior corpus quadrigemina and the cilio-spinal and other centres (Santee). Longitudinal commissural fibres, which unite the groups of cells in the gray matter with one another; (*b*) of fibres which pass across the anterior commissure from the gray matter of the opposite side; and (*c*) horizontal fibres belonging to the anterior roots of the nerves, which pass through it before leaving the cord. In the posterior column of the cord there are two definite tracts. They are marked off from each other by the posterior intermediate furrow on the surface of the cord. The part which has been described previously as the posterior median column pretty nearly corresponds to the one tract, the **tract of Goll**, and the remainder of the posterior column corresponds to the other, the **tract of Burdach**. (7) The **postero-median tract** or **tract of Goll** (*fasciculus gracilis*) increases as it ascends, and consists of long, but small, fibres derived from the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, which ascend to the medulla oblongata, the fasciculus gracilis of the medulla, and end in the nucleus gracilis. Some fibres leave the tract and end in the gray matter of the cord. A few fibres pass to the thalamus and a few to the cerebellum. (8) The **postero-lateral tract** or the **tract of Burdach** (*fasciculus cuneatus*) consists of shorter, but larger, fibres than the preceding; they are derived from the posterior roots and from cells in the gray

matter of the cord; some ascend only for a short distance in the tract and then enter the gray matter and come into close relationship with the cells of the posterior vesicular column of Clarke; others incline toward the mesial plane, and, entering Goll's column, can be traced as far as the medulla. The tract of Burdach becomes in the medulla the fasciculus cuneatus and the fasciculus of Rolando. Some of its fibres continue along the interolivary fillet, others along the arciform fibres, and some terminate in the gray matter of the cord (Santee). In the cervical and upper dorsal regions there is contained in the substance of Burdach's column a small strand of fibres, called the **descending comma tract.** It presents, on transverse section, the appearance of a comma, the blunt extremity of which is directed forward. The fibres forming it probably represent in part descending portions of the dorsal nerve-roots, together with descending commissural fibres within the cord itself.

What is known as the **cornu commissural tract** is in the lumbar and lower dorsal regions, between the posterior cornu and the gray commissure. The **septo-marginal tract** is only found in a portion of the lumbar cord. It is between the septum and the dorsal surface of the cord (Santee).

Functions of the Various Tracts in the Cord.—1. The direct pyramidal tract is motor, and conveys impulses chiefly to the arms and trunk. It conducts motor impulses from the cerebral cortex of one side, along the spinal cord of the same side, and to the multipolar nerve-cells of the anterior horn of the opposite side of the cord. A given muscular region is supplied chiefly by the crossed pyramidal tract of the corresponding side of the cord and partly by the direct pyramidal tract of the opposite side of the cord, but both tracts are innervated by the same brain area. It is further to be remembered that there are probably direct or uncrossed fibres in the crossed pyramidal tracts of the cord which convey motor impulse from the cortex to muscles of the same side.

2. The crossed pyramidal tract conveys motor impulses and impulses which control reflex movements. It descends from the cortex, decussates in the lower part of the medulla, and descends in the cord on the side opposite to the brain area from which it arose. It supplies muscles on the same side of the body as the tract is of the cord. This tract also contains a few uncrossed fibres from the same side of the brain. Hence the muscles of one side receive their chief innervation from the opposite side of the brain by way of the crossed and the direct pyramidal tracts, but receive some slight innervation from the same side of the brain by way of the direct fibres in the crossed pyramidal tract. Gowers[1] says: "There is abundant evidence that each hemisphere of the brain is connected with both legs, although chiefly with that of the opposite side. There is also a similar and even more equal connection with the trunk muscles, and a slighter connection with certain muscles of the arm. Such muscles invariably regain some power on the paralyzed side, even with a complete interruption to the motor path, and they are weakened on the unparalyzed side."

3. The antero-lateral descending cerebellar tract is a "segment of an indirect motor path" (Santee). The antero-lateral ascending cerebellar tract conveys impressions of temperature and pain.

4. The direct cerebellar tract conveys impressions of equilibrium, particularly from the viscera.

5. The antero-lateral ground bundle is associative between the anterior cornua and is commissural between different segments of the cord. These commissural and associative connections are of great importance, for if the regular route of nervous conduction is interrupted they may serve to convey the nerve current around the block.

[1] Diseases of the Nervous System.

6. The marginal tract of Spitzka and Lissauer is composed of ascending fibres from the posterior nerve-roots.

7. The postero-lateral tract conveys impressions of common sensation.

8. The postero-median tract conveys impressions of muscular sense.

The Gray Substance of the Cord (*substantia grisea*).—The gray substance of the cord occupies its central part in the shape of two crescentic horns, joined together by the gray commissure. Each of these crescents has an **anterior** or **ventral** and a **posterior** or **dorsal cornu.**

The **Posterior** or **Dorsal Horn** (*columna grisea posterior*) consists of a slightly narrowed portion, at its base, where it is connected with the rest of the gray substance —this is, the **cervix cornu**; from this it gradually expands into the main part of the horn, the **caput cornu,** and tapers to form the **apex cornu**; around its extremity is a lamina or layer of gelatinous material, which covers the head like a cap, and from this it tapers almost to a point, which approaches the surface of the cord at the postero-lateral groove.

The gelatinous substance is a peculiar accumulation of neuroglia (Klein) similar to that found around the central canal, and has been named by Rolando the **substantia cinerea gelatinosa.** It probably takes its origin from the columnar cells which line the posterior part of the embryonic spinal canal.

The **Anterior** or **Ventral Horn of the Gray Substance** (*columna grisea anterior*) in the cervical and lumbar swellings, where it gives origin to the motor nerves of the extremities, is much larger than in any other region, and contains several distinct groups of large and variously shaped cells.

In addition to this, a **lateral horn** (*columna grisea lateralis*) is found projecting outward from the lateral region of the gray matter on a level with the gray commissure in the upper part of the dorsal region of the cord; in the cervical and lumbar regions this lateral horn blends with the anterior horn, which thus becomes broad and expanded. From the concavity of the crescent, between the anterior and posterior horns, processes of gray matter extend into the white substance, where they divide and anastomose to form a network, termed the **formatio reticularis.**

The gray commissure contains the **central canal** (*canalis centralis*), and is situated behind the white commissure, which separates it from the bottom of the anterior median fissure.

The gray substance of the cord is composed of—(1) the **substantia gelatinosa,** which envelops the head of the posterior horn and which encircles the central canal of the cord; (2) the **substantia spongiosa,** which forms the crescentic horns (except the heads of the posterior horns and the envelope of the central canal). Further, it may be stated that the gray matter consists of nerve-fibres of variable but smaller average diameter than those of the white column; (3) nerve-cells of various shapes and sizes, with from two to eight processes; (4) blood-vessels and connective tissue.

The **nerve-fibres** of the gray matter of the posterior horn are for the most part composed of a dense interlacement of minute fibrils, intermingled with nerves of a larger size. This interlacement is formed partly by the axones and dendrites of the cells of the gray matter, and partly by fibres which enter the gray matter and which come from various sources.

The **nerve-cells** of the gray matter are collected into groups as seen on transverse section, but they really form columns of cells placed longitudinally; or else they are found scattered throughout the whole of the gray matter.

In the anterior horn the cells consist of *two* chief groups; one **medial,** the more constant, near the anterior column; the other **lateral,** near the lateral column. The axones of these cells constitute the bulk of the anterior roots of the spinal nerves. The spinal nerves obtain axones from the entire lateral gray column and

from part of the medial gray column of the same side, and also from the gray matter of the medial column of the opposite side by way of the white commissure. The nerve-fibres from these cells are distributed to the muscles of the trunk and extremities. A second lateral group is present in the cervical and lumbar enlargements. In the centre of the gray crescent (*substantia intermedia grisea*) the cells are collected into three groups or columns. The **intermedio-lateral column** runs throughout the length of the cord, but is most distinct in the thoracic region. Its cells are in relation with fibres from the posterior nerve-roots and send off axones to the anterior nerve-roots. It is believed by Morris and others that these fibres are sympathetic and pass to glands and blood-vessels. Other axones enter the antero-lateral ascending cerebellar tract (Santee). The **middle column** is most distinct in the cervical cord. It certainly receives fibres from the posterior roots, and possibly sends fibres to the antero-lateral ascending cerebellar tract. At the base of the posterior horn on its inner side, adjoining the gray commissure, is a group of nerve-cells, called **Clarke's posterior** or **dorsal column** or **Clarke's vesicular column** (*nucleus dorsalis*), which extends from the eighth cervical to the second lumbar nerve. In the cervical and lumbar cord the *nuclei of Stilling* are its representatives, and in the medulla the *accessory cuneate nucleus* represents it. This column

Fig. 540.—Formation of a spinal nerve. (Testut.)

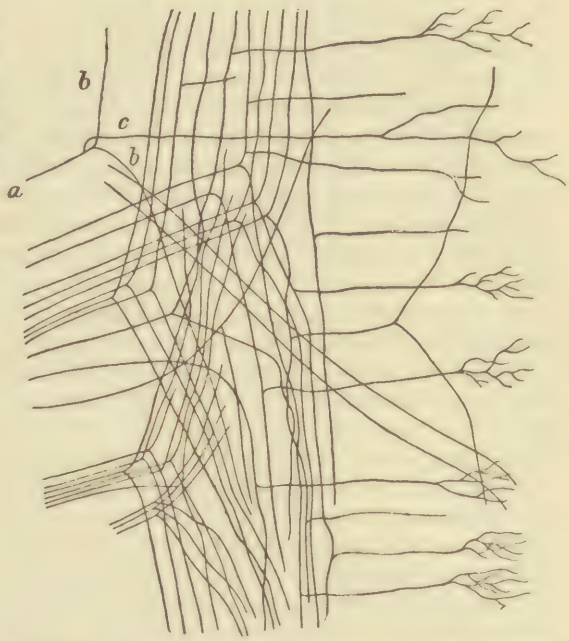


Fig. 541.—Dorsal roots entering cord and dividing into ascending and descending branches. *a*. Stem-fibre. *b, b*. Ascending and descending limbs of bifurcation. *c*. Collateral arising from stem-fibre. (Van Gehuchten.)

is in relation with the fibres of the posterior nerve-roots, and the axones from the cells of the column compose the direct cerebellar tract, and some, which are sympathetic, enter the anterior roots of the spinal nerves. In the posterior cornu are many cells not definitely arranged, but groups which are named peripheral, central, and basal. The axones of the cells of the posterior cornu enter the ground bundles, the column of Burdach, the anterior cornu of the same side, and the anterior and posterior cornua of the opposite side. Many fibres of the posterior roots are in relation with the cells of the posterior cornu.

At the junction of the anterior and posterior cornua, in the outer portion of the gray matter, is a third group of cells, the **lateral cell column**; this is best seen in the dorsal region. In certain regions of the cord these cells extend in among the fibres of the white matter of the lateral column, and give rise to the lateral horn.

In addition to these groups a few large scattered cells are found in the posterior horn and in the substantia gelatinosa of Rolando.

Origin of the Spinal Nerves (Figs. 538 and 540).—The roots of the spinal nerves are attached to the surface of the cord, opposite the horns of gray matter.

A **Posterior Nerve-root** enters the cord in two bundles, **medial** and **lateral.** The medial strand consists of coarse fibres which enter the outer part of the column of Burdach. The lateral strand is sometimes divided into a middle and an external bundle. The former contains large fibres, and passes through the gelatinous substance of Rolando into the posterior horn. The external bundle consists of fine fibres which assume a longitudinal direction in the Spitzka-Lissauer tract. All the posterior root-fibres divide into ascending and descending branches on entering the cord, and these in their turn give off collaterals (Fig. 541). The fibres and their collaterals terminate by forming arborescences, some around the cells in the posterior horn, and others around the cells of Clarke's column, while the long ascending branches pass up in the columns of Goll and Burdach, and end by arborizing around the cells in the gracile and cuneate nuclei. Some of the fibres, however, pass to the gray matter of the opposite horn, and others to the anterior horn of the same side of the cord.

Anterior Nerve-roots.—The majority of the fibres of the anterior nerve-roots are the continuations outward of the axones of the large or small multipolar cells in the anterior horn of gray matter. Some, however, appear to pass across in the anterior a white commissure to the cells in the anterior horn of the opposite side, while others extend backward to the posterior horn and outward to the lateral column of the same side.

THE MENINGES OR MENINGEAL MEMBRANES OF THE BRAIN (MENINGES ENCEPHALI).

Dissection.—To examine the brain with its membranes, the skull-cap must be removed. In order to effect this, saw through the external table, the section commencing, in front, about an inch above the margin of the orbit, and extending, behind, to a little above the level with the occipital protuberance. Then break the internal table with the chisel and hammer, to avoid injuring the investing membranes or brain; loosen and forcibly detach the skull-cap, when the dura mater will be exposed. The adhesion between the bone and the dura mater is very intimate, and much more so in the young subject than in the adult.

The membranes of the brain are from without inward: the **dura mater, arachnoid membrane,** and the **pia mater.**

The Dura Mater of the Brain (Dura Mater Encephali) (Figs. 543, 544, 545, 547).

The dura mater of the brain is a thick and dense inelastic fibrous membrane which lines the interior of the skull. It is a covering for the brain and is also the internal periosteum. Its outer surface is rough and fibrillated, and adheres closely to the inner surface of the bones by fibrous processes and blood-vessels. The adhesion is most marked on bony projections, opposite the sutures and at the base of the skull. Except at the sutures the adhesions are not dense, and between the fibrous processes which pass to the bone are spaces which are thought to be lymph-spaces, and are called **epidural spaces.** At these points the outer surface of the dura is covered with endothelium. Fibrous tissue passes through the open sutures and joins the outer layer of the dura to the external periosteum. It is known as the **sutural membrane.** The inner surface of the dura limits the **subdural space.** It is smooth and lined by a layer of endothelium. The dura mater sends four processes inward, into the cavity of the skull, for the support and protection of the different parts of the brain, and is prolonged to the outer surface of the skull through the various foramina which

exist at the base, and thus becomes continuous with the pericranium; its fibrous layer forms sheaths for the nerves which pass through these apertures. At the base of the skull it sends a fibrous prolongation into the foramen cæcum; it sends a series of tubular prolongations around the filaments of the olfactory nerves as they pass through the cribriform plate, and also around the nasal nerve as it passes through the nasal slit; a prolongation is also continued through the sphenoidal fissure into the orbit, and another is continued into the same cavity through the optic foramen, forming a sheath for the optic nerve, which is continued as far as the eyeball. In the posterior fossa it sends a process into the internal auditory meatus, ensheathing the facial and auditory nerves; another through the jugular foramen, forming a sheath for the structures which pass through this opening; and a third through the anterior condyloid foramen. Around the margin of the foramen magnum it is closely adherent to the bone, and is continuous with the dura mater lining the spinal canal. The **cavity** or **cave of Meckel** (*cavum Meckeli*) (Fig. 545) is an osteo-fibrous recess near the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, formed by folding of the dura mater in a bony depression. It contains the Gasserian ganglion. In certain situations, as already mentioned (p. 736), the fibrous layers of this membrane separate to form sinuses for the passage of venous blood. Upon the outer surface of the dura mater, in the situation of the longitudinal sinus, may be seen numerous small, whitish bodies, the **glandulae Pacchioni** (p. 854).

Structure (Fig. 542).—The dura mater consists of white fibrous tissue with connective-tissue cells and elastic fibres arranged in flattened laminæ, which are imperfectly separated by lacunar spaces and blood-vessels into two layers, **endosteal** and **meningeal**. The **endosteal layer** is the internal periosteum for the

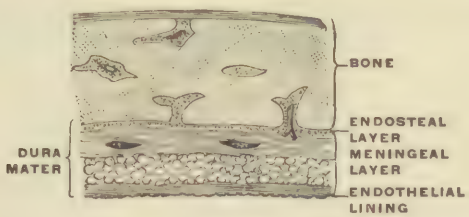


FIG. 542.—The structure of the dura mater. Section through the cranial vault of a child, slightly enlarged. (Poirier and Charpy.)

cranial bones and contains the blood-vessels for their supply. At the margin of the foramen magnum it becomes continuous with the periosteum lining the spinal canal. The **meningeal** or **supporting layer** is lined on its inner surface by a layer of nucleated endothelium, similar to that found on serous membranes; these cells were formerly regarded as belonging to the arachnoid membrane. By its reduplication the meningeal layer forms the **falx cerebri**, the **tentorium** and **falx cerebelli**, and the **diaphragma sellae**. The two layers are connected by fibres which intersect each other obliquely.

The Arteries of the Dura Mater (see section on Arteries).—Its arteries are very numerous, but are chiefly distributed to the bones. Those found in the anterior fossa are the **anterior meningeal branches of the anterior** and **posterior ethmoidal** and **internal carotid**, and a **branch from the middle meningeal**. In the middle fossa are the **middle** and **small meningeal branches of the internal maxillary**, a **branch from the ascending pharyngeal**, which enters the skull through the foramen lacerum medium basis cranii, **branches from the internal carotid**, and a **recurrent branch from the lachrymal**. In the posterior fossa are **meningeal branches from the occipital**, one of which enters the skull through the jugular foramen, and the other through the mastoid foramen; the **posterior meningeal**,

from the vertebral; occasionally **meningeal branches from the ascending pharyngeal**, which enter the skull, one at the jugular foramen, the other at the anterior condyloid foramen, and a **branch from the middle meningeal.**

The Veins of the Dura Mater.—The veins which return the blood from the dura mater (see p. 734), and partly from the bones, anastomose with the diploic veins (see p. 733). These vessels terminate in the various sinuses, with the exception of two which accompany the middle meningeal artery, and pass out of the skull at the foramen spinosum to join the internal maxillary vein; above, the meningeal veins communicate with the superior longitudinal sinus. The *sinuses* are considered on pages 736 to 743 inclusive. On either side of the superior longitudinal sinus, especially near its middle, and also near the lateral and straight sinuses, are numerous spaces in the dura mater which communicate with the sinus, either by a small opening or a distinct venous channel. These spaces are the **parasinoidal sinuses** (*lacunae laterales*) (Fig. 453). Many of the meningeal veins do not open directly into the sinuses, but indirectly through the parasinoidal sinuses. These venous lacunæ are often invaginated by Pacchionian bodies, and they communicate with the underlying cerebral veins, and also with the diploic and emissary veins.

The Lymphatics of the Dura Mater.—The existence of lymphatic vessels is not proved. Some anatomists claim to have injected such vessels along the middle meningeal arteries (Mascagni, Arnold). Perivascular lymph-spaces do exist.

The Nerves of the Dura Mater.—The nerves of the dura mater are filaments from the **fourth**, the **ophthalmic division of the fifth**, the **Gasserian ganglion**, the **pneumogastric**, the **hypoglossal**, and the **sympathetic.**

Processes of the Dura Mater (*processus durae matris*).—The processes of the dura mater, sent inward into the cavity of the skull, are four in number: the **falx cerebri**, the **tentorium cerebelli**, the **falx cerebelli**, and the **diaphragma sellae.**

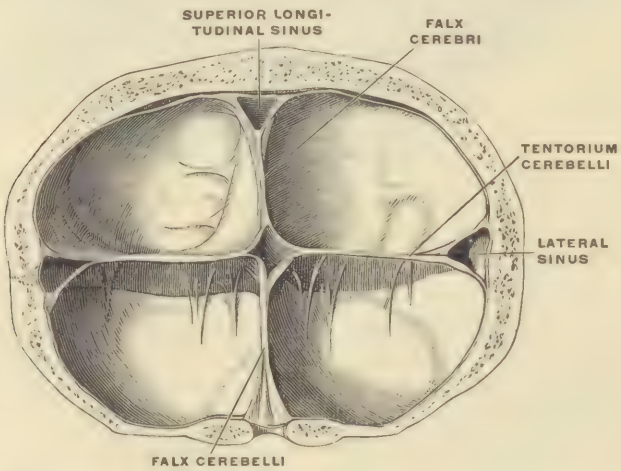


FIG. 543.—Crucial prolongation of the dura mater. Frontal section passing through the tentorium cerebelli. The torcular Herophili is seen in the centre. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The Falx Cerebri (Figs. 543 and 545).—The falx cerebri, so named from its sickle-like form, is a strong arched process of the dura mater, which descends vertically in the longitudinal fissure between the two hemispheres of the brain. It is narrow in front, where it is attached to the crista galli of the ethmoid bone, and broad behind, where it is connected with the upper surface of the tentorium. Its upper margin is convex, and attached to the inner surface of the skull, in the

middle line, as far back as the internal occipital protuberance; it contains the **superior** or **great longitudinal sinus** (*sinus sagittalis superior*). Its lower margin is free, concave, and presents a sharp curved edge, which contains the **inferior longitudinal sinus** (*sinus sagittalis inferior*). The **straight sinus** (*sinus rectus*) is formed by the attachment of the falx cerebri to the tentorium cerebelli.

The Tentorium Cerebelli (Figs. 543, 544, and 545).—The tentorium cerebelli is an arched lamina of dura mater, elevated in the middle and inclining downward

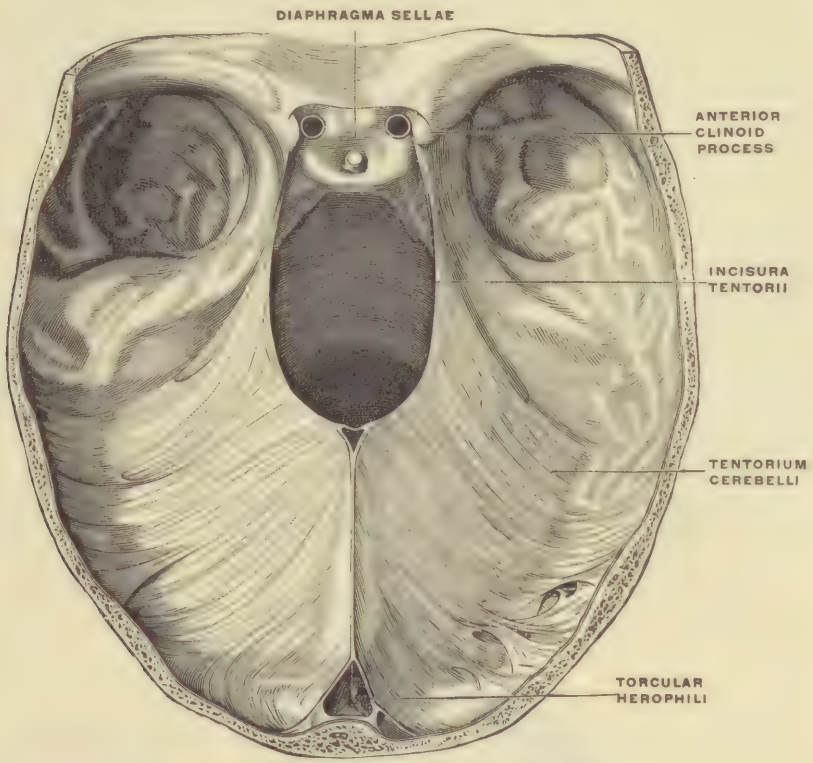


FIG. 544.—The tentorium cerebelli. (Poirier and Charpy.)

toward the circumference. It covers the upper surface of the cerebellum, and supports the occipital lobes of the brain, and prevents them pressing upon the cerebellum. It is attached, behind, by its convex border to the transverse ridges upon the inner surface of the occipital bone, and there encloses on each side the **lateral sinus** (*sinus transversus*); in front, to the superior margin of the petrous portion of the temporal bone on either side, enclosing the **superior petrosal sinus** (*sinus petrosus superior*); and at the apex of this bone the free or internal border and the attached or external border meet, and, crossing one another, are continued forward, to be attached to the anterior and posterior clinoid processes respectively. Along the middle line of its upper surface the posterior border of the falx cerebri is attached, the **straight sinus** being placed at their point of junction. Its anterior border is free and concave, and with the dorsum sellae forms a large oval opening. This opening is called the **incisura tentorii** and transmits the mesencephalon.

The Falx Cerebelli (Fig. 543).—The falx cerebelli is a small triangular process of dura mater received into the indentation between the two lateral lobes of the cerebellum behind. Its base is attached, above, to the under and back part of

the tentorium; its posterior margin, to the lower division of the vertical crest on the inner surface of the occipital bone. As it descends it sometimes divides into two smaller folds, which are lost on the sides of the foramen magnum.

The Diaphragma Sellae (Fig. 544). —The diaphragma sellae is a horizontal process formed by a reduplication of the meningeal layer of the dura mater. It forms a small circular fold, which constitutes a roof for the sella turcica. This almost

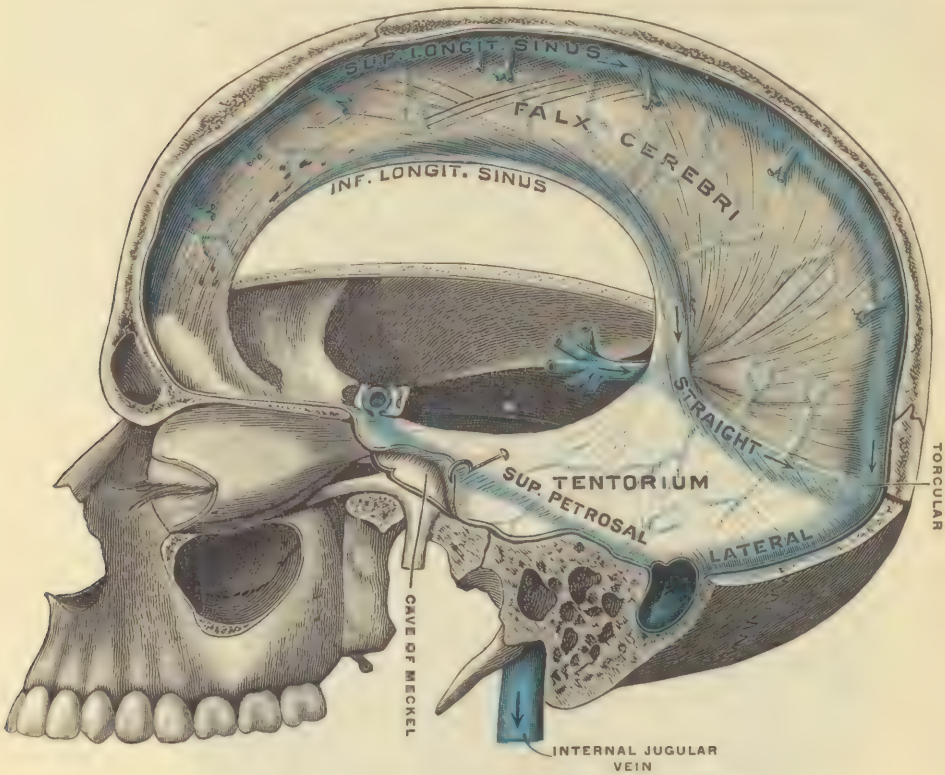


FIG. 545. —Falx cerebri and tentorium, left lateral view. (Testut.)

completely covers the pituitary body, presenting merely a small central opening (*foramen diaphragmatis sellae*) for the infundibulum to pass through.

The Arachnoid Membrane (Arachnoidea Encephali) (Fig. 546).

The term arachnoid is from the Greek ἀράχνη εἶδος, like a spider's web, so named for its extreme thinness. The cranial arachnoid is a delicate membrane which envelops the brain, lying between the pia mater internally and the dura mater externally; from this latter membrane it is separated by a very fine slit or space, the **subdural space** (*cavum subdurale*). The subdural space contains a very minute quantity of fluid of the nature of lymph. This fluid obtains exit by way of the parasinoidal sinuses. The subdural space is prolonged upon emerging nerves and joins the lymph spaces of the nerves. The subdural space does not communicate with the subarachnoid space.

The arachnoid invests the brain loosely, being separated from direct contact with the cerebral substance by the pia mater, and a quantity of loose areolar tissue, the **subarachnoidean areolar** tissue. On the upper surface of the cerebrum the arachnoid is thin and transparent, and may be easily demonstrated by

injecting a stream of air beneath it by means of a blowpipe; it passes over the convolutions without dipping down into the sulci between them, but does pass into the Sylvian and great longitudinal fissures and is prolonged upon the nerves as a sheath. At the base of the brain the arachnoid is thicker, and slightly opaque toward the central part; it covers the orbital surface of the anterior lobes, and extends across between the two temporal lobes so as to leave a considerable interval between it and the brain, the **cisterna basalis**.

The Subarachnoid Space (*cavum subarachnoideale*) (Fig. 547).—The subarachnoid space is the interval between the arachnoid and pia mater. It is not only on

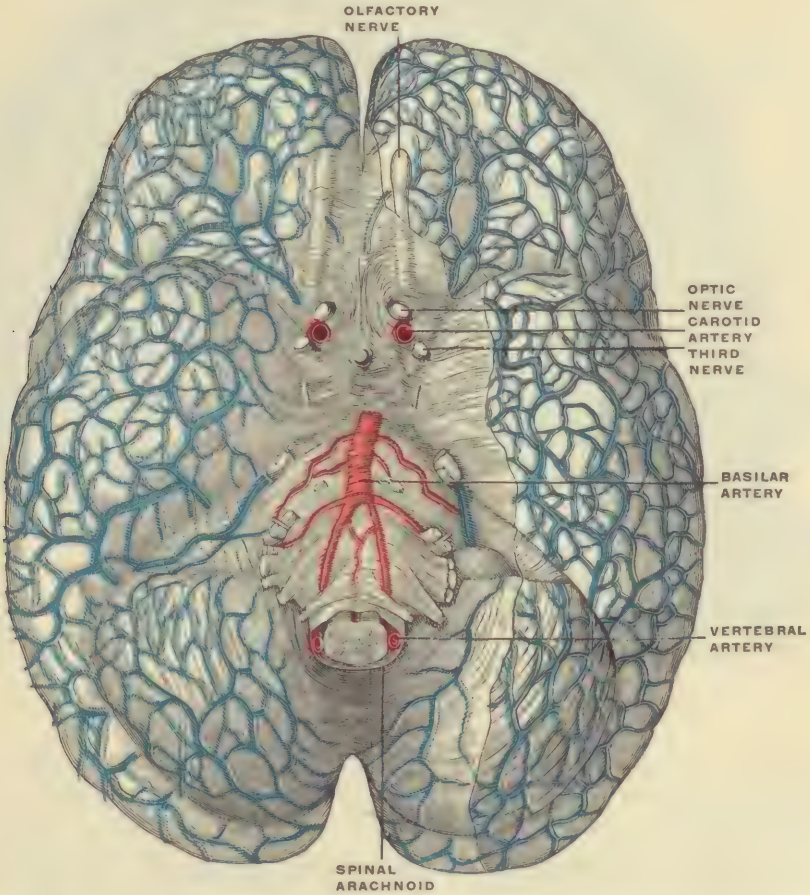


FIG. 546.—The arachnoid upon the base of the brain. On the right the arachnoid has been partly removed to show the cerebrum and cerebellum with their superficial veins. (Poirier and Charpy.)

the surface, but dips between the convolutions. It is not, properly speaking, a *space*, for it is occupied everywhere by a spongy tissue consisting of trabeculæ of delicate connective tissue covered with endothelium, which pass from the pia mater to the arachnoid, and in the meshes of which the subarachnoid fluid is contained. This so-called space is small on the surface of the hemispheres; but at the base of the brain the subarachnoid tissue is less abundant and its meshes larger.

In certain regions the arachnoid and pia are farther apart than was previously indicated, and these spaces are called **subarachnoid cisternae** (*cisternae subarachnoidalis*). The largest space is the continuation of the posterior part of the subarachnoid space of the spinal cord. It is called the **posterior subarachnoid space**

or **cisterna magna** (*cisterna cerebellomedullaris*). It is a space formed by the arachnoid passing across the back and under portions of the medulla and cerebellum. It communicates with the fourth ventricle by three foramina. The largest opening is the **foramen of Majendie** (*apertura medialis ventriculi quarti*). It is in the middle line of the tela choroidea inferior. At the end of each recessus lateralis of the fourth ventricle there is also an opening, and each opening is called the **foramen of Key and Retzius** (*apertura lateralis ventriculi quarti*). The **cisterna pontis** is the continuation upward of the anterior part of the subarachnoid space of the cord. About the medulla it is continuous with the cisterna magna, so this important nerve centre is surrounded by a large subarachnoid space. The **cisterna basalis** (*cisterna interpeduncularis*) is formed by the arachnoid extending between the two temporal lobes, and it contains the arteries forming the circle of Willis. The **anterior subarachnoid space** (*cisterna pontis, interpeduncularis et chiasmatis*) includes the cisterna pontis, the cisterna basalis and the cisterna of the chiasm. There is a cisterna between the inferior edge of the falx cerebri and the superior surface of the corpus callosum which contains the anterior cerebral arteries, a cisterna in the fissure of Sylvius which contains the anterior cerebral artery, and a cisterna between the corpora quadrigemina which contains the vena magna Galeni.

It is stated by Merkel that the lateral ventricles also communicate with the subarachnoid space at the apices of their descending horns.

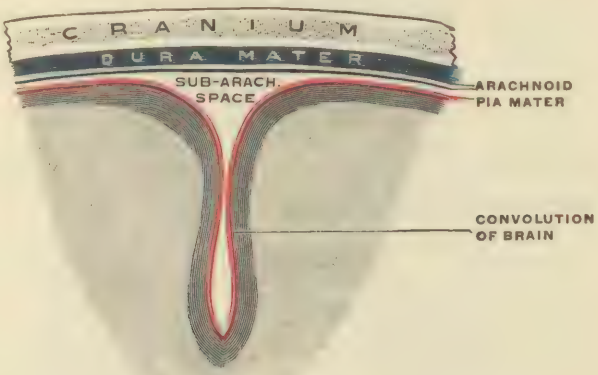


FIG. 547.—The subarachnoid space. (Schematic.) (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **cerebro-spinal fluid** (*liquor cerebrospinalis*) fills the subarachnoid space. It is a clear, limpid fluid, having a saltish taste and a slightly alkaline reaction. According to Lassaigne, it consists of 98.5 parts of water, the remaining 1.5 per cent. being solid matters, animal and saline. It varies in quantity, being most abundant in old persons, and is quickly reproduced. Its chief use is probably to afford mechanical protection to the nervous centres, and to prevent the effects of concussions communicated from without.

Structure.—The arachnoid consists of bundles of connective tissue, the fine fibres of which form one layer and cross each other in every direction. At the level of the large fissures, and especially around the circle of Willis, it is reinforced by thick fibrous tissue. Both surfaces are covered with endothelium. There are no blood-vessels in the arachnoid; the vessels which appear to be in it are really in the pia. There is no positive proof that nerves are present in the arachnoid. It is true that Bochdalek and Luschka long ago described arachnoid nerves, but these observations have never been corroborated.

Glandulae Pacchioni, Luschka's Villi or the Arachnoid Villi (Granulationes Arachnoideales).

The glandulae Pacchioni are numerous small whitish or purplish projections, usually collected into clusters of variable size, which are found in the following situations: 1. Upon the outer surface of the dura mater, in the vicinity of the superior longitudinal sinus, being received into little depressions on the inner surface of the calvarium. 2. On the inner surface of the dura mater. 3. In the superior longitudinal sinus and the other sinuses. 4. On the pia mater, near the margin of the hemispheres.

A hasty examination would lead us to suppose that these bodies spring from the dura, but, as a matter of fact, they originate from the arachnoid. They are not glandular in structure, but are simply enlarged normal villi of the arachnoid. In their growth they appear to perforate the dura mater, and when a group of villi is of large size it causes absorption of the bone, and comes to be lodged in a pit or depression (*foveola granularis* [*Pacchioni*]) on the inner table of the skull. Their manner of growth is as follows: at an early period they project through minute holes in the inner layer of the dura mater, which open into large venous spaces situated in the tissues of the membrane, on either side of the longitudinal sinus and communicating with it. In their onward growth the villi push the outer layer of the dura mater before them, and this forms over them a delicate membranous sheath. In structure they consist of spongy trabecular tissue, covered over by a membrane, which is continuous with the arachnoid. The space between these two coverings, derived from the dura mater and arachnoid respectively, corresponds to and is continuous with the subdural space. The spongy tissue of which they are composed is continuous with the trabecular tissue of the subarachnoid space; so that fluid injected into the subarachnoid space finds its way into the Pacchionian bodies, and through their coverings filters into the superior longitudinal sinus. They are supposed to be a means of getting rid of an excess of cerebro-spinal fluid, when its quantity is increased above normal. Another means of getting rid of cerebro-spinal fluid is absorption by the lymph-spaces of the cranial nerves, which possess sheaths of arachnoid up to the points at which they emerge from the skull.

These bodies are not found in infancy, and very rarely until the third year. They are usually found after the tenth year; and from this period they increase in number as age advances. Occasionally they are wanting.

The Pia Mater of the Brain (Pia Mater Encephali) (Figs. 547, 548).

The pia mater of the brain is a vascular membrane, and derives its blood from the internal carotid and vertebral arteries. It consists of a minute plexus of blood-vessels, held together by an extremely fine areolar tissue. It invests the entire surface of the brain, dipping down between the convolutions and laminæ, and is prolonged into the interior, forming the velum interpositum and the choroid plexuses of the lateral and fourth ventricles.

The Velum Interpositum or the Tela Chorioidea Superior (*tela chorioidea ventriculi tertii*) (Fig. 548).—The velum interpositum is the prolongation of the pia mater into the interior of the brain through the middle of the transverse fissure. It is a double triangular vascular fold, lies between the body of the fornix above and the optic thalami and the epithelial roof of the third ventricle below, and passes forward to the foramen of Monro. At each edge of the velum interpositum is the **choroid plexus** (*plexus chorioideus ventriculi lateralis*) of the corresponding lateral ventricle. In front the two plexuses join behind

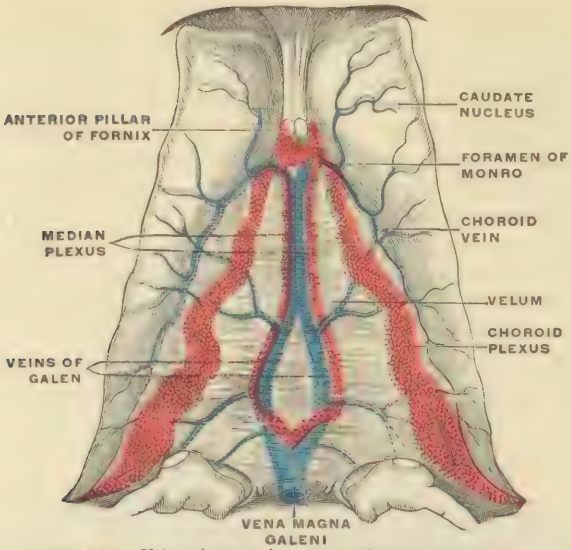


FIG. 548.—Velum interpositum. (Poirier and Charpy.)

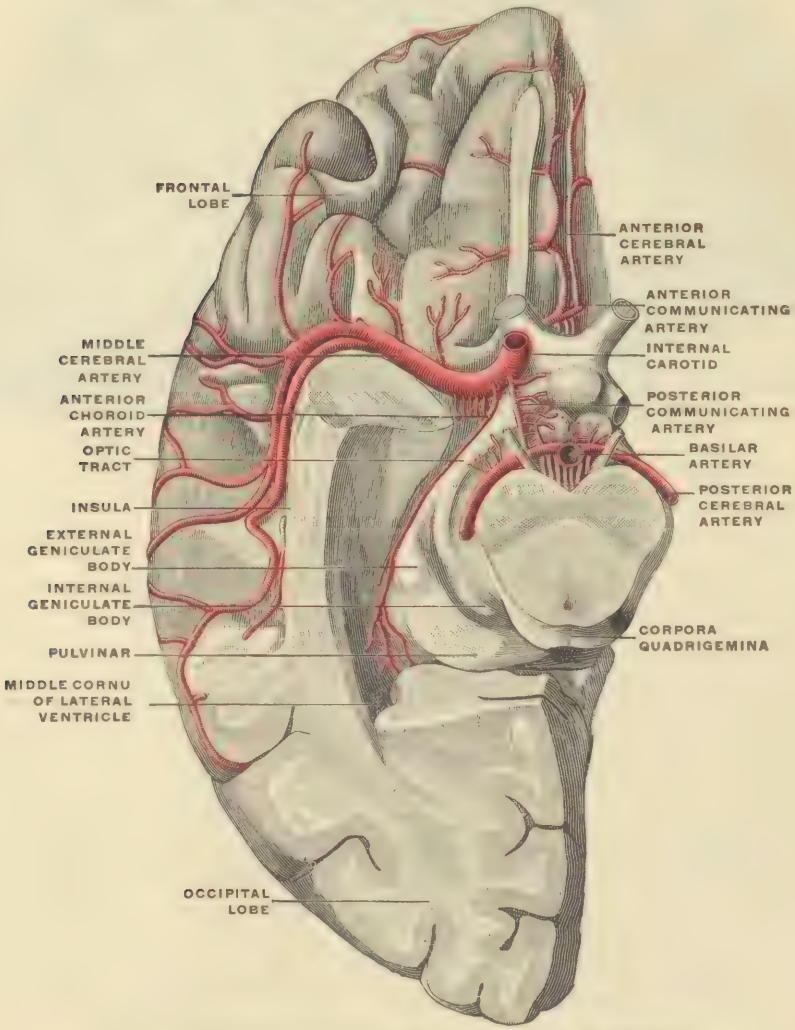


FIG. 549.—The anterior cerebral and choroid arteries. (Spalteholz.)

the foramen of Monro, and at the point of junction two lesser choroid plexuses pass back along the under surface of the velum to the third ventricle, the **median plexus** (*plexus chorioideus ventriculi tertii*). The veins of Galen or the deep cerebral veins (p. 735) are two veins which lie on either side of the middle of the velum interpositum and pass back. Each vein of Galen is formed by the union of the vein from the corpus striatum and the choroid vein from the choroid plexus. The two veins of Galen unite and form the **vena magna Galeni**, which empties into the straight sinus.

The pia mater of the surfaces of the hemispheres, where it covers the gray matter of the convolutions, is very vascular, and gives off from its inner surface a multitude of minute vessels, which extend perpendicularly for some distance into the cerebral substance. At the base of the brain, in the situation of the anterior and posterior perforated spaces, a number of long straight vessels are given off, which pass through the white matter to reach the gray substance in the

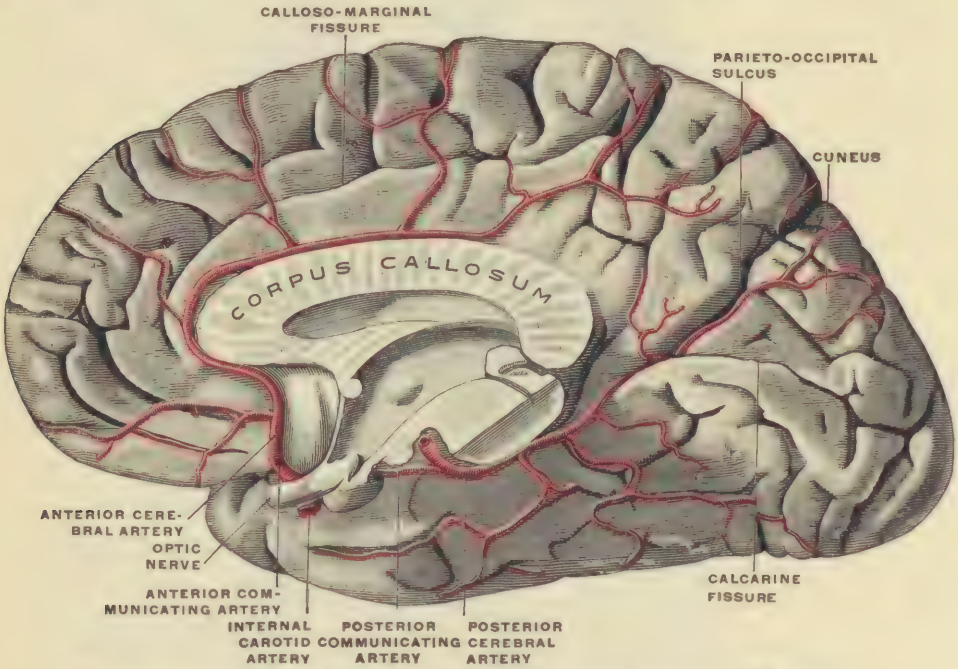


FIG. 550.—The arteries of the medial surface of the right cerebral hemisphere. (Spalteholz.)

interior. On the cerebellum the membrane is more delicate, and the vessels from its inner surface are shorter. The pia mater of the spinal cord is thicker, firmer, and less vascular than that of the brain, and as it is traced upward over the medulla it is seen to preserve these characters. At the upper border of the medulla it is prolonged over the lower half of the fourth ventricle, forming a covering for it called the **tela chorioidea inferior** (*tela chorioidea ventriculi quarti*), before it is reflected on to the under surface of the cerebellum, and which carries the **choroid plexus of the fourth ventricle** (*plexus chorioideus ventriculi quarti*).

The **arteries** of the pia mater (see pp. 626, 627, and 628) (Figs. 549 and 550) are the **anterior cerebrals, middle cerebrals, posterior cerebrals, anterior choroids, posterior choroids,** the **superior cerebellars,** and the **anterior** and **posterior inferior cerebellars.** (The vessels of the cerebral ganglionic system and of the cortical arterial system are considered on pp. 630 and 631.)

The **veins** of the pia mater (see pp. 734, 735, and 736) are the **basilar vein,** the **veins of Galen** (Fig. 548), the veins constituting the **choroid plexuses of the**

third ventricle, the **lateral ventricles**, and the **fourth ventricle**; the **cerebral veins** (Fig. 546) and the **cerebellar veins** (Fig. 546).

The **nerves** of the pia mater accompany the branches of the arteries and are derived from the **sympathetic** and from the **third, fifth, sixth, seventh, ninth, tenth,** and **eleventh cranial nerves.**

According to Folmann, Arnold, and Mascagni, this membrane contains numerous *lymphatic vessels,* but the question is uncertain.

THE BRAIN (ENCEPHALON).

The encephalon or brain is that portion of the cerebro-spinal axis which is contained in the cavity of the cranium.

The Development of the Brain.—The nervous system (brain, ganglia, spinal cord, and nerves) is derived from the ectoderm (the epiblastic layer of the blastodermic vesicle). This, it will be remembered, is an epithelial layer, and nervous structure is composed of epithelial cells variously modified. The embryonal area of the surface of the developing germ is a white spot, which at first is round, but becomes pear-shaped and develops a transverse ridge, the **terminal ridge,** on its posterior margin. From the embryonal layer, and from this alone, the new individual is developed.

About the twelfth or the thirteenth day of the development of the human embryo, cell-proliferation occurs at a certain portion of the under surface of the ectoderm. This proliferation gives rise to a white, longitudinal streak in the embryonal area, known as the **primitive streak** or **axis plate.** The head process of the primitive streak appears somewhat later, and is situated directly in front of the anterior end of the streak.

At the anterior end of the primitive streak is a group of epiblastic cells known as **Hensen's node.** The epiblastic cells of the head-process of the primitive streak enlarge and become columnar, and the cells at each side of the streak become flat (Heisler). Thus is formed from the ectoderm the medullary plates; and the turning up of the edge of the medullary plates forms the spinal or medullary furrow or groove. As the curling up of the edges of the medullary plates continues the groove deepens, finally becoming a tube known as the **medullary** or **neural tube or canal.**

The neural tube lies beneath the ectoderm; is finally separated from it; runs from one end of the body to the other; forms the primitive nervous system, and gives origin to the entire nervous system. The constricted portion between the hind-brain and the mid-brain is known as the **isthmus rhombencephali.**

It is thus seen that the medullary or neural groove is converted into a canal, the **neural canal.** Its cephalic end dilates into a sac, from which the brain is developed, and the remainder forms the spinal cord. In consequence of the curve that the cephalic portion of the embryo undergoes, a marked bend in the canal takes place forward, so that the plane of the ventricles is placed almost at a right angle with the long axis of the central canal of the cord. The rudimentary brain consists of a hollow sac—the rudimentary cord of a hollow canal. The sac and the canal communicate freely with each other.

The sac elongates, and in it appear two constrictions, which partially divide it into three portions, namely, the anterior, middle, and posterior primitive cerebral vesicles, or the **fore-brain** (*prosencephalon*), the **mid-brain** (*mesencephalon*), and the **hind-brain** (*rhombencephalon*) (Fig. 551). Subsequently the anterior and the posterior vesicles become constricted, each into two, while the middle remains undivided (Figs. 553 and 554). It will thus be seen that at the anterior extremity of the medullary canal there are five dilatations, separated from each

other by constrictions, through which, however, they freely communicate with one another. These five vesicles are the fundamental or primitive divisions of the adult brain. They are named, from before backward, the **fore-brain** (*prosencephalon*), the **inter-brain** (*thalamencephalon*, formed from the prosencephalon), the **mid-brain** (*mesencephalon*), the upper portion of the **hind-brain** (*metencephalon*),

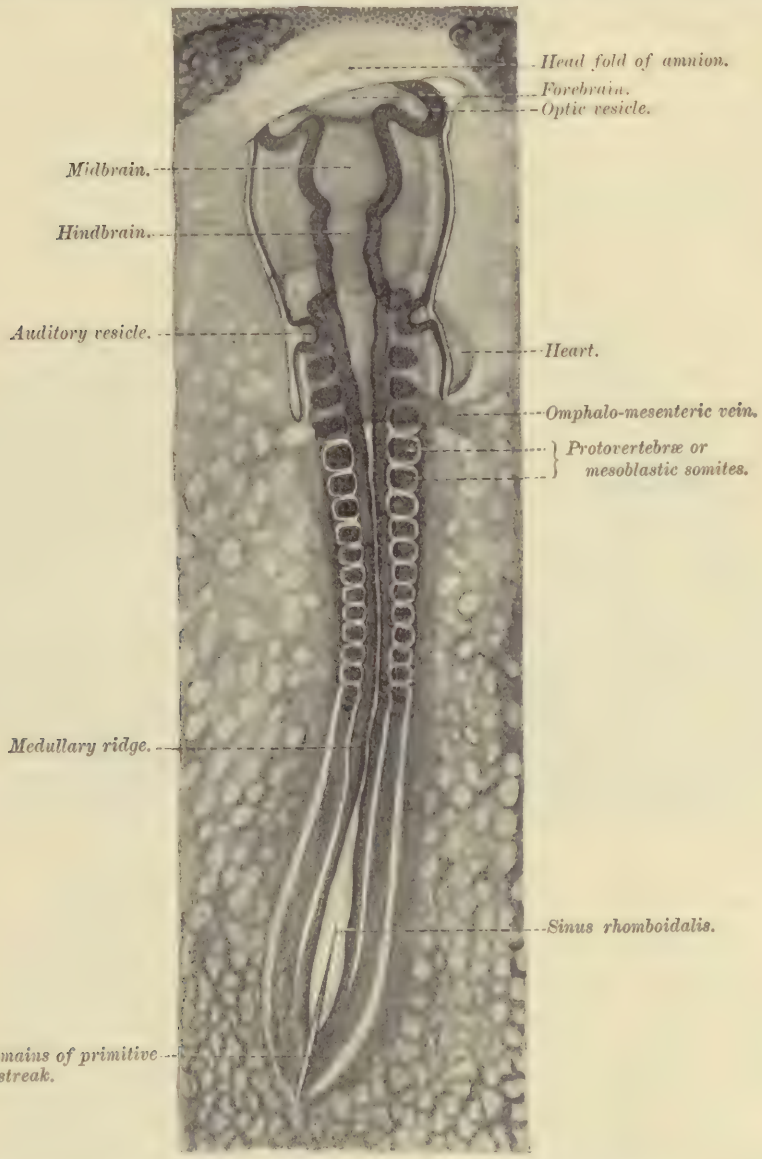


FIG. 551.—Chick embryo of thirty-three hours' incubation, viewed from the dorsal aspect. × 30. (From Duval's Atlas d'Embryologie.)

and the lower portion of the **hind-brain** (*myelencephalon*). The constricted portion between the hind-brain and the mid-brain is known as the **isthmus rhombencephali.**

These five vesicles are at first fairly uniform in size and in shape, but they soon begin to grow at different rates and to assume different forms. The changes are most marked in the first vesicle.

The **first secondary vesicle** sends out two hollow protrusions, one on each side, from the forepart of its lateral surface. These grow rapidly, spread out, and extend forward, laterally, and backward, over the sides of the first and second ventricles, forming large cavities, which become the **lateral ventricles** (Fig. 552, *G*). From each protrusion three prolongations take place: one forward and outward; the second backward and inward, and the third at first backward, outward, and downward, and then forward and inward. These prolongations form the horns of the lateral ventricles, and they far exceed in size the original vesicle from which they have taken origin, which does not increase to any great extent, but remains as the anterior part of the third ventricle. The communication between it and the future lateral ventricle persists as the foramen of Monro (Fig. 552).

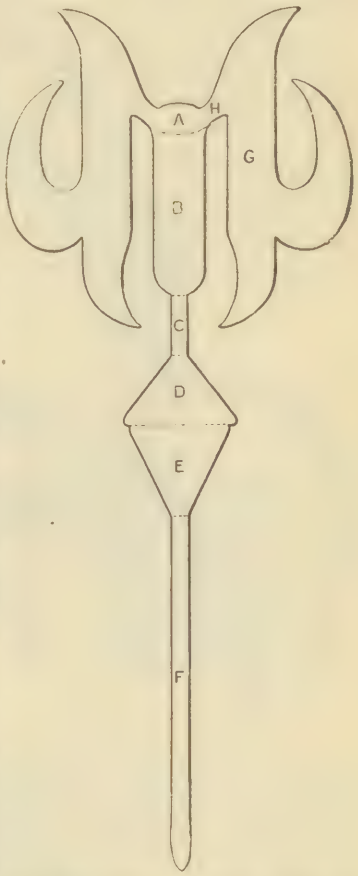


FIG. 552. Plan showing the mode of formation of the ventricles of the brain and the central canal of the spinal cord. *A*. Prosencephalon. *B*. Thalamencephalon. *C*. Mesencephalon. *D*. Metencephalon. *E*. Myelencephalon. *F*. Central canal of cord. *G*. Lateral ventricle. *H*. Foramen of Monro. (After Gerrish.)

The **second vesicle** or **thalamencephalon** becomes elongated from before backward and compressed laterally, so as to form the greater part of the third ventricle (Fig. 552, *B*). From each side of that part of the fore-brain, which ultimately becomes the lateral ventricle, is budded off a hollow projection, the **primary optic vesicle**, that is developed eventually into the optic nerve and the retina. It will be considered later.

The constriction between the first and the second vesicle disappears, so as to throw the whole cavity of the future third ventricle, formed by the remains of the first ventricle and the whole of the second vesicle, into one.

The **third vesicle** or **mesencephalon** forms a very insignificant part of the brain of the adult. It constitutes a stem of junction between the parts that take origin from the rhombencephalon and those that arise from the prosencephalon. The wall of the mesencephalon is completely converted into nerve-tissue, and forms the **corpora quadrigemina**, the two **crura cerebri**, and the **aqueduct of Sylvius**, which join the third ventricle with the fourth.

The **metencephalon** gives origin to the **cerebellum** and the **pons Varolii**. The cerebellum takes origin from a thickening of the superior wall of the vesicle, while the pons takes origin from a thickening of the lateral and inferior walls of the vesicle.

The **myelencephalon** gives origin to the **bulb** or **medulla oblongata**, chiefly by a thickening of the lateral walls of the vesicle. The original hind-brain remains in the brain of the adult as the fourth ventricle.

As already stated, these vesicles do not remain in the same plane. The formation of certain definite flexures alters the position of the vesicles with regard to one another (Fig. 554). The **cephalic flexure** is opposite the base of the mid-brain, which becomes sharply bent upon itself over the end of the notochord. This bending causes the mid-brain to become the most prominent part of the encephalon on the convexity of the curve. The **pontine** or **pontal flexure** is a curve in the hind-brain, in the opposite direction to that of the cephalic flexure. At the junction of the

hind-brain with the spinal cord is the **cervical** or **nuchal flexure.** In the development of the brain the cephalic flexure remains permanent, but the other two flexures completely disappear.

The manner in which the different parts of the encephalon are formed from the walls of this greatly altered medullary canal will now be considered, it being remembered that the ventricles are developed, as previously described, from the five secondary vesicles.

The first vesicle, or prosencephalon, sends out two hollow protrusions, which spread rapidly, and in the walls of these nervous matter is developed, which constitutes the cerebral hemispheres (Fig. 554, *II*), the cavities remaining as the lateral ventricles. As these hemispheres extend they grow forward in front of the anterior extremity of the primitive brain, and lie side by side, separated by the longitudinal fissure; they also grow upward, and again lying side by side are separated by another portion of the same fissure, containing a thin layer of mesoblast, which forms the falx cerebri; behind and laterally they overlap the roof and sides of the other cerebral vesicles, so that by the seventh month they project

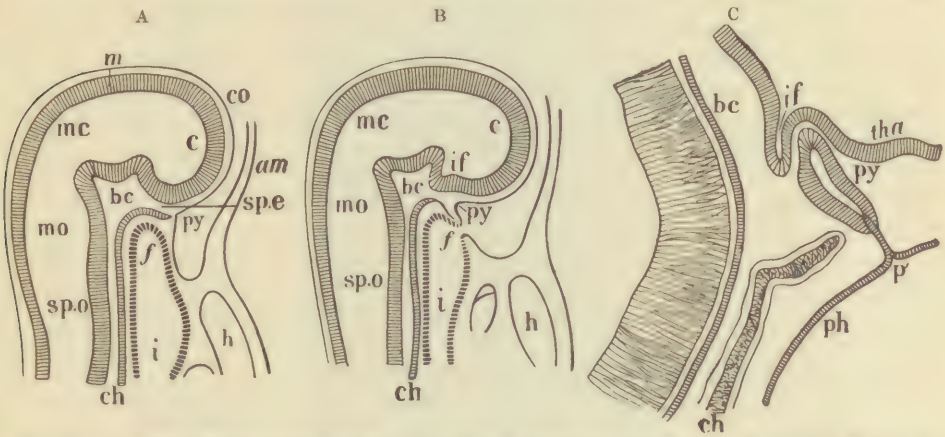


Fig. 553.—Vertical section of the head in early embryos of the rabbit. Magnified. A. From an embryo five millimetres long. B. From an embryo six millimetres long. C. Vertical section of the anterior end of the notochord and pituitary body, etc., from an embryo sixteen millimetres long. In A, the faucial opening is still closed. In B, it is formed. *c.* Anterior cerebral vesicle. *mc.* Mesocerebrum. *mo.* Medulla oblongata. *co.* Corneous layer. *m.* Medullary layer. *if* Infundibulum. *am.* Amnion. *spe.* Spheno-ethmoidal, *bc,* central (dorsum sellæ), and *sp.o.* spheno-occipital parts of the basis-cranii. *h.* Heart. *f.* Anterior extremity of primitive alimentary canal and opening (later) of the fauces. *i.* Cephalic portion of primitive intestine. *tha.* Thalamus. *p'.* Closed opening or the involuted part of the pituitary body (*py*) *ch.* Notochord. *ph.* Pharynx. (From Mihalkovics.)

behind them In the floor of each of these hemispheres there occurs a local thickening, which forms the **corpus striatum,** which is continuous behind with the optic thalamus presently to be described. The surface of the hemisphere is at first smooth, but about the fifth month a sulcus or groove appears in either hemisphere just external to the corpus striatum; this is the **fissure of Sylvius**: subsequently other fissures appear on the surface, three of which are of sufficient depth to cause a projection into the lateral ventricle. These are the **hippocampal fissure,** corresponding to the hippocampus major of the lateral ventricle, the **collateral fissure,** corresponding with the bend of the posterior horn of the ventricle; and the **calcarine fissure,** corresponding with the projection of the calcar avis.

The remainder of the first vesicle and the second, as we have seen, form the third ventricle, in its normal walls a thickening takes place, which forms the **optic thalamus.** From the floor of this ventricle a hollow protrusion passes downward, and is intimately connected with a diverticulum from the stomodæum, to form part of the **pituitary body** (*hypophysis cerebri*) (Figs. 553, 554, and 555). The greater part of the roof of the third ventricle is very thin, and with the pia mater

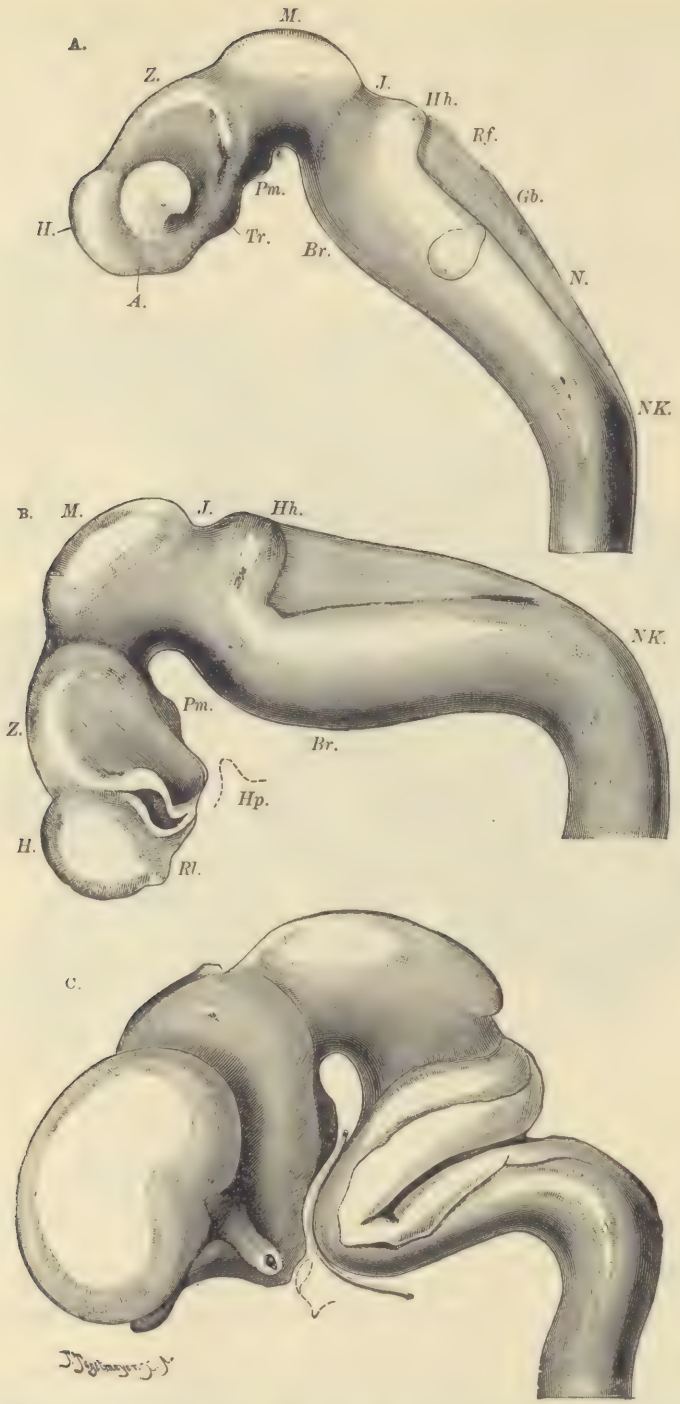


FIG. 554.—Profile views of the brain of human embryos at three several stages, reconstructed from sections. (Copied from Quain's Anatomy.) A. Brain of an embryo of about fifteen days, magnified 35 diameters. B. Brain of an embryo about three and a half weeks old. The optic vesicle has been cut away. C. Brain of an embryo about seven and a half weeks old. The optic stalk is cut through. *A.* Optic vesicle. *H.* Vesicle of cerebral hemisphere, first secondary vesicle. *Z.* Thalamencephalon, second secondary vesicle. *M.* Mid-brain. *J.* Isthmus between mid-brain and hind-brain. *Hh.* Fourth secondary vesicle. *N.* Fifth secondary vesicle. *Gb.* Otic vesicle. *Rf.* Fourth ventricle. *NK.* Neck curvature. *Br.* Pons curvature. *Pm.* Mammillary process. *Tr.* Infundibulum. *Hp.* (in B). Outline of hypophysis-fold of buccal epiblast. *Rl.* Olfactory fold. In C the basilar artery is represented along its whole course. (His.)

forms the **velum interpositum**; from its posterior part an outgrowth of cells forms the **pineal body** (*epiphysis cerebri*). Where the cerebral hemispheres are not separated in the middle line by the falx, in front and for some distance backward over the roof of the third ventricle their mesial surfaces come in contact, and to a certain extent fuse together, leaving, however, a small portion where no union takes place, and thus a slit-like cavity is left; this is termed the **fifth ventricle**, though it will be at once seen that its development is quite different from that of the other ventricles. Its lateral walls form the **septum lucidum**. The roof of this cavity becomes thickened, and nerve-fibres pass across from the one hemisphere to the other to form the **corpus callosum**, while in its floor longitudinal fibres are developed to form the **fornix**.

The third vesicle, the cavity of which forms the **iter a tertio ad quartum ventriculum**, develops in its roof four well-marked thickenings, which together form

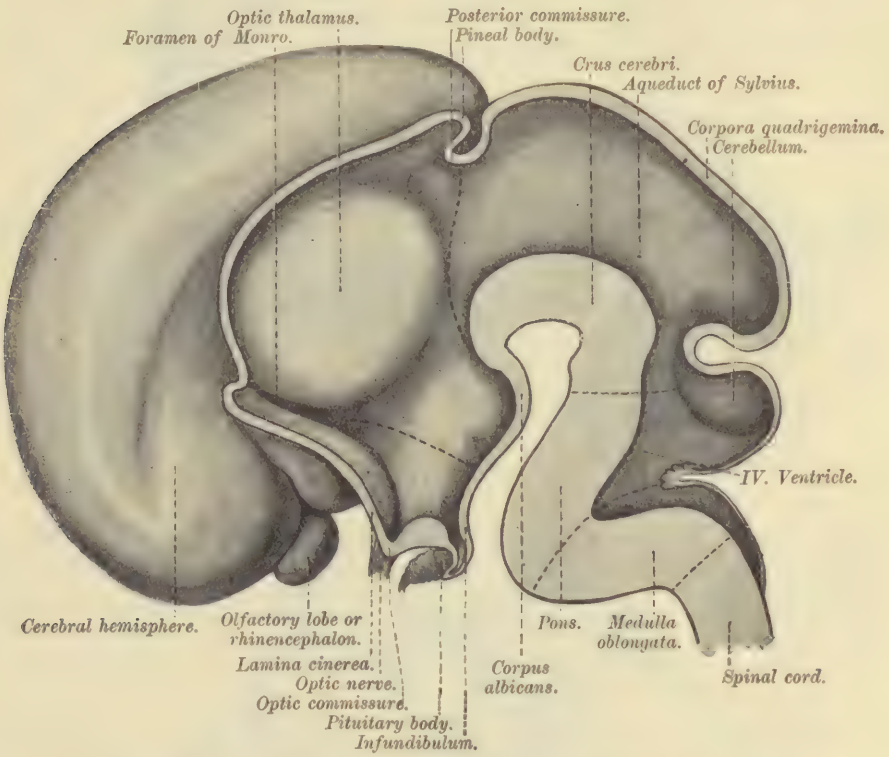


FIG. 555.—Median section of brain of human fœtus during the third month. (After His.)

the **corpora quadrigemina**, while its lateral regions become thickened to form the **crura cerebri** (Fig. 555).

The dorsal surface of the fourth vesicle forms the covering of the fourth ventricle, and in it a thickening occurs which is developed into the **cerebellum**; its ventral and lateral regions form the **pons** (Fig. 555).

In the fifth vesicle the lateral parts increase and grow downward on each side toward the middle line, forming the **medulla**, while the dorsal surface assists in forming the roof of the fourth ventricle.

On making a transverse section of the lower part of the fourth ventricle, the alar and basal laminae, already referred to as being present in the cord, are readily recognized, while the thin roof-plate is seen to be greatly expanded laterally. The dorsal part of the alar lamina becomes folded outward and downward, form-

ing what is termed the **rhomboid lip** (Fig. 556). This is at first separated by a groove from the lateral aspect of the alar lamina, but ultimately fuses with it. As the central canal of the cord opens out to form the fourth ventricle, the alar and basal laminae come to occupy the floor of the ventricle—the basal lamina lying nearest the mesial plane.

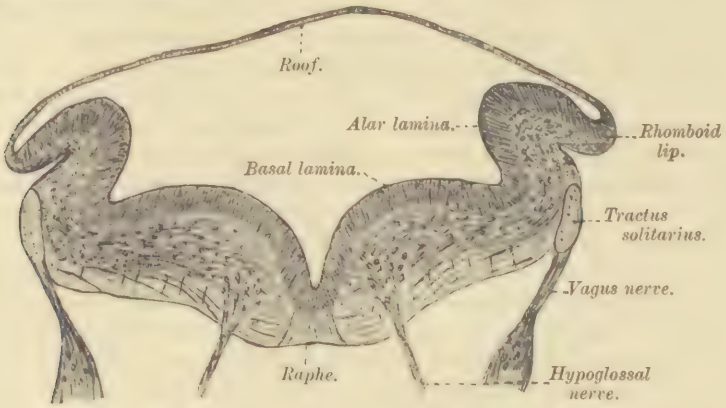


FIG. 556.—Transverse section of medulla oblongata of human embryo. (After His.)

The Communications of the Parts of the Brain.—In the posterior fossa of the cranium lies the medulla oblongata, the pons Varolii, and the cerebellum, and between these structures and the cerebrum is the tentorium cerebelli. The pons, medulla, and cerebellum surround the fourth ventricle. The greater portion of the fibres of the medulla are continued into the pons, but some fibres from the dorsal aspect of the medulla (the restiform bodies) pass into the cerebellum and

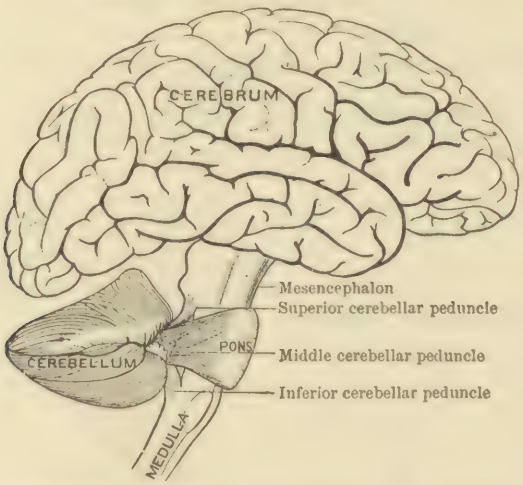


FIG. 557.—Scheme showing the connections of the several parts of the brain. (Cunningham.)

become the **inferior cerebellar peduncles** (Fig. 557). On each side of the pons a thick strand of transverse fibres passes to the cerebellum. These strands are the **middle cerebellar peduncles** (Fig. 557).

The cerebral hemispheres are joined together by the **corpus callosum**, a commissure lying within the depths of the great longitudinal fissure. Between and beneath the cerebral hemispheres is the **inter-brain** (*thalamencephalon*), composed chiefly of the **optic thalami**. In the interior of each hemisphere is a space called

the **lateral ventricle.** Between the optic thalami is the third ventricle. The **foramen of Monro** connects the third ventricle with the lateral ventricles.

The mid-brain connects the cerebrum with the pons, medulla, and cerebellum. It is composed of the **crura cerebri,** which join together the pons and the cerebrum; the **corpora quadrigemina,** and the **superior cerebellar peduncles** (Fig. 557), which connect together the cerebrum and the cerebellum. In the mid-brain the **aqueduct of Sylvius** joins the third ventricle and the fourth ventricle.

General Considerations and Divisions.—For the purposes of description the brain may be divided into five parts, as follows: (1) the two **cerebral hemispheres**; (2) the **inter-brain** (*thalamencephalon*); (3) the **mid-brain** (*mesencephalon*); the **hind-brain** (*rhombencephalon*), which includes (4) the **pons Varolii** and **cerebellum**; and (5) the **medulla oblongata.** If the student will refer to the section on the Development of the Brain he will find that these five portions correspond fairly accurately to the five secondary cerebral vesicles, of which the brain at an early period of embryonal life consisted; the prosencephalon, or *first* vesicle, by means of a protrusion from its front part on either side, forms the cerebral hemispheres and the lateral ventricles; the remainder of the prosencephalon, together with the *second* vesicle, the thalamencephalon, form the inter-brain and third ventricle; the *third* vesicle, the mesencephalon, forms the mid-brain, or that portion which connects the inter-brain and hemispheres above with the pons Varolii below, and the cavity of the vesicle forms the aqueduct of Sylvius, or iter a tertio ad quartum ventriculum; the *fourth* vesicle, the metencephalon, becomes the future pons Varolii and cerebellum, and its cavity forms the upper half of the fourth ventricle; and, finally, the *fifth* vesicle, the myelencephalon, develops into the medulla oblongata, and its cavity forms the lower half of the fourth ventricle. It will thus be seen that the five divisions of the encephalon mentioned above correspond to the five secondary cerebral vesicles, with the exception of the first two, which together form the cerebral hemispheres and the inter-brain. In consequence of this these two portions of the brain are sometimes grouped together as the **cerebrum.**

I. The Hemispheres of the Cerebrum (Hemisphaeria Cerebri).

General Considerations.—The two hemispheres constitute the largest portion of the encephalon, and, together with the parts derived from the **inter-brain** (*thalamencephalon*) form what is called by some writers the **fore-brain** (*prosencephalon*). They occupy the whole of the vault of the skull, and consist of a central cavity, in either hemisphere, surrounded by exceedingly thick and convoluted walls of nervous tissue. The under surface or base of the cerebrum is of an irregular form, resting in front on the anterior and middle fossæ of the skull and behind upon the tentorium cerebelli. The upper surface is of an ovoid form, broader behind than in front and convex in general outline. The **frontal pole** (*polus frontalis*) is the most prominent portion of the anterior end of the hemisphere. The most prominent portion of the posterior end is the **occipital pole** (*polus occipitalis*). The most prominent part of the temporal lobe below the fissure of Sylvius is the **temporal pole** (*polus temporalis*). The upper surface is divided into two lateral halves or hemispheres, the **right** and **left,** by the **great longitudinal fissure** (*fissura longitudinalis cerebri*), which extends throughout the entire length of the cerebrum in the middle line, reaching down to the base of the brain in front and behind, but interrupted in the middle by a broad transverse commissure of white matter, the **corpus callosum,** which connects the two hemispheres together.

The Constituent Parts of the Hemisphere.—The hemisphere is composed of three distinct parts: the **brain-mantle** (*pallium*), the chief mass of the hemisphere; the **olfactory brain** or **lobe** (*rhinencephalon*), composed of the olfactory

bulb, anterior perforated space, a portion of the uncinate gyrus, the hippocampus, the septum lucidum, etc., and the **corpus striatum.**

The Surface of the Cerebrum.—Each hemisphere presents an **outer convex surface** (*facies convexa cerebri*), filling the concavity of the corresponding half of the vault of the cranium; an **inner, flattened surface** (*facies medialis cerebri*), which is vertical and directed toward the corresponding surface of the opposite hemisphere (the two inner surfaces forming the sides of the longitudinal fissure); and an **under surface** or **base** (*basis cerebri*), of irregular form, which rests in front on the anterior and middle fossæ of the base of the skull, and behind upon the tentorium cerebelli. The hemispheres are composed of an outer stratum of gray matter (*substantia grisea*), called the **cortical substance** or the **cerebral cortex**, and in the interior of a mass of white matter (*substantia alba*) called the **medullary centre.** The cortex is thrown into a number of creases or infoldings, which are termed **fissures** and **sulci** (*sulci cerebri*), and these separate the surface into a number of irregular eminences, named **convolutions** or **gyri** (*gyri cerebri*).

The infoldings or creases are of two kinds, **complete fissures** and **incomplete fissures** or **sulci.** The **complete fissures** (*fissurae*) are of large size, and appear early in fœtal life; they are few in number, nearly constant in their arrangement, and are produced by infoldings of the entire thickness of the wall of the cerebrum, producing corresponding elevations in the interior of the ventricle, and hence are termed **complete fissures.** They comprise (*a*) the **hippocampal** or **dentate fissure**; (*b*) the **anterior part of the calcarine fissure**; (*c*) the **collateral fissure.** The **sulci** are vastly more numerous than the complete fissures; they are superficial depressions of the gray matter, which is folded inward and only indents the central white substance. They produce no corresponding elevations in the interior of the ventricle, and are therefore spoken of as **incomplete fissures.** They are fairly constant in their arrangement, and have received names indicative of their position and direction, but at the same time vary, within certain limits, in different individuals. They are similar, without being absolutely identical, on the two sides of the brain. It therefore follows that the **gyri** or **convolutions** (*gyri cerebri*) which lie between these sulci are fairly constant in their general arrangement. The gyri upon the surface are called **superficial gyri.** Within the sulci, adjacent superficial gyri are joined by **deep gyri** (*gyri profundi*). Short gyri, superficial or deep which connect two gyri of greater length are called **annectant** or **transitional gyri** (*gyri transitivi*).

The number and extent of the convolutions, as well as the depth of the intervening sulci, appear to bear a close relation to the intellectual power of the individual, as is shown in their increasing complexity of arrangement as one ascends from the lowest mammalia up to man, where they present a most complex arrangement. Again, in the child, at birth, before the intellectual faculties are exercised, the convolutions are simpler, and the sulci between them shallower, than in the adult. In old age, when the mental faculties have diminished in activity, the gyri and sulci become less prominently marked. By their arrangement the convolutions are adapted to increase the amount of gray matter without occupying much additional space, while they also afford a greater extent of surface for the termination of white fibres in gray matter.

It will be convenient in the first instance to describe the fissure which separates the two hemispheres from each other, and those which divide each hemisphere into its larger divisions.

Fissures and Sulci of the Outer Surface of the Hemispheres. The Longitudinal Fissure (*fissura longitudinalis cerebri*) (Fig. 560).—This great fissure separates the cerebrum into two hemispheres, and reaches from the front to the back of the organ; it contains a vertical process of the dura mater, the **falx cerebri** (p. 849). In front and behind the longitudinal fissure extends from the top (dorsal surface) to

the bottom (ventral surface) of the cerebrum, and completely separates the two hemispheres, but its middle portion only separates the hemispheres for about half their vertical extent, the floor of this part of the fissure being formed by the great central white commissure, the **corpus callosum** (Figs. 567 and 571), which connects the two hemispheres together.

The remaining fissures are situated in one or other of the two hemispheres, with the exception of the **transverse fissure,** one-half of which is contained in each hemisphere.

Sylvian Fissure (*fissura cerebri lateralis* [*Sylvii*]) (Figs. 558, 561, 565, and 570).—This fissure is a well-marked cleft on the base and side of the hemisphere. Starting at the base of the brain in a depression, the **vallecula Sylvii,** in which is situated the **anterior perforated space** (Fig. 570). The fissure passes outward between the frontal and temporal lobes, along the lesser wing of the sphenoid

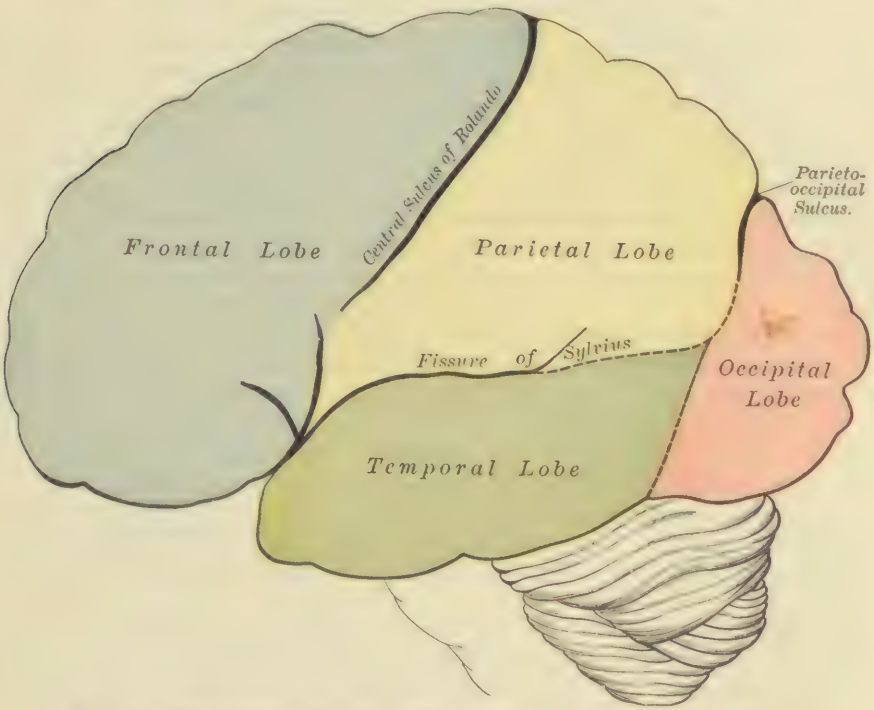


FIG. 558.—Chief fissures and lobes on the external surface of the cerebral hemispheres.

bone to the external surface of the hemisphere. The point at which it reaches the external surface is called the **Sylvian point.** It here gives off a short **anterior horizontal limb** (*ramus anterior horizontalis*), which passes forward, and a short **ascending** or **vertical limb** (*ramus anterior ascendens*), which passes upward into the inferior frontal convolution. It also gives off the **posterior horizontal limb** (*ramus posterior*), which is the most distinct of the three branches. The posterior horizontal limb lies under the middle third of the lateral surface of the hemisphere and above the temporal lobe. It passes backward and slightly upward for about two and a half inches and terminates by an upward inflexion in the parietal lobe, which is called the **ascending terminal portion.** The anterior horizontal and the vertical limbs are separated by the **frontal operculum** (*pars triangularis*), which is the foot of the inferior frontal convolution. A portion of the same convolution below the anterior limb is called the **orbital operculum** (*pars orbitalis*). Between the vertical and posterior horizontal limbs is the **fronto-parietal operculum** (*pars opercularis*).

Limiting Sulcus of Reil (*sulcus circularis Reili*) (Fig. 566).—If the lips of the posterior horizontal limb of the Sylvian fissure are widely separated, the **island of Reil** (*insula*) (Figs. 566 and 568) is seen in the depths, surrounded by the limiting sulcus. The upper or external portion of the sulcus separates the island from the parietal and frontal lobes, the lower or posterior portion from the temporal lobe, and the anterior portion from the frontal lobe.

The Central Sulcus of Rolando or the Fissure of Rolando (*sulcus centralis* [*Rolandi*]) (Figs. 558, 559, 561, 565, and 574).—The fissure of Rolando is situated about the middle of the outer surface of the hemisphere, and, coursing obliquely downward and forward, divides the surface of the hemisphere into approximately equal parts. It is between the frontal and parietal lobes. It commences as a rule on the mesial surface of the longitudinal fissure, runs forward a short distance, and ascends to the superior mesial border, which it reaches a little behind its mid-point, that is at a point half an inch behind the middle of a line drawn from the nasal eminence to the external occipital protuberance. It then runs sinuously downward and forward, to terminate a little above the hori-

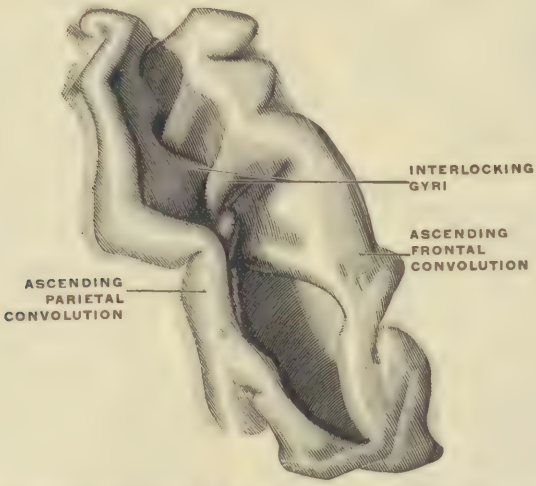


FIG. 559.—Sulcus of Rolando fully opened up, so as to exhibit the interlocking gyri and deep annectant gyrus behind it. (Cunningham.)

zontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius, and about half an inch behind the ascending limb of the same fissure. The angle made by the fissure of Rolando and the mesial plane is known as the **Rolandic angle**, and it varies in the adult between 69 degrees and 74 degrees (Cunningham). It forms two chief curves: the upper or **superior curve** or **genu** is concave forward and upward, while the lower or **inferior curve** or **genu** has its concavity directed backward. If the lips of the Rolandic fissure are opened, we will see in the depths frontal gyri interlocked with parietal gyri (Fig. 559). Two of these gyri are often fused, and this fused gyrus is named the **deep annectant gyrus** (Fig. 559).

The Parieto-occipital Sulcus (*sulcus occipitoparietalis*) (Figs. 558, 562, 564, and 565).—The parieto-occipital sulcus is only seen to a slight extent on the outer surface of the hemisphere, being situated for the most part on its mesial aspect. The portion on the outer surface is called the **external parieto-occipital sulcus**, to distinguish it from the part continued on to the internal surface, which is termed the **internal parieto-occipital sulcus**. The external parieto-occipital sulcus commences about midway between the posterior extremity or occipital pole of the brain and the central sulcus of Rolando, and runs downward and outward for about half an inch, and is ended by an arch-shaped convolution (*arcus parieto-*

occipitalis). The internal parieto-occipital sulcus is vertical in direction, is very distinct, and passes into the calcarine fissure. When its lips are fully separated, deep annectant gyri come into view.

Besides the three fissures which have been discussed, the following must be mentioned (the situation of each is shown in Fig. 561). On the outer surface of the hemisphere there are the three frontal sulci, the **sulcus frontalis superior, medius,** and **inferior.** The **sulcus paramedialis,** the **superior** and **inferior precentral sulci, sulcus diagonalis,** the **superior** and **inferior temporal sulci,** the **superior** and **inferior post central sulci,** the **ramus occipitalis,** the **sulcus occipitalis transversus,**

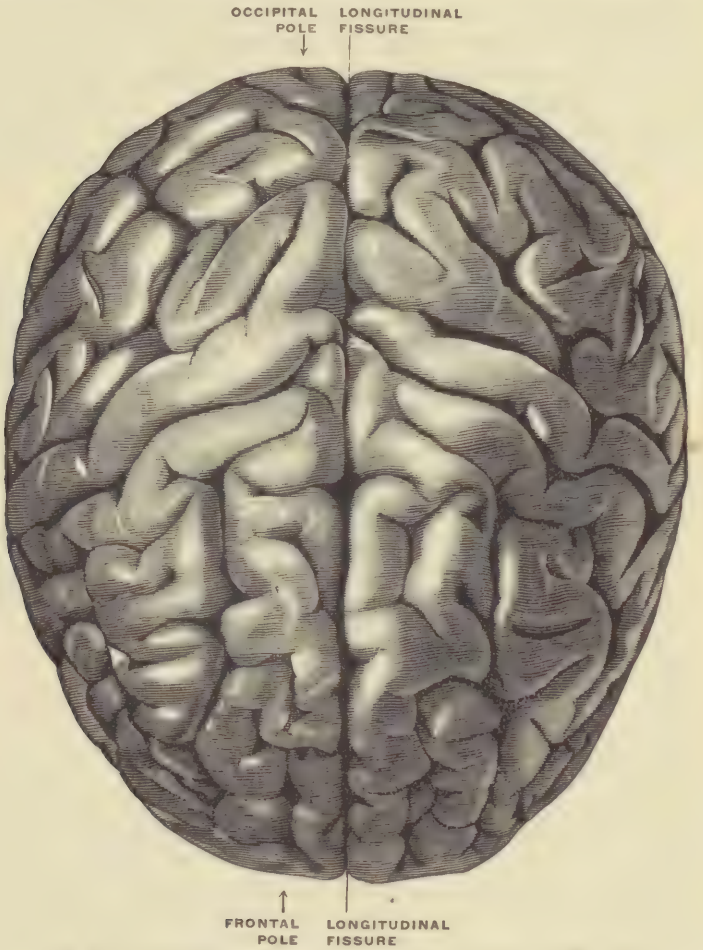


FIG. 560.—The cerebral hemispheres viewed from above. (Spalteholz.)

the **ramus horizontalis,** the **calloso-marginal sulcus,** the **inferior transverse furrow** (Fig. 561). The **sulcus interparietalis** (of Turner) is a group of four sulci: the **sulcus post-centralis inferior,** the **sulcus post-centralis superior,** the **ramus horizontalis,** and the **ramus occipitalis.** The first two are usually joined; the last two remain distinct and separate. When the lips of the intraparietal sulcus are widely opened, deep annectant gyri come into view.

The fissures of Sylvius, of Rolando, and the parieto-occipital sulcus divide the external surface of the hemisphere into four lobes: the **frontal,** the **parietal,** the **occipital,** and the **temporal lobes.** To these must be added (1) the **central lobe** or **island of Reil,** which is situated deeply in the Sylvian fissure, and (2) the **olfactory**

lobe, which is found at the base of the brain and was formerly described under the name of the olfactory nerve.

The Lobes on the External Surface.—The lobes on the external surface have received their names from the bones of the skull with which they are most nearly in relation, but it must be borne in mind that they do not correspond in shape or limit with the bone after which they are named. The division is, moreover, to a certain extent artificial, as will be seen from the following description. If a line is drawn in continuation of the external parieto-occipital sulcus downward and outward to the lower border of the hemisphere, it will impinge on a slight notch, the **pre-occipital notch**, and if a second line is prolonged backward from the horizontal part of the fissure of Sylvius to join the first line, the division of the outer surface of the hemisphere into four lobes will be accomplished (Fig. 558). The portion in front of the central sulcus of Rolando is the **frontal lobe**; that behind the central sulcus of Rolando and above the fissure of Sylvius is the **parietal lobe**; the

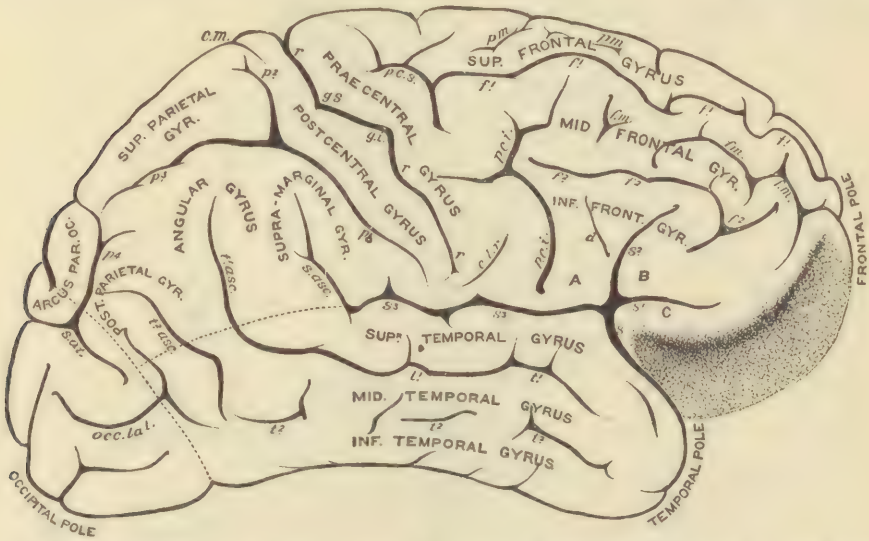


FIG. 561.—Gyri and sulci on the outer surface of the cerebral hemisphere. f^1, sulcus frontalis superior; f^2, sulcus frontalis inferior; *f.m.*, sulcus frontalis medius; *p.m.*, sulcus paramedialis; *A*, pars basilaris; *B*, pars triangularis; *C*, pars orbitalis; *S*, Sylvian fissure; s^1, anterior horizontal limb (Sylvian fissure); s^2, ascending limb (Sylvian fissure); s^3, posterior horizontal limb (Sylvian fissure); *p.c.i.*, inferior precentral sulcus; *p.c.s.*, superior precentral sulcus; *r*, fissure of Rolando; *g.s.*, superior genu; *g.i.*, inferior genu; *d*, sulcus diagonalis; t^1, superior temporal sulcus (parallel); t^2, inferior temporal sulcus; p^1, inferior post-central sulcus; p^2, superior post-central sulcus; p^3, ramus horizontalis; p^4, ramus occipitalis; *s.o.t.*, sulcus occipitalis transversus; *c.m.*, calloso-marginal sulcus; *c.t.r.*, inferior transverse furrow. (Cunningham).

portion behind the parieto-occipital sulcus and its imaginary line of continuation to the pre-occipital notch is the **occipital lobe**; and the part below the fissure of Sylvius and in front of the occipital lobe is the **temporal lobe**.

The Fissures, Sulci, and Lobes of the Mesial and Tentorial Surfaces.—The mesial surface of the cerebrum can only be fully viewed by dividing the corpus callosum and the structures beneath it longitudinally in the middle line; in order to expose the tentorial surface, the pons Varolii, cerebellum, and medulla must be removed, by division of the crus cerebri on either side. The diagram (Fig. 562) and the section (Fig. 564) show these fissures and sulci. The parts in the centre, below the corpus callosum, belong to the interior of the brain, and will be disregarded for the present, while the lobes and fissures of the remaining portion of the hemisphere are considered. The fissures and sulci are ten in number on each side, in addition to a small part of the fissure of Sylvius, the commencement of which is seen separating the frontal and temporal lobes and the beginning and end of the great longitudinal fissure. These fissures and sulci are named the **olfactory**

sulci, the **orbital sulci**, the **inferior** and **middle temporal sulci**, the **occipito-temporal sulci**, the **calloso-marginal** and the **internal parieto-occipital sulci**, the **calcarine**, the **collateral**, and the **dentate** or **hippocampal fissures.**

The Olfactory Sulcus (*sulcus olfactorius*) (Figs. 563 and 566).—The olfactory sulcus is a straight furrow which lodges the olfactory tract and bulb.

The Orbital Sulcus (*sulcus orbitalis*) (Figs. 563 and 566).—The orbital sulcus is usually shaped somewhat like the letter H, and is then composed of an external limb (*sulcus orbitalis externus*), an internal limb (*sulcus orbitalis internus*), and a transverse portion (*sulcus orbitalis transversus*). The parts of the orbital sulcus are often complicated and irregular, and are sulci rather than parts of a sulcus.

The Inferior Temporal Sulcus (*sulcus temporalis inferior*).—The inferior temporal sulcus is shown in Fig. 563.

The Occipito-temporal Sulcus (Fig. 563).—The occipito-temporal sulcus is in the tentorial base of the occipital lobe. It is external to the collateral fissure, is not limited purely to the temporal lobe, and bounds the occipito-temporal gyrus externally. It often consists of two or more portions.

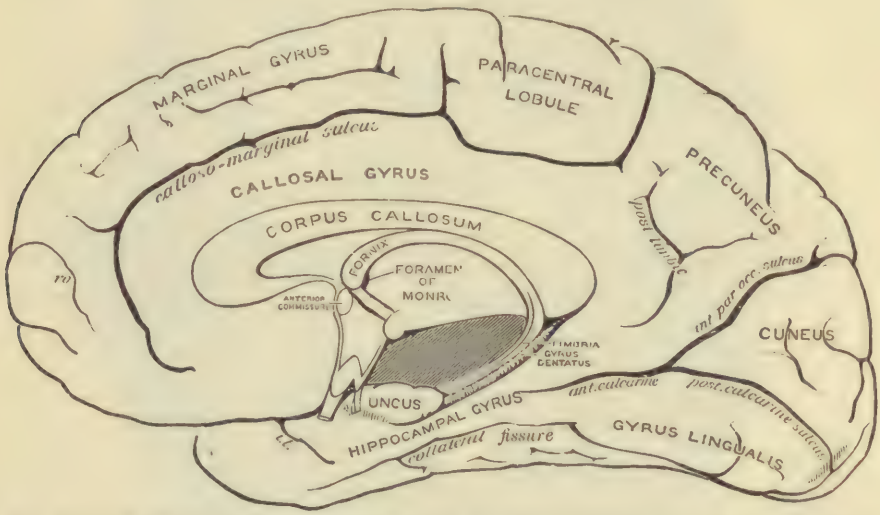


FIG. 562.—The gyri and sulci on the mesial aspect of the cerebral hemisphere: *r*, fissure of Rolando; *r.o.*, rostral sulcus; *i.t.*, incisura temporalis. (Cunningham.)

The Calloso-marginal Sulcus (*sulcus cingulus*) (Figs. 562, 564, and 567).—The calloso-marginal sulcus commences below the anterior extremity of the corpus callosum; it at first runs forward and upward, parallel with the rostrum of the corpus callosum, and, winding round in front of the genu of that body, it continues from before backward, between the upper margin of the hemisphere and the convolution of the corpus callosum, to about midway between the anterior and posterior extremities of the brain, where it ascends to reach the upper margin of the hemisphere, a short distance behind the superior extremity of the fissure of Rolando.

The Internal Parieto-occipital Sulcus (*sulcus parietooccipitalis*) (Figs. 562, 564, and 567).—The internal parieto-occipital sulcus extends in an oblique direction downward and forward to join the calcarine fissure, on a level with the hinder end of the corpus callosum.

The Calcarine Fissure (*fissura calcarina*) (Figs. 562, 564, and 567).—The calcarine fissure commences, usually by two branches, close to the posterior extremity of the hemisphere. These soon unite, and the fissure runs nearly horizontally forward, and is joined by the parieto-occipital fissure, and continues as far as the

posterior extremity of the corpus callosum, a little below the level of which it terminates in the limbic lobe. Its anterior part causes the prominence in the interior of the brain known as the **hippocampus minor** or **calcar avis.**

The Collateral Fissure (*fissura collateralis*) (Figs. 562, 563, 564, and 567).—The collateral fissure is situated on the tentorial surface, below and external to the preceding, being separated from it by the **subcollateral** or **uncinate gyrus.** It runs forward, from the posterior extremity of the brain, nearly as far as the tip of the temporal lobe. It lies below the posterior and descending horns of the lateral ventricle, and its middle part causes the prominence in the interior of the brain known as the **eminentia collateralis.**

The Dentate or Hippocampal Fissure (*fissura hippocampi*) (Figs. 563, 564, and 567).—The dentate or hippocampal fissure commences immediately behind

FIG. 563.—Gyri and sulci on the tentorial and orbital aspects of the cerebral hemisphere. (Cunningham.)

the posterior extremity of the corpus callosum, and runs forward to terminate at the recurved part of the hippocampal gyrus. It causes the prominence of the **hippocampus major** in the descending horn of the lateral ventricle.

In addition to these fissures, which are constant, there is frequently an irregular broken fissure, which is sometimes an independent sulcus, but which often appears to be a continuation backward of the posterior part of the calloso-marginal fissure, before it ascends to reach the upper edge of the hemisphere. This has been termed the **post-limbic fissure** (Fig. 562). The fissures of the internal and tentorial surfaces map off portions of the hemisphere, which form parts of the lobes found on the external surfaces. That portion which lies in front and above the calloso-marginal fissure belongs almost entirely to the frontal lobe; its posterior extremity, which extends for a short distance behind the upper end of the

fissure of Rolando, forms a small part of the parietal lobe; that portion which lies above the internal parieto-occipital fissure and behind the calloso-marginal fissure forms a part of the parietal lobe; that between the parieto-occipital fissure above and the calcarine fissure below is a portion of the occipital lobe; and all the region below the calcarine fissure behind and the collateral fissure in front belongs to the temporal lobe. The remainder of the mesial and tentorial surfaces of the hemisphere constitute what Broca termed the **limbic lobe,** which is subsequently referred to (p. 878).

The surface of the hemisphere has thus been divided by large sulci and fissures into its different parts—viz., the frontal, the parietal, the occipital, the temporal, the limbic, the olfactory lobes, and the island of Reil. Each of these lobes is further subdivided into convolutions or gyri by smaller fissures, which, though less constant in their arrangement than the larger fissures, have a fairly definite course.

1. **The Frontal Lobe** *(lobus frontalis)* (Figs. 558, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, and 566). —It is the largest of the lobes of the cerebrum. Its outer surface is bounded behind

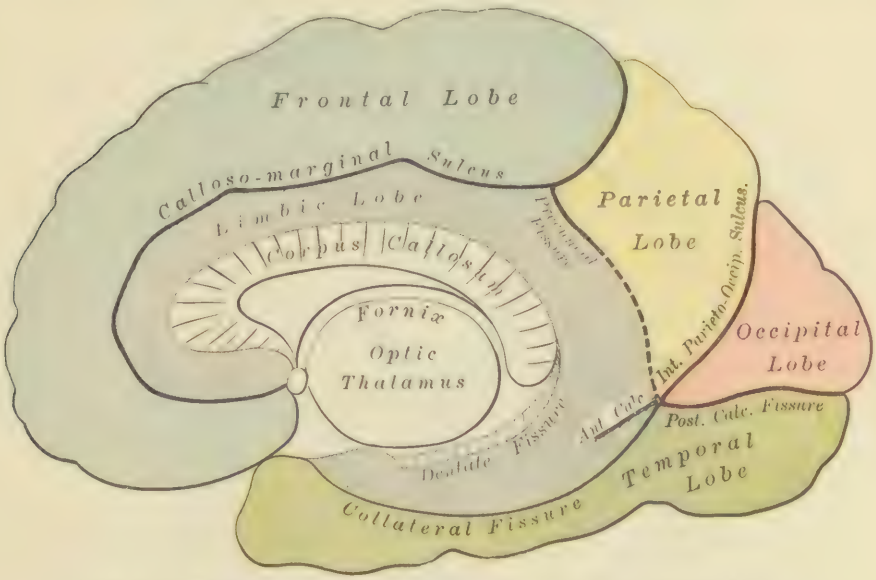


FIG. 564.—Fissures and lobes on the internal surface of the cerebral hemispheres.

by the central sulcus of Rolando and below by the posterior horizontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius. On the orbital surface the fissure of Sylvius bounds it posteriorly. On the mesial surface it is bounded by the calloso-marginal sulcus.

External Surface.—On its external surface the frontal lobe presents three sulci and four gyri or convolutions. The sulci are the precentral, the superior frontal, and the inferior frontal.

The **Precentral Sulcus** *(sulcus praecentralis)* is divided into two parts: The **inferior precentral sulcus** *(sulcus praecentralis inferior)* is composed of two parts (Figs. 561 and 565): one part (the vertical) is placed before the Rolandic fissure; the other part (the horizontal) passes upward and to the front into the middle frontal convolution. The **superior precentral sulcus** *(sulcus praecentralis superior)* is vertical in direction and is placed in front of the upper part of the Rolandic fissure. The other frontal sulci are shown in the diagrams.

The **ascending frontal convolution** or **praecentral gyrus** *(gyrus centralis anterior* or *gyrus frontalis ascendens)* (Figs. 561 and 565), one of the chief motor areas of the

cortex, is a simple convolution, and is limited in front by the precentral sulcus and behind by the fissure of Rolando. It extends from the upper margin of the hemisphere above to a little behind the bifurcation of the fissure of Sylvius below. From it two sulci, the **superior** and **inferior frontal sulci** (*sulcus frontalis superior* and *sulcus frontalis inferior*), run forward and downward, and divide the remainder of the outer surface of the lobe into three parallel principal convolutions, named respectively the **superior, middle,** and **inferior frontal convolutions** (Figs. 561 and 565).

The **superior** or **first frontal convolution** (*gyrus frontalis superior*) (Figs. 561 and 565) is situated between the margin of the longitudinal fissure and the superior frontal sulcus. It extends above on to the inner aspect of the hemisphere, forming the greater part of the **marginal convolution** (Figs. 562, 564, and 567), and in front on to the orbital surface, forming the **internal orbital convolution** (Figs. 563 and

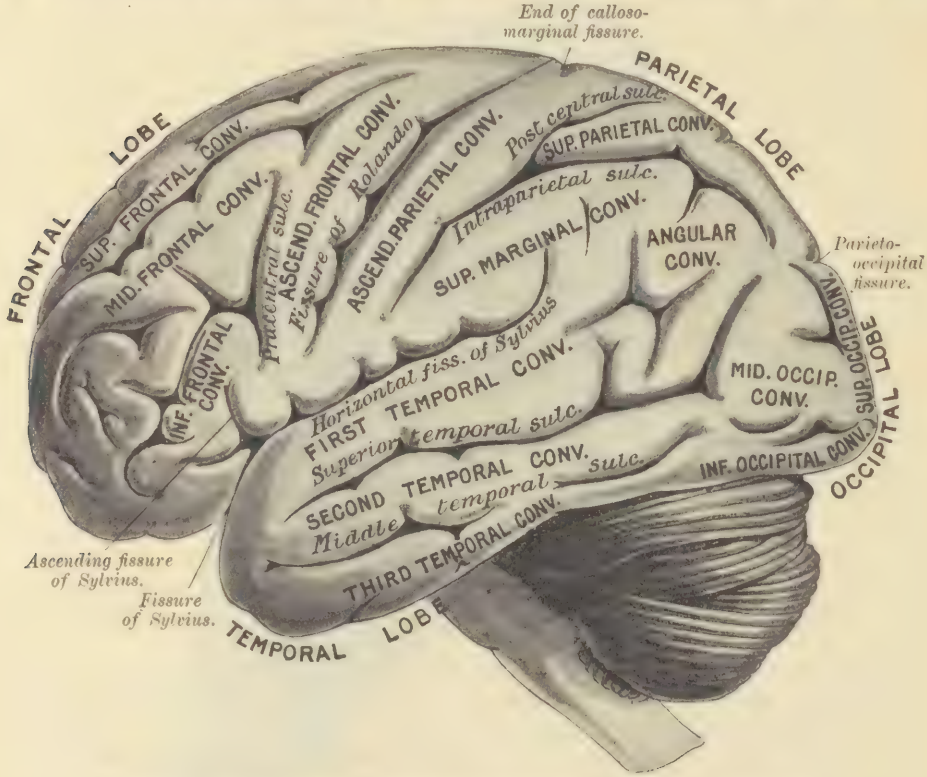


FIG. 565.—Convolutions and sulci on the external surface of the cerebral hemisphere.

566). It is usually more or less completely subdivided into two (*pars superior* and *pars inferior*) by several depressions of trivial length, the aggregation being called by Cunningham the **sulcus paramedialis.** It is frequently interrupted and broken into several parts by bridging convolutions.

The **second** or **middle frontal convolution** (*gyrus frontalis medius*) (Figs. 561 and 565) is situated between the superior and inferior frontal sulci, and extends from the precentral sulcus on to the orbital surface of the lobe, where it forms the anterior orbital convolution (Figs. 563 and 566). The middle frontal convolution is frequently subdivided into two (*pars superior* and *pars inferior*) by a sagittally directed sulcus, the **sulcus frontalis medius** of Eberstaller.

The **third** or **inferior frontal convolution** (*gyrus frontalis inferior*) (Figs. 561 and 565) is situated below the inferior frontal sulcus, and extends forward from the lower part of the precentral sulcus, on to the under surface of the lobe, where it forms the pos-

terior orbital convolutions (Figs. 563 and 566). The inferior frontal convolution is subdivided by the anterior and ascending limbs of the fissure of Sylvius into three parts—viz.: (1) **anterior part** or the **orbital operculum** (*pars orbitalis*), below the anterior limb of the fissure of Sylvius; (2) **middle part** or "**cap**" **of Broca** or the **frontal operculum** (*pars triangularis*), between the anterior horizontal and the vertical limbs of the fissure of Sylvius; and (3) **posterior part** or the **fronto-parietal operculum** (*pars basilaris*), behind the posterior horizontal and vertical limbs of the fissure of Sylvius. In the basilar part is the **sulcus diagonalis** (*d* in Fig. 561). The left inferior frontal convolution is, as a rule, more highly developed than the right, and is named the **convolution of Broca**, from the fact that in 1861 Broca declared that it was the centre for speech. It is now known that the region of speech comprises the posterior part of the inferior frontal convolution and the fronto-parietal operculum.

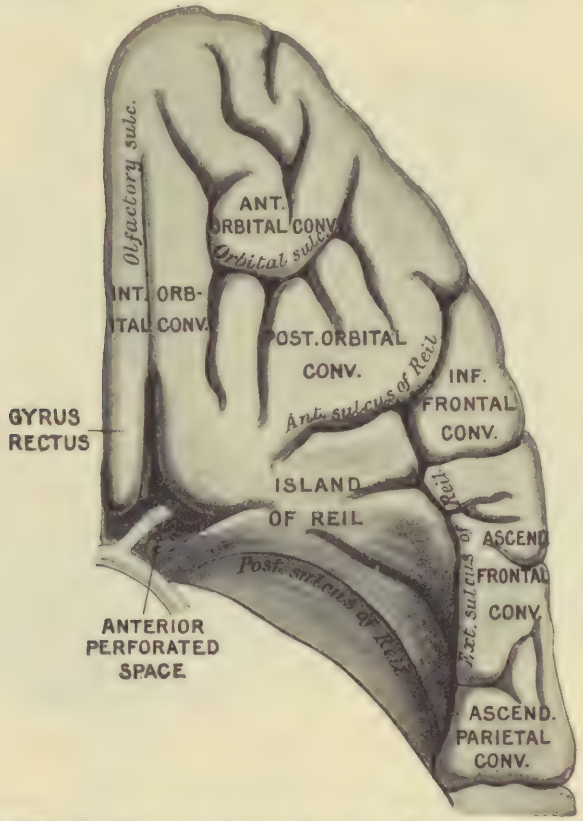


FIG. 566.—Convolutions and sulci on the under surface of the anterior lobe.

Under Surface (Figs. 563 and 566).—The under surface of the frontal lobe rests on the orbital plate of the frontal bone, and is sometimes named the **orbital lobe.** It is divided into three convolutions by a well-marked sulcus, the **orbital** or **tri-radiate sulcus** (*sulci orbitales*). These convolutions are named, from their position, the **internal, anterior,** and **posterior orbital convolutions,** and are the continuations respectively of the superior, middle, and inferior frontal convolutions of the external surface. The internal orbital convolution presents a well-marked antero-posterior groove or sulcus, the **olfactory sulcus** (*sulcus olfactorius*), for the olfactory bulb and tract; and the portion internal to this is named the **gyrus rectus,** and is continuous with the marginal gyrus, presently to be described.

Mesial or Internal Surface (Figs. 562 and 567).—The mesial or internal surface of the frontal lobe is occupied by a single curved convolution, which from its

situation is termed the **marginal gyrus** (*gyrus marginalis*). It commences in front of the anterior perforated space, runs along the margin of the longitudinal fissure on the mesial surface of the orbital lobe, where it is continuous with the internal orbital convolution; it then ascends, and runs backward to the point where the calloso-marginal fissure turns upward to reach the superior border of the hemisphere. An oval portion at the posterior part of this convolution is sometimes marked off by a vertical fissure, and is distinguished as the **paracentral lobule** (*lobulus paracentralis*), because it is continuous with the convolutions in front and behind the central fissure or fissure of Rolando. In the anterior portion of the marginal gyrus are two sulci named the **sulci rostrales**.

2. **The Parietal Lobe** (*lobus parietalis*) (Figs. 558, 561, 562, 564, 565, and 567).—This lobe includes a considerable portion of the surface of the hemisphere,

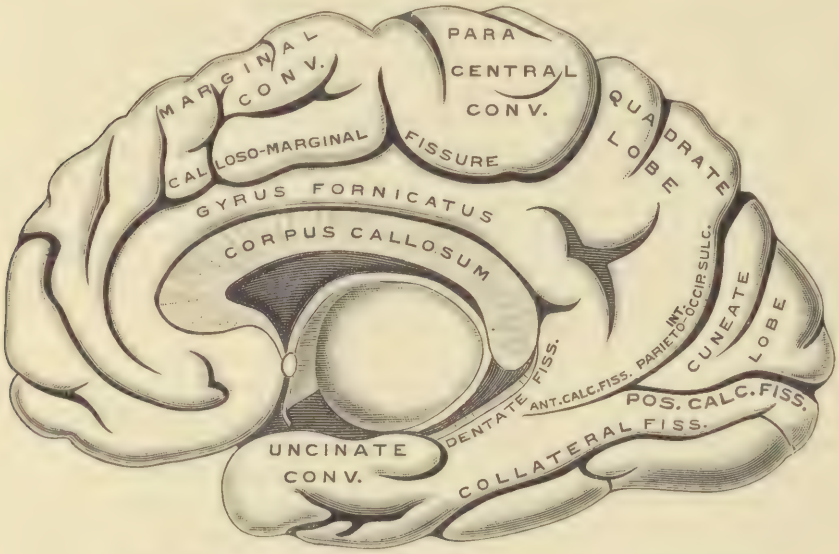


FIG. 567.—Convolutions and sulci on the internal surface of the cerebral hemispheres.

and it also occupies the portion of the mesial surface known as the **quadrate lobule** or **cuneus**. It is bounded in front by the central sulcus of Rolando. Posteriorly it is partly separated from the occipital lobe by the external parieto-occipital sulcus. Below it is partly limited by the posterior horizontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius.

External Surface.—On its external surface the parietal lobe presents for examination one sulcus (which is divided into four parts) and three convolutions.

The **Intraparietal Sulcus of Turner** (*sulcus intraparietalis*) (Figs. 561 and 565), according to Prof. Cunningham, is a group of four sulci—viz., the **superior post-central sulcus** (*sulcus postcentralis superior*), the **inferior post-central sulcus** (*sulcus postcentralis inferior*), the **horizontal ramus** (*ramus horizontalis*), and the **occipital ramus** (*ramus occipitalis*). The first named lies back of the upper portion of the central sulcus of Rolando; the second lies back of the lower portion of the same sulcus. In front of the post-central sulci is the **ascending parietal** (**post-central**) **convolution** (*gyrus centralis posterior*). The superior and inferior post-central sulci are usually continuous. The upper end of the inferior post-central sulcus is prolonged upward and backward as the ramus horizontalis between the superior and inferior parietal gyri. The ramus occipitalis may or may not be joined to the ramus horizontalis. It is the external boundary of the arcus parieto-occipitalis.

The **ascending parietal convolution** or the **post-central gyrus** (*gyrus ascendens parietalis* or *gyrus postcentralis*) (Figs. 561 and 565) is usually regarded as one of the chief motor areas of the cortex, although Mills, Sherrington and others are of the opinion that the motor areas are all in front of the central sulcus of Roland. The ascending parietal convolution is bounded in front by the central sulcus of Rolando, behind by the superior and inferior post-central sulci. It extends from the great longitudinal fissure above to the posterior horizontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius below. It lies parallel with the ascending frontal convolution, with which it is connected below, and also, sometimes, above the termination of the central sulcus of Rolando.

The **superior parietal convolution** (*lobulus parietalis superior*) (Figs. 561 and 565), still regarded by some as a part of the motor area of the cortex, is bounded in front by the superior post-central sulcus, which lies between it and the previous convolution, but with which it is usually connected above the upper extremity of the sulcus; behind, it is joined to the occipital lobe by a narrow convolution, the **first annectant gyrus** (*arcus parietooccipitalis*); below, it is separated from the inferior parietal convolution by the horizontal portion of the intraparietal sulcus; and above, it is continuous on the inner surface of the hemisphere with the quadrate lobe.

The **inferior parietal convolution** (*lobulus parietalis inferior*) (Figs. 561 and 565) is that portion of the parietal lobe which is situated between the ascending portion of the intraparietal sulcus in front, the horizontal portion of the same sulcus above, the horizontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius below, and the posterior boundary of the parietal lobe behind. It is divided into three convolutions: the supramarginal, the angular, and the post-parietal. One, the **supramarginal convolution** (*gyrus supramarginalis*), lies behind the ascending part of the intraparietal sulcus and above the horizontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius, over the extremity of which it arches. It is connected in front with the ascending parietal convolution below the intraparietal sulcus, and behind with the first or superior temporal convolution around the posterior extremity of the fissure of Sylvius (Fig. 561). The **angular convolution** or the **angular gyrus** (*gyrus angularis*) is united anteriorly with the foregoing, while posteriorly it is continuous with the middle or second temporal convolution by a process which curves around the superior temporal or parallel sulcus (Fig. 561). The **post-parietal convolution** or the **second annectant gyrus** passes around the posterior end of the middle temporal convolution and into the inferior temporal convolution. It joins the inferior parietal convolution to the occipital lobe.

The Internal or Mesial Surface (Figs. 562 and 564).—The internal or mesial surface of the parietal lobe is continuous with the external surface over the upper edge of the hemisphere. It is of small size, and forms one square-shaped convolution, which from its shape is termed the **quadrate lobe**. From its situation above the cuneate lobe it is named the **precuneus** (*praecuneus*). The **post-limbic sulcus** imperfectly separates the precuneus from the limbic lobe.

3. **The Occipital Lobe** (*lobus occipitalis*) (Figs. 558, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, and 567).—The occipital lobe is indefinitely separated from the temporal and parietal lobes. It is defined by Cunningham as the portion of "the hemisphere which encloses the posterior horn of the lateral ventricle." In form it is pyramidal, and it possesses an apex, the **occipital pole** (*polus occipitalis*), and three surfaces. The inferior surface is directly continuous with the temporal and limbic lobes. On the outer surface the external parieto-occipital fissure partly separates it from the parietal lobe. On the mesial surface the internal parieto-occipital fissure separates it from the precuneus.

External Surface (Figs. 561 and 565).—The occipital lobe is divided on its external surface into three convolutions by two indistinct sulci, the **superior** and **middle occipital sulci** (*sulcus occipitalis transversus* and *sulcus occipitalis lateralis*). They are directed backward across the lobe, being frequently small and ill marked; the superior is sometimes continuous with the horizontal portion of the intraparietal sulcus.

The **superior occipital convolution** (*gyrus occipitalis superior*) is situated above the superior sulcus, and is connected to the superior parietal convolution by the **first annectant gyrus.**

The **middle occipital convolution** (*gyrus occipitalis medius*) is situated between the superior and middle occipital sulci, and is connected to the angular convolution by the **second annectant gyrus**, and to the middle temporal convolution by the **third annectant gyrus.**

The **inferior occipital convolution** (*gyrus occipitalis inferior*) is situated below the middle occipital sulcus, and is sometimes separated from the external occipito-temporal convolution on the under surface of the hemisphere by an inconstant sulcus, the **inferior occipital sulcus** (*sulcus occipitalis inferior*). The inferior occipital convolution is connected to the inferior temporal convolution by the **fourth annectant gyrus.**

Internal or Mesial Surface (Figs. 562, 564, and 567).—The internal or mesial surface of the occipital lobe presents a triangular convolution, which is known as the **cuneate lobule** (*cuneus*). I is situated between the internal parieto-occipital sulcus and the calcarine fissure, which, as already mentioned, meet some distance behind the posterior extremity of the corpus callosum.

The **lingual gyrus** or **subcalcarine convolution** (*gyrus lingualis*) is between the calcarine and collateral fissures, and runs forward into the hippocampal portion of the limbic lobe. A portion of the gyrus lingualis is on the mesial aspect and a portion on the inferior aspect of the occipital lobe (Fig. 563).

Inferior Surface (Fig. 563).—The inferior or **tentorial surface** of the occipital lobe possesses one convolution, the **occipito-temporal gyrus,** which is continuous with the temporal lobe and the **limbic lobe** (p. 878), and is bounded externally by the occipito-temporal sulcus.

The centre for visual memory is in the external surface of the occipital lobe and the angular gyrus.

4. **The Temporal Lobe** (*lobus temporalis*) (Figs. 558, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, and 567).—The temporal lobe is sometimes called the **temporo-sphenoidal lobe.** This lobe lies behind the junction point and below the posterior horizontal limb of the Sylvian fissure. On its inferior (tentorial) surface the collateral fissure separates it from the hippocampal portion of the limbic lobe. The apex of the temporal lobe projects in front of the Sylvian junction. The lobe presents an outer and an inferior surface.

Outer Surface (Figs. 561 and 565).—The outer surface is subdivided by two sulci, named respectively the **first** and **second temporal sulci.**

The **First Temporal Sulcus** (*sulcus temporalis superior*) is well marked, and runs from before backward through the temporal lobe parallel with, but some little distance below, the posterior horizontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius; hence it is often termed the **parallel sulcus.**

The **Second Temporal Sulcus** (*sulcus temporalis medius*) takes the same direction as the first, but is situated at a lower level, and is often interrupted by one or more bridging convolutions. These two sulci subdivide this surface of the temporal lobe into three convolutions.

The **first** or **superior temporal convolution** (*gyrus temporalis superior*) is situated between the posterior horizontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius and the first temporal sulcus, and is continuous behind with the supramarginal convolution.

The **second** or **middle temporal convolution** (*gyrus temporalis medius*) lies between the first and second temporal sulci, and is continued behind into the angular and middle occipital convolutions.

The **third** or **inferior temporal convolution** (*gyrus temporalis inferior*) is placed below the second temporal sulcus; it is connected posteriorly with the inferior occipital convolution, and is also prolonged on to the under or tentorial surface

of the temporal lobe (Fig. 563), where it is limited internally by the third temporal sulcus, about to be described.

Inferior Surface (Fig. 563).—The inferior or tentorial surface presents two fissures—viz., the **third temporal sulcus** and the **collateral fissure**—the latter fissure has already been described (p. 871).

The **Third Temporal Sulcus** (*sulcus temporalis inferior*) extends from near the occipital pole behind to near the anterior extremity of the temporal lobe in front, but is, however, frequently subdivided by bridging gyri.

The convolution on the inferior surface is the **fourth temporal** or **subcollateral** or the **occipito-temporal convolution.** It is situated between the third temporal sulcus and the collateral fissure.

5. **The Central Lobe or Island of Reil (Insula)** (Figs. 566, 568, 576, and 577).—The central lobe or island of Reil lies deeply in the Sylvian fissure, and can only be seen when the lips of that fissure are widely separated, since it is overlapped and hidden by the convolutions which bound the fissure. These convolutions are termed the **opercula of the insula** (*opercula insulae*) (operculum, a lid); they are separated from each other by the three limbs of the Sylvian fissure, and are named the **orbital, frontal, fronto-parietal,** and **temporal opercula** (p. 866). The insula

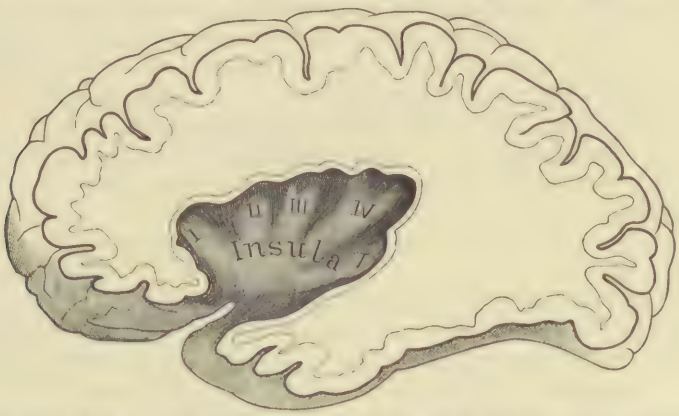


Fig. 568.—The island of Reil. Left side. The overlapping parts of the hemisphere have been removed. 1, 2, 3. Gyri breves. 4, 5. Gyrus longus, bifurcated at its upper extremity. (Dalton.)

is almost surrounded by a deep limiting sulcus, the **limiting sulcus of Reil** (*sulcus circularis Reili*) (Fig. 566 and p. 867), which separates it from the frontal, parietal, and temporal lobes. When the opercula have been removed, the insula presents the form of a triangular eminence; its apex is directed downward and inward toward the anterior perforated space, and is continuous in front with the posterior orbital convolution. At the apex of the insula the limiting sulcus does not exist, and the gray matter passes into the anterior perforated space. This point is called the **limen insulae.** The insula is continuous behind with the **hippocampal convolution.** It is divided into a **pre-central** and a **post-central lobe** by the sulcus centralis, which runs backward and upward from the apex of the insula. The pre-central lobe is further subdivided by shallow sulci into three or four short convolutions, the **gyri breves insulae,** while the post-central lobe is named the **gyrus longus insulae,** and is often bifurcated at its upper extremity. The gray matter of the insula is continuous with that of the different opercula, while its mesial surface corresponds with the external surface of lenticular nucleus of the corpus striatum, from which it is separated by the external capsule and claustrum.

6. **Limbic Lobe** (Figs. 564 and 569).—The term limbic lobe or *grande lobe limbique* was introduced by Broca in 1878, and under it he included two convolutions—viz., the **callosal** and **hippocampal convolutions,** which together arch around

the corpus callosum and the hippocampal fissure. These he separated on the morphological ground that they are well developed in animals possessing a keen sense of smell (osmatic animals), such as the dog and fox. To the lobe thus defined the following parts must be added—viz., the laminae of the septum lucidum, together with the fornix and its fimbriae, which may be regarded as forming an inner or deep arch; the peduncles and longitudinal striae of the corpus callosum, together with the gyrus dentatus, which form a middle arch, while the outer arch is constituted by the callosal and hippocampal convolutions; the first two arches are separated from each other by the corpus callosum.

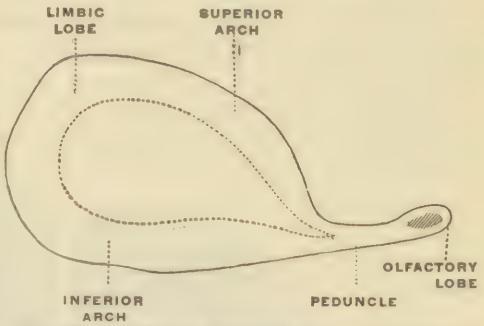


FIG. 569.—Scheme of the limbic lobe. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Convolutions of the Limbic Lobe.—(1) The **callosal convolution** (*gyrus fornicatus* or *gyrus cinguli*) (Figs. 562 and 567) is an arch-shaped convolution, lying in close relation to the superficial surface of the corpus callosum, from which it is separated by a slit-like sulcus, the **callosal sulcus** (*sulcus corporis callosi*). It commences below the rostrum of the corpus callosum. The inner root of the olfactory tract enters the beginning of the convolution. The callosal convolution curves around in front of the genu, extends along the upper surface of the body, and finally turns downward behind the splenium, where it becomes narrow because the calcarine fissure cuts it. The narrow portion is the **isthmus** (*isthmus gyri fornicati*). The isthmus connects the callosal convolution with the **gyrus hippocampi**. The callosal convolution is separated from the marginal convolution by the calloso-marginal sulcus, from the precuneus by the post-limbic sulcus, and from the lingual gyrus by the anterior portion of the calcarine fissure.

(2) The **hippocampal convolution** (*gyrus hippocampi*) (Figs. 562 and 563) is bounded above by the hippocampal or dentate fissure, and below by the anterior part of the collateral fissure. Behind, it is continuous superiorly, through the isthmus, with the callosal convolution, and inferiorly with the subcalcarine or lingual convolution. Its anterior extremity is recurved in the form of a hook, and is named the **uncinate convolution** or **uncus** (Fig. 567). Running in the substance of the callosal and hippocampal convolutions, and connecting them together, is a tract of arched fibres, named the **fillet of the gyrus fornicatus** or the **cingulum**. The outer root of the olfactory tract passes into the anterior extremity of the hippocampal convolution, and the inner root into the commencement of the callosal convolution, so that these two convolutions, with the addition of the olfactory tract, present a racquet-like appearance—the olfactory tract constituting the handle and the two convolutions the circumference of the blade.

(3) The **dentate convolution** (*gyrus dentatus*) (Figs. 562 and 581), also called the **dentate fascia** (*fascia dentata hippocampi*). It is situated above the gyrus hippocampi, from which it is separated by the **hippocampal** or **dentate fissure** (*fissura hippocampi*) (Figs. 562, 564, and 567). The dentate convolution is covered by the **fimbria**, a prolongation of the posterior pillar of the fornix, and is a narrow, elongated convolution, the free surface of which presents a notched or toothed appearance, hence its name. Posteriorly it is prolonged as a delicate lamina, the **fasciola cinerea**, around the splenium of the corpus callosum, and becomes continuous on the upper surface of that body with its mesial and lateral longitudinal striae. Anteriorly it is prolonged into the notch produced by the recurving of the uncus, where it forms a sharp curve; from here it can be traced as a delicate band, the **band of Giacomini**, over the uncus, on the outer surface of which it is lost.

The remaining structures which contribute to the formation of the limbic lobe will be subsequently described.

7. **The Olfactory Lobe or Rhinencephalon** (*lobus olfactorius*) (Figs. 555 and 569).—The olfactory lobe is situated on the under surface of the frontal lobe. It is rudimentary in man and some other mammals, but in vertebrates generally it is well developed, and consists of a distinct extension of the cerebral hemisphere, enclosing a portion of the anterior horn of the lateral ventricle. In man it is long and slender, and may be described as consisting of two parts, the **anterior** and **posterior olfactory lobules.**

The Anterior Olfactory Lobule.—The anterior olfactory lobule is made up of: (1) the **olfactory bulb**; (2) the **olfactory tract**; (3) the **trigonum olfactorium**; (4) the **area of Broca.**

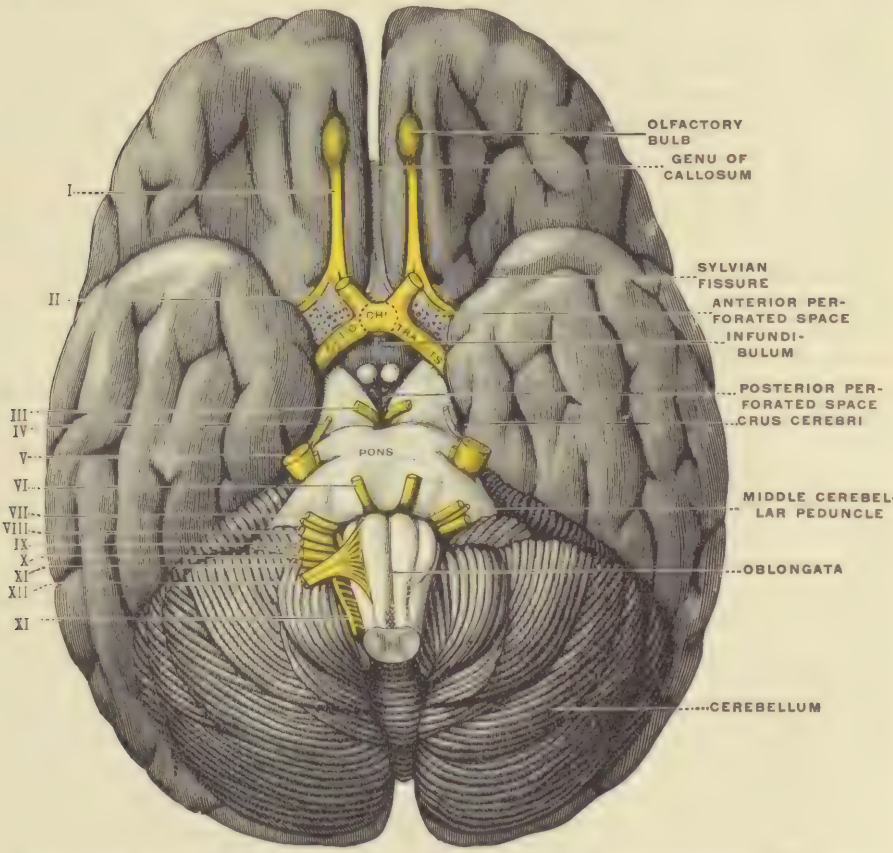


FIG. 570.—Under surface of the brain, showing the superficial origins of the cranial nerves. The Roman numerals indicate the nerves. (Testut.)

(1) The **Olfactory Bulb** (*bulbus olfactorius*) (Fig. 570) is an oval mass of reddish-gray color, which rests on the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone below and the olfactory sulcus of the orbital surface of the frontal lobe above. It forms the anterior expanded extremity of the olfactory tract. Its under surface receives the olfactory nerves, which pass upward through the cribriform plate from the olfactory region of the nose. Its minute structure will be subsequently described.

(2) The **Olfactory Tract** (*tractus olfactorius*) (Fig. 570), often called the **olfactory nerve** or **first cranial nerve,** is a band of white matter, triangular on section, the apex being directed upward. It lies in the olfactory sulcus on the under surface of the frontal lobe. Traced backward, it is seen to divide into two roots, an outer

and an inner. Some have called the olfactory tubercle a middle root. The *outer root* passes across the outer part of the anterior perforated space to the **nucleus amygdalae** and the anterior part of the **gyrus hippocampi**. The *inner root* turns sharply inward, and ends partly in **Broca's area** and partly in the **callosal convolution**; in other words, the inner root is continuous with one extremity and the outer root with the other extremity of the limbic lobe (Fig. 569).

(3) The **Trigonum Olfactorium** or **Olfactory Tubercle** is situated between the diverging roots of the olfactory tract, and is sometimes described at the *middle* or *gray root* of the tract. It is part of an area of gray matter, which forms the base of the anterior olfactory lobule; another portion of it is termed (4) the **area of Broca** (*area parolfactoria*), the portion of gray matter between the internal root and the peduncle of the corpus callosum; and a third portion, of no special significance, is situated external to the outer root of the olfactory tract. This area of gray matter is bounded internally and posteriorly by a sulcus, the **fissura prima** (*sulcus parolfactorius posterior*), which separates it from the peduncle of the corpus callosum and from the posterior olfactory lobule. The area of Broca is continuous with the gyrus fornicatus, and receives fibres from the inner or mesial root.

The Posterior Olfactory Lobule.—The posterior olfactory lobule corresponds to the portion of the hemisphere called the **anterior perforated space** (*locus perforatus anticus* or *substantia perforata anterior*) (Figs. 566 and 570). It is marked off from the anterior lobule by the **sulcus parolfactorius posterior**, and is situated at the commencement of the fissure of Sylvius. Internally, it is bounded by the peduncle of the corpus callosum, and is continuous with the lamina cinerea. Posteriorly it is bounded by the optic tract, and it is partially concealed by the temporal lobe which overlaps it. It has received the name of **anterior perforated space** from its being perforated by numerous openings, which transmit blood-vessels to the interior of the brain, and it corresponds to the under surface of the lenticular nucleus.

Under Surface or Base of the Encephalon (*facies basalis encephali*) (Fig. 570).—Having considered the surface of the hemispheres, the student should direct his attention to the base of the brain, before commencing the study of the component parts which make up the two hemispheres.

The base of the brain presents for examination the under surfaces of the frontal and temporal lobes; the structures contained in the interpeduncular space, with the crura cerebri or cerebral peduncles; the under surfaces of the pons Varolii, cerebellum, and medulla oblongata; and the superficial origins of the cranial nerves.

The various objects exposed to view (with the exception of the superficial origins of the cranial nerves, which will be considered in another section), in the middle line and on either side of the middle line, are here arranged in the order they are met with from before backward.

In the Middle Line.	*On Each Side of the Middle Line.*
Longitudinal fissure.	Frontal lobe.
Rostrum and peduncles of corpus callosum.	Olfactory lobe.
Lamina cinerea.	The anterior perforated space.
Optic commissure.	Fissure of Sylvius.
Tuber cinereum.	Optic tracts.
Infundibulum.	Crura cerebri.
Pituitary body.	Temporal lobe.
Corpora albicantia.	Hemisphere of cerebellum.
Posterior perforated space.	
Pons Varolii.	
Medulla oblongata.	

The Longitudinal Fissure (*fissura longitudinalis cerebri*) (p. 865).—The longitudinal fissure partially separates the two hemispheres from each other. It divides completely the anterior portions of the two frontal lobes; and on raising the cerebellum and pons it will be seen to separate completely the two occipital lobes; of these two portions of the longitudinal fissure, that which separates the occipital lobes is the longer. The intermediate part of the fissure is filled up by the great transverse band of white matter, the **corpus callosum**. In the fissure between the two frontal lobes the anterior cerebral arteries ascend on the corpus callosum.

The Corpus Callosum.—The corpus callosum, the transverse commissure which joins the two cerebral hemispheres, is described on p. 886. It terminates at the base of the brain by a concave margin, which is connected with the tuber cinereum through the intervention of a thin layer of gray substance, the **lamina cinerea**. This may be exposed by gently raising and drawing back the optic commissure. A white band may be observed on each side, passing backward from the under surface of the corpus callosum, across the posterior margin of the anterior perforated space to the hippocampal gyrus, where it meets the corresponding outer root of the olfactory tract; this band is called the **peduncle of the corpus callosum** or the **gyrus subcallosus** (*pedunculus corporis callosi*). The band may be traced upward around the genu to become continuous with the striae longitudinales on its upper surface. Laterally, this portion of the corpus callosum extends into the frontal lobe.

The Lamina Cinerea.—The lamina cinerea is a thin layer of gray substance, extending upward in the anterior portion of the great longitudinal fissure from the optic commissure to join the rostrum of the corpus callosum. It is continuous on each side with the gray matter of the anterior perforated space, and forms the anterior part of the inferior boundary of the third ventricle. The portion of the lamina cinerea which is turned upward is called the **lamina terminalis**.

The Optic Commissure or Optic Chiasma (*chiasma opticum*).—The optic commissure is situated in the middle line, immediately in front of the tuber cinereum and below the lamina cinerea; that is to say, the commissure is superficial to the lamina in the order of dissection when the base is uppermost. It is the point of junction between the two optic tracts, and will be described with the cranial nerves. Immediately behind the diverging optic tracts, and between them and the **peduncles of the cerebrum** (*crura cerebri* or *pedunculi cerebri*), is a lozenge-shaped interval, the **interpeduncular space** (*fossa interpeduncularis* [*Tarini*]). The **posterior recess** (*recessus posterior*) of this space passes for a little way underneath the anterior margin of the pons; the **anterior recess** (*recessus anterior*) passes between the corpora albicantia. The floor of the interpeduncular space is the **substantia perforata posterior**, and in the space are found the following parts: the tuber cinereum, infundibulum, pituitary body, corpora albicantia, and the posterior perforated space.

The Tuber Cinereum.—The tuber cinereum is an eminence of gray matter, situated between the optic tracts, and extending from the corpora albicantia to the optic commissure, to which it is attached; it is connected with the surrounding parts of the cerebrum, forms part of the floor of the third ventricle, and is continuous with the gray substance in that cavity. From the middle of its under surface a conical tubular process of gray matter, about two lines in length, is continued downward and forward to be attached to the posterior lobe of the pituitary body. This is the **infundibulum**, and its canal, which is funnel-shaped, communicates with the third ventricle.

The Pituitary Body (*hypophysis cerebri*).—The pituitary body is a small, reddish-gray, vascular mass, weighing from five to ten grains, and of an oval form, situated in the sella turcica, where it is retained by a process of dura mater, named the **diaphragma sellae** (Fig. 544). This process of the dura covers in the sella turcica,

and has a small hole in its centre through which the infundibulum passes, the **foramen diaphragmatis sellae** (Fig. 544).

Structure.—The pituitary body is very vascular, and consists of two lobes, separated from one another by a fibrous lamina. Of these, the anterior and the larger is of an oblong form, and somewhat concave behind, where it receives the posterior lobe, which is round. The two lobes differ both in development and structure. The **anterior lobe**, of a dark, reddish-brown color, is developed from the epiblast of the buccal cavity, and resembles to a considerable extent, in microscopic structure, the thyroid body. It consists of a number of isolated vesicles and slightly convoluted tubules, lined by epithelium and united together by a very vascular connective tissue. The epithelium is columnar and occasionally ciliated. The alveoli sometimes contain a colloid material, similar to that found in the thyroid body, and their walls are surrounded by a close network of lymphatic and capillary blood-vessels. The **posterior lobe** is developed as an outgrowth from the embryonic brain, and during fœtal life contains a cavity which communicates through the infundibulum with the cavity of the third ventricle. In the adult it becomes firmer and more solid, and consists of a sponge-like connective tissue arranged in the form of reticulating bundles, between which are branched cells, some of them containing pigment. In the lower animals the two lobes are quite distinct, and it is only in the mammalia that they become fused together. The pituitary body is believed to be a *ductless gland*, which furnishes an internal secretion. In many cases of acromegaly the gland is enlarged or otherwise diseased.

The Corpora Albicantia or Corpora Mamillaria.—The corpora albicantia or mamillaria are two small, round, white masses, each about the size of a pea, placed side by side immediately behind the tuber cinereum, and connected with each other across the mesial plane. They are mainly formed by the anterior crura or pillars of the fornix, which, after descending to the base of the brain, are twisted upon themselves to form loops, and constitute the white covering of the corpora albicantia. A second fasciculus, the **bundle of Vicq d'Azyr** (*fasciculus thalamomamillaris*) (Figs. 574 and 586), converges from the optic thalamus, and enters the anterior part of each body on its dorso-mesial surface. The corpora albicantia are composed externally of white substance, and internally of gray matter; the nerve-cells of the gray matter are arranged in two sets, inner and outer, the cells of the former set being the smaller. Each corpus is connected to the tegmentum by a small bundle of fibres, the **peduncle of the mamillary body** (*pedunculus corporis mamillaris* (Fig. 586). At an early period of fœtal life the corpora albicantia are blended together into one large mass, but become separated about the seventh month. In most vertebrates there is only one median corpus albicans.

The Posterior Perforated Space or Lamina or the Pons Tarini (*locus perforatus posticus, substantia perforata posterior*).—The posterior perforated space corresponds to a whitish-gray fossa placed between the corpora albicantia in front, the pons Varolii behind, and the crus cerebri on either side. It is in reality a visible portion of the substantia nigra and forms the floor of the interpeduncular fossa. It forms the posterior part of the floor of the third ventricle, and is perforated by numerous small orifices for the passage of the postero-median ganglionic branches of the posterior cerebral and posterior communicating arteries. Slender white bands are observed in some subjects coming from the gray matter of the posterior perforated space, passing around the crura cerebri, and entering into the pons Varolii. The bands bear the name of the **taenia pontis**.

The Pons Varolii (p. 922).—The pons Varolii is situated immediately behind the two crura of the cerebrum. It consists of a broad band of white fibres, which pass transversely from one cerebellar hemisphere to the other; the band becoming

narrower as it enters the cerebellum. In the middle line on its under surface a narrow groove runs from before backward and accommodates the basilar artery.

The Medulla Oblongata, Medulla Spinalis or Bulb (p. 938).—The medulla oblongata emerges from the posterior border of the pons Varolii; it is pyramidal in form, and is continuous below with the cervical portion of the spinal cord. It is marked on its ventral surface by a median fissure, continuous below with the anterior median fissure of the cord, and on either side by secondary fissures and columns, which will be described in the sequel.

The Frontal Lobe.—The under surface of the frontal lobe, sometimes named the **orbital lobe,** is seen on the anterior part of the base of the brain on either side of the median line. It has already been described (p. 874).

The Olfactory Lobe (p. 880).

The Anterior Perforated Space (p. 881).

The Fissure of Sylvius (*fissura lateralis cerebri*).—The fissure of Sylvius at the base of the brain separates the frontal from the temporal lobe, and lodges the middle cerebral artery. It has also been described (p. 866).

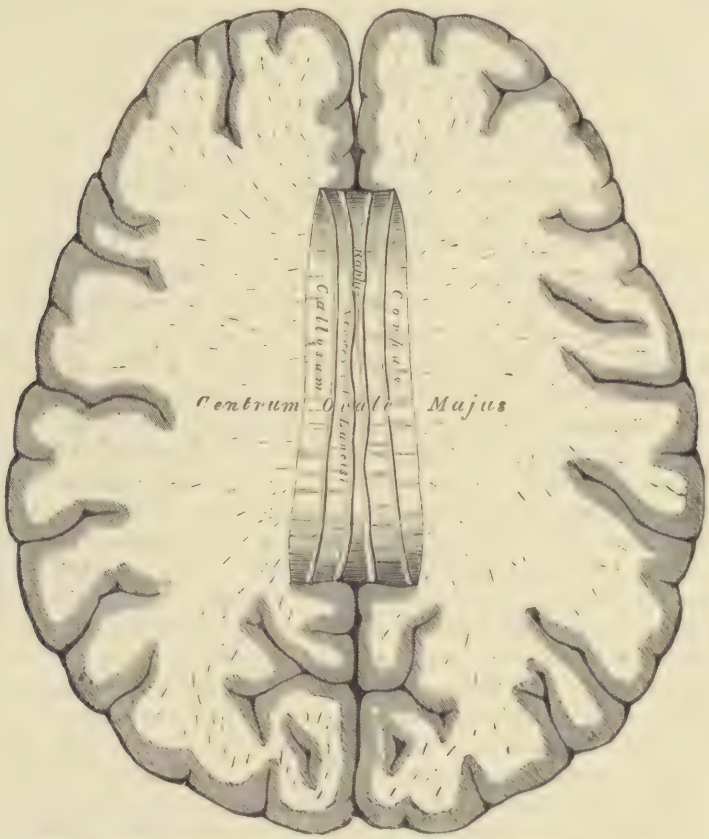


FIG. 571.—Section of the brain. Made on a level with the corpus callosum.

The Optic Tracts.—The optic tracts are well-marked, flattened bands of fibres, which run obliquely across the crus cerebri on either side, and unite anteriorly to form the optic commissure. They will be described in connection with the cranial nerves.

The Crura Cerebri or the Peduncles of the Cerebrum (*pedunculi cerebri*) (p. 906).—The crura cerebri are two thick cylindrical bundles of white matter, which appear

in front of the anterior border of the pons, and diverge as they pass forward and outward to enter the under surface of each hemisphere. They compose the chief portion of the mesencephalon. Each crus is about three-quarters of an inch in length, and is about the same in breadth anteriorly, but somewhat less posteriorly. They are marked upon their surface with longitudinal striae, and each is crossed, just before entering the hemisphere, by the fourth nerve and the optic tract, the latter of which is adherent by its upper surface to the peduncle. Each crus is composed of two parts, a **superior** or **dorsal part**, and an **inferior, ventral**, or **pedal part**. The dorsal part is known as the **tegmentum of the crus cerebri** (*tegmentum*), the fibres (p. 908) of which pass up into the region beneath the optic thalamus, a region known as the **subthalamic tegmental region**. The ventral portion is known as the **crusta** (*basis pedunculi*), the fibres of which (p. 907) pass up external to the optic thalamus and into the **internal capsule**. On the surface of the crus are two grooves which mark the separation between the tegmentum and the crusta. One groove is on the inner (mesial) surface; it is called the **sulcus nervi oculo-motorii**, and from it comes the third or motor oculi nerve. The other groove on the outer (lateral) surface is called the **sulcus lateralis mesencephali**. It passes down into the interval between the superior and middle cerebellar peduncles. From the outer surface of the tegmentum some slender fibres, called the **lateral fillet** (*lemniscus lateralis*), pass to the inferior quadrigeminal body. If a transverse section of the crus is made, the **substantia nigra** is seen between the tegmentum and the crusta. It is a band of pigmented gray matter which begins somewhat below the upper margin of the pons and ascends into the subthalamic area.

The Temporal Lobe (Fig. 878).—The under surface of the temporal lobe is visible at the base of the brain, on either side of the crura and the structures contained in the interpeduncular space. It is separated anteriorly from the frontal lobe by the fissure of Sylvius, and behind is limited by the anterior border of the lateral hemispheres of the cerebellum. The fissures and lobes on its surface have already been described (p. 877).

The Hemispheres of the Cerebellum (*hemisphaeria cerebelli*) (p. 929).—The hemispheres of the cerebellum are situated on either side of the middle line, and cover the occipital lobes of the cerebrum, when viewed from the base. The cerebellum differs much in appearance from the rest of the encephalon, being of a darker color, while its convolutions are smaller and narrower, are arranged like the leaves of a book, and hence are called **folia**.

General Arrangement of the Parts Composing the Cerebrum.—Each hemisphere, as already stated, consists of a central cavity, the **lateral ventricle**, surrounded by thick and convoluted walls of nervous tissue.

Interior of the Cerebrum.—If the upper part of either hemisphere is removed with a knife, about half an inch above the level of the corpus callosum, its internal white matter will be exposed. It is an oval-shaped centre, of white substance, surrounded on all sides by a narrow convoluted margin of gray matter, which presents an equal thickness in nearly every part. This white central mass has been called the **centrum ovale minus**. Its surface is studded with numerous minute red dots (*puncta vasculosa*), produced by the escape of blood from divided blood-vessels. In inflammation or great congestion of the brain these are very numerous and of a dark color. If the remaining portion of one hemisphere is slightly separated from the other, a broad band of white substance will be observed, connecting them at the bottom of the longitudinal fissure; this is the **corpus callosum**. The margins of the hemispheres which overlap this portion of the brain are called the **labii cerebri**. Each labium is part of the **callosal convolution** already described; and the space between it and the upper surface of the corpus callosum is termed the **callosal sulcus** (*sulcus corporis callosi*) (Figs. 562 and 567). The hemispheres should now be sliced off to a level with the upper surface of the corpus callosum,

when the white substance of that structure will be seen connecting the two hemispheres. The large expanse of medullary matter now exposed, surrounded by the convoluted margin of gray substance, is called the **centrum ovale majus of Vieussens** (Fig. 571).

The Corpus Callosum (Figs. 571, 574, and 586).—The corpus callosum is a thick stratum of transversely directed nerve-fibres, by which probably almost every part of one hemisphere is connected with the corresponding part of the other hemisphere (Figs. 572 and 573). It connects not only corresponding but also non-corresponding portions of the cortices. The fibres of this body, when they pass from it into the hemispheres radiate in various directions (*radiatio corporis callosi*) between the fibres of the corona radiata, to terminate in the gray matter of the periphery. According to Cajal the termination is in the layer of small pyramidal cells of the cortex. The corpus callosum thus connects the two hemispheres of the brain, forming their great transverse commissure, and at the same time roofs in the lateral ventricles (Fig. 575). The best conception of its size and form is

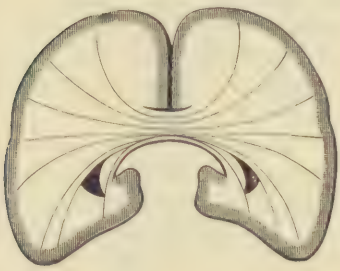


Fig. 572.—Diagram of coronal section of cerebrum to show course of fibres of callosum. (Testut.)

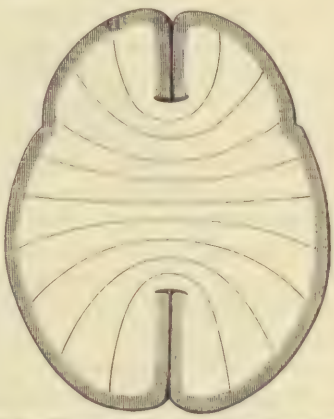


Fig. 573.—Diagram of horizontal section of cerebrum to show course of fibres of callosum. (Testut.)

obtained by making an anterior posterior vertical section through the centre of the brain (Figs. 574 and 586). It is then seen to be a long, thick, irregularly flattened arch, **body of the corpus callosum** (*truncus corporis callosi*); in front taking a sharp bend, the **genu** (*genu corporis callosi*) (Fig. 577), and dipping downward and backward to the base of the brain by a reflected portion, the **beak** or **rostrum** (*rostrum corporis callosi*), which is connected with the lamina cinerea; behind it terminates by a rounded end, which is folded over and is named the **splenium** (*splenium corporis callosi*) (Fig. 577). The corpus callosum is about four inches in length, and extends to within an inch and a half of the anterior and two inches and a half of the posterior extremity of the cerebrum. It is somewhat broader behind than in front, and is thicker at either end than in its central part. The reflected anterior portion of the corpus callosum is called the **beak** or **rostrum**; it becomes gradually thinner as it descends, and is attached by its lateral margins to the frontal lobes. At its termination, in addition to joining the lamina cinerea, the corpus callosum gives off on each side a band of white substance, the **peduncle of the corpus callosum** (*gyrus subcallosus* or *pedunculus corporis callosi*), already described (p. 882).

Posteriorly, the corpus callosum forms a thick rounded fold, called the **pad** or **splenium**, which is free for a little distance as it curves forward, and is then continuous by its under surface with the fornix. The splenium overlaps the mesencephalon, but is separated from it by the pia mater, which is prolonged forward to

form the velum interpositum (Fig. 548). On the upper surface of the corpus callosum the structure is very apparent, the fibres being collected into coarse transverse bundles (Fig. 571). Along the middle line is a longitudinal depression, the so-called **raphé,** bounded laterally on each side by two or more slightly elevated longitudinal bands (Fig. 571). The internal band on each side is called the **stria longitudinalis medialis** or **nerve of Lancisi.** The external band is the **stria longitudinalis lateralis** or **taenia tectae.** The external band is beneath the convolution of the corpus callosum. There is an attenuated sheet of gray matter with the external and internal striae, and it, with the striae, constitutes the so-called **gyrus supra-callosus** (pp. 882 and 886). On each side of the middle line the under surface of the corpus callosum forms the roof of the lateral ventricle, while in the mesial plane it is continuous behind with the fornix, being separated from it in front by the septum lucidum, which forms

FIG. 574.—Vertical median section of the encephalon, showing the parts of the middle line.

1. Convolution of the corpus callosum. Above it is the calloso-marginal fissure.
2. Fissure of Rolando.
3. The parieto-occipital fissure.
4, 4, point to the calcarine fissure, which is just above the numbers. Between 2 and 3 are the convolutions of the quadrate lobe. Between 3 and 4 is the cuneate lobe.
5. The corpus callosum.
6. The septum lucidum.
7. The fornix.
8. Anterior crus of the fornix, descending to the base of the brain, and turning on itself to form the corpus albicans. The bundle of Vicq d'Azyr is indicated by a dotted line.
9. The optic thalamus. Behind the anterior crus of the fornix a shaded part indicates the foramen of Monro; in front of the number an oval mark shows the position of the gray or middle commissure.
10. The velum interpositum.
11. The pineal gland.
12. The corpora quadrigemina.
13. The crus cerebri.
14. The valve of Vieussens (to right of the number).
15. The pons Varolii.
16. The third nerve.
17. The pituitary body.
18. The optic nerve.
19 points to the anterior commissure, indicated by the oval outline behind the number.

a vertical partition between the two ventricles (Figs. 574 and 586). On each side the fibres of the corpus callosum extend into the substance of the hemispheres, connecting them together. The greater thickness of the two extremities of this commissure is explained by the fact that the fibres from the anterior and posterior parts of each hemisphere cannot pass directly across, but have to take a curved direction. The part of the corpus callosum which curves forward on each side from the genu into the frontal lobe and covers the front part of the anterior cornu of the lateral ventricle is called the **forceps anterior** or **forceps minor.** The part which

curves backward from each side of the splenium into the occipital lobe is known as the **forceps posterior** or **forceps major**. Between these two parts on each side is a collection of fibres, which cover in the body of the lateral ventricle. These constitute the **tapetum** or **mat**. The tapetum helps to form the roof and outer wall of the posterior horn of the lateral ventricle and the outer wall of the posterior portion of the descending horn of the ventricle. These fibres were formerly regarded as fibres of the callosum, but in reality are the fibres of the **fasciculus occipito-frontalis** which diverge posteriorly. The corpus callosum contains a few projection fibres, but is chiefly composed of association fibres and branches from both association and projection fibres.

An incision should now be made through the corpus callosum, on either side of the raphé, when two large irregular cavities will be exposed, which extend through a great part of the length of each hemisphere. These are the lateral ventricles.

The Lateral Ventricle (*ventriculus lateralis*) (Fig. 575).—The lateral ventricle is an irregular cavity situated in the lower and inner parts of the cerebral hemisphere.

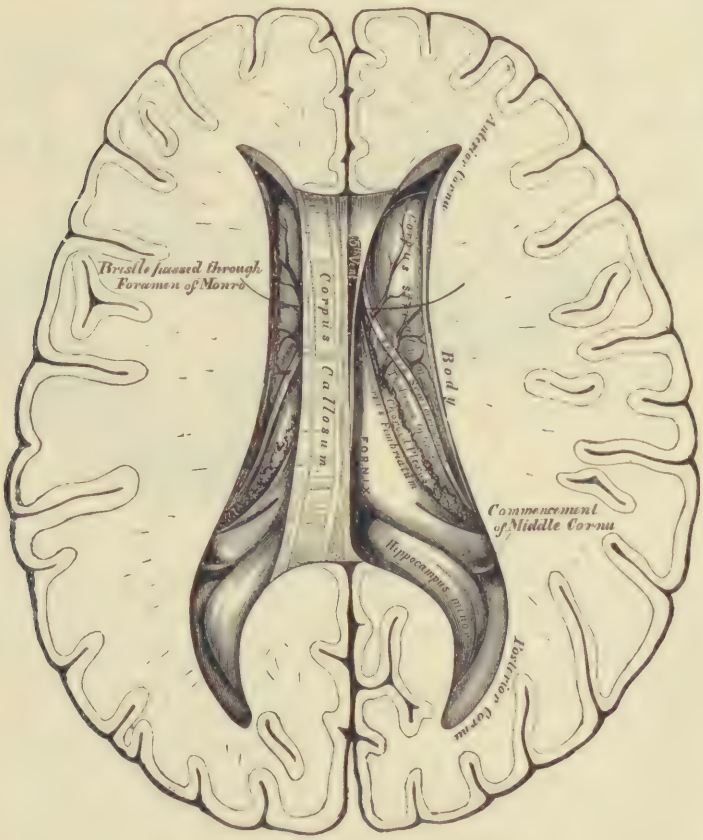


FIG. 575.—The lateral ventricles of the brain.

There are two lateral ventricles, one being placed on either side of the middle line. They are separated from each other by a mesial vertical partition, the **septum lucidum** (Figs. 574 and 586), but communicate with the third ventricle and indirectly with each other through the **foramen of Monro** (Figs. 548, 574, and 575). They are lined by a thin, diaphanous membrane, the **ependyma**, which is neuroglia covered by ciliated epithelium. The layer of neuroglia is absent over the optic thalamus and the choroid plexus. The lateral ventricles communicate with each other and with

the third ventricle, and are moistened by the cerebro-spinal fluid, which, even in health, may be secreted in considerable amount. Each lateral ventricle consists of a **central cavity** or **body** and three prolongations from it, termed **cornua.** The *anterior* cornu curves forward and outward into the frontal lobe; the *posterior* backward and inward into the occipital lobe; and the *middle* descends into the *temporal* lobe.

The **Septum Lucidum** (*septum pellucidum*) (Figs. 574, 586, and 587) is composed of two thin, vertical laminae, which lie in the median line with their mesial surfaces almost in contact. These sheets are triangular and can be separated, and the cavity thus shown is called the **fifth ventricle** (*cavum septi pellucidi*) (Fig. 575). It contains a little fluid, but does not communicate with the general ventricular cavity. Each lamina of the septum lucidum bears the name of the **lamina septi pellucidi.** The front part of the septum lucidum lies behind the genu of the corpus callosum, and below it passes toward the base of the brain between the fornix and the posterior margin of the rostrum, to terminate in the subcallosal gyrus. Posteriorly, the septum lucidum passes back between the fornix and the body of the corpus callosum, being attached to each structure.

The **Central Cavity** or **Body** of the lateral ventricle (*ventriculus lateralis* [*pars centralis*]) (Fig. 575) is situated in the lower part of the parietal lobe. It is an irregularly curved cavity, triangular in shape on transverse section, and presents a **roof,** a **floor,** an **inner wall,** and an **outer wall.** Its **roof** is formed by the under surface of the corpus callosum; its **mesial wall** is the septum lucidum, which separates it from the opposite ventricle and connects the under surface of the corpus callosum with the fornix; its **external wall** is the internal capsule; its **floor** is formed by the following parts, enumerated in their order of position, from before backward; the caudate nucleus of the corpus striatum, taenia semicircularis, the epithelial covered optic thalamus, the epithelial covered choroid plexus, the superior surface of the body of the fornix and part of its posterior pillar.

The **Anterior Cornu** or **Frontal Horn** (*cornu anterius*) (Fig. 575) passes forward and outward, with a slight inclination downward, from the foramen of Monro into the frontal lobe, curving round the anterior extremity of the caudate nucleus. Its roof is the forceps minor of the corpus callosum, and its floor the upper surface of the reflected portion of the corpus callosum, the **rostrum.** It is bounded mesially by the anterior portion of the septum lucidum, and externally by the head of the caudate nucleus of the corpus striatum. Its apex reaches the posterior surface of the genu of the corpus callosum.

The **Foramen of Monro** (*foramen interventriculare*) (Figs. 548, 574, 575, and 587) extends from the anterior and superior extremity of the third ventricle and the point of junction of the anterior horn with the central cavity of the lateral ventricle. It lies between the anterior pillar of the fornix and the anterior margin of the optic thalamus This foramen connects the third ventricle with the two lateral ventricles.

The **Posterior Cornu** or **Occipital Horn** (*cornu posterius*) (Fig. 575) curves backward into the substance of the occipital lobe, its direction being backward and outward, and then inward; its concavity is therefore directed inward. Its **roof** is formed by the tapetum of the corpus callosum passing to the temporal and occipital lobes, which also helps to bound this horn externally. On its **mesial wall** is seen a longitudinal eminence, which is in an involution of the ventricular wall produced by the calcarine sulcus; this is called the **hippocampus minor** (*calcar avis*). Just above this the forceps major of the splenium, sweeping around to enter the occipital lobe, causes another projection, which is known as the **bulb of the posterior horn** (*bulbus cornu posterius*). The hippocampus minor and bulb of the posterior horn are extremely variable in their degree of development, being in some cases ill defined, while in others they are unusually prominent. The balance of the posterior horn is bounded by the white substance of the occipital lobe.

Between the middle and posterior cornu is a triangular area, called the **trigonum ventriculi** (see Descending Horn).

The **Middle** or **Descending Cornu** or **Temporal Horn** (*cornu inferius*) (Figs. 575, 581, and 583), the largest of the three traverses the temporal lobe of the brain, forming in its course a remarkable curve around the back of the optic thalamus. It passes at first backward, outward, and downward, and then curves around the crus cerebri, forward and inward, to within an inch of the apex of the temporal lobe, its direction being fairly well indicated on the surface of the brain by that of the parallel sulcus. Its **antero-external boundary** or **roof** is formed by the under surface of the tapetum of the corpus callosum, the pulvinar of the optic thalamus, and the inferior layer of the internal capsule. The tail of the nucleus caudatus of the corpus striatum and the taenia semicircularis are also prolonged into it, and extend forward in the roof of the descending horn to its extremity, where they end in a mass of gray matter, the **amygdaloid nucleus** (*nucleus amygdalae*); this nucleus is merely a localized thickening of the adjacent gray cortex. The **posterior boundary** or **floor of the lateral ventricle** presents for examination the following parts: the **hippocampus major** (*hippocampus*), **pes hippocampi** (*digitationes hippocampi*), **eminentia collateralis** or **pes accessorius, corpus fimbriatum** (*fimbria hippocampi*), prolonged from the **posterior pillar of the fornix,** and the **choroid plexus.** Along the medial aspect of the descending cornu there is a cleft-like opening, the **choroid fissure**, which is the lower part of the transverse fissure, through which the choroid plexus of the pia mater is invaginated into the ventricle, but covered by the epithelium of the ependyma, which is pushed in before it. Upon the inner wall are also noted the **epithelial covering,** the **pulvinar,** and the **dentate convolution** or **fascia** (*fascia dentata hippocampi*) (Figs. 562 and 581), which is the irregular and free cortical margin.

FIG. 576. Horizontal section of left hemisphere through the basal ganglia, viewed from above. *C.N.*, caudate nucleus. (Testut.)

The **Corpus Striatum** (Figs. 575, 576, 577, 580, and 584), the basal ganglion of the hemisphere, has received its name from the striped appearance which its section presents, in consequence of diverging white fibres being mixed with the gray matter which forms the greater part of its substance. It is situated to the front and to the outside of the optic thalamus. The corpus striatum measures about two inches in its antero-posterior diameter and one and a quarter inches transversely.[1] The larger portion of this body is embedded in the white substance of the hemisphere, and is therefore external to the ventricle. It is termed the **extra-ventricular portion** or the **lenticular nucleus**

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord. By Harris E. Santee.

(*nucleus lentiformis*); a part, however, is visible in the ventricle and its anterior cornu; this is the **intra-ventricular portion** or the **caudate nucleus** (*nucleus caudatus*). These two portions are separated by the **internal capsule.**

The **caudate nucleus** (*nucleus caudatus*) (Figs. 576, 577, 579, and 580) is a pear-shaped, highly arched mass of gray matter; its broad anterior extremity, the **bulb** or **head** (*caput nuclei caudati*), is directed forward into the forepart of the body and anterior cornu of the lateral ventricle; its narrow posterior end, the **tail** or **surcingle** (*cauda nuclei caudati*), is directed outward and backward on the floor of the body of the lateral ventricle and on the outer side of the optic thalamus, from which structure it is separated by the **taenia semicircularis** (Fig. 577); it is continued downward into the descending cornu of the lateral ventricle and

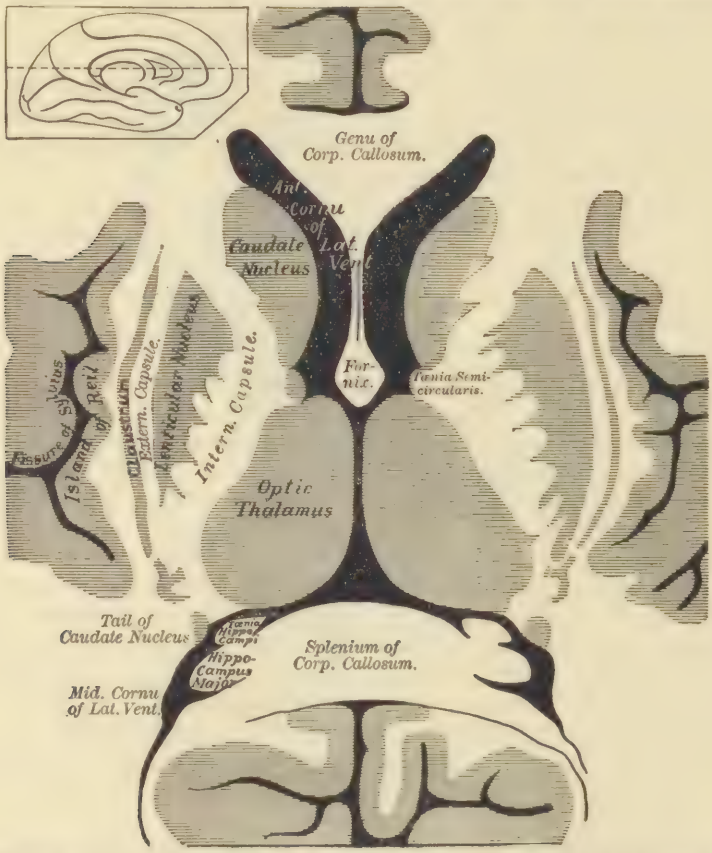


FIG. 577.—Middle part of a horizontal section through the cerebrum at the level of the dotted line in the small figure in one hemisphere. (From Ellis, after Dalton.)

is continued forward in the roof to terminate in the **amygdaloid nucleus,** a collection of gray matter in the apex of the temporal lobe. It is covered by the lining of the ventricle, and crossed by some veins of considerable size. It is separated from the extra-ventricular portion, in the greater part of its extent, by a lamina of white matter which is called the **internal capsule,** but the two portions of the corpus striatum are united in front.

The **lenticular nucleus** (*nucleus lentiformis*) (Figs. 576, 577, 579, and 580) is a mass of gray matter which lies external to the caudate nucleus and the thalamus, and is only seen in sections of the hemisphere. The laminae of the internal capsule separate it from the ventricle. If a coronal section is made through the anterior portion of the lenticular nucleus, it is seen to be continuous below with the head of the caudate nucleus (Fig. 578). Above strands of gray matter join the two nuclei,

and these bands pass through the anterior part of the white internal capsule and give it a striated appearance; hence the term corpus striatum, which is applied to the mass of which the two nuclei are parts. When divided horizontally, it presents, to some extent, the appearance of a biconvex lens, while a vertical transverse section of it gives a somewhat triangular outline. It does not extend as far forward or backward as the nucleus caudatus. It is bounded externally by a lamina of white matter called the **external capsule** (*capsula externa*) (Figs. 576, 577, 578, and 579), on the outer surface of which is a thin layer of gray matter termed the **bulwark** or **claustrum** (Figs. 576, 577, 578, and 579). The claustrum presents ridges and furrows on its outer surface, corresponding to the convolutions and sulci of the island of Reil, from which it is separated by a thin white lamina (Figs. 576, 577, and 578).

Upon making a transverse vertical section through the middle of the lenticular nucleus, it is seen to present two white lines, **external** and **internal medullary laminae** (*laminae medullare externa et interna*) (Fig. 579), parallel with its lateral border, which divide it into three zones, of which the outer and largest is of a reddish color, and is known as the **putamen,** while the two inner are paler and of a yellowish tint, and constitute the **globus pallidus** (Figs. 578 and 579). All three zones are marked by fine radiating white fibres, which are most distinct in the putamen. The gray matter of the corpus striatum is traversed by nerve-fibres, some of which are believed to originate in it. The cells of the corpus striatum are multipolar, both large and small; those of the lenticular nucleus containing yellow pigment.

The **internal capsule** (*capsula interna*) (Figs. 576, 577, 578, 579, and 580) is formed by fibres of the crusta of the crus cerebri, supplemented by fibres derived from the corpus striatum and optic thalamus on each side. Sagittal section exhibits a **superior lamina** and an **inferior lamina,** continuous with each other behind, but separated in front by the Sylvian fissure. The inferior lamina is thin and its fibres terminate in the parietal and temporal lobes. The superior lamina is thick, contains most of the crusta, and the term internal capsule as usually employed is synonymous with it. In horizontal section (Figs. 576, 577, 578, and 579) the internal capsule is seen to be somewhat abruptly curved, with its convexity inward; the prominence of the curve is called the **knee** or **genu of the internal capsule** (*genu capsule internal*) (Fig. 578), and projects between the caudate nucleus and the optic thalamus. The portion in front of the genu is termed the **frontal portion,** the **anterior limb** or the **lenticulo-striate division** (*pars frontalis capsulae internae*), and separates the lenticular from the caudate nucleus; the portion behind the genu is the **occipital portion,** the **posterior limb** or the **lenticulo-optic division** (*pars occipitalis capsulae internae*), and separates the lenticular nucleus from the optic thalamus.

Fibres of the Internal Capsule (Figs. 578 and 579). **Inferior Lamina.**—The fibres of the inferior lamina of the internal capsule pass externally under the lenticular nucleus, over the amygdala and descending horn of the lateral ventricle, and reach the parietal lobe and the temporal lobe. The **motor fibres** constitute a portion of the **motor temporo-pontal tract** which extend from the temporal cortex to the nucleus pontis. The **sensory fibres** consist of a portion of the **acustic radiation,** which passes from the corpus geniculata interna to the auditory cortex in the temporal lobe, and **ansa peduncularis,** a tract of common sensation which passes from the optic thalamus to the sensory region of the cortex. Some of the fibres of the **median fillet** join the ansa peduncularis and pass through the inferior lamina.

Superior Lamina.—This portion is often spoken of as though it were the entire internal capsule. It contains the greater part of the crusta and enters the corona radiata. The **pyramidal tract** is in the knee of the internal capsule. Its fibres come from the cortical region about the central sulcus of Rolando and

pass through the knee of the internal capsule; most of them, by way of the middle of the crusta, to reach the spinal cord (p. 907); some of them end in the pons and medulla. The anterior segment of the superior lamina of the internal capsule contains motor fibres which come from the prefrontal region of the cortex and pass by way of the inner one-fifth of the crusta to the nucleus pontis

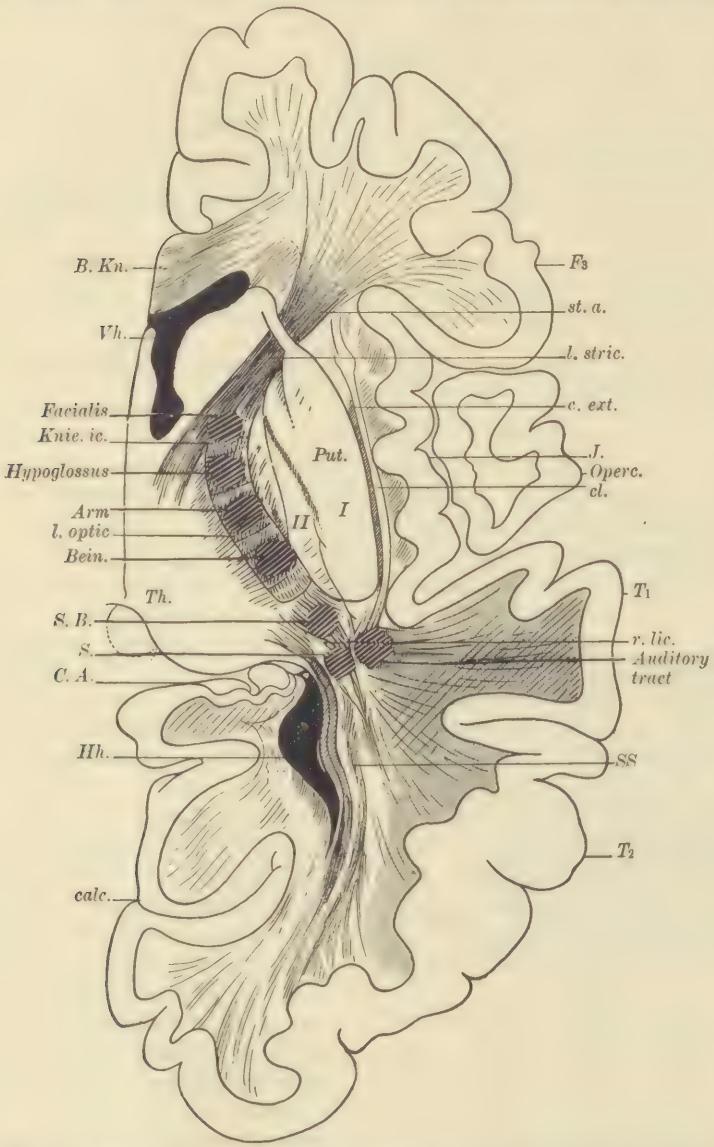


FIG. 578.—Horizontal section through the right hemisphere. *B. kn*, knee of corpus callosum; *Vh*, anterior horn of lateral ventricle; F_3, inferior part of third frontal convolution; *l. stric*, lenticulo-striate division of internal capsule; *Knie. ic*, knee of internal capsule; *l. optic*, lenticulo-optic division of internal capsule; *Th*, optic thalamus; *J*, island of Reil; *cl*, claustrum; *Operc*, operculum; T_1, first temporal convolution; *r. lic*, retrolenticular region of internal capsule; *C.A.*, hippocampus major; *calc*, calcarine fissure; *Hh*, posterior horn of lateral ventricle; *SS*, optic radiation of Gratiolet; T_2, second temporal convolution; *Facialis*, position in capsule of motor tract to the face; *Hypoglossus*, position of tract to the tongue; *Arm*, position of tract to the arm; *Bein*, position of tract to the leg; *S.B.*, sensory fibres; *S*, visual tract; *A*, auditory tract. (M. Allen Starr, after von Monakow.)

and nuclei of cranial nerves. These fibres constitute the **fronto-pontal tract** (*tractus cerebrocorticofrontalis pontalis*). In the posterior segment of the superior lamina of the internal capsule is a part of the tract from the temporal cortex to the nucleus pontis and the nuclei of cranial motor nerves, the balance

of which tract is in the inferior lamina. This path occupies the outer one-fifth of the crusta, and is the **temporo-pontal tract** (*tractus cerebrocorticopontalis temporalis*).

The **sensory fibres** include common sensory fibres and fibres of special sense. Fibres of common sensation exist in both the anterior and posterior segments, and these fibres pass from the optic thalamus to the sensory region of the cortex, and are known as the **cortical fillet**. The fibres of special sense are found where the superior lamina joins the inferior lamina.

The **optic radiations of Gratiolet** (*radiatio occipitothalamica* [*Gratioleti*]) are in the portion back of the lenticular nucleus, and pass from the optic thalamus and corpus geniculatum externum to the cuneus.

The **auditory radiations** (*radiatio temporothalamica*) are also back of the lenticular nucleus and pass from the corpus geniculatum externum to the temporal cortex.

Numerous fibres of the internal capsule give off collaterals which reach the opposite hemisphere by way of the corpus callosum, none of them reaching the cortex.

NOTE.—The above description of the fibres of the internal capsule is largely taken from the *Anatomy of the Brain and Cord*, by Harris E. Santee, M.D.

As the fibres of the internal capsule ascend to reach the various convolutions of the cerebral hemisphere they spread out like an open fan. This expansion is the **corona radiata**. The constituent parts and fibre-groups of the internal capsule are shown in Figs. 578 and 579.

The **external capsule** (*capsula externa*) (Figs. 576, 577, 578 and 579) is a lamina of white matter, situated on the outer side of the lenticular nucleus, between it and the claustrum, and is continuous with the internal capsule in front of and behind the putamen. It is made up of fibres derived partly from the anterior white commissure (Fig. 580) and partly from the subthalamic region.

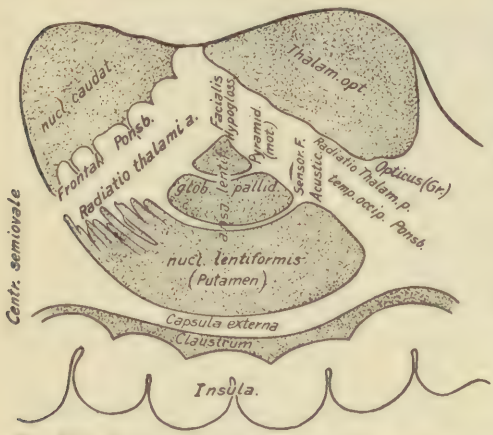


FIG. 579. Scheme of the internal capsule. (Jakob.)

The **Claustrum** (Figs. 576, 577, 578, and 579) is a thin layer of gray matter, situated on the outer surface of the external capsule. On transverse section it is seen to be triangular, with its apex directed upward and its base downward. Its inner surface, which is contiguous to the external capsule, is smooth, but its outer surface presents ridges and furrows which correspond with the convolutions and sulci of the island of Reil, with which it is in close relationship. The claustrum is regarded as a detached portion of the gray matter of the island of Reil, from which it is separated by a layer of white fibres, the **band of Baillarger** (*capsula extrema*) (Figs. 576 and 577). The cells of the claustrum are small and spindle-shaped, and contain yellow pigment; they are similar to those found in the deepest layer of the cortex.

The **Taenia Semicircularis** (*stria terminalis*) (Figs. 575, 577, and 584) is a narrow, whitish band of medullary substance, situated in the depression between the caudate nucleus and the optic thalamus. Anteriorly its fibres are partly continued into the anterior pillar of the fornix; some, however, pass over the anterior commissure to the gray matter between the caudate nucleus and septum lucidum, while

others penetrate the caudate nucleus. Posteriorly it is continued into the roof of the middle or descending horn of the lateral ventricle, at the extremity of which it enters the amygdaloid nucleus, an oval mass of gray matter, situated in the roof of the lower extremity of the descending horn. Like the corpus striatum, it is formed by a localized thickening of the gray matter of the cortex cerebri. Superficial to it is a large vein, **vena corporis striati,** which receives numerous small veins from the surface of the corpus striatum and optic thalamus; it unites with the choroid vein to form the vein of Galen (p. 856). On the surface of the vein of the corpus striatum is a narrow band of white fibres, named the **lamina cornea.**

The remains of the corpus callosum should now be removed in order to expose the fornix.

The Fornix (Figs. 574, 575, 576, 577, 580, 582, 583, 586, and 587).—The fornix is a longitudinal, arch-shaped lamella of white matter, situated beneath the corpus callosum, with which it is continuous behind, but from which it is separated in front by the septum lucidum. It may be described as consisting of two symmetrical halves, one for either hemisphere. The two portions are not united to each other in front and behind, but their central parts are joined together in the middle line. The two anterior, separated parts are called the **anterior pillars**; the intermediate united portions constitute the **body of the fornix**; and the posterior parts, which are also separated from each other, are called the **posterior pillars.**

The **Body of the Fornix** (*corpus fornicis*) is triangular, narrow in front, broad behind. Its *upper surface* is connected, in the median line, to the septum lucidum in front, and the corpus callosum behind; laterally this surface forms part of the floor of each lateral ventricle. Its *under surface* rests upon the velum interpositum, which separates it from the third ventricle and the inner portion of the upper surface of the optic thalami. Its outer edge, on each side, is free, and is connected with the choroid plexuses.

The **Anterior Pillars of the Fornix** (*columnae fornicis*) arch downward toward the base of the brain and are separated from each other by a narrow interval. They are composed of white fibres, which descend immediately behind the anterior commissure, where each anterior pillar passes through the inner part of the optic thalamus of that side. At the base of the brain each pillar becomes twisted upon itself to form a loop, somewhat resembling the figure 8. The lowest part of the loop constitutes the white matter of the corresponding **corpus albicans,** from which the fibres can apparently be traced upward and backward, as the **bundle of Vicq d'Azyr,** into the substance of the corresponding optic thalamus (Figs. 574 and 586). It must be stated, however, that there is probably no direct continuity between this bundle and the anterior pillar of the fornix—the latter possibly ending in the gray matter of the corpus albicans. The anterior pillars of the fornix are joined in their course by the **peduncles of the pineal gland** and the superficial fibres of the taenia semicircularis, and receive fibres from the septum lucidum. Zuckerkandl describes an **olfactory fasciculus,** which becomes detached from the main portion of the anterior pillar of the fornix, and passes downward, in front of the anterior commissure, to the base of the brain, where it divides into two bundles, one joining the inner root of the olfactory tract; the other, the peduncle of the corpus callosum, and through it reaching the hippocampal convolution.

Between the anterior pillars of the fornix and the anterior extremity of the optic thalamus an oval aperture is seen on each side; this is the **foramen of Monro** (*foramen interventriculare*) (Figs. 548, 574, 575, and 587). The two openings descend toward the middle line, and lead into the upper part of the third ventricle. Through this foramen the lateral ventricles communicate with the third ventricle, and consequently with each other; through it also the two choroid plexuses become joined with each other across the middle line. The boundaries of the

opening are, above and in front, the anterior pillars of the fornix; behind, the anterior extremity of the optic thalamus.

The **Posterior Pillars of the Fornix** (*crura fornicis*) are the backward prolongations of the two halves of the body of the fornix. They are flattened bands, and, at their commencement, are intimately connected by their upper surfaces with the corpus callosum. Diverging from one another, each curves round the posterior extremity of the optic thalamus, and then passes downward and forward into the descending horn of the lateral ventricle. Here it lies along the concavity of the hippocampus major, on the surface of which some of its fibres are spread out, the **alveus**, while the remainder are continued, as the **fimbria**, the **corpus fimbriatum**, the **taenia fornicis** or the **taenia hippocampi** (for it bears these different names) (Figs. 562, 575, 577, and 583), into the **hook** or **uncus** of the hippocampal convolution. Upon examining the under surface of the fornix, between its diverging posterior pillars, a triangular portion of the under surface of the corpus callosum may be seen. On it are a number of curved or oblique lines passing between the two pillars of the fornix. This portion has been termed the **lyra** or **psalterium** (Fig. 583), from the fancied resemblance it bears to a harp. It is also called the **commissura hippocampi**. In some cases there is a small space intervening between the lyra and the under surface of the corpus callosum known as **Verga's ventricle**.

The Anterior Commissure of the Cerebrum (*commissura anterior cerebri*) (Figs. 580, 584, and 587).—The anterior commissure of the cerebrum is a bundle of white fibres, in the anterior wall of the third ventricle, placed in front of the anterior pillars of the fornix, behind the rostrum of the corpus callosum, and resting upon the lamina terminalis. The anterior commissure connects the two hemispheres, and in vertebrates possessing a corpus callosum is an extremely important structure. On transverse section it is oval in shape, its largest diameter being vertical in direction and measuring about one-fifth of an inch. Its fibres pass backward and downward through the globus pallidus and below the putamen on each side, from which point most of the fibres radiate to the cortex, but some go to the external capsule. The fibres of the anterior commissure are divisible into two groups: 1. An **anterior group** (*pars anterior* or *pars olfactoria*), the fibres of which join the limbic lobes and connect each limbic lobe to the olfactory tract of the opposite side. The fact that the pars anterior contains fibres from the olfactory tract of the opposite side may serve to explain the condition of crossed anosmia, *e. g.*, where there is a lesion in one temporal lobe with a loss of smell in the olfactory area of the opposite side of the nose. 2. A **posterior group** (*pars posterior* or *pars occipitotemporalis*), the fibres of which pass to the cortex of the temporal lobe and of the lower part of the occipital lobe.

FIG. 580.—Anterior commissure, left half, viewed from above. (Testut.)

The Septum Lucidum (*septum pellucidum*) (Figs. 574, 586, and 587).—The septum lucidum is a thin, double, vertically placed partition, which forms the internal boundary of the body and anterior horn of the lateral ventricle. It consists of two distinct laminae, separated in part of their extent by a narrow chink or interval,

called the **fifth ventricle**. It is a thin, semitransparent septum, attached, above, to the under surface of the corpus callosum; in front to the reflected portion of the corpus callosum; below it passes between the fornix and the posterior margin of the rostrum to terminate in the sub-callosal gyrus; posteriorly it is between the fornix and body of the corpus callosum, being attached to each. It is triangular in form, broad in front and narrow behind; its inferior angle corresponds with the upper part of the anterior commissure. The outer surface of each lamina is directed toward the lateral ventricle, and is covered by the ependyma of that cavity, while its medial surface bounds the cavity of the fifth ventricle (p. 889).

Fifth Ventricle (*cavum septi pellucidi*).—The fifth ventricle was originally a part of the great longitudinal fissure, which was shut off by the union of the hemispheres in the formation of the corpus callosum above and the fornix below. Each half of the septum is therefore formed by the medial wall of the hemisphere, and consists of an internal layer of gray matter, derived from the gray matter of the cortex, and an external layer of white substance continuous with the white matter of the cerebral hemispheres. The fifth ventricle differs from the other ventricles of the brain, inasmuch as it is not developed from the cavity of the cere-

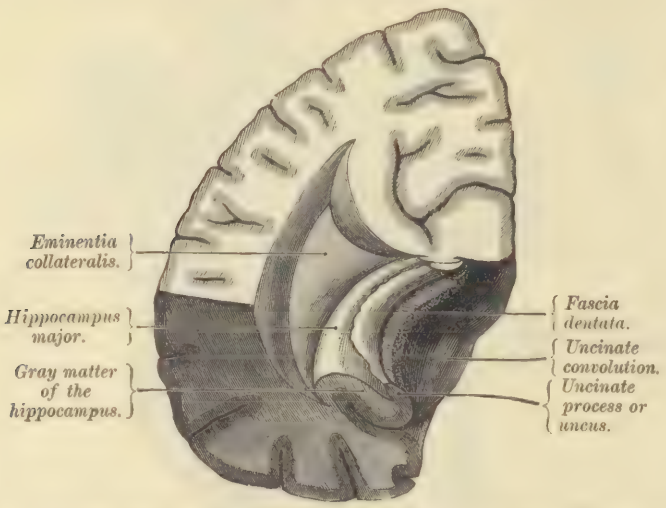


FIG. 581.—Transverse section of the middle horn of the lateral ventricle. (From a drawing by Mr. F. A. Barton.)

bral vesicles, it is not lined by ciliated epithelium but by altered pia mater, and it does not communicate with the general ventricular cavity; further, the fluid it contains is not cerebro-spinal fluid but is of the nature of lymph.

The structures on the floor of the descending horn of the lateral ventricle will now be described.

The **Hippocampus Major** or **Cornu Ammonis** (Figs. 581 and 583) is a white eminence, about two inches in length, of a curved elongated form, extending throughout the entire length of the floor of the descending horn of the lateral ventricle. At its lower extremity it becomes enlarged, and presenting two or three rounded elevations with intervening depressions, it resembles the paw of an animal, and is called the **pes hippocampi** (*digitationes hippocampi*) (Fig. 583). If a transverse section is made through the hippocampus major, it will be seen that this eminence is produced by the folding of the cortex of the brain to form the **dentate** or **hippocampal sulcus** (Figs. 562, 563, 564, and 567). The dentate fissure is separated from the choroid fissure by the **dentate gyrus** or **dentate fascia** (*fascia dentata*) (Figs. 562 and 581). The hippocampal gyrus and the fifth temporal gyrus together constitute the **uncinate convolution** (Figs. 567 and 581). The **uncus** (Fig. 581) is the

hook-like anterior extremity of the hippocampal or uncinate gyrus. To the outer side and parallel with the hippocampus major an elongated eminence, the **eminentia collateralis,** is frequently recognized (Fig. 581). It corresponds with the middle part of the collateral fissure, and its size depends on the direction and depth of this fissure. The main mass of the hippocampus major consists of gray matter, but on its ventricular surface is a thin layer of white matter, known as the **alveus,** which is continuous with the corpus fimbriatum of the fornix and is covered by the ependyma of the ventricle. Dr. J. G. Macarthy, of McGill University, Montreal, has shown[1] that, if the alveus and superficial strata of gray matter be reflected from the surface of the hippocampus by an incision carried along its convexity, the "core" of the hippocampus, as he terms it, presents in many cases a corrugated or crimped appearance.

The **Corpus Fimbriatum, Taenia Fornicis,** or **Fimbria** (*taenia hippocampi* or *taenia fimbriae*) (Figs. 562, 575, 577, and 583) has already been mentioned as a part of the posterior pillar of the fornix. It consists of a narrow white band, which is placed immediately below the choroid plexus, and is attached by its deep surface to the

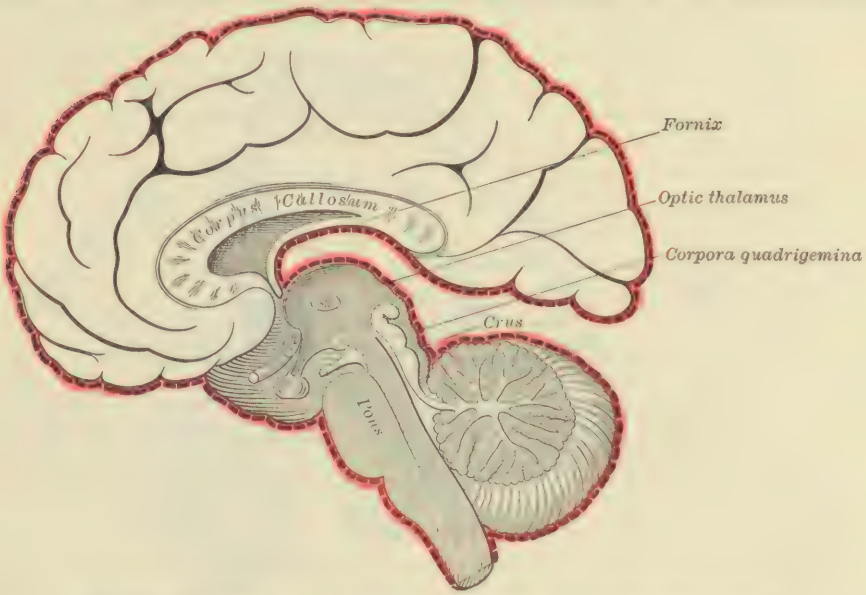


FIG. 582.—Diagram showing the mode of formation of the velum interpositum.

white matter or **alveus** of the hippocampus major as it courses through the descending cornu of the lateral ventricle. It can be traced as far as the uncus or hook of the hippocampal gyrus. Its inner margin is free, and rests upon the dentate fascia, from which it is separated by a slit-like fissure, the **fimbrio-dentate fissure.** The groove between the fimbria and the hippocampal convolution is the defile of the dentate fissure. Its outer margin is attenuated and irregular, and forms the line along which the ependyma is reflected over the choroid plexus as the latter is invaginated through the inferior part of the transverse fissure. When the choroid plexus is pulled away it carries the ependyma with it, and the descending horn opens on to the surface of the brain through the transverse fissure. If now the inner border of the corpus fimbriatum be raised, a notched band of gray matter, which is a free border of cortex, and is called the **dentate fascia** (*fascia dentata hippocampi*) (Figs. 562 and 581), will be exposed; this has already been described as forming part of the limbic lobe (p. 879).

[1] Journal of Anat. and Phys., 1899, vol. xxiii.

The **Choroid Plexus** (*plexus chorioideus*) (Figs. 548, 575, and 583) is a highly vascular, fringe-like structure, which is situated partly in the body and partly in the descending cornu of the lateral ventricle. It will be desirable to consider these two portions separately, in order to get a just conception of how they are formed.

The portion in the body of the ventricle is the vascular, fringed border of a triangular fold of pia mater, the **velum interpositum** (*tela chorioidea superior* or *tela chorioidea ventriculi tertii*), which lies on the under surface of the fornix and forms the roof of the third ventricle. The developing brain vesicles are covered by pia mater. As the prolongation from the first vesicle, which is to form the cerebral hemispheres, increases in size, it grows backward and downward and covers the other vesicles, with the result that the pia mater covering the hemisphere comes in

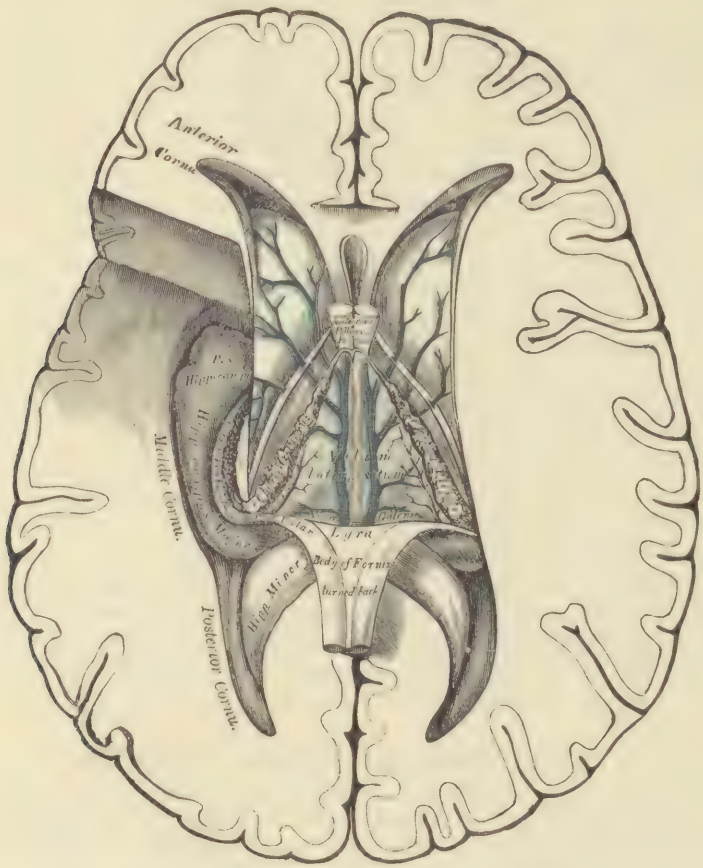


FIG. 583.—The fornix, velum interpositum, and middle or descending cornu of the lateral ventricle.

contact with that covering the upper surface of the second vesicle. Portions of the two layers which are in contact form the velum interpositum. Immediately above is the body of the fornix, which is formed by the fusion of the cerebral hemispheres in the middle line, and below is the cavity of the second vesicle (the third ventricle), with the optic thalamus on either side. Just beyond the free lateral border of the fornix, between it and the taenia semicircularis, is a portion of the first cerebral vesicle, which is not developed into nervous matter, but is made up only of ependyma covered by pia mater. The vessels of this portion of the highly vascular pia mater become dilated and prolonged, and grow into the ventricle, pushing the

ependyma before them, and forming an irregular congeries of vessels, apparently encroaching on the cavity of the lateral ventricle, but in reality being external to it, because they are separated from it by the lining membrane of the cavity, the ependyma. This vascular structure is the **choroid plexus of the body of the ventricle.**

The part of the choroid plexus seen in the descending cornu is formed in exactly the same way—viz., by an ingrowth of the vessels of the pia mater into the cavity, pushing the ependyma before it, at a part of the wall of the horn where there is a similar absence of nervous tissue and where it consists simply of pia mater and ependyma in close contact. This portion lies between the corpus fimbriatum in the floor and the taenia semicircularis in the roof of the descending horn. This area, destitute of nervous matter, is continuous with the area in the body of the ventricle, from which the choroid plexus of this region originated, and in it the vessels of its pia mater increase, and, invaginating the ependyma, appear in the descending horn as its choroid plexus. In the body of the ventricle the choroid plexus is really the vascular fringed margin of the velum; beyond the posterior margin of the velum the plexus of the descending horn is continuous with the pia mater on the surface of the gyrus hippocampi; the two portions of the plexus are, however, directly continuous with each other, and constitute the **choroid plexus of the lateral ventricle** (*plexus chorioideus ventriculi lateralis*). The gap or cleft through which the invagination of the pia mater takes place is called the **choroid fissure.**

In front the choroid plexus of the lateral ventricle is small and tapering, and communicates with the plexus of the opposite side through the foramen of Monro. In structure it consists of minute and highly vascular villous processes, containing an afferent and efferent vessel, and covered by a single layer of flattened epithelium, the cells of which often contain yellowish fat molecules. The **anterior choroidal artery** is derived from the internal carotid, and enters the ventricle at the extremity of the descending cornu, and, after ramifying in the plexus, sends branches into the adjacent parts of the brain. The **posterior choroidal arteries,** one or two in number on each side, are derived from the posterior cerebral artery, and reach the plexus by passing forward under the splenium of the corpus callosum. The veins of the choroid plexus unite to form a prominent vein, the **choroid vein,** which courses from behind forward to the foramen of Monro. On each side of the foramen of Monro a **deep cerebral vein** or **vein of Galen** is formed by the union of the choroid vein and the vein of the corpus striatum. The veins of Galen pass back in the velum interpositum, unite to form the **common vein of Galen** or the **vena magna Galeni** (*v. cerebri magna*), which empties into the straight sinus (p. 735).

The **Transverse Fissure** or **Fissure of Bichat** (*fissura cerebri transversa*), separates the cerebrum from the cerebellum. This fissure passes forward and ends in the cerebrum as the lateral part of the transverse fissure or the **choroid fissure** (*fissura chorioidea*). The posterior part of the transverse fissure is occupied by the **tentorium.** Posteriorly the transverse fissure has above it the mass of the cerebral hemisphere and below it the upper surface of the cerebellum, the corpora quadrigemina, and the pineal gland. The transverse fissure is a complete fissure, but it is filled by the invagination of the pia mater, forming laterally the velum interpositum and the choroid plexuses, which invagination is covered by the lining of the ventricular cavities. If this involution of pia mater is pulled out, the ventricular lining will necessarily be torn away with it, and a cleft-like space will be left on either side, extending from the foramen of Monro to the bottom of the descending horn of the lateral ventricle. The upper part of the cleft, that is to say, the part nearest the foramen of Monro, is between the lateral border of the body of the fornix and the optic thalamus; below this, at the commencement of the middle horn, it is between the commencing corpus fimbriatum

of the fornix and the pulvinar of the optic thalamus; and lower still, in the descending horn, between the corpus fimbriatum on the floor and the taenia semicircularis in the roof of the cornu. The course of the choroid fissure from the foramen of Monro is backward, downward, and forward, to near the apex of the temporal lobe. The choroid fissures of the two sides are continuous between the fornix and the roof of the third ventricle.

The **Velum Interpositum** or **Tela Chorioidea Superior** (*tela chorioidea ventriculi tertii*) (Fig. 548) is a vascular membrane, and is a prolongation of the pia mater into the interior of the brain through the middle part of the transverse fissure. It is of a triangular form, and separates the under surface of the body and posterior pillars of the fornix from the cavity of the third ventricle. Laterally it covers the inner part of the upper surface of the optic thalamus. Its posterior border or base lies beneath the splenium of the corpus callosum above, and the optic thalamus, the corpora quadrigemina, and pineal body below. The upper layer of the base is continuous with the pia mater of the occipital lobe, and the lower layer of the base is continuous with the pia mater of the dorsal aspect of the cerebellum and mid-brain. Its anterior extremity or *apex* ends just behind the anterior commissure, where it receives the anterior extremities of the choroid plexuses, which are here united through the foramen of Monro, and are then prolonged backward on the under surface of the velum as the **choroid plexus of the third ventricle** (*plexus chorioideus ventriculi tertii*). The inferior layer of the velum which carries the choroid plexus of the third ventricle is called the **superior choroid tela** (*tela chorioidea ventriculi tertii*). The external portion of the inferior layer of the velum interpositum covers the inner half of the superior surface of the optic thalamus. In front the plexuses of the third ventricle lie close to the middle line, but diverge from each other behind. Each lateral margin of the velum interpositum constitutes the choroid plexus of the corresponding lateral ventricle. It is supplied by the anterior and posterior choroidal arteries, already described. The veins of the velum interpositum, the **venae Galeni** (*vv. cerebri internae*), two in number, run between its layers, each being formed by the union of the **vein of the corpus striatum** (*v. corporis striata*) with the **choroid vein** (*v. chorioidea*). The venae Galeni unite posteriorly into a single trunk, the **vena magna Galeni** or the **common vein of Galen** (*v. cerebri magna*), which terminates in the straight sinus (Fig. 548). The portion of the pia mater prolonged over the lower half of the fourth ventricle is known as the **tela chorioidea inferior quarti.** It carries the **choroid plexus of the fourth ventricle** (*plexus chorioideus ventriculi quarti.*)

II. The Inter-brain (Thalamencephalon).

The inter-brain is the region of the third ventricle, and comprises the parts developed from the second cerebral vesicle, together with parts from that portion of the first vesicle which is not concerned in the formation of the cerebral hemispheres.

The inter-brain is connected above and in front with the cerebral hemispheres; behind, with the mid-brain or mesencephalon. On its upper surface it is entirely concealed from view, as it is covered by those portions of the internal surfaces of the cerebral hemispheres which have fused together to form the corpus callosum and the fornix, and is separated from the latter by the two layers of pia mater which form the velum interpositum. Inferiorly it reaches the base of the brain, forming the structures contained in the interpeduncular space.

The Third Ventricle (*ventriculus tertius*) (Fig. 584).—The third ventricle is the cavity of the inter-brain; it is in the mid-line, is at a lower level than the lateral ventricles; and the epithelial layer of the ependyma from the lateral ventricles is prolonged into the third ventricle through the foramen of Monro. The third ven-

tricle contains cerebro-spinal fluid. It is a narrow median crevice between the two optic thalami, which constitute the side walls of the inter-brain. It is "about an inch in length from before backward and one-quarter of an inch broad at its widest part."[1] Its *roof* is formed by the velum interpositum, from which is suspended the choroid plexus of the third ventricle. Its *floor*, somewhat oblique in its direction, is formed, from before backward, by the tuber cinereum, with its infundibulum and pituitary body; the corpora albicantia; the posterior perforated space; and the tegmenta of the crura cerebri. Its *sides* are formed by the optic thalami, and are limited above by a delicate band of white fibres, the **pineal stria** (*stria medullaris thalami*), which runs along the junction of the mesial and upper

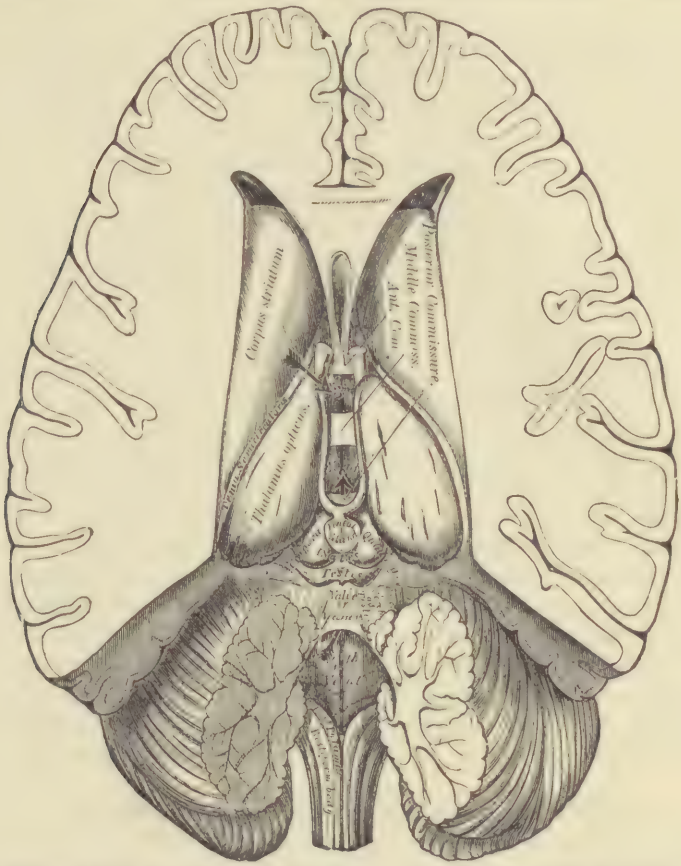


Fig. 584.—The third and fourth ventricles. An arrow has been placed in the position of the foramen of Monro.

surfaces of the optic thalamus to join the anterior pillars of the fornix. Its sides are somewhat convex, so that in the middle of the ventricle the two lateral walls are almost in contact, and are here united across the middle line by a band of gray nervous matter, the **middle, gray,** or **soft commissure** (Fig. 584). The ventricle is bounded in front by the anterior pillars of the fornix and the lamina cinerea; behind by the pineal gland, the posterior commissure, and the upper end of the aqueduct of Sylvius, the iter a tertio ad quartum ventriculum. The cavity is much deeper in front than behind, and presents a recess at its anterior part, which lies over the optic commissure and is, therefore, termed the **optic recess** (*recessus opticus*). Behind and below this is the conical depression of the infundibulum (Fig. 587), passing

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord. By Harris E. Santee.

downward and forward to the pituitary body. At its posterior extremity the cavity forms another and smaller recess, which extends into the stalk of the pineal gland, and is termed the **pineal recess** (*recessus pinealis*). The anterior part of the third ventricle is called the **aula**. At the upper and anterior part of the third ventricle, immediately behind the anterior pillars of the fornix and in front of the optic thalamus, is an opening, the **foramen of Monro** (*foramen interventriculare* [*Monroi*]), by which this ventricle communicates with the lateral ventricle on either side (Figs. 548, 574, 575, and 587). The foramen of Monro opens into each lateral ventricle at the point of junction of the anterior horn and the body of the ventricle. It lies between the anterior pillar of the fornix and the anterior margin of the optic thalamus and ends by opening into the anterior and superior extremity of the third ventricle. Running back from the foramen of Monro toward the aqueduct of Sylvius is a furrow called the **sulcus of Monro** (*sulcus hypothalamicus* [*Monroi*]). At the posterior part of the floor of the third ventricle, beneath the **posterior commissure**, is the opening of the **aqueduct of Sylvius** or **iter a tertio ad quartum ventriculum** (Fig. 587), the channel which joins the third and fourth ventricles (p. 912). The *roof* of the cavity of the third ventricle is limited in front and behind by transverse bands of white matter, known respectively as the **anterior** and **posterior commissures**. The former has already been described in connection with the corpus striatum (p. 896).

The Middle, Gray, or Soft Commissure (*massa intermedia* or *commissura mollis*) (Fig. 584).—The middle, gray, or soft commissure consists almost entirely of gray matter. It connects the two optic thalami, and is continuous with the gray matter lining the anterior part of the third ventricle. It is frequently broken in examining the brain, and might then be supposed to be wanting; it is sometimes double.

The Posterior Commissure (*commissura posterior*) (Figs. 584 and 587.—The posterior commissure is a rounded band of white fibres, which stretches across from one optic thalamus to the other, overlying the upper end of the aqueduct of Sylvius. It is usually described as belonging to the inter-brain, but would appear to belong in part to the mid-brain, since some of its fibres are commissural and connect the anterior corpora quadrigemina to the fillet of the opposite side (see below). In addition there are other decussating fibres, which come from the tegmentum of the crus cerebri on one side and decussate with those of the opposite side in the posterior commissure, and passing through the optic thalamus reach the cerebral hemispheres. Fibres have also been described as taking their origin in the pineal body and ganglion habenulae, and passing across to the posterior longitudinal bundle and oculomotor nucleus of the opposite side; these fibres occupy the ventral part of the commissure, and receive their myelin sheath before those in its dorsal part. But to a certain extent the posterior commissure belongs to the inter-brain, since it contains fibres which serve as commissural fibres between the two optic thalami.

The Optic Thalamus (*thalamus*) (Figs. 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 582, and 584).—The optic thalami are two large oblong masses, situated on either side of the third ventricle, and lying between the diverging portions of the corpora striata. They are composed mainly of gray matter, but the free surface of each is coated with a thin layer of white nervous tissue, the **stratum zonale**. They present outer and under surfaces, which are not free, but are blended with contiguous parts of the brain, and upper, inner, and posterior surfaces, which are free. The anterior extremity is narrow, and forms the posterior boundary of the foramen of Monro. The *outer surface* is in contact with the posterior limb of the internal capsule, which separates it from the lenticular nucleus. The *inferior surface* rests upon and is continuous with the tegmentum of the crus cerebri. Its *upper surface* is free, and is separated from the caudate nucleus by a furrow which lodges the vein of the

corpus striatum, and the taenia semicircularis. It is divided into an outer and an inner part by a groove which runs from behind, forward, and inward. The *outer part* forms a portion of the floor of the lateral ventricle, and is covered by the ependyma of that cavity; it terminates in front in a tubercle, the **anterior tubercle of the optic thalamus** (*tuberculum anterius thalami*). The *inner part* is covered by the velum interpositum, which separates it from the fornix, and is excluded from both the lateral and third ventricles by the reflection of the lining of these cavities, and is therefore destitute of an ependymal covering.

The *internal surface* forms the lateral wall of the third ventricle, and running along its upper border is the peduncle of the pineal gland, from which the ependyma of the third ventricle is reflected on to the under surface of the velum interpositum. The shelf-like edge of the ependyma separates the superior from the internal surface of the thalamus. The edge is called the **taenia thalami**, and close to it is a narrow band of longitudinal fibres called the **pineal striae** (*striae medullaris thalami*). The taenia thalami and the pineal striae pass backward and then inward into the stalk of the pineal gland. The portion of the taenia which turns inward has posterior to it a small triangular depression called the **trigone of the habenula** (*trigonum habenulae*). This depression is just in front of the superior quadrigeminal body. Passing in a medial direction from the trigonum habenulae is a collection of white fibres, the **habenula**. The fibres of the anterior portion of this band are continuous with those of the opposite side, and constitute the **commissure of the habenula** (*commissura habenularum*). The fibres of the posterior portion constitute the peduncle of the pineal gland (p. 906). The *posterior surface* projects beyond the level of the corpora quadrigemina, and forms a well-marked rounded prominence, the **posterior tubercle** or **pulvinar**. The pulvinar is continued externally into a second eminence, the **external geniculate body** (*corpus geniculatum laterale*), which is placed above and to the outer side of the **internal geniculate body** (*corpus geniculatum mediale*), and from which it is separated by the **superior brachium**, one of the roots of the optic tract.

The *optic* or *free upper surface* of the thalamus is covered by white fibres derived, in part, at least, from the optic tract and radiation. The thalamus is formed chiefly of gray matter, which is arranged in three masses partially separated from each other by white matter called the **internal medullary lamina** (*lamina medullaris interna*), which is named internal in contradistinction to a second or **external medullary lamina** (*lamina medullaris externa*), which coats the outer surface of the thalamus and lies between it and the internal capsule. These masses of gray matter are the **nuclei of the optic thalamus**. Twenty nuclei have been described (Nissl). The chief nuclei are the following:

1. **The External** or **Lateral Nucleus** (*nucleus lateralis thalami*).—The external or lateral nucleus, the largest of the nuclei, between the external and internal medullary laminæ and extending the entire length of the thalamus, including, as Prof. Cunningham points out, the entire pulvinar, most of the tegmental fibres, and one-fifth of the optic fibres, terminate in this nucleus, and from it originate the fibres of the **thalamic radiation.**

2. **The Middle** or **Internal Nucleus** (*nucleus medialis thalami*).—The middle or internal nucleus is separated by the internal medullary lamina from the other gray nuclei of the same side. It joins the middle nucleus of the opposite thalamus by means of the middle commissure.

3. **The Anterior Nucleus** (*nucleus anterior thalami*).—The anterior nucleus is in the anterior tubercle, and in it terminate the fibres of the bundle of Vicq d'Azyr which come from the corpus mamillare (Fig. 586).

In the substance of the thalamus are two other distinct nuclei, (4) the **central nucleus of Luys** and (5) the **nucleus arcuatus**. The **nucleus** or **ganglion of the habenula** lies in the trigonum habenulae.

Connections of the Optic Thalamus (Figs. 586, 589, and 590).—The optic thalamus is a ganglion interposed between the sensory tracts in the tegmentum and the cerebral cortex, being connected also with the optic tract. In this ganglion or in the adjacent ganglia of the subthalamic region, "almost every impulse of general sensation, on its journey to the cerebral cortex, is transferred to a higher neurone."[1] The crusta of the crus cerebri is external to the optic thalamus and passes into the internal capsule. The tegmental fibres of the crus (Fig. 586) pass to the under surface of the thalamus, and the forward prolongation of the tegmentum which becomes continuous with the under surface of the thalamus is called the **subthalamic region,** and most of the longitudinal fibres enter this ganglion, some of them terminating in it, some of them traversing it and entering the internal capsule. The internal capsule (Figs. 578, 589, and 590) is composed of fibres going to and coming from the cerebral cortex. Most of these fibres are descending and form the crus cerebri. From all over the external surface of the optic thalamus fibres emerge, pass into the internal capsule, and from there go to the cerebral cortex. These fibres constitute the **thalamic radiation.**

The nuclei of the thalamus have been described (p. 904). The white matter receives the fibres of the tegmentum and fillet, the majority of which enter the lateral nucleus; it receives fibres (axones) from the entire cerebral cortex and sends fibres to the cortical special sense areas of sight, hearing, and smell and to the area of general sensation) the *somaesthetic area*).

The following groups of fibres of white matter are found in the thalamus: 1. The anterior pillar of the fornix, which passes through the inner part of the optic thalamus on its way to the corpus mamillare, and the bundle of Vicq d'Azyr, (*fasciculus thalamomamillaris*) (Fig. 586), which arises in the corpus mamillare and ascends to the anterior gray nucleus. 2. Two bundles of fibres emerging from the external surface of the thalamus. The **superior bundle** (*ansa lenticularis*) *arises* largely in the lateral nucleus, passes through the internal capsule and the lenticular nucleus; it then enters the external capsule, and passes to the insula, the paracentral lobule, the superior frontal convolution, and "the entire limbic lobe"[2] (Fig. 589). The **inferior bundle** (*ansa peduncularis*) *arises* in the lateral nucleus, passes through the internal capsule below the lenticular nucleus, "enters into both the medullary laminae of that nucleus and the external capsule. It ends chiefly in the cortex of the ascending frontal and ascending parietal convolutions"[3] (Fig. 589). These fibres constitute the **ventral** or **inferior stalk of the thalamic radiation.** 3. The **anterior stalk of the thalamic radiation** (Figs. 588 and 590) arises in the lateral nucleus, passes to the frontal portion of the internal capsule, and reaches the inferior and middle frontal convolutions, the anterior portion of the superior frontal convolution, and the middle of the gyrus fornicatus (Santee), and is called the **optic radiation** (*radiatio occipitothalamica*). The anterior stalk of the thalamic radiation, plus the ansa lenticularis and the ansa peduncularis, constitutes the **cortical fillet** or the **three systems of Flechsig** (p. 915). 4. The **posterior stalk** of the thalamic radiation (Fig. 590). The afferent part arises in the pulvinar and the external geniculate body, passes through the internal capsule, and terminates in the occipital cortex. The efferent portion terminates in the superior quadrigeminal body. 5. The **acoustic radiation** (Fig. 590) *arises* about the internal geniculate body, passes through the internal capsule, and reaches the auditory region in the temporal cortex.

The Pineal Body, Epiphysis Cerebri, Conarium, or Pineal Gland (*corpus pineale*) (Figs. 584 and 587).—The pineal body or gland, so named from its peculiar shape (pinus, a *fir-cone*), is a small reddish-gray body, conical in shape (hence its synonym, *conarium*), placed immediately above and behind the

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord. By Harris E. Santee. [2] Ibid. [3] Ibid.

posterior commissure and between the anterior corpora quadrigemina, on which it rests. It is covered by the velum interpositum, which intervenes between it and the splenium of the corpus callosum. It is an upgrowth from the second cerebral vesicle (hence the name epiphysis), and is at first hollow, but soon becomes solid and loses its connection with the ventricular cavity. It is retained in its position by a duplicature of pia mater, derived from the under surface of the velum interpositum, which almost completely invests it. The pineal gland is about four lines in length and from two to three in width at its base, and is said to be larger in the child than in the adult, and in the female than in the male. It is attached on either side by a flattened stalk or peduncle of white matter, the **pedunculus conarii** (*habenula*). This stalk consists of two laminae, upper and lower, separated by a little recess, the **pineal recess** (*recessus pinealis*). The lower lamina is prolonged into the posterior commissure. The upper divides into two strands, the **peduncles of the pineal gland** (*striae pinealis*); these extend on either side along the optic thalamus at the junction of its mesial and upper surfaces to the anterior pillars of the fornix, with which they blend. The two stalks join together at their posterior extremity, in front of the pineal gland, forming a sort of festoon, and the base of the gland is connected to their posterior margin at the point of junction.

Structure.—The pineal gland consists of a number of follicles, lined by epithelium, and connected together by ingrowths of connective tissue. The follicles contain a transparent viscid fluid and a quantity of sabulous matter named **brain sand** (*acervulus cerebri*), composed of phosphate and carbonate of lime, phosphate of magnesia and ammonia, with a little animal matter. These concretions are almost constant in their existence, and are present at all periods of life. They are found upon the surface of the pineal body and occasionally upon its peduncles.

Morphologically the pineal gland is regarded as the homologue of the structure termed the *pineal eye* of the lizards. In these reptiles the epiphysis cerebri is attached by an elongated stalk and projects through the parietal foramen. Its extremity lies immediately under the epidermis, and on microscopic examination presents, in a rudimentary fashion, structures similar to those found in the eyeball.

III. The Mid-brain (Mesencephalon) (Figs. 557, 584, 585, 587).

The mid-brain is the short and constricted portion of the brain which lies in the opening of the tentorium cerebelli (*incisura tentorii*) and which connects the pons Varolii with the inter-brain and hemispheres, and hence it is frequently called the **isthmus cerebri** (*isthmus rhombencephali*). It is developed from the third cerebral vesicle, the cavity of which becomes the aqueduct of Sylvius. It comprises the crura cerebri, the corpora quadrigemina, the geniculate bodies, and the Sylvian aqueduct. Its direction is from before backward and downward. In front and above it is continuous with the inter-brain; below with the pons. Its two surfaces are ventral and dorsal. They are free, but concealed: the ventral surface by the apices of the temporal lobes which overlap it; the dorsal, by the overhanging cerebral hemispheres. The *ventral surface*, when exposed by drawing aside the temporal lobes, is seen to consist of two cylindrical bundles of white matter which emerge from the pons and diverge as they pass forward and outward to enter the inner and under part of either hemisphere. They are the **cerebral peduncles** (*crura cerebri*), and between them is a triangular area, already described as part of the **interpeduncular space** (*fossa interpeduncularis*) (see pp. 884 and 885); near the point of divergence of the crura the roots of the third nerve are seen to emerge in several bundles from a groove, the **sulcus oculomotorius** (*sulcus nervi oculomotorii*) (Fig. 570). The *dorsal surface* (Fig. 584) is not visible until a considerable portion of the cerebral hemispheres and other overlying structures have

been removed. It then presents four rounded eminences placed in pairs, two in front and two behind, and separated from one another by crucial depression. These are termed the **corpora quadrigemina** (*tubercula quadrigemina*) (Figs. 584 and 585). The ventral and dorsal surfaces meet on the side of the mid-brain, and are separated from each other by a furrow, the **lateral groove** (*sulcus lateralis mesencephali*), which runs from below upward and forward (Fig. 585).

If a cross-section be made through the mesencephalon (Fig. 585), it will be seen that each lateral half is divided into two unequal portions by a lamina of deeply pigmented gray matter, named the **substantia nigra**. The postero-superior portion of the crus is named the **tegmentum**, and the antero-inferior the **crusta** or **pes**. The substantia nigra is curved on section with its concavity upward, and extends from the lateral groove externally to the oculomotor sulcus internally. The two crustae are in contact in front of the pons, from which point they diverge from one another, but the two halves of the tegmentum are joined to each other in the mesial plane by a prolongation forward of the raphé or median septum of the pons. Laterally the tegmenta are free, but dorsally they blend with the corpora quadrigemina.

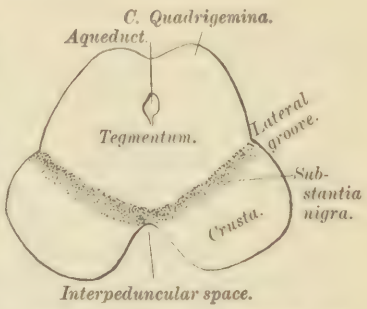


FIG. 585. Transverse section of the mid-brain.

Crusta or Pes (*basis pedunculi*) (Fig. 585).—The crusta is known as the pes of the crus cerebri. The crustae are two in number, are semilunar on section, and are separated by the interpeduncular space (Fig. 570). From the front of the pons each crusta passes upward, forward, and outward, enters the cerebrum to the outer side of the thalamus, and its fibres enter and spread out in the **internal capsule** (Figs. 589 and 590). The great bulk of the fibres are limited to the superior lamina of the capsule. The *deep portion* of the crusta contains the **intermediate bundle** or **tract** (Fig. 590), the fibres of which rise in the corpus striatum and terminate in motor cranial nuclei and the nucleus pontis, and from this nucleus fibres pass by way of the middle peduncle of the cerebellum to the cortex of the opposite cerebellar hemisphere.

The *superficial portion* of the crusta contains three sets of fibres (Figs. 589 and 590): 1. The outer one-fifth is composed, according to Dejerine, of fibres which take origin in the cortex of the superior, middle, and inferior temporal convolutions, the **cerebro-cortico-pontal tract** (*tractus cerebrocorticopontalis temporalis*). They pass through the inferior lamina of the internal capsule and through a portion of the superior lamina, and mostly terminate in the nucleus pontis. Some few of these fibres terminate in the motor nuclei of the cranial nerves.[1] 2. The middle three-fifths, which is largely composed of motor fibres, is known as the **pyramidal tract** (*fasciculus longitudinalis pyramidalis*). These fibres take origin in the cells of the Rolandic area of the cortex, converge to the internal capsule, and pass down through its genu and through the anterior two-thirds of its posterior limb to the crusta, from which they are prolonged as longitudinal fibres through the ventral portion of the pons and as the pyramid through the medulla. Below the medulla they pass into the direct and crossed pyramidal tracts of the spinal cord. The median portion of the pyramidal tract occupies the genu of the internal capsule and passes to the muscles of the face and the muscles of speech. The fibres which pass to the arm muscles, in the crusta, are posterior and external to the fibres which go to the face. Behind and external to the arm fibres are the fibres to the muscles of the trunk

[1] Spitzka; Santee.

and leg. A few fibres from the cerebellum are placed among the pyramidal fibres. These fibres reached the pons by way of the middle cerebellar peduncle, ascend from the pons with the longitudinal fibres, and reach the crusta. 3. The inner one-fifth of the crusta is formed by the fibres of the **median fillet** (*lemniscus medialis*) and motor fibres coming from the cortex in front of the Rolandic fissure (from the prefrontal lobe). This tract from the prefrontal lobe descends through the anterior limb of the internal capsule and through the crusta and reaches the nucleus pontis, from which point it is connected by fibres with the cerebellar hemisphere of the opposite side. It is called the **frontal cerebro-cortico-pontal tract** (*tractus cerebrocorticopontalis frontalis*). The **median fillet** is composed of central sensory fibres from the spinal nerves and all the cranial nerves, except the cochlear branch of the auditory (Santee). It arises from the fillet, and at the lower part of the crusta is situated at the mesial border. As it ascends it courses obliquely outward to meet the lateral border of the pyramidal tract. It enters the sub-thalamic region, and ends in the lateral nucleus of the optic thalamus. Some of the fibres of this tract reach the cortex by joining the ansa peduncularis and the ansa lenticularis.

The Tegmentum (Fig. 585).—The tegmentum (the *cover*) is that portion of the mid-brain which is superior to the substantia nigra and covers the two crustae and the substantia nigra. Its ventral surface is placed within the concave surface of the substantia nigra. The internal geniculate bodies and the corpora quadrigemina are upon its dorsal surface. The anterior extremity of the tegmentum enters the optic thalami, and the posterior extremity is continued into the pons. The tegmentum contains the aqueduct of Sylvius (p. 912 and Figs. 585 and 587).

Fibres of the Tegmentum (Fig. 590).—The pontine formatio reticularis, the gray matter of the floor of the fourth ventricle, and the longitudinal fibres of the dorsal portion of the pons are continued and compose the tegmentum, which structure has upon its dorsal aspect the geniculate and quadrigeminal ganglia. Each half of the tegmentum consists of strands of longitudinal white fibres separated from each other by transversely arched fibres. There is also a considerable quantity of gray matter. The peculiarly reticulated structure formed by the gray and white matter is named the **formatio reticularis**, and is similar to the structure met with in the pons and medulla, with which it is continuous.

The Red Nucleus of the Tegmentum (*nucleus tegmenti*) (Fig. 589).—The red nucleus of the tegmentum is a tract of gray matter situated partly in the tegmentum and partly in the subthalamic tegmental region on either side of the middle line. It is composed of numerous large cells which are deeply pigmented. It is pierced by the fibres of the third nerve. The red nucleus sends fibres to the corpus dentatum by means of the opposite superior peduncles of the cerebellum, and also gives off the crossed descending tract. The **nucleus of Luys** (*nucleus hypothalamicus*) is above and external to the red nucleus and between it and the crusta. It receives fibres from the median fillet and from the corpus striatum, and is connected by fibres to the lamina cinerea and tuber cinereum, which are known as the **commissure of Meynert** (Santee).

The longitudinal fibres in some parts of the tegmentum are arranged in six fairly well-defined tracts, which are described as follows by Harris E. Santee in the *Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord:*

1. The **Posterior Longitudinal Bundle** (*fasciculus longitudinalis medialis*) (Fig. 586) is in large part an associated tract. It lies by the side of the raphé just below the aqueduct. These fibres ascend from the gray substance of the anterior cornu of the spinal cord. In the anterior column of the cord they probably form short longitudinal commissures between different segments of the cord. They ascend through the pyramid of the medulla, form the posterior longitudinal bundle of the

pons, and enter the tegmentum. The posterior longitudinal bundle, while traversing the pons, receives fibres from the cerebellum, and in the pons and medulla receives fibres from the sensory nuclei of cranial nerves. "It carries motor fibres from the sixth to the third nerve; also descending motor fibres from the nucleus of the motor oculi to the genu of the seventh or facial nerve." Soon after entering the tegmentum the posterior longitudinal bundle decussates across the raphé with the bundle of the opposite side. This constitutes the **lower decussation**, and the decussated fibres pass to the nuclei of the third, fourth, and other cranial nerves. The undecussated fibres ascend, and in the posterior commissure decussate. This is known as the **upper decussation**, and the fibres enter "the pineal body and stratum dorsale of the hypothalamic region."

FIG. 586.—The short tracts in the brain-stem and inter-brain. Sagittal section through the middle of the brain-stem: *inf*, infundibulum; *c. mam*, corpus mamillare; *fasc. Vic*, bundles of Vicq d'Azyr; *f. teg*, tegmental bundle; *ped. m*, peduncle of corpus mamillare; *fasc. rt*, fasciculus retroflexus; *fasc. l. inf*, posterior longitudinal bundle; II, III, VI, XII, corresponding cranial nerves; *c*, pineal gland. (Jakob.)

2. The **Anterior Longitudinal Bundle** is composed of fibres which pass from the superior quadrigeminal body to the ciliary centre (dilator fibres of the pupil) and other centres in the spinal cord.

3. The **Fillet** or **Lemniscus** is "a segment in the direct sensory tract. It carries spinal and cranial impulses to the corpora quadrigemina and optic thalamus." It takes its chief origin from the medulla, and passes through the formatio reticularis of the pons to the ventral portion of the tegmentum, where it divides into two portions, the **interolivary fillet** and the **lateral fillet**.

The **interolivary fillet** (*lemniscus interolivaris*) arises from the opposite side of the medulla oblongata (from the nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus), decussates with the sensory fibres, and terminates in the lateral nucleus of the thalamus. A bundle of fibres come off from the interolivary fillet soon after its origin and

passes to the superior quadrigeminal bodies. This bundle is the **upper** or **superior fillet** (*lemniscus superior*). The interolivary bundle after giving off the superior fillet is known as the **median** or **mesial fillet** (*lemniscus medialis* or *mesialis*). It ascends, turns toward the ventral surface of the tegmentum, passes through the substantia nigra, and along the inner one-fifth of the crusta to the thalamus, and from the thalamus connection with the cortex is established by the ansa lenticularis and the ansa peduncularis.

The **lower** or **lateral fillet** (*lemniscus lateralis*) arises almost entirely from the cochlear nuclei, and mostly from the opposite nucleus. It is situated in the ventral part of the tegmentum, through which it passes obliquely and emerges at its side, and after crossing the superior peduncle of the cerebellum, passes to the inferior quadrigeminal bodies. It is reinforced by some fibres from the superior medullary velum. It is a path in the conduction of auditory impressions. These impressions pass from the auditory nerve to the lateral fillet, from this to the inferior brachium, and then to the cortex by the acoustic radiation (Fig. 590).

4. The **Superior Peduncle of the Cerebellum** (*brachium conjunctivum*) (Figs. 590 and 599) ascends from the dorsal surface of the pons. It is connected to its fellow peduncle by a band of white matter called the **valve of Vieussens** (*velum medullare anterius*) (Fig. 584). The fibres of the superior peduncles of the cerebellum pass beneath the quadrigeminal bodies, and to a large extent decussate across the raphé and below the Sylvian aqueduct. It is thus evident that the fibres from one-half of the cerebellum pass largely to the opposite half of the cerebrum. The numerous crossed and the few uncrossed fibres pass forward, enclosing the red nucleus (in which structure many of the fibres terminate and from which structure it obtains some fibres), and passes to the "stratum dorsale of the hypothalamic region."

5. The **Olivary Fasciculus** (*fasciculus tegmenti centralis*) (Fig. 589) arises from the inferior olivary nucleus of the medulla, ascends through the medulla and pons to the tegmentum, passes through the decussation of the superior peduncles of the cerebellum, and ascends to the outer side of the posterior longitudinal bundle of tegmental fibres, to end in the lenticular nucleus.

6. The **Crossed Descending Tract** arises in the red nucleus (Fig. 589), decussates with the opposite tract, enters the lateral fillet, reaches the medulla, where it "mingles with the antero-lateral ascending cerebellar tract," and passes into the pyramidal tract of the cord, to end in "the lateral horn and centre of the gray crescent." The nucleus of Luys (Fig. 589) is the anterior termination of the substantia nigra.

The Substantia Nigra (Figs. 585 and 589).—This, as already stated, constitutes the central portion of the mid-brain. It is a layer of deeply pigmented gray matter, which separates the crusta below from the tegmentum above. It can be seen at the base of the brain between the crustae. In this region it is known as the **posterior perforated lamina** (*substantia perforata posterior*) (Fig. 570). In each **lateral sulcus** the edge of the substantia nigra reaches the surface (Fig. 585). The substantia nigra extends from the pons behind to the corpora albicantia and nucleus of Luys in front. It is thicker internally than externally, where it is partially divided up by the mesial fillet passing from the tegmentum to the crusta. It is traversed at its inner part by some of the fibres of origin of the third cranial nerve, which emerge from the motor oculi groove. The cells are small and multipolar, and are characterized by containing a large amount of dark pigment granules.

The **Interpeduncular Ganglion** (*ganglion interpedunculare*) is just in front of the pons in the median line. Some fibres (the *fasciculus retroflexus*) (Fig. 586) join this ganglion to the nucleus habenulae of the thalamus (Forel, Santee). In each half of the substantia nigra, laterally and anteriorly, is a nucleus known as the **nucleus of Luys** (*nucleus hypothalamicus*) (Fig. 589). The **zona incerta** separates the nucleus of Luys from the red nucleus of the tegmentum.

The Corpora or Tubercula Quadrigemina (Figs. 574, 584, 585, 586, and 587).—The corpora or tubercula quadrigemina are four rounded eminences placed in pairs, two in front and two behind, and separated from one another by the **crucial groove** or **depression**. They are situated on the dorsal surface of the mid-brain, immediately behind the third ventricle and posterior commissure, and beneath the splenium of the corpus callosum. The **anterior** or **upper pair** (*colliculi superiores*), called the **nates**, are the larger. They are oval, their long diameter being directed forward and outward, and are of a gray color. The **posterior** or **lower pair** (*colliculi inferiores*), called the **testes**, are hemispherical in form, and lighter in color than the preceding. From the outer side of each of these eminences a prominent white band, termed the **brachium**, is continued forward and outward. The band from the nates (*brachium quadrigeminum superius*) passes obliquely outward between the pulvinar and the inner geniculate bodies into the *external geniculate body*. The band from the testes (*brachium quadrigeminum inferius*) loses itself beneath an oval prominence on the side of the quadrigeminal body. This prominence is called the **internal geniculate body**. The corpora quadrigemina are larger in the lower animals than in man. In fishes, reptiles, and birds they are hollow, and only two in number (*corpora bigemina*); they represent the anterior quadrigeminals of mammals. In these lower animals the corpora bigemina are frequently termed the **optic lobes**, because of their connection with the optic tracts. In the mammalia the corpora are four in number, and solid. In the human fœtus all four bodies are differentiated by the fifth month, and form at this time a considerable proportion of the brain. In man the anterior quadrigeminal bodies are sometimes called the **optic lobes** and the posterior bodies the **auditory lobes**.

Structure.—The corpora quadrigemina are composed of white matter externally, and gray matter within. The *posterior pair* consist almost entirely of gray matter, covered over by a very thin stratum of white substance. Beneath the gray matter is a thin layer of white fibres, forming a part of the lower fillet. This separates the gray matter of the posterior corpora quadrigemina from the central gray matter of the aqueduct. The *anterior pair* are covered superficially by a thin stratum of white matter. The **stratum zonale**, the fibres of which are fine and arranged transversely. Beneath this is the **stratum cinereum**, a layer of gray matter which resembles a cup, semilunar in shape, thicker in the centre, and thinning off toward the margins, and consisting of numerous multipolar cells, for the most part of small size, embedded in a fine network of nerve-fibres. Below this again is the **stratum opticum** or **upper gray-white layer**, characterized by the large amount of fine nerve-fibres which intersect the gray matter. These fibres vary in size in different parts of the layer, but have for the most part a longitudinal direction. The nerve-cells between the fibres are larger, and send their axis-cylinder processes into the next stratum. Finally there is the **stratum lemnisci**, or **deep gray-white layer**, which separates the rest of the quadrigeminal body from the gray matter around the aqueduct. It consists of fibres partly derived from the upper fillet and partly from the cells of the preceding layer. Interspersed among these fibres are nerve-cells of large size.

The anterior quadrigeminal body contains an anterior layer of longitudinal fibres, which takes origin in close relation to the optic fibres and ends in the ciliary centre of the spinal cord. In the posterior quadrigeminal body the white fibres are continuous posteriorly with the lateral fillet, and are continuous laterally with the brachium. The anterior quadrigeminal bodies "associate optic fibres with the nuclei of the third, fourth, and sixth cranial nerves and with the cilio-spinal centre in the cervical cord" (Santee). The posterior bodies constitute "a way-station in the auditory conduction path" (Santee) (Fig. 590).

The Corpora Geniculata.—The corpora geniculata are two small, oblong masses on each side, situated behind and beneath the posterior end of the optic

thalamus, and named, from their position, **external** and **internal geniculate bodies.** These two bodies are separated from each other by the **brachium anterius of the anterior quadrigeminal body.** It is convenient and customary to describe these two bodies together, but the student should bear in mind that the corpus geniculatum externum belongs in reality to the optic thalamus; the corpus geniculatum internum, which is part of the tegmentum, alone belonging to the mid-brain.

The External Geniculate Body (*corpus geniculatum laterale*) (Fig. 613).—The external geniculate body is of a dark color, and presents a laminated arrangement, consisting of alternate layers of gray and white matter. Its cells are large, multipolar, and pigmented; their processes are intimately related with the visual area in the cerebral cortex of the occipital region (Fig. 590). It is believed that the intercellular gray matter of these bodies is composed, to a considerable extent, of the terminations of the optic nerve, which form synapses around the cells. About 80 per cent. of the optic fibres enter the external geniculate body (von Monokow, Santee). It is, in fact, the termination of the outer root of the optic tract.

The Internal Geniculate Body (*corpus geniculatum mediale*) (Fig. 613).—The internal geniculate body is the termination of the inner root of the optic tract. It seems

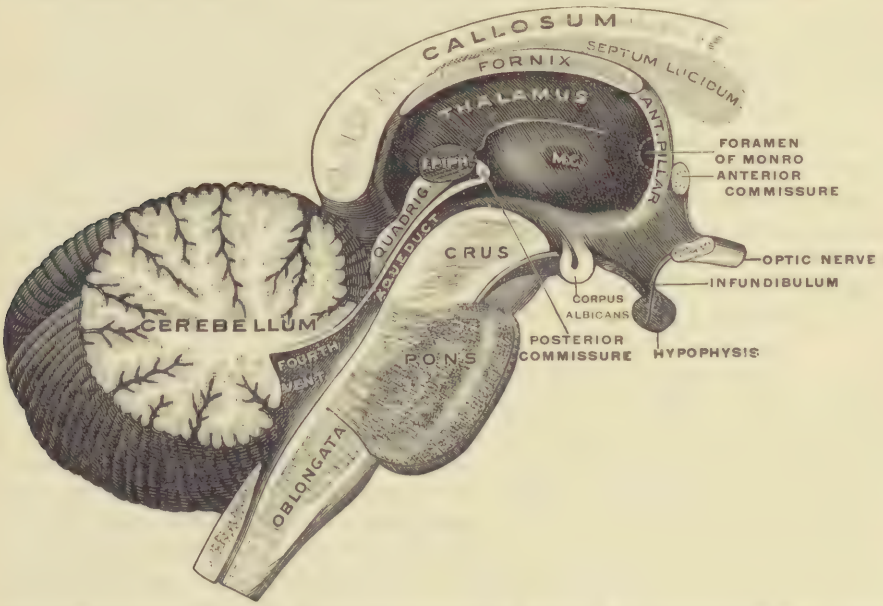


FIG. 587.—Median section through the third and fourth ventricles, left half. *M.C.*, middle commissure. (Testut.)

to receive some of the fibres of the optic tract and is "a way-station in the auditory tract" (Santee). It is smaller in size and lighter in color than the external geniculate body, and does not present a laminated arrangement. It receives the **posterior brachium** from the inferior quadrigeminal body. The internal geniculate bodies are connected with each other through the optic commissure by a band of intercerebral fibres of the optic tract named **Gudden's commissure.** The anterior quadrigeminal body, the pulvinar, and the external geniculate body are intimately concerned with vision. They constitute the lower cerebral centre for the optic nerve-fibres which end in them. Extirpation of the eyes in newly born animals entails an arrest of their development, but has no effect on the posterior quadrigeminal body or the internal geniculate body. These latter also are well developed in the mole, in which animal the superior quadrigeminal body is rudimentary.

The Aqueduct of Sylvius or Iter a Tertio ad Quartum Ventriculum (*aquaeductus cerebri*) (Figs. 574, 584, 585, and 587).—This is a narrow canal, about

half an inch in length and from one-sixteenth to one-eighth of an inch in height, situated between the corpora quadrigemina and the tegmentum, and connecting the third with the fourth ventricle. Its shape on transverse section varies, being T-shaped below, triangular above, and oval about the middle of its course. It is lined by columnar ciliated epithelium, and is surrounded by a layer of gray matter, called the **central gray matter of the aqueduct,** which is continuous with the gray matter of the third and fourth ventricles. This gray matter is separated above from that of the corpora quadrigemina by the **stratum lemnisci;** below the central gray matter lie the posterior longitudinal bundle and the formatio reticularis of the tegmentum. The central gray matter is more abundant below the canal than above it. In the gray matter are certain defined groups of cells, which are the nuclei of the **third** and **fourth cranial nerves.**

Subthalamic Region.—One other structure, to which allusion has already been made, requires mention in this connection; it is the **subthalamic region.** It is a prolongation forward of the tegmentum of the crus cerebri, which becomes continuous with the lower surface of the optic thalamus. Toward the anterior part of the crus cerebri the tegmentum becomes thinned out, and is blended with the superjacent portion of the optic thalamus. To this region, the name **subthalamic tegmental region** has been given. In front it is lost at the base of the brain in the gray matter of the anterior perforated space, and is continuous with the gray matter of the floor of the third ventricle. The subthalamic tegmental region contains a forward prolongation of the **red nucleus,** and consists from above downward of three layers: (1) **stratum dorsale,** which is directly applied to the under surface of the optic thalamus, and consists of fine longitudinal fibres; (2) the **zona incerta,** a continuation forward of the formatio reticularis of the tegmentum; and (3) the **corpus subthalamicum** or **the nucleus of Luys** (*nucleus of Luys* or *nucleus hypothalamicus*), a mass of gray matter which on section presents a lenticular shape, and is the termination of the substantia nigra.

Structure of the Cerebrum.—The cerebrum, like the other parts of the great nerve centre, is composed of **gray** and **white matter.** In order to give some general idea of its construction, at all events in part, it may be compared, for the sake of illustration, to a tree, the trunk of which divides into two main divisions, and these break up into smaller branches, which finally end in twigs, to which are attached the leaves, forming an investment to the branches and covering the whole tree. The trunk is represented by the medulla oblongata as it passes through the foramen magnum; the two main divisions by the crura cerebri, which break up into smaller branches; these diverge from each other, divide and subdivide, until they reach the surface of the hemispheres, where they terminate in single nerve-fibres, which are continuous with the basal axial cylinder processes of the nerve-cells, the representatives of the leaves. These cells are arranged on the surface, covering the hemispheres like a cap, and constitute the **cerebral cortex.** But here the analogy ends, for in the cerebrum there are, in addition to this cortex, other masses of gray matter situated in the middle of the brain; and other white fibres besides the diverging ones that have been mentioned, and which serve either to connect the two cerebral hemispheres, or to unite different structures in the same hemisphere.

The White Matter of the Cerebrum.—The white matter of the cerebrum consists of medullated fibres, varying in size and arranged in bundles, separated by neuroglia. They may be divided into three distinct systems, according to the course they take. 1. **Projection** or **peduncular fibres** (Figs. 588, 589, and 590), which connect the hemisphere with the medulla oblongata and cord. 2. **Transverse** or **commissural fibres** (*C.C.* in Fig. 588), which unite together the two hemispheres. 3. **Association fibres** (Figs. 591 and 592), which connect different structures in the same hemisphere. Many of the association fibres are collateral

branches of the projection fibres, but others are the axones of independent cells.

1. The **Projection** or **Peduncular Fibres** (Figs. 588, 589, and 590) are either **centrifugal** (motor) or **centripetal** (sensory), and they connect the cerebral cortex with every portion of the body, and either project impulses from the cortex to every portion of the body or bring impressions from all parts to the cortex. The **basal ganglia** intercept many projection fibres, especially centripetal fibres. The projection fibres are composed first of the "medullated axis-cylinders of the large and medium-sized pyramids and a few of the polymorphous neurones in the cerebral cortex; and second, of medullated axones of neurones whose centres are situated in masses of gray matter below the cerebral cortex."[1] These fibres form in the hemisphere the corona radiata and the internal capsule, and in the mid-brain the crus. The fibres of the crus are arranged in two strata, the **ventral** or **superficial stratum** or **crusta** and the **dorsal** or **deep stratum** or **tegmentum**. Between the two strata is the **substantia nigra.**

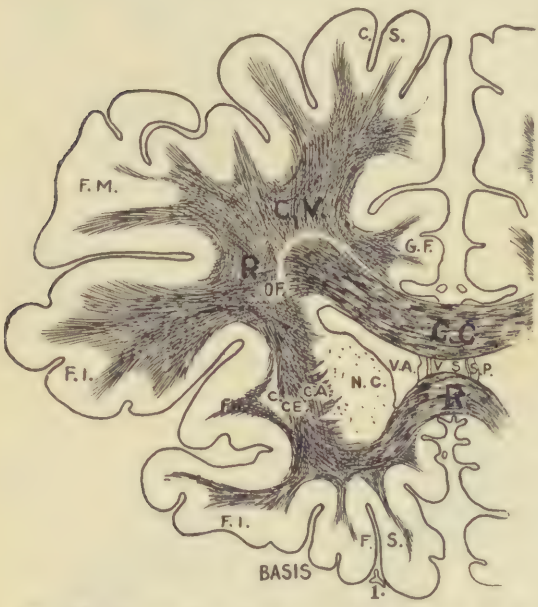


FIG. 588. Section through the frontal lobe, showing the beginning of the most anterior bundles of the corona radiata, which contain the first fibres of the pyramidal tract (*R*). *C. C.*, corpus callosum; *C. V.*, centrum semiovale Vieussenii; *C. A.*, anterior limb of the internal capsule; *F. I.*, inferior frontal convolution (base of the third frontal convolution = motor speech centre). (Jakob.)

THE CENTRIFUGAL OR MOTOR PROJECTION FIBRES.—Most of the motor fibres are included in the crusta. The deep portion of the *crus* is composed of the **intermediate bundle or tract** (p. 907), and the superficial portion of the *crus* is composed of three sets of fibres (p. 907): 1. The **temporal cerebro-cortico-pontal tract** (*tractus cerebrocorticopontalis temporalis*), occupying the outer one-fifth of the crus. 2. The **pyramidal tract** (*fasciculus longitudinalis pyramidalis*), occupying the middle three-fifths of the crus. These fibres pass to the pyramid of the medulla and to the direct and crossed pyramidal tracts of the spinal cord. A few fibres from the cerebellum are placed among the pyramidal fibres. They reach the pons by way of the middle cerebellar peduncle, ascend from the pons with the longitudinal fibres, and reach the crusta. 3. The inner one-fifth of the crusta is formed by the **median fillet** and **motor fibres** coming from the cortex in front of the Rolandic fissure. The tegmentum contains some few motor fibres arranged in several bundles – viz., the **anterior longitudinal bundle**, a portion of the superior peduncle of the cerebellum: the descending or motor root of the fifth nerve, the crossed descending tract from the red nucleus. To these previously mentioned motor fibres in the tegmentum, Santee adds "certain fibres in the formatio reticularis."[2]

THE CENTRIPETAL OR SENSORY PROJECTION FIBRES.—In the tegmentum are the sensory fibres, some of the fibres of the formatio reticularis, some of the fibres of the posterior longitudinal bundle, the fillets, most of the fibres of the superior cerebellar peduncle, the outer root of the optic tract, and the olivary fasciculus. Nearly all of the bundles terminate in the basal ganglia, "but the paths of con-

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord. By Harris E. Santee. [2] Ibid.

duction are continued through the internal capsule" (Santee). In the internal capsule the sensory projection fibres comprise the **three systems of Flechsig** (the cortical fillet), the **optic radiation,** and the **acoustic radiation.**

THE THREE SYSTEMS OF FLECHSIG.—The chief origin of the three systems of Flechsig is in the lateral nucleus of the thalamus. The **first system of Flechsig** is composed of fibres of common sensation and is called the **ansa peduncularis.** It passes from the thalamus to the cortex of the ascending frontal and parietal convolutions. The fibres of this first system are in the inferior lamina of the internal capsule, and are posterior to the pyramidal tract. Some fibres of the ansa peduncularis pass through the lenticular nucleus, others pass through the external capsule, but all of them terminate as do those in the internal capsule, in the cortex. The **second system of Flechsig** is called the **ansa lenticularis.** Its fibres convey impressions of common sensation. It arises from the thalamus at a higher level than the ansa peduncularis, and in the internal capsule its fibres are among the pyramidal fibres. It terminates in the cortex about the central convolution, the superior frontal convolution, the paracentral lobule, and the limbic lobe. Some fibres pass through the internal capsule to the lenticular nucleus and aid in forming the external capsule. The **third system of Flechsig** is the **anterior stalk of the thalamic radiation.** It arises in the thalamus, passes to the frontal portion of the internal capsule, and reaches the inferior, middle, and superior frontal convolutions and the gyrus fornicatus. The third system also conveys common sensory impressions.

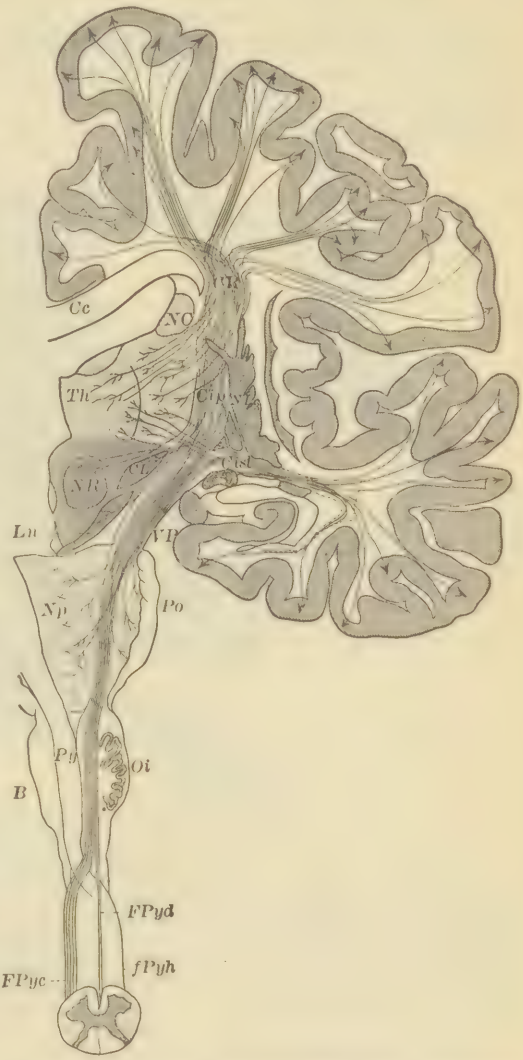


FIG. 589.—Scheme of the projection fibres of the cerebral cortex. *Cc.* Corpus callosum. *Cr.* Internal capsule, into which fibres pass from the cortex above the Sylvian fissure. *NC.* Caudate nucleus. *NL.* Lenticular nucleus. *Th.* Optic thalamus, in which many fibres from all parts of the cortex end. *Cip.* Posterior division of the internal capsule (the sensory tract). *Cisl.* Sublenticular part of the internal capsule, containing fibres of auditory tract and fibres to the thalamus from the cortex below the Sylvian fissure. *CL.* Luys's body. *NR.* Red nucleus of tegmentum. *Ln.* Locus niger. *VP.* Tract from capsule to pons. *Po.* Pons. *NP.* Gray matter of pons. *Oi.* Olive. *Py.* Pyramidal tract in medulla, passing to *FPyd*, anterior median column of cord, and to *FPyc*, lateral column of cord of opposite side, and to *fPyh*, lateral column of cord of same side. *B.* Medulla. (Dejerine, Anatomie des Centres Nerveux, vol. ii. p. 2.)

The **optic radiation** (*D* in Fig. 590) takes origin in the pulvinar of the thalamus and in the internal corpus geniculatum. The fibres pass back of the lenticular nucleus and reach the cortex of the cuneate lobe, in which region the corresponding half of each retina is represented.

The **acoustic radiation** (*D* in Fig. 590) with the inferior brachium from the inferior quadrigeminal body, according to Barker, constitute the continuation of

the auditory path "from the end of the lateral fillet, in the inferior quadrigeminal body, to the internal geniculate body, and then, through the retro-lenticular part of the internal capsule, to the transverse temporal gyri and the third and fourth fifths of the superior temporal convolution."[1]

2. The **Transverse** or **Commissural Fibres** (Figs. 572, 573, and *C.C.* in Fig. 588) connect the two hemispheres. They include: (*a*) the transverse fibres of the corpus callosum (p. 886); (*b*) the anterior commissure (p. 896); (*c*) the posterior commissure (p. 903), and have already been described.

FIG. 590.—The projection tracts joining the cortex with lower nerve centres. Sagittal section, showing the arrangements of tracts in the internal capsule. *A*, tract from the frontal lobe to the anterior half of the capsule, thence in part to the optic thalamus, A^2, and in part to the pons, and thus to the cerebellar hemisphere of the opposite side; *B*, motor tract from the central convolutions to the facial nucleus in the pons and to the spinal cord; *C*, sensory tract from posterior columns of the cord, through the posterior part of the medulla, pons, crus, and capsule to the parietal lobe; *D*, visual tract from the optic thalamus (*OT*) to the occipital lobe; *E*, auditory tract from the int. geniculate body (to which a tract passes from the *VIII. N.* nucleus) to the temporal lobe; *F*, superior cerebellar peduncle; *G*, middle cerebellar peduncle; *H*, inferior cerebellar peduncle; *CN*, caudate nucleus; *CQ*, corpora quadrigemina. The numerals refer to the cranial nerves. (Starr.)

3. The **Association Fibres** (Figs. 591 and 592) connect different structures in the same hemispheres, and are in or near to the cortex. They take origin from the small pyramidal and polymorphous cells of the deep layer of the cortex. Their direction is parallel to the surface of the hemisphere, and in their course they cross the projection and commissural fibres. They are of two kinds: (1) those which unite adjacent convolutions, **short association fibres**; (2) those which pass between more distant parts in the same hemisphere, **long association fibres**.

The **short association fibres** are situated immediately beneath the gray substance of the cortex of the hemispheres, and connect together adjacent convolutions. They constitute subcortical tracts and are divided into **arcuate fibres** and **tangential fibres**. Some of these fibres connect the "visual sensory area with the visual memory area, and the auditory sensory with the auditory memory area."[2]

The **long association fibres** associate cerebral centres which are far apart. They are gathered into bundles and dip down deep into the centrum ovale. They

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord, by Harris E. Santee

[2] Ibid.

include the following: (*a*) the **uncinate fasciculus**; (*b*) the **cingulum**; (*c*) the **superior longitudinal fasciculus**; (*d*) the **inferior longitudinal fasciculus**; (*e*) the **perpendicular fasciculus**; (*f*) the **fornix**; (*g*) the **occipito-frontal fasciculus.**

FIG. 591.—Diagram showing association-fibres of the hemisphere. (Testut.)

(*a*) THE UNCINATE FASCICULUS (*fasciculus uncinatus*) (Fig. 592).—The uncinate fasciculus passes across the bottom of the Sylvian fissure and connects the

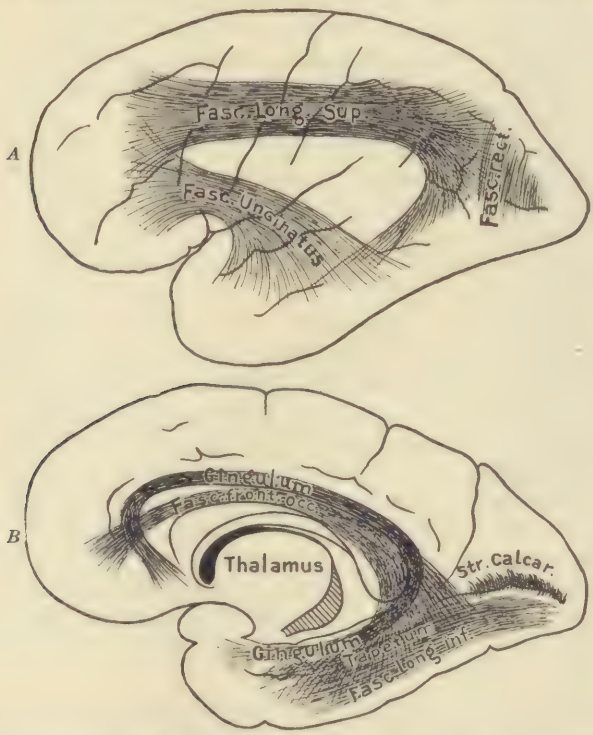


FIG. 592.—The long association fibres. *A* shows the bundles contained in the lateral white substance of the hemispheres; *B*, those in the mesial white matter. At the upper border a few short association bundles are shown diagrammatically. (Jakob.)

uncinate convolution with the orbital portion of the frontal lobe. Barker points out that this fasciculus joins the third frontal, internal orbital, and posterior orbital convolutions with the limbic lobe.

(*b*) The Cingulum or the Fillet of the Gyrus Fornicatus (Fig. 592) is a band of white matter which encircles the hemisphere in an antero-posterior direction, lying in the substance of the convolution of the corpus callosum. Commencing in front at the anterior perforated space, it passes forward and upward parallel with the rostrum, wind around the genu, runs in the convolution from before backward, immediately above the corpus callosum, turns around its posterior extremity, and passes into the Hippocampus major, through which it courses to its anterior extremity. According to Beem there are three sets of fibres in the cingulum. The anterior fibres join the internal olfactory root and the anterior perforated lamina with the front of the frontal lobe. The horizontal fibres join the gyrus fornicatus with the frontal lobe. The posterior fibres join the fusiform convolution (the fourth temporal) with the hippocampal convolution and the temporal lobe.[1]

(*c*) The Superior Longitudinal Fasciculus (*fasciculus longitudinalis superior*) (Fig. 592).—The superior longitudinal fasciculus is beneath the convex surface of the hemisphere. It joins the frontal cortex with the parietal and temporal cortex and brings into relation the motor speech centres and the centres of auditory and visual memories.

(*d*) The Inferior Longitudinal Fasciculus (*fasciculus longitudinalis inferior*) (Fig. 592).—The inferior longitudinal fasciculus associates the centres of auditory and visual memory. It is a collection of fibres which connects the temporal and occipital lobes, running along the outer wall of the descending and posterior cornua of the lateral ventricle.

(*e*) The Perpendicular Fasciculus or Fasciculus Rectus (Fig. 592).—The perpendicular fasciculus runs vertically in front of the occipital lobe, and connects the inferior parietal lobule with the second and third temporal convolutions, and also connects the superior occipital convolution with the inferior occipital and the fourth temporal convolutions.

(*f*) The Fornix (*corpus fornicis*) (Fig. 586).—The fornix by its anterior pillar is connected with the corpus albicans and by means of the bundle of Vicq d'Azyr with the optic thalamus. Most of the posterior pillar ends in the hippocampus major, but some of the fibres (the corpus fimbriatum) go to the uncinate convolution. Through the fibres of the lyra it probably also unites the opposite hippocampal convolutions.

(*g*) The Occipito-frontal Fasciculus of Forel (*fasciculus occipitofrontalis*) (Fig. 592).—The occipito-frontal fasciculus is placed between the cingulum and the superior longitudinal fasciculus. It connects the frontal cortex with the occipital cortex. Some regard it as a part of the corpus callosum.

The Gray Matter of the Cerebrum.—The gray matter of the cerebrum, in accordance with its situation, is disposed in three great groups: (1) The **gray matter of the cerebral cortex** or **cortical gray matter.** (2) The **gray matter of the ganglia** or **ganglionar gray matter.** (3) The **central** or **ventricular gray matter.**

The Gray Matter of the Cortex.—The cortex, bark or envelope of the cerebrum, is a thin layer of gray matter on the surface, which encompasses the white matter of the hemispheres (*centrum ovale*). The cortex has been mapped out into definite areas and centres, each of which is connected with a well-defined function (p. 952).

On examining a section through one of the convolutions of the Rolandic area with a lens, it is seen to consist of alternating white and gray layers thus disposed from the surface inward: (1) a thin layer of white substance; (2) a layer of gray substance; (3) a second layer of white substance (outer band of Baillarger or band of Gennari); (4) a second gray layer; (5) a third white layer (inner band of

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Nervous System. By Harris E. Santee.

Baillarger); (6) a third gray layer, which rests on the medullary substance of the convolution.

The cortex is made up of nerve-cells which vary in size and shape, and of nerve-fibres, some of which are medullated, but most of which are non-medullated, embedded in a matrix of neuroglia.

The nerve-cells in a typical section of the cortex are arranged in five layers (Fig. 593) named from the surface inward as follows: (1) the **molecular layer**; (2) the **layer of small pyramidal cells**; (3) the **layer of large pyramidal cells**; (4) the **layer of polymorphous cells**; (5) the **layer of fusiform cell-bodies** (Santee) (not shown in Fig. 593).

The Molecular, the Superficial or the Neuroglia Layer.—This layer is immediately adjacent to the pia mater. Neuroglia constitutes the greatest amount of the superficial layer; hence its other name of neuroglia layer. In this layer the cells are irregular and are known as the **neurones of Cajal**. The cells are polygonal, triangular, and fusiform in shape, and are associative in function. Each polygonal cell gives off some four or five dendrites, while its axones may arise directly from the cell or from one of its dendrites. The axones and dendrites of these cells ramify in the molecular layer. Each triangular cell gives off two or three dendrites, from one of which the axone arises, the dendrites and the axone ramifying in the molecular layer. The fusiform cells are placed with their long axes parallel to the surface and are mostly bipolar, each pole being prolonged into a dendrite, which runs horizontally for some distance and furnishes ascending branches. Their axones, two or three in number, arise from the dendrites, and, like them, take a horizontal course, giving off numerous ascending collaterals. The distribution of the axones and dendrites of all three sets of cells is limited to the molecular layer.

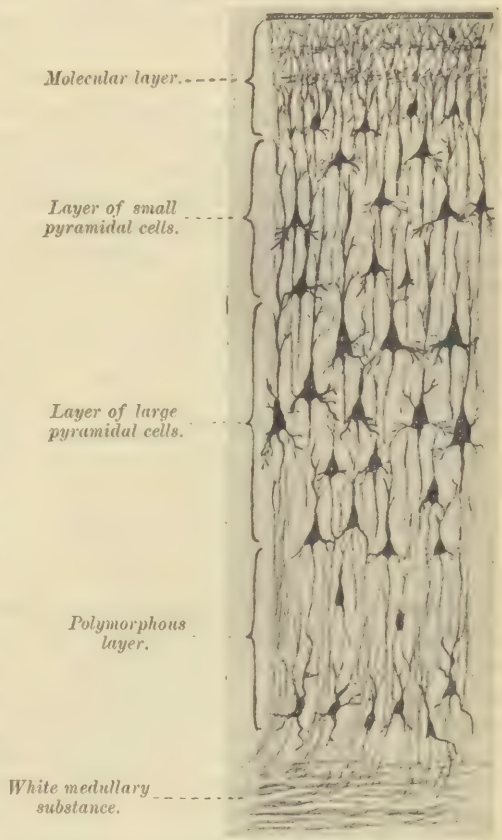


Fig. 593.—The four layers of cells in the cerebral cortex. Modified from Testut. (After Cajal.)

Besides the neuroglia, the cells, and the gray fibres, this layer contains medullated nerve-fibres arranged in a network and constituting the superficial white layer.

The Layer of Small and the Layer of Large Pyramidal Cells.—The cells in the second and third layers may be studied together, since, with the exception of the difference in size and the more superficial position of the smaller cells, they resemble each other. The body of each cell is pyramidal in shape, its base being directed to the deeper parts and its apex toward the surface. It contains granular pigment, and stains deeply with ordinary reagents. The nucleus is nucleolated, of large size, and round or oval in shape. The base of the cell gives off the axone, and this passes into the central white substance, giving off collaterals in its course, and is distributed as a projection, commissural, or association fibre.

Both the apical and basal parts of the cell give off dendrites. The apical dendrite is directed toward the surface, and ends in the molecular layer by dividing into numerous branches, all of which may be seen, when prepared by the silver or methylene-blue method, to be studded with projecting bristle-like processes. The larger pyramidal cells, especially in the Rolandic area, may exceed 50μ in length and 40μ in breadth, and are termed **giant cells**. The chief function of the small pyramids is commissural and associative. The chief function of the large pyramids is motor, but they have also commissural and associative functions.

Layer of Polymorphous Cells.—The cells in this layer, as their name implies, are very irregular in contour, the commonest varieties being of a spindle, star, oval, or triangular shape. Their dendrites are directed outward, toward, but do not reach, the molecular layer; their axones pass into the subjacent white matter. From this layer come commissural fibres, long association fibres, and some projection fibres.

There are two other kinds of cells in the cerebral cortex, but their axones pass in a direction opposite to that of the pyramidal and polymorphous cells, among which they lie. They are: (*a*) the cells of Golgi, the axones of which do not become medullated, but divide immediately after their origin into a large number of branches, which are directed toward the surface of the cortex; (*b*) the cells of Martinotti, which are chiefly found in the polymorphous layer. Their dendrites are short, and may have an ascending or descending course, while their axones pass out into the molecular layer and form an extensive horizontal arborization.

Layer of Fusiform Cell-bodies.—It receives the name of the **claustral formation**, because it is formed like the claustrum. This layer is not sharply defined from the white matter beneath; the change from one to the other is gradual. The long axes of most of the cells are perpendicular to the surface of the hemisphere, but beneath the fissures they are parallel to the surface (Santee). "The commissural and long association fibres belong, for the most part, to the fusiform and polymorphous neurones."[1]

Nerve-fibres.—These fill up a large part of the intervals between the cells. Some of these fibres form fascicului; some are isolated, and others are arranged in plexuses. They may be medullated or non-medullated—the latter comprising the axones of the smallest pyramidal cells and the cells of Golgi. In their direction the fibres may be either transverse, the **transverse tangential** or **horizontal fibres**, or vertical, the **vertical** or **radial fibres**. The **transverse fibres** run parallel to the surface of the hemisphere, intersecting the vertical fibres at a right angle. They consist of several strata, of which the following are the most important: (1) a **stratum of white fibres** covering the superficial aspect of the molecular layer; (2) the **band of Bechterew**, found in certain parts of the superficial portion of the layer of the smaller pyramidal cells; (3) the **external** or **outer band of Baillarger** or the **band of Gennari**, which runs through the layer of large pyramidal cells; (4) the **internal band of Baillarger**, which intervenes between the layer of large pyramidal cells and the polymorphous layer. According to Cajal, the transverse fibres consist of (*a*) the collaterals of the pyramidal and polymorphous cells and of the cells of Martinotti; (*b*) the arborizations of the axones of Golgi's cells; (*c*) the collaterals and terminal arborizations of the projection, commissural, or association fibres. The **vertical fibres.**—Some of these—viz., the axones of the pyramidal and polymorphous cells—are directed toward the central white matter, while others, the terminations of the commissural, projection, or association fibres, pass outward to end in the cortex. The axones of the cells of Martinotti are also ascending fibres.

In certain parts of the cortex this typical structure is departed from. The chief

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord. By Harris E. Santee.

of these regions are: (1) the **occipital lobe**, (2) the **hippocampus major**, (3) the **dentate convolution**, and (4) the **olfactory bulb**.

Special Types of Gray Matter. 1. **The Occipital Lobe.**—In the cuneus and the calcarine fissure of the occipital lobe, Cajal has recently described as many as nine layers. Here the inner band of Baillarger is absent; the outer band of Baillarger or band of Gennari is, on the other hand, of considerable thickness. If a section be examined microscopically, an additional layer is seen to be interpolated between the molecular layer and the layer of small pyramidal cells. This extra layer consists of two or three strata of fusiform cells, the long axes of which are at right angles to the surface. Each cell gives off two dendrites, external and internal, from the latter of which the axone arises and passes into the white central substance. In the layer of small pyramidal cells, fusiform cells, identical with the above, are seen, as well as ovoid or star-like cells with ascending axones, the **cells of Martinotti**. This area of the cortex forms the visual centre, and it has been shown by Dr. J. S. Bolton[1] that in old-standing cases of optic atrophy the thickness of Gennari's band is reduced by nearly 50 per cent.

2. **The Hippocampus Major.**—In the hippocampus major the molecular layer is very thick and contains a large number of Golgi cells. It has been divided into three strata: (*a*) **S. convolutum** or **S. granulosum**, containing many tangential fibres; (*b*) **S. lacunosum**, presenting numerous lymphatic or vascular spaces; (*c*) **S. radiatum**, exhibiting a rich plexus of fibrils. The two layers of pyramidal cells are condensed into one, and the cells are mostly of large size. The axones of the cells in the polymorphous layer may run in an ascending, descending, or horizontal direction. Between the polymorphous layer and the ventricular ependyma is the white substance of the alveus.

3. **The Dentate Convolution.**—In the rudimentary dentate convolution the molecular layer contains some pyramidal cells, while the layer of pyramidal cells is almost entirely represented by small ovoid cells.

4. **The Olfactory Bulb.**—In many of the lower animals this contains a cavity which communicates through the hollow olfactory stalk with the cavity of the lateral ventricle. In man the original cavity is filled up by neuroglia and its wall becomes thickened, but much more so on its ventral than on its dorsal aspect. Its dorsal part contains a small amount of gray and white matter, but it is scanty and ill defined. A section through the ventral part shows it to consist of the following layers from without inward. (1) A layer of *olfactory nerve-fibres*, which are the non-medullated axones prolonged from the olfactory cells of the nose, and which reach the bulb by passing through the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone. At first they cover the bulb, and then penetrate it to end by forming synapses with the dendrites of the mitral cells, presently to be described. (2) *Glomerular layer (stratum glomerulosum)*.—This contains numerous spheroidal reticulated enlargements, termed **glomeruli**, which are produced by the branching and arborization of the processes of the olfactory nerve-fibres with the descending dendrites of the mitral cells. (3) *Molecular layer.*—This layer is formed of a matrix of neuroglia, embedded in which are the *mitral cells*. These cells are pyramidal in shape, and the basal part of each gives off a thick dendrite which descends into the glomerular layer, where it arborizes as indicated above, and others which interlace with similar dendrites of neighboring mitral cells. The axones pass through the next layer into the white matter of the bulb, from which, after becoming bent on themselves at a right angle, they are continued into the olfactory tract. (4) *Nerve-fibre layer.*—This lies next the central core of neuroglia, and its fibres consist of the axones or afferent processes of the mitral cells which are passing to the brain; some efferent fibres are, however, also present, and terminate in the

[1] Phil. Trans. of Royal Society, Series B, vol. cxciii. p. 165.

molecular layer, but nothing is known as to their exact origin. It is to be remembered that the olfactory path is uncrossed or almost completely uncrossed.

The Gray Matter of the Ganglia or the Ganglionar Gray Matter.—These ganglia have been previously described. They are as follows: The corpus striatum, the optic thalamus, the external geniculate body, the internal geniculate body, the nucleus of Luys, the red nucleus of the tegmentum, the anterior quadrigeminal body, the posterior quadrigeminal body, the substantia nigra, and the interpeduncular ganglion.

The Central or Ventricular Gray Matter.—This includes the lamina cinerea, the tuber cinereum, the middle commissure, the nuclei of the third and fourth cranial nerves, and the gray matter about the aqueduct of Sylvius.

IV. The Hind-brain (Rhombencephalon).

From the hind-brain or rhombencephalon, as previously stated, come two vesicles, the **metencephalon,** or upper portion of the hind-brain or the **hind-brain proper,** and the **myelencephalon,** or lower portion of the hind-brain. From the metencephalon come the **pons** and the **cerebellum.** From the myelencephalon comes the **medulla oblongata.** The original hind-brain remains in the brain of the adult as the fourth ventricle.

Pons Varolii (Figs. 557, 599, and 603).—The pons Varolii is the bond of union between the various segments of the encephalon, connecting the cerebrum above, the medulla oblongata below, and the cerebellum behind. It lies upon a portion of the **clivus,** the groove of bone between the foramen magnum and the dorsum sellae, and is situated above the medulla oblongata, below the crura cerebri, and between the hemispheres of the cerebellum. It is about an inch in length, an inch in thickness, and an inch and a half in width. It presents four surfaces: the **superior surface,** which is attached, by direct continuation of fibres, to the mid-brain; the **inferior surface,** which is continuous with the medulla oblongata; the **anterior** or **ventral** and the **posterior** or **dorsal surfaces** are free.

The **Anterior** or **Ventral Surface,** the **Tuber Annulare** or **Base** (*pars basilaris pontis*), is very prominent, markedly convex from side to side, but less so from before backward. It consists of transverse white fibres (Fig. 594), which arch like a bridge across the middle line, and on either side are gathered together into a compact mass, forming the **middle peduncle of the cerebellum** (Fig. 599). Above and below it presents a well-defined border; below, its transverse fibres slightly overlap the pyramidal bodies of the medulla, which disappear into its substance; above, the transverse fibres slightly overlap the crura cerebri which emerge from it. This surface rests upon the clivus of the sphenoid bone, and presents in the middle line a **longitudinal groove** (*sulcus basilaris*) (Fig. 603), wider in front than behind, in which rests the **basilar artery.** Slightly in advance of the middle of the ventral surface of the pons and at the margin the two roots of the fifth nerve emerge.

The Posterior or Dorsal Surface (*pars dorsalis pontis*).—The posterior or dorsal surface of the pons is free, but is concealed from view by the cerebellum. It forms the upper part of the floor of the fourth ventricle, and will be described with this cavity (Fig. 604 and p. 942).

Structure.—Transverse sections of the pons Varolii show that it consists of two parts, which differ in appearance and structure from each other: the *anterior* or *ventral portion* (Fig. 594) consists for the most part of fibres arranged in transverse and longitudinal bundles with a small amount of gray matter; the *posterior* or *dorsal portion* is chiefly constituted by a continuation upward of the reticular formation of the gray matter of the medulla, and is called the **tegmental portion,** as most of its constituents are continued into the tegmentum of the crus cerebri. It is subdivided into lateral halves by a median raphé continuous with that of the

medulla, but the raphé does not extend into the ventral half of the pons, being here obliterated by the transverse fibres.

Transverse Fibres of the Pons.—The transverse fibres are placed in the ventral portion of the pons. These are disposed in three sets:

1. The **Superficial** or **Ventral Transverse Fibres** (*fibrae pontis superficiales*) (Fig. 594) constitute a rather thin layer on the ventral surface of the pons. This thin white layer is called the **tuber annulare.**

2. The **Middle** or **Deep Transverse Fibres** are placed dorsally or above the superficial transverse fibres, and form a thick layer, with much gray matter between them. These collections of gray matter are named the **nuclei pontis.** In this layer of transverse fibres are longitudinal fibres coming from the middle three-fifths of the crustae and passing to the pyramids of the medulla and also

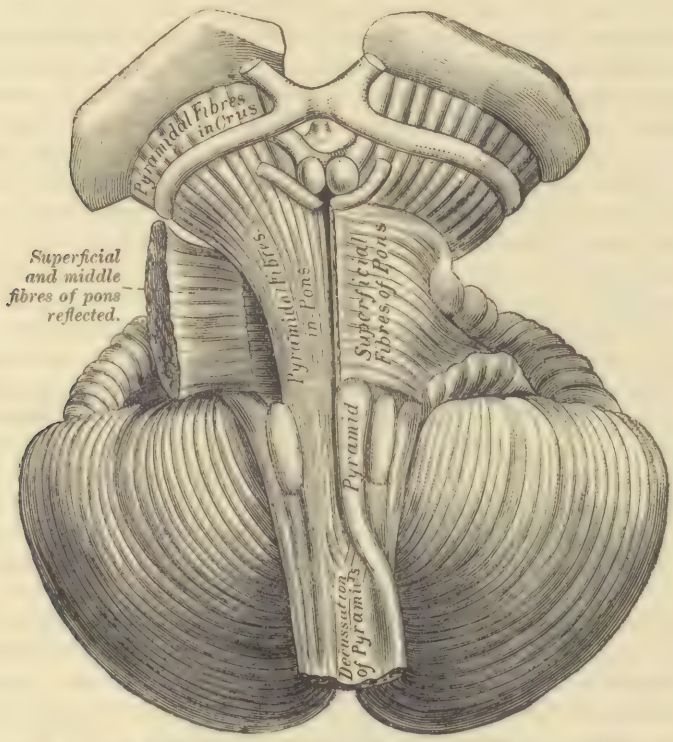


FIG. 594.—Superficial dissection of the medulla oblongata and pons. (Ellis.)

fibres of the fronto-pontal, intermediate, and temporo-frontal tracts (Santee). The **middle cerebellar peduncles** (*brachia pontis*) (Fig. 599) are formed by the superficial and middle transverse fibres.

3. The **Dorsal Transverse** or **Dorsal Deep Transverse Fibres** lie dorsally to the middle transverse fibres and the pyramidal fibres between them and the formatio reticularis. These fibres are collected into a distinct bundle which is most definite in the posterior portion of the pons and in which region it is named the **trapezium** (*corpus trapezoideum*), because of its shape. The trapezium is the mark of the boundary between the dorsal and ventral surfaces. The chief origin of the trapezium is from the cochlear nerve nuclei; they decussate and pass by the lateral fillet to the inferior quadrigeminal body. Santee points out that the trapezium and lateral fillet are part of the auditory conduction path.

Longitudinal Fibres of the Pons.—These are found in both the ventral and dorsal portions. There are three sets:

The **Ventral Longitudinal** or **Ventral Deep Longitudinal Fibres** (Fig. 594) are chiefly the continuation of the pyramidal fibres of the crustae which reach the pyramids of the medulla. They form a thick bundle. Among these fibres are some from the opposite cerebellar peduncles and the nuclei pontis. During the descent of the pyramidal tract it grows constantly smaller, because it loses here and there fibres which pass to motor cranial-nerve nuclei. The pressure of the thick bundle of pyramidal fibres causes a bulging of the superficial transverse fibres on the ventral surface of the pons and the formation of the mesial groove between them.

The **Middle Longitudinal** or **Dorsal Deep Longitudinal Fibres** are placed in the floor of the fourth ventricle in the *pontine formatio reticularis*, which is continuous with the formatio reticularis of the medulla oblongata. The pontine formatio reticularis is a network of these longitudinal fibres with some oblique fibres, the network containing gray matter. Some of the gray matter of the formatio reticularis forms the nuclei of certain cranial nerves; the rest of it forms the nuclei of the formatio reticularis. Santee describes six bundles of longitudinal fibres in the formatio reticularis: 1. The **fillet** (*lemniscus*), consisting of the **lateral**, the **median**, and the **superior fillet** (*lemniscus lateralis, lemniscus medialis, lemniscus superior*), passing to and through the tegmentum to the thalamus and the two quadrigeminal bodies. 2. The **posterior longitudinal bundle** (*fasciculus longitudinalis medialis*) contains both ascending and descending fibres; most of the fibres do not decussate but reach the anterior column of the same side of the cord. Some of its fibres decussate through the pons, medulla, and mid-brain. According to Santee, it receives ascending fibres from the gray matter of the anterior cornu of the spinal cord, from the sensory nuclei of cranial nerves, and through the middle peduncle from the cerebellum. It terminates in the subthalamic region. The fibres decussate across the posterior commissure. In this bundle are motor fibres passing from the sixth to the third nerves and from the third to the seventh. 3. The **anterior longitudinal bundle** (*fasciculus ventralis*) passes from the superior quadrigeminal body to the gray matter of the anterior cornu of the cervical cord. "It is the pupillo-dilator tract."[1] 4. The **olivary bundle** or the **central tegmental tract** (*fasciculus tegmenti centralis*) arises from the inferior olivary nucleus of the medulla, ascends to the lenticular nucleus, from which situation some of the fibres pass to the cortex. 5. The **crossed descending tract** from the red nucleus. It arises in the red nucleus of the tegmentum, soon crosses the raphé, and, as Barker points out, reaches the lumbar region of the cord. In the pons the fibres are in the lateral fillet. 6. The **ascending** or **inferior sensory root of the fifth nerve** (*tractus spinalis nervi trigemini*) arises near the Rolandic tubercle in the medulla and effects a junction with the superior root ventrally to the superior peduncles of the cerebellum.

The **Dorsal Longitudinal** or **Superficial Longitudinal Fibres** constitute the roof of the superior portion of the fourth ventricle, and form the superior peduncles of the cerebellum (p. 932) and the valve of Vieussens (p. 933).

Gray Matter of the Pons.—The nuclei pontis constitute a portion of it, the gray matter of the formatio recticularis the balance.

The **Nuclei Pontis,** which have been previously referred to, are collections of gray matter on each side of the pons, between the fibres of the middle transverse bundle and of the ventral longitudinal bundle of the pons. The nucleus pontis of each side receives fibres from the **crusta**—viz., the intermediate bundle, the frontal cerebro-cortico-pontal tract (p. 893), and the temporal cerebro-cortico-pontal tract (p. 894), and also receives fibres from the middle peduncle of the cerebellum (p. 934). It sends fibres by the middle peduncle to the opposite cerebellar hemisphere. The nuclei pontis contain numerous multipolar ganglion cells.

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord. By Harris E. Santee.

The **Gray Matter of the Pontine** or **Formatio Reticularis** forms the **superior olivary nucleus**, the **nuclei of the trapezium**, numerous **nuclei of the formatio reticularis**, and **nuclei of certain cranial nerves.** The portion of the formatio reticularis between the roots of the sixth pair of cranial nerves is called the **formatio reticularis alba**; the portion between the roots of the sixth and seventh nerves is called the **formatio reticularis grisea.**

The **Superior Olivary Nucleus** (*nucleus olivaris superior*) is upon the dorsal surface of the outer part of that collection of fibres known as the trapezium. It is not large enough to be visible to the naked eye and contains very small nerve-cells. It is a part of the auditory pathway, and its fibres enter the accessory auditory nucleus of the opposite side. The nuclei of the trapezium are in the auditory pathway. There are numerous other nuclei in the formatio reticularis (nuclei of the formatio reticularis, or the **nucleus magnocellularis diffusus of Koelliker**). The cells of these nuclei are large and multipolar, and their axones cross to the opposite side of the pons. They receive fibres from cranial-nerve nuclei and axones from the cells of the folium of the cerebellum which are called **cells of Purkinje.** These nuclei are probably connected with various pontine tracts.

The **Nuclei of the Fifth Nerve** (Fig. 613) in the pons are two in number, one for the motor root and the other for the sensory. The **motor nucleus** is situated in the higher portion of the pons, close under the dorsal surface and along the line of the lateral margin of the fourth ventricle. The **sensory nucleus** lies external to the motor one, beneath the superior peduncle of the cerebellum, which forms the lateral boundary of the upper half of the fourth ventricle. Some of the fibres from these nuclei pass to the raphé of the pons, and thence probably to the higher parts of the brain; the rest form the nerve-roots of the motor and sensory parts of the fifth nerve respectively. They pass through the pons to emerge on its ventral surface at its lateral and constricted portion, nearer its superior than its inferior margin. It must be mentioned that the whole of the roots of the fifth nerve are not formed from these nuclei. The sensory root is partly formed by a long tract of fibres, known as the **ascending root,** which can be traced through the pons to the nucleus of Rolando in the medulla. The motor root, in like manner, is partly formed by a long tract of fibres, which passes downward from the gray matter in the floor of the fourth ventricle and the floor of the Sylvian aqueduct and which is termed the **descending root.**

The **Nucleus of the Sixth Nerve** (Fig. 613) is situated beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle, on either side of the middle line. It lies close to the root of the facial nerve, immediately to be described, being a little external to and beneath it, and corresponds to the upper half of the fasciculus teres of the floor of the fourth ventricle (Fig. 606). The fibres pass through the substance of the pons, and emerge at the lower margin of this structure, between it and the upper end of the medulla.

The **Nucleus of the Facial Nerve** (*nucleus n. facialis*) (Fig. 613) is of elongated form, and is situated deeply in the reticular formation below the superior fovea of the floor of the fourth ventricle. The roots of the nerve derived from it pursue a remarkably tortuous course in the substance of the pons. At first they pass backward and inward till they reach the floor of the fourth ventricle, close to the median groove, where they are collected into a rounded bundle. This passes upward and forward, producing an elevation (*fasciculus teres*) in the floor of the ventricle, and then takes a sharp bend and arches outward through the substance of the pons to emerge at its lower border in the interval between the olivary and restiform bodies of the medulla. The **pars intermedia of Wrisberg** takes origin from the floor of the fourth ventricle beneath the inferior fovea.

The **Nuclei of the Auditory Nerve** (*nuclei n. acustici*) (Fig. 613) are two in number, **dorsal** and **ventral.** The origin of the **dorsal** or **vestibular root** is from a nucleus situated in the medulla, but prolonged upward into the pons, where it lies beneath the

upper half of the floor of the fourth ventricle (*nuclei n. vestibularis*). The dorsal root also takes origin from the cerebellum (from the **nucleus fastigii** and the **nucleus globosus**). According to Golgi, the vestibular root is also in connection with the **nucleus of Deiters** and the **nucleus of Bechterew**. The **ventral** or **cochlear root** arises from the ventral or accessory nucleus (*nuclei n. cochlearis*) which is also partly contained in the medulla and partly in the pons. In the medulla it is situated on the antero-external surface of the restiform body, lying between the vestibular and cochlear divisions of the auditory nerve, the latter being to its outer side. In the pons it is seen to lie beyond the boundary of the fourth ventricle on the outer and ventral aspect of the restiform body. A third nucleus, **nucleus of Deiters,** is sometimes termed the outer nucleus of the auditory nerve. It is situated below the outer angle of the fourth ventricle, and contains multipolar nerve-cells of large size. The outer portion of the nucleus of Deiters is called **Bechterew's nucleus.** The root of the auditory nerve consists of two portions, lateral and mesial, which pass, one to the outer and the other to the inner side of the restiform body, those from the lateral part arising mainly from the ventral nucleus, those from the mesial part arising from the dorsal auditory nucleus. They emerge at the lower border of the pons, in the groove between the olivary and restiform bodies.

The Cerebellum or Little Brain (Figs. 557, 595, 596, 597, 598, and 599).—The cerebellum is contained in the inferior occipital fossæ, and is situated beneath the occipital lobes of the cerebrum, from which it is separated by the tentorium cerebelli. In form it is oblong and flattened from above downward, its great diameter being from side to side. It measures from three and a half to four inches transversely, two to two and a half inches from before backward, and is about two inches thick in the centre, and about six lines thick at the circumference. It consists of **gray** and **white matter:** the former, darker than that of the cerebrum, occupies the surface (*substantia corticalis*), and masses of it are also found in the interior. The white matter is in the interior (*corpus medullare*). The surface of the cerebellum is not convoluted like that of the cerebrum, but is traversed by numerous curved furrows or sulci, which vary in depth at different parts, and separate the laminæ of which it is composed.

Lobes of the Cerebellum.—The cerebellum consists of three parts or lobes, a median and two lateral. They are all continuous with each other, and are substantially the same in structure. The median portion is called the **worm** or **vermiform process** (*vermis*), from the annulated appearance which it presents, owing to transverse ridges and furrows upon it. On the upper surface of the cerebellum, the worm is only slightly elevated above the level of the lateral portions, but on the under surface it is sunk almost out of sight in a deep depression, which is called the **valley** or **vallecula** (*vallecula cerebelli*). The lateral parts of the cerebellum are called **hemispheres** (*hemisphaeria cerebelli*); they attain a considerable size, overlapping and obscuring the inferior part of the worm. Below and behind they are separated by a deep notch, the **posterior cerebellar notch** or the **incisura marsupialis** (*incisura cerebelli posterior*), and in front by a broader, shallower notch, the **anterior cerebellar notch** or the **incisura semilunaris** (*incisura cerebelli anterior*). The anterior notch lies close to the pons and upper part of the medulla, and its upper edge encircles the posterior corpora quadrigemina. The posterior notch is free, and contains, in the recent state, the upper part of the falx cerebelli. The sides of the notches are formed by the margins of the hemispheres, while the bottom of the notches is formed by the anterior and posterior extremities of the worm respectively. The cerebellum is characterized by its laminated or foliated appearance; it is everywhere marked by deep, transverse, somewhat curved fissures, which lie close together, and extend for a considerable depth into the substance of the cerebellum, dividing it into a series of layers or leaves. Upon making sections across the laminæ

it will be seen that the folia, though differing in appearance from the convolutions of the cerebrum, are homologous with them, inasmuch as they consist of a central white substance, with a covering or cortex of gray matter.

The largest and deepest fissure is the **great horizontal fissure** (*sulcus horizontalis cerebelli*) (Figs. 595 and 596). It commences in front at the pons, and passes horizontally around the free margin of the hemisphere to the middle line behind, and divides the cerebellum into an upper and lower portion. Several secondary but deep fissures separate the cerebellum into lobes, and these are further subdivided by shallower sulci, which separate the individual folia or laminae from each other.

When the cerebellum is removed from the pons and medulla, the **transverse fissure** (*fissura transversa cerebelli*) is seen upon its anterior margin. This fissure is between the superior and inferior medullary laminae.

The white matter in the interior of the cerebellum is known as the **medullary body** (*corpus medullare*). About the middle it divides into a **superior** and an **inferior lamina** (*laminae medullares*). These laminae help to form the fourth ventricle. The superior lamina is composed of the superior medullary velum and the peduncles of the cerebellum. The inferior lamina constitutes the inferior medullary velum.

The cerebellum is connected to the cerebrum, pons, and medulla by three pairs of peduncles, which will be described in the sequel; a *superior* pair connect it with the cerebrum; a *middle* pair, with the pons; and an *inferior* pair, with the medulla.

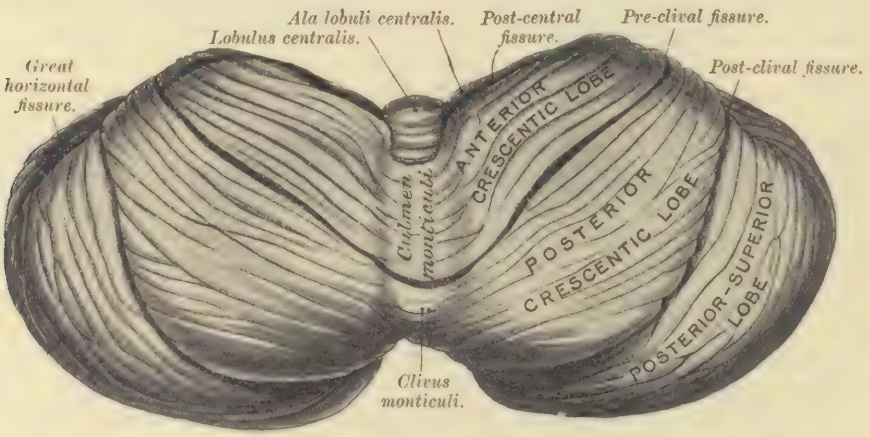


FIG 595.—Upper surface of the cerebellum. (Schäfer.)

The Upper Surface of the Cerebellum (*facies cerebelli superior*) (Fig. 595).—The superior surface of the cerebellum is somewhat elevated in the middle line and sloped toward its circumference, its hemispheres being connected together by an elevated median portion or lobe, the **superior vermis** or **superior vermiform process** (*vermis superior cerebelli*). The front of the superior vermis is elevated, and the highest point is called the **monticulus cerebelli.** The surface is traversed by four curved fissures, which are named from their situation, in front or behind two prominent lobes of the worm, the **central lobe** and the **clivus**: (1) the **pre-central fissure** (*sulcus praecentralis cerebelli*); (2) the **post-central fissure** (*sulcus postcentralis*); (3) the **pre-clival fissure,** and (4) the **post-clival fissure.** These four fissures divide the entire upper surface of the cerebellum into five lobes, but the portion of the lobe in the worm has received a different name from that in the hemisphere, though the two are continuous with each other. The five lobes in the worm are named from before backward: (1) the **lingula,** (2) the **central lobule,** (3) the **culmen monticuli**, (4) the **clivus monticuli**, and (5) the **folium cacuminis** (*folium vermis*).

The five lobes in the hemispheres are named from before backward: (1) the **fraenulum,** (2) the **ala lobuli centralis,** (3) **anterior crescentic,** (4) **posterior crescentic,** and (5) **posterior superior.** The arrangement of these fissures and lobules will be understood by reference to the accompanying schematic arrangement, in which the lobules are named in order from before backward with the fissures which separate them:

Worm.	*Hemisphere.*
Lingula.	Fraenulum.
Pre-central Fissure.	
Lobulus centralis.	Ala lobuli centralis.
Post-central Fissure.	
Culmen monticuli.	Anterior crescentic lobe.
Pre-clival Fissure.	
Clivus monticuli.	Posterior crescentic lobe.
Post-clival Fissure.	
Folium cacuminis.	Posterior superior lobe.

The **Lingula** (*lingula cerebelli*) (Fig. 598)is a tongue-shaped process of the vermis, which lies in the anterior cerebellar notch in front of the lobulus centralis, and is partially or completely concealed by it. It is in relation, in front, with the valve of Vieussens, on the dorsal surface of which it rests and with which it is connected; its white matter being continuous with that of the valve. At either side the lingula gradually shades off, and is prolonged only for a short distance into the hemispheres, where it forms the **fraenulum** (*vinculum lingulae cerebelli*). This does not stretch beyond the superior peduncle of the cerebellum over which it lies.

The Central Lobe and Alae (*lobulus centralis*).—The lobus or lobulus centralis is a small square lobe, situated in the anterior notch. It overlaps the lingula and is in turn partially concealed by the culmen monticuli. Laterally the lobulus centralis extends along the upper and anterior part of each hemisphere, where it forms a wing-like prolongation, the **ala lobuli centralis.**

The **Culmen Monticuli Cerebelli** is much larger than the two lobes just described, and constitutes, with the succeeding lobe, the **clivus,** the bulk of the upper worm. In front it partially overlaps and obscures the lobulus centralis, and behind it is separated from the clivus by the **pre-clival fissure.** It forms the most prominent part of the upper worm, and is marked on its surface by three or four secondary fissures, dividing it up into smaller lobules. Laterally it is continuous with the **anterior crescentic lobe of the hemisphere** (*pars anterior lobuli quadrangularis*), which is distinctly differentiated from the posterior crescentic lobe by the pre-clival fissure, though the two were formerly classed together as the quadrate lobe of the lateral hemisphere.

The **Clivus Monticuli** (*declive monticuli cerebelli*) is of considerable size, and, as stated above, forms with the culmen the major part of the superior worm. It consists of a group of laminae, which in front are separated from the culmen by the pre-clival fissure and behind appear to be almost continuous with the folium cacuminis, especially in the median line; but it will be found, on careful examination, to be separated from it by a well-defined fissure, the **post-clival fissure.** Laterally this lobe is continued into the hemispheres as the **posterior crescentic lobe** (*pars posterior lobuli quadrangularis*), which is somewhat semilunar in shape, and, with the anterior crescentic lobe, constitutes the greater part of the upper surface of the hemispheres.

The **Folium Cacuminis** (*folium vermis*) is a short and narrow, concealed band at the posterior extremity of the worm, consisting apparently of a single folium, but in reality marked on its upper and under surfaces by secondary fissures. Laterally it expands in either hemisphere into a considerable lobe, which is semilunar in shape, and is situated at the postero-superior part of the hemisphere and

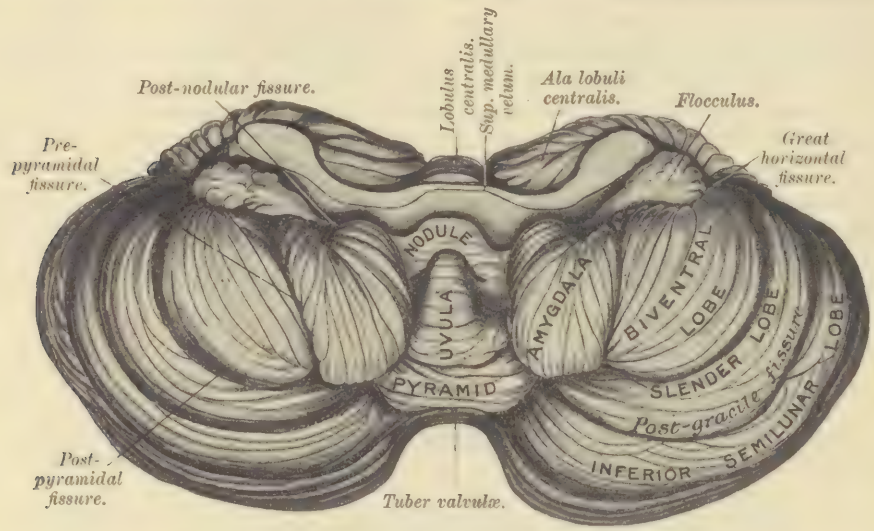


Fig. 596.—Under surface of the cerebellum. (Schäfer.)

is bounded below by the **great horizontal fissure.** It is named the **posterior superior lobe** (*lobulus semilunaris superior*), and occupies the posterior third of the upper surface of the hemisphere, forming its rounded postero-lateral border.

The Under Surface of the Cerebellum (*facies cerebelli inferior*) (Figs. 596 and 597). —The under surface of the cerebellum presents in the middle line the **inferior vermis**

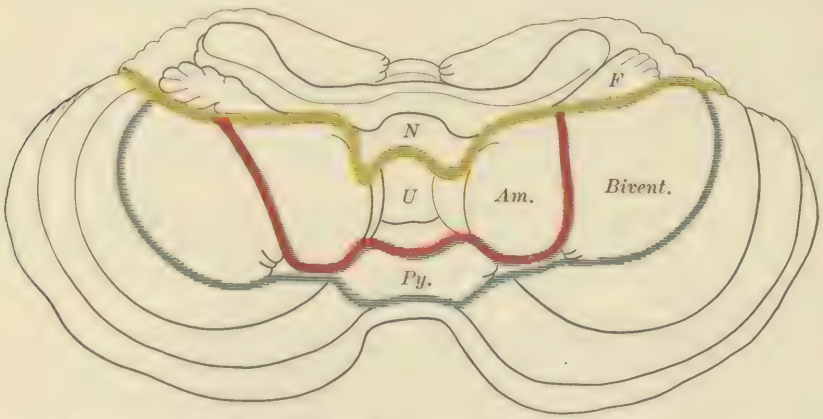


Fig. 597.—Diagram showing fissures on under surface of the cerebellum. *F.* Flocculus. *N.* Nodule. *U.* Uvula. *Py.* Pyramid. *Am.* Amygdala. *Bivent.* Biventral lobe.

or **inferior vermiform process** (*vermis inferior cerebelli*), buried in the vallecula, and separated from the hemispheres by lateral grooves. Here, as on the upper surface, there are deep fissures, dividing it into separate segments or lobes, but the arrangement is more complicated, and the relation of the segments of the worm to those of the hemisphere is less clearly marked. The fissures are three

in number, but are not so regularly disposed as those on the upper surface (Fig. 597). They are named, from their relation to the pyramid and nodule, two of the lobes on the under surface of the worm: (1) **post-nodular,** (2) **pre-pyramidal,** and (3) **post-pyramidal fissures.** The part of the worm in front of the post-nodular fissure is termed the **nodule** (*nodulus vermis*), and the lobule in the hemisphere corresponding with this is the **flocculus.** The next lobe is situated between the post-nodular and pre-pyramidal fissures. In the vermiform process it is known as the **uvula,** and its lateral expansion in the hemisphere is named the **amygdala** or **tonsil.** The lobule of the worm between the pre- and post-pyramidal fissures is the **pyramid,** and its corresponding part in the hemisphere is the **biventral** or **digastric lobe.** Finally, behind the post-pyramidal fissure in the worm is a small lobe, the **tuber valvulae** or **tuber posticum**; this, in the hemispheres, expands into a large lobe, which occupies at least two-thirds of the inferior surface of the cerebellum, and is subdivided into two by a secondary fissure, named the **post-gracile fissure.** The anterior of the two subdivisions is named the **slender lobe**; and the posterior, the **inferior semilunar** or **posterior inferior lobe.** These fissures and lobes are here arranged, from before backward, in a schematic form:

Worm.	*Hemisphere.*
Nodule.	Flocculus.
Post-nodular Fissure.	
Uvula.	Amygdala.
Pre-pyramidal Fissure.	
Pyramid.	Biventral lobe.
Post-pyramidal Fissure.	
Tuber valvulae	Slender lobe. *Post-gracile Fissure.* Inferior semilunar lobe.

The Fissures of the Under Surfaces of the Cerebellum.—The chief fissures of the under surface, as stated above, are three in number, and are not so regularly disposed as on the upper surface.

(1) The **Post-nodular Fissure** in the worm courses transversely across it, separating the nodule in front from the uvula behind. When it reaches the hemispheres it passes in front of the amygdala, and then crosses between the flocculus in front and the biventral lobe behind, and joins the anterior end of the great horizontal fissure.

(2) The **Pre-pyramidal Fissure** crosses the worm between the uvula in front and the pyramid behind, then curves laterally behind the amygdala, and passes forward along the outer border of this lobe, between it and the biventral lobe, to join the post-nodular sulcus.

(3) The **Post-pyramidal Fissure** passes across the worm behind the pyramid and in front of the tuber valvulae, and in the hemispheres courses behind the amygdala and biventral lobes, and then along the outer border of the biventral lobe to the post-nodular sulcus. It cuts off at least two-thirds of the inferior surface of the hemisphere. From it a secondary sulcus springs, and, coursing forward and outward, divides this surface into two parts and falls into the great horizontal fissure. This sulcus is termed the **post-gracile fissure.**

The Lobes of the Inferior Surface of the Cerebellum.—The **Nodule** (*nodulus vermis*) is a distinct prominence, forming the anterior extremity of the inferior worm. It projects into the roof of the fourth ventricle, and can only be distinctly seen after the cerebellum has been separated from the medulla and pons. On each side of

the nodule is a thin layer of white substance, named the **inferior medullary velum**. It is semilunar in form, its convex border being continuous with the middle peduncle of the cerebellum; it extends on either side as far as the flocculus, which it connects with the nodule.

The **flocculus** (*flocculi secondarii*) is a prominent, irregular lobule, situated just in front of the biventral lobe, between it and the middle peduncle of the cerebellum. It takes origin from a fold of gray matter in the inferior medullary velum, which is anterior to the tonsil. This fold is called the **peduncle of the flocculus** (*pedunculus flocculi*). Externally the gray fold enlarges and the enlargement is the flocculus. It is subdivided into a few small laminae.

The **Uvula** (*uvula vermis*) occupies a considerable portion of the inferior worm; it is separated on either side from the amygdala by a deep groove, the **sulcus valleculae**, at the bottom of which it is connected to the amygdala by a commissure of gray matter, indented on its surface, and called the **furrowed band**. The uvula is marked on its surface by three or four transverse fissures.

The **Tonsil** or **Amygdala** (*tonsilla cerebelli*) is a rounded mass in the lateral hemisphere. There are two tonsils, one in each lateral hemisphere. Each lies in a deep fossa between the uvula and the biventral lobe; this fossa is known by the name of the **bird's nest** (*nidus avis*).

The **Pyramid Lobe** (*pyramis vermis*) is a conical projection, forming the largest prominence of the lower worm. It is separated from the hemispheres by the sulcus valleculae, across which it is connected to the biventral lobe by an indistinct band of gray matter, analogous to the furrowed band already described.

The **Biventral Lobe** or **Digastric Lobule** (*lobulus biventer*) is triangular in shape, with the apex pointing inward and backward to become joined by the connecting band to the pyramid. The external border is separated from the slender lobe by the post-pyramidal fissure. The base is directed forward, and is on a line with the anterior border of the amygdala, and is separated from the flocculus by the post-nodular fissure.

The **Tuber Valvulae** or **Tuber Posticum** (*tuber vermis*) is the posterior division of the inferior worm. It is of small size, and laterally spreads out into the large posterior inferior lobes of the hemispheres. These lobes, which, as stated above, comprise at least two-thirds of the inferior surface of the hemisphere, are divided into two by the *post-gracile fissure*. The anterior lobe is named the **slender lobe**, and the posterior, the **inferior semilunar lobe** (*lobulus semilunaris inferior*). Both these lobes show a tendency to subdivision into two; that of the slender lobe is well marked, and its subdivisions are sometimes described as distinct lobes and named the **anterior** and **posterior slender lobes**, the fissure between them being termed the **intra-gracile fissure**.

The Internal Structure of the Cerebellum.—The cerebellum consists of **white** and **gray matter.**

The White Matter.—If a sagittal section (Fig. 598) is made through either hemisphere of the cerebellum, the interior will be found to consist of a central stem of white matter, the **medullary body** (*corpus medullare*), which contains in its interior a gray mass, the **corpus dentatum** (*nucleus dentatus*). It is a fold of gray matter thrown into corrugations and surrounding a centre of white matter. From the surface of this central stem a series of plates of medullary matter are detached, which, covered with gray matter, form the laminae. In consequence of the main branches from the central stem dividing and subdividing, the section presents a characteristic appearance, which is named the **arbor vitae cerebelli**. If a vertical section is made in the median plane of the cerebellum it will be found that the central stem divides into two main branches, which, from their direction, may be named respectively the **vertical** and the **horizontal branch**. The **vertical branch** passes upward to the culmen, where it subdivides freely, some of its ramifi-

cations passing forward and upward to the central lobe. The **horizontal branch** passes backward to the folium cacuminis, considerably diminished in size in consequence of having given off large secondary branches: one, from its upper surface, ascends to the clivus; the others descend, and enter the lobes in the inferior vermiform process, the tuber valvulae, the pyramid, the uvula, and the nodule. In the interior of the worm is white matter called the **corpus trapezoides**. It is not necessary to describe in detail the various divisions of the white matter, as they correspond to the lobes on the surface.

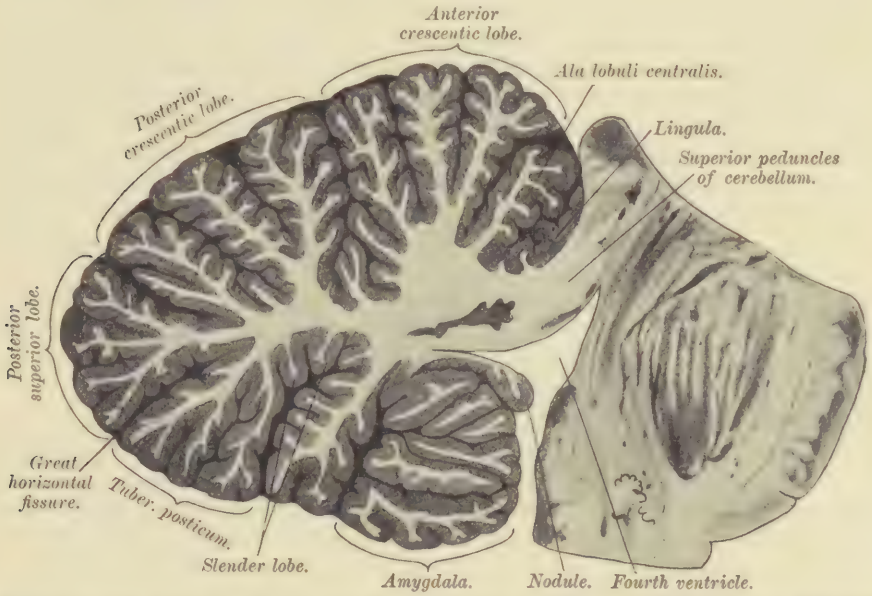


FIG. 598.—Sagittal section of the cerebellum, near the point of junction of the worm with the hemisphere. (Schäfer.)

The white matter of the cerebellum includes three systems of fibres: (1) **projection** or **peduncular fibres**, which are directly continuous with those of the peduncles of the cerebellum; (2) the **fibres proper** (*fibrae propriae*) of the cerebellum itself.

Projection or Peduncular Fibres.—The medullary body, as it emerges from the anterior cerebellar notch, is composed of projection fibres. These fibres are continuous with the branches of the medullary body and constitute the **arbor vitae**. The medullary body divides into a **superior lamina** and an **inferior lamina**, and it also forms a portion of the fourth ventricle. The inferior lamina is the inferior medullary velum, and its fibres reach the nodule and each flocculus. The superior lamina forms the superior medullary velum and the cerebellar peduncles.

The Peduncles of the Cerebellum (Figs. 599 and 600).—From the anterior part of each hemisphere arise three large processes or peduncles—**superior, middle**, and **inferior peduncles**—by which the cerebellum is connected with the rest of the encephalon.

The **Superior Cerebellar Peduncles** or **Crura ad Cerebrum** (*brachia conjunctiva cerebelli*) form the upper lateral boundaries of the floor of the fourth ventricle. As they extend forward and upward they converge on the dorsal aspect of the ventricle, and thus assist in roofing it in. They may be traced as far as the corpora quadrigemina, under which they pass. They enter the upper and mesial part of

the medullary substance of the hemispheres, beneath the ala lobuli centralis and the fraenulum, and pass to a great extent into the interior of the corpus dentatum, though some of their fibres wind around it and reach the gray cortical matter, especially of the inferior surface.

There are both afferent and efferent fibres in the superior peduncle, and the fibres are in two bundles (Fig. 600). The fibres to the cerebrum are axones of cells, most of which are situated in the corpus dentatum, but some of the fibres to the cerebrum come from the Purkinje cells of the cerebellar cortex, and probably also a few come from the smaller nuclei in the central white substance. The majority of the fibres decussate below the corpora quadrigemina, and pass to the opposite red nucleus of the tegmentum, from which a relay is prolonged through the optic thalamus to the cerebral cortex. The fibres of the second group take origin in the opposite red nucleus and end in the corpus dentatum (Santee).

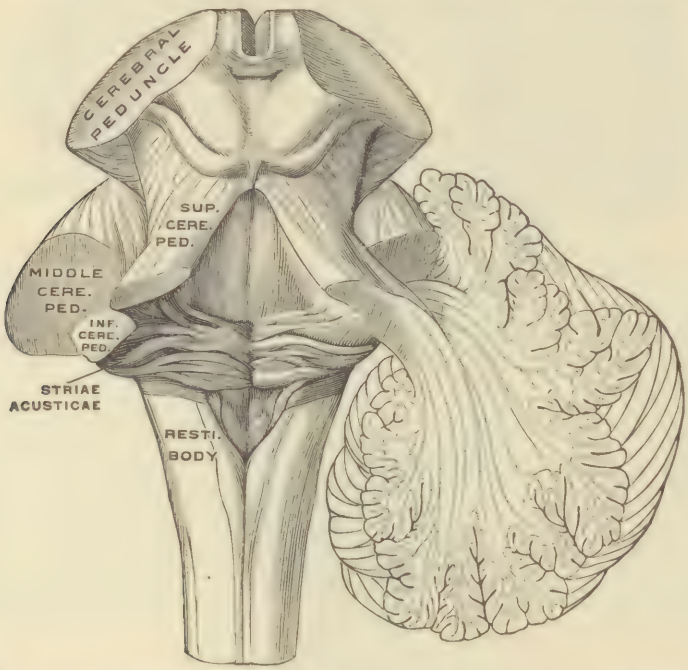


FIG. 599.—The peduncles of the cerebellum. On the left the three peduncles have been cut at their entrance into the cerebellum; on the right side they are shown penetrating the cerebellar hemisphere. (Poirier and Charpy.)

THE VALVE OF VIEUSSENS OR SUPERIOR MEDULLARY VELUM (*velum medullare anterius*) (Figs. 574, 584, 604, and 606).—Stretched across from one superior cerebellar peduncle to the other is a thin, transparent lamina of white matter, the **valve of Vieussens**; on to the dorsal surface of its lower half the folia of the lingula are prolonged. It helps to form with the superior peduncles the roof of the upper part of the fourth ventricle, and is continuous with the central white stem of the cerebellum. It is narrow above, where it passes beneath the corpora quadrigemina, and broader below, at its connection with the white substance of the superior worm of the cerebellum. A slightly elevated ridge descends upon the upper part of the valve from between the lower corpora quadrigemina, and on either side of this may be seen the fourth nerve. The majority of the fibres of the superior medullary velum are chiefly longitudinal fibres, passing between the cerebrum and the worm of the cerebellum. What is known as the antero-lateral ascending cerebellar tract of Gowers is said by Hoche to pass to the worm by way of

the superior velum. The velum also contains some commissural fibres and decussating fibres of the roots of the fourth nerves.

The **Middle Peduncles** or **Crura ad Posterior** (*brachia pontis*) are the largest of the three pairs. They consist of a mass of curved fibres, which, as already described, pass to the pons and fovea, comprises most of the transverse fibres of the pons. These tracts are both afferent and efferent, and the middle peduncle emerges from the cerebellum at the anterior notch, between the margins of the great horizontal fissure. The fibres of the middle peduncle (Fig. 600) rise from

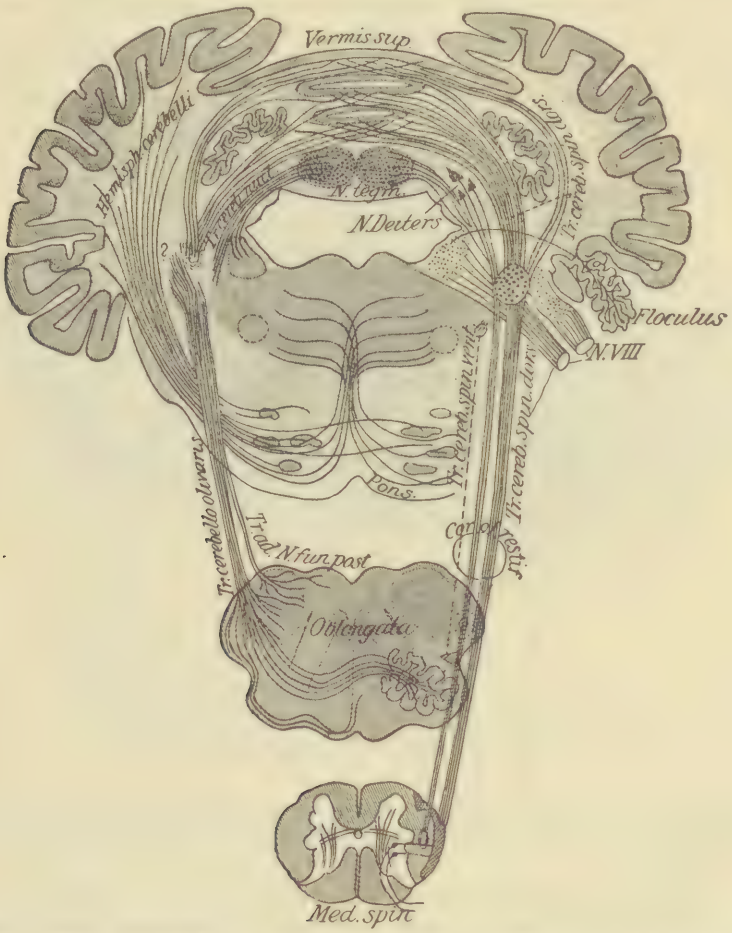


FIG. 600.—Diagram showing the origin and course of the fibres of the peduncles of the cerebellum. (Edinger.)

all portions of the cortex of the cerebellum. In the peduncle the fibres effect a crossing, so that fibres from the anterior part of the hemisphere pass to the posterior part of the pons, and fibres from the posterior portion of the hemisphere pass to the anterior portion of the pons. The fibres approach the median line and terminate on both sides of the raphé in the nuclei pontis and the nuclei of the formatio reticularis (Cajal). The balance of the fibres are "axones of cell-bodies, situated mainly in the opposite nucleus pontis."[1] These fibres "form a segment in the indirect motor paths contained above the pons, in the medial

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord. By Harris E. Santee.

and lateral fifths, and the intermediate bundle of the crusta. Collaterals from both groups of fibres ascend and descend in the pons. They run upward with both crustae, but chiefly with the opposite one; and they accompany the fillet and posterior longitudinal bundle of the same side to the nuclei of the third, fourth, and sixth cranial nerves."[1]

The **Inferior Peduncles** or **Crura ad Medullam** (*corpora restiformia*) connect the cerebellum with the medulla oblongata. The fibres (Fig. 600) are both afferent and efferent and begin in the gray cortex of the upper surface of the cerebellar hemispheres and the worm. They descend in a direction downward and inward, from part of the lateral walls of the fourth ventricle, reach the medulla, and become the **restiform bodies**, which will be subsequently described (p. 941). The following are the chief sets of fibres in the inferior peduncles: 1. The **direct cerebellar tract**, which takes origin in Clarke's column of the spinal cord and terminates in the superior worm of the cerebellum. 2. The **external arciform fibres**, which rise in the gracile and cuneate nuclei of the medulla and terminate in the vermis superior. The posterior or uncrossed fibres terminate on the same side, the anterior or crossed fibres on the opposite side. 3. The **acustico-cerebellar tract.** These fibres originate from the nucleus of the auditory nerve in the floor of the fourth ventricle, and terminate in the opposite nucleus fastigii and nucleus globosus of the cerebellum. 4. Fibres which pass between the **lateral nucleus of the medulla oblongata** and the corresponding side of the cerebellar cortex. 5. The

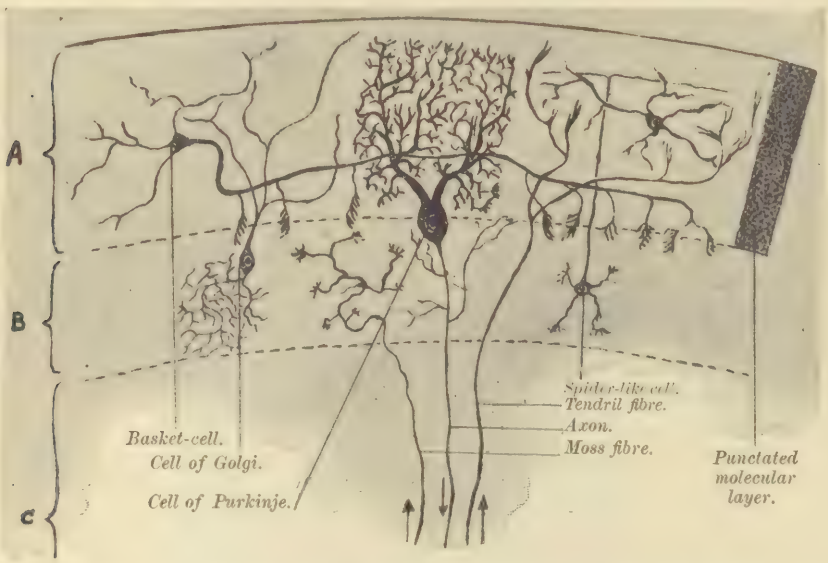


FIG. 601.—Diagrammatic representation of the cells of the cerebellum. *A*. Molecular layer. *B*. Nuclear layer. *C*. White matter. (Modified from Foster's Physiology.)

descending cerebellar tract, which originates in the cerebellar cortex and which passes down by way of the restiform body of the medulla and the antero-lateral column of the spinal cord and reaches the anterior gray horn of the cord. 6. The **internal arciform fibres,** which pass between the cerebellar cortex and the opposite olivary body of the medulla (the **cerebello-olivary tract**). Santee emphasizes the fact that most of the fibres which emerge from the cerebellum in the middle and inferior peduncles are "axones of Purkinje's cells; they connect the cerebellum with the motor nuclei of cranial and spinal nerves."[2]

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord. By Harris E. Santee. [2] Ibid.

The Fibres Proper of the Cerebellum.—The **fibrae propriae** of the cerebellum are of two kinds: (1) **commissural fibres,** which cross the middle line to connect the opposite halves of the cerebellum, some at the anterior part and others at the posterior part of the vermiform process; (2) **association fibres,** which are antero-posterior fibres connecting adjacent laminae with each other.

The Gray Matter of the Cerebellum.—The gray matter of the cerebellum is found in two situations: (1) on the surface, forming the cortex; (2) as independent masses in the interior.

1. The **Cortex of the Cerebellum** (*substantia corticalis*) presents a characteristic foliated appearance, due to the series of laminae which are given off from the central white matter; these in their turn give off secondary laminae, which are covered with gray matter. This arrangement gives to the cut surface of the organ a foliated appearance (Fig. 598). Externally, the cortex is covered by pia matter; internally, is the medullary centre, consisting mainly of nerve-fibres.

Microscopic Appearance of the Cortex (Figs. 601 and 602).—The cortex presents a remarkable structure, consisting of two distinct layers—viz., an **external** or **superficial molecular layer,** and an **internal, deep, nuclear, rust-colored,** or **granular layer.** Between the two layers is an incomplete stratum of the characteristic cells of the cerebellum, the **corpuscles of Purkinje.**

The *external, superficial gray* or *molecular layer* (Figs. 601 and 602) consists of fibres and cells. The nerve-fibres are delicate fibrillae, and are derived from the following sources: (*a*) the dendrites and axone collaterals of Purkinje's cells; (*b*) fibres from cells in the granular layer; (*c*) fibres from the central white substance of the cerebellum; (*d*) fibres derived from cells in the molecular layer itself. In addition to these are other fibres, which have a vertical direction. These are the processes of large glia-cells, situated in the granular layer. They pass outward to the periphery of the gray matter, where they expand into little conical enlargements, which form a sort of limiting membrane beneath the pia mater, analogous to the membrana limitans interna in the retina, formed by the fibres of Müller.

The *cells* of the molecular layer are small, and are arranged in two strata, an outer and an inner. They all possess branching axis-cylinder processes; those of the inner layer run for some distance horizontally, *i. e.*, parallel with the surface of the folia, giving off at intervals collaterals, which pass in a vertical direction toward the cell-bodies of Purkinje's corpuscles, around which they become enlarged and ramify like a basket. Hence these cells of the inner portion of the external layer are named **basket-cells** (Fig. 601).

The *cells* or *corpuscles of Purkinje* (Fig. 602) are flask-shaped cells, situated at the junction of the molecular and granular layers, their bases resting against the latter. From the bottom of each flask one axis-cylinder process arises; this passes through the granular layer, and, becoming medullated, is continued as a nerve-fibre in the medullary substance beneath. This axone gives off fine collaterals as it passes through the granular layer, some of which run back into the molecular layer. From the neck of the flask numerous dendrites are given off, which branch in an antler-like manner in the molecular layer and terminate in free extremities.

The *internal, rust-colored, nuclear* or *granular layer* (Figs. 601 and 602) is characterized by containing numerous small nerve-cells or granules of a reddish-brown color, together with many nerve-fibrils. Most of the cells are nearly spherical and provided with short dendrites, which spread out in a spider-like manner in the granular layer. Their axones pass outward into the molecular layer, and, bifurcating at right angles, run horizontally for some distance. In the outer part of the granular layer are also to be observed some larger cells, of the type termed **Golgi cells** (Fig. 601). Their axones undergo frequent division as soon as they leave the nerve-cells, and pass into the granular layer, while their dendrites ramify chiefly in the molecular layer.

Finally, in the gray matter of the cerebellar cortex fibres are to be seen which come from the white centre and penetrate the cortex. The cell origin of these fibres is unknown, though it is believed that it is probably in the gray matter of the spinal cord. Some of these fibres end in the granular layer, by dividing into numerous branches, on which are to be seen peculiar moss-like appendages; hence they have been termed by Ramón y Cajal the **moss fibres** (Fig. 601); they form an arborescence around the cells of the granular layer. Other fibres derived from the medullary centre can be traced into the molecular layer, where their branches cling around the dendrites of Purkinje's cells, and hence they have been named the **clinging** or **tendril fibres** (Fig. 601).

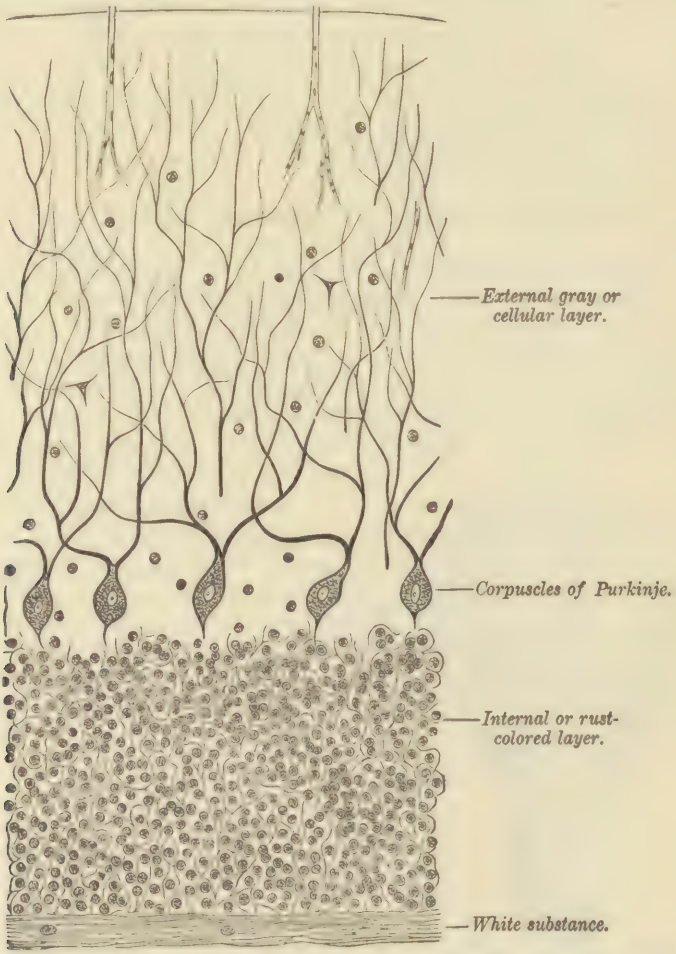


FIG. 602.—Vertical section through the gray matter of the human cerebellum. Magnified about 100 diameters. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

2. The **Independent Centres of Gray Matter in the Cerebellum** are four in number on each side: one is of large size, and is known as the **corpus dentatum**; the other three, much smaller, are situated near the middle of the cerebellum, and are known as the **nucleus emboliformis, nucleus globosus,** and **nucleus fastigii.**

The **corpus dentatum** or **ganglion of the cerebellum** (*nucleus dentatus*) is a gray nucleus situated a little to the inner side of the centre of the stem of the white matter of the hemisphere. It consists of an irregularly folded lamina of a grayish-yellow color, containing white fibres, and presenting on its antero-internal aspect an opening, the **hilum** (*hilus nuclei dentati*), from which most of the fibres of the

superior cerebellar peduncle emerge. The **nucleus emboliformis** is a mass of gray matter placed immediately to the inner side of the corpus dentatum, and partly covering its hilum. The **nucleus globosus** is an elongated mass of gray matter, directed antero-posteriorly, and placed to the inner side of the preceding. The **nucleus fastigii** is somewhat larger than the other two, and is situated close to the middle line at the anterior end of the superior vermiform process, and immediately over the roof of the fourth ventricle, from which it is separated by a thin layer of white matter. It is known as the **roof nucleus of Stilling.**

Weight of the Cerebellum.—Its average weight in the male is about 5 oz., 4 drs. It attains its maximum weight between the twenty-fifth and fortieth years, its increase in weight after the fourteenth year being relatively greater in the female than in the male. The proportion between the cerebellum and cerebrum is, in the male, as 1 to $8\frac{1}{5}$, and in the female as 1 to 8. In the infant the cerebellum is proportionately much smaller than in the adult, the relation between it and the cerebrum being, according to Chaussier, between 1 to 13, and 1 to 26; by Cruveilhier, the proportion was found to be 1 to 20.

V. The Medulla Oblongata (Myelencephalon) (Figs. 557, 594, 603, 604).

The medulla oblongata, known also as the **spinal bulb,** is the lowest division of the encephalon, and is continuous with the spinal cord. It is, in fact, the intracranial portion of the spinal cord. It is developed from the fifth cerebral vesicle, the cavity of which forms the lower half of the fourth ventricle. It extends from the lower margin of the pons Varolii to a plane passing transversely just below the decussation of the pyramids, at which level the spinal cord commences. This plane corresponds to the lower margin of the foramen magnum. The upper limit of the medulla is marked off from the pons Varolii on its ventral aspect by the abrupt lower margin of the latter.

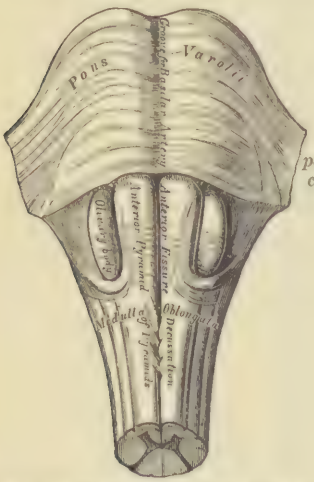


FIG. 603.—Medulla oblongata and pons Varolii. Anterior surface.

The medulla oblongata is directed from above obliquely downward and backward; its ventral surface rests on the basilar groove of the occipital bone, while its dorsal surface is received into the fossa between the hemispheres of the cerebellum, and forms the lower part of the floor of the fourth ventricle. It is pyramidal in shape, its broad extremity directed upward, its lower end being narrow at its point of connection with the cord. It measures an inch in length, three-quarters of an inch in breadth at its widest part, and half an inch in thickness. Its surface is marked, in the median line, in front and behind, by an **anterior** and a **posterior median fissure** (*fissura mediana anterior* and *fissura mediana posterior*), which are continuous with similar fissures on the anterior and posterior surfaces of the cord, but neither one of them extends the entire length of the bulb. The anterior fissure contains a fold of pia mater, and terminates just below the pons in a *cul-de-sac*, the **foramen caecum of Vicq d'Azyr.** It is interrupted at its lower part by some bundles of fibres, which cross obliquely from one side to the other, forming the **decussation of the pyramids** (*decussatio pyramidum*) (Figs. 594 and 605). The posterior fissure is a deep but narrow fissure, continued upward to about the middle of the medulla. As it ascends its depth diminishes, and about the middle of the posterior surface of the medulla the central canal of the cord

opens, and the lips of the shallow posterior fissure diverge and bound the triangular opening, which is the lower portion of the floor of the fourth ventricle (Figs. 604 and 606). As the lower half of the medulla contains the central canal of the cord, it is called the **closed portion**; the upper half of the medulla is above the opening of the central canal and is called the **open portion.**

These two fissures divide the medulla into two symmetrical halves, each half presenting elongated eminences, which are continuous with the columns of the cord. By taking the lines along which some of the cranial nerves emerge from the medulla as landmarks, the surface of this portion of the nervous system may be divided into three columns, in the same way as the spinal cord is divided into three columns by the lines corresponding to the points of exit of the anterior and posterior roots of the spinal nerves. The **hypoglossal nerve-roots** arise from a furrow on the antero-lateral surface of the medulla, which is known as the **antero-lateral furrow**, or the **ventro-lateral groove** (*sulcus lateralis anterior*). There is no furrow on the cord corresponding with this medullary furrow. The roots of the **glossopharyngeal** and **pneumogastric nerves** and the **accessory root of the spinal accessory nerve** lie in a furrow upon the postero-lateral surface of the medulla. This furrow is called the **postero-lateral furrow** or **dorso-lateral groove** (*sulcus lateralis posterior*). This groove is the continuation of the postero-lateral fissure of the cord. It is not straight, but turns forward as it ascends. At the termination of this groove anteriorly the **seventh** and **eighth cranial nerves emerge.** At the lower portion of the medulla the groove ceases for a short distance as the direct cerebellar tract passes from the lateral to the posterior surface of the bulb. The *anterior column* comprises that portion which is situated between the anterior median fissure and the antero-lateral furrow; this column is called the **anterior pyramid** or simply the **pyramid** (Fig. 603). The *lateral column* comprises that portion which is situated between the antero-lateral and the postero-lateral furrows. In the lower part of the medulla this column is single, and is called the **lateral tract**; but in the upper part an oval-shaped body comes forward between it and the pyramid, and pushes aside the lateral tract. This is called the **olivary body** (Fig. 603) The *posterior column* (Fig. 604) comprises that portion which is situated between the postero-lateral furrow and the posterior median fissure. It is marked by slight furrows dividing it into smaller columns, and these in the lower part of the medulla are named, from without inward, the **fasciculus of Rolando**, the **fasciculus cuneatus** and the **fasciculus gracilis**; in the upper part of the medulla, the fasciculus of Rolando and the fasciculus cuneatus appear to become fused together and seem to form the single body, called the **restiform body** (Fig. 604). As a matter of fact the restiform body is not so formed (p. 941).

The Pyramid (*pyramis medullae oblongatae*) (Figs. 594 and 603).—The pyramid is a pyramidal bundle of white matter. A pyramid is placed one on either side of the anterior median fissure, and separated from the olivary body by a slight depression, from which the roots of the hypoglossal nerve emerge (antero-lateral furrow). At the lower border of the pons these bodies are somewhat constricted and are here crossed by a band of arched fibres, the **ponticulus of Arnold**; below this they become enlarged, and then taper as they descend to their lower extremity. The fibres of which compose these pyramids may be arranged in two bundles: an *outer*, continuous below with the **direct** or **uncrossed pyramidal tract** of the anterior column of the same side of the spinal cord, and an *inner*, continuous with the **crossed pyramidal tract** of the lateral column of the opposite side of the cord (Fig. 605). As will be subsequently mentioned, the direct pyramidal tract in the cord lies next to the anterior median fissure, but as the crossed pyramidal tract of the cord ascends to the medulla it decussates with its fellow of the opposite side across the anterior median fissure, and so displaces laterally the direct pyramidal tract, and ascends,

after decussation, through the medulla to its inner or mesial side. This decussation is usually spoken of as the **decussation of the pyramids** (Figs. 594 and 605), but it must be borne in mind that it is only a portion of the fibres of the pyramid (90 per cent. of them) which decussate; namely, those derived from the crossed pyramidal tract of the cord; the outermost fibres, derived from the anterior column of the cord, do not decussate. Each pyramid enters the substance of the pons in one bundle, and may be traced through it, after breaking up into several smaller fasciculi, into the corresponding crus cerebri.

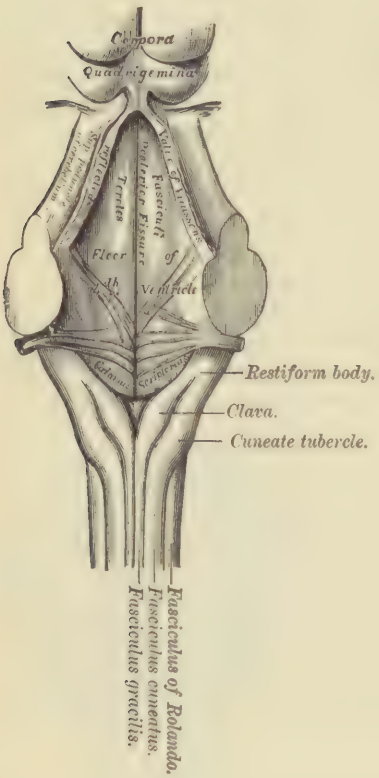


FIG. 604.—Posterior surface of the medulla oblongata.

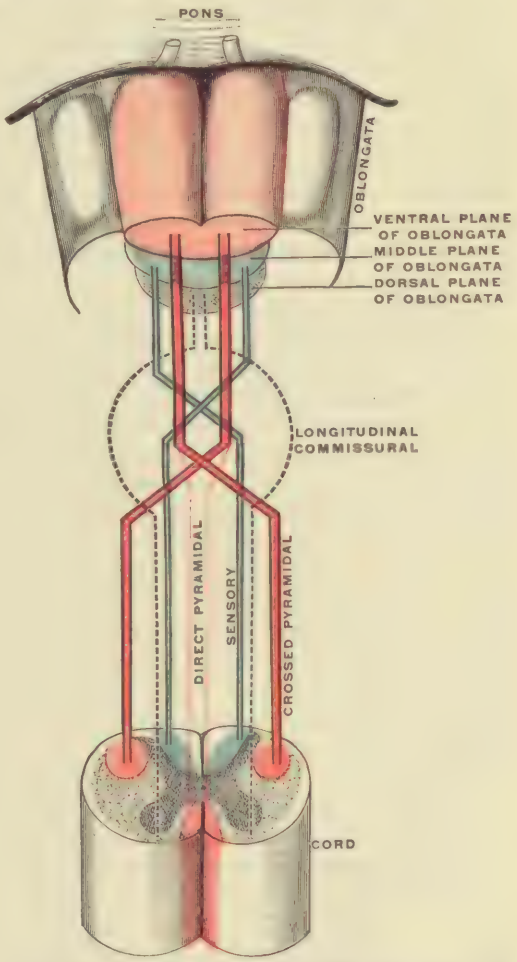


FIG. 605.—Diagram to show the crossing of the pyramids (red) and of the lemniscus (blue). (Testut.)

The Lateral Column or Lateral Area.—The lateral column or area is between the antero-lateral and postero-lateral furrows. In the lower part of the medulla it is of the same width as the lateral column of the cord, and appears on the surface to be a direct continuation of it. As a matter of fact it is only a part of the lateral column of the spinal cord which is continued upward into this column; for the crossed pyramidal tract passes into the pyramid of the opposite side, and the direct cerebellar tract of the lateral column of the cord passes into the restiform body. The rest of the lateral column of the cord, that is to say, the **antero-lateral ground bundle** (*fasciculus proprius anterolateralis*) and the **antero-lateral cerebellar tract** (*fasciculus anterolateralis superficialis*), can be traced

upward into this area. In the upper part of the medulla, the lateral tract, on account of the interpolation of the olivary body, becomes almost concealed by this body.

The Olive, Olivary Body or Olivary Eminence (*oliva*) (Figs. 586, 589, and 603).—The olivary body or eminence is a prominent oval mass, bulging from the upper part of the lateral column of the medulla. It is situated on the outer side of the pyramid, from which it is separated by the slight groove, along which the fibres of the hypoglossal nerve emerge. It is separated externally from the restiform body by a longitudinal, narrow band of fibres, prolonged upward from the lateral tract, and by the groove, from which the glosso-pharyngeal, pneumogastric, and spinal accessory nerves arise. It is equal in breadth to the pyramid; it is broader above than below, and is about half an inch in length, being separated above from the pons Varolii by a slight depression, in which a band of arched fibres is sometimes to be seen. Numerous white fibres, **superficial or external arciform** or **arcuate fibres** (Fig. 607), are seen winding across the lower half of the pyramid and the olivary body to enter the restiform body. The olivary body is formed by the olivary nucleus of the medulla (Fig. 607), a lamina of gray matter, the surface of which is covered by a very thin layer of white matter.

The Funiculus or Fasciculus of Rolando (*fasciculus lateralis*) (Fig. 604).—The fasciculus of Rolando is a longitudinal prominence on the outer side of the lateral tract. It begins at the lower end of the medulla by a tapering extremity, and has, apparently, no corresponding column in the cord. It gradually enlarges as it ascends, and forms, at a level with the lower border of the olivary body, a considerable prominence, known as the **tubercle of Rolando** (*tuberculum Rolandi*) (Fig. 607). This is caused by the substantia gelatinosa of Rolando of the cord gradually finding its way to the surface, so as to form a prominence there. About half an inch below the pons the fasciculus of Rolando appears to blend with the fasciculus cuneatus. In front, it is separated from the lateral tract by a distinct groove, the continuation upward of the postero-lateral groove of the cord; behind, the separation from the fasciculus cuneatus is much less distinct.

The **Wedge-shaped** or **Cuneate Funiculus** or the **Fasciculus Cuneatus** (Fig. 604) is the direct continuation upward of the postero-lateral column (tract of Burdach) of the cord. It is situated between the fasciculus of Rolando and the fasciculus gracilis. It enlarges as it ascends, and forms, opposite the lower extremity of the fourth ventricle, a slight eminence or enlargement, the **cuneate tubercle** (*tuberculum cuneatum*) (Fig. 604), which is marked only in children. Above this point it disappears from the surface.

The **Slender Funiculus** or the **Fasciculus Gracilis** (Fig. 604) is the direct continuation upward of the postero-median column of the cord (tract of Goll). It is a narrow white band, placed parallel to and along the side of the posterior median fissure. It is separated from the fasciculus cuneatus by a slight groove, continuous with that on the surface of the cord, which marks off the postero-median column. At first the fasciculi of the two sides lie in close contact on either side of the posterior median fissure. Opposite the apex of the fourth ventricle each presents an enlargement, the **clava** (Fig. 604); they then diverge and form the lateral boundaries of the lower part of the fourth ventricle, and gradually tapering off become no longer traceable. The surface prominence of the fasciculus gracilis is formed by the gray nucleus beneath. This nucleus is known as the **nucleus fasciculi gracilis.**

The Restiform Body (*corpus restiforme*) (Fig. 604).—The upper part of the posterior area of the medulla is occupied by the restiform body. It appears, at first sight, as if this body were the direct continuation upward of the fasciculus cuneatus and the fasciculus of Rolando, and it was formerly

described as such. This, however, is not so, for the restiform body is largely formed by a set of fibres, the **superficial** or **external arciform** or **arcuate fibres** (Fig. 607), which issue from the anterior median fissure and will presently be described. They pass laterally over the pyramid and olive, and assist in forming the restiform body. There is also a narrow strand of fibres, derived from the lateral column of the cord, the **direct cerebellar tract** (*fasciculus cerebello-spinalis*), which joins the above-mentioned arcuate fibres. These two sets of fibres, reinforced by the **internal arcuate fibres** from the opposite side of the medulla, form the restiform body.

The restiform bodies are the largest prominences of the medulla, and are placed between the lateral tracts in front and the fasciculus cuneatus behind, from both of which they are separated by slight grooves. As they ascend they diverge from each other, assist in forming the lower part of the lateral boundaries of the fourth ventricle, and then enter the corresponding hemisphere of the cerebellum, forming its inferior peduncles.

The Posterior Surface of the Medulla Oblongata (*facies posterius*) (Fig. 604).—The posterior surface of the medulla oblongata forms part of the floor of the fourth ventricle (Fig. 606). This portion is of a triangular form, bounded on each side by the diverging fasciculi graciles and cuneati and restiform bodies. The divergence of these two fasciculi and of the restiform bodies, together with the opening out of the posterior fissure and central canal of the spinal cord, displays in the floor of the ventricle the gray matter of the medulla, which is continuous below with the gray matter of the cord. In the middle line is seen a longitudinal furrow, which divides this part of the ventricle into right and left halves, and is continuous below with the central canal of the cord.

The Arciform or Arcuate Fibres (Fig. 607).—The arciform or arcuate fibres, which have been mentioned as forming part of the restiform body, are found in the upper half of the medulla, crossing its surface and also traversing its substance. They are divided for purposes of description into two sets—**external** and **internal.** The **external** or **superficial arciform** or **arcuate fibres** (*fibrae arcuatae externae*) have already been alluded to as crossing the pyramid and olivary body on each side. They emerge from the anterior median fissure, and if traced into it are found to enter the raphé and cross to the opposite side, after which their further course is a matter of some doubt. After emerging from the anterior median fissure they cross the pyramid and olivary body, often concealing from view the upper part of the cuneate and Rolandic fasciculi, and enter the restiform body. As they cross the olivary body they are reinforced by some of the internal arciform fibres, which come to the surface on the inner side of, or through, this structure. The **internal arciform** or **arcuate fibres** (*fibrae arcuatae internae*) are described with the microscopic anatomy of the medulla.

It is advisable, at this stage, to take up the consideration of the cavity of the fourth ventricle, an acquaintance with which will render the description of the internal structure of the medulla oblongata more intelligible.

The Fourth Ventricle (Ventriculus Quartus) (Fig. 606).

The fourth ventricle is the cavity common to the metencephalon, and the myelencephalon is in the pons and medulla oblongata and is anterior or ventral to the cerebellum. It is lozenge- or diamond-shaped; that is to say, it is composed of two triangles, with their bases in contact. The sides of the lower triangle are formed by the divergence of the fasciculi graciles, fasciculi cuneati, and restiform bodies of the medulla on either side. As these columns pass upward in the medulla they turn outward from the median line, and, diverging from each other, form the lateral boundaries of the lower half of the fourth ventricle. In like manner the

sides of the upper triangle are formed by the convergence of the superior peduncles of the cerebellum. These peduncles are separated below by a somewhat wide interval, but as they pass upward and forward toward the corpora quadrigemina they gradually converge and ultimately come into contact with each other. This cavity is therefore bounded laterally on each side by the superior peduncle of the cerebellum in its upper half, and by the fasciculus gracilis, the fasciculus cuneatus, and the restiform body in its lower half. It presents four angles. The upper angle reaches as high as the upper border of the pons, and corresponds with the lower opening of the **aqueduct of Sylvius**, by which this ventricle communicates with the third ventricle (Fig. 587). The lower angle is on a level with the lower border of the olivary body, and is continuous with the central canal of the spinal cord. From the resemblance that it bears to the point of a writing pen it has been named the **calamus scriptorius**. Its lateral angles extend for some distance between the medulla and the cerebellum, each forming a pointed lateral recess.

The Roof or Posterior Wall of the Fourth Ventricle.—The roof of the fourth ventricle is formed from above downward by the following structures: a part of the **superior peduncles of the cerebellum**, the **anterior** or **superior medullary velum**, the **posterior** or **inferior medullary velum**, the **tela chorioidea inferior**, the **obex**, and the **lingula**. The superior half of the roof meets the inferior half at an acute angle to form the **tent of the fourth ventricle** (*fastigium*).

The Superior Peduncles of the Cerebellum (*brachia conjunctiva cerebelli*) (Figs. 557, 598, 599, 604, and 606).—The superior peduncles of the cerebellum, when they emerge from the medullary substance of its hemispheres, pass upward and forward, forming the lateral boundaries of the upper half of the fourth ventricle, but, converging as they approach the corpora quadrigemina, the mesial portions of the peduncles form a part of the roof of the cavity, in consequence of the ventricle extending to a slight extent underneath the peduncles.

The Anterior or Superior Medullary Velum (**Valve of Vieussens**) (*velum medullare anterius*) (Figs. 584, 596, 605, and 606).—In the angular interval left between the two superior peduncles is a thin lamina of white matter, continuous with the white centre of the cerebellum, which bridges across from one peduncle to the other, and so completes the roof of the superior part of the ventricle. This is the **superior medullary velum** or **valve of Vieussens**. Its dorsal surface is covered by the folia of the lingula, already described (p. 928).

The Posterior or Inferior Medullary Velum (*velum medullare posterius*).—The posterior or inferior medullary velum is a thin layer of white substance, prolonged from the white centre of the medulla on either side of the nodule, which assists in forming a part of the roof of the fourth ventricle, stretching over it toward its lateral angles. It is continuous with the white substance of the cerebellum by its convex edge, while its thin concave margin is apparently free. In reality, however, it is continuous with the epithelium of the ventricle, which is prolonged downward from the velum to the edge of the lingula.

The Tela Chorioidea Inferior (*tela chorioidea ventriculi quarti*).—The tela chorioidea inferior is a layer of pia mater which covers in the lower part of the fourth ventricle below the inferior medullary velum. Superiorly it is reflected on to the under surface of the cerebellum, while inferiorly it is continued on to the restiform bodies and lower part of the medulla. This part of the roof of the ventricle contains no nervous matter, but consists merely of the ventricular epithelium covered by pia mater. The tela chorioidea inferior, like the velum interpositum or tela chorioidea superior (p. 855), really consists of two layers, which become more or less adherent, viz., that covering the under surface of the cerebellum and that covering the epithelium. It also possesses on each side a **choroid plexus** (*plexus chorioideus ventriculi quarti*), which projects into the ventricular cavity invaginating before it the epithelial lining. Each plexus consists of a *vertical portion* which extends forward, near the

middle line, from the foramen of Majendie, and of a *transverse part*, which passes outward into the lateral recess of the ventricle as far as the foramina of Key and Retzius. The two plexuses present the form of a T, the vertical limb of which is, however, double, || . The tela does not form a complete membrane, for in it there are three openings: one in the middle line at the inferior angle of the ventricle, just above the position of the opening of the central canal of the cord; this is the **foramen of Majendie** (*apertura medialis ventriculi quarti*); the other two are at the right and left extremities of the lateral recesses of the ventricle, and each is named the **foramen of Key and Retzius** (*apertura lateralis ventriculi quarti*) (see pp. 852 and 853). Through these foramina the ventricles of the brain communicate with the subarachnoid space.

The Obex.—The obex is a thin, triangular lamina of gray matter, continuous below with the anterior gray commissure of the cord, which fills in the angle between the two diverging fasciculi graciles for a short distance.

The Ligula.—The ligula (*taenia ventriculi quarti*) are narrow bands of white matter, which project from the internal border of the funiculi graciles. They at first run upward and forward, and then turn outward over the restiform bodies, as far as the lateral recesses of the ventricle. Their inner borders are continuous with the epithelial roof of the ventricle.

The Floor or Anterior Wall of the Fourth Ventricle (*fossa rhomboidea*) (Figs. 599, 604, and 606).—The floor of the fourth ventricle is rhomboidal in shape,

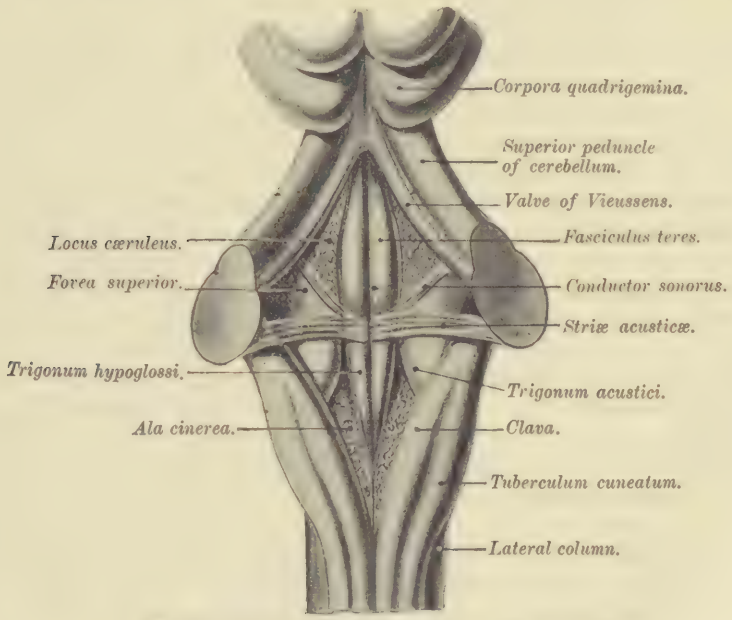


Fig. 606.—Floor of the fourth ventricle. Diagrammatic.

and is traversed by a **vertical median fissure** (*sulcus longitudinalis fossae rhomboideae*), which below is continuous with the central canal of the spinal cord. At the junction of the fourth ventricle with the central canal of the cord is a dilatation or ampulla called the **ventricle of Arantius**. At the widest part of the fourth ventricle, opposite the level of the lateral recesses, it is marked by some transverse white lines, the **striae medullares** or **striae acusticae**. These consist of white fibres, which emerge from the longitudinal sulcus, and pass outward across the floor of the ventricle. Most of the striae acusticae take origin from cochlear nucleus, but some arise from the cochlear root. Most of them pass to the trape-

zium and lateral fillet of the opposite side, but some become external arciform fibres (Koelliker). These striae divide the floor of the ventricle into two triangles, **inferior** and **superior.**

The Inferior Triangle (Fig. 606).—The inferior triangle, or lower or posterior half of the floor, presents above an angular groove, the **fovea inferior,** the apex of which is at the striae, while the two limbs diverge below, and form the sides of a triangular dark area, termed the **ala cinerea,** which becomes elevated into a prominence below (*eminentia cinerea*). This area corresponds with the nuclei of the vagus and glosso-pharyngeal nerves, and is therefore termed the **trigonum vagi.** A second triangular area lies between the inner limb of the fovea and the median sulcus; its base is directed upward, and limited by the striæ medullaris. It is termed the **trigonum n. hypoglossi,** because it corresponds in position to the tract of nerve-cells from which the hypoglossal nerve takes origin. A third triangular area to the outer side of the fovea inferior is named the **trigonum acustici** (*area acustica*). It lies between the groove forming the outer boundary of the fovea inferior and the lateral wall of the ventricle, and, like the trigonum hypoglossi, has its base directed upward. Here it is continuous with a prominence, the **tuberculum acusticum,** which extends into the anterior part of the floor of the ventricle.

The Superior Triangle (Fig. 606).—The superior triangle or upper or anterior half of the floor of the fourth ventricle, *i. e.*, the part above the striae medullaris, presents in the middle line the continuation of the median longitudinal sulcus. On either side of this is a spindle-shaped longitudinal eminence, prominent in its centre, but less so above and below. This is the **eminentia teres** or **fasciculus teres** (*colliculus facialis*), and is produced by an underlying bundle of white fibres, the **fasciculus teres** (*eminentia medialis*), formed, in part at all events, by the fibres of the facial nerve. Immediately above and to the outer side of the eminentia teres is an angular depression, the **fovea superior**; this is sometimes crossed by a whitish band of fibres, the **conductor sonorus,** which is connected below with the striae medullares of the same side. Above the fovea is a bluish depressed area, the **locus caeruleus.** Its color is due to some pigmented nerve-cells, showing through the white covering of the floor. These pigmented cells are named the **substantia ferruginea,** and in them one of the roots of the fifth nerve terminates.

The Lining Membrane.—The lining membrane of the fourth ventricle is continuous above with that of the third ventricle, through the aqueduct of Sylvius (p. 912), and below with that of the central canal of the spinal cord. The cavity of the ventricle communicates below with the subarachnoidean space by means of the foramen of Majendie and the foramina of Key and Retzius, already described.

The Internal Structure of the Medulla Oblongata (Figs. 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612).

If the cranial nerves emerging from the medulla are traced into its substance, it will be seen that they divide each half of the bulb into three wedge-shaped areas, which are named the **anterior, lateral,** and **posterior areas of the medulla,** and each of which corresponds to one of the subdivisions already described on the surface of this portion of the encephalon.

The Anterior Area.—The anterior area comprises that portion which is situated between the anterior median fissure and the fibres of superficial origin of the hypoglossal nerve. On the surface of the medulla this area corresponds to the pyramid (Fig. 607).

The Lateral Area.—The lateral area is situated between the fibres of superficial origin of the hypoglossal nerve on the one hand, and the fibres of superficial origin of the glosso-pharyngeal pneumogastric and spinal accessory nerves on the other. On the surface of the medulla, in its lower part, this area is single, and is

called the **lateral tract**; but in the upper part an oval-shaped body, the **olivary body**, comes forward between it and the pyramid, pushing aside the lateral tract (Fig. 607).

The Posterior Area.—The posterior area comprises that portion which is situated between the fibres of superficial origin of the glosso-pharyngeal, pneumogastric, and spinal accessory nerves, and the posterior median fissure. On the surface of the medulla this area is marked by slight furrows, splitting it up into smaller columns; those in the lower part of the medulla are named, from without inward, the fasciculus of Rolando, the fasciculus cuneatus, and the fasciculus gracilis; in the upper part of the medulla they are replaced by the restiform body. Finally, the halves of the medulla are separated from each other by a median septum or raphé (Fig. 607).

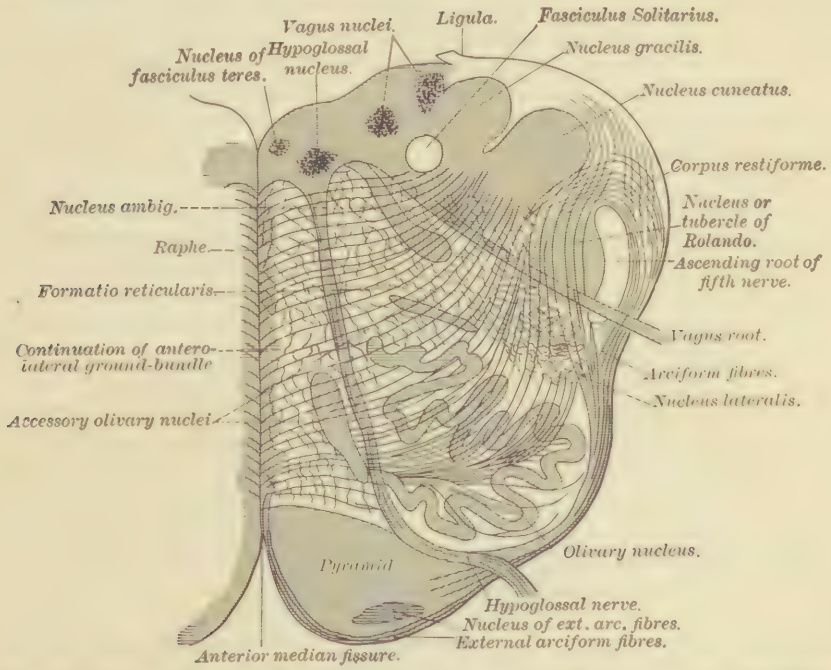


FIG. 607.—Section of the medulla oblongata at about the middle of the olivary body. (Schwalbe.)

Each of these three areas is made up of gray and white matter. The gray matter is derived for the most part from that of the cord. In like manner the white matter is partly made up of longitudinal fibres continuous with those of the cord, and partly of transverse fibres which intersect them.

In order to understand the internal structure of the medulla, it is necessary to describe the appearances as they are seen in the upper and lower portions of the medulla, since they differ considerably in these two parts.

The Lower Part of the Medulla (Figs. 608 and 609).—The first change in the internal structure is caused by the passage of the fibres of the crossed pyramidal tract obliquely through the gray matter of the anterior horn. As stated above, the pyramid is composed of fibres derived from the direct pyramidal tract of the anterior column of the cord of the same side, and from the crossed pyramidal tract of the lateral column of the opposite half of the cord. Those fibres which are derived from the direct pyramidal tract and which in the cord lie close to the median fissure are in the medulla placed to the outer side of the pyramid, being pushed aside, as it were, by the interpolation of the fibres derived from the crossed pyramidal tract, which

are much more numerous. The crossed pyramidal fibres ascend from the lateral column of the spinal cord, and, passing through the anterior gray cornu and across the middle line, form the inner part of the pyramid. In consequence of this passage of white fibres through its substance the anterior gray cornu is broken up into a coarse network, while one portion of it, the **caput cornu,** is entirely separated from the rest; only the base of the cornu remains intact, close to the ventrolateral aspect of the central canal. The caput cornu, thus separated, is displaced laterally, and comes to lie close to the caput cornu posterioris, which

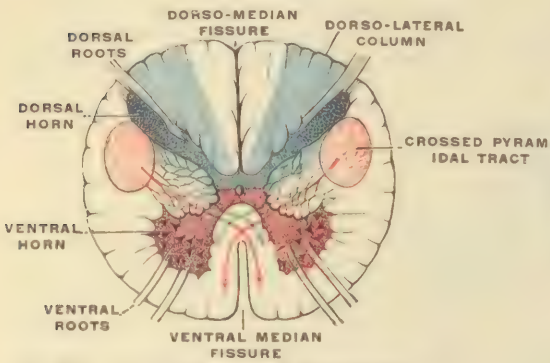


FIG. 608.—Transverse section of the oblongata at its lower end. (Testut.)

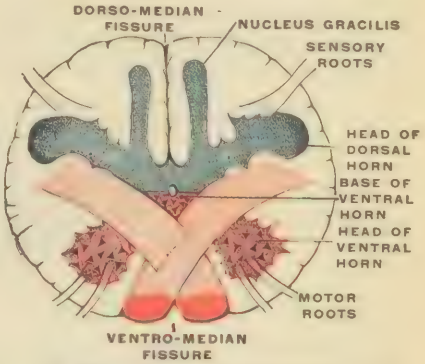


FIG. 609.—Transverse section of the oblongata at the decussation of the pyramids. (Testut, after Duval.)

has also shifted its position. In consequence of this breaking up of the greater part of the anterior gray cornu by white fibres a coarse network is formed in the anterior and lateral areas of the medulla, which is named the **formatio reticularis** (Fig. 607).

The posterior cornu also undergoes somewhat similar changes. It becomes subdivided by the passage through it of the sensory fibres of the columns of Goll and Burdach. These pass across to the opposite anterior area of the medulla, where they are seen to lie immediately on the dorsal aspect of the pyramids. In

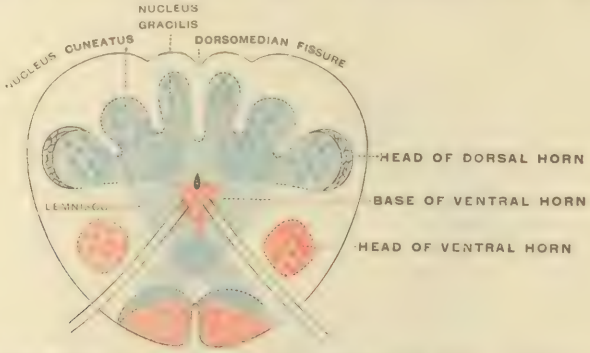


FIG. 610.—Transverse section of the oblongata at the crossing of the fillets. (Testut.)

their passage through the posterior horns of gray matter the latter become subdivided, in a manner somewhat similar to what has been seen to occur in the anterior horns. This crossing of the sensory fibres is termed the **superior pyramidal** or **sensory decussation** (Fig. 605). The caput cornu is displaced outward, so as almost to reach the surface, where it forms a projection, the **fasciculus of Rolando,** which enlarges above into a distinct prominence, the **tubercle of Rolando** (Fig. 607). Above the level of the tubercle of Rolando the caput cornu is separated from

the surface by a band of fibres termed the **ascending root of the fifth nerve** (*tractus spinalis n. trigemini*) and by the external arcuate fibres (Fig. 607). The neck of the cornu becomes broken up into a reticular formation by the decussation of the columns of Goll and Burdach, and by this means the caput is separated from the rest of the gray matter. The base of the cornu increases in size, and, as the central canal expands into the fourth ventricle, becomes pushed outward, and portions of it extend into the fasciculus graciles and cuneati, and produce externally the eminences of the clava and cuneate tubercle. A third portion of the base becomes separated from the rest, and is placed outside the nucleus of the fasciculus cuneatus. This is called the **accessory cuneate nucleus**, and is supposed to be a continuation upward of Clarke's vesicular column of the cord.

The Upper Part of the Medulla (Figs. 607, 611, and 612).—The upper part of the medulla comprises the portion which enters into the formation of the

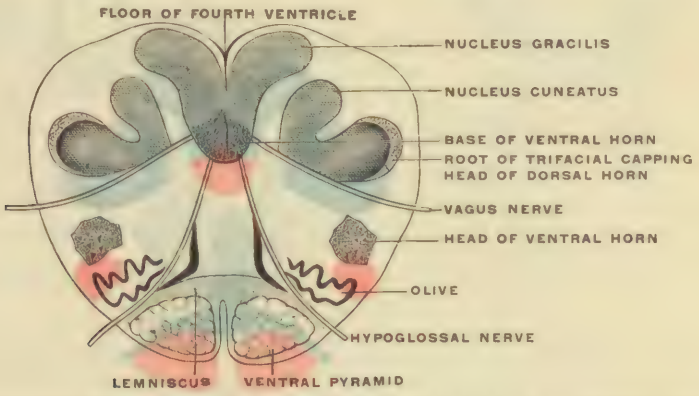


FIG. 611.—Transverse section of the oblongata at the lower end of the olives. The roof of the fourth ventricle is not represented. (Testut, after Duval.)

floor of the fourth ventricle, where, in fact, the upper end of the central canal has opened out into this cavity. In this region the formatio reticularis is confined chiefly to the anterior and lateral areas. In the ventral portion of the posterior area there is only a small amount of reticular formation, but in addition to this there are individual masses of cells scattered among the longitudinal fibres.

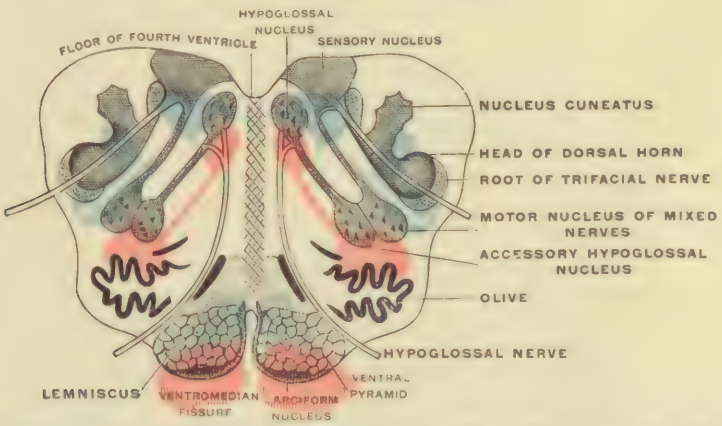


FIG. 612.—Transverse section of the oblongata at the middle of the olives. The roof of the fourth ventricle is not represented. (Testut, after Duval.)

The Formatio Reticularis (Fig. 607).—The formatio reticularis is a network of white matter in the deep portion of the medulla, the network containing

gray matter. It is situated behind the pyramid and olivary body, extending laterally as far as the restiform bodies, and dorsally to within a short distance of the floor of the fourth ventricle. It presents a peculiar reticulated appearance, from which it derives its name, and which is due to the intersection of bundles of fibres running at right angles to each other, some being longitudinal, others transverse. The formatio reticularis presents a different appearance in the anterior area from what it does in the lateral area. In the former there is almost an entire absence of nerve-cells in the reticulated network, and hence it is known as the **formatio reticularis alba**; whereas, in the lateral area, the nerve-cells are numerous, and, as a consequence, this part is known as the **formatio reticularis grisea.** In the substance of the formatio reticularis is a small nucleus of gray matter. It is situated near the dorsal aspect of the hilum of the olivary nucleus, and has been named the **inferior central nucleus.** The formatio reticularis contains both longitudinal and transverse fibres. In the anterior area the longitudinal fibres may be arranged in two well-defined sets: (1) One set lies immediately behind the pyramid, and is named the **interolivary fillet** or **lemniscus** (*lemniscus interolivaris*) (Fig. 610). The fibres of the fillet are chiefly derived from the cells of the gracile and cuneate nuclei (Fig. 607), and may therefore be regarded as relay fibres of the columns of Goll and Burdach of the spinal cord, which terminate in synapses around the cells of the gracile and cuneate nuclei. They are prolonged inward and forward across the middle line forming the **superior pyramidal** or **sensory decussation** or the **decussation of the fillet** (Fig. 605). (2) The other set is continuous from the antero-lateral ground bundle of the cord, and a portion of these fibres forms the **posterior longitudinal bundle** (*fasciculus longitudinalis medialis*), already referred to (p. 908). Both these sets of fibres are continued upward into the pons and mid-brain. The longitudinal fibres of the reticular formation in the lateral area are not arranged in distinct bundles. They are derived from the lateral column of the cord, after the crossed pyramidal tract has passed over to the opposite side. The longitudinal fibres of the posterior area are merely indeterminate fibres of the formatio reticularis, with the exception of two distinct bundles, which may be regarded as ascending roots of the fifth nerve (Fig. 607) and vago-glosso-pharyngeal nerves; the latter is termed the **fasciculus solitarius** (Fig. 607).

The **Transverse Fibres** of the reticular formation are the arched or arcuate fibres. The **external arciform** or **arcuate fibres** have already been described. The **internal arciform** or **arcuate fibres** (*fibrae arcuatae internae*) are more numerous than the superficial set; they traverse nearly the whole area of the upper half of the medulla, except the pyramid. They pass from the raphé; some become superficial and join the external arciform fibres, while others remain deep and pass to the olivary body, the restiform body, and to the nuclei of the fasciculus cuneatus and fasciculus gracilis.

Independent Nuclei (Fig. 613).—In the upper part of the medulla are several independent nuclei of gray matter, which may be divided into two sets: (1) those which are traceable from the gray matter of the spinal cord, and (2) those which are not represented in the cord. The former are the hypoglossal nucleus, the nucleus of the fasciculus teres, and those of the auditory, glosso-pharyngeal, vagus, and spinal accessory nerves. The latter are the nucleus of the olivary body and the accessory olivary nuclei. In addition to these, small collections of gray matter are to be found in the median septum or raphé.

The Hypoglossal Nucleus (Figs. 607, 612, and 613).—The base of the anterior horn, which in the lower part of the medulla was situated on the ventro-lateral aspect of the central canal, now approaches the floor of the ventricle, where it lies close to the median sulcus under the fasciculus teres. In it is a column of large nerve-cells, from which the roots of the hypoglossal nerve are derived. It is accordingly designated the **hypoglossal nucleus.**

The Auditory Nuclei (Fig. 613).—Toward the upper part of the medulla, a considerable tract of gray matter may be found lying immediately beneath that portion of the floor of the fourth ventricle which is known as the **trigonum acustici.** This is the **dorsal** or **inner auditory nucleus,** and it lies just external to the vago-glosso-pharyngeal nucleus. In addition to this there is a small collection of nerve-cells on the ventral surface of the restiform body, between the two roots of the auditory nerve, which is known as the **accessory** or **ventral auditory nucleus.** On the outer side of the restiform body is a mass of cells associated with the cochlear root of the auditory nerve. This mass is termed the **lateral acoustic tubercle** or **ganglion radicis cochlearis.**

Nuclei of the Glosso-pharyngeal and Vagus Nerves (Fig. 613).—These are two in number, **principal** and **accessory.** The **principal nucleus** of the two nerves lies beneath that portion of the floor of the fourth ventricle which is known as the ala cinerea

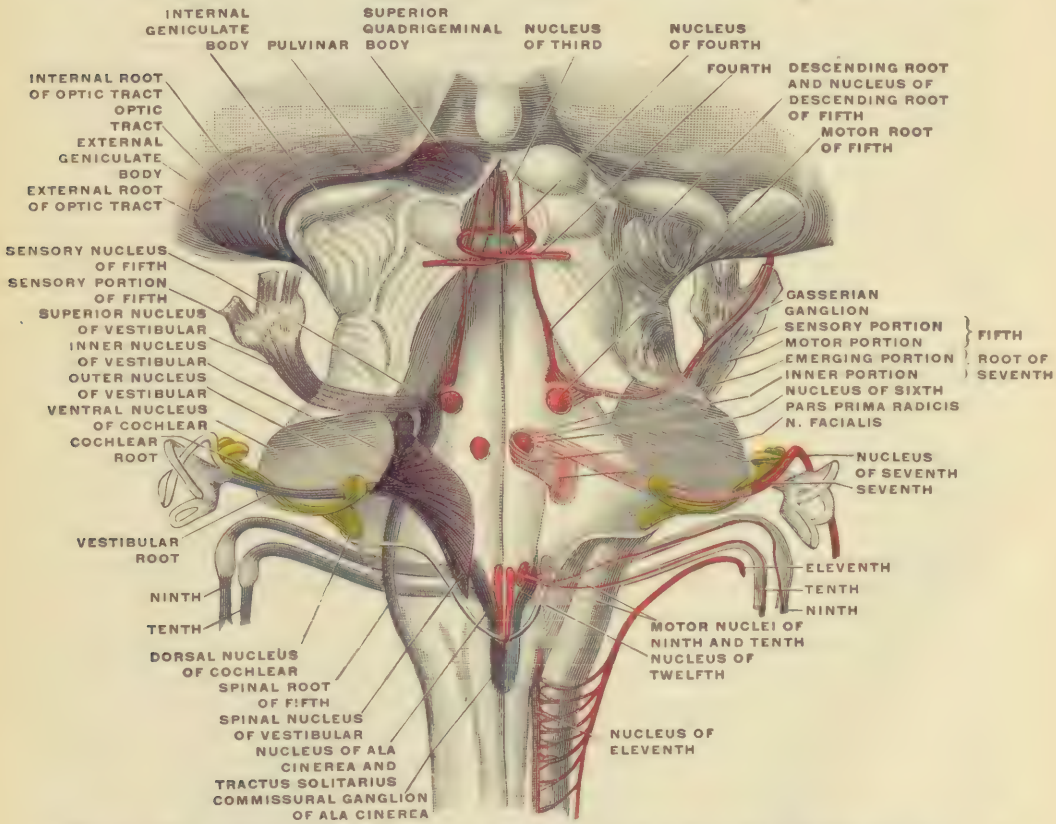


FIG. 613.—The nuclei of the origin of the motor and primary terminal nuclei of sensory cerebral nerves, schematically represented in a supposedly transparent brain stem, viewed from behind. Nuclei and roots of motor nerves, red; of sensory, reddish-violet; of the cochlear nerve, yellow; and of the optic nerve, bluish-violet. × 2. (Held.)

and fovea inferior. They form an oblong mass of gray matter, above the nucleus of the spinal accessory and lateral to the hypoglossal nucleus. The **accessory nuclei** are situated in the reticular formation of the posterior area, some distance from the floor of the fourth ventricle. They consist of a pear-shaped mass of cells, which is connected with the rest of the gray matter by a sort of stalk or peduncle, and was formerly known as the **nucleus ambiguus** (Fig. 607).

Nucleus of the Spinal Accessory Nerve (Fig. 613).—This nucleus consists of a group of cells, which is situated partly in the lower part of the medulla at the base of the posterior horn and close to the central canal. It extends upward,

lying beneath the lower part of the floor of the fourth ventricle and on the outer side of the hypoglossal nucleus.

The Nucleus of the Olivary Body (*nucleus olivaris inferior*) (Fig. 607).—When the olivary body is cut across, it is seen to be covered externally by white fibres, and internally to consist of a gray layer. The fibres which invest the nucleus are derived from the antero-lateral ground bundle. The gray layer is the **nucleus of the olivary body**, or, as it is sometimes called, the **corpus dentatum of the olive**. It is composed of a thin, wavy lamina, which is arranged in the form of a hollow capsule, open at its upper and inner part, and presenting a zigzag or dentated outline. Microscopically examined, the olivary nucleus is seen to consist of small, rounded, yellowish nerve-cells embedded in a matrix of neuroglia and fine nerve-fibres. White fibres, which can be traced from the raphé, and are probably derived from the opposite olive, enter the interior of the capsule by the aperture at its upper or inner part, these fibres constituting the **olivary peduncle**. The olivary peduncle is the lower portion of the **cerebello-olivary tract** (*fibræ cerebelloolivares*). This tract connects the cerebellar hemisphere with the opposite olivary nucleus.

The fibres of the olivary peduncle as they enter the olivary body diverge and some are lost in the gray matter of the olivary nucleus; others pass through it, and of these some turn backward to join the restiform body, and pass to the cerebellum as **internal arcuate fibres**; while others pierce the white matter of the olivary body and, reaching the surface, are continued to the restiform body as **external arcuate fibres**. The nucleus receives the **olivary bundle of the spinal cord**, the group of fibres called the **triangular tract of Helwig**. The **central tegmental tract** *arises* in the olivary nucleus and passes to the lenticular nucleus. The olivary nucleus receives another descending tract besides the cerebello-olivary, namely, the **vestibulo-olivary** (Santee). From the nucleus fibres pass by way of the lateral column to the anterior cornu of the same side of the spinal cord. Removal of one cerebellar hemisphere is followed by atrophy of the opposite olivary nucleus.

Accessory Olivary Nuclei (Fig. 607).—Two small isolated masses of gray matter are to be found, one on the mesial and the other on the dorsal aspect of the corpus dentatum. These are the **medial** or **internal accessory olivary nucleus** (*nucleus olivaris accessorius medialis*) and the **external** or **lateral accessory olivary nucleus** (*nucleus olivaris accessorius dorsalis*). They are connected with the restiform body by some of the internal arcuate fibres. The fibres of the hypoglossal nerve, as they traverse the bulb, pass between the medial accessory nucleus and the chief olivary nucleus.

The Raphé (Fig. 607).—The raphé is situated in the middle line of the medulla, above the decussation of the pyramids. It consists of nerve-fibres intermingled with nerve-cells. The fibres have different directions, which can only be seen in suitable microscopic sections, thus: 1. Some are antero-posterior; these in front are continuous with the superficial arciform fibres. 2. Some are longitudinal; these are derived from the arciform fibres, which on entering the raphé change their direction and become longitudinal. 3. Some are oblique; these are continuous with the deep arciform fibres which pass from the raphé.

The nerve-cells of the raphé are multipolar; some are connected with the antero-posterior fibres, others with the superficial arcuate fibres.

Weight of the Encephalon.—The average weight of the brain in the adult male is 49½ oz., or a little more than 3 lbs. avoirdupois; that of the female 44 oz.; the average difference between the two being from 5 to 6 oz. The prevailing weight of the brain in the male ranges between 46 oz. and 53 oz., and in the female between 41 oz. and 47 oz. In the male the maximum weight out of 278 cases was 65 oz., and the minimum weight 34 oz. The maximum weight of the adult female brain out of 191 cases was 56 oz., and the minimum weight 31 oz. According to Luschka, the average weight of a man's brain is 1424 grammes (about 45 oz.),

of a woman's 1272 grammes (about 41 oz.), and, according to Krause, 1570 grammes (about 48½ oz.) for the male and 1350 (about 43 oz.) for the female. It appears that the weight of the brain increases rapidly up to the seventh year, more slowly to between sixteen and twenty, and still more slowly to between thirty and forty, when it reaches its maximum. Beyond this period, as age advances and the mental faculties decline, the brain diminishes slowly in weight, about an ounce for each subsequent decennial period. These results apply alike to both sexes. Marshall concluded that if woman is judged by her height only, she has a smaller amount of cerebral matter than has man; if she is judged by her weight alone, she has more; but if both sexes are gauged by both standards, their "cerebral endowment is seen to be practically equal."[1]

The size of the brain was formerly said to bear a general relation to the intellectual capacity of the individual. Cuvier's brain weighed rather more than 64 oz., that of Daniel Webster 63¾ oz., that of Dr. Abercrombie 63 oz. On the other hand, the brain of an idiot seldom weighs more than 23 oz. But these facts are by no means conclusive, and it is well known that these weights have been equalled by the brains of persons who never displayed any remarkable intellect. Dr. Haldenman, of Cincinnati, has recorded the case of a mulatto, aged forty-five, whose brain weighed 68⅜ oz.; he had been a slave, and was never regarded as particularly intelligent; he was illiterate, but is said to have been reserved, meditative, and economical. Dr. James Morris recorded the case of a bricklayer, who could not read or write, whose brain weighed 67 oz. Dr. Ensor, district medical officer at Port Elizabeth, reports that the brain of Carey, the Irish informer, weighed 61 oz. In not a few instances the brains of very able men have been of average weight or of less than average weight. The brain of Samuel D. Gross, the surgeon, weighed 48 oz., the brain of Gambetta, the statesman, 40 $\frac{8}{10}$ oz., the brain of Walt Whitman, the poet, 43.3 oz., the brain of Hughes Bennett, the physician, 47 oz., the brain of Joseph Leidy, the naturalist and anatomist, 49.9 oz., and the brain of Döllinger, the physiologist, 42.6 oz. M. Nikiforoff has published an article in the *Novosti* on the subject of the weight of brains. According to him, the weight of the brain has no influence whatever on the mental faculties. It ought to be remembered that the significance of the weight of the brain should depend upon the proportion it bears to the dimensions of the whole body and to the age of the individual. There seems to be a relation between the weight of the brain and the body weight and stature. Quain gives the ratio between the brain weight and body weight as 1 to 41 in healthy individuals, but this proportion is by no means fixed and seems to vary widely in either direction. As the stature increases the brain weight increases, but, as Mills says,[2] "taller persons have relatively less brain matter than shorter ones, although absolutely they have more." The significance of the weight of the brain also depends upon the cause of death, for long illness or old age wastes the brain. To define the real degree of development of the brain, it is therefore necessary to have a knowledge of the condition of the whole body, and, as this is usually lacking, the mere record of weight possesses little significance. As Mills says:[3] "Apparently there is no invariable nor necessary relation between mere brain weight and the degree of individual intelligence; but high brain weights occur in larger proportions among civilized than among uncivilized races." Furthermore, it is to be remembered that a heavy brain may be a diseased brain. For instance, Byron's brain weighed nearly 64 oz. and showed evidences of disease.

The human brain is heavier than the brain of any of the lower animals, excepting the elephant and whale. The brain of the former weighs from eight to ten pounds; and that of a whale, in a specimen seventy-five feet long, weighed rather more than five pounds.

[1] The Nervous System and its Diseases. By Prof. Charles K. Mills. [2] Ibid. [3] Ibid.

CEREBRAL LOCALIZATION AND TOPOGRAPHY.

The cortex of the brain is highly specialized, and different regions represent special functions. In it are represented "the numerous manifestations associated with consciousness;" in it memories are stored up; and "in it occur the last and highest bodily processes concerned with sensations received from without, and with the setting free of impulses which are projected to lower centres and to the outside world."[1] A centre is an aggregation of nerve-cells and fibres, which "aggregation represents physiologically some action" (Mills). Physiological and pathological researches and surgical operations have proved that the surface of the brain may be mapped out into series of definite centres, each one of which is intimately connected with some well-defined function. A group of centres is known as a *zone*, an *area*, or a *region*. As Hughlings Jackson says, the study of centres is an investigation into the anatomical "substrata" of visual, motor, tactile, and other ideas; of "the parts which represent impressions of sight, of touch, of movement, and other functions" (Mills). Certain cortical centres are known as *motor centres*. Stimulation of these centres causes movement. Destruction of these centres renders movement impos-

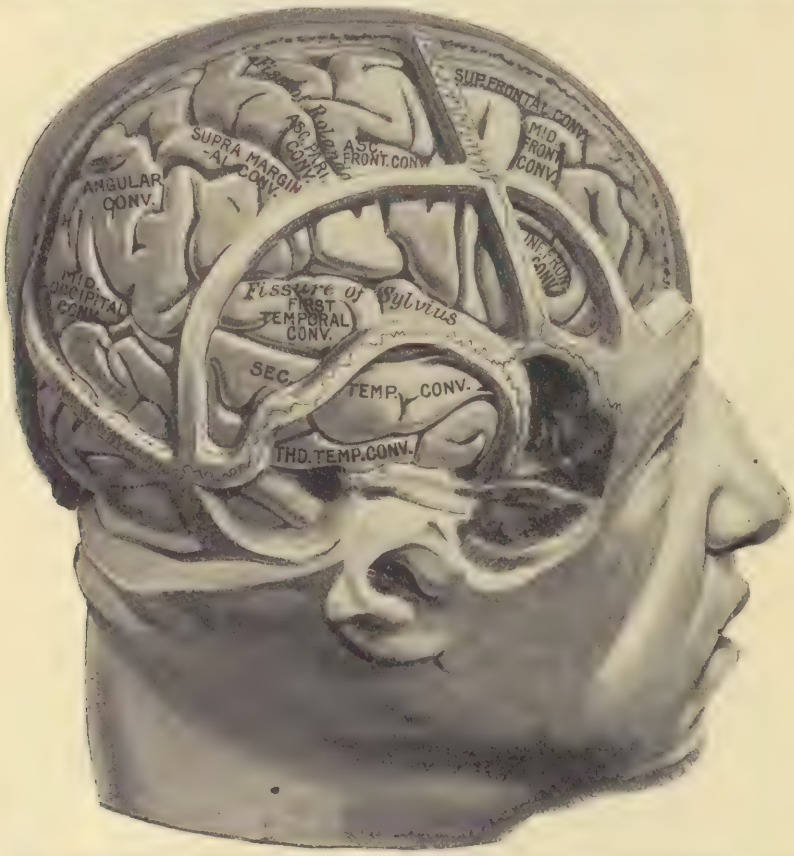


FIG. 614.—Drawing to illustrate cranio-cerebral topography. (Taken from a cast in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England, prepared by Professor Cunningham.)

sible. The centres are associated with contraction of muscular groups producing special movements not with the contraction of individual muscles. They represent movements rather than muscles. These centres are found particularly around the fissure of Rolando and on the mesial surface of the hemisphere, and they are associated with movements of the extremities of the opposite side of the body, and movements of the face, mouth, and tongue. Mills, von Monakow, and Sherrington are of the opinion that the motor areas are entirely in front of the fissure of Rolando (Figs. 615 and 616). This view is highly probable, but is not absolutely proved. Other observers hold that the motor areas occupy the entire ascending frontal and ascending parietal convolutions, extend a little way forward into the third frontal convolution and backward into the superior parietal convolution. The motor areas certainly extend on to the mesial surface in the paracentral lobule and pass perhaps into the marginal convolution. On the convexity of the hemi-

[1] The Nervous System and its Diseases. By Prof. Charles K. Mills.

sphere the highest centre is the leg area. Below this, in the order named, are the centres for the arm, face, lips, tongue, larynx, and pharynx. On the mesial surface from before backward are areas for the head, shoulder, trunk, hip, knee, leg, and foot. The centres for head and eye movements are in front of the arm centre. In a large motor area there are certain smaller areas. For instance, the area for the lower extremity contains separate centres, representing movements of the hip, knee, leg, foot, and toes.

The arm centre contains centres for movements of the shoulder, arm, wrist, thumb, and fingers. The face centre contains centres for movements of the upper face, the lower face, the

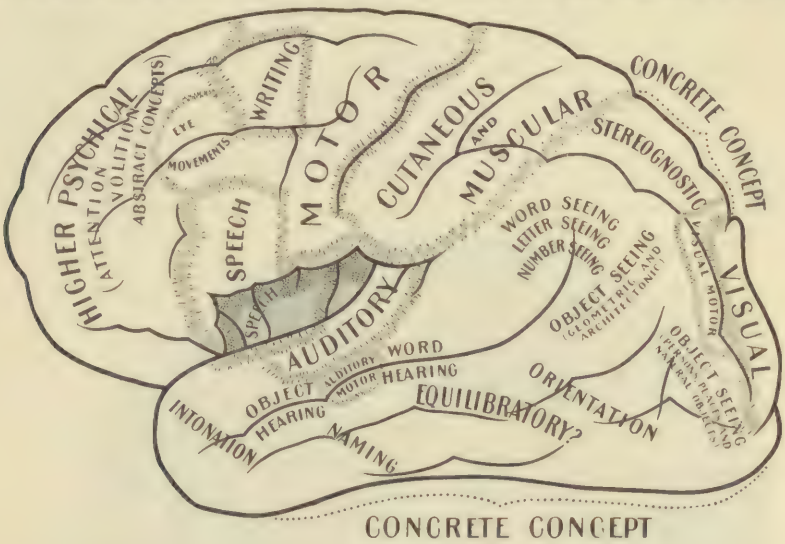


FIG. 615.—Side view of human brain, showing localization of functions. (Charles K. Mills.)

lips, and tongue. The *somaesthetic* area or the area of general sensation is not certainly marked out. Those who believe that the motor area is both front and back of the Rolandic fissure maintain that the area of general sensation largely corresponds to the motor area, but is of greater extent as it enters into the limbic lobe. Mills places it back of the fissure of Rolando in the convexity and also on the mesial surface of the hemisphere.

FIG. 616.—View of the mesial surface of human brain, showing localization of functions. (Charles K. Mills.)

The cortical centres are shown in Figs. 617 and 618. This is not the place, nor can space be given, to describe these localities.

Cranio-cerebral Topography.—The position of the principal fissures and convolutions of the cerebrum and their relation to the outer surface of the scalp (Fig. 614) have been the subject of

much investigation, and many systems have been devised by which one may localize these parts from an explanation of the external surface of the head.

These plans can only be regarded as approximately correct for several reasons; in the first place, because the relations of the convolutions and sulci to the surface are found to be very variable in different individuals; secondly, because the surface area of the scalp is greater than the surface area of the brain, so that lines drawn on the one cannot correspond exactly to sulci or convolutions on the other; and thirdly, because the sulci and convolutions in two individuals are never precisely alike. Nevertheless, the principal fissures and convolutions can be mapped out with sufficient accuracy for all practical purposes, so that any particular convolution can be generally exposed by removing with the trephine a certain portion of the skull's area.

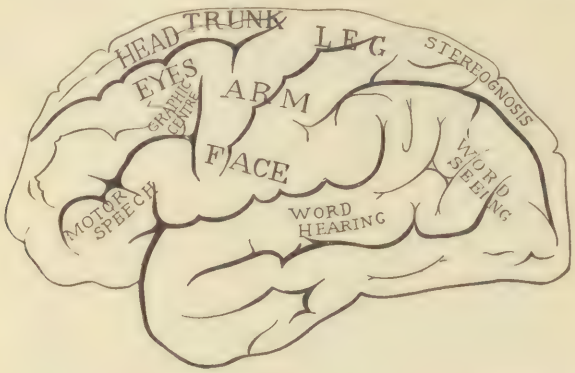


FIG. 617.—The localization of various centres on the outer surface of the left side of the human brain. (American Text-book of Surgery.)

The various landmarks on the outside of the skull, which can be easily felt, and which serve as indications of the position of the parts beneath, have been already referred to (see page 149), and the relation of the fissures and convolutions to these landmarks is as follows:

Longitudinal Fissure (Fig. 619). This corresponds to a line drawn from the glabella at the root of the nose to the external occipital protuberance.

The Fissure of Sylvius (Fig. 619). The position of the fissure of Sylvius and its posterior horizontal limb is marked by a line starting from a point one inch and a quarter horizontally behind the external angular process of the frontal bone to a point three-quarters of an inch below

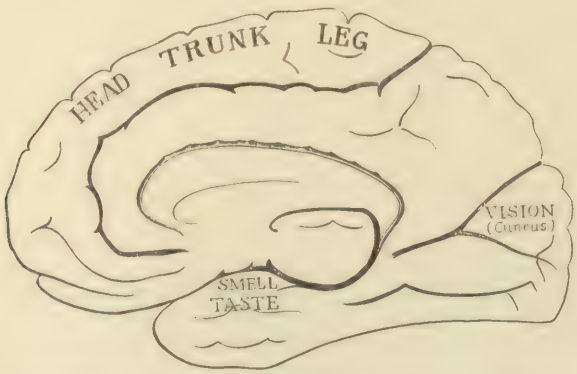


FIG. 618.—The localization of various centres on the median surface of the human brain. (American Text-book of Surgery.)

the most prominent point of the parietal eminence. The first three-quarters of an inch will represent the main fissure, the remainder the horizontal limb. The bifurcation of the fissure is therefore two inches behind and about a quarter of an inch above the level of the external angular process. The ascending limb of the fissure passes upward from this point parallel to, and immediately behind, the coronal suture.

The Transverse Fissure or Fissure of Bichat. This is between the cerebrum and cerebellum and corresponds to a line drawn from the inion to the external auditory meatus (the line *B C* in Fig. 619).

Fissure of Rolando.—To find the upper end of the fissure of Rolando, a measurement should be taken from the glabella to the external occipital protuberance. The position of the top of the sulcus will be, measuring from in front, 55.6 per cent. of the whole distance from the glabella to the external occipital protuberance. Professor Thane adopts a somewhat simpler method. He divides the distance from the glabella to the external occipital protuberance over the top of the head into two equal parts, and, having thus defined the middle point of the vertex, he takes half an inch behind it as the top of the sulcus. This is not quite so accurate as the former method, but it is sufficiently so for all practical purposes, and on account of its simplicity is very generally adopted. From this point the fissure runs downward and forward for 3¼ inches, its axis making an angle of 67° with the middle line. Cunningham states that this angle more nearly averages 71.5°. In order to mark this groove, two strips of metal may be employed—one, the shorter, being fixed to the middle of the other at the angle mentioned. If the longer strip is now placed along the sagittal suture so that the junction of the two strips is over the point corresponding to the top of the furrow, the shorter, oblique strip will indicate the direction and 3¾ inches will mark the length of the furrow. Dr. Wilson has devised an instrument, called a cyrtometer, which combines the scale of measurements for localizing the fissure with data for representing its length and direction.[1] Professor Thane gives the lower end of the furrow as

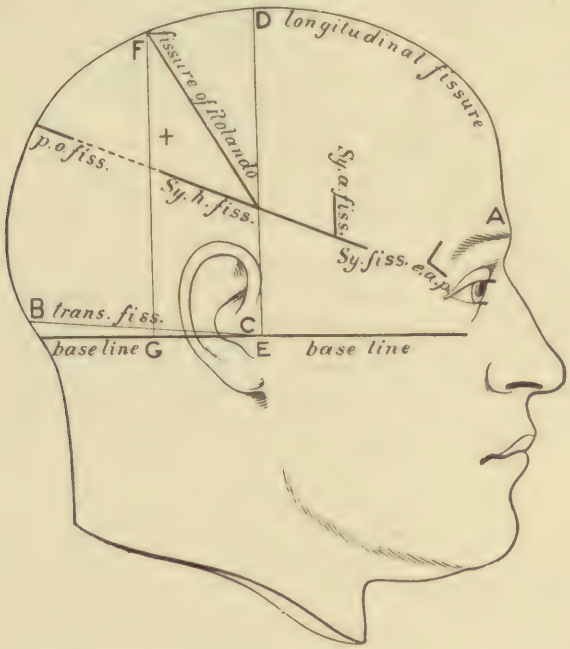


FIG. 619.—Relations of the principal fissures and convolutions of the cerebrum to the outer surface of the scalp. (Reid.)

"close to the posterior limb, and about half an inch behind the bifurcation of the fissure of Sylvius." So that, according to this anatomist, a line drawn from a point half an inch behind the mid-point between the glabella and external occipital protuberance to this spot would mark out the fissure of Rolando. Dr. Reid adopts a different method (Fig. 619). He first indicates on the surface the longitudinal fissure and the horizontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius (as above). He then draws two perpendicular lines from his "base-line" (that is, a line from the lowest part of the infraorbital margin through the middle of the external auditory meatus to the back of the head) to the top of the cranium, one (*D E*, Fig. 619) from the depression in front of the external auditory meatus, and the other (*F G*, Fig. 619) from the posterior border of the mastoid process at its root. He has thus described on the surface of the head a four-sided figure (*F D G E*, Fig. 619), and a diagonal line from the posterior superior angle to the anterior perpendicular line where it is crossed by the fissure of Sylvius will represent the furrow.

The **Parieto-occipital Fissure** on the upper surface of the cerebrum runs outward at right angles to the great longitudinal fissure for about an inch, from a point one-fifth of an inch in front of the lambda (posterior fontanelle). Reid states that if the horizontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius be continued onward to the sagittal suture, the last inch of this line will indicate the position of the sulcus (Fig. 619).

[1] Lancet, 1888, vol. i. p. 408.

The **Pre-central Sulcus** begins four-fifths of an inch in front of the middle of the fissure of Rolando, and extends nearly, but not quite, to the horizontal limb of the fissure of Sylvius.

The **Superior Frontal Fissure** runs backward from the supraorbital notch, parallel with the line of the longitudinal fissure to two-fifths of an inch in front of the line indicating the position of the fissure of Rolando.

The **Inferior Frontal Fissure** follows the course of the superior temporal ridge on the frontal bone.

The **Intraparietal Fissure** begins on a level with the junction of the middle and lower third of the fissure of Rolando, on a line carried across the head from the back of the root of one auricle to that of the other. After passing upward it curves backward, lying parallel to the longitudinal fissure, midway between it and the parietal eminence; it then curves downward to end midway between the posterior fontanelle and the parietal eminence.

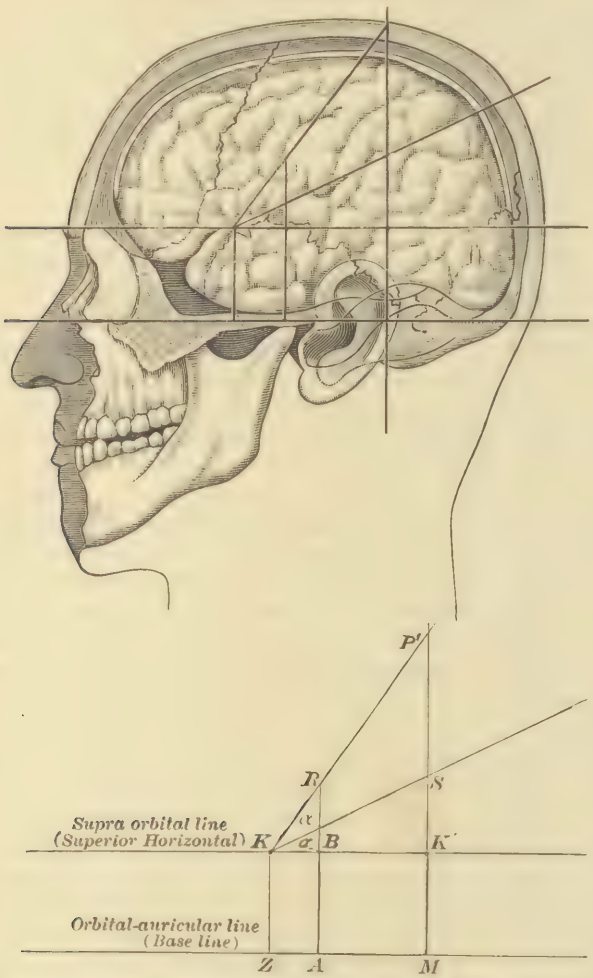


FIG. 620.—Kronlein's method for determining the portions of certain fissures of the brain.

Kronlein's method for determining the portions of certain fissures of the brain is very useful and easy of application (Fig. 620). It is as follows: (1) The base line, *Z M*, is a horizontal line running at the level of the lower border of the orbit and the upper border of the external auditory meatus. (2) Another horizontal line, *K K'*, is drawn parallel to *Z M*. The second horizontal line is on a level with the supraorbital ridge. (3) A vertical line, *Z K*, is erected from *Z M* at the middle of the zygoma and is carried to the line, *K K'*. (4) Another vertical line, *A R*, is erected from the base-line at the level of the articulation of the mandible and is carried to *R*. (5) A third vertical line, *M P*, is erected from the base-line at the posterior border of the mastoid process and is carried to the middle line of the skull, which is marked *P*. (6) A line is drawn from

K to *P*. The portion of this line between *R* and *P'* corresponds to the fissure of Rolando. (7) The angle *P K K'* is bisected by the line *K S*. *K S* corresponds to the fissure of Sylvius from its bifurcation to its termination posteriorly, and *K* is directly over the bifurcation. To reach the anterior branch of the middle meningeal, apply the trephine at *K;* to reach the posterior branch, apply it at *K'*. In abscess of the temporo-sphenoidal lobe the trephine should be applied, according to von Bergmann, in the region *A a K' M*.

THE NERVE-PATHS.

The anatomy of the various parts of the central nervous system having been described, a short account will now be given of the course taken by its more important nerve-paths, and of the direction in which impulses pass along them. Before doing so, however, it is necessary to refer to the methods employed in elucidating this complex subject. All nerve-fibres may be regarded as outgrowths from nerve-cells, and it is found that if a nerve-fibre be cut, the portion of it which is severed from the cell undergoes degeneration and becomes atrophied. Until recent years it was believed that the cell itself showed no change under such circumstances. This, however, is not the case, for if a nerve, the sciatic, for instance, be divided in an animal, and after an interval of some weeks the animal be injected with methylene blue and killed, it will be seen, on examining sections of the lumbar region of the spinal cord, that the cells are stained imperfectly or not at all, owing to a diminution, or, it may be, an entire disappearance of the chromatin, a substance which, in a normal cell, shows marked affinity for staining reagents. Further, the body of the cell is swollen, the nucleus displayed toward the periphery, and the part of the axone still attached to the altered cell is diminished in size and somewhat atrophied. Under favorable conditions the cell is capable of reassuming its normal appearance and the axone may commence to grow. This method of study by injection of methylene blue is of great value in determining the origin of nerve-fibres from their cells. Again, electrical stimulation of certain localized areas of the brain or of the tracts arising from them is followed by the contraction of the muscles of the body. The cortical centres of the motor tracts are situated in the convolutions adjacent to the fissure of Rolando (page 953). When the stimulus is applied to one part of the motor area the muscles of one limb of the opposite contract, while other portions control the movements of the other limb of the opposite side, etc. Destruction of these parts entails loss of function, paralysis of muscles, and degeneration of the tracts below the seat of injury. During life injury and disease may give rise to symptoms resembling either the effects of stimulation or those of destruction; and after death the tracts, or the centres of the tracts, are seen to be degenerated or otherwise altered. It was long believed by all and is still maintained by many that the motor area includes the ascending parietal, ascending frontal, and superior parietal convolutions. Mills, von Monakow, Sherrington and other high authorities now teach that the motor region is entirely *in front* of the central fissure, with the possible exception that the gyral mass between the foot of the fissure of Rolando and the Sylvian fissure, and extending a little back of the line of the central fissure, which may be included in the area for the face (Charles K. Mills) (Figs. 615 and 616). The motor areas are separated from each other and do not overlap, but probably interdigitate (Mills). The same is true of the areas for cutaneous sensibility. By observing the development of the nervous system during the growth of the embryo, the fact is disclosed that all axis-cylinders do not acquire a medullary sheath at one and the same time. Speaking generally, it may be said that afferent fibres become medullated before efferent, and that in the case of the latter myelination occurs earlier in the brain than in the cord. By watching the effects of these different processes the functions of a considerable part of the brain and of the nerves leading from or to it have been determined.

The Motor, Efferent, or Descending Tract (Figs. 621, 622, and 623).—The constituent fibres of this tract are the axis-cylinder processes of cells situated in the cortex of the convolutions about and probably solely in front of the fissure of Rolando. At first they are somewhat widely diffused, but as they

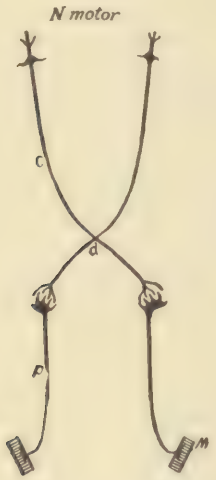


FIG. 621.—Scheme of the motor pathway: *c*, central, *p*, peripheral, neurone; *d*, decussation: *m*, muscle. (Jakob.)

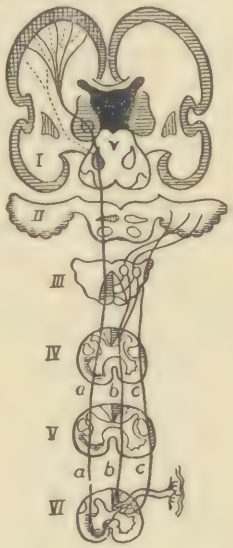


FIG. 622.—Scheme showing the course of the pyramidal tract. *I*, in the cerebrum and crus; *II*, in the pons; *III*, in the medulla oblongata; *IV*, decussation of the pyramids; *V*, in the cervical enlargement; *VI*, in the lumbar enlargement. (Jakob.)

descend through the corona radiata they gradually approach each other and pass between the lenticular nucleus and optic thalamus in the genu and anterior two-thirds of the posterior limb of the internal capsule. Proceeding downward they next occupy the middle three-fifths of the pes or crusta of the crus cerebri, and enter the pons Varolii, where the transverse fibres of this body not only conceal them, but divide them up into irregular bundles. Eventually they reach the medulla, and here the motor tracts form the anterior pyramids which lie one on each side of the median fissure. The transit of the fibres from the medulla is effected by two paths. The fibres nearest to the anterior median fissure cross the middle line, forming the **decussation of the pyramids** (Figs. 594, 605, 609, 621, 622, and 623), and descend in the opposite side of the cord as the **indirect** or **crossed pyramidal tract** (Figs. 605 and 623). Throughout the length of the spinal cord fibres from this column pass into the gray matter, to terminate by ramifying around the cells of the anterior horn. The more laterally placed portion of the motor tract does not decussate in the medulla, but descends as the **direct** or **uncrossed pyramidal tract** (Fig. 605); these fibres, however, end in the anterior gray horn of the opposite side of the spinal cord by passing across in the anterior white commissure. 1. *Motor* and *inhibiting influences* which reach the *spinal nerves* arise in the upper three-fourths of the motor area in front of the Rolandic fissure, pass along the fibres of the corona radiata

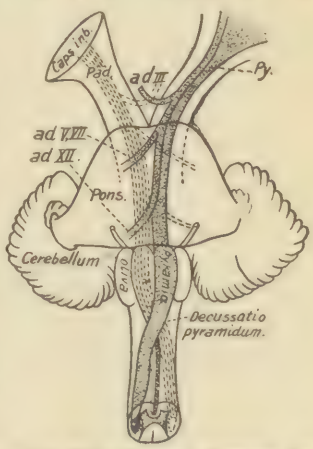


FIG. 623. Scheme showing the position of the pyramidal tract. *Py*, in the mesencephalon; *III*, *V*, *VII*, *XII*, central motor pathways to the corresponding cranial nerves. (Jakob.)

and of the anterior two-thirds of the posterior limb of the internal capsule, the middle three-fifths of the crusta, the anterior or ventral pontine fibres, and the medullary pyramids. From this point they may pass along either the crossed or the uncrossed pyramidal tract to reach the gray horn of the opposite side of the spinal cord. "By the former route the impulses cross over in the medulla through the decussation of the pyramids, and descend in the lateral column of the spinal cord; but by the uncrossed route they descend in the anterior column of the cord and decussate in succession through the white commissure. Impulses by either route finally reach the anterior gray cornu of the spinal cord, and, with the exception of a small percentage of them, they reach the cornu opposite to their Rolandic origin. The few undecussated fibres in the crossed pyramidal tract conduct uncrossed impulses to the anterior cornu of the same side."[1] 2. *Motor* and *inhibiting influences* which reach the *cranial nerves* arise in the lower portion of the motor area, pass through the corona radiata and posterior two-thirds of the internal capsule, but deviate from the pyramidal tract before reaching the medulla, and pass to the nuclei of cranial nerves (Fig. 623). On the same side fibres pass to the nuclei of the fourth nerve, but the balance of the fibres cross and pass to nuclei on the opposite side—viz., the nuclei of the third, fifth, sixth, seventh, ninth, tenth, eleventh, and twelfth cranial nerves.

The Cerebro-cortico-pontal Paths.—These paths pass through the cerebellum. Impulses from the prefrontal region pass along the corona radiata, through the anterior limb of the internal capsule and the inner portion of the crusta. Impulses from the temporal region pass along the corona radiata, through the posterior limb of the internal capsule and the outer portion of the crusta. The nucleus pontis and cranial nerve nuclei of the same side receive the impulses from both the frontal and the temporal paths, and from these depots the impulses are sent to cranial nerves or to spinal nerves. To cranial nerves they are sent direct from the synapses about the nuclei. In order to reach spinal nerves they pass to the cerebellar cortex by means of the middle peduncle of the cerebellum. From the cerebellar cortex the impulses pass through the inferior peduncles of the cerebellum and the lateral region of the medulla to reach the anterior gray horn (by way of the antero-lateral descending cerebellar tract).

The Intermediate Crusta Path (by Way of the Intermediate Bundle).—Some impulses which arise in the cerebral cortex pass to the corpus striatum, then to the nucleus pontis of the same side (chiefly), then by way of the middle peduncle of the cerebellum to the cerebellar cortex, and then along the antero-lateral descending cerebellar tract.

The Red Nucleus Path.—Impulses from the cerebral cortex may reach the red nucleus by way of the optic thalamus (direct route) and by way of the corpus striatum (indirect route).

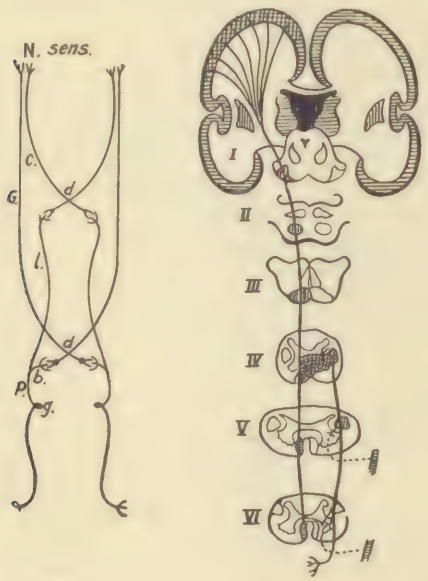
Impulses which reach the red nucleus by the direct route travel along the crossed descending tract of the red nucleus to the centre of the gray matter in the crescent of the opposite side of the cord. Impulses which reach the red nucleus by the indirect route pass to the cerebellar cortex of the opposite side and from the cortex along the descending cerebellar tract.

Short Fibre Paths (chiefly in the formatio reticularis).—Santee presents a concise explanation of the course of impulses along these paths.[2] He describes five paths: 1. Impulses having reached the ganglia of the cerebrum and mesencephalon, pass along the formatio reticularis and reach the antero-lateral ground bundle of the spinal cord to ultimately reach the spinal nerves. Impulses leaving the formatio reticularis may reach motor cranial nerve nuclei. 2. Impulses may pass from the formatio in the pons and by way of the middle cerebellar peduncle

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord. By Harris E. Santee. [2] Ibid.

reach the cerebellar cortex. 3. Impulses which reach the cerebellar cortex may reach the antero-lateral ground bundle of the opposite side of the cord. 4. From the third cranial nerve nucleus fibres pass to the seventh nerve, and impulses come from the third nerve and are sent to the Occipito-fontalis, Corrugator supercilii, and Orbicularis palpebrarum muscles. 5. Fibres pass from the nucleus of the sixth cranial nerve to the nucleus of the opposite third nerve, and impulses pass from the nucleus of the sixth nerve of one side to the Internal rectus muscle of the opposite side.

The Sensory, Afferent, or Ascending Tract (Figs. 624, 625, and 626). **Path by the Columns of Goll and Burdach.**—The course taken by those fibres of the posterior nerve-roots which ascend has been arrived at by dividing the nerve-roots between their ganglia and their entrance into the spinal cord and subsequently examining the degenerated areas. It has been found that the fibres pursue an oblique course, being situated at first in the outer part of Burdach's column; higher up they occupy the



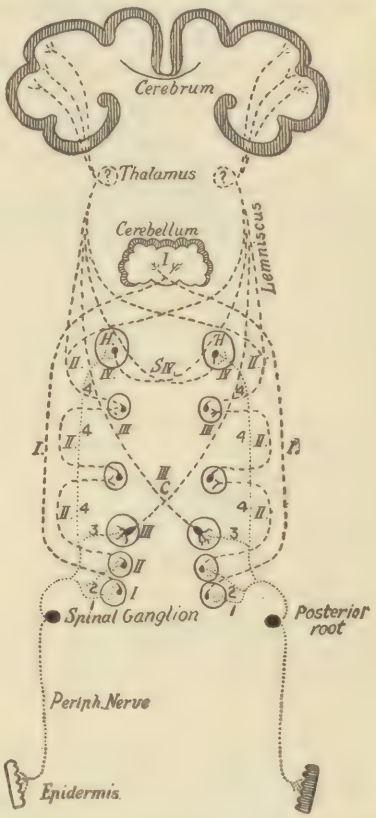


FIG. 624.—Scheme of the sensory pathway: *c*, central, *p*, peripheral, neurone; *g*, intervertebral ganglion cell; *b*, short, *l*, long, tract; *d*, decussation. (Jakob.)

FIG. 625.—Scheme showing the course of the sensory pathway: *I*, in the cerebrum and cerebral peduncles; *II*, pons and cerebellum; *III*, medulla oblongata; *IV*, upper portion of cervical cord; *V*, middle portion of cervical cord; *VI*, lumbar cord; *a*, fibres from the antero-lateral columns and fillet; *b*, fibres in the posterior columns; *c*, fibres from the cerebellum and lateral columns. (Jakob.)

FIG. 626.—Scheme of the sensory pathway. *Peripheral neurone* (dotted line): 1, 2, 3, short, 4, long, tracts. The "switching stations" are indicated by smaller circles. *Central neurone* (broken line): *I*, columns of Clarke (direct cerebellar tract); *II*, interrupted, *III*, long, antero-lateral tracts; *H*, nuclei of posterior column (f. gracilis and f. cuneatus); *SIV*, decussatio lemnisci. (Jakob.)

middle of this column, being displaced inward by the accession of other entering fibres, while still higher they enter and are continued upward in the column of Goll. The upper cervical fibres do not reach the column of Goll, but are entirely confined to that of Burdach. The degeneration method proves that the localization of these fibres is very precise: the sacral nerves lying to the inner side of Goll's column and near its periphery; the lumbar nerves to their outer side; the dorsal nerves still more laterally; while the cervical nerves are confined to the outer part of Burdach's column.

On reaching the medulla these ascending fibres end by arborizing around the cells in the gracile and cuneate nuclei, and the further upward course of the tract is effected by the axis-cylinder processes of these cells. There are two paths from this region, the **direct** and the **indirect**. The fibres of the **direct path** decussate in the medulla, dorsal to the crossing of the motor tract, in what is termed the **superior pyramidal decussation**, the **sensory decussation**, or the **decussation of the fillet** (Figs. 605, 610, 624, and 626), terms which are synonymous. Having crossed the middle line they ascend through the pons and tegmentum of the crus cerebri, and, reaching the ventral surface of the optic thalamus, from which they pass by the three systems of Flechsig to the cortex. The impulses ascending from the optic thalamus pass to the cortex through the internal capsule and corona radiata. Impulses which take the indirect path leave the medulla, pass to the cortex of the superior worm of the cerebellum,

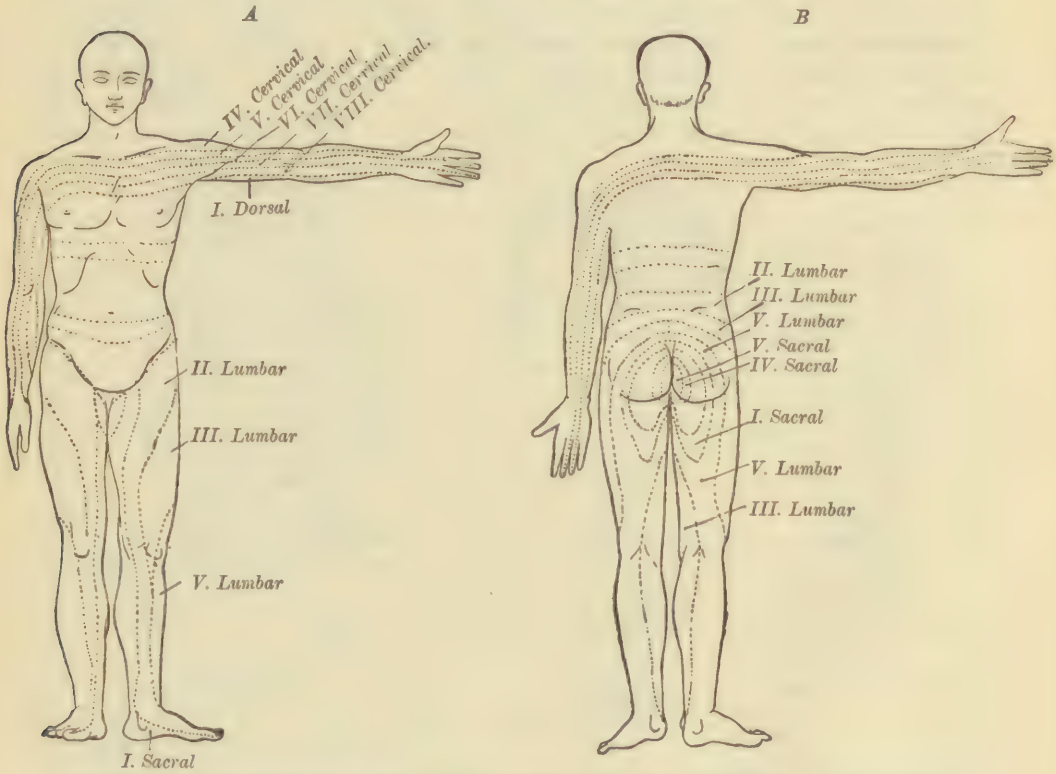


FIG. 627.—Cutaneous areas corresponding to the sensory segments of the spinal cord. *A*, anterior surface. *B*, posterior surface. (After Sticker.)

and then through the superior peduncle to the optic thalamus and the red nucleus of the opposite side. These fibres also reach the cortex by means of the systems of Flechsig. The fibres of the sensory path are arranged as follows in the internal capsule: those which go to the fronto-parietal cortex being situated in the extreme front part of the anterior limb of the internal capsule, while in the hinder extremity of the posterior limb other fibres pass to their distribution in the temporal and occipital cortex.

Path of Cranial Nerves and Medial Fillet.—Common sensory impulses passing along the fifth, the vestibular portion of the eighth, the ninth, and the tenth nerves are conveyed by the medial fillet to the ventral portion of the opposite optic thalamus, and from this region they are taken to the cortex by the systems of Flechsig.

Paths by the Direct Cerebellar Tract.—The direct cerebellar tract begins about the level of the second lumbar vertebra, and is the continuation upward of the axis-cylinders of Clarke's column. At the upper end of the cord it passes into the restiform body and through this reaches the cortex of the superior vermis of the cerebellum. This tract seems to lose some of its fibres in the cord, since the area of degeneration resulting from a section of the lower part of the cord diminishes from below upward; only some of its fibres therefore pass directly to the cerebellum. On the other hand, the tract is reinforced by an accession of fibres from the cord itself, so that its transverse area is greater above than below. Impulses of equilibrium pass from the posterior roots of the spinal nerves and ascend along the direct cerebellar tract, chiefly to the cerebellar cortex of the same side, partly to the cerebellar cortex of the opposite side. From the cerebellar cortex they pass to the cerebral cortex by the route previously referred to.

The Path by the Antero-lateral Ascending Cerebellar Tract.—Ordinary sensory and thermic impulses ascend along this tract to the cerebellar cortex of the opposite side (the superior worm) and partly to the optic thalamus and parietal cortex.

Short Fibre Paths.—According to Santee there are three of these paths: 1. One path is in the antero-lateral ground bundle and formatio reticularis. It conveys sensory impressions from the gray matter of the cord or from pontine and medullary nuclei which receive fibres of common sensation from cranial nerves to the opposite optic thalamus. 2. Another path takes impulses from the formatio reticularis to the cerebellar cortex and then to the red nucleus and optic thalamus. 3. Impulses may leave the antero-lateral ascending cerebellar tract along fibres which diverge in the medulla. These impulses reach the lateral nucleus, pass to the cerebellar cortex, and finally attain the cerebral cortex.[1]

Paths of Special Sensations.—(See the section on Cranial Nerves.)

Reflex Paths.—Reflex paths are almost infinite in number and only a few can be set forth. A spinal reflex action is produced as follows: A stimulus imparted to a sensory nerve ending is conveyed up the nerve to a centre or several centres in the spinal gray matter, from which it is transferred to a motor nerve, and by this to a muscle which responds to the stimulus by movement. Such a path is called a *reflex arc.*

Spinal Reflexes (Fig. 628) may be very simple or somewhat complicated. In the simple spinal reflex the cause of the stimulus is as indicated above. Among these simple spinal reflexes are the patellar reflex, the reflex withdrawal of a part when irritated, and the skin reflexes.

In a more complicated spinal reflex the "impulses traverse at least three neurones" (Santee). The more complicated reflexes are those of "defecation, micturition, parturition, vasomotor reflexes, cardio-accelerator reflexes, etc." (Santee).

A **Cranial Reflex** travels up a sensory cranial nerve and is transferred to a motor cranial nerve. Among these impulses are "watering" of the mouth on smelling a savory dish, the facial muscular contraction due to pain in the fifth nerve, coughing, sneezing, vomiting, and swallowing.

Spinal Cranial Reflexes are due to the ascent of impulses in the cord by way of the posterior longitudinal bundle or by Burdach's column, which impulses reach the nuclei of cranial motor nerves. "Thus is brought about the movement of the eyes toward the source of impulse, a change of facial expression to agree with the painful or pleasing character of the impulses, etc."[2] *Cranial spinal reflexes* are produced by impulses from cranial sensory nerves being transferred to spinal motor fibres. An example of one of these reflexes is the starting on hearing a sudden loud sound. Among these numerous reflexes are the respiratory, auditory, and pupillary.

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord. By Harris E. Santee.

[2] Ibid.

Cutaneous Areas Corresponding to the Sensory Segments of the Spinal Cord.—These are shown in Figs. 627 and 628.

Muscular Supply from Motor Segments of the Cord.—This is shown in Fig. 628.

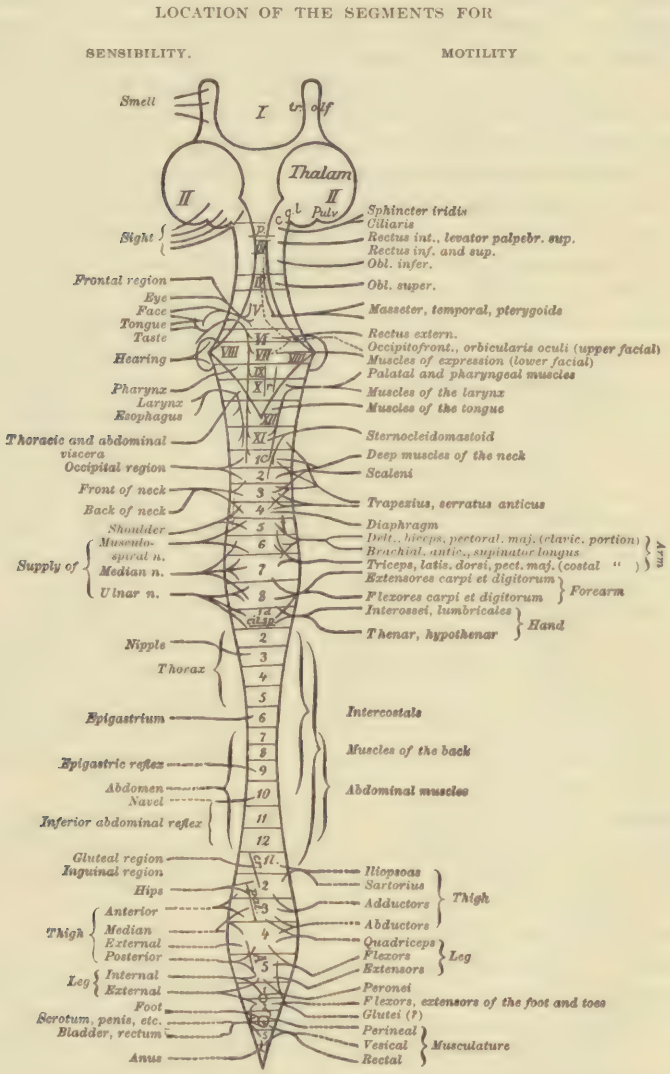


FIG. 628.—Explanation of abbreviations: *tr. olf.*, olfactory tract; *c. g. l.*, lateral geniculate body; *p*, *r*, *cr*, *A*, indicate approximately the location of the reflex centres for the pupillary (*p*), the respiratory (*r*), cremasteric (*cr*), patellar (*pat*), and tendo Achillis (*A*) reflexes. The vesical centre lies in the third and fourth sacral segments; the anal centre in the fourth and fifth (represented by circles); the centres for erection, ejaculation, labor pains (?) are probably also situated in this region. In reality, the divisions between the various segments are, of course, not so sharp as they are shown in the diagram, so that a given muscle or cutaneous region derives some of its controlling nerve-roots from the segments lying immediately above and below the principal segment. The sensory segment for any given region is regularly somewhat higher than the corresponding motor segment. (Jakob.)

THE SPINAL NERVES (NERVI SPINALES).

The spinal nerves are so called because they take their origin from the spinal cord, and are transmitted through the intervertebral foramina on either side of the spinal column. There are thirty-one pairs of spinal nerves, which are arranged

into the following groups, corresponding to the region of the spine through which they pass:

Cervical	8 pairs.
Thoracic or Dorsal	12 "
Lumbar	5 "
Sacral	5 "
Coccygeal	1 "

It will be observed that each group of nerves corresponds in number with the vertebrae in that region, except the cervical and coccygeal. Sometimes there is no thirty-first pair. Occasionally below the thirty-first pair there may be one or even two filamentous pairs which do not pass out of the spinal canal.

Each spinal nerve arises by two roots, an **anterior** or **motor root** and a **posterior or sensory root,** the latter being distinguished by a ganglion, termed the **spinal ganglion.**

The Roots of the Spinal Nerves (Figs. 538, 540, 541, 629, 630, 631).

The Anterior or Ventral Root (*radix anterior*).—The *superficial origin* is from the antero-lateral columns of the cord, corresponding to the situation of the anterior cornu of gray matter. Each root is composed of from four to eight filaments (*fila radicularia*).

The *deep origin* can be traced through the antero-lateral column; the roots, after penetrating horizontally through the longitudinal fibres of this tract, enter the gray substance, where their fibrils diverge in several directions: some passing inward, are continued across the anterior commissure in front of the central canal, to become continuous with the axis-cylinder processes of the large cells of the anterior cornu of the opposite side; others terminate in the mesial group of cells of the anterior column of the same side; other fibrils pass outward, to become continuous with the axis-cylinder processes of the group of cells in the lateral part of the anterior column.

The Posterior or Dorsal Root (*radix posterior*).—The *superficial origin* is by filaments (*fila radicularia*), from the postero-lateral fissure of the cord. The *real origin* of these fibres is from the nerve-cells in the posterior root ganglion, from which they can be traced into the cord in two main bundles, the course of which has already been studied (p. 847).

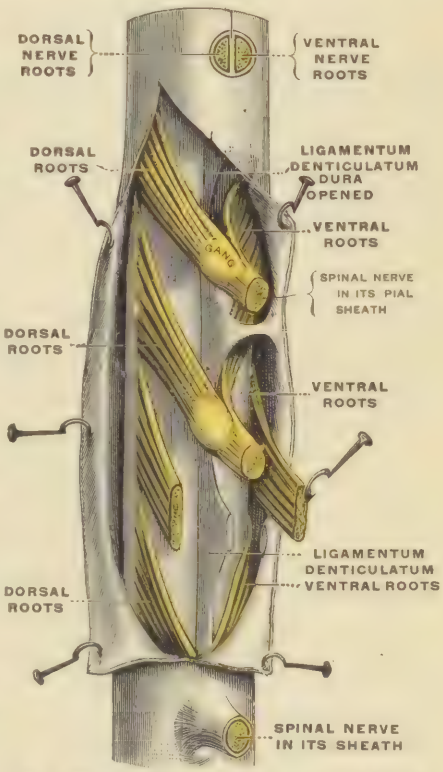


FIG. 629. A portion of the spinal cord, showing its right lateral surface. The dura is opened and arranged to show the nerve roots. (Testut.)

The *anterior roots* are smaller than the posterior, devoid of ganglionic enlargement, and their component fibrils are collected into two bundles near the intervertebral foramina.

The *posterior roots* of the nerves are larger, but the individual filaments are finer and more delicate than those of the anterior. As their component fibrils

pass outward toward the aperture in the dura mater, they coalesce into two bundles, receive a tubular sheath from that membrane, and enter the ganglion (Figs. 629, 630, and 631) which is developed upon each root.

The posterior root of the first cervical nerve forms an exception to these characters. It is smaller than the anterior, has occasionally no ganglion developed upon it, and when the ganglion exists, it is often situated within the dura mater. The first cervical may have a rudimentary posterior root or no posterior root.

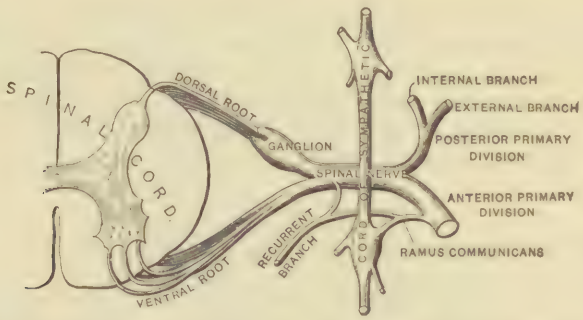


Fig. 630.—Plan of the constitution of a spinal nerve. (W. Keiller, in Gerrish's Text-book of Anatomy.)

Within the spinal canal the nerve-roots are separated from each other by the *ligamentum denticulatum* (Fig. 629). In the cervical region the spinal portion of the spinal accessory nerve separates the roots. Each root obtains a covering of pia mater, which becomes continuous with the neurilemma; "the arachnoid invests each root as far as the point where it meets with the dura mater; the two roots, after piercing the dura separately, are enclosed by it in a single tubular sheath, in which is included the spinal ganglion of the dorsal root."[1]

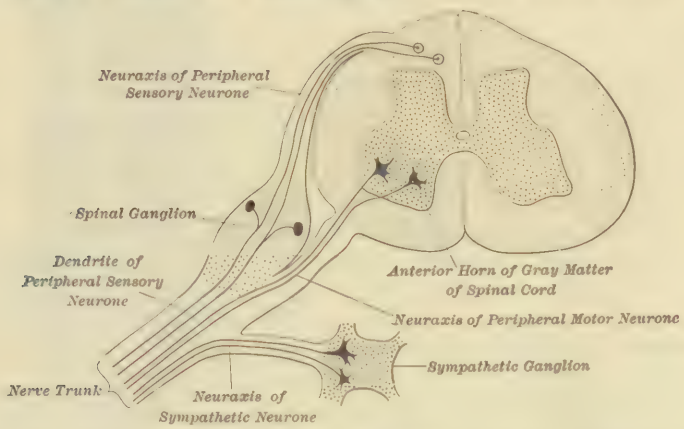


Fig. 631.—Diagram to show the composition of a peripheral nerve-trunk. (Böhm and Davidoff.)

The Ganglia of the Spinal Nerves (Ganglia Spinales) (Figs. 629, 630, 631).

A ganglion is developed upon the posterior root of each of the spinal nerves. The ganglion upon the posterior root of the first cervical nerve may be rudimentary or absent. These ganglia are of an oval form and of a reddish color; they bear a proportion in size to the nerves upon which they are formed, and are placed in the intervertebral foramina, external to the point where the nerves perforate

[1] Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

the dura mater. Each ganglion is bifid internally, where it is joined by the two bundles of the posterior root, the two portions being united into a single mass externally. The ganglia upon the first and second cervical nerves form an exception to these characters, being placed on the arches of the vertebrae over which the nerves pass. The ganglia of the sacral nerves are placed within the spinal canal; and that on the coccygeal nerve, also in the canal, is situated at some distance from the origin of the posterior root.

The ganglion in an embryo is composed of bipolar nerve-cells. In an adult the bipolar nerve-cells by fusion of their two poles form unipolar nerve-cells. The process of each unipolar cell divides into two a short distance from the cell. One of the processes from each cell passes to the spinal cord, and the other passes into the spinal nerve. On the dorsal roots of the lumbar and sacral nerves, between the spinal ganglia and the cord, small cellular masses occasionally exist. They are called **accessory spinal ganglia** (*ganglia aberrantia*).

Distribution of the Spinal Nerves.

Immediately beyond the ganglion the two roots coalesce, their fibres intermingle, and the trunk thus formed constitutes the **spinal nerve**; it passes out of the intervertebral foramen, and divides into a **posterior primary division** for the supply of the posterior part of the body, and an **anterior primary division** for the supply of the anterior part of the body (Fig. 630). Each division contains fibres from both roots.

Before dividing, each spinal nerve gives off a small **recurrent** or **meningeal branch** (*ramus meningeus*) (Fig. 630), which is joined by a filament from the **communicating branch of the sympathetic** (*ramus communicans*) (Fig. 630), which connects the ganglion with the anterior division. The meningeal branches unite and form one nerve, which passes inward through the intervertebral foramen and supplies the dura mater, sending branches to the vertebrae and vertebral ligaments.

The Posterior Primary Divisions (*rami posteriores*) (Fig. 630).—The posterior primary divisions of the spinal nerves are generally smaller than the anterior; they arise from the trunk resulting from the union of the roots, in the intervertebral foramina; and, passing backward, divide into **internal** and **external branches**, which are distributed to the muscles and integument behind the spine. The posterior primary divisions of the spinal nerves form two small plexuses, the **posterior cervical plexus** and the **posterior sacral plexus**. The first cervical, the fourth and fifth sacral, and the coccygeal nerves do not divide into external and internal branches.

The Anterior Primary Divisions (*rami anteriores*) (Fig. 630).—The anterior primary divisions of the spinal nerves supply the parts of the body in front of the spine, including the limbs. They are for the most part larger than the posterior primary divisions. Each division, soon after its origin, receives a slender filament from the sympathetic, which is called the **gray ramus communicans**. In the dorsal region the anterior primary divisions of the spinal nerves are quite separate from each other, and are uniform in their distribution; but in the cervical, lumbar, and sacral regions they form intricate plexuses previous to their distribution. The anterior primary divisions of certain dorsal, lumbar, and sacral nerves give off a delicate collection of nerve filaments to the sympathetic cord. These are called the **white rami communicantes** or the **visceral branches of the spinal nerves.**

Points of Emergence of the Spinal Nerves.

The roots of the spinal nerves from their origin in the cord run obliquely downward to their point of exit from the intervertebral foramina, the amount of obliquity varying in different regions of the spine, and being greater in the lower

than the upper part. The level of their emergence from the cord is within certain limits variable, and of course does not correspond to the point of emergence of the nerve from the intervertebral foramina.

The following table, from Macalister, shows as accurately as can be shown the relation of these points of origin from the spinal cord to the bodies and spinous processes of the vertebrae:

Level of body of	No. of nerve.	Level of tip of spine of	Level of body of	No. of nerve.	Level of tip of spine of
C. 1	C. 1	...	D. 8	9	7 d.
2	2	...	9	10	8 d.
	3	1 c.	10	11	9 d.
3	4	2 c.	...	12	10 d.
4	5	3 c.	11	L. 1	11 d.
5	6	4 c.		2	
6	7	5 c.	12	3	12 d.
...	8	6 c.		4	
7	D. 1	7 c.		5	...
D. 1	2	1 d.		S. 1	
2	3	...	L. 1	2	
3	4	2 d.		3	
4	5	3 d.		4	1 L.
5	6	4 d.	...	5	
6	7	5 d.	...	C. 1	
7	8	6 d.	L. 2		

THE CERVICAL NERVES (NN. CERVICALES).

The Roots of the Cervical Nerves.

The *roots* of the cervical nerves increase in size from the first to the fifth, and then remain the same size to the eighth. The posterior roots bear a proportion to the anterior as 3 to 1, which is much greater than in any other region, the individual filaments being also much larger than those of the anterior roots. The posterior root of the first cervical is an exception to this rule; it is smaller than the anterior root. In direction the roots of the cervical are less oblique than those of the other spinal nerves. The first cervical nerve is directed a little upward and outward; the second is horizontal; the others are directed obliquely downward and outward, the lowest being the most oblique, and consequently longer than the upper, the distance between their place of origin and their point of exit from the spinal canal never exceeding the depth of one vertebra.

The First Cervical or Suboccipital Nerve (*n. suboccipitalis*) (Fig. 632).—The posterior root may be rudimentary or absent. The trunk of the first cervical nerve leaves the spinal canal between the occipital bone and the posterior arch of the atlas (Figs. 16 and 202).

The **Trunk of the Second Cervical Nerve** leaves the spinal canal between the posterior arch of the atlas and the lamina of the axis; and the **Eighth** (the last), between the last cervical and first dorsal vertebrae.

Each nerve, at its exit from the intervertebral foramen, divides into a **posterior** and an **anterior division.** The anterior divisions of the four upper cervical nerves form the **cervical plexus.** The anterior divisions of the four lower cervical nerves, together with the first dorsal, form the **brachial plexus.**

The Posterior or Dorsal Divisions of the Cervical Nerves (Rami Posteriores) (Fig. 633).

The **Posterior Division of the First Cervical Nerve** (Figs. 632 and 633) differs from the posterior divisions of the other cervical nerves in not dividing into an internal and external branch. It is larger than the anterior division, and escapes from the spinal canal between the occipital bone and the posterior arch of the atlas,

lying beneath the vertebral artery. It enters the suboccipital triangle formed by the Rectus capitis posticus major, the Obliquus superior and Obliquus inferior, and, by **muscular branches,** supplies the Recti and Obliqui muscles, and the Complexus. From the branch which supplies the Inferior oblique a communicating filament is given off which joins the second cervical nerve. This nerve also occasionally gives off a cutaneous filament, which accompanies the occipital artery and communicates with the occipitalis major and minor nerves.

The **Posterior Division of the Second Cervical Nerve** is three or four times greater in diameter than the anterior division, and the largest of all the posterior cervical divisions. It emerges from the spinal canal between the posterior arch of the atlas and lamina of the axis, below the Inferior oblique. It supplies a twig to this muscle, and receives a communicating filament from the first cervical. It then divides into an **internal** and an **external branch.**

The **internal branch,** called, from its size and distribution, the **great occipital nerve** (*occipitalis major*) (Figs. 632 and 633), ascends obliquely inward between the Obliquus inferior and Complexus, and pierces the latter muscle and the Trapezius

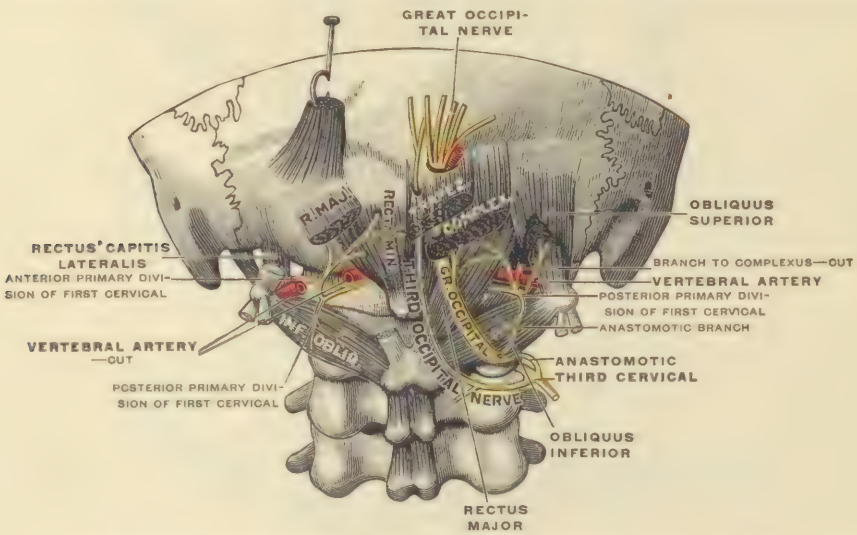


Fig. 632.—Dorsal primary divisions of the upper three cervical nerves. (Testut.)

near their attachments to the cranium. It is now joined by a filament from the posterior division of the third cervical nerve, the **anastomotic,** and, ascending on the back part of the head with the occipital artery, divides into two branches, which supply the integument of the scalp as far forward as the vertex, communicating with the occipitalis minor. It gives off an **auricular branch** to the back part of the ear and **muscular branches** to the Complexus.

The **external branch** is often joined by the external branch of the posterior division of the third cervical nerve, and supplies the Splenius, Trachelo-mastoid, and Complexus

The **Posterior Division of the Third Cervical Nerve** (Figs. 632 and 633) is smaller than the preceding, but larger than the fourth; it differs from the posterior divisions of the remaining cervical nerves in its supplying an additional filament, the **third occipital nerve,** to the integument of the occiput. The posterior division of the third nerve, like the others, divides into an **internal** and **external branch.**

The **internal** or **cutaneous branch** passes between the Complexus and Semispinalis, and, piercing the Splenius and Trapezius, supplies the skin over the latter muscle.

The **external branch** joins with that of the posterior division of the second to supply the Splenius, Trachelo-mastoid, and Complexus.

The **third** or **least occipital nerve** (*n. occipitalis minimus* or *n. occipitalis tertius*) (Fig. 632) *arises* from the internal or cutaneous branch of the posterior division of the third cervical nerve, beneath the Trapezius; it then pierces that muscle, and supplies the skin on the lower and back part of the head. It lies to the inner side of the occipitalis major, with which it is connected.

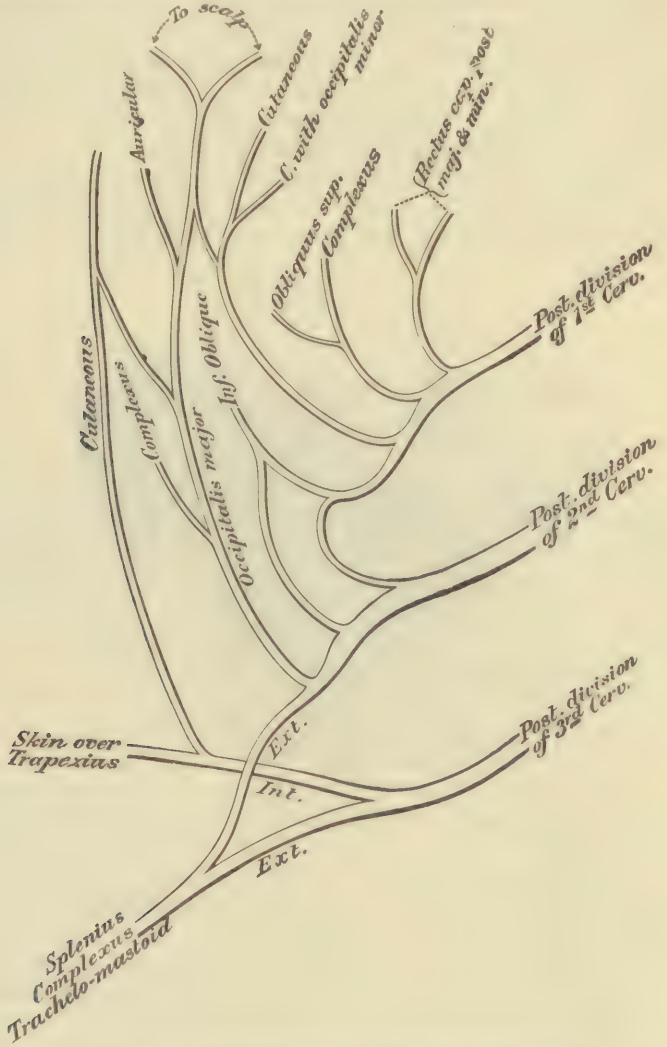


Fig. 633.—Posterior divisions of the upper cervical nerves.

The posterior division of the suboccipital nerve and the internal branches of the posterior divisions of the second and third cervical nerves are occasionally joined beneath the Complexus by communicating branches. This communication is described by Cruveilhier as the **posterior cervical plexus.**

The **Posterior Divisions of the Fourth, Fifth, Sixth, Seventh,** and **Eighth Cervical Nerves** pass backward, and divide, behind the Intertransversales muscles, into **internal** and **external branches.**

The **internal branches,** the larger, are distributed differently in the upper and lower part of the neck. Those derived from the fourth and fifth nerves pass

between the Complexus and Semispinalis muscles, and, having reached the spinous processes, perforate the aponeurosis of the Splenius and Trapezius, and are continued outward to the integument over the Trapezius, whilst those derived from the three lowest cervical nerves are the smallest, and are placed beneath the Semispinalis colli, which they supply, and then pass into the Interspinalis, Multifidus spinae, and Complexus, and send twigs through this latter muscle to supply the integument near the spinous processes (Hirschfeld).

The **external branches** supply the muscles at the side of the neck—viz., the Cervicalis ascendens, Transversalis colli, and Trachelo-mastoid.

The Anterior Divisions of the Cervical Nerves (Rami Anteriores).

The **Anterior Division of the First Cervical Nerve** (Fig. 635) is of small size. It escapes from the spinal canal through a groove upon the posterior arch of the atlas. In this groove it lies beneath the vertebral artery, to the inner side of the Rectus capitis lateralis. As it crosses the foramen in the transverse process of the atlas it receives a filament from the sympathetic. It then descends in front of the transverse process, to communicate with an ascending branch from the second cervical nerve.

Communicating filaments from the loop between this nerve and the second cervical nerve join the pneumogastric, the hypoglossal, and sympathetic, and some branches are distributed to the Rectus lateralis and the two Anterior recti. The fibres which communicate with the hypoglossal simply pass through the latter nerve to become for the most part the **descendens hypoglossi.** According to Valentin, the anterior division of the suboccipital nerve distributes filaments to the occipito-atlantal articulation and to the mastoid process of the temporal bone.

The **Anterior Division of the Second Cervical Nerve** (Fig. 635) escapes from the spinal canal, between the posterior arch of the atlas and the lamina of the axis, and, passing forward on the outer side of the vertebral artery, divides in front of the Intertransverse muscle into an **ascending branch,** which joins the first cervical; and one or two **descending branches,** which join the third cervical. It gives off the **small occipital**; a branch to assist in forming the **great auricular**; another to assist in forming the **superficial cervical**; one of the **communicantes hypoglossi,** and a filament to the Sterno-mastoid, which communicates in the substance of the muscle with the spinal accessory.

The **Anterior Division of the Third Cervical Nerve** (Fig. 635) is double the size of the preceding. At its exit from the intervertebral foramen it passes downward and outward beneath the Sterno-mastoid muscle, and divides into two branches. The **ascending branch** joins the anterior division of the second cervical; the **descending branch** passes down in front of the Scalenus anticus muscle and communicates with the fourth cervical. It gives off the larger part of the **great auricular** and **superficial cervical nerves**; one of the **communicantes hypoglossi**; a branch to the supraclavicular nerves; a filament to assist in forming the **phrenic**; and muscular branches to the Levator anguli scapulae and Trapezius; this latter nerve communicates beneath the muscle with the spinal accessory. Sometimes the nerve to the Scalenus medius is derived from this source.

The **Anterior Division of the Fourth Cervical Nerve** (Fig. 635) is of the same size as the preceding. It receives a branch from the third, sends a communicating branch to the fifth cervical, and, passing downward and outward, divides into numerous filaments, which cross the posterior triangle of the neck, forming the **supraclavicular nerves.** It gives a branch to the **phrenic nerve,** while it is contained in the intertransverse space, and sometimes a branch to the Scalenus medius muscle. It also gives a branch to the Levator anguli scapulae and to the Trapezius, which unites

with the branch given off from the third nerve, and communicates beneath the muscle with the spinal accessory.

The **Anterior Divisions of the Fifth, Sixth, Seventh,** and **Eighth Cervical Nerves** are remarkable for their size. They are much larger than the preceding nerves, and are all of equal dimensions. They assist in the formation of the brachial plexus.

The Cervical Plexus (Plexus Cervicalis) (Figs. 634 and 635).

The cervical plexus is formed by the anterior divisions of the four upper cervical nerves. It is situated opposite the four upper cervical vertebrae, resting upon the Levator anguli scapulae and Scalenus medius muscles, and covered in by the Sterno-mastoid.

Its branches may be divided into two groups, **superficial** and **deep,** which may be thus arranged:

- *Superficial*
  - Ascending
    - Occipitalis minor.
    - Auricularis magnus.
    - Superficialis colli.
  - Descending
    - Supraclavicular
      - Suprasternal.
      - Supraclavicular.
      - Supra-acromial.
- *Deep*
  - Internal
    - Communicating.
    - Muscular.
    - Communicantes hypoglossi.
    - Phrenic.
  - External
    - Communicating.
    - Muscular.

The Superficial Branches of the Cervical Plexus. The Small Occipital Nerve (*n. occipitalis minor*) (Fig. 634).—The small occipital nerve *arises* from the second cervical nerve, sometimes also from the third; it curves round the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, and ascends, running parallel to the posterior border of the muscle, to the back part of the side of the head. Near the cranium it perforates the deep fascia, and is continued upward along the side of the head behind the ear, supplying the integument, and communicating with the occipitalis major, the auricularis magnus, and with the posterior auricular branch of the facial.

This nerve gives off an **auricular branch,** which supplies the integument of the upper and back part of the auricle, communicating with the mastoid branch of the auricularis magnus. The auricular branch is occasionally derived from the great occipital nerve. The occipitalis minor varies in size; it is occasionally double.

The Great Auricular Nerve (*n. auricularis magnus*) (Fig. 634).—The great auricular nerve is the largest of the ascending branches. It arises from the second and third cervical nerves, winds around the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, and, after perforating the deep fascia, ascends upon that muscle beneath the Platysma to the parotid gland, where it divides into **facial, auricular,** and **mastoid branches.**

The **Facial Branches** pass across the parotid, and are distributed to the integument of the face over the parotid gland; others penetrate the substance of the gland and communicate with the facial nerve.

The **Auricular Branches** ascend to supply the integument of the back of the pinna, except at its upper part, communicating with the auricular branches of the facial and pneumogastric nerves. A filament pierces the pinna to reach its outer surface, where it is distributed to the lobule and lower part of the concha.

The **Mastoid Branch** communicates with the occipitalis minor and the posterior auricular branch of the facial, and is distributed to the integument behind the ear.

The Superficial Cervical Nerve or the Superficialis Colli (*n. cutaneus colli*) (Fig. 634).—The superficial cervical nerve or the superficialis colli *arises* from the second and third cervical nerves, turns around the posterior border of the Sterno-

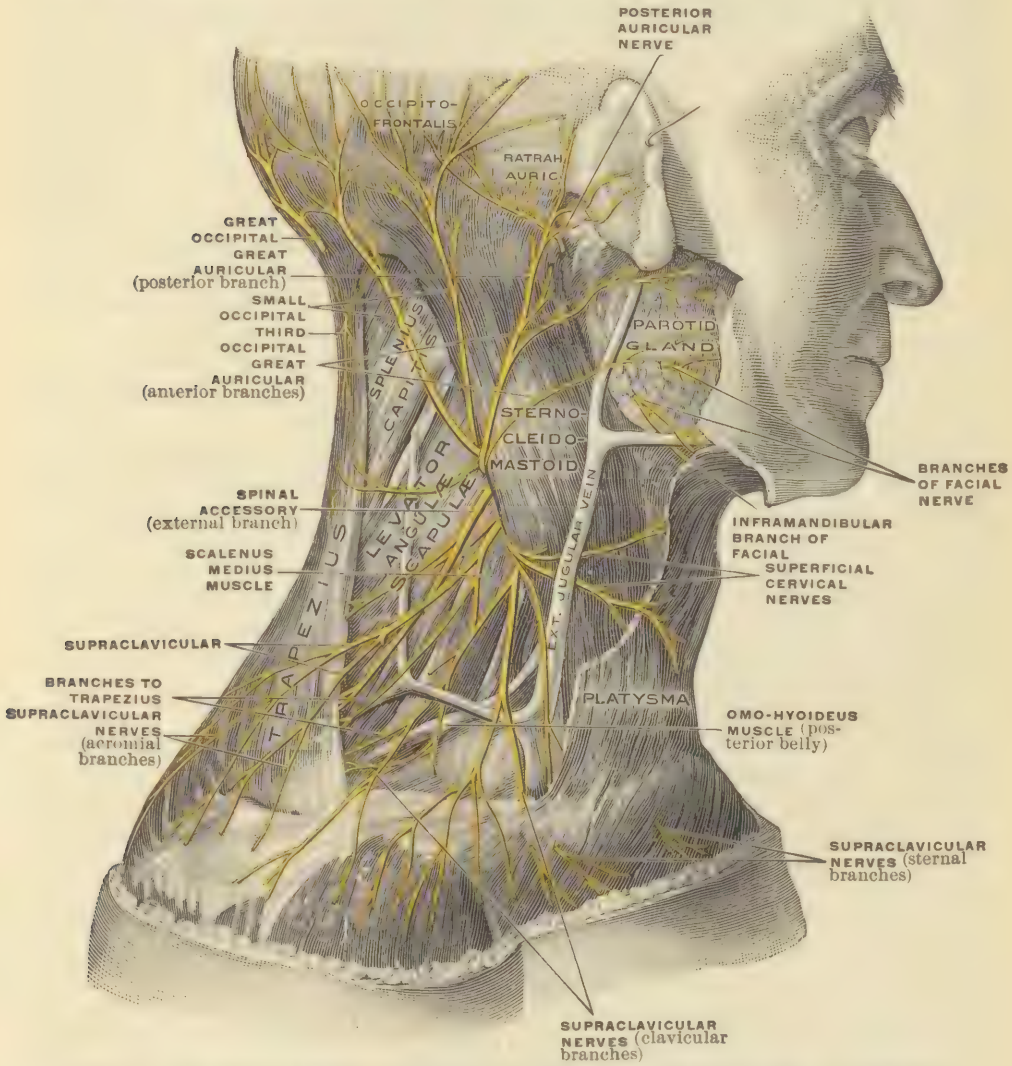


FIG. 634.—The cutaneous branches of the right cervical plexus, viewed from the right. The Platysma has been partly removed. (Spalteholz.)

mastoid about its middle, and, passing obliquely forward beneath the external jugular vein to the anterior border of the muscle, perforates the deep cervical fascia, and divides beneath the Platysma into two branches, which are distributed to the antero-lateral parts of the neck.

The **Ascending Branch** or **Branches** (*rami superiores*) gives a filament which accompanies the external jugular vein; it then passes upward to the submaxillary region, and divides into branches, some of which form a plexus with the cervical branches of the facial nerve beneath the Platysma; others pierce

that muscle and are distributed to the integument of the upper half of the neck, at its forepart, as high as the chin.

The **Descending Branches** (*rami inferiores*), usually represented by two or more filaments, pierce the Platysma, and are distributed to the integument of the side and front of the neck, as low as the sternum.

The Descending or Supraclavicular Branches (*nn. supraclaviculares*) (Fig. 634).—The descending or supraclavicular branches *arise* from the third and fourth cervical nerves; emerging beneath the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid, they descend in the posterior triangle of the neck beneath the Platysma and deep cervical fascia. Near the clavicle they perforate the fascia and Platysma to become cutaneous, and are arranged, according to their position, into three groups.

The **Inner** or **Suprasternal Branches** (*nn. supraclaviculares anteriores*) cross obliquely over the external jugular vein and the clavicular and sternal attachments of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, and supply the integument as far as the median line. They furnish one or two filaments to the sterno-clavicular joint.

The **Middle** or **Supraclavicular Branches** (*nn. supraclaviculares medii*) cross the clavicle, and supply the integument over the Pectoral and Deltoid muscles, communicating with the cutaneous branches of the upper intercostal nerves.

The **External** or **Supra-acromial Branches** (*nn. supraclaviculares posteriores*) pass obliquely across the outer surface of the Trapezius and the acromion, and supply the integument of the upper and back part of the shoulder.

The Deep Branches of the Cervical Plexus (Fig. 635). **Internal Series. The Communicating Branches.**—The communicating branches consist of several filaments which pass from the loop between the first and second cervical nerves in front of the atlas to the pneumogastric, hypoglossal, and sympathetic; of branches from all four cervical nerves to the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, together with a branch from the fourth to the fifth cervical.

Muscular Branches.—Muscular branches supply the Anterior recti and Rectus lateralis muscles; they proceed from the first cervical nerve, and from the loop formed between it and the second.

The Communicantes Hypoglossi (Fig. 635).—The communicantes hypoglossi consist usually of two filaments, one being derived from the second and the other from the third cervical. These filaments pass downward on the outer side of the internal jugular vein, cross in front of the vein a little below the middle of the neck, and form a loop with the descendens hypoglossi in front of the sheath of the carotid vessels. Occasionally, the junction of these nerves takes place within the sheath.

The Phrenic or the Internal Respiratory Nerve of Bell (*n. phrenicus*) (Figs. 635 and 636).—The **phrenic** or the **internal respiratory nerve of Bell** *arises* chiefly from the fourth cervical nerve, with a few filaments from the third and a communicating branch from the fifth. It descends to the root of the neck, running obliquely across the front of the Scalenus anticus muscle, and beneath the Sterno-mastoid muscle, the posterior belly of the Omohyoid muscle, and the Transversalis colli and suprascapular vessels. It next passes over the first part of the subclavian artery, between it and the subclavian vein, and, as it enters the chest, crosses the internal mammary artery near its origin. Within the chest it descends nearly vertically in front of the root of the lung and by the side of the pericardium, between it and the mediastinal portion of the pleura, to the Diaphragm, where it divides into branches, some few of which are distributed to its thoracic surface, but most of which separately pierce that muscle and are distributed to its under surface (*rami phrenicoabdominales*).

The two phrenic nerves differ in their length, and also in their relations at the upper part of the thorax.

The **right phrenic nerve** is situated more deeply, and is shorter and more vertical in direction than the left; it lies on the outer side of the right vena innominata and superior vena cava.

The **left phrenic nerve** is rather longer than the right, from the inclination of the heart to the left side, and from the Diaphragm being lower on this than on the opposite side. It enters the thorax behind the left innominate vein, and crosses in front of the vagus and the arch of the aorta and the root of the lung. In the thorax each phrenic nerve is accompanied by a branch of the internal mammary artery, the **comes nervi phrenici.**

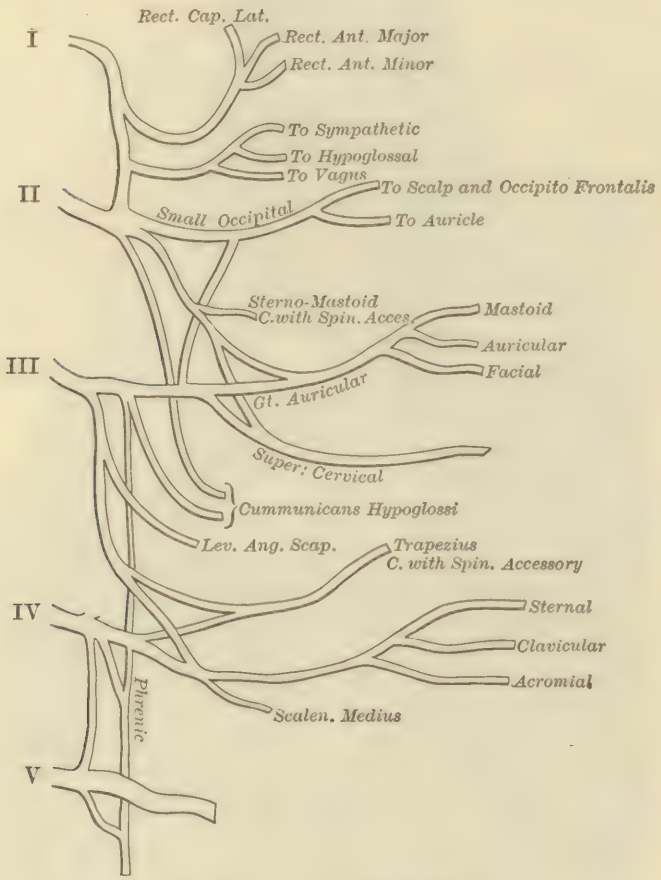


FIG. 635.—Plan of the cervical plexus.

Each nerve supplies filaments to the Diaphragm, pericardium, and pleura, and near the chest is joined by a filament from the sympathetic, and, occasionally, by one from the union of the descendens hypoglossi with the spinal nerves; this filament is found, according to Swan, only on the left side. The phrenic frequently receives a filament from the nerve to the Subclavian muscle. Branches have been described as passing to the peritoneum.

From the **right nerve** one or two filaments pass to join in a small ganglion with phrenic branches of the solar plexus; and branches from this ganglion are distributed to the hepatic plexus, the suprarenal capsule, and inferior vena cava.

From the **left nerve** filaments pass to join the phrenic plexus of the sympathetic, but without any ganglionic enlargement.

Surgical Anatomy.—Irritation of the phrenic nerve causes hiccough and persistent cough. Bilateral paralysis of the phrenic causes death from paralysis of the Diaphragm. This form of death is seen by the surgeon in fracture-dislocation of the third cervical vertebra. Division of the phrenic on one side is not fatal, and is occasionally practised by the surgeon in removing a tumor of the neck. In Hearn's and Franklin's cases of removal of the pneumogastric, the phrenic was also divided. Unilateral division of the phrenic nerve causes paralysis of the corresponding half of the Diaphragm, which is difficult of recognition, because, as Gowers points out, the patient can still take deep inspirations, the thoracic muscles not being paralyzed.

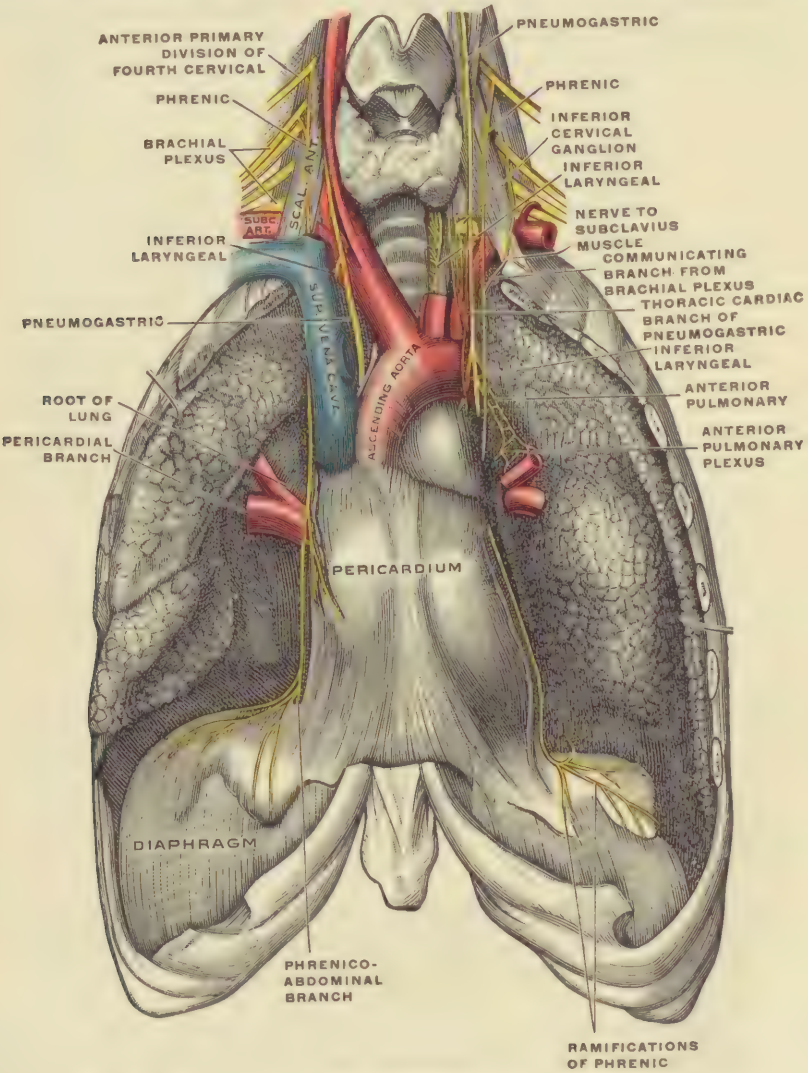


FIG. 636.—The phrenic nerve and its relations with the vagus nerve. (Toldt.)

The Deep Branches of the Cervical Plexus. External Series. Communicating Branches.—The deep branches of the external series of the cervical plexus communicate with the spinal accessory nerve, in the substance of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, in the posterior triangle, and beneath the Trapezius.

Muscular Branches.—Muscular branches are distributed to the Sterno-mastoid, Trapezius, Levator anguli scapulae, and Scalenus medius.

The branch for the Sterno-mastoid is derived from the second cervical; the Trapezius and Levator anguli scapulae receive branches from the third and fourth.

The Scalenus medius is derived sometimes from the third, sometimes the fourth, and occasionally from both nerves.

Surgical Anatomy.—The cervical plexus may be damaged by wounds or contusions, which may or may not be associated with fracture of the clavicle. Paralysis ensues, the extent depending on the degree of damage. After a contusion the paralysis is apt to be temporary and to be followed by pain and muscular spasm in the arm. Paralysis of the arm due to plexus injury may be partial or complete. In some cases there is complete motor palsy and partial sensory palsy, the sensory impulses passing along undamaged collaterals. In certain spasmodic difficulties the surgeon occasionally stretches the cervical plexus. It is reached by an incision at the posterior margin of the Sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle. This incision begins two inches below the level of the tip of the mastoid and is carried downward for three inches.

The Brachial Plexus (Plexus Brachialis) (Figs. 637, 638, 639).

The brachial plexus is formed by the union of the anterior divisions of the four lower cervical and the greater part of the first dorsal nerves, receiving usually

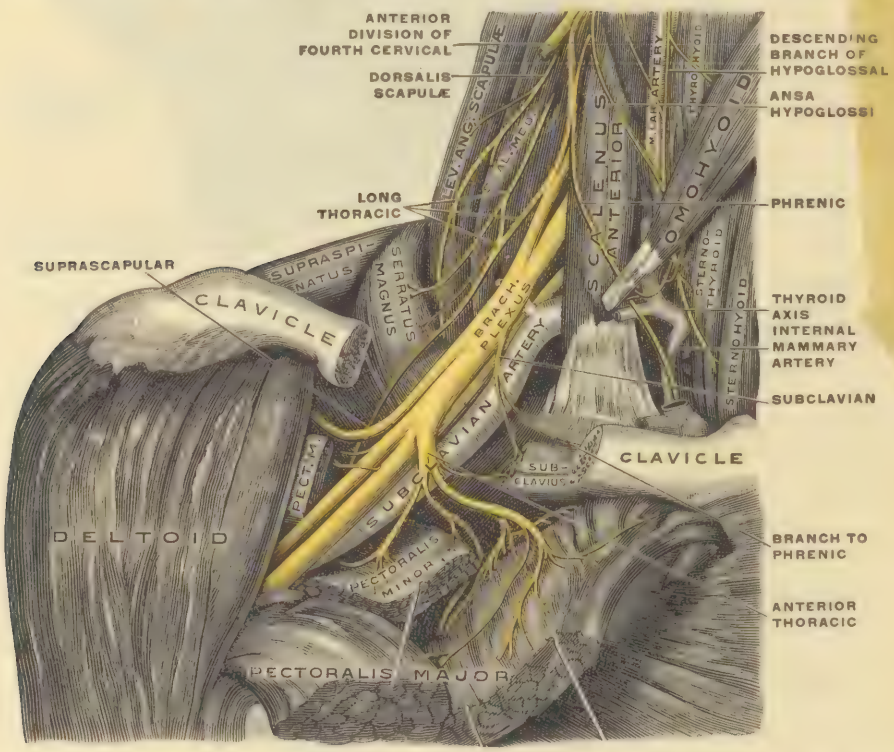


FIG. 637.—The right brachial plexus with its short branches, viewed from in front. The sterno-cleido-mastoid and trapezius muscles have been completely, the omohyoid and subclavian have been partially, removed; a piece has been sawed out of the clavicle; the pectoralis muscles have been incised and reflected. (Spalteholz.)

a fasciculus from the fourth cervical nerve, and frequently one from the second dorsal nerve. It extends from the lower part of the side of the neck to the axilla. It is very broad, and presents little of a plexiform arrangement at its commencement. It is narrow opposite the clavicle, becomes broad and forms a more dense interlacement in the axilla, and divides opposite the coracoid process into numerous branches for the supply of the upper limb. The nerves which form the plexus are all similar in size, and their mode of communication is subject to considerable variation, so that no one plan can be given as applying to every case. The following appears, however, to be the most constant arrangement: **above the clavicle**

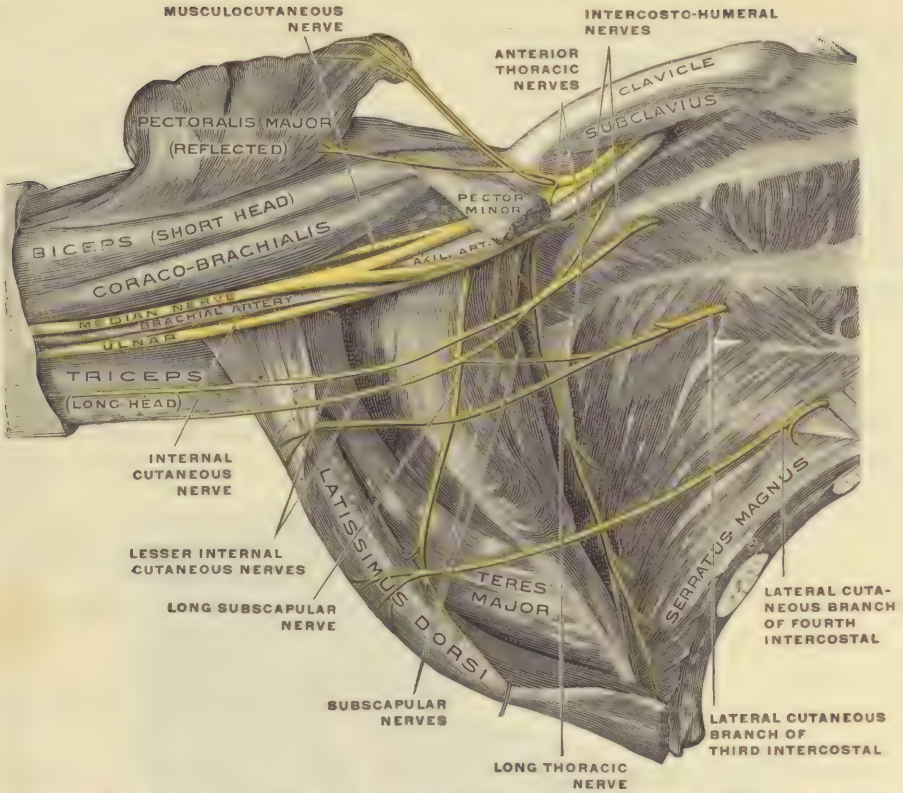


FIG. 638.—The right brachial plexus (infraclavicular portion) in the axilliary fossa, viewed from below and in front. The Pectoralis major and minor muscles have been in large part removed; their attachments have been reflected. (Spalteholz.)

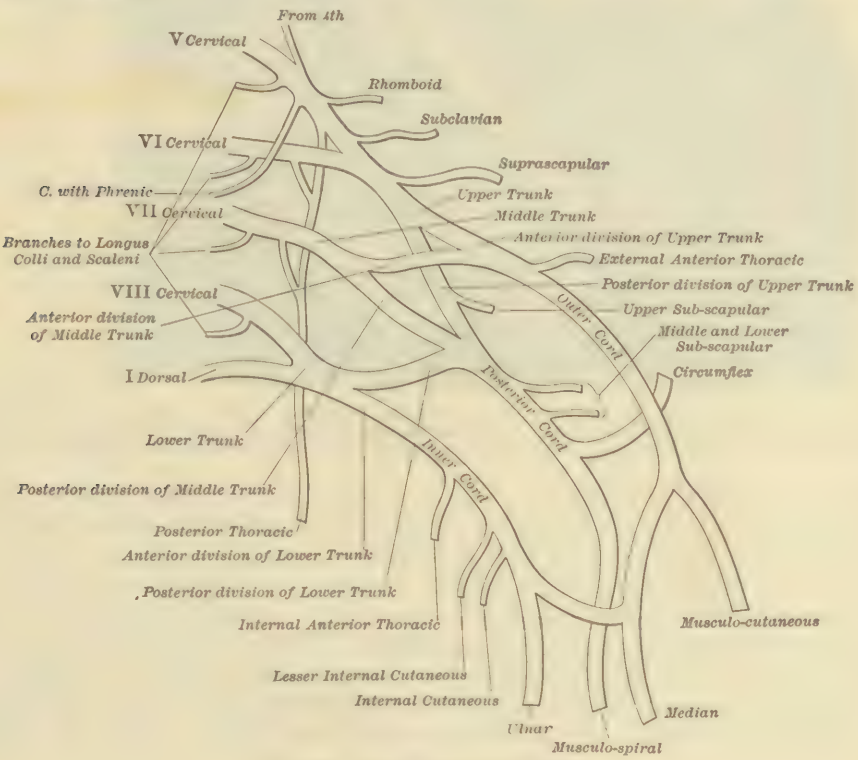


FIG. 639.—Plan of the brachial plexus.

(*pars supraclavicularis*) the fifth and sixth cervical unite together soon after their exit from the intervertebral foramina to form a common trunk. The eighth cervical and first dorsal also unite to form one trunk. So that the nerves forming the plexus, as they lie on the Scalenus medius external to the outer border of the

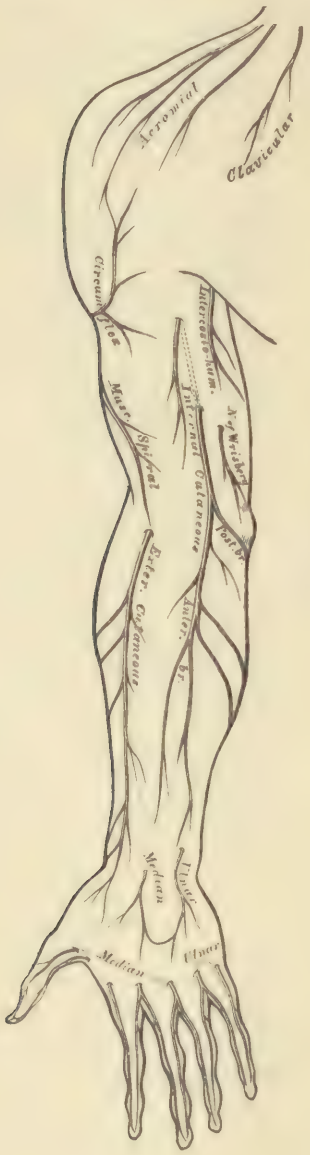


FIG. 640.—Cutaneous nerves of right upper extremity. Anterior view.

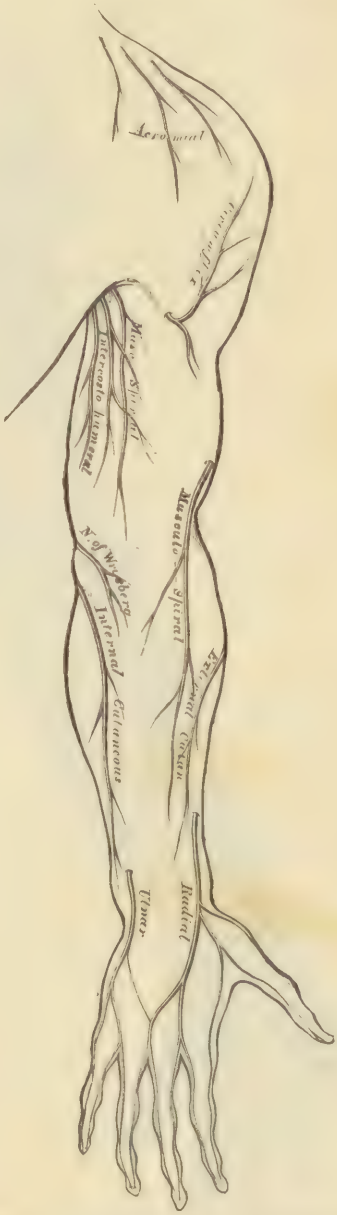


FIG. 641.—Cutaneous nerves of right upper extremity. Posterior view.

Scalenus anticus muscle, are blended into three trunks—an **upper one,** formed by the junction of the fifth and sixth cervical nerves; a **middle one,** consisting of the seventh cervical nerve; and a **lower one,** formed by the junction of the eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves. As they pass beneath the clavicle, to compose the infraclavicular **part of the plexus** (*pars infraclavicularis*), each of

these three trunks divides into two branches, an **anterior** and a **posterior**.[1] The anterior divisions of the upper and middle trunks then unite to form a common cord, which is situated on the outer side of the middle part of the axillary artery, and is called the **outer cord of the brachial plexus** (*fasciculus lateralis*). The anterior division of the lower trunk passes down on the inner side of the axillary artery in the middle of the axilla, and forms the **inner cord of the brachial plexus** (*fasciculus medialis*). The posterior divisions of all three trunks unite to form the **posterior cord of the brachial plexus** (*fasciculus posterior*), which is situated behind the second portion of the axillary artery. From this posterior cord are given off the two lower subscapular nerves, the upper subscapular nerve being given off from the posterior division of the upper trunk prior to its junction with the posterior division of the lower and middle trunks. The posterior cord divides into the circumflex and musculo-spiral nerves.

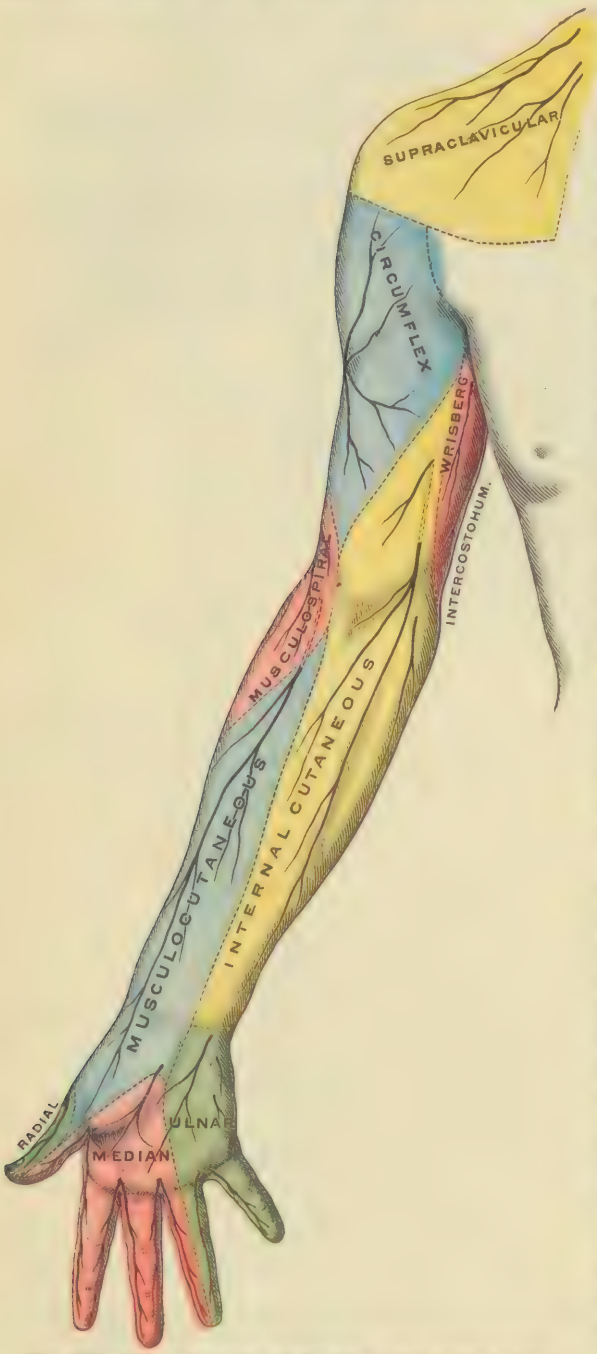


Fig. 642.—Cutaneous nerves of the upper limb, ventral aspect. (W. Keiller, in Gerrish's Text-book of Anatomy.)

The brachial plexus communicates with the cervical plexus by a branch from the fourth to the fifth cervical nerve, and with the phrenic nerve by a branch from the fifth cervical, which joins that nerve on the Anterior scalenus muscle; the fifth and sixth cervical nerves are joined by filaments to the middle cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, the seventh and eighth cervical to its inferior ganglion, and the first dorsal nerve to its first thoracic ganglion. Close to their exit from the intervertebral foramina the nerves give off the filaments to the ganglia.

Relations.—**In the neck**, the brachial plexus lies in the posterior triangle, being covered by the skin, Platysma, and deep fascia; it is crossed by the posterior belly

[1] The posterior division of the lower trunk is very much smaller than the others, and is frequently derived entirely from the eighth cervical nerve.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

of the Omo-hyoid muscle and by the transversalis colli artery. When the posterior scapular artery arises from the third part of the subclavian it usually passes between the roots of the plexus. The plexus lies at first between the Anterior and Middle scaleni muscles, and then above and to the outer side of the subclavian artery; it next passes behind the clavicle and Subclavius muscle, lying upon the first serration of the Serratus magnus, and the Subscapularis muscles. It is in close relation with the apex of the lung (Luschka). **In the axilla** it is placed on the outer side of the first portion of the axillary artery; it surrounds the artery in the second part of its course, one cord lying upon the outer side of that vessel, one on the inner side, and one behind it, and at the lower part of the axillary space gives off its terminal branches to the upper extremity.

Branches.—The branches of the brachial plexus are arranged in two groups—viz., those given off **above the clavicle,** and those **below the clavicle.**

Branches above the Clavicle (Figs. 637 and 639).—The branches above the clavicle, from the *pars supraclavicularis,* are—the

Communicating.
Muscular.
Posterior thoracic.
Suprascapular.

The Communicating Branch (Figs. 636 and 639).—The communicating branch with the **phrenic** is derived from the fifth cervical nerve or from the loop between the fifth and sixth; it joins the phrenic on the Anterior scalenus muscle. The communications with the sympathetic have already been referred to.

FIG. 643.—Cutaneous nerve of the upper limb, dorsal aspect. (W. Keiller, in Gerrish's Text-book of Anatomy.)

The Muscular Branches (*rami musculares*).—The muscular branches supply the Longus colli, Scaleni, Rhomboidei, and Subclavius muscles. Those for the Longus colli and Scaleni arise from the four lower cervical nerves at their exit

from the intervertebral foramina. The Rhomboid branch is called the **posterior scapular nerve** (*n. dorsalis scapulae*) (Figs. 637 and 639), *arises* from the fifth

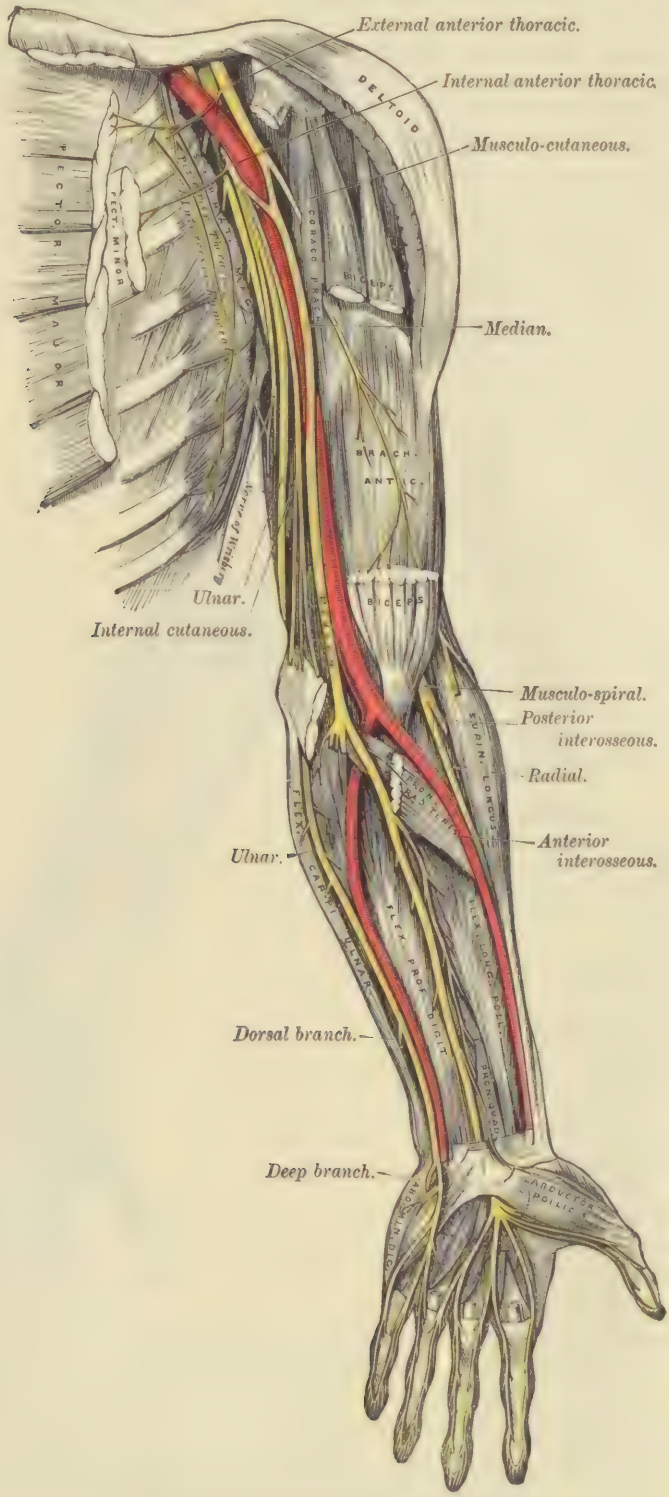


FIG. 644.—Nerves of the left upper extremity.

cervical, pierces the Scalenus medius, and passes beneath the Levator anguli scapulae, which it occasionally supplies, to the Rhomboid muscles. The nerve to the Subclavius (*n. subclavius*) is a small filament which arises from the fifth cervical at its point of junction with the sixth nerve; it descends in front of the third part of the subclavian artery to the Subclavius muscle, and is usually connected by a filament with the phrenic nerve.

The Posterior Thoracic, the Long Thoracic, or the External Respiratory Nerve of Bell (*n. thoracalis longus*) (Figs. 637, 638, 639, and 644).—The posterior thoracic, the long thoracic, or the external respiratory nerve of Bell supplies the Serratus magnus muscle, and is remarkable for the length of its course. It sometimes arises by two roots from the fifth and sixth cervical nerves immediately after their exit from the intervertebral foramina, but generally by three roots from the fifth, sixth, and seventh nerves. These unite in the substance of the Middle scalenus muscle, and, after emerging from it, the nerve passes down behind the brachial plexus and the axillary vessels, resting on the outer surface of the Serratus magnus. It extends along the side of the chest to the lower border of that muscle, supplying filaments to each of the muscular digitations.

The Suprascapular Nerve (*n. suprascapularis*) (Figs. 637, 639, and 645).—The suprascapular nerve arises from the cord formed by the fifth and sixth cervical nerves; passing obliquely outward beneath the Trapezius and the Omo-hyoid, it enters the supraspinous fossa below the transverse or suprascapular ligament, and, passing beneath the Supraspinatus muscle, curves around the external border of the spine of the scapula to the infraspinous fossa. In the supraspinous fossa it gives off two branches to the Supraspinatus muscle, and an articular filament to the shoulder-joint; and in the infraspinous fossa it gives off two branches to the Infraspinatus muscle, besides some filaments to the shoulder-joint and scapula

Branches below the Clavicle (Figs. 638 and 639).—The branches below the clavicle, that is, the branches from the *pars subclavicularis* of the brachial plexus, are derived from the three cords of the brachial plexus, in the following manner:

From the Outer Cord.—From the outer cord *arise* the external anterior thoracic nerve, the musculo-cutaneous, and the outer head of the median.

From the Inner Cord.—From the inner cord *arise* the internal anterior thoracic nerve, the internal cutaneous, the lesser internal cutaneous (nerve of Wrisberg), the ulnar, and inner head of the median.

From the Posterior Cord.—From the posterior cord *arise* two of the three subscapular nerves, the third taking origin from the posterior division of the trunk formed by the fifth and sixth cervical nerves; the cord then divides into the musculo-spiral and circumflex nerves.

These branches from below the clavicle may be arranged according to the parts they supply:

To the chest	Anterior thoracic.
To the shoulder	Subscapular. Circumflex.
To the arm, forearm, and hand .	Musculo-cutaneous. Internal cutaneous. Lesser internal cutaneous. Median. Ulnar. Musculo-spiral.

The fasciculi of which these nerves are composed may be traced through the plexus to the spinal nerves from which they originate. They are as follows:

External anterior thoracic	from	5th, 6th, and 7th cervical.
Internal anterior thoracic	"	8th cervical and 1st dorsal.
Subscapular	"	5th, 6th, 7th, and 8th cervical.
Circumflex	"	5th and 6th cervical.
Musculo-cutaneous	"	5th and 6th cervical.
Internal cutaneous	"	8th cervical and 1st dorsal.
Lesser internal cutaneous	"	1st dorsal.
Median	"	6th, 7th, and 8th cervical, and 1st dorsal.
Ulnar	"	8th cervical and 1st dorsal.
Musculo-spiral	"	6th, 7th, and 8th cervical, sometimes also from the 5th.

The Anterior Thoracic Nerves (*nn. thoracales anteriores*) (Figs. 637, 638, and 639).—The anterior thoracic nerves, two in number, supply the Pectoral muscles.

The **External** or **Superficial Anterior Thoracic Nerve** (Figs. 637 and 644), the larger of the two, *arises* from the outer cord of the brachial plexus, through which its fibres may be traced to the fifth, sixth, and seventh cervical nerves. It passes inward, across the axillary artery and vein, pierces the costo-coracoid membrane, and is distributed to the under surface of the Pectoralis major muscle. It sends down a communicating filament to join the internal anterior thoracic nerve, and this communicating filament forms a loop around the inner side of the axillary artery.

The **Internal** or **Deep Anterior Thoracic Nerve** *arises* from the inner cord, and through it from the eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves. It passes behind the first part of the axillary artery, then curves forward between the axillary artery and vein, and joins with the filament from the anterior nerve. It then passes to the under surface of the Pectoralis minor muscle, where it divides into a number of branches, which supply the muscle on its under surface. Some two or three branches pass through the muscle and reach the Pectoralis major.

The Subscapular Nerves (*nn. subscapulares*) (Figs. 638 and 639).—The subscapular nerves *arise* from the posterior cord of the plexus. There are three subscapular nerves, and they supply the Subscapularis, Teres major, and Latissimus dorsi muscles, and give filaments to the shoulder-joint. The fasciculi of which they are composed may be traced to the fifth, sixth, seventh, and eighth cervical nerves.

The **First, Short** or **Upper Subscapular Nerve**, the smallest, *arises* from the posterior division of the upper trunk of origin of the brachial plexus, and enters the upper part of the Subscapularis muscle; this nerve is frequently represented by two branches.

The **Second** or **Lower Subscapular Nerve** arises from the posterior end of the brachial plexus, enters the axillary border of the Subscapularis and terminates in the Teres major. The latter muscle is sometimes supplied by a separate branch.

The **Third, Middle** or **Long Subscapular Nerve** (*n. thoracodorsalis*) (Fig. 638), the largest of the three, *arises* from the posterior end of the brachial plexus and follows the course of the subscapular artery, along the posterior wall of the axilla to the Latissimus dorsi muscle, through which it may be traced as far as its lower border.

The Circumflex Nerve (*n. axillaris*) (Figs. 639 and 645).—The circumflex nerve supplies some of the muscles, the shoulder-joint, and the integument of the shoulder (Figs. 640 and 641). It *arises* from the posterior cord of the brachial plexus, in common with the musculo-spiral nerve, and its fibres may be traced through the posterior cord to the fifth and sixth cervical nerves. It is at first placed behind the axillary artery, between it and the Subscapularis muscle, and passes downward

and outward to the lower border of that muscle. It then winds backward in company with the posterior circumflex artery, through a **quadrilateral space** bounded above by the Teres minor muscle, below by the Teres major muscle, internally by the long head of the Triceps muscle, and externally by the neck of the humerus. The nerve then divides into two branches.

The **Upper Branch** (Fig. 645) winds backward around the surgical neck of the humerus, beneath the Deltoid, with the posterior circumflex vessels, as far as the anterior border of that muscle, supplying it, and giving off cutaneous branches, which pierce the muscle and ramify in the integument covering its lower part (Fig. 642).

The **Lower Branch** (Fig. 645), at its origin, distributes filaments to the Teres minor and back part of the Deltoid muscles. Upon the filaments to the former muscle an oval enlargement usually exists. The nerve then pierces the deep fascia, and supplies the integument over the lower two-thirds of the posterior surface of the Deltoid (*n. cutaneus brachii lateralis*), as well as that covering the long head of the Triceps (*caput longum n. tricipitis brachii*) (Fig. 643).

The circumflex nerve, before its division, gives off an **articular filament,** which enters the shoulder-joint below the Subscapularis muscle.

The Musculo-cutaneous or the External Cutaneous Nerve or the Perforating Nerve of Casserius[1] (*n. musculocutaneus*) (Figs. 638, 639, and 644).—The musculo-cutaneous, or the external cutaneous nerve, supplies some of the muscles of the arm and the integument of the forearm. It *arises* from the outer cord of the brachial plexus, opposite the lower border of the Pectoralis minor muscle, receiving filaments from the fifth, sixth, and seventh cervical nerves. It perforates the **Coraco-brachialis muscle** (Fig. 644), passes obliquely between the Biceps and Brachialis anticus muscles to the outer side of the arm, and, a little above the elbow, winds around the outer border of the tendon of the Biceps, and, perforating the deep fascia, becomes cutaneous (Fig. 640). This nerve, in its course through the arm, supplies the Coraco-brachialis, Biceps, and the greater part of the Brachialis anticus muscles. The branch to the Coraco-brachialis is given off from the nerve close to its origin, and in some instances, as a separate filament from the outer cord of the plexus. The branches to the Biceps and Brachialis anticus are given off after the nerve has pierced the Coraco-brachialis. The nerve also sends a small branch to the humerus, which enters the **nutrient foramen** with the accompanying artery, and a filament, from the branch supplying the Brachialis anticus, goes to the elbow-joint. The musculo-cutaneous furnishes the chief nerve supply to this joint.

The **Cutaneous Portion of the Musculo-cutaneous Nerve** (*n. cutaneus antibrachii lateralis*) passes behind the median cephalic vein, and divides, opposite the elbow-joint, into an **anterior** and a **posterior branch.**

The **anterior branch** descends along the radial border of the forearm to the wrist, and supplies the integument over the outer half of the anterior surface. At the wrist-joint it is placed in front of the radial artery, and some filaments, piercing the deep fascia, accompany that vessel to the back of the wrist, supplying the carpus. The nerve then passes downward to the ball of the thumb, where it terminates in cutaneous filaments. It communicates with a branch from the radial nerve and with the palmar cutaneous branch of the median.

The **posterior branch** passes downward along the back part of the radial side of the forearm to the wrist. It supplies the integument of the lower third of the forearm, communicating with the radial nerve and the external cutaneous branch of the musculo-spiral. The cutaneous areas supplied by the musculo-cutaneous nerve are indicated in Figs. 642 and 643.

The musculo-cutaneous nerve presents frequent irregularities. It may adhere

[1] See foot-note, page 1027.

for some distance to the median and then pass outward, beneath the Biceps, instead of through the Coraco-brachialis. Frequently some of the fibres of the median run for some distance in the musculo-cutaneous and then leave it to join their proper trunk. Less frequently the reverse is the case, and the median sends a branch to join the musculo-cutaneous. Instead of piercing the Coraco-brachialis muscle the nerve may pass under it or through the Biceps. Occasionally it gives a filament to the Pronator radii teres muscle, and it has been seen to supply the back of the thumb when the radial nerve was absent.

The Internal Cutaneous Nerve (*n. cutaneus antibrachii medialis*) (Figs. 638, 639, and 644).—The internal cutaneous nerve is one of the smallest branches of the brachial plexus. It *arises* from the inner cord in common with the ulnar nerve and internal head of the median nerve, and, at its commencement, is placed on the inner side of the axillary artery, and afterward of the brachial artery. It derives its fibres from the eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves. It passes down the inner side of the arm, pierces the deep fascia with the basilic vein, about the middle of the limb, and, becoming cutaneous, divides into two branches, **anterior** and **posterior**.

This nerve gives off, near the axilla, a cutaneous filament, which pierces the fascia and supplies the integument covering the Biceps muscle nearly as far as the elbow. This filament lies a little external to the common trunk, from which it arises.

The **anterior branch**, the larger of the two, passes usually in front of, but occasionally behind, the median basilic vein. It then descends on the anterior surface of the ulnar side of the forearm, distributing filaments to the integument as far as the wrist, and communicating with a cutaneous branch of the ulnar nerve (Fig. 640).

The **posterior branch** passes obliquely downward on the inner side of the basilic vein, passes in front of, or over, the internal condyle of the humerus to the back of the forearm, and descends on the posterior surface of its ulnar side as far as the wrist, distributing filaments to the integument (Fig. 641). It communicates, above the elbow, with the lesser internal cutaneous nerve, and above the wrist with the dorsal cutaneous branch of the ulnar nerve (Swan). The cutaneous areas supplied by the internal cutaneous nerve are indicated in Figs. 642 and 643.

The Lesser Internal Cutaneous Nerve or the Nerve of Wrisberg (*n. cutaneus brachii medialis*) (Figs. 638, 639, and 644).—The lesser internal cutaneous nerve is distributed to the integument on the inner side of the arm. It is the smallest of the branches of the brachial plexus, and, arising from the inner cord, receives its fibres from the first dorsal nerve. It passes through the axillary space, at first lying behind, and then on the inner side of, the axillary vein, and communicates with the intercosto-humeral nerve. It descends along the inner side of the brachial artery to the middle of the arm, where it pierces the deep fascia, and is distributed to the integument of the back part of the lower third of the arm, extending as far as the elbow (Figs. 640, 641, and 642), where some filaments are lost in the integument in front of the inner condyle, and others over the olecranon. It communicates with the posterior branch of the internal cutaneous nerve.

In some cases the nerve of Wrisberg and the **intercosto-humeral nerve** are connected by two or three filaments which form a plexus at the back part of the axilla. In other cases the intercosto-humeral is of large size, and takes the place of the nerve of Wrisberg, receiving merely a filament of communication from the brachial plexus, which filament represents the latter nerve. In other cases this filament is wanting, the place of the nerve of Wrisberg being supplied entirely by the intercosto-humeral.

The Median Nerve (*n. medianus*) (Figs. 638, 639, and 644).—The median nerve has received its name from the course it takes along the middle of the arm and forearm to the hand, lying between the ulnar and musculo-spiral nerves, and the ulnar and

the radial nerves. It *arises* by two roots, one from the outer, and one from the inner, cord of the brachial plexus; these embrace the lower part of the axillary artery, uniting either in front or on the outer side of that vessel. The median nerve receives filaments from the sixth, seventh, and eighth cervical and the first dorsal nerves. As it descends through the arm, it lies at first on the outer side of the brachial artery, crosses that vessel in the middle of its course, usually in front, but occasionally behind it, and lies on its inner side to the bend of the elbow, where it is placed beneath the bicipital fascia, and is separated from the elbow-joint by the Brachialis anticus muscle. **In the forearm** it passes between the two heads of the Pronor radii teres muscle, and descends beneath the Flexor sublimis muscle, lying on the Flexor profundus muscle, to within two inches above the annular ligament, where it becomes more superficial, lying between the tendons of the Flexor sublimis and Flexor carpi radialis muscles, beneath, and rather to the radial side or under the tendon of the Palmaris longus, covered by the integument and fascia. It then passes through the **carpal canal** (*canalis carpi*) beneath the annular ligament into the hand. In its course through the forearm it is accompanied by a branch of the *anterior interosseous artery*.

Branches.—With the exception of the *nerve to the Pronator radii teres muscle*, which sometimes arises above the elbow-joint, and filaments to the elbow-joint, the median nerve gives off no branches in the arm. **In the forearm** its branches are **muscular, anterior interosseous,** and **palmar cutaneous,** and, according to Rüdinger and Macalister, two **articular twigs to the elbow-joint.**

The **Muscular Branches** (*rami musculares*) supply all the superficial muscles on the front of the forearm except the Flexor carpi ulnaris. These branches are derived from the nerve near the elbow.

The **Anterior Interosseous** (*n. interosseus* [*antibrachii*] *volaris*) (Fig. 644) supplies the deep muscles on the front of the forearm, except the inner half of the Flexor profundus digitorum. It accompanies the anterior interosseous artery along the interosseous membrane, in the interval between the Flexor longus pollicis and Flexor profundus digitorum muscles, both of which it supplies, and terminates below in the Pronator quadratus muscle sending filaments to the inferior radio-ulnar articulation and the wrist-joint.

The **Palmar Cutaneous Branch** (*ramus cutaneus palmaris n. mediani*) *arises* from the median nerve at the lower part of the forearm. It pierces the fascia above the annular ligament, and, descending over that ligament, divides into two branches; of which the **outer branch** supplies the skin over the ball of the thumb, and communicates with the anterior cutaneous branch of the musculo-cutaneous nerve; and the **inner branch** supplies the integument of the palm of the hand, communicating with the cutaneous branch of the ulnar.

In the palm of the hand the median nerve is covered by the integument and palmar fascia and is crossed by the superficial palmar arch. It rests upon the tendons of the flexor muscles. In this situation it becomes enlarged, somewhat flattened, of a reddish color, and divides into two branches. Of these, the **external branch** supplies a muscular branch to some of the muscles of the thumb and digital branches to the thumb and index finger; the **internal branch** supplies digital branches to the contiguous sides of the index and middle and of the middle and ring fingers. The digital branches, before they subdivide, are called **common palmar digital branches of the median nerve** (*nn. digitales volares communes*).

The **branch to the muscles of the thumb** (*ramus muscularis*) is a short nerve which divides to supply the Abductor, Opponens, and the superficial head of the Flexor brevis pollicis muscles, the remaining muscles of this group being supplied by the ulnar nerve.

The **Collateral Palmar Digital** or the **Digital Branches** (*nn. digitales volares proprii*) are five in number. The **first** and **second** pass along the borders of the thumb,

the external branch communicating with branches of the radial nerve. The **third** passes along the radial side of the index finger, and supplies the First lumbricalis muscle. The **fourth** subdivides to supply the adjacent sides of the index and middle fingers, and sends a branch to the Second lumbricalis muscle. The **fifth** supplies the adjacent sides of the middle and ring fingers, and communicates with a branch from the ulnar nerve.

Each digital nerve, opposite the base of the first phalanx, gives off a dorsal branch, which joins the dorsal digital nerve from the radial nerve and runs along the side of the dorsum of the finger, to end in the integument over the last phalanx. At the end of the finger the digital nerve divides into a palmar and a dorsal branch, the former of which supplies the extremity of the finger, and the latter ramifies around and beneath the nail. The digital nerves, as they run along the fingers, are placed superficial to the digital arteries. The cutaneous areas supplied by the median nerve are shown in Figs. 642 and 643.

The Ulnar Nerve (*n. ulnaris*) (Figs. 638, 639, and 644).—The ulnar nerve is placed along the inner or ulnar side of the upper limb, and is distributed to the muscles and integument of the forearm and hand. It is smaller than the median, behind which it is placed, diverging from it in its course down the arm. It arises from the inner cord of the brachial plexus, in common with the inner head of the median and the internal cutaneous nerve, and derives its fibres from the eighth cervical and first dorsal nerves. At its commencement it lies to the inner side of the axillary artery, and holds the same relation with the brachial artery to the middle of the arm. From this point it runs obliquely across the internal head of the Triceps, pierces the internal intermuscular septum, and descends to the groove between the internal condyle and the olecranon, accompanied by the inferior profunda artery. **At the elbow** it rests upon the back of the inner condyle, and passes into the forearm between the two heads of the Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle. **In the forearm** it descends in a perfectly straight course along the ulnar side of the extremity, lying upon the Flexor profundus digitorum muscle, its upper half being covered by the Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle, its lower half lying on the outer side of the muscle, being covered by the integument and fascia. The ulnar artery, in the upper third of its course, is separated from the ulnar nerve by a considerable interval, but in the rest of its extent the nerve lies to its inner side. **At the wrist** the ulnar nerve crosses the annular ligament on the outer side of the pisiform bone, to the inner side of and a little behind the ulnar artery, and immediately beyond this bone divides into two branches, the superficial and the deep palmar.

Branches.—The branches of the ulnar nerve are—

In the forearm	Articular. Muscular. Cutaneous. Dorsal cutaneous.	In the hand	Superficial palmar. Deep palmar.

The **Articular Branches** distributed to the elbow-joint consist of several small filaments. They arise from the nerve as it lies in the groove between the inner condyle of the humerus and the olecranon process of the ulnar.

The **Muscular Branches** (*rami musculares*) are two in number—one supplying the Flexor carpi ulnaris; the other, the inner half of the Flexor profundus digitorum. They arise from the trunk of the nerve near the elbow.

The **Cutaneous Branch** arises from the ulnar nerve about the middle of the forearm, and divides into two branches.

One branch (frequently absent) pierces the deep fascia near the wrist, and is distributed to the integument, communicating with a branch of the internal cutaneous nerve.

The second branch, the **palmar cutaneous** (*ramus cutaneus palmaris*) lies on the

ulnar artery, which it accompanies to the hand, some filaments entwining around the vessel; it ends in the integument of the palm, communicating with branches of the median nerve.

The **Dorsal Cutaneous Branch** (*ramus dorsalis manus*) *arises* about two inches above the wrist; it passes backward beneath the Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle, perforates the deep fascia, and, running along the ulnar side of the back of the wrist and hand, divides into branches (*nn. digitales dorsales*); one of these supplies the inner side of the little finger; a second supplies the adjacent sides of the little and ring fingers; a third joins the branch of the radial nerve which supplies the adjoining sides of the middle and ring fingers, and assists in supplying these parts; a fourth is distributed to the metacarpal region of the hand, communicating with a branch of the radial nerve.

On the little finger the dorsal digital branches extend only as far as the base of the terminal phalanx, and on the ring finger as far as the base of the second phalanx; the more distal parts of these digits are supplied by dorsal branches derived from the palmar digital branches of the ulnar.

The **Superficial Palmar Branch** (*ramus superficialis n. ulnaris*) supplies the Palmaris brevis and the integument on the inner side of the hand, and terminates in two digital branches, which are distributed, one to the ulnar side of the little finger, the other to the adjoining sides of the little and ring fingers, the latter communicating with a branch from the median. The digital branches are distributed to the fingers in the same manner as the digital branches of the median.

The **Deep Palmar Branch** (*ramus profundus n. ulnaris*), accompanied by the deep branch of the ulnar artery, passes between the Abductor and Flexor brevis minimi digiti muscles; it then perforates the Opponens minimi digiti and follows the course of the deep palmar arch beneath the flexor tendons. At its origin it supplies the muscles of the little finger. As it crosses the deep part of the hand it sends two branches to each interosseous space, one for the Dorsal and one for the Palmar interosseous muscle, the branches to the Second and Third palmar interossei supplying filaments to the two inner Lumbrical muscles. At its termination between the thumb and index finger, it supplies the Adductores transversus et obliquus pollicis and the inner head of the Flexor brevis pollicis. It also sends articular filaments to the wrist-joint, and to the bones and joints of the hand.

It will be remembered that the inner part of the Flexor profundus digitorum muscle is supplied by the ulnar nerve; the two inner Lumbricales, which are connected with the tendons of this part of the muscle, are therefore supplied by the same nerve. The outer part of the Flexor profundus is supplied by the median nerve; the two outer Lumbricales, which are connected with the tendons of this part of the muscles, are therefore supplied by the same nerve. Brooks states that in twelve instances out of twenty-one he found that the third lumbrical received a twig from the median nerve, in addition to its branch from the ulnar. The palmar branches of the ulnar which go to the fingers are called by Toldt before division **common palmar digital branches**, and after division **collateral palmar digital branches**. The cutaneous areas supplied by the ulnar nerve are shown in Figs. 642 and 643.

The Musculo-spiral Nerve (*n. radialis*) (Figs. 639, 644, and 645).—The musculo-spiral nerve, the largest branch of the brachial plexus, supplies the muscles of the back part of the arm and forearm, and the integument of the same parts, as well as that of the back of the hand (Figs. 642 and 643). It *arises* from the posterior cord of the brachial plexus, of which it may be regarded as the continuation. It receives filaments from the sixth, seventh, and eighth, and sometimes also from the fifth cervical nerves. At its commencement it is placed behind the axillary artery and the upper part of the brachial artery, passing down in front of the tendons of the Latissimus dorsi and Teres major muscles. It winds around the humerus in the musculo-spiral

groove with the superior profunda artery, passing from the inner to the outer side of the bone, between the internal and external heads of the Triceps muscle (Fig. 645). It pierces the external intermuscular septum, and descends between the Brachialis anticus and Supinator longus muscles to the front of the external condyle of the humerus, where it sends filaments to the elbow-joint and divides into the radial and posterior interosseous nerves.

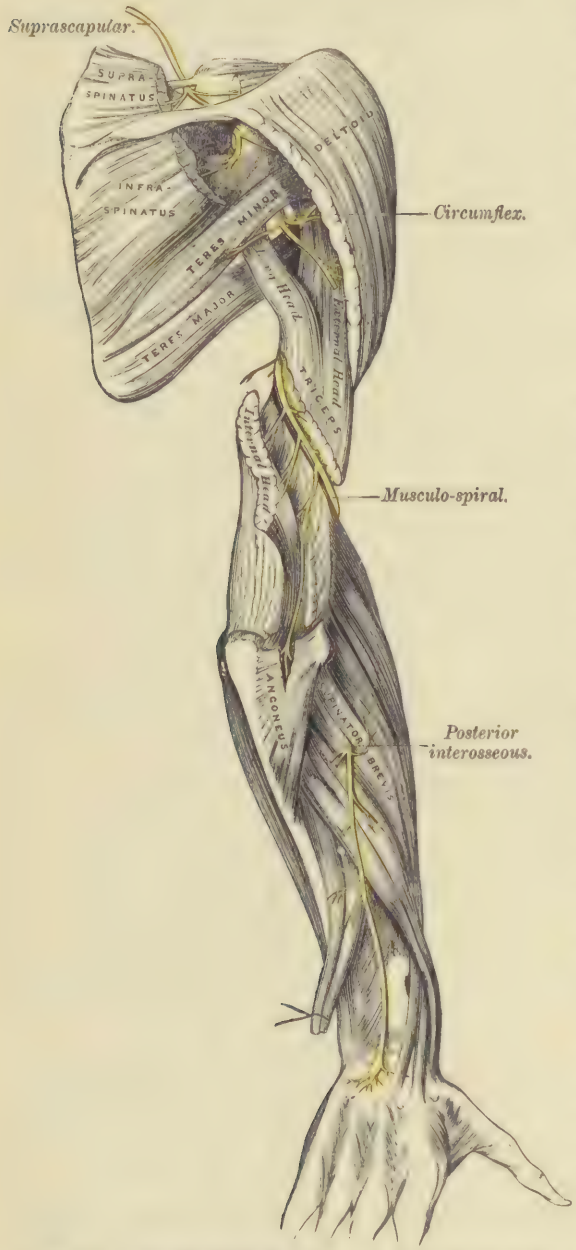


FIG. 645.—The suprascapular, circumflex, and musculo-spiral nerves.

Branches.—The branches of the musculo-spiral nerve are—

Muscular.
Cutaneous.
Radial.
Posterior interosseous.

The **Muscular Branches** (*rami musculares n. radialis*) are divided into **internal, posterior,** and **external**; they supply the Triceps, Anconeus, Supinator longus, Extensor carpi radialis longior, and Brachialis anticus muscles. These branches are derived from the nerve at the inner side, back part, and outer side of the arm.

The **internal muscular branches** supply the inner and middle heads of the Triceps muscle. That to the inner head of the Triceps is a long, slender filament which lies close to the ulnar nerve, as far as the lower third of the arm, and is therefore frequently spoken of as the **ulnar collateral** branch.

The **posterior muscular branch,** of large size, arises from the nerve in the groove between the Triceps muscle and the humerus. It divides into branches which supply the outer and inner heads of the Triceps and the Anconeus muscles. The branch for the latter muscle is a long, slender filament which descends in the substance of the Triceps to the Anconeus.

The **external muscular branches** supply the Supinator longus, Extensor carpi radialis longior, and (usually) the outer part of the Brachialis anticus muscles.

The **Cutaneous Branches** are three in number, one **internal** and two **external**.

The **internal cutaneous branch** (*n. cutaneus brachii posterior*) *arises* in the axillary space with the inner muscular branch. It is of small size, and passes through

the axilla to the inner side of the arm, supplying the integument on its posterior aspect nearly as far as the olecranon. In its course it crosses beneath the intercosto-humeral nerve, with which it communicates.

The **external cutaneous branch** (*n. cutaneus antibrachii dorsalis*) divides into two branches, and each one perforates the outer head of the Triceps muscle at its attachment to the humerus. The **upper** and smaller one passes to the front of the elbow, lying close to the cephalic vein, and supplies the integument of the lower half of the arm on its anterior aspect. The **lower branch** pierces the deep fascia below the insertion of the Deltoid muscle, and passes down along the outer side of the arm and elbow, and then along the back part of the radial side of the forearm to the wrist, supplying the integument in its course, and joining, near its termination, with the posterior cutaneous branch of the musculo-cutaneous nerve.

The **Radial Nerve** (*ramus superficialis n. radialis*) (Fig. 644), passes along the front of the radial side of the forearm to the commencement of its lower third. It lies at first a little to the outer side of the radial artery, concealed beneath the Supinator longus muscle. In the middle third of the forearm it lies beneath the same muscle, in close relation with the outer side of the artery. It leaves the artery about three inches above the wrist, passes beneath the tendon of the Supinator longus muscle, and, piercing the deep fascia at the outer border of the forearm, divides into two branches.

The **external branch**, the smaller of the two, supplies the integument of the radial side and ball of the thumb, joining with the anterior branch of the musculo-cutaneous nerve.

The **internal branch** communicates, above the wrist, with the posterior cutaneous branch from the musculo-cutaneous, and on the back of the hand forms an arch with the dorsal cutaneous branch of the ulnar nerve. It then divides into four **digital nerves** (*nn. digitales dorsales*), which are distributed as follows: The first supplies the ulnar side of the thumb; the second, the radial side of the index finger; the third, the adjoining sides of the index and middle fingers; and the fourth, the adjacent borders of the middle and ring fingers.[1] The latter nerve communicates with a filament from the dorsal branch of the ulnar nerve.

The Posterior Interosseous Nerve (*ramus profundus n. radialis*) (Figs. 644 and 645).—The posterior interosseous nerve winds to the back of the forearm around the outer side of the radius, passes between the two planes of fibres of the Supinator brevis muscle, and is prolonged downward between the superficial and deep layer of muscles, to the middle of the forearm. Considerably diminished in size, it descends on the interosseous membrane, beneath the Extensor longus pollicis muscle, to the back of the carpus, where it presents a gangliform enlargement from which filaments are distributed to the inferior radio-ulnar articulation, to the wrist-joint, and to the ligaments and articulations of the carpus. It supplies all the muscles of the radial and posterior brachial regions, excepting the Anconeus, Supinator longus, and Extensor carpi radialis longior.

Surgical Anatomy.—The brachial plexus may be ruptured by traction on the limb, leading to complete paralysis. Bristow[2] has reported three cases of avulsion of the plexus and has described twenty-four cases. In these cases it is generally believed that the lesion is rather a tearing away of the nerves from the spinal cord than a solution of continuity of the nerve-fibres themselves. In a case operated upon by Bristow it was found that the plexus had given way where the four cervical nerves and the first dorsal nerve unite to form three trunks. In supraclavicular division of the brachial plexus, not only will there be motor and sensory paralysis in the limb, but the Serratus magnus muscle will probably be paralyzed, because of injury to the posterior thoracic nerve. In the axilla any of the nerves forming the brachial plexus may be injured by a wound of this part, the median being the one which is most frequently damaged from its exposed

[1] According to Hutchinson, the digital nerve to the thumb reaches only as high as the root of the nail; the one to the forefinger as high as the middle of the second phalanx, and the one to the middle and ring fingers not higher than the first phalangeal joint (London Hospital Gazette, vol. iii. p. 319).—Ed. of 15th English edition.

[2] Annals of Surgery, September, 1902.

position. The musculo-spiral, on account of its sheltered and deep position, is least often wounded. The brachial plexus in the axilla is often damaged from the pressure of a crutch, producing the condition known as *crutch paralysis*. In these cases the musculo-spiral is the nerve most frequently implicated; the ulnar nerve being the one that appears to suffer next in frequency.

The *circumflex nerve* is of particular surgical interest. On account of its course around the surgical neck of the humerus, it is liable to be torn in fractures of this part of the bone, and in dislocations of the shoulder-foint, leading to paralysis of the deltoid, and, according to Erb, inflammation of the shoulder-joint is liable to be followed by a neuritis of this nerve from extension of the inflammation to it.

Mr. Hilton takes the circumflex nerve as an illustration of a law which he lays down, that "the same trunks of nerves whose branches supply the groups of muscles moving a joint furnish also a distribution of nerves to the skin over the insertions of the same muscles, and the interior of the joint receives its nerves from the same source." In this way he explains the fact that an inflamed joint becomes rigid, because the same nerves which supply the interior of the joint supply the muscles which move that joint.

The *median nerve* is liable to injury in wounds of the forearm. When paralyzed, there is loss of flexion of the second phalanges of all the fingers and of the terminal phalanges of the index and middle fingers. Flexion of the terminal phalanges of the ring and middle fingers can still be effected by that portion of the Flexor profundus digitorum which is supplied by the ulnar nerve. There is power to flex the proximal phalanges through the Interossei. The thumb cannot be flexed or opposed, and is maintained in a position of extension and adduction. All power of pronation is lost. The wrist can be flexed, if the hand is first adducted, by the action of the Flexor carpi ulnaris. There is loss or impairment of sensation on the palmar surface of the thumb, index, middle, and outer half of the ring fingers, and on the dorsal surface of the same fingers over the last two phalanges; except in the thumb, where the loss of sensation is limited to the back of the last phalanx. In order to expose the median nerve for the purpose of *stretching* it an incision should be made along the radial side of the tendon of the Palmaris longus muscle, which serves as a guide to the nerve.

The *ulnar nerve* is liable to be injured in wounds of the forearm. When paralyzed, there is loss of power of flexion in the ring and little fingers; there is impaired power of ulnar flexion and adduction of the hand; there is inability to spread out the fingers from paralysis of the Interossei; and there is inability to adduct the thumb. The fingers cannot be flexed at the first joints, and cannot be extended at the other joints. A *claw-hand* develops, the first phalanges being overextended and the others flexed. Sensation is lost or impaired in the skin of the ulnar side of the hand anteriorly and posteriorly, involving the little finger, the ring finger, and the ulnar half of the middle finger posteriorly, and anteriorly involving the little finger and the ulnar half of the ring finger. In order to expose the nerve in the lower part of the forearm, an incision should be made along the outer border of the tendon of the Flexor carpi ulnaris, and the nerve will be found lying on the ulnar side of the ulnar artery.

The *musculo-spiral nerve* is probably more frequently injured than any other nerve of the upper extremity. In consequence of its close relationship to the humerus as it lies in the musculo-spiral groove, it is frequently torn or injured in fractures of this bone, or subsequently involved in the callus that may be thrown out around a fracture, and thus pressed upon and its functions interfered with. It is also liable to be squeezed against the bone by kicks or blows and it may be divided by wounds of the arm. When paralyzed, the hand is flexed at the wrist and lies flaccid. This condition is known as *drop-wrist*. The fingers are also flexed, and on an attempt being made to extend them the last two phalanges only will be extended through the action of the Interossei, the first phalanges remaining flexed. There is no power of extending the wrist. Supination is completely lost when the forearm is extended on the arm, but is possible to a certain extent if the forearm is flexed so as to allow of the action of the Biceps. The power of extension of the forearm is lost on account of paralysis of the Triceps. Loss of sensation may be considerable or slight. Its area is shown in Fig. 643. The best position in which to expose the nerve for the purpose of stretching is to make an incision along the inner border of the Supinator longus muscle, just above the level of the elbow-joint. The skin and superficial structures are to be divided and the deep fascia exposed. The white line in this structure indicating the border of the muscle is to be defined, and the deep fascia divided in this line. By now raising the Supinator longus the nerve will be found lying beneath it, on the Brachialis anticus muscle.

Post-anæsthetic paralysis. When a person emerges from the influence of a general anæsthetic palsy of the arm may be found to exist. The brachial plexus may have been compressed during the operation by drawing the arm strongly from the body or elevating it by the side of the head. In such a case the plexus was compressed by the head of the humerus (Braun).

The median nerve is stretched when the arm is rotated externally and drawn backward and outward. The ulnar nerve is stretched when the forearm is flexed and supinated (Braun). Garrigues believes that in most cases of post-anæsthetic paralysis the brachial plexus was squeezed between the collar bone and the first rib by the head of the patient being drawn to the opposite side or being allowed to fall back.

THE THORACIC OR DORSAL NERVES (NN. THORACALES.)

The thoracic or dorsal nerves are twelve in number on each side. The first appears between the first and second dorsal vertebrae, and the last between the last dorsal and first lumbar.

The Roots of the Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves.

The roots of the thoracic or dorsal nerves are of small size, and vary but slightly from the second to the last. Both roots are very slender, the posterior roots slightly exceeding the anterior in thickness. They gradually increase in length from above downward, and in the lower part of the dorsal region pass down in contact with the spinal cord for a distance equal to the height of at least two vertebrae, before they emerge from the spinal canal. They then join in the intervertebral foramen, and at their exit divide into two primary divisions, a posterior (dorsal) and an anterior (intercostal).

The Posterior Divisions of the Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves (Rami Posteriores) (Fig. 646).

The posterior divisions of the thoracic or dorsal nerves are smaller than the anterior, pass backward between the transverse processes, and divide into **internal** and **external branches.**

Each internal branch is called a **ramus medialis**; each external branch is called a **ramus lateralis.**

The Internal Branches.—The internal branches of the six upper nerves pass inward between the Semispinalis dorsi and Multifidus spinae muscles, which they supply, and then, piercing the origins of the Rhomboidei and Trapezius muscles, become cutaneous by the side of the spinous processes and ramify in the integument. The internal branches of the six lower nerves are distributed to the Multifidus spinae, without giving off any cutaneous filaments.

The External Branches.—The external branches increase in size from above downward. They pass through the Longissimus dorsi muscle to the cellular interval between it and the Iliocostalis muscle, and supply those muscles, as well as their continuations upward to the head, and also the Levatores costarum muscles; the five or six lower nerves also give off cutaneous filaments, which pierce the Serratus posticus inferior and Latissimus dorsi muscles in a line with the angles of the ribs, and then ramify in the integument.

The Cutaneous Branches.—The cutaneous branches of the posterior primary divisions of the dorsal nerves are twelve in number. From each *ramus medialis* of the upper six nerves comes a *ramus cutaneus medialis*, and from each *ramus lateralis* of the lower six nerves comes a *ramus cutaneus lateralis*. The six upper cutaneous nerves are derived from the internal branches of the posterior divisions of the dorsal nerves. They pierce the origins of the Rhomboidei and Trapezius muscles, and become cutaneous by the side of the spinous processes, and then ramify in the integument. They are frequently furnished with gangliform enlargements. The six lower cutaneous nerves are derived from the external branches of the posterior divisions of the dorsal nerves. They pierce the Serratus posticus inferior and Latissimus dorsi muscles in a line with the angles of the ribs, and then ramify in the integument.

The Anterior Divisions of the Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves or the Intercostal Nerves (Rami Anteriores).

The anterior divisions of the dorsal nerves or the **intercostal** nerves (*nn. intercostales*) are twelve in number on each side. They are, for the most part,

distributed to the parietes of the thorax and abdomen, separately from each other, without being joined in a plexus; in which respect they differ from the

FIG. 646.—Superficial and deep distribution of the posterior divisions of the spinal nerves. (After Hirschfeld and Leveillé.) On the left side the cutaneous branches are represented lying on the superficial layer of muscles. On the right side the superficial muscles have been removed, the Splenius capitis and Complexus divided in the neck, and the Erector spinae divided and partly removed in the back, so as to expose the posterior divisions of the spinal nerves near their origin. *a a*. Lesser occipital nerve from the cervical plexus. 1. External muscular branches of the first cervical nerve, and union by a loop with the second. 2, placed on the Rectus capitis posticus major muscle, marks the great occipital nerve, passing round the short muscles and piercing the Complexus : the external branch is seen to the outside. 3. External branch from the posterior division of the third nerve. 3′. Its internal branch, sometimes called the third occipital. 4′ to 8′. The internal branches of the several corresponding nerves on the left side. The external branches of these nerves, proceeding to muscles, are displayed on the right side, *d* 1 to *d* 6, and thence to *d* 12. External muscular branches of the posterior divisions of the twelve dorsal nerves on the right side, *d* 1′ to *d* 6′. The internal cutaneous branches of the six upper dorsal nerves on the left side, *d* 7′ to *d* 12′. Cutaneous twigs from the external branches of the six lower dorsal nerves. *l l*. External branches from the posterior divisions of several lumbar nerves on the right side, piercing the muscles, the lower descending over the gluteal region *l′ l′*. The same, more superficially, on the left side. *s s*. The issue and union by loops of the posterior divisions of four sacral nerves on the right side *s′ s′*. Some of those distributed to the skin on the left side.

other spinal nerves. Each nerve is connected with the adjoining **ganglion of the sympathetic** by one or two filaments (*ramus communicans*). The intercostal nerves may be divided into two sets, from the difference they present in their distribution. The six upper, with the exception of the first and the intercosto-humeral branch of the second, are limited in their distribution to the parietes of the chest. The six lower supply the parietes of the chest and abdomen, the last one sending a cutaneous filament to the buttock.

The Anterior Division of the First Thoracic or First Dorsal Nerve.—The anterior division of the first dorsal nerve divides into two branches: one, the larger, leaves the thorax in front of the neck of the first rib, and enters into the formation of the **brachial plexus**; the other and smaller branch runs along the first intercostal space, forming the **first intercostal nerve** (*n. intercostalis I*), giving off muscular branches, and terminates on the front of the chest by forming the **first anterior cutaneous nerve** (*ramus cutaneus anterior n. intercostalis I*) of the thorax. Occasionally this anterior cutaneous branch is wanting. The first intercostal nerve, as a rule, gives off no lateral cutaneous branch, but sometimes a small branch is given off which communicates with the intercosto-humeral. It frequently receives a connecting twig from the second dorsal nerve, which passes upward over the neck of the second rib.

The Anterior Divisions of the Upper Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves (*nn. intercostales*) (Fig. 646).—The anterior divisions of the second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth dorsal nerves and the small branch from the first dorsal are confined to the parietes of the thorax, and are named **upper** or **pectoral intercostal nerves.** They pass forward in the intercostal spaces with the intercostal vessels, being situated below them. At the back of the chest they lie between the pleura and the External intercostal muscle, but are soon placed between the two planes of Intercostal muscles as far as the middle of the rib. They then enter the substance of the Internal intercostal muscles, and, running amidst their fibres as far as the costal cartilages, they gain the inner surface of the muscles and lie between them and the pleura. Near the sternum, they cross in front of the internal mammary artery and Triangularis sterni muscle, pierce the Internal intercostal muscles, the anterior intercostal membrane, and Pectoralis major muscle, and supply the integument of the front of the chest and over the mammary gland, forming the anterior cutaneous nerves of the thorax; the branch from the second nerve is joined with the supraclavicular nerves of the cervical plexus.

Branches.—Numerous slender **muscular filaments** (*rami musculares*) supply the Intercostals, the Infracostales, the Levatores costarum, Serratus posticus superior, and Triangularis sterni muscles. Some of these branches, at the front of the chest, cross the costal cartilages from one to another intercostal space.

Lateral Cutaneous Nerves of the Thorax (*rami cutanei laterales* [*pectorales*]) (Fig. 638).—These are derived from the intercostal nerves, midway between the vertebrae and sternum; they pierce the External intercostal and Serratus magnus muscles, and divide into two branches, **anterior** and **posterior.**

The **Anterior Branches** (*rami anteriores*) are reflected forward to the side and the forepart of the chest, supplying the integument of the chest and mamma; those of the fifth and sixth nerves supply the upper digitations of the External oblique muscle.

The **Posterior Branches** (*rami posteriores*) are reflected backward to supply the integument over the scapula and over the Latissimus dorsi muscle.

The **Lateral Cutaneous Branch of the Second Intercostal Nerve** (*n. intercosto-brachialis*) is of large size, and does not divide, like the other nerves, into an anterior and posterior branch. It may unite with a branch of the third intercostal. The single nerve or the united nerve is named, from its origin and distribution, the **intercosto-humeral nerve** (Figs. 638 and 644). It pierces the External intercostal

muscle, crosses the axilla to the inner side of the arm, and joins with a filament from the nerve of Wrisberg. It then pierces the fascia, and supplies the skin of the upper half of the inner and back part of the arm (Figs. 642 and 643), communicating with the internal cutaneous branch of the musculo-spiral nerve. The size of this nerve is in inverse proportion to the size of the other cutaneous nerves, especially the nerve of Wrisberg. A **second intercosto-humeral nerve** is frequently given off from the third intercostal. It supplies filaments to the armpit and inner side of the arm. It may or may not send a branch to the intercosto-humeral.

The Anterior Divisions of the Lower Thoracic or Dorsal Nerves.—The anterior divisions of the seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, and eleventh dorsal nerves are continued anteriorly from the intercostal spaces into the abdominal wall, and the twelfth dorsal is continued throughout its whole course in the abdominal wall, since it is placed below the last rib; hence these nerves are named **lower** or **abdominal intercostal nerves**. They have (with the exception of the last) the same arrangement as the upper ones as far as the anterior extremities of the intercostal spaces, where they pass behind the costal cartilages, and between the Internal oblique and Transversalis muscles, to the sheath of the Rectus, which they perforate. They supply the Rectus muscle, and terminate in branches which become subcutaneous near the linea alba. These branches are named the **anterior cutaneous nerves** of the **abdomen**. They are directed outward as far as the lateral cutaneous nerves, supplying the integument of the front of the belly. The lower intercostal nerves supply the Intercostals, Serratus posticus inferior, and Abdominal muscles, and, about the middle of their course, give off **lateral cutaneous branches** which pierce the External intercostal and External oblique muscles, in the same line as the lateral cutaneous nerves of the thorax, and divide into **anterior** and **posterior branches**, which are distributed to the integument of the abdomen and back; the anterior branches supply the digitations of the External oblique muscle and extend downward and forward nearly as far as the margin of the Rectus muscle; the posterior branches pass backward to supply the skin over the Latissimus dorsi muscle.

The Last Thoracic or Dorsal Nerve.—The last dorsal is larger than the other dorsal nerves. Its anterior division runs along the lower border of the last rib, and passes under the external arcuate ligament of the Diaphragm. It then runs in front of the Quadratus lumborum muscle, perforates the Transversalis muscle, and passes forward between it and the Internal oblique muscle, to be distributed in the same manner as the lower intercostal nerves. It communicates with the ilio-hypogastric branch of the lumbar plexus, and is frequently connected with the first lumbar nerve by a slender branch, the **dorsi-lumbar nerve**, which descends in the substance of the Quadratus lumborum muscle. It gives a branch to the Pyramidalis muscle.

The Cutaneous Branches.—There are two cutaneous branches, an **anterior** and a **lateral**.

The **Anterior Cutaneous Branch** is a terminal branch and is a direct prolongation from the intercostal. It supplies an area of skin of the abdominal wall between the umbilicus and pubis.

The **Lateral Cutaneous Branch** (*ramus cutaneus lateralis* [*abdominalis*] *intercostalis XII*) is remarkable for its large size; it perforates the Internal and External oblique muscles, passes downward over the crest of the ilium in front of the iliac branch of the ilio-hypogastric, and is distributed to the integument of the front part of the gluteal region, some of its filaments extending as low down as the trochanter major. It does not divide into an anterior and a posterior branch, like the other lateral cutaneous branches of the intercostal nerves.

Surgical Anatomy.—The lower seven intercostal nerves and the ilio-hypogastric from the first lumbar nerve supply the skin of the abdominal wall. They run downward and inward

fairly equidistant from each other. The sixth and seventh supply the skin over the "pit of the stomach;" the eighth corresponds to about the position of the middle linea transversa; the tenth to the umbilicus; and the ilio-hypogastric supplies the skin over the pubes and external abdominal ring. There are several points of surgical significance about the distribution of these nerves, and it is important to remember their origin and course, for in many diseases affecting the nerve-trunks at or near their origin the pain is referred to their peripheral terminations. Thus in *Pott's disease of the spine* children will often be brought to the surgeon suffering from pain in the belly. This is due to the fact that the nerves are irritated at the seat of disease as they issue from the spinal canal. When the irritation is confined to a single pair of nerves, the sensation complained of is often a feeling of constriction, as if a cord were tied around the abdomen; and in these cases the situation of the sense of constriction may serve to localize the disease in the spinal column. In other cases, where the bone disease is more extensive and two or more nerves are involved, a more diffused pain in the abdomen is complained of. A similar conditon is sometimes present in affections of the cord itself, as in *tabes dorsalis*.

Again, it must be borne in mind that the same nerves which supply the skin of the abdomen supply also the muscles which constitute the greater part of the abdominal wall. Hence, it follows that any irritation applied to the peripheral terminations of the cutaneous branches in the skin of the abdomen is immediately followed by reflex contraction of the abdominal muscles. A good practical illustration of this may sometimes be seen in watching two surgeons examine the abdomen of the same patient. One, whose hand is cold, causes the muscles of the abdominal wall to at once contract and the belly to become rigid, and thus not nearly so suitable for examination; the other, who has taken the precaution to warm his hand, examines the abdomen without exciting any reflex contraction. The supply of both muscles and skin from the same source is of importance in protecting the abdominal viscera from injury. A blow on the abdomen, even of a severe character, will do no injury to the viscera if the muscles are in a condition of firm contraction; whereas in cases where the muscles have been taken unawares, and the blow has been struck while they were in a state of rest, an injury insufficient to produce any lesion of the abdominal wall has been attended with rupture of some of the abdominal contents. The importance, therefore, of immediate reflex contraction upon the receipt of an injury cannot be overestimated, and the intimate association of the cutaneous and muscular fibres in the same nerve produces a much more immediate response on the part of the muscles to any peripheral stimulation of the cutaneous filaments than would be the case if the two sets of fibres were derived from independent sources.

Again, the nerves supplying the abdominal muscles and skin are derived from the lower intercostal nerves and are intimately connected with the sympathetic supplying the abdominal viscera through the lower thoracic ganglia from which the splanchnic nerves are derived. In consequence of this, in rupture of the abdominal viscera and in acute peritonitis the muscles of the belly-wall become firmly contracted, and thus as far as possible preserve the abdominal contents in a condition of rest.

THE LUMBAR NERVES (NN. LUMBALES).

The lumbar nerves are five in number on each side. The first lumbar nerve appears between the first and second lumbar vertebrae, and the last between the last lumbar vertebra and the base of the sacrum.

The Roots of the Lumbar Nerves.

The roots of the lumbar nerves are the largest, and their filaments the most numerous, of all the spinal nerves, and they are closely aggregated together upon the lower end of the cord. The anterior roots are the smaller, but there is not the same disproportion between them and the posterior roots as in the cervical nerves. The roots of these nerves have a vertical direction, and are of considerable length, more especially the lower ones, since the spinal cord does not extend beyond the first lumbar vertebra. The roots become joined in the intervertebral foramina, and the nerves so formed divide at their exit into two divisions, posterior and anterior.

The Posterior Divisions of the Lumbar Nerves (Rami Posteriores) (Fig. 646).

The posterior divisions of the lumbar nerves diminish in size from above downward; they pass backward between the transverse processes, and divide into **internal** and **external branches.**

The Internal Branches (*rami mediales*).—The internal branches, the smaller, pass inward close to the articular processes of the vertebrae, and supply the Multifidus spinae and Interspinales muscles.

The External Branches (*rami laterales*).—The external branches supply the Erector spinae and Intertransverse muscles. From the three upper branches cutaneous nerves are derived which pierce the aponeurosis of the Latissimus dorsi muscle and descend over the back part of the crest of the ilium, to be distributed to the integument of the gluteal region, some of the filaments passing as far as the trochanter major (Fig. 652).

The posterior division of the fifth lumbar nerve usually sends a branch which forms a loop with the posterior division of the first sacral nerve.

The Anterior Divisions of the Lumbar Nerves (Rami Anteriores).

The anterior divisions of the lumbar nerves increase in size from above downward. At their origin they communicate with the **lumbar ganglia** of the sympathetic by long, slender filaments, which accompany the lumbar arteries around the sides of the bodies of the vertebrae, beneath the Psoas muscle. The nerves pass obliquely outward behind the Psoas magnus or between its fasciculi, distributing filaments to it and the Quadratus lumborum. The anterior divisions of the five lumbar, five sacral, and first coccygeal nerve constitute the **lumbo-sacral plexus** (*plexus lumbosacralis*). This is subdivided into the **lumbar plexus**, the **sacral plexus**, and the **pudendal plexus**. The anterior divisions of the four upper nerves are connected together in this situation by anastomotic loops, and form the **lumbar plexus**. The anterior division of the fifth lumbar, joined with a branch from the fourth, descends across the base of the sacrum to join the anterior division of the first sacral nerve and assist in the formation of the sacral plexus. The cord resulting from the union of the fifth lumbar and the branch from the fourth is called the **lumbo-sacral cord** (*truncus lumbosacralis*) (Figs. 648 and 655).

The Lumbar Plexus (Plexus Lumbalis) (Figs. 647, 648).

The lumbar plexus is formed by the loops of communication between the anterior divisions of the four upper lumbar nerves. The plexus is narrow above, and often connected with the last dorsal nerve by a slender branch, the **dorsi-lumbar nerve**. The plexus is broad below, where it is joined to the sacral plexus by the lumbo-sacral cord. The lumbar plexus is situated in the substance of the Psoas muscle near its posterior part, in front of the transverse processes of the lumbar vertebrae.

The mode in which the plexus is arranged varies in different subjects. It differs from the brachial plexus in not forming an intricate interlacement, but the several nerves of distribution arise from one or more of the spinal nerves in the following manner: The first lumbar nerve receives a branch from the last dorsal, and gives off a larger branch, which subdivides into the **ilio-hypogastric** and **ilio-inguinal nerves**; the first lumbar also gives off a **communicating branch** which passes down to the second lumbar nerve, and a third branch which unites with a branch of the second lumbar, to form the **genito-crural nerve**. The second, third, and fourth lumbar nerves divide into **anterior** and **posterior divisions**. The anterior division of the second divides into two branches, one of which joins with the above-mentioned branch of the first nerve to form the genito-crural; the other unites with the anterior division of the third nerve, and a part of the anterior division of the fourth nerve to form the **obturator nerve**. The remainder of the anterior division of the fourth nerve passes down to communicate with the fifth lumbar nerve. The posterior divisions of the second and third nerves divide into two

branches, a smaller branch from each uniting to form the **external cutaneous nerve,** and a larger branch from each, which join with the whole of the posterior division of the fourth lumbar nerve to form the **anterior crural.** The **accessory obturator,** when it exists, is formed by the union of two small branches given off from the third and fourth nerves.

From this arrangement it follows that the ilio-hypogastric and ilio-inguinal are derived entirely from the first lumbar nerve; the genito-crural from the first and second nerves; the external cutaneous from the second and third; the anterior crural and obturator by fibres derived from the second, third, and fourth; and the accessory obturator, when it exists, from the third and fourth.

Branches (Figs. 647 and 648).—The branches of the lumbar plexus are—the

Ilio-hypogastric.	Obturator.
Ilio-inguinal.	Accessory obturator.
Genito-crural.	Anterior crural.
External cutaneous.	

The Ilio-hypogastric Nerve (*n. iliohypogastricus*) (Figs. 647 and 648).—The ilio-hypogastric nerve *arises* from the first lumbar nerve. It emerges from the outer border of the Psoas muscle at its upper part, and crosses obliquely in front of the Quadratus lumborum to the crest of the ilium. It then perforates the Transversalis muscle at its posterior part near the crest of the ilium. It gives off **muscular branches** (*rami musculares*) to the abdominal wall, and divides between the transversalis and the Internal oblique into two cutaneous branches, **iliac** and **hypogastric.**

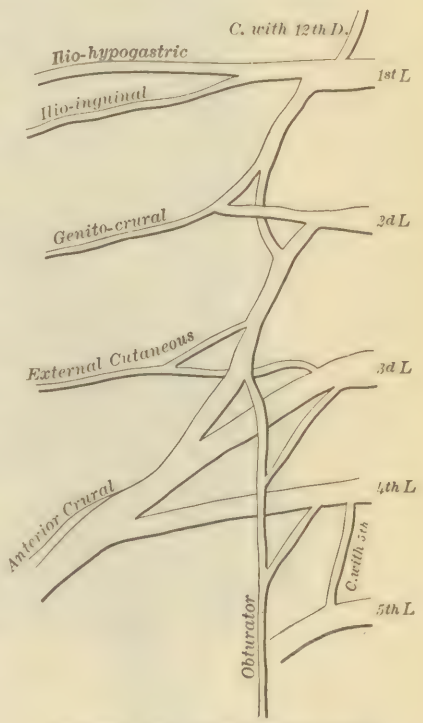


FIG. 647.—Plan of the lumbar plexus.

The **Iliac Branch** (*ramus cutaneus lateralis*) pierces the Internal and External oblique muscles immediately above the crest of the ilium, and is distributed to the integument of the gluteal region, behind the lateral cutaneous branch of the last dorsal nerve (Figs. 652 and 656). The size of this nerve bears an inverse proportion to that of the cutaneous branch of the last dorsal nerve.

The **Hypogastric Branch** (*ramus cutaneus anterior*) (Fig. 649) continues onward between the Internal oblique and Transversalis muscles. It then pierces the Internal oblique, and becomes cutaneous by perforating the aponeurosis of the External oblique, about an inch above and a little to the outer side of the external abdominal ring, and is distributed to the integument of the hypogastric region. The ilio-hypogastric nerve communicates with the last dorsal and ilio-inguinal nerves.

The Ilio-inguinal Nerve (*n. ilioinguinalis*) (Figs. 647, 648, and 649).—The ilio-inguinal nerve, smaller than the preceding, *arises* with it from the first lumbar nerve. It emerges from the outer border of the Psoas muscle just below the ilio-hypogastric nerve, and, passing obliquely across the Quadratus lumborum and Iliacus muscles, perforates the Transversalis near the forepart of the crest of the ilium, and communicates with the ilio-hypogastric nerve between that muscle and the Internal oblique. The nerve then pierces the Internal oblique, distribu-

ting **muscular branches** (*rami musculares*) to it, and, accompanying the spermatic cord through the external abdominal ring, is distributed to the integument of the upper and inner part of the thigh, and to the scrotum in the male (*nn. scrotales anteriores*) (Fig. 651), and to the labium majus in the female (*nn. labiales anteriores*). The size of this nerve is in inverse proportion to that of the ilio-hypogastric. Occasionally it is very small, and ends by joining the ilio-hypogastric; in such cases a branch from the ilio-hypogastric takes the place of the ilio-inguinal, or the ilio-inguinal nerve may be altogether absent.

The **Genito-crural Nerve** (*n. genitofemoralis*) (Figs. 647 and 648) *arises* from the first and second lumbar nerves. It passes obliquely through the substance

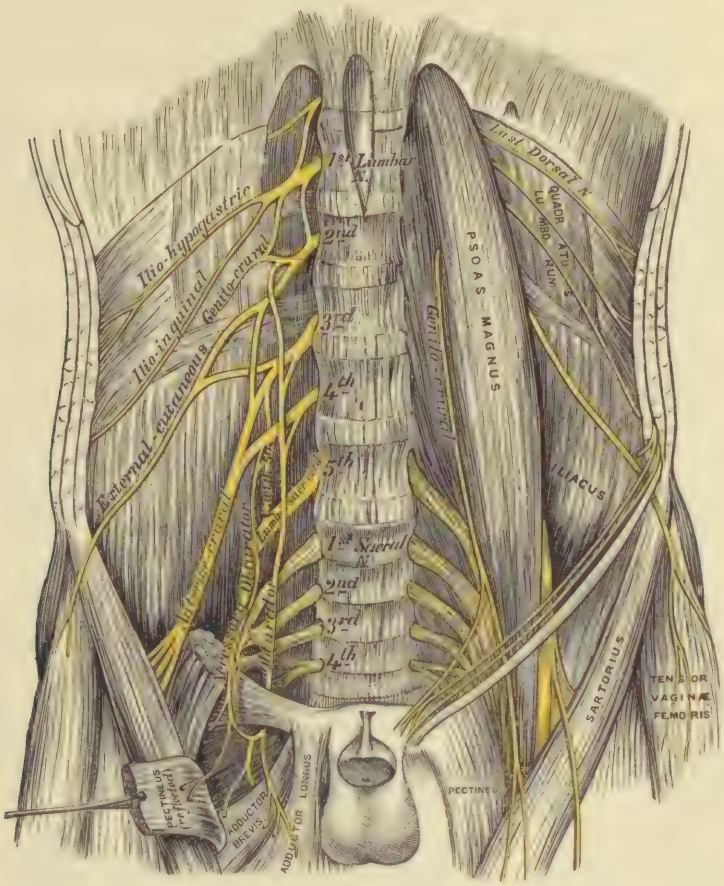


Fig. 648.—The lumbar plexus and its branches.

of the Psoas muscle, and emerges from its inner border at a level corresponding to the intervertebral substance between the third and fourth lumbar vertebrae; it then descends on the surface of the Psoas muscle, under cover of the peritoneum, and divides into a **genital** and a **crural branch.**

The **Genital Branch** (*n. spermaticus externus*) passes outward on the Psoas magnus, and pierces the fascia transversalis, or passes through the internal abdominal ring; in the male it then descends along the back part of the spermatic cord to the scrotum, and supplies the Cremaster muscle. In the female it accompanies the round ligament, and is lost upon it.

The **Crural Branch** (*n. lumboinguinalis*) (Fig. 649) descends on the external iliac artery, sending a few filaments around it, and, passing beneath Poupart's ligament

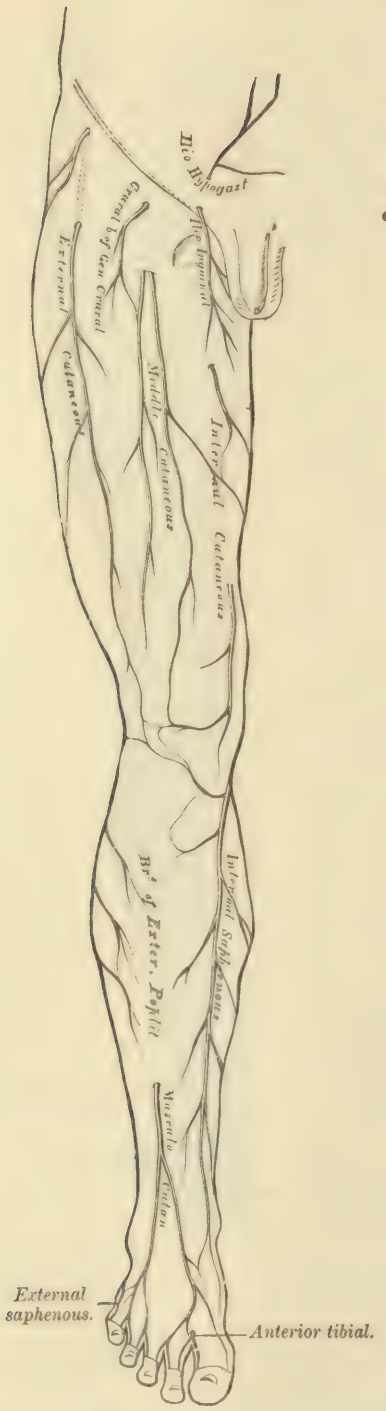


Fig. 649.—Cutaneous nerves of lower extremity. Front view.

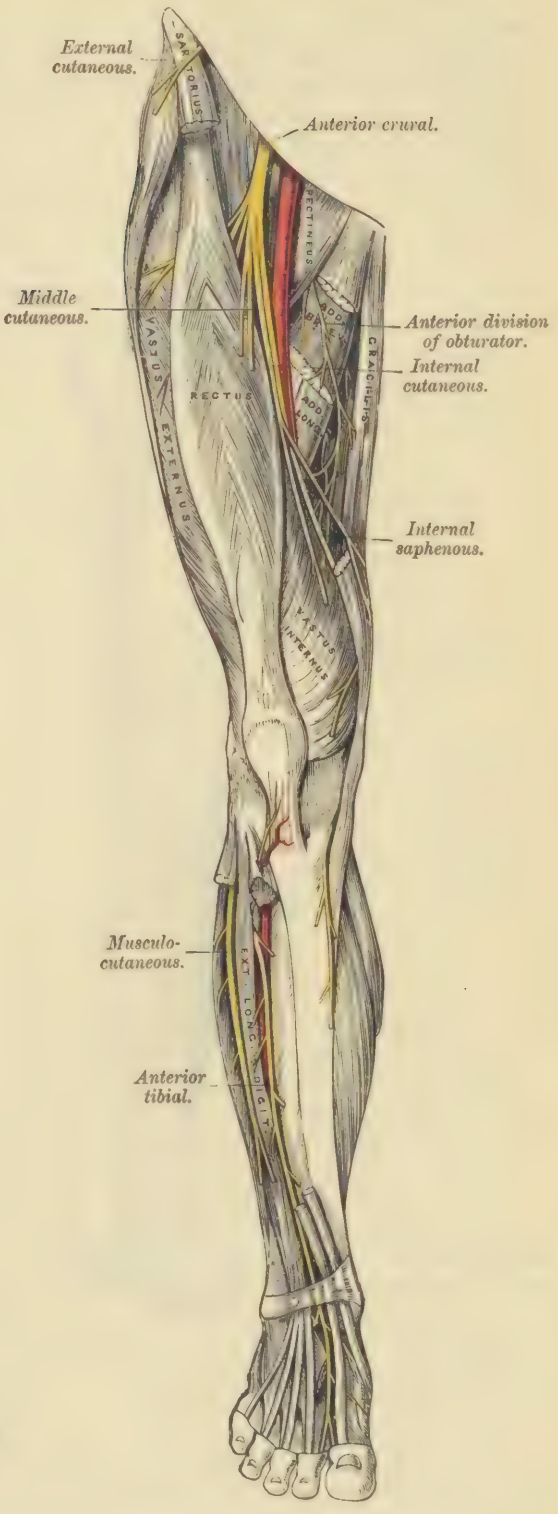


Fig. 650.—Nerves of the lower extremity. Front view.

to the thigh, enters the sheath of the femoral vessels, lying superficial and a little external to the femoral artery. It pierces the anterior layer of the sheath of the vessels, and, becoming superficial by passing through the fascia lata, it supplies the skin of the anterior aspect of the thigh as far as midway between the pelvis and

Fig. 651.—Areas of distribution of the cutaneous nerves of the front of the lower limb. (W. Keiller, after Testut, in Gerrish's Text-book of Anatomy.)

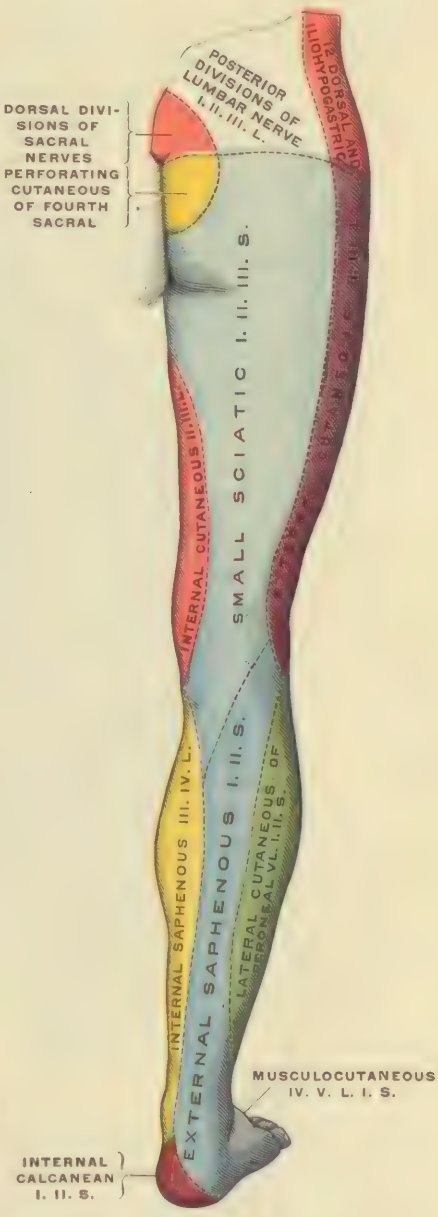


Fig. 652.—Areas of distribution of the cutaneous nerves of the back of the lower limb. (W. Keiller, after Testut, in Gerrish's Text-book of Anatomy.)

knee (Fig. 651). On the front of the thigh it communicates with the outer branch of the middle cutaneous nerve, derived from the anterior crural.

A few filaments from this nerve may be traced on to the femoral artery; they are derived from the nerve as it passes beneath Poupart's ligament.

The External Cutaneous Nerve (*n. cutaneus femoris lateralis*) (Figs. 647, 648, 649, and 650).—The external cutaneous nerve *arises* from the second and third lumbar nerves. It emerges from the outer border of the Psoas muscle about its middle, and crosses the Iliacus muscle obliquely, toward the anterior superior spine of the ilium. It then passes under Poupart's ligament and over the Sartorius muscle into the thigh, where it divides into two branches, **anterior** and **posterior.**

The **Anterior Branch** descends in an aponeurotic canal formed in the fascia lata, becomes superficial about four inches below Poupart's ligament, and divides into branches which are distributed to the integument along the anterior and outer part of the thigh, as far down as the knee (Fig. 651). This nerve occasionally communicates with a branch of the long saphenous nerve in front of the knee-joint.

The **Posterior Branch** pierces the fascia lata, and subdivides into branches which pass backward across the outer and posterior surface of the thigh, supplying the integument from the crest of the ilium as far as the middle of the thigh (Fig. 652).

The Obturator Nerve (*n. obturatorius*) (Figs. 647, 648, and 650).—The obturator nerve supplies the Obturator externus and Adductor muscles of the thigh, the articulations of the hip and knee, and occasionally the integument of the thigh and leg. It arises by three branches—from the second, the third, and the fourth lumbar nerves. Of these, the branch from the third is the largest, while that from the second is often very small. It descends through the inner fibres of the Psoas muscle, and emerges from its inner border near the brim of the pelvis; it then runs along the lateral wall of the pelvis, above the obturator vessels, to the upper part of the obturator foramen, where it enters the thigh, and divides into an anterior and a posterior branch, separated by some of the fibres of the Obturator externus muscle, and lower down by the Adductor brevis muscle.

The **Anterior Branch** (*ramus anterior*) (Fig. 650) passes down in front of the Adductor brevis, being covered by the Pectineus and Adductor longus, and at the lower border of the latter muscle communicates with the internal cutaneous and internal saphenous nerves, forming a kind of plexus. It then descends upon the femoral artery, upon which it is finally distributed. The nerve, near the obturator foramen, gives off an articular branch to the hip-joint. Behind the Pectineus it distributes muscular branches to the Adductor longus and Gracilis, and usually to the Adductor brevis, and in rare cases to the Pectineus, and receives a communicating branch from the accessory obturator nerve.

Occasionally the communicating branch to the internal cutaneous and internal saphenous nerves is continued down, as a **cutaneous branch** (*ramus cutaneus*), to the thigh and leg. When this is so, this *occasional cutaneous* branch emerges from beneath the lower border of the Adductor longus, descends along the posterior margin of the Sartorius to the inner side of the knee, where it pierces the deep fascia, communicates with the long saphenous nerve, and is distributed to the integument of the inner side of the leg as low down as its middle. When this communicating branch is small its place is supplied by the internal cutaneous nerve.

The **Posterior Branch** (*ramus posterior*) pierces the Obturator externus, sending branches to supply it, and passes behind the Adductor brevis on the front of the Adductor magnus, where it divides into numerous muscular branches, which supply the Adductor magnus, and the Adductor brevis when the latter does not receive a branch from the anterior division of the nerve. One of the branches gives off a filament to the knee-joint.

The **Articular Branch for the Knee-joint** is sometimes absent; it perforates the lower part of the Adductor magnus, and enters the popliteal space; it then descends upon the popliteal artery, as far as the back part of the knee-joint, where it perforates the posterior ligament, and is distributed to the synovial membrane. It gives filaments to the popliteal artery in its course.

The Accessory Obturator Nerve or the Accessory Anterior Crural Nerve of Winslow (*n. obturatorius accessorius* (Fig. 648).—The accessory obturator nerve is not constantly present. It is of small size, and arises by separate filaments from the third and fourth lumbar nerves. It descends along the inner border of the Psoas muscle, crosses the ascending ramus of the os pubis, and passes under the outer border of the Pectineus muscle, where it divides into numerous branches. One of these supplies the Pectineus, penetrating its under surface; another is distributed to the hip-joint; while a third communicates with the anterior branch of the obturator nerve. When this nerve is absent the hip-joint receives two branches from the obturator nerve. Occasionally the articular branch is very small, and becomes lost in the capsule of the hip-joint.

The Anterior Crural Nerve (*n. femoralis*) (Figs. 647, 648, and 650).—The anterior crural nerve is the largest branch of the lumbar plexus. It supplies muscular branches to the Iliacus, Pectineus, and all the muscles on the front of the thigh, excepting the Tensor fasciae femoris; cutaneous filaments to the front and inner side of the thigh, and to the leg and foot (Figs. 651 and 652); and articular branches to the hip and knee. It arises from the second, third, and fourth lumbar nerves. It descends through the fibres of the Psoas muscle, emerging from muscle at the lower part of its outer border, and passes down between it and the Iliacus muscle, and beneath Poupart's ligament, into the thigh, where it becomes somewhat flattened, and divides into an anterior and a posterior part. Under Poupart's ligament it is separated from the femoral artery by a portion of the Psoas muscle, and lies beneath the iliac fascia.

Within the abdomen the anterior crural nerve gives off from its outer side some small **muscular branches** to the Iliacus, and a branch to the femoral artery which is distributed upon the upper part of that vessel. The origin of this branch varies; it occasionally arises higher than usual, or it may arise lower down in the thigh.

External to the pelvis the following branches are given off:

From the Anterior Division.	*From the Posterior Division.*
Middle cutaneous.	Long saphenous.
Internal cutaneous.	Muscular.
Muscular.	Articular.

The middle and internal cutaneous branches of the anterior crural nerve are the **rami cutanei anteriores n. femoralis** of the new nomenclature.

The **Middle Cutaneous Nerve** (Figs. 649 and 650) pierces the fascia lata (generally the Sartorius muscle also) about three inches below Poupart's ligament, and divides into two branches (Fig. 649), which descend in immediate proximity along the forepart of the thigh, to supply the integument as low as the front of the knee (Fig. 651), where it communicates with the internal cutaneous nerve and the patellar branch of the internal saphenous nerve, to form the **patellar plexus.** In the upper part of the thigh the outer division of the middle cutaneous nerve communicates with the crural branch of the genito-crural nerve.

The **Internal Cutaneous Nerve** (Fig. 649) passes obliquely across the upper part of the sheath of the femoral artery, and divides in front or at the inner side of that vessel into two branches, **anterior** and **posterior** or **internal.**

The **anterior branch** runs downward on the Sartorius, perforates the fascia lata at the lower third of the thigh, and divides into two branches, one of which supplies the integument as low down as the inner side of the knee; the other crosses to the outer side of the patella, communicating in its course with the nervus cutaneus patellae, a branch of the internal saphenous nerve.

The **posterior** or **internal branch** descends along the inner border of the Sartorius muscle to the knee, where it pierces the fascia lata, communicates with the long saphenous nerve, and gives off several cutaneous branches. The nerve then

passes down the inner side of the leg, to the integument of which it is distributed. This nerve, beneath the fascia lata, at the lower border of the Adductor longus, joins in a plexiform network by uniting with branches of the long saphenous and obturator nerves (Fig. 650). When the communicating branch from the obturator nerve is large and continued to the integument of the leg, the inner branch of the internal cutaneous is small and terminates at the plexus, occasionally giving off a few cutaneous filaments.

The internal cutaneous nerve, before dividing, gives off a few filaments, which pierce the fascia lata, to supply the integument of the inner side of the thigh (Figs. 651 and 652). One of these filaments passes through the saphenous opening; a second becomes subcutaneous about the middle of the thigh (Fig. 649); and a third pierces the fascia at its lower third (Fig. 649).

The Muscular Branches of the Anterior Division (*rami musculares*).—The **nerve to the Pectineus** is often duplicated; it arises from the anterior crural immediately below Poupart's ligament, and passes inward behind the femoral sheath to enter the anterior surface of the muscle. The **nerve to the Sartorius** arises in common with the middle cutaneous.

The **Long** or **Internal Saphenous Nerve** (*n. saphenus*) (Figs. 649 and 650) is the largest of the cutaneous branches of the anterior crural. It approaches the femoral artery where this vessel passes beneath the Sartorius, and lies in front of it, beneath the aponeurotic covering of Hunter's canal, as far as the opening in the lower part of the Abductor magnus. It then leaves the artery, and descends vertically along the inner side of the knee, beneath the Sartorius muscle, pierces the fascia lata opposite the interval between the tendons of the Sartorius and Gracilis muscles, and becomes subcutaneous. The nerve then passes along the inner side of the leg (Fig. 649), accompanied by the internal saphenous vein, descends behind the internal border of the tibia, and, at the lower third of the leg divides into two branches: one continues its course along the margin of the tibia, terminating at the inner ankle; the other passes in front of the ankle, and is distributed to the integument along the inner side of the foot, as far as the great toe, communicating with the internal branch of the musculo-cutaneous nerve.

The long saphenous nerve **about the middle of the thigh** gives off a communicating branch which joins the plexus formed by the obturator and internal cutaneous nerves.

At the inner side of the knee it gives off a large patellar branch, the **nervus cutaneus patellae** (*ramus infrapatellaris*), which pierces the Sartorius and fascia lata, and is distributed to the integument in front of the patella. This nerve communicates above the knee with the anterior branch of the internal cutaneous and with the middle cutaneous; below the knee, with other branches of the long saphenous; and on the outer side of the joint, with branches of the external cutaneous nerve, forming a plexiform network, the **patella plexus** (*plexus patellae*). The cutaneous nerve of the patella is occasionally small, and terminates by joining the internal cutaneous, which supplies its place in front of the knee.

Below the knee the branches of the long saphenous nerves are distributed to the integument of the front and inner side of the leg (Figs. 651 and 652), communicating with the cutaneous branches from the internal cutaneous or from the obturator nerve. The nerve also sends filaments to the ankle-joint.

The Muscular Branches of the Posterior Division.—The muscular branches of the posterior division supply the four parts of the Quadriceps extensor muscle.

The **branch to the Rectus muscle** enters its under surface high up, sending off a small filament to the hip-joint.

The **branch to the Vastus externus muscle**, of large size, follows the course of the descending branch of the external circumflex artery to the lower part of the muscle. It gives off an articular filament to the knee-joint.

The **branch to the Vastus internus muscle** is a long branch which runs down on the outer side of the femoral vessels in company with the internal saphenous nerve for its upper part. It enters the muscle about its middle, and gives off a filament which can usually be traced downward on the surface of the muscle to the knee-joint.

The **branch to the Crureus muscle** enters the muscle on its anterior surface about the middle of the thigh, and sends a filament through the muscle to the Subcrureus and the knee-joint.

The **articular branch to the hip-joint** is derived from the nerve to the Rectus muscle.

The **articular branches to the knee-joint** are three in number. One, a long, slender filament, is derived from the nerve to the Vastus externus muscle; it penetrates the capsular ligament of the joint on its anterior aspect. Another is derived from the nerve to the Vastus internus muscle. It can usually be traced downward on the surface of this muscle to near the joint; it then penetrates the muscle and accompanies the deep branch of the anastomotica magna artery, pierces the capsular ligament of the joint on its inner side, and supplies the synovial membrane. The third branch is derived from the nerve to the Crureus.

THE SACRAL AND COCCYGEAL NERVES (NN. SACRALES ET COCCYGEUS).

The sacral nerves are five in number on each side. The four upper ones pass from the sacral canal through the sacral foramina; the fifth through the foramen between the sacrum and coccyx.

The Roots of the Upper Sacral Nerves.

The roots of the upper sacral nerves are the largest of all the spinal nerves; while those of the lowest sacral and the coccygeal nerve are the smallest. They are longer than those of any of the other spinal nerves, on account of the spinal cord not extending beyond the first lumbar vertebra. From their great length, and the appearance they present in connection with their attachment to the spinal cord, the roots of origin of these nerves are called collectively the **cauda equina**.

Each sacral and coccygeal nerve separates into two divisions, posterior and anterior.

The Posterior Divisions of the Sacral Nerves (Rami Posteriores) (Fig. 653).

The posterior divisions of the sacral nerves are small, diminish in size from above downward, and emerge, except the last, from the sacral canal by the posterior sacral foramina.

The Upper Sacral Nerves.—Each of the *three upper ones* is covered, at its exit from the sacral canal, by the Multifidus spinae muscle, and divides into an **internal branch** (*ramus medialis*) and an **external branch** (*ramus lateralis*).

The Internal Branches.—The internal branches are small, and supply the Multifidus spinae muscle.

The External Branches.—The external branches join with one another, and with the last lumbar and fourth sacral nerves, in the form of loops on the posterior surface of the sacrum, constituting the **posterior sacral plexus**. From these loops branches pass to the outer surface of the great sacro-sciatic ligament, where they form a second series of loops beneath the Gluteus maximus muscle. Cutaneous branches from this second series of loops, usually two or three in number, pierce the Gluteus maximus muscle along a line drawn from the posterior superior spine

of the ilium to the tip of the coccyx. They supply the integument over the posterior part of the gluteal region (Fig. 652).

The Lower Sacral Nerves.—The posterior divisions of the two lower sacral nerves are situated below the Multifidus spinae muscle. They are of small size, and do not divide into internal and external branches, but join with each other,

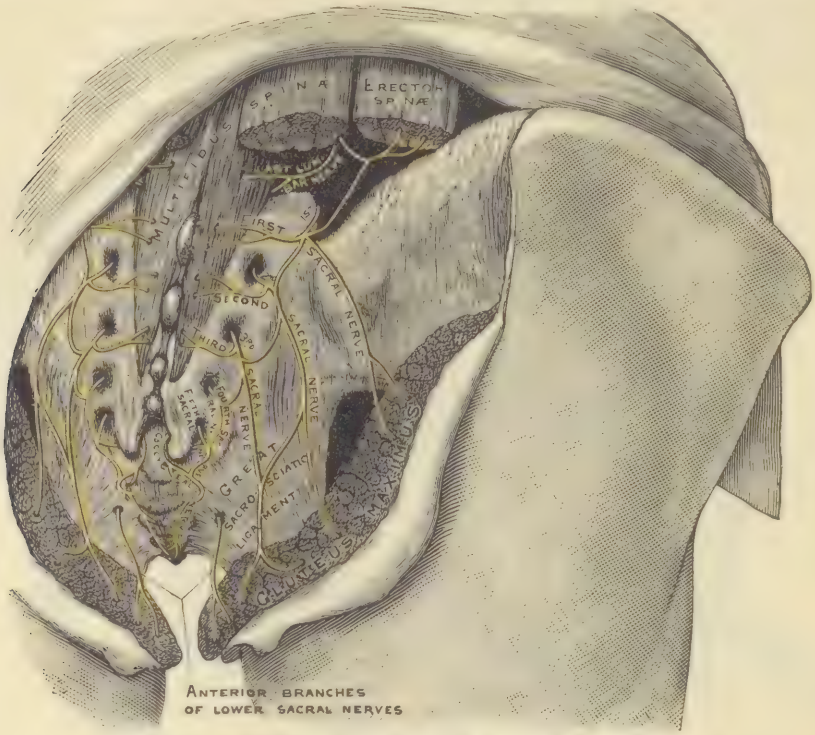


FIG. 653.—The posterior sacral nerves.

and with the posterior division of the coccygeal nerve to form the **posterior sacro-coccygeal nerve**, which passes through the sacro-sciatic ligament, and forms loops on the back of the sacrum, filaments from which supply the Extensor coccygeus and the integument over the coccyx (Fig. 652).

The Anterior Divisions of the Sacral Nerves (Rami Anteriores) (Fig. 655).

The anterior divisions of the sacral nerves diminish in size from above downward. The four upper ones emerge from the anterior sacral foramina; the anterior division of the fifth, after emerging from the spinal canal through its terminal opening, curves forward between the sacrum and the coccyx. All the anterior sacral nerves at their exit from the sacral foramina communicate with the **sacral ganglia of the sympathetic.** The **first nerve** (Fig. 654), of large size, unites with the **lumbo-sacral cord** (*truncus lumbosacralis*), formed by the fifth lumbar, and a branch from the fourth lumbar (*n. furcalis*). The **second** (Fig. 654), equal in size to the preceding, and the **third** (*n. bigeminus*) (Fig. 654), about one-fourth the size of the second, unite with this trunk, and form, with a small fasciculus from the fourth, the **sacral plexus**, a visceral branch being given off from the third nerve to the bladder (Fig. 655).

The **Fourth Anterior Sacral Nerve** sends a branch to join the sacral plexus. The remaining portion of the nerve divides into **visceral** and **muscular branches**, and a communicating filament descends to join the fifth sacral nerve.

The **visceral branches** are distributed to the viscera of the pelvis, communicating with the sympathetic nerve. These branches ascend upon the rectum and bladder, and in the female upon the vagina, communicating with branches of the sympathetic from the pelvic plexus. The visceral branches of the third and fourth sacral do not join the gangliated cord.

The **muscular branches** are distributed to the Levator ani, Coccygeus, and Sphincter ani. The branch to the Sphincter ani pierces the Levator ani, so as to reach the ischio-rectal fossa, where it is found lying in front of the coccyx. Cutaneous filaments arise from the latter branch, which supply the integument between the anus and coccyx. Another cutaneous branch is frequently given off from this

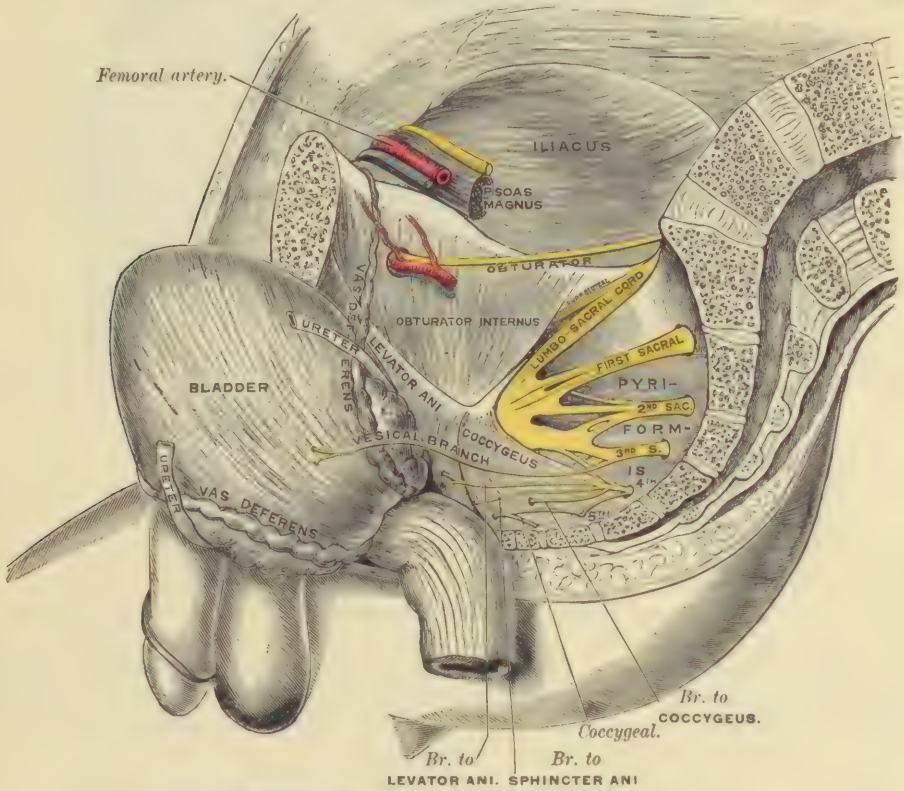


FIG. 654.—Side view of pelvis, showing sacral nerves.

nerve, though sometimes from the pudic (Schwalbe). It perforates the great sacro-sciatic ligament, and, winding around the lower border of the Gluteus maximus, supplies the skin over the lower and inner part of this muscle.

The **Fifth Anterior Sacral Nerve,** after passing from the lower end of the sacral canal, curves forward through the fifth sacral foramen, formed between the lower part of the sacrum and the transverse process of the first piece of the coccyx. It pierces the Coccygeus muscle, and descends upon its anterior surface to near the tip of the coccyx, where it again perforates the muscle, to be distributed to the integument over the back part and side of the coccyx. This nerve communicates above with the fourth sacral and below with the coccygeal nerve, and supplies the Coccygeus muscle.

The Posterior Division of the Coccygeal Nerve.

The coccygeal nerve divides into its anterior and posterior divisions in the spinal canal. The posterior division is the smaller. It does not divide, but

receives, as already mentioned, a communicating branch from the last sacral, and is lost in the integument over the back of the coccyx.

The Anterior Division of the Coccygeal Nerve.

The anterior division of the coccygeal nerve is a delicate filament which escapes at the termination of the sacral canal; it passes downward behind the rudimentary transverse process of the first piece of the coccyx, and curves forward through the notch between the first and second pieces, piercing the Coccygeus muscle, and descending on its anterior surface to near the tip of the coccyx, where it again pierces the muscle, to be distributed to the integument over the back part and side of the coccyx. It is joined by a branch from the fifth anterior sacral as it descends on the surface of the Coccygeus muscle.

The **Pudendal Plexus** (*plexus pudendus*).—The pudendal plexus is formed by fibres obtained from the anterior divisions of the first three sacral nerves and by the anterior divisions of the two lower sacral nerves and the coccygeal nerve. It is, so to speak, interpolated in the sacral plexus and is considered as a portion of it.

The Sacral or Sciatic Plexus (Plexus Sacralis) and the Pudic or Pudendal Plexus (Plexus Pudendalis) (Fig. 655).

The sacral plexus is formed by the lumbo-sacral cord, the anterior divisions of the three upper sacral nerves and a branch from the fourth. The pudic or pudendal plexus is considered with the sacral plexus. It is usually composed of

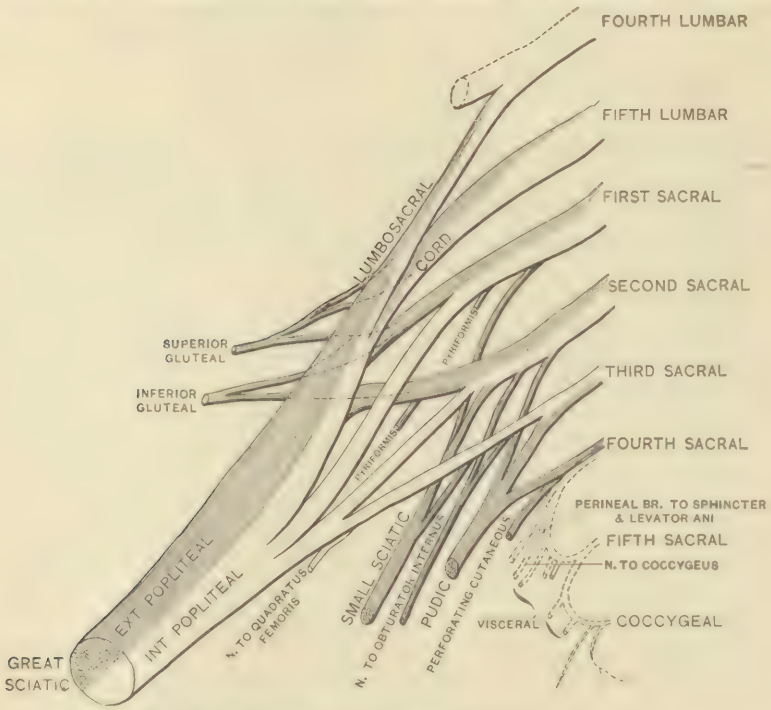


FIG. 655.—Plan of sacral plexus with the pudendal plexus. (Gerrish.)

the anterior divisions of the second, third, fourth, and fifth sacral nerves and the coccygeal nerve. It is irregular in composition. Prof. Cunningham says: "There is no distinct point of separation between the two plexuses. On the contrary, there is considerable overlapping, so that two and sometimes three of the principal nerves derived from the pudendal plexus have their origin in common with nerves of the

sacral plexus." The nerves of these two plexuses proceed in different directions: the upper ones obliquely downward and outward, the lower ones nearly horizontally outward, and they all unite into two cords; an **upper** and **larger cord**, which is formed by the lumbo-sacral cord with the first, second, and the greater part of the third sacral nerves; and a **lower** and **smaller cord**, formed by the remainder of the third, with a portion of the fourth sacral nerve. The upper cord is prolonged into the great sciatic nerve and the lower into the pudic. Frequently a small filament is given off from the second sacral nerve to join the lower cord.

Each of the nerves which form the plexus joins the sympathetic by *gray rami communicantes*. *White rami communicantes* join the third sacral and sometimes also the second and fourth sacrals to the sympathetic.

The sacro-pudendal plexus is triangular in form, its base corresponding with the exit of the nerves from the sacrum, its apex with the lower part of the great sacro-sciatic foramen. It rests upon the anterior surface of the Pyriformis, and is covered in front by the pelvic fascia, which separates it from the sciatic and pudic branches of the internal iliac artery and from the viscera of the pelvis. The sacral plexus proper sends branches to the lower extremity; the pudendal plexus proper is largely limited to supplying the perineum.

Branches.—The branches of the sacro-pudendal plexus are divided into **collateral** and **terminal branches.**

Collateral branches	Muscular. Superior gluteal. Inferior gluteal. Small sciatic Perforating cutaneous.
Terminal branches	Pudic. Great sciatic.

The Muscular Branches (*rami musculares*).—The muscular branches supply the Pyriformis, Obturator internus, the two Gemelli, and the Quadratus femoris. The branch to the Pyriformis muscle *arises* from the upper two sacral nerves before they enter the plexus; the branch to the Obturator internus muscle arises at the junction of the lumbo-sacral and first sacral nerves; it passes out of the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen below the Pyriformis, crosses the spine of the ischium, and re-enters the pelvis through the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen to enter the inner surface of the Obturator internus; the branch to the Gemellus superior muscle *arises* in common with the nerve to the Obturator internus muscle; it enters the muscle at the upper part of its posterior surface; the small branch to the Gemellus inferior and Quadratus femoris muscles also *arises* from the upper part of the plexus; it passes through the great sacro-sciatic foramen below the Pyriformis, and courses down beneath the great sciatic nerve, the Gemelli and tendon of the Obturator internus, supplies the muscles on their deep or anterior surface and gives off an articular branch to the hip-joint. A second articular branch is occasionally derived from the upper part of the sacral plexus.

The Superior Gluteal Nerve (*n. glutæus superior*) (Figs. 655 and 657).—The superior gluteal nerve *arises* from the back part of the lumbo-sacral cord, with some filaments from the first sacral nerve; it passes from the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen above the Pyriformis muscle, accompanied by the gluteal vessels, and divides into a **superior** and an **inferior branch.**

The **Superior Branch** follows the line of origin of the Gluteus minimus, and supplies the Gluteus medius muscle.

The **Inferior Branch** crosses obliquely between the Gluteus minimus and medius, distributing filaments to both these muscles, and terminates in the Tensor fasciæ femoris muscle, extending nearly to its lower end.

The Inferior Gluteal Nerve (*n. glutaeus inferior*) (Fig. 655).—The inferior gluteal nerve *arises* from the lumbo-sacral cord and first and second sacral nerves, and is intimately connected with the small sciatic at its origin. It passes out of the pelvis through the great sciatic notch, beneath the Pyriformis muscle, and, dividing into a number of branches, enters the Gluteus maximus muscle on its under surface.

The Small Sciatic Nerve (*n. cutaneus femoris posterior*) (Figs. 655, 656, and 657).—The small sciatic nerve supplies the integument of the perineum and back part of the thigh and leg. It is usually formed by the union of two branches, which arise from the second and third nerves of the sacral plexus. It issues from the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen below the Pyriformis muscle, descends beneath the Gluteus maximus with the sciatic artery, and at the lower border of that muscle passes along the back part of the thigh, beneath the fascia lata and over the long head of the Biceps, to the lower part of the popliteal region, where it pierces the fascia and becomes cutaneous. It then accompanies the external saphenous vein to about the middle of the leg, its terminal filaments communicating with the external saphenous nerve.

The **Branches** of the small sciatic nerve are all cutaneous, and are grouped as follows: **gluteal, perineal,** and **femoral.**

The **Gluteal Cutaneous Branches** (*nn. clunium inferiores* [*laterales*]) consist of two or three ascending filaments, which turn upward around the lower border of the Gluteus maximus to supply the integument covering the lower and outer part of that muscle (Fig. 652).

The **Perineal Cutaneous Branches** (*rami perineales*) are distributed to the skin at the upper and inner side of the thigh, on its posterior aspect. One branch, longer than the rest, the **inferior pudendal** or **long scrotal nerve** (Fig. 657), curves forward below the tuber ischii, pierces the fascia lata, and passes forward beneath the superficial fascia of the perineum to be distributed to the integument of the scrotum in the male (Fig. 652) and the labium in the female, communicating with the superficial perineal and inferior hemorrhoidal nerves.

The **Femoral Cutaneous Branches** are numerous descending filaments, derived from both sides of the nerves, which are distributed to the back, inner, and outer sides of the thigh, to the skin covering the popliteal space, and to the upper part of the leg (Fig. 652).

The Perforating Cutaneous Nerve (*n. clunium inferior medialis*) (Fig. 655).—The perforating cutaneous nerve usually arises from the second and third sacral nerves, and is of small size. It is continued backward through the great sacro-sciatic ligament, and, winding around the lower border of the Gluteus maximus, supplies the integument covering the inner and lower part of that muscle.

The Pudic Nerve (*n. pudendus*) (Figs. 655 and 657).—The pudic nerve is the direct continuation of the lower cord of the sacral plexus, and derives its fibres from the third and fourth sacral nerves, and frequently from the second also. It leaves the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen, below the Pyriformis. It then crosses the spine of the ischium, and re-enters the pelvis through the lesser sacro-sciatic foramen. It accompanies the pudic vessels upward and forward along the outer wall of the ischio-rectal fossa, being contained in a sheath of the obturator fascia, termed **Alcock's canal,** and divides into two terminal branches, the **perineal nerve** and the **dorsal nerve of the penis** or **clitoris.** Before its division it gives off the inferior hemorrhoidal nerve.

The **Inferior Haemorrhoidal Nerve** (*n. haemorrhoidalis inferior*) is occasionally derived separately from the sacral plexus. It passes across the ischio-rectal fossa, with its accompanying vessels, toward the lower end of the rectum, and is distributed to the Sphincter ani externus and to the integument around the anus. Branches of this nerve communicate with the inferior pudendal and superficial perineal nerves at the forepart of the perineum.

FIG. 656.—Cutaneous nerves of lower extremity. Posterior view.

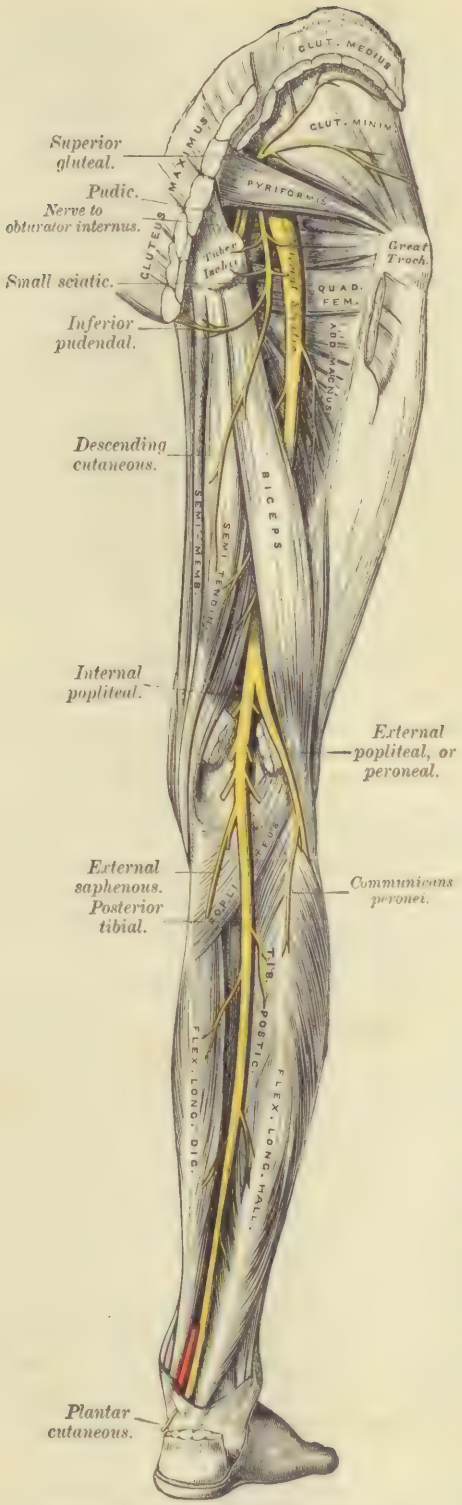


FIG. 657.—Nerves of the lower extremity.[1] Posterior view.

[1] N. B.—In this diagram the external saphenous and communicans peronei are not in their normal position. They have been displaced by the removal of the superficial muscles.

The **Perineal Nerve** (*n. perinei*), the inferior and larger of the two terminal branches of the pudic, is situated below the pudic artery. It accompanies the superficial perineal artery in the perineum, dividing into **cutaneous** and **muscular branches.**

The **cutaneous branches** (superficial perineal) are two in number, **posterior** and **anterior.** The **posterior** or **external branch** pierces the base of the triangular ligament of the urethra, and passes forward along the outer side of the urethral triangle in company with the superficial perineal artery; it is distributed to the skin of the scrotum (*nn. scrotales posteriores*). It communicates with the inferior haemorrhoidal, the inferior pudendal, and the other superficial perineal nerve. The **anterior** or **internal branch** also pierces the base of the triangular ligament, and passes forward nearer to the middle line, to be distributed to the inner and back part of the scrotum. Both these nerves supply the labia majora in the female.

The **muscular branches** are distributed to the Transversus perinaei, Accelerator urinae, Erector penis, and Compressor urethrae. A distant branch is given off from the nerve to the Accelerator urinae, which pierces this muscle, and supplies the corpus spongiosum, ending in the mucous membrane of the urethra. This is the **nerve to the bulb.**

The **Dorsal Nerve of the Penis** (*n. dorsalis penis*) is the deepest division of the pudic nerve; it accompanies the pudic artery along the ramus of the ischium; it then runs forward along the inner margin of the ramus of the os pubis, between the superficial and deep layers of the triangular ligament. Piercing the superficial layer it gives a branch to the corpus cavernosum, and passes forward, in company with the dorsal artery of the penis, between the layers of the suspensory ligament, on to the dorsum of the penis, along which it is carried as far as the glans, to which it is distributed.

In the female the dorsal nerve is very small, and supplies the **clitoris** (*n. dorsalis clitoridis*).

The Great Sciatic Nerve (*n. ischiadicus*) (Figs. 655 and 657).—The great sciatic nerve supplies nearly the whole of the integument of the leg, the muscles of the back of the thigh, and those of the leg and foot. It is the largest nervous cord in the body, measuring three-quarters of an inch in breadth, and is the direct continuation of the upper division of the sacral plexus. It passes out of the pelvis through the great sacro-sciatic foramen, below the Pyriformis muscle. It descends between the trochanter major and tuberosity of the ischium, along the back part of the thigh, to about its lower third, where it divides into two large branches, the **internal** and **external popliteal nerves** (Fig. 657).

This division may take place at any point between the sacral plexus and the lower third of the thigh. When the division occurs at the plexus, the two nerves descend together side by side; or they may be separated, at their commencement, by the interposition of part or the whole of the Pyriformis muscle. As the nerve descends along the back of the thigh, it rests upon the posterior surface of the ischium, the nerve of the Quadratus femoris, and the External rotator muscles, in company with the small sciatic nerve and artery, being covered by the Gluteus maximus; lower down, it lies upon the Adductor magnus, and is covered by the long head of the Biceps. The great sciatic even when apparently a single nerve is really two nerves appearing as one.

Branches.—The branches of the nerve, before its division, are **articular** and **muscular.**

The **Articular Branches** (*rami articulares*) arise from the upper part of the nerve; they supply the hip-joint, perforating the posterior part of its fibrous capsule. These branches are sometimes derived from the sacral plexus.

The **Muscular Branches** (*rami musculares*) are distributed to the flexors of the leg—viz., the Biceps, Semitendinosus, and Semimembranosus, and a branch goes to the Adductor magnus. These branches are given off beneath the Biceps muscle.

The **Internal Popliteal** or **Tibial Nerve** (*n. tibialis*) (Figs. 655 and 657), in reality, arises from the fourth and fifth lumbar nerves and the first three sacral nerves, and becomes a part of the trunk of the great sciatic in the buttock, to emerge from it again at the bifurcation of the sciatic. It is the larger of the two terminal branches of the great sciatic, descends along the back part of the thigh, through the middle of the popliteal space, to the lower part of the Popliteus muscle, where it passes with the artery beneath the arch of the Soleus and becomes the **posterior tibial**. It is overlapped by the hamstring muscles above, and then becomes more superficial, and lies to the outer side of, and some distance from, the popliteal vessels; opposite the knee-joint it is in close relation with the vessels, and crosses to the inner side of the artery. Below, it is overlapped by the Gastrocnemius muscle.

The **branches** of this nerve are—**articular, muscular,** and a **cutaneous branch, the communicating tibial nerve.**

The **articular branches** (*rami articulares*), usually three in number, supply the knee-joint; two of these branches accompany the superior and inferior internal articular arteries, and a third, the azygos articular artery.

The **muscular branches** (*rami musculares*), four or five in number, arise from the nerve as it lies between the two heads of the Gastrocnemius muscle; they supply that muscle, and the Plantaris, Soleus, and Popliteus. The filaments which supply the Popliteus turn around its lower border and are distributed to its deep surface.

The **tibial communicating nerve** (*n. cutaneus surae medialis*) is the cutaneous branch. It descends between the two heads of the Gastrocnemius muscle, and about the middle of the back of the leg pierces the deep fascia, and joins the **peroneal** or **fibular communicating nerve** (*ramus anastomoticus peronaeus*) from the external popliteal nerve to form the **external** or **short saphenous** (*n. suralis*) (Fig. 657). The external saphenous nerve, formed by the communicating branches of the internal and external popliteal nerves, passes downward and outward near the outer margin of the tendo Achillis, lying close to the external saphenous vein, to the interval between the external malleolus and the os calcis. It divides in two branches, the posteror of which breaks up into **external calcaneal branches** (*rami calcanei laterales*). The **anterior branch** (*n. cutaneus dorsalis lateralis*) winds around the outer malleolus, and is distributed to the integument along the outer side of the foot and little toe, communicating on the dorsum of the foot with the musculo-cutaneous nerve. In the leg its branches communicate with those of the small sciatic. The cutaneous area supplied by the external saphenous nerve is indicated in Figs. 651, 652, and 659.

The **Posterior Tibial Nerve** (Fig. 657) is the terminal portion of the internal popliteal nerve. It commences at the lower border of the Popliteus muscle, and passes along the back part of the leg with the posterior tibial vessels to the interval between the inner malleolus and the heel, where it divides into the **external** and **internal plantar nerves**. It lies upon the deep muscles of the leg, and is covered in the upper part by the muscles of the calf, lower down by the skin and fascia. In the upper part of its course it lies to the inner side of the posterior tibial artery, but it soon crosses that vessel, and lies to its outer side as far as the ankle. In the lower third of the leg it is placed parallel with the inner margin of the tendo Achillis.

The **branches** of the posterior tibial nerve are **muscular, internal calcaneal** or **calcaneo-plantar,** and **articular.**

The **muscular branches** (*rami musculares*) arise either separately or by a common trunk from the upper part of the nerve. They supply the Soleus, Tibialis posticus, Flexor longus digitorum, and Flexor longus hallucis muscles; the branch to the latter muscle accompanying the peroneal artery. The branch to the Soleus enters its deep surface, while the branch which this muscle receives from the internal popliteal enters its superficial aspect.

The **internal calcaneal** or **calcaneo-plantar branches** (*rami calcanei mediales*) perforate the internal annular ligament, and supply the integument of the heel and inner side of the foot (Fig. 659).

The **articular branch** (*ramus articularis ad articulationem talocruralem*) is given off just above the bifurcation of the nerve and supplies the ankle-joint.

The **Internal Plantar Nerve** (*n. plantaris medialis*) (Fig. 658), the larger of the two terminal branches of the posterior tibial, accompanies the internal plantar artery along the inner side of the foot. From its origin at the inner ankle it passes beneath the Abductor hallucis, and divides into the **common plantar digital nerves** (*nn. digitales plantares communes*), which pass forward between the Abductor hallucis and the Flexor brevis digitorum, divides opposite the bases of the metatarsal bones into **four collateral plantar digital branches**, and communicates with the external plantar nerve.

In its course the internal plantar nerve gives off **cutaneous branches**, which pierce the plantar fascia and supply the integument of the sole of the foot (Fig. 659); **muscular branches**, which supply the Abductor hallucis and Flexor brevis digitorum; **articular branches**, to the articulations of the tarsus and metatarsus; and **four collateral plantar digital branches** (*nn. digitales plantares proprii*). The three outer branches pass between the divisions of the plantar fascia in the clefts between the toes; the first (innermost) branch becomes cutaneous farther back between the Adductor hallucis

Fig. 658.—The plantar nerves.

Fig. 659.—Areas of distribution of the cutaneous nerves of the sole. (W. Keiller, in Gerrish's Text-book of Anatomy.)

and Flexor brevis digitorum. They are distributed in the following manner: The **first** supplies the inner border of the great toe, and sends a filament to the Flexor brevis hallucis muscle; the **second** bifurcates, to supply the adjacent sides of the great and second toes, sending a filament to the First lumbrical muscle; the **third** supplies the adjacent sides of the second and third toes; the **fourth** supplies the corresponding sides of the third and fourth toes, and receives a communicating branch from the external plantar nerve (Fig. 659). Each digital nerve gives off cutaneous and articular filaments; and opposite the last phalanx sends a dorsal branch, which supplies the structures around the nail, the continuation of the nerve

being distributed to the ball of the toe. It will be observed that the distribution of these branches is precisely similar to that of the median nerve in the hand.

The **External Plantar Nerve** (*n. plantaris lateralis*) (Fig. 658), the smaller of the two, completes the nervous supply to the structures of the sole of the foot (Fig. 659), being distributed to the little toe, and one-half of the fourth, as well as to most of the deep muscles, its distribution being similar to that of the ulnar in the hand. It passes obliquely forward with the external plantar artery to the outer side of the foot, lying between the Flexor brevis digitorum and Flexor accessorius, and in the interval between the former muscle and Abductor minimi digiti divides into a **superficial** and a **deep branch.** Before its division it supplies the Flexor accessorius and Abductor minimi digiti.

The **superficial branch** (*ramus superficialis*) separates into two digital nerves. Before division they are called **common plantar digital nerves** (*nn. digitales plantares communes*), after division the **collateral plantar digital nerves** (*nn. digitales plantares proprii*): one, the **external branch,** the smaller of the two, supplies the outer side of the little toe, the Flexor brevis minimi digiti, and the two Interosseous muscles of the fourth metatarsal space; the *other* and larger digital branch supplies the adjoining sides of the fourth and fifth toes, and communicates with the internal plantar nerve.

The **deep** or **muscular branch** (*ramus profundus*) accompanies the external plantar artery into the deep part of the sole of the foot, beneath the tendons of the Flexor muscles and Adductor obliquus hallucis, and supplies all the Interossei (except those in the fourth metatarsal space), the three outer Lumbricales, the Adductor obliquus hallucis, and the Adductor transversus hallucis.

The **External Popliteal** or **Peroneal Nerve** (*n. peronaeus communis*) (Figs. 655 and 657) in reality arises from the fourth and fifth lumbar and the first and second sacral nerves. It is about one-half the size of the internal popliteal, descends obliquely along the outer sides of the popliteal space to the head of the fibula, close to the inner margin of the Biceps muscle. It is easily felt beneath the skin behind the head of the fibula at the inner side of the tendon of the Biceps. It passes between the tendon of the Biceps and outer head of the Gastrocnemius muscle, winds around the neck of the fibula, between the Peroneus longus and the bone, and divides beneath the muscle into the **anterior tibial** and **musculo-cutaneous nerves.**

The **branches** of the peroneal nerve, previous to its division, are **articular** and **cutaneous.**

The **articular branches** (*rami articulares*) are three in number: two of these accompany the superior and inferior external articular arteries to the outer side of the knee. The upper one occasionally arises from the great sciatic nerve before its bifurcation. The third (*recurrent*) articular nerve is given off at the point of division of the peroneal nerve; it ascends with the anterior recurrent tibial artery through the Tibialis anticus muscle to the front of the knee, which it supplies.

The Sural or Lateral Cutaneous Branch (*n. cutaneus surae lateralis*).—There may be two or three of these branches. They supply the integument along the back part and outer side of the leg (Fig. 652). The largest **cutaneous** branch of the peroneal is the **peroneal communicating** (*ramus anastomoticus peronaeus* or *communicans fibularis*), arises near the head of the fibula, crosses the external head of the Gastrocnemius to the middle of the leg, and joins with the communicans tibialis to form the external saphenous. This nerve occasionally exists as a separate branch, which is continued as far down as the heel.

The **Anterior Tibial Nerve** (*n. peronaeus profundus*) (Fig. 650) commences at the bifurcation of the peroneal nerve, between the fibula and upper part of the Peroneus longus muscle, passes obliquely forward beneath the Extensor longus digitorum muscle to the forepart of the interosseous membrane, and gets into relation with the anterior tibial artery above the middle of the leg; it then descends with

the artery to the front of the ankle-joint, where it divides into an **external** and an **internal branch**. This nerve lies at first on the outer side of the anterior tibial artery, then in front of it, and again at its outer side at the ankle-joint.

The **branches** of the anterior tibial nerve in its course through the leg are the **muscular branches** (*rami musculares*) to the Tibialis anticus, Extensor longus digitorum, Peronaeus tertius, and Extensor proprius hallucis muscles, and an **articular branch** to the ankle-joint.

The **external** or **tarsal branch** of the anterior tibial passes outward across the tarsus, beneath the Extensor brevis digitorum, and, having become enlarged, like the posterior interosseous nerve at the wrist, supplies the Extensor brevis digitorum muscle. From the enlargement three minute **interosseous branches** are given off which supply the tarsal joints and the metatarso-phalangeal joints of the second, third, and fourth toes. The first of these sends a filament to the second dorsal interosseous muscle.

The **internal branch**, the continuation of the nerve, accompanies the dorsalis pedis artery along the inner side of the dorsum of the foot, and at the first interosseous space divides into two **dorsal digital branches** (*nn. digitales dorsales hallucis lateralis et digiti secundi medialis*), which supply the adjacent sides of the great and second toes (Fig. 651), communicating with the internal branch of the musculo-cutaneous nerve. Before it divides it gives off an **interosseous branch** to the first space, which supplies the metatarso-phalangeal joint of the great toe and sends a filament to the First dorsal interosseous muscle.

The **Musculo-cutaneous Nerve** (*n. peronaeus superficialis*) (Fig. 650) supplies the muscles on the fibular side of the leg and the integument of the dorsum of the foot (Fig. 651). It passes forward between the Peronei muscles and the Extensor longus digitorum, pierces the deep fascia at the lower third of the leg on its front and outer side, and divides into two branches. This nerve in its course between the muscles gives off **muscular branches** (*rami musculares*) to the Peroneus longus and brevis, and **cutaneous filaments** to the integument of the lower part of the leg (Fig. 651).

The **internal branch** (*n. cutaneus dorsalis medialis*) of the musculo-cutaneous nerve passes in front of the ankle-joint, and divides into two **dorsal digital branches** (*nn. digitales dorsales pedis*), one of which supplies the inner side of the great toe, the other the adjacent sides of the second and third toes. It also supplies the integument of the inner ankle and inner side of the foot, communicating with the internal saphenous nerve, and joining with the anterior tibial nerve, between the great and second toes.

The **external branch** (*n. cutaneus dorsalis intermedius*), the smaller, passes along the outer side of the dorsum of the foot, and divides into two **dorsal digital branches**, the inner being distributed to the contiguous sides of the third and fourth toes, the outer to the opposed sides of the fourth and fifth toes. It also supplies the integument of the outer ankle and outer side of the foot, communicating with the short saphenous nerve.

The branches of the musculo-cutaneous nerve supply all the toes excepting the outer side of the little toe, which is supplied by the external saphenous nerve. The adjoining sides of the great toe or second toe are also supplied by the internal branch of the anterior tibial. It frequently happens that some of the outer branches of the musculo-cutaneous are absent, their place being then taken by branches of the external saphenous nerve.

Surgical Anatomy.—The lumbar plexus passes through the Psoas muscle, and, therefore, in *psoas abscess* any or all of its branches may be irritated, causing severe pain in the parts to which the irritated nerves are distributed. The *genito-crural nerve* is the one which is most frequently implicated. This nerve is also of importance, as it is concerned in one of the *reflexes* employed in the investigation of diseases of the spine. If the skin over the inner side of the thigh just below Poupart's ligament, the part supplied by the crural branch of the genito-crural nerve, be gently tickled in a male child, the testicle will be noticed to be drawn

upward through the action of the Cremaster muscle, which is supplied by the genital branch of the same nerve. The same result may sometimes be noticed in adults, and can almost always be produced by severe stimulation. This reflex, when present, shows that the portion of the cord from which the first and second lumbar nerves are derived is in a normal condition.

The *anterior crural nerve* is in danger of being injured in *fractures of the true pelvis*, since the fracture most commonly takes place through the ascending ramus of the os pubis, at or near the point where this nerve crosses the bone. It is also liable to be injured in *fractures* and *dislocations of the femur*, and is likely to be pressed upon, and its functions impaired, in some *tumors* growing in the pelvis. Moreover, on account of its superficial position, it is exposed to injury in *wounds and stabs in the groin*. When this nerve is *paralyzed*, the patient is unable to flex his hip completely, on account of the loss of motion in the Iliacus; or to extend the knee on the thigh, on account of paralysis of the Quadriceps extensor cruris; there are complete paralysis of the Sartorius and partial paralysis of the Pectineus. There is loss of sensation down the front and inner side of the thigh, except in that part supplied by the crural branch of the genito-crural nerve, and by the ilio-inguinal nerve. There is also loss of sensation down the inner side of the leg and foot as far as the ball of the great toe.

The *obturator nerve* is of special surgical interest. It is rarely *paralyzed* alone, but occasionally is paralyzed in association with the anterior crural. The principal interest attached to it is in connection with its supply to the knee; pain in the knee being symptomatic of many diseases in which the trunk of this nerve, or one of its branches, is irritated. Thus it is well known that in the earlier stages of *hip-joint disease* the patient does not complain of pain in that articulation, but on the inner side of the knee, or in the knee-joint itself, both these articulations being supplied by the obturator nerve, the final distribution of the nerve being to the knee-joint. Again, the same thing occurs in *sacro-iliac disease:* pain is complained of in the knee-joint or on its inner side. The obturator nerve is in close relationship with the sacro-iliac articulation, passing over it, and, according to some anatomists, distributing filaments to it. Again, in *cancer of the sigmoid flexure*, and even in cases where masses of hardened faeces are impacted in this portion of the gut, pain is complained of in the knee. The left obturator nerve lies beneath the sigmoid flexure, and is readily pressed upon and irritated when disease exists in this part of the intestine. Finally, pain in the knee forms an important diagnostic sign in *obturator hernia*. The hernial protrusion as it passes out through the opening in the obturator membrane presses upon the nerve and causes pain in the parts supplied by its peripheral filaments. When the obturator nerve is *paralyzed*, the patient is unable to press his knees together or to cross one leg over the other, on account of paralysis of the Adductor muscles. Rotation outward of the thigh is impaired from paralysis of the Obturator externus. Sometimes there is loss of sensation in the upper half of the inner side of the thigh.

The *great sciatic nerve* is liable to be pressed upon by various *pelvic tumors*, giving rise to pain along its trunk, to which the term *sciatica* is applied. Tumors growing from the pelvic viscera, or bones, *aneurisms* of some of the branches of the internal iliac artery, *calculus in the bladder* when of large size, accumulation of faeces in the rectum, may all cause pressure on the nerve inside the pelvis, and give rise to sciatica. Outside the pelvis exposure to cold, violent movements of the hip-joint, *exostoses* or other tumors growing from the margin of the sacro-sciatic foramen, may also give rise to the same condition. When paralyzed there is loss of motion in all the muscles below the knee, and loss of sensation in the same situation, except the upper half of the back of the leg, supplied by the small sciatic and the upper half of the inner side of the leg, when the communicating branch of the obturator is large.

The sciatic nerve has been frequently cut down upon and *stretched*, or has been acupunctured for the relief of sciatica. The nerve has also been stretched in cases of locomotor ataxia, the anæsthesia of leprosy, etc. In order to define it on the surface, a point is taken at the junction of the middle and lower third of a line stretching from the posterior superior spine of the ilium to the outer part of the tuber ischii, and a line is drawn from this point to the middle of the upper part of the popliteal space. The line must be slightly curved with its convexity outward, and as it passes downward to the lower border of the Gluteus maximus is slightly nearer the tuberosity of the ischium than to the great trochanter, as it crosses a line drawn between these two points. The operation of stretching the sciatic nerve is performed by making an incision over the course of the nerve about the centre of the thigh. The skin, superficial structures, and deep fascia having been divided, the interval between the inner and outer hamstrings is to be defined, and these muscles respectively pulled inward and outward with retractors. The nerve will be found a little to the inner side of the Biceps. It is to be separated from the surrounding structures, hooked up with the finger, and stretched by steady and continuous traction for two or three minutes. The sciatic nerve may also be stretched by what is known as the "dry" plan. The patient is laid on his back, the foot is extended, the leg flexed on the thigh, and the thigh strongly flexed on the abdomen. While the thigh is maintained in this position the leg is forcibly extended to its full extent, and the foot as fully flexed on the leg. This last-named method is uncertain.

The position of the external popliteal nerve, close behind the tendon of the Biceps on the outer side of the ham, should be remembered in *subcutaneous division of the tendon*. After it is divided,

a cord often rises up close beside it, which might be mistaken for a small undivided portion of the tendon, and the surgeon might be tempted to reintroduce his knife and divide it. This must never be done, as the cord is the external popliteal nerve, which becomes prominent as soon as the tendon is divided.

THE CEREBRAL OR CRANIAL NERVES (NERVI CEREBRALES).

The cranial nerves arise from some part of the cerebro-spinal centre, and are transmitted through foramina in the base of the cranium. They have been named numerically, according to the order in which they pass through the dura mater lining the base of the skull. Other names are also given to them, derived from the parts to which they are distributed or from their functions. Taken in their order, from before backward, they are as follows:

1st. Olfactory.
2d. Optic.
3d. Motor oculi.
4th. Trochlear (Pathetic).
5th. Trifacial (Trigeminus).
6th. Abducent.
7th. Facial (Portio dura).
8th. Auditory (Portio mollis).
9th. Glosso-pharyngeal.
10th. Pneumogastric (or Vagus).
11th. Spinal accessory.
12th. Hypoglossal.

All the cranial nerves are connected to some part of the surface of the brain. This is termed their **superficial** or **apparent origin.** But their fibres may, in all cases, be traced deeply into the substance of the brain and to some special centre of gray matter, termed a **nucleus.** This is called their **deep** or **real origin.** The nerves, after emerging from the brain at their apparent origin, pass through foramina or tubular prolongations in the dura mater, leave the skull through foramina in its base, and pass to their final distribution.

THE FIRST OR OLFACTORY NERVE (N. OLFACTORIUS) (Fig. 660).

The olfactory nerves are the special nerves of the sense of smell, and are about twenty in number on each side. These filaments constitute the first or olfactory nerves. They are given off from the under surface of the **olfactory bulb,** an oval mass of a grayish color, which rests on the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone, and forms the anterior expanded extremity or a slender process of brain-substance, named the **olfactory tract.** The olfactory tract and bulb have already been described (p. 880). The **olfactory tubercle** (*trigonum olfactorium*) is a small triangular mass of gray matter between the diverging roots of the optic tract (p. 881).

Each nerve is surrounded by tubular prolongations from the dura mater and pia mater, the former being lost on the periosteum lining the nose, the latter in the neurilemma of the nerve. The nerves, as they enter the nares, are divisible into two groups: an **inner group,** larger than those on the outer wall, spread out over the upper third of the septum; and an **outer set,** which is distributed over the superior turbinated bone, and the surface of the ethmoid in front of it. As the filaments descend, they unite in a plexiform network, and are believed by most observers to terminate by becoming continuous with the deep extremities of the olfactory cells.

The olfactory nerves differ in structure from other nerves in being composed exclusively of non-medullated fibres. They are deficient in the white substance of Schwann, and consist of axis-cylinders, with a distinct nucleated sheath, in which there are, however, fewer nuclei than in ordinary non-medullated fibres.

The Olfactory Path (Figs. 660 and 661).—Impressions from the *upper portion* of the Schneiderian mucous membrane pass along the olfactory nerves, reach the olfactory bulb, and traverse the olfactory tract to the cerebral hemisphere of the same side. The cortical area of the sense of smell is in the uncus hip-

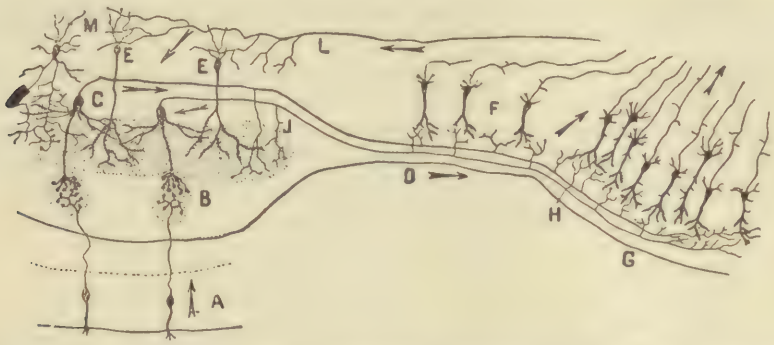


FIG. 660.—The olfactory bulb and tract. A, Schneiderian membrane in nose in which lies peripheral olfactory neurone; B, glomerulus of olfactory bulb; C, mitral cells with dendrites in B and axones in D olfactory lobe; E, granule cells; F, cells in olfactory lobe; H, G, fibres of olfactory tract. (Ramon y Cajal.)

pocampi. Impressions which are conveyed by the internal root pass to Broca's area which is in front of the inner root of the olfactory tract, to the anterior extremity of the gyrus fornicatus, the cingulum, and the uncinate fasciculus to the cortical centre (Santee). Impressions travelling by the middle root reach

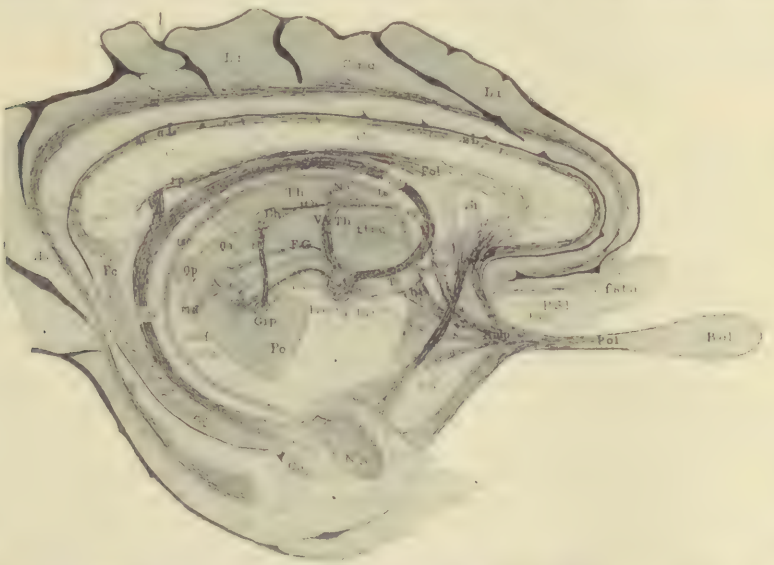


FIG. 661.—The olfactory system and tracts. Bol, olfactory bulb; Pol, olfactory tract; Rolp, deep olfactory fibres; Roli, internal olfactory fibres; Role, external olfactory fibres. The deep fibres pass to the thalamus (Th) and its nuclei; Tc, tuber cinereum; Tm, tuber mamillare; and to tsc, taenia semicircularis, and tth, taenia thalami; also into the anterior commissure, coa. The internal olfactory fibres pass into the striae of Lancisi, sL, and thus to the fasciola cinerea, Fc. The external olfactory fibres pass directly to the uncinate gyrus, U. Tg, fornix from the corpus mamillare (Tm) to Ammon's horn (Cg); NA, nucleus amygdalae; Cing, cingulum; Cc, corpus callosum; Fc, fasc. cinerea; FG, Gudden's fasciculus; FM, fasc. retroflexus of Meynert; Na, ant. nuc. of thalamus; Gip, interpeduncular ganglion; Gh, ganglion; habenula; Qa, Qp, corp. quadrigemina; Po, pons; VA, fascic. Vicq, d'Azyr. (Dejerine.)

the trigone and then pass to the cortical centre, as do those by way of the internal root, or they reach it by way of the anterior commissure (Santee). The outer root conducts impulses directly to the cortical area. Fig. 661 shows the olfactory path according to Dejerine.

Surgical Anatomy.—Destruction of the olfactory tract of one side causes loss of smell (*anosmia*) on the side of the injury, because the olfactory tract is uncrossed. In severe injuries to the head the olfactory bulb may become separated from the olfactory nerves, thus producing loss of the sense of smell, and with this a considerable loss in the sense of taste, as much of the perfection of the sense of taste is due to the sapid substances being also odorous and simultaneously exciting the sense of smell. When the sense of smell is lost, an individual cannot distinguish the *flavor* of food, but he can distinguish that a substance is salt, or sweet, or bitter, or acid. The most usual cause of injury to the olfactory nerve is fracture of the base of the skull, the line of fracture passing through the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone, but a blow upon the face, forehead, or back of the head, which does not produce fracture may injure the nerve.

THE SECOND OR OPTIC NERVE (N. OPTICUS) (Fig. 662).

The second or optic nerve, the special nerve of the sense of sight, is distributed exclusively to the eyeball. It joins the eyeball about one-eighth of an inch to the inner side of the axis of the globe, penetrates the fibrous coat and the vascular tunic, and at the optic disk is expanded and forms part of the retina. The nerves of opposite sides are connected together at the commissure, and from the back of the commissure they may be traced to the brain, under the name of the **optic tracts.**

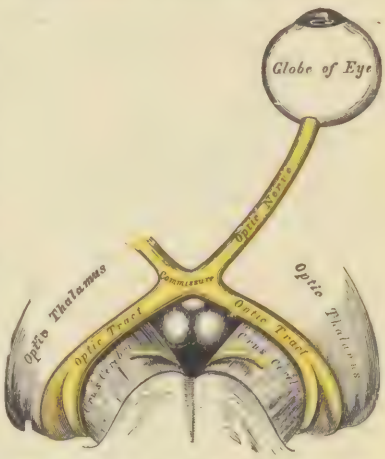


FIG. 662. The left optic nerve and optic tracts.

The Optic Tract.—The optic tract, at its connection with the brain, is divided into two bands, external and internal. The **external band** is the larger; it arises from the external geniculate body and from the under part of the pulvinar of the optic thalamus, and is partly continuous with the brachium of the anterior or upper quadrigeminal body. The **internal band** curves around the crusta, and passes beneath the internal geniculate body, with which it is connected, and then appears to lose itself in the brachium of the posterior or inferior quadrigeminal body. The fibres by which it is connected to the internal geniculate body are merely commissural, forming part of **Gudden's commissure.** From this origin the tract winds obliquely across the under surface of the crus cerebri, in the form of a flattened band, and is attached to the crus by its anterior margin. It then assumes a cylindrical form, and, as it passes forward, is connected with the tuber cinereum and lamina cinerea. It finally joins with the tract of the opposite side to form the **optic commissure.**

The Optic Commissure (*chiasma opticum*) (Figs. 662 and 663, and p. 882) is somewhat quadrilateral in form, rests upon the olivary eminence and on the anterior part of the diaphragma sellae, being bounded, above, by the lamina cinerea; behind by the tuber cinereum; on either side by the anterior perforated space. Within the commissure, the optic nerves of the two sides undergo a partial decussation (Figs. 663 and 664). The fibres which form the inner margin of each tract and posterior part of the commissure have no connection with the optic nerves. They simply pass across the commissure from one hemisphere of the brain to the other, and connect the internal geniculate bodies of the two sides. They are known as the **inter-cerebral fibres of the optic commissure** or the **commissure of Gudden.** The remainder and principal part of the optic com-

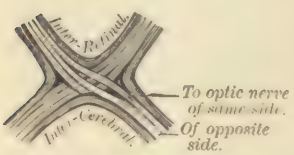


FIG. 663.—Course of the fibres in the optic commissure.

missure consists of two sets of fibres, crossed and uncrossed. The **crossed fibres**, which are the more numerous, occupy the central part of the chiasma, and pass from the optic tract of one side to the optic nerve of the other, decussating in the commissure with similar fibres of the opposite tract. The **uncrossed fibres** occupy the outer part of the chiasma, and pass from the tract of one side to the nerve of the same side.[1]

The great majority of the fibres of the optic nerve consist of the afferent axones of nerve-cells in the retina. Some few, however, are efferent fibres, and grow out from the brain. The afferent fibres end in arborizations around the cells in the external geniculate body, pulvinar, nucleus of the motor oculi nerve, and the upper quadrigeminal body. The external geniculate body and pulvinar are sometimes termed the **lower visual centres**. From these nuclei other fibres are prolonged to the **cortical half-visual centre**, which, according to most observers, is situated in the cuneus, and probably also, to a small extent, in the curved portion of the occipital lobe (Fig. 664).

It should be stated that some fibres are detached from the optic tract, and pass through the crus cerebri to the **nucleus of the third nerve.** These fibres are small, and may be regarded as afferent branches for the sphincter pupillae and ciliary muscles. Other fibres pass to the cerebellum through its superior peduncles, while others, again, are lost in the pons.

The optic nerves *arise* from the forepart of the commissure, and, diverging from one another, become rounded in form and firm in texture, and are enclosed in a sheath derived from the pia mater and arachnoid. As each nerve passes through the corresponding optic foramen it receives a sheath from the dura mater; and as it enters the orbit this sheath subdivides into two layers, one of which becomes continuous with the periosteum of the orbit; the other forms the proper sheath of the nerve and surrounds it as far as the sclerotic. The nerve passes forward and outward through the cavity of the orbit, pierces the sclerotic and choroid coats at the back part of the eyeball, about one-eighth of an inch to the nasal side of its centre, and expands into the retina. A small artery, the *arteria centralis retinae*, perforates the optic nerve a little behind the globe, and runs along its interior in a tubular canal of fibrous tissue. It supplies the inner surface of the retina, and is accompanied by corresponding veins.

The Optic Path (Fig. 664).—Impulses of sight originate in the retina. From the right half of each retina impulses pass by way of the optic nerves to the right optic tract. From the left half of each retina impulses pass by way of the optic nerves to the left optic tract. Impulses from the nasal half of each retina pass by decussated fibres to the opposite optic tract. Impulses from the temporal half of the retina pass by undecussated fibres to the optic tract of the same side, although a few fibres may cross farther back through the quadrigeminal bodies. From the optic tract impulses pass to the external geniculate body, pulvinar, upper quadrigeminal body, and nucleus of the motor oculi nerve. From the external geniculate body and pulvinar impulses pass by way of the optic radiatus through the posterior segment of the internal capsule to the half-vision centre in the cuneus and the convexity of the occipital lobe. The superior quadrigeminal body and the nucleus of the third nerve produce ocular reflexes and the pupillary reflex.

Surgical Anatomy.—The optic nerve is peculiarly liable to become the seat of *neuritis* or undergo *atrophy* in affections of the central nervous system, and, as a rule, the pathological relationship between the two affections is exceedingly difficult to trace. There are, however, certain points in connection with the anatomy of this nerve which tend to throw light upon the frequent association of these affections with intracranial disease: (1) From its mode of develop-

[1] A specimen of congenital absence of the optic commissure is to be found in the Museum of the Westminster Hospital. See also Henle, Nervenlehre, p. 393, ed 2.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

ment and from its structure the optic nerve must be regarded as a prolongation of the brain-substance, rather than as an ordinary cerebro-spinal nerve. (2) As it passes from the brain it receives sheaths from the three cerebral membranes—a perineural sheath from the pia mater, an intermediate sheath from the arachnoid, and an outer sheath from the dura mater, which is also connected with the periosteum as it passes through the optic foramen. These sheaths are separated from each other by spaces which communicate with the subdural and subarachnoid spaces respectively. The innermost or perineural sheath sends a process around the arteria centralis retinae into the interior of the nerve, and enters intimately into its structure. Thus inflammatory affections of the meninges or of the brain may readily extend themselves along these spaces or along the interstitial connective tissue in the nerve.

The course of the fibres in the optic commissure has an important pathological bearing, and has been the subject of much controversy. Microscopic examination, experiments, and pathology all seem to point to the fact that there is a partial decussation of the fibres, each tract supplying

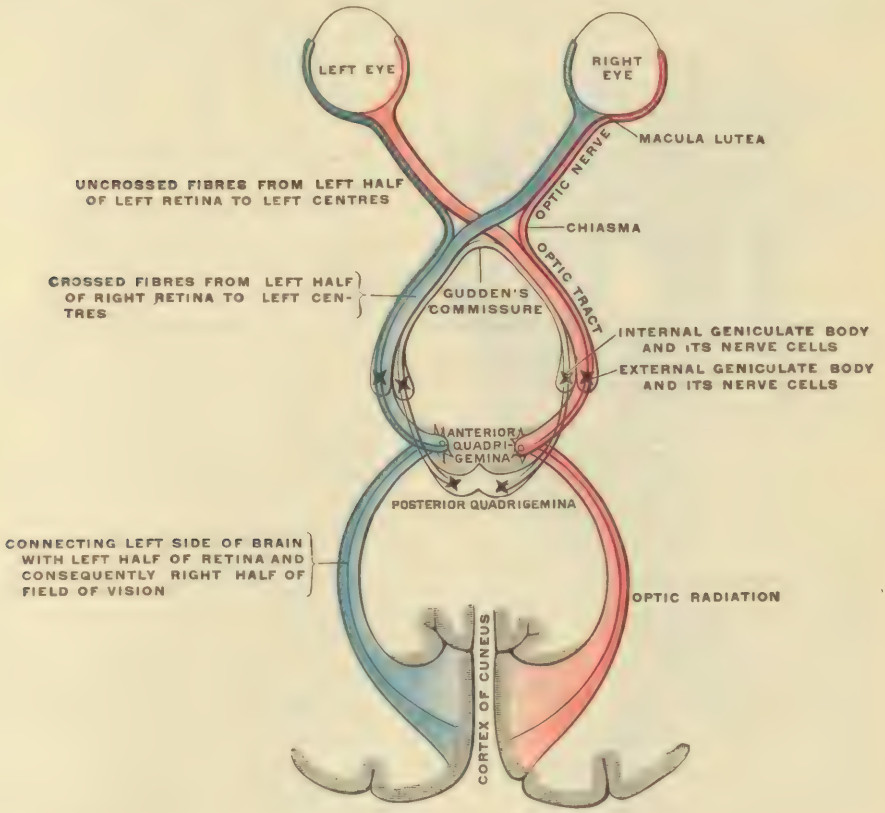


FIG. 664.—Diagram of the course of the optic fibres. (W. Keiller in Gerrish's Anatomy.)

the corresponding half of each eye, so that the right tract supplies the right half of each eye, and the left tract the left half of each eye. At the same time, Charcot believes—and his view has met with general acceptation—that the fibres which do not decussate at the optic commissure have already decussated in the corpora quadrigemina, so that lesion of the cerebral centre of one side causes complete blindness of the opposite eye because both sets of decussating fibres are destroyed. Whereas should one tract—say the right—be destroyed by disease, there will be blindness of the right half of both retinae.

An antero-posterior section through the commissure would divide the decussating fibres, and would therefore produce blindness of the inner half of each eye; while a section at the margin of the side of the optic commissure would produce blindness of the external half of the retina of the same side.

The optic nerve may also be affected in injuries or diseases involving the orbit, in fractures of the anterior fossa of the base of the skull, in tumors of the orbit itself, or those invading this cavity from neighboring parts.

THE THIRD OR MOTOR OCULI NERVE (N. OCULOMOTORIUS) (Figs. 665, 666, 669).

The third or motor oculi nerve supplies all the muscles of the orbit except the Superior oblique and External rectus; it also supplies, through its connection with the ciliary ganglion, the Sphincter muscle of the iris and the Ciliary muscle. It is rather a large nerve, of rounded form and firm texture.

Its *apparent origin* is from the inner surface of the crus cerebri, immediately in front of the pons Varolii. The *deep origin* may be traced through the substantia nigra and tegmentum of the crus to a nucleus situated on either side of the median line beneath the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius (Fig. 613). The nucleus of the third nerve also receives fibres from the sixth nerve of the opposite side. These will be referred to again in the description of the latter nerve. The nucleus of the third nerve, considered from a physiological standpoint, can be subdivided into several smaller groups of cells, each group controlling a particular muscle. The nerves to the different muscles appear to take their origin from before backward, as follows: Inferior oblique, Inferior rectus, Superior rectus and Levator palpebrae, Internal rectus; while from the anterior end of the nucleus the fibres for accommodation and for the Sphincter pupillae take their origin.

FIG. 665.—Nerves of the orbit, seen from above.

On emerging from the brain, the nerve is invested with a sheath of pia mater, and enclosed in a prolongation from the arachnoid. It passes between the superior cerebellar and posterior cerebral arteries, and then pierces the dura mater in front of and external to the posterior clinoid process, passing between the two processes from the free and attached borders of the tentorium, which are prolonged forward to be connected with the anterior and posterior clinoid processes of the sphenoid bone. It passes along the outer wall of the cavernous sinus (Figs. 454 and 455); above the other orbital nerves, receiving in its course one or two filaments from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic, and a communicating branch from the first division of the fifth. It then divides into two branches, which enter the orbit through the sphenoidal fissure, between the two heads of the External rectus muscle (Fig. 665). On passing through the fissure, the nerve is placed below the fourth and the frontal and lachrymal branches of the ophthalmic nerve, and has passing between its two divisions the nasal nerve (Fig. 675).

The Superior Division (*ramus superior*) (Fig. 666).—The superior division, the smaller, passes inward over the optic nerve, and supplies the Superior rectus and Levator palpebrae.

The Inferior Division (*ramus inferior*) (Fig. 666).—The inferior division, the larger, divides into three branches. One passes beneath the optic nerve to the Internal rectus; another, to the Inferior rectus; and the third, the longest of the three, passes forward between the Inferior and External recti to the Inferior oblique. From this latter a short, thick branch, **radix brevis ganglii ciliaris**, is given off to the lower part of the lenticular ganglion and forms its *short* or *motor* root

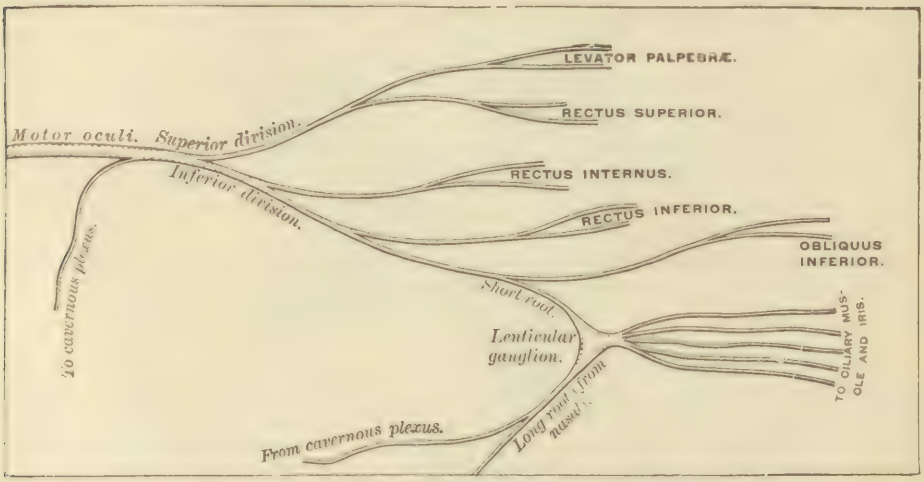


FIG. 666.—Plan of the motor oculi nerve. (The lenticular ganglion is not shown in normal position. If it were the short root would enter the inferior angle.) (After Flower.)

(Figs. 666, 669, and 670). It also gives off one or two filaments to the Inferior rectus. All these branches enter the muscles on their ocular surface, except that to the Inferior oblique, which enters its posterior border.

Surgical Anatomy. *Paralysis* of the third nerve may be the result of many causes: as cerebral disease; conditions causing pressure on the cavernous sinus; periostitis of the bones entering into the formation of the sphenoidal fissure; fracture of the orbit. It results, when complete, in (1) ptosis, or drooping of the upper eyelid, in consequence of the Levator palpebrae being paralyzed; (2) external strabismus, on account of the unopposed action of the External rectus muscle, which is not supplied by the third nerve, and is not therefore paralyzed; (3) dilatation of the pupil, because the sphincter fibres of the iris are paralyzed; (4) loss of power of accommodation, as the sphincter pupillae, the ciliary muscle, and the Internal rectus are paralyzed; (5) slight prominence of the eyeball, owing to most of its muscles being relaxed. Occasionally paralysis may affect only a part of the nerve; that is to say, there may be, for example, a dilated and fixed pupil, with ptosis, but no other signs. *Irritation* of the nerve causes spasm of one or other of the muscles supplied by it; thus, there may be internal strabismus from spasm of the Internal rectus; accommodation for near objects only from spasm of the Ciliary muscle, or contraction of the pupil (myosis), from irritation of the sphincter of the pupil.

THE FOURTH OR TROCHLEAR NERVE (N. TROCHLEARIS) (Figs. 665 and 669).

The fourth or trochlear nerve or **Patheticus**, the smallest of the cranial nerves, supplies the Superior oblique muscle.

The *apparent origin*, at the base of the brain, is on the outer side of the crus cerebri, just in front of the pons Varolii, but the fibres can be traced backward behind the corpora quadrigemina to the valve of Vieussens, on the upper surface of which the two nerves decussate, **decussatio nervorum trochlearium**. Its *deep origin* may be traced to a nucleus in the floor of the aqueduct of Sylvius immediately below that of the third nerve, with which it is continuous (Fig. 613).

Emerging from the upper end of the valve of Vieussens, the nerve is directed outward across the superior peduncle of the cerebellum, and then winds forward

around the outer side of the crus cerebri, immediately above the pons Varolii, pierces the dura mater in the free border of the tentorium cerebelli, just behind, and external to, the posterior clinoid process, and passes forward in the outer wall of the cavernous sinus, between the third nerve and the ophthalmic division of the fifth (Figs. 454 and 455). It crosses the third nerve and enters the orbit through the sphenoidal fissure (Fig. 675). It now becomes the highest of all the nerves, lying at the inner extremity of the fissure internal to the frontal nerve. In the orbit it passes inward, above the origin of the Levator palpebrae, and finally enters the orbital surface of the Superior oblique muscle. In the outer wall of the cavernous sinus this nerve is not infrequently blended with the ophthalmic division of the fifth.

Branches of Communication.—In the outer wall of the cavernous sinus it receives some filaments from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic. In the sphenoidal fissure it occasionally gives off a branch to assist in the formation of the lachrymal nerve.

Branches of Distribution.—It gives off a recurrent branch, which passes backward between the layers of the tentorium, dividing into two or three filaments which may be traced as far back as the wall of the lateral sinus.

Surgical Anatomy.—The fourth nerve when *paralyzed* causes loss of function in the Superior oblique, so that the patient is unable to turn his eye downward and outward. Should the patient attempt to do this, the eye on the affected side is twisted inward, producing *diplopia* or double vision. Accordingly, it is said that the first symptom of this disease which presents itself is giddiness when going down hill or in descending stairs, owing to the double vision induced by the patient looking at his steps while descending.

THE FIFTH, TRIGEMINAL OR TRIFACIAL NERVE (N. TRIGEMINUS)

(Figs. 665, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674).

The fifth, trigeminal or trifacial nerve is the largest cranial nerve. It resembles a spinal nerve (1) in arising by two roots; (2) in having a ganglion developed on its posterior root; and (3) in its function, since it is a compound nerve. It is the great sensory nerve of the head and face and the motor nerve of the muscles of mastication. Its upper two divisions, **portio major,** are entirely sensory, the third division, **portio minor,** is partly sensory and partly motor. It *arises* by two roots: of these the anterior is the smaller, and is the **motor root** (Fig. 613); the posterior, the larger and **sensory root.** Its *superficial origin* is from the side of the pons Varolii, nearer to the upper than the lower border (Fig. 613). The smaller root consists of three or four bundles; the larger root consists of numerous bundles of fibres, varying in number from seventy to a hundred. The two roots are separated from one another by a few of the transverse fibres of the pons. The *deep origin* of the larger or sensory root is chiefly from a long tract in the medulla, the **lower sensory nucleus,** which is continuous below with the substantia gelatinosa of Rolando (Fig. 607). The fibres from this nucleus form the so-called **ascending root of the fifth nerve** (Fig. 607); they pass upward through the pons and join with fibres from the locus caeruleus or **upper sensory nucleus** (Fig. 613), which is situated to the outer side of the nucleus, from which the lower part of the motor root takes origin. The *deep origin* of the smaller or motor root is derived partly from a nucleus embedded in the gray matter of the upper part of the floor of the fourth ventricle and partly from a collection of nerve-cells situated at the side of the aqueduct of Sylvius, from which the fibres pass downward under the name of the **descending root of the fifth nerve** (Fig. 613).

The two roots of the nerve pass forward below the tentorium cerebelli as it bridges over the notch on the inner part of the superior border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone (Fig. 668); they then run between the bone and the dura

mater to the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, where the fibres of the sensory root form the **large semilunar** or **Gasserian ganglion** (Figs. 667 and 668), while the motor root passes beneath the ganglion without having any connection with it, and joins outside the cranium with one of the trunks derived from it (Figs. 667 and 668).

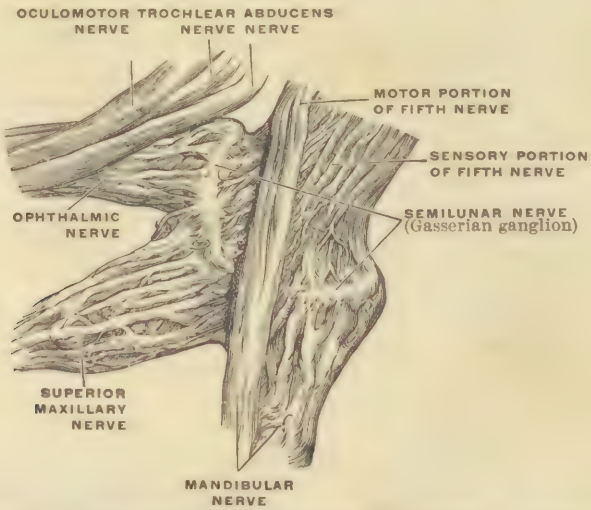


FIG. 667.—The right semilunar or Gasserian ganglion, viewed from the medial side. (Spalteholz.)

The Gasserian or Semilunar Ganglion[1] (*ganglion semilunare*) (Figs. 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, and 673).—The Gasserian or semilunar ganglion is lodged in an osteo-fibrous space, the **cavum Meckelii** (Figs. 545 and 668), near the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. The ganglion is of somewhat crescentic form, with its convexity turned forward. Its upper surface is intimately adherent to the dura mater. Besides the small or motor root, the **large superficial petrosal nerve** lies underneath the ganglion.

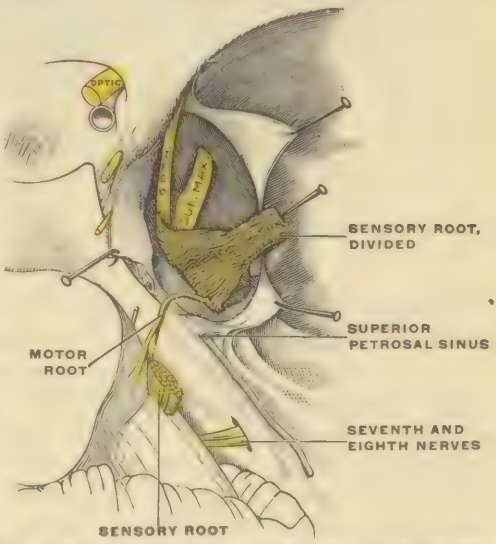


FIG. 668.—The course of the motor root of the fifth nerve. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Branches of Communication.—This ganglion receives on its **inner side** filaments from the carotid plexus of the sympathetic.

Branches of Distribution.—It gives off minute branches to the tentorium cerebelli and the dura mater in the middle fossa of the cranium. From its *anterior border*, which is directed forward and outward, three large branches proceed—the **ophthalmic, superior maxillary**, and **inferior maxillary**. The ophthalmic and superior maxillary consist exclusively of fibres derived from the larger root and ganglion, and are solely nerves of common sensation. The third division, or inferior

[1] A Viennese anatomist, Raimund Balthasar Hirsch (1765), was the first who recognized the ganglionic nature of the swelling on the sensory root of the fifth nerve, and called it, in honor of his otherwise unknown teacher, Jon. Laur. Gasser, the "Ganglion Gasseri." Julius Casserius, whose name is given to the musculo-cutaneous nerve of the arm, was professor at Padua, 1545–1605. (See Hyrtl, Lehrbuch der Anatomie, p. 895 and p. 55.) ED. of 15th English edition.

maxillary, is joined outside the cranium by the motor root. This, therefore, strictly speaking, is the only portion of the fifth nerve which can be said to resemble a spinal nerve.

Ophthalmic Nerve (*n.ophthalmicus*) (Figs. 665, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, and 673).—The ophthalmic, or **first division** of the fifth, is a sensory nerve. It supplies the eyeball, the lachrymal gland, the mucous lining of the eye and nasal fossae, and the integument of the eyebrow, forehead, and nose (Fig. 674). It is the smallest of the three divisions of the fifth, arising from the upper part of the Gasserian ganglion. It is a short, flattened band, about an inch in length, which passes forward along the outer wall of the cavernous sinus (Figs. 454 and 455), below the other nerves (Fig. 667), and just before entering the orbit, through the sphenoidal fissure, divides into three branches—**lachrymal, frontal,** and **nasal** (Figs. 665, 669, 670, 671).

Branches of Communication.—The ophthalmic nerve gives off in the cavernous sinus a branch to the dura mater (*n. tentorii*), is joined by filaments from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic, and gives off minute branches to communicate with the third and sixth nerves, and not infrequently with the fourth.

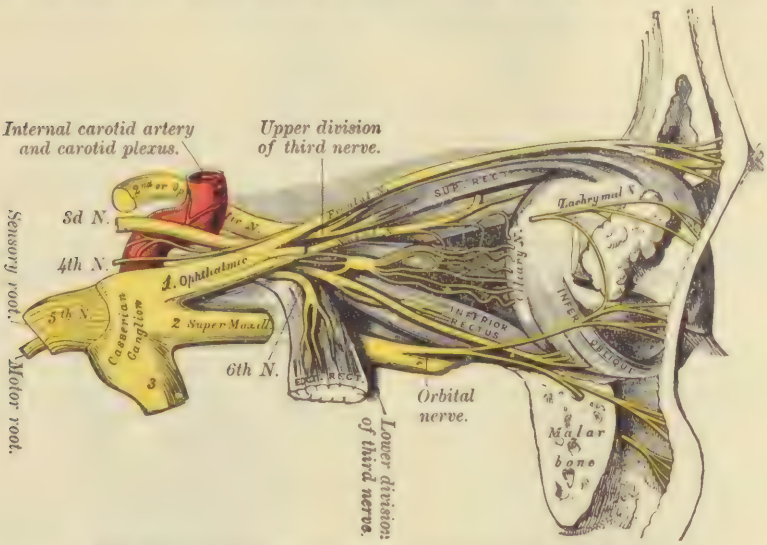


FIG. 669.—Nerves of the orbit and ophthalmic ganglion, side view.

Branches of Distribution.—It gives off recurrent filaments which pass between the layers of the tentorium, and then divide into—

Lachrymal. Frontal. Nasal.

The Lachrymal Nerve (*n. lacrimalis*) (Figs. 665, 669, 670, and 671).—The lachrymal is the smallest of the three branches of the ophthalmic. It sometimes receives a filament from the fourth nerve, but this is possibly derived from the branch of communication which passes from the ophthalmic to the fourth. It passes forward in a separate tube of dura mater, and enters the orbit through the narrowest part of the sphenoidal fissure (Fig. 675). In the orbit it runs along the upper border of the External rectus muscle, with the lachrymal artery, and communicates with the temporo-malar branch of the superior maxillary nerve. It enters the lachrymal gland and gives off several filaments, which supply the gland and the conjunctiva. Finally, it pierces the superior palpebral ligament, and terminates in the integument of the upper eyelid, joining with filaments of the facial nerve. The lachrymal nerve is occasionally absent, when its place is taken by the temporal branch of the superior maxillary. Sometimes the latter branch is absent, and a continuation of the lachrymal is substituted for it.

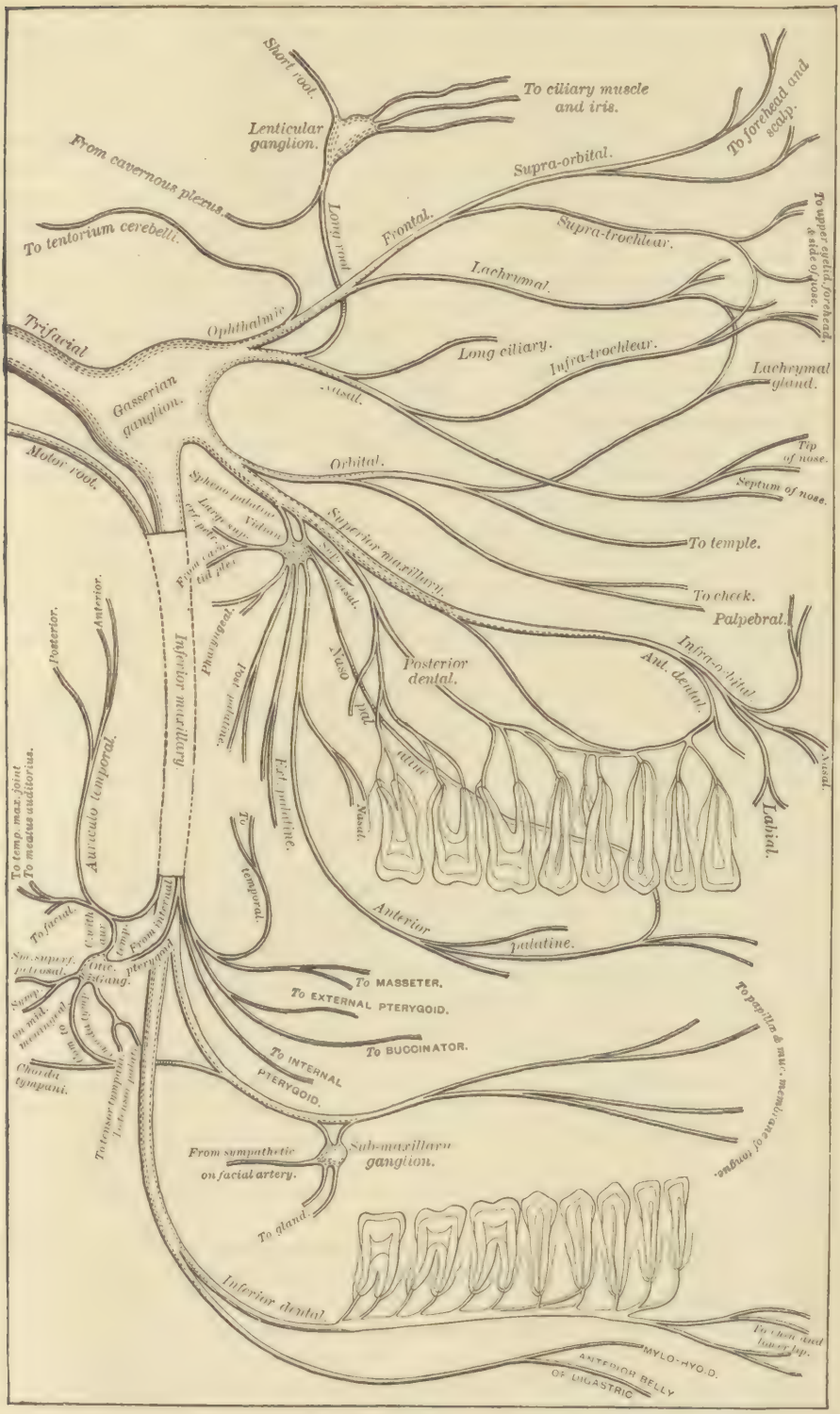


FIG. 670.—Plan of the fifth cranial nerve. (The lenticular ganglion is displaced from its normal position. The portion where the short root enters is really the inferior angle; in the diagram it is the superior angle.) (After Flower.)

The Frontal Nerve (*n. frontalis*) (Figs. 665, 669, and 670).—The frontal is the largest division of the ophthalmic, and may be regarded, both from its size and direction, as the continuation of the nerve. It enters the orbit above the muscles, through the sphenoidal fissure (Fig. 675), and runs forward along the middle line, between the Levator palpebrae and the periosteum. Midway between the apex and the base of the orbit it divides into two branches, **supratrochlear** and **supra-orbital.**

The **Supratrochlear Branch** (*n. supratrochlearis*) (Figs. 665 and 670), the smaller of the two, passes inward, above the pulley of the superior oblique muscle, and gives off a descending filament, which joins with the infratrochlear branch of the nasal nerve. It then escapes from the orbit between the pulley of the Superior oblique and the supraorbital foramen, curves up on to the forehead close to the bone, ascends beneath the Corrugator supercilii and Occipito-frontalis muscles, and, dividing into branches which pierce these muscles, it supplies the integument of the lower part of the forehead on either side of the middle line and sends filaments to the conjunctiva and skin of the upper lid.

The **Supraorbital Branch** (*n. supraorbitalis*) (Figs. 675 and 670) passes forward through the supraorbital foramen, and gives off, in this situation, **palpebral filaments** to the upper eyelid. It then ascends upon the forehead, and terminates in **cutaneous** and **pericranial branches.**

The **cutaneous branches,** two in number, an inner and an outer, supply the integument of the cranium as far back as the vertex. They are at first situated beneath the Occipito-frontalis, the inner branch perforating the frontal portion of the muscle, the outer branch its tendinous aponeurosis.

The **pericranial branches** are distributed to the pericranium over the frontal and parietal bones.

The Nasal Nerve (*n. nasociliaris*) (Figs. 665, 669, and 670).—The nasal nerve is intermediate in size between the frontal and lachrymal, and more deeply placed than the other branches of the ophthalmic. It enters the orbit by way of the sphenoidal fissure (Fig. 675) between the two heads of the External rectus, and passes obliquely inward across the optic nerve, beneath the Superior rectus and Superior oblique muscles, to the inner wall of the orbit, where it passes through the anterior ethmoidal foramen, and, entering the cavity of the cranium, traverses a shallow groove on the front of the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone, and passes down, through the slit by the side of the crista galli, into the nose (Fig. 672), where it divides into two branches, an **internal** and an **external branch.** The **internal branch** (*rami nasales mediales*) supplies the mucous membrane near the forepart of the septum of the nose. The **external branch** (*rami nasales laterales*) descends in a groove on the inner surface of the nasal bone, and supplies a few filaments to the mucous membrane covering the forepart of the outer wall of the nares as far as the inferior spongy bone; it then leaves the cavity of the nose, between the lower border of the nasal bone and the upper lateral cartilage of the nose, and, passing down beneath the Compressor nasi, supplies the integument of the ala and the tip of the nose, joining with the facial nerve.

Branches.—The branches of the nasal nerve are the **ganglionic, ciliary,** and **infratrochlear.**

The **Ganglionic Branch,** or the **long root of the ciliary ganglion** (*radix longa ganglii ciliaris*) (Figs. 666, 669, and 670), is a slender branch, about half an inch in length, which usually arises from the nasal nerve, between the two heads of the External rectus muscle. It passes forward on the outer side of the optic nerve, and enters the postero-superior angle of the ciliary ganglion, forming its long root. It is sometimes joined by a filament from the cavernous plexus of the sympathetic or from the superior division of the third nerve.

The **Long Ciliary Nerves** (*nn. ciliares longi*) (Fig. 670), two or three in number, are given off from the nasal as it crosses the optic nerve. They join the *short*

ciliary nerves (Figs. 666, 669, and 670) from the ciliary ganglion, pierce the posterior part of the sclerotic, and, running forward between it and the choroid, are distributed to the ciliary muscle, iris, and cornea.

The **Infratrochlear Branch** (*n. infratrochlearis*) (Figs. 665 and 670) is given off just before the nasal nerve passes through the anterior ethmoidal foramen. It runs forward along the upper border of the Internal rectus muscle, and is joined, beneath the pulley of the Superior oblique, by a filament from the supratrochlear nerve. It then passes to the inner angle of the eye, and supplies the integument of the eyelids and side of the nose, the conjunctiva, the lachrymal sac, and the caruncula lacrimalis.

Connected with the three divisions of the fifth nerve are four small ganglia. With the first division is connected the **ophthalmic ganglion**; with the second division, the **spheno-palatine** or **Meckel's ganglion**; and with the third, the **otic** and **submaxillary ganglia.** All the four receive sensory filaments from the fifth nerve, and motor and sympathetic filaments from various sources; these filaments are called the *roots of the ganglia.*

The **Ophthalmic, Lenticular** or **Ciliary Ganglion** (*ganglion ciliare*) (Figs. 666, 669, and 670) is a small, quadrangular, flattened ganglion, of a reddish-gray color, and about the size of a pin's head, situated at the back part of the orbit between the optic nerve and the External rectus muscle, lying generally on the outer side of the ophthalmic artery. It is enclosed in a quantity of loose fat, which makes its exposure by dissection somewhat difficult.

Its **branches of communication** or **roots** are three, all of which enter its posterior border. One, the **long** or **sensory root** (*radix longa ganglii ciliaris*), is derived from the nasal branch of the ophthalmic and joins the superior angle of the ganglion. The second, the **short** or **motor root** (*radix brevis ganglii ciliaris*), is a short, thick nerve, occasionally divided into two parts, which is derived from the branch of the **third nerve** to the Inferior oblique muscle, and is connected with the inferior angle of the ganglion. The third, the **sympathetic root** (*radix sympathetica ganglii ciliaris*), is a slender filament from the *cavernous plexus* of the sympathetic. This is frequently blended with the long root, though it sometimes passes to the ganglion separately. According to Tiedemann, this ganglion receives a filament of communication from the **spheno-palatine ganglion.**

Its **branches of distribution** are the **short ciliary nerves** (*nn. ciliares breves*) (Figs. 666, 669, and 670). These are delicate filaments, from six to ten in number, which arise from the forepart of the ganglion in two bundles, connected with its superior and inferior angles; the lower bundle is the larger. They run forward with the ciliary arteries in a wavy course, one set above and the other below the optic nerve, and are accompanied by the long ciliary nerves from the nasal nerve. They pierce the sclerotic at the back part of the globe, pass forward in delicate grooves on its inner surface, and are distributed to the Ciliary muscle, iris, and cornea. Tiedemann has described one small branch as penetrating the optic nerve with the arteria centralis retinae.

The **circular fibres** of the iris are innervated by the third nerve; the **radiating fibres** are innervated by the sympathetic.

The Superior Maxillary Nerve (*n. maxillaris*) (Figs. 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, and 672).—The superior maxillary or **second division of the fifth** is a sensory nerve. It is intermediate, both in position and size, between the ophthalmic and inferior maxillary. It commences at the middle of the Gasserian ganglion as a flattened plexiform band (Fig. 667), and, passing horizontally forward, it leaves the skull through the foramen rotundum (Fig. 668), where it becomes more cylindrical in form and firmer in texture. It then crosses the spheno-maxillary fossa (Fig. 67), enters the orbit through the spheno-maxillary fissure, traverses the infraorbital canal in the floor of the orbit, and appears upon the face of the infraorbital fora-

men. After it enters the infraorbital canal the nerve is usually called the **infraorbital** (*n. infraorbitalis*), and the infraorbital nerve is the terminal branch of the superior maxillary nerve (Fig. 671). At its termination the nerve lies beneath the Levator labii superioris muscle, and divides into a leash of branches, which spread out upon the side of the nose, the lower eyelid, and upper lip, joining with filaments of the facial nerve.

Branches of Distribution.—The branches of this nerve may be divided into four groups: 1. Those given off in the **cranium**. 2. Those given off in the **spheno-maxillary fossa**. 3. Those in the **infraorbital canal**. 4. Those on the **face**.

In the cranium . . .	Meningeal.
Spheno-maxillary fossa .	Orbital or temporo-malar. Spheno-palatine. Posterior superior dental.
Infraorbital canal . . .	Middle superior dental. Anterior superior dental.
On the face	Palpebral. Nasal. Labial.

The Meningeal Branch (*n. meningeus medius*).—The meningeal branch is given off by the superior maxillary nerve directly after its origin from the Gasserian ganglion; it accompanies the middle meningeal artery and supplies the dura mater of the middle fossa of the base of the skull.

The Orbital or Temporo-malar Branch (*n. zygomaticus*) (Figs. 669, 670, and 671).—The orbital or temporo-malar branch arises in the spheno-maxillary fossa, enters the orbit by the spheno-maxillary fissure, and divides at the back of that cavity into two branches, **temporal** and **malar**.

The **Temporal Branch** (*ramus zygomaticotemporalis*) runs in a groove along the outer wall of the orbit (in the malar bone), receives a branch of communication from the lachrymal, and, passing through a foramen in the malar bone, enters the temporal fossa. It ascends between the bone and the substance of the Temporal muscle, pierces this muscle and the temporal fascia about an inch above the zygoma, and is distributed to the integument covering the temple and side of the forehead, communicating with the facial and the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve. As it pierces the temporal fascia it gives off a slender twig, which runs between the two layers of the fascia to the outer angle of the orbit.

The **Malar Branch** (*ramus zygomaticofacialis*) passes along the external inferior angle of the orbit, emerges upon the face through a foramen in the malar bone, and, perforating the Orbicularis palpebrarum muscle, supplies the skin on the prominence of the cheek, where it is named the **subcutaneous malae**. It joins with the facial and the palpebral branches of the superior maxillary.

The Spheno-palatine Branches (*nn. sphenopalatini*) (Figs. 670 and 671).—The spheno-palatine branches, two in number, *descend* to the spheno-palatine ganglion, of which ganglion they are the sensory or short roots.

The Posterior Superior Dental Branches (*rami alveolares superiores posteriores*) (Figs. 670 and 671).—The posterior superior dental branches arise from the trunk of the nerve just as it is about to enter the infraorbital canal; they are generally two in number, but sometimes arise by a single trunk, and immediately divide and pass downward on the tuberosity of the superior maxillary bone. They give off several twigs to the gums and neighboring parts of the mucous membrane of the cheek, **superior gingival branches** (*rami gingivales superiores*). They then enter the posterior dental canals on the zygomatic surface of the superior maxillary bone, and, passing from behind forward in the substance of the bone,

communicate with the middle dental nerve by a plexus formation, and give off branches to the lining membrane of the antrum and three twigs to each of the molar teeth. These twigs enter the foramina at the apices of the fangs and supply the pulp.

The Middle Superior Dental Branch (*ramus alveolaris superior medius*) (Fig. 670).—The middle superior dental branch is given off from the superior maxillary nerve in the back part of the infraorbital canal, and runs downward and forward in a special canal in the outer wall of the antrum to supply the two bicuspid teeth. It communicates with the posterior and anterior dental branches by a plexus formation. At its point of communication with the posterior branch, above the root of the second bicuspid tooth, is a slight thickening which has received the name of the **ganglion of Valentin**; and at its point of communication with the anterior branch is a second enlargement, which is called the **ganglion of Bochdalek.** Neither of these is probably a true ganglion.

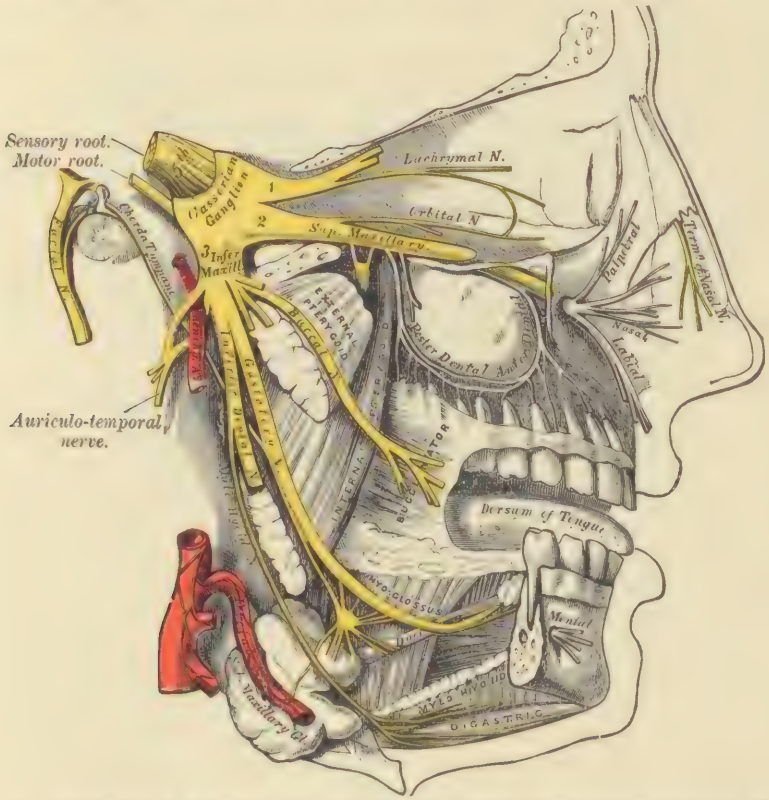


FIG. 671.—Distribution of the second and third divisions of the fifth nerve and submaxillary ganglion.

The Anterior Superior Dental Branch (*ramus alveolaris superior anteriores*) (Fig. 670).—The anterior superior dental branch, of large size, is given off from the superior maxillary nerve just before its exit from the infraorbital foramen; it enters a special canal in the anterior wall of the antrum, and divides into a series of branches which supply the incisor and canine teeth. It communicates with the middle dental nerve by a plexus, and gives off a **nasal branch,** which passes through a minute canal into the nasal fossa, and supplies the mucous membrane of the forepart of the inferior meatus and the floor of the cavity, communicating with the nasal branches from Meckel's ganglion.

The **superior dental plexus** (*plexus dentalis superior*) is formed by twigs of the three superior dental nerves. From the plexus come the nerves which supply the

teeth of the upper jaw (*rami dentales superiores*) and the gums (*rami gingivales superiores*).

The branches upon the face are known as the *rami n. infraorbitalis* (Fig. 671). There are three sets of them.

The Palpebral Branches (*rami palpebrales inferiores*).—The palpebral branches pass upward beneath the Orbicularis palpebrarum muscle. They supply the integument and conjunctiva of the lower eyelid, with sensation, joining at the outer angle of the orbit with the facial nerve and the malar branch of the orbital.

The Nasal Branches (*rami nasales interni*).—The nasal branches pass inward; they supply the integument of the side of the nose and join with the nasal branch of the ophthalmic.

The Labial Branches (*rami labiales superiores*).—The labial branches, the largest and most numerous, descend beneath the Levator labii superioris muscle, and are distributed to the integument of the upper lip, the mucous membrane of the mouth, and the labial glands.

All these branches are joined, immediately beneath the orbit, by filaments from the facial nerve, forming an intricate plexus, the **infraorbital plexus.**

The Spheno-palatine or **Meckel's Ganglion** (*ganglion sphenopalatinum*) (Figs. 670 and 672).—The spheno-palatine ganglion, the largest of the cranial ganglia, is deeply placed in the spheno-maxillary fossa, close to the spheno-palatine foramen. It is triangular or heart-shaped, of a reddish-gray color, and is situated just below the superior maxillary nerve as it crosses the fossa.

Branches of Communication.—Like the other ganglia of the fifth nerve, it possesses a motor, a sensory, and a sympathetic root. Its **sensory root** is derived from the superior maxillary nerve through its two spheno-palatine branches (p. 1032). These branches of the nerve are given off in the spheno-maxillary fossa and descend to the ganglion. Their fibres, for the most part, pass in front of the ganglion, as they proceed to their destination, in the palate and nasal fossa, and are not incorporated in the ganglionic mass; some few of the fibres, however, enter the ganglion, constituting its sensory root. Its **motor root** is derived from the facial nerve through the large superficial petrosal nerve, and its **sympathetic root** from the carotid plexus, through the large deep petrosal nerve. These two nerves join together before their entrance into the ganglion to form a single nerve, the **Vidian.**

The **Large** or **Great Superficial Petrosal Branch** (*n. petrosus superficialis major*) (Fig. 676) is given off from the **geniculate ganglion** of the facial nerve in the aquaeductus Fallopii; it passes through the hiatus Fallopii; enters the cranial cavity, and runs forward, being contained in a groove on the anterior surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone and lying beneath the dura mater. It then enters the cartilaginous substance which fills in the foramen lacerum medium basis cranii, and, joining with the large deep petrosal branch, forms the Vidian nerve.

The **Large** or **Great Deep Petrosal Branch** (*n. petrosus profundus*) (Fig. 677) is given off from the carotid plexus of the sympathetic upon the internal carotid artery, and runs through the carotid canal on the outer side of the internal carotid artery. It then enters the cartilaginous substance which fills in the foramen lacerum medium basis cranii, and joins with the large superficial petrosal nerve to form the Vidian.

The **Vidian Nerve** (*n. canalis pterygoidei*) (Figs. 670 and 672), formed in the cartilaginous substance which fills in the middle lacerated foramen by the junction of the two preceding nerves, passes forward, through the Vidian canal, with the artery of the same name, and is joined by a small ascending nervous branch, the **sphenoidal branch,** from the **otic ganglion.** Finally, it enters the spheno-maxillary fossa, and joins the posterior angle of Meckel's ganglion.

Branches of Distribution of the Spheno-palatine Ganglion.—Its branches of distribution are divisible into four groups: **ascending**, which pass to the orbit; **descending**, to the palate: **internal**, to the nose; and **posterior branches**, to the pharynx and nasal fossae.

The **Ascending Branches** (*rami orbitales*) are two or three delicate filaments, which enter the orbit by the spheno-maxillary fissure, and supply the periosteum. According to Luschka, some filaments pass through foramina in the suture between the os planum of the ethmoid and frontal bones to supply the mucous membrane of the posterior ethmoidal and sphenoidal sinuses.

The **Descending** or **Palatine Branches** (*nn. palatini*) (Figs. 670 and 672) are distributed to the roof of the mouth, the soft palate, tonsil, and lining membrane of the nose. They are almost a direct continuation of the spheno-palatine branches of the superior maxillary nerve, and are three in number—**anterior, middle,** and **posterior.**

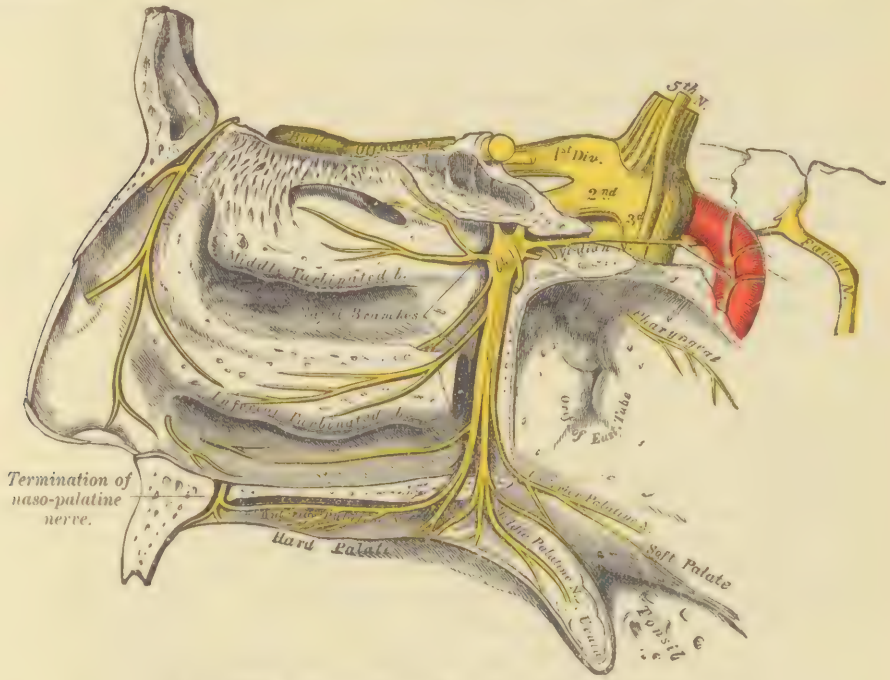


FIG. 672.—The spheno-palatine or Meckel's ganglion and its branches.

The **anterior** or **large palatine nerve** (*n. palatinus anterior*) descends through the **large posterior palatine canal,** emerges upon the hard palate at the posterior palatine foramen, and passes forward through a groove in the hard palate nearly as far as the incisor teeth. It supplies the gums, the mucous membrane and glands of the hard palate, and communicates in front with the termination of the **naso-palatine nerve** (p. 1036). While in the posterior palatine canal it gives off **inferior nasal branches** (*rami nasales posteriores inferiores*), which enter the nose through openings in the palate bone, and ramify over the inferior turbinated bone, the middle and the inferior meatus; and at its exit from the canal a palatine branch is distributed to both surfaces of the soft palate.

The **middle** or **external palatine nerve** (*n. palatinus medius*) descends through one of the **accessory palatine canals,** distributing branches to the uvula, tonsil, and soft palate. It is occasionally wanting.

The **posterior** or **small palatine nerve** (*n. palatinus posterior*) descends with a minute artery through the **small posterior palatine canal,** emerging by a separate

opening behind the posterior palatine foramen. It supplies the Levator palati and Azygos uvulae muscles,[1] the soft palate, tonsil, and uvula. The middle and posterior palatine join with the tonsillar branches of the glosso-pharyngeal to form the plexus around the tonsil, the **circulus tonsillaris.**

The **Internal Branches** are distributed to the septum and outer wall of the nasal fossae. They are the **posterior superior nasal** and the **naso-palatine.**

The **posterior superior nasal branches** (*rami nasales posteriores superiores*), three in number, enter the back part of the nasal fossa by the spheno-palatine foramen. They supply the mucous membrane covering the superior and middle spongy bones, and that lining the posterior ethmoidal cells, a few being prolonged to the upper and back part of the septum.

The **naso-palatine nerve** (*n. nasopalatinus*) has been called the **nerve of Scarpa** and also the **nerve of Cotunnius.** It enters the nasal fossa through the spheno-palatine foramen, and passes inward across the roof of the nose, below the orifice of the sphenoidal sinus, to reach the septum; it then runs obliquely downward and forward along the lower part of the septum, to the anterior palatine foramen, lying between the periosteum and mucous membrane. It descends to the roof of the mouth through the **anterior palatine canal** (Fig. 672). The two nerves are here contained in separate and distinct canals, situated in the intermaxillary suture, and termed the **foramina of Scarpa,** the left nerve being usually anterior to the right one. In the mouth they become united, supply the mucous membrane behind the incisor teeth, and join with the anterior palatine nerve. The naso-palatine nerve furnishes a few small filaments to the mucous membrane of the septum.

The **Posterior Branches** are the **pharyngeal** or **pterygo-palatine** and the **upper posterior nasal branches.**

The **pharyngeal** or **pterygo-palatine nerve** (Figs. 670 and 672) is a small branch arising from the back part of the **spheno-palatine ganglion,** being generally blended with the Vidian nerve. It passes through the **pterygo-palatine canal** with the pterygo-palatine artery, and is distributed to the mucous membrane of the upper part of the pharynx, behind the Eustachian tube.

The **upper posterior nasal branches** are a few twigs given off from the posterior part of the **spheno-palatine ganglion,** which run backward in the sheath of the Vidian nerve to the mucous membrane at the back part of the roof, septum, and superior meatus of the nose and that covering the end of the Eustachian tube.

The Mandibular or Inferior Maxillary Nerve (*n. mandibularis*) (Figs. 667, 669, 670, and 671).—The **inferior maxillary** or **third division of the fifth nerve** distributes branches to the teeth and gums of the lower jaw, the integument of the temple and external ear, the lower part of the face and lower lip, and the muscles of mastication; it also supplies the tongue with a large branch. It is the largest of the three divisions of the fifth, and is made up of two roots: a **large** or **sensory root,** proceeding from the inferior angle of the Gasserian ganglion; and a **small** or **motor root,** which passes beneath the ganglion and unites with the sensory root just after its exit from the skull through the **foramen ovale** (Figs. 667, 668, 670, and 671). Immediately beneath the base of the skull this nerve divides into two trunks, **anterior** and **posterior.** Previous to its division the primary trunk gives off from its inner side a recurrent branch and the nerve to the Internal pterygoid muscle.

The Recurrent or Meningeal Branch (*n. spinosus*).—The recurrent or meningeal branch is given off directly after the exit of the mandibular nerve from the foramen ovale. It passes backward into the skull through the foramen spinosum with the middle meningeal artery. It divides into two branches, **anterior** and **posterior,** which accompany the main divisions of the artery and supply the dura mater. The pos-

[1] It is probable that this is not the true motor supply to these muscles, but that they are supplied by the spinal accessory through the pharyngeal plexus.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

terior branch also supplies the mucous lining of the mastoid cells. The anterior branch communicates with the meningeal branch of the superior maxillary nerve.

The Internal Pterygoid Nerve (*n. pterygoideus internus*) (Fig. 670).—The internal pterygoid nerve, given off from the inferior maxillary previous to its division, is intimately connected at its origin with the otic ganglion. It is a long and slender branch, which passes inward to enter the deep surface of the Internal pterygoid muscle.

The **anterior** and smaller division of the inferior maxillary nerve, which receives nearly the whole of the motor root of the fifth nerve, divides into branches which supply the muscles of mastication. They are the **masseteric, deep temporal, buccal,** and **external pterygoid branches** (Figs. 670 and 671).

The **Masseteric Branch** (*n. massetericus*) passes outward, above the External pterygoid muscle, in front of the temporo-mandibular articulation and behind the tendon of the temporal muscle; it crosses the sigmoid notch with the masseteric artery, to the deep surface of the Masseter muscle, in which it ramifies nearly as far as its anterior border. It occasionally gives a branch to the Temporal muscle, and a filament to the articulation of the jaw.

The **Deep Temporal Branches** (*nn. temporales profundi*), two in number, anterior and posterior, supply the deep surface of the Temporal muscle. The **posterior branch** (*n. temporalis profundus posterior*), of small size, is placed at the back of the temporal fossa. It is sometimes joined with the masseteric branch. The **anterior branch** (*n. temporalis profundus anterior*) is frequently given off from the buccal nerve; it is reflected upward, at the pterygoid ridge of the sphenoid, to the front of the temporal fossa. Sometimes there are three deep temporal branches, and if this maintains the third branch, the **middle deep temporal,** passes outward above the External pterygoid muscle, and runs upward on the bone to enter the deep surface of the Temporal muscle.

The **Buccal** or **Buccinator Branch** (*n. buccinatorius*) passes forward between the two heads of the External pterygoid, and downward beneath the inner surface of the coronoid processes of the lower jaw, or through the fibres of the Temporal muscle, to reach the surface of the Buccinator muscle, upon which it divides into a superior and an inferior branch. It gives a branch to the External pterygoid during its passage through that muscle, and a few ascending filaments to the Temporal muscle, one of which occasionally joins with the anterior branch of the deep temporal nerve. The **superior** or **upper branch** supplies the integument and upper part of the Buccinator muscle, joining with the facial nerve around the facial vein. The **inferior** or **lower branch** passes forward to the angle of the mouth; it supplies the integument and Buccinator muscle, as well as the mucous membrane lining the inner surface of that muscle, and joins the facial nerve.[1]

The **External Pterygoid Nerve** (*n. pterygoideus externus*) is most frequently derived from the buccal, but it may be given off separately from the anterior trunk of the mandibular nerve. It enters the muscle on its inner surface.

The **posterior** and **larger division** of the inferior maxillary nerve is for the most part sensory, but receives a few filaments from the motor root. It divides into three branches: **auriculo-temporal, lingual** (gustatory), and **inferior dental** (Figs. 670, 671).

The **Auriculo-temporal Nerve** (*n. auriculotemporalis*) (Fig. 673) generally arises by two roots, between which the middle meningeal artery passes. It runs backward beneath the External pterygoid muscle to the inner side of the neck of the lower jaw. It then turns upward with the temporal artery, between the external ear and the condyle of the jaw, under cover of the parotid gland, and, escaping from beneath this structure, ascends over the zygoma and divides into two **temporal branches.**

[1] There seems to be no reason to doubt that the branch supplying the Buccinator muscle is entirely a nerve of ordinary sensation, and that the true motor supply of this muscle is from the facial.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

The **branches of communication** are with the **facial** and with the **otic ganglion.** The branches of communication with the facial (*rami anastomotici cum n. faciali*), usually two in number, pass forward from behind the neck of the condyle of the jaw, to join this nerve at the posterior border of the Masseter muscle. They form one of the principal branches of communication between the facial and the fifth nerve. The filaments of communication with the otic ganglion are derived from the commencement of the auriculo-temporal nerve.

The **branches of distribution** are—

Anterior auricular.
Branches to the meatus auditorius.
Articular.
Parotid.
Superficial temporal.

The **anterior auricular branches** (*nn. auriculares anteriores*) are usually two in number. They supply the front of the upper part of the pinna, being distributed principally to the skin covering the front of the helix and tragus.

Branch to the external auditory meatus (*n. meatus auditorii externi*) divides into two. The two nerves enter the canal between the bony and cartilaginous portion of the meatus. They supply the skin lining the meatus; the upper one sending a filament to the membrana tympani (*ramus membranae tympani*).

A branch to the temporo-mandibular articulation, the **articular branch,** is usually derived from the auriculo-temporal nerve.

The **parotid branches** (*rami parotidei*) supply the parotid gland.

The **superficial temporal branches** (*rami temporales superficiales*) accompany the temporal artery to the vertex of the skull, and supplies the integument of the temporal region, communicating with the facial nerve, and with the temporal branch of the temporo-malar, from the superior maxillary.

The Lingual Nerve or Gustatory Nerve (*n. lingualis*) (Figs. 670 and 671).—The lingual or gustatory nerve supplies the papillae and mucous membrane of the **anterior two-thirds of the tongue.** It is deeply placed throughout the whole of its course. It lies at first beneath the External pterygoid muscle, together with the inferior dental nerve, being placed to the inner side of this nerve, and is occasionally joined to it by a branch which may cross the internal maxillary artery. The **chorda tympani nerve** also joins it at an acute angle in this situation. The nerve then passes between the Internal pterygoid muscle and the inner side of the ramus of the jaw, and crosses obliquely to the side of the tongue over the Superior constrictor of the pharynx and the Stylo-glossus muscles, and then between the Hyo-glossus muscle and the deep part of the submaxillary gland; the nerve finally runs across **Wharton's duct,** and along the side of the tongue to its apex, lying immediately beneath the mucous membrane.

The **branches of communication** are with the facial through the chorda tympani, with the inferior dental and hypoglossal nerves, and the submaxillary ganglion. The chorda tympani branch of the facial joins the lingual nerve under the external pterygoid muscle and is distributed with the lingual to the tongue. The hypoglossal nerve and the lingual nerve lie near together, over the Hyo-glossus muscle, and the two nerves are joined by loops (*rami anastomotici cum n. hypoglosso*). The branches to the submaxillary ganglion are two or three in number; those connected with the hypoglossal nerve form a plexus at the anterior margin of the Hyo-glossus muscle.

The **branches of distribution** supply the mucous membrane of the mouth, the gums, the sublingual gland, the filiform and fungiform papillae and mucous membrane of the tongue; the terminal filaments communicate, at the tip of the tongue, with the hypoglossal nerve. The lingual fibres are fibres of common sensation. The chorda tympani fibres which join the lingual nerve are probably taste-fibres.

The Inferior Dental Nerve (*n. alveolaris inferior*) (Figs. 670 and 671).—The inferior dental is the largest of the branches of the inferior maxillary nerve. It passes downward with the inferior dental artery, at first beneath the External pterygoid muscle, and then between the internal lateral ligament and the ramus of the jaw to the **dental foramen.** It then passes forward in the **dental canal** of the inferior maxillary bone, lying beneath the teeth, as far as the **mental foramen,** where it divides into two terminal branches, incisor and mental.

The **Branches** of the inferior dental are: the **mylo-hyoid, dental, incisor,** and **mental.**

The **Mylo-hyoid** (*n. mylohyoideus*) is derived from the inferior dental just as that nerve is about to enter the **dental foramen.** It descends in a groove on the inner surface of the ramus of the jaw, in which it is retained by a process of fibrous membrane. It reaches the under surface of the Mylo-hyoid muscle, and supplies it and the anterior belly of the Digastric.

The **Dental Branches** supply the molar and bicuspid teeth. They correspond in number to the fangs of those teeth: each nerve entering the orifice at the point of the fang and supplying the pulp of the tooth.

The **Incisor Branch** is continued onward within the bone to the middle line, and supplies the canine and incisor teeth.

The dental branches and the incisor branch form a plexus (*plexus dentalis inferior*), and from this plexus come the branches to the teeth (*rami dentales inferiores*) and to the gums (*rami gingivales inferiores*).

The **Mental Branch** (*n. mentalis*) emerges from the bone at the **mental foramen,** and divides beneath the Depressor anguli oris muscle into two or three branches; one descends to supply the skin of the chin, and another (sometimes two) ascends to supply the skin and mucous membrane of the lower lip. These branches communicate freely with the facial nerve.

Two small ganglia are connected with the inferior maxillary nerve—the **otic** with the trunk of the nerve, and the **submaxillary** with its lingual branch.

Otic or Arnold's Ganglion (*ganglion oticum*) (Figs. 670 and 673).—The otic or Arnold's ganglion is a small, oval-shaped, flattened ganglion of a reddish-gray color, situated immediately below the foramen ovale, on the inner surface of the inferior maxillary nerve, and round the origin of the internal pterygoid nerve. It is in relation, *externally*, with the trunk of the inferior maxillary nerve, at the point where the motor root joins the sensory portion; *internally*, with the cartilaginous part of the Eustachian tube, and the origin of the Tensor palati muscle; *behind*, it lies in the middle meningeal artery.

Branches of Communication.—This ganglion is connected with the internal pterygoid branch of the inferior maxillary nerve by two or three short delicate filaments. From this nerve the ganglion may obtain a motor root, and possibly also a sensory root, as these filaments from the nerve to the Internal pterygoid perhaps contain sensory fibres. The otic ganglion communicates with the glossopharyngeal and facial nerves through the **small superficial petrosal nerve** (Figs. 673 and 676) continued from the tympanic plexus, and through this communication it probably receives its sensory root from the **glosso-pharyngeal** and its motor root from the **facial**; its communication with the sympathetic is effected by a filament from the plexus surrounding the middle meningeal artery. The ganglion also communicates with the auriculo-temporal nerve (*ramus anastomoticus cum n. auriculotemporali*). This communicating filament is probably a branch from the glosso-pharyngeal which passes to the ganglion, and through it and the auriculo-temporal nerve to the parotid gland. A slender filament, the **sphenoidal,** ascends from it to the Vidian nerve.

Branches of Distribution.—Its branches of distribution are a filament to the Tensor tympani (*n. tensoris tympani*) and one to the Tensor palati (*n. tensoris veli*

palatini). The former passes backward on the outer side of the Eustachian tube; the latter arises from the ganglion, near the origin of the internal pterygoid nerve, and passes forward. The fibres of these nerves are, however, mainly derived from the nerve to the Internal pterygoid muscle. It also gives off a small communicating branch to the chorda tympani (*ramus anastomoticus cum n. chorda tympani*).

The Submaxillary Ganglion (*ganglion submaxillare*) (Figs. 670 and 671).—The submaxillary ganglion is of small size, fusiform in shape, and situated above the deep portion of the submaxillary gland, near the posterior border of the Mylo-hyoid muscle, being connected by filaments with the lower border of the lingual or gustatory nerve.

Branches of Communication.—This ganglion is connected with the lingual nerve by a few filaments (*rami communicantes cum n. linguali*), which join it separately at its fore and back part. It also receives a branch from the chorda tympani, by which it communicates with the facial, and communicates with the sympathetic by filaments from the sympathetic plexus around the facial artery.

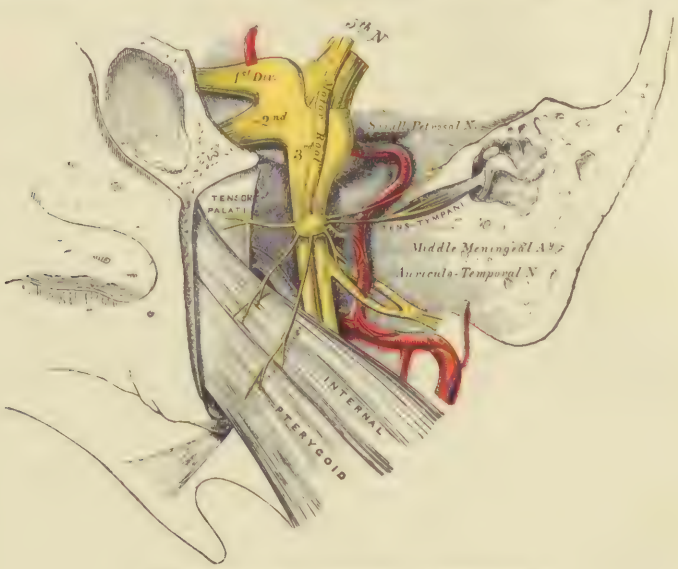


FIG. 673.—The otic ganglion and its branches.

Branches of Distribution.—These are five or six in number; they arise from the lower part of the ganglion, and supply the mucous membrane of the mouth and Wharton's duct, some being lost in the submaxillary gland (*rami submaxillares*). The branch of communication from the lingual nerve to the forepart of the ganglion is by some regarded as a branch of distribution, by which filaments of the chorda tympani pass from the ganglion to the lingual nerve, and by it are conveyed to the sublingual gland and the tongue.

Summary of the Distribution and Connections of the Fifth Nerve.—It is the chief sensory nerve of the face, the anterior half of the scalp, the mouth, nasal cavity, lips, teeth, anterior two-thirds of the tongue, orbit, and eyeball. The clearly defined cutaneous distributions of the branches are shown in Fig. 674. The motor portion of the nerve supplies the muscles of mastication, the mylo-hyoid, and the anterior belly of the digastric. By way of branches from the otic ganglion it supplies the Tensor tympani and Tensor palati muscles, and by way of branches from the spheno-palatine ganglion perhaps supplies the Levator palati and Azygos uvulae muscles, although it is more probable that these muscles

receive their motor influence by the spinal accessory through the pharyngeal plexus. The ganglia associated with the nerve create communications with the sympathetic, the motor oculi, the facial, and the glosso-pharyngeal, and through these ganglia, as Prof. Cunningham says, "important organs, areas, and muscles" are innervated. The trigeminal communicates many times with the facial, and thus gives sensory fibres to the "muscles of expression supplied by the facial nerve."[1]

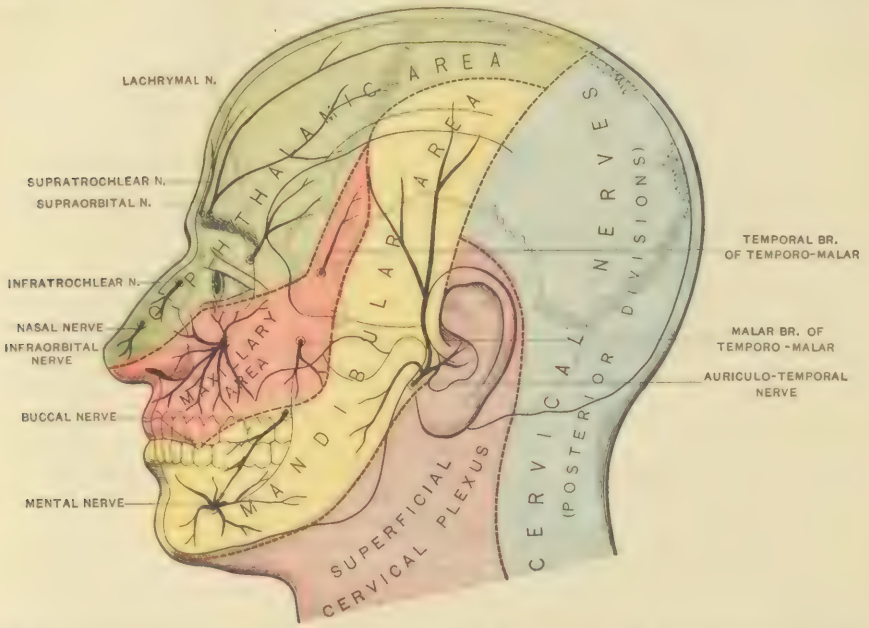


FIG. 674.—Sensory areas of the head, showing the general distribution of the three divisions of the fifth nerve. Gerrish's Anatomy. (Modified from Testut.)

Surface Marking. It will be seen from the above description that the three terminal branches of the three divisions of the fifth nerve emerge from foramina in the bones of the skull and pass on to the face: the terminal branch of the first division emerging through the supraorbital foramen; that of the second through the infraorbital foramen; and the third through the mental foramen. The supraorbital foramen is situated at the junction of the internal and middle third of the supraorbital arch. If a straight line is drawn from this point to the lower border of the inferior maxillary bone, so that it passes between the two bicuspid teeth of the lower jaw, it will pass over the infraorbital and mental foramina, the former being situated about one centimetre (two-fifths of an inch) below the margin of the orbit, and the latter varying in position according to the age of the individual. In the adult it is midway between the upper and lower borders of the inferior maxillary bone; in the child it is nearer the lower border; and in the edentulous jaw of old age it is close to the upper margin.

Surgical Anatomy. In *fracture of the base of the skull*, the fifth nerve or one of its branches may be injured. It seems certain that occasionally, though seldom, the fifth nerve may be actually divided by such an injury. The fifth nerve may be affected in its entirety, or its sensory or motor root may be affected, or one of its primary main divisions. In injury to the sensory root there is anæsthesia of the half of the face on the side of the lesion, with the exception of the skin over the parotid gland; insensibility of the conjunctiva, followed, if the eye is not temporarily protected with a watch-glass, by destructive inflammation of the cornea, partly, it is held, from loss of trophic influence, and partly, it is certain, from the irritation produced by the presence of foreign bodies on it, which are not perceived by the patient, and therefore not expelled by the act of winking; dryness of the nose, loss to a considerable extent of the sense of taste, and diminished secretion of the lachrymal and salivary glands. In injury to the motor root there is impaired action of the lower jaw from paralysis of the muscles of mastication on the affected side.

The fifth nerve is often the seat of *neuralgia*, and each of the three divisions has been divided or a portion of the nerve excised for this affection. The **supraorbital nerve** may be exposed

[1] Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

by making an incision an inch and a half in length along the supraorbital margin below the eyebrow, which is to be drawn upward, the centre of the incision corresponding to the supraorbital notch. The skin and Orbicularis palpebrarum having been divided, the nerve can be easily found emerging from the notch and lying in some loose cellular tissue. It should be drawn up by a blunt hook and divided, or, what is better, a portion of it should be removed. The *infraorbital nerve* has been divided at its exit by an incision on the cheek; or the floor of the orbit has been exposed, the infraorbital canal opened up, and the anterior part of the nerve resected; or the whole nerve, together with Meckel's ganglion as far back as the foramen rotundum, has been removed. This latter operation, though undoubtedly a severe proceeding, appears to have been followed by better results than has nerve resection. The operation is performed as follows: The superior maxillary bone is first exposed by a T-shaped incision, one limb of the incision passing along the lower margin of the orbit, the other from the centre of the first cut vertically down the cheek toward the angle of the mouth. The nerve is then found, is divided, and a piece of silk is tied to it as a guide. A small trephine (one-half inch) is then applied to the bone below, but including the infraorbital foramen, and the antrum opened. The trephine is now applied to the posterior wall of the antrum, and the spheno-maxillary fossa exposed. The infraorbital canal is now opened up from below by fine cutting-pliers or a chisel, and the nerve drawn down into the trephine hole, it being held on the stretch by means of the piece of silk; it is severed with fine curved scissors as near the foramen rotundum as possible, any branches coming off from the ganglion being also divided.[1] The *mental branch of the inferior dental nerve* may be divided at its exit from the foramen through an incision made through the mucous membrane where it is reflected from the alveolar process on to the lower lip; or a portion of the trunk of the *inferior dental nerve* may be resected through an incision on the cheek through the Masseter muscle, exposing the outer surface of the ramus of the jaw. A trephine is then applied over the position of the inferior dental foramen and the outer table removed, so as to expose the inferior dental canal. The nerve is dissected out of the portion of the canal exposed, and, having been divided after its exit from the mental foramen, it is by traction on the end exposed in the trephine-hole, drawn out entire, and cut off as high up as possible.[2] The inferior dental nerve has also been divided through an incision within the mouth, the bony point guarding the inferior dental foramen forming the guide to the nerve. The *buccal nerve* may be divided by an incision through the mucous membrane of the mouth and the Buccinator muscle just in front of the anterior border of the ramus of the lower jaw (Stimson).

In inveterate neuralgia of one or two of the branches of the fifth nerve a peripheral operation may cure the case, but seldom does. It often gives relief, perhaps for months. In neuralgia of the second division *or* third division, or of the second division *and* third division, Abbe, of New York, opens the skull and divides the nerve or nerves by an intracranial operation, removes a piece of nerve so as the foramen of exit is empty, and covers the foramen with rubber tissue, to hinder regrowth of the nerve. Other operators, after removing a piece from each nerve, have plugged the foramina of the exit with dentists' cement or silver-foil.

Rose's method of neurectomy is very valuable for neuralgia of the second division. It is a modification of the Braun-Lossen method. The infraorbital nerve is exposed, a ligature is tied about it, the roof of the infraorbital canal is chiselled open, and the nerve is freed as far back as possible. An incision is made from below the external angular process outward along the zygoma to in front of the lobule of the ear, downward to just above the angle of the jaw, and forward for two inches. The flap is raised and the zygoma is exposed. The root of the zygoma is drilled at two points, and the zygomatic process of the temporal bone is drilled at two points. The bone is sawed in two places between the drill-holes. The freed arch is lifted down and back, the tendon of the temporal muscle is drawn backward, and the pterygo-maxillary fossa is thus exposed. The internal maxillary artery is divided between two ligatures. The External pterygoid muscle is separated from the greater wing of the sphenoid and from the root of the external pterygoid process. The superior maxillary nerve is grasped and twisted off as near the ganglion as possible. The entire nerve is then drawn back from the infraorbital foramen and removed. The wound is then closed. If the third division is also haunted by neuralgia, it too should be removed a few weeks after the performance of Rose's operation.

If a peripheral operation fails, or if all the branches of the fifth are involved, the Gasserian ganglion must be removed or the sensory root of the fifth must be divided, as suggested by Frazier and Spiller.

Removal of the Gasserian ganglion was suggested by J. Ewing Mears in 1884, and was first carried out by Rose in 1890.

The method chiefly in vogue was devised by Hartley, and was first performed by him in 1891. An osteoplastic flap is made in front of the ear, the dura is exposed and lifted. Following Krause's advice, the third division is exposed and clamped. The second division is exposed and clamped. The nerves are loosened from their beds and then are rolled about the clamps. This twisting

[1] Carnochan, American Journal of the Medical Sciences, 1858, p. 136.
[2] Mears, Transactions of the American Surgical Association, vol. ii. p. 469.

pulls out the ganglion intact along with the motor root, and also the sensory root from the pons.

A difficulty in the Hartley operation is the danger of division of the meningeal artery. If this happens, the surgeon may be able to arrest bleeding and proceed with the operation. If the vessel is torn off at the foramen spinosum, it will be necessary to pack the wound and postpone any further operative manipulation for forty-eight hours.

Dr. Harvey Cushing has modified Hartley's operation by trephining the wall of the temporal fossa very low down. He opens the skull *below* the arch of the meningeal vessels, and thus avoids the meningeal at the foramen spinosum, and also the sulcus arteriosus of the parietal bone.

After the removal of the ganglion, Professor Keen, in order to prevent undue inflammation of the eye, sews the eyelids of the affected side together, leaving a space open at each angle, and covers the eye with a watch-crystal. Boracic acid solution is flushed into the opening at the external angle at frequent intervals. The stitches are removed from the lid in from eight to ten days.

The *lingual* (gustatory) nerve is occasionally divided with the view of relieving the pain in cancerous disease of the tongue. This may be done in that part of its course where it lies below and behind the last molar tooth. If a line is drawn from the middle of the crown of the last molar tooth to the angle of the jaw, it will cross the nerve, which lies about half an inch behind the tooth, parallel to the bulging alveolar ridge on the inner side of the body of the bone. If the knife is entered three-quarters of an inch behind and below the last molar tooth and carried down to the bone, the nerve will be divided. Hilton divided it opposite the second molar tooth, where it is covered only by the mucous membrane, and Lucas pulls the tongue forward and over to the opposite side, when the nerve can be seen standing out as a firm cord under the mucous membrane by the side of the tongue and can be easily seized with a sharp hook and divided or a portion excised. This is a simple enough operation on the cadaver, but when the disease is extensive and has extended to the floor of the mouth, as is generally the case when division of the nerve is thought of, the operation is not practicable.

THE SIXTH OR ABDUCENT NERVE (N. ABDUCENS) (Fig. 669).

The sixth or abducent nerve supplies the External rectus muscle. Its *superficial origin* is by several filaments from the constricted part of the pyramid, close to the pons, or from the lower border of the pons itself, in the groove between this body and the medulla. Its *deep origin* is from the upper part of the floor of the fourth ventricle, close to the median line, beneath the eminentia teres (Fig. 613.)

From the nucleus of the sixth nerve fibres pass through the posterior longitudinal bundle to the oculo-motor nucleus of the opposite side and into the third nerve, along which they are carried to the Internal rectus muscle. The External rectus of one eye and the Internal rectus of the other may therefore be said to receive their nerves from the same nucleus—a factor of great importance in connection with the conjugate movements of the eyeball, and one that may explain certain paralytic phenomena of the Recti muscles, which are often associated with lesions in the pons.

The nerve pierces the dura mater on the basilar surface of the sphenoid bone, runs through a notch immediately below the posterior clinoid process, and enters the cavernous sinus. It passes forward through the sinus, lying on the outer side of the internal carotid artery (Fig. 454). It enters the orbit through the sphenoid fissure, and lies above the ophthalmic vein, from which it is separated by a lamina of dura mater (Fig. 675). It then passes between the two heads of the External rectus muscle, and is distributed to that muscle on its ocular surface.

Branches of Communication.—It is joined by several filaments from the carotid and cavernous plexuses, and by one from the ophthalmic nerve.

Relations to Each Other of the Third, Fourth, Ophthalmic Division of the Fifth and Sixth Nerves as They Pass to the Orbit.—The third, the fourth, the ophthalmic division of the fifth, and the sixth nerves, as they pass to the orbit, bear a certain relation to each other in the cavernous sinus, at the sphenoidal fissure, and in the cavity of the orbit, which will now be described.

In the **Cavernous Sinus** (Figs. 454 and 455) the third, fourth, and ophthalmic division of the fifth are placed on the outer wall of the sinus, in their numerical

order, both from above downward and from within outward. The sixth nerve lies at the outer side of the internal carotid artery. As these nerves pass forward to the sphenoidal fissure, the third and fifth nerves become divided into branches, and the sixth nerve approaches the rest, so that their relative position becomes considerably changed.

In the **Sphenoidal Fissure** (Fig. 675) the fourth nerve and the frontal and lachrymal branches of the ophthalmic division of the fifth lie upon the same plane, the former being most internal, the latter external, and they enter the cavity of the orbit above the muscles. The remaining nerves enter the orbit between the two heads of the External rectus muscle. The superior division of the third nerve is the highest of these; beneath this lies the nasal branch of the ophthalmic nerve; then the inferior division of the third nerve; and the sixth nerve lowest of all.

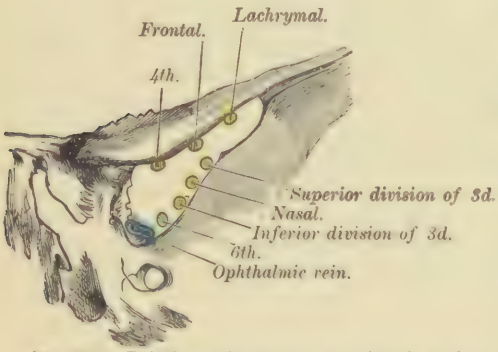


FIG. 675.—Relations of structures passing through the sphenoidal fissure.

In the **Orbit** (Figs. 665 and 669) the fourth nerve and the frontal and lachrymal divisions of the ophthalmic nerve lie on the same plane immediately beneath the periosteum, the fourth nerve being internal and resting on the Superior oblique muscle, the frontal nerve resting on the Levator palpebræ muscle, and the lachrymal nerve on the External rectus muscle. Next in order comes the superior division of the third nerve, lying immediately beneath the Superior rectus muscle, and then the nasal branch of the ophthalmic nerve, crossing the optic nerve from the outer to the inner side of the orbit. Beneath these is found the optic nerve, surrounded in front by the ciliary nerves, and having the lenticular ganglion on its outer side, between it and the External rectus muscle. Below the optic nerve is the inferior division of the third nerve and the sixth nerve, which lies on the outer side of the orbit.

Surgical Anatomy.—It is often stated that the sixth nerve is more frequently involved in *fractures of the base of the skull* than any other of the cranial nerves. As a matter of fact, however, it is injured in only about 2 per cent. of cases of fracture of the skull (Putscher). Cases have been reported in which the nerve was actually ruptured. The nerve may be injured by traction, pressure of a blood clot, of a tumor, or of an arterio-venous aneurism. The result of paralysis of this nerve is internal or *convergent squint*. When injured so that its function is destroyed, there is, in addition to the paralysis of the External rectus muscle, often a certain amount of contraction of the pupil, because some of the sympathetic fibres to the radiating muscle of the iris pass along with this nerve.

THE SEVENTH OR FACIAL NERVE (N. FACIALIS) (Figs. 676, 677, 678).

The seventh or facial nerve or **Portio Dura** is the motor nerve of all the muscles of expression in the face, and of the Platysma and Buccinator; the muscles of the External ear; the posterior belly of the Digastric, and the Stylo-hyoid. Its chorda tympani branch is the nerve of taste for the anterior two-thirds of the tongue and the vaso-dilator nerve of the submaxillary and sublingual glands; its tympanic branch supplies the Stapedius.

Its *superficial origin* is from the upper end of the medulla oblongata, in the groove between the olivary and restiform bodies. Its *deep origin* is from a nucleus situated in the floor of the fourth ventricle, beneath the superior fovea (Fig. 613).

The facial nucleus is deeply placed in the reticular formation of the lower part of the pons, a little external and ventral to the nucleus of the sixth nerve. From this origin the fibres pursue a curved course in the substance of the pons. They first pass backward and inward, and then turn upward and forward, forming the **fasciculus teres,** which produces an eminence, the **eminentia teres,** on the floor of the fourth ventricle, and finally bend sharply downward and outward around the upper end of the nucleus of origin of the sixth nerve, to reach their superficial origin between the olivary and restiform bodies. From the nucleus of the third nerve some fibres arise which descend in the posterior longitudinal bundle and join the facial just before it leaves the pons; these fibres are said to supply the anterior belly of the Occipito-frontalis, the Orbicularis palpebrarum, and the Corrugator supercilii, as these muscles have been observed to escape paralysis in lesions of the nucleus of the facial nerve.

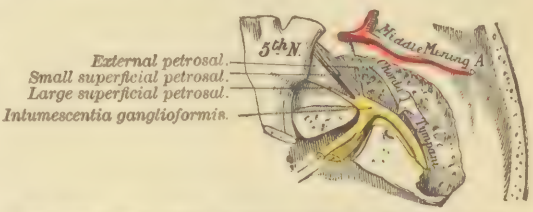


FIG. 676.—The course and connection of the facial nerve in the temporal bone.

The **auditory nerve** (*portio mollis*) lies to the outer side of the facial nerve; and between the two is a small fasciculus, the **pars intermedia of Wrisberg** (*n. intermedius*), which *arises* from the medulla and joins the facial nerve in the internal auditory meatus. The deep origin of the pars intermedia is from the upper end of the nucleus of the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, and at its emergence it is frequently connected with both nerves.

The pars intermedia may be regarded as the **sensory root of the facial nerve,** analogous to the sensory root of the fifth, and its real nucleus of origin would then consist of the geniculate ganglion.

The facial nerve, firmer, rounder, and smaller than the auditory, passes forward and outward upon the middle peduncle of the cerebellum, and enters the **internal auditory meatus** with the auditory nerve. Within the meatus the facial nerve lies in a groove along the upper and anterior part of the auditory nerve and the pars intermedia is placed between the two, and joins the inner angle of the geniculate ganglion. Occasionally a few of its fibres pass into the auditory nerve. Beyond the ganglion its fibres are generally regarded as forming the chorda tympani.

At the bottom of the meatus the facial nerve enters the **aquaeductus Fallopii,** and follows the course of that canal through the petrous portion of the temporal bone, from its commencement at the internal meatus to its termination at the **stylo-mastoid foramen** (Figs. 49 and 676). It is at first directed outward between the cochlea and vestibule toward the inner wall of the tympanum; it then bends suddenly backward and arches downward behind the tympanum to the stylo-mastoid foramen. At the point in the aqueduct of Fallopius where the nerve changes its direction (*geniculum n. facialis*), it presents a reddish gangliform swelling, the **geniculate ganglion** (*ganglion geniculi*), which is also called the **intumescentia ganglioformis** (Fig. 676). The geniculate ganglion receives a branch from the vestibular division of the auditory nerve, which probably carries fibres of the pars intermedia. On emerging from the stylo-mastoid foramen the facial nerve runs forward in the substance of the parotid gland, crosses the external carotid artery, and divides behind the ramus of the lower jaw into two primary branches, **temporo-facial** and **cervico-facial,** from which numerous offsets are distributed over the side of the head, face, and upper part of the neck, supplying the superficial muscles in these regions. As the primary branches and their offsets diverge from each other, they present somewhat the appearance of a bird's claw; hence the name of **pes anserinus** is given to the divisions of the facial nerve in and near the parotid gland.

Branches of Communication (Fig. 677).—The communications of the facial nerve may be thus arranged:

In the internal auditory meatus	With the auditory nerve. The pars intermedia, which is between the facial and auditory, gives branches to both. The branch given to the auditory accompanies it for a certain distance, and then departs from it to join the geniculate ganglion.
From the geniculate ganglion	With the auditory as explained above. With Meckel's ganglion by the large superficial petrosal nerve. With the otic ganglion by the small superficial petrosal nerve. With the sympathetic on the middle meningeal artery by the external superficial petrosal nerve.
In the Fallopian aqueduct	With the auricular branch of the pneumogastric.
At its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen	With the glosso-pharyngeal. With the pneumogastric. With the auricularis magnus. With the auriculo-temporal.
Behind the ear	With the small occipital.
On the face	With the three divisions of the fifth.
In the neck	With the superficial cervical.

In the internal auditory meatus some minute filaments pass between the facial and auditory nerves.

Opposite the hiatus Fallopii, the gangliform enlargement on the facial nerve communicates with Meckel's ganglion by means of the large superficial petrosal nerve, which forms its motor root; with the otic ganglion, by the small superficial petrosal nerve; and with the sympathetic filaments accompanying the middle meningeal artery, by the external petrosal nerve (Bidder). From the gangliform enlargement, according to Arnold, a twig is sent back to the auditory nerve. Just before the facial nerve emerges from the stylo-mastoid foramen it generally receives a twig of communication from the auricular branch of the pneumogastric.

After its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen, it sends a twig to the glosso-pharyngeal, another to the pneumogastric nerve, and communicates with the great auricular branch of the cervical plexus, with the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve in the parotid gland, with the small occipital nerve behind the ear, on the face with the terminal branches of the three divisions of the fifth, and in the neck with the transverse cervical.

Branches of Distribution (Fig. 677).—The branches of distribution of the facial nerves may be thus arranged:

Within the aquaeductus Fallopii	Tympanic, to the Stapedius muscle. Chorda tympani.	
At its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen	Posterior Auricular. Digastric. Stylo-hyoid.	
On the face	Temporo-facial	Temporal. Malar. Infraorbital.
	Cervico-facial	Buccal. Supramaxillary. Inframaxillary.

The branches of the two terminal divisions form the **parotid plexus** (*plexus parotideus*).

The Tympanic Branch (*n. stapedius*) (Fig. 677).—The tympanic branch *arises* from the nerve opposite the pyramid; it passes through a small canal in the pyramid and supplies the Stapedius muscle.

The Chorda Tympani (Figs. 671, 676, and 677).—The chorda tympani is given off from the facial as it passes vertically downward at the back of the tympanum, about a quarter of an inch before its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen. It passes from below upward and forward in a distinct canal, and enters the cavity of the tympanum through an aperture (*iter chordae posterius*) on its posterior wall between the opening of the mastoid cells and the attachment of the membrana tympani, and becomes invested with mucous membrane. It passes forward through the cavity of the tympanum, between the fibrous and mucous layers of the membrana tympani, and over the handle of the malleus, emerging from that cavity

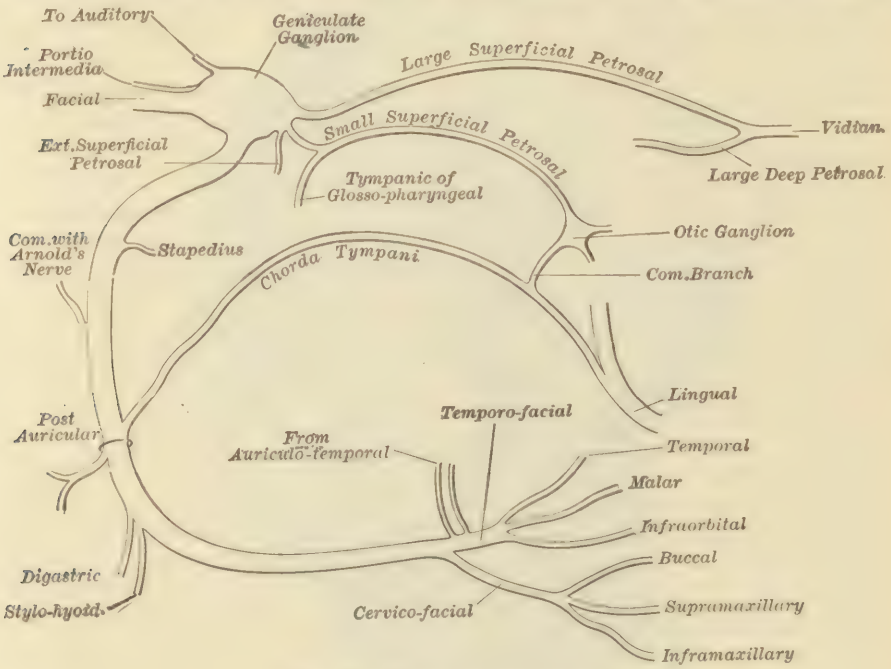


FIG. 677.—Plan of the facial nerve.

through a foramen at the inner end of the Glaserian fissure, which is called the **canal of Huguier** (*iter chordae anterius*). It then descends between the two Pterygoid muscles, meets the lingual nerve at an acute angle, and accompanies it to the submaxillary gland; part of it then joins the submaxillary ganglion; the rest is continued onward through the muscular substance of the tongue to the mucous membrane covering its anterior two-thirds. A few of its fibres probably pass through the submaxillary ganglion to the sublingual gland. Before joining the lingual nerve it receives a small communicating branch from the otic ganglion. As already stated, the chorda tympani nerve is by many regarded as the continuation of the pars intermedia of Wrisberg.

The Posterior Auricular Nerve (*n. auricularis posterior*) (Figs. 634, 677, and 678).—The posterior auricular nerve arises close to the stylo-mastoid foramen, and passes upward in front of the mastoid process and between the mastoid process and the external ear, where it is joined by a filament from the auricular branch of the pneumogastric (Fig. 684), and communicates with the mastoid branch of the great

auricular and with the small occipital. As it ascends between the external auditory meatus and the mastoid process it divides into two branches, the **auricular** and the **occipital branches.**

The **Auricular Branch** supplies the Retrahens auriculam and the small muscles on the cranial surface of the pinna.

The **Occipital Branch** (*ramus occipitalis*), the larger, passes backward along the superior curved line of the occipital bone, and supplies the occipital portion of the Occipito-frontalis.

The Digastric Branch of the Facial Nerve (*ramus digastricus*).—The digastric branch usually arises by a common trunk with the Stylo-hyoid branch; it divides into several filaments, which supply the posterior belly of the Digastric; one of these perforates that muscle to join the glosso-pharyngeal nerve (*ramus anastomoticus cum n. glossopharyngeo*).

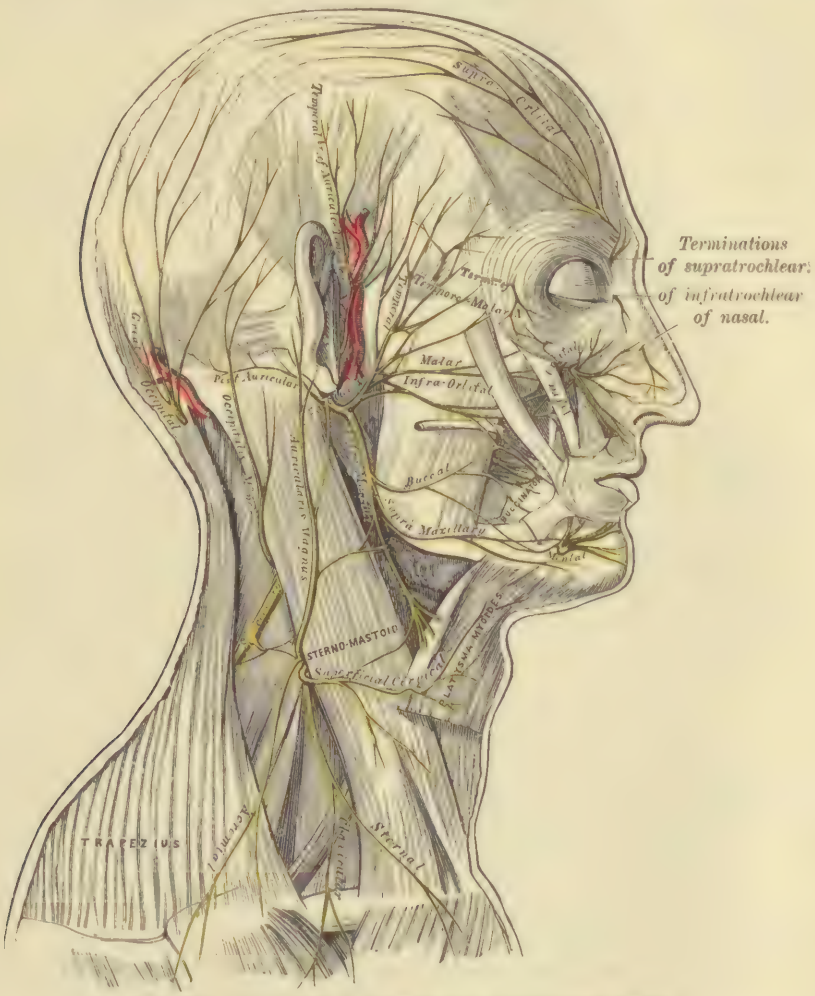


FIG. 678.—The nerves of the scalp, face, and side of the neck.

The Stylo-hyoid Branch (*ramus stylohyoideus*).—The stylo-hyoid branch is a long, slender branch, which passes inward, entering the Stylo-hyoid muscle about its middle.

The Temporo-facial Division (Figs. 677 and 678).—The temporo-facial, the larger of the two terminal branches of the facial, passes upward and forward through

the parotid gland, crosses the external carotid artery and temporo-maxillary vein, and passes over the neck of the condyle of the jaw, being connected in this situation with the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve, and divides into branches which are distributed over the temple and upper part of the face; these are divided into three sets—**temporal, malar,** and **infraorbital.**

The **Temporal Branches** (*rami temporales*) cross the zygoma to the temporal region, supplying the Attrahens and Attollens auriculam muscles, and join with the temporal branch of the temporo-malar division of the superior maxillary, and with the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary. The more anterior branches supply the frontal portion of the Occipito-frontalis, the Orbicularis palpebrarum, and Corrugator supercilii muscles, joining with the supraorbital and lachrymal branches of the ophthalmic.

The **Malar Branches** (*rami zygomatici*) pass across the malar bone to the outer angle of the orbit. Where they supply the Orbicularis palpebrarum muscle, joining with filaments from the lachrymal nerve; others supply the lower eyelid, joining with filaments of the malar branch (*subcutaneous malae*) of the superior maxillary nerve.

The **Infraorbital Branches** (*rami buccales*), of larger size than the rest of the malar branches, pass horizontally forward to be distributed between the lower margin of the orbit and the mouth. The **superficial branches** run beneath the skin and above the superficial muscles of the face, which they supply; some branches are distributed to the Pyramidalis nasi, joining at the inner angle of the orbit with the infratrochlear and nasal branches of the ophthalmic. The **deep branches** pass beneath the Zygomatici and the Levator labii superioris, supplying the Levator anguli oris, the Levator labii superioris alaeque nasi and the small muscles of the nose, and form a plexus, **infraorbital plexus,** by joining with the branches of the infraorbital branch of the superior maxillary nerve and the buccal branches of the cervico-facial.

The Cervico-facial Division.—The cervico-facial division of the facial nerve passes obliquely downward and forward through the parotid gland, crossing the external carotid artery. In this situation it is joined by branches from the great auricular nerve. Opposite the angle of the lower jaw it divides into branches which are distributed on the lower half of the face and upper part of the neck. These may be divided into three sets—**buccal, supramaxillary,** and **inframaxillary.**

The **Buccal Branches** (*rami buccales*) cross the Masseter muscle. They supply the Buccinator and Orbicularis oris, and join with the infraorbital branches of the temporo-facial division of the nerve, and with filaments of the buccal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve.

The **Supramaxillary** or **Supramandibular Branch** (*ramus marginalis mandibulae*) passes forward beneath the Platysma and Depressor anguli oris, supplying the muscles of the lower lip and chin, and communicating with the mental branch of the inferior dental nerve.

The **Inframaxillary, Inframandibular** or **Cervical Branch** (*ramus colli*) runs forward beneath the Platysma, and forms a series of arches across the side of the neck over the suprahyoid region. A branch descends vertically to join with the superficial cervical nerve from the cervical plexus; others supply the Platysma.

Surgical Anatomy.—The facial nerve is more frequently paralyzed than any of the other of the cranial nerves. The paralysis may depend either upon (1) central causes—*i. e.*, blood-clots or intracranial tumors pressing on the nerve before its entrance into the internal auditory meatus. It is also one of the nerves involved in *bulbar paralysis*. Or (2) it may be paralyzed in its passage through the petrous bone by damage due to *middle-ear disease* or by *fractures of the base*. Or (3) it may be affected at or after its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen. This is commonly known as *Bell's paralysis*. It may be due to exposure to cold or to injury of the nerve, either from accidental wounds of the face or during some surgical operation, as removal of parotid tumors, opening of abscesses, or operations on the lower jaw.

When the cause is central, the sixth nerve is usually paralyzed as well, and there is also hemiplegia on the opposite side. In these cases the electric reactions are the same as in health; whereas, when the paralysis is due to a lesion in the course of the nerve, the reactions of degeneration develop. When the nerve is paralyzed in the petrous bone, in addition to the paralysis of the muscles of expression, there is loss of taste in the anterior part of the tongue, and the patient is unable to recognize the difference between bitters and sweets, acids and salines, from involvement of the chorda tympani. The mouth is dry, because the salivary glands are not secreting; the sense of hearing is affected from paralysis of the Stapedius, but there is not hemiplegia. When the cause of the paralysis is from fracture of the base of the skull, the auditory nerve and the petrosal nerves, which are connected with the intumescentia ganglioformis, are also involved. When the injury to the nerve is after its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen, all the muscles of expression, except the Levator palpebrae, together with the posterior belly of the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid, are paralyzed. There is smoothness of the forehead, and the patient is unable to frown; the eyelids cannot be closed, and the lower lid droops, so that the punctum is no longer in contact with the globe, and the tears run down the cheek; there is smoothness of the cheek and loss of the naso-labial furrow; the nostril of the paralyzed side cannot be dilated; the mouth is drawn to the sound side, and there is inability to whistle; food collects between the cheek and gum from paralysis of the Buccinator.

The facial nerve is at fault in cases of so-called *histrionic spasm*, which consists in an almost constant and uncontrollable twitching of the muscles of the face. This twitching is sometimes so severe as to cause great discomfort and annoyance to the patient and to interfere with sleep, and for its relief the facial nerve has been *stretched*. The operation is performed by making an incision behind the ear from the root of the mastoid process to the angle of the jaw. The parotid is turned forward, and the dissection carried along the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle and mastoid process until the upper border of the posterior belly of the Digastric is found. The nerve is parallel to this on about a level with the middle of the mastoid process. When found, the nerve may be stretched by passing a blunt hook beneath it and pulling it forward and outward. Too great force must not be used, for fear of permanent injury to the nerve. In facial palsy of extracerebral origin it may be advisable to expose the nerve, cut it across, and anastomose the distal end of the paralyzed nerve to the spinal accessory, or, better, to the hypoglossal nerve (facio-accessory anastomosis or facio-hypoglossal anastomosis). The idea was first proposed by Ballance, and has been put in practice by Ballance and Stewart, Keen, Cushing, Faure, Kennedy and others.

THE EIGHTH OR AUDITORY NERVE (N. ACUSTICUS) (Fig. 679).

The eighth or auditory nerve or **Portio Mollis** is the special nerve of the sense of hearing, being distributed exclusively to the internal ear. It is soft in texture; hence the name, *portio mollis*, and is destitute of neurilemma.

The Origin of the Eighth Nerve.—The eighth nerve consists of two sets of fibres, which, although differing in their central connections, are both concerned in the transmission of afferent impulses from the internal ear to the medulla and pons, and from there, by means of new fibres which arise from collections of gray matter in these structures, to the cerebrum and cerebellum. One set of fibres forms the vestibular root, another set forms the cochlear root of the nerve. At its connection with the brain the eighth nerve occupies the groove between the pons and medulla, where it is situated between the restiform body, which is behind, and the seventh nerve, which is in front.

Vestibular, Nexal or Ventral Root (*radix vestibularis*) (Fig. 613).—The fibres of this root enter the medulla to the inner side of those of the cochlear root, and pass between the restiform body, which is to their outer side, and the inferior root of the fifth, which lies to their inner side. They then divide into an ascending and a descending set. The fibres of the latter end by arborizing around the cells of the internal nucleus, which is situated in the trigonum acustici in the floor of the fourth ventricle. The ascending fibres either end in the same manner or in the external nucleus, which is situated to the outer side of the trigonum acustici and farther from the ventricular floor. It is described as consisting of two parts, an inner, the **nucleus of Deiters**, and an outer, the **nucleus of Bechterew**. Some of the axones of the cells of the external nucleus, and possibly also of the internal nucleus, are continued upward through the restiform body to the roof nuclei of the opposite

side of the cerebellum, to which also are prolonged other fibres of the vestibular root without undergoing a relay in the nuclei of the medulla. A second set of fibres from the internal and external nuclei end partly in the tegmentum, while the remainder ascend in the posterior longitudinal bundle to arborize around the nuclei of the oculo-motor nerve.

Cochlear, Dorsal or Lateral Root (*radix cochlearis*) (Fig. 613).—This part of the nerve is placed externally to the vestibular root. Its fibres end in two nuclei, one of which, the **accessory nucleus,** lies immediately in front of the restiform body; the other, the **tuberculum acusticum,** somewhat to its outer side.

The striae acusticae or medullary striae are the axones of the cells of the tuberculum acusticum. They pass backward and inward over the restiform body, and across the floor of the fourth ventricle toward the middle line. Here they dip into the substance of the pons, to end around the cells of the superior olive of the same or opposite side. There are, however, other fibres, and these are both direct and crossed, which do not arborize around the tegmental nuclei, but pass into the lat-

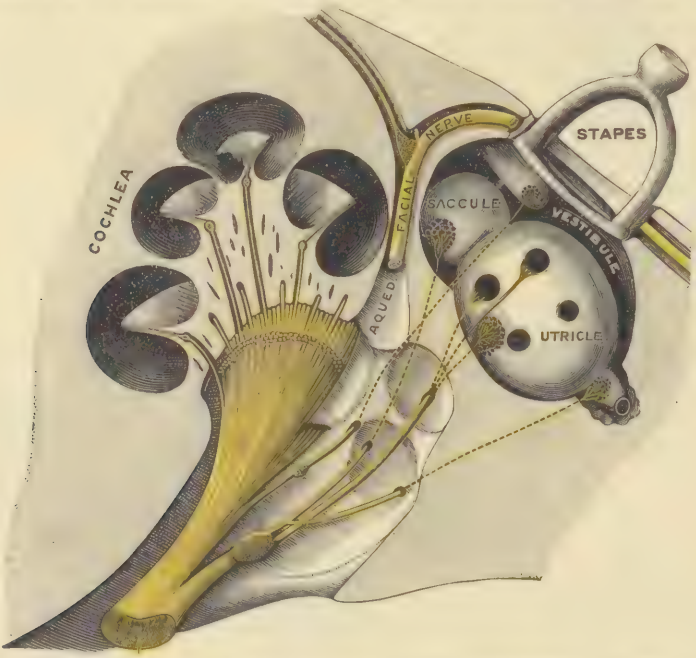


FIG. 679.—Distribution of the auditory nerve. (Semidiagrammatic.) (Testut.)

eral fillet. The cells of the accessory nucleus give origin to fibres which pass transversely in the pons and constitute the trapezium. The description given as to the mode of ending of the striae acusticae is applicable to that of the trapezoid fibres—viz., around the cells of the superior olive or of the trapezoid nucleus (which lies ventral to the olive) of the same or opposite side, while others, crossed or uncrossed, pass directly into the lateral fillet.

If the further connections of the cochlear nerve of one side, say the left, are considered, it is found that they lie to the outer side of the main sensory tract, the fillet, and are therefore termed the **lateral fillet.** The fibres comprising the left lateral fillet arise in the superior olive or trapezoid nucleus of the same or opposite side, while others are the uninterrupted fibres already alluded to, and these are either crossed or uncrossed, the former being the axones of the cells of the right accessory nucleus or of the cells of the right tuberculum acusticum, while the latter are derived from the same cells of the left side. In the upper part of the fillet there is a collection of nerve-cells, the **nucleus of the fillet** (*fila anastomotica*), around

the cells of which some of the fibres arborize, and from the cells of which axones originate to continue upward the tract of the lateral fillet. The ultimate ending of the left lateral fillet is partly in the quadrigeminal bodies of the same or opposite

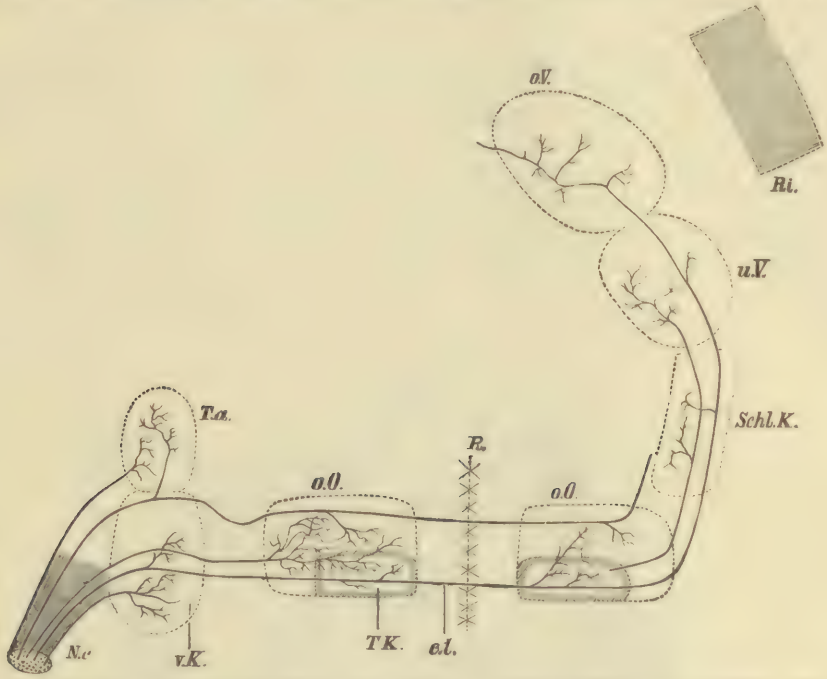


FIG. 680.—Diagram of the central auditory tract (direct or root-fibre system): *N.c.*, cochlear nerve; *F.a.*, acoustic tubercle; *v.K.*, ventral nucleus; *c.t.*, trapezoid body; *o.O.*, *o.O.*, superior olives; *R.*, raphé; *Schl.K.*, nucleus of the lemniscus; *o.V.*, pregeminum; *Ri.*, cortex. (Rauber, after Held.)

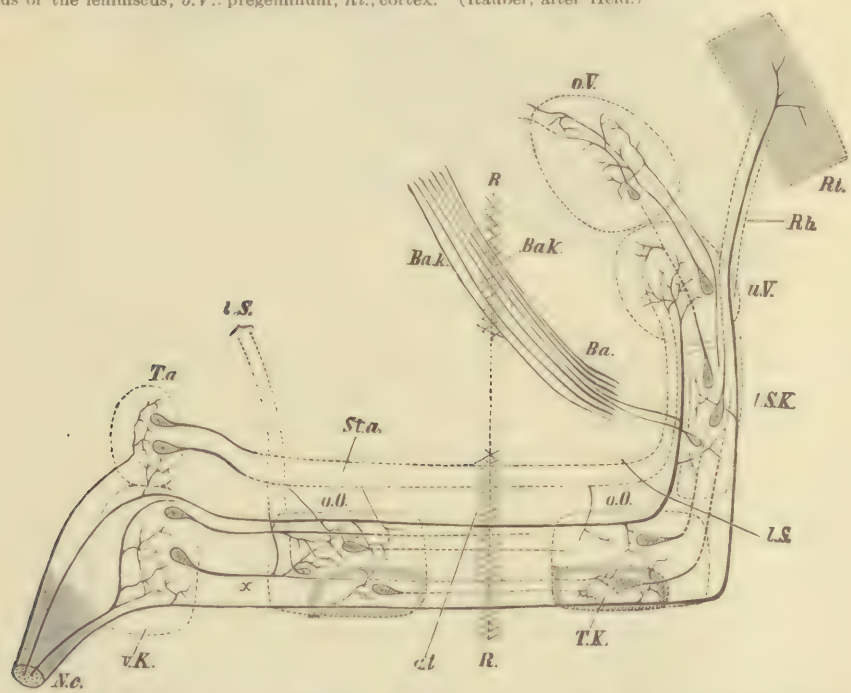


FIG. 681.—Diagram of the central auditory tract (system of the second order): *N.c.*, cochlear nerve; *v.K.*, ventral nucleus; *c.t.*, trapezoid body; *R.*, raphé; *T.K.*, trapezoid nucleus; *o.O.*, superior olive; *T.a.*, acoustic tubercle; *St.a.*, acoustic striae; *l.S.K.*, nucleus of the lateral lemniscus; *Ba.*, prepeduncle; *Bak.*, decussation of the prepeduncle; *o.V.*, pregeminum; *n.V.*, post-geminum; *Ri.*, cortex; *Rb.*, cortical tract. (Rauber, after Held.)

side, while the remainder of the fibres ascend in the posterior limb of the internal capsule to reach the first and perhaps the second left temporal convolution.

The auditory nerve contains a few afferent fibres which arise in the quadrigeminal bodies, the nucleus of the lateral fillet, trapezoid nucleus, and superior olive.

The auditory nerve after leaving the medulla passes forward across the posterior border of the middle peduncle of the cerebellum, in company with the facial nerve, from which it is partly separated by a small artery, the **auditory.** It then enters the internal auditory meatus with the facial nerve. In the meatus it divides into its two branches, the **inferior** or **cochlear trunk** (*n. cochleae*) and the **superior** or **vestibular trunk** (*n. vestibuli*). The cochlear trunk is a continuation of the cochlear root, gives branches to the macula acustica of the saccule, and to the ampulla of the posterior semicircular canal, and then passes through the lamina cribrosa to the labyrinth. The cochlear nerve is distributed to the modiolus and osseous spiral lamina, and is finally distributed to the organ of Corti. The vestibular

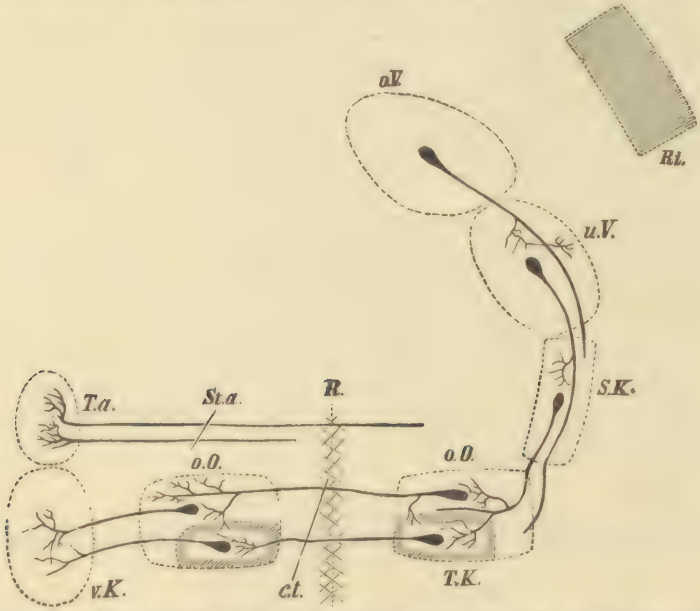


FIG. 682.—Diagram of the central auditory tract (recurrent system): *v.K.*, ventral nucleus; *c.t.*, trapezoid body; *R.*, raphé; *T.K.*, trapezoid nucleus; *o.O.*, superior olive; *Ta.*, acoustic tubercle; *Sta.*, acoustic striæ; *S.K.*, nucleus of the lemniscus; *o.V.*, pregeminum; *u.V.*, post-geminum; *Ri.*, cotex. (Rauber, after Held.)

trunk is a continuation of the vestibular root. In the internal meatus it receives fibres of the pars intermedia and gives a branch to the geniculate ganglion of the facial nerve (Cunningham). It divides into three branches, which pass through the lamina cribrosa and are distributed, one to the macula acustica of the utricle and the ampulla, one to the superior semicircular canal, and one to the external semicircular canal. There is a ganglion on the vestibular nerve called the **vestibular ganglion** (*ganglion vestibulare*), and a ganglion on the cochlear nerve, the **ganglion of Corti** (*ganglion spirale*). The fibres of the auditory nerve proper arise in these ganglia; the vestibular fibres in the ganglion vestibulare; the cochlear fibres in the ganglion spirale.

The Auditory Paths (Figs. 680, 681, and 682).—There are two auditory paths, the **cochlear** or **central auditory path** and the **vestibular path.**

The Cochlear Path.—The cochlear path conducts impulses of hearing. Such impulses pass from the organ of Corti to the **ganglion of Corti** (*ganglion spirale*) and then by the cochlear fibres to the cochlear nucleus in the medulla. The path from the nucleus to the cortical auditory centre is described as follows

by Santee.[1] Impulses from the cochlear nucleus "run either lateral and dorsal to the restiform body and cross to the opposite side through the acustic striae and trapezium, or they run medial to the restiform body and enter at once into the trapezium. By either course they reach the lateral fillet, and chiefly the opposite one. The lateral fillets conduct the impulses to the inferior quadrigeminal bodies; the inferior brachia to the internal geniculate bodies, and the acustic radiation to the third and fourth fifths of the superior temporal and to the transverse temporal gyri of the cerebrum."

The Vestibular Path.—The vestibular path conducts impulses of equilibrium. Impulses from the semicircular canals, utricle and saccule pass by way of the vestibular nerve to the vestibular nuclei in the floor of the fourth ventricle and a spinal nucleus of undetermined situation. From these nuclei impulses pass to the nuclei in the opposite side of the cerebellum by one of two routes. Either by the opposite medial fillet and fibres of the systems of Flechsig or through the acusticocerebellar tract and fibres of the vestibular nerve in the restiform body to the opposite cerebellum (nucleus fastigii, nucleus globosus, corpus dentatum, and cerebellar cortex).[2] From the cerebellum impulses pass along the superior peduncle to "the red nucleus and optic thalamus of both sides and thence to the cortex. They may excite in the cerebellum impulses of equilibration, which descend to the motor nuclei of spinal nerves in the anterior horns of gray matter by way of the antero-lateral descending cerebellar tracts" (Santee).

Surgical Anatomy. The auditory nerve is frequently injured, together with the facial nerve, in *fractures of the middle fossa of the base of the skull* implicating the internal auditory meatus. The nerve may be either torn across, producing permanent deafness, it may be bruised or it may be pressed upon by extravasated blood or inflammatory exudation, when the deafness will in all probability be temporary. The nerve may also be injured by violent blows on the head without fracture, and deafness may follow loud explosions of dynamite, etc., probably from some lesion of this nerve, which is more liable to be injured than the other cranial nerves on account of its structure. The test that the nerve is destroyed and that the deafness is not due to some lesion of the auditory apparatus is obtained by placing a vibrating tuning-fork on the head. The vibrations will be heard in cases where the auditory apparatus is at fault, but not in cases of destruction of the auditory nerve.

THE NINTH OR GLOSSO-PHARYNGEAL NERVE (N. GLOSSOPHARYNGEUS) (Figs. 683, 684, 685).

The ninth or glosso-pharyngeal nerve is distributed, as its name implies, to the tongue and pharynx, being the nerve of ordinary sensation to the mucous membrane of the pharynx, fauces, and tonsil; and the nerve of taste to all parts of the tongue to which it is distributed.

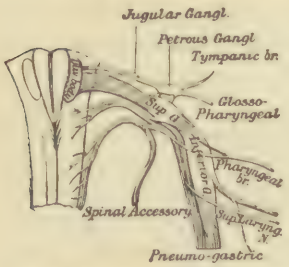


FIG. 683.—Origin, ganglia, and communication of the ninth, tenth, and eleventh cranial nerves.

Its *superficial origin* is by three or four filaments, closely connected together, from the upper part of the medulla oblongata, in the groove between the olivary and restiform body (Fig. 683). Its *deep origin* (Fig. 613) may be traced through the fasciculi of the lateral tract to three different sources: (1) some of the fibres may be traced to a nucleus of gray matter at the lower part of the floor of the fourth ventricle beneath the inferior fovea; (2) others may be traced downward into the **funiculus solitarius**, a rounded bundle of fibres in the lower part of the medulla, commencing immediately above the decussation of the pyramids (these fibres have not been distinctly traced to cells); (3) a third set of

[1] Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord.

[2] Santee, loc. cit.

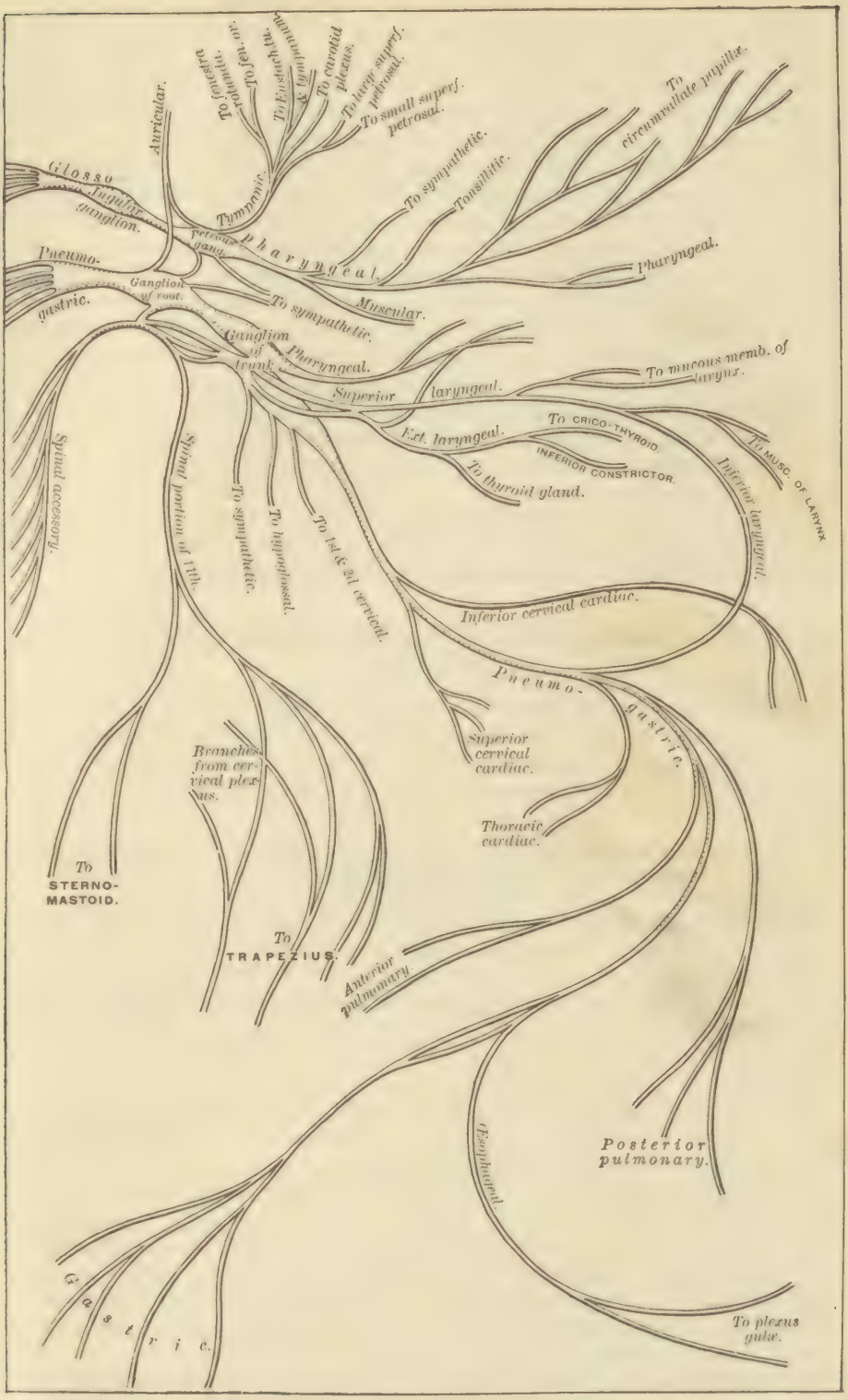


FIG 684.—Plan of the glosso-pharyngeal, pneumogastric, and spinal accessory nerves. (After Flower.)

fibres takes origin from the cells of the **nucleus ambiguus.** This nucleus is situated some distance from the floor of the fourth ventricle and lies slightly internal to the inferior fovea. It gives origin to the motor branches of the glosso-pharyngeal and vagus, and to the bulbar part of the spinal accessory. The real origin of the sensory fibres of the glosso-pharyngeal must be looked for in the jugular and petrosal ganglia which are developed from the neural crest.

From its superficial origin it passes outward across the flocculus, and leaves the skull at the central part of the jugular foramen, in a separate sheath of the dura mater, external to and in front of the pneumogastric and spinal accessory nerves (Fig. 685). In its passage through the jugular foramen it grooves the lower border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, and at its exit from the skull passes forward between the jugular vein and internal carotid artery, and descends in front of the latter vessel, and beneath the styloid process of the temporal bone and the muscles connected with it, to the lower border of the Stylo-pharyngeus muscle. The nerve now curves inward, forming an arch on the side of the neck, and lying upon the Stylo-pharyngeus muscle and the Middle constrictor of the pharynx. It then passes beneath the Hyoglossus muscle, and is finally distributed to the mucous membrane of the fauces and base of the tongue, and the mucous glands of the mouth and tonsil.

In passing through the jugular foramen the nerve presents, in succession, two gangliform enlargements. The superior and smaller is called the **jugular ganglion**; the inferior and larger, the **petrous ganglion** or the **ganglion of Andersch.**

The Superior or Jugular Ganglion (Ganglion Superius n. Glossopharyngei) (Fig. 684).

The superior or jugular ganglion is situated in the upper part of the groove in which the nerve is lodged during its passage through the jugular foramen. It is of very small size, and involves only the lower part of the trunk of the nerve. It is usually regarded as a segmentation from the lower ganglion.

The Inferior or Petrous Ganglion (Ganglion Petrosum n. Glossopharyngei) (Figs. 683 and 684).

The inferior or petrous ganglion is situated in a depression in the lower border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone; it is larger than the superior ganglion and involves the whole of the fibres of the nerve. From this ganglion arise those filaments which connect the glosso-pharyngeal with the pneumogastric and sympathetic nerves.

Branches of Communication (Fig. 684).—The branches of communication are with the pneumogastric, sympathetic, and facial.

The branches to the pneumogastric are two filaments, arising from the petrous ganglion, one of which passes to the auricular branch of the pneumogastric, and one to the upper ganglion of the pneumogastric.

The branch to the sympathetic, also arising from the petrous ganglion, is connected with the superior cervical ganglion.

The branch of communication with the facial perforates the posterior belly of the Digastric muscle. It arises from the trunk of the nerve below the petrous ganglion, and joins the facial just after its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen.

Branches of Distribution (Fig. 684). The branches of distribution are the **tympanic, carotid, pharyngeal, muscular, tonsillar,** and **lingual.**

The Tympanic Branch or Jacobson's Nerve (*n. tympanicus*). The tympanic branch or Jacobson's nerve *arises* from the petrous ganglion, and enters a small bony canal in the lower surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, the lower

opening of which is situated on the bony ridge which separates the carotid canal from the jugular fossa. It ascends to the tympanum, enters that cavity by an aperture in its floor close to the inner wall, and divides into branches which are contained in grooves upon the surface of the promontory. These branches form a **tympanic plexus** (*plexus tympanicus*). This plexus gives off (1) the greater part of the small superficial petrosal nerve (Fig. 677); (2) a branch to join the great superficial petrosal nerve; and (3) branches to the tympanic cavity, all of which will be described in connection with the anatomy of the ear.

The Carotid Branches (*n. caroticotympanicus superior* and *n. caroticotympanicus inferior*).—The carotid branches descend along the trunk of the internal carotid artery as far as its commencement, communicating with the pharyngeal branch of the pneumogastric and with branches of the sympathetic.

The Pharyngeal Branches (*rami pharyngei*) (Fig. 684).—The pharyngeal branches are three or four filaments which unite opposite the Middle constrictor of the pharynx with the pharyngeal branches of the pneumogastric and sympathetic nerves to form the **pharyngeal plexus,** branches from which perforate the muscular coat of the pharynx to supply the muscles and mucous membrane.

The Muscular Branch (*ramus stylopharyngeus*).—The muscular branch is distributed to the Stylo-pharyngeus muscle.

The Tonsillar Branches (*rami tonsillares*).—The tonsillar branches supply the tonsil, forming a plexus (*circulus tonsillaris*) around this body, from which branches are distributed to the soft palate and fauces, where they communicate with the palatine nerves.

The Lingual Branches (*rami linguales*).—The lingual branches are two in number: one supplies the circumvallate papillae and the mucous membrane covering the surface of the base of the tongue; the other perforates its substance, and supplies the mucous membrane and follicular glands of the posterior one-third of the tongue and communicates with the lingual nerve.

The Gustatory Path.—The impressions of taste reach the glosso-pharyngeal nucleus in the medulla in two ways. From the posterior one-third of the tongue and from the palate they reach the nucleus by the ninth nerve. From the anterior two-thirds of the tongue impulses of taste are conveyed by the chorda tympani and pars intermedia. From the glosso-pharyngeal nucleus gustatory impressions pass by way of the medial fillet to the optic thalamus of the opposite side, and from the optic thalamus through the inferior lamina of the internal capsule to the gyrus hippocampi, where the cortical gustatory centre is situated.

Surgical Anatomy.—Injury may produce hemorrhage about the roots of the nerve. Bergmann reported such a case. The patient died from œdema of the glottis after presenting evidences of disorder of speech and difficulty in swallowing.

THE TENTH OR PNEUMOGASTRIC NERVE (N. VAGUS) (Figs. 683, 684, 685).

The tenth or pneumogastric nerve has a more extensive distribution than any of the other crainal nerves, passing through the neck and thorax to the upper part of the abdomen. It is composed of both motor and sensory fibres. It supplies the organs of voice and respiration with motor and sensory fibres, and the pharynx, œsophagus, stomach, and heart with motor fibres. Its *superficial origin* (Fig. 683) is by eight or ten filaments from the groove between the olivary and the restiform body below the glosso-pharyngeal; its *deep origin* (Fig. 613) may be traced through the fasciculi of the medulla to a nucleus of gray matter, the **nucleus vagi,** at the lower part of the floor of the fourth ventricle beneath the ala cinerea below and continuous with the nucleus of origin of the glosso-pharyngeal. In addition to this a few fibres pass into the funiculus solitarius, and others into the nucleus ambiguus or

accessory vagal nucleus. The real origin of the sensory fibres of the vagus is to be found in the cells of the ganglia on the nerve—viz., the ganglion of the root and the ganglion of the trunk. The filaments become united and form a flat cord, which passes outward beneath the flocculus to the jugular foramen, through which it emerges from the cranium (Fig. 685). In passing through this opening the pneumogastric accompanies the spinal accessory, being contained in the same sheath of dura mater with it, a membranous septum separating them from the glossopharyngeal, which lies in front (Fig. 685). The nerve in this situation presents a well-marked ganglionic enlargement, which is called the **superior ganglion, jugular ganglion,** or the **ganglion of the pneumogastric;** to it the accessory part of the spinal accessory nerve is connected by one or two filaments. After the exit of the nerve from the jugular foramen the nerve is joined by the accessory portion of the spinal accessory, and enlarges into a second gangliform swelling, called the **inferior ganglion** or the **ganglion of the trunk of the nerve,** through which the fibres of the spinal accessory pass unchanged, being principally distributed to the pharyngeal and superior laryngeal branches of the vagus; but some of the filaments from it are continued into the trunk of the vagus below the ganglion, to be distributed with the recurrent laryngeal nerve, and probably also with the cardiac nerves. The vagus nerve passes vertically down the neck within the sheath of the carotid vessels lying between the internal carotid artery and the internal jugular vein as far as the thyroid cartilage, and then between the same vein and the common carotid to the root of the neck (Fig. 685). From here the course of the nerve differs on the two sides of the body.

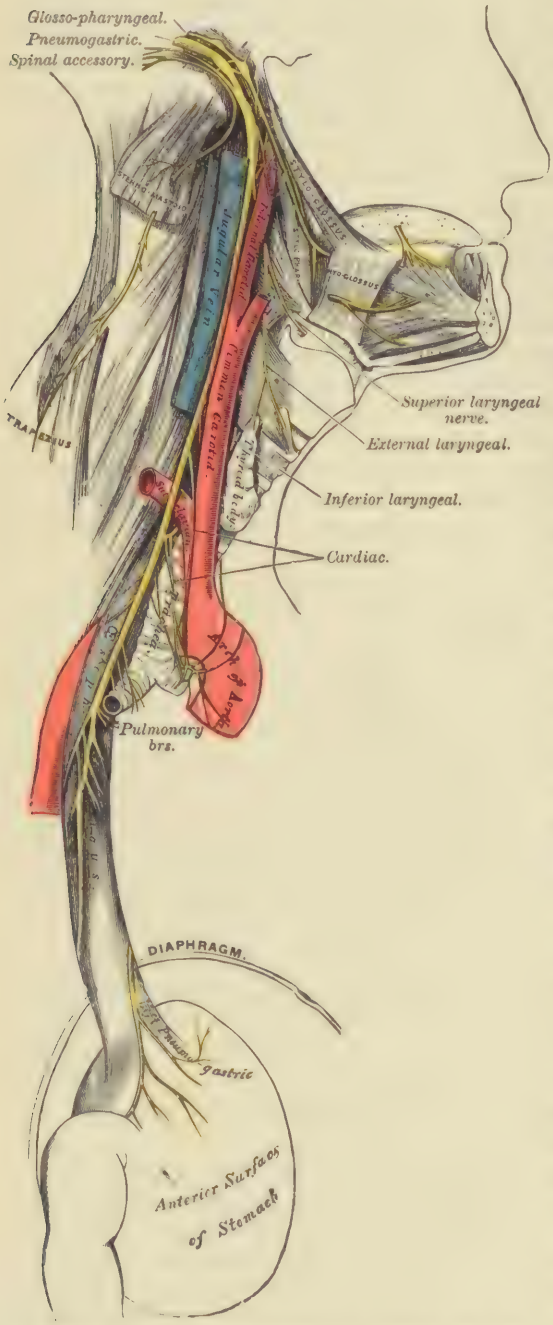


FIG. 685.—Course and distribution of the ninth, tenth, and eleventh nerves.

On the *right side* (Fig. 685) the nerve passes across the subclavian artery between

it and the right innominate vein, and descends by the side of the trachea to the back part of the root of the lung, where it spreads out in a plexiform network, the **posterior pulmonary plexus** (*plexus pulmonalis posterior*), from the lower part of which two cords descend upon the oesophagus, on which tube they divide, forming, with branches from the opposite nerve, the **oesophageal plexus** (*plexus gulae*); below, these branches are collected into a single cord, which runs along the back part of the oesophagus, enters the abdomen, and is distributed to the posterior surface of the stomach, joining the left side of the solar plexus, and sending filaments to the splenic plexus and a considerable branch to the cœliac plexus.

On the *left side* the pneumogastric nerve enters the chest between the left carotid and subclavian arteries, behind the left innominate vein. It crosses the arch of the aorta and descends behind the root of the left lung, forming the **anterior pulmonary plexus** (*plexus pulmonalis anterior*), and along the anterior surface of the oesophagus, where it unites with the nerve of the right side in forming the plexus gulae. It passes to the stomach, distributing branches over the anterior surface of that viscus, some extending over the great *cul-de-sac*, and others along the lesser curvature. Filaments from these branches enter the gastro-hepatic omentum and join the hepatic plexus.

The Ganglion of the Root of the Pneumogastric Nerve (Ganglion Jugulare) (Fig. 684).

The ganglion of the root or the jugular ganglion is of a grayish color, circular in form, about two lines in diameter, and resembles the ganglion on the large root of the fifth nerve.

Connecting Branches.—To this ganglion the accessory portion of the spinal accessory nerve is connected by several delicate filaments; it also has a communicating twig with the petrous ganglion of the glosso-pharyngeal, with the facial nerve by means of its (the ganglion's) auricular branch, and with the sympathetic by means of an ascending filament from the superior cervical ganglion.

The Ganglion of the Trunk of the Pneumogastric Nerve (Ganglion Nodosum) (Fig. 684).

The ganglion of the trunk or the inferior ganglion is a plexiform cord, cylindrical in form, of a reddish color, and about an inch in length; it involves the whole of the fibres of the nerve, and passing through it is the accessory portion of the spinal accessory nerve, which blends with the pneumogastric below the ganglion, and is then principally continued into its pharyngeal and superior laryngeal branches.

Connecting Branches (Fig. 684).—This ganglion is connected with the hypoglossal, the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic, and the loop between the first and second cervical nerves.

The *branches of the pneumogastric* are—

In the jugular fossa . .	Meningeal. Auricular.
In the neck	Pharyngeal. Superior laryngeal. Recurrent laryngeal. Cervical cardiac.
In the thorax	Thoracic cardiac. Anterior pulmonary. Posterior pulmonary. Oesophageal.
In the abdomen . . .	Gastric.

The Meningeal Branch (*ramus meningeus*).—The meningeal branch is a recurrent filament given off from the ganglion of the root in the jugular foramen. It passes

backward, and is distributed to the dura mater lining the posterior fossa of the base of the skull.

The Auricular Branch or Arnold's Nerve (*ramus auricularis*) (Fig. 684).—The auricular branch or Arnold's nerve *arises* from the ganglion of the root, and is joined soon after its origin by a filament from the petrous ganglion of the glosso-pharyngeal; it passes outward behind the jugular vein, and enters a small canal on the outer wall of the jugular fossa. Traversing the substance of the temporal bone, it crosses the aquaeductus Fallopii about two lines above its termination at the stylo-mastoid foramen; here it gives off an ascending branch, which joins the facial; the continuation of the nerve reaches the surface by passing through the auricular fissure between the mastoid process and the external auditory meatus, and divides into two branches, one of which communicates with the posterior auricular nerve, while the other supplies the integument at the back part of the pinna and the posterior part of the external auditory meatus.

The Pharyngeal Branch (*ramus pharyngeus*).—The pharyngeal branch, the principal motor nerve of the pharynx, arises from the upper part of the ganglion of the trunk of the pneumogastric. It consists principally of filaments from the accessory portion of the spinal accessory; it passes across the internal carotid artery to the upper border of the Middle constrictor of the pharynx, where it divides into numerous filaments which join with those from the glosso-pharyngeal, the superior laryngeal (its external branch), and sympathetic, to form the **pharyngeal plexus** (*plexus pharyngeus*), from which branches are distributed to the muscles and mucous membrane of the pharynx and the muscles of the soft palate. From the pharyngeal plexus a minute filament is given off, which descends and joins the hypoglossal nerve as it winds around the occipital artery.

The Superior Laryngeal Nerve (*n. laryngeus superior*) (Figs. 683, 684, and 685). – It is larger than the preceding, and arises from the middle of the ganglion of the trunk of the pneumogastric. It consists principally of filaments from the accessory portion of the spinal accessory. In its course it receives a branch from the superior cervical ganglion of the sympathetic. It descends by the side of the pharynx behind the internal carotid artery, where it divides into two branches, the **external** and **internal laryngeal**. This nerve is the nerve of sensation of the larynx, and also supplies the crico-thyroid muscle. Exner has pointed out that the superior laryngeal nerve innervates to some extent the muscles supplied by the inferior laryngeal, and this fact explains why division of the inferior laryngeal nerve is not of necessity followed by complete paralysis of the muscles it supplies.

The **External Laryngeal Branch of the Superior Laryngeal** (*ramus externus*) (Fig. 685), the smaller, descends by the side of the larynx, beneath the Sterno-thyroid, to supply the Crico-thyroid muscle. It gives branches to the pharyngeal plexus and the Inferior constrictor, and communicates with the superior cardiac nerve, behind the common carotid.

The **Internal Laryngeal Branch of the Superior Laryngeal** (*ramus internus*) descends to the opening in the thyro-hyoid membrane, through which it passes with the superior laryngeal artery, and is distributed to the mucous membrane of the larynx. A small branch communicates with the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The branches to the mucous membrane are distributed, some in front to the epiglottis, the base of the tongue, and the epiglottidean glands; while others pass backward, in the aryteno-epiglottidean fold, to supply the mucous membrane surrounding the superior orifice of the larynx, as well as the membrane which lines the cavity of the larynx as low down as the vocal cord. The filament which joins with the recurrent laryngeal descends beneath the mucous membrane on the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage, where the two nerves become united.

The Inferior or Recurrent Laryngeal Branch of the Pneumogastric (*n. laryngeus inferior*) (Figs. 684 and 685).—The inferior or recurrent laryngeal branch, so called from its reflected course, is the motor nerve of the larynx. It arises on

the right side, in front of the subclavian artery; winds from before backward around that vessel, and ascends obliquely to the side of the trachea, behind the common carotid artery and behind or in front of the inferior thyroid artery. On the left side it arises in front of the arch of the aorta, and winds from before backward around the aorta at the point where the remains of the ductus arteriosus are connected with it, and then ascends to the side of the trachea. The nerve on each side ascends in the groove between the trachea and oesophagus, and, passing under the lower border of the Inferior constrictor muscle, enters the larynx behind the articulation of the inferior cornu of the thyroid cartilage with the cricoid, being distributed to all the muscles of the larynx except the Crico-thyroid. It communicates with the superior laryngeal nerve and gives off a few filaments to the mucous membrane of the lower part of the larynx.

The recurrent laryngeal, as it winds around the subclavian artery and aorta, gives off several cardiac filaments, which unite with the cardiac branches from the pneumogastric and sympathetic. As it ascends in the neck it gives off oesophageal branches, more numerous on the left than on the right side, which supply the mucous membrane and muscular coat of the oesophagus; tracheal branches to the mucous membrane and muscular fibres of the trachea; and some pharyngeal filaments to the Inferior constrictor of the pharynx.

The Cervical Cardiac Branches (*rami cardiaci superiores*) (Fig. 684).—The cervical cardiac branches, two or three in number, arise from the pneumogastric, at the upper and lower part of the neck.

The **Superior Branches** are small, and communicate with the cardiac branches of the sympathetic. They can be traced to the great or deep cardiac plexus.

The **Inferior Branches**, one on each side, arise at the lower part of the neck, just above the first rib. On the right side this branch passes in front or by the side of the arteria innominata, and communicates with one of the cardiac nerves proceeding to the great or deep cardiac plexus. On the left side it passes in front of the arch of the aorta and joins the superficial cardiac plexus.

The Thoracic Cardiac Branches (*rami cardiaci inferiores*) (Fig. 684).—The thoracic cardiac branches, on the right side, arise from the trunk of the pneumogastric as it lies by the side of the trachea, and from its recurrent laryngeal branch, but on the left side from the recurrent nerve only; passing inward, they terminate in the deep cardiac plexus.

The Anterior Pulmonary Branches (Fig. 684).—The anterior pulmonary branches, two or three in number, and of small size, are distributed on the anterior aspect of the root of the lungs. They join with filaments from the sympathetic, and form the **anterior pulmonary plexus** (*plexus pulmonalis anterior*).

The Posterior Pulmonary Branches (Fig. 684).—The posterior pulmonary branches, more numerous and larger than the anterior, are distributed on the posterior aspect of the root of the lung; they are joined by filaments from the third and fourth (sometimes also from the first and second) thoracic ganglia of the sympathetic, and form the **posterior pulmonary plexus** (*plexus pulmonalis posterior*). Branches from both plexuses accompany the ramification of the air-tubes through the substance of the lungs (*rami bronchiales anteriores* and *rami bronchiales posteriores*).

The Oesophageal Branches (*rami oesophagei*).—The oesophageal branches are given off from the pneumogastric both above and below the pulmonary branches. The lower are more numerous and larger than the upper. They form, together with branches from the opposite nerve, the **oesophageal plexus** (*plexus gulae*). From this plexus branches are distributed to the back of the pericardium.

The Gastric Branches (*rami gastrici*) (Figs. 684 and 685.—The gastric branches are the terminal filaments of the pneumogastric nerve. The nerve on the right side is distributed to the posterior surface of the stomach. The right pneumogastric sends branches to the **coeliac plexus** (*rami coeliaci*), to the **splenic plexus** (*rami lienales*), and to the **renal plexus** (*rami renales*). The nerve on the left

side is distributed over the anterior surface of the stomach, some filaments (*rami hepatici*) passing across the great *cul-de-sac*, and others along the lesser curvature. They unite with branches of the right nerve and with the sympathetic, some filaments passing through the lesser omentum to the hepatic plexus.

Surgical Anatomy. -The *laryngeal nerves* are of considerable importance in considering some of the morbid conditions of the larynx. When the peripheral terminations of the superior laryngeal nerve are irritated by some foreign body passing over them, *reflex spasm of the glottis* is the result. When the trunk of the same nerve is pressed upon by, for instance, a goitre or an aneurism of the upper part of the carotid, we have a peculiar dry, brassy cough. When the nerve is paralyzed, we have anæsthesia of the mucous membrane of the larynx, so that foreign bodies can readily enter the cavity, and, in consequence of its supplying the crico-thyroid muscle, the vocal cords cannot be made tense, and the voice is deep and hoarse. Paralysis of the superior laryngeal nerves may be the result of bulbar paralysis, may be a sequel to diphtheria, when both nerves are usually involved, or it may, though less commonly, be caused by the pressure of tumors or aneurisms, when the paralysis is generally unilateral. Irritation of the inferior laryngeal nerves produces spasm of the muscles of the larynx. When both the recurrent nerves are paralyzed, the vocal cords are motionless in the so-called *cadaveric position* -that is to say, in the position in which they are found in ordinary tranquil respiration—neither closed as in phonation, nor open as in deep inspiratory effort. When one recurrent nerve is paralyzed, the cord of the same side is motionless, while the opposite cord crosses the middle line to accommodate itself to the affected one; hence phonation is present, but the voice is altered and weak in timbre. The recurrent laryngeal nerves may be paralyzed in bulbar paralysis or after diphtheria, when the paralysis usually affects both sides; or they may be affected by the pressure of aneurisms of the aorta, innominate or subclavian arteries; by mediastinal tumors; by bronchocele; or by cancer of the upper part of the oesophagus, when the paralysis is often unilateral. The nerve may be accidentally divided during the operation for goitre.

It is a well-recognized fact that disease or injury of the vagus may induce serious symptoms. Bruising may cause such symptoms; so may injury of the nerve by a stab, a bullet, or during surgical operations. Either accidental ligation or crushing with clamp forceps is particularly dangerous. Michaux accidentally ligated the vagus, and the patient became comatose and ceased to breathe, but was restored on removing the ligature. Tillmanns, while removing a cancer, accidentally caught and crushed a portion of the nerve in a clamp, and both pulse and respiration ceased. The clamp was removed, the patient was restored with difficulty, and the nerve was sutured. Recovery followed. It thus becomes evident that division of the vagus on one side is not, as was so long taught, a necessarily fatal accident; in fact, it is sometimes undertaken deliberately in removing tumors adherent to the nerve. Division of a nerve which has been long compressed is probably not so dangerous as division of a healthy nerve, as in the former case the opposite vagus has probably assumed some of its colleague's duties. A number of cases of deliberate division have been reported. Twenty-three cases are referred to in the system of surgery by von Bergmann and Mikulicz, and twelve of them died, but in none of the deaths was the removal of the vagus the apparent cause of the fatality. The editor of this American edition of "Gray" has seen three cases: One was operated upon by Dr. W. Joseph Hearn, one by Dr. Melvin Franklin, and one by the editor. All three recovered, and not one presented any serious disturbance, although each had hoarseness and weakness of voice.

One would assume that after division of the pneumogastric below the superior laryngeal nerve and above the recurrent laryngeal nerve (the region usually attacked) that there would be paralysis of all the muscles of one side of the larynx, except the crico-thyroid, and widespread aberration evinced by *disturbances* of the heart, stomach, and lungs. As a matter of fact, this has not been the case. It might be and probably would be the case, were a healthy nerve divided; but the surgeon who deliberately divides the nerve does so during the removal of a tumor which has long made pressure. In most cases there is no change in the pulse or respiration. In some cases dysphagia and pneumonia arise, but they may be due to other causes than pneumogastric injury (the formidable nature and the duration of the operation -the ligation of vessels of large size—the age of the subject).

Laryngeal symptoms, to a greater or less degree, are always noted. The difference in the degree of the palsy is explainable when we recall Exner's statement that the muscles supplied by the recurrent laryngeal also receive some innervation from the superior laryngeal. In fact, Mills points out that a portion of the recurrent laryngeal has been resected without completely paralyzing the muscles supposed to be supplied solely by the recurrent laryngeal. The laryngeal symptoms result from unilateral laryngeal paralysis, in which there is paralysis of the muscles which open the glottis. The voice may be lost or may be hoarse. Usually, after a time, this is, to a great extent, compensated for by the opposite vocal cord, although the voice may alway remain weak, and the patient will tire easily on talking. If both pneumogastrics were to be divided death would ensue.

THE ELEVENTH OR SPINAL ACCESSORY NERVE (N. ACCESSORIUS) (Figs. 683, 684, 685).

The eleventh or spinal accessory nerve consists of two parts: one the **accessory part to the vagus**, and the other the **spinal portion.**

The Bulbar or Accessory Part of the Spinal Accessory Nerve.

The bulbar or accessory part is the smaller of the two. It is accessory to the vagus. Its *superficial origin* (Fig. 683) is by four or five delicate filaments from the side of the medulla, below the roots of the vagus. Its *deep origin* (Fig. 613) may be traced to a nucleus of gray matter at the back of the medulla, dorso-lateral to the hypo-glossal nucleus, and extending as far down as the intermedio-lateral tract of the spinal cord. It passes outward to the jugular foramen, where it interchanges fibres with the spinal portion or becomes united to it for a short distance; it is also connected, in the foramen, with the upper ganglion of the vagus by one or two filaments. It then passes through the foramen (Fig. 685), and becoming again separated from the spinal portion it is continued over the surface of the ganglion of the trunk of the vagus, being adherent to its surface, and is distributed principally to the pharyngeal and superior laryngeal branches of the pneumogastric (Fig. 684). Through the pharyngeal branch it probably supplies the muscles of the soft palate. Some few filaments from it are continued into the trunk of the vagus below the ganglion, to be distributed with the recurrent laryngeal nerve, and probably also with the cardiac nerves.

The Spinal Portion of the Spinal Accessory Nerve.

The spinal portion is firm in texture. Its *superficial origin* (Fig. 683) is by several filaments or rootlets from the lateral tract of the cord, as low down as the sixth cervical nerve. Its *deep origin* (Fig. 613) may be traced to the intermedio-lateral tract of the gray matter of the cord. The rootlets of origin join and form a trunk which ascends in the subdural space between the ligamentum denticulatum and the posterior roots of the spinal nerves, enters the skull through the foramen magnum, and is then directed outward to the jugular foramen, through which it passes, lying in the same sheath as the pneumogastric, but separated from it by a fold of the arachnoid. In the jugular foramen it receives one or two filaments from the accessory portion. At its exit from the jugular foramen it passes into the neck and becomes the **external branch** (*ramus externus*) (Figs. 634, 684, and 685). It passes backward, either in front of or behind the internal jugular vein, and descends obliquely behind the Digastric and Stylo-hyoid muscles to the upper part of the Sterno-mastoid muscle. It pierces that muscle, and passes obliquely across the posterior triangle, to terminate in the deep surface of the Trapezius muscle. This nerve gives several branches to the Sterno-mastoid muscle during its passage through it, and joins in its substance with branches from the second cervical, which supply the muscle. In the posterior triangle it joins with the second and third cervical nerves, while beneath the Trapezius it forms a sort of plexus with the third and fourth cervical nerves, and from this plexus fibres are distributed to the muscle.

Surgical Anatomy. Division of the external branch of the spinal accessory nerve causes paralysis of the Sterno-cleido-mastoid and Trapezius muscles; not absolute paralysis, for these muscles also receive nerves from the cervical plexus. In cases of *spasmodic torticollis* in which all palliative treatment has failed, division or excision of a portion of the external branch of the spinal accessory nerve has been suggested by Keen. This may be done either along the anterior or posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle. The former operation is performed by making

an incision from the apex of the mastoid process, three inches in length, along the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle. The anterior border of the muscle is defined and pulled backward, so as to stretch the nerve, which is then to be sought for beneath the Digastric muscle, about two inches below the apex of the mastoid process. The other operation consists in making an incision along the posterior border of the muscle, so that the centre of the incision corresponds to the middle of this border of the muscle. The superficial structures having been divided and the border of the muscle defined, the nerve is to be sought for as it emerges from the muscle to cross the occipital triangle. When found, it is to be traced upward through the muscle, and a portion of it is excised above the point where it gives off its branches to the Sterno-mastoid. In this operation one of the descending branches of the superficial cervical plexus is liable to be mistaken for the nerve.

THE TWELFTH OR HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE (N. HYPOGLOSSUS) (Figs. 686, 687).

The twelfth or hypoglossal nerve is the motor nerve of the tongue. Its *superficial origin* is by several filaments, from ten to fifteen in number, from the groove

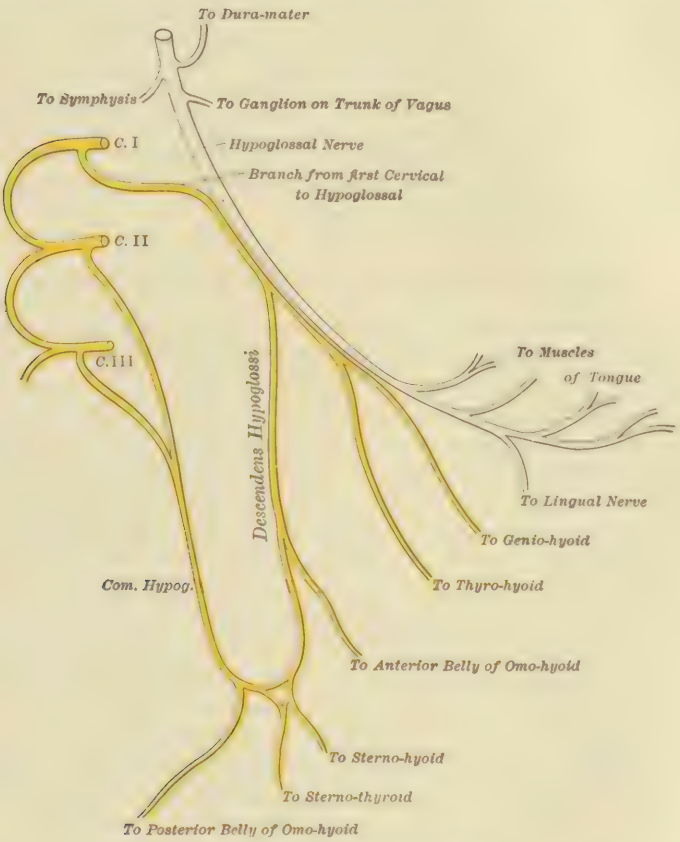


FIG. 686.—Plan of the hypoglossal nerve.

between the pyramidal and olivary bodies of the medulla, in a continuous line with the anterior roots of the spinal nerves. Its *deep origin* can be traced to a nucleus of gray matter (*trigonum hypoglossi*) on the floor of the fourth ventricle (Fig. 613).

The filaments of this nerve are collected into two bundles, which perforate the dura mater separately, opposite the anterior condyloid foramen, and unite together after their passage through it. In those cases in which the anterior condyloid

foramen in the occipital bone is double, these two portions of the nerve are separated by the small piece of bone which divides the foramen. The nerve descends almost vertically to a point corresponding with the angle of the jaw. It is at first deeply seated beneath the internal carotid artery and internal jugular vein, and is intimately connected with the pneumogastric nerve (Fig. 687); it then passes forward between the vein and artery, and lower down in the neck becomes superficial below the Digastric muscle. The nerve then loops around the occipital artery, and crosses the external carotid and its lingual branch below the tendon of the Digastric muscle. It passes beneath the tendon of the Digastric, the Stylo-hyoid, and the Mylo-hyoid muscles, lying between the last-named muscle and the Hyo-

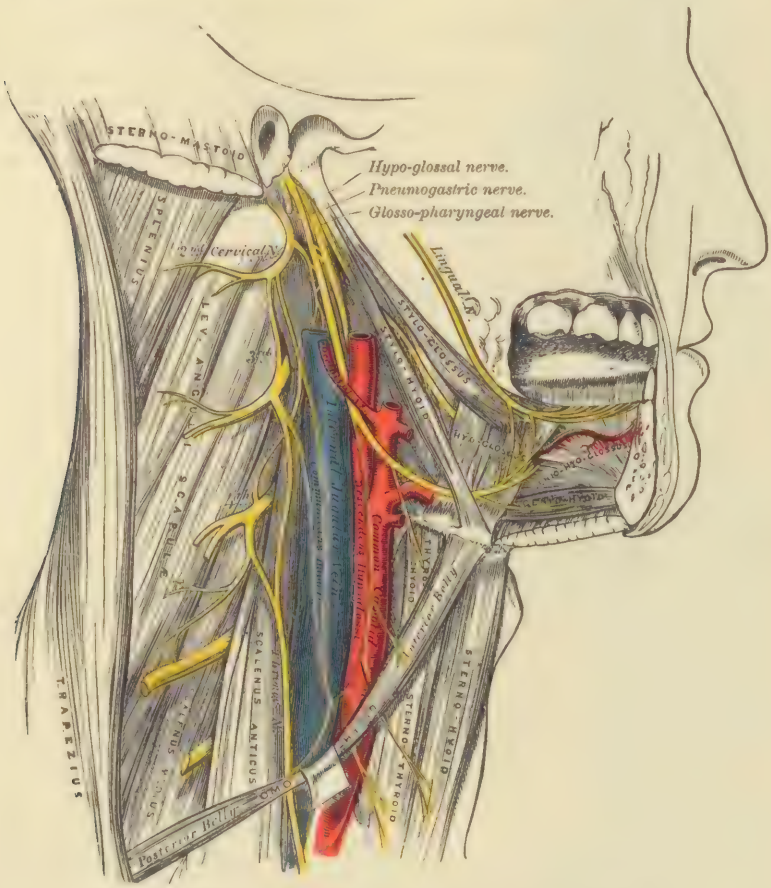


FIG. 687.—Hypoglossal nerve, cervical plexus, and their branches.

glossus (Fig. 687), and communicates at the anterior border of the Hyo-glossus with the lingual or gustatory nerve (Fig. 686); it is then continued forward in the fibres of the Genio-hyoglossus muscle as far as the tip of the tongue, distributing branches to its muscular substance.

Branches of Communication (Fig. 686).—The branches of communication are —with the

Pneumogastric.	First and Second Cervical Nerves.
Sympathetic.	Lingual (gustatory).

The first mentioned takes place close to the exit of the nerve from the skull, numerous filaments passing between the hypoglossal and the ganglion of the trunk

of the pneumogastric through the mass of connective tissue which here unites the two nerves. It also communicates with the pharyngeal plexus by a minute filament as it winds around the occipital artery.

The communication with the sympathetic takes place opposite the atlas vertebra by branches derived from the superior cervical ganglion, and in the same situation the nerve is joined by filaments derived from the loop connecting the first two cervical nerves.

The communication with the lingual (gustatory) takes place near the anterior border of the Hyo-glossus muscle by numerous filaments which ascend upon it.

Branches of Distribution (Fig. 686).—The branches of distribution are—the

Meningeal.	Thyro-hyoid.
Descendens hypoglossi.	Muscular.

Meningeal Branches (Fig. 686).—As the hypoglossal nerve passes through the anterior condyloid foramen it gives off, according to Luschka, several filaments to the dura mater in the posterior fossa of the base of the skull; these filaments are probably derived from a branch which passes from the first cervical nerve to the hypoglossal nerve.

The Descendens Hypoglossi (*ramus descendens*) (Figs. 686 and 687).—The descendens hypoglossi, long called the **descendens noni**, is a long slender branch, which quits the hypo-glossal where it turns around the occipital artery. It consists mainly of fibres which pass to the hypoglossal from the first and second cervical nerves in the above-mentioned communication. It descends in front of or within the sheath of the common carotid artery, giving off a branch to the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid, and then joins the communicating branches from the second and third cervical nerves, just below the middle of the neck, to form a loop, the **ansa hypo-glossi**. From the convexity of this loop branches pass to supply the Sterno-hyoid, Sterno-thyroid, and the posterior belly of the Omo-hyoid. According to Arnold, another filament descends in front of the vessels into the chest, and joins the cardiac and phrenic nerves.

The Thyro-hyoid Branch (*ramus thyreohyoideus*) (Fig. 686).—The thyro-hyoid is a small branch arising from the hypoglossal near the posterior border of the Hyo-glossus; it passes obliquely across the great cornu of the hyoid bone and supplies the Thyro-hyoid muscle.

The Muscular Branches (Fig. 686).—The muscular branches are distributed to the Stylo-glossus, Hyo-glossus, Genio-hyoid, and Genio-hyo-glossus muscles. At the under surface of the tongue numerous slender branches (*rami linguales*) pass upward into the substance of the organ to supply its intrinsic muscles.

Surgical Anatomy.—A wound in the submaxillary region may injure the hypoglossal nerve and result in motor paralysis of the corresponding half of the tongue. The hypoglossal nerve is an important guide in the operation of ligation of the lingual artery (see page 604). It runs forward on the Hyo-glossus muscle just above the great cornu of the hyoid bone, and forms the upper boundary of the triangular space in which the artery is to be sought for by cutting through the fibres of the Hyo-glossus muscle.

THE SYMPATHETIC NERVE (SYMPATHICUS) (Fig. 688).

The sympathetic nervous system consists of (1) a series of **ganglia** (*ganglia trunci sympathici*) connected together by a **great ganglionic cord**, the **gangliated cord** (*truncus sympathicus*), extending from the base of the skull to the coccyx, one gangliated cord on each side of the middle line of the body, partly in front and partly on each side of the vertebral column; (2) of three **great gangliated plexuses** (*plexus sympathici*) or aggregations of nerves and ganglia, situated in front of

the spine in the thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic cavities respectively; (3) of **smaller** or **terminal ganglia**, situated in relation with the abdominal viscera; and (4) of numerous **nerve-fibres**. These latter are of two kinds: **communicating**, by which the ganglia communicate with each other and with the cerebro-spinal nerves; and **distributory**, supplying the internal viscera and the coats of the blood-vessels.

Each gangliated cord may be traced upward from the base of the skull into the cranial cavity by an ascending branch, which passes through the carotid canal, forms a plexus on the internal carotid artery and in the cavernous sinus (Fig. 692), and communicates with certain cranial nerves (p. 1073). According to some anatomists, the two cords are joined, at their cephalic extremities, by these ascending branches communicating in a small ganglion, the **ganglion of Ribes**, situated upon the anterior communicating artery. Upon the gangliated cord are ganglia distinguished as **cervical, dorsal, lumbar,** and **sacral**, and except in the neck they

FIG. 688.—The sympathetic nerve, reduced in size from Byron Robinson's life-size drawing of a dissection made by himself.

I.–VIII., cervical nerves; 2 *a*, 2 *b*, 1 *c*, 1 *d*, brachial plexus; 1, spinal accessory nerve (XI. nerve); 2, hypoglossal nerve (XII. nerve); 3, vagus nerve (X. nerve); 4, descendens nomi nerve; 5, laryngeal nerve; 6, superior cervical ganglion; 7, middle cervical ganglion; 8, 9, inferior cervical ganglion; 10, two superior cardiac nerves; 11, two middle cardiac nerves; 12, two ganglia on 10 and 11; 13, branch connecting the inferior cervical ganglion to phrenic nerve; 14, I. dorsal nerve; 15, left subclavian artery; 16, carotid artery; 17, right subclavian artery; 18, Wrisberg's ganglion; 19, *a*, sympathetic branches to the heart; 19, three inferior cardiac nerves. The phrenic nerve in this subject arose from the III., IV., and V. cervical nerves; 20 to 39, lateral chain of sympathetic ganglia; 40, left recurrent laryngeal nerve; 41, superior splanchnic nerve; 42, middle splanchnic nerve; 43, inferior splanchnic nerve; 44, 45, aortic branches from the lateral chain of ganglia; 45 to 56, intercostal nerve; 57, diaphragmatic ganglion; 58, right vagus nerve; 59, left vagus nerve; 60, nerve joining the vagi; 61, coeliac axis; 62, phrenic artery surrounded by the phrenic plexus, which is connected with the phrenic ganglion (57); 63, 64, abdominal brain (ganglion coeliacum); 65, renal ganglion, I. L., II. L., III. L., IV. L., V. L., lumbar nerves; 66, right superior splanchnic nerve; 67, seven nerves passing to the adrenal; 68, rich meshwork of nerves surrounding left renal artery; 69, right renal ganglion; 70, 71, ovarian ganglion; 72, aortic plexus; 73, inferior mesenteric ganglion; 74, hypogastric plexus; 75, 76, 77, pelvic brain (cervico-vaginal ganglion). At 75 branches from the pelvis brain are emitted to rectum, vagina, and bladder. At 76 the branches from the II., III., and IV. sacral nerves join the pelvic brain. At 77 the uterine nerves are emitted to supply the uterus; 78, oviducal nerves; 79, uterine nerves; 80, bladder; 81, vagina; 82, 83, rectum; I. S., II. S., III. S., IV. S., sacral nerves; 84, arteria uterina ovarica. The right lumbar lateral chain is not numbered; 85, nerves to levator ani; *Il.* and *Hy.*, ileo-hypogastric; *Ii.*, ileo-inguinal; *Ec.*, external cutaneous; *Ac.*, anterior crural; *Obt.*, Obturator; *G. C.*, genito-crural; *G. S.*, great sciatic.

correspond pretty nearly in number to the vertebrae against which they lie. They may be thus arranged:

Cervical	portion	.	.	.	.	3	pairs of	ganglia.
Dorsal	"	.	.	.	.	12	"	"
Lumbar	"	.	.	.	.	4	"	"
Sacral	"	.	.	.	4 or	5	"	"

In the neck they are situated in front of the transverse processes of the vertebrae; **in the dorsal region,** in front of the heads of the ribs; **in the lumbar region,** on the sides of the bodies of the vertebrae; and **in the sacral region,** in front of the sacrum. As the two cords pass into the pelvis they converge and unite together in a single ganglion, the **coccygeal ganglion** or **ganglion impar** (*ganglion coccygeum impar*) placed in front of the coccyx. Each ganglion may be regarded as a distinct centre, and, in addition to its branches of distribution, possesses also branches of communication which communicate with other ganglia and with the cerebro-spinal nerves.

The **branches of communication** between the ganglia (Figs. 689 and 690) are composed of gray nerve-fibres (*gray rami communicantes*) and white nerve-fibres (*white rami communicantes*), the latter being continuous with those fibres of the spinal nerves which pass to the ganglia.

The three great gangliated plexuses (*collateral ganglia*) are situated in front of the spine in the thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic regions, and are named, respectively, the **cardiac,** the **solar** or **epigastric,** and the **hypogastric plexus.** They consist of collections of nerves and ganglia, the nerves being derived from the gangliated cords and from the cerebro-spinal nerves. They distribute branches to the viscera.

Smaller or **Terminal ganglia** are also found lying amidst the nerves, some of them of microscopic size, in certain viscera—as, for instance, in the heart, the stomach, and the uterus. They serve as additional centres for the origin of nerve-fibres. There are numerous special ganglia connected with the cranial nerves.

These ganglia have been described in a previous section (see ophthalmic ganglion, otic ganglion, spheno-palatine ganglion, and submaxillary ganglion).

The **branches of distribution** derived from the gangliated cords, from the prevertebral plexuses, and also from the smaller ganglia, are principally destined for the blood-vessels and thoracic and abdominal viscera, supplying the involuntary muscular fibre of the coats of the vessels and the hollow viscera, and the secreting cells, as well as the muscular coats of the vessels in the glandular viscera.

Structure of the Sympathetic System.—The sympathetic system is not, as was so long taught, an independent system. It receives fibres from the cerebro-spinal system and arranges them for distribution to the splanchnic blood-vessels and the viscera. It receives fibres from the viscera and transmits them to the cerebro-spinal system, and it transmits fibres by way of the spinal nerves to unstriped muscles, to vessels, and to glands. It is simply an arrangement of spinal nerves to permit of the re-arrangement and transmission of impulses. In order to effect this, the spinal nerves are connected with a series of ganglia, which possess a certain power of government or automatic action. In the sympathetic system non-medullated fibres predominate. The individual nerve-fibres are smaller in diameter than those of the cerebro-spinal system, and the fibres are interrupted by nerve-cells contained in a ganglia chain, known as the **gangliated cord,** and are also sometimes interrupted in gangliated plexuses and in terminal ganglia. The sympathetic nerves have a notable disposition to form plexuses. It is important to note that not all of the visceral branches of the spinal nerves join the gangliated cord—for instance, the visceral branches of the third and fourth sacral do not. The majority, but not all, of the sympathetic fibres are **non-medullated** (*fibres of*

Remak), but in the adult true non-medullated fibres are found only in the sympathetic system. These fibres are of smaller diameter than spinal nerve-fibres, and are prolongations of axones of sympathetic ganglia cells. Each fibre is surrounded by connective-tissue structure which resembles the neurilemma, which contains numerous nuclei, and which is a prolongation of the capsule of a sympathetic cell capsule.

A sympathetic nerve consists of numerous non-medullated and some medullated fibres. The connective tissue which separates the nerve-bundles carries blood-vessels and nervi nervorum, but no lymph vessels.

The **sympathetic ganglia** contain multipolar cells which are smaller than those of the spinal ganglia. Each cell contains two nuclei, and is surrounded by a delicate capsule of connective tissue. The cell gives off one axone and several short

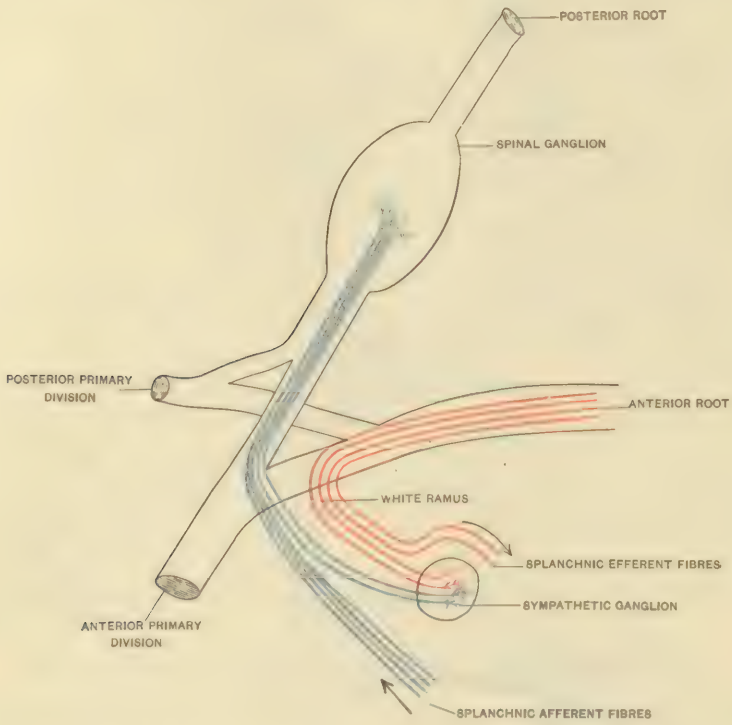


FIG. 689.—The white ramus communicans (schematic). (After Cunningham.)

dendrites. The axone is non-medullated when it begins and may remain so or may become medullated. Fibres which take origin from sympathetic axones, the **commissural fibre**, may pass to an adjacent ganglion cell, may pass toward the centre **central fibre** or **gray ramus communicans**, or may pass toward the periphery, **peripheral fibre**, and reach certain glands, or to unstriped muscle of blood-vessels, intestines, iris, etc. The fibres passing to glands are called **secretory fibres.**

The dendrites of a sympathetic ganglion cell form arborizations about other ganglion cells. The sympathetic ganglia contain fibres, as well as cells. Some of the fibres are medullated and some are non-medullated, the latter taking origin from the sympathetic ganglion cells, the former being motor and sensory cerebrospinal fibres which have reached the sympathetic by the rami communicantes.[1]

[1] Histology and Microscopic Anatomy, by Szymonowicz. Translated and edited by John Bruce MacCallum.

The **medullated fibres**, the **white rami communicantes** or the **visceral branches** of the **spinal nerves** (Figs. 689 and 690) originate from the anterior divisions of certain spinal nerves. Two groups of them can be recognized, one group coming from the nerves from the first or second dorsal to the second or third lumbar nerves; another group from the second or third lumbar to the third or fourth sacral. The

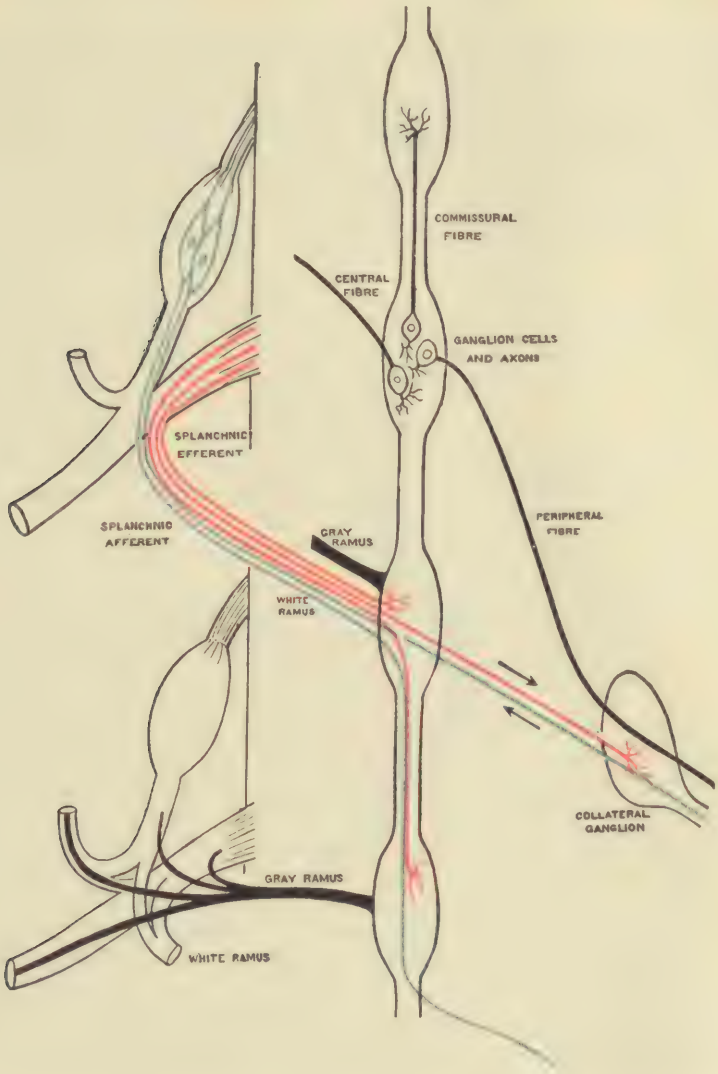


FIG. 690.—Scheme of the constitution and connections of the gangliated cord of the sympathetic. The gangliated cord is indicated on the right with the arrangement of the fibres arising from the ganglion cells. On the left the roots and trunks of spinal nerves are shown, with the arrangement of the white ramus communicans above and the gray ramus below. (Cunningham.)

visceral branches of the third and fourth sacral do not join the gangliated cord; the other visceral branches do join it. The fibres of the visceral branches of the spinal nerves are derived from both the anterior and the posterior nerve-roots, but more largely from the anterior than from the posterior. The visceral fibres of the anterior roots are axones of nerve-cells of the spinal cord, and by way of the white rami enter into the sympathetic ganglia. Some of them end and form networks about the

ganglia cells. Others pass up or down and end in an adjacent ganglion. Others pass through a ganglion of the gangliated cord and end in a peripheral ganglion with non-medullated fibres, which take origin from ganglia of the gangliated cord. The fibres of the white ramus which pass through the ganglion and go to the periphery are known as the **splanchnic efferent fibres**, and constitute the secretory fibres of the splanchnic glands and the motor fibres of the muscular tissue of splanchnic blood-vessels and viscera. The visceral fibres of the posterior nerve-roots aid in the formation of the white rami and *arise* as axones of nerve-cells in the spinal ganglia on the posterior roots, pass through the ganglia of the sympathetic cord, but do not terminate in them, and leave the ganglion directly to pass through a peripheral ganglion to be distributed to the periphery or ascend or descend to an adjacent ganglion and pass through this to a collateral ganglion, and from that to the periphery. They constitute the **splanchnic afferent fibres**, the sensory fibres of the viscera.

The non-medullated fibres take origin from the cells of the sympathetic ganglia and are axones of these cells. Some help to form the commissure, which joins a ganglion to adjacent ganglia and end as networks about the cells of an adjacent ganglion. Others run to the periphery and help to form the splanchnic efferent branches. Some pass from the ganglia to the spinal nerve-roots and to the anterior and posterior divisions of the nerves. The latter are the *gray rami communicantes* (Fig. 690), largely composed of non-medullated but containing some medullated fibres. They give branches to the somatic part of the nerves and not the visceral, and furnish secretory fibres and fibres to unstriated muscle and minute branches to the membranes which enwrap the nerve-roots. The commissures of the gangliated cord are composed of white and gray fibres. The former consist of both splanchnic efferent and splanchnic afferent fibres. The latter are axones from sympathetic ganglion cells, and some of these are truly commissural, but others pass up or down the cord and through a ganglion and become branches which go to the periphery.

From the above it becomes evident that the peripheral branches of the sympathetic contain white fibres, which are composed of splanchnic efferent and splanchnic afferent branches and also contain splanchnic efferent gray fibres. Fig. 690, from Cunningham's *Text-book of Anatomy*, exhibits the constitution and connections of the gangliated cord of the sympathetic.

THE GANGLIATED CORD (TRUNCUS SYMPATHICUS).

The Cervical Portion (Pars Cervicalis) of the Gangliated Cord.

The cervical portion of the gangliated cord is to be regarded as a prolongation upward of the primitive sympathetic along the great vessels of the neck (Prof. Cunningham). It is not connected to the cervical spinal nerves by white rami communicantes. It obtains its spinal fibres from the upper dorsal nerves. These fibres ascend in the commissure of the gangliated cord and join the cells of the cervical ganglia. From the cervical ganglia come fibres to the unstriped muscle (veins and arteries of the head, neck, and limbs, and to the skin of the head and neck, secretory fibres to the salivary glands and fibres to the heart). The fibres to the vessels are called **vasomotor nerves**, and the fibres to the heart are called **cardio-motor nerves**. In the neck the gangliated cord is situated behind the carotid vessels and upon the muscles in front of the vertebrae, and runs from the root of the neck to the base of the skull, being continuous below with the thoracic gangliated cord and ending above in the carotid plexus. There are usually three ganglia on each side, each of which is distinguished, according to its position, as the **superior, middle** and **inferior cervical ganglion.**

The Superior Cervical Ganglion (*ganglion cervicale superius*) (Figs. 691, 692, and 693).—The superior cervical ganglion, the largest of the three, is about three-

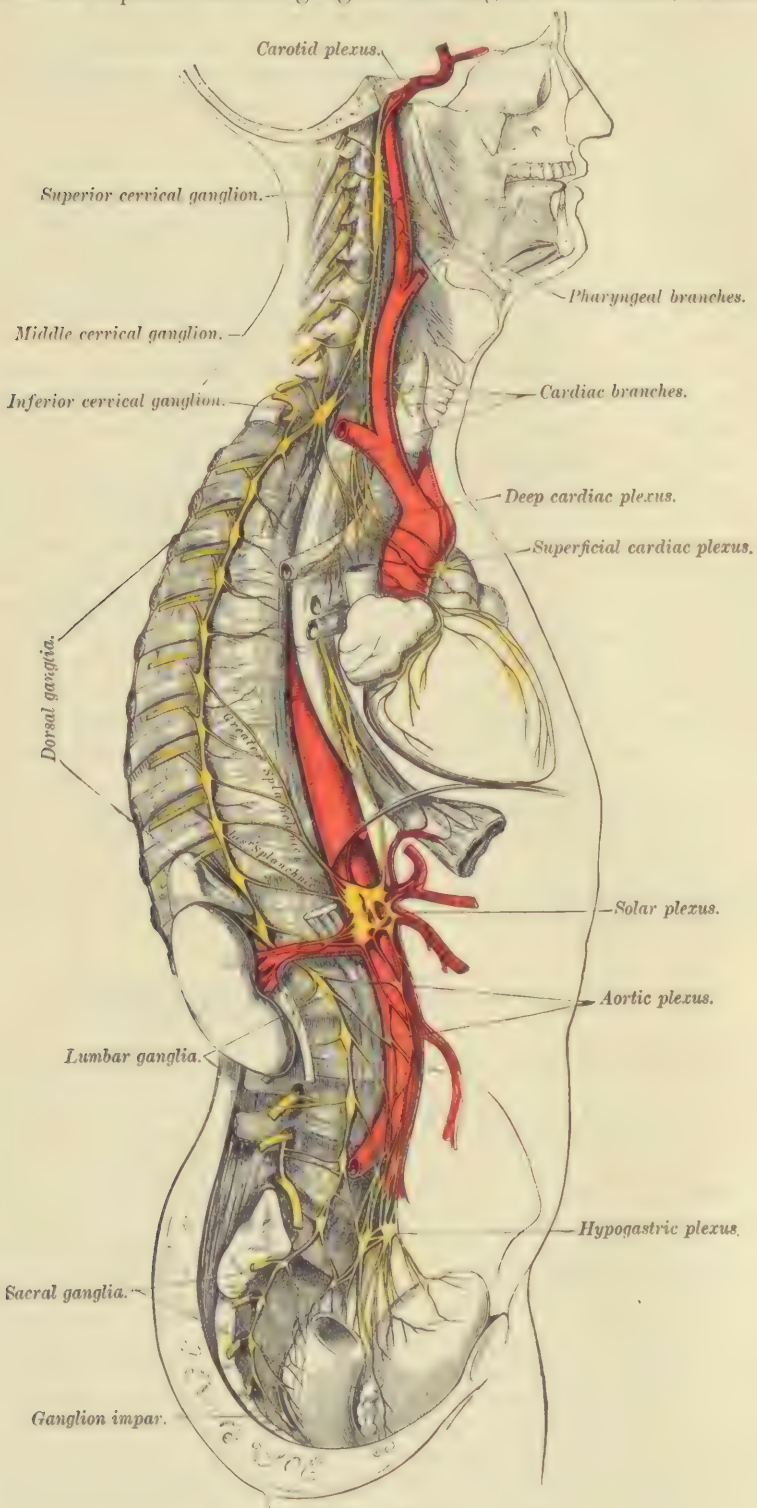


FIG. 691.—The sympathetic nerve.

quarters of an inch in length. It is placed opposite the second and third cervical vertebrae. It is of a reddish-gray color, is usually fusiform in shape, is sometimes broad and flattened, and is occasionally constricted at intervals, so as to give rise to the opinion that it consists of the coalescence of several smaller ganglia; and it is usually believed that it is formed by the coalescence of the four ganglia corresponding to the four upper cervical nerves. It is in relation, in front, with the sheath of the internal carotid artery and internal jugular vein; behind, it lies on the Rectus capitis anticus major muscle. It is connected to the middle cervical ganglion by the commissure of the gangliated cord.

Branches (Fig. 693).—The branches of the superior cervical ganglion are **central** and **peripheral.**

Central or Communicating Branches.—1. Gray rami communicantes arise in the ganglion and pass to the first, second, third, and fourth cervical nerves. 2. Branches are given off to certain cranial nerves in the neck (Figs. 692 and 693). What is known as the **jugular nerve** (*n. jugularis*) (Fig. 693) passes to the ganglion on the trunk of the vagus, a branch from the ganglion passes to the ganglia on the root of the pneumogastric (Fig. 693) and to the petrosal ganglion of the glosso-pharyngeal (Fig. 693), and a branch goes to the hypoglossal (Fig. 693).

Peripheral Branches.—These branches may be divided into **superior, internal** and **anterior.**

The **Superior Branch of the Superior Cervical Ganglion** or the **Internal Carotid Branch** (*n. caroticus internus*) (Fig. 692) appears to be a direct prolongation of the ganglion. It is soft in texture and of a reddish color. It ascends by the side of the internal carotid artery, and, entering the carotid canal in the temporal bone, divides into two branches, which lie, one on the outer, and the other on the inner, side of that vessel.

The **outer branch,** the larger of the two, distributes filaments to the internal carotid artery and forms the **internal carotid plexus.**

The **inner branch** also distributes filaments to the internal carotid, and, continuing onward, forms the **cavernous plexus.**

The Internal Carotid Plexus (*plexus caroticus internus*) (Figs. 691, 692, and 693).—The carotid plexus is situated on the outer side of the internal carotid artery. Filaments from this plexus occasionally form a small gangliform swelling on the under surface of the artery, which is called the **carotid ganglion.** The internal carotid plexus communicates with the Gasserian ganglion, with the sixth nerve, and the spheno-palatine ganglion, and distributes filaments to the wall of the carotid artery and to the dura mater (Valentin), while in the carotid canal it communicates with Jacobson's nerve, which is the tympanic branch of the glosso-pharyngeal.

The *communicating branches with the sixth nerve* (Fig. 693) consist of one or two filaments which join that nerve as it lies upon the outer side of the internal carotid. Other filaments are also connected with the Gasserian ganglion. The communication with the spheno-palatine ganglion is effected by a branch, the **large deep petrosal nerve** (Fig. 677), which is given off from the plexus on the outer side of the artery, and which passes through the cartilage filling up the foramen lacerum medium, and joins the large superficial petrosal from the facial to form the **Vidian nerve** (Figs. 670, 672, and 677). The Vidian nerve then proceeds along the pterygoid or Vidian canal to the spheno-palatine ganglion. The communication with Jacobson's nerve is effected by two branches, one of which is called the **deep petrosal nerve,** and the other the **carotico-tympanic nerve**; the latter may consist of two or three delicate filaments.

The Cavernous Plexus (*plexus cavernosus*) (Figs. 692 and 693).—The cavernous plexus is situated below and internal to that part of the internal carotid which is placed by the side of the sella turcica in the cavernous sinus, and is formed chiefly

by the internal division of the ascending branch from the superior cervical ganglion. It communicates with the third, the fourth, the ophthalmic division of the fifth, and the sixth nerves, and with the ophthalmic ganglion, and distributes filaments to the wall of the internal carotid and to the pituitary body. The branch of communication with the third nerve (Fig. 693) joins it at its point of division; the branch to the fourth nerve (Fig. 693) joins it as it lies on the outer wall of the cavernous sinus; other filaments are connected with the under surface of the trunk of the ophthalmic nerve; and a second filament of communication joins the sixth nerve (Fig. 693).

The filament of connection with the ophthalmic ganglion (Figs. 666 and 693) arises from the anterior part of the cavernous plexus; it accompanies the nasal nerve or continues forward as a separate branch.

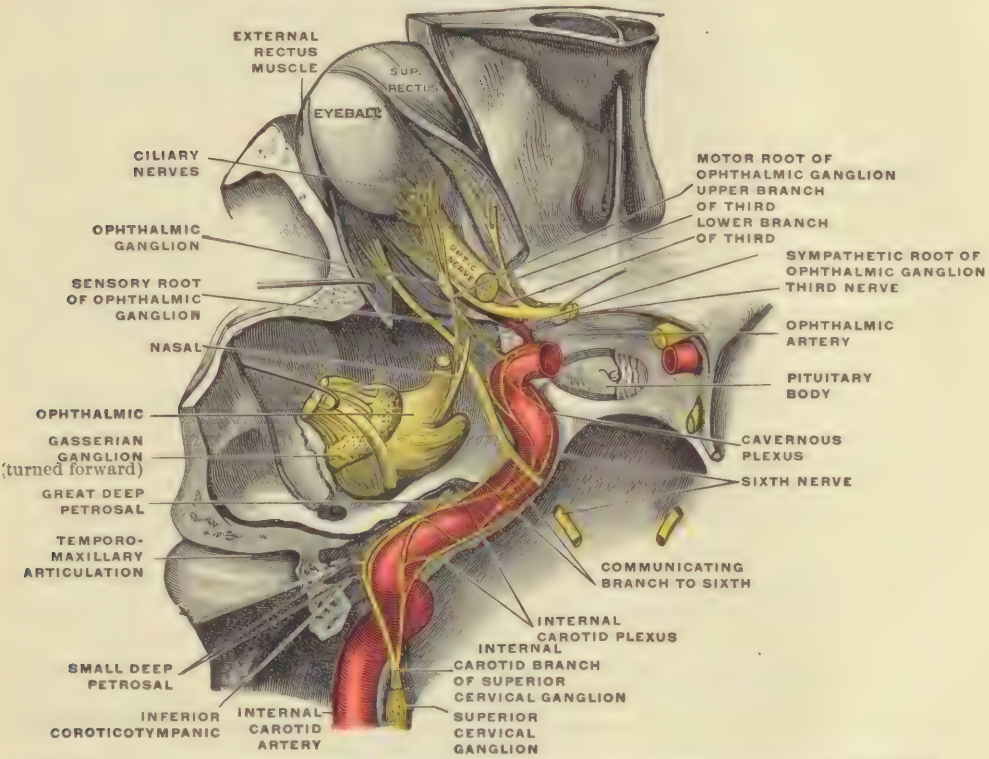


FIG. 692.—The cephalic portion of the sympathetic nervous system, seen obliquely from above and behind. (Toldt.)

Terminal Branches of the Carotid and Cavernous Plexuses.—The terminal filaments from the carotid and cavernous plexuses are prolonged along the internal carotid, forming plexuses which entwine around the cerebral and ophthalmic arteries; along the former vessels they may be traced on to the pia mater; along the latter, into the orbit, where they accompany each of the subdivisions of the vessel, a separate plexus passing, with the arteria centralis retinae, into the interior of the eyeball. The filaments prolonged on to the anterior communicating artery form a small ganglion, the **ganglion of Ribes,**[1] which serves, as mentioned above, to connect the sympathetic nerves of the right and left sides.

The so-called **Inferior** or **Descending Branch of the Superior Cervical Ganglion** communicates with the middle cervical ganglion. It is the commissure of the gangliated cord.

[1] The existence of this ganglion is doubted by some observers.—ED. of 15th English edition.

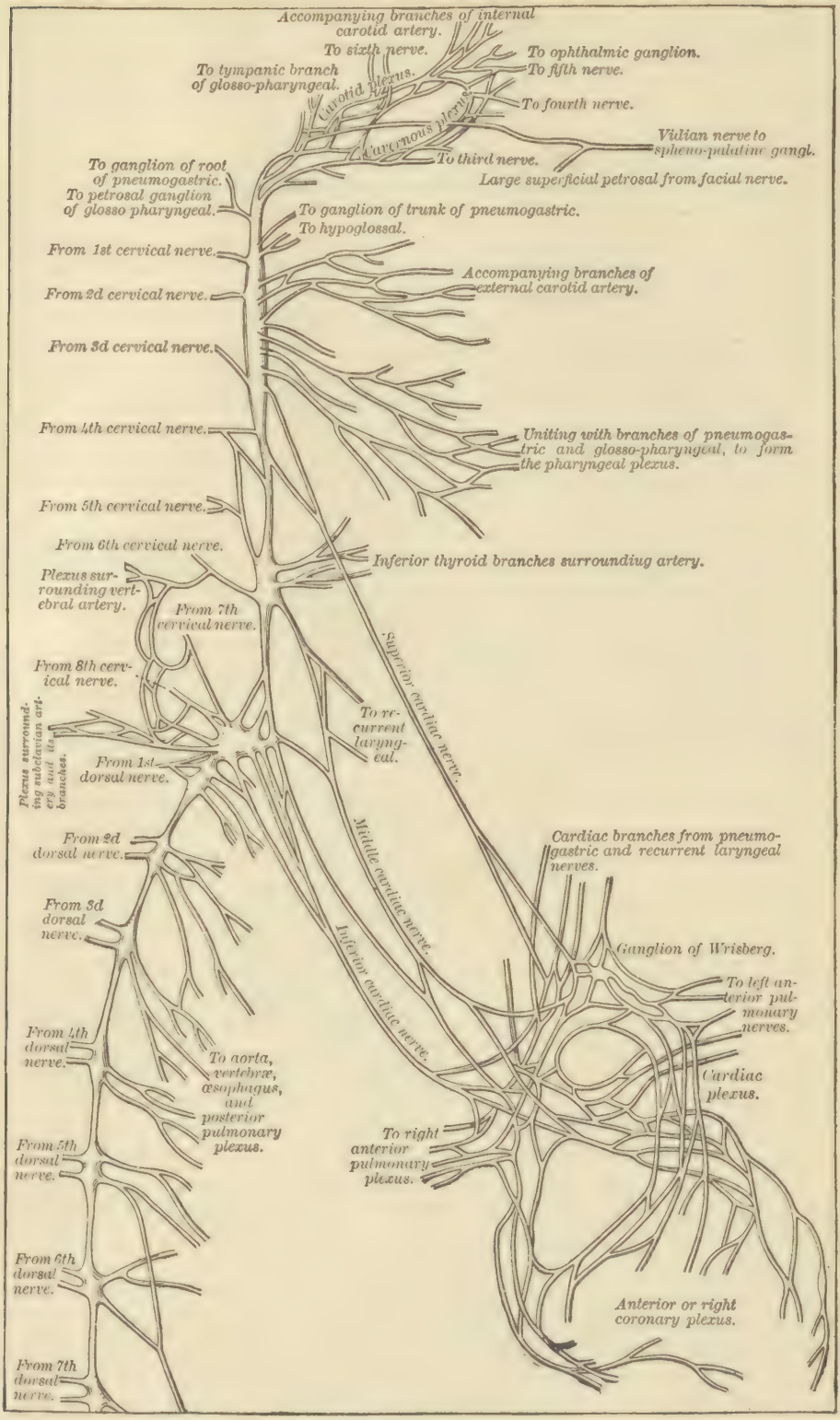


FIG. 693.—Plan of the cervical portion of the sympathetic. (After Flower.)

The **Internal Branches of the Superior Cervical Ganglion** are three in number—the **pharyngeal, laryngeal** and **superior cardiac nerve.**

The **pharyngeal branches** (*rami pharyngei*) (Figs. 691 and 693) pass inward to the side of the pharynx, where they join with branches from the glosso-pharyngeal, pneumogastric, and external laryngeal nerves to form the **pharyngeal plexus** (*plexus pharyngeus*).

The **laryngeal branches** unite with the superior laryngeal nerve and its branches.

The **superior cardiac nerve** or the **nervus superficialis cordis** (*n. cardiacus superior*) (Figs. 691 and 693) arises by two or more branches from the superior cervical ganglion, and occasionally receives a filament from the cord of communication between the first and second cervical ganglia. It runs down the neck behind the common carotid artery, lying upon the Longus colli muscle, and crosses in front of the inferior thyroid artery and recurrent laryngeal nerve. The **right superior cardiac nerve,** at the root of the neck, passes either in front of or behind the subclavian artery, and along the arteria innominata, to the back part of the arch of the aorta, where it joins the **deep cardiac plexus.** This nerve, in its course, is connected with other branches of the sympathetic; about the middle of the neck it receives filaments from the external laryngeal nerve; lower down it obtains one or two twigs from the pneumogastric; and as it enters the thorax it is joined by a filament from the recurrent laryngeal. Filaments from this nerve communicate with the thyroid branches from the middle cervical ganglion. The **left superior cardiac nerve,** in the chest, runs by the side of the left common carotid artery and in front of the arch of the aorta to the superficial cardiac plexus, but occasionally it passes behind the aorta and terminates in the deep cardiac plexus.

The **Anterior Branches** of the **Superior Cervical Ganglion** (*nn. carotici externi*) (Fig. 693) ramify upon the external carotid artery and its branches, forming around each a delicate plexus, on the nerves composing which small ganglia are occasionally found. The plexuses accompanying some of these arteries have important communications with other nerves. That surrounding the **external carotid artery** (*plexus caroticus externus*) is connected with the branch of the facial nerve to the Stylo-hyoid muscle; that surrounding the **facial artery** communicates with the submaxillary ganglion by one or two filaments; and that accompanying the **middle meningeal artery** sends offsets which pass to the otic ganglion and to the geniculate ganglion of the facial nerve and constitute the external superficial petrosal nerve (Fig. 677).

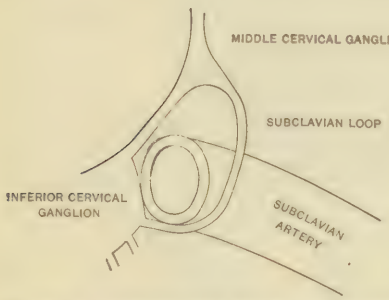


FIG. 694.—The subclavian loop passing from the middle to the inferior cervical ganglia.

The Middle Cervical or Thyroid Ganglion (*ganglion cervical medium*) (Figs. 391 and 693).—The middle cervical or thyroid ganglion is the smallest of the three cervical ganglia, and is occasionally altogether wanting. It varies somewhat in position, but in most individuals is placed opposite the sixth cervical vertebra, usually upon, or close to, the inferior thyroid artery; hence the name, **thyroid ganglion,** assigned to it by Haller. It is probably formed by the coalescence of two ganglia corresponding to the fifth and sixth cervical nerves.

It communicates above with the superior cervical ganglion and below with the inferior cervical ganglion by means of the commissure of the gangliated cord.

The Central Communicating Branches (Fig. 693).—The central communicating branches are: 1. Gray rami communicantes passing from the ganglion to the anterior divisions of the fifth and sixth cervical nerves. 2. The subclavian loop or the **ansa of Vieussens** (*ansa subclavia*) (Fig. 694) arises from the ganglion, passes

down over the front and under the subclavian artery and runs back to join the inferior cervical ganglion. It gives branches to the artery. In some cases this nerve takes origin from the sympathetic trunk below the ganglion.

The Peripheral Branches.—The peripheral branches are the **thyroid** and the **middle cardiac nerve.**

The **Thyroid Branches** (Fig. 693) are small filaments which accompany the inferior thyroid artery to the thyroid gland, forming the **inferior thyroid plexus** (*plexus thyreoideus inferior*); they communicate, on the artery, with the superior cardiac nerve, and, in the gland, with branches from the recurrent and external laryngeal nerves.

The **Middle** or **Great Cardiac Nerve** (*n. cardiacus medius*) (Figs. 691 and 693), the largest of the three cardiac nerves, arises from the middle cervical ganglion or from the cord between the middle and inferior ganglia. On the right side it descends behind the common carotid artery, and at the root of the neck passes either in front of or behind the subclavian artery; it then descends on the trachea, receives a few filaments from the recurrent laryngeal nerve, and joins the right side of the deep cardiac plexus. In the neck it communicates with the superior cardiac and recurrent laryngeal nerves. On the left side the middle cardiac nerve enters the chest between the left carotid and subclavian arteries, and joins the left side of the deep cardiac plexus. If the middle cervical ganglion is absent, the above-named branches arise from the gangliated cord.

The Inferior Cervical Ganglion (*ganglion cervicale inferius*)(Figs. 691 and 693). —The inferior cervical ganglion is situated between the base of the transverse process of the last cervical vertebra and the neck of the first rib on the inner side of the superior intercostal artery. Its form is irregular; it is larger in size than the preceding, and is frequently joined with the first thoracic ganglion. It is probably formed by the coalescence of two ganglia which correspond to the two last cervical nerves. It joins the middle ganglion above and the first thoracic ganglion below by the commissural cord, and is usually also joined to the middle ganglion by the subclavian loop.

The Central Communicating Branches.—Its central communicating branches are: 1. Gray rami communicantes passing to the anterior divisions of the seventh and eighth cervical nerves (Fig. 693). 2. The subclavian loop (Fig. 694), which has been previously described and which passes under and in front of the subclavian artery to reach the middle cervical ganglion or the commissural cord.

The Peripheral Branches.—The peripheral branches are: 1. **Vascular.** The **vertebral plexus** (*plexus vertebralis*) (Fig. 693) lies upon the vertebral artery and its branches in the neck and in the cranial cavity. The **subclavian plexus** (*plexus subclavius*) (Fig. 693) arises from the subclavian loop, which may be regarded as a branch of the inferior or of the middle ganglion. 2. **Cardiac.** The **inferior** or **minor cardiac nerve** (*n. cardiacus inferior*) (Fig. 693) arises from the inferior cervical or first thoracic ganglion. It passes down behind the subclavian artery and along the front of the trachea to join the deep cardiac plexus. It communicates freely behind the subclavian artery with the recurrent laryngeal and middle cardiac nerves.

Surgical Anatomy.—The situation of the cervical sympathetic makes wounds of it rare. Thirteen cases of sympathetic traumatic injury were collected by Seeligmüller. In ten cases paralysis existed; in three, irritation. Tumors of the neck may cause irritation or paralysis. In *irritation* of the sympathetic the corresponding side of the face becomes pale, the pupil dilates, the palpebral fissure widens, and the eyeball protrudes. In many cases there is acceleration of the heart beats. In *paralysis* of the sympathetic the pupil contracts, the palpebral fissure is narrowed by partial ptosis, the corresponding side of the face reddens, there is an increase in the flow of tears, and recession of the eyeball.

The surgeon occasionally resects the sympathetic. Jonnesco recommends bilateral removal of the superior cervical ganglia for glaucoma, and bilateral removal of all the cervical sympathetic ganglia for epilepsy and for exophthalmic goitre.

The Thoracic Portion (Pars Thoracalis) of the Gangliated Cord (Fig. 695).

The thoracic portion of the gangliated cord consists of a series of ganglia which usually correspond in number to that of the vertebrae, but, from the occasional coalescence of two, their number is uncertain. These ganglia are placed on each side of the spine, resting against the heads of the ribs, and are covered by

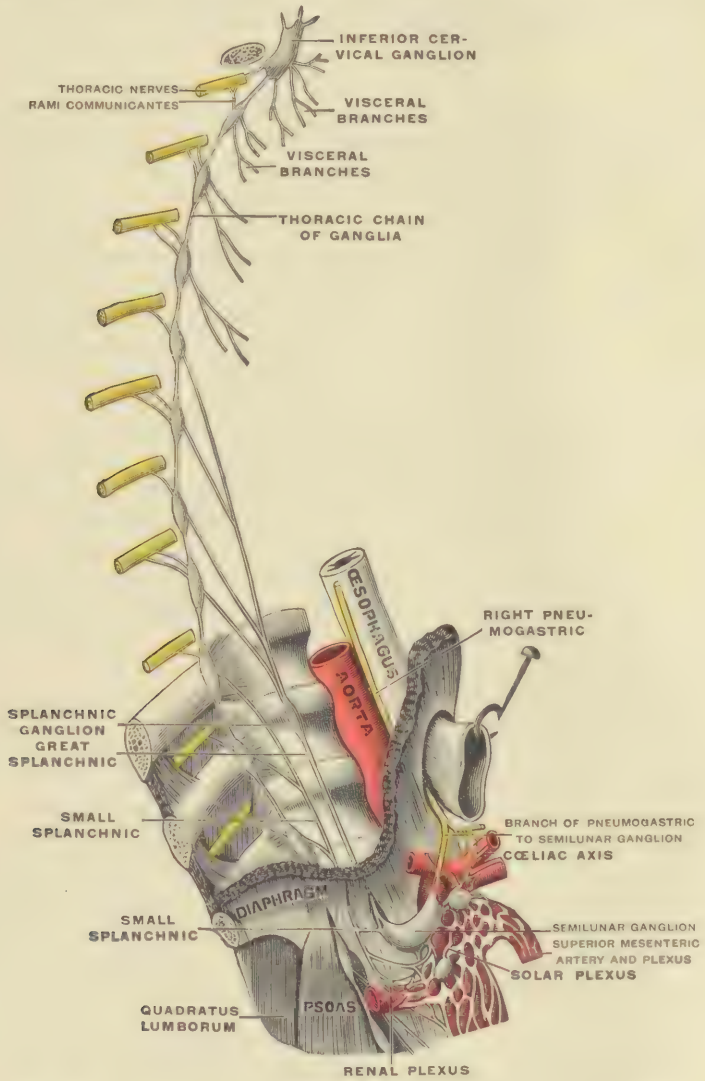


FIG. 695.—Plan of the right sympathetic cord and splanchnic nerves. (Testut.)

the pleura costalis; the last two ganglia are, however, anterior to the rest, being placed on the side of the bodies of the eleventh and twelfth dorsal vertebrae. The ganglia are small in size and of a grayish color. The first ganglion, larger than the rest, is of an elongated form and is frequently blended with the last cervical ganglion. They are connected together by cord-like prolongations from the substance. In the thorax each thoracic or dorsal spinal nerve, with occasionally the exception of the first, sends a **visceral branch** or **white ramus communicans** to the thoracic gangliated cord (Figs. 693 and 695). As Prof. Cunningham points out,

the white rami "separate into two main streams in relation to the sympathetic cord. Those of the upper five nerves are, for the most part, directed upward in the gangliated cord to be distributed through the cervical part of the sympathetic in the manner already described. The white rami of the lower thoracic nerves are, for the most part, directed downward in the lower part of the sympathetic cord, and its branches, to be distributed to the abdomen; at the same time some of their fibres are directly associated with the supply of certain thoracic viscera — lungs, aorta, oesophagus."[1] The white rami are composed of splanchnic afferent fibres and somatic and splanchnic efferent fibres.

Central Communicating Branches.—1. **White rami communicantes** (see above).

2. **Gray rami communicantes** arise from each one of the thoracic ganglia, pass backward with the white rami, and enter into the anterior divisions of the thoracic nerves.

Peripheral Branches (Fig. 693).—1. **Aortic Branches** (Fig. 693) come off from the first five or six upper ganglia. They send filaments to the aorta and its branches, to the vertebral bodies, and to the vertebral ligaments. The aortic branches help to form the **thoracic aortic plexus** (*plexus aorticus thoracalis*). This plexus is completed by branches from the cardiac plexus.

2. **Pulmonary Branches** (Fig. 693) come off from the third and fourth and sometimes from the first and second ganglia.

3. **The Splanchnic Nerves** (Figs. 688, 691, and 695).—From the six or seven lower ganglia and from the commissural cord a number of large white branches arise. They give filaments to the aorta and unite to form the three splanchnic nerves on each side. These are named the **great**, the **lesser**, and the **smallest** or **renal splanchnic**.

The **superior** or **great splanchnic nerve** (*n. splanchnicus major*) is of a white color, firm in texture, and presents a marked contrast to the ganglionic nerves. It is formed by branches from the thoracic ganglia between the fifth or sixth and the ninth or tenth, but the fibres in the higher roots may be traced upward in the sympathetic cord as far as the first or second thoracic ganglion. These roots unite to form a large round cord of considerable size. It descends obliquely inward in front of the bodies of the vertebrae along the posterior mediastinum, perforates the crus of the Diaphragm, and terminates in the **semilunar ganglion of the solar plexus** (Fig. 695), distributing filaments to the **renal** and **suprarenal plexus**.

The **middle, lesser** or **small splanchnic nerve** (*n. splanchnicus minor*) is formed by filaments from the tenth and eleventh ganglia, and from the cord between them. It pierces the Diaphragm with the preceding nerve, and joins the **solar plexus** (Fig. 695). It communicates in the chest with the great splanchnic nerve, and occasionally sends filaments to the renal plexus.

The **inferior, smallest, least** or **renal splanchnic nerve** (*n. splanchnicus imus*) arises from the last thoracic ganglion, and, piercing the Diaphragm, terminates in the **renal plexus** and lower part of the **solar plexus**. It occasionally communicates with the preceding nerve (Fig. 688).

A striking analogy appears to exist between the splanchnic and the cardiac nerves. The cardiac nerves are three in number; they arise from the three cervical ganglia, and are distributed to a large and important organ in the thoracic cavity. The splanchnic nerves, also three in number, are connected probably with all the dorsal ganglia, and are distributed to important organs in the abdominal cavity.

The Lumbar Portion (Pars Lumbalis) of the Gangliated Cord (Figs. 688, 691).

The lumbar portion of the gangliated cord is situated in front of the vertebral column along the inner margin of the Psoas muscle. It consists usually of four

[1] Text-book of Anatomy.

ganglia, but there may be as many as eight, connected together by interganglionic cords. The ganglia are of small size, of a grayish color, shaped like a barleycorn, and placed much nearer the median line than the thoracic ganglia. Sometimes several ganglia are fused together.

It is connected with the thoracic portion by a thin commissure, which passes back of or through the Diaphragm. It is connected with the sacral portion by a commissure which is under the common iliac artery.

The upper lumbar ganglia or the upper portion of the gangliated cord receives **white rami communicantes** from the first two or three lumbar spinal nerves.

Central Communicating Branches.—**Gray rami communicantes** pass irregularly from the gangliated cord to the anterior divisions of the lumbar spinal nerves, the gray rami accompanying the white rami.

From the situation of the lumbar ganglia these branches are longer than in the other regions. They are usually two in number from each ganglion, but their connection with the spinal nerves is not so uniform as in other regions. They accompany the lumbar arteries around the sides of the bodies of the vertebrae, passing beneath the fibrous arches from which some of the fibres of the Psoas muscle arise.

Peripheral Branches.—Some branches pass inward, in front of the aorta, and help to form the **abdominal aortic plexus** (*plexus aorticus abdominalis*) (Fig. 691), which plexus is, however, developed chiefly by filaments from the cœliac plexus. Other branches descend in front of the common iliac arteries, and join over the promontory of the sacrum, helping to form the **hypogastric plexus** (*plexus hypogastricus*) (Fig. 691). Numerous delicate filaments are also distributed to the bodies of the vertebrae and the ligaments connecting them.

Pelvic or Sacral Portion (Pars Sacralis) of the Gangliated Cord (Figs. 688, 691).

The pelvic portion of the gangliated cord is situated in front of the sacrum along the inner side of the anterior sacral foramina. It consists of four or five small ganglia on each side, connected together by interganglionic cords. Below, these cords converge and unite on the front of the coccyx by means of a small ganglion, the **coccygeal ganglion** or **ganglion impar** (*ganglion coccygeum impar*) (Fig. 691). The commissural cord joins the pelvic portion to the lumbar portion of the gangliated cord. Like the cervical portion and the lower lumbar portion the sacral portion receives no **white rami communicantes.**

The visceral branches of the third sacral, and usually of the second and fourth sacral spinal nerves, are not connected with the ganglionic cord.

Central Communicating Branches.—**Gray rami communicantes,** which arise in the sacral ganglia and pass to the anterior divisions of the sacral and coccygeal nerves.

Peripheral Branches.—1. **Visceral branches** arise from the upper portion of the gangliated cord and pass to the pelvic plexus.

2. **Parietal branches** communicate, on the front of the sacrum, with the corresponding branches from the opposite side; some, from the first two ganglia, pass to join the pelvic plexus, and others form a plexus which accompanies the middle sacral artery and sends filaments to the coccygeal gland.

THE GREAT PLEXUSES OF THE SYMPATHETIC (Fig. 688).

The great plexuses of the sympathetic are the large aggregations of nerves and ganglia, previously alluded to, situated in the thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic cavities respectively. From them are derived the branches which supply the viscera.

The Cardiac Plexus (Plexus Cardiacus) (Figs. 688, 691).

The cardiac plexus is situated at the base of the heart, and is divided into a **superficial part,** which lies in the concavity of the arch of the aorta, and a **deep part,** which lies between the trachea and aorta. The two plexuses are, however, closely connected.

The Great or Deep Cardiac Plexus.—The great or deep cardiac plexus, the **plexus magnus profundus of Scarpa,** is situated in front of the trachea at its bifurcation, above the point of division of the pulmonary artery and behind the arch of the aorta. It is formed by the cardiac nerves derived from the cervical ganglia of the sympathetic and the cardiac branches of the recurrent laryngeal and pneumogastric. The only cardiac nerves which do not enter into the formation of this plexus are the left superior cardiac nerve and the inferior cervical cardiac branch from the left pneumogastric.

The branches from the **right side** of this plexus pass, some in front of, and others behind, the right pulmonary artery; the former, the more numerous, transmit a few filaments to the anterior pulmonary plexus, and are then continued onward to form part of the **left** or **anterior coronary plexus**; those behind the pulmonary artery distribute a few filaments to the right auricle, and are then continued onward to form a part of the **right** or **posterior coronary plexus.**

The branches from the **left side** of the deep cardiac plexus distribute a few filaments to the superficial cardiac plexus, to the left auricle of the heart, and to the anterior pulmonary plexus, and then pass on to form the greater part of the posterior coronary plexus.

The Anterior or Left Coronary Plexus (*plexus coronarius cordis anterior*).—The anterior or left coronary plexus is formed chiefly from the superficial cardiac plexus, but receives filaments from the deep cardiac plexus. Passing forward between the aorta and pulmonary artery, it accompanies the left coronary artery on the anterior surface of the heart.

The Posterior or Right Coronary Plexus (*plexus coronarius cordis posterior*).—The posterior or right coronary plexus is chiefly formed by filaments prolonged from the left side of the deep cardiac plexus, and by a few from the right side. It surrounds the branches of the coronary artery at the back of the heart, and its filaments are distributed with those vessels to the muscular substance of the ventricles.

The Superficial or Anterior Cardiac Plexus.—The superficial or anterior cardiac plexus lies beneath the arch of the aorta, in front of the right pulmonary artery. It is formed by the left superior cardiac nerve, the left (and occasionally also the right) inferior cervical cardiac branches of the pneumogastric, and filaments from the deep cardiac plexus. A small ganglion, the **cardiac ganglion of Wrisberg** (*ganglion cardiacum* [*Wrisbergi*]) is occasionally found connected with these nerves at their point of junction. This ganglion, when present, is situated immediately beneath the arch of the aorta, on the right side of the ductus arteriosus. The superficial cardiac plexus forms the chief part of the anterior coronary plexus, and several filaments pass along the pulmonary artery to the left anterior pulmonary plexus.

Valentin has described nervous filaments ramifying under the endocardium; and Remak has found, in several mammalia, numerous small ganglia on the cardiac nerves, both on the surface of the heart and in its muscular substance.

The Pulmonary Plexus (Plexus Pulmonalis).

The larger **posterior pulmonary plexus** is situated back of the root of the lung. It is formed by the pneumogastric nerve and branches from the second, third, and fourth thoracic sympathetic ganglia. It sends branches along the bronchi and

blood-vessels into the lung and some fibres pass to the front of the root of the lung to form the anterior pulmonary plexus. The smaller **anterior pulmonary plexus** is in front of and above the root of the lung. It is formed on each side by the fibres from the posterior pulmonary plexus. The left plexus receives branches from the superficial cardiac plexus. The anterior plexus supplies the structures of the root of the lung.

The Oesophageal Plexus (Plexus Oesophageus).

The oesophageal plexus is in the posterior mediastinum and surrounds the oesophagus. It is formed by the pneumogastric nerves which have come from

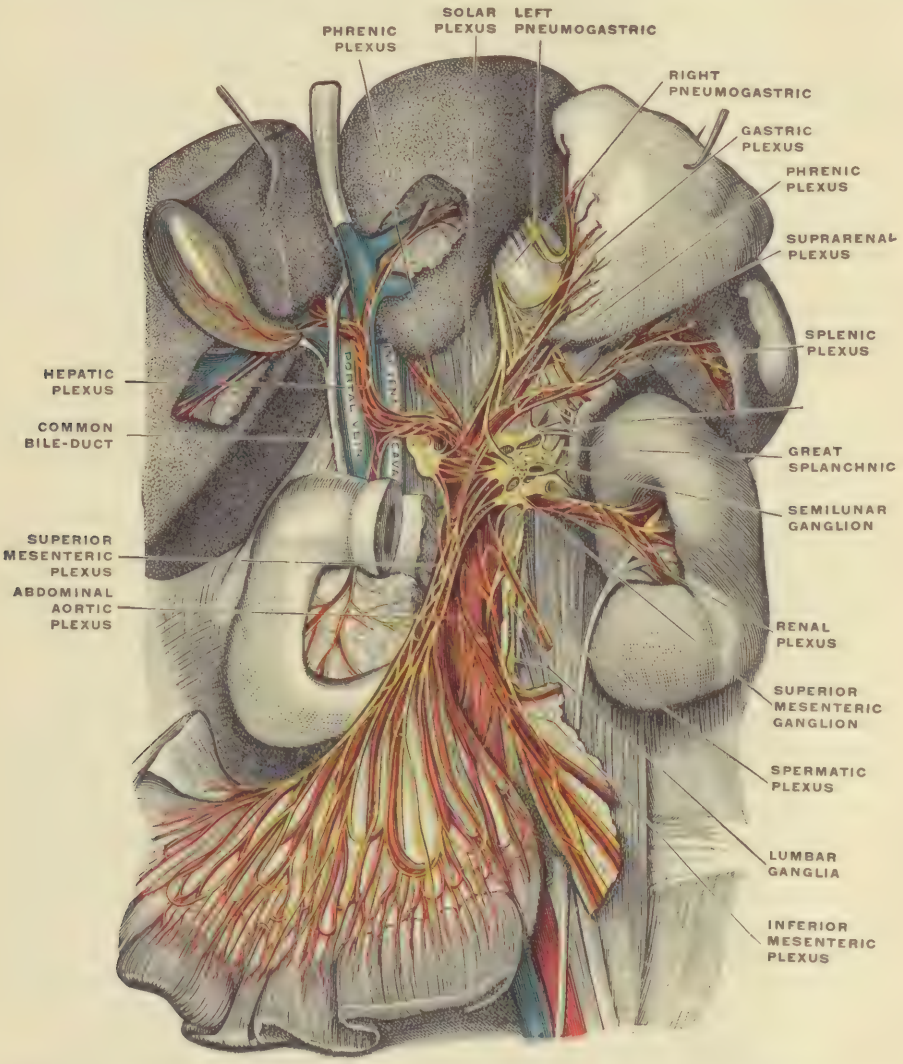


FIG. 696.—The semilunar ganglia with the sympathetic plexuses of the abdominal viscera radiating from the ganglia. (Toldt.)

the posterior pulmonary plexuses, and by fibres from the great splanchnic nerve and ganglion. The oesophageal plexus is usually considered as a portion of the pneumogastric nerve (p. 1061).

The Epigastric or Solar Plexus (Plexus Coeliacum) (Figs. 688, 691, 696, 697).

The epigastric or solar plexus supplies all the viscera in the abdominal cavity. It consists of a great network of nerves and ganglia, situated behind the pancreas

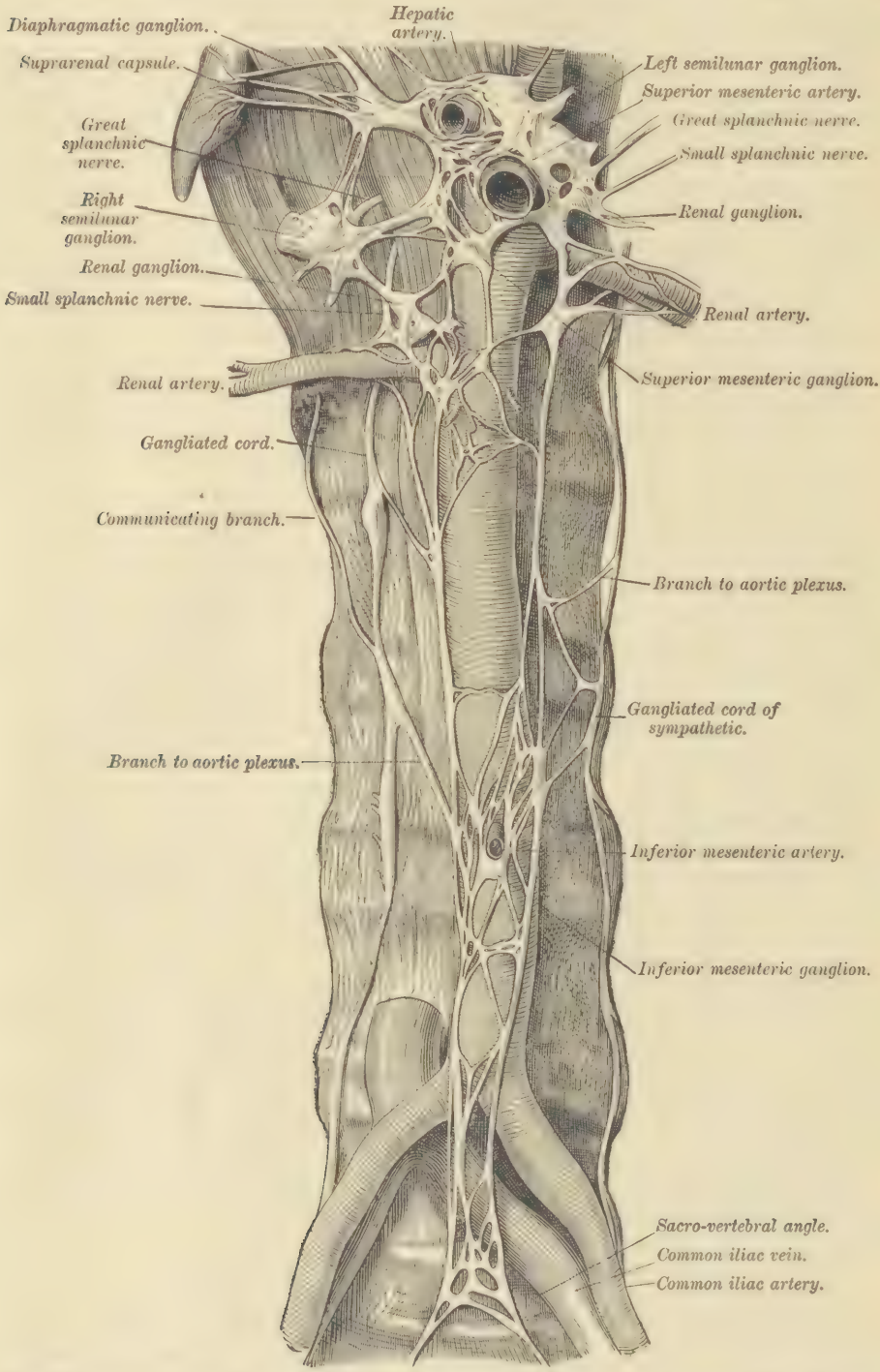


FIG. 697.—Lumbar portion of the gangliated cord, with the solar and hypogastric plexuses. (After Henle.)

and the lesser peritoneal cavity and in front of the aorta and crura of the Diaphragm. It surrounds the cœliac axis and root of the superior mesenteric artery, extending downward as low as the pancreas and outward to the suprarenal capsules. This plexus, and the ganglia connected with it, receive the **great**, the **small** and the **least splanchnic nerves** of both sides, and some filaments from the **right pneumogastric nerve**. It distributes filaments which accompany, under the name of plexuses, all the branches from the front of the abdominal aorta.

Of the ganglia of which the solar plexus is partly composed the principal are the two **semilunar ganglia** (*ganglia cœliaca*) (Figs. 688, 696, and 697), which are situated one on each side of the plexus, and are the largest ganglia in the body. They are large, irregular, gangliform masses formed by the aggregation of smaller ganglia, having interspaces between them. They are situated in front of the crura of the Diaphragm, close to the suprarenal capsules: the one on the right side lies beneath the inferior vena cava; the upper part of each ganglion is joined by the greater splanchnic nerve, and to the inner side of each the branches of the solar plexus are connected.

From the epigastric or solar plexus are derived the following:

Phrenic or Diaphragmatic plexus.
Suprarenal plexus.
Renal plexus.
Spermatic plexus.
Cœliac plexus { Gastric plexus. Splenic plexus. Hepatic plexus.
Superior mesenteric plexus.
Aortic plexus.

The Phrenic Plexus (*plexus phrenicus*) (Fig. 696).—The phrenic plexus accompanies the phrenic artery to the Diaphragm, which it supplies, some filaments passing to the suprarenal capsule. It arises from the upper part of the semilunar ganglion, and is larger on the right than on the left side. It receives one or two branches from the phrenic nerve. In connection with this plexus, on the right side, at its point of junction with the phrenic nerve, is a small ganglion, the **diaphragmatic** or **phrenic ganglion** (*ganglion phrenicum*) (Fig. 697). This ganglion is placed on the under surface of the Diaphragm, near the right suprarenal capsule. Its branches are distributed to the inferior vena cava, suprarenal capsule, and hepatic plexus. There is no ganglion on the left side.

The Suprarenal Plexus (*plexus suprarenalis*) (Fig. 696).—The suprarenal plexus is formed by branches from the solar plexus, from the semilunar ganglion, and from the phrenic and great splanchnic nerves, a ganglion being formed at the point of junction of the latter nerve. It supplies the suprarenal capsule. The branches of this plexus are remarkable for their large size in comparison with the size of the organ they supply.

The Renal Plexus (*plexus renalis*) (Figs. 696 and 697).—The renal plexus is formed by filaments from the solar plexus, the outer part of the semilunar ganglion, and the aortic plexus. It is also joined by filaments from the lesser and smallest splanchnic nerves. The nerves from these sources, fifteen or twenty in number, have numerous ganglia developed upon them. They accompany the branches of the renal artery into the kidney, some filaments on the right side being distributed to the inferior vena cava, and others, on both sides, to the spermatic plexuses.

The Spermatic Plexus (*plexus spermaticus*) (Fig. 696).—The spermatic plexus is derived from the renal plexus, receiving branches from the aortic plexus. It accompanies the spermatic vessels to the testes.

The Ovarian Plexus (*plexus arteriae ovaricae*).—In the female the ovarian plexus is distributed to the ovaries and fundus of the uterus.

The Cœliac Plexus (*plexus cœliacus*).—The cœliac plexus, of large size, is a direct continuation from the solar plexus; it surrounds the cœliac axis and subdivides into the gastric, hepatic, and splenic plexuses. It receives branches from

the lesser splanchnic nerves, and, on the left side, a filament from the right pneumogastric.

The **Gastric** or **Coronary Plexus** (*plexus gastricus superior*) (Fig. 696) accompanies the gastric artery along the lesser curvature of the stomach, and joins with branches from the left pneumogastric nerve. It is distributed to the stomach.

The **Splenic Plexus** (*plexus lienalis*) (Fig. 696) is formed by branches from the cœliac plexus, the left semilunar ganglion, and from the right pneumogastric nerve. It accompanies the splenic artery and its branches to the substance of the spleen, giving off, in its course, filaments to the pancreas, the **pancreatic plexus,** and the **left gastro-epiploic plexus,** which accompanies the gastro-epiploica sinistra artery along the convex border of the stomach.

The **Hepatic Plexus** (*plexus hepaticus*) (Fig. 696), the largest offset from the cœliac plexus, receives filaments from the left pneumogastric and right phrenic nerves. It accompanies the hepatic artery, ramifying in the substance of the liver upon its branches and upon those of the vena portae.

Branches from this plexus accompany all the divisions of the hepatic artery. Thus there is a **pyloric plexus** accompanying the pyloric branch of the hepatic, which joins with the gastric plexus and pneumogastric nerves. There is also a **gastro-duodenal plexus,** which subdivides into the **pancreatico-duodendal plexus,** which accompanies the pancreatico-duodenal artery, to supply the pancreas and duodenum, joining with branches from the mesenteric plexus. The **gastro-epiploic plexus,** which accompanies the right gastro-epiploic artery along the greater curvature of the stomach, and which is said to anastomose with branches from the splenic plexus, is in reality derived from the splenic plexus. A **cystic plexus,** which supplies the gall-bladder, also arises from the hepatic plexus near the liver.

The Superior Mesenteric Plexus (*plexus mesentericus superior*) (Fig. 696).—The superior mesenteric plexus is a continuation of the lower part of the great solar plexus, receiving a branch from the junction of the right pneumogastric nerve with the cœliac plexus. It surrounds the superior mesenteric artery, which it accompanies into the mesentery, and divides into a number of secondary plexuses, which are distributed to all the parts supplied by the artery—viz., **pancreatic branches** to the pancreas; **intestinal branches,** which supply the whole of the small intestine; and **ileo-colic, right colic,** and **middle colic branches,** which supply the corresponding parts of the large intestine. The nerves composing this plexus are white in color and firm in texture, and have numerous ganglia developed upon them near their origin.

The Abdominal Aortic Plexus (*plexus aorticus abdominalis*) (Figs. 691, 696, and 697).—The abdominal aortic plexus is formed by branches derived, on each side, from the solar plexus and the semilunar ganglia, receiving filaments from some of the lumbar ganglia. It is situated upon the sides and front of the aorta, between the origins of the superior and inferior mesenteric arteries. From this plexus arise part of the spermatic, the inferior mesenteric, and the hypogastric plexuses; and it distributes filaments to the inferior vena cava.

The **Inferior Mesenteric Plexus** (*plexus mesentericus inferior*) (Fig. 696) is derived chiefly from the left side of the aortic plexus. It surrounds the inferior mesenteric artery, and divides into a number of secondary plexuses, which are distributed to all the parts supplied by the artery—viz., the **left colic** and **sigmoid plexuses,** which supply the descending and sigmoid flexure of the colon; and the **superior haemorrhoidal plexus** (*plexus haemorrhoidalis superior*), which supplies the upper part of the rectum and joins in the pelvis with branches from the pelvic plexus.

The Hypogastric Plexus (Plexus Hypogastricus) (Figs. 688, 691, 697).

The hypogastric plexus supplies the viscera of the pelvic cavity. It is situated in front of the promontory of the sacrum, between the two common iliac arteries,

and is formed by the union of numerous filaments, which descend on each side from the abdominal aortic plexus and from the lumbar ganglia. This plexus contains no evident ganglia; it bifurcates, below, into two lateral portions, which form the **pelvic plexuses.**

The Pelvic or Sacral Plexus (Plexus Sacralis).

The pelvic plexus, sometimes called the **inferior hypogastric,** supplies the viscera of the pelvic cavity, is situated at the side of the rectum in the male, and at the side of the rectum and vagina in the female. It is formed by a continuation of the hypogastric plexus, by branches from the second, third, and fourth sacral nerves, and by a few filaments from the first two sacral ganglia. At the point of junction of these nerves small ganglia are found. From this plexus numerous branches are distributed to all the viscera of the pelvis. They accompany the branches of the internal iliac artery.

The Inferior Haemorrhoidal Plexus (*plexus haemorrhoidalis inferior*).—The inferior haemorrhoidal plexus *arises* from the back part of the pelvic plexus. It supplies the rectum, joining with branches of the superior haemorrhoidal plexus.

The Vesical Plexus (*plexus vesicalis*).—The vesical plexus arises from the forepart of the pelvic plexus. The nerves composing it are numerous, and contain a large proportion of spinal nerve-fibres. They accompany the vesical arteries, and are distributed at the side and base of the bladder. Numerous filaments also pass to the vesiculae seminales and vasa deferentia; those accompanying the vas deferens join, on the spermatic cord, with branches from the spermatic plexus.

The Prostatic Plexus (*plexus prostaticus*).—The prostatic plexus is continued from the lower part of the pelvic plexus. The nerves composing it are of large size. They are distributed to the prostate gland, vesiculae seminales, and erectile structure of the penis. The nerves supplying the erectile structure of the penis consist of two sets, the **small** and **large cavernous nerves.** They are slender filaments, which arise from the forepart of the prostatic plexus, and, after joining with branches from the **internal pudic nerve,** pass forward beneath the pubic arch.

The **Small Cavernous Nerve** (*n. cavernosus penis minor*) perforates the fibrous covering of the penis near its roots.

The **Large Cavernous Nerve** (*n. cavernosus penis major*) passes forward along the dorsum of the penis, joins with the dorsal branch of the pudic nerve, and is distributed to the corpora cavernosa and corpus spongiosum.

The uterine and vaginal plexuses in reality constitute one plexus, the **uterovaginal plexus** (*plexus uterovaginalis*).

The **Vaginal Plexus** *arises* from the lower part of the pelvic plexus. It is lost on the walls of the vagina, being distributed to the erectile tissue at its anterior part and to the mucous membrane. The nerves composing this plexus contain, like the vesical nerves, a large proportion of spinal nerve-fibres.

The **Uterine Plexus** *arises* from the upper part of the pelvic plexus above the point where the branches from the sacral nerves join the plexus. Its branches accompany the uterine arteries to the sides of the organ between the layers of the broad ligaments, and are distributed to the cervix and lower part of the body of the uterus, penetrating its substance.

Other filaments pass separately to the body of the uterus and the Fallopian tube.

Branches from the plexus accompany the uterine arteries into the substance of the uterus. Upon these filaments ganglionic enlargements are found.

THE ORGANS OF SPECIAL SENSE.

THE Organs of the Senses are five in number—viz., those of **Taste**, of **Smell**, of **Sight**, of **Hearing**, and of **Touch**.

THE TONGUE (LINGUA) (Fig. 698).

The tongue is a very mobile muscular organ, undergoing changes in length and width at every contraction of its muscle. It is the organ of the special sense of taste, and is also an organ of speech, mastication, and deglutition. It is situated in the floor of the mouth, in the interval between the two lateral portions of the body of the lower jaw, and when at rest is about three and one-half inches in length. We describe the **body, base, apex, dorsum, margin,** and **inferior surface.**

The Body (*corpus linguae*).—The body forms the great bulk of the organ and is composed of striated muscle.

The Base or Root (*radix linguae*).—The base or root is directed backward, and connected with the os hyoideum by the Hyo-glossi and Genio-hyo-glossi muscles and the hyo-glossal membrane; with the epiglottis by three folds of mucous membrane, the **glosso-epiglottic folds**; with the soft palate by means of the anterior pillars of the fauces; and with the pharynx by the Superior constrictors and the mucous membrane.

The Apex or Tip (*apex linguae*).—The apex or tip is thin and narrow, and is directed forward against the inner surface of the lower incisor teeth.

The Dorsum of the Tongue (*dorsum linguae*).—The dorsum when the tongue of a living person is at rest is markedly arched from before backward. On the dorsum is a **median longitudinal raphé** (*sulcus medianus linguae*). This slight depression terminates posteriorly in the depression known as the **foramen caecum** (*foramen caecum linguae* [*Morgagnii*]), from which a shallow-shaped groove, the **sulcus terminalis** of His, runs outward and forward on each side to the lateral margin of the tongue. The part of the dorsum of the tongue in front of this groove, known as the **anterior** or **oral part,** forming about two-thirds of its upper surface, is rough and covered with papillae; the posterior third of the dorsum is back of the sulcus terminalis, is known as the **posterior** or **pharyngeal portion,** is smoother, and contains numerous muciparous glands and lymphoid follicles.

The Margin of the Tongue (*margo lateralis linguae*).—The margin of the tongue is free in front of the anterior arch of the palate. Just in front of the arch are several vertical folds, the **folia linguae.**

The Under or Inferior Surface (*facies inferior linguae*).—The under or inferior surface of the tongue is connected with the lower jaw by the Genio-hyo-glossi muscles, from its sides the mucous membrane is reflected to the inner surface of the gums; and from its under surface on to the floor of the mouth, where, in the middle line, it is elevated into a distinct vertical fold, the **fraenum linguae** (*frenulum linguae*). To each side of the fraenum is a slight fold of the mucous membrane, the **plica fimbriata,** the free edge of which exhibits a series of fringe-like processes.

The tip of the tongue, part of the under surface, its sides, and dorsum are free.

Structure of the Tongue.—The tongue is partly invested by mucous membrane and a submucous fibrous layer. It consists of symmetrical halves, separated from each other, in the middle line, by a fibrous septum. Each half is composed of muscular fibres arranged in various directions (page 398), containing much interposed fat, and supplied by vessels and nerves.

The Mucous Membrane (*tunica mucosa linguae*).—The mucous membrane invests the entire extent of the free surface of the tongue. On the dorsum it is thicker behind than in front, and is continuous with the sheath of the muscles attached to it, through the submucous fibrous layer. On the under surface of the organ, where it is thin and smooth, it can be traced on each side of the fraenum

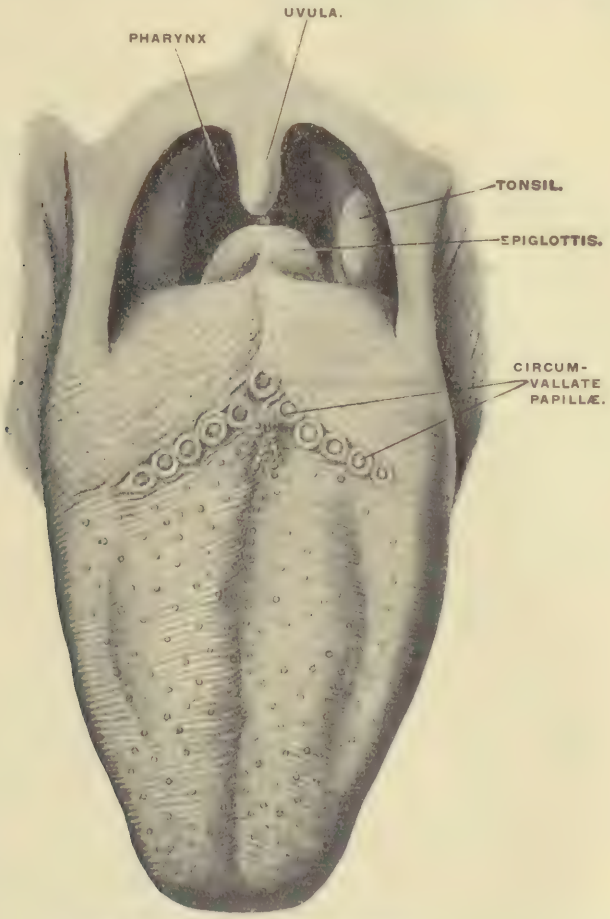


FIG. 698.—Upper surface of the tongue.

through the ducts of the submaxillary and the sublingual glands. As it passes over the borders of the organ it gradually assumes a papillary character.

Structure.—The structure of the mucous membrane of the tongue differs in different parts. That covering the under surface of the organ is thin, smooth, and identical in structure with that lining the rest of the oral cavity. The mucous membrane covering the tongue behind the foramen caecum and sulcus terminalis is thick and freely movable over the subjacent parts. It contains a large number of **lymphoid follicles** (*folliculi linguales*), which together constitute what is sometimes termed the **lingual tonsil** (*tonsilla lingualis*). Each follicle forms a rounded eminence, the centre of which is perforated by a minute orifice leading into a

funnel-shaped cavity or recess; around this recess are grouped numerous oval or rounded nodules of lymphoid tissue, each enveloped by a capsule derived from the submucosa, while opening into the bottom of the recesses are also seen the ducts of **mucous glands** (*glandulae linguales*). The mucous membrane on the anterior part of the dorsum of the tongue is thin and intimately adherent to the muscular tissue, and covered with minute eminences, the **papillae of the tongue.** It consists of a layer of connective tissue, the **corium** or **mucosa,** supporting numerous papillae, and covered, as well as the papillae, with epithelium.

The epithelium is of the scaly variety, like that of the epidermis. It covers the free surface of the tongue, as may be readily demonstrated by maceration or boiling, when it can be easily detached entire; it is much thinner than that of the skin; the intervals between the large papillae are not filled up by it, but each papilla has a separate investment from root to summit. The deepest cells may sometimes be detached as a separate layer, corresponding to the rete mucosum, but they never contain coloring matter.

The Corium.—The corium consists of a dense feltwork of fibrous connective tissue, with numerous elastic fibres, firmly connected with the fibrous tissue forming the septa between the muscular bundles of the tongue. It contains the ramifications of the numerous vessels (Fig. 699) and nerves from which the papillae are supplied, large plexuses of lymphatic vessels, and the glands of the tongue.

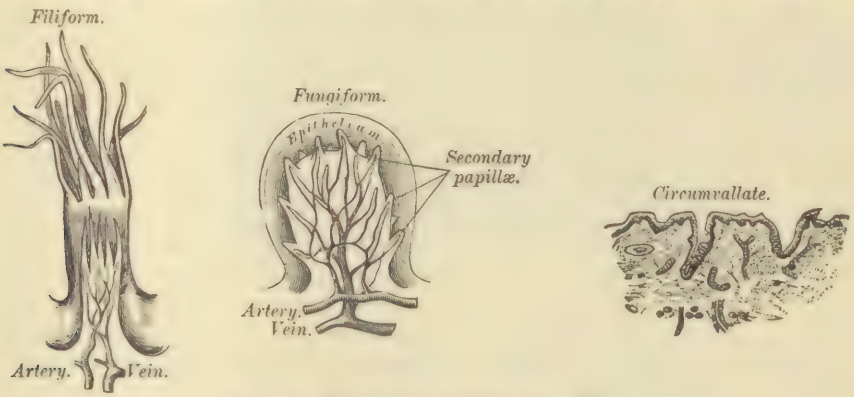


Fig. 699.—Three kinds of papillae, magnified.

The Papillae of the Tongue (*papillae linguales*) (Figs. 698, 699, 700, and 701).—These are papillary projections of the corium. They are thickly distributed over the anterior two-thirds of the upper surface of the tongue, giving to it its characteristic roughness. The varieties of papillae met with are—the **papillae maximae** or **circumvallate papillae, papillae mediae** or **fungiforme papillae, papillae minimae, conical** or **filiforme papillae,** and **papillae simplices** or **simple papillae.**

The **Papillae Maximae** or **Circumvallate Papillae** (*papillae vallatae*) (Figs. 698, 699, and 700) are of large size, and vary from eight to twelve in number. They are situated at the back part of the dorsum of the tongue, near its base, in front of the foramen caecum and sulcus terminalis, forming a row on each side, which, running backward and inward, meet in the middle line, like the two lines of the letter V inverted Λ. Each papilla consists of a projection of mucous membrane from $\frac{1}{20}$ to $\frac{1}{12}$ of an inch wide, attached to the bottom of a cup-shaped depression of the mucous membrane; the papilla is in shape like a truncated cone, the smaller end being directed downward and attached to the tongue, the broader part or base projecting on the surface and being studded with numerous small secondary papillae (Fig. 699), which, however, are covered by a smooth layer of the epithelium. The cup-shaped depression forms a kind of fossa around the papilla, having a circular margin of about the same elevation covered with smaller papillae.

Immediately behind the apex of the V is the foramen cæcum, mentioned above. This foramen, according to His, represents the remains of the invagination which forms the median rudiment of the thyroid body, and which for a time opens by a duct, the **thyroglossal duct**, on to the dorsum of the tongue. It may extend downward toward the hyoid bone. Kanthack, however, disputes this view.[1]

The **Fungiform Papillae** or **Papillae Mediae** (*papillæ fungiformes et papillæ lenticulares*) (Fig. 699), more numerous than the preceding, are scattered irregularly and sparingly over the dorsum of the tongue, but are found chiefly at its sides and apex. They are easily recognized among the other papillæ, by their large size, rounded eminences, and deep-red color. They are narrow at their attachment to the tongue, but broad and rounded at their free extremities, and are covered with secondary papillæ. Their epithelial investment is very thin.

The **Conical** or **Filiform Papillae** or **Papillae Minimae** (*papillæ conicæ et papillæ filiformes*) (Fig. 699) cover the anterior two-thirds of the dorsum of the tongue. They are very minute, more or less conical or filiform in shape, and arranged in lines corresponding in direction with the two rows of the papillæ circumvallatæ, excepting at the apex of the organ, where their direction is transverse. Projecting from their apices are numerous filiform processes or secondary papillæ; these are of a whitish tint, owing to the thickness and density of the epithelium of which they are composed, and which has here undergone a peculiar modification, the cells having become cornified and elongated into dense, imbricated, brush-like processes. They contain also a number of elastic fibres, which render them firmer and more elastic than the papillæ of mucous membrane generally.

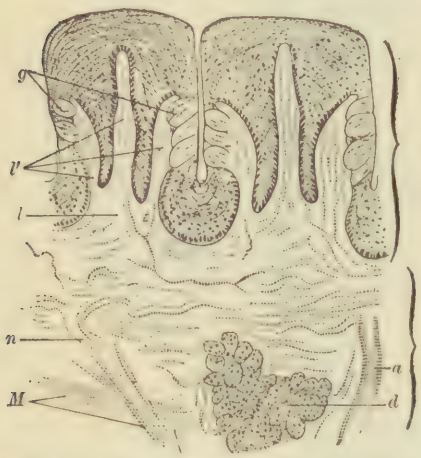


FIG. 700.—Circumvallate papillæ of tongue of rabbit, showing position of taste-goblets. *a*. Duct of gland. *d*. Serous gland. *g*. Taste-buds. *l*. Primary septa, and *l'*, secondary septa, of papillæ. *n*. Medullated nerve. *M*. Muscular fibres. (Stöhr.)

Simple Papillae, similar to those of the skin, cover the whole of the mucous membrane of the tongue, as well as the larger papillæ. They consist of closely set, microscopic elevations of the corium, containing a capillary loop, covered by a layer of epithelium.

Structure of the Papillae (Figs. 699 and 700).—The papillæ apparently resemble in structure the papillæ of the cutis, consisting of a cone-shaped projection of connective tissue, covered with a thick layer of squamous epithelium, and contain one or more capillary loops, amongst which nerves are distributed in great abundance. If the epithelium is removed, it will be found, however, that they are not simple elevations like the papillæ of the skin, for the surface of each is studded with minute conical processes of the mucous membrane, which form secondary papillæ (Todd and Bowman). In the papillæ circumvallatæ the nerves are numerous and of large size; in the papillæ fungiformes they are also numerous, and terminate in a plexiform network, from which brush-like branches proceed; in the papillæ filiformes their mode of termination is uncertain. Buried in the epidermis of the papillæ circumvallatæ, and in some of the fungiformes, are certain peculiar bodies, called **taste-buds**[2] (Fig. 701). Each is flask-like in shape, the broad base resting on the corium, and the neck opening by an orifice, the **gustatory pore**, between the cells of the epithelium.

[1] Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, 1891.

[2] These bodies are also found in considerable numbers at the side of the base of the tongue, just in front of the anterior pillars of the fauces, and also on the posterior surface of the epiglottis and anterior surface of the soft palate.—ED. of 15th English edition.

They are formed by two kinds of cells, supporting cells and gustatory cells. The **supporting cells** are mostly arranged like the staves of a cask, and form an outer envelope for the bud. Some, however, are found in the interior of the bud between the gustatory cells. The **gustatory cells** occupy the central portion of the bud; they are spindle-shaped, and each possesses a large spherical nucleus near the middle of the cell. Until recently the teaching was as follows: The peripheral end of the cell terminates as the gustatory pore in a fine, hair-like filament, the **gustatory hair**. The central process passes toward the deep extremity of the bud, and there ends in a single or bifurcated varicose filament, which was formerly supposed to be continuous with the terminal fibril of a nerve; the investigations of Lenhossék and others would seem to prove, however, that this is not so, but that the nerve-fibrils after losing their medullary sheaths enter the taste-bud, and

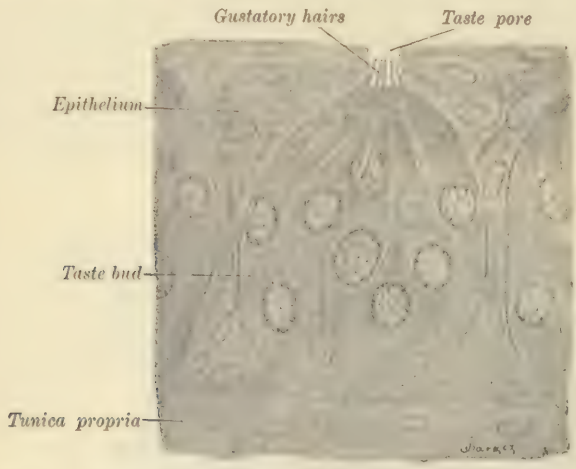


FIG. 701.—Taste-buds from the papilla foliata of a rabbit. × 850. (Szymonowicz.)

terminate in a fine extremity between the gustatory cells. Other nerve-fibrils may be seen ramifying between the cortical cells and terminating in fine extremities; these, however, are believed to be nerves of ordinary sensation, and not gustatory. It is now not believed that the epithelia of the taste-buds are directly connected with the nerve-fibres by long processes. "The latest researches have shown that dendrites of sensory neurones (sensory nerves) enter the taste-buds and end free in telodendria. The latter surround the neuro-epithelial, and, to some extent, the sustentacular cells, their relations depending on contact."[1]

Glands of the Tongue.—The tongue is provided with **mucous** and **serous glands.** The **mucous glands** are similar in structure to the labial and buccal glands. They are found especially at the back part, behind the circumvallate papillae, but are also present at the apex and marginal parts. In connection with these glands special ones have been described by Blandin and Nuhn. They are known as the **glands of Nuhn and Blandin** or **apical glands** (*glandulae linguales anteriores of Nuhn and Blandin*) (Fig. 702). They are situated near the apex of the tongue on either side of the fraenum, and each is covered over by a fasciculus of muscular fibre derived from the Stylo-glossus and Inferior lingualis muscles. Each gland is from half an inch to nearly an inch long and about the third of an inch broad. It has from four to six ducts, which open on the under surface of the apex.

The **Serous Glands** or **Glands of v. Ebner** occur only at the back of the tongue in the neighborhood of the taste-buds, their ducts opening for the most part into the

[1] Text-book of Histology. By A. A. Böhm and M. von Davidoff. Edited by G. Carl Huber.

fossae of the papillae circumvallatae. These glands are racemose, the duct branching into several minute ducts, which terminate in alveoli lined by a single layer of more or less columnar epithelium. Their secretion is of a watery nature, and probably assists in the distribution of the substance to be tasted over the taste-area (Ebner).

The **Hyo-glossal membrane** is a strong fibrous lamina which is derived from the septum of the tongue and which connects the under surface of the base of the tongue to the body of the hyoid bone. This membrane receives, in front, some of the posterior fibres of the Genio-hyo-glossi muscles.

The Vessels of the Tongue.—The **arteries of the tongue** are derived from the **lingual,** the **facial,** and **ascending pharyngeal.** The **veins of the tongue** open into the **internal jugular.**

The **lingual artery** (Fig. 704) on each side passes forward beneath the Hyo-glossus muscle and courses to the apex of the tongue, between the Genio-glossus and the Inferior lingual muscles, about one-eighth of an inch from the surface. It divides into the **ranine** (Fig.702) and **sublingual** (Fig. 704). Near the apex a branch is given off from the ranine artery, which penetrates the septum and joins a like branch from the other side. The **dorsalis linguae** is a branch of the lingual

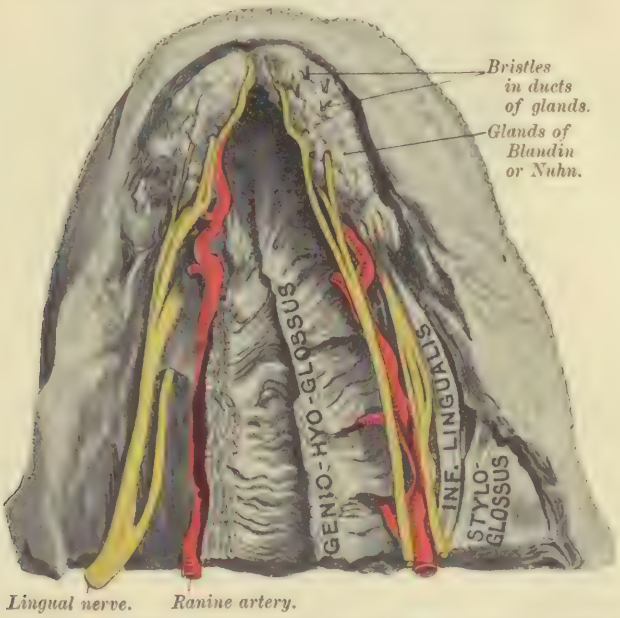


FIG. 702.—Under surface of tongue, showing position and relations of gland of Blandin or Nuhn. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

supplying the posterior part of the tongue, and rami from the **tonsillar branch of the facial** go to the same region. A network of capillary vessels is placed beneath the epithelium.

The **ranine veins** lie to the sides of the fraenum underneath the mucous membrane. Each ranine vein runs backward, superficial to and upon the Hyo-glossus muscle and near to the hypo-glossal nerve. The venae comites of the lingual artery usually join the ranine vein, and the trunk opens into the internal jugular vein, but the vessels may open separately into the jugular (Fig. 445).

The Muscles of the Tongue.—The muscular fibres of the tongue run in various directions. These fibres are divided into two sets, Extrinsic and Intrinsic, which have already been described (pp. 396, 397, 398, 399, and 400).

The Extrinsic come from the Stylo-glossus, Hyo-glossus, Genio-glossus, Palato-glossus, and Chondro-glossus. The Intrinsic muscles are the **Superior lingualis** (*m. longitudinalis superior*), the **Inferior lingualis** (*m. longitudinalis inferior*), the **Transverse lingual** (*m. transversus linguae*), and the **Vertical lingual** (*m. verticalis linguae*). The **outer** or **cortical portion** of the tongue is composed chiefly of longitudinal fibres. The **central** or **medullary portion** is composed chiefly of vertical and transverse fibres and is divided into two parts by a **vertical septum** (*septum linguae*), which is a fibrous structure, beginning at the apex and passing back. As it approaches the back it becomes narrower vertically and broadens out transversely to form the **hyo-glossal membrane.** The fibrous septum is well displayed by making a vertical section of the tongue.

The Lymphatic Vessels of the Tongue (Fig. 491).—The lymphatic vessels from the anterior half of the tongue pass to the **submaxillary lymph glands.**

Lymph vessels from the posterior half of the tongue are connected with satellite **glands on the Hyo-glossus muscle** and terminate in the **deep cervical glands.** The last-named lymph-vessel accompanies the ranine vein. The lingual lymphatics arise from a network beneath the epithelium. Across the anterior two-thirds of the tongue there is little or no lymphatic connection between the two sides; in the posterior one-third there is free connection.

FIG. 703.—Frontal section through the body of the tongue of a new-born babe. × 3. (Spalteholz.)

The Nerves of the Tongue (Fig. 704).—The nerves of the tongue are five in number in each half; the **lingual branch** of the **inferior maxillary division of the fifth,** which is distributed to the papillae at the forepart and sides of the tongue, and forms the nerve of ordinary sensibility for its anterior two-thirds; the **chorda tympani,** which runs in the sheath of the lingual, is generally regarded as the nerve of taste for the same area; the **lingual branch** of the **glosso-pharyngeal,** which is distributed to the mucous membrane at the base and sides of the tongue, and to the papillae circumvallatae, and which supplies both sensory and gustatory filaments to this region; the **hypo-glossal nerve,** which is the motor nerve to the muscular substance of the tongue; and the **internal laryngeal** branch of the **superior laryngeal,** which sends some fine branches to the root near to the epiglottis. **Sympathetic** filaments also pass to the tongue from the nervi molles on the lingual and other arteries supplying it. Some of the nerves end free between the cells of epithelium; others terminate as end organs (Meissner's corpuscles and the end-bulbs of Krause), and in taste-buds as sensory dendrites.

Surgical Anatomy.—The diseases to which the tongue is liable are numerous, and its surgical anatomy is of importance, since any or all the structures of which it is composed—muscles, connective tissue, mucous membrane, glands, vessels, nerves, and lymphatics—may be the seat of morbid changes. It is not often the seat of congenital defects, though a few cases of *vertical*

cleft have been recorded, and it is occasionally, though much more rarely than is commonly supposed, the seat of *tongue-tie*, from shortness of the fraenum.

There is, however, one condition which must be regarded as congenital, though not uncommonly it does not exhibit the significant changes until a year or two after birth. This is an enlargement of the tongue which is due primarily to a dilatation of the lymph-channels and a greatly increased development of the lymphatic tissue throughout the tongue (*macroglossia*). This is often aggravated by inflammatory changes induced by injury or exposure, and the tongue may assume enormous dimensions and hang out of the mouth, giving the child an imbecile expression. The treatment consists in excising a V-shaped portion and bringing the cut surfaces together with deeply placed silver sutures. Compression has been resorted to in some cases with occasional success, but it is difficult to apply. Acute inflammation of the tongue (*acute glossitis*), which may be caused by injury or the introduction of some septic or irritating matter, and it is attended by great swelling from infiltration of the connective tissue of the tongue; this connective tissue is present in considerable quantity. The great swelling renders the patient incapable of swallowing or speaking, and may seriously impede respiration. The condition may eventuate in suppuration and the formation of an *acute abscess*. *Chronic abscess*, which has been mistaken for cancer, may also occur in the substance of the tongue.

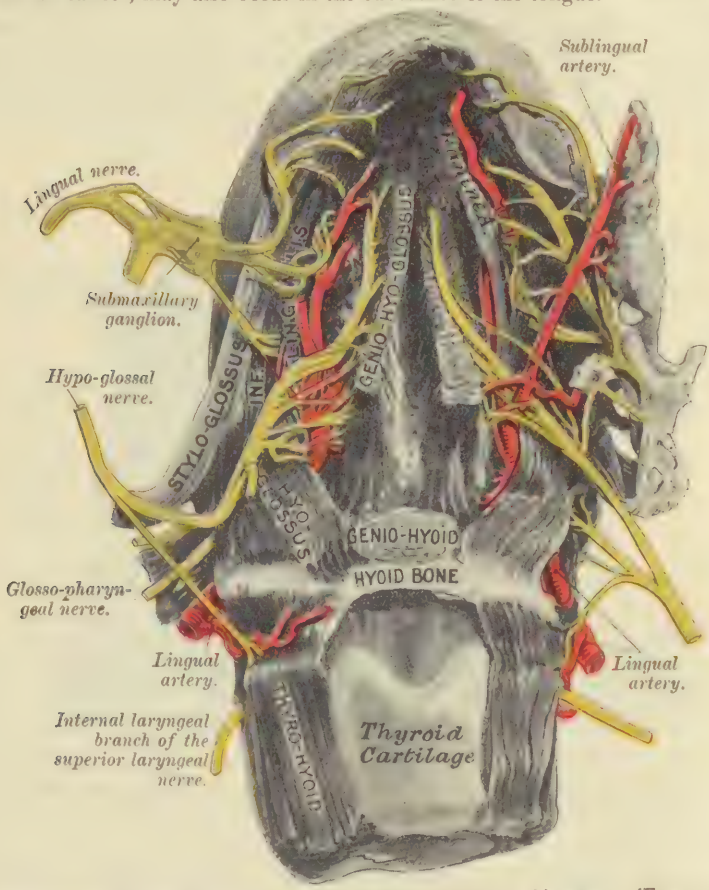


FIG. 704.—Under surface of tongue, showing the distribution of nerves to this organ. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

The mucous membrane of the tongue may become chronically inflamed, and presents different appearances in different stages of the disease, to which the terms *leucoplakia*, *psorias*, and *ichthyosis* have been given.

The tongue, being very vascular, is often the seat of *naevoid growths*, and these have a tendency to grow rapidly.

The tongue is frequently the seat of *ulceration*, which may arise from many causes, as from the irritation of jagged teeth, dyspepsia, *tuberculosis*, *syphilis*, and *cancer*. Of these the cancerous ulcer is the most important, and probably also the most common. The variety is the *squamous epithelioma*, which soon develops into an ulcer with an indurated base. It produces great pain, which speedily extends to all parts supplied with sensation by the fifth nerve, especially to the

region of the ear. The pain in these cases is conducted to the ear and temporal region by the lingual nerve, and from this nerve pain radiates to the other branches of the inferior maxillary nerve, especially the auriculo-temporal. Possibly pain in the ear itself may be due to implication of the fibres of the glosso-pharyngeal nerve, which by its tympanic branch reaches the tympanic plexus. Cancer of the tongue spreads through the organ very rapidly because of the almost constant muscular movements.

Cancer of the tongue may necessitate removal of a part or the whole of the organ, and many different methods have been adopted for its excision. It may be removed from the mouth by the écraseur or the scissors. The better method is by the scissors, usually known as Whitehead's method. The mouth is widely opened with a gag the tongue is transfixed with a stout silk ligature, by which to hold and make traction on it and the reflection of mucous membrane from the tongue to the jaw, and the insertion of the Genio-hyo-glossi first divided with a pair of curved blunt scissors. The Palato-glossi are also divided. The tongue can now be pulled well out of the mouth. The base of the tongue is cut through by a series of short snips, each bleeding vessel being dealt with as soon as divided, until the situation of the ranine artery is reached. The remaining undivided portion of tissue is to be seized with a pair of Wells's forceps, the tongue removed, and the vessel secured. In the event of the ranine artery being accidentally injured early in the operation, hemorrhage can be at once controlled by passing two fingers over the dorsum of the tongue as far as the epiglottis and dragging the root of the tongue forcibly forward.

In cases where the disease is confined to one side of the anterior portion of the tongue this operation may be modified by splitting the tongue down the centre and removing only the affected half. If the posterior portion of the tongue is attacked by cancer the entire tongue must be removed, even if but one side of the organ is *apparently* involved. The exchange of lymph between the halves of the posterior portion of the tongue makes it certain that the opposite half becomes involved soon after the origin of the disease. Whatever operation is performed for cancer of the tongue, the glands must be removed from *both sides of the neck*. This is to be done, even if but one side of the tongue is removed. Kocher, after performing a preliminary tracheotomy, removes the tongue from the neck, by an incision taken from near the lobule of the ear, down the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid to the level of the great cornu of the hyoid bone, then forward to the body of the hyoid bone, and upward to near the symphysis of the jaw. The lingual artery is now secured, and by a careful dissection the submaxillary lymphatic glands and the tongue removed. Regnoli advocated the removal of the tongue by a semilunar incision in the submaxillary triangle along the line of the lower jaw, and a vertical incision from the centre of the semilunar one backward to the hyoid bone. Care must be taken not to carry the first incision too far backward, so as to wound the facial arteries. The tongue is thus reached through the floor of the mouth, pulled out through the external incision, and removed with the knife. The great objection to this operation is that all the muscles which raise the hyoid bone and larynx are divided, and that therefore the movements of deglutition and respiration are interfered with.

Finally, where both sides of the floor of the mouth are involved in the disease, or where very free access is required on account of the extension backward of the disease to the pillars of the fauces and the tonsil, or where the lower jaw is involved, the operation recommended by Syme must be performed. This is done by an incision through the central line of the lip across the chin, and down as far as the hyoid bone. The lower jaw is sawed through at the symphysis, and the two halves of the bone forcibly separated from each other. The mucous membrane is separated from the bone, and the Genio-hyo-glossi detached from the bone, and the Hyo-glossi divided. The tongue is then drawn forward and removed close to its attachment to the hyoid bone. Adjacent lymph glands can be removed, and if the bone is implicated in the disease, it can also be removed by freeing it from the soft parts externally and internally, and making a second section with the saw beyond the diseased part.

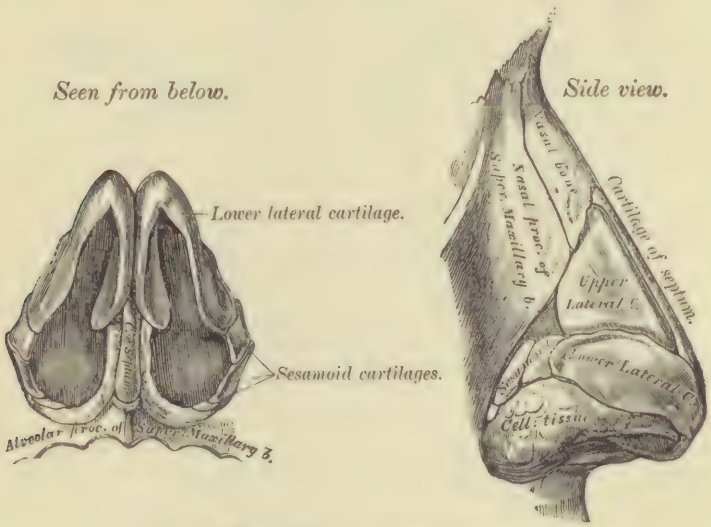
Formerly many surgeons before removing the tongue performed a preliminary tracheotomy: (1) to prevent blood entering the air-passages; and (2) to allow the patient to breathe through the tube and not inspire air which had passed over a sloughy wound, and which was loaded with septic organisms and likely to induce septic pneumonia. By operating with the patient in the Trendelenburg position, the blood is caused to flow away from the air-passages. By the judicious use of iodoform the evil mentioned secondly may be obviated, and the preliminary tracheotomy is now usually dispensed with.

THE NOSE.

The nose is the peripheral portion of the organ of smell (*organon olfactus*): by means of the peculiar properties of its nerves it protects the lungs from the inhalation of deleterious gases and assists the organ of taste in discriminating the properties of food. The organ of smell consists of two parts; one external, the **outer nose**; the other internal, the **nasal fossae**.

THE OUTER NOSE (NASUS EXTERNUS).

The outer nose is the more anterior and prominent part of the organ of smell. Of a triangular form, it is directed downward, and projects from the centre of the face, immediately above the upper lip. Its **summit** or **root** (*radix nasi*) is connected directly with the forehead. Its **inferior part** or **base** (*basis nasi*) presents two elliptical orifices, the **nostrils** or **anterior nares** (*nares*), separated from each other by an antero-posterior septum, the **mobile septum** or **columna nasi** (*septum mobile nasi*). The margins of the nostrils are provided with a number of stiff hairs or **vibrissae**, which arrest the passage of foreign substances carried with the current of air intended for respiration. The **point** (*apex nasi*) is the free extremity of the nose. The **lateral surfaces** of the nose form, by their union in the middle line, the **dorsum** (*dorsum nasi*), the direction of which varies considerably in different individuals. The portion of the dorsum over the nasal bones is the **bridge**. Each lateral surface terminates below in a rounded eminence, the **wing** or **ala nasi**, which, by its lower margin (*margo nasi*), forms the outer boundary of the corresponding nostril. Above the ala is a depression, the **alar sulcus**.



FIGS. 705 and 706.—Cartilages of the nose.

Structure.—The nose is composed of a **framework of bones** and **cartilages**, the latter being slightly acted upon by certain muscles. It is covered externally by the **integument**, internally by **mucous membrane**, and is supplied with **vessels** and **nerves**.

The Bony Framework.—The bony framework occupies the upper part of the organ; it consists of the **nasal bones** and the **nasal processes of the superior maxillary bones** (pp. 104 and 109).

The Cartilaginous Framework (*cartilagines nasi*) (Figs. 705 and 706).—The cartilaginous framework consists of five pieces, the **two upper** and the **two lower lateral cartilages** and the **cartilage of the septum**.

The **Upper Lateral Cartilage** (*cartilago nasi lateralis*) of each side is situated below the free margin of the nasal bone. It is flattened and triangular in shape. Its anterior margin is thicker than the posterior, and continuous with the cartilage of the septum. Its posterior margin is attached to the nasal process of the superior maxillary and nasal bones. Its inferior margin is connected by fibrous tissue with the lower lateral cartilage; one surface is turned outward, the other inward toward the nasal cavity.

The **Lower Lateral Cartilage**, the **Cartilage of the Aperture** or the **Greater Alar Cartilage** (*cartilago alaris major*) of each side consists of two thin, flexible plates situated immediately below the preceding, and bent upon themselves in such a manner as to form the inner and outer walls of the orifice of the nostril. The portion which forms the **inner wall** (*crus mediale*), thicker than the rest, is loosely connected with the corresponding portion of the opposite cartilage, and forms a small part of the columna. Its inferior border, free, rounded, and projecting, forms, with the thickened integument and subjacent tissue and the corresponding parts of the opposite side, the mobile septum. The part of the cartilage which forms the **outer wall** (*crus laterale*) is curved to correspond with the ala of the nose; it is oval and flattened, narrow behind, where it is connected with the nasal process of the superior maxilla by a tough fibrous membrane, in which are found three or four small cartilaginous plates, the **sesamoid, accessory quadrate** or **lesser alar cartilages** (*cartilagines alares minores*). Above, it is connected by fibrous tissue to the upper lateral cartilage and front part of the cartilage of the septum; below, it falls short of the margin of the nostril; the ala being formed by dense cellular tissue covered by skin. In front the lower lateral cartilages are separated by a notch which corresponds with the point of the nose.

The **Triangular Cartilage of the Septum** (*cartilago septi nasi*) (Figs. 705 and 707) is somewhat quadrilateral in form, thicker at its margins than at its centre, and completes the separation between the nasal fossae in front. Its *anterior margin*, thickest above, is connected with the nasal bones, and is continuous with the anterior margins of the two upper lateral cartilages. Below, it is connected to the inner portions of the lower lateral cartilages by fibrous tissue. Its *posterior margin* is connected with the perpendicular lamella of the ethmoid; its inferior margin with the vomer and the palate processes of the superior maxillary bones (Fig. 103).

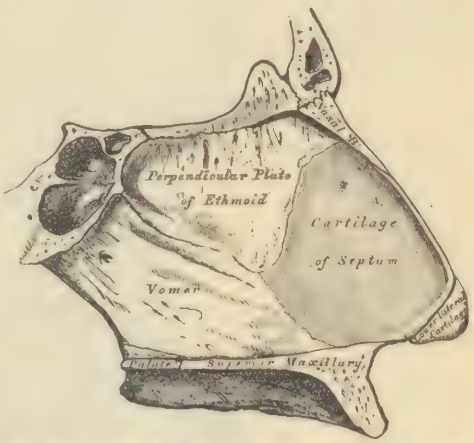


Fig. 707.—Bones and cartilages of septum of the nose. Right side.

It may be prolonged backward (especially in children) for some distance between the vomer and perpendicular plate of the ethmoid, forming what is termed the **sphenoidal process** (*processus sphenoidalis septi cartilaginei*). The septal cartilage does not reach as far as the lowest part of the nasal septum. This is formed by the inner portions of the lower lateral cartilages and by the skin; it is freely movable, and hence is termed the **mobile septum** (*septum mobile nasi*).

Along the lower margin of the anterior half of the cartilage of the septum is another cartilage which is attached to the vomer and is known as the **vomerine cartilage** or **cartilage of Jacobson** (*cartilago vomeronasalis*).

These various cartilages are connected to each other and to the bones by a tough fibrous membrane, which allows the utmost facility of movement between them.

The Muscles of the Nose.—The muscles of the nose are situated beneath the integument; they are (on each side) the Pyramidalis nasi, the Levator labii superiores alaeque nasi, the Dilatator naris, anterior and posterior, the Compressor nasi, the Compressor narium minor, and the Depressor alae nasi. They have been previously described (p. 375).

The **Integument** covering the dorsum and sides of the nose is thin, and loosely connected with the subjacent parts; but the integument of the tip and the alae of

the nose is thicker and more firmly adherent, and is furnished with a large number of sebaceous follicles, the orifices of which are usually very distinct.

The **Mucous Membrane** lining the interior of the nose is continuous with the skin externally and with the mucous membrane which lines the nasal fossae within.

The Arteries of the Outer Nose.—The arteries of the nose are the **lateralis nasi from the facial,** and the **inferior artery of the septum from the superior coronary,** which supply the alae and septum, the sides and dorsum being supplied from the **nasal branch of the ophthalmic** and the **infraorbital.**

The Veins of the Outer Nose.—The veins of the nose terminate in the **facial** and **ophthalmic.**

The Lymphatics of the Outer Nose.—These vessels are shown in Figs. 487, 489, and 490. They empty chiefly into the **submaxillary lymph glands.**

The Nerves of the Outer Nose.—The nerves for the muscles of the nose are derived from the **facial,** while the skin receives its branches from the **infraorbital, infratrochlear,** and **nasal branches of the ophthalmic.**

THE NASAL FOSSAE (CAVUM NASI).

The nasal fossae are two irregular cavities situated in the middle of the face, one on each side of the middle line, and extending from before backward. They open in front, when the soft parts are in place, by the two **nostrils** or **anterior nares,** and terminate, behind, in the naso-pharynx by the **posterior nares.**

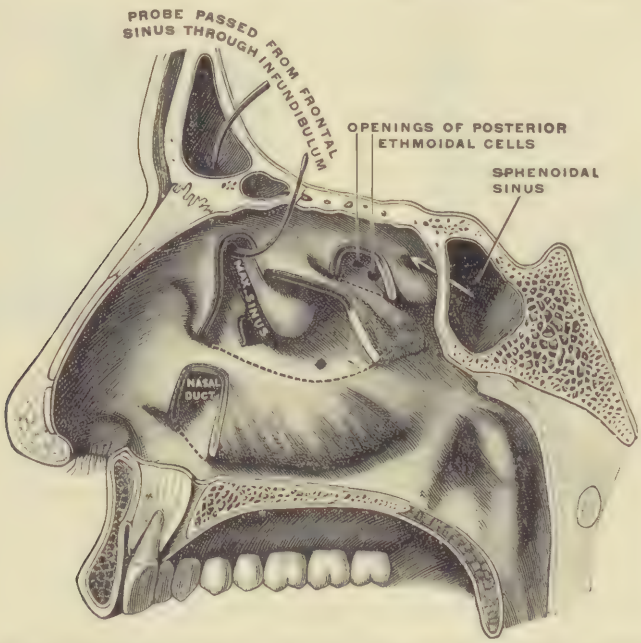


FIG. 708.—External wall of right nasal fossa, parts of the turbinates having been cut away to show the orifices of the sinuses which open into the meatuses. (Testut.)

The Anterior Nares (*nares*).—The anterior nares are somewhat pear-shaped apertures, each measuring about one inch antero-posteriorly and half an inch transversely at their widest part. The nasal fossae in the dry skull open in front by the anterior nasal aperture (*apertura pyriformis*).

The Posterior Nares (*choanae*).—The posterior nares are two oval openings, which are smaller in the living or recent subject than in the skeleton, because they

are narrowed by the mucous membrane. Each measures an inch in the vertical and half an inch in the transverse direction in a well-developed adult skull.

For the description of the bony boundaries of the nasal fossae see section on Osteology (p. 143).

Inside the aperture of the nostril is a slight dilatation, the **vestibule** (*vestibulum nasi*), which extends as a small pouch, the **ventricle**, toward the point of the nose. Above and behind the vestibule is surrounded by a prominence (*limen nasi*). Below the prominence the vestibule is lined with skin; above and behind it the fossa is lined with mucous membrane. The fossa, above and behind the vestibule, has been divided into two parts: an **olfactory portion** (*regio olfactoria*), a slit-like cavity, comprising the upper and central part of the septum and probably the superior turbinated bone, and a **respiratory portion** (*regio respiratoria*), which comprises the rest of the fossa.

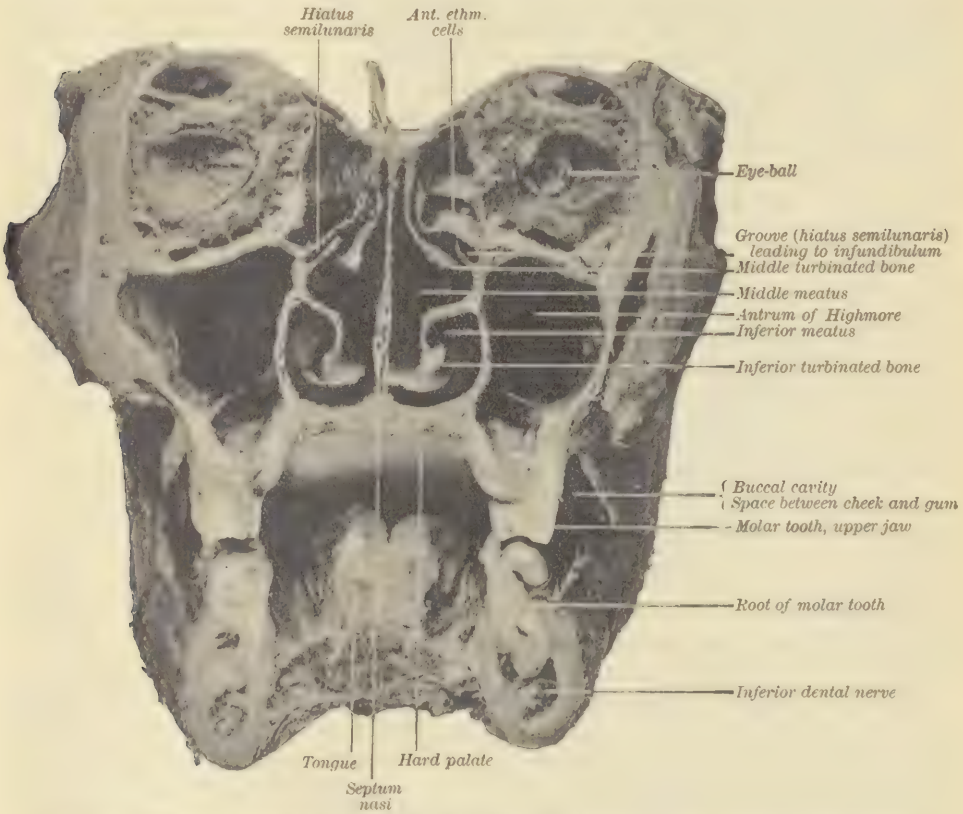


FIG. 709.—Transverse vertical section of the nasal fossae. The section is made anterior to the superior turbinated bones. (Cryer.)

Outer Wall (Figs. 708, 709).—The **superior, middle,** and **inferior meatus** (*meatus nasi superior, medius and inferior*) are described on pages 144 and 145. The **sphenoidal air sinus** opens into the **spheno-ethmoidal recess** (*recessus sphenoethmoidalis*), a narrow recess above the superior turbinated bone (Fig. 708). The **posterior ethmoidal cells** open into the front and upper part of the **superior meatus** (Fig. 708). On raising or cutting away the middle turbinated bone the outer wall of the middle meatus is fully exposed (Figs. 708 and 709) and presents (1) a rounded elevation, termed the **bulla ethmoidalis,** opening on or immediately above which are the orifices of the middle ethmoidal cells; (2) a deep, narrow, curved groove, in front of the bulla ethmoidalis, termed the **hiatus semilunaris,** into which the **anterior ethmoidal cells**

and the **antrum of Highmore** (*sinus maxillaris*) open, the orifice of the latter being placed near the level of its roof. The middle meatus is prolonged, above and in front, into the **infundibulum** (*infundibulum ethmoidale*), which leads into the **frontal sinus.** The anterior extremity of the meatus is continued into a depressed area which lies above the vestibule and is named the **atrium** (*atrium meatus medii nasi*). The **nasal duct** opens into the anterior part of the inferior meatus, the opening being frequently overlapped by a fold of mucous membrane, and from the orifice of the duct a groove leads downward and forward.

The Inner Wall (Fig. 709).—The inner wall or septum is frequently more or less deflected from the mesial plane (Figs. 101 and 709), thus limiting the size of one fossa and increasing that of the other. **Ridges** or **spurs of bone** growing outward from the septum are also sometimes present. Immediately over the incisive foramen at the lower edge of the cartilage of the septum a depression, the **naso-palatine recess** (*recessus nasopalatinus*), may be seen. In the septum close to this recess a minute orifice may be discerned; it leads into a blind pouch, the **rudimentary organ of Jacobson** (*organon vomeronasale*), which is well developed in some of the lower animals, but is rudimentary in man. The organ is supported by a plate of cartilage, distinct from the cartilage of the septum, the **cartilage of Jacobson** (p. 1097). The cartilage of Jacobson is to the outer side of the lower edge of the cartilage of the septum. The diverticulum opens anteriorly near the floor of the nose and close by Stenson's foramen. Just below the opening of the blind pouch is an elevation, the **eminence of Jacobson.**

The Mucous Membrane (*membrana mucosa nasi*).—The mucous membrane lining the nasal fossae is called the **pituitary,** from the nature of its secretion; or **Schneiderian,** from Schneider, the first anatomist who showed that the secretion proceeded from the mucous membrane, and not, as was formerly imagined, from the brain. It is intimately adherent to the periosteum or perichondrium, over which it lies. It is continuous externally with the skin through the anterior nares, and with the mucous membrane of the naso-pharynx through the posterior nares. From the nasal fossae its continuity may be traced with the conjunctiva through the nasal duct and lachrymal canals; with the lining membrane of the tympanum and mastoid cells through the Eustachian tube; and with the frontal, ethmoidal, and sphenoidal sinuses, and the antrum of Highmore through the several openings in the meatuses. The mucous membrane is thickest and most vascular over the turbinated bones. It is also thick over the septum, but in the intervals between the spongy bones and on the floor of the nasal fossae it is very thin. Where it lines the various sinuses and the antrum of Highmore it is thin and pale.

Owing to the great thickness of this membrane, the nasal fossae are much narrower, and the turbinated bones, especially the lower ones, appear larger and more prominent than in the skeleton. From the same circumstances also the various apertures communicating with the meatuses are considerably narrowed or completely closed. The vestibule is lined by modified skin, and contains hairs (*vibrissae*) which guard the entrance of the nostril.

Structure of the Mucous Membrane (Fig. 710).—The epithelium covering the mucous membrane differs in its character according to the functions of the part of the nose in which it is found. In the respiratory portion of the nasal cavity the epithelium is columnar and ciliated. Interspersed among the columnar ciliated cells are goblet or mucin cells, while between their bases are found smaller pyramidal cells. In this region, beneath the epithelium and its basement membrane, is a fibrous layer infiltrated with lymph-corpuscles, so as to form in many parts a diffuse adenoid tissue, which is particularly plentiful in children, and beneath this a nearly continuous layer of smaller and larger glands, some mucous and some serous, the ducts of which open upon the surface. In the respiratory portion of the mucous membrane there is an extensive anastomosing plexus of veins, which

in some regions forms a distinct **cavernous tissue** (*plexus cavernosus concharum*). The cavernous tissue is particularly distinct over the inferior turbinated bones. In the olfactory region the mucous membrane is yellowish in color and the epithelial cells are columnar and non-ciliated; they are of two kinds, **supporting cells** and **olfactory cells.**

The **Supporting Cells** contain oval nuclei, situated in the deeper parts of the cells; the free surface of each cell presents a sharp outline, and its deep extremity is prolonged into a process which runs inward, branching to communicate with similar processes from neighboring cells, so as to form a network in the deep part of the mucous membrane. Lying between these central processes of the supporting cells are a large number of spindle-shaped cells, the **olfactory cells,** which consist of a large spherical nucleus surrounded by a small amount of granular protoplasm, and possessing two processes, of which one runs outward between the columnar epithelial cells, and projects on the surface of the mucous membrane as a fine, hair-like process, the **olfactory hair**; the other or deep process runs inward, is frequently beaded like a nerve-fibre, and is believed by most observers to be in connection with one of the terminal filaments of the olfactory nerve. Beneath the

FIG. 710.—Section of the olfactory mucous membrane: *a*, epithelium; *b*, glands of Bowman; *c*, nerve bundles. (Cadiat.)

epithelium, extending through the thickness of the mucous membrane, is a layer of tubular, often branched, glands, the **glands of Bowman** (*glandulae olfactoriae*), identical in structure with serous glands.

The Arteries of the Nasal Fossae.—The arteries of the nasal fossae are the **anterior** and **posterior ethmoidal,** from the ophthalmic, which supply the ethmoidal cells, frontal sinuses, and roof of the nose; the **spheno-palatine,** from the internal maxillary, which supplies the mucous membrane covering the spongy bones, the meatuses, and septum; the **inferior artery of the septum,** from the superior coronary of the facial; and the **infraorbital** and **alveolar branches** of the internal maxillary, which supply the lining membrane of the antrum. The ramifications of these vessels form a close, plexiform network, beneath and in the substance of the mucous membrane.

The Veins of the Nasal Fossae.—The veins of the nasal fossae form a close, cavernous-like network beneath the mucous membrane. This cavernous appearance is especially well marked over the lower part of the septum and over the middle and inferior turbinated bones. Some of the veins pass, with those accompanying the spheno-palatine artery, through the spheno-palatine foramen; and others, through the alveolar branch, to join the **facial vein**; some accompany the eth-

moidal arteries, and terminate in the **ophthalmic vein**; and, lastly, a few communicate with the veins in the interior of the skull, through the foramina in the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone, and the foramen caecum.

The Lymphatics of the Nasal Fossae.—The lymphatics can be injected from the subdural and subarachnoid spaces, and form a plexus in the superficial portion of the mucous membrane. The lymph is drained partly into one or two glands which lie near the great cornu of the hyoid bone and partly into a gland situated in front of the axis.

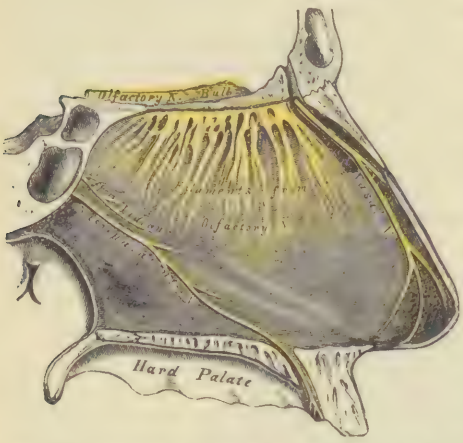


FIG. 711.—Nerves of septum of nose. Right side.

The Nerves of the Nasal Fossae (Fig. 711).—The nerves are: the **olfactory**, the **nasal branch** of the **ophthalmic**, filaments from the **anterior dental branch** of the superior maxillary, the Vidian, the naso-palatine, descending anterior palatine, and nasal branches of Meckel's ganglion. The **olfactory**, the special nerve of the sense of smell, is distributed to the olfactory region, and has been already referred to (p. 1019). The **nasal branch of the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve** distributes filaments to the forepart of the septum and outer wall of the nasal fossae. **Filaments from the anterior dental branch of the superior maxillary** supply the inferior meatus and inferior turbinated bone. The **Vidian nerve** supplies the upper and back part of the septum and superior spongy bone, and the **upper anterior nasal branches** from the **spheno-palatine ganglion** have a similar distribution. The **naso-palatine nerve** supplies the middle of the septum. The **larger** or **anterior palatine nerve** supplies the **lower nasal branches** to the middle and lower spongy bones.

Surgical Anatomy.—Instances of *congenital deformity* of the nose are occasionally met with, such as complete absence of the nose, an aperture only being present; or perfect development on one side, and suppression or malformation on the other; or there may be imperfect apposition of the nasal bones, so that the nose presents a median cleft or furrow. Deformities which have been acquired are much more common, such as *flattening of the nose* (*saddle nose*), the result of *syphilitic necrosis*, imperfect development of the nasal bones in cases of *congenital syphilis*, or a lateral deviation of the nose the result of *fracture*.

The skin over the alae and tip of the nose is thick and closely adherent to subjacent parts. *Inflammation* of this part is therefore very painful, on account of the tension. The skin is largely supplied with blood, and, the circulation here being terminal, vascular engorgement is liable to occur, especially in women at the menopause and in both sexes from disorders of digestion, exposure to cold, etc. The skin of the nose also contains a large number of sebaceous follicles, and these, as a result of intemperance, are apt to become affected, and the nose becomes reddened, congested, and irregularly swollen. To this condition the term *grog-blossom* is popularly applied. In some of these cases there is enormous hypertrophy of the skin and subcutaneous tissues, producing pendulous masses, termed *lipomata nasi*. *Ordinary epithelioma* and *rodent ulcer* may attack the nose, the latter being the more common of the two. *Lupus* and *syphilitic ulceration* frequently attack the nose, and may destroy the whole of the cartilaginous portion. In fact, lupus vulgaris begins more frequently on the ala of the nose than in any other situation.

Cases of congenital occlusion of one or both nostrils, or adhesion between the ala and septum may occur, and may require immediate operation, since the obstruction much interferes with sucking. Bony closure of the posterior nares may also occur.

To *examine the nasal cavities*, the head should be thrown back and the nose drawn upward, the parts being dilated by some form of speculum. They can also be examined with the little finger or a probe, and in this way foreign bodies detected. A still more extensive examination can be made by *Roux's operation*, which was introduced for the cure of *ozæna*. This operation enables the surgeon to remove any dead bone which may be present in this disease. The cartilaginous framework of the nose is lifted up by an incision made inside the mouth, through the junction

of the upper lip with the bone; the septum nasi and the lateral cartilages are divided with strong scissors till the anterior nares are completely exposed. The posterior nares can be explored by the aid of reflected light from the mouth, by which the posterior nares can be illuminated. The examination is very difficult to carry out, and, as a rule, sufficient information regarding the presence of foreign bodies or tumors in the naso-pharynx can be obtained by the introduction of the finger behind the soft palate through the mouth. The *septum of the nose* may be displaced or *deviate* from the middle line: this may be the result of an injury or from some congenital defect in its development; in the latter case the deviation usually occurs along the line of union of the vomer and mesethmoid, and rarely occurs before the seventh year. Sometimes the deviation may be so great that the septum may come in contact with the outer wall of the nasal fossa, and may even become adherent to it, thus producing complete obstruction. *Perforation of the septum* is not an uncommon affection and may arise from several causes: syphilitic or tuberculous ulceration, blood-tumor or abscess of the septum, and especially in workmen exposed to the vapor of bichromate of potash, from the irritating and corrosive action of fumes. When small, the perforation may cause a peculiar whistling sound during respiration. When large, it may lead to the falling in of the bridge of the nose.

Epistaxis is a very common affection in children. It is rarely of much consequence, and will almost always subside, but in the more violent hemorrhages of later life it may be necessary to plug the posterior nares. In performing this operation it is desirable to remember the size of the posterior nares. A ready method of regulating the size of the plug to fit the opening is to make it of the same size as the terminal phalanx of the thumb of the patient to be operated on.

Nasal polypus is a very common disease, and presents itself in three forms: the gelatinous, the fibrous, and the malignant. The first is by far the most common. It grows from the mucous membrane of the outer wall of the nasal fossa, where there is an abundant layer of highly vascular submucous tissue; rarely from the septum, where the mucous membrane is closely adherent to the cartilage and bone, without the intervention of much, if any, submucous tissue. The most common seat of gelatinous polyps is probably the middle turbinated bone. The fibrous polypus generally grows from the base of the skull behind the posterior nares or from the roof of the nasal fossæ. The malignant polypi, both sarcomatous and carcinomatous, may arise in the nasal cavities and the naso-pharynx; or they may originate in the antrum, and protrude through its inner wall into the nasal fossa.

Rhinoliths or nose-stones may sometimes be found in the nasal cavities. They arise from the deposition of phosphate of lime upon either a foreign body or a piece of inspissated secretion.

The nasal passages furnish a secretion of their own and receive secretion from other parts (tears and secretions of the accessory sinuses). The nasal cavities contain the ethmoidal labyrinths, the lateral masses of the ethmoid (which form the superior and middle turbinated bones), and the inferior turbinated bones. The nasal cavity is surrounded by three pairs of **pneumatic spaces**, the accessory sinuses. These are the maxillary sinuses, the frontal sinuses, and the cells of the ethmoidal labyrinth. The lachrymal duct opens into the inferior meatus. Inflammation of the air-cells may follow inflammation of the nasal mucous membrane or bone disease. One set of cells or many may suffer. Suppuration may occur. Pus may be blocked up and retained. Dead bone may form. The most serious conditions may follow (abscess of brain, sinus thrombosis, septicæmia), and an operation is necessary to obtain relief.

THE EYE.

The **eyeball** or **globe** (*bulbus oculi*) (Figs. 712 and 716) is contained in the anterior part of the cavity of the orbit. In this situation it is securely protected from injury, whilst its position is such as to ensure the most extensive range of sight. It is acted upon by numerous muscles, by which it is capable of being directed to different parts; it is supplied by vessels and nerves, and is additionally protected in front by the orbital margins, eyelids, etc.

The eyeball is embedded in the fat of the orbit, but is partly surrounded by a thin membranous sac, the **capsule of Ténon**, which isolates it, so as to allow of free movement.

The Fascia or Capsule of Ténon (*fascia bulbi* [*Tenoni*]) (Figs. 712 and 713).—The fascia or capsule of Ténon consists of a thin membrane which envelops the eyeball from the optic nerve to the ciliary region, separating it from the orbital fat and forming a socket in which it plays. Its inner surface is smooth, and is in contact with the outer surface of the sclerotic, the **perisclerotic** or **supra-**

scleral lymph-space only intervening. This lymph-space is continuous with the subdural and subarachnoid spaces, and is traversed by delicate bands of connective tissue which extend between the capsule and the sclerotic. This lymph-space forms a flexible pocket, in which the globe rotates. The capsule of Ténon, with the globe, forms a ball-and-socket joint (Deaver). The capsule is perforated behind by the **ciliary vessels** and **nerves** and by the **optic nerve**, being continuous with the sheath of the latter. In front it blends with the ocular conjunctiva, and with it is attached to the ciliary region of the eyeball. It is perforated by the muscles which move the eyeball and on to each muscle it sends a tubular sheath. The sheath of the Superior oblique is carried as far as the fibrous pulley of that muscle; that on the inferior oblique reaches as far as the floor of the orbit, to which it gives off a slip. The sheaths on the recti are gradually lost in the perimysium, but they give off important expansions. The expansion from the Superior rectus blends with the tendon of the Levator palpebrae; that of the

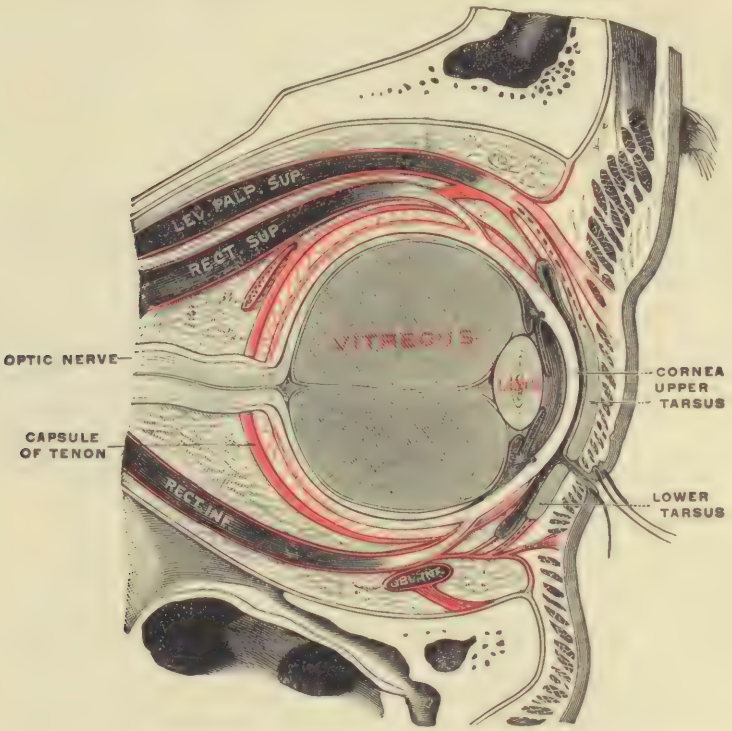


FIG. 712.—The right eye in sagittal section, showing the capsule of Ténon (semidiagrammatic). (Testut.)

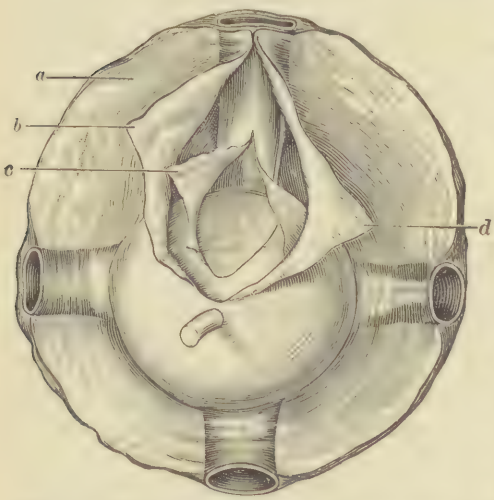


FIG. 713.—The capsule of Ténon. The aponeurosis is seen from behind forward on the posterior hemisphere of the globe: *a*, cellulo-fibrous intermuscular laminae; *b*, deep leaf of the sheath incised at the point where it leaves the muscle to fold itself on the posterior hemisphere when it forms the posterior capsule; *d*, partly incised; *c*, serous membrane. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Inferior rectus is attached to the inferior tarsal plate. These two recti, therefore, will exercise some influence on the movements of the eyelids. The expansions from the sheaths of the Internal and External recti are strong, especially the one from the latter muscle, and are attached to the lachrymal and malar bones respectively. As they probably check the action of these two recti, they have been named the **internal** and **external check ligaments.**

Lockwood has also described a thickening of the lower part of the capsule of Ténon, which he has named the **suspensory ligament of the eye.** It is slung like a hammock below the eyeball, being expanded in the centre and narrow at its extremities, which are attached to the malar and lachrymal bones respectively.[1]

The anterior one-third of the globe is covered by the **conjunctiva,** or mucous membrane, reflected from the inner surfaces of the lids (Fig. 715). A lateral view

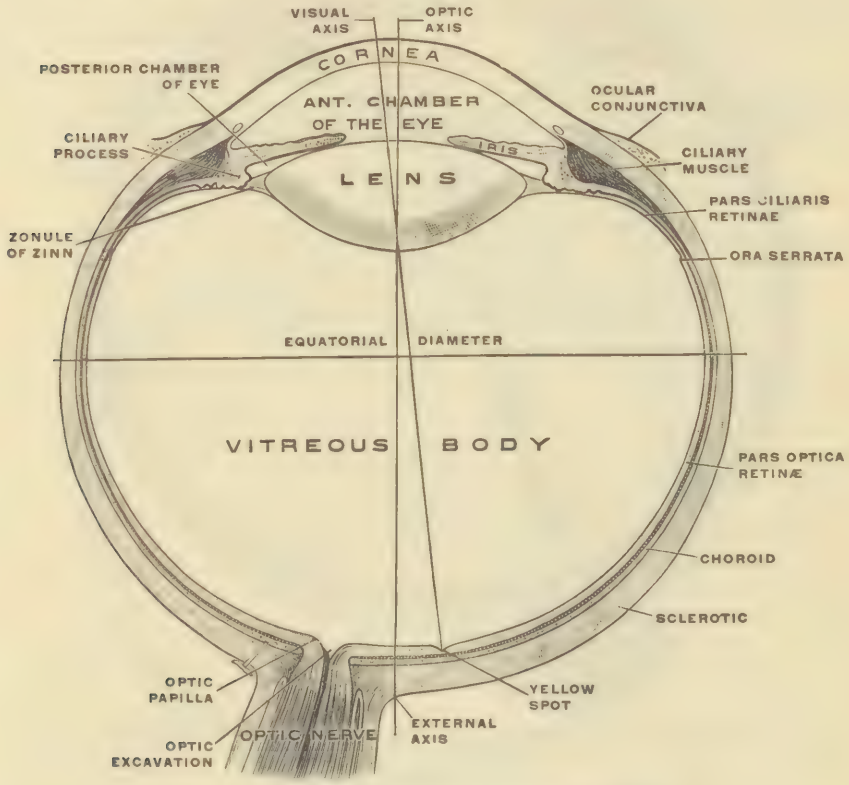


FIG. 714.—The right eye in horizontal section. (Toldt.)

of the globe shows that it is composed of **segments of two spheres** of different sizes (Figs. 712, 714, 715, and 716). The **anterior segment** is one of a small sphere, and forms about one-sixth of the eyeball. It is more prominent than the **posterior segment,** which is one of a much larger sphere, and forms about five-sixths of the globe. The segment of the larger sphere is opaque, and formed by the sclerotic, the tunic of protection to the eyeball; the smaller sphere is transparent, and formed by the cornea. Between the small, anterior or corneal segment, and the large, posterior or scleral segment, is a shallow and narrow groove, the **scleral sulcus** (*sulcus sclerae*). The **anterior pole** is the centre of the anterior portion of the cornea. The **posterior pole** is the centre of the posterior portion of the sclerotic. A straight line joining

[1] See a paper by C. B. Lockwood, Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, vol. xx., part i. p. 1.—ED. of 15th English edition.

these two poles is the **sagittal** or **optic axis** (*axis optica*) (Fig. 714). A line drawn around the eyeball equally distant at all points from the two poles is called the **equatorial diameter** or the **equator** (Fig. 714). The plane of the equator divides the globe in an **anterior** and a **posterior hemisphere.** Meridians may be drawn from one pole to the other at right angles to the equator. The **visual axis** (*linea visus*) (Fig. 714) passes in a straight line from the first nodal point on the cornea to the fovea centralis of the yellow spot on the retina. A **nodal point** is the point of intersection of convergent rays with the visual axis. The first nodal point is 6.9685 mm.

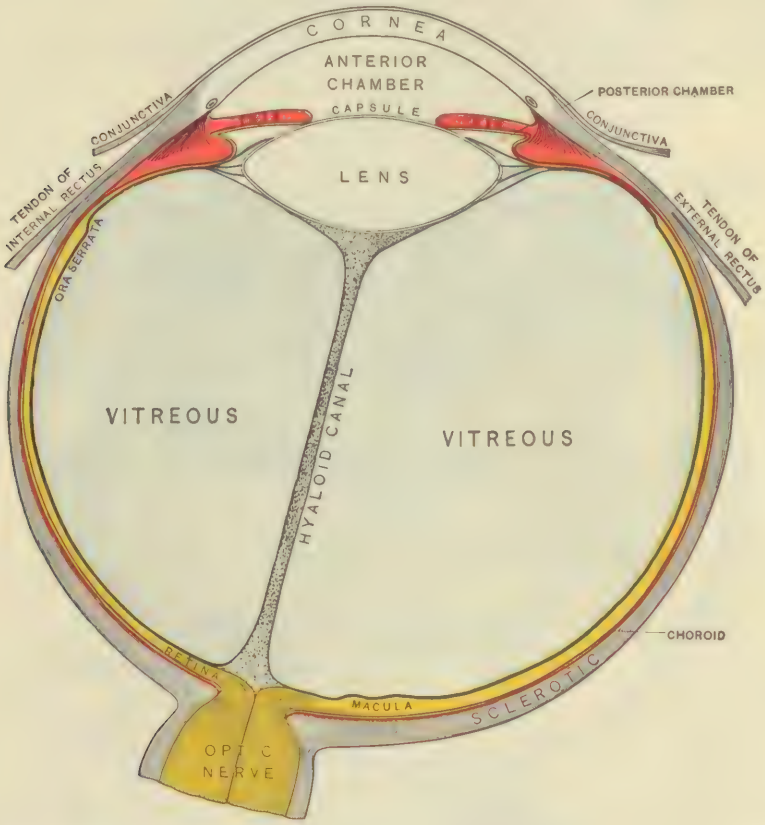


FIG. 715.—Diagram of a horizontal section of the right eye, showing the upper surface of the lower segment. (Testut.)

behind the summit of the cornea. The axes of the eyeballs are nearly parallel, and therefore do not correspond to the axes of the orbits, which are directed outward. The optic nerves follow the direction of the axes of the orbits, and are therefore not parallel; each nerve enters its eyeball about 1 mm. below and 3 mm. to the inner or nasal side of the posterior pole (Fig. 714). The eyeball measures rather more in its transverse and antero-posteror diameters than in its vertical diameter, the former amounting to nearly an inch, the latter to about nine-tenths of an inch. The diameters in the female are somewhat less than in the male.

The eyeball is composed of three **investing tunics** and of three **refracting media.**

THE TUNICS OF THE EYE.

From without inward the three tunics are:

I. Sclerotic Coat and Cornea.
II. Choroid, Ciliary Body, and Iris.
III. Retina.

I. The Fibrous or External Coat: The Sclerotic and Cornea (Tunica Fibrosa Oculi).

The sclerotic and cornea (Figs. 714, 715, and 716) form the external tunic of the eyeball; they are essentially fibrous in structure, the sclerotic being opaque, and forming the posterior five-sixths of the globe; the cornea, which forms the remaining sixth, being transparent.

The Sclera or Sclerotic Coat (*σκληρός*, hard).—The sclera or sclerotic coat has received its name from its extreme density and hardness; it is a firm, unyielding, opaque, fibrous membrane, forming the posterior five-sixths of the outer coat

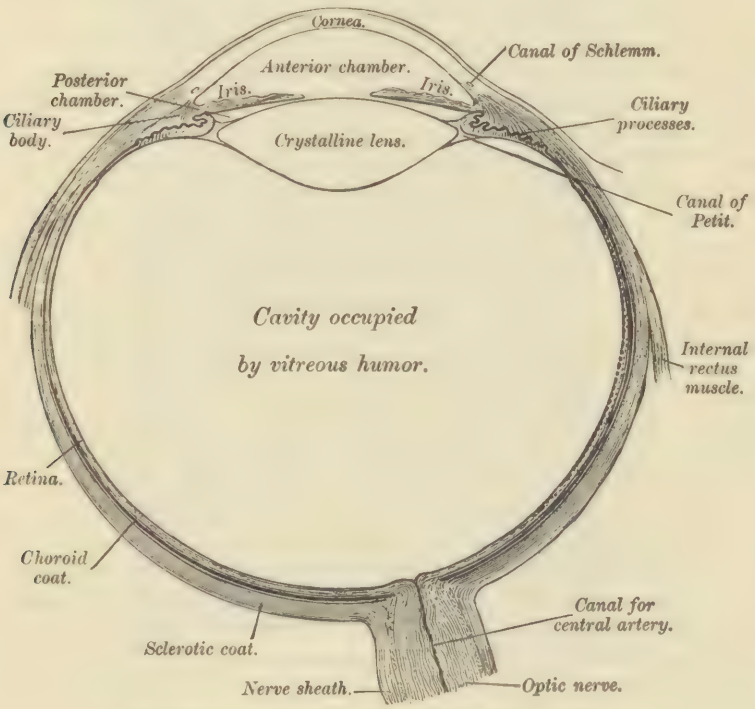


FIG. 716.—A horizontal section of the eyeball. (Allen.)

and serving to maintain the form of the globe. It is much thicker behind than in front. Its *external surface* is of a white color, and is in contact with the inner surface of the capsule of Ténon, a lymph-space intervening; it is quite smooth, except one-quarter of an inch back of the sclero-corneal junction, at the points where the Recti and Obliqui muscles are inserted into it, and its anterior part is covered by the **conjunctival membrane** (Fig. 744); hence the whiteness and brilliancy of the front of the eyeball. Its *inner surface* is stained a brown color, marked by grooves, in which are lodged the **ciliary nerves** and **vessels** (Figs. 719, 724, and 725); the inner surface of the sclera is loosely connected by three layers of exceed-

ingly fine cellular pigmented tissue (*lamina fusca*) with the outer surface of the choroid, an extensive lymph-space, the **perichoroidal space** (*spatium perichorioideale*) (Figs. 727 and 744) intervening between the sclerotic and choroid. Behind the sclera is pierced by the **optic nerve** (*n. opticus*), and is continuous with the fibrous sheath of the nerve, which is derived from the dura mater (Fig. 721). At the point where the optic nerve passes through the sclerotic, the lamina fusca is represented by an arrangement of the fibrous tissue which forms a thin network, the **cribriform lamina** (*lamina cribrosa sclerae*) (Fig. 731); the minute orifices in this network serve for the transmission of separate bundles of nervous filaments, and the fibrous septa dividing them from one another are continuous with the membranous processes which separate the bundles of nerve-fibres. One of these openings (*porus opticus*), larger than the rest, occupies the centre of the lamella; it transmits the **arteria centralis retinae** to the interior of the eyeball (Fig. 731). Around the cribriform lamella are numerous small apertures for the transmission of the **ciliary nerves** and the **short ciliary arteries**, and about midway between the margin of the cornea and the entrance of the optic nerve are four or five large apertures, for the transmission of **veins** (*venae vorticosae*) (Fig. 721). In front, the fibrous tissue of the sclerotic is continuous with the substantia proporia, the cornea by direct continuity of tissue (Fig. 744), but the opaque sclerotic slightly overlaps the outer surface of the transparent cornea. In the depths of the line of junction between the cornea and the sclera there is a circular canal, the **canal of Schlemm** (*sinus venosus sclerae*) (Figs. 716, 723, 727, and 744). This canal receives the sclera veins (Fig. 723) and communicates internally by numerous minute openings in the pectineal ligament of the iris (Fig. 744) with the anterior chamber of the eyeball. These openings are the spaces of Fontana (Fig. 727).

Structure.—The sclerotic is formed of white fibrous tissue intermixed with fine elastic fibres, and of flattened connective-tissue corpuscles, some of which are pigmented, contained in cell-spaces between the fibres (Figs. 720 and 731). These fibres are aggregated into bundles, some of which are arranged in layers having an equatorial direction, but most of which are arranged in layers lying in meridian lines. The sclera is joined to the choroid by three thin layers of loose connective tissue containing pigment cells, the **lamina fusca** (*lamina fasciae sclerae*) (Fig. 724). Where the optic nerve passes through the sclera there is very thin network to represent the lamina fusca. This network is the *lamina cribrosa* (Fig. 731). The muscles of the eyeball are attached to the sclera (Figs. 715, 716, and 744), and their tendons enter among the bundles of fibrous connective tissue. The conjunctiva covers the anterior portion of the sclera and is attached to it by submucous tissue (Figs. 715 and 727). The sclera yields gelatin on boiling. Its vessels (Figs. 721 and 723) are not numerous, the capillaries being of small size and uniting at long and wide intervals. It obtains arterial blood from the **short posterior ciliary** and the **anterior ciliary arteries.** The venous blood is removed by the **venae vorticosae** and the **anterior ciliary veins.** There are lymph-spaces between the cells which empty into the **perischeral** (Fig. 712 and p. 1104) and **perichoroidal lymph-spaces** (Fig. 727). Its nerves are derived from the **ciliary nerves** (Fig. 719). They lose their medullary sheaths and enter among the bundles of fibrous tissue, but it is not known how they terminate.

The Cornea (Figs. 712, 715, and 721).—The cornea is the projecting transparent part of the external tunic of the eyeball, and forms the anterior sixth of the globe. It is almost, but not quite, circular in shape, occasionally a little broader in the transverse than in the vertical direction. It is convex anteriorly, and projects forward from the sclerotic in the same manner that a watch-glass does from the case. Its degree of curvature varies in different individuals, and in the same individual at different periods of life, it being more prominent in youth than in advanced life, when it becomes flattened. Usually the curvature is slightly greater in the vertical plane than in the horizontal plane; at its centre than at its periphery, and at its temporal than at its nasal side. The cornea is dense and of uniform thickness throughout;

its *posterior surface* is perfectly circular in outline, and exceeds the anterior surface slightly in extent, from the latter being overlapped by the sclerotic. The *anterior surface* is covered with conjunctiva (Fig. 727).

Structure (Fig. 717).—The cornea consists of five layers—namely: (1) the anterior or epithelial layer; (2) the anterior elastic layer; (3) the substantia propria; (4) the posterior elastic layer; (5) the posterior or endothelial layer.

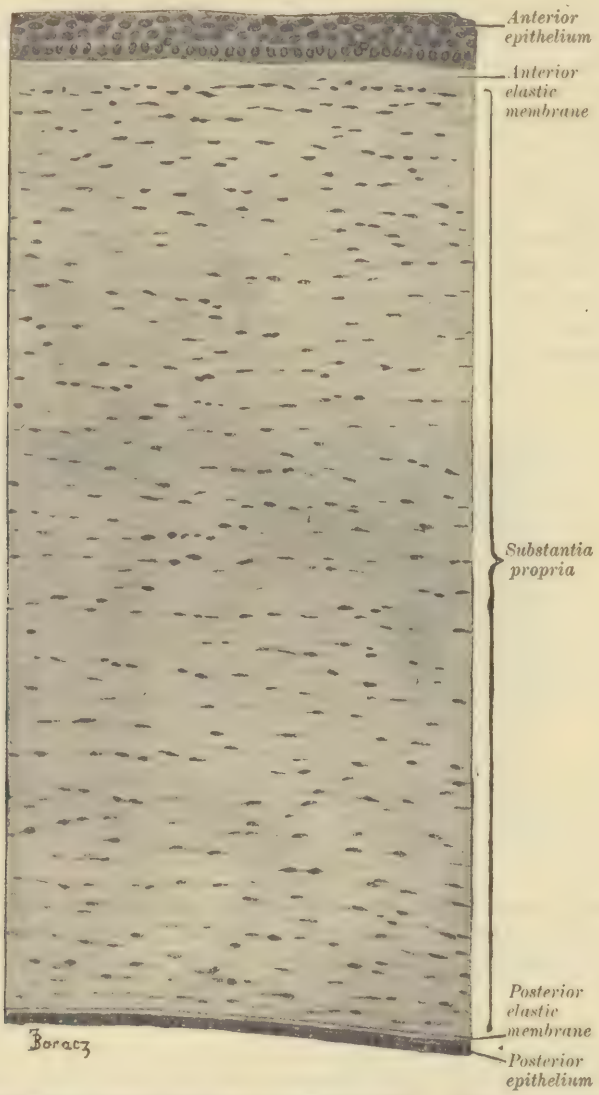


FIG. 717.—Vertical section through the cornea of a newborn child. × 200. (Szymonowicz.)

(1) The **Anterior Layer** (*epithelium corneae*) is composed of stratified epithelium and is continuous with the cells of the conjunctiva at the borders of the cornea. There are from five to eight strata of nucleated cells in the anterior layer. The deepest cells are columnar. Above the columnar cells are several layers of polygonal cells, most of which have finger-like processes and are called **prickle cells.** At the surface the cells and nuclei become flat. The anterior epithelial layer prevents the absorption of the fluid of the tears.

(2) The **Anterior Elastic** or **Anterior Limiting Layer** or **Bowman's Membrane** (*lamina elastica anterior*) is less than half the thickness of the layer of stratified epithelium.

It differs in some essential respects from true elastic tissue. It shows evidences of fibrillary structure, and does not have a tendency to curl inward or to undergo fracture when detached from the other layers of the cornea. It consists of extremely close interwoven fibrils, similar to those found in the rest of the cornea proper, but contains no corneal corpuscles. It ought, therefore, to be regarded as a part of the proper tissue of the cornea.

(3) The **Substantia Propria** or proper substance of the cornea forms the main thickness of that structure. It is fibrous, tough, unyielding, perfectly transparent, and continuous with the sclerotic. It is composed of about sixty flattened lamellae, superimposed one on another. These lamellae are made up of bundles of modified connective tissue, the fibres of which are directly continuous with the fibres of the sclerotic. The fibres of each lamella are for the most part parallel with each other; those of alternating lamellae at right angles to each other. Fibres, however, frequently pass obliquely from one lamella to the next (*fibrae arcuatae*).

The lamellae are connected with each other by an interstitial cement-substance, in which are spaces, the **corneal spaces, cell spaces** or **lacunae** (Fig. 718). The spaces are stellate in shape, and have numerous offsets or **canaliculi** (Fig. 718), by which they communicate with each other. Each space contains a cell, the **corneal corpuscle** (Fig. 718), which resembles in form the space in which it is

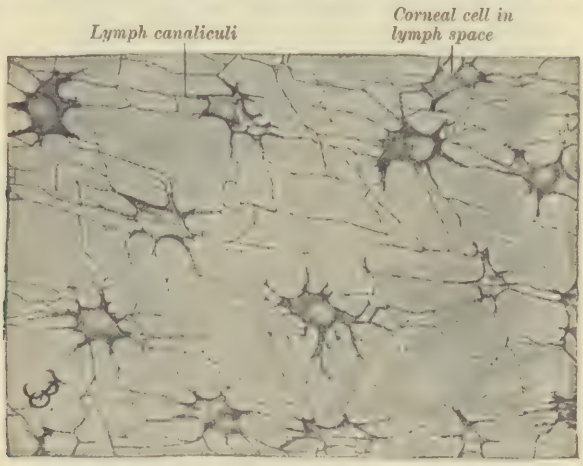


FIG. 718.—From a horizontal section of an ox's cornea. Positive picture of the canal system demonstrated by the gold chloride method. × 450. (Szymonowicz.)

lodged, but it does not entirely fill it, the remainder of the space containing lymph. In the aged the margin of the cornea becomes opaque gray. This rim is called the **arcus senilis**, and is due to fat deposit in the lamellae and corneal corpuscles.

(4) The **Posterior Elastic Lamina**, the **Membrane of Descemet**, or the **Membrane of Demours** (*lamina elastica posterior*), which covers the proper structure of the cornea behind, presents no structure recognizable under the microscope. It consists of an elastic, and perfectly transparent homogeneous membrane, of extreme thinness, which is not rendered opaque by either water, alcohol, or acids. It is very brittle, but its most remarkable property is its extreme elasticity, and the tendency which it presents to curl up, or roll upon itself, with the attached surface innermost, when separated from the proper substance of the cornea. Its use appears to be (as suggested by Dr. Jacob) "to preserve the requisite permanent correct curvature of the flaccid cornea proper."

At the margin of the cornea this posterior elastic membrane breaks up into fibres to form a reticular structure at the outer angle of the anterior chamber, the intervals between the fibres forming small cavernous spaces, the **spaces of Fontana** (*spatia*

anguli iridis) (Fig. 727). These little recesses communicate with a circular canal in the deeper parts of the corneo-scleral junction. This is the **canal of Schlemm** (*sinus venosus sclerae*) (Figs. 716, 723, and 727); it communicates internally with the anterior chamber through the spaces of Fontana, and externally with the scleral veins. Some of the fibres of this reticulated structure are continued into the front of the iris, forming the *ligamentum pectinatum iridis;* while others are connected with the forepart of the sclerotic and choroid.

(5) The **Posterior Layer** or the **Corneal Endothelium** (*endothelium camerae anterioris*) lines the aqueous chamber and prevents the absorption of the aqueous humor. It covers the posterior surface of the elastic lamina, is reflected on to the front of the iris, and also lines the spaces of Fontana. It consists of a single layer of polygonal flattened transparent nucleated cells, similar to those lining other serous cavities.

Arteries and Nerves.—The fœtal cornea contains blood-vessels which pass from the margin almost to the centre. The adult cornea contains no blood-vessels, except at its margin. The capillaries from the sclera and conjunctiva form loops at the corneal margin, and many of these loops enter the cornea for a distance of 1 mm. (Fig. 723). The balance of the cornea is non-vascular and obtains its nourishment from the lymph in the *lacunae* and *canaliculi*. Lymphatic vessels have not as yet been demonstrated in it, but are represented by the channels in which the bundles of nerves run; these channels are lined by endothelium and are continuous with the cell-spaces. The nerves are numerous, twenty-four to thirty-six in number (Kölliker), forty to forty-five (Waldeyer and Sümisch); they are derived from the ciliary nerves; they form the **annular plexus** (*plexus annularis*), at the corneal margin, and enter the laminated tissue of the cornea, lose their medullary sheaths, and ramify throughout the substantia propria as the **fundamental plexus** or the **plexus of the stroma**. From this deep plexus come **perforating fibres** (*fibrae perforantes*), which pass through the anterior elastic lamina and form the **subepithelial plexus**, and from it fibrils are given off which ramify between the epithelial cells, forming a network which is termed the **intra-epithelial plexus**. Nerve-fibres from the annular plexus and from the plexus of the stroma come into close relation with the corneal corpuscles.

Dissection.—In order to separate the sclerotic and cornea, so as to expose the second tunic, the eyeball should be immersed in a small vessel of water and held between the finger and thumb. The sclerotic is then carefully incised, in the equator of the globe, till the choroid is exposed. One blade of a pair of probe-pointed scissors is now introduced through the opening thus made, and the sclerotic divided around its entire circumference, and removed in separate portions. The front segment being then drawn forward, the handle of the scalpel should be pressed gently against it at its connection with the iris, and, these being separated, a quantity of perfectly transparent fluid will escape; this is the aqueous humor. In the course of the dissection the ciliary nerves (Fig. 719) may be seen lying in the loose cellular tissue between the choroid and sclerotic or continued in delicate grooves on the inner surface of the latter membrane.

II. The Choroid, Ciliary Body, and Iris, the Tunica Media, the Uveal Tract (Tunica Vasculosa Oculi) (Figs. 714, 716, 719, 724, 744).

The second or middle tunic of the eye is formed from behind forward by the choroid, the ciliary body, and the iris.

The choroid is the vascular and pigmentary tunic of the eyeball, investing the posterior five-sixths of the globe, and extending as far forward as the *ora serrata* of the retina; the ciliary body connects the choroid to the circumference of the iris. The iris is the circular muscular septum, which hangs vertically behind the cornea, presenting in its centre a large rounded aperture, the **pupil**.

The Choroid (*chorioidea*).—The choroid is a thin, highly vascular membrane, of a dark-brown or chocolate color, which invests the posterior five-sixths of the

globe, and is pierced behind by the optic nerve, and in this situation is firmly adherent to the sclerotic. It is thicker behind than in front. Externally, it is loosely connected by the **lamina fusca** with the inner surface of the sclerotic (p. 1108). Its inner surface is attached to the retina.

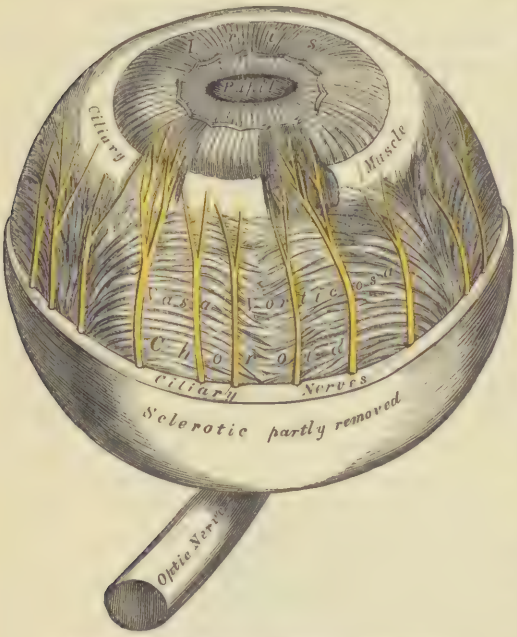


Fig. 719. The choroid and iris. (Enlarged.)

Structure (Fig. 720).—The choroid consists of a dense capillary plexus and of small arteries and veins, carrying the blood to and returning it from this plexus (Fig. 723), and of branched and pigmented cells which lie in connective tissue. There are three layers in the choroid. Named from without inward, they are the **lamina suprachorioidea,** the **choroid proper,** and **lamina basalis** (Fig. 720).

(1) The **Lamina Suprachorioidea** is on the external surface, that is, the surface next to the sclerotic.

It resembles the lamina fusca of the sclerotic. It is composed of delicate non-vascular lamellae, each lamella consisting of a network of fine elastic fibres, among which are branched pigment-cells. The spaces between the lamellae are lined by endothelium, and open freely into the perichoroidal lymph-space, which, in its turn, communicates with the perisclerał space by the perforations in the sclerotic through which the vessels and nerves are transmitted.

(2) The **Choroid Proper** is internal to the lamina suprachorioidea. In consequence of the small arteries and veins of the choroid proper being arranged on the outer surface of the capillary network, it is customary to describe this as consisting of two layers: the **outermost** (*lamina vasculosa*), composed of small arteries and

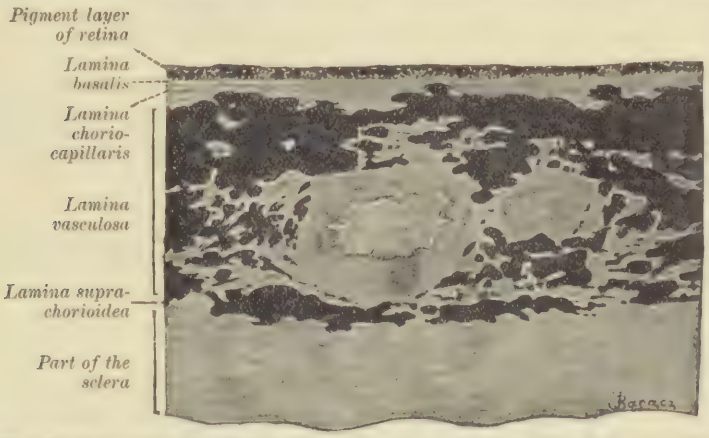


Fig. 720.—Vertical section through the chorioidea and a part of the sclera of an ape. × 440. (Szymonowicz.)

veins, with pigment-cells interspersed between them, and the **inner** (*lamina choriocapillaris*), consisting of a capillary plexus. The **external layer of the choroid proper** or the **lamina vasculosa** consists, in part, of the larger branches of the **short**

posterior ciliary arteries (Figs. 721, 723, and 725), which run forward between the veins, before they bend inward to terminate in the capillaries; but this layer is

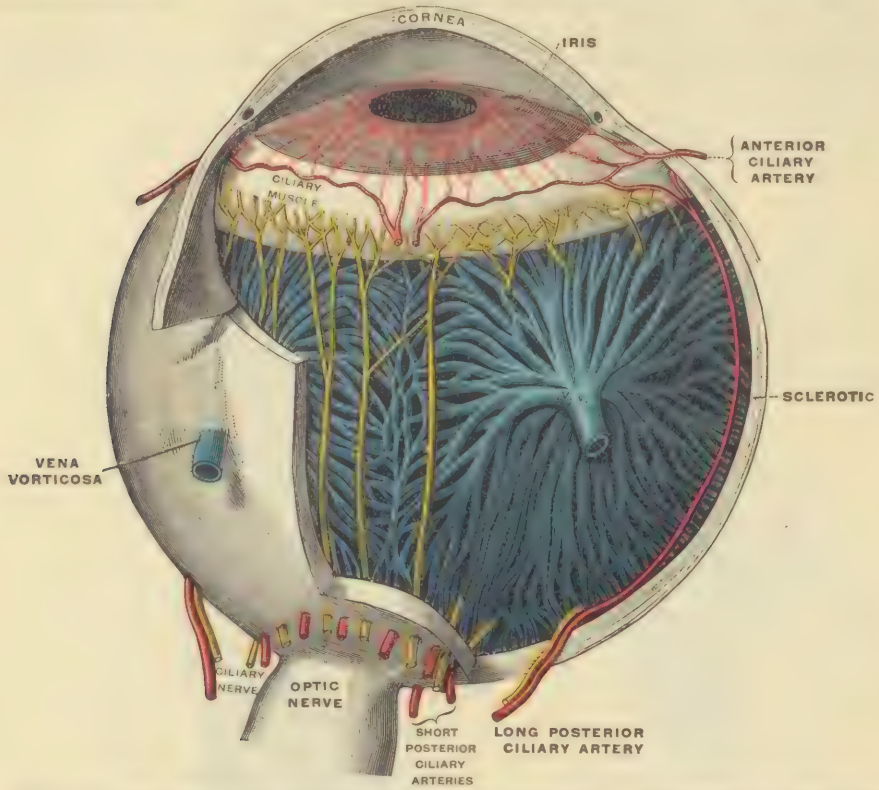


FIG. 721.—Vessels and nerves of the choroid and iris, seen from above. The sclerotic and cornea have been largely removed. (Testut.)

formed principally of veins, which have a whirl-like arrangement and empty into four or five large equidistant trunks, the **venae vorticosae** (Figs. 721, 722, and 723), which pierce the sclerotic midway between the margin of the cornea and the entrance of the optic nerve. Around the veins are **lymph-spaces.** Interspersed between the vessels are dark star-shaped pigment-cells, the offsets from which, communicating with similar branchings from neighboring cells, form a delicate network or stroma, which toward the inner surface of the choroid loses its pigmentary chraacter. The **internal layer of the choroid proper** consists of an exceedingly fine capillary plexus, formed by the short ciliary vessels (Fig. 723), and is known as the **tunic of Ruysch** (*lamina choriocapillaris*).

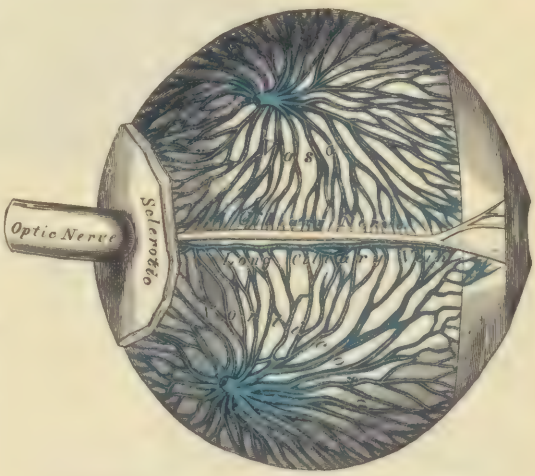


FIG. 722.—The veins of the choroid. (Enlarged.)

The network is close, and finer at the hinder part of the choroid than in front. About half an inch behind the cornea its meshes become larger, and are continuous

with those of the ciliary processes. These two laminae are connected by an **intermediate stratum**, which is destitute of pigment-cells and consists of fine elastic fibres.

On the inner surface of the lamina choriocapillaris is a very thin, structureless, or, according to Kölliker, faintly fibrous membrane, called the **lamina basalis** or **membrane of Bruch**; it is closely connected with the stroma of the choroid, and separates it from the pigmentary layer of the retina.

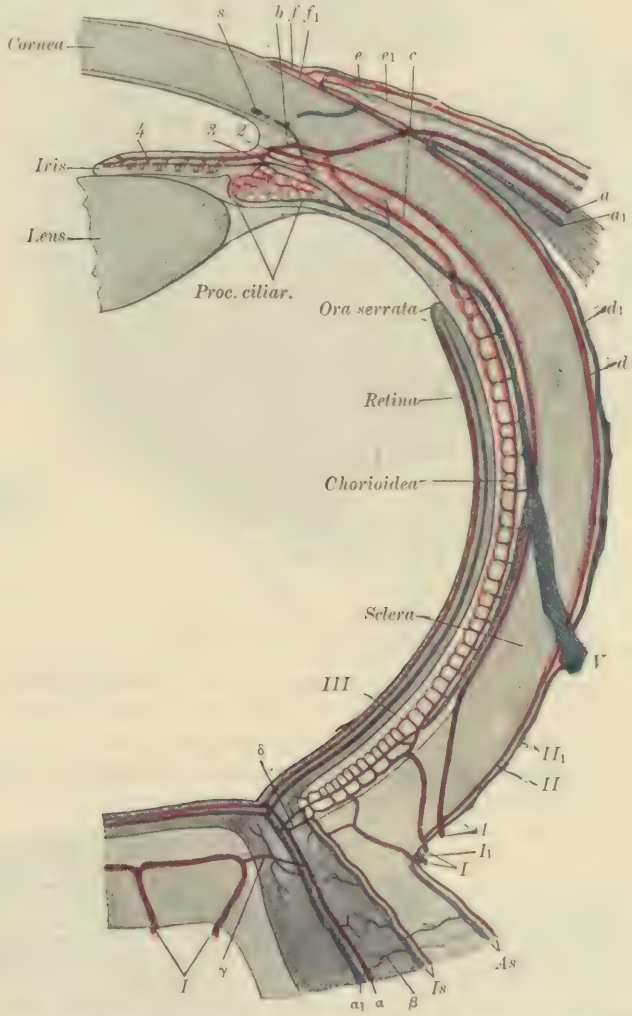


FIG. 723.—Diagram of the blood-vessels of the eye, as seen in a horizontal section. (Leber, after Stöhr.)

Course of vasa centralia retinae: α, arteria, α_1 vena centralis retinae; β, anastomosis with vessels of outer coats; γ, anastomosis with branches of short posterior ciliary arteries; δ, anastomosis with chorioideal vessels.

Course of vasa ciliar. postic. brev.: I, arteriae, and I_1, venae ciliar. postic. brev.; II, episcleral artery; II_1, episcleral vein; III, capillaries of lamina choriocapillaris.

Course of vasa ciliar. postic. long.: 1, a. ciliar. post. longa; 2, circulus iridis major cut across; 3, branches to ciliary body; 4, branches to iris.

Course of vasa ciliar. ant.: a, arteria, a_1, vena ciliar. ant.; b, junction with the circulus iridis major; c, junction with lamina choriocapill.; d, arterial, and d_1, venous episcleral branches; e, arterial, and e_1, venous branches to conjunctiva sclerae; f, arterial, and f_1, venous branches to corneal border; V, vena vorticosa; S, transverse section of sinus venosus sclerae.

Tapetum (*lucidum*).—This name is applied to the iridescent appearance which is seen in the outer and posterior parts of the choroid of many animals, but not in man.

The ciliary body should now be examined. It may be exposed, either by detaching the iris from its connection with the Ciliary muscle, or by making a transverse section of the globe, and examining it from behind.

The Ciliary Body (*corpus ciliare*) (Fig. 716).—The ciliary body or cyclon joins the choroid to the margin of the iris. It is in reality a process of the choroid or uveal tract and comprises the **orbiculus ciliaris**, the **ciliary processes**, and the **Ciliary muscle.**

The Orbiculus Ciliaris or Annulus Ciliaris (Figs. 724, 726, and 742).—The orbiculus ciliaris is a zone of about one-sixth of an inch in width, directly continuous with the anterior part of the choroid. The lamina basalis presents numerous ridges arranged in a radial manner. The depressions between the ridges are filled with retinal pigment epithelium (Szymonowicz). The orbiculus contains no lamina choriocapillaris.

The Ciliary Processes (*processus ciliares*) (Figs. 714, 716, 726, and 744).—The ciliary processes are formed by the plaiting and folding inward of the various layers of the choroid—*i. e.*, the choroid proper and the lamina basalis—at its anterior margin, and are received between corresponding foldings of the suspensory ligament of the lens, thus establishing a connection between the choroid and inner tunic of the eye. They are arranged in a circle, and form a sort of plaited frill, the **corona ciliaris**, behind the iris, round the margin of the lens (Figs. 726 and 744). They vary between sixty and eighty in number, lie side by side, and may be divided into large and small; the latter, consisting of about one-third of the entire number, are situated in the spaces between the former, but without regular alternation. The larger processes are each about one-tenth of an inch in length, and are attached by their periphery to three or four of the ridges of the orbiculus ciliaris, and are continuous with the layers of the choroid; the opposite margin is free, and rests upon the circumference of the lens. Their anterior surface is turned toward the back of the iris, with the circumference of which they are continuous. The posterior surface is connected with the suspensory ligament of the lens.

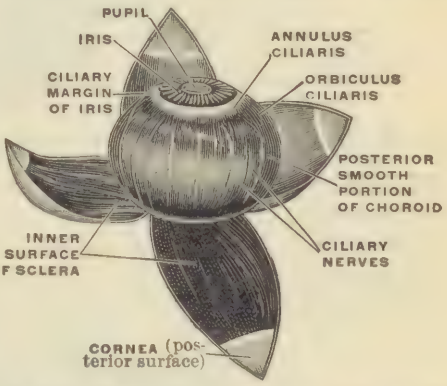


FIG. 724.—The middle or vascular coat of the eyeball exposed from without. Left eye, seen obliquely from above and before. (Toldt.)

Structure.—The ciliary processes are similar in structure to the choroid, but the vessels are larger, and have chiefly a longitudinal direction. They are the most vascular portion of the eyeball. The processes are covered on their inner surface by two strata of black pigment-cells, which are continued forward from the retina, and are named the **pars ciliaris retinae** (Figs. 720 and 727). In the stroma of the ciliary processes there are also stellate pigment-cells, which, however, are not so numerous as in the choroid itself.

The Ciliary Muscle or Bowman's Muscle (*m. ciliaris*) (Figs. 719, 721, 725, 727, 728, and 729).—The ciliary muscle consists of unstriped fibres; it forms a grayish, semitransparent, circular band, about one-eighth of an inch broad, on the outer surface of the forepart of the choroid, between the choroid and the iris and back of the sclero-corneal junction. It is thickest in front and gradually becomes thinner behind. It consists of two sets of fibres, **radiating** and **circular.**

The **Radiating Fibres** (*fibrae meridianales* [*Bruckei*]) (Figs. 727 and 744), much the more numerous, arise at the point of junction of the cornea and sclerotic, and partly also from the ligamentum pectinatum iridis, and, passing backward, are attached to the choroid opposite to the ciliary processes. One bundle, according to Waldeyer, is continued backward to be inserted into the sclerotic.

The **Circular Fibres** (*fibrae circulares* [*Mulleri*]) (Figs. 727 and 744) are internal to the radiating ones and to some extent unconnected with them, and have a circular course around the attachment of the iris. They are sometimes called the "**ring muscle**" **of Muller**, and were formerly described as the **ciliary ligament**. They are well developed in hypermetropic, but are rudimentary or absent in myopic eyes.

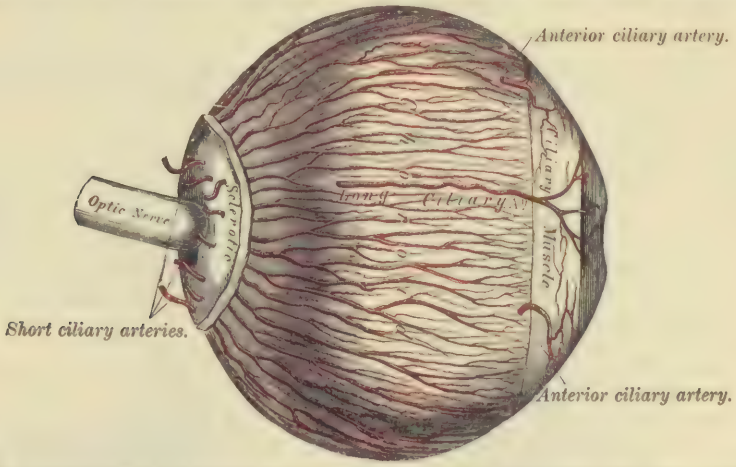


FIG. 725.—The arteries of the choroid and iris. The sclerotic has been mostly removed. (Enlarged.)

The Ciliary muscle is admitted to be the chief agent in accommodation—*i. e.*, in adjusting the eye to the vision of near objects. Bowman believed that this was effected by its compressing the vitreous body, and so causing the lens to advance. At the present time all agree that the chief element in accommodation is altered curvature of the lens, but there is diversity of opinion as to the manner in which

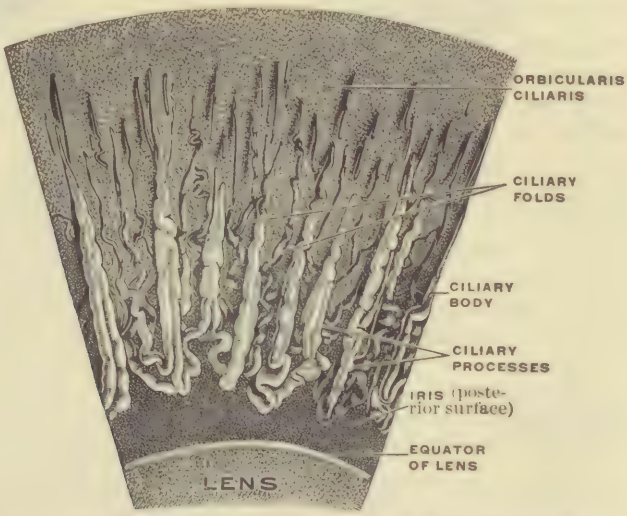


FIG. 726.—A portion of the corona ciliaris magnified. The ciliary processes and the ciliary folds. (Toldt.)

this is accomplished. The view which now prevails is that of Helmholtz. He maintained that in an unaccommodated eye the capsule and suspensory ligament of the lens are tense, and their pressure flattens the anterior surface of the lens, and parallel rays (and rays from objects far off are practically parallel) "are focused on the retina without any sense of effort."[1]

"In accommodation for a near object the meridional or antero-posterior fibres

[1] Stewart, Manual of Physiology.

of the ciliary muscle by their contraction pull forward the choroid and relax the suspensory ligament. The elasticity of the lens at once causes it to bulge forward till it is again checked by the tension of the capsule."[1] The pupil is at the same time slightly contracted.

The Iris (*iris*, a rainbow) (Figs. 716, 719, 721, 723, 724, 727, 728, 729, 730, and 744).—The iris has received its name from its various colors in different individuals. It is a thin, circular-shaped, contractile curtain, suspended in the aqueous humor behind the cornea, and in front of the lens, being perforated a little to the nasal side of its centre by a circular aperture, the **pupil** (*pupilla*) (Fig. 730), for the transmission of light. The pupil of a living person varies in size under the influence of light and in efforts at accommodation. In looking at a near object the pupil is small; in looking at a distant object it is large. In light the pupil contracts, in darkness it dilates; hence the pupil is a window which permits light to pass into the interior of the eye. The size of this window depends on the contraction or relaxation of the iris. The iris divides the **aqueous chamber** (the space between

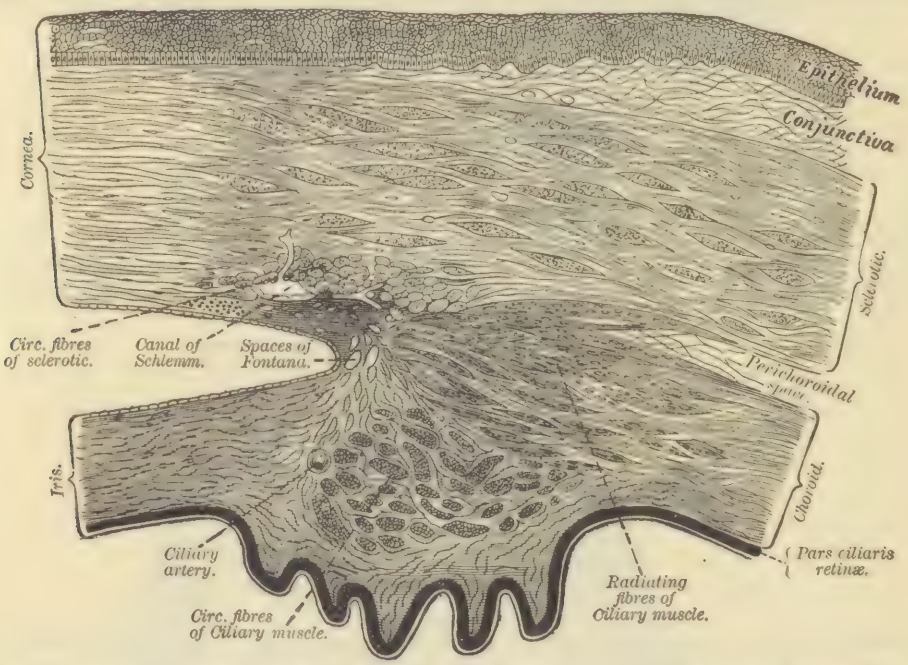


Fig. 727.—Section of the eye, showing the relations of the cornea, sclerotic, and iris, together with the Ciliary muscle and the cavernous spaces near the angle of the anterior chamber. (Waldeyer.)

the cornea and lens) into an **anterior chamber** and a **posterior chamber** which communicate through the pupil (Figs. 714 and 716). By its **circumference** or **ciliary margin** (*margo ciliaris*) (Figs. 727 and 728) the iris is continuous with the ciliary body, and it is also connected with the posterior elastic lamina of the cornea by means of the **pectinate ligament** (*ligamentum pectinatum iridis*) (Fig. 744). The pectinate ligament of the iris is derived from the posterior elastic layer of the cornea. This layer divides into numerous fibrillae and some of them reach the iris, and bridge the angle between the cornea and base of the iris (Deaver). The fibrillae which reach the iris constitute the ligament. In this ligament are numerous lymph-spaces, the **spaces of Fontana** (*spatia anguli iridis* [*Fontanae*]) (Fig. 727), and they join the canal of Schlemm to the anterior chamber of the eye. The inner or free edge of the iris forms the margin of the pupil, and is called the **pupillary margin** (*margo pupillaris*) (Fig. 728). The surfaces of the iris are flattened, and

[1] Stewart, Manual of Physiology.

look forward and backward, the anterior toward the cornea, the posterior toward the ciliary processes and lens. The iris is pigmented and the color of an individual's eyes depends upon this pigment. The **anterior surface** (*facies anterior*) (Figs. 728 and 744) of the iris is variously colored in different individuals, and is marked by lines which converge toward the pupil. The **posterior surface** (*facies posterior*) (Figs 726 and 744) is of a deep-purple tint, from being covered by two layers of pigmented, columnar epithelium, which layers are continuous posteriorly with the pars ciliaris retinae. This pigmented epithelium is termed the **pars iridica retinae,** though it is sometimes named **uvea,** from its resemblance in color to a ripe grape.

Structure.—The iris is composed of the following structures:

1. In front is a layer of flattened endothelial cells placed on a delicate hyaline basement-membrane. This layer is continuous with the endothelial layer covering the membrane of Descemet, and in men with dark-colored irides the cells contain pigment-granules.

2. **Stroma** (*stroma iridis*).—The stroma consists of fibres and cells. The former are made of fine, delicate bundles of fibrous tissue, of which some few fibres have

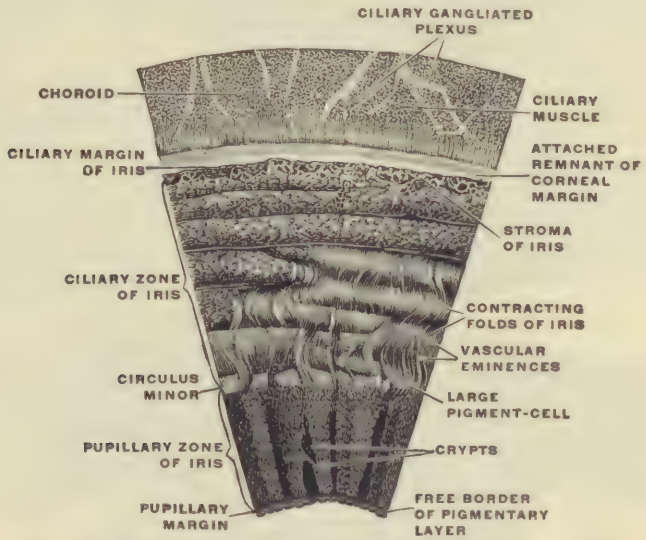


FIG. 728.—Section of the iris. Anterior surface magnified. (Toldt.)

a circular direction at the circumference of the iris, but the chief mass consists of fibres radiating toward the pupil. They form, by their interlacement, a delicate mesh, in which the vessels and nerves are contained. Interspersed between the bundles of connective tissue are numerous branched cells with fine processes. Many of them in dark eyes contain pigment-granules, but in blue eyes and the pink eyes of albinos they are unpigmented.

3. The **Muscular Fibre** is involuntary and consists of **circular** and **radiating fibres.** The **circular fibres** (*m. sphincter pupillae*) surround the margin of the pupil on the posterior surface of the iris, like a sphincter, forming a narrow band about one-thirtieth of an inch in width, those near the free margin being closely aggregated; those more external somewhat separated, and forming less complete circles. The **radiating fibres** (*m. dilator pupillae*) converge from the circumference toward the centre, and blend with the circular fibres near the margin of the pupil. These fibres are regarded by some as elastic, not muscular, but Grunnert positively demonstrated them.[1] The fibres are very small and are placed between the stroma and the posterior layer of endothelium.

[1] Von Graefe's Arch. f. Ophthal., Bd. xlvii.

4. **Pigment.**—The situation of the pigment-cells differs in different irides. In the various shades of blue eyes the only pigment-cells are several layers of small round or polyhedral cells filled with dark pigment, situated on the posterior surface

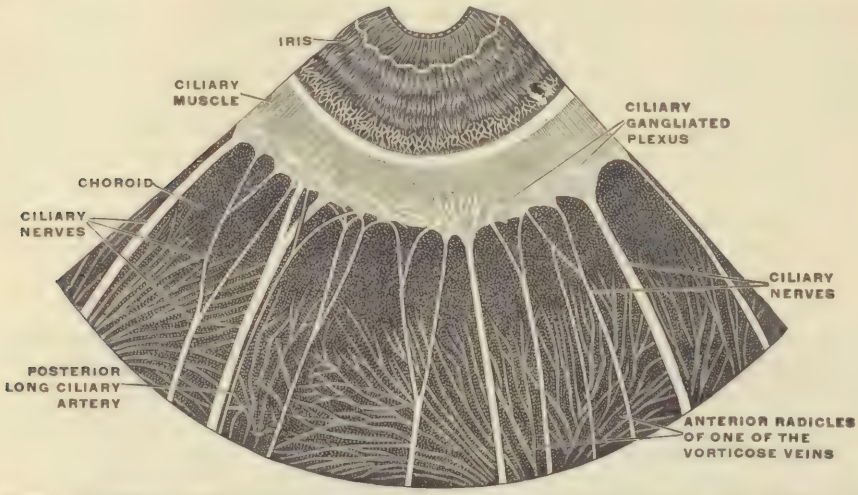


FIG. 729.—The ciliary gangliated plexus and the ciliary nerves entering the plexus. Outer surface of the middle or vascular coat of the eyeball. (Toldt.)

of the iris and continuous with the pigmentary lining of the ciliary processes. The color of the eye in these individuals is due to this coloring-matter showing more or less through the texture of the iris. In the albino even this pigment is absent.

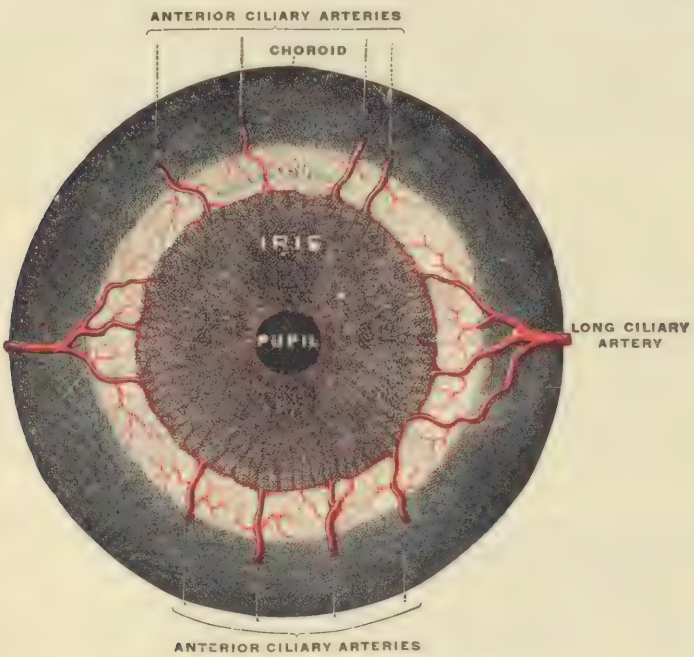


FIG. 730.—Iris, front view. (Testut.)

In the gray, brown, and black eye there are, as mentioned above, pigment-granules to be found in the cells of the stroma and in the endothelial layers on the front of the iris; to these the dark color of the eye is due.

The Arteries of the Iris (Figs. 723, 725, 727, and 730).—The arteries of the iris are derived from the *long posterior ciliary* and *anterior ciliary* and from the vessels of the ciliary processes (see p. 1115). The **long posterior ciliary arteries** (Figs. 721 and 723), two in number, pass through the sclera, one on the inner and one on the outer side of the optic nerve, and pass forward between the sclera and choroid, and, having reached the attached margin of the iris (Figs. 721 and 730), divide into an upper and a lower branch, and, encircling the iris, anastomose with corresponding branches from the opposite side; into this vascular zone (*circulus arteriosus major*) (Fig. 744) the **anterior ciliary arteries** (Fig. 744), from the **lachrymal** and **anterior ciliary** from the muscular branches of the **ophthalmic**, pour their blood. From this zone vessels converge to the free margin of the iris, and these communicate by branches from one to another and thus form a second zone (*circulus arteriosus minor*) in this situation. The *veins* pass toward the ciliary margin and communicate with the veins of the ciliary processes and of the canal of Schlemm (Figs. 721 and 723).

The Nerves of the Choroid and Iris (Figs. 719, 721, and 729).—The nerves of the choroid and iris are the **short ciliary**, the **ciliary branches of the lenticular ganglion**, and the **long ciliary** from the **nasal branch of the opthalmic division of the fifth.** They pierce the sclerotic around the entrance of the optic nerve, and run forward in the perichoroidal lymph-space in which they form a plexus, from which plexus filaments pass to supply the blood-vessels of the choroid. After reaching the iris they form a plexus around its attached margin; from this are derived non-medullated fibres which terminate in the circular and radiating muscular fibres. Their exact mode of termination has not been ascertained. Other fibres from the plexus terminate in a network on the anterior surface of the iris. The fibres derived from the motor root of the lenticular ganglion (third nerve) supply the circular fibres, while those derived from the sympathetic supply the radiating fibres.

Membrana Pupillaris.—In the fœtus the pupil is closed by a delicate transparent vascular membrane, the **membrana pupillaris**, which divides the space into which the iris is suspended into two distinct chambers. This membrane contains numerous minute vessels, continued from the margin of the iris to those on the front part of the capsule of the lens. These vessels have a looped arrangement, and converge toward each other without anastomosing. Between the seventh and eighth months the membrane begins to disappear, by gradual absorption from the centre toward the circumference, and at birth only a few fragments remain. It is said sometimes to remain permanent and produce blindness.

III. The Tunica Interna or Retina (Figs. 723, 731, 733).

The retina is a delicate nervous membrane, in which the fibres of the optic nerve are spread out and upon the surface of which the images of external objects are received. Its outer surface is in contact with the choroid; its inner with the vitreous body. Behind, it is continuous with the optic nerve; it gradually diminishes in thickness from behind forward; and, in front, extends nearly as far as the ciliary body, where it appears to terminate in a jagged margin, the **ora serrata** (Figs. 723, 742, and 744). Here the nervous tissues of the retina end, but a thin prolongation of the membrane extends forward over the back of the ciliary processes and iris, forming the **para ciliaris retinae** and **pars iridica retinae** already referred to (Figs. 727 and 744). This forward prolongation consists of the pigmentary layer of the retina, together with a stratum of columnar epithelium. The portion back of the ora serrata is called the **physiological retina** (*pars optica retinae*) (Fig. 744). The retina is soft, semitransparent, and of a purple tint in the fresh state, owing to the presence of a coloring-material named **rhodopsin** or **visual purple**; but it soon becomes clouded, opaque, and bleached when exposed to sunlight. Exactly in the centre of the front surface of the posterior part of the retina, corresponding to the visual axis, and at a point in which the sense of vision is most perfect, is an oval yellowish

spot, called, after its discoverer, the **yellow spot of Sömmerring** (*macula lutea*) (Figs. 714 and 733), having a central depression, the **fovea centralis.** The retina in the situation of the fovea centralis is exceedingly thin, and the dark color of the choroid is distinctly seen through it; so that it presents more the appearance of a foramen, and hence the name **foramen of Sömmerring** at first given to it. It exists only in man, the quadrumana, and some saurian reptiles. About one-eighth of an inch (3 mm.) to the nasal side of the yellow spot and one-twenty-fourth of an inch below it, is the point of entrance of the optic nerve, the **optic disk** (*porus opticus*) (Figs. 731 and 733). The circumference of the optic disk is slightly raised so as to form an eminence, the **optic papilla** (*colliculus nervi optici*); the central portion is depressed and is called the **optic cup** (*excavatio papillae nervi optici*). The arteria centralis retinae pierces its centre. This is the only part of the surface of the retina from which the power of vision is absent, and is termed the **blind spot.**

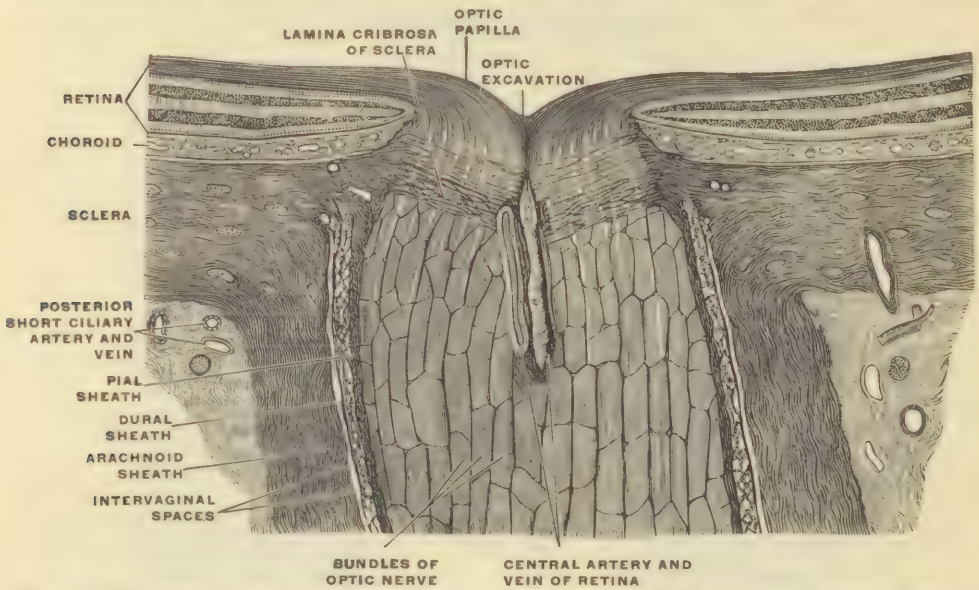


FIG. 731.—The terminal portion of the optic nerve and its entrance into the eyeball, in horizontal section. (Toldt.)

Structure.—The optical portion of the retina is an exceedingly complex structure, and, when examined microscopically by means of sections made perpendicularly to its surface, is found to consist of many layers of nervous structure. These nervous structures are bound together and supported by the **sustentacular fibres.** There are three layers: a **middle** or **neuro-epithelial layer,** an inner layer, and an **outer** or **pigmentary layer.** The neuro-epithelial layer is subdivided into four and the middle layer into six layers; hence the retina consists of eleven layers. The layers from within outward are as follows (Figs. 732, 734, 735, and 736):

1. Inner layer . . .	1. Membrana limitans interna.
	2. Layer of nerve-fibres (stratum opticum).
	3. Ganglionic layer, consisting of nerve-cells.
	4. Inner molecular, or plexiform, layer.
	5. Inner nuclear layer, or layer of inner granules.
	6. Outer molecular, or plexiform, layer.
2. Neuro-epithelial layer	7. Henle's fibre-layer.
	8. Outer nuclear layer, or layer of outer granules.
	9. Membrana limitans externa.
	10. Jacob's membrane (layer of rods and cones).
3. Outer layer	11. Pigmentary layer (tapetum nigrum).

1. The **Membrana Limitans Interna** (Figs. 732, 734, and 735), is the most internal layer of the retina, and is in contact with the hyaloid membrane of the vitreous

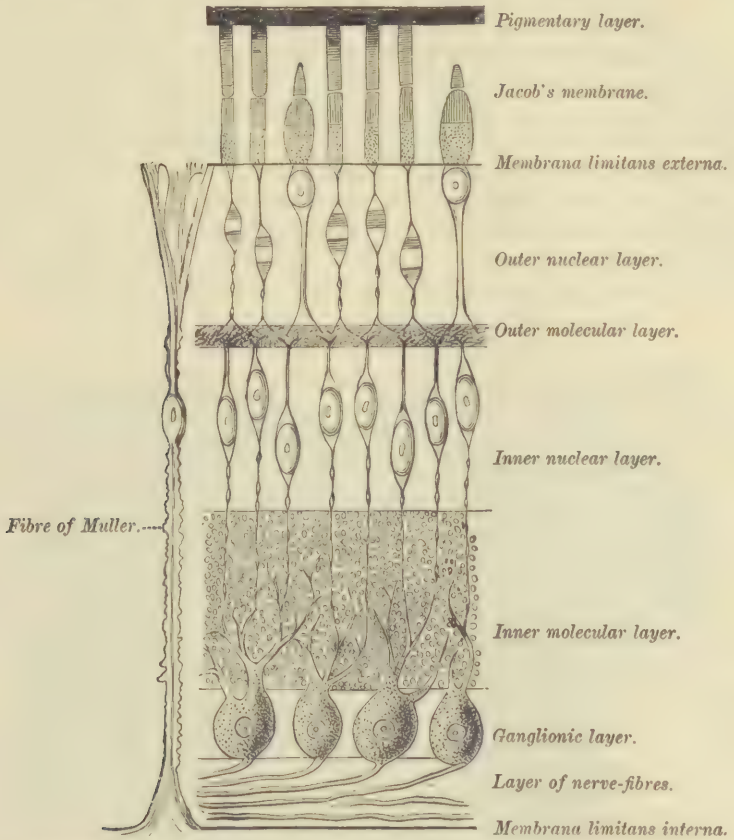


FIG. 732.—The layers of the retina with the exception of Henle's fibre-layer. (Diagrammatic.) (After Schultze.)

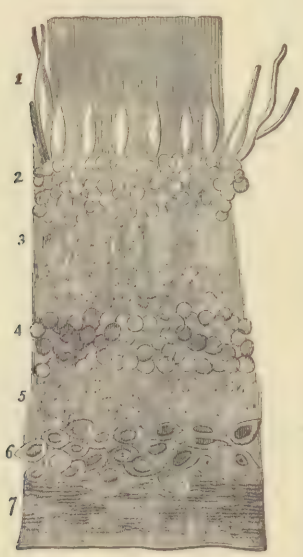
FIG. 733. The arteria centralis retinae, yellow spot, etc., the anterior half of the eyeball being removed. (Enlarged.)

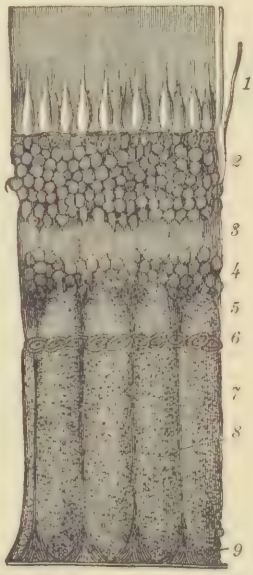
humor. It is derived from the *supporting framework* of the retina, with which tissue it will be described.

2. The **Layer of Nerve-fibres** (Figs. 732, 734, and 735) is formed by the expansion of the optic nerve. This nerve passes through all the other layers of the retina, except the membrana limitans interna, to reach its destination. As the nerve passes through the lamina cribrosa of the sclerotic coat, the fibres of which it is composed lose their medullary sheaths and are continued onward, through the choroid and retina, as simple axis-cylinders. When these non-medullated fibres reach the internal surface of the retina, they radiate from their point of entrance over the surface of the retina, become grouped in bundles, and in many places, according to Michel, arranged in plexuses. Most of the fibres in this layer are **centripetal,** and are the direct continuations of the

axis-cylinder processes of the cells of the next layer. A few of the fibres are **centrifugal**, which are axis-cylinders of ganglion-cells within the brain. The centrifugal fibres in the layer of nerve-fibres pass through it and the next succeeding layer to ramify in the inner molecular and inner nuclear layers, where they terminate in enlarged extremities. The layer is thickest at the optic nerve entrance, and gradually diminishes in thickness toward the ora serrata.

3. The **Ganglionic Layer** or the **Inner Ganglionic Layer** (Figs. 732, 734, and 735) consists of a single layer of large ganglion-cells; except in the macula lutea, where there are several strata. The cells are somewhat flask-shaped, the rounded internal margin of each cell resting on the preceding layer and sending off an axone which is prolonged as a nerve-fibre into the fibrous layer. From the opposite extremity numerous thicker processes (dendrites) extend into the inner molecular layer, where they branch out into flattened arborizations at different levels. The ganglion-cells vary much in size, and the dendrites of the smaller ones, as a rule,





FIGS. 734 and 735. — Vertical sections of the human retina. Fig. 734, half an inch from the entrance of the optic nerve. Fig. 735, close to the latter. 1. Layer of rods and cones, Jacob's membrane, bounded underneath by the membrana limitans externa. 2. Outer nuclear layer. 3. Outer molecular layer. 4. Inner nuclear layer. 5. Inner molecular layer. 6. Ganglionic layer. 7. Layer of nerve fibres. 8. Sustentacular fibres of Müller. 9. Their attachment to the membrana limitans interna.

arborize in the inner molecular layer as soon as they enter it; while the processes of the larger cells ramify close to the inner nuclear layer.

4. The **Inner Molecular**, the **Plexiform** or the **Inner Reticular Layer** (Fig. 732, 734, and 735) is made up of a dense reticulum of minute fibrils, formed by the interlacement of the dendrites of the ganglion-cells with those of the cells contained in the next layer, immediately to be described. Within the reticulum formed by these fibrils a few branched spongioblasts are sometimes embedded.

5. The **Inner Nuclear** or **Inner Granular Layer** (Figs. 732, 734, and 735) is made up of a number of closely packed cells, of which there are three different kinds. (1) A large number of oval cells, which are commonly regarded as **bipolar nerve-cells**, and are much more numerous than either of the other kind. They each consist of a large oval body placed vertically to the surface, and containing a distinct nucleus. The protoplasm is prolonged into two processes; one of these passes inward into the inner molecular layer, is varicose in appearance, and ends in a terminal ramification, which is often in close proximity to the ganglion-cells (Fig. 736, 1, *c*). The outer process passes outward into the outer molecular layer, and there breaks up into a

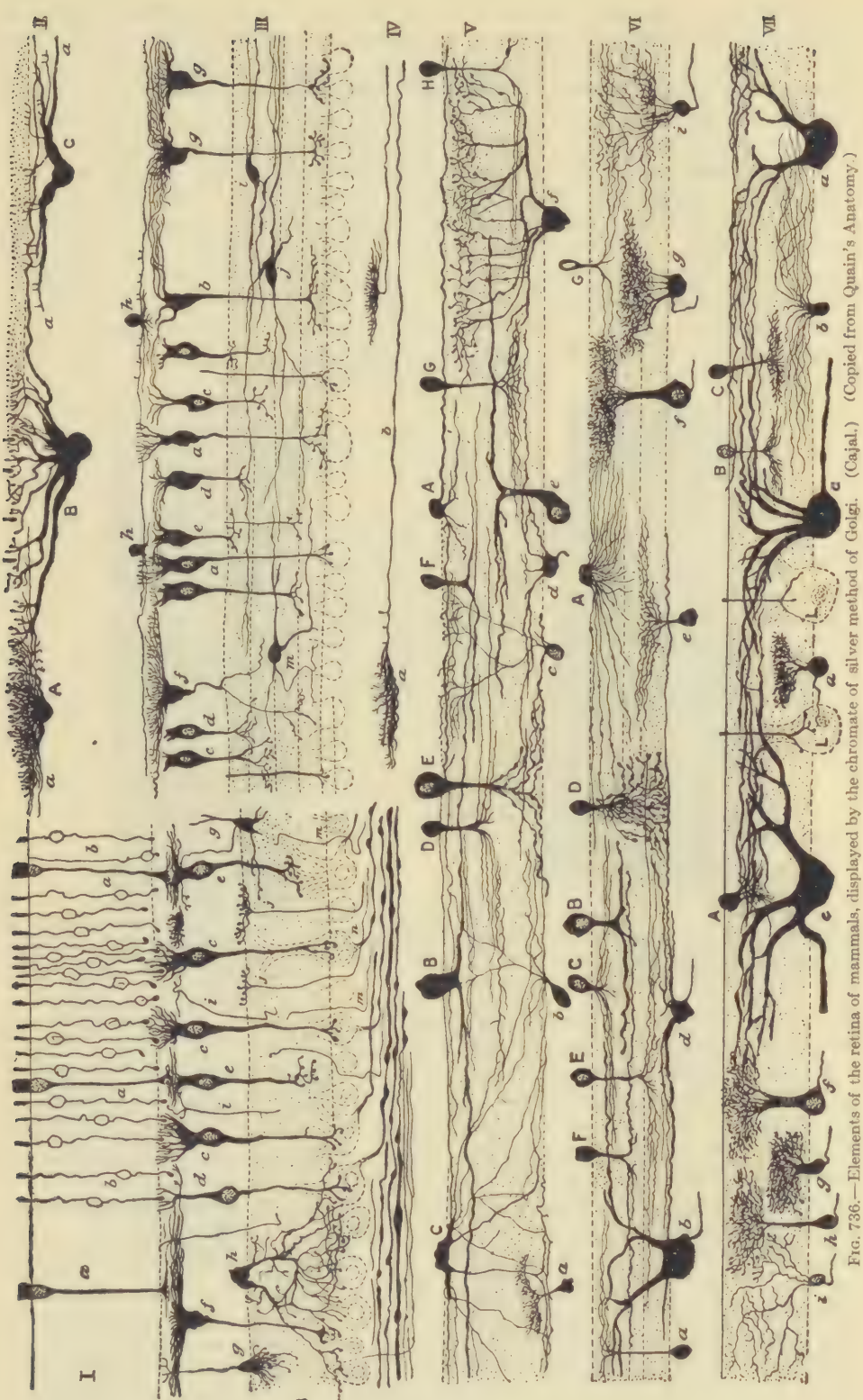


Fig. 736.—Elements of the retina of mammals, displayed by the chromate of silver method of Golgi. (Cajal.) (Copied from Quain's Anatomy.)

number of branches. According to Cajal, there are two varieties of these pipolar cells: one in which the outer process arborizes around the knobbed ends of the rod-fibres, and the inner around the cells of the ganglionic layer; these he calls **rod-bipolars** (Fig. 736, I); the others are those in which the outer process breaks up in a horizontal ramification, in contact with the end of a cone-fibre; these are the **cone-bipolars**, and their inner process breaks up into its terminal ramifications in the inner molecular layer (Fig. 736, I). (2) At the innermost part of this inner nuclear layer is a stratum of cells, which are named Cajal **amacrine cells**, from the fact that they have no axis-cylinder process, but they give a number of short protoplasmic processes which extend into the inner molecular layer and there ramify (Fig. 736, I). There are also at the outermost part of this layer some cells, the processes of which extend into and ramify in the outer molecular layer. These are the **horizontal cells of Cajal.** (3) Some few cells are also found in this layer, connected with the fibres of Müller and will be described with those structures.

6. The **Outer Molecular** or **Outer Reticular Layer** or the **Plexiform Layer** (Figs. 732, 734, and 735) is much thinner than the inner molecular layer; but, like it, consists of a dense network of minute fibrils, derived from the processes of the horizontal cells of the preceding layer and the outer processes of the bipolar cells, which ramify in it, forming arborizations around the ends of the rod-fibres and with the branched foot-plates of the cone-fibres.

7. **Henle's Fibre Layer** is a non-granular layer in the neighborhood of the macula lutea, and is produced by elongations from the inner segments of rod-fibres and cone-fibres.

8. The **Outer Nuclear** or **Outer Granular Layer** (Figs. 732, 734, and 735), like the inner nuclear layer, contains several strata of clear oval nuclear bodies; they are of two kinds, and on account of their being respectively connected with the rods and cones of Jacob's membrane (rod-fibres and cone-fibres) are named **rod-granules** and **cone-granules.**

The **rod-granules** are much the more numerous, and are placed at different levels throughout the layer. Their nuclei present a peculiar cross-striped appearance, and prolonged from either extremity of the granule is a fine process; the outer process is continuous with a single rod of Jacob's membrane; the inner passes inward toward the outer molecular layer and terminates in an enlarged extremity,

---

DESCRIPTION OF FIG. 736.

I. Section of the dog's retina. *a*. Cone-fibre. *b*. Rod-fibre and nucleus. *c, d*. Bipolar cells (inner granules) with vertical ramification of outer processes destined to receive the enlarged ends of rod-fibres. *e*. Bipolars with flattened ramification for ends of cone-fibres. *f*. Giant bipolar with flattened ramification. *g*. Cell sending a neurone or nerve-fibre process to the outer molecular layer. *h*. Amacrine cell with diffuse arborization in inner molecular layer. *i*. Nerve-fibrils passing to outer molecular layer. *j*. Centrifugal fibres passing from nerve-fibre layer to inner molecular layer. *m*. Nerve-fibril passing into inner molecular layer. *n*. Ganglionic cells.

II. Horizontal or basal cells of the outer molecular layer of the dog's retina. A. Small cell with dense arborization. B. Large cell, lying in inner nuclear layer, but with its processes branching in the outer molecular. *a*. Its horizontal neurone. C. Medium-sized cell of the same character.

III. Cells from the retina of the ox. *a*. Rod-bipolars with vertical arborizations. *b, c, d, e*. Cone-bipolars with horizontal ramification of outer process. *h*. Cell lying on the outer surface of the outer molecular layer, and ramifying within it. *i, j, m*. Amacrine cells within the substance of the inner molecular layer.

IV. Neurones or axis-cylinder processes belonging to horizontal cells of the outer molecular layer, one of them, *b*, ending in a close ramification at *a*.

V. Nervous elements connected with the inner molecular layer of the ox's retina. A. Amacrine cell, with long processes ramifying in the outermost stratum. B. Large amacrine with thick processes ramifying in second stratum. C. Flattened amacrine with long and fine processes ramifying mainly in the first and fifth strata. D. Amacrine with radiating tuft of fibrils destined for third stratum. E. Large amacrine, with processes ramifying in fifth stratum. F. Small amacrine, branching into second stratum. G, H. Other amacrines destined for fourth stratum. *a*. Small ganglion-cell sending its processes to fourth stratum. *b*. A small ganglion-cell with ramifications in three strata. *c*. A small cell ramifying ultimately in first stratum. *d*. A medium-sized ganglion-cell ramifying in fourth stratum. *e*. Giant-cell, branching in third stratum. *f*. A bistratified cell ramifying in second and fourth strata.

VI. Amacrines and ganglion-cells from the dog. A. Amacrine with radiating tuft. B. Large amacrine passing to third stratum. C and G. Small amacrines with radiations in second stratum. F. Small amacrine passing to third stratum. D. Amacrine with diffuse arborization. E. Amacrine belonging to fourth stratum. *a, d, e, g*. Small ganglion-cells ramifying in various strata. *b, f*. Large ganglion-cells showing two different characters of arborization. *i*. Bistratified cell.

VII. Amacrines and ganglion-cells from the dog. A, B, C. Small amacrines ramifying in middle of molecular layer. *b, d, g, h, i*. Small ganglion-cells showing various kinds of arborization. *f*. A larger cell, similar in character to *g*, but with longer branch. *a, c, e*. Giant-cells with thick branches ramifying in the first, second, and third layers. L, L. Ends of bipolars branching over ganglion-cells.

and is embedded in the tuft into which the outer process of the rod-bipolars break up. In its course it presents numerous varicosities.

The **cone-granules**, fewer in number than the rod-granules, are placed close to the membrana limitans externa, through which they are continuous with the cones of Jacob's membrane. They do not present any cross-striping, but contain a pyriform nucleus which almost completely fills the cell. From their inner extremity a thick process passes inward to the outer molecular layer, upon which it rests by a somewhat pyramidal enlargement, from which are given off numerous fine fibrils,

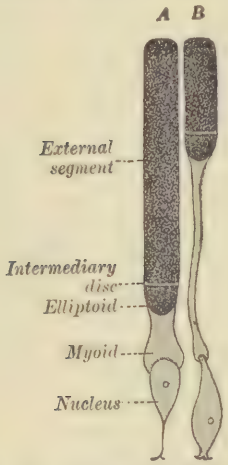


FIG. 737.—The cells of the rods of the retina in the frog. *A*, red rod; *B*, green rod. (Poirier and Charpy.)

which enter the outer molecular layer, where they come in contact with the outer processes of the cone-bipolars.

9. The **Membrana Limitans Externa** (Figs. 732, 734, and 735), like the membrana limitans interna, is derived from the fibres of Müller, with which structures it will be described.

10. **Jacob's Membrane** or the **Layer of Rods and Cones** (Figs. 732, 734, and 735) consists of **visual cells**, and the elements which compose it are of two kinds, **rod-cells** and **cone-cells**, the former being much more numerous than the latter.

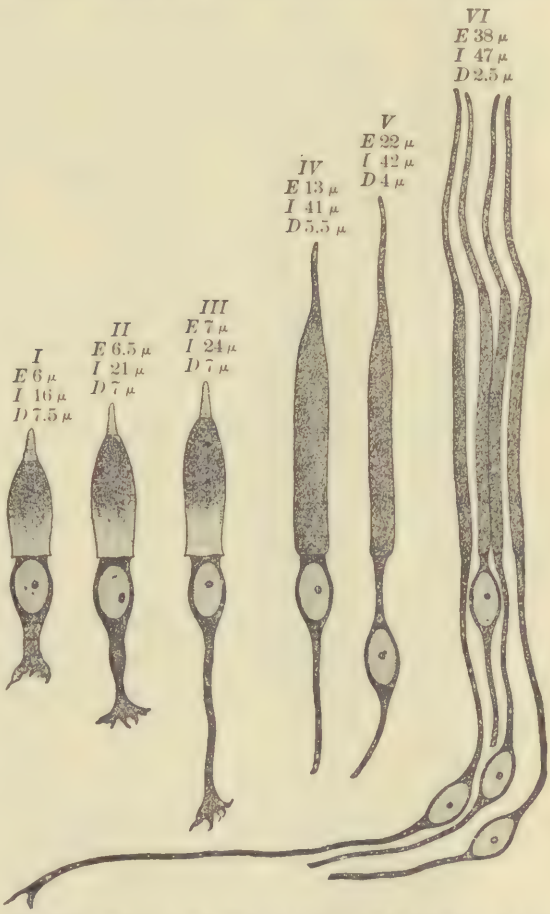


FIG. 738.—Cones in the different regions of the retina. *I*, near the ora serrata; *II*, at 3 mm. from the ora serrata; *III*, at an equal distance from the ora serrata and the papilla; *IV*, at the periphery of the fovea centralis; *V*, in the fovea centralis; *VI*, at the centre of the fovea centralis; *E*, length of the external segment; *I*, length of internal segment; *D*, diameter of the internal segment. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **rod-cells** (Fig. 737) are of nearly uniform size, and arranged perpendicularly to the surface. A rod-cell consists of a **rod** and a **rod-fibre**, and the fibre contains the nucleus. The rods are cylindrical and each consists of two portions, an **outer segment** and an **inner segment**, which are of about equal length. The segments differ from each other as regards refraction and in their behavior with coloring reagents, the inner portion becoming stained by carmine, iodine, etc., the outer portion remaining unstained with these reagents, but staining yellowish-brown with osmic acid. The outer portion of each rod is marked by transverse striae, and is made up of a number of thin disks superimposed on one another. It also

exhibits faint longitudinal markings. The inner portion of each rod, at its deeper part where it is joined to the outer process of the rod-granule, is indistinctly granular; its more superficial part presents a longitudinal striation, being composed of fine, bright, highly refracting fibres. In most vertebrates the outer portion of the inner segment contains a fibrous body, the **ellipsoid of Krause.** The visual purple, or *rhodopsin*, is found only in the outer segments of the rods. At its inner end each rod is prolonged into a very fine fibre, the **rod-fibre,** which contains a nucleus, and which terminates in the outer nuclear layer, being somewhat enlarged at its termination.

The **cone-cells** (Fig. 738) are conical or flask-shaped, their broad ends resting upon the membrana limitans externa, the narrow pointed extremity being turned to the choroid. Each cone-cell consists of two parts, the **cone** and the **cone-fibre.**

The **cones** are shorter than the rods and exhibit an outer and an inner segment.

The **outer segment** is a short conical process, which, like the outer segment of a rod, presents transverse striae. The inner segment resembles the inner portion of the rods in structure, presenting a superficial striated and deeper granular part; but differs from it in size, being bulged out laterally and presenting a flask shape.

The **inner segment** of the cone, as does the rod, contains an ellipsoid of Krause. Each cone is prolonged into a **cone-fibre,** and at the junction of the cone with the fibre is the nucleus of the cone-cell. The cone-fibre passes to the outer nuclear layer, and terminates as an expansion from which very minute fibrils are given off. The chemical and optical characters of the rod-cells and cone-cells are identical.

11. The **Pigmentary Layer or Tapetum Nigrum** (Fig. 732).—The most external layer of the retina, formerly regarded as a part of the choroid, consists of a single layer of hexagonal epithelial cells, loaded with pigment-granules. Each cell contains a flattened nucleus in the outer portion of the cell which is free from pigment at this point. These cells are smooth externally, where they are in contact with the choroid, but internally they are prolonged into fine, straight processes, which extend between the rods, this being especially the case when the eye is exposed to light. The pigment changes its position under the influence of light, and is distributed through the entire cell. In the eyes of albinos, the cells of the pigmentary layer are present, but they contain no coloring-matter. In the eyes of many mammals also, as in the horse, and many of the carnivora, there is no pigment in the cells of this layer, and the choroid possesses a beautiful iridescent lustre, which is termed the **tapetum lucidum.**

Supporting Framework of the Retina.—Almost all these layers of the retina are connected together by a supporting framework, formed by the **supporting cells** or **supporting fibres of Müller** or **radiating fibres,** from which the *membrana limitans interna et externa* are derived. These fibres are found stretched between the two limiting layers (Fig. 732), "like columns between a floor and a roof," and they pass through all the nervous layers except Jacob's membrane. Each commences on the inner surface of the retina by a conical hollow base, which sometimes contains a spheroidal body which stains deeply with hæmatoxylin, the edges of the bases of adjoining fibres being united and thus forming a boundary line, which is the membrana limitans interna. As they pass through the nerve-fibre and ganglionic layers they give off few lateral branches; in the inner nuclear layer they give off numerous lateral processes for the support of the inner granules, while in the outer nuclear layer they form a network, the **fibre-baskets,** around the rod and cone-fibrils, and unite to form the external limiting membrane at the bases of the rods and cones. In the inner nuclear layer each fibre of Müller presents a clear oval nucleus, which is sometimes situated at the side of, sometimes altogether within, the fibre. The supporting framework of the retina contains neuroglia cells.

The Path of Light Stimuli.—The stimulus is first received by the rod and cone-cells (the visual cells), and is transmitted to the bipolar cells of the inner nuclear layer and then to the cells of the ganglionic layer, which send fibres by way of the optic nerve to the brain.

Macula Lutea and Fovea Centralis.—The structure of the retina at the yellow spot presents some modifications. In the macula lutea (1) the nerve-fibres are wanting as a continuous layer; (2) the ganglionic layer consists of several strata of cells, instead of a single layer; (3) in Jacob's membrane there are no rods, but only cones, and these are longer and narrower than in other parts; and (4) in the outer nuclear layer there are only cone-fibres, which are very long and arranged in curved lines. At the fovea centralis the only parts which exist are the cones of Jacob's membrane, the outer nuclear layer, the cone-fibres of which are almost horizontal in direction, and an exceedingly thin inner granular layer, the pigmentary layer, which is thicker and its pigment more pronounced than elsewhere. The color of the macula seems to imbue all the layers except Jacob's membrane; it is of a rich yellow, deepest toward the centre, and does not appear to consist of pigment-cells, but simply a staining of the constituent parts.

At the **Ora Serrata** (Fig. 723) the nervous layers of the retina terminate abruptly, and the retina is continued onward as a single layer of elongated columnar cells covered by the pigmentary layer. This prolongation is known as the **pars ciliaris retinae** (Fig. 727), and can be traced forward from the ciliary processes on to the back of the iris, where it is termed the **pars iridica retinae** or **uvea.**

From the description given of the nervous elements of the retina it will be seen that there is no direct continuity between the structures which form its different layers except between the ganglionic and nerve-fibre layers, the majority of the nerve-fibres being formed of the axones of the ganglionic cells. In the inner molecular layer the dendrites of the ganglionic layer interlace with those of the cells of the inner nuclear layer, while in the outer molecular layer a like synapsis occurs between the processes of the inner granules and the rod and cone elements.

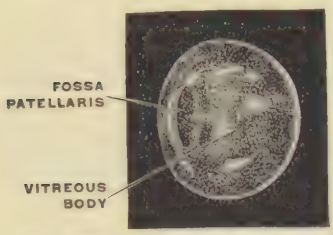


Fig. 739.—The vitreous body removed from the eye in the fresh state, with the saucer-shaped hollow in which the lens lies. Seen obliquely from the side and before. (Toldt.)

The **Arteria Centralis Retinae** (Figs. 723 and 731) and its accompanying vein, **vena centralis retinae,** pierce the optic nerve, and enter the globe of the eye through the porus opticus. It immediately bifurcates into an upper and a lower branch, and each of these again divides into an inner or nasal, and an outer or temporal, branch, which at first run between the hyaloid membrane and the nervous layer; but they soon enter the latter, and pass forward, dividing dichotomously. From these branches a minute capillary plexus is given off, which does not extend beyond the inner nuclear layer. The macula receives small twigs from the temporal branches and others directly from the central artery; these do not, however, reach as far as the fovea centralis, which has no blood-vessels. The branches of the arteria centralis retinae do not anastomose with each other—in other words, they are "terminal arteries." In the fœtus, a small vessel passes forward, through the **hyaloid canal** in the vitreous body, to the posterior surface of the capsule of the lens (Fig. 715).

THE REFRACTING MEDIA.

The Refracting media are three, viz.:

Aqueous humor. Vitreous body. Crystalline lens.

I. The Aqueous Humor (Humor Aqueus).

The aqueous humor completely fills the lymph space known as the **aqueous chamber,** the space which is bounded in front by the cornea and behind by the lens and its suspensory ligament and the ciliary body (Fig. 744). The aqueous chamber

is partly divided by the iris into two communicating parts, the **anterior** and **posterior chambers** (Figs. 714, 715, and 744.) The **posterior chamber** (*cumera oculi posterior*) is only a narrow chink between the peripheral part of the iris, the suspensory ligament of the lens, and the ciliary processes. The **anterior chamber** (*cumera oculi anterior* is bounded in front by the cornea and behind by the iris. The external angle of the anterior chamber is bounded by the periphery of the cornea and of the iris. It is called the **angle** or **sinus of the anterior chamber** or the **filtration angle** (*angulus iridis*). It is by way of the filtration angle that any excess of aqueous humor passes by way of the spaces of Fontana and the canal of Schlemm (Fig. 727) to the anterior ciliary veins and relieves tension. The aqueous humor is small in quantity (scarcely exceeding, according to Petit, four or five grains in weight), has an alkaline reaction, in composition is little more than water, less than one-fiftieth of its weight being solid matter, chiefly chloride of sodium.

In the adult, these two chambers communicate through the pupil; but in the fœtus of the seventh month, when the pupil is closed by the membrana pupillaris, the two chambers are quite separate.

II. The Vitreous Body (Corpus Vitreum) (Figs. 712, 715, 739).

The vitreous body forms about four-fifths of the entire globe. It is composed of a jelly-like tissue containing 98 per cent. water, some salts, and a little albumin, and called the **vitreous humor** (*humor vitreus*), connective-tissue fibres, and connective-tissue cells. It fills the concavity of the retina, and is hollowed in front, forming a deep concavity, the **fossa patellaris** (*fossa hyaloidea*) (Fig. 739), for the reception of the lens. It is perfectly transparent, of the consistence of thin jelly, and is composed of an albuminous fluid enclosed in a delicate transparent membrane, the **hyaloid membrane** (*membrana hyaloidea*), the outside of which is in contact with the membrana limitans interna of the retina. It has been supposed by Hannover, that from its inner surface numerous thin **lamellae** (*stroma vitreum*) are prolonged inward in a radiating manner, forming spaces in which the fluid is contained. In the adult, these lamellae cannot be detected even after careful microscopic examination in the fresh state, but in preparations hardened in weak chromic acid it is possible to make out a distinct lamellation at the periphery of the body; and in the fœtus a peculiar fibrous texture pervades the mass, the fibres joining at the numerous points, and presenting minute nuclear granules at their point of junction. In the centre of the vitreous humor, running from the entrance of the optic nerve to the posterior surface of the lens, is a canal, filled with fluid and lined by a prolongation of the hyaloid membrane. This is the **canal of Stilling**, the **hyaloid canal**, or the **canal of Cloquet** (*canalis hyaloideus*) (Fig. 715), which in the embryonic vitreous humor conveyed the minute vessel from the central artery of the retina to the back of the lens.

The hyaloid membrane encloses the whole of the vitreous humor. In front of the ora serrata it is thickened by the accession of radial fibres and is termed the **zonule of Zinn** (*zonula ciliaris*) (Figs. 742 and 744). It presents a series of radially arranged furrows, in which the ciliary processes are accommodated and to which they are adherent, as evidenced by the fact that when removed some of their pigment remains attached to the zonule. The zonule of Zinn splits into two layers, one of which is thin and lines the fossa patellaris; the other is named the **suspensory ligament of the lens**; it is thicker, and passes over the ciliary body to be attached to the capsule of the lens a short distance in front of its equator. Scattered and delicate fibres are also attached to the region of the equator itself. This ligament retains the lens in position, and is relaxed by the contraction of the radial fibres of the Ciliary muscle, so that the lens is allowed to become more convex. Behind

the suspensory ligament there is a sacculated canal, the **canal of Petit** (*spatia zonularia*); which encircles the margin of the lens and which can be easily inflated through a fine blow-pipe inserted through the suspensory ligament. It is bounded in front by the anterior layer of the suspensory ligament of the lens, behind by the hyaloidea membrana, and internally by the capsule of the lens. The canal of Petit is a lymph-space. All the spaces of the canal of Petit communicate with the posterior chamber of the eye.

In the fœtus, the centre of the vitreous humor presents the hyaloid canal or canal of Stilling, already referred to, which transmits a minute artery, *the hyaloid artery*, to the capsule of the lens. *In the adult*, no vessels penetrate its substance, although a lymph channel remains; so that its nutrition must be carried on by the vessels of the retina and ciliary processes, situated upon its exterior.

III. The Crystalline Lens (Lens Crystallina) (Figs. 716, 723, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744).

The **crystalline lens**, enclosed in its *capsule*, is situated immediately behind the pupil, in front of the vitreous body, and is encircled by the ciliary processes, which slightly overlap its margin.

The **capsule of the lens** (*capsula lentis*) (Fig. 744) is a transparent, highly elastic, and brittle membrane, which closely surrounds the lens, and is composed in part of

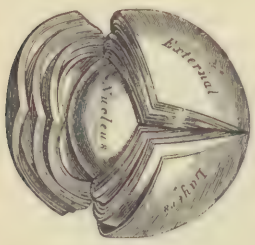


Fig. 740.—The crystalline lens, hardened and divided. (Enlarged.)

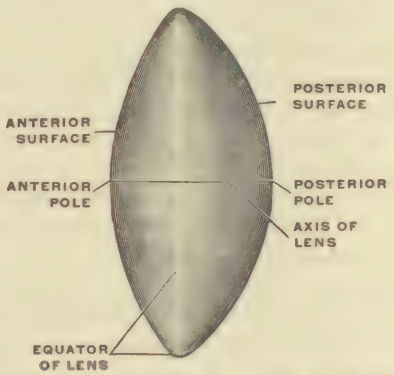


Fig. 741.—The terms used in the orientation of the lens. (Toldt.)

cuticular and in part of connective tissue. It is not white fibrous tissue, and is not true elastic tissue (Szymonowicz). Its outer surface is composed of lamella and possesses transverse striations. It rests, *behind*, in the fossa patellaris in the forepart of the vitreous body (Fig. 739); in *front*, it is in contact with the free border of the iris, this latter receding from it at the circumference, thus forming the **posterior chamber of the eye** (Fig. 744); and it is retained in its position chiefly by the suspensory ligament of the lens, already described (Fig. 744). The capsule is much thicker in front than behind, and when ruptured the edges roll up with the outer surface innermost, like the elastic lamina of the cornea.

The **substance of the lens** (*substantia lentis*) is an epithelial structure and takes origin from the ectoderm. It consists early in development of transparent cylindrical cells, which at a later period become higher at the posterior surface of the lens. Eventually very long cells form; they are known as **lens-fibres** (*fibræ lentis*), and are joined by a cement substance. The adult lens consists of lens-fibres, the anterior surface being covered by one layer of cubical epithelial cells, known as **lens epithelium** (*epithelium lentis*). This layer extends to the margin of the lens, at which point the cells gain in height and form lens-fibres. The lens-fibres at the margin are nucleated, the others are not. The lens-fibres run as meridians from the anterior surface backward. There is no epithelium on the posterior surface.

In the fœtus, a small branch from the arteria centralis retinae runs forward, as already mentioned, through the vitreous humor to the posterior part of the capsule of the lens, where its branches radiate and form a plexiform network, which covers its surface, and they are continuous around the margin of the capsule with the vessels of the pupillary membrane and with those of the iris. In the adult no vessels enter its substance.

Structure.—The lens is a transparent, biconvex body, the convexity being greater on the posterior than on the anterior surface (Fig. 741). The central points of its

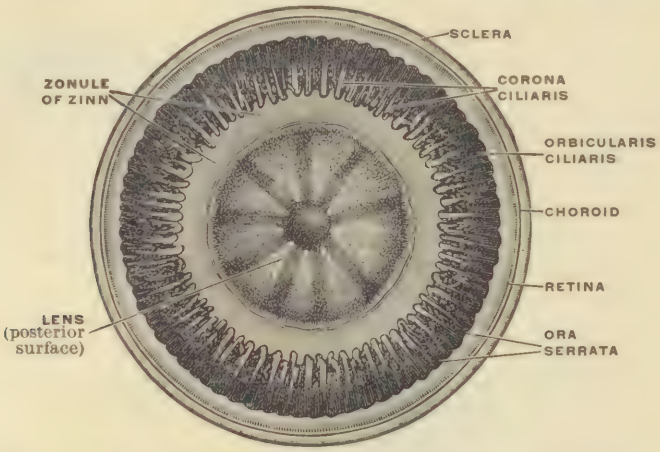


FIG. 742.—The zonule of Zinn or the suspensory ligament of the lens viewed from behind in connection with the lens and the ciliary body. (Toldt.)

anterior and posterior surfaces are known as its **anterior** and **posterior poles** (*polus anterior lentis et polus posterior lentis*) (Fig. 741). It measures from 9 to 10 mm. in the transverse diameter, and about 4 mm. in the antero-posterior. It consists of concentric layers (Fig. 740) of which the external in the fresh state are soft and easily detached (*substantia corticalis*) (Fig. 744); those beneath are firmer, the central ones forming a hardened nucleus (*nucleus lentis*) (Fig. 740). These laminae are best demonstrated by boiling or immersion in alcohol, and consist of minute parallel fibres, which are hexagonal prisms, the edges being dentated, and the

FIG. 743.—Diagram to show the direction and arrangement of the radiating lines on the front and back of the fœtal lens. A, from the front; B, from the back.

dentations fitting accurately into each other; their breadth is about $\frac{1}{5000}$ of an inch. Faint lines radiate from the anterior and posterior poles to the circumference of the lens. In the adult there may be six or more of these, but in the fœtus they are only three in number and diverge from each other at angles of 120° (Fig. 743). On the anterior surface one line ascends vertically and the other two diverge downward and outward. On the posterior surface one ray descends vertically and the other two diverge upward. They correspond with the free edges of an equal number of septa in the lens, along which the ends of the lens-fibres come into

apposition and are joined together by transparent amorphous substance. The fibres run in a curved manner from the septa on the anterior surface to those on the posterior surface. No fibres pass from pole to pole, but they are arranged in such a way that fibres which commence near the pole on the one aspect of the lens terminate near the peripheral extremity of the plane on the other, and *vice versa*. Each fibre of the outer layers of the lens contains a nucleus, and these nuclei form a layer, the **nuclear layer** on the surface of the lens. The nuclear layer is most distinct toward the circumference of the lens.

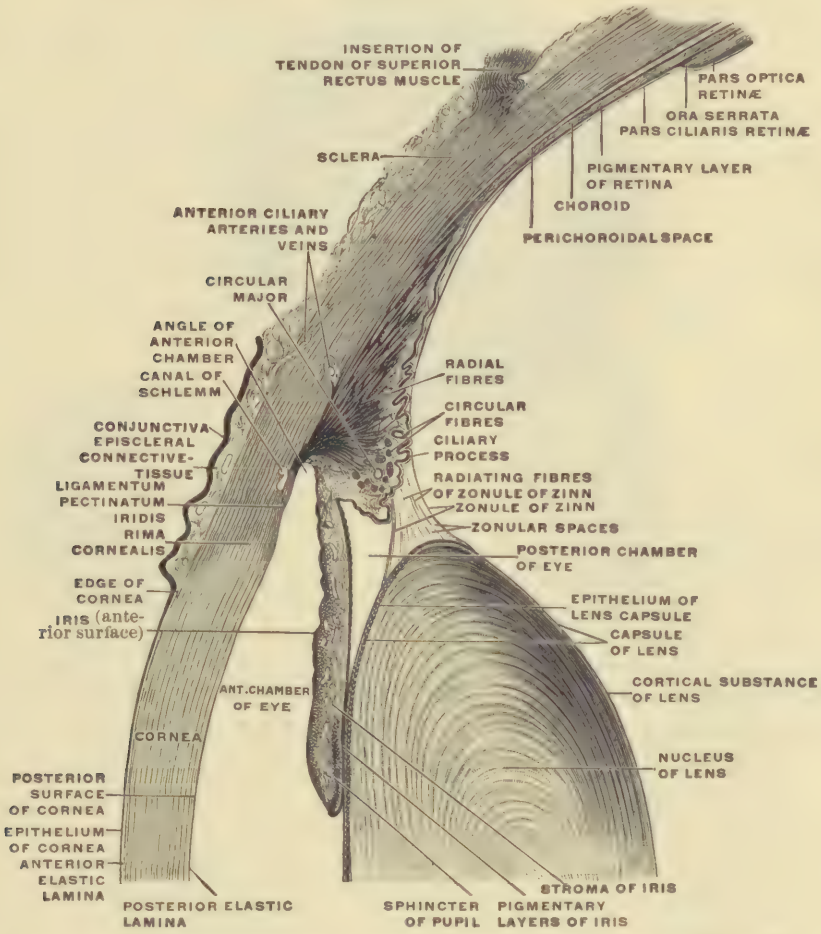


FIG. 744.—The upper half of a sagittal section through the front of the eyeball. (Toldt.)

The *changes produced in the lens by age* are the following:

In the **fœtus** its form is nearly spherical, its color of a slightly reddish tint, it is not perfectly transparent, and is so soft as to break down readily on the slightest pressure.

In the **adult** the posterior surface is more convex than the anterior; it is colorless, transparent, and firm in texture.

In **old age** it becomes flattened on both surfaces, slightly opaque, of an amber tint, and increases in density.

Arteries of the Globe of the Eye.—The arteries of the globe of the eye are the short posterior ciliary, long posterior ciliary, and anterior ciliary arteries, and the arteria centralis retinae.

The **short posterior ciliary arteries** (*aa. ciliares posteriores breves*) (Figs. 721, 723, and 725) are from eight to sixteen in number. They arise from the ophthalmic branch of the internal carotid, pass through the sclerotic coat near the optic nerve, and are distributed to the choroid.

There are two **long posterior ciliary arteries** (*aa. ciliares posteriores longae*) (Figs. 721, 723, and 730), one on each side of the optic nerve. They are branches of the ophthalmic. They pass through the sclerotic external to the short ciliary arteries, and extend forward in the choroid. In the ciliary body they form an anastomosis with the anterior ciliary arteries. The anastomosis is known as the **circulum iridis major** (Figs. 723 and 744). Branches from this circle pass to the iris, and at the periphery of the sphincter of the iris form the **circulum iridis minor.** The muscular branches and the lachrymal branch of the ophthalmic give off the **anterior ciliary arteries** (*aa. ciliares anteriores*), six or eight in number. They pass along tendons of the muscles of the eyeball, reach the sclera, and pass upon the sclera to the corneal margin (Fig. 730). Branches are given off which pass backward to supply the anterior half of the sclera, and which are known as **episcleral arteries** (*aa. episclerales*) (Fig. 723). Two branches are given off which pass forward to the conjunctiva bulbi, which are known as the **anterior conjunctival arteries** (*aa. conjunctivales anteriores*), which anastomose with the posterior conjunctival branches from the palpebral arteries, and which give branches to the delicate vascular network of the corneal margin which is in the annulus conjunctivae (Spalteholz). Eight or even more branches form the anterior ciliary arteries. They pass through the sclerotic near the sclero-corneal junction, and participate in the formation of the circulum iridis major.

The Veins of the Globe of the Eye (Figs. 721, 722, and 723).—The veins are seen on the outer surface of the choroid. They have a whorl-like formation and empty into four or five large veins, the **venae vorticosae.** These four, five, or six equidistant venae vorticosae pierce the sclerotic midway between the margin of the cornea and the entrance of the optic nerve, and empty into the ophthalmic vein. Another set of veins accompany the anterior ciliary arteries, and are known as the **anterior ciliary veins** (*vv. ciliares anteriores*). They are derivatives of the venous sinus of the sclera in the canal of Schlemm. They form a circular plexus. They receive vessels, the ciliary muscle, and pass through the sclera close to the corneal margin. **Posterior ciliary veins** (*vv. ciliares posteriores*) receive vessels which gather venous blood from the outer surface of the sclera near the optic nerve. The posterior ciliary veins join anteriorly with the venae vorticosae. After emerging from the sclera they receive anterior conjunctival branches, and by means of episcleral veins communicate with the venae vorticosae.

The Lymphatic Passages of the Eyeball.—The conjunctiva contains lymph-vessels. The eyeball contains lymph-spaces, but no lymph-vessels

There are two sets of lymph-spaces in the eyeball, the anterior and posterior.

The **anterior lymph-spaces** are the spaces of the cornea, of the iris, of the anterior chamber, and of the posterior chamber.

The lymph from the intralamellar lymph-spaces of the cornea enters the conjunctival lymphatics at the margin of the cornea.

The lymph-spaces of the iris open into the anterior chamber by the crypts of the iris and at the margin of the iris join the spaces of Fontana.

The aqueous humor fills the anterior and posterior chambers, but is furnished by the vessels in the posterior chamber; in part by the vessels of the ciliary body, and in part by the vessels of the posterior surface of the iris. The lymph thus secreted passes by way of the pupil into the anterior chamber, and then is taken up by the spaces of Fontana, the canal of Schlemm, and the anterior ciliary veins.[1]

[1] Deaver's Anatomy.

The **posterior lymph-spaces** are the hyaloid canal, the perichoroidal lymph-space, the space of Ténon, the intervaginal space of the optic nerve, and the supravaginal space (Deaver).

The **hyaloid canal** (Figs. 712 and 715) passes between the posterior surface of the lens and the optic disk. In the embryo the canal holds an artery, the hyaloid artery. During development the artery disappears, but a lymph channel remains. The hyaloid canal opens into the intervaginal space of the optic nerve. Between the sclerotic and the choroid is the **perichoroidal lymph-space** (Fig. 744). It is around the choroid vessels and the venae vorticosae, and empties into Ténon's space by means of openings through the sclera about the venae vorticosae.

Ténon's space (Figs. 712 and 713) is between the sclera and the capsule of Ténon. It receives lymph from the perichoroidal space, and empties into the supravaginal space.

The optic nerve (Fig. 731) has a sheath of dura and a sheath of pia, and between these sheaths is the **intervaginal lymph-space**. It is divided by a prolongation of the cerebral arachnoid into a **subdural space** and a **subarachnoid space**, which empty into the corresponding spaces of the membranes of the brain.

The **supravaginal space** is between the dural portion of the sheath of the optic nerve and a posterior prolongation of Ténon's capsule.[1]

The Nerves of the Globe of the Eye.—The **long ciliary nerves** (*nn. ciliaris longi*), two in number, are derived from the nasal branch of the ophthalmic and the **short ciliary nerves** (*nn. ciliares breves*), twelve to fifteen in number, are derived from the ciliary or ophthalmic ganglion. Both the long and short ciliary nerves perforate the sclera in the neighborhood of the optic nerve (Fig. 721). They pass along the perichoroidal lymph-space, forming a plexus, and send filaments to the choroid vessels. In front of the Ciliary muscle they form a second plexus, and from it come branches which go to the Ciliary muscle and the muscular fibres and vessels of the iris, sclera, choroid, ciliary body, and iris (Fig. 729). The ciliary nerves supply the cornea. The circular fibres of the iris are innervated by the third nerve and the radiating fibres by the sympathetic.

Surgical Anatomy.—From a surgical point of view the cornea may be regarded as consisting of three layers: (1) of an external epithelial layer, developed from the epiblast, and continuous with the external epithelial covering of the rest of the body, and therefore in its lesions resembling those of the epidermis; (2) of the cornea proper, derived from the mesoblast, and associated in its diseases with the fibro-vascular structures of the body; and (3) the posterior elastic layer with its endothelium, also derived from the mesoblast and having the characters of a serous membrane, so that inflammation of it resembles inflammation of the other serous and synovial membranes of the body.

The *cornea* contains no blood-vessels, except at its periphery, where numerous delicate loops, derived from the anterior ciliary arteries, may be demonstrated on the anterior surface of the cornea. The rest of the cornea is nourished by lymph, which gains access to the proper substance of the cornea and the posterior layer through the spaces of Fontana. This lack of a direct blood-supply renders the cornea very apt to inflame in the cachectic and ill-nourished. In spite of the absence of blood-vessels, wounds of the cornea usually heal rapidly. A wound which penetrates the cornea opens the anterior chamber, and aqueous humor escapes. An *ulcer* may also open the anterior chamber. Through a wound or a perforated ulcer the pupillary margin of the iris may prolapse. A trivial injury of the cornea is repaired by transparent tissue. A severe injury is repaired by fibrous tissue, and *opacity* results. A slight opacity resembling a cloud of gray smoke is called *nebula;* a more marked white opacity is called *leucoma.*

In *abscess of the cornea* pus gravitates between the layers to the lower part of the cornea and the purulent collection assumes a crescentic shape (*onyx*).

The *arcus senilis*, seen in the aged, is a condition of haziness or opacity at the corneal margin due to fatty degeneration of the tissue of the cornea. It signifies interference with the blood-supply, because of senile degeneration of adjacent vessels. In cases of *granular lids* there is a peculiar affection of the cornea, called *pannus*, in which the anterior layers of the cornea become vascularized, and a rich network of blood-vessels may be seen on the cornea; and in *interstitial keratitis* new vessels extend into the cornea, giving it a pinkish hue, to which the term *salmon patch* is applied. The cornea is richly supplied with nerves, derived from the ciliary nerves, which

[1] For the lymphatic channels of the eyeball see Deaver's Surgical Anatomy, vol. ii. p. 392.

enter the cornea through the forepart of the sclerotic and form plexuses in the stroma, terminating between the epithelial cells by free ends or in corpuscles. In cases of *glaucoma* the ciliary nerves may be pressed upon as they course between the choroid and sclerotic (Fig. 719), and in consequence of the pressure upon them, the cornea, to which they are distributed, becomes anæsthetic. When a scar forms on the cornea and the iris becomes adherent, the scar and the iris, and sometimes even the lens, may bulge forward from intraocular tension. This condition is *staphyloma of the cornea*. In conditions of impaired nutrition the cornea may be bulged forward by intraocular pressure. The line of least resistance is a little below the centre of the cornea, and it is bulged forward and strongly curved. This condition is known as *conical cornea*. The sclerotic has very few blood-vessels and nerves. The blood-vessels are derived from the anterior ciliary, and form an open plexus in its substance. As they approach the corneal margin this arrangement is peculiar. Some branches pass through the sclerotic to the ciliary body; others become superficial and lie in the episcleral tissue, and form arches, by anastomosing with each other, some little distance behind the corneal margin. From these arches numerous straight vessels are given off, which run forward to the cornea, forming its marginal plexus. In *inflammation of the sclerotic* and *episcleral tissue* these vessels become conspicuous, and form a pinkish zone of straight vessels radiating from the corneal margin, commonly known as the *zone of ciliary injection*. In *inflammation of the iris and ciliary body* this zone is present, since the sclerotic speedily becomes involved when these structures are inflamed. But in *inflammation of the cornea* the sclerotic is seldom much affected, though the cornea and sclerotic are structurally continuous. This would appear to be due to the fact that the nutrition of the cornea is derived from a different source from that of the sclerotic. The *sclerotic* may be *ruptured subcutaneously* without any laceration of the conjunctiva, and the rupture usually occurs near the corneal margin, where the tunic is thinnest. It may be complicated with lesions of adjacent parts—laceration of the choroid, retina, iris, or suspensory ligament of the lens—and is then often attended with hemorrhage into the anterior chamber, which masks the nature of the injury. In some cases the lens has escaped through the rent in the sclerotic, and has been found under the conjunctiva. *Wounds of the sclerotic*, if they do not perforate, usually heal readily. If they extend through the sclerotic they cause diminished tension, are always dangerous, and are often followed by inflammation, suppuration, and by sympathetic ophthalmia. The sclerotic may be weakened by injury, inflammation, etc., and the weakened portion may bulge from intraocular pressure, and even a healthy sclera may bulge from excessive intraocular pressure. According to its situation the lesion is known as *ciliary staphyloma, equatorial staphyloma,* or *posterior staphyloma.*

One of the functions of the *choroid* is to provide nutrition for the retina and to convey vessels and nerves to the ciliary body and iris. *Inflammation of the choroid* is therefore followed by grave disturbance in the nutrition of the retina, and is attended with early interference with vision. *Purulent choroiditis* is not confined to the choroid; the retina, the vitreous, and the entire uveal tract become involved, and even other structures may suffer. In its diseases it bears a considerable analogy to those which affect the skin, and, like it, is one of the places from which *melanotic sarcomata* may grow. These tumors contain a large amount of pigment in their cells, and grow only from those parts where pigment is naturally present. The *choroid* may be *ruptured* without injury to the other tunics, as well as participating in general injuries of the eyeball. In cases of uncomplicated rupture the injury is usually at its posterior part, and is the result of a blow on the front of the eye. It is attended by considerable hemorrhage, which for a time may obscure vision, but in most cases this is restored as soon as the blood is absorbed.

The *iris* is the seat of a malformation, termed *coloboma*, which consists in a deficiency or cleft, which in a great number of cases is clearly due to an arrest in development. In these cases it is found at the lower aspect, extending directly downward from the pupil, and the gap frequently extends through the choroid to the entrance of the optic nerve. In some rarer cases the gap is found in other parts of the iris, and is then not associated with any deficiency of the choroid. The *iris* is abundantly supplied with blood-vessels and nerves, and is therefore very prone to become *inflamed*. And when inflamed, in consequence of the fact that the iris and ciliary body are continuous, and that their vessels communicate, *iritis* is usually associated with *cyclitis*, the disease being called *irido-cyclitis*. And, in addition, inflammation of adjacent structures, the cornea and sclerotic, is apt to spread into the iris. The iris is covered with endothelium, and partakes of the character of a serous membrane, and, like these structures, is liable to pour out a plastic exudation when inflamed, and contract adhesions, either to the cornea in front (*synechia anterior*), or to the capsule of the lens behind (*synechia posterior*). In iritis the lens may become involved, and the condition known as *secondary cataract* may be set up. *Tumors* occasionally commence in the iris; of these, *cysts*, which are usually congenital and *sarcomatous tumors*, are the most common and require removal. *Gummata* are not unfrequently found in this situation. In some forms of injury of the eyeball, as the impact of a spent shot, the rebound of a twig, or a blow with a whip, the iris may be *detached* from the Ciliary muscle, the amount of detachment varying from the slightest degree to the separation of the whole iris from its ciliary connection.

The *Argyll-Robertson pupil* shows no reaction to light, but retains reaction to accommodation and vision remains good.

The *retina*, with the exception of its pigment-layer and its vessels, is perfectly transparent, and is invisible when examined by the ophthalmoscope, so that its diseased conditions are recognized by its loss of transparency. In *retinitis*, for instance, there is more or less dense and extensive opacity of its structure, and not unfrequently extravasations of blood into its substance. Hemorrhages may also take place into the retina from rupture of a blood-vessel without inflammation.

In *optic neuritis*, *papillitis*, or *choked disk*, the ophthalmoscope shows increase in vascularity, and swelling and opacity of the nerve, which extend beyond the disk margins. Optic atrophy is apt to follow. (Fig. 745 shows a normal optic disk.)

The *retina* may become *displaced* from effusion of serum between it and the choroid or by blows on the eyeball, or may occur without apparent cause in *progressive myopia*, and in this case the ophthalmoscope shows an opaque, tremulous cloud. *Glioma*, a form of sarcoma, and essentially a disease of early life, is occasionally met with in connection with the retina.

The *lens* has no blood-vessels, nerves, or connective tissue in its structure, and therefore is not subject to those morbid changes to which tissues containing these structures are liable. It does, however, present certain morbid or abnormal conditions of various kinds. Thus, variations in shape, absence of the whole or a part of the lens, and displacements are amongst its *congenital defects*. *Opacities* may occur from injury, senile changes, malnutrition, or errors in growth or development. An opacity of the capsule, of the lens, or of both, is known as a *cataract*. *Senile changes* may take place in the lens, impairing its elasticity and rendering it harder than in youth,

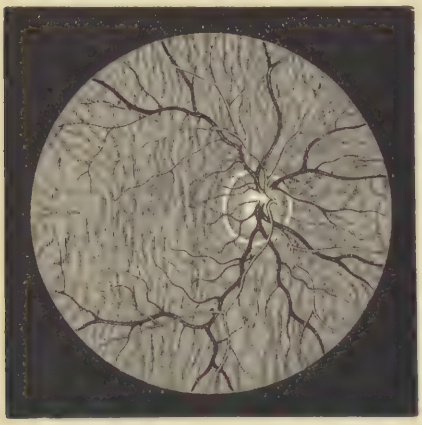


FIG. 745.—Ophthalmoscopic appearances of healthy fundus in a person of very fair complexion. Scleral ring well marked. Left eye, inverted image. (Wecker and Jaeger.)

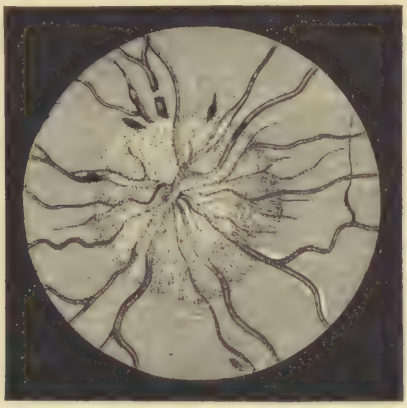


FIG. 746.—Ophthalmoscopic appearance of severe recent papillitis. Several elongated patches of blood near border of disk. (After Hughlings Jackson.)

so that its curvature can only be altered to a limited extent by the Ciliary muscle. And, finally, the lens may be *dislocated* or displaced by blows upon the eyeball, and its relations to surrounding structures altered by adhesions or the pressure of new growths.

There are two particular regions of the eye which require special notice: one of these is known as the "filtration area," and the other as the "dangerous area." The *filtration area* is the circumcorneal zone immediately in front of the iris. Here are situated the cavernous spaces of Fontana, which communicate with the canal of Schlemm, through which the chief transudation of fluid from the eye is now believed to take place. The *dangerous area of the eye* is the region in the neighborhood of the ciliary body, and wounds or injuries in this situation are peculiarly dangerous; for inflammation of the ciliary body is liable to spread to many of the other structures of the eye, especially to the iris and choroid, which are intimately connected by nervous and vascular supplies. Moreover, wounds which involve the ciliary region are especially liable to be followed by sympathetic ophthalmia, in which destructive inflammation of one eye is excited by some irritation in the other.

Emmetropia is normal vision. In normal vision the practically parallel light rays from distant objects focus on the retina without effort; divergent rays from near objects are focused on the retina by an effort of accommodation.

Hyperopia or *hypermetropia* is far-sightedness. In this condition the retina is in front of the principal focus when the eye is at rest. The patient endeavors to correct the failure by constant and tiresome efforts at accommodation. The condition is usually due to inordinate shortness of the axis of the eye, but may be due to loss of the lens, decreased convexity of the refractive surfaces, or lessened refractive power in the refractive media of the eye. It is corrected by the use of convex glasses.

Myopia is near-sightedness. In this condition the rays of light come to a focus in front of the retina, and the patient is subjected to continued eye-strain. It is usually due to too great length of the axis of the eye, but may result from increase in refractive power of refractive media. It is corrected by concave glasses. Sometimes, as a person with hyperopia begins to age, an increased refractive power of the lens causes myopia. The occurrence of myopia in a hyperopic eye is called *second sight*, and it enables the individual to cease wearing convex glasses.

Exenteration of the contents of the orbit means removal of all the contents except those at the orbital apex. Even the periosteum is taken away. It is performed for malignant disease.

Evisceration of the eyeball is performed by making a circular incision at the corneal margin and removing the internal and middle coats and the contents of the globe. The sclera is not removed. A glass ball is inserted into the scleral sheath, and the sclera is closed over the ball by vertical stitches, and the conjunctiva is closed over it by transverse stitches. The operation is performed for leucoma or staphyloma of the cornea. An artificial eye (a shell) is placed over the stump when healing is complete.

Enucleation, or *excision of the eyeball*, differs from exenteration of the *orbital contents* in the fact that only the eyeball is removed. A circular incision through the ocular conjunctiva is carried around and near to the corneal margin. The conjunctiva and capsule of Ténon are pushed back and the Rectus muscles are clamped and divided back of the clamp. Traction is made upon the globe in a forward and inward direction, and the optic nerve and adjacent structures are cut with scissors from the outer aspect of the globe. The eye is then pulled out of the orbit, and all structures which tend to retain it are divided. The stumps of the Recti muscles are sewed together.

THE APPENDAGES OF THE EYE (TUTAMINA OCULI).

The appendages of the eye include the **eyebrows**, the **eyelids**, the **conjunctiva**, and the **lachrymal apparatus**—viz., the **lachrymal gland**, the **lachrymal sac**, and the **nasal duct**.

The Eyebrow (Supercilium).

The eyebrows are two arched eminences of integument which surmount the upper circumference of the orbit on each side, and support numerous short, thick hairs, directed obliquely on the surface. The hairs may entangle foreign bodies and lessen somewhat the force of blows. In structure the eyebrows consist of thickened integument, connected beneath with the Orbicularis palpebrarum, Corrugator supercilii, and Occipito-frontalis muscles. These muscles serve, by their action on this part, to control to a certain extent the amount of light admitted into the eye.

The Eyelid (Palpebra) (Figs. 747, 748).

The eyelids are two thin, movable folds placed in front of the eye, and by closure protecting the eye from injury. The eyelids are composed of skin, superficial fascia, and alveolar tissue, fibres of the Orbicularis palpebrarum muscle, palpebral and orbito-tarsal ligaments, tarsal cartilages, and conjunctiva. The upper lid also contains the Levator labii superioris muscle. In the lids are blood-vessels, lymph-vessels, nerves, and Meibomian glands. There are two lids, the **upper** (*palpebra superior*) and the **lower** (*palpebra inferior*). The upper lid is the larger and the more movable of the two, and is furnished with a separate elevator muscle, the **Levator palpebrae superioris**. Each lid consists of two portions. The part near the orbital margin, "whose groundwork is formed merely by the **thin palpebral fascia** (*septum orbitale*),"[1] is called the **orbital portion** (*pars orbitalis*). The part in which the tarsus lies is called the **tarsal portion** (*pars tarsalis*). Between the two portions in each lid is a sulcus, called, in the upper lid, the **superior orbito-palpebral sulcus** (*sulcus orbitopalpebralis superior*), and, in the lower lid, the **inferior orbito-palpebral sulcus** (*sulcus orbitopalpebralis inferior*). When the eyelids are

[1] An Atlas of Human Anatomy. By Carl Toldt, assisted by A. D. Rosa. Translated by M. Eden Paul.

opened an elliptical space, the **interpalpebral slit** (*fissura palpebrarum*), is left between their margins, the angles of which correspond to the junction of the upper and lower lids, and are called **canthi**.

The Canthi.—The **outer canthus** (*angulus oculi lateralis*) is more acute than the inner, and the lids here lie in close contact with the globe; but the **inner canthus** (*angulus oculi medialis*) is prolonged for a short distance inward toward the nose. The two lids are separated at the inner canthus by a triangular space, the **lacus lacrimalis**. At the commencement of the lacus lacrimalis, on the margin of each eyelid, is a small conical elevation, the **lachrymal papilla**, the apex of which is pierced by a small orifice, the **punctum lacrimale** (Fig. 751), the commencement of the lachrymal canal (Fig. 750). When the lids are closed a space remains between them and the globe to permit of the flow of tears inward (*rivus lacrimalis*).

The Eyelashes (*cilia*) (Fig. 748).—The eyelashes are attached to the free edges of the eyelids; they are short, thick, curved hairs, arranged in a double or triple row at the margin of the lids; those of the upper lid, more numerous and longer than the lower, curve upward; those of the lower lid curve downward. Because of this arrangement the two sets do not interlace in closing the lids. Near the attachment of the eyelashes are the openings of **sebaceous glands** (*glandulae sebaceae*) (Fig. 748) and of a number of glands, **glands of Moll** (*glandulae ciliares* [*Molli*]) (Fig. 748), arranged in several rows close to the free margin of the lid. They are regarded as enlarged and modified sweat-glands. On the inner surface are the **Meibomian glands** (*glandulae tarsales* [*Meibomi*]) (Fig. 750). Internal to the openings of the lachrymal canaliculi there are neither lashes nor Meibomian glands.

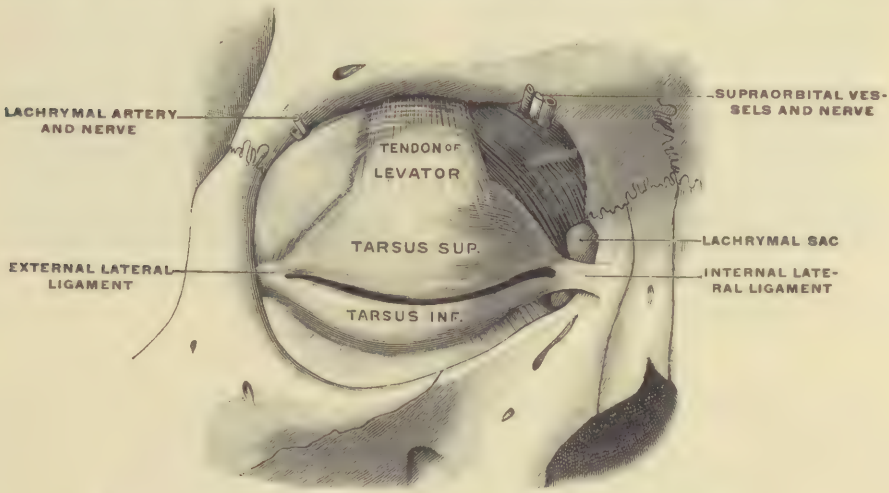


FIG. 747.—The tarsi and their ligaments. Right eye, front view. (Testut.)

Structure of the Eyelids (Fig. 748).—The eyelids are composed of the following structures, taken in their order from without inward:

Integument, areolar tissue, fibres of the Orbicularis muscle, tarsal plate, and its ligament, Meibomian glands, and conjunctiva. The upper lid has, in addition, the aponeurosis of the Levator palpebræ.

The **integument** is extremely thin, and continuous at the margin of the lids with the conjunctiva.

The **subcutaneous areolar tissue** is very lax and delicate, seldom contains any fat, and is extremely liable to serous infiltration.

The **fibres of the Orbicularis muscle**, where they cover the palpebrae (*m. ciliaris* [*Riolani*]), are thin, pale in color, and possess an involuntary action.

The **tarsal plates** are two thin elongated plates of dense connective tissue about an inch in length. They are placed one in each lid, contributing to their form and support.

The **superior tarsal plate, superior tarsus** or **superior tarsal body** (*tarsus superior*) (Fig. 747), the larger, is of a semilunar form, about one-third of an inch in breadth at the centre, and becoming gradually narrowed at each extremity. To the anterior surface of this plate the aponeurosis of the Levator palpebrae is attached.

The **inferior tarsal plate, inferior tarsus** or **inferior tarsal body** (*tarsus inferior*) (Fig. 747), the smaller of the two, is thinner and of an elliptical form.

The **free** or **ciliary margin** of these plates is thick, and presents a perfectly straight edge. The **attached** or **orbital margin** is connected to the circumference of the orbit by the fibrous membrane of the lids, with which it is continuous. The outer angle of each plate is attached to the malar bone by the **external tarsal** or **external lateral ligament**, or the **external palpebral ligament** or **raphé** (*ligamentum palpebralis lateralis*)(Fig. 747). The inner angles of the two plates terminate at the commencement of the lacus lacrimalis; they are attached to the nasal process of the superior maxilla by the **internal tarsal** or **internal lateral** or **internal palpebral ligament** or the **tendo oculi** (*ligamentum palpebrale mediale*) (Fig. 747).

The fibrous membrane of the lids constitutes the **orbito-tarsal ligaments** or the **palpebral fasciae.** In reality these so-called ligaments are fascial expansions situated one in each lid, and are attached marginally to the edge of the orbit, where they are continuous with the periosteum. The superior ligament blends with the tendon of the Levator palpebrae, the inferior with the inferior tarsal plate. Externally the superior and inferior ligaments fuse to form the **external tarsal ligament** or **raphé** just referred to; internally they are much thinner, and, becoming separated from the internal tarsal ligament, are fixed to the lachrymal bone immediately behind the lachrymal sac. Together the ligaments form an incomplete septum, the **orbital septum** (*septum orbitale*), which is perforated by the vessels and nerves which pass from the orbital cavity to the face and scalp.

FIG. 748.—Vertical section through the upper eyelid. *a*, Skin. *b*, Orbicularis palpebrarum. *b'*, Marginal fasciculus of orbicularis (ciliary bundle). *c*, Levator palpebrae. *d*, Conjunctiva. *e*, Tarsal plate. *f*, Meibomian gland. *g*, Sebaceous gland. *h*, Eyelashes. *i*, Small hairs of skin. *j*, Sweat-glands. *k*, Posterior tarsal glands. (After Waldeyer.)

The Meibomian or Tarsal Glands (*glandulae tarsales* [*Meibomi*]) (Figs. 748 and 750).—The Meibomian or tarsal glands are situated upon the inner surface of the eyelids between the tarsal plates and conjunctiva, and may be distinctly seen through the mucous membrane on everting the eyelids, presenting the appearance of parallel strings of pearls. They are about thirty in number in the upper eyelid, and somewhat fewer in the lower. They are embedded in grooves in the inner

surface of the tarsal plates, and correspond in length with the breadth of each plate; they are, consequently, longer in the upper than in the lower eyelid. Their ducts open on the free margin of the lids by minute foramina, which correspond in number to the follicles. The use of their secretion is to prevent adhesions of the lids.

Structure of the Meibomian Glands.—These glands are a variety of the cutaneous sebaceous glands, each consisting of a single straight tube or follicle, having a cæcal termination, and with numerous small secondary follicles opening into it. The tubes consist of basement-membrane, lined at the mouths of the tubes by stratified epithelium; the deeper parts of the tubes and the secondary follicles are lined by a layer of polyhedral cells. They are thus identical in structure with the sebaceous glands.

The Conjunctiva (Figs. 714, 715, 727, 749).

The conjunctiva is the mucous membrane of the eye. It lines the inner surface of the eyelids, is reflected over the forepart of the sclerotic and cornea, and joins the lids to the eyeball. In each of these situations its structure presents some peculiarities.

The Palpebral Portion (*tunica conjunctiva palpebrarum*) (Fig. 750).—The palpebral portion of the conjunctiva lines the posterior surface of the lids. It is thick, opaque, highly vascular, and covered with numerous papillae, its deeper parts presenting a considerable amount of lymphoid tissue. At the margin of the lids it becomes continuous with the lining membrane of the ducts of the Meibomian glands, and, through the lachrymal canals, with the lining membrane of the lachrymal sac and nasal duct. At the outer angle of the upper lid the lachrymal ducts open on its free surface; and at the inner angle of the eye it forms a semilunar fold, the **plica semilunaris** (*plica semilunaris conjunctivæ*) (Fig. 751). The folds formed by the reflection of the conjunctiva from the lids on to the eye are called the **superior** and **inferior palpebral folds**, the former being the deeper of the two. These folds form the **superior** and **inferior conjunctival fornix** (Fig. 749).

The Bulbar Portion (*tunica conjunctiva bulbi*).—Upon the *sclerotic* the conjunctiva is loosely connected to the globe; it becomes thinner, loses its papillary structure, is transparent, and only slightly vascular in health. Upon the *cornea* the conjunctiva consists only of epithelium, constituting the anterior layer of the cornea (conjunctival epithelium) already described (p. 1109). Lymphatics arise in the conjunctiva in a delicate zone around the cornea, from which the vessels run to the ocular conjunctiva.

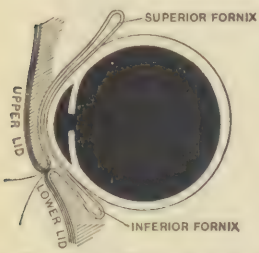


Fig. 749. Sagittal section of eye, showing superior and inferior fornices of the conjunctiva. (Testut.)

Fornix of Conjunctiva.—At the point of reflection of each fold of the conjunctiva from the lid on to the globe of the eye a pocket or arch is formed. These arches are termed the **fornix conjunctivae** (Fig. 749).

Glands of Conjunctiva.—In the conjunctiva there are a number of mucous glands which are much convoluted. They are chiefly found in the upper lid. Other glands, analogous to lymphoid follicles, and called by Henle **trachoma glands**, are found in the conjunctiva, and, according to Stromeyer, are chiefly situated near the inner canthus of the eye. They were first described by Brush, in his description of Peyer's patches of the small intestines, as "identical structures existing in the under eyelid of the ox."

The Nerves of the Conjunctiva.—The nerves in the conjunctiva are numerous and form rich plexuses. According to Krause, they terminate in a peculiar form of tactile corpuscle, which he terms the **terminal bulb.**

The Caruncula Lacrimalis.—The caruncula lacrimalis is a small, reddish, conical-shaped body, situated at the inner canthus of the eye, and filling up the small

triangular space in this situation, the **lacus lacrimalis**. It consists of an island of skin containing sebaceous and sweat-glands, and is the source of the whitish secretion which constantly collects at the inner angle of the eye. A few slender hairs are attached to its surface. On the outer side of the caruncula is a slight semilunar fold of conjunctiva, the concavity of which is directed toward the cornea; it is called the **plica semilunaris** (Fig. 751). Müller found smooth muscular fibres in this fold, and in some of the domesticated animals a thin plate of cartilage has been discovered. This structure is considered to be the rudiment of the third eyelid in birds, the **membrana nictitans.**

The Lachrymal Apparatus (Apparatus Lacrimalis) (Figs. 750, 751).

The lachrymal apparatus consists of the lachrymal gland, which secretes the tears, and its excretory ducts, which convey the fluid to the surface of the eye. This fluid is carried away by the lachrymal canals into the lachrymal sac, and along the nasal duct into the cavity of the nose.

The Lachrymal Glands (*glandula lacrimalis*).—The lachrymal gland is lodged in a depression at the outer angle of the orbit, on the inner side of the external

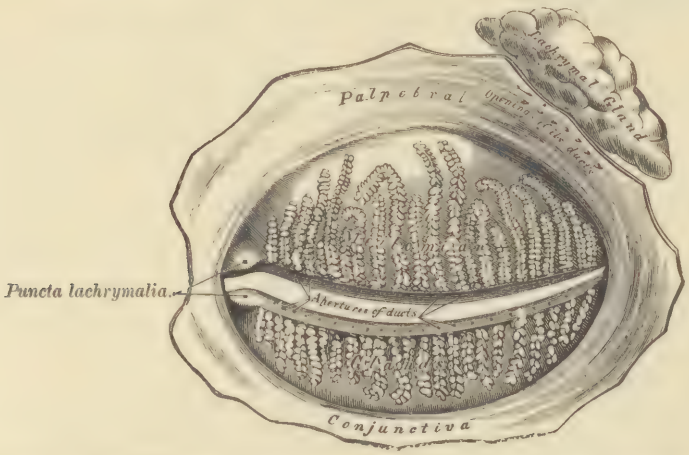


FIG. 750.—The Meibomian glands, etc., seen from the inner surface of the eyelids.

angular process of the frontal bone. It is of an oval form, about the size and shape of an almond. Its upper convex surface is in contact with the periosteum of the orbit, to which it is connected by a few fibrous bands. Its under concave surface rests upon the convexity of the eyeball and upon the Superior and External recti muscles. Its vessels and nerves enter its posterior border, whilst its anterior margin is closely adherent to the back part of the upper eyelid, where it is covered to a slight extent by the reflection of the conjunctiva. The forepart of the gland is separated from the rest by a fibrous septum; hence it is sometimes described as a separate lobe, called the **inferior lachrymal gland, palpebral portion of the gland,** or the **accessory gland of Rosenmuller** (*glandula lacrimalis inferior*), the back part of the gland then being called the **superior lachrymal gland** (*glandula lacrimalis superior*). The ducts of the lachrymal gland, from six to twelve in number, run obliquely beneath the mucous membrane for a short distance, and, separating from each other, open by a series of minute orifices on the upper and outer half of the conjunctiva near its reflection on to the globe. These orifices are arranged in a row, so as to disperse the secretion over the surface of the membrane.

Structure of the Lachrymal Gland.—In structure and general appearance the lachrymal resembles the serous salivary glands. In the recent state the cells are so

crowded with granules that their limits can hardly be defined. Each cell contains an oval nucleus, and the cell-protoplasm is finely fibrillated.

The **Lachrymal Canaliculi** or **Canals** (Fig. 751) commence at the minute orifices, **puncta lacrimalia,** on the summit of a small conical elevation, the **lachrymal papilla** or **caruncle** (*caruncula lacrimalis*), seen on the margin of the lids at the outer extremity of the lacus lacrimalis. The **superior canal** (*ductus lacrimalis superior*), the smaller and shorter of the two, at first ascends, and then bends at an acute angle, and passes inward and downward to the ampulla. The **inferior canal** (*ductus lacrimalis inferior*) at first descends, and then, abruptly changing its course, passes almost horizontally inward to the ampulla. These canals are dense and elastic in structure and somewhat dilated at their angle. The mucous membrane is covered with scaly epithelium. The two canals join in a dilatation, the **ampulla** (*ampulla ductus lacrimalis*), which empties into the lachrymal sac.

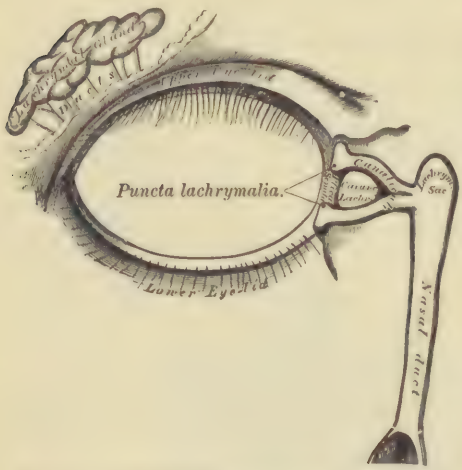


Fig. 751.—The lachrymal apparatus. Right side.

The Lachrymal Sac (*saccus lacrimalis*) (Fig. 751).—The lachrymal sac is the upper dilated extremity of the **nasal duct,** and is lodged in a deep groove formed by the lachrymal bone and the nasal process of the superior maxillary bone. It is oval in form, its upper extremity being closed in and rounded, whilst below it is continued into the nasal duct. It is covered by a fibrous expansion derived from the tendo oculi, and on its deep surface it is crossed by the Tensor tarsi muscle (Horner's muscle, p. 371), which is attached to the ridge on the lachrymal bone.

Structure.—It consists of a fibrous elastic coat, lined internally by mucous membrane, the latter being continuous, through the ampulla and lachrymal canals, with the mucous lining of the conjunctiva, and, through the nasal duct, with the pituitary membrane of the nose.

The Nasal Duct (*ductus nasolacrimalis*) (Fig. 751).—The nasal duct is a membranous canal, about three-quarters of an inch in length, which extends from the lower part of the lachrymal sac to the inferior meatus of the nose, where it terminates by a somewhat expanded orifice, provided with an imperfect valve, the **valve of Hasner** (*plica lacrimalis* [*Hasneri*]), formed by the mucous membrane. It is contained in an osseous canal formed by the superior maxillary, the lachrymal, and the inferior turbinated bones, is narrower in the middle than at each extremity, and takes a direction downward, backward, and a little outward. It is lined by mucous membrane, which is continuous below with the pituitary lining of the nose. The membrane in the lachrymal sac and nasal duct is covered with columnar epithelium, as in the nose. This epithelium is in places ciliated.

Surface Form.—The *palpebral fissure,* or opening between the eyelids, is elliptical in shape, and differs in size in different individuals and in different races of mankind. In the Mongolian races, for instance, the opening is very small, merely a narrow fissure, and this makes the eyeball appear small in these races, whereas the size of the eye is relatively very constant. The normal direction of the fissure is slightly oblique, in a direction upward and outward, so that the outer angle is on a slightly higher level than the inner. This is especially noticeable in the Mongolian races, in whom, owing to the upward projection of the malar bone and the shortness of the external angular process of the frontal bone, the tarsal plate of the upper lid is raised at its outer part and gives an oblique direction to the palpebral fissure.

When the eyes are directed forward, as in ordinary vision, the upper part of the cornea is covered by the upper lid, and the lower margin of the cornea corresponds to the level of the lower lid, so that about the lower three-fourths of the cornea is exposed under ordinary circumstances. On the margins of the lids, about a quarter of an inch from the inner canthus, are two small openings, the *puncta lacrimalia*, the commencement of the lachrymal canals. They are best seen by everting the eyelids. In the natural condition they are in contact with the conjunctiva of the eyeball, and are maintained in this position by the *Tensor tarsi muscle*, so that the tears running over the surface of the globe easily find their way into the lachrymal canals. The position of the *lachrymal sac* into which the canals open is indicated by a little tubercle, which is plainly to be felt on the lower margin of the orbit. The lachrymal sac lies immediately above and to the inner side of this tubercle, and a knife passed through the skin in this situation would open the cavity. The position of the lachrymal sac may also be indicated by the *tendo oculi* or *internal tarsal ligament*. If both lids be drawn outward, so as to tense the skin at the inner angle, a prominent cord will be seen beneath the tightened skin. This is the *tendo oculi*, which lies immediately over the lachrymal sac, bisecting it, and thus forming a useful guide to its situation. A knife entered immediately beneath the tense cord would open the lower part of the sac. A probe introduced through this opening can be readily passed downward through the duct into the inferior meatus of the nose. The direction of the duct is downward, outward, and backward, and this course should be borne in mind in passing the probe, otherwise the point may be driven through the thin bony walls of the canal. A convenient plan is to direct the probe in such a manner that if it were pushed onward it would strike the first molar tooth of the lower jaw on the same side of the body. In other words, the surgeon standing in front of his patient should carry in his mind the position of the first molar tooth, and should push his probe onward in such a way as if he desired to reach this structure.

Beneath the internal angular process of the frontal bone the pulley of the *Superior oblique muscle* of the eye can be plainly felt by pushing the finger backward between the upper and inner angle of the eye and the roof of the orbit; passing backward and outward from this pulley, the tendon can be felt for a short distance.

Surgical Anatomy.—The eyelids are composed of various tissues, and consequently are liable to a variety of diseases. The skin which covers them is exceedingly thin and delicate, and is supported on a quantity of loose and lax subcutaneous tissue which contains no fat. In consequence of this it is very freely movable, and is liable to be drawn down by the contraction of neighboring cicatrices. Such contractions may produce an eversion of the lid known as *ectropion*. Inversion of the lids (*entropion*) from spasm of the Orbicularis palpebrarum or from chronic inflammation of the palpebral conjunctiva may also occur. In some individuals there is an extra row of eyelashes on the inner margin of the lid, directed toward the cornea (*distichiasis*). *Trichiasis* is a condition in which the lashes are directed toward the eye, but there is not inversion of the lid. The eyelids are richly supplied with blood, and are often the seat of vascular growths, such as *nævi*. *Rodent ulcer* also frequently commences in this situation. The loose cellular tissue beneath the skin is liable to become extensively infiltrated either with blood or inflammatory products, producing very great swelling. Even from very slight injuries to this tissue the extravasation of blood may be so great as to produce considerable swelling of the lids and complete closure of the eye, and the same is the case when inflammatory products are poured out. The follicles are liable to become inflamed, constituting the disease known as *marginal blepharitis*, *blepharitis ciliaris*, or "*blear-eye*." Irregular or disorderly growth of the eyelashes not unfrequently occurs, some of them being turned toward the eyeball and producing inflammation and follicles of the eyelashes or the sebaceous glands associated with these follicles may be the seat of inflammation, constituting the ordinary *hordeolum* or "*sty*." The Meibomian glands are affected in the so-called "*tarsal tumor*;" the tumor, according to some, being caused by the retained secretion of these glands; by others it is believed to be a neoplasm connected with the gland. The Orbicularis palpebrarum may be the seat of *spasm* (*blepharospasm*), either in the form of slight quivering of the lids or repeated twitchings, most commonly due to errors of refraction in children, or more continuous spasm, due to some irritation of the fifth or seventh cranial nerves. The Orbicularis may be *paralyzed*, generally associated with paralysis of the other facial muscles. Under these circumstances the patient is unable to close the lids, and if he attempts to do so, rolls the eyeball upward under the upper lid. The tears overflow from displacement of the lower lid, and the conjunctiva and cornea, being constantly exposed and the patient being unable to wink, become irritated from dust and foreign bodies. As a result there may be ulceration of the cornea, and possibly eventually complete destruction of the eye. In *paralysis of the Levator palpebræ superioris* there is drooping of the upper eyelid (*ptosis*) and other symptoms of implication of the third nerve. The eyelids may be the seat of *bruises*, *wounds*, or *burns*. After wounds or burns adhesions of the margins of the lids to each other or adhesion of the lids to the globe may take place. The eyelids are sometimes the seat of *emphysema* after fracture of some of the thin bones forming the inner wall of the orbit. If shortly after such an injury the patient blows his nose, air is forced from the nostrils through the lacerated structure into the

connective tissue of the eyelids, which suddenly swell up and present the peculiar crackling on pressure which is characteristic of this affection.

Foreign bodies frequently get into the *conjunctival sac* and cause great pain, especially if they come in contact with the corneal surface, during the movements of the lid and the eye on each other. The conjunctiva is frequently involved in severe injuries of the eyeball, but is seldom ruptured alone; the most common form of injury to the conjunctiva alone is from a *burn*, either from fire, strong acids, or lime. In these cases union is liable to take place between the eyelid and the eyeball. The conjunctiva is often the seat of *inflammation* arising from many different causes, and the arrangement of the conjunctival vessels should be remembered as affording a means of diagnosis between this condition and injection of the sclerotic, which is present in inflammation of the deeper structures of the globe. The inflamed conjunctiva is bright red; the vessels are large and tortuous, and greatest at the circumference, shading off toward the corneal margin; they anastomose freely and form a dense network, and they can be emptied by gentle pressure.

The *lachrymal gland* is occasionally, though rarely, the seat of *inflammation* (*dacryoadenitis*), either acute or chronic; it is also sometimes the seat of *tumors*, benign or malignant, and for these may require removal. This may be done by an incision through the skin just below the eyebrow; and the gland, being invested with a special capsule of its own, may be isolated and removed without opening the general cavity of the orbit. The *canaliculi may be obstructed*, either as a congenital defect or by some foreign body, as an eyelash or a dacryolith, causing the tears to run over the cheek. The canaliculi may also become occluded as the result of *burns* or *injury;* overflow of tears may in addition result from *deviation of the puncta* or from chronic inflammation of the lachrymal sac. When there is failure of the lachrymal tubes to drain off the tears and the fluid gathers beneath and flows over the lids, the condition is known as *epiphora* or *stillicidium*. This latter condition is set up by some *obstruction to the nasal duct* frequently occurring in tuberculous subjects. In consequence of this the tears and mucus accumulate in the lachrymal sac, distending it. *Suppuration in the lachrymal sac* (*dacryocystitis*) is sometimes met with; this may be the sequel of a chronic inflammation; or may occur after some of the eruptive fevers in cases where the lachrymal passages were previously quite healthy. It may lead to *lachrymal fistula*.

THE EAR (ORGANON AUDITUS).

The organ of hearing is divisible into three parts—the **external ear**, the **middle ear** or **tympanum**, and the **internal ear** or **labyrinth**.

THE EXTERNAL EAR (AURIS EXTERNA).

The external ear consists of an expanded portion named **pinna** or **auricle**, and the **auditory canal** or **meatus**. The former serves to collect the vibrations of the air by which sound is produced; the latter conducts those vibrations to the tympanum.

The Pinna or Auricle (Auricula) (Fig. 752).

The pinna or auricle is attached to the side of the head midway between the forehead and occiput. "Its level is indicated by horizontal lines extending backward from the eyebrows above and from the tip of the nose below."[1] It is of an ovoid form, with its larger end directed upward. Its *outer surface* is irregularly concave, directed slightly forward. The angle which it bears to the head is called the **cephalo-auricular angle**. In some cases this angle is almost absent. In others it is nearly a right angle. The pinna of one side may vary in size, shape, and angle from the pinna of the other side. The pinna of a woman is apt to be smaller than that of a man, and is less often deformed. The outer surface of the pinna presents numerous eminences and depressions which result from the foldings of its fibro-cartilaginous element. To each of these, names have been assigned. Thus the external prominent rim of the auricle is called the **helix**. Another curved prominence, parallel with and in front of the helix, is called the **antihelix**; this bifurcates above and forms the *crura*, which encloses a triangular depression, the **fossa of the antihelix** (*fossae triangularis* [*auriculae*]). The narrow curved depression between

[1] Arthur Hensman in Henry Morris' Human Anatomy.

the helix and antihelix is called the **fossa of the helix** or the **scaphoid fossa** (*scapha*); the antihelix describes a curve around a deep, capacious cavity, the **concha auriculae,**

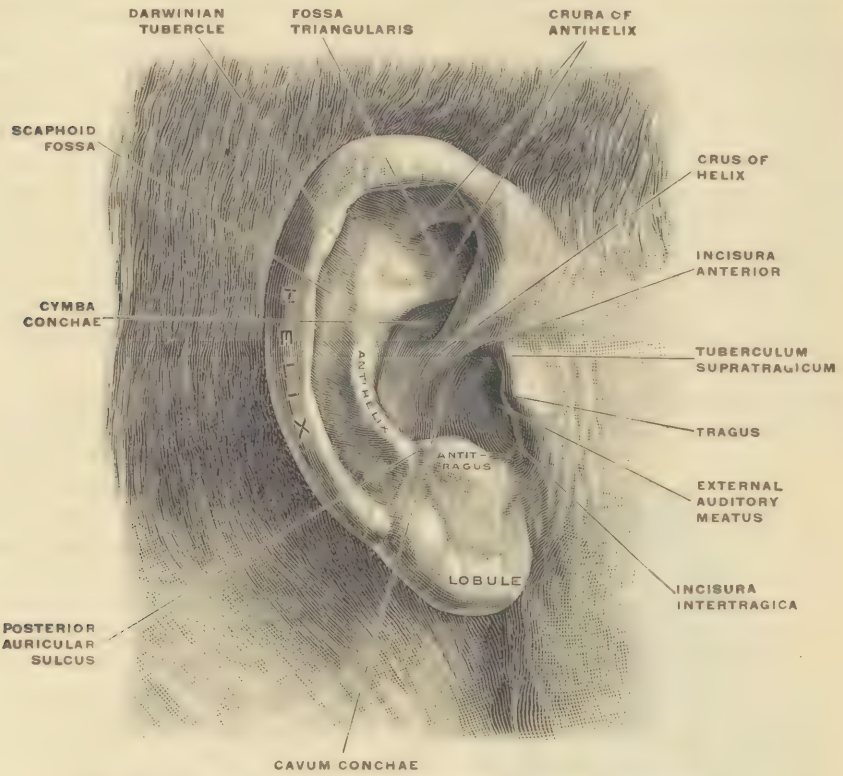


FIG. 752.—The right pinna or auricle, viewed from without. (Spalteholz.)

which is partially divided into two parts by the **crus of the helix**, or the commencement of the helix; the upper part is termed the **cymba conchae**, the lower part the **cavum conchae.** In front of the concha, and projecting backward over the meatus, is a small pointed eminence, the **tragus**, so called from its being generally covered on its under surface with a tuft of hair resembling a goat's beard. Opposite the tragus, and separated from it by a deep notch (*incisuria intertragica*) is a small tubercle, the **antitragus.** Below this is the **lobule** (*lobulus auriculae*), composed of tough areolar and adipose tissue, wanting the firmness and elasticity of the rest of the pinna. Sometimes the lobule does not hang freely, but is adherent. Where the helix turns downward a small tubercle, the **tubercle of Darwin** (*tuberculum auriculae* [*Darwini*]), is frequently seen. This tubercle is very evident about the sixth month of fœtal life; at this stage the human pinna has a close resemblance to that of some of the adult monkeys.

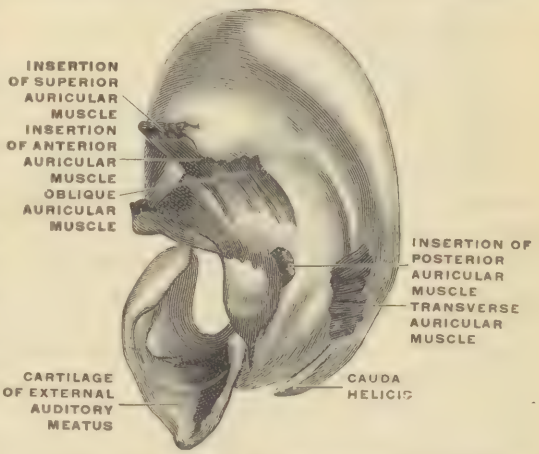


FIG. 753.—The cartilages of the right auricle, isolated, with the muscles, viewed from the inside. (Spalteholz.)

The *cranial surface* of the pinna presents elevations which correspond to the depressions on its outer surface and after which they are named, *e. g.*, **eminentia conchae, eminentia fossae triangularis,** etc.

The eminentia conchae and the fossae triangularis are separated by a furrow (*sulcus antihelicis transversus*), which corresponds to the inferior crus of the antihelix, or groove (*sulcus cruris helicis*), and upon the eminence there is a vertical ridge, the **pons**culus, which indicates the point of insertion of the Retrahens auriculam muscle.

Structure of the Pinna.—The pinna is composed of a thin plate of yellow fibro-cartilage, covered with integument, and connected to the surrounding parts by the extrinsic ligaments and muscles, and to the commencement of the external auditory canal by fibrous tissue.

The Integument.—The integument is thin, closely adherent to the cartilage, and covered with hairs furnished with sebaceous glands, which are most numerous in the concha and scaphoid fossa. The hairs are most numerous and largest on the tragus and antitragus.

The Cartilage of the Pinna (*cartilago auriculae*) (Fig. 754).—The cartilage of the pinna consists of one single piece; it gives form to this part of the ear, and upon its surface are found all the eminences and depressions above described. It does not enter into the construction of all parts of the auricle; thus it does not form a constituent part of the lobule; it is deficient also between the lamina of the tragus and beginning of the crus helix, the notch between (*incisura terminalis auris*)them being filled up by dense fibrous tissue. At the front part of the pinna,where the helix bends upward, is a small projection of cartilage, called the **spine of the helix** (*spina helicis*), while the lower part of the helix is prolonged downward as a tail-like process, the **cauda helicis**; this is separated from the antihelix by a fissure, the **fissura antitragohelicina.** The **fissures of Santorini** are usually two in number: one in the substance of the tragus, which partially separates the different parts, and one in the cartilage of the meatus. The fissure of the helix is a short vertical slit, situated at the forepart of the pinna. Another fissure, the **fissure of the tragus,** is seen upon the anterior surface of the tragus. Anteriorly and inferiorly the cartilage of the pinna is continuous with the cartilage of the external auditory meatus by a **cartilaginous isthmus** (*isthmus cartilaginis auris*). Some authors regard the tragus as part of the cartilage of the meatus. The cartilage of the pinna is very pliable, elastic, of a yellowish color and belongs to that form of cartilage which is known under the name of yellow fibro-cartilage.

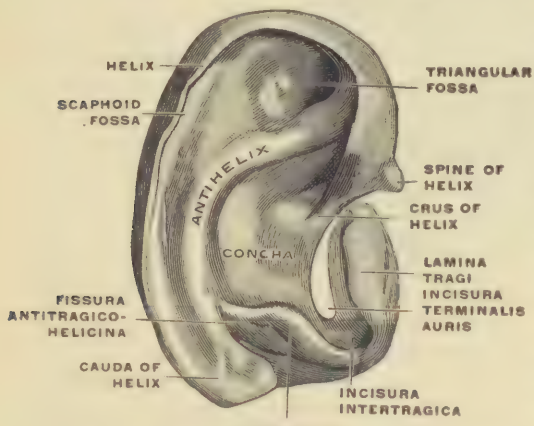


FIG. 754.—The right ear cartilages, isolated, viewed from without. (Spaltholz.)

The Ligaments of the Pinna (*ligamenti auricularia* [*Valsalvae*]).—The ligaments of the pinna consist of two sets: 1. The extrinsic set, or those connecting it to the side of the head. 2. The intrinsic set, or those connecting the various parts of its cartilage together.

The **Extrinsic Ligaments,** the most important, are three in number: **superior, anterior,** and **posterior.** The **superior ligament** (*ligamentum auriculare superius*) extends from the suprameatal spine to the spine of the helix. The **anterior ligament** (*ligamentum auriculare anterius*) extends from the spina helicis and tragus to the

root of the zygoma. The **posterior ligament** (*ligamentum auriculare posterius*) passes from the posterior surface of the concha to the outer surface of the mastoid process of the temporal bone.

The chief **Intrinsic Ligaments** are: (1) a strong fibrous band, stretching across from the tragus to the commencement of the helix, completing the meatus in front, and partly encircling the boundary of the concha; and (2) a band which extends between the antihelix and the cauda helicis. Other less important bands are found on the cranial surface of the pinna.

The Muscles of the Pinna (Figs. 753 and 755).—The muscles of the pinna consist of two sets: 1. The **extrinsic**, which connect it with the side of the head, moving the pinna as a whole—viz., the Attollens, Attrahens, and Retrahens auriculam (p. 369). 2. The **intrinsic**, which extend from one part of the auricle to another, viz.:

Helicis major.	Antitragicus.
Helicis minor.	Transversus auriculae.
Tragicus.	Obliquus auriculae.

The **Helicis Major** (*m. helicis major*) is a narrow vertical band of muscular fibres, situated upon the anterior margin of the helix. It arises, below, from the cauda helicis, and is inserted into the anterior border of the helix, just where it is about to curve backward. It is pretty constant in its existence.

The **Helicis Minor** (*m. helicis minor*) is an oblique fasciculus which covers the crus helicis.

The **Tragicus** (*m. tragicus*) is a short, flattened band of muscular fibres situated upon the outer surface of the tragus, the direction of its fibres being vertical.

The **Antitragicus** (*m. antitragicus*) arises from the outer part of the antitragus; its fibres are inserted into the cauda helicis and antihelix. This muscle is usually very distinct.

The **Transversus Auriculae** (*m. transversus auriculae*) is placed on the cranial surface of the pinna. It consists of scattered fibres, partly tendinous and partly muscular, extending from the convexity of the concha to the prominence corresponding with the groove of the helix.

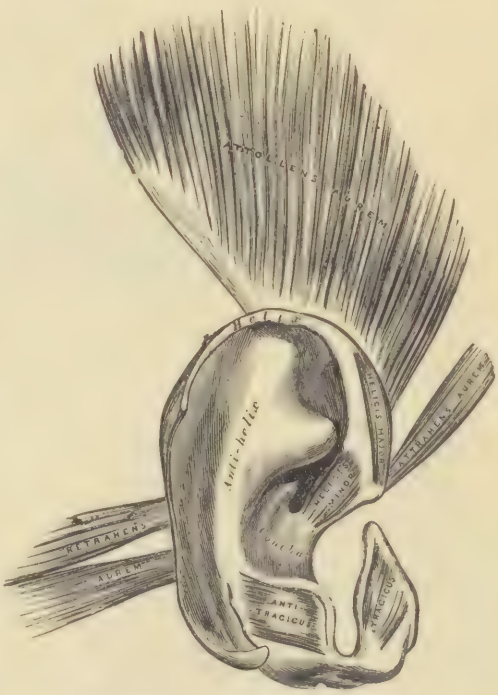


FIG. 755.—The muscles of the pinna.

The **Obliquus Auriculae** (Tod) (*m. obliquus auriculae*) consists of a few fibres extending from the upper and back part of the concha to the convexity immediately above it.

The Arteries of the Pinna.—The arteries of the pinna are the posterior auricular from the external carotid, the anterior auricular from the temporal and an auricular branch from the occipital artery.

The Veins of the Pinna.—The veins of the pinna accompany the corresponding arteries.

The Lymphatics of the Pinna.—The lymphatics enter into the pre-auricular glands and the glands upon the Sterno-mastoid muscle at its insertion.

The Nerves of the Pinna.—The nerves of the pinna are: the auricularis magnus, from the cervical plexus; the auricular branch of the pneumogastric; the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve; the occipitalis minor from the cervical plexus, and the occipitalis major or internal branch of the posterior division of the second cervical nerve. The muscles of the pinna are supplied by the facial nerve.

The External Auditory or External Acoustic Canal or External Auditory Meatus (Meatus Acusticus Externus or Meatus Auditorius Externus).

The external auditory or acoustic canal or meatus extends from the bottom of the concha to the membrana tympani (Figs. 752, 756, and 757). It is about an inch and a half in length if measured from the tragus; from the bottom of the concha its length is about an inch. It forms a sort of S-shaped curve, and is directed at first inward, forward, and slightly upward (*pars externa*); it then passes inward and backward (*pars media*), and lastly is carried inward, forward, and slightly downward (*pars interna*). It forms an oval cylindrical canal, the greatest diameter being in the vertical direction at the external orifice, but in the

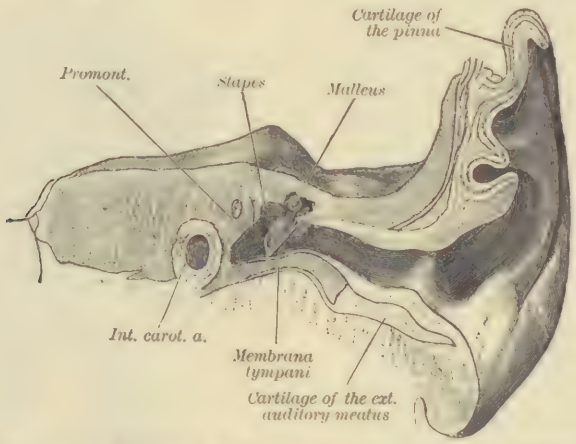


FIG. 756.—Transverse section of external auditory meatus and tympanum. Left side. (Gegenbauer.)

transverse direction at the tympanic end. It presents two constrictions, one near the inner end of the cartilaginous portion, and another, the **isthmus**, in the osseous portion, about three-quarters of an inch from the bottom of the concha. The **membrana tympani** (Figs. 756 and 757), which occupies the termination of the meatus, is directed obliquely, in consequence of which the floor of the canal is longer than the roof, and the anterior wall longer than the posterior. The auditory canal is formed partly by cartilage and membrane, partly by bone, and is lined by perichondrium and periosteum, which is covered with skin.

The Cartilaginous Portion (*meatus acusticus externus cartilagineus*).—The cartilaginous portion is about one-third of an inch (8 mm.) in length; it is formed by the cartilage of the pinna, prolonged inward, and firmly attached to a greater portion of the circumference of the auditory process of the temporal bone. The cartilage is deficient at its upper and back part, its place being supplied by fibrous membrane. This part of the canal is rendered extremely movable by two or three deep fissures, the **fissures of Santorini** (*incisurae cartilaginis meatus acustici externi* [*Santorini*]), which extend through the cartilage in a vertical direction. It is firmly attached at its lower and front part to the posterior root of the zygoma and to the lateral edge of the tympanic portion of the temporal bone.

The Osseous Portion (*meatus acusticus externus osseus*).—The osseous portion is about two-thirds of an inch (16 mm.) in length, and narrower than the cartilaginous portion. It is directed inward and a little forward, forming a slight curve in its course, the convexity of which is upward and backward. Its inner end, which communicates, in the dry bone, with the cavity of the tympanum, is smaller than the outer and sloped, the anterior wall projecting beyond the posterior about two lines; it is marked, except at its upper part, by a narrow groove, the **tympanic sulcus** (*sulcus tympanicus*), for the insertion of the membrana tympani. Its outer edge is dilated and rough in the greater part of its circumference, for the attachment of the cartilage of the pinna. Its vertical transverse section is oval, the greatest diameter being from above downward. The front and lower parts of this canal are formed by a curved plate of bone, which, in the fœtus, exists as a separate ring (*annulus tympanicus*), incomplete at its upper part. (See Section on Osteology.)

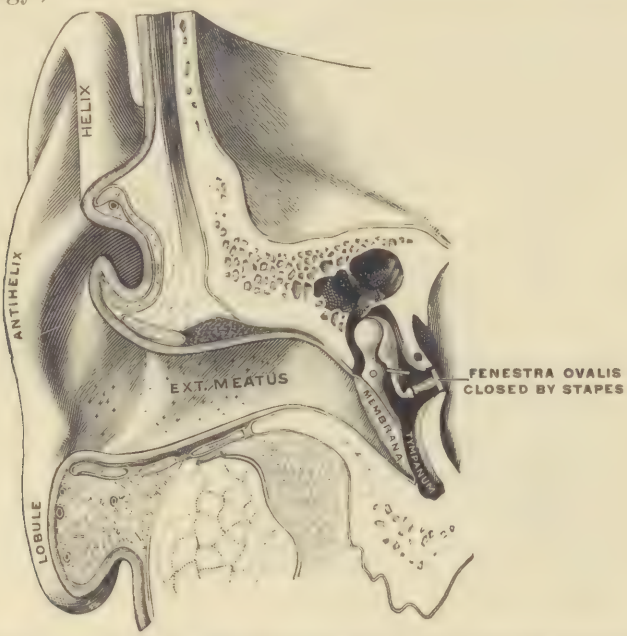


FIG. 757.—Vertical section through the external auditory meatus and tympanum, passing in front of the fenestra ovalis. (Testut.)

The Skin of the Meatus.—The skin lining the meatus is a prolongation of the external skin; it is thin, adheres closely to the cartilaginous and osseous portions of the tube, and covers the surface of the membrana tympani, forming a very thin outer layer. After maceration the thin pouch of epidermis, when withdrawn, preserves the form of the meatus. In the thick subcutaneous tissue of the cartilaginous part of the meatus are numerous **ceruminous glands** (*glandulæ ceruminosæ*) which secrete the *ear-wax*. They resemble in structure sweat-glands, and their ducts open on the surface of the skin.

Relations of the Meatus.—In front of the osseous part is the **glenoid fossa,** which receives the **condyle of the mandible** (Fig. 759), which, however, is separated from the cartilaginous part by the retromandibular part of the *parotid gland*. The movements of the jaw influence to some extent the lumen of the cartilaginous portion. Behind the osseous part are the *mastoid air-cells*, separated from it by a thin layer of bone (Fig. 46).

The Arteries of the External Meatus.—The arteries supplying the external meatus are branches from the posterior auricular, internal maxillary, and superficial temporal.

The Veins of the External Meatus.—Veins accompany the corresponding arteries and pass to the internal maxillary, temporal, and posterior auricular veins.

The Lymphatics of the External Meatus.—The lymphatics accompany the veins and enter the parotid and posterior auricular lymph-glands.

The Nerves of the External Meatus.—The nerves are derived from the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary nerve, the auricularis magnus, and the auricular branch of the pneumogastric.

Surface Form.—The point of junction of the osseous and cartilaginous portions of the tube is an obtuse angle, which projects into the canal at its antero-inferior wall. This produces a sort of constriction in this situation, and renders it the narrowest portion of the canal—an important point to be borne in mind in connection with the presence of foreign bodies in the ear. The cartilaginous is connected to the bony part by fibrous tissue, which renders the outer part of the tube very movable, and therefore by drawing the pinna upward and backward the canal is rendered almost straight. At the external orifice are a few short, crisp hairs which serve to prevent the entrance of small particles of dust, flies or other insects. In the external auditory meatus the secretion of the ceruminous glands serves to catch any small particles which may find their way into the canal, and prevent their reaching the membrana tympani, where their presence might excite irritation. In young children the meatus is short, the osseous part being very deficient, and consisting merely of a bony ring (*annulus tympanicus*), which supports the membrana tympani. In the fœtus the osseous part is entirely absent. The shortness of the canal in children should be borne in mind in introducing the aural speculum, so that it shall not be pushed in too far, at the risk of injuring the membrana tympani; indeed, even in the adult the speculum should never be introduced beyond the constriction which marks the junction of the osseous and cartilaginous portions. In using this instrument it is advisable that the pinna should be drawn upward, backward, and a little outward, so as to render the canal as straight as possible, and thus assist the operator in obtaining, by the aid of reflected light, a good view of the membrana tympani. Just in front of the membrane is a well-marked depression, situated on the floor of the canal and bounded by a somewhat prominent ridge; in this foreign bodies may become lodged. By aid of the speculum, combined with traction of the auricle upward and backward, the whole of the membrana tympani is rendered visible. It is a pearly-gray membrane, slightly glistening in the adult, placed obliquely, so as to form with the floor of the meatus a very acute angle (about 55 degrees), while with the roof it forms an obtuse angle. At birth it is more horizontal—being situated in almost the same plane as the base of the skull. About midway between the anterior and posterior margins of the membrane, and extending from the centre obliquely upward, is a reddish-yellow streak; this is the handle of the malleus, which is inserted into the membrane (Fig. 760). At the upper part of this streak, close to the roof of the meatus, a little white rounded prominence is plainly to be seen; this is the processus brevis of the malleus, projecting against the membrane. The membrana tympani does not present a plane surface; on the contrary, its centre is drawn inward, on account of its connection with the handle of the malleus, and thus the external surface is rendered concave.

THE MIDDLE EAR, DRUM OR TYMPANUM (AURIS MEDIA) (Figs. 756, 757, 758, 762).

The middle ear or tympanum is an irregular cavity, compressed from without inward, and is situated within the petrous portion of the temporal bone. It is placed above the jugular fossa; the carotid canal lying in front, the mastoid cells behind, the external auditory meatus externally, and the labyrinth internally. It is lined with mucous membrane, is filled with air, and communicates with the mastoid cells, and with the naso-pharynx by the Eustachian tube. The tympanum is traversed by a chain of movable bones, which connect the membrana tympani with the labyrinth, and serve to convey the vibrations communicated to the membrana tympani across the cavity of the tympanum to the external ear. In shape it is roughly biconcave, the concave surfaces being placed vertically and forming the external and internal walls. The cavity forms an angle of 45 degrees with the median plane (Spalteholz).

The Tympanic Cavity (*cavum tympani*) (Figs. 762 and 763).—The tympanic cavity consists of two parts: the **atrium** or **tympanic cavity proper** (Fig. 763), opposite the tympanic membrane, and the **attic** or **epitympanic recess** or **aditus ad antrum** (*recessus epitympanicus*) (Figs. 761 and 762), above the level of the

upper part of the membrane; the latter contains the upper half of the malleus and the greater part of the incus. The diameter of the tympanic cavity, including the attic, measures about $\frac{3}{5}$ inch (15 mm.) vertically and transversely. From without inward it measures about $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6 mm.) above and $\frac{1}{6}$ inch (4 mm.) below; opposite the centre of the tympanic membrane it is only about $\frac{1}{12}$ inch (2 mm.). It is bounded externally by the membrana tympani and meatus; internally, by the outer surface of the internal ear; and communicates behind with the mastoid antrum and through it with the mastoid cells; and in front with the Eustachian tube and canal for the Tensor tympani. Its roof and floor are formed by thin osseous laminae, the one forming the roof being a thin plate situated on the anterior surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, close to its angle of junction with the squamous portion of the same bone.

The Roof of the Tympanum (*paries tegmentalis*).—The roof of the tympanum is broad, flattened, and formed of a thin plate of bone (*tegmen tympani*) (Fig. 762), which separates the cranial and tympanic cavities. It is prolonged backward so as to roof in the mastoid antrum; it is also carried forward to cover in the canal for the Tensor tympani muscle.

The Floor (*paries jugularis*) (Fig. 762).—The floor is narrow, and is separated by a thin plate of bone (*fundus tympani*) from the jugular fossa. It frequently

FIG. 758.—View of the inner wall of the tympanum (enlarged).

presents numerous small notches in the bone (*cellulae tympanicae*). There is one small aperture in the floor. It is near the inner wall and is the opening of the **canaliculus tympanicus**, for the transmission of Jacobson's nerve (*n. tympanicus*). On the floor near the posterior wall there is often to be found a slight bony projection (*prominentia styloideae*).

The Outer Wall (Fig. 757).—The outer wall is formed mainly by the membrana tympani, partly by the ring of bone into which this membrane is inserted. The part formed by the membrana tympanum is called the *paries membranaceus*. This ring of bone is incomplete at its upper part, forming a notch, the **notch of Rivinus** (*incisura tympanica* [*Rivini*]) (Fig. 760). The anterior edge of the notch is known as the **spina tympanica major**, the posterior edge as the **spina tympanica minor**. The groove for the reception of the membrana tympani is the **sulcus tympanicus**. Close to the notch are three small apertures: the **iter chordae posterius**, the **Glaserian fissure**, and the **iter chordae anterius**.

The **iter chordae posterius** or the **tympanic aperture** (*canaliculus chordae tympani*) (Fig. 761) is in the angle of junction between the posterior and external walls of the tympanum, immediately behind the membrana tympani and on a level with the upper end of the handle of the malleus; it leads into a minute canal, which descends

in front of the aquaeductus Fallopii, and terminates in the aqueduct near the stylomastoid foramen. Through it the chorda tympani nerve enters the tympanum.

The **Glaserian** or **petro-tympanic fissure** (*fissura petrotympanica* [*Glaseri*]) (Fig. 761) opens just above and in front of the ring of bone into which the membrana tympani is inserted; in this situation it is a mere slit about a line in length. It lodges the long process and anterior ligament of the malleus, and gives passage to the tympanic branch of the internal maxillary artery.

The **iter chordae anterius** (Fig. 761) is seen at the inner end of the preceding fissure; it leads into a canal, the **canal of Huguier**, which runs parallel with the Glaserian fissure. Through it the chorda tympani nerve leaves the tympanum.

The outer wall bounds the epitympanic recess externally.

The Internal Wall of the Tympanum (*paries labyrinthica*) (Figs. 758 and 762).—The internal wall of the tympanum is adjacent to the labyrinth, is vertical in direction, and looks directly outward. It presents for examination the following parts:

Fenestra ovalis.	Promontory.
Fenestra rotunda.	Ridge of the aquaeductus Fallopii.

Prominence of the external semicircular canal.

The **Fenestra Ovalis**, the **Oval** or the **Vestibular Window** (*fenestra vestibuli*) (Fig. 758) is a reniform opening leading from the tympanum into the vestibule. It is situated in the depths of a fossa (*fossula fenestrae vestibuli*). Its long diameter is directed horizontally, and its convex border is upward. The opening in the recent state is occupied by the base of the stapes (Figs. 757 and 763), which is connected to the margin of the foramen by an annular ligament.

The **Fenestra Rotunda**, the **Round** or **Cochlear Window** (*fenestra cochleae*) (Fig. 758) is an aperture placed at the bottom of a **funnel-shaped depression** (*fossula fenestrae cochleae*) leading into the cochlea. It is situated below and rather behind the fenestra ovalis, from which it is separated by a rounded elevation, the **promontory**; at its border is a narrow ridge of bone (*crista fenestrae cochleae*), and it is closed in the recent state by a membrane, the **membrane of Scarpa** or the **secondary ear-drum membrane** (*membrana tympani secundaria*). This membrane is concave toward the tympanum, convex toward the cochlea. It consists of three layers: the external or mucous, derived from the mucous lining of the tympanum; the internal, from the lining membrane of the cochlea; and an intermediate or fibrous layer.

The **Promontory** (*promontorium*) (Fig. 762) is a rounded hollow prominence, formed by the projection outward of the first turn of the cochlea; it is placed between the fenestrae, and is **furrowed** on its surface (*sulcus promontorii*) for the lodgement of the **tympanic plexus**. A minute spicule of bone frequently connects the promontory to the pyramid.

The Rounded Eminence of the Aquaeductus Fallopii (*prominentia canalis facialis*) (Fig. 762), the prominence of the bony canal in which the facial nerve is contained, traverses the inner wall of the tympanum above the fenestra ovalis, and behind that opening curves nearly vertically downward along the posterior wall.

Just above the eminence of the aquaeductus Fallopii the wall is bulged by the **external semicircular canal** (*prominentia canalis semicircularis lateralis*).

The Posterior Wall of the Tympanum (*paries mastoidea*) (Fig. 762).—The posterior wall of the tympanum is wider above than below, and the lower portion of the posterior wall contains many *tympanic cells*. The posterior wall presents for examination the—

Opening of the antrum.	Prominentia styloideae.
Fossa incudis.	Pyramid.

Apertura tympanica canaliculi chordae.

The **Opening of the Antrum** is a large irregular aperture, which extends backward from the epitympanic recess and leads into a considerable air space, the **mastoid antrum** (*antrum tympanicum*), which is the entrance to the mastoid cells (p. 87). The antrum communicates with large irregular cavities contained in the interior of the mastoid process, the **mastoid air-cells.** These cavities vary considerably in number, size, and form; they are lined by mucous membrane continuous with that lining the cavity of the tympanum.

The **Fossa Incudis** (Fig. 762) is placed in the posterior and inferior part of the epitympanic recess. It lodges the short process of the incus.

The **Prominentia Styloideae** is sometimes seen below the apertura tympanica canaliculi chordae. It is a prominence produced by a prolongation of the styloid process.

The **Pyramid** (*eminentia pyramidalis*)(Fig. 758) is a conical eminence situated immediately behind the fenestra ovalis, and in front of the vertical portion of the eminence above described; it is hollow in the interior, and contains the Stapedius muscle; its summit projects forward toward the fenestra ovalis, and presents a small aperture which transmits the tendon of the muscle. The cavity in the pyramid is prolonged into a minute canal, which communicates with the aquaeductus Fallopii and transmits the nerve which supplies the Stapedius.

The **Apertura Tympanica Canaliculi Chordae** is just back of the posterior edge of the tympanic membrane, nearly level with the superior end of the manubrium mallei.

The Anterior Wall of the Tympanum (*paries carotica*).—The anterior wall of the tympanum is bony on its lower portion. Its upper part is the tympanic opening of the Eustachian tube. The long anterior wall contains tympanic cells. The anterior wall is wider above than below; it corresponds with the carotid canal, from which it is separated by a thin plate of bone (Fig. 762), perforated by the **canaliculi caroticotympanici,** which transmit the tympanic branch of the internal carotid artery and the carotico-tympanic nerves. It presents for examination the—

Canal for the Tensor tympani. Orifice of the Eustachian tube.
The processus cochleariformis.

The orifice of the canal for the Tensor tympani and the orifice of the Eustachian tube are situated at the upper part of the anterior wall, being incompletely separated from each other by a thin, delicate, horizontal plate of bone, the **processus cochleariformis** (*septum canalis musculotubarii*) (Figs. 49 and 758). The canalis musculotubarius is divided by this long process into the canal for the Tensor tympani and the canal for the Eustachian tube. These canals run from the tympanum forward, inward, and a little downward, to the retiring angle between the squamous and petrous portions of the temporal bone.

The **Canal for the Tensor Tympani** (*semicanalis m. tensoris tympani*) (Figs. 49, 758, and 762) is the superior and the smaller of the two; it is rounded and lies beneath the forward prolongation of the tegmen tympani. It extends on to the inner wall of the tympanum and ends immediately above the fenestra ovalis. The processus cochleariformis passes backward below this part of the canal, forming its outer wall and floor; it expands above the anterior extremity of the fenestra ovalis and terminates by curving outward so as to form a pulley over which the tendon passes. The bony wall of this canal is incomplete, and the osseous vacancy is filled by tough connective tissue.

The **Eustachian Tube** or **Ear Trumpet** (*tuba auditiva* [*Eustachii*]) (Figs. 49, 758, and 759) is the channel through which the tympanum communicates with the pharynx. Its length is an inch and a half (36 mm.), and its direction downward, inward, and forward, forming an angle of about 45 degrees with the sagittal plane and one of from 30 to 40 degrees with the horizontal plane.

The **canal for the Eustachian tube** (*semicanalis tubae auditivae*) (Fig. 759) is formed partly of bone, partly of cartilage and fibrous tissue.

The **Osseous Portion** (*pars ossea tubae auditivae* or *semicanalis tubae auditivae*) is about half an inch in length. It is the outer portion of the tube. It commences in the anterior wall of the tympanum, below the processus cochleariformis (*ostium tympanicum tubae auditivae*), and, gradually narrowing, terminates at the angle of junction of the petrous and squamous portions of the temporal bone, its extremity presenting a jagged margin which serves for the attachment of the cartilaginous portion. The roof of the osseous portion is the tegmen tympani. The inner wall is formed in part by the inner wall of the tympanum and in part by the canal for the Tensor tympani muscle. The outer wall is the tympanic portion of the temporal bone. The floor is a groove which near the tympanum contains the openings of **air-cells** (*cellulae pneumatici tubarii*).

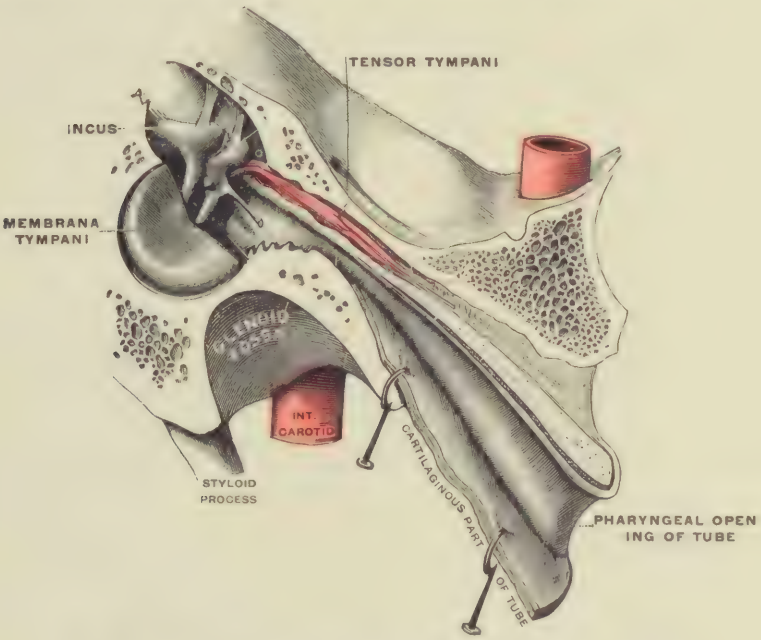


FIG. 759.—Eustachian tube, laid open by a cut in its long axis. (Testut.)

The **Cartilaginous Portion** (*pars cartilaginea tubae auditivae*), about an inch in length, is formed of a triangular plate of elastic fibro-cartilage (*cartilago tubae auditivae*), the apex of which is attached to the margin of the inner extremity of the osseous canal, while its base lies directly under the mucous membrane of the naso-pharynx, where it forms an elevation or cushion above and behind the pharyngeal orifice of the tube. The upper edge of the cartilage is curled upon itself, being bent outward so as to present on transverse section the appearance of a hook (*lamina lateralis*); a groove or furrow is thus produced, which opens below and externally, and this part of the canal is completed by fibrous membrane. On transverse section the cartilage exhibits the laminae which above are continuous with each other: the hard, thick lamina medialis and the thin and hooked lamina lateralis. The cartilage of the Eustachian tube, with a hood plate of cartilage, forms the posterior portion of the inner wall (the *lamina medialis*). The cartilage is fixed to the base of the skull, and lies in a groove (*sulcus tubae auditivae*) between the petrous-temporal and the greater wing of the sphenoid; this groove ends opposite the middle of the internal pterygoid plate, in a projection, the

processus tubarius. At the pharyngeal orifice the entire wall of the tube is cartilaginous, but the breadth of the cartilage progressively lessens as the isthmus is approached. Here and there the cartilage is deficient or pieces lie separate from the rest, the spaces between the islands being occupied by fibrous tissue. The Tensor palati muscle is placed to the outer side of the tube. The fibres of the muscle which take origin from the lamina lateralis are known as the **dilator tubae muscle of Rudinger.** The Tensor palati muscle and the mucous membrane of the pharynx lie to the inner side of the tube. The under and outer portion of the canal is completed by the **membranous part** (*lamina membranacea*), which is a strong fibrous membrane, passing between the two margins of the cartilage. It is thin above, but thick below, and the thick portion is called the **fascia salpingopharyngea of Tröltsch,** and from it arise some fibres of the **Tensor palati** (*m. salpingopharyngeus*). The cartilaginous and bony portions of the tube are not in the same plane, the former

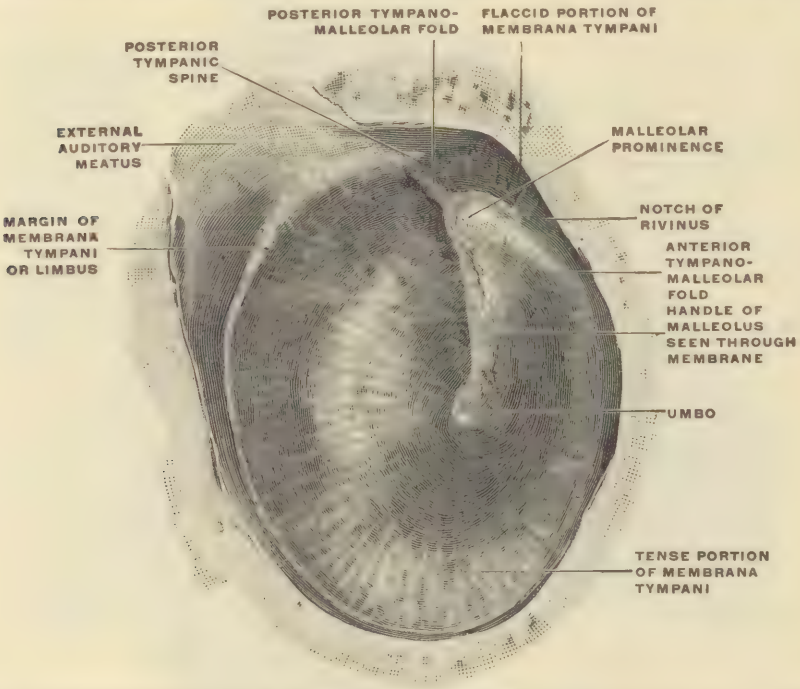


FIG. 760.—The right membrana tympani, viewed from the outside, from in front, and from below. (Spalteholz.)

inclining downward a little more than the latter. They join each other at a large obtuse angle, open below. The diameter of the canal is not uniform throughout, being greatest at the pharyngeal orifice and least at the junction of the bony and cartilaginous portions, where it is named the **isthmus** (*isthmus tubae auditivae*); it again expands somewhat as it approaches the tympanic cavity. The position and relations of the pharyngeal orifice (*ostium pharyngeum tubae auditivae*) are described with the anatomy of the naso-pharynx. Through this canal the mucous membrane of the pharynx is continuous with that which lines the tympanum. The mucous membrane is covered with ciliated epithelium and is thin in the osseous portion, while in the cartilaginous portion it contains many mucous glands and near the pharyngeal orifice a considerable amount of adenoid tissue, which has been named by Gerlach the **tube-tonsil.** The tube is opened during deglutition by the Salpingo-pharyngeus and Dilator tubae muscles.

The Drumhead or Membrana Tympani (Figs. 757, 759, 760, and 761).—The membrana tympani or drumhead separates the cavity of the tympanum from

the bottom of the external meatus. It is a thin, semi-transparent membrane, nearly oval in form, somewhat broader above than below, and directed very obliquely downward and inward, so as to form an angle of about 55 degrees with the floor of the meatus (Fig. 757). The antero-inferior portion is, therefore, placed at the greatest distance from the external orifice of the meatus. It is asserted that in musicians the membrana tympani is placed more nearly perpendicular, and that in deaf-mutes and cretins it is placed more obliquely than the usual 55 degrees. In a newborn child the membrana tympani is almost horizontal. The greatest diameter of the membrana tympani is from 9 to 10 mm.; its least diameter is from 8 to 9 mm.[1] The greater part of its circumference (*limbus membranae tympanae*) is thickened to form an **annular ring** (*annulus fibrocartilagineus*), which is fixed in a groove, the **sulcus tympanicus**, at the inner extremity

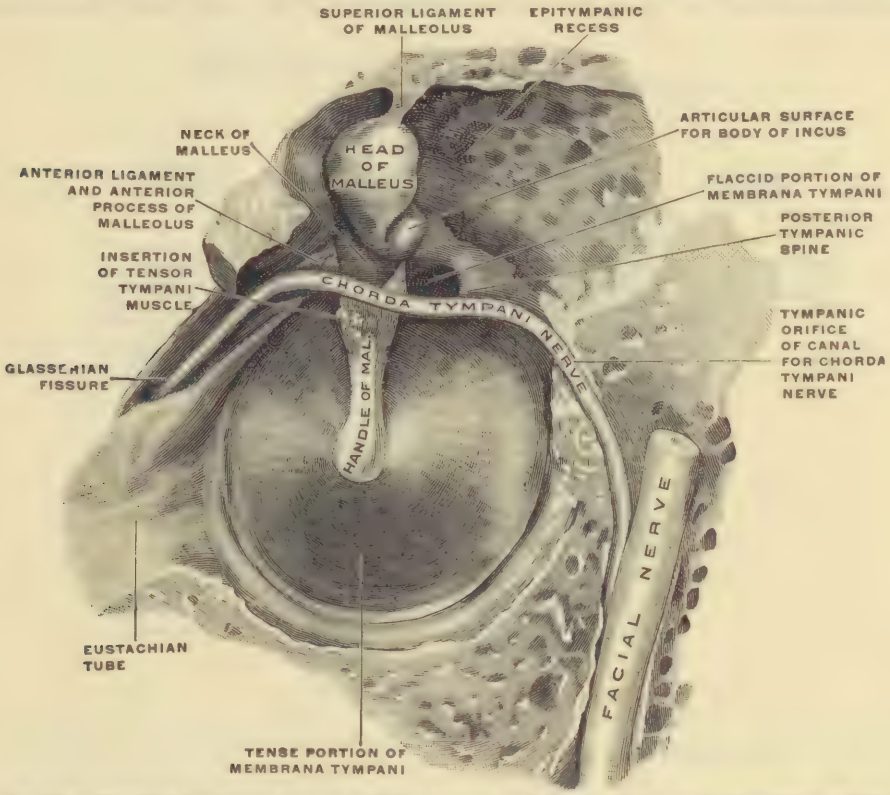


FIG. 761.—The right membrana tympani with the hammer and the chorda tympani, viewed from within, from behind, and from above. (Spalteholz.)

of the external meatus. This sulcus is deficient superiorly at the incisure or **notch of Rivinus** (*incisura tympanica* [*Rivini*]) (Fig. 760). From the extremities of the notch (*spinae tympanicae*) two folds pass and converge to the short process of the malleus (Fig. 760). One is known as the **anterior tympanomalleolar fold** or **ligament** (*plica membrana tympani anterior*). The other is known as the **posterior tympanomalleolar fold** or **ligament** (*plica membrana tympani posterior*). These are not to be confused with the anterior and posterior malleolar folds (p. 1162). The small, somewhat triangular part of the membrane situated above these folds is lax and thin, and is named the **flaccid portion** or the **membrana flaccida of Shrapnell** (Figs. 760 and 761). In it a small orifice is sometimes seen, which is of artificial and pathological formation. The larger lower portion of the drum membrane is stretched tightly, and is called the **tense portion** or **pars tensa** (Figs. 760 and 761).

[1] Prof. Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

The handle of the malleus is firmly attached to the inner aspect of the membrana tympani as far as its centre (Fig. 761). It draws the central part of the membrane inward and makes its outer aspect concave. The most depressed part of the concavity is called the **umbo** or **navel** (*umbo membranae tympanae*)(Fig. 760). The walls of the umbo are convex outward.

On the outer surface of the drum membrane a light stripe (*stria malleolaris*) is seen. It runs from in front and above downward and backward, and is produced by the handle of the malleus, showing through the membrane (Fig. 760).

Structure.—This membrane is composed of three layers: an **external** (*cuticular*), a **middle** (*fibrous*), and an **internal** (*mucous*). The **cuticular lining** (*stratum cutaneum*) is derived from the integument lining the meatus. The **fibrous** or **middle layer** (*membrana propria*) consists of two strata: an external, of **radiating fibres** (*stratum radiatum*), which diverge from the handle of the malleus, and an

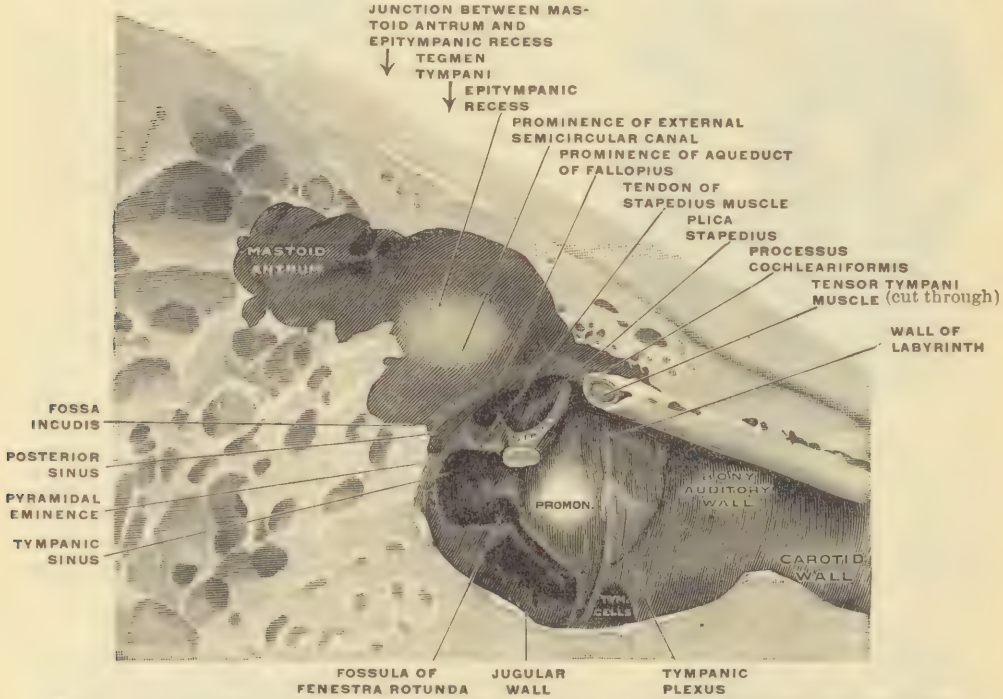


FIG. 762.—The medial wall and part of the posterior and anterior walls of the right tympanic cavity, lateral view. (Spalteholz.)

internal, of **circular fibres** (*stratum circulare*), which are plentiful around the circumference, but sparse and scattered near the centre of the membrane. **Branched** or **dendritic fibres,** as pointed out by Grüber, are also present, especially in the posterior half of the membrane. Both muscular layers are connected to the annulus fibrocartilagineus, and both are absent in the pars flaccida. The **inner** or **epithelial layer** is mucous membrane (*stratum mucosum*), which is a portion of the mucous membrane of the drum cavity.

The **Arteries** are derived from the deep auricular branch of the internal maxillary, which ramifies beneath the cuticular layer and from the stylo-mastoid branch of the posterior auricular and tympanic branch of the internal maxillary, which are distributed on the mucous surface. The arteries of the cutaneous set anastomose with the arteries of the mucous set by minute branches which penetrate the drum membrane near its margin. The **superficial veins** open into the external jugular; those on the mucous surface drain themselves partly into the lateral sinus and veins of the dura mater and partly into a plexus on the Eustachian tube.

The outer surface of the drum membrane receives its **nervous supply** from the auriculo-temporal branch of the inferior maxillary and the auricular branch of the vagus. The inner surface is supplied by the tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal.

There are two sets of **lymphatics**, the cutaneous and mucous, which freely communicate. The spaces between the dendritic fibres of Grüber are lymph-spaces (Kessel).

The Ossicles of the Tympanum (Ossicula Auditus) (Fig. 763).

The tympanum contains in its upper part a chain of movable bones, three in number, the **malleus, incus,** and **stapes**. The first is attached to the membrana tympani, the last to the fenestra ovalis. The incus is placed between the two, and is connected to both by delicate articulations.

Fig. 763.—Chain of ossicles and their ligaments, seen from the front in a vertical, transverse section of the tympanum. (Testut.)

The Malleus or Hammer (Fig. 764).—The malleus or hammer, so named from its fancied resemblance to a hammer, is placed farthest in front and outward. It consists of a **head, neck,** and three processes—the **handle** or **manubrium,** the **processus gracilis,** and the **processus brevis.**

The Head (*capitulum mallei*).—The head is the large upper extremity of the bone, and is situated in the epitympanic recess (Fig. 761). It is oval in shape, and articulates posteriorly with the incus, being free in the rest of its extent. The facet for articulation with the incus is covered with cartilage, is constricted near the middle, and is divided by a ridge into an upper, larger, and a lower, lesser part, which form nearly a right angle with each other. Opposite the constriction the lower margin of the facet projects in the form of a process, the **cog-tooth** or **spur of the malleus.** On the back of the head below the spur is a crest (*crista mallei*), to which the posterior ligament of the malleus is attached.

The Neck (*collum mallei*).—The neck is the narrow contracted part just beneath the head; and below this is a prominence, to which the various processes are attached. The outer surface of the neck faces the membrana flaccida. The chorda tympani nerve crosses the inner surface (Fig. 761).

The Handle or Manubrium (*manubrium mallei*).—The manubrium is a vertical process of bone, which is connected by its outer margin with the fibrous layer of the membrana tympani, its entire length being fastened to the fibrous layer of the drum membrane by its own periosteum and by a layer of cartilage (Grüber) (Figs. 761 and 763). It is directed downward, inward, and backward; it decreases in size toward its extremity, where it is curved slightly forward, and is flattened from within outward. The handle forms a variable angle with the head of the hammer. It averages about 130 degrees, but is always greater in the right ear than in the left. It forms an angle with the horizontal, averaging on the right side 50 degrees and on the left side 45 degrees (Spaltcholz). Internally the handle is covered by the mucous membrane of the tympanum. On the inner side, near its upper end, is a slight projection, into which the tendon of the Tensor tympani is inserted (Fig. 761).

The **Processus Gracilis or Long Process** (*processus anterior* [*Folii*]).—The processus gracilis is a long and very delicate process, which passes from the front of

the neck forward and outward to the Glaserian fissure, to which it is connected by ligamentous fibres. In the fœtus this is the longest process of the malleus, and is in direct continuity with the cartilage of Meckel.

The Processus Brevis (*processus lateralis*).—The processus brevis is a slight conical projection, which springs from the root of the manubrium; it is directed outward, and is attached to the upper part of the tympanic membrane by cartilage and to the margins of the notch of Rivinus by the two malleolar folds.

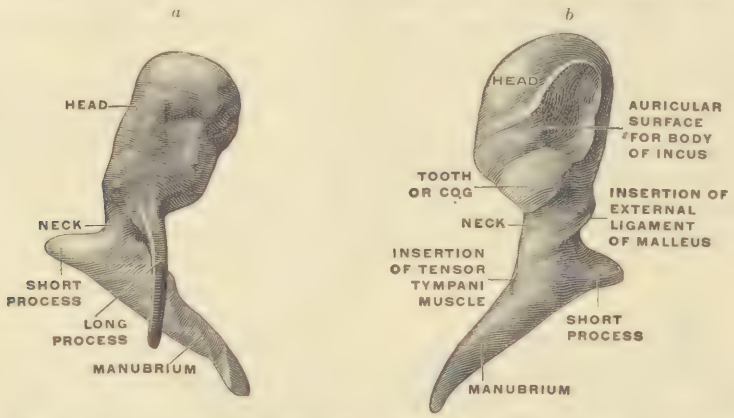


Fig. 764.—The right malleus: *a*, viewed from in front; *b*, viewed from behind. (Spalteholz.)

The Incus or Anvil (Fig. 765).—The incus or anvil has received its name from its supposed resemblance to an anvil, but it is more like a bicuspid tooth with two roots, which differ in length, and are widely separated from each other. It consists of a **body** and **two processes**. The body and the short process are placed in the epitympanic recess (Fig. 763).

The Body (*corpus incudis*).—The body is somewhat quadrilateral, but compressed laterally. On its anterior surface is a deeply concavo-convex facet, which articulates with the head of the malleus, and the lower part is hollowed for the spur of the malleus. In the fresh state the articular surface is covered with cartilage and the joint is lined with synovial membrane.

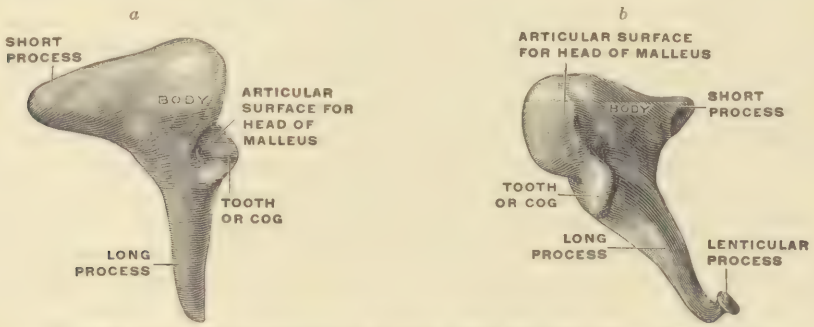


Fig. 765.—The right incus: *a*, lateral view; *b*, medial and front view. (Spalteholz.)

Processes.—The two processes diverge from one another at an angle of from 90 to 100 degrees.

The **Short Process** (*crus breve*), somewhat conical in shape, projects nearly horizontally backward, and articulates with a depression, the **incus fossa** (*fossa incudis*), in the lower and back part of the epitympanic recess.

The **Long Process** (*crus longum*), longer and more slender than the preceding, descends nearly vertically behind and parallel to the handle of the malleus, and,

bending inward, terminates in a rounded globular projection, the **os orbiculare or lenticular process** (*processus lenticularis*), which is tipped with cartilage, and articulates with the head of the stapes. In the fœtus the os orbiculare exists as a separate bone.

The Stapes or Stirrup (Fig. 766).—The stapes or stirrup, so called from its close resemblance to a stirrup, consists of a **head, neck, two crura,** and a **base.**

The Head (*capitulum stapedis*).—The head presents a depression, tipped with cartilage, which articulates with the os orbiculare.

The Neck.—The neck, the constricted part of the bone succeeding the head, receives the insertion of the Stapedius muscle.

The Crura.—The two crura (*crus anterius* and *crus posterius*) diverge from the neck and are connected at their extremities by a flattened, oval-shaped plate, the **foot-plate** or **base** (*basis stapedis*), which forms the foot-plate of the stirrup and is fixed to the margin of the fenestra ovalis by ligamentous fibres. The foot-plate almost fills the oval window (Fig. 757. Of the two crura, the anterior is shorter and less curved than the posterior. In a recent specimen a membrane will be observed filling the space between the crura and the foot-plate. This membrane is connective tissue and is called the *membrana obturatoria stapedis*. The stirrup lies practically horizontal.

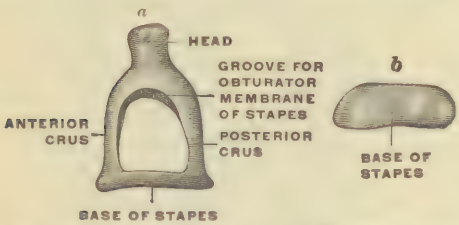


FIG. 766.—The right stirrup: *a*, viewed from above; *b*, medial vein. (Spalteholz.)

Articulations of the Ossicles of the Tympanum (*articulationes ossiculorum auditus*) (Fig. 763).—These small bones are connected with each other and with the walls of the tympanum by ligaments, and are moved by small muscles. There is an articulation between the head of the hammer and the body of the anvil; one between the os orbiculare of the anvil and the head of the stirrup; and there is a syndesmosis between the margins of the oval window and the base of the stirrup. The bones are fastened in the tympanum, the handle of the hammer being fastened in the drum membrane and the base of the stirrup to the oval window. The articular surfaces of the malleus and incus and the orbicular process of the incus and head of the stapes are covered with cartilage, connected together by delicate capsular ligaments and lined by synovial membrane.

Ligaments Connecting the Ossicula with the Walls of the Tympanum (*ligamenta ossiculorum auditus*).—The malleus is fastened to the wall of the tympanum by three ligaments: the **anterior, superior,** and **external ligaments.**

The **Anterior Ligament of the Malleus** (*ligamentum mallei anterius*) consists of two parts, the **band of Meckel** and the **anterior ligament of Helmholtz.**

The **band of Meckel** is attached to the base of the processus gracilis and passes through the Glaserian fissure to reach the spine of the sphenoid. It was formerly described by Sömmering as a muscle, and it was called the **laxator tympani muscle.** It is now, however, believed by most observers to consist of ligamentous fibres only.

The **anterior ligament of Helmholtz** extends from the anterior margin of the notch of Rivinus to the anterior portion of the malleus, just above the processus gracilis.

The **Superior Ligament of the Malleus** (*ligamentum mallei superius*) is a delicate round bundle of fibres which descends perpendicularly from the roof of the epitympanic recess to the head of the malleus. It is sometimes called the **suspensory ligament.**

The **External Ligament of the Malleus** (*ligamentum mallei laterale*) is a triangular plane of fibres passing from the posterior part of the notch in the tympanic ring

(*incisura Rivini*) to the crest of the malleus. The posterior portion of the external ligament is sometimes called the **posterior ligament of Helmholtz** (*ligamentum mallei posterius* [*Helmholtzi*]). The malleus rotates around an axis composed of the external and anterior ligaments, hence these two ligaments constitute what Helmholtz called the **axis ligament of the malleus.**

The incus is fastened to the wall of the tympanum by two ligaments, the **posterior** and the **superior.**

The **Posterior Ligament of the Incus** (*ligamentum incudis posterius*) is a short, thick, ligamentous band which connects the extremity of the short process of the incus to the posterior and lower part of the epitympanic recess, near the margin of the opening of the mastoid cells.

A **Superior Ligament of the Incus** (*ligamentum incudis superius*) has been described by Arnold, but it is little more than a fold of mucous membrane.

The inner surface and the circumference of the base of the stapes are covered with hyaline cartilage, and the **annular ligament of the stapes** (*ligamentum annulare baseos stapedis*) connects the circumference of the base to the margin of the fenestra ovalis.

The Muscles of the Tympanum (*m. ossiculorum auditus*).—The muscles of the tympanum are two:

Tensor tympani. Stapedius.

The **Tensor Tympani** (*m. tensor tympani*) (Fig. 762), the larger, is contained in the bony canal above the osseous portion of the Eustachian tube, from which it is separated by the processus cochleariformis. It *arises* from the under surface of the petrous bone, from the cartilaginous portion of the Eustachian tube, and from the osseous canal in which it is contained. Passing backward through the canal, it terminates in a slender tendon which enters the tympanum and makes a sharp bend outward around the extremity of the processus cochleariformis, and is inserted into the handle of the malleus near its root. Its nerve-supply is from the motor root of the fifth cranial nerve by way of the otic ganglion.

The **Stapedius** (*m. stapedius*) (Fig. 762) *arises* from the side of a conical cavity hollowed out of the interior of the pyramid; its tendon emerges from the orifice at the apex of the pyramid, and, passing forward, is inserted into the neck of the stapes. Its surface is aponeurotic, its interior fleshy, and its tendon occasionally contains a slender bony spine, which is constant in some mammalia. It is supplied by the tympanic branch of the facial nerve.

Actions.—The **Tensor tympani** draws the handle of the malleus inward and thus heightens the tension of the drum membrane. It also causes slight rotation of the bone around its long axis. When the Stapedius contracts it draws the head of the stirrup backward, and in consequence the anterior end of the foot-plate passes outward toward the tympanum, and the posterior end inward toward the vestibule, and the annular ligament is made tense.

Movements of the Ossicles of the Tympanum.—The chain of bones is a lever-like arrangement, by means of which the vibrations of the membrana tympani are transferred to the membrane covering the oval window, and from this to the perilymph in the labyrinth. When the drum membrane moves inward, the handle of the malleus moves with it. The movement of the malleus moves the incus, and the movement of the incus drives the foot of the stapes toward the labyrinth. When the handle of the malleus moves inward, the spur on the head becomes locked with the body of the incus. During outward movement it is unlocked. The ordinary outward movement of the drum membrane causes the above-described movements to be reversed. When there is overforcible outward movement the incus does not go outward quite as far as the malleus, but slides at the joint between the malleus and incus. This reluctance of the incus saves the foot of the stapes from being pulled away from the oval window.

The Mucous Membrane of the Tympanum (*tunica mucosa tympanica*).—The mucous membrane of the tympanum is continuous with the mucous membrane of the naso-pharynx through the Eustachian tube, and is firmly united to the periosteum. It invests the ossicula, and the muscles and nerves contained in the tympanic cavity; forms the internal layer of the membrana tympani, and the outer layer of the membrana tympani secundaria, and is reflected into the mastoid antrum and air-cells, which it lines throughout. It forms several vascular folds (*plicae*), which extend from the walls of the tympanum to the ossicles. In these folds the ossicles are enveloped.

The **anterior malleolar fold** (*plica malleolaris anterior*) comes off from the membrana tympani between the anterior edge of the notch of Rivinis and the handle of the malleus, envelops the processus gracilis of the malleus, the anterior ligament of the malleus, and the anterior portion of the chorda tympani nerve, and terminates in a free concave edge (Spalteholz). The **posterior malleolar fold** (*plica malleolaris posterior*) is the larger of the two. It comes off from the margin of the notch of Rivinis, envelops the external ligament of the malleus, the posterior part of the chorda tympani nerve, is attached to the handle of the malleus, and ends in a free concave margin (Spalteholz). The **fold of the incus** (*plica incudis*) takes origin from the roof of the epitympanic recess and passes to the body and short process of the incus; and a similar fold passes from the head of the malleus to the anterior wall of the epitympanic recess. The entire stapes, with its obturator membrane, is enwrapped by the **fold of the stapes** (*plica stapedis*). This fold also ensheaths the tendon of the stapedius muscle and often reaches to the posterior wall of the cavity of the tympanum. The mucous membrane over the round window forms the **membrana tympani secundaria.** These folds separate off pouch-like cavities, and give the interior of the tympanum a somewhat honey-comb appearance. One of these pouches is well marked—viz., the **pouch of Prussak,** which lies between the neck of the malleus and the membrana flaccida.

The **inferior external pouch of the tympanum** or the **pouch of Prussak** (*recessus membranae tympani superior*) is between the flaccid portion of the membrana tympani, the external ligament of the malleus, and the neck of the malleus. The anterior and posterior malleolar folds with the tympanic membrane form two pouches. These are the **anterior** and **posterior pouches** or **recesses of Tröltsch** (*recessus membranae tympani, anterior* and *posterior*). The anterior pouch is blind above and has a slit-like opening below. The posterior pouch is continued into the blind superior pouch of the drum membrane. In the tympanum this membrane is pale, thin, slightly vascular, and covered for the most part with columnar ciliated epithelium, but that covering the pyramid, ossicula, and membrana tympani possesses a flattened, non-ciliated epithelium. In the antrum and mastoid cells its epithelium is also non-ciliated. In the osseous portion of the Eustachian tube the membrane is thin; but in the cartilaginous portion it is very thick, highly vascular, covered with ciliated epithelium, and provided with numerous mucous glands.

The Arteries of the Tympanum.—The arteries supplying the tympanum are six in number. Two of them are larger than the rest—viz., the tympanic branch of the internal maxillary, which enters by way of the Glaserian fissure and supplies the membrana tympani; and the stylo-mastoid branch of the posterior auricular, which passes through the stylo-mastoid foramen and the aqueduct of Fallopius, and supplies the inner wall and floor of the tympanum, the mastoid cells, and antrum and the Stapedius muscle. This vessel anastomoses around the drum membrane with the tympanic. The middle meningeal sends a small branch to the Tensor tympani muscle near its origin. The petrosal branch of the middle meningeal enters the tympanum by way of the hiatus Fallopii. Minute branches from the posterior branch of the middle meningeal pass through the petro-

squamous fissure and are distributed to the antrum and epitympanic recess (Cunningham). Two tympanic branches come off from the internal carotid artery in its course through the carotid canal. A branch from the ascending pharyngeal and another from the Vidian, accompany the Eustachian tube. The two tympanic branches from the internal carotid are given off in the carotid canal and perforate the thin anterior wall of the tympanum.

The Veins of the Tympanum.—The veins of the tympanum terminate in the pterygoid plexus, the middle meningeal vein, and the superior petrosal sinus.

The Nerves of the Tympanum.—The nerves of the tympanum constitute the **tympanic plexus** (*plexus tympanicus* [*Jacobsoni*]), which ramifies upon the surface of the promontory (Fig. 762). The plexus is formed by (1) the tympanic branch of the glosso-pharyngeal; (2) the small deep petrosal nerve; (3) the small superficial petrosal nerve; and (4) a branch which joins the great superficial petrosal.

The **Tympanic Branch of the Glosso-pharyngeal** or **Jacobson's Nerve** (*n. tympanicus*) enters the tympanum by an aperture in its floor close to the inner wall and divides into branches, which ramify on the promontory and enter into the formation of the plexus. The **small deep petrosal nerve** (*n. petrosus profundus*), from the carotid plexus of the sympathetic, passes through the wall of the carotid canal, and joins the branches of Jacobson's nerve. The branch to the great superficial petrosal passes through an opening on the inner wall of the tympanum in front of the fenestra ovalis. The **small superficial petrosal nerve** (*n. petrosus superficialis minor*), derived from the otic ganglion, passes through a foramen in the middle fossa of the base of the skull (sometimes through the foramen ovale), passes backward and enters the petrous bone through a small aperture, situated external to the hiatus Fallopii on the anterior surface of this bone; it then courses downward through the bone, and, passing by the gangliform enlargement of the facial nerve, receives a connecting filament from it (Fig. 676) and enters the tympanic cavity, where it communicates with Jacobson's nerve, and assists in forming the tympanic plexus.

The **branches of distribution** of the tympanic plexus are distributed to the mucous membrane of the tympanum; one special branch passing to the fenestra ovalis, another to the fenestra rotunda, and a third to the Eustachian tube. The small superficial petrosal may be looked upon as a branch from the plexus to the otic ganglion.

In addition to the tympanic plexus there are the nerves supplying the muscles. The Tensor tympani is supplied by a branch from the third division of the fifth through the otic ganglion, and the Stapedius by the tympanic branch of the facial.

The **chorda tympani** (Figs. 758 and 761) crosses the tympanic cavity. It is given off from the facial as it passes vertically downward at the back of the tympanum, about a quarter of an inch before its exit from the stylo-mastoid foramen. It passes from below upward and forward in a distinct canal, and enters the cavity of the tympanum through an aperture, **iter chordae posterius**, already described (p. 1151), and becomes invested with mucous membrane. It passes forward, through the cavity of the tympanum, crossing internal to the membrana tympani and over the handle of the malleus to the anterior inferior angle of the tympanum, and emerges from that cavity through the **iter chordae anterius** or **canal of Huguier** (p. 1152). It is invested by the fold of mucous membrane already mentioned, and therefore lies between the mucous and fibrous layers of the membrana tympani.

THE INTERNAL EAR OR LABYRINTH (AURIS INTERNA).

The internal ear is the essential part of the organ of hearing, receiving the ultimate distribution of the auditory nerve. It is called the **labyrinth**, from the

complexity of its shape, and consists of two parts: the **osseous labyrinth**, a series of cavities channelled out of the substance of the petrous bone, and the **membranous labyrinth**, the latter being contained within the former.

The Osseous Labyrinth (Labyrinthus Osseus) (Fig. 767).

The osseous labyrinth consists of three parts: the **vestibule**, **semicircular canals**, and **cochlea**. These are cavities hollowed out of the substance of the bone, and lined by periosteum. A clear fluid is contained in the space between the osseous labyrinth and the membranous labyrinth. The space is called the **perilymph space**, and the fluid is called **perilymph** or **liquor Cotunnii**.

The Vestibule (*vestibulum*) (Figs. 763 and 767).—The vestibule is the common central cavity of communication between the parts of the internal ear. It is situated on the inner side of the tympanum, behind the cochlea, and in front of the semicircular canals. It is somewhat ovoidal in shape from before backward, flattened from within outward, and measures about one-fifth of an inch from before back-

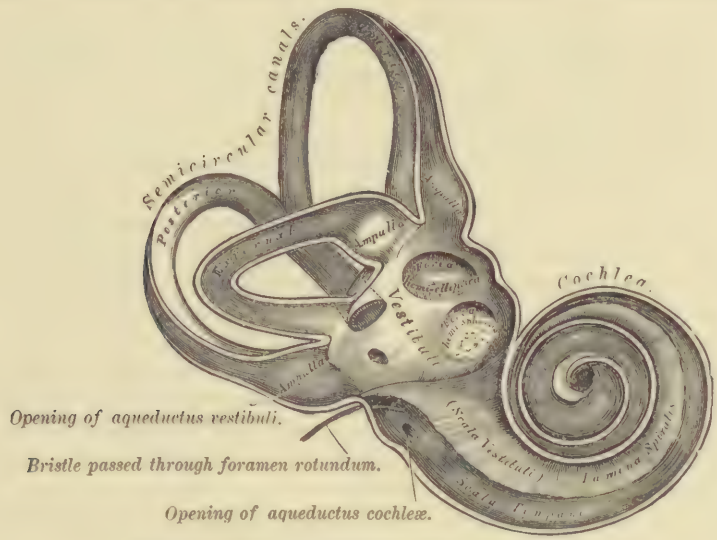


FIG. 767.—The osseous labyrinth laid open (enlarged).

ward, as well as from above downward, and about one-eighth of an inch from without inward. On its *outer* or *tympanic wall* is the **fenestra ovalis** (*fenestra vestibuli*), closed, in the recent state, by the base of the stapes, and its annular ligament. On its *inner wall*, at the forepart, is a small circular depression, **fovea hemisphaerica** or **spherical recess** (*recessus sphaericus*), in which the saccule is placed. This recess is perforated, at its anterior and inferior part, by about a dozen minute holes (*macula cribrosa media*), for the passage of filaments of the auditory nerve to the saccule. Above and behind this depression is an oblique ridge, the **crista vestibuli**. The anterior extremity of the crista vestibuli is the shape of a triangle, and is called the **pyramid** (*pyramis vestibuli*). This ridge bifurcates posteriorly to enclose a small depression, the **recessus cochlearis of Reichert**, which is perforated by eight small holes for the passage of filaments of the auditory nerve which supply the posterior end of the ductus cochlearis. An oval depression is placed in the roof and inner wall of the vestibule above and behind the crista vestibuli. It is called the **fovea hemielliptica**, **elliptical recess** or **spherical recess** (*recessus ellipticus*), and receives the utricle. The pyramid and the adjacent elliptical recess are perforated by numerous minute foramina (*macula cribrosa superior*),

The openings in the pyramid transmit filaments from the vestibular nerve to the utricle; the openings in the elliptical recess transmit filaments from the vestibular nerve to the ampullae of the superior and external semicircular canals. Below and behind the elliptical recess is a groove which deepens into a canal and is called the **aquaeductus vestibuli**. This canal passes to the posterior surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone and opens as a mere crack between the internal auditory meatus and the groove for the lateral sinus. It transmits a small vein, and contains a tubular prolongation of the lining membrane of the vestibule, the **ductus endolymphaticus**, which ends in a *cul-de-sac* between the layers of the dura mater within the cranial cavity. *Behind*, the semicircular canals open into the vestibule by five orifices. In *front* is an elliptical opening, which communicates with the scala vestibuli of the cochlea by an orifice, **apertura scalae vestibuli cochleae**. This opening is bounded below by a thin plate of bone (*lamina spiralis ossea*), which takes origin from the vestibular floor external to the spherical recess and in the cochlea forms the bony portion of the partition between the scala tympani and the scala vestibuli. In the anterior portion of the vestibular floor is a fissure (*fissura vestibuli*), which passes into the bony part of the canal of the cochlea. The external boundary of this fissure is a small, thin plate of bone (*lamina spiralis secundaria*).

The Semicircular Canals (*canales semicirculares ossei*) (Fig. 767).—The semicircular canals are three bony canals situated above and behind the vestibule. They are of unequal length, compressed from side to side, and each describes the greater part of a circle. They measure about one-twentieth of an inch in diameter, and each presents a dilatation at one end, called the **ampulla ossea**, which measures more than twice the diameter of the tube. These canals open into the vestibule by five orifices, one of the apertures being common to two of the canals.

The Superior Semicircular Canal (*canalis semicircularis superior*).—The superior semicircular canal is vertical in direction, and is placed transversely to the long axis of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, on the anterior surface of which its arch forms a round projection. It describes about two-thirds of a circle. Its outer extremity, which is ampullated, communicates by a distinct orifice with the upper part of the vestibule; the opposite end of the canal, which is not dilated, joins with the corresponding part of the posterior canal to form the **crus commune**, which opens into the upper and inner part of the vestibule.

The Posterior Semicircular Canal (*canalis semicircularis posterior*).—The posterior semicircular canal, also vertical in direction, is directed backward, nearly parallel to the posterior surface of the petrous bone; it is the longest of the three; its ampullated end commences at the lower and back part of the vestibule, its opposite end joining to form the common canal already mentioned. In the wall of the ampulla of the posterior canal are a number of small openings (*macula cribrosa inferior*) for the entrance of nerves to the ampulla.

The External or Horizontal Canal (*canalis semicircularis lateralis*).—The external or horizontal canal is the shortest of the three, its arch being directed outward and backward; thus each semicircular canal stands at right angles to the other two. Its ampullated end corresponds to the upper and outer angle of the vestibule, just above the fenestra ovalis, where it opens close to the ampullary end of the superior canal; its opposite end opens by a distinct orifice at the upper and back part of the vestibule.

The Cochlea (Figs. 767, 768, 769, and 770).—The cochlea bears some resemblance to a common snail-shell; it forms the anterior part of the labyrinth, is conical in form, and placed almost horizontally in front of the vestibule; its apex is directed forward and outward, with a slight inclination downward, toward the upper and front part of the inner wall of the tympanum; its base corresponds with the anterior depression at the bottom of the internal auditory meatus, and is perforated by numerous

apertures for the passage of the cochlear divisions of the auditory nerve. It measures nearly a quarter of an inch (5 mm.) from base to apex, and its breadth across

FIG. 768.—Osseous cochlea in vertical section. The broken, white lines indicate the position of the basilar membrane of the canal of the cochlea. Semidiagrammatic. (Testut.)

the base is somewhat greater (about 9 mm.). It consists of a conical-shaped central axis, the **modiolus** or **columella**; of a canal, the **bony canal of the cochlea**, the inner wall of which is formed by the central axis, wound spirally around it for two

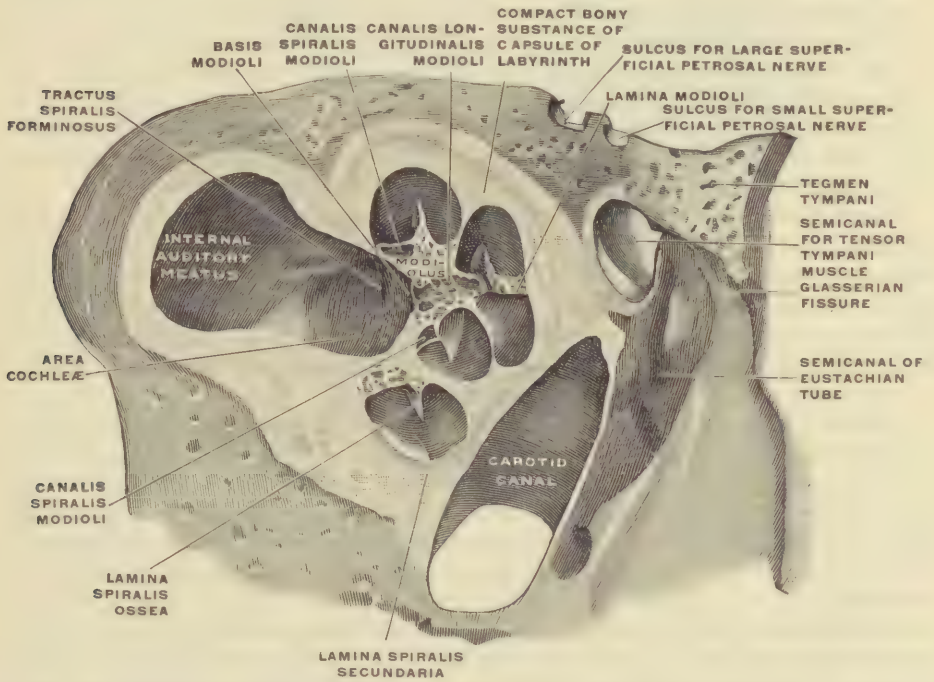


FIG. 769.—Vertical section through the right cochlea, medial portion, viewed from the lateral side. (Spalteholz.)

turns and three-quarters, from the base to the apex, and of a delicate lamina, the **lamina spiralis ossea**, which projects from the modiolus, and, following the windings

of the canal, partially subdivides into two. In the recent state certain membranous layers are attached to the free border of this lamina, which project into the canal and completely separate it into two passages, which, however, communicate with each other at the apex of the modiolus by a small opening, named the **helicotrema.**

The Modiolus (Figs. 769 and 770).—The modiolus or **columella** is the central axis or pillar of the cochlea. It is conical in form, and extends from the base to the apex of the cochlea. Its **base** (*basis modioli*) is broad, and appears at the bottom of the internal auditory meatus, where it corresponds with the area cochleae. It is perforated by numerous orifices, which transmit filaments of the cochlear division of the auditory nerve, the nerves for the first turn and a half being transmitted through the foramina of the **tractus spiralis foraminosus**; the fibres for the apical turn passing up through the foramen centrale. The foramina of the tractus spiralis foraminosus pass up through the modiolus and successively bend outward to reach the attached margin of the lamina spiralis ossea. Here they become enlarged, and by their apposition form a **spiral canal** (*canalis spiralis modioli*), which follows the course of the attached margin of the lamina spiralis ossea and lodges the **ganglion of Corti** (*ganglion spirale cochleae*). The **foramen centrale** is continued as a canal up the middle of the modiolus to its apex, and from this canal numerous minute foramina pass outward to the unattached edge of the lamina spiralis. In the foramina are vessels and nerves. The axis diminishes rapidly in size in the second and succeeding coil.

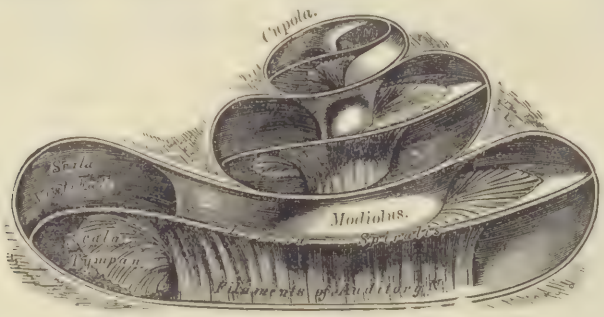


FIG. 770. The cochlea laid open (enlarged).

The Bony Canal or the Spiral Canal of the Cochlea (*canalis spiralis cochleae*) (Fig. 770).—The bony canal of the cochlea takes two turns and three-quarters round the modiolus. The first turn of the canal is called the **basal coil,** the second is called the **central coil,** the third turn is called the **apical coil.** The promontory on the inner wall of the tympanic cavity is caused by the basal coil. The bony canal of the cochlea is a little over an inch in length (about 30 mm.), and diminishes gradually in size from the base to the summit, where it terminates in a *cul-de-sac*, the **cupola** (*cupula*), which forms the apex of the cochlea. The commencement of this canal is about the tenth of an inch in diameter; it diverges from the modiolus toward the tympanum and vestibule, and presents three openings. One, the **fenestra rotunda,** communicates with the tympanum; in the recent state this aperture is closed by a membrane, the **membrana tympani secundaria.** Another aperture, of an elliptical form, enters the vestibule. The third is the aperture of the **aquaeductus cochleae,** leading to a minute funnel-shaped canal, which opens on the basilar surface of the petrous bone internal to the jugular fossa, and transmits a small vein, and also forms a communication between the subarachnoidean space of the skull and the perilymph contained in the scala tympani.

The Lamina Spiralis Ossea.—The lamina spiralis ossea is a bony shelf or ledge which projects outward from the modiolus into the interior of the spiral canal,

and, like the canal, takes two and three-quarter turns around the modiolus. It reaches about half-way toward the outer wall of the spiral tube, and partially divides its cavity into two passages or **scalae**, of which the upper is named the **scala vestibuli**, while the lower is termed the **scala tympani**. Near the summit of the cochlea the lamina terminates in a hook-shaped process, the **hamulus** (*hamulus laminae spiralis*), which assists in forming the boundary of a small opening, the **helicotrema**, by which the two scalae communicate with each other. From the canalis spiralis modioli numerous foramina pass outward through the osseous spiral lamina as far as its outer or free edge. In the lower part of the first turn a second bony lamina (*lamina spiralis secundaria*) projects inward from the outer wall of the bony tube; it does not, however, reach the primary osseous spiral lamina, so that if viewed from the vestibule a narrow fissure, the **fissura vestibuli**, is seen between them.

The membrana basilaris (Fig. 768) is stretched from the unattached edge of the lamina spiralis ossea to the outer wall of the cochlea. The lamina spiralis

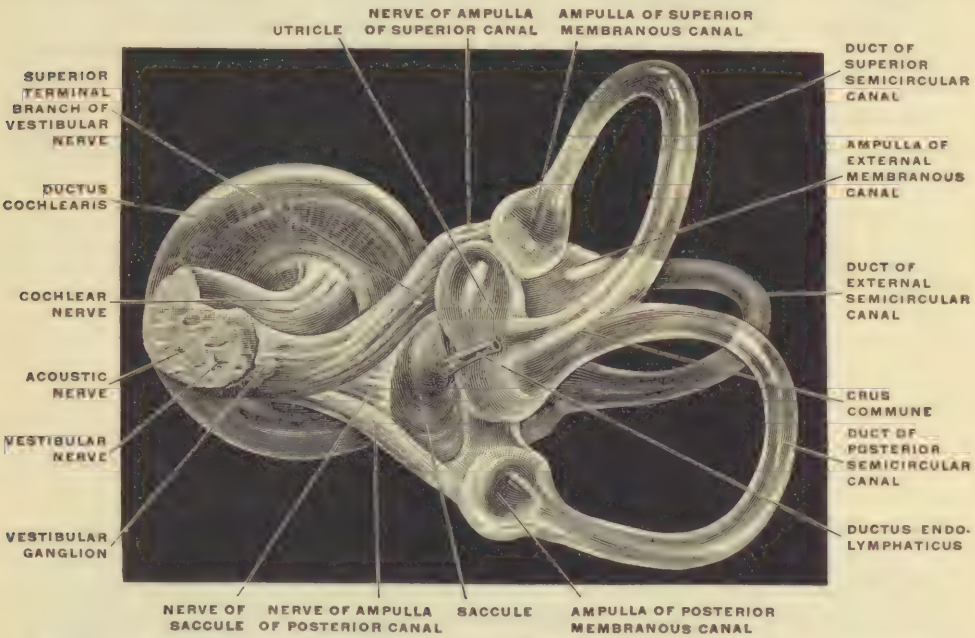


FIG. 771.—The right membranous labyrinth of an adult, isolated, medial and posterior view. (Spalteholz.)

makes an incomplete septum between the scala tympani and scala vestibuli; the membrana basilaris completes the septum. Even with the perfected septum the two scalae communicate at the apex of the cochlea by means of the helicotrema.

The Fundus of the Internal Auditory Meatus (*fundus meatus acustici interni*).—This structure is the inner wall of the vestibule and the base of the modiolus. A transverse ridge (*crista transversa*) maps it off into two parts, the **fossula superior** and the **fossula inferior**. The **facial area** (*area n. facialis*) is in the anterior portion of the fossula superior. The opening seen here is the beginning of the **aqueduct of Fallopius** (*canalis facialis*) for the transmission of the facial nerve. The **superior area of the vestibule** (*area vestibularis superior*) is the posterior portion of the fossula superior. Here the nerves perforate which supply the utricle and the ampullae of the superior and external semicircular canals (Cunningham). The **area cochleae** is the anterior portion of the fossula inferior. In it is the *canalis centralis* for the nerve-fibres to the apical turn of the cochlea; and the *tractus spiralis foraminosa* for the transmission of nerves to the first turn and a half of the cochlea. The

inferior area of the vestibule (*area vestibularis inferior*) is back of the area cochleae and a ridge separates the two. It transmits nerves to the saccule. At the posterior part of the fossula inferior is a solitary foramen, the **foramen singulare**, which transmits nerves to the ampulla of the posterior semicircular canal.

The Membranous Labyrinth (Labyrinthus Membranaceus) (Figs. 771, 772).

The membranous labyrinth is contained within the bony cavities just described, having the same general form as the cavities in which it is contained, though considerably smaller, being separated from the bony walls by a quantity of fluid, the **perilymph** or **liquor Cotunnii** (*perilympha*). It does not, however, float loosely in this fluid, but in places is fixed to the walls of the cavity. The membranous sac contains fluid, the **endolymph** (*endolympha*), and on the sac the ramifications of the auditory nerve are distributed.

Within the osseous vestibule the membranous labyrinth does not quite preserve the form of the bony cavity, but presents two membranous sacs, the **utricle** and the **saccule**.

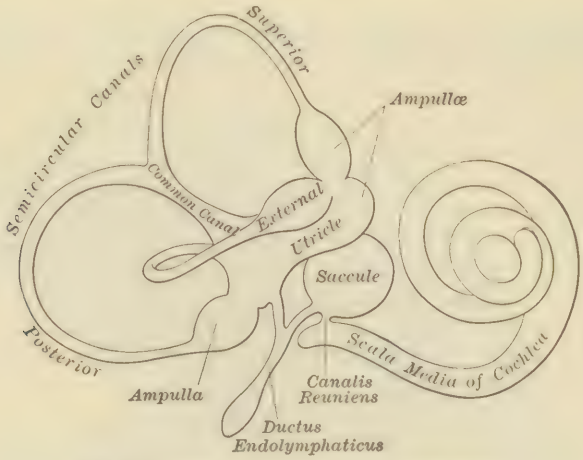


FIG. 772.—The membranous labyrinth (enlarged).

The Utricle (*utriculus*).—The utricle is the larger of the two, of an oblong form, compressed laterally, and occupies the upper and back part of the vestibule, lying in contact with the fovea semi-elliptica and the part below it. The highest portion of the utricle is called the **recess** (*recessus utriculi*); it is placed in the elliptical recess, and opening into it are the ampulla of the superior and external semicircular canals. The central portion of the recess of the utricle receives upon the side the external semicircular canal. This opening has not an ampulla. The **superior sinus** is a prolongation upward and backward from the central portion of the utricle and in the superior sinus the crus commune and the superior and posterior semicircular canals open. The lower and inner portion of the utricle is the **inferior sinus**, and into it the ampulla of the posterior semicircular canal opens. The floor and anterior wall of the recess of the utricle are much thicker than elsewhere, and form the **macula acustica utriculi**, which receives the utricular filaments of the auditory nerve and has attached to its internal surface a layer of calcareous particles which are called **otoliths**. The cavity of the utricle communicates behind with the membranous semicircular canals by five orifices. From its anterior wall is given off a small canal (*ductus utriculosaccularis*), which joins with a canal from the saccule, the **ductus endolymphaticus**. The utricle is joined to the bony wall by numerous fibrous bands.

The Saccule (*sacculus*).—The saccule is the smaller of the two vesicular sacs; it is globular in form, lies in the elliptical recess near the opening of the **scala vestibuli** of the cochlea. Its anterior part exhibits an oval thickening, the **macula acustica sacculi**, to which are distributed the saccular filaments of the auditory nerve. Its cavity does not directly communicate with that of the utricle. From the posterior wall is given off a canal, the **ductus endolymphaticus**. This duct passes along the aquaeductus vestibuli and ends in a blind pouch on the posterior surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, where it is in contact with the dura mater. The upper extremity of the saccule looks upward and backward and forms the **sinus utricularis sacculi**. This lies in contact with but is not a part of the wall of the utricle. The vestibule contains the closed end of the ductus cochlearis. This is known as the **caecum vestibulare**. The **ductus cochlearis** lies below the saccule in what Reichert described as the **recessus cochlearis**, and it enters the spiral canal. From the lower part of the saccule a short tube, the **canalis reuniens of Hensen** (*ductus reuniens* [*Henseni*]), passes downward and outward to open into the ductus cochlearis. The saccule is held in position by numerous fibrous bands which pass between the saccule and the bony wall.

The Membranous Semicircular Canals (*ductus semicirculares*).—The membranous semicircular canals are about one-third the diameter of the osseous canals, but in number, shape, and general form they are precisely similar, and present at one end within the osseous ampulla a membranous ampulla. These ampullae are called **ampullae membranaceae**. The canals open by five orifices into the utricle, one opening being common to two canals. In the ampullae the wall is thickened, and projects into the cavity as a fiddle-shaped, transversely placed elevation, the **septum transversum**, in which the nerves end.

The membranous canals are attached here and there to the bone by numerous fibrous bands, the so-called ligaments (*ligamenta labyrinthi canaliculorum*).

Structure.—The walls of the utricle, saccule, and membranous semicircular canals consist of three layers. The *outer layer* is a loose and flocculent structure, apparently composed of ordinary fibrous tissue, containing blood-vessels and pigment-cells analogous to those in the pigment coat of the retina. The *middle layer*, thicker and more transparent, bears some resemblance to the hyaloid membrane, but it presents on its internal surface, especially in the semicircular canals, numerous papilliform projections, and, on the addition of acetic acid, presents an appearance of longitudinal fibrillation and elongated nuclei. The *inner layer* is formed of polygonal nucleated epithelial cells. The **raphé** of each semicircular canal is a line upon the concave side of the canal. Along the raphé the height of the epithelial cells is distinctly increased. In the ampullae adjacent to the cristae acusticae the cells are cylindrical and constitute the **plana semilunata**. In the maculae of the utricle and saccule, and in the transverse septa of the ampullae of the canals, the middle coat is thickened and the epithelium is columnar, is increased in height, and passes into the neuro-epithelium. The **neuro-epithelium** consists of supporting cells and hair-cells.

1. The **supporting cells** are long, wider at the ends than in the centre, contain an oval nucleus, and the lower end of the cell is fissured.

2. The **hair-cells** are columnar, with bulged lower ends and free upper ends. The bulged lower ends, each of which contains a spherical nucleus, do not reach higher than the middle of the epithelial layer. Each free upper end is surmounted by a long, tapering filament. These filaments constitute **auditory hair**, and they project into the cavity. The filaments of the auditory nerve enter these parts, and, having pierced the outer and thickened middle layer, they lose their medullary sheath, and their axis-cylinders divide into three or four branches at the larger and deeper ends of the hair-cells. These branches form a horizontal plexus

(*stratum plexiforme*). "These surround the hair-cells like the calyx of a flower, and give off ascending branches, which, however, do not reach the surface. In this way one branch usually comes in contact with many hair-cells."[1]

FIG. 773.—Floor of scala media, showing the organ of Corti, etc.

Numerous small prismatic bodies termed **statoliths, otokonien crystals** or **otoliths,** and consisting of a mass of minute crystalline grains of carbonate of lime, held

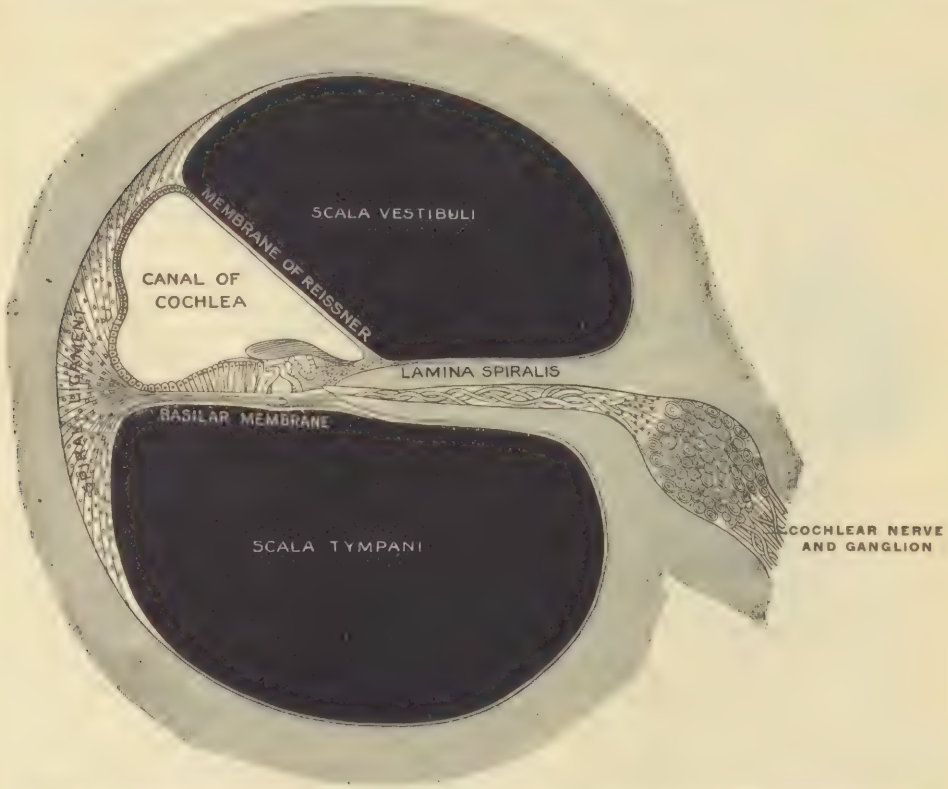


FIG. 774.—Cochlea in transverse section. Observe especially the canal of the cochlea, which is a part of the membranous labyrinth. (Testut.)

together in a mesh of delicate fibrous tissue, are contained in the walls of the utricle and saccule opposite the distribution of the nerves. The membrane is

[1] Histology and Microscopic Anatomy. By Dr. Ladislaus Szymonowicz. Translated and edited by John Bruce MacCallum, M.D.

called the **otolith membrane**. A calcareous material is also, according to Bowman, sparingly scattered in the cells lining the ampullae of the semicircular canals. The conical thickening in the ampulla corresponds to the otolith membrane and is called the **cupola**.

The **Membranous Cochlea Ductus Cochlearis** or **Scala Media** consists of a spirally arranged tube enclosed in the bony canal of the cochlea and lying along its outer wall. It begins as a blind end in the recessus cochlearis of the vestibule. This beginning is the **caecum vestibulare**. It ascends inside the bony cochlea and terminates at the apex of the cochlea by a blind end, the **lagena** (*caecum cupulare*). The manner in which it is formed will now be described.

The osseous spiral lamina, as above stated, extends only part of the distance between the modiolus and the outer bony wall of the cochlea. A membrane, the **basilar membrane** (*membrana basilaris*) (Fig. 773), stretches from its free edge to the outer wall of the cochlea,and completes the roof of the scala tympani. A second and more delicate membrane, the **membrane of Reissner** (*membrana vestibularis* [*Reissneri*]) (Fig.773), extends from the thickened periosteum covering the lamina spiralis ossea to the outer wall of the cochlea, to which it is attached at some little distance above the membrana basilaris. A canal is thus shut off between the scala tympani below and the scala vestibuli above; this is the **membranous canal of the cochlea** (*ductus cochlearis* or *scala media*) (Fig. 774). It is triangular on transverse section, its roof being formed by the membrane of Reissner, its outer wall by the periosteum which lines the bony canal, and its floor by the membrana basilaris, and the outer part of the lamina spiralis ossea, on the former of which is placed the organ of Corti. Reissner's membrane is thin and homogeneous, and is covered on its upper and under surfaces by a layer of epithelium. The periosteum, which forms the outer wall of the ductus cochlearis, is greatly thickened and altered in character, forming what is called the **spiral ligament of the cochlea** (*ligamentum spirale cochleae*)(Fig.773). It projects inward below as a triangular prominence, the **crista basilaris**, which gives attachment to the outer edge of the membrana basilaris,and immediately above which is a concavity, the **sulcus spiralis externus** (Fig. 773). The upper portion of the ligamentum spirale contains numerous capillary loops and small blood-vessels, and forms what is termed the **stria vascularis**. The stria is limited below by a prominence (*prominentia spiralis*), in which a blood-vessel (*vas prominens*) is distinctly visible.

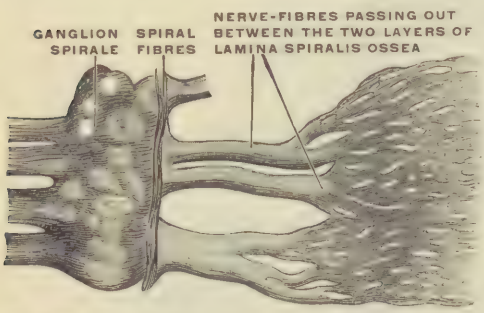


Fig. 775.—Part of the cochlear nerve, highly magnified. (Henle.)

The **lamina spiralis ossea** (Fig. 774) consists of two plates of bone extending outward; between these are the canals for the transmission of the filaments of the auditory nerve. On the upper plate of that part of the osseous spiral lamina which is outside Reissner's membrane the periosteum is thickened to form the **limbus laminae spiralis**, and this terminates externally in a concavity, the **sulcus spiralis internus**, which presents, on section, the form of the letter C; the upper part of the letter, formed by the overhanging extremity of the limbus, is named the **labium vestibulare**; the lower part, prolonged and tapering, is called the **labium tympanicum**, and is perforated by 4000 foramina (*foramina nervosa*) for the passage of the cochlear nerves. Externally, the labium tympanicum is continuous with the membrana basilaris. The upper surface of the labium vestibulare is intersected at right angles by a number of furrows, between which are numerous elevations; these present the appearance of teeth along the free margin of the

labium, and have been named by Huschke the **auditory teeth**. There are 7000 auditory teeth. The basilar membrane may be divided into two areas, inner and outer. The inner is thin, and is named the **zona arcuata** or **zona tecta** (Fig. 773); it supports the organ of Corti. The outer is thicker and striated, and is termed the **zona pectinata**. The under surface of the membrane is covered by a layer of

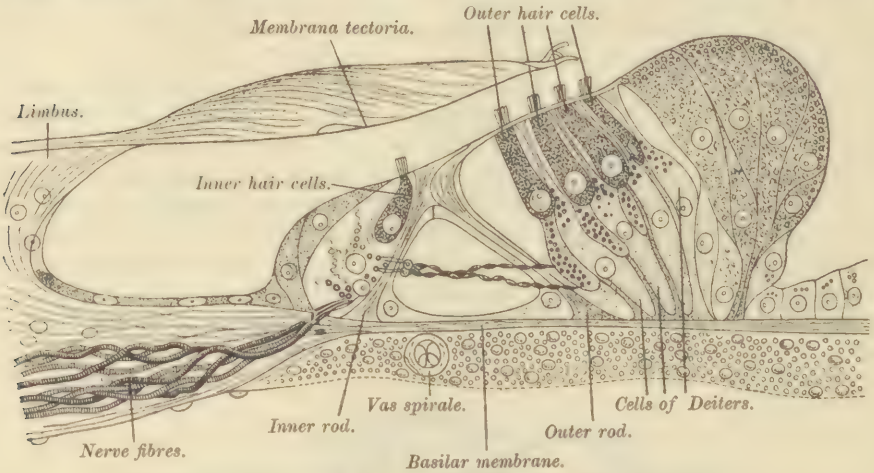


FIG. 776.—Section through the organ of Corti. Magnified. (G. Retzius.)

vascular connective tissue. One of these vessels is somewhat larger than the rest, and is named the **vas spirale** (Fig. 776); it lies below Corti's tunnel.

Organ of Corti[1] (*organon spirale* [*Cortii*]) (Figs. 773, 774, 776, and 777).—The inner part of the membrana basilaris—that is, the part directed toward the canal of the ductus cochlearis—is covered with epithelium, which is largely neuro-epithe-

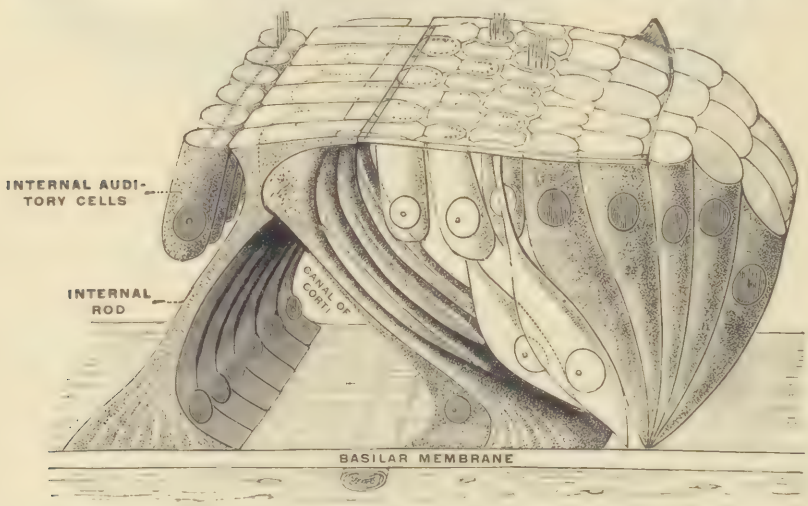


FIG. 777.—Organ of Corti. Diagrammatic view of a small portion. (Testut.)

lium. It forms the **organ of Corti**. In this lie the terminations of the cochlear nerve. It appears at first sight as a papilla, winding spirally throughout the whole length of the ductus cochlearis, from which circumstance it has been designated the **papilla spiralis**. More accurately viewed, it is seen to be composed of a remarkable arrangement of cells, which may be likened to the keyboard of a

[1] Corti's original paper is in the Zeitschrift f. Wissen. Zool., iii., 109.

pianoforte. The organ of Corti consists of an *inner part* and an *outer part*. Each part contains **auditory cells** and **supporting cells**. Of these cells, the two central ones are rod-like bodies and are called the **inner and outer rods of Corti**. They are placed on the basilar membrane, at some little distance from each other, but are inclined toward each other, so as to meet at their opposite extremities, and form a series of arches roofing over a minute tunnel, the **canal** or **tunnel of Corti**, between them and the basilar membrane, which ascends spirally through the whole length of the cochlea.

The **inner rods** (Fig. 776), some 6000 in number, are more numerous than the outer ones, and rest on the basilar membrane, close to the labium tympanicum; they project obliquely upward and outward, and terminate above in expanded extremities which resemble in shape the upper end of the ulna, with its sigmoid cavity, coronoid and olecranon processes. On the outer side of the rod, in the angle formed between it and the basilar membrane, is a nucleated mass of protoplasm; while on the inner side is a row of epithelial cells, **inner hair-cells** (Fig. 776), surmounted by a brush of fine, stiff, hair-like processes. On the inner side of these cells are two or three rows of columnar supporting cells, which are continuous with the cubical cells lining the sulcus spiralis internus.

FIG. 778.—Longitudinal section of the cochlea, showing the relations of the scalae, the ganglion spirale, etc. S. V., Scala vestibuli. S. T., Scala tympani. S. M., Scala media. L. S., Ligamentum spirale. G. S., Ganglion spirale.

The **outer rods** (Fig. 776), numbering about 4000, also rest by a broad foot on the basilar membrane; they incline upward and inward, and their upper extremity resembles the head and bill of a swan; the back of the head fitting into the concavity—the analogue of the sigmoid cavity—of one or more of the internal rods, and the bill projecting outward as a phalangeal process of the membrana reticularis, presently to be described.

In the head of these outer rods is an oval portion, where the fibres of which the rod appears to be composed are deficient, and which stains more deeply with carmine than the rest of the rod. At the base of the rod, on its internal side—that is to say, in the angle formed by the rod with the basilar membrane—is a similar protoplasmic mass to that found on the outer side of the base of the inner rod; these masses of protoplasm are probably the undifferentiated portions of the cells from which the rods are developed. External to the outer rod are three or four successive rows of epithelial cells, more elongated than those found on the

internal side of the inner rod, but, like them, furnished with minute hairs or cilia. These are termed the **outer hair-cells**, in contradistinction to the inner hair-cells above referred to. There are about 12,000 outer hair-cells, and about 3500 inner hair-cells.

The hair-cells are somewhat oval in shape; their free extremities are on a level with the heads of Corti's rods, and from each some twenty fine hairlets project and are arranged in the form of a crescent, the concavity of which opens inward. The deep ends of the cells are rounded and contain large nuclei; they reach only as far as the middle of Corti's rods, and are in contact with the ramifications of the nervous filaments. Between the rows of the outer hair-cells are rows of supporting cells, called the **cells of Deiters**; their expanded bases are planted on the basilar membrane, while their opposite ends present a clubbed extremity or **phalangeal process**. Immediately to the outer side of Deiters's cells are some five or six rows of columnar cells, the **supporting cells of Hensen**. Their bases are narrow, while their upper parts are expanded and form a rounded elevation on the floor of the ductus cochlearis. The columnar cells lying outside Hensen's cells are termed the **cells of Claudius**. A space is seen between the outer rods of Corti and the adjacent hair-cells; this is called the **space of Nuel**.

The **lamina reticularis** or **membrane of Kölliker** is a delicate framework perforated by rounded holes. It extends from the inner rods of Corti to the external row of the outer hair-cells, and is formed by several rows of "minute fiddle-shaped cuticular structures" called **phalanges**, between which are circular apertures containing the free ends of the hair-cells. The innermost row of phalanges consists of the phalangeal processes of the outer rods of Corti; the outer rows are formed by the modified free ends of Deiters's cells.

Covering over these structures, but not touching them, is the **membrana tectoria** or **membrane of Corti** (Figs. 773 and 776), which is attached to the vestibular surface of the lamina spiralis close to the attachment of the membrane of Reissner. It is thin near its inner margin, and overlies the auditory teeth of Huschke. Its outer half is thick, and along its lower edge, opposite the inner hair-cells, is a clear band, named **Hensen's stripe**. Externally, the membrane becomes much thinner, and is attached to the outer row of Deiters's cells (Retzius).

The fibres from the cochlear nerve enter the organ of Corti as axis-cylinders, which pass directly to the deepest portions of the inner and outer hair-cells by way of the canal of Corti or by the space of Nuel. The terminations arborize about the lower portions of the hair-cells and end on the surfaces of the hair-cells.

The **inner surface of the osseous labyrinth** is lined by an exceedingly thin fibro-serous membrane, analogous to a periosteum, from its close adhesion to the inner surfaces of these cavities, and performing the office of a serous membrane by its free surface. It lines the vestibule, and from this cavity is continued into the semicircular canals and the scala vestibuli of the cochlea, and through the helicotrema into the scala tympani. A delicate tubular process is prolonged along the aqueduct of the vestibule to the inner surface of the dura mater. This membrane is continued across the fenestra ovalis and fenestra rotunda, and consequently has no communication with the lining membrane of the tympanum. Its attached surface is rough and fibrous, and closely adherent to the bone; its free surface is smooth and pale, covered with a layer of epithelium, and secretes a thin, limpid fluid, the **aqua labyrinthi, liquor Cotunnii** or **perilymph** (Blainville).

The scala media is closed above and below. The upper blind extremity is termed the **lagena**, and is attached to the cupola at the upper part of the helicotrema; the lower end is lodged in the recessus cochlearis of the vestibule. Near this blind extremity, the scala media receives the **canalis reuniens of Hensen** (Fig. 772), a very delicate canal, by which the ductus cochlearis is brought into continuity with the saccule.

The Arteries of the Labyrinth.—The arteries of the labyrinth are the **internal auditory,** from the basilar, and the **stylo-mastoid,** from the posterior auricular. The internal auditory divides at the bottom of the internal auditory meatus into two branches, cochlear and vestibular.

The **cochlear artery** divides into numerous minute branches, which enter foramina in the tractus spiralis foraminosa and course in the lamina spiralis ossea to reach the membranous structures. The largest of the cochlear branches is in the canalis centralis.

The **vestibular branches** accompany the nerves, and supply the membranous structures in the vestibule and semicircular canals. Two arteries go to each canal. The two vessels enter opposite extremities of the canal, and anastomose at the summit of the canal. The vestibular vessels form a minute capillary network in the substance of each membranous labyrinth.

The Veins of the Labyrinth.—The veins of the vestibule and semicircular canals, the **auditory veins,** accompany the arteries, and receive those of the cochlea at the base of the modiolus, to form the **internal auditory vein** (*vv. auditivae internae*), which opens into the posterior part of the inferior petrosal sinus or into the lateral sinus.

The Nerves of the Labyrinth.—The **auditory nerve** (*n. acusticus*), the special nerve of the sense of hearing, divides, at the bottom of the internal auditory meatus, into two branches, the **cochlear** and **vestibular.**

The **Vestibular Nerve** (*n. vestibularis*), the posterior of the two, presents, as it lies in the internal auditory meatus, a ganglion, the **vestibular ganglion** or the **ganglion of Scarpa** (*ganglion vestibulare*); the nerve divides into three branches which pass through minute openings at the upper and back part of the bottom of the meatus (*area vestibular posterior*), and, entering the vestibule, are distributed to the utricle and to the ampulla of the external and superior semicircular canals.

The nervous filaments enter the ampullary enlargements opposite the septum transversum, and arborize around the hair-cells. In the utricle and saccule the nerve-fibres pierce the membrana propria of the maculae, and end in arborizations around the hair-cells.

The **Cochlear Nerve** (*n. cochlearis*) gives off the branch to the saccule, the filaments of which are transmitted from the internal auditory meatus through the foramina of the *area vestibularis inferior*, which lies at the lower and back part of the floor of the meatus. It also gives off the branch for the ampulla of the posterior semicircular canal, which leaves the meatus through the **foramen singulare**.

The rest of the cochlear nerve divides into numerous filaments at the base of the modiolus; those for the basal and middle coils pass through the foramina in the tractus foraminosus, those for the apical coil through the canalis centralis, and the nerves bend outward to pass between the lamellae of the osseous spiral lamina. Occupying the spiral canal of the modiolus is the **spiral ganglion** or **ganglion of Corti** (*ganglion spirale*), consisting of bipolar nerve-cells, which really constitute the true cells of origin of this nerve, one pole being prolonged centrally to the brain and the other peripherally to the hair-cells of Corti's organ. Reaching the outer edge of the osseous spiral lamina, the nerve fibres pass through the foramina in the labium tympanicum, where they lose their axis-cylinders. They enter the organ of Corti and pass directly to the deep portions of the inner and outer hair-cells by way of the canal of Corti and the space of Nuel. The terminations arborize about the lower portions of the hair-cells and end in the surfaces of the cells.

Surgical Anatomy.—*Malformations*, such as imperfect development of the external parts, absence of the meatus, or supernumerary auricles, are occasionally met with. Or the pinna may present a *congenital fistula*, which is due to defective closure of the first visceral cleft, or rather of that portion of it which is not concerned in the formation of the Eustachian tube, tympanum, and meatus. In some cases the cephalo-auricular angle is almost absent; in others it is nearly

a right angle. *Projecting ears* and *long ears* are said by some observers to be more common among degenerates, criminals, and the insane than among the normal, the non-criminal, and the sane. The skin of the auricle is thin and richly supplied with blood, but in spite of this it is frequently the seat of *frost-bite*, due to the fact that it is much exposed to cold, and lacks the usual underlying subcutaneous fat found in most other parts of the body. A collection of blood is sometimes found between the cartilage and perichondrium (*haematoma auris*), usually the result of traumatism, but not necessarily due to this cause. It is said to occur most frequently in the ears of the insane. *Keloid* sometimes grows in the auricle around the puncture made for ear-rings, and *epithelioma* occasionally affects this part. Deposits of *urate of soda* are often met with in the pinna in gouty subjects.

The external auditory meatus can be most satisfactorily examined by light reflected down a funnel-shaped speculum; by gently moving the latter in different directions the whole of the canal and membrana tympani can be brought into view. The points to be noted are: the presence of wax or foreign bodies, the size of the canal, and the condition of the membrana tympani. The *accumulation of wax* is often the cause of deafness, and may give rise to very serious consequences, causing ulceration of the membrane and even absorption of the bony wall of the canal. *Foreign bodies* are not infrequently introduced into the ear by children, and, when situated in the first portion of the canal, may be removed with tolerable facility by means of a minute hook or loop of fine wire, the parts being illuminated with reflected light; but when they have slipped beyond the narrow middle part of the meatus, their removal is in nowise easy, and attempts to effect it, in inexperienced hands, may be followed by destruction of the membrana tympani and possibly injury of the contents of the tympanum. The calibre of the external auditory canal may be narrowed by *inflammation* of its lining membrane, running on to *suppuration;* by *periostitis;* by *polypi*, *sebaceous tumors*, and *exostoses*. The membrana tympani, when seen in a healthy ear, "reflects light strongly, and, owing to its peculiar curvature, presents a bright spot of triangular shape at its lower and anterior portion." From the apex of this, proceeding upward and slightly forward, is a white streak formed by the handle of the malleus, while near the upper part of the membrane may be seen a slight projection, caused by the short process of the malleus. In disease alterations in color, lustre, curvature or inclination, and perforation must be noted. Such perforations may be caused by a blow, a loud report, a wound, or as the result of suppuration in the middle ear.

The upper wall of the meatus is separated from the cranial cavity by a thin plate of bone; the anterior wall is separated from the temporo-mandibular joint and parotid gland by the bone forming the glenoid fossa; and the posterior wall is in relation with the mastoid cells; hence *inflammation* of the external auditory meatus may readily extend to the membranes of the brain, to the temporo-mandibular joint, or to the mastoid cells; and, in addition to this, blows on the chin may cause fracture of the wall of the meatus.

The nerves supplying the meatus are the *auricular branch of the pneumogastric*, the *auriculo-temporal*, and the *auricularis magnus*. The connections of these nerves explain the fact of the occurrence, in cases of any irritation of the meatus, of constant coughing and sneezing from implication of the pneumogastric, or of yawning from implication of the auriculo-temporal. No doubt also the association of *earache with toothache* in cancer of the tongue is due to implication of the same nerve, a branch of the fifth, which supplies also the teeth and the tongue. The vessels of the meatus and membrana tympani are derived from the *posterior auricular*, *temporal*, and *internal maxillary arteries*. The upper half of the membrana tympani is much more richly supplied with blood than the lower half. For this reason, and also to avoid the chorda tympani nerve and ossicles, *incisions through the membrane* should be made at the lower and posterior part.

The principal point in connection with the *surgical anatomy of the tympanum* is its relations to other parts. Its roof is formed by a thin plate of bone, which, with the dura mater, is all that separates it from the temporal lobe of the brain. Its floor is immediately above the *jugular fossa* and the *carotid canal*, the fossa being behind and the canal in front. Its posterior wall presents the openings of the *mastoid cells*. On its anterior wall is the opening of the *Eustachian tube*. Thus it follows that in disease of the middle ear we may get *subdural abscess*, *septic meningitis*, or *abscess of the cerebrum* or *cerebellum* from extension of the inflammation through the bony roof; *thrombosis of the lateral sinus*, with or without pyæmia, by extension through the floor; or *mastoid abscess* by extension backward. In addition to this, we may get fatal hemorrhage from the internal carotid in destructive changes of the middle ear; and in throat disease we may get the inflammation extending up the Eustachian tube to the middle ear. The Eustachian tube is accessible from the nose. If the nose and mouth be closed and an attempt made to expire air, a sense of pressure with dulness of hearing is produced in both ears, from the air finding its way up the Eustachian tube and bulging out the membrana tympani. During the act of swallowing, the pharyngeal orifice of the tube, which is normally closed, is opened, probably by the action of the Dilator tubea muscle. This fact was employed by Politzer in devising an easy method of inflating the tube. The nozzle of an india-rubber syringe is inserted into the nostril; the patient takes a mouthful of water and holds it in his mouth, both nostrils are closed with the finger and thumb to prevent the escape of air, and the patient is then requested to swallow; as he does so the

surgeon squeezes the bulb and the air is forced out of the syringe into his nose, and is driven into the Eustachian tube, which is now open. The impact of the air against the membrana tympani can be heard by the surgeon, if the membrane is intact, sound being conveyed by means of a piece of india-rubber tubing, one end of which is inserted into the meatus of the patient's ear, the other into that of the surgeon. The direct examination of the Eustachian tube is made by the Eustachian catheter. This is passed along the floor of the nostril, close to the septum, with the point touching the floor, to the posterior wall of the pharynx. When this is felt, the catheter is to be withdrawn about half an inch, and the point rotated outward through a quarter of a circle, and pushed again slightly backward, when it will enter the orifice of the tube, and will be found to be caught, and air forced into the catheter will be heard impinging on the tympanic membrane if the ears of the patient and surgeon are connected by an india-rubber tube.

THE SKIN (INTEGUMENTUM COMMUNE).

The skin covers the body surface and is continuous with the mucous membrane at the origin and termination of the alimentary canal and at the openings of other canals. The skin is a protective coat, a regulator of body-temperature, contains multitudes of the terminations of sensory nerves, and is the seat of the **organ of touch** (*organon tactus*). These nerve-terminations are connected with nerve-fibres of temperature, pressure, and pain. Connected with the skin are sweat-glands which have important excretory functions and sebaceous glands. From its superficial part come appendages, the hairs, and nails. The skin is elastic and varies in thickness from 0.5 mm. to 4 mm. It is thinnest in the eyelids and prepuce, and thickest over the back of the neck, back of the shoulders, palms of the hands, and soles of the feet. Its color depends in part on the blood within it, and in part upon pigment. The deepest hue is about the anus, in the genital region, in the axillae, over the mammary glands, and in the parts exposed to air, light, and varied temperatures. The color varies with age, being pinkish in extreme youth and becoming yellow in old age. It varies with exposure and with climate, being deepest in those who brave all weathers and temperatures and in those who dwell beneath a tropical sun. It also varies with race, and this is so well recognized that races are classified by the color of the skin into the Black, White, Yellow, and Brown races. The color of the skin is also affected in certain diseases; being extremely pale in anæmia, brown in Addison's disease, yellow in jaundice, etc.

FIG. 779.—The furrows and ridges of the surface of the skin from the palm or surface of the middle finger. (Toldt.)

In most situations the skin is movable, but in some it is attached closely to underlying structures, and is consequently immovable on the scalp, the palms of the hands, the soles of the feet, and the outer portion of the pinna of the ear. The skin is fairly smooth, but close examination discloses multitudes of openings, creases, furrows, depressions, folds, and hairs.

Hair-follicles open upon the surface, and the ducts of sebaceous glands and of sweat-glands perforate the skin.

About the joints are **folds of skin** (*retinacula cutis*), and temporary folds or wrinkles are created by the contraction of superficial muscles. The *facial wrinkles* of advancing years are due to habitual expression and loss of skin elasticity. A *dimple* is a permanent pit or depression due to adhesion of the surface to parts beneath. The ridges and furrows on the palms, soles, and flexor aspects of the

digits are permanent, and over the palmar surface of the digits they are arranged in definite forms which endure through life and are so distinctive that they have been utilized by police officials in determining the identity of individuals. These folds are due to the papillae of the skin being arranged in rows; some of the papillae proliferate, and linear depressions occur in the horny layer (Philippson).

FIG. 780.—Anterior surface.

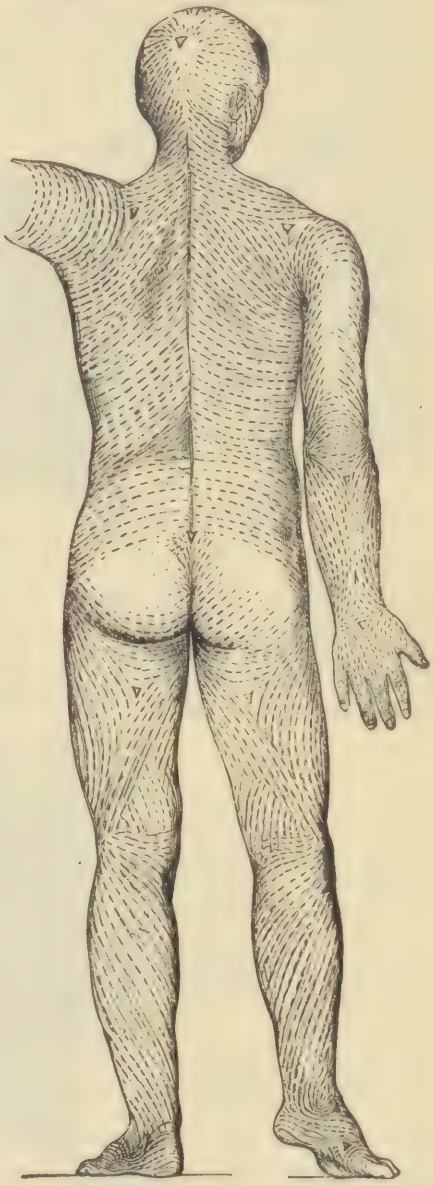


FIG. 781.—Posterior surface.

The general course of the connective-tissue bundles of the corium, determined by the direction assumed by the linear clefts made in the skin when it is punctured by a round awl. (Langer.)

Fig. 779 shows **skin ridges** (*cristae cutis*), **skin furrows** (*sulci cutis*), furrows opposite joints due to acts of flexion, and called **flexure furrows**, and **longitudinal furrows**.

When the skin is punctured by a round awl it tends to split in a definite direction, which direction varies with the region stabbed. These clefts are known

as the **lines of cleavage of Langer** (Figs. 780 and 781), and depend upon the arrangement of the connective-tissue bundles of the corium. These connective-tissue bundles certainly influence the formation of folds and furrows. In many portions of the body the cutaneous surface is divided by linear furrows into irregularly shaped areas (Fig. 782). The skin consists of two layers: a superficial layer, the **epidermis**, and a deep layer, the **corium** or **dermis**.

The **Corium, Cutis Vera, Dermis** or **True Skin** (Figs. 783, 784, and 786) is a connective-tissue structure which arises from the mesoderm. It consists especially of connective tissue and elastic fibres; it contributes elasticity to the skin, and is the seat of the sensitive layer. The corium is composed of two layers, the **reticular** and the **papillary.**

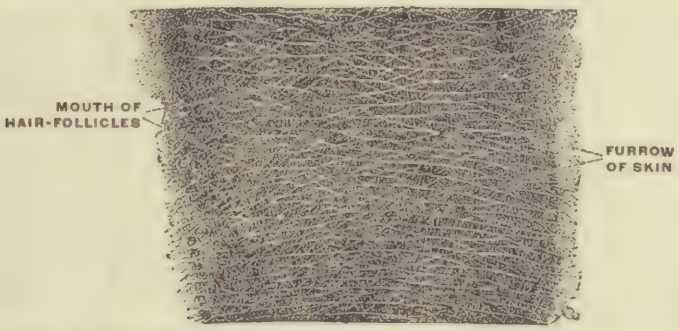


FIG. 782.—The furrows of the skin and the areas which these furrows delimit, reproduced from an impression of the dorsal surface of the wrist. (Toldt.)

The **Deep** or **Reticular Layer** or **Tunica Propria** (*stratum reticulare*) rests upon the subcutaneous tissue. It passes superficially into the papillary layer, and at most places into the subcutaneous tissue without a sharp line of differentiation. At some places, for instance in the nipple, the deep layer of the corium rests upon a layer of muscular fibre. In the face this muscle-fibre is striated and sends

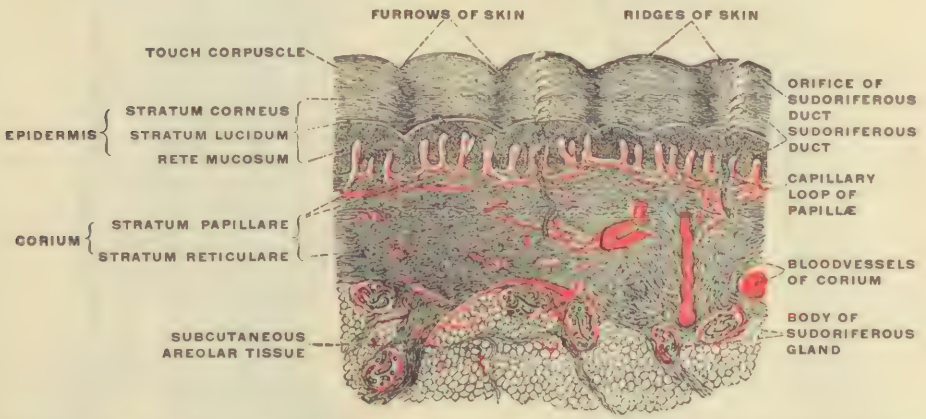


FIG. 783.—Vertical section through the skin of the finger-tip. The layers of the epidermis and of the corium. The subcutaneous areolar tissue. The sudoriferous or sweat-gland. (Toldt.)

prolongations to the papillary layer; in the nipple and scrotum it is non-striated. The reticular layer is composed of bundles of white fibrous tissue, arranged in a network. In the meshes of the network are fat, blood-vessels, lymphatics, sebaceous glands, sweat-glands, and hair-follicles.

The **Subcutaneous Areolar Tissue** or **Tela Subcutanea** (*panniculus adiposus*) connects the skin to the parts beneath; it is composed of bundles of connective tissue

which cross repeatedly and form spaces. In almost all regions the spaces contain fat, but in the scrotum and external ear they do not contain fat. When the connective-tissue fibres of the panniculus adiposus are long and nearly parallel to the skin-surface the skin becomes wrinkled; when they are short and nearly at right angles to the surface, the skin cannot wrinkle.

The **Superficial** or **Papillary Layer** or **Corpus Papillare of the Corium** (*stratum papillare*) lies just beneath the epidermis, contains the papillae, and is composed of a network of fine bundles of fibrous tissue. The papillae are composed of fine strands of connective tissue and elastic tissue. They project from the corium beneath the epidermis and enter into depressions of the epidermis. They vary greatly in size, averaging $\frac{1}{100}$ of an inch in height and $\frac{1}{250}$ of an inch in width at the base. In the face, especially in the eyelids, they are insignificant. On the glans penis, the palms of the hands, and the soles of the feet, and in the nipples, they are large. In the palmar surfaces of the hands and fingers and the plantar surfaces of the feet and toes they produce permanent ridges (Fig. 785). A ridge is composed of two or more rows of papillae, and the ducts of sweat-glands emerge between rows of papillae, and open on the curved surface ridges (Fig. 785). Most of the papillae contain loops of capillaries, and are called **vascular papillae**. Some contain nerve-terminations and are called **nervous papillae**. Between the papillary layer of the corium and the epidermis is a very thin and structureless membrane called the **basal membrane**.

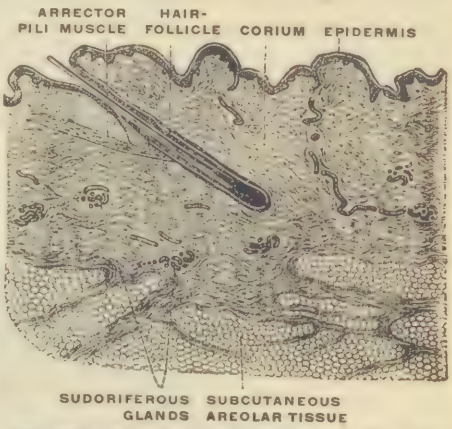


FIG. 784. Vertical section through the skin of the trunk in the region of the arch of the ribs. One of the small hairs is seen in longitudinal section. (Toldt.)

FIG. 785.—The furrows and ridges of true skin on the palmar surface of one of the fingers, the epidermis having been removed. (Toldt.)

The Cuticle, Scarf Skin or **Epidermis** (Figs. 783, 784, 786, and 787).—The cuticle, scarf skin or epidermis is composed of layers of epithelium and is derived from the ectoderm. The epithelium is stratified, and there are no blood-vessels. Two layers can be readily made out, the **superficial** or **horny layer** and the **deeper** or **Malpighian layer**.

The Horny Layer (*stratum corneum*).—The horny layer is formed by several layers of non-nucleated scaly cells. The cells consist of keratin. The surface cells of the horny layers are being constantly rubbed off, and are being replaced by cells from the Malpighian layer, which are converted into keratin as they near the surface.

The Malpighian Layer.—The Malpighian layer of the epidermis is divided into four layers, named, from without inward, the **stratum lucidum**, the **stratum granulosum**, the **stratum mucosum**, and the **stratum germinativum**.

The **Stratum Lucidum** is not classified by all writers as part of the Malpighian layer. Some anatomists classify it as a separate layer. It is here regarded as the most superficial part of the Malpighian layer. It consists of several layers of flat cells, the nuclei of which are beginning to disappear. The cells contain eleidin granules. In regions where the epidermis is thin the stratum lucidum is absent.

The **Stratum Granulosum** consists of several layers of nucleated flat cells, containing keratohyaline granules. These granules are probably formed from the disintegrating nucleus, and in the stratum lucidum are converted into eleidin.

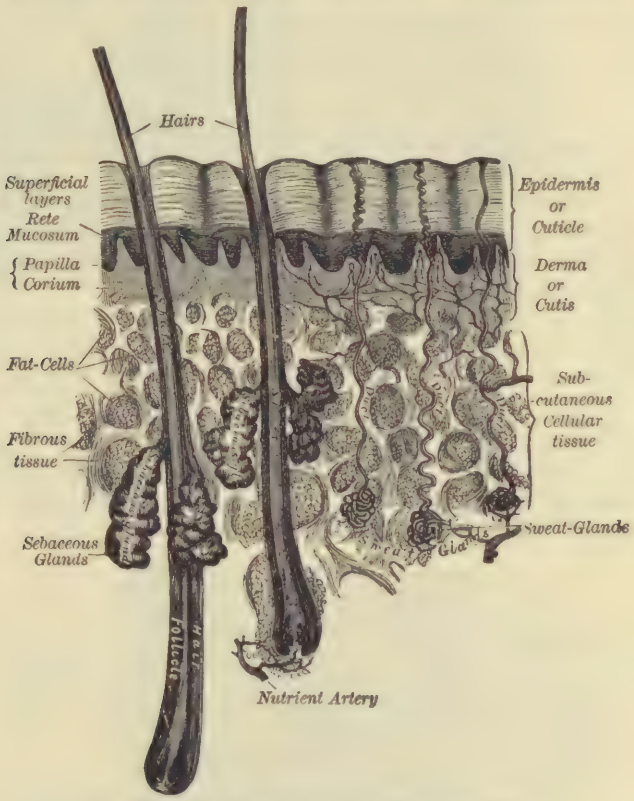


FIG. 786.—A sectional view of the skin (magnified).

The **Mucous Layer**, the **Stratum Spinosum** or the **Stratum Mucosum** consists of numerous layers of nucleated, polygonal, spine-shaped cells known as **prickle cells** or **finger cells**. Between the cells of the stratum mucosum are spaces containing pigment granules and leukocytes. Processes from the prickle-cells join adjacent cells. This layer contains numerous connective-tissue fibres arranged in a network, and known as **epidermic fibrils**.

The **Stratum Cylindricum** or **Stratum Germinativum** is composed of cylindrical or prickle-cells, the points of which are directed downward. Fine fibrils pass up from the corium between the cells, and there is cement-substance as well between them.

Pigmentation of the Skin.—As previously stated, in certain regions the skin of the white race is brown because of pigmentation (areolae, nipples, around the anus, axillae, scrotum, labia majora). This is due to pigment within the epithelial and

connective-tissue cells of the papillary layer of the corium, and in the basal cells of the epidermis. There are few or none of these pigmented cells in the stratum corneum of one of the Caucasian race.

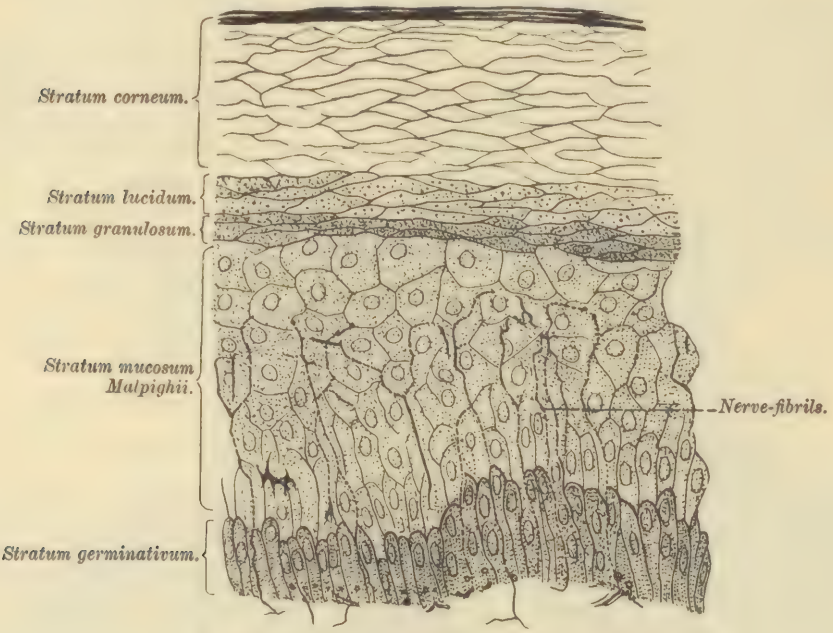


FIG. 787.—Section of epidermis. (Ranvier.)

"In negroes and other colored races the deep pigmentation is due to a similar distribution of the pigment granules in the entire epidermis; but even here the pigmentation decreases toward the surface, although the uppermost cells of the

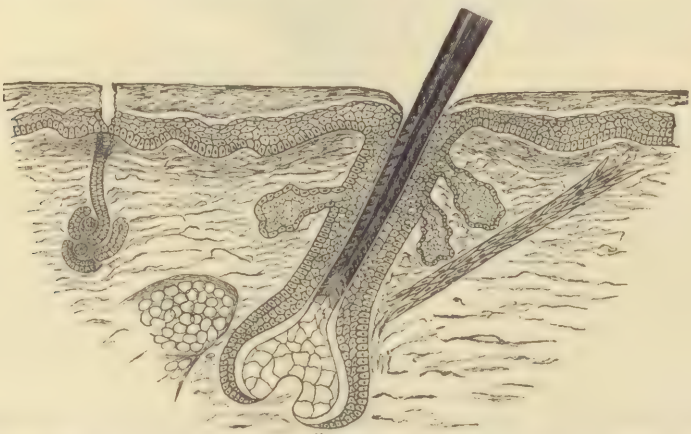


FIG. 788.—Microscopic section of skin, showing the epidermis and derma; a hair in its follicle; the Erector pili muscle; sebaceous and sudoriferous glands.

stratum corneum always contain some pigment. The nuclei of the cells are always free from coloring matter. The question as to the origin of the pigment is as yet unsolved."[1]

[1] A Text-book of Histology. By A. A. Böhm and M. von Davidoff. Translated and edited by G. Carl Huber.

The Arteries and Veins of the Skin (Fig. 789).—The arteries supplying the skin vary in number, and vary much in size, being largest in regions exposed to pressure, as the skin of the palms, soles, and buttocks. The arteries enter the skin from a network in the subcutaneous tissue, and by an anastomosis in the deepest part of the corium form a network (*rete arteriosum cutaneum*). The vessels send branches to the fat and to the sweat-glands. Branches from the network just described ascend and form a second network in the corium beneath the papillae. This is called the **subpapillary network** (*rete arteriosum subpapillare*). From this network fine capillary vessels pass into the papillae, forming, in the smaller papillae, a single capillary loop, but in the larger a more or less convoluted vessel. From this network branches go to the hair-follicles and sebaceous glands. The blood from the papillae passes into a plexus (*rete venosum*) beneath the papillae. This communicates with another plexus (*rete venosum*), between the corium and sub-

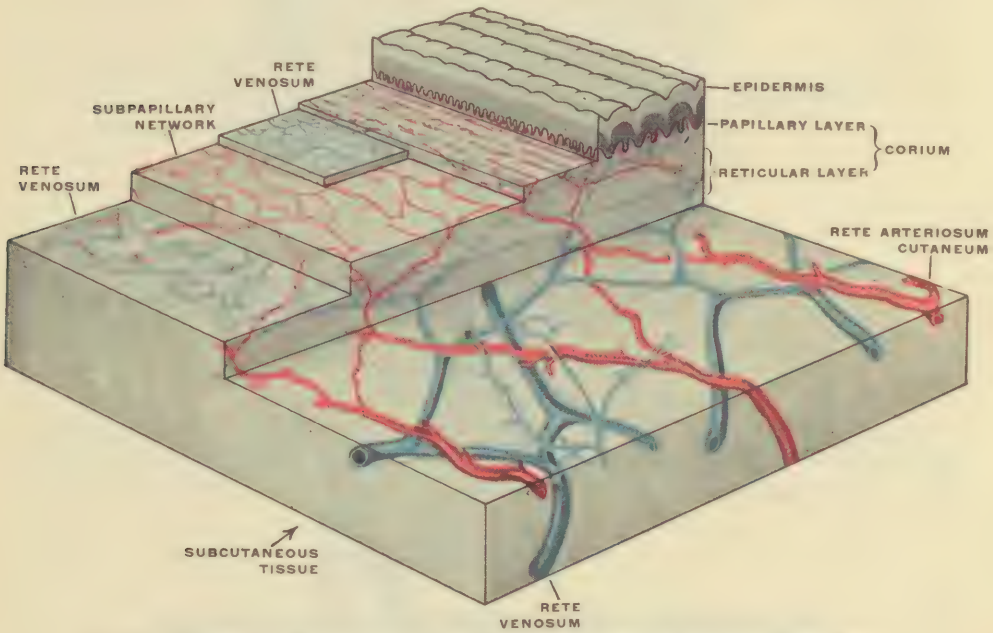


Fig. 789.—The distribution of the blood-vessels in the skin of the sole of the foot. (Spalteholz.)

cutaneous tissue. In some regions one or more retia are interposed between these two. The veins from the sweat-glands, sebaceous glands, superficial fat, and hair-follicles are received by the *retia venosa*. From the deepest rete veins pass to the subcutaneous tissue, and these veins enter the large subcutaneous veins.

The Lymphatics of the Skin.—There are numerous **lymphatics** supplied to the skin which form two networks, superficial and deep, communicating with each other and with the lymphatics of the subcutaneous tissue by oblique branches. They originate in the cell-spaces of the tissue.

The Nerves of the Skin.—The *nerves* of the skin terminate partly in the epidermis (Figs. 783 and 787) and partly in the cutis vera (Fig. 783). The former are prolonged into the epidermis from a dense plexus in the superficial layer of the corium and terminate between the cells in bulbous extremities; or, according to some observers, in the deep epithelial cells themselves. The latter terminate in end-bulbs, touch-corpuscles, or Pacinian bodies (Fig. 783), in the manner already described; and, in addition to these, a considerable number of fibrils are distributed to the hair-follicles, which are said to entwine about the follicle in a circular

manner. Other nerve-fibres are supplied to the plain muscular fibres of the hair-follicles (arrectores pili) and to the muscular coat of the blood-vessels. These are probably non-medullated fibres.

The Appendages of the Skin.

The appendages of the skin are the **nails**, the **hairs**, the **sudoriferous** and **sebaceous glands**, and their ducts.

The nails and hairs are peculiar modifications of the epidermis, consisting essentially of the same cellular structure as that tissue.

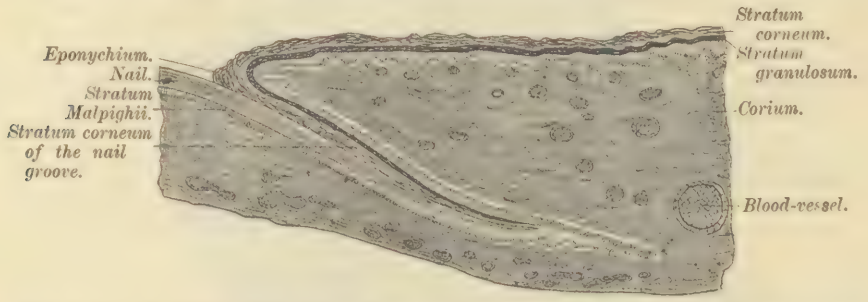


FIG. 790.—Longitudinal section through human nail and its nail groove (sulcus). (From Böhm and Davidoff's Histology.

The Nails (*ungues*) (Figs. 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, and 795).—The nails are flattened, elastic structures of a horny texture, placed upon the dorsal surface of the terminal phalanges of the fingers and toes. Each nail is convex on its outer surface, concave within. Its chief mass, called the **body** (*corpus unguis*), lies upon the nail-bed. The **free edge** is called the *margo liber*. Each **lateral margin** (*margo lateralis*), like the proximal **short edge** of the nail (*margo occultus*), lies in a groove of the cutis, the **ungual fold** (*sulcus matricis unguis*). The **ungual wall** (*vallum unguis*) overlies the lateral and posterior edges. The nail is implanted by means of a portion, called the **root** (*radix unguis*), into a groove in the skin. The root is beneath the ungual wall and is composed of cells which have not yet become

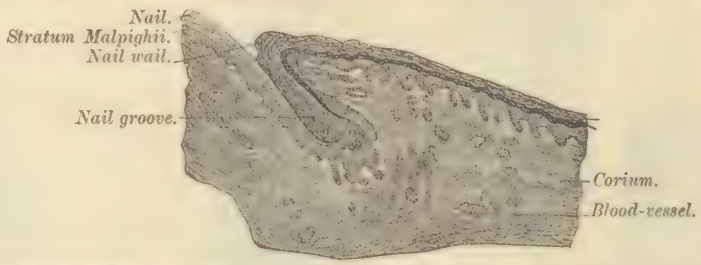


FIG. 791.—Transverse section through human nail and its sulcus. (From Böhm and Davidoff's Histology.)

horny. It is white in color. The nail has a very firm adhesion to the cutis vera, being accurately moulded upon the surface of the true skin, as the epidermis is in other parts. The part of the cutis beneath the body and root of the nail is called the **matrix** (*matrix unguis*), because it is the part from which the nail is produced. Corresponding to the body of the nail, the matrix is thick, and raised into a series of **longitudinal ridges** (*cristae matricis unguis*), which are very vascular, and the color is seen through the transparent tissue. Behind this, near the root of the nail, the papillae are small, less vascular, and have no regular arrangement, and here the tissue of the nail is somewhat more opaque; hence this portion is of a whiter color, and is called the **lunula** on account of its crescentic shape.

The cuticle, as it passes forward on the dorsal surface of the finger or toe, is attached to the surface of the nail, a little in advance of the nail root; at the extremity of the finger it is connected with the under surface of the nail a little behind its free edge. The cuticle and the horny substance of the nail (both epidermic structures) are thus directly continuous with each other. The nails consist of a greatly thickened stratum lucidum, the stratum corneum forming merely

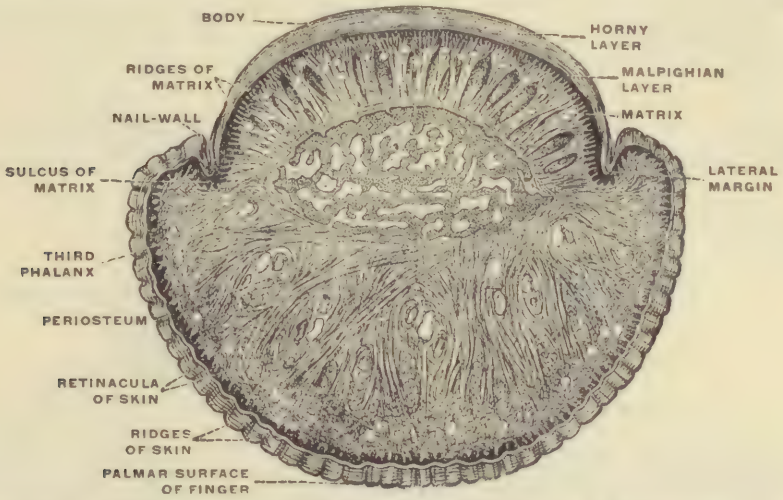


FIG. 792.—Transverse section through the nail and the terminal portion of the ring finger. (Toldt.)

the thin cuticular fold (*eponychium*) which overlaps the lunula. The cells have a laminated arrangement, and are essentially similar to those composing the epidermis. The deepest layer of cells, which lie in contact with the papillae of the matrix, are columnar in form and arranged perpendicularly to the surface; those which succeed them are of a rounded or polygonal form, the more superficial ones becoming broad, thin, and flattened, and so closely compacted as to make the

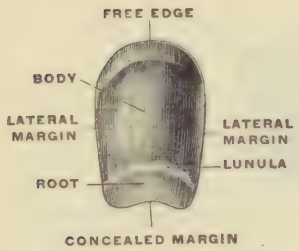


FIG. 793.—The finger nail completely isolated, seen from the convex side. (Toldt.)

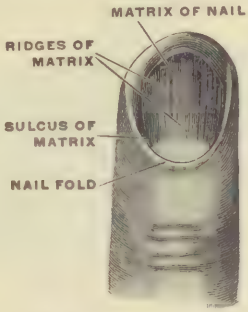


FIG. 794.—The matrix of the nail or nail-bed, with the nail-fold and nail-walls displayed by the removal of the epidermic portion of the nail or nail proper and the surrounding epidermis. (Toldt.)

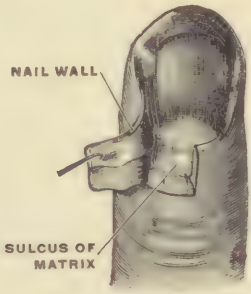


FIG. 795.—Matrix of the nail with partly opened marginal groove of the nail-bed. (Toldt.)

limits of each cell very indistinct. It is by the successive growth of new cells at the root and under surface of the body of the nail that it advances forward and maintains a due thickness, while, at the same time, the growth of the nail in the proper direction is secured. As these cells in their turn become displaced by the growth of new ones, they assume a flattened form, and finally become closely compacted together into a firm, dense, horny texture. In *chemical composition* the

nails resemble the upper layers of the epidermis, containing, however, a somewhat larger proportion of carbon and sulphur (Mulder).

The Hairs (*pili*) (Figs. 784, 786, 788, 796, 797, and 798).—The hairs are peculiar modifications of the epidermis, and consist essentially of the same structure as that membrane. They are found on nearly every part of the surface of the body, excepting the palms of the hands, soles of the feet, the vermilion borders of the lips, the dorsal surfaces of the phalanges, the nipples, the inner surface of the prepuce, and the glans penis. Hairs include **hairs of the head** (*capilla*); of the **eyebrows** (*supercilia*); of the **beard** (*barba*); of the **ears** (*tragi*); of the **nostrils** (*vibrissae*); the **eyelashes** (*cilia*); hairs of the **axilla** (*hirci*); **pubes** (*pubes*); and the small hairs of the **skin** or **woolly hairs** (*lanugo*). They vary much in length, thickness, and color in different parts of the body and in different races of mankind. In some parts, as in the skin of the eyelids, they are so short as not to project beyond the follicles containing them; in others, as upon the scalp, they are of considerable length; again, in other parts, as the eyelashes, the hairs of the pubic region, and the whiskers and beard, they are remarkable for their thickness. Straight hairs are stronger than curly hairs, and present on transverse section a cylindrical or oval outline; curly hairs, on the other hand, are flattened. The hairs are usually oblique to the surface from which they arise (Fig. 784). Their direction depends upon the region from which they spring, being fairly regular in certain regions. Thus are formed **hair-streams** (*flumina pilorum*) and **hair-whirlpools** (*vortices pilorum*).

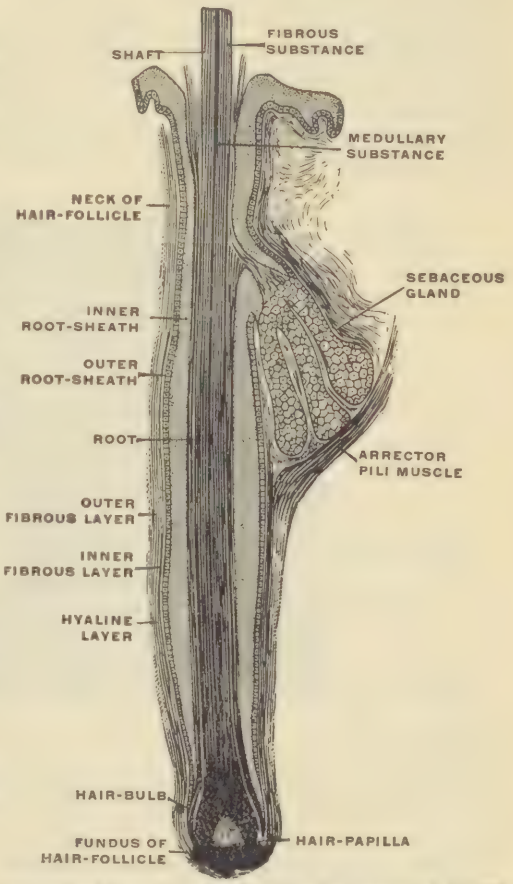


FIG. 796.—A hair of the head still in the course of growth, with hair-bulb in longitudinal section. (Toldt.)

A hair consists of the **root**, the part implanted in the skin; the **shaft** or **stem**, the portion projecting from its surface; and the **point**.

The **Root of the Hair** (*radix pili*) presents at its extremity a bulbous enlargement, the **hair-bulb** (*bulbus pili*) (Figs. 786 and 796), which is whiter in color and softer in texture than the shaft, and is lodged in a follicular involution of the epidermis called the **hair-follicle** (*folliculus pili*) (Figs. 784 and 788). When the hair is of considerable length the follicle extends into the subcutaneous cellular tissue (Fig. 786). The hair-follicle commences on the surface of the skin with a funnel-shaped opening, and passes inward in an oblique or curved direction—the latter in curly hair—to become dilated at its deep extremity or **fundus** (*fundus folliculi pili*), where it corresponds with the bulbous condition of the hair which it contains. It has opening into it, near its free extremity, the orifices of the ducts of one or more sebaceous glands (Figs. 786, 788, 796, and 797). At the bottom of each hair-follicle is a small conical, vascular eminence or papilla, the **hair-papilla** (*papilla pili*) (Figs. 796 and 797),

similar in every respect to the papillae found upon the surface of the skin; it is continuous with the dermic layer of the follicle, is highly vascular, and is probably supplied with nervous fibrils. In structure the hair-follicle consists of two coats—an **outer** or **dermic**, and an **inner** or **epidermic** (Figs. 796 and 798).

The **Outer** or **Dermic Coat** is formed mainly of fibrous tissue; it is continuous with the corium, is highly vascular, and is supplied by numerous minute nervous filaments. It consists of three layers. The most internal, the **cuticular lining** of the **follicle,** consists of a hyaline basement-membrane, the **hyaline layer,** having a glassy, transparent appearance, which is well marked in the larger hair-follicles, but is not very distinct in the follicles of minute hairs. It is continuous with the basement-membrane of the surface of the corium. External to this is the **inner fibrous layer,** a compact layer of fibres and spindle-shaped cells arranged circularly around the follicle. This layer extends from the bottom of the follicle as high as the entrance of the ducts of the sebaceous glands. Externally is the **outer fibrous layer,** a thick layer of connective tissue, arranged in longitudinal bundles, forming a more open texture and corresponding to the reticular part of the corium. In this are contained the blood-vessels and nerves.

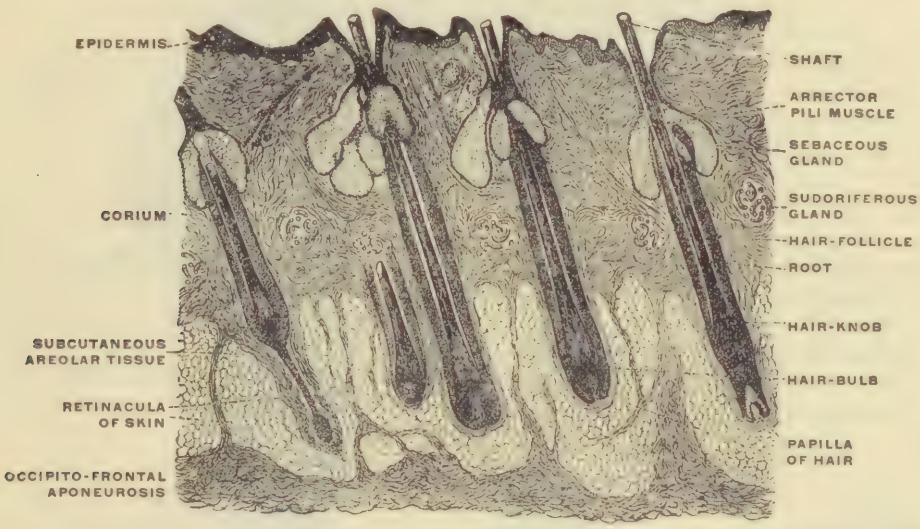


FIG. 797.—Vertical section through the skin of the head. The hairs of the head in longitudinal section. (Toldt.)

The **Inner** or **Epidermic Layer** is closely adherent to the root of the hair, so that when the hair is plucked from its follicle this layer most commonly adheres to it and forms what is called the **root-sheath.** It consists of two strata, named respectively the **outer** and **inner root-sheaths**; the former of these corresponds with the Malpighian layer of the epidermis, and resembles it in the rounded form and soft character of its cells; at the bottom of the hair-follicle these cells become continuous with those of the root of the hair. The inner root-sheath consists of a delicate cuticle next the hair, composed of a thin layer of imbricated scales having a downward direction, so that they fit accurately over the upwardly directed imbricated scales of the hair itself; then of one or two layers of horny, flattened nucleated cells, known as **Huxley's layer**; and finally of a single layer of horny oblong cells without visible nuclei, called **Henle's layer.**

The hair-follicle contains the **root of the hair,** which terminates in a bulbous extremity, and is excavated so as to exactly fit the papilla from which it grows. The bulb is composed of polyhedral epithelial cells, which as they pass upward into the root of the hair become elongated and spindle-shaped, except some in the centre which remain polyhedral. Some of these latter cells contain pigment-

granules, which give rise to the color of the hair. It occasionally happens that these pigment-granules completely fill the cells of the medullary substance in the centre of the bulb, which gives rise to the dark tract of pigment often found, of greater or less length, in the axis of the hair.

The **Stem** or **Shaft of the Hair** (*scapus pili*) (Fig. 796), consists of a central pith or **medulla**, the fibrous part of the hair, and the true cuticle externally. The **medulla** (*substantia medullaris pili*) occupies the centre of the shaft and ceases toward the point of the hair. It is usually wanting in the fine hairs covering the surface of the body, and commonly in those of the head. It is found in the shafts of all thick hairs and in the deeper parts of the root of most hairs. It is more opaque and deeper colored when viewed by transmitted light than the fibrous part; but when viewed by reflected light it is white. It is composed of rows of polyhedral cells, which contain granules of eleidin and frequently air-bubbles. The **fibrous portion** or **cortical substance of the hair** (*substantia corticalis pili*) constitutes the chief part of the shaft; its cells are elongated and unite to form flattened fusiform fibres. Between the fibres are found minute spaces which contain either pigment-granules in dark hair or minute air-bubbles in white hair. In addition to this there is also a

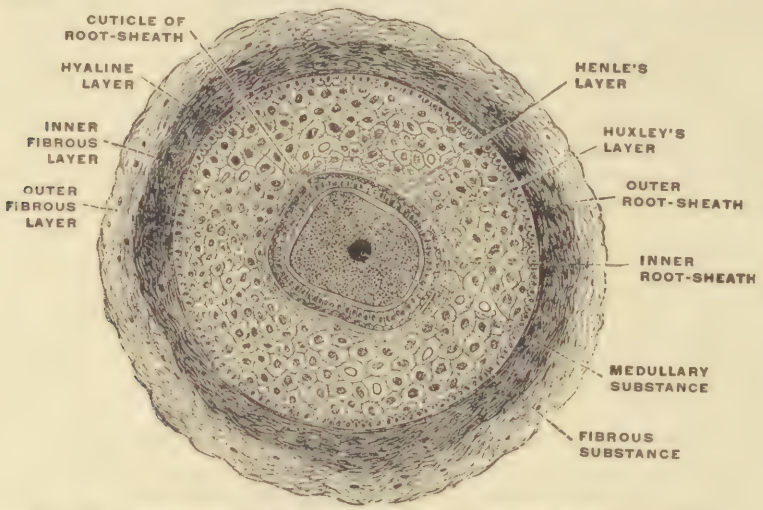


FIG. 798.—A moustache hair with its hair-follicle in transverse section. (Toldt.)

diffused pigment contained in the fibres. The cells which form the **outer hair membrane** or **true cuticle** (*cuticula pili*) consist of a single layer which surrounds those of the fibrous part; they are converted into thin, flat scales, having an imbricated arrangement.

Connected with the hair-follicles are minute bundles of involuntary muscular fibres, termed **arrectores pili** (*mm. arrectores pilorum*) (Figs. 784 and 796). They arise from the superficial layer of the corium, and are inserted into the outer surface of the hair-follicle, below the entrance of the duct of the sebaceous gland. They are placed on the side toward which the hair slopes, and by their action elevate the hair.[1] When the hair is elevated a depression forms over the seat of origin of the muscle, and the parts about the hair are elevated. This condition is known as **goose-skin**. It is probable that the contraction of these muscles aids in emptying sebaceous glands.

Blood-vessels and Nerves (Fig. 786).—A hair-follicle possesses a rich network of capillaries about the hyaline membrane, and capillary loops pass to the papilla.

[1] Arthur Thomson suggests that the contraction of these muscles on follicles which contain weak, flat hairs will tend to produce a permanent curve in the follicle, and this curve will be impressed on the hair which is moulded within it, so that the hair, on emerging through the skin, will be curled. Curved hair-follicles are characteristic of the scalp of the Bushman.—ED. of 15th English edition.

We have little knowledge as to nerve-terminations of the human hair. "In other mammals the nerves end below the sebaceous glands. Medullated fibres lose their medullary sheaths, divide, and penetrate to the hyaline membrane. Here some of the branches encircle the hair, while others end freely on the hyaline membrane as naked axis-cylinders. These branch regularly and run parallel to the long axis of the hair."[1]

The Sudoriferous or Sweat-glands (*glandulae sudoriferae*) (Figs. 783, 784, 786, 788, and 797).—The sudoriferous or sweat-glands are the organs by which a large portion of the aqueous and gaseous materials is excreted by the skin. They are found in almost every part of this structure, being absent on the red border of the lips, the glans penis, and inner surface of the prepuce. On the eyelids they are somewhat modified, and are called **ciliary glands** (*glandulae ciliares* [*Molli*]); about the anus they are extremely large, and are called **circumanal glands** (*glandulae circumanales*). The sweat-glands are situated in small pits below the under surface of the corium, or, more frequently, in the subcutaneous areolar tissue, surrounded by a quantity of adipose tissue. They are small, lobular, reddish bodies, consisting of a single convoluted tube, from which the efferent **duct** (*ductus sudoriferus*) proceeds upward through the corium and cuticle. The duct in the corium has true walls; in the epidermis it has not individual walls, but is simply an epidermic tube. It becomes somewhat dilated at its extremity, and opens on the surface of the cuticle by an oblique valve-like aperture (*porus sudoriferus*). The duct, as it passes through the epidermis, presents a spiral arrangement, being twisted like a corkscrew, in those parts where the epidermis is thick; where, however, the epidermis is thin, the spiral arrangement does not exist. In the superficial layers of the corium the duct is straight, but in the deeper layers it is convoluted or even twisted. The spiral course of these ducts is especially distinct in the thick cuticle of the palm of the hand and sole of the foot. The size of the glands varies. They are especially large in those regions where the flow of perspiration is copious, as in the axillae, where they form a thin, mamillated layer of a reddish color, which corresponds exactly to the situation of the hair in this region; they are large also in the groin. Their number varies. They are most numerous on the palm of the hand, presenting, according to Krause, 2800 orifices on a square inch of the integument, and are rather less numerous on the sole of the foot. In both of these situations the orifices of the ducts are exceedingly regular, and open on the curved surface ridges. In other situations they are more irregularly scattered, but the number in a given extent of surface presents a fairly uniform average. In the neck and back they are least numerous, their number amounting to 417 on the square inch (Krause). Their total number is estimated by the same writer at 2,381,248, and, supposing the aperture of each gland to represent a surface of $\frac{1}{5^1_6}$ of a line in diameter, he calculates that the whole of these glands would present an evaporating surface of about eight square inches. Each gland consists of a single tube intricately convoluted, terminating at one end by a blind extremity, and opening at the other end upon the surface of the skin.

The wall of the tubercle of the secreting coil is lined with cubical epithelial cells, external to these is a layer of smooth muscle-cells, and more externally a layer of connective tissue, the membrana propria. The duct in the corium, in contrast to the secreting coil, has no layer of muscle-cells, but instead a second layer of epithelial cells covered by connective tissue. As previously stated, the duct becomes spiral in the epidermis, its own wall disappears, and the channel is bounded by epidermic cells.

Blood-vessels and Nerves.—The blood-vessels are branches from the subcutaneous vessels and the arterial plexus of the deep part of the corium. Numerous

[1] Histology and Microscopic Anatomy. By Dr. Ladislaus Szymonowicz. Translated and edited by John Bruce MacCallum, M.D.

non-medullated nerve-fibres lie upon the membrana propria of a sweat-gland. From them fibrils pass inward and terminate by end-bulbs upon the cells of the gland.

The Sebaceous Glands (*glandulae sebaceae*).—The sebaceous glands are small, sacculated, glandular organs, lodged in the substance of the corium. They are found in most parts of the skin, and are usually connected with hair-follicles. This connection is so common that they are sometimes called **hair-follicle glands.** They are found in some regions which are devoid of hairs—the vermilion borders of the lips, the labia minora, the glans penis, and prepuce. These glands are especially abundant in the scalp and face; they are also very numerous around the apertures of the anus, nose, mouth, and external ear; but are wanting in the palms of the hands and soles of the feet. Each gland consists of a single duct, more or less capacious, which terminates in a cluster of small secreting pouches or saccules. The sacculi connected with each duct vary, in number, as a rule, from two to five, but in some instances may be as many as twenty. They are composed of a transparent, colorless membrane, enclosing a number of epithelial cells. Those of the outer or marginal layer are small and polyhedral, and are continuous with the lining cells of the duct. The remainder of the sac is filled with larger cells, containing fat, except in the centre, where the cells have become broken up, leaving a cavity containing their débris and a mass of fatty matter, which constitutes the sebaceous secretion. The orifices of the ducts open most frequently into the hair-follicles, but occasionally upon the general surface, as in the labia minora and the free margins of the lips. On the nose and face the glands are of large size, distinctly lobulated, and often become much enlarged from the accumulation of pent-up secretion. The largest sebaceous glands are those found in the eyelids—the Meibomian glands.

THE ORGANS OF DIGESTION.

THE Apparatus for the Digestion of the Food (*apparatus digestorius*) consists of the **alimentary canal** and of certain **accessory organs.**

THE ALIMENTARY CANAL.

The alimentary canal is a musculo-membranous tube, about thirty feet in length, extending from the mouth to the anus, and lined throughout its entire extent by mucous membrane. It has received different names in the various parts of its course; at its commencement, the **mouth,** we find provision made for the mechanical division of the food (*mastication*), and for its admixture with a fluid secreted by the salivary glands (*insalivation*); beyond this are the **pharynx** and the **oesophagus,** the organs which convey the food (*deglutition*) into that part of the alimentary canal, the **stomach,** in which the principal chemical changes occur, and in which the reduction and solution of the food take place; in the **small intestines** the nutritive principles of the food, the **chyle,** are separated, by its admixture with the bile, pancreatic and intestinal fluids, from that portion which passes into the **large intestine,** most of which is expelled from the system.

Alimentary Canal.

Mouth.	Small intestine	Duodenum.
Pharynx.		Jejunum.
Oesophagus.		Ileum.
Stomach.	Large intestine	Caecum.
		Colon.
		Rectum.

Accessory Organs.

Teeth.		
Salivary glands	Parotid.	Liver.
	Submaxillary.	Pancreas.
	Sublingual.	Spleen.

THE MOUTH, ORAL OR BUCCAL CAVITY (CAVUM ORIS).

The mouth is placed at the commencement of the alimentary canal; it is a nearly oval-shaped cavity, in which the mastication and insalivation of the food take place (Figs. 799, 818, and 824).

The **aperture of the mouth** (*rima oris*) is bounded by the lips. The **angle of the mouth** (*angulus oris*) is formed on each side by the meeting of the upper and lower lips (*commissura labiorum*). When at rest with the lips in contact, the rima is a slightly curved line. Every movement which the lips make alters the shape of the rima. When the mouth is closed the floor and roof are usually in contact and its sides are approximated to the dental arches. The mouth consists of two

parts: an outer, smaller portion, the **vestibule**, and an inner, larger part, the **cavity proper of the mouth.**

The Vestibule (*vestibulum oris*).—The vestibule is a slit-like space, bounded in front and laterally by the lips and cheeks; behind and internally by the gums and teeth. Above and below it is limited by the reflection of the mucous membrane from the lips and cheeks to the gum covering the upper and lower alveolar arch respectively. It receives the secretion from the parotid glands, and communicates, when the jaws are closed, with the cavum oris by an aperture on each side behind the wisdom teeth.

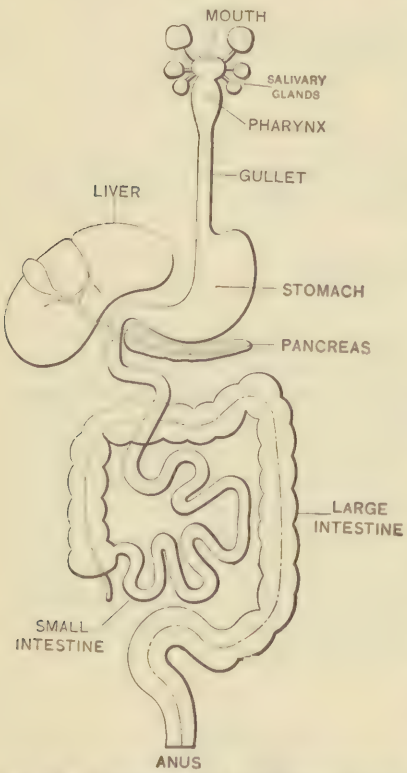


FIG. 799. Diagram of the alimentary tube and its appendages. (Testut.)

The Cavity of the Mouth Proper (*cavum oris proprium*).—The cavity of the mouth proper is bounded laterally and in front by the alveolar arches with their contained teeth; behind it communicates with the pharynx by a constricted aperture termed the **isthmus faucium.** It is roofed in by the hard and soft palate. The greater part of the floor is formed by the tongue, the remainder being completed by the reflection of the mucous membrane from the sides and under surface of the tongue to the gum lining the inner aspect of the mandible. It receives the secretion from the submaxillary and sublingual glands.

The Mucous Membrane.—The mucous membrane lining the mouth is continuous with the integument at the free margin of the lips and with the mucous lining of the pharynx behind; it is of a rose-pink tinge during life, and very thick where it covers the hard parts bounding the cavity. It is covered by stratified epithelium.

The Lips (Labia Oris).

The lips are two fleshy folds which surround the orifice of the mouth, formed externally by integument and internally by mucous membrane, between which are found the Orbicularis oris muscle (Fig. 263), the coronary vessels (Fig. 395), some nerves (Fig. 395), areolar tissue, and fat, and numerous small labial glands. The upper lip is called the **labium superius**; the lower lip is called the **labium inferius.** The inner surface of each lip is connected in the middle line to the gum of the corresponding jaw by a fold of mucous membrane, the **frenulum** (*frenulum labii superioris* and *frenulum labii inferioris*). The frenulum labii superioris is the larger of the two. On each side, external to the angle of the mouth, the lips become continuous (*commissura labiorum*).

The Labial Glands (*glandulae labiales*) (Fig. 395).—The labial glands are situated between the mucous membrane and the Orbicularis oris muscle around the orifice of the mouth. They are rounded in form, about the size of small peas, and their ducts open by minute orifices upon the mucous membrane. In structure they resemble the salivary glands.

The Cheeks (Buccae).

The cheeks form the sides of the face and are continuous in front with the lips. They are composed externally of integument, internally of mucous membrane, and between the two of a muscular stratum, besides a large quantity of fat, areolar tissue, vessels, nerves, and buccal glands.

The Mucous Membrane.—The mucous membrane lining the cheek is reflected above and below upon the gums, where its color becomes lighter; it is continuous behind with the lining membrane of the soft palate. Opposite the second molar tooth of the upper jaw is a **papilla**, the summit of which presents the aperture of the **duct of the parotid gland** (*ductus parotideus* [*Stenonis*]) (Fig. 824.) The principal muscle of the cheek is the Buccinator, but numerous other muscles enter into its formation—viz., the Zygomatici, Risorius Santorini, and Platysma myoides.

The Buccal Glands (*glandulae buccales*).—The buccal glands are placed in the submucous tissue between the mucous membrane and Buccinator muscle; they are similar in structure to the labial glands, but smaller. Four or five glands of larger size than the previously mentioned glands are placed beneath the mucous membrane in the neighborhood of the last molar tooth. They are called the **molar glands** (*glandulae molares*). Their ducts open into the mouth opposite the last molar tooth.

The Gums (Gingiva).

The gums are composed of a dense fibrous tissue closely connected to the periosteum of the alveolar processes and surrounding the necks of the teeth. They are covered by smooth and vascular mucous membrane, which is remarkable for its limited sensibility. Around the necks of the teeth this membrane presents numerous fine papillae; and from this point it is reflected into the alveolus, where it is continuous with the periosteal membrane lining that cavity.

The Teeth (Dentes).

The human subject is provided with two sets of teeth, which make their appearance at different periods of life. The first set appear in childhood, and are called the **temporary, deciduous** or **milk teeth**. The second set are named **permanent.**

The **temporary teeth** are twenty in number—four incisors, two canine, and four molars in each jaw (Figs. 800 and 817).

The **permanent teeth** are thirty-two in number—four incisors (two central and two lateral), two canines, four bicuspids, and six molars in each jaw (Figs. 802 and 806).

General Characters (Fig. 807).—Each tooth consists of three portions; the **crown** or **body** (*corona dentis*), projecting above the gum; the **root** or **fang** (*radix dentis*), entirely concealed within the alveolus; and the **neck** (*collum dentis*), the constricted portion, between the root and crown.

Surfaces.—The surfaces of a tooth are named thus: that which comes in contact with the teeth of the opposite jaw is the **grinding** or **masticating surface** (*facies masticatoria*); that which touches the next tooth in the same row is the **contact surface** (*facies contactus*). That surface which is toward its predecessor is called the **proximal surface** (in incisors and canines, *facies medialis;* in molars and premolars, *facies anterior*). That surface which is toward its successor is called the **distal surface** (in incisors and canines, *facies lateralis;* in molars and premolars, *facies posterior*). That which looks toward the lips and cheek is the **labial** or **buccal surface** (*facies labialis*). That toward the tongue is the **lingual surface** (*facies lingualis*). In part this method of designation applies to the roots as well as to the crowns of teeth.

The Roots of the Teeth.—The roots of the teeth are firmly implanted within the **sockets** or **alveoli of the jaws** (*alveoli dentales*) (see pp. 109 and 124). These depressions are lined with periosteum, called the **pericementum**, which is reflected on to the tooth at the point of the root and covers it as far as the neck. This is the **root membrane** (*periosteum alveolare*). At the margin of the alveolus the periosteum becomes continuous with the fibrous structure of the gums.

Fig. 800.—Deciduous teeth. Left side.

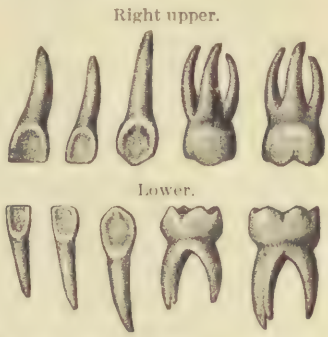


Fig. 801.—Deciduous teeth. Lingual view.

Temporary, Deciduous or Milk Teeth (*dentes decidui*) (Figs. 800, 801, and 817).—The temporary or milk teeth are smaller, but resemble in form those of the permanent set. The neck is more marked, owing to the greater degree of convexity of the labial and lingual surfaces of the crown. The hinder of the two temporary molars is the largest of all the deciduous teeth, and is succeeded by the second bicuspid. The first upper molar has only three cusps—two labial, one lingual; the second upper molar has four cusps. The first lower molar has four cusps; the second lower molar has five. The roots of the temporary molar teeth are smaller and more diverging than those of the permanent set, but in other respects bear a strong resemblance to them.

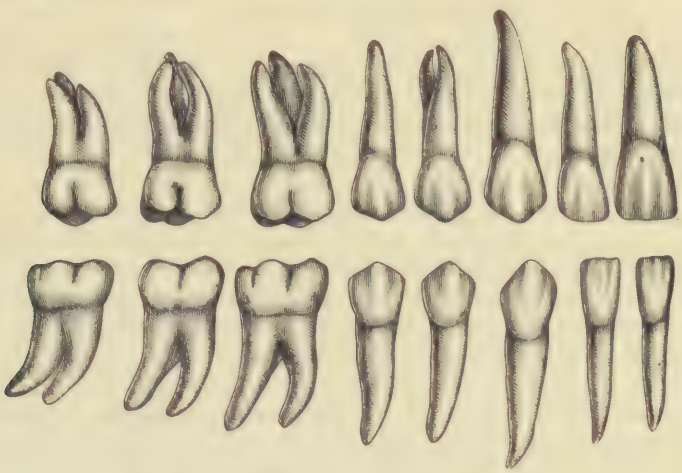


Fig. 802.—Permanent teeth, right side. (Burchard.)

Permanent Teeth (*dentes permanentes*) (Figs. 802, 803, 804, and 806). **The Incisors** (*dentes incisivi*).—The incisors or cutting teeth are so named from their presenting a sharp cutting edge, adapted for incising the food. They are eight in number, and comprise the four front teeth in each jaw.

The **crown** is directed almost vertically and is spade-like in form; it has the form of a truncated cone whose top has been compressed into a sharp horizontal cutting

edge. Before being subjected to attrition this edge presents three small elevations. The **labial surface** is convex, and marked by free longitudinal ridges extending from the edge tubercles toward the neck of the tooth. The **lingual surface** is concave, and is marked by two marginal ridges extending from an encircling ridge at the neck to the angles of the cutting edge of the tooth. The ridge at the neck is termed the **cingulum** or **basal ridge**. The **mesial** and **distal surfaces** are triangular, the apex of the triangle being at the cutting edge. The **neck** of the tooth is constricted. The **root** is long, single, and has the form of a transversely flattened cone, thicker before than behind. The root may be curved.

The **Incisors of the Upper Jaw** are altogether larger and stronger than those of the lower jaw, the central incisors being larger and flatter than the lateral incisors. They are directed obliquely downward and forward.

The **Incisors of the Lower Jaw** are smaller and flatter than the upper, and the elevations upon their lingual faces are not marked. The two central are smaller than the two lateral incisors, being the smallest of all the teeth. The **roots** of these teeth are flattened laterally.

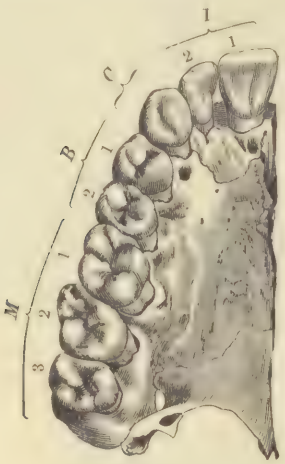


FIG. 803.—Right half of upper jaw (from below), with the corresponding teeth. The letters and numbers point to the classes of teeth and the numbers in classes.

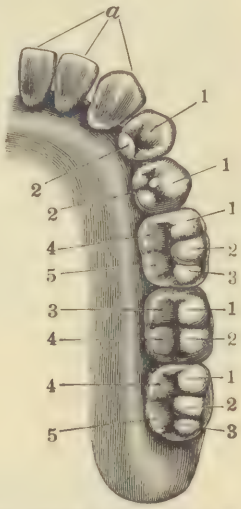


FIG. 804.—Right half of lower jaw, with the corresponding teeth. The letter and numbers point to the various cusps or their modifications on the different teeth. (Burchard.)

The Canine Teeth or Cuspidati (*dentes canini*).—The canine teeth are four in number, two in the upper, two in the lower jaw—one being placed distal to each lateral incisor. They are larger and stronger than the incisors, especially in the roots, which are deeply implanted and each causes a well-marked prominence of the process at the place of insertion.

The **crown** is large, of spear-head form, and its very convex labial surface is marked by three longitudinal ridges. The **concave lingual surface** is also marked by three ridges which unite at a basal ridge. The **point** or **cusp** is longer than in the other teeth, and is the point of division between a short mesial and a long distal cutting edge. These two edges form an obtuse angle with each other.

The **root** is single, oval, or elliptical on transverse section, and is longer and more prominent than the roots of the incisors.

The **Upper Canines** or cuspids, vulgarly called the **eye teeth**, are larger and longer than the two lower, and in occlusion are distal to them to the extent of half the width of the crown.

The **Lower Canines**, vulgarly called the **stomach teeth**, have the general form of the upper cuspids, but their lingual surfaces are much more flattened, owing to

the absence of the elevations marking the upper. Their roots are more flattened and may be bifid at their apices.

The Bicuspid Teeth or the Premolars (*dentes premolares*).—The bicuspid teeth are eight in number, four in each jaw; they are placed distal to the cuspid teeth, two upon each side of the jaw. They are double cuspids in form.

The **crown** is surmounted by two cusps, one buccal and one lingual, separated by a groove, the buccal being more prominent and larger than the lingual. The lower bicuspids are not truly bicuspid, the first having but a primitive lingual cusp, the second having the lingual cusp divided into two sections—*i. e.*, it is usually tricuspid. The **necks** of the teeth are oval; the **roots** are single and laterally compressed, that of the first upper bicuspid being frequently bifid. The first upper bicuspid is usually the largest of the series. The roots of the lower bicuspids are less compressed and more rounded.

The Molar Teeth, the Multicuspidati or Grinders (*dentes molares*).—The molar teeth are the largest and strongest teeth of the denture. They are adapted by their forms for the crushing and grinding of the food. They are twelve in number, six in each jaw, three being placed posterior to each second bicuspid.

The **crowns** are cuboidal in form, are convex buccally and lingually; they are flattened mesially and distally. They are formed by the fusion of three primitive cuspids in the upper and four in the lower. To these are added in the first and second upper molars a **disto-lingual tubercle,** and in the first and third molars of the lower jaw a **disto-buccal tubercle.** The unions of the primitive forms are marked by sulci. The necks of these teeth are large and rhomboidal in form. The **roots** of the upper molars are three in number—one large **lingual** or **palatal root,** and two smaller **buccal roots.** In the lower molars, two roots are found, a mesial and a distal, each of which is much flattened from before backward.

The **First Molar Teeth** are the largest of the dental series; they have four cusps on the upper and five in the lower—three buccal and two lingual.

The **Second Molars** are smaller; the crowns of the upper are compressed until the disto-lingual cusp is reduced. The crowns of the lower are almost rectangular, with a cusp at each angle.

The **Third Molars** are called the wisdom teeth or **dentes sapientae** (*dentes serotini*), from their late eruption; they have three cusps upon the upper and five upon the lower. The three roots of the upper are frequently fused together, forming a grooved cone, which is usually curved backward. The roots of the lower, two in number, are compressed together, and curve backward.

Arrangement of the Teeth.[1]—The human teeth are arranged in two parabolic arches, the **upper row** or **arch** (*arcus dentalis superior*) being larger, its teeth overlapping the **lower row** or **arch** (*arcus dentalis inferior*). The average distance between the centres of the condyles of the inferior maxillary bones is about four inches, which is also the distance from either of these points to the line of junction between the lower incisor teeth. Whether the jaw be large or small, the equilateral triangle indicated is included in it; the range of size is between three and one-half and four and one-half inches.

Owing to the smaller sizes of the lower incisors, the teeth of the lower jaw are each one-half a tooth in advance of its upper fellow, so that each tooth of the dental series has two antagonists, with the exception of the lower central incisors and upper third molars (Figs. 805 and 806).

The grinding faces of the upper bicuspids and molars curve progressively upward and point outward, the first molar being at the lowest point of the curve, the third molar at the highest. The curve of the lower dental arch is the reverse, the first molar at its deepest part, the third molar at its extremity. The greater the depth

[1] After Dr. W. G. A. Bonwill.

to which the upper incisors overlap the lower, the more marked this curve and the more pointed are the cusps of the grinding teeth.

FIG. 805.—View of teeth *in situ*, with the external plates of the alveolar processes removed. (Cryer.)

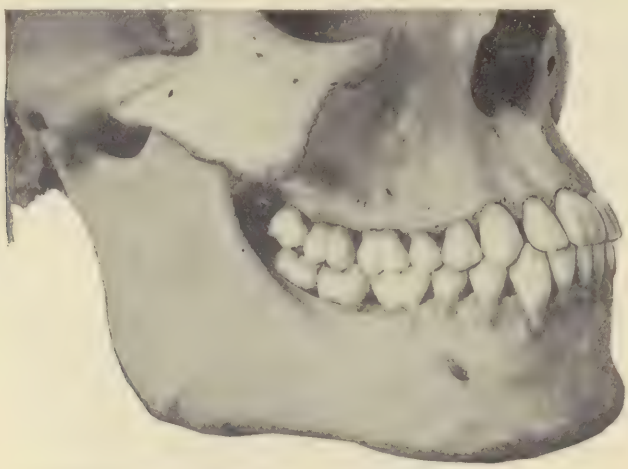


FIG. 806.—Front and side views of the teeth and jaws. (Cryer.)

The movement of the human mandible is forward and downward, the resultant of these directions being an oblique line, upon an average of 35 degrees from the horizontal plane.[1] When the lower jaw is advanced until the cutting edges of

[1] W. E. Walker, Dental Cosmos, 1896.

the incisors are in contact, the jaws are separated, but at the highest point of the lower arch its third molar advances, and meets and rests upon a high point, the second molar of the upper arch, and thus undue strain upon the incisors is obviated.

In the lateral movements of the mandible but one side is in effective action at one time; the oblique positions of the cusps of the opposite teeth are such that

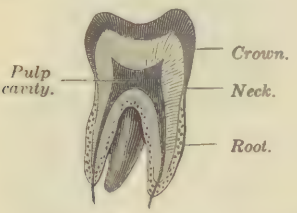


FIG. 807.—Vertical section of a molar tooth.

when either side is in action the other is balanced at two or more points.

There is an anatomical correspondence between the forms and arrangement of the teeth, the form of the condyle of the mandible, and the muscular arrangement. Individuals who have teeth with long cusps have the head of the bone much rounded from before backward, and have a preponderance of the direct over the oblique muscles of mastication, and *vice versa;* teeth with short or no cusps are associated with a flattened condyle and strong oblique muscles.

Very great aberrations in the dental arrangement are frequently followed by accommodative changes in the heads of the mandible.

FIG. 808.—Vertical section of a tooth *in situ* (15 diameters). *c* is placed in the pulp-cavity, opposite the cervix or neck of the tooth; the part above is the crown, that below is the root (fang). 1. Enamel with radial and concentric markings. 2. Dentine with tubules and incremental lines. 3. Cement or crusta petrosa, with bone corpuscles. 4. Dental periosteum. 5. Bone of lower jaw.

Structure of the Teeth. The Dental Pulp (*pulpa dentis*).—A longitudinal section of a tooth will show the presence of a central chamber having the general form of the crown of the tooth. Processes of the chamber pass from its body, one for each root and down each root, and open at the apex by a minute orifice. This cavity is known as the **pulp-chamber** or **pulp-cavity** (*cavum dentis*) (Figs. 807 and 808). The minute canal in each root is called the **pulp-canal** or **root-canal** (*canalis radicis dentis*). The foramen at the apex of the root is the **apical foramen** (*foramen apicis dentis*). The cavity contains a soft, vascular, and sensitive organ called the **dental pulp** (*pulpa dentis*). It is made up of fibrous cellular connective tissue, the fibres of which are extremely fine, and contains numerous blood-vessels and nerves, which enter by way of the apical foramina. It has not been proved that there are lymphatics in the dental pulp, although some authors assert that they exist (Wangermann and others). It seems to have been proved that the spaces between the fibres of the pulp communicate with the lymphatic system. The periphery of the pulp is bounded by a layer of cells arranged like columnar epithelium, each cell sending one or more branched processes through the basic substance

of the dentine. These processes constitute the **dentine fibres**. Other processes come off from the cells which pass in the direction of the pulp and surround it. The cells at the periphery of the pulp are the **dentine-forming cells**, the **odontoblasts of Waldeyer**. The blood-vessels break up into innumerable capillary loops which lie beneath the layer of odontoblasts. The nerve-fibrils break up into numberless non-medullary filaments, which spread out beneath the odontoblasts, and probably send terminal filaments to the extreme periphery of the pulp outside the odontoblasts.

The matrix cells and their processes are irregularly arranged in the body of the pulp, but in the canal portion the fibrillae are in the direction of the axis of the root.

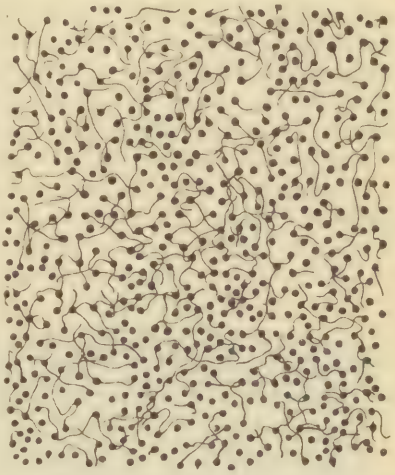


FIG. 809.—From a ground-section through the parts of a dentine, near the pulp, of a human canine tooth which has been impregnated with pigment. The dental canaliculi are cut across and are joined together by side branches. × 400.

The Solid Portion of the Tooth.—The section will exhibit three hard tissues in a tooth: one, the **proper dental substance**, forming the greater mass of the tooth; hence its name **dentine** or **ivory**. The dentine upon the exposed crown is sheathed by a layer called the **enamel**; the dentine of the root is enclosed in a distinct tissue, the **cementum** or **crusta petrosa**; both cementum and enamel are thinnest at the neck and thickest upon their distal portions.

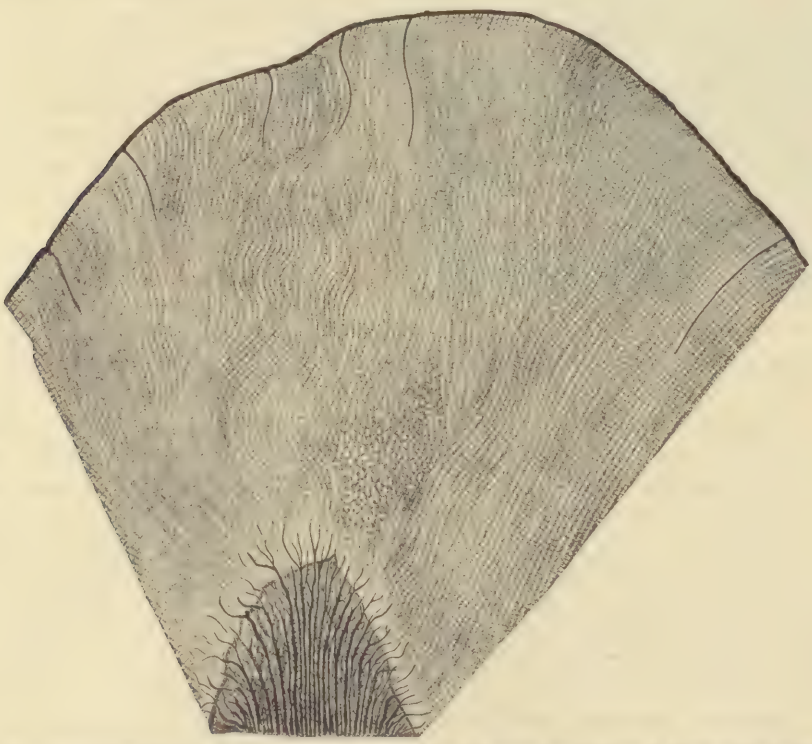


FIG. 810.—Longitudinal ground-section through the apex of a canine tooth from a three-and-a-half-year-old boy. The entrance of the dental canaliculi between the enamel prisms and the course taken by the latter are shown. × 135. (Szymonowicz.)

The **Ivory** or **Dentine** (*substantiae eburnea*) (Figs. 808, 809, 810, and 811) forms the principal mass of a tooth; in its central part is the cavity enclosing the pulp. It is a modification of osseous tissue, from which it differs, however, in the fact that it does not *contain* cells placed in cavities, but the cells lie in the periphery of the pulp, against but not in the dentine. The dentine contains the *processes* of the cells, which are known as **dental** or **dentinal fibres.** On microscopic examination it is seen to consist of a number of minute wavy and branching tubes having distinct parietes. They are called the **dentinal tubuli** or **dental canals,** and are embedded in a dense homogeneous substance, the **intertubular tissue.**

The **dentinal tubuli** (*canaliculi dentales*) (Fig. 811) are placed parallel with one another, and open at their inner ends into the pulp-cavity. In their course to the periphery they present two or three curves, and are twisted on themselves in a spiral direction. The direction of these tubes varies; they are vertical in the upper portion of the crown, oblique in the neck and upper part of the root, and toward the lower part of the root they are inclined downward. The tubuli, at their commencement, are about $\frac{1}{4500}$ of an inch in diameter; in their course they divide and subdivide dichotomously, so as to give to the cut surface of the dentine a striated appearance. From the sides of the tubes, especially in the root, ramifications of extreme minuteness are given off, which join together in loops in the intertubular substance, or terminate in small dilatations, from which branches are given off. Near the pulp the lateral branches are few and are almost at right angles to the canals. Nearer the periphery the lateral branches are more numerous, and they come off at acute angles. The terminations of the chief canals at the periphery vary. In the crown they break up into branches like fingers just beneath the enamel. Some of these finger-like branches leave the dentine and enter the cement substance between enamel prisms. The majority of the chief canals end in blind extremities at the margin of the enamel and do not enter this structure. In the lower portion of the tooth the chief canals do not emerge from the dentine, but end at the margin of the cement in blind extremities. They may reach the spaces of the granular sheath. Near the periphery of the dentine of the crown the finer ramifications of the tubuli pass through a layer of irregular branched spaces which communicate with each other. These are called the **interglobular spaces of Czermak** (*spatia interglobularia*) (Fig. 811, *J*). These spaces are gaps in the dentine due to failure of calcification and are filled with uncalcified dentine. The outer part of the dentine in the lower portion of the tooth contains a layer of interglobular spaces known as the **granular layer** or **granular sheath of Tomes.** The dentinal tubuli have comparatively thick walls, and contain slender cylindrical prolongations from the processes of the cells of

FIG. 811.—Ground-section through the root of a human premolar. *D*, dentine; *K*, cement corpuscles; *O*, osteoblasts; *Ep.*, remains of Hertwig's epithelial sheath, 200 diameters; *J*, interglobular spaces. (Rose.)

the pulp-tissue already mentioned, and first described by Mr. Tomes and named **Tomes's fibres** or **dentinal fibres.** These dentinal fibres are analogous to the soft contents of the canaliculi of bone. Between Tomes's fibres and the ivory around the canals there is a tissue which is markedly resistant to the action of acids—the **dentinal sheath of Neumann.**

The **intertubular substance** or **tissue** is translucent and contains the chief part of the earthy matter of the dentine. After the earthy matter has been removed by steeping a tooth in weak acid the animal basis remaining may be torn into laminae which run parallel with the pulp-cavity across the direction of the tubules. These laminae show the method of growth to be by deposition of successive strata of dentine. Fibrils have been found in the matrix of the intertubular substance, and are probably continuous with the dentinal fibres of Tomes. In a *dry* tooth a section of dentine often displays a series of lines—the **incremental lines of Salter**—which are parallel with the laminae above mentioned. These lines are caused by two facts: (1) The imperfect calcification of the dentinal laminae immediately adjacent to the line. (2) The drying process, which reveals these defects in the calcification. These lines are wide or narrow according to the number of laminae involved, and along their course, in consequence of the imperfection in the calcifying process, little irregular cavities are left, which are the **interglobular spaces** already referred to. They have received their name from the fact that they are surrounded by minute nodules or globules of dentine. Other curved lines may be seen parallel to the surface. These are the **concentric lines of Schreger,** and are due to the optical effect of simultaneous curvature of the dentinal tubules.

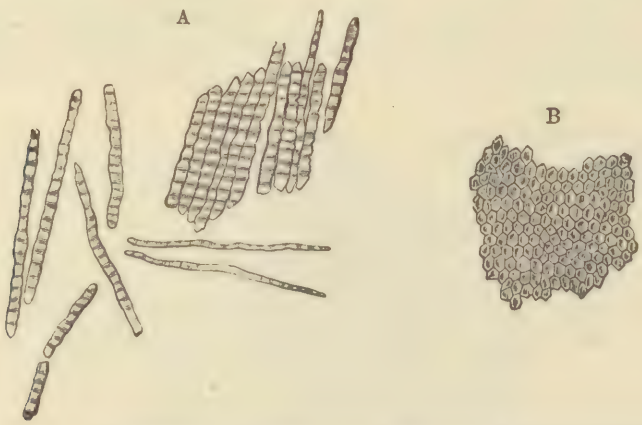


FIG. 812.—Enamel prisms (350 diameters). *A*, fragments and single fibres of the enamel isolated by the action of hydrochloric acid. *B*, surface of a small fragment of enamel, showing the hexagonal ends of the fibres.

CHEMICAL COMPOSITION.—According to Berzelius and Bibra, dentine consists of twenty-eight parts of animal and seventy-two of earthy matter. The animal matter is resolvable by boiling into gelatin. The earthy matter consists of phosphate and carbonate of calcium, with a trace of fluoride of calcium, phosphate of magnesia, and other salts.

The **Enamel** (*substantia adamantina*) (Figs. 808, 810, and 812) is the hardest and most compact part of a tooth, and forms a thin crust over the exposed part of the crown as far as the commencement of the root. It is thickest on the grinding surface of the crown until worn away by attrition, and becomes thinner toward the neck. It consists of a congeries of minute hexagonal rods, columns, or prisms known as **enamel fibres** or **enamel prisms** (*prismata adamantina*) (Fig. 812). In general, they lie parallel with one another, resting by one extremity upon the dentine, which presents a number of minute depressions for their reception, and

forming the free surface of the crown by the other extremity. There are occasional collections of prisms which run diagonally. The prisms are directed vertically on the summit of the crown, horizontally at the sides; they are about the $\frac{1}{5500}$ of an inch in diameter, and pursue a more or less wavy course. By reflected light radial striations are visible. These are **Schreger's lines,** and are due to the fact that the prisms take an undulatory course and those of two layers may have opposite directions. Another series of lines, having a brown appearance from pigmentation, and denominated the **parallel striae** or **brown striae of Retzius** or the **colored lines,** are seen on a section of the enamel. These lines are concentric and *cross* the enamel rods. They are caused by the mode of enamel deposition. Inasmuch as the enamel columns, when near the dentine, cross each other and only become parallel farther away, a series of radial markings, light and dark alternately, is obtained (Fig. 808). The enamel prisms are themselves calcified and are fixed to each other by a very small amount of cement substance. Numerous minute interstices intervene between the enamel-fibres near their dentinal surface. It is noted that some of the dentinal canals at the crown penetrate a certain distance between the rods of the enamel (Fig. 810). No nutritive canals exist in the enamel, except the very few dentinal canals which at the crown penetrate a short distance, and these are found only in a small area.

Chemical Composition.—According to Bibra, enamel consists of 96.5 per cent. of earthy matter and 3.5 per cent. of animal matter. The earthy matter consists of the phosphate and the carbonate of calcium, with traces of fluoride of calcium, phosphate of magnesia, and other salts.

The enamel of a recently erupted tooth is covered by a membrane, the thickness of which is $\frac{1}{2000}$ of an inch. It is known as **enamel cuticle** or **Nasmyth's membrane** (*cuticula dentis*). It is probably the most recent, and hence an uncalcified, or partly calcified enamel layer. Some believe it to be a product of the outer layer of the cells of the enamel organ.

The **Cortical Substance, Cementum** or **Crusta Petrosa** (*substantia ossea*) (Figs. 808 and 811) is disposed as a thin layer on the roots and neck of a tooth, from the termination of the enamel as far as the apex of the root, where it is usually very thick. At the neck it overlays a slight margin of enamel. In structure and chemical composition it is true bone. It contains, sparingly, the lacunae and canaliculi which characterize true bone; the lacunae placed near the surface have the canaliculi radiating from the side of the lacunae toward the periodontal membrane or **dental periosteum,** and those more deeply placed join with adjacent dentinal tubuli. The teeth of the young usually contain Haversian systems in the thicker portions of the cementum. The neck of the tooth does not contain lacunae. The cementum is occasionally laminated. Sharpey's fibres (p. 37) are very numerous. Some of the lacunae of the cementum receive dentinal tubes from the dentine.

As age advances the cement increases in thickness, and gives rise to those bony growths, or exostoses, so common in the teeth of the aged; the pulp-cavity becomes also partially filled up by a hard substance intermediate in structure between dentine and bone (the *osteo-dentine* of Owen; the *secondary dentine* of Tomes). It is formed by the odontoblasts, the dental pulp lessening in volume.

Development of the Teeth (Figs. 813, 814, 815, and 816).—The teeth are an evolution from the dermoid system, and not of the bony skeleton; they are developed from two of the blastodermic layers, the epiblast and mesoblast. From the former the enamel is developed; from the latter the dentinal pulp, dentine, cementum, and pericementum. It is customary to view the development of the permanent and temporary teeth as separate studies.

The earliest evidence of tooth-formation in the human embryo is observed about the seventh week. The mucous membrane covering the embryonic jaws is seen to rise as a longitudinal ridge along the summit of each jaw. This ridge is

the **maxillary rampart of Kölliker and Waldeyer.** A transverse section through the jaw will show the elevation to be due to a linear and outlined activity of the germinal epithelial layer; a corresponding epithelial growth is seen to sink as a band into the mesoblastic tissue beneath. This band is called the **dental lamina** or **dental band.** The local cell-activity continues, and in its descent the band appears to meet with a resistance which causes a flattening of its extremity into a continuous lamina. From the inner (toward the tongue) edge of the lamina epithelial cords are given off, ten in number, one for each temporary tooth.

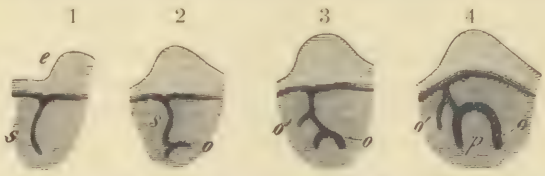


FIG. 813.—Diagram of method of development of the teeth. 1. Early stage. 4. Later stage. 2, 3. Intermediate stages. *s*. Common dental germ. *o*. Special dental germ (milk). *o'*. Special dental germ (permanent). *p*. Papilla. *e*. Dental furrow. (Gegenbauer.)

The growth of each cord continues, and each expands into a flask-like form, the walls covered by a layer of germinal cells, its interior by swollen mature cells. The ingrowing bulb is now seen to flatten upon its lower surface, as though it had met with an outlined resistance from the mesoblastic tissue beneath. The epithelial ingrowth assumes the general form of the several teeth; it is the **enamel-organ of the tooth** (Fig. 813). The cellular tissue of the jaw beneath the cap of the enamel-organ grows and projects into the cap. This projection is the **dentine papilla** (*papilla dentis*). At this period the mesoblastic tissue around each enamel-organ is seen to become differentiated into fibrous tissue surrounding the enamel-organs.

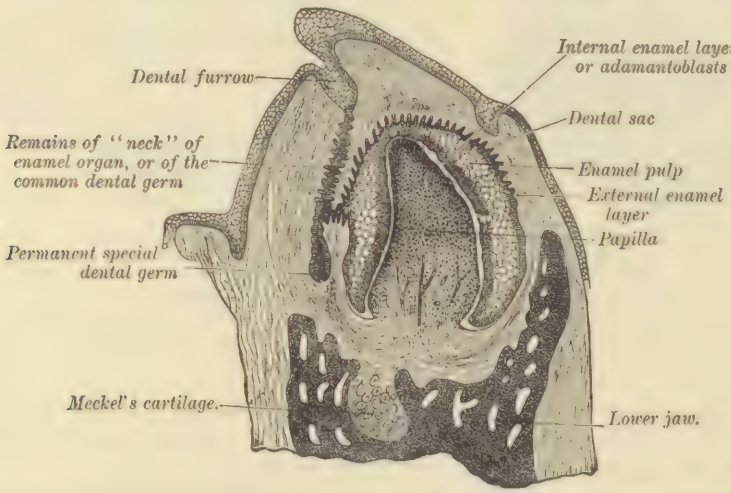


FIG. 814.—Vertical section of the inferior maxilla of an early human fœtus. (Magnified 25 diameters.)

but at some distance from them. Islets of bone are also seen to be forming the beginning of the bony maxillae.

The indentation of the base of the enamel-organ continues until it assumes the form of the future teeth. The cells bounding the organ assumes a cylindrical form; the cells of the interior become much expanded, and irregular in size and form.

The mesoblastic tissue underlying the enamel-organ is much condensed; evidences of cellular differentiation and a vascular system appear. Bone continues to

develop until all of the tooth-follicles are embraced in a gutter of bone. From the lingual side of the cords of the temporary teeth epithelial buds are given off, which sink into the mesoblastic tissue and form the enamel-organs of the permanent teeth. The condensation of fibrous tissue continues until each embryonic tooth is enveloped in a sac, the **dental sac** (Fig. 814); this, together with all of its contents, is called the **dental follicle.**

The tooth which is undergoing development with its enamel-organ and dentine papilla is known as the **tooth germ.** This tooth germ is encompassed and shut off from surrounding structures by the bag of membranous structure known as the **dental sac.**

The cells of the enamel-organ now undergo a series of differentiations: the inner layer, arranged as columnar epithelium, are the **enamel cells,** or **ameloblasts.** The layer is called the **ameloblastic** or **enamel-forming layer** (Figs. 814 and 815). The cells of the outer wall remain cuboidal; the cells which lie between become much distended, and on account of their appearance when seen in section this portion of the organ is called the **enamel jelly** or the **stellate reticulum.** The layer of cells immediately contiguous to the ameloblasts form a layer called the **stratum intermedium** (Fig. 815 A, *D*).

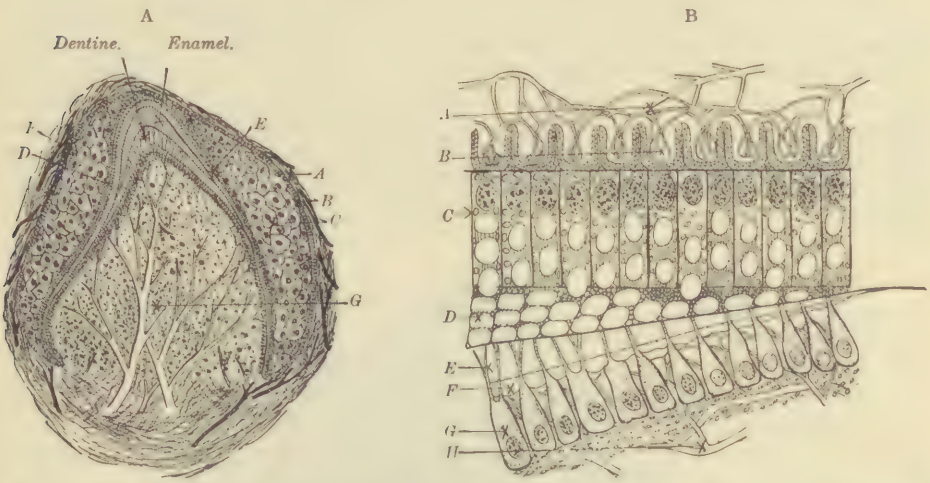


FIG. 815.—A. Section through tooth-follicle—human canine seven and one-half months. *A.* Follicular wall. *B.* Outer epithelial coat. *C.* Stellate reticulum. *D.* Stratum intermedium. *E.* Ameloblasts. *F.* Odontoblasts. *G.* Pulp.

B. Diagram after Williams (Dental Cosmos, 1896), mode of enamel deposition. *A.* Blood-supply to *B*, secreting papillae. *C.* Layer of ameloblasts containing enamel globules and droplets of calcoglobulin. *D.* Enamel-globules deposited. *E.* Formed dentine. *F.* Forming dentine. *G.* Layer of odontoblasts. *H.* Blood-supply to odontoblastic layer.

The enclosed **mesoblastic papilla** (the *future dental pulp*) has its peripheral cells, which are called **odontoblasts,** differentiated into columnar bodies disposed as a layer, each cell having a large nucleus. The vascular supply of the pulp is now well marked. A section of a follicle at this period will exhibit the follicular wall springing from the base of the dental papilla and having a well-marked blood-supply. The bony alveolar walls are well outlined, and evidences of a periosteum appear (Figs. 814 and 815).

Development of Enamel (Fig. 815 B).—In point of time, the deposition of dentine actually begins before that of enamel, so that the first-formed layer of enamel is deposited against a layer of immature dentine. The enamel is built up of two distinct substances—globules of uniform size which are formed by the ameloblasts, and a cementing substance, probably an albuminate of calcium (calcoglobulin), the basis of all the calcified tissues. At the ends of the ameloblasts,

next to the dentine, the secretion of calco-globulin is deposited, and into the plastic mass the enamel-globules are extruded, each globule remaining connected with the ameloblasts by plasmic strings, which also join the globules laterally.[1]

The first deposit of enamel begins in the tips of the cusps, and is quickly followed by a disappearance of the stellate reticulum at that point; the stellate reticulum appears to atrophy, so that the vascular follicular wall is brought into direct apposition with the stratum intermedium, which becomes differentiated into a glandular (secreting) tissue which elaborates the calcic albuminous basis of the enamel. The secretion passes from the cells of the stratum intermedium through a membrane into the ameloblasts, where it is in part combined with the cellular globules, and irregular masses of it are extruded as cementing substance. The deposition continues until the enamel-cap has its typical form. The deposition of the layers of globules is indicated by parallel lines transverse to the axes of the enamel-rods. At the completion of amelification the ameloblasts are partially calcified and form the **enamel cuticle** or **Nasmyth's membrane** (*cuticula dentis*).

Formation of Dentine. — The layer of columnar cells bounding the periphery of the pulp, the **odontoblasts**, are in apposition with a plexus of capillary vessels (Fig. 816). Each cell is a secreting body which selects the material for dentine-building. Against the layer of ameloblasts covering the dental papilla the odontoblasts deposit globules, of the calcium albuminate, and receding as the deposits are made, leave one or more protoplasmic processes in the calcic deposit. These are known as **Tomes's fibres**. The process continues until the normal dentine thickness is formed. The deposit is laid down in a scaffolding of finely fibrillated tissue. The layer of formative cells remains constant. The remains of the dentine papilla constitute the **pulp** and lie in the pulp-cavity (p. 1200).

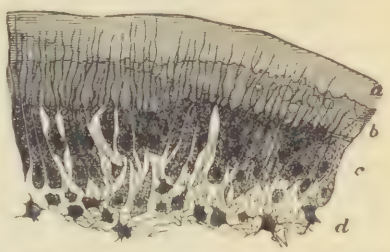


FIG. 816.—Part of section of developing tooth of young rat, showing the mode of deposition of the dentine (highly magnified). *a*. Outer layer of fully-calcified dentine. *b*. Uncalcified matrix with a few nodules of calcareous matter. *c*. Odontoblasts with processes extending into the dentine. *d*. Pulp. The section is stained with carmine, which colors the uncalcified matrix, but not the calcified part.

Formation of Cementum. — Hertwig asserts that the epithelial edge of the enamel organ formed by the inner and outer epithelial layers of the organ grows downward, or rather the developing tooth grows upward until the future root-form of the tooth is outlined by a double layer of epithelial cells, constituting the **root-sheath of Hertwig**. The growth of the alveolar process is synchronous.

Upon the pulp side of the sheath a layer of odontoblasts is developed; upon the outer side the fibrous encasement becomes closely attached to the sheath and a layer of osteogenetic cells is differentiated. These cells are called **cementoblasts**. The growth of the dentine of the root is exactly similar to the growth of that of the crown. The epithelial sheath undergoes atrophic changes, leaving the epithelial whorls which remain in the pericementum. The cementum is developed as subperiosteal bone. The cementum over the apex of the root is not formed until after the eruption of the tooth.

Formation of Alveoli. — By the time the crowns of the teeth have formed, each is enclosed in a loculus of bone which has developed around it and at some distance from it; the loculus is open at the top toward the gums, where it is closed by fibrous tissue; the developing permanent tooth is contained in the same loculus, but is later separated from the temporary tooth by a growth of bone. The alveolar

[1] J. L. Williams, Dental Cosmos, 1896.

process is not completed until after the eruption of the teeth. During eruption that portion of the process overlying the crown undergoes absorption, and as soon as the immature tooth has erupted the alveolar process is developed about the root, whose formation is also completed after eruption.

Development of the Permanent Teeth.—The permanent teeth as regards their development may be divided into two sets: (1) those which replace the temporary teeth, and which, like them, are ten in number; these are the **successional permanent teeth**; and (2) those which have no temporary predecessors, but are superadded at the back of the dental series. These are three in number on either side in each jaw, and are termed the **superadded permanent teeth.** They are the three molars of the permanent set, the molars of the temporary set being replaced by the premolars or bicuspids of the permanent set.

The **Development of the Successional Permanent Teeth**—the ten anterior ones in either jaw—will be first considered. As already stated, the germ of each milk tooth is a special thickening of the "free" edge of the common dental germ or dental lamina. In like manner is formed the special dental germ of each of the successional permanent teeth. But these thickenings are not at the "free" edge of the dental lamina, but occur behind and lateral to each of the milk-tooth germs (Fig. 813). There are ten of these, and they appear in order, about the sixteenth week, on each side, the central incisor germs being the first.

These special dental germs now go through the same transformations as were described in connection with those of the milk teeth, and the changes also eventuate in the germs becoming enamel organs; that is, they recede into the substance of the gum behind the germs of the temporary teeth. As they recede they become flask-shaped, form an expansion of their distal extremity, and finally meet a papilla, which has been formed in the mesoblast, just in the same manner as was the case in the temporary teeth. The apex of the papilla indentates the dental germ, which encloses it, and forming a cap for it, undergoes analogous changes to those described in the development of the milk teeth, and becomes converted into the enamel, whilst the papilla forms the dentine of the permanent tooth. In its development it becomes enclosed in a dentinal sac which adheres to the *back* of the sac of the temporary tooth. The sac of each permanent tooth is also connected with the fibrous tissue of the gum by a slender band of the **gubernaculum,** which passes to the margin of the jaw behind the corresponding milk tooth (see above).

The **Superadded Permanent Teeth**—three on each side in each jaw—arise from successive extensions backward —*i. e.*, along the line of the jaw—of the common dental germ from the back part of the special dental germ of the immediately preceding tooth. During the fourth month or seventeenth week, in that portion of the common dental germ which lies behind—*i. e.*, lateral to the special dental germ of the last temporary molar tooth, and which has hitherto remained unaltered—there is developed the special dental germ of the first permanent molar into which a papilla projects. In a similar manner, about the fourth month after birth the second molar is formed, and about the third year the third molar.

Eruption.—When the calcification of the different tissues of the *milk* tooth is sufficiently advanced to enable it to bear the pressure to which it will be afterward subjected, its eruption takes place, the tooth making its way through the gum. The gum is absorbed by the pressure of the crown of the tooth against it, which is itself pressed up by the increasing size of the fang. At the same time the septa between the dentinal sacs, at first fibrous in structure, ossify and thus form the **loculi** or **alveoli**; these firmly embrace the necks of the teeth and afford them a solid basis.

Previous to the permanent teeth penetrating the gum, the bony partitions which separate their sacs from the deciduous teeth are absorbed, the roots of

the temporary teeth disappear by absorption through the agency of particular multinucleated cells, called **odontoclasts**, which are developed at the time in the neighborhood of the root, and the permanent teeth become placed under the loose crown of the deciduous teeth; the latter finally become detached, and the permanent teeth take their place in the mouth (Fig. 817).

FIG. 817.—The milk-teeth in a child of about four years. The permanent teeth are seen in their alveoli. (Cryer.)

Calcification of the permanent teeth proceeds in the following order: First molar, soon after birth; the central incisor, lateral incisor, and cuspid, about six months after birth; the bicuspids, at the second year or later; second molar, end of second year; third molar, about the twelfth year.

The **Eruption of the Temporary Teeth** commences at the seventh month, and is complete about the end of the second year.

The periods for the eruption of the temporary set are (C. S. Tomes)—

Lower central incisors	6 to 9 months.
Upper incisors	8 to 10 "
Lower lateral incisors and first molars . .	15 to 21 "
Canines	16 to 20 "
Second molars	20 to 24 "

The **Eruption of the Permanent Teeth** takes place at the following periods, the teeth of the lower jaw preceding those of the upper by a short interval:

6½ years, first molars.
7th year, two middle incisors.
8th year, two lateral incisors.
9th year, first bicuspid.
10th year, second biscuspid.
11th to 12th year, canine,
12th to 13th year, second molars.
17th to 21st year, third molars.

The Palate (Palatum).

The palate forms the roof of the mouth; it consists of two portions, the **hard palate** in front, the **soft palate** behind.

The Hard Palate (*palatum durum*) (Figs. 818 and 819).—The hard palate is bounded in front and at the sides by the upper alveolar arches and gums. In front and to the sides it is continuous with the gums; behind, it is continuous with the soft palate. It is formed by the palate processes of the superior maxillary bones and the palate processes of the palate bones (Fig. 72). It is covered by a dense structure formed by the periosteum and mucous membrane of the mouth, which are intimately adherent, particularly to the front and sides, by means of

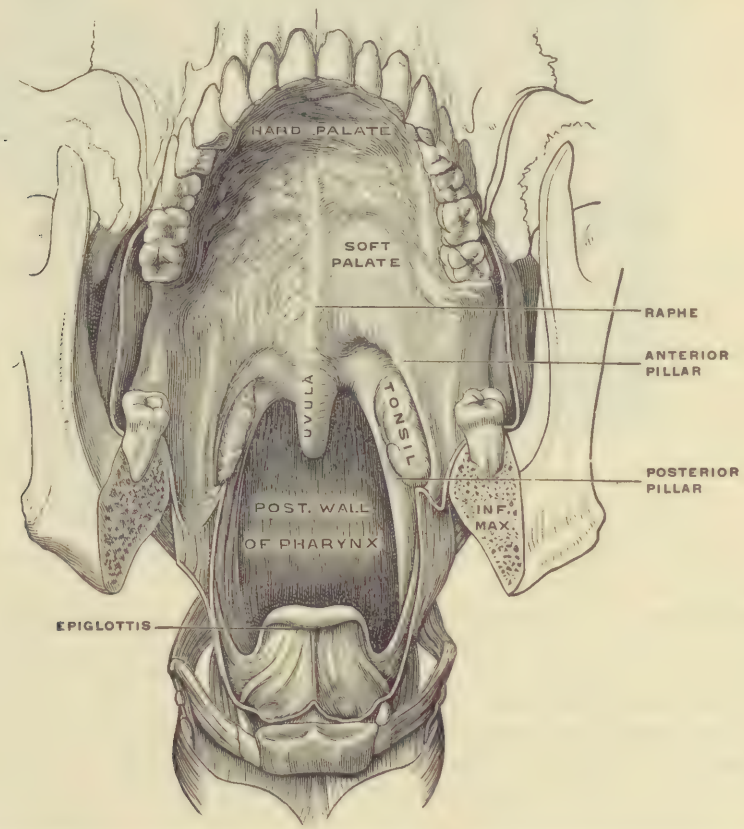


FIG. 818.—Antero-inferior surface of the soft palate. The tongue has been removed, so that the pharyngeal isthmus is distinctly seen. (Luschka.)

a layer of fibrous tissue. Along the middle line is a **linear ridge** or **raphe** (*raphe palati*), which terminates anteriorly in a small papilla, the **incisive papilla** (*papilla incisiva*), corresponding with the inferior opening of the anterior palatine fossa. This papilla receives filaments from the naso-palatine and anterior palatine nerves. The incisive papilla in a recently born child is continuous with the gum and the frenulum of the upper lip. On either side and in front of the raphé the mucous membrane is thick, pale in color, and corrugated; these corrugations, which are composed of fibrous tissue, are the **palatine rugae** (*plicæ palatinæ transversæ*). In very young children the rugæ are distinct and definite. In the aged they are indistinct. Behind, it is thin, smooth, and of a deeper color; it is covered with squamous epithelium, and the fibrous tissue beneath it

contains many mucous glands, the **palatine glands** (*glandulae palatinae*). The palatine vessels and nerves lie in the fibrous tissue beneath the mucous membrane.

The Soft Palate or Velum Pendulum Palati (*palatum molle*) (Figs. 818, 819, and 824).—The soft palate is a movable fold suspended from the posterior border of the hard palate, and forming an incomplete septum between the mouth and pharynx. It consists of a fold of mucous membrane enclosing muscular fibres, an aponeurosis, vessels, nerves, adenoid tissue, and mucous glands. When occupying its usual position it is relaxed and pendent and its oral surface is concave, continuous with the roof of the mouth, and marked by a **median ridge** or **raphé**, which indicates its original separation into two lateral halves. Its pharyngeal surface is convex, and continuous with the mucous membrane cover-

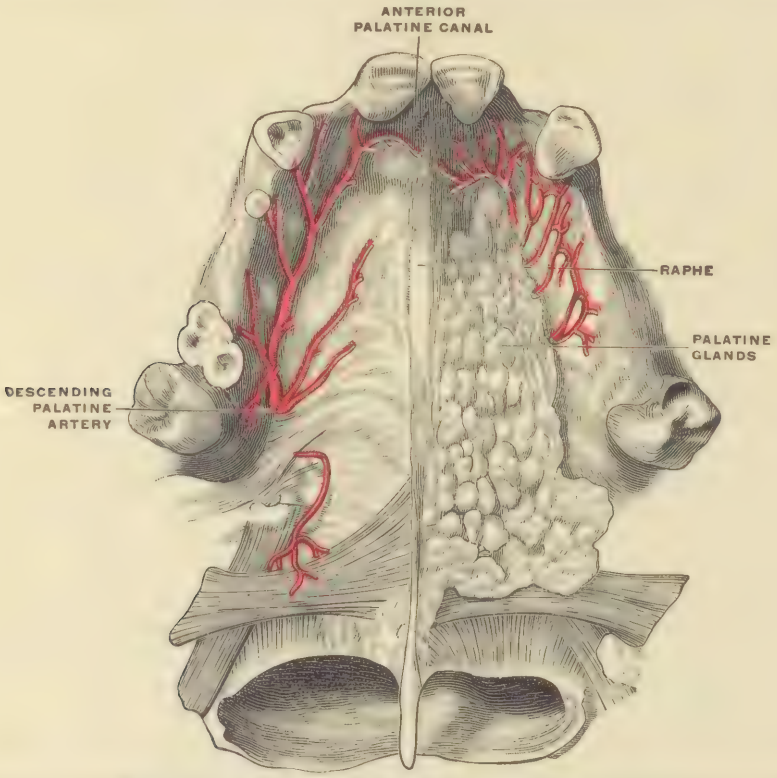


FIG. 819.—The palatine vault on the right side of the mucous membrane has been removed. The left side shows the mucous membrane and the glandular layer. (Poirier and Charpy.)

ing the floor of the posterior nares. Its anterior or upper border is attached to the posterior margin of the hard palate, and its sides are blended with the pharynx. Its posterior or lower border is free. The posterior portion of the soft palate is known as the **vail of the palate** (*velum palatinum*) and terminates posteriorly and externally on each side in a free margin, the posterior arch of the palate.

Hanging from the middle of its lower border is a small, conical-shaped, pendulous process, the **uvula** (*uvula palatina*). The uvula varies greatly in length in different individuals. It is composed of glands and connective tissue, contains a prolongation of the Azygos uvulae muscle and is covered with mucous membrane, and arching outward and downward from the base of the uvula on each side are two curved folds of mucous membrane, containing muscular fibres, called the **arches** or **pillars of the soft palate** or **pillars of the fauces** (*arcus palatini*).

The Anterior Pillar (*arcus glossopalatinus*) (Figs. 818 and 824).—The anterior pillar on each side runs downward, outward, and forward to the side of the base of the tongue. These pillars are formed by the projection of the Palato-glossi muscles, covered by mucous membrane.

The Posterior Pillar (*arcus pharyngopalatinus*) (Figs. 818 and 824).—The posterior pillar on each side is nearer to its opposite arch than is the anterior pillar to its opposite. These pillars are larger than the anterior; they run downward, outward, and backward to the sides of the pharynx, and are formed by the projection of the Palato-pharyngei muscles, covered by mucous membrane. The anterior and posterior pillars are separated below by a triangular interval in which the **tonsil** is lodged.

The space left between the arches of the palate on the two sides is called the **isthmus of the fauces** (*isthmus faucium*). It is bounded, above, by the free margin of the soft palate; below, by the back of the tongue; and on each side by the pillars of the fauces and the tonsils. Through this isthmus the mouth communicates with the pharynx.

The Mucous Membrane of the Soft Palate.—The mucous membrane of the soft palate is thin, and covered with squamous epithelium on both surfaces, excepting near the orifice of the Eustachian tube, where its epithelium is columnar and ciliated.[1] Beneath the mucous membrane on the oral surface of the soft palate is a considerable amount of adenoid tissue. The palatine glands form a continuous layer on the pharyngeal surface and around the uvula.

The Aponeurosis of the Soft Palate.—The aponeurosis of the soft palate is a thin but firm fibrous layer attached above to the posterior border of the hard palate, and becoming thinner toward the free margin of the velum. Laterally, it is continuous with the pharyngeal aponeurosis. It forms the framework of the soft palate, and is joined by the tendons of the Tensor palati muscles.

The Muscles of the Soft Palate.—The muscles of the soft palate are six on each side: the **Levator palati, Tensor palati, Azygos uvulae, Palato-glossus, Palato-pharyngeus** and **Salpingo-pharyngeus** (see pp. 403, 404, 405, and 406). The following is the relative position of these structures in a dissection of the soft palate from the posterior or naso-pharyngeal to the anterior or oral surface: Immediately beneath the pharyngeal mucous membrane is a thin stratum of muscular fibres, the posterior fasciculus of the **Palato-pharyngeus muscle,** joining with its fellow of the opposite side in the middle line. This posterior fasciculus is joined by the Salpingo-pharyngeus muscle. Beneath this are the **Azygos uvulae** and **Salpingo-pharyngeus muscles,** consisting of two rounded fleshy fasciculi, placed side by side in the median line of the soft palate. Next comes the aponeurosis of the **Levator palati,** joining with the muscle of the opposite side in the middle line. Fourthly, the anterior fasciculus of the **Palato-pharyngeus,** thicker than the posterior, and separating the Levator palati from the next muscle, the **Tensor palati.** This muscle terminates in a tendon which, after winding around the hamular process of the internal pterygoid plate of the sphenoid bone, expands into a broad aponeurosis in the soft palate, anterior to the other muscles, which have been enumerated. Finally, we have a thin muscular stratum, the **Palato-glossus muscle,** placed in front of the aponeurosis of the Tensor palati, and separated from the oral mucous membrane by adenoid tissue.

The Blood-vessels of the Palate (Fig. 819).—The palate is supplied with blood by branches of the posterior or **descending palatine branch of the internal maxillary artery** (*a. palatina descendens*) and of the **ascending** or **anterior palatine branch of the facial artery** (*a. palatina ascendens*). The posterior palatine artery divides into the **great and small palatine arteries** (*aa. palatinae major et minor*), which run through the

[1] According to Klein, the mucous membrane on the nasal surface of the soft palate in the fœtus is covered throughout by columnar ciliated epithelium, which subsequently becomes squamous; and some anatomists state that it is covered with columnar ciliated epithelium, except at its free margin, throughout life.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

palatine canals and after emerging give off branches. Branches from the small palatine go to the soft palate, the large branch passes forward on the hard palate near the alveolar margin. The ascending palatine branch of the facial lies upon the medial surface of the Tensor palati muscle and is distributed to the soft palate and pharynx. **A palatine vein** corresponding to the descending palatine artery opens into the anterior facial vein. The pharyngeal veins also receive palatine veins.

The Nerves of the Palate.—The **large posterior palatine nerve** emerges from the posterior palatine canal and accompanies the posterior palatine artery. The **naso-palatine nerve** emerges from the foramen of Scarpa and is distributed to the anterior portion of the hard palate. The soft palate is supplied by the **small posterior palatine** and the **accessory palatine nerves.**

The Tonsil or Amygdala (*tonsilla palatina*) (Figs. 818 and 824).—The tonsils or amygdalae are two prominent bodies situated one on each side of the fauces, between the anterior and posterior pillars of the soft palate. They are of a rounded form, and vary considerably in size in different individuals. A recess, the **supra-tonsillar fossa** (*fossa supratonsillaris*), may be seen, directed upward and backward above the tonsil. His regards this as the remains of the lower part of the second visceral cleft. The recess is covered by a fold of mucous membrane termed the **plica triangularis.** Externally the tonsil is covered with a fibrous capsule which joins the aponeurosis of the pharynx. The outer surface of the capsule is in relation with the inner surface of the Superior constrictor muscle of the pharynx, to the outer side of which is the Internal pterygoid muscle. The *ascending palatine artery* is close to the outer surface of the tonsil, the Superior constrictor muscle of the pharynx and the tonsillar capsule intervening. The **tonsillar artery,** which is sometimes a branch of the ascending palatine, is also close to the outer surface of the tonsil. The internal carotid artery lies behind and to the outer side of the tonsil, and nearly an inch (20 to 25 mm.) distant from it. It corresponds to the angle of the lower jaw. The surface of the tonsil which looks toward the pharynx presents from twelve to fifteen orifices, each leading into a small recess or **crypt** (*fossula tonsillaris*). From the crypts numerous follicles branch out into the substance of the tonsil by means of very irregular channels. The crypts are lined with stratified pavement epithelium. The epithelium of the crypts exhibits marked degenerative changes. The degeneration causes the formation of numerous communicating spaces, which contain leukocytes and lymphocytes. The crypts are surrounded with lymphoid tissue. In this are numerous lymphoid follicles (*noduli lymphatici*), which are placed in the submucous tissue. These follicles are analogous to those of Peyer's glands and consist of adenoid tissue. No openings from the capsules into the follicles can be recognized. They contain a thick grayish secretion.

The Blood-vessels of the Tonsil.—The **arteries** supplying the tonsils are the **dorsalis linguae** from the lingual, the **ascending palatine** and **tonsillar** from the facial, the **ascending pharyngeal** from the external carotid, the **descending palatine** branch of the internal maxillary, and a twig from the **small meningeal.** The **veins** terminate in the **tonsillar plexus,** on the outer side of the tonsil, and the tonsillar plexus joins the pharyngeal plexus, which communicates with the pterygoid plexus of the internal jugular or facial vein.

Lymphatics of the Tonsil.—Surrounding each follicle is a close plexus of lymphatic vessels. From these plexuses the lymphatic vessels pass to the submaxillary lymph glands below the angle of the jaw. From the submaxilliary glands lymph passes to the deep cervical glands.

The Nerves of the Tonsil.—A branch from the **glosso-pharyngeal nerve** by uniting with branches of the **pharyngeal plexus** forms the **tonsillar plexus.** The pharyngeal plexus is formed by the pharyngeal branches of the glosso-pharyngeal and superior cervical ganglions and the pharyngeal branch of the vagus.

The Salivary Glands (Fig. 820).

Numerous glands exist in the lips, cheeks, palate, and tongue, but by the term salivary glands are usually understood the three chief glandular masses on each side of the face. These are the principal salivary glands. They communicate with the mouth, pour their secretion into its cavity, and are named respectively the **parotid, submaxillary,** and **sublingual.**

The Parotid Gland (*glandulae parotis*) (Fig. 646).—The parotid gland, so called from being placed near the ear (*παρά, near; οὖς, ὠτός, the ear*), is the largest of the three salivary glands, varying in weight from half an ounce to an ounce. It lies upon the side of the face immediately below and in front of the external ear. It is limited above by the zygoma; below, by the angle of the jaw and by a line drawn between the angle and the mastoid process: anteriorly, it

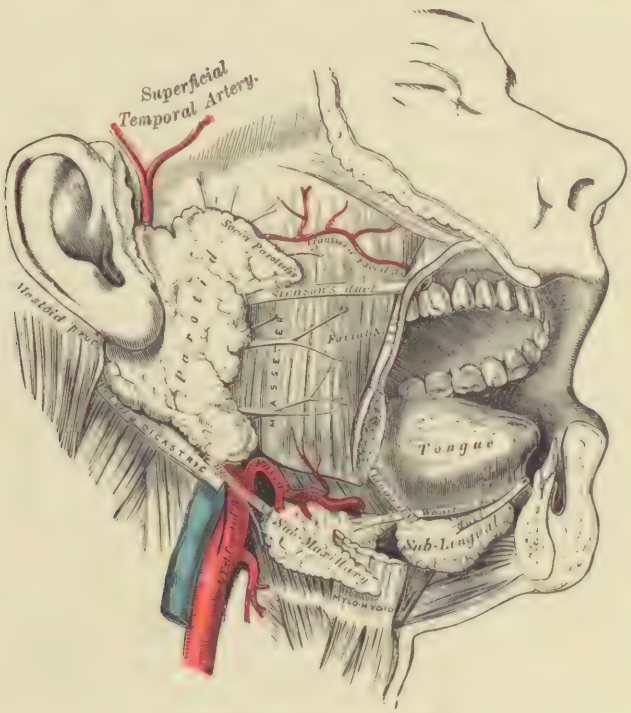


Fig. 820.—The salivary glands.

extends to a variable extent over the Masseter muscle; posteriorly, it is bounded by the external meatus, the mastoid process, and the Sterno-mastoid and Digastric muscles, slightly overlapping the two muscles.

Its *anterior surface* is grooved to embrace the posterior margin of the ramus of the lower jaw, and advances forward beneath the ramus, between the two Pterygoid muscles and superficial to the ramus over the Masseter muscle. Its *outer surface* is triangular and convex, slightly lobulated, is covered by the integument and parotid fascia, and has one or two lymphatic glands resting on it. Its *inner surface* (*processus retromandibularis*) extends deeply into the neck by means of two large processes, one of which dips behind the styloid process and projects beneath the mastoid process and the Sterno-mastoid muscle; the other is situated in front of the styloid process, and passes into the back part of the glenoid fossa, behind the articulation of the lower jaw. The structures passing through the parotid gland are—the **external carotid artery,** giving off its three terminal

branches: the **posterior auricular artery** emerges from the gland behind; the **superficial temporal artery** above; the **transverse facial,** a branch of the temporal, in front; and the **internal maxillary** winds through it as it passes inward, behind the neck of the jaw. Superficial to the external carotid is the trunk formed by the union of the **temporal** and **internal maxillary veins**; a branch, connecting this trunk with the internal jugular, also passes through the gland. The gland is also traversed by the **facial nerve** and its **branches,** which emerge at its anterior border; branches of the **great auricular nerve** pierce the gland to join the facial, and the **auriculo-temporal branch** of the inferior maxillary nerve emerges from the upper part of the gland. The **internal carotid artery** and **internal jugular vein** lie close to its deep surface. The triangular space occupied by the greater part of the gland is bounded in front by the posterior margin of the ramus of the jaw and the internal pterygoid muscle, and behind by the anterior edge of the Sterno-cleido-mastoid muscle, the tympanic portion of the temporal bone and the cartilaginous portion of the external auditory meatus. Its floor is formed by the anterior and posterior walls of the space which meet about the styloid process. These walls are composed of fascia derived from the deep cervical fascia. The remaining side of the space is external and is formed by fascia, derived from the deep cervical fascia and called the **parotid fascia.** This space is called the **parotid recess.** Sir Frederick Treves[1] denies that the fascial covering of the space is complete. He says it is deficient above between the anterior edge of the styloid process and the posterior border of the external pterygoid muscle. A portion of the gland does not occupy the space, but projects forward over the Masseter muscle. This projecting portion is the **facial process.**

Lymph-glands, known as the **parotid lymph-glands,** are in and about the parotid gland, some being embedded in the outer surface of the parotid fascia, others being in the inner surface of the fascia, others in the gland itself, particularly along the temporo-maxillary vein and external carotid artery. They receive lymph from the anterior and lateral portions of the scalp, both eyelids, a portion of the cheek, the root of the nose, the outer portion of the external ear, the soft palate, the posterior nares, and the external auditory meatus. The vessels from them empty into the superficial cervical glands and the superior deep cervical glands. Between the parotid gland and the pharynx are the *subparotid glands.* They receive lymph from the nasal fossae, naso-pharynx and Eustachian tube, and vessels from the glands take lymph to the deep cervical glands.[2]

The Duct of the Parotid Gland, called the Parotid Duct or Stenson's Duct (*ductus parotideus* [*Stenonis*]) (Fig. 820).—The duct of the parotid gland is about two inches and a half in length. It commences by numerous branches from the anterior part of the gland, crosses the Masseter muscle, and at its anterior border dips down into the substance of the Buccinator muscle, which it pierces; it then runs for a short distance obliquely forward between the Buccinator muscle and the mucous membrane of the mouth, and opens upon the inner surface of the cheek by a small orifice opposite the second molar tooth of the upper jaw (Fig. 824). Upon the beginning of Stenson's duct there is often an **accessory parotid gland** (*glandulae parotis accessoria*), which is often called the **socia parotidis.** It is a portion of the facial process. It is a detached portion of gland, and has a duct which opens into Stenson's duct. This accessory gland occasionally exists as a separate lobe, just beneath the zygomatic arch. In this position it has the transverse facial artery above it and some branches of the facial nerve below it.

Surface Form.—The direction of the duct corresponds to a line drawn across the face about a finger's breadth below the zygoma; that is, from the lower margin of the concha to midway between the free margin of the upper lip and the ala of the nose.

[1] Applied Anatomy.

[2] Poirier and Cunéo, Human Anatomy.

Structure of the Parotid Duct.—The parotid duct is dense, it is of considerable thickness, and its canal is about the size of a crowquill; but at its orifice on the inner aspect of the cheek its lumen is greatly reduced in size. The duct consists of an external or fibrous coat, of considerable density, containing contractile fibres, and of an internal or mucous coat lined with short columnar epithelium.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** supplying the parotid gland are derived from the external carotid, and from the branches given off by that vessel in or near its substance. The **veins** empty themselves into the external jugular through some of its tributaries. The **lymphatics** terminate in the superficial cervical and the deep cervical glands, passing in their course through several lymphatic glands placed on the surface and in the substance of the parotid. The **nerves** are derived from the plexus of the **sympathetic** on the external carotid artery, the **facial,** the **auriculo-temporal,** and **great auricular nerves.** It is probable that the branch from the auriculo-temporal nerve is derived from the **glosso-pharyngeal** through the **otic ganglion.** At all events, in some of the lower animals this has been proved experimentally to be the case.

The Parotid Capsule.—The parotid gland is enclosed by two layers of the **parotid fascia** (*fascia parotideomasseterica*), which almost completely encompass the gland. The sheath is incomplete at one area toward the pharyngeal wall (see p. 1215).

The parotid fascia comes from the deep cervical fascia. The external layer covers the gland. The internal layer lines the parotid recess. The external layer is the structure usually spoken of as the parotid fascia. Anteriorly it joins the fascia of the masseter; below it is continuous with the deep cervical fascia; above it is attached to the zygoma; behind it is adherent to the external auditory meatus and sheath of the Sternomastoid. The deep layer is adherent above to the external auditory meatus and back of the glenoid fossa; internally to the styloid process; below it is continuous with the deep cervical fascia. The **stylomaxillary** or **stylomandibular ligament** comes off from the parotid fascia.

The Submaxillary Gland (*glandula submaxillaris*) (Fig. 820).—The submaxillary gland is situated below the jaw, in the anterior part of the submaxillary triangle of the neck. It is irregular in form and weighs about two drachms (8 to 10 grammes). It is covered by the integument, Platysma, deep cervical fascia, and the body of the lower jaw, corresponding to a depression on the inner surface of the body of the mandible, and lies upon the Mylo-hyoid, Hyo-glossus, and Stylo-glossus muscles, a portion of the gland passing beneath the posterior border of the Mylo-hyoid. In front of it is the anterior belly of the Digastric muscle; behind, it is separated from the parotid gland by the **stylo-maxillary ligament,** and from the sublingual gland in front by the Mylo-hyoid muscle. The facial artery lies embedded in a groove in its posterior and upper border. A process is given off from the deep surface of the anterior portion of the gland. This is the **deep process** (Cunningham), and it passes with the duct beneath the Mylo-hyoid muscle.

The Duct of the Submaxillary Gland or Wharton's Duct (*ductus submaxillaris* [*Whartoni*]).—The duct of the submaxillary gland is about two inches in length, and its walls are much thinner than those of the parotid duct. It commences by numerous branches from the deep portion of the gland which lies on the upper surface of the Mylo-hyoid muscle, and passes forward and inward between the Mylo-hyoid and the Hyo-glossus and Genio-hyo-glossus muscles, then between the sublingual gland and the Genio-hyo-glossus muscle, and opens by a narrow orifice on the summit of a small papilla (*caruncula sublingualis*) at the side of the fraenum linguae. On the Hyo-glossus muscle it lies between the lingual and hypoglossal nerves, but at the anterior border of the muscle it crosses under the lingual nerve, and is then placed above it.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** supplying the submaxillary gland are branches of the **facial** and **lingual.** Its **veins** follow the course of the arteries. The **lymphatics** drain into the **submaxillary lymph-glands.** There are no lymphatic glands in this salivary gland. The **nerves** are derived from the **submaxillary ganglion,** through which it receives filaments from the *chorda tympani of the facial* and from the **lingual branch of the inferior maxillary,** sometimes from the **mylo-hyoid branch of the inferior dental,** and from the **sympathetic.**

The Sublingual Gland (*glandula sublingualis*) (Fig. 820). The sublingual gland is the smallest of the salivary glands. It is situated beneath the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth, at the side of the fraenum linguae, in contact with the inner surface of the lower jaw, close to the symphysis. It is narrow, flattened, in shape somewhat like an almond, and weighs about a drachm. It is in relation, *above,* with the mucous membrane; *below,* with the Mylo-hyoid muscle; in *front,* with the depression on the side of the symphysis of the lower jaw, and with its fellow of the opposite side; *behind,* with the deep part of the submaxillary gland; and *internally,* with the Genio-hyo-glossus, from which it is separated by the lingual nerve and Wharton's duct. Its **excretory ducts** or **ducts of Rivinus** (*ductus sublingualis minores*) are from eight to twenty in number.

FIG. 821.—A highly magnified section of the submaxillary gland of the dog, stained with carmine. (Kölliker.)

They open separately into the mouth back of Wharton's duct and upon a fold of mucous membrane known as the **plica sublingualis.** The plica sublingualis is an elevated crest of mucous membrane caused by the projection of the gland on either side of the fraenum linguae. One or more ducts sometimes join to form a tube which opens into the Whartonian duct or remains independent, opening close to Wharton's duct on the sublingual papilla. This single duct is called the **duct of Bartholin** (*ductus sublingualis major*).

Vessels and Nerves.—The sublingual gland is supplied with blood from the **sublingual** and **submental arteries.** Its **nerves** are derived from the **lingual.**

Structure of Salivary Glands (Fig. 821).—The salivary glands are compound racemose glands, consisting of numerous lobes, which are made up of smaller lobules connected together by dense areolar tissue, vessels, and ducts. Each lobule consists of the ramifications of a single duct, dividing frequently like the branches of a tree, the branches terminating in dilated ends or **alveoli,** on which the capillaries are distributed. These alveoli, however, as Pflüger points out, are not necessarily spherical, though sometimes they assume that form; sometimes they are perfectly cylindrical, and very often they are mutually compressed. The alveoli are enclosed by a **basement membrane** which is continuous with the membrana propria of the duct. It presents a peculiar reticulated

structure, having the appearance of a basket with open meshes, and consisting of a network of branched and flattened nucleated cells.

The alveoli of the salivary glands are of two kinds, which differ both in the appearance of their secreting cells, in their size, and in the nature of their secretion. The one variety secretes a ropy fluid which contains mucin, and such alveoli have therefore been named the **mucous alveoli**, whilst the other secretes a thinner and more watery fluid, which contains serum-albumin, and alveoli of this variety have been named **serous** or **albuminous alveoli**. The sublingual gland may be regarded as an example of the former variety, the parotid of the latter. The submaxillary is of the mixed variety, containing both mucous and serous alveoli, the latter, however, preponderating.

Both varieties of alveoli are lined by cells, and it is by the character of these cells that the nature of the gland is chiefly to be determined. In addition, however, the alveoli of the serous glands are smaller than those of the mucous ones.

The Mucous Alveoli.—The cells in the mucous alveoli are spheroidal in shape, glassy, transparent, and dimly striated in appearance. The nucleus is usually situated in the part of the cell which is next the basement membrane, against which it is sometimes flattened. The most remarkable peculiarity presented by these cells is, that they give off an extremely fine process which is curved in a direction parallel to the surface of the alveolus, lies in contact with the membrana propria, and overlaps the process of neighboring cells. The cells contain a quantity of mucin, to which their clear, transparent appearance is due.

Here and there in the alveoli are seen peculiar half-moon-shaped bodies lying between the cells and the membrana propria of the alveolus. They are termed the **crescents of Gianuzzi** or the **domilunes of Heidenhain** (Fig. 821), and are composed of polyhedral granular cells, which Heidenhain regards as young epithelial cells destined to supply the place of those salivary cells which have undergone disintegration. This view, however, is not accepted by Klein.

Serous Alveoli.—In the serous alveoli the cells almost completely fill the cavity, so that there is hardly any lumen perceptible. Instead of presenting the clear, transparent appearance of the cells of the mucous alveoli, they present a granular appearance, due to distinct granules of an albuminous nature embedded in a closely reticulated protoplasm. The ducts which originate from the alveoli are lined at their commencement by epithelium which differs little from the pavement type. As the ducts enlarge, the epithelial cells change to the columnar type, and the part of the cells next the basement-membrane is finely striated. The lobules of the salivary glands are richly supplied with blood-vessels which form a dense network in the interalveolar spaces. Fine plexuses of nerves are also found in the interlobular tissue. The nerve-fibrils pierce the basement-membrane of the alveoli, and end in branched varicose filaments between the secreting cells. There is no doubt that ganglia are to be found in some salivary glands in connection with the nerve-plexuses in the interlobular tissue; they are to be found in the submaxillary, but not in the parotid.

In the submaxillary and sublingual glands the lobes are larger and more loosely united than in the parotid.

Mucous Glands.—Besides the salivary glands proper, numerous other glands are found in the mouth. They appear to secrete mucus only, which serves to keep the mouth moist during the intervals of the salivary secretion, and which is mixed with that secretion in swallowing. Many of these glands are found at the posterior part of the dorsum of the tongue, behind the circumvallate papillae, and also along its margins as far forward as the apex.[1] Others lie around and in the tonsil

[1] It has been shown by Ebner that many of these glands open into the trenches around the circumvallate papillae, and that their secretion is more watery than that of ordinary mucous glands. He supposes that they assist in the more rapid distribution of the substance to be tasted over the region where the special apparatus of the sense of taste is situated.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

between its crypts, and a large number are present in the soft palate. These glands are of the ordinary compound racemose type. Behind the tip of the tongue on each side, external to the anterior extremity of the genio-glossus muscle, is a mucous gland, the **gland of Nuhn and Blandin** (*glandula lingualis anterior*). Its lower surface is partly covered by muscular fibres from the inferior lingualis and styloglossus muscles, and it opens by several ducts.

Surface Form.—The orifice of the mouth is bounded by the *lips*, two thick, fleshy folds covered externally by integument and internally by mucous membrane, and consisting of muscles, vessels, nerves, areolar tissue, and numerous small glands. The size of the orifice of the mouth varies considerably in different individuals, but seems to bear a close relation to the size and prominence of the teeth. Its corners correspond pretty accurately to the outer border of the canine teeth. In the Ethiopian tribes the front teeth are large and inclined forward, the mouth is large; and this, combined with the thick and everted lips which appear to be associated with prominent teeth, gives to the negro's face much of the peculiarity by which it is characterized. The smaller teeth and the slighter prominence of the alveolar arch of the more highly civilized races render the orifice of the mouth much smaller, and thus a small mouth is an indication of intelligence, and is regarded as an evidence of the higher civilization of the individual.

Upon looking into the mouth, the first thing we may note is the tongue, the upper surface of which will be seen occupying the floor of the cavity. This surface is convex, and is marked along the middle line by a raphé which divides it into two symmetrical portions. The anterior two-thirds is rough and studded with papillae; the posterior third smooth and tuberculated, and covered by numerous glands which project from the surface. Upon raising the tongue the mucous membrane which invests the upper surface may be traced covering the sides of the under surface, and then reflected over the floor of the mouth on to the inner surface of the lower jaw, a part of which it covers. As it passes over the borders of the tongue it changes its character, becoming thin and smooth and losing the papillae which are to be seen on the upper surface. In the middle line the mucous membrane on the under surface of the tip of the tongue forms a distinct fold, the *fraenum linguae*, by which this organ is connected to the symphysis of the jaw. Occasionally it is found that this fraenum is rather shorter than natural, and, acting as a bridle, prevents the complete protrusion of the tongue. When this condition exists and an attempt is made to protrude the organ, the tip will be seen to remain buried in the floor of the mouth, and the dorsum of the tongue is rendered very convex, and more or less extruded from the mouth; at the same time a deep furrow will be noticed to appear in the middle line of the anterior part of the dorsum. Sometimes, a little external to the fraenum, the ranine vein may be seen immediately beneath the mucous membrane. The corresponding artery, being more deeply placed, does not come into view, nor can its pulsation be felt with the finger. On either side of the fraenum, in the floor of the mouth, is a longitudinally elevation or ridge, produced by the projection of the sublingual gland, which lies immediately beneath the mucous membrane. And close to the attachment of the fraenum to the tip of the tongue may be seen on either side the slit-like orifices of *Wharton's ducts*, into which a fine probe may be passed without much difficulty. By everting the lips the smooth mucous membrane lining them may be examined, and may be traced from them on to the outer surface of the alveolar arch. In the middle line, both of the upper and lower lip, a small fold of mucous membrane passes from the lip to the bone, constituting the *fraena;* these are not so large as the fraenum linguae. By pulling outward the angle of the mouth, the mucous membrane lining the cheeks can be seen, and on it may be perceived a little papilla which marks the position of the orifice of *Stenson's duct* the duct of the parotid gland. The exact position of the orifice of the duct will be found to be opposite the second molar tooth of the upper jaw. The introduction of a probe into this duct is attended with considerable difficulty. The teeth are the next objects which claim our attention upon looking into the mouth. These are, as stated above, ten in either jaw in the temporary set, and sixteen in the permanent set. The gums, in which they are implanted, are dense, firm, and vascular.

At the back of the mouth is seen the *isthmus of the fauces*, or, as it is popularly called, "the throat:" this is the space between the pillars of the fauces on either side, and is the means by which the mouth communicates with the pharynx. Above, it is bounded by the soft palate, the anterior surface of which is concave and covered with mucous membrane, which is continuous with that lining the roof of the mouth. Projecting downward from the middle of its lower border is a conical-shaped projection, the *uvula*. On either side of the isthmus of the fauces are the anterior and posterior pillars, formed by the Palato-glossus and Palato-pharyngeus muscles respectively, covered over by mucous membrane. Between the two pillars on either side is situated the *tonsil*. The extirpation of this body is not unattended with danger of hemorrhage. Dr. Weir has stated that he believes that when hemorrhage occurs after their removal it arises from one of the palatine arteries having been wounded. These vessels are

large: they lie in the muscular tissue of the palate, and when wounded are constantly exposed to disturbance from the contraction of the palatine muscles. The vessels of the tonsil, Dr. Weir states, are small and lie in the soft tissue, and readily contract when wounded.

When the mouth is wide open a prominent tense fold of mucous membrane may be seen and felt, extending upward and backward from the position of the fang of the last molar tooth to the posterior part of the hard palate. This is caused by the *pterygo-maxillary ligament*, which is attached by one extremity to the apex of the internal pterygoid plate, and by the other to the posterior extremity of the mylo-hyoid ridge of the lower jaw. It connects the Buccinator with the Superior constrictor of the pharynx. The fang of the last molar tooth indicates the position of the *lingual* (gustatory) nerve where it is easily accessible, and can with readiness be divided in cases of cancer of the tongue (see page 1043). On the inner side of the last molar tooth we can feel the hamular process of the internal pterygoid plate of the sphenoid bone, around which the tendon of the Tensor palati plays. The exact position of this process is of importance in performing the operation of *staphylorrhaphy*. About one-third of an inch in front of the hamular process, and the same distance directly inward from the last molar tooth, is the situation of the opening of the posterior palatine canal, through which emerges the posterior or descending palatine branch of the internal maxillary artery and one of the descending palatine nerves from Meckel's ganglion. The exact position of the opening on the subject may be ascertained by driving a needle through the tissues of the palate in this situation, when it will be at once felt to enter the canal. The artery emerging from the opening runs forward in a groove in the bone just internal to the alveolar border of the hard palate, and may be wounded in the operation for the cure of cleft palate. Under these circumstances the palatine canal may require plugging. By introducing the finger into the mouth the anterior border of the coronoid process of the jaw can be felt, and it is especially prominent when the jaw is dislocated. By throwing the head well back a considerable portion of the posterior wall of the pharynx may be seen through the isthmus faucium, and on introducing the finger the anterior surface of the bodies of the upper cervical vertebrae may be felt immediately beneath the thin muscular stratum forming the wall of the pharynx. The finger can be hooked around the posterior border of the soft palate, and by turning it forward the posterior nares, separated by the septum, can be felt, or the presence of any adenoid or other growths in the naso-pharynx can be ascertained.

THE PHARYNX (Figs. 818, 824, 825).

The pharynx (from *φάρυγξ*, *the throat*) is that part of the alimentary canal which is placed behind and communicates with the nose, mouth, and larynx. It is a musculo-membranous tube, somewhat conical in form, with the base upward and the apex downward, extending from the under surface of the skull to the level of the cricoid cartilage in front and that of the intervertebral disk between the fifth and sixth cervical vertebrae behind.

The pharynx is about four inches and a half in length, and broader in the transverse than in the antero-posterior diameter. Its greatest breadth is opposite the cornua of the hyoid bone; its narrowest point, at its termination in the œsophagus. It is attached, *above*, to the periosteum of the petrous portion of the temporal bone and of the basilar process of the occipital bone. To the pharyngeal tubercle of the basilar process of the occipital bone the raphé of the Constrictor muscles is attached. It is bounded above by the body of the sphenoid as well as by the basilar process of the occipital; *below*, it is continuous with the œsophagus; *posteriorly*, it is connected by loose areolar tissue with the cervical portion of the vertebral column and the Longi colli and Recti capitis antici muscles; this areolar tissue is contained in what is called the **retro-pharyngeal space** (*spatia retropharyngeus*); *anteriorly*, it is incomplete, the gap being occupied by the cavities of the nose, mouth, and larynx. *Interiorly*, it is attached in succession to the Eustachian tube, the internal pterygoid plate, the pterygo-maxillary ligament, the posterior termination of the mylo-hyoid ridge of the lower jaw, the mucous membrane of the mouth, the base of the tongue, hyoid bone, the thyroid and cricoid cartilages; *laterally*, it is connected to the styloid processes and their muscles, and is in contact with the common and internal carotid arteries, the internal jugular veins, and the glosso-pharyngeal, pneumogastric, hypoglossal, and sympathetic nerves, and above with a small part of the Internal pterygoid muscles. When the pharynx

is at rest the anterior and posterior walls are near together. Above the larynx they do not come in contact, but leave a channel for air; below the larynx they lie in contact, but open for the passage of food. It has seven openings communicating with it—the two posterior nares, the two Eustachian tubes, the mouth, larynx, and oesophagus. The pharynx may be subdivided from above downward into three parts, **nasal, oral,** and **laryngeal.**

The Nasal Part (*pars nasalis pharyngis*) (Fig. 824). The nasal part of the pharynx or **naso-pharynx** lies behind the nose and above the level of the soft palate; it differs from the two lower parts of the tube in that its cavity always remains patent. In front it communicates through the **posterior nares** (*choanae*) (Fig. 825) with the nasal fossae. On its lateral wall is the **pharyngeal orifice of the Eustachian tube** (*ostium pharyngeum tubae auditivae*) (Figs. 822 and 823), which presents the appearance of a vertical or triangular cleft bounded above and behind by a firm prominence. The anterior portion of the prominence (*labium anterius*) is the smaller portion. The posterior portion (*labium posterius*) is large and thick, is called the **Eustachian cushion** (*torus tubarius*), and is caused by the inner extremity of the cartilage of the tube impinging on the deep surface of the mucous membrane (Fig. 823). A vertical fold of mucous membrane, the **salpingo-pharyngeal fold** (*plica salpingo-*

FIG. 822.—Pharyngeal tonsil in an adult. (Escat.)

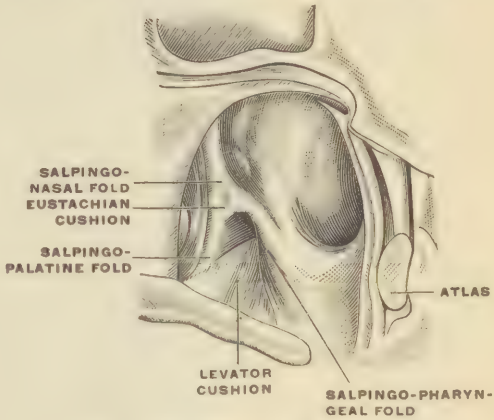


FIG. 823.—The posterior lateral cavity of the naso-pharynx. (Escat).

pharyngea) (Fig. 823), stretches from the lower part of the cushion to the pharynx; it contains the Salpingo-pharyngeus muscle. A second and smaller mucous fold may be seen stretching from the upper part of the cushion to the palate, the **salpingo-palatine fold** (*plica salpingopalatina*) (Fig. 823). Behind the orifice of the Eustachian tube is a deep recess, the **lateral recess** or **fossa of Rosenmüller** (*recessus pharyngeus*) (Fig. 823), which represents the remains of the upper part of the second **branchial cleft.** The posterior wall of the naso-pharynx is directed upward and forward, and it meets the superior wall at an angle. This rounded area of meeting is the **vault of the pharynx** (*fornix pharyngis*). On the posterior wall, at the level and above the level of the orifices of the Eustachian tubes, there is a collection of lymphoid tissue. This is particularly marked in children, and almost or quite disappears in the aged. Over it the mucous membrane is thick and in folds. This collection of lymphoid tissue is the **pharyngeal tonsil** (*tonsilla pharyngea*) (Fig. 822). The naso-pharynx communicates with the oral pharynx through an aperture between the soft palate and the posterior pharyngeal wall. This aperture is the **isthmus of the pharynx** (*isthmus pharyngonasalis*).

The Oral Part (*pars oralis pharyngis*).—The oral part of the pharynx reaches from the soft palate to the level of the hyoid bone. It opens anteriorly, through the isthmus faucium, into the mouth, while in its lateral wall, between the two

pillars of the fauces, is the tonsil. A triangular area on the lateral wall is known as the **sinus tonsillaris** (Fig. 824). It is bounded anteriorly by the anterior palatine arch, posteriorly by the posterior palatine arch, and below by the side of the pharyngeal portion of the tongue.

The Laryngeal Part (*pars laryngea pharyngis*).—The laryngeal part of the pharynx reaches from the hyoid bone to the lower border of the cricoid cartilage, where it is continuous with the oesophagus. In front it presents the triangular aperture of the larynx, the base of which is directed forward and is formed by the epiglottis, while its lateral boundaries are constituted by the aryteno-epiglottidean folds. On either side of the laryngeal orifice is a recess, termed the **sinus pyri-**

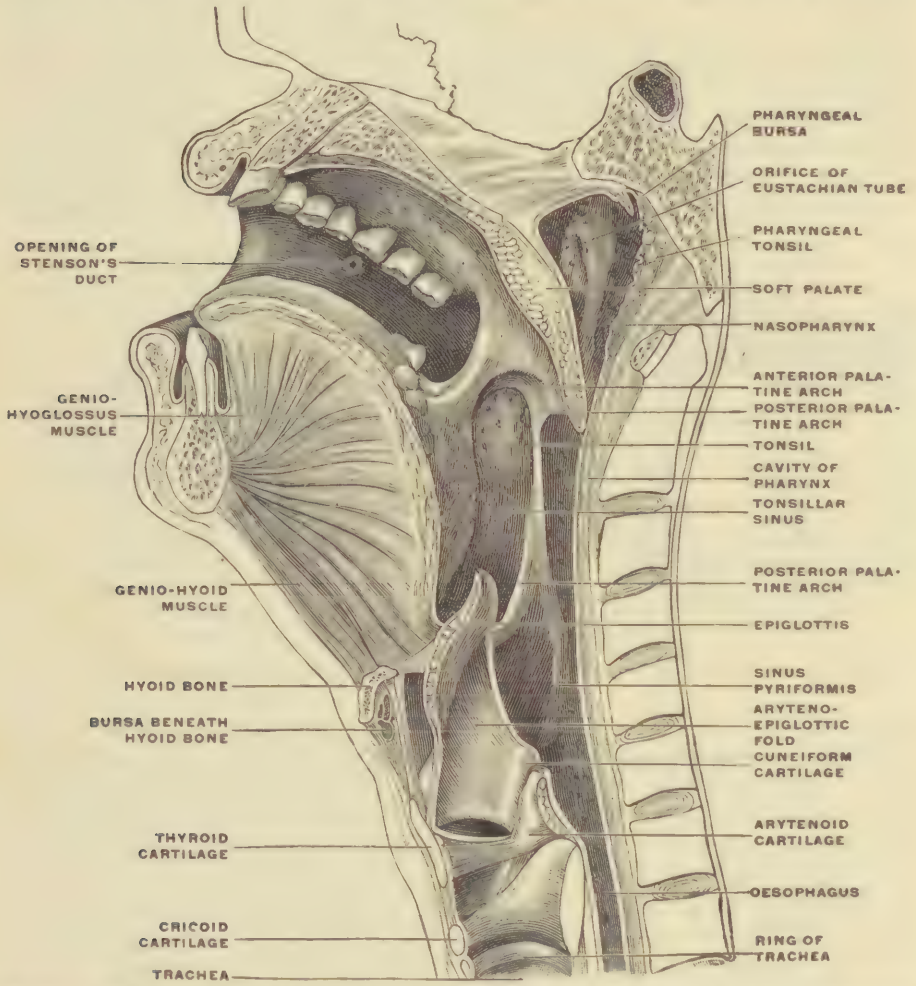


FIG. 824.—Sagittal median section of the head and neck. The head is thrown backward into complete extension, which explains the relations between the lower jaw and the hyoid bone as seen in the figure. (Luschka.)

formis (*recessus piriformis*) (Fig. 824); it is bounded internally by the aryteno-epiglottidean fold, externally by the thyroid cartilage and thyro-hyoid membrane. In the anterior part of the sinus pyriformis is a fold (*plica nervi laryngei*), which passes downward and inward. Extending outward from the epiglottis on each side is a fold, the **pharyngo-epiglottic fold** (*plica pharyngoepiglottica*). This ascends in the lateral wall of the pharynx, nearly to the posterior arch of the fauces.

Structure.—The constrictors of the pharynx (see p. 400) are surrounded by a sheath of thin fascia, the **bucco-pharyngeal fascia** (Cunningham). Forward pro-

longations of this fascia overlay the Buccinator muscles. The connective tissue of the retro-pharyngeal space joins the bucco-pharyngeal fascia to the prevertebral fascia, and it is attached by areolar tissue to the other structures to which the pharynx is in contact (Cunningham). The pharynx is composed of three coats —**fibrous, mucous** and **muscular.**

The **Pharyngeal Aponeurosis** or **Fibrous Coat** is situated between the mucous and muscular layers. It is thick above, where the muscular fibres are wanting, and is firmly connected to the periosteum of the basilar process of the occipital and petrous portion of the temporal bones. It is united to the Eustachian tube, posterior nares, and other points which the pharynx joins. It is thicker above than below, and above the sinuses of Morgagni there is no muscular coat, and the wall

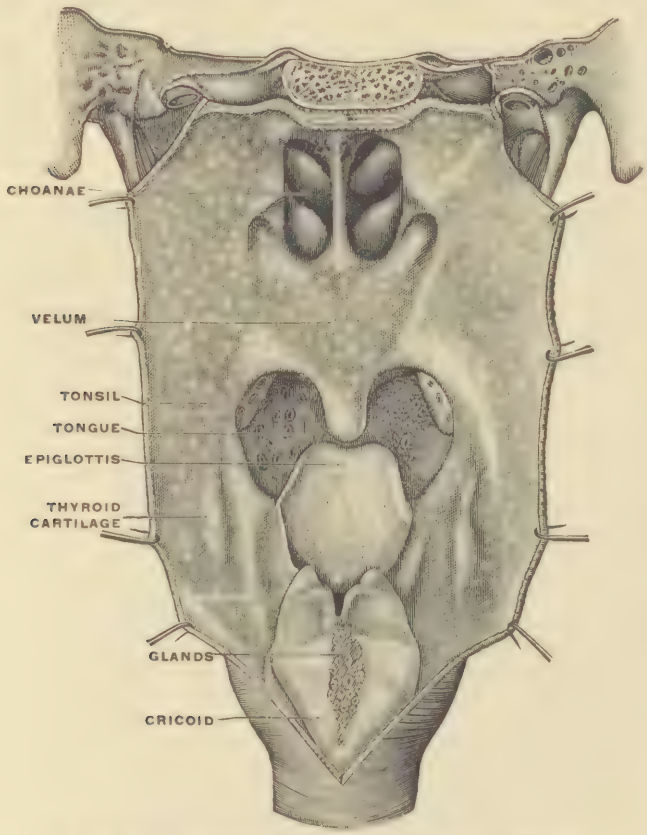


FIG. 825.—The anterior surface of the pharynx. (Sappey.)

of the pharynx is composed of aponeurosis and mucous membrane. As it descends it diminishes in thickness, and is gradually lost. It is strengthened posteriorly by a strong fibrous band which is attached above to the pharyngeal spine on the under surface of the basilar portion of the occipital bone, and passes downward, forming a **median raphé,** which gives attachment to the Constrictor muscles of the pharynx.

The Mucous Coat (*tunica mucosa*).—The mucous coat is continuous with that lining the Eustachian tubes, the nares, the mouth, and the larynx. In the nasopharynx it is covered by columnar ciliated epithelium; in the buccal and laryngeal portions the epithelium is of the squamous variety. Beneath the mucous membrane are found racemose **mucous glands** (*glandulae pharyngeae*); they are especially numerous at the upper part of the pharynx around the orifices of the Eustachian tubes. Throughout the pharynx are also numerous crypts or recesses, the walls

of which are surrounded by lymphoid tissue similar to that found in the tonsils. Across the back part of the pharyngeal cavity, between the two Eustachian tubes, a considerable mass of this tissue exists, and has been named the **pharyngeal tonsil** (Fig. 822). Above this in the middle line is an irregular, flask-shaped depression of the mucous membrane, extending up as far as the basilar process of the occipital bone. It is known as the **pharyngeal bursa** (*bursa pharyngea*), and was regarded by Luschka as the remains of the diverticulum, which is concerned in the development of the anterior lobe of the pituitary body. Other anatomists believe that it is connected with the formation of the pharyngeal tonsils. The **muscular coat** (*tunica muscularis pharyngis*) has been already described (p. 400). The **sinuses of Morgagni,** referred to on a previous page (p. 402 and Fig. 277), are intervals between the Superior constrictor muscles and the basilar process of the occipital bone.

The Lymphatic Pharyngeal Ring.—This name was applied by Waldeyer to the lymphatic structure gathered into a sort of ring about the pharynx. There are three chief collections of this tissue on each side. The first is known as the **lingual tonsil** (p. 1088); the second as the **palatine tonsil** (p. 1212); and the third as the **pharyngeal tonsil** (p. 1221).

Surgical Anatomy of the Mouth, Cheeks, Lips, Gums, Tonsils, Palate, Salivary Glands, and Pharynx.—The duct of a salivary gland may be blocked by a *calculus*, and the condition is often productive of severe pain.

A *wound* of Stenson's duct or of the parotid gland may be followed by a *salivary fistula*.

The parotid recess is completely lined by fascia, except above. "Between the anterior edge of the styloid process and the posterior border of the external pterygoid muscle there is a gap in the fascia, through which the parotid space communicates with the connective tissue about the pharynx."[1]

This explains why there is frequently swelling of the parotid region in post-pharyngeal abscess. A *parotid abscess* rarely bursts through the skin; it may pass into the temporal fossa, may enter the zygomatic fossa, may advance toward the mouth, pharynx, or neck. Because of the situation of the gland, a parotid abscess may cause inflammation of the temporo-mandibular joint or periostitis of the bone about the meatus, and may even burst into the external auditory meatus (Treves).

The facial nerve passes through the gland, and inflammation or tuberculosis of the gland may cause *facial palsy*. Some enlargements of the parotid region are due to inflammation of the parotid lymph-glands, and these glands may become *tuberculous*.

Mumps is characterized by acute inflammation of the parotid gland.

Various *tumors* occur in the parotid (fibroma, sarcoma, carcinoma, enchondroma, etc.). Most parotid tumors contain more or less cartilage. Complete extirpation of the parotid gland surgically is certainly extremely difficult, and Treves and others maintain that it is impossible.

Ranula is a salivary cyst of the floor of the mouth, due to occlusion of ducts of the sublingual gland or the duct of the submaxillary gland. *Mucous cysts* occur in the mouth. A mucous cyst of the gland of Nuhn and Blandin is on the under surface of the tongue near the apex. A *dermoid* cyst of the base of the tongue is occasionally encountered. It is of congenital origin.

What is known as the *sublingual* bursa is an epithelial-lined space, said to exist between the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth and the Genio-hyo-glossus muscle. When acutely inflamed, it produces rapidly a marked swelling called *acute ranula*. Incomplete closure of the oral end of the thyro-glossal duct causes *thyro-glossal fistula*. If the oral end closes, but a portion of the duct below remains unobliterated, a *thyro-glossal cyst* forms. Such a cyst or fistula is always in the median line. The reader will remember that this duct runs from the foramen caecum to the isthmus of the thyroid gland.

Hare-lip is considered on pp. 110 and 111.

The lower lip, more commonly than any other structure, gives origin to *cancer*. The upper lip is not nearly so often affected. Blocking of mucous glands of the lips causes *mucous cysts*. A *scar* of the lip or about the lip disturbs this structure and pulls it far out of place. Thus great deformity is produced. *Burns* particularly induce hideous cicatricial contraction.

Plastic operations in this region are often successful, because of the great vascularity of the parts, and because adjacent parts admit of being stretched and pulled in.

Cleft palate is a by no means rare congenital deformity. The cleft is in the middle line. It may be a mere cleft of the uvula, it may be limited to the soft palate, or it may involve

[1] Applied Anatomy. By Sir Frederick Treves.

the hard palate to but not including the alveolus. It may pass through the alveolus, but if it does so it ceases to be median at this point, and follows the line of suture between the incisive bone and the superior maxillary (pp. 110 and 111). In a complete cleft palate there is apt to be *hare-lip* at the end of the palate cleft. This cleft in the lip is not median, but is at the termination of the palate cleft. If the cleft of a cleft palate runs along each side of the incisive bone, the bone is isolated from the superior maxillary. In such a case *double hare-lip* results.

When a *tonsil* enlarges it projects inward. The *deafness* which so often attends hypertrophy of the tonsil is not due to blocking of the Eustachian orifice by the tonsil, but is due to thickening of the mucous membrane lining the tube itself. The *profuse bleeding* which sometimes follows an operation for the removal of the tonsil is very seldom due to injury of the internal carotid artery, but is due to *injury of the ascending pharyngeal artery* (p. 621) or one of the palatine arteries.

The *internal carotid artery* is in close relation with the pharynx, so that its pulsations can be felt through the mouth. It has been occasionally wounded by sharp-pointed instruments introduced into the mouth and thrust through the wall of the pharynx. In *aneurism* of this vessel in the neck the tumor necessarily bulges into the pharynx, as this is the direction in which it meets with the least resistance, nothing lying between the vessel and the mucous membrane except the thin Constrictor muscle, whereas on the outer side there is the dense cervical fascia, the muscles descending from the styloid process, and the margin of the Sterno-mastoid muscle.

The mucous membrane of the pharynx is very vascular, and is often the seat of *inflammation*, frequently of a septic character, and dangerous on account of its tendency to spread to the larynx. On account of the tissue which surrounds the pharyngeal wall being loose and lax, the inflammation is liable to spread through it far and wide, extending downward into the posterior mediastinum along the oesophagus. *Abscess* may form in the connective tissue behind the pharynx, between it and the vertebral column, constituting what is known as *retro-pharyngeal abscess*. This is most commonly due to caries of the cervical vertebrae, but may also be caused by suppuration of a lymphatic gland which is situated in this position opposite the axis, and which receives lymphatics from the nares, or by *gumma* or by *acute pharyngitis*. In these cases the pus may be easily evacuated by an incision, with a guarded bistoury, through the mouth, but, for aseptic reasons, it is desirable that the abscess should be opened from the neck. In some instances this is perfectly easy; the abscess can be felt bulging at the side of the neck and merely requires an incision for its relief; but this is not always so, and then an incision should be made along the posterior border of the Sterno-mastoid and the deep fascia should be divided. A director is now to be inserted into the wound, the forefinger of the left hand being introduced into the mouth and pressure made upon the swelling. This acts as a guide, and the director is to be pushed onward until pus appears in the groove. A pair of sinus forceps are now inserted along the director and the opening into the cavity dilated.

Foreign bodies not infrequently become lodged in the pharynx and most usually at its termination at about the level of the cricoid cartilage, just beyond the reach of the finger, as the distance from the arch of the teeth to the commencement of the oesophagus is about six inches.

Hypertrophy of the adenoid tissue of the naso-pharynx produces groups of hypertrophic masses known as *adenoids*. A child with adenoids has a cough, and when awake or asleep, breathes noisily and with the mouth open. The voice is muffled, the hearing is impaired, the expression is vacant, the mind is dull, and the tonsils are enlarged.

THE OESOPHAGUS (Figs. 826, 827, 828, 829).

The oesophagus (*οἴω, οἴσω, I carry; φαγεῖν, to eat*) or **gullet** is a muscular canal, averaging about nine or ten inches in length, extending from the pharynx to the stomach. It commences at the upper border of the cricoid cartilage, opposite the intervertebral disk between the fifth and sixth cervical vertebrae descends, along the front of the spine through the posterior mediastinum, passes through the Diaphragm, and, entering the abdomen, terminates in the stomach wall at the point known as the *cardia* opposite the tenth dorsal vertebra or possibly opposite the intervertebral disk between the tenth and eleventh dorsal vertebrae. The general direction of the oesophagus is vertical, but it presents two or three slight curves in its course. At its commencement it is placed in the median line, but it inclines to the left side as far as the root of the neck, gradually passes to the middle line again, and finally again deviates to the left as it passes forward to

the oesophageal opening of the Diaphragm (*hiatus oesophageus*). The oesophagus also presents an antero-posterior flexure, corresponding to the curvature of the cervical and thoracic portions of the spine. It is the narrowest part of the alimentary canal, being most contracted at its commencement and at the point where it passes through the Diaphragm.

The diameter of the largest portion of the oesophagus where it is contracted is about half an inch; when it is fully dilated, an inch or even more.

In the **neck** the oesophagus, when at rest, is flattened, the anterior and posterior walls approaching each other. The canal in the neck is round or oval, and the lumen is stellate (Cunningham). The oesophagus is somewhat constricted at three points. One constriction is at the very beginning of the tube; another is where the left bronchus crosses it; another is at the point where the oesophagus passes through the Diaphragm. The tube at each constricted point is distinctly flattened. The diameter of each of these constricted parts is slightly under one-half inch, the diameter of the rest of the tube when contracted is one-half inch, but when dilated may reach or exceed one inch. The average distance from the upper

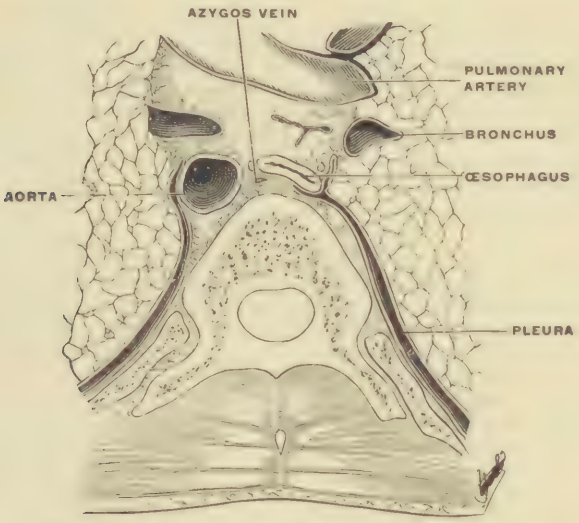


FIG. 826.—Pleural cul-de-sac of the posterior mediastinum.

incisor teeth to the beginning of the gullet is about six inches; the average distance from the incisor teeth to the cardiac opening of the stomach is fifteen or sixteen inches. The portion of the oesophagus which is in the neck is called the **cervical portion** (*pars cervicalis*); the portion in the thorax, the **thoracic portion** (*pars thoracalis*), and the portion which lies in the oesophageal opening of the Diaphragm, the **diaphragmatic portion.** The margin of the oesophageal orifice is narrow in front, thicker behind and to the sides. Behind and to the sides the diaphragmatic portion of the oesophagus is about half an inch in length. In front there is only a thin edge of Diaphragm in contact with the gullet. The oesophagus is connected to the margins of the diaphragmatic orifice by connective tissue. The so-called **abdominal portion of the oesophagus** (*pars abdominalis*) is not over half an inch in length, and is limited to the small portion of the anterior and left lateral surface observed when a stomach which is completely empty is drawn downward with considerable force. The abdominal portion of the oesophagus is covered with peritoneum; the corresponding portions of the right lateral and posterior walls are not covered by peritoneum. This uncovered portion of the oesophagus runs downward and to the left and lies directly

behind the **oesophageal groove** on the posterior surface of the left lobe of the liver, but does not actually touch the *groove*, which in reality holds the thick, right edge of the oesophageal opening of the Diaphragm. When the stomach is distended the abdominal portion of the gullet ceases to exist and becomes part of the stomach wall.

Relations.—In the **neck** the oesophagus is in relation, *in front*, with the trachea, and it is connected to the posterior wall of the trachea by areolar tissue. At the lower part of the neck, where it projects to the left side, it is in relation in front with the thyroid gland and thoracic duct; *behind*, it rests upon the vertebral column and Longi colli muscles; *on each side*, it is in relation with the common carotid artery (especially the left, as the gullet inclines to that side) and part of the lateral lobes of the thyroid gland; the recurrent laryngeal nerves ascend between it and the trachea.

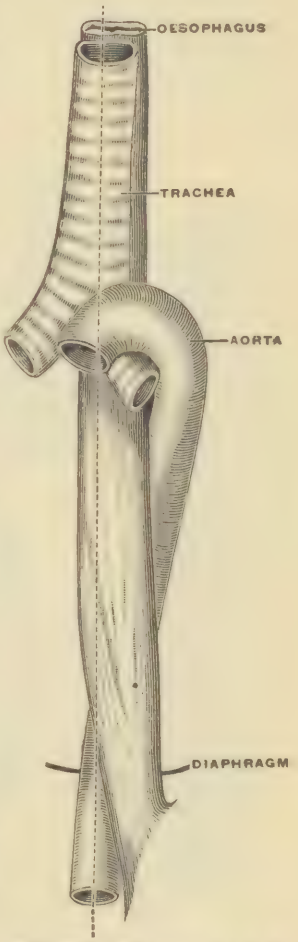


FIG. 827. - The supports of the oesophagus at the aorta in an infant. (Poirier and Charpy.)

In the thorax, it is at first situated a little to the left of the median line; it then passes behind the aortic arch, being separated from it by the trachea, and descends in the posterior mediastinum, along the right side of the aorta, nearly to the Diaphragm, where it passes in front and a little to the left of the artery, previous to entering the abdomen. It is in relation, *in front*, with the trachea, the arch of the aorta, the left common carotid and left subclavian arteries, which incline toward its left side, the left bronchus, the pericardium, and the Diaphragm; *behind*, it rests upon the vertebral column, the Longi colli muscles, the right intercostal arteries, and the vena azygos minor; and *below*, near the Diaphragm, upon the front of the aorta; *laterally*, it comes in contact with both pleurae, especially with the left pleura above and the right pleura below; it overlaps the vena azygos major, which lies on its right side, while the descending aorta is placed on its left side. The pneumogastric nerves descend in close contact with it, the right nerve passing down behind, and the left nerve in front of it, each nerve spreading out into a plexus, the **oesophageal plexus**, around the tube. The two plexuses are joined to each other. The right nerve forms the **posterior oesophageal plexus** (*plexus oesophageus posterior*); the left nerve the **anterior oesophageal plexus** (*plexus oesophageus anterior*).

In the lower part of the posterior mediastinum the thoracic duct lies to the right side of the oesophagus; higher up, it is placed behind it, and, crossing about the level of the fourth dorsal vertebra, is continued upward on its left side.

Above the aortic arch and the arch of the great azygos vein above the root of the right lung, the pleurae are close to but not in actual contact with the oesophagus.

Below the arch of the great azygos vein the right side of the oesophagus is covered with pleura nearly to the diaphragmatic opening. The posterior surface of the gullet also may be covered with pleura. Below the arch of the aorta on the left side the pleura covers only a small portion of the oesophagus, that is, a portion of the left wall, a little above the diaphragmatic opening.

Anomalies.—There may be openings of the oesophagus into the trachea. A **diverticulum** or **pressure pouch** may exist. Such a pouch is usually placed upon the posterior wall near the pharynx. There may be congenital constriction, tubular or annular.

Structure.—The oesophagus is fastened to adjacent structures by connective tissue called the **tunica adventitia**. The tube has three coats—an **external** or **muscular**, a **middle** or **areolar**, and an **internal** or **mucous coat**.

The Muscular Coat (*tunica muscularis*).—The muscular coat is composed of two planes of fibres of considerable thickness, an **external plane of longitudinal** and an **internal plane of circular fibres**.

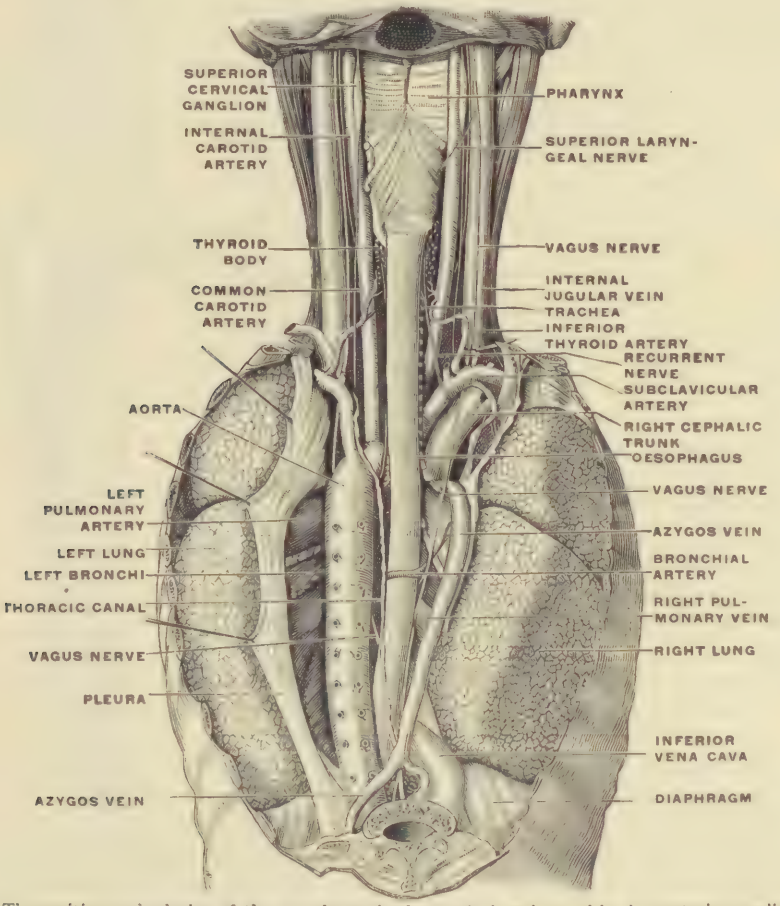


FIG. 828.—The position and relation of the oesophagus in the cervical region and in the posterior mediastinum. Seen from behind. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **Longitudinal Fibres** are arranged, at the commencement of the tube, in three fasciculi: one in front, which is attached to the vertical ridge on the posterior surface of the cricoid cartilage; and one at each side, which is continuous with the fibres of the Inferior constrictor of the pharynx; as they descend they blend together and form a uniform layer, which covers the outer surface of the tube.

Accessory slips of muscular fibres are described by Cunningham as passing between the oesophagus and the left pleura (*m. pleurooesophageus*), where it covers the thoracic aorta, or between the oesophagus and the root of the left bronchus (*m. bronchooesophageus*), or the back of the pericardium, as well as other still more

rare accessory fibres. In Fig. 829, taken from a dissection in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England, several of these accessory slips may be seen passing from the oesophagus to the pleura, and two slips passing to the back of the trachea just above its bifurcation. These slips of muscular fibres which pass to adjacent structures give support to the oesophagus. Below, the longitudinal fibres of the oesophagus are continued into the longitudinal fibres of the stomach.

The **Circular Fibres** are continuous above with the Inferior constrictor of the pharynx; their direction is transverse at the upper and lower parts of the tube, but oblique in the central part. Below, the circular fibres pass into the circular and oblique fibres of the stomach.

The muscular fibres in the upper part of the oesophagus are of a red color, and consist chiefly of the striped variety, but below they consist for the most part of involuntary muscular fibre. At the cardia they act as a sphincter to solid food. Some maintain that this sphincter is closed *tonically*, others that it opens and closes rhythmically during gastric digestion.

The Submucous or Areolar Coat (*tela submucosa*).—The submucous or areolar coat connects loosely the mucous and muscular coats. It consists of dense connective tissue and contains blood-vessels, nerves, and **oesophageal glands** (*glandulae oesophageae*). The glands are mucous glands and are found throughout the length of the gullet. The ducts of the glands pass through the muscularis mucosae. These ducts are surrounded by adenoid tissue.

The Mucous Coat (*tunica mucosa*).—The mucous coat is thick, of a reddish color above and pale below. It is disposed in longitudinal folds, which disappear on distention of the tube. Its surface is studded with minute papillae, and is covered throughout with a thick layer of stratified pavement epithelium. The mucous coat contains glands which differ from the mucous glands of the submucous tissue. They are branched and tubular (Hewlett) and are called the **superficial glands**. There are two chief groups of superficial glands; one near the beginning, and the other near the termination of the oesophagus. The ducts of the superficial glands are not surrounded by lymphoid tissue (Hewlett). Beneath the mucous membrane, between it and the submucous coat, is a layer of longitudinally arranged non-striped muscular fibres. This is the **muscularis mucosae** (*lamina muscularis mucosae*). At the commencement it is absent, or only represented by a few scattered bundles; lower down it forms a considerable stratum.

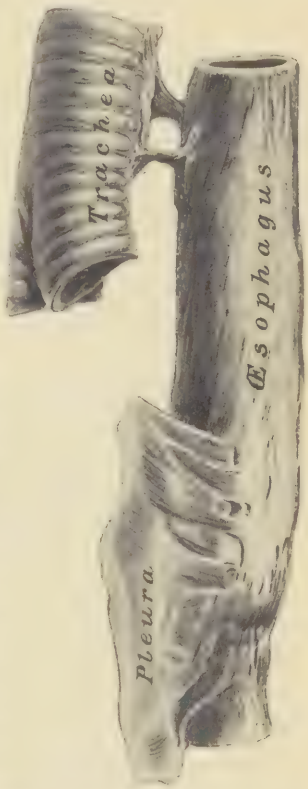


FIG. 829. - Accessory muscular fibres between the oesophagus and pleura, and oesophagus and trachea. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

Vessels of the Oesophagus.—The larger vessels are in the submucosa and send branches to the mucosa and muscularis. The **arteries** supplying the oesophagus are derived from the **inferior thyroid branch of the thyroid axis of the subclavian**, from the **descending thoracic aorta** and the **bronchial arteries**, and from the **gastric branch of the cœliac axis**, and from the **left inferior phrenic of the abdominal aorta**. They have for the most part a longitudinal direction. The **veins** are gathered into a plexus on the outer surface of the oesophagus. This plexus receives the venous blood from the walls of the tube. From the lower portion of the plexus branches go to the **coronary vein of the stomach**. Higher up branches go to the **azygos veins**

and **thyroid veins**. In this manner a communication is opened between the portal veins and the systemic veins.

Lymphatics of the Oesophagus.—The lymphatics drain into the inferior deep cervical glands and the glands of the posterior mediastinum.

Nerves of the Oesophagus.—The nerves are derived from the **pneumogastric** and from the **sympathetic**; they form a plexus in which are groups of ganglion-cells between the two layers of the muscular coats. From this fibres pass to supply the muscle, and others go to the submucous tissue to form a secondary plexus. It is usual to regard the plexus as consisting of two parts, an **anterior oesophageal plexus,** derived from the left pneumogastric, and a **posterior oesophageal plexus,** derived from the right pneumogastric. These two plexuses are in the posterior mediastinum; they communicate with each other and contain sympathetic fibres.

Movements and Innervation of the Oesophagus.

Movements. -When liquid is swallowed it is, as pointed out by Kronecker and Meltzer, suddenly forced into the gullet by the contraction of the Mylo-hyoid muscle, the tube playing a practically passive part.[1] In the passage of solid and semisolid food the oesophagus contracts. It does not contract, as was once thought, in sections, but there is a peristaltic wave. "The wave at a given point lasts in the neck region about 3.5 seconds, and from five to nine seconds in the thoracic region.[2] The lower end of the oesophagus or cardia has a sphincter, the cardiac sphincter. It is usually taught that this sphincter is tonically contracted. When a mouthful of food is swallowed it rests above the sphincter for a moment and is then forced through by muscular contractions (Kronecker and Meltzer). If several acts of swallowing follow each other rapidly the sphincter relaxes so that there is no resistance to the passage of food. In cats Dr. Walter B. Cannon[3] has demonstrated "rhythmical relaxations of the cardia, so that fluid food streams from the stomach into the oesophagus even above the level of the heart, then is pressed into the stomach again by a peristaltic wave, only to be released a moment later to pour into the oesophagus anew."

Innervation. -There is in the oesophagus a local reflex, but peristalsis is dominated by the central nervous system. "It seems probable that the peristaltic contractions of the oesophagus, to be efficient, must be supported by nervous influences from outside. In this respect the oesophagus is different from the remainder of the alimentary canal."[4]

Surgical Anatomy. -The relations of the oesophagus are of considerable practical interest to the surgeon, as he is frequently required, in cases of *stricture* of this tube, to dilate the canal by a bougie, when it is of importance that the direction of the oesophagus and its relations to surrounding parts should be remembered. In cases of *malignant disease* of the oesophagus, where its tissues have become softened from infiltration of the morbid deposit, the greatest care is requisite in directing the bougie through the strictured part, as a false passage may easily be made, and the instrument may pass into the mediastinum, or into one or the other pleural cavity, or even into the pericardium.

The student should also remember that obstruction of the oesophagus, and consequent symptoms of stricture, are occasionally produced by *aneurism* of some part of the aorta pressing upon the tube. In such a case the passage of a bougie could only hasten the fatal issue.

In passing a bougie the left forefinger should be introduced into the mouth and the epiglottis felt for, care being taken not to throw the head too far backward. The bougie is then to be passed beyond the finger until it touches the posterior wall of the pharynx. The patient is now asked to swallow, and at the moment of swallowing the bougie is passed gently downward, all violence being carefully avoided.

It occasionally happens that a *foreign body* becomes impacted in the oesophagus and can neither be brought upward nor moved downward. When all ordinary means for its removal have failed, and the body is lodged above the lower one-third of the gullet, external *oesophagotomy* is performed. If the foreign body is lodged in the lower one-third of the gullet the stomach is opened (*gastrotomy*) and the foreign body is extracted. If the foreign body is allowed to remain lodged in the oesophagus, extensive inflammation and ulceration may ensue. In one case the foreign body ultimately penetrated the intervertebral substance, and destroyed life by inflammation of the membranes and substance of the cord.

The operation of *oesophagotomy* is thus performed: The patient being placed upon his back, with the head and shoulders slightly elevated, an incision, about four inches in length,

[1] Recent Advances in the Knowledge of the Movements and Innervation of the Alimentary Canal. By Walter B. Cannon, M.D., in Medical News, May 20, 1905.
[2] Ibid. [3] Ibid. [4] Ibid.

should be made on the left side of the trachea, from the thyroid cartilage downward, dividing the skin, Platysma, and deep fascia. The edges of the wound being separated, the Omo-hyoid muscle should, if necessary, be divided, and the fibres of the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles drawn inward; the sheath of the carotid vessels, being exposed, must be drawn outward, and retained in that position by retractors: the oesophagus will now be exposed, and should be divided over the foreign body, which can then be removed. Great care is necessary to avoid wounding the thyroid vessels, the thyroid gland, and the laryngeal nerves.

The oesophagus may be obstructed not only by foreign bodies, but also by changes in its coats, producing *stricture*, or by pressure on it from without of *new-growths* or *aneurism*, etc.

The different forms of *stricture* are: (1) the *spasmodic*, occurring in neurotic individuals, and intermittent in character, so that the dysphagia is not constant. Spasmodic stricture of the oesophagus sometimes occurs in cases of cancer of the stomach and cancer of the liver; (2) *fibrous*, due to cicatrization after injuries, such as swallowing corrosive fluids or boiling water; and (3) *malignant*, usually epitheliomatous, in its nature. Cancer is most common either at the upper end of the tube, opposite to the cricoid cartilage, or at its lower end at the cardiac orifice. Cicatricial stricture may be treated by gradual dilatation. If a stricture is impassible from above, the stomach may be opened, an instrument passed from below, and a string used to divide the stricture.

The operation of *oesophagostomy* has occasionally been performed in cases where the stricture in the oesophagus is at the upper part, with a view to making a permanent opening below the stricture through which to feed the patient, but the operation has been far from a successful one, and the risk of setting up diffuse inflammation in the loose planes of connective tissue deep in the neck is so great that it would appear to be better, if any operative interference is undertaken, with the idea of forming a mouth to introduce food, to perform *gastrostomy*. The operation of *oesophagostomy* is performed in the same manner as oesophagotomy, but the edges of the opening in the oesophagus are stitched to the skin incision. Gastrostomy is the only operation to be thought of in malignant stricture.

THE ABDOMEN.

The abdomen (from *abdo*, I put away or hide, or possibly from *adeps*, fat) is the largest cavity in the body. It is of an oval form, the extremities of the oval being directed upward and downward; the upper one being formed by the under surface of the Diaphragm, the lower by the upper concave surface of the Levator ani muscles. In order to facilitate description, it is artificially divided into two parts: an upper and larger part, the **abdomen proper**; and a lower and smaller part, the **pelvis.** These two cavities are not separated from each other, but the limit between them is marked by the brim of the true pelvis. The space is wider above than below, and measures more in the vertical than in the transverse diameter.

The abdomen proper differs from the other great cavities of the body in being bounded for the most part by muscles and fasciae, so that it can vary in capacity and shape according to the condition of the viscera which it contains; but, in addition to this, the abdomen varies in form and extent with age and sex (Fig. 831). In the adult male, with moderate distention of the viscera, it is oval or barrel-shaped, but at the same time flattened from before backward. In the adult female, with a fully developed pelvis, it is conical with the apex above, and in young children it is conical with the apex below.

Boundaries.—The boundary between the thorax and abdomen is the Diaphragm. This muscle forms a dome over the abdomen, and the cavity extends high into the bony thorax, reaching to the level of the junction of the fourth costal cartilages with the sternum. The lower end of the abdomen is limited by the structures which clothe the inner surface of the bony pelvis, principally the Levatores ani and Coccygei muscles on either side. These muscles are sometimes termed the **Diaphragm of the pelvis.** The abdomen proper is bounded *in front* and *at the sides* by the lower ribs, the abdominal muscles, and the venter ilii; *behind*, by the vertebral column and the Psoas and Quadratus lumborum muscles; *above*, by the Diaphragm; *below*, by the brim of the pelvis. The muscles forming the

boundaries of the cavity are lined upon their inner surface by a layer of fascia, differently named, according to the part which it covers.

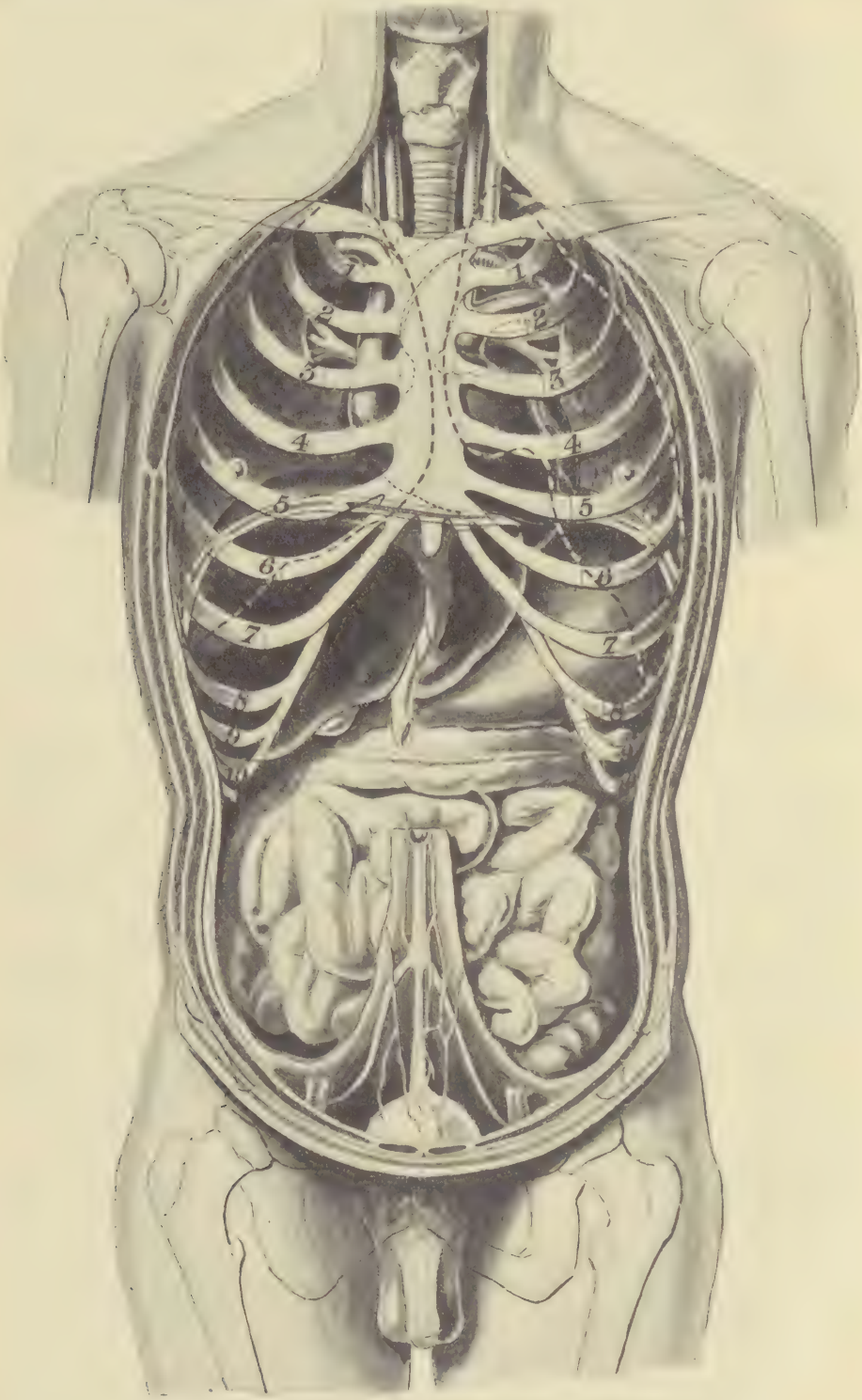


FIG. 830.—Topography of thoracic and abdominal viscera.

The abdomen contains (Fig. 830) the greater part of the alimentary canal; some of the accessory organs to digestion—viz., the liver and pancreas, the spleen, the kidneys, and suprarenal capsules. Most of these structures, as well as the wall of the cavity in which they are contained, are covered by an extensive and complicated serous membrane, the **peritoneum** (Fig. 853.)

The Apertures in the Walls of the Abdomen.—The apertures found in the walls of the abdomen, for the transmission of structures to or from it, are the **umbilicus**, for the transmission (in the fœtus) of the umbilical vessels; the **caval opening** in the Diaphragm, for the transmission of the inferior vena cava; the **aortic opening**, for the passage of the aorta, vena azygos major, and thoracic duct; and the **oesophageal opening**, for the oesophagus and pneumogastric nerves. *Below*, there are two apertures on each side: one for the passage of the femoral vessels, and the other for the transmission of the spermatic cord in the male, and the round ligament in the female.

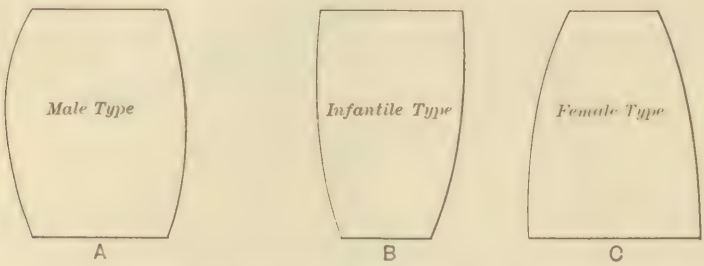


FIG. 831.—Schematic outlines of the abdomen.

Regions (Fig. 832).—For convenience of description of the viscera, as well as of reference to the morbid conditions of the contained parts, the abdomen is artificially divided into nine regions. Thus, if two circular lines are drawn around the body, the one through the extremities of the ninth ribs where they join their costal cartilages, and the other through the highest points of the crests of the ilia, the abdominal cavity is divided into three zones—an upper, a middle, and a lower. If two parallel lines are drawn perpendicularly upward from the centre of Poupart's ligament, each of these zones is subdivided into three parts—a middle and two lateral.[1]

The middle region of the upper zone is called the **epigastric** (*ἐπί, over; γαστήρ, the stomach*); and the two lateral regions, the **right** and **left hypochondriac** (*ὑπο, under; χονδροι, the cartilages*). The central region of the middle zone is the **mesogastric** or **umbilical**; and the two lateral regions, the **right** and **left lumbar**. The middle region of the lower zone is the **hypogastric** or **pubic region**; and the lateral regions are the **right** and **left inguinal** or **iliac**. The viscera contained in these different regions are the following (Fig. 832):

[1] Anatomists are far from agreed as to the best method of subdividing the abdominal cavity. Cunningham suggests that the lower line should encircle the body on a level with the highest point of the iliac crest, as seen from the front—a point corresponding with a prominent tubercle on the outer lip of the iliac crest about two inches behind the anterior superior spine. Addison (Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, vols. xxxiv. and xxxv.), in a careful analysis of the abdominal viscera in forty subjects, adopts the following lines: (1) a median, from the symphysis pubis to the ensiform cartilage; (2) two lateral lines drawn vertically through a point midway between the anterior superior iliac spine and the symphysis pubis; (3) an upper transverse line half-way between the symphysis pubis and the suprasternal notch; and (4) a lower transverse line midway between the last and the upper border of the symphysis pubis.—ED. of 15th English edition.

Joessel draws a line through the cartilaginous ends of the tenth ribs: a line through the two anterior superior spines of the ilia. On each side he carries a perpendicular line from the iliopectineal eminence to the horizontal line connecting the tenth ribs. By this plan the highest plane is subcostal.

Right Hypochondriac.	*Epigastric Region.*	*Left Hypochondriac.*
The greater part of the right lobe of the liver, the hepatic flexure of the colon, and part of the right kidney.	The greater part of the stomach, including both cardiac and pyloric orifices, the left lobe and part of the right lobe of the liver and the gall-bladder, the pancreas, the duodenum, the suprarenal capsules, and parts of the kidneys.	The fundus of the stomach, the spleen, the extremity of the pancreas, the splenic flexure of the colon, and part of the left kidney.
Right Lumbar.	*Umbilical Region.*	*Left Lumbar.*
Ascending colon, part of the right kidney, and some convolutions of the small intestines.	The transverse colon, part of the great omentum and mesentery, transverse part of the duodenum, and some convolutions of the jejunum and ileum, and part of both kidneys.	Descending colon, part of the omentum, part of the left kidney, and some convolutions of the small intestines.
Right Inguinal or Iliac.	*Hypogastric Region.*	*Left Inguinal or Iliac.*
The caecum and vermiform appendix and a portion of the ascending colon.	Convolutions of the small intestines, the bladder in children, and in adults if distended, and the uterus during pregnancy.	Sigmoid flexure of the colon and a portion of the descending colon.

If the anterior abdominal wall is reflected in the form of four triangular flaps by means of vertical and transverse incisions—the former from the ensiform cartilage to the symphysis pubis, the latter from flank to flank at the level of the umbilicus—the abdominal or peritoneal cavity is freely opened into and the contained viscera are in part exposed.[1]

Above and to the right side is the **liver,** situated chiefly under the shelter of the right ribs and their cartilages, but extending across the middle line, and reaching for some distance below the level of the ensiform cartilage. Below and to the left of the liver is the **stomach,** from the lower border of which an apron-like fold of peritoneum, the **great omentum,** descends for a varying distance, and obscures, to a greater or lesser extent, the other viscera (Fig. 861). Below it, however, some of the coils of the **small intestine** can generally be seen, while in the right and left iliac regions respectively the **caecum** and the **sigmoid flexure** of the colon are exposed. The **bladder** occupies the anterior part of the pelvis, and, if distended, will project above the symphysis pubis; the **rectum** lies in the concavity of the sacrum, but is usually obscured by the coils of the small intestine.

If the stomach is followed from left to right it will be found to be continuous with the first part of the small intestine, or **duodenum,** the point of continuity being marked by a thickened ring which indicates the position of the **pyloric valve.** The duodenum passes toward the under surface of the liver, and then, curving downward, is lost to sight. If, however, the great omentum be thrown upward

[1] It must be borne in mind that, although the term abdominal cavity is used, there is, under normal conditions, only a potential cavity or lymph-space, since the viscera are everywhere in contact with the parietes.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

over the chest, the terminal part of the duodenum will be observed passing across the spine toward the left side, where it becomes continuous with the **coils of the small intestine.** These measure some twenty feet in length, and if followed downward will be seen to end in the right iliac fossa by opening into the **caecum,** the commencement of the **large intestine.** From the caecum the large intestine takes an arched course, passing at first upward on the right side, then across the middle line and downward on the left side, and forming respectively the **ascending, transverse,** and **descending parts of the colon.** In the left iliac region it makes still another bend, the **sigmoid flexure,** and then follows the curve of the sacrum as far as the **rectum.**

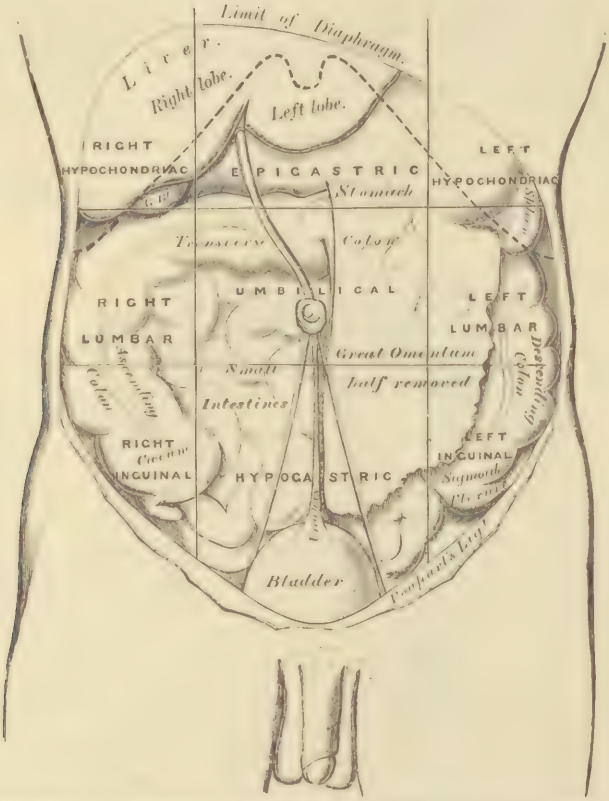


FIG. 832.—The regions of the abdomen and their contents. Edge of costal cartilages in dotted outline.

The **spleen** lies behind the stomach in the left hypochondriac region, and may be in part exposed by pulling the stomach over toward the right side.

The glistening appearance of the deep surface of the abdominal wall and of the exposed viscera is due to the fact that the former is lined and the latter more or less completely covered by a serous membrane, the **peritoneum.**

Development of the Alimentary Canal, Viscera and Peritoneum.—When the paraxial mesoblast of the embryo has developed a series of transverse segmentations it becomes converted into a row of dark, square segments known as the **protovertebrae** or the **mesoblastic somites,** which are separated by clear, transverse intervals. They appear first in the region that is to become the neck, and from there extend back along the entire length of the trunk. These bodies are not solely the representatives of the future permanent vertebrae, but differentiate partly into muscles and true skin.

On each side of the protovertebrae the lateral mesoblast splits into two layers.

The upper layer is applied to the epiblast, and forms with it the **somatopleure** or body-wall. The lower layer becomes adherent to the hypoblast, and forms the **splanchnopleure** or wall of the alimentary canal. The space between these two layers is the **caelom** or the **pleuroperitoneal cavity**. This body-cavity is of large size in the early stages of the development of the embryo.

Anteriorly—or, if the body is in the erect posture, superiorly—there is developed a comparatively large space called the **pericardiothoracic cavity**; and a transverse fold develops, which marks off this cavity from the future abdominal cavity. This fold, with many veins of large size, develops into the primary Diaphragm, although its dorsal part remains incomplete. The dorsal part is completed at a later period, constituting the Diaphragm as we see it in the adult. As Dr. Frederick J. Brockway expresses it: "The Diaphragm is thus made up of a ventral, younger part, and a dorsal, older part. When this posterior part fails to develop, there is opportunity for a congenital diaphragmatic hernia to be present."

The pericardiothoracic cavity becomes divided into three cavities, and the two lateral ones are for a time continuous with the abdominal cavity. This continuation is, however, but temporary, and they are afterward separated. In this manner, four large serous sacs are formed. The two **lateral thoracic sacs** are known as

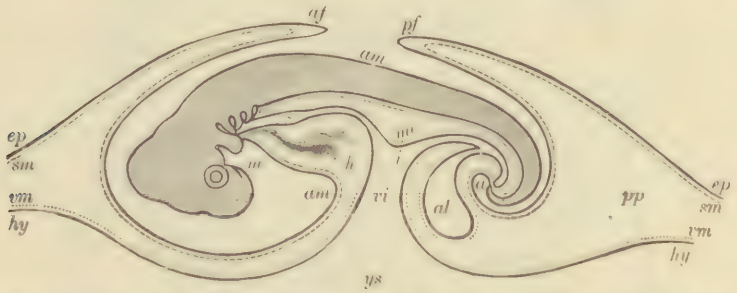


FIG. 833. Diagrammatic outline of a longitudinal vertical section of the chick on the fourth day. *ep.* Epiblast. *sm.* Somatic mesoblast. *hy.* Hypoblast. *vm.* Visceral mesoblast. *af.* Cephalic fold. *pf.* Caudal fold. *am.* Cavity of true amnion. *ys.* Yolk-sac. *i.* Intestine. *s.* Fore-gut. *a.* Future anus, still closed. *m.* The mouth. *me.* The mesentery. *al.* The allantoic vesicle. *pp.* Space between inner and outer folds of amnion. (From Quain's Anatomy, Allen Thomson.)

the **pleural sacs**, and are lined with the pleura; the **median thoracic sac** is the **pericardial sac**, and is lined with the pericardium; and the **abdominal sac** forms the abdominal cavity, and is lined with the peritoneum.

The primitive alimentary canal, which was formed early by the closure within the embryo of a portion of the blastodermic vesicle, consists of three parts: first, the **fore-gut**, within the cephalic flexure, dorsal to the heart; second, the **mid-gut**, opening freely into the yolk-sac; and third, the **hind-gut**, within the caudal flexure. In the fore-gut are developed the back portion of the mouth, the tongue, the pharynx, the oesophagus, the stomach, the larger part of the duodenum, and the organs that have grown out from these structures. The hind-gut forms a portion of the colon and the rectum, with the exception of the latter's anal end; and the mid-gut gives rise to the remainder of the digestive tube.

Development of the Alimentary Canal.—The fore-gut and hind-gut end blindly, there being at first neither mouth nor anus (Figs. 833 and 834). The upper part of the fore-gut becomes dilated to form the pharynx, in relation to which the branchial arches are developed (Fig. 836); the succeeding part remains tubular, and with the descent of the stomach is elongated to form the oesophagus. Soon a fusiform dilatation, the future stomach, makes its appearance, and beyond this the mid-gut opens freely into the yolk-sac (Figs. 836 and 837).

This opening is at first wide, but, as the body-walls close in around the umbilicus, it is gradually narrowed into a tubular stalk, the **yolk-stalk** or **vitello-intestinal duct**.

At this stage, therefore, the alimentary canal forms a nearly straight tube in front of the notochord and primitive aorta (Fig. 834). From the stomach to the rectum

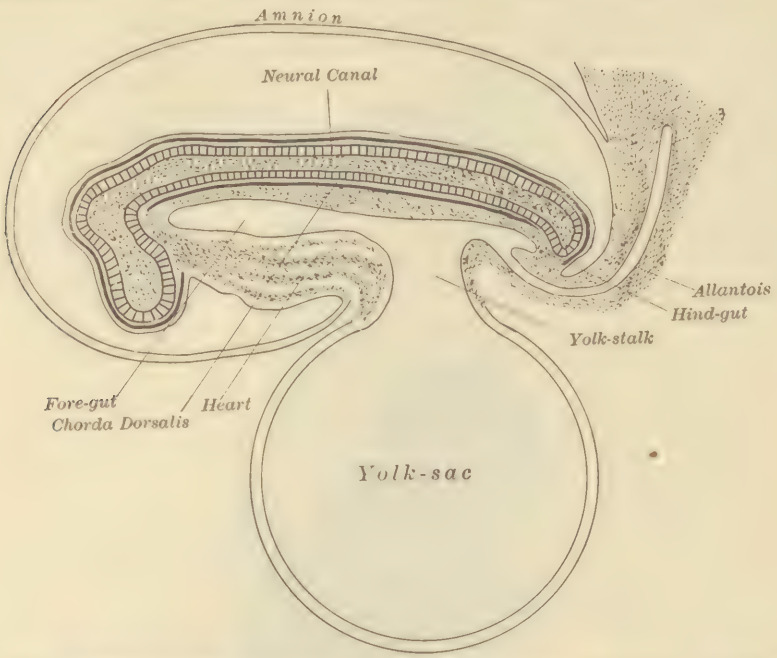


FIG. 834.—Diagram of a longitudinal section of a mammalian embryo. Very early. (After Quain.)

it is attached to the notochord by a band of mesoblast, from which the common mesentery of the gut is subsequently developed. The stomach undergoes a further dilatation, and its two curvatures can be recognized (Figs. 838 and 841), the greater directed toward the vertebral column and the lesser toward the anterior wall of the abdomen, while of its two surfaces one looks to the right and the other to the left. The mid-gut also undergoes great elongation, and forms a V-shaped loop which projects downward and forward; from the bend or angle of the loop the vitello-intestinal duct passes to the umbilicus (Fig. 841). For a time a part of the loop extends beyond the abdominal cavity into the umbilical cord, but by the end of the third month this is withdrawn. With the lengthening of the tube, the mesoblast, which attaches it to the future vertebral column and which carries the blood-vessels for the supply of the gut, is thinned and drawn out to form the **primitive** or **common mesentery**. The portion of this mesentery which is attached to the greater curvature of the stomach is named the **mesogastrium**, and the parts which suspend

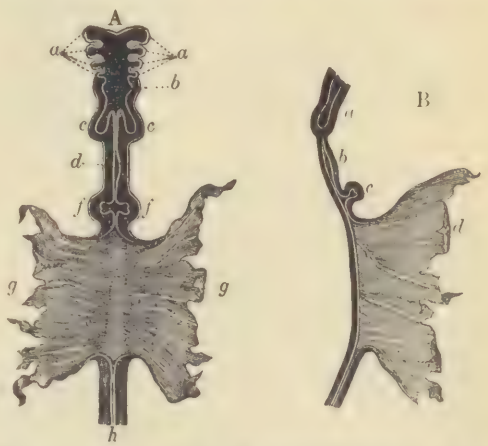


FIG. 835. Early form of the alimentary canal. In *A* a front view and in *B* an antero-posterior section are represented. *a*. Four pharyngeal or visceral plates. *b*. The pharynx. *c, c*. The commencing lungs. *d*. The stomach. *f, f*. The diverticula connected with the formation of the liver. *g*. The yolk-sac into which the middle intestinal groove opens. *h*. The posterior part of the intestine. (From Kölliker, after Bischoff.)

the colon and rectum are respectively termed the **mesocolon** and **mesorectum** (Fig. 841). About the sixth week a lateral diverticulum makes its appearance a short distance beyond the vitello-intestinal duct, and indicates the future cæcum or boundary between the small and the large intestine. This cæcal diverticulum has at first a uniform calibre, but its blind extremity remains rudimentary and forms the vermiform appendix (Figs. 841 and 842). Changes also take place in the position and direction of the stomach. It falls over on to its right surface, which henceforth is directed backward, while its original left surface looks forward; further, its greater curvature is drawn downward and to the left, away from the vertebral column, while its lesser curvature is directed upward, and the commencement of the duodenum is pushed over to the right side of the middle line. The mesogastrium, being attached to the greater curvature, must necessarily follow its movements, and hence it becomes greatly elongated and drawn outward

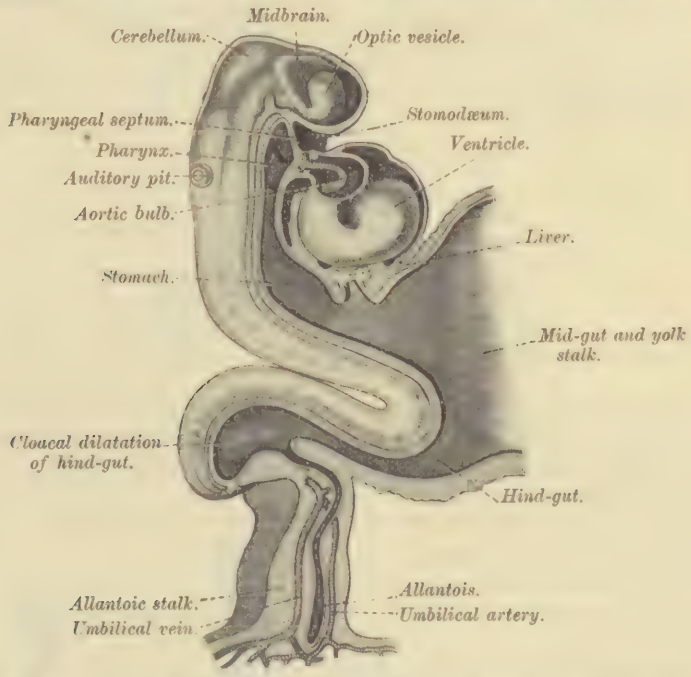


FIG. 836.—Human embryo, about fifteen days old. Brain and heart represented from right side; alimentary canal and yolk-sac in mesial section. (After His.)

from the vertebral column, and, like the stomach, what was originally its right surface is now directed backward and its left forward. In this way a pouch, the **bursa omentalis**, is formed behind the stomach; this pouch is the future lesser sac of the peritoneum, and it increases in size as the alimentary tube undergoes further development; the entrance to the pouch constitutes the future **foramen of Winslow** (Figs. 838, 842, and 845). The remainder of the mid-gut becomes greatly increased in length, so that the tube is coiled on itself, and this increase in length demands a corresponding increase in the width of the intestinal attachment of the mesentery, so that it becomes plaited or folded.

At this stage the small and the large intestines are attached to the vertebral column by a common mesentery, the coils of the small intestine falling to the right of the middle line, while the large intestine lies on the left side.[1]

[1] Sometimes this condition persists throughout life, and it is then found that the duodenum does not cross from the right to the left side of the vertebral column, but lies entirely on the right side of the mesial plane, where it is continued into the jejunum; the arteries to the small intestine (rami intestini tenuis) also arise from the right instead of the left side of the superior mesenteric artery.

The gut now becomes rotated upon itself, so that the large intestine is carried over in front of the small intestine, and the caecum is placed immediately below

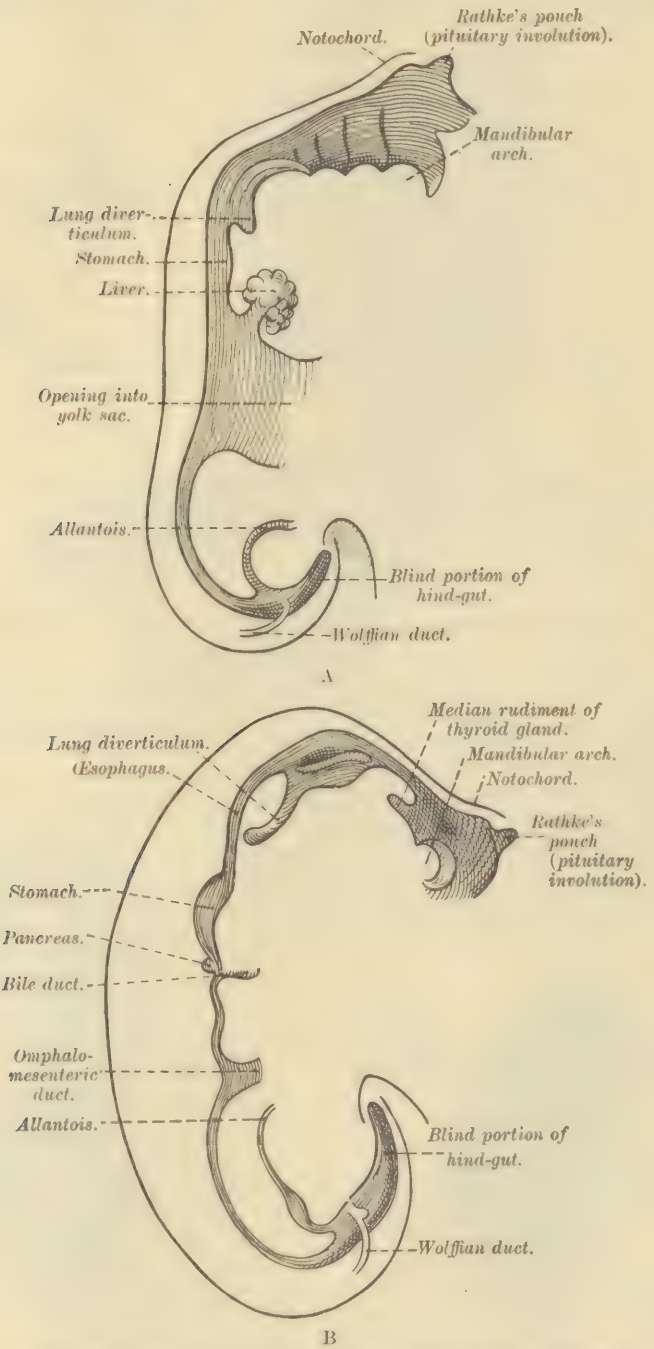


Fig. 837.—Sketches in profile of two stages in the development of the human alimentary canal. Fig. A × 30. Fig. B × 20. (His.)

the liver; about the sixth month the caecum descends into the right iliac fossa, and the large intestine now forms an arch consisting of the ascending, transverse, and descending portions of the colon—the transverse portion crossing in front

of the duodenum and lying just below the greater curvature of the stomach; within this arch the coils of the small intestine are disposed (Fig. 842). Sometimes the downward progress of the caecum is arrested, so that in the adult it may be found lying immediately below the liver instead of in the right iliac region.

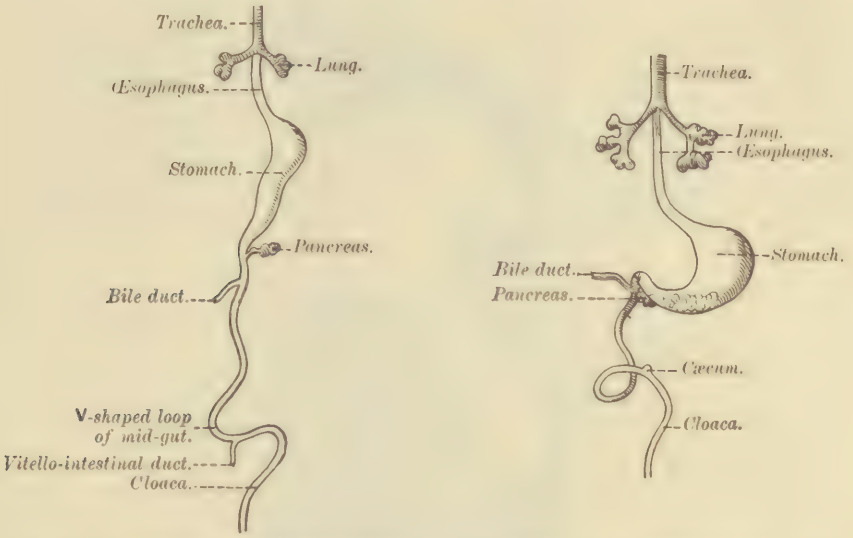


Fig. 838.—Front view of two successive stages in the development of the alimentary canal. (His.)

Further changes take place in the bursa omentalis and in the common mesentery, and give rise to the peritoneal relations seen in the adult. The bursa omentalis, which at first reaches only as far as the greater curvature of the stomach, grows downward to form the great omentum, and this downward extension lies in front of the transverse colon and the coils of the small intestine. The anterior layer of the transverse mesocolon is at first quite distinct from the posterior wall of the bursa omentalis, but ultimately

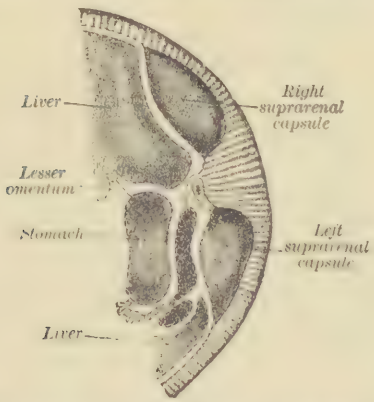


Fig. 839.—Schematic and enlarged cross-section through the body of a human embryo in the region of the mesogastrium. Beginning of third month. (Toldt.)

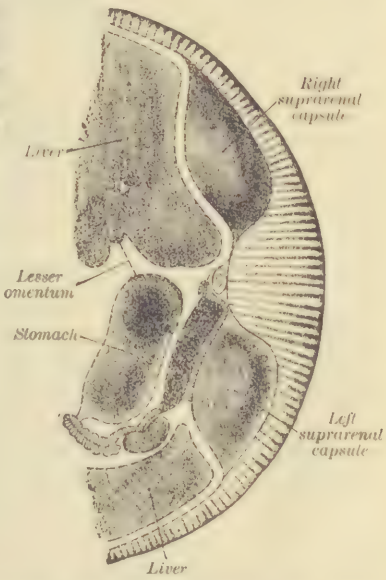


Fig. 840.—Same section as in Fig. 661 at end of third month. (Toldt.)

the two blend, and hence the great omentum appears as if attached to the transverse colon (Figs. 845, 846, and 847). The mesentery of the duodenum, in which

the rudiment of the pancreas is enclosed, disappears, and so this part of the gut becomes fixed to the posterior abdominal wall, and the pancreas lies entirely behind the peritoneal membrane. The mesenteries of the ascending and descend-

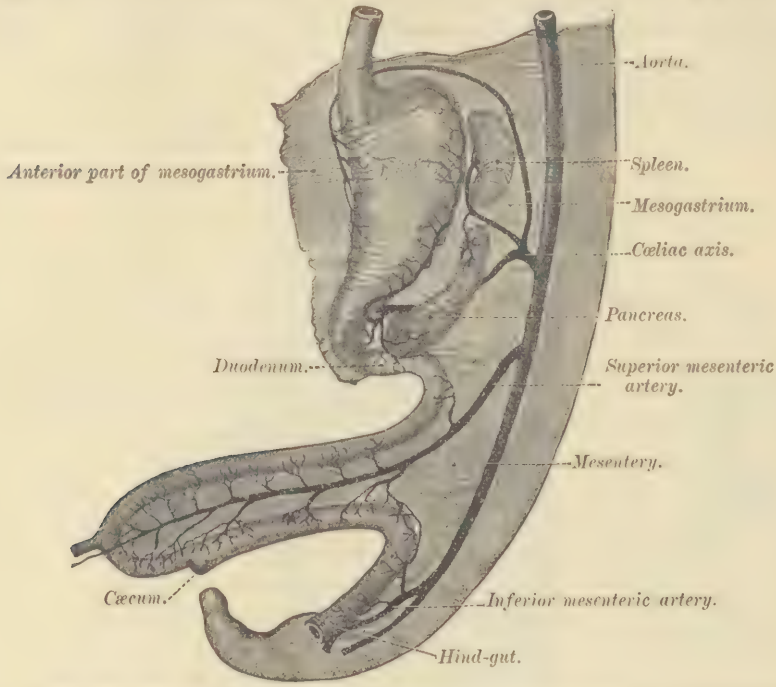


FIG. 841.—Abdominal part of alimentary canal and its attachment to the primitive or common mesentery. Human embryo of six weeks. (After Toldt.) (From Kollmann's Entwickelungsgeschichte.)

ing parts of the colon disappear in the majority of cases, while that of the small intestine assumes the oblique attachment characteristic of its adult condition.

The small omentum is formed by a thinning of the mesoblast or **anterior primitive mesentery**, which attaches the lesser curvature of the stomach to the anterior abdominal wall. By the subsequent growth of the liver this leaf of mesoblast is

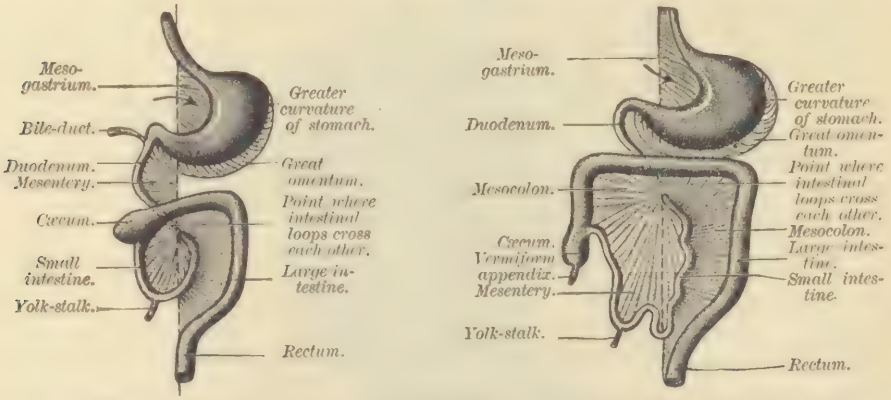


FIG. 842.—Illustrating two stages in the development of the human alimentary canal and its mesentery. The arrow indicates the entrance to the bursa omentalis.

divided into two parts—viz., the **small omentum** between the stomach and liver, and the **falciform ligament** between the liver and the abdominal wall and Diaphragm (Fig. 844).

The anus is developed as a slight invagination of the epiblast a short distance in front of the posterior end of the hind-gut. This invagination is termed the **proctodaeum**, the mesoblast between it and the hypoblastic lining of the hind-gut is thinned, and ultimately the septum breaks down and disappears, and the hind-gut opens on the surface; into this part of the hind-gut the urinary and generative organs open for a time, and so constitutes a **common cloaca**. The small portion of the hind-gut behind the orifice of the anus is named the **caudal** or **post-anal gut**; it communicates with the neural tube by means of a canal, the **neurenteric canal**, already referred to. Ultimately the post-anal gut becomes obliterated, and it, together with the neurenteric canal, finally disappears.

Fig. 843. Final disposition of the intestines and their vascular relations. *A.* Aorta. *H.* Hepatic artery. *S.* Splenic artery. *M., Col.* Branches of superior mesenteric artery. *m, m'.* Branches of inferior mesenteric artery. (Jonnesco.)

The **peritoneal cavity** is the space left between the visceral and parietal layers of the mesoblast, and the serous membrane is develped from these layers.

The **tongue** originates from the floor of the pharynx. The anterior or papillary portion first appears as a rounded elevation, the **tuberculum impar**, between the ventral ends of the mandibular and hyoid arches (Fig. 848). Between the third and fourth arches a second larger elevation arises, in the centre of which is a median groove or furrow. This second elevation is termed the **furcula**, and from it the epiglottis is developed, while the median furrow becomes the entrance to the larynx (Fig. 849). The tuberculum impar and the furcula are at first in apposition, but are soon separated by a ridge produced by the forward growth of the second and third arches. This ridge gives rise to the posterior part of the tongue and extends forward in the form of a V, so as to embrace between its two limbs the tuberculum impar. At the apex of the V there is a pit-like invagination to form the middle thyroid rudiment, and this depression persists as the foramen caecum of the adult. The union of the two parts of the tongue is indicated even in the adult by a V-shaped depression, the apex of which is at the

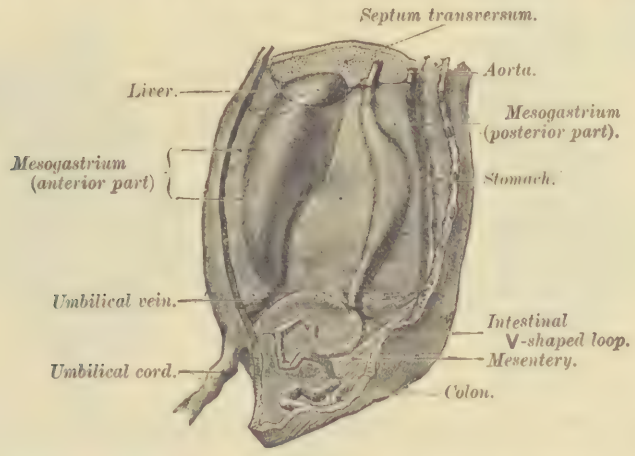


Fig. 844.—The primitive mesentery of a six weeks' human embryo, half schematic. (Kollmann.)

foramen caecum, while the two limbs run outward and forward parallel to but a little behind the circumvallate papillae, which are therefore developed from

the tuberculum impar (Figs. 848, 849, and 850). The **tonsils** are developed from the second branchial cleft, and make their appearance between the fourth and fifth months.

The **liver** arises in the form of two diverticula or hollow outgrowths from the ventral surface of that portion of the fore-gut which afterward becomes the

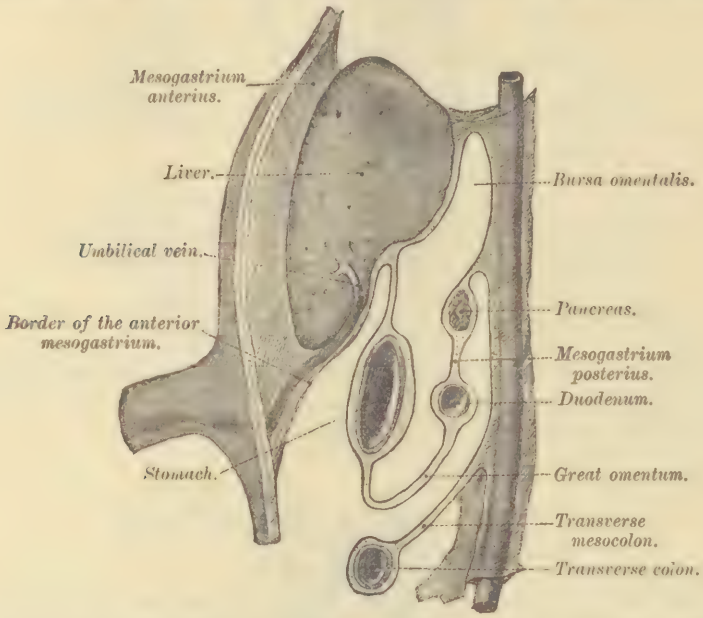


FIG. 845.—Schematic figure of the bursa omentalis etc Human embryo of eight weeks. (Kollmann.)

duodenum (Figs. 836 and 837). The outgrowths, which represent the right and the left lobes, respectively, of the adult liver, give off solid buds of cells, which grow into columns or cylinders; these unite with one another in every direction to form a close network, in the meshes of which are contained the capillary blood-vessels.

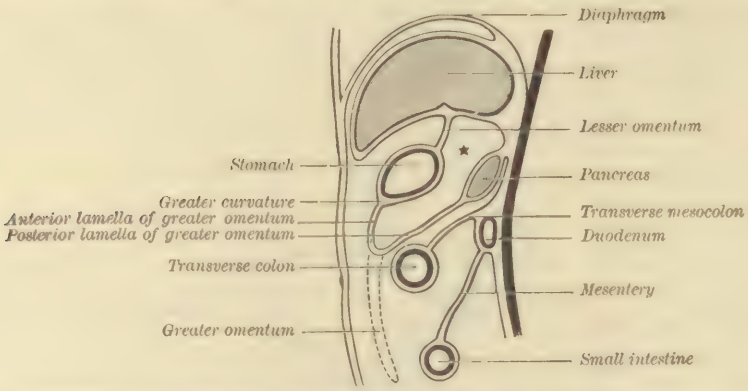


FIG. 846.—Illustrating the development of the bursa omentalis, cavity of the great omentum or lesser sac. Fœtal stage. * Lesser sac. (Hertwig.)

Some of these columns become hollowed out and form the bile-ducts, while the remainder constitute the secreting structure. The minute ducts thus produced unite to form the right and left hepatic ducts; while the common bile-duct is developed as a protrusion from the duodenal wall, and as it grows the liver becomes shifted away from the duodenum. The gall-bladder and cystic duct are formed by

a hollow evagination from the wall of the common bile-duct. About the third month the liver almost fills the abdominal cavity. From this period the relative

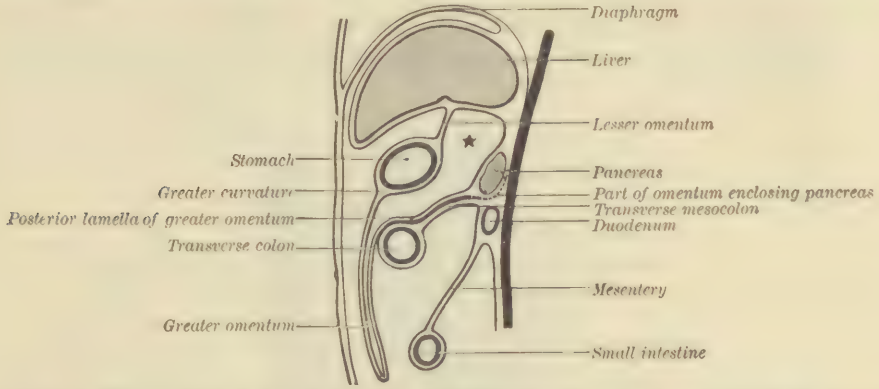


FIG. 847.—Development of bursa omentalis. Infantile stage. Great omentum covers the intestines and has fused with the transverse mesocolon. Pancreas is free from peritoneum posteriorly. (Hertwig.)

development of the liver is less active, more especially that of the left lobe, which now becomes smaller than the right; but up to the end of fœtal life the liver remains relatively larger than in the adult.

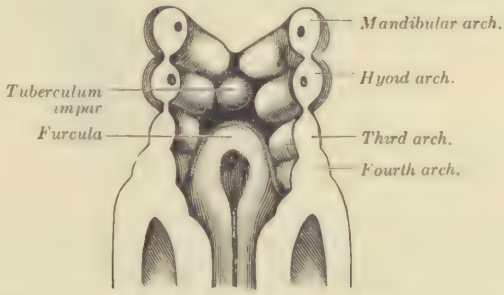


FIG. 848.—The floor of the pharynx of a human embryo about fifteen days old. × 50. (From His.)

The **pancreas** is also an early formation, being far advanced in the second month. It originates as a hollow projection from the hypoblast of the dorsal wall of the duodenum (Figs. 837 and 838), opposite the hepatic diverticula, which, as

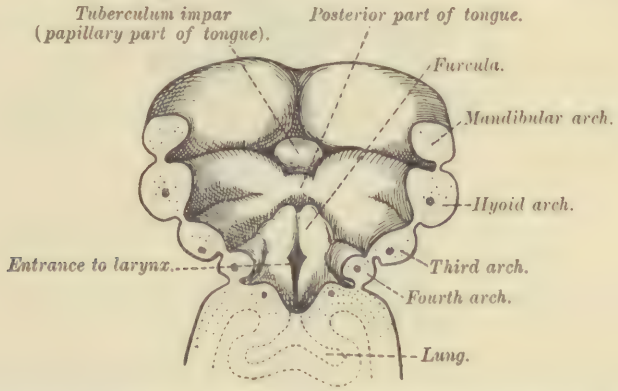


FIG. 849.—The floor of the pharynx of a human embryo about twenty-three days old. × 30. (From His.)

we have already seen, spring from its ventral wall. This hollow process grows between the two layers of the dorsal mesentery and sends out offshoots, which

branch abundantly and form a complicated tubular gland. As torsion of the stomach takes place, the pancreas assumes a transverse position and becomes fixed across the dorsal wall of the abdomen, the posterior layer of its mesentery undergoing absorption. Its duct ultimately opens into the duodenum together with the common bile-duct.

The **spleen**, on the other hand, is of mesoblastic origin, for there is never any connection between the intestinal cavity and the substance of this organ. It originates in the mesenteric fold which connects the stomach to the vertebral column (mesogastrium) (Fig. 841).

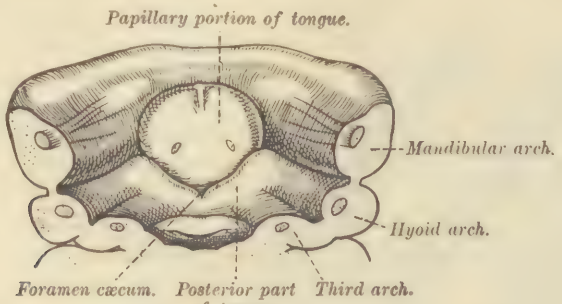


FIG. 850.—Floor of mouth of an embryo slightly older than that shown in Fig. 849. × 16. (From His.)

THE PERITONEUM (TUNICA SEROSA).

During life and in the uncut corpse the peritoneal cavity (*cavum peritonaei*) is air-tight. It is not a real cavity, as muscular tension and atmospheric pressure permit no vacant space to form. When the surgeon or anatomist opens the abdomen, the peritoneal cavity is at that moment produced.

The peritoneum (from *περι*, *about*, and *τειφω*, *I stretch*) is the largest serous membrane in the body, and consists, in the male, of a closed sac, a part of which is applied against the abdominal parietes, while the remainder is reflected over the contained viscera. In the female the peritoneum is not a closed sac, since the free extremities of the Fallopian tubes open directly into the peritoneal cavity. The portion of the peritoneum applied against the abdominal parietes constitutes the **parietal peritoneum**; the portion reflected over the viscera, the **visceral peritoneum**. The *free surface* of the membrane is smooth, covered by a layer of flattened endothelium, and lubricated by a small cavity of serous fluid. Hence the viscera can glide freely against the wall of the cavity or upon one another with the least possible amount of friction. Its *attached surface* is rough, being connected to the viscera and inner surface of the parietes by means of areolar tissue termed the **subserous areolar tissue** (*tela subserosa*). The parietal portion is loosely connected with the fascia lining the abdomen and pelvis, but more closely to the under surface of the Diaphragm and also in the middle line of the abdomen.

The peritoneum differs from the other serous membranes of the body in presenting a much more complex arrangement—an arrangement which can only be clearly understood by following the changes which take place in the alimentary canal during its development; and therefore the student is advised to preface his study of the peritoneum by reviewing the remarks on Embryology.

Structure of the Peritoneum.—It is a thin, glistening serous membrane and consists of a connective-tissue layer and one layer of flat endothelial cells upon the free surface of the membrane. The connective-tissue layer consists of bundles of connective tissue which contain many connective-tissue cells and elastic fibres. It contains a multitude of lymph-spaces, lymph-vessels, and lymph-capillaries.

Beneath the peritoneum is a layer of lax and spongy connective tissue which serves to bind the serous membrane to parts beneath. This layer is called the **subserous connective tissue.** In some regions it is plentiful; in others, as over the liver and intestine, it is very scantily developed. The endothelial cells are flat and polygonal. Some hold that they are joined together by cement-substance. Byron Robinson asserts that there is no cement-substance, but rather an organized connection between the protoplasmic processes of adjacent cells.

On the surface of the endothelium between the cells numerous apertures or interruptions are to be seen. Some of these, the **stomata,** are surrounded by a ring of cubical endothelium (Fig. 851), and communicate with lymphatic capillaries; others, the **stigmata** or **pseudostomata,** are mere interruptions in the endothelial layer, and are occupied by processes of the branched connective-tissue corpuscle of the subjacent tissue. Stomata are particularly numerous in the region of the Diaphragm and are relatively scanty in the region of the pelvis.

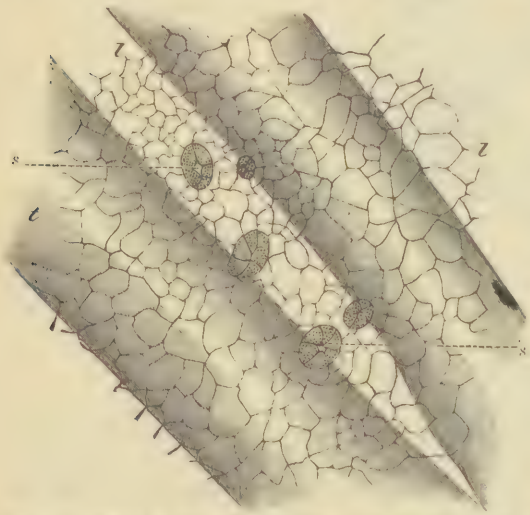


FIG. 851.—Part of peritoneal surface of the central tendon of Diaphragm of rabbit, prepared with nitrate of silver. *s.* Stomata. *l.* Lymph-channels. *t.* Tendon-bundles. The stomata are surrounded by germinating endothelial cells. (From Handbook for the Physiological Laboratory, Klein.)

The amount of fluid contained in the closed sac is, in most cases, only sufficient to moisten the surface, but not to furnish any appreciable quantity of liquid. When a small quantity can be collected, it is found to resemble lymph, and, like that fluid, coagulates spontaneously; but when secreted in large quantities, as in dropsy, it is a more watery fluid, but still contains a considerable amount of proteid which is coagulated on boiling.

The peritoneum is a **lymph-sac** and its walls contain a great quantity of lymphatic structures. In the subserous tissue the numerous lymph-spaces obtain fluid from the peritoneal cavity by way of the stomata of the endothelial coat, and from these lymph-spaces lymph-vessels take origin. Byron Robinson points out that the lymphatic system of the peritoneum consists of: 1. Interstitial lymph-spaces. 2. Non-valved capillaries. 3. Valved lymphatic channels. The subendothelial interstitial lymph-spaces intercommunicate and can take up an immense quantity of fluid from the peritoneal cavity. Normally the spaces contain both nutrient material and waste products. Through these spaces blood capillaries pass, and from these spaces lymph-capillaries come. Lymphatics are particularly plentiful in—1, the tendinous portion of the Diaphragm; 2, the ligamenta lata; 3, the omentum; 4, the ventral surface of the small intestine; 5, the liver and spleen.[1]

The lymph from this region reaches the mediastinal or diaphragmatic glands. The serous surface of the Diaphragm is the region chiefly efficient in absorption from the peritoneum, and there is a current in the peritoneal cavity directed toward the Diaphragm.[2] Absorption is very rapid from the peritoneal cavity. Fluid equalling from 3 to 8 per cent. of the body-weight can be absorbed in one hour. There are a multitude of nerves in the peritoneum, and it seems probable that each endothelial

[1] The Peritoneum. By Byron Robinson. [2] Ibid.

cell receives a nerve ending. The minute arteries of the peritoneum are surrounded by nerve-plexuses. According to Byron Robinson,[1] the nerves of the peritoneum are: 1. Medullated. 2. Non-medullated. 3. Fibres of Remak. 4. The Vater-Pacinian corpuscles and other varieties of nerve endings. 5. Nerve-cells. The visceral peritoneum contains many more nerves than the parietal peritoneum.

The **parietal peritoneum** (*peritonæum parietale*) lines the wall of the abdominal cavity. The **visceral peritoneum** (*peritonæum viscerale*) covers the viscera. Back of the parietal peritoneum is a space, the **retro-peritoneal space** (*spatium retro-peritonæale*), which contains the great vessels and nerves, the suprarenal capsules, the kidney, and ureters (Figs. 853, 854, 855, 856, and 857).

We describe the peritoneum as consisting of two sacs, a **greater sac** and a **lesser sac** (Fig. 853). The larger part of the abdominal cavity is lined by the greater sac, as most of the viscera are covered by it. The lesser sac is placed largely behind the stomach. These two sacs are not two distinct cavities which communicate. They constitute one cavity, a portion of which has been formed into a diverticulum or recess by a process of constriction, the result of changes produced in the position of adjacent viscera by development. Prof. Birmingham says: "If the great sac be compared to a bag, the lesser sac might be represented as a pocket lying behind, and opening into it by a narrow orifice, the **foramen of Winslow**, on its posterior wall."[2] The greater sac lines the walls of the abdominal cavity and covers the viscera which are invested by peritoneum, except the posterior portion of the stomach, the suprarenal capsule of the left side, the superior surface of the pancreas, the Spigelian lobe and the caudate lobes of the liver, and portions of the spleen, left kidney, and transverse colon, which are covered by peritoneum of the lesser sac.[3]

To trace the continuity of the membrane from one viscus to another, and from the viscera to the parietes, it is necessary to follow its reflections in the vertical and horizontal directions, and in doing so it matters little where a start is made.

If the stomach is drawn downward, a fold of peritoneum will be seen stretching from its lesser curvature to the transverse fissure of the liver (Figs. 853 and 859). This is the **gastro-hepatic** or **lesser omentum** (*omentum minus*), and consists of two layers; these, on being traced downward, split to envelop the stomach, covering respectively its anterior and posterior surfaces. At the greater curvature of the stomach they again come into contact and are continued downward in front of the transverse colon, forming the anterior two layers of the **great** or **gastro-colic omentum** (*omentum majus*) (Figs. 853 and 861). Reaching the free edge of this fold they are reflected upward as its two posterior layers, and thus the great omentum consists of four layers of peritoneum. Followed upward the two posterior layers separate so as to enclose the transverse colon, above which they once more come into contact and pass backward to the abdominal wall as the **transverse mesocolon** (*mesocolon transversum*) (Fig. 853). Reaching the abdominal wall about the level of the transverse part of the duodenum, the two layers of the transverse mesocolon become separated from each other and take different directions; the upper or anterior layer, known as the **ascending layer of the transverse mesocolon**, ascends in front of the pancreas, and its further course will be followed presently (Fig. 853). The lower or posterior layer is carried downward, as the anterior layer of the mesentery, by the superior mesenteric vessels to the small intestine, around which it may be followed and subsequently traced upward as the posterior layer of the mesentery to the abdominal wall. From the posterior abdominal wall it sweeps downward over the aorta into the pelvis, where it invests the first part of the rectum and attaches it to the front of the sacrum by a fold termed the **mesorectum** (Fig. 863, p. 1259). Leaving first the sides and then the front of the second part of the rectum it is reflected on to the back of the bladder, and, after covering the posterior and

[1] The Peritoneum. By Byron Robinson. [2] Prof. Cunningham's Text-book of Human Anatomy.
[3] Ibid.

upper aspects of this viscus, is carried by the **urachus** and **obliterated hypogastric arteries** as folds, on to the posterior surface of the anterior abdominal wall (Fig. 852). The fold upon the urachus is the **plica urachi** (*plica umbilicalis media*); the fold on each obliterated hypogastric artery is the **plica hypogastrica** (*plica umbilicalis lateralis*). Between the rectum and bladder it forms a pouch, the **recto-vesical pouch** (*excavatio rectovesicalis*), bounded on the sides by two crescentic or semilunar folds (*plicae rectovesicales*), which pass from the posterior surface of the bladder to the sides of the rectum; the bottom of this pouch is about on a level with the middle of the vesiculae seminales—*i. e.*, three inches or so from the orifice of the anus. When the bladder is distended the peritoneum is carried up with the expanded viscus, so that a considerable part of the anterior surface of the latter lies directly against the abdominal wall without the intervention of the peritoneal membrane. When the bladder is empty the peritoneum forms a transverse fold over its upper surface (*plica vesicalis transversa*).

In the female the peritoneum is reflected from the rectum on to the upper part of the posterior vaginal wall, forming the **recto-vaginal pouch** or **pouch of Douglas** (*excavatio rectouterina*) (Fig. 853). In the pouch of Douglas are two folds of peritoneum (*plica rectouterinae*), which begin at the posterior surface of the cervix, extend back to the sides of the rectum, and bound above the deepest portion of the pouch. The pouch is then carried over the posterior aspect and fundus of the uterus on to its anterior surface, which it covers as far as the junction of the body and cervix uteri, forming here a second but shallower depression, the **utero-vesical pouch** (*excavatio vesicouterina*). It is also reflected from the sides of the uterus to the lateral wall of the pelvis on each side as an expanded fold, the **broad ligament of the uterus** (*ligamenum latum uteri*), in the free margin of each broad ligament can be felt a thickened cord-like structure, the **Fallopian tube** (*tuba uterina* [*Fallopii*]).

When the peritoneum lining the anterior abdominal wall is examined from behind, it is noticed that certain structures which lie in front of it form five peritoneal ridges (Fig. 852). The structure in the middle line is the **urachus,** which is the remains of the fœtal allantois. In the adult it is a fibrous cord which passes from the umbilicus to the summit of the bladder. This cord is slender above, but broader below. External to the urachus are the fibrous cords which resulted from obliteration of the **hypogastric arteries** (*arteriae umbilicales*). These cords become more slender as they ascend toward the sides of the urachus and pass to the umbilicus. More external still are the folds formed by the *deep epigastric arteries*. The fold over each epigastric artery is the **plica epigastrica**; the fold over each obliterated hypogastric artery is the **plica umbilicalis lateralis**; the fold over the obliterated urachus is the **plica umbilicalis media.**

The five peritoneal ridges formed by the above-named structures create three peritoneal fossae on each side, called the **inguinal fossae** or **pouches** (*fovea inguinales*). The **external inguinal fossa** (*fovea inguinalis lateralis*) is external to the deep epigastric artery and corresponds to the internal abdominal ring. There is a funnel-shaped depression in its floor marking the point at which the inguinal process passed down. This depression, if marked, predisposes to oblique inguinal hernia. The **middle inguinal fossa** (*fovea inguinalis medialis*) is placed between the deep epigastric arteries and the obliterated hypogastric vessels. The **internal inguinal fossa** or the **supravesical fossa** (*fovea supravesicalis*) is between the obliterated hypogastric artery and the urachus. Just beneath the inner termination of Poupart's ligament there is another fossa, the **femoral** or **crural fossa** (*fovea femoralis*), which corresponds to the situation of the femoral ring. The obliterated hypogastric artery is to the inner side of this fossa.

On following the parietal peritoneum upward on the back of the anterior abdominal wall it is seen to be reflected around a fibrous band, the **ligamentum teres** or **obliterated umbilical vein** (Figs. 855, 856, and 857), which reaches from the

umbilicus to the under surface of the liver. Here the membrane forms a somewhat triangular fold, the **falciform** or **suspensory ligament of the liver** (*ligamentum falciforme hepatis*), which attaches the upper and anterior surfaces of that organ to the Diaphragm and abdominal wall. With the exception of the line of attachment of this ligament the peritoneum covers the under surface of the anterior part of the Diaphragm and is reflected from it on to the upper surface of the liver as the **anterior** or **superior layer of the coronary ligament** (*ligamentum coronarium hepatis anterior*). Covering the upper and anterior surfaces of the liver it is reflected around its sharp margin on to its under surface as far as the **transverse fissure**, where it is continuous

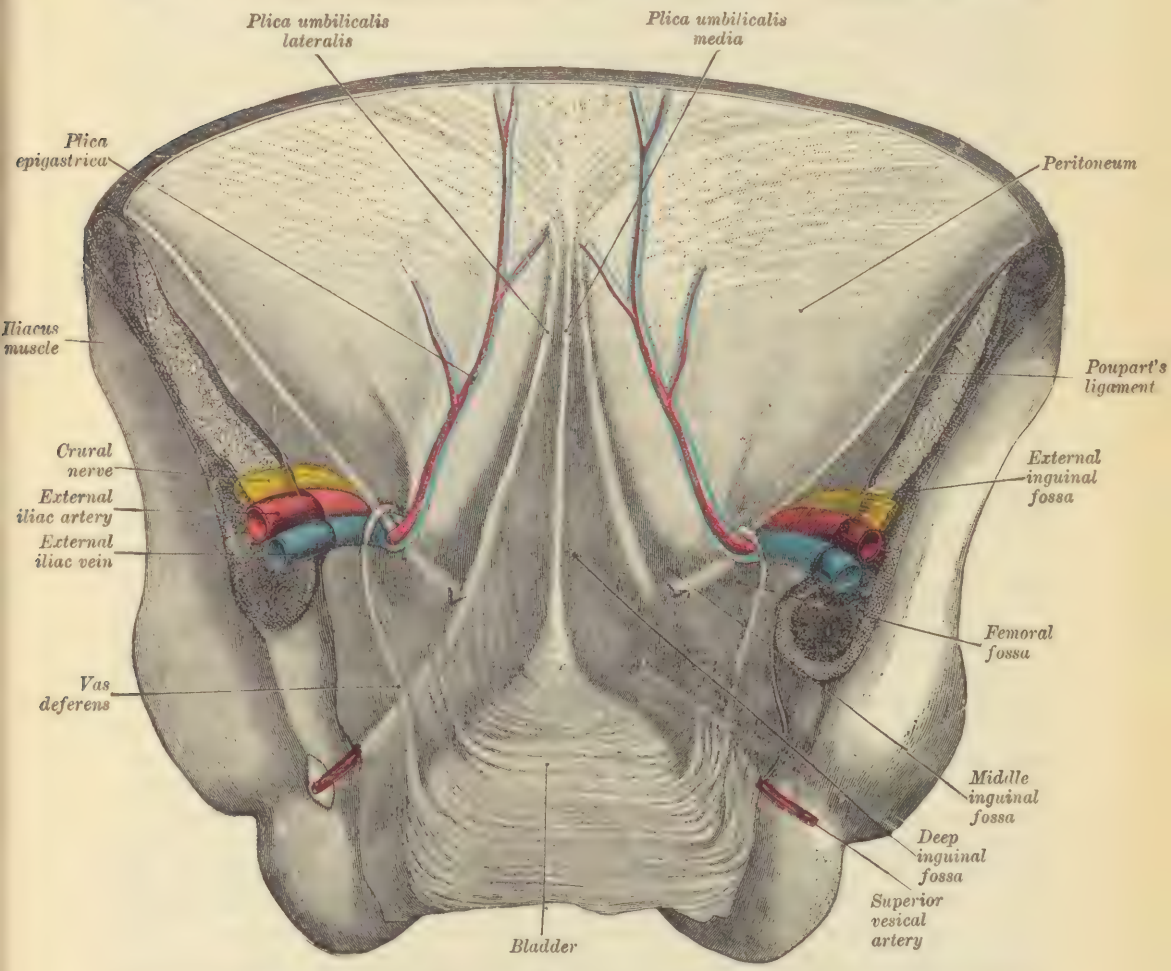


FIG. 852.—Posterior view of the abdominal wall in its lower half. The peritoneum is in place and the various cords are shining through. (Joessel.)

with the anterior layer of the small omentum from which a start was made (Fig. 853). The posterior layer of this omentum is carried backward from the transverse fissure over the under surface and Spigelian lobe of the liver, and is then reflected, as the **posterior** or **inferior layer of the coronary ligament** (*ligamentum coronarium hepatis posterior*), on to the Diaphragm and is prolonged downward over the pancreas to become continuous with the ascending layer of the transverse mesocolon (Fig. 853). Between the two layers of the coronary ligament there is a triangular surface of the liver which is devoid of peritoneum; it is named the **bare area of the liver**, and is attached to the Diaphragm by connective tissue. If, however, the two layers of the

coronary ligaments are traced toward the right and left margins of the liver, they approach each other, and, ultimately fusing, they form the **right** and **left lateral ligaments of the liver** and attach its right and left lobes respectively to the Diaphragm.

If the small omentum is followed toward the right side it is seen to form a distinct free edge around which its anterior and posterior layers are continuous with each other and between which are situated the portal vein, hepatic artery, and bile-duct. If the finger is introduced behind this free edge, it passes through a somewhat constricted ring, the **foramen of Winslow** (*foramen epiploicum* [*Winslowi*]) (Figs. 853, 855, and 858). This is the communication between what are termed the **greater** and **lesser sacs** of the peritoneum and has the following boundaries: in *front*, the free edge of the gastro-hepatic omentum. This free edge is called the **ligamentum hepatoduodenale**. The gastro-hepatic omentum has the portal vein, hepatic artery, and bile-duct between its two layers (Fig. 859); *behind* the foramen of Winslow is the vena cava inferior; *above*, are the Spigelian and caudate lobes of the liver; *below*, the duodenum and the hepatic artery, as the latter passes forward and upward from the cœliac axis.

The **lesser peritoneal cavity** or the **lesser sac of the peritoneum** (*bursa omentalis*) (Figs. 853, 855, and 858), therefore, lies behind the small omentum and has the following dimensions: *above*, it is limited by the portion of the liver which lies behind the transverse fissure; *below*, it extends downward into the great omentum, reaching, in the fœtus, as far as its free edge (Fig. 846); in the adult, however, its vertical extent is limited by adhesions between the layers of the omentum. In *front*, it is bounded by the small omentum, stomach, and anterior two layers of the great omentum; *behind*, by the two posterior layers of the great omentum, the transverse colon, and ascending layer of the transverse mesocolon which passes upward in front of the pancreas as far as the posterior surface of the liver. Laterally the lesser sac reaches from the foramen of Winslow on the right side as far as the spleen on the left (*recessus lienalis*) (Fig. 860), where it is limited by the **lieno-renal ligament**. The extent of the lesser sac and its relations to surrounding parts can be definitely made out by tearing through the small omentum and inserting the hand through the opening thus made. A passage (*vestibulum bursae omentalis*) leads out from the foramen of Winslow over the head of the pancreas to the left as far as the **median vascular gastro-pancreatic fold** (*plica gastropancreatica*) (Fig. 858). This fold carries the gastric artery and the coronary vein. From the vestibule there is a narrow and upward prolongation behind the lesser omentum and caudate lobe of the liver and in front of the lumbar portion of the Diaphragm. This prolongation is the **superior omental recess** (*recessus superior omentalis*). The chief part of the lesser peritoneal cavity extends downward from the gastro-pancreatic fold and is called the **inferior omental recess** (*recessus omentalis inferior*). The constriction which separates the two recesses is due to the passage around the lesser sac and to the front of the gastric and hepatic arteries. "The former winds around its left side, the latter around its right, and each raises up a fold of peritoneum which projects strongly into the sac and partially divides it into two."[1] A small projection of the lesser sac passes to the right side behind the beginning of the duodenum. The splenic artery in its course to the spleen lies back of the posterior layer of the lesser sac.

It should be stated that during a considerable part of fœtal life the transverse colon is suspended from the posterior abdominal wall by a mesentery of its own—the two posterior layers of the great omentum passing, at this stage, in front of and above the colon (Fig. 846). This condition sometimes persists throughout adult life, but as a rule adhesion occurs between the mesentery of the transverse colon

[1] Prof. Cunningham's Text-book of Human Anatomy.

and the posterior layer of the great omentum, with the result that the colon appears to receive its peritoneal covering by the splitting of the two posterior layers of the latter fold.

In addition to tracing the peritoneum vertically, it is necessary to trace it **horizontally** (Figs. 854, 855, 856, and 857). If this is done below the transverse colon, the circle is extremely simple, as it includes only the greater sac of the peritoneum (Fig. 854). Above the level of the transverse colon the arrangement is more complicated, on account of the existence of the two sacs.

Starting from the linea alba, below the level of the transverse colon, and tracing the continuity in a horizontal direction to the right, the peritoneum covers the internal surface of the abdominal wall almost as far as the anterior border of the Quadratus lumborum muscle; it encloses the caecum, and is reflected over the

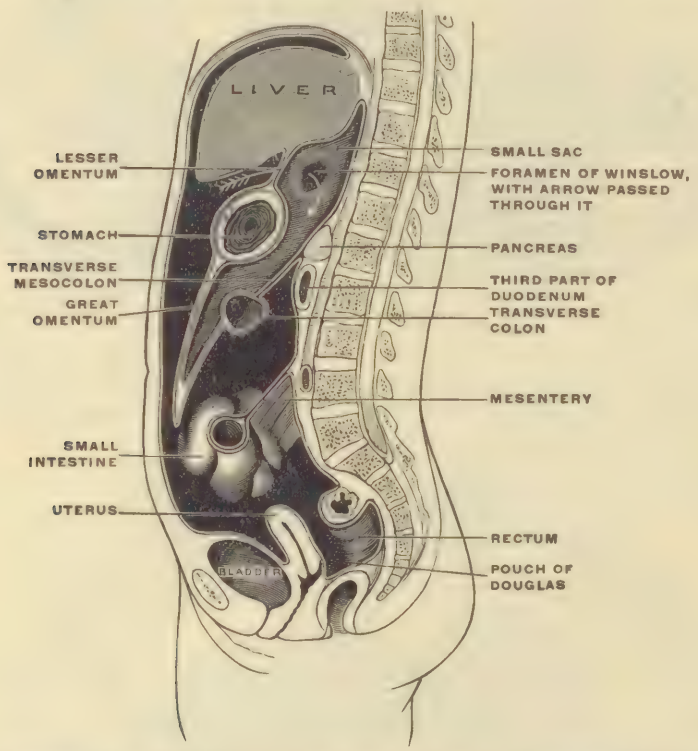


FIG. 853.—Diagrammatic mesial section of the female body, to show the peritoneum on vertical tracing. The great sac of the peritoneum is black and is represented as being much larger than in nature; the small sac is very darkly shaded; the peritoneum on section is shown as a white line, and a white arrow is passed through the foramen of Winslow from the great into the small sac. (Cunningham.)

sides and anterior surface of the ascending colon, fixing it to the abdominal wall, from which it can be traced over the kidney to the front of the bodies of the vertebrae. It then passes along the mesenteric vessels to invest the small intestine, and back again to the spine, forming the **mesentery**, between the layers of which are contained the mesenteric blood-vessels, nerves, lacteals, and glands. Lastly, it passes over the left kidney to the sides and anterior surface of the descending colon, and, reaching the abdominal wall, is continued along it to the middle line of the abdomen.

Above the transverse colon (Fig. 855) the peritoneum can be traced, forming the greater and lesser cavities, and their communication through the foramen of Winslow can be demonstrated. Commencing in the middle line of the abdomen, the membrane may be traced lining its anterior wall, and sending a process back-

ward to encircle the obliterated umbilical vein (the round ligament of the liver), forming the falciform or longitudinal ligament of the liver. Continuing its course

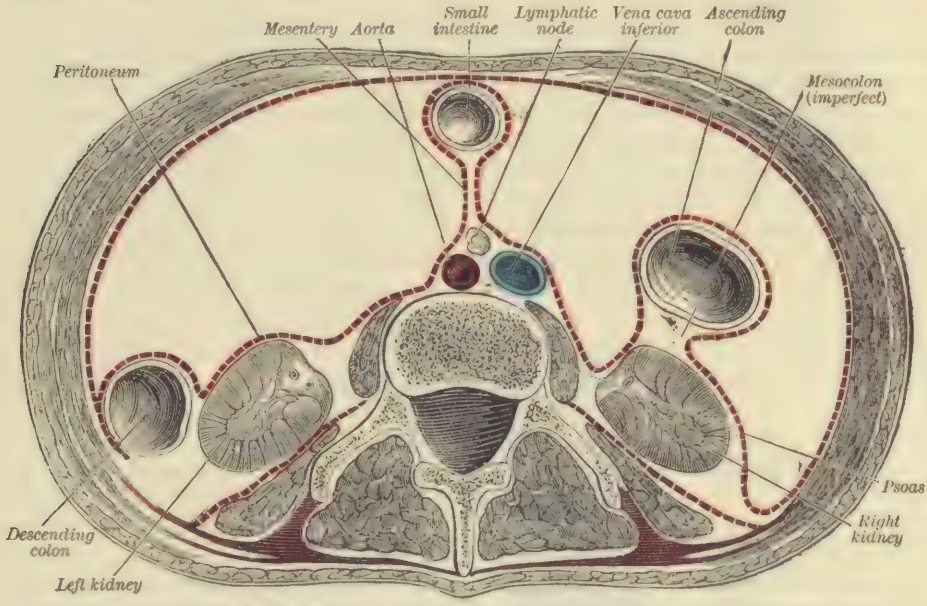


FIG. 854.—Peritoneal reflection in a transverse section of a lumbar region below the transverse colon. Seen from above. Schematic. (Tillaux.)

to the right, it is reflected over the front of the upper part of the right kidney, across the vena cava inferior and aorta, and over the left kidney to the hilum of

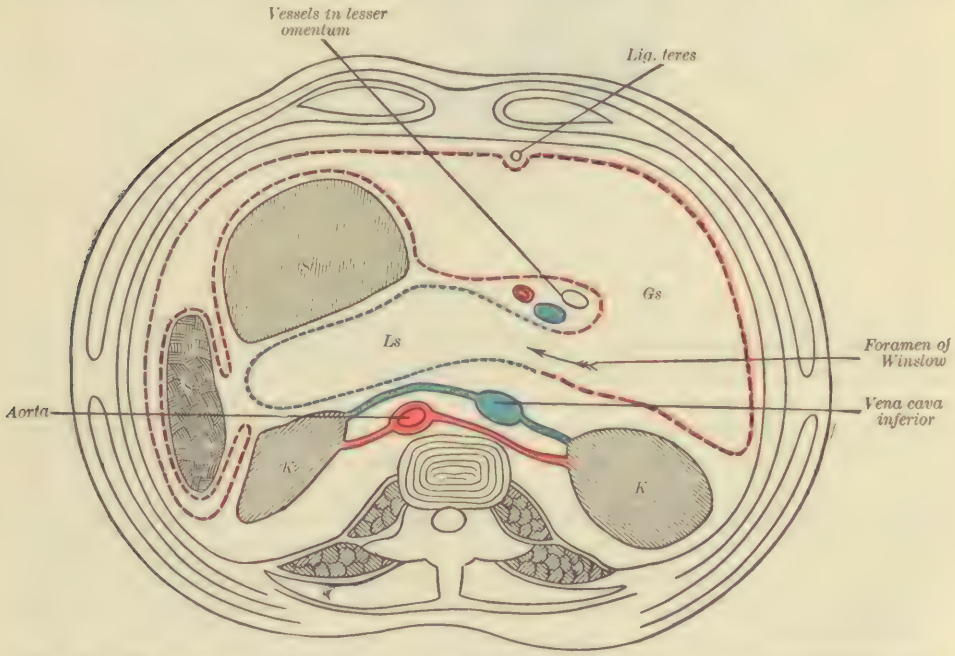


FIG. 855.—Transverse section of peritoneum above the transverse colon. The arrow points to the lesser sac and passes through the foramen of Winslow.

the spleen, forming the anterior layer of the **lieno-renal ligament,** the posterior layer being formed by the termination of the *cul-de-sac* of the greater cavity

between the kidney and spleen. From the hilum of the spleen it is reflected to the stomach, forming the posterior layer of the **gastro-splenic omentum** (*ligamentum*

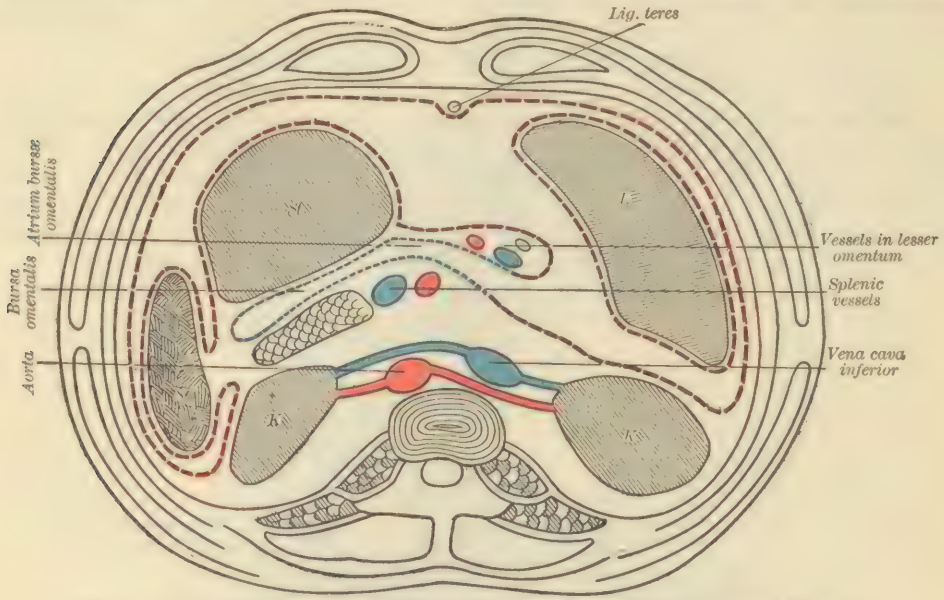


FIG. 856.—Horizontal section through the abdomen at the level of the foramen of Winslow. (Modified from Godlee.)

gastrolienale). It covers the posterior surface of the stomach, and from its lesser curvature it passes around the portal vein, hepatic artery, and bile-duct, and back

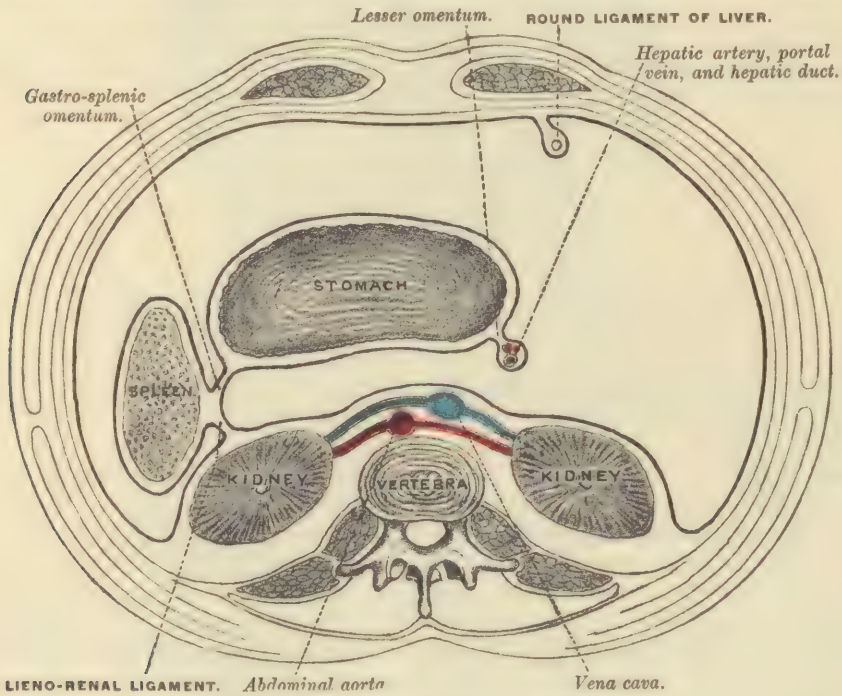


FIG. 857.—Transverse section of peritoneum.

again to the stomach, as the lesser omentum, and thus it forms the anterior boundary of the foramen of Winslow. It now covers the front of the stomach, and

upon reaching the cardiac extremity it passes to the hilum of the spleen, forming the anterior layer of the gastro-splenic omentum. From the hilum of the spleen it can be traced over the surface of this organ, to which it gives a serous covering; it is then reflected from the posterior border of the hilum on to the left kidney, forming the posterior layer of the lieno-renal ligament.

Numerous folds, formed by the peritoneum, extend between the various organs or connect them to the parietes. These serve to hold the organs in position, and at the same time enclose the vessels and nerves proceeding to each part. Some of these folds are called **ligaments**, such as the ligaments of the liver and the false ligaments of the bladder. Others, which connect certain parts of the intestine with the abdominal wall, constitute the **mesenteries**; and lastly, those which proceed from the stomach to certain viscera in its neighborhood are called **omenta**.

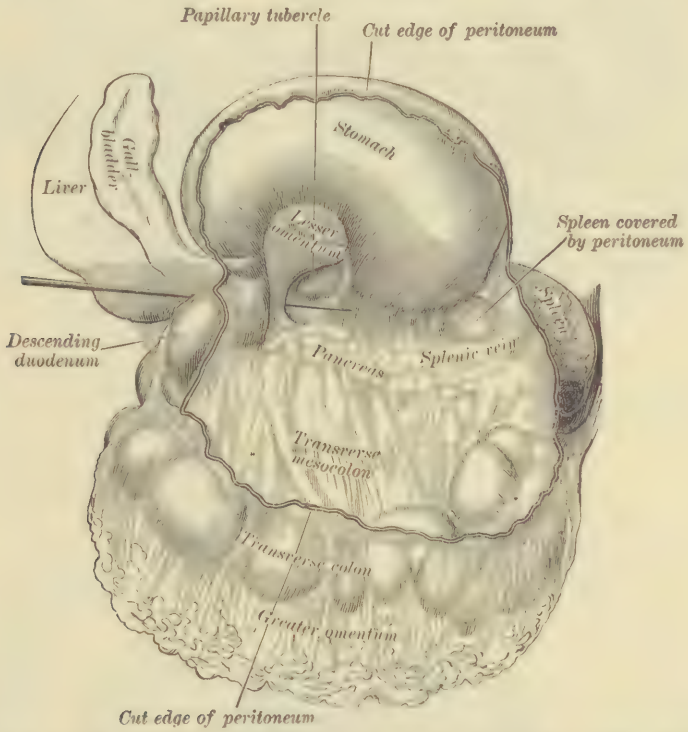


FIG. 858.—Bursa omentalis, opened from the front by an incision through the gastro-colic omentum. A probe passes through the foramen of Winslow and rests on the gastro-pancreatic fold. (Henle.)

The Ligaments of the Peritoneum.—The ligaments, formed by folds of the peritoneum, include those of the liver, spleen, bladder, and uterus. They will be found described with their respective organs.

The Omenta.—The omenta are: the **lesser omentum**, the **great omentum**, and the **gastro-splenic omentum**.

The **Lesser** or **Gastro-hepatic Omentum** (*omentum minus*) (Figs. 853 and 858) is the duplicature which extends between the transverse fissure of the liver and the right side of the abdominal portion of the oesophagus, the lesser curvature of the stomach, and the upper portion of the superior surface of the duodenum. The portion going to the oesophagus and stomach is called the **hepato-gastric ligament** (*ligamentum hepatogastricum*). The division of the ligament which goes to the oesophagus is strong and dense; the division which goes to the lesser curvature of the stomach is thin and relaxed. The portion of the lesser omentum which goes to the duodenum is continuous with the first-named portion. It is called the **hepato-**

duodenal ligament (*ligamentum hepatoduodenale*). The right margin of this ligament is free and concave. The **hepato-colic ligament** (*ligamentum hepatocolicum*) is not invariably present. It is a fold of the hepato-duodenal ligament and

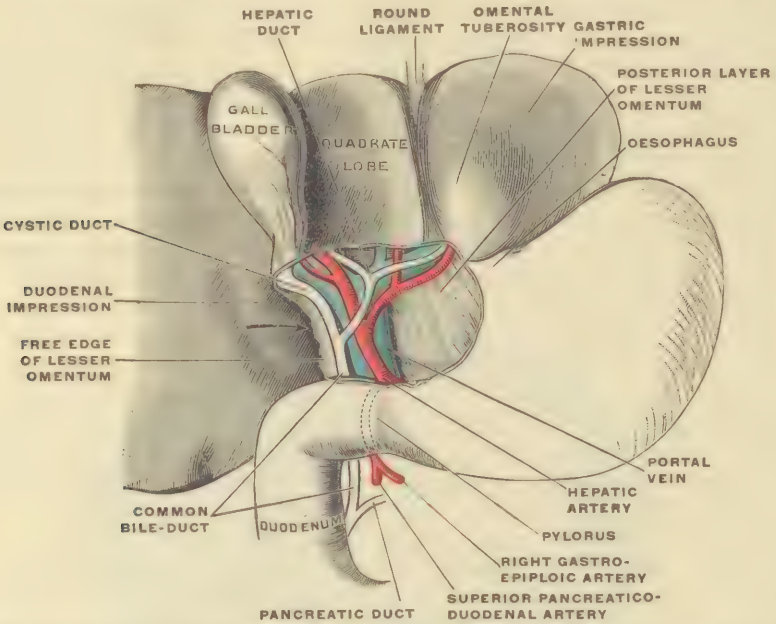


FIG. 859.—Structure between the layers of the lesser omentum. The liver has been raised up, and the anterior layer of the omentum removed. Semidiagrammatic. (Cunningham.)

runs from the posterior surface of the gall-bladder to the descending portion of the duodenum or possibly to the transverse colon. From the free margin of the termination of the hepato-duodenal ligament a fold often passes to the front

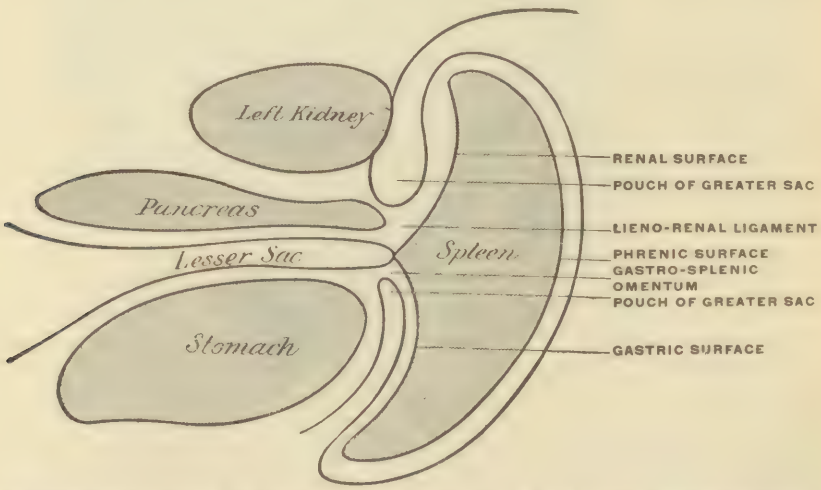


FIG. 860. Horizontal section through the stomach, pancreas, spleen, and the left kidney to show peritoneal reflections at the hilum of the spleen. (G. S. H.)

of the right kidney. It is known as the **duodeno-renal ligament** (*ligamentum duodenorenale*). The lesser omentum is extremely thin, and consists of two layers of peritoneum; that is, the two layers covering respectively the anterior and

posterior surfaces of the stomach. The posterior layer is part of the wall of the lesser peritoneal cavity; the anterior layer, of the greater peritoneal cavity. When the two layers reach the lesser curvature of the stomach, they join together and ascend as the double fold to the transverse fissure of the liver; to the left of this fissure the double fold is attached to the fissure of the ductus venosus as far as the Diaphragm, where the two layers separate to embrace the end of the oesophagus. At the right border the lesser omentum is free, and the two layers of which it is composed are continuous. The anterior layer, which belongs to the greater sac, turns around the hepatic vessels to become continuous with the posterior layer belonging to the lesser one. They here form a free, rounded margin, which contains between its layers the **hepatic artery,** the **common bile-duct,** the **portal vein, lymphatics,** and the **hepatic plexus of nerves** (Fig. 859)—all these structures being enclosed in loose areolar tissue, called **Glisson's capsule.** Between the layers where they are attached to the stomach lie the **gastric artery** and the **pyloric branch of the hepatic artery,** anastomosing with it. From the left side of the greater curvature of the stomach a fold passes to the gastric surface of the spleen, covers the spleen, and passes from the renal surface of the spleen around the left kidney to the Diaphragm.[1] The fold passing to the spleen is known as the **gastro-splenic ligament** or the **gastro-splenic omentum** (*ligamentum gastrolienale*) (Fig. 860). The portion passing to the Diaphragm is known as the **splenophrenic ligament** (*ligamentum phrenicolienale*). The **gastric veins** or **vasa brevia** pass from the left side of the greater curvature of the stomach toward the spleen in the gastro-splenic omentum.

The **Great** or **Gastro-colic Omentum** (*omentum majus*) (Figs. 853 and 861) is the largest peritoneal fold. It consists of four layers of peritoneum, two of which descend from the stomach, one from its anterior, the other from its posterior surface, and, uniting at its lower border, descend in front of the small intestines, sometimes as low down as the pelvis; they then turn upon themselves, and ascend again as far as the transverse colon, where they separate and enclose that part of the intestine. These separate layers may be easily demonstrated in the young subject, but in the adult they are more or less inseparably blended. At the free margins the two outer layers and the two inner layers become continuous. The left border of the great omentum is continuous with the gastro-splenic omentum; its right border extends as far only as the duodenum. The great omentum is usually thin, presents a cribriform appearance, and always contains some adipose tissue, which in fat subjects accumulates in considerable quantity. Between its two anterior layers is the anastomosis between the right and left gastro-epiploic arteries. In opening the abdomen the great omentum is rarely found spread out evenly over the intestines. It often projects between intestinal coils, or is largely gathered in some one region, or is pushed in front of the stomach by distention of the colon.

The lower portion of the lesser sac of the peritoneum continues for a distance between the ascending and descending layers of the great omentum (Fig. 853). The portion of the lesser peritoneal cavity within the great omentum is more or less obliterated in the adult by adhesion between its opposing layers. At birth the omentum is very short and barely reaches the umbilicus. In adults its length varies greatly. In some individuals it is very short; in others it passes into the pelvis. Mr. Lockwood points out that in persons under forty-five years of age the omentum can rarely be pulled down below the level of the pubic spine; in older persons it generally can.

The **Gastro-splenic Omentum** is the fold which connects the margins of the hilum of the spleen to the *cul-de-sac* of the stomach, being continuous by its lower

[1] Spalteholz, Hand Atlas of Human Anatomy. Translated and edited by Prof. Lewellys F. Barker.

border with the great omentum. It was described as the gastro-splenic ligament (Fig. 860).

The Mesenteries.—The mesenteries are: the **mesentery proper**, the **transverse mesocolon**, the **sigmoid mesocolon**, the **mesorectum** (p. 1259), and the **mesentery of the vermiform appendix**. In addition to these there are sometimes present an ascending and a descending mesocolon.

The **Mesentery** (*mesenterium*) (*μέσον ἔντερον*) (Figs. 853, 862, and 863), so called from being connected to the middle of the cylinder of the small intestine, is the broad fold of peritoneum which connects the convolutions of the jejunum and ileum with the posterior wall of the abdomen. It consists of a layer of connective tissue, each side of which is covered with peritoneum. In the connective

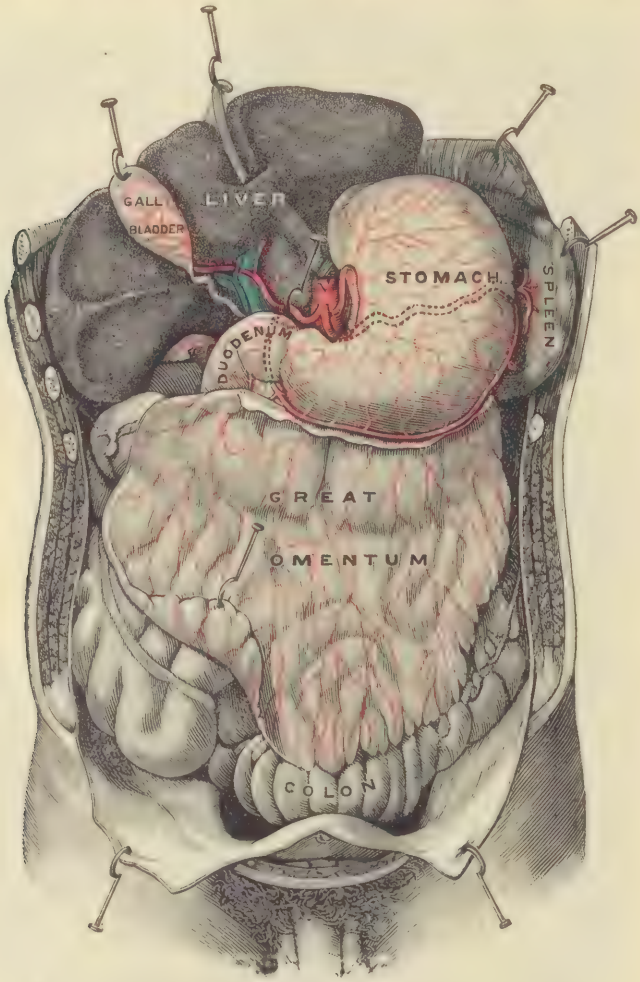


FIG. 861.—The great omentum as seen from the front. (Testut.)

tissue there are fatty masses. Its **root** (*radix mesenterii*), the part connected with the vertebral column, is narrow, about six inches in length, and directed obliquely from the left side of the second lumbar vertebra to the right sacro-iliac symphysis (Fig. 863). Its **intestinal border** is vastly broader (measures about twenty feet); and here its two layers separate so as to enclose the intestine, and form its peritoneal coat. Its breadth, between its vertebral and intestinal border, is about eight inches. Its **upper border** is continuous with the under surface of the transverse mesocolon; its **lower border**, with the peritoneum covering the caecum and

ascending colon. The origin of the mesentery *above* is just beyond the termination of the duodenum, and it terminates below in the angle formed by the junction of the ileum and the colon. It serves to retain the small intestines in their position, and contains between its layers the **mesenteric vessels** and **nerves**, the **lymphatic vessels** and **mesenteric glands**. These glands number from 50 to 150. Occasionally **congenital mesenteric openings** exist. In stout individuals the mesentery contains much fat. If there is much fat the mesentery is not translucent; if there is little fat it is translucent. It may be actually transparent above and translucent or opaque below. The thinnest part of the mesentery is above. As we descend it becomes thicker, because of the presence of fat, fibrous ligament, and muscular tissue.[1]

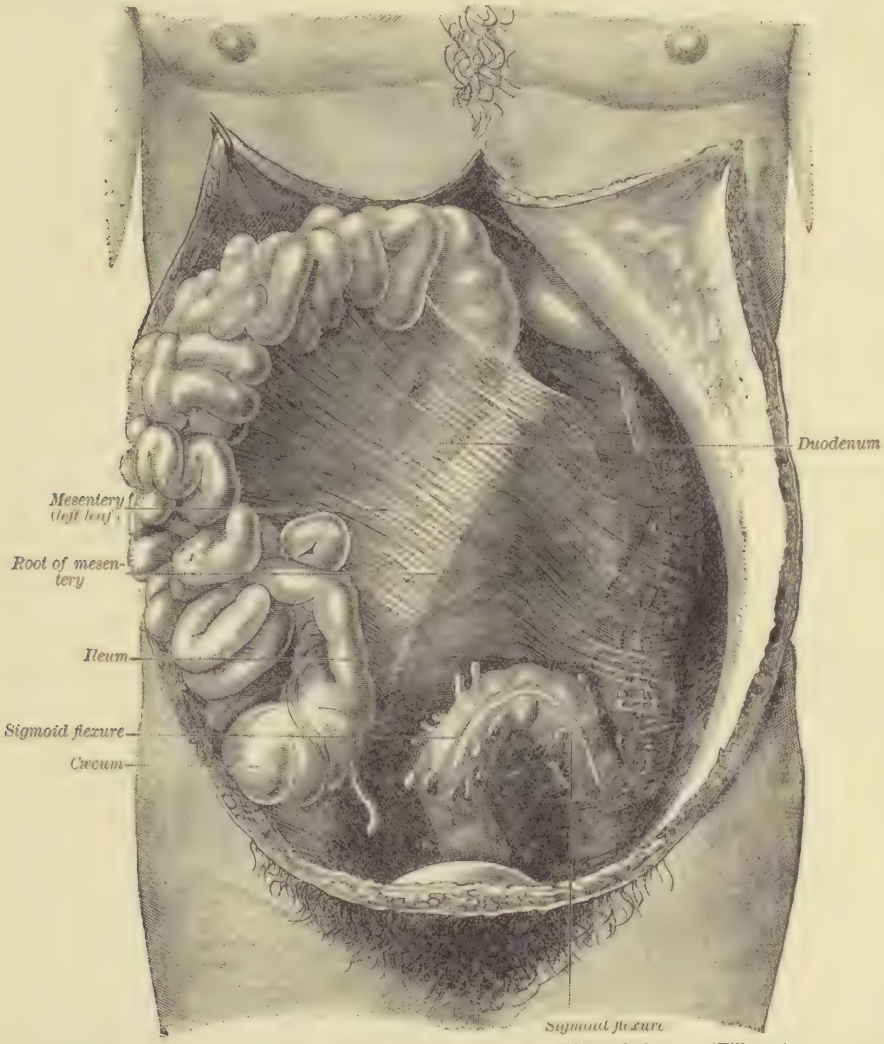


FIG. 862.—Mesentery. Small intestine pushed to the right and above. (Tillaux.)

In most cases the peritoneum covers only the front and sides of the ascending and descending parts of the colon. Sometimes, however, these are surrounded by the serous membrane and attached to the posterior abdominal wall by an **ascending mesocolon** (*mesocolon ascendens*) and a **descending mesocolon** (*mesocolon descendens*)

[1] Intestinal Localization. By Geo. H. Monks, Annals of Surgery, October, 1903.

respectively. At the place where the transverse colon turns downward to form the descending colon, a fold of peritoneum is continued to the under surface of the Diaphragm opposite the tenth and eleventh ribs. This is the **phreno-colic ligament** (*ligamentum phrenicocolicum*); it passes below the spleen, and serves to support this organ, and therefore it has received the second name of **sustentaculum lienis.**

The **Transverse Mesocolon** (*mesocolon transversum*) (Fig. 863) is a broad fold, which connects the transverse colon to the posterior wall of the abdomen. It is formed by the two ascending or posterior layers of the great omentum, which, after

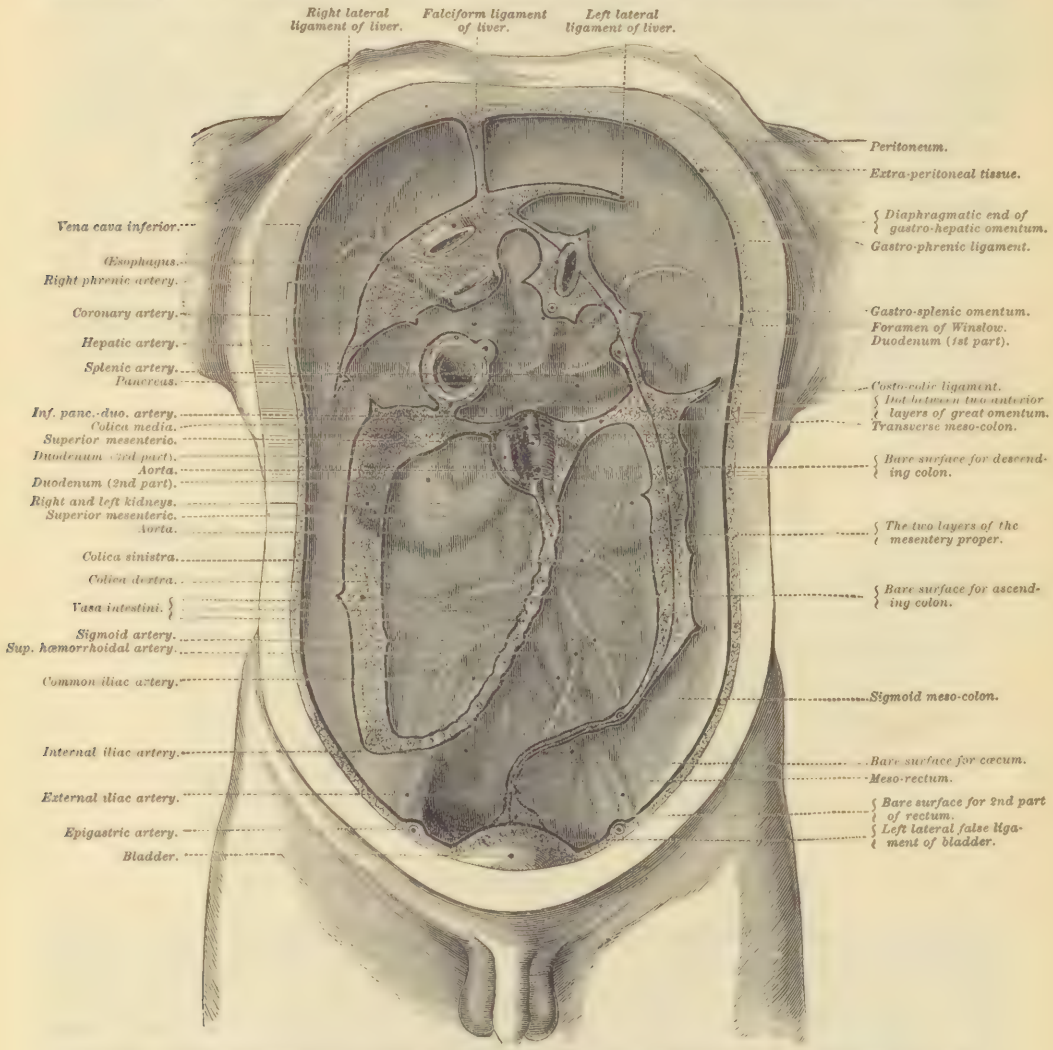


FIG. 863.—Diagram devised by Dr. Delépine to show the lines along which the peritoneum leaves the wall of the abdomen to invest the viscera.

separating to surround the transverse colon, join behind it, and are continued backward to the spine, where they diverge in front of the duodenum. This fold contains between its layers the vessels which supply the transverse colon.

The **Sigmoid Mesocolon** (*mesocolon sigmoideum*) (Fig. 863) is the fold of peritoneum which retains the sigmoid flexure in connection with the left iliac fossa. This portion of intestine remains always freely movable.

The **Mesorectum** is really only the lower portion of the sigmoid mesocolon. It is the name formerly given to the narrow fold which, according to the old defini-

tion of the rectum, connects the upper part of the rectum with the front of the sacrum. It contains the superior hemorrhoidal vessels.

The **Mesoappendix** or **Mesentery of the Vermiform Appendix** (*mesenteriolum processus vermiformis*) (Fig. 867) is a double fold of peritoneum which usually completely surrounds the vermiform appendix. It is usually described as a triangular fold, and at a glance it appears so, but Jonnesco points out that it has four borders: a *superior* or mesenteric border; a *right* or cæcal; a *left* or free, and an *inferior* or appendicular. One of the borders is often extremely short. The upper surface of the mesoappendix is continuous with the lower surface of the mesentery proper and with the left or internal fold of the peritoneum covering the caecum. The lower surface of the mesoappendix is continuous with the right or external fold of peritoneum covering the caecum. As a rule, the entire appendix is covered with peritoneum; sometimes a portion of the base is uncovered, and this portion of the diverticulum is then extraperitoneal. The tip is never extraperitoneal. The mesoappendix may be attached to the entire length of the appendix, but, as a rule, the tip is free. In fact, one-third, one-half, or two-thirds may be free and occasionally the mesoappendix is a mere vestige. Between the two peritoneal layers of the mesoappendix there is connective tissue, and often fat. In the connective tissue are the **appendicular blood-vessels, lymph-vessels,** and **nerves.**

The **Appendices Epiploicae** are small pouches of the peritoneum filled with fat and situated along the colon and upper part of the rectum. They are chiefly appended to the transverse colon.

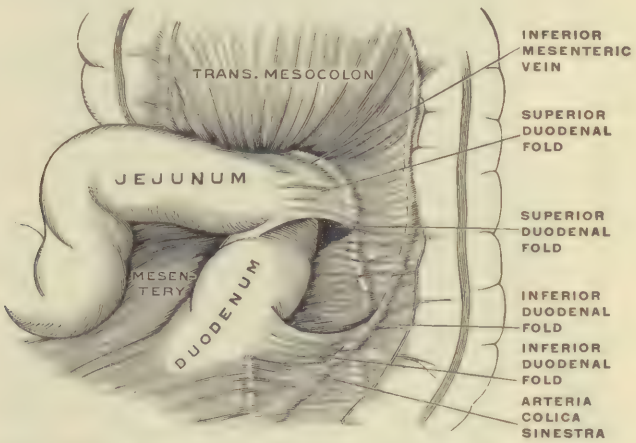


FIG. 864.—Superior and inferior duodenal fossa. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Retro-peritoneal Fossae.—In certain parts of the abdominal cavity there are recesses of peritoneum forming *culs-de-sac* or pouches, which are of surgical interest in connection with the possibility of the occurrence of retro-peritoneal hernia. One of these, which was previously described, is the **lesser sac of the peritoneum** (Figs. 853 and 855), which may be regarded as a recess of peritoneum through the foramen of Winslow, in which a hernia may take place, but there are several others, of smaller size, which require mention.

These recesses of fossae may be divided into three groups, viz.: (1) the **duodenal fossae**; (2) **pericæcal fossae**; and (3) the **intersigmoid fossa.**

1. **Duodenal Folds and Fossae.**—Moynihan has described no less than nine fossae as occurring in the neighborhood of the duodenum. Three of these are fairly constant. Five of the fossae are here considered. (*a*) The **inferior duodenal fossa** or **fossa of Treitz** (Fig. 864) is the most constant of all the peritoneal fossae in this region, being present in from 70 to 75 per cent. of cases. It is situated

opposite the third lumbar vertebra on the left side of the ascending portion of the duodenum. The opening into the fossa is directed upward, and is bounded by a thin, sharp fold of peritoneum with a concave free upper margin. This fold of peritoneum is called the **inferior duodenal fold** (*plica duodenomesocolica*). The tip of the index finger introduced into the fossa under the fold passes some little distance up behind the ascending or fourth portion of the duodenum. One margin of the fold is attached to the ascending portion of the duodenum; another margin is attached to the parietal peritoneum. (*b*) The **superior duodenal fossa** (Fig. 864) is the next most constant pouch or recess, being present in from 40 to 50 per cent. of cases. It often coexists with the inferior one, and its orifice looks downward, in the opposite direction to the preceding fossa. It lies to the left of the ascending portion of the duodenum. It is bounded in front by the **superior duodenal fold** (*plica duodenojejunalis*), which is triangular and has a free semilunar base; to the

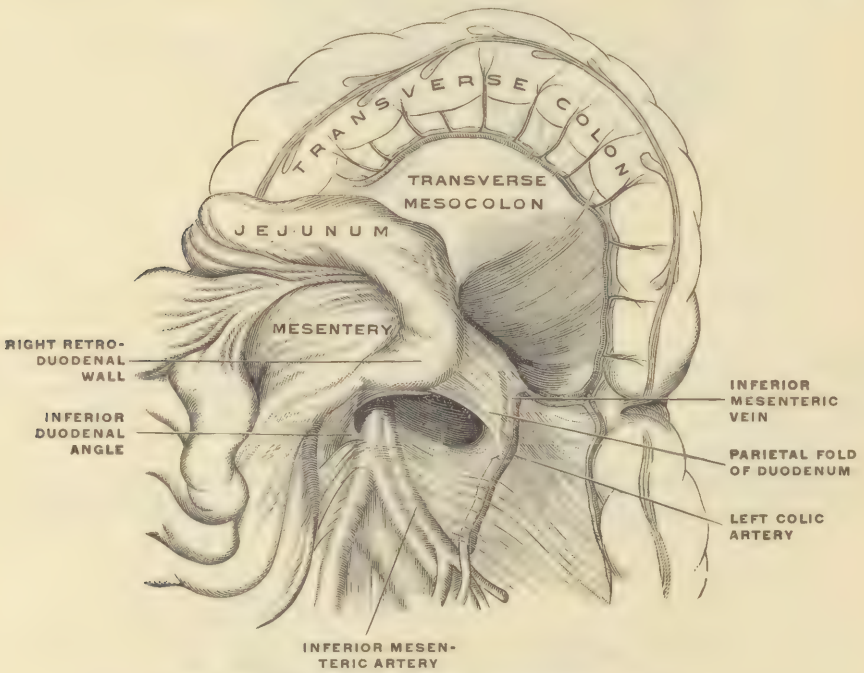


FIG. 865.—Retro-duodenal fossa. (Poirier and Charpy.)

right it is blended with the peritoneum covering the ascending duodenum, and to the left with the peritoneum covering the perirenal tissues. The fossa is bounded in front by the superior duodenal fold; behind by the second lumbar vertebra; to the right by the duodenum. Its depth is 2 cm., and it terminates in the angle formed by the left renal vein crossing the aorta. This fossa is of importance, as it is in relation with the inferior mesenteric vein; that is to say, the vein almost always corresponds to the line of union of the superior duodenal fold with the posterior parietal peritoneum. (*c*) The **duodeno-jejunal fossa** or **mesocolic fossa** (*recessus duodenojejunalis*) is formed where the duodeno-jejunal angle enters the root of the transverse mesocolon. There are two forms: (1) a single fossa and (2) a double fossa. It can be seen by pulling the jejunum downward and to the right, after the transverse colon has been pulled upward. It will appear as an almost circular opening, looking downward and to the right, and bounded by two free borders or folds of peritoneum, the **duodeno-mesocolic ligaments.** The opening admits the little finger into the fossa to the depth of from 2 to 3 cm. The fossa

is bounded above by the pancreas, to the right by the aorta, and to the left by the kidney; beneath is the left renal vein. The fossa exists in from 15 to 20 per cent. of cases, and has never yet been found in conjunction with any other form of duodenal fossa. (*d*) **Paraduodenal fossa** or the **fossa of Landzert** (*recessus duodenojejunalis*) is most distinct in the infant, and is to the left of the ascending portion of the duodenum. The fold of peritoneum to its outer side and above is

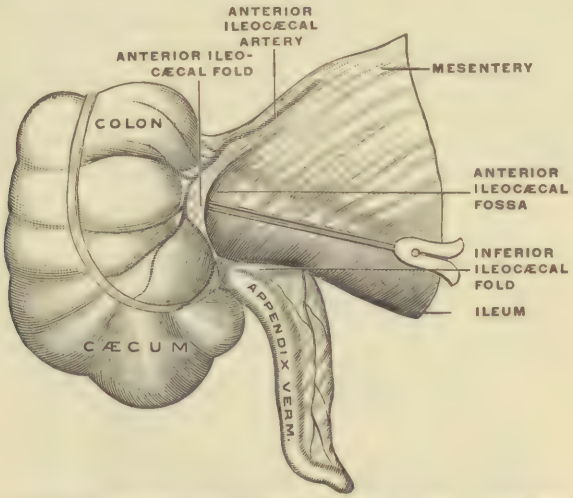


FIG. 866.—Anterior, sometimes called superior, ileo-cæcal fossa. (Poirier and Charpy.)

produced by the inferior mesenteric vein. Its lower limit is a fold called the **mesenterico-mesocolic fold.** (*e*) The **retroduodenal fossa** (Fig. 865) was described in 1893 by Jonnesco. It is a peritoneal *cul-de-sac*, sometimes found behind the horizontal and ascending portions of the duodenum.

2. **Pericæcal Folds and Fossae.**—There are at least three pouches or recesses to be found in the neighborhood of the caecum, which are termed **pericæcal fossae.** (1)

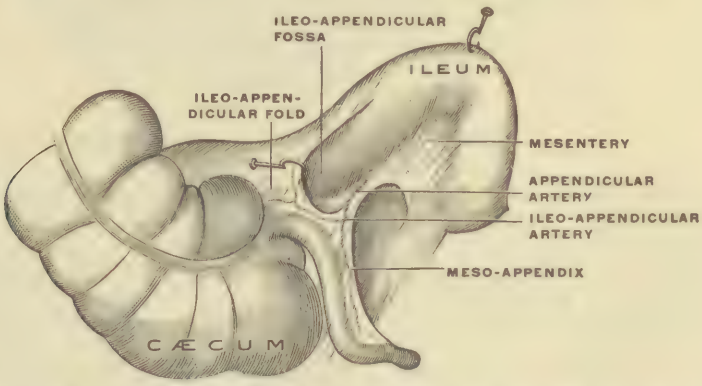


FIG. 867.—Ileo-appendicular or inferior ileo-cæcal fossa. The caecum and ascending colon have been drawn outward and downward, the ileum upward and backward, and the appendix downward. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **ileo-colic fossa** or **superior ileo-cæcal** (*recessus ileocaecalis superior*) (Fig. 866) is formed by a fold of peritoneum, the **ileo-colic fold,** arching over a branch of the ileo-colic artery, which supplies the ileo-colic junction, and appears to be the direct continuation of the artery. The fossa is a narrow chink situated between the ileo-colic fold in front, and the mesentery of the small intestine, the ileum,

and a small portion of the caecum behind. (2) The **ileo-cæcal, inferior ileo-cæcal** or **ileo-appendicular fossa** (*recessus ileocaecalis inferior*) (Fig. 867) is situated behind the angle of junction of the ileum and caecum. It is formed by a fold of peritoneum, the **ileo-cæcal fold** (*plica ileocaecalis*), which Treves called the "bloodless fold." Tuffier denies its non-vascularity, and Lockwood and Rolleston state that it contains fat, muscular fibres, and arteries and veins derived from the appendicular vessels and the anterior and posterior ileo-cæcal vessels.[1] The upper border of the fold is attached to the ileum, opposite its mesenteric attachment, and the lower border, passing over the ileo-cæcal junction, joins the mesentery of the appendix, and sometimes the appendix itself; hence this fold is sometimes called the **ileo-appendicular fold.** Between the ileo-cæcal fold and the mesentery of the vermiform appendix is the **ileo-cæcal fossa.** It is bounded *above* by the posterior surface of the ileum and the mesentery; in *front* and *below* by the ileo-cæcal fold, and *behind* by the upper part of the mesentery of the appendix. (3) The **retro-cæcal** or **retro-colic**

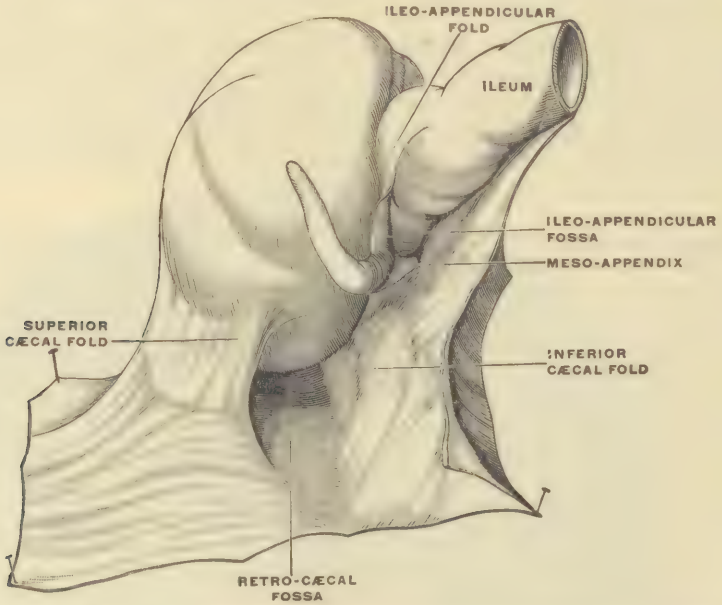


FIG. 868.—The retro-cæcal fossa. The ileum and cæcum are drawn backward and upward. (Souligoux.)

fossae (*recessus retrocaecalis*) (Fig. 868) are situated behind the caecum and ascending colon. There may be no fossa present. There may be one fossa; there are usually two (external and internal retrocolic fossae); occasionally there are more than two.[2] The fossae are brought into view by raising the caecum. According to Berry, one or other of the fossa is present in 30 per cent. of cases. Treves thinks the retrocolic fossae are extremely rare. There may be one fossa (20 per cent. of cases) or two fossae (10 per cent. of cases). If there is but one fossa it is the internal that exists three times as often as the external. The retro-colic space, if present, varies much in size and extent. In some cases it is sufficiently large to admit the index finger and extends upward behind the ascending colon in the direction of the kidney; in others it is merely a shallow depression. The **external retro-colic fossa** is bounded and formed by two folds: one, the **external parieto-colic fold** or the **superior cæcal fold,** which is the outer layer of the ascending mesocolon, and is attached by one edge to the abdominal wall from the lower border of the kidney to the iliac fossa and by the other to the postero-

[1] The Cæcal Folds and Fossae. By Richard J. A. Berry. [2] Ibid.

external aspect of the colon; and the other, the **internal parieto-colic fold** or **inferior cæcal fold,** which is the inner layer of the ascending mesocolon. The **internal retrocolic fossa** is bounded externally by the internal parieto-colic fold, and is bounded internally by the **mesenterico-parietal fold,** which is the insertion of the mesentery into the iliac fossa.

3. **The Intersigmoid Fossa** (*recessus intersigmoideus*).—The intersigmoid fossa is constant in the fœtus and common during infancy, but disappears in a large percentage of cases as age advances. Upon drawing the sigmoid flexure upward, the left surface of the sigmoid mesocolon is exposed, and on it will be seen a funnel-shaped recess of the peritoneum, lying on the external iliac vessels, in the interspace between the Psoas and Iliacus muscles. This is the orifice leading to the fossa intersigmoidea, which lies behind the sigmoid mesocolon, and in front of the parietal peritoneum. This fossa is produced by the incomplete fusion in the fœtus of the descending mesocolon with the parietal peritoneum. The fossa varies in size; in some instances it is a mere dimple, whereas in others it will admit the whole of the index finger.

Any of these fossæ may be the site of a **retro-peritoneal hernia.** The pericæcal fossæ are of especial interest, because hernia of the vermiform appendix frequently takes place into one of them, and may there become strangulated. The presence of these pouches also explains the course which pus has been known to take in cases of perforation of the appendix, where it travels upward behind the ascending colon as far as the Diaphragm.[1]

Surgical Anatomy.—Study of the lymphatics of the peritoneum by Byron Robinson and others shows that *absorption* takes place most rapidly from the region of the Diaphragm, less rapidly but still very actively from the region of the small intestine, slowly from the pelvic region. Clinically we know that pelvic peritonitis is not nearly so dangerous as peritonitis in the small intestine or Diaphragm areas, and that peritonitis in the region of the Diaphragm is the most fatal form of the infection. After *abdominal operations* in infected cases, it is well to elevate the head of the bed (*Fowler's position*), so as to obtain the aid of gravity in draining septic fluids away from the dangerous region and toward the safer region.[2] In areas in which absorption is rapid, protective exudation is not apt to form. In areas in which absorption is slow, inflammatory exudation is apt to circumscribe the area and prevent diffusion. After an operation in a non-infected case, if salt solution has been left in the abdominal cavity because of *shock* or *hemorrhage*, raising the foot of the bed will aid rapid absorption of the fluid by favoring the natural current toward the Diaphragm and hurrying the fluid to a region in which absorption is rapid.

The *great omentum* stores up fat, and, being movable, it is able to pass to different parts of the peritoneal cavity. Dr. Byron Robinson, in his work on the *Peritoneum*, describes its functions as follows: "The omentum is the great protector against peritoneal infectious invasions. It builds barriers of exudates to check infection. It is like a man-of-war, ready at a moment's notice to move to invaded parts. It circumscribes abscesses; it repairs visceral wounds, and prevents adhesions of mobile viscera to the anterior abdominal wall. It resists infectious invasions by typical peritoneal exudates, and not by succumbing to absorbed sepsis. It is a director of peritoneal fluids, a peritoneal drain."

In *abdominal wounds* the omentum often protrudes: This structure frequently constitutes or is part of a *hernia*, and is almost invariably present in umbilical hernia. As a result of *inflammation*, it may become adherent to adjacent structures. *Adhesions* may be of service by matting together the intestines and circumscribing infections. They may be harmful by constricting the bowels and producing obstruction. A portion of the omentum may become adherent to some other part and form a *band*, and under this band the gut may be caught and *strangulated*. Omentum may adhere to and plug a perforation in a hollow viscus, and the surgeon may utilize it for the same purpose, or to cover a raw surface or overlie a suture line. The omentum may be in the surgeon's way while operating. If it is, the patient is placed in the *Trendelenburg position* (pelvis elevated).

Any *tear* or opening found by the surgeon in the great omentum must be closed with sutures, because of the danger that intestine might enter and be caught in such an opening. A tumor cut off from its proper blood-supply, for instance, an ovarian cyst with a twisted pedicle, may continue to receive nourishment from adherent omentum, and gangrene may thus be prevented.

[1] On the anatomy of these fossæ, see the Arris and Gale Lectures by Moynihan, 1899.
[2] George R. Fowler, in Medical Record, April 14, 1900.

The lax character and shifting tendency of the subserous tissue explains the occurrence of *ptosis of the abdominal viscera and kidneys.*

The vast number of nerves in the peritoneum accounts for the profound shock which follows a wound, attends an intraperitoneal calamity, or which develops from infection. An infective process of any portion of the peritoneum produces pain and reflex symptoms (vomiting, abdominal rigidity, intestinal paresis, etc.).

The parietal peritoneum is very sensitive to pain, but not to touch; hence, after injecting a local anæsthetic and opening the abdomen, a fairly satisfactory exploration can be made with the finger.

The intestine, the mesentery, the stomach, the anterior margin of the liver, and the gall-bladder are insensitive, and may be cut or even burned without pain.[1]

Viscera which obtain their innervation purely from visceral nerves are insensitive; those which receive branches from somatic nerves are sensitive (Lennander).

The oblique origin of the mesentery causes this structure to form a sort of shelf. A hemorrhage or extravasation into the abdomen, to the right of the mesentery, tends to flow into the right iliac fossa; one occurring on the left side flows into the pelvis. Monks points out that in flushing the abdominal cavity the tube should not be aimlessly introduced, but should utilize the mesentery on each side of an intestinal loop, to "conduct the tip of the irrigating tube to the bottom of the two fossae."[2] Monks also shows how the mesentery can be utilized to determine the direction of an intestinal loop:

"Now, let us suppose that the surgeon has between his fingers a loop of bowel, and wishes to determine its direction. He knows that one side of the loop is the left side of the intestine, and that the corresponding side of the mesentery, if closely followed down to the mesenteric root, will conduct him into the left fossa; he also knows that the other side of the bowel is its right side, and that the mesentery on that side will conduct him into the right fossa. Now,

FIG. 869.—A loop of intestine, the middle of which is exactly three feet from the end of the duodenum. The gut is of large size. The mesenteric loops are primary, and the vasa recta large, long, and regular in distribution. The translucent spaces (lunettes) between the vessels are extensive. Below, the mesentery is streaked with fat. The veins, which had a distribution similar to the arteries, are for simplicity omitted from this and from the subsequent drawings. (The subject from which the specimen was taken was a male aged forty years, with rather less than the usual amount of fat. The entire length of the intestine was twenty-three feet. (Monks.)

if his finger goes into the great fossa on the left side of the abdomen, after having closely followed the mesentery down to its root and arranged his loop to be parallel with that root, he then knows that the left and right sides of the intestine face to the left and right sides of the abdomen respectively, and that the end of the loop which points downward is the end nearest the ileocæcal valve. He can determine the direction of the gut in a similar way in case his finger enters the right fossa. All this would seem very simple were it not for the twists in mesentery and intestine, which tend to mislead one. A little practice will usually enable one to recognize a twist in the mesentery. This should be untwisted by rotation of the gut, after which the direction is determined by another palpation of the mesenteric root."[3]

[1] Dr. K. E. L. Lennander, in Mittheilungen aus dem Grenzgebrieten der Medecin und Chirurgie, 1902, Band x., Heft 1, 2.

[2] Intestinal Localization, by George H. Monks, Annals of Surgery, October 1903.

[3] Annals of Surgery, October, 1903.

The studies made of the arrangement and variations of the loops of the mesenteric vessels by Dr. Thomas Dwight[1] have been utilized and expanded by Dr. George H. Monks in laying down

FIG. 870.—A loop of intestine at six feet. As compared with Fig. 869 the gut is somewhat smaller. The vascularity of the intestine and mesentery is less. Secondary loops are a prominent feature. The vasa recta are smaller. The lunettes are also present, but are not so large as in Fig. 869. (The subject was a male aged about thirty-five years, with an average amount of fat. The entire length of the intestine was twenty feet. (Monks.)

rules for the determination of the exact portion of small intestine which may be in the surgeon's hand.[2] His views are as follows:

"*General Vascularity of the Mesentery near the Bowel.*—Opposite the upper part of the bowel the mesenteric vessels are distinctly larger than opposite any other part of it. These vessels grow

FIG. 871.—A loop of intestine at nine feet. The secondary loops are large; the vasa recta are somewhat irregular and show branches. No lunettes are present, and the mesentery is streaked with fat, and is, therefore, somewhat opaque. (The specimen was taken from the same subject which furnished Fig. 869. (Monks.)

smaller and smaller as we pass downward until the lower third of the gut is reached, where they remain about the same size as far as the ileo-cæcal valve. The arrangement of the mesenteric

[1] Reports of the Meeting of American Anatomists, 1897.

[2] Annals of Surgery, 1903.

vessels has some features which intimately concern the subject in hand, and which I shall describe with some detail. Diagrammatically speaking, the main branches of the superior mesenteric artery unite with each other by means of loops, which are called for convenience 'primary loops;' in some parts of the tube, 'secondary loops,' and even, occasionally, 'tertiary loops' are super-

FIG. 872.—A loop of intestine at twelve feet. The vessels are smaller. The primary loops are lost in the fat, but secondary and even tertiary loops are visible. The vasa recta are shorter, more irregular, and branching. (The specimen came from the same subject which furnished Figs. 869 and 871.) (Monks.)

imposed upon these. From these loops little straight vessels—the vasa recta already referred to—run to the bowel, upon which they ramify, alternating, as a rule, as to the side of the intestine which they supply. The mesenteric veins are arranged in a manner somewhat similar to the arteries.

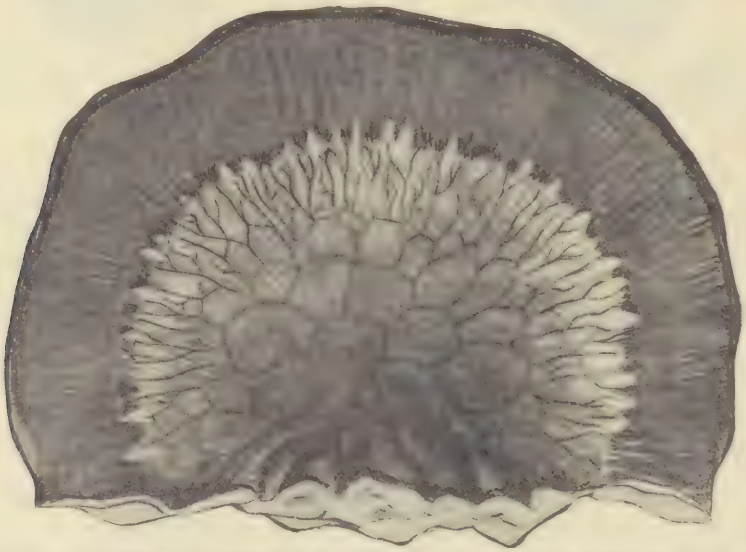


FIG. 873.—A loop of intestine at seventeen feet. The mesentery is opaque, and small tabs of fat begin to appear along the mesenteric border of the gut. The vessels are represented by a somewhat complicated network, and are seen with difficulty in the thick fat of the mesentery. (The specimen came from the subject which furnished Figs. 869, 871, and 872.) (Monks.)

"*The Loops of the Mesenteric Vessels* (Figs. 869, 870, 871, 872, and 873).—Opposite the upper part of the bowel there are only primary loops. Occasionally a secondary loop appears, but it is small and insignificant as compared with the primary loops, which are large and quite regular. As we proceed down the bowel secondary loops become more numerous, larger, and approach

nearer to the bowel than the primary loops in the upper part. As a rule, secondary loops become a prominent feature at about the fourth foot. As we continue farther downward, the secondary loops (and, possibly, tertiary loops) become still more numerous and the primary loops smaller, the loops all the time getting nearer and nearer to the gut. Opposite the lower part of the gut the loops generally lose their characteristic appearance, and are represented by a complicated network.

"*The Vasa Recta.*—Opposite the upper part of the intestine the vasa recta are from three to five centimetres long, when the loop of small intestine to which they run is lifted up so as to put them gently on the stretch. They are straight, large, and regular, and rarely give off branches in the mesentery. In the lower third they are very short, being generally less than one centimetre in length. Here they are less straight, smaller, less regular, and have frequent branches in the mesentery."

FIG. 874.—A loop of intestine at twenty feet. The gut appears to be thick and large. The mesentery is quite fat and opaque, and large and numerous fat-tabs are present. The vessels, which are complicated, are seen with difficulty, and are represented by mere grooves in the fat. (The subject was a stout woman, and the entire length of the gut was twenty-one feet.) (Monks.)

The translucency of the mesentery varies greatly; in some parts it may be almost transparent, in others almost or quite opaque. Its thinnest part is above. It is thickened below by fat, fibrous tissue, and muscular tissue. In very fat subjects it may be impossible to see the vessels (Monks). According to Monks, if a loop is raised and looked at against the light close to the gut "little transparent spaces" are seen between the vasa recta, and even in the thickest mesentery; some of these "lunettes" exist along the upper portion of the intestine. As we descend in our examination, they grow smaller and become fatty, and disappear about the eighth foot of the intestine.[1] The same author shows that the mesentery of the lower third of the intestine, except in the thinnest individuals, contains little collections of fat on the border of the mesentery, which project toward the bowel and may even extend upon it.

THE STOMACH (VENTRICULUS) (Figs. 861, 875, 876, 878, 879).

The stomach is the principal organ of digestion. It is the most dilated part of the alimentary canal, and is situated between the termination of the oesophagus (*cardia*) and the commencement of the small intestine. Its form varies because of varied conditions, but, as a rule, it is somewhat pyriform. It is placed, in part, immediately behind the anterior wall of the abdomen and beneath the Diaphragm. Viewing the stomach from in front it appears that the right margin of the oesophagus is continued downward as the upper two-thirds of the lesser curvature of the stomach, the remaining third of this border bending sharply

[1] Annals of Surgery, October, 1903.

backward and to the right, to complete the smaller curvature (Fig. 875). The greater curvature begins at the left border of the termination of the oesophagus in a somewhat acute angle; it then passes upward and to the left to the under surface of the Diaphragm, with which it lies in contact for some distance, and then sweeps downward with a convexity to the left, and, continued across the middle line of the body, finally turns upward and backward, to terminate at the commencement of the small intestine. It will thus be seen that the stomach may be divided into a **fundus** (*fundus ventriculi*) and a **middle portion** or **body** (*corpus ventriculi*). The portion of the body adjacent to the cardia being known as the **cardiac portion** (*pars cardiaca*), the long axis of which is directed downward with a slight inclination forward and to the right; and the portion adjacent to the pylorus being known as the **pyloric portion** (*pars pylorica*), the long axis of which is horizontal with an inclination backward. Of the two openings, the **cardiac orifice**, by which it communicates with the oesophagus, is situated slightly to the left of the middle line of the body to the right of the fundus, or dilated upper extremity of the stomach, and is directed downward; the other, the **pyloric orifice**, by which it communicates with the small intestine, is on a lower plane, close to the right of the mid-line, and looks directly backward.

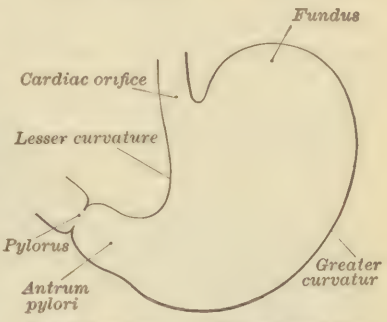


FIG. 875.—Diagrammatic outline of the stomach.

Relations of the Stomach.—The stomach lies in a space or chamber called the **stomach chamber** (Fig. 861). When distended the viscus completely fills the space. When the stomach is empty it lies upon the floor of the chamber, and the portion it has vacated is occupied by the transverse colon, which ascends in front of the stomach and finally gets above it. The **anterior wall** of the stomach chamber is formed by the anterior abdominal wall. The **roof** is formed by the under surface of the Diaphragm and the under surface of the left lobe of the liver. The **floor** is formed by the left suprarenal capsule and the summit of the left kidney, the gastric face of the spleen, the upper surface of the pancreas, the transverse mesocolon, and the colon.[1]

Surfaces.—The stomach has two surfaces, called **anterior** and **posterior surfaces**, and two borders, termed the **greater** and **lesser curvatures.**

In regard to the so-called anterior and posterior surfaces of the stomach, it must be borne in mind that these names are not strictly correct, as the anterior surface has a certain amount of inclination upward and the posterior downward.

The Anterior, Upper or Parietal Surface (*paries anterior*).—The anterior surface is directed forward and to the right side. It has a somewhat flattened appearance when the stomach is empty, but when it is full the surface becomes convex. It is in relation with the Diaphragm; the thoracic wall formed by the anterior parts of the seventh, eighth, and ninth ribs of the left side; the left lobe of the liver; and the anterior abdominal wall. Between the part covered by the liver and that covered by the left ribs there is a triangular segment of the anterior wall of the stomach, which is in contact with the abdominal wall and is the only part of the stomach which is visible when the abdominal wall is removed and the viscera allowed to remain *in situ*. Its area is about 40 sq. cm., and it is of great importance to the surgeon, as the stomach can readily be reached in this situation. Occasionally the transverse colon may be found lying in front of the lower part of the anterior surface of the stomach. The whole of this surface of the stomach is covered by peritoneum.

[1] Prof. Birmingham in Prof. Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

The Posterior, Lower or Visceral Surface (*paries posterior*).—The posterior surface of the stomach is directed backward and to the left. It is in relation with the Diaphragm, the gastric surface of the spleen, the left suprarenal capsule, the upper part of the left kidney, the anterior surface of the pancreas, the splenic flexure of the colon, and the ascending layer of the transverse mesocolon. These structures form a shallow concavity or **bed**, on which this surface of the stomach rests. The transverse mesocolon intervenes between the stomach and the duodenojejunal junction and commencement of the ileum. Its greater curvature is in relation with the transverse colon and has attached to it the anterior two layers of the great omentum. Almost the whole of this surface is covered with peritoneum, but behind the cardiac orifice there is a small portion of the stomach which is uncovered by peritoneum and is in contact with the Diaphragm and frequently with the upper portion of the left suprarenal capsule.

The Lesser Curvature (*curvatura ventriculi minor*).—The lesser curvature of the stomach extends between the cardiac and pyloric orifices along the right border of the organ. It descends in front of the left crus of the Diaphragm, along the left side of the eleventh and twelfth dorsal vertebrae, and then turning to the right it crosses the first lumbar vertebra and ascends to the pylorus. It gives attachment to the two layers of the gastro-hepatic omentum, between which blood-vessels and lymphatics pass to reach the organ.

The Greater Curvature (*curvatura ventriculi major*).—The greater curvature of the stomach is directed to the left, and is four or five times as long as the lesser curvature. Starting from the cardiac orifice, it forms an arch to the left with its convexity upward, the highest point of which is on a level with the costal cartilage of the sixth rib of the left side. It then passes nearly straight downward, with a slight convexity to the left, as low as the costal cartilage of the ninth rib, and then turns to the right to end at the pylorus. As it crosses the median line the lowest edge of the greater curvature is about two fingers' breadth above the umbilicus. The lower part of the greater curvature gives attachment to the two anterior layers of the great omentum, between which layers vessels and lymphatics pass to the organ.

The Cardia (Fig. 876).—The cardia is the point at which the oesophagus enters the stomach wall. The opening is called the **cardiac orifice** or the **oesophageal opening**. At the cardia the circular muscular fibres constitute a sphincter.

The Cardiac Orifice (Fig. 876).—The cardiac orifice is the opening by which the oesophagus communicates with the stomach. It is therefore sometimes termed the **oesophageal opening**. It is the most fixed part of the stomach, and is situated about two inches below the highest part of the fundus on a level with the body of the tenth or eleventh dorsal vertebra to the left and a little in front of the aorta. This would correspond on the anterior surface of the body to the articulation of the seventh left costal cartilage to the sternum. It is placed far off from the surface and is at least four inches back of the seventh left chondro-sternal articulation.

The Pylorus (Fig. 876).—The pylorus is the point at which the stomach passes into the duodenum. The opening of communication is called the **pyloric orifice**. At the pylorus the muscular fibres constitute a sphincter.

The Pyloric Orifice (Fig. 876).—The pyloric orifice communicates with the duodenum, the aperture being guarded by a valve (Fig. 877). Its position varies with the movements of the stomach. When the stomach is empty the pylorus is situated just to the right of the median line of the body, on a level with the upper border of the first lumbar vertebra. On the anterior surface of the body its position would be indicated by a point one inch below the tip of the ensiform cartilage and a little to the right. As the stomach becomes distended the pylorus moves to the right, and in a fully distended stomach may be situated two or three inches to the right of the median line. The direction of the pylorus is upward and to

the right, which position prevents "the weight of the gastric contents bearing directly on the sphincter apparatus."[1] The pylorus is on a somewhat higher level than the lowest point of the stomach. Near the pylorus the stomach frequently exhibits a slight dilatation, which is named the **antrum of the pylorus** (*antrum pyloricum*). The pylorus is indicated by a constriction, the direction of which is circular. The pylorus lies upon the neck of the pancreas behind. Above it and in front of it is the liver.

The size of the stomach varies considerably in different subjects. When moderately distended its greatest length, from the top of the fundus to the lowest part of the greater curvature, is from ten to twelve inches and its diameter at the widest part from four to five inches. The distance between the two orifices is three to six inches, and the measurement from the anterior to the posterior wall three and a half inches. Its weight, according to Clendinning, is about four ounces and a half, and its capacity in the adult male is five to eight pints. The stomach of a newborn child holds about one ounce.

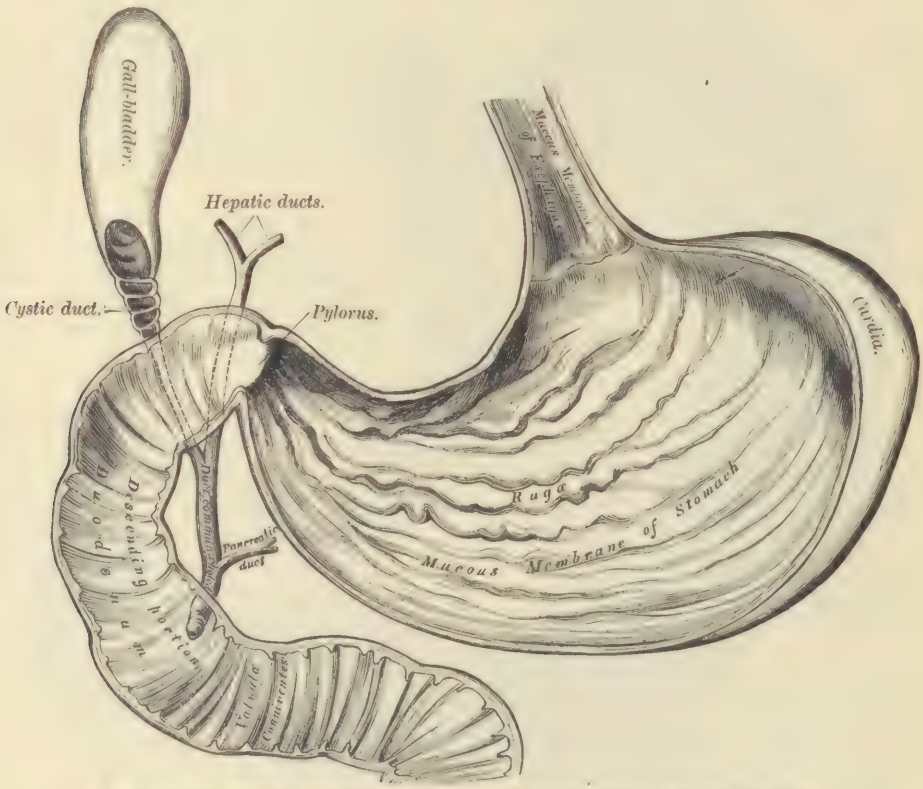


FIG. 876. The mucous membrane of the stomach and duodenum with the bile-ducts.

Alterations in Position. —There is no organ in the body the position and connections of which present such frequent alterations as the stomach. *When empty*, it lies at the back part of the abdomen, some distance from the surface, and is in the left hypochondriac region and the left portion of the epigastric region. Its fundus is directed upward and backward toward the Diaphragm. The long axis of the viscus is nearly horizontal. Its pyloric end is directed upward and backward, is situated close to or very slightly to the right of the middle line, covered in front by the left lobe of the liver, and being on a level with the first lumbar vertebra. When empty, the stomach assumes a more or less cylindrical form, especially noticeable at its pyloric end. The entire viscus is small and contracted, and the pyloric region resembles the intestine. *When the stomach is distended*, its surfaces, which are flattened when the organ is empty, become convex and the shape becomes pyriform. The viscus becomes very oblique and approaches the vertical,

[1] W. J. Mayo, Medical Record, June 11, 1904.

its long axis being downward, forward, and to the right. The greater curvature is elevated and carried forward, so that the anterior surface is turned more or less upward and the posterior surface downward, and the stomach is brought well against the anterior wall of the abdomen. Its fundus expands and rises considerably above the level of the cardiac orifice; in doing this the Diaphragm is forced upward, contracting the cavity of the chest; hence the dyspnœa complained of, from inspiration being impeded. The apex of the heart is also tilted upward; hence the oppression in this region and the palpitation experienced in extreme distention of the stomach. The left lobe of the liver is pushed to the right side. When the stomach becomes distended the change in the position of the pylorus is very considerable; it is shifted to the right, some two or three inches from the median line, and lies under cover of the liver, near the neck of the gall-bladder. In consequence of the distention of the stomach the lesser *cul-de-sac* bulges over the pylorus, concealing it from view, and causing it to undergo a rotation, so that its orifice is directed backward. When the stomach is greatly distended its lower border may enter the umbilical and the left lumbar regions. *During inspiration* the stomach is displaced downward by the descent of the Diaphragm, and it is elevated by the pressure of the abdominal muscles during *expiration*. *Pressure from without*, as from tight lacing, pushes the stomach down toward the pelvis. In fact, in the female, because of tight lacing, the stomach may be to the left side of the vertebral column and nearly vertical in direction, the lower portion being sharply angled upward toward the pylorus, which lies underneath the liver. Besides the angulation, the lower end, the stomach may have a median constriction, and there may even be an hour-glass stomach. The descent of the stomach from tight lacing may cause the pancreas to become nearly vertical. In disease the position and connection of the stomach may be greatly changed, from the accumulation of fluid in the chest or abdomen, or from alteration in size of any of the surrounding viscera.

Variations according to Age.—In an early period of development the stomach is vertical, and in the newborn child it is more vertical than later on in life, as owing to the large size of the liver it is more pushed over to the left side of the abdomen, and the whole of the anterior surface is covered by the left lobe of this organ.

On looking into the pyloric end of the stomach, the mucous membrane is found projecting inward in the form of a circular fold, the **pyloric valve** (Fig. 877), leaving a narrow circular aperture, about half an inch in diameter, by which the stomach communicates with the duodenum.

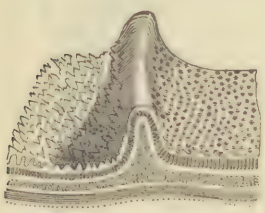


Fig. 877.—Diagrammatic view of the coats of the stomach, duodenum, and pylorus. The ridge is the pyloric valve. (Allan Thomson.)

The Pyloric Valve (*valvula pylori*) (Fig. 877).—The pyloric valve is formed by a reduplication of the mucous membrane of the stomach, containing numerous circular fibres, which are aggregated into a thick circular ring, the **pyloric sphincter** (*m. sphincter pylori*); the longitudinal fibres and serous membrane being continued over the fold without assisting in its formation (Fig. 877). The pylorus is normally kept closed by the action of this aggregation of circular fibres which constitutes the Sphincter muscle. During the early stage of digestion it remains closed, but after a time opens now and then. The opening becomes more frequent and the period of patency is prolonged as digestion advances.

The diameter of the pylorus is uncertain. It is usually said to be half an inch. But it is closed when the pylorus is at rest, and it can certainly dilate even in a child to at least an inch and let bodies of this size pass through.

The Peritoneum.—The **great omentum** comes off from the greater curvature of the stomach and passes to the transverse colon. The **lesser omentum** comes off from the lesser curvature and passes to the liver. The **gastro-splenic ligament** or **omentum** passes from the under surface of the stomach just below the greater curvature to the spleen. A fold of peritoneum passes up from the stomach along the left side of the oesophagus to the Diaphragm. This is the **gastro-phrenic ligament.**

Supports of the Stomach.—The stomach lies on the bed of the stomach chamber, which was described on p. 1269. The great omentum gives no support to the stomach, neither does the gastro-splenic ligament, because of the movability of the spleen. The **lesser omentum** does give support to the stomach and so do

the **gastro-phrenic ligament** and the **hepato-duodenal ligament.** The two chief points of support are the attachment of the oesophagus to the Diaphragm and the fixation of the duodenum to the front of the vertebral column.

Structure.—The wall of the stomach consists of four coats: **serous, muscular, areolar,** and **mucous,** together with vessels and nerves.

The Peritoneal or Serous Coat (*tunica serosa*).—The peritoneal or serous coat covers the entire surface of the organ, excepting along the greater and lesser curvatures, at the points of attachment of the greater and lesser omenta; at each curvature the two layers of peritoneum leave a small triangular space, to which the peritoneum is not attached, although it is attached in front of it and back of it. Along these spaces the nutrient vessels and nerves pass. On the posterior surface of the stomach, close to the cardiac orifice and below and to the left of it, there is a smaller triangular area uncovered by peritoneum, where the organ is in contact with the under surface of the Diaphragm, and it may be

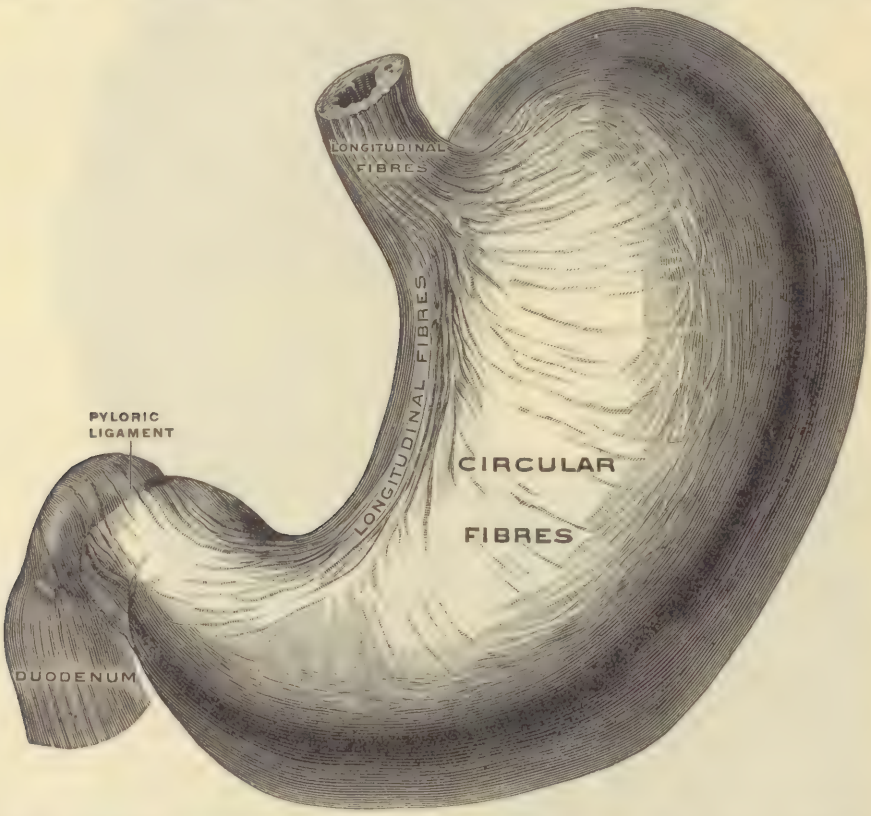


FIG. 878.—The superficial muscular layer of the stomach, viewed from above and in front. (Spalteholz.)

with the left suprarenal body and the summit of the left kidney. When the stomach is moderately distended this **uncovered area** measures about one and a half inches from above downward, and about two inches from before backward. At the left angle of this uncovered area the insertion of the great omentum begins. At the right angle the gastric artery reaches the stomach.

The Muscular Coat (*tunica muscularis*) (Figs. 878 and 879).—The muscular coat is situated immediately beneath the serous covering, to which it is closely connected. It consists of three sets of fibres—**longitudinal, circular,** and **oblique.**

The **Longitudinal Fibres** (*stratum longitudinale*) are most superficial; they are continuous with the longitudinal fibres of the oesophagus, radiating in a stellate

manner from the cardiac orifice. They are most distinct along the curvatures, especially the lesser, but are very thinly distributed over the surfaces. At the pyloric end they are more thickly distributed, and continuous with the longitudinal fibres of the small intestine. The bundles of longitudinal muscle-fibre on the upper and lower surfaces of the pylorus are particularly firm and distinct, and are called the **pyloric ligaments** (*ligamenta pylori*).

The **Circular Fibres** (*stratum circulare*) form a uniform layer over the whole extent of the stomach, except the fundus, beneath the longitudinal fibres. At the pylorus they are most abundant, and are aggregated into a circular ring or **sphincter** (*m. sphincter pylori*), which projects into the cavity, and forms, with the fold of mucous membrane covering its surface, the **pyloric valve** (*valvula pylori*) (Fig. 877). They are continuous with the circular fibres of the oesophagus.

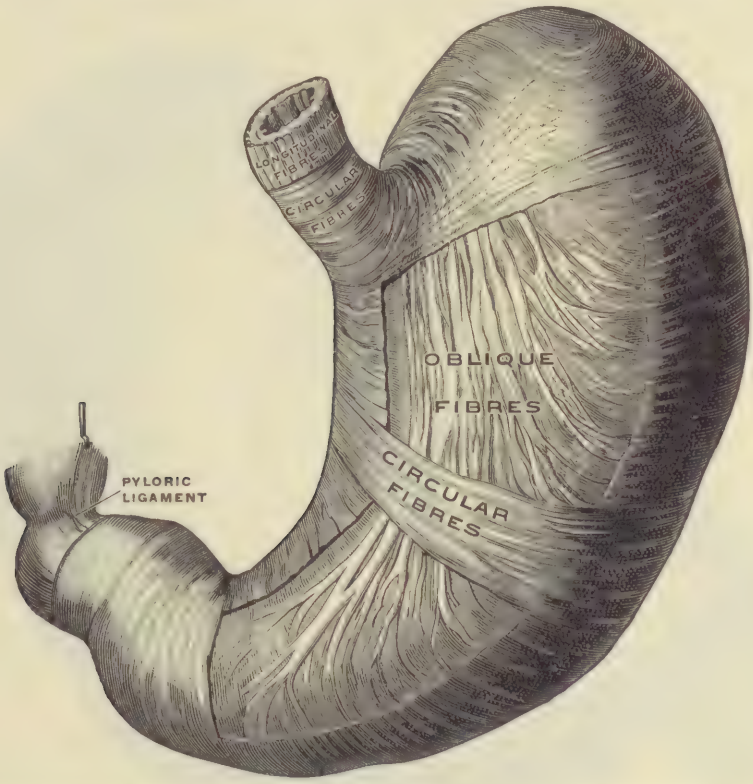


FIG. 879.—The middle and deep muscular layer of the stomach, viewed from above and in front. (Spalteholz.)

The **Oblique Fibres** (*fibrae obliquae*) arise at the left side of the cardia from the circular fibres of the oesophagus. The fibres pass down in the anterior and posterior walls. Those of the anterior wall are parallel to the lesser curvature and almost reach the pylorus. Those of the posterior wall are more nearly transverse to the long axis of the stomach (Spalteholz). These fibres gradually assume the direction of the circular fibres and terminate in them. The layer of oblique fibres is beneath the circular layer. Certain oblique muscular fibres encircle the fundus of the stomach in a series of rings.

The Areolar or Submucous Coat (*tela submucosa*).—The areolar or submucous coat consists of loose, filamentous, areolar tissue, connecting the mucous and muscular layers. It supports the blood-vessels previous to their distribution to the mucous membrane; hence it is sometimes called the **vascular coat.**

The Mucous Membrane (*tunica mucosa*) (Figs. 880, 881, and 882).—The mucous membrane is thick; its surface smooth, soft, and velvety. In the fresh state it is of a pinkish tinge at the pyloric end, and of a red or reddish-brown

Fig. 880. Mucous membrane of the stomach, from the pars pylorica, viewed from the surface. × 5. (Spalteholz.)

color over the rest of the surface. In infancy it is of a brighter hue, the vascular redness being more marked. It is thin at the cardiac extremity, but thicker toward the pylorus. During the contracted state of the organ it is thrown into numerous plaits or **rugae** (*plicae mucosae*) (Figs. 880 and 882 *A*), which for the most part have a longitudinal direction, and are most marked toward the lesser end of the stomach and along the greater curvature, and which contain also submucous tissue. These folds are entirely obliterated when the organ becomes distended. A constant fold exists at the pylorus (Fig. 877). It is called the **pyloric valve**, and is produced by the presence beneath it of the Sphincter muscle.

Besides the large folds or rugae and the pyloric valve, there are numerous small elevations of mucous membrane known as **gastric areas** (*areae gastricae*), which are partly separated from each other by furrows and which vary greatly in shape (Fig. 880). According to Spalteholz, each one of these elevations has an area of several square millimetres.

Fig. 881.—Mucous membrane of the stomach, from the pars pylorica, viewed from the surface. ×16. (Spalteholz.)

Structure of the Mucous Membrane.—When examined with a lens the inner surface of the mucous membrane presents a peculiar honeycomb appear-

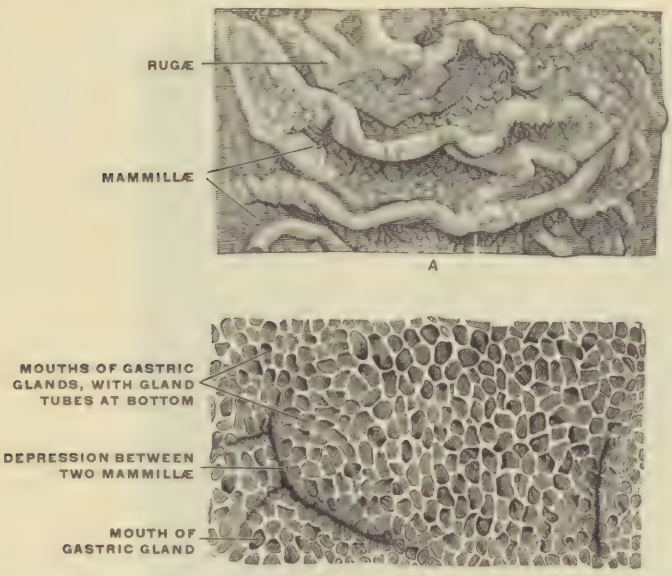


Fig. 882.—The mucous membrane of the stomach. *A*, natural size; *B*, magnified 25 diameters. In *A* the rugæ and the mammillated surface are shown. In *B* the gland mouths (foveolæ gastricæ), with the gland tubes leading from some of them, and the ridges separating the mouths (plica villosæ) are seen. (Cunningham.)

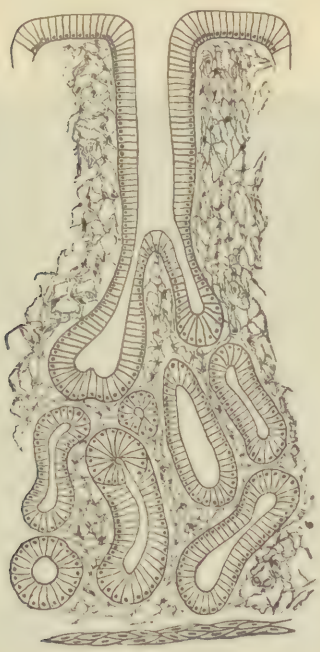


Fig. 883.—Pyloric gland.

Fig. 884.—Peptic gastric gland

ance, from being covered with small shallow depressions or **alveoli** (*foveolæ gastricæ*) (Figs. 881 and 882, *B*) of a polygonal or hexagonal form, which vary

from $\frac{1}{100}$ to $\frac{1}{200}$ of an inch in diameter, and are separated by slightly elevated ridges (*plicae villosae*). The ridges are most distinct at the pylorus. These foveolae are within the areae gastricae. The ridges on section resemble villi. In the bottom of the alveola are seen the orifices of minute tubes, the **gastric glands** (Fig. 882 *B*), which are placed perpendicularly side by side throughout the entire substance of the mucous membrane. The surface of the mucous membrane of the stomach is covered by a single layer of **columnar epithelium**; it lines the alveoli, and also for a certain distance the mouths of the gastric glands. This epithelium commences very abruptly at the cardiac orifice, where the cells suddenly change in character from the **stratified epithelium** of the oesophagus. The cells are elongated, and consist of two parts, the inner or attached portions being granular, and the outer or free parts being clear and occupied by a mucoalbuminous substance.

The Gastric Glands.—The gastric glands are of three kinds: the **true gastric glands**, the **pyloric glands**, and the **cardiac glands**.

The **True Gastric Glands** (Fig. 884) are called also the **oxyntic glands**, the **fundus glands**, and the **peptic glands** (*glandulae gastricae propriae*). They are distributed throughout the entire fundus and body, and may be found even at the pylorus. They are tubular in character, and are formed of a delicate basement-membrane, lined with epithelium. The basement-membrane consists of flattened transparent endothelial cells, with processes which extend between and support the epithelium. Into the crypt of a true gastric gland three or more caecal tubes, branched or unbranched, empty. The duct, however, in these glands is shorter than in the other variety, sometimes not amounting to more than one-sixth of the whole length of the gland; it is lined throughout by columnar epithelium. At the point where the terminal tubes open into the duct, and which is termed the **neck**, the epithelium alters, and consists of short columnar or polyhedral, granular cells, which almost fill the tube, so that the lumen becomes suddenly constricted, and is continued down as a very fine channel. They are known as the **chief** or the **peptic** or the **central cells of the glands**, and furnish pepsin. Between these cells and the basement-membrane are found other darker granular-looking cells, studded throughout the tubes at intervals, and giving it a beaded or varicose appearance. These are known as the **parietal** or **oxyntic cells**. Some of the parietal cells empty directly into the lumen of the gland by secretory capillaries; others empty by a duct which divides into secretory capillaries. The parietal cells secrete the acid of the gastric juice. Between the glands the mucous membrane consists of a connective-tissue framework with lymphoid tissue. In places this latter tissue, especially in early life, is collected into little masses, which to a certain extent resemble the solitary glands of the intestine, and are by some termed the **lenticular glands of the stomach**. They are not, however, so distinctly circumscribed as the solitary glands.

The **Pyloric Glands** (*glandulae pyloricae*) (Fig. 883) are the branched tubular glands, and secrete mucus.

They are placed most plentifully about the pylorus, but between the fundus and pylorus, in the region known as the **transitional** or **intermediate zone**, both true gastric glands and pyloric glands are found. Each pyloric gland consists of two or three short, closed tubes opening into a common duct, the external orifice of which is situated at the bottom of an alveolus. The caecal tubes are wavy, and are of about equal length with the duct. The tubes and duct are lined throughout with epithelium, the duct being lined by columnar cells continuous with the epithelium lining the surface of the mucous membrane of the stomach, the tubes with shorter and more cubical cells, which are finely granular. The pyloric glands branch more frequently, are more curved in direction, and open into deeper foveolae than the true gastric glands (Szymonowicz). They contain only chief or peptic cells and do not possess parietal cells.

The **Cardiac Glands** are found about the oesophageal orifice. They resemble the pyloric glands.

Beneath the mucous membrane, and between it and the submucous coat, is a thin stratum of involuntary muscular fibre (*muscularis mucosae*), which in some parts consists only of a single longitudinal layer; in others, of two layers, an inner circular, and an outer longitudinal.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** supplying the stomach are—the **gastric** or **coronary**, the **pyloric** and the **right gastro-epiploic branch of the gastro-duodendal**, the **left gastro-epiploic** and **vasa brevia** from the splenic. The gastric artery passes to the lesser curvature just below the cardia. It gives off the **oesophageal branch**, and passes from left to right along the lesser curvature of the stomach beneath the peritoneum between the two layers of the lesser omentum and upon the wall of the stomach. It may in this course be a single vessel, or may divide into two branches, which run along each side of the lesser curvature (Fig. 886). If there is a single artery it gives off six or seven descending branches to the anterior wall and about the same number to the posterior wall of the stomach. It also gives branches to the lesser omentum. If two **vascular arches** form, one gives branches to the anterior wall of the stomach, the other to the posterior wall, and both to the lesser omentum. The termination of the gastric anastomoses with the pyloric branch or two rami of the pyloric branch of the hepatic artery. From each arch six or seven **descending branches** come off to the anterior and posterior

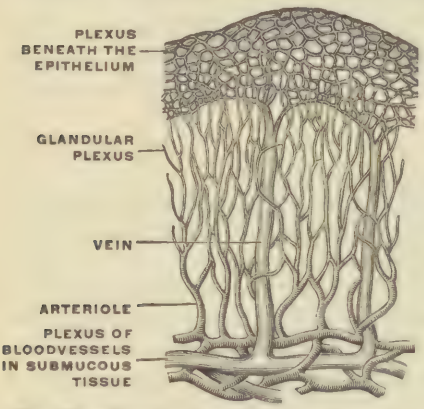


Fig. 885.—Terminations of the blood-vessels in the mucous membrane of the stomach. (Poirier and Charpy.)

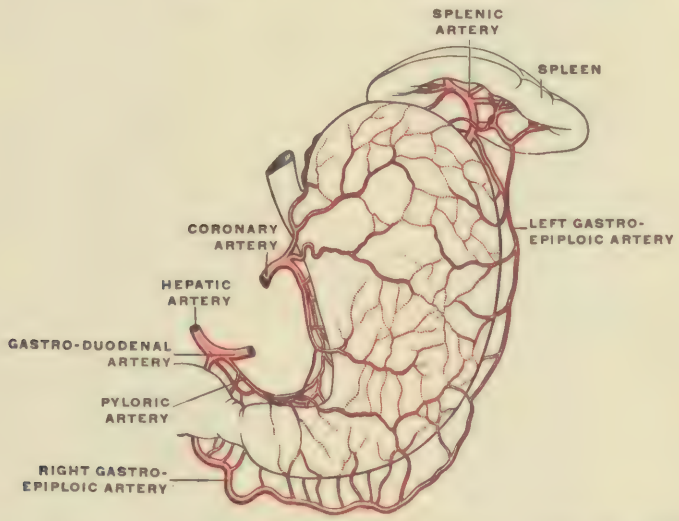


Fig. 886.—The arteries of the anterior surface of the stomach. (Poirier and Charpy.)

walls of the stomach. The **gastro-duodenal artery** is given off by the hepatic. From the gastro-duodenal comes the right gastro-epiploic. The left gastro-epiploic comes from the splenic. The **right gastro-epiploic artery** passes from right to left in the gastro-colic omentum below the greater curvature of the

stomach. The **left gastro-epiploic artery** passes forward in the gastro-splenic ligament to below the greater curvature of the stomach, and passes from left to right along that curvature in the gastro-colic omentum, and joins the right gastro-epiploic artery. The gastro-epiploic arteries are not upon but are distinctly below the stomach wall. From them numerous gastric branches are sent to the anterior and posterior walls of the stomach, and they anastomose with branches of the gastric and pyloric. Vasa brevia, four or five in number, arise from the splenic, pass forward in the gastro-splenic ligament, and supply the fundus. The arteries of the stomach lie first beneath the peritoneum, but soon enter the muscular coat, supply it, pierce it, ramify in the submucous coat, and are finally distributed to the mucous membrane. The arrangement of the vessels in the mucous membrane is somewhat peculiar (Fig. 885). The arteries break up at the base of the gastric tubules into a plexus of fine capillaries which run upward between the tubules, anastomosing with each other, and ending in a plexus of larger capillaries, which surround the mouths of the tubes and also form hexagonal meshes around the alveoli.

The capillary networks about the glands give origin to the **veins**. The various small **veins unite and form a plexus in the submucous tissue** (Fig. 885). From this plexus come branches which pass through the muscular coat and terminate in the **right gastro-epiploic branch of the superior mesenteric**, the **left gastro-epiploic branch of the splenic**, the veins to the splenic which correspond to the **vasa brevia arteries**, and the **gastric** or **coronary branch of the portal**.

The **lymphatics** (Figs. 507 and 508) arise in the mucous membrane and terminate in a network in the submucous tissue. From this network trunks arise which perforate the muscular coat in the regions of the curvatures and terminate in the sero-muscular collecting trunks.[1]

According to Cunéo, there are three groups of these collectors. Those from the lesser curvature pass to the point where the gastric artery reaches the stomach and enter the **glands along the gastric artery**. Those from the greater curvature pass from left to right and enter the **sub-pyloric glands**. Those from the fundus pass from right to left and end in the **splenic glands**. Cunéo further pointed out that the region drained by the collectors of the lesser curvature is divided from the others by the line shown in Fig. 507. This division exists on both surfaces of the stomach. The limit between the collectors which drain into the splenic glands and those which drain into the sub-pyloric glands is also shown in Fig. 507. Along the lesser curvature the lymph-glands are few in number and are limited to the pyloric region, and the lymph-vessels are placed directly upon the stomach wall. The lymph-glands and vessels are not upon but are *distinctly below* the greater curvature.

The subserous and submucous lymphatic networks of the stomach communicate with the corresponding networks of the oesophagus, but in all probability do not communicate with the networks of the duodenum.

The **nerves of the stomach** come from the **right** and **left pneumogastrics** and from the **solar plexus of the sympathetic**. The left pneumogastric passes to the front of the stomach, and the right nerve passes to the back, and they unite with the fibres of the sympathetic. The fibres thus formed are mostly non-medullated. They form **Auerbach's plexus** in the muscular coat between the circular and longitudinal fibres and **Meissner's plexus** in the submucous coat, the latter plexus being formed by fibres from the former. Fibres from Meissner's plexus ramify in the submucous coat and terminate in the muscularis mucosae and the mucous membrane, branches passing to the gastric glands and to just beneath the epithelium.

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

Movements and Innervation of the Stomach.

Movements.—It has apparently been demonstrated that the stomach "consists of two parts physiologically distinct."[1] The cardiac portion of the stomach is a food reservoir in which salivary digestion continues; the pyloric portion is the seat of active digestion. Cannon affirms that there are no peristaltic waves in the cardiac portion, but that as the food passes from the pyloric portion into the intestines, tonic contraction of the muscles of the fundus squeezes the contents of the pyloric portion. Moritz, Levan, and Cannon assert that muscular activity is chiefly manifested in the pyloric portion. In this portion during digestion there is a succession of peristaltic waves, which waves in the human being pass at the rate of three per minute (Moritz). Cannon points out that the efficiency of peristalsis in mixing the food depends upon the contraction of the pyloric sphincter. So long as the sphincter holds, each constriction-ring coursing from the middle to the end of the stomach presses the food into a blind pouch; the food, unable to escape through the pyloric opening, has as its only outlet the opening in the advancing ring. This is an admirable device for bringing the food under the influence of the glandular secretions of the pyloric region. For, as a constriction occurs, the secreting surface enclosed by the narrowed muscular ring is pressed close around the food within the ring. As the constriction advances it continually presses inward fresh glandular tissue, and furthermore, as the constriction advances, a thin stream of food is continuously forced back through the ring and thus past the mouths of the glands. The old view that the pyloric sphincter only opens after several hours' continuance of the process of digestion and that then the stomach empties at once is incorrect. It is emptied in small amounts which escape at frequent intervals because of the intermittent opening of the pylorus. When the pylorus is open a wave of peristalsis forces some of the material from the stomach into the duodenum (Cannon).

Cannon is of the opinion that the pyloric sphincter is caused to relax by the presence of free hydrochloric acid in the pyloric portion of the stomach. When the pylorus is open acid chyme passes into the duodenum and acid in the duodenum causes the pylorus to close. The acid in the duodenum causes a flow of alkaline pancreatic juice and the acid is neutralized. "As the neutralizing proceeds the stimulus closing the pylorus is weakened until the acid in the stomach again opens the sphincter."[2]

Innervation.—The stomach, as previously shown, has nervous plexuses in its walls and is connected to the brain, spinal cord, and sympathetic system. It is probable that gastric peristalsis is due to a local reflex from Auerbach's plexus (Magnus), the local reflex being inaugurated by local stimulation, which stimulation, in the words of Bayliss and Starling, "produces excitation above and inhibition below the excited spot."[3] Reversed peristalsis cannot occur if "the reflex mechanism is intact" (Cannon). Cannon in the previously quoted article states that cutting the vagus or splanchnic nerves does not destroy the reflex mechanism of the pylorus, but, nevertheless, it is markedly affected by the central nervous system.

Surface Form (see p. 1271).—The cardiac orifice corresponds to the articulation of the seventh left costal cartilage with the sternum. The pyloric orifice of the empty stomach is in a vertical line drawn from the right border of the sternum, two and a half or three inches below the level of the sterno-xiphoid articulation. According to Braune, when the stomach is distended, the pylorus moves considerably to the right, as much sometimes as three inches. The fundus of the stomach reaches, on the left side, as high as the level of the sixth costal cartilage of the left side, being a little below and behind the apex of the heart. The portion of the distended stomach which is in contact with the abdominal walls, and is therefore accessible for opening in the operations of gastrotomy and gastrostomy, is represented by a triangular space, the base of which is formed by a line drawn from the tip of the tenth costal cartilage on the left side to the tip of the ninth costal cartilage on the right, and the sides by two lines drawn from the extremity of the eighth costal cartilage on the left side to the ends of the base line.

Surgical Anatomy.—Operations on the stomach are frequently performed, ulcers are excised, malignant growths are removed with the associated lymphatic involvement, the entire stomach may be removed for cancer, etc. By "*gastrotomy*" is meant an incision into the stomach for the removal of a foreign body, or the arrest of hemorrhage or for exploration, the opening being immediately afterward closed—in contradistinction to "*gastrostomy*," the making of a more or less permanent fistulous opening. *Gastrotomy* is probably best performed by an incision in the linea alba, especially if the foreign body is large. The cut may reach from the ensiform cartilage to the umbilicus. The incision may be made over the body itself, where this can be felt, or by one of the incisions for gastrostomy, to be mentioned shortly. The peritoneal cavity is opened, and the point at which the stomach is to be incised decided upon. This portion is then brought out of the abdominal wound and sponges carefully packed around. The stomach is now opened by a transverse incision and the foreign body extracted. The wound in the stomach is then closed by Lembert sutures—*i. e.*, by sutures passed through the peritoneal,

[1] Walter B. Cannon, Medical News, May 20, 1905. [2] Ibid. [3] Ibid.

muscular and submucous coats in such a way that the peritoneal surfaces on each side of the wound are brought into apposition. *Gastrostomy* was formerly done in two stages by the *direct* method. The first stage consisted in opening the abdomen, drawing up the stomach into the external wound, and fixing it there; and the second stage, performed from two to four days afterward, consisted in opening the stomach. The operation is now done by a *valvular* method. The following plan is known as the Ssabanejew-Frank operation. An incision is commenced opposite the eighth intercostal space, two inches to the left of the median line, and carried downward for three inches. By this incision the fibres of the Rectus muscle are exposed and these are separated from each other in the same line. The posterior layer of the sheath, the transversalis fascia and the peritoneum, are then divided, and the peritoneal cavity is opened. Instead of the above incision, the curved incision of Fenger can be made at the margin of the left costal cartilages. The anterior wall of the stomach is now seized and drawn out of the wound and a silk suture passed through its submucous, muscular, and serous coats at the point selected for opening the viscus. This is held by an assistant so that a long conical diverticulum of the stomach protrudes from the external wound, and the parietal peritoneum and the posterior layer of the sheath of the rectus are sutured to the base of the cone. A second incision is made through the skin, over the margin of the costal cartilage, *above and a little to the outer side* of the first incision. If Fenger's incision were used, the second incision should be above the margin of the cartilages. With a pair of dressing forceps a track is made under the skin through the subcutaneous tissue from the one opening to the other and the diverticulum of the stomach is drawn along this track by means of the suture inserted into it; so that its apex appears at the second opening. A small perforation is now made into the stomach through this protruding apex and its margin carefully and accurately sutured to the margin of the external wound. The remainder of this incision and the whole of the first incision are then closed in the ordinary way and the wound dressed.

In cases of *gastric ulcer*, *perforation* sometimes takes place, and this was formerly regarded as an almost fatal complication. In the present day, by opening the abdomen and closing the perforation, which is generally situated on the anterior surface of the stomach, a considerable percentage of cases are cured, provided the operation is undertaken within twelve to fifteen hours after the perforation has taken place. The opening is best closed by bringing the peritoneal surfaces on either side into apposition by means of Lembert sutures.

Pylorectomy or excision of the pylorus is performed, particularly for early cancer, but is also done for cicatricial stricture and for ulcer. The mortality after operation for cancer was, until recently, very great, but of late years it has been notably reduced, though it is still much higher than that which follows operation for any non-malignant condition.

In operating for cancer, bear in mind Cunéo's study of the lymphatics (page 806). These observations indicate that the fundus and two-thirds of the greater curvature are free from lymphatic involvement in pyloric cancer.[1] In every operable case of cancer of the pylorus the entire lesser curvature must be removed up to the gastric artery (Mikulicz's point), and the greater curvature must be removed to the left of the involved glands (Hartmann's rule).

Gastro-enterostomy is an operation which establishes a fistulous communication between the stomach and jejunum. The operation is often called *gastro-jejunostomy*. The opening may be made upon either the anterior or the posterior wall of the stomach, between the cardia and the seat of pyloric disease. The operation is employed for stricture of the pylorus (benign or malignant), and occasionally for ulcer of the stomach.

Loreta's operation is digital divulsion of the pylorus for cicatricial stricture, the stomach being incised transversely near the pylorus to admit the finger, and the wound in the stomach being sutured after division has been effected. The operation has been abandoned, because contraction recurs.

Pyloroplasty, or the Heineke-Mikulicz operation, displaced Loreta's operation. In this procedure an incision is made through the stricture in the direction of the long axis of the stomach and bowel. By making traction on each side of the incision, the longitudinal wound assumes a vertical direction, and sutures are inserted so as to close the wound in a vertical line. The method of pyloroplasty devised by Finney, of Baltimore, makes a large permanent opening at the most dependent part of the stomach, and is the most satisfactory method of which we are possessed.[2]

Total gastrectomy is the removal of the entire stomach. It is only used for cancer. It was first performed by Conner, of Cincinnati. The first successful operation was done by Schlatter, of Zurich, in 1898. A number of successes have been reported. It is a justifiable operation only in a case in which almost the entire stomach is cancerous, in which the viscus is movable, in which there are no secondary deposits, and no irremovable diseased glands.

Gastro-gastrostomy is an operation employed in hour-glass stomach. In this operation an anastomosis is made between the pyloric and cardiac ends of the stomach.

[1] William J. Mayo, Annals of Surgery, March, 1904.
[2] Johns Hopkins Hospital Bulletin, July, 1902.

Gastroplication is the operation of suturing the stomach wall into folds or reefs, in order to lessen its size. It is employed in some cases of gastric dilatation.

Gastroptosis is a condition in which the stomach is displaced downward. In some of these cases the greater curvature almost reaches the level of the symphysis pubis, and the lesser curvature is midway between the umbilicus and ensiform cartilage. The condition is usually associated with *enteroptosis* and *movable kidney* (nephroptosis). In this condition the gastro-hepatic omentum and the gastro-phrenic ligament are pulled upon and lengthened. The best operation for gastroptosis was devised by Beyea. He applies sutures so as to make folds in and thus shorten the stretched ligament and omentum. Thus the stomach is elevated to its proper position, and its mobility is not lessened, as it is in other operations which suture it to the abdominal wall.

THE SMALL INTESTINE (INTESTINUM TENUE).

The small intestine is a convoluted tube, extending from the pylorus to the ileo-caecal valve, where it terminates in the large intestine. It fills up the greater part of the abdominal cavity and of the pelvic cavity. It is about twenty feet in length,[1] and gradually diminishes in size from its commencement to its termination. The diameter of the duodenum is almost two inches; the diameter of the lower portion of the small intestine is little more than one inch. It is contained in the central and lower part of the abdominal cavity, and is surrounded above and at the sides by the large intestine; a portion of it extends below the brim of the pelvis and lies in front of the rectum; it is in relation, in front, with the great omentum and abdominal parietes; and connected to the spine by a fold of peritoneum, the **mesentery** (p. 1257). The small intestine is divisible into three portions —the **duodenum**, the **jejunum**, and **ileum**.

The Duodenum (Figs. 887, 892, 893, 894, 895).

The duodenum has received its name from being about equal in length to the breadth of twelve fingers (ten inches). It is the shortest, the widest, and the most fixed part of the small intestine, being closely and firmly attached to the posterior abdominal wall. It does not possess a mesentery. Somewhat more than the upper half of the duodenum is placed in the epigastric region; the remainder is in the umbilical region. The duodenum, with the exception of the ascending portion, is to the right of the median line. Its course presents a remarkable curve, which in the adult, as regards the greater part of its extent, is horseshoe-shaped, though sometimes, in consequence of the transverse portion being very short or altogether wanting, it partakes more of the character of the letter V. The opening of the horseshoe being directed upward and to the left. In children up to the age of about seven the duodenum is annular. The two extremities of the duodenum are nearly on the same level, the exit being slightly lower than the entrance. The two ends are about two inches apart; and between them it describes a regular curve embracing the head of the pancreas, the neck of which lies between the two extremities of the ring.

In the adult the course of the duodenum is as follows: commencing at the pylorus the direction of the first portion depends upon the amount of distention of the stomach and therefore upon the position of the pylorus. When the stomach is empty and the pylorus is situated at the right of the upper border of the first lumbar vertebra, it is nearly horizontal and transverse; but where the stomach is distended, in consequence of the alteration of the position of the pylorus to the right the proximal end of the duodenum also becomes altered in position, while the

[1] Treves states that in one hundred cases the average length of the small intestine in the adult male was 22 feet 6 inches, and in the adult female 23 feet 4 inches; but that it varies very much, the extremes in the male being 31 feet 10 inches in one case and 15 feet 6 inches in another, a difference of over 15 feet. He states that he has convinced himself that the length of the bowel is independent, in the adult, of age, height, and weight.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

distal end remains fixed and the direction of this portion of the bowel is now antero-posterior. Whether directed transversely or antero-posteriorly, it reaches

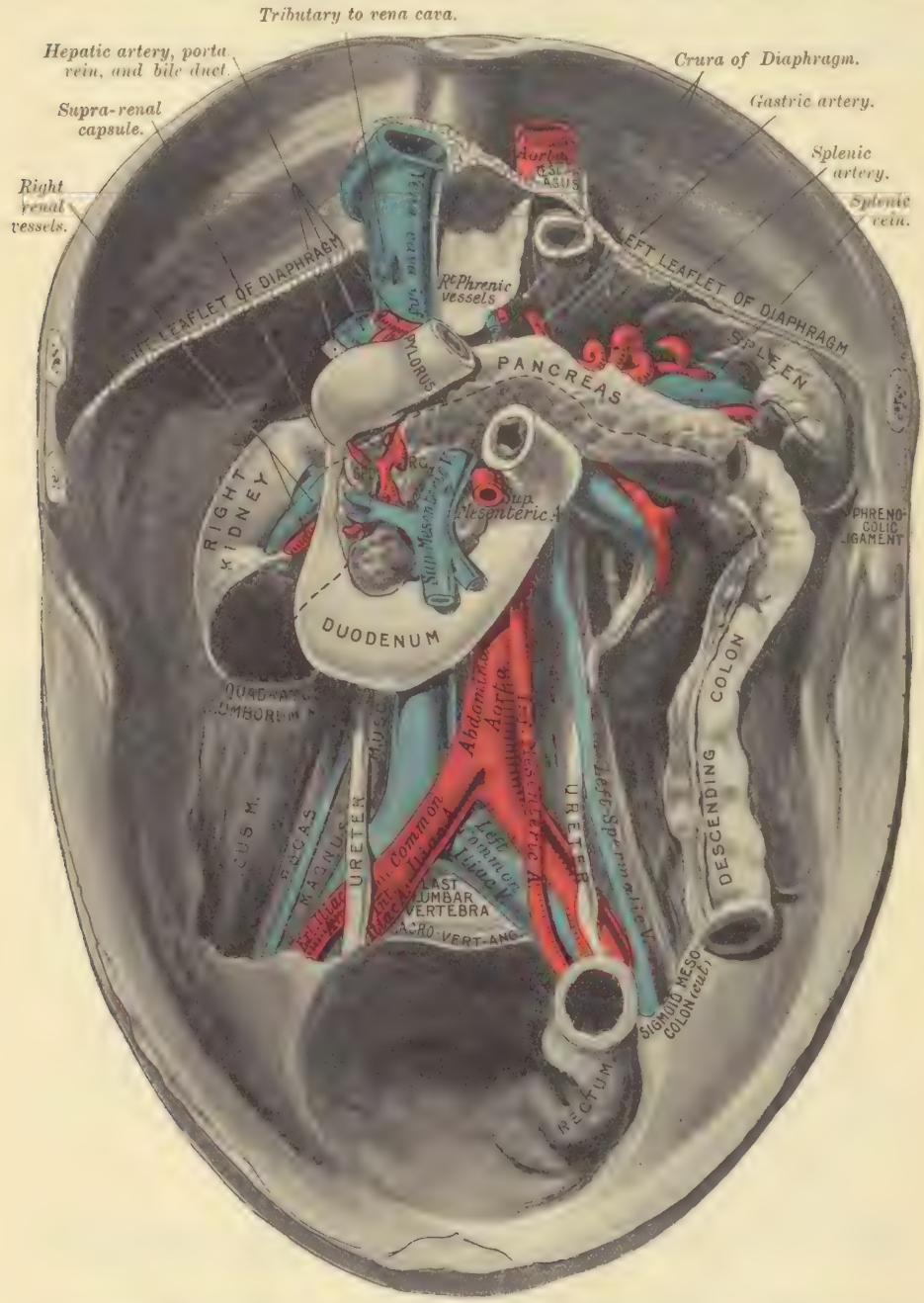


FIG. 887.—Relations of duodenum, pancreas, and spleen. (From a cast by Professor Birmingham.[1])
The dotted line represents the line of attachment of the transverse mesocolon.

the under surface of the liver, where it takes a sharp curve and descends along the right side of the vertebral column, for a variable distance, generally to the body of

[1] In the subject from which the cast was taken the left kidney was lower than normal.

the fourth lumbar vertebra. It now takes a second bend, and passes across the front of the vertebral column from right to left and finally ascends on the left side of the vertebral column and aorta to the level of the upper border of the second lumbar vertebra and there terminates in the jejunum. As it unites with the jejunum it often turns abruptly forward, forming the **duodeno-jejunal angle**. Prof.

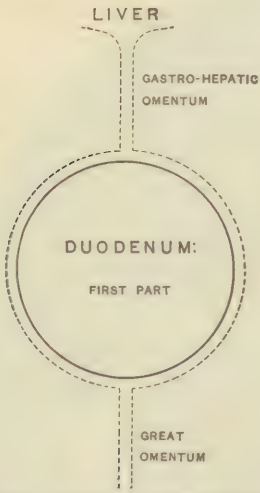


FIG. 888.—Diagram of cross-section of the first part of the duodenum, to show its peritoneal relations. (Gerrish.)

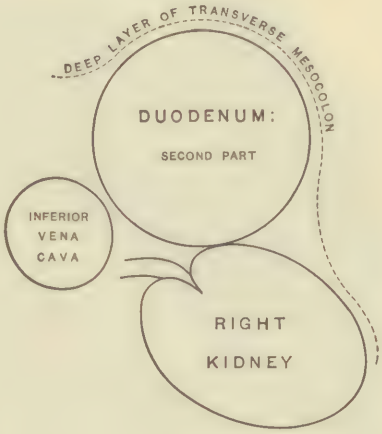


FIG. 889.—Diagram of cross-section of the second part of the duodenum, to show its peritoneal relations. (Gerrish.)

Birmingham points out that the incomplete ring formed by the duodenum does not lie throughout in the same plane. "Its greater part is placed in a transverse vertical plane; the middle portion bends strongly backward, around the right side of the vena cava, and lies almost in a sagittal plane."[1] From the above description

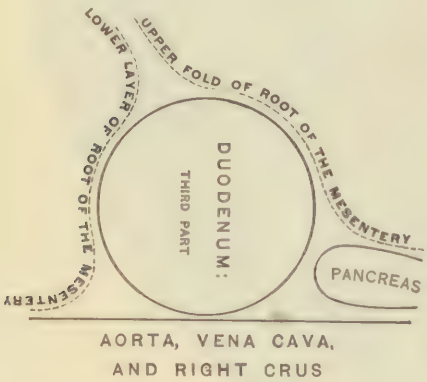


FIG. 890.—Diagram of the third part of the duodenum, to show its peritoneal relations. (Gerrish.)

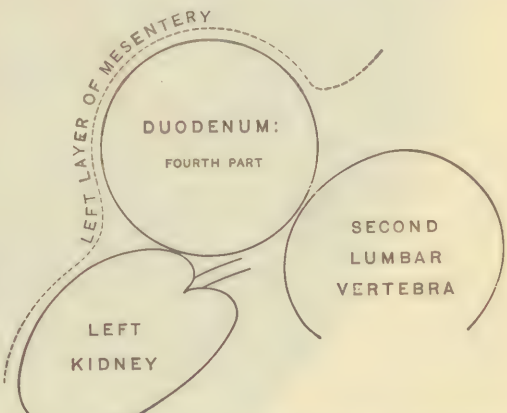


FIG. 891.—Diagram of the fourth part of the duodenum, to show its peritoneal relations. (Gerrish.)

it will be seen that the duodenum may be divided for purposes of description into four portions—**superior, descending, transverse** and **ascending**.

The **First or Superior Portion** (*pars superior*) (Figs. 887, 892, and 894) is very variable in length, but is usually estimated as being about two inches. Beginning at the pylorus, it ends at the level of the neck of the gall-bladder.

[1] Prof. Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

When the stomach is empty this portion of the duodenum is horizontal and transverse; when the stomach is distended it extends from before backward. It is the most movable of the four portions. It is almost completely covered by peritoneum derived from the two layers of the lesser omentum. A small part of its posterior surface is not completely covered by peritoneum (Fig. 888). The first inch of the superior portion of the duodenum is completely covered by peritoneum; the lesser omentum is attached above and the greater omentum below (Fig. 888). The other portion has only its anterior wall covered by peritoneum. The *posterior* and *lateral surfaces* are uncovered by peritoneum and are near the neck of the gall-bladder and the inferior vena cava. The first portion of the duodenum is in such close relation with the gall-bladder that it is usually found to be stained by bile after death, especially on its anterior surface. It is in relation *above* and in *front* with the quadrate lobe of the liver, lying in a slight concavity, the *impressio duodenalis*. It is also in relation *above* in part with the gall-bladder; *behind* with the gastro-duodenal artery, the common bile-duct, and the vena porta; and *below* with the head of the pancreas. The superior portion of the duodenum crosses the transverse fissure of the liver, and by means of the **superior flexure of the duodenum** (*flexura duodeni superior*) passes into the second or descending portion beneath the caudate lobe.

The **Second** or **Descending Portion** (*pars descendens*) (Figs. 887, 892, and 894) is between three and four inches in length, and extends from the neck of the gall-bladder on a level with the first lumbar vertebra along the right side of the vertebral column as low as the body of the fourth lumbar vertebra. It is crossed in its middle third by the transverse colon, the posterior surface of which is uncovered by peritoneum and is connected to the duodenum by a small quantity of connective tissue. The portions of the descending part of the duodenum above and below this interspace are named the **supracolic** and **infracolic portions**, and are covered in front by peritoneum (Fig. 889). The right side of the supracolic portion is covered by peritoneum derived from the anterior surface of the right kidney, the left side of the same portion being covered by the peritoneum forming the lesser sac. The infracolic part is covered by the right leaf of the mesentery. Posteriorly the descending portion of the duodenum is uncovered by peritoneum. The descending portion of the duodenum is in relation, in *front*, with the transverse colon, and above this with the right lobe of the liver, where it lies in the *impressio duodenalis* for the second part of the duodenum; *behind* with the front of the right kidney, to which it is connected by loose areolar tissue, the renal vessels and the vena cava inferior; at its *inner side* is the head of the pancreas, and the ductus communis choledochus; to its *outer side* is the hepatic flexure of the colon. The common bile-duct passes downward behind the first portion of the duodenum, descends to the inner side of the second portion, is joined by the pancreatic duct, and the two ducts perforate the inner side of this portion of the intestine obliquely, and empty into the duodenum by a common opening or by two openings at the summit of a papilla, some three or four inches below the pylorus. The relations of the second part of the duodenum to the right kidney present considerable variations. The descending portion passes into the transverse portion by means of the *flexura duodeni inferior*.

The **Third, Pre-aortic, Horizontal** or **Transverse Portion** (*pars horizontalis inferior*) (Figs. 887, 892, and 894) varies much in length; when the duodenum assumes the ordinary horseshoe form, it measures from two to three inches; but when it presents the rarer V-shaped form, it is practically wanting or very much reduced in length. The transverse portion is described as the horizontal part of the ascending or last portion by those authors who divide the duodenum into three parts instead of four. It commences at the right side of the fourth lumbar vertebra and passes from right to left, with a slight inclination upward, in front of the great

vessels and crura of the Diaphragm, and ends in the fourth portion in front of or just to the left of the abdominal aorta. It is crossed by the superior mesenteric vessels and mesentery. The *posterior surface* rests upon the aorta, the vena cava inferior, and the crura of the Diaphragm. By its upper surface this portion of the duodenum is in relation with the head of the pancreas. The front of the third portion of the duodenum is covered by peritoneum except where the mesenteric vessels and root of the mesentery cross it (Fig. 890). The left side of the termination of the ascending portion is also covered by peritoneum, and in this region the **duodenal fossae** are found (p. 1260).

The **Fourth or Ascending Portion of the Duodenum** (*pars ascendens*) (Figs. 887, 892, and 894) is about two inches long. It ascends on the left side of the vertebral column and aorta, as far as the level of the upper border of the second lumbar vertebra, where it turns abruptly to the right and forward to become the jejunum, forming the **duodeno-jejunal angle** or **flexure** (*flexura duodenojejunalis*)

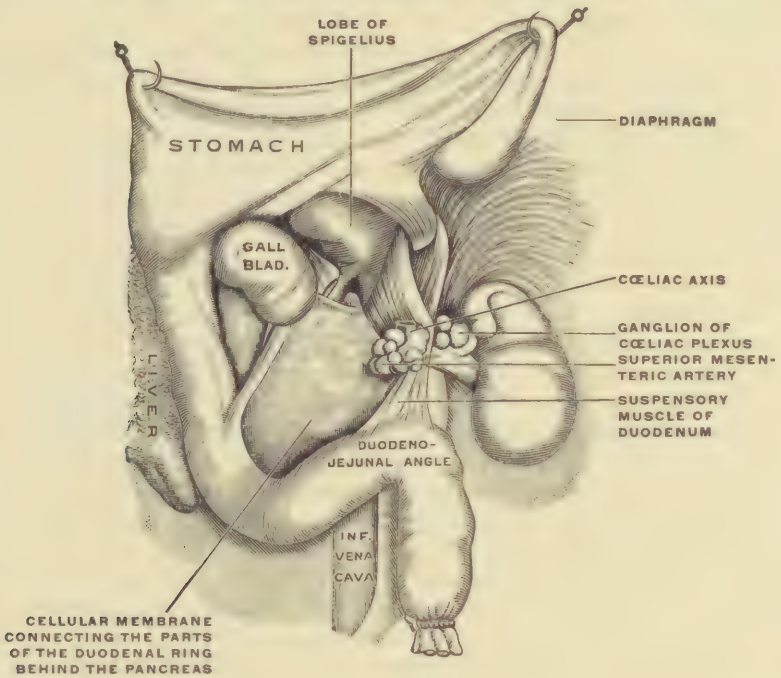


FIG. 892.—Suspensory muscle of the duodenum or muscle of Treitz. (Poirier and Charpy.)

(Fig. 892). It is covered entirely in front and partly at the sides by peritoneum, derived from the left portion of the mesentery (Fig. 891). The superior mesenteric artery and vein are in front of it. It touches the left kidney, slightly overlapping its inner margin, and rests upon the left crus of the Diaphragm.

The first part of the duodenum, as stated above, is somewhat movable, but the rest is practically fixed and is bound down to neighboring viscera and the posterior abdominal wall by the peritoneum. In addition to this, the fourth part of the duodenum and the duodeno-jejunal flexure is further bound down and fixed by a structure called the **Suspensory muscle of the duodenum** or the **suspensory ligament of Treitz** (*m. suspensorius duodeni*) (Fig. 892). This structure commences in the connective tissue around the coeliac axis and left crus of the Diaphragm, and passes downward to be inserted into the superior border of the duodeno-jejunal curve and a part of the ascending duodenum, and from this it is continued into the mesentery. It possesses, according to Treitz, some few plain muscular fibres mixed with the

fibrous tissue, of which it is principally made up. It is of little importance as a muscle, but acts as a suspensory ligament.

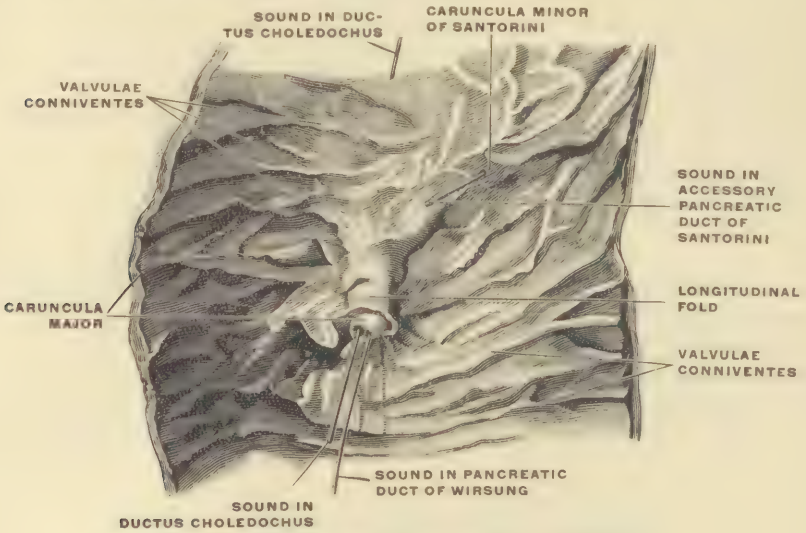


FIG. 893.—The interior of the duodenum. (Spalteholz.)

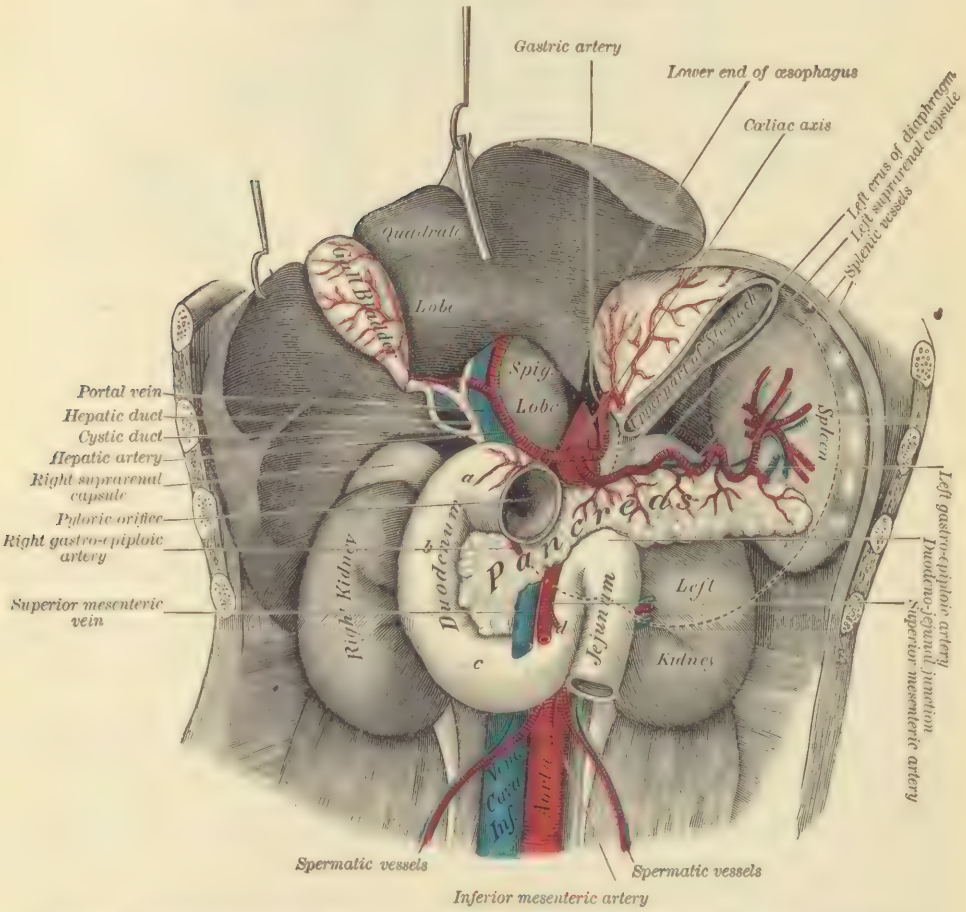


FIG. 894.—The duodenum, its four parts marked *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*. The liver is lifted up; the greater art of the stomach is removed, broken lines indicating its former position. (Testut.)

Interior of the Duodenum (Fig. 893).—In the beginning of the duodenum valvulae conniventes are absent. They begin to appear in the lower half of the first portion, being at first trivial elevations irregularly placed. They become higher, regular, and more numerous lower down, and near the termination of the duodenum are strongly marked and closely placed transverse or spiral folds (Fig. 893 and p. 1291). In the descending portion (Fig. 893) to the side and rear is a longitudinal fold (*plica longitudinalis duodeni*), which is formed by the projection of the bile-duct and pancreatic duct beneath the mucous membrane.

The **caruncula major of Santorini** or the **bile papilla** is a projection or tit in the lower part of the longitudinal fold. At the summit of this papilla are seen two openings, if the bile-duct and pancreatic duct have not united, or one common opening for both of them, if they have united. One inch above and half an inch or more in front of the bile papilla is a much smaller papilla, the **caruncula minor of Santorini** (*papilla duodeni* [*Santorini*]), on the summit of which the accessory pancreatic duct of Santorini opens.

Structure of the Duodenum.—The **peritoneal coat** (*tunica serosa*) has been described. The **muscular coat** (*tunica muscularis*) is practically identical with the muscular coat of the balance of the intestine. The bile-duct and pancreatic duct

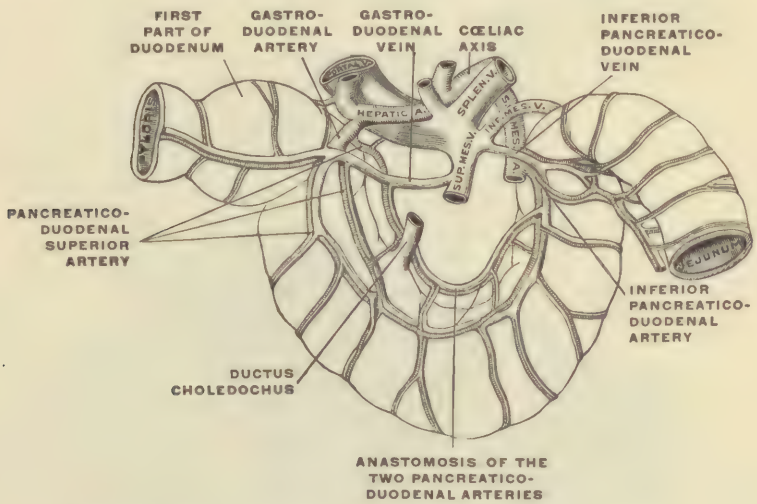


FIG. 895.—The blood-vessels of the duodenum. (Poirier and Charpy.)

pass through it. The **submucous coat** (*tela submucosa*) contains lymph-nodes and **glands of Brunner** (*glandulae duodenales*). These glands are particularly plentiful in the first half of the duodenum (p. 1295). The mucous membrane is thicker in the duodenum than in the rest of the small intestine, is covered with villi, and from the lower half of the first portion down is formed into circular folds or valvulae conniventes. In the descending part it exhibits the previously described longitudinal fold.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** (Fig. 895) supplying the duodenum are the **pyloric** and **pancreatico-duodenal branches of the hepatic**, and the **inferior pancreatico-duodenal branch of the superior mesenteric**. The **veins** (Fig. 895) correspond to the arteries. The **superior duodenal vein** passes into the superior mesenteric, and the **inferior duodenal vein** passes into the portal. The **lymphatics** pass along with the pancreatico-duodenal arteries, glands being present here and there, and terminate in the glands about the coeliac axis. The **duodenal fossae** are described on p. 1260. The **nerves** are derived from the solar plexus.

The Jejunum and Ileum (Figs. 862, 864, 865, 867, 892).

The remainder of the small intestine from the termination of the duodenum comprises the **jejunum** and **ileum**; the former name being given to the upper two-fifths and the latter to the remaining three-fifths. Spalteholz and others call all of the small intestine below the duodenum the **intestinum tenue mesenteriale**. There is no morphological line of distinction between the jejunum and ileum, and the division is arbitrary; but at the same time it must be noted that the character of the intestine gradually undergoes a change from the commencement of the jejunum to the termination of the ileum, so that a portion of the bowel taken from these two situations would present characteristic and marked differences. These are briefly as follows:

Differences between the Jejunum and Ileum.—If the jejunum high up is contrasted with the ileum low down, it is noted that the former is thicker, of greater diameter, contains more blood-vessels, and hence is more distinctly red, has well-marked valvulae conniventes, but a few small-sized Peyer's patches, and the villi are short and broad. In the ileum large Peyer's patches are present in numbers, and the villi are thin (Prof. Birmingham).

The Jejunum (*intestinum jejunum*).—The jejunum, which derives its name from the Latin word *jejunus* (empty), because it was formerly supposed to be empty after death, is wider, its diameter being about one inch and a half, and is thicker, more vascular, and of a deeper color than the ileum, so that a given length weighs more. Its valvulae conniventes are large and thickly set and its villi are larger than in the ileum. The glands of Peyer are almost absent in the upper part of the jejunum, and in the lower part are less frequently found than in the ileum, and are smaller and tend to assume a circular form. Brunner's glands are only found in the upper part of the jejunum. By grasping the jejunum between the finger and thumb the valvulae conniventes can be felt through the walls of the gut; these being absent in the lower part of the ileum, it is possible in this way to distinguish the upper from the lower part of the small intestine.

The Ileum (*intestinum ileum*).—The ileum (so called from the Greek word *εἰλεῖν*, *to twist*, on account of its numerous coils and convolutions) is placed below and to the right of the jejunum. It is narrower, its diameter being one inch and a quarter, and its coats are thinner and less vascular than those of the jejunum. It possesses but few valvulae conniventes, and they are small and disappear entirely toward its lower end, but Peyer's patches are larger and more numerous. The jejunum for the most part occupies the umbilical and left iliac regions, while the ileum occupies chiefly the umbilical, hypogastric, right iliac, and pelvic regions, and terminates in the right iliac fossa by opening into the inner side of the commencement of the large intestine. The upper portion of the jejunum passes to the left of the duodeno-jejunal flexure, and is in relation with the under surface of the pancreas and the transverse mesocolon. The lower portion of the ileum is in the pelvis and rises from above the brim, passing upward, backward, and to the right to reach the ileo-caecal opening. Treves points out that another portion of the small intestine may be in the pelvis, viz., the portion with the longest mesentery. This is a portion somewhere between a point six feet from the duodenum and a point eleven feet from the duodenum. The jejunum and ileum are attached to the posterior abdominal wall by an extensive fold of peritoneum, the **mesentery** (p. 1257), which allows the freest motion, so that each coil can accommodate itself to changes in form and position. The mesentery is fan-shaped; its posterior border, about six inches in length, is attached to the abdominal wall from the left side of the second lumbar vertebra to the right iliac fossa (Fig. 862). Its length is about eight inches from its commencement to its termination at the intestine, and it is rather longer about its centre than at either end of the bowel. According to Lockwood,

it tends to increase in length as age advances. Between the two layers of which it is composed are contained blood-vessels, nerves, lacteals, and lymphatic glands, together with a variable amount of fat.

Meckel's Diverticulum (*diverticulum ilei*).—Occasionally there may be found connected with the lower part of the ileum, on an average about three feet from its termination, a blind diverticulum or tube, varying in length, but averaging about two inches, and being of about the same diameter as the piece of intestine of which it is a part. Sometimes only a portion of the proximal end is open and the balance of the structure is obliterated and shrunk to a fibrous cord. In other cases the diverticulum is actually of greater diameter than the intestine. It usually is at a right angle to the intestine, but may take almost any direction. In most cases it has a mesentery. It is attached to and communicates with the lumen of the bowel by one extremity, and by the other is unattached or may be connected with the abdominal wall or with some other portion of the intestine by a fibrous band. This is Meckel's diverticulum, and represents the remains of the **vitelline** or **omphalo-mesenteric duct**, the duct of communication between the umbilical vesicle and the alimentary canal in early fœtal life.

Structure of the Small Intestine, including the Duodenum.—The wall of the small intestine is composed of four coats—**serous, muscular, areolar** or **submucous,** and **mucous.**

The Serous Coat (*tunica serosa*).—The relation of the peritoneum to the duodenum has been described. The remaining portion of the small intestine is surrounded by the peritoneum, excepting along its attached or mesenteric border; here a space is left for the vessels and nerves to pass to the gut.

The Muscular Coat (*tunica muscularis*).—The muscular coat consists of two layers of fibres, an **external** or **longitudinal layer** and an **internal** or **circular layer.**

The **Longitudinal Fibres** (*stratum longitudinale*) are thinly scattered over the surface of the intestine, and are more distinct along its free border.

The **Circular Fibres** (*stratum circulare*) form a thick, uniform layer; they surround the cylinder of the intestine in the greater part of its circumference, and are composed of plain muscle-cells of considerable length. The muscular coat is thicker at the upper than at the lower part of the small intestine.

The Areolar or Submucous Coat (*tela submucosa*).—The areolar or submucous coat connects together the mucous and muscular layers. It consists of loose, filamentous areolar tissue, which forms a bed for the subdivision of the nutrient vessels, previous to their distribution to the mucous surface.

The submucous coat contains **lymph-nodules** (*noduli lymphatici*). Each nodule is pyramidal or pear-shaped, and the apex lies in the mucous membrane and forms a rounded elevation. These rounded elevations mark the solitary glands and Peyer's patches (Figs. 896, 898, and 905), and in nowise resemble villi. In the duodenum the submucous tissue contains the **duodenal glands.** The submucous tissue is prolonged into the **valvulae conniventes.** It contains blood-vessels, Meissner's plexus of nerves, and lymph-vessels.

The Mucous Membrane (*tunica mucosa*).—The mucous membrane is thick and highly vascular at the upper part of the small intestine, but somewhat paler and thinner below. It consists of the following structures: next the areolar or submucous coat is a layer of unstriped muscular fibres, the **muscularis mucosae**; internal to this is a quantity of retiform tissue, enclosing in its meshes lymph-corpuscles, and in which the blood-vessels and nerves ramify. Lastly, a basement-membrane, supporting a single layer of epithelial cells, which throughout the intestines are columnar in character. They are granular in appearance, and each possesses a clear, oval nucleus. At their superficial or unattached end they present a distinct layer of highly refracting material, marked by vertical striae, which were formerly

believed to be minute channels by which the chyle was taken up into the interior of the cell, and by them transferred to the lacteal vessels of the mucous membrane.

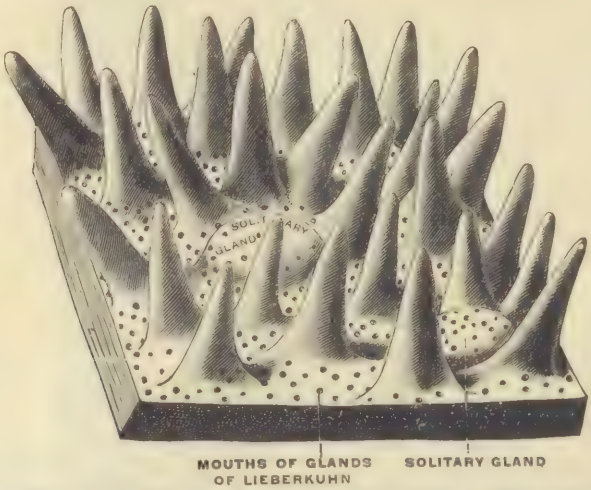


FIG. 896.—Free surface of the mucous membrane of the small intestine, showing villi, solitary glands, and openings of the intestinal glands. Semidiagrammatic. (Testut.)

The mucous membrane presents for examination the following structures contained within it or belonging to it:

Valvulae conniventes.	Duodenal glands.
Villi.	Lymphatic nodules { Solitary glands.
Simple follicles.	Lymphatic nodules { Peyer's or agminate glands.

The **Valvulae Conniventes** or the **Valves of Kerkring** (*plicae circulares* [*Kerkringi*]) (Fig. 897) are large folds or valvular flaps projecting into the lumen of the bowel. They are composed of reduplications or folds of the mucous membrane, the two layers of the fold being bound together by submucous tissue; they contain no muscular fibres, and, unlike the folds in the stomach, they are permanent, and are not obliterated when the intestine is distended. The majority extend transversely across the cylinder of the intestine for about one-half or two-thirds of its circumference, but some form complete circles, and others have a spiral direction; the latter usually extend a little more than once around the bowel, but occasionally two or three times. The spiral arrangement is the characteristic one of the shark family of fishes. The larger folds are about one-third of an inch in depth at their broadest part; but the greater number are of smaller size. The larger and smaller folds alternate with each other. They are not found at the commencement of the duodenum, but begin to appear about one or two inches beyond the pylorus. In the lower part of the descending portion, below the point where the bile and pancreatic ducts enter the intestine, they are very large and closely approximated. In the transverse portion of the duodenum and upper half of the jejunum they

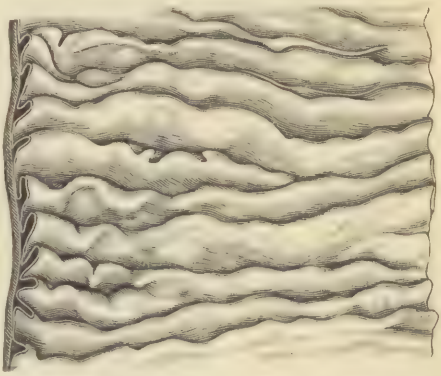


FIG. 897.—Valvulae conniventes in the upper part of the small intestine. (Poirier and Charpy.)

are large and numerous; and from this point, down to the middle of the ileum, they diminish considerably in size. In the lower part of the ileum they almost entirely disappear; hence the comparative thinness of this portion of the intestine as compared with the duodenum and jejunum. The valvulae conniventes retard the passage of the food along the intestine, and afford a more extensive surface for absorption.

The **Villi** (*villi intestinales*) (Figs. 896, 898, 899, 900, and 905) are minute, highly vascular processes, never larger than one millimetre, projecting from the mucous membrane of the small intestine throughout its whole extent, and giving to its surface a velvety appearance. They spring from the valvulae conniventes and also from the spaces between them. In shape, according to Rauber, they are short and leaf-shaped in the duodenum, tongue-shaped in the jejunum, and filiform

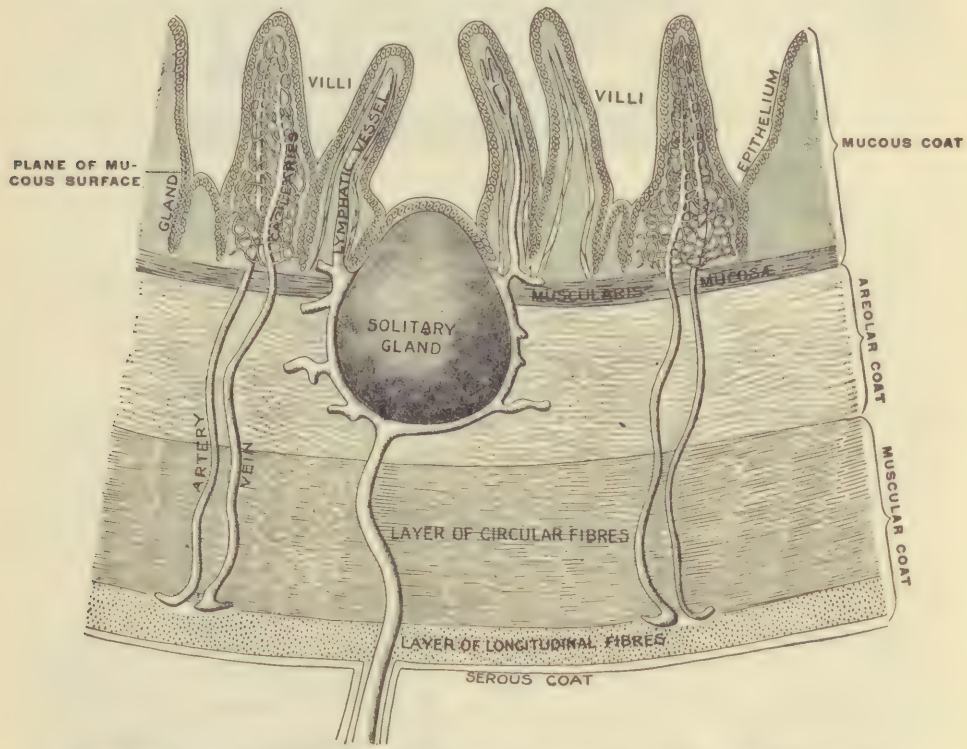


FIG. 898.—Mucosa of small intestine in ideal vertical cross-section. (Testut, after Heitzmann.)

in the ileum. They are largest and most numerous in the duodenum and jejunum, and become fewer and smaller in the ileum. Krause estimates their number in the upper part of the small intestine at from fifty to ninety in a square line; and in the lower part from forty to seventy, the total number for the whole length of the intestine being about four millions.

STRUCTURE OF THE VILLI (Figs. 899 and 900).—The structure of the villi has been studied by many eminent anatomists. We shall here follow the description of Watney,[1] whose researches have a most important bearing on the physiology of that which is the peculiar function of this part of the intestine, the absorption of fat.

The essential parts of a villus are—the lacteal vessel, the blood-vessels, the epithelium, the basement-membrane and muscular tissue of the mucosa, these structures being supported and held together by retiform lymphoid tissue.

[1] Phil. Trans., vol. clxv. part ii.

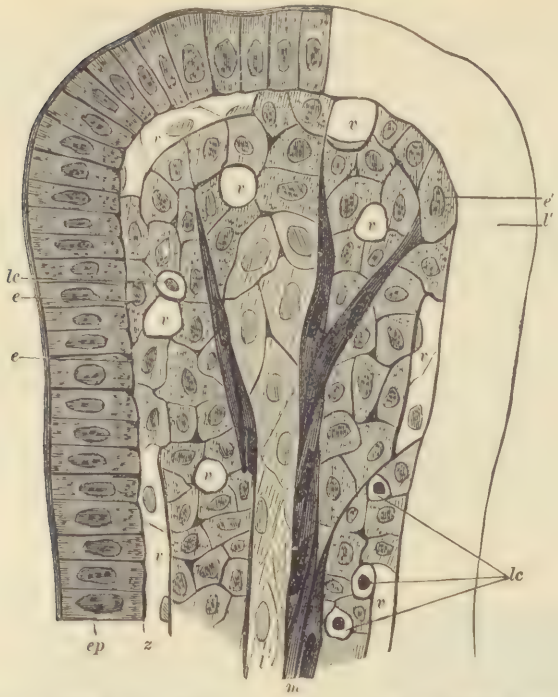


FIG. 899.—Diagrammatic section of a villus. *ep*. Epithelium only partially shaded in. *l*. Central chyle-vessel; the cells forming the vessel have been less shaded to distinguish them from the cells of the parenchyma of the villus. *m*. Muscle-fibres running up by the side of the chyle-vessel. It will be noticed that each muscle-fibre is surrounded by the reticulum, and by this reticulum the muscles are attached to the cells forming the membrana propria, as at *e'*, or to the reticulum of the villus. *lc*. Lymph-corpuscles, marked by a spherical nucleus and a clear zone of protoplasm. *l'*. Upper limit of the chyle-vessel. *e, e, e'*. Cells forming the membrana propria. It will be seen that there is hardly any difference between the cells of the parenchyma, the endothelium of the upper part of the chyle-vessel, and the cells of the membrana propria. V. Blood-vessels. *z*. Dark line at base of the epithelium formed by the reticulum. It will be seen that the reticulum penetrates between all the other elements of the villus. The reticulum contains thickenings or "nodal points." The diagram shows that the cells of the upper part of the villus are larger and contain a larger zone of protoplasm than those of the lower part. The cells of the upper part of the chyle-vessel differ somewhat from those of the lower part in that they more nearly resemble the cells of the parenchyma. (Watney.)

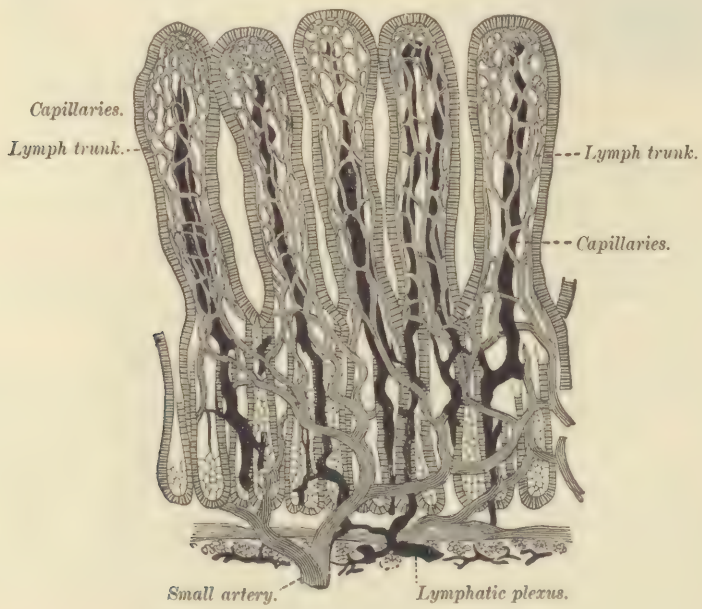


FIG. 900.—Villi of small intestine. (Cadiat.)

These structures are arranged in the following manner: situated in the centre of the villus is the **lacteal**, terminating near the summit in a blind extremity; running along this vessel are unstriped muscular fibres; surrounding it is a plexus of capillary vessels, the whole being enclosed by a basement-membrane, and covered by columnar epithelium. Those structures which are contained within the basement-membrane—namely, the lacteal, the muscular tissue, and the blood-vessels—are surrounded and enclosed by a delicate reticulum which forms the matrix of the villus, and in the meshes of which are found large, flattened cells with oval nuclei, and, in smaller numbers, lymph-corpuscles. These latter are to be distinguished from the larger cells of the villus by their behavior with reagents, by their size, and by the shape of the nucleus, which is spherical. Transitional forms, however, of all kinds are met with between the lymph-corpuscles and the proper cells of the villus. Nerve-fibres are contained within the villi; they form ramifications throughout the reticulum.

The **lacteals** are in some cases double, and in some animals *multiple*. Situated in the axis of the villi, they commence by dilated cæcal extremities near to, but not quite at, the summit of the villus. The walls are composed of a single layer of endothelial cells, the interstitial substance between the cells being continuous with the reticulum of the matrix.

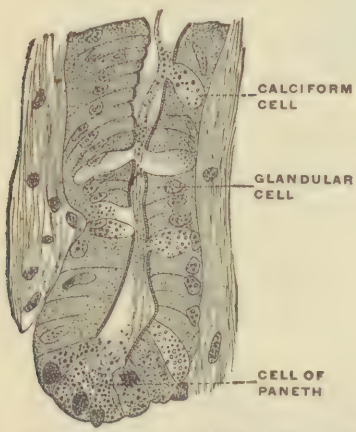


FIG. 901.—Section of a gland of Lieberkühn in the mouse. (Paneth.)

FIG. 902.—Transverse section of crypts of Lieberkühn. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The **muscular fibres** are derived from the muscularis mucosæ, and are arranged in bundles around the lacteal vessel, extending from the base to the summit of the villus, and giving off laterally individual muscle-cells, which are enclosed by the reticulum, and by it are attached to the basement-membrane.

The **blood-vessels** form a plexus between the lacteal and the basement-membrane, and are enclosed in the reticular tissue; in the interstices of the capillary plexus, which they form, are contained the cells of the villus.

These structures are surrounded by the basement-membrane, which is made up of a stratum of endothelial cells, and upon which is placed a layer of columnar epithelium. The reticulum of the matrix is continuous through the basement-membrane (that is, through the interstitial substance between the individual endothelial cells) with the interstitial cement substance of the columnar epithelial cells on the surface of the villus. Thus we are enabled to trace a direct continuity between the interior of the lacteal and the surface of the villus by means of the reticular tissue, and it is along this path that the chyle passes in the process of absorption by the villi; that is to say, it passes first of all into the columnar

epithelial cells, and, escaping from them, is carried into the reticulum of the villus, and thence into the central lacteal.

The **Simple Follicles, Intestinal Glands, Crypts** or **Glands of Lieberkühn** (*glandulae intestinales* [*Lieberkuhni*]) (Figs. 901, 902, and 905) are found in considerable numbers over every part of the mucous membrane of the small intestine. They consist of minute tubular depressions of the mucous membrane, arranged perpendicularly to the surface, upon which they open by small circular apertures. They may be seen with the aid of a lens, their orifices appearing as minute dots scattered between the villi (Fig. 896). Their walls are thin, consisting of a basement-membrane lined by columnar epithelium, and covered on their exterior by capillary vessels.

The **Duodenal** or **Brunner's Glands** (*glandulae duodenales* [*Brunneri*]) are limited to the duodenum and commencement of the jejunum. They are small, flattened, granular bodies embedded in the submucous areolar tissue, and open upon the surface of the mucous membrane by minute excretory ducts. They are most numerous and largest near the pylorus. They are small, compound, acino-tubular glands, and much resemble the small glands which are found in the mucous membrane of the mouth. They are believed by Watney to be direct continuations of the pyloric glands of the stomach. They consist of a number of tubular alveoli, lined by epithelium, and opening by a single duct on the inner surface of the intestine.

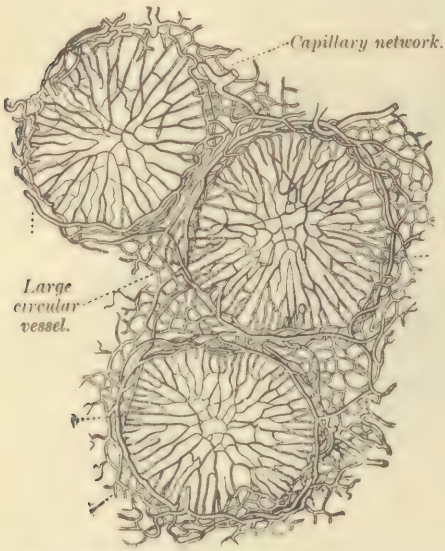


FIG. 903.—Transverse section through the equatorial plane of three of Peyer's follicles from the rabbit.

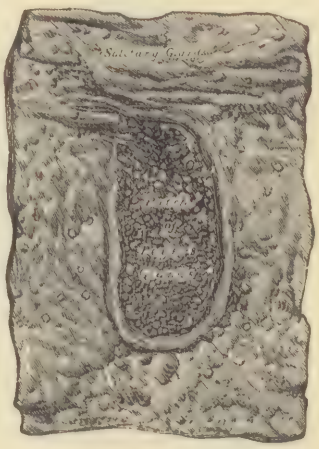


FIG. 904.—Patch of Peyer's glands. From the lower part of the ileum.

The **Lymph Nodules** (*noduli lymphatici*) are small pyriform structures. The bodies of the nodes are in the submucous coat; the apices are in the mucous membrane, which is thrown by them into rounded elevations. They are divided into **solitary glands** and **Peyer's glands.**

The **solitary glands** (*noduli lymphatici solitarii*) (Figs. 896 and 898) are found scattered throughout the mucous membrane of the small intestine and the large intestine. In the small intestine they are most numerous in the lower part of the ileum, upon and between the valvulae conniventes. They are small, round, whitish bodies, from one-twenty-fourth of an inch to one-quarter of an inch in diameter. Their free surface is covered with villi, and each gland is surrounded by the

openings of the follicles of Lieberkühn. They are now recognized as lymph-nodules. They consist of a dense interlacing retiform tissue closely packed with lymph-corpuscles and permeated with an abundant capillary network. The interspaces of the retiform tissue are continuous with larger lymph-spaces at the base of the gland, through which they communicate with the lacteal system. They are situated partly in the submucous tissue, partly in the mucous membrane, whence they form slight projections of its epithelial layer, after having penetrated the muscularis mucosae. The villi situated on them are generally absent from the very summit (or "cupola," as Frey calls it) of the gland.

Peyer's glands, Peyer's patches, the **agminated glands** or the **tonsillae intestinales** (*noduli lymphatici aggregati* [*Peyeri*]) (Figs. 903, 904, and 905) may be regarded as aggregations of solitary glands, forming circular or oval patches from twenty-five to forty in number, and varying in length from half an inch to four inches. They are largest and most numerous in the ileum. In the lower part of the jejunum they are small, of a circular form, and few in number. They are occasionally seen in the duodenum. They are placed lengthwise in the intestine, and are situated

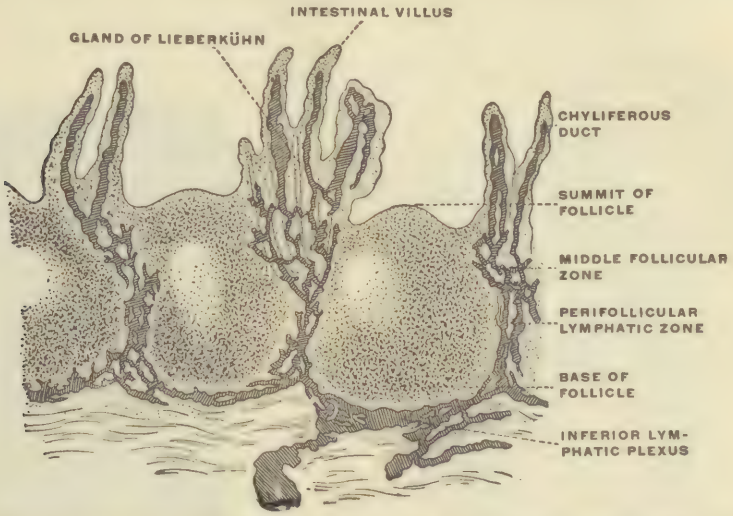


Fig. 905.—Vertical cell of a Peyer's patch in a man with the lymphatic vessels injected. (Frey.)

in the portion of the tube most distant from the attachment of the mesentery. Each patch is formed of a group of the above-described solitary glands covered with mucous membrane, and in almost every respect are similar in structure to them. They do not, however, as a rule, possess villi on their free surface. Each patch is surrounded by a circle of the crypts of Lieberkühn. They are best marked in the young subject, becoming indistinct in middle age, and sometimes altogether disappearing in advanced life. They are largely supplied with blood-vessels, which form an abundant plexus around each follicle and give off fine branches which permeate the lymphoid tissue in the interior of the follicle. The lacteal plexuses which are found throughout the small intestine are especially abundant around these patches; here they form rich plexuses with sinuses around the glands (Fig. 905). In typhoid fever there is ulceration of Peyer's patches.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** (*vasa intestini tenuis*) are branches of the **superior mesenteric** (Fig. 420) and ascend within the mesentery, forming single, double, or even tertiary loops (Figs. 869, 870, 871, 872, 873, 874, and 906). The terminal branches reach the intestine, and each branch divides into two, one going to each side of the intestine and passing transversely around it. At first they are

directly beneath the peritoneum, but after a time they pass to the submucosa and form a plexus, from which branches go to the mucous membrane. Some of these enter the villi; others form plexuses about the glands of Lieberkühn (Birmingham).

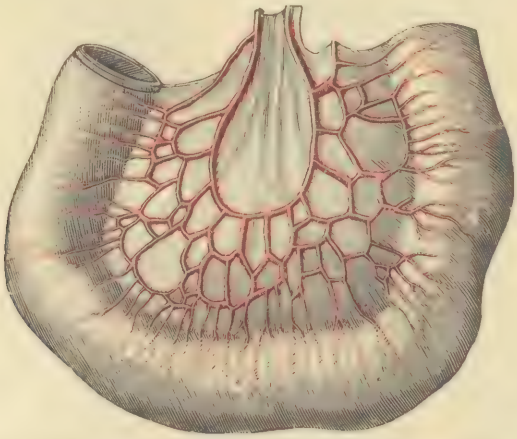


FIG. 906.—A loop of small intestine, showing the mode of distribution of the arteries. (Testut.)

Dr. George H. Monks[1] points out that opposite the upper portion of the bowel the mesenteric vessels form only primary loops; as we pass down secondary loops appear, become larger and more and more numerous, and actually prominent features about the fourth foot. As we descend the secondary loops become larger and more numerous and the primary become smaller. All the time the loops get nearer and nearer to the bowel. Tertiary loops may appear. Opposite the lower part of the ileum the loops cease to be characteristic and they form a network. (Monks's views are fully set forth on pp. 1266, 1267, and 1268.) In the upper part of the gut the vasa recta are from 3 to 5 cm. long, when the loop of small intestine to which they run is lifted up so as to put them gently on the stretch. They are straight, large, and regular, and rarely give off branches in the mesentery. In the lower third they are very short, being generally less than 1 cm. in length. Here they are less straight, smaller, less regular, and have frequent branches in the mesentery.

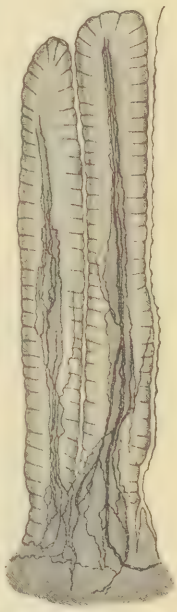


FIG. 907. Nerve endings in the villi of the small intestine of a rabbit. (Müller.)

The **veins** correspond to the arteries, and the venous blood passes to the **superior mesenteric vein**, which, it will be remembered, unites with the splenic vein to form the portal vein. The mesenteric veins are devoid of valves.

The **lacteals** are **lymphatics** (Figs. 898, 899, 900, and 905) which arise in the villi. Lymphatics also begin in sinuses at the base of the solitary glands and as *lymph-nodes* in the submucous coat. Peyer's patches are aggregations of lymph-nodes. There is an extensive lymphatic plexus in the submucous coat, another in the muscular coat, another under the peritoneum. The submucous plexus is formed by lymphatics from the villi and mucous membrane. This plexus is joined by lymphatics from the bases of the solitary glands, and the lymph passes by vessels to larger vessels at the mesenteric border of the gut. The muscular lymphatics are placed between the two muscular layers. They

[1] Annals of Surgery, May, 1903.

form a plexus and communicate freely with the lymphatics from the mucous membrane, and empty themselves in the same manner into the commencement

Fig. 908. Meissner's plexus.

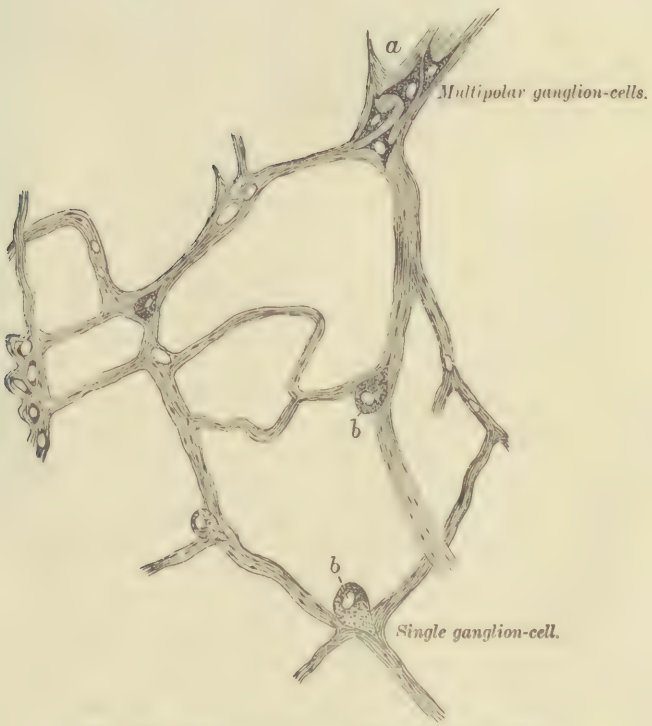


Fig. 909.—Meissner's plexus. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

of the lacteal vessels at the attached border of the gut. The vessels from all sources of lymphatic supply pass up between the two layers of the mesentery, being connected with the **mesenteric glands** (Fig. 509), and unite to form a trunk, the **intestinal lymphatic trunk**, which opens into the receptaculum chyli, or the vessels unite to form several trunks, which open separately into the receptaculum chyli.

The **nerves of the small intestine** (Figs. 907, 908, and 909) are derived from the **coeliac plexus** about the superior mesenteric artery, which is one of the divisions of the **solar plexus.** They pass along within the mesentery with the superior mesenteric artery and reach the intestine. They pass to the plexus of nerves and ganglia situated between the circular and longitudinal muscular fibres (**Auerbach's plexus**), from which the nervous branches are distributed to the muscular coats of the intestine. From this plexus a secondary plexus is derived (**Meissner's plexus**). It is formed by branches which have perforated the circular muscular fibres (Fig. 909). This plexus lies between the muscular and mucous coats of the intestine. It is also gangliated, and from it the ultimate fibres pass to the muscularis mucosae, to the villi, and to the mucous membrane. The nerves of the intestine are non-medullated, and some of the fibres are derived from the pneumogastric.

THE LARGE INTESTINE (INTESTINUM CRASSUM) (Figs. 799, 861, 865, 910, 911).

The large intestine extends from the termination of the ileum to the anus. It is about five feet or more in length, being one-fifth of the whole extent of the

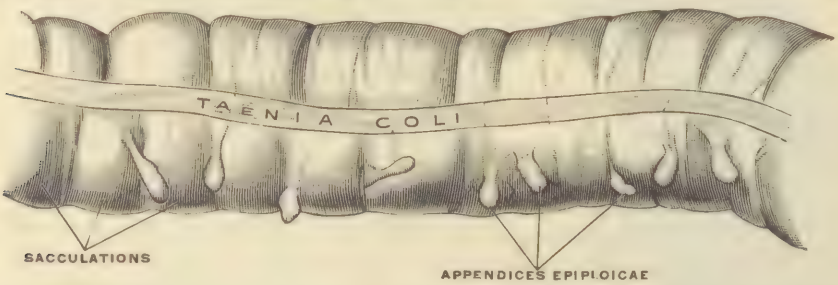


FIG. 910.—Large intestine. A piece of transverse colon from a child two years old. The three chief characteristics of the large intestine—sacculation, taeniae and appendices epiploicae—are shown. (Cunningham.)

intestinal canal. It is largest at its commencement at the caecum, and gradually diminishes as far as the rectum, where there is a dilatation of considerable size just above the anus. The diameter of the distended caecum is usually about three inches; the diameter of the descending colon is about one and a half inches. The large intestine differs from the small intestine in its greater size, its more fixed position, its sacculated form (Figs. 910 and 911), and in possessing certain appendages to its external coat, the **appendices epiploicae** (Fig. 910). The appendices epiploicae are peritoneal pouches containing fat, unless the subject is greatly wasted; they protrude here and there from the peritoneal coat of the entire large bowel, except the rectum, and are particularly frequent along the anterior longi-

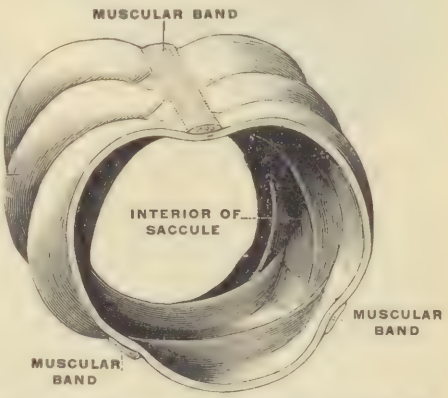


FIG. 911.—Segment of large intestine, showing the characteristic features of its structure. (Testut.)

tudinal band. Further, the longitudinal muscular fibres of the large intestine do not form a continuous layer around the gut, but are arranged in three **longitudinal bands** or **taeniae** (*taeniae coli*) (Fig. 911). The large intestine, in its course, describes an arch, which surrounds the convolutions of the small intestine. It commences in the right inguinal region, in a dilated part, the **caecum.** It ascends through the right lumbar and right hypochondriac regions to the under surface of the liver; it here takes a bend to the left, the **hepatic flexure,** and passes transversely across the abdomen on the confines of the epigastric and umbilical regions, to the left hypochondriac region; it then bends again, the **splenic flexure,** and descends through the left lumbar region to the left iliac fossa, where it becomes convoluted, and forms the **sigmoid flexure;** finally it enters the pelvis, and descends along its posterior wall to the anus. The large intestine is divided into the **caecum, colon,** and **rectum.**

The Caecum (Intestinum Caecum) (Figs. 912, 913).

The caecum, the commencement of the large intestine, is the large blind pouch, or *cul-de-sac*, situated below the ileo-caecal valve. Its name is derived from *caecus, blind.* Its blind end or fundus is directed downward, and its open end upward, communicating directly with the colon, of which this blind pouch appears to be the beginning or head, and hence the old name **caput caecum coli** was applied to it. An incomplete groove marks the upper limit of the caecum. This groove is at the level of the opening of the ileum. When the caecum is contracted it bends on this groove as on a hinge and forms an angle with the ascending colon. In the contracted caecum sacculations are but slightly evident; in the distended caecum they are definite. Its size is variously estimated by different authors, but on an average it may be said to be two and a half inches in length and three in breadth. In 435 careful autopsies, Byron Robinson found the caecum and appendix congenitally absent in one case.[1] The same author says that excessively large caeca are found in a little less than one-third of all autopsies. A large caecum may be four inches in width, entirely surrounded by peritoneum and usually is excessively mobile. Sometimes an excessively small caecum is encountered. According to Byron Robinson, this results from diminution of the blood-supply during the axial rotation and caecal descent of development. An adult caecum may be only one inch in width and one-half an inch in length, and it is usually devoid of mobility. It is situated in the right iliac fossa, above the outer half of Poupart's ligament, usually rests on the Ilio-psoas muscle, the iliac fascia intervening, and lies immediately behind the abdominal wall. The right side of the caecum is in contact with the outer wall of the abdomen, and the outer aspect of the anterior wall of the caecum is in contact with the anterior abdominal wall (Spalteholz). When the caecum is full the small intestine lies in front of the left

FIG. 912.—The caecum and colon laid open to show the ileo-caecal valve.

[1] St. Louis Courier of Medicine, October–December, 1902.

side and lower portion of the anterior caecal wall. If the caecum is empty the small intestine lies in front of its anterior wall, and the lower end is on a higher level than when this portion of the gut is full. In 15 per cent. of cases the caecum is covered by the omentum (Byron Robinson). Byron Robinson describes four positions of the caecum: 1. On the Psoas muscle. 2. To the right of the Psoas muscle. 3. In the pelvis. 4. The potential position, in which it lies free in the abdominal cavity. It may be found in various positions in the abdomen, because of elongation of the fixation apparatus. The commonest position is on the Psoas muscle, and this position is even more common in men than in women. It is twice as often in the pelvis in women as in men—20 per cent. of cases in the former; 10 per cent. in the latter. As a rule, it is entirely enveloped on all sides by peritoneum, but in a certain number of cases (6 per cent., according to Berry) the peritoneal covering is not complete, so that a small portion of the upper end of the posterior surface is uncovered and connected to the iliac fascia by connective tissue. As a matter of fact, there is no real **mesocaecum**—meaning by the term a peritoneal fold which holds the caecum to the dorsal wall of the abdomen—except when there is failure in development. The normal caecum is completely invested by peritoneum from the beginning. Originally the caecum receives its blood along a single peritoneal fold, the **ileo-caecal fold,** which is a simple mesentery. As development advances, this simple mesentery becomes a double fold and practically bloodless, and is replaced by two vascular folds, the **mesoappendix** to the left and the **mesenterico-colicum** to the right. The mobility of the caecum varies. Very small caeca are fixed. In most cases the caecum lies quite free in the abdominal cavity and enjoys a considerable amount of movement. Sometimes it is excessively mobile, and in such cases is usually also of large size. Such mobility is due to a stretched fixation apparatus. A very large and mobile caecum may be made to come in contact with any abdominal viscus and may enter any hernial sac on either side. As a rule, when the caecum is large and mobile, it is found in the pelvis or in the middle of the abdomen (Byron Robinson). It is to be remembered that a mobile caecum carrying with it the appendix may pass to almost any region of the abdomen. Sometimes the caecum fails to descend or only descends a part of the way during development, the axial rotation of the intestinal tract having been arrested. In such a case it may terminate at the level of the gall-bladder, and the ascending colon is absent. In 310 adult males Byron Robinson found 8 per cent. with undescended caecum and appendix. Non-descent is found in less than 4 per cent. of adult females. A *partly descended* caecum usually lies upon the right kidney.

The caecum varies in shape, but, according to Treves, in man it may be classified under one of four types (Fig. 913). In early fœtal life it is short, conical, and broad at the base, with its apex turned upward and inward toward the ileo-caecal junction. It then resembles the caecum of some of the monkey tribe, *e. g.*, Mangabey monkey. As the fœtus grows the caecum increases in length more than in breadth, so that it forms a longer tube than in the primitive form and without the broad base, but with the same inclination inward of the apex toward the ileo-caecal junction. This form is seen in others of the monkey tribe, *e. g.*, the spider monkey. As development goes on, the lower part of the tube ceases to grow and the upper part becomes greatly increased, so that at birth there is a narrow tube, the **vermiform appendix,** hanging from a conical projection, the **caecum**. This is the **infantile form,** and as it persists throughout life, in about 2 per cent. of cases, it is regarded by Treves as the *first* of his four types of human caeca. The caecum is conical and the appendix rises from its apex. The three longitudinal bands start from the appendix and are equidistant from each other. In the *second* type, the conical caecum has become quadrate by the growing out of a saccule on either side of the anterior longitudinal band. These saccules are of equal size,

and the appendix arises from between them, instead of from the apex of a cone. This type is found in about 3 per cent. of cases. The *third* type is the normal type of man. Here the two saccules, which in the second type were uniform, have grown at unequal rates: the right with greater rapidity than the left. In consequence of this an apparently new apex has been formed by the growing downward of the right saccule, and the original apex, with the appendix attached, is pushed over to the left toward the ileo-caecal junction. The three longitudinal bands still start from the base of the appendix, but they are now no longer equidistant from each other, because the right saccule has grown between the anterior and postero-external bands, pushing them over to the left. This type occurs in about 90 per cent. of cases. The *fourth* type is merely an exaggerated condition of the third;

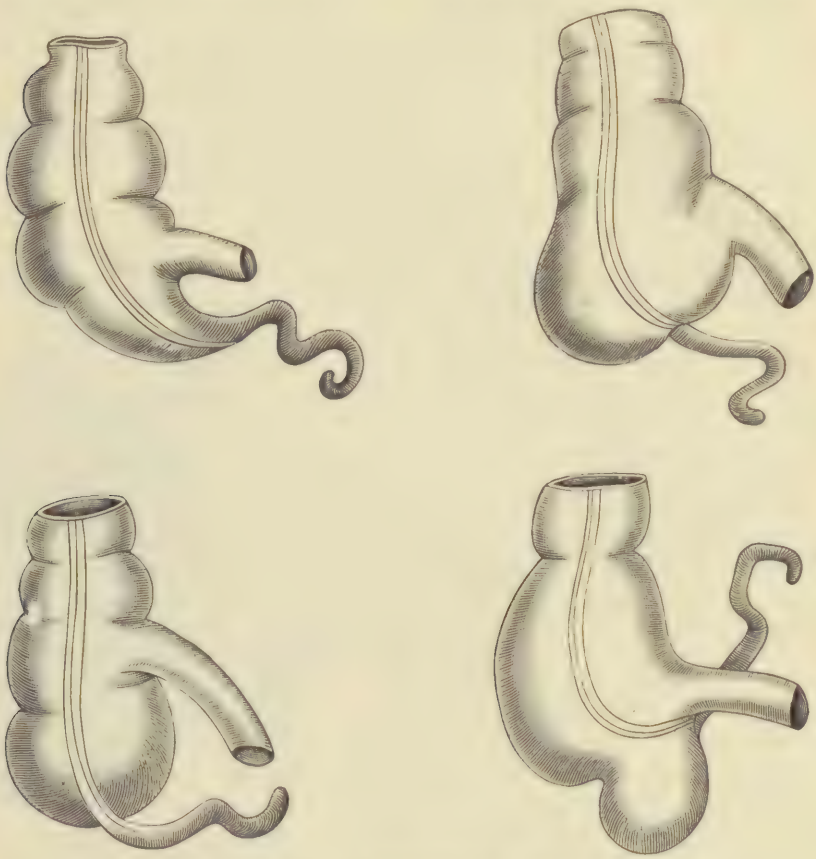


FIG. 913.—The four types of caecum.

the right saccule is still larger, and at the same time the left saccule has been atrophied, so that the original apex of the caecum, with the appendix, is close to the ileo-caecal junction, and the anterior band courses inward to the same situation. This type is present in about 4 per cent. of cases.

Supports of the Caecum.—According to Byron Robinson,[1] the caecum is maintained in position by the mesocolon and a peritoneal fold, the **right phrenico-colic ligament,** which arises from the **hepato-duodenal** and **hepato-renal ligaments**. It receives support from the connective tissue about vessels and nerves, and inconstantly from folds which fixes it in the iliac fossa and in the region of the vena cava.

[1] St. Louis Courier of Medicine, October-December, 1902.

The Interior of the Caecum.—In the interior of the caecum are seen depressions which correspond to the surface **haustra,** and **semilunar folds** (*plicae semilunares coli*) (Fig. 912), which correspond to the transverse surface constrictions. There are three openings in the caecum: that into the colon; that into the ileum, which is guarded by the **ileo-caecal valve** (p. 1308); and that into the appendix, which may be guarded by the **valve of Gerlach.**

Pericaecal Folds and Fossae.—See p. 1262, and Figs. 866, 867, and 868.

The Vermiform Appendix (*processus vermiformis*) (Figs. 866, 867, 868, 913, 914, 915, 916, and 918).—The vermiform appendix is found only in man, the higher apes, and the wombat, although in certain rodents a somewhat similar arrangement exists. In carnivorous animals the caecum is very slightly developed; in herbivorous animals (with a simple stomach) it is, as a rule, extremely large. It has been suggested that the vermiform process in man is the degenerated remains of the herbivorous caecum, which has been replaced by the carnivorous form.[1] The vermiform appendix is a long, narrow, worm-shaped, musculo-membranous tube, which starts from what was originally the apex of the caecum. After development has advanced the vermiform appendix comes off, as a rule, from the inner side of the posterior wall of the caecum that is below and behind the termination of the ileum. This origin usually corresponds to **McBurney's point,** which is in the abdominal wall, midway between the umbilicus and the anterior superior iliac spine and which is the usual seat of the greatest tenderness in appendicitis. The origin of the appendix varies with the type of caecum present. These variations are shown in Fig. 913. In the **foetal** or **infantile type** of appendix it arises from the apex of the caecum; in the second type of caecum it arises between the two caecal sacculi; in the third type it arises between a large outer and a small inner sacculus; and on the posterior wall of the caecum, the excessive growth of the anterior wall having caused the appendix to originate posteriorly; in the fourth type there is no internal sacculus, and the appendix arises from the posterior caecal wall behind the ileo-caecal junction (p. 1302). The movable portion of the appendix may be met with in different situations. It may pass upward and in front of the caecum and colon, upward and behind the caecum, and even behind the colon between the two layers of the mesocolon; upward and to the inner side, or upward and to the outer side of the caecum and colon. It may pass to the left under the ileum and mesentery, upward and to the left or downward and to the left into the true pelvis. It may pass directly downward under the caecum. It may pass to the right in front of or back of the caecum. It may occupy any one of the caecal fossae (p. 1262), but most often enters the ileo-caecal fossa. In unusual cases the appendix is found in the inguinal canal as a portion of or the sole contents of a hernia; adherent to the parietal peritoneum in front of or to the side of the caecum, or "behind the peritoneum, below the caecum, adherent to the under surface of the caecum and in contact with its muscular wall and covered by its peritoneal coat."[2] When the caecum is mobile the appendix may be found almost anywhere within the abdomen. When the caecum is undescended the appendix, of course, shares in the failure to descend, and may be below the gall-bladder or in front of the right kidney, and may pass in several directions: upward behind the caecum; to the left behind the ileum and mesentery; or downward and inward into the true pelvis. It varies from one-half an inch to nine inches in length, its average being about three inches. Its diameter is from one-eighth inch to one-quarter inch. The operating surgeon may occasionally fail to find an appendix buried in one of the caecal fossae, and may conclude that the diverticulum is absent. As a matter of fact, unless the colon is also absent, it seems doubtful if the appendix is ever absent, except as a result of dis-

[1] Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.
[2] Deaver's Surgical Anatomy.

ease. This view is maintained by Lockwood and Rolleston,[1] by Kelynack,[2] and others. It is asserted by some that the appendix is absent five times out of 10,000 autopsies. It is retained in position by a fold of peritoneum derived from the left leaf of the mesentery, which forms a mesentery for it, and is called the **meso-appendix** (p. 1260), and Figs. 866, 867, and 868). In color the healthy appendix is yellowish-pink, is soft and smooth to the touch, and the "subperitoneal vessels are barely visible."[3] The **canal of the appendix** is small and extends throughout the whole length of the tube. The walls of the healthy diverticulum are thick, and the diameter of the lumen is usually trivial as compared with the diameter of the appendix itself. The lumen of the appendix communicates with the caecum by an orifice which is placed below and behind the ileo-caecal opening (Fig. 919). It is sometimes guarded above and to the left side by a semilunar fold of mucous membrane, the **valve of Gerlach** (*valvula processus vermiformis*). The valve is inconstant, and is never perfect. It is stated that the appendix tends to undergo obliteration as an involution change in a functionless organ. The lumen rarely contains foreign bodies after death, but often contains fecal concretions. Certain it is that in 25 per cent. of necropsies upon adults or elderly people the lumen is found to be partially or completely occluded.

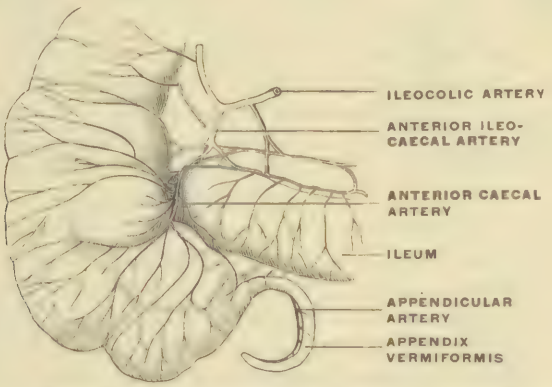


FIG. 914.—Arteries of the cæcum and of the appendix vermiformis and of the terminal portion of the ileum. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Structure of the Appendix (Fig. 917). —The coats of the appendix correspond to the coats of the bowel: **serous, muscular** (the outer layer of longitudinal, the inner of circular fibres), **submucous,** and **mucous.** In the deepest portion of the mucous coat, against the submucous coat, are the unstriated fibres constituting the **muscularis mucosae.** The muscularis mucosae is often present in some regions and absent in others. It may not be present at all.

The **Outer** or **Serous Coat** usually completely covers the appendix and has a definite mesentery, the mesoappendix (p. 1260). Occasionally the base of the appendix is not surrounded by peritoneum, but is extraperitoneal, lying in the retroperitoneal tissue. The **appendiculo-ovarian ligament of Clado** is occasionally present in females. It is a prolongation of the mesoappendix which passes into the broad ligament, and is extremely thin, and its fine connective-tissue fibres send prolongations into the longitudinal muscle-fibres of the appendix. Lockwood points out that the subperitoneal tissue of the meso-appendix and "the blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics which it contains are very intimately connected with the submucosa. This union takes place at certain large gaps in the muscular coats. These gaps serve for the transmission of blood-vessels, nerves,

[1] Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, 1891, vol. xxvi.
[2] A Contribution to the Pathology of the Vermiform Appendix.
[3] Lockwood on Appendicitis.

and lymphatics from the mesoappendix to the mucous coat. They are situated at the junction of the mesoappendix with the appendix."[1]

The **Longitudinal Muscular Layer** is thin and irregularly distributed, and in certain regions may be excessively thin or actually absent, and between the fibres are the blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics passing from the subperitoneal tissue to the mucous coat.

The **Circular Fibres** are much better developed than the longitudinal fibres, and, according to Lockwood, the layer is 1 mm. thick. Large gaps are found here and there for the passage of vessels, lymphatics, and nerves to and from the mesoappendix and the mucous membrane, and a few vessels pierce the fibres at other points (Lockwood).

The **Submucous Coat** varies greatly in thickness. It contains blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics, and some lymphoid follicles.

The **Mucous Membrane** (Fig. 915) is covered by columnar epithelial cells and contains numerous solitary lymph-follicles, some glands of Lieberkühn, surrounded by lymphoid tissue, blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves.

The muscularis mucosae may be absent, may be scanty or may be distinct. The **lymphoid follicles** are visible to the naked eye (Fig. 915). Some of them are in the submucosa, some of them chiefly in the mucosa, the bases of the latter, however, being in the submucosa. Lockwood estimates that an appendix three and a half inches in length contains from 150 to 200 follicles.

FIG. 915. The internal surface of the vermiform appendix. (Bonamy and Broca.)

Blood-vessels of the Caecum and Appendix (Figs. 914, 916, 932, and 933).—The **ileo-colic artery** in the ileo-colic angle gives off the **anterior** and **posterior ileo-caecal arteries**. The anterior ileo-caecal runs down over the front of the ileum and supplies the ileum, and sends off a terminal branch, the **anterior caecal artery**, which supplies the anterior surface of the caecum and of a portion of the ascending colon, and to the upper and lower margins of the ileo-caecal valve. It sends no branch to the appendix. The arteries of the appendix come from the **posterior ileo-caecal artery**. This vessel, after arising from the ileo-colic artery, passes back of the termination of the ileum and gives branches to the lower end of the ileum back of a portion of the ascending colon and to the lower margin of the ileo-caecal valve, where they anastomose with the valvular branches from the anterior ileo-caecal (Lockwood). From the posterior ileo-caecal comes the posterior caecal branch, which passes over the posterior and inner portion of the caecum near the base of the appendix and sends one or two branches to the appendix. The chief blood-supply of the appendix is the **appendicular artery**, which comes off the beginning of the posterior ileo-caecal or, occasionally, from the termination of the ileo-colic. If there is a distinct mesoappendix the largest branch of the artery passes along its free edge. If the mesoappendix is absent or rudimentary the artery usually lies upon the appendix from base to tip beneath the peritoneum.

Lockwood points out that the appendicular artery as it enters the mesoappendix divides into three branches. The largest branch runs along the free edge, and from this the tip of the appendix obtains its blood-supply; "the other two reach the appendix at intervals of half an inch."[2] When the branches reach the appendix they divide and pass around it in the subperitoneal coat and send

[1] Appendicitis, its Pathology and Surgery. By Charles Barrett Lockwood.

[2] Ibid.

branches through the muscular gaps to enter and pass through the submucous coat.

In females there is occasionally some additional blood-supply through a branch of the **ovarian artery** in the appendiculo-ovarian ligament.

The **veins** of the appendix are numerous, thin walled, and large. Veins from the submucous plexus pass through the muscular gaps and enter the subperi-

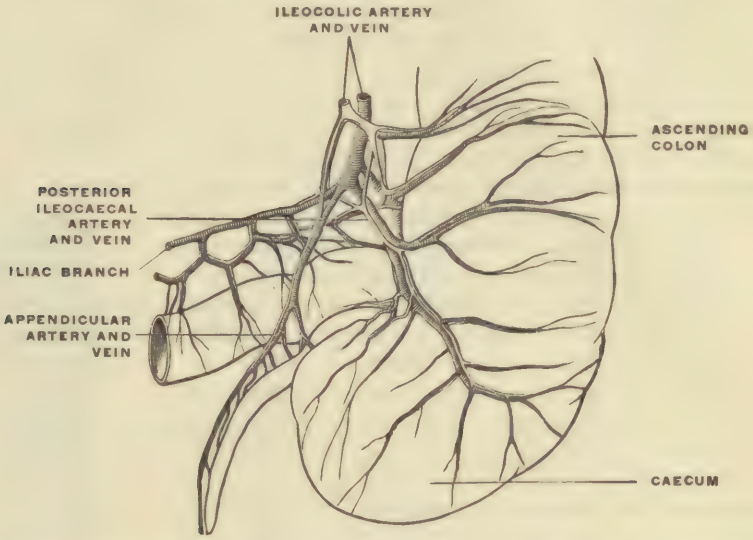


FIG. 916.—Arteries and veins of the cæcum and vermiform appendix seen from behind. (Poirier and Charpy.)

toneal plexus. Veins from the subperitoneal plexus pass into veins in the mesoappendix which correspond to but do not really accompany the arteries (Lockwood). Most of the veins of the mesoappendix pass to the **posterior ileo-caecal vein**, though some pass directly to the **caecal vein**. These veins are radicles of the portal system.

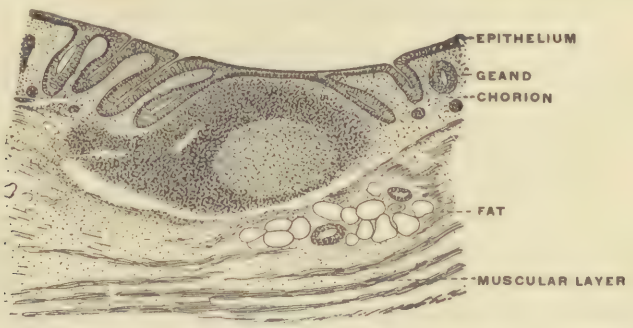


FIG. 917.—Transverse section of the vermiform appendix of man. (Kölliker.)

Lymphatic System of the Caecum and Appendix (Fig. 918).—Surrounding the base of each lymph-follicle in the submucous tissue of the appendix is a lymph-space, which Lockwood calls the **follicular** or **basilar lymph-sinus**. This sinus communicates with the lymphatics of the submucous coat, "which again communicate freely through the hiatus muscularis with those of the peritoneum and of the mesoappendix."[1] The collecting trunks from the caecum and appendix follow the

[1] Appendicitis, its Pathology and Surgery. By Charles Barrett Lockwood.

blood-vessels (Fig. 918). The anterior collecting trunks of the caecum pass through several small glands in the anterior ileo-caecal fold, and terminate in

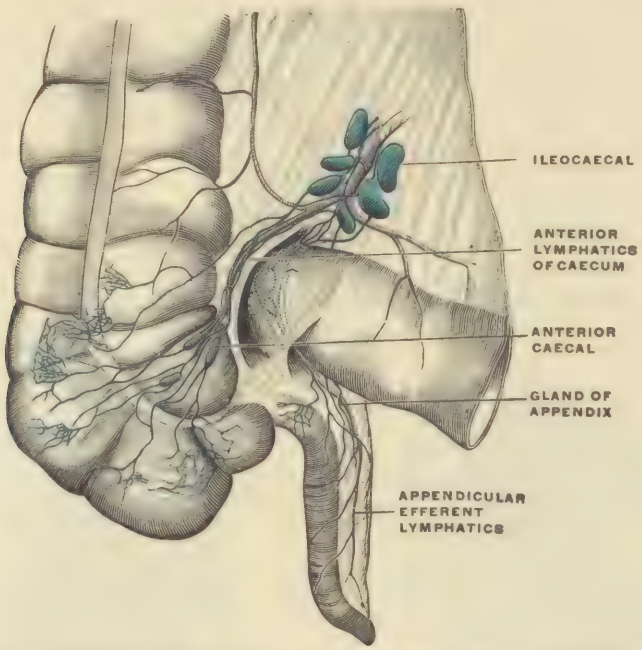


FIG. 918.—Lymphatics of the caecum and appendix, anterior view. (Poirier and Charpy.)

glands along the ileo-colic artery (Fig. 918). The posterior collecting trunks pass through some small glands and terminate in glands along the ileo-colic artery. The appendicular collecting trunks enter the mesoappendix. There are usually four of them, sometimes five. Some of them traverse a gland constantly present at the ileo-caecal angle (Clado). Another gland is constant. It is situated beneath the ileo-colic fossa (Lockwood and Rolleston). The

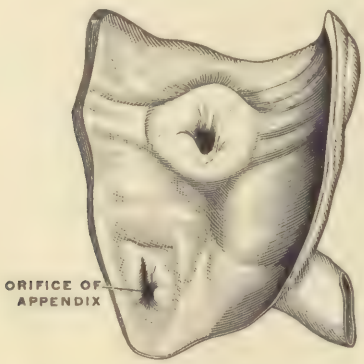


FIG. 919.—Ileo-caecal valve of the circular type. (Poirier.)

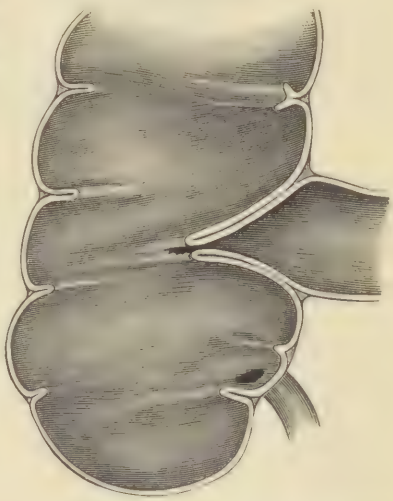


FIG. 920.—Vertical section through the caecum and ileo-caecal valve. (Gegenbauer.)

editor subscribes to Lockwood's statement that in appendicitis there is often a chain of inflamed glands along the inner side of the ascending colon behind the

ascending mesocolon. Hence this is one road taken by the lymphatics of the appendix. The others pass to the mesenteric glands.

The Ileo-caecal Valve or the Valve of Bauhin (*valvula coli*) (Figs. 919, 920, 921, and 922).—The lower end of the ileum terminates by opening into the inner and back part of the large intestine, at the point of junction of the caecum with the colon. The opening is guarded by a valve, consisting of two semilunar segments, an **upper** or **colic segment** (*labium superius*) and a **lower** or **caecal segment** (*labium inferius*), which project into the lumen of the large intestine. The upper one, nearly horizontal in direction, is attached by its convex border to the point of junction of the ileum with the colon; the lower segment, which is more concave and longer, is attached to the point of junction of the ileum with the caecum. At each end of the aperture the two segments of the valve coalesce, and are continued as a narrow membranous ridge around the canal for a short distance. Each **ridge** is known as the **retinaculum** or **frenulum of the valve** (*frenulum valvulae coli*). The left or anterior end of the aperture is rounded; the right or posterior is narrow

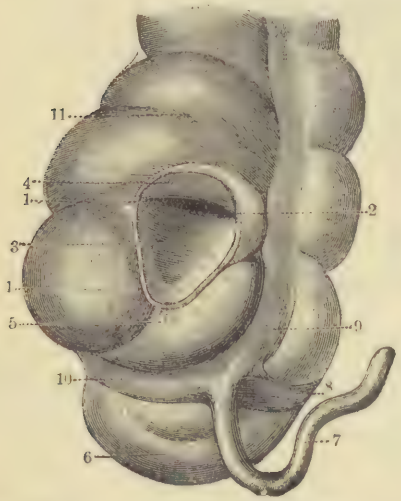


FIG. 921.—Cæcum and vermiform appendix. 1, ileum; 2, orifice of valve; 3, inferior segment; 4, superior segment; 5, long muscular fibres from ileum; 6, cul-de-sac of caecum; 7, appendix; 8, posterior taenia; 9, internal taenia; 10, anterior taenia; 11, sacculus. (Sappey.)

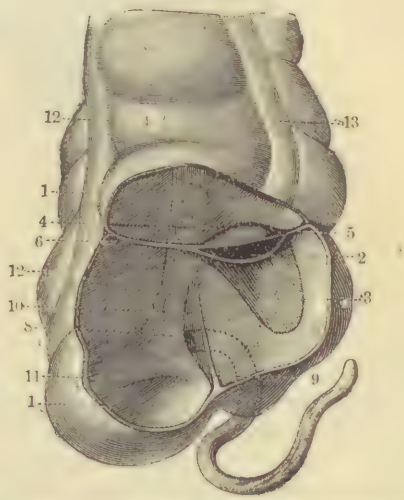


FIG. 922.—Ileo-caecal valve. 1, edge of caecum; 2, orifice of valve; 3, inferior segment; 4, superior segment; 5 and 6, fraena; 7, appendix; 8, mouth; 9, semilunar fold; 10, posterior taenia; 11, 12, 12, anterior taenia; 13, internal taenia. (Sappey.)

and pointed. In the formation of the valve the termination of the small intestine invaginates for a short distance into the lumen of the large intestine (Fig. 920), the invaginated portion of the wall of the small intestine uniting with a corresponding portion of the wall of the large intestine.

Each segment of the valve is formed by a reduplication of the mucous membrane and of the circular muscular fibres of the intestine, the longitudinal fibres and peritoneum being continued uninterruptedly across from one portion of the intestine to the other. When the longitudinal fibres and peritoneum are divided or removed, the ileum may be drawn outward, and all traces of the valve will be lost, the ileum appearing to open into the large intestine by a funnel-shaped orifice of large size.

The surface of each segment of the valve directed toward the ileum possesses villi, and presents the characteristic structure of the mucous membrane of the small intestine; while that turned toward the large intestine is destitute of villi, and marked with the orifices of the numerous tubular glands peculiar to the mucous membrane of the large intestine. These differences in structure continue

as far as the free margins of the valve. When the caecum is distended it is supposed that the margins of the opening are approximated so as to prevent reflux into the ileum. It is known, however, that a very large enema which distends the caecum and colon may in part enter the ileum, being driven there by waves of reversed peristalsis. The valve resists, but a certain amount of pressure overcomes it. Some believe that the so-called ileo-caecal valve is not a valve, but a distinct sphincter. This has been demonstrated to be true in cats and dogs, but lacks demonstration in man (p. 1323).

The Colon.

The colon is divided into four parts—the **ascending, transverse** and **descending colon,** and the **sigmoid flexure.**

The Ascending Colon (*colon ascendens*).—The ascending colon is smaller than the caecum, with which it is continuous. It passes upward, from its commencement at the frenula of the caecum, opposite the ileo-caecal valve, to the under surface of the right lobe of the liver, on the right of the gall-bladder, where it is lodged in a shallow depression on the liver, the **impressio colica**; here it bends abruptly inward to the left, forming the **hepatic flexure** (*flexura coli dextra*). It is retained in contact with the posterior wall of the abdomen by the peritoneum, which covers its anterior surface and sides, its posterior surface being connected by loose areolar tissue with the Quadratus lumborum and Transversalis muscles, and with the front of the lower and outer part of the right kidney (Fig. 923). Sometimes the peritoneum almost completely invests it, and forms a distinct but short mesocolon[1] (p. 1259). It is in relation, in front, with the convolutions of the ileum and the abdominal parietes.

The Transverse Colon (*colon transversum*) (Fig. 858).—The transverse colon, the longest part of the large intestine, passes transversely from right to left across the abdomen, opposite the confines of the epigastric and umbilical zones, into the left hypochondriac region, where it curves downward beneath the lower end of the spleen, forming the **splenic flexure** (*flexura coli sinistra*). In its course the transverse colon describes an arch, the concavity of which is directed backward toward the vertebral column and a little upward; hence the name **transverse arch of the colon.** This is the most movable part of the colon, being almost completely invested by peritoneum, and connected to the spine behind by a large and wide duplicature of that membrane, the **transverse mesocolon** (Fig. 863). The transverse colon is in relation, by its upper surface with the liver and gall-bladder, the great curvature of the stomach, and the lower end of the spleen; by its under surface, with the small intestines; by its anterior surface, with the anterior layers of the great omentum and the abdominal parietes; its posterior surface on the right side is in relation with the second portion of the duodenum, and on the left side is in contact with some of the convolutions of the jejunum and ileum.

The Descending Colon (*colon descendens*).—The descending colon passes downward through the left hypochondriac and lumbar regions along the outer border of the left kidney. At the lower end of the kidney it turns inward toward the outer border of the Psoas muscle, along which it descends to the crest of the ilium, where it terminates in the sigmoid flexure. At its commencement it is connected with the Diaphragm by a fold of peritoneum, the **phreno-colic ligament** (see p. 1259). It is retained in position by the peritoneum, which covers its

[1] Treves states that after a careful examination of one hundred subjects, he found that in fifty-two there was neither an ascending nor a descending mesocolon. In twenty-two there was a descending mesocolon, but no trace of a corresponding fold on the other side. In fourteen subjects there was a mesocolon to both the ascending and the descending segments of the bowel; while in the remaining twelve there was an ascending mesocolon, but no corresponding fold on the left side. It follows, therefore, that in performing lumbar colostomy a mesocolon may be expected on the left side in 36 per cent. of all cases, and on the right in 26 per cent. (The Anatomy of the Intestinal Canal and Peritoneum in Man, 1885, p. 55.)—Ed. of 15th English edition.

anterior surface and sides, its posterior surface being connected by areolar tissue with the outer border of the left kidney, and the Quadratus lumborum and

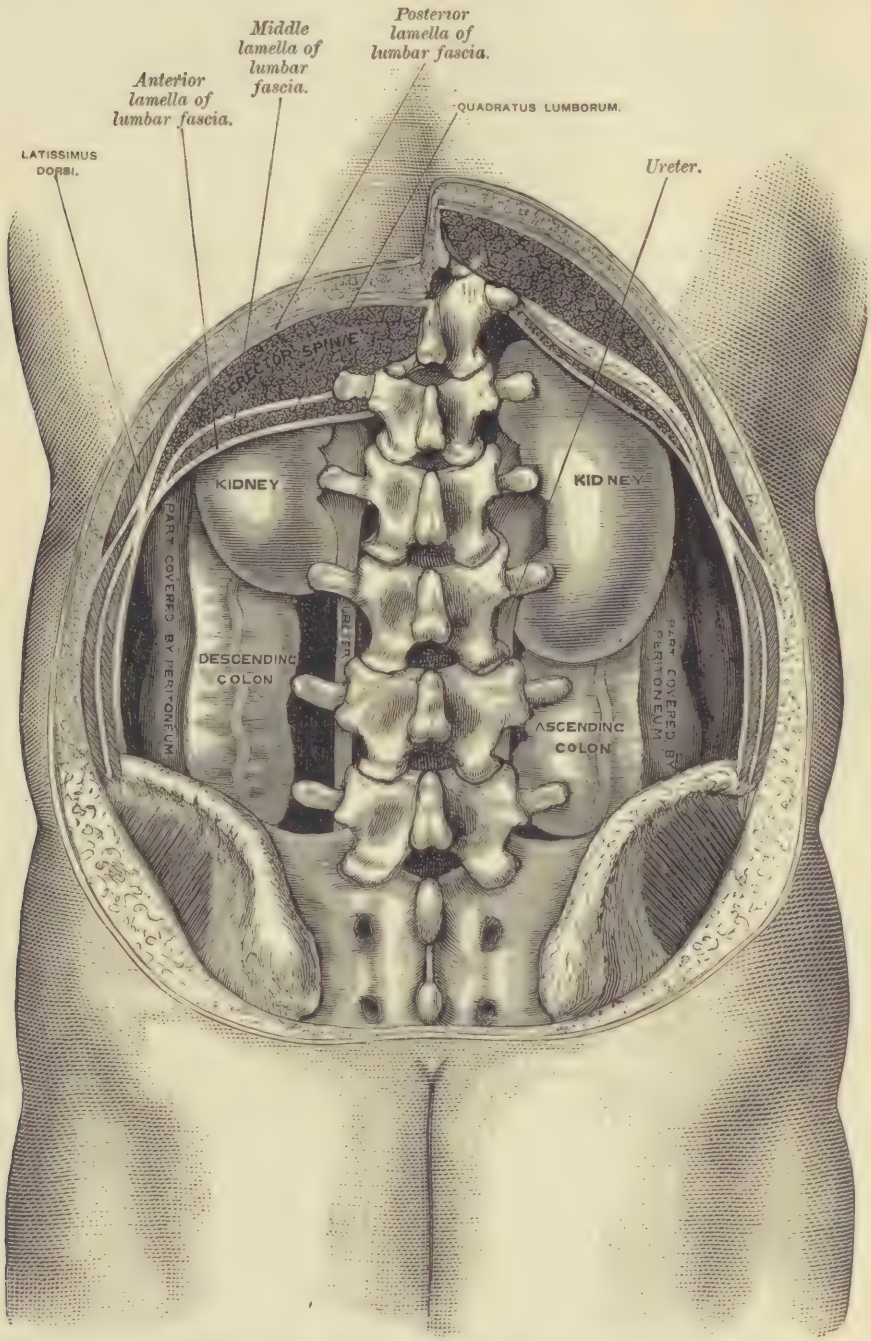


Fig. 923.—Diagram of the relations of the large intestine and kidneys, from behind.

Transversalis muscles (Fig. 863). It is smaller in calibre and more deeply placed than the ascending colon, and is more frequently covered with peritoneum on its posterior surface than the ascending colon (Treves).

The **Sigmoid Flexure, Pelvic Colon** or **Sigmoid Colon** (*colon sigmoideum*) (Figs. 924, 925, 926, and 927) is the narrowest part of the colon; it is situated in the left iliac fossa, commencing from the termination of the descending colon, at the margin of the crest of the ilium, and then forming a loop, which varies in length and position, and which terminates in the rectum at the level of the attachment of the mesentery upon the front of the third sacral vertebra. It passes downward about two inches parallel to the outer border of the Psoas muscle, then taking a transverse direction enters the cavity of the pelvis, crosses this cavity from left to right and a little upward to the lower margin of the right iliac fossa; "from this point it passes downward, backward, and inward along the anterior surface of the sacrum to its junction with the rectum."[1] It is surrounded with the peritoneum and is attached to the poste-

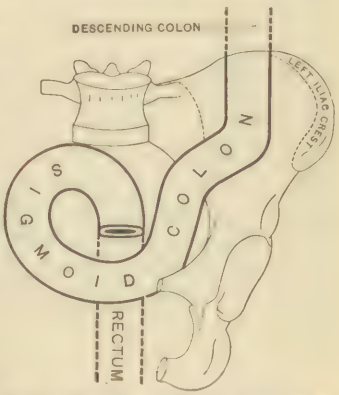


FIG. 924.—Sigmoid colon, front view. Semidiagrammatic. (Testut.)

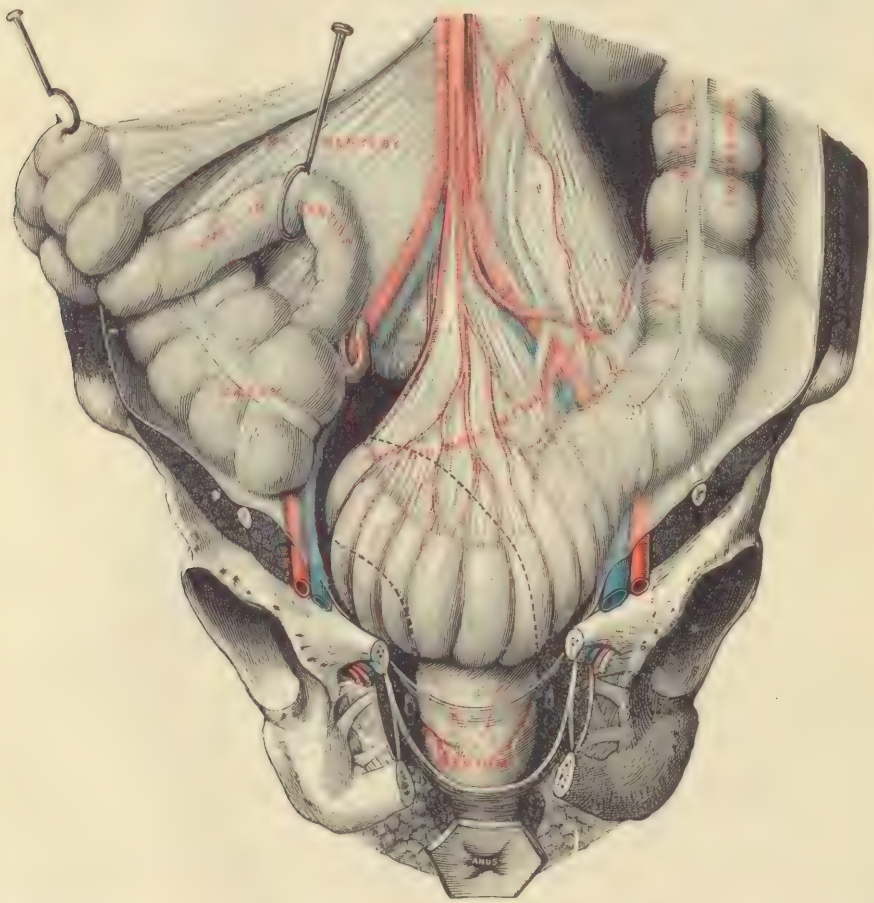


FIG. 925.—Sigmoid colon and rectum, front view. The broken lines indicate the situation of the concealed part of the sigmoid colon. The small intestine is drawn away, and the anus is turned forward. (Testut.)

rior abdominal wall by the **mesosigmoid**, a continuation of the mesocolon, but which greatly exceeds the latter in length, hence the sigmoid is the most mobile

[1] Tuttle, Diseases of the Anus, Rectum, and Pelvic Colon.

portion of the large intestine. Tuttle divides the sigmoid into four portions. The **first** or **vertical portion**; the **second** or **transverse portion**; the **third portion**, which is a loop and is concave upward if the sigmoid occupies the pelvis, and is concave downward if it occupies the abdomen; the **fourth portion**, which is curved irregularly in the hollow of the sacrum, and which joins the rectum as often from the right as from the left. When the sigmoid is lifted up and to the right and the mesosigmoid is put slightly upon the stretch, an opening is seen at the parietal border of the left layer of the mesosigmoid. This opening leads into a *cul-de-sac*, the **intersigmoid fossa**. When the sigmoid is empty most of it falls into the recto-vesical or recto-vaginal space (Fig. 925). When distended it mounts up into the abdomen, reaching to or even above the umbilicus. The sigmoid flexure is in relation in front with the small intestine and abdominal parietes. The sigmoid mesocolon is attached to a line running downward and inward from the crest of the ilium, across the Psoas muscle (Fig. 863).

The Rectum (**Intestinum Rectum**) (Figs. 924, 925, 926, 927, 928, 929).

The rectum is the terminal part of the large intestine, and extends from the termination of the sigmoid flexure to the level of the semilunar valves of Mor-

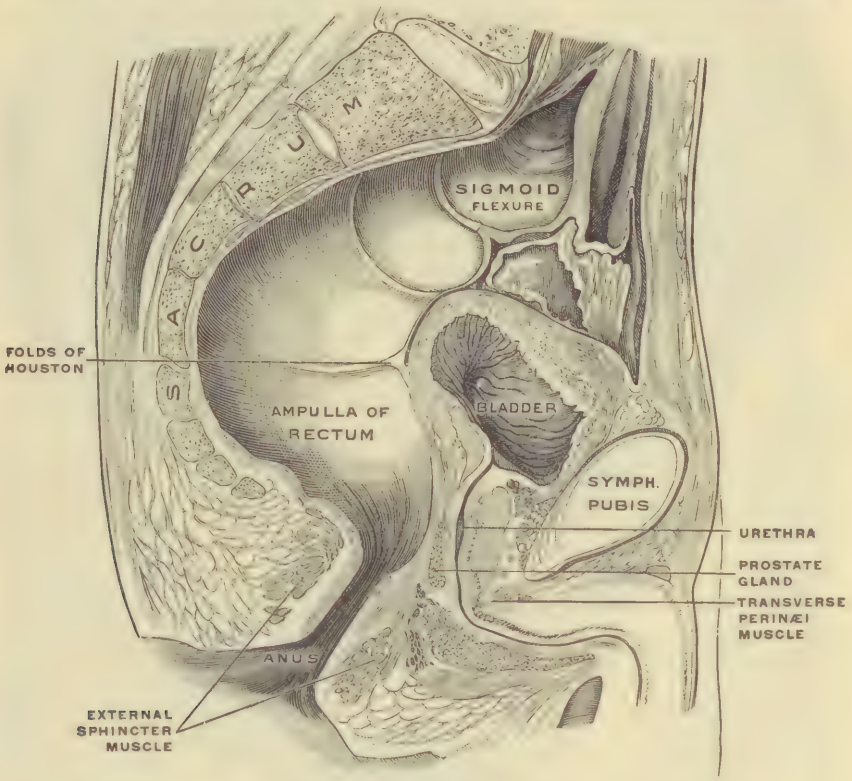


FIG. 926.—Sagittal section in the median line of the pelvis. (Poirier and Charpy.)

gagni. The sigmoid flexure terminates at the level of the attachment of the mesentery in front of the third sacral vertebra. This definition is practical and useful. It was suggested by Sir Frederick Treves. "It gives to the organ definite limits; it separates the mobile from the immobile portion of the gut; it marks the line where the course of the blood-supply changes; it indicates the

point where the three longitudinal muscular bands of the colon spread out and become more or less equally distributed around the gut; and, finally, it marks a point at which there is always a decided narrowing in calibre, indicating the juncture of the rectum with the pelvic colon."[1] The old division added to this the so-called **first part of the rectum**, which we consider as part of the sigmoid colon. The rectum is divided into two portions, a **superior** and an **inferior**. The **superior** or **sacrococcygeal portion of the rectum** (*flexura sacralis*) curves downward with the concavity forward and upward in front of the sacrum and coccyx, and is continued as far as the apex of the prostate gland, about an inch in front of the tip of the coccyx. The **inferior** or **prostatic portion** (*flexura perinealis*) begins at this point. The bowel is directed downward and backward, being convex in front, and terminates at the beginning of the anus at the level of the semilunar valves of Morgagni. The **inferior** or **prostatic portion of the rectum** is described by Symington as the **anal canal**.

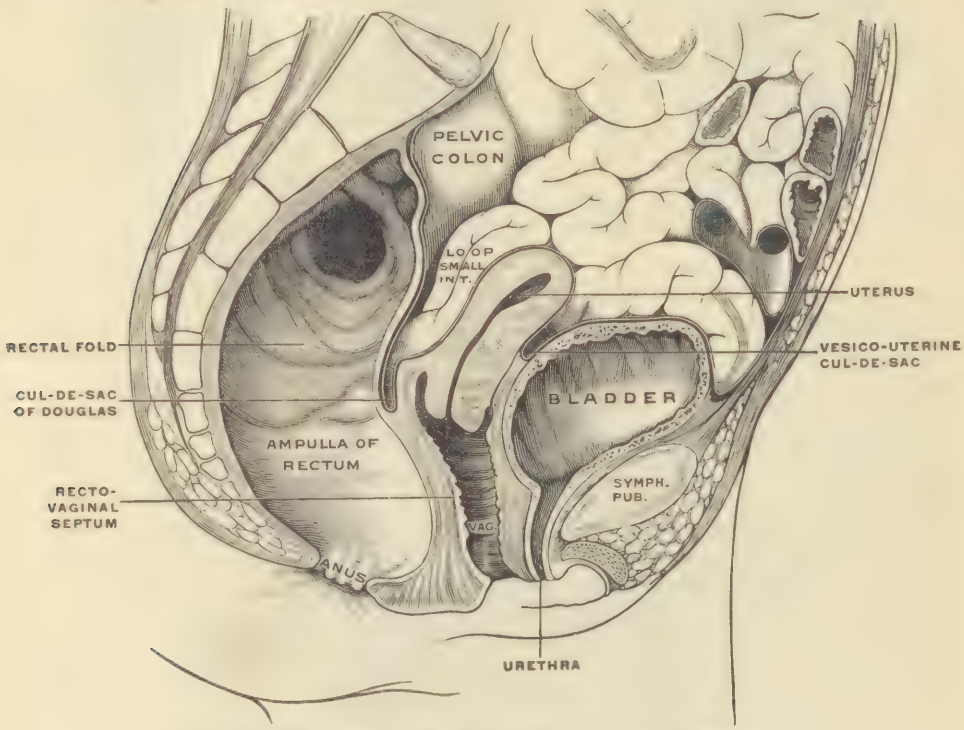


FIG. 927.—Median sagittal section of the female pelvis. (Luschka.)

Curves of the Rectum.—It will be seen, therefore, that the rectum presents two antero-posterior curves: the first, with its convexity backward, is due to the conformation of the sacro-coccygeal column, and represents the arc of a circle, the centre of which is opposite the third sacral vertebra. The lower one has its convexity forward, and is angular. Its centre corresponds to a line drawn between the anterior parts of the ischial tuberosities. Two lateral curves are also described: the one to the right, opposite the junction of the third and fourth sacral vertebrae; the other to the left, opposite the sacro-coccygeal articulation. They are of little importance.

The adult rectum as here described has a length of from four to six inches in men, and from three and five-eighths to five and one-eighth inches in women. According to Tuttle the length of the rectum depends to some degree on the size of the

[1] A Treatise on Diseases of the Anus, Rectum, and Pelvic Colon. By James P. Tuttle.

subject, and is somewhat greater in the old than in the young. The prostatic portion is the narrowest portion of the rectum. The widest part of the rectum is the **ampulla recti** just above the anal canal (Figs. 926 and 927). The prostatic portion has no peritoneal investment whatever and includes the lower two inches of the superior portion of the rectum. When the rectum is empty it is a mere slit, the anterior and posterior walls being in contact. When distended it is "irregularly cylindrical" (Tuttle). At and above the level of the third sacral vertebra the gut is entirely surrounded by peritoneum, and there is a mesosigmoid. This is the mesorectum of those who describe the lower pelvic colon as the first part of the rectum. At the level of the third sacral vertebra the true rectum begins, and the true rectum has no mesorectum. The rectum is covered in front and laterally by peritoneum at its upper part; gradually the peritoneum leaves its sides, and about an inch above the prostate is reflected from the anterior surface of the bowel on to the posterior wall of the bladder in the male, and the upper fifth of the posterior wall of the vagina in the female, forming the **recto-vesical** or **recto-vaginal pouche** (*excavatio rectovesicalis* and *excavatio rectouterina*), as the case may be (Fig. 853). The balance of the rectum has no peritoneal covering. The level at which the peritoneum leaves the anterior wall of the rectum to be reflected on to the viscus in front of it is of considerable importance from a surgical point of view, in connection with removal of the lower part of the rectum. It is higher in the male than in the female. In the former the height of the recto-vesical pouch is about three inches; that is to say, the height to which an ordinary index finger can reach from the anus. In the female the height of the recto-vaginal pouch is about two and a quarter inches from the anal orifice.

Fig. 928. Diagram of rectum, showing Houston's valves in the interior. (Cunningham.)

The upper or sacro-coccygeal portion of the rectum is in relation, in front, in the male, with the recto-vesical pouch, the triangular portion of the base of the bladder, the vesiculae seminales, and vasa deferentia, and more anteriorly with the under surface of the prostate. In the female, with the posterior wall of the vagina below, and the recto-vaginal pouch above, in which are some convolutions of the small intestine (Fig. 927). To the sides below the peritoneal reflections, the rectum is surrounded by cellular tissue in which on each side lie the lateral sacral artery and the bifurcated hypogastric plexus. This portion of the rectum is separated from the sacrum and coccyx by an interval, the **retro-rectal space**, which is filled with cellular tissue. The superior portion of the distended rectum is in contact posteriorly and on each side with the sacral plexus, ganglia of the sympathetic, and the fascial origin of the pyramidalis muscle (Tuttle). The lower or prostatic portion in men is in relation anteriorly with the prostate gland and the membranous urethra; in women with the posterior wall of the vagina. The lower end of the rectum takes a backward turn, and the uro-genital organs turn forward; the intervening space is called the **perineum**. In the female, the fibro-fatty and muscular tissue which occupies this space is called the **perineal body**. The prostatic portion of the rectum is invested by the Internal sphincter, supported by the Levatores ani muscles, and surrounded at its termination by the External sphincter; in the empty condition it presents the appearance of a longitudinal slit. Posteriorly the lower part of the rectum is in contact with cellular tissue, which separates it from the coccygeal gland and the coccyx.

Supports of the Rectum.—The rectum as it has been described in these pages is a fixed tube. The upper portion of the rectum is supported by "the inferior mesenteric arteries and the fibrous sheaths which surround them" (Tuttle); by the peritoneal folds which attach it to the sacrum; and by the peritoneal folds which pass in front to the bladder (*plicae rectovesicales*), or to the uterus (*plicae rectouterinae*), and laterally to the pelvis. The middle of the rectum receives some support from the lateral sacral arteries and their fibrous sheaths. The lower portion of the rectum is supported by the Levator ani, External sphincter, and Recto-coccygeus muscles.

Blood-vessels and Lymphatics of Rectum.—See pp. 1320 and 1322.

Nerves of Rectum.—See p. 1322.

Structure of Rectum.—See p. 1316.

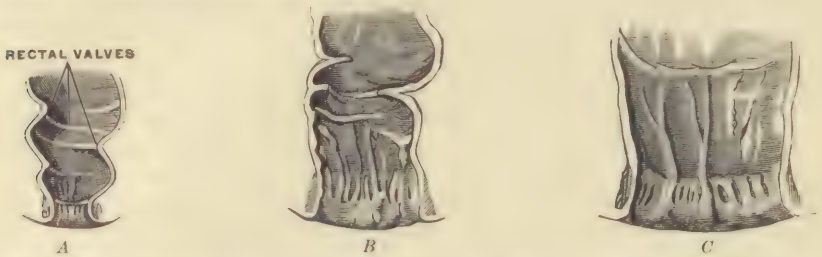


FIG. 929.—The anal canal and lower part of the rectum in the fœtus. *A*, aged four to five months; *B*, six months; *C*, nine months. In each the anal canal is distinctly marked off from the rectum proper; the columns of Morgagni and the rectal valves are distinct. (Cunningham.)

The Common Anal Canal (*pars analis recti*) (Figs. 929 and 930).—The anal canal is the third portion of the rectum of the older descriptions. It begins where the true rectum ends. This canal is the portion of the intestinal tract which

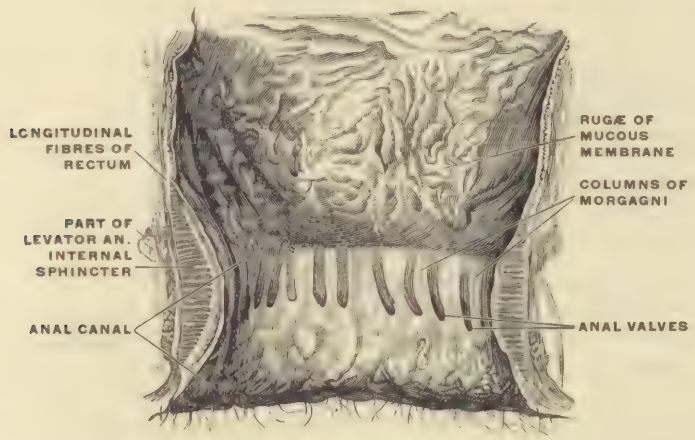


FIG. 930.—The interior of the anal canal and lower part of the rectum, showing the columns of Morgagni and the anal valves between their lower ends. The columns were more numerous in the specimen than usual. (Cunningham.)

is below the distribution of genuine mucous membrane, and is just posterior to the middle of a line drawn from one tuberosity to the other. It lies between the true skin and the upper borders of the semilunar valves of Morgagni. When at rest it is a mere slit placed antero-posteriorly. The external opening of the anal canal is the **anus**. The skin about the anus is pigmented, is thrown into radiating folds by the contraction of the External sphincter muscle, and contains hairs, sebaceous glands, and sudoriparous glands (*glandulae circumanales*). Ascending into the canal, it alters its character and becomes muco-cutaneous,

and true mucous membrane appears at the rectum proper. Back of the anus is a median cutaneous fold passing posterior to the coccyx and called the **anal raphé.** In front of the anus is a median fold which, in the female, passes forward and merges with the labia major and in the male continues into the raphé of the scrotum. This is called the **perineal raphé.** The length of the anal canal is three-quarters to one inch. "Its circumference varies from 3 cm. (one and three-sixteenths inches) in normal condition to 15 cm. (five and five-sixteenths inches) in disease, following injury or vicious practices. The average anus will admit a cylinder of 65 mm. in circumference without rupturing the mucous membrane."[1]

Relations of the Anal Canal.—It is surrounded by the external and internal sphincter muscles, and above by the Levatores ani. To each side is the ischio-rectal fossa containing fat. Between the anal canal and the coccyx is a collection of muscular fibres and connective tissue, the **ano-coccygeal body of Symington.** In front, in the male, is the bulb of the urethra and the base of the triangular ligament; in the female, is the perineal body, which separates the anus from the vagina. There are three layers in the wall of the anal canal:

1. The **muco-cutaneous layer,** which contains glands, blood-vessels, and numererous nerve-endings. The lower portion is covered with pavement-epithelium, but gradually there is a transition, and at the beginning of the rectum proper the epithelium is entirely columnar. The **valves of Morgagni,** the **anal valves** or the **semilunar valves** (Figs. 930 and 931) are in the upper portion of the anal canal between the lower ends of the columns of Morgagni (Figs. 930 and 931). Above the valves the canal is lined by transitional mucous membrane, below them by modified skin.

The ano-rectal line is not straight, but is irregularly dentated by trivial elevations, each of which is papilliform at its summit. According to Tuttle, these elevations number from five to eight. About one-fifth of an inch below the ano-rectal line is the depression known as **Hilton's white line** (*annulus haemorrhoidalis*) (Fig. 931). This line is somewhat indistinct to sight, but can always be felt with the finger. It marks the junction of the External with the Internal sphincter. Above Hilton's line are some mucous crypts and also dilatations produced by the internal haemorrhoidal plexus of veins (Fig. 931).

2. The **fibro-cellular layer** is beneath the mucous membrane. Above Hilton's line it is composed of cellular tissue; below it is a thin fascia-like layer which joins the superficial fascia.

The anal canal is surrounded by longitudinal fibres from the rectum, fibres from the Levator ani, the lower portion of the Internal sphincter, and particularly by the External sphincter.

Blood-vessels, Lymphatics, and Nerves of Anus.—See pp. 1321 and 1322.

Structure of Large Intestine (including the Rectum and Anal Canal).—The large intestine has four coats—**serous, muscular, areolar** or **submucous** and **mucous.**

The Serous Coat (*tunica serosa*).—The serous coat is derived from the peritoneum, and invests the different portions of the large intestine to a variable extent. The caecum is completely covered by the serous membrane, except in a small percentage of cases (5 or 6 per cent.), where a small portion of the upper end of the posterior surface is uncovered. The ascending and descending colon are usually covered only in front and at the sides; a variable amount of the posterior surface is uncovered. The transverse colon is almost completely invested, the parts corresponding to the attachment of the great omentum and transverse mesocolon being alone excepted. The sigmoid flexure is completely surrounded, except along the line to which the sigmoid mesocolon is attached. The upper two-thirds of the rectum is covered in front and laterally by the peritoneum, but not posteriorly, between the two posterior folds of peritoneum, the so-called mesorectum; later

[1] Diseases of the Anus, Rectum, and Pelvic Colon. By James P. Tuttle.

it is covered only on its anterior surface; and the lower portion is entirely devoid of any serous covering. In the course of the colon the peritoneal coat is thrown into a number of small pouches filled with fat, called **appendices epiploicæ**. They are chiefly appended to the transverse colon, and are particularly numerous along the anterior band.

The Muscular Coat (*tunica muscularis*).—The muscular coat consists of an **external longitudinal** and an **internal circular layer** of muscular fibres.

The **Longitudinal Fibres**, although found to a certain extent all around the intestine, do not form a uniform layer over the whole surface of the large intestine. In the caecum and colon they are especially collected into three flat **longitudinal bands** or **taeniae** (*taeniae coli*) (Figs. 910 and 911), each being about half an inch in width. These bands commence at the base of the vermiform appendix, which structure is surrounded by a uniform layer of longitudinal muscular fibres. The bands pass from the base of the appendix to the rectum. At this point they broaden, fuse, and surround the rectum. On the ascending, descending, and sigmoid colon the **mesocolic band** (*taenia mesocolica*) is posterior and internal; the **omental band** (*taenia omentalis*) is posterior and external; the **free band** (*taenia libera*) is anterior. On the transverse colon the taenia libera is inferior; the taenia mesocolica is posterior; the taenia omentalis is anterior and superior. These bands are one-sixth shorter than the other coats of the intestine to which they are applied, and serve to produce the **sacculi** (Fig. 911), which are characteristic of the caecum and colon; accordingly, when they are dissected off, the tube can be lengthened, and its sacculated character becomes lost. The sacculations are called **haustra coli**. There are three rows of the sacculations separated from each other by the longitudinal bands. These pouches are also subdivided by transverse furrows which correspond to concave folds of mucous membrane, called **semilunar folds** (*plicae semilunares coli*). In the sigmoid flexure the longitudinal fibres become more scattered; but upon its lower part, and around the rectum, they spread out and form a layer which completely encircles this portion of the gut, but is thicker on the anterior and posterior surfaces, where two accentuations exist, than on the lateral surfaces. In the rectum the external fibres of the longitudinal layer descend and are inserted into the fascia covering the Levator ani muscle. The middle fibres are mingled with descending fibres of the Levator ani and terminate by attachment to the rectal wall. The internal fibres descend between the External and Internal sphincter muscles and are inserted into the superficial fascia around the anal margin. The lower part of the rectum is surrounded by the Levator ani muscle (p. 451). In addition to the muscular fibres of the bowels, two bands of plain muscular tissue are to be noted. They arise from the front of the second and third coccygeal vertebrae, and pass downward and forward to blend with the longitudinal muscular fibres on the posterior wall of the rectum. Each is known as the **rectococcygeal muscle** (*m. rectococcygeus*).

The **Circular Fibres** form a thin layer over the caecum and colon, being especially accumulated in the intervals between the sacculi. In the rectum the circular fibres constitute a thick coat at some portions of the circumference and a thinner coat at others. The circular fibres are thickened at every flexure. The thickenings only partly surround the gut, and hence are not to be considered as additional sphincters. Tuttle calls them the **semicircular muscles of the rectum**. These semicircular muscles are opposite the insertion of Houston's valves. At the lower end of the rectum the circular fibres become very numerous and constitute the **Internal sphincter muscle** (*m. sphincter ani internus*) (Fig. 930). Tuttle describes it as follows: "This muscle, composed of an aggregation of circular fibres, begins about 4 cm. above the anal margin, and gradually increases in thickness until it reaches the ano-rectal line, after which it thins out again and disappears about the middle

of the anal canal. Its width from above downward averages 1 to 3 cm. (three-fifths of an inch to one and one-fifth inches). Its thickness is so variable that no accurate measurement can be given. Its lower fibres are below and within the grasp of the External sphincter, from which it is separated by a narrow zone of connective tissue. A depressed zone, not always perceptible to the eye, but appreciable by digital touch, marks the line of division between these two muscles."[1] The Internal sphincter is an involuntary muscle. The external sphincter muscle is not a portion of the wall of the bowel. It is described on pages 450 and 451.

The Areolar Coat or Submucous Coat (*tela submucosa*).—The areolar or submucous coat connects the muscular and mucous layers closely together. This coat is thicker, looser, and more elastic in the rectum than elsewhere. In this coat are the blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics.

The Mucous Membrane (*tunica mucosa*).—The mucous membrane, in the caecum and colon, is pale, smooth, destitute of villi, and raised into numerous crescentic folds which correspond to the intervals between the sacculi. In the rectum it is thicker, of a darker color, more vascular, and connected loosely to the muscular coat, as in the oesophagus.

The rectum contains certain horizontal folds. Most of them disappear when the gut is distended, but some of them do not disappear, but remain as distinct

FIG. 931.—Inner wall of the lower end of the rectum and anus. On the right the mucous membrane has been removed to show the dilatation of the veins and how they pass through the muscular wall to anastomose with the external haemorrhoidal plexus. (Luschka.)

folds with free crescentic edges. These permanent folds were first described by Houston, of Dublin, and are known as **rectal valves** or **Houston's valves** (*plicae transversales recti*) (Figs. 928 and 929). Each fold surrounds more than one-third of the gut, and is composed of mucous membrane, submucous tissue, and a layer from the circular muscular layer of the gut. There may be three, four, or five of these folds. Three of them are constant. One is on the right rectal wall, about the point of peritoneal reflection; another is on the left side, about one inch above the margin of the anal canal. A third is on the rectal wall, either toward the right or left, at the point where the rectum joins the front of the sigmoid. These shelf-like valves are not perfectly flat, for on the superior surface of each is a depression.

The borders of a valve are thinner than its base and are very flexible. These valves support the mass of faeces as it descends, and give to it a rotary motion

[1] Diseases of the Anus, Rectum, and Pelvic Colon. By James P. Tuttle.

(Tuttle). In the lower end of the rectum the mucous membrane forms longitudinal folds known as the **columns of Morgagni** or the **rectal columns** (*columnae rectales* [*Morgagni*]) (Figs. 930 and 931). There are from five to ten of these folds, each of which is about one-half an inch long, and they contain longitudinal muscle-fibres. They are most prominent when the sphincter contracts. The base of each column helps to form the upper margin of the anal canal. The outer angle of each column below passes into a semilunar valve. The grooves between the columns are shallow above and deeper below, and end in the semilunar valves. The **semilunar valves, valves of Morgagni** or **anal valves** (Figs. 930 and 931) are folds which stretch from the base of one column to another, and form the **anal pockets** or **crypts of Morgagni** (*sinus rectales*). These pockets are about 5 mm. in depth. They are most marked posteriorly (Ball), but none exists in either the anterior or posterior commissure (Tuttle). Below the sinuses is the **white line of Hilton** (*annulus haemorrhoidalis*) (Fig. 931), which reaches to the region where hair and sebaceous glands appear.

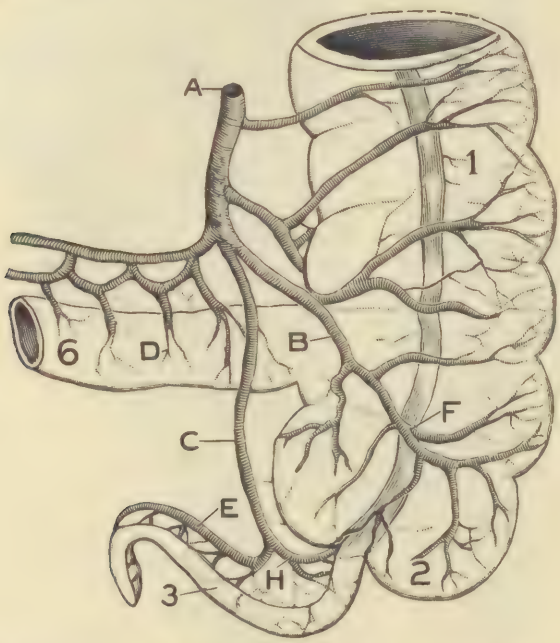


FIG. 932.—The arterial circulation in the dorsal posterior surface of the caecum and appendix. *A*, ileo-colic artery; *B* and *F*, posterior caecal artery; *C*, appendicular artery; *E*, appendicular artery for free end; *H*, artery for basal end of appendix; 1, ascending or right colon; 2, external sacculus of the caecum; 3, appendix; 6, ileum; *D*, arteries on the dorsal surface of the ileum. (Byron Robinson.)

As in the small intestine, the mucous membrane consists of a muscular layer, the **muscularis mucosae** (Fig. 935); of a quantity of retiform tissue in which the vessels ramify; of a basement-membrane and epithelium, which is of the columnar variety, and exactly resembles the epithelium found in the small intestine. In the rectum the epithelial cells are columnar; at the lower end of the tube, however, they begin to change into stratified polyhedrons and prisms. The mucous membrane of the large intestine presents for examination simple **follicles** and **solitary glands**.

The **Simple Follicles, Intestinal Glands, Crypts** or **Glands of Lieberkühn** (*glandulae intestinales* [*Lieberkuhni*]) (Fig. 935) are minute tubular prolongations of the mucous membrane arranged perpendicularly, side by side, over its entire surface; they are longer, more numerous, and are placed in much closer apposition than those of the small intestine; and they open by minute rounded orifices upon the surface, giving it a cribriform appearance.

The **Solitary Glands** (*noduli lymphatici solitarii*) (Fig. 935) in the large intestine are most abundant in the caecum and vermiform appendix, but are irregularly scattered also over the rest of the intestine. They are similar to those of the small intestine.

Vessels of the Large Intestine.—The **arteries** supplying the large intestine give off large branches, which ramify between the muscular coats supplying them, and, after dividing into small vessels in the submucous tissue, pass to the mucous membrane. The caecum, the appendix, and the ileo-caecal valve are supplied by the branches from the anastomotic loops between the **right colic** and **ileo-**

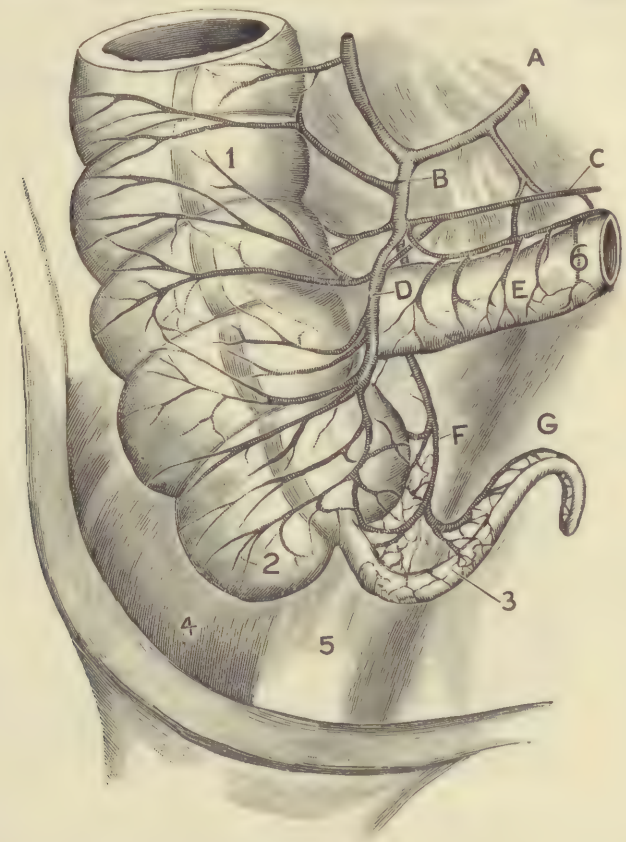


FIG. 933.—The arterial blood-supply of the anterior (ventral) surface of the caecum and appendix. *A*, ileo-colic artery; *B*, caecal-appendicular artery; *D*, anterior caecal artery; *F* and *G*, appendicular artery. Note that the caecal and appendicular arteries anastomose by fine capillaries, both ventral and dorsally; *C*, iliac artery; 1, right colon; 2, external sacculus of caecum (to right of taenium coli); 3, appendix; 4, Iliac, and 5, Psoas muscles. (Byron Robinson.)

colic branches of the superior mesenteric artery (Figs. 932 and 933). In males the sole blood-supply of the appendix is by the appendicular artery from the posterior ileo-caecal branch of the ileo-caecal artery (Fig. 933). In the female the appendix occasionally receives an additional vessel along the appendiculo-ovarian ligament from the ovarian artery. The ascending colon is supplied by the **right colic,** and the transverse colon by the **middle colic branch of the superior mesenteric.** The descending colon is supplied by the **left colic branch of the inferior mesenteric,** and the sigmoid flexure by the **sigmoid branches of the inferior mesenteric.** The rectum (Fig. 934) is supplied mainly by the **superior haemorrhoidal branch of the inferior mesenteric,** but also at its lower end by the **middle haemorrhoidal from the internal iliac,** and the **inferior haemorrhoidal from the pudic artery.** The supe-

rior haemorrhoidal, the continuation of the superior mesenteric, divides into two branches, which run down either side of the rectum to within about five inches of the anus; they here split up into about six branches, which pierce the muscular coat and descend between it and the mucous membrane in a longitudinal direction, parallel with each other as far as the Internal sphincter, where they anastomose with the other haemorrhoidal arteries and form a series of loops around the anus. The **veins** of the large intestine correspond to the arteries and join the **superior** and **inferior mesenteric veins** which join the **portal vein.** The veins of the rectum (Fig. 934) commence in a plexus of vessels which surrounds the lower extremity of the intestinal canal. In the vessels forming this plexus are small saccular dilatations just within the margin of the anus (Figs. 931 and 934); from it about six vessels of considerable size are given off. These ascend between the muscular and mucous coats for about five inches, running parallel to each other; they then pierce the muscular coat, and, by their union, form a single trunk, the **superior haemorrhoidal vein,** which empties into the **inferior mesenteric branch of the portal vein.** This arrangement is termed the **haemorrhoidal plexus** (Fig. 473); it communicates with the tributaries of the middle and inferior haemorrhoidal veins at its commencement, and thus a communication is established between the systemic and portal circulations. The **inferior haemorrhoidal veins** empty into the internal pudic veins, and the **middle haemorrhoidal veins** empty into the internal iliac veins.

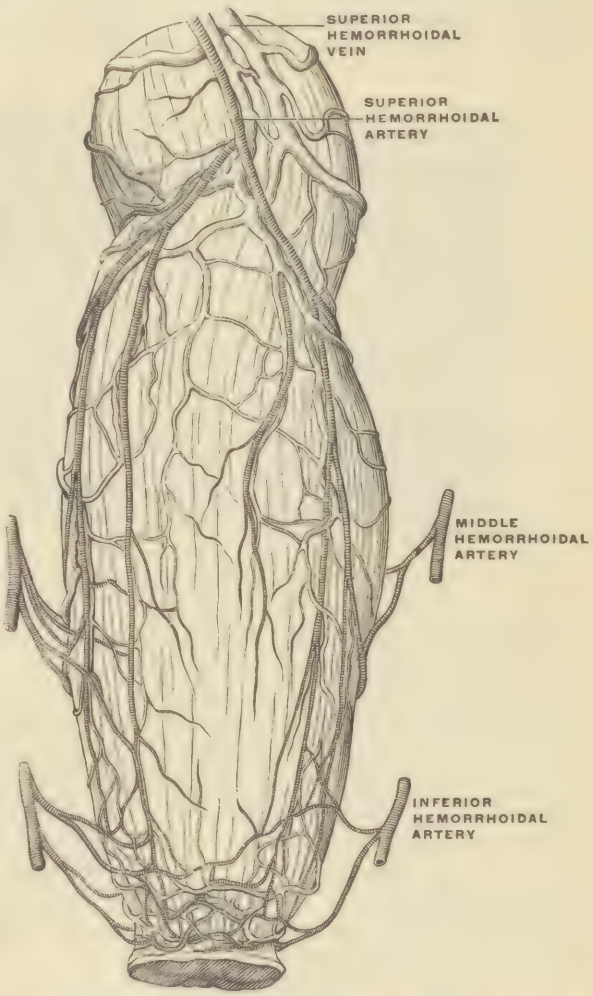


FIG. 934.—The blood-vessels of the rectum and anus, showing the distribution and anastomosis on the posterior surface near the termination of the gut. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The Lymphatics of the Large Intestine.—The lymphatics of the large intestine begin in the mucous membrane and form an extensive plexus in the submucosa. There are also lymphatics more deeply seated, beneath the simple follicles. Those from the ascending colon and transverse colon open into the glands within the mesocolon and behind the colon (mesocolic glands), from which glands trunks pass to the superior mesenteric glands. The lymphatics from the transverse colon join with lymph-vessels of the great omentum, and hence communicate with the lymphatics of the greater curvature of the stomach. The lymph from the descending colon, from the sigmoid and from the pelvic colon passes to

the glands along the inferior mesenteric artery. The lymphatics of the rectum pass first to the rectal glands, which lie on the muscular coat of the rectum, next to the glands which lie back of the rectum along the superior haemorrhoidal artery, and finally to the sacral glands. Lymphatics from the skin of the anus pass with the lymphatics of the skin to the superficial inguinal glands. Lymphatics from the anus between the skin margin and Hilton's white line pass to the hypogastric glands.

The Nerves of the Anus and Rectum.—The **nerves** of the anus and rectum are derived from both the **sympathetic** and **cerebro-spinal system.** The chief supply of the rectum is from the **mesenteric, sacral,** and **hypogastric plexuses of the sympathetic.** It also obtains small branches from the **third, fourth,** and **fifth sacral nerves.** The lower part of the rectum is much more sensitive than the upper part. The muscles of the anus and rectum are supplied "from the intricate plexuses formed by the second, third, fourth, and fifth sacral nerves" (Tuttle). The External sphincter is supplied by nerves which contain motor, sensory, and

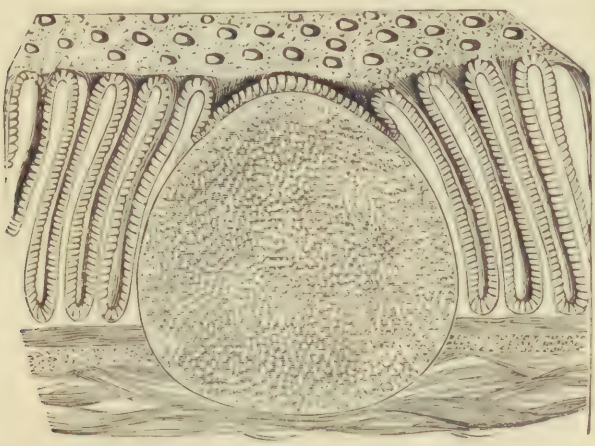


FIG. 935.—Minute structure of large intestine.

sympathetic fibres. These nerves come from three sources. "Two filaments from the branches formed by the third, fourth, and fifth sacral nerves extend transversely across the ischio-rectal fossa and distribute themselves to the middle portion of the muscle and to the peri-anal cutaneous surface; a filament which comes off from the internal pudic just before its division into terminal branches supplies the anterior portion of the muscle, and is called the **anterior sphincterian nerve**; while a filament coming off from the fifth and sixth sacral nerves passes down into the hollow of the sacrum, between the Lævator ani muscle and the recto-coccygeus ligament, and finally reaches the posterior superficial surface of the External sphincter."[1] The spinal centre for the nerves of the anus and rectum is opposite the first lumbar vertebra, and is in practically the same region as the centre for the genito-urinary organs.

Movements and Innervation of the Intestines.

Movements.—As the *small intestine* is devoid of any sphincter arrangement peristalsis cannot mix the food as it does in the pyloric portion of the stomach. The process by which the food is mixed with the secretions and is brought against the intestinal wall for absorption is called by Cannon "rhythmic segmentation." Rhythmic motions, according to Cannon, "mix the

[1] Diseases of the Anus, Rectum, and Pelvic Colon. By James P. Tuttle

food and expose it to the mucosa without advancing it *appreciately* along the canal."[1] In this process constrictions occur in the circular fibres, with the result that a collection of stationary food is divided into a number of segments. In the middle of each segment constrictions appear and the earlier constrictions relax. Then the later constrictions relax and the earlier reappear and so on until the food is thoroughly mixed with digestive secretions. Finally the food is driven on by peristalsis coming again to rest and being again subjected to "rhythmic segmentation."[2] Cannon says that in the duodenum "rhythmic segmentation" lasts for several minutes, but in other parts of the intestine it may continue for half an hour or more, the food which is being subjected to it scarcely moving along the canal. Cannon infers that in man there are from seven to eight segmentations per minute in a given area. It is probable that there is a sphincter action at the ileo-caecal opening.

Cannon divides the large intestine into two parts: a distal part, in which the material is hard and lumpy and is "advanced by rings of tonic contraction," and a proximal part, in which the material is soft. In this part "the common movements are waves of constriction running backward toward the caecum."[3] The resistance of the valve or sphincter enables reversed peristalsis or antiperistalsis to mix the food. When more food enters from the small intestine, antiperistalsis ceases, tonic contraction of the caecum and proximal portion of the colon occurs, some of the food is merged into the transverse colon, and antiperistalsis again begins to act on what remains.[4] The above facts have been observed in animals and are probably true in man.

Innervation.—The pneumogastric fibres of the small intestine seem to excite contraction of the circular fibres after a brief preliminary period of inhibition.[5] Some observers maintain that the splanchnic fibres are inhibitory, but others claim that they are also motor. The local reflex of the small intestine is in Auerbach's plexus. Cannon quotes Bayliss and Starling to the effect that the pelvic visceral nerves to the large intestine, "arising like the vagus from the central nervous system, are augmentary nerves, whereas the supply from the sympathetic system is purely inhibitory in its action."[6] It is further contended that the pelvic visceral nerves are distributed to the distal colon only. "The region of antiperistalsis does not, therefore, receive motor impulses from the pelvic nerves."[7]

Surface Form.—The coils of the small intestine occupy the front of the abdomen below the transverse colon, and are covered more or less completely by the great omentum. For the most part the coils of the jejunum occupy the left side of the abdominal cavity—*i. e.*, the left lumbar and inguinal regions and the left half of the umbilical region—whilst the coils of the ileum are situated to the right, in the right lumbar and inguinal regions, in the right half of the umbilical region, and also in the hypogastric region. The caecum is situated in the right inguinal region. Its position varies slightly, but the mid-point of a line drawn from the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium to the symphysis pubis will about mark the middle of its lower border. It is comparatively superficial. From it the ascending colon passes upward through the right lumbar and hypochondriac regions, and becomes more deeply situated as it ascends to the hepatic flexure, which is deeply placed under cover of the liver. The transverse colon crosses the belly transversely on the confines of the umbilical and epigastric regions, its lower border being on a level slightly above the umbilicus, its upper border just below the greater curvature of the stomach. The splenic flexure of the colon is situated behind the stomach in the left hypochondrium, and is on a higher level than the hepatic flexure. The descending colon is deeply seated, passing down through the left hypochondriac and lumbar regions to the sigmoid flexure, which is situated in the left inguinal region, and which can be felt in thin persons, with relaxed abdominal walls, rolling under the fingers when empty, and when distended forming a distinct bulge. The position of the base of the vermiform appendix is indicated by a point two inches from the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium, on a line drawn from this process to the umbilicus. This is known as *McBurney's point*. Another mode of defining the position of the base of the appendix is to draw a line between the anterior superior spines of the ilia and marking the point where this line intersects the right semilunar line.

Upon introducing the finger into the rectum, the membranous portion of the urethra can be felt, if an instrument has been introduced into the bladder, exactly in the middle line; behind this the prostate gland can be recognized by its shape and hardness and any enlargement detected; behind the prostate the fluctuating wall of the bladder when full can be felt, and if thought desirable it can be tapped in this situation; on either side and behind the prostate the vesiculae seminales can be readily felt, especially if enlarged by tuberculous disease. Behind, the coccyx is to be felt, and on the mucous membrane one or two of Houston's folds. The ischio-rectal fossae can be explored on either side, with a view to ascertaining the presence of deep-seated collections of pus. Finally, it will be noted that the finger is firmly gripped by the sphincter for about an inch up the bowel. By gradual dilatation of the sphincter, the whole hand can be

[1] Medical News, May 20, 1905.
[2] Walter B. Cannon, in Medical News, May 20, 1905.
[3] Medical News, May 20, 1905.
[4] Ibid.
[5] Bayliss and Starling, Journal of Physiology, 1899.
[6] Medical News, May 20, 1905.
[7] Walter B. Cannon, Medical News, May 20, 1905.

introduced into the rectum so as to reach the descending colon. This method of exploration is not at the present day employed for diagnostic purposes.

Surgical Anatomy. The small intestine is much exposed to injury, but, in consequence of its elasticity and the ease with which one fold glides over another, it is not so frequently ruptured as would otherwise be the case. Any part of the small intestine may be *ruptured*, but probably the most common situation is the transverse duodenum, on account of its being more fixed than other portions of the bowel, and because it is situated in front of the bodies of the vertebrae, so that if this portion of the intestine is struck a sharp blow, as from the kick of a horse, it is unable to glide out of the way, but is compressed against the bone and lacerated. *Wounds* of the intestine sometimes occur. If the wound is a small puncture, under, it is said, three lines in length, there may be no extravasation of the contents of the bowel. The mucous membrane becomes everted and perhaps plugs the little opening. The bowels, therefore, may be punctured with a fine capillary trocar, in cases of excessive distention of the intestine with gas, without much danger of extravasation. A longitudinal wound gapes more than a transverse wound, owing to the greater thickness of the circular muscular coat. In closing a wound of the intestine, use Lembert's inversion sutures, which bring the peritoneal surfaces in contact. Halsted showed us that these sutures must include the tough submucous coat. The portions of intestine which lie in the pelvis are inflamed in *pelvic peritonitis* and become embedded in adhesions. The portions of intestine which may be present are the termination of the ileum, the portion of small intestine with the largest mesentery (Treves), the rectum, and the pelvic colon. The small intestine, and most frequently the ileum, may become *strangulated* by internal bands, or through apertures, normal or abnormal. The bands may be formed in several different ways: they may be old peritoneal adhesions from previous attacks of peritonitis; or adherent omentum from the same cause; or the band may be formed by *Meckel's diverticulum*, which has contracted adhesions at its distal extremity; or the band may be the result of the abnormal attachment of some normal structure, as the adhesion of two appendices epiploicae, or an adherent vermiform appendix or Fallopian tube. *Intussusception* or invagination of the small intestine may take place in any part of the jejunum and ileum, but the most frequent situation is at the ileo-caecal valve, the valve forming the apex of the entering tube. This form may attain great size, and it is not uncommon in these cases to find the valve projecting from the anus. *Stricture*, the *impaction of foreign bodies*, and twisting of the gut (*volvulus*) may lead to intestinal obstruction. Volvulus is most common in the sigmoid flexure. Meckel's diverticulum may itself become twisted and strangulated.

Resection of a portion of the intestine may be required in cases of gangrenous gut; in cases of intussusception; for the removal of new growth in the bowel; in dealing with artificial anus; and in cases of rupture. The operation is termed *enterectomy*, and is performed as follows: the abdomen having been opened and the amount of bowel requiring removal having been determined upon, the gut must be clamped on either side of this portion in order to prevent the escape of any of the contents of the bowel during the operation. The portion of bowel is then separated above and below by means of scissors. If the portion removed is small, it may be simply removed from the mesentery at its attachment and the bleeding vessels tied; but if it is large, it will be necessary to remove also a triangular piece of the mesentery, and having secured the vessels, suture the cut edges of this structure together. The surgeon then proceeds to unite the cut ends of the bowel together. He may do it by the operation termed *end-to-end anastomosis*. There are many ways of doing this, which may be divided into two classes: one, where the anastomosis is made by means of some mechanical appliance, such as Murphy's button, or one of the forms of decalcified bone bobbins; and the other, where the operation is performed by simply suturing the ends of the bowel in such a manner that the peritoneum covering the free divided ends of the bowel is brought into contact, so that speedy union may ensue.

In some cases after resection each open end of the gut is closed, the side of the terminal portion is sutured to the side of the initial portion, a fistula is made in each, and the suturing is completed so as to cause the two fistulae to correspond. A permanent side-to-side opening is thus made. *Lateral anastomosis* without resection may be practised between two pieces of intestine, in order to side-track an intervening portion, which is the seat of malignant disease or of an artificial anus. *Complete exclusion* of a portion of intestine is performed for irremovable tumors or persistent faecal fistulae of the large intestine. The intestine is cut through above and below the diseased area and the ends of the healthy gut are united to each other, or the larger end is closed, an opening is made into the side of the larger end and the smaller end is implanted in it (*lateral implantation*). The two ends of the excluded portion are fastened to the skin and are left open.

In ascites resulting from cirrhosis of the liver benefit occasionally follows the performance of *Talma's operation* (*epiplopexy*). The abdomen is opened and the omentum is sutured to the anterior abdominal wall or in the abdominal wound in the hope of establishing a more free communication between the portal and systemic circulations, thus lowering portal pressure.

External hernia is considered on page 1325.

By the term *internal hernia*, we mean hernia into the foramen of Winslow, into the retro-

duodenal fossa, into the retro-caecal fossa, or into the intersigmoid fossa. Such a hernia produces the symptoms of acute strangulation of the intestine.

In *typhoid fever* there is ulceration of Peyer's patches. One of these ulcers may *perforate*. The only chance for life is immediate laparotomy and closure of the perforation. This saves one-fifth, or possibly one-third, of the cases. The incision is made to expose the lower ileum, as in the vast majority of cases the perforation is in this portion of the gut.

Ulcer of the duodenum is more common than used to be thought. The portion of the duodenum between the pylorus and the bile papilla is about four inches in length, and is called by the Mayo brothers the *vestibule of the duodenum*. Here the acid gastric juice enters and may produce an ulcer. The portion of the duodenum below the vestibule is not liable to ulcer, because it is protected by the alkaline bile and pancreatic juice.

A duodenal ulcer may perforate a large duodenal vessel and cause death from hemorrhage, or may perforate the intestine and produce septic peritonitis. A perforated ulcer is treated by laparotomy and closure of the perforation. Occasionally ulceration of the duodenal glands (*Curling's ulcer*) may occur in cases of burns, but is not a very common complication.

The vermiform appendix is very liable to become inflamed, the condition being known as *appendicitis*. This condition may be set up by a catarrhal inflammation arising in the appendix or derived from the colon. It may remain catarrhal and then subside. It may become purulent or may be purulent from the beginning. Anything which lessens vital resistance makes the appendix a ready prey to bacteria. Among causes which lessen resistance are fæcal concretions, twists of the mesoappendix cutting off the blood-supply, bruises inflicted by the Psoas muscle (Byron Robinson), blocking of the outlet of the appendix by catarrhal exudate, concretions, proliferated lymphoid tissue, or adhesions. Appendicitis may arise by the appendix becoming twisted, owing to the shortness of its mesentery, in consequence of distention of the caecum. As the result of inflammation, its blood-supply, which is mainly through one large artery running in the mesoappendix, becomes interfered with. Again, in rarer cases, the inflammation is set up by the impaction of a solid mass of fæces or a foreign body in the appendix. The inflammation may result in ulceration and perforation, or in gangrene of the appendix the appendix may be blocked and full of pus, or abscess may form outside of it (*appendicular abscess*). These conditions require prompt operative interference, and in cases of recurrent attacks of appendicitis it is advisable to remove this diverticulum between the attacks. In *external hernia* the ileum is the portion of bowel most frequently herniated. When a part of the large intestine is involved, it is usually the caecum, and this may occur even on the left side. In some few cases the vermiform appendix has been the part implicated in cases of strangulated hernia, and has given rise to serious symptoms of obstruction. The diameter of the large intestine gradually diminishes from the caecum, which has the greatest diameter of any part of the bowel, to the point of junction of the sigmoid flexure with the rectum, at or a little below which point stricture most commonly occurs and diminishes in frequency as one proceeds upward to the caecum. When distended by some *obstruction* low down, the outline of the large intestine can be defined throughout nearly the whole of its course—all, in fact, except the hepatic and splenic flexures, which are more deeply placed; the distention is most obvious in the two flanks and on the front of the abdomen just above the umbilicus. The caecum, however, is that portion of the bowel which is, of all, most distended. It sometimes assumes enormous dimensions, and has been known to give way from the distention, causing fatal peritonitis. The hepatic flexure and the right extremity of the transverse colon are in close relationship with the liver, and abscess of this viscus sometimes bursts into the gut in this situation. The *gall-bladder* may become adherent to the colon, and *gall-stones* may find their way through into the gut, where they may become impacted or may be discharged per anum. The mobility of the sigmoid flexure renders it more liable to become the seat of a *volvulus* or twist than any other part of the intestine. It generally occurs in patients who have been the subjects of habitual constipation, and in whom, therefore, the mesosigmoid is elongated. The gut at this part being loaded with fæces, from its weight falls over the gut below, and so gives rise to the twist.

The surgical anatomy of the rectum is of considerable importance. There may be congenital malformation due to arrest or imperfect development. Thus, there may be no invagination of the epiblast, and consequently a complete absence of the anus; or the hind-gut may be imperfectly developed, and there may be an absence of the rectum, though the anus is developed; or the invagination of the epiblast may not communicate with the termination of the hind-gut from want of solution of continuity in the septum which in early fœtal life exists between the two. The mucous membrane is thick and but loosely connected to the muscular coat beneath and thus favors *prolapse*, especially in children. The vessels of the rectum are arranged as mentioned above, longitudinally, and are contained in the loose cellular tissue between the mucous and muscular coats, and receive no support from surrounding tissues, and this favors varicosity. Moreover, the veins, after running upward in a longitudinal direction for about five inches in the submucous tissue, pierce the muscular coats, and are liable to become constricted at this point by the contraction of the muscular wall of the gut. In addition to this there are no valves in the superior hemorrhoidal veins, and the vessels of the rectum are placed in a depen-

dent position, and are liable to be pressed upon and obstructed by hardened fæces. The anatomical arrangement, therefore, of the hemorrhoidal vessels explains the great tendency to the occurrence of piles. The presence of the Sphincter ani is of surgical importance, since it is the constant contraction of this muscle which prevents an *ischio-rectal abscess* from healing and tends to cause a fistula. Also, the reflex contraction of this muscle is the cause of the severe pain complained of in *fissure of the anus*. The relations of the peritoneum to the rectum are of importance in connection with the operation of removal of the lower end of the rectum for malignant disease. The membrane gradually leaves the rectum as it descends into the pelvis; first leaving its posterior surface, then the sides, and then the anterior surface to become reflected in the male on to the posterior wall of the bladder, forming the recto-vesical pouch, and in the female on to the posterior wall of the vagina, forming Douglas's pouch. The recto-vesical pouch of peritoneum extends to within three inches from the anus, so that it is not desirable to remove more than two and a half inches of the entire circumference of the bowel, for fear of the risk of opening the peritoneum. When, however, the disease is confined to the posterior surface of the rectum, or extends farther in this direction, a greater amount of the posterior wall of the gut may be removed, as the peritoneum does not extend on this surface to a lower level than five inches from the margin of the anus. The recto-vaginal or Douglas's pouch in the female extends somewhat lower than the recto-vesical pouch of the male, and therefore it is advisable to remove a less length of the tube in this sex. Of recent years, however, much more extensive operations have been done for the removal of cancer of the rectum, and in these the peritoneal cavity has necessarily been opened. If, in these cases, the opening is plugged with iodoform gauze until the operation is completed and then the edges of the wound in the peritoneum is accurately brought together with sutures, no evil result appears to follow. For cases of *cancer of the rectum* which are too low to be reached by abdominal section, and too high to be removed by the ordinary operation from below, Kraske has devised an operation which goes by his name. The patient is placed on his right side and an incision is made from the second sacral spine to the anus. The soft parts are now separated from the back of the left side of the sacrum as far as its left margin, and the greater and lesser sacro-sciatic ligaments are divided. A portion of the lateral mass of the sacrum, commencing on the left border at the level of the third posterior sacral foramen, and running downward and inward through the fourth foramen to the cornu, is now cut away with a chisel. The left side of the wound being now forcibly drawn outward, the whole of the rectum is brought into view, and the diseased portion can be removed, leaving the anal portions of the gut, if healthy. The two divided ends of the gut can perhaps then be approximated and sutured together. Kraske's operation is in many cases preceded by the performance of iliac colostomy. In cancer high up in the rectum removal of the growth through the abdomen is sometimes practised, the divided lower end of the rectum being sutured to the divided upper end (Weir's operation).

The colon frequently requires opening in cases of intestinal obstruction, and by some surgeons this operation is performed in cases of cancer of the rectum, as soon as the disease is recognized, in the hope that the rate of growth may be retarded by removing the irritation produced by the passage of fecal matter over the diseased surface. The operation of *colostomy* may be performed either in the inguinal or lumbar region; but *inguinal colostomy* (Maydl's operation) has at the present day superseded the lumbar operation. The main reason for preferring this operation is that a spur-shaped process can be formed which prevents any fecal matter finding its way past the artificial anus and becoming lodged on the diseased structures below. The sigmoid flexure being surrounded by peritoneum, a coil can be drawn out of the wound, and when it is opened transversely a spur is formed, and this prevents any fecal matter finding its way from the gut above the opening into that below. The operation is performed by making an incision two or three inches in length from a point one inch internal to the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium, parallel to Poupart's ligament. The various layers of abdominal muscles are cut through, and the peritoneum opened and sewed to the external skin. The sigmoid flexure is now sought for, and pulled out of the wound and fixed by pushing a glass bar through a slit in the mesocolon. The two parts of the loop are sutured together. The intestine is now sutured to the parietal peritoneum. The wound is dressed, and either immediately or between the second to the fourth day, according to the requirements of the case, the protruded coil of intestine is opened. It is opened transversely with the Paquelin cautery.

THE LIVER (HEPAR) (Figs. 936, 937, 938, 939).

The liver is the largest gland in the body, and is situated in the upper and right part of the abdominal cavity, occupying almost the whole of the right hypochondrium, the greater part of the epigastrium, and extending into the left hypochondrium as far as the mammary line. In the male it weighs from fifty to sixty

ounces; in the female, from forty to fifty. It is relatively much larger in the fœtus than in the adult, constituting, in the former, about one-eighteenth, and in the latter, about one-thirty-sixth of the entire body-weight. Its greatest transverse measurement is from eight to nine inches. Vertically, near its lateral or right surface, it measures about six or seven inches, while its greatest antero-posterior diameter is on a level with the upper end of the right kidney and is from four to five inches. Opposite the vertebral column its measurement from before backward is reduced to about three inches. Its consistence is that of a soft solid; it is, however, friable and easily lacerated; its color is a dark reddish-brown, and its specific gravity is 1.05.

To obtain a correct idea of its shape, it must be hardened *in situ*, and it will then be seen to present the appearance of a wedge, the base of which is directed to the right and the thin edge toward the left. Symington describes its shape as that "of a right-angled triangular prism with the right angles rounded off." It possesses five surfaces, viz., a **superior, inferior, anterior, posterior,** and a **right lateral surface.**

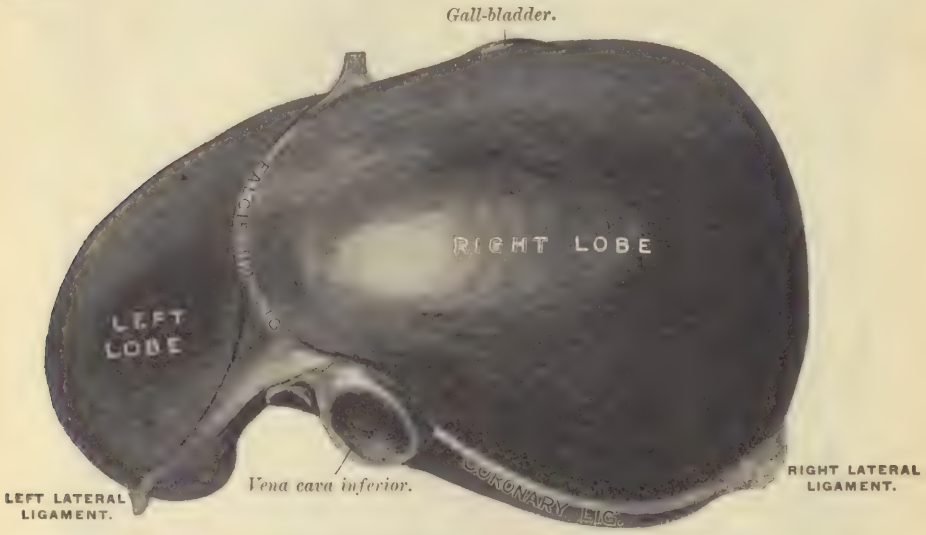


FIG. 936.—The liver. Upper surface. (Drawn from His's models.)

The superior and anterior surfaces are separated from each other by a thick rounded border, and are attached to the Diaphragm and anterior abdominal wall by a triangular or falciform fold of peritoneum, the **suspensory** or **falciform ligament,** which divides the liver into two unequal parts, termed the **right** and **left lobes** (Figs. 936, 940, and 941). Except along the line of attachment of this ligament to the liver, the superior and anterior surfaces are covered by peritoneum.

The Superior Area or Surface (*facies superior*) (Fig. 936).—The superior area or surface comprises a part of both lobes. Spalteholz considers as parts of the superior surface the right surface and the anterior surface. The superior surface is convex, and fits under the vault of the Diaphragm; its central part, however, presents a shallow depression, the **cardiac depression** (*impressio cardiaca*), which corresponds with the position of the heart on the upper surface of the Diaphragm. It is separated from the anterior, posterior, and lateral surfaces by thick, rounded borders. Its left extremity is continued into the under surface by a prominent sharp margin.

The Anterior Area or Surface.—The anterior area or surface is large and triangular in shape, comprising also a part of both lobes. It is directed forward,

and the greater part of it is in contact with the Diaphragm, which separates it from the right lower ribs and their cartilages. In the middle line it lies behind

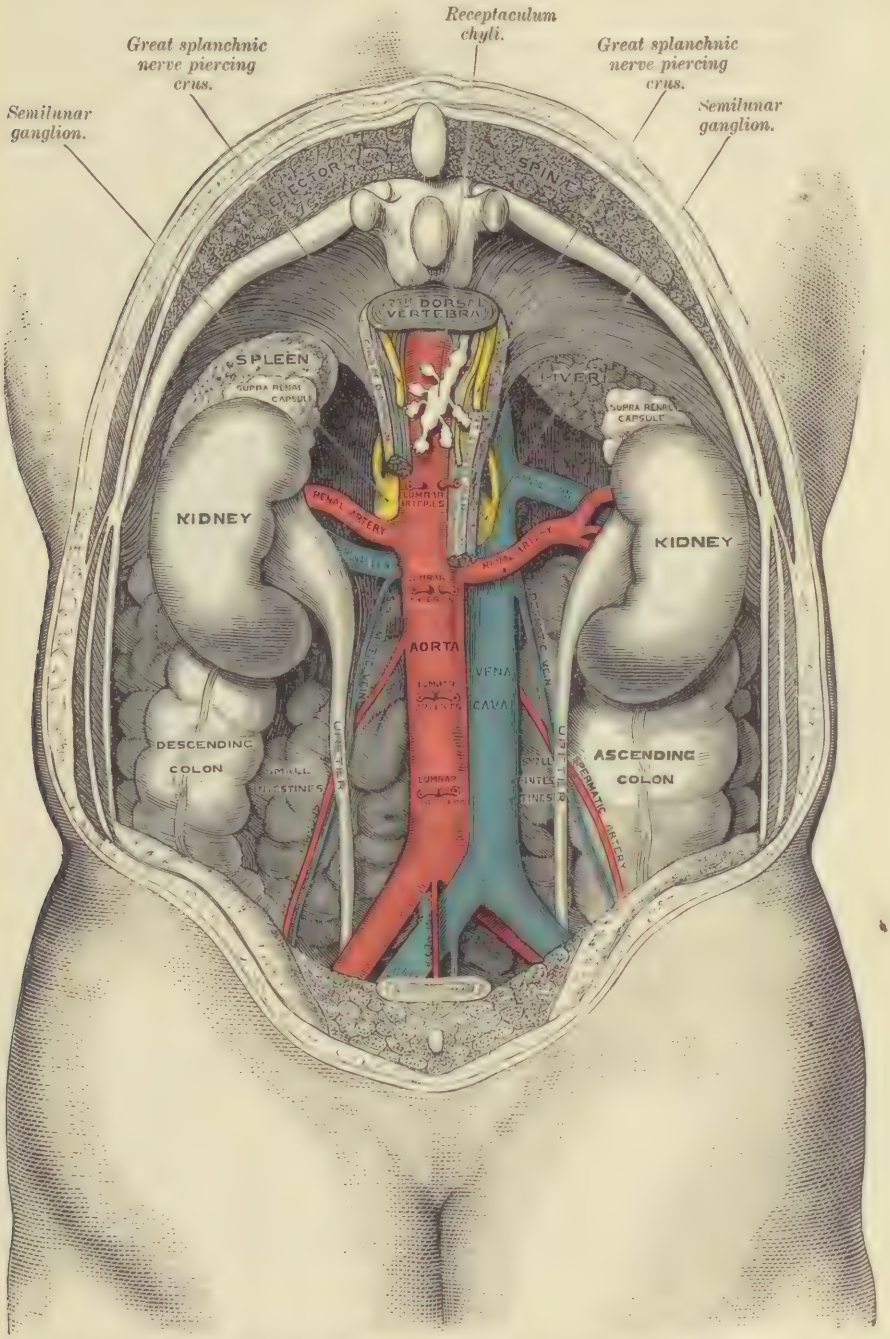


FIG. 937.—The relations of the viscera and large vessels of the abdomen. (Seen from behind, the last dorsal vertebra being well raised.)

the ensiform cartilage, to the left of which it is protected by the seventh and eighth left costal cartilages. In the angle between the diverging rib cartilages of opposite sides the anterior surface is in contact with the abdominal wall. It

is continuous with the inferior surface by a sharp margin, and with the superior and lateral surfaces by thick rounded borders.

The Lateral or Right Area or Surface (Figs. 936 and 938).—The lateral or right area or surface is convex from before backward and slightly so from above downward. It is directed toward the right side, forming the base of the wedge, and lies against the lateral portion of the Diaphragm, which separates it from the lower part of the left pleura and lung, outside which are the right costal arches from the seventh to the eleventh inclusive.

The Under or Visceral Area or Surface (*facies inferior*) (Figs. 938 and 939).—The under or visceral area or surface is uneven, concave, directed downward and backward and to the left, and is in relation with the stomach and duodenum, the hepatic flexure of the colon, and the right kidney. The surface is divided by a longitudinal fissure into a right and a left lobe, and is almost completely invested by peritoneum; the only parts where this covering is absent are where the gall-bladder is attached to the liver and at the transverse fissure, where the two layers of the lesser omentum are separated from each other by the blood-vessels and duct of the viscus. The under surface of the left lobe presents to the right and near the centre a rounded eminence, the **omental tuberosity** (*tuber omentale*) (Fig. 938), which is in contact with the lesser omentum. It is surrounded by a broad depression, the **gastric surface or impression** (*impressio gastrica*), with which the stomach is in contact. Between the gall-bladder and the left lobe is the **quadrate lobe.** The quadrate lobe is bounded to the left by the **umbilical fissure** or the **fissure of the umbilical vein** (*fossa venae umbilicalis*), which is the anterior portion of the longitudinal fissure and lodges the **round ligament** (*ligamentum teres*). The under surface of the right lobe is divided into two unequal portions by a fossa, which lodges the gall-bladder and is called the **fossa vesicalis** (*fossa vesicae felleae*); the portion to the left, the smaller of the two, is somewhat oblong in shape, its antero-posterior diameter being greater than its transverse. It is known as the **quadrate lobe** (*lobus quadratus*), and is in relation with the pyloric end of the stomach (*impressio pylorica*) and the first portion of the duodenum. The portion of the under surface of the right lobe to the right of the fossa vesicalis presents two shallow concave impressions, one situated behind the other, the two being separated by a ridge. The anterior of these two impressions, the **colic impression** (*impressio colica*), is produced by the hepatic flexure of the colon; the posterior, the **renal impression** (*impressio renalis*), is occupied by the upper end of the right kidney (Fig. 938). To the inner side of the latter impression is a third and slightly marked impression, lying between it and the neck of the gall-bladder. This is caused by the second portion of the duodenum, and is known as the **duodenal impression** (*impressio duodenalis*). Just in front of the vena cava is a narrow strip of liver tissue, the **caudate lobe,** which connects the right inferior angle of the Spigelian lobe to the under surface of the right lobe. Immediately below it is the foramen of Winslow.

The Posterior Area or Surface (*facies posterior*) (Figs. 937 and 939).—The posterior area or surface is rounded and broad behind the right lobe, but narrow on the left. Over a large part of its extent it is not covered by peritoneum; this **uncovered area** (Fig. 938) is about three inches broad, and is in direct contact with the Diaphragm, being united to it by areolar tissue. In this tissue are numerous small veins which join the portal circulation to the systemic circulation. The uncovered area is marked off from the upper surface by the line of reflection of the upper or anterior layer of the coronary ligament. It is in the same way marked off from the under surface of the liver by the line of reflection of the lower layer of the **coronary ligament** (Fig. 940). In its centre the posterior surface is deeply notched for the vertebral column and crura of the Diaphragm, and to the right of this it is indented for the inferior vena cava (*fossa venae cavae*), which is often

partly embedded in its substance. Close to the right of this indentation and immediately above the renal impression is a small triangular depressed area, the **suprarenal impression** (*impressio suprarenalis*) (Fig. 938), the greater part of which is devoid of peritoneum; it lodges the right suprarenal capsule, which is inserted between the liver and Diaphragm. To the left of the fossa for the inferior vena cava is the **Spigelian lobe,** which lies between the **fissure for the vena cava** and the fissure for the **ductus venosus.** Below and in front it projects and forms part of the posterior boundary of the transverse fissure. Here, to the right, it is connected with the under surface of the right lobe of the liver by the caudate lobe, and to the left it presents a tubercle, the **tuberculum papillare** (Fig. 938). It is opposite the tenth and eleventh dorsal vertebrae, and rests upon the aorta and crura of the Diaphragm, being covered by the peritoneum of the lesser sac. The lobe is nearly vertical in position, and is directed backward; it is longer from above downward than from side to side, and is somewhat concave in the transverse direction. On the posterior surface to the left of the Spigelian lobe is a groove, the **oesophageal groove** (*impressio oesophagea*), indicating the position of the abdominal portion of the oesophagus (Fig. 938).

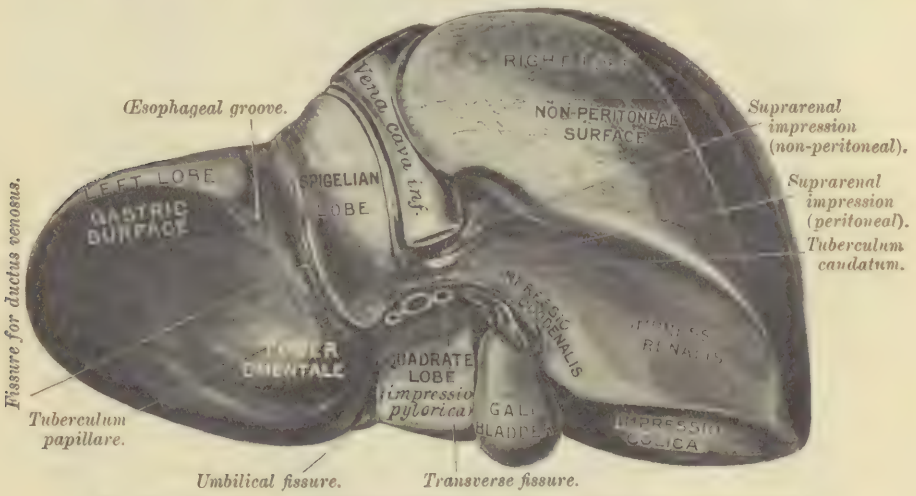


FIG. 938.—The liver. Posterior and inferior surfaces. (Drawn from His's models.)

Prof. Cunningham divides the liver into two surfaces, a **visceral** and a **parietal,** and subdivides the parietal surface into a **posterior area** and **superior area,** an **anterior area** and a **right area.** The parietal surface is separated from the visceral surface by the inferior border or margin.

The **inferior border** or **margin** (*margo inferioris*), posteriorly, is rather ill defined. It is the lower margin of the posterior surface; it follows the line of rib and is in contact with the right kidney. At the right side the lower margin is thick and distinct, and, as a rule, projects slightly below the thorax. The front of the inferior margin is called the **anterior margin** (*margo anterior*). It is a sharp edge which, on inspiration, corresponds to an oblique line on the abdominal wall drawn from "a point half an inch below the margin of the ribs (tip of tenth costal cartilage), on the right side, to a point an inch below the nipple on the left, and extending down in the middle line to a point half-way between the gladiolus and the umbilicus."[1]

In men the anterior margin of the liver often corresponds to the lower margin of the ribs, but in women and children it is usually below the ribs in the line

[1] Ambrose Birmingham, in Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

indicated above. Opposite the attachment of the falciform ligament the anterior border often exhibits a deep notch, the **umbilical notch** (*incisura umbilicalis*), which is the anterior end of the fossa venae umbilicalis. Another notch, sometimes present, corresponds to the fundus of the gall-bladder, and is known as the **notch of the gall-bladder** (*incisura vesicae felleae*).

The **left extremity of the inferior margin of the liver** is thin and flattened from above downward. The margin passes posteriorly around the free end of the left lobe and terminates posteriorly at the oesophageal groove.

Fissures.—Five fissures are seen upon the under and posterior surfaces of the liver, which serve to divide it into five lobes. They are: the **umbilical fissure**, the **fissure of the ductus venosus**, the **transverse fissure**, the **fissure for the gall-bladder**, and the **fissure for the inferior vena cava**. They are arranged in the form of the letter H. The left limb of the H is known as the **longitudinal fissure**. The right limb is formed in front by the **fissure for the gall-bladder**, and behind by the **fissure for the inferior vena cava**; these two fissures are separated from each other by the caudate lobe. The connecting bar of the H is the **transverse** or **portal fissure**. It separates the quadrate lobe in front from the caudate and Spigelian lobes behind.

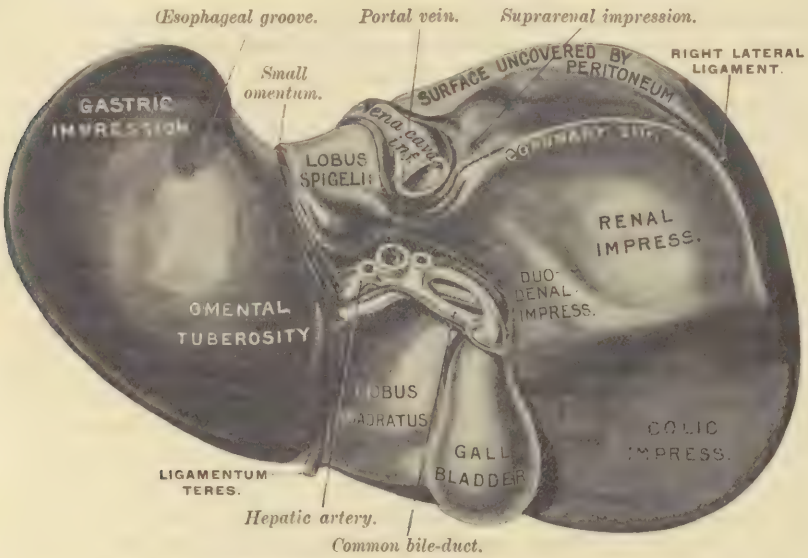


FIG. 939.—Posterior and under surfaces of the liver. (From Ellis.)

The Longitudinal Fossa or Fissure (*fossa longitudinalis sinistra*).—The longitudinal fissure is a deep groove, which extends from the notch on the anterior margin of the liver to the upper border of the posterior surface of the organ. It separates the right and left lobes; the **Transverse Fissure** (Fig. 938) joins it, at right angles, and divides it into two parts. The anterior part is called the **umbilical fossa** or **fissure** (*fossa venae umbilicalis*) (Fig. 938); it is deeper than the posterior, and lodges the umbilical vein in the fœtus, and its remains (the round ligament) in the adult; the posterior part contains the ductus venosus, and is known as the **fissure of the ductus venosus**. This fissure lies between the quadrate lobe and the left lobe of the liver, and is often partially bridged over by a prolongation of the hepatic substance, the **pons hepatis**.

The **Fissure** or **Fossa of the Ductus Venosus** (*fossa ductus venosi*) (Fig. 938) is the back part of the longitudinal fissure, and is situated mainly on the posterior surface of the liver. It lies between the left lobe and the lobe of Spigelius. It

lodges in the fœtus the ductus venosus, and in the adult a slender fibrous cord, the obliterated remains of that vessel.

The Transverse or Portal Fissure (*porta hepatis*) (Fig. 938).—The transverse or portal fissure is a short but deep fissure, about two inches in length, extending transversely across the under surface of the left portion of the right lobe, nearer to its posterior surface than its anterior border. It joins, nearly at right angles, with the longitudinal fissure, and separates the quadrate lobe in front from the caudate and Spigelian lobes behind. By the older anatomists this fissure was considered the gateway (*porta*) of the liver; hence the large vein which enters at this fissure was called the **portal vein** (Fig. 939). Besides this vein, the fissure transmits the hepatic artery and nerves, and the hepatic duct and lymphatics. At their entrance into the fissure, the hepatic duct lies in front and to the right, the hepatic artery to the left, and the portal vein behind and between the duct and artery.

The Fossa or Fissure for the Gall-bladder (*fossa vesicae felleae*).—The fossa or fissure for the gall-bladder is a shallow, oblong fossa, placed on the under surface of the right lobe, parallel with the longitudinal fissure. It extends from the anterior free margin of the liver, which is notched for its reception, to the right extremity of the transverse fissure.

The Fissure or Fossa for the Inferior Vena Cava (*fossa venae cavae*) (Fig. 938).—The fissure or fossa for the inferior vena cava is a short, deep fissure, in some cases a complete canal, in consequence of the substance of the liver occasionally surrounding the vena cava. It extends obliquely upward from the lobus caudatus, which separates it from the transverse fissure, on the posterior surface of the liver, and separates the Spigelian from the right lobe. On slitting open the inferior vena cava the orifices of the hepatic veins will be seen opening into this vessel at its upper part, after perforating the floor of this fissure.

Lobes.—The lobes of the liver, like the ligaments and fissures, are five in number—the **right lobe**, the **left lobe**, the **lobus quadratus**, the **lobus Spigelii**, and the **lobus caudatus**, the last three being merely parts of the right lobe.

The Right Lobe (*lobus hepatis dexter*) (Figs. 936 and 938).—The right lobe is much larger than the left; the proportion between them being as six to one. It occupies the right hypochondrium, and is separated from the left lobe, on its upper and anterior surfaces by the falciform ligament; on its under and posterior surfaces by the longitudinal fissure; and in front by the umbilical notch. It is of a somewhat quadrilateral form, its under and posterior surfaces being marked by three fissures—the transverse fissure, the fissure for the gall-bladder, and the fissure for the inferior vena cava, which separate its left part into three smaller lobes—the lobus Spigelii, lobus quadratus, and lobus caudatus. On it are seen four shallow impressions: one in front, for the hepatic flexure of the colon; a second behind, for the right kidney; a third internal, between the last-named and the gall-bladder, for the second part of the duodenum; and a fourth on its posterior surface, for the suprarenal capsule.

The **Lobus Quadratus** or **Square Lobe** (Figs. 938 and 939) is situated on the under surface of the right lobe, is bounded in front by the inferior margin of the liver; behind, by the transverse fissure; on the right, by the fissure of the gall-bladder; on the left, by the umbilical fissure.

The **Lobus Spigelii** (*lobus caudatus* [*Spigeli*]) (Figs. 938 and 939) is situated upon the posterior surface of the right lobe of the liver. It looks directly backward, and is nearly vertical in direction. It is bounded, above, by the upper layer of the coronary ligament; below, by the transverse fissure; on the right, by the fissure for the vena cava; and on the left, by the fissure for the ductus venosus. Its left upper angle forms part of the groove for the œsophagus. What is here called the lobus Spigelii, Spalteholz calls the lobus caudatus of Spigelius.

The **Lobus Caudatus** or **Tuberculum Caudatum** (*processus caudatus*) (Fig. 938), or tailed lobe, is a small elevation of the hepatic substance extending obliquely outward, from the lower extremity of the Spigelian lobe to the under surface of the right lobe. It is situated behind the transverse fissure, and separates the fissure for the gall-bladder from the commencement of the fissure for the inferior vena cava. What is here called the lobus caudatus, Spalteholz calls the processus caudatus of the lobus caudatus of Spigelius.

The Left Lobe (*lobus hepatis sinister*) (Figs. 936 and 938).—The left lobe is smaller and more flattened than the right. It is situated in the epigastric and left hypochondriac regions. Its upper surface is slightly convex; its under surface is concave, and presents a shallow depression for the stomach, the **gastric impression**. This is situated in front of the groove for the oesophagus, and is separated from the longitudinal fissure by the **omental tuberosity,** which lies against the small omentum and lesser curvature of the stomach. The posterior end of the left lobe frequently exhibits a flat projection, composed of connective tissue, and called the **appendix fibrosa hepatis.** In the adult, portions only of bile-ducts are present in it. In the newborn it is a definite portion of secreting liver substance, which later undergoes connective-tissue transformation.

Ligaments.—The liver is connected to the under surface of the Diaphragm and the anterior walls of the abdomen and the inferior vena cava by six ligaments, four of which are peritoneal folds; the other two, which are the round ligament and the ligament of the ductus venosus, are fibrous cords, resulting from the obliteration of fœtal vessels. These ligaments are the **falciform**, two **lateral, coronary, round,** and the **ligament of the ductus venosus**. It is also attached to the lesser curvature of the stomach by the gastro-hepatic or small omentum.

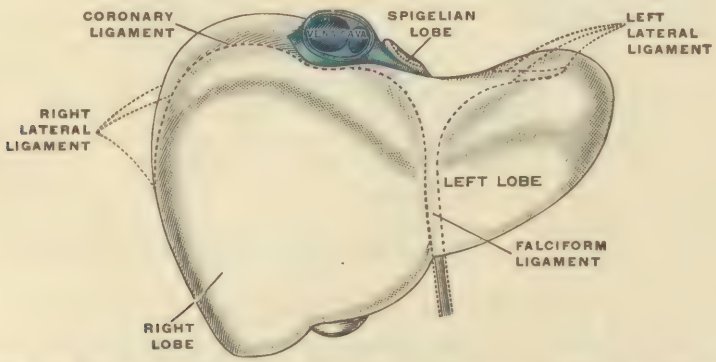


FIG. 940.—The peritoneal ligaments of the liver. (Schematic.) (Poirier and Charpy.)

The Falciform, Broad or Suspensory Ligament (*ligamentum falciforme hepatis*) (Figs. 936, 940, and 941).—The falciform or suspensory ligament is a broad and thin antero-posterior peritoneal fold, falciform in shape, its base being directed downward and backward, its apex upward and backward. It is attached by one margin to the under surface of the Diaphram, and the posterior surface of the sheath of the right Rectus muscle to within one inch of the umbilicus; by its hepatic margin it extends from the notch on the anterior margin of the liver, as far back as its posterior surface.

The free edge or base of the falciform ligament reaches from a little above and to the right of the umbilicus to the umbilical fissure on the anterior margin of the liver. This free edge contains between its folds the round ligament of the liver. On the posterior surface of the liver the two peritoneal folds which constitute the falciform ligament separate, the right fold passing into the upper fold of the coronary ligament, the left fold passing into the upper fold of the left lateral ligament.

The Lateral Ligaments (Figs. 936 and 940).—The lateral ligaments are two in number, and are called the **right** and **left lateral ligaments.**

The **Right Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum triangulare dextrum*) (Figs. 936 and 940) is in reality the right extremity of the coronary ligament. This ligament is triangular in form, runs from the liver to the Diaphragm, and is formed by the apposition of the upper and lower layers of the coronary ligament. It is attached to the liver between its lateral and inferior surfaces.

The **Left Lateral Ligament** (*ligamentum triangulare sinistrum*) (Figs. 936 and 940) is also formed by apposition of the upper and lower layers of the coronary ligament. It is triangular in form, runs from the liver to the Diaphragm, and is longer than the right lateral ligament. It is attached to the upper surface of the left lobe, where it lies, in front of the oesophageal opening in the Diaphragm.

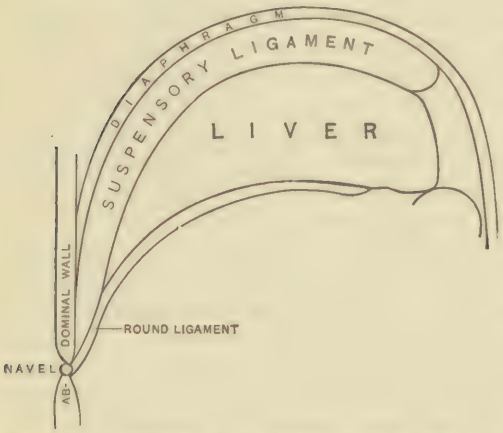


FIG. 941.—Diagram to show the relations of the falciform or suspensory and round ligaments to the liver and the abdominal wall. (Gerrish.)

The Coronary Ligament (*ligamentum coronarium hepatis*) (Figs. 936 and 940).—The coronary ligament connects the posterior surface of the liver to the Diaphragm. It is formed by the reflection of the peritoneum from the Diaphragm on to the upper and lower margins of the posterior surface of the liver. The coronary ligament consists of two layers, which are continuous on each side with the lateral ligaments, and, in front, with the falciform ligament. Between the layers a large triangular area is left uncovered by peritoneum, and is connected to the Diaphragm by firm areolar tissue.

The Round Ligament (*ligamentum teres hepatis*) (Figs. 939 and 941).—The round ligament is a fibrous cord resulting from the obliteration of the fœtal umbilical vein. It ascends from the umbilicus, in the free margin of the falciform ligament, to the notch in the anterior border of the liver, from which it may be traced along the umbilical fissure on the under surface of the liver, to the left branch of the portal vein.

The **Ligament of the Ductus Venosus** (*ligamentum venosum* [*Arantii*]) is composed of slender bundles of fibrous tissue, and results from the obliteration of the ductus venosus of the fœtus. It arises from the left branch of the portal vein, almost opposite the insertion of the round ligament, passes backward in the fissure of the ductus venosus, and, as it emerges from the liver, is attached to the vena cava.

Support and Movability of the Liver.—The liver is movable within certain narrow limits. It moves with respiration. On inspiration it moves down with the Diaphragm to distinctly below the costal arch in the right nipple line. Much discussion has taken place as to what supports the liver in place. Symington asserted that the ligaments do not give support, because they lie relaxed. Other observers (Graham, Steele) apparently demonstrate that the peritoneal ligaments do give some support to the liver. The connective tissue which unites the uncovered area of the right lobe of the liver to the Diaphragm and the hepatic veins which join the vena cava (Faure) do give distinct support. The chief factor in the support of the liver is the intra-abdominal pressure resulting from the tonic contraction of the abdominal muscles. When abdominal tension is normal the intestines are driven up and become a bed for the liver. Intrahepatic vascular tension aids in supporting the liver (Glénard).

Abnormalities of the Liver.—The liver may be divided into many lobules, and such lobulation is most evident on the parietal surface of the right lobe. Lobulation is probably a pathological change. Occasionally the right lobe is small and the left large.

The editor, in performing an abdominal operation, encountered a liver the left lobe of which was so large and the right so small as to suggest transposition or rotation of the organ. Such a change may result from abnormality of the fœtal circulation or from syphilitic disease of the right lobe, producing cicatricial contraction.[1] The left lobe may be very small; sometimes it is rudimentary. When the left lobe is very small an unusual amount of stomach is visible, and the entire gall-bladder can be seen from the front. In such a case the gall-bladder is usually displaced and it may actually "lie with its long axis in the transverse axis of the body."[2]

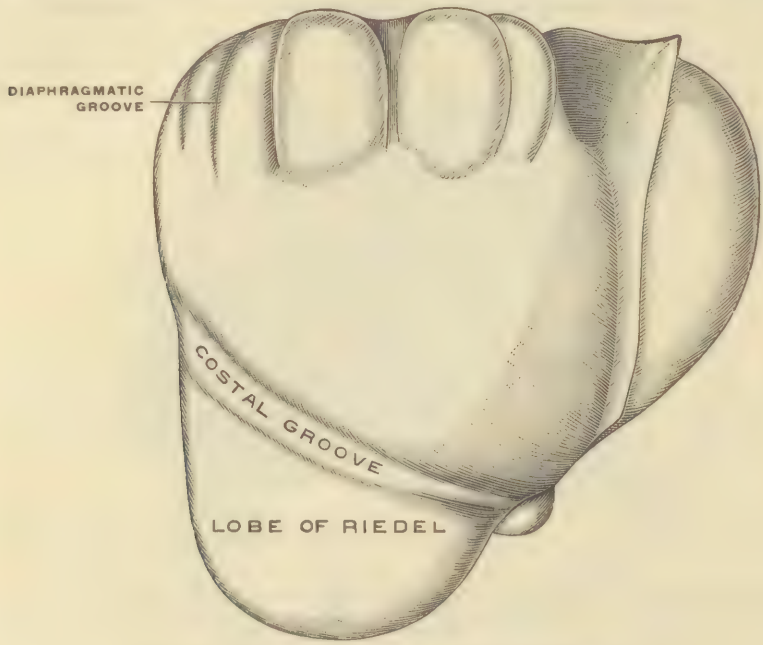


FIG. 942.—Deformed female liver. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Atrophy of the left lobe is usually a congenital defect, but may result from syphilis. Small accessory lobes, about one inch in length, are not uncommon, and they are most often met with on the visceral surface of the right lobe. "When markedly pedunculated, they may form accessory livers. The Spigelian lobe is sometimes curiously pedunculated."[3]

Accessory livers are fragments of hepatic tissue or rests, which are entirely separated from the liver. They are seldom met with. When they do exist their most common situation is in the suspensory ligament, but they have been found in the great omentum, in the peritoneum, wall of the gall-bladder, and in other situations. They may be congenital or may be due to atrophy of the pedicle of an accessory lobe or of a pedunculated lobe. **Tight lacing** alters the shape and position of the liver (Fig. 942). It may flatten the dome and increase the length of the anterior surface, this change being especially obvious in the right lobe, and a costal groove may be formed by the pressure of a rib. "When the elongated right lobe passes over the right kidney, there is atrophy of the hepatic substance

[1] H. D. Rolleston on Diseases of the Liver. [2] Ibid. [3] Ibid.

and thickening of the capsule, which is opaque and forms a hinge-like ligament between the main part of the right lobe above and the constricted lower portion. This lobe is variously termed **partial hepatoptosis, constriction lobe,** or the **sustentacular formation of the right lobe** (Hertz). The constriction furrow is produced by the pressure of the corset in front and the resistance of the kidney behind. The constriction lobe tapers to a point, so that the shape of the liver, as seen from the front, is that of a right-angled triangle, with the apex downward."[1] The condition resembles **Riedel's lobe.** The left lobe may also project down, but not so markedly. Tight lacing may cause the entire organ to occupy a level higher than normal. Such a liver is thick and excessively convex above and thin below, and reaches to or laps over the spleen. In severe cases the superior surface is thrown into antero-posterior creases or folds. **Linguiform** or **tongue-like lobe, Riedel's lobe** or **floating lobe** (Fig. 942), may be congenital, may be due to tight lacing, or may arise in cholelithiasis or cholecystitis from the traction of adhesions. Such a lobe comes off from the right lobe. It may be a tapering mass of liver tissue, it may have a thin pedicle of liver tissue, or its pedicle may be merely a double fold of peritoneum. The gall-bladder may lie upon its under surface, or may be placed to the left of it.

Vessels.—The blood-vessels connected with the liver are the **hepatic artery,** the **portal vein** and the **hepatic veins.**

Fig. 943.—Schematic section of the liver. The fibron tunic shown in black and tne capsule of Glisson in red.

The **Hepatic Artery** and **Portal Vein** (Figs. 418, 419, 489, and 944), accompanied by numerous lymphatics and nerves, ascend to the transverse fissure between the layers of the gastro-hepatic omentum, and in front of the foramen of Winslow. The **hepatic duct,** lying in company with them, descends from the transverse fissure between the layers of the same omentum. The relative position of the three structures in the lesser omentum (Fig. 859) is as follows: the hepatic duct lies to the right, the hepatic artery to the left, and the portal vein behind and between the other two. They enter the transverse fissure in the above-described order, but in that fissure undergo rearrangement, the duct being in front, the artery in the middle, and the vein behind. The artery, the vein, and the duct divide into a right and left branch and several smaller branches, and within the organ the vessels from the three sources accompany each other and divide at the same points; so each branch of the portal vein is accompanied by a branch of the hepatic artery and of the duct. They are enveloped in a loose areolar tissue, the **capsule of Glisson** (Fig. 943), which accompanies the vessels in their course through the *portal canals* in the interior of the organ.

The Hepatic Veins (Fig. 421).—The hepatic veins convey the blood from the liver. They commence in the substance of the liver, in the capillary terminations of the portal vein and hepatic artery; these tributaries, gradually uniting, usually form three

[1] Rolleston, on Diseases of the Liver.

veins, which converge toward the posterior surface of the liver and open into the portion of the inferior vena cava situated in the groove at the back part of this organ. Of these three veins, one from the right and another from the left lobe open obliquely into the vena cava; that from the middle of the organ and lobus Spigelii having a straight course.

The hepatic veins have very little cellular investment; what there is binds their parietes closely to the walls of the canals through which they run; so that, on section of the organ, these veins remain widely open and solitary (Fig. 946), and may be easily distinguished from the branches of the portal vein (Fig. 947), which are more or less collapsed, and always accompanied by an artery and duct. The hepatic veins are destitute of valves.

Structure.—The substance of the liver is composed of **lobules** held together by extremely fine areolar tissue, and of the ramifications of the portal vein, hepatic duct, hepatic artery, hepatic veins, lymphatics, and nerves, the whole being invested by a serous and a fibrous coat.

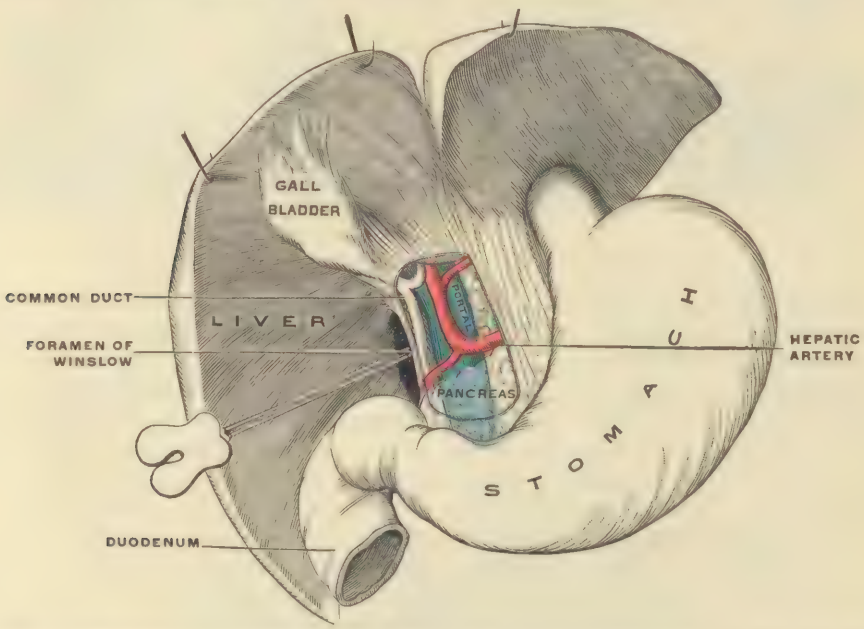


FIG. 944.—The relations of the vessels as they pass into the transverse fissure of the liver. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The Serous Coat (*tunica serosa*).—The serous coat is derived from the peritoneum, and invests the greater part of the surface of the organ. It is intimately adherent to the fibrous coat.

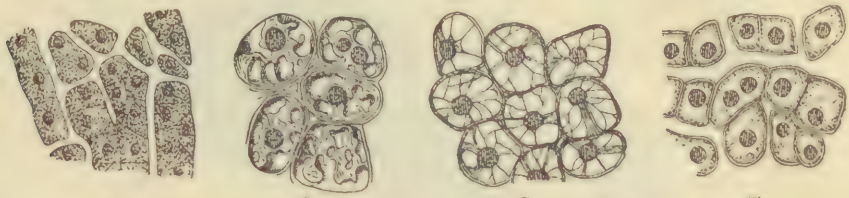
The Areolar or Fibrous Coat (*capsula fibrosa* [*Glissoni*]).—The areolar or fibrous coat lies beneath the serous investment and covers the entire surface of the organ. It is difficult of demonstration, excepting where the serous coat is deficient. At the transverse fissure it is thick and evident, is known as the **capsule of Glisson,** and envelops the vessels which enter the liver and passes with them along the portal canals. The areolar tissue which surrounds and binds together the liver lobules is continuous with the areolar coat.

The Lobules (*lobuli hepatis*) (Fig. 949).—The lobules form the chief mass of the hepatic substance; they may be seen either on the surface of the organ or by making a section through the gland. They are small granular bodies about the size of a millet-seed, measuring from one-twentieth to one-tenth of an inch in diameter. In the human subject their outline is very irregular, but in some of the lower

animals (for example, the pig) they are well defined, and when divided transversely have a polygonal outline. If divided longitudinally they are more or less foliated or oblong. The bases of the lobules are clustered around the smallest radicles of the hepatic veins (*sublobular veins*), to which each is connected by means of a small branch which issues from the centre of the lobule (*intralobular vein*). The remaining part of the surface of each lobule is imperfectly isolated from the surrounding lobules by a thin stratum of areolar tissue in which are **ducts** and a plexus of vessels, the **interlobular plexus** (Figs. 948 and 949). In some animals, as the pig, the lobules are completely isolated one from another by this interlobular areolar tissue.

If one of the sublobular veins be laid open, the bases of the lobules may be seen through the thin wall of the vein on which they rest, arranged in the form of a tessellated pavement, the centre of each polygonal space presenting a minute aperture, the mouth of an intralobular vein (Fig. 946).

Microscopic Appearance. – Each lobule is composed of a mass of cells, **hepatic cells** (Fig. 945), surrounded by a dense capillary plexus, composed of vessels which



A *B* *C* *C′*

Fig. 945.—The hepatic cells at different stages of digestion. (Heidenhain.)

penetrate from the circumference to the centre of the lobule, and terminate in a single straight central vein, which runs through its centre, to open at its base into one of the radicles of the hepatic vein. Between the cells are also the minute commencements of the bile-ducts. Therefore in the lobule we have all the essentials of a secreting gland; that is to say: (1) **cells**, by which the secretion is formed; (2) **blood-vessels**, in close relation with the cells, containing the blood from which the secretion is derived; and (3) **ducts**, by which the secretion, when formed, is carried away. Each of these structures will have to be further considered.

(1) The **Hepatic Cells** are epithelial in nature and of more or less spheroidal form, but may be rounded, flattened, or many-sided from mutual compression. They vary in size from the $\frac{1}{1000}$ to the $\frac{1}{2000}$ of an inch in diameter. They consist of a honeycomb network (Klein) without any cell-wall, and contain one or sometimes two distinct nuclei. In the nucleus is a highly refracting nucleolus with granules. Embedded in the honeycomb network are numerous yellow particles, the coloring matter of the bile, and oil-globules. The cells adhere together by their surfaces so as to form rows, which radiate from the centre to the circumference of the lobules.[1] As stated above, they are the chief agents in the secretion of the bile.

(2) **The Blood-vessels.**—The blood in the capillary plexus around the liver-cells is brought to the liver principally by the portal vein, but also to a certain extent by the hepatic artery. For the sake of clearness the distribution of the blood derived from the hepatic artery may be considered first.

The **Hepatic Artery**, entering the liver at the transverse fissure with the portal vein and hepatic duct, ramifies with these vessels through the portal canals. It gives off **vaginal branches** which ramify in the capsule of Glisson, and appear to be destined chiefly for the nutrition of the coats of the large vessels, the ducts,

[1] Delépine states that there are evidences of the arrangement of these cells in the form of columns, which form tubes with narrow lumina branching from terminal bile-ducts. This branching is evidenced by a divergence of the columns from lines extending between adjacent portal vessels. The columns of cells group around terminal bile-ducts, and not around the so-called intralobular veins. (Lancet, 1895, vol. i. p. 1254.) Ed. of 15th English edition.

and the investing membranes of the liver. It also gives off **capsular branches** which reach the surface of the organ, terminating in the fibrous coat in stellate plexuses. Finally it gives off **interlobular branches** (*rami arteriosi interlobulares*) which form a plexus on the outer side of each lobule, to supply its wall and the accompanying bile-ducts. From this plexus lobular branches enter the lobule

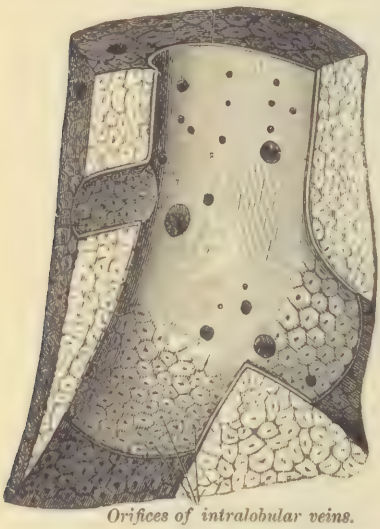


FIG. 946.—Longitudinal section of an hepatic vein. (After Kiernan.)

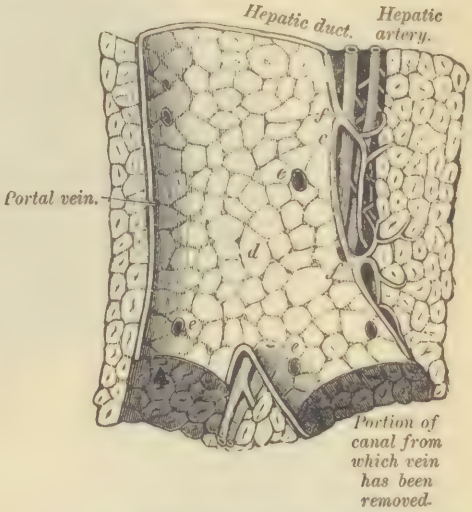


FIG. 947.—Longitudinal section of a small portal vein and canal. (After Kiernan.)

and end in the capillary network between the cells. Some anatomists, however, doubt whether it transmits any blood directly to the capillary network.

The **Portal Vein** also enters at the transverse fissure and runs through the portal canals, enclosed in Glisson's capsule, dividing into branches in its course,

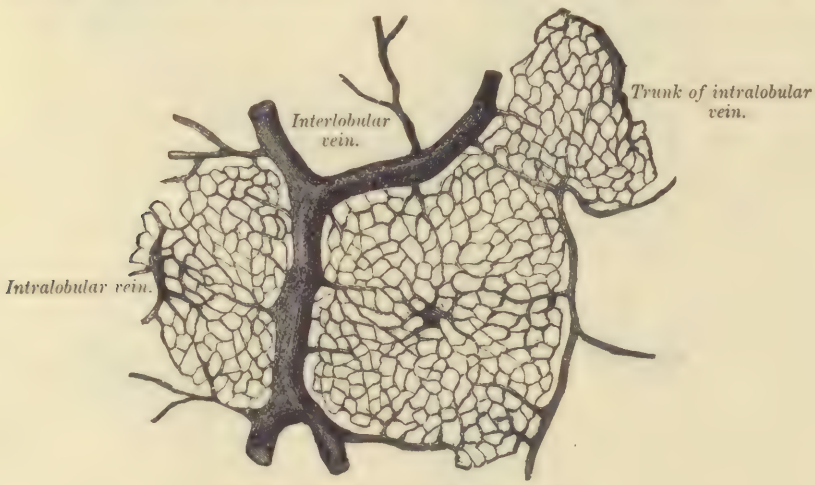


FIG. 948.—Horizontal section of liver (dog.)

which finally break up into a plexus, the **interlobular plexus**, in the interlobular spaces. In their course these branches receive the vaginal and capsular veins, corresponding to the vaginal and capsular branches of the hepatic artery (Fig. 947). Thus it will be seen that all the blood carried to the liver by the portal vein and hepatic artery, except perhaps that derived from the interlobular branches of

the hepatic artery, directly or indirectly finds its way into the interlobular plexus. From this plexus the blood is carried into the lobule by fine branches which pierce its wall and then converge from the circumference to the centre of the lobule, form-

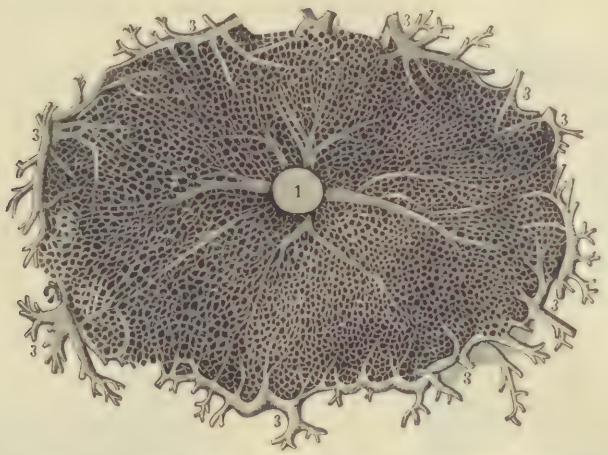


FIG. 949.—Horizontal section of a liver lobule. 1, central vein; 2, converging vessels; 3, interlobular plexus. (Poirier and Charpy.)

ing a number of converging vessels which are connected by transverse branches (Figs. 948 and 949). In the interstices of the network of vessels thus formed are situated, as before said, the liver-cells: and here it is that the blood is brought into

FIG. 950.—*X*-ray picture of the bile-ducts and the pancreatic ducts. (Byron Robinson.)

intimate connection with the liver-cells and the bile is secreted. Arrived at the centre of a lobule, all these minute vessels empty themselves into one vein, of considerable size, which runs down the centre of the lobule from apex to base and is called the **intralobular** or **central vein** (*vena interlobularis*) (Fig. 949). At the

base of the lobule this vein opens directly into the **sublobular vein,** with which the lobule is connected, and which, as before mentioned, is a radicle of the hepatic vein. The sublobular veins, uniting into larger and larger trunks, end at last in the hepatic veins, which do not receive any intralobular veins. Finally, the hepatic veins, as mentioned on page 767, converge to form three large trunks which open into the inferior vena cava, while that vessel is situated in the fissure appropriated to it at the back of the liver.

(3) **The Ducts.**—Having shown how the blood is brought into intimate relation with the hepatic cells in order that the bile may be secreted, it remains now only to consider the way in which the secretion, having been formed, is carried away. Several views have prevailed as to the mode of origin of the hepatic ducts; it seems, however, to be clear that they commence by little passages which are formed between the cells, and which have been termed **intercellular biliary passages, bile-capillaries** or **bile-canaliculi** (*ductus biliferi*). These passages are merely little channels or spaces left between the contiguous surfaces of two cells or in the

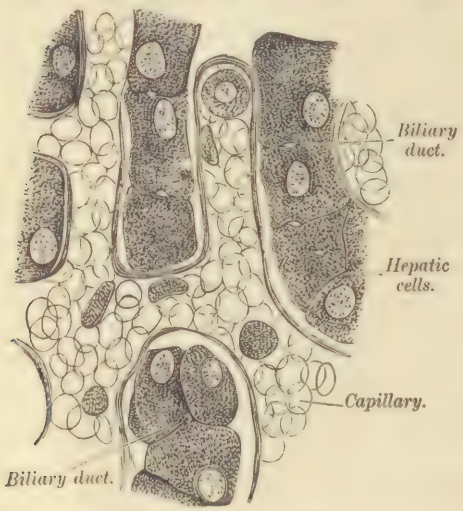


Fig. 951.—Section of liver.

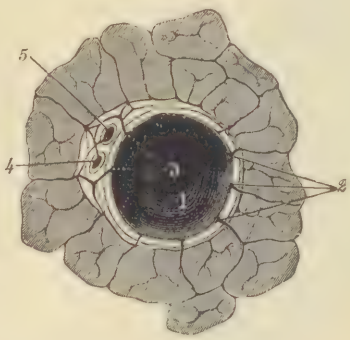


Fig. 952.—A transverse section of a small portal canal and its vessels. 1, portal vein; 2, interlobular branches; 3, vaginal branches; 4, hepatic duct; 5, hepatic artery. (After Kiernan.)

angle where three or more liver-cells meet (Fig. 951), and it seems doubtful whether there is any delicate membrane forming the wall of the channel. Heidenhain, however, thinks they have coats. The channels thus formed radiate to the circumference of the lobule, and, piercing its wall, form a plexus (*interlobular*) between the lobules. From this plexus **interlobular ducts** (*ductus interlobulares*) are derived which pass into the portal canals, become enclosed in Glisson's capsule, and, accompanying the portal vein and hepatic artery (Fig. 952), join with other ducts to form two main trunks, the right and left branches of the hepatic duct, which leave the liver at the transverse fissure, and by their union form the hepatic duct.

Structure.—The coats of the smallest biliary ducts, which lie in the interlobular spaces, are a connective-tissue coat, in which are muscle-cells, arranged both circularly and longitudinally, and an epithelial layer, consisting of short columnar cells. In the larger ducts, which lie in the portal canals, there are a number of orifices disposed in two longitudinal rows, which were formerly regarded as the openings of mucous glands, but which are merely the orifices of tubular recesses. They occasionally anastomose, and from the sides of them saccular dilatations are given off.

Lymphatics of the Liver (Fig. 506).—The lymphatics in the substance of the liver commence in lymphatic spaces around the capillaries of the lobules; they accompany

the vessels of the interlobular plexus, often enclosing and surrounding them. These unite and form larger vessels, which run in the portal canals, enclosed in Glisson's capsule, and emerge at the portal fissure to be distributed in the manner described. Other superficial lymphatics arise from the superficial lobules, pass under the peritoneum, and form a close plexus, where this membrane covers the liver. The first-named group of lymphatics give origin to the deep collecting trunks, the second to the superficial collecting trunks. According to Poirier, Cunéo and Delamare,[1] one group of deep collecting trunks accompanies the portal vein, there being fifteen to eighteen of them emerging from the transverse fissure. They empty into the glands of the hilum. Another group accompanies the hepatic veins. There are five or six trunks which pass through the Diaphragm and terminate in the glands about the vena cava (*intrathoracic glands*). According to the above-cited authorities, the superficial trunks of the superior surface are divided into posterior, anterior, and superior trunks. Some of the posterior trunks terminate in the glands about the coeliac axis, others in the glands about the lower portion of the vena cava in the thorax; others in the glands about the abdominal portion of the oesophagus. The anterior trunks which are limited to the right lobe pass to the glands of the hilum. The superior trunks ascend in the suspensory ligament. Some pass to the glands about the vena cava, just above the Diaphragm; others to the hepatic glands. The balance unite to form a very large trunk, which passes through the Diaphragm and divides into branches which enter the glands back of the base of the ensiform cartilage.

Nerves of the Liver.—The nerves of the liver are derived from the **left pneumogastric** and the **solar plexus of the sympathetic.** The branches of the pneumogastric ascend from in front of the stomach within the lesser omentum. The sympathetic nerves pass along the hepatic artery from the coeliac plexus. The nerves enter the liver at the transverse fissure and accompany the vessels and ducts to the interlobular spaces. Here, according to Korolkow, the medullated fibres are distributed almost exclusively to the coats of the blood-vessels; while the non-medullated fibres enter the lobules and ramify between the cells.

The Excretory Apparatus of the Liver.

The excretory apparatus of the liver consists of (1) the **hepatic duct,** which, as we have seen, is formed by the junction of the two main ducts, which pass out of the liver at the transverse fissure, and are formed by the union of the bile-capillaries; (2) the **gall-bladder,** which serves as a reservoir for the bile; (3) the **cystic duct,** which is the duct of the gall-bladder; and (4) the **common bile-duct,** formed by the junction of the hepatic and cystic ducts.

The Hepatic Duct (*ductus hepaticus*) (Figs. 953, 954, and 956).—Two main trunks of nearly equal size issue from the liver at the transverse fissure, one from the **right,** the other from the **left lobe;** these unite to form the hepatic duct, which then passes downward and to the right for about an inch and a half or two inches, between the layers of the lesser omentum, where it is joined at an acute angle by the cystic duct, and so forms the ductus communis choledochus. The hepatic duct, as it descends from the transverse fissure of the liver, between the two layers of the lesser omentum, lies in company with the hepatic artery and portal vein (Fig. 944).

The Gall-bladder (*vesica fellea*) (Figs. 859, 861, 938, 944, and 953).—The gall-bladder is the reservoir for the bile; it is a conical or pear-shaped musculo-membranous sac, lodged in a fossa on the under surface of the right lobe of the liver, and fixed in it by connective tissue, and extending from near the right extremity of the transverse fissure to the anterior border of the organ. It is

[1] The Lymphatics. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

about four inches in length, one inch in breadth at its widest part, and holds from eight to ten drachms. It is divided into a fundus, body, and neck. The **fundus** (*fundus vesicae felleae*), or broad extremity, is directed downward, forward, and to the right, and projects beyond the anterior border of the liver; the **body** (*corpus vesicae felleae*) and **neck** (*collum vesicae felleae*) are directed upward and backward to the left. The neck of the gall-bladder is on a slightly higher level than the lowest point of the gall-bladder; thus the weight of the bile is away from rather than toward the outlet. The upper surface of the gall-bladder is attached to the liver by connective tissue and vessels. The under surface is covered by peritoneum, which is reflected on to it from the surface of the liver. Occasionally the whole of the organ is invested by the serous membrane, and is then connected to the liver by a kind of mesentery.

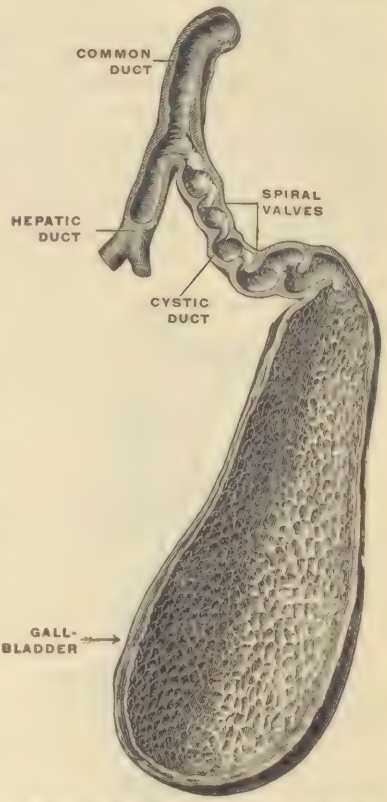


FIG. 953. The gall-bladder and bile-ducts, cut through. (Spalteholz.)

Relations.—The **body of the gall-bladder** is in relation, by its upper surface, with the liver, to which it is connected by areolar tissue and vessels; by its under surface, with the commencement of the transverse colon; and farther back, with the upper end of the descending portion of the duodenum or sometimes with the pyloric end of the stomach or the first portion of the duodenum. The **fundus** is completely invested by peritoneum; it is in relation, in front, with the abdominal parietes, immediately below the ninth costal cartilage; behind, with the transverse arch of the colon. The **neck** is narrow, and curves upon itself like the letter S; at its point of connection with the cystic duct it presents a well-marked constriction.

When the gall-bladder is distended with bile or filled with calculi, the fundus may be felt through the abdominal parietes, especially in an emaciated subject; the relations of this sac will also serve to explain the occasional occurrence of abdominal biliary fistulae, through which biliary calculi may pass out, and of the passage of calculi from the gall-bladder into the stomach, duodenum, or colon, which occasionally happens.

Structure.—The gall-bladder consists of three coats—**serous, fibrous** and **muscular,** and **mucous.**

The **External** or **Serous Coat** (*tunica serosa vesicae felleae*) is derived from the peritoneum; it completely invests the fundus, but covers the body and neck only on their under surfaces.

The **Fibro-muscular Coat** (*tunica muscularis vesicae felleae*) is a thin but strong layer which forms the framework of the sac, consisting of dense fibrous tissue which interlaces in all directions and is mixed with plain muscular fibres which are disposed chiefly in a longitudinal direction, a few running transversely.

The **Internal** or **Mucous Coat** (*tunica mucosa vesicae felleae*) is loosely connected with the fibrous layer. It is generally tinged with a yellowish-brown color, and is everywhere elevated into minute **rugae,** by the union of which numerous meshes are formed, the depressed intervening spaces having a polygonal outline. The meshes are smaller at the fundus and neck, being most developed about the centre

of the sac. Opposite the neck of the gall-bladder the mucous membrane projects inward in the form of oblique ridges or folds, forming a sort of screw-like or *spiral* valve (Fig. 953).

The mucous membrane is covered with columnar epithelium, and secretes an abundance of thick viscid mucus; it is continuous through the hepatic duct with the mucous membrane lining the ducts of the liver, and through the ductus communis choledochus with the mucous membrane of the duodenum.

The Cystic Duct (*ductus cysticus*).—The cystic duct, the smallest of the three biliary ducts, is about an inch and a half in length. It passes obliquely downward and to the left from the neck of the gall-bladder, and joins the hepatic duct to form the common bile-duct. It lies in the gastro-hepatic omentum in front of the portal

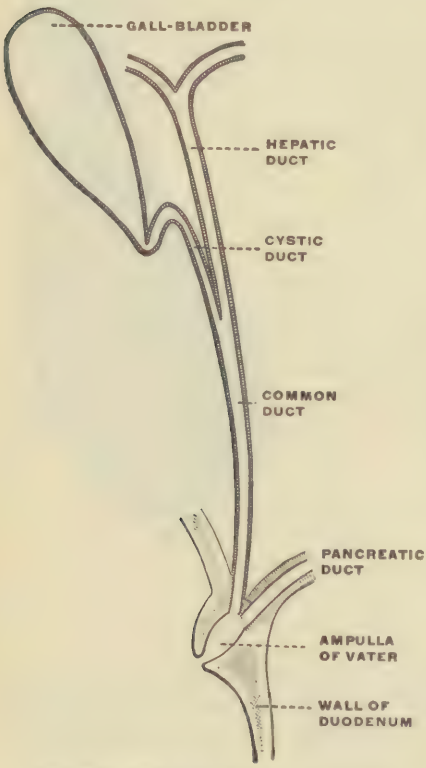


Fig. 954.—The biliary ducts. Schematic. (Poirier and Charpy.)

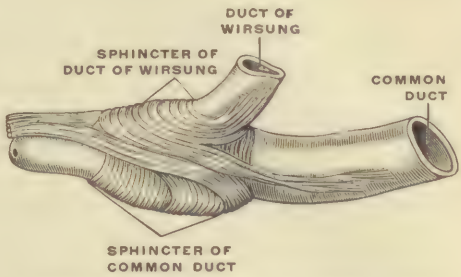


Fig. 955.—The sphincter of the common bile-duct. (Poirier and Charpy.)

vein, the hepatic artery lying to its left side. The mucous membrane lining its interior is thrown into a series of crescentic folds, from five to twelve in number, similar to those found in the neck of the gall-bladder. They project into the duct in regular succession, and are directed obliquely round the tube, presenting much the appearance of a continuous spiral valve (*valvula spiralis* [*Heisteri*]) (Fig. 953). When the duct is distended, the spaces between the folds are dilated, so as to give to its exterior a sacculated appearance.

The **Ductus Communis Choledochus** or **Common Bile-duct** (*ductus choledochus*) Figs. 953 and 954), the largest of the three, is the common excretory duct of the liver and gall-bladder. It is about three inches in length, is of the diameter of a goose-quill, and is formed by the junction of the cystic and hepatic ducts.

It descends within the two layers and along the right border of the lesser omentum behind the first portion the duodenum, in front of the portal vein, and to the right of the hepatic artery (Fig. 859); then passes either between the pancreas and descending portion of the duodenum, or through the head of the pancreas. In fifty-eight dissections Prof. Büngner found that it passed through the pancreas fifty-five times and over the head only three times. Even when it passes through the pancreas it almost always joins the pancreatic duct *outside* of the gland. It descends by the right side of the pancreatic duct and passes with it obliquely through the wall of the descending portion of the duodenum between the mucous and muscular coats in the submucous tissue for one-half to three-

quarters of an inch. The two ducts usually unite just before opening into the duodenum (Figs. 954, 955, and 957), but may remain independent throughout. The **ampulla of Vater** (Fig. 954) is the cavity formed by the fusion of the two ducts, and is much larger than the opening on the bile-papilla. The two ducts open by a common orifice, or by two separate orifices, upon the summit of a papilla, situated at the inner side of the descending portion of the duodenum, a little below its middle and about three or four inches below the pylorus. The muscle of the common duct has a certain amount of sphincter power (Fig. 955), which serves to prevent the entrance of duodenal contents through the small aperture, but is not sufficiently powerful to prevent the flow of bile and pancreatic juice.

Structure.—The coats of the large biliary ducts are an **external** or **fibrous** and an **internal** or **mucous**. The fibrous coat is composed of strong fibro-areolar tissues,

FIG. 956.—Part of the bile-duct and the pancreatic ducts. *C* and *B*, calculi; *Sa*, Santorini's duct; *P*, pancreatic duct; *III* and *IV*, ducts from the right and left lobes of the liver; *II*, cystic duct; *C*, gall-bladder; *A*, common duct. (Byron Robinson.)

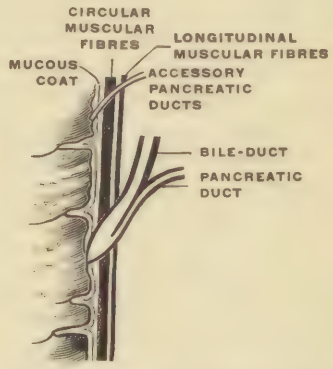


FIG. 957.—Diagram showing the bile and pancreatic ducts piercing the wall of the duodenum obliquely. (Cunningham.)

with a certain amount of muscular tissue arranged, for the most part, in a circular manner around the duct. The mucous coat is continuous with the lining membrane of the hepatic ducts and gall-bladder, and also with that of the duodenum; and, like the mucous membrane of these structures, its epithelium is of the columnar variety. It is provided with numerous mucous glands, which are lobulated and open by minute orifices scattered irregularly in the larger ducts. It is questionable if the smallest biliary ducts, which lie in the interlobular spaces, have any coats. Heidenhain thinks they have a connective-tissue coat, in which are muscle-cells arranged both circularly and longitudinally, and an epithelial layer, consisting of short columnar cells.

Dimensions of the Bile-ducts.—The hepatic duct is about two inches in length, and its lumen is one-sixth of an inch in diameter. The cystic duct is about one and one-half inches in length, and its lumen one-twelfth of an inch in diameter. The common duct is about three inches in length, and its lumen is one-quarter of an inch in diameter. The duodenal opening is smaller than the common duct. The ducts are capable of considerable distention, but the duodenal opening cannot be dilated (Hyrtl).

Blood-vessels, Lymphatics and Nerves of the Gall-bladder and Bile-ducts.—The **cystic artery** (Fig. 418), a branch from the right division of the hepatic, supplies the gall-bladder and cystic duct with blood. It passes along the cystic duct, and on reaching the gall-bladder divides into an upper branch and a lower branch. The upper branch lies between the gall-bladder and the liver and sends branches to each. The lower branch is between the peritoneum and the wall of the gall-bladder. The **cystic veins** empty into the portal vein. The common duct receives branches from the **superior pancreatico-duodenal artery.** There is a **submucous lymphatic network** and a **muscular lymphatic network.** The lymphatics are much less numerous at the fundus of the gall-bladder than at the neck or in the extra-hepatic ducts. The collecting trunks (Fig. 506) end in **glands** along the cystic and common ducts, and these glands are in communication with the duodenal lymphatics and the lymphatics from the head of the pancreas. The **nerves** of the gall-bladder and bile-ducts come from the **coeliac plexus** of the sympathetic. The adjacent peritoneum is plentifully supplied with nerves (Byron Robinson).

The Bile (*fel*).—The bile is a reddish-brown or greenish fluid. It contains pigments (bilirubin and biliverdin), fats and soaps, cholesterin, sodium salts of glycocholic and taurocholic acid, lecithin, and nucleo-albumin furnished by the mucous membrane. There are also present CO_2; chlorides, carbonates, phosphates, and sulphates of the alkalies and of calcium, and iron. The amount normally secreted is from one pint to one and one-half pints in the twenty-four hours.

Surface Relations.—The liver is situated in the right hypochondriac and the epigastric regions, and is moulded to the arch of the Diaphragm. In the greater part of its extent it lies under cover of the lower ribs and their cartilages, but in the epigastric region it comes in contact with the abdominal wall, in the subcostal angle. The *upper limit of the right lobe of the liver* may be defined in the middle line by the junction of the mesosternum with the ensiform cartilage; on the right side the line must be carried upward as far as the fifth rib cartilage in the line of the nipple and then downward to reach the seventh rib at the side of the chest. The *upper limit of the left lobe* may be defined by continuing this line to the left with an inclination downward to a point about two inches to the left of the sternum on a level with the sixth left costal cartilage. The *lower limit of the liver* may be indicated by a line drawn half an inch below the lower border of the thorax on the right side as far as the ninth right costal cartilage, and thence obliquely upward across the subcostal angle to the eighth left costal cartilage. A slight curved line with its convexity to the left from this point—*i. e.*, the eighth left costal cartilage—to the termination of the line indicating the upper limit will denote the left margin of the liver. The fundus of the gall-bladder approaches the surface behind the anterior extremity of the ninth costal cartilage, close to the outer margin of the Right rectus muscle.

It must be remembered that the liver is subject to considerable alterations in position, and the student should make himself acquainted with the different circumstances under which this occurs, as they are of importance in determining the existence of enlargement or other diseases of the organ.

Its position varies according to the posture of the body. In the erect position in the adult male the edge of the liver projects about half an inch below the lower edge of the right costal cartilages, and its anterior border can be often felt in this situation if the abdominal wall is thin. In the supine position the liver gravitates backward and recedes above the lower margin of the ribs, and cannot then be detected by the finger. In the prone position it falls forward, and can then generally be felt in a patient with loose and lax abdominal walls. Its position varies also with the ascent or descent of the Diaphragm. In a deep inspiration the liver descends below the ribs; in expiration it is raised behind them. Again, in emphysema, where the lungs are distended and the Diaphragm descends very low, the liver is pushed down; in some other diseases, as phthisis, where the Diaphragm is much arched, the liver rises very high up. Pressure from without, as in tight lacing, by compressing the lower part of the chest, displaces the liver considerably, its anterior edge often extending as low as the crest of the ilium; and its convex surface is often at the same time deeply indented from the pressure of the ribs. Again, its position varies greatly according to the greater or less distention of the stomach and intestines. When the intestines are empty the liver descends in the abdomen, but when they are distended it is pushed upward. Its relations to surrounding organs may also be changed by the growth of tumors or by collections of fluid in the thoracic or abdominal cavities.

Surgical Anatomy.—*Movable liver* or *hepatoptosis* is a rare condition, in which the liver moves or can be moved from its normal position. It is due to lessened tone of the abdominal

muscles and relaxation of the liver supports. In movable liver the organ may be rotated on its vertical axis or on its transverse axis. Tongue-like lobes have been referred to. On account of its large size, its fixed position, and its friability, the liver is more frequently *ruptured* than any of the abdominal viscera. The rupture may vary considerably in extent, from a slight scratch to an extensive laceration completely through its substance, dividing it into two parts. Sometimes an *internal rupture* without laceration of the peritoneal covering takes place, and such injuries are most susceptible of repair; but small tears of the surface may also heal; when, however, the laceration is extensive, death usually takes place from hemorrhage, on account of the fact that the hepatic veins are contained in rigid canals in the liver-substance and are unable to contract, and are moreover unprovided with valves. The liver may also be torn by the end of a broken rib perforating the Diaphragm. The liver may be injured by *stabs* or other *punctured wounds*, and when these are inflicted through the chest-wall both pleural and peritoneal cavities may be opened up and both lung and liver be wounded. In cases of *wound of the liver* from the front, protrusion of a part of this viscus may take place, but can generally easily be replaced. In cases of laceration of the liver, when there is evidence that bleeding is going on, the abdomen must be opened, the laceration sought for, and the bleeding arrested. This may be done temporarily by introducing the forefinger into the foramen of Winslow and placing the thumb on the gastro-hepatic omentum and compressing the hepatic artery and portal vein between the two. Any bleeding points can then be seen. Bleeding is, if possible, arrested by suture ligatures. The edges of a small laceration are simply brought together and sutured by means of a blunt, curved, round needle passed from one side of the wound to the other. All sutures must be passed before any are tied, and this must be done with the greatest gentleness, as the liver substance is very friable. If suture fails the actual cautery may succeed. When the laceration is extensive, the liver is sutured to the abdominal wall to hold it firm when pressure is applied, and then the laceration is packed with a piece of iodoform gauze, the end of which is allowed to hang out of the external wound. *Abscess of the liver* is of not infrequent occurrence, and may open in many different ways on account of the relations of this viscus to other organs. Thus it may burst into the lung, the pus being coughed up, or into the stomach; the pus perhaps being vomited, it may burst into the colon or into the duodenum, or, by perforating the Diaphragm, it may empty itself into the pleural cavity. Frequently it makes its way forward, and points on the anterior abdominal wall, and finally it may burst into the peritoneal or pericardiac cavity. Abscesses of the liver require opening, and this must be done by an incision in the abdominal wall, in the thoracic wall, or in the lumbar region, according to the direction in which the abscess is tracking. The incision through the abdominal wall is to be preferred when possible. The abdominal wall is incised over the swelling, and unless the peritoneum is adherent, gauze is packed all around the exposed liver surface and the abscess opened, if deeply seated, preferably by the thermo-cautery. *Hydatid cysts* are more often found in the liver than in any other of the viscera. The reason of this is not far to seek. The embryo of the egg of the tænia echinococcus being liberated in the stomach by the disintegration of its shell, bores its way through the gastric walls and usually enters a blood-vessel, and is carried by the blood-stream to the hepatic capillaries, where its onward course is arrested, and where it undergoes development into the fully formed hydatid. *Tumors of the liver* have recently been subjected to surgical treatment by removal of a portion of the organ. The abdomen is opened and the diseased portion of liver exposed; the circulation is controlled by compressing the portal vein and the hepatic artery in the gastro-hepatic omentum and a wedge-shaped portion of liver containing the tumor removed; the divided vessels are ligated and the cut surfaces brought together and sutured in the manner directed above.

When the *gall-bladder* or one of its main ducts is *ruptured*, which may occur independently of laceration of the liver, death usually occurs from peritonitis. If the symptoms have led to the performance of a laparotomy and a small rent is found, it should be sutured; if an extensive opening is found the gall-bladder should be removed. If the cystic duct is torn, its intestinal end must be closed and the gall-bladder removed. In rupture of either of the other ducts, simply provide for free drainage.

The gall-bladder may become distended with bile in cases of *obstruction of its duct* or of the *common bile-duct*, or it may become distended from a collection of *gall-stones* within its interior, thus forming a large tumor. The swelling due to distention with bile is pear-shaped, and projects downward and forward to the umbilicus. It moves with respiration, since it is attached to the liver. To relieve a patient of *gall-stones*, the gall-bladder must be opened and the gall-stones removed. The operation is performed by an incision two or three inches long in the right semilunar line, commencing at the costal margin. The peritoneal cavity is opened, and, the tumor having been found, gauze pads are packed around it to protect the peritoneal cavity, and it is aspirated. When the contained fluid has been evacuated the flaccid bladder is drawn out of the abdominal wound and its wall incised to the extent of an inch; any gall-stones in the bladder are now removed and the interior of the sac sponged dry. If the case is one of obstruction of the duct, an attempt must be made to dislodge the stone by manipulation through the wall of the duct; or it may be crushed from without by the fingers or carefully padded forceps. If this does not succeed, the safest plan is to incise the duct, extract the stone, close

the incision in the duct by fine sutures in two layers and employ drainage. After all obstruction has been removed, four courses are open to the surgeon: 1. The wound in the gall-bladder may be at once sewed up, the organ returned into the abdominal cavity, and the external incision closed. 2. The edges of the incision in the gall-bladder may be sutured to the fascia of the external wound, and a fistulous communication established between the gall-bladder and the exterior; this fistulous opening usually closes in the course of a few weeks. 3. The gall-bladder may be connected with the intestinal canal, preferably the duodenum, by means of a lateral anastomosis; this is known as *cholecystenterostomy*. 4. The gall-bladder may be completely removed (*cholecystectomy*). Plan 2 is usually followed. Plan 4 is employed when the coats of the gall-bladder are seriously diseased. Plan 2 is employed in obstruction of the common duct by malignant disease.

If a stone blocks the diverticulum of Vater and if the common bile-duct and the pancreatic duct empty into the diverticulum, it is evident that both ducts will be blocked. It has been demonstrated that in such a case the pressure urging the bile onward is sufficient to overcome the pressure in the pancreatic duct and drive bile into the ducts of the pancreas, the result, perhaps, being disastrous inflammation of the pancreas.

Septic trouble arises more rapidly when a stone is blocked in the duct than when stones merely block the gall-bladder, because the first-named part is richer in lymphatics (Murphy).

THE PANCREAS (Figs. 958, 959, 960, 961).

Dissection.—The pancreas may be exposed for dissection in three different ways: 1. By raising the liver, drawing down the stomach, and tearing through the gastro-hepatic omentum and the ascending layer of the transverse mesocolon. 2. By raising the stomach, the arch of the colon, and great omentum, and then dividing the inferior layer of the transverse mesocolon and raising its ascending layer. 3. By dividing the two layers of peritoneum, which descend from the great curvature of the stomach to form the great omentum; turning the stomach upward, and then cutting through the ascending layer of the transverse mesocolon (see Fig. 853).

The Pancreas (*παν-κρέας, all flesh*) is a compound racemose gland, analogous in its structure to the salivary glands, though softer and less compactly arranged than those organs. It is long and irregularly prismatic in shape, and has been compared to a human or a dog's tongue; it is of reddish-white color. Its right extremity being broad, is called the **head.** The right half of the head above is continuous with the *neck*, which connects the head to the main portion of the organ, the **body.** The **neck** is a slight constriction or thin part of the gland, placed in front of the portal vein, and connecting the head to the body. The left half of the head is separated from the neck by a notch, the **incisura pancreaticus.** The body of the gland gradually tapers into an extremity directed to the left, and called the **tail.** The pancreas is placed transversely across the posterior wall of the abdomen, at the back of the epigastric and left hypochondriac regions. Its length varies from five to six inches, its breadth is an inch and a half, and its thickness from half an inch to an inch, being greater at its right extremity and along its upper border. Its weight varies from two to three and a half ounces, but it may reach six ounces.

The **Right Extremity** or **Head of the Pancreas** (*caput pancreatis*) (Fig. 958) is shaped like the head of a hammer, being elongated both above and below; it is flattened from before backward, and conforms to the whole concavity of the duodenum, which is slightly overlapped by it. The anterior surface near its left border exhibits a notch, the **incisura pancreatis**, which contains the superior mesenteric vessels. The notch marks the separation of the inferior portion of the head, which is known as the **uncinate process of Winslow** (*processus uncinatus* [*Winslowi*]), which rests, below, upon the inferior portion of the duodenum, and, above, is pushed up back of the upper portion. The lower end of the head is crossed by the transverse colon and its mesocolon. Behind, the head of the pancreas is in relation with the inferior vena cava, the left renal vein, the right crus of the Diaphragm, and the aorta. The common bile-duct descends behind, between the duodenum and pancreas, or in the substance of the gland; and the pan-

creatico-duodenal artery descends in front between the same parts. The head of the pancreas is closely adherent to the duodenum.

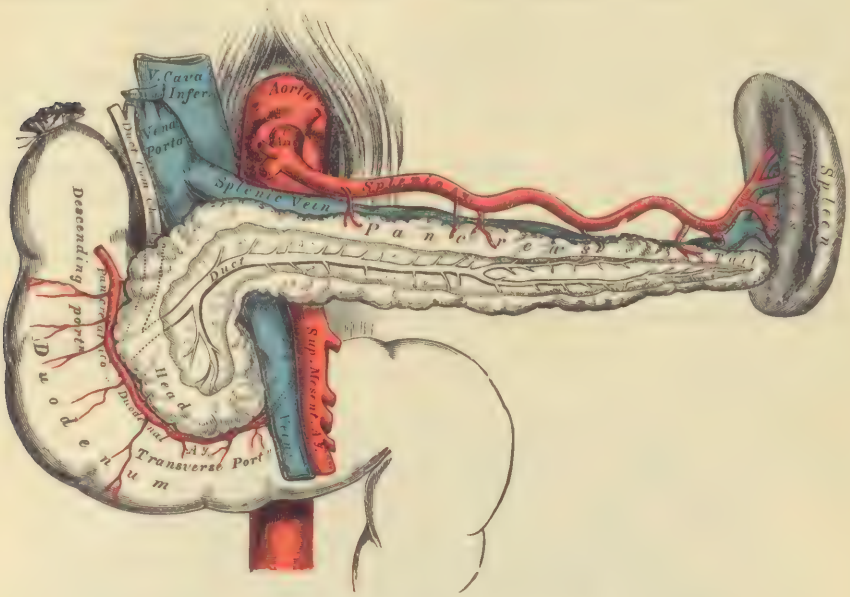


FIG. 958.—The pancreas and its relations.

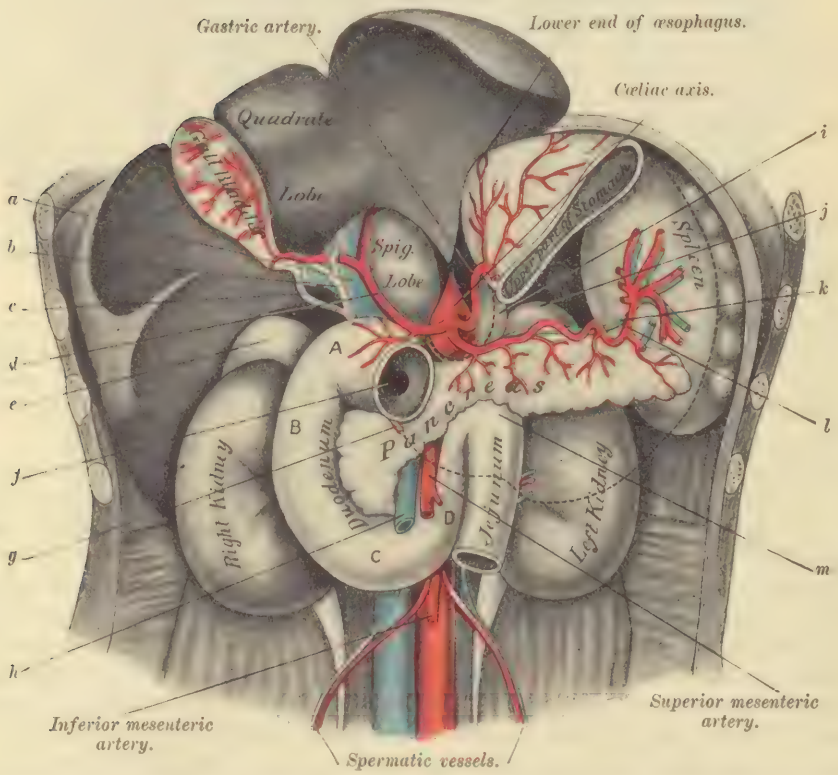


FIG. 959.—The duodenum and pancreas. The liver has been lifted up and the greater part of the stomach removed: *a*, portal vein; *b*, hepatic duct; *c*, cystic duct; *d*, hepatic artery; *e*, right suprarenal capsule; *f*, pyloric orifice; *g*, right gastro-epiploic artery; *h*, superior mesenteric vein; *i*, left crus of diaphragm; *j*, left suprarenal capsule; *k*, splenic vein; *l*, splenic artery; *m*, duodeno-jejunal junction; A, B, C, D, the four portions of the duodenum. (Testut.)

The **Neck of the Pancreas** is about an inch long, and passes upward and forward to the left, having the first part of the duodenum above it, and the termination of the fourth portion below. It lies in front of the commencement of the portal vein, and is grooved on the right by the gastro-duodenal and superior pancreatico-duodenal arteries. The pylorus lies just above it.

The **Body** (*corpus pancreatis*) and **Tail** (*cauda pancreatis*) **of the Pancreas** are somewhat prismatic in shape, and have three surfaces: **anterior, posterior,** and **inferior.**

The Anterior Surface (*facies anterior*).—The anterior surface is somewhat concave, and is covered by the posterior surface of the stomach which rests upon it, the two organs being separated by the lesser sac of the peritoneum. At its right extremity there is a well-marked prominence, called by His the **omental tuberosity** (*tuber omentale*).

The Posterior Surface (*facies posterior*).—The posterior surface is separated from the vertebral column by the aorta, the splenic vein, the left kidney and its vessels, the left suprarenal capsule, the pillars of the Diaphragm, and the origin of the superior mesenteric artery.

The Inferior Surface (*facies inferior*) (Fig. 959).—The inferior surface is narrow, and lies upon the duodeno-jejunal flexure and on some coils of the jejunum; its left extremity rests on the splenic flexure of the colon.

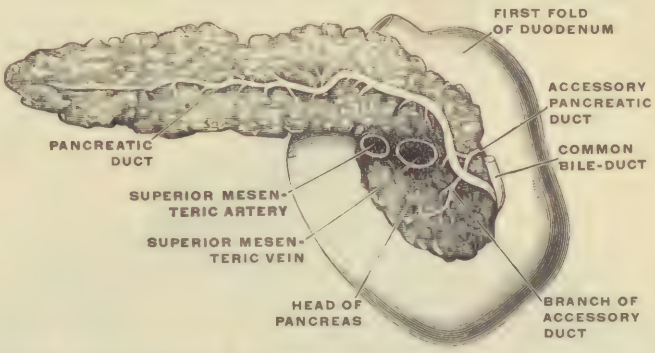


FIG. 960.—The pancreas and duodenum from behind, with the pancreatic duct exposed. The superior mesenteric vessels are also shown in section, passing forward, surrounded by the recurved portion of the head of the pancreas. (Cunningham.)

The Superior Border (*margo superior*) (Fig. 959).—The superior border of the body is blunt and flat to the right; narrow and sharp to the left, near the tail. It commences to the right in the omental tuberosity, and is in relation with the coeliac axis, from which the hepatic artery courses to the right just above the gland, while the splenic branch runs in a groove along this border to the left.

The Anterior Border (*margo anterior*).—The anterior border is the position where the two layers of the transverse mesocolon separate; the one passing upward in front of the anterior surface, the other backward below the inferior surface (Fig. 853).

The **lesser end** or **tail of the pancreas** is narrow; it extends to the left as far as the lower part of the inner aspect of the spleen, and its end is directed upward and to the left (Fig. 959).

Birmingham describes the body of the pancreas as projecting forward as a prominent ridge into the abdominal cavity and forming a sort of shelf on which the stomach lies. He says: "The portion of the pancreas to the left of the middle line has a very considerable antero-posterior thickness; as a result the anterior surface is of considerable extent, it looks strongly upward, and forms a large and important part of the shelf. As the pancreas extends to the left toward the spleen it crosses the upper part of the kidney, and is so moulded on to it that the top of the kidney

forms an extension inward and backward of the upper surface of the pancreas and extends the bed in this direction. On the other hand, the extremity of the pancreas comes in contact with the spleen in such a way that the plane of its upper surface runs with little interruption upward and backward into the concave gastric surface of the spleen, which completes the bed behind and to the left, and, running upward, forms a partial cap for the wide end of the stomach."[1] An occasional anomaly is a pancreas prolonged in front of the duodenum or actually embracing it (annular pancreas).

Peritoneal Relations (Fig. 853).—The transverse mesocolon is attached to the anterior border of the pancreas, from the tail to the neck of the gland, and the two layers of the mesocolon separate. The anterior layer which comes from the lesser peritoneum covers part of the anterior surface and the superior surface; the posterior layer, which comes from the greater omentum, covers the rest of the anterior surface and the inferior surface. The posterior surface is devoid of peritoneum.

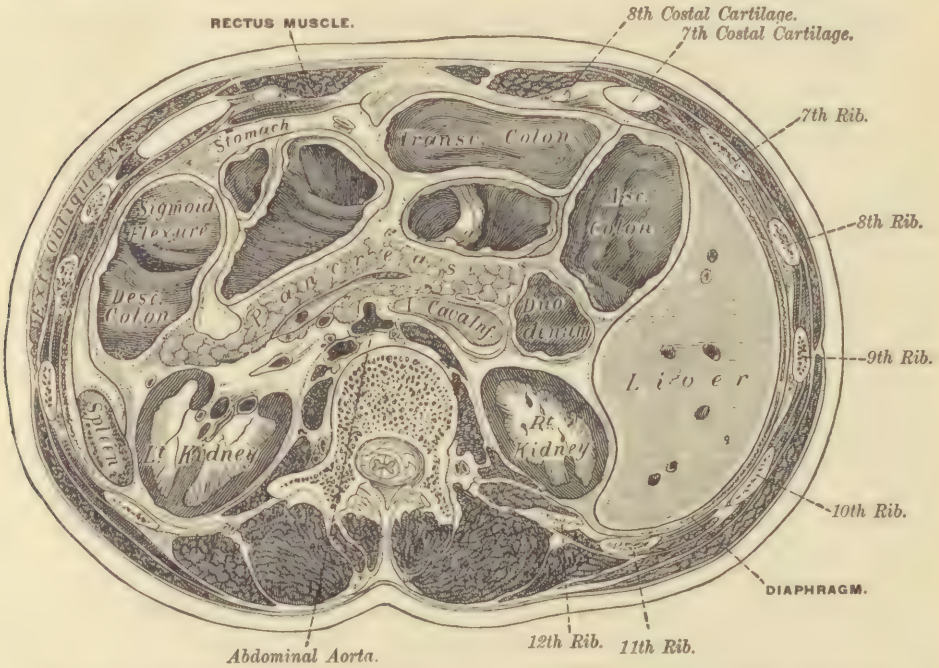


FIG. 961.—Transverse section through the middle of the first lumbar vertebra, showing the relations of the pancreas. (Braune.)

There is in front of the head and at the anterior margin a narrow strip of pancreas, which remains uncovered by peritoneum and which corresponds to the cellular tissue of the mesocolon.

The principal excretory duct of the pancreas, called the **pancreatic duct** or **canal of Wirsung** (*ductus pancreaticus* [*Wirsungi*]) (Figs. 956, 958, and 960), from its discoverer, extends transversely from left to right through the substance of the pancreas. In order to expose it, the superficial portion of the gland must be removed. It commences by the junction of the small ducts of the lobules situated in the tail of the pancreas, and, running from left to right through the body, it constantly receives the ducts of the various lobules composing the gland. Considerably augmented in size, it reaches the neck, and turning obliquely downward, backward, and to the right, it comes into relation with the common bile-duct, lying to

[1] Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, vol. xxxi. part i. p. 102.

its left side; leaving the head of the gland, it passes very obliquely through the mucous and muscular coats of the duodenum, and usually terminates by an orifice common to it and the ductus communis choledochus upon the summit of an elevated papilla, situated at the inner side of the descending portion of the duodenum, three or four inches below the pylorus (Figs. 954, 955, and 957).

Sometimes the pancreatic duct and ductus communis choledochus open separately into the duodenum (Fig. 893). In about one-fifth of the subjects there is an accessory duct, which is given off from the canal of Wirsung in the neck of the pancreas and passes horizontally to the right to open into the duodenum about an inch above the orifice of the main duct. This is known as the **duct of Santorini** (*ductus pancreaticus accessorius* [*Santorini*]) (Figs. 956, 957, and 960).

The pancreatic duct, near the duodenum, is about the size of an ordinary quill; its walls are thin, consisting of two coats, an external fibrous and an internal mucous; the latter is smooth, and furnished near its termination with a few scattered follicles.

Structure.—In structure, the pancreas resembles the salivary glands. It differs from them, however, in certain particulars, and is looser and softer in its texture. It is not enclosed in a distinct capsule, but is surrounded by areolar tissue, which dips into its interior, and connects together the various lobules of which it is composed. Each lobule, like the lobules of the salivary glands, consists of one of the ultimate ramifications of the main duct, terminating in a number of caecal pouches or alveoli, which are tubular and somewhat convoluted. The minute ducts connected with the alveoli are narrow and lined with flattened cells. They are the secreting end tubules. The narrow ducts which come from the end tubules are lined with flat epithelial cells. The alveoli are almost completely filled with secreting cells, so that scarcely any lumen is visible. In the centre of the end tubules flat cells are frequently found. They are continuations into the tubules of the duct epithelium. These cells are known as the **centro-acinar cells of Langerhans.** The true secreting cells which line the wall of the alveolus are very characteristic. They are columnar or rounded in shape and present two zones: an outer one clear and finely striated next the basement-membrane, and an inner granular one next the lumen. The highly refracting granules are known as **zymogen granules.** During digestion the granules gradually disappear and the cells become clear. During fasting the granular zone occupies more than one-half of the cell (Szymonowicz). In some secreting cells of the pancreas is a spherical mass, staining more easily than the rest of the cells; this is termed the **paranucleus,** and is believed to be an extension from the nucleus. The connective tissue among the gland tubules and alveoli presents in certain parts collections of cells, which are termed **inter-alveolar cell-islets, intertubular cell-masses** or **islands of Langerhans.** Opie points out that they are most common in the splenic end of the pancreas. The cells of the islands are smaller than the secreting cells of the alveoli, and are arranged in layers with intervening spaces. The islands are surrounded by fine connective tissue. The spaces in the islands contain capillaries. There are no ducts in the islands of Langerhans. Their function is to furnish the internal secretion of the pancreas.

Blood-vessels, Lymphatics, and Nerves.—The **arteries of the pancreas** come from the **superior pancreatico-duodenal branch of the gastro-duodenal**; the **inferior pancreatico-duodenal branch of the superior mesenteric**; the **inferior pancreatic branch of the superior mesenteric**; **pancreatic branches of the hepatic** and **pancreatic branches of the splenic.** In a few cases a large artery, the **pancreatica magna,** accompanies the pancreatic duct. In most cases there is no such vessel. The **veins** are the **anterior pancreatico-duodenal branch of the superior mesenteric**; the **posterior pancreatico-duodenal branch** and other **pancreatic branches of the portal**; and **pancreatic branches of the splenic.** The **lymphatics** arise in a network about the lobules.

Numerous collecting trunks pass to the surface of the pancreas, anastomose with each other, and enter into glands about the pancreas. The **splenic glands** receive most of the trunks. Others are received by glands along the aorta (Sappey), glands at the origin of the superior mesenteric artery, and glands along the pancreatico-duodenal vessels.[1] The **nerves** come from the **coeliac, superior mesenteric,** and **splenic plexuses.**

The Pancreatic Juice.—The pancreatic juice is a clear, somewhat viscid alkaline liquid. Its specific gravity is about 1030. The solid matter consists chiefly of proteids, and amounts to about 10 per cent. of a sample of the juice.[2] The juice contains a ferment which breaks up fat, a ferment which converts starch into sugar, a ferment which curdles milk, and a ferment which digests proteid material.

Surface Form.—The pancreas lies in front of the second lumbar vertebra, and can sometimes be felt, in emaciated subjects, when the stomach and colon are empty, by making deep pressure in the middle line about three inches above the umbilicus.

Surgical Anatomy.—Of late years our knowledge of the structure, functions, and diseases of the pancreas has been notably increased, and surgeons have begun to operate for certain pancreatic diseases. It is occasionally the seat of *cancer*, which usually affects the head or duodenal end, and therefore often speedily involves the common bile-duct, leading to persistent jaundice. Cancer of the pancreas may be primary or secondary. *Primary sarcoma* is very unusual; secondary sarcoma is more common, but cancer is far commoner than either form of sarcoma. *Adenoma* may also occur. Cases are on record of the successful removal of tumors of the pancreas, but the operations are very dangerous, are extremely difficult, and are seldom attempted. The pancreas may be the seat of *syphilitic* or *tuberculous disease*. As a result of pancreatic injury, there may be *effusion into the lesser peritoneal cavity*. The lesser cavity becomes distended, and the fluid of this *pseudo-cyst* may contain pancreatic juice (Jordan Lloyd). True *cysts* of the pancreas are occasionally found. Pancreatic cysts may result from blocking of the duct, from epithelial proliferation, from traumatism and hemorrhage, or from hydatid disease. *Congenital cysts* may occur, and *cystic carcinoma* is sometimes encountered. Cysts of the pancreas may present in the epigastric region above and to the right of the umbilicus. The fluid in these cysts contains some of the pancreatic secretion. A pancreatic cyst is best treated by opening the abdomen, suturing the cyst to the skin, opening the cyst and providing for drainage. Complete extirpation of the cyst is invariably difficult and is usually impossible. It has been said that the pancreas is the only abdominal viscus which has never been found in a hernial protrusion; but even this organ has been found, in company with other viscera, in rare cases of *diaphragmatic hernia*. The pancreas has been known to become invaginated into the intestine, and portions of the organ have sloughed off. In cases of *excision of the pylorus* great care must be exercised to avoid wounding the pancreas, as the escape of the pancreatic fluid may be attended with serious and even with fatal results, peritonitis and *fat necrosis*, and gangrene being caused.

Rupture of the pancreas as a solitary result of traumatism is very unusual, but is more common in violent injuries which rupture the liver and spleen as well. An injury which lacerates the pancreas and permits blood and pancreatic juice to flow into the lesser peritoneal cavity is usually rapidly fatal, but may not be. The foramen of Winslow may be occluded by inflammation, and a pseudo-cyst may form. In severe laceration of the pancreas alone, it would be proper to open the abdomen, ligature bleeding vessels, suture the pancreas, and drain the lesser peritoneal cavity posteriorly. A *gunshot wound of the pancreas* requires posterior drainage. Every effort must be made in a pancreatic wound to rapidly get rid of pancreatic fluid by drainage from the wound area, as this fluid is extremely irritant and may cause gangrene.

Inflammation of the pancreas is due to infection. Occasionally it seems to follow the entrance of bile into the pancreatic duct, because of plugging of the ampulla with a calculus (Halsted, Opie). Hemorrhage into the pancreas is frequent in acute pancreatitis, and fat necrosis is common in the fat of the mesentery, subperitoneal tissue, omentum, and other parts. Acute pancreatitis may be recovered from if the abdomen is opened, the pancreas incised, and drainage employed.

In *chronic interstitial pancreatitis* of the head of the pancreas the gall-duct is apt to become blocked, and the disease is frequently mistaken for cancer. Cure may follow opening and drainage of the gall-bladder.

THE SPLEEN (LIEN) (Figs. 958. 959, 961).

The spleen belongs to that class of bodies which are known as **ductless glands.** It is probably related to the blood-vascular system, but in consequence of its

[1] Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare on the Lymphatics. Edited and translated by Cecil H. Leaf.
[2] Robson and Moynihan on Diseases of the Pancreas.

anatomical relationship to the stomach and its physiological relationship to the liver it is convenient to describe it in this section. It is situated principally in the posterior portion of the left hypochondriac region, its upper and inner extremity extending into the epigastric region; lying between the fundus of the stomach and the Diaphragm. If the abdomen is opened a spleen of ordinary size is not visible from the front, as it is placed between the left kidney, Diaphragm, and stomach. It moves with the respiratory movements and with the movements of the stomach. It is the largest of the so-called **ductless glands**, and varies greatly in size. Usually it measures some five inches in length. It is of an oblong, flattened form, soft, of very brittle consistence, highly vascular, and of a dark-purplish color.

Surfaces. **The External or Phrenic Surface** (*facies diaphragmatica*).—The external or phrenic surface is convex, smooth, and is directed upward, backward, and to the left, except at its upper end, where it is directed slightly inward. It is in relation with the under surface of the Diaphragm, which separates it from the eighth, ninth, tenth, and eleventh ribs of the left side, and in part from the lower border of the left lung and pleura. It is to be remembered that not only are the peritoneum and the Diaphragm between the spleen and the ribs, but also the cavity of the left pleura and a portion of the left lung.

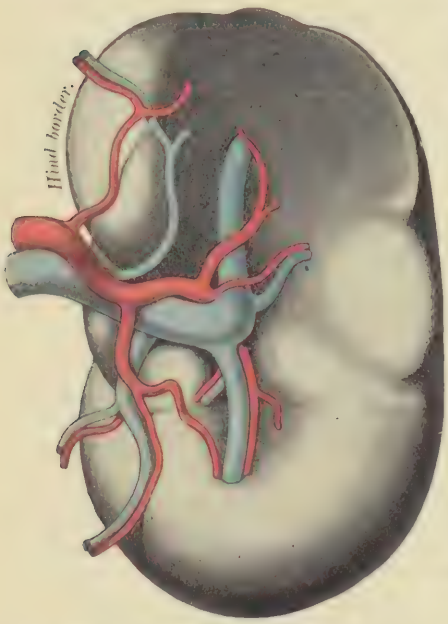


FIG. 962. The spleen, showing its gastric and renal surfaces. (Testut.)

The Internal Surface.—The internal surface is concave, and divided by a ridge into an **anterior** or **larger**, and a **posterior** or **smaller portion**.

The **Anterior Portion** of the internal surface or the **gastric surface** (*facies gastrica*), which is directed forward and inward, is broad and concave, and is in contact with the posterior wall of the great end of the stomach; and below this with the tail of the pancreas. It presents near its inner border a long fissure, termed the **hilum** (*hilus lienis*). This is pierced by several irregular apertures, for the entrance and exit of vessels and nerves.

The **Posterior Portion** of the internal surface or the **renal surface** (*facies renalis*) is directed inward and downward. It is somewhat flattened, does not reach as high as the gastric surface, is considerably narrower than the latter, and is in relation with the upper part of the outer surface of the left kidney and occasionally with the left suprarenal capsule.

The **upper end of the spleen** (*extremitas superior*) is directed inward, toward the vertebral column, where it lies on a level with the eleventh dorsal vertebra. The **lower end** (*extremitas inferior*), sometimes termed the **basal surface**, is flat, triangular in shape, and rests upon the splenic flexure of the colon and the phreno-colic ligament, and is generally in contact with the tail of the pancreas. The **anterior border** (*margo anterior*) is free, sharp, and thin, and is often notched, especially below. It separates the phrenic surface from the gastric surface. The **posterior border** (*margo posterior*) is more rounded and blunter than the anterior. It separates the renal portion of the internal surface from the phrenic surface. It corresponds to the lower border of the eleventh rib and lies between the Diaphragm and left kidney.

The **internal border** is the name sometimes given to the ridge which separates the renal and gastric portions of the internal surface.

The spleen is surrounded by peritoneum, except at the hilum and the serous membrane, is firmly adherent to its capsule, and is held in position by two folds of this membrane: one, the **lieno-renal ligament** (*ligamentum phrenicolienale*) (Figs. 857 and 860), is derived from the layers of peritoneum forming the greater and lesser sacs, where they come into contact between the left kidney and the spleen. Between its two layers the splenic vessels pass; the second, the **gastro-splenic omentum** (*ligamentum gastrolienale*), also formed of two layers, derived from the greater and lesser sacs, respectively, where they meet between the spleen and stomach (Fig. 860). Between these two layers run the vasa brevia of the splenic artery and vein. The spleen is also supported by the **phreno-colic ligament** (*ligamentum phrenicocolicum*), upon which its lower end rests.

The size and weight of the spleen are liable to very extreme variations at different periods of life, in different individuals, and in the same individual under different conditions. *In the adult*, in whom it attains its greatest size, it is usually

FIG. 963.—Transverse section of the spleen, showing the trabecular tissue and the splenic vein and its tributaries.

about five inches in length, three inches in breadth, and an inch or an inch and a half in thickness, and weighs about seven ounces. *At birth*, its weight, in proportion to the entire body, is almost equal to what is observed in the adult, being as 1 to 350; while in the adult it varies from 1 to 320 to 1 to 400. *In old age*, the organ not only decreases in weight, but decreases considerably in proportion to the entire body, being as 1 to 700. The size of the spleen is increased during and after digestion, and varies considerably according to the state of nutrition of the body, being large in highly fed, and small in starved animals. In intermittent and other fevers it becomes much enlarged, weighing occasionally from eighteen to twenty pounds.

Frequently in the neighborhood of the spleen, and especially in the gastro-splenic and great omenta, small nodules of splenic tissue may be found, either isolated, or connected to the spleen by thin bands of splenic tissue. Every such nodule is known as a **supernumerary** or **accessory spleen** (*lien accessorius*). Accessory spleens vary in size from that of a pea to that of a plum.

Support and Movability of the Spleen.—The spleen is normally movable within certain narrow limits. It moves with respiration and with stomach movements. It is supported by ligaments (p. 1355). An unduly movable spleen is called a **movable spleen.** In order that a spleen shall become unduly movable, the ligaments must stretch, and this stretching is often effected when the organ is greatly enlarged, but even an apparently normal spleen may become movable. Movable spleen is usually associated with movable left kidney.

Structure.—The spleen is invested by two coats—an **external serous** and an **internal fibro-elastic coat.**

The External or Serous Coat (*tunica serosa*).—The external or serous coat is derived from the peritoneum; it is thin, smooth, and in the human subject is intimately adherent to the fibro-elastic coat. It invests the entire organ, except at the places of its reflection on to the stomach and Diaphragm and at the hilum.

The Fibro-elastic Coat (*tunica albuginea*).—The fibro-elastic coat forms the framework of the spleen. It is composed of connective tissue containing muscle-cells and elastic fibres, and it invests the organ as a *capsule*, and at the hilum is reflected inward upon the vessels in the form of sheaths. From these sheaths, as well as from the inner surface of the fibro-elastic coat, numerous small fibrous bands, **trabeculae** (*trabeculae lienis*) (Figs. 963 and 964), are given off in all directions; these uniting, constitute the framework of the spleen. This framework resembles a sponge-like material, consisting of a number of small spaces or areolae formed by the trabeculae, which are given off from the inner surface of the capsule, or from the sheaths prolonged inwardly on the blood-vessels. The spaces or areolae contain the adenoid material known as **splenic pulp** (*pulpa lienis*).

The proper coat, the sheaths of the vessels and the trabeculae, consist of a dense mesh of white and yellow elastic fibrous tissues, the latter decidedly predominating. It is owing to the presence of this tissue that the spleen possesses a considerable amount of elasticity, which allows of the very great variations in size that it presents under certain circumstances. In addition to these constituents of this tunic, there is found in man a small amount of non-striped muscular fibre, and in some mammalia (*e. g.*, dog, pig, and cat) a very considerable amount, so that the trabeculae appear to consist chiefly of muscular tissue. It is probably because of this muscular structure that the spleen exhibits, when acted upon by the galvanic current, faint traces of contractility.

The proper substance of the spleen or splenic-pulp is a soft mass of a dark reddish-brown color, resembling grumous blood. When a thin section is examined under a microscope, it is found to consist of a number of branching cells and an intercellular substance. The cells are connective-tissue corpuscles, and have been named the **sustentacular** or **supporting cells of the pulp.** The processes of these branching cells communicate with each other, thus forming a delicate reticulated tissue in the interior of the areolae formed by the trabeculae of the capsule; so that each primary space may be considered to be divided into a number of smaller spaces by the junction of these processes of the branching corpuscles. These secondary spaces contain blood, in which, however, the white corpuscles are found to be in larger proportions than in ordinary blood. The sustentacular cells are either small uni-nucleated or larger multi-nucleated cells; they do not stain deeply with carmine, like the cells of the Malpighian bodies, presently to be described (W. Müller), but like them they possess amœboid movements (Cohnheim). In many of them may be seen deep red or reddish-yellow granules of various sizes which present the characters of the hæmatin of the blood. Sometimes, also, unchanged blood-disks are seen included in these cells, but more frequently blood-disks are found which are altered both in form and color. In fact, blood-corpuscles in all stages of disintegration may be noticed to occur within them. Klein has recently pointed out that sometimes

these cells in the young spleen contain a proliferating nucleus; that is to say, the nucleus is of large size, and presents a number of knob-like projections, as if small nuclei were budding from it by a process of gemmation. This observation is of importance, as it may explain one possible source of the colorless blood-corpuscles.

The interspaces or areolæ formed by the framework of the spleen are thus filled by a delicate reticulum of branched connective-tissue corpuscles, the interstices of which are occupied by blood, and in which the blood-vessels terminate in the manner now to be described.

Blood-vessels of the Spleen.—The **splenic artery** (Fig. 961) is remarkable for its large size in proportion to the size of the organs, and also for its tortuous course. It divides into six or more branches, which enter the hilum of the spleen and ramify throughout its substance, receiving sheaths from the involution of the external fibrous tissue. Similar sheaths also invest the nerves and veins.

Each branch runs in the transverse axis of the organ from within outward, diminishing in size during its transit, and giving off in its passage smaller branches, some of which pass to the anterior, others to the posterior part. These ultimately

FIG. 964.—Transverse section of the human spleen, showing the distribution of the splenic artery and its branches.

leave the trabecular sheaths, and terminate in the proper substance of the spleen in small tufts or pencils of minute arterioles, which open into the interstices of the reticulum formed by the branched sustentacular cells (Figs. 964, 965, and 966). Each of the larger branches of the artery supplies chiefly that region of the organ in which the branch ramifies, having no anastomosis with the majority of the other branches.

The **arterioles** (Fig. 966), supported by the minute trabeculae, traverse the pulp in all directions in bundles or pencilli of straight vessels. Their external coat, on leaving the trabecular sheaths, consists of ordinary connective tissue, but it gradually undergoes a transformation, becomes much thickened, and is converted into a lymphoid material.[1] This change is effected by the conversion of the connective tissue into a lymphoid tissue, the bundles of connective tissue becoming looser and laxer, their fibrils more delicate, and containing in their interstices an abundance of lymph-corpuscles (W. Müller). This lymphoid material is supplied with blood by minute vessels derived from the artery with which they are

[1] According to Klein, it is the sheath of the small vessel which undergoes this transformation, and forms a "solid mass of adenoid tissue which surrounds the vessel like a cylindrical sheath." (Atlas of Histology, p. 424.)

in contact, and which terminates by breaking up into a network of capillary vessels.

The altered coat of the arterioles, consisting of lymphoid tissue (Fig. 966), presents here and there thickenings of a spheroidal shape, the **Malpighian bodies of the spleen** (*noduli lymphatici lienales* [*Malpighii*]) (Fig. 965). These bodies vary in size from about the $\frac{1}{100}$ of an inch to the $\frac{1}{25}$ of an inch in diameter. They are merely local expansions or hyperplasiae of the lymphoid tissue of which the external coat of the smaller arteries of the spleen is formed. They are most frequently found surrounding the arteriole, which thus seems to tunnel them, but occasionally they grow from one side of the vessel only, and present the appearance of a sessile bud growing from the arterial wall. Klein, however, denies this, and says it is incorrect to describe the Malpighian bodies as isolated masses of adenoid tissue, but that they are always formed around an artery, though there is generally a greater amount on one side than on the other, and that, therefore, in transverse sections the artery in the majority of cases is found in an eccentric position. These bodies are visible to the naked eye on the surface of a fresh section of the organ, appearing as minute dots of semi-opaque whitish color in the dark substance of the pulp. In minute structure they resemble the adenoid tissue of lymphatic glands, consisting of a delicate reticulum in the meshes of which lie ordinary lymphoid cells.

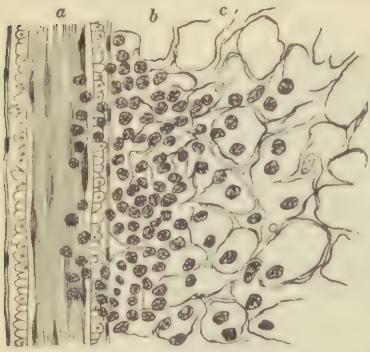


FIG. 965.—Part of a Malpighian body of the spleen of man. *a*, arterial branch in longitudinal section; *b*, adenoid tissue, still containing the lymph-corpuscles; only their nuclei are shown; *c*, adenoid reticulum, the lymph-corpuscles accidentally removed. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The reticulum of the tissue is made up of extremely delicate fibrils, and is comparatively open in the centre of the corpuscle, becoming closer at the periphery of the body. The cells which it encloses, like the supporting cells of the pulp, are possessed of amœboid movements, but when treated with carmine become deeply stained, and can thus easily be recognized from those of the pulp.

The arterioles terminate in capillaries, which traverse the pulp in all directions; their walls become much attenuated, lose their tubular character, and the cells of the lymphoid tissue of which they are composed become altered; presenting a branched appearance and acquiring processes which are directly connected with the processes of the sustentacular cells of the pulp (Fig. 966). In this manner the capillary vessels terminate, and the blood flowing through them finds its way into the interstices of the reticulated tissue formed by the branched connective-tissue corpuscles of the splenic pulp. Thus the blood passing through the spleen is brought into intimate relation with the elements of the pulp, and no doubt undergoes important changes.

After these changes have taken place the blood is collected from the interstices of the tissue by the rootlets of the veins (Fig. 963), which commence much in the same way as the arteries terminate. Where a vein is about to originate the connective-tissue corpuscles of the pulp arrange themselves in rows in such a way as to form an elongated space or sinus. They become changed in shape, being elongated and spindle-shaped, and overlap each other at their extremities. They thus form a sort of endothelial lining of the path or sinus, which is the radicle of a vein. On the outer surface of these cells are seen delicate transverse lines or markings which are due to minute elastic fibrillae arranged in a circular manner around the sinus. Thus the channel obtains a continuous external investment, and gradually becomes converted into a small vein, which after a time presents a coat of ordinary connective tissue, lined by a layer of fusiform endothelial cells which are

continuous with the supporting cells of the pulp. The smaller veins unite to form larger ones which do not accompany the arteries, but soon enter the trabecular sheaths of the capsule, and by their junction form from six or more branches which emerge from the hilum and, uniting, form the splenic vein, the largest radicle of the portal vein (Figs. 958 and 962).

The **veins** are remarkable for their numerous anastomoses, while the arteries hardly anastomose at all.

The **lymphatics** originate in two ways—*i.e.*, from the sheaths of the arteries and in the trabeculæ. The former trunks are the **deep collecting trunks,** and

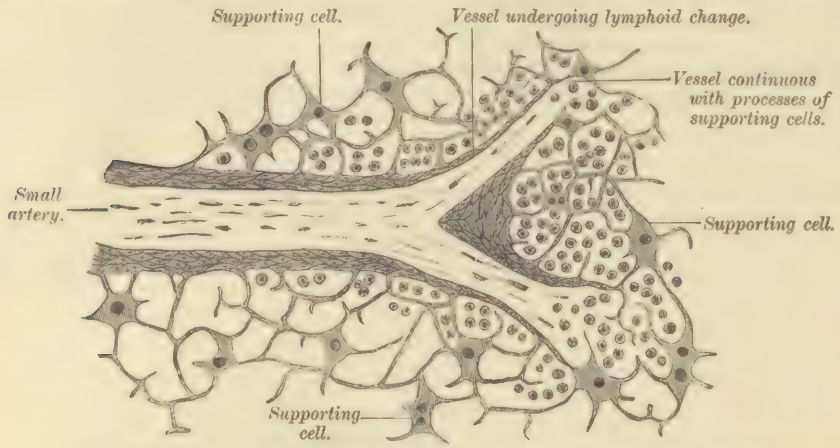


FIG. 966.—Section of spleen, showing the termination of the small blood-vessels.

accompany the blood-vessels; the latter pass to the **superficial lymphatic plexus,** which may be seen on the surface of the organ. The two sets communicate in the interior of the organ. The deep trunks at the hilum number from five to ten, and terminate in the **splenic glands**. The superficial trunks also pass to the hilum and terminate in the splenic glands.

The **nerves** are derived from the **splenic plexus,** which is part of or connected with the solar plexus. The nerves enter the spleen with the vessels.

Surface Form.—The spleen is situated under cover of the ribs of the left side, being separated from them by the Diaphragm, and above by a small portion of the lower margin of the left lung and pleura. Its position corresponds to the eighth, ninth, tenth, and eleventh ribs. It is placed very obliquely. "It is oblique in two directions viz., from above downward and outward, and also from above downward and forward" (Cunningham). "Its highest and lowest points are on a level respectively with the ninth dorsal and first lumbar spines; its inner end is distant about an inch and a half from the median plane of the body, and its outer end about reaches the mid-axillary line" (Quain).

Surgical Anatomy.—Injury of the spleen is less common than that of the liver, on account of its protected situation and connections. It may be *ruptured* by direct or indirect violence, torn by a broken rib, or injured by a punctured or gunshot wound. When the organ is enlarged the chance of rupture is increased. The great risk is *hemorrhage*, owing to the extreme vascularity of the organ, and the absence of a proper system of capillaries. The injury is not, however, necessarily fatal, and this would appear to be due in a great measure to the contractile power of its capsule, which narrows the wound and thus antagonizes the escape of blood. In cases in which the symptoms suggest such an injury and indicate danger to life, laparotomy must be performed; and if the hemorrhage cannot be arrested by ordinary surgical methods the spleen must be removed. The spleen may become displaced, producing great pain from stretching of the vessels and nerves, and this dislocation may render necessary removal of the organ. The spleen may become enormously *enlarged* in certain diseased conditions, such as ague, leukæmia, syphilis, valvular disease of the heart, or without any obtainable history of previous disease. It may also become enlarged in lymphadenoma as a part of a general blood disease. In these cases the mass may fill the abdomen and extend into the pelvis, and may be mistaken for ovarian or uterine disease.

The spleen is sometimes the seat of *cystic tumors*, especially hydatids, and of *abscess*. These cases require treatment by incision and drainage; and in abscess great care must be taken if there are no adhesions between the spleen and abdominal cavity, to prevent the escape of any of the pus into the peritoneal cavity. If possible, the operation should be performed in two stages. *Sarcoma* and *carcinoma* are occasionally found in the spleen, but very rarely as a primary disease. In *movable spleen*, if the organ is normal, follow the advice of Rydygier and loosen the parietal peritoneum to make a pocket, place the spleen in the pocket, and pass sutures through the parietal peritoneum and the splenic ligaments. A movable diseased spleen should be removed.

Extirpation of the spleen has been performed for wounds or injuries, floating spleen, simple hypertrophy, and leukæmic enlargement; but in the latter case the operation is now regarded as unjustifiable, as it is practically certain to terminate fatally. The incision is best made in the left semilunar line: the spleen is isolated from its surroundings, and the pedicle transfixed and ligatured in two portions, before the tumor is turned out of the abdominal cavity, if this is possible, so as to avoid any traction on the pedicle, which may cause tearing of the splenic vein and which inevitably induces grave shock. In applying the ligatures the surgeon must not include the tail of the pancreas, and in lifting out the organ care must be taken to avoid rupturing the capsule.

THE ORGANS OF VOICE AND RESPIRATION.

THE LARYNX.

THE Larynx is the organ of voice, placed at the upper part of the air-passage. It is situated between the trachea and base of the tongue, at the upper and forepart of the neck, where it forms a considerable projection in the middle line. On either side of it lie the great vessels of the neck; behind, it forms part of the boundary of the pharynx, and is covered by the mucous membrane lining that cavity. Its vertical extent corresponds to the fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebrae, but it is placed somewhat higher in the female and also during childhood. In infants between six and twelve months of age Symington found that the tip of

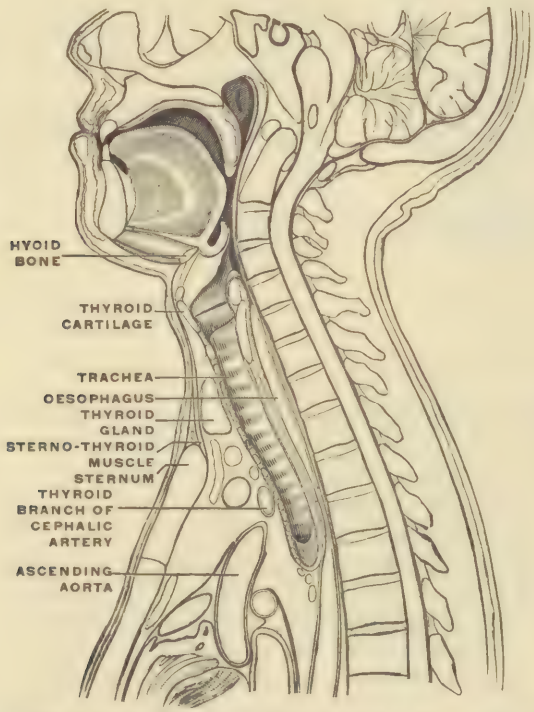


FIG. 967.—Sagittal section of a man twenty-one years of age. (After W. Braune.)

the epiglottis was a little above the level of the cartilage between the odontoid process and body of the axis, and that between infancy and adult life the larynx descends for a distance equal to two vertebral bodies and two intervertebral disks. The movements of the head affect the position of the larynx. When the head is drawn back, the larynx is lifted, and when the chin approaches the chest the larynx is depressed. During swallowing the larynx moves distinctly; during singing it moves slightly. The larynx is suspended by the stylo-hyoid ligament, the

muscles of the upper border of the hyoid bone, the Stylo-pharyngeus and Palato-pharyngeus muscles. According to Sappey, the average measurements of the adult larynx are as follows:

	In males.	In females.
Vertical diameter	44 mm.	36 mm.
Transverse diameter	43 "	41 "
Antero-posterior diameter	36 "	26 "
Circumference	136 "	112 "

Until puberty there is no marked difference between the larynx of the male and that of the female. In the latter its further increase in size is only slight, whereas in the former it is great; all the cartilages are enlarged, and the thyroid becomes prominent as the pomum Adami in the middle line of the neck, while the length of the glottis is nearly doubled.

The larynx is broad above, where it presents the form of a triangular box, flattened behind and at the sides, and bounded in front by a prominent vertical ridge. Below, it is narrow and cylindrical. It is composed of cartilages, which are connected together by ligaments and moved by numerous muscles. It is lined by mucous membrane, which is continuous above with that lining the pharynx and below with that of the trachea.

In the median line of the neck the larynx has in front of it the skin and cervical fascia. There is often a bursa between the skin and fascia over the most prominent part of the larynx. It is called the **bursa subcutanea prominentiae laryngeae**. It is present particularly in men, and is seldom found in the young or in women. The larynx is covered to each side by the thyroid gland, and the Sterno-hyoid, Sterno-thyroid, Thyro-hyoid, and Omo-hyoid muscles, and the Inferior constrictors of the pharynx. Posterior is the laryngeal portion of the pharynx.

The Cartilages of the Larynx (*cartilagines laryngis*).—The cartilages of the larynx are nine in number, three single, and three pairs:

Thyroid.	Two Arytenoid.
Cricoid.	Two Cornicula Laryngis.
Epiglottis.	Two Cuneiform.

The Thyroid Cartilage (*cartilago thyreoidea*) (Figs. 968 and 969).—The thyroid cartilage (from *θυρεός, a shield*) is hyaline cartilage and is the largest cartilage of the larynx. It is at the anterior and upper portion of the larynx. It consists of two lateral **lamellae** or **alae**, united at an acute angle in front, forming a vertical projection in the middle line, which is prominent above and called the **pomum Adami** (*prominentia laryngea*). This projection is subcutaneous, is more distinct in the male than in the female, and is often separated from the integument by a bursa, the **bursa subcutanea prominentiae laryngeae.**

Each lamella is quadrilateral in form. Its *outer surface* (Fig. 968) presents an **oblique ridge** (*linea obliqua*), which passes downward and forward from a tubercle situated near the root of the superior cornu, the **superior tubercle** (*tuberculum thyreoideum superius*), to a small tubercle near the anterior part of the lower border, the **inferior tubercle** (*tuberculum thyreoideum inferius*). This ridge gives attachment to the Sterno-thyroid and Thyro-hyoid muscles, and the portion of cartilage included between it and the posterior border gives attachment to part of the Inferior constrictor muscle. Just below each superior tubercle there is often an opening, the **thyroid foramen** (*foramen thyreoideum*).

The anterior borders of the alae of the thyroid cartilage which are continuous below are separated above by a V-shaped notch, the **thyroid notch** (*incisura thyreoidea* [*superior*]).

The **Inner Surface** (Fig. 969) of each ala is smooth, slightly concave, and covered by mucous membrane above and behind; but in front, in the receding angle formed by their junction, are attached the epiglottis, the true and false vocal cords, the Thyro-arytenoid and Thyro-epiglottidean muscles, and the thyro-epiglottidean ligament.

The **Upper Border** or **Margin of the Thyroid Cartilage** (Fig. 969) is sinuously curved, being concave at its posterior part, just in front of the superior cornu, then rising into a convex outline, which dips in front to form the sides of the thyroid notch, in the middle line, immediately above the pomum Adami. This border gives attachment throughout its whole extent to the **thyro-hyoid** or **hyo-thyroid membrane** (*membrana hyothyreoidea*).

The **Lower Border** or **Margin** (Fig. 969) is nearly straight in front, but behind, close to the cornu, it is concave. It is connected to the cricoid cartilage, in and near the median line, by the middle portion of the **crico-thyroid membrane** (*membrana cricothyreoidea*); and, on either side, by the Crico-thyroid muscle.

The **Posterior Borders** (Fig. 969) are thick and rounded, and each terminates above, in a **superior cornu** (*cornu superius*), and below, in an **inferior cornu** (*cornu inferius*). The two superior cornua are long and narrow, directed upward, backward, and inward, and terminate in conical extremities, which give attachment to the lateral thyro-hyoid ligaments. The two inferior cornua are short and thick; they pass downward, with a slight inclination forward and inward, and each presents on its inner surfaces a small oval articular facet for articulation with the side of the cricoid cartilage (Fig. 968). The posterior border receives the insertion of the Stylo-pharyngeus and Palato-pharyngeus muscles on each side.

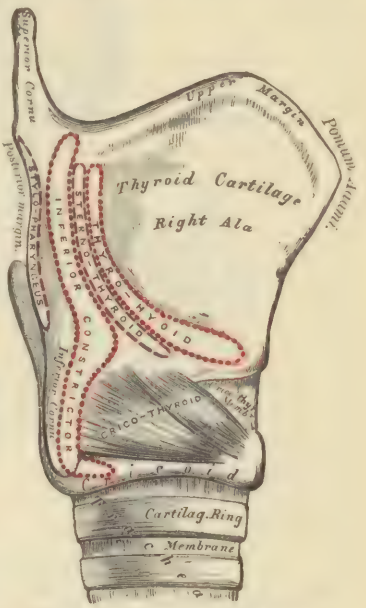


FIG. 968.—Side view of the thyroid and cricoid cartilages.

During infancy the alae of the thyroid cartilage are joined to each other by a narrow, lozenge-shaped strip, named the **intrathyroid cartilage**. This strip extends from the upper to the lower border of the thyroid cartilage in the middle line, and is distinguished from the alae by being more transparent and more flexible.

The Cricoid Cartilage (*cartilago cricoidea*) (Figs. 968, 969, and 971).—The cricoid cartilage is so called from its resemblance to a signet ring (*κρίκος, a ring*). It is smaller, but thicker and stronger than the thyroid cartilage, and forms the lower and back part of the cavity of the larynx. It is hyaline cartilage and consists of two parts: a **quadrate** portion, situated behind, and a narrow ring or **arch**, one-fourth or one-fifth the depth of the posterior part, situated in front. The posterior square portion rapidly narrows at the sides of the cartilage, at the expense of the upper border, into the anterior portion.

Its **Posterior Portion** or **Lamina** (*lamina cartilaginis cricoideae*) is very deep and broad, and measures from above downward about an inch (2 to 3 cm.); it presents, on its posterior surface, in the middle line, a vertical ridge for the attachment of the longitudinal fibres of the oesophagus; and on either side a broad depression for the Crico-arytenoideus posticus muscle.

Its **Anterior Portion** or **Arcus** (*arcus cartilaginis cricoideae*) is narrow and convex, and measures vertically about one-fourth or one-fifth of an inch (5 to 7 cm.); it affords attachment externally in front and at the sides to the Crico-thyroid muscles, and, behind, to part of the Inferior constrictor.

At the point of junction of the posterior quadrate portion with the rest of the cartilage is a small round elevation, for articulation with the inferior cornu of the thyroid cartilage.

The **Lower Border** of the cricoid cartilage is horizontal, and connected to the upper ring of the trachea by fibrous membrane (Figs. 968 and 970).

Its **Upper Border** is directed obliquely upward and backward, owing to the great depth of the posterior surface. It gives attachment, in front, to the middle portion of the crico-thyroid membrane; at the sides, to the lateral portion of the same membrane and to the lateral Crico-arytenoid muscle; behind, it presents, in the middle, a shallow notch, and on each side of this is a smooth, oval surface, directed upward and outward, for articulation with the arytenoid cartilage.

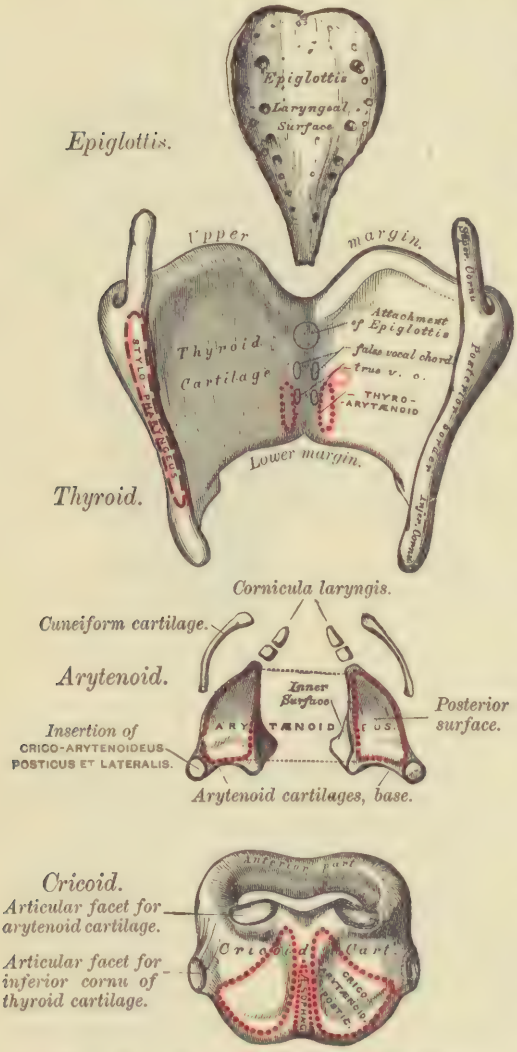


FIG. 969.—The cartilages of the larynx. Posterior view.

The **Inner Surface** of the cricoid cartilage is smooth, and lined with mucous membrane.

The Arytenoid Cartilages (*cartilagines arytaenoideae*) (Figs. 969, 972, and 976).—The arytenoid cartilages are so called from the resemblance they bear, when approximated, to the mouth of a pitcher (*ἀρύταινα, a pitcher*). They are two in number, and situated at the upper border of the cricoid cartilage, at the back of the larynx in the interval between the posterior borders of the alae of the thyroid cartilages. Each cartilage is in form a three-sided pyramid, and presents for examination **three surfaces**, a **base**, and an **apex**.

The **Posterior Surface** is triangular, smooth, concave, and gives attachment to the transverse portion of the Arytenoid muscle.

The **Anterior** or **External Surface** is somewhat convex and rough. It presents, near its apex, a small elevation, the **colliculus**; from this a **ridge** (*crista arcuata*) passes backward and then forward and downward into a sharp-pointed process, the **vocal process**. This ridge separates a deep depression above, the **fovea triangularis**, from a broader and shallower depression below, the **fovea oblonga**. A short distance above the base a small tubercle gives origin to the ligament of the false vocal cord, the superior thyro-arytenoid ligament. To the outer part of the ridge, as well as the surface above and below, is attached the Thyro-arytenoid muscle.

The **Internal Surface** is narrow, smooth, and flattened, covered by mucous membrane, and forms the lateral boundary of the respiratory part of the glottis.

The **Base** (*basis*) of each cartilage is broad, and presents a concave smooth surface, for articulation with the cricoid cartilage. Two of its angles require special mention: the **external angle**, which is short, rounded, and prominent, projects backward and outward, and is termed the **muscular process** (*processus muscularis*), from receiving the insertion of the Posterior and Lateral crico-arytenoid muscles. The **anterior angle**, also prominent, but more pointed, projects horizontally forward, and gives attachment to the inferior thyro-arytenoid ligament, the supporting ligament of the true vocal cord. This angle is called the **vocal process** (*processus vocalis*).

The **Apex** of each cartilage is pointed, curved backward and inward, and surmounted by a small conical, cartilaginous-nodule, the **corniculum laryngis**, articulated with or united to the arytenoid cartilage.

The Cornicula Laryngis or Cartilages of Santorini (*cartilagines corniculatae*) (Figs. 969 and 975).—The cornicula laryngis are two small conical nodules, consisting of white fibro-cartilage, which articulate with the summit of the arytenoid cartilages and serve to prolong them backward and inward. To them are attached the aryteno-epiglottidean folds. They are sometimes united to the arytenoid cartilages.

The Cuneiform Cartilages or Cartilages of Wrisberg (*cartilagines cuneiformes*) (Figs. 969 and 971).—The cuneiform cartilages are two small, elongated, cartilaginous bodies, placed one on each side, in the fold of mucous membrane which extends from the apex of the arytenoid cartilage to the side of the epiglottis, and is called the aryteno-epiglottidean fold (*plica aryepiglottica*) (Fig. 971); they give rise to small whitish elevations on the inner surface of the mucous membrane, just in front of the arytenoid cartilages.

The Epiglottis or the Cartilage of the Epiglottis (*cartilago epiglottica*) (Figs. 967, 969, 970, 971, 972, and 975).—The epiglottis is a thin, flexible lamella of fibro-cartilage, of a yellowish color, shaped like a leaf, and placed behind the tongue in front of the superior opening of the larynx. Its free extremity, which is directed upward, is broad and rounded, and often notched; its attached part (*petiolus epiglottidis*) is long, narrow, and connected to the receding angle between the alae of the thyroid cartilage, just below the median notch, by a long, narrow ligamentous band, the **thyro-epiglottic ligament** (*ligamentum thyreoepiglotticum*) (Fig. 972). It is also connected to the posterior surface of the body of the hyoid bone by an elastic ligamentous band, the **hyo-epiglottic ligament** (*ligamentum hyoepiglotticum*).

Its **Anterior** or **Lingual Surface** is curved forward, toward the tongue, and covered at its upper, free part by mucous membrane, which is reflected on to the sides and base of the organ, forming a median and two lateral folds, the **glosso-epiglottidean folds** (*plicae glossoepiglotticae*) (Fig. 971). The **median glosso-epiglottidean fold** (*plica glossoepiglottica mediana*) contains the elastic **glosso-epiglottic ligament** (*ligamentum glossoepiglotticum*). Each **lateral glosso-epiglottidean fold** (*plica glossoepiglottica lateralis*) runs from the front and side of the base of the epiglottis to the side of the tongue. The depression between the epiglottis and the base of the tongue on each side of the median fold is named the **vallecula epiglottica**. The lower part of the anterior surface of the epiglottis lies behind the hyoid bone, the thyro-hyoid membrane, and upper part of the thyroid cartilage, but is separated from these structures by a mass of fatty tissue.

Its **Posterior** or **Laryngeal Surface** is smooth, concave from side to side, concavo-convex from above downward; its lower part projects backward as an elevation, the **tubercle** or **cushion** (*tuberculum epiglotticum*) (Fig. 970); when the mucous membrane is removed, the surface of the cartilage is seen to be studded with a number of small mucous glands, which are lodged in little pits upon its surface. To its sides the **aryteno-epiglottidean folds** (*plicae aryepiglotticae*) are attached (Fig. 971).

Structure.—The cuneiform cartilages, the epiglottis, and the apices of the arytenoids are composed of yellow elastic cartilage, which shows little tendency to calcification; on the other hand, the thyroid, cricoid, and the greater part of the

arytenoids consist of hyaline cartilage, and become more or less ossified as age advances. Ossification commences about the twenty-fifth year in the thyroid cartilage, somewhat later in the cricoid and arytenoids; by the sixty-fifth year these cartilages may be completely converted into bone. The cornicula laryngis consist of white fibro-cartilage, which becomes osseous about the seventieth year.

Ligaments, Joints, and Membranes of the Larynx.—The ligaments of the larynx are *extrinsic*—*i. e.*, those connecting the thyroid cartilage and epiglottis with the hyoid bone, and the cricoid cartilage with the trachea; and *intrinsic*, those which connect the several cartilages of the larynx to each other.

The ligaments connecting the thyroid cartilage with the hyoid bone are three in number—the thyro-hyoid membrane, and the two lateral thyro-hyoid ligaments.

The **Thyro-hyoid** or **Hyo-thyroid Membrane** or **Ligament** (*membrana hyothyreoidea*) (Fig. 972) is a broad, fibro-elastic, membranous layer, attached below to the upper border of the thyroid cartilage, and above to the posterior border of the body and greater cornua of the hyoid bone, passing behind the postero-inferior surface of the hyoid, and being separated from this surface by a synovial bursa (*bursa m. sternohyoidei*), which facilitates the upward movement of the larynx during deglutition. The membrane is thicker in the middle line than at either side. This thickening is due to elastic fibres, and constitutes the **middle thyro-hyoid ligament** (*ligamentum hyothyreoideum medium*). On each side the posterior extremity of the membrane is thickened by elastic fibres, constituting the **lateral thyro-hyoid ligament** (*ligamentum hyothyreoideum laterale*). The thyro-hyoid membrane is pierced on each side by the **superior laryngeal vessels** and the **internal laryngeal nerve**. The anterior surface of the thyro-hyoid membrane is in relation with the Thyro-hyoid, Sterno-hyoid, and Omo-hyoid muscles and with the body of the hyoid bone. The two lateral ligaments are rounded, elastic cords, which pass between the superior cornua of the thyroid cartilage and the extremities of the greater cornua of the hyoid bone. A small cartilaginous nodule (*cartilago triticea*), sometimes bony, is frequently found in each.

The Membrana Quadrangularis is an elastic membrane containing numerous glands. The fibres of the membrane run in part downward and in part downward and backward. The membrane on each side arises in front and above at the lateral margin of the cartilage of the epiglottis, below at the posterior surface of the angle of the thyroid cartilage and becomes attached behind to the cornicula laryngis and to the inner margins of the arytenoid cartilages.[1] The membranes converge below and medianward. The **ligamentum ventriculare** is the superior end of the membrane (Spalteholz). The fibres constituting the ligamentum ventriculare are given off at the thyroid cartilage above the ligamentum vocale and pass horizontally backward to the medial margin of the fovea triangularis of the arytenoid cartilage.[2] The epiglottis is connected to the tongue by the three glosso-epiglottidean folds of mucous membrane, which may also be considered as extrinsic ligaments of the epiglottis.

The **Glosso-epiglottidean Folds** or **Ligaments** (*plicae epiglotticae*) (Fig. 971) number three. The **middle glosso-epiglottidean fold** (*plica glossoepiglottica mediana*) passes from the middle of the anterior free surface of the epiglottis to the base of the tongue. It contains the **glosso-epiglottic ligament.** The **lateral glosso-epiglottidean** or the **pharyngo-epiglottidean fold** (*plica glossoepiglottica lateralis*) on each side passes from the side of the epiglottis to the side of the base of the tongue and to the pharyngeal wall. On each side between the median and lateral folds is a depression, the **vallecula epiglottica.**

The **Hyo-epiglottic Ligament** (*ligamentum hyoepiglotticum*) is an elastic band, which extends from the anterior surface of the epiglottis, near its apex, to the

[1] Hand Atlas of Human Anatomy. By Werner Spalteholz. Translated and edited by Lewellys F. Barker.
[2] Spalteholz's Hand Atlas of Human Anatomy. Translated and edited by Lewellys F. Barker.

upper border of the body of the hyoid bone. The epiglottis is attached to the thyroid cartilage, below and behind the superior thyroid notch, by the strong and elastic **thyro-epiglottic ligament** (*ligamentum thyreoepiglotticum*) (Fig. 972). Between the epiglottis, the hyo-epiglottic ligament and the thyro-hyoid membrane is a triangular space containing fat on each side of the median line.

The ligaments connecting the thyroid cartilage to the cricoid are also three in number—the **crico-thyroid membrane** and the **capsular ligaments.**

The **Crico-thyroid Membrane** (*conus elasticus*) (Figs. 968 and 975) is an elastic membrane which passes radially from the posterior surface of the angle of the thyroid cartilage to the upper margin of the arch of the cricoid cartilage and to the vocal processes of the arytenoid cartilages. It is composed mainly of yellow elastic tissue. It consists of three parts, a central triangular portion and two lateral portions. The central part (*ligamentum cricothyreoideum medium*) is thick and strong, narrow above and broadening out below. It connects together the contiguous margins of the thyroid and cricoid cartilages. It is convex, concealed on each side by the Crico-thyroid muscle, but subcutaneous in the middle line; it is crossed horizontally by a small anastomotic arterial arch, formed by the junction of the two **crico-thyroid arteries.** The lateral portions are thinner and lie close under the mucous membrane of the larynx. They extend from the superior border of the cricoid cartilage to the inferior margin of the true vocal cords with which they are continuous. On each side are the uppermost fibres from the inferior thyro-arytenoid ligament (*ligamentum vocale*).

The lateral portions are lined internally by mucous membrane, and are separated from the thyroid cartilage by the lateral Crico-arytenoid and Thyro-arytenoid muscles. This membrane and the muscles just mentioned reduce greatly the interior of the larynx. The crico-thyroid membrane with the membrana quadrangularis constitute the **membrana elastica laryngis.**

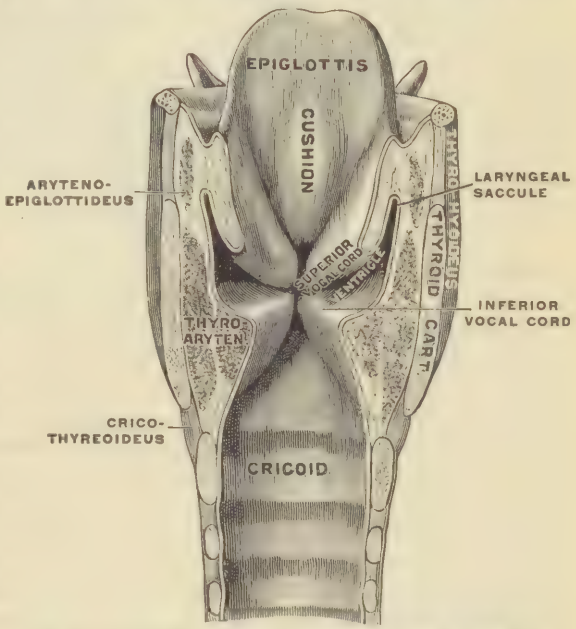


FIG. 970.—Coronal section of larynx, rear view of front half. (Testut.)

The **Crico-thyroid Articulation** (*articulatio cricothyreoidea*) (Fig. 968), on each side of the inferior cornu of the thyroid, with the cricoid cartilage on each side. A loose **synovial membrane** (*capsula articularis cricothyreoidea*) encloses the articulation.

The synovial capsule is strengthened by the ligamenta ceratocricoidea, which pass from the lesser cornu of the thyroid to the lamina of the cricoid cartilage.

The **Crico-arytenoid Articulation** (*articulatio cricoarytaenoidea*) (Fig. 969) on each side is between the articular surface of the arytenoid cartilage and the arytenoid articular surface of the cricoid cartilage.

The ligaments connecting the arytenoid cartilages to the cricoid are on each side a **capsular ligament** (*capsula articularis cricoarytaenoidea*) and a **posterior crico-arytenoid ligament** (*ligamentum cricoarytaenoideum posterius*). The capsular ligaments are thin and loose capsules attached to the margin of the articular

surfaces; they are lined internally by synovial membrane. The posterior crico-arytenoid ligaments extend from the cricoid to the inner and back part of the base of the arytenoid cartilage.

The **Crico-tracheal Ligament** (*ligamentum cricotracheale*) connects the cricoid cartilage with the first ring of the trachea. It resembles the fibrous membrane which connects the cartilaginous rings of the trachea to each side.

There is on each side an articulation between the arytenoid cartilage and the **cartilage of Santorini** (*synchondrosis arycorniculala*). The cartilage of Santorini is somewhat movable and is fixed to the arytenoid by lax connective tissue. From each cartilage of Santorini a band of connective tissue runs down to the lamina of the cricoid cartilage and to the pharyngeal mucous membrane. Beneath the arytenoid muscles the ligaments from the two sides join and pass down together. Thus is formed a Y-shaped ligament called the **ligamentum corniculopharyngeum.** The portion between the cricoid cartilage and the mucous membrane of the pharynx is sometimes called the **ligamentum cricopharyngeum.**

Interior of the Larynx (Figs. 970, 971, and 972).—The **cavity of the larynx** (*cavum laryngis*) extends from the superior aperture of the larynx to the lower border of the cricoid cartilage. It is divided into two parts by the projection inward of the true vocal cords, between which is a narrow triangular fissure or chink, the **rima glottidis.** It is further subdivided by the false vocal cords. So we consider the larynx as divided into a portion above the false cords, a portion between the false and true vocal cords, and a portion below the true cords. The entrance of the first compartment is the superior aperture of the larynx.

The Superior Aperture of the Larynx (*aditus laryngis*).—The superior aperture of the larynx (Figs. 970 and 971) is a triangular or cordiform opening, wide in front, narrow behind, and sloping obliquely downward and backward. It is bounded, in front, by the epiglottis; behind, by the apices of the arytenoid cartilages and the cornicula laryngis; and laterally, by a fold of mucous membrane, enclosing ligamentous and muscular fibres, stretched between the sides of the epiglottis and the apices of the arytenoid cartilages; these are the **aryteno-epiglottidean folds** (Figs. 971 and 972), on the margins of which the cuneiform cartilages form more or less distinct whitish prominences.

The small gap between the cartilages of Santorini is called the **incisura inter-arytaenoidea.** On the pharynx, on either side of the posterior portion of the superior aperture of the larynx, is a recess, called the **sinus pyriformis.**

Upper Compartment or Vestibule of the Laryngeal Cavity (*vestibulum laryngis*) (Figs. 970 and 972).—The vestibule is the portion between the superior opening and the false vocal cords. It is much narrower below than above. It is bounded anteriorly by the mucous membrane-covered epiglottis. The lower part of the epiglottis exhibits a prominence called the **cushion** or **tubercle** (*tuberculum epiglotticum*) (Fig. 970). The lateral wall of the vestibule on each side is the **aryteno-epiglottidean fold** (*plica aryepiglottica*) (Fig. 972), which extends from the summit of the arytenoid cartilage forward, upward, and outward to the margin of the epiglottis, and which contains fibres of the Thyro-epiglottideus and **Arytenoideus muscles** (*musculus arytaenoepiglottidean*). Near the posterior end of the fold are two trivial elevations: the anterior elevation is caused by the prominence of the cuneiform cartilage, and is called the **cuneiform tubercle of Wrisberg** (*tuberculum cuneiforme* [*Wrisbergi*]); the posterior elevation is caused by the anterior margin of the arytenoid cartilage and the cartilage of Santorini, and is called the **cornical tubercle of Santorini** (*tuberculum corniculatum* [*Santorini*]). Between these elevations is a groove, the **filtrum ventriculi of Merkel,** which passes into the space between the false and true vocal cords. The anterior elevation passes into the false vocal cord, the posterior elevation into the true vocal cord. The posterior portion of the laryngeal vestibule is the narrow space between the upper portions of the arytenoid cartilages.

The Middle Compartment of the Larynx (Figs. 970 and 972).—This lies between the false vocal cords above and the true vocal cords below. It is the smallest of the laryngeal compartments. It opens into the vestibule by the way of the gap between the false vocal cords, which is called the **false glottis**; it opens into the lower compartment of the larynx by way of the space between the true vocal cords, the **true glottis.**

The True Glottis.—The true glottis is the apparatus for producing tone and is formed by the true vocal cords.

The Chink of the Glottis (*rima glottidis*) (Figs. 970 and 971).—The chink of the glottis is the elongated fissure or chink between the inferior or true vocal cords in front, and between the bases and vocal processes of the arytenoid cartilages behind. It is therefore frequently subdivided into an anterior, interligamentous or **vocal portion**, the **glottis vocalis** (*pars intermembranacea*), and a posterior, intercartilaginous or **respiratory portion**, the **glottis respiratoria** (*pars intercartilaginea*). Posteriorly it is limited by the mucous membrane passing between the arytenoid cartilages. The vocal portion averages about three-fifths of the length of the entire aperture. It is the narrowest part of the cavity of the larynx, and its level corresponds to the

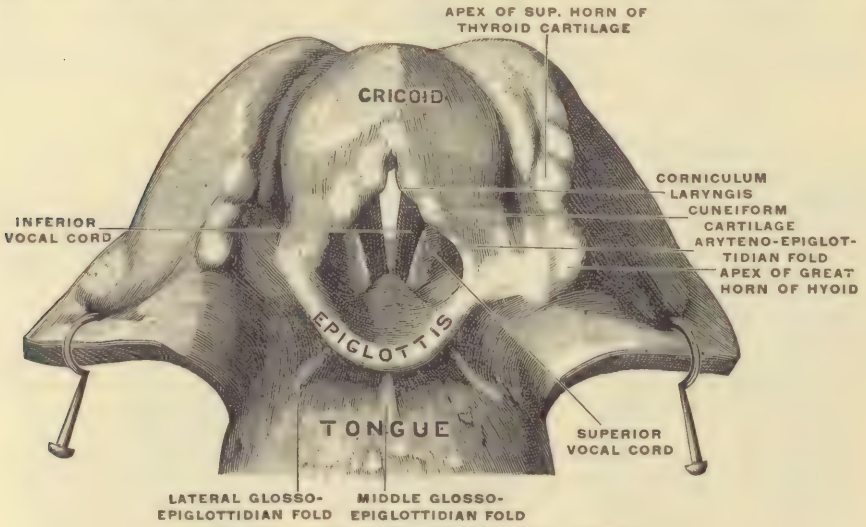


FIG. 971.—Larynx, viewed from above. (Testut.)

bases of the arytenoid cartilages. Its length, in the male, measures rather less than an inch (20 to 25 mm.); in the female it is shorter by 5 or 6 mm., or three lines. The width and shape of the rima glottidis vary with the movements of the vocal cords and arytenoid cartilages during respiration and phonation. In the condition of rest—*i. e.*, when these structures are uninfluenced by muscular action, as in quiet respiration, the glottis vocalis is triangular, with its apex in front and its base behind, the latter being represented by a line about 8 mm. long, connecting the anterior extremities of the vocal processes, while the inner surfaces of the arytenoids are parallel to each other, and hence the glottis respiratoria is rectangular. During extreme adduction of the cords, as in the emission of a high note, the glottis vocalis is reduced to a linear slit by the apposition of the cords, while the glottis respiratoria is triangular, its apex corresponding to the anterior extremities of the vocal processes of the arytenoids, which are approximated by the inward rotation of the cartilages. Conversely in extreme abduction of the cords, as in forced inspiration, the arytenoids and their vocal processes are rotated outward, and the glottis respiratoria is triangular in shape, but with its apex directed backward. In this condition the entire glottis is somewhat lozenge-shaped, the sides of the glottis vocalis diverging from before backward, those of the glottis

respiratoria diverging from behind forward, the widest part of the aperture corresponding with the attachment of the cords to the vocal processes.[1]

The **Superior** or **False Vocal Cords** (*plicae ventriculares*) (Figs. 970, 971, and 972), so called because they are not directly concerned in the production of the voice. Each is a thick fold of mucous membrane, enclosing a narrow band of fibrous tissue, the **superior thyro-arytenoid ligament** (*ligamentum ventriculare*), which is attached in front to the angle of the thyroid cartilage immediately below the attachment of the epiglottis, and behind to the anterior surface of the arytenoid cartilage. The lower border of this ligament, enclosed in mucous membrane, forms a free crescentic margin, which constitutes the upper boundary of the ventricle of the larynx. The false vocal cord contains the lower part of the membrana quadrangularis with the ligamentum ventriculare, the muscle ventricularis and laryngeal glands.

The **Inferior** or **True Vocal Cords** (*plicae vocales*) (Figs. 970, 971, 972, and 976), so called from their being concerned in the production of sound. Each is a strong

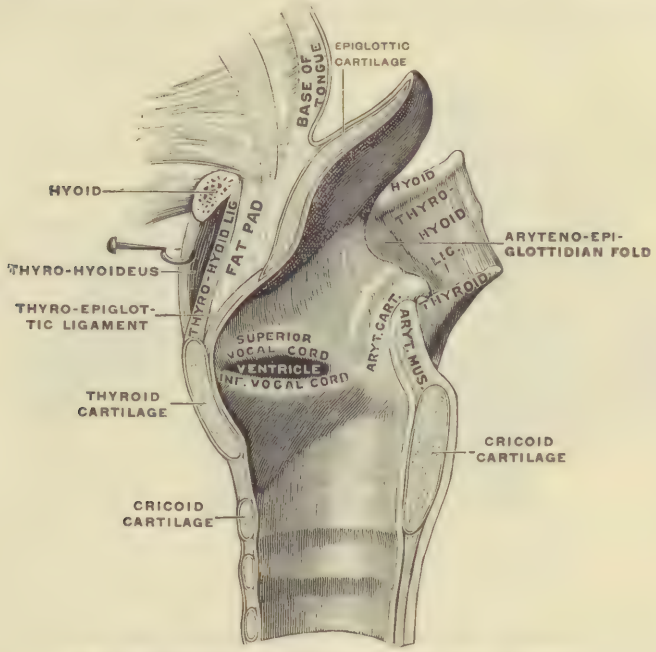


FIG. 972.—Sagittal section of larynx, right half. (Testut.)

band, the **inferior thyro-arytenoid ligament** (*ligamentum vocale*), covered on its surface by a thin layer of mucous membrane. Each ligament consists of a band of yellow elastic tissue, attached in front to the depression between the alae of the thyroid cartilage, and behind to the anterior angle of the base of the arytenoid. This angle is called the **vocal process**. Its lower border is continuous with the thin lateral part of the crico-thyroid membrane. Its upper border forms the lower boundary of the ventricle of the larynx. Externally, the Thyro-arytenoideus muscle lies parallel with it. It is covered internally by mucous membrane, which is extremely pale, thin, and closely adherent to its surface. The upper margin of the true vocal cord is covered with mucous membrane, and is the lower boundary of the ventricle of the larynx. Over the vocal process it is yellowish (*macula flava*). The true vocal cord contains the upper part of the crico-thyroid membrane with the ligamentum vocale and the muscle vocalis.

[1] On the shape of the rima glottidis, in the various conditions of breathing and speaking, see Czermak, On the Laryngoscope, translated for the New Sydenham Society.—ED. of 15th English edition.

The **Ventricle of the Larynx** or **Laryngeal Sinus** (*ventriculus laryngis* [*Morgagnii*]) (Figs. 970 and 972) is an oblong fossa, situated between the superior and inferior vocal cords on each side, and extending nearly their entire length. This fossa is bounded, above, by the free crescentic edge of the superior vocal cord; below, by the straight margin of the inferior vocal cord; externally, by the mucous membrane covering the corresponding Thyro-arytenoideus muscle. The anterior part of the ventricle leads up by a narrow opening into a caecal pouch of mucous membrane of variable size, called the **laryngeal pouch.**

The **Laryngeal Saccule** or **Pouch** (*appendix ventriculi*) (Fig. 970), or laryngeal pouch, is a membranous sac, placed between the superior vocal cord and the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage, occasionally extending as far as its upper border or even higher; it is conical in form, and curved slightly backward. On the surface of its mucous membrane are the openings of sixty or seventy mucous glands, which are lodged in the submucous areolar tissue. This sac is enclosed in a fibrous capsule, continuous below with the superior thyro-arytenoid ligament; its laryngeal surface is covered by the Aryteno-epiglottideus inferior muscle (*compressor sacculi laryngis of Hilton*); while its exterior is covered by the Thyro-arytenoideus and Thyro-epiglottideus muscles. These muscles compress the sacculus laryngis, and discharge the secretion it contains upon the vocal cords, the surfaces of which it is intended to lubricate.

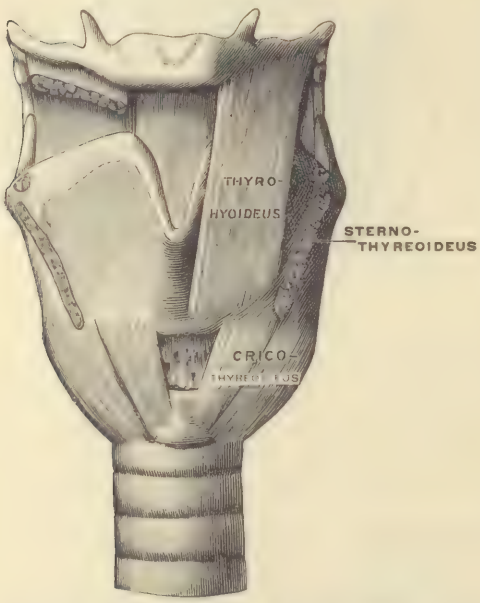


Fig. 973.—Muscles of larynx, front view. The sterno-thyroids and right thyro-hyoid have been removed. (Testut.)

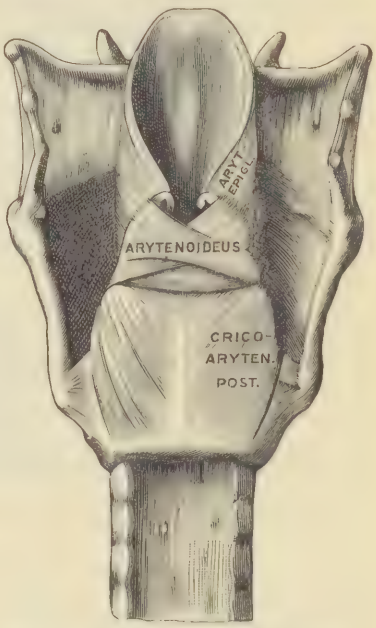


Fig. 974.—Muscles of larynx, from behind. (Testut.)

The Lower Compartment of the Larynx (Figs. 970 and 972).—This space is just beneath the true vocal cords and leads into the trachea. It is called the **additus glottidis inferior.** Above, on cross-section, it is oval; below, it is round. It is bounded by the inner surface of the crico-thyroid membrane and the cricoid cartilage.

Muscles of the Larynx (*musculi laryngis*).—We do not consider all muscles which are attached to laryngeal cartilages as laryngeal muscles. Some muscles so attached in reality belong to other regions, for instance, the Inferior constrictor, the Stylo-pharyngeus, the Sterno-thyroid, the Thyro-hyoid, and the Palato-pharyngeus. The muscles which really belong to the larynx are called *intrinsic.*

Four muscles of the vocal cords and rima glottidis are paired and one is single.

The paired muscles are the crico-thyroid, the posterior crico-arytenoid, the lateral crico-arytenoid, and the thyro-arytenoid. The single muscle is the arytenoideus.

A **Crico-thyroid** (*m. cricothyreoideus*) (Figs. 968, 970, and 973) is placed on each side. It is triangular in form, and situated at the forepart and side of the cricoid cartilage. It arises from the front and lateral part of the cricoid cartilage; its fibres diverge, passing obliquely upward and outward to be inserted into the lower border of the thyroid cartilage and into the anterior border of the lower cornu.

The inner borders of these two muscles are separated in the middle line by a triangular interval occupied by the central part of the crico-thyroid membrane.

The **Posterior Crico-arytenoid** (*m. cricoarytaenoideus posterior*) (Figs. 974, 975, and 976), a paired muscle, arises from the broad depression occupying each lateral half of the posterior surface of the cricoid cartilage; its fibres pass upward and outward, converging to be inserted into the outer angle (muscular process) of the base of the arytenoid cartilage. The upper fibres are nearly horizontal, the middle oblique, and the lower almost vertical.[1]

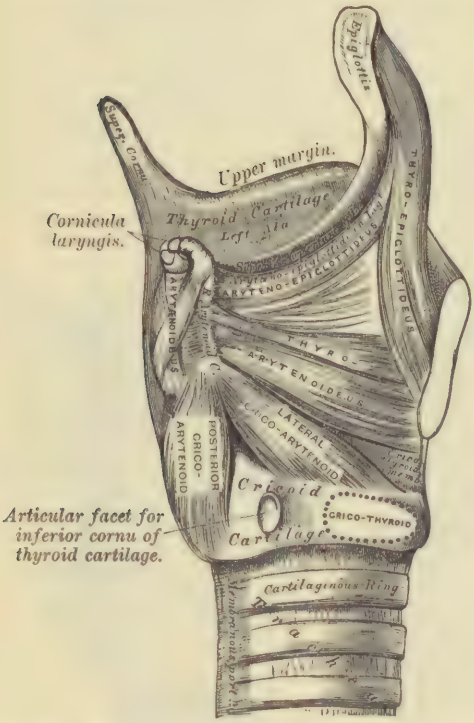


Fig. 975.—Muscles of larynx. Side view. Right ala of thyroid cartilage removed.

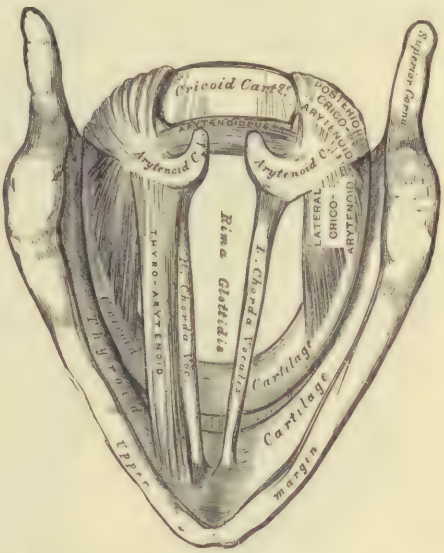


Fig. 976.—Interior of the larynx, seen from above. (Enlarged.)

The **Arytenoideus** (Figs. 972, 974, 975, and 976) is a single muscle filling up the posterior concave surface of the arytenoid cartilages. It arises from the posterior surface and outer border of one arytenoid cartilage, and is inserted into the corresponding parts of the opposite cartilage. It consists of three planes of fibres, two oblique and one transverse. The **oblique fibres** (*m. arytaenoideus obliquus*), the most superficial, form two fasciculi, which pass from the base of one cartilage to the apex of the opposite one. The **transverse fibres** (*m. arytaenoideus transversus*), the deepest and most numerous, pass transversely across between the two cartilages; hence the Arytenoideus was formerly considered as three muscles, the trans-

[1] Merkel, of Leipzig, has described a muscular slip which occasionally extends between the outer border of the posterior surface of the cricoid cartilage and the posterior margin of the inferior cornu of the thyroid; this he calls the "Musculus kerato-cricoideus." It is not found in every larynx, and when present exists usually only on one side, but is occasionally found on both sides. Sir William Turner (Edinburgh Medical Journal, February, 1860) states that it is found in about one case in five. Its action is to fix the lower horn of the thyroid cartilage backward and downward, opposing in some measure the part of the Crico-thyroid muscle, which is connected to the anterior margin of the horn.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

verse and the two oblique. A few of the oblique fibres are around the outer margin of the cartilage, and blend with the Thyro-arytenoid in the aryteno-epiglottidean fold, and are called the **Aryteno-epiglottideus** muscles.

In order to expose the rest of the muscles of the larynx the thyroid cartilage of one side must be removed. Begin by taking away the crico-thyroid muscle, then dividing the lateral thyro-hyoid ligament; disarticulate the inferior cornu of the thyroid cartilage from the cricoid cartilage, then carefully cut through the thyroid cartilage a short distance from its union with its twin. The following muscles will then be exposed after a little cleaning: the Lateral crico-thyroid, the Thyro-arytenoid, the Thyro-epiglottideus.

The **Lateral Crico-arytenoid** (*m. cricoarytenoideus lateralis*) (Figs. 975 and 976), a paired muscle, is smaller than the preceding, and of an oblong form. It arises from the upper border of the side of the cricoid cartilage, and, passing obliquely upward and backward, is inserted into the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage in front of the posterior Crico-arytenoid muscle.

The **Thyro-arytenoid** (*m. thyroarytaenoideus*) (Figs. 975 and 976), a paired muscle, is broad and flat. It lies parallel with the outer side of the true vocal cord. It arises in front from the lower half of the receding angle of the thyroid cartilage, and from the crico-thyroid membrane. Its fibres pass backward and outward, to be inserted into the base and anterior surface of the arytenoid cartilage. This muscle consists of two fasciculi.[1] The **inner** or **inferior fasciculus** (*m. vocalis*), the thicker, is prismatic in shape and is inserted into the vocal process of the arytenoid cartilage, and into the adjacent portion of its anterior surface; it lies parallel with the true vocal cord, to which it is adherent. This fasciculus on its deeper surface gives off some fibres which are attached to the true vocal cord. These are called the ary-vocalis (Ludwig). The **outer** or **superior fasciculus**, the thinner, is inserted into the anterior surface and outer border of the arytenoid cartilage above the preceding fibres; it lies on the outer side of the sacculus laryngis, immediately beneath the mucous membrane.[2]

The muscles of the epiglottis are the—

Thyro-epiglottideus. Aryteno-epiglottideus superior.
Aryteno-epiglottideus inferior.

The **Thyro-epiglottideus** (*m. thyroepiglotticus*) is a delicate fasciculus, which arises from the inner surface of the thyroid cartilage, just external to the origin of the Thyro-arytenoid muscle, of which it is sometimes described as a part, and spreads over the outer surface of the sacculus laryngis; some of its fibres are lost in the aryteno-epiglottidean fold, while the others are continued forward to the margin of the epiglottis.

The **Aryteno-epiglottideus** (Figs. 970 and 975) is properly divided into two muscles, a superior and an inferior.

The **Aryteno-epiglottideus superior** consists of a few delicate muscular fasciculi, which arise from the apex of the arytenoid cartilages, and become lost in the fold of mucous membrane, the **aryteno-epiglottidean fold**, extending between the arytenoid cartilage and the side of the epiglottis.

The **Aryteno-epiglottideus inferior**, the **Compressor sacculi laryngis of Hilton**, arises from the arytenoid cartilage, just above the attachment of the superior vocal cord; passing forward and upward, it spreads out upon the anterior surface of the epiglottis. This muscle is separated from the preceding by an indistinct areolar interval.[3]

[1] Henle describes these two portions as separate muscles, under the names of the External and Internal thyro-arytenoid.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

[2] Luschka has described a small but fairly constant muscle as the Arytenoideus rectus. It is attached below to the posterior concave surface of the arytenoid cartilage, beneath the Arytenoideus muscle, and, passing upward, emerges at the upper border of this muscle, and is inserted into the posterior surface of the cartilage of Santorini (Anatomy, by Hyrtl, p. 718).—Ed. of 15th English edition.

[3] Musculus triticeo-glossus. Boehdalek, Jr. (Prager Vierteljahrsschrift, 1866, 2d part) describes a muscle hitherto entirely overlooked, except by Henle, who makes a brief statement in his Anatomy, which arises from the nodule of cartilage (*corpus triticeum*) in the posterior thyro-hyoid ligament, and passes forward and upward to enter the tongue along with the Hyo-glossus muscle. He met with this muscle eight times in twenty-two subjects. It occurred in both sexes, sometimes on both sides, at others on one only.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

Actions.—In considering the action of the muscles of the larynx, they may be conveniently divided into two groups, viz.: 1. Those which open and close the glottis. 2. Those which regulate the degree of tension of the vocal cords.

1. The muscles which open the glottis are the two Posterior crico-arytenoids; and those which close it are the Arytenoideus and the two Lateral crico-arytenoids. 2. The muscles which regulate the tension of the vocal cords are the two Crico-thyroids, which tense and elongate them, and the two Thyro-arytenoids, which relax and shorten them. The Thyro-epiglottideus is a depressor of the epiglottis, and the Aryteno-epiglottideus, superior and inferior, constrict the superior aperture of the larynx.

The *Posterior crico-arytenoids* separate the chordae vocales, and consequently open the glottis, by rotating the arytenoid cartilages outward around a vertical axis passing through the crico-arytenoid joints, so that their vocal processes and the vocal cords attached to them become widely separated.

The *Lateral crico-arytenoids* close the glottis by rotating the arytenoid cartilages inward so as to approximate their vocal processes.

The *Arytenoideus muscle* approximates the arytenoid cartilages, and thus closes the opening of the glottis, especially at its back part.

The *Crico-thyroid muscles* produce tension and elongation of the vocal cords. This is effected as follows: the thyroid cartilage is fixed by its extrinsic muscles; then the Crico-thyroid muscles, when they act, draw upward the front of the cricoid cartilage, and so depress the posterior portion, which carries with it the arytenoid cartilages, and thus elongate the vocal cords.

The *Thyro-arytenoid muscles*, consisting of two parts having different attachments and different directions, are rather complicated as regards their action. Their main use is to draw the arytenoid cartilages forward toward the thyroid, and thus shorten and relax the vocal cords. But, owing to the connection of the inner portion with the vocal cord, this part, if acting separately, is supposed to modify its elasticity and tension, and the outer portion, being inserted into the outer part of the anterior surface of the arytenoid cartilage, may rotate it inward, and thus narrow the rima glottidis by bringing the two cords together.

The *Thyro-epiglottidei* may depress the epiglottis; they assist in compressing the sacculi laryngis. The Aryteno-epiglottideus superior constricts the superior aperture of the larynx, when it is drawn upward, during deglutition. The *aryteno-epiglottideus inferior*, together with some fibres of the Thyro-arytenoidei, compress the sacculus laryngis.

The **Mucous Membrane of the Larynx** is continuous above with that lining the mouth and pharynx, and it is prolonged through the trachea and bronchi into the lungs. It lines the posterior surface and the anterior part of the upper surface of the epiglottis, to which it is closely adherent. In the rest of the larynx, above the true vocal cords, it is lax and rests upon a considerable submucous layer. The mucous membrane, with the submucous coat, ligamentous and muscular fibres, forms the aryteno-epiglottidean folds, which folds are the lateral boundaries of the superior aperture of the larynx. It lines the whole of the cavity of the larynx; forms by its reduplication the chief part of the superior or false vocal cord; and, from the ventricle, is continued into the sacculus laryngis. It is then reflected over the true vocal cords, where it is thin and very intimately adherent; covers the inner surface of the crico-thyroid membrane and cricoid cartilage; and is ultimately continuous with the lining membrane of the trachea. The forepart of the anterior surface and the upper half of the posterior surface of the epiglottis, the upper part of the aryteno-epiglottidean folds, and the true vocal cords are covered by stratified squamous epithelium; the rest of the laryngeal mucous membrane is covered by columnar ciliated cells.

The mucous membrane above the rima glottidis is extremely sensitive, and during life the lightest touch of a foreign body produces cough.

Glands.—The mucous membrane of the larynx is furnished with numerous muciparous glands, the orifices of which are found in nearly every part; they are very numerous upon the epiglottis, being lodged in little pits in its substance; they are also found in large numbers along the posterior margin of the aryteno-epiglottidean fold, in front of the arytenoid cartilages, where they are termed the

arytenoid glands. They exist also in large numbers upon the inner surface of the sacculus laryngis. None are found on the surface of the true vocal cords.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries of the larynx** (Fig. 977) are the **laryngeal branches derived from the superior and inferior thyroid.** The **superior laryngeal artery from the superior thyroid** courses along by the internal laryngeal nerve; the **inferior laryngeal artery from the inferior thyroid** courses along with the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The **veins** accompany the arteries; those accompanying the superior laryngeal artery join the **superior thyroid vein** which opens into the internal jugular vein; while those accompanying the inferior laryngeal artery join the **inferior thyroid vein** which opens into the innominate vein. The laryngeal **lymphatics** arise from a network in the mucous membrane. This network is divisible into two portions, a superior and an inferior, which are to be regarded as almost independent areas. The superior region includes all of the "laryngeal mucous membrane above the glottis, epiglottis, aryteno-epiglottidean folds, interarytenoid region, and superior vocal cords."[1] The inferior area is the laryngeal mucous

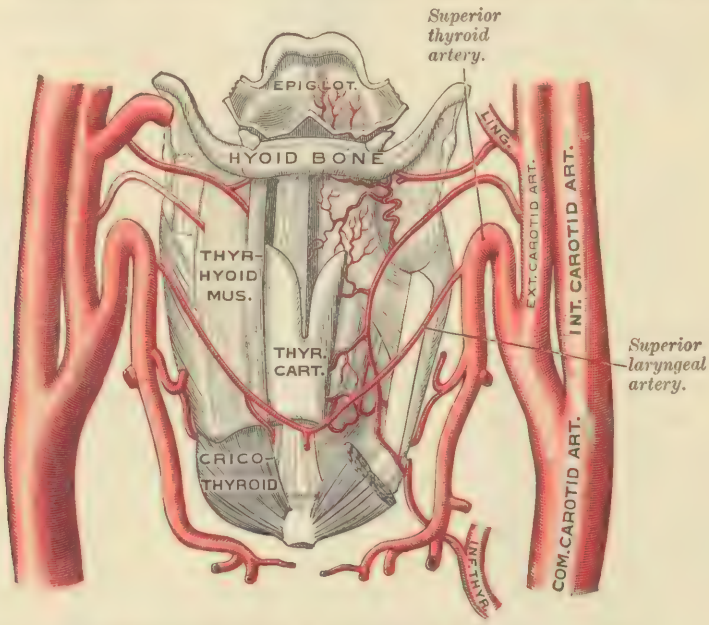


FIG. 977.—The origin and distribution of the arteries of the larynx. (Luschka.)

membrane below the glottis. The lymphatics of one-half of the larynx do not communicate with those of the other half in the median line in front, but do in the median line behind. The efferent vessels from the superior network accompany the superior laryngeal artery, pierce the thyro-hyoid membrane, and divide into three sets. One or two lymphatic vessels pass upward and terminate in a gland slightly below the posterior belly of the Digastric muscle. A group of vessels passes horizontally outward to terminate in the glands situated on the internal jugular vein on a level with the bifurcation of the common carotid artery. Another group descends and empties into the internal jugular group of glands at a lower level than the horizontal vessels. Trunks from the inferior network of the laryngeal mucous membrane form two groups. The anterior or supracricoid group consists of three trunks which pass through the crico-thyroid membrane, to empty into the pre-laryngeal glands, the pre-tracheal gland, and the middle and lower deep cervical glands.[2] The posterior group consists

[1] Philip R. W. De Santi in the Lancet, June 18, 1904.

[2] Poirier, Cunéo, Most, De Santi.

of "from three to five trunks, which pass over the crico-tracheal fascia at the junction of the lateral and posterior aspects of the trachea,"[1] and terminate in the recurrent glands about the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The **nerves** are derived from the **internal** and **external laryngeal branches of the superior laryngeal nerve,** from the **inferior** or **recurrent laryngeal,** and from the **sympathetic.** The internal laryngeal nerve is almost entirely sensory, but some motor filaments are said to be carried by it to the Arytenoideus muscle. It divides into a branch which is distributed to both surfaces of the epiglottis, a second to the aryteno-epiglottidean folds, and a third, the largest, which supplies the mucous membrane over the back of the larynx and communicates with the recurrent laryngeal. The external laryngeal nerve supplies the Crico-thyroid muscle. The recurrent laryngeal passes upward under the lower border of the Inferior constrictor, and enters the larynx between the cricoid and thyroid cartilages. It supplies all the muscles of the larynx except the Crico-thyroid and part of the Arytenoideus. The sensory branches of the laryngeal nerves form subepithelial plexuses, from which fibres ascend to end between the cells covering the mucous membrane.

Over the posterior surface of the epiglottis, in the aryteno-epiglottidean folds, and less regularly in some other parts, taste-buds, similar to those in the tongue, are found.

THE TRACHEA AND BRONCHI (Fig. 978).

The trachea or windpipe is a cartilaginous membranous, elastic, cylindrical tube, flattened posteriorly, which extends from the lower part of the larynx, on a level with the sixth cervical vertebra, to opposite the body of the fourth, or sometimes of the fifth, dorsal vertebra, where it divides (*bifurcatio tracheae*) into two **bronchi,** one for each lung. This point is at the level of the spine of the fourth dorsal vertebra. The trachea is found to be more deeply placed the lower down it is examined. It is in the median line, deviating below a very little to the right side. When a cross-section is made of the trachea it is seen that its anterior and lateral walls are rounded, but its posterior wall is flat (Fig. 982). The largest diameter of the tube is the middle; from this point the diameter diminishes toward the bronchi and toward the laryngeal end. The trachea measures about four inches and a half in length; its diameter from side to side is from three-quarters of an inch to an inch, being always greater in the male than in the female.

Relations.—The anterior surface of the trachea is convex, and covered **in the neck,** from above downward, by the isthmus of the thyroid gland, the inferior thyroid veins, the arteria thyroidea ima (when that vessel exists), the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, the cervical fascia, and more superficially, by the anastomosing branches between the anterior jugular veins: **in the thorax** it is covered from before backward by the first piece of the sternum, the remains of the thymus gland, the left innominate vein, the arch of the aorta, the innominate and left common carotid arteries, and the deep cardiac plexus. Posteriorly, it is in relation with the oesophagus; laterally, **in the neck,** it is in relation with the common carotid arteries, the lateral lobes of the thyroid gland, the inferior thyroid arteries, and recurrent laryngeal nerves; and, **in the thorax,** it lies in the upper part of the **interpleural space,** that is, in the **superior mediastinum,** and is in relation on the right to the pleura and right vagus, and near the root of the neck to the innominate artery; on its left side are the recurrent laryngeal nerve, the aortic arch, the left common carotid and subclavian arteries.

The Right Bronchus (*bronchus dexter*).—The unbranched portion of the right bronchus, wider, shorter, and more vertical in direction than the left, is about an inch in length, and enters the hilum of the right lung opposite the fifth dorsal

[1] De Santi, in the Lancet, June 18, 1904.

vertebra. It forms an angle to the median plane of about 29 degrees. The vena azygos major arches over it from behind; and the right pulmonary artery lies below and then in front of it. About three-quarters of an inch from its commencement it gives off a branch to the upper lobe of the right lung. This is termed the **eparterial branch** (*ramus bronchialis eparterialis*), because it is given off above the right pulmonary artery. The bronchus now passes below the artery, and is

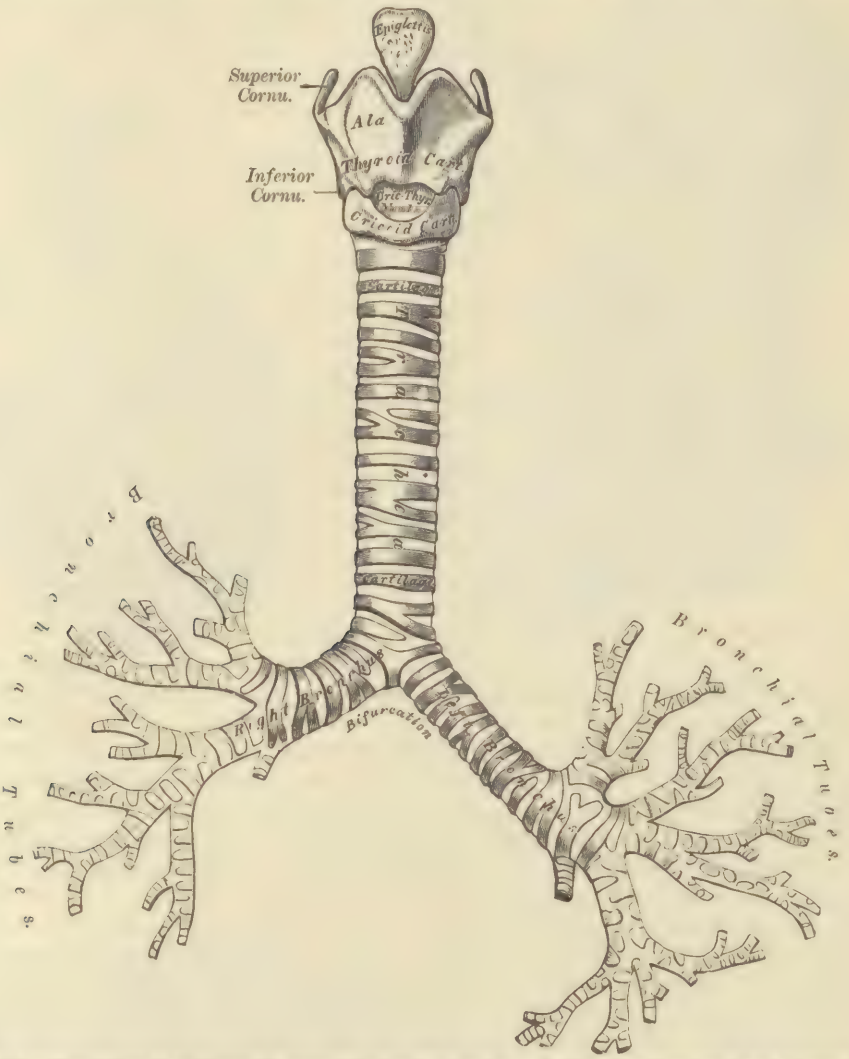


FIG. 978.—Front view of cartilages of larynx; the trachea and bronchi (the right bronchus is not shown as steep as it really is.

known as the **hyparterial branch** (*ramus branchialis hyparterialis*). It divides into two branches for the middle and lower lobs.

If a transverse section of the trachea is made a short distance above its point of bifurcation, and a bird's-eye view taken of its interior (Fig. 982), the septum placed at the bottom of the trachea and separating the two bronchi will be seen to occupy the left of the median line, and the right bronchus appears to be a more direct continuation than the left, so that any solid body dropping into the trachea would naturally be directed toward the right bronchus. This tendency is aided by the larger size of the right tube as compared with its fellow. This fact

serves to explain why a foreign body in the trachea more frequently falls into the right bronchus than into the left.[1]

The Left Bronchus (*bronchus sinister*).—The left bronchus is smaller and longer than the right, being nearly two inches in length. It forms an angle to the median plane of about 46 degrees. It is slightly curved and enters the root of the left lung, opposite the sixth dorsal vertebra, about an inch lower than the right bronchus. It passes beneath the arch of the aorta, crosses in front of the oesophagus, the thoracic duct, and the descending aorta, and has the left pulmonary artery lying at first above, and then in front of it. The left bronchus has no branch corresponding to the eparterial branch of the right bronchus, and therefore it has been supposed by some that there is no upper lobe to the left lung, but that the so-called upper lobe corresponds to the middle lobe of the right lung. The left bronchus does have an hyparterial branch.

FIG. 979.—Internal surface of the bronchi. (Poirier and Charpy.)

When the main or stem bronchus enters the lung on each side it appears to divide into nearly equal branches at the root of the lung, but a somewhat similar arrangement to what is found in many animals may be made out where each main bronchus passes downward and backward toward the extremity of the lower lobe, and ends near the posterior surface of the base of the lung, a portion of pulmonary substance which is between the Diaphragm and the wall of the chest. It gives off four branches, or **lateral bronchi** (*rami bronchiales*), at intervals in two directions, dorsally and ventrally, and, in addition, accessory branches, which arise from the front of the bronchus and pass mesially and dorsally into the inferior lobe. In the right bronchus the first ventral branch supplies the middle lobe, the other three and all the dorsal going to the lower lobe; in the left bronchus, the first ventral branch supplies the middle lobe, the other three and all the dorsal going to the lower lobe; in the left bronchus, the first central supplies the superior lobe, and all the others, both ventral and dorsal, go to the lower lobe. The dorsal and ventral branches divide into smaller branches, and these again into smaller branches or **bronchioles** (Fig. 981). Each bronchiolus divides into minute branches (*bronchioli respiratorii*) (Fig. 981), the walls of which show numerous areas of bulging called **alveoli** (Fig. 981). From the bronchioli respiratorii come the terminal branches of the bronchi. These terminal branches are the **alveolar ducts** (*ductuli alveolares*), and they are bulged by numerous alveoli (Fig. 981). They connect by openings at their termination with several cavities of irregular form, which are called **atria**. Each atrium is connected with several or many larger cavities, known as **sacculi alveolares, air-cells,** or **air-sacs** (*infundibula*). The entire surface of the air-sacs is filled with small cavities, the **pulmonary alveoli** (*alveoli pulmonis*). An alveolar duct with its branches forms a **pulmonary lobule** (*lobulus pulmonis*) (Fig. 980).

Structure of the Trachea.—The trachea is composed of imperfect cartilaginous rings, fibrous membrane, muscular fibres, mucous membrane, and glands.

The Cartilages.—The cartilages vary from sixteen to twenty in number; each forms an imperfect ring, which surrounds about two-thirds of the cylinder of the

[1] Reigel asserts that the entrance of a foreign body into the *left* bronchus is by no means so infrequent as is generally supposed. See also Med.-Chir. Transactions, vol. lxxi. p. 121.—ED. of 15th English edition.

trachea, being imperfect behind, where the tube is completed by fibrous membrane. The cartilages are placed horizontally above each other, separated by narrow membranous intervals. They measure about two lines in depth, and half a line in thickness. Their outer surfaces are flattened, but internally they are convex, from being thicker in the middle than at the margins. Two or more of the cartilages often unite, partially or completely, and are sometimes bifurcated at their extremities. They are highly elastic, but sometimes become calcified in advanced life. In the right bronchus the cartilages vary in number from six to eight; in the left, from nine to twelve. They are shorter and narrower than those of the trachea. The peculiar cartilages are the first and the last.

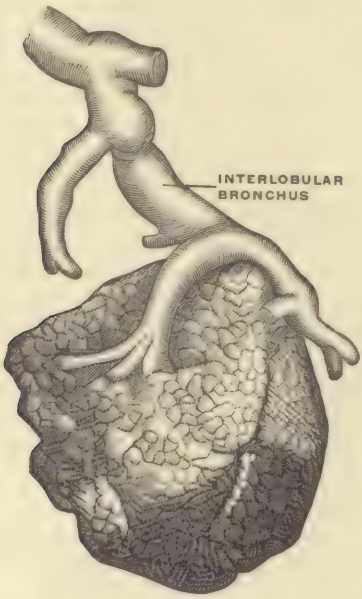


Fig. 980.—A pulmonary lobule. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **First Cartilage** is broader than the rest, and sometimes divided at one end; it is connected by fibrous membrane with the lower

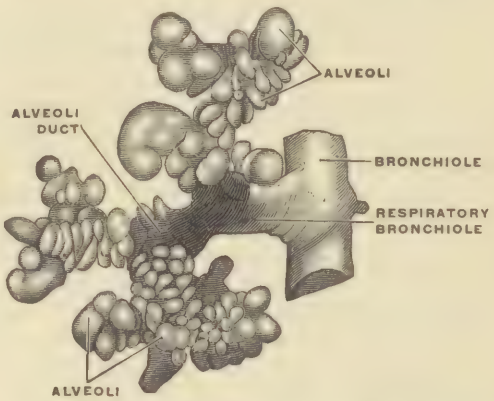


Fig. 981.—The terminal bronchial tubes. The respiratory bronchiole and alveoli. (Poirier and Charpy.)

border of the cricoid cartilage, with which or with the succeeding cartilage it is sometimes blended.

The **Last Cartilage** is thick and broad in the middle, in consequence of its lower border being prolonged into a triangular hook-shaped process which curves downward and backward between the two bronchi. It terminates on each side in an imperfect ring which encloses the commencement of the bronchi. The cartilage above the last is somewhat broader than the rest at its centre.

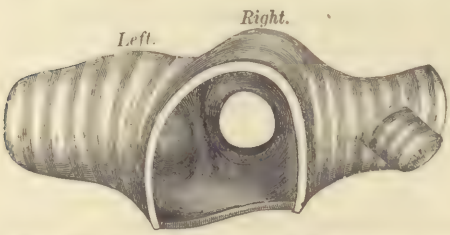


Fig. 982.—Transverse section of the trachea, just above its bifurcation, with a bird's-eye view of the interior.

The Fibrous Membrane.—The cartilages are enclosed in an elastic fibrous membrane which forms a double layer, one layer, the thicker of the two, passing over the outer surface of the ring, the other over the inner surface; at the upper and lower margins of the cartilages these two layers blend together to form a single membrane, which connects the rings one with another. They are thus, as it were, embedded in the membrane. In the space behind, between the extremities of the rings, the membrane forms a single distinct layer.

The Muscular Fibres.—The muscular fibres are disposed in two layers, **longitudinal** and **transverse**

The **Longitudinal Fibres** are the most external, and consist merely of a few scattered longitudinal bundles of fibres.

The **Transverse Fibres** constitute the **Trachealis muscle of Todd and Bowman.** The most internal form a thin layer which extends transversely between the ends of the cartilages and the intervals between them at the posterior part of the trachea. The muscular fibres are of the unstriped variety.

The Mucous Membrane.—The mucous membrane is continuous above with that of the larynx, and below with that of the bronchi. Microscopically, it consists of areolar and lymphoid tissue, and presents a well-marked basement-membrane, supporting a layer of columnar, ciliated epithelium, between the deeper ends of which are smaller triangular cells, the bases of which, often branched, are attached to the basement-membrane. These triangular cells are mucus-secreting, and may be seen as goblet-cells or chalice-cells when their contents have been discharged. In the deepest part of the mucous membrane, and especially between the mucous and submucous layers, longitudinally arranged fibres are very abundant and form a distinct layer.

The Tracheal Glands (*glandulae tracheales*).—The tracheal glands are found in great abundance at the posterior part of the trachea. They are racemose glands, and consist of a basement-membrane lined by columnar mucus-secreting cells. They are situated at the back of the trachea, outside the layer of muscular tissue, between it and the outer fibrous layer. Their excretory ducts pierce the muscular and inner fibrous layers, and pass through the submucous and mucous layers to open on the surface of the mucous membrane. Some glands of smaller size are also found at the sides of the trachea, between the layers of fibrous tissue connecting the rings, and others immediately beneath the mucous coat. The secretion from these glands serves to lubricate the inner surface of the trachea.

Vessels and Nerves.—The trachea is supplied with blood by the inferior thyroid arteries. The **veins** terminate in the thyroid venous plexus. The **nerves** are derived from the pneumogastric and its recurrent branches and from the sympathetic.

Lymphatic Glands.—The trachea is surrounded by lax connective tissue which contains numerous lymph glands, known as the **peritracheo-bronchial glands.** They are divided into four groups (Baréty). A group to the **right side,** in the angle between the trachea and right bronchus and ascending to the region of the subclavian vessels. A group to the **left side,** in the angle formed by the trachea and left bronchus, and ascending to about the arch of the aorta and the recurrent laryngeal nerve. The two groups just described are usually called **tracheal glands** (*lymphoglandulae tracheales*). A third group is in the angle formed by the bifurcation of the trachea. These constitute the **bronchial glands** (*lymphoglandulae bronchiales*). They number ten or twelve (Cunéo). A fourth group, the **interbronchial glands,** are found in angles of bifurcation of the larger bronchi in the lung parenchyma. Very early in life the peritracheo-bronchial glands become dark or even black from the deposition of carbonaceous substance brought by the leukocytes from the bronchial tubes. This condition is called **anthracosis.**

Surface Form. –In the middle line of the neck some of the cartilages of the larynx can readily be distinguished. In the receding angle below the chin the hyoid bone can easily be made out, and a finger's breadth below it is the pomum Adami, the prominence between the upper borders of the two alae of the thyroid cartilage. About an inch below this, in the middle line, is a depression corresponding to the crico-thyroid space, in which the operation of laryngotomy is performed. This depression is bounded below by a prominent arch, the anterior ring of the cricoid cartilage, below which the trachea can be felt, though it is only in the emaciated adult that the separate rings can be distinguished. The lower part of the trachea is not easily made out, for as it descends in the neck it takes a deeper position, and is farther removed from the surface. The level of the vocal cords corresponds to the middle of the anterior margin of the thyroid cartilage.

With the *laryngoscope*, the following structures can be seen: The base of the tongue and the upper surface of the epiglottis, with the glosso-epiglottic ligaments; the superior aperture of the larynx, bounded on either side by the aryteno-epiglottidean folds, in which may be seen two rounded eminences corresponding to the cornicula and cuneiform cartilages. Beneath these, the true and false vocal cords, with the ventricle between them. Still deeper, the cricoid cartilage and some of the anterior parts of the rings of the trachea, and sometimes, in deep inspiration, the bifurcation of the trachea.

Surgical Anatomy. *Foreign bodies* often find their way into the air-passages. These may be either large soft substances, as a piece of meat, which may become lodged in the upper aperture of the larynx or in the rima glottidis, and cause speedy suffocation unless rapidly got rid of, or unless an opening is made into the air-passages below, so as to enable the patient to breathe. Smaller bodies, frequently of a hard nature, such as cherry- or plum-stones, small pieces of bone, buttons, etc., may find their way through the rima glottidis into the trachea or bronchus, or may become lodged in the ventricle of the larynx. The dangers then depend not so much upon the mechanical obstruction as upon the spasm of the glottis which they excite from reflex irritation. When lodged in the ventricle of the larynx, they may produce very few symptoms beyond sudden loss of voice or alteration in the voice sounds, immediately following the inhalation of the foreign body. When, however, they are situated in the trachea, they are constantly striking against the vocal cords during expiratory efforts, and produce attacks of dyspnœa from spasm of the glottis. When lodged in the bronchus, they usually become fixed there, and, occluding the lumen of the tube, cause a loss of the respiratory murmur on the affected side, which is, as stated above, more often the right.

Beneath the mucous membrane of the upper part of the air-passages there is a considerable amount of submucous tissue which is liable to become much swollen from effusion in inflammatory affections, constituting the disease known as "*œdema of the glottis*." This effusion does not extend below the level of the true vocal cords, on account of the fact that the mucous membrane is closely adherent to these structures, without the intervention of any submucous tissue. So that, in cases of this disease in which it is necessary to open the air-passages to prevent suffocation, the operation of laryngotomy is sufficient.

Chronic laryngitis is an inflammation of the mucous glands of the larynx, which occurs in those who speak much in public, and is known as "*clergyman's sore throat*." It is due to the dryness induced by the large amount of cold air drawn into the air-passages during prolonged speaking, which incites increased activity in the mucous glands to keep the parts moist, and this eventually terminates in inflammation of these structures.

Ulceration of the larynx may occur from syphilis, either as a superficial ulceration, or from the softening of a gumma; from tuberculous disease (laryngeal phthisis), or from malignant disease (epithelioma).

The air-passages may be opened surgically in two different situations: through the crico-thyroid membrane (*laryngotomy*), or in some part of the trachea (*tracheotomy*); and to these some surgeons have added a third method, by opening the crico-thyroid membrane and dividing the cartilage with the upper ring of the trachea (*laryngo-tracheotomy*).

Laryngotomy is anatomically the more simple operation: it can readily be performed, and should be employed in those cases where the air-passages require opening in an emergency for the relief of some sudden obstruction to respiration. The crico-thyroid membrane is very superficial, being covered only in the middle line by the skin, superficial fascia, and the deep fascia. On each side of the middle line it is also covered by the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, which diverge from each other at their upper parts, leaving a slight interval between them. On these muscles rest the anterior jugular veins. The only vessel of any importance in connection with this operation is the crico-thyroid artery, which crosses the crico-thyroid membrane, and which may be wounded, but rarely gives rise to any trouble. The operation is performed thus: the head being thrown back and steadied by an assistant, the finger is passed over the front of the neck, and the crico-thyroid depression felt for. A vertical incision is then made through the skin, in the middle line over this spot, and carried down through the fascia until the crico-thyroid membrane is exposed. A cross-cut is then made through the membrane, close to the upper border of the cricoid cartilage, so as to avoid, if possible, the crico-thyroid artery, and a tracheotomy tube is introduced. It has been recommended, as a more rapid way of performing the operation, to make a transverse instead of a longitudinal cut, through both the superficial and deep structures, and thus to open at once the air-passages. It will be seen, however, that in opening in this way the anterior jugular veins would be in danger of being wounded.

Tracheotomy may be performed either above or below the isthmus of the thyroid body, or this structure may be divided and the trachea opened behind it.

The isthmus of the thyroid gland usually crosses the second and third rings of the trachea; along its upper border is frequently to be found a large transverse communicating branch between the superior thyroid veins; and the isthmus itself is covered by a venous plexus formed between the thyroid veins of the opposite sides. Theoretically, therefore, it is advisable to avoid dividing this structure in opening the trachea.

Above the isthmus the trachea is comparatively superficial, being covered by the skin, superficial fascia, deep fascia, Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, and a second layer of the deep fascia, which, attached above to the lower border of the hyoid bone, descends beneath the muscles to the thyroid body, where it divides into two layers and encloses the isthmus.

Below the isthmus the trachea lies much more deeply, and is covered by the Sterno-hyoid and the Sterno-thyroid muscles and a quantity of loose areolar tissue in which is a plexus of veins, some of them of large size; they converge to two trunks, the inferior thyroid veins, which descend on either side of the median line on the front of the trachea and open into the innominate veins. In the infant the thymus gland ascends a variable distance along the front of the trachea, and opposite the episternal notch the windpipe is crossed by the left innominate vein. Occasionally, also, in young subjects, the innominate artery crosses the tube obliquely above the level of the sternum. The thyroidea ima artery, when that vessel exists, passes from below upward along the front of the trachea.

From these observations it must be evident that the trachea can be more readily opened above than below the isthmus of the thyroid body.

Tracheotomy above the isthmus is performed thus: the patient should, if possible, be laid on his back on a table in a good light. A pillow is to be placed under the shoulders and the head thrown back and steadied by an assistant. The surgeon standing on the right side of his patient makes an incision from an inch and a half to two inches in length in the median line of the neck from the top of the cricoid cartilage. The incision must be made exactly in the middle line, so as to avoid the anterior jugular veins, and after the superficial structures have been divided the interval between the Sterno-hyoid muscles must be found, the raphé divided, and the muscles drawn apart. The lower border of the cricoid cartilage must now be felt for, and the upper part of the trachea exposed from this point downward in the middle line. Bose has recommended that the layer of fascia in front of the trachea should be divided transversely at the level of the lower border of the cricoid cartilage, and, having been seized with a pair of forceps, pressed downward with the handle of the scalpel. By this means the isthmus of the thyroid gland is depressed, and is saved from all danger of being wounded, and the trachea is cleanly exposed. The trachea is now transfixed with a sharp hook and drawn forward in order to steady it, and is then opened by inserting the knife into it and dividing the two or three upper rings from below upward. If the trachea is to be opened below the isthmus, the incision to expose it must be made from a little below the cricoid cartilage to the top of the sternum.

In the child the trachea is smaller, more deeply placed, and more movable than in the adult. In fat or short-necked people, or in those in whom the muscles of the neck are prominently developed, the trachea is more deeply placed than in others.

A portion of the larynx or the whole of it has been removed for malignant disease, *laryngectomy*.

Some surgeons do preliminary tracheotomy, insert a Trendelenburg cannula to prevent the flow of blood downward into the lungs, and then remove the larynx. Other surgeons do not employ preliminary tracheotomy.

Perier's method of laryngectomy is as follows: Make a vertical incision in the median line from the level of the hyoid bone to below the level of the cricoid cartilage. Make a transverse incision at each end of the vertical incision. This makes an I-shaped wound.

Separate the soft parts from the larynx and upper part of the trachea, and separate these two structures from the œsophagus. After arresting bleeding, divide the trachea below the cricoid cartilage, introduce a special cannula, complete the removal of the larynx, suture the opening of the trachea to the lower angle of the wound, and close the rest of the wound after securing drainage. In malignant disease of the larynx the associated lymphatic glands must be removed.

Partial laryngectomy, according to Sir F. Semon, is the removal of not less than one wing of the thyroid cartilage. Removal of a lesser piece of the thyroid or of a bit of the arytenoid or cricoid he considers with the operation of thyrotomy.

THE PLEURAE (Figs. 983, 984, 985, 986, 987).

Each lung is invested, upon its external surface, by an exceedingly delicate serous membrane, the **pleura**, which encloses the organ as far as its root, and is then reflected upon the inner surface of the thorax. The portion of the serous membrane investing the surface of the lung and dipping into the fissures between its lobes is called the **pulmonary pleura** or the **visceral layer of the pleura** (*pleura pulmonalis*) (Fig. 983), while that which lines the inner surface of the chest is called the **parietal layer of the pleura** (*pleura parietalis*) (Fig. 983). The two layers join at the hilum of the lung. The space between these two layers is called the **cavity of the**

pleura (*cavum pleurae*), and contains a very little clear fluid. It must be borne in mind that in the healthy condition the two layers are in contact, and there

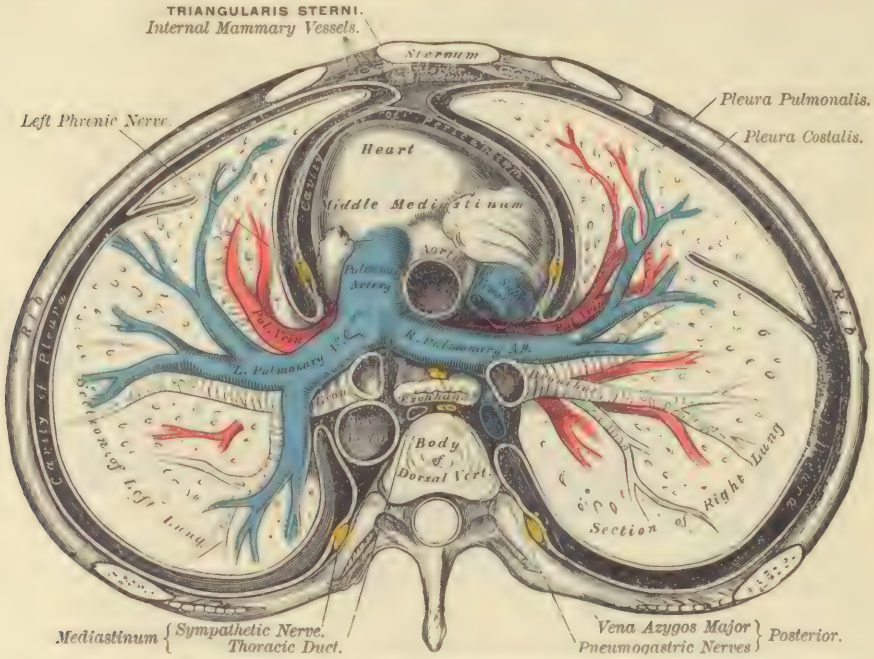


FIG. 983.—A transverse section of the thorax, showing the relative position of the viscera and the reflections of the pleurae.

is no real cavity until the lung becomes collapsed and separates from the wall of the chest. Each pleura is therefore a shut sac, one occupying the right, the other the left half of the thorax, and they are perfectly separate from each other.

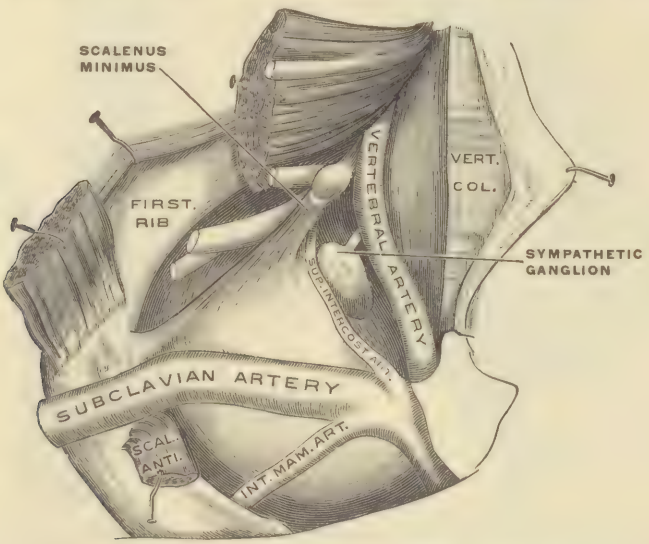


FIG. 984.—The dome of the pleura. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The two pleurae do not meet in the middle line of the chest, excepting anteriorly opposite the second and third pieces of the sternum—a space being left between

them, which contains all the viscera of the thorax excepting the lungs; this is the **mediastinum.**

Reflections of the Pleurae (Fig. 983). **The Pleura Pulmonalis** (Fig. 983). —The pleura pulmonalis is closely attached to the surface of the lung and enters into the

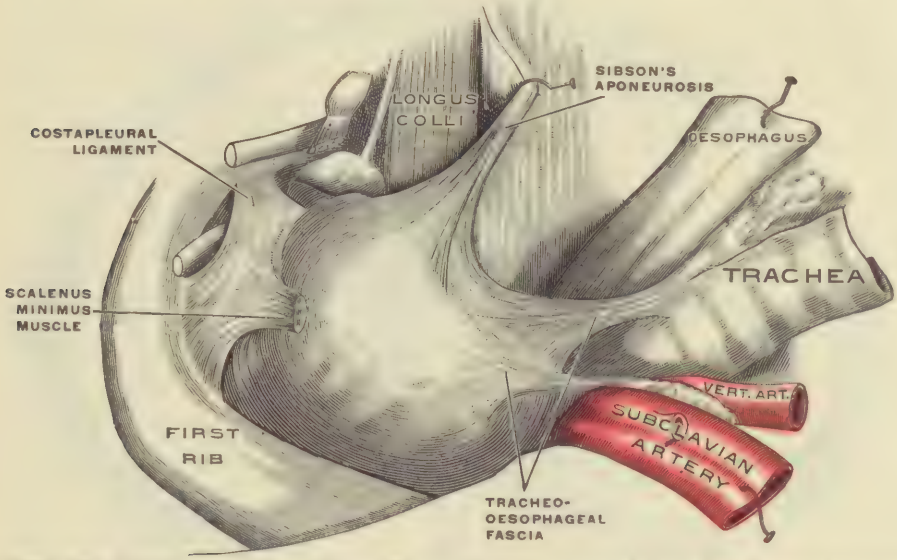


FIG. 985.— The supports of the pleural dome. The oesophagus, trachea and arteries have been cut and pulled aside to show the pleural reinforcements. (Poirier and Charpy.)

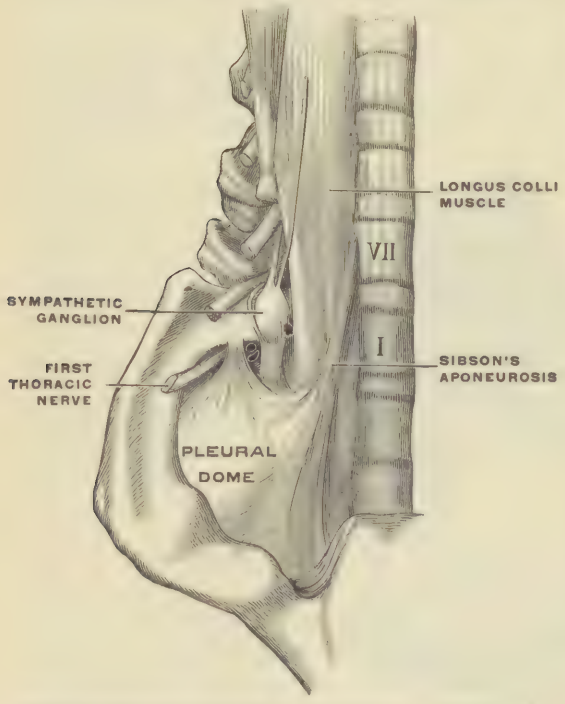


FIG. 986.—The supports of the pleural dome. (Poirier and Charpy.)

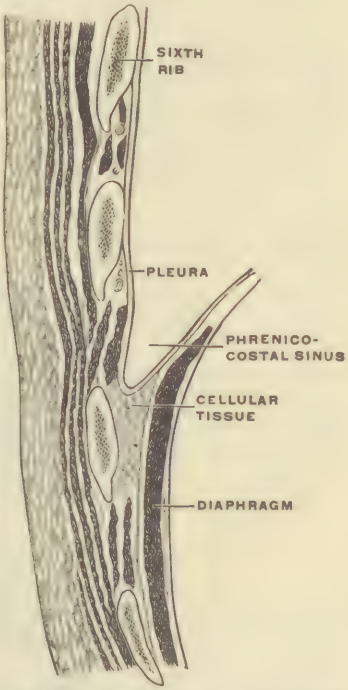


FIG. 987.—Section of the wall of the thorax, showing the phrenico-costal sinus. (Poirier and Charpy.)

depths of the interlobar fissures. It leaves the lung surface at the hilum, covers the root of the lung for a little way (Figs. 990 and 991), and then passes into the medi-

astinal pleura. Between the hilum and the mediastinal pleura there is a thickened pleural fold, triangular in outline, and called the **ligamentum pulmonale** or the **ligamentum latum pulmonis** (Figs. 990 and 991). It is formed by the two layers of the pulmonary pleura coming in contact below the root of the lung. This fold passes from the lower part of the inner pulmonary surface to the pericardium, and the lower border is free or attached to the diaphragmatic pleura. In the right lung the origin of this ligament is in front of the groove for the azygos vein; in the left lung it is in front of the groove for the thoracic aorta.

The Pleura Parietalis.—The pleura parietalis is a continuous membrane, but for convenience is divided into the **cervical pleura, costal pleura, mediastinal pleura,** and **diaphragmatic pleura.**

The **Cervical Pleura** or **Dome of the Pleura** or **Cupola** (*cupula pleurae*) (Fig. 986) is the dome-shaped roof of the cavity of the pleura. It projects above the apex of the lung to the neck of the first rib. As the first rib is placed obliquely, the dome of the pleura reaches from one inch to two inches above the anterior extremity of the first rib, and from one-half an inch to one and one-half inches above the clavicle. On the outer side of the cervical pleura are the Scalenus anticus and medius muscles. Just below the apex, on the anterior and inner surface, is a groove for the subclavian artery, which vessel passes over it in an arch (Fig. 984). A little below the groove for the subclavian artery is a broader and shallower groove for the innominate and subclavian veins. Above the subclavian artery and in front and above the cervical pleura are the cords of origin of the brachial plexus and the inferior cervical ganglion (Fig. 984). The dome is strengthened and kept in place by **Sibson's aponeurosis** or the **vertebro-pleural ligament** (Figs. 985 and 986). This comes from a little piece of muscle, the **Scalenus minimus** muscle, which originates from the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra, broadens and becomes aponeurotic as it descends, and is inserted into the inner margin of the first rib (Figs. 984 and 985). It is also strengthened by the **costa-pleural ligament** (Fig. 985), from the inner surface of the neck of the first rib to the pleura, and by fibrous bands which pass to the tissue about the subclavian sheath, trachea, and oesophagus (Fig. 985).

The **Costal Pleura** (*pleura costalis*) (Fig. 983) is the shortest portion of the pleura and is connected to the parts it covers by the **endothoracic fascia** (*fascia endothoracica*), a layer of connective tissue which is much thicker back of the rib cartilages than it is posteriorly. The costal pleura covers the inner surface of part of the sternum, the costal cartilages, ribs, and Intercostal muscles, and the sides of the bodies of the dorsal vertebrae. This layer is loosely attached except as it passes from the heads of the ribs to the vertebrae, where it is firmly adherent.

The **Mediastinal Pleura** (*pleura mediastinalis*) (Fig. 985) covers the septum of the mediastinum, which intervenes between the two pleural cavities. The mediastinal pleura extends from the inner surface of the anterior wall of the thorax to the vertebrae. It is continuous in front and back with the costal pleura of the same side, the lines of junction being known, respectively, as the **anterior line of pleural reflection** and the **posterior line of pleural reflection.** Below the mediastinal pleura passes into the diaphragmatic pleura of the same side. The portion of the mediastinal pleura which fuses with the parietal layer of the pericardium is called the **pericardial pleura** (*pleura pericardiaca*).

Above the root of the lung the mediastinal pleura passes back directly to the vertebrae. "In this region the **left mediastinal pleura** is applied to the arch of the aorta and the phrenic and vagus nerves; to the left innominate vein, the left superior intercostal vein, and the left common carotid, and left subclavian arteries; to the oesophagus and the thoracic duct. The **right mediastinal pleura,** on the other hand, is applied, above the level of the root of the lung, to the upper part of the vena cava and right innominate vein; to the right innominate artery; to the vena azygos major, as it hooks forward above the bronchus; to the vagus and phrenic

nerves; and to the right side of the trachea."[1] Upon the pericardium the phrenic nerve is covered by the pleura. Back of the root of the lung and the pulmonary ligament, the right mediastinal pleura passes back to the vertebrae to the left of the oesophagus; the left mediastinal pleura passes back over the descending aorta, and just above the Diaphragm and in front of the aorta over the lower end of the oesophagus.

The **Diaphragmatic Pleura** (*pleura diaphragmatica*) (Figs. 987 and 988) covers the upper surface of the Diaphragm outside of the base of the pericardium, but does not completely cover it; for it does not pass into the interval between the wall of the thorax and Diaphragm, and before this point is reached becomes continuous with the costal pleura.

The reflection to the costal pleura begins by the sternum, at the lower margin of the sixth rib; takes place at the junction of the cartilage of the rib with the seventh rib; posteriorly, it takes place at the lower margin of the twelfth dorsal vertebra.

In the front of the chest, where the parietal layer of the pleura is reflected backward to the pericardium, the two pleural sacs are in contact for a considerable extent. At the upper part of the chest, behind the manubrium, they are not in contact; the point of reflection being represented by a line drawn from the sternoclavicular articulation to the mid-point of the junction of the manubrium to the body of the sternum. From this point the two pleurae descend in close contact to the level of the fourth costal cartilages Here the line of reflection on the right side is continued downward in nearly a straight line to the lower end of the gladiolus and then turns outward behind the costal cartilage of the sixth rib, continuing to descend and to run outward, it passes behind the descending part of the seventh costal cartilage, and meets the axillary line at the junction of the eighth rib with the cartilage. The line of reflection continues to descend till it reaches its lowest point at the tenth rib. This point is in the axillary line, while on the left side the line of reflection diverges outward, so that opposite the seventh cartilage it is about three-quarters of an inch from the left border of the sternum. It, however, always extends considerably farther over the pericardium than the corresponding lung. From this joint the reflections of the two sides are practically the same. The lower limit of the pleura is on a considerably lower level than the lower limit of the lung, but does not extend to the attachment of the Diaphragm, so that below the line of reflection of the pleura from the chest wall on to the Diaphragm the latter is in direct contact with the rib cartilages and the Internal intercostal muscles. In ordinary inspiration the thin margin of the base of the lung does not extend as low as the line of pleural reflection, with the result that the costal and diaphragmatic pleura are here in contact, the narrow slit between the two being termed the **phrenico-costal sinus** (*sinus phrenicocostalis*) (Fig. 987). A similar condition exists behind the sternum and rib cartilages, where the anterior thin margin of the lung falls short of the line of pleural reflection, and where the slit-like cavity between the two layers of pleura forms what is sometimes called the **costo-mediastinal sinus** (*sinus costomediastinalis*).

Along the line of reflection of the diaphragmatic pleura a dense fascia passes from the costal cartilages and the uncovered portion of the Diaphragm to the costal pleura. This serves to hold it in place. It is named by Cunningham the **phrenico-pleural fascia.**

The inner surface of the pleura is smooth, polished, and moistened by a serous fluid; its outer surface is intimately adherent to the surface of the lung, and to the pulmonary vessels as they emerge from the pericardium; it is also adherent to the upper surface of the Diaphragm; throughout the rest of its extent it is somewhat thicker, and may be separated from the adjacent parts with extreme facility.

[1] Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

The right pleural sac is shorter, wider, and reaches higher in the neck than the left.

Structure of the Pleura.—The pleura is composed of connective tissue containing much elastic tissue, its free surface being covered with flat endothelial cells. It is fastened to adjacent structures by subserous areolar tissue. The subserous tissue of the visceral pleura is continuous with the areolar tissue of the lung.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries of the pleura** are derived from the **intercostal**, the **internal mammary**, the **musculo-phrenic, thymic, pericardiac,** and **bronchial.** The **veins** correspond to the arteries. The **lymphatics** are very numerous in the pleura and subserous tissue. Many of them are in direct communication with the pleural cavity by **stomata** between the endothelial cells. Stomata are absent in the mediastinal pleura and over the ribs (Dyskowsky). The lymphatics of the visceral layer empty into the **superficial pulmonary trunks**; the lymphatics of the costal pleura empty into the **intercostal trunks**; of the diaphragmatic pleura, into the **diaphragmatic trunks**; of the mediastinal pleura, into the **posterior mediastinal glands.**[1] The **nerves** are derived from the **phrenic** and **sympathetic** (Luschka). Kölliker states that nerves accompany the ramification of the bronchial arteries in the pleural pulmonalis.

Surgical Anatomy.—In *operations upon the kidney* it must be borne in mind that the pleura may sometimes extend below the level of the last rib, and may therefore be opened in these operations, especially when the last rib is removed, in order to give more room. It is best to keep the incision at least one inch below the last rib, enlarging the wound afterward, when the finger can be introduced as a guide.

In *wounds of the Diaphragm* the pleura may be injured. In *operations about the root of the neck*, especially in the removal of glands and the ligation of the first part of the subclavian artery, the pleura may be injured.

Punctured wounds of the root of the neck are apt to reach the pleura.

Empyema is a surgical disease. In *acute empyema* the treatment is drainage. A portion of the fifth or sixth rib in the axillary line is removed by subperiosteal resection, the pleura is opened, and a tube is introduced. In *chronic empyema* the lung is contracted and adherent and cannot expand; hence drainage will not cure it. It is necessary to perform multiple rib resection in order to permit the chest-wall to sink in and obliterate the cavity, which, as the lung is unable to expand, it cannot do. The necessary operation may be the operation of Estlander, or the operation of Schede, or the operation of Fowler (page 166).

If a large wound admits suddenly a quantity of air into the pleura, dangerous or fatal *pneumothorax* arises, and the lung collapses. This is best met during operations by using the Fell-O'Dwyer apparatus for artificial respiration as advised by Matas.[2] This apparatus keeps the lung expanded, in spite of the entrance of air into the pleural sac. In *surgical pneumothorax* the lung may be sutured to the chest-wall, so as to block the opening. Sometimes, in order to arrest dangerous *pulmonary bleeding*, a surgeon deliberately induces pneumothorax, in hope that the collapse of the lung will arrest bleeding.

When an abscess of the liver is posterior and on the dorsum, *transpleural hepatotomy* is performed. A portion of the tenth and eleventh ribs below the angle of the scapula is removed. As a rule, the pleura is found obliterated at this point. If it is opened, it is at once sutured or closed with gauze packing. The exposed Diaphragm is incised, and, as it is usually adherent to the liver, the abscess cavity is entered. If it is not adherent, the liver is exposed and the abscess sought for with an aspirating-needle.

THE MEDIASTINAL SPACE, INTERPLEURAL SPACE OR MEDIASTINUM.

The mediastinum is the space left in the median portion of the chest by the non-approximation of the two pleuræ. It extends from the sternum in front to the spine behind. Within it are the contents of the thorax excepting the lungs. The mediastinum may be divided for purposes of description into two parts—an upper portion, above the upper level of the pericardium, which is named the

[1] Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare on the Lymphatics. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.
[2] Annals of Surgery, April, 1899.

superior mediastinum (Struthers); and a lower portion, below the upper level of the pericardium. This lower portion is again subdivided into three—that part which contains the pericardium and its contents, the **middle mediastinum**; that part which is in front of the pericardium, the **anterior mediastinum**; and that part which is behind the pericardium, the **posterior mediastinum.**

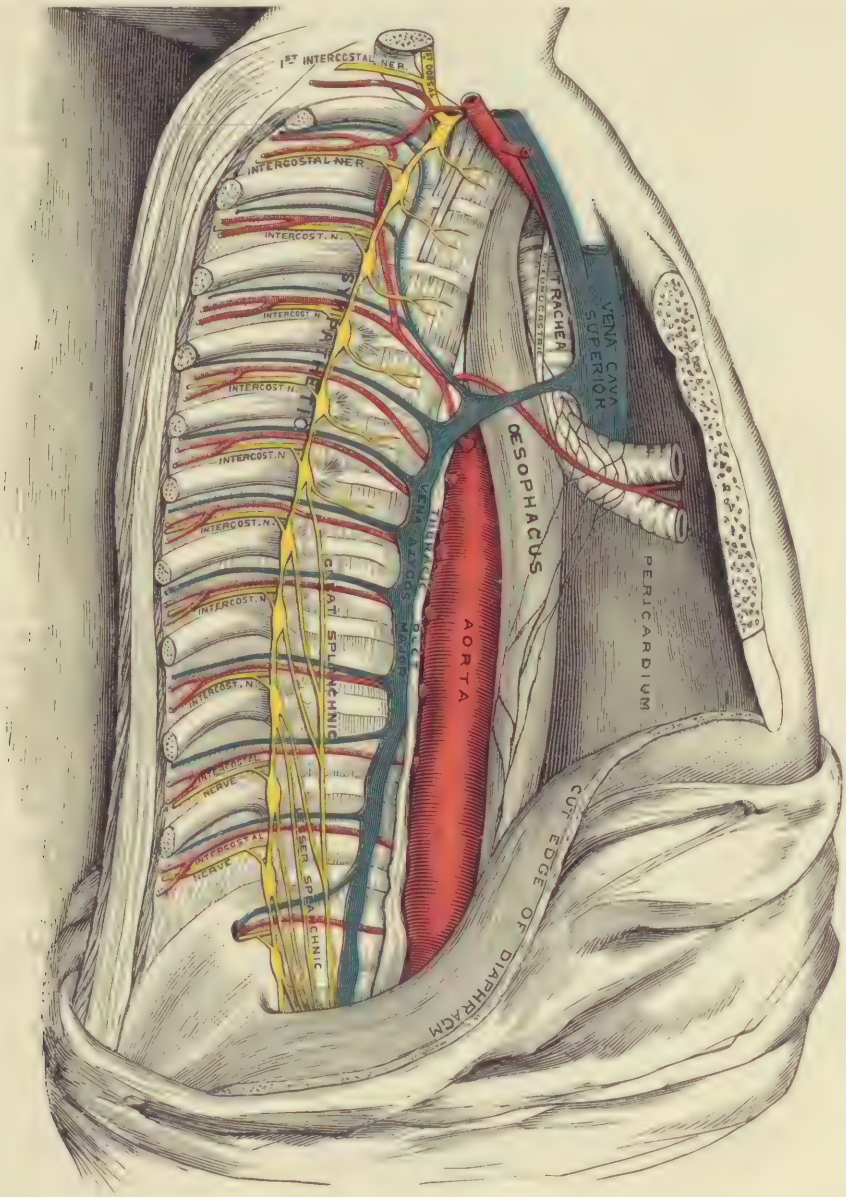


Fig. 988.—The posterior mediastinum.

The Superior Mediastinum (Fig. 989).—The superior mediastinum is that portion of the interpleural space which lies above the upper level of the pericardium, between the manubrium sterni in front and the upper dorsal vertebrae behind. It is bounded below by a plane passing backward from the junction of the manubrium and gladiolus sterni to the lower part of the body of the fourth dorsal vertebra,

and laterally by the lungs and pleurae. It contains the origins of the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles and the lower ends of the Longus colli muscles; the arch of the aorta; the innominate, the thoracic portion of the left carotid and subclavian arteries; the upper half of the superior vena cava and the innominate veins, and the left superior intercostal vein; the pneumogastric, cardiac, phrenic, and left recurrent laryngeal nerves; the trachea, œsophagus, and thoracic duct; the remains of the thymus gland and some lymphatic glands.

The Anterior Mediastinum (Fig. 983).—The anterior mediastinum is bounded in front by the sternum, on each side by the pleura, and behind by the pericardium. It is narrow above, but widens out a little below, and, owing to the oblique course taken by the left pleura, it is directed from above obliquely downward and to the left. Its anterior wall is formed by the left Triangularis sterni muscle and the fifth, sixth, and seventh left costal cartilages. It contains a quantity of loose areolar tissue, some lymphatic vessels which ascend from the convex surface of the liver, two or three lymphatic glands (anterior mediastinal glands), and the small mediastinal branches of the internal mammary artery.

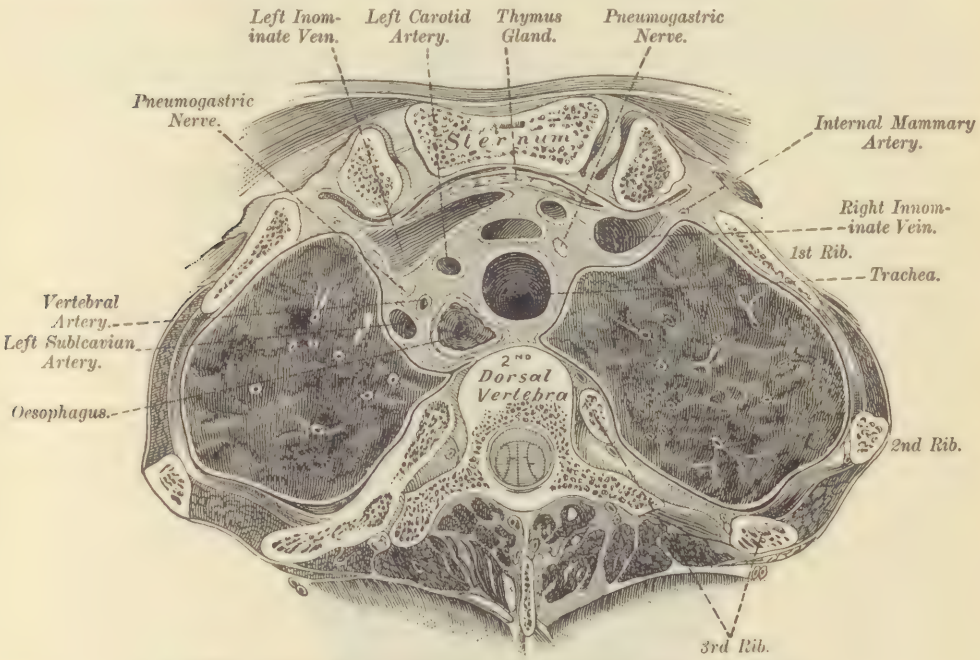


FIG. 989.—Transverse section through the second dorsal vertebra. (Braune.)

The Middle Mediastinum (Fig. 983).—The middle mediastinum is the broadest part of the interpleural space. It contains the heart enclosed in the pericardium, the ascending aorta, the lower half of the superior vena cava, with the vena azygos major opening into it, the bifurcation of the trachea and the two bronchi, the pulmonary artery dividing into its two branches and the right and left pulmonary veins, the phrenic nerves, and some bronchial lymphatic glands.

The Posterior Mediastinum (Figs. 983 and 987).—The posterior mediastinum is an irregular triangular space running parallel with the vertebral column; it is bounded in front by the pericardium and roots of the lungs, behind by the vertebral column from the lower border of the fourth dorsal vertebra, and on either side by the pleura. It contains the descending thoracic aorta, the greater and lesser azygos veins, the pneumogastric and splanchnic nerves, the oesophagus, thoracic duct, and some lymphatic glands.

Blood-vessels.—The areolar tissue of the anterior mediastinum receives numerous **mediastinal branches from the internal mammary artery.** The areolar tissue of the posterior mediastinum receives **mediastinal branches from the descending thoracic aorta.** The lowest mediastinal vessels lie upon the Diaphragm and are called **superior phrenic arteries.** The **vena cava** and **internal mammary veins** receive **mediastinal branches.**

The **anterior mediastinal lymphatic glands** are in the upper portion of the anterior mediastinum. They are five or six in number and are placed in front of the transverse arch of the aorta. Chains of glands run up from them to the root of the neck. On the right side glands are in front of the right innominate vein, between the artery and vein and behind the artery. On the left side they are around the left common carotid and left subclavian arteries.[1]

The **posterior mediastinal glands** are around the oesophagus, particularly in front of it. The **peritracheo-bronchial glands** have been described.

THE LUNGS (PULMONES) (Figs. 983, 990, 991, 992, 993, 994, 995).

The lungs are the essential organs of respiration; they are two in number, placed one on each side of the chest, separated from each other by the heart and other contents of the mediastinum. A healthy lung hangs free within the pleural

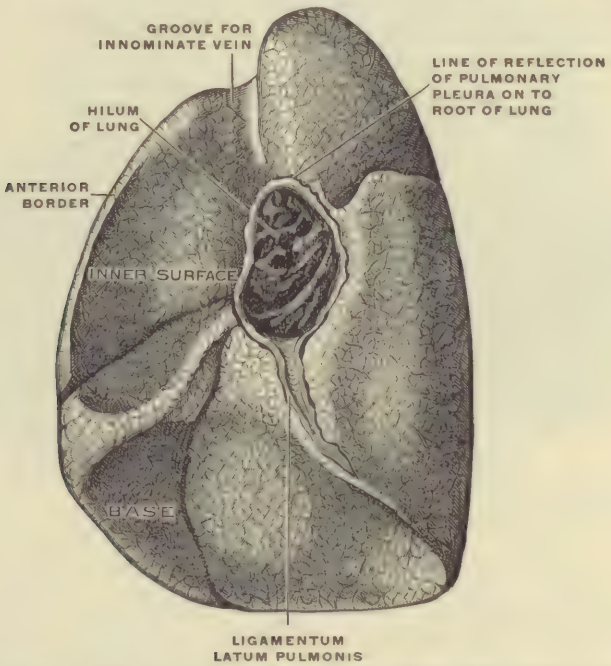


FIG. 990.—The right lung. The inner or mediastinal surface, with the hilum laid bare by the removal of the structures forming the root of the lung. (Toldt.)

cavity. It is suspended by the root and by the ligamentum pulmonis. In many cases examined the lung does not hang free, but, as a result of former pleurisy, an area of the pulmonary pleura is adherent to the parietal pleura. Each lung is conical in shape, and presents for examination an **apex,** a **base,** two **borders,** and two **surfaces.**

The Apex (*apex pulmonis*).—The apex forms a tapering cone which extends into the root of the neck about an inch to two inches above the level of the anterior

[1] Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare on the Lymphatics. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

extremity of the first rib. The brachial plexus is in close proximity to this portion of the lung.

The Base (*basis pulmonis*).—The base is broad, concave, and rests, by its **diaphragmatic surface** (*facies diaphragmatica*), upon the convex surface of the Diaphragm, which separates the right lung from the upper surface of the right lobe of the liver and the left lung from the upper surface of the left lobe of the liver, the fundus of the stomach, and spleen; its circumference is thin, and projects for some distance into the phrenico-costal sinus of the pleura, between the lower ribs and the costal attachment of the Diaphragm, extending lower down externally and behind than in front.

Surfaces. The External, Costal or Thoracic Surface (*facies costalis*) (Figs. 994 and 995).—The external, costal, or thoracic surface is smooth, convex, of considerable extent, and corresponds to the form of the cavity of the chest, being deeper behind than in front. In a hardened specimen this surface has grooves and bulgings on it, corresponding to the ribs and intercostal spaces.

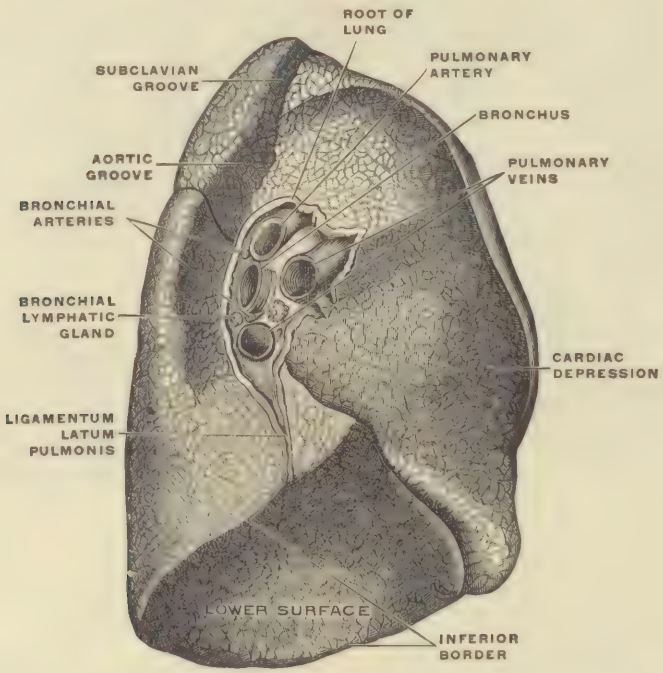


FIG. 991.—The left lung. The inner or mediastinal surface, with the root of the lung cut across. (Toldt.)

The Inner or Mediastinal Surface (*facies mediastinalis*) (Figs. 990 and 991).—The inner or mediastinal surface is concave. It presents in front a depression corresponding to the convex surface of the pericardium, and behind a deep fissure, the **hilum** (*hilus pulmonalis*). In the hilum lie the bronchi, vessels, nerves, and lymph-nodes, which together constitute the **root of the lung**. On the inner and anterior surface, a little below the apex, is a groove, the **subclavian groove** (*sulcus subclavius*), for the subclavian artery. A little lower is a broader and shallower groove for the innominate and subclavian veins. The pleura lies between the lungs and these vessels. In front of the hilum and below it is a depression for the heart (*impressio cardiaca*). It is deeper on the left than on the right side. On the right side it passes into the groove from the superior vena cava and the vena azygos major. On the left side, behind the hilum, is a groove for the thoracic aorta; on the right side a groove for the oesophagus.

Borders. **The Inferior Border** (*margo inferior*).—The inferior border is the line of junction of the costal and diaphragmatic surfaces. Posteriorly, it is rounded and broad, and is received into the deep concavity on either side of the spinal column (Fig. 996). It is much longer than the anterior border, and projects, below, into the phrenico-costal sinus.

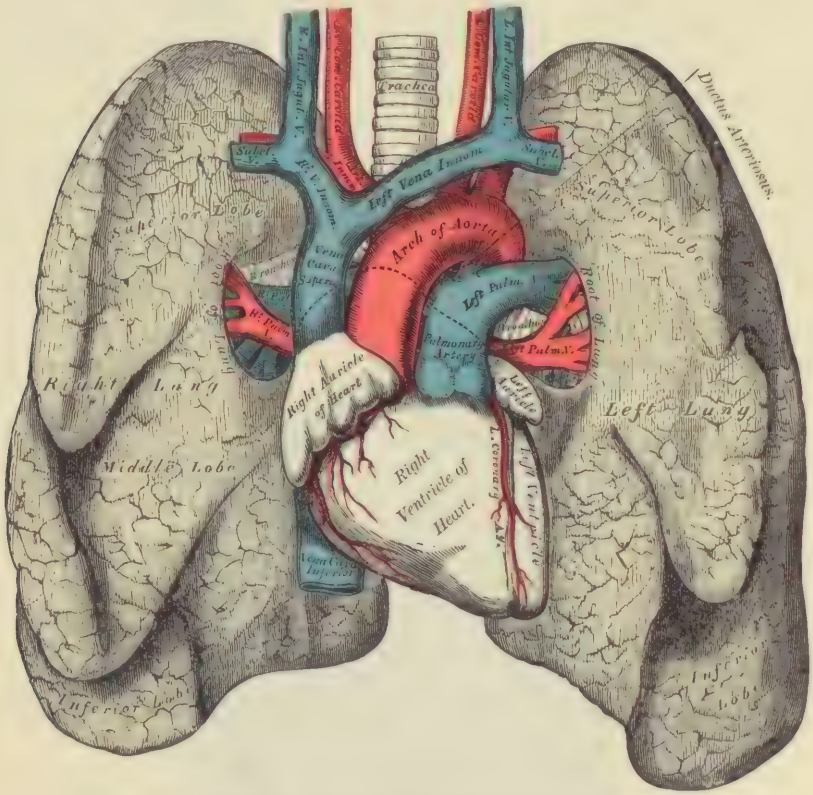


FIG. 992.—Front view of the heart and lungs.

The Anterior Border (*margo anterior*).—The anterior border is thin and sharp, overlaps the front of the pericardium, and is projected into the costo-mediastinal sinus of the pleura. The anterior border of the right lung is almost vertical; that of the left presents, below, an angular notch, the **incisura cardiaca**, into which the heart and pericardium are received. A projection from the upper lobe comes forward beneath the cardiac notch; it is called the **lingula pulmonis**.

The Lobes of the Lungs (Figs. 994 and 995).—Each lung is divided into two lobes, an **upper** (*lobus superior*) and a **lower** (*lobus inferior*), by a long and deep fissure (*incisura interlobaris*), which extends from the upper part of the posterior border of the organ about three inches from its apex, downward and forward to the lowest part of the lung just external to its anterior border. This fissure penetrates nearly to the root. The upper lobe is the smaller; the lower lobe is the larger. In the right lung the upper lobe is partially subdivided by a second and shorter fissure, which extends almost horizontally forward from the middle of the preceding to the anterior margin of the organ, marking off a small triangular portion, the **middle lobe** (*lobus medius*).

The right lung is the larger and heavier; it is broader than the left, owing to the inclination of the heart to the left side; it is also shorter by an inch, in

consequence of the Diaphragm rising higher on the right side to accommodate the liver.

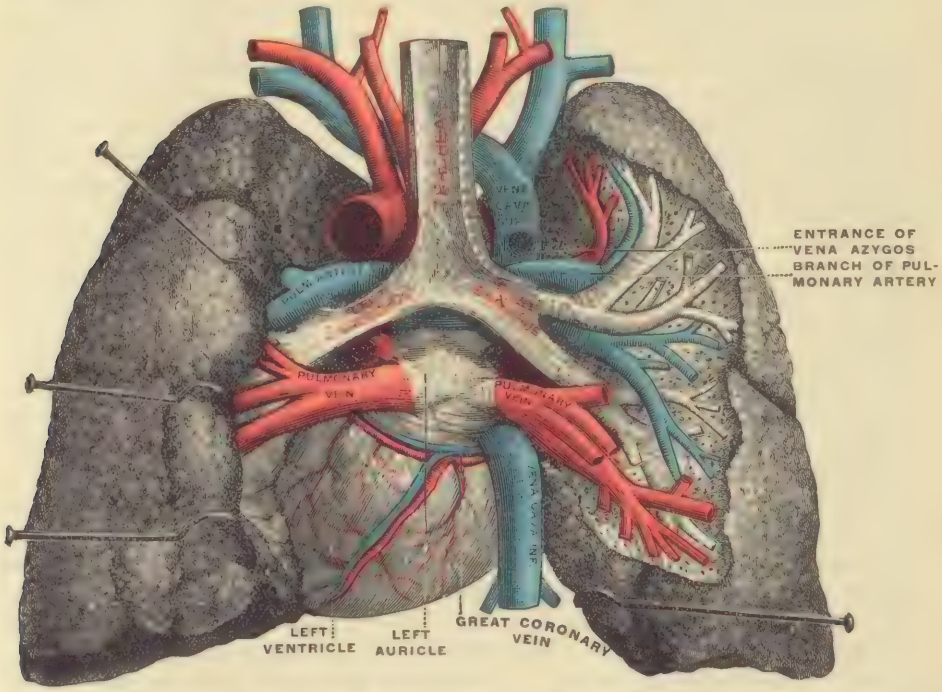


FIG. 993.—Pulmonary veins, seen in a dorsal view of the heart and lungs. The lungs have been pulled away from the median line, and a part of the right lung has been cut away to display the air-ducts and blood-vessels. (Testut.)

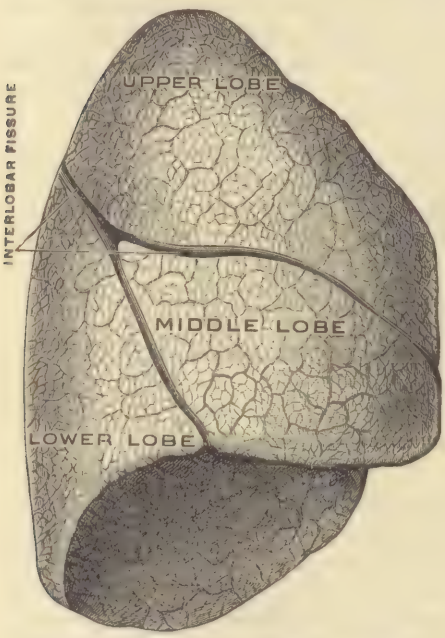


FIG. 994.—The right lung. The outer or costal surface. (Toldt.)

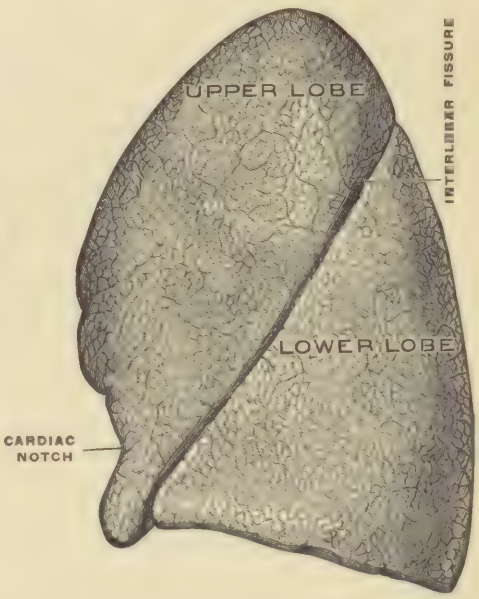


FIG. 995.—The left lung. The outer or costal surface. (Toldt.)

The Root of the Lung (*radix pulmonis*) (Figs. 990, 991, 992, and 993).—A little above the middle of the inner surface of each lung, and nearer its posterior

than its anterior border, is its root, by which the lung is connected to the heart and the trachea. The root is formed by the bronchial tube, the pulmonary artery, the pulmonary veins, the bronchial arteries and veins, the pulmonary plexus of nerves, lymphatics, bronchial glands, and areolar tissue, all of which are enclosed by a reflection of the pleura. The root of the right lung lies behind the superior vena cava and ascending portion of the aorta, and below the vena azygos major. The root of the left lung passes beneath the arch of the aorta and in front of the descending aorta; the phrenic nerve and the anterior pulmonary plexus lie in front of each, and the pneumogastric and posterior pulmonary plexus behind each.

The chief structures composing the root of each lung are arranged in a similar manner from before backward on both sides—viz., the two pulmonary veins in front; the pulmonary artery in the middle; and the bronchus, together with the bronchial vessels, behind. From above downward, on the two sides, their arrangement differs, thus:

On the right side their position is—bronchus, pulmonary artery, pulmonary veins; but on the left side their position is—pulmonary artery, bronchus, pulmonary veins. It should be noted that the entire right bronchus does not lie above the right pulmonary artery, but only its eparterial branch (see p. 1377), which passes to the upper lobe of the right lung; the divisions of the bronchus for the middle and lower lobes lie below the artery.

The **weight** of both lungs together is about forty-two ounces, the right lung being two ounces heavier than the left; but much variation is met with according to the amount of blood or serous fluid they may contain. The lungs are heavier in the male than in the female, their proportion to the body being in the former as 1 to 37, in the latter as 1 to 43. The specific gravity of the lung-tissue varies from 0.345 to 0.746, water being 1.000.

The **color** of the lungs at birth is a pinkish-white; in adult life a dark slate-color, mottled in patches; and as age advances this mottling assumes a black color. The coloring matter consists of granules of a carbonaceous substance deposited in the areolar tissue near the surface of the organ. It increases in quantity as age advances, and is more abundant in males than in females. The posterior surface of the lung is usually darker than the anterior.

The **surface** of the lung is smooth, shining, and marked out into numerous polyhedral spaces, indicating the lobules of the organ; the area of each of these spaces is crossed by numerous lighter lines.

The **substance** of the lung is of a light, porous, spongy texture; it floats in water and crepitates when handled, owing to the presence of air in the tissue; it is also highly elastic; hence the collapsed state of these organs when they are removed from the closed cavity of the thorax.

The Fœtal Lung.—After respiration has been established, the lung fills the pleural cavity. In the fœtus, as the lung has never been distended with air and has never received a large amount of blood, it is gathered into a small mass at the back of the thorax. It will sink in water and feels solid to the touch.

Structure.—The structure of the lung is such that the blood brought by the pulmonary artery comes into close relation with the air which enters from the bronchioles. The blood gives materials to the air, and the air gives elements to the blood, and the process of respiration causes the dark blood brought from the heart by the pulmonary artery to return to the heart as red blood in the pulmonary vein. The lungs are composed of an **external serous coat, a subserous areolar tissue**, and the **pulmonary substance** or **parenchyma.**

The Serous Coat.—The serous coat is thin, transparent, and invests the entire organ as far as the root. It is known as the pulmonary pleura (p. 1384).

The Subserous Areolar Tissue.—The subserous areolar tissue contains a large proportion of elastic fibres; it invests the entire surface of the lung, and extends inward between the lobules, and at the hilum forms the pulmonary scaffold or framework.

The Parenchyma.—The parenchyma is composed of **lobules** which, although closely connected together by an interlobular areolar tissue, are quite distinct from one another, and may be teased asunder without much difficulty in the fœtus. The lobules vary in size; those on the surface are large, of pyramidal form, with the bases turned toward the surface; those in the interior are smaller and of various forms. Each lobule is composed of one of the ramifications of a bronchial tube and its terminal air-cells, and of the ramifications of the pulmonary and bronchial vessels, lymphatics, and nerves, all of these structures being connected together by areolar tissue.

The Bronchus (pp. 1377 and 1378) (Figs. 980, 981, and 982).—The bronchus, upon entering the substance of the lung, divides and subdivides bipinnately, throughout the entire organ. Sometimes three branches arise together, and occasionally small lateral branches are given off from the sides of a main trunk. Each of the smaller subdivisions of the bronchi enters a pulmonary lobule, and is termed a **lobular bronchial tube** or **bronchiole** (*bronchioli*). Each bronchiole divides into minute branches (*bronchioli respiratorii*), the walls of which now begin to present irregular dilatations, **bronchial alveoli.** These are present at first sparingly and on one side of the tube only, but as it proceeds onward these dilatations become more numerous and surround the tube on all sides, so that it loses its cylindrical character. The terminal branches come from the bronchioli respiratorii. These terminal branches are called the **alveolar ducts** or **alveolar passages** (*ductuli alveolares*). The alveolar ducts show numerous alveoli (Fig. 981) and join with cavities called **atria.** Each atrium joins several larger cavities, the **air-cells** or **air-sacs** (*infundibula*). The numerous small cavities on the surface of the air-sacs are the **pulmonary alveoli** (*alveoli pulmonis*). The bronchiole now becomes widened out and terminates in an irregular cul-de-sac, the **air cell, air sac alveolus** or **infundibulum.** The walls of the infundibulum are closely beset in all directions by **pulmonary alveoli** or **pulmonary air cells.** Professor Gerrish remarks that the first of the alveoli seen on the bronchioles before the coreal ends are formed would seem an effort on the part of nature to form an infundibulum before all the necessary conditions are favorable.

Changes in the Structure of the Bronchi in the Lungs.—Within the lungs the bronchial tubes are circular, not flattened (Fig. 982), and present certain peculiarities of structure.

In the Lobes of the Lungs.—In the lobes of the lungs the following changes take place: The **cartilages** are not imperfect rings, but consist of thin laminæ, of varied form and size, scattered irregularly along the sides of the tube, being most distinct at the points of division of the bronchi. They may be traced into tubes, the diameter of each of which is only one-fourth of a line. Beyond this point the tubes are wholly membranous. The **fibrous coat** is continued into the smallest ramifications of the bronchi. The **muscular coat** is disposed in the form of a continuous layer of annular fibres, which may be traced upon the smallest bronchial tubes, and consists of the unstriped variety of muscular tissue. The **mucous membrane** lines the bronchi and their ramifications throughout, and is covered with columnar ciliated epithelium.

In the Lobules of the Lung.—In the lobular bronchial tubes and in the infundibula the following changes take place: The **muscular tissue** begins to disappear, so that in the infundibula there is scarcely a trace of it. The **fibrous coat** becomes thinner, and degenerates into areolar tissue. The **epithelium** becomes non-ciliated and flattened. This occurs gradually; thus, in the lobular bronchioles

patches of non-ciliated flattened epithelium may be found scattered among the columnar ciliated epithelium; then these patches of non-ciliated flattened epithelium become more and more numerous, until in the infundibula and air-cells all the epithelium is of the non-ciliated pavement variety. In addition to these flattened cells, there are small polygonal granular cells in the air-sacs, in clusters of two or three, between the others.

The air-cells are small, polyhedral recesses composed of a fibrillated connective tissue and surrounded by a few involuntary muscular and elastic fibres. Free in their cavity are to be seen under the microscope granular, rounded, amœboid cells (eosinophile leukocytes), often containing carbonaceous particles. The air-cells are well seen on the surface of the lung, and vary from $\frac{1}{200}$ to $\frac{1}{70}$ of an inch in diameter, being largest on the surface at the thin borders and at the apex, and smallest in the interior.

Mucous Glands.—In the larger bronchi the mucous membrane contains goblet cells. When the tubes diminish to 1 mm. in diameter the glands grow fewer. In the smaller bronchi there are no mucous glands.

Vessels of the Lungs.—The **pulmonary artery** (Figs. 992 and 993) conveys the venous blood to the lungs; it divides into branches which accompany the bronchial tubes, and terminates in a dense capillary network upon the walls of the intercellular passages and air-cells. In the lung the branches of the pulmonary artery are usually above and in front of a bronchial tube, the vein below.

The **pulmonary capillaries** form plexuses which lie immediately beneath the mucous membrane in the walls and septa of the air-cells and of the infundibula. In the septa between the air-cells the capillary network forms a single layer. The capillaries form a very minute network, the meshes of which are smaller than the vessels themselves;[1] their walls are also exceedingly thin. The arteries of neighboring lobules are independent of each other, but the veins freely anastomose together.

The **pulmonary veins** commence in the pulmonary capillaries, the radicles coalescing into larger branches, which run along through the substance of the lung, independently from the minute arteries and bronchi. After freely communicating with other branches they form large vessels, which ultimately come into relation with the arteries and bronchial tubes, and accompany them to the hilum of the organ. Finally they open into the left auricle of the heart, conveying oxygenated blood to be eventually distributed to all parts of the body by the aorta.

The **bronchial arteries** supply blood for the nutrition of the lung. The thoracic aorta usually gives off two left bronchial arteries. The single right bronchial artery usually arises from the first right aortic intercostal, but sometimes from the superior left bronchial artery, or from the aorta. In the root of the lung they are posterior to the bronchus, they accompany the bronchial tubes, supply the tubes and pulmonary tissue, and give branches to the walls of the larger pulmonary vessels, the oesophagus, pericardium, and bronchial glands. Those supplying the bronchial tubes form a capillary plexus in the muscular coat, from which branches are given off to form a second plexus in the mucous coat. This plexus communicates with branches of the pulmonary artery, and empties itself into the pulmonary vein. Others are distributed in the interlobular areolar tissue, and terminate partly in the deep, partly in the superficial, bronchial veins. Lastly, some ramify upon the surface of the lung beneath the pleura, where they form a capillary network. There may be but one bronchial artery; there may be three or four.

The **bronchial veins** are not found in the walls of the very small bronchi. The small bronchial veins run along by the front and back of the median sized and

[1] The meshes are only 0.002‴ to 0.008‴ in width, while the vessels are 0.003‴ to 0.005‴ (Kölliker, Human Microscopic Anatomy).—Ed. of 15th English edition.

larger tubes, and from two trunks at the root of each lung. These vessels terminate on the right side in the vena azygos major, and on the left side in the superior intercostal or left upper azygos vein. Tracheal and posterior mediastinal veins open into the bronchial veins. The venous blood from the smaller tubes passes to the pulmonary veins.

The **lymphatics** begin in networks about the lobules and form networks about the bronchi and beneath the bronchial mucous membrane. The superficial collecting trunks arise about the lobules and beneath the pleura. According to Sappey, the superficial trunks from the upper lobe begin on the costal surface; one set passes around the anterior border, another set around the posterior border, and a third into the incisura interlobaris. The same observer says that the superficial trunks from the middle lobe unites with the trunks from the upper and lower lobes; and the superficial trunks from the lower lobe, like those of the upper lobe, are in three sets. One set passes around the posterior margin, one around the anterior margin, and one into the incisura interlobaris. All of the superficial trunks convey lymph to the glands of the hilum. Some of the deep collecting trunks begin by the sides of the small bronchi; others course along by the pulmonary veins or pulmonary arteries. All of them pass to the glands of the hilum. The glands of the hilum are in communication with the peritracheo-bronchial glands.[1]

Nerves.—The lungs are supplied from the **anterior** and **posterior pulmonary plexuses,** formed chiefly by branches from the **sympathetic** and **pneumogastric.** The filaments from these plexuses accompany the bronchial tubes, and are lost upon them. Small ganglia are found upon these nerves.

Surface Form.—The apex of the lung is situated in the neck, behind the interval between the two heads of origin of the Sterno-mastoid muscle. The height to which it rises above the clavicle varies very considerably, but is generally about one inch. It may, however, extend as much as an inch and a half or an inch and three-quarters, or, on the other hand, it may scarcely project above the level of this bone. In order to mark out the anterior margin of the lung, a line is to be drawn from the apex-point, one inch above the level of the clavicle, and rather nearer the posterior than the anterior border of the Sterno-mastoid muscle, downward and inward across the sterno-clavicular articulation and first piece of the sternum until it meets, or almost meets, its fellow of the other side opposite the articulation of the manubrium and gladiolus. From this point the two lines are to be drawn downward, one on either side of the mesial line and close to it, as far as the level of the articulation of the fourth costal cartilages to the sternum. From here the two lines diverge; the left is to be drawn at first passing outward with a slight inclination downward, and then taking a bend downward with a slight inclination outward to the apex of the heart, and thence to the sixth costo-chondral articulation. The direction of the anterior border of this part of the left lung is denoted with sufficient accuracy by a curved line with its convexity directed upward and outward from the articulation of the fourth right costal cartilage of the sternum to the fifth intercostal space, an inch and a half below and three-quarters of an inch internal to the left nipple. The continuation of the anterior border of the right lung is marked by a prolongation of its line from the level of the fourth costal cartilages vertically downward as far as the sixth, when it slopes off along the line of the sixth costal cartilage to its articulation with the rib.

The lower border of the lung is marked out by a slightly curved line with its convexity downward from the articulation of the sixth costal cartilage to its rib to the spinous process of the tenth dorsal vertebra. If vertical lines are drawn downward from the nipple, the mid-axillary line, and the apex of the scapula, while the arms are raised from the sides, they should intersect this convex line, the first at the sixth, the second at the eighth, and the third at the tenth rib. It will thus be seen that the pleura extends farther down than the lung, so that it may be wounded, and a wound may pass through its cavity into the Diaphragm, and the abdominal viscera may be injured without the lung being involved.

The posterior border of the lung is indicated by a line drawn from the level of the spinous process of the seventh cervical vertebra, down either side of the spine, corresponding to the costo-vertebral joints as low as the spinous process of the tenth dorsal vertebra. The trachea bifurcates opposite the spinous process of the fourth dorsal vertebra, and from this point the two bronchi are directed outward.

"The position of the great fissure of the lungs may be indicated by a line drawn from the third

[1] The Lymphatics, by Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

dorsal spine obliquely downward in such a manner as to reach the sixth rib close to the mid-clavicular line. The interlobar fissure between the upper and middle lobes of the right lung corresponds to a line drawn from the apex of the axilla almost horizontally to the sternum, reaching the latter at about the level of the fourth costal cartilage" (Erendrath).

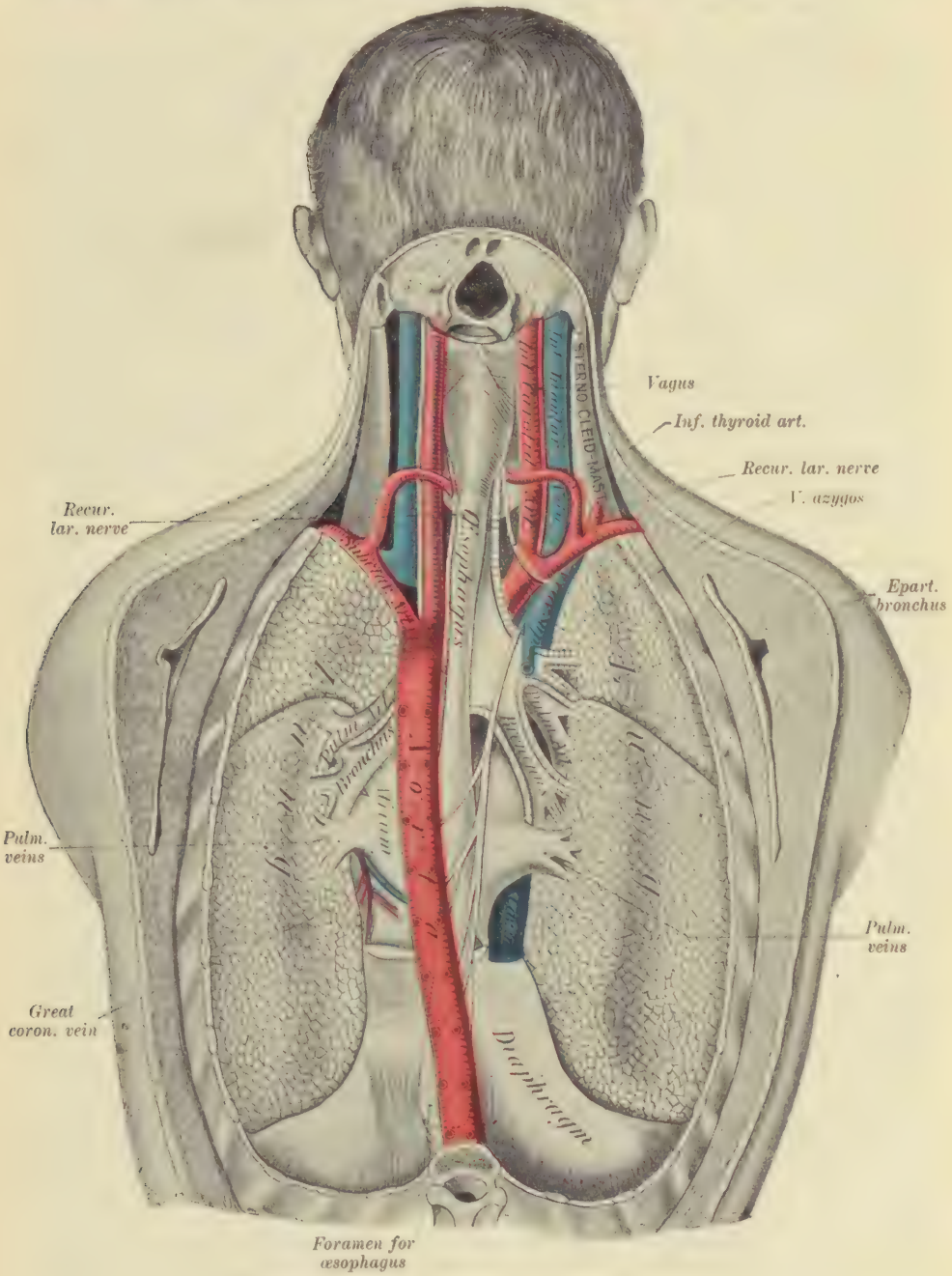


FIG. 996.—Thoracic contents seen from behind. (Joessel.)

Surgical Anatomy.—The lungs may be wounded or torn in three ways: (1) By compression of the chest, without any injury to the ribs. (2) By a fractured rib penetrating the lung. (3) By stabs, gunshot wounds, etc.

The first form, where the lung is *ruptured by external compression* without any fracture of the ribs, is very rare, and usually occurs in young children, and affects the root of the lung—*i. e.*, the most fixed part—and thus, implicating the great vessels, is frequently fatal. It would seem to be a most unusual injury, and the exact mode of its causation is difficult to understand. The probable explanation is that immediately before the compression is applied a deep inspiration is taken and the lungs are fully inflated; owing then to spasm of the glottis at the moment of compression, the air is unable to escape from the lung, the lung is not able to recede, and consequently gives way.

In the second variety, when the *wound* in the lung is produced by the *penetration of a broken rib*, both the pleura costalis and the pleura pulmonalis must necessarily be injured, and consequently the air taken into the wounded air-cells may find its way through these wounds into the cellular tissue of the parietes of the chest. This it may do without collecting in the pleural cavity; the two layers of the pleura are so intimately in contact that the air may pass straight through from the wounded lung into the subcutaneous tissue. *Emphysema* constitutes, therefore, an important sign of injury to the lung in cases of fracture of the ribs. *Pneumothorax*, or air in the pleural cavity, is much more likely to occur in injuries to the lung of the third variety; that is to say, from *external wounds*, from stabs and gunshot injuries, in which cases air passes either from the wound of the lung or from an external wound into the cavity of the pleura during the respiratory movements. In these cases there is generally no emphysema of the subcutaneous tissue unless the external wound is small and valvular, so that the air drawn into the wound during inspiration is then forced into the cellular tissue around during expiration because it cannot escape from the external wound. Occasionally in wounds of the parietes of the chest no air finds its way into the cavity of the pleura, because the lung at the time of the accident protrudes through the wound and blocks the opening. This occurs where the wound is large, and constitutes a so-called *hernia* of the lung. *True hernia* of the lung occurs, though very rarely, after wounds of the chest-wall, when the wound has healed and the cicatrix subsequently yields from the pressure of the viscus behind. It forms a globular, elastic, crepitating swelling, which enlarges during expiratory efforts, falls during inspiration, and disappears on holding the breath. Wounds of the lung may produce dangerous or fatal *hemorrhage* into the pleural sac. In many cases the bleeding is spontaneously arrested; in others the surgeon must interfere to save life. In some cases air has been admitted by intercostal incision and the insertion of a tube, and pulmonary collapse has arrested bleeding. In other cases it is necessary to resect portions of several ribs, and stop bleeding by ligatures or suture ligatures. In one case of a furious secondary hemorrhage following a gunshot wound, the editor resected several ribs, packed the pleural cavity about the lung with sterile gauze, to obtain a base of support, and then arrested the bleeding by packing iodoform gauze against the firmly supported lung. This patient recovered.

Incision of the lung (*pneumotomy*) is performed for pulmonary abscess (either tuberculous or pyogenic), pulmonary gangrene, hydatid cysts, and bronchiectasis. In pulmonary abscess, locate the area by physical signs and the *x*-ray, resect a portion of a rib over it, and note if the pleura is adherent. If it is adherent, continue the operation. If it is not adherent, insert stitches of catgut through the two layers of pleura and the superficial part of the lung, so as to encircle a considerable area, and then wait several days for adhesions to form. Adhesions protect the pleura from infection, and, by keeping air from the pleural sac, prevent pneumothorax. When ready to continue the operation, locate the abscess with an aspirating-needle and syringe, open it with a cautery at a dull-red heat, and drain by means of a tube.

Pneumotomy is very unsatisfactory in tuberculous cavities and bronchiectasis. In tuberculosis, excision of the diseased area (*pneumectomy*) has been employed, but it is not to be advised.

THE DUCTLESS GLANDS.

THESE glands do not possess excretory ducts. They furnish materials which are added to the blood or lymph as it passes through them. The material from each gland is known as an **internal secretion.** Some of these secretions are powerful materials and influence profoundly the body nutrition. The ductless glands are usually given as follows: the **spleen**, the **lymphatic glands**, the **pineal gland**, the **pituitary body**, the **suprarenal capsules**, the **thyroid gland**, the **para-thyroids**, the **thymus**, the **carotid body**, and the **coccygeal body.** The **lymphatic glands** were described in a special section (p. 772). The lymphatic glands are not considered to be really glands, but, nevertheless, as lymph passes through the lymph glands, it receives a product of the glands, namely, lymphocytes. There is no evidence that the **spleen** furnishes an active internal secretion, and this organ has been studied with the abdominal viscera. The **pineal gland** (p. 905) and **pituitary body** (p. 882) were considered with the brain. The **suprarenal capsules** (p. 1428) are described with the kidneys. Some glands, for instance, the **liver, pancreas** and **testicle,** have an external secretion and also an internal secretion.

THE THYROID BODY OR GLAND (GLANDULA THYREOIDEA) (Fig. 997).

The thyroid gland is an extremely vascular body, situated at the front and sides of the neck, and extending upward upon each side of the larynx. It is a single gland, varying greatly in size in different individuals. It is larger relatively in females and in children than in men. It is frequently asymmetrical. In early embryonal life the gland has a duct, the **thyro-glossal duct** (*ductus thyreoglossus*), which passes from the isthmus of the thyroid to the foramen caecum of the dorsum of the tongue. The lumen of this duct is obliterated early and becomes a cord of epithelium. The lower portion of the duct often remains open for a little way. The upper portion remains as the foramen caecum. The situation of this obliterated fœtal duct may be marked by the **third** or **middle lobe** of the thyroid gland. The thyroid surrounds the upper portion of the trachea like a horseshoe. It consists of two lateral lobes connected across the middle line by a narrow transverse portion, the **isthmus.**

The **weight** of the gland is somewhat variable, but is usually about one ounce. It is somewhat heavier in the female, in whom it becomes enlarged during menstruation and pregnancy. As age advances the weight of the thyroid diminishes.

The **color** of the thyroid, as seen from the surface, is reddish-blue. The gland is surrounded by a closely adherent thin connective-tissue capsule of the **pre-tracheal layer of deep cervical fascia.** From the inner surface of the capsule come delicate septa, which enter into the thyroid body and separate it into lobes and also separate the lobes into lobules. The blood-vessels lie beneath the capsule. The anterior and lateral portions of the gland are covered by the capsule. "Passing around the side of the gland to its posterior surface, this capsule then splits into two portions. One remains in contact with the gland and invests its posterior surface. The other, the thicker of the two, passes to the posterior surface of the pharynx

and oesophagus, thus enclosing them with the larynx, trachea, and thyroid gland, in a common sheath."[1]

The **lateral lobes** are conical in shape, the apex of each being directed upward and outward as far as the junction of the middle with the lower third of the thyroid cartilage; the base looks downward, and is on a level with the fifth or sixth tracheal ring. The summit of the lateral lobe not unusually is pointed and reaches to the level of the oblique line upon the ala of the thyroid cartilage or even higher. The right is, as a rule, somewhat larger than the left lobe. The lower portion of the gland, when the head is extended, is about one inch above the upper margin of the sternum; when the head is flexed, it is at the level of the upper border of the sternum or even below and behind it. The portion of the lateral lobe above the level of the superior border of the isthmus is called the **upper horn,** the portion below the level of the inferior margin of the isthmus is called the **lower horn.** The lower horn "is usually much smaller than the upper horn; frequently it is altogether absent."[2] At the inner and posterior part of each lateral lobe is the **hilum.** At the hilum the inferior thyroid artery passes into the gland. "Here the **recurrent laryngeal nerve** comes into close contact with the gland, lying in the space between it and the trachea and oesophagus."[3]

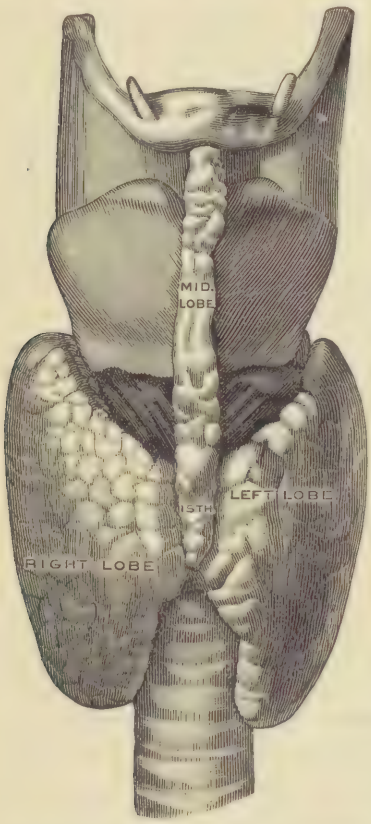


FIG. 997.—The thyroid gland. (Spalteholz.)

The **external** or **superficial surface** is convex, and covered by the skin, the superficial fascia, the deep fascia, the Sterno-mastoid, the anterior belly of the Omo-hyoid, the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles, and beneath the last-named muscles by the pre-tracheal layer of the deep fascia, which forms a capsule for the gland.

The **deep** or **internal surface** is moulded over the underlying structures—viz., the thyroid and cricoid cartilages, the trachea, the inferior constrictor and posterior part of the Crico-thyroid muscles, the oesophagus (particularly on the left side of the neck), the superior and inferior thyroid arteries, and the recurrent laryngeal nerves.

The deep surface of each lobe is fixed by bands of fibrous tissue passing from the capsule of the isthmus and lateral lobes to the sides of the cricoid cartilage and the posterior fascia of the trachea. These bands are called the **lateral** or **suspensory ligaments.** Because of this fixation to the larynx and trachea by the capsule and by the lateral ligaments, the thyroid gland moves with the trachea and ascends during the act of swallowing. The recurrent laryngeal nerve on each side is in contact with the outer and posterior surface of the suspensory ligament.

The **anterior border** is thin, and inclines obliquely from above downward and inward toward the middle line of the neck, while the **posterior border** is thick and overlaps the common carotid artery. Each lobe is about two inches in length, its greatest width is about one inch and a quarter, and its thickness about three-quarters of an inch. The posterior border is over the common carotid artery and

[1] Diseases of the Thyroid Gland. By James Berry. [2] Ibid. [3] Ibid.

touches the œsophagus and pharynx. The carotid artery usually makes a groove upon the gland.

The Isthmus (*isthmus glandulae thyreoidea*).—The isthmus connects the lower third of the two lateral lobes; it measures about half an inch in breadth and the same in depth, and usually covers the second and third rings of the trachea, but sometimes also the first and fourth rings. Its situation presents, however, many variations, a point of importance in the operation of tracheotomy. In the middle line of the neck it is covered by the skin and fascia, and close to the middle line, on either side, by the Sterno-hyoid muscle. Across its upper border run branches of the superior thyroid artery and vein; at its lower border is a branch of the inferior thyroid veins. Sometimes the isthmus is altogether wanting, the two lateral lobes being completely separate.

The **third, pyramidal** or **middle lobe** is called the **pyramid of Lalouette.** It is not constant, but is frequently found. Occasionally it arises from the upper part of the isthmus, or from the adjacent portion of either lobe, but most commonly from the left lobe, and ascends in front of the thyroid cartilage in the direction of the middle of the hyoid bone. It may reach the bone or may not reach it. If it reaches the bone it is attached to it. If it does not reach the bone, fibrous tissue, which often contains muscle, is prolonged from the tip of the pyramid to the back of the bone or to the thyro-hyoid membrane. The pyramid is occasionally quite detached, or divided into two or more parts, or altogether wanting.

A few muscular bands, derived from the Thyro-hyoid muscles, are occasionally found attached, above, to the body of the hyoid bone, and below to the isthmus of the gland or its pyramidal process. These form a muscle, which was named by Soemmerring the **Levator glandulae thyreoidae.**

Accessory Thyroids (*glandulae thyreoideae accessoriae*).—Frequently small isolated masses of thyroid tissue exist. They are found particularly about the lateral lobes of the thyroid gland in the sides of the neck or just above the hyoid bone, and are called **accessory thyroids.** Accessory thyroids may also exist by the side of the pyramidal lobe or upon the trachea, as low even as the level of the arch of the aorta. These isolated portions of gland tissue represent isolated portions of the median thyroid rudiment. Sometimes accessory thyroid tissue is found in the root of the tongue or in the interior of the larynx. Berry points out that a distinction must be made between true congenital accessory thyroids and masses of encapsuled thyroid tissue which "have been extruded from the gland."

Structure of the Thyroid (Fig. 998).—The thyroid body is invested by a thin capsule of connective tissue which projects into its substance as a framework and imperfectly divides it into masses of irregular form and size, known as lobules. More slender septa separate the secretory alveoli from one another. When the organ is cut into, it is of a brownish-red color, and is seen to be made up of a number of closed vesicles or alveoli containing a yellow glairy fluid and separated from each other by intermediate connective tissue.

According to Baber, who has published some important observations on the minute structure of the thyroid,[1] the vesicles of the thyroid of the adult animal are generally closed cavities; but in some young animals (*e. g.*, young dogs) the vesicles are more or less tubular and branched. This appearance he supposes to be due to the mode of growth of the gland, and merely indicating that an increase in the number of vesicles is taking place. Each vesicle is lined by a single layer of epithelium, the cells of which are cubical or cylindrical. Between the epithelial cells exists a delicate reticulum. The vesicles are of various sizes and shapes, and contain as a normal product a viscid, homogeneous, semi-fluid, slightly yellowish material which frequently contains blood, the red corpuscles of

[1] Researches on the Minute Structure of the Thyroid Glands, Phil. Trans., part iii., 1881

which are found in it in various stages of disintegration and decolorization, the yellow tinge being probably due to the hæmoglobin, which is thus set free from the colored corpuscles. This normal product is known as **colloid material**, and it is secreted by the epithelium. What part if any the colloid plays in the formation of the internal secretion of the gland is not known. It is quite possible that the colloid corresponds to the external secretion of glands with ducts and that the true internal secretion passes directly into the capillaries which form a network about the alveoli (Szymonowicz), or passes into the lymphatics. In the thyroid gland of the dog, Baber has found large round cells, **parenchymatous cells**, each provided with a single oval-shaped nucleus, which migrate into the interior of the gland-vesicles. Between the thyroid vesicles in the human being are collections of **round cells**. They are, in reality, miniature vesicles, and are much more numerous in youth than in old age.

The capillary blood-vessels form a dense plexus in the connective tissue around the vesicles, between the epithelium of the vesicles and the endothelium of the **lymph-spaces**, which latter surround a greater or smaller part of the circumference

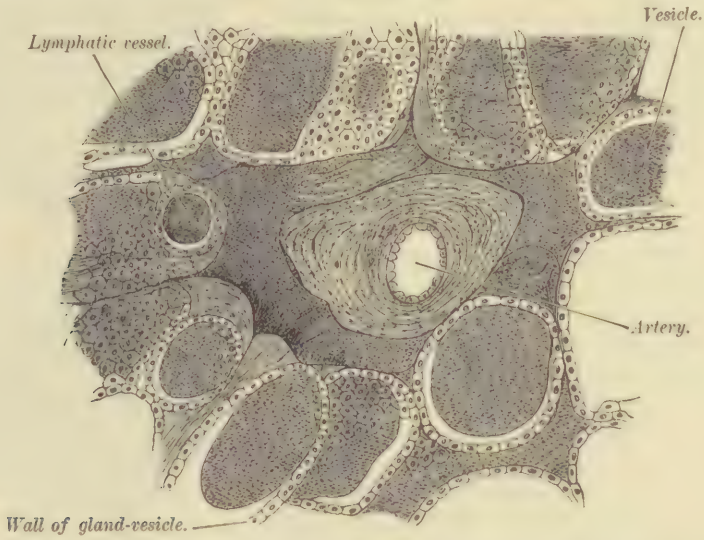


FIG. 998.—Minute structure of the thyroid. From a transverse section of the thyroid of a dog. Semi-diagrammatic. (Baber.)

of the vesicles. These lymph-spaces empty themselves into **lymphatic vessels** which run in the interlobular connective tissue, not uncommonly surrounding the arteries which they accompany, and communicate with a network in the capsule of the gland. Small glands may be connected with this network. Baber has found in the lymphatics of the thyroid a viscid material which is morphologically identical with the normal constituent of the vesicle.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** (Figs. 392 and 393; see also p. 602) supplying the thyroid are the **superior thyroid** from the **external carotid**, and the **inferior thyroid** from the **thyroid axis** of the first part of the subclavian. Sometimes there is an additional vessel, the **thyroidea media** or **ima**, usually arising from the innominate artery, but sometimes from the arch of the aorta or the common carotid. It ascends upon the front of the trachea. The superior thyroid artery reaches the summit of the upper horn of the gland, and usually at this point gives off a vessel which courses down the posterior surface of the gland. The main trunk passes downward and inward at the junction of the inner and anterior border of the upper horn, giving branches to adjacent structures and sending branches over

the anterior surface of the thyroid gland. It reaches the isthmus and crosses the isthmus at its upper border to anastomose with the artery from the other side. The inferior thyroid artery, which is usually larger than the superior, after it has passed posterior to the sheath of the carotid and the sympathetic nerve, reaches the posterior surface of the gland. At this point branches are given off; some pass into the hilum; the others go to the posterior surface of the gland. The relation of the artery to the recurrent laryngeal nerve is very important to the surgeon. "Usually the main trunk of the artery passes behind the nerve; sometimes the artery breaks up before reaching the nerve; in this case one or more of the branches may pass in front of it. Much less commonly the main trunk or all its branches will be found to lie in front of the nerve."[1] If the thyroidea ima is present it goes to the lower part of the gland. The larger branches of the thyroid arteries are beneath the capsule and upon the surface of the gland; smaller branches pass to the interior of the gland (Berry). The arteries are remarkable for their large size and frequent anastomoses.

The **thyroid veins** (Figs. 447 and 448; see also p. 731) form a plexus upon the surface of the gland and beneath the capsule. Here and there veins pass through the capsule and go to adjacent venous trunks. Berry, accepting Kocher's description, notes the following veins: The **superior thyroid vein** runs with the superior thyroid artery and passes to the internal jugular vein. A **transverse vein** of the upper border of the isthmus joins the two superior thyroid veins. A single vein, the **middle thyroid,** sometimes emerges from the side of the gland and passes to the internal jugular. Usually, however, instead of this single vein there are two veins, the **superior** and **inferior accessory thyroids.** The **superior accessory thyroid** emerges from the outer side of the upper horn, below the apex, and passes to the internal jugular. The **inferior accessory thyroid** emerges from the posterior and inferior portion of the gland and passes to the internal jugular. The veins from the lower border of the gland vary greatly. A vein passes vertically down on each side in front of the trachea from the isthmus and from the inner side of the inferior horn. It is called by Kocher the **thyroidea ima.** The vein of the left side passes to the left innominate; the vein of the right side passes to the right innominate or left innominate. As Berry points out, the vein of one side may be small or may be absent, or the two veins may unite and form one vein which enters the left innominate. An **inferior thyroid vein** is often present. It is of small size, emerges at the inferior and external part of the gland, and passes to the corresponding innominate vein.[2]

The **lymphatics** are numerous and of large size. Collecting trunks arise from a network within the capsule. Some trunks ascend from the upper margin of the isthmus and reach the **gland in front of the larynx**; others ascend along the superior thyroid artery and reach the **glands at the bifurcation of the carotid.** Descending trunks from the lower margin of the isthmus reach the **glands in front of the trachea**; trunks from the side of the gland descend to the **glands about the recurrent laryngeal nerve.**[3]

The **nerves** are derived from the **middle** and **inferior cervical ganglia of the sympathetic,** and from the **inferior laryngeal nerves.** Probably there is also a branch from each **superior laryngeal nerve.**

Surgical Anatomy. The thyroid gland may be congenitally absent, and when it is the individual suffers from the worst form of *cretinism.* One lobe may be congenitally absent, but this will provoke no trouble unless the other lobe undergoes atrophy.

Complete removal of the thyroid and parathyroids will produce operative *myxœdema* (*cachexia strumipriva*), unless accessory thyroids enlarge and perform the functions of the thyroid.

The thyroid gland may be congenitally enlarged. The gland tends to atrophy in old age. It is atrophied in myxœdema and cretinisin. Some forms of thyroid enlargement are called *goitre.*

[1] Diseases of the Thyroid Gland. By James Berry. [2] Ibid.
[3] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

When all parts of the gland enlarge the condition is known as *parenchymatous goitre*.

Adenomatous goitre consists of an adenoma or of adenomata. In *cystic goitre* there is one or more cysts due to cystic degeneration of adenomata or to fusion of adjacent follicles.

A *pulsating goitre* is one which receives impulses from the carotid pulsations. In a *fibroid goitre* there is increase of interstitial connective tissue. A goitre which passes back of the sternum is known as *substernal* or *intrathoracic*. A goitre may extend back of the trachea or back of the oesophagus.

Exophthalmic goitre, Graves's disease or Basedow's disease, is a remarkable disease. Its three chief symptoms are enlargement of the thyroid, or *goitre*; prominence of the eyeballs, or *exophthalmos*, and very rapid pulse, or *tachycardia*. Dyspnœa, tremor, and various other symptoms are usually found. The thyroid gland may be the seat of a *carcinoma* or *sarcoma* (*malignant goitre*), *syphilitic* or *tuberculous* disease, ordinary *inflammation*, *suppuration*, or *hydatid disease*; For the relief of ordinary goitre various methods have been employed. Tapping, injection of astringents, simple incision, and the seton are obsolete. Ligature of the thyroid arteries is rarely performed as a curative measure. The superior and inferior thyroids of one side have been tied in some cases; all four thyroids in other cases. Jaboulay has performed *exothyropexy*. In this operation the gland is dislocated from its bed, brought out of the wound, and left exposed, in hope that it will atrophy

Division of the isthmus is occasionally practised to relieve dyspnœa. The operation sometimes succeeds, but often fails.

Extirpation of one-half or two-thirds of the gland is a very successful operation. Removal of the entire gland with the parathyroids will be followed by operative myxœdema.

In *extirpating* a lobe of the thyroid great care must be taken to avoid tearing the capsules, as if this happens the gland-tissue bleeds profusely. The thyroid arteries should be ligatured on the diseased side before an attempt is made to remove the mass, and in ligaturing the inferior thyroid the position of the recurrent laryngeal nerve must be borne in mind, so as not to include it in the ligature.

A cystic or solid tumor of the thyroid may be removed by *intraglandular enucleation*. If operation becomes necessary in exophthalmic goitre, partial extirpation is usually preferred. Bilateral extirpation of the cervical ganglia of the sympathetic (*sympathectomy* or *Jonnesco's operation*) has been practised by some surgeons for exophthalmic goitre. The value of the procedure is uncertain.

FIG. 999.—The position of the parathyroid glands. View from behind. (Zuckerkandl.)

Parathyroids (Fig. 999).—If the thyroid gland has been carefully detached, two round bodies of small size may be found embedded upon the trachea or upon the surface of the lateral lobe of the gland, between the terminal branches of the inferior thyroid artery. "These are the parathyroids, about the size of orange-seeds, and brownish-red in color."[1] These masses are constant in man and are more distinct in infants than in adults. Although the parathyroids lie on or in the thyroid, they are always completely separated from it by capsules of connective tissue. The parathyroids are divided from their situation into **external** and **internal**. The former, usually two in number, are situated, one on each side, in relation to the postero-internal surface of the lateral lobe; sometimes they are duplicated. The latter, also usually two in number, are placed one in or on each lateral lobe, generally near its mesial surface.

Structure.—The structure of the parathyroids is different from that of the thyroid. They are composed of solid masses of epithelial cells arranged in a more or less columnar fashion with numerous intervening capillaries. The columns of the para-

[1] Practical Anatomy. By Prof. Alfred W. Hughes.

thyroids anastomose. There is much lymphoid tissue connected with the columns. Some regard the parathyroids as embryonic portions of the thyroid. This view seems to gain probability from the statement that after complete thyroidectomy, the parathyroids having been left, these structures increase in size, and apparently prevent operative myxœdema. If they are also removed, myxœdema arises. Nevertheless, MacCallum says "there is no histological proof that parathyroid tissue can ever become converted into thyroid tissue." Most observers regard the parathyroids as distinct glands possessed of a special function. Certain it is, as Gley and others have shown, removal of the parathyroids from herbivora leaving the thyroid intact is followed by spasms, tetany, etc., just as complete thyroidectomy is followed by such symptoms in carnivora.[1]

THE THYMUS GLAND (Fig. 1000).

The thymus gland is a temporary organ, attaining its full size at the end of the second year, when it ceases to grow and remains practically stationary until puberty, at which period it rapidly degenerates. It does not entirely disappear, for the shrunken and degenerated mass, even later in life, maintains a likeness to the original form and retains within its substance small portions of thymus tissue (Waldeyer). If examined when its growth is most active, it will be found to con-

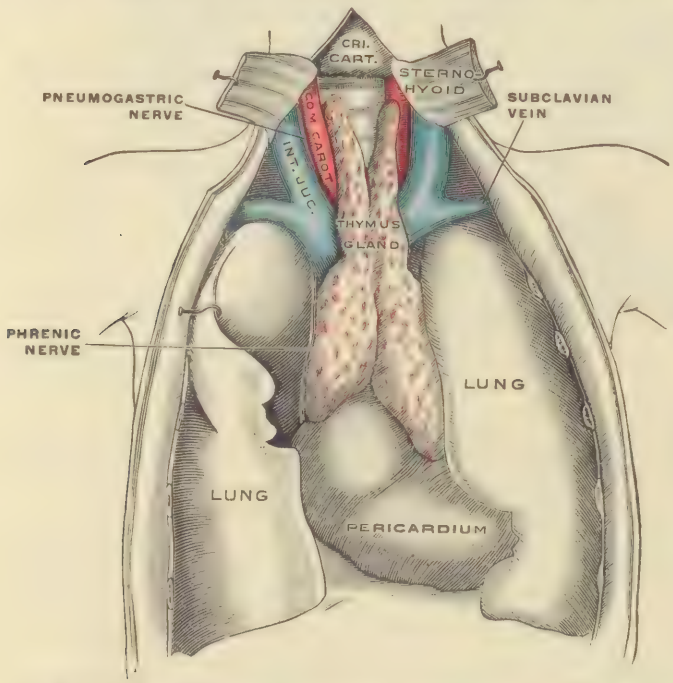


FIG. 1000.—The thymus gland in an infant two months old. (Poirier and Charpy.)

sist of two lateral lobes placed in close contact along the middle line, situated partly in the superior mediastinum, partly in the neck, and extending from the level of the fourth costal cartilage upward as high as the lower border of the thyroid gland. It is covered by the sternum and by the origins of the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles. Below, it rests upon the pericardium, being

[1] Internal Secretions. By William Hanna Thomson. New York Medical Journal, November 19, 1904.

separated from the arch of the aorta and great vessels by a layer of fascia. In the neck it lies on the front and sides of the trachea, behind the Sterno-hyoid and Sterno-thyroid muscles. The two lobes generally differ in size; they are occasionally united so as to form a single mass, and are sometimes separated by an intermediate lobe. The thymus is of a pinkish-gray color, is soft and is lobulated on its surfaces. It is about two inches in length, one and a half inches in breadth below, and about three or four lines in thickness. At birth it weighs about half an ounce.

Structure (Figs. 1001 and 1002).—Each lateral lobe is composed of numerous lobules held together by delicate areolar tissue, the entire gland being enclosed in an investing capsule of a similar but denser structure. The primary lobules vary in size from a pin's head to a small pea, and are made up of a number of small nodules or follicles which are irregular in shape and are more or less fused together, especially toward the interior of the gland. Each follicle consists of a medullary and cortical portion, which differ in many essential particulars from each other. The **cortical portion** is mainly composed of lymphoid cells supported by a delicate reticulum. In addition to this reticulum, of which traces only are found in the medullary portion, there is also a network of finely branched cells which is continuous with a similar network in the medullary portion. This network forms an adventitia to the blood-vessels. In the **medullary portion** there are but few lymphoid cells, but there are, especially toward the centre, granular cells and concentric corpuscles. The granular cells are rounded or flask-shaped masses attached (often by fibrillated extremities) to blood-vessels and to newly formed connective tissue. The concentric corpuscles are composed of a central mass consisting of one or more granular cells, and of a capsule which is formed of epithelioid cells which are continuous with the branched cells forming the network mentioned above.

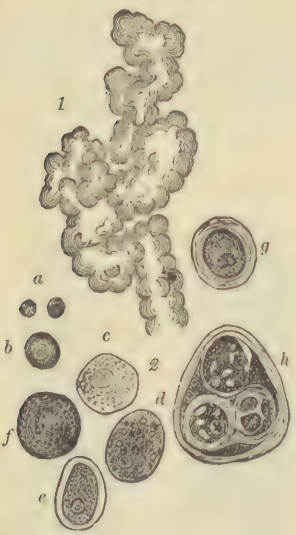


FIG. 1001.—Minute structure of thymus gland. Upper portion of the thymus of a fœtal pig of 2″ in length, showing the bud-like lobuli and glandular elements. 2, cells of the thymus, mostly from a man; *a*, free nuclei; *b*, small cells; *c*, larger; *d*, larger, with oil-globules, from the ox; *e*, *f*, cells completely filled with fat, at *f* without a nucleus; *g*, *h*, concentric bodies; *g*, an encapsulated nucleated cell; *h*, a composite structure of a similar nature.

Each follicle is surrounded by a capillary plexus from which vessels pass into the interior and radiate from the periphery toward the centre, and form a second zone just within the margin of the medullary portion. In the centre of the medulla there are very few vessels, and they are of minute size.

Watney has made the important observation that hæmoglobin is found in the thymus either in cysts or in cells situated near to or forming part of the concentric corpuscles. This hæmoglobin varies from granules to masses exactly resembling colored blood-corpuscles, oval in the bird, reptile, and fish; circular in all mammals except in the camel. Dr. Watney has also discovered in the lymph issuing from the thymus similar cells to those found in the gland, and, like them, containing hæmoglobin either in the form of granules or masses. From these facts he arrives at the physiological conclusion that the thymus is one source of the colored blood-corpuscles.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** supplying the thymus are derived from the **internal mammary** and from the **superior** and **inferior thyroid**. The **veins** terminate in the two **innominate veins**, and in the **internal mammary** and the **thyroid veins**. The **lymphatics** are of large size, arise in the substance of the gland, and are said to terminate in the **internal jugular vein**. The **nerves** are

exceedingly minute; they are derived from the **pneumogastric** and **sympathetic**. Branches from the **descendens hypoglossi** and **phrenic** reach the investing capsule, but do not penetrate into the substance of the gland.

FIG. 1002.—Minute structure of the thymus gland. Follicle of injected thymus from a calf, four days old, slightly diagrammatic, magnified about 50 diameters. The large vessels are disposed in two rings, one of which surrounds the follicle, the other lies just within the margin of the medulla. *A* and *B*, from thymus of camel, examined without addition of any reagent. Magnified about 400 diameters. *A*, large colorless cell containing small oval masses of hæmoglobin. Similar cells are found in the lymph-glands, spleen, and medulla of bone; *B*, colored blood-corpuscles. (Watney.)

THE CAROTID GLAND OR CAROTID BODY (GLOMUS CAROTICUM).

This body, when present, lies in the carotid bifurcation, to the inner side of the common carotid below the bifurcation, or on the posterior surface of the internal or of the external carotid. It is often absent. It lies in fatty tissue and is surrounded by a fibrous capsule which is attached to the carotid sheath. The carotid gland is about the size of a grain of corn; it is oval in shape and reddish-brown in color. The capsule of the gland sends septa inward. The septa divide the organ into follicles or **cell-balls**. These cell-balls are composed of endothelial cells and are associated with blood capillaries. A branch (or branches) from the **carotid artery** enters the carotid gland, and the gland is closely connected with the **carotid plexus of the sympathetic.** (This structure has been recently studied by John Funke,[1] Reclus and Chevasson,[2] Paltauf, Kartschenko, and Marchand.)

Surgical Anatomy.—*Tumors* may arise from this structure. Such a tumor is apt to be above the level of the upper margin of the thyroid cartilage and in most cases it moves with each arterial beat.

[1] American Medicine, vol. viii., No. 3.

[2] Bull. et mém. de la Soc. de chir. de Paris, 1903, No. 18.

THE COCCYGEAL GLAND OR COCCYGEAL BODY OR LUSCHKA'S GLAND (GLOMUS COCCYGEUM).

Lying near the tip of the coccyx in a small tendinous interval formed by the union of the Levator ani muscles and just above the coccygeal attachment of the Sphincter ani, is a small conglobate body about as large as a lentil or a pea, first described by Luschka,[1] and named by him the coccygeal gland. Its most obvious connections are with the arteries of the part. It is similar in structure to the carotid body.

Structure.—It consists of a congeries of small arteries with little aneurismal dilatations derived from the middle sacral and freely communicating with each other. These vessels are enclosed in one or more layers of polyhedral granular cells, and the whole structure is invested in a capsule of connective tissue which sends in trabeculae, dividing the interior into a number of spaces in which the vessels and cells are contained. Nerves pass into this little body from the sympathetic, but their mode of termination is unknown. Macalister believes the glomerulus of vessels "consists of the condensed and convoluted metameric dorsal arteries of the caudal segments embedded in tissue which is possibly a small persisting fragment of the neurenteric canal." It resembles the carotid gland in structure, and is probably one of the ductless glands.

[1] Der Hirnanhang und die Steissdrüse des Menschen, Berlin, 1860; Anatomie des Menschen, Tübingen, 1864, vol. ii. pt. 2, p. 187.

THE URINARY ORGANS.

THE KIDNEYS (RENES) (Figs. 1003, 1004, 1005).

THE Kidneys are large glands. They are two in number, and are situated in the back part of the abdomen, near the spinal column. Their function is to separate from the blood certain materials which, when dissolved in a quantity of water, also separated from the blood by the kidneys, constitute the **urine**.

They are placed in the loins, one on each side of the vertebral column, behind the peritoneum, and are surrounded by a mass of fat and loose areolar tissue, which

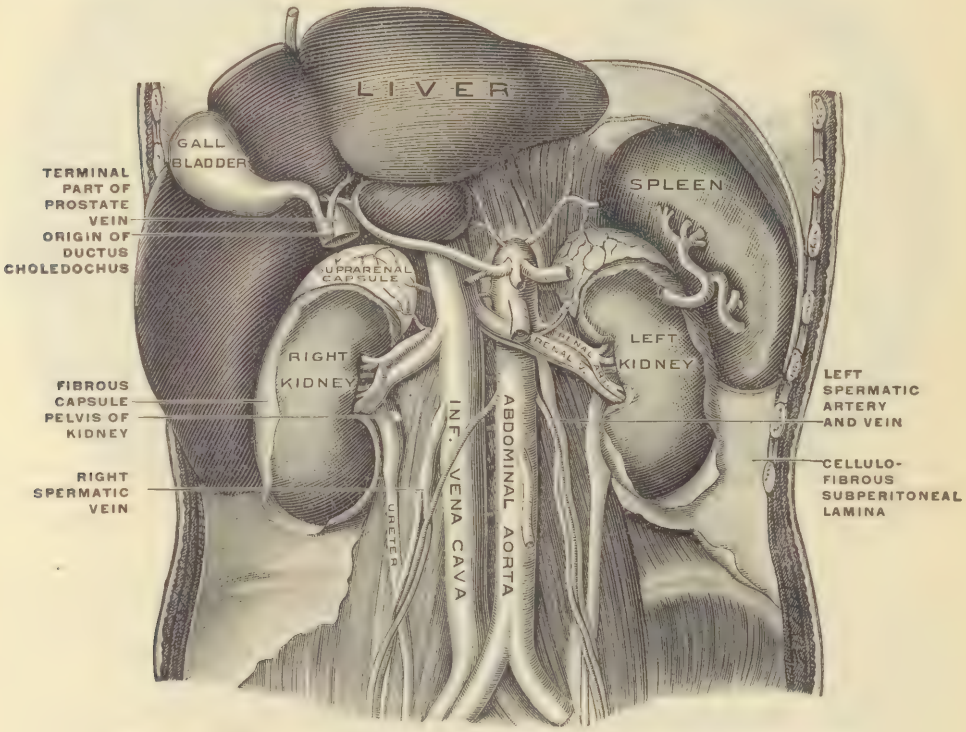


FIG. 1003.—The situation, direction, forms, and supports of the kidney. (Sappey.)

constitutes the **fatty capsule** (*capsula adiposa*) (Figs. 1008 and 1009). There are two distinct layers in this fatty capsule. The superficial fatty layer is the **pararenal fat.**[1] Keen calls this layer the **transversalis layer of fat,** because it is derived from the transversalis fascia.[2] The deeper and thicker perirenal layer is the **true perinephric fat** (Fig. 1009). The deeper layer of fat completely surrounds the kidney, and is somewhat adherent to the fibrous renal capsule. The fat about the kidney does

[1] See Gerota, Arch. f. Anatomie, Leipzic, 1895; Zuckerkandl, Medizinische Jahrbücher, Vienna, 1883.
[2] W. W. Keen, in American Medicine, January 31, 1903.

not look like fat in other regions, but is soft, delicate, and of a canary yellow color. These two layers are separated by a layer of connective tissue, which is the **posterior layer of the perirenal fascia,** and is called by Zuckerkandl the **retro-renal fascia** (*fascia retrorenalis*) (Fig. 1008). The **true capsule of the kidney** (*tunica fibrosa*) is thin, smooth, and glistening. The inner part of this capsule (*tunica muscularis*) contains unstriated muscle fibres. The true capsule can be easily separated from the underlying glandular structure. The upper extremity of the kidney is on a level with the upper border of the twelfth dorsal vertebra, the lower extremity on a level with the third lumbar vertebra (Fig. 1006). The right kidney is usually on a slightly lower level than the left, probably on account of the vicinity of the liver. In the female the kidneys are a little lower than in the male.

Each kidney is about four and a half inches in length, two to two and a half in breadth, and rather more than one inch in thickness. The left is somewhat longer, though narrower, than the right. The weight of the kidney in the adult male varies from 4½ ounces to 6 ounces; in the adult female, from 4 ounces to 5½ ounces. The combined weight of the two kidneys in proportion to the body is about 1 in 240.

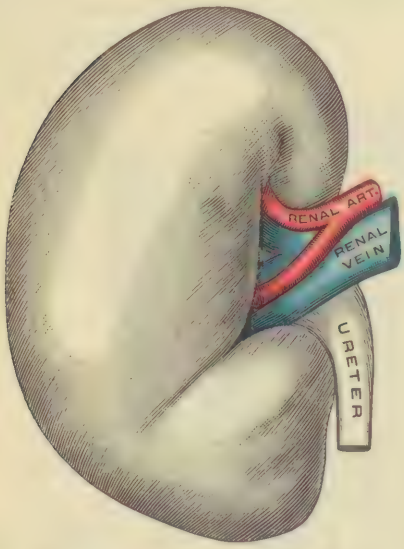


FIG. 1004.—Anterior surface of the kidney. (Bourgery.)

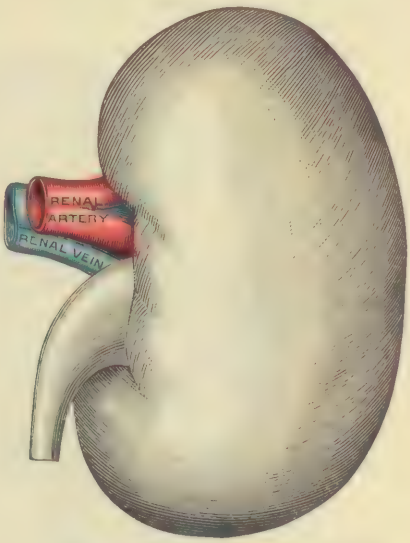


FIG. 1005.—Posterior surface of the kidney. (Bourgery.)

The kidney has the characteristic form of a "flattened bean" (Spalteholz). It is flattened on its sides and presents at one part of its circumference a hollow. It is larger at its upper than at its lower extremity. The kidney presents for examination two **surfaces,** two **borders,** and an **upper** and **lower extremity.**

Surfaces. The Anterior Surface (*facies anterior*) (Figs. 1003 and 1004).—Its anterior surface is convex, looks forward and outward, and is partially covered by peritoneum. The right kidney in its upper three-fourths is in contact with the posterior part of the under surface of the right lobe of the liver. This area of the right kidney is flattened (*impressio hepatica*). Toward its inner border it is covered by the second part of the duodenum, while its lower and outer part is in relation with the hepatic flexure of the colon. The relation of the second part of the duodenum to the front of the right kidney is a varying one. The left kidney is covered above by the posterior surface of the stomach, below the stomach by the pancreas, behind which are the splenic vessels. The region in contact with the stomach is markedly depressed (*impressio gastrica*). Its lower half is in contact with some of the coils

of the small intestine and sometimes with the third part of the duodenum. Near its outer border the anterior surface lies behind the spleen and the splenic flexure of the colon.

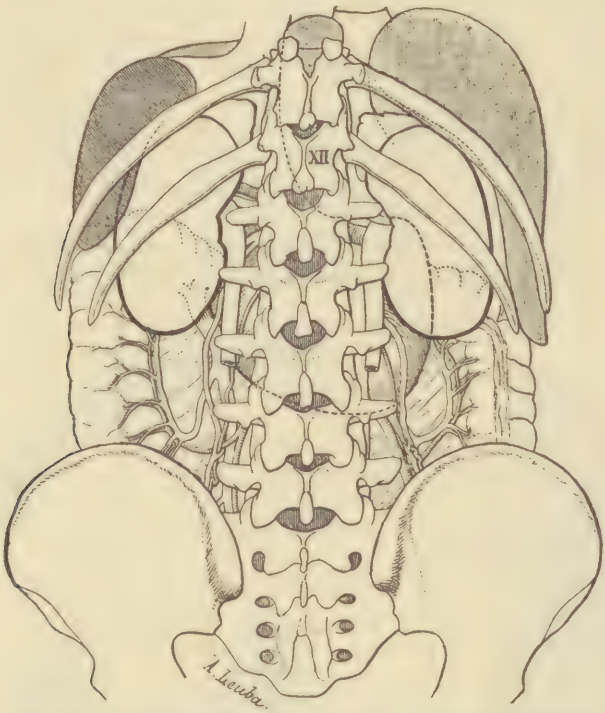


FIG. 1006.—Posterior surface of the kidneys. (Poirier and Charpy.)

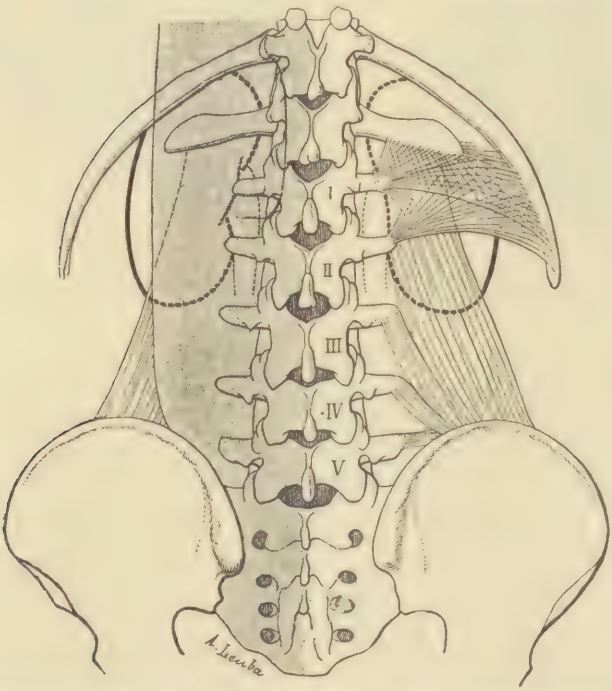


FIG. 1007.—Relation of the kidney to the vertebral column, ribs, muscles, and lumbo-costal ligaments. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The kidneys are partly covered in front by peritoneum and partly uncovered. On the right kidney, the **hepatic area**, that is to say that portion of the kidney which produces the renal impression on the liver, is covered by peritoneum, which therefore separates the kidney from the liver; the **duodenal** and **colic areas** are not peritoneal, and these structures are connected to the kidney by loose connective tissue; at the lower and inner extremity is a small area, the **mesocolic area**, which is covered by a layer of peritoneum of the greater sac and by the colic vessels. On the left kidney the **gastric area** is covered by the peritoneum of the lesser sac; the **pancreatic** and **colic areas** are non-peritoneal; while, as on the right side, at the lower and inner extremity, is an area, **mesocolic area**, which is covered by the peritoneum of the greater sac and by the colic vessels.

The Posterior Surface (*facies posterior*) (Fig. 1005).—The posterior surface of the kidney is flatter than the anterior and is directed backward and inward. It is

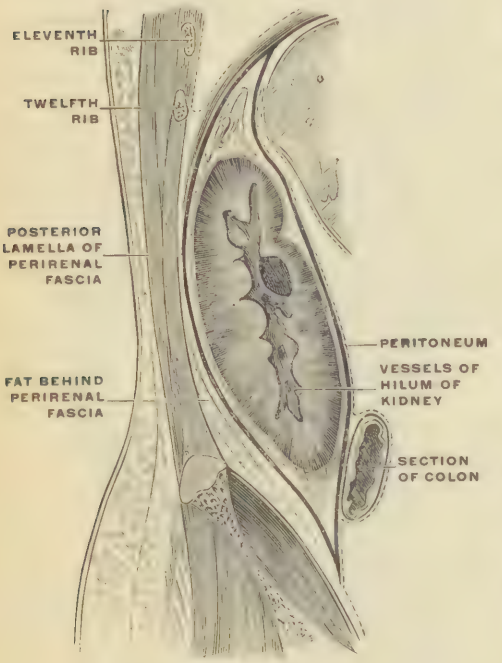


Fig. 1008.—Longitudinal section, showing the arrangement of the capsule of the kidney. (After Gerota.)

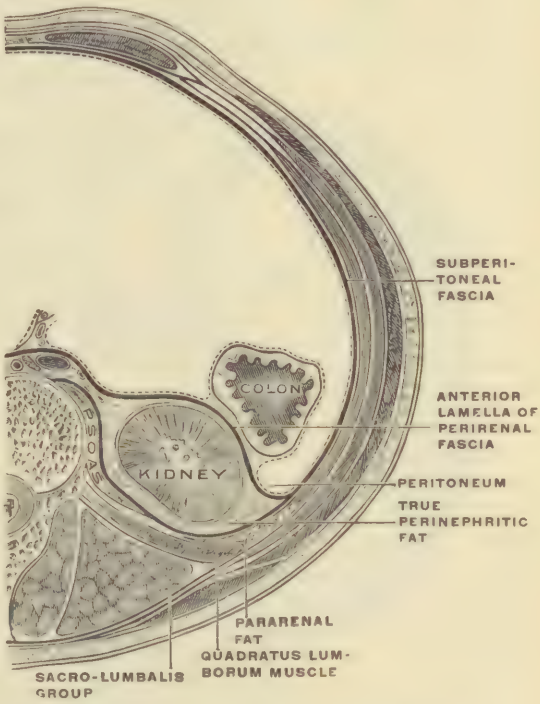


Fig. 1009.—Transverse section, showing the relations of the capsule of the kidney and the two layers of fat. (After Gerota.)

entirely devoid of peritoneal covering, being embedded in areolar and fatty tissue. It lies upon the Diaphragm, the anterior layer of the lumbar aponeurosis, the external and internal arcuate ligaments, the Psoas and Transversalis muscles, one or two of the upper lumbar arteries, the last dorsal, ilio-hypogastric, and ilio-inguinal nerves. The **lumbo-costal ligaments** overlie the posterior surface of the kidney (Fig. 1007). The right kidney rests upon the twelfth rib (Fig. 1007), the left usually on the eleventh and twelfth ribs. The Diaphragm separates the kidney from the pleura as the pleura dips down to form the **phrenico-costal sinus** (Fig. 987), but frequently the muscular fibres of the Diaphragm are defective or absent over a triangular area immediately above the external arcuate ligament, and when this is the case the perirenal areolar tissue is in immediate apposition with the diaphragmatic pleura. In the lower part of the posterior surface of the kidney is an impression produced by the Quadratus lumborum muscle and called

the **impressio muscularis**. A little internal to this a flattening, caused by the Psoas muscle, is often recognizable. At the upper part of the posterior surface is a sulcus produced by contact with the Diaphragm.

Borders. **The External Border** (*margo lateralis*) (Figs. 1004 and 1005).—The external border is convex, and is directed outward and backward, toward the postero-lateral wall of the abdomen. On the left side it is in contact, at its upper part, with the spleen (Fig. 1003).

The Internal Border (*margo medialis*) (Figs. 1004 and 1005).—The internal border is concave, and is directed forward, inward, and a little downward. It presents a deep longitudinal fissure, bounded by a prominent overhanging anterior and posterior lip. This fissure is named the **hilum** (*hilus renalis*) (Fig. 1010), and allows of the passage of the vessels, nerves, and ureter into and out of the kidney.

Extremities. **The Superior Extremity** (*extremitas superior*) (Figs. 1004 and 1005.—The superior extremity, directly slightly inward as well as upward, is thick and rounded, and is surmounted by the suprarenal capsule (Fig. 1010), which covers also a small portion of the anterior surface.

The Inferior Extremity (*extremitas inferior*) (Figs. 1004 and 1005).—The inferior extremity, directed a little outward as well as downward, is smaller and thinner than the superior. It extends to within two inches of the crest of the ilium.

At the hilum of the kidney the relative position of the main structures passing into and out of the kidney is as follows: the vein is in front, the artery in the middle, and the duct or ureter behind and toward the lower part (Fig. 1005). By a knowledge of these relations the student may distinguish between the right and left kidney. The kidney is to be laid on the table before the student on its posterior surface, with its lower extremity toward the observer—that is to say, with the ureter *behind* and *below* the other vessels; the hilum will then be directed to the side to which the kidney belongs.

General Structure of the Kidney.—The kidney is surrounded by a distinct investment of fibrous tissue (*tunica fibrosa*), which forms the firm, smooth, **true capsule** covering the entire organ. The capsule passes over the margins of the hilum, enters the interior of the kidney, and covers the wall of the sinus. The true capsule is closely and firmly adherent to the renal pelvis where it is attached to the sinus. It closely invests it, but can be easily stripped off, in doing which, however, numerous fine processes of connective tissue which pass to the intrarenal connective tissue and numerous small blood-vessels are torn through. Beneath this fibrous layer a thin wide-meshed network of unstriped muscular fibre forms an incomplete covering to the organ. When the true capsule is stripped off, the surface of the kidney is found to be smooth, even, and of a deep-red color.

In infants fissures extending for some depth may be seen on the surface of the organ, a remnant of the lobular construction of the gland (Fig. 1027). The kidney is dense in texture, but is easily lacerable by mechanical force. In order to obtain a knowledge of the structure of the gland, a vertical section must be made from its convex to its concave border, and the loose tissue and fat removed around the vessels and the excretory duct (Fig. 1010). It will be then seen that the kidney consists of a central cavity surrounded at all parts but one by the proper kidney-substance. This central cavity is called the **sinus** (*sinus renalis*), and is lined by a prolongation of the fibrous coat of the kidney, which enters through a longitudinal fissure, the **hilum** (*hilus renalis*) (Fig. 1010), which is situated at that part of the cavity which is not surrounded by kidney structure. Through this fissure the blood-vessels of the kidney and its excretory duct pass, and therefore these structures, upon entering the kidney, are contained within the sinus (Fig. 1004). The **excretory duct** or **ureter**, after entering, dilates into a wide, funnel-shaped sac named the **pelvis** (*pelvis renalis*) (Figs. 1010 and 1011). This divides into two or three tubular divisions, which subdivide into several short,

truncated branches named **calices** or **infundibula** (*calyces renales*), all of which are contained in the central cavity of the kidney (Figs. 1010 and 1011). The blood-vessels of the kidney, after passing through the hilum, are contained in the sinus or central cavity, lying between its lining membrane and the excretory apparatus, before entering the kidney-substance (Fig. 1011).

This central cavity, as before mentioned, is surrounded on all sides except at the hilum by the substance of the kidney, which is at once seen to consist of two parts—viz., of an external granular investing part, which is called the **cortical portion** (*substantia corticalis*); and of an internal part, the **medullary portion** (*substantia medullaris*), made up of a number of dark-colored **pyramids,** with their bases resting on the cortical part and their apices converging toward the centre, where they form prominent papillae, the **renal papillae** (*papillae renales*), which project into the interior of the calices (Fig. 1010).

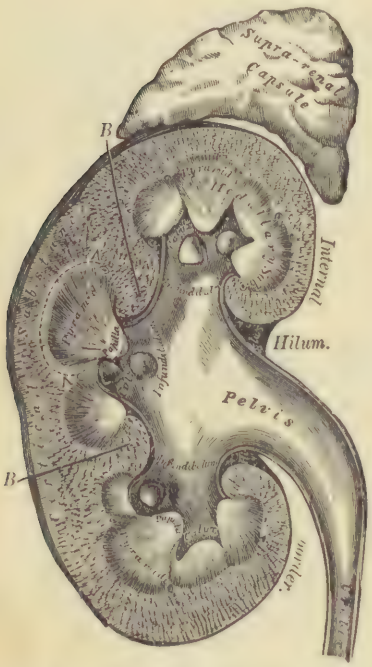


Fig. 1010.—Vertical section of kidney.

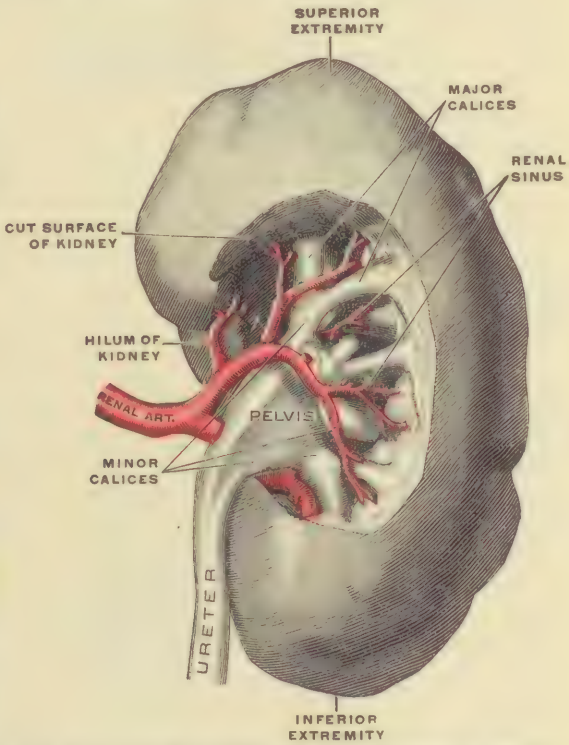


Fig. 1011.—The right kidney with its pelvis exposed, viewed from behind. (Spalteholz.)

The **cortical substance** (Figs. 1010 and 1017) is of a bright reddish-brown color, soft, granular, and easily lacerable. It is found everywhere immediately beneath the capsule, and is seen to extend in an arched form over the base of each medullary pyramid. Prolongations of the cortical substance pass between the pyramids toward the renal sinus. These prolongations are the **cortical columns** or the **columns of Bertin** (*columnae renales*) (Fig. 1010, *B B*). The columns contain blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics. The base of each pyramid (*basis pyramidis*) is known as the **intermediate zone.** That portion of the cortical substance which stretches from one cortical column to the next, and intervenes between the base of the pyramid and the capsule (marked by the dotted line extending from *A* to *A'* in Fig. 1010), is called a **cortical arch,** the depth of which varies from a third to half an inch.

The **medullary substance** (Figs. 1010 and 1017), as before stated, is seen to consist of red-colored, striated, conical masses, the **pyramids of Malpighi** (*pyramides*

renales) (Fig. 1010), the number of which, varying from eight to eighteen, corresponds to the number of lobes of which the organ in the fœtal state is composed. The pyramids are composed of straight tubes which pass between the apices of the papillae and the cortical margin. They enter the cortex in masses called the **pyramids of Ferrein** (see below). The sides of the pyramids of Malpighi are contiguous with the cortical columns, while the apices, known as the **papillae of the kidney** (*papillae renales*) (Figs. 1010 and 1014), project into the calices of the ureter, each calyx receiving two or three papillae. Radiating from the bases of the pyramids of Malpighi are ridges of cortical substance with distinct depressions between them. These ridges are the **medullary rays** (*pars radiata*) or **pyramids of Ferrein** (Figs. 1013 and 1017). The **labyrinth of the cortex** (Fig. 1013) is constituted by the kidney substance between the rays. The pyramids of Ferrein look like direct continuations of the medullary substance, but, in reality, they are in the cortex, and are formed by the straight tubes extending in masses into the cortex. The pyramids of Ferrein are much smaller than the pyramids of Malpighi. In the columns of Bertin blood-vessels, nerves, and lymphatics pass to and emerge from the sinus by way of small foramina. The summit of a papilla contains a number of orifices of papillary ducts. Such an area is called an **area cribrosa** (Fig. 1014).

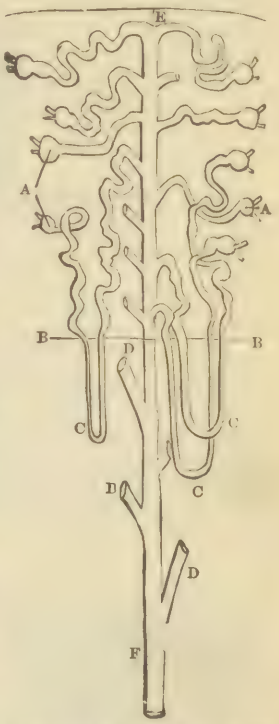


FIG. 1012.—Plan of uriniferous tubes. *A A*, Malpighian bodies; *B B*, margin of medullary structure; *C, C, C*, loops of Henle; *D, D, D*, straight tubes cut off; *E*, commencing straight tubes; *F*, termination of straight tube or the excretory tube.

These two parts, *cortical* and *medullary*, so dissimilar in appearance, are very similar in structure, being made up of urinary tubes and blood-vessels united and bound together by a connecting matrix or stroma.

Minute Anatomy.—The **uriniferous tubes, urinary canals** or **tubuli uriniferi** (*tubuli renales*) (Figs. 1012 and 1017), of which the kidney is for the most part made up, commence in the cortical portion of the kidney. Each tubule begins between the medullary rays (Fig. 1013) in a sac, Bowman's capsule or the Malpighian capsule (see below). The tubules, as a rule, after pursuing a very circuitous course through the cortical and medullary parts of the kidney, finally terminate at the apices of the Malpighian pyramids by open mouths, so that the fluid which they contain is emptied into the dilated extremity of the ureter contained in the sinus of the kidney. If the surface of one of the papillae is examined with a lens, it will be seen to be studded over with a number of small depressions (*foramina papillaria*), from sixteen to twenty in number, and in a fresh kidney, upon pressure being made, fluid will be seen to exude from these depressions. They are the orifices of the tubuli uriniferi, which terminate in this situation. The tubuli uriniferi begin in the cortex as the **Malpighian bodies** or **corpuscles** (*corpuscula renis*) (Figs. 1012, 1013, 1015, 1016, and 1018), which are small rounded masses, varying in size, but average about $\frac{1}{120}$ of an inch in diameter. They are of a deep-red color, and are found only in the cortical portion of the kidney. Each of these little bodies is composed of two parts—a central glomerulus of vessels, called a **Malpighian tuft**, and a membranous envelope, the **Malpighian capsule** or **capsule of Bowman** (*capsula glomeruli*), which latter is a small pouch-like commencement of a uriniferous tubule.

The **Malpighian Tuft** or **Vascular Glomerulus** (Figs. 1015, 1016, 1017, 1022, and 1023) is a network of convoluted capillary blood-vessels held together by scanty

connective tissue and grouped into from two to five lobules. This capillary network is derived from a small arterial twig, the **afferent vessel**, which pierces the wall of the capsule, generally at a point opposite that at which the latter is connected with the tube; and the resulting **efferent vessel** emerges from the capsule at the same

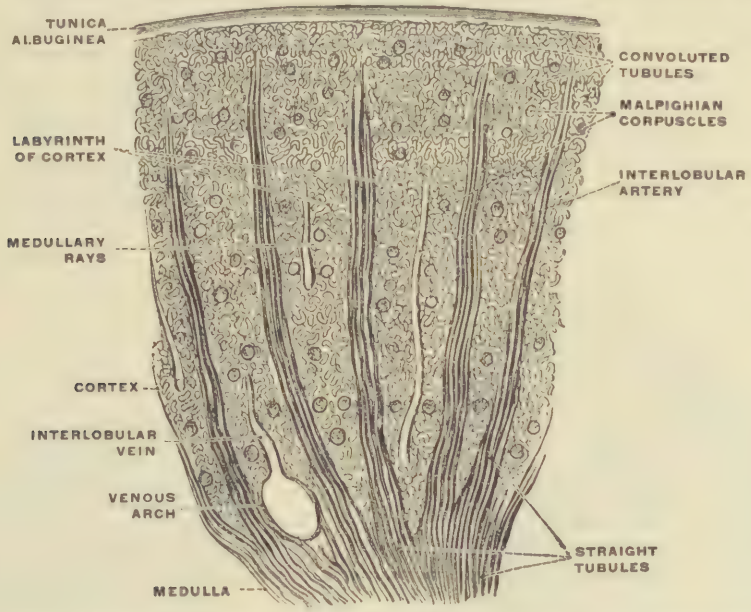


FIG. 1013.—Part of a section through the cortex of the kidney in the direction of the straight tubules. (Toldt.)

point. The afferent vessel is usually the larger of the two (Fig. 1015). The **Malpighian** or **Bowman's capsule** (*capsula glomeruli*) (Figs. 1015, 1016, and 1017), which surrounds the glomerulus, is formed of a hyaline membrane supported by a small amount of connective tissue which is continuous with the connective tissue of the tube. It is lined on its inner surface with a layer of squamous epithelial cells which are reflected from the lining membrane on to the glomerulus at the point of entrance or exit of the afferent and efferent vessels. The whole surface of the glomerulus is covered with a continuous layer of the same cells on a delicate supporting membrane, which with the cells dips in between the lobules of the glomerulus, closely surrounding them (Fig. 1016). Thus, between the glomerulus and the capsule a space is left, forming a cavity lined by a continuous layer of cells, which varies in size according to the state of secretion and the amount of fluid present in it. The cells, as above stated, are squamous in the adult, but in the fœtus and young subject they are polyhedral or even columnar.

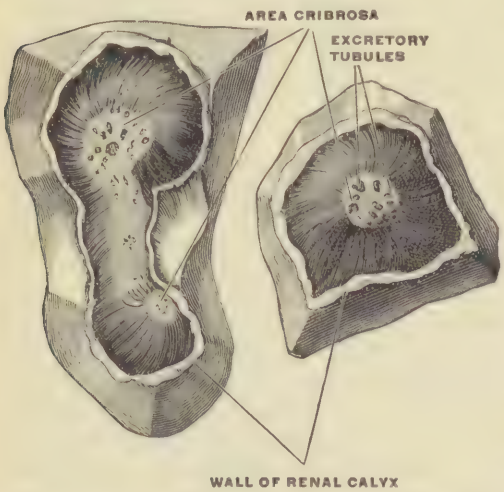


FIG. 1014.—Area cribrosa of renal papilla. (Toldt.)

The **Tubuli Uriniferi**, commencing in the Malpighian bodies, in their course present many changes in shape and direction (*tubuli renales contorti*), and are

contained partly in the medullary and partly in the cortical portions of the organ. At the junction of a tubule with the Malpighian capsule there is a somewhat constricted portion which is termed the **neck** (Fig. 1018). Beyond this the tubule becomes convoluted, and pursues a considerable course in the cortical structure, constituting the **proximal** or **first convoluted tubule** (Figs. 1017 and 1018). After a time the convolutions disappear, and the tubule approaches the medullary portion of the kidney in a more or less spiral manner. This section of the tubule has been called the **spiral tube of Schachowa** (Fig. 1018). Throughout this portion of their course the tubuli uriniferi have been contained entirely in the cortical structure, and have presented a pretty uniform calibre. They now enter the medullary portion, and suddenly become much smaller, quite straight in direction (*tubuli renales recti*), and each tubule dips down for a variable depth into the pyramids, constituting the **descending limb of Henle's loop** (Figs. 1017 and 1018). Bending on itself, it forms a kind of loop near the apex of the pyramid, the **loop of Henle,** and, reascending, becomes suddenly enlarged and again spiral in direction, forming the **ascending limb of Henle's loop** (Figs. 1017 and 1018),

FIG. 1015.—Minute structure of kidney.

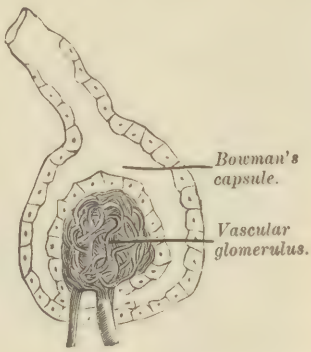


FIG. 1016.—Malpighian body.

and re-enters the cortical structure. This portion of the tubule does not present a uniform calibre, but becomes narrower as it ascends and irregular or somewhat spiral in outline (Fig. 1018). As a narrow tube it enters the cortex and ascends for a short distance, when it again becomes dilated, irregular, and angular. This section is termed the **irregular tubule** (Fig. 1018); it terminates in a convoluted tubule which exactly resembles the proximal convoluted tubule; and is called the **distal** or **second convoluted tubule** (Figs. 1017 and 1018). This again terminates in a narrow **curved** or **junctional tubule**, which enters the straight or collecting tube.

Each **straight collecting** or **receiving tube** (Figs. 1012, 1017, and 1018) commences by a small orifice on the summit of a papilla, thus opening and discharging its contents into the interior of one of the calices. Traced into the substance of the pyramid, these tubes are found to run from apex to base, dividing dichotomously in their course and slightly diverging from each other. Thus dividing and subdividing, they reach the base of the pyramid, and enter the cortical structure greatly increased in number. Upon entering the cortical portion they continue a straight course for a variable distance, and are arranged in groups, several of these groups corresponding to a single pyramid. The tubes in the centre of the group are the longest, and reach almost to the surface of the kidney, while the external ones are shorter, and advance only a short distance into the cortex. In consequence of this arrangement the cortical portion presents a number of conical masses, the apices of which reach the periphery of the organ,

and the bases are applied to the medullary portion. These are termed the **medullary rays** or the **pyramids of Ferrein** (Fig. 1013; also p. 1417). As they run through the cortical portion the straight tubes receive on either side the curved extremity of the convoluted tubes, which, as stated above, commence at the Malpighian bodies. Each collecting tube receives a number of tubules, and several collecting tubes unite together to form a **papillary duct** (Fig. 1017) and open by a foramen (Fig. 1014) at the surface of the papilla.

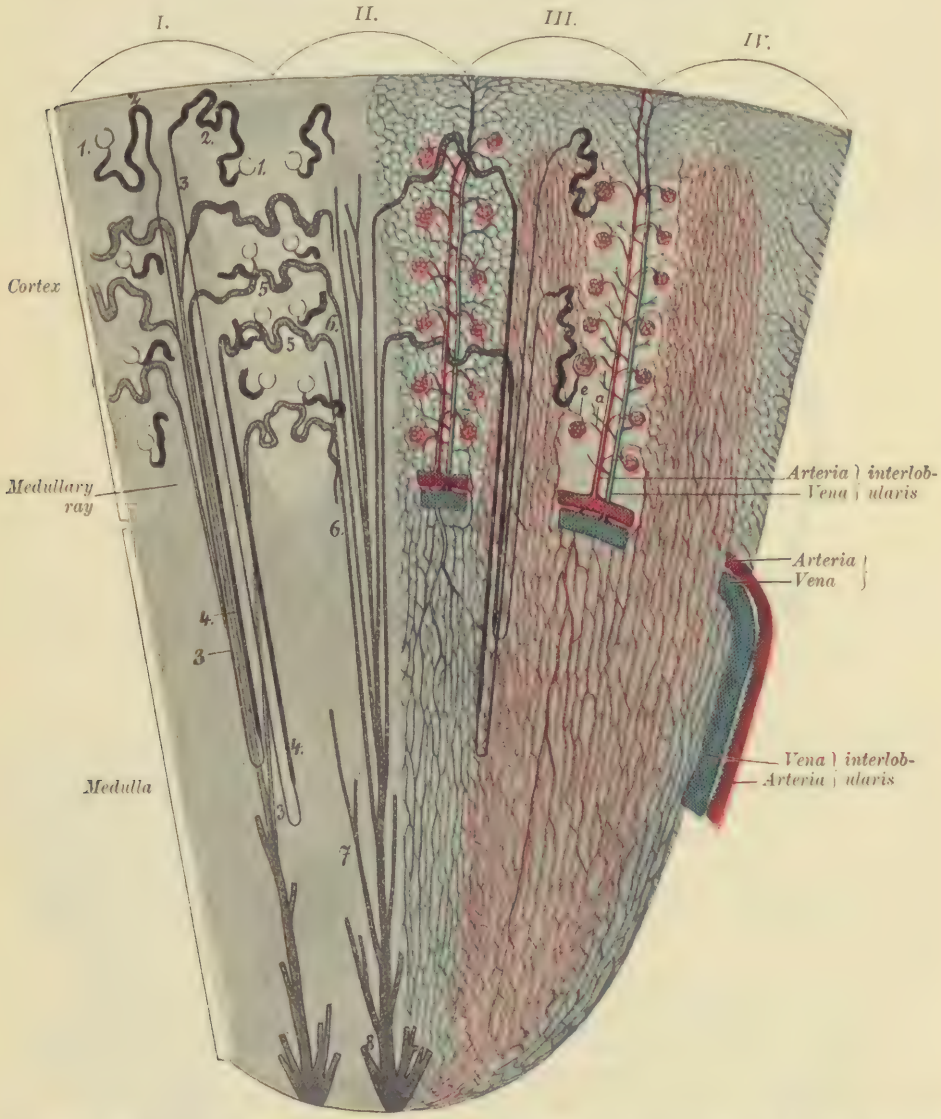


FIG. 1017.—Diagrammatic representation of the course of the urinary canals (left) and the kidney vessels (right). The arteries are red, the veins blue; capsules of Bowman, convoluted tubules I. order and loops of Henle are black; convoluted tubules II. order and collecting tubules gray. I., II., III., IV., four kidney lobules; *a*, vas afferens; *e*, vas efferens. 1, Bowman's capsule; 2, convoluted tubule I. order; 3, descending limb of loop of Henle; 4, ascending limb of loop of Henle; 5, convoluted tubule II. order; 6, 7, collecting tubules; 8, papillary duct. (Szymonowicz.)

It will be seen from the above description that there is a continuous series of tubes from their commencement in the Malpighian bodies to their termination at the orifices on the apices of the pyramids of Malpighi, and that the urine,

the secretion of which commences in the capsule, finds its way through these tubes into the calices of the kidney, and so into the ureter. To recapitulate: the tube first presents a constricted portion, (1) the **neck.** 2. It forms a wide convoluted tube, the **proximal convoluted tube.** 3. It becomes spiral, the **spiral tubule of Schachowa.** 4. It enters the medullary structure as a narrow, straight tube, the **descending limb of Henle's loop.** 5. Forming a loop and becoming dilated, it ascends somewhat spirally, and, gradually diminishing in calibre, again enters the cortical structure, the **ascending limb of Henle's loop.** 6. It now becomes irregular and angular in outline, the **irregular tubule.** 7. It then becomes convoluted, the **distal convoluted tubule.** 8. Diminishing in size, it forms a curve, the **curved** or **junctional tubule.** 9. Finally, it joins a straight tube, the **straight collecting tube,** which is continued downward through the medullary substance and joins other straight tubes to form a **papillary duct,** which opens in a foramen at the apex of a pyramid.

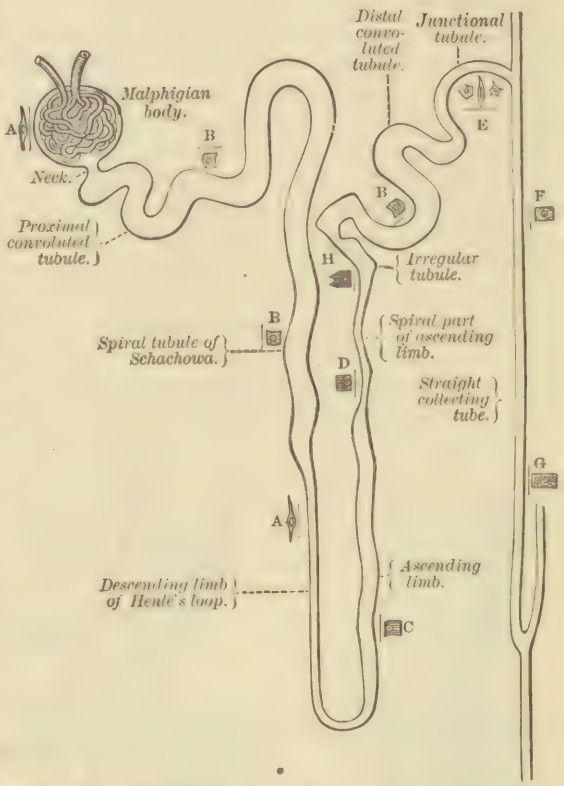


FIG. 1018.—Uriniferous tube. For the sake of clearness the epithelial cells have been represented more highly magnified than the tubes in which they are contained.

FIG. 1019.[1]—Longitudinal section of Henle's descending limb: *a*, membrana propria; *b*, epithelium.

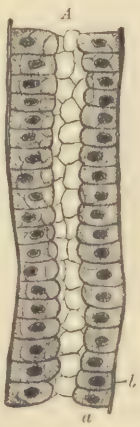


FIG. 1020.—Longitudinal section of straight tube: *a*, cylindrical or cubical epithelium; *b*, membrana propria.

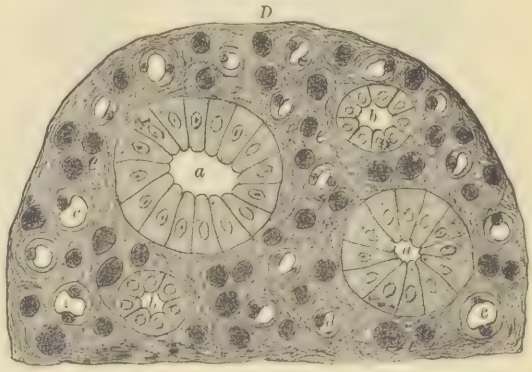


FIG. 1021.—Transverse section of pyramidal substance of kidney of pig, the blood-vessels of which are injected: *a*, large collecting tube cut across, lined with cylindrical epithelium; *b*, branch of collecting tube cut across, lined with epithelium with shorter cylinders; *c* and *d*. Henle's loops cut across; *e*, blood-vessels cut across; *D*, connective-tissue ground-substance.

THE TUBULI URINIFERI: THEIR STRUCTURE (Figs. 1019, 1020, and 1021.—The tubuli uriniferi consist of basement-membrane lined with epithelium. The

[1] From Handbook for the Physiological Laboratory.

epithelium varies considerably in different sections of the uriniferous tubes. In the neck the epithelium is continuous with that lining the Malpighian capsule, and, like it, consists of flattened cells with an oval nucleus (Fig. 1016). The cells are, however, very indistinct and difficult to trace, and the tube has here the appearance of a simple basement-membrane unlined with epithelium. In the proximal convoluted tubule and the spiral tubule of Schachowa the epithelium is polyhedral in shape, the sides of the cells not being straight, but fitting into each other, and in some animals so fused together that it is impossible to make out the lines of junction. In the human kidney the cells often present an angular projection of the surface next the basement-membrane. These cells are made up of more or less rod-like fibres, which rest by one extremity on the basement-membrane, whilst the other projects toward the lumen of the tube. This gives to the cells the appearance of distinct striation. In the descending limb of Henle's loop the epithelium resembles that found in the Malpighian capsule and the commencement of the tube, consisting of flat transparent epithelial plates with an oval nucleus (Fig. 1019). In the ascending limb, on the other hand, the cells partake more of the character of those described as existing in the proximal convoluted tubule, being polyhedral in shape and presenting the same appearance of striation. The nucleus, however, is not situated in the centre of the cell, but near the lumen (Fig. 1021). After the ascending limb of Henle's loop becomes narrower upon entering the cortical structure, the striation appears to be confined to the outer part of the cell; at all events, it is much more distinct in this situation, the nucleus, which appears flattened and angular, being still situated near the lumen. In the irregular tubule the cells undergo a still further change, becoming very angular, and presenting thick bright rods or markings, which render the striation much more distinct than in any other section of the urinary tubules. In the distal convoluted tubule the epithelium appears to be somewhat similar to that which has been described as existing in the proximal convoluted tubule, but presents a peculiar refractive appearance. In the curved tubule, just before its entrance into the straight collecting tube, the epithelium varies greatly as regards the shape of the cells, some being angular with short processes, others spindle-shaped, others polyhedral.

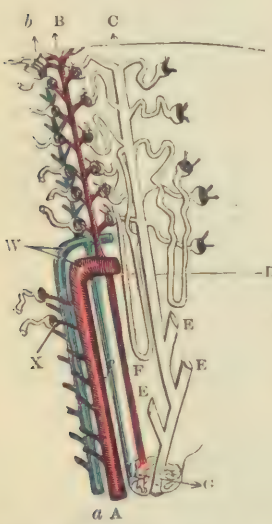


FIG. 1022.—Diagrammatic sketch of the blood-vessels of the kidney.

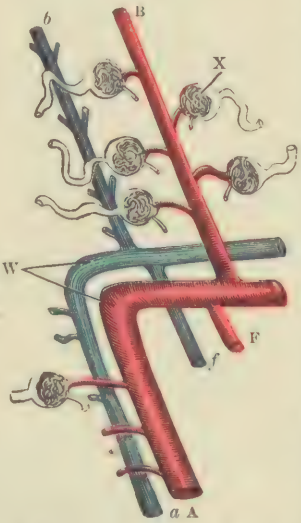
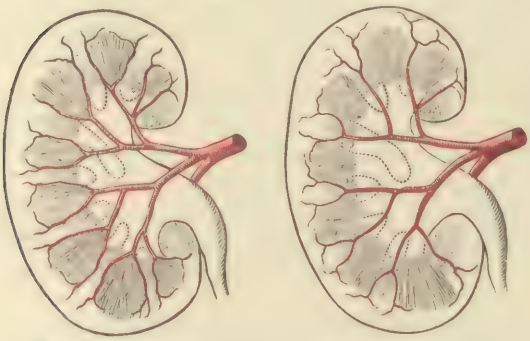


FIG. 1023.—A portion of Fig. 1022 enlarged. (The references are the same.)

A, *a*, interlobar artery and vein, the former giving off the renal afferents, the latter receiving the renal efferents; B, *b*, interlobular artery and vein, the latter commencing from the stellate veins, and receiving branches from the plexus around the tubuli contorti, the former giving off renal afferents; C, straight tube, surrounded by tubuli contorti, with which it communicates, as more fully shown in Fig. 1023; D, margin of medullary substance; E, E, E, receiving tubes cut off; F, *f*, arteriolae et venae rectae, the latter arising from (G) the plexus at the medullary apex; X, vascular glomerulus; W, the arcuate artery and vein.

In the straight tubes the epithelium is more or less columnar; in its papillary portion the cells are distinctly columnar and transparent (Fig. 1020), but as the tube approaches the cortex the cells are less uniform in shape; some are polyhedral, and others angular with short processes.

The Renal Blood-vessels.—The kidney is plentifully supplied with blood by the renal artery (Figs. 422, 423, 1005, and 1011), a large offset of the abdominal aorta. Previously to entering the kidney, each artery divides into four or five branches, which are distributed to its substance. At the hilum these branches lie between the renal vein and ureter, the vein being in front, the ureter behind. Each vessel gives off a small branch to the suprarenal capsules, the ureter, and the surrounding cellular tissue and muscles. It has been pointed out by Hyrtl (p. 679) that the renal artery gives off a branch which divides and supplies the dorsal portion of the kidney and a branch which divides and supplies the ventral portion of the kidney (Figs. 422 and 423). Between these two vascular systems is a non-vascular zone, called by Byron Robinson the **exsanguinated renal zone of Hyrtl** (Figs. 422 and 423). It "is one-half inch dorsal to the lateral longitudinal renal border."[1] Frequently there is a second renal artery, which is given off from the abdominal aorta at a lower level, and supplies the lower portion of the kidney. It is termed the **inferior renal artery**. The branches of the renal arteries pass to the kidney substance between the pyramids and are known as **interlobar arteries** (*arteriae interlobares renis*) (Figs. 1013, 1017, 1024, and 1025). At the junction of the cortical and medullary portions these vessels turn and for a short distance pursue a course parallel to the kidney surface. There are thus formed a series of incomplete vascular arches across the bases of the pyramids, the **arcuate arteries** (*arteriae arciformes*) (Figs. 1017, 1022, and 1023). From these arches two sets of vessels come. The vessels of one set go to the periphery and enter the labyrinth, those of the other set pass toward the centre and enter the intermediate zone of the medulla. These last vessels are the *arteriolae recti* (Figs. 1017, 1022, and 1023). Because of these vessels the kidney exhibits striations on section. Each of the arteriolae recti in the medulla divides into numerous small branches which are nearly parallel to each other and supply the tubules of this region. The arteries which arise from the arches and pass to the periphery are the **interlobular arteries** (*arteriae interlobulares*) (Figs. 1017, 1022, 1023, and 1026). They traverse the labyrinth and pass toward the surface of the kidney. A number of short branches, the **vasa afferentia**, are given off by the interlobular arteries (Figs. 1017, 1022, 1023, and 1026). Each afferent vessel passes to a capsule of Bowman. On reaching the capsule the vessel forms a capillary mass, the **glomerulus**, which is within the invaginated capsule (Figs. 1016, 1017, 1023, and 1026).



Figs. 1024 and 1025.—Lobar circulation. Interlobar circulation. (Poirier and Charpy.)

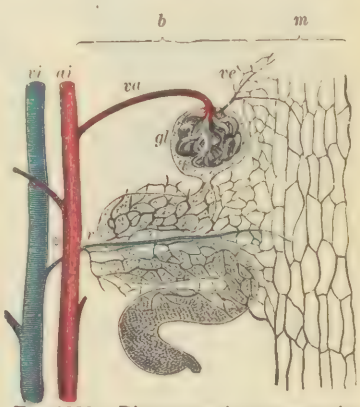


Fig. 1026.—Diagrammatic representation of the blood-vessels in the substance of the cortex of the kidney: *m*, region of the medullary ray; *b*, region of the tortuous portion of the tubules; *ai*, interlobular artery; *vi*, interlobular vein; *va*, vas afferens; *gl*, glomerulus; *ve*, vas efferens; *vz*, venous twig of the interlobularis. (From Ludwig, in Stricker's Handbook.)

[1] Byron Robinson, p. 679.

Emerging from each glomerulus is a small vessel, the **vas efferens** (Figs. 1015, 1016, 1017, 1023, and 1026). This vessel divides into capillaries which are distributed to the tubules of the labyrinth and medullary rays. Blood is gathered from the capillaries about the tubules by veins which correspond to the interlobular arteries and arteriolae recti. These veins form a set of arches across the bases of the pyramids. From the arches veins arise and pass between the pyramids to the sinus of the kidney, where they unite and form branches of the renal vein.

Nerves of the Kidney.—The nerves of the kidney, although small, are about fifteen in number. They have small ganglia developed upon them, and are derived from the **renal plexus**, which is formed by branches from the solar plexus, the lower and outer part of the semilunar ganglion and aortic plexus, and from the lesser and smallest splanchnic nerves. They communicate with the spermatic plexus, a circumstance which may explain the occurrence of pain in the testicle in affections of the kidney. So far as they have been traced, they seem to accompany the renal artery and its branches, but their exact mode of termination is not known.

The Lymphatics.—The lymphatics consist of a **superficial** and **deep set.**

The superficial lymphatics are just beneath the capsule. From them come two sets of collecting trunks (Sappey). One set joins the deep collectors by entering the kidney substance or passing to the hilum. Another set pass into the lymphatics of the fatty capsule.

Fig. 1027.—Fœtal kidney, showing lobes. (Testut.)

The deep collectors emerge from the hilum and lie about the renal artery and vein. From the right kidney some of the trunks pass to the glands about the vena cava and possibly also in the glands in front of the aorta. Others end in the glands back of the vena cava (Stahr).

From the left kidney the trunks pass to the glands which lie along the left side of the abdominal aorta.[1] The lymphatics of the fatty capsule of the kidney pass to the same glands as do the deep collectors of the kidney (Stahr).

Connective Tissue or Intertubular Stroma.—Although the tubules and vessels are closely packed, a certain small amount of connective tissue, continuous with the capsule, binds them firmly together. This tissue was first described by Goodsir, and subsequently by Bowman. Ludwig and Zawarykin have observed distinct fibres passing around the Malpighian bodies, and Henle has seen them between the straight tubes composing the medullary structure.

Variations and Abnormalities.—Congenital absence of the kidney has been observed. Not unusually one kidney is considerably larger than the other; occasionally one is very large and the other is very small, from atrophy, the large organ having become large in response to a functional need, which causes it to compensate for the insufficiency of the small kidney. If a kidney is removed surgically, the other kidney enlarges. As previously stated, the kidneys of the fœtus and of the young child show distinct fissures which makes each organ lobulated (Fig. 1027). The adult kidneys frequently exhibit remains of these fissures. A **horseshoe kidney** is a condition in which the lower poles of the two kidneys are united by kidney structure, the bond of union crossing the middle line. The strip of kidney tissue which effects the junction may be slight in amount,

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

considerable, or extensive. Sometimes the two kidneys are completely fused together into one large organ with two ureters.

Surface Form. The kidneys, being situated at the back part of the abdominal cavity and deeply placed, cannot be felt unless enlarged or misplaced. They are situated on the confines of the epigastric and umbilical regions internally, with the hypochondriac and lumbar regions externally. The left is somewhat higher than the right. According to Morris, the position of the kidney may be thus defined: *Anteriorly:* "1. A horizontal line through the umbilicus is below the lower edge of each kidney. 2. A vertical line carried upward to the costal arch from the middle of Poupart's ligament has one-third of the kidney to its outer side and two-thirds to its inner side—*i. e.*, between this line and the median line of the body." In adopting these lines it must be borne in mind that the axes of the kidneys are not vertical, but oblique, and if continued upward would meet about the ninth dorsal vertebra. *Posteriorly:* The upper end of the left kidney would be defined by a line drawn horizontally outward from the spinous process of the eleventh dorsal vertebra, and its lower end by a point two inches above the iliac crest. The right kidney would be half to three-quarters of an inch below. Morris lays down the following rules for indicating the position of the kidney on the posterior surface of the body: "1. A line parallel with, and one inch from, the spine, between the lower edge of the tip of the spinous process of the eleventh dorsal vertebra and the lower edge of the spinous process of the third lumbar vertebra. 2. A line from the top of this first line outward at right angles to it for two and three-quarter inches. 3. A line from the lower end of the first transversely outward for two and three-quarter inches. 4. A line parallel to the first and connecting the outer extremities of the second and third lines just described."

The hilum of the kidney lies about two inches from the middle line of the back, at the level of the spinous process of the first lumbar vertebra.

Surgical Anatomy.—Cases of *congenital absence* of a kidney, of *atrophy* of a kidney, and of *horseshoe kidney* are of great importance, and must be duly taken into account, when nephrectomy is contemplated. A more common malformation is where the two kidneys are *fused together*. They may be only joined together at their lower ends by means of a thick mass of renal tissue, so as to form a horseshoe-shaped body, or they may be completely united, forming a disk-like kidney, from which two ureters descend into the bladder. These fused kidneys are generally situated in the middle line of the abdomen, but may be misplaced as well.

One or both kidneys may be *misplaced* as a congenital condition, and remain fixed in this abnormal position. They are then very often misshapen. They may be situated higher or lower than normal or removed farther from the spine than usual or they may be displaced into the iliac fossa, over the sacro-iliac joint, on to the promontory of the sacrum, or into the pelvis between the rectum and bladder or by the side of the uterus. In these latter cases they may give rise to very serious trouble. The kidney may also be misplaced as a congenital condition, but may not be fixed. It is then known as a *floating kidney*. It is believed to be due to the fact that the kidney is completely enveloped by peritoneum, which then passes backward to the spine as a double layer, forming a *mesonephron*, which permits of movement taking place. The kidney may also be misplaced as an acquired condition; in these cases the kidney is mobile in the tissues by which it is surrounded, either moving in or moving with its fatty capsule. This condition is known as *movable kidney* (*nephroptosis*), and is more common in the female than in the male, and on the right than the left side. If a displaced kidney becomes fixed in an abnormal position, it is said to be *dislocated*. Movable kidney cannot be distinguished from floating kidney until the kidney is exposed by incision. Other malformations are the persistence of the fœtal lobulation; the presence of two pelves or two ureters to the one kidney. In some rare instances a third kidney may be present.

The kidney is embedded in a large quantity of loose fatty tissue, and is but partially covered by peritoneum; hence, *rupture* of this organ is not nearly so serious an accident as rupture of the liver or spleen, since the extravasation of blood and urine which follows is, in the majority of cases, outside the peritoneal cavity. Occasionally the kidney may be *bruised* by blows in the loin or by being compressed between the lower ribs and the ilium when the body is violently bent forward. This is followed by a little transient *hæmaturia*, which, however, speedily passes off. Occasionally, when rupture involves the pelvis of the kidney or the commencement of the ureter, this duct may become blocked, and *hydronephrosis* follows.

The loose cellular tissue around the kidney may be the seat of suppuration, constituting *perinephritic abscess*. This may be due to injury, to disease of the kidney itself, or to extension of inflammation from neighboring parts. The abscess may burst into the pleura, causing empyema; into the colon or bladder; or may point externally in the groin or loin. *Tumors of the kidney*, of which, perhaps, *sarcoma* in children is the most common, may be recognized by their position and fixity; by the resonant colon lying in front of it; by their not moving with respiration; and by their rounded outline, not presenting a notched anterior margin like the spleen, with which they are most likely to be confounded. The *examination of the kidney* should be bimanual; that is to say, one hand should be placed in the flank and firm pressure made forward, while

the other hand is buried in the abdominal wall, over the situation of the organ. Manipulation of the kidney frequently produces a peculiar sickening sensation and some faintness.

The kidney has, of late years, been frequently attacked surgically. It may be exposed and opened for exploration or the evacuation of pus (*nephrotomy*); it may be incised for the removal of stone (*nephro-lithotomy*); it may be sutured when wounded (*nephrorrhaphy*); it may be fixed in place by sutures (*nephropexy*) or gauze pads when movable or floating; or it may be removed (*nephrectomy*).

The kidney may be exposed either by a *lumbar* or *abdominal incision*. The operation is best performed by a lumbar incision, except in a case of very large tumor or of wandering kidney with a loose mesonephron, on account of the advantages which it possesses of not opening the peritoneum and of affording admirable drainage. It may be performed either by an oblique a vertical, or a transverse incision. A common incision for exposing the kidney begins an inch below the twelfth rib at the margin of the Erector spinae muscle and passes obliquely downward and forward, exposing the anterior border of the Latissimus dorsi and the posterior border of the Internal oblique. The surgeon divides the posterior leaflet of the lumbar fascia, draws aside or incises the Quadratus lumborum, and cuts the anterior leaflet of the lumbar fascia and also the transversalis fascia. He opens the fatty capsule down to the kidney and strips it from the true capsule, bringing the kidney outside of the body for inspection. The vertical incision at the edge of the Erector spinae muscle is frequently used. A gridiron or muscle-splitting operation is used by some in order to avoid the division of nerves, vessels, and muscular fibre.

The abdominal operation is best performed by an incision in the linea semilunaris on the side of the kidney to be removed, as recommended by Langenbuch; the kidney is then reached from the outer side of the colon, ascending or descending, as the case may be, and the vessels of the colon are not interfered with. If the incision were made in the linea alba, the kidney would be reached from the inner side of the colon, and the vessels running to supply the colon would necessarily be interfered with. The incision is made of varying length according to the size of the kidney and commences just below the costal arch. The abdominal cavity is opened. The intestines are held aside, and the outer layer of the mesocolon incised, so that the fingers can be introduced behind the peritoneum and the renal vessels are sought for. These vessels are then to be ligatured: if tied separately, care must be taken to ligature the artery first. The kidney must now be enucleated, and the vessels and the ureter divided, and the latter disinfected and tied, and, if it is thought necessary, stitched to the edge of the wound.

THE URETER (Figs. 1004, 1005, 1006, 1011, 1028, 1029).

The ureters are the two tubes which conduct the urine from the kidneys into the bladder. The ureter commences within the sinus of the kidney by a number of short truncated branches, the **calices** or **infundibula**, which unite either directly or indirectly to form a dilated pouch, the **pelvis** (Fig. 1010), from which the ureter, after passing through the hilum of the kidney, descends to the bladder. The **calices** are cup-like tubes encircling the apices of the Malpighian pyramids; but inasmuch as one calyx may include two or even more papillae, their number is generally less than the pyramids themselves. The calices vary in number from eight to eighteen. These calices converge into two or three tubular divisions which by their junction form the **pelvis** or **dilated portion of the ureter**. The portion last mentioned, where the pelvis merges into the ureter proper, is found opposite the spinous process of the first lumbar vertebra, in which situation it is accessible behind the peritoneum (Fig. 1006).

The Ureter Proper.—The ureter proper is a cylindrical membranous tube, about sixteen inches in length and of the diameter of a goosequill, extending from the pelvis of the kidney to the bladder. Its course is obliquely downward and inward through the lumbar region (*pars abdominalis*) (Fig. 1029), into the cavity of the pelvis (*pars pelvina*) (Fig. 1029), where it passes downward, forward, and inward across that cavity to the base of the bladder, into which it then opens by a constricted orifice (*orificium ureteris*) (Fig. 1045), after having passed obliquely for nearly an inch between its muscular and mucous coats (Fig. 1028). The lower part of the abdominal portion of the ureter exhibits a spindle-shaped dilatation.

Relations (Fig. 1029).—In its course it rests upon the Psoas muscle, being covered by the peritoneum, and crossed obliquely, from within outward, by the

spermatic vessels; the right ureter is crossed by the branches of the mesenteric arteries, which are distributed to the ascending colon, and the left ureter by those for the descending colon; the right ureter lying close to the outer side of the inferior vena cava. Opposite the first piece of the sacrum it crosses either the common or external iliac artery and vein, lying behind the ileum on the *right* side and behind the sigmoid flexure of the colon on the *left* side. In the pelvis it enters the posterior false ligament of the bladder, below the obliterated hypogastric artery, the vas deferens in the male passing between it and the bladder. In the female the ureter is to the inner side of the uterine artery at the wall of the pelvis, it passes forward and inward below the posterior layer of the broad ligament running through the parametrium, passing along the side of the neck of the uterus and upper part of the vagina, being in contact with the anterior and lateral vaginal walls and being crossed anteriorly by the uterine artery (Fig. 1099). At the base of the bladder the ureter is situated about two inches from its fellow: lying, in the male, about an inch and a half from the vesical orifice of the urethra, at one of the posterior angles of the trigone (Fig. 1045).

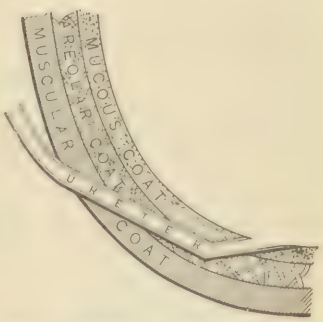


FIG. 1028. Diagram showing method of entrance of the ureter into the bladder. (F. H. Gerrish.)

Structure.—The ureter is composed of three coats—**fibrous**, **muscular**, and **mucous**.

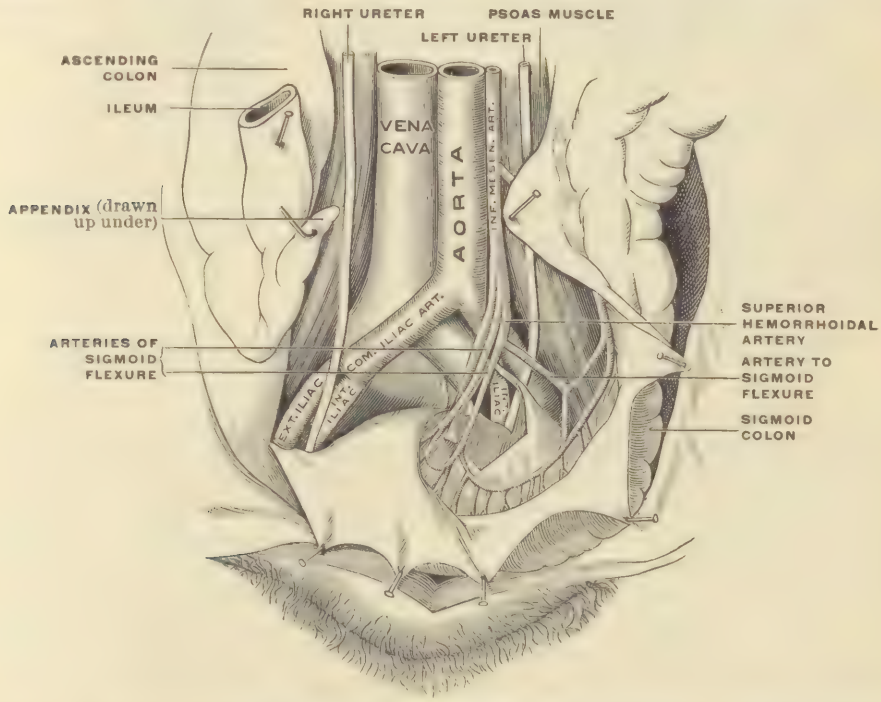


FIG. 1029.—The relations of the pelvic mesocolon with the wall, the iliac sigmoid and superior hemorrhoidal arteries and the ureter. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The Fibrous Coat (*tunica adventitia*).—The fibrous coat is the same throughout the entire length of the duct, being continuous at one end with the fibrous capsule of the kidney at the floor of the sinus, while at the other it is lost in the fibrous structure of the bladder.

The Muscular Coat (*tunica muscularis*).—In the pelvis of the kidney the muscular coat consists of two layers, longitudinal and circular: the **longitudinal** fibres become lost upon the sides of the papillae at the extremities of the calices; the circular fibres may be traced surrounding the medullary structure in the same situation. In the ureter proper the muscular fibres are very distinct, and are arranged in three layers—an **external longitudinal** (*stratum externum*), a **middle circular** (*stratum medium*), and an **internal layer** (*stratum internum*), less distinct than the other two, but having a general longitudinal direction. According to Kölliker, this internal layer is only found in the neighborhood of the bladder.

The Mucous Coat (*tunica mucosa*).—The mucous coat is smooth, and presents a few longitudinal folds which become effaced by distention. It is continuous with the mucous membrane of the bladder below, whilst it is prolonged over the papillae of the kidney above. Its epithelium is of a peculiar character, and resembles that found in the bladder. It is known by the name of **transitional epithelium**. It consists of several layers of cells, of which the innermost—that is to say, the cells in contact with the urine—are quadrilateral in shape, with concave margins on their outer surface, into which fit the rounded ends of the cells of the second layer. These, the intermediate cells, more or less resemble columnar epithelium, and are pear-shaped, with a rounded internal extremity which fits into the concavity of the cells of the first layer, and a narrow external extremity which is wedged in between the cells of the third layer. The external or third layer consists of conical or oval cells varying in number in different parts, and presenting processes which extend down into the basement-membrane.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** supplying the ureter are branches from the **renal, spermatic, internal iliac,** and **inferior vesical.**

The **nerves** are derived from the **inferior mesenteric, spermatic,** and **pelvic plexuses.**

Surgical Anatomy.—*Subcutaneous rupture* of the ureter is not a common accident, but occasionally occurs from a sharp, direct blow on the abdomen, as from the kick of a horse. The ureter may be either torn completely across, or only partially divided, and, as a rule, the peritoneum escapes injury. If torn completely across the urine collects in the retroperitoneal tissues; if it is not completely divided, the lumen of the tube may become obstructed and hydro-nephrosis or pyo-nephrosis results. The ureter may be accidentally *wounded* in some abdominal operations; if this should happen, the divided ends must be sutured together, or, failing to accomplish this, the upper end must be implanted into the bladder or the intestine.

THE SUPRARENAL CAPSULE OR GLAND (GLANDULA SUPRARENALIS) (Figs. 1010, 1030, 1031).

The suprarenal capsules belong to the class of ductless glands. They are two small flattened bodies, of a yellowish color, situated at the back part of the abdomen, behind the peritoneum, and immediately above and in front of the upper end of each kidney; hence their name. The right one (Fig. 1030) is somewhat triangular in shape, bearing a resemblance to a cocked hat; the left (Fig. 1031) is more semilunar, usually larger and placed at a higher level than the right. They vary in size in different individuals, being sometimes so small as to be scarcely detected; their usual size is from an inch and a quarter to nearly two inches in length, rather less in width, and from two to three lines in thickness. Their average weight is from one to one and a half drachms each.

Relations.—The relations of the suprarenal capsules differ on the two sides of the body.

The Right Suprarenal (Fig. 1030).—The right suprarenal is roughly triangular in shape, its angles pointing upward, downward, and outward. It presents two surfaces for examination, an anterior and a posterior. The **anterior surface** (*facies*

anterior) presents two areas, separated by a furrow, the **hilum** (*hilus glandulae suprarenalis*): one area occupying about one-third of the whole surface, is situated above and internally; it is depressed, uncovered by peritoneum, and is in contact in front with the posterior surface of the right lobe of the liver, and along its inner border with the inferior vena cava; the remaining area is elevated, and is divided into a non-peritoneal portion, in contact with the hepatic flexure of the duodenum, and a portion covered by peritoneum forming the hepato-renal fold. The **posterior surface** (*facies posterior*) is slightly convex, and rests upon the Diaphragm. The **base** (*basis glandulae suprarenalis*) is concave, and is in contact with the upper end and the adjacent part of the anterior surface of the kidney.

The Left Suprarenal (Fig. 1031).—The left suprarenal is crescentic in shape, its concavity being adapted to the upper end of the left kidney. It presents an inner

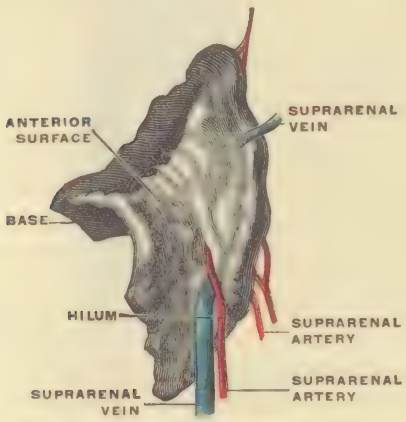


FIG. 1030.—The right suprarenal gland. (Spalteholz.)

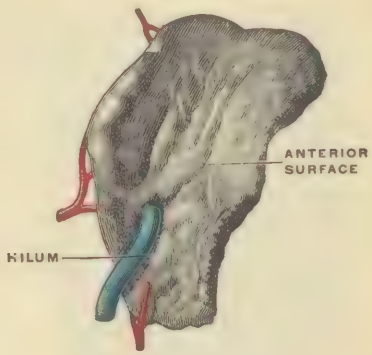


FIG. 1031.—The left suprarenal gland. (Spalteholz.)

border which is convex, and an outer which is concave; its upper border is narrow, and its lower rounded. Its **anterior surface** (*facies anterior*) presents two areas: an upper one, covered by the peritoneum forming the lesser sac, which separates it from the cardiac end of the stomach and to a small extent from the superior extremity of the spleen; and a lower one, which is in contact with the pancreas and splenic artery, and is therefore not covered by the peritoneum. A hilum is present, as in the right suprarenal. Its **posterior surface** (*facies posterior*) presents a vertical ridge, which divides it into two areas. The ridge lies in the sulcus between the kidney and crus of the Diaphragm, while the area on either side of it lies on these parts respectively; the outer area, which is thin, resting on the kidney, and the inner and smaller area resting on the left crus of the Diaphragm. The surface of the suprarenal gland is surrounded by areolar tissue containing much fat, and closely invested by a thin fibrous coat, which is difficult to remove, on account of numerous fibrous processes and vessels which enter the organ through the furrows on its anterior surface and base.

Accessory Suprarenal Glands (*glandulae suprarenales accessoriae*).—Small accessory suprarenals are often to be found in the connective tissue around the suprarenals. The smaller of these, on section, show a uniform surface, but in some of the larger a distinct medulla can be made out.

Structure (Figs. 1032, 1033, and 1034).—On making a perpendicular section (Fig. 1032), the suprarenal gland is seen to consist of two substances—**external** or **cortical** and **internal** or **medullary**. The former, which constitutes the chief part of the organ, is of a deep-yellow color. The medullary substance is soft, pulpy,

and of a dark-brown or black color, whence the name **atrabiliary capsules** formerly given to these organs. In the centre is often seen a space, not natural, but formed by breaking down after death of the medullary substance.

The Cortical Portion (*substantia corticalis*) (Fig. 1032).—The cortical substance consists chiefly of narrow columnar masses placed perpendicularly to the surface. This arrangement is due to the disposition of the capsule, which sends into the interior of the gland processes passing in vertically and communicating with each other by transverse bands so as to form spaces which open into each other. These spaces are of slight depth near the surface of the organ, so that there the section somewhat resembles a net; this is termed the **zona glomerulosa**; but they become much deeper or longer farther in, so as to resemble pipes or tubes placed endwise,

Fig. 1032.—Vertical section of the suprarenal capsule. (From Elberth, in Stricker's Manual.)

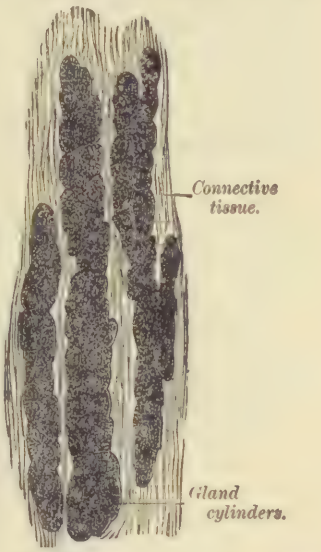


Fig. 1033.—Minute structure of suprarenal capsule.

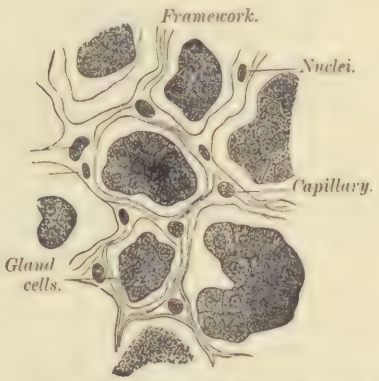


Fig. 1034.—Minute structure of suprarenal capsule.

the **zona fasciculata**. Still deeper down, near the medullary part, the spaces become again of small extent; this is named the **zona reticularis**. These processes or trabeculae, derived from the capsule and forming the framework of the spaces, are composed of fibrous connective tissue with longitudinal bundles of unstriped muscular fibres. Within the interior of the spaces are contained groups of polyhedral cells, which are finely granular in appearance, and contain a spherical nucleus, and not infrequently fat-globules. These groups of cells do not entirely fill the spaces in which they are contained, but between them and the trabeculae of the framework is a channel which is believed to be a lymph-path or sinus, and which communicates with certain passages between the cells composing the

group. The lymph-path is supposed to open into a plexus of efferent lymphatic vessels which are contained in the capsule.

The Medullary Portion (*substantia medullaris*) (Fig. 1032).—In the medullary portion the fibrous stroma seems to be collected together into a much closer arrangement, and forms bundles of connective tissue which are loosely applied to the large plexus of veins of which this part of the organ mainly consists. In the interstices lie a number of cells compared by Frey to those of columnar epithelium. They are coarsely granular, do not contain any fat-molecules, and some of them are branched. Luschka has affirmed that these branches are connected with the nerve-fibres of a very intricate plexus which is found in the medulla; this statement has not been verified by other observers, for the tissue of the medullary substance is less easy to make out than that of the cortical, owing to its rapid decomposition.

Vessels and Nerves.—The numerous arteries which enter the suprarenal bodies from the sources mentioned below penetrate the cortical part of the gland, where they break up into capillaries in the fibrous septa, and these converge to the very numerous veins of the medullary portion, which are collected together into the suprarenal vein, which usually emerge as a single vessel from the centre of the gland.

The **arteries** supplying the suprarenal capsules are three in number and of large size; they are derived from the **aorta,** the **phrenic,** and the **renal**; they subdivide into numerous minute branches previous to entering the substance of the gland.

The **suprarenal vein** returns the blood from the medullary venous plexus, and receives several branches from the cortical substance; it emerges from the hilum and opens on the right side into the inferior vena cava, on the left side into the renal vein.

The **lymphatics** form several collections which are about the beginning of the suprarenal vein. They terminate in the glands to the corresponding side of the aorta.

The **nerves** are exceedingly numerous, and are derived from the **solar** and **renal plexuses,** and, according to Bergmann, from the **phrenic** and **pneumogastric nerves.** They enter the lower and inner part of the capsule, traverse the cortex, and terminate about the cells of the medulla. They have numerous small ganglia developed upon them, from which circumstance the organ has been conjectured to have some function in connection with the sympathetic nervous system.

THE CAVITY OF THE PELVIS.

The cavity of the pelvis is that part of the general abdominal cavity which is below the level of the ilio-pectineal lines and the promontory of the sacrum.

Boundaries.—It is bounded behind by the sacrum, the coccyx, the Pyriformis muscles, and the great sacro-sciatic ligaments; in front and at the sides by the portions of the innominate bones below the ilio-pectineal lines. In front and to the sides the bony sides of the pelvic cavity are partly covered by the internal Obturator muscles, and internal to these muscles by the parietal part of the pelvic fascia. Above, it communicates with the cavity of the abdomen; and below, the outlet is closed by the triangular ligament, the Lævatores ani and Coccygei muscles, and the visceral layer of the pelvic fascia, which is reflected from the wall of the pelvis on to the viscera.

Contents.—The viscera contained in this cavity are—the **urinary bladder,** the **rectum,** and **some of the generative organs** peculiar to each sex, and **some convolutions of the small intestines.** The pelvic viscera are partially covered by the peritoneum, and supplied with blood-vessels, lymphatics, and nerves.

THE URINARY BLADDER (VESICA URINARIA) (Figs. 1037, 1038, 1054, 1055).

The urinary bladder is the reservoir for the urine. It is a musculo-membranous sac situated in the pelvis, behind the pubes, and in front of the rectum in the male, the cervix uteri and vagina intervening between it and that intestine in the female. The shape, position, and relations of the bladder are greatly influenced by age,

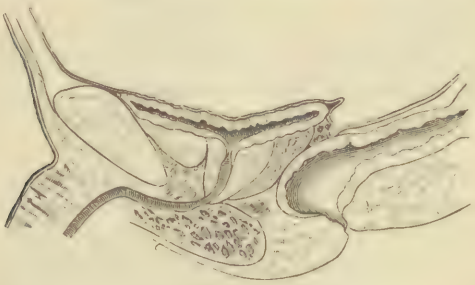


FIG. 1035.—The empty bladder. (Poirier and Charpy.)

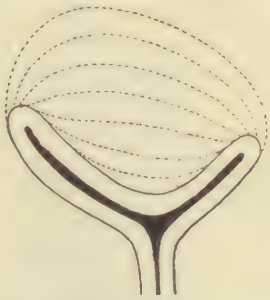


FIG. 1036.—Modifications of form of the bladder during distention (Poirier and Charpy.)

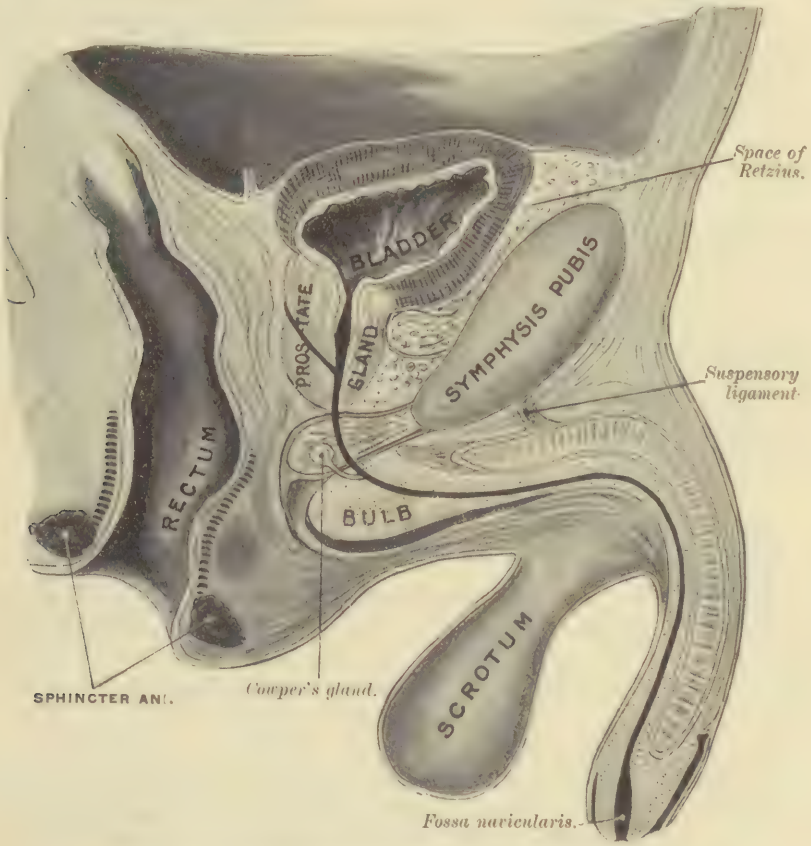


FIG. 1037.—Vertical section of bladder, penis, and urethra.

sex, and the degree of distention of the organ. *During infancy* it is conical in shape, and projects above the symphysis pubis into the hypogastric region. *In the adult*, when quite empty and contracted (Figs. 1035 and 1036), it is cup-shaped, and on vertical median section its cavity, with the adjacent portion of the urethra, presents a Y-shaped cleft, the stem of the Y corresponding to the urethra. It is

placed deeply in the pelvis, flattened from before backward, and reaches as high as the upper border of the symphysis pubis. When slightly distended, it has a rounded form, and is still contained within the pelvic cavity (Fig. 1036), and when greatly distended (Figs. 1036 and 1037), it is ovoid in shape, rising into the abdominal cavity, and often extending nearly as high as the umbilicus. It is larger in its vertical diameter than from side to side, and its long axis is directed from above obliquely downward and backward, in a line directed from some point between the symphysis pubis and umbilicus (according to its distention) to the end of the coccyx. The bladder, when distended, is slightly curved forward toward the

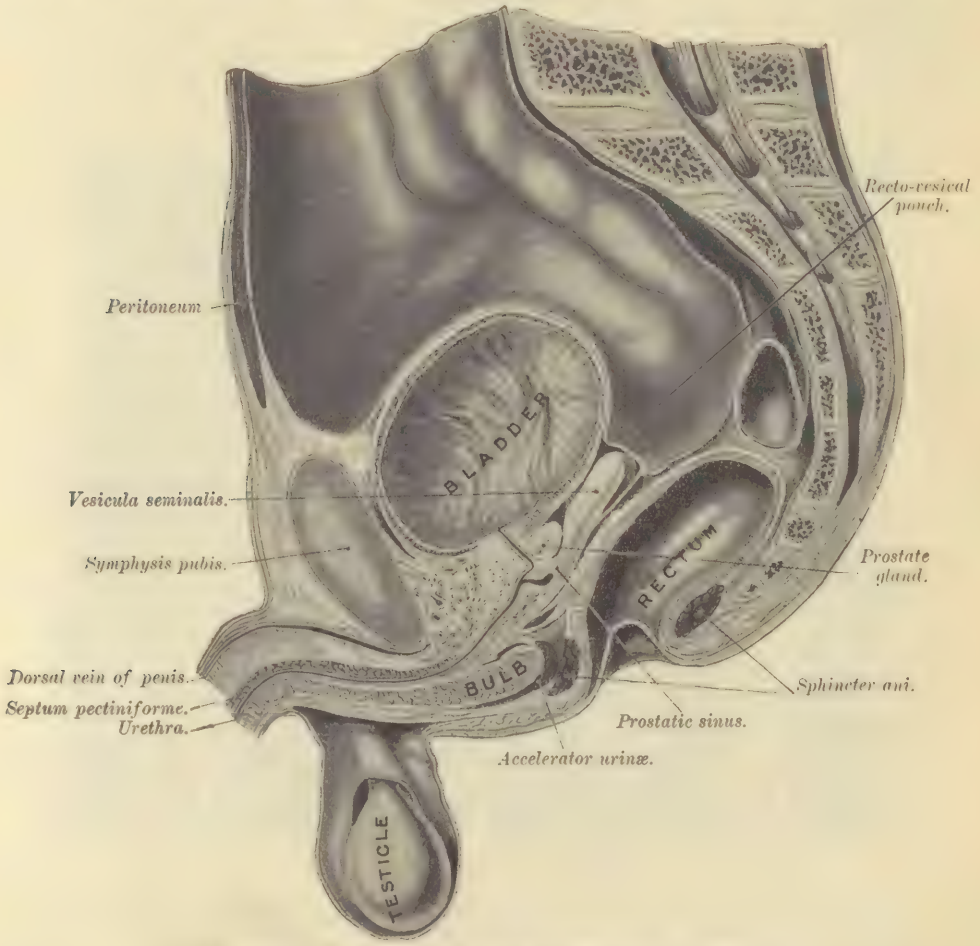


FIG. 1038.—Vertical median section of the male pelvis. (Henle.)

anterior wall of the abdomen, so as to be more convex behind than in front. In the female it is larger in the transverse than in the vertical diameter, and its capacity is said to be greater than in the male.[1] When moderately distended, it measures about five inches in length, and three inches across, and the ordinary amount which it can contain without serious discomfort is about a pint.

The bladder is divided for purposes of description into a **superior**, an **antero-inferior**, and two **lateral surfaces**, a **base** or **fundus**, and a **summit** or **apex**.

Surfaces. The Superior or Abdominal Surface (Figs. 852, 1037, 1038, and 1055). —The superior or abdominal surface is entirely free, and is covered throughout by

[1] According to Henle, the bladder is considerably smaller in the female than in the male.—ED. of 15th English edition.

peritoneum. It looks almost directly upward into the abdominal cavity, and extends in an antero-posterior direction from the apex to the base of the bladder. It is in relation with the small intestine and sometimes with the sigmoid flexure, and, in the female, with the uterus. On each side, in the male, a portion of the vas deferens is in contact with the hinder part of this surface, lying beneath the peritoneum.

The Antero-inferior or Pubic Surface (Figs. 1037, 1038, and 1055).—The antero-inferior or pubic surface looks downward and forward. In the undistended condition it is uncovered by peritoneum, and is in relation with the Obturator internus muscle on each side, with the recto-vesical fascia, and anterior true ligaments of the bladder. It is separated from the body of the pubis by a triangular interval, the **space of Retzius,** occupied by fatty tissue. As the bladder

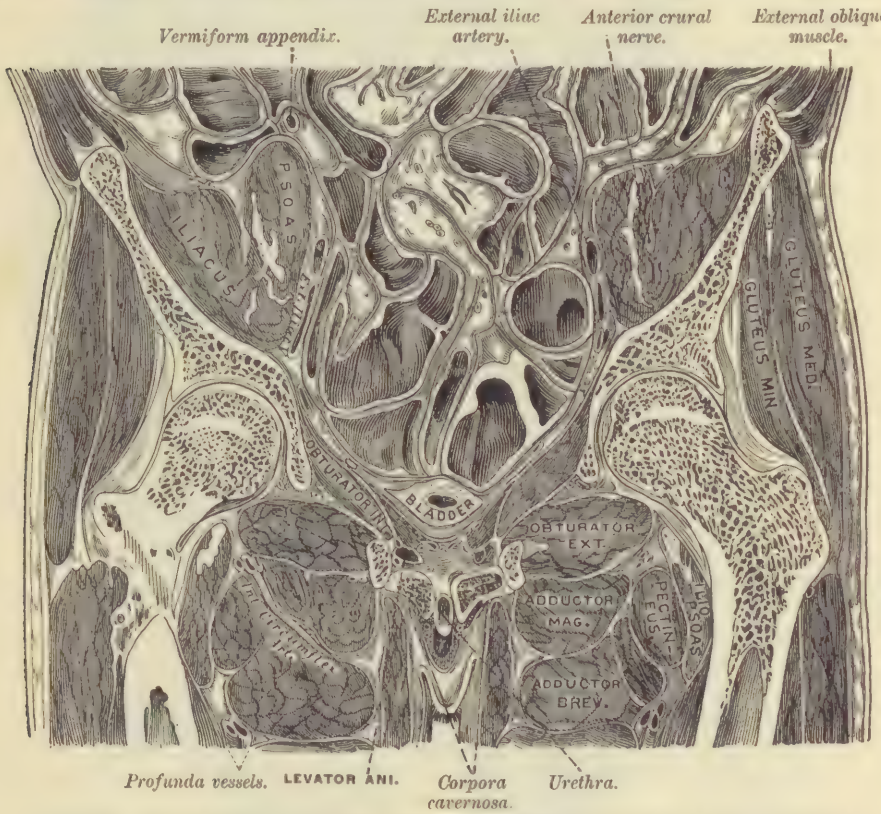


FIG. 1039.—Frontal section of the lower part of the abdomen. Viewed from in front. (Braune.)

ascends into the abdominal cavity during distention the distance between its apex and the umbilicus is necessarily diminished, and the urachus (Fig. 852 and 1055) is thus relaxed; so that, instead of passing directly upward to the umbilicus, it descends first on the upper part of the anterior surface of the bladder, and then, curving upward, ascends on the back of the abdominal wall. The peritoneum, which follows the urachus, thus comes to form a pouch (*plica vesicalis transversa*) of varying depth between the anterior surface of the viscus and the abdominal wall (Fig. 1038). The fold passes to the neighborhood of the internal abdominal rings. Thus, when the bladder is distended, the upper part of its anterior surface is in relation with the urachus and is covered by peritoneum. The lower part of its anterior surface, a distance of about two inches above the symphysis pubis, is devoid of peritoneum, and is in contact with the abdominal wall.

The Lateral Surfaces.—The lateral surfaces are covered behind and above by peritoneum, which extends as low as the level of the obliterated hypogastric artery; below and in front of this, these surfaces are uncovered by peritoneum, and are separated from the Levatores ani muscles and walls of the pelvis by a quantity of loose areolar tissue containing fat. In front this surface is connected to the recto-vesical fascia by a broad expansion on either side, the **lateral true ligaments.** The vas deferens crosses the hinder part of the lateral surface obliquely, and passes between the ureter and the bladder. When the bladder is empty the peritoneum descends on the pelvic wall as low as the lateral border of the bladder and enters a groove known as the **paravesical fossa.** The lateral surfaces, the pubic surface, and the abdominal surface together constitute the **body of the bladder** (*corpus vesicae*).

The Fundus or Base (*fundus vesicae*) (Figs. 1038, 1052, and 1055).—The fundus or base is directed downward and backward, and is partly covered by peritoneum and is in part not covered by it. In the male the upper portion, to within about an inch and a half of the prostate, is covered by the **recto-vesical pouch of peritoneum** (Fig. 855). The lower part is in direct contact with the anterior wall of the second part of the rectum and the vesiculae seminales and vasa deferentia (Figs. 1052 and 1054). The ureters enter the bladder at the upper part of its base, about an inch and a half above the base of the prostate gland (Fig. 1045).

The portion of the bladder in relation with the rectum corresponds to a triangular space, bounded, below, by the prostate gland; above, by the **recto-vesical fold of the peritoneum**; and on each side, by the vesicula seminalis and vas deferens. It is separated from direct contact with the rectum by the **recto-vesical fascia.** When the bladder is very full, the peritoneal fold is raised with it, and the distance between its reflection and the anus is about four inches; but this distance is much diminished when the bladder is empty and contracted. *In the female*, the base of the bladder is connected to the anterior aspect of the cervix uteri by areolar tissue, and is adherent to the anterior wall of the vagina (Fig. 853). Its upper surface is separated from the anterior surface of the body of the uterus by the **utero-vesical pouch of the peritoneum** (Fig. 853).

The so-called **neck** or **cervix of the bladder** (*collum vesicae*) is the point of commencement of the urethra; there is, however, no tapering part, which would constitute a true neck, but the bladder suddenly contracts to the opening of the urethra (Fig. 1038). In the male it is surrounded by the prostate gland and its direction is oblique when the individual is in the erect posture (Figs. 1037 and 1038). In the female its direction is obliquely downward and forward.

The Summit or Apex (*vertex vesicae*).—The summit or apex is the portion of the bladder which when that organ is empty or nearly empty is nearest to the upper border of the symphysis. It is directed upward and forward. In a distended bladder the apex is well above the pubes in the abdominal cavity.

The Urachus or Middle Umbilical Ligament (*ligamentum umbilicale medium*) (Fig. 1055).—The urachus is a connective-tissue cord and is the obliterated remains of the tubular canal of the **allantois,** which existed in the embryo, and a portion of which expanded to form the bladder. It passes upward, from the apex of the bladder, between the transversalis fascia and peritoneum, to the umbilicus, becoming thinner as it ascends. It is composed of fibrous tissue, mixed with plain muscular fibres. The urachus causes the formation of a peritoneal fold, the **plica umbilicalis media** (Fig. 852). On each side of it is placed a fibrous cord, the obliterated portion of the **hypogastric artery,** which, passing upward from the side of the bladder, approaches the urachus above its summit. Over each cord is the fold known as the **plica umbilicalis lateralis** (Fig. 852). In the infant, at birth, the urachus is occasionally found pervious, so that the urine escapes at the umbilicus, and calculi have been found in its canal.

Ligaments.—The bladder is retained in its place by ligaments, which are divided into true and false. The true ligaments are five in number: two anterior, two lateral, and the urachus. The false ligaments, also five in number, are formed by folds of the peritoneum.

The two **anterior true ligaments,** the **pubo-prostatic** or **pubo-vesical ligaments** (*ligamenta puboprostatica*) extend from the back of the ossa pubis, one on each side of the symphysis, to the front of the neck of the bladder, over the anterior surface of the prostate gland. These ligaments are formed by the **recto-vesical fascia,** and contain a few muscular fibres prolonged from the bladder.

The two **lateral true ligaments,** formed by expansions from the fascia lining the lateral wall of the pelvis, are broader and thinner than the preceding. They are attached to the lateral parts of the prostate gland and to the sides of the base of the bladder.

FIG. 1040.—Fibres of the exteral longitudinal layer. (Poirier and Charpy.)

FIG. 1041.—Fibres of the middle or circular layer. (Poirer and Charpy.)

FIG. 1042.—Fibres of the internal longitudinal layer. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **urachus** or **middle umbilical ligament** is the fibro-muscular cord already mentioned, extending between the summit of the bladder and the umbilicus. It is broad below, at its attachment to the bladder, and becomes narrower as it ascends.

The two **posterior false ligaments** pass forward, in the male, from the sides of the rectum (*plicae rectovesicales*); in the female, from the sides of the uterus (*plicae rectouterinae*), to the posterior and lateral aspect of the bladder; they form in the male the lateral boundaries of the **recto-vesical pouch** (*excavatio rectovesicalis*) (Figs. 926 and 1038); they form in the female the lateral boundaries of the **pouch** or **cul-de-sac of Douglas** (*excavatio rectouterina* [*Douglasi*]) (Figs. 853 and 927). The posterior false ligaments contain the obliterated hypogastric arteries and the ureters, together with vessels and nerves. In the base of each fold is smooth muscle-fibre, the **Recto-vesical muscle** (*m. rectovesicalis*).

The two **lateral false ligaments** are reflections of the peritoneum, from the iliac fossae and lateral walls of the pelvis to the sides of the bladder. Each lateral false ligament (*ligamentum umbilicale laterale*) passes in front into the **plica umbilicalis lateralis** over the corresponding hypogastric artery. The two lateral reflections of peritoneum are continuous in front of the apex vesicae, at which point the peritoneum passes upon the urachus.

The **superior** or **anterior false ligament** or the **suspensory ligament** (*plica umbilicalis media*) is the prominent fold of peritoneum extending from the summit of the bladder to the umbilicus. It is carried off from the bladder by the urachus and the

obliterated hypogastric arteries. The peritoneal fold over each obliterated hypogastric artery is called the **plica umbilicalis lateralis** (Fig. 852), and is the prolongation forward of the ligamentum umbilicale laterale. Besides the true and false ligaments, the bladder receives support from the fibrous tissue and unstriated muscle about the seminal vesicles, and terminations of the ureters and vasa deferentia. In the female the connection with the anterior vaginal wall supports the base of the bladder. In both sexes the most solidly fixed part of the bladder is about the orifice of the urethra.

Structure.—The bladder is composed of four coats—**serous, muscular, submucous,** and **mucous.**

The Serous Coat (*tunica serosa*).—The serous coat is partial, and derived from the peritoneum. It invests the superior surface and the upper part of the lateral surfaces and base, and is reflected from these parts on to the abdominal and pelvic walls.

The Muscular Coat (*tunica muscularis*) (Figs. 1040, 1041, and 1042).—The muscular coat consists of three layers of unstriped muscular fibre: an external layer, composed of fibres having for the most part a longitudinal arrangement; a **middle layer,** in which the fibres are arranged, more or less, in a circular manner; and an **internal layer,** in which the fibres have a general longitudinal arrangement.

The **fibres of the external longitudinal layer** (*stratum externum*) arise from the posterior surface of the body of the os pubis in both sexes (*m. pubovesicalis*), and in the male arise also from the adjacent part of the prostate gland and its capsule. They pass, in a more or less longitudinal manner, up the anterior surface of the bladder, over its apex, and then descend along its posterior surface to its base, where they become attached to the prostate in the male and to the front of the vagina in the female. At the sides of the bladder the fibres are arranged obliquely and intersect one another. The external longitudinal layer has been named the **Detrusor urinae muscle.**

The **middle circular layers** (*stratum medium*) are very thinly and irregularly scattered on the body of the organ, and, though to some extent placed transversely to the long axis of the bladder, are for the most part arranged obliquely. Toward the lower part of the bladder, around the neck and the commencement of the urethra, they are disposed in a thick circular layer, forming the **sphincter vesicae,** which is continuous with the muscular fibres of the prostate gland.

The **internal longitudinal layer** (*stratum internum*) is thin, and its fasciculi have a reticular arrangement, but with a tendency to assume for the most part a longitudinal direction. Two bands of oblique fibres, originating behind the orifices of the ureters, converge to the back part of the prostate gland, and are inserted, by means of a fibrous process, into the middle lobe of that organ. They are the **muscles of the ureters,** described by Sir C. Bell, who supposed that during the contraction of the bladder they served to retain the oblique direction of the ureters, and so prevent the reflux of the urine into them.

The Submucous Coat (*tela submucosa*).—The submucous coat consists of a layer of areolar tissue connecting together the muscular and mucous coats, and intimately united to the latter.

The Mucous Coat (*tunica mucosa*).—The mucous coat is thin, smooth, and of a pale rose color. It is continuous above through the ureters with the lining membrane of the uriniferous tubes, and below with that of the urethra. Except at the trigone, it is connected very loosely to the muscular coat by a layer of areolar tissue, and is therefore thrown into folds or rugae when the bladder is empty (Fig. 1046). The mucous membrane over the trigone never presents rugae. The epithelium covering it is of the transitional variety, consisting of a superficial layer of polyhedral flattened cells, each with one, two, or three nuclei (Fig. 1043); beneath these is a stratum of large club-shaped cells with the narrow extremity of each cell directed downward and wedged in between smaller spindle-shaped cells,

each an oval nucleus (Fig. 1044). There are no true glands in the mucous membrane of the bladder, though certain mucous follicles which exist, especially near the neck of the bladder, have been regarded as such.

Objects Seen on the Inner Surface.—Upon the inner surface of the bladder are seen the **mucous membrane, orifices of the ureters,** the **trigone,** and the **commencement of the urethra.**

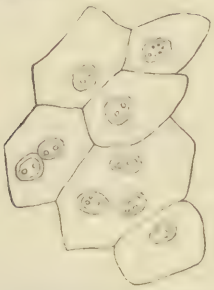


FIG. 1043.—Superficial layer of the epithelium of the bladder. Composed of polyhedral cells of various sizes, each with one, two, or three nuclei. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

FIG. 1044.—Deep layers of epithelium of bladder, showing large club-shaped cells above, and smaller, more spindle-shaped cells below, each with an oval nucleus. (Klein and Noble Smith.)

The Mucous Membrane.—The mucous membrane of the empty bladder is thrown into folds or **rugae,** except over the trigone, where it is firmly adherent to the muscular coat and is smooth (Figs. 1045 and 1046). The folds disappear when the bladder is distended.

The Orifices of the Ureters (Figs. 1045 and 1046).—These are situated at the base of the trigone, being distant from each other about two inches when the bladder is

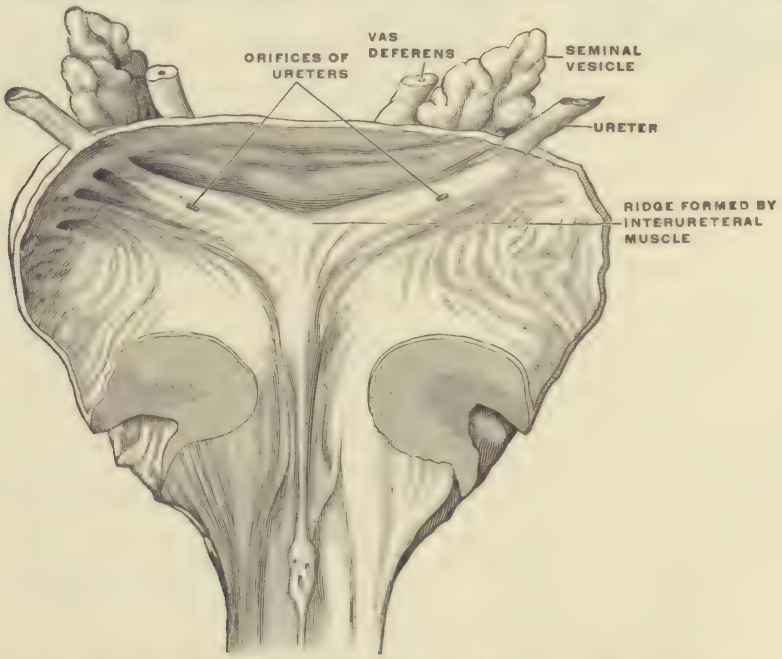


FIG. 1045.—The interior of the bladder, showing the vesical trigone. (Poirier and Charpy.)

moderately distended. Each orifice is about an inch and a half from the base of the prostate and the commencement of the urethra in the moderately distended bladder.

The **Vesical Trigone** or the **Trigonum Vesicae** (Fig. 1045) is a triangular smooth surface, with the apex directed forward, situated at the base of the bladder, immediately behind the urethral orifice. It is paler in color than the rest of the

interior, and never presents any rugae, even in the collapsed condition of the organ, owing to the intimate adhesion of its mucous membrane to the subjacent tissue. It is bounded at each posterior angle by the orifice of a ureter, and in front by the orifice of the urethra. Projecting from the lower and anterior part of the bladder, and reaching to the orifice of the urethra, is a slight elevation of mucous membrane, particularly prominent in old persons, called the **uvula vesicae**. It is formed by a thickening of the submucous tissue.

Stretching from one ureteral opening to the other is a smooth, slightly curved ridge, the convexity of which is toward the urethra. It is produced by transverse muscle-fibres beneath the mucous membrane. The outer prolongations of this ridge beyond the ureteral orifices are called the **ureteral folds** (*plicae ureterícae*). They are created by the ureters as they traverse the bladder wall. About the ureteral orifice are slight radial folds of mucous membrane, which are continuous with the longitudinal folds of the prostatic urethra. "In the empty bladder the ureteral orifice and the openings of the two ureters lie at the angles of an approximately equilateral triangle, whose sides are about one inch in length. When the bladder is distended the distance between the openings may be increased to one and a half inches or more."[1]

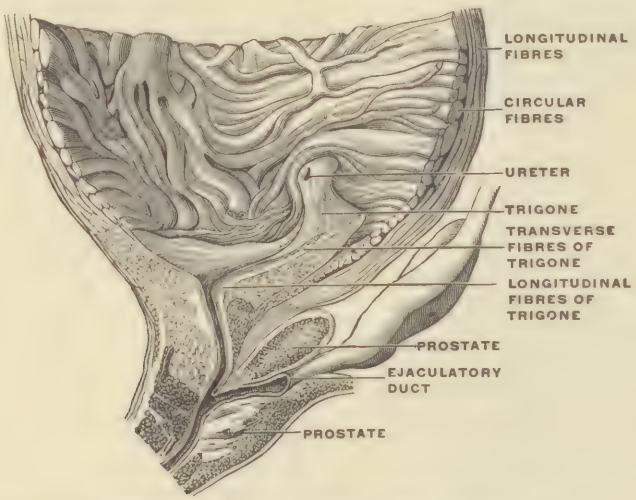


FIG. 1046.—The internal surface of the bladder. (Poirier and Charpy).

The **muscles** of the **ureters** were referred to on p. 1437.

The **internal urethral orifice** (*orificium urethrae internum*) is sickle-shaped and is surrounded by a circular prominence (*annulus urethralis*), which is most distinct in the male.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** (Fig. 424) supplying the bladder are the **superior, middle,** and **inferior vesical** in the male, with additional branches from the **uterine** and **vaginal** in the female. They are all derived from the **anterior trunk of the internal iliac**. The **obturator** and **sciatic arteries** also supply small visceral branches to the bladder. The **veins** form a complicated plexus around the neck, sides, and base of the bladder (Fig. 474). The veins communicate below with the plexus about the prostate and terminate in the internal iliac vein.

The **lymphatics** form two plexuses, one in the muscular and another in the submucous coat. They accompany the blood-vessels. The mucous membrane of the bladder contains no lymphatics whatever (Sappey). The muscular tissue contains a few lymphatics. The subperitoneal tissues contain the usual number.

[1] Professor A. Francis Dixon, in Prof. D. J. Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

The collecting trunks from the anterior surface terminate in the **external iliac glands**. The trunks from the posterior surface terminate in the **internal iliac glands**, the **hypogastric glands** and the glands in front of the **sacral promontory**.

The **nerves** are derived from the **pelvic plexus of the sympathetic** and from the **third** and **fourth sacral nerves**; the former supplying the upper part of the organ, the latter its base and neck. According to F. Darwin, the sympathetic fibres have ganglia connected with them, which send branches to the vessels and to the muscular coat.

Surface Form.—The surface form of the bladder varies with its degree of distention and under other circumstances. In the young child it is represented by a conical figure, the apex of which, even when the viscus is empty, is situated in the hypogastric region, about an inch above the level of the symphysis pubis. In the adult, when the bladder is empty, its apex does not reach above the level of the upper border of the symphysis pubis, and the whole organ is situated in the pelvis; the neck, in the male, corresponding to a line drawn horizontally backward through the symphysis a little below its middle. As the bladder becomes distended, it gradually rises out of the pelvis into the abdomen, and forms a swelling in the hypogastric region, which is perceptible to the hand as well as to percussion. In extreme distention it reaches into the umbilical region. Under these circumstances the lower part of its anterior surface, for a distance of about two inches above the symphysis pubis, is closely applied to the abdominal wall, without the intervention of peritoneum, so that it can be tapped by an opening in the middle line just above the symphysis pubis, without any fear of wounding the serous membrane. When the rectum is distended, the prostatic portion of the urethra is elongated and the bladder lifted out of the pelvis and the peritoneum pushed upward. Advantage is taken of this by some surgeons in performing the operation of suprapubic cystotomy. The rectum is distended by an India-rubber bag, which is introduced into this cavity empty, and is then filled with ten or twelve ounces of water. If now the bladder is injected with about half a pint of some antiseptic fluid, it will appear above the pubes plainly perceptible to the sight and touch. The peritoneum will be pushed out of the way, and an incision three inches long may be made in the linea alba, from the symphysis pubis upward, without any great risk of wounding the peritoneum. Other surgeons object to the employment of this bag, as its use is not unattended with risk, and because it causes pressure on the prostatic veins and hence produces congestion of the vessels over the bladder and a good deal of venous hemorrhage.

When distended, the bladder can be felt in the male, from the rectum, behind the prostate, and fluctuation can be perceived by a bimanual examination, one finger being introduced into the rectum and the distended bladder being tapped on the front of the abdomen with the finger of the other hand. This portion of the bladder—that is, the portion felt in the rectum by the finger—is uncovered by peritoneum.

Surgical Anatomy. A certain defect of development in which the bladder is implicated is known under the name of *extroversion of the bladder*. In this condition the lower part of the abdominal wall and the anterior wall of the bladder are wanting, so that the posterior surface of the bladder presents on the abdominal surface, and is pushed forward by the pressure of the viscera within the abdomen, forming a red, vascular protrusion, on which the openings of the ureters are visible. The penis, except the glans, is rudimentary and is cleft on its dorsal surface, exposing the floor of the urethra—a condition known as *epispadias*. The pelvic bones are also arrested in development (see page 220).

The bladder may be *ruptured* by violence applied to the abdominal wall when the viscus is distended without any injury to the bony pelvis, or it may be torn in case of fracture of the pelvis. The rupture may be either intraperitoneal or extraperitoneal—that is, may implicate the superior surface of the bladder in the former case, or one of the other surfaces in the latter. Rupture of the antero-inferior surface alone is, however, very rare. Until recently intraperitoneal rupture was uniformly fatal, but now abdominal section and suturing the rent with Lembert sutures often saves the patient. The sutures are inserted only through the peritoneal and muscular coats in such a way as to bring the serous surfaces at the margins of the wound into apposition, and one is also inserted just beyond each end of the wound. The bladder should be tested as to whether it is water-tight before closing the external incision.

The muscular coat of the bladder undergoes *hypertrophy* in cases in which there is any persistent obstruction to the flow of urine. Under these circumstances the bundles of which the muscular coat consists become much increased in size, and, interlacing in all directions, give rise to what is known as the *fasciculated bladder*. Between these bundles of muscular fibres the mucous membrane may bulge out, forming sacculi, constituting the *sacculated bladder*, and in these little pouches phosphatic concretions may collect, forming *encysted calculi*. The mucous membrane is very loose and lax, except over the trigone, to allow of the distention of the viscus.

Various forms of *tumors* have been found springing from the wall of the bladder. The *inno-*

cent tumors are the papilloma and the mucous polypus, arising from the mucous membrane; the fibrous tumor, from the submucous tissue; and the myoma, originating in the muscular tissue; and, very rarely, dermoid tumors, the exact origin of which it is difficult to explain. Of the *malignant tumors*, epitheliomata are the most common, but sarcomata are occasionally found in the bladders of children.

Puncture of the bladder is performed above the pubes without wounding the peritoneum. Puncture by the rectum is not now performed, as a permanent fistula may be left from abscess forming between the rectum and the bladder; or pelvic cellulitis may be set up; moreover, it is exceedingly inconvenient to keep a cannula in the rectum. In some cases in performing this operation the recto-vesical pouch of peritoneum has been wounded, inducing fatal peritonitis. The operation, therefore, has been abandoned. *Suprapubic cystotomy* is considered above under the heading of Surface Form. This operation may be employed to permit of the removal of a calculus and is then called *suprapubic lithotomy*.

THE MALE URETHRA (**URETHRA VIRILIS**) (Figs. 1047, 1048, 1049, 1050, 1054).

The urethra in the male extends from the neck of the bladder at the **internal orifice of the urethra** (*orificium urethrae internum*) to the **meatus urinarius**, the **external orifice of the urethra** (*orificium urethrae externum*), at the end of the penis. The internal orifice has been described (p. 1439). The urethra presents a double curve in the flaccid state of the penis (Fig. 1054), but in the erect state of this organ it forms only a single curve, the concavity of which is directed upward. Its length varies from eight to nine inches; and it is divided into three portions, the **prostatic, membranous**, and **spongy**, the structure and relations of which are essentially different. Except during the passage of the urine or semen, the urethra is a mere cleft or slit, transverse, T-shaped or crescentic (Fig. 1049), with its upper and under surfaces in contact. At the meatus urinarius the slit is vertical, and in the prostatic portion somewhat arched (Fig. 1049).

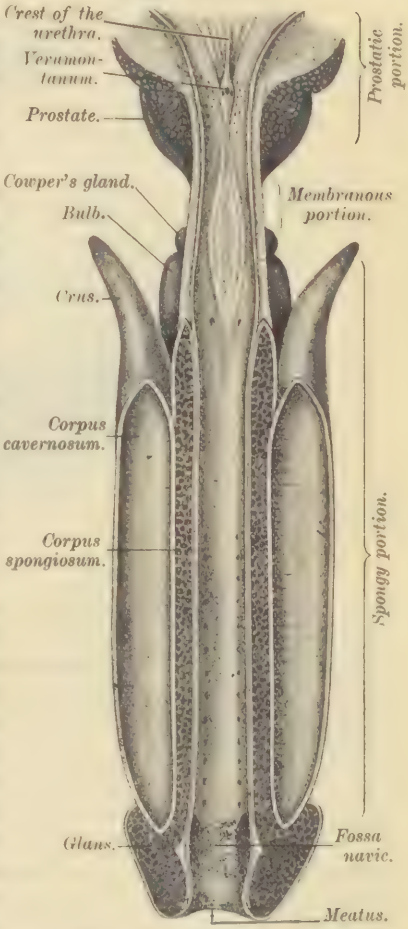


FIG. 1047.—The male urethra, laid open on its anterior (upper) surface. (Testut.)

The First or Prostatic Portion (*pars prostatica*) (Figs. 1037, 1047, 1048, 1055, and 1056).—The first or prostatic portion is the widest and most dilatable part of the canal. It is between the internal orifice of the urethra and the superior layer of the triangular ligament and is within the pelvic cavity. It passes between the two lateral lobes of the prostate gland, from the base to the apex of the gland, lying nearer its anterior than its posterior surface. The gland *seems* to completely surround this portion of the urethra (Fig. 1053), but the glandular matter of the gland does not (Fig. 1051). The gland is like a buckle open in front, and the open part of the buckle is closed by the prostatic muscle. The prostatic urethra is about an inch and a quarter in length; the form of the canal is spindle-shaped, being wider in the middle than at either extremity, and narrowest below, where it joins the membranous portion. Except during the passage of fluid, the canal is in a collapsed state, the anterior wall resting upon the posterior wall (Fig. 1049), and the mucous membrane exhibiting longitu-

dinal folds. When distended, the largest portion of the prostatic urethra has a diameter of about one-third of an inch. A transverse section of the canal as it lies in the prostate is horseshoe-shaped, the convexity being directed forward (Figs. 1049 and 1051). The direction of the canal is nearly vertical, there being a slight curve, which is concave forward (Figs. 1037 and 1038).

Upon the **posterior wall** or **floor** of the canal is a narrow longitudinal ridge, the **crest of the urethra** (*crista urethralis*), formed by an elevation of the mucous membrane and its subjacent tissue (Fig. 1047). This crest begins at the uvula vesicæ, and passes through the prostatic portion and into the membranous portion of the urethra (Fig. 1056), and usually bifurcates at its distal end; it contains, according to Kobelt, muscular and erectile tissues. On this longitudinal ridge is an enlargement, the **verumontanum** or **caput gallinaginis** (*colliculus seminalis*) (Figs. 1047 and 1056). When distended, it may serve to prevent the passage of the semen backward into the bladder. On each side of the verumontanum is a slightly depressed fossa, the floor of which is perforated by numerous apertures, the **orifices of the prostatic ducts** (Figs. 1047 and 1056), from the lateral lobes of the glands; the ducts of the middle

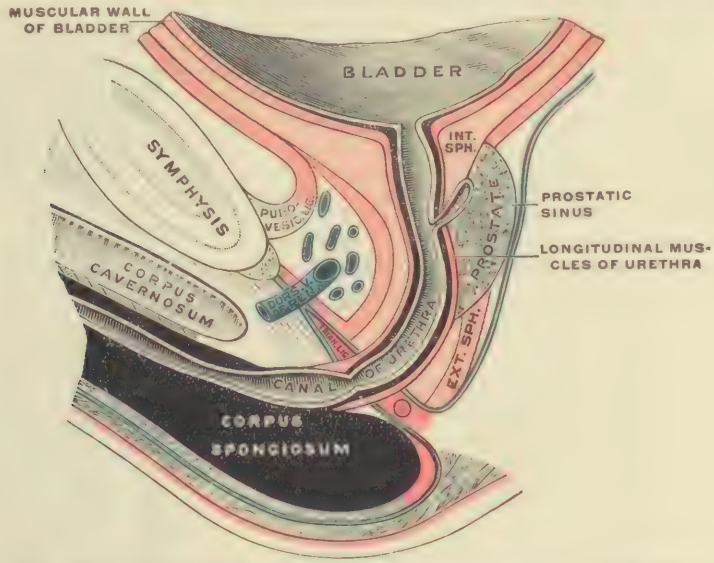


FIG. 1048.—Proximal portions of urethra with surrounding parts. (After Testut.)

lobe open behind the verumontanum. At the forepart of the verumontanum, in the middle line, is a depression, the **prostatic sinus, prostatic utricle, prostatic vesicle, uterus masculinus** or **sinus pocularis** (*utriculus prostaticus*) (Figs. 1038 and 1056); and upon or within its margins are the slit-like openings of the **ejaculatory ducts** (*ductus ejaculatorii*) (Fig. 1056). The sinus pocularis forms a *cul-de-sac* about a quarter of an inch in length, which runs upward and backward in the substance of the prostate behind the transverse band of prostatic tissue which joins the lateral lobes behind the posterior wall of the urethra; its prominent anterior wall partly forms the verumontanum. Its walls are composed of fibrous tissue, muscular fibres, and mucous membrane, and numerous small glands open on its inner surface. It has been called by Weber, who discovered it, the **uterus masculinus**, from its being developed from the united lower ends of the atrophied Müllerian ducts, and therefore being homologous with the uterus and vagina in the female.

The **Second, Muscular** or **Membranous Portion** (*pars membranacea*) (Figs. 1047, 1048, and 1056) extends downward and forward between the apex of the prostate and the bulb of the corpus spongiosum. It is the narrowest part of the canal (excepting the meatus), and measures three-quarters of an inch along its upper, and half an inch along its lower, surface, in consequence of the bulb projecting backward

beneath it. Its anterior concave surface is placed about an inch below and behind the pubic arch, from which it is separated by the dorsal vessels and nerves of the penis, and some muscular fibres. Its posterior convex surface is separated from the rectum by a triangular space, which constitutes the perineum. The membranous portion of the urethra lies chiefly between the inferior and superior layers of the triangular ligament (Fig. 309). The termination of this part of the urethra is overlapped by the **bulb**, and is in front of the triangular ligament (Fig. 309). As it pierces the inferior layer, the fibres around the opening are prolonged over the tube and fix the two structures firmly to each other. The membranous urethra is surrounded by cavernous tissue and by the Compressor urethrae muscle (*m. sphincter urethrae membranaceae*) (Fig. 310). On the floor of the membranous urethra is the anterior extremity of the crista urethralis. Behind this part of the urethra, on each side of the middle line, are **Cowper's glands** (Figs. 308 and 1056). The canal enters the bulb a little in front of the posterior extremity, and the anterior wall or roof of the membranous urethra is a little longer than the posterior wall or floor. The backward projection of the **bulb** hangs over most of the floor of the membranous urethra (Figs. 308, 309, 1047, 1056, and 1058). When the urethra is empty the mucous membrane of the second part is thrown into longitudinal folds, which are obliterated by distention.

The **Third, Penile, Pendulous, Cavernous** or **Spongy Portion** (*pars cavernosa*) (Figs. 1037, 1047, 1048, and 1050) is the longest part of the urethra, and is contained in the corpus

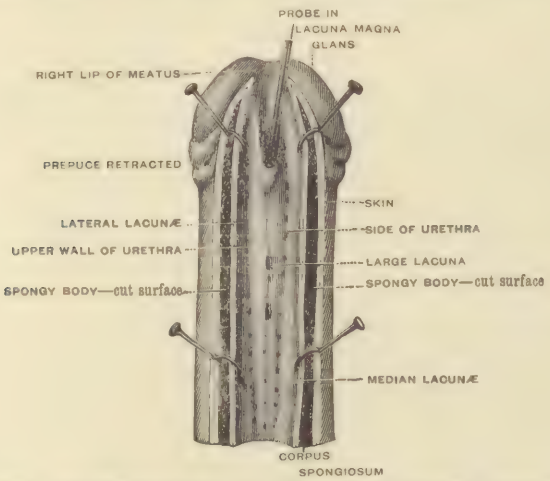


FIG. 1050.—The distal portion of the male urethra, laid open on its posterior (under) surface, showing the lacunae. (Testut.)

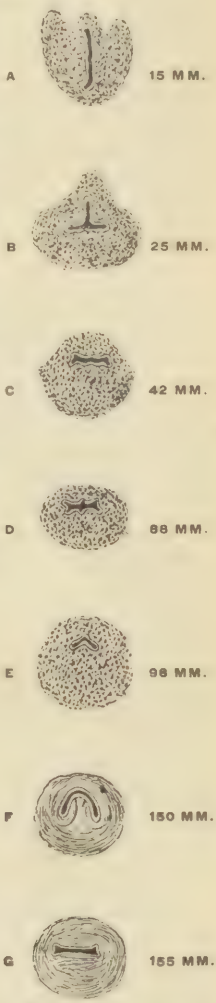


FIG. 1049. — Cross-sections of the male urethra at various distances from its free end, showing marked alterations of form. (Testut.)

spongiosum. It is about six inches in length, and extends from the termination of the membranous portion to the meatus urinarius. It is surrounded throughout its entire course by the erectile tissue of the corpus spongiosum and glans penis. Its proximal end is fixed in position and unchangeable in direction. Its distal end is movable and changeable in direction. Commencing just below the triangular ligament it is first directed forward through the bulb; it then passes downward and forward, the turn beginning at the seat of attachment of the suspensory ligament of the penis (Fig. 1037). The direction of the third portion of the urethra is changed by alterations in the position of the penis. When the canal is closed the anterior and posterior walls are in contact (roof and floor), except in the glans

penis, where the lateral walls come together. "Thus the first part of the canal when empty is represented in cross-section by a transverse slit, and the terminal part by a vertical slit"[1] (Fig. 1049). The calibre of the spongy urethra varies in different portions of the tube. It is of larger diameter in the bulb (bulbous portion of urethra) and in the glans than between these two points. In the body of the penis the canal is of uniform size, and is about one-quarter of an inch in diameter. The **fossa navicularis** (*fossa navicularis urethrae* [*Morgagni*]) is an oblong dilatation of the terminal portion of the penile urethra (Figs. 1037, 1047, and 1060). In the front of the fossa navicularis there is a transverse fold of mucous membrane, the **valve of Guerin** (*valvulae fossae navicularis*). It is part of a distinct depression or pocket. The fossa navicularis opens anteriorly by the **meatus urinarius.**

The **meatus urinarius** or **external orifice of the urethra** (*orificium urethrae externum*) (Figs. 1047 and 1059) is the most contracted part of the urethra; it is a vertical slit (Fig. 1049), about three lines in length, bounded on each side by a small lip or **labium.**

The inner surface of the lining membrane of the urethra, especially on the floor of the spongy portion, presents the orifices of numerous mucous glands (Fig. 1050) situated in the submucous tissue, and named the **glands of Littré** (*glandulae urethrales*). A number of little recesses or follicles, called **lacunae** (*lacunae urethrales*), open into the penile urethra. Some of the glands of Littré open into the lacunae; some do not. They vary in size, and their orifices are directed forward, so that they may easily intercept the point of a catheter in its passage along the canal. One of these lacunae, larger than the rest, is situated in the upper surface of the fossa navicularis, about half an inch from the orifice; it is called the **lacuna magna** (Fig. 1060). Into the bulbous portion are found opening the ducts of Cowper's glands.

Structure.—The urethra is composed of a continuous mucous membrane, supported by a submucous tissue which connects it with the various structures through which it passes.

The Mucous Coat.—The mucous coat forms part of the genito-urinary mucous membrane. It is continuous with the mucous membrane of the bladder, ureters, and kidneys; externally with the integument covering the glans penis; and is prolonged into the ducts of the glands which open into the urethra—viz., Cowper's glands and the prostate gland—into the vasa deferentia and the seminal vesicles through the ejaculatory ducts. The mucous membrane is arranged in longitudinal folds when the tube is empty. Small papillae are found upon it near the orifice, and its epithelial lining is of the columnar variety, excepting near the meatus, where it is squamous.

The Glands and Crypts of the Urethral Mucous Membrane (Fig. 1049).—There is a pocket, the **lacuna magna** (Fig. 1060), opening to the front in the upper wall of the fossa navicularis. The fossa is bounded by the **valve of Guerin** (*valvulae fossa navicularis*). The lacunae of Morgagni are in the spongy urethra back of the valve of Guerin. The lacunae look forward. The largest of them is on the roof of the fossa navicularis, one and one-half inches from the orifice (see above). Some of the lacunae receive the secretion from the glands of Littré; others do not, because some of the glands open on the free surface. The larger lacunae are one-third of an inch deep and are placed in a longitudinal row upon the anterior wall. The smaller lacunae are in longitudinal rows at the sides of the tube. The glands of Morgagni are present throughout the urethra, except in its most anterior part. In the prostatic urethra they are arranged in rows. In the membranous urethra they are scattered irregularly. In the spongy portion they are most numerous on the anterior wall and are more plentiful on the sides than on the floor. Besides the lacunae and racemose glands, there are the opening of the prostatic glands, the ejaculatory ducts, Cowper's glands, and the opening of the sinus pocularis.

[1] Professor A. Francis Dixon, in Professor D. J. Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

The Submucous Tissue.—The submucous tissue consists of a vascular erectile layer. It contains the glands of Littré, especially in the posterior part. These glands are lined with cylindrical epithelium and enter the submucous coat.

The Muscular Layer.—The muscular layer is continuous with the muscle of the prostate and bladder. It is composed of non-striated muscle arranged in an outer layer of **circular fibres** (*stratum circulare*) and an inner layer of **longitudinal fibres** (*stratum longitudinale*). It is placed external to the submucous coat. In the penile urethra there is only a thin layer of longitudinal fibres. In the membranous urethra and the prostatic urethra there are two layers of muscle, an inner thin layer of longitudinal fibres and a thicker layer of circular fibres. The longitudinal fibres, when contracted, shorten the urethra and increase its diameter. The circular fibres are in a state of tonic contraction and close the urethra. In fact, they constitute the real **sphincter** (Zeissl, Zuckerkandl). The so-called sphincter of the urethra, the **Accelerator urinae**, is a voluntary muscle and is not the real sphincter. Outside of the muscular layer of the urethra is the tissue of the corpus spongiosum.

Surgical Anatomy.—The urethra may be *ruptured* by the patient falling astride of any hard substance and striking his perinæum, so that the urethra is crushed against the pubic arch. Bleeding will at once take place from the urethra, and this, together with the bruising in the perinæum and the history of the accident, will at once point to the nature of the injury.

Rupture of the urethra leads to *extravasation of urine*. In rupture back of the superior layer of the triangular ligament the urine usually follows the rectum and reaches the margin of the anus. Rupture between the two layers of the triangular ligament liberates urine between the two layers, where it remains until a path of exit is made by suppuration or the surgeon's knife. In rupture in front of the anterior layer of the ligament the urine passes into the scrotum and may mount up to the abdomen between the symphysis and the pubic spine, between which points the deep layer of the superficial fascia is not attached. It cannot pass to the thigh nor cross the mid-line, because the fascia is attached to the fascia lata and at the mid-line.

The surgical anatomy of the urethra is of considerable importance in connection with the passage of instruments into the bladder. Otis was the first to point out that the urethra is capable of great dilatation, so that, excepting through the external meatus, an instrument corresponding to 18 English gauge (29 French) can usually be passed without damage. The orifice of the urethra is not so dilatable, and therefore may require slitting, although the introduction of the Oberlander dilator, which is expanded after introduction, renders slitting of the meatus seldom necessary in cases of chronic gonorrhœa. A recognition of this dilatability caused Bigelow to very considerably modify the operation of lithotrity and introduce that of litholapaxy. In *passing a fine catheter*, the point of the instrument after it has passed the lacuna magna should be kept as far as possible along the upper wall of the canal, as the point is otherwise very liable to enter one of the lacunæ. *Stricture of the urethra* is a disease of very common occurrence, and is generally situated in the spongy portion of the urethra, most commonly in the bulbous portion, just in front of the membranous urethra, but in a very considerable number of cases in the penile or ante-scrotal part of the canal. Even in a normal urethra, and very markedly in an inflamed urethra, a bougie encounters resistance behind the bulb. This is usually supposed to be due to spasm of the Compressor urethrae muscle.

In *irrigation of the urethra by gravity* fluid tends to block at the same point, especially if it is thrown in suddenly or forcibly. If a reservoir is raised seven and one-half feet from the floor, and if a patient sits on a chair or lies upon a bed, fluid can be readily made to pass by hydraulic pressure from the meatus to the bladder. Spasm may temporarily prevent the inflow, but the weight of the column of fluid soon tires out the muscle and causes it to relax. Relaxation is favored by having the patient take slow, deep breaths and make efforts at urination (Valentine).

Chronic gonorrhœa is frequently kept up by persistent inflammation of the ducts and follicles in the mucous membrane. This condition is known as *chronic glandular urethritis* or *paraurethritis*. In these crypts and glands gonococci may remain when gonorrhœa appears to have passed away, and from time to time reinfection of the urethra may arise from such a source.

Median urethrotomy or *perineal section* is opening of the membranous urethra. Through such an opening the bladder can be drained and explored, and the operation is sometimes called *median cystotomy*.

In *lateral lithotomy* the knife enters the membranous urethra and strikes the groove of the staff. Its edge is then turned toward the left ischial tuberosity and is carried along the groove into the bladder, dividing the membranous urethra, the prostatic urethra, the posterior layer of the triangular ligament, the Compressor urethrae muscle, anterior fibres of the Levator ani muscle and the left lobe of the prostate gland.

THE FEMALE URINARY BLADDER.

The female bladder is situated at the anterior part of the pelvis. It is in relation, *in front*, with the symphysis pubis; *behind*, with the utero-vesical pouch of peritoneum, which separates it from the body of the uterus; its *base* lies in contact with the connective tissue in front of the cervix and upper part of the vagina. *Laterally*, is the recto-vesical fascia. The bladder is said by some anatomists to be larger in the female than in the male. At any rate, it does not rise above the symphysis pubis till more distended than in the male, but this is perhaps owing to the more capacious pelvis rather than to its being of actually larger size. It is described in the section on the Bladder (p. 1431).

THE FEMALE URETHRA (URETHRA MULIEBRIS).

The female urethra is a narrow membranous canal, about an inch and a half in length, extending from the **internal urethral orifice** (*orificium urethrae internum*) at the neck of the bladder to the vestibule of the vagina, where it ends, being called at its termination the **external orifice of the urethra** or the **meatus urinarius** (*orificium urethrae externum*). The meatus is usually a vertical slit. The urethra is placed behind the symphysis pubis, embedded in the anterior wall of the vagina; and its direction is obliquely downward and forward, its course being slightly curved, the concavity directed forward and upward. Its diameter when undilated is about a quarter of an inch. The urethra perforates both layers of the triangular ligament, and its external orifice is situated directly in front of the vaginal opening and about an inch behind the glans clitoridis. Except above, the posterior wall of the urethra is firmly connected to the anterior wall of the vagina.

Structure.—The urethra consists of three coats: **muscular, erectile,** and **mucous.**

The Muscular Coat (*tunica muscularis*).—The muscular coat is continuous with that of the bladder; it extends the whole length of the tube, and consists of an internal layer of **non-striated longitudinal fibres** (*stratum longitudinale*) and an external layer of **non-striated circular fibres** (*stratum circulare*). Superficial to the circular fibres "lies a layer of cross-striped muscle-fibres, which form a closed ring near the bladder only."[1]

The Submucous Coat (*tunica submucosa*).—Internal to the muscular coat is the submucous coat, which contains a venous plexus, networks from which pass between the muscular layers and impart to these layers an erectile or spongy nature (*corpus spongiosum urethrae*). In addition to this, between the two layers of the triangular ligament, the female urethra is surrounded by the Compressor urethrae muscle, as in the male.

The Mucous Coat *tunica mucosa*).—The mucous coat is pale, continuous externally with that of the vulva, and internally with that of the bladder. It is thrown into longitudinal folds, one of which, placed along the floor of the canal, extends from the vesical trigone almost to the external orifice of the urethra. It is called the **crest** (*crista urethralis*). The outline of the urethra is stellate when collapsed, because of the formation of numerous longitudinal folds. It is lined by laminated epithelium, which becomes transitional near the bladder. Many mucous glands open into the urethra, and there are numerous lacunae. External to the external orifice, on each side, a group of mucous glands opens by a common duct, the **ductus para-urethralis.**

The urethra, because it is not surrounded by dense resisting structures, as in the male, admits of great dilatation, which enables the surgeon to remove with considerable facility calculi or other foreign bodies from the cavity of the bladder.

[1] Hand Atlas of Human Anatomy. By Prof. Werner Spalteholz. Translated and edited by Prof. Lewellys F. Barker.

THE MALE ORGANS OF GENERATION.

THE PROSTATE GLAND (PROSTATA) (Figs. 1048, 1051, 1052, 1053, 1054, 1055, 1056, 1057).

THE prostate gland (*προϊστημι, to stand before*) is a structure accessory to the true generative organs and furnishes a viscid, opalescent secretion in which spermatozoids will live (W. G. Richardson). It is a pale, firm, partly glandular and partly muscular body, which is placed immediately below the neck of the bladder and about the commencement of the urethra in the male. The prostate appears to completely surround the first portion of the urethra (Figs. 1053 and 1057), but the glandular matter does not in reality completely surround the tube (Figs. 1051 and 1057). As Spalteholz says, it partly surrounds it as a broad clasp, *open in front*. This opening in the glandular tissue is closed, and a complete ring is established about the urethra by the **prostatic muscle** (*m. prostaticus*) Figs. 1051 and 1057). This muscle below is composed of striated fibres and is continuous with the Compressor urethrae (*m. sphincter urethrae membranacea*);

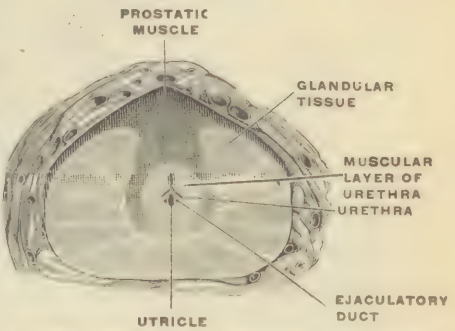


FIG. 1051. Section of the prostate. (Jarjavay.)

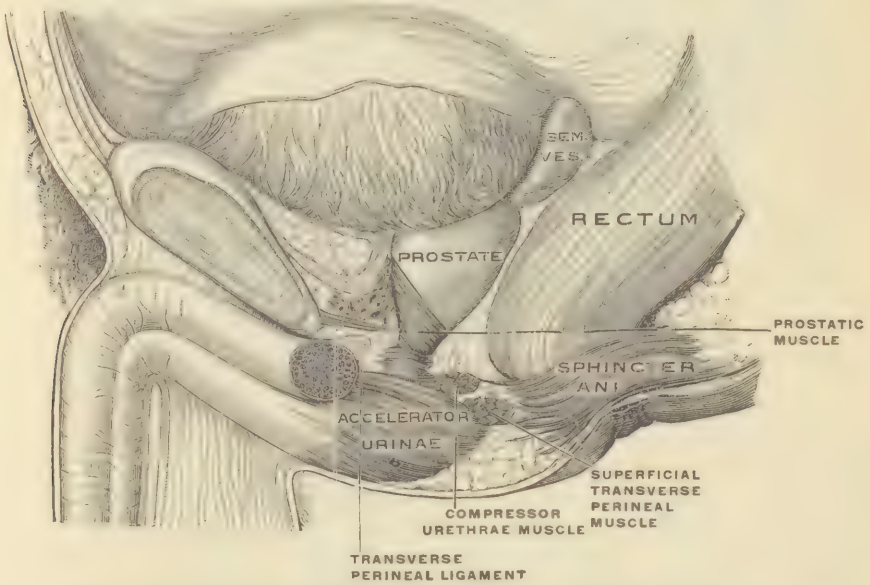


FIG. 1052.—Side view of the position of the prostate. (Poirier and Charpy.)

above it is composed of non-striated muscle, and is continuous with the circular muscular fibres of the bladder which surround the internal urethral orifice and

constitute the Sphincter vesicae (Fig. 1052). The general course of the fibres is transverse, with radiations into the gland substance. The apex of the gland for about one-quarter of an inch is completely surrounded by the muscle (Fig. 1052).

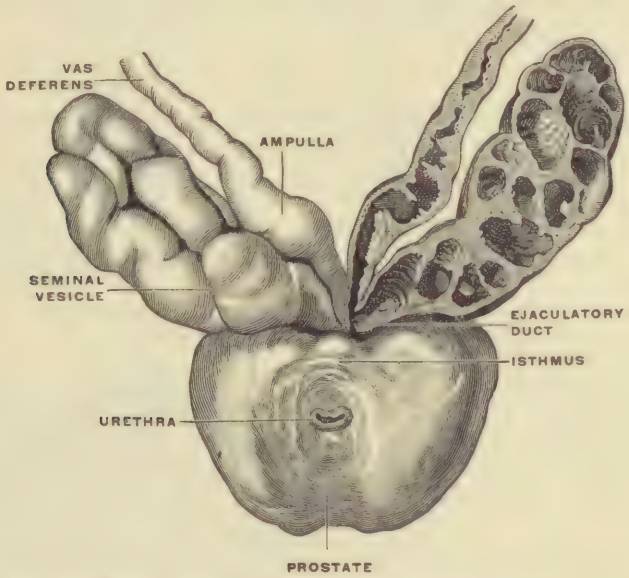


FIG. 1053.—Prostate with seminal vesicles and seminal ducts, viewed from in front and above. (Spalteholz.)

Ascending from the apex the fibres cover for a short distance only the front of the gland and are attached at the sides to the fascia (Fig. 1052). Higher up the muscle

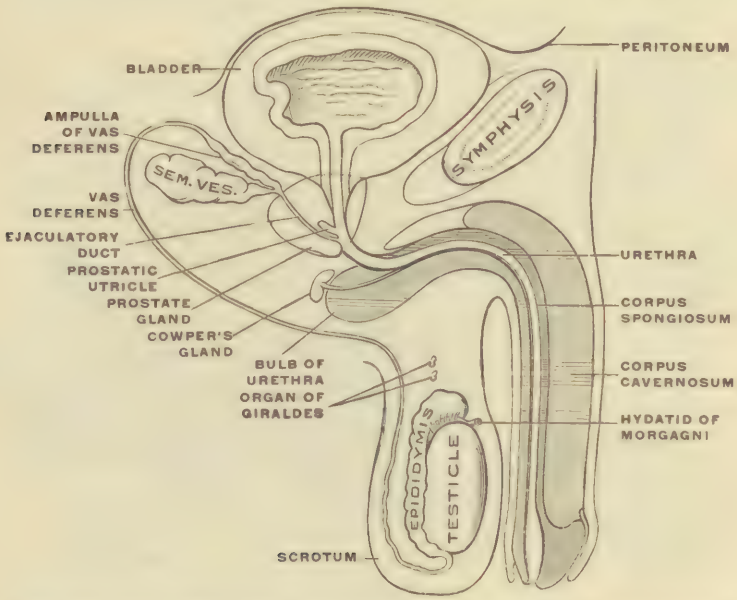


FIG. 1054.—Diagrammatic representation of the male reproduction organs and their relations to the bladder and the urethra. Lateral view. (Toldt.)

passes between the sheath and the capsule and ascends to the base of the prostate, uniting the sheath to the capsule along the mid-line in front. The prostate is placed in the pelvic cavity, behind the lower part of the symphysis pubis, and above the

deep layer of the triangular ligament, and rests upon the rectum, through which it may be distinctly felt, especially when enlarged (Fig. 1055.)

The **ejaculatory ducts** (Figs. 1053, 1054, and 1056) enter the prostate at the margin which separates the base from the posterior surface of the gland; they pass downward, inward, and forward through the prostate, and open into the prostatic urethra. The prostate when surrounded by its sheath resembles a chestnut in shape. When dissected out from its sheath and capsule and from the Prostatic muscle, it resembles an "open clasp" or horseshoe. The **sheath** of the prostate

FIG. 1055.—Sagittal section of the lower part of a male trunk, the right segment. (Testut.)

is derived from the recto-vesical fascia. It is called the **prostatic fascia** (*fascia prostatae*), is distinct and dense, and covers the entire prostate, except at the apex and at the attachment of the base of the prostate to the neck of the bladder. The prostatic fascia is a distinct structure, though it is thin. The veins of the prostatic plexus lie in the layers of the sheath, "and are everywhere separated from the prostatic capsule proper by a layer of this sheath."[1] In an enlarged prostate the sheath is thick and fibrous. It is very difficult to shell out a normal prostate from its sheath, but it is easy to shell out an enlarged prostate. Within the prostatic sheath (which, be it remembered, carries the veins) is the **true** or **proper capsule**

[1] J. W. Thomson Walker, in the British Medical Journal, July 9, 1904.

of the prostate. The true capsule is a continuous investment from the entrance of the urethra above to the triangular ligament below. It is thin, but firm and fibrous. It is not everywhere absolutely distinct from the sheath, but may be fused

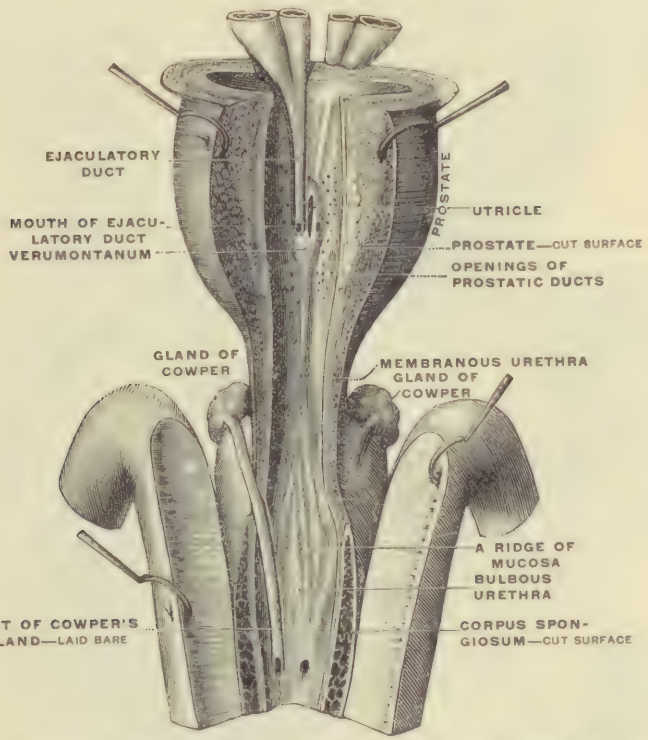


FIG. 1056.—Proximal portion of the urethra, laid open by a median, anterior cut. (Testut.)

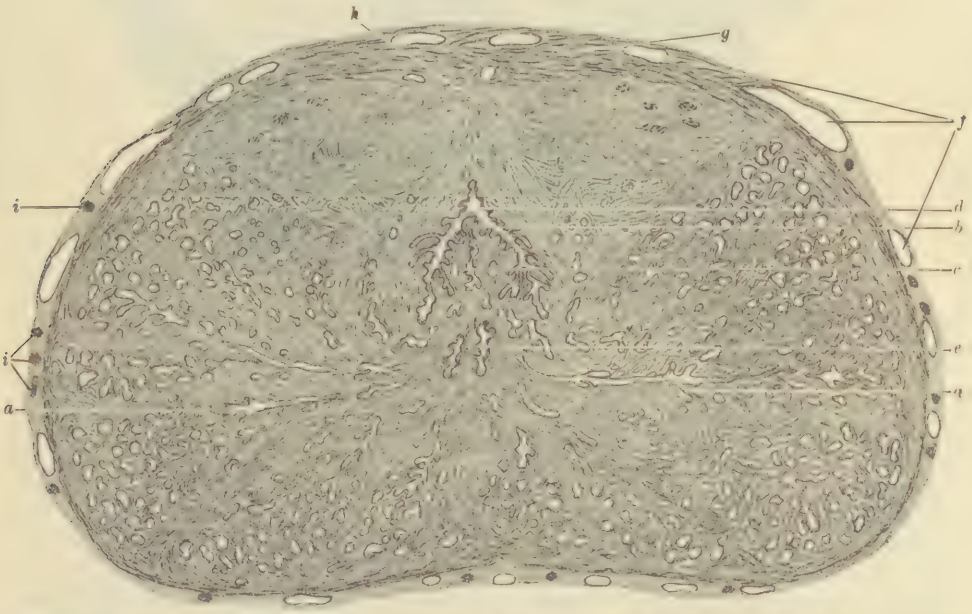


FIG. 1057.—Transverse section of normal prostate through the middle of the verumontanum, from a subject aged nineteen years: *a*, longitudinal section of ducts leading from the lobules of the prostatic glands; *b*, verumontanum; *c*, sinus pocularis; *d*, urethra; *e*, ejaculatory ducts; *f*, arteries, veins, and venous sinuses in sheath of prostate; *g*, nerve trunks in sheath; *h*, point of origin of fibro-muscular bands encircling urethra; *i*, zone of striated voluntary muscle on superior surface. (Drawn from Erdinger projection apparatus.) (Taylor.)

with it here and there, and many bands of fibres run from the sheath to the capsule.[1] The capsule is continuous with the stroma of the gland and cannot be stripped off as can the kidney capsule. Any attempt to strip off the capsule tears away fragments of gland. The capsule is composed of fibrous tissue and unstriated muscle-fibres. From its deep surface the capsule is continuous with the stroma of the prostate (W. G. Richardson). Sir Henry Thompson, half a century ago, pointed out the distinction between true capsule and sheath, and suggested these names. The prostate is divided for study into a **base, apex, posterior surface, anterior surface,** and **lateral surfaces.**

The Base (*basis prostatae*).—The base is directed upward, and is situated immediately below the base of the bladder. It is in contact with and supports the base of the bladder. The external longitudinal muscular layer of the bladder is attached to the posterior portion of the base of the prostate, and some of the fibres reach and adhere to the true capsule. The anterior portion of the base is called the **isthmus** (*isthmus prostatae*) (Fig. 1053).

The Apex (*apex prostatae*).—The apex is directed downward and rests upon the deep layer of the triangular ligament. The apex is fixed, except for the slight mobility of the triangular ligament; the rest of the gland is somewhat movable.

Surfaces.—The Posterior Surface (*facies posterior*).—The posterior surface is flattened, marked by a slight longitudinal furrow, and rests on the second part of the rectum, and is distant about one inch and a half from the anus. At the upper and posterior border of the gland are the seminal vesicles. Their direction is downward and inward; in fact, almost transverse.

The Anterior Surface (*facies anterior*).—The anterior surface is convex, and placed about three-fourths of an inch behind the pubic symphysis, from which it is separated by a plexus of veins and a quantity of loose fat. It is connected to the pubic bone on either side by the **pubo-prostatic ligament.** It is shorter than the posterior surface.

The Lateral Surfaces.—The lateral surfaces are prominent, and are covered by the anterior portions of the **Levatores ani muscles,** which are, however, separated from the gland by a **plexus of veins.**

The prostate measures about an inch and a half transversely at the base, an inch in its antero-posterior diameter, and an inch and a quarter in its vertical diameter. Its weight is about four and a half drachms. It is held in position by the **anterior ligaments of the bladder** (*ligamenta puboprostatica*); by the deep layer of the triangular ligament, which invests the commencement of the membranous portion of the urethra and prostate gland; and by the anterior portions of the Levatores ani muscles, which pass backward from the os pubis and embrace the sides of the prostate. These portions of the Levatores ani, from the support they afford to the prostate, are named the **Levator prostatae.**

The prostate consists of two **lateral lobes** and a **middle lobe.**

The Lateral Lobes (*lobus dexter et sinister*).—The two lateral lobes are of equal size, separated by a deep notch above, and by a furrow upon the anterior and posterior surfaces of the gland, which indicates the bilobed condition of the organ in some animals. At the upper and posterior portion of the prostate the two lobes are united by two bands of gland-tissue. One of these bands is in front of the ejaculatory ducts, the other is below them. "The upper limit of the gland is thus in the form of a horseshoe, open in front."[2] Below the level of the prostatic ducts the prostate and urethra are in relation, but are not closely connected. Above this level the connection is intimate (J. W. Thomson Walker).

The So-called Middle Lobe (*lobus medius*).—The middle lobe is not in reality a lobe, and the name is usually employed to describe an enlargement of the region of the prostate on the posterior portion of the urethra in front of the ejaculatory ducts. The so-called third or middle lobe is an abnormal condition. It is due to enlargement of the transverse band of prostatic tissue which joins the lateral lobes beneath the

[1] W. G. Richardson on the Development and Anatomy of the Prostate Gland.
[2] J. W. Thomson Walker, in the British Medical Journal, July 9, 1904.

base of the bladder, behind the posterior wall of the urethra and in front of the ejaculatory ducts. This mass of tissue is beneath the uvula vesicae. Walker points out that frequently nodules of enlarged prostate protrude into the bladder, being covered only by bladder mucous membrane. This is accomplished by the enlarging prostate forcing its way through the lumen of the vesical sphincter and dilating it, and separating and passing between the strands of the internal longitudinal muscle of the bladder. "The so-called middle lobe is formed by the protrusion of a nodule between the two bands of muscle which pass into the trigone from the ureters, and unite on the posterior wall of the prostatic urethra."[1]

The urethra passes forward between the lateral lobes of the prostate. The prostate is perforated by the ejaculatory ducts. The urethra usually lies on the level of the junction of the anterior and middle thirds of a lateral lobe. The ejaculatory ducts pass obliquely downward and forward through the posterior part of the prostate, and open into the prostatic portion of the urethra.

Structure (Fig. 1057).—As previously stated (p. 1449), the prostate is surrounded by a sheath from the recto-vesical fascia, and possesses also a true capsule.

The glands of the prostate are of the branched tubular variety and number forty or fifty. Many of the ducts join and form from fifteen to twenty-five smaller ducts, which empty into the prostatic urethra, to the sides of the verumontanum (Fig. 1056). The ducts and glands are lined with cubical epithelium. The **prostatic secretion** or **prostatic fluid** (*succus prostaticus*) is a viscid, opalescent, serous secretion, alkaline in reaction, containing a ferment, but no mucus. The substance of the prostate is of a pale, reddish-gray color, of great density and not easily torn. It consists of glandular substance and muscular tissue.

The muscular tissue, according to Kölliker, constitutes the proper stroma of the prostate, the connective tissue being very scanty, and simply forming thin trabeculae between the muscular fibres, in which the vessels and nerves of the gland ramify. The true capsule is continuous with the stroma. The stroma lies between the glandular substance and strands of stroma pass in convergent lines toward the prostatic urethra, especially toward the dorsum of the urethra. These strands or septa divide the prostate into small irregular subdivisions called **lobules.** Next to the urethra, the stroma forms a thick layer. As age advances the interstitial tissue of the prostate increases and the glandular substance shrinks.

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** supplying the prostate are derived from the **internal pudic, inferior vesical,** and **middle haemorrhoidal.** Branches of the vessels enter the gland in the septa between the lobules and send off minute branches to the lobules (Walker). The **veins** form a plexus around the sides and base of the gland between layers of the fascial sheath; they receive in front the **dorsal vein of the penis,** and terminate in the **internal iliac vein.** The **lymphatics** of the prostate begin as networks about the acini of the gland, pass to beneath the capsule, and form another network, and from this peripheral network collecting trunks arise. Several trunks pass from the posterior portion of the gland. One trunk passes to the **external iliac glands,** one to the **internal iliac glands,** and several end in the **lateral sacral glands,** and the **glands of the sacral promontory.** An anterior trunk is joined by lymphatics from the membranous urethra and prostatic urethra and passes to a **gland on the internal pudic artery.**[2] The **nerves** are derived from the **hypogastric plexus.**

Surgical Anatomy.—The *relation of the prostate to the rectum* should be noted: by means of the finger introduced into the gut the surgeon detects enlargement or other disease of the prostate; he can feel the apex of the gland, which is the guide to *Cock's operation* for stricture; he is enabled also by the same means to direct the point of a catheter when its introduction is attended with difficulty either from injury or disease of the membranous or prostatic portions of the urethra. When the finger is introduced into the bowel the surgeon may, in some cases, especially in boys,

[1] J. W. Thomson Walker, in the British Medical Journal, July 9, 1904.
[2] Poirier and Charpy. Human Anatomy.

learn the position, as well as the size and weight, of a calculus in the bladder. In the operation for the removal of a calculus, if, as is not unfrequently the case, the stone should be lodged behind an enlarged prostate, it may be displaced from its position by pressing upward the base of the bladder from the rectum. The prostate gland is occasionally the seat of *suppuration*, either due to injury, gonorrhœa, or tuberculous disease. The gland is enveloped in a dense unyielding capsule, which determines the course of an abscess, and also explains the great pain which is present in acute inflammation. The abscess most frequently bursts into the urethra, the direction in which there is least resistance, but may occasionally burst into the rectum, or more rarely in the perinæum. In advanced life the prostate often becomes considerably *enlarged*, and may project into the bladder so as to impede the passage of the urine. According to Dr. Messer's researches, conducted at Greenwich Hospital, it would seem that such obstruction exists in 20 per cent. of all men over sixty years of age. The prostate may be enlarged by the growth of *innocent tumors*, adenomata, fibromata, myomata, and myofibromata. The entire gland may be *hypertrophied*. A tumor may be encapsulated, but often is surrounded by an area of hyperplasia of prostatic tissues, and usually the area of hyperplasia is much more extensive than the tumor. A tumor may be beneath the mucous membrane, deep in the gland, or beneath the sheath. The growth called the *third lobe* is submucous. In some cases the enlargement affects principally the lateral lobes, which may undergo considerable enlargement without causing much inconvenience. In other cases it would seem that the nodule forms the so-called middle lobe, and even a small enlargement of this character may act injuriously, by forming a sort of valve over the urethral orifice, preventing the passage of the urine, and the more the patient strains, the more completely will it block the opening into the urethra. In consequence of the enlargement of the prostate a *pouch* is formed at the base of the bladder behind the projection, in which urine collects and cannot entirely be expelled. The urine becomes decomposed and ammoniacal, and leads to cystitis. If the prostate enlarges the urethra is lengthened, often dilated, altered in shape, or distorted.

The relation of the enlarged prostate to the neck of the bladder is greatly altered from the relation of the normal prostate. Normally, it is extravesical; when enlarged it may encapsule "the neck of the bladder in a cuff-like manner, extending several inches upward on its wall," and often it protrudes "into the vesical cavity, carrying on its surface the mucosa vesicae."[1] In many cases of prostatic enlargement the gland should be removed (*prostatectomy*). One method is enucleation through a suprapubic incision; another method is enucleation through a perineal incision; another method is carried out by both incisions (the combined method).

The Bottini operation is *prostatotomy*, effected by a special instrument for the purpose of cauterizing the gland and thus causing shrinking.

In elderly individuals the gland tubules may form round, indurated, and sometimes calcified masses, about 1 mm. in diameter, and called *prostatic stones*.

COWPER'S GLANDS (GLANDULAE BULBO-URETHRALES) (Figs. 1056, 1063).

Cowper's glands are two small, rounded, and somewhat lobulated bodies of a yellow color, about the size of peas, placed behind the forepart of the membranous portion of the urethra, between the two layers of the triangular ligament. They lie close above the bulb, and are enclosed by the transverse fibres of the Compressor urethrae muscle. Their existence is said to be constant; they gradually diminish in size as age advances.

Structure.—Each gland consists of several lobules held together by a fibrous investment. Each lobule consists of a number of acini lined by columnar epithelial cells, opening into one duct, which, joining with the ducts of other lobules outside the gland, form a single **excretory duct** (*ductus excretorius*). The excretory duct of each gland, nearly an inch in length, passes obliquely forward beneath the mucous membrane, and opens by a minute orifice on the floor of the bulbous portion of the urethra.

THE PENIS (Figs. 1058, 1059, 1060, 1061, 1062, 1063).

The penis is a long body of prismatic shape placed below and in front of the symphysis pubis. It surrounds the greatest length of the urethra. It consists of a **root**, **body**, and **extremity** or **glans penis**. The root and the posterior portion

[1] John B. Murphy, in the Journal of the American Medical Association, May 28, 1904.

of the body lie beneath the scrotum and the integument of the perinæum (Fig. 1054), and are firmly fixed to the triangular ligament, the pubic bones, and the symphysis; hence this portion of the organ is called the **fixed portion** (*pars fixa*) (Fig. 309). The balance of the organ is free

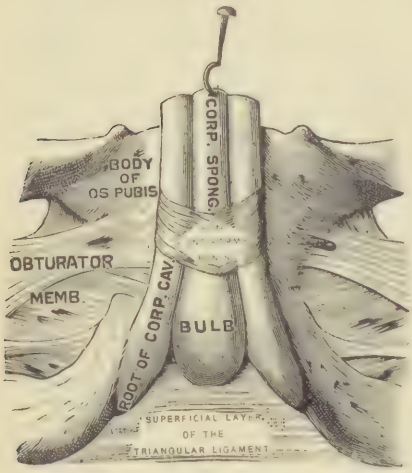


FIG. 1058.—The penis, proximal portion, seen from below. (Testut.)

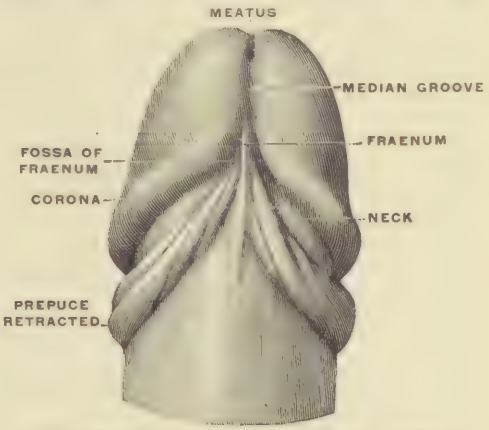


FIG. 1059.—Glans penis, under surface. (Testut.)

and movable (Fig. 1054), and is called the **mobile portion** (*pars mobilis*). When the penis is relaxed there is an angle between the fixed and mobile portions; when the penis is erect, the angle disappears.

The Root (*radix penis*).—The root is firmly connected to the rami of the os pubis and ischium by two strong tapering, fibrous processes, the **crura** (Figs. 1058, 1062, and 1063), and to the front of the symphysis pubis by the **suspensory ligament** (Fig. 1061), a strong band of fibrous tissue which passes downward from the front of the symphysis pubis to the root of the penis.

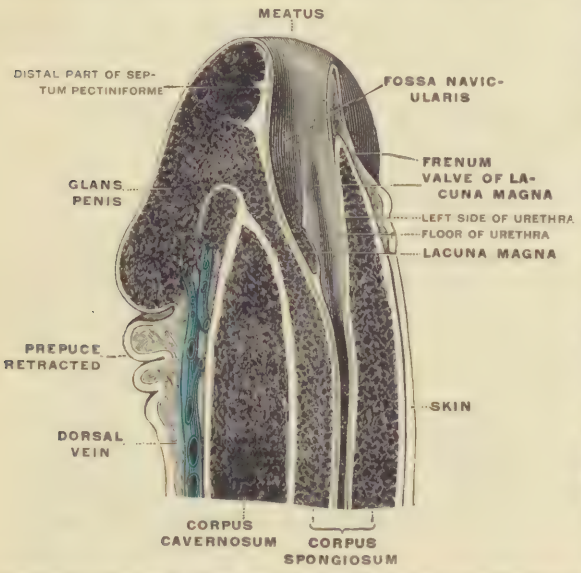


FIG. 1060. The penis, distal end, in sagittal section one-twelfth inch at left of middle line. (Testut.)

The **extremity, acorn** or **glans penis** (Figs. 1059 and 1060) presents the form of an obtuse cone, flattened from above downward. At its summit is a vertical fissure, the **external orifice of the urethra** or the **meatus urinarius** (*orificium urethrae externum*). The base of the glans forms a rounded projecting border, the **corona glandis**, and behind the corona is a deep constriction, the **cervix** or **neck** (*collum glandis*). Upon both the corona and neck numerous small sebaceous glands are found, the **glandulae Tysonii odoriferae.**[1] They secrete a sebaceous matter of very peculiar odor, which probably contains caseine and becomes easily decomposed.

[1] Stieda (Comptes-rendus du XII. Congrès International de Médecine, Moscow, 1897) asserts that Tyson's glands are never found on the corona glandis, and that what have hitherto been mistaken for glands are really large papillae.—ED. of 15th English edition.

The Body of the Penis (*corpus penis*).—The body of the penis is the part between the root and extremity. In the flaccid condition of the organ it is cylindrical, but when erect it has a triangular prismatic form with rounded angles, the broadest side being turned upward, and called the **dorsum penis**. The lower surface of the body of the penis is called the **urethral surface** (*facies urethralis*). The body is covered by integument, and contains in its interior a large portion of the urethra. The integument covering the penis is remarkable for its thinness, its dark color, its looseness of connection with the deeper parts of the organ, and for the absence of adipose tissue. At the root of the penis the integument is continuous with that upon the pubes and scrotum, and at the neck of the glans it leaves the surface and becomes folded upon itself to form the **prepuce** (*præputium*) (Fig. 1059). The internal layer of the prepuce is attached behind to the **cervix** or **neck** (Fig. 1059), and approaches in character to a mucous membrane; from the cervix it is reflected over the glans penis, and at the meatus urinarius is continuous with the mucous lining of the urethra.

The integument covering the glans penis contains no sebaceous glands, but projecting from its free surface are a number of small, highly sensitive papillæ.

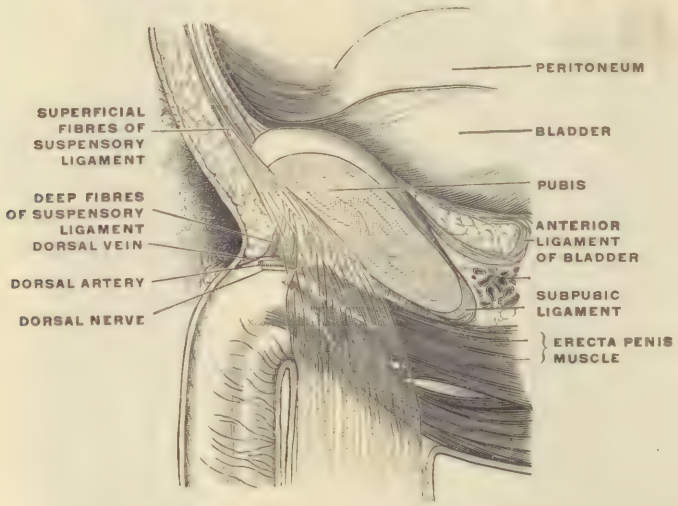


Fig. 1061.—The suspensory ligament. (Poirier and Charpy.)

At the back part of the meatus urinarius a fold of mucous membrane passes backward to the bottom of a depressed raphé, where it is continuous with the prepuce; this fold is termed the **fraenum** (*frenulum præputii*). The skin of the penis covers the mobile parts of the organ. It is thin, extremely elastic, and contains very few hairs. Beneath the skin of the penis is the **dartos layer** (Figs. 1061 and 1068), continuous with the scrotal dartos, containing chiefly non-striated muscular fibres arranged longitudinally. It passes forward to the orifice of the prepuce, and then turns backward, growing thinner and thinner, and finally disappearing at the cervix. Beneath the dartos and extending forward to the orifice of the prepuce is a sheath of **areolar tissue.** It is a lax sheath rich in elastic tissue and containing almost no fat. The superficial vessels and nerves are in the areolar sheath. Beneath the areolar sheath of the penis, from the corona to the root, is the **fascia of the penis** (*fascia penis*) (Fig. 1068). It covers the organ from the root to the corona, and also covers the dorsal artery, veins, and nerves. It is continuous behind with the superficial perineal fascia and suspensory ligament. It is composed chiefly of elastic tissue.

Structure of the Penis.—The penis is composed of a mass of erectile tissue enclosed in three cylindrical fibrous compartments. Of these, two, the **corpora**

cavernosa, are placed side by side along the upper part of the organ; the third, or **corpus spongiosum**, encloses the urethra and is placed below.

The Two Corpora Cavernosa (*corpora cavernosa penis*) (Figs. 1062 and 1063).—The two corpora cavernosa form the chief part of the body of the penis. They consist of two fibrous cylindrical tubes, placed side by side, and intimately connected along the median line for their anterior three-fourths, whilst at their back part they separate from each other to form the **crura penis**, which are two strong tapering fibrous processes or **roots** firmly connected to the rami of the os pubis and ischium (Figs. 1058, 1062, and 1063). Each **crus** commences by a

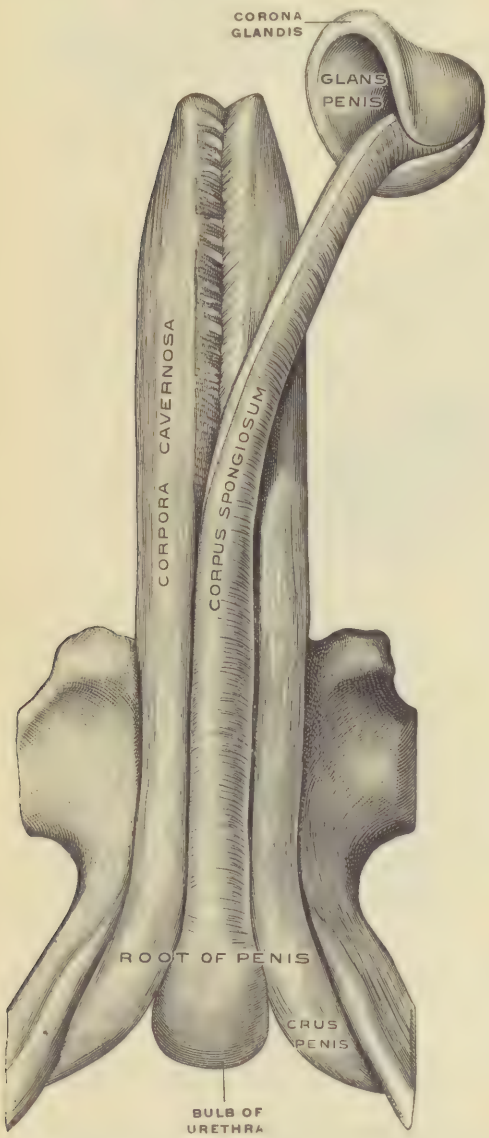


FIG. 1062.—The penis, with the pubic bones, seen from before and below. (Toldt.)

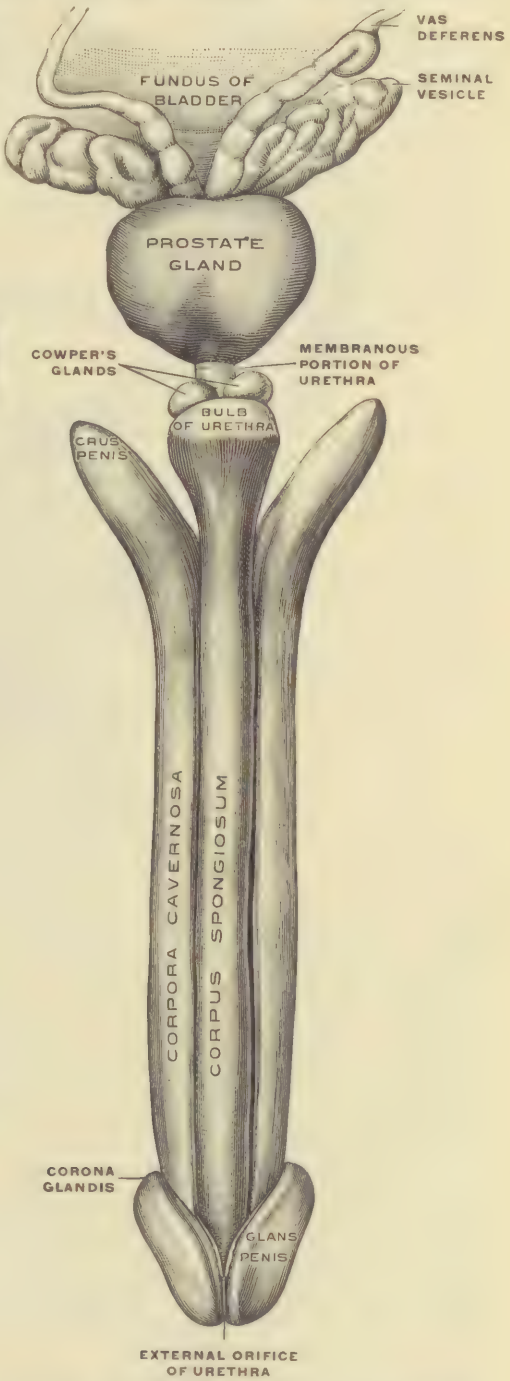


FIG. 1063.—The penis, with the urethra, Cowper's glands, the prostate gland, and the seminal vesicles, seen from below and behind. (Toldt).

blunt-pointed process in front of the tuberosity of the ischium, and before its junction with its fellow to form the body of the penis it presents a slight enlargement, named by Kobelt the **bulb of the corpus cavernosum.** Just beyond this point they become constricted, and retain an equal diameter to their anterior extremity, where they form a single rounded end which is received into a fossa in the base of the glans penis (Figs. 1060 and 1062). A median groove on the upper surface lodges the dorsal arteries, nerves, and veins of the penis (Figs. 1066, 1067, and 1068), and the groove on the under surface receives the corpus spongiosum (Fig. 1062). The root of the penis is connected to the symphysis pubis by the suspensory ligament.

Structure (Fig. 1068).—Each corpus cavernosum is composed of erectile tissue. The erectile tissue is surrounded by a strong fibrous envelope, the **tunica albuginea, corporum cavernosum,** consisting of two sets of fibres—the one, longitudinal in direction, being common to the two corpora cavernosa, and investing them in a common covering; the other, internal, circular in direction, and being proper to each corpus cavernosum. The internal circular fibres of the two corpora cavernosa form, by their junction in the mesial plane, an incomplete partition or septum, the **septum penis,** between the two bodies.

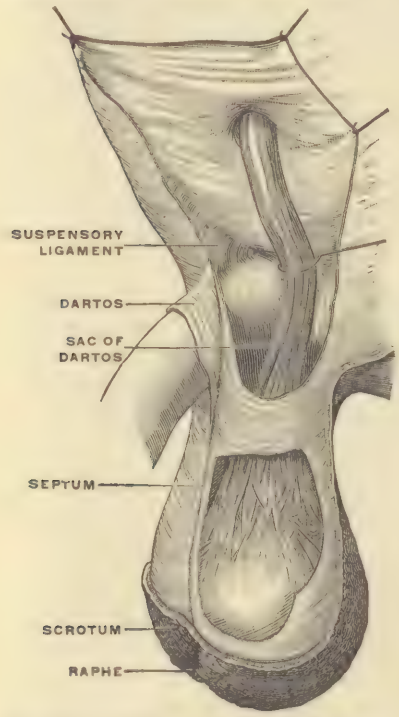


Fig. 1064.—The dartos. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Fig. 1065.—From the peripheral portion of the corpus cavernosum penis under a low magnifying power. 1, *a*, capillary network; *b*, cavernous spaces; 2, connection of the arterial twigs (*a*) with the cavernous spaces. (Copied from Langer.)

The **septum** between the two corpora cavernosa is thick and complete behind, but in front it is incomplete, and consists of a number of vertical bands, which are arranged like the teeth of a comb, whence the name which it has received, **septum pectiniforme.** These bands extend between the dorsal and the urethral surface of the corpora cavernosa. The fibrous investment of the corpora cavernosa is extremely dense, of considerable thickness, and consists of bundles of shining white fibres, with an admixture of well-developed elastic fibres, so that it is possessed of great elasticity.

From the internal surface of the fibrous envelope, as well as from the sides of the septum, are given off a number of bands or cords which cross the interior of each crus in all directions, subdividing it into a number of separate compart-

ments, and giving the entire structure a spongy appearance. These bands and cords are called **trabeculae corporum cavernosum,** and consist of white fibrous tissue, elastic fibres, and plain muscular fibres. In them are continued numerous arteries and nerves.

The component fibres of which the trabeculae are composed are larger and stronger around the circumference than at the centre of the corpora cavernosa; they are also thicker behind than in front. The interspaces, on the contrary, are larger at the centre than at the circumference, their long diameter being directed transversely; they are largest anteriorly. They are called **cavernous spaces** and are occupied by venous blood, and are lined by a layer of flattened cells similar to the endothelial lining of veins (Fig. 1065).

The whole of the structure of the corpora cavernosa contained within the fibrous sheath consists, therefore, of a sponge-like tissue the areolar spaces of which freely communicate with each other and are filled with venous blood. The spaces may therefore be regarded as large cavernous veins.

The arteries bringing the blood to these spaces are the **arteries of the corpora cavernosa** and branches from the **dorsal artery of the penis,** which perforate the fibrous capsule, along the upper surface, especially near the forepart of the organ.

These arteries on entering the cavernous structure divide into branches which are supported and enclosed by the trabeculae. Some of these terminate in a capillary network, the branches of which open directly into the cavernous spaces (Fig. 1065); others assume a tendril-like appearance, and form convoluted and somewhat dilated vessels, which were named by Müller **helicine arteries** (*arteriae helicinae*). They project into the spaces, and from them are given off small capillary branches to supply the trabecular structure. They are bound down in the spaces by fine fibrous processes, and are more abundant in the back part of the corpora cavernosa.

The blood from the cavernous spaces is returned by a series of vessels, some of which emerge in considerable numbers from the base of the glans penis and converge on the dorsum of the organ to form the **deep dorsal vein**; others pass out on the upper surface of the corpora cavernosa and join the dorsal vein; some emerge from the under surface of the corpora cavernosa, and, receiving branches from the corpus spongiosum, wind around the sides of the penis to terminate in the dorsal vein; but the greater number pass out at the root of the penis and join the **prostatic plexus.**

The Corpus Spongiosum (*corpus cavernosum urethrae*) (Figs. 1060, 1062, and 1063).—The corpus spongiosum encloses the urethra, and is situated in the groove on the under surface of the corpora cavernosa penis. It commences posteriorly below the superficial layer of the triangular ligament of the urethra, between the diverging crura of the corpora cavernosa, where it forms a rounded enlargement, the **bulb of the urethra** (*bulbus urethrae*), and terminates anteriorly in another expansion, the **glans penis** (Figs. 1059, 1060, 1062, and 1063), which overlaps the anterior rounded extremity of the corpora cavernosa. The central portion, or body of the corpus spongiosum, is cylindrical, and tapers slightly from behind forward.

The **Bulb of the Urethra** (Figs. 1058, 1062, and 1063) varies in size in different subjects; it receives a fibrous investment from the superficial layer of the triangular ligament, and is surrounded by the Accelerator urinae muscle. The urethra enters the bulb nearer its upper than its lower surface, being surrounded by a layer of erectile tissue, a thin prolongation of which is continued backward around the membranous and prostatic portions of the canal to the neck of the bladder, lying between the two layers of muscular tissue. The portion of the bulb below the urethra presents a partial division into two **lobes** (*hemisphaeria bulbi urethrae*), being marked externally by a linear raphé, whilst internally there projects, for a short distance, a thin **fibrous median septum** (*septum bulbi urethrae*), which is more distinct in early life.

Structure.—The corpus spongiosum consists of a strong fibrous envelope enclosing a trabecular structure, which contains in its meshes erectile tissue. The fibrous envelope is thinner, whiter in color, and more elastic than that of the corpora

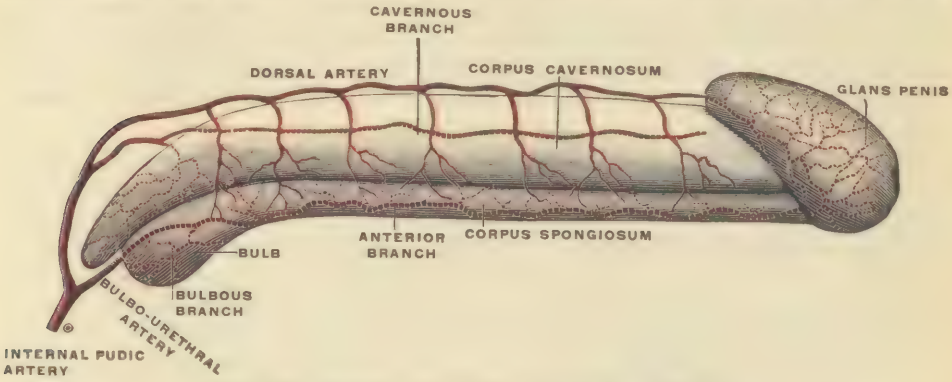


FIG. 1066.—Diagram of the arteries of the penis. (Testut.)

cavernosa of the penis. The trabeculae are more delicate, more nearly uniform in size, and the meshes between them smaller than in the corpora cavernosa, their long diameter, for the most part, corresponding with that of the penis. The external envelope or outer coat of the corpus spongiosum is formed partly of unstriped muscular fibre, and a layer of the same tissue immediately surrounds the canal of the urethra.

Ligaments of the Penis.—The **suspensory ligament** (*ligamentum suspensorium penis*) (Fig. 1061) is firm and fibrous. It passes from the front of the symphysis pubis to the tunica albuginea of the corpora cavernosa. The **ligamentum fundiforme penis** (Fig. 1058), formerly called the suspensory ligament, arises from the linea alba, sheath of the rectus, superficial fascia, and symphysis pubis, and surrounds the penis in a loop, being attached more distalward than is the suspensory ligament, and usually passes into the scrotum. It is composed of elastic tissue.

FIG. 1067.—Veins of the penis. (Testut.)

Vessels and Nerves of the Penis.—The **arteries** (Fig. 1066) of the penis come from branches of the internal pudic artery. The **deep arteries of the penis** give the chief supply to the erectile tissue of the corpora cavernosa, and the dorsal artery also sends branches to it; the **artery of the bulb** (p. 691) supplies the erectile tissue of the corpus spongiosum. The chief blood-supply of the glans is from the **dorsal artery** (p. 692). In the trabeculae the arteries are very small and often twisted. The twisted vessels are called **helicine arteries**. The small arteries open directly into the venous spaces. The veins of the penis empty directly into

the prostatic plexus or into the deep dorsal vein, which empties into the prostatic plexus. On each side of the deep dorsal vein is a dorsal artery and external to each dorsal artery is a dorsal nerve (Fig. 1068). The **superficial dorsal vein** (Figs. 1067 and 1068), receiving small veins from the prepuce, passes back beneath the skin, reaches the symphysis and divides into two branches, each of which passes to the corresponding superficial external pudic vein.

The **lymphatics** of this region have been studied carefully by Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare,[1] which book I have freely used.

The *lymphatics* of the skin of the penis and prepuce are continuous (Fig. 501). Those on the internal surface of the prepuce are continuous with those of the glans. The trunks of the cutaneous lymphatics anastomose with each other, ascend by the dorsal vein, and terminate in the inguinal glands. The trunks from the glans converge toward the frænum ; they then ascend to the median part of the corona, and the vessels of the two sides unite. Several collectors ascend on the dorsum to the inguinal and femoral glands.

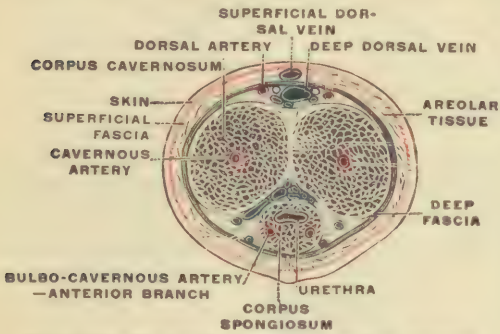


Fig. 1068. The penis in transverse section, showing the blood-vessels. (Testut.)

The superior wall of the anterior portion of the urethra is drained by the lymphatic trunks from the glans. From the rest of the penile urethra the lymphatics unite with the trunks from the penis, and most of them terminate in the same way, although one of them passes between the Recti muscles and terminates in the deeper external iliac glands or in the "internal retro-crural gland."[2]

The trunks from the bulb and membranous urethra terminate in the external iliac glands, the "internal retro-crural gland," and the glands along the internal pudic artery (Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare). The trunks from the prostatic urethra join the trunks from the prostate gland.

The **nerves** are derived from the internal pudic nerve and the pelvic plexus. On the glans and bulb some filaments of the cutaneous nerves have Pacinian bodies connected with them, and, according to Krause, many of them terminate in a peculiar form of end-bulb.

Surgical Anatomy.—It is occasionally necessary to *remove* a penis for malignant disease. Usually, removal of the ante-scrotal portion is all that is necessary, but sometimes it is requisite to remove the whole organ from its attachment to the rami of the ossa pubis and ischia. The former operation is performed either by cutting off the whole of the anterior part of the penis with one sweep of the knife, or, what is better, cutting through the corpora cavernosa from the dorsum, and then separating the corpus spongiosum from them, dividing it at a level nearer the glans penis. The mucous membrane of the urethra is then slit up, and the edges of the flap attached to the external skin, in order to prevent contraction of the orifice, which would otherwise take place. The vessels which require ligature are the two dorsal arteries of the penis, the arteries of the corpora cavernosa, and the artery of the septum. When the entire organ requires removal the patient is placed in the lithotomy position, and an incision is made through the skin and subcutaneous tissue around the root of the penis, and carried down the median line of the scrotum as far as the perinæum. The two halves of the scrotum are then separated from each other, and a catheter having been introduced into the bladder as a guide, the spongy portion of the urethra below the triangular ligament is separated from the corpora cavernosa and divided, the catheter having been withdrawn just behind the bulb. The suspensory ligament is now severed, and the crura separated from the bone with a periosteum scraper, and the whole penis removed. The membranous portion of the urethra, which has not been removed, is now to be attached to the skin at the posterior extremity of the incision in the perinæum. The remainder of the wound is to be brought together, free drainage being provided for.

[1] Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.
[2] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

THE TESTICLES (TESTES) AND THEIR COVERINGS (Figs. 1071, 1072).

The testicles are two glandular organs, which secrete the semen; they are situated in the scrotum, being suspended by the spermatic cords. At an early period of fœtal life the testes are contained in the abdominal cavity, behind the peritoneum, but they subsequently descend into the scrotum.

DESCENT OF THE TESTIS (DESCENDUS TESTIS).

Each testis at an early period of fœtal life is placed at the back part of the abdominal cavity, behind the peritoneum, in front and a little below the kidney. The anterior surface and sides are invested by peritoneum. At about the third month of intra-uterine life a peculiar structure, the **gubernaculum testis**, makes its appearance. This structure is at first a slender band which extends from the situation of the internal ring to the epididymis and body of the testicle, and is then continued upward in front of the kidney toward the Diaphragm. As development advances the peritoneum covering the testicle encloses it and forms a mesentery, the **mesorchium**, which also encloses the gubernaculum and forms two folds—one above the testicle, and the other below it. The one above the testicle is

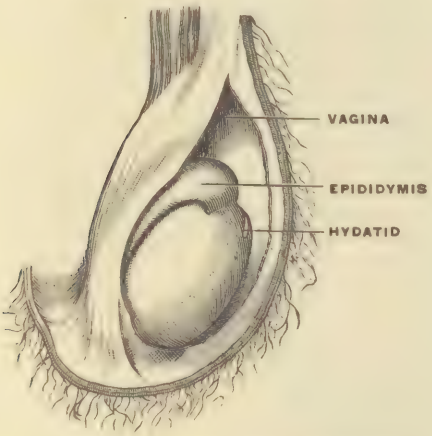


Fig. 1069.—Vaginal tunics of the testicle. (Poirier and Charpy.)

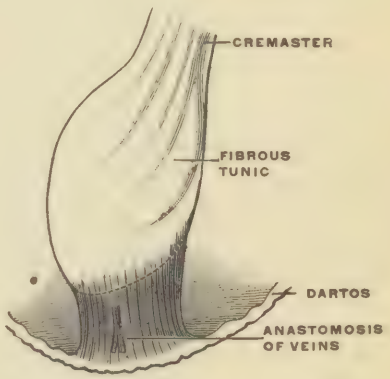


Fig. 1070.—Ligament of the scrotum. (Poirier and Charpy.)

the **plica vascularis**, and contains ultimately the spermatic vessels; the one below, the **plica gubernatrix**, contains the lower part of the gubernaculum, which has now grown into a thick cord; it terminates below at the internal ring in a tube of peritoneum, the **processus vaginalis**, which now lies in the inguinal canal. The lower part of the gubernaculum by the fifth month has become a thick cord, whilst the upper part has disappeared. The lower part can now be seen to consist of a central core of unstriped muscle-fibre, and outside this of a firm layer of striped elements, connected, behind the peritoneum, with the abdominal wall. Later on, about the sixth month, the lower end of the gubernaculum can be traced into the inguinal canal, extending to the pubes, and, at a later period, to the bottom of the scrotum. The fold of peritoneum constituting the processus vaginalis projects itself downward into the inguinal canal, forming a gradually elongating depression or *cul-de-sac*, which eventually reaches the bottom of the scrotum. This *cul-de-sac* is now invaginated by the testicle, as the body of the fœtus *grows*, for the gubernaculum does not grow commensurately with the growth of other parts, and therefore the testicle, being attached by the gubernaculum to the bottom of the

scrotum, is prevented from rising as the body grows, and is drawn first into the inguinal canal, and eventually into the scrotum. By the eighth month the testicle has reached the scrotum, preceded by the lengthened pouch of peritoneum, the processus vaginalis, which communicates by its upper extremity with the peritoneal cavity. Just before birth the upper part of the pouch usually becomes closed, and this obliteration extends gradually downward to within a short distance of the testis. The process of peritoneum surrounding the testis, which is now entirely cut off from the general peritoneal cavity, constitutes the **tunica vaginalis.**[1]

Mr. Jacobson[2] says that the attachments of the gubernaculum above are to the vas, the epididymis, and afterward to the testicle. The lower attachments of the gubernaculum, some of which are temporary, are the abdominal wall, pubes and root of the scrotum, Scarpa's triangle, perinæum and scrotum. The remains of the scrotal fibres constitute a so-called ligament of the scrotum or the **mesorchium,** which causes adhesion between the testicle and skin (Fig. 1070).

In the female, a small cord, corresponding to the gubernaculum in the male, descends to the inguinal region and ultimately forms the round ligament of the uterus. A pouch of peritoneum accompanies it along the inguinal canal, analogous to the processus vaginalis in the male; it is called the **canal of Nuck.**

Surgical Anatomy.—Abnormalities in the formation and in the descent of the testicle may occur. The testicle may fail to be developed, or it may be fully developed and the vas deferens may be undeveloped in whole or in part; or, again, both testicle and vas deferens may be fully developed, but the duct may not become connected to the gland. The testicle may fail in its descent (*cryptorchismus*) or it may descend into some abnormal position (*ectopia testis*). Thus it may be retained in the position where it was primarily developed, below the kidney; or it may descend to the internal abdominal ring, but fail to pass through this opening; it may be retained in the inguinal canal, which is perhaps the most common position; or it may pass through the external abdominal ring and remain just outside it, failing to pass to the bottom of the scrotum. On the other hand, it may get into some abnormal position; it may pass the scrotum and reach the perinæum, or it may fail to enter the inguinal canal, and may find its way through the femoral ring into the crural canal, and present itself on the thigh at the saphenous opening. Ectopia testis is due to the absence, overdevelopment or malposition of some portion of the gubernaculum. There is still a third class of cases of abnormality in the position of the testicle, where the organ has descended in due course into the scrotum, but is malplaced. The most common form of this is where the testicle is *inverted;* that is to say, the organ is rotated, so that the epididymis is connected to the front of the scrotum, and the body, surrounded by the tunica vaginalis, is directed backward. In these cases the vas deferens is to be felt in the front of the cord. The condition is of importance in connection with hydrocele and hæmatocele, and the position of the testicle should always be carefully ascertained before performing any operation for these affections. Again, more rarely, the testicle may be *reversed.* This is a condition in which the top of the testicle, indicated by the globus major of the epididymis, is at the bottom of the scrotum, and the vas deferens comes off from the summit of the organ.

THE COVERINGS OF THE TESTICLE (Fig. 1073).

The coverings of the testicle are the following:

Skin, Dartos } Scrotum.
Intercolumnar or External spermatic fascia.
Cremasteric fascia.
Infundibuliform or Fascia propria (Internal spermatic fascia).
Tunica vaginalis.

The Testicular Bag or Scrotum (Figs. 1071 and 1072).—The testicular bag or scrotum is a cutaneous pouch which contains the testes and part of the spermatic cords. It is divided on its surface into two lateral portions by a median line or

[1] The obliteration of the process of peritoneum which accompanies the cord, and is hence called the *funicular process*, is often incomplete. See section on Inguinal Hernia.
[2] Diseases of the Male Organs of Generation.

raphé (*raphe scroti*), which is continued forward to the under surface of the penis and backward along the middle line of the perinæum to the anus. Of these two lateral portions, the left is usually longer than the right, and corresponds with the usual greater length of the spermatic cord on the left side. Its external aspect varies under different circumstances: thus under the influence of warmth and in old and debilitated persons it becomes elongated and flaccid, but under the influence of cold and in the young and robust it is short, corrugated, and closely applied to the testes. The wrinkles in the scrotum are called **rugae**.

The scrotum consists of two layers, the **integument** and the **dartos**.

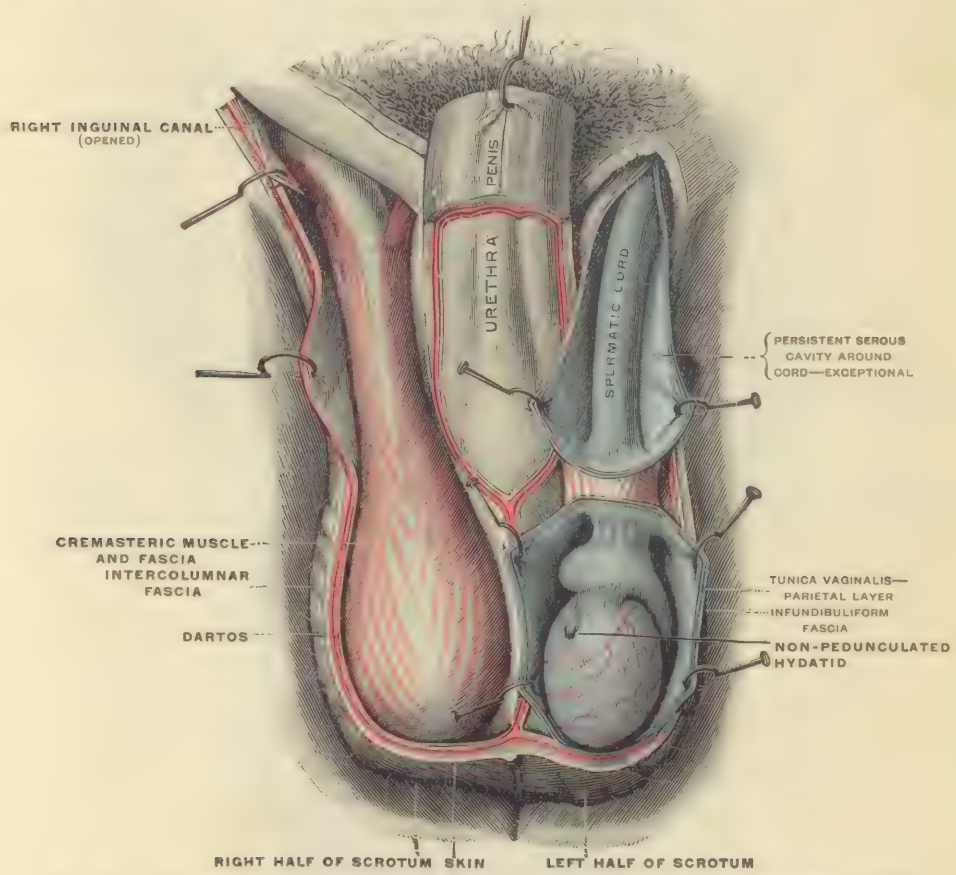


FIG. 1071.—The scrotum. On the left side the cavity of the tunica vaginalis has been opened; on the right side only the layers superficial to the cremaster have been removed. (Testut.)

The Integument.—The integument is very thin, of a brownish color, and generally thrown into folds or rugae. It is provided with sebaceous follicles, the secretion of which has a peculiar odor, and is beset with thinly-scattered, crisp hairs, the roots of which are seen through the skin.

The Dartos (*tunica dartos*) (Figs. 1064 and 1071).—The dartos is a thin layer of loose tissue, endowed with contractility; it forms the proper tunic of the scrotum, is continuous around the base of the scrotum, with the two layers of the superficial fascia of the groin and perinæum, and sends inward a distinct septum, the **septum of the scrotum** (*septum scroti*) (Fig. 1071), which divides it into two cavities for the two testes, the septum extending between the raphé and the under surface of the penis as far as its root.

The dartos is closely united to the skin externally, but connected with the

subjacent parts by delicate areolar tissue, upon which it glides with the greatest facility. The dartos is very vascular, and consists of a loose areolar tissue containing unstriped muscular fibre, but no fat. Its contractibility is slow, and excited by cold and mechanical stimuli, but not by electricity.

The Intercolumnar or Spermatic Fascia (Fig. 1071).—The intercolumnar fascia is a thin membrane derived from the margin of the pillars of the external abdominal ring, during the descent of the testis in the fœtus, which is prolonged downward around the surface of the cord and testis. It is separated from the

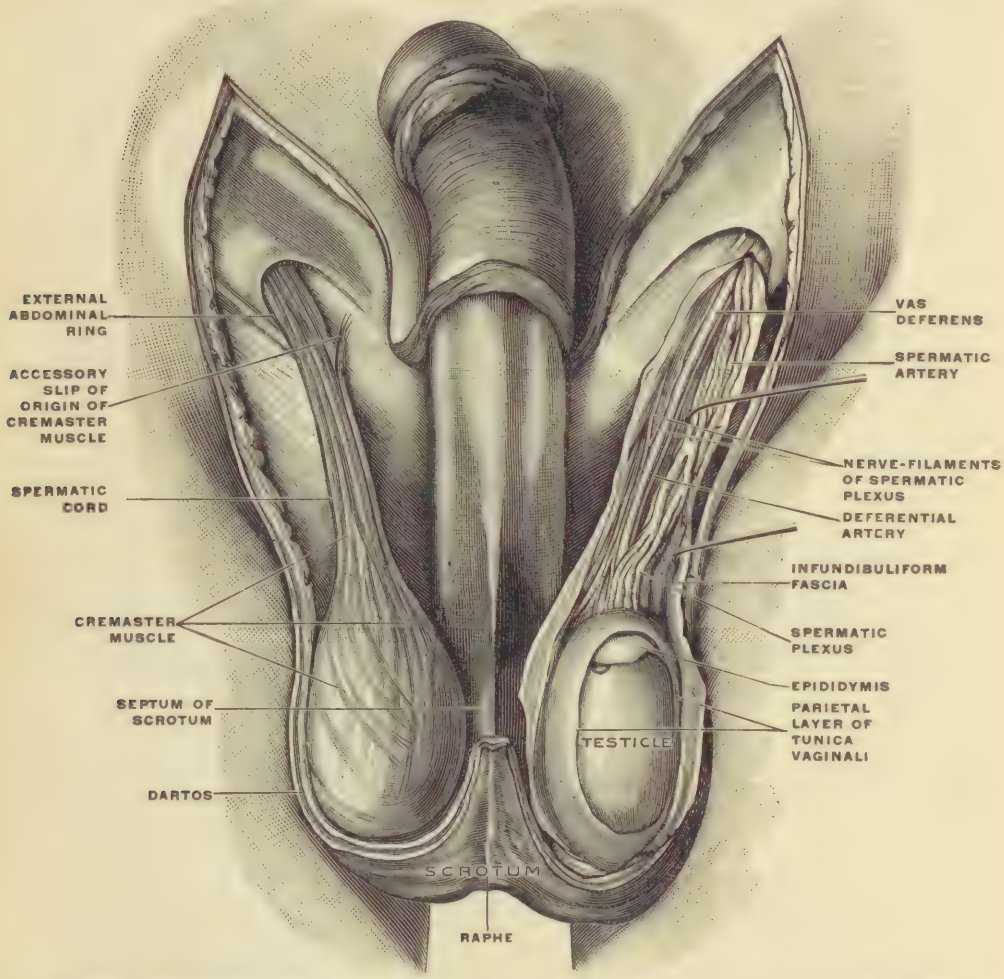


FIG. 1072.—The scrotum. The penis has been turned upward, and the anterior wall of the scrotum has been removed. On the right side, the spermatic cord, the infundibuliform fascia and the Cremaster muscle are displayed; on the left side, the infundibuliform fascia has been divided by a longitudinal incision passing along the front of the cord and the testicle, and a portion of the parietal layer of the tunica vaginalis has been removed to display the testicle and a portion of the head of the epididymis, which are covered by the visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis. (Toldt.)

dartos by loose areolar tissue, which allows of considerable movement of the latter upon it, but is intimately connected with the succeeding layers.

The Cremasteric Fascia (*fascia cremasterica*) (Figs. 1071 and 1072).—The cremasteric fascia consists of scattered bundles of muscular fibres, the **Cremaster muscle** (*m. cremaster*) (Figs. 1071 and 1072) connected together into a continuous covering by intermediate areolar tissue. The muscular fibres are continuous with the lower border of the Internal oblique muscle.

The Infundibuliform Fascia (*tunica vaginalis communis* [*testis et funiculi spermatici*]) (Figs. 1071 and 1071).—The infundibuliform fascia is a thin membranous

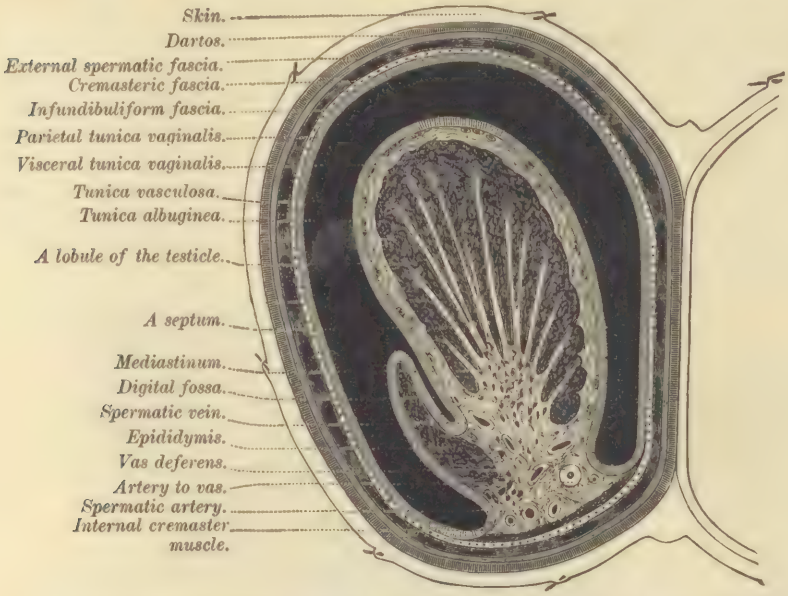


FIG. 1073.—Transverse section through the left side of the scrotum and the left testicle. The sac of the tunica vaginalis is represented in a distended condition. (Delépine.)

layer, which loosely invests the surface of the cord. It is a continuation downward of the fascia transversalis. Beneath it is a quantity of loose connective tissue which connects this layer of fascia with the spermatic cord and posterior parts of the tes-

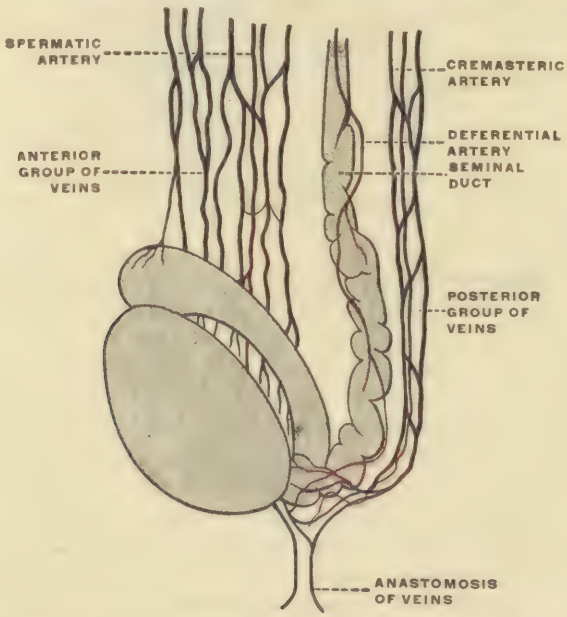


FIG. 1074.—The arteries of the testicle and the cord. (Poirier and Charpy.)

ticle. This connective tissue is continuous above with the subserous areolar tissue of the abdomen. These two layers, the infundibuliform fascia and the tissue beneath

it, are known collectively as the **fascia propria.** The infundibuliform fascia completely encloses the testicle and epididymis and is fused with the parietal lamina of the tunica vaginalis propria testis.

The Tunica Vaginalis (*tunica vaginalis propria testis*).—The tunica vaginalis is described with the testis (p. 1469.)

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** supplying the coverings of the testis are: the superficial and deep external pudic, from the femoral; the superficial perineal branch of the internal pudic; and the cremasteric branch from the deep epigastric. The **veins** follow the course of the corresponding arteries. The **lymphatics** terminate in the inguinal glands. The **nerves** are: the ilio-inguinal branch of the lumbar plexus, the two superficial perineal branches of the internal pudic nerve, the inferior pudenal branch of the small sciatic nerve, and the genital branch of the genito-crural nerve.

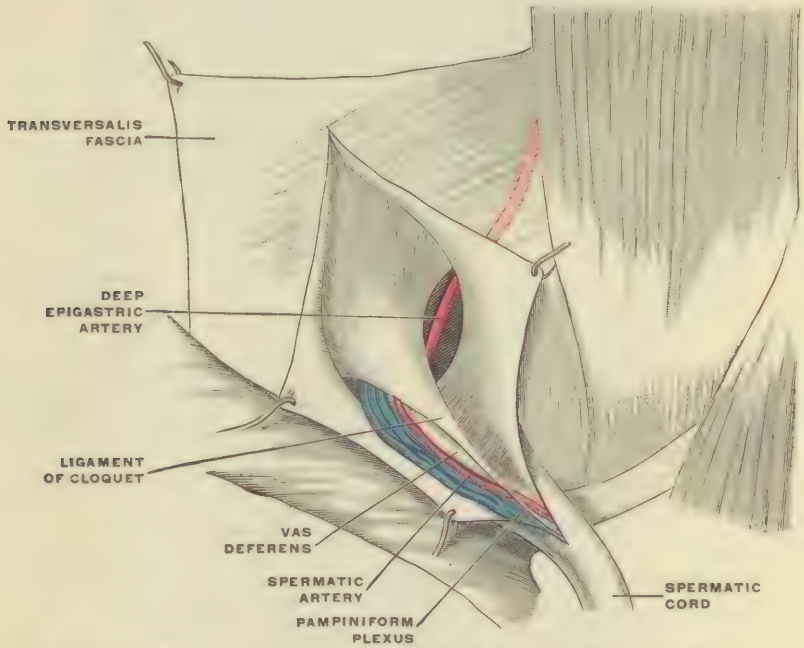


FIG. 1075.—The spermatic cord and the ligament of Cloquet. (Poirier and Charpy.)

THE SPERMATIC CORD (FUNICULUS SPERMATICUS) (Figs. 1071, 1072, 1075, 1076).

The spermatic cord extends from the internal abdominal ring, where the structures of which it is composed converge, to the back part of the testicle. In the abdominal wall the cord passes obliquely along the inguinal canal, lying at first beneath the Internal oblique muscle and upon the fascia transversalis; but nearer the pubes it rests upon Poupart's ligament, having the aponeurosis of the External oblique in front of it and the conjoined tendon behind it. It then escapes at the external ring, and descends nearly vertically into the scrotum. The left cord is usually rather longer than the right, consequently the left testis generally hangs somewhat lower than its fellow.

Structure.—The spermatic cord contains the spermatic duct, the deferential artery and veins, the spermatic artery, the pampiniform plexus of veins, the spermatic plexus, and the deferential plexus of the sympathetic nerve, lymphatics, and the cord-like remnant of the funicular process of peritoneum called the **ligament**

of Cloquet (Fig. 1075). All the above structures are held together by connective tissue. These structures are ensheathed by the **infundibuliform process of the transversalis fascia** (*tunica vaginalis communis* [*testis et funiculi spermatici*]) (Fig. 1075 and p. 1064). This fascia is thin above and thicker below, and encloses the testicle and epididymis, as well as the cord, being firmly adherent to the parietal layer of the **vaginal tunic of the testicle** and with the posterior portion of the testicle and epididymis. Upon this fascia are the fibres of the Cremaster muscle, which spring from the internal oblique, and in this fascia are the cremasteric artery, the genital branch of the genito-crural nerve, and external spermatic veins. This fascia is surrounded by the **intercolumnar** or **spermatic fascia** (*fascia cremasterica* [*Cooperi*]), which is distinct above, but not below.

Vessels and Nerves of the Spermatic Cord.—The **arteries** (Figs. 1074 and 1080) of the cord are: the spermatic, from the aorta; the artery of the vas deferens, from the superior vesical; the cremasteric, from the deep epigastric.

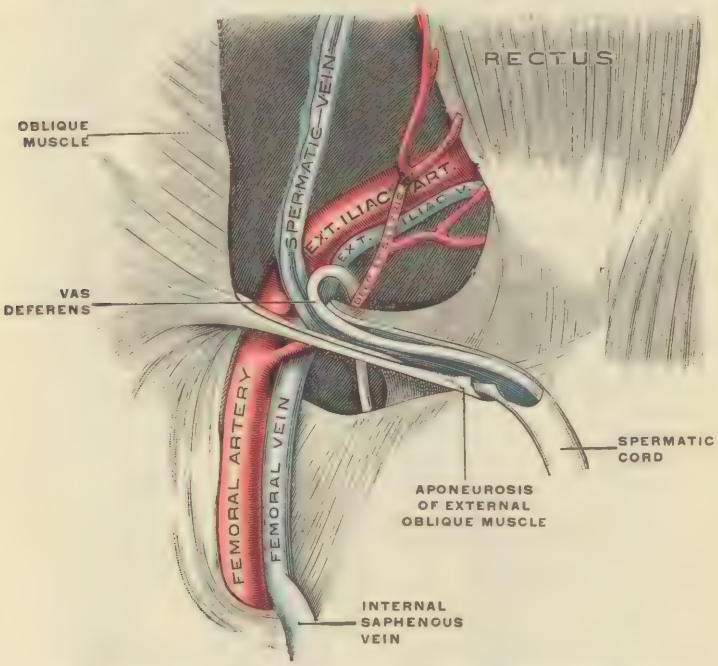


Fig. 1076.—The spermatic cord in the inguinal canal. (Poirier and Charpy.)

The **spermatic artery** (*a. spermatica interna*) arises from the abdominal aorta below the renal artery, descends by the Psoas muscle, crosses the ureter and external iliac vessels, meets the vas deferens at the internal abdominal ring, escapes from the abdomen at the internal or deep abdominal ring, and lying in front of the vas deferens accompanies the other constituents of the spermatic cord along the inguinal canal and through the external abdominal ring into the scrotum. It then descends to the testicle, and, becoming tortuous, divides into several branches, two or three of which, the **epididymal branches**, accompany the vas deferens and supply the epididymis, anastomosing with the artery of the vas deferens and the cremasteric artery; others, the **glandular branches**, pierce the back of the tunica albuginea and supply the substance of the testis.

The **artery of the vas deferens**, a branch of the superior vesical, is a long slender vessel which accompanies the vas deferens, ramifying upon the coats of that duct, and anastomosing with the spermatic artery and the cremasteric artery near the testis.

The **cremasteric artery** (*a. spermatica externa*) is a branch of the deep epigastric artery. It accompanies the spermatic cord and supplies the Cremaster muscle and other coverings of the cord, anastomosing with the spermatic and deferential arteries.

The **spermatic veins** (Figs. 1074, 1075, 1076, and 1077) emerge from the back of the testis and receive tributaries from the epididymis; they unite and form a convoluted plexus, the **pampiniform plexus** (*plexus pampiniformis*), which forms the chief mass of the cord; the vessels composing this plexus are very numerous, and ascend along the cord in front of the vas deferens; below the external or superficial abdominal ring they unite to form three or four veins, which pass along the inguinal canal, and, entering the abdomen through the internal or deep abdominal ring, coalesce to form two veins. These again unite to form a single vein, which opens on the right side into the inferior vena cava at an acute angle, and on the left side into the renal vein at a right angle.

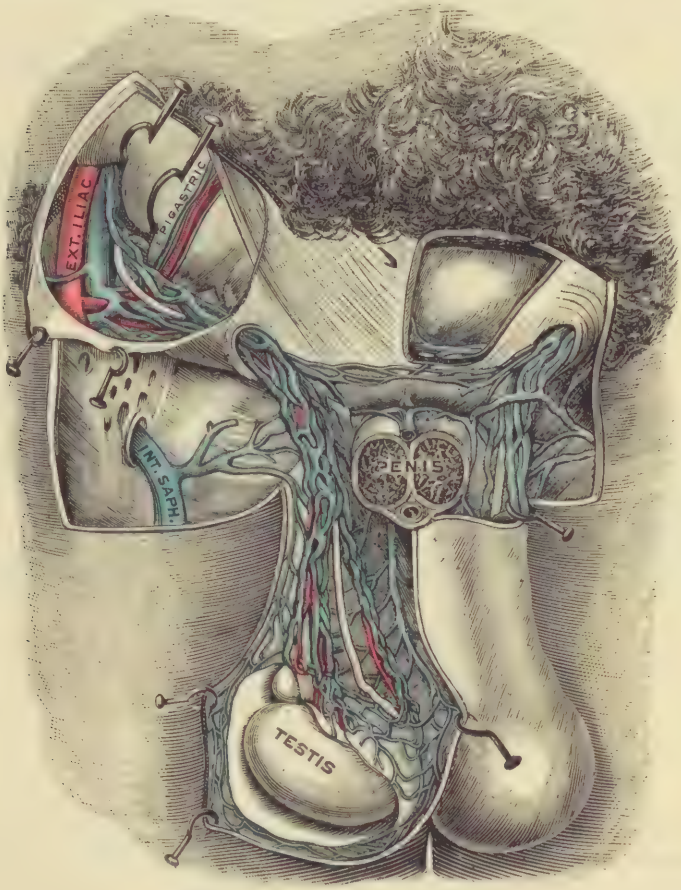


FIG. 1077.—Spermatic veins. (Testut.)

The **lymphatic vessels** of the scrotum terminate in the superficial inguinal glands. The lymphatics of the testicle join the lymphatics of the epididymis and of the visceral layer of the vaginal tunic of the testicle, and ascend in the spermatic cord. They reach the lumbar region along the spermatic blood-vessels and terminate in the **juxta-aorta glands**, and sometimes in the glands in front of the aorta. The lymphatics of the seminal duct pass to the **external iliac glands**.

The **nerves** are the **spermatic plexus** from the sympathetic, joined by filaments from the **pelvic plexus** which accompany the artery of the vas deferens.

The Ligament of the Scrotum.—See Fig. 1070 and p. 1462.

Surgical Anatomy.—The scrotum forms an admirable covering for the protection of the testicle. This body, lying suspended and loose in the cavity of the scrotum, and surrounded by a serous membrane, is capable of great mobility, and can therefore easily slip about within the scrotum, and thus avoid injuries from blows or squeezes. The skin of the scrotum is very elastic and capable of great distention, and on account of the looseness and amount of subcutaneous tissue the scrotum becomes greatly enlarged in cases of *œdema*, to which this part is especially liable on account of its dependent position. The scrotum is frequently the seat of *epithelioma;* this is no doubt due to the rugæ on its surface, which favor the lodgement of dirt, and this, causing irritation, is the exciting cause of the disease. Cancer was especially common in chimney-sweeps from the lodgement of soot. The scrotum is also the part most frequently affected by *elephantiasis*.

On account of the looseness of the subcutaneous tissue considerable *extravasations of blood* may take place from very slight injuries. It is therefore generally recommended never to apply leeches to the scrotum, since they may lead to considerable ecchymosis, but rather to puncture one or more of the superficial veins of the scrotum in cases where local bloodletting from this part is judged to be desirable. The muscular fibre in the dartos causes contraction and considerable diminution in the size of a *wound of the scrotum*, as after the operation of castration, and is of assistance in keeping the edges together and covering the exposed parts.

THE TESTICLES (TESTES) (Figs. 1069, 1071, 1072, 1078, 1079).

The testicles are suspended in the scrotum by the spermatic cords. As the left spermatic cord is rather longer than the right one, the left testicle hangs somewhat lower than its fellow. Each gland is of an oval form, compressed laterally, and having an oblique position in the scrotum, the **upper extremity** (*extremitas superior*) being directed forward and a little outward, the **lower extremity** (*extremitas inferior*), backward and a little inward; the **anterior convex border** (*margo anterior*) looks forward and downward; the **posterior** or **straight border** (*margo posterior*), to which the cord is attached, backward and upward.

The **anterior border** and **lateral surfaces** (*facies lateralis et facies medialis*), as well as both extremities of the organ, are convex, free, smooth, and invested by the visceral layer of the tunica vaginalis. The posterior border, to which the cord is attached, receives only a partial investment from that membrane. Lying upon the outer edge of this posterior border is a long, narrow, flattened body, named, from its relation to the testis, the **epididymis** (*διδυμος, testis*) (Figs. 1078 and 1079). The curve of the epididymis is convex outward and backward. It consists of a **central portion** or **body** (*corpus epididymidis*); an upper enlarged extremity, the **head** or **globus major** (*caput epididymidis*); and a lower pointed extremity, the **tail** or **globus minor** (*cauda epididymidis*). The globus major is directed inward and is intimately connected with the upper end of the testicle by means of its efferent ducts, and the globus minor is connected with its lower end by cellular tissue and a reflection of the tunica vaginalis. The globus minor bends suddenly and passes into the **seminal duct**, the direction of which is upward and backward. The outer surface and upper and lower ends of the epididymis are free and covered by serous membrane; the body is also completely invested by it, excepting along its posterior border, and between the body and the testicle is a pouch or *cul-de-sac*, named the **digital fossa** (*sinus epididymidis*). Above this fossa is a fold of the tunica vaginalis, which is called the **ligamentum epididymidis superior**, and below it is another fold, the **ligamentum epididymidis inferior**. The epididymis is connected to the back of the testis by a fold of the serous membrane. Attached to the upper end of the testis, close to the globus major, is a small body. It is oblong in shape and has a broad base. Attached to the globus major of the epididymis is another small body, which is pear-shaped and has a stalk. These bodies are

believed to be the remains of the upper extremity of the Müllerian duct, and are termed the **hydatids of Morgagni**; some observers, however, regard the stalked hydatid as being a rudiment of the pronephros. The body with a broad base is the **non-pedunculated hydatid** (*appendix testis* [*Morgagnii*]) (Figs. 1071 and 1078);

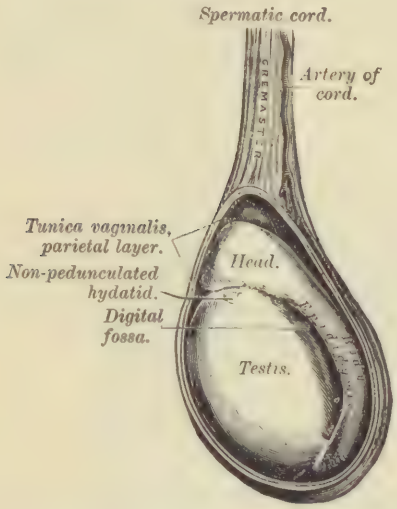


FIG. 1078.—The testis *in situ*, the tunica vaginalis having been laid open.

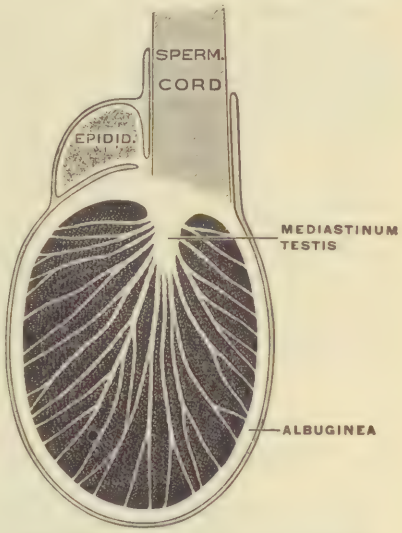


FIG. 1079.—Frontal section of the testicle and epididymis. (Poirier and Charpy.)

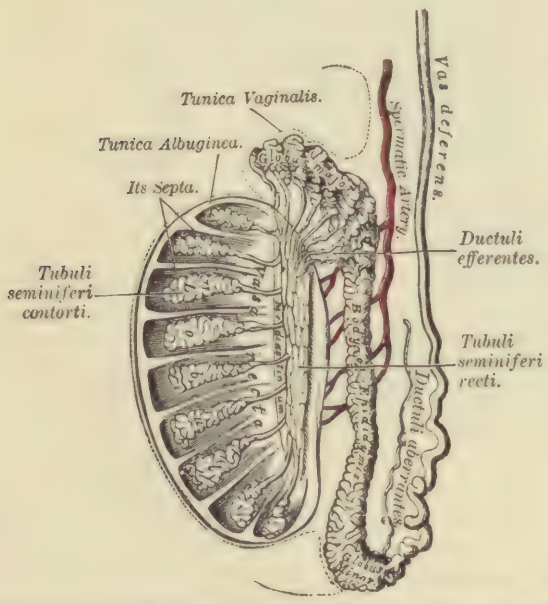


FIG. 1080.—Vertical section of the testicle, to show the arrangement of the ducts.

the pear-shaped body is the **pedunculated hydatid** (*appendix epididymidis*). When the testicle is removed from the body, the position of the vas deferens, on the posterior surface of the testicle and inner side of the epididymis, marks the side to which the gland has belonged.

Size and Weight.—The average dimensions of this gland are from one and a half to two inches in length, one inch in breadth, and an inch and a quarter in the antero-posterior diameter, and the weight varies from six to eight drachms, the left testicle being a little the larger.

The Tunics of the Testicle.—The testis is invested by three tunics—the **tunica vaginalis, tunica albuginea,** and **tunica vasculosa.**

The **Proper Sheath of the Testicle** or the **Tunica Vaginalis** (*tunica vaginalis propria testis*) (Figs. 1069, 1071, 1072, 1073, and 1080) is the serous covering of the testicle and epididymis. It is a pouch of serous membrane, derived from the peritoneum (*processus vaginalis peritonaei*) during the descent of the testis in the fœtus from the abdomen into the scrotum. After its descent that portion of the pouch which

extends from the internal ring to near the upper part of the gland, the **funicular process**, becomes obliterated, the lower portion remaining as a shut sac (*tunica vaginalis propria testis*), which invests the outer surface of the testis, and is reflected on to the internal surface of the scrotum; hence it may be described as consisting of a visceral and parietal portion.

The **Visceral Portion** (*lamina visceralis*) of the tunica vaginalis propria covers the outer surface of the testis, as well as the epididymis, connecting the latter to the testis by means of a distinct fold. From the posterior border of the gland it is reflected on to the internal surface of the infundibuliform process of the transversalis fascia, and between the tunic and the fascia is a layer of unstriated muscle fibres, the **Internal cremaster muscle** (Fig. 1073).

The **Parietal Portion** (*lamina parietalis*) of the tunica vaginalis propria is the reflected portion. It is far more extensive than the visceral portion, extending upward for some distance in front and on the inner side of the cord, and reaching below the testis. The inner surface of the tunica vaginalis is free, smooth, and covered by a layer of endothelial cells. The interval between the visceral and parietal layers of this membrane constitutes the **cavity of the tunica vaginalis** and contains a small amount of serous fluid.

The obliterated portion of the pouch may generally be seen as a fibro-cellular thread, the **ligament of Cloquet** (*rudimentum processus vaginalis*) (Fig. 1075), lying in the loose areolar tissue around the spermatic cord; sometimes this may be traced as a distinct band from the upper end of the inguinal canal, where it is connected with the peritoneum, down to the tunica vaginalis; sometimes it gradually becomes lost on the spermatic cord. Occasionally no trace of it can be detected. In some cases it happens that the pouch of peritoneum does not become obliterated, but the sac of the peritoneum communicates with the tunica vaginalis. This may give rise to one of the varieties of oblique inguinal hernia; or in other cases the pouch may contract, but not become entirely obliterated; it then forms a minute canal leading from the peritoneum to the tunica vaginalis.[1]

The Tunica Albuginea (Figs. 1073, 1079, and 1080).—The tunica albuginea is the fibrous covering of the testis. It is a dense fibrous membrane, of a bluish-white color, composed of bundles of white fibrous tissue, which interlace in every direction. Its outer surface is covered by the tunica vaginalis, except at the points of attachment of the epididymis to the testicle, and along its posterior border, where the spermatic vessels enter the gland. This membrane surrounds the glandular structure of the testicle, and at its posterior border forms a projection, triangular in shape and cellular in structure, which is reflected into the interior of the gland, forming an incomplete vertical septum, called the **mediastinum testis**.

The **Mediastinum Testis** (*corpus Highmori*) (Figs. 1073, 1079, and 1080) extends from the upper, nearly to the lower, extremity of the gland, and is wider above than below. From the front and sides of this septum numerous slender fibrous cords and imperfect septa, called the **trabeculae** (*septula testis*) (Fig. 1080), are given off, which radiate toward the surface of the organ, and are attached to the inner surface of the tunica albuginea. This scaffolding of connective tissue divides the **parenchyma** (*parenchyma testis*) of the organ into a number of incomplete spaces, which are somewhat cone-shaped, being broad at their bases at the surface of the gland, and becoming narrower as they converge to the mediastinum. The mediastinum supports the blood-vessels, lymphatics, and ducts of the testis in their passage to and from the substance of the gland, and contains numerous fine canals, into which open the very small tubules of the proper substance of the testicle.

[1] It is recorded that in the post-mortem examination of Sir Astley Cooper a minute funicular canal was found on each side of the body. Sir Astley Cooper states that when a student he suffered from inguinal hernia; probably this was of the congenital variety, and the canal found after death was the remains of the one down which the hernia travelled (Lancet, 1824, vol. ii. p. 116.).—Ed. of 15th English edition.

The Tunica Vasculosa (Fig. 1073).—The tunica vasculosa is the vascular layer of the testis, and consists of a plexus of blood-vessels held together by a delicate areolar tissue. It covers the inner surface of the tunica albuginea and the different septa in the interior of the gland, and therefore forms an internal investment to all the spaces of which the gland is composed.

Structure of the Testicle and Epididymis (Fig. 1080).—The glandular structure of the testis consists of numerous **lobules** (*lobuli testis*). Their number, in a single testis, is estimated by Berres at 250, and by Krause at 400. They differ in size according to their position, those in the middle of the gland being larger and longer. The lobules are conical in shape, the base of each being directed toward the circumference of the organ, the apex toward the mediastinum. Each lobule is contained in one of the intervals between the fibrous cords and vascular processes which extend between the mediastinum testis and the tunica albuginea, and consists of from one to three or more minute convoluted tubes, which anastomose with each other, the **tubuli seminiferi contorti.** The contorted tubes unite at the apex of the lobules and form the **straight tubes** (*tubuli seminiferi recti*). The straight tubes pass into the mediastinum testis and form the network known as the **rete testis of Haller** (Fig. 1080). The rete testis is lined with flattened epithelium. The tubes are lined with columnar ciliated epithelium. The **efferent ducts** (*ducti efferentes testis*) (Fig. 1080), about twelve to fifteen in number, arise from the rete. The contorted tubes may be separately unravelled by careful dissection under water, and may be seen to commence either by free cæcal ends or by anastomotic loops. The total number of tubes is considered by Munro to be about 300 and the length of each about sixteen feet; by Lauth their number is estimated at 840, and their average length two feet and a quarter. The diameter varies from $\frac{1}{200}$ to $\frac{1}{150}$ of an inch. The tubuli are pale in color in early life, but in old age they acquire a deep-yellow tinge from containing much fatty matter. Each tube consists of a basement layer, formed of epithelioid cells united edge to edge, outside of which are other layers of flattened cells arranged in interrupted laminæ, which give to the tube an appearance of striation in cross-section. The cells of the outer layers gradually pass into the interstitial tissue. Within the basement-membrane are epithelial cells arranged in several irregular layers, which are not always clearly separated, but which may be arranged in three different groups. Among these cells may be seen the **spermatozoids** in different stages of development. 1. Lining the basement-membrane and forming the outer zone is a layer of cubical cells, with small nuclei; these are known as the **lining cells** or **spermatogonia.** The nucleus of some of them may be seen to be in the process of indirect division (*karyokinesis*), and in consequence of this daughter cells are formed, which constitute the second zone. 2. Within this first layer is to be seen a number of larger cells with clear nuclei, arranged in two or three layers; these are the **intermediate cells** or **spermatocytes.** Most of these cells are in a condition of karyokinetic division, and the cells which result from this division form those of the next layer, the **spermatoblasts** or **spermatids.** 3. The third layer of cells therefore consists of the spermatoblasts or spermatids, and each of these, without further subdivision, becomes a **spermatozoid.** They are ill-defined granular masses of protoplasm, of an elongated form, with a nucleus which becomes the head of the future spermatozoid. In addition to these three layers of cells others are seen, which are termed the **supporting cells,** or **cells of Sertoli.** They are elongated and columnar, and project inward from the basement-membrane toward the lumen of the tube. They give off numerous lateral branches, which form a reticulum for the support of the three groups of cells just described. As development of the spermatozoids proceeds the latter group themselves around the inner extremities of the supporting cells. The nuclear part of the spermatozoid, which is partly embedded in the supporting cell, is differentiated to form the head of the spermatozoid, while the cell protoplasm becomes lengthened out to

form the middle piece and tail, the latter projecting into the lumen of the tube. Ultimately the heads are separated and the spermatozoids are set free.

Spermatogenesis.—The stages in the development of the spermatozoids are as follows: The spermatogonia become enlarged to form the spermatocytes, and each spermatocyte subdivides into two cells, and each of these again divides into two spermatids or young spermatozoids, so that the spermatocyte gives origin to four spermatozoids.

The process of spermatogenesis bears a close relation to that of maturation of the ovum. The spermatocyte is equivalent to the immature ovum. It undergoes subdivision, and ultimately gives origin to four spermatozoids, each of which contains, therefore, only one-fourth of the chromatin elements of the nucleus of the spermatocyte. In the process of maturation of the ovum its nucleus divides, one-half being extended as the first polar body. The remaining half of the nucleus again subdivides, one-half being extended as the second polar body. The portion of the nucleus which is retained to form the female pronucleus of the now matured ovum contains, therefore, only one-fourth of the chromatin elements of the original nucleus, and thus the spermatozoid and the matured ovum, so far as their nuclear elements are concerned, may be regarded as of the same morphological value.

The tubules are enclosed in a delicate plexus of capillary vessels, and are held together by an intertubular connective tissue, which presents large interstitial spaces lined by endothelium, which are believed to be the rootlets of lymphatic vessels of the testis.

The **Aberrant Ducts of the Epididymis** (*ductuli aberrantes*) are tortuous and end in blind extremities. The **superior aberrant duct** (*ductus aberrans superior*) is in the globus major and joins the rete testis. The **inferior aberrant duct** (*ductus aberrans inferior*) (Fig. 1080) is in the tail of the epididymis, and takes origin from the duct of the epididymis or the seminal duct. It is a persistent canal of the Wolffian body. It extends up the cord for two or three inches and terminates by a blind extremity, which is occasionally bifurcated. It may be as much as fourteen inches in length. Its structure is similar to that of the seminal duct.

The Seminal Duct or Vas Deferens (*ductus deferens*) (Figs. 1074, 1075, 1076, 1080, 1081, and 1118).—The seminal duct or vas deferens, the excretory duct of the testis, is the continuation of the epididymis. Commencing at the lower part of the globus minor, it ascends along the posterior border of the testis and inner side of the epididymis, and along the back part of the spermatic cord, through the inguinal canal to the internal or deep abdominal ring. From the ring it curves around the outer side of the internal epigastric artery and vein, crosses the external iliac vessels, and descends into the pelvis at the side of the bladder; it arches backward and downward to its base, crossing over the obliterated hypogastric artery and to the inner side of the ureter. At the base of the bladder it lies between that viscus and the rectum, running along the inner border of the seminal vesicle. Behind the bladder it becomes enlarged and sacculated, forming the **ampulla** (*ampulla ductus deferentis*) (Fig. 1081), and then, becoming narrowed at the base of the prostate, unites with the duct of the seminal vesicle to form the **ejaculatory duct** (Fig. 1082). From the internal abdominal ring to the middle of the ampulla the seminal duct is beneath the peritoneum. The vas deferens offers a hard and cord-like sensation to the fingers; it is about two feet in length, of cylindrical form, and about a line and a quarter in diameter. Its walls are dense, measuring one-third of a line, and its canal is extremely small, measuring about half a line.

Structure.—The vas deferens consists of three coats: 1. An **external** or **areolar coat** (*tunica adventitia*). 2. A **muscular coat** (*tunica muscularis*), which in the greater part of the tube consists of two layers of unstriped muscular fibre: an inner layer of thin longitudinal fibres (*stratum internum*), existing only at the beginning,

a thick layer of circular fibres (*stratum medium*), and a thick external layer of longitudinal fibres (*stratum externum*). 3. An **internal** or **mucous coat** (*tunica mucosa*), which is pale, and arranged in longitudinal folds; its epithelial cells are of the columnar variety.

Organ of Giraldes (*paradidymis*).—This term is applied to a small body of rounded shape in the lower end of the spermatic cord, in front of the blood-vessels. It consists of a small collection of minute vesicles and a small collection of convoluted tubules. These tubes are lined with columnar ciliated epithelium, and probably represents the remains of a part of the Wolffian body.

Surgical Anatomy.—Abnormalities in the descent and position of the testicle have been discussed (p. 1462). The testicle may require removal for *malignant disease*, *tuberculous disease*, *cystic disease*, in cases of large *hernia testis*, and in some instances of *incompletely descended* or *misplaced testicles*. The operation of double *castration* has also been, during the last few years, performed for enlargement of the prostate gland; for it has been found that removal of the testicles is followed by very rapid and often considerable diminution in the size of the prostate. The operation is, however, one of severity, and is frequently followed by death in these cases, performed, as it necessarily is, in old men. Reginald Harrison has proposed to substitute for it excision of a portion of each vas deferens (*vasectomy*). The *operation of castration* is a comparatively simple one. An incision is made into the cavity of the tunica vaginalis from the external ring to the bottom of the scrotum. The coverings are shelled off the organ, and the mesorchium, stretching between the back of the testicle and the scrotum, divided. The cord is then isolated, and an aneurism needle, armed with a double ligature, passed under it, as high as is thought necessary, and the cord tied in two places, and divided between the ligatures. Sometimes, in cases of malignant disease, it is desirable to open the inguinal canal and tie the cord as near the internal abdominal ring as possible.

A collection of serous fluid in the sac of the vaginal tunic of the testicle is known as an *ordinary* or *testicular hydrocele*. In *congenital hydrocele* a communication remains between the tunica vaginalis testis and the peritoneal cavity. This communication should have closed during development. In *infantile hydrocele* the tunica vaginalis and part of the funicular process are distended with fluid, but the funicular process is closed above and the cavity of the hydrocele does not communicate with the peritoneal cavity. In *encysted hydrocele of the cord* the funicular process is closed above and below, but between these points is not obliterated. In *funicular hydrocele* the funicular process is closed below and open above. Congenital hydrocele can usually be cured by the application of a truss. This obliterates the upper end of the funicular process, and the obliteration once begun may proceed to completion. If it does not, the condition has become an infantile hydrocele. An infantile hydrocele can usually be cured by multiple punctures or tapping. The same is true of encysted hydrocele of the cord. In hydrocele of the funicular process wear a truss for a time and then tap. In ordinary testicular hydrocele incise and pack, or incise and suture, the cut edge of the parietal layer of the tunic to the skin, or extirpate the parietal layer of the tunic. A successful method is that of Longuet. He makes an incision, pulls out the testicle, and allows all the coats except the skin to fall behind and make a sheath for the cord. These coats are held behind by one catgut suture. A bed is made for the testicle beneath the skin toward the septum of the scrotum. The testicle is rotated on its long axis and placed in the bed, and the skin is sutured above it. This operation is known as *extraserous transposition*. If a portion of bowel enters an open vaginal process the condition is *congenital hernia*.

In *infantile hernia* the funicular process is closed above but not below, and the hernia descends in a special sac back of the vaginal tunic. If the hernia pushes down on the vaginal process and causes it to double on itself the condition is *encysted infantile hernia*.

The Semen and the Spermatozoids.—Semen consists of spermatozoids with liquids and solids. Part of the semen comes from the testicles, most of it from accessory glands—that is, from the glands of the seminal ducts, the seminal vesicles, the prostate gland, and Cowper's glands. Semen is a viscid, whitish fluid, of alkaline reaction and characteristic odor. It contains water and about 18 per cent. of solid matter. In this solid matter are fat, cholesterin, lecithin, proteids, nuclein, xanthin, chlorides, sulphates, and phosphates of sodium and potassium. Böttcher's crystals, which can be obtained from semen, are composed of phosphate of spermine. Spermine is a nitrogenous substance. The fluid portion of semen carries and probably nourishes the living cells known as spermatozoids.

The spermatozoids (Fig. 1081) are minute, thread-like bodies, which constitute the essential elements of the semen. Each consists of a **head**, a middle piece or **body**, and an elongated filament or **tail**. The head, on surface view, appears oval in shape, but if seen in profile it is narrow and pointed at its free end. It represents the modified nucleus of the spermatid, and consists chiefly of chromatin, and so stains readily with nuclear reagents; it is covered by a thin cap of protoplasm. The body is a short cylindrical or conical piece, intervening between the head and tail, and is therefore sometimes spoken of as the intermediate segment. The tail is about four times the combined lengths of the head and body; its terminal part is extremely fine, and is named the **end-piece**. Contained within the body and tail is an axial filament, surrounded, except in the end-piece, by a thin layer of protoplasm; this axial filament terminates just below the head in a rounded knob or button. In virtue of their tails, which act as propellers, the spermatozoids, in the fresh condition, are capable of free movement, and if placed in favorable surroundings (*e. g.*, in the female passages) may retain their vitality for some days or even weeks.

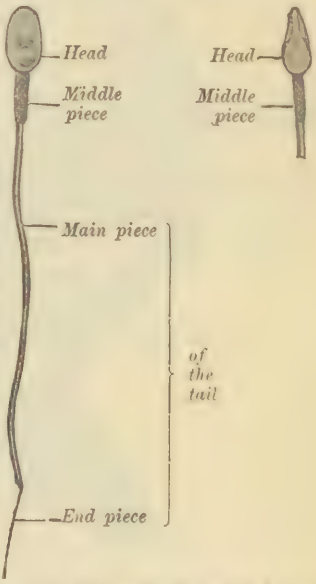


FIG. 1081.—Spermatozoid of man. At the left a surface view is shown; at the right a lateral view. × 1200. (Szymonowicz, after Retzius.)

THE SEMINAL VESICLES (VESICULAE SEMINALES) (Figs. 1082, 1083).

The seminal vesicles are two lobulated membranous pouches placed between the base of the bladder and the rectum, serving as reservoirs for the semen, and secreting a fluid to be added to the secretion of the testicles. Each sac is somewhat pyramidal in form, the broad end being directed backward and the narrow end forward toward the prostate. It measures about two and a half inches in length, about five lines in breadth, and two or three lines in thickness. They vary, however, in size, not only in different individuals, but also in the same individual on the two sides. The *upper surface* is in contact with the base of the bladder, extending from near the termination of the ureters to the base of the prostate gland. The *under surface* rests upon the rectum, from which it is separated by the recto-vesical fascia. Their *posterior extremities* diverge from each other. Their *anterior extremities* are pointed, and converge toward the base of the prostate gland, where each joins with the corresponding seminal duct to form the ejaculatory duct. Along the inner margin of each vesicle runs the enlarged and convoluted vas deferens. The inner border of the vesicle and the corresponding seminal duct form the lateral boundaries of a triangular space, limited behind by the recto-vesical peritoneal fold; the portion of the bladder included in this space rests on the rectum.

Each vesicle consists of a single tube, coiled upon itself and giving off several irregular caecal diverticula (Fig. 1082), the separate coils, as well as the diverticula, being connected together by fibrous tissue. When uncoiled this tube is about the diameter of a quill, and varies in length from four to six inches; it terminates posteriorly in a *cul-de-sac;* its anterior extremity becomes constricted into a narrow straight duct, the **excretory duct** (*ductus excretorius*) (Fig. 1083), which joins with the corresponding seminal duct, and forms the ejaculatory duct.

The Ejaculatory Ducts (*ductus ejaculatorii*) (Fig. 1083).—The ejaculatory ducts are two in number, one on each side. Each duct is formed by the junction of the duct of the seminal vesicle with the seminal duct. Each duct is about three-quarters of

an inch in length; it commences at the base of the prostate, and runs forward and downward between the middle and lateral lobes of that gland, and along the side of the sinus pocularis, to terminate by a separate slit-like orifice close to or just within the margins of the sinus. The ducts diminish in size and also converge toward their termination.

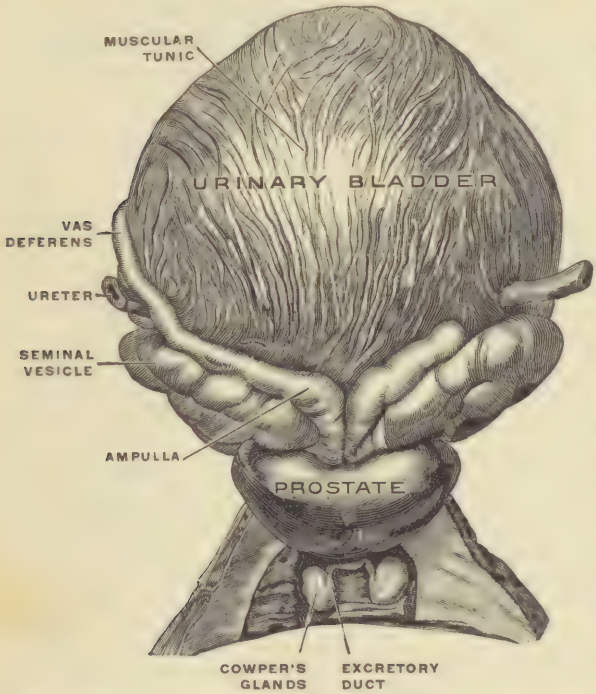


FIG. 1082.—The urinary bladder, distended, with surrounding structures, viewed from behind. (Spalteholz.)

Structure.—The seminal vesicles are composed of three coats: an **external** or **areolar** (*tunica adventitia*); a **middle** or **muscular coat** (*tunica muscularis*), which is thinner than in the seminal duct, and is arranged in two layers, an outer, longitudinal, and inner, circular; an **internal** or **mucous coat** (*tunica mucosa*), which is pale, of a whitish-brown color, and presents a delicate reticular structure, like that seen in the gall-bladder, but the meshes are finer. The epithelium is columnar.

The coats of the ejaculatory ducts are extremely thin. They are: an **outer fibrous layer**, which is almost entirely lost after the entrance of the duct into the prostate; a **layer of muscular fibres**, consisting of an outer thin circular and an inner longitudinal layer; and the **mucous membrane**.

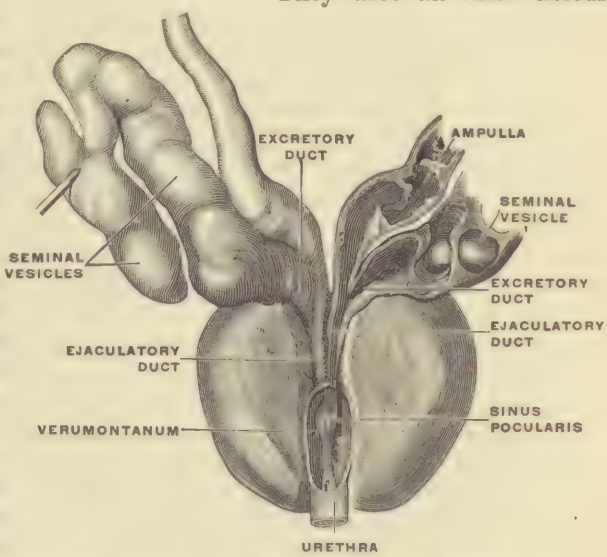


FIG. 1083.—The ejaculatory ducts viewed from in front and above. (Spalteholz.)

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries** supplying the vesiculae seminales are derived from the **middle** and **inferior vesical** and **middle haemorrhoidal**. The **veins** and **lymphatics** accompany the arteries. The **lymphatics** anastomose on the surface of the vesicle. The trunks from this network anastomose with the lymphatics of the bladder and prostate, and pass to the **external** and **internal iliac glands**. The **nerves** are derived from the **pelvic plexus**.

Surgical Anatomy.—The vesiculae seminales are often the seat of an extension of the disease in cases of *tuberculosis* of the testicle, and should always be examined through the rectum before coming to a decision with regard to castration in this affection. The vesicles have been deliberately *extirpated* for local tuberculosis. In gonorrhœa the seminal vesicles may become acutely inflamed (*acute seminal vesiculitis*). *Chronic seminal vesiculitis* may follow the acute form or may arise insidiously during gonorrhœa.

THE FEMALE ORGANS OF GENERATION.

EXTERNAL ORGANS (PARTES GENITALES EXTERNAE MULIEBRES).

THE external organs of generation in the female are: the **mons Veneris**, the **labia majora** and **minora**, the **clitoris**, the **meatus urinarius**, and the **orifice of the vagina**. The term **vulva** (*pudendum muliebre*), as generally applied, includes all of these parts.

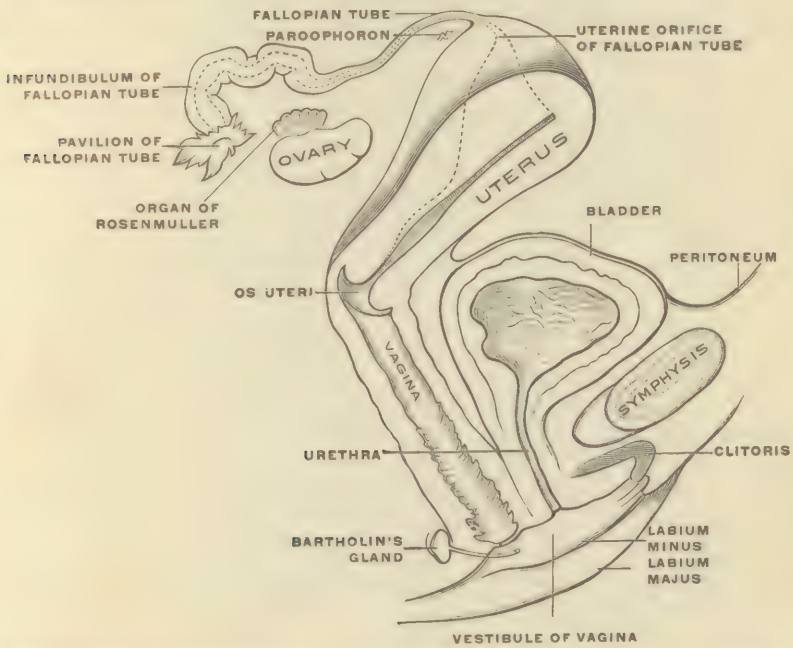


FIG. 1084.—Diagrammatic representation of the female reproductive organs and their relations to the bladder and urethra, lateral view. (Toldt.)

THE MONS VENERIS (MONS PUBIS) (Figs. 1085, 1086).

The mons Veneris is the rounded eminence in front of the pubic symphysis, formed by a collection of fatty tissue beneath the integument. It becomes covered with hair at the time of puberty.

THE LARGE LIPS OR LABIA MAJORA (LABIA MAJORA PUDENDI) (Figs. 1085, 1086, 1087).

The large lips or labia majora are two prominent longitudinal cutaneous folds extending downward from the mons Veneris to the anterior boundary of the perinæum, and enclosing the common urino-sexual opening. Each **labium majus** (*labium majus pudendi*) has two surfaces, an outer, which is pigmented and

covered with strong, crisp hairs; and an inner, which is smooth and is beset with large sebaceous follicles and is continuous with the genito-urinary mucous tract; between the two there is a considerable quantity of areolar tissue, fat, and a tissue resembling the dartos of the scrotum, besides vessels, nerves, and sweat and sebaceous glands. Between the labia majora is the **pudendal slit** (*rima pudendi*). The labia are thicker in front, where they form by their meeting the **anterior commissure** (*commissura labiorum anterior*). Posteriorly they are not really joined, but appear to become lost in the neighboring integument, terminating close to, and nearly parallel with, each other. Together with the connecting skin between them, they form the **posterior commissure** (*commissura labiorum posterior*), or posterior boundary of the vulval orifice. The interval between the posterior

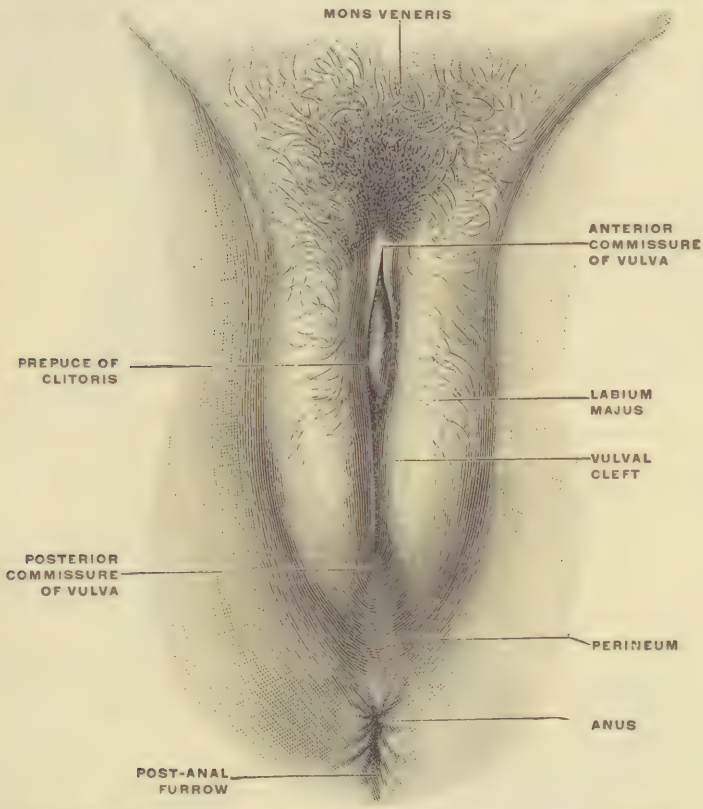


FIG. 1085.—The female pudendum or vulva with the labia majora. (Toldt.)

commissure and the anus, about an inch to an inch and a quarter in length, constitutes the **obstetric perinæum**. The **fourchette** (*frenulum labiorum pudendi*) (Fig. 1086) is the anterior edge of the perinæum, and between it and the hymen is a depression, the **fossa navicularis of the vulva** or the **vestibule of the vagina** (*fossa navicularis vestibuli vaginae*) (Fig. 1086). The labia majora correspond to the scrotum in the male.

THE SMALL LIPS, NYMPHAE OR LABIA MINORA (LABIA MINORA PUDENDI) (Figs. 1085, 1086, 1087).

The small lips are two small cutaneous folds, situated within the labia majora, and extending from the clitoris obliquely downward, outward, and back-

ward for about an inch and a half on each side of the orifice of the vagina, between which and the labia majora they are lost in women who have borne children. In women who have not borne children they unite behind and usually form a fold (*frenulum labiorum pudendi*). Behind this fold is the fossa navicularis. Anteriorly, each lip divides into two limbs. The external limbs unite over the

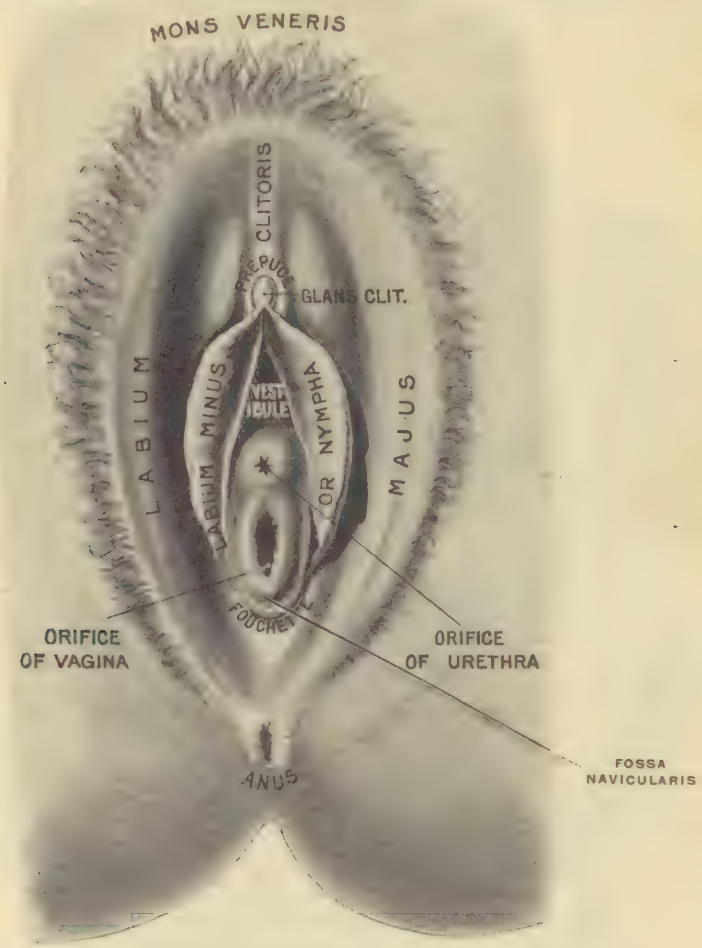


FIG. 1086.—The vulva. External female organs of generation.

glans clitoris to form the **prepuce of the clitoris** (*praeputium clitoridis*) (Fig. 1086). The internal limbs meet and unite beneath the glans clitoris and are attached to the under surface of the glans to form the **fraenum** (*frenulum clitoridis*). The nymphae are really modified skin. Their internal surfaces have numerous sebaceous follicles (*glandulae vestibulares minores*).

THE CLITORIS (Figs. 1086, 1087, 1089).

The clitoris is an erectile structure analogous to the corpora cavernosa of the penis. It is situated beneath the anterior commissure, partially hidden between the anterior extremities of the labia minora. It is connected to the rami of the os pubis. It consists of two **corpora cavernosa**, each of which (*corpus cavernosum*

clitoridis) passes behind into the **crus** (*crus clitoridis*). Each crus is attached to the ramus of the pubis and ischium; the **body** (*corpus clitoridis*) is short and concealed beneath the labia; the **free extremity** (*glans clitoridis*) is a small rounded tubercle, consisting of spongy erectile tissue, and is highly sensitive. It is provided, like the penis, with a **suspensory ligament** (*ligamentum suspensorium clitoridis*), and with two small muscles, the **Erectores clitoridis**, which are inserted into the crura of the clitoris. The two corpora cavernosa are composed of erectile

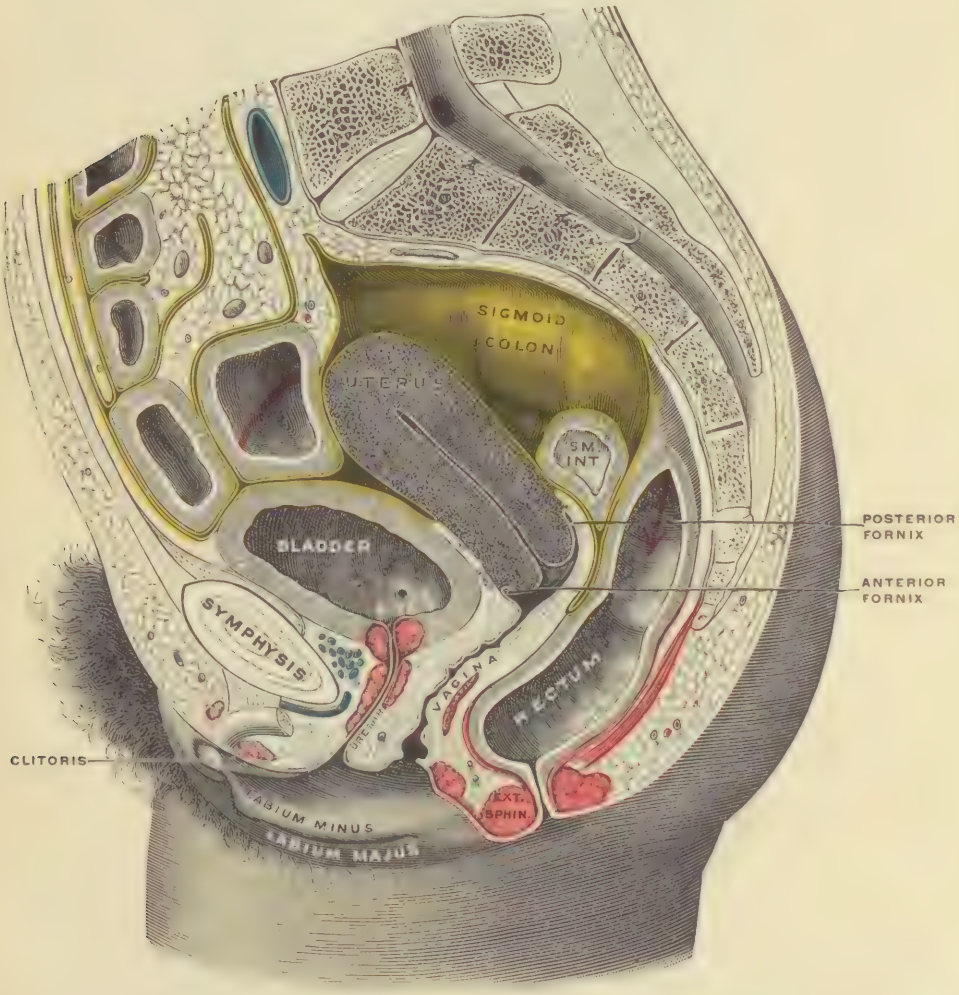


FIG. 1087.—Sagittal section of the lower part of a female trunk, right segment. SM. INT., small intestine. (Testut.)

tissue enclosed in a dense layer of fibrous membrane, united together along their inner surfaces by an incomplete fibrous pectiniform septum.

To each crus of the clitoris goes a branch from the internal pudic artery, which branch is known as the **deep artery of the clitoris**. The **dorsal arteries of the clitoris** (*arteriae dorsalis clitoridis*) from the internal pudic send branches to the glans. The **nerves** of the clitoris consist of the dorsal nerves of the clitoris from the internal pudic nerve and sympathetic fibres from the hypogastric plexus.

THE VESTIBULE (VESTIBULUM VAGINAE).

The vestibule of English and American writers is a triangular smooth surface between the clitoris and the entrance of the vagina (Fig. 1086). It is bounded on each side by the nymphae. The vestibule of the vagina is understood by the Germans to be the space at the sides of the vaginal orifice enclosed by the labii minora, as well as the space in front of the vagina.[1]

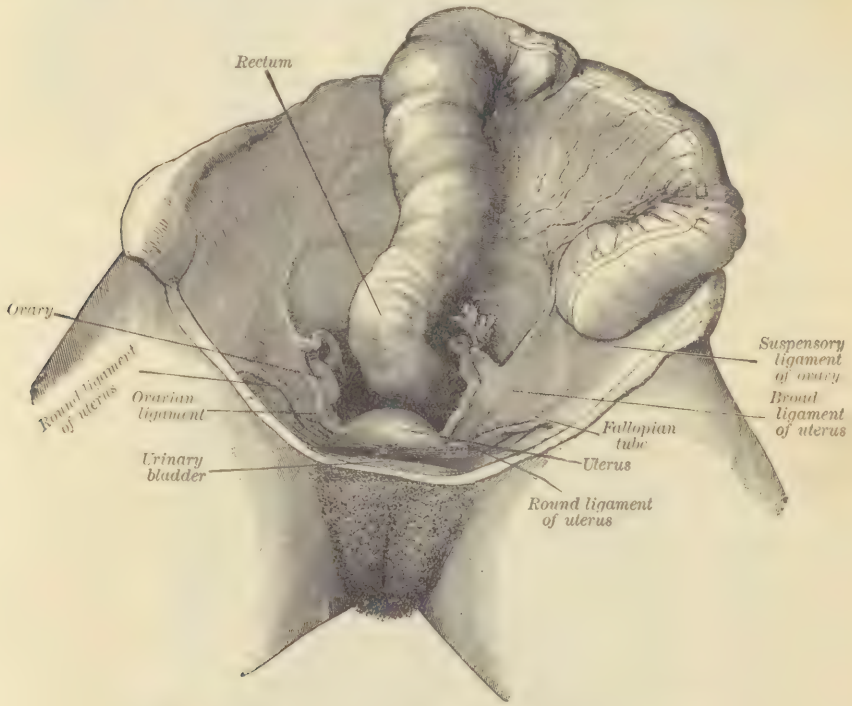


FIG. 1088.—Female pelvic organs *in situ*, seen from above. (Bardeleben.)

THE ORIFICE OF THE URETHRA OR THE MEATUS URINARIUS (ORIFICIUM URETHRAE EXTERNUM) (Figs. 1086, 1089).

The *external* orifice of the urethra or the meatus urinarius is situated at the back part of the vestibule, about an inch below the clitoris and near the margin of the vagina, surrounded by a prominent elevation of the mucous membrane. Below the meatus urinarius is the **orifice of the vagina** (*orificium vaginae*) (Fig. 1086), more or less closed in the virgin by a membranous fold, the **hymen** (Fig. 1086).

THE HYMEN (Figs. 1086, 1090).

The hymen varies much in shape. Its commonest form is that of a ring, generally broadest posteriorly; sometimes it is represented by a semilunar fold, with its concave margin turned toward the pubes. A complete septum stretched across the lower part of the vaginal orifice is called an **imperforate hymen**. Occa-

[1] See note 89 by Dr. M. Eden Paul, in vol. iv. of Toldt's Atlas.

sionally the hymen is cribriform, or its free margin forms a membranous fringe, or it may be entirely absent. It may persist after copulation, so that it cannot be considered as a test of virginity. After rupture of the hymen the small rounded elevations known as the **carunculae myrtiformes** are found as the remains of the structure.

GLANDS OF BARTHOLIN (GLANDULA VESTIBULARIS MAJOR [BARTHOLINI]) (Fig. 1089).

On each side of the posterior part of the commencement of the vagina is a round or oblong body, of a reddish-yellow color, and of the size of a horse-bean,

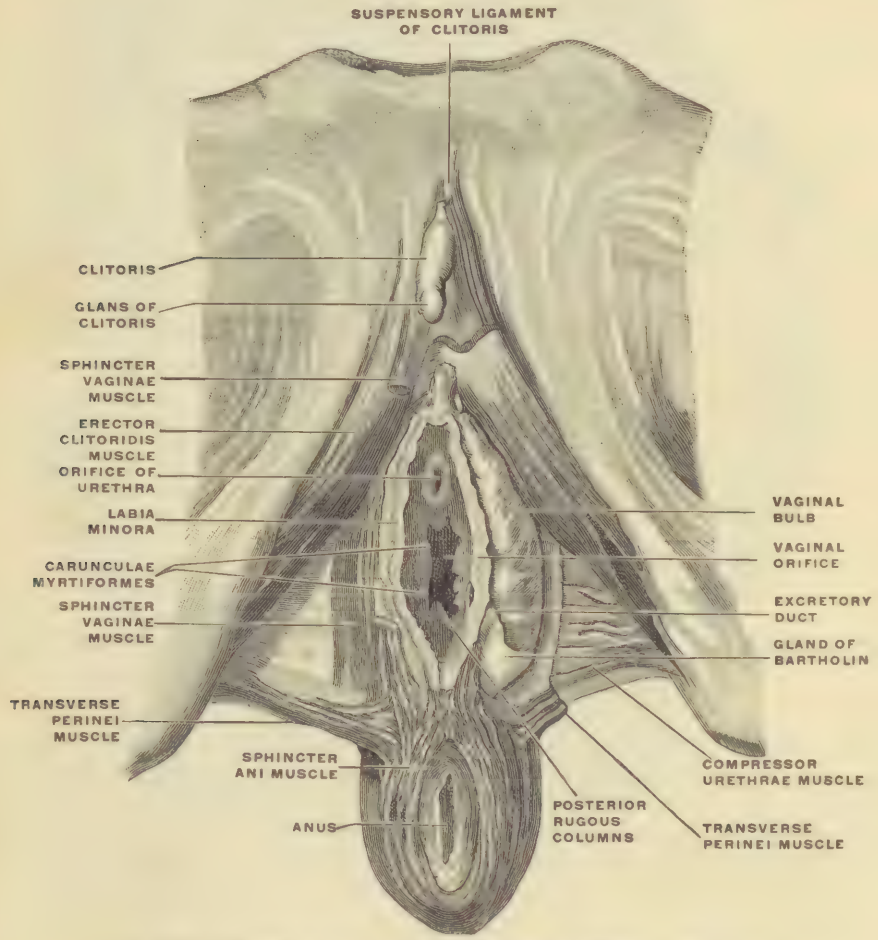


FIG. 1089.—The female external organs of generation dissected. (Spalteholz.)

analogous to Cowper's gland in the male. It is called the **gland of Bartholin**, the **gland of Duverney**, the **vulvo-vaginal gland** or the **suburethral gland** (*glandula vestibularis major* [*Bartholini*]). Bartholin's gland lies partly in the inferior or anterior leaf of the triangular ligament. The posterior portion of the bulbous vestibuli and the Bulbo-cavernous muscle partly cover it. Each gland opens by means of a long single duct immediately external to the hymen, in the angle or groove between it and the nympha (Fig. 1090).

FIG. 1090.—Varieties of hymen. (Testut, after Roze.)

THE VAGINAL BULB OR BULB OF THE VESTIBULE (BULBUS VESTIBULI) (Fig. 1089).

Extending from the clitoris, along either side of the vestibule (the term vestibule being used according to the German nomenclature) (p. 1481), and lying a little behind the nymphae, are two large oblong masses, about an inch in length, consisting of a plexus of veins enclosed in a thin layer of fibrous membrane. This plexus is superficial to the triangular ligament, and it is covered externally and inferiorly by the Bulbo-cavernous muscle. These bodies are narrow in front, rounded below, and are connected with the crura of the clitoris and rami of the pubes; they are termed by Kobelt the **bulbi vestibuli**, and he considers them analogous to the bulb of the corpus spongiosum in the male. Immediately in front of these bodies is a smaller venous plexus, continuous with the bulbi vestibuli behind and the glans clitoridis in front; it is called by Kobelt the **pars intermedia**, and is considered by him as analogous to that part of the body of the corpus spongiosum which immediately succeeds the bulb. The bulb receives its blood from the **artery of the bulb** (*arteria bulbi vestibuli*), which is a branch of the internal pudic.

INTERNAL ORGANS (PARTES GENITALES INTERNAE MULIEBRIS).

The internal organs of generation are—the **vagina**, the **uterus** and **its appendages**, the **Fallopian tubes**, the **ovaries and their ligaments**.

THE VAGINA (Figs. 1084, 1087, 1093).

The vagina extends from the vulva to the uterus. It is situated in the cavity of the pelvis, behind the bladder and in front of the rectum. Its direction is curved upward and backward, at first in the line of the pelvic outlet, and afterward in that of the axis of the cavity of the pelvis. Its walls are ordinarily in contact, and its usual shape on transverse section is that of an H, the transverse limb being slightly curved forward or backward, whilst the lateral limbs are somewhat convex toward the median line. Its length is about two and a half inches along its anterior wall (*paries anterior*), and three and a half inches along its posterior wall (*paries posterior*). It is constricted at its commencement, and becomes dilated medially, and narrowed near its uterine extremity; it surrounds the vaginal

portion of the cervix uteri, a short distance from the os, its attachment extending higher up on the posterior than on the anterior wall of the uterus (Fig. 1096).

The vaginal axis forms with the uterine axis an obtuse angle opening forward, and, as a rule, a little greater than a right angle (Fig. 1094). The fact that the attachment of the vagina to the cervix is above the external os causes the formation of a recess between the cervix and vaginal wall, known as the **vaginal fornix** (*fornix vaginae*). This recess is deeper posteriorly than it is laterally or in front. The anterior portion of the fornix is called the **anterior fornix** (Fig. 1087). The posterior portion is called the **posterior fornix** (Fig. 1087). The right and left portions are called the **right** and **left lateral fornices.** The vagina opens into the uro-genital **cleft,** between the labia minora and back of the urethra and clitoris. It opens by the **vaginal orifice** (*orificium vaginae*) (Fig. 1086). In the virgin the opening is partly closed by the hymen (p. 1481). After rupture of the hymen atrophied fragments of the torn membrane remain around the vaginal orifice, and are known as the **carunculae myrtiformes** (*caruncula hymenales*).

Relations (Figs. 1084 and 1087).—The upper part of the anterior wall of the vagina is in relation with the base of the bladder, being separated from that viscus by lax connective tissue. Lower down the middle line of the anterior wall and closely joined to it is the urethra. The upper part of the posterior wall, near the middle line, is covered for a quarter of an inch or more with peritoneum, which forms the anterior wall of the depths of the **recto-vaginal pouch of peritoneum** or **pouch of Douglas** (*excavatio rectouterina* [*Douglasi*]) (Fig. 1096), between the uterus and vagina and the rectum. The portion of the posterior wall below the level of the pouch of Douglas is placed close to the rectum, a layer of pelvic fascia intervening. As the vaginal orifice is neared, the rectum and vagina separate, and interposed between them is a mass of fibro-fatty tissue called the **perinæum** or **perineal body.** Its sides are enclosed between the Lævatores ani muscles. The ureter toward its termination (Fig. 1097) lies near the lateral wall of the vagina, passing at this point in a direction downward, inward, and slightly forward to reach the bladder. The vagina near its termination passes through the triangular ligament, and upon its sides are the bulbs of the vestibule, the glands of Bartholin, and the Bulbo-cavernous muscle.

Structure.—The vagina consists of an **internal mucous lining,** of a **muscular coat,** and between the two of a **layer of erectile tissue.**

The Mucous Membrane (*tunica mucosa*) (Fig. 1093).—The mucous membrane is continuous above with that lining the uterus. Its inner surface presents, along the anterior and posterior walls, a longitudinal ridge or raphé, called the **rugous columns of the vagina** (*columna rugarum anterior et posterior*). The anterior column extends upward as far as the external orifice of the urethra, forming the **carina urethralis vaginae.** Numerous transverse ridges or **rugae** (*rugae vaginales*) extend outward from the raphé on either side. These rugae are divided by furrows of variable depth, giving to the mucous membrane the appearance of being studded over with conical projections or papillae; they are most numerous near the orifice of the vagina, especially in females before parturition. The epithelium covering the mucous membrane is of the squamous variety. The submucous tissue is very loose and contains numerous large veins, which by their anastomoses form a plexus, together with smooth muscular fibres from the muscular coat; it is regarded by Gussenbauer as an erectile tissue (see p. 1485). It contains a number of mucous crypts, but no true glands.

The Muscular Coat (*tunica muscularis*).—The muscular coat consists of two layers: an external longitudinal, which is far the stronger, and an internal circular layer. The longitudinal fibres are continuous with the superficial muscular fibres of the uterus. The strongest fasciculi are those attached to the recto-vesical fascia on each side. The two layers are not distinctly separable from each other, but

are connected by oblique decussating fasciculi which pass from the one layer to the other. Above the triangular ligament the fibres are non-striated; in the region of the ligament they show striations. In addition to this the vagina at its lower end is surrounded by a band of striped muscular fibres, the **sphincter vaginae** (p. 461). External to the muscular coat is a layer of connective tissue containing a large plexus of blood-vessels.

The Erectile Tissue.—The erectile tissue consists of a layer of loose connective tissue situated between the mucous membrane and the muscular coat; embedded in it is a plexus of large veins, and numerous bundles of unstriped muscular fibres derived from the circular muscular layer. The arrangement of the veins is similar to that found in other erectile tissues.

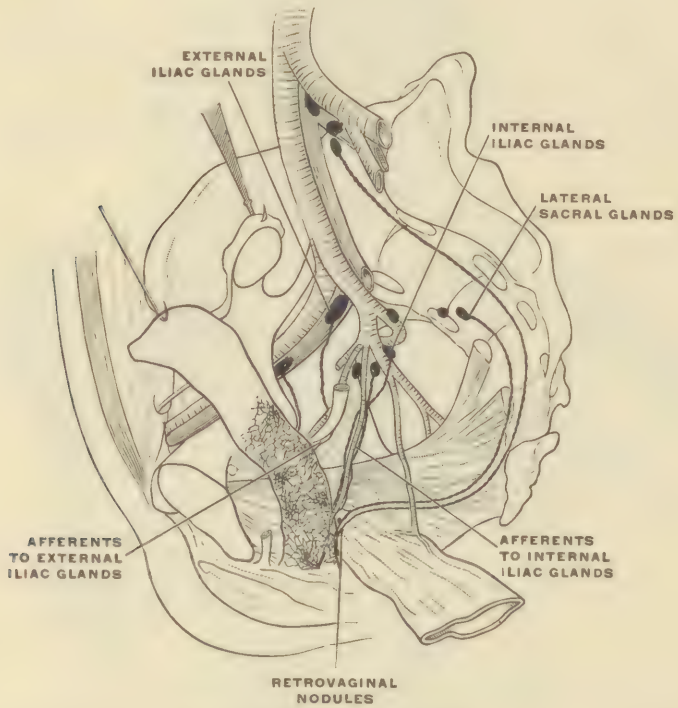


FIG. 1091.—The lymphatics of the vagina. Schematic. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Blood-vessels, Nerves, and Lymphatics.—The **arteries** of the vagina are branches of the **vesico-vaginal artery**; the **vaginal branch of the uterine artery** (p. 687), and branches of the **internal pudic** and **middle haemorrhoidal**. The **veins** form an abundant plexus around the wall of the vagina and pass to the **internal iliac veins**. The **lymphatics** (Fig. 1091) arise from the two communicating networks, one of which is below the mucous membrane, the other in the muscular wall. There is a third network around the vaginal wall, from which the collectors arise. The trunks from the upper third of the vagina pass to the **external iliac glands**; those from the middle third pass to the **internal iliac glands**; those from the lower third terminate in the **glands at the promontory of the sacrum** or in the **lateral sacral glands**.[1] The **nerves** come from the **third** and **fourth sacral nerves** and from the **utero-vaginal** and **vesical plexuses of the sympathetic.**

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

THE WOMB OR UTERUS (Figs. 1084, 1087, 1088, 1092, 1097).

The uterus is the organ of gestation, receiving the fecundated ovum in its cavity, retaining and supporting it during the development of the fœtus, and becoming the principal agent in its expulsion at the time of parturition. It is a hollow muscular organ. The non-pregnant uterus is contained in the cavity of the pelvis between the bladder and rectum (Figs. 1087 and 1088). It is rarely placed exactly in the mid-line, but inclines to one side or the other, more often to the left than to the right. The walls of the organ are extremely thick. The uterus is movable as a whole, and the body of the uterus is movable upon the neck. Its position varies with the condition of adjacent parts, especially the bladder and rectum. The cervix is more firmly fixed than the body and fundus, and hence the latter vary more in position than the former. Normally, in an erect individual, with the bladder and rectum empty, the external os is at the level of the upper surface of the pubic symphysis (Fig. 1084) and in a frontal plane passing through the ischiatic spines. The long axis of the uterus is directed forward and upward (Fig. 1084), and is angled where the body and cervix join. Hence, normally, with the bladder

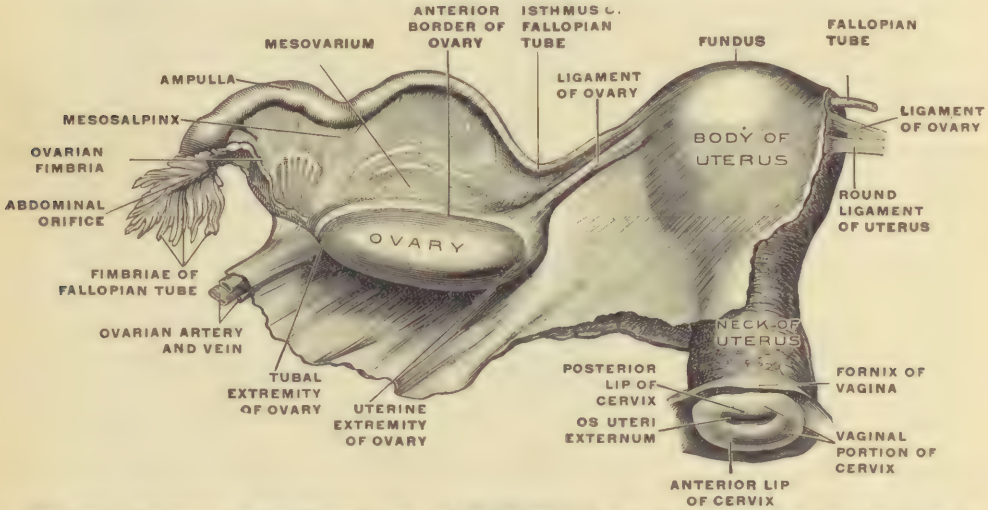


FIG. 1092. - The uterus, the left Fallopian tube and the left ovary in their connection with the broad ligament of the uterus, which has been fully unfolded. Seen from behind. From a virgin, aged nineteen years. (Toldt.)

empty, the uterus is *anteverted* and *anteflexed*. When the bladder fills the anteversion and anteflexion are almost abolished. If the bladder is overdistended and the rectum is empty, the uterus is pushed strongly backward, so that its long axis corresponds to the long axis of the vagina; in other words, it is retroverted.

In the virgin state it is pear-shaped, flattened from before backward, and is retained in its position by the round and broad ligaments on each side, and projects into the upper end of the vagina below (Figs. 1092 and 1093). Its upper end, or base, is directed upward and forward; its lower end, or apex, downward and backward, in the line of the axis of the inlet of the pelvis. It therefore forms an angle with the vagina, since the direction of the vagina corresponds to the axis of the cavity and outlet of the pelvis. The non-pregnant adult uterus measures about three inches in length, two inches in breadth at its upper part, and nearly an inch in thickness, and it weighs from an ounce to an ounce and a half.

It consists of two parts (Fig. 1092): (1) An upper and larger portion, consisting of the body and fundus. This portion is flattened from before backward. (2) A lower, smaller, and cylindrical portion, the cervix.

The Fundus (*fundus uteri*) (Fig. 1092).—The fundus is the upper broad extremity of the uterus. If a line is drawn from the uterine opening of one Fallopian tube to the other, the portion above the line is the fundus. The fundus is directly continuous with the body.

The Body of the Uterus (*corpus uteri*) (Fig. 1092).—The body of the uterus is below and continuous with the fundus. In outline, when seen from in front or behind, it resembles a triangle, the base being above and the point being absent.

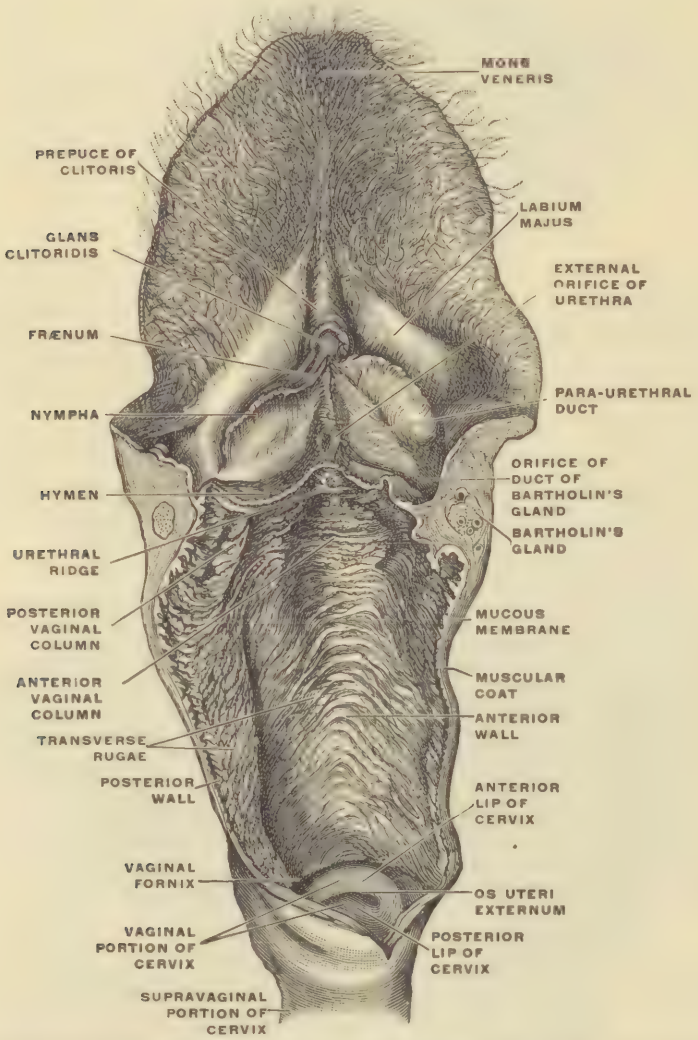


FIG. 1093.—The female external genital organs of a virgin attached to the vagina, which has been isolated and opened, and a portion of the cervix uteri. (Toldt.)

The **anterior surface** (*facies vesicalis*) passes on each side into the **posterior surface** (*facies intestinalis*) by the **lateral border** (*margo lateralis*).

The body gradually narrows from the fundus to the neck. Its anterior surface is so slightly rounded as to appear flattened. It is covered by peritoneum (Fig. 1092), which becomes separated from it at its union with the cervix, in order to form the **utero-vesical pouch**, which lies between the uterus and bladder (Fig. 1096). Its posterior surface is more rounded than the anterior, being convex transversely. It is

covered by peritoneum throughout (Fig. 1097), and separated from the rectum by some convolutions of the small intestine (Fig. 1087). The peritoneum which covers the posterior surface forms most of the anterior wall of Douglas's *cul-de-sac* (Figs. 853, 1096 and 1097, and p. 1248). Its lateral margins (Figs. 1092 and 1097) are concave, and each gives attachment to the Fallopian tube above, the round ligament below, and in front of this the ligament of the ovary; behind both of these structures, and from the side of the womb the broad ligament passes. The division between the

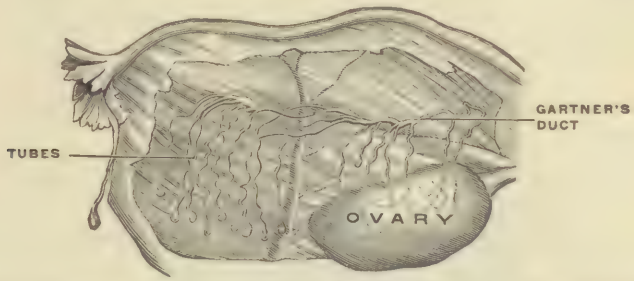


FIG. 1094.—The parovarium. The mesosalpinx is partly removed. (Poirier and Charpy.)

the body and the cervix is indicated externally by a slight constriction, and by the reflection of the peritoneum from the anterior surface of the uterus on to the bladder, and internally by a narrowing of the canal called the **internal os** (Fig. 1095).

The Neck or Cervix Uteri (Figs. 1092 and 1095).—The neck or cervix uteri is the lower constricted segment of the uterus; around its circumference is attached the upper end of the vagina (Figs. 1087, 1092, 1093, and 1096), which extends upward a greater distance behind than in front. The neck is spindle-shaped in those who have had no children, cylindrical in those who have had children.

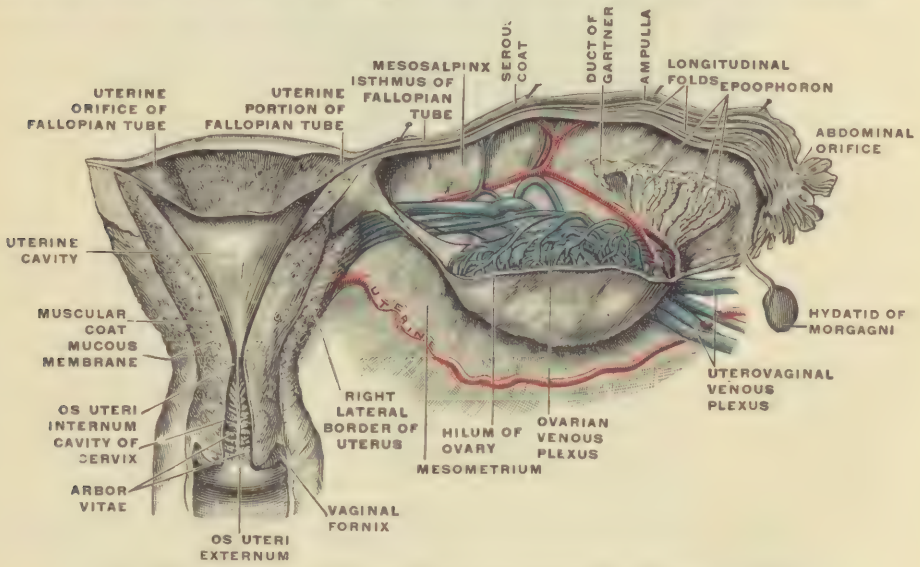


FIG. 1095.—The uterus and the right Fallopian tube opened from behind. (Toldt.)

The Supravaginal Portion (*portio supravaginalis [cervicis]*) (Figs. 1092 and 1096).—The supravaginal portion is not covered by peritoneum in front; a pad of cellular tissue is interposed between it and the bladder. Behind, the peritoneum is extended over it.

The Vaginal Portion (*portio vaginalis cervicis*) (Figs. 1087, 1092, 1093, and 1096).—The vaginal portion is the lower end projecting into the vagina. It is round or

elliptical, the long axis of the elliptical figure being transversely placed. On its surface is a small aperture, the **external mouth of the womb**, or **os uteri**, or **external os** (*orificium uteri externum*) (Figs. 1092, 1093, 1095, and 1096), generally circular in shape, but sometimes oval or almost linear. If a woman has borne children the opening is transverse and the margins are irregular. The margin of the opening is, in the absence of past parturition or disease, quite smooth. This aperture divides the vaginal portion of the cervix into two lips, an **upper** or **posterior lip** (*labium posterius*) and a **lower** or **anterior lip** (*labium anterius*). On each side of the cervix and upper portion of the vagina there is a space containing bloodvessels and filled with loose cellular tissue. This loose tissue passes upward between the layers of the broad ligament and is called **parametrium.** On each side of the cervix and three-quarters of an inch away is the terminal portion of the corresponding ureter.

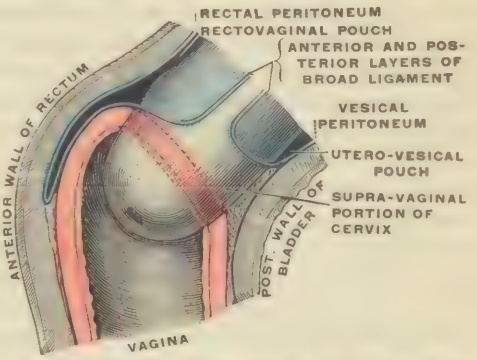


FIG. 1096. The cervix uteri and upper end of the vagina, showing their relations to the peritoneum. Diagrammatic. (Testut.)

Folds and Ligaments.—The ligaments of the uterus are eight in number. Some are simple folds of peritoneum; others contain connective tissue and muscle. The ligaments are as follows: one

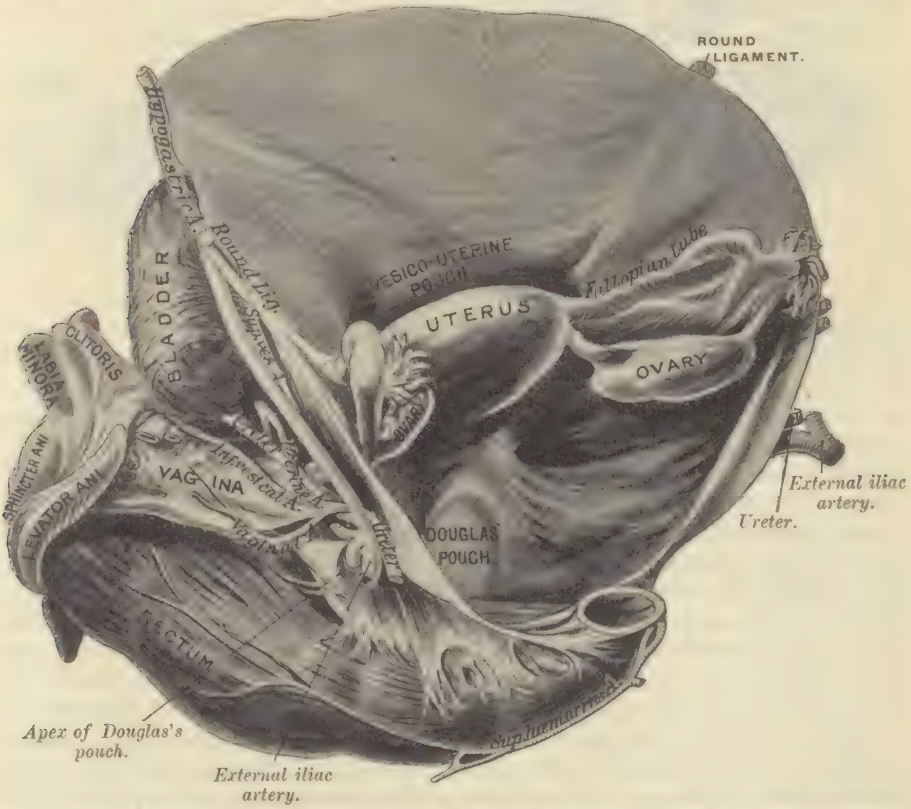


FIG. 1097.—Douglas's pouch. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

anterior, one **posterior**, two **lateral** or **broad**, two **sacro-uterine**—all these being formed of peritoneum—and, lastly, two **round ligaments.**

The **Anterior Ligament** or the **Utero-vesical Fold** or **Vesico-uterine Ligament** is reflected on to the bladder from the front of the uterus, at the junction of the cervix and body. It forms the **utero-vesical pouch** (*excavatio vesicouterina*) (Figs. 1096 and 1097).

The **Posterior Ligament** or the **Recto-vaginal Fold** passes from the posterior wall of the uterus over the upper fourth of the vagina, and thence on to the rectum and sacrum. It thus forms a pouch, called the **recto-vaginal pouch** or **Douglas's pouch** (Figs. 853, 1096, and 1097), the boundaries of which are, in front, the posterior wall of the uterus, the supravaginal portion of the cervix, and the upper fourth of the vagina; behind, the rectum and sacrum; above, the small intestine; and, laterally, the folds of Douglas or recto-uterine folds, which contain the sacro-uterine ligaments.

The **Lateral** or **Broad Ligament** (*ligamentum latum uteri*) (Figs. 1088, 1098, and 1104) is a peritoneal fold which passes from each side of the uterus to the lateral wall of the pelvis as high as the external iliac vein. From this region comes the peritoneal fold called the suspensory ligament of the ovary (Fig. 1088). The two broad ligaments form a septum across the pelvis, which divides that cavity into two portions. In the anterior part are contained the bladder, urethra, and vagina; in the posterior part, the rectum. In the uterus normally placed the anterior surface of the broad ligament faces forward and downward, and the posterior surface faces upward and backward. The ligament is more nearly vertical

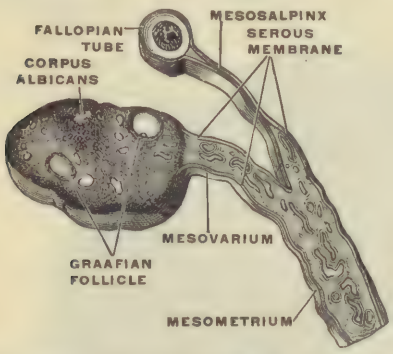


FIG. 1098.—The broad ligament of the uterus, with the mesovarium, the mesosalpinx, the ovary, and the Fallopian tube in transverse section. (Toldt.)

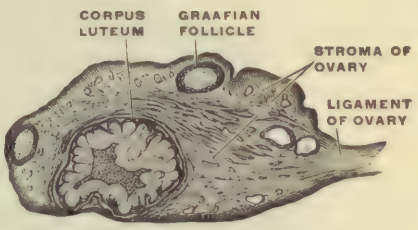


FIG. 1099.—Longitudinal section through the ovary. (Toldt.)

at its pelvic insertion. The two layers of the broad ligament are mostly near to each other, to the side and below they separate and pass into the peritoneum of the lateral pelvic wall, the bladder and the rectum. Between the two layers of each broad ligament are contained—(1) the Fallopian tube superiorly; (2) the round ligament; (3) the ovary and its ligament; (4) the parovarium or organ of Rosenmüller, and the paro-ophoron; (5) loose connective tissue, which is called **parametrium**; (6) unstriped muscular fibre; and (7) blood-vessels and nerves. The Fallopian tube is in the free edge of the broad ligament, and is contained in a special fold, which is attached to the part of the ligament near the ovary, and is known by the name of the **mesosalpinx** (Figs. 1094, 1098, and 1104). If the mesosalpinx is spread out, it is seen to be roughly triangular; the base of the triangle is outward, the apex at the upper and outer angle of the uterus; the upper boundary is the Fallopian tube, and the lower boundary is the ovary and its ligament. Between the two layers of the mesosalpinx are the parovarium and the paro-ophoron. Between the fimbriated extremity of the tube and the lower attachment of the broad ligament is a concave rounded margin, called the **infundibulo-pelvic ligament** (Fig. 1103).

The ovary lies in a depression of the broad ligament called the **ovarian bursa** (*bursa ovarii*) (Figs. 1098 and 1104), and is joined to the ligament by a short fold, the **mesovarium** (Fig. 1104).

The **mesovarium** passes upward from the posterior surface of the broad ligament (Fig. 1098). Beneath the mesovarium is a larger and thicker portion of the broad ligament, called the **mesometrium** (Fig. 1098).

The **Sacro-uterine** or **Utero-sacral Ligaments** (*plicae rectouterinae*) are contained in the peritoneal folds of Douglas. They pass from the second and third bones of the sacrum, downward and forward on the lateral aspects of the rectum to be attached one on each side of the uterus at the junction of the supravaginal cervix and the body, this point corresponding internally to the position of the os internum. They contain fibrous tissue and unstriated muscle-fibre. Muscular fibres from the uterine wall to the rectal wall constitute the **Recto-uterinus muscle** (*musculus rectouterinus*). This muscle is part of the sacro-uterine ligaments.

A **Round Ligament** (*ligamentum teres*) (Figs. 1088, 1097, 1100, and 1104) is attached on each side of the uterus. The two ligaments are rounded cords, between four and five inches in length, each situated between the layers of the broad ligament in front of and below the Fallopian tube. Commencing at the superior angle of the uterus, this ligament passes forward, upward, and outward through the internal abdominal ring, along the inguinal canal, to the labium majus, in which it becomes lost. The round ligament consists principally of muscular tissue prolonged from the uterus; also of some fibrous and areolar tissue, besides blood-vessels and nerves, enclosed in a duplicature of peritoneum, which in the fœtus is prolonged in the form of a tubular process for a short distance into the inguinal canal. This process is called the **canal of Nuck**. It is generally obliterated in the adult, but sometimes remains pervious even in advanced life. It is analogous to the peritoneal pouch which precedes the descent of the testis.

The Cavity of the Uterus (*cavum uteri*) (Fig. 1095).—The cavity of the uterus is small in comparison with the size of the organ, because of the great thickness of the wall. That portion of the cavity which corresponds to the body is triangular, flattened from before backward, so that its anterior and posterior walls are closely approximated, and having its base directed upward toward the fundus. At each superior angle is a funnel-shaped cavity, which constitutes the remains of one division of the body of the uterus into two cornua, and at the bottom of each cavity is the minute orifice of the Fallopian tube. At the inferior angle of the uterine cavity is a small constricted opening, smaller and more nearly circular than the external os uteri, the **internal orifice of the uterus** or **internal os uteri** (*orificium internum uteri*) (Fig. 1095), which leads into the cavity of the cervix.

The Cavity of the Cervix or Cervical Canal (*canalis cervicis uteri*) (Fig. 1095).—The cavity of the cervix or cervical canal extends from the internal os uteri to the external os uteri. It is somewhat fusiform, flattened from before backward, broader at the middle than at either extremity, and communicates below with the vagina. The wall of the canal presents, anteriorly and posteriorly, a longitudinal column, from which proceed a number of small oblique columns, giving the appearance of branches from the stem of a tree; and hence the name **uterine arbor vitae** (*plicae palmatae*) applied to it. These folds usually become very indistinct after the first labor.

Structure.—The uterus is composed of three coats: an **external** or **serous coat**, a **middle** or **muscular coat**, and an **internal mucous** or **coat.**

The Serous Coat or Perimetrium (*tunica serosa*) (Figs. 1087, 1092, 1096, and 1097).—The serous coat is derived from the peritoneum; it invests the fundus and the whole of the posterior surface of the uterus; but covers the anterior surface only as far as the junction of the body and cervix. In the lower fourth of the posterior surface the peritoneum, though covering the uterus, is not closely connected with

it, being separated from it by a layer of loose cellular tissue and some large veins. At the lateral margins of the uterus the serous coat passes on to the broad ligaments. The serous coat adheres closely to the uterus, and it is very difficult to separate it from the muscle.

The Muscular Coat (*tunica muscularis*) (Fig. 1095).—The muscular coat forms the chief bulk of the substance of the uterus. In the unimpregnated state it is dense, firm, of a grayish color, and cuts almost like cartilage. It is thick opposite the middle of the body and fundus, and thin at the orifices of the Fallopian tubes. It consists of bundles of unstriped muscular fibres, disposed in layers, intermixed with areolar tissue, blood-vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerves. The muscular tissue is disposed in three layers—**external, middle,** and **internal.**

The **external layer** is placed beneath the peritoneum, disposed as a thin plane on the anterior and posterior surfaces. It consists of fibres which pass transversely across the fundus, and, converging at each superior angle of the uterus, are continued on the Fallopian tube, the round ligament, the ligament of the ovary; some passing at each side into the broad ligament, and others running backward from the cervix into the sacro-uterine ligaments. The fibres of the external portion of the outer layer (*stratum subserosum*) are longitudinal. The fibres of the inner portion of the outer layer (*stratum supravasculare*) are partly circular and partly longitudinal.

The **middle layer of fibres** (*stratum vasculare*), which is thickest, presents bundles of circular fibres closely connected with blood-vessels. In this layer are most of the blood-vessels. The circular fibres about the internal os form a distinct sphincter. Those which surround the orifices of the Fallopian tubes are arranged in the form of two hollow cones, the apices of which surround the orifices of the Fallopian tubes, their bases intermingling with one another on the middle of the body of the uterus.

The **internal** or **deep layer** (*stratum mucosum*) consists of longitudinal fibres. Some consider the deeper portion of the muscular tissue of the uterus to be the muscularis mucosae. But the deep portion of the muscular substance is continuous with the more superficial portion, and there is no submucous coat between the muscle and the mucous membrane. The deeper layer of muscular fibres of the uterus contains connective tissue and elastic fibres. The muscular tissue of the cervix contains more connective and elastic tissue than does the body of the uterus; hence, the cervix is harder and stiffer than the body.

The Mucous Membrane (*tunica mucosa*) (Fig. 1095).—The mucous membrane is thin, smooth, and closely adherent to the subjacent muscular tissue. It is continuous, through the fimbriated extremity of the Fallopian tubes, with the peritoneum, and through the os uteri with the lining of the vagina.

In the body of the uterus it is smooth, soft, of a pale-red color lined with columnar ciliated epithelium, and presents, when viewed with a lens, the orifices of numerous tubular follicles arranged perpendicularly to the surface. It is unprovided with any submucosa, but is intimately connected with the innermost layer of the muscular coat. In structure its **corium** differs from ordinary mucous membrane, consisting of an embryonic nucleated and highly cellular form of connective tissue, in which run numerous large lymphatics. In it are the tube-like **uterine glands** (*glandulae uterinae*), which are of small size in the unimpregnated uterus, but shortly after impregnation become enlarged and elongated, presenting a contorted or waved appearance toward their closed extremities, which reach into the muscularis, and may be single or bifid. The uterine glands consist of a delicate membrane, lined with epithelium, which becomes ciliated toward the orifices.

In the **cervix** the mucous membrane is sharply differentiated from that of the uterine cavity. It is thrown into numerous oblique ridges, which diverge from an anterior and posterior longitudinal raphé, presenting an appearance which has

received the name of **arbor vitae**. In the upper two-thirds of the canal the mucous membrane is provided with numerous deep glandular follicles (*glandulae cervicales uteri*), which secrete a clear viscid alkaline mucus; and in addition, extending through the whole length of the canal, are a variable number of little cysts, presumably follicles, which have become occluded and distended with retained secretion. They are called the **ovules of Naboth**. The mucous membrane covering the lower half of the cervical canal presents numerous papillae. The epithelium of the upper two-thirds is cylindrical and ciliated, but below this it loses its cilia, and gradually changes to squamous epithelium close to the external os.

The Uterus at Different Ages.—The uterus of the fœtus is in the abdominal cavity projecting above the brim of the pelvis. The cervix is considerably larger than the body. At birth the cervix is larger relatively than in the adult; there is no distinct internal os distinguishing the cavity of the body of the uterus from the cavity of the cervix, and "the arbor vitae extends throughout the whole length of the uterus."[1] The growth of the uterus is slow until puberty is almost reached, when for a time the growth is rapid. The growth of the uterine body causes the mucous membrane of this part to lose its folds, hence the arbor vitae disappears from the body. In a woman who has had children the uterine cavity is larger than in a woman who has never borne a child. In advanced years the uterine wall becomes paler and hard and rigid from atrophic fibrous changes. A more distinct constriction separates the body and cervix. The internal os frequently and the external os occasionally are obliterated in old age.

Abnormalities.—Very rarely the uterine cavity is divided into two by a septum. Occasionally the condition known as **bicornate uterus** exists. In this condition each lateral angle is prolonged into a horn or cornu. The uterus is formed by the union of the two ducts of Müller, and failure of fusion of these ducts makes a double uterus or a bicornate uterus.

Changes at a Menstrual Period.—For several days before the menstrual flow begins the mucous membrane increases in thickness and vascularity and its surface is cast into folds. After these preparatory changes the superficial portions of the mucous membrane break down and are cast off, and bleeding begins. At the termination of menstruation the mucous membrane rapidly regenerates. At each menstrual period from 100 to 200 grammes of blood are discharged. The meaning of menstruation is uncertain. Pflüger believes the wall of the uterus is made raw, so that if an impregnated ovum arrives it will adhere. Reichert believes that menstruation means that no impregnated ovum has arrived in the womb, and hence no bed is needed for one.

Changes Induced by Pregnancy.—The muscular fibres hypertrophy enormously and become vastly longer and broader. There is a great increase in connective tissue, and new connective-tissue fibres pass between bundles of muscle. The peritoneal coat undergoes hyperplasia. It remains closely adherent to the uterus, except over the lower segment, from which region it can be easily stripped. The blood-vessels become large and tortuous. The nerves are increased in length and new filaments form. The lymphatics undergo hypertrophy and hyperplasia (Prof. Barton Cooke Hirst). The uterus becomes spherical, and after the fourth month ovoidal. Early in pregnancy the increase in weight causes the uterus to descend in the pelvis. After the third month it rises progressively, and during the ninth month the fundus reaches the epigastrium. "Before term (four weeks in primiparae, ten days or one week in multiparae) the fundus sinks again, as the presenting part and lower uterine segment become engaged in the pelvic cavity. This phenomenon is explained by contraction of the overstretched abdominal walls."[2] The womb is acutely anteflexed during the first three months

[1] Prof. Francis A. Dixon in Prof. Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.
[2] A Text-book of Obstetrics. By Prof. Barton Cooke Hirst.

of pregnancy. After this period, as the womb rises, the anteflexion is diminished, but some degree remains, because the abdominal walls are too lax to hold the organ straight. The uterus passes somewhat to the right side and undergoes a rotation on its longitudinal axis, so that the anterior surface looks front and to the

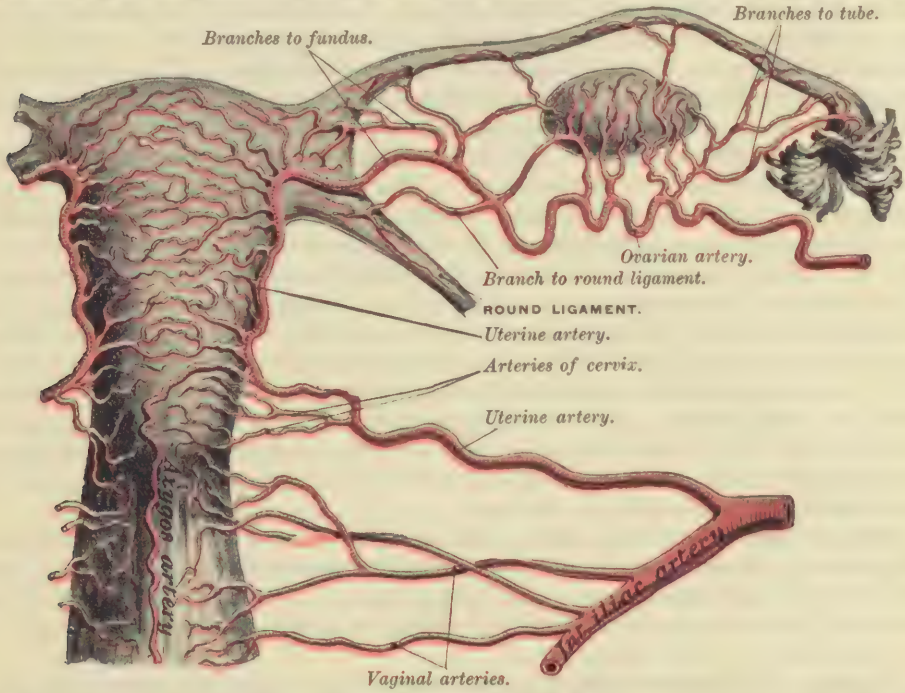


FIG. 1100.—The arteries of the internal organs of generation of the female, seen from behind. (After Hyrtl.)

right. These changes in position are caused by fecal distention of the sigmoid. The intestines are above and back of the uterus. During the first four months the cervix softens and enlarges somewhat. The length of the cervical canal is not

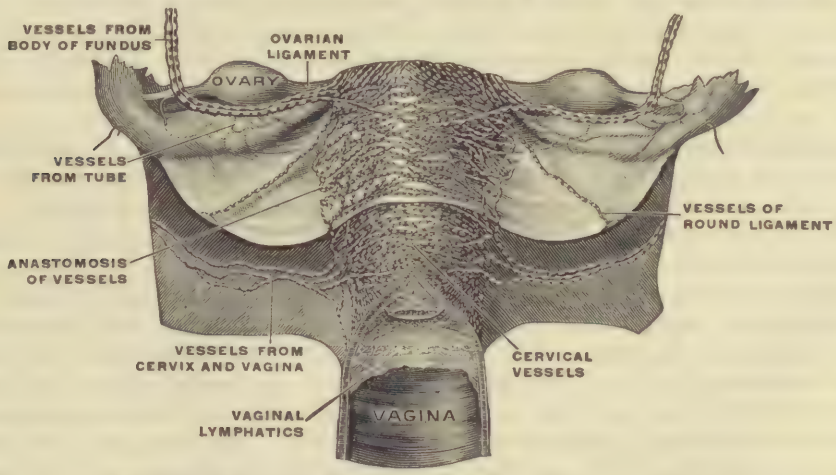


FIG. 1101.—The lymphatic vessels of the uterus. (Poirier and Charpy.)

altered during pregnancy, and the canal does not dilate until labor begins. During pregnancy the cervical glands secrete thick mucus, which coagulates and occludes the cervical canal; the round ligaments become stronger, and the layers of the broad ligament are separated toward their inner portions by the enlarging womb.

After parturition the uterus nearly regains its former size, usually weighing something over one and a half ounces; but its cavity is larger than in the virgin state, the external orifice is more marked, its edges present a fissured surface, its vessels are very tortuous, and its muscular layers are more defined.

Vessels and Nerves (Fig. 1100).—The **arteries of the uterus** are the **uterine,** from the internal iliac, and the **ovarian,** from the aorta. They are remarkable for their tortuous course in the substance of the organ and for their frequent anastomoses. The uterine artery reaches the lower part of the uterus at the side and is pro-

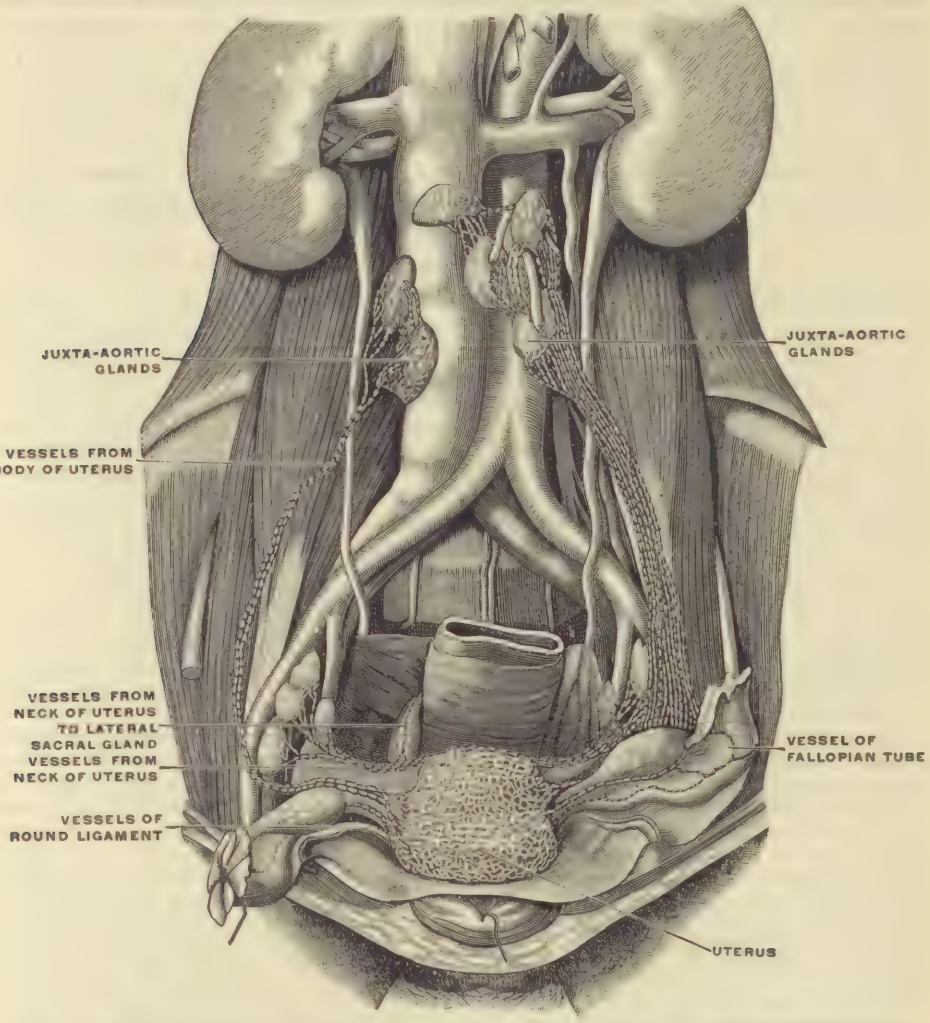


FIG. 1102.—The lymphatics of the internal organs of generation in the female. (Poirier and Charpy.)

longed as a large artery to the body and fundus, which ascends between the layers of the broad ligament. The uterine artery gives off a smaller branch, the **cervical,** which descends to supply the cervix and sends **cervico-vaginal** branches to the vagina. The **azygos arteries of the vagina** come from the cervico-vaginal reinforced by branches of the vaginal arteries (Fig. 1104). A median longitudinal vessel is formed in front and behind, which descends in the vaginal wall. The termination of the ovarian artery meets the termination of the uterine artery, and forms an anastomotic trunk from which branches are given off to supply the uterus. Dr. Byron Robinson, instead of describing the uterine and ovarian

arteries as two vessels, describes them as parts of one vessel, the **arteria uterina ovarica** (p. 558). The **veins** are of large size, and correspond with the arteries. In the impregnated uterus these vessels form the **uterine sinuses**, consisting of the lining membrane of the veins adhering to the walls of the canals channelled through the substance of the uterus. They terminate in the **uterine plexuses**, which empty into the **internal iliac veins**. The **lymphatics** (Figs. 1101 and 1102) originate from three networks, a muscular network, a peritoneal network, and a network in the stroma. The trunks from these networks anastomose, and thus form another network beneath the peritoneum, and from the fourth network the collectors arise. The network of the cervix is continuous with that of the body. The collecting trunks from the cervical region number from five to eight. Some terminate in the **external iliac glands**, some in the **internal iliac glands**, some in the **lateral sacral glands**, or the **glands of the promontory**. The collecting trunks from the body terminate chiefly in the **juxta-aortic** or **pre-aortic glands**, but some terminate in the **external iliac glands**, and some in the **inguinal glands**.[1] The **nerves** come chiefly from the **utero-vaginal plexus**, which continues into the **hypogastric plexus** and receives filaments from the **third** and **fourth sacral nerves**. The uterus also receives direct fibres from the **hypogastric plexus** and from the **vesical plexus**.

Surgical Anatomy.—*Pelvic cellulitis* (*parametritis*) is inflammation of the pelvic cellular tissue. It is due to sepsis, and its usual antecedent is uterine sepsis. A laceration of the cervix may admit bacteria. An abscess may form. If it points in the vagina it should be incised through the vaginal wall. The uterus may require removal (*hysterectomy*) in cases of *malignant disease* or for *fibroid tumors*. *Carcinoma* is the most common form of malignant disease of the uterus, though cases of *sarcoma* do occur. Carcinoma may show itself either as a columnar carcinoma or as a squamous carcinoma; the former commencing either in the cervix or body of the uterus, the latter always commencing in the epithelial cells of the mucous membrane covering of the vaginal surface of the cervix. The columnar form may be treated in the early stage, before fixation has taken place, by removal of the uterus, either through the vagina or by means of abdominal section. The former operation is attended by the smaller death-rate. Vaginal hysterectomy may be performed in any case in which the uterus or the uterus and tumor are not too large to be withdrawn through the vagina. It is difficult in this operation to deal with adhesions and other complications in the upper part of the pelvis, and for this reason many surgeons prefer the abdominal operation. *Vaginal hysterectomy* is performed by placing the patient in the lithotomy position and introducing a large duckbill speculum into the vagina. The cervix is then seized with a volsellum and pulled down as far as possible and the mucous membrane of the vagina incised around the cervix as near to it as the disease will allow, especially in front, where the ureters are in danger of being wounded. A pair of dressing forceps are then pushed through into Douglas's pouch and opened sufficiently to allow of the introduction of the two forefingers, by means of which the opening is dilated laterally as far as the sacro-uterine ligaments. A somewhat similar proceeding is adopted in front, but here the bladder has to be separated from the anterior wall of the uterus for about an inch before the vesico-uterine fold of peritoneum can be reached. This is done by carefully burrowing upward with a director and stripping the tissues off the anterior uterine wall. When the vesico-uterine pouch has been opened and the opening dilated laterally, the uterus remains attached only by the broad ligaments, in which are contained the vessels that supply the uterus. Before division of the ligaments, these vessels have to be dealt with. The forefinger of the left hand is introduced into Douglas's pouch and an aneurism needle, armed with a long silk ligature, is inserted into the vesico-uterine pouch, and is pushed through the broad ligament of one side about an inch above its lower level and at some distance from the uterus. One end of the ligature is now pulled through the anterior opening, and in this way we have the lowest inch of the broad ligament, in which is contained the uterine artery, enclosed in a ligature. This is tied tightly, and the operation is repeated on the other side. The broad ligament is then divided on either side, between the ligature and the uterus, to the extent to which it has been constricted. By traction on the volsellum which grasps the cervix, the uterus can be pulled considerably farther down in the vagina, and a second inch of the broad ligament is treated in a similar way. This second ligature will embrace the pampiniform plexus of veins and, when the broad ligament has been divided on either side, it will be found that a third ligature can be made to pass over the Fallopian tube and top of the broad ligament, after the uterus has been dragged down as far as possible. After the third ligature has been tied and the structures between it and the uterus divided, this organ will be freed from all its connections and can be removed from the vagina. This canal is then sponged out and lightly dressed with gauze,

[1] The Lymphatics. By Poirier, Cunéo, and Delamare. Translated and edited by Cecil H. Leaf.

no sutures being used. The gauze may be removed at the end of the second day. In squamous epithelioma, amputation of the cervix is done by some in those cases where the disease is recognized before it has invaded the walls of the vagina or the neighboring broad ligaments. The operation consists in removing a wedge-shaped piece of the uterus, including the cervix, through the vagina and attaching the cut surfaces of the stump to the anterior and posterior vaginal walls, so as to prevent retraction. In view, however, of the continuity of the lymphatic network of the cervix with the lymphatics of the body, the operation is insufficient and should be condemned. Complete *abdominal hysterectomy* is rarely necessary, except for malignant disease. In this operation the entire uterus is removed. The preliminary introduction of bougies into the ureters as practised by Kelly and Clark enables the surgeon to readily recognize the situations of these tubes. After the abdomen has been opened the uterine vessels are secured and the broad ligaments divided in a similar manner to that employed in vaginal hysterectomy, except that the proceeding is commenced from above. When the first two ligatures have been tied and the broad ligament divided, it will be found that the uterus can be raised out of the pelvis. A transverse incision is now made through the peritoneum, where it is reflected from the anterior surface of the uterus on to the back of the bladder and the serous membrane peeled from the surface of the uterus until the vagina is reached. The anterior wall of this canal is cut across. The uterus is now turned forward and the peritoneum at the bottom of Douglas's pouch incised transversely, and the posterior wall of the vagina cut across until it meets the incision on the anterior wall. The uterus is now almost free, and is held only by the lower part of the broad ligament on either side, containing the uterine artery. A third ligature is made to encircle this, and, after having been tied, the structures are divided between the ligature and the uterus. The organ can now be removed. The vagina is plugged with gauze, and the external wound closed in the usual way. The vagina acts as a drain, and therefore the opening into it is usually left unsutured. In some cases of uterine fibroid the abdomen is opened and the tumor is removed, but the uterus is not taken away. This operation is called *myomectomy*. This operation is suited only to solitary subperitoneal or interstitial tumors (Penrose).

The common operation for uterine fibroids is *supravaginal amputation*. The uterus is cut away and the cervical flaps are sutured. Before the technique of hysterectomy was perfected and before myomectomy was devised the favorite operation for uterine fibroids was *salpingo-oöphorectomy*, and by it a large majority of cases operated upon were cured. When it succeeds a premature menopause is induced and the tumor shrinks. The operation is useless if a woman is past the menopause, and is apt to fail if the tumor is very soft or very large.

THE ADNEXA OR APPENDAGES OF THE UTERUS.

The appendages of the uterus are the **Fallopian tubes**, the **ovaries** and **ovarian ligaments**, and the **round ligaments**. They are placed in the following order: in front is the round ligament; the Fallopian tube occupies the upper margin of the broad ligament; the ovary and its ligament are behind and below both.

THE FALLOPIAN TUBE (TUBA UTERINA [FALLOPII]) (Figs. 1092, 1097, 1098, 1103, 1104).

The Fallopian tubes or oviducts convey the ova from the ovaries to the cavity of the uterus. They are two in number, one on each side, situated in the upper margin of the broad ligament, extending from each superior angle of the uterus to the sides of the pelvis. Each tube is about four inches and a quarter in length, and is placed in a fold of peritoneum, which is part of the broad ligament and is called the **mesosalpinx** (Fig. 1098). Each tube is described as consisting of four portions: (1) the **isthmus** (*isthmus tubae uterinae*) (Fig. 1103), or inner constricted third; (2) the **ampulla** (*ampulla tubae uterinae*) (Fig. 1103), or outer dilated portion, which curves over the ovary; and (3) the **infundibulum**, the funnel-like expansion of the tube, at the bottom of which is the **abdominal orifice** or **pavilion** (*ostium abdominale tubae uterinae*) (Fig. 1103). The abdominal orifice has a small diameter (2 mm. when relaxed to its full extent). The margin of the infundibulum is rendered irregular by the presence of numerous small processes, the **fimbriae** (*fimbriae tubae*). This end of the tube is called the **fimbriated extremity** (Fig. 1103), because of these processes. The surfaces of the fimbriae looking into the cavity of the infundibulum are covered with mucous membrane continuous with the tubal mucous

membrane. The outer surfaces are covered with peritoneum. One of the fimbriae is attached to the ovary and is called the ovarian fimbria (*fimbria ovarica*) (Fig. 1103). (4) The **uterine portion** of the tube (*pars uterina*) (Fig. 1095) is in the uterine wall. The opening into the uterus (*ostium uterinum tubae*) is even smaller than the abdominal opening, and will admit only a small bristle. The general direction of the Fallopian tube is outward, backward, and downward. In connection with the fimbriae of the Fallopian tube or with the broad ligament close to them there is frequently one or more small vesicles floating on a long stalk of peritoneum. These are termed the **hydatids of Morgagni** (*appendices vesiculosi*). They are representative of small portions of the upper extremity of the Wolffian duct.

Course Pursued by the Fallopian Tube (Figs. 1088 and 1103).—The tube on each side begins at the upper and outer angle of the uterus and passes outward in a horizontal direction toward the uterine extremity of the ovary. It then bends almost to a right angle and ascends close to the pelvic wall and in front of the anterior margin to the tubal extremity of the ovary. At this point it turns sharply

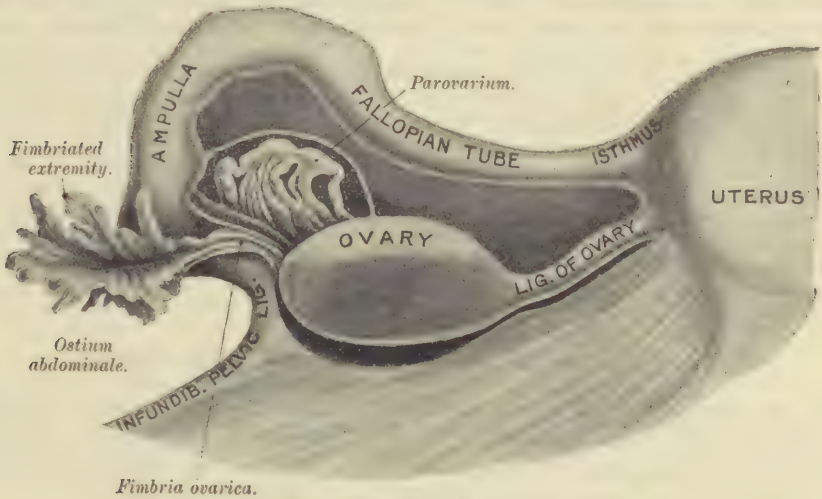


FIG. 1103.—Uterine appendages, seen from behind. (Henle.)

downward and a little backward, and the inner surface of the infundibulum comes to lie upon the free margin and the posterior portion of the inner surface of the ovary. "The fimbria ovarica thus ascends in a recurrent direction to the extremitas tubaria."[1]

Structure.—The Fallopian tube consists of three coats—**serous, muscular**, and **mucous.**

The **external** or **serous coat** (*tunica serosa*) (Fig. 1098) is peritoneal. Beneath this lies the **tunica adventitia,** composed of lax connective tissue.

The **middle** or **muscular coat** (*tunica muscularis*) consists of an **external longitudinal layer** (*stratum longitudinale*), and an internal **circular layer** (*stratum circulare*) of muscular fibres continuous with those of the uterus.

The **internal** or **mucous coat** (*tunica mucosa*) is continuous with the mucous lining of the uterus and, at the free extremity of the tube, with the peritoneum. It is thrown into **longitudinal folds** (*plicae tubariae*), which in the outer, larger part of the tube or **ampulla** (*plicae ampullares*) are much more extensive than in the narrow canal of the isthmus (*plicae isthmicae*). The lining epithelium is columnar and ciliated. This form of ephithelium is also found on the inner surface of the

[1] Spalteholz's Atlas. English edition by Barker.

fimbriae, while on the outer or serous surfaces of these processes the epithelium gradually merges into the endothelium of the peritoneum.

Vessels and Nerves.—The chief *artery* of the tube is the **tubal branch of the uterine artery** (*ramus tubarius*) (Fig. 1100). It also receives branches from the ovarian (Fig. 1100). Some of the **tubal veins** empty into the uterine veins, some into the ovarian veins. The **lymphatics** (Figs. 1101 and 1102) coming from the tube unite with the trunks coming from the uterus and ovary and terminate in the juxta-aortic glands. The **nerves** come from the same plexuses that send branches to the uterus and ovary.

The Epo-ophoron, Parovarium or **Organ of Rosenmüller** (Figs. 1094, 1095, and 1103) is placed in the mesosalpinx, between the ovary and tube. It consists of a number of epithelial-lined closed tubes. This structure can be readily seen if the mesosalpinx is stretched and held in front of the light. One of these tubes runs parallel to the Fallopian tube and is called **Gartner's duct** (*ductus epoophori longitudinalis*). A number of tubes (*ductuli transversi*) ascend from near the ovary and

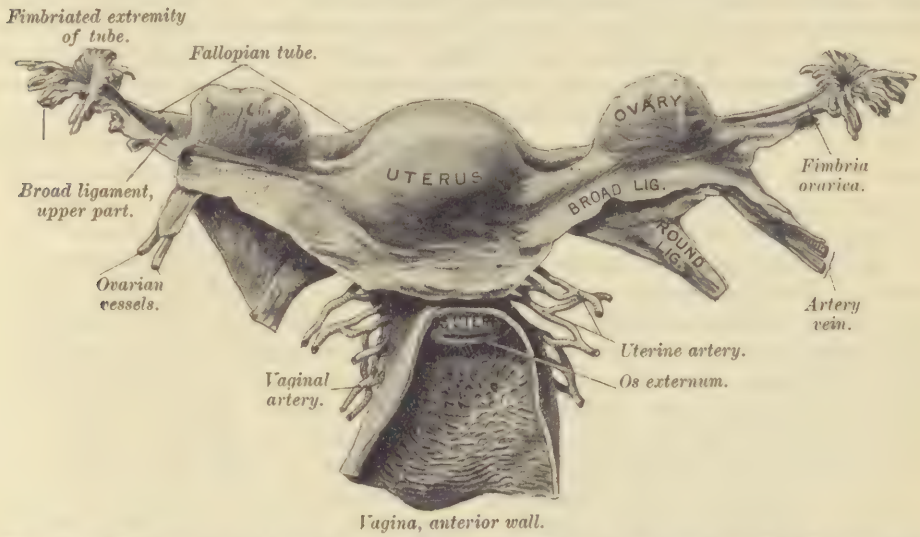


FIG. 1104.—The uterus and its appendages. Posterior view. The parts have been somewhat displaced from their proper position in the preparation of the specimen; thus the right ovary has been raised above the Fallopian tube, and the fimbriated extremities of the tubes have been turned upward and outward. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons of England.)

each empties into Gärtner's duct at a right angle. Gärtner's duct is a portion of the Wolffian duct, which has persisted and is represented in the male by the canal of the epididymis. The tubules which join the duct "are derived from the mesonephros and represent the vasa efferentia and coni vasculosi of the testis, and probably also the ductuli aberrantes of the canal of the epididymis."[1]

The Paro-ophoron is within the mesosalpinx, but is nearer to the uterus than is the epo-ophoron. It consists of several small tubules, which can be seen in an adult only by the aid of a pocket lens. They are visible to the naked eye in a child at birth. It represents the organ of Giraldés in the male and is derived from the mesonephros.

THE OVARY (Figs. 1088, 1092, 1094, 1095, 1097, 1098, 1099, 1103, 1104).

The ovaries (*ovaria*), the **testes muliebres of Galen,** are two in number and are analogous to the testes in the male. They are oval-shaped bodies of an elongated

[1] Prof. Cunningham's Text-book of Human Anatomy.

form, flattened from above downward, situated one on each side of the uterus, in the posterior layer of the broad ligament behind and below the Fallopian tube. Each ovary is connected by its anterior straight margin to the broad ligament; by its lower extremity to the uterus by a proper ligament, the **ligament of the ovary** (*ligamentum ovarii proprium*) (Fig. 1103); and by its upper end to the fimbriated extremity of the Fallopian tube by the **ovarian fimbria** (*fimbria ovarica*) (Fig. 1103), its mesial and lateral surfaces and posterior convex border are free (Fig. 1104). The ovaries are of a grayish-pink color, and present either a smooth or a puckered, uneven surface. They are each about an inch and a half in length, three-quarters of an inch in width, and about a third of an inch thick, and weigh from one to two drachms.

The exact position of the ovary has been the subject of considerable difference of opinion, and writers are in conflict as to what is to be regarded as the normal position. The fact appears to be that the ovary is differently placed in different individuals. The two ovaries are seldom placed in absolutely identical positions. Hasse has described the ovary as being situated with its long axis transverse, or almost transverse, to the pelvic cavity. Schultze, on the other hand, believes that its long axis is antero-posterior. Kölliker asserts that the truth lies between these views, and that the ovary is placed obliquely in the pelvis, its long axis lying parallel to the external iliac vessels, with its surface directed inward and outward, and its convex free border upward. His has made some important observations on this subject, and his views are largely accepted. He teaches that the uterus rarely lies symmetrically in the middle of the pelvic cavity, but is generally inclined to one or other side, most frequently to the left, in the proportion of three to two. The position of the two ovaries varies according to the inclination of the uterus. When the uterus is inclined to the left, the ovary of this side lies with its long axis vertical and with one side closely applied to the outer wall of the pelvis, while the ovary of the opposite side, being dragged upon by the inclination of the uterus, lies obliquely, its outer extremity being retained in close apposition to the side of the pelvis by the infundibulo-pelvic ligament. When, on the other hand, the uterus is inclined to the right, the position of the two ovaries is exactly reversed, the right being vertical and the left oblique. In whichever position the ovary is placed, the Fallopian tube forms a loop around it, the uterine half ascending obliquely over it, and the outer half, including the dilated extremity, descending and bulging freely behind it. From this extremity the fimbriae pass upward on to the ovary and closely embrace it.

Waldeyer[1] states, as the result of the examination of fifty female subjects, ranging from early childhood to advanced age, that the ovary "lies on the lateral pelvic wall and vertically when the woman takes the erect posture." Its *tubal* extremity is near the external iliac vein; its uterine end is directed downward, while the Fallopian tube overlies it so as to cover it on its medial face entirely or nearly so. Its convex margin looks downward and backward toward the pelvic cavity and rectum, while its straight margin or hilum lies laterally on the pelvic wall attached to the mesosalpinx. He also finds that it lies in a distinct but shallow groove (*fossa ovarii*) limited above by the hypogastric artery and below by the ureter, in such a manner that the ureter lies along the convex margin of the ovary, and the hypogastric artery passes near the hilum or straight margin.

The ovary possesses two poles or extremities: (1) An **outer, superior** or **tubal extremity** (*extremitas tubaria ovarii*). (2) An **inner, inferior** or **uterine extremity** (*extremitas uterina ovarii*). The ovary has two surfaces, an **inner surface** (*facies medialis*), which is also upper; an **outer surface** (*facies lateralis*), which is also lower. The **posterior** or **free border** (*margo liber*) is markedly convex. The **anterior**

[1] Journal of Anatomy and Physiology, vol. xxxii.

border (*margo mesovaricus*) is almost straight and is narrow. The anterior border is not free, but is joined to the posterior layer of the broad ligament by a peritoneal fold known as the **mesovarium**. There is a groove in the anterior border called the **hilum** (*hilus ovarii*), through which vessels and nerves to pass, and emerge from the ovary.

Supports and Connections of the Ovary.

From its upper extremity a peritoneal fold is continuous with the peritoneum over the iliac vessels and Psoas muscle. It is called the **ovario-pelvic fold** or the **suspensory ligament** (*ligamentum suspensorium ovarii*) (Fig. 1088). It is in reality a portion of the broad ligament, and within it are the ovarian vessels and nerves. The vessels (Fig. 1104) and nerves go to the anterior border of the ovary and are surrounded by a peritoneal sheath derived from the posterior layer of the broad ligament; it is thus evident that the anterior border of the ovary is connected to the posterior portion of the broad ligament by a very short mesentery, the **mesovarium**[1] (Fig. 1098). The **ligament of the ovary** or **ovarian ligament** (Figs. 1088 and 1103) is a round, cord-like structure, composed chiefly of non-striated muscle-fibres, which passes between the two folds of the broad ligament from the lower extremity of the ovary to the lateral angle of the uterus. The **ovarian fimbria** (Fig. 1103), as previously stated, passes to the upper extremity of the ovary from the extremity of the Fallopian tube.

The Descent of the Ovary.

In the female there is a gubernaculum which effects a considerable change in the position of the ovary, though not so extensive a change as is effected upon the male testicle. The gubernaculum in the female, as it lies on either side in contact with the fundus of the uterus formed by the union of the Müllerian ducts, contracts adhesions to this organ and thus the ovary is prevented from descending below this level. The remains of the gubernaculum—that is to say, the part between the attachment of the cord to the uterus to its termination in the labium majus—ultimately forms the round ligament of the uterus. A pouch of peritoneum accompanies it along the inguinal canal, analogous to the funicular process in the male; it is called the **canal of Nuck**. In rare cases the gubernaculum fails to contract adhesions to the uterus, and then the ovary descends through the inguinal canal into the labium majus, extending down the canal of Nuck. Under these conditions, the position of the ovary resembles the position of the testicle in the male.

The Ovary at Different Ages.—The ovary of childhood is smooth and even. The rupture of Graafian follicles, repeated many times, causes the surface of the ovary to become pitted, puckered, fibrous, and uneven in old age. The surface of the ovary is grayish-red in color. The corpus luteum of a non-pregnant woman slowly degenerates and disappears. The corpus luteum of an impregnated woman enlarges during pregnancy.

Structure (Figs. 1098, 1099, 1105, and 1106).—The ovary consists of a number of **Graafian follicles** or **vesicles** embedded in the meshes of a stroma or framework, and invested by a serous covering derived from the peritoneum.

Serous Covering.—Though the investing membrane of the ovary is continuous with the peritoneum near the hilum of the ovary (the point of junction being indicated by a narrow white line), it differs essentially from the peritoneum, inasmuch as it is an epithelial structure and consists of a single layer of columnar epithelial cells, instead of the flattened endothelial cells of other parts of the

[1] Prof. Cunningham's Text-book of Anatomy.

membrane; this has been termed the **germinal epithelium of Waldeyer**, and gives to the surface of the ovary a dull-gray aspect instead of the shining smoothness of serous membranes generally.

Stroma.—The stroma is a peculiar soft tissue, abundantly supplied with blood-vessels, consisting for the most part of spindle-shaped cells, with a small amount of ordinary connective tissue. These cells have been regarded by some anatomists as unstriped muscle-cells, which, indeed, they most resemble (His); by others as connective-tissue cells (Waldeyer, Henle, and Kölliker). On the surface of the organ this tissue is much condensed, and forms a layer composed of short connective-tissue fibres, with fusiform cells between them. This was formerly regarded as a distinct fibrous covering, and was termed the **tunica albuginea**, but is nothing more than a condensed layer of the stroma of the ovary.

Graafian Follicles or Vesicles (*folliculi oophori vesiculori* [*Graafi*]) (Figs. 1105 and 1106).—Upon making a section of an ovary numerous round transparent vesicles of various sizes are to be seen; they are the **Graafian vesicles** or **ovisacs** containing the ova. Immediately beneath the superficial covering is a layer of stroma, in which are a large number of minute vesicles of uniform size, about $\frac{1}{100}$ of an inch in diameter. These are the Graafian vesicles in their earliest condition, and the layer where they are found has been termed the **cortical layer.** They are especially numerous in the ovary of the young child. After puberty and during the whole of the child-bearing period large and mature, or almost mature, Graafian vesicles are also found in the cortical layer in small numbers, and also **corpora lutea**, the remains of vesicles which have burst and are undergoing atrophy and absorption. Beneath this superficial stratum other large and mature Graafian vesicles are

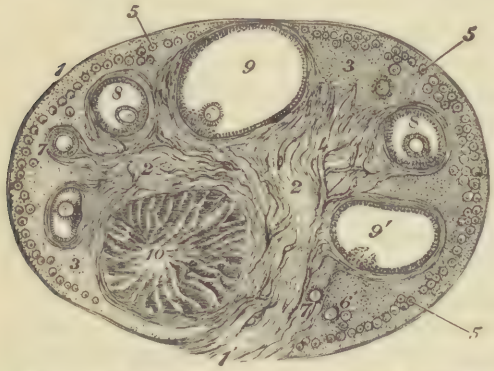


Fig. 1105. Section of the ovary. 1, outer covering; 1′, attached border; 2, central stroma; 3, peripheral stroma; 4, blood-vessels; 5, Graafian follicles in their earliest stage; 6, 7, 8, more advanced follicles; 9, an almost mature follicle; 9′, follicle from which the ovum has escaped; 10, corpus luteum. (After Schron.)

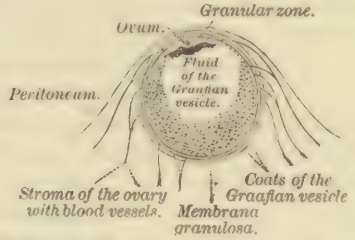


Fig. 1106.—Section of the Graafian vesicle. (After von Baer.)

found embedded in the ovarian stroma. These increase in size as they recede from the surface toward a highly vascular stroma in the centre of the organ, termed the **medullary substance** (*zona vasculosa* [*Waldeyeri*]). This stroma forms the tissue of the hilum by which the ovary is attached, and through which the blood-vessels enter; it does not contain any Graafian vesicles.

The larger Graafian follicles consist of an external fibro-vascular coat connected with the surrounding stroma of the ovary by a network of blood-vessels; and an internal coat, named the **ovicapsule**, which is lined by a layer of nucleated cells, called the **membrana granulosa.** The fluid contained in the interior of the vesicles is transparent and albuminous, and in it is suspended the ovum. In that part of the mature Graafian vesicle which is nearest the surface of the ovary the cells of the membrana granulosa are collected into a mass which projects into the cavity of the vesicle. This is termed the **discus proligerus**, and in this the ovum is embedded.

The ova are formed from the germinal epithelium on the surface of the ovary.

This becomes thickened, and in it are seen some cells which are larger and more rounded than the rest; these are termed the **primordial ova.** The germinal epithelium grows downward in the form of tubes or columns, termed the **egg tubes** of Pflüger, into the ovarian stroma, which grows outward between the tubes, and ultimately cuts them off from the germinal epithelium. These tubes are further subdivided into rounded **nests** or **groups** each containing a primordial ovum which undergoes further development and growth, while the surrounding cells of the nest form the epithelium of the Graafian follicle.

The development and maturation of the Graafian vesicles and ova continue uninterruptedly from puberty to the end of the fruitful period of woman's life, while their formation commences before birth. Before puberty the ovaries are small, the Graafian vesicles contained in them are disposed in a comparatively thick layer in the cortical substance; here they present the appearance of a large number of minute closed vesicles, constituting the early condition of the Graafian vesicle; many, however, never attain full development, but shrink and disappear. At puberty the ovaries enlarge and become more vascular, the Graafian vesicles are developed in greater abundance, and their ova are capable of fecundation.

Discharge of the Ovum.—The Graafian vesicles, after gradually approaching the surface of the ovary, burst; the ovum and fluid contents of the vesicles are liberated, and escape on the exterior of the ovary, passing thence into the Fallopian tube. This is effected either by application of the tube to the ovary, or by a curling upward of the fimbriated extremity, so that the ovum is caught as it falls.

In the fœtus the ovaries are situated, like the testes, in the lumbar region, near the kidneys. They may be distinguished from those bodies at an early period by their elongated and flattened form, and by their position, which is at first oblique and then nearly transverse. They gradually descend into the pelvis.

The Round Ligament (p. 1491).

Vessels and Nerves.—The **arteries of the ovaries** (Figs. 1100 and 1104) are the **ovarian** from the aorta, corresponding to the spermatic arteries in the male. The ovarian artery on each side enters the pelvis in the fold of broad ligament known as the suspensory ligament of the ovary and enters the attached border, or hilum, of the ovary. The ovarian vessels anastomose about the hilum with branches of the **uterine artery.** The **veins** follow the course of the arteries; they form a plexus near the ovary, the **pampiniform plexus,** corresponding to a like structure near the male testicle. The **lymphatics** (Figs. 1101 and 1102) terminate in the glands to the corresponding side of the aorta, and they anastomose in their course with trunks from the uterine fundus and Fallopian tube. The **nerves** come from the **ovarian plexus,** which is a continuation of the **renal plexus** along the ovarian artery, and from the **aortic plexus.**

Surgical Anatomy of the Appendages.—*Extra-uterine pregnancy* most commonly occurs in the ampulla of the tube. The product of the conception may escape through the ostium abdominale or the walls of the tube may rupture, a violent hemorrhage resulting.

Pelvic peritonitis is a not uncommon sequence of tubal disease. *Salpingitis* is inflammation of the mucous coat of the tube—*interstitial salpingitis* of the middle coat, *perisalpingitis* of the peritoneal coat.

If inflammation closes the uterine and the abdominal ends of the tube, mucus gathers and distends the tube (*hydrosalpinx*). If purulent matter gathers, the condition is known as *pyosalpinx*.

An ovary may fail to descend and remain well above the pelvic brim; it may *prolapse* into Douglas's pouch; it may enter the sac of a hernia; it may inflame; a *tumor* or *cyst* may arise from it. A *solid tumor* of the ovary may be a fibroma, a sarcoma, or a carcinoma. "Cysts may originate in any part of the tubo-ovarian structure; as the cortical, medullary, or parenchymatous portions of the ovary; in the structure between the tube and ovary known as the Rosenmüller organ or parovarian structures; and in the hydatid of Morgagni."[1] Cysts may be simple, proliferating, or dermoid; unilocular or multilocular. Glandular proliferous cysts, papillary pro-

[1] Text-book of Gynecology. By E. E. Montgomery.

liferous cysts, dermoid cysts, and parovarian cysts may attain a large or even an enormous size. The operation for the removal of an ovarian cyst is one of the most successful of the major procedures of surgery.

THE MAMMARY GLAND (MAMMA) (Figs. 1107, 1108, 1109, 1110).

The **breasts, mammary glands** or **mammae** secrete the milk, and are accessory glands of the generative system. They develop fully in the female, but remain permanently rudimentary in the male. There are two of these glands, and they are situated in the superficial fascia of the anterior portion of the thorax. Between the two glands and in front of the sternum is a groove, the **bosom.**

Description of a Well-developed Breast.—Each gland appears as a hemispherical body projecting from the front of the thorax beneath the skin and lying over a portion of the Pectoralis major muscle and a smaller portion of the Serratus magnus muscle. The hemispherical projection extends usually from the margin of the sternum to the axilla and from the level of the second rib to the level of the sixth rib, or from the third rib to the seventh rib, but this does not represent the real size of the gland. The gland is much larger than this, being rendered so by tails or prolongations of breast tissue, which will be described later (p. 1505).

The Nipple (*papilla mammae*) (Figs. 1107, 1108, 1109, and 1110).—The nipple projects from a little below and to the median side of the summit of the hemisphere at or above the level of the fifth rib, and is covered with thin skin. The right nipple may not exactly correspond in situation and direction to the left nipple. The nipple varies considerably in height and shape. In the virgin it is usually cylindrical and is directed forward and slightly upward and outward. The apex of the nipple is rendered rough by fissures (Fig. 1107), it exhibits a depression in which are the openings of the milk ducts (Fig. 1109), and its circumference is thrown into **concentric ridges** (Fig. 1109). The nipple is surrounded by a darker circular wrinkled area, the **areola** (*areola mammae*) (Figs. 1107 and 1108), in which are sweat-glands and on which are twelve or fifteen small rounded elevations. These elevations are caused by cutaneous sebaceous glands which in structure represent a transition between sebaceous and mammary glands. They are probably rudimentary portions of the mammary gland and are known as the **glands of Montgomery** (*glandulae areolares*) (Fig. 1109). The color of the nipple and areola varies with the complexion of the individual. In brunettes it is darker than in blondes. The usual color of the nipple in a young woman is rosy-pink, the areola being of a darker shade. During the early months of pregnancy the nipple and areola become dark brown in color, the areola becomes larger in circumference and the glands of Montgomery increase in size (Fig. 1110). The nipple contains non-striated muscle and mechanical irritation or sexual excitement makes it stiff and erect. The skin covering the breast is clear, soft, and delicate, and subcutaneous veins are often visible. The skin of the nipple and areola is particularly delicate.

Variations in the Mammae.—Before puberty the glands are small, of the infantile type, grow slowly, and differ but slightly from the male organs. The nipple is small and flat and pale. At puberty the increase in the size of the breast is rapid and considerable, due to growth of gland tissue and of subcutaneous fat. During pregnancy the breasts enlarge greatly and remain very large throughout lactation. This enlargement is due to new gland tissue and increased vascularity. Numerous blue veins are visible in the skin, the areola darkens, and the glands of Montgomery enlarge (Fig. 1110). During lactation the associated lymphatic glands may enlarge (A. Marmaduke Sheild). After the termination of lactation the breasts diminish in size. They do not become as small as the virgin breast, are apt to lose their hemispherical outlines, and cease to be soft. They droop as flaccid pendulous

masses, the subcutaneous fat is largely gone, and the outlines of the lobular breast tissue can be seen and felt. The nipple is long and hangs down like a teat. At the menopause the breast usually shrinks. In some cases, however, it actually increases in size. In such a case, although the gland atrophies, there is an extensive deposit of fat. In old age the glands undergo atrophy and largely disappear, the skin is flabby and thrown into wrinkles, and the breasts contain very little glandular structure, and are hard from the presence of fibrous tissue. The nipples become pigmented and corrugated. Women vary greatly in the development of the breasts. In some women they are large, firm, and well proportioned; in others they are small, flat, or atrophy occurs in the course of certain bodily diseases, as phthisis, and certain mental diseases, as melancholia. If the ovaries are ill-developed the breasts remain flat and small. In newly married women, even though pregnancy does not exist, the breasts often develop decidedly and rapidly. The outline and direction of the breast and also of the nipple may be altered by corsets. The left mamma is usually somewhat larger than the right.

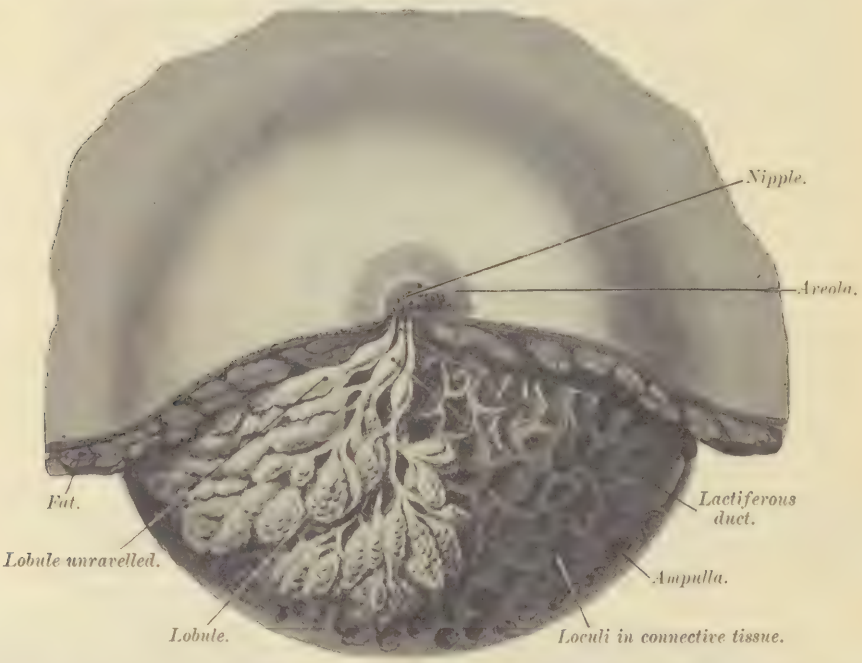


FIG. 1107.—Dissection of the lower half of the female breast during the period of lactation. (From Luschka.)

One gland or both glands may be entirely absent, the nipple being also absent. One or both glands may be absent, one or both nipples being present. When there is only one nipple, it is apt to be the left. The term **polymazia** (*mammae accessoriae muliebris*) means the presence of supernumerary breasts, with or without nipples. **Polythelia** means the presence of supernumerary nipples, the associated glandular structure being rudimentary. There may be one, two, or several supernumerary breasts, and when more than one exists, are usually asymmetrical. If one is functionally active, it enlarges during pregnancy and furnishes milk.

Supernumerary mammae may secrete milk or may be without function. The most common situation is on the part of the chest below and to the inner side of the normally placed gland. They may also exist in the axilla, the abdomen, the groin, the back, and the thigh. Many cases of supposed supernumerary glands have been really instances in which moles, warts, or sebaceous cysts have been mistaken for breast tissue, but some cases are undoubted.

Prolongations of Mammary Tissue.—As previously stated, the outlines of the breast are not regular, but here and there tails, prolongations, or cusps come off

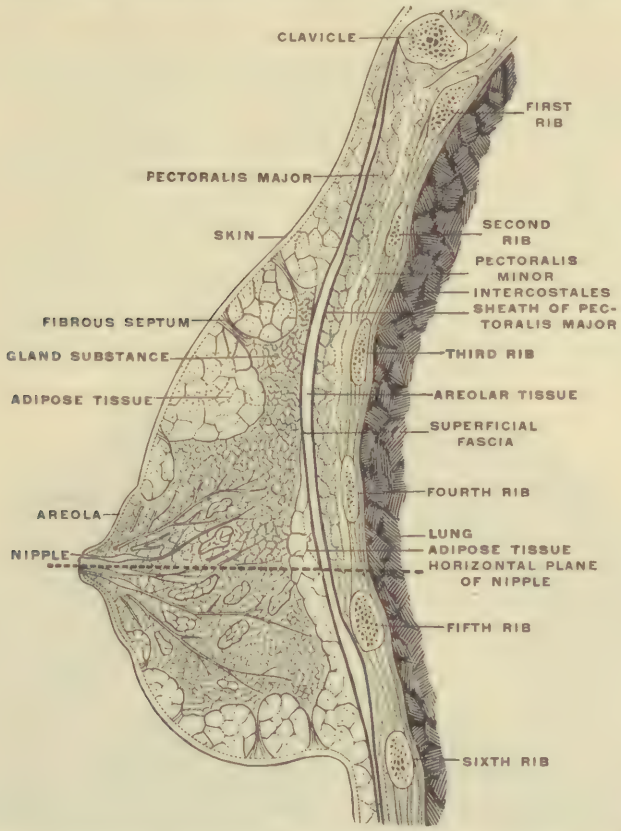


FIG. 1108.—Right breast in sagittal section, inner surface of outer segment. (Testut.)

from and are true portions of the gland. Two or even more prolongations pass to the edge of the sternum; others pass toward the axilla, the clavicle, and the origin

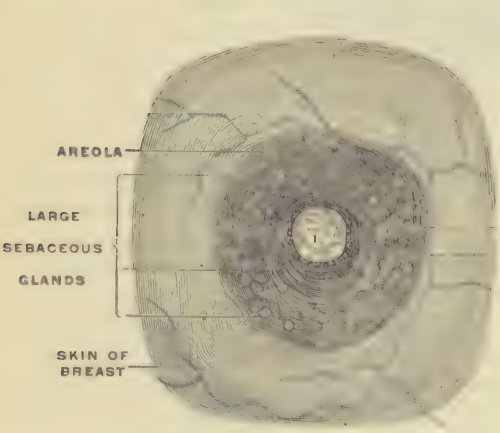


FIG. 1109.—Nipple and areola of a virgin. (Testut.)

FIG. 1110.—Nipple and areolae of a pregnant woman. (Testut.)

of the external oblique muscle from the ribs. Underneath the mammary gland prolongations of mammary tissue penetrate the pectoral fascia (Heidenhain).

If one of the glandular cusps is of considerable size it is called an **outlying lobule.**

Structure of Mammary Gland and Nipple (Figs. 1107 and 1108). — The **glands of the breast** (*corpus mammae*) rest by a smooth posterior surface upon the loose pectoral fascia, which fastens the breast to the muscle beneath, but so loosely that the breast is movable. The mamma consists of gland-tissue; of fibrous tissue, connecting its lobes, of fatty tissue in the intervals between the lobes, of retinacula, and of skin. The gland-tissue, when freed from fibrous tissue and fat, is of a pale reddish color, firm in texture, in general circular in form, with prolongations here and there, flattened from before backward, thicker in the centre than at the circumference, and presenting several inequalities on its surface, especially in front. On the anterior surface there are many irregular elevated processes with deep spaces between them. From the summits of the elevations connective-tissue strands (*retinacula cutis*) pass to the true skin. The glandular structure consists of numerous **lobes** (*lobi mammae*), and these are composed of **lobules** (*lobuli mammae*), connected together by areolar tissue, blood-vessels, and ducts. The smallest lobules consist of a cluster of rounded **alveoli** (Fig. 1107), which open into the smallest branches of the excretory ducts; these ducts, uniting, form larger ducts, which terminate in single canals. Each canal is called a **lactiferous, galactophorus** or **mammillary duct** (*ductus lactiferus*) (Fig. 1107). Each lobe possesses one lactiferous duct. This passes to the apex of the lobe and then into the nipple. The lactiferous ducts are white and cord-like, and contrast with the yellowish-red tissue of the gland itself. The number of excretory ducts varies from fifteen to twenty. They converge toward the areola, beneath which each duct forms a spindle-shaped dilatation, the **ampulla** (*sinus lactiferans*) (Fig. 1107). The ampullae serve as reservoirs for the milk. At the base of the nipple the ducts become contracted and pursue a straight course to its summit, perforating it by separate orifices considerably narrower than the ducts themselves. Each orifice (*porus lactiferus*) is the orifice of a tube which drains an individual lobe. The ducts are composed of areolar tissue, with longitudinal and transverse elastic fibres; muscular fibres are entirely absent; their mucous lining is continuous, at the point of the nipple, with the integument. The epithelium of the mammary gland differs according to the state of activity of the organ. In the gland of a woman who is not pregnant or nursing the alveoli are very small and solid, being filled with a mass of granular polyhedral cells. During pregnancy the alveoli enlarge and the cells undergo rapid multiplication. At the commencement of lactation the cells in the centre of an alveolus undergo fatty degeneration, and are eliminated in the first milk as **colostrum-corpuscles.** The peripheral cells of the alveolus remain, and form a single layer of granular, short columnar cells lining the limiting membrana propria. The single nucleus of each cell divides and forms two. In the protoplasm, especially in the end of the cells toward the alveolus, drops of fat appear, and the nucleus toward this end of the cell also becomes fatty.

The end of the cell toward the alveolus breaks down, and the liberated material constitutes "the albuminous ingredients of the milk, while the drops of fat become the milk-globules. The portion of the cell which remains forms new cytoplasm, and the same process is repeated over and over again. The cells also secrete water and the salts which are found in the milk."[1]

The **fibrous tissue** (Fig. 1108) invests the entire surface of the breast, and sends down septa between its lobes, connecting them together.

The **fatty tissue** (Figs. 1107 and 1108) surrounds the surface of the gland and occupies the interval between its lobes. It usually exists in considerable abun-

[1] Human Physiology. By Joseph Howard Raymond.

dance, and determines the form and size of the gland. There is no fat immediately beneath the areola and nipple.

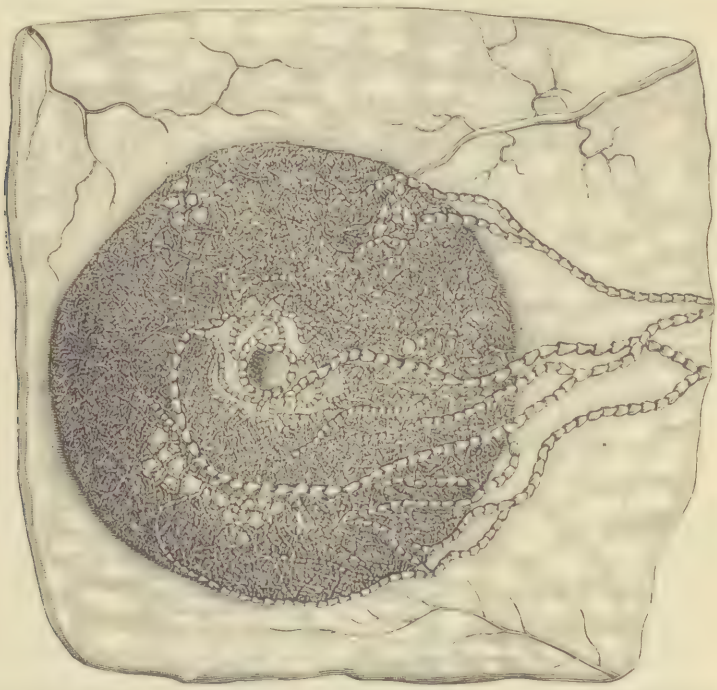


FIG. 1111.—The lymphatic vessels of the anterior surface of the breast; the subareolar plexus and the trunks which run from it. (Sappey.)

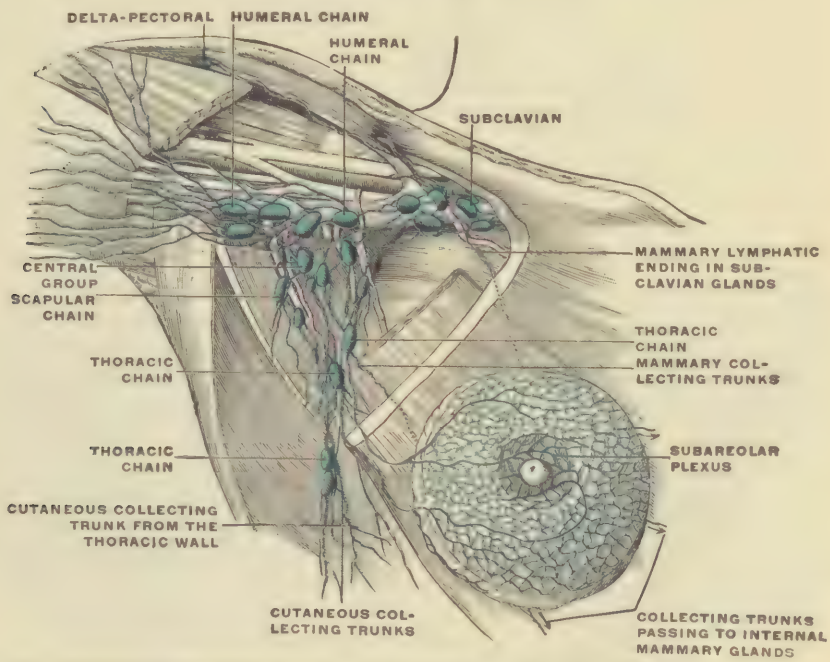


FIG. 1112.—Lymphatics of the breast and axillary glands. (Poirier and Charpy.)

Vessels and Nerves.—The arteries supplying the mammary gland are derived from the perforating branches of the internal mammary, long thoracic branches of the

axillary, and **branches from the intercostals.** The **veins** describe an anastomotic circle around the base of the nipple, called by Haller the **circulus venosus.** From this large branches transmit the blood to the circumference of the gland and end in the **axillary** and **internal mammary veins.** The **lymphatics** of the mammary gland (Figs. 1111 and 1112) and mammary region have been previously described (pp. 812, 813, and 814). The **nerves** are derived from the **fourth, fifth,** and **sixth intercostal nerves,** and **sympathetic filaments from the dorsal cord** pass to the breast along the branches of the intercostal nerves.

Surgical Anatomy.—Occasionally the mammary gland undergoes enormous *hypertrophy.* This may occur at any age, even in the virgin. The physiological enlargement of puberty may become excessive or the physiological enlargement of pregnancy and lactation may continue and increase after the termination of lactation. The chief elements in the enlargement are fat and connective tissue, and it is doubtful if there is extensive reproduction of glandular tissue.

Abscess of the breast may occur at any age, but is most common by far in nursing women. The portals are opened to infection by a crack in the nipple and bacteria are carried inward by the lymph-vessels. In some cases the pus gathers beneath the skin (*supra-mammary abscess*), in others in the breast tissue (*intra-mammary abscess*). In rare cases pus gathers beneath the breast (*retro-mammary abscess*). In intra-mammary abscess the pus burrows through the fibrous septa or fascia and forms numerous channels, and such a channel is constricted at the point where it passes through fascia or a fibrous septum, as an hour-glass is constricted.

In every patient suffering from abscess the nipple should be examined for a sore or crack, and the area when found should be treated antiseptically. A supra-mammary abscess should be opened by an incision radiating from the nipple.

In intra-mammary abscess follow the advice of Sheild: open the abscess by an incision radiating from the nipple, insert the index finger, and when possible pass it to the bottom of the abscess and carry the tip from the depths of the abscess to as near the surface as possible. At this point make a counter opening. The finger breaks down septa which cause constriction and thus converts the tracking sinuses into one large cavity.[1] Drain by tubes.

A retro-mammary abscess is opened by an incision, following the outline of the breast at the thoraco-mammary junction, the finger being pushed through the incision and up under the gland.

Tuberculosis of the breast may occur, and if it does, *cold abscess* is apt to form. The best treatment is removal of the gland and the associated lymph glands.

Chronic mastitis is a condition of mammary fibrosis, most common in neurotic single women, and apt to be associated with ovarian or uterine disease.

Malignant dermatitis or *Paget's disease* of the nipple is a chronic condition consisting of epithelial proliferation, induration, desquamation, and ulceration, and it is apt to be followed by epithelioma.

Chancre of the nipple is occasionally met with.

Secondary and *tertiary syphilitic lesions* are seen upon the skin of the breast, the nipple, and the areola.

Cysts and *tumors* are common in the breast.

There may be *cystic degeneration* of the gland in women near the menopause (*involution cysts*); a *lacteal cyst;* a *hydatid cyst;* an adenoma may become cystic.

The nipple may suffer from *epithelioma, myoma, myxoma, angioma, papilloma,* or *fibroma.*

The innocent tumors of the breast are *fibro-adenoma, cystic adenoma, myxoma,* and *angioma.*

The skin of the breast may suffer from any form of growth or cyst which could arise from the skin of another part. Malignant tumors of the glandular structure are ten times as frequent as innocent tumors. *Sarcoma* is rare; *carcinoma* is very common.

Carcinoma of the breast has occupied much of the attention of surgeons during recent years. The old operation was uniformly followed by recurrence. The modern radical operation has been evolved from the studies of Moore, the younger Gross, Heidenhain, Stiles, Banks, Halsted, and others. The modern operation always removes at least the skin and subcutaneous tissue over the hemispherical portion of the breast, the outlying lobules of the breast, the pectoral fascia, and the sternal portion of the great Pectoral muscle, the lymphatic tracts from the breast, the lymphatic glands and cellular tissue from the axilla, and from beneath the latissimus dorsi muscle. The pectoral fascia and the sternal portion of the great Pectoral muscle must come away in every case, because breast tissue may pass through the fascia. The entire breast must be removed, because even in a recent case the entire breast is regarded as infected. The clavicular portion of the great Pectoral muscle is anatomically distinct from the sternal portion and its removal is not imperative. Some operators remove the lesser Pectoral muscle. To leave it is of no value to the arm, and it frequently causes an annoying rigid band anterior to the axilla. To take it away

[1] Diseases of the Breast. By A. Marmaduke Sheild.

gives ready access to the axillary vessels at a desirable point above. The sheath of the axillary vein should be removed with the glands and cellular tissue of the axilla. The glands receiving lymph from the cancerous area must be removed, of course. In view of the fact that in an undetermined percentage of cases a lymph tract passes direct to the subclavian glands, it is evident that these glands may become infected by this route instead of, as is more usual, secondarily to axillary infection; hence it seems wiser in every case to remove the cellular tissue and glands from the subclavian triangle. All of these structures should be removed as one piece, in order to avoid cutting across lymph tracts and flooding the wound with carcinoma cells which might adhere, grow, and reproduce cancer.

Halsted's operation is the method adopted by most surgeons. The wound cannot be completely closed, and the raw spot is covered at once or later with Thiersch skin grafts. (For surgical considerations regarding the lymphatics in mammary carcinoma see page 814.)

The Male Breast (*mamma virilis*).—The male breast is a small flat structure, consisting chiefly of connective tissue, but containing some branched tubules. Under normal circumstances it remains permanently of the infantile type. It possesses a nipple which is much smaller than that of the female breast, and which usually lies over the fourth intercostal space, but may lie over the fourth or fifth rib. The nipples of the two sides are rarely placed quite symmetrically. Accessory glands and accessory nipples are as common among males as females. The male breast may exhibit some evidence of temporary functional activity at birth and at puberty. Cases have been recorded of actual lactation by the male breast.

Surgical Anatomy.—The male breasts may undergo enormous hypertrophy (*gynaecomazia*). In these cases the penis is often small and the testicles may be atrophied. The breasts may be absent in the male. Disease of the male breast is not nearly so frequent as disease of the female breast. The organ may be the seat of syphilis, tuberculosis, acute or chronic mastitis, abscess or tumor. A number of cases of cancer of the male breast have been recorded.

THE SURGICAL ANATOMY OF INGUINAL HERNIA AND FEMORAL HERNIA.

Dissection (Fig. 288).—For dissection of the parts concerned in inguinal hernia a male subject, free from fat, should always be selected. The body should be placed in the supine position, the abdomen and pelvis raised by means of blocks placed beneath them, and the lower extremities rotated outward, so as to make the parts as tense as possible. If the abdominal walls are flaccid, the cavity of the abdomen should be inflated through an aperture made at the umbilicus. An incision should be made along the middle line from a little below the umbilicus to the symphysis pubis, and continued along the front of the scrotum, and a second incision from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to just below the umbilicus. These incisions should divide the integument, and the triangular-shaped flap included between them should be reflected downward and outward, when the superficial fascia will be exposed.

The Superficial Fascia of the Abdomen (p. 433).—This, over the greater part of the abdominal wall, consists of a single layer of fascia, which contains a variable amount of fat; but as it approaches the groin it is easily divisible into two layers, between which are found the superficial vessels and nerves and the superficial inguinal lymphatic glands.

The **Superficial Layer of the Superficial Fascia** or the **Fascia of Camper** is thick, areolar in texture, containing adipose tissue in its meshes, the quantity of which varies in different subjects. Below, it passes over Poupart's ligament, and is continuous with the outer layer of the superficial fascia of the thigh. In the male this fascia is continued over the penis and over the outer surface of the cord to the scrotum, where it helps to form the dartos. As it passes to the penis, and over the cord to the scrotum it changes its character, becoming thin, destitute of adipose tissue, and of a pale reddish color; and in the scrotum it acquires some involuntary muscular fibres. From the scrotum it may be traced backward, to be continuous with the superficial fascia of the perinæum. In the female this fascia is continued into the labia majora.

The **hypogastric branch of the ilio-hypogastric nerve** perforates the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle about an inch above and a little to the outer side of the external abdominal ring, and is distributed to the integument of the hypogastric region.

The **ilio-inguinal nerve** escapes at the external abdominal ring, and is distributed to the integument of the upper and inner part of the thigh, to the scrotum in the male and to the labium in the female.

The **superficial epigastric artery** arises from the femoral about half an inch below Poupart's ligament, and, passing through the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, ascends on to the abdomen, in the superficial fascia covering the External oblique muscle, nearly as high as the umbilicus. It distributes branches to the superficial inguinal lymphatic glands, the superficial fascia, and the integument, anastomosing with branches of the deep epigastric and internal mammary arteries.

The **superficial circumflex iliac artery**, the smallest of the cutaneous branches, arises close to the preceding, and, piercing the fascia lata, runs outward, parallel with Poupart's ligament, as far as the crest of the ilium, dividing into branches which supply the superficial inguinal lymphatic glands, the superficial fascia, and

the integument, anastomosing with the deep circumflex iliac and with the gluteal and external circumflex arteries.

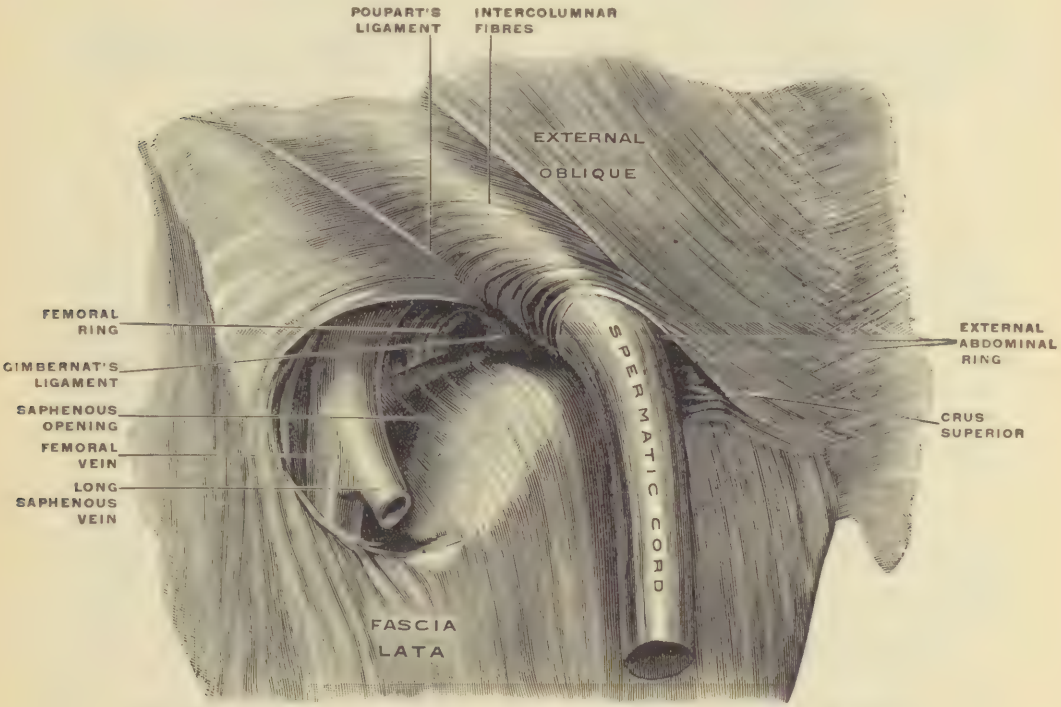


FIG. 1113.—Right external abdominal ring and saphenous opening in the male. (Spalteholz.)

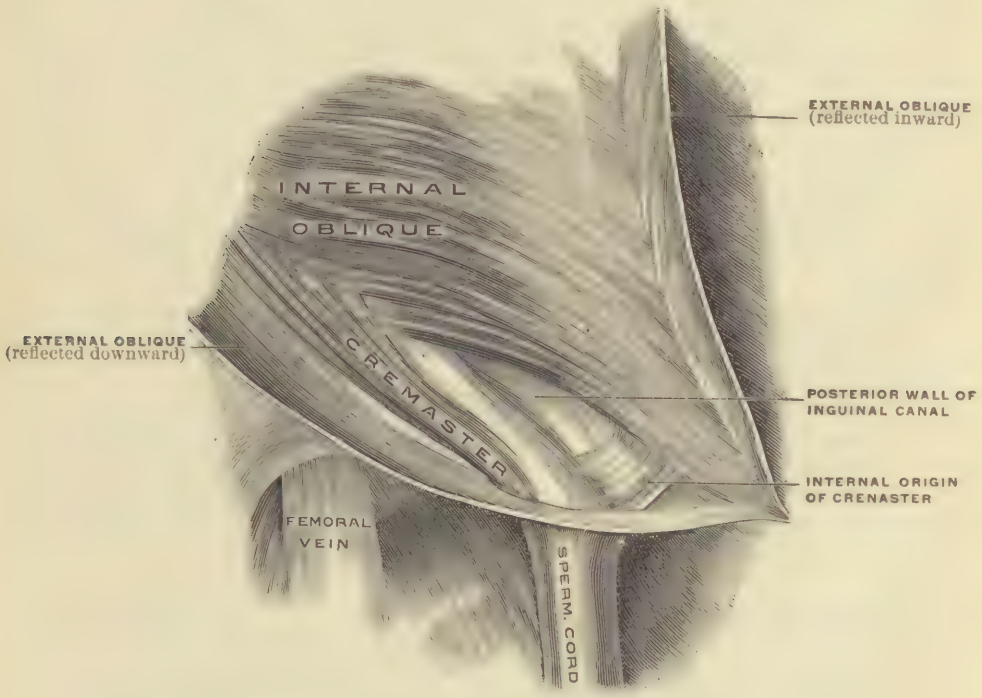


FIG. 1114.—Right inguinal canal in the male. Second layer viewed from in front. (Spalteholz.)

The **superficial external pudic (superior) artery** arises from the inner side of the femoral artery close to the preceding vessels, and, after passing through the saphenous opening, courses inward across the spermatic cord, to be distributed to the integument on the lower part of the abdomen, the penis and scrotum in the male, and the labium in the female, anastomosing with branches of the internal pudic.

The Superficial Veins.—The veins accompanying these superficial vessels are usually much larger than the arteries; they terminate in the internal saphenous vein.

The **superficial inguinal lymphatic glands** are placed immediately beneath the integument, are of large size, and vary from ten to twenty in number (p. 793).

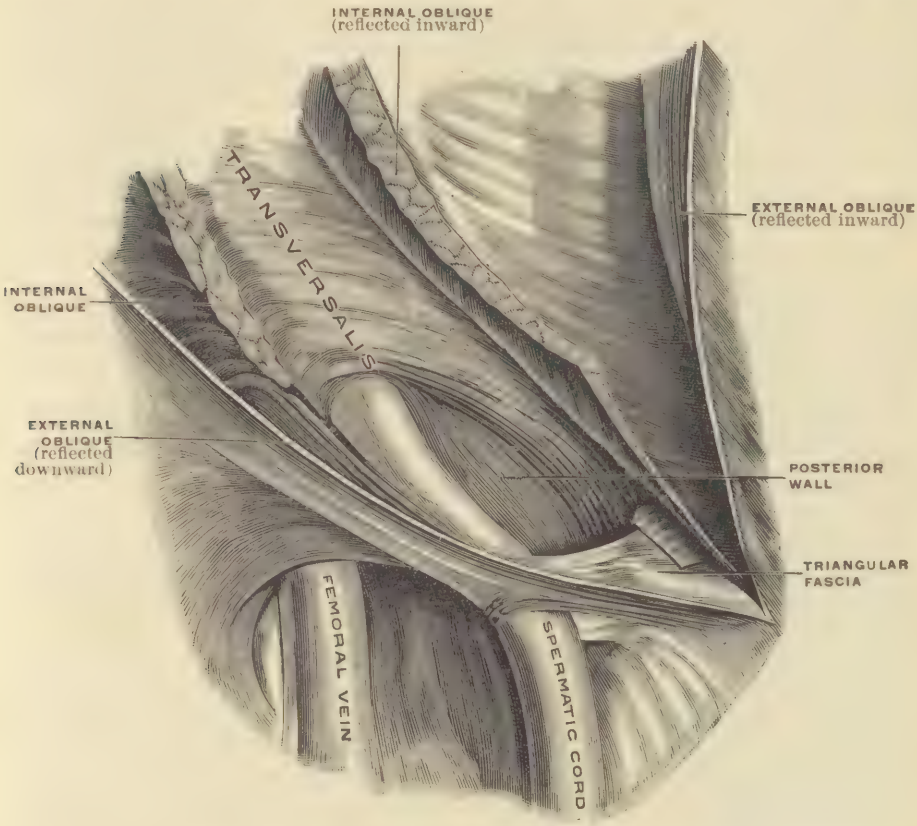


FIG. 1115.—The right inguinal canal in the male. Third layer viewed from in front. (Spalteholz.)

The **Deep Layer of the Superficial Fascia**, the **Fascia of Scarpa** or the **Fascia of Cooper** (p. 433) is thinner and more membranous in character than the superficial layer. In the middle line it is intimately adherent to the linea alba; above, it is continuous with the superficial fascia over the rest of the trunk; below, it blends with the fascia lata of the thigh a little below Poupart's ligament; below and internally, in the male, it is continued over the penis and over the outer surface of the cord to the scrotum, where it helps to form the dartos. From the scrotum it may be traced backward to be continuous with the base of the triangular ligament of the urethra. In the female it is continuous with the labia majora.

The scrotum is a cutaneous pouch which contains the testes and part of the spermatic cords, and into which an inguinal hernia frequently descends.

The Aponeurosis of the External Oblique Muscle (Fig. 1113).—This is a thin but strong membranous aponeurosis, the fibres of which are directed obliquely downward and inward. That portion of the aponeurosis which extends between

the anterior superior spine of the ilium and the spine of the os pubis is a broad band, folded inward and continuous below with the fascia lata; it is called **Poupart's ligament** (Figs. 289, 1113, 1116, 1117, 1119, 1124, 1125). The portion which is reflected from Poupart's ligament at the spine of the os pubis, along the pectineal line, is called **Gimbernat's ligament** (Fig. 297, 340, 1113, 1124, 1125). A thin fibrous band extends from the inner end of Poupart's ligament and Gimbernat's ligament upward and inward behind the inner pillar of the external ring to the anterior layer of the rectus sheath. The fibres diverge as they ascend. This band is known as the **triangular fascia** or **Colles's fascia** or the **triangular ligament of Colles** (Figs. 1115 and 1119).

The External or Superficial Abdominal Ring (*annulus inguinalis subcutaneus*) (Figs. 289 and 1113).—Just above and to the outer side of the crest of the os pubis an interval is seen in the aponeurosis of the External oblique, called the **external abdominal ring**. This aperture is oblique in direction, somewhat triangular in form, and corresponds with the course of the fibres of the aponeurosis. It usually measures from base to apex about an inch, and transversely about half an inch. It is bounded below by the crest of the os pubis; above, by a series of curved fibres, the **intercolumnar fibres**, which pass across the upper angle of the ring, so as to increase its strength; and on either side by the margins of the opening in the aponeurosis, which are called the **columns** or **pillars of the ring**.

The **External Pillar**, which at the same time is **inferior** (*crus inferius*), from the obliquity of its direction, is the stronger; it is formed by that portion of Poupart's ligament which is inserted into the spine of the os pubis; it is curved, so as to form a kind of groove, upon which the spermatic cord rests.

The **Internal** or **Superior Pillar** (*crus superius*) is a broad, thin, flat band, which is attached to the front of the body of the os pubis, interlacing with its fellow of the opposite side in front of the symphysis pubis, that of the right side being superficial.

The external abdominal ring gives passage to the spermatic cord in the male and round ligament in the female; it is much larger in men than in women, on account of the large size of the spermatic cord, hence the great frequency of inguinal hernia in men.

The **Intercolumnar Fibres** (*fibrae intercrurales*) (Fig. 1113) are a series of curved tendinous fibres which arch across the lower part of the aponeurosis of the External oblique. They have received their name from stretching across between the two pillars of the external ring; they increase the strength of the lower part of the aponeurosis and prevent the divergence of the pillars from one another. They are thickest below, where they arise from Poupart's ligament, and they are inserted into the linea alba, describing a curve, with the convexity downward. They are much thicker and stronger at the outer angle of the external ring than internally, and are more strongly developed in the male than in the female. These intercolumnar fibres, as they pass across the external abdominal ring, are themselves connected together by delicate fibrous tissue, thus forming a fascia which, as it is attached to the pillars of the ring, covers it in, and is called the **intercolumnar fascia**. This intercolumnar fascia is continued downward as a tubular prolongation around the outer surface of the cord and testis, and encloses them in a distinct sheath; hence, it is also called the **external spermatic fascia**. The sac of an inguinal hernia in passing through the external abdominal ring receives an investment from the intercolumnar fascia.

If the finger is introduced a short distance into the external ring and the limb is then extended and rotated outward, the aponeurosis of the External oblique, together with the iliac portion of the fascia lata, will be felt to become tense and the external ring much contracted; if the limb is, on the contrary, flexed upon the pelvis and rotated inward, this aponeurosis will become lax, and the external ring

sufficiently enlarged to admit the finger with comparative ease; hence the patient should always be put in the latter position when the taxis is applied for the reduction of an inguinal hernia, in order that the abdominal walls may be relaxed as much as possible.

The aponeurosis of the External oblique should be removed by dividing it across in the same direction as the external incisions, and reflecting it downward and outward; great care is requisite in separating it from the aponeurosis of the muscle beneath. The lower part of the Internal oblique and the Cremaster are then exposed, together with the inguinal canal, which contains the spermatic cord (Fig. 1116). The mode of insertion of Poupart's and Gimbernat's ligaments into the os pubis should also be examined.

Poupart's Ligament (*ligamentum inguinale* [*Pouparti*]) (Figs. 289, 1113, 1116, 1117, 1119, 1124, and 1125) or the crural arch is the lower border of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle, which extends from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the spine of the os pubis. From this latter point it is reflected outward to be attached to the pectineal line for about half an inch, forming Gimbernat's ligament. Its general direction is curved downward toward the thigh, where it is continuous with the fascia lata. Its outer half is rounded and oblique in direction; its inner half gradually widens at its attachment to the os pubis, is more horizontal in direction, and lies beneath the spermatic cord.

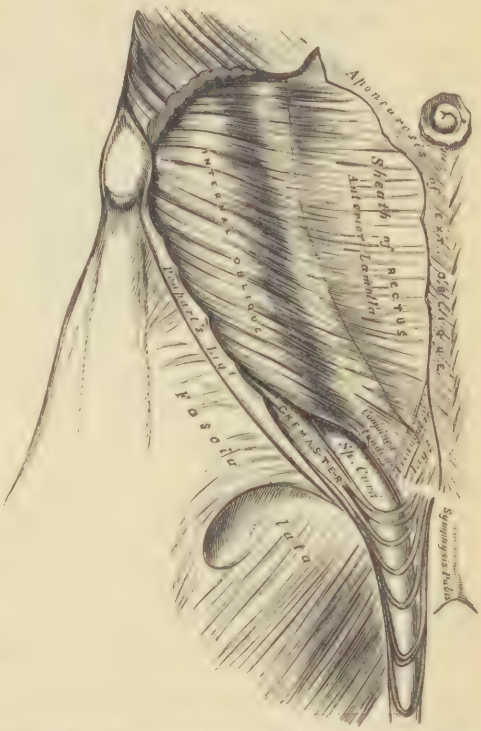


FIG. 1115. Inguinal hernia. Dissection showing the Internal oblique and Cremaster.

Gimbernat's Ligament (*ligamentum lacunare* [*Gimbernati*]) (Figs. 289, 297, 340, 1113, 1124, and 1125) is that portion of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle which is reflected upward and outward from the spine of the os pubis to be inserted into the pectineal line. It is about half an inch in length, larger in the male than in the female, almost horizontal in direction in the erect posture, and of a triangular form, with the base directed outward. Its base or outer margin is concave, thin, and sharp, and lies in contact with the femoral sheath, forming the inner boundary of the femoral ring (Fig. 1124). Its apex corresponds to the spine of the os pubis. Its posterior margin is attached to the pectineal line, and is continuous with the pubic portion of the fascia lata. Its anterior margin is continuous with Poupart's ligament.

The **Triangular Fascia of the Abdomen, Colles's Fascia** or the **Triangular Ligament of Colles** (*ligamentum inguinale reflexum* [*Collesi*]) (Fig. 1115, 1116, and 1119) is a band of tendinous fibres, of a triangular shape, which is attached by its apex to the inner end of Poupart's ligament and to Gimbernat's ligament. It passes inward beneath the spermatic cord, and expands into a somewhat fan-shaped fascia, lying behind the inner pillar of the external abdominal ring and in front of the conjoined tendon, and interlaces with the ligament of the other side at the linea alba in the anterior layer of the sheath of the Rectus muscle.

The Ligament of Cooper.—See Fig. 297 and p. 437.

The **Internal Oblique Muscle** (Figs. 1114, 1115, and 1116) has been previously described (p. 437). The part which is now exposed is partly muscular and partly tendinous in structure. Those fibres which arise from Poupart's ligament, few in number and paler in color than the rest, arch downward and inward across the spermatic cord, and, becoming tendinous, are inserted, conjointly with those of the Transversalis, into the crest of the os pubis and pectineal line, forming what is known as the **conjoined tendon** of the Internal oblique and Transversalis (Figs. 1116 and 1117). This tendon is inserted immediately behind the inguinal canal and external abdominal ring, serving to protect what would otherwise be a weak point in the abdominal wall. The conjoined tendon is sometimes divided into an outer and an inner portion, the former being called the **ligament of Hesselbach** (*ligamentum interfoveolare*) (Fig. 292), and the latter the **ligament of Henle** (Fig. 292). Sometimes the conjoined tendon is insufficient to resist the pressure from within, and is carried forward in front of the protrusion through the external ring, forming one of the coverings of direct inguinal hernia, or the hernia forces its way through the fibres of the conjoined tendon.

The **Cremaster** (Figs. 1114 and 1116) is derived from the lower margin of the Internal oblique, of which muscle it is in reality a portion. It is a thin muscular layer composed of a number of fasciculi. It arises by a thick external bundle of fibres from the upper portion of Poupart's ligament, being connected with the Internal oblique muscle and also occasionally with the Transversalis. It arises also by a thin inner bundle of fibres from the anterior layer of the rectus sheath.

The thick bundle of origin is on the lateral surface; the thin bundle is on the medial surface of the spermatic cord. The Cremaster passes along with the spermatic cord, and descends with it through the external ring. Upon the front and sides of the cord both bundles spread out upon the vaginal tunic of the testicle and epididymis, and form a series of loops which differ in thickness and length in different subjects. These loops are united together by areolar tissue, and form a thin covering over the cord and testis, the **cremasteric fascia** (*fascia cremasterica*).

It will be observed that the Cremaster is a separated portion of the Internal oblique. This fact affords an easy explanation of the manner in which the testicle and cord are invested by this muscle. At an early period of fœtal life the testis is placed at the lower and back part of the abdominal cavity, but during its descent toward the scrotum, which takes place before birth, it passes beneath the arched border of the Internal oblique. In its passage beneath this muscle some fibres are derived from its lower part, which accompany the testicle and cord into the scrotum.

It occasionally happens that the loops of the Cremaster surround the cord, some lying behind as well as in front. It is probable that under these circumstances the testis in its descent passes through, instead of beneath, the fibres of the Internal oblique.

In the descent of an oblique inguinal hernia, which takes the same course as the spermatic cord, the Cremaster muscle forms one of its coverings. This muscle becomes largely developed in cases of hydrocele and large old scrotal herniæ. No such muscle exists in the female, but an analogous structure is developed in those cases where an oblique inguinal hernia descends beneath the margin of the Internal oblique.

The Internal oblique should be detached from Poupart's ligament, separated from the Transversalis to the same extent as in the previous incisions, and reflected inward on to the sheath of the Rectus (Fig. 1117). The deep circumflex iliac vessels, which lie between these two muscles, form a valuable guide to their separation.

The **Transversalis Muscle** (Figs. 1115 and 1117) has been previously described (p. 442). The part which is now exposed is partly muscular and partly tendinous in structure; it arises from the outer third of Poupart's ligament, its fibres curve downward and inward, and are inserted, together with those of the Internal oblique, into the lower part of the linea alba, into the crest of the os pubis and the pectineal line, forming what is known as the conjoined tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis (Figs. 1116 and 1117). The **falx aponeurotica [inguinalis]** is a collection of fibres of tendinous consistence in the inner side of the Transversalis insertion. Between the lower border of this muscle and Poupart's ligament a space is left in which is seen the transversalis fascia.

The **Inguinal** or **Spermatic Canal** (*canalis inguinalis*) (Figs. 1114, 1115, and 1117) contains the spermatic cord in the male and the round ligament in the female. It is an oblique canal, about an inch and a half in length, directed downward and inward and placed parallel with, and a little above, Poupart's ligament. It commences above at the internal or deep abdominal ring, which is the point where

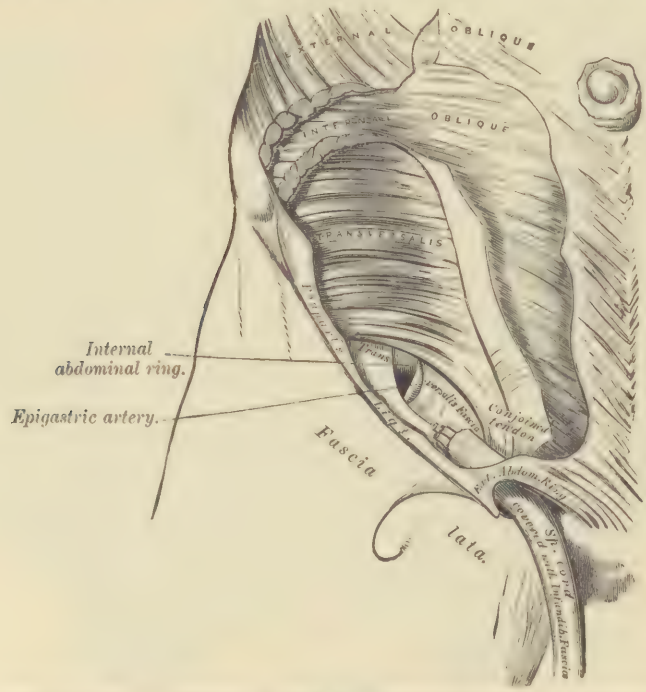


FIG. 1117.—Inguinal hernia. Dissection showing the Transversalis muscle, the transversalis fascia, and the internal abdominal ring.

the cord enters the inguinal canal, and terminates below at the external or superficial ring. It is bounded, *in front*, by the integument and superficial fascia, by the aponeurosis of the External oblique throughout its whole length, and by the Internal oblique for its outer third; *behind*, by the triangular fascia, the conjoined tendon of the Internal oblique and Transversalis, transversalis fascia, and the subperitoneal fat and peritoneum; *above*, by the arched fibres of the Internal oblique and Transversalis; *below*, by the union of the transversalis fascia with Poupart's ligament. That form of hernia in which the intestine follows the course of the spermatic cord along the inguinal canal is called **oblique inguinal hernia.**

On the posterior wall of the inguinal canal is seen the band of fibres known as the **ligament of Hesselbach** (*ligamentum interfoveolare* [*Hesselbachi*]) (Fig. 292). It is placed in front of the deep epigastric artery. The fibres come from the external portion of the lower fibres of the conjoined tendon (Fig. 1116) and pass

downward for a distance, some of them then passing outward and upward, some of them downward and inward to the inner surface of Poupart's ligament.

The **Transversalis Fascia** (Figs. 297, 1117, and 1125) is a thin aponeurotic membrane which lies between the inner surface of the Transversalis muscle and the peritoneum. It forms part of the general layer of fascia which lines the interior of the abdominal and pelvic cavities, and is directly continuous with the iliac and pelvic fasciae.

In the inguinal region the transversalis fascia is thick and dense in structure, and joined by fibres from the aponeurosis of the Transversalis muscle; but it becomes thin and cellular as it ascends to the Diaphragm. Below, it has the following attachments; external to the femoral vessels it is connected to the posterior margin of Poupart's ligament, and is there continuous with the iliac fascia. Internal to the vessels it is thin, and attached to the os pubis and pectineal line behind the conjoined tendon, with which it is united; and, corresponding to the points where the femoral vessels pass into the thigh, this fascia descends in front of them, forming the anterior wall of the femoral sheath. The spermatic cord in the male and the round ligament in the female pass through this fascia; the point where they pass through is called the internal or deep abdominal ring. This opening is not visible externally, owing to a prolongation of the transversalis fascia on the structures forming the infundibuliform fascia.

The **Internal** or **Deep Abdominal Ring** (*annulus inguinalis abdominalis*) (Figs. 297 and 1117) is situated in the transversalis fascia, midway between the anterior superior spine of the ilium and symphysis pubis, and about half an inch above Poupart's ligament. It is of an oval form, its long diameter being directed upward and downward; it varies in size in different subjects, and is much larger in the male than in the female. It is bounded above and externally by the arched fibres of the Transversalis muscle, below and internally by the deep epigastric vessels. It transmits the spermatic cord in the male and the round ligament in the female. From its circumference, a thin, funnel-shaped membrane, the **infundibuliform fascia,** is continued around the cord and testis, enclosing them in a distinct pouch (Fig. 1117). When the sac of an oblique inguinal hernia passes through the internal or deep abdominal ring, the infundibuliform fascia constitutes one of its coverings.

The Subperitoneal Areolar Tissue or the Fascia Propria of Cooper.—Between the transversalis fascia and the peritoneum is a quantity of loose areolar tissue. In some subjects it is of considerable thickness and loaded with adipose tissue. Opposite the internal ring it is continued around the surface of the cord, forming a loose sheath for it.

The **Deep Epigastic Artery** (Figs. 292 and 1118) *arises* from the external iliac artery a few lines above Poupart's ligament. It at first descends to reach this ligament, and then ascends obliquely along the inner margin of the internal or deep abdominal ring, lying between the transversalis fascia and the peritoneum, and passing upward pierces the transversalis fascia and enters the sheath of the Rectus muscle by passing over the **semilunar fold of Douglas.** Consequently the deep epigastric artery bears a very important relation to the internal abdominal ring as it passes obliquely upward and inward from its origin from the external iliac. In this part of its course it lies along the lower and inner margin of the internal ring and beneath the commencement of the spermatic cord. At its commencement it is crossed by the vas deferens in the male and by the round ligament in the female.

The **Peritoneum** (Fig. 1118), corresponding to the inner surface of the internal ring, presents a well-marked depression, the depth of which varies in different subjects. A thin fibrous band is continued from it along the front of the cord for a variable distance, and becomes ultimately lost, the **ligament of Cloquet.** This is the remains of the pouch of peritoneum which, in the fœtus, precedes

the cord and testis into the scrotum, the obliteration of which commences soon after birth. In some cases the fibrous band can only be traced a short distance, but occasionally it may be followed, as a fine cord, as far as the upper end of the **tunica vaginalis**. Sometimes the tube of peritoneum is closed only at intervals and presents a sacculated appearance, or a single pouch may extend along the whole length of the cord, which may be closed above, or the pouch may be directly continuous with the peritoneum by an opening at its upper part.

In the female fœtus the peritoneum is also prolonged in the form of a tubular process for a short distance into the inguinal canal. This process is called the **canal of Nuck**. It is generally obliterated in the adult, but sometimes it remains pervious even in advanced life.

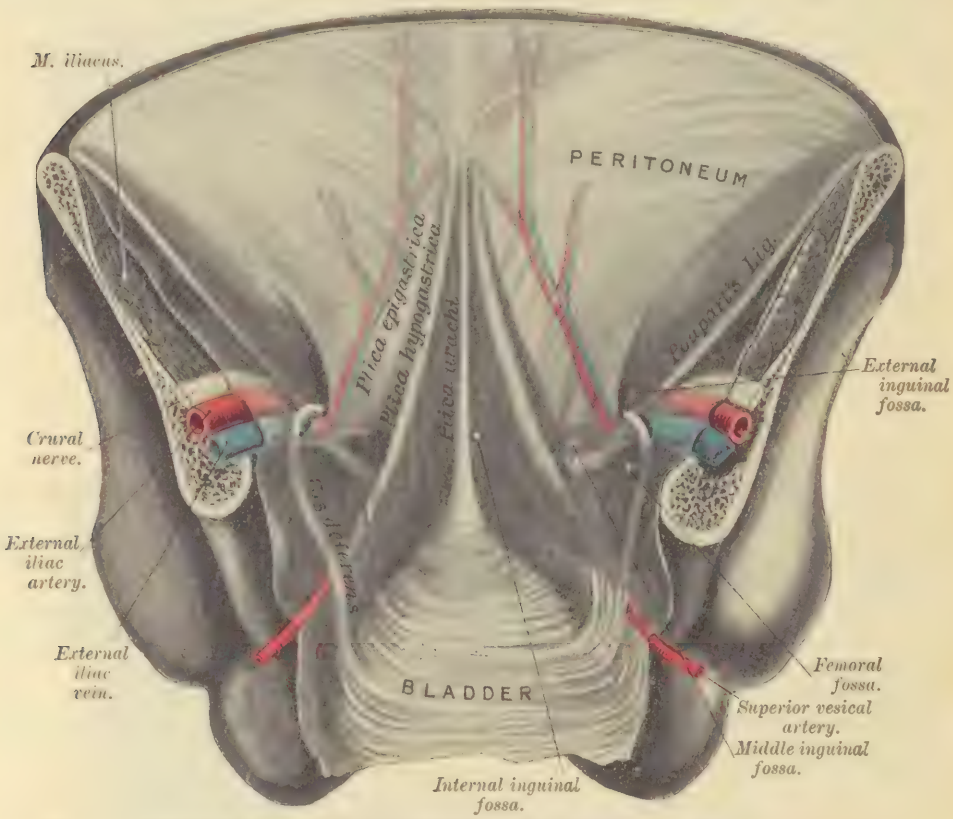


FIG. 1118.—Posterior view of the anterior abdominal wall in its lower half. The peritoneum is in place, and the various cords are shining through. (After Joessel.)

In order to understand the relation of the peritoneum to inguinal hernia, it is necessary to view the anterior abdominal wall from its internal aspect, when it will be seen as shown in Fig. 1118. Between the upper margin of the front of the pelvis and the umbilicus, the peritoneum, when viewed from behind, will be seen to be raised into five vertical folds, with intervening depressions, by more or less prominent bands which converge to the umbilicus. One of these is situated in the median line, and is caused by the urachus, the remnant of the allantois; it extends from the summit of the bladder to the umbilicus. The fold of peritoneum covering it is known as the **fold of the urachus** or the **plica urachi** (*plica umbilicalis media*). On either side of this is a prominent band, caused by the obliterated hypogastric artery, which extends from the side of the bladder obliquely upward and inward to the umbilicus. This is covered by a fold of peritoneum which is known as the

hypogastric fold or the **plica hypogastrica** (*plica umbilicalis lateralis*). To either side of these three cords is the deep epigastric artery, which ascends obliquely upward and inward from a point midway between the symphysis pubis and the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the **semilunar fold of Douglas**, in front of which it disappears. It is covered by a fold of peritoneum which is known as the **plica epigastrica.** Between these raised folds are depressions of the peritoneum, constituting so-called fossae. The most internal, between the plica urachi and the plica hypogastrica, is known as the **internal inguinal fossa** (*fovea supravesicalis*). The middle one is situated between the plica hypogastrica and the plica epigastrica, and is termed the **middle inguinal fossa** (*fovea inguinalis mesialis*). The external one is external to the plica epigastrica, and is known as the **external inguinal fossa** (*fovea inguinalis lateralis*). Occasionally the deep epigastric artery corresponds in position to the obliterated hypogastric artery, and then there is but one fold on each side of the middle line, and the two external fossae are merged into one. In the usual condition of the parts the floor of the external inguinal fossa corresponds to the internal abdominal ring, and into this fossa an oblique inguinal hernia descends. To the inner side of the plica epigastrica are the two internal fossae, and through either of these a direct hernia may descend, as will be explained in the sequel (p. 1523). The whole of this space, that is to say, the space between the deep epigastric artery, the margin of the Rectus and Poupart's ligament, is commonly known as **Hesselbach's triangle.** These three depressions or fossae are situated above the level of Poupart's ligament, and in addition to them is another below the ligament, corresponding to the position of the femoral ring, and into which a femoral hernia descends.

INGUINAL HERNIA.

Inguinal hernia is that form of protrusion which makes its way through the abdomen in the inguinal region.

There are two principal varieties of inguinal hernia—**external** or **oblique**, and **internal** or **direct.**

External or oblique inguinal hernia, the more frequent of the two, takes the same course as the spermatic cord. It is called *external* from the neck of the sac being on the outer or iliac side of the deep epigastric artery.

Internal or direct inguinal hernia does not follow the same course as the cord, but protrudes through the abdominal wall on the inner or pubic side of the deep epigastric artery.

Oblique Inguinal Hernia.

In oblique inguinal hernia (Fig. 1118) the intestine or omentum escapes from the abdominal cavity at the internal ring. Before it is a pouch of peritoneum, which forms the hernial sac (Fig. 1119, *A*). This pouch of peritoneum is invested by the **subserous areolar tissue**, and is enclosed in the **infundibuliform process of the transversalis fascia**, which it receives as it enters the inguinal canal. In passing along the inguinal canal the hernia displaces upward the arched fibres of the Transversalis and Internal oblique muscles, and is imperfectly surrounded by the fibres of the Cremaster muscles, the coat being completed by the **cremasteric fascia.** It then passes along the front of the cord, and escapes from the inguinal canal at the external ring, receiving an investment from the **intercolumnar fascia.** Lastly, it descends into the scrotum, receiving coverings from the **superficial fascia** and the **integument.**

The coverings of this form of hernia, after it has passed through the external ring, are, from without inward, the integument, superficial fascia, intercolumnar

fascia, Cremaster muscle and fascia, infundibuliform fascia, subserous areolar tissue, and peritoneum.

This form of hernia lies in front of the vessels of the spermatic cord and seldom extends below the testis, on account of the intimate adhesion of the coverings of the cord to the tunica vaginalis (Fig. 1120, *A*).

The **seat of stricture** in a strangulated oblique inguinal hernia is either at the external ring, in the inguinal canal, caused by the fibres of the Internal oblique or Transversalis; or at the internal ring, most frequently in the latter situation. If it is situated at the external ring, the division of a few fibres at one point of its circumference is all that is necessary for the replacement of the hernia. If in the inguinal canal or at the internal ring, it may be necessary to divide the

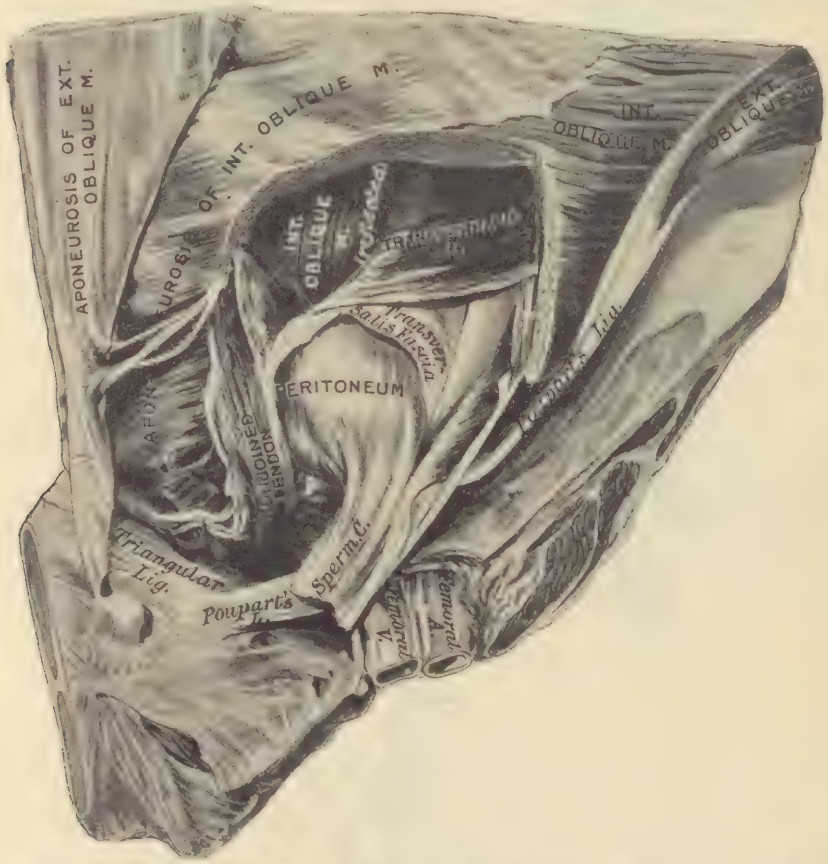


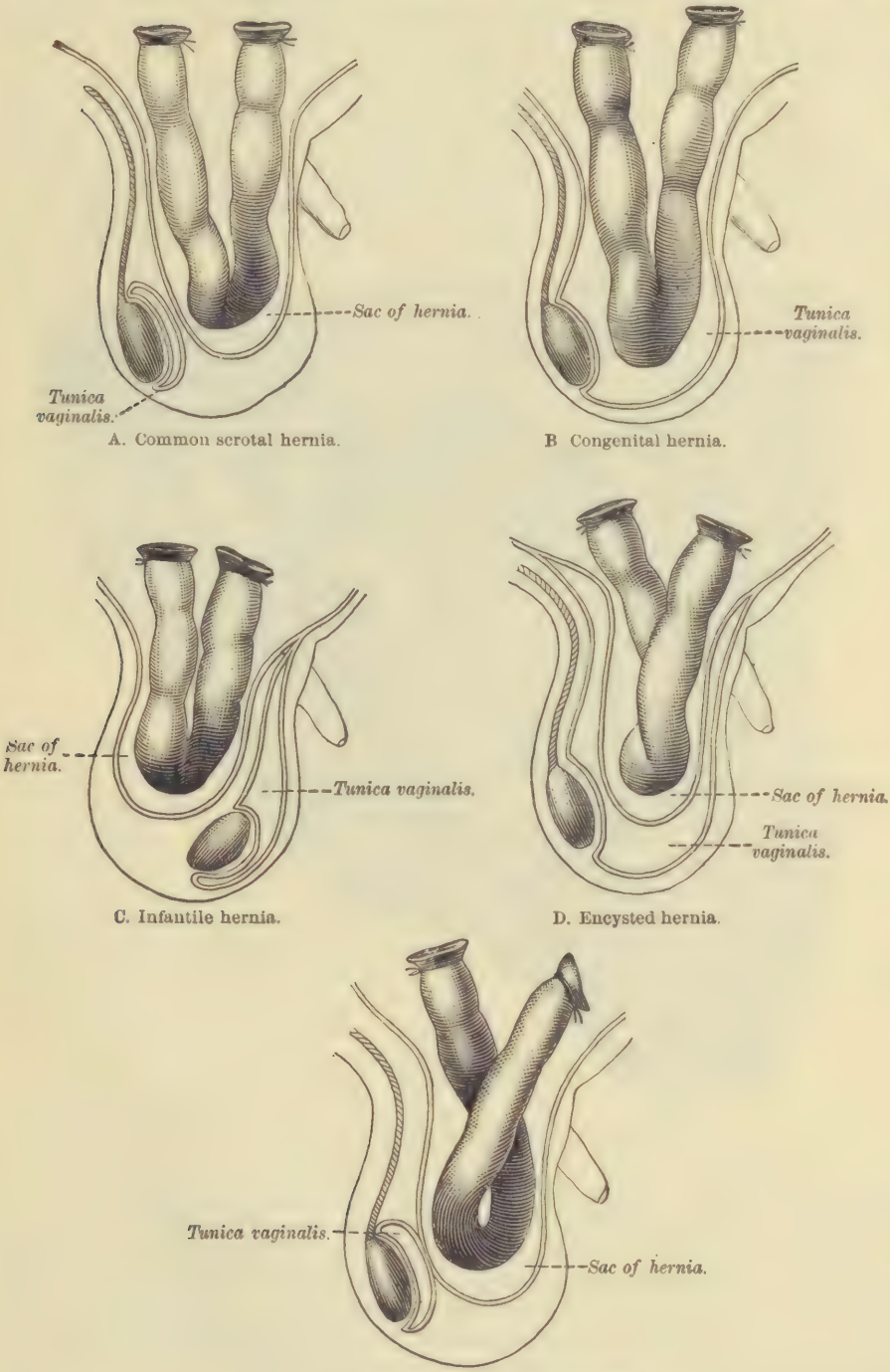
FIG. 1119.—Oblique inguinal hernia, showing its various coverings. (From a preparation in the Museum of the Royal College of Surgeons.)

aponeurosis of the External oblique so as to lay open the inguinal canal. In dividing the stricture the direction of the incision should be upward.

When the hernia passes along the inguinal canal and escapes from the external ring into the scrotum, the condition is called **complete oblique inguinal** or **scrotal hernia** (Fig. 1120, *A*). If the hernia does not escape from the external ring, but is retained in the inguinal canal, the condition is called **incomplete inguinal hernia** or **bubonocele**. In each of these cases the coverings which invest the intestine or omentum will depend upon the extent to which it descends in the inguinal canal.

There are some other varieties of oblique inguinal hernia depending upon congenital defects in the processus vaginalis. The testicle in its descent from the abdomen into the scrotum is preceded by a pouch of peritoneum, which about

the period of birth becomes shut off from the general peritoneal cavity by a closure of that portion of the pouch which extends from the internal abdominal ring to



A. Common scrotal hernia. B Congenital hernia.

C. Infantile hernia. D. Encysted hernia.

E Hernia into the funicular process

FIG. 1120.—Varieties of oblique inguinal hernia

near the upper part of the testicle, the lower portion of the pouch remaining persistent as the tunica vaginalis. It would appear that this closure commences at

two points—viz., at the internal abdominal ring and at the top of the epididymis—and gradually extends until, in the normal condition, the whole of the intervening portion is converted into a fibrous cord. From failure in the completion of this process variations in the relation of the hernial protrusion to the testicle and tunica vaginalis are produced, which constitute distinct varieties of inguinal hernia, and which have received separate names and are of surgical importance. These are **congenital, infantile, encysted,** and **hernia of the funicular process.**

Congenital Hernia (Fig. 1120, *B*).—Where the congenital pouch of peritoneum which precedes the cord and testis in its descent remains patent throughout and is unclosed at any point, the cavity of the tunica vaginalis communicates directly with the cavity of the peritoneum. The intestine descends along this pouch into the cavity of the tunica vaginalis, which constitutes the sac of the hernia, and the gut lies in contact with the testicle.

Infantile and Encysted Hernia.—Where the congenital pouch of peritoneum is occluded at the internal ring only, but remains patent throughout the rest of its extent, two varieties of oblique inguinal hernia may be produced, which have received the names of infantile and encysted hernia. In the **infantile form** (Fig. 1120, *C*) the septum which closed the congenital sac above and the peritoneum in its immediate neighborhood yields and forms a sac, which descends behind the tunica vaginalis, so that in front of the bowel there are three layers of peritoneum, the two layers of the tunica vaginalis and the layer of the proper hernial sac. In the **encysted form** (Fig. 1120, *D*) yielding occurs in the same position as in the infantile form—namely, at the occluded spot in the pouch—and a sac forms which projects *into* and not *behind* the tunica vaginalis, as in the infantile form, and thus it constitutes a sac within a sac, so that in front of the bowel there are two layers of peritoneum—one layer of the tunica vaginalis and one of true hernial sac.

Hernia into the Funicular Process (Fig. 1120, *E*).—Where the congenital pouch of peritoneum is occluded at the lower point only—that is, just above the testicle—the intestine descends into the pouch of peritoneum as far as the testicle, but is prevented from entering the sac of the tunica vaginalis by the septum which has formed between it and the pouch, so that it resembles the congenital form in all respects, except that, instead of enveloping the testicle, that body can be felt below the rupture.

Direct Inguinal Hernia.

In direct inguinal hernia the protrusion makes its way through some part of the abdominal wall internal to the epigastric artery.

At the lower part of the abdominal wall is a triangular space, **Hesselbach's triangle**, bounded externally by the deep epigastric artery, internally by the margin of the Rectus muscle, below by Poupart's ligament (Fig. 1118). The conjoined tendon is stretched across the inner two-thirds of this space, the remaining portion of the space having only the subperitoneal areolar tissue and the transversalis fascia between the peritoneum and the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle.

In some cases the hernial protrusion escapes from the abdomen on the outer side of the conjoined tendon, pushing before it the peritoneum, the subserous areolar tissue, and the transversalis fascia. It then enters the inguinal canal, passing along nearly its whole length, and finally emerges from the external ring, receiving an investment from the intercolumnar fascia. The coverings of this form of hernia are precisely similar to those investing the oblique form, with the insignificant difference that the infundibuliform fascia is replaced by a portion derived from the general layer of the transversalis fascia.

In other cases—and this is the more frequent variety—the hernia is either forced through the fibres of the conjoined tendon or the tendon is gradually distended in

front of it so as to form a complete investment for it. The intestine then enters the lower end of the inguinal canal, escapes at the external ring lying on the inner side of the cord, and receives additional coverings from the superficial fascia and the integument. This form of hernia has the same coverings as the oblique variety, excepting that the conjoined tendon is substituted for the Cremaster, and the infundibuliform fascia is replaced by a portion derived from the general layer of the transversalis fascia.

The difference between the position of the neck of the sac in these two forms of direct inguinal hernia has been referred, with some probability, to a difference in the relative positions of the obliterated hypogastric artery and the deep epigastric artery. When the course of the obliterated hypogastric artery corresponds pretty nearly with that of the deep epigastric the projection of these arteries toward the cavity of the abdomen produces two fossae in the peritoneum. The bottom of the external fossa of the peritoneum corresponds to the position of the internal abdominal ring, and a hernia which distends and pushes out the peritoneum lining this fossa is an oblique hernia. When, on the other hand, the obliterated hypogastric artery lies considerably to the inner side of the deep epigastric artery, corresponding to the outer margin of the conjoined tendon, it divides the triangle of Hesselbach into two parts, so that three depressions will be seen on the inner surface of the lower part of the abdominal wall—viz., an external one on the outer side of the deep epigastric artery; a middle one, between the deep epigastric and the obliterated hypogastric arteries; and an internal one, on the inner side of the obliterated hypogastric artery (pp. 1519 and 1520). In such a case a hernia may distend and push out the peritoneum forming the bottom of either fossa. These fossae are the **inguinal fossae.** When the hernia distends and pushes out the peritoneum forming the bottom of the external fossa, it is an oblique or external inguinal hernia.

When the hernia distends and pushes out the peritoneum forming the bottom of either the middle or the internal fossa, it is a direct or internal hernia.

The anatomical difference between these two forms of direct or internal inguinal hernia is that, when the hernia protrudes through the middle fossa—that is, the fossa between the deep epigastric and the obliterated hypogastric arteries—it will enter the upper part of the inguinal canal; consequently its coverings will be the same as those of an oblique hernia, with the insignificant difference that the infundibuliform fascia is replaced by a portion derived from the general layer of the transversalis fascia, whereas when the hernia protrudes through the internal fossa it is either forced through the fibres of the conjoined tendon or the tendon is gradually distended in front of it so as to form a complete investment for it. The intestine then enters the lower part of the inguinal canal, and escapes from the external abdominal ring lying on the inner side of the cord.

This form of hernia has the same coverings as the oblique variety, excepting that the conjoined tendon is substituted for the Cremaster, and the infundibuliform fascia is replaced by a portion derived from the general layer of the fascia transversalis.

The **seat of stricture** in **strangulation** in both varieties of direct hernia is most frequently at the neck of the sac or at the external ring. In that form of hernia which perforates the conjoined tendon it not unfrequently occurs at the edges of the fissure through which the gut passes. In dividing the stricture the incision should in all cases be directed upward.[1]

If the hernial protrusion passes into the inguinal canal, but does not escape

[1] In all cases of inguinal hernia, whether oblique or direct, it is proper to divide the stricture directly upward: the reason of this is obvious, for by cutting in this direction the incision is made parallel to the deep epigastric artery—either external to it in the oblique variety, or internal to it in the direct form of hernia—and thus all chance of wounding the vessel is avoided. If the incision was made outward, the artery might be divided if the hernia was direct; and if made inward, the vessel would stand an equal chance of injury if the case was one of oblique inguinal hernia.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

from the external abdominal ring, it forms what is called **incomplete direct hernia.** This form of hernia is usually of small size, and in corpulent persons is very difficult of detection.

Direct inguinal hernia is of much less frequent occurrence than the oblique, their comparative frequency being, according to Cloquet, as one to five. It occurs far more frequently in men than in women, on account of the larger size of the external ring in the former sex. It differs from the oblique in its smaller size and globular form, dependent most probably on the resistance offered to its progress by the transversalis fascia and conjoined tendon. It differs also in its position, being placed over the os pubis and not in the course of the inguinal canal. The deep epigastric artery runs on the outer or iliac side of the neck of the sac, and the spermatic cord along its external and posterior side, not directly behind it, as in oblique inguinal hernia.

FEMORAL HERNIA.

The dissection of the parts comprised in the anatomy of femoral hernia should be performed, if possible, upon a female subject free from fat. The subject should lie upon the back; a block is first placed under the pelvis, the thigh everted, and the knees slightly bent and retained in this position. An incision should then be made from the anterior superior spinous process of the ilium along Poupart's ligament to the symphysis pubis; a second incision should be carried transversely across the thigh about six inches beneath the preceding; and these are to be connected together by a vertical one carried along the inner side of the thigh (Fig. 340). These several incisions should divide merely the integument; this is to be reflected outward, when the superficial fascia will be exposed.

The **Superficial Fascia** forms a continuous layer over the whole of the thigh, consisting of areolar tissue, containing in its meshes much fat, and capable of being separated into two or more layers, between which are found the superficial vessels and nerves. It varies in thickness in different parts of the limb. In the groin it is thick, and the two layers are separated from one another by the superficial inguinal lymphatic glands, the internal saphenous vein, and several smaller vessels. One of these layers, the superficial, is continuous with the superficial fascia of the abdomen.

The superficial layer should be detached by dividing it across in the same direction as the external incisions; its removal will be facilitated by commencing at the lower and inner angle of the space, detaching it at first from the front of the internal saphenous vein, and dissecting it off from the anterior surface of that vessel and its tributaries; it should then be reflected outward in the same manner as the integument. The cutaneous vessels and nerves and superficial inguinal glands are then exposed, lying upon the deep layer of the superficial fascia. These are the internal saphenous vein and the superficial epigastric, superficial circumflex iliac, and superficial external pudic vessels, as well as numerous lymphatics, ascending with the saphenous vein to the inguinal glands.

The **internal** or **long saphenous vein** (Figs. 1121, 1122, and 1123) ascends along the inner side of the thigh, and, passing through the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, terminates in the femoral vein about an inch and a half below Poupart's ligament (Fig. 1113). This vein receives at the saphenous opening the superficial epigastric, the superficial circumflex iliac, and the superficial external pudic veins.

The **superficial external pudic artery** (superior) *arises* from the inner side of the femoral artery, and, after passing through the saphenous opening, courses inward across the spermatic cord, to be distributed to the integument on the lower part of the abdomen, the penis and scrotum in the male and the labium in the female, anastomosing with branches of the internal pudic.

The **superficial epigastric artery** *arises* from the femoral about half an inch below Poupart's ligament, and, passing through the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, ascends on to the abdomen, in the superficial fascia covering the External oblique muscle, nearly as high as the umbilicus. It distributes branches

to the superficial inguinal lymphatic glands, the superficial fascia, and the integument, anastomosing with branches of the deep epigastric and internal mammary arteries.

The **superficial circumflex iliac artery**, the smallest of the cutaneous branches, arises close to the preceding, and, piercing the fascia lata, runs outward, parallel with Poupart's ligament, as far as the crest of the ilium, dividing into branches which supply the superficial inguinal lymphatic glands, the superficial fascia, and the integument of the groin, anastomosing with the deep circumflex iliac, and with the gluteal and external circumflex arteries.

The Superficial Veins (Fig. 1121).—The veins accompanying these superficial arteries are usually much larger than the arteries; they terminate in the internal or long saphenous vein at the saphenous opening.

The **superficial inguinal lymphatic glands.**—See p. 793.

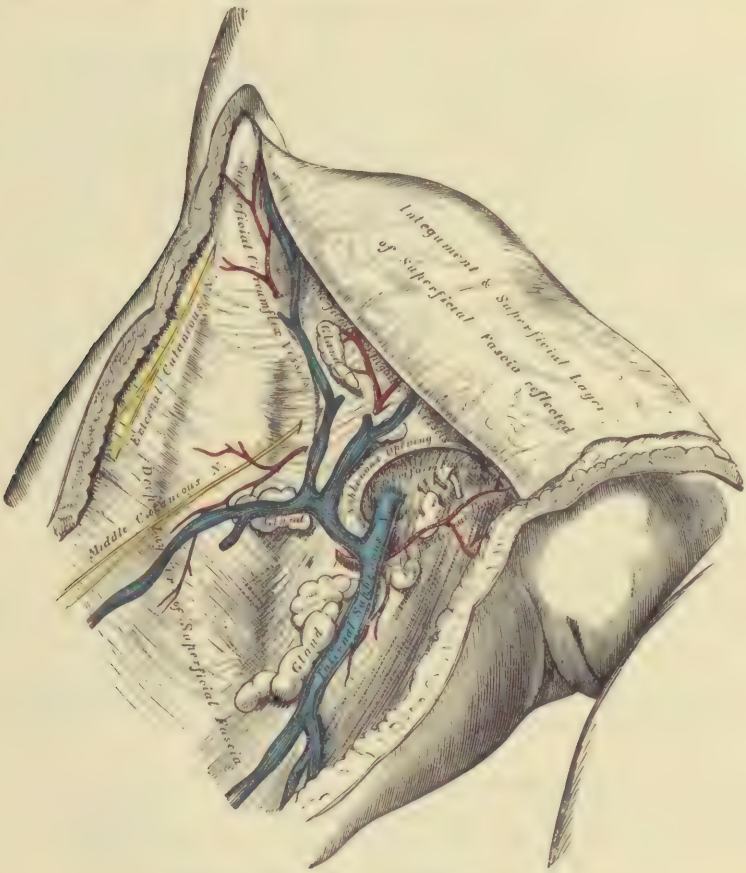


FIG. 1121.—Femoral hernia. Superficial dissection.

The **ilio-inguinal nerve** arises from the first lumbar nerve. It escapes at the external abdominal ring, and is distributed to the integument of the upper and inner part of the thigh—to the scrotum in the male and to the labium in the female. The size of this nerve is in inverse proportion to that of the ilio-hypogastric nerve. Occasionally it is very small, and ends by joining the ilio-hypogastric; in such cases a branch of the ilio-hypogastric takes the place of the ilio-inguinal, or the latter nerve may be altogether absent. The **crural branch of the genito-crural nerve** passes along the inner margin of the Psoas muscle, beneath Poupart's ligament, into the thigh, entering the sheath of the femoral vessels, and lying

superficial and a little external to the femoral artery. It pierces the anterior layer of the sheath of the vessels, and, becoming superficial by passing through the fascia lata, it supplies the skin of the anterior aspect of the thigh as far as midway between the pelvis and knee. On the front of the thigh it communicates with the outer branch of the middle cutaneous nerve, derived from the anterior crural.

The **Deep Layer of the Superficial Fascia** is a very thin fibrous layer, best marked on the inner side of the long saphenous vein and below Poupart's ligament. It is placed beneath the subcutaneous vessels and nerves, and upon the surface of the fascia lata, to which it is intimately adherent at the lower margin of Poupart's ligament. It covers the saphenous opening in the fascia lata, is closely united to its circumference, and is connected to the sheath of the femoral vessels corre-

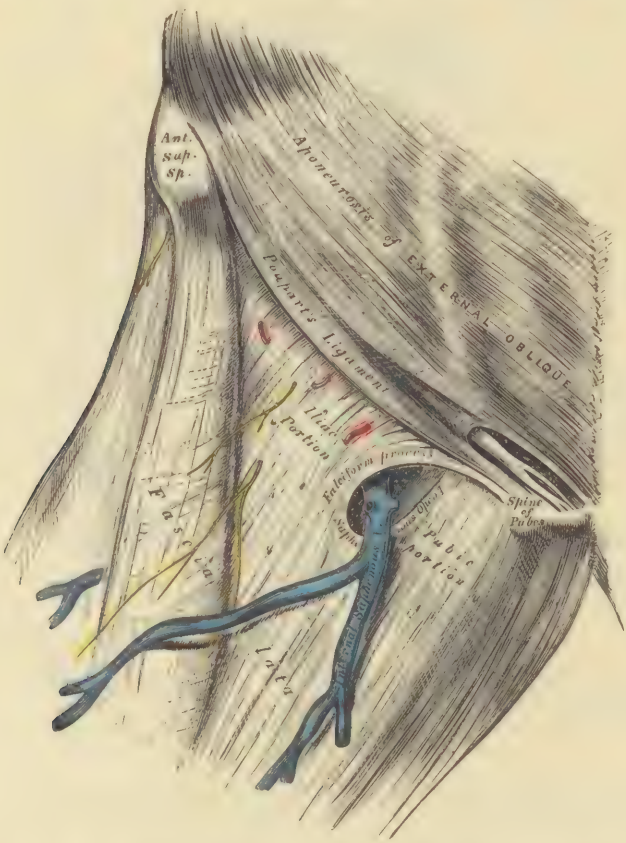


FIG. 1122.—Femoral hernia, showing fascia lata and saphenous opening.

sponding to its under surface. The portion of fascia covering this aperture is perforated by the internal saphenous vein and by numerous blood- and lymphatic vessels; hence it has been termed the **cribriform fascia**, the openings for these vessels having been likened to the holes in a sieve. The cribriform fascia adheres closely both to the superficial fascia and to the fascia lata, so that it is described by some anatomists as a part of the fascia lata, but it is usually considered (as in this work) as belonging to the superficial fascia. It is not till the cribriform fascia has been cleared away that the saphenous opening is seen, so that this opening does not in ordinary cases exist naturally, but is the result of dissection (p. 513). A femoral hernia in passing through the saphenous opening receives the cribriform fascia as one of its coverings.

The deep layer of superficial fascia, together with the cribriform fascia, having been removed, the fascia lata is exposed.

The **Fascia Lata** has been already described with the muscles of the front of the thigh (p. 513). At the upper and inner part of the thigh, a little below Poupart's ligament, a large oval-shaped aperture is observed after the superficial fascia has been cleared away; it transmits the internal saphenous vein and other smaller vessels, and is called the **saphenous opening** (Fig. 1113). In order the more correctly to consider the mode of formation of this aperture, the fascia lata in this part of the thigh is described as consisting of two portions, an **iliac portion** and a **pubic portion.**

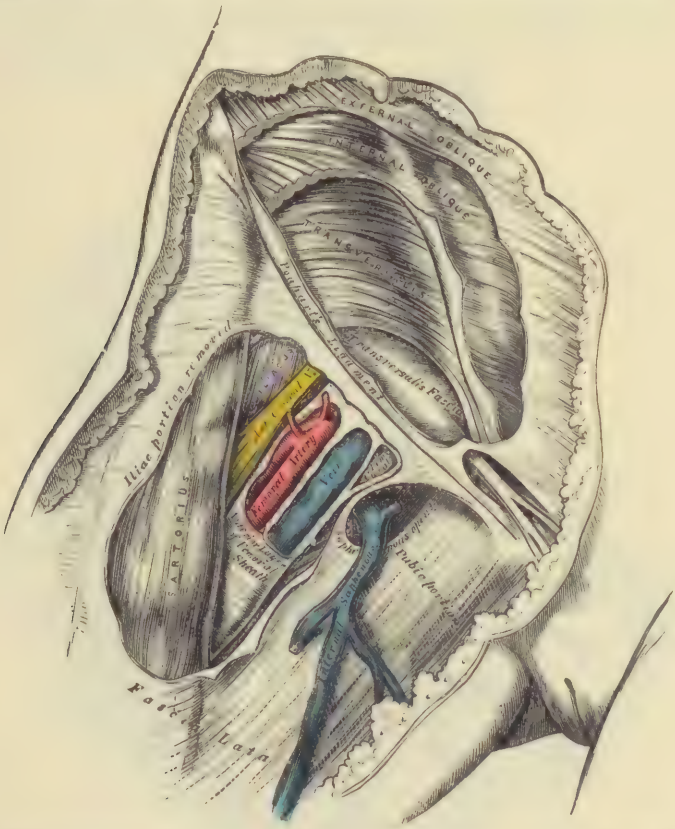


Fig. 1123.—Femoral hernia. Iliac portion of fascia lata removed, and sheath of femoral vessels and femoral canal exposed.

The **iliac portion** (Fig. 1122) is all that part of the fascia lata on the outer side of the saphenous opening. It is attached externally to the crest of the ilium and its anterior superior spine; to the whole length of Poupart's ligament; and to the pectineal line in conjunction with Gimbernat's ligament. From the spine of the os pubis it is reflected downward and outward, forming an arched margin, the **outer boundary** or **falciform process** or **superior cornu** (*cornu superius*) (Fig. 1122) of the saphenous opening. This margin overlies and is adherent to the anterior layer of the sheath of the femoral vessels; to its edge is attached the cribriform fascia, and below it is continuous with the pubic portion of the fascia lata.

The **pubic portion of the fascia lata** or the **pectineal fascia** (Fig. 1122) is situated at the inner side of the saphenous opening; at the lower margin of this aperture it is continuous with the iliac portion; traced upward, it covers the surface of the Pectineus, Adductor longus, and Gracilis muscles; and, passing behind the

sheath of the femoral vessels, to which it is loosely united, is continuous with the sheath of the Psoas and Iliacus muscles, and is attached above to the ilio-pectineal line, where it becomes continuous with the fascia covering the Iliacus muscle. From the description it may be observed that the iliac portion of the fascia lata passes in front of the femoral vessels and the pubic portion behind them, so that an apparent aperture consequently exists between the two, through which the internal saphenous vein joins the femoral vein.

The **Saphenous Opening** (*fossa ovalis*) (Figs. 1113, 1121, 1122, and 1123) is an oval-shaped aperture measuring about an inch and a half in length and half an inch in width. It is situated at the upper and inner parts of the front of the thigh, below Poupart's ligament, and is directed obliquely downward and outward. It is covered by the **cribriform fascia** (*fascia cribrosa*), a portion of the deep layer of the superficial fascia of the thigh, and which extends from the falciform margin to the pubic portion of the fascia lata or the pectineal fascia.

The **outer margin** of the saphenous opening is of a semilunar form, thin, strong, sharply defined, and lies on a plane considerably anterior to the inner margin. If this edge is traced upward, it will be seen to form a curved elongated process, the **falciform process** or **superior cornu** (Fig. 1122), which ascends in front of the femoral vessels, and, curving inward, is attached to Poupart's ligament and to the spine of the os pubis and pectineal line, where it is continuous with the pubic portion. If traced downward, it is found continuous with another curved margin, the concavity of which is directed upward and inward; this is the inferior cornu of the saphenous opening, and is blended with the pubic portion of the fascia lata covering the Pectineus muscle.

The **inner boundary of the opening** (Figs. 1113 and 1122) is on a plane posterior to the outer margin and behind the level of the femoral vessels; it is much less prominent and defined than the outer, from being stretched over the subjacent Pectineus muscle. It is through the saphenous opening that a femoral hernia passes after descending along the crural canal.

If the finger is introduced into the saphenous opening while the limb is moved in different directions, the aperture will be found to be greatly constricted on extending the limb or rotating it outward, and to be relaxed on flexing the limb and inverting it; hence the necessity for placing the limb in the latter position in employing the taxis for the reduction of a femoral hernia.

The iliac portion of the fascia lata, but not its falciform process, should now be removed by detaching it from the lower margin of Poupart's ligament, carefully dissecting it from the subjacent structures, and turning it inward, when the sheath of the femoral vessels is exposed, descending beneath Poupart's ligament (Fig. 1123).

Poupart's Ligament (*ligamentum inguinale* [*Pouparti*]) (Figs. 289, 1113, 1116, 1117, 1119, 1122, 1123, 1124, and 1125) is the lower border of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle, which extends from the anterior superior spine of the ilium to the spine of the os pubis. From this latter point it is reflected outward, to be attached to the pectineal line for about half an inch, forming **Gimbernat's ligament**. Its general direction is curved downward toward the thigh, where it is continuous with the fascia lata. Its outer half is rounded and oblique in direction. Its inner half gradually widens at its attachment to the os pubis, is more horizontal in direction, and lies beneath the spermatic cord. Nearly the whole of the space included between Poupart's ligament and the innominate bone is filled in by the parts which descend from the abdomen into the thigh (Figs. 297, 340, and 1124). The outer half of the space (*lacuna musculorum*) is occupied by the Iliacus and Psoas muscles, together with the external cutaneous and anterior crural nerves. The pubic half of the space (*lacuna vasorum*) is occupied by the femoral vessels included in their sheath, a small oval-shaped interval existing between the femoral vein and the inner wall of the sheath,

which is occupied merely by a little loose areolar tissue, a few lymphatic vessels, and occasionally by a small lymphatic gland; this is the femoral ring, through which the gut descends in femoral hernia. The part of Poupart's ligament in front of the femoral or crural ring is called the **superficial crural arch.**

Gimbernat's Ligament (*ligamentum lacunare* [*Gimbernati*]) (Figs. 297, 340, 1113, 1124, and 1125) is that part of the aponeurosis of the External oblique muscle which is reflected backward and outward from the spine of the os pubis, to be inserted into the pectineal line. It is about half an inch in length, larger in the male than in the female, almost horizontal in direction in the erect posture, and of a triangular form, with the base directed outward. Its **base** or **outer margin** is concave, thin, and sharp, and lies in contact with the femoral sheath. Its **apex** corresponds to the spine of the os pubis. Its **posterior margin** is attached to the pectineal line, and is continuous with the pubic portion of the fascia lata. Its **anterior margin** is continuous with Poupart's ligament.

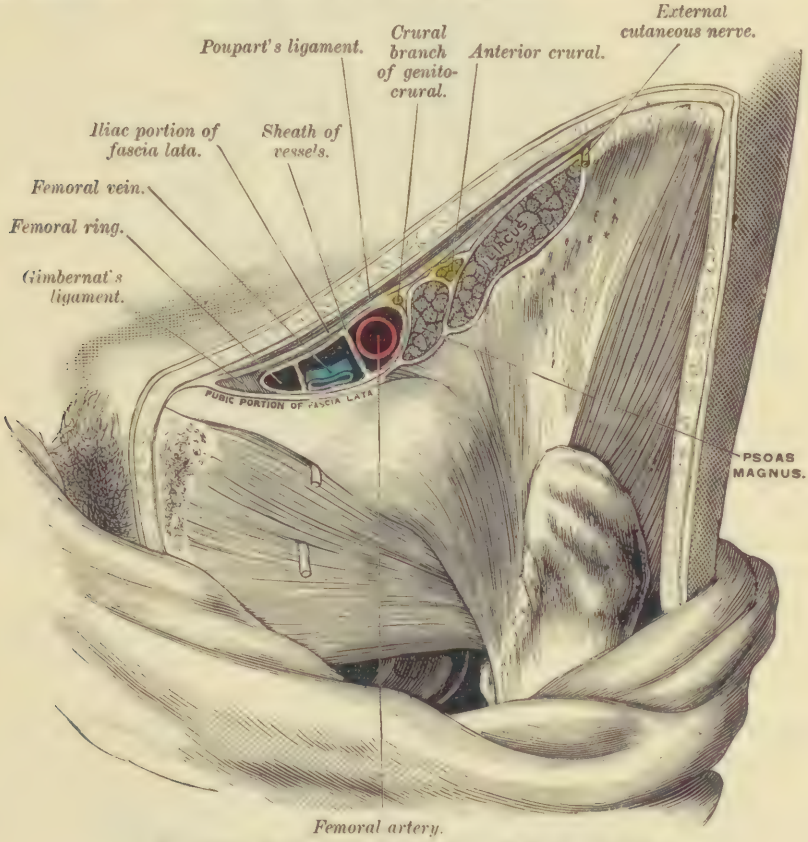


FIG. 1124.—Structures which pass beneath the crural arch.

Femoral Sheath (Fig. 1124). —The femoral or **crural sheath** is a continuation downward of the fasciae that line the abdomen, the **transversalis fascia** passing down in front of the femoral vessels, and the **iliac fascia** descending behind them; these fasciae are directly continuous on the iliac side of the femoral artery, but a small space exists between the femoral vein and the point where they are continuous on the pubic side of that vessel, which constitutes the **femoral** or **crural canal** (Fig. 1113). The femoral sheath is closely adherent to the contained vessels about an inch below the saphenous opening, being blended with the areolar sheath of the vessels, but opposite Poupart's ligament it is much larger than is required to contain them; hence the funnel-shaped form which it presents. The outer border of the sheath

is perforated by the genito-crural nerve. Its inner border is pierced by the internal saphenous vein and numerous lymphatic vessels. In front it is covered by the iliac portion of the fascia lata; and behind it is the pubic portion of the same fascia.

If the anterior wall of the sheath is removed (Fig. 1113), the femoral artery and vein are seen lying side by side, a thin septum separating the two vessels, while another septum may be seen lying just internal to the vein, and cutting off a small space between the vein and the inner wall of the sheath. The septa are stretched between the anterior and posterior walls of the sheath, so that each vessel is enclosed in a separate compartment. The interval left between the vein and the inner wall of the sheath is not filled up by any structure, excepting a little loose areolar tissue, a few lymphatic vessels, and occasionally by a small lymphatic gland; this is the **femoral** or **crural canal** (Fig. 1113), through which the intestine descends in femoral hernia.

Deep Crural Arch.—Passing across the front of the femoral sheath on the abdominal side of Poupart's ligament, and closely connected with it, is a thickened band of fibres of the transversalis fascia, called the **deep crural arch**. It is apparently a thickening of the transversalis fascia, joining externally to the centre of Poupart's ligament, and arching across the front of the crural sheath, to be inserted by a broad attachment into the pectineal line behind the conjoined tendon. In some subjects this structure is not very prominently marked, and not infrequently it is altogether wanting. The **superficial crural arch** is the portion of Poupart's ligament in front of the femoral ring.

The **Femoral** or **Crural Canal** (*canalis femoralis*) (Figs. 297, 340, and 1113) is the narrow interval between the femoral vein and the inner wall of the femoral sheath. It exists as a distinct canal only when the sheath has been separated from the vein by dissection or by the pressure of a hernia or tumor. Its length is from a quarter to half an inch, and it extends from the femoral ring to the upper part of the saphenous opening.

Its **anterior wall** is very narrow, and formed by a continuation downward of the transversalis fascia, under Poupart's ligament, covered by the falciform process of the fascia lata.

Its **posterior wall** is formed by a continuation downward of the iliac fascia covering the pubic portion of the fascia lata.

Its **outer wall** is formed by the fibrous septum separating it from the inner side of the femoral vein.

Its **inner wall** is formed by the junction of the processes of the transversalis and iliac fasciae, which form the inner side of the femoral sheath, and lies in contact at its commencement with the outer edge of Gimbernat's ligament.

This canal has two orifices—an upper one, the **femoral** or **crural ring**, closed by the septum crurale; and a lower one, the **saphenous opening**, closed by the cribriform fascia.

The **femoral** or **crural ring** (*annulus femoralis*) (Figs. 1113, 1124, and 1125) is the upper opening of the femoral canal, and leads into the cavity of the abdomen. It is bounded in front by Poupart's ligament and the deep crural arch; behind, by the os pubis, covered by the Pectineus muscle and the pubic portion of the fascia lata; internally, by the base of Gimbernat's ligament, the conjoined tendon, the transversalis fascia, and the deep crural arch; externally, by the fibrous septum lying on the inner side of the femoral vein. The femoral ring is of an oval form; its long diameter, directed transversely, measures about half an inch, and it is larger in the female than in the male, which is one of the reasons of the greater frequency of femoral hernia in the former sex.

Position of Parts around the Ring.—The spermatic cord in the male and round ligament in the female lie immediately above the anterior margin of the

femoral ring, and may be divided in an operation for femoral hernia if the incision for the relief of the stricture is not of limited extent. In the female this is of little importance, but in the male the spermatic artery and vas deferens may be divided.

The **femoral vein** lies on the outer side of the ring.

The **deep epigastric artery** in its passage upward and inward from the external iliac artery passes across the upper and outer angle of the crural ring, and is consequently in danger of being wounded if the stricture is divided in a direction upward and outward.

The **communicating branch** between the deep epigastric and obturator lies in front of the ring.

The circumference of the ring is thus seen to be bounded by vessels in every part, excepting internally and behind (Fig. 1125). It is in the former position that the stricture is divided in cases of strangulated femoral hernia.

The **obturator artery** (p. 688), when it arises by a common trunk with the deep epigastric (p. 689), which occurs once in every three subjects and a half, bears a very important relation to the crural ring. In most cases it descends on the

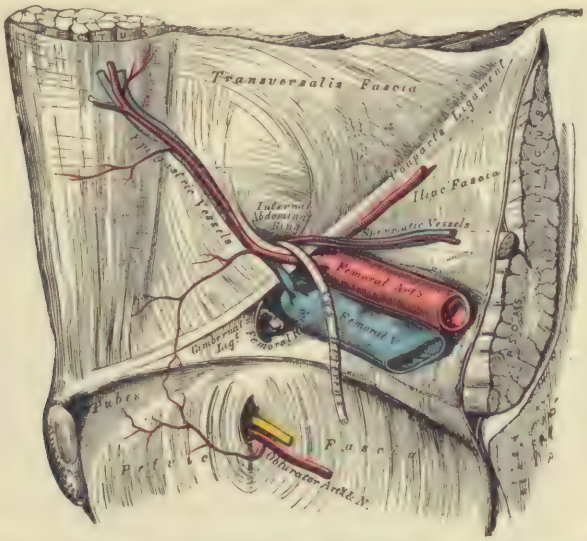


FIG. 1125.—Hernia. The relations of the femoral and internal abdominal rings, seen from within the abdomen. Right side.

inner side of the external iliac vein to the obturator foramen, and will consequently lie on the outer side of the crural ring, where there is no danger of its being wounded in the operation for dividing the stricture in femoral hernia (Fig. 427 *A*, p. 689). Occasionally, however, the obturator artery curves along the free margin of Gimbernat's ligament in its passage to the obturator foramen; it would consequently skirt along the greater part of the circumference of the crural ring, and could hardly avoid being wounded in the operation (Fig. 427 *B*, p. 689).

The Crural Septum or Septum Crurale (*septum femorale musculus*) (Fig. 297).—The femoral ring is closed by a thin process of transversalis fascia containing fat and called, by J. Cloquet, the **septum crurale**. This serves as a barrier to the protrusion of a hernia through this part. Its upper surface is slightly concave, and supports a small lymphatic gland (Fig. 1125), by which it is separated from the subserous areolar tissue and peritoneum. Its under surface is turned toward the femoral canal. The septum crurale is perforated by numerous apertures for the passage of lymphatic vessels connecting the deep inguinal lymphatic glands with those surrounding the external iliac artery.

The size of the femoral canal, the degree of tension of its orifices, and consequently the degree of constriction of a hernia, vary according to the position of the limb. If the leg and thigh are extended, abducted, or everted, the femoral canal and its orifices are rendered tense from the traction on these parts by Poupart's ligament and the fascia lata, as may be ascertained by passing the finger along the canal. If, on the contrary, the thigh is flexed upon the pelvis, and at the same time adducted and rotated inward, the femoral canal and its orifices become considerably relaxed; for this reason the limb should always be placed in the latter position when the application of the taxis is made in attempting the reduction of a femoral hernia.

The **subperitoneal areolar tissue** is continuous with the subserous areolar tissue of surrounding parts. It is usually thickest and most fibrous where the iliac vessels leave the abdominal cavity. It covers over the femoral ring, the small interval on the inner side of the femoral vein. In some subjects it contains a considerable amount of adipose tissue. In such cases, where it is protruded forward in front of the sac of a femoral hernia, it may be mistaken for a portion of omentum. The peritoneum lining the portion of the abdominal wall between Poupart's ligament and the brim of the pelvis is similar to that lining any other portion of the abdominal wall, being very thin. Here there is no natural aperture for the escape of intestine.

Descent of the Hernia.—From the preceding description it follows that the femoral ring must be a weak point in the abdominal wall; hence it is that when violent or long-continued pressure is made upon the abdominal viscera a portion of intestine may be forced into it, constituting a femoral hernia; and the changes in the tissues of the abdomen which are produced by pregnancy, together with the larger size of this aperture in the female, serve to explain the frequency of this form of hernia in women.

When a portion of the intestine passes through the femoral ring, a pouch of peritoneum lies before it, which forms what is called the **hernial sac**; it is covered by the subserous areolar tissue, receives an investment from the septum crurale, and descends vertically along the crural canal in the inner compartment of the sheath of the femoral vessels as far as the saphenous opening; at this point it changes its course, being prevented from extending farther down the sheath on account of the narrowing of the sheath and its close contact with the vessels, and also from the close attachment of the superficial fascia and crural sheath to the lower part of the circumference of the saphenous opening; the hernia is consequently directed forward, pushing before it the cribriform fascia, and then curves upward on to the falciform process of the fascia lata and lower part of the tendon of the External oblique, being covered by the superficial fascia and integument. While the hernia is contained in the femoral canal it is usually of small size, owing to the resisting nature of the surrounding parts; but when it has escaped from the saphenous opening into the loose areolar tissue of the groin, it becomes considerably enlarged. The direction taken by a femoral hernia in its descent is at first downward, then forward and upward; this should be borne in mind, as in the application of the taxis for the reduction of a femoral hernia pressure should be directed in the reverse order.

Coverings of the Complete Hernia.—The coverings of a femoral hernia, from within outward, are—peritoneum, subserous areolar tissue, the septum crurale, crural sheath, cribriform fascia, superficial fascia, and integument.[1]

[1] Sir Astley Cooper has described an investment for femoral hernia, under the name of "fascia propria," lying immediately external to the peritoneal sac, but frequently separated from it by more or less adipose tissue. Surgically, it is important to remember the existence (at any rate, the occasional existence) of this layer, on account of the ease with which an inexperienced operator may mistake the fascia for the peritoneal sac and the contained fat for omentum. Anatomically, this fascia appears identical with what is called in the text "subserous areolar tissue," the areolar tissue being thickened and caused to assume a membranous appearance by the pressure of the hernia.—Ed. of 15th English edition.

Varieties of Femoral Hernia.—If the hernia descends along the femoral canal only as far as the saphenous opening, and does not escape from this aperture, the condition is called **incomplete femoral hernia.** The small size of the protrusion in this form of hernia, which is due to the firm and resisting nature of the canal in which it is contained, renders it an exceedingly dangerous variety, from the extreme difficulty of detecting the existence of the swelling, especially in corpulent subjects. The coverings of an incomplete femoral hernia, named from without inward, are as follows: the integument, superficial fascia, iliac portion of fascia lata, crural sheath, septum crurale, subserous areolar tissue, and peritoneum. When, however, the hernia protrudes through the saphenous opening and directs itself forward and upward, it forms a **complete femoral hernia**, the coverings of which have been given (p. 1533). Occasionally the hernial sac descends on the iliac side of the femoral vessels or in front of these vessels, or even sometimes behind them.

The **seat of stricture in a strangulated femoral hernia** varies; it may be in the peritoneum at the neck of the hernial sac; in the greater number of cases it would appear to be at the point of junction of the falciform process of the fascia lata with the lunated edge of Gimbernat's ligament, or at the margin of the saphenous opening in the thigh. The stricture should in every case be divided in an inward direction, or upward and inward, and the extent of the necessary cut in the majority of cases is about two or three lines. By these means all vessels or other structures of importance in relation with the neck of the hernial sac will be avoided.

SURGICAL ANATOMY OF THE PERINÆUM.

Dissection.—The student should select a well-developed muscular subject, free from fat, and the dissection should be commenced early, in order that the parts may be examined in as recent a state as possible. A staff having been introduced into the bladder and the subject placed in the position shown in Fig. 1126, the scrotum should be raised upward, and retained in that position, and the rectum moderately distended with tow.

The **Perinæum** corresponds to the inferior aperture or outlet of the pelvis. Its deep boundaries are, in front, the pubic arch and subpubic ligament; behind, the tip of the coccyx; and on each side, the rami of the os pubis and ischium, the tuberosities of the ischium, and great sacro-sciatic ligaments. The space included by these boundaries is somewhat lozenge-shaped, and is limited on the surface of

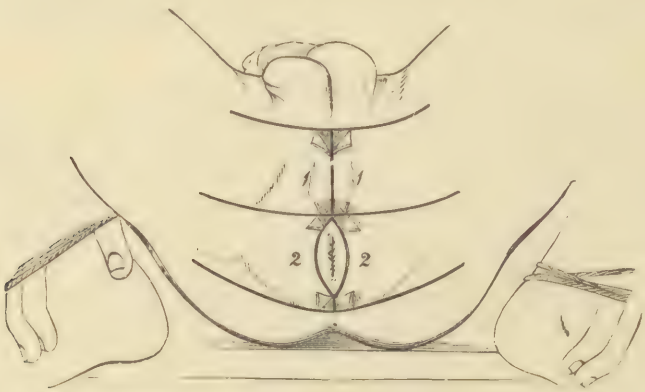


FIG. 1126.—Dissection of perinæum and ischio-rectal region.

the body by the scrotum in front, by the buttocks behind, and on each side by the inner side of the thigh. A line drawn transversely between the anterior parts of the tuberosities of the ischium, on each side, in front of the anus, divides this space into two portions. The anterior portion contains the penis and urethra, and is called the **perinæum proper** or **genito-urinary region**. The posterior portion contains the termination of the rectum, and is called the **ischio-rectal** or **anal region**.

ISCHIO-RECTAL REGION.

The ischio-rectal region contains the termination of the rectum and a deep fossa, filled with fat, on each side of the intestine, between it and the tuberosity of the ischium; this is called the ischio-rectal fossa.

The ischio-rectal region presents in the middle line the **aperture of the anus**; around this orifice the integument is thrown into numerous folds, which are obliterated on distention of the anus. The integument is of a dark color, continuous with the mucous membrane of the rectum, and is provided with numerous

follicles, which occasionally inflame and suppurate, and may be mistaken for fistulæ. The veins around the margin of the anus are occasionally much dilated, forming a number of hard pendent masses, of a dark bluish color, covered partly by mucous membrane and partly by the integument. These tumors constitute the disease called **external piles.**

Dissection (Fig. 1126).—Make an incision through the integument, along the median line, from the base of the scrotum to the anterior extremity of the anus: carry it around the margins of this aperture to its posterior extremity, and continue it backward to about an inch behind the tip of the coccyx. A transverse incision should now be carried across the base of the scrotum, joining the anterior extremity of the preceding; a second, carried in the same direction, should be made in front of the anus; and a third at the posterior extremity of the first incision. These incisions should be sufficiently extensive to enable the dissector to raise the integument from the inner side of the thighs. The flaps of skin corresponding to the ischio-rectal region should now be removed. In dissecting the integument from this region great care is required, otherwise the Corrugator cutis ani and External sphincter will be removed, as they are intimately adherent to the skin.

The **Superficial Fascia** is exposed on the removal of the skin; it is very thick, areolar in texture, and contains much fat in its meshes. In it are found ramifying two or three branches of the perforating cutaneous nerve; these turn around the inferior border of the Gluteus maximus and are distributed to the integument around the anus.

In this region, and connected with the lower end of the rectum, are four muscles: the Corrugator cutis ani; the two Sphincters, External and Internal; and the Lævator ani.

These muscles have been already described (p. 449).

The **Ischio-rectal Fossa** (*fossa ischiorectalis*) (Figs. 300 and 304) is situated between the end of the rectum and the ischial tuberosity. It is triangular in shape; its base, directed to the surface of the body, is formed by the integument of the ischio-rectal region; its **apex,** directed upward, corresponds to the point of division of the obturator fascia and the thin membrane given off from it, which covers the outer surface of the Lævator ani (ischio-rectal or anal fascia). Its dimensions are about an inch in breadth at the base and about two inches in depth, being deeper behind than in front. It is bounded, *internally*, by the Sphincter ani, Lævator ani, and Coccygeus muscles; *externally*, by the tuberosity of the ischium and the obturator fascia, which covers the inner surface of the Obturator internus muscle; *in front*, it is limited by the line of junction of the superficial fascia with the base of the triangular ligament; and *behind*, by the margin of the Gluteus maximus muscle and the great sacro-sciatic ligament. This space is filled with a large mass of adipose tissue, which explains the frequency with which abscesses in the neighborhood of the rectum burrow to a considerable depth.

If the subject has been injected, on placing the finger on the outer wall of this fossa the internal pudic artery, with its accompanying veins and the two divisions of the nerve, will be felt about an inch and a half above the margin of the ischiatic tuberosity, but approaching nearer the surface as they pass forward along the inner margin of the pubic arch. These structures are enclosed in a sheath, the **fascial canal** or **canal of Alcock** (Figs. 304 and 1131), formed by the obturator fascia, the pudic nerve lying below the artery and the dorsal nerve of the penis above it. Crossing the space transversely, about its centre are the inferior hemorrhoidal vessels and nerves, which are distributed to the integument of the anus and to the muscles of the lower end of the rectum. These vessels are occasionally of large size, and may give rise to troublesome hemorrhage when divided in the operation of lithotomy or in that for fistula in ano. At the back part of this space, near the coccyx, may be seen a branch of the fourth sacral nerve, and at the forepart of the space the superficial perineal vessels and nerves can be seen for a short distance.

THE PERINÆUM PROPER IN THE MALE.

The perineal space is of a triangular form; its deep boundaries are limited, laterally, by the rami of the pubic bones and ischia, meeting in front at the pubic arch; behind, by an imaginary transverse line extending between the anterior parts of the tuberosities of the ischia. The lateral boundaries are, in the adult, from three inches to three inches and a half in length, and the base from two to three inches and a half in breadth, the average extent of the space being two inches and three-quarters.

The variations in the diameter of this space are of extreme interest in connection with the operation of lithotomy and the extraction of a stone from the cavity of the bladder. In those cases where the tuberosities of the ischia are near together it would be necessary to make the incisions in the lateral operation of lithotomy less oblique than if the tuberosities were widely separated, and the perineal space consequently wider. The perinæum is subdivided by the median raphé into two equal parts. Of these, the left is the one in which the operation of lithotomy is performed.

In the middle line the perinæum is convex, and corresponds to the bulb of the urethra. The skin covering it is of a dark color, thin, freely movable upon the subjacent parts, and covered with sharp crisp hairs, which should be removed before the dissection of the part is commenced. In front of the anus a prominent line commences, the **raphé**, continuous in front with the raphé of the scrotum. The skin of the raphé is adherent to the deep layer of the superficial fascia.

Upon removing the skin and the superficial layer of the superficial fascia, in the manner shown in Fig. 1126, a plane of fascia will be exposed, covering in the triangular space and stretching across from one ischio-pubic ramus to the other. This is the **deep layer of the superficial fascia** or **fascia of Colles** (*fascia superficialis perinæi*). It has already been described (p. 456). It is a layer of considerable strength, and encloses and covers a space in which are contained muscles, vessels, and nerves. It is continuous in front with the fascia of the penis and the dartos of the scrotum; on each side it is firmly attached to the margin of the ischio-pubic ramus and to the tuberosity of the ischium; and posteriorly it curves down behind the Transversalis perinaei muscles to join the base of the triangular ligament.

It is between this layer of fascia and the triangular ligament of the urethra that extravasation of urine most frequently takes place in cases of rupture of the urethra. The triangular ligament of the urethra (p. 459) is attached to the ischio-pubic rami, and in front to the subpubic ligament. It is clear, therefore, that when extravasation of fluid takes place between these two layers, it cannot pass backward, because the two layers are continuous with each other around the Transversi perinaei muscles: it cannot extend laterally, on account of the connection of both these layers to the rami of the os pubis and ischium; it cannot find its way into the pelvis because the opening into this cavity is closed by the triangular ligament, and, therefore, so long as these two layers remain intact, the only direction in which the fluid can make its way is forward into the areolar tissue of the scrotum and penis, and then on to the anterior wall of the abdomen.

When the deep layer of the superficial fascia is removed (Fig. 1127), a space is exposed, between this fascia and the triangular ligament, in which are contained the superficial perineal vessels and nerves and some of the muscles connected with the penis and urethra—viz., in the middle line, the Accelerator urinae; on each side, the Erector penis; and behind, the transversus perinaei; together with the crura of the corpora cavernosa and the bulb of the corpus spongiosum. Here also is seen the **central tendinous point of the perinæum.** This is a fibrous point in the middle line of the perinæum between the urethra and the rectum, being about half an inch in front of the anus. At this point four muscles converge and are attached—viz., the External sphincter ani, the Accelerator urinae, and the two Transversi perinaei

muscles; so that by the contraction of these muscles, which extend in opposite directions, it serves as a fixed point of support.

The Accelerator urinae, the Erector penis, and the Superficial transversus perinaei muscles have been already described (p. 457). They form a triangular space (Fig. 1127), bounded, internally, by the Accelerator urinae; externally, by the Erector penis; and behind, by the Transversus perinaei. The floor of this space is formed by the triangular ligament of the urethra; and running from behind forward in it are the superficial perineal vessels and nerves, and the transverse perineal artery coursing along the posterior boundary of the space, on the Transversus perinaei muscle.

The Accelerator urinae and Erector penis should now be removed, when the triangular ligament of the urethra will be exposed, stretching across the front of the outlet of the pelvis. The urethra is seen perforating its centre, just behind the bulb; and on each side is the crus penis, connecting the corpus cavernosum with the rami of the ischium and os pubis.

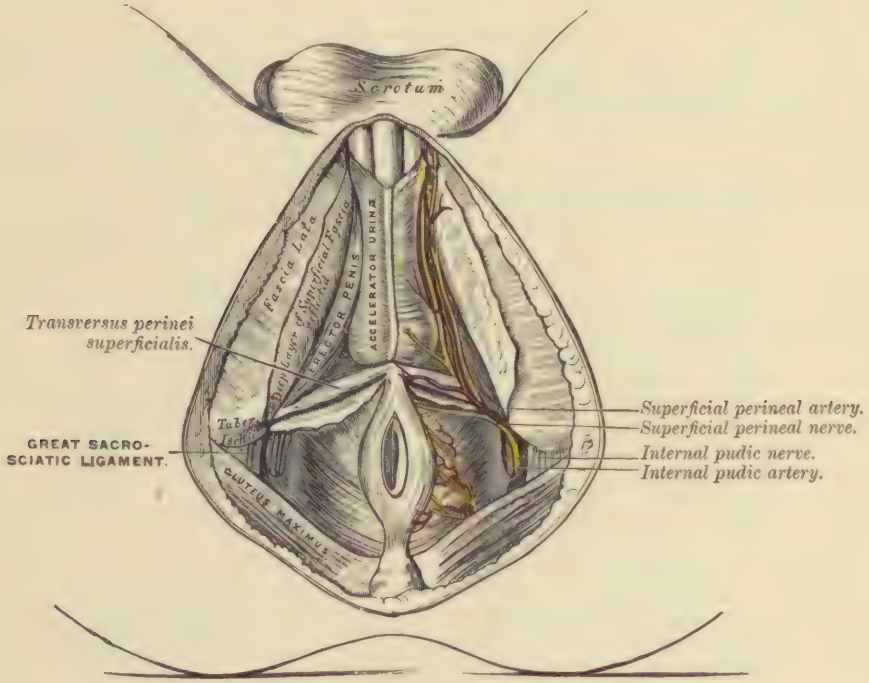


FIG. 1127.—The superficial muscles and vessels of the perinæum.

The **Triangular Ligament** or the **Deep Perineal Fascia** (*trigonum urogenitale* or *diaphragma urogenitale*) (Figs. 309, 310, and 1128), which has been already described (p. 459), consists of two layers, the **inferior anterior** or **superficial layer** (*fascia trigoni urogenitalis inferior*) of which is now exposed. It is united to the superior or deep layer behind, but is separated in front by a subfascial space in which are contained certain structures.

The **inferior layer of the triangular ligament** (Figs. 305 and 310) consists of a strong fibrous membrane, the fibres of which are disposed transversely, which stretches across from one ischio-pubic ramus to the other and completely fills in the pubic arch; it is attached in front to the subpubic ligament, except just in the centre, where a small interspace is left for the dorsal vein of the penis. In the erect position of the body it is almost horizontal. It is perforated by the urethra in the middle line, and on each side of the urethral opening by the ducts of Cowper's glands and by the arteries of the bulb; in front, and external to this, by the artery

of the corpus cavernosum, immediately before this vessel enters the crus penis. Near its apex the ligament is perforated by the termination of the pudic artery and by the dorsal nerve of the penis. The apex of the triangular ligament is known as the **transverse perineal ligament**. The **crura penis** are exposed, lying superficial to this ligament. They will be seen to be attached by blunt-pointed processes to the rami of the os pubis and ischium, in front of the tuberosities, and passing forward and inward, joining to form the body of the penis. In the middle line the bulb and corpus spongiosum are exposed by the removal of the Accelerator urinae muscle.

If the inferior layer of the triangular ligament is detached on either side, the deep perineal interspace will be exposed and the following parts will be seen between it and the deep layer of the ligament: the subpubic ligament in front, close to the symphysis pubis; the dorsal vein of the penis; the membranous portion of the urethra and the Compressor urethrae muscle; Cowper's glands and their ducts; the pudic vessels and the dorsal nerve of the penis; the artery and nerve of the bulb and a plexus of veins.

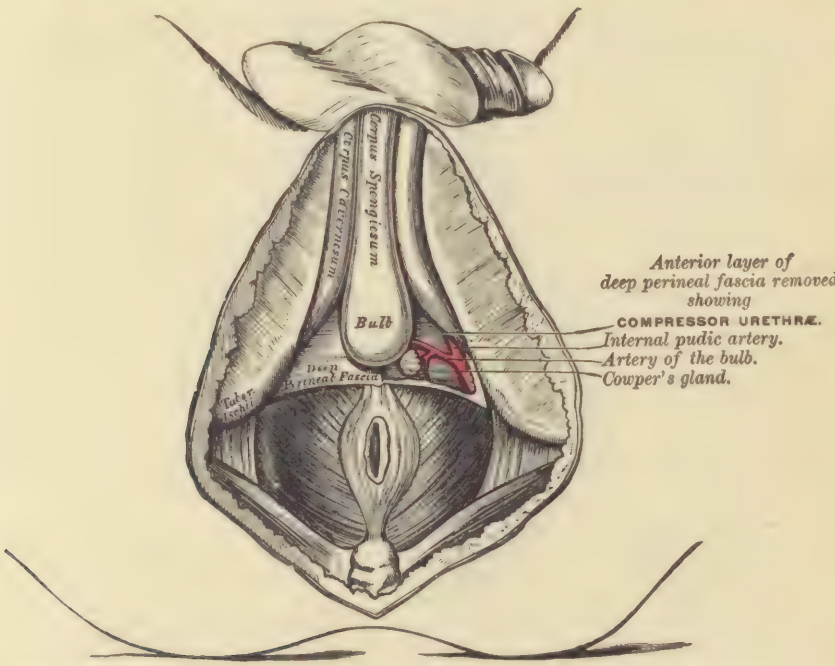


FIG. 1128.—Deep perineal fascia. On the left side the anterior layer has been removed.

The **superior, deep,** or **posterior layer of the triangular ligament** or **deep perineal fascia** (*fascia trigoni urogenitalis superior*) (Fig. 305) is derived from the obturator fascia, and is continuous with it along the pubic arch. Behind, it joins with the inferior layer of the triangular ligament, and is continuous with the **anal fascia**. Above it is the prostate gland (Fig. 1129), supported by the anterior fibres of the Levator ani, which act as a sling for the gland and form the Levator prostatae muscle. The superior layer of the triangular ligament is continuous around the anterior free edge of this muscle with the layer of recto-vesical fascia covering the prostate gland. The superior layer of the triangular ligament is perforated by the urethra. Between the two layers of the triangular ligament are situated the membranous part of the urethra, enveloped by the Compressor urethrae muscle (Fig. 309); the ducts of Cowper's glands; the arteries to the bulb; the pudic vessels and the dorsal nerve of the penis. The membranous part of the urethra is about three-quarters of an inch in length, and passes downward and

forward behind the symphysis pubis, from which it is distant about an inch. It is the narrowest part of the tube, and is enveloped, as has already been stated, by the Compressor urethrae muscle.

The **Compressor urethrae** has already been described (p. 460). In addition to this muscle, and immediately beneath it, **circular muscular fibres** surround the membranous portion of the urethra from the bulb in front to the prostate behind, and are continuous with the muscular fibres of the bladder. These fibres are involuntary.

Cowper's glands (Figs. 303, 1128, and 1129) are situated immediately below the membranous portion of the urethra, close behind the bulb, and below the artery of the bulb.

The **Pudic Vessels** (Figs. 1128 and 1129) and **Dorsal Nerve of the Penis** (Fig. 310) are placed along the inner margin of the pubic arch (p. 1536).

The **Artery of the Bulb** (Figs. 1128 and 1129, and p. 691) passes transversely inward, from the internal pudic artery (p. 689) along the base of the triangular

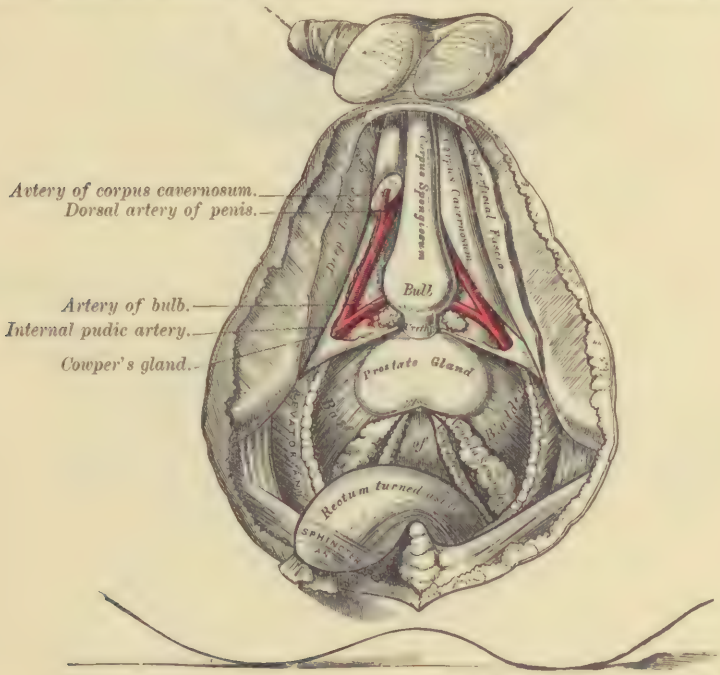


FIG. 1129.—A view of the position of the viscera at the outlet of the pelvis.

ligament, between its two layers, accompanied by a branch of the pudic nerve. If the superior layer of the triangular ligament is removed and the crus penis of one side detached from the bone, the under or perineal surface of the Levator ani muscle, covered by the anal fascia, is brought fully into view (Figs. 302, 303, and 304). This muscle, with the triangular ligament in front and the Coccygeus and Pyriformis behind, closes the outlet of the pelvis.

The Levator ani and Coccygeus muscles have already been described (p. 451).

Position of the Viscera at the Outlet of the Pelvis.—Divide the central tendinous point of the perinæum, separate the rectum from its connections by dividing the fibres of the Levator ani, which descend upon the sides of the prostate gland, and draw the gut backward toward the coccyx, when the under surface of the prostate gland, the neck and base of the bladder, the vesiculæ seminales, and the vasa deferentia will be exposed.

The **Prostate Gland** (p. 1129) is a pale, firm, glandular body which is placed immediately below the neck of the bladder, around the commencement of the

urethra. It is placed in the pelvic cavity, behind the lower part of the symphysis pubis, above the superior layer of the triangular ligament, and rests upon the rectum, through which it may be distinctly felt, especially when enlarged. In shape and size it resembles a chestnut. Its base is directed upward toward the neck of the bladder. Its apex is directed downward to the deeper layer of the triangular ligament, which it touches.

Its posterior surface is smooth, marked by a slight longitudinal furrow, and rests on the second part of the rectum, to which it is connected by areolar tissue. Its anterior surface is flattened, marked by a slight longitudinal furrow, and placed about three-quarters of an inch below the pubic symphysis. It measures about an inch and a half in its transverse diameter at the base, an inch in its antero-posterior diameter, and three-quarters of an inch in depth. Hence the greatest extent of incision that can be made in it without dividing its substance completely across is obliquely backward and outward. This is the direction in which the incision is made in it in the lateral operation of lithotomy. The prostate has a sheath derived from the recto-vesical fascia (p. 1449).

Above the prostate a small triangular portion of the bladder is seen (Fig. 1129), bounded, in front and below, by the prostate gland; above, by the recto-vesical fold of the peritoneum; on each side, by the seminal vesicle and the vas deferens. It is separated from direct contact with the rectum by the recto-vesical fascia. The relation of this portion of the bladder to the rectum is of extreme interest to the surgeon. In cases of retention of urine this portion of the organ is found projecting into the rectum, between three and four inches from the margin of the anus, and may be easily perforated without injury to any important parts. This portion of the bladder was consequently selected in the old days for the performance of the now obsolete operation of tapping the bladder.

Surgical Anatomy. Median Lithotomy.—As the incision is in the raphé, the hemorrhage is trivial, and there is but slight risk of injuring the pelvic fascia. But the operation gives little room for manipulation and is inadmissible in children, because in them dilatation of the wound may tear the bladder loose from the urethra. A risk of median lithotomy is division of the artery of the bulb.

In median lithotomy a grooved staff is introduced, the groove being median. The knife is introduced in the mid-line, just in front of the anal margin, and hits the staff near the apex of the prostate; the entire length of the membranous urethra is cut as the instrument is withdrawn.

Parts Divided.—Skin, superficial fascia, sphincter ani muscle, central tendon of the perinæum, inferior leaf of the triangular ligament, membranous urethra, and the Compressor urethræ muscle.

Lateral Lithotomy.—The operation is performed on the left side of the perinæum, as this is most convenient for the right hand of the operator. A grooved staff having been introduced into the bladder, the first incision is commenced midway between the anus and the back of the scrotum (*i. e.*, in an ordinary adult perinæum about an inch and a half in front of the anus) a little on the left side of the raphé, and is carried obliquely backward and outward to midway between the anus and tuberosity of the left ischium. The incision divides the integument and superficial fascia, the inferior hemorrhoidal vessels and nerves, and the superficial and transverse perineal vessels. If the forefinger of the left hand is thrust upward and forward into the wound, pressing at the same time the rectum inward and backward, the staff may be felt in the membranous portion of the urethra. The finger is fixed upon the staff, and the structures covering the staff are divided with the point of the knife, which must be directed along the groove toward the bladder, the edge of the knife being turned outward and backward, dividing in its course the membranous portion of the urethra and part of the left lobe of the prostate gland to the extent of about an inch. The knife is then withdrawn, and the forefinger of the left hand passed along the staff into the bladder. The position of the stone having been ascertained, the staff is to be withdrawn, and the forceps is introduced over the finger into the bladder. If the stone is very large, the opposite side of the prostate may need to be notched before the forceps is introduced; the finger is now withdrawn, and the blades of the forceps opened and made to grasp the stone, which must be extracted by slow and cautious undulating movements.

Parts Divided in the Operation.—The various structures divided in this operation are as follows: the integument, superficial fascia, inferior hemorrhoidal vessels and nerves, and prob-

ably the superficial perineal vessels and nerves, the posterior fibres of the Accelerator urinae muscle, the Transversus perinaei muscle and artery, the triangular ligament, the anterior fibres of the Levator ani muscle, part of the Compressor urethrae muscle, the membranous and prostatic portions of the urethra, and part of the prostate gland.

Parts to be Avoided in the Operation.—In making the necessary incisions in the perinæum for the extraction of a calculus the following parts should be avoided: The primary incision should not be made too near the middle line, for fear of wounding the bulb of the corpus spongiosum or the rectum; nor too far externally, otherwise the internal pudic artery may be implicated as it ascends along the inner border of the pubic arch. If the incisions are carried too far forward, the artery of the bulb may be divided; if carried too far backward, the entire breadth of the prostate and neck of the bladder may be cut through, which allows the urine to become infiltrated behind the pelvic fascia into the loose areolar tissue between the bladder and rectum, instead of escaping externally; diffuse inflammation is consequently set up, and peritonitis, from the close proximity of the recto-vesical peritoneal fold, is the result. If, on the contrary, only the anterior part of the prostate is divided, the urine makes its way externally, and there is less danger of infiltration taking place.

During the operation it is of great importance that the finger should be passed into the bladder *before* the staff is removed; if this is neglected, and if the incision made in the prostate and neck of the bladder is too small, great difficulty may be experienced in introducing the finger afterward; and in the child, where the connections of the bladder to the surrounding parts are very loose, the force made in the attempt is sufficient to displace the bladder upward into the abdomen, out of the reach of the operator. Such a proceeding has not unfrequently occurred, producing the most embarrassing results and total failure of the operation.

It is necessary to bear in mind that the arteries in the perinæum occasionally take an abnormal course. Thus the artery of the bulb, when it arises, as sometimes happens, from the pudic opposite the tuber ischii, is liable in its passage forward to the bulb to be wounded in the operation of lithotomy. The accessory pudic may be divided near the posterior border of the prostate gland, if this gland is completely cut across; and if the prostatic veins are of large size, and give rise, when divided, to troublesome hemorrhage. In men advanced in years the prostatic veins are very apt to be enlarged.

Extravasation of Urine.—Extravasation most commonly occurs from urethral rupture, between Colles's fascia and the triangular ligament of the urethra (extravasation *in front* of the triangular ligament). The adherence of these two fascial layers posteriorly prevents the urine from passing backward. The urine cannot find a way laterally, because both layers on each side are attached to the rami of the pubes and ischium. It cannot reach the pelvis, because the triangular ligament bars the way. It can only go forward if the two fascial layers remain intact, and consequently the urine passes into the areolar tissue of the scrotum beneath the superficial fascia of the penis and of the anterior abdominal wall.

Pus and blood would pursue the same course in this space. Effusions in this space causes much pain, because the space contains the three long scrotal nerves.

In rupture of the urethra between the two layers of the triangular ligament, the urine remains in this situation as long as fascia remains intact. If suppuration occurs, destruction of fascia liberates the urine.

In rupture behind the superior layer of the triangular ligament (extravasation back of the triangular ligament), the urine passes into the ischio-rectal fossa and upward and backward into the pelvis.

THE FEMALE PERINÆUM.

The female perinæum presents certain differences from that of the male, in consequence of the whole of the structures which constitute it being perforated in the middle line by the vulvo-vaginal passage.

The **Superficial Fascia**, as in the male, consists of two layers, of which the superficial one is continuous with the superficial fascia over the rest of the body, and the deep layer, corresponding to the fascia of Colles in the male, is, like it, attached to the ischio-pubic rami, and in front is continued forward through the labia majora to the inguinal region. It is of less extent than in the male, in consequence of being perforated by the aperture of the vulva.

On removing this fascia the muscles of the female perinæum, which have already been described (p. 461), are exposed (Figs. 311 and 1130). The Sphincter vaginae, corresponding to the Accelerator urinae in the male, consists of an atten-

uated plane of fibres, forming an orbicular muscle around the orifice of the vagina, instead of being united in a median raphé, as in the male. The Erector clitoridis is proportionately reduced in size, but differs in no other respect from the erector penis, and the Transversus perinaei is similar to the muscle of the same name in the male.

The triangular ligament (Fig. 1130) is not strongly marked as in the male. It transmits the urethra and the tube of the vagina.

The **Compressor Urethrae** corresponds with the Compressor urethrae in the male. It arises from the ischio-pubic ramus, and, passing inward, its anterior fibres blend with the muscle of the opposite side, in front of the urethra; its middle fibres, the most numerous, are inserted into the side of the vagina, and the posterior fibres join the central point of the perinæum.

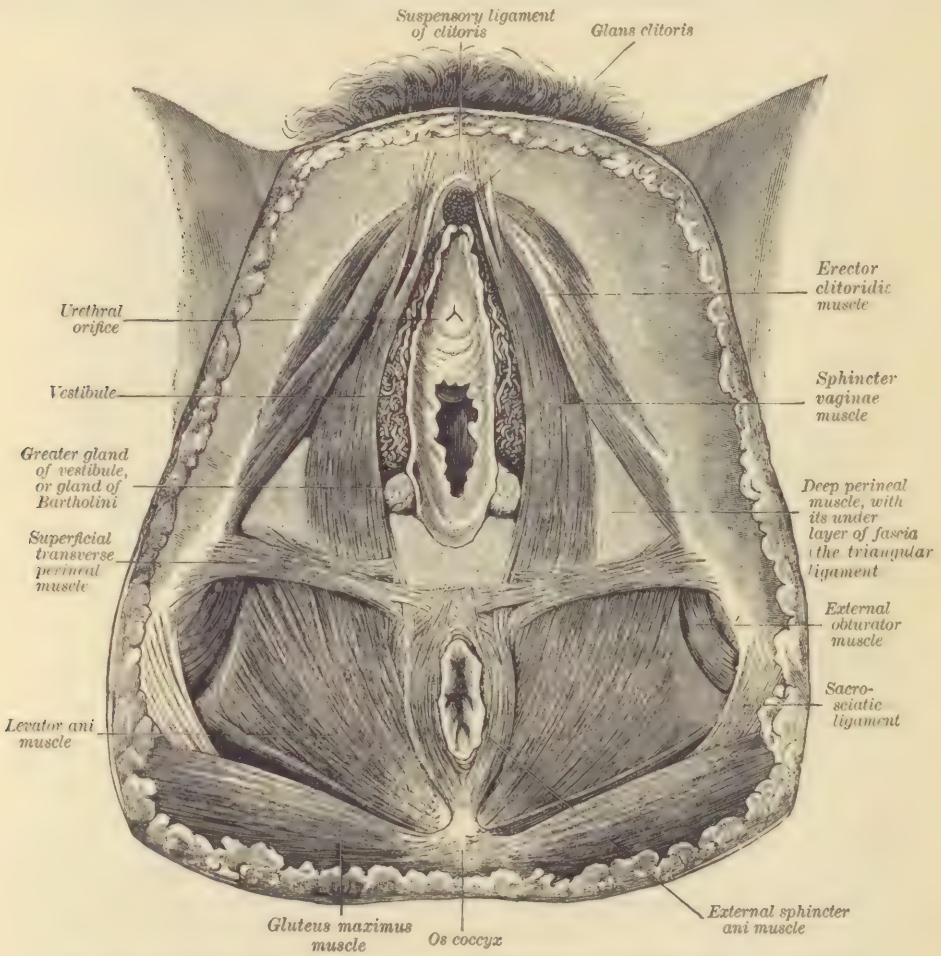


FIG. 1130.—The female perinæum after removal of the skin and superficial fascia. (Bardeleben.)

The distribution of the internal pudic artery is the same as in the male (p. 1540), and the pudic nerve has also a similar arrangement, the dorsal nerve being, however, very small and supplying the clitoris.

The corpus spongiosum is divided into two lateral halves, which are represented by the **bulbi vestibuli** and **partes intermediales**.

The **Perineal Body** fills up the interval between the lower part of the vagina and the rectum. Its base is covered by the skin lying between the anus and

vagina on what is called the **perinæum**. Its anterior surface lies behind the posterior vaginal wall, and its posterior surface lies in front of the anterior rectal wall and the anus. It measures about an inch and a quarter from before backward, and laterally extends from one tuberosity of the ischium to the other. In it are situated the muscles belonging to the external organs of generation. Through its centre runs the transverse perineal septum, which is of great strength in women, and forms on either side, behind the posterior commissure, a hard, ill-defined body, consisting of connective tissue, with much yellow elastic tissue and interlacing bundles of involuntary muscular fibres, in which the voluntary muscles of the perinæum are inserted.

The Pelvic Fascia (*fascia pelvis*) (Figs. 304 and 1131).—The pelvic fascia strengthens the floor of the pelvis, fastens pelvic structures together, and supports the nerves, blood-vessels, and lymphatics. It is connected above with the trans-

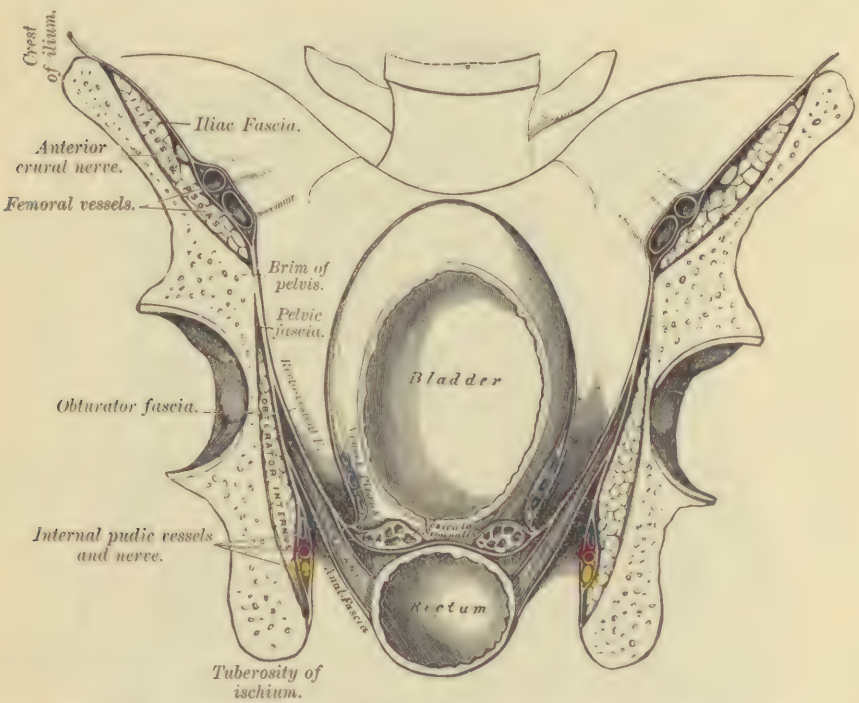


FIG. 1131.—A transverse section of the pelvis, showing the pelvic fascia from behind.

versalis fascia and the iliac fascia. It is at first a thin membrane and covers the inner surface of the pelvis, being attached to the brim for a short distance at the side of the cavity and to the inner surface of the bone around the attachment of the Obturator internus. At the posterior portion of this muscle it is continued backward as a very thin membrane in front of the Pyriformis muscle to the front of the sacrum. In front, as it descends, it gives off the **parietal layer of the pelvic fascia**, which continues as the **obturator fascia**. It then becomes thicker and covers the inner and upper surface of the Diaphragm of the pelvis as far as the **white line** (*arcus tendineus fasciæ pelvis*). The portion covering the superior and upper surface of the pelvic Diaphragm is the inner sheath of the Levator ani muscle and is called the **visceral layer of the pelvic fascia** or the **recto-vesical fascia** (*fascia diaphragmatis pelvis superior*). The white line is a rough band of fascial thickening, seen in the pelvic fascia of each side. It indicates the line of separation between the pelvic cavity and the ischio-rectal fossa. It passes from the lower

portion of the symphysis pubis outward and backward to the spine of the ischium. It makes the attachment of the Levator ani muscle to the pelvic fascia. At the white line the chief mass of the pelvic fascia passes upon the pelvic viscera and is known as the **fascia endo-pelvica.** It covers portions of the vagina, rectum, and urinary bladder, becomes thinner and thinner, and is gradually lost. Other bands of fascia begin at the white line, descend on the inner surface of the recto-vesical fascia, and in the male pass to the tip of the prostate and become the prostatic fascia. Between the anterior ends of the two white lines the level of the fascia is lower, and it forms a fossa, bounded on the sides in the male by the **pubo-prostatic ligaments** (*ligamenta puboprostatica lateralia*), and in the female by the **pubo-vesical ligaments** (*ligamenta pubovesicalia lateralia*). These ligaments are called the **lateral true ligaments of the bladder.** In the base of this fossa in the male runs the **anterior true ligament of the bladder** or the **pubo-prostatic ligament** (*ligamentum puboprostaticum*

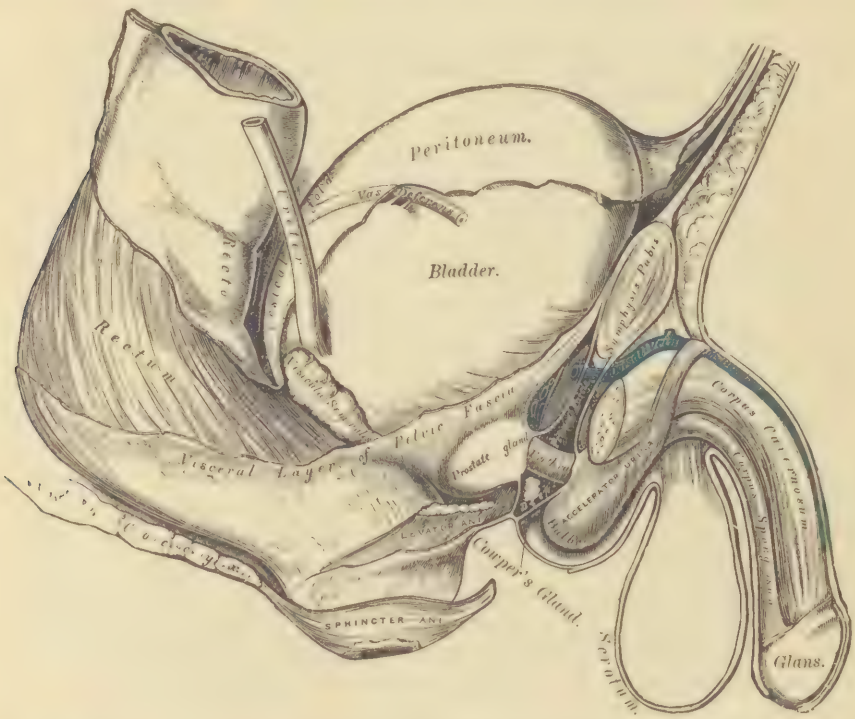


FIG. 1132.—Side view of the pelvic viscera of the male subject, showing the pelvic and perineal fasciae.

medium), and in the female the **anterior true vesical ligament** (*ligamentum pubovesicale medium*). These ligaments arise from the lowest portion of the symphysis and pass to the urinary bladder and prostate in the male, and urinary bladder and urethra in the female (Spalteholz). The outer surface of the pelvic Diaphragm is covered by the **anal fascia** or the **ischio-rectal fascia** (*fascia diaphragmatis pelvis inferior*). It is the lower or outer sheath of the Levator ani muscle, and is derived from the obturator fascia. The space between the obturator fascia and the anal fascia is pyramidal and is called the **ischio-rectal fossa** (*fossa ischiorectalis*).

The pelvic fascia does not completely invest the bladder, although the neck and lateral walls lie upon the Levator ani muscles, and the lateral true ligaments and the anterior ligament ascend upon the sides and front of the bladder and are lost upon the fibrous coat of that viscus. The sides and anterior wall have a fascial investment. The **sheath of the prostate** has already been discussed (p. 1449). It is

continuous with the recto-vesical fascia and the anterior true ligament of the bladder.

The pelvic fascia is composed, according to Hughes, of: 1. The fibrous capsules of the pelvic viscera. 2. The sheaths of the Levator ani and Coccygei muscles (recto-vesical and anal fasciæ). 3. The sheath of the Obturator internus (obturator fascia). 4. Sheath of the Compressor urethræ muscle (the triangular ligament). 5. The sheath of the pelvic aspect of the Pyriformis muscle. The sacral plexus is outside this sheath, the internal iliac vessels inside of it.[1] As previously stated, the pelvic fascia gives off the obturator fascia and the recto-vesical fascia.

The **Obturator Fascia** (*fascia obturatoria*) descends and covers the Obturator internus muscle. It is a direct continuation of the parietal pelvic fascia below the white line above mentioned, and is attached to the pelvic arch, the ischial tuberosities, and to the margin of the great sacro-sciatic ligaments. This fascia forms a canal for the pudic vessels and nerve in their passage forward to the perinæum, and gives off a thin membrane which covers the perineal aspect of the Levator ani muscle, and is called the **anal** or **ischio-rectal fascia.** It forms the inner boundary of the **ischio-rectal fossa.** From its attachment to the rami of the os pubis and ischium a process is given off which is continuous with a similar process from the opposite side, so as to close the front part of the outlet of the pelvis, forming the *deep layer of the triangular ligament.*

The **Recto-vesical Fascia** or **the Visceral Layer of the Pelvic Fascia** (*fascia endopelvica*) descends into the pelvis upon the upper surface of the Levator ani muscle, and invests the prostate, bladder, and rectum. From the inner surface of the symphysis pubis a short rounded band is continued, on each side of the middle line, to the upper surface of the prostate and neck of the bladder, forming the pubo-prostatic or anterior true ligaments of the bladder. At the side this fascia is connected to the side of the prostate, enclosing this gland and the vesico-prostatic plexus of veins, and is continued on to the side of the bladder, forming the lateral true ligaments of the organ. Another prolongation invests the seminal vesicle, and passes across between the bladder and rectum, being continuous with the same fascia of the opposite side. Another thin prolongation is reflected around the surface of the lower end of the rectum. The Levator ani muscle arises from the point of division of the pelvic fascia, the visceral layer of the fascia descending upon and being intimately adherent to the upper surface of the muscle, while the under surface of the muscle is covered by a thin layer derived from the obturator fascia, called the **ischio-rectal** or **anal fascia.** In the female the vagina perforates the recto-vesical fascia and receives a prolongation from it.

[1] A Manual of Practical Anatomy. By Prof. Alfred W. Hughes; edited and completed by Dr. Arthur Keith.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

OF

THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE FŒTUS.

(From Beaunis and Bouchard.)

First Week.—During this period the ovum is in the Fallopian tube. Having been fertilized in the upper part of the tube, it slowly passes down, undergoing segmentation, and reaches the uterus probably about the end of the first week. During this time it does not undergo much increase in size.

Second Week.—The ovum rapidly increases in size and becomes imbedded in the decidua, so that it is completely enclosed in the decidua reflexa by the end of this period. An ovum believed to be of the thirteenth day after conception is described by Reichert. There was no appearance of any embryonic structure. The equatorial margins of the ovum were beset with villi, but the surface in contact with the uterine wall and the one opposite to it were bare. In another ovum, described by His, believed to be of about the fourteenth day, there was a distinct indication of an embryo. There was a medullary groove bounded by folds. In front of this a slightly prominent ridge, the rudimentary heart. The amnion was formed and the embryo was attached by a stalk, the allantois, to the inner surface of the chorion. It may be said, therefore, that these parts, the amnion and the allantois, and the first rudiments of the embryo, the medullary groove, and the heart, are formed at the end of the second week.

Third Week.—By the end of the third week the flexures of the embryo have taken place, so that it is strongly curved. The protovertebral disks, which begin to be formed early in the third week, present their full complement. In the nervous system the primary divisions of the brain are visible, and the primitive ocular and auditory vesicles are already formed. The primary circulation is established. The alimentary canal presents a straight tube communicating with the yolk-sac. The branchial arches are formed. The limbs have appeared as short buds. The Wolffian bodies are visible.

Fourth Week.—The umbilical vesicle has attained its full development. The caudal extremity projects. The upper and the lower limbs and the cloacal aperture appear. The heart separates into a right and left heart. The special ganglia and anterior roots of the spinal nerves, the olfactory fossæ, the lungs and the pancreas can be made out.

Fifth Week.—The allantois is vascular in its whole extent. The first traces of the hands and feet can be seen. The primitive aorta divides into aorta and pulmonary artery. The duct of Müller and genital gland are visible. The ossification of the clavicle and the lower jaw commences. The cartilage of Meckel occupies the first post-oral arch.

Sixth Week.—The activity of the umbilical vesicle ceases. The pharyngeal clefts disappear. The vertebral column, primitive cranium, and ribs assume the cartilaginous condition. The posterior roots of the nerves, the membranes of the nervous centres, the bladder, kidney, tongue, larynx, thyroid body, the germs of teeth, and the genital tubercle and folds are apparent.

Seventh Week.—The muscles begin to be perceptible. The points of ossification of the ribs, scapula, shaft of humerus, femur, tibia, palate, and upper jaw appear.

Eighth Week.—The distinction of arm and forearm, and of thigh and leg, is apparent, as well as the interdigital clefts. The capsule of the lens and pupillary membrane, the interventricular and commencement of the interauricular septum, the salivary glands, the spleen, and suprarenal capsules are distinguishable. The larynx begins to become cartilaginous. All the vertebral bodies are cartilaginous. The points of ossification for the ulna, radius, fibula, and ilium make their appearance. The two halves of the hard palate unite. The sympathetic nerves are now for the first time to be discerned.

[1] [Eternod (*Anat. Anzeiger*, Band xv., 1898) described an ovum which he reconstructed. It had a precise history, from which he concluded that it must have belonged to the end of the second or the beginning of the third week. Including the villi it measured $10 \times 8.2 \times 6$ mm. It was flattened on its embryonal side, and the embryo measured 1.3 mm. The amnion was completely formed and the allantois existed as a long canal. The vitelline circulation was established and the villi of the chorion were beginning to be vascularized. The blastopore still opened into the amniotic cavity, with the primitive groove behind it and the rudimentary groove in front. The notochord was closing in and all three layers of the blastoderm were distinct, except around the blastopore, where they formed an undivided mass.—Ed. of 15th English edition.]

Ninth Week.—The corpus striatum and the pericardium are first apparent. The ovary and testicle can be distinguished from each other. The genital furrow appears. The osseous nuclei of the bodies and arches of the vertebræ, of the frontal, vomer, and malar bones of the shafts of the metacarpal and metatarsal bones, and of the phalanges appear. The union of the hard palate is completed. The gall-bladder is seen.

Third Month.—The formation of the fœtal placenta advances rapidly. The projection of the caudal extremity disappears. It is possible to distinguish the male and female organs from each other. The cloacal aperture in divided into two parts. The cartilaginous arches on the dorsal region of the spine close. The points of ossification for the occipital, sphenoid, lachrymal, nasal, squamous portion of temporal and ischium appear, as well as the orbital centre of the superior maxillary. The pons Varolii and fissure of Sylvius can be made out. The eyelids, the hair, and the nails begin to form. The mammary gland, the epiglottis, and prostate are beginning to develop. The union of the testicle with the canals of the Wolffian body takes place.

Fourth Month.—The closure of the cartilaginous arches of the spine is complete. Osseous points for the first sacral vertebra and os pubis appear. The ossification of the malleus and incus takes place. The corpus callosum, the membrana lamina spiralis, the cartilage of the Eustachian tube, and the tympanic ring are seen. Fat is first developed in the subcutaneous cellular tissue. The tonsils are seen, and the closure of the genital furrow and the formation of the scrotum and prepuce take place.

Fifth Month.—The two layers of the decidua begin to coalesce. Osseous nuclei of the axis and odontoid process, of the lateral points of the first sacral vertebra, of the median points of the second, and of the lateral masses of the ethmoid make their appearance. Ossification of the stapes and the petrous bone and ossification of the germs of the teeth take place. The germs of the permanent teeth and the organ of Corti appear. The eruption of hair on the head commences. The sudoriferous glands, Brunner's glands, the follicles of the tonsil and base of the tongue, and the lymphatic glands appear at this period. The differentiation between the uterus and vagina becomes apparent.

Sixth Month.—The points of ossification for the anterior root of the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra, the lateral points of the second sacral vertebra, the median points of the third, the manubrium sterni and the os calcis appear. The sacro-vertebral angle forms. The cerebral hemispheres cover the cerebellum. The papillæ of the skin, the sebaceous glands, and Peyer's patches make their appearance. The free border of the nail projects from the corium of the dermis. The walls of the uterus thicken.

Seventh Month.—The additional points of the first sacral vertebra, the lateral points of the third, the median point of the fourth, the first osseous point of the body of the sternum, and the osseous point for the astragalus appear. Meckel's cartilage disappears. The cerebral convolutions, the island of Reil, and the tubercula quadrigemina are apparent. The pupillary membrane atrophies. The testicle passes into the vaginal process of the peritoneum.

Eighth Month.—Additional points for the second sacral vertebra, lateral points for the fourth and median points for the fifth sacral vertebræ, can be seen.

Ninth Month.—Additional points for the third sacral vertebra, lateral points for the fifth, osseous points for the middle turbinated bone, for the body and great cornu of the hyoid, for the second and third pieces of the body of the sternum, and for the lower end of the femur appear. Ossification of the bony lamina spiralis and axis of the cochlea takes place. The eyelids open, and the testicles are in the scrotum.

INDEX.

A

Abdomen, 1231
  boundaries of, 1231
  fascia of, deep, 433
    superficial, 433, 1511
    triangular, 1515
  lymphatics of, 797, 800
  muscles of, 432
    actions of, 445, 449
    deep, 449
    dissection of, 432
    superficial, 432
    surface form of, 448
  nerves of, cutaneous, 996
  regions of, 1233
  veins of, 755
  viscera, 1234
  walls of, apertures in, 1233
    of, lymphatic vessels of, deep, 801
      superficial, 801
Abdominal aorta, 668
    branches of, 671
    relations of, 669
    surface marking of, 670
    surgical anatomy of, 670
  aortic plexus, 1080, 1085
  intercostal nerves, 996
  muscles, 432
  portion of œsophagus, 1226
  ring, external, 436, 1514
    internal, 446, 1518
      pillars of, 1514
  sacs, 1236
  surface of bladder, 1433
  viscera, position of, 1234
Abdomino-aortic glands, 799
  -thoracic arch, 165
Abducent nerve, 1043
    branches of, 1043
    relations of, 1043
    surgical anatomy of, 1044
Abductor hallucis muscle, 544
      relations of, 544
  indicis muscle, 499
  minimi digiti muscle, foot, 545
      relations of, 545
    hand, 498
      relations of, 498
  pollicis muscle, 495
      relations of, 496
Aberrant ducts of epididymis, 1472
Absorbent glands, 774
Absorbents, 772
Accelerator urinæ muscle, 457
Accessorius ad ilio-costalem muscle, 419
  pedis, 546
Accessory anterior crural nerve of Winslow, 1004
  auditory nuclei, 950
  chains to deep cervical glands, 787
  cuneate nucleus, 948
Accessory descending palatine canals, 116
  gland of Rosenmüller, 1141
  ligament of atlas, 276
  nucleus of eighth nerve, 1051
  obturator nerve, 1004
  olivary nuclei, 951
  parotid gland, 1215
  posterior palatine canals, 116, 135
  processes, 57
  quadrate cartilage, 1097
  suprarenal glands, 1430
  thyroid glands, 1403
    veins, 731
Acervulus cerebri, 906
Acetabulum, 213
  fossa of, 213
  ligaments of, transverse, 330
Acoustic canal, external, 1148
  tubercle, lateral, 950
Acromial angle, 176
  region, fascia of, 470
    muscles of, 470
      actions of, 471
      surgical anatomy of, 471
  thoracic artery, 651
Acromio-clavicular articulation, 299
      surface form of, 311
      surgical anatomy of, 301
    ligament, inferior, 299
      superior, 299
Acromion process, 174
Additus glottidis inferior, 1371
Adductor brevis muscle, 520
      relations of, 520
  canal, 698
  longus muscle, 519
      relations of, 519
  magnus muscle, 520
      relations of, 521
  minimus muscle, 520
  obliquus hallucis muscle, 546
    pollicis muscle, 497
      relations of, 497
  transversus hallucis muscle, 548
      relations of, 548
    pollicis muscle, 497
      relations of, 497
  tubercle, 225
Adipose tissue, pads of, 263
Aditus ad antrum, 87, 1150
Adminiculum lineæ albæ, 437
Afferent nerve tract, 961
  vessels of kidneys, 1423
Agminated glands, 1296
Air cells, 1396
  sinus, 82
Ala cinerea, 945
  lobuli centralis, 928
  nasi, 1096
    artery of, 607
Alæ of cerebellum, 928
  of ethmoid, 99
Alæ of sacrum, 64
  of vomer, 121, 143
Alar cartilage, greater, 1097
      lesser, 1097
    ligaments, 278
    thoracic artery, 651
Alcock's canal, 1011, 1536
Alimentary canal, 1193
      development of, 1236
Alveolar artery, 615
      inferior, 614
      superior, 615
    ducts, 1378
    hare-lip, 111
    processes, 140
      of superior maxillary, 109
Alveoli, mucous, 1218
    pulmonary, 1378
    serous, 1218
    of stomach, 1278
    of teeth, development of, 1207
Alveus, 896
Amacrine cells of retina, 1125
Ameoblasts, 1206
Amphiarthrosis, 264
Ampullæ of Fallopian tube, 1497
    membranaceæ, 1170
    ossea, 1165
    tubuli lactiferi, 1507
    of Vater, 1345
Amygdala, 1213
  of cerebellum, 931
Amygdaloid nucleus, 891
Anal canal, 1315
      areolar coat of, 1318
      mucous membrane of, 1318
      muscular coat of, 1317
      relations of, 1316
      serous coat of, 1316
      structure of, 1316
      submucous coat of, 1318
    fascia, 454, 1546
    pockets, 1319
    valves, 1319
Anastomosis of arteries, 583
  circumpatellar, 711
Anastomotic vein of Trolard, 735
Anastomotica magna of brachial, 656
    of femoral, 707
Anatomical neck of humerus, 177
    of scapula, 175
Anconeus muscle, 487
      relations of, 487
Andersch, ganglion of, 1056
Angle, acromial, 176
  cephalo-auricular, 1144
  of jaw, 124
  lateral, inferior, 63
  of Ludwig, 165
  nasal, 105
  of os pubis, 212
  of ribs, 161
  Rolandic, 867
  sacro-vertebral, 61
  of sternum, 157

Angle, subscapular, 172
Angular artery, 607
convolution, 876
gyrus, 876
process, external, 80, 140
internal, 80, 140
vein, 726
Ankle bone, 244
bursæ of, 543
-joint, articulations of, 347
ligaments of, 347
surface form of, 351
surgical anatomy of, 351
Annectant gyrus, deep, 867
first, 876
fourth, 877
second, 876
third, 877
Annular ligament of ankle, anterior, 541
external, 542
internal, 542
of radius and ulnar, 314
of stapes, 1161
of wrist, anterior, 491
posterior, 493
plexus, 1111
Annulus ciliaris, 1115
ovalis, 567
Ano-coccygeal body of Symington, 1316
Ansa hypoglossi, 1066
lenticularis, 915
peduncularis, 892
of Vieussens, 1076
Ante-cubital glands, 789
Anterior angle of ribs, 161
annular ligament of ankle, 541
of wrist, 491
atlanto-axial ligament, 274
atlo-axoid ligament, 274
auricular artery, 611
nerves, 1038
bicipital ridge, 179
branches of superior cervical ganglion, 1076
cardiac plexus, 1081
carpal arch, 659
of ulnar, 663
cerebellar notch, 926
cerebral artery, 626
chamber of eye, 1129
chondro-sternal ligament, 288
-xiphoid ligament, 288
choroid artery, 628
ciliary arteries, 625
clinoid process, 131
commissure of cerebrum, 896
of cord, 839
common ligament, 269
communicating artery of ulnar, 662
condyloid foramen, 73, 133, 136
fossa, 136
cornu of lateral ventricle, 889
coronary plexus, 1081
costo-vertebral ligament, 284
-xiphoid ligament, 288
crescentic lobe, 928
crucial ligament, 337
crural nerve, 1004
accessory, of Winslow, 1004
deep cervical vein, 733
divisions of cervical nerves, 971
of coccygeal nerves, 1009
of dorsal nerves, 993
of lumbar nerves, 998
of thoracic nerves, 993
Anterior dental canal, 107
ethmoidal canal, 82, 100
cells, 101
foramen, 82, 130, 141
sinuses, 101
extremity of ribs, 161
facial vein, 726
femoral region, muscles of, 512
fontanelle, 78, 103
fossa of skull, 130
gluteal line, 207
humeral region, muscles of, 474
inferior cerebellar artery, 640
spinous process of ilium, 210
intercostal arteries, 644
veins, 752
internal frontal artery, 627
interosseous artery of ulnar, 662
nerve, 987
intersternal ligament, 290
intertrochanteric line, 223
jugular vein, 728
ligament of Helmholtz, 1160
of malleus, 1160
of wrist, 318
longitudinal ligament, 269
spinal veins, 754
mediastinal glands, 811
mediastinum, 1389
medullary velum, 943
meningeal artery, 622
nares, 142, 1098
nasal spine, 111, 139, 143
occipito-atlantal ligament, 276
olfactory lobule, 880
orbital convolution, 874
palatine canal, 143
fossa, 110, 133
nerve, 1035
perforated space, 881
perforating arteries, 644
peroneal artery, 718
pillars of fornix, 895
of soft palate, 1212
pubic ligament, 296
pulmonary nerves, 1061
plexus, 1059, 1061, 1082
radial carpal artery, 659
radio-ulnar ligament, 315
region, muscles of, 479
recurrent tibial artery, 713
region of skull, 139
root of spinal nerves, 965
sacral foramina, 62
sacro-coccygeal ligament, 294
-iliac ligament, 292
-sciatic ligament, 293
scapular region, muscles of, 471
spinal artery, 638
sterno-clavicular ligament, 298
-costal ligament, 288
subarachnoid space, 853
superior dental nerve, 1033
ligament, 285
spinous process of ilium, 210
surface of liver, 1327
of stomach, 1269
temporal artery, 611, 640
diploic vein, 734
thoracic nerve, 984
tibial artery, 711
gland, 795
nerve, 1016
veins, 758
tibio-fibular region, muscles of, 531
-tarsal ligament, 347
triangle of neck, 616
Anterior tubercle of cervical vertebra, 50
of optic thalamus, 904
tympano-malleolar ligament, 1156
ulnar recurrent artery, 662
vein, 745
vertebral region, muscles of, 406
vein, 733
wall of tympanum, 1153
Antero-lateral fissure, 838
fontanelle, 103
ganglionic arteries, 628
tract of cord, 842
-median fissure, 837
ganglionic arteries, 627
-posterior diameter of pelvis, 217
Antihelix, 1144
fossa of, 1144
Antitragicus muscle, 1147
Antitragus, 1145
Antrum of Highmore, 108
mastoid, 87
opening of, 1153
of pylorus, 1271
tympanic, 87
Anus, 1315
arteries of, 1320
lymphatics of, 809, 1321
nerves of, 1322
veins of, 1321
Aorta, 587
abdominal, 668
arch of, 591
branches of, 593
peculiarities of, 591, 593
relations of, 591
surgical anatomy of, 592
ascending, 588
descending, 665
sinus of, great, 589
thoracic, 665
transverse, 590
Aortic isthmus, 591
opening of diaphragm, 429
of heart, 566
semilunar valves, 572
sinus of Valsalva, 573
spindle, 591
vestibule of Sibson, 572
Apertura scalæ vestibuli cochleæ, 1165
tympanica canaliculi chordæ, 1153
Aperture of nose, cartilage of, 1097
Apical coil of cochlea, 1167
glands, 1091
Aponeurosis of external oblique, 434, 1513
of internal oblique, 439
palatine, 404
pharyngeal, 402, 1223
Sibson's, 1385
of soft palate, 1212
supra-hyoid, 394
vertebral, 411, 416
Apophysis, 34
Appendages of eye, 1137
of skin, 1185
of uterus, 1497
Appendices epiploicæ, 1260
Appendicular artery, 676
vein, 768
Appendiculo-ovarian ligament of Clado, 1304
Appendix of auricle, left, 568
right, 565
ensiform, 158

Appendix, vermiform, 1303
  xiphoid, 158
Aqueduct of Sylvius, 912
Aquæductus cochleæ, 89, 136, 1167
  Fallopii, 89
    eminence of, 1152
  vestibuli, 89, 133, 1165
Aqueous chamber, 1128
  humor, 1128
Arachnoid of brain, 851
    structure of, 853
  of cord, 834
    structure of, 835
  villi, 854
Arangi, body of, 571
Arantius, ventricle of, 944
Arbor vitæ of cerebellum, 931
  of uterus, 1492
Arch of aorta, 591
    branches of, 593
    peculiarities of, 591, 593
    relations of, 591
    surgical anatomy of, 592
  of atlas, 51
  axillary, 413, 464, 646
  carpal, anterior, 659
    posterior, 659
  crural, deep, 448, 1531
    superficial, 436, 1529
  palmar, deep, 658
    superficial, 664
  plantar, 720
  pubic, 217
  supraorbital, 80
  tarsal, inferior, 623
    superior, 623
  of vertebra, 48
  zygomatic, 138
Arciform fibres of medulla, 942
Arcuate fibres of medulla, 942
  ligaments, external, 427, 449
    internal, 427
    middle, 427
Arcus senilis, 1110
Area of Broca, 881
  cribrosa media, 89
    superior, 89
  vestibularis, inferior, 1176
    superior, 1176
Areolæ of bone, primary, 44
    secondary, 45
  of mamma, 1504
Areolar coat of anal canal, 1318
    of intestine, large, 1318
      small, 1290
    of liver, 1337
    of œsophagus, 1229
    of rectum, 1318
    of stomach, 1274
  tissue, subcutaneous, 1180
    subserous, 1245
Arm, arteries of, 637
  bones of, 177
  fasciæ of, 474
    deep, 470
    superficial, 470
  lymphatics of, 789
  muscles of, 470, 474
    dissection of, 470, 474
    surgical anatomy of, 478
  nerves of, 977
  veins of, 744
Arnold's ganglion, 1039
    branches of, 1039
  nerve, 1060
    canal for, 90
  ponticulus of, 939
Arteria centralis retinæ, 626
  magna, 587
Arteriæ hallucis, 716
Arteriæ princeps cervicis, 609
  receptaculi, 622
  uterina ovarica, 688
Artery or arteries, 583
  alveolar, 615
    inferior, 614
    superior, 615
  anastomosis of, 583
  anastomotica magna of brachial, 656
    of femoral, 707
  angular, 607
  antero-lateral ganglionic, 628
  -median ganglionic, 627
  aorta, 587
    abdominal, 668
    arch of, 591
    ascending, 588
    descending, 665
    thoracic, 665
  appendicular, 676
  arteriæ receptaculi, 622
  articular, of knee, 710, 711
  auditory, 639
  auricular, anterior, 611
    posterior, 609
  axillary, 647
  azygos, of knee, 711
    of vagina, 687
  basilar, 639
  brachial, 652
  of brain, cortical, 631
  bronchial, 666
  buccal, 615
  of bulb, 691
  bulbar, 639
  calcanean, external, 718
    internal, 719
  carotid, common, 595
    external, 600
    internal, 619
  carpal arch, anterior, 659
    posterior, 657
    radial, anterior, 659
      posterior, 659
    ulnar, anterior, 663
      posterior, 663
  centralis retinæ, 626
  cerebellar, anterior inferior, 640
    posterior inferior, 639
    superior, 640
  cerebral, anterior, 626
  of cerebral hemorrhage, 628
    middle, 627
    posterior, 640
  cervical, ascending, 641
    deep, 646
    superficial, 642
    transverse, 642
  choroid, anterior, 628
    posterior, 640
  ciliary, 625
  circle of Willis, 640
  circumflex, of arm, 651
    iliac, deep, 697
      superficial, 704
    of thigh, 705
  cochlear, 1176
  coccygeal, 692
  cœliac, 671
  colic, left, 678
    middle, 676
    right, 675
  comes nervi ischiadici, 693
    mediana, 663
    phrenici, 644
  communicating, anterior cerebral, 627
    to deep palmar arch, 664
    posterior cerebral, 628
Artery or arteries, communicating, of ulnar, anterior, 662
  coronary, 671
    of heart, 590
    of lip, inferior, 607
      superior, 607
  of corpus cavernosum, 691
  cremasteric, 696
  crico-thyroid, 602
  cystic, 674
  dental, anterior, 605
    inferior, 614
    posterior, 615
  digital, plantar, 659
    of ulnar, 664
  dorsalis hallucis, 716
    indicis, 659
    linguæ, 603
    nasi, 625
    pedis, 714
    pollicis, 659
    scapulæ, 651
  of dura mater of brain, 848
  epigastric, deep, 696
    internal, 696
    superficial, 704
    superior, 645
  ethmoidal, 623
  facial, 604
    transverse, 611
  femoral, 697
    common, 699
    deep, 704
  fibular, superior, 713
  frontal, 611
    from anterior cerebral, 628
    from middle cerebral, 628
    from ophthalmic, 625
  ganglionic, postero-lateral, 640
    postero-median, 640
  gastric, 671, 674
  gastro-duodenalis, 673
  -epiploica dextra, 673
    sinistra, 674
  gluteal, 694
    inferior, 693
  hæmorrhoidal, inferior, 690
    middle, 687
    superior, 678
  of head, 595
  of heart, 577
  hepatic, 672
  histology of, 584
  hyoid branch of lingual, 603
    of superior thyroid, 602
  hypogastric, 683
    in fœtus, 684
  ileo-colic, 675
  iliac, circumflex, deep, 697
    superficial, 704
    common, 681
    external, 694
    internal, 683
  ilio-lumbar, 693
  infra-hyoid branch of superior thyroid, 602
  infraorbital, 615
  innominate, 593
  inosculation of, 583
  intercostal, 667
    anterior, 644
    superior, 645
  interlobar, 1423
  interosseous, of foot, 715
    of hand, 660
    ulnar, 662
      anterior, 662
      posterior, 663
  labial, inferior, 607
  lachrymal, 623
  laryngeal, inferior, 641

Artery or arteries, laryngeal, superior, 602
lateralis nasi, 607
lenticulo-striate, 628
lingual, 603
deep, 604
of lower extremity, 697
lumbar, 680
lymphatics of, 586
malar from lachrymal, 623
malleolar, 713, 719
mammary, internal, 643
mandibular, 614
marginal, 590
masseteric, 615
mastoid, 609, 670
maxillary, external, 604
internal, 612
mediastinal, 644
posterior, 666
meningeal, 609, 610
anterior, 622
middle, 613
from occipital, 609
from pharyngeal, 610
posterior, 638
small, 614
from vertebral, 638
mesenteric, inferior, 677
superior, 675
metatarsal, 715
musculo-phrenic, 644
mylo-hyoid, 614
nasal, from ophthalmic, 625
of septum, inferior, 607
superior, 615
naso-palatine, 616
of neck, 595
nerves of, 586
nutrient, of femur, 707
of fibula, 718
of humerus, 656
of tibia, 718
obturator, 688
occipital, 608
œsophageal, 641, 666
ophthalmic, 622
orbital, 611
internal, 627
ovarian, 680
palatine, ascending, 606
descending, 615
inferior, 606
posterior, 615
palmar arch, deep, 658
superficial, 664
palpebral, external, 623
internal, 623
pancreatic, 674
pancreatico-duodenalis, inferior, 675
superior, 674
parietal, 611
ascending, 628
parieto-sphenoidal, 628
-temporal, 628
of penis, dorsal, 689, 1458
perforating, anterior, 644
of foot, 720
of hand, 660
of thigh, 706
pericardiæ, 644, 666
of pericardium, 561
perineal, superficial, 690
transverse, 691
peroneal, 717
anterior, 718
posterior, 718
pharyngeal, ascending, 610
phrenic, inferior, 680
superior, 644
Artery or arteries of pia mater of brain, 856
plantar, digital, 720
external, 720
internal, 719
popliteal, 707
postero-median ganglionic, 628
prevertebral, 610
princeps cervicis, 610
hallucis, 716
pollicis, 660
profunda of arm, inferior, 656
superior, 655
femoris, 704
pterygo-palatine, 616
pterygoid, 614
pudic, accessory, 690
external, deep, 704
superficial, 704
internal, in female, 692
in male, 689
pulmonary, 587
pyloric, inferior, 673
superior, 673
radial, 657
radialis indicis, 660
ranine, 604
recurrent, palmar, 660
radial, 659
tibial, anterior, 713
posterior, 713
ulnar, anterior, 662
posterior, 662
renal, 678
inferior, 1423
of round ligament, 688
sacral, lateral, 693
middle, 681
scapular, posterior, 642
sciatic, 692
sigmoid, 678
spermatic, 679
spheno-palatine, 616
spinal, anterior, 638
lateral, 638
posterior, 639
splenic, 674
sternal, 644
sterno-mastoid, 602, 609
stylo-mastoid, 610
subclavian, 631
subcostal, 667
sublingual, 604
submaxillary, 606
submental, 606
subscapular, 651
superficialis volæ, 659
supra-acromial, 642
-hyoid, 603
supraorbital, 623
suprarenal, 678
suprascapular, 641
suprasternal, 642
sural, 710
tarsal, 715
temporal, 611
anterior, 611, 640
deep, 614
middle, 611
posterior, 611, 640
thoracic, acromial, 651
alar, 651
long, 651
superior, 650
thyroid axis, 640
inferior, 641
superior, 601
of thyroid gland, 602
thyroidea ima, 594
tibial, anterior, 711
posterior, 716
Artery or arteries, tibial, recurrent, anterior, 713
posterior, 713
tonsillar, 606
tracheal, 641
transversalis colli, 642
humeri, 641
of trunk, 665
tympanic, from ascending pharyngeal, 610
from internal carotid, 622
from internal maxillary, 613
ulnar, 660
recurrent, anterior, 662
posterior, 662
umbilical, in fœtus, 579, 685
of upper extremity, 631
uterine, 687
vaginal, 687
of vas deferens, 686
vasa brevia, 674
intestini tenuis, 675
vasorum of, 586
vertebral, 637
vesical, inferior, 686
middle, 686
superior, 686
Vidian, 616
Arteriolæ rectæ, 1423
Arthrodia, 266
Arthrology, 259
Articular arteries of knee, azygos, 711
inferior, 711
superior, 710
cartilage, 259
circumference of ulna, 189
eminence of temporal bone, 84
lamella of bone, 259
processes of a vertebra, 49
synovial membrane, 262
Articulations, 259
acromio-clavicular, 299
of ankle-joint, 347
astragalo-scaphoid, 354
atlanto-axial, 276
of atlas with axis, 274
with occipital bone, 276
biaxial, 265
calcaneo-astragaloid, 352
-cuboid, 353
-scaphoid, 353
carpo-metacarpal, 321
of carpus, 319
first row, 319
second row, 319
chondro-sternal, 288
coccygeal, 294
condyloid, 265
costo-central, 283
-chondral, 290
-sternal, 287
-transverse, 285
-vertebral, 283
crico-arytenoid, 1367
-thyroid, 1367
of cuboid with cuneiform, 355
with scaphoid, 355
of elbow-joint, 308
femoro-tibial, 335
of hip, 325
immovable, 264
interchondral, 289
interneural, 272
of knee, 334
of lower extremity, 325
jaw, 280
metacarpo-phalangeal, 324
metatarso-phalangeal, 359
mixed, 264
movable, 265

Articulations, occipito-atlantal, 276
-axial, 278
of ossa pubis, 296
of ossicles of tympanum, 1160
of pelvis, 292
of phalanges of foot, 359
of hand, 325
radio-carpal, 317
-ulnar, 313
inferior, 315
middle, 314
superior, 314
by reciprocal reception, 265
of ribs with vertebræ, 283
sacro-coccygeal, 294
-iliac, 292
-sciatic, 292
-vertebral, 290
of sacrum with coccyx, 294
and ilium, 292
and ischium, 292
scapulo-clavicular, 299
of shoulder-joint, 303
of spine with cranium, 276
sterno-clavicular, 297
of sternum, 290
tarso-metatarsal, 357
of tarsus, 352
temporo-mandibular, 280
-maxillary, 138
tibio-fibular, 345
-tarsal, 347
of trunk, 269
of upper extremity, 297
of vertebral column, 269
with pelvis, 290
of wrist, 317
Aryteno-epiglottidean folds, 1365
-epiglottideus muscle, 1373
Arytenoid cartilages, 1364
apex of, 1365
base of, 1365
surfaces of, 1364
glands, 1375
muscles, 1372
Arytenoideus muscle, 1372
Ascending aorta, 588
branches of, 590
relations of, 589
cervical artery, 641
colon, 1309
flexure of, hepatic, 1309
frontal artery, 628
convolution, 872
lumbar vein, 753, 765
right, 752
mesocolon, 1258
nerve tract, 961
oblique muscle of abdomen, 437
palatine artery, 606
parietal artery, 628
convolution, 876
pharyngeal artery, 610
ramus of ischium, 212
of pubis, 213
root of fifth nerve, 948, 1026
vena cava, 764
Association fibres of cerebrum, 916
Astragalo-scaphoid articulation, 354
ligament, superior, 354
Astragalus, 244
articulations of, 245
body of, 244
head of, 244
neck of, 244
surfaces of, 244, 245
Asterion, 75, 138
Atlanto-axial ligament, anterior, 274
posterior, 275
-odontoid joint of Cruveilhier, 274
Atlas, 50
arches of, 51
attachment of muscles to, 60
development of, 59
lateral masses of, 51
ligament of, transverse, 275
processes of, 51
Atlo-axoid ligament, anterior, 274
posterior, 275
Atrabiliary capsules, 1430
Atria of left bronchus, 1378
Atrium, 1150
of nasal fossæ, 1100
meatus, 145
Attic, 1150
tympanic, 87
Attollens auriculam muscle, 369
relations of, 369
Attrahens auriculam muscle, 369
relations of, 369
Auditory arteries, 1176
internal, 639
canal, external, 1148
meatus, external, 138, 1148
arteries of, 1149
cartilaginous portion of, 1148
lymphatics of, 1150
nerves of, 1150
osseous portion of, 1149
relations of, 1149
skin of, 1149
surface form of, 1150
veins of, 1150
internal, 133
fundus of, 1168
nerve, 1050
nuclei of, 925
origin of, 1050
roots of, 1050, 1051
surgical anatomy of, 1054
nuclei, 950
accessory, 950
dorsal, 950
inner, 950
ventral, 950
paths, 1053
process, 88
teeth, 1173
veins, 1176
Auerbach's plexus, 1299
Auricle of ear, 1144
of heart, fibres of, 575
left, 568
sinus of, 568
right, 565
sinus of, 565
Auricular appendices, 565
appendix, left, 568
right, 565
artery, anterior, 611
posterior, 609
branches of, 610
branch of pneumogastric nerve, 1060
fissure, 90, 136
nerves, anterior, 1038
great, 972
posterior, 1047
region, muscles of, 369
action of, 369
dissection of, 369
surface of sacrum, 63
vein, anterior, 726
Auricular vein, posterior, 727
Auriculo-temporal nerve, 1037
-ventricular groove of heart, 565
opening, left, 569
right, 566
Axes of pelvis, 218
Axilla, dissection of, 463
ligament of, suspensory, 464
surgical anatomy of, 645
Axillary arch, 413, 464, 646
artery, 646
branches of, 650
peculiarities of, 649
relations of, 648
surface marking of, 649
surgical anatomy of, 649
border of scapula, 174
fascia, 463, 646
glands, 790
space, 645
veins, 747
surgical anatomy of, 748
Axis, 52
apex of, 52
attachment of muscles to, 60
body of, 52
cerebro-spinal, 832
cœliac, 671
cylinder of nerve-fibre, 822
of Purkinje, 822
development of, 59
ligament of malleus, 1161
odontoid process of, 52
optic, 1106
pedicles of, 52
processes of, 53
thoracic, 651
thyroid, 640
visual, 1106
Axone of nerve-cells, 821
Azygos arteries, articular, 711
of vagina, 687
uvulæ muscle, 405
relations of, 405
veins, 752
larger, 752
left lower, 753
upper, 753
right, 752
smaller, 753
surgical anatomy of, 753

B

Back, fascia of, deep, 411
superficial, 411
muscles of, dissection of, 420
fifth layer, 420
first layer, 410
fourth layer, 417
second layer, 414
surface forms of, 424
third layer, 415
Baillarger, nerve-fibres of, 920
Band of Gennari, 918
of Giacomini, 879
of Meckel, 1160
Bartholin, duct of, 1217
glands of, 1482
Base of brain 881
of sacrum, 64
of skull, 130
surfaces of, 130
Basi-hyal of hyoid bone, 153
Basil coil of cochlea, 1167
Basilar artery, 639
branches of, 639
groove, 75
lymph-sinus, 1306

Basilar membrane of cochlea, 1167
process, 71
sinus, 743
suture, 128
vein, 735
Basilic vein, 746
median, 746
Basis vertebranum, venæ, 753
Basion, 73
Basket-cells of cerebellum, 936
Bauhin, valve of, 1308
Beak of corpus callosum, 886
Beaunis et Bouchard, table of development of fœtus from, 1547
Bechterew, nerve-fibres of, 920
nucleus of, 926, 1050
Bell, respiratory nerve of, external, 983
internal, 974
Bertin, bones of, 97
columns of, 1416
ligament of, 328
Biaxial articulation, 265
Biceps flexor cubiti muscle, 475
muscles, 475, 529
bursa of, 476
relations of, 476, 530
Bichat, fissure of, 900
Bicipital fascia, 476, 746
groove, 179
ridges, 179
tuberosity, 190
Bicornate uterus, 1493
Bicuspid teeth, 1198
valve, 572
cusps of, 572
Bigelow, ligament of, 328
Bile, 1346
canaliculi, 1341
-capillaries, 1341
-duct, common, 1344
arteries of, 1346
dimensions of, 1345
lymphatics of, 806, 1346
nerves of, 1346
structure of, 1345
surgical anatomy of, 1347
veins of, 1346
papilla, 1288
Bipenniform muscles, 363
Bipolar cells, 820
Biventer cervicis muscle, 420
Biventral lobe of cerebellum, 931
Bladder, 1431
apex of, 1435
arteries of, 1439
base of, 1435
body of, 1435
cervix of, 1435
female, 1446
fundus of, 1435
ligaments of, 1435
lymphatics of, 802, 1439
mucous coat of, 1437
membrane of, 1438
muscular coat of, 1437
neck of, 1435
nerves of, 1440
serous coat of, 1437
structure of, 1437
submucous coat of, 1437
summit of, 1435
surface form of, 1440
surfaces of, 1433
inner, 1438
surgical anatomy of, 1440
trigone of, 1438
veins of, 1439
Blade bone, 171
Blind spot, 1121
Blood supply of cord, 840
Blood-vascular system, 555
Blood-vessels of bone, 39
Bochdalek, ganglion of, 1033
Body, carotid, 1409
cavernous, artery of, 691
coccygeal, 1410
pituitary, 882
thyroid, 1401
of a vertebra, 49
Bones, acetabulum, 213
apophysis of, 34
areolæ of, primary, 44
secondary, 45
astragalus, 244
atlas, 50
axis, 52
of Bertin, 97
blood-vessels of, 39
breast, 155
calcaneum, 242
canaliculi of, 46
cancellous, 35
carpus, 193
chemical composition of, 41
clavicle, 167
coccyx, 65
compact, 35
cranial, 71
cuboid, 245
cuneiform of, foot, 247
of hand, 197
diploë of, 34
ear, 1158
eminences and depressions of, 34
epactal, 103
epicteric, 103
epiphysis of, 34
ethmoid, 98
of face, 104
femur, 221
fibula, 237
flat, 34
of foot, 239
frontal, 79
growth of, 42
of hand, 193
Haversian canals of, 38
systems of, 38
humerus, 177
hyoid, 153
ilium, 207
incus, 1158
inter-maxillary, 110
irregular, 34
ischium, 210
of jaw, upper, changes produced in, by age, 112
lachrymal, 112
lacunæ of, 38
lamella of, 38
articular, 259
of leg, 230
lingual, 153
long, 33
lymphatics of, 41
malar, 113
malleus, 1158
marrow of, 36
maxillary, inferior, 122
superior, 105
medullary spaces of, 45
metacarpal, 200
metatarsal, 249
mixed, 34
nasal, 104
navicular, 195, 246
nerves of, 41
occipital, 71
Bones, orbicular, 1159
os calcis, 242
innominatum, 207
magnum, of carpus, 199
ossification of, 42
intracartilaginous, 43
intramembranous, 43
palate, 115
parietal, 76
patella, 230
pelvic, 215
periosteum of, 37
phalanges of foot, 252
of hand, 204
pisiform, 197
ploughshare, 120
pre-maxillary, 110
pubis, 212
radius, 190
ribs, 159
sacrum, 61
scaphoid, of foot, 246
of hand, 195
scapula, 171
semilunar, 196
sesamoid, 257
short, 33
sphenoid, 92
spongy, 97
sternum, 155
structure of, 34
supernumerary, 103
surface of, 34
sutural, 103
tarsus, 242
temporal, 83
thigh, 221
tibia, 233
trapezium, 198
trapezoid, 198
turbinated, inferior, 119
middle, 101
sphenoidal, 143
superior, 101
tympanic 91
ulna, 184
unciform, 199
veins of, 41
vertebra prominens, 53
vertebræ, cervical, 49
dorsal, 53
lumbar, 56
thoracic, 53
vomer, 120
wedge, 247
Wormian, 103
Bony canal of cochlea, 1167
Bosom, 1503
Bowman's capsule, 1418
glands of, 1101
membrane, 1109
muscle, 1115
Brachia of corpora quadrigemina, 911
Brachial artery, 652
branches of, 655
peculiarities of, 653
relations of, 652
surface marking of, 654
surgical anatomy of, 654
lymphatic glands, 788
plexus, 977
branches of, 981
relations of, 980
surgical anatomy of, 991
region, anterior, muscles of, 479
posterior, muscles of, 486
veins, 747
Brachialis anticus muscle, 476
relations of, 476
Brachio-cephalic vein, 750

Brachium, 904
Brain, 857
  arteries of, cortical, 631
  base of, 881
  blood-vessels of, 629
  capsule of, external, 894
    internal, 894
  commissures of, 903
  communication of the parts of, 863
  convolutions of, 865
  development of, 857
  dissection of, 847
  dura mater of, 847
  ganglionic vessels of, central, 630
  general considerations and divisions of, 864
  gyri of, 865
  hemispheres of, 864
    surfaces of, under, 881
  infundibulum of, 882
  little, 926
  lobes of, 872
  membranes of, arachnoid, 851
  meninges of, 847
  pia mater of, 854
  sand, 906
  ventricle of, fifth, 897
    lateral, 888
    third, 901
    Vergas, 896
  weight of, 951
Breast bone, 155
Bregma, 129
Bregmatic fontanelle, 103
Breschet, canals of, 733
Brim of pelvis, 217
Broad ligaments of liver, 1333
    of uterus, 1490
Broca, area of, 881
  "cap" of, 874
  convolution of, 874
Bronchi, 1376
  relations of, 1376
Bronchial arteries, 666
  branch of innominate, 594
  glands, 1380
  septum, 1380
  veins, 753
Bronchus, left, 1378
  right, 1376
Brown striæ of Retzius, 1204
Bruch, membrane of, 1114
Brunner's glands, 1295
Bruns, falciform margin of, 515
  space of, 388
Bubonocele, 1521
Buccal artery, 615
  cavity, 1193
  glands, 1195
  lymphatic glands, 782
  nerve, 1037, 1049
Buccinator crest, 124
  glands, 782
  muscle, 380
    relations of, 380
  nerve, 1037
Bucco-pharyngeal fascia, 380, 388, 401, 1222
Bulb, artery of, 691
    surgical anatomy of, 691
  of corpus cavernosum, 1456
    spongiosum, 1457
  of internal jugular vein, 729
  nerve to, 1013
  olfactory, 880, 1019
  spinal, 938
  of urethra, male, 1458
  vaginal, 1483
Bulbar arteries, 639
Bulbar portion of conjunctiva, 1140
  of spinal accessory nerve, 1063
Bulbi vestibuli, 1483
Bulbo-cavernous muscle, 457
Bulla ethmoidalis, 145, 1099
Bundle of Vicq d'Azyr, 883
Burdach, tract of, 839, 843
Bursæ of ankle, 543
  anserina, 530
  of biceps muscle, 476
  of coraco-brachialis muscle, 475
  of elbow, 311
  of extensor carpi radialis brevior muscle, 486
  of foot, 543
  of gastrocnemius muscle, 534
  of great trochanter, 331
  gluteo-femoral, 331
  of hand, 492
  of hip, 330
  iliac, subtendinous, 331
  ilio-pectineal, 330
  infrapatellar, deep, 340
  infraspinatus, 305, 473
  ischio-gluteal, 331
  of knee, 340
  of latissimus dorsi muscle, 474
  obturator, 331
    internus muscle, 525
  olecranon, 311
    subcutaneous, 477
  ovarian, 1490
  patellar, 518
  pharyngeal, 1224
  prepatellar, 340
  of pyriformis muscle, 525
  of semimembranous muscle, 531
  of shoulder, 305
  sterno-hyoid, 391
  subacromial, 305, 471
  subcutanea prominentiæ laryngeæ, 1362
  subcutaneous acromial, 305
    trochanteric, 331
  subdeltoid, 305, 471
  subscapular, 305, 472
  suprapatellar, 340
  synovial, subcutaneous, 263
    subtendinous, 263
  of tendo Achillis, 535
  tibial, subcutaneous, 340
  of tibialis anticus muscle, 532
  wrist, 492
Bursal synovial membrane, 263

C

Cæcal fold, inferior, 1264
    superior, 1263
Cæcum, 1300
  arteries of, 1305
  interior of, 1303
  lymphatics of, 1306
  supports of, 1302
  veins of, 1306
  vestibulare, 1170
Cælum, 1236
Cajal, horizontal cells of, 1125
  neurones of, 919
Calamus scriptorius, 943
Calcaneal nerves, external, 1014
    internal, 1015
Calcanean artery, external, 718
    internal, 719
Calcaneo-astragaloid ligament, external, 352
Calcaneo-astragaloid ligament, internal, 352
    posterior, 352
  -cuboid ligament, internal, 353
    long, 353
    short, 353
    superior, 353
  -navicular ligament, 353
  -plantar nerve, 1015
  -scaphoid ligament, external, 353
    inferior, 354
    internal, 354
    superior, 353
Calcaneus, 242
  anterior extremity of, 242
  articulations of, 244
  attachment of muscles to, 244
  body of, 242
  posterior extremity of, 242
  process of, greater, 243
    lesser, 243
  surfaces of, 242, 243
  tuberosity of, 243
Calcar avis, 889
  femorale, 227
Calcarine fissure, 870
Calf bone, 237
Calices of kidney, 1415
Callosal convolution, 879
  sulcus, 879, 885
Calloso-marginal sulcus, 870
Calvaria, 71
Camper, fascia of, 433
Canalis centralis cochleæ, 89
  reuniens of Hensen, 1170
  spiralis modioli, 1169
Canaliculi of bone, 46
Canaliculus tympanicus, 1151
Canals, acoustic, external, 1148
  adductor, 698
  Alcock's, 1011, 1536
  alimentary, 1193
  anal, 1315
  of appendix, 1304
  for Arnold's nerve, 90
  auditory, 1148
  of Breschet, 733
  carotid, 136
  central, of cord, 840
  cervical, 1491
  for chorda tympani, 8
  of Cloquet, 1129
  of cochlea, 1167
    membranous, 1172
  crural, 1531
  dental, 1202
    anterior, 107
    inferior, 324
    posterior, 106
  diploic, 733
  ethmoidal, 82, 100
  for Eustachian tube, 1154
  fascial, 1536
  femoral, 509, 1531
  Haversian, 38
  of Huguier, 84, 1047
  Hunter's, 521, 698
  hyaloid, 1129
  incisor, 110
  infraorbital, 107, 140
  inguinal, 448, 1517
  for Jacobson's nerve, 90
  lachrymal, 1142
  malar, 114
  medullary, 857
  naso-palatine, 121
  neural, 857
  neurenteric, 1242
  of Nuck, 1462, 1501
  obturator, 525

Canals, palatine, anterior, 143
posterior, 107, 116
accessory, 116, 135
palato-maxillary, 107
of Petit, 1130
pterygo-palatine, 135
pterygoid, 135
sacral, 64
of Schlemm, 1108, 1111
semicircular, 1165
spermatic, 448, 1517
spinal, 69
of Stilling, 1129
for tensor tympani, 91, 1153
vertebral, 49
Vidian, 96, 135
Volkmann's, 38
of Wirsung, 1351
Cancellous bone, 35
lamellæ of, 39
Canine eminence, 106
fossa, 106, 140
teeth, 1197
Canthi of eyelids, 1138
"Cap" of Broca, 874
Capillaries, histology of, 584
Capitellum of humerus, 181
Capsula extrema, 894
Capsular ligaments. *See* Individual joints.
Capsules, atrabiliary, 1430
Bowman's, 1418
of brain, external, 894
internal, 892
fibres of, 892
cartilage, 260
of Glisson, 770, 1256, 1337
of kidneys, fatty, 1411
true, 1415
of lens, 1130
parotid, 1216
of prostate gland, 1449
suprarenal, 1428
of Ténon, 1103
Caput, cornu of cord, 839
gallinaginis, 1442
Cardia, 1270
Cardiac depression of liver, 1327
ganglion of Wrisberg, 1081
glands, 1278
lymphatics, 815
muscular fibres, 361
nerve, cervical, 1061
great, 1077
inferior, 1077
middle, 1077
minor, 1077
superior, 1076
thoracic, 1061
orifice of stomach, 1270
plexus of nerves, 1081
anterior, 1081
deep, 1081
great, 1081
superficial, 1081
portion of stomach, 1269
veins, 770
anterior, 771
great, 770
left, 771
middle, 771
posterior, 771
right, 771
Cardio-motor nerves, 1071
Carina urethralis vaginæ, 1484
Carotico-tympanic nerve, 1073
Carotid arteries, common, 595
branches of, occasional, 598
peculiarities of, 598
relations of, 596
Carotid arteries, common, surface form of, 598
surgical anatomy of, 598
external, 600
branches of, 601
relations of, 600
surface form of, 601
surgical anatomy of, 601
internal, 619
branches of, 621
cavernous portion, 621
cerebral portion, 621
cervical portion 620
peculiarities of, 621
petrous portion, 620
relations of, 620
surgical anatomy of, 621
body, 1409
canal, 136
foramen, external, 89
internal, 88
ganglion, 1073
gland, 786, 1409
surgical anatomy of, 1409
groove, 93
nerves, 1057
plexus, 1073
sheath, 388
triangle, inferior, 616
superior, 394, 617
tubercle, 51
Carpal arch, anterior, 659
posterior, 659
artery, radial, anterior, 659
posterior, 659
ulnar, anterior, 663
posterior, 663
bones, development of, 205
Carpo-metacarpal articulations, 321
Carpus, 193
articulations of, 319
first row, 319
second row, 319
common characters of, 193
ligaments of, 319
surface form of, 204
surgical anatomy of, 204
Cartilage, 259
accessory quadrate, 1097
alar, 1097
of aperture of nose, 1097
articular, 259
arytenoid, 1364
capsule, 260
costal, 164
cricoid, 1363
cuneiform, 1365
of ear, 1146
elastic, 260
ensiform, 155
of epiglottis, 1365
epiphysial, 36, 44
fibro-, 260
hyaline, 259
intrathyroid, 1363
of Jacobson, 1097
of larynx, 1362
of nose, 1096
permanent, 259
of pinna, 1146
of Santorini, 1365
sesamoid, 1097
spaces, 260
temporary, 259
thyroid, 1362
of trachea, 1378
triangular, of septum of nose, 1097
vomerine, 1097
of Wrisberg, 1365
Cartilage, xiphoid, 155
Cartilaginous isthmus of pinna, 1146
portion of Eustachian tube, 1154
of external auditory meatus 1148
Cartilago triticea, 1365
Caruncle, lachrymal, 1142
Caruncula lacrimalis, 1140
major of Santorini, 1288
minor of Santorini, 1288
Carunculæ mystiformæ, 1482
Casserius, perforating nerve of, 985
Cauda equina, 1006
helicis, 1146
Caudal gut, 1242
Caudate lobe of liver, 1333
nucleus, 891
bulb of, 891
head of, 891
surcingle of, 891
tail of, 891
Cava, ascending, 764
inferior, 764
peculiarities of, 764
superior, 752
Cave of Meckel, 848
Cavernous body, artery of, 691
groove, 93
nerves of penis, 1086
plexus, 1073
portion of internal carotid artery, 621
of urethra, 1443
sinus, 739
surgical anatomy of, 740
Cavity, buccal, 1193
of cervix uteri, 1491
cotyloid, 213
glenoid, 175
of larynx, 1368
of Meckel, 848
of mouth, 143
nasal, 142
oral, 1193
of pelvis, 1431
pericardiothoracic, 1236
of pleura, 1382
pleuroperitoneal, 1236
sigmoid, of radius, 191
of ulna, 186
of thorax, 556
of tunica vaginalis, 1470
tympanic, 1150
of uterus, 1491
Cavum conchæ, 1145
Meckelii, 1027
oris proprium, 1193
Cells, amacrine, 1125
basket, 936
bipolar, 820
centro-acinar, of Langerhans, 1352
of Claudius, 1175
column, lateral, 846
of Deiters, 1175
enamel, 1206
ethmoidal, 82, 100
posterior, 145
of Golgi, 821
gustatory, 1091
of Hensen, 1175
hepatic, 1338
horizontal, of Cajal, 1125
of Martinotti, 921
mastoid, 86
multipolar, 820
nerve, 820
axone of, 821

Cells, nerve, dendrites of, 821
development of, 823
epithelium, 830
olfactory, 1101
oxyntic, 1277
parietal, 1277
peptic, of glands, 1277
prickle, 1109
of Purkinje, 925
of Sertoli, 1472
sphenoidal, 94
unipolar, 820
Cementum of teeth, 1204
development of, 1207
Central canal of cord, 840
coil of cochlea, 1167
ganglionic vessels of brain, 630
lobe of cerebrum, 878
sulcus of Rolando, 867
tendon of diaphragm, 429
Centrifugal projection fibres of cerebrum, 914
Centripetal projection fibres of cerebrum, 914
Centro-acinar cells of Langerhans, 1352
Centrum ovale majus of Vieussens, 886
minus, 885
vertebra, 48
Cephalic vein, 747
median, 746
Cephalo-auricular angle, 1144
Cerato-hyals of hyoid bone, 154
Cerebellar arteries, anterior inferior, 640
posterior inferior, 639
superior, 640
columns, 843
notch, anterior, 926
posterior, 926
tract, antero-lateral, ascending, 842
descending, 843
direct, 843
dorso-lateral, 843
path of, 963
veins, deep, 736
superficial, 736
inferior, 736
superior, 736
Cerebellum, 926
amygdala of, 931
corpus dentatum of, 937
cortex of, 936
fibres of, 932
proper, 936
fissures of, 927
frænulum of, 928
ganglion of, 937
gray matter of, 936
hemispheres of, 885, 926
lamina of, 927
lobes of, 926, 928
nodules of, 930
peduncles of, 932, 943
superior, 910
structure of, internal, 931
surfaces of, inferior, lobes on, 930
under, 929
upper, 927
tonsil of, 931
uvula of, 931
vallecula of, 926
vermiform process of, 926
weight of, 938
white matter of, 931
Cerebral artery, anterior, 626
branches of, 626
middle, 627
Cerebral artery, middle, branches of, 628
posterior, 640
convolutions, 857
cranium, 71
hemorrhage, arteries of, 628
localization, 953
lymphatic vessels, 779
nerves, 1019
peduncles, 906
portion of internal carotid artery, 621
veins, 734
cortical, 735
deep, 735
inferior, 735
median, 735
superficial, 735
superior, 735
ventricles, 888
Cerebro-cortico-pontal nerve paths, 960
Cerebro-spinal axis, 832
nervous system, structure of, 817
Cerebrum, commissure of, anterior, 896
fibres of, 914
fissures of, longitudinal, 865, 882
gray matter of, 918
hemispheres of, 864
constituent parts of, 864
general considerations of, 864
surface of, 865
external, lobes on, 869
mesial, fissures of, 869
sulci of, 869
outer, fissures of, 865
sulci of, 865
tentorial, fissures of, 869
sulci of, 869
interior of, 885
parts composing, 885
peduncles of, 882, 884
structure of, 913
ventricles of, 888, 900, 901
white matter of, 913
Ceruminous glands, 1149
Cervical artery, ascending, 641
deep, 646
superficial, 642
transverse, 642
canal, 1491
cardiac nerves, 1061
fascia, deep, 387
superficial, 386
surgical anatomy of, 389
ganglion, inferior, 1077
branches, central communicating, 1077
peripheral, 1077
middle, 1076
branches of, central communicating, 1076
peripheral, 1077
superior, 1072
branches of, 1073
central, 1073
communicating, 1073
peripheral, 1073
surgical anatomy of, 1077
glands, deep, 786
accessory chains to, 787
lower, 787
upper, 786
superficial, 784
anterior, 784
nerves, 968
divisions of, anterior, 971
Cervical nerves, divisions of, dorsal, 968
from facial nerve, 1049
posterior, 968
roots of, 968
superficial, 973
pleura, 1385
plexus, 972
branches, deep, 974
superficial, 972
posterior, 970
surgical anatomy of, 977
portion of internal carotid artery, 620
of œsophagus, 1226
region, superficial, muscles of, 386
rib, 53
veins, anterior deep, 733
posterior deep, 733
vertebra, seventh, 53
vertebræ, 49
laminæ of, 49
body of, 49
pedicles of, 49
processes of, 50
Cervicalis ascendens muscle, 419
Cervico-facial nerve, 1049
Cervix of bladder, 1435
cornu of cord, 839
uteri, 1488
cavity of, 1491
Chassaignac's tubercle, 69
Check ligaments, 278
of eye, 1105
Cheeks, 1195
mucous membrane of, 1195
surgical anatomy of, 1224
Chemical composition of bone, 41
of nervous tissue, 824
Chest, 155
articulations of, 159
attachment of muscles to, 159
boundaries of, 155
development of, 158
structure of, 158
surface form of, 156
surgical anatomy of, 165
Chiasma or optic commissure, 1021
Chink of glottis, 1369
Choanæ, 146
Chondro-glossus muscle, 397
-sternal ligament, anterior, 288
interarticular, 288
posterior, 288
-xiphoid ligament, anterior, 288
posterior, 288
Chorda tympani nerve, 1047
Chordæ tendineæ of left ventricle, 573
of right ventricle, 570
Willisi, 737
Choroid arteries, anterior, 628
posterior, 640
coat of eye, 1111
structure of, 1112
fissure, 890, 900
nerves of, 1120
plexus, 899
of body of ventricle, 900
of fourth ventricle, 901
of lateral ventricle, 900
of third ventricle, 901
vein, 735
Chromatophile granules, 820
Chyli receptaculum, 624
Cilia, or eyelashes, 1137

Ciliary arteries, anterior, 625
long, 625
short, 625
body, 1115
ganglion, 1031
long root of, 1030
glands, 1190
ligament, 1116
margin, 1117
muscles, 1115
nerves, long, 1030
short, 1030
processes of eye, 1115
structure of, 1115
Cingulum, 879, 918
Circle of Willis, 629, 640
Circular sinus, 742
Circulus of iris, major, 625
minor, 625
tonsillaris, 1036
Circumanal glands, 1190
Circumduction, 274
Circumflex arteries of arm, 651
of thigh, 705
iliac artery, deep, 697
superficial, 704
vein, deep, 759
nerve, 984
lower branch, 985
upper branch, 985
vein, deep, 758
superficial, 756
Circumflexus muscle, 404
relations of, 404
Circumpatellar anastomosis, 711
Circumvallate papillæ of tongue, 1089
Cistern of Pecquet, 775
Cisterna basalis, 852
magna, 853
pontis, 853
Clado, appendiculo-ovarian ligament of, 1304
Clarke, vesicular column of, 843
Claudius, cells of, 1175
Claustrum, 894
Clava of fasciculus gracilis, 941
Clavicle, 167
articulations of, 170
attachment of muscles to, 170
development of, 170
peculiarities of, in sexes and individuals, 170
structure of, 170
surface form of, 170
surgical anatomy of, 170
Clavicular facet, 157
Clavi-pectoral fascia, 467
Clinoid process, anterior, 131
middle, 93, 132
posterior, 93, 132
Clitoris, 1479
arteries of, 1480
crus of, 1480
frænum of, 1479
muscles of, 461
nerves of, 1480
dorsal, 1013
prepuce of, 1479
Clivus, 93
monticuli of cerebellum, 928
Cloquet, canal of, 1129
gland of, 795, 798
ligament of, 1466
septum crurale of, 509
Coccygeal artery, 693
body, 1410
gland, 1410
ligament, 833
Coccygeal nerve, divisions of, anterior, 1009
posterior, 1008
Coccygeus muscle, 455
Coccyx, 65
apex of, 66
articulation of, 67
attachment of muscles to, 67
base of, 66
borders of, 66
cornua of, 66
development of, 66
surfaces of, 66
Cochlea, 1165
canal of, bony, 1167
membranous, 1172
spiral, 1167
lamina spiralis of, 1167
ligament of, spiral, 1172
nerve, 1053
Cochlear artery, 1126
path, 1053
root of eighth nerve, 1051
window, 1152
Cœliac artery, 671
axis, 671
glands, 800
plexus, 1061, 1084
Colic area of kidneys, 1414
artery, left, 678
middle, 676
right, 675
glands, 808
impression of liver, 1329
plexus, 1085
Collar bone, 167
Collateral fissure, 871
intercostal artery, 668
Colles' fascia, 456, 1515
ligament, 437
Colliculus nervi optici, 1364
Colloid material, 1404
Colon, 1309
ascending, 1309
descending, 1309
pelvic, 1311
sigmoid, 1311
surgical anatomy of, 1326
transverse, 1309
Colostrum corpuscles, 1507
Columella cochleæ, 1166
Column of Marchi and Lowenthal, 843
Columna nasi, 1096
Columnæ carneæ of left ventricle, 573
of right ventricle, 570
Columns of Bertin, 1416
cerebellar, 843
of Morgagni, 1319
of spinal cord, 838
of vagina, 1484
Comes nervi ischiadici artery, 693
mediana artery, 663
phrenici artery, 644
Comma tract, descending, 844
Commissura hippocampi, 896
Commissural fibres of cerebrum, 916
Commissure of brain, anterior, 896
gray, 903
middle, 903
posterior, 903
soft, 903
Gudden's, 912, 1021
of habenula, 904
of Meynert, 908
optic, 131, 882, 1021
of spinal cord, 839
anterior, 839
gray, 839
Commissure of spinal cord, gray, anterior, 839
posterior, 839
posterior, 839
white, 839
Common carotid artery, 595
facial vein, 726
femoral artery, 699
iliac arteries, 681
glands, 799
vein, 764
temporal vein, 727
ulnar vein, 745
Communicantes hypoglossi nerve, 974
Communicating arteries, anterior cerebral, 627
posterior cerebral, 628
of ulnar, anterior, 662
Compact bone, 35
longitudinal section of, 39
transverse section of, 38
Complexus muscle, 420
relations of, 420
Compressor narium minor muscle, 376
sacculi laryngis, 1373
urethræ muscle in female, 462
in male, 460
Conarium, 905
Concentric lines of Schreger, 1203
Concha auriculæ, 1145
Conducting tracts of cord, 841
Conductor sonorus, 945
Condyles of bones. *See* Bones.
Condylic portion of occipital bone, 71
Condyloid articulation, 265
foramen, anterior, 73, 133, 136
posterior, 73, 133, 136
fossa, anterior, 136
posterior, 136
glands of Leaf, 795
process, 125
Cone-bipolars, 1125
-granules of retina, 1126
Cones of retina, 1126
Congenital hernia, 1523
Conglobate glands, 774
Conical papillæ, 1090
Conjugate diameter of pelvis, 217
Conjunctiva, 1140
bulbar portion of, 1140
fornix of, 1140
glands of, 1140
nerves of, 1140
palpebral portion of, 1140
surgical anatomy of, 1144
Connective tissue, subserous, 1246
Conoid ligament, 300
tubercle, 168
Constriction lobe of liver, 1336
Constrictor isthmi faucium muscle, 398, 405
muscles, inferior, 400
middle, 401
superior, 401
urethræ muscle in female, 462
in male, 460
Conus arteriosus, 569
terminalis, 837
Convolutions, angular, 876
of brain, 865
of Broca, 874
callosal, 879
dentate, 879
frontal, 872
hippocampal, 879
of limbic lobe, 879
marginal, 873

Convolutions, occipital, 877
occipito-temporal, 878
orbital, internal, 873
parietal, 876
ascending, 876
post-parietal, 876
precuneus, 877
quadrati, 877
subcalcarine, 877
subcollateral, 878
supramarginal, 876
temporal, 877
uncinate, 879
Cooper, ligament of, 437, 448
Coraco-acromial ligament, 301
-brachialis muscle, 475
bursa of, 475
relations of, 475
-clavicular ligament, 300
-humeral ligament, 304
Coracoid ligament, 302
process, 175
Cord, gangliated, 1071
cervical portion of, 1071
lumbar portion of, 1079
pelvic portion of, 1080
sacral portion of, 1080
thoracic portion of, 1078
spermatic, 1466
spinal. *See* Spinal cord.
vocal, 1370
Cordiform tendon of diaphragm, 429
Corium, 1180
corpus papillare of, 1181
of tongue, 1089
Cornea, 1108
arteries of, 1111
nerves of, 1111
structure of, 1109
Corneal endothelium, 1111
spaces, 1110
Cornical tubercle of Santorini, 1368
Cornicula laryngis, 1365
Cornu ammonis, 897
commissural tract, 844
of lateral ventricle, 889
Cornua of coccyx, 66
of hyoid bone, 154
sacral, 62
Corona ciliaris, 1115
glandis, 1454
Coronal suture, 78, 127
Coronary artery, 671
of heart, 590
descending, 590
infundibular, 590
marginal, 590
peculiarities of, 591
transverse, 590
of lip, inferior, 607
superior, 607
of stomach, 671
ligament of knee, 340
of liver, 1334
plexus, 1085
anterior, 1081
left, 1081
posterior, 1081
right, 1081
sinus, 567, 771
valve, 567
vein, 768
left, 770
small, 771
Coronoid fossa, 181
process of jaw, 125
of ulna, 186
Corpora albicantia, 883
bigemina, 911
Corpora cavernosa, 1455
arteries of, 1458
bulb of, 1456
structure of, 1457
trabeculæ of, 1457
veins of, 1458
geniculata, 911
mammillaria, 883
peduncles of, 883
quadrigemina, 907, 911
brachia of, 119
structure of, 911
Corpus albicans, 895
Arantii, 571, 573
callosum, 882, 886
beak of, 886
body of, 886
pad of, 886
peduncles of, 882, 886
rostrum of, 886
splenium of, 886
cavernosum, artery of, 691
dentatum of cerebellum, 937
of olive, 951
fimbriatum, 890, 896, 898
of olivary body, 951
papillare of corium, 1181
spongiosum, 1458
structure of, 1458
striatum, 890
Corpuscles of Herbst, 829
Malpighian, of kidney, 1417
of spleen, 1358
Pacinian, 828
of Purkinje, 936
tactile, 827
of Vater, 828
Corrugator cutis ani muscle, 449
supercilii muscle, 371
relations of, 371
Cortex of cerebellum, 936
of cerebrum, cells of, 919
gray matter of, 918
nerve-fibres of, 920
Corti, ganglion of, 1053
membrane of, 1175
organ of, 1173
rods of, 1174
tunnel of, 1174
Cortical arteries of brain, 631
cerebral veins, 735
portion of kidney, 1416
of suprarenal capsule, 1430
of thymus gland, 1408
substance of teeth, 1204
Costal cartilages, 164
attachment of muscles to, 164
borders of, 164
extremities of, 164
surfaces of, 164
facet, 169
pleura, 1385
process, 50
surface of lungs, 1391
Costo-axillary vein, 748
-central articulations, 283
-chondral articulations, 290
-clavicular ligament, 298
-coracoid ligament, 467
membrane, 467
-mediastinal sinus, 1386
-sternal articulations, 287
-transverse articulations, 285
foramen, 50
ligament, long, 285
middle, 286
posterior, 286
-vertebral articulations, 283
ligament, anterior, 284
Costo-xiphoid ligament, anterior, 288
posterior, 288
Cotunnis, nerve of, 1036
Cotyloid cavity, 213
ligament, 329
notch, 213
Cowper's glands, 1453
structure of, 1453
Cranial bones, 71
fossa, 143
nerves, 1019
path of, 962
reflex, 963
region, dissection of, 366
fascia of, superficial, 366
lymphatics of, 779
vessels of, 782
sutures, 127
Cranio-cerebral topography, 954
Cranium, 71
cerebral, 71
development of, 102
differences in size and form of, 146
fasciæ of, 365
lymphatics of, 779
membranous, 102
muscles of, 365
Cremaster muscle, 439, 1516
Cremasteric artery, 696
fascia, 1464, 1516
Crescentric lobe, anterior, 928
posterior, 928
Crescents of Gianuzzi, 1218
Crest, buccinator, 124
ethmoidal, 94
falciform, 89
frontal, 80, 130
incisor, 111
infratemporal, 95
lachrymal, 113
bone, 141
nasal, 111, 116
obturator, 213
occipital, external, 72, 136
internal, 74, 133
sphenoidal, 94
supramastoid, 84, 137
temporal, 76, 80, 84
of tibia, 234
turbinated, inferior, 107, 117
superior, 117
Cribriform fascia, 512, 1527
lamina, 1108
plate, 130
of ethmoid, 99
Crico-arytenoid articulation, 1367
ligaments, 1367
muscle, lateral, 1373
posterior, 1372
-thyroid artery, 602
articulation, 1367
membrane, 1367
muscle, 1372
-tracheal ligament, 1368
Cricoid cartilage, 1363
borders of, 1364
surfaces of, 1364
Crista falciformis, 89
galli, 99, 130
terminalis, 565
vestibuli, 1164
Crossed descending tract, 842
pyramidal tract, 842
Crucial ligaments of knee, 337
Cruciform ligament, 275
Crura ad cerebrum, 932
ad medullam, 934
ad posterior, 934

Crura cerebri, 884
of diaphragm, 427
of penis, 1454
Crural arch, deep, 448, 1531
superficial, 436, 1529
canal, 509, 1531
nerve, anterior, 1004
ring, 437, 509, 1532
septum, 1532
sheath, 509
Crureus muscle, 517
nerve to, 1006
relations of, 517
Crus cerebri, tegmentum of, 885
of helix, 1145
Crusta of crus cerebri, 907
petrosa of teeth, 1204
Cruveilhier, atlanto-odontoid joint of, 274
glenoid ligament of, 359
Crypts of Lieberkühn, 1295
of Morgagni, 1319
Crystalline lens, 1130
capsule of, 1130
substance of, 1130
structure of, 1131
Cuboid bone, 245
articulations of, 246
attachment of muscles to, 246
surfaces of, 245, 246
tuberosity of, 245
Culmen monticuli cerebelli, 928
Cuneate funiculus, 941
lobe, 877
nucleus, accessory, 948
tubercle, 941
Cuneiform bone, foot, 247
external, 248
articulations of, 249
attachment of muscles to, 249
surfaces of, 248
internal, 247
articulations of, 247
attachment of muscles to, 247
surfaces of, 247
middle, 248
articulations of, 248
attachment of muscles to, 248
surfaces of, 248
of hand, 197
articulations of, 197
surfaces of, 197
cartilages, 1365
tubercle of Wrisberg, 1368
Cuneus, 875
Cupola of cochlea, 1167, 1172
Cushion of epiglottis, 1365
Cusps of bicuspid valve, 572
of tricuspid valve, 570
Cutaneous nerve, external, 985, 1003
internal, 986, 1004
middle, 1004
palmar, 987
perforating, 1011
Cuticle of skin, 1181
Cutis vera, 1180
Cuvier, duct of, 561
Cymba conchæ, 1145
Cystic artery, 674
duct, 1344
plexus of nerves, 1085
vein, 769
Czermak, interglobular spaces of, 1202

D

Dacryon, 141
Dartos of scrotum, 1463
Darwin, tubercle of, 1145
Deciduous teeth, 1196
Decussatio nervorum trochlearium, 1025
Decussation of fillet, 949
of pyramids, 947
Deep annectant gyrus, 867
anterior thoracic nerve, 984
branches of cervical plexus, 974, 976
cardiac plexus, 1081
cerebral veins, 735
cervical artery, 646
fascia, 387
glands, 786
circumflex iliac artery, 697
vein, 759
crural arch, 448, 1531
dorsal vein of penis, 762
epigastric artery, 696
vein, 759
external pudic artery, 704
fascia, 364
of arm, 470, 474
of back, 411
of femoral region, anterior, 513
of forearm, 478
of leg, 532
of shoulder, 470
of thoracic region, anterior, 463
femoral artery, 704
lymphatic glands, 795
inguinal lymphatic glands, 795
lymphatic glands of upper extremity, 790
vessels of abdominal wall, 801
of lower extremity, 797
of upper extremity, 792
muscles of abdomen, 449
palmar arch, 658
fascia, 493
veins, 747
parotid lymphatic glands, 782
patellar bursa, 518
pectoral fascia, 464
perineal fascia, 1538
petrosal nerve, 1073
radial veins, 747
superficial external pudic artery, 704
temporal artery, 614
nerves, 1037
veins, 727
transverse fascia of leg, 537
ulnar veins, 747
veins of foot, 758
of lower extremity, 758
of upper extremity, 747
Deiters, cells of, 1175
nucleus of, 926, 1050
process, 817
Deltoid eminence, 179
impression, 179
muscle, 470
relations of, 471
tubercle, 168
Demilunes of Heidenhain, 1218
Démours, membrane of, 1110
Dendraxones, 821
Dendrites of nerve-cells, 821
Dental artery, inferior, 614
posterior, 615
band, 1205
canal, 1202
Dental canal, anterior, 107
inferior, 124
posterior, 106
fibres, 1202
follicle, 1206
lamina, 1205
nerves, anterior superior, 1033
inferior, 1039
middle superior, 1033
posterior superior, 1032
periosteum, 1204
plexus, superior, 1033
pulp, 1200
sac, 1206
tubuli, 1202
Dentate convolution, 879
gray matter of, 921
fascia, 879, 898
fissure, 871, 879
ligament, 835
Dentinal sheath of Neumann, 1203
tubuli, 1202
Dentine, 1202
development of, 1207
papilla, 1205
Depression, pterygoid, 125
trigeminal, 88
Depressions of bone, 34
Depressor alæ nasi muscle, 376
anguli oris muscle, 378
relations of, 378
labii inferioris muscle, 378
relations of, 378
Dermic coat of hair-follicle, 1188
Dermis, 1180
Descemet, membrane of, 1110
Descendens hypoglossi nerve, 1066
Descending aorta, 665
branch of superior cervical ganglion, 1074
colon, 1309
comma tract, 844
cornu of lateral ventricle, 890
mesocolon, 1258
nerve tract, 959
oblique muscle of abdomen, 433
palatine artery, 615
ramus of ischium, 211
of pubis, 213
root of fifth nerve, 1026
Descent of ovary, 1501
of testicles, 1461
surgical anatomy of, 1462
Detrusor urinæ muscle, 1437
Development of alimentary canal, 1236
of alveoli of teeth, 1207
of atlas, 59
of axis, 59
of brain, 857
of carpal bones, 205
of cementum, 1207
of clavicle, 170
of coccyx, 66
of cranium, 102
of dentine, 1207
of enamel, 1206
of ethmoid bone, 101
of femur, 228
of fibula, 238
of foot, 253
of frontal bone, 82
of humerus, 182
of hyoid bone, 154
of inferior turbinated bone, 120
of lachrymal bone, 113
of liver, 1243

Development of maxillary bone, inferior, 125
of mesentery, 1237
of metacarpal bones, 205
of metatarsal bones, 253
of organs, chronological table of, 1547
of nasal bones, 105
of nerve-cells, 823
-fibres, 823
of occipital bone, 75
of omentum, 1238
of os innominatum, 214
of palate bone, 119
of pancreas, 1244
of parietal bone, 78
of patella, 231
of peritoneal cavity, 1242
of peritoneum, 1234, 1242
of permanent teeth, 1208
of phalanges of foot, 254
of hand, 206
of radius, 192
of ribs, 163
of sacrum, 64
of scapula, 175
of sphenoid bone, 97
of spleen, 1245
of sternum, 158
of superior maxillary bones, 112
of tarsal bones, 253
of teeth, 1204
of temporal bone, 91
of tibia, 236
of tongue, 1242
of tonsils, 1243
of ulna, 189
of vertebræ, 58
of viscera, 1234
of vomer, 122
Wormian, 103
Diagonal sulcus, 868
Diameter of pelvis, 217
Diaphragm, 427
actions of, 430
crura of, 427
lymphatics of, 810
nerves of, 430
openings of, 429
aortic, 429
œsophageal, 430
for vena cava, 430
of pelvis, 1231
pillars of, 427
serous membranes of, 430
tendons of, central, 429
Diaphragma sellæ, 851, 882
Diaphragmatic ganglion, 1084
hernia, 427
lymphatic, 810
pleura, 1386
portion of œsophagus, 1226
Diaphysis, 34
Diarthrosis, 265
Diaxonic cells, 821
Digastric branch of facial nerve, 1048
fossa, 86, 123, 136
lobe of cerebellum, 931
muscle, 393
relations of, 394
nerve, from facial, 1048
Digestion, organs of, 1193
Digital arteries, dorsal, 659
of ulna, 664
fossa, 223
nerves of foot, 1015
hand, 987
Dilator naris anterior muscle, 376
posterior muscle, 376
Dilator tubæ muscle of Rudinger, 1155
Diploë, 34
veins of, 733
Diploic canals, 733
veins, frontal, 734
occipital, 734
parietal external, 734
temporal, anterior, 734
posterior, 734
Direct cerebellar tract, 843
inguinal hernia, 1523
pyramidal tract, 842
Disk, interpubic, 296
intervertebral, 270
optic, 1121
Dissection of axilla, 463
of brain, 847
of internal oblique muscle, 437
of muscles of abdomen, 432
of arm, 470
of auricular region, 369
of back, 410, 414, 415, 417
of cranial region, 366
of femoral region, anterior, 512
internal, 519
posterior, 529
of fibular region, 539
of forearm, 478, 482
of gluteal region, 522
of hand, 491
of iliac region, 508
of infra-hyoid region, 391
of intermaxillary region, 378
of lingual region, 396
of mandibular region, 377
of orbital region, 372
of palatal region, 403
of palpebral region, 370
of pectoral region, 463
of pharyngeal region, 400
of plantar region, 544, 545, 546
of pterygo-mandibular region, 383
of radial region, 484
of scapular region, anterior, 471
posterior, 472
of shoulder, 470
of superficial cervical region 386
of supra-hyoid region, 393
of tibio-fibular region, anterior, 532
posterior, 534, 537
of pancreas, 1348
of perinæum, 1535
of popliteal space, 707
of rectus abdominis muscle, 442
of sole of foot, 542
of spinal cord, 832
of temporal muscle, 382
of transversalis muscle, 441
Diverticulum, Meckel's, 1290
Dorsal artery of penis, 692
auditory nuclei, 950
digital arteries, 659
veins, 745
divisions of cervical nerves, 968
interosseous arteries, 659, 715
nerves, 993
of clitoris, 1013
divisions of, anterior, 993
posterior, 993
of penis, 1013
roots of, 993
region, muscles of, 543
root of eighth nerve, 1051
Dorsal root of spinal nerves, 965
ulnar vein, 745
veins of penis, deep, 762
superficial, 762
vertebræ, 53
bodies of, 53
lamina of, 54
peculiar, 55
pedicles of, 54
processes of, 54
Dorsalis hallucis artery, 716
indicis artery, 659
linguæ artery, 603
nasi artery, 625
pedis artery, 714
branches of, 715
peculiarities of, 715
relations of, 714
surface marking of, 715
surgical anatomy of, 715
pollicis arteries, 659
scapulæ artery, 651
Dorsi-lumbar nerve, 996
-spinal veins, 753
Dorso-lateral cerebellar tract, 843
-median fissure, 838
-ventral fibres of cord, 841
Dorsum ephippii, 93, 152
of penis, 1455
of scapula, 172
sellæ, 93
Douglas, fold of, semilunar, 439, 444
pouch, 1490
Drumhead, 1155
Duct or ducts, aberrant, of epididymis, 1472
alveolar, 1378
of Bartholin, 1217
biliary, 1341
of Cuvier, 561
cystic, 1344
ejaculatory, 1476
galactophorus, 1507
Gärtner's, 1499
hepatic, 1342
interlobular, 1341
of kidney, 1420
lactiferous, 1507
of liver, 1341
lymphatic, right, 778
mammillary, 1507
nasal, 1142
pancreatic, 1351
parotid, 1215
of Rivinus, 1217
seminal, 1472
Stenson's, 1215
of submaxillary gland, 1216
thoracic, 775
thyroglossal, 1090, 1401
Wharton's, 1216
Ductless glands, 1401
Ductus arteriosus, 579
communis choledochus, 1344
endolymphaticus, 89, 1165
venosus, fissure of, 1331
fossa of, 1331
Duodenal area of kidney, 1414
folds, 1260
inferior, 1261
superior, 1261
fossæ, 1260
inferior, 1260
superior, 1261
glands, 1295
impression of liver, 1329
Duodeno-jejunal fossa, 1261
-mesocolic ligaments, 1261
-renal ligament, 1255
Duodenum, 1282

Duodenum, arteries of, 1288
ascending portion of, 1286
descending portion of, 1285
first portion of, 1284
flexure of, superior, 1285
fourth portion of, 1286
horizontal portion of, 1285
interior of, 1288
lymphatics of, 1288
muscular coat of, 1288
nerves of, 1288
peritoneal coat of, 1288
pre-aortic portion of, 1285
second portion of, 1285
structure of, 1288
submucous coat of, 1288
superior portion of, 1284
surgical anatomy of, 1325
suspensory muscle of, 1286
third portion of, 1285
transverse portion of, 1285
veins of, 1288
Dura mater of brain, 847
arteries of, 848
lymphatics of, 849
nerves of, 849
processes of, 849
structure of, 848
veins of, 849
sinuses of, 736
of spinal cord, 832
structure of, 834
Duverney, gland of, 1482

E

Ear, 1144
auditory meatus, external, 1148
auricle, 1144
bones of, 1158
cartilages of, 1146
cochlea, 1165
-drum membrane, secondary, 1152
external, 1144
auricle of, 1144
lobule of, 1145
internal, 1163
labyrinth, 1163
membranous, 1169
osseous, 1164
middle, 1150
muscles of auricle, 1147
of tympanum, 1157
ossicula of, 1158
pinna of, 1144
semicircular canals of, 1165
surgical anatomy of, 1176
trumpet, 1153
tympanum, 1150
v. Ebner, glands of, 1091
Efferent nerve tract, 959
Egg tubes, 1502
Eighth nerve, 1050
origin of, 1050
roots of, 1050
surgical anatomy of, 1054
Ejaculator seminis muscle, 457
urinæ muscle, 457
Ejaculatory ducts, 1476
Elastic cartilage, 260
tissue, yellow, 261
Elbow, bend of, surgical anatomy of, 653
bone, 184
bursa of, 311
-joint, articulations of, 308
surface form of, 312
surgical anatomy of, 312
Elbow, ligament of, anterior, 309
posterior, 309
Eleventh nerve, 1063
surgical anatomy of, 1063
Ellipsoid of Krause, 1127
Elliptical recess, 1164
Eminence, articular, of temporal bone, 84
of bone, 34
canine, 106
deltoid, 179
frontal, 79
ilio-pectineal, 210, 213
of Jacobson, 1100
nasal, 79
olivary, 93
parietal, 76
Eminentia articularis, 84, 135
collateralis, 890
conchæ, 1146
fossæ triangularis, 1046
teres, 945
Emissary veins, 743
surgical anatomy of, 743
Emulgent vein, 766
Enamel cells, 1206
cuticle, 1204
fibres, 1203
jelly, 1206
-organ of tooth, 1205
prisms, 1203
of teeth, 1203
development of, 1206
Enarthrosis, 266
Encephalon, 857
Encysted hernia, 1523
End-bulb of Krause, 827
Endocardium, 574
Endo-gnathion, 111
Endolymph, 1169
Endoneurium, 825
Endosteum, 36
Endothelium, corneal, 1111
Endothoracic fascia, 1385
Ensiform appendix, 158
surfaces of, 158
cartilage, 155
Eosinophiles, 56
Epactal bones, 103
Eparterial branch of bronchus, 1377
Epencephalon, 857
Ependyma, 888
Epicondyles, 181
Epicondylic ridge, 179
Epicteric bone, 103
Epidermic coat of hair-follicle, 1188
Epididymis, 1469
aberrant ducts of, 1472
structure of, 1471
Epidural space, 833, 847
Epigastric artery, deep, 696, 1518
peculiarities of, 696
surgical anatomy of, 697
internal, 696
superficial, 704
superior, 645
glands, superior, 802
plexus, 1083
vein, deep, 759
Epiglottis, 1365
cartilage of, 1365
cushion of, 1365
surfaces of, 1365
Epimysium, 361
Epineurium, 825
Epiotic portion of temporal bone, 91
Epiphysial cartilage, 36
Epiphysis of bone, 34
cerebri, 905
Epithelium. *See* Various organs.
germinal, of Waldeyer, 1501
lens, 1130
transitional, 1428
Epitrochlea, 181
Epitympanic recess, 87, 1150
space, 87
Epo-ophoron, 1499
Erectile tissue of penis, 1457
of vagina, 1485
Erector clitoridis muscle, 461
penis muscle, 458
spinæ muscle, 417
relations of, 420
Ethmo-frontal suture, 130
-sphenoidal, 130
Ethmoid bone, 98
articulations of, 102
cribriform plate of, 99
development of, 101
horizontal lamina of, 99
infundibulum of, 101
lateral mass of, 100
os planum of, 100
perpendicular plate of, 100
unciform process of, 100
Ethmoidal arteries, 623
canals, 82, 100
cells, 82, 100
posterior, 145
crest, 94
foramina, 82
anterior, 130, 141
posterior, 130
notch, 82
process of inferior turbinated, 120
sinuses, 101
spine, 93, 130
Eustachian cushion, 1221
tube, 1153
canal for, 1154
cartilaginous portion of, 1154
osseous portion of, 1154
valve, 567
in fœtus, 578
Excretory apparatus of liver, 1342
Exo-gnathion, 111
Expiration, muscles of, 432
Expression, muscles of, 385
Exsanguinated renal zone of Hyrtl, 679, 1423
Extensor brevis digitorum muscle, 543
pollicis muscle, 489
carpi radialis brevior muscle, 485
bursa of, 486
longior muscle, 485
ulnaris muscle, 487
coccygeus muscle, 422
communis digitorum muscle, 486
relations of, 487
indicis muscle, 490
longus digitorum muscle, 533
pollicis muscle, 489
minimi digiti muscle, 487
ossis metacarpi pollicis, 489
primi internodii pollicis muscle, 489
proprius hallucis muscle, 532
relations of, 533
secundi internodii pollicis muscle, 489

External abdominal ring, 436, 1514
acoustic canal, 1148
angular process, 80, 140
annular ligament, 542
anterior thoracic nerve, 984
arcuate ligament, 427, 449
auditory canal, 1148
meatus, 138, 1148
bicipital ridge, 179
calcaneal nerves, 1014
calcanean artery, 718
calcaneo-astragaloid ligament, 352
-scaphoid ligament, 353
capsule of brain, 894
carotid artery, 600
foramen, 89
circumflex artery of thigh, 705
condyle of femur, 226
crucial ligament, 337
cutaneous nerve, 985, 1003
ear, 1144
epicondyle, 181
geniculate body, 904, 912
hæmorrhoidal veins, 760
iliac artery, 694
glands, 797
vein, 759
inguinal fossa, 1520
hernia, 1520
interchondral ligament, 290
intercostal muscle, 425
jugular vein, 728
lateral ligament, 280, 310
malleolus, 238
ligament of, 1160
mammary artery, 651
maxillary artery, 604
oblique line, 123
muscle, 433
aponeurosis of, 1513
occipital crest, 72, 136
protuberance, 71, 136
orbital foramina, 95
os, 1489
palatine nerve, 1035
palpebral arteries, 623
parietal diploic vein, 734
parieto-occipital sulcus, 867
plantar artery, 720
nerve, 1016
popliteal nerve, 1016
pterygoid muscle, 383
nerve, 1037
plate, 96
pudic artery, deep, 704
superficial, 704
deep, 704
saphenous gland, 795
vein, 756
semicircular canal, 1165
semilunar fibrocartilage, 339
spermatic fascia, 436, 1514
sphincter ani muscle, 450
supracondylar ridge, 179
tarsal ligament, 370
tuberosity of tibia, 233
Extracranial lymphatics, 780
Extrinsic muscles of tongue, 398
Eye, 1103
appendages of, 1137
aqueous humor of, 1128
choroid, 1111
ciliary muscle, 1115
conjunctiva, 1140
cornea, 1108
crystalline lens, 1130
globe of, arteries of, 1132
lymphatics of, 1133
nerves of, 1134
Eye, globe of, veins of, 1133
iris, 1117
lachrymal apparatus, 1141
glands, 1141
sac, 1142
nasal duct, 1142
pupil of, 1117
refracting media of, 1128
retina, 1120
sclera, 1107
surgical anatomy of, 1134
-teeth, 1197
tunics of, 1107
uvea of, 1118
vitreous body of, 1129
Eyeball, coverings of, 375
Eyebrow, 1137
Eyelashes, 1138
surgical anatomy of, 1143
Eyelid, 1137
Meibomian glands of, 1139
orbital portion, 1137
structure of, 1138
surface form of, 1143
surgical anatomy of, 1143
tarsal portion, 1137
Erythroblasts, 36

F

Face, arteries of, 604
bones of, 104
exterior of, veins of, 725
fasciæ of, 365
lymphatics of, 779
muscles of, 365
surface form of, 385
nerves of, 1044
veins of, 726
Facet, clavicular, 157
costal, 169
Facial artery, 604
branches of, 605
relations of, 605
surgical anatomy of, 607
transverse, 611
bones, 104
nerve, 1044
branches of, 1046
nucleus of, 925
surgical anatomy of, 1049
suture, transverse, 128
vein, anterior, 726
common, 726
transverse, 727
surgical anatomy of, 726
Falciform crest, 89
ligament, 293
of liver, 1333
process of fascia lata, 515
Fallopian tube, 1497
ampulla of, 1497
artery of, 1498
course pursued by, 1498
fimbriæ of, 1497
infundibulum of, 1497
isthmus of, 1497
lymphatics of, 804, 1498
nerve of, 1499
structure of, 1498
uterine portion of, 1497
vein of, 1498
False pelvis, 215
ribs, 159
vocal cords, 1370
Falx cerebelli, 850
cerebri, 849
inguinalis, 448
Fascia or fasciæ, 361
of abdomen, deep, 433
Fascia or fasciæ, of abdomen, superficial, 433, 1511
triangular, 1515
of acromial region, 470
anal, 454, 1546
of arm, 474
deep, 470
superficial, 470
axillary, 463, 646
of back, deep, 411
superficial, 411
bicipital, 476, 746
bucco-pharyngeal, 380, 388, 401, 1222
of Camper, 433
cervical, deep, 387
superficial, 386
clavi-pectoral, 467
of Colles, 456, 1515
costo-coracoid, 467
of cranium, 365
cremasteric, 1464, 1516
cribriform, 512, 1527
deep, 364
dentate, 879, 898
endo-pelvica, 1544
endothoracic, 1385
of face, 365
of femoral region, anterior, deep, 513
superficial, 512
of foot, 541
of forearm, 478
of hand, 491
of hip, 522
iliac, 508
infraspinatus, 472
infundibuliform, 446, 1464
intercolumnar, 436, 1463, 1514
intercostal, 424
ischio-rectal, 454, 1546
lata, 513, 1527
falciform process of, 1528
iliac portion, 514, 1528
pubic portion, 514, 1528
of leg, 532
transverse, 537
of lower extremity, 507
masseteric, 381
of neck, 385
obturator, 1546
of orbit, 374
palmar, deep, 493
palpebral, 1139
parotid, 388, 1215
parotideo-masseterica, 388
pectoral, deep, 464
pelvic, 1544
of perinæum in male, deep, 458, 1538
superficial, 455
phrenico-pleural, 1386
plantar, 542
pre-tracheal, 388
prevertebral, 388
of quadratus lumborum, 449
recto-vesical, 1546
retro-renal, 1412
salpingopharyngea of Tröltsch 1155
of Scarpa, 433
semilunar, 476
of shoulder, deep, 470
superficial, 470
spermatic, 1463
external, 436, 1514
internal, 446
middle, 440
subscapular, 471
superficial, 364
of cranial region, 366

Fascia or fasciæ, supraspinatus, 472
temporal, 381
of thigh, 512
of thoracic region, anterior, deep, 463
superficial, 463
of thorax, 424
transversalis, 445, 1517
triangular, 437
of trunk, 410
of upper extremity, 462
Fascial canal, 1536
Fasciculi, 261
Fasciculus cuneatus, 941
gracilis, 941
clava of, 941
longitudinal, inferior, 918
superior, 918
occipito-frontal, 918
perpendicular, 918
rectus, 918
of Rolando, 941
teres, 945
of Turck, 842
uncinate, 917
Fasciola cinerea, 879
Fauces, isthmus of, 1212
pillars of, 1211
Female bladder, 1446
organs of generation, 1477
perinæum, 1542
urethra, 1446
Femoral artery, 697
anastomotica magna of, 707
branches of, 704
common, 699
deep, 704
peculiarities of, 701
superficial, 700
surface marking of, 701
surgical anatomy of, 701
canal, 509, 1531
cutaneous nerves, 1011
hernia, 1525
complete, 1534
coverings of, 1533
descent of, 1533
incomplete, 1533
varieties of, 1533
ligament, 515
lymphatic glands, deep, 795
region, anterior, fascia of, deep, 513
superficial, 512
surgical anatomy of, 515
muscles of, 512
dissection of, 512
surgical anatomy of, 518
internal, muscles of, 519
dissection of, 519
surgical anatomy of, 522
posterior, muscles of, 529
dissection of, 529
surgical anatomy of, 531
ring, 437, 509, 1532
sheath, 509, 1530
spur, 227
vein, 758
Femur, 221
articulations of, 228
attachment of muscles to, 229
condyles of, 225
development of, 228
lower extremity of, 225
shaft of, 224
borders of, 225
linea aspera, 224
surfaces of, 225
spiral line of, 223
structure of, 226
Femur, surface form of, 229
surgical anatomy of, 229
trochlea of, 225
tubercle of, 223
tuberosities of, 226
upper extremity of, 221
head of, 221
neck of, 222
trochanters of, 223
Fenestra ovalis, 1152
rotunda, 1152, 1167
Fenestrated membrane of Henle, 585
Ferrein, pyramids of, 1417
Fibre-baskets, 1127
Fibres of auricles of heart, 575
of cerebellum, peduncular, 932
projection, 932
proper, 936
of cerebrum, association, 916
commissural, 916
peduncular, 914
projection, 914
transverse, 916
of cord, dorso-ventral, 841
longitudinal, 841
oblique, 841
transverse, 841
dental, 1202
enamel, 1203
inter-cerebral, of optic commissure, 1021
intercolumnar, 436
of internal capsule of brain, 892
lens, 1130
of medulla, arciform, 942
arcuate, 942
of pons Varolii, 923
longitudinal, 923
transverse, 923
preanal, of levator ani, 453
pré-rectales, 454
of Remak, 823
of Sharpey, 37
sustentacular, 1121
of tegmentum, 908
of ventricles of heart, 575
Fibro-cartilage, 260
circumferential, 261
connecting, 261
interarticular, 281, 298, 300
triangular, 315
intervertebral, 270
semilunar, 337
stratiform, 261
-elastic coat of spleen, 1356
-muscular coat of gall-bladder, 1343
Fibrous band of Baillarger, 920
of Bechterew, 920
coat of liver, 1337
of pharynx, 1223
of ureter, 1427
membrane of trachea, 1379
rings of heart, 574
septum of tongue, 398
sheaths of flexor tendons, 545
tissue, white, 261
Fibula, 237
articulations of, 238
attachment of muscles to, 239
development of, 238
lower extremity of, 238
nutrient artery of, 718
oblique line of, 237
shaft of, 237
borders of, 237
surfaces of, 238
styloid process of, 237
surface form of, 239
Fibula, surgical anatomy of, 239
upper extremity of, 237
Fibular artery, superior, 713
region, muscles of, 539
actions of, 540
dissection of, 539
surgical anatomy of, 541
Fifth nerve, 1026
nuclei of, 925
root of, ascending, 948
semilunar ganglion of, 1027
surface marking of, 1041
surgical anatomy of, 1041
ventricle, 897
Filiform papillæ of tongue, 1090
Fillet, decussation of, 949
of gyrus fornicatus, 879, 918
interolivary, 909, 949
lateral, 885, 910
lower, 910
median, 910
mesial, 910
superior, 910
upper, 910
Filtrum ventriculi of Merkel, 1368
Fimbria, 898
Fimbriæ of Fallopian tube, 1497
of ovary, 1499
Fimbrio-dentate fissure, 898
Finger, index, metacarpal bone of, 202
ligaments of, 322
superficial transverse, 494
little, metacarpal bone of, 203
middle, metacarpal bone of, 202
ring, metacarpal bone of, 203
veins of, superficial, 745
First nerve, 1019
Fissura antitragohelicina, 1146
prima, 881
vestibuli, 1168
Fissure or fissures, antero-lateral, 838
antero-median, 837
antitragohelicina, 1146
auricular, 90, 136
of Bichat, 900
of brain, 865
calcarine, 870
callosal, 879
of cerebellum, 927, 930
of cerebrum, longitudinal, 865 882
choroid, 890, 900
collateral, 871
of cord, 837
lateral 838
dentate, 871, 879
dorso-median, 838
of ductus venosus, 1331
fimbrio-dentate, 898
of gall-bladder, 1331
Glaserian, 84, 1152
hippocampal, 871, 879
of liver, 1331
longitudinal, 1331
transverse, 1332
of lung, 1392
mammary, prolongations of, 1505
orbital, 96
petro-tympanic, 84, 1152
portal, 1332
posterior median, 838
post-clival, 928
-limbic, 871
-nodular, 930
-pyramidal, 930
pre-clival, 928

Fissure or fissures, pre-pyramidal, 930
pterygoid, 96
pterygo-maxillary, 139
of Rolando, 867
sphenoidal 96, 132
spheno-maxillary, 115, 138
of Santorini, 1146, 1148
of spinal cord, 837
of Sylvius, 866, 884
of tragus, 1146
umbilical, 1331
ventro-median, 837
Flat bones, 34
Flechsig, fibrous systems of, 915
Flexor accessorius muscle, 546
brevis digitorum muscle, 544
hallucis muscle, 546
minimi digiti muscle, foot, 547
hand, 498
pollicis muscle, 497
carpi radialis muscle, 479
ulnaris muscle, 480
longus digitorum muscle, 538
hallucis muscle, 538
pollicis muscle, 482
ossis metacarpi pollicis muscle, 497
profundus digitorum muscle, 482
sublimis digitorum muscle, 481
tendons, fibrous sheaths of, 545
Flexure of colon, hepatic, 1309
sigmoid, 1311
splenic, 1309
of duodenum, superior, 1285
of large intestine, hepatic, 1300
sigmoid, 1300
splenic, 1300
Floating lobe of liver, 1336
Floccular fossa, 89, 133
Flocculus, 931
peduncle of, 931
Flood's ligament, 304
Fœtal circulation, 579
lung, 1394
Fold of Douglas, semilunar, 439, 444
duodenal, 1260
hypogastric, 1519
ovario-pelvic, 1500
recto-vaginal, 1490
of urachus, 1519
utero-vesical, 1490
of uterus, 1489
Folia linguæ, 1087
Folium cacuminis, 929
Follicle, dental, 1206
simple, 1295, 1319
Follicular lymph-sinus, 1306
Fontana, spaces of, 1110
Fontanelles, 102
anterior, 78
Foot, arteries of, 714
bones of, 239
bursæ of, 543
development of, 253
fasciæ of, 541
ligaments of, 541
muscles of, 541
nerves of, 1015
phalanges of, 252
articulations of, 359
sole of, dissection of, 542
surface form of, 255, 360
surgical anatomy of, 256, 360
veins of, 758
Foramen, 96
cæcum, 80, 130, 1087
carotid, external, 89
Foramen, carotid, internal, 88
condyloid, anterior, 73, 133, 136
posterior, 73, 133, 136
costo-transverse, 50
dental, inferior, 124
diaphragmatis sellæ, 883
ethmoidal, anterior, 130, 141
posterior, 130, 141
of Huschke, 92
infraorbital, 106, 140
jugular, 73, 133
of Key and Retzius, 853
lacerum anterius, 96, 132
medium, 132
posterius, 133
of Langer, 464, 646, 791
magnum, 72, 133
of Majendie, 834, 853
malar, 113
mastoid, 85, 138
mental, 123, 140
of Monro, 889
obturator, 214
optic, 93, 131, 142
ovale, 95, 132, 567
in fœtus, 578
palatine, great, 116
posterior, 135
parietal, 76
pterygo-palatine, 95
quadratum of diaphragm, 430
rotundum, 95, 132
sacro-sciatic, great, 211, 294
singulare, 89, 1169
of Sömmerring, 1121
spheno-palatine, 119, 143
spinal, 49, 132
sternal, 157
stylo-mastoid, 90, 135
supratrochlear, 181
supraorbital, 80, 140
temporo-malar, 115
thyroid, 214
vertebral, 49
vertebrarterial, 50
Vesalii, 95, 132
Foramina of diaphragm, 430
ethmoidal, 82
incisor, 110
intervertebral, 49
of Key and Retzius, 834
malar, 113
olfactory, 143
orbital, external, 95
sacral, anterior, 62
posterior, 63
of Scarpa, 110, 135, 1036
of Stenson, 110
Thebesii, 567, 568, 771
Fore-gut, 1236
Forearm, arteries of, 657
bones of, 184
fasciæ of, 478
interosseous veins of, 747
lymphatics of, 788
muscles of, 478
dissection of, 478, 482
nerves of, 984
veins, 744
Fore-brain, 857
Forel, occipito-frontal fasciculus of, 918
Form of bones, 33
Formatio reticularis, 845, 948
alba, 949
grisea, 949
Fornix, 895
body of, 895
of conjunctiva, 1140
lyra of, 896
Fornix, pillars of, anterior, 895
posterior, 896
vaginal, 1484
Fossa or fossæ of acetabulum, 213
of antihelix, 1144
canine, 106, 140
condyloid, anterior, 136
posterior, 136
coronoid, 181
cranial, 143
digastric, 86, 123, 136
digital, 223
duodenal, 1260
duodeno-jejunal, 1261
floccular, 89, 133
glenoid, 84, 135
of helix, 1145
ileo-appendicular, 1263
-cæcal, 1263
-colic, 1262
iliac, 209
incisive, 106, 123, 139
incudis, 1153
infraspinous, 172
inguinal, 1248, 1520
external, 1520
internal, 1520
middle, 1520
intersigmoid, 1312
ischio-rectal, 1536
jugular, 91
lachrymal, 81
of Landzert, 1262
longitudinal, of liver, 1331
mandibular, 84
mastoid, 86
mesocolic, 1261
myrtiform, 106
nasal, 142, 1098
navicularis of urethra, 1444
of vulva, 1478
occipital, 133
olecranon, 181
orbital, 143
ovalis, 567
palatine, anterior, 110, 133
paraduodenal, 1262
patellaris, 1129
pericæcal, 1262
pituitary, 93
pterygoid, 96, 115
radial, 181
retro-cæcal, 1263
-colic, 1263
-duodenal, 1262
-peritoneal, 1260
rhomboid, inferior, 840
of Rosenmüller, 1221
of Scapha, 1145
scaphoid, 97, 135, 1145
sigmoid, 86
of skull, anterior, 130
infratemporal, 138
middle, 130
orbital, 140
pterygo-palatine, 139
posterior, 132
spheno-maxillary, 139
temporal, 137
zygomatic, 138
spheno-maxillary, 115
sublingual, 123
submaxillary, 123
subscapulus, 171
supra-tonsillar, 1213
supraspinous, 172
temporal, 76
of Treitz, 1260
trochanteric, 223
trochlear, 82
umbilical, 1331

Fossula inferior, 1168
superior, 1168
Fourchette, 1478
Fourth nerve, 1025
ventricle, 942
lining membrane of, 945
roof of, 943
triangles of, 945
wall of, anterior, 944
posterior, 943
Fovea centralis retinæ, 1121, 1128
hemielliptica, 1164
hemispherica, 1164
inguinalis lateralis, 1520
mesialis, 1520
oblonga, 1364
superior, 945
supra-vesicularis, 1520
triangularis, 1364
Foveolæ, Howship's, 38
Frænulum of cerebellum, 928
of ileo-cæcal valve, 1308
Frænum of clitoris, 1479
labii superioris et inferioris, 1194
linguæ, 1087
of penis, 1455
Frontal air sinus, 82
artery, 611
from anterior cerebral, anterior internal, 627
inferior internal, 627
middle internal, 627
posterior internal, 627
from middle cerebral, ascending, 628
inferior external, 628
from ophthalmic, 625
bone, 79
horizontal portion of, 81
articulations of, 83
attachment of muscles to, 83
border of, 82
development of, 82
structure of, 82
orbital portion of, 81
articulations of, 83
attachment of muscles to, 83
border of, 82
development of, 82
structure of, 82
vertical portion, 79
border of, 81
structure of, 81
convolutions, ascending, 872
inferior, 873
middle, 873
superior, 873
crest, 80, 130
diploic vein, 734
eminence, 79
horn of lateral ventricle, 889
lobe, 872, 884
nerve, 1030
operculum, 866, 874
process of malar, 114
spine, 80
sulci, 868, 873
suture, 79, 127
vein, 725
Frontalis muscle, 368
Fronto-parietal suture, 127
-malar suture, 128
-sphenoidal suture, 128
Fundamental plexus, 1111
Fundiform ligament of Retzius, 541
Fundus glands, 1277
Fundus of internal auditory meatus, 1168
tympani, 1151
of uterus, 1487
Fungiform papillæ of tongue, 1090
Funicular process, hernia of, 1523
Funiculus, cuneate, 941
gracilis, 941
of Rolando, 941
slender, 941
teres, 945
wedge-shaped, 941
Furcula, 1242
Furrow, interarticular, 565
sternal, 165
Fusiform muscles, 362

G

Galactophorus duct, 1507
Galen, testes muliebres of, 1499
veins of, 735, 771
Gall-bladder, 1342
arteries of, 1346
body of, 1343
fibro-muscular coat of, 1343
fissure for, 1331
fundus of, 1343
lymphatics of, 1346
mucous coat of, 1343
neck of, 1343
nerves of, 1346
notch of, 1331
relations of, 1343
serous coat of, 1343
structure of, 1343
surgical anatomy of, 1347
veins of, 1346
Ganglia of nerves, 831
semilunar, of abdomen, 1084
of spinal nerves, 966
Gangliated cord, 1071
cervical portion of, 1071
lumbar portion of, 1079
pelvic portion of, 1080
sacral portion of, 1080
thoracic portion of, 1078
Ganglion of Andersch, 1056
Arnold's, 1039
of Bochdalek, 1033
cardiac, of Wrisberg, 1081
carotid, 1073
cephalic, 1031
of cerebellum, 937
cervical, inferior, 1077
middle, 1076
superior, 1072
ciliary, 1031
long root of, 1030
of Corti, 1053
diaphragmatic, 1084
of facial nerve, 1045
of fifth nerve, 1031
Gasserian, 1027
geniculate, 1034, 1045
of glosso-pharyngeal, 1056
impar, 1068
inferior, 1056
interpeduncular, 910
jugular, 1056
lenticular, 1031
lumbar, 1080
Meckel's, 1034
mesenteric, 1085
ophthalmic, 1031
otic, 1039
petrous, 1056
pharyngeal, 1073
Ganglion, phrenic, 1084
of pneumogastric, 1059
of portio dura, 1045
radicis cochlearis, 950
of Ribes, 1067
semilunar, of abdomen, 1084
of fifth nerve, 1027
spheno-palatine, 1034
of spinal nerves, 966
submaxillary, 1040
superior, 1056
of sympathetic nerves, 1071
thoracic, 1078
thyroid, 1076
of Valentin, 1033
vestibular, 1053
Ganglionar gray matter, 922
Ganglionic arteries, postero-lateral, 640
postero-median, 640
branch of nasal nerve, 1030
vessels of brain, central, 630
Gärtner's duct, 1499
Gasserian ganglion, 1027
branches of, 1027
Gastric area of kidney, 1414
artery, 671, 674
glands, 800, 1277
true, 1277
impression, 1333
nerves, 1061
plexus, 1085
surface of liver, 1329
of spleen, 1354
veins, 768
Gastro-colic omentum, 1256
-duodenal plexus, 1085
-duodenalis artery, 673
-epiploic plexus, 1085
left, 1085
vein, 768
-epiploica dextra artery, 673
sinistra artery, 674
-hepatic omentum, 1254
-splenic ligament, 1256
omentum, 1256
Gastrocnemius muscle, 534
bursa of, 534
Gemellus muscle, inferior, 527
superior, 526
Generation, organs of, development of, 1547
female, 1477
male, 1447
Genial gland, 782
tubercles, 123
Geniculate body, external, 904, 912
internal, 904, 912
ganglion, 1034, 1045
Genio-glossus muscle, 396
-hyo-glossus muscle, 396
-hyoid muscle, 395
Genito-crural nerve, 1000
crural branch, 1000
genital branch, 1000
Germ of corpus callosum, 886
Gerlach, valve of, 1303
Germinal epithelium of Waldeyer, 1501
Giacomini, band of, 879
Gianuzzi, crescents of, 1218
Gimbernat's ligament, 437, 1515
Gingival branches of dental nerves, 1032
Ginglymus, 265
Giraldes, organ of, 1473
Girdle, pelvic, 207
shoulder, 207
Glabella of frontal bone, 80, 139
Gladiolus, 157

Gladiolus, borders of, 157
surfaces of, 157
Glands, absorbent, 774
agminated, 1296
apical, 1091
arytenoid, 1375
of Bartholin, 1482
of biliary ducts, 1342
of Bowman, 1101
Brunner's, 1295
buccal, 1195
cardiac, 1278
carotid, 1409
ceruminous, 1149
ciliary, 1190
circumanal, 1190
coccygeal, 1410
conglobate, 774
Cowper's, 1453
ductless, 1401
duodenal, 1295
of Duverney, 1482
epiglottis, 1374
fundus, 1277
gastric, 1277
intestinal, 1295, 1319
labial, 1195
lachrymal, 1141
of larynx, 1374
lenticular, of stomach, 1277
of Lieberkühn, 1295, 1319
lingual, 1091
of Littré, 1444
Luschka's, 1410
lymphatic, 774
mammary, 1503
lymphatics of, 812
Meibomian, 1139
molar, 1195
of Moll, 1138
of Montgomery, 1504
mucilaginous, 262
mucous, 1218
of Nuhn and Blandin, 1091
odoriferæ, 1454
œsophageal, 1210
oxyntic, 1277
of Pacchioni, 737, 854
palatal, 1211
parotid, 1214
peptic, 1277
Peyer's, 1296
pharyngeal, 1224
pineal, 905
peduncles of, 895
prostate, 1447
lymphatic vessels of, 803
pyloric, 1277
of Rosenmüller, accessory, 1141
salivary, 1214
sebaceous, 1138, 1191
solitary, 1295, 1320
sublingual, 1217
submaxillary, 1216
subparotid, 1215
suburethral, 1482
sudoriferous, 1190
suprarenal, 1428
sweat, 1190
tarsal, 1139
thymus, 1407
thyroid, 1401
arteries of, 602
lymphatic vessels of, 782
veins of, 731
of tongue, 1091
tracheal, 1380
of Tyson, 1454
of v. Ebner, 1091
vulvo-vaginal, 1482
Glandulæ Pacchioni, 737, 854
Tysonii odoriferæ, 1454
Glans clitoridis, 1480
penis, 1454
Glaserian fissure, 84, 1152
Gleno-humeral ligament, 305
Glenoid cavity, 175
fossa, 84, 135
ligament, 175
of Cruveilhier, 359
tuberosity, 175
Glisson, capsule of, 770, 1256, 1337
Globus of epididymis major, 1469
minor, 1469
Glosso-epiglottic ligament, 1365
-epiglottidean folds, 1366
-pharyngeal nerve, 1054
nuclei of, 950
surgical anatomy of, 1057
Glottis, chink of, 1369
false, 1369
respiratoria, 1369
true, 1369
vocalis, 1369
Gluteal artery, 694
inferior, 693
cutaneous nerve, 1011
glands, 797
line, anterior, 207
inferior, 208
posterior, 207
nerve, inferior, 1011
superior, 1010
region, lymphatic vessels of, 801
muscles of, 522
dissection of, 522
surgical anatomy of, 528
ridge, 224
veins, 761
Gluteo-femoral bursa, 331
Gluteus maximus muscle, 522
medius muscle, 523
minimus muscle, 523
Golgi, cells of, 821
organ of, 829
Goll, tract of, 839, 843
Gomphosis, 264
Gonion, 124
Graafian vesicles, 1502
membrana granulosa of, 1502
ovicapsule of, 1502
Gracilis muscle, 519
Grande lobe limbique, 878
Grandy's corpuscles, 827
Granular sheath of Tomes, 1202
Gray commissure of brain, 903
of cord, 839
anterior, 839
posterior, 839
matter, central, 922
of cerebellum, 936
of cerebrum, 918
of cortex, 918
of ganglia, 922
of medulla, 945
of pons, 924
ventricular, 922
nerve-fibres, 823
substance of cord, 845
anterior horn, 845
dorsal horn, 845
lateral horn, 845
nerve-cells of, 845
-fibres of, 845
posterior horn, 845
ventral horn, 845
Great auricular nerve, 972
Great cardiac nerve, 1077
plexus, 1081
vein, 770
deep petrosal nerve, 1034
occipital nerve, 969
omentum, 1256
sacro-sciatic foramen, 294
ligament, 292
sciatic nerve, 1013
sinus of aorta, 589
superficial petrosal nerve, 1034
Greater alar cartilage, 1097
wings of sphenoid, 95
Grooves, auriculo-ventricular, of heart, 565
basilar, 75
bicipital, 179
carotid, 93
cavernous, 93
of cord, 837
infraorbital, 107, 141
interventricular, 568
of heart, 565
intervertebral, 49
lachrymal, 107, 109, 141, 143
musculo-spiral, 179
mylo-hyoidean, 124
naso-palatine, 121
obturator, 211, 213
occipital, 86
optic, 93, 130, 131
peroneal, 245
popliteal, 226
pterygopalatine, 116
sacral, 63
of spinal cord, 837
subclavian, 169
subcostal, 162
ulnar, 182
vertebral, 155
Gubernaculum testis, 1461
Gudden's commissure, 912, 1021
Guerin, valve of, 1444
Gulf of internal jugular vein, 729
Gullet, 1225
Gums, 1195
surgical anatomy of, 1224
Gustatory cells, 1091
hair, 1091
nerve, 1038
branches of, 1038
path, 1057
pore, 1090
Gyri of brain, 865
brevis insulæ, 878
Gyrus, angular, 876
annectant, deep, 867
cinguli, 879
fornicatus, fillet of, 879, 918
lingual, 877
longus insulæ, 870
marginal, 875
occipito-temporal, 877
post-central, 876
præcentral, 872
rectus, 874
subcallosus, 882
supra-callosus, 88

H

Habenula, 904
commissure of, 904
trigone of, 904
Hæmorrhoidal artery, inferior, 690
middle, 687
superior, 678
gland, middle, 799
nerve, inferior, 1011

Hæmorrhoidal plexus, inferior, 1086
superior, 1085
veins, external, 760
inferior, 760, 1011
middle, 760
superior, 768
surgical anatomy of, 761
Hair, 1187
bloodvessels of, 1189
-bulb, 1187
coats of, dermic, 1188
of, epidermic, 1188
cortical substance of, 1189
-follicle, 1187
gustatory, 1091
nerves of, 1189
olfactory, 1101
-papilla, 1187
root of, 1187
shaft of, 1189
stem of, 1189
-streams, 1187
-whirlpools, 1187
Haller, rete testis of, 1471
Hamstring muscles, 529
Hamular process of lachrymal, 113
of sphenoid, 96
Hamulus, 1168
Hand, arteries of, 660
bones of, 193
development of, 205
bursæ of, 492
fasciæ of, 491
ligaments of, 319
muscles of, 491
dissection of, 491
nerves of, from median, 987
from radial, 991
from ulnar, 989
phalanges of, 204
veins of, 745
Hard palate, 1210
Harmonia, 264
Hasner, valve of, 1142
Haustra coli, 1317
Haversian canal, 38
Head, arteries of, 595
exterior of, veins of, 725
lymphatic glands of, 780
muscles of, surface form of, 385
veins of, 724
Heart, 562
arteries of, 577
auricles of, fibres of, 575
left, 568
sinus of, 568
right, 565
cavities of, capacity of, 564
circular fibres of, 575
component parts of, 565
endocardium, 574
fat upon, 564
fibrous rings of, 574
grooves of, auriculo-ventricular, 565
interventricular, 565
infundibulum of, 569
lymphatics of, 577
muscular fibres of, 575
myocardium, 574
nerves of, 577
position of, 562
size of, 564
spiral fibres of, 575
structure of, 574
muscular, 575
surface form of, 577
surgical anatomy of, 578
Heart, veins of, 577
ventricle of, fibres of, 575
right, 569
ventricular portion of, 568
vortex of, 575
weight of, 564
Heel bone, 242
Heidenhain, demilunes of, 1218
Helicine arteries, 1458
Helicis major muscle, 1147
minor muscle, 1147
Helicotrema of cochlea, 1167
Helix, 1144
crus of, 1145
fossa of, 1145
muscles of, 1147
spine of, 1146
Helmholtz, ligaments of, 1160
Helwig, tract of, triangular, 843 951
Hemispheres of brain, surface of, under, 881
of cerebellum, 885, 926
of cerebrum, 864
constituent parts of, 864
general considerations of, 864
surfaces of, 865
external, lobes on, 869
mesial, fissures of, 869
sulci of, 869
outer, fissures of, 865
sulci of, 865
tentorial, fissures and sulci of, 869
Henle, fenestrated membrane of, 585
ligament of, 438, 442
loop of, 1419
spine of, 88
Hensen, canalis reuniens of, 1170
cells of, 1175
node, 857
stripe, 1175
Hepatic area of kidneys, 1414
artery, 672
cells, 1338
ducts, 1342
flexure of colon, 1309
of large intestine, 1300
glands, 801
plexus, 1085
veins, 767
Hepato-colic ligament, 1255
-duodenal ligament, 1255
-gastric ligament, 1254
Herbst, corpuscles of, 829
Hernia, congenital, 1523
diaphragmatic, 427
encysted, 1523
femoral, 1525
of funicular process, 1523
infantile, 1523
inguinal, 1520
direct, 1523
external, 1520
oblique, 1517, 1520
scrotal, 1521
surgical anatomy of, 1511
Hesselbach, ligament of, 438, 442, 1517
triangle, 1520
Hey, ligament of, 515
Hiatus Fallopii, 88
sacralis, 62
semilunar, 747, 1099
tendineus, 521
Highmore, antrum of, 108
Hilton, compressor sacculi laryngis muscle of, 1373
white line of, 1319
Hilum of kidney, 1415
of ovary, 1500
of spleen, 1354
Hind-brain, 922
-gut, 1236
Hinge-joint, 265
Hip, articulations of, 325
bursæ of, 330
fasciæ of, 522
ligaments of, 326
muscles of, 522
surface form of, 333
surgical anatomy of, 333
Hippocampal convolution, 879
fissure, 871, 879
Hippocampus major, 889, 897
gray matter of, 921
His, sulcus terminalis of, 566
Histology of arteries, 584
of capillaries, 584
Hook bone, 199
Horizontal cells of Cajal, 1125
lamina of ethmoid, 99
plate of palate bone, 116
semicircular canal, 1165
Horner's muscle, 371
Horny layer of skin, 1181
Horseshoe kidney, 1424
Houston's valves, 1318
Howship's lacunæ, 38
Huguier, canal of, 84, 1047
Humeral region, anterior, muscles of, 474
posterior muscles of, 477
Humerus, 177
articulations of, 183
attachment of muscles to, 183
capitellum of, 181
development of, 182
lower extremity of, 181
nutrient canal of, 180
shaft of, 179
structure of, 182
surface form of, 183
surgical anatomy of, 183
trochlea of, 181
tuberosities of, 179
upper extremity of, 177
Humors of eye, 1128
Hunter's canal, 521, 698
Huschke, foramen of, 92
Hyaline cartilage, 259
Hyaloid canal of eye, 1129
membrane of eye, 1129
Hydatids of Morgagni, 1469
non-pedunculated, 1469
pedunculated, 1469
Hymen, 1481
imperforate, 1481
Hyo-epiglottic ligament, 1365
-glossus muscle, 397
-thyroid membrane, 1366
Hyoid artery of lingual, 603
of superior thyroid, 602
bone, 153
attachment of muscles to, 154
basi-hyal of, 153
body of, 153
borders of, 154
surfaces of, 153
cornua of, greater, 154
lesser, 154
development of, 154
region, infra-, muscles of, 391
supra-, muscles of, 393
surface form of, 154
surgical anatomy of, 154
tubercle of, 153

Hyparterial branch of bronchus, 1377
Hypochondriac region, 1233
Hypogastric artery, 683
in fœtus, 684
fold, 1519
nerve, 999
plexus, 1080, 1085
region, 1233
vein, 760
Hypoglossal nerve, 1064
branches of, 1065, 1066
surgical anatomy of, 1066
nucleus, 949
Hyrtl, exsanguinated renal zone of, 679, 1423

I

Ileo-appendicular fold, 1263
fossa, 1263
-cæcal fossa, 1263
inferior, 1263
superior, 1262
valve, 1308
frænulum of, 1308
-colic artery, 675
fold, 1262
fossa, 1262
Ileum, 1289
Iliac arteries, circumflex, deep, 697
superficial, 704
common, 681
branches of, 682
compression of, 683
peculiarities of, 682
surface marking of, 682
surgical anatomy of, 682
external, 694
branches of, 696
relations of, 694
surface marking of, 682, 695
surgical anatomy of, 695
internal, 683
branches of, 686
peculiarities of, 685
relations of, 683
surface form of, 694
surgical anatomy of, 685, 694
bursa, subtendinous, 331
fascia, 508
fossa, 209
furrow, 220
glands, 797
common, 799
external, 797
internal, 799
nerve, 999
portion of fascia lata, 1528
region, muscles of, 508
surgical anatomy of, 511
vein, circumflex, deep, 759
common, 764
peculiarities of, 764
external, 759
internal, 760
Iliacus muscle, 510
relations of, 511
Ilio-capsularis muscle, 511
-coccygeus muscle, 454
-costalis muscle, 419
-femoral ligament, 328
-hypogastric nerve, 999
-inguinal nerve, 999
-lumbar artery, 693
ligament, 291
veins, 764
Ilio-pectineal bursa, 330
eminence, 210, 213
ligament, 508
line, 209
-pelvic glands, 797
-sciatic notch, 210
-tibial band, 234, 514
-trochanteric ligament, 329
Ilium, 207
borders of, 210
crest of, 210
dorsum of, 207
processes of, 210
spine of, 210
surfaces of, 207, 208
venter of, 209
Impar ganglion, 1068
Imperforate hymen, 1481
Impression, deltoid, 179
gastric, 1333
Incisive fossa, 106, 123, 139
Incisor canal, 110
crest, 111
foramina, 110
nerve, 1039
teeth, 1196
Incisura cardiaca, 1392
inter-arytænoidea, 1368
marsupialis, 926
pancreatis, 1348
semilunaris, 926
Incremental lines of dentine, 1203
Incus, 1159
body of, 1159
ligaments of, 1161
processes of, 1159
Infantile hernia, 1523
Inferior acromio-clavicular ligament, 299
alveolar artery, 614
branch of superior cervical ganglion, 1074
calcaneo-scaphoid ligament, 354
surgical anatomy of, 354
cardiac nerve, 1077
carotid triangle, 616
central nucleus, 949
cerebral veins, 735
cervical ganglion, 1077
constrictor muscle, 400
relations of, 401
coronary artery of lip, 607
dental artery, 614
canal, 124
foramen, 124
nerve, 1039
ethmoidal turbinate bone, 101
external frontal artery, 628
frontal convolution, 873
gemellus muscle, 527
gluteal artery, 693
line, 208
nerve, 1011
hæmorrhoidal artery, 690
nerve, 1011
plexus, 1086
veins, 760
internal frontal arteries, 627
labial artery, 607
lachrymal gland, 1141
laryngeal artery, 641
veins, 751
lateral angle, 63
lingualis muscle, 399
longitudinal fasciculus, 918
sinus, 738
maxilla bone, 122
horizontal portion of, 122
surfaces of, 122
Inferior maxillary bone, articulations of, 125
attachment of muscles to, 125
development of, 125
horizontal portion of, borders of, 124
perpendicular portion of, 124
borders of, 124
processes of, 125
surfaces of, 124
nerve, 1036
meatus of nose, 145
medullary velum, 943
mesenteric artery, 677
plexus, 1085
vein, 768
nuchal line, 72
obliquus oculi muscle, 374
occipital convolution, 877
fossæ, 133
sulcus, 877
ophthalmic vein, 741
orbito-palpebral sulcus, 1137
palatine artery, 606
pancreatico-duodenal artery, 673
parietal convolution, 876
petrosal sinus, 742
phrenic arteries, 680
veins, 767
post-central sulcus, 875
profunda artery, 656
pubic ligament, 296
pudendal nerve, 1011
pyloric artery, 673
radio-ulnar articulation, 315
ramus of ischium, 212
of pubis, 213
rectus oculi muscle, 373
renal artery, 1423
rhomboid fossa, 840
sacro-sciatic foramen, 294
semilunar lobe of cerebellum, 931
stephanion, 76
superficial cerebellar veins, 736
tarsal arch, 623
temporal convolution, 877
sulcus, 870
thyroid artery, 641
veins, 751
transverse ligament, 302
triangle of fourth ventricle, 945
turbinated bone, 119
articulations of, 120
borders of, 120
development of, 120
processes of, 120
surfaces of, 120
crest, 107, 117
vena cava, 764
vermiform process of cerebellum, 929
vesical artery, 686
plexus, 762
vocal cords, 1370
Infraclavicular plexus, 792
Infracostales muscle, 425
Infraglenoid margin of tibia, 234
tubercle, 174
Infrahyoid artery, 602
region, muscles of, 391
Infralaryngeal glands, 787
Inframandibular nerve, 1049
Inframaxillary glands, 782
nerve, 1049
Infraorbital artery, 615
canal, 107, 140
foramen, 106, 140

Infraorbital groove, 107, 141
nerves, plexus of, 1049
Infrapatellar bursa, 340
Infraspinatus bursa, 315
muscle, 472
bursa of, 473
Infraspinous fascia, 472
fossa, 172
Infrasternal depression, 165
Infratemporal crest, 95
fossa, 138
Infratrochlear nerve, 1031
Infundibula of kidney, 1415
Infundibular artery, 590
Infundibuliform fascia, 446, 1464
Infundibulo-pelvic ligament, 1490
Infundibulum of brain, 882
of ethmoid, 101
of Fallopian tube, 1497
of heart, 569
Ingrassias, processes of, 96
Inguinal canal, 448, 1517
fossa, 1248
external, 1520
internal, 1520
middle, 1520
hernia, 1520
direct, 1523
incomplete, 1524
oblique, 1517, 1520
lymphatic gland, deep, 795
superficial, 793
surgical anatomy of, 794
region, 1233
Inion, 71
Inlet of pelvis, 217
Innominate artery, 593
branches of, 594
peculiarities of, 594
relations of, 593
surgical anatomy of, 594
bone, 207
vein, 750
left, 750
peculiarities of, 750
right, 750
Inosculation of arteries, 583
Insertion of muscles, 363
Inspiration, muscles of, 432
Insula, 867, 878
opercula of, 878
Integument of scrotum, 1463
Inter-alveolar cell islets, 1352
Interarticular chondro-sternal ligament, 288
fibro-cartilage, 281, 298, 300
triangular, 315
furrow, 565
ligament, 284, 329
septum, 565
sterno-costal ligament, 288
Inter-brain, 901
Intercarotid body, 600
Intercavernous sinus, 742
Intercerebral fibres of optic commissure, 1021
Intercellular biliary passages, 1341
Interchondral articulations, 289
ligament, external, 290
internal, 290
Interclavicular ligament, 298
Intercolumnar fascia, 436, 1463, 1514
fibres, 436
Intercondyloid notch, 225
Intercostal arteries, 667
anterior, 644
collateral, 668
superior, 645
Intercostal arteries, surgical anatomy of, 668
fascia, 424
glands, 810
muscles, 425
external, 425
relations of, 425
internal, 425
relations of, 425
nerves, 993
abdominal, 996
first, 995
pectoral, 995
surgical anatomy of, 996
space, 155, 160
veins, 752
anterior, 752
posterior, 752
superior, left, 752
right, 752
Intercosto-humeral nerve, 995
Interglobular spaces of Czermak, 1202
Interlobar arteries, 1423
biliary plexus, 1338
ducts, 1341
Inter-maxillary bone, 110
region, muscles of, 378
suture, 139
Intermediate crusta nerve path, 960
glands, 791
zone of kidney, 1416
Internal abdominal ring, 446, 1518
angular process, 80, 140
annular ligament, 542
anterior thoracic nerve, 984
arcuate ligament, 427
auditory artery, 639
meatus, 133
bicipital ridge, 179
branches of superior cervical ganglion, 1076
calcaneal nerve, 1015
calcanean artery, 719
calcaneo-astragaloid ligament, 352
-cuboid ligament, 353
-scaphoid ligament, 354
capsule of brain, fibres of, 892
carotid artery, 619
foramen, 88
plexus, 1073
circumflex artery of thigh, 705
condyle of femur, 226
crucial ligament, 337
cutaneous nerve, 986, 1004
ear, 1163
epicondyle, 181
epigastric artery, 696
femoral region, muscles of, 519
geniculate body, 904, 912
iliac artery, 683
glands, 799
vein, 760
inguinal hernia, 1520
interchondral ligament, 290
intercostal muscle, 425
jugular glands, 786
vein, 729
bulb of, 729
lateral ligament, 280, 310
malleolar artery, 719
malleolus, 235
mammary artery, 643
vein, 750
maxillary artery, 612
lymphatic glands, 782
vein, 727
oblique line, 123
Internal oblique muscles, 437, 1516
occipital crest, 74, 113
protuberance, 73
orbital arteries, 627
convolution, 873
os, 1488
palpebral arteries, 623
parieto-occipital sulcus, 867, 870
plantar artery, 719
nerve, 1015
popliteal nerve, 1014
pterygoid muscle, 383
relations of, 384
nerve, 1037
plate, 96
pudic artery in female, 692
in male, 689
vein, 760
rectus oculi muscle, 373
respiratory nerve of Bell, 974
saphenous nerve, 1005
vein, 756
semilunar fibrocartilage, 338
spermatic fascia, 446
sphincter ani muscle, 451
structure of cerebellum, 931
supracondylar ridge, 180
tarsal ligament, 370
tuberosity of tibia, 233
wall of tympanum, 1152
Internasal suture, 139
Interneural articulations, 272
Internodia or phalanges, 204
Interolivary fillet, 909, 949
Interossei muscles of foot, 548
dorsal, 548
plantar, 548
of hand, 499
Interosseous artery of ulnar, 662
anterior, 662
posterior, 663
arteries, dorsal, 659, 715
palmar, 660
ligament, 286
nerve, anterior, 987
posterior, 991
sacro-iliac ligament, 292
veins of forearm, 747
Interpalpebral slit, 1138
Interparietal suture, 127
Interpeduncular ganglion, 910
space of brain, 882, 906
Interpleural space, 1387
Interpubic disk, 296
Intersigmoid fossa, 1312
Interspinales muscle, 421
Interspinous ligaments, 273
venous plexus, 732
Intersternal ligament, anterior, 290
posterior, 290
Intertransversales muscle, 422
laterales muscle, 422
mediales muscle, 422
Intertransverse ligaments, 273, 295
Intertrochanteric line, anterior, 223
posterior, 223
Intertubular cell-masses, 1352
tissue, 1203
Interventricular grooves, 568
of heart, 565
septum, 569
Intervertebral disks, 270
structure of, 271
fibro-cartilages, 270
structure of, 271
foramina, 49

Intervertebral grooves, 49
notches, 49
substances, 270
structure of, 271
veins, 755
Intestinal glands, 1295, 1319
Intestine, large, 1299
areolar coat of, 1318
arteries of, 1320
flexure of, hepatic, 1300
sigmoid, 1300
splenic, 1300
lymphatic glands of, 808, 1321
vessels of, 809
mucous membrane of, 1318
muscular coat of, 1317
serous coat of, 1316
structure of, 1316
submucous coat of, 1318
veins of, 1321
innervation of, 1323
movements of, 1322
small, 1282
areolar coat of, 1290
arteries of, 1296
lymphatic glands of, 807, 1297
vessels of, 808
mucous membrane of, 1290
muscular coat of, 1290
nerves of, 1299
serous coat of, 1290
structure of, 1290
submucous coat of, 1290
veins of, 1297
villi of, 1292
surface form of, 1323
surgical anatomy of, 1324
Intestinum tenue mesenteriale, 1289
Intracapsular fracture, 229
Intracartilaginous ossification, 43
Intraepithelial plexus, 1111
Intralobular veins, 767
Intramembranous ossification, 43
Intraparietal sulcus of Turner, 875
Intrathyroid cartilage, 1363
Intrinsic muscles of tongue, 398
Intumescentia ganglioformis, 1045
Involuntary muscles, 361
Iris, 1117
arteries of, 1120
muscular fibres of, 1118
nerves of, 1120
pigment of, 1119
stroma of, 1118
structure of, 1118
Irregular bones, 34
Ischiatic lymphatic glands, 797
Ischio-capsular ligament, 328
-gluteal bursa, 331
-rectal fascia, 454, 1546
fossa, 1536
region, muscles of, 449
surgical anatomy of, 1535
Ischium, 210
body of, 210
ramus of, ascending, 212
descending, 211
spine of, 211
tuberosity of, 211
Island of Langerhans, 1352
of Reil, 867, 878
Isthmus, aortic, 591
of auditory canal, 1148
cerebri, 906
of Fallopian tube, 1497
of fauces, 1212
Isthmus, faucium, 1194
of pharynx, 1221
of prostate gland, 1451
rhombencephali, 857
of thyroid gland, 1403
Iter a tertio ad quartum ventriculum, 903, 912
chordæ anterius, 1152
posterius, 1151
Ivory of teeth, 1202

J

Jacob's membrane, 1126
Jacobson, cartilage of, 1097
eminence of, 1100
nerve, 1056
canal for, 90
organ of, rudimentary, 1100
Jaw, angle of, 124
bones, upper, 105
lower, articulations of, 280
changes produced in, by age, 125
upper. *See* Maxillary Bone.
Jejunum, 1289
Joints. *See* Articulations.
Jugular foramen, 73, 133
fossa, 91
ganglion, 1056
glands, internal, 786
lymphatic trunk, 787
nerve, 1073
process, 73
tubercle, 74
vein, anterior, 728
external, 728
sinus of, 728
internal, 729
bulb of, 729
sinus of, 729
surgical anatomy of, 732
posterior external, 728
Juxta-aortic glands, left, 800
right, 800
-cervical lymphatic knot, 803

K

Kerkring, valves of, 1291
Key and Retzius, foramina of, 834, 853
Kidneys, 1411
abnormalities of, 1424
areas of, 1414
arteries of, 1422
calices of, 1415
capsule of, fatty, 1411
true, 1415
connective tissue of, 1424
cortical substance of, 1416
ducts of, 1420
hilum of, 1415
infundibula of, 1415
intermediate zone of, 1416
lymphatic vessels of, 804, 1424
Malpighian bodies of, 1417
capsule, 1417
tuft of, 1417
medullary substance of, 1416
minute anatomy of, 1417
nerves of, 1424
papillæ of, 1417
pelvis of, 1415
pyramids of Ferrein, 1417
of Malpighi, 1416
sinus of, 1415
structure of, 1415
surface form of, 1425
Kidneys, surfaces of, 1412
surgical anatomy of, 1425
tubuli uriniferi, 1418
variations of, 1424
veins of, 1424
Knee, bursæ of, 340
-cap, 230
-joint, surface form of, 343
surgical anatomy of, 343
ligaments of, 334
Kolliker, membrane of, 1175
Krause, ellipsoid of, 1127
end-bulbs of, 827

L

Labia pudendi majora, 1477
minora, 1478
Labial artery, inferior, 607
glands, 1194
nerves, 1034
Labii cerebri, 885
Labium tympanicum, 1172
vestibulare, 1172
Labyrinth, 1163
arteries of, 1176
membranous, 1169
nerves of, 1176
osseous, 1164
veins of, 1176
Lachrymal apparatus, 1141
artery, 623
peculiarities of, 623
bone, 112
articulations of, 113
attachment of muscles to, 113
borders of, 113
crests of, 141
development of, 113
lesser, 113
surfaces of, 113
canaliculi, 1142
canals, 1142
caruncle, 1142
crest, 113
fossa, 81
glands, 1141
structure of, 1141
surface form of, 1143
surgical anatomy of, 1144
groove, 107, 109, 141, 143
nerve, 1028
notch, 107
papilla, 1138, 1142
process of inferior turbinated, 120
sac, 1142
structure of, 1142
surface form of, 1143
surgical anatomy of, 1144
sulcus, 113
tubercle, 109
Lactiferous duct, 1507
Lacuna magna, 1444
Lacunæ, 1110
of bone, 38
Howship's, 38
Lacus lacrimalis, 1138
Lagena, 1172
Lalouette, pyramid of, 1403
Lambda, 129
Lambdoid suture, 75, 78, 128
Lamella of bone, articular, 259
Lamina basalis, 1114
of cerebellum, 927
cinerea, 882
of cornea, 1109
cribrosa, 89
cribriform, 1108

Lamina, cribriform, of sclerotic, 1108
dental, 1205
of ethmoid, horizontal, 99
perpendicular, 100
vertical, 100
fusca, 1108
posterior perforated, 910
reticularis, 1175
septi pellucidi, 889
spiralis ossea of cochlea 1167
suprachorioidea, 1112
terminalis, 882
vasculosa, 1112
of vertebra, 34
Lancisi, nerve of, 887
Landzert, fossa of, 1262
Langer, foramen of, 464, 646, 791
lines of cleavage of, 1180
Langerhans, centro-acinar cells of, 1352
islands of, 1352
Lantermann, segments of, 823
Large, deep petrosal nerve, 1034, 1073
intestine, 1299
palatine nerve, 1035
superficial petrosal nerve, 1034
Laryngeal artery, inferior, 641
superior, 602
nerve, superior, 1060
external, 1060
internal, 1060
pouch, 1371
saccule, 1371
sinus, 1371
surface of epiglottis, 1365
veins, 751
Larynx, 1361
aperture of, superior, 1368
arteries of, 1375
cartilages of, 1362
cavity of, 1368
compartments of, 1368
lower, 1371
middle, 1369
glands of, 1374
joints of, 1366
ligaments of, 1366
lymphatics of, 782, 1375
membranes of, 136
mucous membrane of, 1374
muscles of, 1371
action of, 1374
nerves of, 1376
rima glottidis, 1369
structure of, 1365
veins of, 1375
ventricle of, 1371
vocal cords of, false, 1370
true, 1369
Lateral acoustic tubercle, 950
angle, inferior, 63
cell column, 846
column of medulla, 945
fillet, 885
fissures of cord, 838
ligament, external, 280
internal, 280
of liver, 1334
of wrist, 318
masses of atlas, 51
of ethmoid, 100
odontoid ligaments, 278
patellar ligaments, 335
region of skull, 136
root of eighth nerve, 1051
sacral artery, 693
veins, 760
sacro-coccygeal ligament, 295
sinus, 738
Lateral sinus, surgical anatomy of, 739
spinal arteries, 638
surface of liver, 1329
thoracic region, muscles of, 468
tract of medulla, 945
ventricle of brain, 888
body of, 889
central cavity of, 889
cornu of, anterior, 889
descending, 890
middle, 890
posterior, 889
horn of, frontal, 889
occipital, 889
temporal, 890
vertebral region, muscles of, 408
Lateralis nasi artery, 607
Latissimus dorsi muscle, 413
bursa of, 474
Leaf, condyloid glands of, 795
supracondyloid glands of, 795
Left bronchus, 1378
cardiac vein, 771
colic artery, 678
plexus, 1085
coronary artery, 590
plexus, 1081
vein, 770
gastro-epiploic plexus, 1085
innominate vein, 750
juxta-aortic glands, 800
lobe of liver, 1333
lower azygos vein, 753
marginal vein, 771
superior intercostal vein, 752
upper azygos vein, 753
Leg, arteries of, 711
bones of, 230
fasciæ of, 531
ligaments of, 325
muscles of, 531
nerves of, 1006
veins of, 755
Lemniscus, 909, 949
Lens, crystalline, 1130
epithelium, 1130
fibres, 1130
suspensory ligament of, 1129
Lenticular ganglion, 1031
nucleus, 891
Lenticulo-striate arteries, 628
Lesser internal cutaneous nerve, 986
omentum, 1254
sacro-sciatic foramen, 294
ligament, 293
sciatic nerve, 1011
wing of sphenoid, 96
Levator anguli oris muscle, 377
scapulæ muscle, 414
ani muscle, 451
preanal fibres of, 453
glandulæ thyroideæ muscle, 1403
labii inferioris muscle, 378
superior alæque nasi muscle 375
superioris muscle, 376
menti muscle, 378
palati muscle, 403
palpebræ muscle, 371
superioris muscle, 372
prostatæ, 454
urethræ, 454
Levatores costarum muscle, 426
Lieberkühn, crypts of, 1295
glands of, 1295, 1319
Lieno-renal ligament, 1252, 1355
Ligamenta alaria, 340
sacro-coccygea, anterior, 452
subflava, 272
suspensoria of mamma, 463
Ligamentous action of muscles, 268
Ligaments, 261
accessory, of atlas, 276
of acetabulum, transverse, 330
acromio-clavicular, inferior, 299
superior, 299
of ankle, 347
annular, anterior, 541
external, 542
internal, 542
of radius, 314
of stapes, 1161
anterior common, 269
longitudinal, 269
superior, 285
appendiculo-ovarian of Clado, 1304
arcuate, external, 427, 449
internal, 427
middle, 427
astragalo-scaphoid, 354
atlanto-axial, anterior, 274
posterior, 275
atlo-axoid, anterior, 274
posterior, 275
of axilla, suspensory, 464
of Bertin, 328
of Bigelow, 328
of bladder, false, 1436
true, 1436
broad, of liver, 1333
of uterus, 1490
calcaneo-astragaloid, external, 352
internal, 352
posterior, 352
-cuboid, internal, 353
long, 353
short, 353
superior, 353
-navicular, 353
-scaphoid, external, 353
inferior, 354
internal, 354
superior, 353
capsular. *See* Individual Joints.
carpo-metacarpal, 313
of carpus, 319
central, of spinal cord, 835
check, 278, 1105
chondro-sternal, anterior, 288
interarticular, 288
posterior, 288
-xiphoid, anterior, 288
posterior, 288
ciliary, 1116
of Cloquet, 1466
coccygeal, 833
Colles', 437
conoid, 300
of Cooper, 437, 448
coraco-acromial, 301
-clavicular, 300
-humeral, 304
coracoid, 302
costo-clavicular, 298
-coracoid, 467
-transverse, long, 285
middle, 286
posterior, 286
-vertebral, anterior, 284
-xiphoid, anterior, 288
posterior, 288
cotyloid, 329
crico-arytenoid, 1367

Ligaments, crico-tracheal, 1368
cruciform, 275
deltoid, 348
dentate, 835
dorsal. *See* Individual Joints.
duodeno-mesocolic, 1261
-renal, 1255
of elbow, anterior, 309
posterior, 309
femoral, 515
of fingers, 322
superficial, transverse, 494
Flood's, 304
of foot, 547
fundiform of Retzius, 541
gastro-splenic, 1256
Gimbernat's, 437, 1515
gleno-humeral, 305
glenoid, 175, 305
of Cruveilhier, 359
glosso-epiglottic, 1366
of hand, 319
of Helmholtz, 1160
of Henle, 438, 442
hepato-colic, 1255
-duodenal, 1255
-gastric, 1254
of Hesselbach, 438, 442, 1517
of Hey, 515
of hip, 326
hyo-epiglottic, 1365
ilio-femoral, 328
-lumbar, 291
-pectineal, 508
-trochanteric, 329
of incus, 1161
infundibulo-pelvic, 1490
interarticular, 284, 329
interchondral, external, 290
internal, 290
interclavicular, 298
interosseous. *See* Individual joints.
interspinous, 273
intersternal, anterior, 290
posterior, 290
intertransverse, 273, 295
intervertebral, 270
ischio-capsular, 328
of jaw, 280
of knee, 334
alar, 340
anterior, 345
coronary, 340
crucial, 337
mucosum, 334
posterior, 335
transverse, 340
of larynx, 1366
lateral. *See* Individual Joints.
lieno-renal, 1252, 1355
of liver, 1333
coronary, 1334
falciform, 1333
lateral, of, 1334
left, 1334
right, 1334
round, 1334
suspensory, 1333
lumbo-sacral, 291
of Luschka, 558
of malleus, 1160
metacarpal, 324
metacarpo-phalangeal, 324
metatarsal, 359
metatarso-pharyngeal, 359
nuchæ, 273, 413
oblique, 314
obturator, 296
occipito-atlantal, anterior, 276
posterior, 276
Ligaments, occipito-axial, 278
odontoid, lateral, 278
middle, 279
orbicular, 314
orbito-tarsal, 1139
of ossicula, 1160
palpebral, 1139
of patella, 335
pelvis, falciform, 293
transverse, 459
of penis, 1458
suspensory, 437
perineal, transverse, 459
of peritoneum, 1254
of phalanges of foot, 359
of hand, 325
phreno-colic, 1259
-pericardial, 559
plantar, long, 353
short, 353
posterior common, 270
longitudinal, 270
Poupart's, 436, 1515
pterygo-mandibular, 380
-maxillary, 380
pubic, anterior, 296
inferior, 296
posterior, 296
superior, 296
pubo-capsular, 328
-femoral, 328
-prostatic, 1435, 1451
-vesical, 1435
radio-carpal, 319
-ulnar, annular, 314
anterior, 315
oblique, 314
orbicular, 314
round, 314
posterior, 315
rhomboid, 298
sacro-coccygeal, anterior, 294
lateral, 295
posterior, 294
-iliac, anterior, 292
interosseous, 292
long, 292
oblique, 292
posterior, 292
short, 292
-sciatic, anterior, 293
great, 292
lesser, 293
posterior, 292
-uterine, 1490
-vertebral, 291
of scapula, 301
Schlemm's, 305
of shoulder, 303
spino-glenoid, 302
spiral, of cochlea, 1172
spleno-phrenic, 1256
sterno-clavicular, anterior, 298
posterior, 298
-costal, anterior, 288
interarticular, 288
posterior, 288
-costo pericardial, 559
-pericardiac, 558
of stapes, 1161
of sternum, 290
stylo-hyoid, 394
-mandibular, 281, 388
-maxillary, 281
subpubic, 296
suprascapular, 302
supraspinous, 273
suspensory, of clitoris, 437
of eye, 1105
of incus, 1161
of lens, 1129
Ligaments, suspensory, of liver, 1333
of mamma, 463
of ovary, 1501
of penis, 437
of Treitz, 1286
sutural, 259
synovial, 262
tarsal, external, 370
internal, 370
of thumb, 321
thyro-epiglottic, 1367
-hyoid, 1366
tibio-tarsal, anterior, 347
posterior, 347
transverse, of atlas, 275
humeral, 305
inferior, 302
of knee, 340
superior, of scapula, 302
trapezoid, 300
tympano-malleolar, 1156
utero-sacral, 1490
of uterus, 1489
round, 1491
of vertebræ, 270
vertebro-pericardial, 558
-pleural, 1385
vesico-uterine, 1490
of Winslow, 335
of Wrisberg, 339
of wrist, 318
anterior, 318
dorsal, 318
lateral, external, 318
internal, 318
posterior, 318
volar, 318
xipho-pericardial, 559
Y-, 328
of Zinn, 373
Ligamentum arcuatum externum, 427, 449
internum, 427
arteriosum, 587
conjugale, 284
corniculopharyngeum, 1368
crico-pharyngeum, 1368
denticulatum, 835
epididymidis, 1469
hepatoduodenale, 1250
latum pulmonalis, 1385
mucosum, 340
nuchæ, 273, 413
patellæ, 335
posticum Winslowii, 335
pulmonale, 1385
spirale, 1172
suspensorium, 279
teres, 329
ventriculare, 1366
Light stimuli, path of, 1127
Ligula, 944
Limbic lobe, 878
convolutions of, 879
Limbus alveolaris, 124
laminæ spiralis, 1172
Limen insulæ, 878
Limiting sulcus of Reil, 867
Linea alba, 444
aspera, 224
external lip of, 224
internal lip of, 224
quadrati, 224
splendens, 835
Linæ semilunares, 445
transverse, of abdomen, 445
Line, gluteal, anterior, 207
inferior, 208
posterior, 207
ilio-pectineal, 209

Line, nuchal, inferior, 72
superior, 72
temporal, 76, 80
Lingual artery, 603
branches of, 603
deep, 604
relations of, 603
surgical anatomy of, 604
bone, 153
gyrus, 877
nerve, 1038, 1057
branches of, 1038
region, muscles of, 396
dissection of, 396
tonsil, 1088
veins, 729
Lingualis muscle, inferior, 399
superior, 399
transverse, 399
vertical, 399
Lingula, 93, 280, 928, 944
pulmonis, 1392
Lips, 1194
surgical anatomy of, 1224
Liquor Cotunnii, 1164
Lissauer, tract of, 843
Little brain, 926
Littré, glands of, 1444
Liver, 1326
abnormalities of, 1335
accessory, 1335
areolar coat of, 1337
arteries of, 1336
development of, 1243
ducts of, 1341
excretory apparatus of, 1342
fibrous coat of, 1337
fissures of, 1330
hepatic arteries, 1336
ducts, 1336
vein, 1336
ligaments of, 1333
lobes of, 1332
lobules of, 1337
lymphatics of, 805, 1341
margins of, 1330
movability of, 1334
nerves of, 1342
portal vein, 1336
serous coat of, 1337
structure of, 1337
support of, 1334
surface relations of, 1346
surfaces of, 1327, 1329
surgical anatomy of, 1346
veins of, 1336
Lobe or lobes, biventral, 931
of brain, 872
central, 878
of cerebellum, 926, 928, 930, 931
crescentic, anterior, 928
posterior, 928
cuneate, 877
digastric, 931
frontal, 872, 884
of kidney, 1415
limbic, 878
of liver, 1332
of lungs, 1392
occipital, 876
olfactory, 880
orbital, 874
parietal, 875
post-central, 878
pre-central, 878
of prostate gland, 1451
quadrate, 876
semilunar, inferior, 931
slender, 931
temporal, 877, 885
temporo-sphenoidal, 877
Lobe or lobes, of testicle, 1472
of thymus gland, 1407
of thyroid gland, 1403
Lobule of ear, 1145
of kidney, 1415
of liver, 1337
of lungs, 1395
of mamma, 1506
Lobuli testis, 1472
Lobulus centralis, 928
Locus cæruleus, 945
Long bones, 33
calcaneo-cuboid ligament, 353
ciliary arteries, 625
nerves, 1030
plantar ligament, 353
sacro-iliac ligament, 292
saphenous nerve, 1005
vein, 756
scrotal nerve, 1011
subscapular nerve, 984
thoracic artery, 651
nerve, 983
vein, 748
Longissimus dorsi muscle, 419
Longitudinal fasciculus, inferior, 918
superior, 918
fibres of cord, 841
of pons, 923
dorsal, 924
deep, 924
middle, 924
superficial, 924
ventral, 924
deep, 924
fissure of cerebrum, 865, 882
sinus, inferior, 738
superior, 78, 130, 736
Longus capitis muscle, 406
colli muscle, 407
Looped tubes of Henle, 1419
Louis, angle of, 157
Lower deep cervical glands, 787
extremity, arteries of, 697
articulations of, 325
bones of, 206
fasciæ of, 507
ligaments of, 325
lymphatic vessels of, 797
deep, 797
superficial, 797
muscles of, 507
surface form of, 549
surgical anatomy of, 551
nerves of, 997
veins of, 755
deep, 758
superficial, 756
jaw, articulation of, 280
subscapular nerve, 984
visual centre, 1022
Ludovic, angle of, 157
Lumbar arteries, 680
fascia, 416
ganglia, 1085
glands, 799
nerves, 997
divisions of, anterior, 998
posterior, 997
roots of, 997
plexus, 998
branches, 999
surgical anatomy of, 1017
portion of gangliated cord, 1079
region, 1233
veins, 765
ascending, 753, 765
right, 752
vertebræ, 56
Lumbar vertebræ, body of, 56
fifth, 57
laminæ of, 56
pedicles of, 56
processes of, 57
Lumbo-iliac ligament, 291
-sacral ligament, 291
plexus, 998
Lumbricales muscle, foot, 546
hand, 499
Lungs, 1390
air-cells of, 1396
apex of, 1390
arteries of, 1396
base of, 1391
borders of, 1392
bronchus of, 1395
capillaries, 1396
color of, 1394
fissures of, 1392
fœtal, 1394
lobes of, 1392
lobules of, 1395
lymphatics of, 1396
nerves of, 1397
parenchyma of, 1395
root of, 1394
serous coat of, 1394
structure of, 1394
subserous areolar coat of, 1394
substance of, 1394
surface form of, 1397
surfaces of, 1391, 1394
surgical anatomy of, 1397
veins of, 1396
weight of, 1394
Lunula of nails, 1185
Luschka, gland of, 1410
ligament of, 558
villi of, 854
Luys, nucleus of, 908, 910
Lymph canalicular system, 772
-capillaries, 772
-glands, parotid, 1215
-nodes, 774
perivascular, 772
-spaces, 772
Lymphatic or lymphatics, 772
of arm, 788
of arteries, 586
of bone, 41
of cord, 840
of cranial region, 779
duct, right, 778
tributaries of, 779
of dura mater of brain, 848
extracranial, 780
of face, 779
glands, 774
of abdomen, 797
abdomino-aortic, 799
along mesenteric arteries, 800
of anus, 809
axillary, 790
brachial, 788
bronchial, 1380
buccal, 782
buccinator, 782
carotid, 786
cervical, deep, 786
superficial, 784
of Cloquet, 795, 798
cœliac, 800
colic, 808
condyloid of Leaf, 795
connected with cœliac axis and branches, 800
diaphragmatic, 810
epigastric, superior, 802
of face, 780

Lymphatic or lymphatics, glands, femoral, deep, 795
gastric, 800
genial, 782
gluteal, 797
hæmorrhoidal, middle, 799
of head, 780
hepatic, 800
hypogastric, 799
iliac, 797
common, 799
external 797
internal, 799
ilio-pelvic, 797
infralaryngeal, 787
inframaxillary, 782
inguinal, deep, 795
superficial, 793
intercostal, 810
intermediate, 791
of intestine, large, 808
small, 807
ischiatic, 797
jugular, external, 784
internal, 786
juxta-aortic, left, 800
right, 800
of lower extremity, 793
lumbar, 799
malar, 782
mammary, internal, 810
mastoid, 780
maxillary, internal, 782
mediastinal, anterior, 811
posterior, 812
middle, of Stahr, 784
of neck, 784
obturator, 798
occipital, 780
paramammary, 813
parietal, 810
parotid, 781
deep, 782
superficial, 781
pectoral, 790
of pelvis, 797
peritracheo-bronchial, 812
posterior auricular retro-auricular, 780
post-pharyngeal, 785
pre-aortic, 800
pre-auricular, 781
prelaryngeal, 787
pretracheal, 787
popliteal, 795
rectal, 809
retro-aortic, 800
-crural, 798
-pharyngeal, 785
of Rosenmüller, 795
sacral, 799
saphenous, external, 795
scapular, 790
splenic, 800
sterno-mastoid, 786
subclavian, 791
submaxillary, 784
submental, 785
suboccipital, 780
suborbital, 782
subparotid, 782
substerno-mastoid, 786
supraclavicular, 787
supracondyloid of Leaf, 795
supraepitrochlear, 789
suprahyoid, lateral, 784
median, 785
supramaxillary, 782
supratrochlear, 789
surgical anatomy of, 774
Lymphatic or lymphatics, glands, of thoracic wall, 810
tibial, anterior, 795
tracheal, 787
of upper extremity, 788
deep, 790
superficial, 788
visceral, 811
zygomatic, 782
pharyngeal ring, 1224
vessels of abdomen, 801
walls of, deep, 801
superficial, 801
of bile-ducts, 806
of bladder, 802
cardiac, 815
cerebral, 779
of cranial region, 782
of face, 782
of Fallopian tube, 804
of gluteal region, 801
of head, 782
of heart, 577
of intestines, large, 809
small, 808
of kidney, 804
of larynx, 782
of leg, 797
of liver, 805
of lower extremity, 797
deep, 797
superficial, 797
of lung, 815
meningeal, 779
of mouth, 782
of neck, 779, 787
of nose, interior of, 782
of œsophagus, 815
of ovary, 804
of pancreas, 807
of pelvis, 801
of penis, 801
of perinæum, 801
of peritoneum, 802
of pharynx, 782
pleural, 815
of prostate gland, 803
pulmonary, 815
of scrotum, 801
of seminal vesicles, 804
of spleen, 807
of stomach, 806
of suprarenal capsule, 804
of testicle, 804
of thoracic trachea, 815
wall, 812
thymic, 815
of thyroid gland, 782
of tongue, 782
of umbilicus, 802
of upper extremity, 792
deep, 792
superficial, 792
of ureter, 804
of urethra, female, 803
male, 803
of uterus, 803
of vagina, 804
of vas deferens, 804
Lyra of fornix, 896

M

Macula acustica sacculi, 1170
cribrosa, 1164
lutea, 1128
Magnum of carpus, 199
Majendie, foramen of, 834, 853
Malar bone, 113
articulations of, 115
Malar bone, attachment of muscles to, 115
borders of, 115
development of, 115
processes of, 114
surfaces of, 113
canal, 114
foramen, 113
glands, 782
nerve, 1032, 1049
process of superior maxillary, 109
Male breast, 1509
surgical anatomy of, 1509
organs of generation, 1447
perinæum, 1537
urethra, 1441
Malleolar artery, 713, 719
Malleolus, external, 238
internal, 235
Malleus, 1158
handle of, 1158
head of, 1158
ligaments of, 1160
manubrium of, 1158
neck of, 1158
processes of, 1158
spur of, 1158
Malpighi, pyramids of, 1416
Malpighian bodies of kidney, 1417
of spleen, 1358
capsule, 1417
layer of skin, 1182
tuft, 1417
Mamma, 1503
areola of, 1504
arteries of, 1508
ligament of, suspensory, 463
lobule of, 1506
lymphatics of, 1508
nerves of, 1508
variations in, 1504
veins of, 1508
Mammary artery, external, 651
internal, 643
branches of, 644
surgical anatomy of, 645
glands, 1503
description of, 1503
internal, 810
lymphatics of, 812
surgical anatomy of, 814
structure of, 1505
surgical anatomy of, 1508
tissue, prolongations of, 1505
vein, internal, 750
Mammillary duct, 1507
process of lumbar vertebra, 57
Mandible, 122
Mandibular artery, 614
fossa, 84
nerve, 1036
region, muscles of, 377
dissection of, 377
Manubrium of malleus, 1158
of sternum, 157
Marchi and Lowenthal, column of, 843
Marginal artery, 500
convolution, 873
gyrus, 875
lobe, 857
tract of Spitzka and Lissauer, 843
vein, left, 771
Marrow of bone, 36
Marshall, vein of, oblique, 771
vestigial fold of, 561
Martinotti, cells of, 921
Masseter muscle, 381

Masseteric artery, 615
fascia, 381
nerve, 1037
vein, 727
Mast-cells, 36
Mastoid air-cells, 1153
antrum, 87
artery, 609, 610
cells, 86
foramen, 85, 138
fossa, 86
lymphatic glands, 780
nerves, 973
process, 86, 138
vein, 728
Masto-occipital suture, 75, 128
-parietal suture, 128
Matrix of nails, 1185
Maxillary antrum, orifice of, 145
artery, external, 604
internal, 612
bone, inferior, 122
articulation of, 125
attachment of muscles to, 125
development of, 125
horizontal portion of, 122
borders of, 124
surfaces of, 122
perpendicular portion of, 124
borders of, 124
processes of, 125
surfaces of, 124
superior, 105
articulations of, 112
attachment of, 112
body of, 105
surfaces of, 106
development of, 112
processes of, 109
hiatus, 107
lymphatic glands, internal, 782
nerve, inferior, 1036
superior, 1031
branches of, 1032
process of inferior turbinated, 120
of malar, 115
of palate bone, 117
region, superior muscles of, 376
sinus, 108
tuberosity, 106
vein, internal, 727
McBurney's point, 1303
Meatus, auditory, external, 88, 138, 1148
internal, 89, 133
of nose, inferior, 145
middle, 145
superior, 101, 144
urinarius, male, 1444
female, 1481
Meckel, band of, 1160
cavity of, 848
diverticulum, 1290
ganglion, 1034
branches of, 1034, 1035
Median nerve, 986
branches of, 987
vein, 745
basilic, 746
cephalic, 746
cerebral, 735
Mediastinal arteries, 644
posterior, 666
glands, anterior, 811
posterior, 812
pleura, 1385
subpleural, 644
space, 1387
Mediastinal surface of lungs, 1391
Mediastinum, 1388
anterior, 1389
arteries of, 1390
lymphatics of, 1390
middle, 1389
posterior, 1389
superior, 1388
testis, 1471
veins of, 1390
Medio-tarsal joint, 350, 355
Medulla oblongata, 884, 938
fibres of, 942
fissures of, 939
formatio reticularis of, 947
funiculus cuneatus, 941
gracilis of, 941
of Rolando, 941
gray matter of, 945
lateral column of, 940
tract of, 945
olivary body of, 941
pyramid of, 939
raphé of, 951
restiform body of, 941
structure of, internal, 945
surfaces of, posterior, 941
veins of, 736
spinalis, 884
Medullary canal, 857
portion of suprarenal capsule, 1431
of thymus gland, 1408
spaces of bone, 45
substance of kidneys, 1416
tube, 857
velum, anterior, 943
inferior, 943
posterior, 943
superior, 943
Medullated nerve-fibres, 822
Medulli-spinal veins, 755
Meibomian glands, 1139
structure of, 1140
surgical anatomy of, 1143
Membrana basilaris, 1172
cochlea ductus cochlearis, 1172
elastica laryngis, 1367
flaccida of Shrapnell, 1156
limitans externa of retina, 1126
interna, 1122
nictitans, 1140
pupillaris, 1120
quadrangularis, 1366
sacciformis, 317
tectoria, 1175
tympani, 1155
arteries of, 1157
lymphatics of, 1158
nerves of, 1158
secundaria, 1167
structure of, 1157
veins of, 1157
Membrane, basilar, 1172
Bowman's, 1109
of brain, arachnoid, 851
meningeal, 847
of Bruch, 1114
of choroid, 1112
of Corti, 1175
costo-coracoid, 467
crico-thyroid, 1367
of Demours, 1110
of Descemet, 1110
fenestrated, of Henle, 585
hyaloid, 1129
hyo-thyroid, 1366
of Jacobs, 1126
of Kolliker, 1175
Nasmyth's, 1204
Membrane, obturator, 525
occipito-atlantal, anterior, 276
posterior, 276
otolith, 1172
of Reissner, 1172
of Scarpa, 1152
of Shrapnell, 1156
of spinal cord, 832
arachnoid, 834
surgical anatomy of, 836
sutural, 264, 847
synovial, 262
thyro-hyoid, 1366
Membranous canal of cochlea, 1172
cranium, 102
labyrinth, 1169
portion of urethra, 1442
semicircular canals, 1170
Meningeal artery, 609, 610
anterior, 622
middle, 613
surgical anatomy of, 614
posterior, 638
small, 614
lymphatic vessels, 779
membranes of brain, 847
nerve, 1032
veins, 730, 734
Meninges of brain, 847
Meningo-rachidian veins, 754, 833
Menisco-femoral joint, 342
-tibial joint, 342
Meniscus, 281
Mental foramen, 123, 140
nerve, 1039
process, 122, 140
protuberance, 122
spines, 123
tubercles, 122
Merkel, filtrum ventriculi of, 1368
Mesencephalon, 906
Mesenteric arteries, glands along, 800
artery, inferior, 677
superior, 675
ganglion, 1085
plexus, inferior, 1085
superior, 1085
vein, inferior, 768
superior, 768
Mesenterico-mesocolic fold, 1262
-parietal fold, 1264
Mesentery, 1257
development of, 1237
glands, 807
of vermiform appendix, 1260
Mesoappendix, 1260
Mesoblastic somites, 1235
Mesocæcum, 1301
Mesochorium, 1461
Mesocolic area of kidney, 1414
band, 1317
fossa, 1261
Mesocolon, ascending, 1258
descending, 1258
sigmoid, 1259
transverse, 1259, 1309
Mesogastrium, 1237
Mesognathion, 111
Mesorectum, 1259
Mesosalpinx, 1490
Mesosternum, 159
Mesovarium, 1490, 1500
Metacarpal bones, 200
ligament, transverse, 324
spaces, 201
Metacarpo-phalangeal articulations, 324, 359

Metacarpo-phalangeal articulations, surface form of, 325
Metacarpus, 200
  articulations of, 204
  common character of, 200
  development of, 205
  peculiar characters of, 201
Metasternum, 159
Metatarsal artery, 715
  bones, 249
    fifth, 252
    first, 249
    fourth, 251
    peculiar characters of, 249
    second, 250
    third, 251
  ligament, transverse, 359
Metatarsus, 249
  articulations of, 252
  common characters of, 249
  development of, 253
Metencephalon, 858
Metopic suture, 83, 127
Meynert, commissure of, 908
Mid-brain, 906
Middle arcuate ligament, 427
  cardiac nerve, 1077
  cerebellar peduncles, 934
  cerebral artery, 627
  cervical ganglion, 1076
  clinoid processes, 93, 132
  colic artery, 676
  commissure, 903
  constrictor muscle, 401
  cornu of lateral ventricle, 890
  costo-transverse ligament, 286
  cutaneous nerve, 1004
  ear, 1150
  fossa of skull, 130
  frontal convolution, 873
  hæmorrhoidal artery, 687
    gland, 799
    veins, 760
  inguinal fossa, 1520
  internal frontal artery, 627
  meatus of nose, 145
  mediastinum, 1389
  meningeal artery, 613
    veins, 734
  occipital convolution, 877
    sulcus, 876
  odontoid ligament, 52, 279
  palatine nerve, 1035
  peduncle of cerebellum, 922
  sacral artery, 681
    veins, 764
  spermatic fascia, 440
  subscapular nerve, 984
  superior dental nerve, 1033
  temporal artery, 611
    convolution, 877
    vein, 727
  thyroid vein, 730
  turbinated bone, 107
  vesical artery, 686
Mid-gut, 1236
Milk teeth, 1196
Minor cardiac nerve, 1077
Mitral orifice, 568
Mixed bones, 34
Mobile septum, 1097
Moderator band, 570
Modiolus, 1167
Molar glands, 1195
  teeth, 1198
Moll, glands of, 1138
Monoaxonic cells, 821
Monro, foramen of, 889
Mons Veneris, 1477
Montgomery, glands of, 1504
Monticulus cerebelli, 927
Morgagni, columns of, 1319
  crypts of, 1319
  hydatids of, 1469
  sinus of, 402
  valves of, 1319
Motor oculi nerve, 1024
    surgical anatomy of, 1025
  projection fibres of cerebrum, 914
  tract, 939
Mouth, 1193
  angle of, 1193
  aperture of, 1193
  cavity of, 143
    proper, 1194
  floor of, lymphatic vessels of, 782
  mucous membranes of, 1194
  muscles of, 376
  surface form of, 1219
  surgical anatomy of, 1224
  vestibule of, 1194
Movable spleen, 1356
Movements admitted in joints, 266
Mucilaginous glands, 262
Mucous alveoli, 1218
  coat of bladder, 1437
    of gall-bladder, 1343
    of œsophagus, 1229
    of pharynx, 1223
    of urethra, 1444, 1446
  glands of tongue, 1218
Müller's muscle, 374
  "ring" muscle, 1116
Multifidus spinæ muscle, 421
Multipolar cells, 820
Muscle or muscles, 361
  of abdomen, 432
    deep, 449
    superficial, 432
  abductor hallucis, 544
    indicis, 499
    minimi digiti, foot, 544
      hand, 498
    pollicis, 495
  accelerator urinæ, 457
  accessorius ad ilio-costalem, 419
    pedis, 546
  of acromial region, 470
  adductor brevis, 520
    longus, 519
    magnus, 520
    minimus, 520
    obliquus hallucis, 546
      pollicis, 497
    transversus hallucis, 548
      pollicis, 497
  anconeus, 487
  antitragicus, 1147
  of arm, 470, 474
  arytenoid, 1375
  aryteno-epiglottideus, 1373
  arytenoideus, 1372
  attollens auriculam, 369
  attrahens auriculam, 369
  of auricular region, 369
  azygos uvulæ, 405
  of back, 410
  biceps, arm, 475
    flexor cubiti, 475
    thigh, 520
  bipenniform, 363
  biventer cervicis, 420
  Bowman's, 1115
  brachialis anticus, 476
  buccinator, 380
  bulbo-cavernous, 557
Muscle or muscles, cervicalis ascendens, 419
  chondro-glossus, 397
  ciliary of eye, 1115
  circumflexus, 404
  coccygeus, 455
  complexus, 420
  compressor narium minor, 376
    nasi, 376
    sacculi laryngis, 1373
    urethræ in female, 462
      in male, 460
  constrictor, isthmi faucium, 398, 405
    pharyngeus, inferior, 400
      middle, 401
      superior, 401
    urethræ in female, 462
      in male, 460
  coraco-brachialis, 475
  corrugator cutis ani, 449
    supercilii, 371
  of cranium, 365
  cremaster, 439, 1516
  crico-arytenoid, posterior, 1372
    -thyroid, 1372
  crureus, 517
  deltoid, 470
  depressor alæ nasi, 376
    anguli oris, 378
    labii inferioris, 378
  detrusor urinæ, 1437
  diaphragm, 427
  digastric, 393
  dilator naris anterior, 376
      posterior, 376
  of dorsal region, 543
  ejaculator seminis, 457
    urinæ, 457
  erector clitoridis, 461
    penis, 458
    spinæ, 417
  of expression, 385
  of expiration, 432
  extensor brevis digitorum, 543
      pollicis, 489
    carpi radialis brevior, 485
      longior, 485
      ulnaris, 487
    coccygis, 422
    communis digitorum, 486
    indicis, 490
    longus digitorum, 533
      pollicis, 489
    minimi digiti, 487
    ossis metacarpi pollicis, 489
    primi internodii pollicis, 489
    proprius hallucis, 532
    secundi internodii pollicis, 489
  of face, 365
  of femoral region, anterior, 512
      internal, 519
      posterior, 529
  of fibular region, 539
  flexor accessorius, 546
    brevis digitorum, 544
      hallucis, 546
    minimi digiti, foot, 547
      hand, 498
    pollicis, 497
  carpi radialis, 479
    ulnaris, 480
  longus digitorum, 538
      hallucis, 538
      pollicis, 482
    ossis metacarpi, 498
      pollicis, 496
    profundus digitorum, 482
    sublimis digitorum, 481
  of forearm, 478

Muscle or muscles, of foot, 541
frontalis, 368
fusiform, 362
gastrocnemius, 534
gemellus, inferior 527
superior, 526
genio-glossus, 396
-hyo-glossus, 396
-hyoid, 395
of gluteal region, 522
gluteus maximus, 522
medius, 523
minimus, 523
gracilis, 519
hamstring, 529
of hand, 491
of head, 385
helicis major, 1147
minor, 1147
Hilton's, 1373
of hip, 522
Horner's, 371
of humeral region, anterior, 474
posterior, 477
hyo-glossus, 397
of iliac region, 508
iliacus, 510
ilio-capsularis, 511
-coccygeus, 454
-costalis, 419
infracostales, 425
of infra-hyoid region, 391
infraspinatus, 472
insertion of, 363
of inspiration, 432
intercostal, 425
external, 425
internal, 425
of intermaxillary region, 378
interossei of foot, 548
of hand, 499
interspinales, 421
intertransversales, 422
lateralis, 422
mediales, 422
involuntary, 361
of ischio-rectal region, 449
labial, 378
of larynx, 1373
latissimus dorsi, 413
of leg, 531
levator anguli oris, 377
scapulæ, 414
ani, 451
glandulæ thyroideæ, 1403
labii inferioris, 378
menti, 378
superioris, 376
alæque nasi, 375
palati, 403
palpebræ, 371
superioris, 372
prostatæ, 454
urethræ, 454
levatores costarum, 426
ligamentous action of, 268
of lingual region, 396
lingualis, inferior, 399
superior, 399
transverse, 399
vertical, 399
longissimus dorsi, 419
longus capitis, 407
colli, 407
of lower extremity, 507
lumbricales, foot, 546
hands, 497
of mandibular region, 377
masseter, 381
of maxillary region, 376
Muscle or muscles, Müller's, 374
multifidus spinæ, 421
mylo-hyoid, 394
of nasal region, 375
naso-labialis, 380
of neck, 385
oblique, ascending, 437
descending, 433
external, 433
internal, 437, 1516
obliquus auriculæ, 1147
capitis inferior, 422
superior, 422
oculi, inferior, 374
superior, 373
obturator externus, 528
internus, 525
occipitalis, 368
occipito-frontalis, 367
omo-hyoid, 393
opponens minimi digiti, 498
pollicis, 496
orbicular, 363
orbicularis oris, 378
palpebrarum, 370
orbital, 374
region, 372
of palatal region, 403
palato-glossus, 398, 405
-pharyngeus, 405
of palmar region, middle, 499
palmaris brevis, 498
longus, 480
of palpebral region, 370
pectineus, 519
pectoralis major, 464
minor, 468
of pelvic outlet, 449
penniform, 363
of perinæum in female, 460
in male, 455
peroneus brevis, 540
longus, 539
tertius, 534
of pharyngeal region, 400
pharyngo-glossus, 398
of plantar region, 544
plantaris, 536
platysma myoides, 386
popliteus, 537
pronator quadratus, 483
radii teres, 479
psoas magnus, 509
parvus, 510
of pterygo-mandibular region, 383
pterygoid, external, 383
internal, 383
pubococcygeus, 452
pyramidalis abdominis, 444
nasi, 375
pyriformis, 524
quadratus femoris, 527
lumborum, 449
menti, 378
quadriceps extensor, 516
quadrilateral, 362
of radial region, 484, 495
of radio-ulnar region, posterior, 486
recto-urethralis, 454
-uterinus, 1491
rectus abdominis, 442
capitis anticus major, 406
minor, 407
lateralis, 407
posticus major, 422
minor, 422
femoris, 516
oculi, external, 373
inferior, 373
Muscle or muscles, rectus oculi, internal, 373
superior, 373
retrahens auriculum, 369
rhomboidal, 363
rhomboideus major, 414
minor, 414
"ring" of Müller, 1116
risorius, 380
rotatores spinæ, 421
sacro-lumbalis, 419
salpingo-pharyngeus, 405
Santorini's, 380
sartorius, 516
scalenus anticus, 408
medius, 408
posticus, 409
of scapular region, anterior, 471
posterior, 472
semicircular, of rectum, 1317
semimembranosus, 530
semispinalis colli, 421
dorsi, 421
semitendinosus, 530
serratus magnus, 468
posticus inferior, 415
superior, 415
of shoulder, 470
skeletal, 361
of sole of foot, 544
soleus, 535
sphincter, 363
ani, external, 450
internal, 451
vaginæ, 461
spinalis colli, 420
dorsi, 419
splenius, 416
capitis, 416
colli, 416
sterno-cleido-mastoid, 389
-hyoid, 391
-mastoid, 389
-thyroid, 392
striated, 361
striped, 361
stylo-glossus, 397
-hyoid, 394
-pharyngeus, 403
subanconeus, 478
subclavius, 468
subcrureus, 518
subscapularis, 471
of superficial cervical region, 386
supinator longus, 484
radii brevis, 487
of supra-hyoid region, 393
supraspinales, 421
supraspinatus, 472
suspensory, of duodenum, 1286
temporal, 382
of temporo-mandibular region 381
tensor fasciæ femoris, 515
palati, 404
tarsi, 371
tympani, 1161
teres major, 474
minor, 473
of thigh, 512
of thoracic region, anterior, 463
lateral, 468
of thorax, 424
thyro-arytenoid, 1373
-epiglottideus, 1373
-hyoid, 392
tibialis anticus, 532
posticus, 538

Muscle or muscles, of tibio-fibular region, 531
of tongue, 400
extrinsic, 398
intrinsic, 391
trachelo-mastoid, 419
tragicus, 1147
transversalis abdominis, 442, 1516
cervicis, 419
colli, 419
transversus auriculæ, 1147
menti, 378
perinei superficialis, in female, 460
in male, 457
trapezius, 411
triangular, 362
triangularis menti, 378
sterni, 425
triceps, 477
extensor cubiti, 477
of trunk, 410
of ulnar region, 498
unstriated, 361
unstriped, 361
of upper extremity, 462
of ureters, 1437
vastus externus, 517
internus, 517
of vertebral region, anterior, 406
lateral, 408
voluntary, 361
zygomaticus major, 377
minor, 377
Muscular coat of anal canal, 1317
of bladder, 1437
of duodenum, 1288
of intestine, large, 1317
small, 1290
of œsophagus, 1228
of rectum, 1317
of stomach, 1273
of vermiform appendix, 1305
portion of urethra, 1442
structure of heart, 575
substance of tongue, 398
Musculi papillares of ventricle, left, 571
right, 570
pectinati of auricle, left, 511
right, 566
pubo-vesicalis, 1437
Musculo-cutaneous nerve, 985, 1017
-phrenic artery, 644
-spiral groove, 179
nerve, 989
branches of, 990
Myelencephalon, 938
Mylo-hyoid artery, 614
muscle, 394
ridge, 123
-hyoidean groove, 124
Myocardium, 574
Myrtiform fossa, 106

N

Naboth, ovules of, 1492
Nails, 1185
body of, 1185
edge of, 1185
lunula of, 1185
matrix of, 1185
ridges of, 1185
ungual fold of, 1185
wall of, 1185
Nares, anterior, 142, 1098
Nares, posterior, 142, 1098
septum of, 142
Nasal angle, 105
artery from internal maxillary, 616
from ophthalmic, 625
of septum, 607
transverse, 625
bones, 104
articulations of, 105
attachment of muscles to, 105
borders of, 105
development of, 105
surfaces of, 105
cartilages, 1096
cavity, 142
crest, 111, 116
duct, 1142
fossæ, 142, 1098
arteries of, 1101
atrium of, 1100
inner wall of, 1100
lymphatics of, 1102
mucous membrane of, 1100
nerves of, 1102
outer wall of, 1099
surgical anatomy of, 1102
veins of, 1101
groove, 105
nerve, 1030
branches of, 1030
notch, 80
portion of pharynx, 1221
process, 80
of superior maxillary, 109
region, muscles of, 375
slit, 143
spine, 80
anterior, 111, 139, 143
posterior, 116, 135, 143
venous arch, 725
Nasion, 80, 139
Nasmyth's membrane, 1204
Naso-frontal vein, 740
-labial ridge, 377
-labialis muscle, 380
-maxillary suture, 139
-palatine artery, 616
canal, 121
groove, 121
nerve, 1036
-pharynx, 1221
Navicular bone, 246
articulations of, 247
attachment of muscles to, 247
surfaces of, 246
tuberosity of, 246
Neck, arteries of, 595
fasciæ of, 385
lymphatic glands of, 779, 784
vessels of, 787
muscles of, 385
triangles of, posterior, 618
surgical anatomy of, 616
veins of, 724, 728
Nélaton's line, 229
Nerve or nerves, abducent, 1043
ansa hypoglossi, 1066
of arm, 977
Arnold's, 1060
of arteries, 586
articular, of anterior tibial, 1017
of auriculo-temporal, 1038
of great sciatic, 1013
of internal plantar, 1015
popliteal, 1014
of peroneal, 1016
of posterior tibial, 1015
Nerve or nerves, articular, of ulnar, 988
auditory, 1050
auricular, anterior, 1038
of pneumogastric, 1060
posterior, 1047
auriculo-temporal, 1037
of bones, 41
buccal, 1037
from facial, 1049
buccinator, 1037
calcaneal, external, 1014
internal, 1015
calcaneo-plantar, 1015
cardiac, cervical, 1061
great, 1077
inferior, 1077
middle, 1077
minor, 1077
superior, 1076
thoracic, 1061
cardio-motor, 1071
carotico-tympanic, 1073
carotid, 1057
cavernous, large, 1086
small, 1086
-cells, 818
axone of, 821
dendrites of, 821
development of, 823
cerebral, 1019
cervical, 968, 1049
superficial, 973
cervico-facial, 1049
chorda tympani, 1038, 1047
ciliary, long, 1030
short, 1031
circumflex, 984
coccygeal, 1006
cochlear, 1053
communicantes hypoglossi, 974
communicating, fibular, 1014
tibial, 1014
of Cotunnius, 1036
cranial, 1019
first, 880
crural, anterior, 1004
accessory of Winslow, 1004
cutaneous, of abdomen, 996
external, 985, 1003
internal, 986, 1004
of internal plantar, 1015
middle, 1004
of musculo-cutaneous, 1017
-spiral, 991
of obturator, 1003
palmar, 986
of perineal, 1013
of peroneal, 1016
of small sciatic, femoral, 1011
gluteal, 1011
perineal, 1011
of supraorbital, 1030
of thorax, 995
of ulnar, 988
dorsal, 989
palmar, 988
dental, anterior superior, 1033
inferior, 1039
middle superior, 1033
posterior superior, 1032
descendens hypoglossi, 1066
noni, 1066
digastric, from facial, 1048
digital, foot, 1015
hand, 987
dorsal, 993
of clitoris, 1013
of penis, 1013

Nerve or nerves, dorsi-lumbar, 996
of dura mater of brain, 849
eighth, 1050
eleventh, 1063
-endings, Ruffini's, 828
-epithelium cells, 830
of eyeball, 1021
facial, 1044
-fibre, axis-cylinder of, 822
-fibres, 822
development of, 823
medullated, 822
non-medullated, 823
of retina, 1122
fifth, 1026
first, 1019
of foot, 1015
fourth, 1025
frontal, 1030
ganglia of, 831
gastric, 1061
genito-crural, 1000
glosso-pharyngeal, 1054
gluteal, inferior, 1011
superior, 1010
gustatory, 1038
hæmorrhoidal, inferior, 1011
of heart, 577
hypogastric, 999
hypoglossal, 1064
iliac, 999
ilio-hypogastric, 999
-inguinal, 999
incisor, 1039
inframandibular, 1049
inframaxillary, 1049
infraorbital, 1049
infratrochlear, 1031
intercostal, 993
intercosto-humeral, 995
interosseous, anterior, 987
of anterior tibial, 1017
posterior, 991
Jacobson's, 1056
jugular, 1073
labial, 1034
of labyrinth, 1176
lachrymal, 1028
of Lancisi, 887
laryngeal, inferior, of pneumogastric, 1060
superior, 1060
external, 1060
internal, 1060
lingual of fifth, 1038,
of glosso-pharyngeal, 1057
lumbar, 997
malar, 1049
of superior maxillary, 1032
mandibular, 1036
masseteric, 1037
mastoid, 973
maxillary, inferior, 1036
superior, 1031
median, 986
meningeal, 1032
from hypoglossal, 1066
of internal maxillary, 1036
of pneumogastric, 1059
mental, 1039
motor oculi, 1024
muscular, of anterior tibial, 1017
of external plantar, 1016
of great sciatic, 1013
of hypoglossal, 1066
of internal plantar, 1015
popliteal, 1014
of musculo-cutaneous, 1017
-spiral, 990
of perineal, 1013
Nerve or nerves, muscular, of posterior tibial, 1014
of sciatic plexus, 1010
of ulnar, 988
musculo-cutaneous, 985, 1017
-spiral, 989
mylo-hyoid, 1039
nasal, 1030
from Meckel's ganglion, 1034
ganglionic branch of, 1030
naso-palatine, 1036
ninth, 1054
obturator, 1003
accessory, 1004
occipital, from facial, 1048
great, 969
small, 972
œsophageal, 1061
olfactory, 880, 1019
ophthalmic, 1028
optic, 1021
orbital, of superior maxillary, 1032
origin of, 826
palatine, anterior, 1035
external, 1035
large, 1035
middle, 1035
posterior, 1035
small, 1035
palmar, of ulnar, deep, 989
superficial, 989
palpebral, 1034
parotid, 1038
-paths, 959
auditory, 1053
cochlear, 1053
gustatory, 1057
vestibular, 1054
perforating, of Casserius, 985
of pericardium, 561
pericranial, 1030
perineal, 1013
peroneal, 1016
petrosal, deep, 1073
great deep, 1034
superficial, 1034
large deep, 1034, 1073
superficial, 1034
pharyngeal, 1036, 1057, 1060
phrenic, 974
of pia mater of brain, 856
plantar, external, 1016
internal, 1015
plexus of, abdominal aortic, 1085
annular, 1111
brachial, 977
cardiac, 1081
carotid, internal, 1073
cavernous, 1073
cervical, 972
cœliac, 1061, 1084
colic, left, 1085
coronary, 1081, 1085
cystic, 1085
of dental, superior, 1033
epigastric, 1083
fundamental, 1111
gastric, 1085
gastro-duodenal, 1085
-epiploic, 1085
left, 1085
hæmorrhoidal, inferior, 1086
superior, 1085
hepatic, 1085
hypogastric, 1085
infraorbital, 1049
intra-epithelial, 1111
lumbar, 998
mesenteric, inferior, 1085
Nerve or nerves, plexus of, mesenteric, superior, 1085
œsophageal, 1059, 1061, 1082
ovarian, 1084
pancreatic, 1085
patellar, 1004
pelvic, 1086
pharyngeal, 1057
phrenic, 1084
prostatic, 1086
pudendal, 1009
pudic, 1009
pulmonary, 1081
anterior, 1059, 1061
posterior, 1059, 1061
pyloric, 1085
renal, 1061, 1084
sacral, 1009, 1086
sciatic, 1009
sigmoid, 1085
solar, 1083
spermatic, 1084
splenic, 1061, 1085
subclavian, 1077
subepithelial, 1111
suprarenal, 1084
thoracic aortic, 1079
tympanic, 1057
uterine, 1086
utero-vaginal, 1086
vaginal, 1086
vertebral, 1077
vesical, 1086
pneumogastric, 1057
popliteal, external, 1016
internal, 1014
portio dura, 1044
mollis, 1045
pterygoid, external, 1037
internal, 1037
pterygo-palatine, 1036
pudendal, inferior, 1011
pudic, 1011
pulmonary, anterior, 1061
posterior, 1061
radial, 991
recurrent, of internal maxillary, 1036
laryngeal, of pneumogastric, 1060
respiratory, of Bell, external, 983
internal, 974
sacral, 1006
saphenous, external, 1014
internal, 1005
long, 1005
short, 1014
scapular, posterior, 982
of Scarpa, 1036
sciatic, great, 1013
small, 1011
scrotal, long, 1011
second, 1021
seventh, 1044
sixth, 1043
spheno-palatine, 1032
sphenoidal, 1039
spinal, 964
accessory, 1063
-spindles, 829
splanchnic, 1079
renal, 1079
stylo-hyoid, 1048
subcutaneous malæ, 1032
suboccipital, 968
subscapular, 984
superficialis colli, 973
supra-acromial, 974
supraclavicular, 974

Nerve or nerves, supramandibular, 1049
supramaxillary, 1049
supraorbital, 1030
suprascapular, 983
suprasternal, 974
supratrochlear, 1030
sural, 1016
sympathetic, 1066
temporal, of auriculo-temporal, 1038
deep, 1037
from facial, 1049
of superior maxillary, 1032
temporo-malar, 1032
tenth, 1057
termination of, 826
peripheral, 826
third, 1024
thoracic, 993
anterior, 984
long, 983
posterior, 983
thyro-hyoid, 1066
thyroid, 1077
tibial, 1014
anterior, 1016
posterior, 1014
tonsillar, 1057
trifacial, 1026
trigeminal, 1026
trochlear, 1025
twelfth, 1064
tympanic, 1056
from facial, 1047
ulnar, 988
-unit, 818
vagus, 1057
vasomotor, 1071
vestibular, 1053
Vidian, 1034
Nervi nervorum, 825
Nervous papillæ, 1181
system, 817
cerebro-spinal, structure of, 817
tissue, chemical composition of, 824
cutaneous patellæ, 1005
superficialis cordis, 1076
Neumann, dentinal sheath of, 1203
Neural arch, 34
canal, 857
tube, 857
Neurenteric canal, 1242
Neurilemma of cord, 822
Neuroblasts, 823
Neuro-central suture, 59
-muscular spindles, 829
-tendinous spindles, 829
Neuroglia of cord, 840
Neurokeratin, 823
Neurones, 818
of Cajal, 919
cell-bodies of, 818
theory of, 821
Nexal root of eighth nerve, 1050
Nidus avis of cerebellum, 931
Ninth nerve, 1054
surgical anatomy of, 1057
Nipple, 1504
structure of, 1505
Nissl's bodies, 820
Nodal point, 1106
Nodules of cerebellum, 930
Non-medullated nerve-fibres, 823
Nose, 1095
aperture of cartilage of, 1097
arteries of, 1098
cartilage of, 1096
Nose, dorsum of, 1096
fossæ of, 142, 1098
integument of, 1097
interior of, lymphatic vessels of, 782
lymphatics of, 1098
meatus of, inferior, 145
middle, 145
superior, 101, 144
mucous membrane of, 1098
muscles of, 1097
nerves of, 1098
outer, 1096
septum of, 142
cartilage of, triangular, 1097
structure of, 1096
veins of, 1098
Notch cerebellar, anterior, 926
posterior, 926
cotyloid, 213
ethmoidal, 82
ilio-sciatic, 210
intercondyloid, 225
intervertebral, 49
lachrymal, 107
nasal, 80
popliteal, 234
pre-sternal, 157
pre-occipital, 869
pterygoid, 96
of Rivinus, 1151
sacro-sciatic, 217
great, 210
lesser, 211
scapular, great, 173
sigmoid, 125
spheno-palatine, 118
supraorbital, 80, 140
suprascapular, 174
suprasternal, 409
thyroid, 1362
Nuchal line, inferior, 72
superior, 72
plane, 72
Nuck, canal of, 1462, 1501
Nucleated sheath of Schwann, 822
Nuclei, auditory, 950
of auditory nerve, 925
of fifth nerve, 925
of glosso-pharyngeal nerve, 950
of optic thalamus, 904
of vagus nerve, 950
Nucleus, accessory, of eighth nerve, 1051
amygdaloid, 891
ambiguus, 950, 1056
of Bechterew, 926, 1050
caudate, 891
cuneate, accessory, 948
of Deiters, 926, 1050
emboliformis, 938
of facial nerve, 925
fasciculi gracilis, 941
fastigii, 938
globosus, 938
hypoglossal, 949
inferior central, 949
lentis, 1132
lenticular, 890
of Luys, 908, 910
of olivary body, 951
accessory, 951
superior, 925
of optic thalamus, 904
of sixth nerve, 925
of spinal accessory nerve, 950
of Stilling, red, 938
of tegmentum, red, 908
vagi, 1057
Nuel, space of, 1175
Nuhn and Blandin, glands of, 1091
Nutrient artery of femur, 707
of fibula, 718
of humerus, 656
of tibia, 719
Nymphæ, 1478

O

Obelion, 129
Obex, 944
Oblique diameter of pelvis, 217
fibres of cord, 841
inguinal hernia, 1517, 1520
complete, 1521
incomplete, 1521
ligament, 314
line of clavicle, 168
of fibula, 237
of radius, 190
of tibia, 235
muscles, ascending, 437
aponeurosis of, 439
descending, 433
external, 433
aponeurosis of, 434
internal, 437, 1516
aponeurosis of, 439
dissection of, 437
ridges of scapula, 171
of trapezium, 198
of ulna, 188
sacro-iliac ligament, 292
sinus of pericardium, 560
vein of Marshall, 771
Obliquus auriculæ muscle, 1147
capitis inferior muscle, 422
superior muscle, 422
oculi muscle, inferior, 374
superior, 373
Obstetric perinæum, 1478
Obturator artery, 688
peculiarities of, 689
bursa, 331
canal, 525
crest, 213
externus muscle, 528
fascia, 1546
foramen, 214
groove, 211, 213
internus muscle, 525
bursa of, 525
ligament, 296
membrane, 525
nerve, 1003
accessory, 1004
vein, 761
Occipital artery, 608, 640
branches of, 609
bone, 71
angles of, 75
articulations of, 76
attachment of muscles to, 76
borders of, 75
development of, 75
structure of, 75
surfaces of, 71
convolution, inferior, 877
middle, 877
superior, 877
crest, external, 72, 136
internal, 74, 133
diploic vein, 734
fossæ, inferior, 133
groove, 86
horn of lateral ventricle, 889
lobe, 876
gray matter of, 921
lymphatic glands, 780

Occipital nerve, branch of facial, 1048
great, 969
small, 972
protuberance, external, 71, 136
internal, 73
sinus, 739
sulci, 868, 876
triangle, 618
vein, 727
Occipitalis muscle, 368
Occipito-atlantal ligament, anterior, 276
posterior, 276
-axial ligament, posterior, 278
-frontal fasciculus, 918
-frontalis, muscle, 367
surgical anatomy of, 368
-parietal suture, 128
-temporal convolution, 878
gyrus, 877
sulcus, 870
Occiput, arteries of, 608
Odontoblasts, 1206
of Waldeyer, 1201
Odontoclasts, 1209
Odontoid ligaments, lateral, 278
middle, 52, 279
process of axis, 52
Œsophageal arteries, 641, 666
nerves, 1061
opening of diaphragm, 430
of stomach, 1270
plexus, 1059, 1061, 1082
veins, 751
Œsophagus, 1225
abdominal portion, 1226
anomalies of, 1228
areolar coat of, 1229
arteries of, 1229
cervical portion, 1226
diaphragmatic portion, 1226
innervation of, 1230
lymphatics of, 815, 1230
movements of, 1230
mucous coat of, 1229
muscular coats of, 1228
nerves of, 1230
relations of, 1227
structure of, 1228
submucous coat of, 1229
surgical anatomy of, 1230
thoracic portion, 1226
veins of, 1229
Olecranon bursa, 311
subcutaneous, 477
fossa, 181
process, 186
Olfactory bulb, 880, 1019
gray matter of, 921
cells, 1101
fasciculus, 895
foramina, 143
hair, 1101
lobe, 880
anterior, 880
posterior, 881
nerve, 880, 1019
surgical anatomy of, 1021
path, 1020
sulcus, 870, 874
tract, 880, 1019
tubercle, 881, 1019
Olivary body of medulla oblongata, 941
corpus of, 951
nucleus of, 951
peduncles of, 951
bundle of cord, 843
eminence, 93
fasciculus, 910
Olivary nucleus superior, 925
process, 93, 131
Omenta, 1254
Omental band, 1317
tuberosity, 1329
Omentum, development of, 1238
gastro-colic, 1256
-hepatic, 1254
-splenic, 1256
great, 1256
lesser, 1254
Omo-hyoid muscle, 393
Opercula of insula, 878
Operculum, frontal, 866, 874
fronto-parietal, 866, 874
orbital, 866, 874
Ophryon, 80
Ophthalmic artery, 622
branches of, 622
ganglion, 1031
nerve, 1028
branches of, 1028
veins, 740
inferior, 741
superior, 740
Opisthotonic portion of temporal bone, 91
Opponens minimi digiti muscle, foot, 547
hand, 498
pollicis muscle, 496
Optic axis, 1106
chiasma, 882
commissure, 131, 882, 1021
inter-cerebral fibres of, 1021
cup, 1121
disk, 1121
foramen, 93, 96, 131, 142
groove, 93, 130, 131
lobes, 911
nerve, 1021
surgical anatomy of, 1022
papilla, 1121
path, 1022
radiations, 905
recess, 902
thalamus, 903
connections of, 905
nuclei of, 904
stalk of, 905
tubercle of, 904
tract, 884, 1021
Ora serrata, 1120
Oral cavity, 1193
portion of pharynx, 1221
of tongue, 1087
Orbicular bone, 1159
ligament, 314
muscles, 363
Orbicularis oris muscle, 378
palpebrarum muscle, 370
external portion of, 370
internal portion of, 370
orbital portion of, 370
palpebral portion of, 370
Orbiculus ciliaris, 1115
Orbit, 140
arteries of, 623
fasciæ of, 374
margin of, 106
muscles of, 374
Orbital artery, 611
internal, 627
branch of facial nerve, 1032
cavities, 140
convolution, anterior, 874
internal, 873
posterior, 874
fascia, 375
fissure, 96
foramina, 95
Orbital fossæ, 140, 143
lobe, 874
muscle, 374
nerve, 1032
operculum, 866, 874
plates, 81
process of malar, 114
of palate bone, 118
region, muscles of, 372
action of, 374
dissection of, 372
surgical anatomy of, 375
septum, 1139
sinus, 118
sulcus, 870, 874
vein, 727
Orbito-palpebral sulcus, inferior, 1137
superior, 1137
-tarsal ligament, 1139
Orbits, 140
Organ of Corti, 1173
of Jacobson, 1100
Organs of digestion, 1193
of generation, female, 1477
male, 1447
of Giraldes, 1473
of Golgi, 829
of respiration, 1361
of Rosenmüller, 1499
of special sense, 1087
of voice, 1361
Orifice, mitral, 568
of prostatic ducts, 1442
tricuspid, 567
of ureters, 1438
Os acetabulum, 213
external, 1489
incæ, 76
innominatum, 207
articulations of, 215
attachment of muscles to, 215
development of, 214
ilium, 207
ischion, 210
pubis, 212
structure of, 214
internal, 1488
magnum of carpus, 199
articulations of, 199
attachment of muscles to, 199
surfaces of, 199
planum of ethmoid, 100
trigonum, 245
uteri, 1489
Ossa pubis, articulations of, 296
angle of, 212
unguis, 113
Osseous labyrinth, 1164
portion of Eustachian tube, 1154
of external auditory meatus, 1149
Ossicles of tympanum, 1158
articulations of, 1160
ligaments of, 1160
movements of, 1161
Ossification of bone, 42
centre of, 44
intracartilaginous, 43
intramembranous, 43
of spine, 60
Osteo-dentine of Owen, 1204
Osteoclasts, 36
Osteology, 33
Ostium abdominale of Fallopian tube, 1497
Otic ganglion, 1039
branches of, 1039

Otokonien, 1171
Otolith, 1169
membrane, 1172
Outlet of pelvis, 217
Ova, primordial, 1502
Ovarian arteries, 680
bursa, 1490
plexus, 1084
veins, 766
Ovario-pelvic fold, 1500
Ovary, 1499
arteries of, 1503
at different ages, 1501
connections of, 1500
descent of, 1501
fimbria of, 1499
hilum of, 1500
lymphatics of, 1503
lymphatic vessels of, 804
nerves of, 1503
serous covering of, 1501
stroma of, 1501
structure of, 1501
supports of, 1500
surgical anatomy of, 1503
veins of, 1503
Ovicapsule of Graafian follicles, 1502
Ovules of Naboth, 1492
Ovum, discharge of, 1503
Oxyntic cells, 1277
glands, 1277

P

Pacchionian depressions, 78
glands, 737, 854
Pacinian corpuscles, 828
Pads of adipose tissue, 263
corpus callosum, 886
Palatal region, muscles of, 403
dissection of, 403
surgical anatomy of, 406
Palate, 1210
bone, 115
articulations of, 119
attachment of muscles to, 119
development of, 119
horizontal plate of, 116
borders of, 116
surfaces of, 116
perpendicular plate of, 117
borders of, 117
surfaces of, 117
processes of, 118
tuberosity of, 117, 135
vertical plate of, 117
borders of, 117
surfaces of, 117
hard, 1210
muscles of, 403
soft, 1211
surgical anatomy of, 1224
vail of, 1211
Palatine aponeurosis, 404
artery, ascending, 606
descending, 615
inferior, 606
posterior, 615
surgical anatomy of, 615
canal, anterior, 143
posterior, 107, 116
accessory, 116, 135
foramen, great, 116
posterior, 135
fossa, anterior, 110, 133
glands, 1211
nerve, anterior, 1035
external, 1035
Palatine nerve, large, 1035
middle 1035
posterior, 1035
small, 1035
process of superior maxillary, 120
spine, 116
Palato-glossus muscle, 398, 405
-maxillary canal, 107
-pharyngeus muscle, 405
Palmar arch, deep, 658
superficial, 664
surface marking of, 665
surgical anatomy of, 635
cutaneous nerve, 987
fascia, deep, 493
surgical anatomy of, 494
interosseous arteries, 660
plexus of nerves, 745
recurrent arteries, 660
region, middle, muscles of, 499
veins, 747
Palmaris brevis muscle, 498
longus muscle, 480
Palpebral arteries, external, 623
internal, 623
cartilages or plates, 1139
fasciæ, 1139
ligaments, 1139
nerves, 1034
portion of conjunctiva, 1140
region, muscles of, 370
dissection of, 370
Pampiniform plexus of veins, 765
Pancreas, 1348
arteries of, 1352
body of, 1350
borders of, 1350
development of, 1244
dissection of, 1348
head of, 1348
lymphatic vessels of, 807
lymphatics of, 1352
neck of, 1350
nerves of, 1353
peritoneal relations of, 1351
structure of, 1352
surface form of, 1353
surfaces of, 1350
surgical anatomy of, 1353
tail of, 1350
veins of, 1352
Pancreatic area of kidney, 1414
artery, 674
duct, 1351
juice, 1353
plexus of nerves, 1085
of veins, 768
Pancreatica magna artery, 674
Pancreatico-duodenal artery, inferior, 675
superior, 674
plexus of nerves, 1085
vein, 768
Papilla, bile, 1288
dentine, 1205
lachrymal, 1142
spiralis, 1173
Papillæ circumvallate, 1089
conical, 1090
filiform, 1090
fungiform, 1090
maximæ, 1089
mediæ, 1090
minimæ, 1090
of tongue, 1089
simple, 1090
structure of, 1090
Papillary layer of skin, 1187
Paracentral lobule, 875
Paraduodenal fossa, 1262
Paramastoid process, 73
Paramedialis sulcus, 868
Parametrium, 1489
Paramammary gland, 813
Paranucleus, 1352
Parathyroids, 1406
structure of, 1406
Parenchyma of lungs, 1395
of testicle, 1471
Paries carotica, 1153
jugularis, 1151
labyrinthica, 1152
mastoidea, 1152
tegmentalis, 1151
Parietal artery, 611
arteries, ascending, 628
bone, 76
articulations of, 79
attachment of muscles to, 79
development of, 78
surfaces of, 76
borders of, 78
cells of gastric glands, 1277
convolution, ascending, 876
inferior, 876
superior, 876
diploic vein, external, 734
eminence, 76
foramen, 76
layer of pleura, 1385
lobe, 875
lymphatics, 810
peritoneum, 1247
portion of tunica vaginalis, 1470
surface of liver, 1330
of stomach, 1269
Parieto-colic fold, external, 1263
internal, 1264
-occipital sulcus, 867
external, 867
internal, 867, 870
-sphenoidal artery, 628
-temporal artery, 628
Paro-ophoron, 1499
Parotid capsule, 1216
duct, 1215
structure of, 1216
surface form of, 1215
fascia, 388, 1215
gland, 1214
accessory, 1215
arteries of, 1216
duct of, 1215
lymph, 1215
lymphatics of, 1216
nerves of, 1216
veins of, 1216
lymphatic glands, 781
deep, 782
superficial, 781
nerves, 1038
recess, 1215
Paratideo-masseterica fascia, 388
Parovarium, 1499
Pars ciliaris retinæ, 1115, 1120
intermedia of Wrisberg, 1045
iridica retinæ, 1120
Patella, 230
apex of, 231
articulations of, 231
attachment of muscles to, 231
borders of, 231
development of, 231
ligaments of, 335
structure of, 231
surfaces of, 231
form of, 231
surgical anatomy of, 231
Patellar bursa, deep, 518

Patellar plexus, 1004
Path of light stimuli, 1127
Paths, nerve, auditory, 1053
cochlear, 1053
gustatory, 1057
vestibular, 1054
olfactory, 1020
optic, 1022
Pecquet, reservoir of, 775
Pecten ossis pubis, 212
Pectineus muscle, 519
nerve to, 1005
Pectoral fascia, deep, 464
gland, 790
intercostal nerve, 995
region, dissection of, 463
ridge, 179
Pectoralis muscle, major, 464
minor, 468
Peduncles of cerebellum, 932
inferior, 935
middle, 922, 934
superior, 910, 932, 943
cerebral, 906
of cerebrum, 882, 884
of corpus callosum, 882, 886
of flocculus, 931
of mammillary body, 883
of olive, 951
of perineal gland, 895, 906
Peduncular fibres of cerebellum, 932
of cerebrum, 914
Pelvic colon, 1311
fascia, 1544
girdle, 207
ligament, transverse, 459
plexus, 1086
portion of gangliated cord, 1080
Pelvis, 215
axes of, 218
brim of, 217
cavity of, 217, 1431
boundaries of, 1431
contents of, 1431
diameters of, 217
diaphragm of, 1231
differences between male and female, 219
false, 215
of kidney, 1415
lower circumference of, 217
lymphatic vessels of, 801
lymphatics of, 797
muscles of, 449
outlet of, 217
position of, 218
surface form of, 220
surgical anatomy of, 220
true, 216
inlet of, 217
superior circumference of, 217
veins of, 755
Pendulous portion of urethra, 1443
Penile portion of urethra, 1443
Penis, 1453
arteries of, 1459
dorsal, 692
body of, 1455
corpora cavernosa of, 1455
corpus spongiosum, 1458
crura of, 1454
dorsum of, 1455
frænum of, 1455
ligaments of, 1459
lymphatics of, 1459
vessels of, superficial, 801
nerves of, 1013, 1460
dorsal, 1013
Penis, prepuce of, 1455
root of, 1454
septum of, 1457
structure of, 1455
surgical anatomy of, 1460
veins of, 1459
dorsal, deep, 762
superficial, 762
Penniform muscles, 363
Peptic cells of glands, 1277
glands, 1277
Perforating arteries, anterior, 644
of hand, 660
of thigh, 706
cutaneous nerve, 1011
nerve of Casserius, 985
Pericæcal folds, 1262
fossæ, 1262
Pericardiac arteries, 644, 666
Pericardial pleura, 1385
sac, 1236
Pericardiothoracic cavity, 1236
Pericardium, 557
arteries of, 561
fibrous layer of, 558
nerves of, 561
serous, 560
sinus of, oblique, 560
transverse, 560
structure of, 558
surgical anatomy of, 561
vestigial fold of, 561
Pericementum, 1196
Perichondrium, 260
Perichoroidal space, 1108
Pericranial nerves, 1030
Perilymph, 1164
space, 1164
Perimysium, external, 361
internal, 361
Perineal artery, superficial, 690
transverse, 691
body, 1314, 1484, 1543
cutaneous nerve, 1011
fascia, deep, 1538
ligament, transverse, 459
nerve, 1013
Perineum, 1314, 1484
dissection of, 1535
in female, 1542
muscles of, 460
lymphatic vessels of, superficial, 801
in male, 1537
central tendinous point of, 1537
fasciæ of, 455
muscles of, 455
obstetric, 1478
surgical anatomy of, 1535
Perineurium, 825
Periosteum, 37
dental, 1204
Peripheral branches of lumbar portion of gangliated cord, 1080
of middle cervical ganglion, 1077
of pelvic portion of gangliated cord, 1080
of sacral portion of gangliated cord, 1080
of superior cervical ganglion, 1073
of thoracic portion of gangliated cord, 1079
terminations of nerves, 826
Peritoneal coat of duodenum, 1288
of stomach, 1273
Peritoneal relations of pancreas, 1351
Perisclerotic lymph-space, 1103
Peritoneum, 1245
development of, 1235, 1242
ligaments of, 1254
lymphatic vessels of, 802
surgical anatomy of, 802
mesenteries of, 1257
omenta of, 1254
parietal, 1247
structure of, 1245
surgical anatomy of, 1264
visceral, 1247
Peritracheo-bronchial glands, 812
Perivascular lymph-spaces, 772
Permanent teeth, 1196
development of, 1208
eruption of, 1209
superadded, 1208
Peroneal artery, 717
anterior, 718
branches of, 718
peculiarities of, 718
posterior, 718
relations of, 718
groove, 245
nerve, 1016
spine, 243
tubercle, 243
vein, 578
Peroneus brevis muscle, 540
longus muscle, 539
tertius muscle, 534
Perpéndicular line of ulna, 188
plate of ethmoid, 100
of palate bone, 117
Pes accessorius, 890
anserinus, 1045
of crus cerebri, 907
hippocampi, 890
Petit, canal of, 1130
triangle of, 435
Petro-mastoid portion of temporal bone, 91
-occipital fissure, 128
suture, 75, 133
-sphenoidal fissure, 128
suture, 136
-squamous sinus, 739
suture, 88
-tympanic fissure, 84, 1152
Petrosal nerve, deep, 1073
great deep, 1034
superficial, 1034
large deep, 1034, 1073
superficial, 1034
process, 93
sinus, inferior, 742
superior, 742
Petrous, ganglion, 1056
branches of, 1056
portion of internal carotid artery, 620
of temporal bone, 136
Peyer's glands, 1296
patches, 1296
Phalanges of foot, 252
articulations of, 252, 359
attachment of muscles of, 252
development of, 254
of hand, 204
articulations of, 204, 325
attachment of muscles to, 204
development of, 206
ligaments of, 325
Pharyngeal aponeurosis, 402, 1223

Pharyngeal artery, ascending, 610
branches of, 610
surgical anatomy of, 611
branch of pneumogastric nerve 1060
bursa, 1224
glands, 1222
nerve, 1036, 1057
plexus, 1057
portion of tongue, 1087
region, muscles of, 400
dissection of, 400
ring, lymphatic, 1224
spine, 73, 135
tonsil, 1221, 1224
tubercle, 73
veins, 730
plexus of, 730
Pharyngo-epiglottic fold, 1222
-glossus muscle, 398
Pharynx, 1220
aponeurosis of, 1223
arteries of, 610
fibrous coat of, 1223
isthmus of, 1221
laryngeal part, 1222
lymphatic vessels of, 782
mucous coat of, 1223
muscles of, 400
nasal part, 1221
oral part, 1221
structure of, 1222
surgical anatomy of, 1224
vault of, 1221
Philtrum, 380
Phleboliths, 762
Phrenic arteries, inferior, 680
superior, 644
ganglion, 1084
hernia, 427
nerve, 974
plexus of nerves, 1084
surface of spleen, 1354
veins, 767
Phrenico-costal sinus, 1386, 1414
-pleural fascia, 1386
Phreno-colic ligament, 1259
-pericardial ligament, 559
Physiological retina, 1120
Pia mater of brain, 854
arteries of, 856
nerves of, 857
veins of, 856
of cord, 835
structure of, 835
Pigmentary layer of retina, 1127
Pillars of fauces, 1211
of fornix, anterior, 895
posterior, 896
Pineal body, 905
gland, 905
peduncles of, 895, 906
structure of, 906
recess, 903
striæ, 904
Pinna of ear, 1144
arteries of, 1147
cartilage of, 1146
integument of, 1146
ligaments of, 1146
lymphatics of, 1147
muscles of, 1147
nerves of, 1148
structure of, 1146
veins of, 1147
Pisiform bone, 197
articulations of, 197
attachment of muscles to, 197
surfaces of, 197
Pit of stomach, 165
Pituitary body, 882
structure of, 883
fossa, 93
membrane, 1100
Pivot-joint, 265
Plane, nuchal, 72
Plantar arch, 719
arteries, external, 720
branches of, 720
surface marking of, 720
surgical anatomy of, 720
internal, 719
branches of, 720
surface marking of, 720
surgical anatomy of, 720
fascia, 542
surgical anatomy of, 543
ligaments, long, 353
superficial, 353
short, 353
nerves, external, 1016
internal, 1015
region, muscles of, 544
dissection of, 544,
veins, 758
Plantaris muscle, 536
Planum temporale, 76
Plate, cribriform of ethmoid, 99
horizontal, of palate bone, 116
perpendicular, of ethmoid, 100
of palate bone, 117
pterygoid, external, 96
internal, 96
vertical, of ethmoid, 100
of palate bone, 117
Platysma myoides muscle, 386
Pleuræ, 1382
arteries of, 1387
cavity of, 1382
cervical, 1385
costal, 1385
diaphragmatic, 1386
dome of, 1385
lymphatics of, 1387
mediastinal, 1385
nerves of, 1387
parietal layer of, 1385
pericardial, 1385
pulmonary, 1385
reflections of, 1384
structure of, 1387
surgical anatomy of, 1387
veins of, 1387
visceral layer of, 1382
Pleural lymphatics, 815
sacs, 1236
Pleuroperitoneal cavity, 1236
Plexus, Auerbachi, 1299
interlobular, 1338
of nerves, abdominal aortic, 1080, 1085
annular, 1111
brachial, 977
cardiac, 1081
anterior, 1081
deep, 1081
great, 1081
superficial, 1081
carotid, internal, 1073
cavernous, 1073
cervical, 972
posterior, 900
choroid, 899
cœliac, 1061, 1084
colic, left, 1085
coronary, 1085
cystic, 1085
dental, superior, 1033
diaphragmatic, 1086
epigastric, 1083
Plexus of nerves, fundamental 1111
gastric, 1085
gastro-duodenal, 1085
-epiploic, 1085
left, 1085
hæmorrhoidal, inferior, 1086
superior, 1085
hepatic, 1085
hypogastric, 1080, 1085
infraorbital, 1049
intra-epithelial, 1111
lumbar, 998
lumbo-sacral, 998
magnus profunda, 1081
mesenteric, inferior, 1085
superior, 1085
œsophageal, 1059, 1061, 1082
ovarian, 1084
pancreatic, 1085
pancreatico-duodenal, 1085
patellar, 1004
pelvic, 1086
pharyngeal, 1057
phrenic, 1084
prostatic, 1086
pudendal, 1009
pudic, 1009
pulmonary, 1059
anterior, 1082
posterior, 1081
pyloric, 1085
renal, 1061, 1084
sacral, 1009, 1086
sciatic, 1009
sigmoid, 1085
solar, 1083
spermatic, 1084
splenic, 1061, 1085
subclavian, 1077
subepithelial, 1111
suprarenal, 1084
thoracic aortic, 1079
tympanic, 1057
uterine, 1086
utero-vaginal, 1086
vaginal, 1086
vertebral, 1077
vesical, 1086
of veins, infraclavicular, 792
palmar, 745
pharyngeal, 730
prostatic, 761
prostatico-vesical, 761
pterygoid, 727
spermatic, 765
spinal, 753
subpleural mediastinal, 644
uterine, 763
vaginal, 763
venous, interspinous, 732
on thyroid body, 751
vesical, inferior, 762
superior, 761
Plica, epigastrica, 1520
fimbriata, 1087
gubernatrix, 1461
hypogastrica, 1519
salpingopalatine, 1221
salpingopharyngea, 1221
semilunaris, 1140
sublingualis, 1217
triangularis, 1213
urachi, 1519
vascularis, 1461
Pneumatic spaces, 1103
Pneumogastric nerve, 1057
ganglion of root of, 1059
surgical anatomy of, 1062
of trunk of, 1059

Polyaxonic cells, 821
Polymazia, 1505
Polythelia, 1505
Pomum Adami, 1362
Pons Tarini, 883
  Varolii, 883, 922
    base of, 922
    fibres of, 923
    gray matter of, 924
    structure of, 922
    surfaces of, 922
    veins of, 736
Pontal arteries, 639
Ponticulus, 1146
  of Arnold, 939
Popliteal artery, 707
    branches of, 710
    contents of, 708
    peculiarities of, 709
    position of contained parts, 708
    surface marking of, 709
    surgical anatomy of, 709
  groove, 226
  line, 235
  lymphatic glands, 795
  nerve, external, 1016
    internal, 1014
      branches, 1014
  notch, 234
  space, 707
    boundaries of, 707
    dissection of, 707
  vein, 758
Popliteus muscle, 537
Pore, gustatory, 1090
Portal sinus, 769
  vein, 769
    system of, 768
Portio-dura of seventh nerve, 1044
    ganglia of, 1045
  -mollis of auditory nerve, 1045
Post-anal gut, 1242
  -central gyrus, 876
    lobes, 878
    sulcus, inferior, 875
      superior, 875
  -clival, fissure, 928
  -glenoid process, 84
  -gracile fissure, 930
  -limbic fissure, 871
  -nodular fissure, 930
  -parietal convolution, 876
  -pharyngeal gland, 785
  -pyramidal fissure, 930
Posterior auricular artery, 609
    nerve, 1047
    vein, 727
  bicipital ridge, 179
  calcaneo-astragaloid ligament, 352
  carpal arch, 659
    artery of ulnar, 663
  cerebellar notch, 926
  cerebral artery, 640
  cervical plexus, 970
  chondro-sternal ligament, 288
  -xiphoid ligament, 288
  choroid artery, 640
  clinoid process, 93, 132
  commissure of brain, 903
    of cord, 839
  common ligament, 270
  condyloid foramen, 73, 133, 136
    fossa, 136
  cornu of lateral ventricle, 889
      bulb of, 889
  coronary plexus, 1081
  costo-transverse ligament, 286
Posterior costo-xiphoid ligament, 288
  crescentic lobe, 928
  crucial ligament, 337
  deep cervical vein, 733
  dental canals, 106
  divisions of cervical nerves, 968
    of coccygeal nerve, 1008
    of dorsal nerves, 993
      branches, cutaneous, 993
        external, 993
        internal, 993
    of lumbar nerves, 997
      branches, external, 998
        internal, 998
    of sacral nerves, 1006
      lower, 1007
      upper, 1006
        branches, external, 1006
          internal, 1006
  ethmoidal canal, 82, 100
    cells, 101, 145
    foramen, 82, 130, 141
    sinuses, 101
  external jugular vein, 728
    of thoracic nerves, 993
      branches, cutaneous, 993
        external, 993
        internal, 993
  extremity of ribs, 160
    head of, 160
    neck of, 160
    tuberosity of, 161
  femoral region, muscles of, 529
  fontanelle, 75, 103
  fossa of skull, 132
  gluteal line, 207
  humeral region, muscles of, 477
  inferior cerebellar artery, 639
    spinous process of ilium, 210
  intercostal veins, 752
  internal frontal artery, 627
  interosseous artery of ulna, 663
    nerve, 991
  intersternal ligament, 290
  intertrochanteric line, 223
  ligament of incus, 1161
    of Winslow, 335
    of wrist, 318
  longitudinal ligament, 270
    spinal veins, 755
  median fissure, 838
    ganglionic arteries, 640
  mediastinal arteries, 666
    glands, 812
  mediastinum, 1389
  medullary velum, 943
  meningeal artery, 638
  nares, 142, 1098
  nasal spine, 116, 135, 143
  occipito-atlantal ligament, 276
  -axial ligament, 278
  olfactory lobule, 881
  orbital convolution, 874
  palatine artery, 615
    canal, 107, 116
    canals, accessory, 116, 135
    foramen, 135
    nerve, 1035
  perforated lamina, 910
    space, 883
  peroneal artery, 718
  pillar of soft palate, 1212
  pillars of fornix, 896
  pubic ligament, 296
  pulmonary nerves, 1061
    plexus, 1059, 1061, 1081
  radial carpal artery, 659
Posterior, radio-ulnar ligament, 315
      region, muscles of, 486
  recurrent tibial artery, 713
  root of spinal nerves, 965
  sacral foramina, 63
  sacro-coccygeal ligament, 294
  -iliac ligament, 292
  -sciatic ligament, 292
  scapular artery, 642
    nerve, 982
    region, muscles of, 472
  semicircular canal, 1165
  spinal artery, 639
  sterno-clavicular ligament, 298
  -costal ligament, 288
  subarachnoid space, 852
  surface of liver, 1329
    of stomach, 1270
  superior dental nerves, 1032
    spinous process of ilium, 210
  temporal artery, 611, 640
    diploic vein, 734
  thoracic nerve, 983
  tibial artery, 716
    nerve, 1014
    veins, 758
  tibio-fibular region, muscles of, 534
  -tarsal ligament, 347
  triangle of neck, 618
  tubercle of cervical vertebra, 50
  tympano-malleolar ligament, 1156
  ulnar recurrent artery, 662
    vein, 745
  vertebral vein, 733
  wall of tympanum, 1152
Postero-lateral fontanelles, 103
    ganglionic arteries, 640
    tract, 843
  -median ganglionic arteries, 628
    tract, 843
Pouch, Douglas's, 1490
  of Prussak, 1162
  recto-vaginal, 1490
  utero-vesical, 1487, 1490
Poupart's ligament, 436, 1515
Præcentral gyrus, 872
Pre-anal fibres of levator ani, 453
  -aortic glands, 800
  -auricular lymphatic glands, 781
  -central lobe, 878
    sulci, 868
    sulcus, 872
      inferior, 872
      superior, 872
  -clival fissure, 928
  -laryngeal glands, 787
  -maxillary bones, 110
  -occipital notch, 869
  -patellar bursa, 340, 518
Precuneus of lobe of brain, 876
Prepatellar bursa, 518
Prepuce of clitoris, 1479
  of penis, 1455
Pre-occipital notch, 869
  -pyramidal fissure, 930
  -sternal notch, 157
  -sternum, 157
  -tracheal fascia, 388
    glands, 787
  -vertebral fascia, 388
Prickle cells, 1109
Primitive fibrillæ of Schultze, 822
  sheath of Schwann, 822
Primordial ova, 1502
Princeps hallucis artery, 716

Princeps pollicis artery, 660
Process or processes, acromion, 174
alveolar, 140
angular, 80
external, 140
internal, 140
of atlas, 51
auditory, 88
basilar, 73
of calcaneous, greater, 243
lesser, 243
clinoid, anterior, 131
middle, 93, 132
posterior, 93, 132
cochleariform, 91, 1153
condyloid of lower jaw, 125
coracoid, 175
of jaw, 125
of ulna, 186
costal, 50
ethmoidal, of inferior turbinated, 120
falciform, 515
hamular, of lachrymal, 113
of sphenoid, 96
of inferior turbinated bone, 120
of Ingrassias, 96
jugular, 73
lachrymal, of inferior turbinated, 120
of malar bone, 114
mammillary, of lumbar vertebræ, 57
mastoid, 86, 138
mental, 122, 140
nasal, 80
odontoid, of axis, 52
olecranon, 186
olivary, 93, 131
orbital, 118
of malar, 114
of palate bone, 117
petrosal, 93
post-glenoid, 84
pterygoid, of palate bone, 117
of sphenoid bone, 96
sphenoidal, 1097
of palate, 118
spinous, of ilium, 210
of sphenoid, 95
of tibia, 233
stylohyal, 92
styloid, of fibula, 237
of temporal bone, 90
of ulna, 189
of superior maxillary, 109, 110
tympanohyal, 92
unciform, 200
of ethmoid, 100
vaginal, of sphenoid, 95
of temporal bone, 89
of vertebræ, articular, 49
zygomatic, 84
Processus brevis of malleus, 1159
cochleariformis, 91, 1153
gracilis of malleus, 1158
tubarius, 1155
vaginalis, 1461
Proctodæum, 1242
Profunda artery, inferior, 656
superior, 655
femoris artery, 704
vein, 759
Projection fibres of cerebrum, 914, 932
centrifugal, 914
centripetal, 914
motor, 914
sensory, 914
Prominentia styloideæ, 1153
Promontory of sacrum, 61
of tympanum, 1152
Pronator quadratus muscle, 483
radii teres muscle, 479
surgical anatomy of, 479
ridge, 188
Pro-otic portion of temporal bone, 91
Prosencephalon, 864
Prostate gland, 1447
apex of, 1451
arteries of, 1452
base of, 1451
capsule of, 1449
isthmus of, 1451
lobes of, 1451
lymphatics of, 1452
vessels of, 803
nerves of, 1452
sheath of, 1449
structure of, 1452
surfaces of, 1451
surgical anatomy of, 1452
veins of, 1452
Prostatic ducts, orifices of, 1442
plexus of nerves, 1086
of veins, 761
portion of rectum, 1313
of urethra, 1441
secretion, 1452
sinus, 1442
vesicle, 1442
Prostatico-vesical plexus, 761
surgical anatomy of, 762
Protovertebræ, 1235
Protuberance, mental, 122
occipital, external, 71, 136
internal, 73
Prussak, pouch of, 1162
Psalterium, 896
Pseudostomata, 1246
Psoas magnus muscle, 509
parvus muscle, 500
Pterion, 137
ossicle, 83, 103
Pterygoid artery, 614
canal, 135
depression, 125
fissure, 96
fossa of jaw, 115
of sphenoid, 96
muscles, external, 383
internal, 383
nerve, external, 1037
internal, 1037
notch, 96
plate, external, 96
internal, 96
plexus of veins, 727
process of palate bone, 117
of sphenoid bone, 96
ridge, 95, 137
tubercle, 97
Pterygo-mandibular ligament, 380
region, dissection of, 383
muscles of, 383
actions of, 384
nerves of, 384
-maxillary fissure, 139
ligament, 380
-palatine artery, 616
canals, 135
fossa, 139
groove, 116
nerve, 1036
Pubic arch, 217
ligament, anterior, 296
inferior, 296
posterior, 296
Pubic ligament, superior, 296
portion of fascia lata, 1528
surface of bladder, 1434
Pubis, 212
angle of, 212
body of, 212
ramus of, ascending, 213
descending, 213
spine of,
Pubo-capsular ligament, 328
-coccygeus muscle, 452
-femoral ligament, 328
-prostatic ligament, 1435, 1451
-vesical ligament, 1435
muscle, 1437
Pudendal nerve, inferior, 1011
plexus of nerves, 1009
slit, 1478
Pudendum, 1477
Pudic artery, accessory, 690
external, deep, 704
superficial, 704
internal, in female, 692
in male, 689
branches of, 690
peculiarities of, 690
surgical anatomy of, 690
nerve, 1011
plexus of, 1009
vein, internal, 760
Pulmonary alveoli, 1378
artery, 587
left, 587
opening of, 569
right of, 587
branches of thoracic portion of gangliated cord, 1079
lymphatics, 815
nerves, anterior, 1061
posterior, 1061
pleura, 1385
plexus, 1081
anterior, 1059, 1061, 1082
posterior, 1059, 1061, 1081
sinuses of Valsalva, 571
veins, 723
Pulmonic semilunar valves, 571
Pulp, dental, 1200
Pulvinar of optic thalamus, 904
Puncta lacrimalia, 1142
vasculosa, 885
Punctum lacrimale, 1138
Pupil of eye, 417
Pupillary margin, 1117
Purkinje, axis-cylinder of, 822
cells of, 825
corpuscles of, 936
Putamen, 892
Pyloric artery, inferior, 673
superior, 673
glands, 1277
orifice of stomach, 1270
plexus, 1085
portion of stomach, 1269
sphincter, 1272
valve, 1272
Pylorus, 1270
antrum of, 1271
Pyramids of Ferrein, 1417
of Lalouette, 1403
lobe of cerebellum, 931
of Malpighi, 1417
of medulla, 939
of tympanum, 1153
of vestibule of ear, 1164
Pyramidal decussation, 947
tract, crossed, 842
direct, 842
uncrossed, 842

Pyramidalis, muscle, 444
nasi muscle, 375
Pyriformis muscle, 524
bursa of, 525

Q

Quadrate lobe of liver, 1332
lobule, 875
Quadratus femoris muscle, 527
lumborum, fascia of, 449
muscle, 449
menti muscle, 378
relations of, 378
Quadriceps extensor muscle, 516
Quadrigeminal bodies, 911
Quadrilateral, muscles, 362

R

Radial artery, 657
branches of, 659
peculiarities of, 658
relations of, 657
surface marking of, 658
surgical anatomy of, 658
fossa, 181
head of humerus, 181
nerve, 991
recurrent artery, 659
region, muscles of, 484, 495
dissection of, 484
vein, 745
Radialis indicis artery, 660
Radiations, optic, 905
Radio-carpal articulations, 317
surface form of, 318
surgical anatomy of, 318
-ulnar articulation, 313
inferior, 315
surface form of, 317
middle, 314
superior, 314
surface form of, 314
surgical anatomy of, 314
ligaments, annular, 314
anterior, 315
oblique, 314
orbicular, 314
posterior, 315
round, 314
region, anterior, muscles of, 479
surgical anatomy of, 484
posterior, muscles of, 486
surgical anatomy of, 491
Radius, 190
articulations of, 192
attachment of muscles to, 192
development of, 192
lower extremity of, 191
shaft of, 190
borders of, 190, 191
surfaces of, 191
sigmoid cavity of, 191
structure of, 192
surface form of, 192
surgical anatomy of, 192
upper extremity of, 190
Rami of lower jaw, 124
Ramus of ischium, ascending, 212
descending, 211
of pubis, ascending, 213
descending, 213
Ranine artery, 604
vein, 729
Raphé of corpus callosum, 887
of medulla, 951
of palate, 1211
of perineum, 1537
of scrotum, 1463
of tongue, 1087
Receptaculum chyli, 775
Recess, epitympanic, 87
Recessus cochlearis of Reichert, 1164
Reciprocal reception, articulation by, 265
Rectal columns, 1319
glands, 809
valves, 1318
Recto-urethralis muscle, 454
-uterinus muscle, 1491
-vaginal fold, 1490
pouch, 1314, 1490
-vesical fascia, 1546
pouch, 1314
Rectum, 1312
areolar coat of, 1318
arteries of, 1320
curves of, 1313
lymphatics of, 809, 1321
mucous membrane of, 1318
muscular coat of, 1317
nerves of, 1322
prostatic portion of, 1313
sacrococcygeal portion of, 1313
serous coat of, 1316
submucous coat of, 1318
surface form of, 1323
surgical anatomy of, 1325
supports of, 1315
structure of, 1316
veins of, 1321
Rectus abdominis muscle, 442
capitis anticus major muscle, 406
minor muscle, 407
lateralis muscle, 407
posticus major muscle, 422
minor muscle, 422
femoris muscle, 516
oculi muscle, external, 373
inferior, 373
internal, 373
superior, 373
Recurrent artery, palmar, 660
radial, 659
tibial, anterior, 713
posterior, 713
ulnar, anterior, 662
posterior, 662
laryngeal nerve, 1060
Red nucleus nerve-path, 960
Reflections of pleuræ, 1384
Reflex nerve-paths, 963
Refracting media of eye, 1128
Reichert, recessus cochlearis of, 1164
Reil, island of, 867, 878
sulcus of, limiting, 867, 878
Reissner, membrane of, 1172
Remak, fibres of, 823
Renal artery, 678
inferior, 1423
blood-vessels, 1422
impression of liver, 1329
plexus, 1061, 1084
surface of spleen, 1354
veins, 767
zone of Hyrtl, exsanguinated, 1423
Reservoir of Pecquet, 775
Respiration, muscles of, 431
Respiration, organs of, 1361
Respiratory nerve of Bell, external, 983
internal, 974
Restiform body of medulla, 941
Rete testis of Haller, 1471
Retina, 1120
nerve-fibres of, 1122
physiological, 1120
pigmentary layer of, 1127
rods of, 1125
structure of, 1121
supporting framework of, 1127
Retinacula of capsular ligament of hip, 327
patellæ mediale, 517
Retrahens auriculam muscle, 369
Retro-aortic glands, 800
-cæcal fossa, 1263
-colic fossæ, 1263
-crural glands, 798
-duodenal fossa, 1262
-peritoneal fossæ, 1260
space, 1247
-pharyngeal glands, 785
space, 388, 1220
-rectal space, 1314
-renal fascia, 1412
-sternal glands, 810
Retzius, brown striæ of, 1204
fundiform ligament of, 541
space of, 1434
Rhinencephalon, 880
Rhodopsin, or visual purple, 1120
Rhombencephalon, 922
Rhomboid fossa, inferior, 840
impression, 169
ligament, 298
Rhomboidal muscles, 363
Rhomboideus major muscle, 414
minor muscle, 414
Ribes, ganglion of, 1067
Ribs, 159
anterior extremity of, 161
articulations of, 283
attachment of muscles to, 164
cervical, 53
common characters of, 160
development of, 163
false, 159
floating, 160
peculiar, 162
posterior extremity of, 160
shaft of, 161
structure of, 163
true, 159
Ridges, bicipital, 179
epicondylic, 179
gluteal, 224
mylo-hyoid, 123
naso-labial, 377
oblique, of trapezium, 198
of ulna, 188
pectoral, 179
pronator, 188
pterygoid, 95, 137
superciliary, 80
supracondylar, external, 179
internal, 180
supraorbital, 140
temporal, 76, 80
trapezoid, 169
Riedel's lobe of liver, 1336
Right ascending lumbar vein, 752
azygos vein, 752
bronchus, 1376
cardiac vein, 771
colic artery, 675
coronary artery, 590
plexus, 1081

Right innominate vein, 750
juxta-aortic glands, 800
lobe of liver, 1332
lymphatic duct, 778
superior intercostal vein, 752
Rima glottidis, 1369
Ring, abdominal, internal, 446
crural, 437, 1532
femoral, 437, 509, 1532
fibrous, of heart, 574
muscle of Müller, 1116
Risorius muscle, 380
Risus sardonicus, 381
Rivinus, ducts of, 1217
notch of, 1151
Rod-bipolars, 1125
-cells, 1126
-fibre, 1126
-granules, 1125
Rolandic angle, 867
Rods of Corti, 1174
of retina, 1125
Rolando, fasciculus of, 941
fissure of, 867
funiculus of, 941
sulcus of, central, 867
tubercle of, 941
Roots of auditory nerve, 1050
of cervical nerves, 968
of dorsal nerves, 993
of eighth nerve, 1050
of fifth nerve, ascending, 948, 1026
descending, 1026
of lumbar nerve, 997
of lung, 1394
of penis, 1454
of pneumogastric nerve, ganglion of, 1059
of sacral nerves, 1006
of spinal nerves, 965
anterior, 965
dorsal, 965
posterior, 965
ventral, 965
of thoracic nerves, 993
of tongue, 1087
Rosenmüller, fossa of, 1221
gland of, 795
accessory, 1141
organ of, 1499
Rostrum of corpus callosum, 886
of sphenoid bone, 94, 135
Rotary joint, 265
Rotatores spinæ muscle, 421
Round ligament, artery of, 688
of liver, 1334
of uterus, 1491
Roux's amputation of foot, 256
Rudimentary organ of Jacobson, 1100
Rudinger, dilator tubæ muscle of, 1155
Ruffini's nerve-endings, 828
Rugæ of scrotum, 1462
of stomach, 1275
of vagina, 1484
Ruysch, tunic of, 1113

S

Sacs, abdominal, 1236
dental, 1206
lachrymal, 1142
pericardial, 1236
pleural, 1236
Saccule of vestibule, 1170
Sacculi alveolares, 1378
Sacculus laryngis, 1371
Sacral artery, lateral, 693
middle, 681
canal, 64
cornua, 62
foramina, anterior, 62
posterior, 63
groove, 63
lymphatic glands, 799
nerve, 1006
division of, anterior, 1007
posterior, 1006
roots of, 1006
plexus, 1009, 1086
portion of gangliated cord, 1080
veins, lateral, 760
middle, 764
Sacro-coccygeal ligament, anterior, 294
lateral, 295
posterior, 294
portion of rectum, 1313
symphisis, 66
-iliac ligament, anterior, 292
interosseous, 292
long, 292
oblique, 292
posterior, 292
short 292
-lumbalis muscle, 419
-sciatic foramen, great, 211, 294
inferior, 294
lesser, 211, 294
superior, 294
ligament, anterior, 293
great, 292
lesser, 293
posterior, 292
notches, 217
great, 210
lesser, 211
-uterine ligaments, 1490
-vertebral angle, 61
Sacrum, 61
ala of, 64
apex of, 64
articulations of, 65
attachment of muscles to, 65
base of, 64
development of, 64
differences in the male and female, 64
peculiarities of, 64
promontory of, 61
structure of, 64
surfaces of, 61
tuberosity of, 63
Saddle-joint, 265
Sagittal axis, 1106
sulcus, 73, 80
suture, 78, 127
Salivary glands, 1214
structure of, 1217
surgical anatomy of, 1224
Salpingo-palatine fold, 1221
-pharyngeal fold, 1221
-pharyngeus muscle, 405
Salter, incremental lines of, 1203
Santorini, cartilages of, 1365
cornical tubercle of, 1368
fissures of, 1146, 1148
muscle of, 380
Saphenous gland, external, 795
opening, 514, 1529
nerve, internal, 1005
long, 1005
vein, external, 756
internal, 756
long, 756
Saphenous vein, short, 756
surgical anatomy of, 757
Sarcolemma, 361
Sardonic laugh, 381
Sartorius muscle, 516
nerve to, 1005
Scala media, 1172
tympani of cochlea, 1168
vestibuli of cochlea, 1168
Scalenus muscles, anticus, 408
medius, 408
posticus, 409
Scalp, skin of, 366
Scapha, fossa of, 1145
Scaphoid bone of foot, 246
articulations of, 247
attachment of muscles to, 247
surfaces of, 246
tuberosity of, 246
of hand, 195
articulations of, 196
attachment of muscles to, 196
surfaces of, 196
fossa, 97, 135, 1145
Scapula, 171
angles of, 174
articulations of, 176
attachment of muscles to, 176
base of, 174
borders of, 174
development of, 175
dorsum of, 172
head of, 174
ligaments of, 301
spine of, 172
structure of, 175
surface form of, 176
surgical anatomy of, 177
venter of, 171
Scapular arteries, posterior, 642
glands, 790
nerve, posterior, 982
notch, great, 173
region, anterior, muscles of, 471
dissection of, 471
posterior, muscles of, 472
dissection of, 472
Scapulo-clavicular articulation, 299
Scarf skin, 1181
Scarpa, fascia of, 433
foramina of, 110, 135, 1036
membrane of, 1152
nerve of, 1036
triangle of, 516, 697
Schachowa, spiral tube of, 1419
Schindylesis, 264
Schlemm, canal of, 1108, 1111
ligament, 305
Schneiderian membrane, 1100
Schreger, concentric lines of, 1203
Schultze, primitive fibrillæ of, 822
Schwann, nucleated sheath of, 822
primitive sheath of, 822
white substance of, 822
Sciatic artery, 692
nerve, great, 1013
branches of, 1013
small, 1011
branches of, 1011
notch, great, 210
plexus, 1009
veins, 761
Sclera, 1107
structure of, 1108
Scleral sulcus, 1105
Sclerotic coat, 1107

Scrotal hernia, 1521
nerve, long, 1011
Scrotum, 1462
arteries of, 1465
dartos of, 1463
integument of, 1463
lymphatic vessels of, 801
lymphatics of, 1466
nerves of, 1466
raphé of, 1463
rugæ of, 1462
septum of, 1463
surgical anatomy of, 1469
veins of, 1466
Sebaceous glands, 1138, 1191
Second nerve, 1021
Secondary ear-drum membrane, 1152
Segments of Lantermann, 823
Sella turcica, 93, 131
Semen, 1474
Semicircular canals, 1165
external, 1165
horizontal, 1165
membranous, 1170
posterior, 1165
superior, 1165
muscles of rectum, 1317
Semilunar bone, 196
articulations of, 197
surfaces of, 196
fascia, 476
fibro-cartilages, 337
external, 339
internal, 338
folds of colon, 1317
of Douglas, 439, 444
ganglion of abdomen, 1084
of fifth nerve, 1027
hiatus, 145, 747
lobe of cerebellum, inferior, 931
valves, aortic, 572
pulmonic, 571
Semimembranosus muscle, 530
bursa of, 531
Seminal duct, 1472
vesicles, 1475
arteries of, 1476
lymphatic vessels of, 804
lymphatics of, 1476
nerves of, 1476
structure of, 1476
surgical anatomy of, 1476
veins of, 1476
Semispinalis colli muscle, 421
dorsi muscle, 421
Semitendinosus muscle, 530
Sensory decussation, 947
nerve tract, 961
projection fibres of cerebrum, 914
Septo-marginal tract, 844
Septum atriorum, 567
bronchial, 1380
crurale, 1532
of Cloquet, 509
interarticular, 565
interventricular, 569
lucidum, 889, 896
of nose, 142
cartilage of, triangular, 1097
orbital, 1139
pectiniforme, 1457
of scrotum, 1463
of tongue, fibrous, 398
transversum, 1170
Serous coat of anal canal, 1316
of bladder, 1437
of gall-bladder, 1343
of large intestine, 1316
Serous coat of lungs, 1354
of rectum, 1316
of small intestine, 1290
of spleen, 1356
of stomach, 1273
of vermiform appendix, 1304
covering of ovary, 1501
pericardium, 560
Serratus magnus muscle, 468
posticus inferior muscle, 415
superior muscle, 415
Sertoli, cell of, 1472
Sesamoid bones, 257
cartilage, 1097
Seventh nerve, 1044
surgical anatomy of, 1049
Shaft of bone, its structure, 33
of hair, 1189
of ribs, 161
Sharpey, fibres of, 37
Shrapnell, membrana flaccida of, 1156
Sheath, carotid, 388
dentinal, of Neumann, 1203
femoral, 509, 1530
of flexor tendons, fibrous, 545
granular, of Tomes, 1202
nucleated, of Schwann, 822
primitive, of Schwann, 822
of prostate, 1449
of rectus muscles, 443
Shin bone, 233
Short bones, 33
calcaneo-cuboid ligament, 353
ciliary arteries, 625
fibre nerve path, 960, 963
plantar ligament, 353
sacro-iliac ligament, 292
saphenous vein, 756
Shoulder, fascia of, deep, 470
superficial, 470
girdle, 167
-joint, articulations of, 303
bursæ of, 305
surface form of, 307
surgical anatomy of, 307
muscles of, 470
Sibson, aortic vestibule of, 572
aponeurosis, 1385
Sigmoid arteries, 678
cavity of radius, 191
of ulna, 186
colon, 1311
flexure of colon, 1311
of large intestine, 1300
fossa, 86
mesocolon, 1259
notch of lower jaw, 125
plexus, 1085
sinus, 739
sulcus, 86
Sinus or sinuses, air, 82
alæ parvæ, 740
of aorta, great, 589
basilar, 743
cavernous, 739
circular, 742
confluence of, 737
coronary vein, 567, 771
costo-mediastinal, 1386
of dura mater, 736
ethmoidal, 101
frontal, 80
of heart, auricle of, left, 568
right, 565
intercavernous, 742
of jugular vein, external, 728
internal, 729
of kidney, 1415
laryngeal, 1371
Sinus or sinuses, lateral, 738
longitudinal, inferior, 738
superior, 78, 130, 736
maxillary, 108
of Morgagni, 402
of nose, 80
occipital, 739
orbital, 118
petro-squamous, 739
petrosal, inferior, 742
superior, 742
of pericardium, oblique, 560
transverse, 560
phrenico-costal, 1386, 1414
pocularis, 1442
portal, 769
prostatic, 1442
pyriformis, 1222, 1368
sigmoid, 739
spheno-parietal, 740
sphenoidal, 94, 143
straight, 738
tonsillaris, 1222
transverse, 743
pericardial, 560
utricularis sacculi, 1170
of Valsalva, aortic, 573
pulmonary, 571
venosus, 565
Sixth nerve, 1043
branches of, 1043
nucleus of, 925
relations of, 1043
surgical anatomy of, 1044
Skeletal muscles, 361
Skin, 1178
appendages of, 1185
arteries of, 1184
bone, 233
cuticle of, 1181
epidermis, 1181
folds of, 1178
furrows, 1179
horny layer of, 1181
lymphatics of, 1184
Malpighian layer of, 1182
nerves of, 1184
papillary layer of, 1181
pigmentation of, 1182
ridges, 1179
of scalp, 366
scarf, 1181
stratum cylindricum, 1182
germinativum, 1182
granulosum, 1182
lucidum, 1182
mucosum, 1182
spinosum, 1182
true, 1180
veins of, 1184
Skull, anterior region of, 139
base of, 130
at different ages, 102
fixed point for measurement of, 149
fossa of, anterior, 130
infratemporal, 138
middle, 130
orbital, 140
posterior, 132
pterygo-palatine, 139
spheno-maxillary, 139
temporal, 137
zygomatic, 138
lateral regions of, 136
sexual differences in, 102
surface form of, 147
surgical anatomy of, 149
tables of, 33
vitreous, 34

Skull, vertex of, 129
Slender funiculus, 941
lobe of cerebellum, 931
Small coronary vein, 771
intestine, 1282
lymphatic glands of, 807
vessels of, 808
occipital nerve, 972
palatine nerve, 1035
sciatic nerve, 1011
Socia parotidis, 1215
Soft commissure of brain, 903
palate, 1211
aponeurosis of, 1212
arches of, 1211
arteries of, 1212
mucous membrane of, 1212
muscles of, 1212
nerves of, 1213
pillars of, 1211
veins of, 1213
Solar plexus, 1083
Soleus muscle, 535
Solitary glands, 1295, 1320
Somatopleure, 1236
Sömmerring, foramen of, 1121
yellow spot of, 1121
Space or spaces, axillary, 645
of Bruns, 388
cartilage, 260
corneal, 1110
epitympanic, 87
of Fontana, 1110
intercostal, 160
interglobular, of Czermak, 1202
interpeduncular, 882
interpleural, 1387
mediastinal, 1387
of Nuel, 1175
perichoroidal, 1108
perisclerotic, 1103
pneumatic, 1103
popliteal, 707
retro-peritoneal, 1247
-pharyngeal, 388, 1220
of Retzius, 1434
suprascleral, 1104
suprasternal, 388
Special sense, organs of, 1087
Spermatic arteries, 679
canal, 448, 1517
cord, 1466
arteries of, 1467
lymphatics of, 1468
nerves of, 1468
structure of, 1466
surgical anatomy of, 1468
veins of, 1467
fascia, 1463
external, 1436, 1514
internal, 446
middle, 440
plexus of nerves, 1084
of veins, 765
vein, 765
surgical anatomy of, 766
Spermatids, 1472
Spermatoblasts, 1472
Spermatocytes, 1472
Spermatogenesis, 1472
Spermatogonia, 1472
Spermatozoid, 1472, 1474
Spheno-ethmoidal recess, 145
-maxillary fissure, 115, 138
fossa, 115, 139
-palatine artery, 616
foramen, 119, 143
ganglion, 1034
nerves, 1032
notch, 118
Spheno-parietal sinus, 740
suture, 128
-phrenic ligament, 1256
Sphenoid bone, 92
articulations of, 98
attachment of muscles to, 98
body of, 92
surfaces of, 93
development of, 97
greater wings of, 95
circumference of, 95
surfaces of, 95
hamular process of, 96
lesser wings of, 96
pterygoid process of, 96
rostrum of, 94, 135
Sphenoidal cells, 94
crest, 94
fissure, 96, 132
process, 1097
of palate bone, 118
sinuses, 94, 143
spine, 95
spongy bones, 97
turbinated bones, 143
Spherical recess, 1164
Sphincter ani muscle, external, 450
internal, 451
muscles, 363
pyloris, 1272
vaginæ muscle, 461
Spigelian lobe of liver, 1330
Spina tympanica major, 1151
minor, 1151
Spinal accessory nerve, 1063
accessory portion, 1063
bulbar portion, 1063
nucleus of, 950
spinal portion, 1063
surgical anatomy of, 1063
arteries, anterior, 638
lateral, 638
posterior, 639
bulb, 938
canal, 69
column, 48
cord, 836
arachnoid membrane of, 834
blood supply of, 840
central canal of, 840
columns of, 838
commissure of, 839
cornu of, caput, 839
cervix, 839
dissection of, 832
dura mater of, 832
fibres of, 841
fissures of, 837
gray substance of, 845
grooves of, 837
lymphatics of, 840
membranes of, 832
minute anatomy of, 840
neuroglia of, 840
olivary bundle of, 843
pia mater of, 835
structure of, 839
tracts of, conducting, 841
functions of, 844
veins of, 755
white substance of, 841
cranial reflexes, 963
foramen, 49
nerves, 964
accessory, 1063
distribution of, 967
ganglia of, 966
origin of, 847
Spinal nerves, points of emergence of, 967
roots of, 965
reflexes, 963
veins, 753
longitudinal, anterior, 754
posterior, 755
plexus of, 753
Spinalis colli muscle, 420
dorsi muscle, 419
Spindle, aortic, 591
Spindles, neuro-muscular, 829
neuro-tendinous, 829
Spine, articulations of, 276
ethmoidal, 93, 130
frontal, 80
of helix, 1146
of Henle, 88
of ischium, 211
mental, 123
nasal, 80
anterior, 111, 139, 143
posterior, 116, 135, 143
palatine, 116
peroneal, 243
pharyngeal, 73, 135
progress of ossification in, 60
of pubis, 212
of scapula, 172
sphenoidal, 95
suprameatal, 88
Spino-glenoid ligament, 302
Spinous processes of ilium, 210
of tibia, 233
of vertebræ, 49
Spiral canal of cochlea, 1167
ligament of cochlea, 1172
line of femur, 223
tube of Schachowa, 1419
Splanchnic nerves, 1079
Splanchnopleure, 1236
Spleen, 1353
accessory, 1355
arteries of, 1357
development of, 1245
fibro-elastic coat of, 1356
hilum of, 1354
lymphatics of, 807, 1359
Malpighian bodies of, 807, 1358
movability of, 1356
movable, 1356
nerves of, 1359
serous coat of, 1356
structure of, 1356
support of, 1356
surface form of, 1359
surgical anatomy of, 1359
veins of, 1359
Splenic artery, 674
flexure of colon, 1309
of large intestine, 1300
glands, 800
plexus, 1061, 1085
pulp, 1356
vein, 768
Splenium of corpus callosum, 886
Splenius muscle, 416
Spongy portion of urethra, 1443
tissue of bone, 33
Spur, femoral, 227
Squamo-parietal suture, 128
-sphenoidal suture, 128
Squamous portion of occipital bone, 71
suture, 85, 128
Square lobe of liver, 1332
Stahr, middle gland of, 784
Stapedius muscle, 1160
Stapes, 1160
base of, 1160

Stapes, crura of, 1160
foot-plate, 1160
head of, 1160
ligament of, 1161
neck of, 1160
Statoliths, 1171
Stellate ligament, 284
reticulum, 1206
Stenson, duct of, 1215
foramina of, 110
Stephanion, 137
inferior, 76
superior, 76
Sternal arteries, 644
foramen, 157
furrow, 165
glands, 810
ribs, 159
Sterno-clavicular articulations, 297
surface form of, 299
surgical anatomy of, 297
-cleido-mastoid muscle, 389
-costal ligament, anterior, 288
interarticular, 288
posterior, 288
-costo pericardial ligament, 559
-hyoid muscle, 391
-mastoid artery, 602, 609
glands, 786
muscle, 389
surface form of, 391
surgical anatomy of, 391
-pericardiac ligaments, 558
-thyroid muscle, 392
Sternum, 155
angle of, 157
articulations of, 159, 290
attachment of muscles to, 159
development of, 158
ensiform appendix of, 158
gladiolus, 157
ligaments of, 290
manubrium of, 157
structure of, 158
surface form of, 165
surgical anatomy of, 165
xiphoid appendix of, 158
Stigmata, 1246
Stilling, canal of, 1129
nucleus of, red, 938
Stomach, 1268
alterations in position of, 1271
areolar coat of, 1274
arteries of, 1278
body of, 1269
cardiac orifice of, 1270
portion of, 1269
chamber, 1269
curvatures of, 1270
fundus of, 1269
innervation of, 1280
lymphatic vessels of, 806, 1279
movements of, 1280
mucous membrane of, 1275
muscular coat of, 1273
nerves of, 1279
œsophageal opening of, 1270
peritoneal coat of, 1273
pit of, 165
pyloric orifice of, 1270
portion of, 1269
relations of, 1269
rugæ of, 1275
serous coat of, 1273
structure of, 1273
submucous coat of, 1274
supports of, 1272
surface form of, 1280
Stomach, surfaces of, 1269
surgical anatomy of, 1280
-teeth, 1197
vascular coat of, 1274
veins of, 1279
Stomata, 1246
Straight sinus, 738
Stria vascularis, 1172
Striated muscle, 361
Striped muscle, 361
Stroma of iris, 1118
of ovary, 1501
plexus of, 1111
Stylo-glossus muscle, 397
-hyal process, 92
-hyoid ligament, 394
muscle, 394
nerve, from facial, 1048
-mandibular ligament, 281, 388
-mastoid artery, 610
foramen, 90, 135
-maxillary ligament, 281
-pharyngæus muscle, 403
Styloid process of fibula, 237
of temporal bone, 90
of ulna, 189
Subacromial bursa, 305, 471
Subanconeus muscle, 478
Subarachnoid cisternæ, 852
space, 834, 852
Subarachnoidean areolar tissue, 851
space, 834
Subcalcarine convolution, 877
Subcallosal gyrus, 882
Subclavian artery, 631
branches of, 637
first part of, left, 633
right, 632
peculiarities of, 635
second part of, 633
surface form of, 635
surgical anatomy of, 635
third part of, 633
glands, 791
groove, 169
loop, 1076
muscle, 468
plexus of nerves, 1077
triangle, 618
vein, 749
Subclavius muscle, 468
Subcollateral convolution, 878
Subcostal artery, 667
groove, 162
Subcrureus muscle, 518
Subcutaneous acromial bursa, 305
areolar tissue, 1180
olecranon bursa, 477
synovial bursa, 263
tibial bursa, 340
trochanteric bursa, 331
Subdeltoid bursa, 305, 471
Subdural space, 834, 847
Subepithelial plexus, 1111
Sublingual artery, 604
fossa, 123
gland, 1217
Sublobular veins, 767
Submaxillary artery, 606
fossa, 123
ganglion, 1040
arteries of, 1217
branches of, 1040
ducts of, 1216
glands, 784, 1216
lymphatics of, 1217
nerves of, 1217
veins of, 1217
triangle, 394, 617
Submaxillary vein, 727
Submental artery, 606
glands, 785
vein, 727
Suboccipital lymphatic glands, 780
nerves, 968
triangle, 423
Suborbital glands, 782
Subparotid glands, 1215
lymphatic glands, 782
Subpleural mediastinal plexus, 644
Subpubic ligament, 296
Subscapular angle, 172
artery, 651
bursa, 305
fascia, 471
fossa, 171
nerves, 984
Subscapularis muscle, 471
Subserous areolar coat of lungs, 1394
tissue, 1245
connective tissue, 1246
Substantia cinerea glutinosa, 841
ferruginea, 945
glutinosa centralis, 840
nigra, 910
propira of cornea, 1110
Substerno-mastoid glands, 786
Subtendinous iliac bursa, 331
synovial bursa, 263
Subthalamic region, 905, 913
tegmental region, 885
Suburethral gland, 1482
Sucking pad, 380
Suctorial pad, 380
Sudoriferous glands, 1190
Sulci, occipital, 876
Sulcus, callosal, 879, 885
calloso-marginal, 868, 870
diagonalis, 868
dorso-median, 838
frontal, 873
frontalis, inferior, 868
medius, 868, 873
superior, 868
interparietalis, 868
intraparietal, of Turner, 875
lachrymal, 113
lateralis mesencephali, 885
nervi oculo-motorii, 885
occipitalis transversus, 868
occipito-temporal, 870
oculomotorius, 906
olfactory, 870, 874
orbital, 870, 874
orbito-palpebral, inferior, 1137
superior, 1137
paramedialis, 868, 873
parieto-occipital, 867
internal, 870
post-central, 875
inferior, 868
superior, 868
posterior median, 838
precentral, 872
inferior, 868
superior, 868
of Reil, limiting, 867, 878
of Rolando, central, 867
sagittal, 73, 80
scleral, 1105
sigmoid, 86
spiralis externus, 1172
internus, 1172
temporal, 877
inferior, 868, 870
superior, 868
terminalis of His, 566, 1087

Sulcus, tri-radiate, 874
tympanic, 1149
tympanicus, 1151
Superciliary ridge, 80
Superficial anterior thoracic nerve, 984
branches of cervical plexus, 972
cardiac plexus, 1081
cerebellar veins, 736
cerebral veins, 735
cervical artery, 642
fascia, 386
glands, 784
nerve, 973
region, muscles of, 386
circumflex iliac artery, 704
vein, 756
crural arch, 436, 1529
dorsal veins of penis, 762
epigastric artery, 704
external pudic artery, 704
fascia, 364
of abdomen, 433, 1511
of arm, 470
of back, 411
of cranial region, 366
of femoral region, 512
of perinæum in male, 455
of shoulder, 470
of thoracic region, 463
femoral artery, 700
inguinal lymphatic glands, 793
long plantar ligament, 353
lymphatic glands of upper extremity, 788
vessels of gluteal region, 801
of lower extremity, 797
of penis, 801
of perinæum, 801
of scrotum, 801
of upper extremity, 792
of walls of abdomen, 801
muscles of abdomen, 432
palmar arch, 664
parotid lymphatic glands, 781
perineal artery, 690
sural artery, 710
Sylvian vein, 735
temporal artery, 611
nerves, 1038
vein, 727
transverse ligament of fingers, 494
veins of fingers, 745
of foot, 756
of hand, 745
of lower extremity, 756
of upper extremity, 745
Superficialis colli nerve, 973
volæ artery, 659
Superior acromio-clavicular ligament, 299
astragalo-scaphoid ligament, 354
branch of superior cervical ganglion, 1073
calcaneo-cuboid ligament, 353
-scaphoid ligament, 353
cardiac nerve, 1076
carotid triangle, 394
cerebellar artery, 640
peduncles, 932
cerebral veins, 735
cervical ganglion, 1072
constrictor muscle, 401
coronary artery of lip, 607
dental plexus, 1033
epigastric artery, 645
glands, 802
fibular artery, 713
Superior flexure of duodenum, 1285
frontal convolution, 873
gemellus muscle, 526
gluteal nerve, 1010
hæmorrhoidal artery, 678
plexus of nerves, 1085
veins, 768
intercostal artery, 645
veins, 752
lachrymal gland, 1141
nerve, 1060
laryngeal artery, 602
ligament of incus, 1061
of malleus, 1160
lingualis muscle, 399
longitudinal fasciculus, 918
sinus, 78, 130, 736
maxillary bones, 105
nerve, 1031
region, muscles of, 376
meatus of nose, 101, 144
mediastinum, 1388
medullary velum, 943
mesenteric artery, 675
plexus of nerves, 1085
vein, 768
nuchal line, 72
obliquus oculi, muscle, 373
occipital convolution, 877
sulcus, 876
olivary nucleus, 925
ophthalmic vein, 740
orbito-palpebral sulcus, 1137
parietal convolution, 876
peduncle of cerebellum, 910, 943
petrosal sinus, 742
phrenic artery, 644
veins, 767
post-central sulcus, 875
profunda artery, 655
pubic ligament, 296
pyloric artery, 673
radio-ulnar articulation, 314
ramus of ischium, 211
of pubis, 213
rectus oculi muscle, 373
sacro-sciatic foramen, 294
semicircular canal, 1165
stephanion, 76
superficial cerebellar veins, 736
external pudic artery, 704
surface of liver, 1327
tarsal arch, 623
temporal convolution, 877
thoracic artery, 650
thyroid artery, 601
vein, 730
transverse ligament, 302
triangle of fourth ventricle, 945
turbinated bone, 101
crest, 117
vena cava, 752
vermiform process of cerebellum, 927
vesical artery, 686
plexus of veins, 761
vocal cords, 1370
Supernumerary bones, 103
spleens, 1355
Supinator longus muscle, 484
radii brevis muscle, 487
Supporting cells of Hensen, 1175
Supra-acromial artery, 642
nerves, 974
Supracallosal gyrus, 887
Supraclavicular glands, 787
nerves, 974
Supracondylar ridge, external, 179
Supracondylar ridge, internal, 180
Supracondyloid glands of Leaf, 795
Supraepitrochlear glands, 789
Supraglenoid tubercle, 175
Suprahyoid aponeurosis, 394
artery, 603
glands, lateral, 784
median, 785
region, muscles of, 393
Supramandibular nerves, 1049
Supramarginal convolution, 876
Supramastoid crest, 84, 137
Supramaxillary lymphatic glands, 782
nerves, 1049
Suprameatal spine, 88
triangle, 85
Supraorbital arch, 80
artery, 623
foramen, 80, 140
nerve, 1030
notch, 80, 140
ridge, 140
vein, 726
Suprapatellar bursa, 340, 518
Suprarenal artery, 678
capsule, 1428
arteries of, 1431
left, 1429
lymphatic vessels of, 804
lymphatics of, 1431
nerves of, 1431
relations of, 1428
right, 1428
structure of, 1430
veins of, 1431
glands, 1428
accessory, 1430
impression of liver, 1332
plexus of nerves, 1084
veins, 767
Suprascapular artery, 641
ligament, 302
nerve, 983
notch, 174
Suprascleral lymph-space, 1104
Supraspinales muscle, 421
Supraspinatus fascia, 472
muscle, 472
Supraspinous fossa, 172
ligament, 273
Suprasternal artery, 642
nerves, 974
notch, 409
space, 388
Supratonsillar fossa, 1213
Supratrochlear foramen, 181
glands, 789
nerve, 1030
Supravaginal portion of uterus, 1488
Surface form of abdominal aorta, 670
of acromio-clavicular articulation, 301
of ankle-joint, 351
of axillary artery, 649
of bladder, 1440
of bones, 34
of brachial artery, 654
of carotid arteries, common, 598
external, 601
of carpus, 204
of clavicle, 170
of common iliac arteries, 682
of dorsalis pedis artery, 715
of elbow-joint, 312

Surface form of external auditory meatus 1050
iliac artery, 682, 695
of eyelids, 1142
of femoral artery, 701
of femur, 229
of fibula, 239
of fifth nerve, 1041
of foot, 255, 360
of heart, 577
of hip, 333
of humerus, 183
of hyoid bone, 154
of inferior radio-ulnar articulation, 317
of internal iliac artery, 694
of intestines, 1323
of kidney, 1425
of knee-joint, 343
of lachrymal gland, 1143
sac, 1143
of liver, 1346
of lungs, 1397
of metacarpo-phalangeal articulation, 325
of mouth, 1219
of muscles of abdomen, 448
of back, 424
of face, 385
of head, 385
of lower extremity, 549
of upper extremity, 500
of vertebral region, 409
of pancreas, 1353
of parotid duct, 1215
of patella, 231
of pelvis, 220
of plantar arteries, 720
of popliteal artery, 709
of radial artery, 658
of radio-carpal articulation, 318
of radius, 192
of rectum, 1323
of scapula, 176
of shoulder-joint, 307
of skull, 147
of spleen, 1359
of sterno-clavicular articulation, 299
-mastoid muscle, 391
of sternum, 165
of stomach, 1280
of subclavian artery, 635
of superior radio-ulnar articulation, 314
of temporo-mandibular articulations, 282
of tibial artery, anterior, 712
posterior, 717
of trachea, 1380
of trifacial nerve, 1041
of trigeminal nerve, 1041
of ulnar artery, 661
of vermiform appendix, 1323
of vertebral column, 69
Surgical anatomy of abdominal aorta, 670
of abducent nerve, 1044
of acromio-clavicular articulation, 301
of ankle-joint, 351
of arch of aorta, 592
of artery of bulb, 691
of ascending pharyngeal artery, 611
of auditory nerve, 1054
of axilla, 645
of axillary artery, 649
vein, 748
of azygos veins, 753
Surgical anatomy of bend of elbow, 653
of bile-duct, 1347
of bladder, 1440
of brachial artery, 654
plexus, 991
of carotid arteries, common, 598
external, 601
internal, 621
gland, 1049
of carpus, 205
of cavernous sinus, 740
of cervical fascia, 389
ganglion, 1077
plexus, 977
of cheeks, 1224
of clavicle, 170
of colon, 1326
of common iliac arteries, 682
of conjunctiva, 1144
of deep epigastric artery, 697
of descent of testicles, 1462
of dorsalis pedis artery, 715
of duodenum, 1325
of ear, 1176
of eighth nerve, 1054
of elbow-joint, 312
of eleventh nerve, 1063
of emissary veins, 743
of external iliac artery, 695
of eye, 1134
of eyelashes, 1143
of eyelids, 1143
of facial artery, 607
nerve, 1049
veins, 726
of fascia of femoral region, anterior, 515
of femoral artery, 701
of femur, 229
of fibula, 239
of foot, 256, 360
of gall-bladder, 1347
of glosso-pharyngeal nerve, 1057
of gums, 1224
of hæmorrhoidal veins, 761
of heart, 578
of hernia, 1511
of hip, 333
of humerus, 183
of hyoid bone, 154
of hypoglossal nerve, 1066
of inferior calcaneo-scaphoid ligament, 354
thyroid artery, 641
of innominate artery, 594
of intercostal artery, 668
nerves, 996
of internal iliac artery, 685, 694
jugular vein, 732
mammary artery, 645
pudic artery in male, 690
of intestines, 1324
of ischio-rectal region, 1535
of kidney, 1425
of knee-joint, 343
of lachrymal gland, 1144
sac, 1144
of lateral sinus, 739
of ligaments of vertebra, 279
of lips, 1224
of lingual artery, 604
of liver, 1346
of lumbar plexus, 1017
of lungs, 1397
of lymphatic glands, 774
Surgical anatomy of lymphatics of mammary gland, 814
of neck, 787
of upper extremity, 792
vessels of peritoneum, 802
of stomach, 806
of male breast, 1509
of mammary gland, 1508
of maxillary artery, external, 607
of Meibomian glands, 1143
of membranes of cord, 836
of middle meningeal artery, 614
of motor oculi nerve, 1025
of mouth, 1224
of muscles of acromial region, 471
of arm, 478
of femoral region, anterior, 518
internal, 522
posterior, 531
of gluteal region, 528
of iliac region, 511
of lateral thoracic region, 469
of leg, 541
of lower extremity, 551
of orbital region, 375
of palatal region, 406
of radio-ulnar region, anterior, 484
posterior, 491
of tongue, 400
of upper extremity, 503
of nasal fossæ, 1102
of ninth nerve, 1057
of occipito-frontalis muscle, 368
of œsophagus, 1230
of olfactory nerve, 1021
of optic nerve, 1022
of ovary, 1503
of palate, 1224
of palatine artery, 615
of palmar fascia, deep, 494
of pancreas, 1353
of patella, 231
of pelvis, 220
of penis, 1460
of pericardium, 561
of perinæum, 1535
of peritoneum, 1264
of pharynx, 1224
of phrenic nerve, 976
of plantar arteries, 720
fascia, 543
of pleura, 1387
of pneumogastric nerve, 1062
of popliteal artery, 709
of pronator radii teres muscle, 479
of prostate gland, 1452
of prostatico-vesical plexus, 762
of radial artery, 658
of radio-carpal articulation, 318
of radius, 192
of rectum, 1325
of salivary glands, 1224
of saphenous veins, 757
of scapula, 177
of scrotum, 1469
of seminal vesicles, 1476
of seventh nerve, 1049
of shoulder-joint, 307
of sixth nerve, 1044
of skull, 149

Surgical anatomy of spermatic cord, 1468
veins, 766
of spinal accessory nerve, 1063
of spleen, 1359
of sternum, 165
of sterno-clavicular articulation, 299
-mastoid muscle, 391
of stomach, 1280
of subclavian artery, 635
of superficial fascia of cranial region, 367
inguinal lymphatic glands, 794
of superior radio-ulnar articulation, 314
of synovial tendons at wrist, 492
of tarsal joint, 356
of tarsus, 256
of temporal artery, 612
of temporo-mandibular articulations, 282
of tenth nerve, 1062
of testicles, 1473
of thoracic aorta, 666
of thyroid artery, superior, 603
gland, 1405
of tibia, 239
of tibial artery, 717
anterior, 712
of tongue, 1093
of tonsils, 1224
of trachea, 1381
of triangles of neck, 616
of trochlear nerve, 1026
of twelfth nerve, 1066
of ulna, 192
of ulnar artery, 661
of ureter, 1428
of urethra, male, 1445
of utero-ovarian artery, 688
of uterus, 1496
of vermiform appendix, 1325
of vertebral artery, 639
column, 69
neck of humerus, 177
of scapula, 172
Suspensory ligament of axilla, 464
of clitoris, 437
of eye, 1105
of lens, 1129
of liver, 1333
of malleus, 1160
of mamma, 463
of ovary, 1501
of penis, 437
of Treitz, 1286
muscle of duodenum, 1286
Sustentacular cells of spleen, 1356
fibres, 1121
Sustentaculum lienis, 1259
tali, 255
Sutura, 264
dentata, 264
harmonia, 264
limbosa, 264
notha, 264
serrata, 264
squamosa, 264
vera, 264
Sutural bones, 103
ligament, 259
membrane, 264, 847
Suture or sutures, basilar, 128
coronal, 78, 127
Suture or sutures, cranial, 126
ethmo-frontal, 130
-sphenoidal, 130
frontal, 79, 127
fronto-malar, 128
-parietal, 127
-sphenoidal, 128, 130
intermaxillary, 139
internasal, 139
interparietal, 127
lambdoid, 75, 78, 128
masto-occipital, 75, 128
-parietal, 128
metopic, 83, 127
naso-maxillary, 139
occipito-parietal, 128
petro-occipital, 75, 128, 133
-sphenoidal, 128, 136
-squamous, 88
sagittal, 78, 127
spheno-parietal, 128
squamo-parietal, 128
-sphenoidal, 128
squamous, 85, 128
transverse, 128
facial, 128
Sweat-glands, 1190
Sylvian point, 866
vein, superficial, 735
Sylvius, aqueduct of, 912
fissure of, 866, 884
Symington, ano-coccygeal body of, 1316
Sympathetic nerve, 1066
ganglion of, 1078
plexuses of, 1080
structure of, 1068
Symphysis, 264, 267
of jaw, 122
sacro-coccygeal, 66
Synarthrosis, 264
Synchondrosis, 264
Syndesmo-odontoid joint, 274
Syndesmosis, 265
Synovial bursa, 263
ligaments, 262
membranes, 262
articular, 262
bursal, 263
of flexor tendon at wrist, 492
surgical anatomy of, 492
vaginal, 263. *See* also Individual joints.
sheaths, 263
villi, 262
Systemic arteries, 583
veins, 724

T

Tables of skull, 33
Tabular portion of occipital bone, 71
Tactile corpuscle, 827
Tænia fornicis, 896, 898
hippocampi, 896
pontis, 883
semicircularis, 891, 894
thalami, 904
Tapetum of choroid, 1114
lucidum, 1127
nigrum, 1127
Tarsal arch, 623
artery, 715
bones, development of, 253
glands, 1139
joint, surgical anatomy of, 356
ligament, external, 370
internal, 370
Tarsal plates of eyelid, 1139
Tarso-metatarsal articulations, 357
Tarsus, 242
articulations of, 352
surface form of, 255
surgical anatomy of, 256
synovial membrane of, 352
Taste-buds, 1090
Teeth, 1195
arrangement of, 1198
auditory, 1173
bicuspid, 1138
canine, 1197
cementum of, 1204
cortical substance of, 1204
deciduous, 1196
development of, 1204
enamel of, 1203
eruption of, 1208
eye, 1197
general characters of, 1195
grinders, 1198
incisors, 1196
ivory of, 1202
milk, 1196
molar, 1198
permanent, 1196
superadded, 1208
premolars, 1198
roots of, 1196
solid portion of, 1201
stomach, 1197
structure of, 1200
surfaces of, 1195
temporary, 1196
Tegmen tympani, 87
Tegmental region, subthalamic, 885
Tegmentum, 908
of crus cerebri, 885
fibres of, 908
nucleus of, red, 908
Tela chorioidea inferior, 856, 943
superior, 854, 901
subcutanea, 1180
Temporal artery, 611
anterior, 611, 640
from internal maxillary, 614
middle, 611
posterior, 611, 640
surgical anatomy of, 612
bone, 83
articulations of, 92
attachment of muscles to, 92
development of, 91
mastoid portion of, 85
petrous portion of, 88, 136
squamous portion of, 83
convolution, 877
crest, 76, 80, 84
diploic vein, 734
fascia, 381
fossa, 76, 137
horn of lateral ventricle, 890
lines, 76, 80
lobe, 885
muscle, 382
nerves, from auriculo-temporal, 1038
deep, 1037
from facial, 1032, 1049
ridges, 76, 80
sulci, 868
sulcus, first, 877
fourth, 878
inferior, 870
second, 877
third, 878
veins, 727

Temporary teeth, 1196
eruption of, 1209
Temporo-facial nerve, 1032, 1049
-malar filaments, 115
foramen, 115
nerve, 1032
mandibular articulations, 280
surface form of, 282
surgical anatomy of, 282
region, muscles of, 381
-maxillary articulation, 138
vein, 727
sphenoidal lobe, 877
Tendo Achillis, 535
bursa of, 535
oculi, 370
Tendons, 363
of diaphragm, central, 429
cordiform, 429
flexor, fibrous sheaths of, 545
Ténon, capsule of, 1103
Tensor fasciæ femoris muscle, 515
palati muscle, 404
tarsi muscle, 371
tympani muscle, 1161
canal for, 1153
Tenth nerve, 1057
surgical anatomy of, 1062
Tentorium, 900
cerebelli, 850
Teres major muscle, 474
minor muscle, 473
Testes gubernaculum, 1461
muliebres of Galen, 1499
Testicles, 1460, 1469
coverings of, 1462
descent of, 1461
gubernaculum testis, 1461
lobes of, 1472
lymphatic vessels of, 804
mediastinum testis, 1471
parenchyma of, 1471
rete testis, 1471
sheaths of, proper, 1469
size of, 1469
structure of, 1471
surgical anatomy of, 1473
trabeculæ of, 1471
tubuli seminiferi of, 1471
tunica albuginea, 1471
vaginalis, 1470
vasculosa, 1471
tunics of, 1469
weight of, 1469
Testicular bag, 1462
Thalamencephalon, 901
Thalmic radiation, 905
Thebesian valve, 567, 771
Thigh, bones of, 221
fascia of, 512
muscles of, 512
Third nerve, 1024
ventricle of brain, 901
Thoracic aorta, 665
branches of, 666
surgical anatomy of, 666
artery, acromial, 651
alar, 651
long, 651
superior, 650
axis, 651
cardiac nerves, 1061
duct, 775
structure of, 778
ganglion, 1078
nerves, 993
plexus, 1079
divisions of, anterior, 993
posterior, 993
long, 983
posterior, 983
Thoracic plexus, roots of, 993
portion of gangliated cord, 1078
of œsophagus, 1226
region, anterior, fascia of, deep, 463
superficial, 463
muscles of, 463
lateral, muscles of, 468
surgical anatomy of, 469
surface of lungs, 1391
trachea, lymphatic vessels of, 815
vein, long, 748
vertebræ, 53
bodies of, 53
laminæ of, 54
pedicles of, 54
processes of, 54
wall, lymphatic glands of, 810
vessels of, 812
Thoracico-epigastric vein, 748
Thorax, 155
boundaries of, 155
cavity of, 556
fasciæ of, 424
lymphatics of, 810
muscles of, 424
nerves of, cutaneous, 995
openings of, lower, 556
upper, 556
veins of, 744
Thumb, ligaments of, 321
metacarpal bone of, 201
muscles of, 484
Thymic artery, 594
lymphatic vessels, 815
Thymus gland, 1407
arteries of, 1408
lobes of, 147
lymphatics of, 1048
nerves of, 1408
structure of, 1408
veins of, 1408
Thyro-arytenoid ligament, inferior, 1370
superior, 1370
muscle, 1373
-epiglottic ligament, 1367
-epiglottideus muscle, 1373
-glossal duct, 1090, 1401
-hyals of hyoid bone, 154
-hyoid ligaments, 1366
membrane, 1366
muscle, 392
nerve, 1066
Thyroid artery, inferior, 641
surgical anatomy of, 641
superior, 601
surgical anatomy of, 603
axis, 640
body, 1401
venous plexus on, 751
cartilage, 1362
foramen, 214
ganglion, 1076
gland, 1401
accessory, 1403
arteries of, 602, 1404
color of, 1401
isthmus of, 1403
lobes of, 1403
lymphatic vessels of, 782
lymphatics of, 1405
nerves of, 1405
structure of, 1403
surgical anatomy of, 1405
veins of, 731, 1405
weight of, 1401
nerve, 1077
notch, 1362
Thyroid veins, accessory, 731
inferior, 751
middle, 730
superior, 730
Thyroidea ima artery, 594
vein, 751
Tibia, 233
articulations of, 236
attachment of muscles to, 236
crest of, 234
development of, 236
lower extremity of, 235
surfaces of, 235
nutrient artery of, 719
oblique line of, 235
shaft of, 234
surfaces of, 234
spinous process of, 233
structure of, 236
surface form of, 236
tubercle of, 234
tuberosities of, 233
upper extremity of, 233
Tibial artery, anterior, 711
branches of, 712
peculiarities of, 712
relations of, 711
surface marking of, 712
surgical anatomy of, 712
posterior, 716
branches of, 717
peculiarities of, 717
relations of, 716
surface marking of, 717
surgical anatomy of, 717
recurrent, anterior, 713
posterior, 713
bursa, subcutaneous, 340
gland, anterior, 795
nerve, 1014
anterior, 1016
posterior, 1014
veins, anterior, 758
posterior, 758
Tibialis anticus muscle, 532
bursa of, 532
posticus muscle, 538
Tibio-fibular articulation, 345
region, anterior, muscles of, 531
posterior, muscles of, 534
-tarsal ligament, anterior, 347
posterior, 347
Tissue, adipose, pads of, 263
areolar, subserous, 1245
connective, subserous, 1246
elastic, yellow, 261
fibrous, white, 261
intertubular, 1203
Tomes's fibres, 1203
granular sheath of, 1202
Tongue, 1087
anterior portion of, 1087
apex or tip of, 1087
arteries of, 1092
base or root of, 1087
body of, 1087
corium of, 1089
development of, 1242
dorsum of, 1087
fibrous septum of, 398
fraenum of, 1087
glands of, 1091
-like lobe of liver, 1336
lymphatics of, 1093
lymphatic vessels of, 782
margin of, 1087
mucous membrane of, 1088
muscles of, 398, 1092
extrinsic, 398
intrinsic, 398

Tongue, muscles of, surgical anatomy of, 400
nerves of, 1093
oral portion of, 1087
papillæ of, 1089
pharyngeal portion of, 1087
posterior portion of, 1087
raphé of, 1087
structure of, 1088
surface of, 1087
surgical anatomy of, 1093
veins of, 1092
Tonsil, 1213
arteries of, 1213
of cerebellum, 931
development of, 1243
lingua, 1088
lymphatics of, 1213
nerves of, 1213
pharyngeal, 1221, 1224
surgical anatomy of, 1224
veins of, 1213
Tonsillar artery, 606
nerves, 1057
Tooth germ, 1206
Torcular Herophili, 74, 737
Trabeculæ corpus cavernosum, 1457
of spleen, 1356
of testicle, 1471
Trachea, 1376
arteries of, 641, 1380
cartilages of, 1378
fibrous membrane of, 1379
lymphatics of, 1380
mucous membrane of, 1380
muscular fibres of, 1378
nerves of, 1380
relations of, 1376
structure of, 1378
surface form of, 1380
surgical anatomy of, 1381
thoracic, lymphatic vessels of, 815
veins of, 751, 1380
Tracheal arteries, 641
glands, 787, 1380
veins, 751
Trachelo-mastoid muscle, 419
Tract of Burdach, 839, 843
cerebellar, antero-lateral, ascending, 842
descending, 843
direct, 843
dorso-lateral, 843
of cord, conducting, 841
functions of, 844
cornu, commissural, 844
descending comma, 844
crossed, 842
of Goll, 839, 843
of Gowers, 842
of Helwig, triangular, 951
lateral, of medulla, 945
marginal, of Spitzka and Lissauer, 843
nerve, afferent, 961
ascending, 961
descending, 959
efferent, 959
motor, 959
sensory, 961
olfactory, 880, 1019
optic, 1021
postero-lateral, 843
-median, 843
pyramidal, crossed, 842
direct, 842
uncrossed, 842
septo-marginal, 844
triangular, of Helwig, 843
Tractus spiralis foraminosus, 89
Tragicus muscle, 1147
Tragus, 1145
Transitional epithelium, 1428
Transversalis cervicis muscle, 419
colli artery, 642
muscle, 419
fascia, 445, 1517
humeri artery, 641
muscle, 442, 1516
relations of, 442
Transverse cervical artery, 642
colon, 1309
flexure of, splenic, 1309
diameter of pelvis, 217
facial artery, 611
suture, 128
vein, 727
fibres of cerebrum, 916
of cord, 841
of pons, 923
foramen, 50
humeral ligament, 305
ligament of acetabulum, 330
of atlas, 275
inferior, 302
of knee, 340
superior, 302
lingualis muscle, 399
mesocolon, 1259, 1309
metacarpal ligament, 324
pelvic ligament, 459
perineal artery, 691
ligament, 459
processes of a vertebra, 49
sinus, 743
of pericardium, 560
suture, 128
Transversus auriculæ muscle, 1147
menti muscle, 378
perinei superficialis muscle, 457, 460
Trapezium bone, 198
articulations of, 198
attachment of muscles to, 198
surfaces of, 198
Trapezius muscles, 411
Trapezoid bone, 198
articulations of, 199
surfaces of, 198
ligament, 300
ridge, 168
Treitz, fossa of, 1260
suspensory ligament of, 1286
Triangle of elbow, 653
of election, 617
of fourth ventricle, 945
Hesselbach's, 1520
of necessity, 616
of neck, anterior, 616
posterior, 618
surgical anatomy of, 616
occipital, 618
Petit's, 435
Scarpa's, 516, 697
subclavian, 618
submaxillary, 394, 617
suboccipital, 423
suprameatal, 85
Triangular cartilage of septum of nose, 1097
fascia of abdomen, 437, 1155
of urethra, 458
interarticular fibro-cartilage, 315
muscles, 362
tract of Helwig, 843, 951
Triangularis menti muscle, 378
sterni muscle, 425
Triceps extensor cubiti muscle, 477
Tricuspid orifice, 567
valve, 570
Trifacial nerve, 1026
surface marking of, 1041
surgical anatomy of, 1041
Trigeminal depression, 88
nerve, 1026
surface marking of, 1041
surgical anatomy of, 1041
Trigoid bodies, 820
Trigone of bladder, 1438
of habenula, 904
Trigonum acustici, 945
nervi hypoglossi, 945
olfactorium, 881
vagi, 945
ventriculi, 890
vesicæ, 1438
Tri-radiate sulcus, 874
carotid, inferior, 616
superior, 394, 617
Trochanter, great, 223
bursa of, 331
lesser, 223
rudimental, third, 224
Trochanteric fossa, 223
Trochlea of femur, 225
of humerus, 181
Trochlear fossa, 82
nerve, 1025
surgical anatomy of, 1026
surface of astragalus, 244
Trochoid, 265
Trolard, anastomotic vein of, 735
Tröltsch, recessus of, 1162
True vocal cords, 1370
Trunk, arteries of, 665
articulations of, 269
fasciæ of, 410
muscles of, 410
of pneumogastric nerve, ganglion of, 1059
Tube or tubes, bronchial, 1376
Eustachian, 1153
Fallopian, 1497
lymphatic vessels of, 804
medullary, 857
neural, 857
spiral, of Schachowa, 1419
tonsil, 1155
Tuber annulare, 922
cinereum, 882
Tubercle, acoustic, lateral, 950
adductor, 225
carotid, 51
of cervical vertebra, anterior, 50
posterior, 50
Chassaignac's, 69
conoid, 168
cornical, of Santorini, 1368
cuneate, 941
cuneiform, of Wrisberg, 1368
of Darwin, 1145
deltoid, 168
egg, 1502
of epiglottis, 1365
of femur, 223
genial, 123
of hyoid bone, 153
infragleniod, 174
jugular, 74
lachrymal, 109
mental, 122
of navicular bone, 246
olfactory, 881, 1019
of optic thalamus, anterior, 904
peroneal, 243
pharyngeal, 73

Tubercle, pterygoid, 97
of quadratus, 225
of ribs, 161
of Rolando, 941
of scaphoid, 196
supraglenoid, 175
of tibia, 234
of ulna, 186
of zygoma, 84
Tubercula quadrigemina, 911
Tuberculum acusticum, 945, 1051
caudatum, 1333
impar, 1242
Tuberosity, bicipital, 195
of calcaneus, 243
of cuboid, 245
of femur, inner, 226
outer, 226
glenoid, 175
of humerus, 179
of ischium, 211
maxillary, 106
of navicular bone, 246
of palate bone, 117, 135
of radius, 190
of ribs, 161
of sacrum, 63
of scaphoid bone, 246
of tibia, external, 233
internal, 233
Tubuli, lactiferi, 1507
seminiferi, 1471
uriniferi, 1418
Tunic of Ruysch, 1113
Tunica adventitia, 1228
albuginea, 373, 1457, 1471
interna, 1120
propria, 1180
vaginalis, 1462, 1465, 1469
cavity of, 1470
parietal portion of, 1470
visceral portion of, 1470
vasculosa testis, 1471
Tunics of eye, 1107
of testicle, 1469
Turbinated bone, inferior, 119
articulations of, 120
development of, 120
surfaces of, 120
middle, 101
sphenoidal, 143
superior, 101
crest, 107, 117
Turck, fasciculus of, 842
Turner, intraparietal sulcus of, 875
Twelfth nerve, 1064
surgical anatomy of, 1066
Tympanic antrum, 87
aperture, 1151
artery from ascending pharyngeal, 610
from internal carotid, 622
maxillary, 613
attic, 87
cavity, 1150
nerve, 1056
from facial, 1047
plexus of, 1057
sulcus, 1149
Tympanohyal process, 92
Tympanomalleolar ligaments, 1156
Tympanum, 1150
arteries of, 1162
cavity of, 1150
floor of, 1151
fundus of, 1151
mucous membrane of, 1162
muscles of, 1161
nerves of, 1163
Tympanum, ossicles of, 1158
pyramid of, 1153
roof of, 1151
veins of, 1163
walls of, 1153

U

Ulna, 184
articulations of, 189
attachment of muscles to, 189
development of, 189
lower extremity of, 189
shaft of, 188
structure of, 189
surface form of, 189
surgical anatomy of, 192
tubercle of, 186
upper extremity of, 184
coronoid process of, 186
olecranon process of, 186
sigmoid cavities of, 186
Ulnar artery, 660
peculiarities of, 661
surface marking of, 661
surgical anatomy of, 661
groove, 182
nerve, 988
region, muscles of, 498
veins, 745
Umbilical arteries in fœtus, 579, 685
fissure of liver, 1331
fossa of liver, 1331
notch, 1331
region, contents of, 1234
Umbilicus, lymphatic vessels of, 802
Umbo, 1157
Unciform bone, 199
articulations of, 200
attachment of muscles to, 200
process of ethmoid, 100
Uncinate convolution, 879
fasciculus, 917
process of Winslow, 1348
Uncrossed pyramidal tract, 842
Uncus, 879
Ungual phalanges, 204
Unipolar cells, 820
Unstriated muscle, 361
Unstriped muscle, 361
Upper deep cervical glands, 786
extremity, arteries of, 631
articulations of, 297
bones of, 167
fasciæ of, 462
lymphatic glands of, 788
vessels of, 792
muscles of, 462
veins of, 744
subscapular nerve, 984
Urachus, 1435
fold of, 1519
Ureter, 1426
arteries of, 1428
fibrous coat of, 1427
Ureteral folds, 1439
Ureters, lymphatic vessels of, 804
muscular coat of, 1428
mucous coat of, 1428
nerves of, 1428
orifices of, 1438
relations of, 1427
structure of, 1427
surgical anatomy of, 1428
Urethra, female, 1446
lymphatic vessels of, 803
mucous coat of, 1446
Urethra, female, muscular coat of, 1446
orifice of, 1481
structure of, 1446
submucous coat of, 1446
male, 1441
bulb of, 1458
cavernous portion of, 1443
crest of, 1442
fossa navicularis of, 1444
lymphatic vessels of, 803
membranous portion of, 1442
mucous coat of, 1444
muscular layer of, 1445
portion of, 1442
pendulous portion of, 1443
penile portion of, 1443
prostatic portion of, 1441
spongy portion of, 1443
structure of, 1444
submucous tissue of, 1445
surgical anatomy of, 1445
Urinary bladder. *See* Bladder.
organs, 1411
Uterine artery, 687
portion of Fallopian tube, 1497
plexus of nerves, 1086
veins, 763
plexus of, 763
Utero-sacral ligaments, 1490
-vaginal plexus, 1086
-vesical fold, 1490
pouch, 1487, 1490
Uterus, 1486
abnormalities of, 1493
after parturition, 1494
appendages of, 1497
arbor vitæ of, 1492
arteries of, 1494
bicornate, 1493
body of, 1487
cavity of, 1491
changes induced by pregnancy 1493
at menstrual period, 1493
at different ages, 1493
folds of, 1489
fundus of, 1487
ganglia of, 1086
ligaments of, 1489
lymphatic vessels of, 803, 1495
masculinus, 1442
mucous membrane of, 1492
muscular coat of, 1491
neck of, 1488
nerves of, 1086, 1496
structure of, 1491
supravaginal portion of, 1488
surgical anatomy of, 1496
vaginal portion of, 1488
veins of, 1495
Utricle of vestibule, 1169
Uvea, 1118
Uvula of cerebellum, 931
of throat, 1211
vesicæ, 1439

V

Vagina, 1483
arteries of, 1485
azygos arteries of, 687
columns of, 1484
erectile tissue of, 1485
lymphatic vessels of, 804, 1485
mucosa intertubercularis, 304
membrane of, 1484
muscular coat of, 1484
nerves of, 1485

Vagina, orifice of, 1481
relations of, 1484
rugæ of, 1484
structure of, 1484
veins of, 1485
vestibule of, 1481
Vaginal artery, 687
bulb, 1483
fornix, 1484
plexus of nerves, 1086
portion of uterus, 1488
process of temporal bone, 89
synovial membrane, 263
veins, 763
plexuses of, 763
Vagus nerve, nuclei of, 950
Valentin, ganglion of, 1033
Vallecula of cerebellum, 926
epiglottica, 1365
Sylvii, 856
Valley of cerebellum, 926
Valsalva, sinuses of, aortic, 573
pulmonary, 571
Valve or valves, anal, 1319
of Bauhin, 1308
bicuspid, 572
coronary, 567
Eustachian, 567
in fœtus, 578
of Gerlach, 1303
of Guerin, 1444
of Hasner, 1142
Houston's, 1318
ileo-cæcal, 1308
of Kerkring, 1291
of Morgagni, 1319
pyloric, 1272
rectal, 1318
semilunar, 1319
aortic, 572
pulmonic, 571
Thebesian, 567, 771
tricuspid, 570
of Vieussens, 910, 933
Valvulæ conniventes, 1291
Vas deferens, 1472
artery of, 686
lymphatic vessels of, 804
structure of, 1473
spirale, 1173
Vasa brevia arteries, 674
intestini tenuis artery, 675
vasorum of arteries, 586
Vascular papillæ, 1181
system at birth, changes in, 581
in fœtus, 578
Vasomotor nerves, 1071
Vastus externus muscle, 517
internus muscle, 517
Vater, ampulla of, 1345
corpuscles of, 828
Veins, 721
of abdomen, 755
anastomotic, of Troland, 735
angular, 726
appendicular, 768
of arm, 744
auricular, 727
axillary, 747
azygos, 752
larger, 752
left lower, 753
upper, 753
right, 752
smaller, 753
basilar, 735
basilic, 746
median, 746
brachial, 747
brachio-cephalic, 750
Veins of bones, 41
bronchial, 753
buccal, 726
cardiac, 770
cava, inferior, 764
superior, 752
cephalic, 747
median, 746
cerebellar, 736
cerebral, 734
cervical, anterior, deep, 733
posterior, deep, 733
choroid, 735
circumflex, iliac, 759
superficial, 756
companion, 747
coronary, 768
costo-axillary, 748
cystic, 769
digital, hand, 745
of diploë, 733
dorsal, of penis, 762
dorsi-spinal, 753
of dura mater of brain, 849
emissary, 743
emulgent, 766
epigastric, deep, 759
superficial, 756
of face, exterior of, 725
facial, 726
femoral, 758
of fingers, superficial, 745
of foot, 758
frontal, 725
of Galen, 735
gastric, 768
gluteal, 761
hæmorrhoidal, external, 760
inferior, 760
middle, 760
superior, 768
of hand, superficial, 745
of head, 724
of heart, 577
hepatic, 767
histology of, 722
hypogastric, 760
iliac, circumflex, deep, 759
common, 764
external, 759
internal, 760
ilio-lumbar, 764
innominate, 750
intercostal, 752
interosseous, of forearm, 74[illegible]
intervertebral, 755
intralobular, 767
jugular, 728
laryngeal, inferior, 75[illegible]
lingual, 729
longitudinal, inferior, [illegible]
of lower extremity, 7[illegible]
lumbar, 765
ascending, 753, 765
right, 752
mammary, internal, [illegible]
masseteric, 726
maxillary, internal, [illegible]
median, 745
medulli-spinal, 755
meningeal, 730, 734
meningo-rachidian, [illegible]
mesenteric, 768
naso-frontal, 740
of neck, 725
obturator, 761
occipital, 727
œsophageal, 751
ophthalmic, 740
orbital, 727
ovarian, 766
Veins, palatine, 727
palmar, deep, 747
pancreatic, 769
of pelvis, 755
peroneal, 758
pharyngeal, 730
phrenic, 767
of pia mater of brain, 856
plantar, 758
plexus of, palmar, 745
pampiniform, 765
pharyngeal, 730
prostatic, 761
prostatico-vesical, 761
pterygoid, 727
spermatic, 765
spinal, 753
on thyroid body, 751
uterine, 763
vaginal, 763
vesical, inferior, 763
superior, 761
popliteal, 758
portal, 769
system of, 768
profunda femoris, 759
pterygoid plexus, 727
pudic, 760
pulmonary, 723
pyloric, 768
radial, 745
deep, 747
ranine, 729
renal, 767
sacral, lateral, 760
middle, 764
saphenous, 756
sciatic, 761
spermatic, 765
spinal, 753
splenic, 768
stylo-mastoid, 725
subclavian, 749
sublobular, 767
submaxillary, 727
submental, 727
supraorbital, 726
suprarenal, 767
sylvian, superficial, 735
[illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible]

Vena cava, superior, 752
magna Galeni, 735
Venæ basis vertebrarum, 755
comites, 723, 747
corporis striati, 735
interlobulares of kidney, 1423
Thebesii, 771
vorticosæ, 1113
Venesection, 746
Venous arch, nasal, 725
plexus, interspinous, 732
on thyroid body, 751
Venter ilii, 209
of scapula, 171
Ventral auditory nuclei, 950
root of eighth nerve, 1050
of spinal nerve, 965
Ventricle of Arantius, 944
of brain, fifth, 897
fourth, 943
third, 901
Verga's, 896
of heart, fibres of, 575
left, chordæ tendineæ of, 573
columnæ carneæ of, 573
right, 568
chordæ tendineæ of, 570
columnæ carneæ of, 570
of larynx, 1371
lateral, 888
Ventricular gray matter, 922
portion of heart, 568
veins, 735
Ventro-median fissure, 837
Verga's ventricle, 896
Vermian vein, 735
Vermiform appendix, 1303
arteries of, 1305
canal of, 1304
lymphatics of, 1306
mesentery of, 1260
mucous membrane of, 1305
muscular coat of, 1305
serous coat of, 1304
structure of, 1304
submucous coat of, 1305
surface form of, 1323
surgical anatomy of, 1325
veins of, 1306
process of cerebellum, 926
Vertebræ, 48
[illegible]
surgical anatomy of, 69
border of scapula, 174
canal, 49
column, 48
articulations of, 269
surface form of, 69
surgical anatomy of, 69
foramen, 49
groove, 155
Vertebral, ligaments of, 270
plexus of nerves, 1077
region, anterior, muscles of, 406
lateral, muscles of, 408
muscles of, 409
ribs, 160
vein, 732, 751
Vertebrarterial foramen, 50
Vertebro-chondral ribs, 160
-pericardial ligaments, 558
-pleural ligament, 1385
-sternal ribs, 159
Vertex of skull, 129
Vertical lingualis muscle, 399
plate of palate bone, 117
Verumontanum, 1442
Vesical arteries, 686
plexus of nerves, 1086
of veins, inferior, 762
superior, 761
trigone, 1438
Vesicle, prostatic, 1442
Vesicles, Graafian, 1502
seminal, 1475
Vesico-uterine ligament, 1490
Vesicula prostatica, 1441
Vesicular column of Clark, 846
Vestibular artery, 1176
ganglion, 1053
nerve, 1053
path, 1054
root of eighth nerve, 1050
window, 1152
Vestibule, aortic, of Sibson, 572
of ear, 1164
of mouth, 1194
of nose, 1099
of vagina, 1481
Vestigial fold of pericardium, 561
Vibrissæ, 1096
Vicq d'Azyr, bundle of, 883
Vidian artery, 616
canal, 96, 135
nerve, 1034
veins, 730
Vieussens, ansa of, 1076
centrum ovale majus of, 881
valve of, 910, 933
Villi of small intestine, 1292
synovial, 262
Viscera, development of, 1235
Visceral cranium, 71
layer of pleura, 1382
lymphatics, 811
peritoneum, 1247
portion of tunica vaginalis, 1470
surface of liver, 1329
of stomach, 1270
Visual axis, 1106
centres, 1022
purple, 1120
Vitreous body, 1129
humor of eye, 1129
table of skull, 34
Vocal cords, false, 1370
true, 1370
process, 1365
Voice, organs of, 1361
Volkmann's canals, 38
Voluntary muscle, 361
Vomer, 120
lake of, 121, 143
articulations of, 122
development of, 122
surfaces of, 121
Vomerine cartilage, 1097
Vortex of heart, 575
Vulva, fossa navicularis of, 1478
Vulvo-vaginal gland, 1482

W

Waldeyer, germ[illegible]
of, 1501
odontoblasts of
Wedge bones, 24
-shaped funicu
Wharton's duct
White commiss
fibrous tissue
line of Hilton
matter of cerebe
of cerebrum, 913
nerve fibres, 822
substance of cord, 841
of Schwann, 822
Willis, circle of, 629, 640
Winslow, accessory anterior crural nerve of, 1004
ligament of, posterior, 335
uncinate process of, 1348
Wirsung, canal of, 1351
Womb, 1486
Worm of cerebellum, 926
Wormian bones, 103
development of, 103
Wrisberg, cardiac ganglion of, 1081
cartilages of, 1365
cuneiform tubercle of, 1368
ligament of, 339
nerve of, 986
pars intermedia of, 1045
Wrist, articulations of, 317
bursa of, 492
-joint, 317
ligament of, 318
surface form of, 318
surgical anatomy of, 318

X

Xipho-pericardial ligament, 559
Xiphoid appendix, 158
surfaces of, 158
cartilage, 155

Y

Y-ligament, 328
Yellow elastic tissue, 261
spot of Sömmerring, 1121

Z

Zinn, ligament of, 373
zonule of, 1129
Zona arcuata, 1173
fasciculata, 1430
glomerulosa, 1430
incerta, 910
orbicularis, 327
pectinata, 1173
reticularis, 1430
tecta, 1173
Zonula ciliaris, 1129
Zonule of Zinn, 1129
Zygoma, 84
Zygomatic arch, 138
fossa, 138
lymphatic glands, 782
process of malar, 115
of temporal bone, 94
Zygomaticus major muscle, 377
minor muscle, 377
Zymogen granules, 1352

NATIONAL LIBRARY OF MEDICINE

NLM 00099267 0